



The L^AT_EX Companion

Third Edition – Part II



The L^AT_EX Companion

Third Edition – Part I

TOOLS AND TECHNIQUES FOR COMPUTER TYPESETTING



FRANK MITTELBAACH
with **ULRIKE FISCHER**

ING

ACH

The L^AT_EX Companion

Third Edition – Part I & Part II

This eBook is a compilation of Part I and Part II of *The L^AT_EX Companion*, Third Edition. To navigate to a specific page, click the links in the text or enter the part number, a hyphen, and the page number — e.g., II-39 for page 39 in the second part.

Detailed information about the production of this eBook is given in the Production Notes on page →II 983.

Addison-Wesley Series on Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting

This series focuses on tools and techniques needed for computer typesetting and information processing with traditional and new media. Books in the series address the practical needs of both users and system developers. Initial titles comprise handy references for \LaTeX users; forthcoming works will expand that core. Ultimately, the series will cover other typesetting and information processing systems, as well, especially insofar as those systems offer unique value to the scientific and technical community. The series goal is to enhance your ability to produce, maintain, manipulate, or reuse articles, papers, reports, proposals, books, and other documents with professional quality.

Ideas for this series should be directed to `frank.mittelbach@latex-project.org`. Send all other feedback to the publisher at `informit.com/about/contact_us` or via email to `community@informit.com`.

Series Editor

Frank Mittelbach

Technical Lead, \LaTeX Project, Germany

Editorial Board

Jacques André
*Irisa/Inria-Rennes,
France (Ret.)*

Barbara Beeton
Editor, TUGboat, USA

David Brailsford
University of Nottingham, UK

Peter Flynn
*University College, Cork,
Ireland (Ret.)*

Matthew Hardy
Adobe, USA

Leslie Lamport
Microsoft, USA

Chris Rowley
Open University, UK (Ret.)

William Robertson
*The University of Adelaide,
Australia*

Steven Simske
Colorado State University, USA

Series Titles

Guide to \LaTeX , Fourth Edition by Helmut Kopka and Patrick W. Daly

The \LaTeX Companion, Third Edition by Frank Mittelbach, with Ulrike Fischer and contributions by Javier Bezos, Johannes Braams, and Joseph Wright

The \LaTeX Graphics Companion, Second Edition by Michel Goossens, Frank Mittelbach, Sebastian Rahtz, Denis Roegel, and Herbert Voß
Reprinted 2022 by Lehmanns Media, Berlin

The \LaTeX Web Companion by Michel Goossens and Sebastian Rahtz

Also from Addison-Wesley and New Riders:

\LaTeX : A Document Preparation System, Second Edition by Leslie Lamport

Computers & Typesetting, Volumes A–E by Donald E. Knuth

The Type Project Book: Typographic projects to sharpen your creative skills & diversify your portfolio
by Nigel French and Hugh D'Andrade

The L^AT_EX Companion

Third Edition – Part I

Frank Mittelbach

L^AT_EX Project, Mainz, Germany

Ulrike Fischer

L^AT_EX Project, Bonn, Germany

With contributions by Joseph Wright

◆ Addison-Wesley

Boston • Columbus • New York • San Francisco • Amsterdam • Cape Town
Dubai • London • Madrid • Milan • Munich • Paris • Montreal • Toronto • Delhi • Mexico City
São Paulo • Sydney • Hong Kong • Seoul • Singapore • Taipei • Tokyo

Cover illustration by Lonny Garris/Shutterstock
Photos of Sebastian Rahtz courtesy of the T_EX Users Group

Book design by Frank Mittelbach
Typeset with L^AT_EX in Lucida Bright at 8.47pt/11.72pt

Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this book, and the publisher was aware of a trademark claim, the designations have been printed with initial capital letters or in all capitals.

The authors and publisher have taken care in the preparation of this book, but make no expressed or implied warranty of any kind and assume no responsibility for errors or omissions. No liability is assumed for incidental or consequential damages in connection with or arising out of the use of the information or programs contained herein.

For information about buying this title in bulk quantities, or for special sales opportunities, please contact our corporate sales department at corpsales@pearsoned.com or (800)382-3419.

For government sales inquiries, please contact governmentsales@pearsoned.com. For questions about sales outside the United States, please contact intlcs@pearson.com.

Visit us on the Web: informit.com/aw

Library of Congress Control Number: 2022947208

Copyright © 2023 by Pearson Education, Inc.

All rights reserved. This publication is protected by copyright, and permission must be obtained from the publisher prior to any prohibited reproduction, storage in a retrieval system, or transmission in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or likewise. For information regarding permissions, request forms and the appropriate contacts within the Pearson Education Global Rights & Permissions Department, please visit www.pearson.com/permissions/.

The foregoing notwithstanding, the examples contained in this book are made available under the L^AT_EX Project Public License (for information on the LPPL, see <https://www.latex-project.org/lppl>).

The examples can be downloaded from <https://ctan.org/pkg/tlc3-examples>.

Part I: Print ISBN-13: 978-0-13-465894-0

Part II: Print ISBN-13: 978-0-201-36300-5

Part I+II (bundled):

Print ISBN-13: 978-0-13-816648-9

Part I+II (combined) digital:

ePub ISBN-13: 978-0-13-816652-6

uPDF ISBN-13: 978-0-13-816657-1

Release date of the digital edition: September 1, 2023

Pearson's Commitment to Diversity, Equity, and Inclusion

Pearson is dedicated to creating bias-free content that reflects the diversity of all learners. We embrace the many dimensions of diversity, including but not limited to race, ethnicity, gender, socioeconomic status, ability, age, sexual orientation, and religious or political beliefs.

Education is a powerful force for equity and change in our world. It has the potential to deliver opportunities that improve lives and enable economic mobility. As we work with authors to create content for every product and service, we acknowledge our responsibility to demonstrate inclusivity and incorporate diverse scholarship so that everyone can achieve their potential through learning. As the world's leading learning company, we have a duty to help drive change and live up to our purpose to help more people create a better life for themselves and to create a better world.

Our ambition is to purposefully contribute to a world where:

- Everyone has an equitable and lifelong opportunity to succeed through learning.
- Our educational products and services are inclusive and represent the rich diversity of learners.
- Our educational content accurately reflects the histories and experiences of the learners we serve.
- Our educational content prompts deeper discussions with learners and motivates them to expand their own learning (and worldview).

While we work hard to present unbiased content, we want to hear from you about any concerns or needs with this Pearson product so that we can investigate and address them.

- Please contact us with concerns about any potential bias at <https://www.pearson.com/report-bias.html>.

This page intentionally left blank



A TeX Haiku

```
\expandafter\def
\csname def\endcsname
{\message{farewell}}\bye
```

SPQR
at the poetry competition

TUG conference,
Vancouver, 1999



I dedicate this edition to all my friends in the T_EX world and in particular to the memory of my good friend Sebastian P. Q. Rahtz (1955–2016), with whom I spent many happy hours discussing parenting, literature, L^AT_EX and other important aspects of life [146].

This page intentionally left blank

Contents

Part I

List of Figures	xxviii
List of Tables	xxxi
Foreword	xxxvii
Preface	xxxix
Chapter 1 Introduction	1
1.1 A brief history (of nearly half a century)	1
1.2 Today's systems	8
1.3 Working with this book	13
1.3.1 What's where	13
1.3.2 Typographic conventions	15
1.3.3 Using the examples.	18
Chapter 2 The Structure of a \LaTeX Document	21
2.1 The overall structure of a source file.	22
2.1.1 Spoiler alert — The <code>\DocumentMetadata</code> command	23
2.1.2 Processing of options of the document class and packages	24
2.1.3 Front, main, and back matter.	26
2.1.4 Splitting the source document into several files	28
2.1.5 <code>askinclude</code> — Managing your inclusions.	30
2.1.6 tagging — Providing variants in the document source.	30

2.2	Sectioning commands	32
2.2.1	Numbering headings	34
2.2.2	Changing fixed heading texts	36
2.2.3	Introduction to heading design	37
2.2.4	quotchap, epigraph — Mottos on chapters and sections	38
2.2.5	indentfirst — Indent the first paragraph after a heading	39
2.2.6	nonumonpart — No page numbers on parts	40
2.2.7	titlesec — A package approach to heading design	40
2.2.8	Formatting headings — L ^A T _E X's internal low-level methods	51
2.3	Table of contents structures	54
2.3.1	tocdata — Providing extra data for the TOC	56
2.3.2	titletoc — A high-level approach to contents list design	59
2.3.3	multitoc — Setting contents lists in multiple columns	70
2.3.4	L ^A T _E X's low-level interfaces	70
2.4	Managing references	75
2.4.1	varioref — More flexible cross-references	79
2.4.2	cleveref — Cleverly formatted references	86
2.4.3	nameref — Non-numerical references	93
2.4.4	showkeys, refcheck — Displaying & checking reference keys	93
2.4.5	xr — References to external documents	95
2.4.6	hyperref — Active references	96
2.5	Document source management	108
2.5.1	Combining several files	109
2.5.2	Document archival information	110
2.5.3	snapshot, bundledoc — Document archival and verification	111
2.5.4	mkjobtexmf — Providing a minimal T _E X file tree	113
2.5.5	The rollback concept for L ^A T _E X and individual packages	114
Chapter 3	Basic Formatting Tools — Paragraph Level	119
3.1	Shaping your paragraphs	120
3.1.1	ragged2e — Improving unjustified text	123
3.1.2	nolbreaks — Preventing line breaks in text fragments	125
3.1.3	microtype — Enhancing justified text	126
3.1.4	parskip — Adjusting the look and feel of paragraphs	137
3.1.5	setspace — Changing interline spacing	139
3.1.6	lettrine — Dropping your capital	141
3.1.7	Alphabets for initials	145
3.1.8	magaz — Special handling of the first line	146
3.1.9	fancypar — Fancy layouts for individual paragraphs	147
3.2	Dealing with special characters	147
3.2.1	ellipsis, lips — Marks of omission	148
3.2.2	extdash and amsmath — Dashes in text	149
3.2.3	underscore — Making that character more usable	151
3.2.4	xspace — Gentle spacing after a macro	152

3.3	Generated or specially formatted text	154
3.3.1	fmtcount — Ordinals and cardinals	154
3.3.2	acro — Managing your abbreviations and acronyms.	156
3.3.3	xfrac — Customizable $\text{text}/\text{fractions}$	164
3.3.4	siunitx — Scientific notation of units and quantities	167
3.4	Various ways of highlighting and quoting text.	177
3.4.1	Change case of text intelligently (formerly textcase)	178
3.4.2	csquotes — Context-sensitive quotation marks	179
3.4.3	embrac — Upright brackets and parentheses	188
3.4.4	ulem — Emphasize and copy-edit via underline	189
3.4.5	dashundergaps — Produce fill-in forms	190
3.4.6	microtype & soul — Letterspacing or stealing sheep	191
3.4.7	url — Typesetting URLs, path names, and the like.	198
3.4.8	uri — Typesetting various types of URIs.	202
3.5	Footnotes, endnotes, and marginals.	204
3.5.1	Using standard footnotes.	205
3.5.2	Customizing standard footnotes	208
3.5.3	footmisc — Various footnotes styles	210
3.5.4	footnoterange — Referencing footnote ranges	216
3.5.5	fnpct — Managing footnote markers and punctuation.	216
3.5.6	perpage — Resetting counters on a “per-page” basis	218
3.5.7	manyfoot, bigfoot — Independent footnotes	220
3.5.8	parnotes — Present the notes inside the galley	226
3.5.9	ftnright — Right footnotes in a two-column environment	228
3.5.10	enotez — Endnotes, an alternative to footnotes.	228
3.5.11	Marginal notes	232
3.5.12	marginnote — An alternative to <code>\marginpar</code>	234
3.5.13	snotez — Numbered or otherwise marked side notes	235
3.6	Support for document development	237
3.6.1	todonotes — Adding todos to your document.	237
3.6.2	fixme — A slightly different approach to todos	242
3.6.3	changes — A set of typical editorial commands	245
3.6.4	pdfcomment — Using PDF annotations and tool tips	250
3.6.5	vertbars — Adding bars to paragraphs	251
Chapter 4	Basic Formatting Tools — Larger Structures	253
4.1	Lists	254
4.1.1	Using and modifying the standard lists	254
4.1.2	L ^A T _E X’s generic list environments	258
4.1.3	enumitem — Extended list environments	261
4.1.4	amsthm — Providing headed lists	281
4.1.5	thmtools — Advanced theorem declarations	284
4.1.6	tasks — Making horizontally oriented lists	289
4.1.7	typed-checklist — Developing and maintaining checklists.	292

4.2	Simulating typed text.....	296
4.2.1	Displaying spaces in verbatim material	297
4.2.2	Simple verbatim extensions	298
4.2.3	upquote—Computer program style quoting	302
4.2.4	fancyvrb, fvextra—Verbatim environments on steroids	303
4.2.5	listings—Pretty-printing program code.	322
4.3	Lines and columns.....	333
4.3.1	lineno—Numbering lines of text	334
4.3.2	paracol—Several text streams aligned	339
4.3.3	multicol—A flexible way to handle multiple columns	351
4.3.4	multicolrule—Custom rules for multicolumned pages	361
4.4	Generating sample texts.....	361
4.4.1	lipsum and friends—Generating text samples	361
4.4.2	blindtext—More elaborate layout testing	363
Chapter 5	The Layout of the Page	365
5.1	Geometrical dimensions of the layout	366
5.2	Changing the layout	368
5.2.1	layouts—Displaying your layout	371
5.2.2	A collection of page layout packages	374
5.2.3	typearea—A traditional approach	375
5.2.4	geometry—Layout specification with auto-completion	377
5.2.5	lscap—Typesetting individual pages in landscape mode	384
5.2.6	savetrees—Options to reduce the document length	384
5.3	Dynamic page data: page numbers and marks	385
5.3.1	L ^A T _E X page numbers	385
5.3.2	lastpage—A way to reference it	386
5.3.3	chappg—Page numbers by chapters	387
5.3.4	L ^A T _E X's legacy mark commands	388
5.3.5	L ^A T _E X's new mark mechanism	390
5.4	Page styles	395
5.4.1	The low-level page style interface.	397
5.4.2	fancyhdr—Customizing page styles	398
5.4.3	truncate—Truncate text to a given length	405
5.4.4	continue—Help with turning pages	407
5.5	Page decorations and watermarks	409
5.5.1	draftwatermark—Put a visible stamp on your document	409
5.5.2	crop—Producing trimming marks	411
5.6	Visual formatting	414
5.6.1	Standard tools for page explicit page breaking	414
5.6.2	Running pages and columns short or long	415
5.6.3	addlines—Adjusting whole double spreads	416
5.6.4	nextpage—Extensions to \clearpage	418

5.6.5	needspace — Conditionally start a new page	419
5.6.6	Avoiding widows and orphans	420
5.6.7	widows-and-orphans — Finding all widows and orphans	424
5.6.8	\looseness — Shortening or lengthening paragraphs	427
5.7	Doing layout with class	429
5.7.1	KOMA-Script — A drop-in replacement for article et al.	429
5.7.2	memoir — Producing complex publications	430
Chapter 6	Tabular Material	431
6.1	Standard L ^A T _E X environments	432
6.1.1	Using the tabbing environment	433
6.1.2	tabto — An alternative way to tab stops.	434
6.1.3	Using the tabular environment	436
6.2	array — Extending the tabular environments	437
6.2.1	The behavior of the \ command	437
6.2.2	Examples of preamble specifiers	438
6.2.3	Defining new column specifiers.	445
6.3	Calculating column widths	446
6.3.1	tabularx — Automatic calculation of column widths.	448
6.3.2	tabulary — Column widths based on content	450
6.3.3	Differences between tabular*, tabularx, and tabulary.	452
6.3.4	Managing tables with wide entries	453
6.3.5	widetable — An alternative to tabular*	453
6.4	Multipage tabular material	456
6.4.1	supertabular — Making multipage tabulars	456
6.4.2	longtable — Alternative multipage tabulars	459
6.4.3	xltabular — Marriage of tabularx and longtable.	463
6.4.4	Problems with multipage tables (all packages)	464
6.5	Color in tables	466
6.6	Customizing table rules and spacing	467
6.6.1	Colored table rules	467
6.6.2	boldline — Bolder table rules	468
6.6.3	arydshln — Dashed rules	469
6.6.4	hhline — Combining horizontal and vertical lines	470
6.6.5	booktabs — Formal ruled tables	471
6.6.6	bigstrut — Spreading individual table lines apart	473
6.6.7	cellspace — Ensure minimal clearance automatically	474
6.7	Other extensions	476
6.7.1	multirow — Vertical alignment in tables.	476
6.7.2	diagbox — Making table cells with diagonal lines	479
6.7.3	dcolum — Decimal column alignments	481
6.7.4	siunitx — Scientific numbers in tables.	484
6.7.5	fcolum — Managing financial tables	487

6.8	Footnotes in tabular material	491
6.8.1	Using <code>minipage</code> footnotes with tables	491
6.8.2	<code>threeparttable</code> —Setting table and notes together	492
6.9	<code>keyvaltable</code> —Separating table data and formatting	494
6.10	<code>tabularray</code> —Late breaking news.....	504
Chapter 7	Mastering Floats	505
7.1	An overview of \LaTeX 's float concepts.....	506
7.1.1	\LaTeX float terminology	506
7.1.2	Basic behavioral rules of \LaTeX 's float mechanism	508
7.1.3	Consequences of the algorithm.	512
7.1.4	<code>fltrace</code> —Tracing the float algorithm	518
7.2	Float placement control	519
7.2.1	<code>fewerfloatpages</code> —Improving \LaTeX 's float algorithm	519
7.2.2	<code>placeins</code> —Preventing floats from crossing a barrier	524
7.2.3	<code>afterpage</code> —Taking control at the page boundary	525
7.2.4	<code>endfloat</code> —Placing figures and tables at the end	525
7.3	Extensions to \LaTeX 's float concept	528
7.3.1	<code>float</code> —Creating new float types	529
7.3.2	Captions for nonfloating figures and tables	532
7.3.3	<code>rotating</code> , <code>rotfloat</code> —Rotating floats	533
7.3.4	<code>wrapfig</code> —Inline floats, wrapping text around a figure	535
7.4	Controlling the float caption.....	538
7.4.1	<code>caption</code> —Customizing your captions.	540
7.4.2	<code>subcaption</code> —Substructuring floats	551
7.5	Key/value approaches for floats and subfloats.....	560
7.5.1	<code>hvfloating</code> —Sophisticated caption placement control and more	560
7.5.2	<code>keyfloat</code> —Bringing most packages under one roof	567
Chapter 8	Graphics Generation and Manipulation	575
8.1	\LaTeX 's image loading support.....	576
8.1.1	Options for <code>graphics</code> and <code>graphicx</code>	577
8.1.2	The <code>\includegraphics</code> syntax in the <code>graphics</code> package	578
8.1.3	The <code>\includegraphics</code> syntax in the <code>graphicx</code> package	580
8.1.4	Setting default key values for the <code>graphicx</code> package	585
8.1.5	Declarations guiding the inclusion of images.	586
8.2	Manipulating graphical objects in \LaTeX	587
8.2.1	Image and box manipulations with <code>graphics</code> and <code>graphicx</code>	587
8.2.2	<code>overpic</code> —Graphic annotation made easy	593
8.2.3	<code>adjustbox</code> —Box manipulation with a key/value interface	595
8.3	Producing (fairly) portable line graphics	602
8.3.1	A kernel <code>picture</code> environment enhancement	602
8.3.2	<code>pict2e</code> —An extension of \LaTeX 's <code>picture</code> environment.	602

8.3.3	bxeepic — A differently enhanced <code>picture</code> environment . . .	608
8.3.4	Special-purpose languages	612
8.3.5	qrcode — Generating Quick Response codes	612
8.4	Flexible boxes for multiple purposes	614
8.4.1	tcolorbox — The basic usage	614
8.4.2	Extending tcolorbox through libraries	619
8.4.3	Defining new tcolorbox environments and commands	626
8.4.4	Special tcolorbox applications	628
8.5	tikz — A general-purpose graphics system	631
8.5.1	Basic objects	633
8.5.2	Transformations and other operations	642
8.5.3	Going further	646
Chapter 9	Font Selection and Encodings	647
9.1	Introduction	648
9.1.1	The history of \LaTeX 's font selection scheme (NFSS)	648
9.1.2	Input and output handling in \TeX systems over the years	649
9.2	Understanding font characteristics	652
9.2.1	Monospaced and proportional fonts	652
9.2.2	Serifed and sans serif fonts	653
9.2.3	Font families and their attributes	653
9.2.4	Font encodings	657
9.3	Using fonts in text	658
9.3.1	Standard \LaTeX font commands	659
9.3.2	Font commands versus declarations	666
9.3.3	Combining standard font commands	668
9.3.4	Accessing all characters of a font	669
9.3.5	\LaTeX 2.09 font support — Compatibility for really ancient documents	670
9.3.6	Changing the default text fonts	670
9.3.7	relsize, scalefont — Relative changes to the font size	675
9.4	Using fonts in math	676
9.4.1	Special math alphabet identifiers	677
9.4.2	Text font commands in math	682
9.4.3	Mathematical formula versions	682
9.5	Standard \LaTeX font support	683
9.5.1	Computer Modern, Latin Modern — The \LaTeX standard fonts	684
9.5.2	PSNFSS and \TeX Gyre — Core PostScript fonts for \LaTeX	688
9.5.3	A note on baselines and leading	691
9.5.4	inputenc — Explicitly selecting the input encoding	692
9.5.5	fontenc — Selecting font encodings	693
9.5.6	Additional text symbols not part of OT1 or T1 encodings	694
9.5.7	exscale — Scaling large Computer Modern math operators	704

9.5.8	tracefont — Tracing the font selection	704
9.5.9	nfssfont.tex — Displaying 8-bit font tables and samples	705
9.6	fontspec — Font selection for Unicode engines	705
9.6.1	Setting up the main document font families	706
9.6.2	Setting up additional font families	711
9.6.3	Setting up a single font face	711
9.6.4	Interfacing with core NFSS commands	712
9.6.5	Altering the look and feel of fonts	713
9.6.6	General configuration options	727
9.6.7	unicodefonttable — Displaying font tables for larger fonts	728
9.7	The low-level NFSS interface	730
9.7.1	Setting individual font attributes	731
9.7.2	Setting several font attributes	738
9.7.3	Automatic substitution of fonts.	738
9.7.4	Substituting the font family if unavailable in an encoding	739
9.7.5	Using low-level commands in the document	740
9.8	Setting up new fonts for NFSS	740
9.8.1	Declaring new font families and font shape groups.	741
9.8.2	Modifying font families and font shape groups	746
9.8.3	Declaring new font encoding schemes	747
9.8.4	Internal file organization	748
9.8.5	Declaring new fonts and symbols for use in math	749
9.9	L ^A T _E X's encoding models	754
9.9.1	Character data within the L ^A T _E X system	754
9.9.2	L ^A T _E X's internal character representation (LICR)	757
9.9.3	Input encodings	758
9.9.4	Output encodings	760

Part II

Foreword, Part II	II v
-------------------	------

Preface, Part II	II vii
------------------	--------

Chapter 10 Text and Symbol Fonts	II 1
----------------------------------	------

10.1 Overview	II 2
10.1.1 Notes on the font samples	II 4
10.1.2 Notes on the font family tables	II 5
10.1.3 Font support packages	II 7
10.1.4 Direct use of the fonts (without a package)	II 10
10.2 Samples of larger font families	II 11
10.2.1 Alegreya	II 11
10.2.2 CM Bright — A design based on Computer Modern Sans	II 12

10.2.3	DejaVu — A fork of Bitstream Vera	II 12
10.2.4	Fira fonts	II 14
10.2.5	Gandhi fonts	II 15
10.2.6	Go fonts.	II 15
10.2.7	Inria fonts.	II 16
10.2.8	Kp (Johannes Kepler) fonts	II 17
10.2.9	Libertinus — A fork of Linux Libertine and Biolinum.	II 19
10.2.10	Lucida fonts.	II 21
10.2.11	Merriweather fonts	II 25
10.2.12	Google's Noto and Droid fonts	II 26
10.2.13	IBM Plex.	II 30
10.2.14	PT fonts.	II 31
10.2.15	Quattrocento	II 33
10.2.16	Google Roboto families	II 34
10.2.17	Adobe Source Pro	II 35
10.3	Humanist (Oldstyle) serif fonts.....	II 36
10.3.1	Alegreya	II 37
10.3.2	Coelacanth	II 37
10.3.3	fbf — A version of Cardo	II 37
10.4	Garalde (Oldstyle) serif fonts.....	II 38
10.4.1	Accanthis	II 39
10.4.2	GFS Artemisia	II 39
10.4.3	Crimson, Crimson Pro, and Cochineal.	II 40
10.4.4	Cormorant Garamond.	II 41
10.4.5	EB Garamond	II 41
10.4.6	Garamond Libre.	II 42
10.4.7	URW Garamond No. 8	II 43
10.4.8	Gentium Plus	II 45
10.4.9	Kp (Johannes Kepler) Roman	II 45
10.4.10	Palatino (T _E X Gyre Pagella)	II 46
10.5	Transitional/Neoclassical serif fonts.....	II 46
10.5.1	Antykwa Poltawskiego	II 46
10.5.2	BaskervilleF and Libre Baskerville	II 47
10.5.3	Baskervald (Baskervaldx)	II 48
10.5.4	ITC Bookman (T _E X Gyre Bonum)	II 48
10.5.5	Cambria.	II 49
10.5.6	Bitstream Charter	II 50
10.5.7	Charis SIL — A design based on Bitstream Charter.	II 51
10.5.8	Caslon — Reinterpreted as Libre Caslon	II 51
10.5.9	Gandhi Serif.	II 52
10.5.10	Inria Serif	II 52
10.5.11	Libertinus Serif	II 52
10.5.12	Literaturnaya — A favorite in the days of the USSR.	II 53
10.5.13	Lucida Bright	II 53

10.5.14	Lucida Fax	II 54
10.5.15	Merriweather	II 54
10.5.16	New Century Schoolbook (T _E X Gyre Schola)	II 54
10.5.17	Plex Serif	II 55
10.5.18	PT Serif	II 55
10.5.19	Quattrocento	II 55
10.5.20	Times Roman (T _E X Gyre Termes and Tempora)	II 55
10.5.21	Tinos	II 57
10.5.22	STIX 2	II 57
10.5.23	Utopia (Heuristica, Erewhon, and Linguistics Pro)	II 58
10.6	Didone (Modern) serif fonts	II 60
10.6.1	Computer Modern Roman / Latin Modern Roman	II 60
10.6.2	GFS Bodoni	II 61
10.6.3	Libre Bodoni	II 61
10.6.4	GFS Didot	II 62
10.6.5	Theano Didot	II 62
10.6.6	Noto Serif	II 63
10.6.7	Old Standard	II 63
10.6.8	Playfair Display	II 64
10.7	Slab serif (Egyptian) fonts	II 64
10.7.1	Bitter	II 65
10.7.2	Concrete Roman	II 65
10.7.3	DejaVu Serif	II 67
10.7.4	Roboto Slab Serif	II 67
10.7.5	Source Serif Pro	II 67
10.8	Sans serif fonts	II 67
10.8.1	Alegreya Sans	II 68
10.8.2	Arimo	II 68
10.8.3	ITC Avant Garde Gothic (T _E X Gyre Adventor)	II 69
10.8.4	Cabin	II 70
10.8.5	Chivo	II 70
10.8.6	Classico—A design based on Optima	II 71
10.8.7	Clear Sans	II 72
10.8.8	CM Bright	II 72
10.8.9	Cuprum	II 73
10.8.10	Cyklop	II 73
10.8.11	DejaVu Sans	II 74
10.8.12	Fira Sans	II 74
10.8.13	Gandhi Sans	II 74
10.8.14	GFS Neo-Hellenic	II 75
10.8.15	Gillius	II 75
10.8.16	Helvetica (T _E X Gyre Heros)	II 76
10.8.17	Inria Sans	II 77
10.8.18	Iwona	II 77

10.8.19	Kp (Johannes Kepler) Sans	II 79
10.8.20	Kurier	II 79
10.8.21	Latin Modern Sans	II 80
10.8.22	Lato	II 80
10.8.23	Libertinus Sans	II 81
10.8.24	Libre Franklin	II 81
10.8.25	Lucida Sans	II 82
10.8.26	Merriweather Sans	II 82
10.8.27	Mint Spirit	II 82
10.8.28	Montserrat	II 83
10.8.29	Noto Sans	II 84
10.8.30	Overlock	II 84
10.8.31	Plex Sans	II 85
10.8.32	PT Sans	II 85
10.8.33	Quattrocento Sans	II 85
10.8.34	Raleway	II 86
10.8.35	Roboto Sans	II 86
10.8.36	Rosario	II 86
10.8.37	Source Sans Pro	II 87
10.8.38	Universalis	II 87
10.9	Monospaced (typewriter) fonts	II 88
10.9.1	Algol	II 89
10.9.2	Anonymous Pro	II 90
10.9.3	CM Bright Typewriter Light	II 90
10.9.4	Courier	II 91
10.9.5	DejaVu Sans Mono	II 91
10.9.6	Fira Mono	II 92
10.9.7	Go Mono	II 92
10.9.8	Inconsolata	II 92
10.9.9	Kp (Johannes Kepler) Typewriter	II 93
10.9.10	Latin Modern Typewriter	II 93
10.9.11	Libertinus Mono	II 94
10.9.12	Lucida's monospaced families	II 94
10.9.13	Luximono	II 95
10.9.14	Noto Sans Mono	II 96
10.9.15	Plex Mono	II 96
10.9.16	PT Mono	II 96
10.9.17	Roboto Mono	II 97
10.9.18	Source Code Pro	II 97
10.10	Historical and other fonts	II 97
10.10.1	Cinzel	II 98
10.10.2	Marcellus	II 99
10.10.3	The Fell Types	II 99
10.10.4	Almendra	II 100

10.10.5	Antykwa Toruńska	II 100
10.10.6	Lucida Casual, Calligraphy, and Handwriting	II 102
10.10.7	Zapf Chancery (T _E X Gyre Chorus)	II 102
10.10.8	Miama Nueva	II 103
10.10.9	Lucida Blackletter	II 104
10.10.10	Blackletter—Yannis Gothic, Schwabacher, and Fraktur.	II 104
10.11	Fonts supporting Latin and polytonic Greek	II 106
10.11.1	Serif designs	II 107
10.11.2	Sans Serif designs.	II 109
10.11.3	Monospaced fonts	II 109
10.11.4	Handwriting fonts.	II 110
10.12	Fonts supporting Latin and Cyrillic.	II 110
10.12.1	Serif designs	II 110
10.12.2	Sans Serif designs.	II 111
10.12.3	Monospaced fonts	II 112
10.12.4	Handwriting fonts.	II 113
10.13	The L ^A T _E X world of symbols.	II 113
10.13.1	pifont—Accessing Pi and Symbol fonts	II 113
10.13.2	wasysym—Waldi’s symbol font	II 116
10.13.3	marvosym—Interface to the MarVoSym font	II 117
10.13.4	adorn—Adding ornaments to your document	II 118
10.13.5	fourier-orns—GUTenberg-Fourier’s ornaments	II 119
10.13.6	Web-O-Mints—Another collection of ornaments and borders	II 119
10.13.7	fontawesome5—Accessing Font Awesome icons	II 120
10.13.8	tipa—International Phonetic Alphabet symbols.	II 125
Chapter 11	Higher Mathematics	II 127
11.1	Introduction to amsmath and mathtools	II 128
11.2	Display and alignment structures for equations.	II 131
11.2.1	Comparison of amsmath/mathtools with standard L ^A T _E X.	II 132
11.2.2	A single equation on one line	II 133
11.2.3	A single equation on several lines: no alignment	II 134
11.2.4	A single equation on several lines: with alignment	II 135
11.2.5	Equation groups without alignment.	II 137
11.2.6	Equation groups with simple alignment.	II 138
11.2.7	Multiple alignments: align, flalign, and alignat	II 138
11.2.8	Display environments as mini-pages	II 140
11.2.9	Interrupting displays with short text	II 143
11.2.10	Vertical space in and around displays.	II 143
11.2.11	Page breaks in and around displays.	II 145
11.2.12	breqn—Automatic line breaking in math displays	II 146
11.2.13	Equation numbering and tags.	II 149
11.2.14	Fine-tuning tag placement	II 150
11.2.15	Subordinate numbering sequences	II 152
11.2.16	Resetting the equation counter	II 153

11.3	Matrix-like environments	II 153
11.3.1	amsmath, mathtools — The matrix environments	II 154
11.3.2	amsmath, mathtools, cases — Some case environments	II 156
11.3.3	delarray — Delimiters surrounding an array	II 157
11.3.4	bigdelim — Delimiters around and inside arrays	II 158
11.3.5	Commutative diagrams with standard \LaTeX	II 159
11.3.6	amscd — Commutative diagrams à la AMS	II 160
11.3.7	tikz-cd — Commutative diagrams based on tikz	II 161
11.4	Compound structures and decorations	II 163
11.4.1	amsmath, mathtools, extarrows — Decorated arrows	II 163
11.4.2	Fractions and their generalizations	II 164
11.4.3	Continued fractions	II 166
11.4.4	Limiting positions	II 166
11.4.5	Stacking in subscripts and superscripts	II 167
11.4.6	amsmath, esint, wasysym — Multiple integral signs	II 168
11.4.7	diffcoeff — Handling derivatives of arbitrary order	II 170
11.4.8	Modular relations	II 171
11.4.9	mathtools, interval — Properly spaced intervals	II 171
11.4.10	braket — Dirac bra-ket and set notation	II 173
11.4.11	amsmath, mathtools, empheq — Boxed formulas	II 174
11.4.12	amsmath, accents, mathdots — Various accents	II 176
11.4.13	mattens — Commands to typeset tensors	II 178
11.4.14	Extra decorations for symbols	II 179
11.5	Variable symbol commands	II 180
11.5.1	Ellipsis and other kinds of	II 180
11.5.2	Horizontal extensions in standard \LaTeX	II 182
11.5.3	Further horizontal extensions	II 183
11.5.4	abraces — Customizable over and under braces	II 185
11.5.5	underoverlap — Partly overlapping horizontal braces	II 189
11.5.6	Vertical extensions	II 191
11.6	Words in mathematics	II 191
11.6.1	The <code>\text</code> command	II 192
11.6.2	Operator and function names	II 192
11.7	Fine-tuning the mathematical layout	II 194
11.7.1	Controlling the automatic sizing and spacing	II 195
11.7.2	Subformulas	II 197
11.7.3	Line breaking in inline formulas	II 197
11.7.4	Big-g delimiters	II 199
11.7.5	Radical movements	II 199
11.7.6	Ghostbusters™	II 200
11.7.7	Horizontal spaces	II 204
11.7.8	resizegather — Downscaling an equation	II 206
11.7.9	subdepth — Normalizing subscript positions	II 206
11.7.10	Color in formulas	II 207

11.8	Symbols in formulas	II 208
11.8.1	Mathematical symbol classes	II 209
11.8.2	Letters, numerals, and other Ordinary symbols	II 211
11.8.3	Mathematical accents	II 214
11.8.4	Binary operator symbols	II 214
11.8.5	Relation symbols	II 216
11.8.6	Operator symbols	II 222
11.8.7	Punctuation	II 222
11.8.8	Opening and Closing symbols	II 223

Chapter 12 Fonts in Formulas II 225

12.1	The world of (Latin) math alphabets	II 226
12.1.1	mathalpha — Simplified setup for math alphabets	II 230
12.2	Making it bold	II 235
12.2.1	bm — Making bold	II 235
12.3	Traditional math font setup through packages	II 238
12.3.1	ccfonts — The Concrete fonts for text and math	II 238
12.3.2	cmbright — The Computer Modern Bright fonts	II 239
12.3.3	euler, eulervm — Accessing Zapf’s Euler fonts	II 240
12.3.4	newtxmath — A Swiss knife for math font support	II 243
12.3.5	newpxmath — Using the PX fonts for math	II 248
12.3.6	mathpazo — Another Palatino-based approach for math	II 251
12.3.7	notomath — Setting up Noto fonts for math and text	II 252
12.4	unicode-math — Using Unicode math fonts	II 253
12.4.1	Math alphabets revisited	II 254
12.4.2	Adjusting the formula style	II 257
12.4.3	Setting up Unicode math fonts	II 259
12.5	A visual comparison of different math setups	II 261
12.5.1	Garalde (Oldstyle) serif fonts with math support	II 263
12.5.2	Transitional serif fonts with math support	II 271
12.5.3	Didone serif fonts with math support	II 284
12.5.4	Slab serif fonts with math support	II 288
12.5.5	Sans serif fonts with math support	II 290
12.5.6	Historical fonts with math support	II 295

Chapter 13 Localizing Documents II 297

13.1	T _E X and non-English languages	II 297
13.1.1	Language-related aspects of typesetting	II 299
13.1.2	Culture-related aspects of typesetting	II 300
13.1.3	babel — L ^A T _E X speaks multiple languages	II 300
13.2	The babel user interface	II 301
13.2.1	Setting or getting the current language	II 302
13.2.2	Handling shorthands	II 304
13.2.3	Language attributes	II 307

13.2.4	BCP 47 tags	II 308
13.3	User commands provided by language options	II 308
13.3.1	Translations of fixed texts	II 309
13.3.2	Available shorthands	II 310
13.3.3	Language-specific commands	II 315
13.3.4	Layout considerations	II 320
13.3.5	Languages and font encoding	II 322
13.4	Support for Cyrillic and Greek	II 324
13.4.1	The Cyrillic alphabet	II 324
13.4.2	The Greek alphabet	II 328
13.5	Complex scripts	II 330
13.6	Tailoring babel	II 332
13.6.1	User level	II 333
13.6.2	Package level	II 336
13.6.3	The package file	II 339
13.7	Other approaches	II 341
13.7.1	Complex languages with 8-bit engines	II 341
13.7.2	Polyglossia	II 342
Chapter 14	Index Generation	II 343
14.1	Syntax of the index entries	II 345
14.1.1	Simple index entries	II 346
14.1.2	Generating subentries	II 347
14.1.3	Page ranges and cross-references	II 347
14.1.4	Controlling the presentation form	II 347
14.1.5	Printing special characters	II 348
14.1.6	Creating a glossary	II 349
14.1.7	Defining your own index commands	II 349
14.1.8	Special considerations	II 350
14.2	<i>MakeIndex</i> —A program to sort and format indexes	II 350
14.2.1	Generating the formatted index	II 351
14.2.2	Detailed options of the <i>MakeIndex</i> program	II 351
14.2.3	Error and warning messages	II 355
14.2.4	Customizing the index	II 356
14.2.5	Pitfalls to watch out for	II 362
14.3	upmendex—A Unicode-aware indexing program	II 364
14.3.1	Options, warnings, and errors of the program	II 364
14.3.2	Customizing the index with upmendex	II 366
14.4	xindy, xindex—Two other indexing programs	II 370
14.5	Enhancing the index with L ^A T _E X features	II 371
14.5.1	Modifying the layout	II 371
14.5.2	showidx, repeatindex, tocbibind, indxcite—Little helpers	II 372
14.5.3	index—Producing multiple indexes	II 372

Chapter 15	Bibliography Generation	II 375
15.1	The standard \LaTeX bibliography environment	II 376
15.2	The biber and \BibTeX programs	II 378
15.2.1	bibtex8 — An 8-bit reimplementation of \BibTeX	II 379
15.2.2	biber — A Unicode-aware bibliography processor	II 379
15.3	The \BibTeX database format	II 380
15.3.1	Entry types and fields	II 384
15.3.2	Additional fields	II 390
15.3.3	The text part of a field explained	II 393
15.3.4	Abbreviations in \BibTeX	II 401
15.3.5	Extended data references with biber: the <code>xdata</code> entry type	II 403
15.3.6	The \BibTeX database preamble command	II 405
15.3.7	Cross-referencing entries	II 406
15.3.8	Managing the \BibTeX and biber differences	II 408
15.4	Using \BibTeX or biber to produce the bibliography	II 409
15.5	On-line bibliographies	II 413
15.6	Bibliography database management tools	II 414
15.6.1	checkcites — Which citations are used, unused, or missing?	II 414
15.6.2	biblist — Printing \BibTeX database files	II 415
15.6.3	bibclean, etc. — A set of command-line tools	II 415
15.6.4	Using biber as a tool	II 417
15.7	Formatting the bibliography with styles	II 418
15.7.1	A collection of \BibTeX style files	II 419
15.7.2	custom-bib — Generate \BibTeX styles with ease	II 426
15.7.3	An overview of biblatex styles	II 432
15.7.4	Generic styles	II 435
15.7.5	Implementations of style guides	II 439
15.7.6	Implementations of university and institution styles	II 445
15.7.7	Implementations of journal styles	II 455
15.7.8	Styles that extend the data model	II 461
15.7.9	Styles not fitting in the other categories	II 464
Chapter 16	Managing Citations	II 469
16.1	Introduction	II 469
16.1.1	Bibliographical reference schemes	II 470
16.2	The number-only system	II 473
16.2.1	Standard \LaTeX — Reference by number	II 475
16.2.2	cite — Enhanced references by number	II 478
16.2.3	notoccite — Solving a problem with unsorted citations	II 483
16.2.4	natbib's approach to number-only references	II 484
16.2.5	biblatex's approach to number-only references	II 484
16.3	The author-date system	II 487
16.3.1	Early attempts	II 489
16.3.2	natbib — Customizable author-date references	II 490

16.3.3	biblatex's approach to author-date references	II 500
16.4	The author-number system	II 502
16.4.1	natbib — Revisited.	II 503
16.4.2	biblatex's approach to author-number references.	II 506
16.5	The author-title system	II 507
16.5.1	jurabib — Customizable short-title references	II 507
16.5.2	biblatex's approach to author-title references.	II 534
16.6	The verbose system.	II 537
16.6.1	bibentry — Full bibliographic entries in running text	II 537
16.6.2	biblatex's approach to verbose citations	II 538
16.7	biblatex — One ring to rule them all	II 541
16.7.1	Basic biblatex setup.	II 543
16.7.2	Package options.	II 543
16.7.3	Citing with biblatex	II 544
16.7.4	Indexing citations automatically	II 546
16.7.5	Back references and links	II 547
16.7.6	Bibliography entries with multiple authors	II 547
16.7.7	Unambiguous citations	II 548
16.7.8	Printing the bibliography	II 550
16.7.9	The sorting of the bibliography	II 554
16.7.10	Document divisions	II 556
16.7.11	Annotated bibliographies	II 557
16.7.12	Bibliography lists	II 558
16.7.13	Language support.	II 559
16.7.14	Distinguishing the author's gender	II 560
16.7.15	Sentence casing.	II 561
16.7.16	Customizing	II 562
16.8	Multiple bibliographies in one document	II 569
16.8.1	chapterbib — Bibliographies per included file	II 571
16.8.2	bibunits — Bibliographies for arbitrary units.	II 574
16.8.3	bibtopic — Combining references by topic	II 578
16.8.4	multibib — Separate global bibliographies.	II 580

Chapter 17 **L^AT_EX Package Documentation Tools** II 583

17.1	doc — Documenting L ^A T _E X and other code	II 584
17.1.1	General conventions for the source file	II 585
17.1.2	Describing new macros and environments	II 585
17.1.3	Cross-referencing all macros used	II 588
17.1.4	The documentation driver.	II 589
17.1.5	Conditional code in the source	II 590
17.1.6	Providing additional documentation elements	II 592
17.1.7	Producing the actual index entries	II 593
17.1.8	Overview about all doc commands	II 594
17.1.9	ltxdoc — A simple L ^A T _E X documentation class	II 597

17.2	docstrip.tex — Producing ready-to-run code.....	II 599
17.2.1	Invocation of the docstrip utility	II 600
17.2.2	docstrip script commands	II 601
17.2.3	Using docstrip with L3 programming layer code	II 605
17.2.4	Using docstrip with other languages	II 605
17.3	l3build — A versatile development environment.....	II 606
17.3.1	The basic interface	II 607
17.3.2	Creating tests	II 608
17.3.3	Releasing to CTAN	II 611
17.3.4	Common configurations	II 613
17.4	Making use of version control tools.....	II 615
17.4.1	gitinfo2 — Accessing metadata from Git.	II 616
17.4.2	svn-multi — Accessing Subversion keywords	II 617
17.4.3	filemod — Printing or checking file modification dates	II 619
Appendix A \LaTeX Overview for Preamble, Package, and Class Writers		II 621
A.1	Linking markup and formatting.....	II 622
A.1.1	Command and environment names	II 622
A.1.2	Defining simple commands	II 624
A.1.3	Defining simple environments	II 629
A.1.4	Defining more complex commands and environments	II 632
A.1.5	Changing arguments to command names.	II 644
A.2	Counters and length expressions.....	II 646
A.2.1	Defining and changing counters	II 646
A.2.2	fmtcount — Specially formatted counters and numbers	II 650
A.2.3	sillypage — Page and other counting à la Monty Python	II 651
A.2.4	Defining and changing space parameters	II 651
A.2.5	The L3 programming layer — Computation support.	II 657
A.3	Page markup — Boxes and rules.....	II 660
A.3.1	LR boxes	II 661
A.3.2	Paragraph boxes	II 663
A.3.3	Rule boxes	II 667
A.3.4	Manipulating boxed material	II 669
A.3.5	Box commands and color	II 670
A.4	\LaTeX 's hook management.....	II 671
A.4.1	Working with existing hooks	II 671
A.4.2	Declaring hooks and using them in code	II 681
A.5	Control structure extensions.....	II 685
A.5.1	iftex — On which \TeX engine are we running on?	II 685
A.5.2	calc — Arithmetic calculations	II 687
A.5.3	ifthen — Advanced control structures	II 689
A.6	Package and class file structure.....	II 693
A.6.1	The rollback part	II 693
A.6.2	The identification part	II 696

A.6.3	The initial code part	II 697
A.6.4	The declaration of options	II 697
A.6.5	The execution of options	II 699
A.6.6	Declaring and using options with a key/value syntax	II 700
A.6.7	The package loading part	II 703
A.6.8	The main code part	II 704
A.6.9	Special commands for package and class files	II 704
A.6.10	Special commands for class files	II 708
A.6.11	A minimal class file	II 710
Appendix B Tracing and Resolving Problems		II 711
B.1	Error messages	II 712
B.2	Dying with memory exceeded	II 744
B.3	Warnings and informational messages	II 749
B.4	T _E X and L _A T _E X commands for tracing	II 765
B.4.1	Displaying command definitions and register values	II 766
B.4.2	Diagnosing page-breaking problems	II 769
B.4.3	Diagnosing and solving paragraph-breaking problems	II 773
B.4.4	Other low-level tracing tools	II 779
B.4.5	trace — Selectively tracing command execution	II 781
Appendix C Going Beyond		II 783
C.1	Learn L _A T _E X — A L _A T _E X online course for beginners	II 784
C.2	Finding information available on your computer	II 785
C.2.1	kpsewhich — Find files the way T _E X does	II 785
C.2.2	texdoc — A command-line interface to local T _E X information	II 786
C.3	Accessing online information and getting help	II 787
C.3.1	texdoc.org — searchable documentation on the Web	II 787
C.3.2	Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) resources	II 787
C.3.3	Using news groups and forums	II 788
C.3.4	The L _A T _E X Project's web presence	II 789
C.4	Getting all those T _E X files	II 789
C.4.1	CTAN — The Comprehensive T _E X Archive Network	II 789
C.4.2	T _E X distributions — past and present	II 790
C.5	Giving back to the community	II 792
Bibliography		II 795
Index of Commands and Concepts		II 817
People		II 967
Biographies		II 973
Production Notes		II 977

List of Figures

Part I

1.1	Data flow in the \LaTeX system	9
2.1	The layout for display and run-in headings	52
2.2	Parameters defining the layout of a contents file.	73
2.3	The outline view of a PDF	104
3.1	Tracking in action	192
3.2	Schematic layout of footnotes	209
3.3	The placement of text and footnotes with the <code>ftnright</code> package	229
4.1	Parameters used by the <code>list</code> environment	259
5.1	Page layout parameters and visualization	367
5.2	Schematic overview of how \LaTeX 's legacy mark mechanism works	389
5.3	A paragraph from <i>Alice</i> under different <code>\looseness</code> settings	428
8.1	A \LaTeX box and possible <code>origin</code> reference points.	593
9.1	Major font characteristics (mono/proportional spaced)	652
9.2	Comparison of serifed and sans serif letters	653
9.3	Comparison between upright and italic shapes.	654
9.4	Comparison between capitals and small capitals.	655
9.5	Outline and shaded shapes	656
9.6	Scaled and designed fonts (Latin Modern)	657

Part II

12.1	Sample page typeset with Computer Modern text + math fonts	II 262
12.2	Sample page typeset with Cochineal text + math fonts	II 263
12.3	Sample page typeset with EB Garamond text + math fonts	II 264
12.4	Sample page typeset with Garamondx text + math fonts	II 264
12.5	Sample page typeset with Garamond Libre + Garamond Math fonts . .	II 265
12.6	Sample page typeset with Kp Roman Light text + math fonts	II 266
12.7	Sample page typeset with Kp Roman text + math fonts	II 266
12.8	Sample page typeset with KpRoman + Kp Math fonts.	II 267
12.9	Sample page typeset with Palatino text + Pazo Math fonts	II 268
12.10	Sample page typeset with Pagella text + New PX math fonts	II 269
12.11	Sample page typeset with Pagella text + Kp math fonts	II 269
12.12	Sample page typeset with Pagella + Pagella Math fonts.	II 270
12.13	Sample page typeset with Pagella + Asana Math fonts	II 270
12.14	Sample page typeset with BaskervilleF text + math fonts	II 271
12.15	Sample page typeset with Baskervaldx text + math fonts	II 272
12.16	Sample page typeset with Baskervaldx text + Times math fonts. . . .	II 272
12.17	Sample page typeset with Bonum + Bonum Math fonts.	II 273
12.18	Sample page typeset with Cambria text and math fonts	II 274
12.19	Sample page typeset with XCharter text + math fonts	II 275
12.20	Sample page typeset with New Century Schoolbook text + math fonts	II 276
12.21	Sample page typeset with Schola + Schola Math fonts	II 276
12.22	Sample page typeset with Libertinus text + Libertine math fonts . . .	II 277
12.23	Sample page typeset with Libertinus + Libertinus Math fonts	II 277
12.24	Sample page typeset with Lucida Bright text + Lucida Math fonts . . .	II 278
12.25	Sample page typeset with Lucida Bright + Math fonts.	II 279
12.26	Sample page typeset with Lucida Bright Demibold + Math fonts	II 279
12.27	Sample page typeset with Times text (Termes) + TX math fonts. . . .	II 280
12.28	Sample page typeset with Termes + Termes Math fonts	II 281
12.29	Sample page typeset with XITS + XITS Math fonts	II 281
12.30	Sample page typeset with STIX 2 using package stickstootext	II 282
12.31	Sample page typeset with STIX 2 text + math fonts	II 282
12.32	Sample page typeset with Erewhon text + math fonts	II 283
12.33	Sample page typeset with Computer Modern text + math fonts	II 284
12.34	Sample page typeset with Latin Modern text + math fonts	II 285
12.35	Sample page typeset with Latin Modern + Latin Modern Math fonts . .	II 285
12.36	Sample page typeset with NewComputerModern + Math fonts.	II 286
12.37	Sample page typeset with NewComputerModern Book + Math fonts. . .	II 286
12.38	Sample page typeset with Noto text + math fonts	II 287
12.39	Sample page typeset with Concrete text + math fonts	II 288
12.40	Sample page typeset with Concrete text + Euler math fonts	II 289
12.41	Sample page typeset with DejaVu + DejaVu Math fonts	II 289
12.42	Sample page typeset with CM Bright text + math fonts.	II 290

12.43	Sample page typeset with Fira Sans + Fira Math fonts	II 291
12.44	Sample page typeset with GFS Neo-Hellenic text + math fonts	II 291
12.45	Sample page typeset with Iwona text + math fonts	II 292
12.46	Sample page typeset with Iwona text + math fonts	II 292
12.47	Sample page typeset with Kp Sans text + math fonts	II 293
12.48	Sample page typeset with Kurier text + math fonts	II 294
12.49	Sample page typeset with Kurier text + math fonts (light).	II 294
12.50	Sample page typeset with Noto Sans text + math fonts.	II 295
12.51	Sample page typeset with Antykwa Toruńska text + math fonts	II 296
12.52	Sample page typeset with Antykwa Toruńska text + math fonts (light, condensed).	II 296
14.1	The sequential flow of index processing	II 344
14.2	Stepwise development of index processing	II 345
14.3	Example of <code>\index</code> commands and the <code>showidx</code> package	II 352
14.4	Printing the index and the output of the <code>showidx</code> option.	II 353
15.1	Sample \BibTeX database (<code>tlc.bib</code>)	II 382
15.2	A second sample \BibTeX database (<code>tlc-ex.bib</code>).	II 391
15.3	Data flow when running \BibTeX or <code>biber</code> and \LaTeX	II 410
A.1	An example of a class file extending <code>article</code>	II 709

List of Tables

Part I

1.1	Major file types used by \LaTeX	11
2.1	\LaTeX 's standard sectioning commands.	32
2.2	Language-dependent strings for headings	37
3.1	Parameters used by <code>ragged2e</code>	124
3.2	Effective <code>\baselinestretch</code> values for different font sizes	141
3.3	SI base units	170
3.4	Coherent derived units in the SI with special names and symbols . . .	170
3.5	Non-SI units accepted for use with the International System of Units .	171
3.6	SI prefixes.	172
3.7	Footnote symbol lists predefined by <code>footmisc</code>	211
4.1	Commands controlling an <code>itemize</code> list environment	255
4.2	Commands controlling an <code>enumerate</code> list environment.	256
4.3	Status values for different types of checklists.	294
4.4	Languages supported by <code>listings</code> (spring 2022).	323
4.5	Length parameters used by <code>multicols</code>	356
4.6	Counters used by <code>multicols</code>	357
5.1	Standard paper size options in \LaTeX	368
5.2	Default values for the page layout parameters (<code>letterpaper</code>).	369
5.3	Page style defining commands in \LaTeX	397
6.1	The preamble specifiers in the standard \LaTeX <code>tabular</code> environment. .	436
6.2	Preamble specifiers in the <code>array</code> package	439
6.3	The preamble options in the <code>tabulary</code> package	451

7.1	Keys supported by the <code>\hvFloat</code> command	561
7.2	Keys supported by the <code>keyfloat</code> commands	569
8.1	Examples of coordinate systems.	633
8.2	Common path operations (overview).	636
8.3	Path actions and their abbreviation commands.	638
9.1	Standard size-changing commands.	666
9.2	Standard font-changing commands and declarations.	667
9.3	Font attribute defaults	671
9.4	Predefined math alphabet identifiers in \LaTeX	678
9.5	Classification of the Computer Modern font families	684
9.6	Classification of the Latin Modern font families	687
9.7	\TeX Gyre packages for setting up fonts	689
9.8	PSNFSS packages for setting up fonts	691
9.9	Commands made available with the <code>TS1</code> encoding	696
9.10	Values accepted by the <code>Numbers</code> key	716
9.11	Values accepted by the <code>Letters</code> key	717
9.12	Values accepted by the <code>VerticalPosition</code> key	719
9.13	Values accepted by the <code>Ligatures</code> key.	720
9.14	Values accepted by the <code>Kerning</code> key	722
9.15	Values accepted by the <code>Style</code> key	725
9.16	Weight and width classification of fonts	732
9.17	Shape classification of fonts	734
9.18	Standard font encodings used with \LaTeX	737
9.19	Glyph chart for <code>msbm10</code> produced by the <code>nfssfont.tex</code> program.	750
9.20	Math symbol type classification	751
9.21	LICR objects represented with single characters	755
9.22	Glyph chart for a <code>T1</code> -encoded font (<code>ec-lmr10</code>).	763
9.23	Standard LICR objects.	768

Part II

10.1	Structure of the font family classification tables	II 5
10.2	Classification of the <i>Alegreya</i> font families	II 11
10.3	Classification of the Computer Modern Bright font families	II 12
10.4	Classification of the <i>DejaVu</i> (<i>Vera</i>) font families	II 13
10.5	Classification of the <i>Fira</i> font families	II 14
10.6	Classification of the <i>Gandhi</i> font families.	II 15
10.7	Classification of the <i>Go</i> font families.	II 16
10.8	Classification of the <i>Inria</i> font families	II 17
10.9	Classification of the <i>Kp</i> font families.	II 18
10.10	Classification of the <i>Libertinus</i> font families	II 20
10.11	Classification of the <i>Lucida</i> font families	II 22
10.12	Classification of the <i>Merriweather</i> font families	II 25

10.13	Classification of the Google Droid font families	II 26
10.14	Classification of the Google Noto font families	II 28
10.15	Classification of the Google Noto font families (cont.)	II 29
10.16	Classification of the IBM Plex font families.	II 31
10.17	Classification of the Paratype PT font families	II 32
10.18	Classification of the Quattrocento font families	II 33
10.19	Classification of the Roboto font families.	II 35
10.20	Classification of the Adobe SourceCode font families	II 36
10.21	Classification of the Coelacanth font family	II 37
10.22	Classification of fbb (Cardo) font family	II 38
10.23	Classification of the Accanthis Font family.	II 39
10.24	Classification of the GFS Artemisia font family	II 40
10.25	Classification of the Crimson Pro/Cochineal font families	II 40
10.26	Classification of the Cormorant Garamond font family	II 41
10.27	Classification of the EBGaramond font family.	II 42
10.28	Classification of the Garamond Libre fonts.	II 43
10.29	Classification of the URW Garamond No. 8 font family.	II 44
10.30	Classification of the Gentium Plus font family	II 45
10.31	Classification of the Pagella (Palatino) family	II 46
10.32	Classification of the Antykwa Poltawskiego font family	II 47
10.33	Classification of the Libre Baskerville and BaskervilleF font families. .	II 48
10.34	Classification of the Baskervaldx font family	II 49
10.35	Classification of the Bonum (Bookman) family	II 49
10.36	Classification of the Cambria family	II 50
10.37	Classification of the Charter family.	II 51
10.38	Classification of the Charis SIL family	II 51
10.39	Classification of the Libre Caslon font family	II 52
10.40	Classification of the Literaturnaya font family	II 53
10.41	Classification of the Schola (New Century Schoolbook) family	II 54
10.42	Classification of the Termes (Times) family (T _E X Gyre distribution) . .	II 56
10.43	Classification of the Termes (Times) family (New TX distribution) . . .	II 56
10.44	Classification of the Tempora font family	II 57
10.45	Classification of the Tinos font family.	II 57
10.46	Classification of the STIX 2 font family	II 58
10.47	Classification of the Utopia family and its forks	II 59
10.48	Classification of the GFS Bodoni font family.	II 61
10.49	Classification of the Libre Bodoni font family	II 61
10.50	Classification of the GFS Didot font family.	II 62
10.51	Classification of the Theano Didot font family	II 62
10.52	Classification of the Old Standard font family	II 63
10.53	Classification of the Playfair Display font family.	II 64
10.54	Classification of the Bitter font family.	II 65
10.55	Classification of the Concrete font family	II 66
10.56	Classification of the Arimo family.	II 69
10.57	Classification of the Adventor (Avant Garde) family.	II 69

10.58	Classification of the Cabin font family.	II 70
10.59	Classification of the Chivo font family.	II 71
10.60	Classification of the URW Classico font family	II 72
10.61	Classification of the Clear Sans family.	II 72
10.62	Classification of the Cuprum font family	II 73
10.63	Classification of the Cyklop font family.	II 74
10.64	Classification of the GFS Neo-Hellenic font family	II 75
10.65	Classification of the Gillius and Gillius No2 font families	II 76
10.66	Classification of the Heros (Helvetica) family	II 77
10.67	Classification of the Iwona font family	II 78
10.68	Classification of the Kurier font family	II 80
10.69	Classification of the Lato font family.	II 81
10.70	Classification of the Libre Franklin font family	II 82
10.71	Classification of the Mint Spirit and Mint Spirit No2 font families . . .	II 83
10.72	Classification of the Montserrat font families	II 83
10.73	Classification of the Overlock font family	II 85
10.74	Classification of the Raleway font family	II 86
10.75	Classification of the Rosario font family	II 87
10.76	Classification of the Universalis font family	II 88
10.77	Classification of the AlgolRevived font family.	II 89
10.78	Classification of the Anonymous Pro font family.	II 90
10.79	Classification of the Cursor (Courier) family.	II 91
10.80	Classification of the Inconsolata font family.	II 92
10.81	Classification of the LuxiMono font family	II 95
10.82	Classification of the Cinzel font family	II 98
10.83	Classification of the Marcellus font family	II 98
10.84	Classification of the Fell Types.	II 99
10.85	Classification of the Almendra font family.	II 100
10.86	Classification of the Antykwa Toruńska font family.	II 101
10.87	Classification of the Chorus (Zapf Chancery) family.	II 103
10.88	Classification of the Miama Nueva family.	II 103
10.89	Glyphs in the PostScript font Zapf Dingbats.	II 114
10.90	Glyphs in the AnonymousPro Symbol font	II 115
10.91	Glyphs in Waldi's symbol font (wasy)	II 116
10.92	Glyphs in the MarVoSym font (mvs)	II 117
10.93	Glyphs in the Ornaments ADF font (OrnamentsADF).	II 118
10.94	Glyphs in the Fourier Ornaments font (futs).	II 119
10.95	Glyphs in the webomints font (webo)	II 120
10.96	Glyphs in fontawesomefree0 solid	II 121
10.97	Glyphs in fontawesomefree0 regular	II 121
10.98	Glyphs in fontawesomefree1 solid	II 122
10.99	Glyphs in fontawesomefree1 regular	II 122
10.100	Glyphs in fontawesomefree2 solid	II 123
10.101	Glyphs in fontawesomefree2 regular	II 123
10.102	Glyphs in fontawesomefree3 solid only	II 124

10.103	Brand logos in fontawesomebrands0	II 124
10.104	Brand logos in fontawesomebrands1	II 125
10.105	TIPA shortcut characters	II 126
11.1	Display environments in the amsmath/mathtools packages	II 132
11.2	Default rule thickness in different math styles	II 165
11.3	List of matrix tensor input commands.	II 178
11.4	Pattern elements to construct braces and brackets	II 185
11.5	Vertically extensible symbols.	II 190
11.6	Predefined operators and functions	II 193
11.7	Mathematical styles in subformulas	II 195
11.8	Mathematical spacing commands	II 205
11.9	Space between symbols.	II 210
11.10	Latin letters and arabic numerals	II 212
11.11	Symbols of class <code>\mathord</code> (Greek)	II 212
11.12	Symbols of class <code>\mathord</code> (letter-shaped)	II 213
11.13	Symbols of class <code>\mathord</code> (miscellaneous).	II 213
11.14	Mathematical accents, giving subformulas of class <code>\mathord</code>	II 214
11.15	Symbols of class <code>\mathbin</code> (miscellaneous).	II 215
11.16	Symbols of class <code>\mathbin</code> (boxes)	II 215
11.17	Symbols of class <code>\mathbin</code> (circles).	II 216
11.18	Symbols of class <code>\mathrel</code> (equality and order).	II 217
11.19	Symbols of class <code>\mathrel</code> (equality and order — negated)	II 217
11.20	Symbols of class <code>\mathrel</code> (sets and inclusion).	II 218
11.21	Symbols of class <code>\mathrel</code> (sets and inclusion — negated).	II 218
11.22	Symbols of class <code>\mathrel</code> (arrows).	II 219
11.23	Symbols of class <code>\mathrel</code> (arrows — negated)	II 220
11.24	Symbol parts of class <code>\mathrel</code> (negation and arrow extensions)	II 220
11.25	Symbols of class <code>\mathrel</code> (various colons)	II 221
11.26	Symbols of class <code>\mathrel</code> (miscellaneous).	II 221
11.27	Symbols of class <code>\mathop</code>	II 222
11.28	Symbols of class <code>\mathpunct</code> , <code>\mathinner</code> , <code>\mathord</code> (punctuation).	II 223
11.29	Symbol pairs of class <code>\mathopen</code> and <code>\mathclose</code> (extensible).	II 223
11.30	Symbol pairs of class <code>\mathopen</code> and <code>\mathclose</code> (nonextensible)	II 224
12.1	Behavior and argument scope of <code>\sym</code> commands.	II 257
12.2	Effects of <code>math-style</code> and <code>bold-style</code>	II 258
13.1	Selective list of language options supported by the babel system	II 301
13.2	Language-dependent strings in babel (English defaults)	II 305
13.3	Language-dependent strings in babel (French, Greek, Polish, Russian)	II 309
13.4	Different methods for representing numbers by letters	II 317
13.5	Alternative mathematical operators for Eastern European languages	II 321
13.6	Glyph chart for a T2A-encoded font (larm1000).	II 325

13.7	Glyph chart for an LGR-encoded font (<code>grmn1000</code>).	II 329
13.8	Greek transliteration with Latin letters for the LGR encoding	II 330
13.9	LGR ligatures producing single-accented glyphs	II 330
13.10	Available composite spiritus and accent combinations.	II 331
14.1	Input style parameters for <i>MakeIndex</i> and <i>upmendex</i>	II 357
14.2	Output style parameters for <i>MakeIndex</i> and <i>upmendex</i>	II 358
14.3	Group headings style parameters for <i>MakeIndex</i> and <i>upmendex</i>	II 359
14.4	Additional output style parameters for <i>upmendex</i>	II 367
14.5	Supported ICU locale settings for <code>icu_locale</code>	II 369
14.6	ICU attributes supported by <i>upmendex</i>	II 369
15.1	\BibTeX 's entry types as defined in most styles	II 386
15.2	Additional standard entry types provided by <i>biblatex</i>	II 387
15.3	\BibTeX 's standard entry fields (A–K).	II 388
15.4	\BibTeX 's standard entry fields (L–Z)	II 389
15.5	Examples of <i>biblatex</i> date inputs	II 400
15.6	Predefined journal strings in \BibTeX styles	II 403
15.7	Selected \BibTeX style files (A–B).	II 420
15.8	Selected \BibTeX style files (C–J)	II 421
15.9	Selected \BibTeX style files (K–N).	II 423
15.10	Selected \BibTeX style files (P–U)	II 424
15.11	Requirements for formatting names	II 426
15.12	Language support in <i>custom-bib</i>	II 429
16.1	Comparison of different bibliographical support packages.	II 474
16.2	Gender specification in <i>jurabib</i>	II 526
16.3	Comparison of packages for multiple bibliographies	II 570
17.1	<i>doc</i> — <i>Preamble and input commands</i>	II 595
17.2	<i>doc</i> — Document structure commands.	II 595
17.3	<i>doc</i> — Index commands.	II 596
17.4	<i>doc</i> — History information.	II 596
17.5	<i>doc</i> — Layout and typesetting parameters	II 597
A.1	\LaTeX 's units of length	II 652
A.2	Predefined horizontal spaces	II 653
A.3	Predefined vertical spaces	II 654
A.4	Default values for \TeX 's rule primitives	II 668
A.5	\LaTeX 's internal <code>\boolean</code> switches.	II 691
A.6	Commands for package and class files	II 694
A.7	Special commands for package and class files	II 705

Foreword

Before my retirement, I had the distinct privilege to work with leading authors in computing and related, technical fields. In many cases, my job as editor was simply to be an encouraging and sympathetic presence, as well as a welcome dining companion, while trying to make the publishing process as painless for them (and for in-house staff) as I could. As in childbirth, of course, eliminating all pain was virtually impossible; over unexpectedly long periods, authors yielded much too much time for family, pleasure, and sleep, all in the pursuit of a newborn book. I sometimes felt like an able midwife; other times, I could do nothing more than boil water and hope for the best. In the end, I was always proud of what these creative men and women could produce.

At no time during my lengthy tenure was my pride greater than it was for the authors who gave the world two, now three, editions of *The L^AT_EX Companion*. Building on the original inventions of Don Knuth and Leslie Lamport — speaking of my privilege to have worked with the best! — and led in each case by Frank Mittelbach, they have reached deeply into the work of selfless contributors, including themselves, to define the current state of L^AT_EX typesetting, and then to organize and document, in one authoritative and comprehensive publication, the tools now available for both beginning and advanced users.

My pride, I should say, has its origins in the book's publisher itself. Addison-Wesley (A-W), now an imprint of Pearson, had been founded by a printer, Melbourne Cummings, and Mel's values for production quality, particularly for textbooks with heavy mathematical content, were engrained in the company from the start (Thomas's *Calculus and Analytical Geometry* was his first book). Indeed, some notable authors with concern for the physical look of their books selected A-W precisely because of those values, even when they thought they might get a bigger

sales bang elsewhere (they ultimately were pleased to get both)! Don, by the way, having just developed \TeX , was the author Mel most strongly insisted to me on meeting in person, wishing to speak, as it were, typesetter to typesetter.

I have to leave it for the Preface to describe the book's contents more specifically. I have been away from \LaTeX too long to be able to add much anyway. I have no idea, for example, whether newer versions of the system incorporate AI, so that a user might hear a HAL-like voice in the computer say something like, "Are you sure you want such narrow margins, Dave?" Nor do I know if the system now has 3D options, so that an important discovery literally jumps out from the page. Never mind. See the Preface.

What I can add from experience, and I am sure this much has not changed, is that \LaTeX authors and users are an intense and serious bunch when it comes to making their writing look good. I admire their attention to detail, to getting precisely the right format to present their ideas. I once was dining out with one such person, and watched as he studied the menu for quite some time. A very picky eater, I thought. But when he finally put the menu down, he tapped it with his pointed finger and told me, as the best appetizer for him, which letter didn't go well with the balance of the font. I, by contrast, soon became more concerned with a mushroom that didn't seem to go well with the rest of my meal.

From experience, too, I can tell you that there are \LaTeX users all over the world, and not just in those places you would expect to find them. The land of Gutenberg, sure, but how about a user in South America typesetting his book while bullets from a civil war literally flew by his university window (talk about intensity!)? I once also received user survey feedback from a urologist in Kenya. I frankly forget what his comment or question was — it was long ago — but I do remember being impressed how far \LaTeX use had spread, and into what surprising fields. Without doubt, an extensive literature search would turn up beautifully typeset works on the broadest range of topics, maybe even a book on digital rectal examinations.

Putting my own finger to the wind, as even former editors are wont to do, the need and demand for this revision are clear. Wherever you are, whatever your subject area, you will surely find in the pages (and pages) that follow the most helpful \LaTeX typesetting support a user could ever hope for. That certainly was my experience with the first two editions, and I now invite you to make it yours with the third.

Peter S. Gordon
Publishing Partner (Ret.)

To be continued in Part II . . .

Preface

With \LaTeX being a voluntary effort,
it seems quite appropriate that
TLC also stands for “tender, loving care”
(Concise Oxford Dictionary)!
David Rhead, 1994

I have now been involved in computer based typesetting for nearly four decades, three of them as the technical lead for the development of \LaTeX . During that long period there have been impressive technical advances in many different areas.

When I started there was no Internet to speak of — there were no browsers and there was no World Wide Web as we know it today. To book a hotel on my first trip to California to meet with Leslie Lamport, I had to resort to a travel agency that used fax machines to arrange the trip; on the flight I was served free alcoholic drinks (bad idea); and my computer at home was an Atari with two floppy drives (younger people probably only know these as the strange “save icon” in many software programs and perhaps have wondered what that represents) and an impressive external hard disc with 100mb of storage (that cost me a fortune at that time).

However, already back then \LaTeX had existed for some time and worked fine, though a lot of today’s functionality was unavailable or, even if available, impossible to use, because computer processing speed was simply too slow.¹ As explained in more detail in the history section in Chapter 1, most of our enthusiastic ideas back then for a new and improved \LaTeX were simply two decades too early, and while we had a fully working first version of the L3 programming layer in the early nineties our

¹The first simple \TeX documents I produced on a large university mainframe took about half a minute per page — you could literally watch the progress as `[, wait, 1, wait,], long wait, ...` — and we still thought it was great and fast.

users would have died of caffeine consumption waiting for the results of processing their documents if we had dared to inflict it on them.

This all has changed since that time and today my smartphone is faster than the mainframe power available in the nineties. As a result, many new packages appeared over time and a lot of our dormant ideas and concepts envisioned in 1990 were finally integrated into \LaTeX on the memorable day of February 2, 2020.

Since then, this programming environment has been used by the \LaTeX Team to offer new functionality and also by many package authors developing new packages. All these developments — the recent as well as the older — are covered in this book.



*The Companion
editions — setting the
standard for a
dozen years each*

When Michel, Alexander, and I wrote the first edition of *The \LaTeX Companion* [56] in 1993, we intended to describe what is usefully available in the \LaTeX world (though ultimately we ended up describing the then-new \LaTeX 2 ϵ standard and what was useful and available at CERN in those days). As an unintended side effect, this first edition *defined* for most readers what should be available in a then-modern \LaTeX distribution. Fortunately, most of the choices we made at that time proved to be reasonable, and the majority (albeit not all) of the packages described in the first edition are still in common use today.

During the following decade the *Companion* (nicknamed the “doggie book” because of its cover) became a core resource for many \LaTeX users, with several reprints and translations into German, Japanese, and Russian.

Our approach was to provide comprehensive coverage for typical \LaTeX documents so that for most users the *Companion* would serve as the only reference needed to get “the job” done. More esoteric package features or features still under development were not described. Instead, pointers to the package documentation were given if we thought such a feature was worth mentioning. This approach worked well, so at the turn of the millennium one reviewer wrote, “while the book shows its age, it still remains a solid reference in most parts”.

*The second edition
in the new
millennium ...*

Nevertheless, much had changed and a lot of new and exciting functionality had been added to \LaTeX during that decade and it became clear that a revised edition was necessary. This second edition [145], published in 2004, saw a major change in the authorship: I took over as principal author (so from then on I am to blame for all the faults in the *Companion* editions) and several members of the \LaTeX Project Team joined in the book’s preparation, enriching it with their knowledge and experience in individual subject areas.

We ended up rewriting 90% of the original content and adding about 600 additional pages describing impressive and useful new developments. As a result, the second edition was essentially a new book — a book that we hoped preserved the positive aspects of the first edition even as it greatly enhanced them, while at the same time avoiding the mistakes we made back then, both in content and presentation (though, of course, we made some new ones). From the reception in the user community, I think it is fair to say that we largely succeeded — in fact, that book served even longer as a useful resource.

However, a decade or more is an awfully long time for a technical book, even given the longevity and stability of \LaTeX and the *Companion*'s approach of describing a coherent and well-established set of packages. So in 2017 I started discussing with Kim Spenceley (my new editor at Addison-Wesley/Pearson after Peter Gordon's retirement) plans for a third edition of *The \LaTeX Companion*. One question to solve up front was that of authorship. Initially, it looked as if I would have to do any necessary work all by myself this time, because none of the previous co-authors was available to help for one reason or another, making it a very daunting task indeed.

... and nearly
two decades later,
the third

Fortunately, this impression was wrong! In the end I got great help from Ulrike Fischer, who wrote Chapters 15 and 16, the sections on `hyperref` and `tikz`, and helped with numerous tasks during the production of this edition.

Javier Bezos and Johannes Braams took on the task of revising Chapter 13 on localizing documents, and Joseph Wright helped with describing `siunitx` and the section on source control support. Thanks to all of them — without their help the book would have been much more difficult to finish.


Furthermore, Nelson Beebe kindly offered to read *all* chapters, checking them for accuracy as well as doing a first pass on copyediting. He provided numerous suggestions for improvements and I cannot thank him enough for undertaking that enormous task! The professional copy editor and the two proofreaders found additional boo-boos of mine, and I then found a few they missed while entering their corrections. I am sure our readers will find even more — it is a never-ending task, but we all did our best and, on the whole, I think we delivered a solid result.

Big thanks to our
volunteer copy
editor Nelson!

The new edition

Initially, when I discussed plans for a third edition of *The \LaTeX Companion*, I expected the need for a large number of updates to the existing material, but not many additions. Thus, my naive estimate was that the book would perhaps grow by 10–15%.

However, after researching in depth the new material that had been developed since 2004, it became crystal clear that to remain faithful to the core promise of the *Companion* — to be a solid reference for the majority of \LaTeX users to get their work done — we had to include a much larger amount of new material:

 What's in it
for you?

- Descriptions of highly useful, large-scale packages that appeared in the meantime or were substantially updated in the last decade, e.g., `biblatex`, `fontspec`, `hyperref`, `mathtools`, `siunitx`, `tcolorbox`, `unicode-math`, and `tikz`, to name a few.
- A larger number of smaller packages that cover new ground and are useful for day-to-day work or for specialized (but not too esoteric) tasks.¹
- Two new chapters on the exciting possibilities offered by using high-quality fonts for text *and* math — yes, \LaTeX is no longer restricted to Computer Modern fonts or a few PostScript fonts that were set up for use with \LaTeX in the nineties.

You can now choose from a large number of high-quality, free fonts for both text and math; the only serious remaining problem is finding the ones you like. These chapters help with that, by showing samples of more than one hundred

¹Give or take the odd exception, e.g., `sillywalk`, which I found just too lovely to bypass.

*Big thanks to Adam,
helping me with
my two favorite
“coffee table book”
chapters*

text fonts and more than forty alternative math font setups. I am very grateful for the help I received from Adam Twardoch (president of GUST, the Polish T_EX users group, and the designer of the Lato fonts) on this, who spent many hours with me during two BachoT_EX conferences, guiding me through the fonts available today and helping to select those of high quality for inclusion in the book.

- We also had to cover newer engine developments, e.g., the use of Unicode engines with L^AT_EX, across all chapters of the book. There are often subtle differences that you need to be aware of if you use these engines.
- Finally, there have been very important changes to L^AT_EX itself, which is undergoing a transformation that started in 2018, to keep it relevant in the years to come. Examples are the new hook management system for L^AT_EX, the extended document command syntax, and the inclusion of the L3 programming layer into the L^AT_EX format. All this is covered in the appropriate places — just take a peek at the term “L3 programming layer” in the index to see how much of the new material is already based on it.

In that sense the third edition is like the first: both have been written just after L^AT_EX itself had seen major changes and these exciting changes and additions are covered.

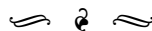
All this relevant information is now part of the new edition, but as a result we ended up with 1700 pages, not including the index — clearly too much to be printed as a single book that you can reasonably use as a day-to-day reference on your desk.

*Two parts — one
(virtual) book*

For that reason the decision was made to split the book into two parts of roughly equal size and market them as a unit.¹ The chapter progression follows more or less the successful order of the earlier editions, starting with elements and concepts that you need quite often in nearly all documents (the first few chapters in Part I) followed by topics you also usually need in most documents but not necessarily all the time (remainder of Part I and most of Part II).

Of course, if you are a mathematician you might end up keeping Chapter 11 open all the time, but if your interest is typesetting novels or company reports, it might be the chapter least often touched.

Part II also contains three important appendices on core L^AT_EX commands for defining your own little commands or applications, one on resolving errors (not that you would make any, would you?), and one on getting further help if this edition is not answering your questions — unlikely I’m sure, but then who knows?



As David Rhead observed in the quotation at the beginning of the preface, TLC is not only an acronym for *The L^AT_EX Companion* but also stands for “tender, loving care” and this is most certainly an accurate description of the efforts and lifeblood poured into the works described on the pages of this book.

¹For technical and accounting reasons that still means three separate ISBNs, one for each part and one for the bundle. From my perspective this is far from perfect, but it is how the world of publishing and logistics works. It means that while it is theoretically possible to buy only one part, there is little sense in that — unless you have used it so much that it is worn out and you want a fresh copy.

There are millions of L^AT_EX users out there (the online service Overleaf alone reported ten million accounts in 2022) and most of them use L^AT_EX because they love its typesetting capabilities and its superior quality. With L^AT_EX being easily extensible, users often adapt L^AT_EX to their needs in new fields and for new applications, and some of them go one step further, packaging their solution and making it available to others — usually supporting it long after they have a private need for it.

This is why we now have close to 5000 packages for use with L^AT_EX on the Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network (CTAN) and why its catalogue lists nearly 3000 contributors. It is because of their dedication and “tender, loving care” that T_EX and L^AT_EX stayed relevant for nearly four decades, offering unsurpassed quality and, likely, continuing to do so for several decades to come.

*A standing salute
to all these dedicated
developers in the
L^AT_EX world!*



Looking back, it took roughly five years and several thousand hours to write this book, which sounds like an awfully long time and a huge effort — both of which are true — but the effort was rooted in the complexity and size of the task.

The first phase of the production was reading through the documentation of nearly 5000 packages available in today’s L^AT_EX distributions, classifying them according to functionality, usability, and correctness. This included testing all packages initially considered as candidates for inclusion, to see if their documentation actually matched reality (often it did not — mine included ☺) and to come up with relevant use cases and examples. Often, alternative solutions provided by different packages existed, in which case a more in-depth analysis was necessary to decide which packages to recommend. That phase took somewhat more than a year.

Research

After this initial survey I started with documenting the selected packages or, in the case of packages already in the previous edition, revising and updating the existing material, describing new functionality, or rearranging the documentation to provide better access.

Describe

Frequently, while thinking up useful examples, I found some errors in a package or in its documentation or identified valuable but missing functionality, in which case a discussion with the package author started. As a side effect, this process more than once messed up the text that I had already written about the package, because afterwards I had to account for the new or changed functionality that I had requested. Thus, in several cases I rewrote whole sections or provided new, improved examples when further features became available. However, a real headache proved to be the larger, complex packages that sometimes come with several hundred pages of documentation. The task in such a case is to work through all this material and figure out what from it is needed by the majority of our readers, describe it adequately, and point out which areas I had left out or only skimmed over.

Of course, in many other cases the situation was reversed; i.e., the package functionality was good, but the documentation difficult to understand or incomplete, so here the task was to provide a different, possibly expanded, and hopefully better description. In either case, a strong focus was on providing useful, ready-to-apply examples, of which this edition has more than 1550. They have all been handcrafted to cover the typical use cases and support the accompanying documentation in the book.

This phase took close to three years, which means roughly writing two pages per day if working without break — going at it each and every day, including weekends (and for large periods it was like this).


Produce

The final phase, which started in spring 2022, was to pass all the work, chapter by chapter, to the professional copy editors engaged by Pearson, enter their corrections, and then do the layout of the chapters.¹ Once a chapter was in its final form I passed it back to a proofreader, who verified that the corrections had been correctly entered (not always), followed by a final pass by another proofreader who checked the final version once more. In parallel, Keith Harrison and I worked through all chapters to compile a useful concept index. The overall process took nine months, and I completely underestimated the amount of work necessary for this, even though I should have known better from previous books.

*Many thanks to Kim
and Julie for making
the book a reality*

My sincere thanks to Kim Spenceley, my editor at Pearson, and Julie Nahil, my senior content producer, who steered me patiently through the whole process, putting up with my idiosyncrasies while keeping me on track, and at the same time making sure that my quest for quality was supported as much as possible.



*Was it worth
the effort?* 

Maybe you are asking yourself was that worth it, in the days of the Internet, where you can search for almost anything in a matter of seconds or watch a video that explains how to do something?

My personal answer to that question is a clear yes, because while there is a huge amount of information out there, it is of very varying quality, from extremely good to horrendously bad, misleading, or even plain wrong. This makes it very difficult for a user to sort the wheat from the chaff and, as a result, this overflow of information is not helpful unless you get good guidance.

And this guidance, we trust, is what the *Companion* is offering you, by providing you with a curated set of packages covering all areas of document production, showing you suitable solutions to various problems, and explaining the limitations when using one or the other approach.

We hope that this new edition will become a good companion for you for many years to come — just like the previous editions in the last decades. If it turns out that we achieved that, it will certainly be something to be proud of.

Frank Mittelbach

November 2022

¹The nightmarish but also oddly satisfying task to lay out a book like this is described in the Production Notes at the very end of Part II.

CHAPTER 1

Introduction

1.1 A brief history (of nearly half a century)	1
1.2 Today's systems	8
1.3 Working with this book	13

\LaTeX is not just a system for typesetting mathematics. Its applications span one-page memoranda, business and personal letters, newsletters, articles, and books covering the whole range of the sciences and humanities ... right up to full-scale expository texts and reference works on all topics. Versions of \LaTeX now exist for practically every type of computer and operating system. This book provides a wealth of information about its many present-day uses but first provides some background information.

The first section of this chapter looks back at the origins and subsequent development of \LaTeX .¹ The second section gives an overview of the file types used by a typical current \LaTeX system and the rôle played by each. Finally, the chapter offers some guidance on how to use the book.

1.1 A brief history (of nearly half a century)

In May 1977, Donald Knuth of Stanford University [95] started work on the text-processing system that is now known as “ \TeX and METAFONT” [84–88]. In the foreword of *The \TeX book* [84], Knuth writes: “ \TeX [is] a new typesetting system intended for the creation of beautiful books — and especially for books that contain a lot of mathematics. By preparing a manuscript in \TeX format, you are telling a computer exactly how the manuscript is to be transformed into pages whose typographic quality is comparable to that of the world’s finest printers.”

In the Beginning ...

¹ A more personal account can be found in *The \LaTeX legacy: 2.09 and all that* [176].

In 1979, Gordon Bell wrote in a foreword to an earlier book, *T_EX and METAFONT, New Directions in Typesetting* [82]: “Don Knuth’s Tau Epsilon Chi (T_EX) is potentially the most significant invention in typesetting in this century. It introduces a standard language in computer typography and in terms of importance could rank near the introduction of the Gutenberg press.”

In the early 1990s, Donald Knuth produced an updated version and also officially announced that T_EX would not undergo any further development [96, 97] in the interest of stability. Perhaps unsurprisingly, the 1990s saw a flowering of experimental projects that extended T_EX in various directions; many of these are coming to fruition in the early 21st century, making it an exciting time to be involved in automated typography.

The development of T_EX from its birth as one of Don’s “personal productivity tools” (created simply to ensure the rapid completion and typographic quality of his then-current work on *The Art of Computer Programming*) [90] was largely influenced and nourished by the American Mathematical Society on behalf of U.S. research mathematicians.

... and Lamport saw
that it was Good.

While Don was developing T_EX, in the early 1980s, Leslie Lamport started work on the document preparation system now called L^AT_EX, which used T_EX’s typesetting engine and macro system to implement a declarative document description language based on that of a system called Scribe by Brian Reid [168]. The appeal of such a system is that a few high-level L^AT_EX declarations, or commands, allow the user to easily compose a large range of documents without having to worry much about their typographical appearance. In principle at least, the details of the layout can be left for the document designer to specify elsewhere.

The second edition of *L^AT_EX: A Document Preparation System* [106] begins as follows: “L^AT_EX is a system for typesetting documents. Its first widely available version, mysteriously numbered 2.09, appeared in 1985.” This release of a stable and well-documented L^AT_EX led directly to the rapid spread of T_EX-based document processing beyond the community of North American mathematicians.

L^AT_EX was the first widely used language for describing the logical structure of a large range of documents and hence introducing the philosophy of logical design, as used in Scribe. The central tenet of “logical design” is that the author should be concerned only with the logical content of his or her work and not its visual appearance. Back then, L^AT_EX was described variously as “T_EX for the masses” and “Scribe liberated from inflexible formatting control”. Its use spread very rapidly during the next decade. By 1994 Leslie could write, “L^AT_EX is now extremely popular in the scientific and academic communities, and it is used extensively in industry”. But that level of ubiquity looks quite small when compared with the present day when it has become, for many professionals on every continent, a workhorse whose presence is as unremarkable and essential as the workstation on which it is used.

Going global

The worldwide availability of L^AT_EX quickly increased international interest in T_EX and in its use for typesetting a range of languages. L^AT_EX 2.09 was (deliberately) not globalized, but it was globalizable; moreover, it came with documentation worth translating because of its clear structure and straightforward style. Two pivotal conferences (Exeter UK, 1988, and Karlsruhe Germany, 1989) established clearly the widespread adoption of L^AT_EX in Europe and led directly to International L^AT_EX [180]

and to work led by Johannes Braams [23] on more general support for using a wide variety of languages and switching between them (see Chapter 13).

Note that in the context of typography, the word *language* does not refer exclusively to the variety of natural languages and dialects across the universe; it also has a wider meaning. For typography, “language” covers a lot more than just the choice of “characters that make up words”, as many important distinctions derive from other cultural differences that affect traditions of written communication. Thus, important typographic differences are not necessarily in line with national groupings but rather arise from different types of documents and distinct publishing communities.

Another important contribution to the reach of \LaTeX was the pioneering work of Frank Mittelbach and Rainer Schöpf on a complete replacement for \LaTeX ’s interface to font resources, the New Font Selection Scheme (NFSS) (see Chapter 9). They were also heavily involved in the production of the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\text{-}\text{\LaTeX}$ system that added advanced mathematical typesetting capabilities to \LaTeX (see Chapter 11).

The Next Generation

As a reward¹ for all their efforts, which included a steady stream of bug reports (and fixes) for Leslie, by 1989 Frank and Rainer “were allowed” to take over the maintenance and further development of \LaTeX . One of their first acts was to consolidate International \LaTeX as part of the kernel² of the system, “according to the standard developed in Europe”. Very soon version 2.09 was formally frozen, and although the change-log entries continued for a few months into 1992, plans for its demise as a supported system were already far advanced as something new was badly needed. The worldwide success of \LaTeX had by the early 1990s led in a sense to too much development activity: under the hood of Leslie’s “family sedan” many \TeX nicians had been laboring to add such goodies as super-charged, turbo-injection, multivalved engines and much “look-no-thought” automation. Thus, the announcement in 1994 of the new standard \LaTeX , christened $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$, explains its existence in the following way:

Too much of a Good Thing™

Over the years many extensions have been developed for \LaTeX . This is, of course, a sure sign of its continuing popularity but it has had one unfortunate result: incompatible \LaTeX formats came into use at different sites. Thus, to process documents from various places, a site maintainer was forced to keep \LaTeX (with and without NFSS), \SLiTeX , $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\text{-}\text{\LaTeX}$, and so on. In addition, when looking at a source file it was not always clear for which format the document was written.

To put an end to this unsatisfactory situation a new release of \LaTeX was produced. It brings all such extensions back under a single format and thus prevents the proliferation of mutually incompatible dialects of $\text{\LaTeX} 2.09$.

The development of this “New Standard \LaTeX ” and its maintenance system was started in 1993 by the \LaTeX Project Team [148], which soon comprised the author of this book, Rainer Schöpf, Chris Rowley, Johannes Braams, Michael Downes (1958–2003), David Carlisle, Alan Jeffrey, and Denys Duchier, with some encouragement and gentle bullying from Leslie. Although the major changes to the basic \LaTeX system (the kernel) and the standard document classes (styles in 2.09) were completed by

*Standard \LaTeX
($\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$)*

¹Pronounced “punishment”.

²*Kernel* here means the core, or center, of the system.

1994, substantial extra support for colored typography, generic graphics, and fine positioning control were added later, largely by David Carlisle. Access to fonts for the new system incorporated work by Mark Purtil on extensions of NFSS to better support variable font encodings and scalable fonts [30–32].

1994 — The first edition of the L^AT_EX Companion

At this point in the story the first edition of the *L^AT_EX Companion* was written, which helped a lot in making many important packages known to a wide audience and as a side effect helped shape a standard corpus of L^AT_EX packages expected to be available on any installation across the world.

Towards the 21st century

Although the original goal for this L^AT_EX 2_ε was consolidation of the wide range of incompatible models carrying the L^AT_EX marquee, what emerged was a substantially more powerful system with both a robust mechanism (via L^AT_EX packages) for extension and, importantly, a solid technical support and maintenance system. This provides robustness via standardization and maintainability of both the code base and the support systems. The core of this system remains the current standard L^AT_EX system that is described in this book. It has fulfilled most of the goals for “a new L^AT_EX for the 21st Century”, as they were envisaged back in 1989 [151, 153].

The specific claims of the current system are “... better support for fonts, graphics and color; actively maintained by the L^AT_EX Project Team”. The details of how these goals were achieved, and the resulting subsystems that enabled the claims to be substantially attained, form a revealing study in distributed software support: the core work was done in at least five countries and, as is illustrated by the bugs database [108], the total number of active contributors to the technical support effort remains high.

The package system

Although the L^AT_EX kernel suffered a little from feature creep in the late 1990s, the package system together with the clear development guidelines and the legal framework of the L^AT_EX Project Public License (LPPL) [111, 132] have enabled L^AT_EX to remain almost completely stable while supporting a wide range of extensions. These have largely been provided by a similarly wide range of people who have, as the project team are happy to acknowledge and the online catalogue [197] bears witness, enhanced the available functionality in a vast panoply of areas.

Development work

All major developments of the base system have been listed in the regular issues of *L^AT_EX News* [107]. At the turn of the century, development work by the L^AT_EX Project Team focused on the following areas: supporting multi-language documents [130]; a “Designer Interface for L^AT_EX” [141]; major enhancements to the output routine [131]; improved handling of inter-paragraph formatting; and the complex front-matter requirements of journal articles. Back then prototype code had been made available (see [140]), but the work has otherwise been kept separate from L^AT_EX — partly because it was executing simply too slowly on the available hardware.

No new features at the kernel level ...

One thing the project team steadfastly refused to do at that time was to unnecessarily “enhance” the kernel by providing additional features as part of it, thereby avoiding the trap into which L^AT_EX 2.09 fell in the early 1990s: the disintegration into incompatible dialects where documents written at one site could not be successfully processed at another site. In this discussion it should not be forgotten that L^AT_EX serves not only to produce high-quality documents but also to enable collaboration and exchange by providing a lingua franca for various research communities.

With $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$, documents written in 1996¹ can still be run with today's \LaTeX . In the opposite direction, new documents run on older kernel releases if the additional packages used are brought up-to-date — a task that, in contrast to updating the \LaTeX kernel software, is easily manageable even for users working in a multiuser environment (e.g., in a university or company setting).

But a stable kernel is not identical to a standstill in software development; of equally crucial importance to the continuing relevance and popularity of \LaTeX is the diverse collection of contributed packages building on this stable base. The success of the package system for nonkernel extensions is demonstrated by the enthusiasm of these contributors — many thanks to all of them! As can be easily appreciated by visiting the highly accessible and stable Comprehensive \TeX Archive Network (see Appendix C) or by reading this book (where more than 250 of these “Good Guys”² are listed on page –II 967), this has supported the existence of an enormous treasure trove of \LaTeX packages and related software.

... but no standstill

The provision of services, tools, and systems-level support for such a highly distributed maintenance and development system was itself a major intellectual challenge, because many standard working methods and software tools for these tasks assume that your colleagues are in the next room, not the next continent (and in the early days of the development, e-mail and FTP were the only reliable means of communication). The technical inventiveness and the personalities of everyone involved were both essential to creating this example of the friendly face of open software maintenance, but Alan Jeffrey and Rainer Schöpf deserve special mention for “fixing everything”.

The back office

A vital part of this system that is barely visible to most people is the regression testing system with its vast suite of test files [129]. It was initially devised and set up by Frank and Rainer with Daniel Flipo; it has proved its worth countless times in the never-ending battle with the bugs. Over the years it has seen many refinements, cumulating in a complete rewrite as part of `l3build` [147], which we describe in Section 17.3 on page –II 606.

In 2004, i.e., roughly a decade after its first edition, the second edition of the \LaTeX *Companion* was published. Due to the popularity of $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ and its extended features for developers, new important packages had emerged, and \LaTeX had reached out into new domains. While the advice given in the first edition remained largely valid (last but not least because of the long-term backward compatibility paradigm of \LaTeX), we ended up rewriting 90% of the original content and added about 600 pages to account for new developments. As before, the second edition helped a lot in standardizing the use, and this way the interoperability, of \LaTeX across the world.

2004 — The second edition of the \LaTeX Companion

Some members of the \LaTeX Project Team have built on the team's experience to extend their individual research work in document science beyond the current \LaTeX structures and paradigms. Some examples of their work up to now can be found

Research

¹The time between 1994 and 1996 was a consolidation time for $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$, with major fixes and enhancements being made until the system was thoroughly stable. In fact, with some minor alterations in pagination or font usage, it is usually possible to reprocess even documents from the eighties (i.e., written for \LaTeX 2.09) or make them reusable with little effort.

²Unfortunately, this is nearly the literal truth: you need a keen eye to spot the few ladies listed.

in the following references: [33, 35–37, 133–135, 138, 149, 175, 177]. An important spin-off from the research work was the provision of some interfaces and extensions that are immediately usable with standard \LaTeX .

...and into the future

The decision to keep the core of the standard \LaTeX system stable and essentially unchanging had two major advantages over any other approach to support fully automated document processing. First, the system already efficiently provided high-quality formatting of a large range of elements in very complex documents of arbitrary size. Second, it was robust in both use and maintenance and hence offered the potential to remain in widespread use for at least a further 15 years.¹ In the second edition of this book we wrote on this topic:

As more such functionality is added, it will become necessary to assess the likelihood that merely extending \LaTeX in this way will provide a more powerful, yet still robust and maintainable, system. This is not the place to speculate further about the future of \LaTeX but we can be sure that it will continue to develop and to expand its areas of influence whether in traditional publishing or in electronic systems for education and commerce.

Reassessment time

This reassessment became necessary in the second decade of the new century, when it became obvious that this position was gradually getting unsustainable, because more and more areas in which people were looking for solutions could not be adequately addressed with a model of a fixed kernel and all developments outsourced to the package level. Examples are the move to Unicode in basically all operating systems and the growing pressure to produce “accessible” documents that conform to standards such as PDF/UA (Portable Document Format/Universal Accessibility).

An important policy change 

Thus, in 2015, the \LaTeX Project Team changed its policy and restarted kernel development. To retain the best of both worlds this was accompanied by developing a rollback/roll-forward functionality for the kernel and packages (that care to implement it). This allows a current \LaTeX format to roll back to an earlier point in time in order to process old documents that rely on interfaces that have been changed since then or to process documents that explicitly worked around bugs (and so expect them to be there) that have been fixed in the meantime.

The first action of the team was to retire the `fixltx2e` package and instead include the accumulated fixes it contained directly in the format and to officially support \LaTeX when using the Unicode engines \XeTeX and \LuaTeX . A big step forward happened in 2018 when \LaTeX switched its default input encoding to UTF-8. This change proved that the policy change was the right thing to do and that the preparatory work (e.g., providing rollback) allows executing even major changes without disruption in its user base in order to keep \LaTeX relevant and useful. A good indicator for the renewed and increased activity are the regular \LaTeX newsletters [107] accompanying each release, which grew bulkier and again appeared semi-annually.

¹One of the authors of the second edition had publicly staked a modest amount of beer on \TeX remaining in general use (at least by mathematicians) until at least 2010. He should have made a larger bet, given that this is now 2022 and \LaTeX is healthy and in fact growing its user base due to its many unsurpassed qualities.

The event of providing the mythical \LaTeX 3 had long become a standing joke as “two years from ‘now’ — with ‘now’ a moving target”. The reason was that the concepts and ideas for \LaTeX 3 have been simply a decade or more too early, and while the team implemented a fully working version already in 1990, it was simply too slow to be usable with the then available computing power. Thus, we gave up pursuing it and instead concentrated on offering \LaTeX 2 ϵ , which then went public in 1994.

And where is the mythical \LaTeX 3?

But ideas and concepts were never forgotten by the team, and especially its newer members (who joined in this century) pushed them back to the forefront and improved them dramatically. As a result, the code was eventually publicly made available as the `expl3` package. It was then picked up by a number of enthusiastic package developers and used as the basis for their new packages. For example, if you use `acro`, `breqn`, `fontspec`, `siunitx`, `unicode-math`, or `xparse`, to name a few, you use “ \LaTeX 3” under the hood; a recent count shows more than 200 such packages or classes as part of \TeX Live.

So in 2019 the \LaTeX Project Team made two wide-ranging decisions: there will not be a separate \LaTeX 3 that is being developed alongside \LaTeX 2 ϵ (as was originally planned). Instead, we will modernize the current \LaTeX gradually from the inside, using the new rollback mechanism and “development” formats as a safety net to ensure that there is no disruption of service for our user base. As a first step on this journey, the L3 programming layer and the \LaTeX 3 document-level command declarations (formerly known as `expl3` and `xparse`) were made an integral part of \LaTeX on February 2, 2020. Thus, more or less exactly 30 years after its conception, \LaTeX 3 became a reality for every \LaTeX user — even though few will have immediately noticed.

... well it got merged into the kernel in 2020

The importance of this step is that it allows the team to modernize other parts of the kernel and develop new functionality entirely based on the L3 programming layer, which offers many features not available with legacy \LaTeX programming constructs. For example, the new Hook Management System for \LaTeX , which is a cornerstone for modernizing and transforming the existing \LaTeX , is entirely written using the new L3 programming layer, and other parts will follow suit.

The foundation layer for modernization

As already mentioned, there is a steadily increasing interest in the production of “tagged” PDF documents that are “accessible”, in the sense that they contain information to assist screen reading software, etc., and, more formally, that they adhere to the PDF/UA (Portable Document Format/Universal Accessibility) standard [190], explained further in [47]. In many disciplines this is starting to become a requirement when applying for grants or when publishing results.

Today's challenge: structured and accessible output is needed

At the moment, all methods of producing such “accessible PDFs”, including the use of \LaTeX , require extensive manual labor in preparing the source or in post-processing the PDF (maybe even at both stages); and these labors often have to be repeated after making even minimal changes to the (\LaTeX or other) source. This is a huge pity, because \LaTeX should in theory be well positioned to do this work automatically, given that its source is already well-structured.

The production of tagged (i.e., structured) PDF documents is not only important in order to comply to accessibility standards. It also opens possibilities to reuse data from such PDFs, because it allows other applications to correctly identify the structure inside the output document and this way extract or manipulate parts of the content — workflows that become increasingly important in the digital world.

The L^AT_EX Project Team has for some years been well aware that these new usages are not adequately supported by the current system architecture of L^AT_EX 2_ε and that major work in this area is therefore urgently needed to ensure that L^AT_EX remains an important and relevant document source format. However, the amount of work required to make such major changes to the L^AT_EX system architecture is enormous and definitely way beyond the limited resources of a small team of volunteers working in their spare time (or maybe just about possible, but only given a very long — and most likely too long — period of time).

A multi-year
project to shape
the future of L^AT_EX



At the T_EX Users Group conference 2019 in Palo Alto the team's previously pessimistic outlook on this subject became cautiously optimistic, because of discussions with senior executives from Adobe about the possibility of producing structured PDF from L^AT_EX source without the need for the usual requirement of considerable manual post-processing. As a result of these discussions, towards the end of 2019 the team produced an extended feasibility study for the project, aimed primarily at Adobe engineers and decision-makers. This study [144] describes in some detail the various tasks that constitute the project and their interdependencies. It also contains a project plan covering how, and in what order, these tasks should be tackled both to achieve the final goal and, at the same time, to provide intermediate concrete results that are relevant to user communities (both L^AT_EX and PDF); these intermediate results will help in obtaining feedback that is essential to the successful completion of later tasks.

This multi-year project found the approval of Adobe, which then committed to financially and otherwise supporting this endeavor [150]. Unfortunately — thanks to the COVID-19 pandemic — the start got delayed, but since the end of 2020, this exciting project is now well under way. First results from this project that are already in existence (such as the new hook management system and the alignment of the `hyperref` package with the L^AT_EX kernel) are already described in this book. Other parts are obviously still vaporware at this point. Fortunately, none is expected to render any documentation or suggestion made in this book obsolete — after all, the project goal is to enable tagging of existing documents, simply by reprocessing with minor configuration changes as outlined in the “Spoiler alert” Section 2.1.1 on page 23.

1.2 Today's systems

When we wrote the second edition of *The L^AT_EX Companion* (i.e., 2003–2004), standard L^AT_EX was (officially) supported only on 8-bit engines, e.g., pdfT_EX. Around the same time, the first version of the Unicode engine X_YT_EX and (somewhat later, in 2007) the first beta version of LuaT_EX appeared, and there were soon unofficial support files that helped people running L^AT_EX on these Unicode engines as well.

When LuaT_EX reached version 1.0, the L^AT_EX Project Team used the opportunity and officially took on L^AT_EX support for all three engines that included, for example, running the release regression test suite with its roughly 1000 tests against all three engines. Besides these three engines (which are covered in this book), there are further ones, such as pT_EX and upT_EX for Japanese, where the L^AT_EX adjustments for the engine are maintained by the respective user groups.

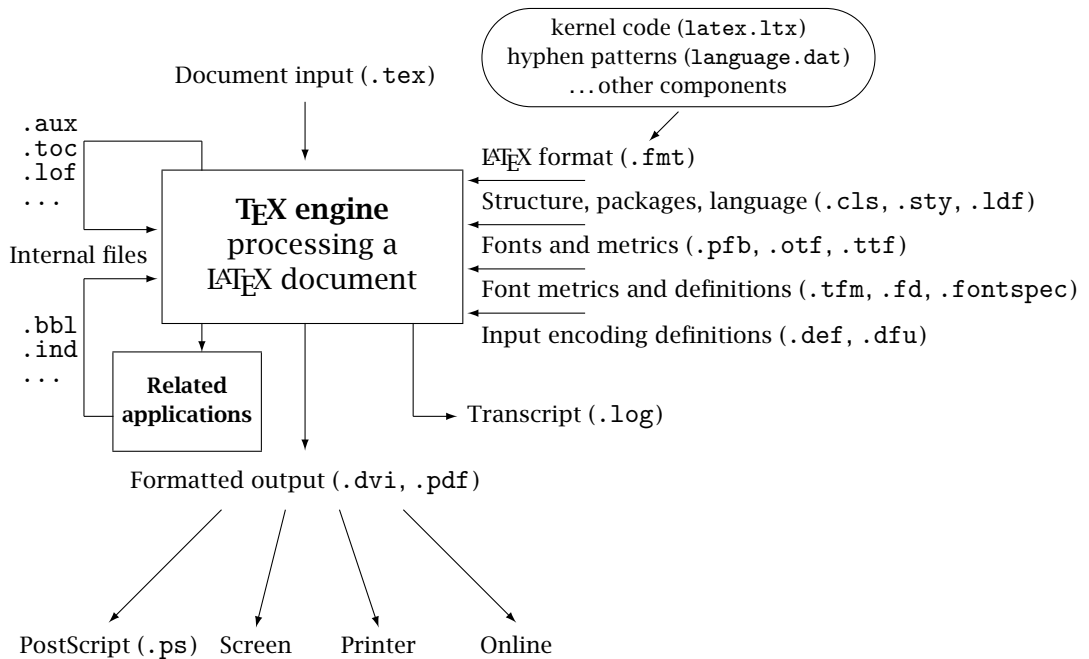



Figure 1.1: Data flow in the LTEX system

What is described in this book should work with all of these engine — in cases where there are differences between 8-bit and Unicode engines, then they are explicitly described (see page 18 for a description how).

However, each of the engines also has one or the other specialty compared to the original TEX program, which is available only with that particular engine; e.g., LuaTEX supports code written in Lua, or upTEX offers special commands for Japanese typography, etc. Standard LTEX either abstracts such features (when support is available in all engines and only the methods differ) or does not make use of the features — and for that reason such engine-specific commands are not discussed in the *LTEX Companion*. If you are interested in that level of coding, please refer to the engine documentation, e.g., for pdfTEX [65], for XETEX [173], and for LuaTEX [122].

In the remainder of the current section we present an overview of the vast array of files used by a typical LTEX system with its many components. This overview also involves some descriptions of how the various program components interact. Most users will never need to know the exact details of this software environment that supports their work, but this section will be a useful general reference and an aid to understanding some of the more technical parts of this book.

Although modern LTEX systems are most often embedded in project-oriented, menu-driven interfaces, behind the scenes little has changed from the file-based description given here. Figure 1.1 shows schematically the flow of information.

 *Engine specifics not covered in this book*

Files used in the LTEX universe

The following description assumes familiarity with a standard computer file system in which a “file extension” is used to denote the “type of a file”. In processing a document, the \LaTeX program reads and writes several files, some of which are further processed by other applications. The most important ones are listed in Table 1.1 on the next page. The book covers a total of 64 file types, but those not described in the current section are rather specialized and used only by individual packages.

*Document
input*

The most obviously important files in any \LaTeX -based documentation project are the *input source files*. Typically, there will be a main file that uses other subsidiary files (see Section 2.1). These files most often have the extension `.tex` (code documentation for \LaTeX typically carries the extension `.dtx`; see Chapter 17). They are commonly known as “plain text files”, because they can be prepared with a basic text editor. Often, external graphical images are included in the typeset document utilizing the graphics interface described in Section 8.1.

*Structure
and style*

\LaTeX also needs several files containing structure and layout definitions: *class* files with the extension `.cls`; *option* files with the extension `.clo`; *package* files with the extension `.sty` (see Appendix A). Many of these are provided by the basic system setup, but others may be supplied by other developers. \LaTeX is distributed with five standard document classes: *article*, *report*, *book*, *slides*, and *letter*. These document classes can be customized by the contents of other files specified either by class options or by loading additional packages as described in Section 2.1. In addition, many \LaTeX documents automatically input *language definition files* of the *babel* system with the extension `.ldf` (see Chapter 13) and *encoding definition files* of the *inputenc*/*fontenc* packages with the extension `.def` (see Chapter 9).

Font resources

The information that \LaTeX needs about the glyphs to be typeset is found in \TeX *font metric* files (extension `.tfm`). This does not include information about the shapes of glyphs, only about their dimensions. Information about which font files are needed by \LaTeX is stored in *font definition* files (extension `.fd`), or in case of Unicode engines sometimes in `.fontspec` files. Both types are loaded automatically when necessary. See Chapter 9 for further information about font resources.

The \LaTeX format

A few other files need to be available to \TeX , but you are even less likely to come across them directly. An example includes the \LaTeX format file `pdf \LaTeX .fmt` that contains the core \LaTeX instructions, precompiled for processing by the pdf \TeX formatter. There are some situations in which this format needs to be recompiled — for example, when changing the set of hyphenation rules available to \LaTeX (configured in `language.dat`; see Section 13.6.2) and, of course, when a new \LaTeX kernel is made available. The details regarding how such formats are generated differ from one \TeX implementation to the next, so they are not described in this book, but usually this all happens behind the scenes with the tools of the distribution you use.

The output from \LaTeX itself is a collection of *internal* files (see below), plus one very important file that contains all the information produced by \TeX about the typeset form of the document.

Formatted output

\TeX ’s own particular representation of the formatted document is that of a *device-independent* file (extension `.dvi`). \TeX positions glyphs and rules with a precision far better than $0.01\text{ }\mu\text{m}$ ($1/4,000,000$ inch). Therefore, the output generated by \TeX can be effectively considered to be independent of the abilities of any physical rendering device — hence the name. These days all major \TeX engines can alternatively produce

	<i>File Type</i>	<i>Common File Extension(s)</i>
<i>Document Input</i>	text	.tex .ltx
	bibliography	.bbl
	index / glossary	.ind / .gnd
<i>Graphics</i>	internal	.tex
	external	.ps .eps .tif .png .jpeg .jpg .gif .pdf
<i>Other Input</i>	layout and structure	.clo .cls .sty
	encoding definitions	.def .dfu
	language definitions	.ldf .ini
	font access definitions	.fd .fontspec
	configuration data	.cfg
<i>Internal Communication (Input and Output)</i>	auxiliary	.aux
	table of contents / partial	.toc / .ptc
	list of figures / tables	.lof / .lot
<i>Low-Level T_EX Input</i>	format	.fmt
	font image files	.pfb .otf .ttf .pk
	font metrics	.tfm
<i>Output</i>	formatted result	.dvi .pdf
	raw index / raw glossary	.idx / .glo
	transcript	.log
<i>Bibliography (BibT_EX)</i>	input / output	.aux / .bbl
	database / style / transcript	.bib / .bst / .blg
(biblatex)	style / citation / model / config	.bbx / .cbx / .dbx / .bcf
<i>Index</i>	input / output	.idx / .ind
	style / transcript	.ist / .ilg
<i>Documentation & Testing</i>	documentation / unpacking	.dtx .fdd / .ins
	test input / test output	.lvt / .tlg
<i>Archive</i>	dependencies / file usage	.dep / .fls

Table 1.1: Major file types used by L^AT_EX

PDF output (extension .pdf), and over time this has become the standard output format largely replacing .dvi.¹ The .dvi file format specifies only the names/locations of fonts and their glyphs — it does not contain any rendering information for those glyphs. The .pdf file format can and usually does contain such rendering information.

Some of the *internal* files contain code needed to pass information from one L^AT_EX run to the next, such as for cross-references (the *auxiliary* file, extension .aux; see Section 2.3) and for typesetting particular elements of the document such as the table of contents (extension .toc) and the lists of figures (extension .lof) and

Cross-references

¹There are established workflows based on .dvi usually post-processed further to PostScript and from there often to PDF. For that reason the original format will remain a viable option.

of tables (extension `.lot`). Others are specific to particular packages (such as `acro`, Section 3.3.2, or `enotez`, Section 3.5.10) or to other parts of the system (see below).

Errors, warnings,
and information

Finally, \TeX generates a transcript file of its activities with the extension `.log`. This file contains a lot of information, such as the names of the files read, the page numbers (in brackets) of the pages processed, warning and error messages, and other pertinent data that is especially useful when debugging errors (see Appendix B). When you use an editor with integrated \TeX support, this `.log` file is sometimes hidden from you and its data only selectively presented. If that is the case, it might be worth looking for it on the file system level, because it is likely to contain important information in case of problems that puzzle you.

Indexing

A file with the extension `.idx` contains individual unsorted items to be indexed. These items need to be sorted, collated, and unified by a program like *MakeIndex*, *upmendex*, or *xindy* (see Chapter 14). The sorted version is typically placed into a file (extension `.ind`) that is itself input to \LaTeX . For *MakeIndex* or *upmendex*, the *index style information* file has an extension of `.ist`, and the transcript file has an extension of `.ilg`; in contrast, *xindy* appears not to use any predefined file types.

Citations and
bibliography

Information about bibliographic citations (see Chapter 16) in a document is normally output by \LaTeX to the *auxiliary* file or to the *biber* control file (extension `.bcf`). This information is used first to extract the necessary information from a bibliographic database and then to sort it; the sorted version is put into a *bibliography* file (extension `.bb1`) that is itself input to \LaTeX . If the system uses \BibTeX or *biber* (see Chapter 15) for this task, then the *bibliographic database* files will have an extension of `.bib`, and the transcript file will have the extension `.blg`. With \BibTeX , additional information about the process will be in a *bibliography style* file (extension `.bst`); *biber* does not use styles — this is handled by *biblatex* in that case.

Using `\specials` in
the `.dvi` workflow

Because of the limitations of \TeX , especially its failure to natively handle graphics or color, it is often necessary to complete the formatting of some elements of the typeset document after \TeX has positioned everything and written this information to the `.dvi` file in some post-processing step. This is normally done by attaching extra information and handling instructions at the correct “geometrical position in the typeset document”, using \TeX ’s `\special` primitive that simply puts this information at the correct place in the `.dvi` file (see Chapter 8). This information may be simply the name of a graphics file to be input; or it may be instructions in a graphics language. This is then post-processed when the `.dvi` file is converted by a separate program, such as *dvips*, for printing or displaying. If \TeX is directly generating PDF, there is conceptually not much difference, except that the post-processing happens directly in the extended \TeX engine (e.g., *pdftex*, \XeTeX , or \LuaTeX) at the point where \TeX has finished a page and passes the result to a component that translates it to a PDF page. This component then plays the rôle that external programs play in the `.dvi` workflow: it also uses either `\specials` to communicate or additional primitives of the particular engine that do a similar job.

Using `\specials` in
the `.pdf` workflow

In either case, \LaTeX abstracts from the underlying workflow peculiarities so that you can always just specify `\color` or `\includegraphics`. \LaTeX translates that into the right `\special` commands based on your workflow and the chosen \TeX engine.

Seeing is believing

Once the document has been successfully processed by \TeX (and possibly transformed into PostScript or PDF), you probably want to take a look at the formatted text.

This is commonly done on screen, but detailed inspection of printed output should always be performed via printing on paper at the highest available resolution. The applications available for viewing documents on screen vary quite a lot depending on your chosen workflow and your operating system. If you generate PDF, then various free and commercial tools exist that differ mainly in their features to post-process the document, but not in the actual representation, because the PDF normally includes all resources used by the document. If, on the other hand, you want to view a `.dvi` file, you need a viewer that can find and display the fonts or graphics referenced in the `.dvi`, because they are not part of the file itself. Occasionally you therefore find that some applications produce far superior screen output than others; this is due to limitations of the different technologies and the availability of suitable font resources.

1.3 Working with this book

This final section of Chapter 1 gives an overview of the structure of this edition, the typographic conventions used, and ways to use the examples given. Because of its size, this edition is typeset as two separate physical volumes (Part I and Part II), which has some implications on the presentation.

Chapters are numbered consecutively across both volumes, but we restart the page numbers in Part II to keep the numbers readable. As a consequence, cross-references to pages come in two forms: if they are to a page in the same volume, they read “see page 253”, but if they refer to a page in the other volume, they look like “see page \rightarrow II 127” or similar.

The main index, which contains entries for the whole edition, is replicated at the end of each physical volume to improve its usability and make it easier to work with. To identify the volume each page number in an entry refers to, the start of each volume sequence is identified by \rightarrow I and \rightarrow II, respectively.

1.3.1 What’s where

Following is a summary of the subject areas covered by each chapter and appendix. In principle, all chapters can be read independently because, when necessary, pointers are given to where necessary supplementary information can be found in other parts of the edition.

Part I—

- Chapter 1** gives a short introduction to the \LaTeX system and this book.
- Chapter 2** discusses document structure markup, including sectioning commands and cross-references as well as document source management.
- Chapter 3** describes \LaTeX ’s basic typesetting commands for the paragraph level. It also contains a section on packages offering document development support.
- Chapter 4** looks at the typesetting of larger structures, such as lists and code displays, and shows how to work with multiple columns.

- Chapter 5** explains how to influence the visual layout of the pages in various ways.
- Chapter 6** shows how to lay out material tables, on single and multiple pages.
- Chapter 7** surveys floating material and caption formatting.
- Chapter 8** covers image loading and manipulation and the generation of portable graphics. It also offers an extensive overview on the `tcolorbox` package and an introduction to the world of `tikz`.
- Chapter 9** discusses in detail \LaTeX 's Font Selection Scheme and shows how to access new fonts in 8-bit and Unicode \TeX engines.

Part II—

- Chapter 10** gives a comprehensive list with examples of high-quality text and symbol fonts available out of the box to \LaTeX users today.
- Chapter 11** reviews mathematical typesetting, particularly the packages supported by the American Mathematical Society.
- Chapter 12** describes aspects of font usage in math formulas and offers a comparison between available font setups with 8-bit and Unicode \TeX engines.
- Chapter 13** discusses the support for using \LaTeX with multiple languages, particularly the `babel` system.
- Chapter 14** discusses the preparation and typesetting of an index with a focus on the programs *MakeIndex* and `upmendex`.
- Chapter 15** explains how to create and use bibliographical databases in conjunction with \LaTeX , and how to generate typeset bibliographies according to publishers' or style guide expectations.
- Chapter 16** describes \LaTeX 's support for the different citation systems for bibliographical references in common use and how to produce multiple bibliographies by chapter and topic.
- Chapter 17** shows how to document \LaTeX packages and classes and how to use such files provided by others. It also covers setting up a development and testing environment and working with version control, which is useful for essentially every project.
- Appendix A** reviews how to handle and manipulate the basic \LaTeX programming structures and how to produce class and package files.
- Appendix B** discusses how to trace and resolve problems and explains common error and warning messages and their likely causes.
- Appendix C** shows where to go beyond this book if that is ever needed, e.g., how to obtain the packages and systems described, how to access help or take an online course, and much more.

Some of the material covered in the book may be considered “low-level” \TeX that has no place in a book about \LaTeX . However, to the authors’ knowledge, much of this information has never been described in the “ \LaTeX ” context even though it is important. Moreover, we do not think that it would be helpful simply to direct readers to books like *The \TeX book*, because most of the advice given in books about “plain \TeX ” either is not directly applicable to \LaTeX or, worse, produces subtle errors if used with \LaTeX . In some sections we have, therefore, tried to make the treatment as self-contained as possible by providing all the information about the underlying \TeX engine that is relevant and useful within the \LaTeX context.

1.3.2 Typographic conventions

It is essential that the presentation of the material immediately conveys its function in the framework of the text. Therefore, we present below the typographic conventions used in this book.

Throughout the text, \LaTeX command and environment names are set in monospaced type (e.g., `\caption`, `enumerate`, `\begin{tabular}`), while names of packages, class files, and programs are in sans serif type (e.g., `article`). Commands to be typed by the user on a computer terminal are shown in monospaced type and are underlined, e.g., showing how to call the \LaTeX development format on the command line:

*Commands,
environments,
packages, ...*

```
pdflatex-dev <file>
```

The syntax of the more complex \LaTeX commands is presented inside a rectangular box. Command arguments are shown in italic type:

*Syntax
descriptions*

```
\titlespacing*{cmd}{left-sep}{before-sep}{after-sep} [right-sep]
```

In \LaTeX , optional arguments are denoted with square brackets, and the star indicates a variant form (i.e., is also optional), so the above box means that the `\titlespacing` command can come in four different incarnations:

```
\titlespacing{cmd}{left-sep}{before-sep}{after-sep}
\titlespacing{cmd}{left-sep}{before-sep}{after-sep} [right-sep]
\titlespacing*{cmd}{left-sep}{before-sep}{after-sep}
\titlespacing*{cmd}{left-sep}{before-sep}{after-sep} [right-sep]
```

For some commands, not all combinations of optional arguments and/or star forms are valid. In that case the valid alternatives either are explained in the text or are explicitly shown together, as, for example, in the case of \LaTeX ’s sectioning commands:

```
\section*{title}      \section[toc-entry]{title}
```

Here the optional *toc-entry* argument can be present only in the unstarred form; thus, we get the following valid possibilities:

```
\section{title}      \section*{title}      \section[toc-entry]{title}
```

Code examples ...

Lines containing examples with \LaTeX commands are indented and are typeset in a monospaced type at a size somewhat smaller than that of the main text:

```
\addtocontents{lof}{\protect\addvspace{10pt}}
\addtocontents{lot}{\protect\addvspace{10pt}}
```

... with output ...

However, in the majority of cases we provide complete examples together with the output they produce side by side:

The right column shows the input text to be treated by \LaTeX with preamble material shown in blue. In the left column one sees the result after typesetting.

```
\usepackage{ragged2e}
```

The right column shows the input text to be treated by \LaTeX with preamble material shown in blue. In the left column one sees the result after typesetting.

1-3-1

Note that all preamble commands are always **shown in blue** in the example source.

... with several pages ...

In case several pages need to be shown to prove a particular point, (partial) “page spreads” are displayed and usually framed to indicate that we are showing material from several pages.

1	A TEST
1	A test
	Some text for our page that might get reused over and over again.
	Some text for our
	Page 6 of 7

1	A TEST
	page that might get reused over and over again.
	Page 7 of 7

```
\usepackage{fancyhdr,lastpage}
\pagestyle{fancy}
\fancyhf{} % --- clear all fields
\fancyhead[RO,LE]{\leftmark}
\fancyfoot[C]{Page \thepage
              of \pageref{LastPage}}
% \sample defined as before

\section{A test}
\sample \par \sample
```

1-3-2

A number of points should be noted here:

- We usually arrange the examples to show pages 6 and 7 so that a double spread is displayed.
- We often use the command `\sample` to hold a short piece of text to keep the example code short: the definition for this command is either given as part of the example or, as indicated here, repeated from a previous example — which in this case is simply a lie because `\sample` was not defined earlier. In other examples we make use of `lipsum` or `kantlipsum` to generate sample text.
- The output may or may not show a header and footer. In the above case it shows both. Because the “pages” are very small but show the real output from the given input on the right, there are often deficiencies in line breaking, etc.

For large examples, where the input and output cannot be shown conveniently ... *with large output ...*
 alongside each other, the following layout is used:

```
\usepackage{ragged2e,kantlipsum} \RaggedRight
```

This is a wide line, whose input commands and output result cannot
 be shown nicely in two columns. \kant[1][1-3]

Depending on the example content, some additional explanation might appear between input and output (as in this case). Then the output is displayed:

This is a wide line, whose input commands and output result cannot be shown nicely in two columns. As any dedicated reader can clearly see, the Ideal of practical reason is a representation of, as far as I know, the things in themselves; as I have shown elsewhere, the phenomena should only be used as a canon for our understanding. The paralogisms of practical reason are what first give rise to the architectonic of practical reason. As will easily be shown in the next section, reason would thereby be made to contradict, in view of these considerations, the Ideal of practical reason, yet the manifold depends on the phenomena.

1-3-3


Chapter 11 shows yet another example format, where the margins of the example are explicitly indicated with thin blue vertical rules. This is done to better show the precise placement of displayed formulas and their tags in relation to the text margins. ... *or with lines indicating the margins*

1-3-4

$$(1) \quad (a + b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$$

```
\usepackage[leqno]{amsmath}
\begin{equation} (a+b)^2 = a^2+2ab+b^2 \end{equation}
```

Some examples make use of color commands, e.g., `\color` or `\textcolor`, but because the book is printed only with two colors, it is not possible to do them justice. The approach we took is that all colors appear as shades of gray except for blue, which we changed to produce the “lightblue” that is used as a second color in the book. Thus, all examples actually deploy the declarations as shown in the next example if they use color, but to save space none of them is shown elsewhere.


 *Color usage in this book*

```
\usepackage{xcolor}
\definecolor{blue}{cmyk}{1,0.56,0,0} % what we call 'blue' in this book
\definecolor{red}{gray}{.7} \definecolor{green}{gray}{.8}
\definecolor{yellow}{gray}{.9}
Black \textcolor{blue}{blue} \textcolor{red}{red} {\color{green} green}
\textcolor{yellow}{yellow} \colorbox{black!30}{\color{blue} blue}
\colorbox{blue}{blue!8}{\color{blue}bluish}
```

1-3-5

The notation `blue!8` is a short form for writing `blue!8!white`. It is `xcolor`'s way to specify simple color mixes and means that we mix 8% blue with 92% white.

All of these examples are “complete” if you mentally add a `\documentclass` line (with the article class¹ as an argument) and surround the body of the example with a `document` environment. In fact, this is how all of the examples in this book were produced. When processing the book, special \LaTeX commands take the source lines for an example and write them to an external file, thereby automatically adding the `\documentclass` and the `document` environment lines. This turns each example into a small but complete \LaTeX document. These documents are then externally processed (using a mechanism that runs each example as often as necessary, including the generation of a bibliography through \BibTeX). The resulting PDF (Portable Document Format) is then cropped to the smallest size that shows all output, using the program `pdfcrop` and if necessary separated into individual pages using `pdfseparate`. The resulting graphic files are then loaded in the appropriate place the next time \LaTeX is run on the whole book. More details on the actual implementation of this scheme can be found in Section 4.2.4 on page 315.

Watch
out for these 

Throughout the book, **blue notes** are sprinkled in the margin to help you easily find certain information that would otherwise be hard to locate. In a few cases these notes exhibit a warning sign, indicating that you should probably read this information even if you are otherwise only skimming through the particular section.

Information relevant
only to Unicode \TeX
engines

Most of the material presented in this book is applicable to all \TeX engine flavors, e.g., \pdfTeX , \XeTeX , or \LuaTeX . However, some aspects are applicable only to Unicode engines, and to help you identify this at a glance we have placed such information into boxes like this:

Unicode engines

This is information that applies only to Unicode engines, e.g., \XeTeX or \LuaTeX .

The only exceptions are Section 9.6 on `fontspec` and Section 12.4 on `unicode-math`, both of which would have ended up completely within such boxes — which would be rather hard to read.

Information specific
to biblatex/biber

A similar approach is used to highlight any differences between a workflow that uses \BibTeX and traditional citation methods and one that uses the `biblatex` package and the `biber` program. As both methods have a large overlap, they are described together, and specific considerations are placed into boxes like this:

biber/biblatex

This is information specific to `biblatex/biber` and often gives tips how to ensure compatibility between the `biber/biblatex` and the \BibTeX workflow.

This convention is used in Chapter 15.

1.3.3 Using the examples

Our aim when producing this book was to make it as useful as possible for our readers. For this reason the book contains more than 1 500 complete, self-contained examples of all aspects of typesetting covered in the book.

¹Except for examples involving the `\chapter` command, which need the `report` or `book` class.

All examples are made available in source format on CTAN at <https://ctan.org/pkg/tlc3-examples>. The examples are numbered per section, and each number is shown in a small box in the inner margin (e.g., 1-3-6 below). These numbers are also used for the external file names by appending `.1tx` (single-page examples) or `.1tx2` (double-page examples).

To reuse any of the examples it is usually sufficient to copy the preamble code (typeset in blue) into the preamble of your document and, if necessary, adjust the document text as shown. In some cases it might be more convenient to place the preamble code into your own package (or class file), thus allowing you to load this package in multiple documents using `\usepackage`. If you want to do the latter, there are two points to observe:

- Any use of `\usepackage` in the preamble code needs to be replaced by a `\RequirePackage` declaration, which is the equivalent command for use in package and class files (see Section A.6.7).
- Any occurrence of `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother` *must* be removed from the preamble code. This is very important because the `\makeatother` would stop correct reading of such a file.

So let us assume you wish to reuse the code from the following example:

A line of text¹ with some² footnotes.

-
1. The first
 2. The second

```
\makeatletter
\renewcommand\@makefnmark[1]{
  {\noindent\makebox[0pt][r]{\@thefnmark.\,}#1}
\makeatother
A line of text\footnote{The first}
with some\footnote{The second} footnotes.
```

You have two alternatives: you can copy the preamble code (i.e., the code colored blue) into your own document preamble or you can place that code — but without the `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother` — in a package file (e.g., `lowfnnum.sty`) and afterwards load this “package” in the preamble of your own documents with `\usepackage{lowfnnum}`.

1-3-6

This page intentionally left blank

CHAPTER 2

The Structure of a \LaTeX Document

2.1 The overall structure of a source file	22
2.2 Sectioning commands	32
2.3 Table of contents structures	54
2.4 Managing references	75
2.5 Document source management	108

One of the ideas behind \LaTeX is the separation between layout and structure (as far as possible), which allows the user to concentrate on content rather than having to worry about layout issues [106]. This chapter explains how this general principle is implemented in \LaTeX .

The first section of this chapter shows how document class files, packages, options, and preamble commands can affect the structure and layout of a document.

The logical subdivisions of a document are then discussed in general, before explaining in more detail how sectioning commands and their arguments define a hierarchical structure, how they generate numbers for titles, and how they produce running heads and feet. This is followed by discussing a few useful packages that allow you to customize different aspects of the layout of sectional units or to provide your own definitions.

In Section 2.3 we take a closer look at the design of table of contents structures and how it can be influenced or extended.

This is followed by a section discussing important packages that support you in providing cross-references that remain correct, even if you change parts of your document. These packages can automatically insert appropriate phrases (`varioref`, `cleveref`, `nameref`), can help you manage your label keys (`showkeys` and `refcheck`), or support you in providing references to external documents (`xr`) or hyperlinks in general (`hyperref`).

The final section introduces packages and programs that support you in archiving documents or managing them when you work jointly with others on some document.

2.1 The overall structure of a source file

You can use L^AT_EX for several purposes, such as writing an article or a book or producing presentations. Clearly, documents for different purposes may need different logical structures, i.e., different commands and environments. We say that a document belongs to a *class* of documents having the same general structure (but not necessarily the same typographical appearance). You specify the class to which your document belongs by starting your L^AT_EX file with a `\documentclass` command, where the mandatory parameter specifies the *name* of the *document class*. The document class defines the available logical commands and environments (for example, `\chapter` in the report class) as well as a default formatting for those elements. An optional argument allows you to modify the formatting of those elements by supplying a list of *class options*. For example, `11pt` is an option recognized by most document classes that instructs L^AT_EX to choose eleven point as the basic document type size.

Many L^AT_EX commands described in this book are not specific to a single class but can be used with several classes. A collection of such commands is called a *package*, and you inform L^AT_EX about your use of certain packages in the document by placing one or more `\usepackage` commands after `\documentclass`.

Just like the `\documentclass` declaration, `\usepackage` has a mandatory argument consisting of the *name* of the package and an optional argument that can contain a list of *package options* that modify the behavior of the package.¹

The document classes and the packages reside in external files with the extensions `.cls` and `.sty`, respectively. Code for options is sometimes stored in external files (in the case of class files with the extension `.clo`) but is normally directly specified in the class or package file (see Appendix A for information on declaring options in classes and packages). However, in the case of options, the file name can differ from the option name. For example, the option `11pt` is related to `size11.clo` when used in the article class and to `bk11.clo` inside the book class.

The document
preamble

Commands placed between `\documentclass` and `\begin{document}` are in the so-called *document preamble*. All style parameters must be defined in this preamble, either in package or class files or directly in the document *before* the `\begin{document}` command, which sets the values for some of the global parameters. A typical document preamble could look similar to the following:

```
\documentclass[twocolumn,a4paper]{article}
\usepackage{multicol}
\usepackage[ngerman,french]{babel}
\addtolength\textheight{3\baselineskip}
\begin{document}
```

This document preamble defines that the class of the document is `article` and that the layout is influenced by the formatting request `twocolumn` (typeset in two columns) and the option `a4paper` (print on A4 paper). The first `\usepackage` declaration

¹These commands also have a second optional argument that is intended for cases where a specific release of a package or a document class is required. This is discussed in Section 2.5.5 on page 114.

informs \LaTeX that this document contains commands and structures provided by the package `multicol`. In addition, the `babel` package with the options `ngerman` (support for German language) and `french` (support for French language) is loaded. Finally, the default height of the text body was enlarged by three lines for this document.

Generally, nonstandard \LaTeX package files contain modifications, extensions, or improvements¹ with respect to standard \LaTeX , while commands in the preamble define changes for the current document. Thus, to modify the layout of a document, you have several possibilities:

- Change the standard settings for parameters in a class file with options defined for that class.
- Add one or more packages to your document and make use of them.
- Change the standard settings for parameters in a package file with options defined for that package.
- Write your own local packages containing special parameter settings and load them with `\usepackage` after the package or class they are supposed to modify (as explained in the next section).
- Make final adjustments inside the preamble.

If you want to get deeper into \LaTeX 's internals, you can, of course, define your own general-purpose packages that can be manipulated with options. You find additional information on this topic in Appendix A.

2.1.1 Spoiler alert — The `\DocumentMetadata` command

When \LaTeX changed from $\LaTeX 2.09$ to $\LaTeX 2_\epsilon$ around 1994, the overall document structure was slightly changed to automatically distinguish old from new documents (to switch to compatibility mode, if necessary). $\LaTeX 2_\epsilon$ documents start with `\documentclass` as described above, while $\LaTeX 2.09$ documents started with the command `\documentstyle`, and `\usepackage` was unavailable.

Now, roughly a quarter century later, there is another major shift under way during which \LaTeX is being modernized to support accessible PDF/UA (Portable Document Format/Universal Accessibility) and other functionality that is important for it to remain useful; see the discussion in Section 1.1 on page 7. This time around, the functionality change is essentially upward compatible, and old documents can be easily reprocessed using the new features. Thus, instead of dividing documents into two classes (old and new) by changing the first command, you can now indicate that you want to use the new functionality by adding a `\DocumentMetadata` declaration in front of `\documentclass` while leaving the rest of the document unchanged.

¹Many of these packages have become de facto standards and are described in this book. This does not mean, however, that packages that are not described here are necessarily less important or useful, of inferior quality, or should not be used. We merely concentrated on a few of the more established ones; for others, we chose to explain what functionality is possible in a given area.

```
\DocumentMetadata{key/value list}
```

This declaration should be the first command in a document; i.e., if present, it should come before `\documentclass`. It expects a *key/value list* as its argument in which you specify “metadata” about the document that guides the production of the final output, e.g., should it adhere to a certain standard, should it be a tagged PDF, what is its author, title, and keywords that are shown in the metadata of the resulting PDF, etc. All these “metadata” are stored so that packages and users can access the data in a consistent way.

For example, the key `pdfversion` allows you to set the PDF version. With the key `pdfstandard` it is possible to require a standard such as A-2b. If that is specified, it directs L^AT_EX to embed an appropriate color profile and set up verification tests that packages like `hyperref` can use to suppress actions not allowed in this standard. A further example is the `backend` key that allows you to specify a backend, e.g., `dvipdfmx` or `dvips`, which is useful in cases where the correct backend cannot be detected automatically.

At the time of writing this book the details about which other keys are going to be supported are still open (the whole exercise is a multi-year project [150] after all), but what we can say is that already now you can use this future interface to enable some new functionality. For example, just adding

```
\DocumentMetadata{}
\documentclass{article}      % (or any other class)
...                          % with preamble as previously
\begin{document}
```

is enough to load the new support code for managing PDF output, and this enables packages, such as `hyperref`, to provide features otherwise not available; see Section 2.4.6 on page 96 for details.

2.1.2 Processing of options of the document class and packages

You can think of options to the document class or to packages as a simple way to adjust some of the properties of the whole document (when used in `\documentclass`) or of properties of individual packages (if specified in `\usepackage`). More fine-grain control is usually also possible through declarations and setup commands that are defined by a class or package file and are available for use once that file is loaded.

You can specify options in a `\usepackage` command only if these options are explicitly declared by the package. Otherwise, you receive an error message, informing you that your specified option is unknown to the package in question. Options to the `\documentclass` are handled slightly differently. If a specified option is not declared by the class, it is assumed to be a “global option”.

All options given to `\documentclass` (whether declared or global) are automatically passed as class options to all `\usepackage` declarations. Thus, if a package file loaded with a `\usepackage` declaration recognizes (i.e., declares) some of the class options, it can take appropriate actions. If not, the class options are ignored while processing that package. Because all options have to be defined inside the class or package file, their actions are under the control of the class or package (an action

can be anything from setting internal switches to reading an external file). For this reason their order in the optional argument of `\documentclass` or `\usepackage` is (usually) irrelevant.

If you want to use several packages, all taking the same set of options (for example, none), it is possible to load them all with a single `\usepackage` command by specifying the package names as a comma-separated list in the mandatory argument. For example,

```
\usepackage[ngerman]{babel} \usepackage[ngerman]{varioref}
\usepackage{array}          \usepackage{multicol}
```

is equivalent to

```
\usepackage[ngerman]{babel,varioref} \usepackage{array,multicol}
```


By specifying `ngerman` as a global option to the class we can further shorten the `\usepackage` declaration as `ngerman` is passed to all loaded packages and thus will be processed by those packages that declare it.

```
\documentclass[ngerman]{book}
\usepackage{babel,varioref,array,multicol}
```

Of course, this assumes that neither `array` nor `multicol` changes its behavior when `ngerman` is passed as a class option.

Finally, when the `\begin{document}` is reached, all global options are checked to see whether each has been used by at least one package; if not, a warning message is displayed. It is usually a spelling mistake if your option name is never used; another possibility is the removal of a `\usepackage` command loading a package that used this option previously.

When the option concept was originally developed, it was based on the idea that options are simple strings separated by commas without further structure. Spaces in that option list are explicitly ignored, because people often split such option lists over several lines and inadvertently introduced spaces before or after the commas. After a while some package developers started to use a key/value concept for options or setup commands; e.g., `geometry` allows you to write `paper=a4,margin=1in` with the meaning that the option `paper` gets the value `a4` and `margin` is set to one inch. That works if neither the option name nor the intended value requires spaces because those get stripped away if used in a class or package option list.¹

 *Key/value options and their limitations*

This limitation is not easy to overcome for existing implementations without huge backward compatibility issues, which means that it is usually best to use a setup command (if provided by a package) rather than the option list with such packages, because in a setup command spaces are honored except those next to commas and equal signs. With the new key/value methods directly supported by the \LaTeX format, spaces are trimmed only at either end (where one would expect it). For new packages or package reimplementations we therefore recommend using \LaTeX 's mechanism, which is described in Appendix A.6.6 on page →II 700.

If you want to make some modifications to a document class or a package (for example, changing parameter values or redefining some commands), you can put the relevant code into a separate file with the extension `.sty`. Then load this file with a

Configuration after loading a package

¹ This restriction is lifted in very new packages using the L3 programming layer methods.

`\usepackage` command after the package whose behavior you wish to modify (or the document class, if your modifications concern class issues).

Alternatively, you can insert the modifications directly into the preamble of your document. In that case, you may have to bracket them with `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother` if they contain internal L^AT_EX 2_ε commands (i.e., those with an @ sign in their names) or use `\ExplSyntaxOn` and `\ExplSyntaxOff` if they are L^AT_EX 3 commands (i.e., with _ and : in their names). For more details see the discussion on page →II 623 concerning internal commands in the preamble.

2.1.3 Front, main, and back matter

In a longer document, such as a book or a longer article, we usually can identify three distinct areas: the front matter, the main matter (or body matter), and the back matter.

As the name indicates the main matter holds the main text, while the two other parts provide supplementary information before and after. The front matter typically consists of the title page or pages, the table of contents and similar lists, an abstract, and a foreword or preface (though the latter may already be thought of belonging to the main matter). To the back matter you typically count any appendices, bibliography, index, and afterword, colophon, etc.

Typographically these three regions are often handled in different ways to make them easily identifiable, for example, by using different page numbering systems for front and main matter¹, not numbering headings in the front matter, and often using different heading number styles in main and back matter.

In shorter works this distinction becomes somewhat blurry: the front matter may just consist of the title (and not even on a page of its own) in which case it makes more sense to think of it as belonging to the main matter. Similarly, even in longer works there may not be any back matter.

In L^AT_EX's book class these three regions can be explicitly marked up using the commands `\frontmatter`, `\mainmatter`, and `\backmatter`. In other classes you often find only the command `\appendix`, which is used to separate the body matter from the back matter — the assumption being that in articles and similar documents the front matter due to its length does not require special typographical treatment.

Front matter elements

The standard L^AT_EX classes provide `\title`, `\author` (with `\and` and `\thanks`) and `\date` to set up the title information and `\maketitle` to produce the actual document title. For more elaborate title pages they offer the environment `titlepage`, which basically gives you an empty page in which you have to draw and position your title yourself.²

¹If you prefer the front and main matter to use the same page numbering system, check out the little package `arabicfront` by Javier Bezos. It works with most document classes and results in the front and main matter being numbered with arabic numerals in a continuing sequence.

²Please note that in many classes the `titlepage` environment sets the page number explicitly to one and then issues a `\thispagestyle{empty}` to hide it. The downside is that this looks internally to L^AT_EX always like a recto page, which in a `twoside` setting might cause problems. Thus, even though

If you design your own title page, it might be worth taking a look at the collection of title page examples by Peter Wilson [199], which contains forty examples together with the (sometimes low-level) code to produce them. Another possibly helpful resource is the package titling by the same author, which provides methods for restyling the material produced by `\title`, `\author`, `\thanks`, `\date`, and `\maketitle`.

Producing title pages

The support offered by the standard classes (article, report, or book) is not really sufficient for anything other than preprints, which is why classes for specific journals or classes targeting book production often offer additional commands for specifying data relevant for the title or even provide some totally different commands altogether. This is an area where, due to the lack of decent support in the standard classes, the document syntax unfortunately varies from class to class, so you have to consult the appropriate documentation to see what is necessary for a particular class.

A possible alternative is the little package authblk by Patrick Daly that provides an extended syntax for the `\author` command and can typeset affiliation information either in blocks (below each group of authors) or as footnotes as shown in the next example. By using an optional argument to `\author` and/or to `\affil`, it is even possible to have author and affiliations ordered in different ways. The package offers a number of customization possibilities, two of which are shown in the example; consult the documentation for further details. It should work with most document classes even if they provide their own author management.

Complex author information

Author Management

IMMANUEL KANT¹, MOSES MENDELSSOHN²,
FRIEDRICH SCHILLER³, LEONHARD EULER⁴, AND
FRIEDRICH DER GROSSE*²

¹KÖNIGSBERG

²BERLIN

³JENA

⁴ST. PETERSBURG

June, 1770

As any dedicated reader can clearly see, the Ideal of practical reason is a representation of, as far as I know, the things in themselves; as I have shown elsewhere, the phenomena should

```
\usepackage[auth-sc,affil-it]
{authblk}
\usepackage{kantlipsum}

\title{Author Management}

\author{Immanuel Kant}
\affil{Königsberg}
\author{Moses Mendelssohn}
\affil{Berlin}
\author{Friedrich Schiller}
\affil{Jena}
\author{Leonhard Euler}
\affil{St.\ Petersburg}
\author[2]{Friedrich der
Große\thanks{Sponsor}}

\date{June, 1770}

\maketitle
\kant[1] % only partly shown
```

2-1-1

*Sponsor

the page number is suppressed, you may have to adjust the page number to a different number inside (and again afterwards) if the page is meant to be a verso page.

Various content lists

For the typical lists found in the front matter, such as the table of contents, the standard classes support the commands `\tableofcontents`, `\listoftables`, and `\listoffigures`. Additional lists can be defined as explained in Section 2.3.4 on page 74. Typically such lists produce unnumbered headings. If your front matter requires further sectional units, such as a foreword or a preface, produce them with the star form of a suitable heading command, e.g., `\chapter*` or `\section*`.

Abstracts

Another important element, in particular for articles, is the `abstract` environment. Note that unfortunately the correct placement of this environment may depend on the chosen document class. In the standard classes and many others it is typeset where specified in the source, but there are classes in which it is formatted and placed by the `\maketitle` command and therefore has to appear before it. Its default formatting is usually adequate, and if you are typesetting an article for some particular journal, you should probably not alter it. However, if you do not like the outcome and you are free to make changes, take a look at the `abstract` package by Peter Wilson that offers a large arsenal of bells and whistles for adjusting most aspects of the abstract layout.

Other nonstandard elements

There are other important frontmatter elements, such as a keyword list in journal articles, or bibliographic and copyright information in books, but none of these is provided for by the standard classes. However, in document classes for specific journals or book series from publishers, you usually find additional commands and environments that cater for these elements. Typically they differ from class to class so that one has to redo this part of the frontmatter if the document class is changed.

Main matter elements

The top-level structural elements of the body text are various levels of heading commands that are discussed in detail in Section 2.2 on page 32 and of course lists and other elements discussed in Chapter 4.

Back matter elements

Probably the most often used back matter elements are a bibliography and an index, which are supported through the environments `theindex` and `thebibliography` discussed in more detail in Chapters 14 and 15.


If you have several other appendices, use heading commands of the appropriate level to introduce them. The numbering scheme for such headings is automatically adjusted by the `\appendix` or `\backmatter` declaration that separates the back matter material from the main text. However, if there is only a single appendix, it may look odd if that gets numbered. Thus, in that case, you may explicitly want to use the star form of the heading command.

2.1.4 Splitting the source document into several files

L^AT_EX source documents can be conveniently split into several files by using `\input` or `\include` commands. The `\input` command unconditionally includes the file specified as its argument at the current point. This is useful if you want to split your

document into reasonably sized chunks or you want to reuse some parts for one or the other reason and therefore want to keep them in separate files.¹

The `\include` command, however, is different in that it automatically starts a new page before and after the included file. For each `\include` file a separate `.aux` file is produced, which is why in contrast to `\input` such files should be specified without extension and on the operating system level always have the extension `.tex`.

 `\include` used without extension

The reason for `\include` is that documents can be reformatted piecewise by specifying as arguments of an `\includeonly` declaration only those `\include` files \LaTeX has to reprocess. For the other files that are loaded with `\include` commands, the counter information (page, chapter, table, figure, equation, ...) is then read from the corresponding `.aux` files generated during a previous run. In the following example, the user wants to reprocess only the files `chap1.tex` and `appen1.tex`:

Partial processing


```
\documentclass{book}      % the document class 'book'
\includeonly{chap1,appen1} % only include chap1 and appen1
\begin{document}
\include{chap1}           % input chap1.tex
\include{chap2}           % input chap2.tex
...                       % ... further chapters
\include{appen1}          % input appen1.tex
\include{appen2}          % input appen2.tex
\end{document}
```

Be aware that \LaTeX issues only a warning message like "No file `xxx.tex`" and not an error message when it cannot find a file specified in an `\include` statement and then continues processing.

If the information in the `.aux` files is up-to-date, it is possible to process only part of a document and have all counters, cross-references, and pages be correct in the reformatted part. However, if one of the counters (including the page number for cross-references) changes in the reprocessed part, then the complete document might have to be rerun to get the index, table of contents, and bibliographic references consistently correct.

Note that each document part loaded via `\include` starts on a new page and finishes by calling `\clearpage`; thus, floats contained therein do not move outside the pages produced by this part. Natural candidates for `\include` are therefore whole chapters of a book but not necessarily small fractions of text.

While it is certainly an advantage to split a larger document into smaller parts and to work on more manageable files with a text editor, partial reformatting should be used only with great care and when still in the developing stage for one or more chapters. When a final and completely correct copy is needed, the only really safe procedure is to reprocess the complete document. However, if the document is too large to process in a single run, make sure that for the final version the pieces are processed *in the correct sequence* (if necessary several times) to ensure that the cross-references and page numbers are correct.

 Avoid using partial processing when preparing the final version of your document

¹Not everything can be placed into separate `\input` files, though. For example, it is not possible to put only a part of a `tabular` environment in a file; it has to go in completely.

*Some packages
are incompatible
with the `\include`
mechanism*

It is very important to note that some packages can not be used reliably with the `\include` mechanism. Likely candidates are those that write their own support files to store data between runs as they often do not realize that parts of the document are not processed. A premier example from this book is the `acro` package. It always considers the first acronym it sees as being the acronym that is showing the full form; thus, if you apply `\includeonly`, it may see different instances as being the first, thereby altering the line breaking and pagination compared to always processing the full document.

2.1.5 askinclude — Managing your inclusions

Interactive inclusion

If you intend to work with `\include` commands, consider using the small package `askinclude` created by Pablo Straub and Heiko Oberdiek. It interactively asks you which files to include. You can then specify the files as a comma-separated list (i.e., what you would put into the `\includeonly` argument) or use `*` to indicate all files, `-` to include no files or `?` in which case it asks you for each include file separately. Alternatively, if the Enter button is pressed in response, then your answer from the previous run is used again. This way you do not have to modify your master source to process different parts of your document (a very useful feature during the production of this book). All this works by storing the answer given in the `.aux` file so that it is available again on the next run. Thus, if that file is removed for some reason, you have make your selection again and cannot simply hit Enter.

The package also offers some pattern matching facilities if enabled with the option `makematch`. In this case `*` matches zero or more arbitrary characters, and a `!` at the start of a pattern negates its effect (i.e., excludes matching names). For example, `chap*, !chap1` would include all files starting with `chap` except `chap1`.

2.1.6 tagging — Providing variants in the document source

Sometimes it is useful to keep several versions of a document together in a single source, especially if most of the text is shared between versions. This functionality is provided by the `tagging` package¹ created by Brent Longborough (1944–2021).

<code>\tagged{label-list}{text}</code>	<code>\usetag{label-list}</code>	<code>\droptag{label-list}</code>
--	----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

The variant text parts are specially marked in the source using the command `\tagged`, and during formatting some of them are selected. The command takes two arguments: a label (or a comma-separated list of labels) that describes to which variant the optional text belongs, and the text to be conditionally printed.

With the command `\usetag` in the document preamble you can select which label (or labels) is active at the beginning of the document. Alternatively, you can specify the labels as package options to activate them. Inside the document body you

¹A number of other packages provide similar functionality with slightly different interfaces, e.g., `comment` by Victor Eijkhout, `xcomment` by Timothy Van Zandt, and `optional` and `version` by Donald Arseneau. There is also `multiaudience` by Boris Veytsman, which uses a quite different approach that might be more suitable in complex situations.

can use further `\usetag` commands to activate additional labels, and you can use `\droptag` to inactivate some of them.

```
\untagged{label-list}{text}    \iftagged{label-list}{yes-test}{no-text}
```

For convenience there is also `\untagged`, which typesets its second argument if none of its labels is currently active. Finally, there is `\iftagged` with three arguments that print the second or third argument depending on the given labels in the first.

All five commands are shown in the following example:

<p>Typeset this if tag doc is used. Typeset this if tag code is not used. Not to be! Which is it? Typeset this for either doc or code. Typeset this always! Now neither of the variants are typeset!</p>	<pre>\usepackage[doc]{tagging} \tagged{doc} {Typeset this if tag doc is used.} \untagged{code}{Typeset this if tag code is not used.} \iftagged{be} {To be or}{Not to be!} Which is it? \par \tagged{doc,code}{Typeset this for either doc or code.} Typeset this \untagged{}{always}\tagged{}{never}! \par \usetag{code} \droptag{doc} Now neither of the variants are typeset! \tagged{doc} {Typeset this if tag doc is used.} \untagged{code}{Typeset this if tag code is not used.}</pre>
--	---

2-1-2

This approach works well enough for shorter texts but has the limitation that it cannot contain `\verb` commands and must have balanced braces because the *text* is provided as an argument. With longer parts to be optionally printed, however, it is usually best to either store them in an external file and conditionally load this file in a `\tagged` command or use the environments shown in the next example.

<p>Environments can contain verbatim material e.g., <code>#&</code>. Note the placement of the period and the spacing! Careful:</p>	<pre>\usepackage[doc]{tagging} Environments can contain verbatim material \begin{taggedblock}{doc} e.g., \verb=#&=\end{taggedblock} . \par Note the placement of the period and the spacing! Careful: \begin{untaggedblock}{doc} Not \end{untaggedblock} shown!</pre>
---	---

2-1-3

Please note the surprising placement of the period. You should never place anything after the `\end{taggedblock}` or `\end{untaggedblock}`, because it gets discarded if the environment body is not typeset. This can be seen by the missing word “shown!” in the result. This may not be immediately apparent, because as long as the optional material is typeset, everything appears to be fine, but the moment the material is ignored, the rest of the last line vanishes too. Best practice is therefore to place the `\begin` and `\end` commands on lines by themselves.

The handling of space is also a bit peculiar: inside the environment body spaces are honored, except for spaces immediately following the `\begin` command. This is why we do not see two spaces in the output but only one, even though there is a space before and after `\begin`. If we had added a space before the `\end` command, it would have resulted in “# .” in the output.

<code>\part</code>	top-level	(level -1 in book and report; level 0 in article)	
<code>\chapter</code>	level 0	(only defined by book and report)	
<code>\section</code>	level 1		
<code>\subsection</code>	level 2	<code>\paragraph</code>	level 4
<code>\subsubsection</code>	level 3	<code>\subparagraph</code>	level 5

Table 2.1: L^AT_EX's standard sectioning commands

The tagging package selects the variants to process during the L^AT_EX formatting. Depending on the application, it might be better to use a different approach involving a preprocessor that extracts individual variants from the master source. For example, the `docstrip` program can be successfully used for this purpose; in contrast to other preprocessors, it has the advantage that it is usable at every site that has an installed L^AT_EX system (see Section 17.2 for details).

2.2 Sectioning commands

In the previous section we discussed the top-level division into front, main, and back matter. Within these regions further division is done through sectional units that are typically substructured. These we discuss in this section.

The standard L^AT_EX document classes (i.e., `article`, `report`, and `book`) contain commands to define the different hierarchical structural units of a document (e.g., chapters, sections, subsections, etc.). Each such command defines a nesting level inside a hierarchy, and each structural unit belongs to some level. The commands should be correctly nested. For example, a `\subsection` command should be issued only after a previous `\section`.

Standard L^AT_EX provides the set of sectioning commands¹ shown in Table 2.1. The `\chapter` command defines level zero of the hierarchical structure of a document, `\section` defines level one, and so on, whereas the optional `\part` command defines the level minus one (or zero in classes that do not define `\chapter`). Not all of these commands are defined in all document classes. The `article` class does not have `\chapter`, and the `letter` class does not support sectioning commands at all. It is also possible for a package to define other sectioning commands, allowing either additional levels or variants for already supported levels.

The standard names are admittedly somewhat strange; e.g., `\paragraph` does not mean as one might expect “start a new text paragraph” but instead “here is the heading for the next subsubsubsection”. So if you prefer a different name for such units in your documents, a definition such as

```
\newcommand\subsubsubsection{\paragraph}
```

¹Using commands instead of environments to indicate the sectional units has the effect that these heading commands do not define a scope; e.g., parameter changes stay in force across different sectional units.

would easily fix that (though is that name really better?). Note that it only means your document uses a different command: the actual work is still carried out by `\paragraph`, and the counter associated with the unit is still called `paragraph` and printed with `\theparagraph` and so on.

`\section[toc-entry]{title}` `\section*{title}`

All standard sectioning commands—i.e., `\part`, `\chapter` (only in the book and report classes), `\section`, `\subsection`, `\subsubsection`, `\paragraph`, and `\subparagraph`—have a common syntax as exemplified here by the `\section` command. Generally, the sectioning commands automatically perform one or more of the following typesetting actions:

- produce the heading number reflecting the hierarchical level;
- store the heading as an entry for a table of contents (into the `.toc` file);
- save the contents of the heading to be (perhaps) used in a running header/footer;
- format the heading.

The first form performs all of the above actions. If the optional argument *toc-entry* is present, it is used as the text string for the table of content and the running header and/or footer; otherwise, the *title* is also used for those places. In particular this means that you cannot specify different texts for the table of content and for the running header through this interface. The numbering depends on the current value of the counter `secnumdepth` (discussed in the next section).

If you try to advise \TeX on how to split the heading over a few lines using the “~” symbol or the `\\` command, then side effects may result when formatting the table of contents or generating the running head. In this case the simplest solution is to repeat the heading text without the specific markup in the optional parameter of the sectioning command.

*Problems with
explicit formatting*

The starred form (e.g., `\section*{...}`) suppresses the numbering for a title and does not produce an entry in the table of contents or the running head. This is usually used inside the front matter and sometimes in the back matter but can, of course, be used anywhere within the document. In the standard classes, the commands `\tableofcontents`, `\listoftables`, and `\listoffigures`, and the `theindex` and `thebibliography` environments internally invoke the command (`\section` or `\chapter`) using their starred form.

The remainder of this section discusses how the appearance of headings can be adjusted to your needs. First we explain how heading numbers work and how they can be manipulated. We then take a quick look at the various fixed texts produced by some headings and how they can be altered. In Sections 2.2.3 to 2.2.7 we describe several packages for heading design, mainly focusing on the `titlesec` package, as that is a good toolbox for most heading design requirements. Finally, we conclude with a discussion of \LaTeX ’s low-level interfaces for this area—a section largely meant for reference only (which is why it is set in a smaller font to save space).

2.2.1 Numbering headings

To support numbering, L^AT_EX uses a counter for each sectional unit and composes the heading number from these counters.

*Numbering no
headings*

Perhaps the change desired most often concerning the numbering of titles is to alter the nesting level up to which a number should be produced. This is controlled by a counter named `secnumdepth`, which holds the highest level with numbered headings. For example, some documents have none of their headings numbered. Instead of always using the starred form of the sectioning commands, it is more convenient to set the counter `secnumdepth` to `-2` in the document preamble. The advantages of this method are that an entry in the table of contents can still be produced and that arguments from the sectioning commands can produce information in running headings. As discussed, these features are suppressed in the starred form.

*Numbering all
headings*

To number all headings down to `\subparagraph` or whatever the deepest sectioning level for the given class is called, setting the counter to a high enough value (e.g., a declaration such as `\setcounter{secnumdepth}{5}`) would be sufficient for the standard classes).

*Numbering more or
less heading levels*

Finally, the `\addtocounter` command provides an easy way of numbering more or fewer heading levels without worrying about the level numbers of the corresponding sectioning commands. For example, if you need one more level with numbers, you can place `\addtocounter{secnumdepth}{1}` in the preamble of your document without having to look up the right value. In some cases this might even be useful within the document; see also the package `tocvsec2` by Peter Wilson that provides further support for such occasions.

Every sectioning command has an associated counter, which by convention has the same name as the sectioning command (e.g., the command `\subsection` has a corresponding counter `subsection`). This counter stores the current number of sectional units of the level, but its print representation (that you get with `\thecounter`) holds the full formatted number for the given sectioning command. Thus, in the `report` class, the commands `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection`, and so on, represent the hierarchical structure of the document, and a counter like `subsection` keeps track of the number of `\subsections` used inside the current `\section`, e.g., holds the value 1 at this point in the book, while `\thesubsection` would generate 2.2.1.

Normally, when a counter at a given hierarchical level is incremented, then the next lower-level counter (i.e., that with the next higher-level number) is reset. For example, the `report` class file contains the following declarations:

```
\newcounter{part}                % (-1) parts
\newcounter{chapter}             % (0)  chapters
\newcounter{section}[chapter]    % (1)  sections
\newcounter{subsection}[section] % (2)  subsections
\newcounter{subsubsection}[subsection] % (3) subsubsections
\newcounter{paragraph}[subsubsection] % (4) paragraphs
\newcounter{subparagraph}[paragraph] % (5) subparagraphs
```

These commands declare the various counters. The level one (`section`) counter

is reset when the level zero (`chapter`) counter is stepped. Similarly, the level two (`subsection`) counter is reset whenever the level one (`section`) counter is stepped. The same mechanism is used down to the `\subparagraph` command. Note that in the standard classes the `part` counter is decoupled from the other counters and has no influence on the lower-level sectioning commands. As a consequence, `\chapters` in the `book` or `report` class or `\sections` in `article` are numbered consecutively even if a `\part` command intervenes. Changing this inside a class is simple — you just replace the corresponding declaration of the chapter counter with:

```
\newcounter{chapter}[part]
```

The behavior of an already existing counter can be changed with the commands `\counterwithin` or `\counterwithout` (see Appendix A.2.1); for example, to alter the behavior for just a single document, you can use

```
\counterwithin{chapter}{part}
```

Every counter in \LaTeX , including the sectioning counters, has an associated command constructed by prefixing the counter name with `\the`, which generates a typeset representation of the counter in question. In the case of the sectioning commands, this representation form is used to produce the full number associated with the commands, as in the following definitions:

```
\renewcommand\thechapter{\arabic{chapter}}
\renewcommand\thesection{\thechapter.\arabic{section}}
\renewcommand\thesubsection{\thesection.\arabic{subsection}}
```

In this example, `\thesubsection` produces an Arabic number representation of the subsection counter prefixed by the command `\thesection` and a dot. This kind of recursive definition facilitates modifications to the counter representations because changes do not need to be made in more than one place. If, for example, you want to number sections using capital letters, you can redefine the command `\thesection`:

A Different-looking section

A.1 Different-looking subsection

Due to the default definitions not only the numbers on sections change, but lower-level sectioning commands also show this representation of the section number.

```
\renewcommand\thesection{\Alph{section}}
\section{Different-looking section}
\subsection{Different-looking subsection}
```

Due to the default definitions not only the numbers on sections change, but lower-level sectioning commands also show this representation of the section number.

2-2-1

Thus, by changing the counter representation commands, it is possible to change the number displayed by a sectioning command. However, the representation of the number cannot be changed arbitrarily by this method. Suppose you want to produce a

subsection heading with the number surrounded by a box. Given the above examples, one straightforward approach would be to redefine `\thesubsection`; e.g.,

```
\renewcommand\thesubsection{\fbox{\thesection.\arabic{subsection}}}
```

But this is not a good approach, as one sees when trying to reference such a section.

3.1 A mistake

Referencing a subsection in this format produces a funny result as we can see looking at subsection 3.1. We get a boxed reference.

```
\renewcommand\thesubsection
{\fbox{\thesection.\arabic{subsection}}}
\setcounter{section}{3}
\subsection{A mistake}\label{wrong}
Referencing a subsection in this format produces
a funny result as we can see looking at
subsection~\ref{wrong}. We get a boxed reference.
```

2-2-2

In other words, the counter representation commands are also used by L^AT_EX's cross-referencing mechanism (the `\label` and `\ref` commands; see Section 2.4). Therefore, we can make only small changes to the counter representation commands so that their use in the `\ref` command still makes sense. To produce the box around the heading number without spoiling the output of a `\ref`, we would have to redefine L^AT_EX's internal command `\@secntformat`, which is responsible for typesetting the counter part of a section title. As this is rather messy, it is better to use the interface provided by the `titlesec` package for this, which is what we do in the next example.

1 This is correct

Referencing a section using this definition generates the correct result for the section reference 1.

```
\usepackage{titlesec}
\titlelabel{\fbox{\thetitle}\hspace{0.5em}}
\section{This is correct}\label{sec:OK}
Referencing a section using this definition
generates the correct result for the section
reference~\ref{sec:OK}.
```

2-2-3

The framed box around the number in the section heading is now typeset only as part of the heading, and hence the reference labels come out correctly. Within `\titlelabel` the command `\thetitle` refers to the section counter representation; e.g., it evaluates to `\thesection` in this case. Also note that we reduced the space between the box and the text to 0.5em (instead of the default 1em). Another often asked for use case for `\titlelabel` is adding a period after the heading number (but not when referencing it). This is shown in Example 2-2-8 on page 41.

A declaration done with `\titlelabel` applies to all headings. Therefore, if you wish to use different definitions for different headings, you must put the appropriate code into every heading definition instead (which requires the extended interface of `titlesec`; see page 42).

2.2.2 Changing fixed heading texts

Some of the standard heading commands produce predefined texts. For example, `\chapter` produces the string “Chapter” in front of the user-supplied text. Similarly,

Command	Default String	Command	Default String
<code>\abstractname</code>	Abstract	<code>\indexname</code>	Index
<code>\appendixname</code>	Appendix	<code>\listfigurename</code>	List of Figures
<code>\bibname</code>	Bibliography	<code>\listtablename</code>	List of Tables
<code>\chaptername</code>	Chapter	<code>\partname</code>	Part
<code>\contentsname</code>	Contents	<code>\refname</code>	References

`\refname` is used by article class; `\bibname` by report and book.

Table 2.2: Language-dependent strings for headings

some environments generate headings with predefined texts. For example, by default the `abstract` environment displays the word “Abstract” above the text of the abstract supplied by the user. \LaTeX defines these strings as command sequences (see Table 2.2) so that you can easily customize them to obtain your favorite names. This is shown in the example below, where the default name “Abstract”, as defined in the article class, is replaced by the word “Summary”.

2-2-4

Summary

This book describes how to modify the appearance of \LaTeX documents.

```
\renewcommand\abstractname{Summary}
\begin{abstract}
  This book describes how to modify the
  appearance of \LaTeX{} documents.
\end{abstract}
```

The standard \LaTeX class files define a few more strings. See Section 13.1.3, and especially Table 13.2 on page 305, for a full list and a discussion of the babel system, which provides translations of these strings in more than sixty languages.

2.2.3 Introduction to heading design

Headings can be loosely subdivided into two major groups: display and run-in headings. A display heading is separated by a vertical space from the preceding and the following text — most headings in this book are of this type.

A run-in heading is characterized by a vertical separation from the preceding text, but the text following the title continues on the same line as the heading itself, only separated from the latter by a horizontal space. In many classes the lower-level headings such as `\paragraph` are formatted as run-in headings. Note that an empty line after the heading command is ignored.

2-2-5

Run-in headings. This example shows how a run-in heading looks like. Paragraph text following the heading continues on the same line as the heading.

```
\paragraph{Run-in headings.}
```

This example shows how a run-in heading looks like. Paragraph text following the heading continues on the same line as the heading.

In the remainder of this section we are now going to look at how display and run-in headings can be designed and how one can adjust a given design. We start by looking at two packages that offer a somewhat special feature: they add quotations to display headings.

We then discuss all other design aspects that are supported through the high-level interfaces of the `titlesec` package. At the very end we also briefly look at the low-level support offered by L^AT_EX because this is helpful in understanding the code found in older document class files.

2.2.4 `quotchap`, `epigraph` — Mottos on chapters and sections

An interesting way to enhance `\chapter` headings is provided by the `quotchap` package created by Karsten Tinnfeld with later updates by Jan Klever. It allows the user to specify quotation(s) that will appear on the top left of the chapter title area.

The quotation(s) for the next chapter are specified in a `savequote` environment; the width of the quotation area can be given as an optional argument defaulting to 10cm. Each quotation should finish with a `\qauthor` command to denote its source, though it would be possible to provide your own formatting manually.

The default layout produced by the package can be described as follows: the quotations are typeset in `\slshape`, placed flush left, followed by vertical material stored in the command `\chapterheadstartvskip`. It is followed by a very large chapter number, typeset flush right in 60% gray, followed by the chapter title text, also typeset flush right. After a further vertical separation, taken from the command `\chapterheadendvskip`, the first paragraph of the chapter is started without indentation.

The number can be printed in black by specifying the option `nogrey` to the package. To print the chapter number in one of the many freely available fonts, you can choose among a dozen of options, such as `charter` for Bitstream's Charter BT or `times` for Adobe's Times. By default, Adobe's Bookman is chosen. Alternatively, you can explicitly specify a font family (basically any of those listed in the tables in Chapter 10) as an argument to `\qsetcnfont`. Or you could redefine the `\chapnumfont` command, which is ultimately responsible for selecting the font and font size for the chapter number.

The `\quote font` command defines the font used for the quote, and with the help of `\qauthorfont` you can alter the font for the author name (which is why we still get a sans serif font in the example even though only `\scshape` was specified). Finally, the font for the chapter title font can be influenced by redefining the `\sectfont` command as shown in the example.

This, together with the possibilities offered by redefining the commands `\chapterheadstartvskip` and `\chapterheadendvskip`, allows you to produce a number of interesting layouts even though a lot remains hardwired.¹ The following example uses a negative vertical skip to move the quotation on the same level as the number (in Avantgarde) and set the title and quotation in Helvetica (or more exactly in T_EX Gyre Heros).

¹If you require more customization, you have to define your own variation of the command `\makechapterhead` starting from the code found in the package.

Cookies! Give me some cookies!

COOKIE MONSTER



A Package Test

```
\usepackage[avantgarde]{quotchap}
\renewcommand\chapterheadstartvskip
    {\vspace*{-5\baselineskip}}
% select TeX Gyre Heros for title and quote:
\usepackage{tgheros}
\renewcommand\sectfont{\sffamily\bfseries}
\renewcommand\quoteont{\sffamily\slshape}
\renewcommand\qauthorfont{\scshape}
```

```
\begin{savequote}[10pc]
  Cookies! Give me some cookies!
  \qauthor{Cookie Monster}
\end{savequote}
\chapter{A Package Test}
Adding this package changes the chapter
heading dramatically.
```

Adding this package changes the chapter heading dramatically.

2-2-6

With the `quotchap` package the quotation is directly integrated into the design of the chapter heading. The `epigraph` package by Peter Wilson has a different approach; here the quotation is typeset after the heading (using the command `\epigraph` or the environment `epigraphs`), and the heading command itself has no knowledge of it. On one hand this is more versatile; on the other it clearly means that designs that properly interact with the heading text are not possible.

The package offers a lot of configuration possibilities, typically by redefining some command or setting a dimension. A few of them are shown in the next example (but actually using the default values, so none of the redefinitions has any effect). For others you have to consult the package documentation.

1 A Package Test

Cookies! Give me
some cookies!

Cookie Monster

```
\usepackage{epigraph}
\setlength\epigraphwidth{.4\textwidth}
\renewcommand\epigraphsize {\small}
\renewcommand\epigraphflush{flushright}
\renewcommand\sourceflush {flushright}

\section{A Package Test}
\epigraph{Cookies! Give me some cookies!}
    {Cookie Monster}
```

When adding a quote, the paragraph following it comes out indented. If you do not like this, you have to use `\noindent` at the beginning of this paragraph.

2-2-7

When adding a quote, the paragraph following it comes out indented. If you do not like this, you have to use `\verb=\noindent=` at the beginning of this paragraph.

There are also mechanisms to place an epigraph onto a chapter or part heading using the command `\epigraphhead`; see the package documentation for details.

2.2.5 indentfirst — Indent the first paragraph after a heading

Standard L^AT_EX document classes and many others, following (American) English typographic tradition, suppress the indentation of the first paragraph after a display

heading. While this can be changed with an option to `titlesec` (see below), it can also be done through the little¹ package `indentfirst` by David Carlisle, regardless of whether or not the `titlesec` package is loaded.

2.2.6 nonumonpart — No page numbers on parts

Another often asked for adjustment is to drop page numbers on part titles. On chapter headings this can be easily manually achieved using `\thispagestyle{empty}`, but because `\parts` in many classes occupy a whole page, there is no possibility to place such a declaration.² To solve this without any manual work someone suggested a few lines of code, and Yvon Henel took the effort to put them into the little `nonumonpart` package. It works for the standard classes `report` and `book` and any other class that is derived from them. All you have to do is load the package; there are no options or other customization possibilities.

2.2.7 titlesec — A package approach to heading design

The `titlesec` package created by Javier Bezos provides a flexible and fairly comprehensive reimplementaion of the basic heading tools offered by Standard L^AT_EX and is therefore a good choice if adjustments are wanted or new document classes are to be designed. It works together with most document classes in existence; notable exceptions are `memoir` and the KOMA-Script classes, both of which have their own tools for setting up heading structures that need to be used.

Javier's approach overcomes some of the limitations inherent in the original L^AT_EX tools and provides a cleaner and more generic interface. The package supports two interfaces: a simple one for smaller adjustments, which is realized mainly by options to the package, and an extended interface to make more elaborate modifications.

The basic interface

The basic interface lets you modify the font characteristics of all headings by specifying one or more options to set a font family (`rm`, `sf`, `tt`), a font series (`md`, `bf`), or a font shape (`up`, `it`, `sl`, `sc`). The title size can be influenced by selecting one of the following options: `big` (same sizes as for standard L^AT_EX classes), `tiny` (all headings except for chapters in text size), `medium`, or `small`, which are layouts between the two extremes. The alignment is controlled by `raggedleft`, `center`, or `raggedright`, while the vertical spacing can be reduced by specifying the option `compact` as shown later.

To modify the format of the number accompanying a heading, the command `\titlelabel` is available. Within it `\thetitle` refers to the current sectioning

¹This package probably holds the record of "the shortest package in the L^AT_EX world": besides 40 lines of comments it consists of two lines of code.

²Well, you could try to put it into the heading title, but you will soon find that this not a good place for a number of reasons (though one can make it work with the help of the optional argument to the `\part` command).

number, such as `\thesection` or `\thesubsection`. The declaration applies to all headings, as can be seen in the next example:

	1. A section	<code>\usepackage[sf,bf,tiny,center]{titlesec}</code>
	1.1. A subsection	<code>\titlelabel{\thetitle.\enspace}</code>
	1.1.1. A subsubsection	<code>\section{A section}</code>
		<code>\subsection{A subsection}</code>
		<code>\subsubsection{A subsubsection}</code>
2-2-8	Three headings following each other, a situation you will not see very often ...	Three headings following each other, a situation you will not see very often <code>\ldots</code>

`\titleformat*{cmd}{format}`

The basic interface offers one more command, `\titleformat*`, that takes two arguments. The first argument (*cmd*) is a sectioning command that we intend to modify. The second argument (*format*) contains the formatting instruction that should be applied to this particular heading. This declaration works on individual sectioning commands, and its use overwrites all font or alignment specifications given as options to the package (i.e., the options `rm`, `it`, and `raggedleft` in the following example). The last command used in the second argument can be a command with one argument — it receives the title text if present. In the next example we use this feature to set the `\subsubsection` title in small capitals (though this looks rather ugly with full-sized numbers).

	<i>1 A section</i>	<code>\usepackage[rm,it,raggedleft,tiny,compact]{titlesec}</code>
	<i>1.1 A subsection</i>	<code>\titleformat*{\subsubsection}{\scshape\MakeLowercase}</code>
	1.1.1 A SUBSUBSECTION	<code>\section{A section}</code>
		<code>\subsection{A subsection}</code>
		<code>\subsubsection{A subsubsection}</code>
2-2-9	Three headings following each other, a situation you will not see very often ...	Three headings following each other, a situation you will not see very often <code>\ldots</code>

In many \LaTeX document classes (with or without loading `titlesec`), words in long headings are justified and, if necessary, hyphenated as can be seen in the next example. If this is not wanted, line breaks can be manually adjusted using `\\`, but then one has to repeat the heading title, without the extra formatting instruction, in the optional argument. Otherwise, the line breaks also show up in the table of contents.

*Hyphenation
and line breaks
in headings*

1 A very long heading that shows the default behavior of \LaTeX 's sectioning commands

2-2-10 Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero.

```
\usepackage{lipsum,titlesec}

\section{A very long heading that
shows the default behavior of
\LaTeX's sectioning commands}

\lipsum[3][1-2]
```


Alternatively, one can use the option `raggedright` from the simple interface, which then applies to all heading, or use the extended interface to make a dedicated decision for each heading level separately.

1 A very long heading that shows the default behavior of L^AT_EX's sectioning commands

Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis.

```
\usepackage[raggedright]{titlesec}
\usepackage{lipsum}
```

```
\section{A very long heading that
        shows the default behavior of
        \LaTeX's sectioning commands}
\lipsum[3] [1-3]
```

2-2-11

*Interpretation of
heading command
arguments*

Two other options may offer some extra help for such cases: if you specify `newlinetospace`, then any `\\` or `*` in the heading text is replaced by a space before the text is passed on to the table of contents or into the running header so that it is not necessary to use the optional argument to the heading command, just because the text has explicit line breaks. The option `toctitles` changes the use of the optional argument so that it is only specifying the text for the running header while the TOC always receives the full text.

*Indentation after
heading*

The paragraph indentation for the first paragraph following the headings can be globally specified using the package options `indentafter` or `noindentafter`. With the extended interface this can be done for individual heading levels.

*Adjusting "empty"
pages*

If chapter headings always appear on recto pages (by internally issuing a `\cleardoublepage` command), then this often generates an empty verso page — except that this page may still contain a page number or a running header. To force such pages to be totally empty you can specify the option `clearempy`. See also the `nextpage` package discussed in Section 5.6.4 on page 418 for alternative approaches.

\part in the TOC*

For some reason the default for `\part*` used by `titlesec` is that these headings show up in the table of contents. If that is not wanted, use the option `notocpart*`. The `\part` heading is otherwise not influenced by settings for the basic interface. If you want to modify it, you must use the extended interface described below.

*Fixing a TOC
problem with \part*

Another option specific to `\part` commands is `newparttoc`. This changes the entries generated in the TOC so that they can be manipulated by the `titletoc` package, which is normally not the case as they have a nonstandard definition in most L^AT_EX classes. See the discussion on page 72 for details.

The extended interface

The extended interface consists of two major commands, `\titleformat` and `\titlespacing`. They allow you to declare the “inner” format (i.e., fonts, label, alignment, ...) and the “outer” format (i.e., spacing, indentation, etc.), respectively. This scheme was adopted because people often wish to alter only one or the other aspect of the layout.

`\titleformat{cmd}[shape]{format}{label}{sep}{before-code}[after-code]`

The first argument (*cmd*) is the heading command name (e.g., `\section`) whose format is to be modified. In contrast to \LaTeX 's `\@startsection` (see Section 2.2.8 on page 51) this argument requires the command name — that is, with the backslash in front. The remaining arguments have the following meaning:

shape The basic shape for the heading. A number of predefined shapes are available: `hang`, the default, produces a hanging label (like `\section` in standard classes); `display` puts label and heading text on separate lines (like standard `\chapter`); while `runin` produces a run-in title (like standard `\paragraph`).

In addition, the following shapes, which have no equivalents in standard \LaTeX , are provided: `frame` is similar to `display` but frames the title; `leftmargin` puts the title into the left margin, while `rightmargin` places it into the right margin. The last two shapes might conflict with `\marginpar` commands; that is, they may overlap.

A general-purpose shape is `block`, which typesets the heading as a single block. It should be preferred to `hang` for centered layouts.

Both `drop` and `wrap` wrap the first paragraph around the title, with `drop` using a fixed width for the title and `wrap` using the width of the widest title line (automatically breaking the title within the limit forced by the *left-sep* argument of `\titlespacing`).

format The declarations that are applied to the whole title — label and text. They may include only vertical material, which is typeset following the space above the heading. If you need horizontal material, it should be entered in the *label* or *before-code* argument.

label The formatting of the label, that is, the heading number. To refer to the number itself, use `\thesection` or whatever is appropriate. For defining `\chapter` headings the package offers `\chaptertitlename`, which produces `\chaptername` or `\appendixname`, depending on the position of the heading in the document.

sep Length whose value determines the distance between the label and title text. Depending on the *shape* argument, it might be a vertical or horizontal separation. For example, with the `frame` shape, it specifies the distance between the frame and heading text.

before-code Code executed immediately preceding the heading text. Its last command can take one argument, which will pick up the heading text and thus permits more complicated manipulations (see Example 2-2-15).

Since version 2.7, it is possible to load the package with the option `explicit` in which case the heading text *must* be given explicitly as `#1` inside *before-code*. This makes the declaration somewhat clearer, and you can do any manipulations directly instead of defining a command with one argument to do the job.

after-code Optional code to be executed after formatting the heading text (still within the scope of the declarations given in *format*). For `hang`, `block`, and `display`,

it is executed in vertical mode; with `runin`, it is executed in horizontal mode. For other shapes, it has no effect.

If the starred form of a heading is used, the *label* and *sep* arguments are ignored because no number is produced.

The next example shows a more old-fashioned run-in heading, for which we define only the format, not the spacing around the heading. The latter is manipulated with the `\titlespacing` command.

	<code>\usepackage{titlesec}</code>	
	<code>\titleformat{\section}[runin]{\normalfont\scshape}</code>	
	<code>{\S,\oldstylenums{\thesection}.}{.5em}{.}</code>	
§ 1. THE TITLE. The heading is separated from the section text by a dot and a space of one quad.	<code>\section{The Title}</code>	The heading is separated from the section text by a dot and a space of one quad.

2-2-12

By default, L^AT_EX's `\section` headings are not indented (they are usually of *shape hang*). If you prefer a normal paragraph indentation with such a heading, you could add `\indent` before the `\S` sign or specify the indentation with the `\titlespacing` declaration, described next.

`\titlespacing*{cmd}{left-sep}{before-sep}{after-sep}[right-sep]`

The starred form of the command suppresses the paragraph indentation for the paragraph following the title, except with shapes where the heading and paragraph are combined, such as `runin` and `drop`. The *cmd* argument holds the heading command name to be manipulated. The remaining arguments are as follows:

left-sep Length specifying the increase of the left margin for headings with the `block`, `display`, `hang`, or `frame` shape. With `...margin` or `drop` shapes it specifies the width of the heading title, with `wrap` it specifies the maximum width for the title, and with `runin` it specifies the indentation before the title (negative values would make the title hang into the left margin).

before-sep Length specifying the vertical space added above the heading.

after-sep Length specifying the separation between the heading and the following paragraph. It can be a vertical or horizontal space depending on the shape deployed.

right-sep Optional length specifying an increase of the right margin, which is supported for the shapes `block`, `display`, `hang`, and `frame`.

In the case of a run-in heading, *after-sep* is the horizontal space after the heading that by default is usually noticeably wider than a normal word space. This is reasonable for headings such as the one in Example 2-2-12 but not if the heading and following text are forming a sentence in which case we want a normal word space. For this you

can use `\wordsep` in *after-sep*, which refers to the interword space (including stretch and shrink) of the current font.

... some text above.

THE MAN started to run away
from the truck. He saw that he was
followed by the ...

```
\usepackage{titlesec}
\titleformat {\paragraph}[runin]{\normalfont\scshape}{}{0pt}{}
\titlespacing{\paragraph}{\parindent}{\medskipamount}{\wordsep}

\noindent \ldots\ some text above.
\paragraph{The man} started to run away from the truck.
He saw that he was followed by the \ldots
```

The *before-sep* and *after-sep* arguments usually receive rubber length values to allow some flexibility in the design. To simplify the declaration you can alternatively specify $*f$ (where f is a decimal factor). This is equivalent to f ex with some stretchability as well as a small shrinkability inside *before-sep*, and an even smaller stretchability and no shrinkability inside *after-sep*.

...some text before ...

SECTION 1
A Title Test

Some text to prove that this paragraph is
not indented and that the title has a mar-
gin of 1pc on either side.

```
\usepackage{titlesec}
\titleformat{\section}[frame]{\normalfont}
{\footnotesize \enspace SECTION \thesection
\enspace}{6pt}{\large\bfseries\filcenter}
\titlespacing*{\section}{1pc}{*4}{*2.3}[1pc]

\noindent \ldots some text before \ldots
\section{A Title Test}
Some text to prove that this paragraph is not indented
and that the title has a margin of 1pc on either side.
```

The previous example introduced `\filcenter`, but there are also `\filleft`, `\filright`, and `\fillast`—the latter produces an adjusted paragraph but centers the last line. These commands should be preferred to `\raggedleft` or `\raggedright` inside `\titleformat`, as the latter would cancel *left-sep* or *right-sep* set up by the `\titlespacing` command. Alternatively, you can use `\filinner` or `\filouter`, which resolve to `\filleft` or `\filright`, depending on the current page. However, due to TeX's asynchronous page makeup algorithm, they are supported only for headings that start a new page—for example, `\chapter` in most designs. See Example 2-2-17 on page 49 for a solution to this problem for other headings. Another useful spacing command we already used in Example 2-2-13 is `\wordsep`, which refers to the current interword space.

*Spacing tools for
headings*

By default, the spacing between two consecutive headings is defined to be the *after-sep* of the first one. If this result is not desired, you can change it by specifying the option `largestsep`, which puts the spacing to the maximum of *after-sep* from the first heading and *before-sep* of the second.

*Spacing between
consecutive
headings*

Normally the vertical space occupied by a display heading is the sum of *before-sep*, the size of the actual heading text, and the *after-sep*; i.e., it varies depending on the number of lines in the heading. However, in some designs the text following the chapter heading should always start at the same point regardless. This can be achieved

*Space reserved for
chapter headings*

by specifying the option `rigidchapters`. If used, *after-sep* no longer specifies the space below the heading but always measured from the top of the heading text; i.e., the sum of *before-sep* and *after-sep* defines the space reserved for the heading. Despite its name, the option applies to any heading of class `top`; see page 50.

Headings at page
bottom

After a heading L^AT_EX tries to ensure that at least two lines from the following paragraph appear on the same page as the heading title. If this proves impossible, the heading is moved to the next page. If you think that two lines are not enough, try the option `nobottomtitles` or `nobottomtitles*`, which move headings to a new page whenever the remaining space on the page is less than the current value of `\bottomtitlespace`. (Its default is `.2\textheight`; to change its value, use `\renewcommand` rather than `\setlength`.) The starred version is preferred, as it computes the remaining space with more accuracy, unless you use headings with `drop`, `margin`, or `wrap` shapes, which may get badly placed when deploying the starred option.

Handling unusual
layouts

In most heading layouts the number appears either on top or to the left of the heading text. If this placement is not appropriate, the *label* argument of `\titleformat` cannot be used. Instead, one has to exploit the fact that the *before-code* can pick up the heading text. In the next example, the command `\secformat` has one argument that defines the formatting for the heading text and number; we then call this command in the *before-code* argument of `\titleformat`. Note that the font change for the number is kept local by surrounding it with braces. Without them the changed font size might influence the title spacing in some circumstances.

A Title
on Two Lines

1

```
\usepackage{titlesec}
\newcommand\secformat[1]{%
  \parbox[b]{.5\textwidth}{\filleft\bfseries #1}%
  \quad\rule[-12pt]{2pt}{70pt}\quad
  {\fontsize{60}{60}\selectfont\thesection}}
\titleformat{\section}[block]
  {\filleft\normalfont\sffamily}{\filright}{0pt}{\secformat}
\titlespacing*\section{0pt}{*3}{*2}{1pc}
\section{A Title\\ on Two Lines}
```

In this example the heading number appears to the right of the heading text.

In this example the heading number appears to the right of the heading text.

2-2-15

The same technique can be applied to change the heading text in other ways. For example, if we want a period after the heading text, we could define

```
\newcommand\secformat[1]{#1.}
```

and then call `\secformat` in the last mandatory argument of the `\titleformat` declaration as shown in the previous example. Alternatively, we could have used the option `explicit` in which case such manipulations could have been done inline with `#1` referencing the heading text inside that argument.

Measuring the width
of the title

The `wrap` shape has the capability to measure the lines in the title text and return the width of the widest line in `\titlewidth`. This capability can be extended to three

other shapes (block, display, and hang) by loading the package with the option `calwidth` and then using `\titlewidth` within the arguments of `\titleformat`, as needed.

Measuring the title means trial typesetting it, and thus it is typeset twice. In some cases that can have undesirable side effects. For special requirements, the package therefore offers the command `\iftitlemeasuring`. It takes two arguments: the first is executed during the trial and the second when the heading is finally typeset.

For rules and leaders the package offers the `\titlerule` command. Used without any arguments it produces a rule of height `.4pt` spanning the full width of the column (but taking into account changes to the margins as specified with the `\titlespacing` declaration). An optional argument lets you specify a height for the produced rule. The starred form of `\titlerule` is used to produce leaders (i.e., repeated objects) instead of rules. It takes an optional *width* argument and a mandatory *text* argument. The *text* is repeatedly typeset in boxes with its natural width, unless a different *width* is specified in the optional argument. In that case, only the first and last boxes retain their natural widths to allow for proper alignment on either side.

Rules and leaders

The command `\titleline` lets you add horizontal material to arguments of `\titleformat` that expect vertical material. It takes an optional argument specifying the alignment and a mandatory argument containing the material to typeset. It produces a box of fixed width taking into account the marginal changes due to the `\titlespacing` declaration. Thus, either the material needs to contain some rubber space, or you must specify an alignment through the optional argument (allowed values are `l`, `r`, and `c`).

The `\titleline*` variant first typesets the material from its mandatory argument in a box of width `\titlewidth` (so you may have to add rubber space to this argument) and then uses this box as input to `\titleline` (i.e., aligns it according to the optional argument). Remember that you may have to use the option `calwidth` to ensure that `\titlewidth` contains a sensible value.

In the next somewhat artificial example, which is worth studying though better not used in real life, all of these tools are applied together:

Section 1

Rules and Leaders

`LATEXLATEXLATEXLATEXLATEXLATEX`

Note that the last `\titleline*` is surrounded by braces. Without them its optional argument would prematurely end the outer optional argument of `\titleformat`.

```
\usepackage[noindentafter,calwidth]{titlesec}
\titleformat{\section}[display]
  {\filright\normalfont\bfseries\sffamily}
  {\titleline[r]{Section \Huge\thesection}}{1ex}
  {\titleline*[1]{\titlerule[1pt]}\vspace{1pt}%
   \titleline*[1]{\titlerule[2pt]}\vspace{2pt}}
  [{\titleline*[1]{\titlerule*{\tiny\LaTeX}}}]
\titlespacing{\section}{1pc}{*3}{*2}
```

```
\section{Rules and Leaders}
```

Note that the last `\verb=\titleline*=` is surrounded by braces. Without them its optional argument would prematurely end the outer optional argument of `\verb=\titleformat=`.

Breaking before a heading

Standard L^AT_EX considers the space before a heading to be a good place to break the page unless the heading immediately follows another heading. The penalty to break at this point is stored in the internal counter `\@secpenalty`, and in many classes it holds the value `-300` (negative values are bonus places for breaking). Because only one penalty value is available for all heading levels, there is seldom any point in modifying its setting. With `titlesec`, however, you can exert finer control: whenever a command `\namebreak` is defined (where `\name` is the name of a sectioning command, such as `\sectionbreak`), the latter will be used instead of adding the default penalty. For example,

```
\newcommand\sectionbreak{\clearpage}
```

would result in sections always appearing on top of a page with all pending floats being typeset first. This interface also exists for headings of class `top`. For example, you can force parts to always start on a recto page, while chapters could be set to just start a new page by using `\cleardoublepage` and `\clearpage`, respectively. However, you have to first change their class to `page` or `top`, because this is not automatically done. Heading classes are explained on page 50.

Always keeping the space above a heading

In some layouts the space above a heading must be preserved, even if the heading appears on top of a page (by default, such spaces vanish at page breaks). This can be accomplished using a definition like the following:

```
\newcommand\sectionbreak{\addpenalty{-300}\vspace*{0pt}}
```

The `\addpenalty` command indicates a (good) breakpoint, which is followed by a zero space that cannot vanish. Thus, the “before” space from the heading will appear as well at the top of the page if a break is taken at the penalty.

Special page styles

Headings that start a new page often require a special page style; e.g., `\chapter` commands in the standard styles usually use `plain` even if for other pages a different style has been set up. To accommodate adjustments `titlesec` offers the command `\assignpagestyle`. For example,

```
\assignpagestyle{\chapter}{empty}
```

results in pages starting a new chapter to have neither a page number nor a running header. This command works with any heading of class `top` or `page`; see page 50. There are, however, restrictions when the sectioning command was not defined with `titlesec`; e.g., when using the standard document classes, it works for `\chapter` but not for `\part`. For the latter you first have to redeclare a format with `\titleformat`.

Conditional heading layouts

So far we have seen how to define fixed layouts for a heading command using `\titleformat` and `\titlespacing`. The `titlesec` package also allows you to conditionally change the layout on verso and recto pages and to use special layouts for numberless headings (i.e., those produced by the starred form of the heading command).

This is implemented through a keyword/value syntax in the first argument of `\titleformat` and `\titlespacing`. The available keys are `name`, `page` (values

odd or even), and numberless (values true or false). In fact, the syntax we have seen so far, `\titleformat{\section}{...}`, is simply an abbreviation for the general form `\titleformat{name=\section}{...}`.

In contrast to the spacing commands `\filinner` and `\filouter`, which can be used only with headings that start a new page, the `page` keyword enables you to define layouts that depend on the current page without any restriction. To specify the layout for a verso (left-hand) page, use the value `even`; for a recto (right-hand) page, use the value `odd`. Such settings only affect a document typeset in `twoside` mode. Otherwise, all pages are considered to be recto in `LATEX`. In the following example we use a `block` shape and shift the heading to one side, depending on the current page. In a similar fashion you could implement headings that are placed in the margin by using the shapes `leftmargin` and `rightmargin`.

The example also shows that placing declarations into the `format` argument affects both number and title, while placing them into `before-code` affects only the title: both are in bold, but only the text is in bold italics.

2-2-17	<p>1. A Head</p> <p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum</p>	<p>gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetur id, vulputate a, magna.</p> <p>2. Another</p> <p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur</p>	<pre>\usepackage{lipsum,titlesec} \titleformat{name=\section,page=odd}[block] {\normalfont\bfseries}{\thesection.}{6pt} {\itshape\filleft} \titleformat{name=\section,page=even}[block] {\normalfont\bfseries}{\thesection.}{6pt} {\itshape\filright} \section{A Head} \lipsum[1][1-4] \section{Another} \lipsum[1][1-4]</pre>
--------	--	---	---

Similarly, the `numberless` key is used to specify that a certain `\titleformat` or `\titlespacing` declaration should apply only to headings without numbers (value `true`) or to those with numbers (value `false`). By default, a heading declaration applies to both cases, so in the example the second declaration actually overwrites part of the first declaration. To illustrate what is possible the example uses quite different designs for the two cases — do not mistake this for an attempt to show good taste. It is important to realize that neither the *label* nor the *sep* argument is ignored when `numberless` is set to `true` as seen in the example — in normal circumstances you would probably use `{\0pt}` as values.

2-2-18	<p>1. A Head</p> <p>Some text to fill the page. Some text to fill the page.</p> <p>— Another</p> <p>Some text to fill this line.</p>	<pre>\usepackage{titlesec} \titleformat{name=\section}[block] {\normalfont\bfseries}{\thesection.}{6pt}{\filright} \titleformat{name=\section,numberless=true}[block] {\normalfont}{---}{12pt}{\itshape\filcenter} \section{A Head} Some text to fill the page. Some text to fill the page. \section*{Another} Some text to fill this line.</pre>
--------	---	---

Changing the heading hierarchy

The commands described so far are intended to adjust the formatting and spacing of existing heading commands. With the `\titleclass` declaration it is possible to define new headings.

```
\titleclass{cmd}{class}
\titleclass{cmd}{class}[parent-level-cmd]
\titleclass{cmd}[start-level]{class}          (with loadonly option)
```

There are three classes of headings: the `page` class contains headings that fill a full page (like `\part` in L^AT_EX's report and book document classes); the `top` class contains headings that start a new page and thus appear at the top of a page; and all other headings are considered to be part of the `straight` class.

Used without any optional argument, the `\titleclass` declaration simply changes the heading class of an existing heading *cmd*. For example,

```
\titleclass\section{top}
```

would result in sections always starting a new page. Note, however, that the existing *cmd* should have been defined using `titlesec` or at least should have been given a format with `\titleformat` in order to work. Otherwise you get an error message.

If this declaration is used with the optional *parent-level-cmd* argument, you introduce a new heading level below *parent-level-cmd*. Any existing heading command at this level is moved one level down in the hierarchy. For example,

```
\titleclass\subchapter{straight}[\chapter]
```

introduces the heading `\subchapter` between `\chapter` and `\section`. The declaration does not define any layout for this heading (which needs to be defined by an additional `\titleformat` and `\titlespacing` command), nor does it initialize the necessary counter. Most likely you also want to update the counter representation for `\section`:

```
\titleformat{\subchapter}{..}...    \titlespacing{\subchapter}{..}...
\newcounter{subchapter}
\renewcommand\thesubchapter{\thechapter.\arabic{subchapter}}
\renewcommand\thesection{\thesubchapter.\arabic{section}}
```

The third variant of `\titleclass` is needed only when you want to build a heading structure from scratch — for example, when you are designing a completely new document class that is not based on one of the standard classes. In that case load the package with the option `loadonly` so that the package will make no attempt to interpret existing heading commands so as to extract their current layout. You can then start building heading commands, as in the following example:

```
\titleclass\Ahead[0]{top}
\titleclass\Bhead{straight}[\Ahead]
\titleclass\Ahead{straight}[\Bhead]
```

```

\newcounter{Ahead} \newcounter{Bhead} \newcounter{Chead}
\renewcommand\theBhead{\theAhead-\arabic{Bhead}}
\renewcommand\theChead{\theBhead-\arabic{Chead}}
\titleformat{name=Ahead}{..}... \titlespacing{name=Ahead}{..}...
\titleformat{name=Bhead}{..}... ..

```

The *start-level* is usually 0 or -1; see the introduction in Section 2.2 for its meaning. There should be precisely one `\titleclass` declaration that uses this particular optional argument.

If you intend to build your own document classes in this way, take a look at the documentation accompanying the `titlesec` package. It contains additional examples and offers further tips and tricks.

2.2.8 Formatting headings — L^AT_EX's internal low-level methods

While it is recommended to use the higher-level interfaces provided by `titlesec` or those defined by KOMA-Script or the `memoir` class, it is useful to have a basic understanding of the interfaces defined in the L^AT_EX kernel, given that these interfaces are still in use in many document classes.¹

L^AT_EX provides a generic command called `\@startsection` that can be used to define a wide variety of heading layouts. If the desired layout is not achievable that way, then `\secdef` can be used to produce sectioning formats with arbitrary layout. It is used by the standard classes to define `\chapter` and `\part` headings.

The generic command `\@startsection` allows both types of headings to be defined. Its syntax and argument description are as follows:

```
\@startsection{name}{level}{indent}{beforeskip}{afterskip}{style}
```

name The name used to refer to the heading counter² for numbered headings and to define the command that generates a running header or footer (see page 390). For example, *name* would be the counter name, `\the \textit{name}` would be the command to display the current heading number, and `\namemark` would be the command for running headers. In most circumstances the *name* will be identical to the name of the sectioning command being defined, without the preceding backslash—but this is no requirement.

level A number denoting the depth level of the sectioning command. This level is used to decide whether the sectioning command gets a number (if the level is less than or equal to `secnumdepth`; see Section 2.2.1 on page 34) or shows up in the table of contents (if the value is less or equal to `tocdepth`; see Section 2.3.4 on page 71). It should therefore reflect the position in the command hierarchy of sectioning commands, where the outermost sectioning command has level zero.³

indent The indentation of the heading with respect to the left margin. By making the value negative, the heading starts in the outer margin. Making it positive indents all lines of the heading by this amount.

beforeskip The absolute value of this parameter defines the space to be left in front of the heading. If the parameter is negative, then the indentation of the paragraph following the heading is suppressed. This dimension is a rubber length; that is, it can take a stretch and shrink component. Note that L^AT_EX starts a new paragraph before the heading so that additionally the value of `\parskip` is added to the space in front.

¹The whole section is set in a smaller font to indicate that is more a reference—helpful mainly when studying existing code.

²This counter must exist; it is not defined automatically.

³In the book and report classes, the `\part` command actually has level -1 (see Table 2.1).

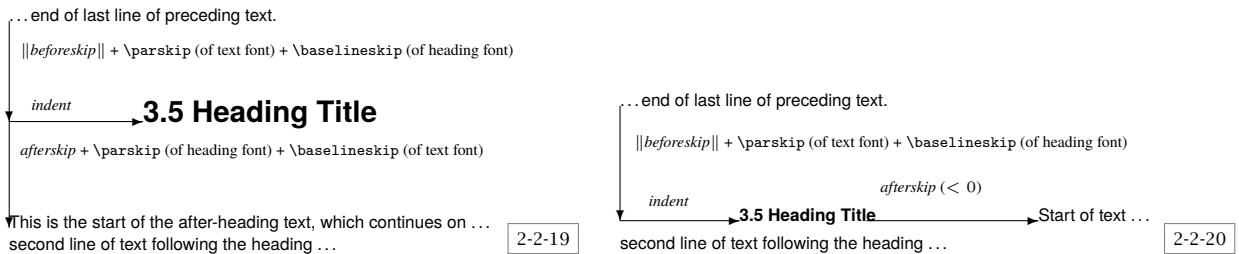


Figure 2.1: The layout for display and run-in headings (produced by layouts)

after skip The space to be left following a heading. It is the vertical space after a display heading or the horizontal space after a run-in heading. The sign of *after skip* controls whether a display heading ($after skip > 0$) or a run-in heading ($after skip \leq 0$) is produced. In the first case a new paragraph is started so that the value of \backslashparskip is added to the space after the heading. An unpleasant side effect of this parameter coupling is that it is impossible to define a display heading with an effective “after space” of less than \backslashparskip using the \backslashstartsection command. When you try to compensate for a positive \backslashparskip value by using a negative *after skip*, you change the display heading into a run-in heading.

style The style of the heading text. This argument can take any instruction that influences the typesetting of text, such as \backslashraggedright , \backslashLarge , or \backslashbfseries (see the examples below).

Figure 2.1 shows these parameters graphically for the case of display and run-in headings, respectively. As an example we redefine \backslashsubsection to be set in normal-sized italic with the separation from the preceding text being exactly one baseline. The separation from the text following is one-half baseline, and this text is not indented.

```

\makeatletter
\renewcommand\subsection{\@startsection
  {subsection}{2}{0mm}%           % name, level, indent
  {-\baselineskip}{0.5\baselineskip}% % before skip, after skip
  {\normalfont\normalsize\itshape}}% % style
\makeatother
\ldots\ some text above.
\subsection{Subsection Heading}
The first paragraph following the redefined subsection
And a second one (indented).

```

2-2-21

4.1 Subsection Heading

The first paragraph following the redefined subsection heading ...
And a second one (indented).

The first argument to $\backslash@startsection$ is the string *subsection* to denote that we use the corresponding counter for heading numbers. In the sectional hierarchy we are at level two. The third argument is *0mm* because the heading should start at the left margin.

The absolute value of the fourth argument (*before skip*) specifies that a distance equal to one baseline must be left in front of the heading and, because the parameter is negative, that the indentation of the paragraph following the heading should be suppressed.

The absolute value of the fifth parameter (*after skip*) specifies that a distance equal to one-half baseline must be left following the heading and, because the parameter is positive, that a display heading has to be produced. Finally, according to the sixth parameter, the heading should be typeset in an italic font using a size equal to the normal document type size.

In fact, the redefinition is a bit too simplistic because, as mentioned earlier, on top of the absolute value of *before skip* and *after skip*, L^AT_EX always adds the current value of \backslashparskip . Thus, in layouts where this parameter is nonzero, we need to subtract it to achieve the desired separation.

Other simple
heading style
changes

Which commands can be used for setting the styles of the heading texts in the *style* argument of the $\backslash@startsection$ command? Apart from the font-changing directives (see Chapter 9), few instructions can be used here. A \backslashcentering command produces a centered display heading, and a

`\raggedright` declaration makes the text left justified. The use of `\raggedleft` is possible, but may give somewhat strange results. You can also use `\hrule`, `\medskip`, `\newpage`, or similar commands that introduce local changes.

In the standard L^AT_EX classes the highest-level sectioning commands `\part` and `\chapter` produce their titles without using `\startsection` because their layout cannot be produced with that command. Similarly, you may also want to construct sectioning commands without limitations. In this case you must follow a few conventions to allow L^AT_EX to take all the necessary typesetting actions when executing them.

The command `\secdef` can help you when defining such commands by providing an easy interface to the three possible forms of section headings. With the definition

```
\newcommand\myhead{\secdef\myheadA\myheadB}
```

the following actions take place:

<code>\myhead{title}</code>	invokes	<code>\myheadA[title]{title}</code>
<code>\myhead[toc-entry]{title}</code>	invokes	<code>\myheadA[toc-entry]{title}</code>
<code>\myhead*{title}</code>	invokes	<code>\myheadB{title}</code>

The commands you have to provide are a (re)definition¹ of `\myhead` and a definition of the commands named `\myheadA` or `\myheadB`, respectively. Note that `\myheadA` has an optional argument containing the text to be entered in the table of contents .toc file, while the second (mandatory) argument, as well as the single argument to `\myheadB`, specifies the heading text to be typeset. Thus, the definitions must have the following structure:

```
\newcommand\myhead{ ... \secdef \myheadA \myheadB }
\newcommand\myheadA[2][default]{ ... }
\newcommand\myheadB[1]{ ... }
```

An explicit example is a simplified variant of `\appendix`. It redefines the `\section` command to produce headings for appendices (by invoking either the command `\Appendix` or `\sAppendix`), changing the presentation of the section counter and resetting it to zero. The modified `\section` command also starts a new page (with all deferred floats placed), which is typeset with a special page style (see Chapter 5) and with top floats suppressed. The indentation of the first paragraph in a section is also suppressed by using the low-level kernel command `\@afterheading` and setting the Boolean switch `@afterindent` to false. For details on the use of these commands, see the `\chapter` implementation in the standard classes (file `classes.dtx`).

```
\makeatletter
\renewcommand\appendix{%
  \renewcommand\section{%
    \clearpage\thispagestyle{plain}%           % Redefinition of \section...
    \suppressfloats[t]\@afterindentfalse      % new page, folio bottom
    \secdef\Appendix\sAppendix}%             % no top floats, no indent
  \setcounter{section}{0}\renewcommand\thesection{\Alph{section}}}
```

In the definition below you can see how `\Appendix` advances the section counter using the `\refstepcounter` command (the latter also resets all subsidiary counters and defines the “current reference string”; see Section 2.4). It writes a line into the .toc file with the `\addcontentsline` command, formats the heading title, and saves the title for running heads and/or feet by calling `\sectionmark`. The `\@afterheading` command in the later part of the definition handles the indentation of the paragraph following the heading.

```
\newcommand\Appendix[2][?]{%
  \refstepcounter{section}%                  % Complex form:
  \addcontentsline{toc}{appendix}%           % step counter/ set label
  {\protect\numberline{appendixname~\thesection}#1}%
  {\raggedleft\large\bfseries \appendixname\ % typeset the title
   \thesection\par \centering#2\par}%        % and number}
```

¹Redefinition in case you change an existing heading command such as `\part` in the preamble of your document.

```

\sectionmark{#1}%           % add to running header
\@afterheading             % prepare indentation handling
\addvspace{\baselineskip}} % space after heading

```

The `\sAppendix` command (starred form) performs only the formatting.

```

\newcommand\sAppendix[1]{%           % Simplified (starred) form
  {\raggedleft\large\bfseries\appendixname\par \centering#1\par}%
  \@afterheading\addvspace{\baselineskip}}
\makeatother

```

Applying these definitions produces the following output:

```

Appendix A % Example needs commands introduced above!
The list of all commands \appendix
                          \section{The list of all commands}

```

Then follows the text of the first section in the appendix. Some more text in the appendix.

Then follows the text of the first section in the appendix. Some more text in the appendix.

2-2-22

Do not forget that the example shown above represents only a simplified version of a redefined `\section` command. Among other things, we did not take into account the `secnumdepth` counter, which contains the numbering threshold. You might also have to foresee code dealing with various types of document formats, such as one- and two-column output or one- and two-sided printing. Also missing is an appropriate definition for `\l@appendix`, which is called in the table of contents because of the `\addcontentsline`. This is discussed at the beginning of Section 2.3.4 on page 70.

2.3 Table of contents structures

A *table of contents* (TOC) is a special list in which the titles of the section units are listed, usually together with the page numbers indicating the start of the sections. This list can be rather complicated if units from several nesting levels are included, and it should be formatted carefully because it plays an important rôle as a navigation aid for the reader.

Similar lists exist containing reference information about the floating elements in a document — namely, the *list of tables* and the *list of figures*. The structure of these lists is usually simpler, as their contents, the captions of the floating elements, are normally all on the same level (but see subfloats in Section 7.5).

Standard L^AT_EX can automatically create these three contents lists. By default, L^AT_EX enters text from one of the arguments of each sectioning command into the `.toc` file. While information from all sectioning levels is added to the `.toc` file, not all of them are used when producing the table of contents. The level down to which the heading information is displayed is controlled by the counter `tocdepth`. It can be changed, for example, with the following declaration:

```
\setcounter{tocdepth}{1}
```

In this case section heading information down to the first level (e.g., in the report class part, chapter, and section) will be shown.

Granular control is possible


This counter globally defines which entries are typeset in the table of contents. Sometimes, however, more granular control is necessary; e.g., you may want to show

less or more heading levels in an appendix, etc. For such use cases, you may want to try the package `tocvsec2` by Peter Wilson. It provides commands to adjust the level within the document.

Similarly, \LaTeX maintains two more files, one for the list of figures (`.lof`) and one for the list of tables (`.lot`), which contain the text specified as the argument of the `\caption` command for figures and tables.

When using the `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures`, or `\listoftables`, the information written into these files during a previous \LaTeX run is read and typeset (normally at the beginning of a document), and at the end of the run newly collected information is written back to the files.

To generate these cross-reference tables, it is therefore always necessary to run \LaTeX at least twice — once to collect the relevant information, and a second time to read back the information and typeset it in the correct place in the document. Because of the additional material to be typeset in the second run, the cross-referencing information may change, making a third \LaTeX run necessary. This is one of the reasons for the tradition of using different page-numbering systems for the front matter and the main text: in the days of hand typesetting any additional iteration made the final product much more expensive.

 A TOC needs two, sometimes even three, \LaTeX runs

Normally the contents files are generated automatically by \LaTeX by internally using the commands `\addcontentsline`, `\addtocontents`, and `\numberline`; see Section 2.3.4 on page 70. With some care this interface can also be used to enter information directly into these files to complement the actions of standard \LaTeX .

For instance, in the case of the starred form of the section commands, no information is written to the `.toc` file. If you do not want a heading number (starred form) but you do want an entry in the `.toc` file, you can use `\addcontentsline` with or without `\numberline` as shown in the following example.

Adding arbitrary starred headings to the TOC

Contents			<code>\tableofcontents</code>
			<code>\section*{Foreword}</code>
Foreword	1		<code>\addcontentsline{toc}{section}</code>
			<code>{\protect\numberline{}}Foreword</code>
1 Thoughts	2		A starred heading with the TOC entry
1.1 Contact info	2		manually added. Compare this to the
			form used for the bibliography.
References	2		
			<code>\section{Thoughts}</code>
Foreword			<code>We find all in \cite{k1}.</code>
A starred heading with the			<code>\subsection{Contact info}</code>
TOC entry manually added.			<code>E-mail Ben at \cite{k2}.</code>
Compare this to the form			<code>\begin{thebibliography}{9}</code>
used for the bibliography.			<code>\addcontentsline{toc}{section}</code>
			<code>{\refname}</code>
			<code>\bibitem{k1} Ben User, Some day will</code>
			<code>never come, 2010</code>
			<code>\bibitem{k2} BUser@earth.info</code>
			<code>\end{thebibliography}</code>
2-3-1	1	2	


Using `\numberline` as in the “Foreword” produces an indented “section” entry in the table of contents, leaving the space where the section number would go free. The `\protect` in front is required in this case; see page 70 for more details. Omitting the `\numberline` command (as was done for the bibliography entry) would typeset the heading flush left instead. Adding a similar line after the start of the `\theindex` means that the “Index” will be listed in the table of contents. Unfortunately, this approach cannot be used to get the list of figures or tables into the table of contents because `\listoffigures` or `\listoftables` might generate a listing of several pages, and consequently the page number picked up by `\addcontentsline` might be wrong. And putting it before the command does not help either, because often these list commands start a new page. One potential solution is to copy the command definition from the class file and put `\addcontentsline` directly into it.

*Bibliography or
index in tables of
contents*

In the case of standard classes or close derivatives, you can use the `tocbibind` package created by Peter Wilson to get the “List of...”, “Index”, or “Bibliography” section listed in the table of contents without further additions to the source. The package offers a number of options such as `notbib`, `notindex`, `nottoc`, `notlof`, and `notlot` (do not add the corresponding entry to the table of contents).

*Numbered headings
for bibliography or
index*

There also exist the options `numbib` and `numindex` (number the corresponding heading), and with `section` you can ask for section instead of chapter headings in document classes like `report` or `book`.

*An oddity
better turned off* 

By default the “Contents” section is listed within the table of contents, which is seldom desirable — use the option `nottoc` to disable this behavior.

* * * * *

There are a number of packages that extend or alter standard L^AT_EX’s table of contents mechanism. The `hyperref` package changes the internals to support hyper-link anchors; in particular, this changes the internal contents file structures. It is briefly touched upon on page 72; an extensive coverage of that package is found in Section 2.4.6 on page 96.

The `tocdata` package provides an interface for adding special data such as author names to the contents files. It is discussed in the next section. We will then turn to customizing the design of such lists with the help of the `titletoc` package. There are alternative packages for this available, e.g., `tocloft` by Peter Wilson or `tocstyle` by Markus Kohm, but `titletoc` provides a good general-purpose interface suitable for most needs, so we concentrate on that.

The final section concerned with contents file data discusses the low-level interface already provided by L^AT_EX and is included mainly for reference (in a smaller font) because one often find its commands in older class files.

2.3.1 `tocdata` — Providing extra data for the TOC

In anthologies or other multi-author works it is quite common to list the different authors in the table of contents next to their entries. The package `tocdata` by Brian Dunn provides a framework for this that enables you to place such data into the

typeset TOC entry just before the page number. The package works well with most document classes and supports TOC packages such as `titletoc` or `tocloft`.

In the next example we have added author names to the two subsections; the section itself shows no extra data. The extra data is formatted with the help of the command `\tocdataformat`, which by default sets the material in a small italic font. Here we added color and an em-dash.

Contents

1 On Cookies

1.1 Preparing cookies . . . — *Ben User*

1.2 Eating cookies . . . — *Cookie Monster*

1 On Cookies

1.1 Preparing cookies

Text of his recipes ...

1.2 Eating cookies

2-3-2 How to do it ...

```
\usepackage{color,tocdata}
\renewcommand\tocdataformat[1]{\textnormal{%
  \textcolor{blue}{--- \small\itshape#1}}}

6 \tableofcontents
6
6 \section{On Cookies}
  \tocdata{toc}{Ben User}
  \subsection{Preparing cookies}
    Text of his recipes \ldots

  \tocdata{toc}{Cookie Monster}
  \subsection{Eating cookies}
    How to do it \ldots
```

In a similar fashion you can add to the list of figures or tables to indicate the artist who made a certain picture or the source of the table data, etc. All you need to do is to specify in the first argument to `\tocdata` the correct target destination file extension, e.g., `lof` for the list of figures or `lot` for the list of tables.

The `\tocdata` command used in the previous example enables you to add data to any “TOC-like” file, but often you also want to provide this information within your document as well.

For such use cases the package offers a set of special commands that combine `\tocdata` with a heading or a caption command. We show the syntax for the `\part` heading, but corresponding commands exist for `\chapter` (if supported by the document class), `\section`, and `\subsection` headings.

<pre>\partauthor[<i>list-entry</i>]{<i>title</i>}[<i>prefix</i>]{<i>first</i>}{<i>last</i>}[<i>suffix</i>] \partauthor* {<i>title</i>}[<i>prefix</i>]{<i>first</i>}{<i>last</i>}[<i>suffix</i>]</pre>

The first form executes the following set of commands for you

```
\todata{toc}{first last}
\part[list-entry]{title\nopagebreak
  \tocdatapartprint{prefix}{first}{last}{suffix}}
\index{class, first}
```

while the star form on the second line omits the `\tocdata`, since the heading is not written to the table of contents. The `\tocdatapartprint` command formats the name and adds it as part of the heading title. By redefining this command, various

layouts can be realized. Note that *prefix* and *suffix* are used only there — the `\tocdata` and `\index` commands receive only *first* and *last*.

While *first* is a mandatory argument, it can be left empty if the author has no first name. In this case, the comma in the `\index` is automatically dropped too as shown in the example.

Contents

1 On Cookies	6
1.1 Preparing cookies <i>Ben User</i>	6
1.2 Eating cookies <i>Cookie Monster</i>	6

1 On Cookies

1.1 Preparing cookies

— *Sir Ben User*

Text of his recipes ...

1.2 Eating cookies

— *Cookie Monster!!*

How to do it ...

Index

Cookie Monster, 6

User, Ben, 6

```
\usepackage{makeidx}
\makeindex % enable indexing
% save some space in the index:
\renewcommand\indexspace{\par\vspace{2pt}}

\usepackage{tocdata}

\tableofcontents \smallskip

\section{On Cookies}
\subsectionauthor{Preparing cookies}
                    [Sir]{Ben}{User}
Text of his recipes \ldots

\subsectionauthor{Eating cookies}
                    {}{Cookie Monster}{!!}
How to do it \ldots

\printindex
```

2-3-3

For captions of figures (or tables) two commands exist with a syntax similar to `\partauthor`, but with one further optional *extra-text* argument. They are intended to be used instead of the normal `\caption` command:

```
\captionartist [list-entry] {title} [extra-text] [prefix] {first}{last} [suffix]
```

The arguments *list-entry* and *title* correspond to the usual `\caption` arguments, and *first* and *last* are used to add the artist name to the list of figures and produce an index entry (if an index is made). Again, *prefix* and *suffix* are used only when displaying the artist name as part of the float. Finally the *extra-text* allows you to place additional information next to the caption title that does not show up in the list of figures.

Note that if you want to use the optional *prefix* but not the *extra-text*, you need to supply an empty optional argument for the latter to identify for L^AT_EX which is which.

To influence justification of the name there are a number of declarations available of the form `\tdartist...` where ... is either *justify*, *left*, *center*, or *right*, and for the additional text you have `\tdartisttext...` with the same possibilities.

To change the formatting in more drastic ways, you can alternatively redefine the commands `\tocdataartistprint` (receiving *prefix*, *first*, *last*, and *suffix* as arguments to format the name) and `\tocdataartisttextprint` (responsible for

formatting *extra-text*). See the package documentation for details.



SEBASTIAN RAHTZ (1955–2016)

This has been already used
in the first edition of TLC

2-3-4

Figure 1: A cat

```
\usepackage{graphicx,tocdata} \tdartistright
\begin{figure}
\centering
\includegraphics{cat}
\captionartist{A cat}[This has been already used\\
                    in the first edition of TLC]
                    {Sebastian}{Rahtz}[(1955--2016)]
\end{figure}
```

Instead of the command `\captionartist` you can use `\captionauthor` with exactly the same syntax (and corresponding configuration commands). The difference between the two is the default formatting: `\captionartist` typesets the name centered, whereas `\captionauthor` places it flush right. The latter may look nicer for wide pictures.

If you use the `caption` package, which supports the `\caption*` command, then `\captionartist` and `\captionauthor` will also accept a star.

2.3.2 titletoc — A high-level approach to contents list design

The `titletoc` package written by Javier Bezos was originally developed as a companion package to `titlesec` but can be used on its own. It implements its own interface to lay out contents structures, thereby avoiding some of the limitations of the original \LaTeX code for this task. This makes it a good candidate when adjustments of such lists are necessary when a new class is being developed.

The actual generation of external contents files and their syntax is left unchanged so that it works nicely with other packages generating such files. There is one exception, however: contents files should end with the command `\contentsfinish`. For the standard file extensions `.toc`, `.lof`, and `.lot`, this is handled automatically. But if you provide your own type of contents lists (see Section 2.3.4), you have to announce it to `titletoc`, as in the following example:

*Relation to standard
 \LaTeX*

```
\contentsuse{example}{xmp}
```

Designing the layout for a single contents list entry

A single contents list entry normally consists of one or more lines of text, typically starting with a label (e.g., the heading number) followed by the heading title and finishing off with a page number. Typically, the page number is pushed to the right edge so that page numbers from different entries align. Thus, there is normally a gap between title and page number, which is filled either by white space or by some leaders, e.g., some dots or a line.

Standard \LaTeX already supports that type of design with some flexibility in allowing for indentation at the left and right of all lines. In addition, the start of the

first line as well as the endpoint of the last line can be moved (typically to place both the label and the page number outside of the title text block).

A typical multiline entry could look like this:

```
3.11 This is a sample section entry which has been deliberately made very
      long so that it spans three lines to exhibit the handling of the first
      and the last line in the entry . . . . . 27
```

As you see, the entry is indented on both sides with the entry label placed into the available white space. The heading title is set ragged right in sans serif, and the page number is separated from the text block using a row of leader dots and again placed outside of the block.

Standard (dotted) layouts

The `titletoc` package supports this type of standard layout, but compared to standard L^AT_EX offers more convenient ways to customize it. In addition, it supports other layouts such as running lower-level heading entries together in a single paragraph and, as a nice add-on, supports partial table of contents lists so that you can provide chapter tables, etc. For the most common case, i.e., the layout shown above, it offers the `\dottedcontents` declaration.

```
\dottedcontents{type}[left-indent]{before-code}{label-width}{leader-width}
```

The first argument of `\dottedcontents` contains the *type* of contents entry for which we set up the layout — normally the name of the heading command without a backslash or the name of the float environment, e.g., `figure`. In other words, for each *type* of sectioning command that can appear in the document, we need one `\dottedcontents` (or alternatively `\titlecontents` discussed below) declaration.¹ The remaining arguments have the following meaning:

left-indent The indentation from the left margin for all lines of the entry. It should normally be wider than the *label-width* argument because the label is placed into that space. Even though this argument has to be given in square brackets, it is *not* optional in the current package release (and probably never will become one)!

before-code Code to be executed before the entry is typeset. It can be used to provide vertical space, such as by using `\addvspace`, and to set up formatting directives, such as font changes, for the whole entry. You can also use `\filleft`, `\filright`, `\filcenter`, or `\fillast`, already known from the `titlesec` package, at this point.

label-width Nominal width of the label, i.e., the label starts to left of the first line offset by this amount. Thus, the value should be wide enough to comfortably

¹The package honors existing *type* declarations made, for example, by the document class even if they are defined using the standard L^AT_EX interface. Thus, it can be used to change the layout of only some types.

hold the label material for this type. Problematic cases with varying label widths and possible solutions are discussed on pages 63 (`\contentspush`) and 73.

leaders-width Distance between two dots in the leaders on the last line of the entry.

For example, the entry above was typeset using the following declaration:

```
\dottedcontents{section}[40pt]{\normalfont\sffamily\filright}{24pt}{6pt}
```

i.e., we have an indentation of 40pt from the left margin with the label starting 16pt from the margin¹ and occupying 24pt. The whole entry is set in sans serif and ragged right (via `\filright`), and each leader dot occupies 6pt of space.

You may wonder where the indentation on the right (for all lines but the last) comes from and why it is not available as an argument to `\dottedcontents`. The main reason is that in nearly all designs its value is the same for all entry types, and thus providing it as an argument on the entry level would be cumbersome and error prone. In most document classes the default is wide enough to contain up to three digits in the document body font. If that is not enough (or too much), it can be globally (or locally) changed with a `\contentsmargin` declaration.

```
\contentsmargin[correction]{right-sep}
```

This declaration shortens all entry lines by *right-sep*. On the last line the page number is typeset in that space, so if it is too small, the entry and page number may overlap. In addition, the optional *correction* argument is added to all lines of an entry except the last. This argument can, for example, be used to fine-tune the contents layout so that dots from a row of leaders align with the text of previous lines in a multiline entry if the entry is set justified.

In the unlikely case that there is a need to have different *right-sep* values for different entry types, then the solution is to place this command inside the *before-code* of `\dottedcontents` or `\titlecontents`. It is then local to that entry type.

More complicated layouts

While `\dottedcontents` works well in many cases, it clearly has its limitations and cannot be used if you do not want any leaders or other typographic adjustments that go beyond setting the font or the indentation. For such cases `titletoc` offers the `\titlecontents` declaration and a few helper commands to be used within its arguments.

```
\titlecontents{type}[left-indent]{before-code}{numbered-entry-format}
{numberless-entry-format}{page-format}[below-code]
```

The first three arguments *type*, *left-indent*, and *before-code* are the same as the corresponding ones for `\dottedcontents` and are described there. However, the remaining ones differ. Instead of simply specifying the width for the label we have

¹In other words, *left-indent* minus *label-width*, i.e., 40pt – 24pt in this case.

now two arguments that allow us to explicitly define how the label and the title text should be formatted and what should happen if the label is empty. This means you have way more design possibilities at the cost of specifying more code.

numbered-entry-format Code to format the entry including its number. It is executed in horizontal mode (after setting up the indentation). The last token can be a command with one argument, in which case it receives the entry *text* as its argument. The unformatted heading number is available in the `\thecontentslabel` command, but see below for other possibilities to access and place it.

numberless-entry-format Code to format the entry if the current entry does not contain a number. Again, the last token may be a command with one argument.

Instead of specifying the *leader-width*, we now have an argument in which we have to define exactly what should happen after the title text and how the page number should be formatted. Finally, there is a further optional argument to be executed after the entry is typeset.

page-format Code that is executed after formatting the entry but while still being in horizontal mode. It is normally used to add some filling material, such as a dotted line, and to attach the page number stored in `\thecontentspage`. You can use the `\titlerule` command, discussed on page 47, to produce leaders.

below-code Optional code to be executed in vertical mode after the entry is typeset — for example, to add some extra vertical space after the entry.

To help with placing and formatting the heading and page numbers, the `titletoc` package offers two useful tools: `\contentslabel` and `\contentspage`.

`\contentslabel[text]{size} \contentspage[text]`

The purpose of the `\contentslabel` command is to typeset the *text* (which by default contains `\thecontentslabel`) left aligned in a box of width *size* and to place that box to the left of the current position. Thus, if you use this command in the *numbered-entry-format* argument of `\titlecontents`, then the number is placed in front of the entry text into the margin or indentation set up by *left-indent*. For a more refined layout you can use the optional argument to specify your own formatting usually involving `\thecontentslabel`.

In a similar fashion `\contentspage` typesets *text* (which by default contains `\thecontentspage`) right aligned in a box and arranges for the box to be placed to the right of the current position but without taking up space. Thus, if placed at the right end of a line, the box extends into the margin. In this case, however, no mandatory argument specifies the box size: it is the same for all entries. Its value is the same as the space found to the right of all entries and can be set by the command `\contentsmargin` described below.

The package offers three options to influence the default outcome of the `\contentslabel` command when used without the *text* argument. With the option `rightlabels` the heading number is right aligned in the space, while `leftlabels`

Package options for
`\contentslabel`

(the default) makes it left aligned. You can also specify `\dotinlabels` to always add a period after the number.

Instead of indenting the whole entry and then moving some material into the left margin using `\contentslabel`, you can make use of `\contentspush` to achieve a similar effect.

`\contentspush{text}`


This command typesets *text* and then increases the *left-indent* by the width of *text* for all additional lines of the entry (if any). As a consequence, the indentation will vary if the width of the *text* changes. In many cases such variation is not desirable, but in some cases other solutions give even worse results. Consider the case of a document with many chapters, each containing dozens of sections. A rigid *left-indent* needs to be able to hold the widest number, which may have five or six digits. In that case a label like “1.1” comes out unduly separated from its entry text. Given below is a solution that grows with the size of the entry number:

	<pre> \usepackage{titletoc} \titlecontents{section}[0pt]{\addvspace{2pt}\filright} {\contentspush{\thecontentslabel\enspace }} {}{\hrulefill\contentspage} </pre>	
12.8 Some section that is wrapped in the TOC __	<pre> \contentsline{section}{\numberline{12.8}Some section that is wrapped in the TOC}{87}{}% </pre>	87
12.9 Another section __	<pre> \contentsline{section}{\numberline{12.9}Another section}{88}{}% </pre>	88
12.10 And yet another wrapping section __	<pre> \contentsline{section}{\numberline{12.10}And yet another wrapping section}{90}{}% </pre>	90
2-3-5 12.11 Final section __	<pre> \contentsline{section}{\numberline{12.11}Final section}{92}{}% \contentsfinish </pre>	92

A few design examples

For the examples in this section we copied some parts of the original `.toc` file generated by \LaTeX for this book (Chapter 2 and parts of Chapter 3) into a file we called `partial.toc` and manually added a `\contentsfinish` command at the end. Inside the examples we can then load this file with `\input`. Of course, in a real document you would use the command `\tableofcontents` instead so that the `.toc` file for *your* document is loaded and processed.

In our first example we provide a new formatting for chapter entries, while keeping the formatting for the section entries as defined by the standard \LaTeX document class. The chapter entries are now set ragged right (`\filright`) in bold typeface, get one pica space above, followed by a thick rule. The actual entry is indented by six picas. In that space we typeset the word “Chapter” in small caps followed by a space and the chapter number (`\thecontentslabel`) using the `\contentslabel` directive with its optional argument. There is no special handling for entries without numbers, so they would be formatted with an indentation of six picas. We fill the remaining space using `\hfill` and typeset the page number in the margin via `\contentspage`.

 *A note on the examples in this and the next section*

Finally, after the entry we add another two points of space so that the entry is slightly separated from any section entry following.

CHAPTER 2	The Structure of a L ^A T _E X Document	21	
2.1.	The overall structure of a source file	22	
2.2.	Sectioning commands	32	<code>\usepackage[dotinlabels]{titletoc}</code>
2.3.	Table of contents structures	54	<code>\titlecontents{chapter} [5pc]</code>
2.4.	Managing references	75	<code>{\addvspace{1pc}\bfseries</code>
2.5.	Document source management	108	<code>\titlerule[2pt]\filright}</code>
			<code>{\contentslabel</code>
			<code>[\textsc{\chaptername}\</code>
			<code>\thecontentslabel]{5pc}}</code>
			<code>{\}\{\hfill\contentspage}</code>
			<code>[\addvspace{2pt}]</code>
			% Show only chapter/section entries:
			<code>\setcounter{tocdepth}{1}</code>
			<code>\input{partial.toc}</code>
CHAPTER 3	Basic Formatting Tools	119	
3.1.	Shaping your paragraphs	120	
3.2.	Dealing with special characters	147	
3.3.	Generated or specially formatted text	154	
3.4.	Various ways of highlighting and quoting text	177	
3.5.	Footnotes, endnotes, and marginals	204	

2-3-6

In our second example we typeset the chapter title in sans serif with the chapter and page numbers on the left and right. Any free space is filled with a rule on the baseline, and we provide a bit of extra space above and below the chapter line. The section headings are shown slightly indented; for them the page numbers are suppressed. All numbers are formatted using oldstyle numerals.

2	— The Structure of a L ^A T _E X Document —	21	
2.1	– The overall structure of a source file		<code>\usepackage{titletoc}</code>
2.2	– Sectioning commands		<code>\titlecontents{chapter}[0pc]</code>
2.3	– Table of contents structures		<code>{\addvspace{6pt}}</code>
2.4	– Managing references		<code>{\large\sffamily</code>
2.5	– Document source management		<code>\oldstylenums{\thecontentslabel}</code>
			<code>\ \hrulefill\ }\}</code>
			<code>{\large\sffamily\ \hrulefill\</code>
			<code>\oldstylenums{\thecontentspage}}</code>
			<code>[\addvspace{2pt}]</code>
			<code>\titlecontents{section} [1pc]{}</code>
			<code>{\oldstylenums{\thecontentslabel}</code>
			<code>-- }\{\}</code>
			<code>\setcounter{tocdepth}{1}</code>
			<code>\input{partial.toc}</code>
3	———— Basic Formatting Tools ————	119	
3.1	– Shaping your paragraphs		
3.2	– Dealing with special characters		
3.3	– Generated or specially formatted text		
3.4	– Various ways of highlighting and quoting text		
3.5	– Footnotes, endnotes, and marginals		

2-3-7

The third example and final example for now puts the page numbers in focus; they are printed on the left, while the normal heading numbers are suppressed. The chapter title is placed on the right by filling the available space with `\dotfill`. Section titles are left aligned and separated with an en-dash from the page number. Note that we use `\enspace` instead of a normal space around it so that this space does not stretch or shrink if the section title is longer than a single line.

21....The Structure of a L^AT_EX Document

- 22 – The overall structure of a source file
- 32 – Sectioning commands
- 54 – Table of contents structures
- 75 – Managing references
- 108 – Document source management

119.....Basic Formatting Tools

- 120 – Shaping your paragraphs
- 147 – Dealing with special characters
- 154 – Generated or specially formatted text
- 177 – Various ways of highlighting and quoting text
- 204 – Footnotes, endnotes, and marginals

```
\usepackage{titletoc}
\titlecontents{chapter}[2pc]
{\addvspace{5pt}}
{\large\bfseries
\contentslabel[\hfill
\thecontentspage]{2pc}\dotfill
}{}{}
[\addvspace{2pt}]
\titlecontents{section}[2pc]{%
{\contentslabel[\hfill
\thecontentspage]{2pc}%
\enspace --\enspace }{}{}
\setcounter{tocdepth}{1}
\input{partial.toc}
```

2-3-8

Note that none of the previous examples have provisions to format headings that are unnumbered; i.e., the third mandatory argument of the `\titlecontents` command was always left empty. This was done because the sample data contains only numbered headings and it saved space to not provide formatting instructions for unnumbered headings that are never used. However, in real life you better think about how such entries should be displayed as well.

Contents entries combined in a paragraph

Standard L^AT_EX only supports contents entries formatted on individual lines. In some cases, however, it is more economical to format lower-level entries together in a single paragraph. With the `titletoc` package this becomes possible.

```
\titlecontents*{type}[left-indent]{before-code}{numbered-entry-format}
{\numberless-entry-format}{page-format}[mid-code]
\titlecontents*{type}...{page-format}[mid-code][final-code]
\titlecontents*{type}...{page-format}[start-code][mid-code][final-code]
```

The `\titlecontents*` declaration is used for entries that should be formatted together with other entries of the same or lower level in a single paragraph. The first six arguments are identical to those of `\titlecontents` described on page 61.

Instead of a vertically oriented *below-code* argument, `\titlecontents*` provides one to three optional arguments that handle different situations that can happen when entries are about to be joined horizontally. All three optional arguments are by default empty. The joining works recursively as follows:

- If the current entry is the first entry to participate in joining, then its *start-code* is executed before typesetting the entry.
- Otherwise, there has been a previous entry already participating.
 - If both entries are on the same level, then the *mid-code* is inserted.

- Otherwise, if the current entry is of a lower level, then the *start-code* for it is inserted, and we recur processing the new level.
- Otherwise, the current entry is of a higher level. First, we execute for each level that has ended the *final-code* (in reverse order). Then, if the current entry is not participating in joining, we are done. Otherwise, the *mid-code* for the entry is executed, as a previous entry of the same level should already be present (assuming a hierarchically structured document).

Careful
with paragraph
parameters

If several levels are to be joined, then you have to specify any paragraph layout information in the *before-code* of the highest level participating. Otherwise, the scope of your settings does not include the paragraph end and thus is not applied. In the following example, `\footnotesize` applies only to the section entries—the `\baselineskip` for the whole paragraph is still set in `\normalsize`. This artificial example shows how one can join two different levels using the three optional arguments. Note in particular the spaces added at the beginning of some arguments to get the right result when joining.

The Structure of a \LaTeX Document, 21 *{The overall structure of a source file; Sectioning commands; Table of contents structures; Managing references; Document source management}* • Basic Formatting Tools, 119 *{Shaping your paragraphs; Dealing with special characters; Generated or specially formatted text; Various ways of highlighting and quoting text; Footnotes, endnotes, and marginals}* ¶

```
\usepackage{titletoc,xcolor} \contentsmargin{0pt}
\titlecontents*{chapter}[0pt]
    {\sffamily}{-}{-}, \thecontentspage}
    [\textbullet ] [-\P] % mid, finish
\titlecontents*{section}[0pt]
    {\color{blue}\footnotesize\slshape}{-}{-}}
    [{} [] ; ] [] % start, mid, finish

\setcounter{tocdepth}{1}
\sloppy \input{partial.toc}
```

2-3-9

Let us now see how this works in practice. In the next example we join the section level, separating entries by a bullet surrounded by some stretchable space (`\xquad`) and finishing the list with a period. The chapter entries are interesting as well, because we move the page number to the left. Both types omit the heading numbers completely in this design. Because there are no page numbers at the right, we also set the right margin to zero.

21 The Structure of a L^AT_EX Document

The overall structure of a source file, 22 • Sectioning commands, 32 • Table of contents structures, 54 • Managing references, 75 • Document source management, 108.

119 Basic Formatting Tools

Shaping your paragraphs, 120 • Dealing with special characters, 147 • Generated or specially formatted text, 154 • Various ways of highlighting and quoting text, 177 • Footnotes, endnotes, and marginals, 204.

```
\usepackage{titletoc}
\contentsmargin{0pt}
\titlecontents{chapter}[0pt]
    {\addvspace{1.4pc}\bfseries}
    {\{\Huge\thecontentspage\quad}\}\{\}}
\newcommand\xquad
    {\hspace{1em plus.4em minus.4em}}
\titlecontents*{section}[0pt]
    {\filright\small}\{\}\}
    {\,\sim\thecontentspage}
    [\xquad\textbullet\xquad][.]
\setcounter{tocdepth}{1}
\input{partial.toc}
```

2-3-10

As a second example we look at a setup implementing a layout close to the one used in *Methods of Book Design* [198]. This design uses Garamond fonts with oldstyle digits, something we achieve by using the `garamondx` package. The `\chapter` titles are set in small capitals. To arrange that we use `\scshape` and turn all letters in the title to lowercase using `\MakeLowercase` (remember that the last token of the *numbered-entry-format* and the *numberless-entry-format* arguments can be a command with one argument to receive the heading text). The sections are all run together in a paragraph with the section number getting a § sign prepended. Separation between entries is a period followed by a space, and the final section is finished with a period as well.

Justifying the paragraph really requires a wider measure than available in the example, even though it comes out fairly well with the given text. If not, consider using `\filright`, but that would rather drastically alter the design.

2	THE STRUCTURE OF A L ^A T _E X DOCUMENT	21	<code>\usepackage[osf]{garamondx}</code>
	§2.1 The overall structure of a source file, 22. §2.2 Sectioning commands, 32. §2.3 Table of contents structures, 54. §2.4 Managing references, 75. §2.5 Document source management, 108.		<code>\usepackage{titletoc}</code>
			<code>\contentsmargin{0pt}</code>
			<code>\titlecontents{chapter}[1.5pc]</code>
			<code>{\addvspace{2pc}\large}</code>
			<code>{\contentslabel{2pc}}%</code>
			<code>\scshape\MakeLowercase}</code>
			<code>{\scshape\MakeLowercase}</code>
			<code>{\hfill\thecontentspage}</code>
			<code>[\vspace{2pt}]</code>
3	BASIC FORMATTING TOOLS	119	<code>\titlecontents*{section}[1.5pc]</code>
	§3.1 Shaping your paragraphs, 120. §3.2 Dealing with special characters, 147. §3.3 Generated or specially formatted text, 154. §3.4 Various ways of highlighting and quoting text, 177. §3.5 Footnotes, endnotes, and marginals, 204.		<code>{\small}{\S\thecontentslabel\ }</code>
			<code>{\{,~\thecontentspage}[.\]{.}</code>
			<code>\setcounter{tocdepth}{1}</code>
			<code>\input{partial.toc}</code>

2-3-11

Generating partial table of contents lists

It is possible to generate partial contents lists using the `titletoc` package like we do for every chapter in this book; it provides four commands for this purpose.

```
\startcontents[name]
```

A partial table of contents is started with `\startcontents`. It is possible to collect data for several partial TOCs in parallel, such as one for the current `\part` as well as one for the current `\chapter`. In that case the optional *name* argument allows us to distinguish between the two (its default value is the string `default`). Concurrently running partial TOCs are allowed to overlap each other, although normally they will be nested. All information about these partial TOCs is stored in a single file with the extension `.ptc`; this file is generated once a single `\startcontents` command is executed.

```
\printcontents[name]{prefix}{start-level}{toc-code}
```

This command prints the current partial TOC started earlier by `\startcontents` and includes all entries up to the next invocation of `\startcontents`. If the optional *name* argument is used, then a partial contents list with that *name* must have been started earlier.

It is quite likely that you want to format the partial TOC differently from the main table of contents. To allow for this the *prefix* argument is prepended to any entry *type* when looking for a layout definition provided via `\titlecontents` or its starred form. In the example below we used `p-` as the *prefix* and then defined a formatting for `p`-subsection to format `\subsection` entries in the partial TOC.

The *start-level* argument defines the first level that is shown in the partial TOC; in the example we used the value 2 to indicate that we want to see all subsections and lower levels.

The depth to which we want to include entries in the partial TOC can be set in *toc-code* by setting the `tocdepth` counter to a suitable value. Other initializations for typesetting the partial TOC can be made there as well. In the example we cancel any right margin, because the partial TOC is formatted as a single paragraph.

Integrating partial TOCs in the heading definitions so that there is no need to change the actual document is very easy when `titletoc` is used together with the `titlesec` package. Below we extend Example 2-2-14 from page 45 so that the `\section` command now automatically prints a partial TOC of all its subsections. This is done by using the optional *after-code* argument of the `\titleformat` declaration. We first add some vertical space, thereby ensuring that no page break can happen at this point. We next (re)start the default partial TOC with `\startcontents`. We then immediately typeset it using `\printcontents`; its arguments have been explained above. Finally, we set up the formatting for subsections in a partial TOC using `\titlecontents*` to run them together in a justified paragraph whose last line is centered (`\fillast`). Stringing this all together gives the desired output without any modification to the document source. Of course, a real design would also change the look and feel of the subsection headings in the document to better fit those of the sections.

SECTION 1

A Title Test

A first — A longer second — An even longer fourth.

Some text to prove that this paragraph is not indented.

1.1 A first

Some text ...

```
\usepackage{titlesec,titletoc}
\titleformat{\section}[frame]{\normalfont}
  {\footnotesize \enspace SECTION \thesection
   \enspace}{6pt}{\large\bfseries\filcenter}
  [\vspace*{5pt}\startcontents
   \printcontents{p-}{2}{\contentsmargin{0pt}}]
\titlespacing*{\section}{1pc}{*4}{*2.3}{1pc}
\titlecontents*{p-subsection}{0pt}
  {\small\itshape\fillast}{\fillast}{[ --- ]}
\section{A Title Test}
Some text to prove that this paragraph is not indented.
\subsection{A first} Some text \ldots \newpage
\subsection{A longer second} Some more text.
\stopcontents \subsection{A third} \resumecontents
\subsection{An even longer fourth}
```

2-3-12

If necessary, one can temporarily (or permanently) stop collecting entries for a partial TOC. We made use of this feature in the previous example by suppressing the third subsection.

<code>\stopcontents[name]</code>	<code>\resumecontents[name]</code>
----------------------------------	------------------------------------

The `\stopcontents` command stops the entry collection for the default partial TOC or, if used with the *name* argument, for the TOC with that *name*. At a later point the collection can be restarted using `\resumecontents`. Note that this is quite different from calling `\startcontents`, which starts a *new* partial TOC, thereby making the old entries inaccessible.

Partial TOCs do not need to be confined to a subset of your document. It is equally possible to use them to provide “overviews”, e.g., listing only the chapter headings, in addition to a full table of contents. A possible implementation could look like this:

```
\AtBeginDocument{\startcontents[short]}
\newcommand\shorttoc[1]{\chapter*{#1}%
  \printcontents[short]{short-}{0}{\setcounter{tocdepth}{0}}}
\titlecontents{short-chapter}{..}{..}{..}{..}{..}
```

We start a partial contents list named `short` at the beginning of the document. Because we never restart, this partial list receives all headings. Then we define the command `\shorttoc` to produce a chapter heading without a number and then print this partial TOC list starting from level 0 (i.e., chapters) but displaying only chapters (since we set the `tocdepth` counter to zero). Finally, we define a suitable formatting for chapter entries in that list. As we used the prefix `short-`, we need to define `short-chapter` (no details given in the code above).

There are similar commands for producing partial lists of figures or tables named `\startlist`, `\printlist`, `\stoplist`, and `\resumelist` but with a slightly different syntax. For details consult the package documentation.

In this book we used these partial contents lists in several places. Each chapter starts with a `\startcontents` declaration, which enables us to show the chapter TOCs with special formatting. Each `\chapter` command executed something similar to the following:

```
\startcontents
\printcontents{p-}{1}{\contentsmargin{0pt}\setcounter{tocdepth}{1}%
  \color{blue}\headingfont\mdseries}
```

All we had to do in addition was to provide a suitable definition for `p-section` to format the section entries. For this book we used the following setup, which was all that was necessary:

```
\titlecontents{p-section}[18pt]{\addvspace{1pt}}
  {\contentspush{\thecontentslabel\enspace}}
  {}
  {\titlerule*[6pt]{.}\ \thecontentspage}
```

*How we produced
the content lists for
this book*

Furthermore, for the overall content lists we also deployed partial lists, because both physical books have been produced in a single run (to simplify cross-referencing and indexing). We therefore started each part of the book with

```
\startcontents[part] \startlist[part]{lof} \startlist[part]{lot}
```

thereby dividing the content lists in the two parts representing the two physical books. This enabled us to automatically include the headings of both books in the table of contents for each book — with suitable formatting; i.e., in book I, we show only the chapter titles of book II, while in book II only the chapters of book I are listed, but chapters and sections are given for book II. The situation for the list of figures and tables is simpler: here we show only those entries that belong to the current book. But again this is possible only because we have divided the content lists as shown above.

2.3.3 multitoc — Setting contents lists in multiple columns

Setting contents lists in multiple columns is a design that is sometimes requested. A solution for this is provided through the multitoc package by Martin Schröder, which internally uses the multicol package to achieve the desired result.

The package has three options (toc, lof, and lot) to typeset the table of contents, the list of figures, or the list of tables in multiple columns (default 2).

More columns are seldom needed, but if necessary, you can specify the desired number of columns by changing \multicolumntoc, \multicolumnlof, or \multicolumnlot with \renewcommand.

2.3.4 L^AT_EX's low-level interfaces

In this final section on TOCs we briefly review the basic interfaces for contents files as provided by L^AT_EX, because you may find them used directly in older class files. Packages like titletoc also invoke them but offer some additional level of abstraction on top.

Entering information into the contents files

The interface for writing to the contents files consists of two commands: \addcontentsline and \addtocontents. They are automatically invoked by heading or caption commands, but if necessary, it is also possible to use them to enter some information directly into the files.

```
\addcontentsline{ext}{type}{text}
```

The \addcontentsline command writes the *text* together with some additional information, such as the page number of the current page, into a file with the extension *ext* (usually .toc, .lof, or .lot). Fragile commands within *text* need to be protected with \protect. The *type* argument is a string that specifies the kind of contents entry that is being made. For the table of contents (.toc), it is usually the name of the heading command without a backslash; for .lof or .lot files, *figure* or *table* is normally specified.

The \addcontentsline instruction is invoked automatically by the document sectioning commands or by the \caption commands within the float environments. Unfortunately, the interface has only one argument for the variable text, which makes it awkward to properly identify an object's number if present. Because such numbers (e.g., the heading number) typically need special formatting in the contents lists, this identification is absolutely necessary. The trick used by the current L^AT_EX

kernel to achieve this goal is to surround such a number with the command `\numberline` within the *text* argument as follows:

```
\protect\numberline{number}heading
```

For example, a `\caption` command inside a `figure` environment saves the caption text for the figure using the following line:

```
\addcontentsline{lof}{figure}{\protect\numberline{\thefigure}caption text}
```

Because of the `\protect` command, `\numberline` is written unchanged into the external file, while `\thefigure` is replaced along the way so that the actual figure number and not the command ends up in the file.

Later, during the formatting of the contents lists, a suitable definition of `\numberline` can then be used to format the number in a special way, such as by providing extra space or a different font. The disadvantage of this approach is that it is less general than a version that takes a separate argument for this number (e.g., you cannot easily do arbitrary transformation on this number), and it requires an appropriate definition for `\numberline` — something that is unfortunately not always easy to provide (see the discussion below).


```
\addtocontents{ext}{text}
```

The `\addtocontents` command does not contain a *type* parameter and is intended to enter special formatting information not directly related to any contents line. For example, the `\chapter` command of the standard classes places additional white space in the `.lof` and `.lot` files to separate entries from different chapters as follows:

```
\addtocontents{lof}{\protect\addvspace{10pt}}
\addtocontents{lot}{\protect\addvspace{10pt}}
```

By using `\addvspace` at most 10 points separate the entries from different chapters without producing strange gaps if some chapters do not contain any figures or tables.

This example, however, shows a certain danger of the interface: while `\addcontentsline`, `\addtocontents`, and `\addvspace` appear to be user-level commands (given that they do not contain any `@` signs in their names), they can easily produce strange errors.¹ In particular, `\addvspace` can be used only in vertical mode, which means that a line like the above works correctly only if an earlier `\addcontentsline` ends in vertical mode. Thus, you need to understand how such lines are actually processed to be able to enter arbitrary formatting instructions between them. This is the topic of the next section.

 Potential problems with `\addvspace`


If either `\addcontentsline` or `\addtocontents` is used within the source of a document, one important restriction applies: neither command can be used at the same level as an `\include` statement. That means, for example, that the sequence

```
\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{1}}
\include{sect1}
```

with `sect1.tex` containing a `\section` command would surprisingly result in a `.toc` file containing

```
\contentsline {section}{\numberline {1}Section from sect1}{2}{}%
\setcounter {tocdepth}{1}
```

showing that the lines appear out of order. The solution is to move the `\addtocontents` or `\addcontentsline` statement into the file loaded via `\include` or to avoid `\include` altogether.

 Potential problems with `\include`

Typesetting a contents list


As discussed above, contents lists are generated by implicitly or explicitly using the commands `\addcontentsline` and `\addtocontents`. The exact effect of `\addcontentsline{ext}{type}{text}` is to place the line

```
\contentsline{type}{text}{page}{anchor-name}%
```

¹For an in-depth discussion of `\addvspace`, see Appendix A.2.4, page —II 655.

including the final percent sign into the auxiliary file with extension *ext*, where *page* is the current page number in the document. The *anchor-name* argument is by default empty but gets filled if the `hyperref` package is loaded. In that case it specifies a hyperlink anchor name.

The command `\addtocontents{ext}{text}` is simpler: it just puts *text* into the auxiliary file without any extra material. Thus, a typical contents list file consists of a number of `\contentsline` commands, possibly interspersed with further formatting instructions added as a result of `\addtocontents` calls. It is also possible for the user to create a table of contents by hand with the help of the command `\contentsline`.

Inconsistency
with `\part` 

A typical example is shown below. Note that most (though not all) heading numbers are entered as a parameter of the `\numberline` command to allow formatting with the proper indentation. For historical reasons L^AT_EX is unfortunately not consistent here; the standard classes do not use `\numberline` for `\part` headings but instead specify the formatting explicitly.¹

		<code>\setcounter{tocdepth}{3}</code>	
I Part	2	<code>\contentsline {part}{\hspace{1em}Part}{2}{}%</code>	
		<code>\contentsline{chapter}{\numberline{1}A-Head}{2}{}%</code>	
		<code>\contentsline{section}{\numberline{1.1}B-Head}{3}{}%</code>	
1 A-Head	2	<code>\contentsline{subsection}%</code>	
1.1 B-Head	3	<code>{\numberline{1.1.1}C-Head}{4}{}%</code>	
1.1.1 C-Head	4	<code>\contentsline{subsection}%</code>	
With Empty Number	5	<code>{\numberline{}With Empty Number}{5}{}%</code>	
Unnumbered C-Head	6	<code>\contentsline{subsection}{Unnumbered C-Head}{6}{}%</code>	
1.1.2 Another C-Head	8	<code>\contentsline{subsection}%</code>	
1.2 Another B-Head	10	<code>{\numberline{1.1.2}Another C-Head}{8}{}%</code>	
		<code>\contentsline{section}%</code>	
		<code>{\numberline{1.2}Another B-Head}{10}{}%</code>	2-3-13

The `\contentsline` command is implemented to take its first argument *type* and then use it to call the corresponding `\l@type` command, which does the actual typesetting. One separate command for each of the types must be defined in the class file. For example, in the `report` class you find the following definitions:

```

\newcommand\l@section      {\@dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
\newcommand\l@subsection   {\@dottedtocline{2}{3.8em}{3.2em}}
\newcommand\l@subsubsection{\@dottedtocline{3}{7.0em}{4.1em}}
\newcommand\l@paragraph    {\@dottedtocline{4}{10em}{5em}}
\newcommand\l@subparagraph {\@dottedtocline{5}{12em}{6em}}
\newcommand\l@figure       {\@dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
\newcommand\l@table        {\l@figure}

```

By defining `\l@type` to call `\@dottedtocline` (a command with five arguments) and specifying three arguments (*level*, *indent*, and *numwidth*), the remaining arguments, *text* and *page*, of `\contentsline` are picked up by `\@dottedtocline` as arguments 4 and 5. The last argument (which is by default empty) is simply left sitting there doing nothing. If `hyperref` is loaded, the definitions are changed and the last argument is also processed.

Note that some section levels build their table of contents entries in a somewhat more complicated way so that the standard document classes have definitions for `\l@part` and `\l@chapter` (or `\l@section` with `article`) that do not use `\@dottedtocline`. Generally they use a set of specific formatting commands, perhaps omitting the ellipses and typesetting the title in a larger font.

So to define the layout for the contents lists, we have to declare the appropriate `\l@type` commands (which is precisely what `titletoc`'s `\dottedcontents` and `\titlecontents` commands do). One easy way without this package, as shown above, is to use `\@dottedtocline`, an internal command that we will now look at in some detail.

¹The `titlesec` package offers the option `newparttoc` to repair this defect.

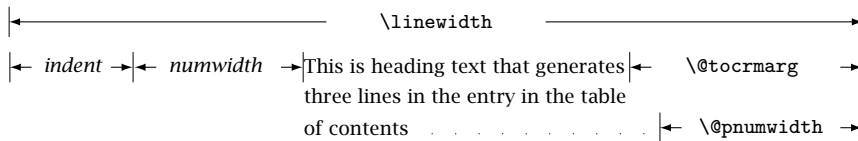


Figure 2.2: Parameters defining the layout of a contents file

```
\@dottedtocline{level}{indent}{numwidth}{text}{page}
```

The last two arguments of `\@dottedtocline` coincide with the second and third arguments of `\contentsline`, which itself usually invokes a `\@dottedtocline` command. The other arguments are the following:

level The nesting level of the entry. With the help of the counter `tocdepth` the user can control how many nesting levels are displayed. Levels greater than the value of this counter will not appear in the table of contents.

indent The total indentation from the left margin.

numwidth The width of the box that contains the number if *text* has a `\numberline` command. It is also the amount of extra indentation added to the second and later lines of a multiple-line entry.

Additionally, the command `\@dottedtocline` uses the following global formatting parameters, which specify the visual appearance of all entries. Although all parameters store length values, they have to be changed with `\renewcommand`!

\@pnumwidth The width of the box in which the page number is set.

\@tocrmarg The indentation of the right margin for all but the last line of multiple-line entries. It can be set to a rubber length, which results in the TOC being set unjustified.

\@dotsep The separation between dots, in mu (math units).¹ The value stored is a pure number (like 1.7 or 2). By making this number large enough you can get rid of the dots altogether.

A pictorial representation of the effects described is shown in Figure 2.2. The field identified by *numwidth* contains a left-justified section number, if present. You can achieve the proper indentation for nested entries by varying the settings of *indent* and *numwidth*.

One case in which this is necessary, while using a standard class (article, report, or book), arises when you have ten or more sections and within the later ones more than nine subsections. In that case numbers and text will come too close together or even overlap if the *numwidth* argument on the corresponding calls to `\@dottedtocline` is not extended, as seen in the following example.

Problem with too many headings on one level

```

10 A-Head 3
10.1 B-Head . . . . . 3 \contentsline{section}{\numberline{10}A-Head}{3}{}%
... \contentsline{subsection}{\numberline{10.1}B-Head}{3}{}%
10.9 B-Head . . . . . 7 \ldots % several more heading lines here (not shown)
2-3-14 10.10B-Head . . . . . 8 \contentsline{subsection}{\numberline{10.9}B-Head}{7}{}%
\contentsline{subsection}{\numberline{10.10}B-Head}{8}{}%

```

Redefining `\l@section` to leave a bit more space for the number (i.e., the third argument to `\@dottedtocline`) gives a better result in this case. You will probably have to adjust the other

¹There are 18 mu units to an em, where the latter is taken from the `\fontdimen2` of the math symbol font symbols. See Section 9.8.1 on page 745 for more information about `\fontdimens`.

commands, such as `\l@subsubsection`, as well to produce a balanced look for the whole table.

			<code>\makeatletter</code>	
			<code>\renewcommand\l@subsection{\@dottedtocline{2}{1.5em}{3em}}</code>	
			<code>\makeatother</code>	
10 A-Head		3	<code>\contentsline{section}{\numberline{10}A-Head}{3}{}</code>	
...			<code>\ldots % several more heading lines here</code>	
10.9 B-Head		7	<code>\contentsline{subsection}{\numberline{10.9}B-Head}{7}{}</code>	
10.10 B-Head		8	<code>\contentsline{subsection}{\numberline{10.10}B-Head}{8}{}</code>	2-3-15

Another example that requires changes is the use of unusual page numbering. For example, if the pages are numbered by part and formatted as “A-78”, “B-328”, and so on, then the space provided for the page number is probably too small, resulting at least in a large number of annoying “Overfull hbox” warnings, but more likely in some bad spacing around them. In that case the remedy is to set `\@pnumwidth` to a value that fits the widest entry — for example, via

```
\makeatletter \renewcommand\@pnumwidth{2cm} \makeatother
```

When adjusting `\@pnumwidth` this way, it is likely that the value of `\@tocrmarg` needs to be changed as well to keep the layout of the table of contents consistent.

These examples and their remedies clearly show the advantages of the higher-level interfaces provided by `titletoc` where commands like `\contentspush` allow for much simpler solutions.

Providing additional contents files

You may want to mark up other data in your document and display it as a list. If so, you need to create a new contents file and then make use of the facilities described above.

For example, suppose you want to collect notes on artists. For this we need to define two commands. The first command, `\artist`, typesets the artist’s name and associates both of its arguments with the current position in the document by writing them and the current page number to the contents file. The second command, `\listofartistnotes`, reads the information written to the contents file on the previous run and typesets it at the point in the document where the command is called.

For this, the `\listofartistnotes` command invokes `\@starttoc{ext}`, which reads the external file (with the extension *ext*) and then reopens it for writing. This command is also used by the commands `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures`, and `\listoftables`. The supplementary file could be given any unused extension such as `.rec`. A command like `\chapter*{Notes on artists}` can be put in front or inside of `\listofartistnotes` to produce a title and, if desired, one can signal the presence of this list to the reader by entering it into the `.toc` file with an `\addcontentsline` command.

The actual typesetting of the individual entries in the `.rec` file is controlled by `\l@note`, which needs to be defined. In the example below, the notes are typeset as paragraphs followed by an italicized page number. Instead of defining this command directly we could have used `titletoc`’s interfaces, e.g., `\titlecontents{note}...`

	<code>\newcommand\artist[2]</code>
	<code>{#1\addcontentsline{rec}{note}{#1: #2}}</code>
	<code>\makeatletter \newcommand\listofartistnotes</code>
	<code>{\section*{Notes on artists}\@starttoc{rec}}</code>
	<code>\newcommand\l@note[2]</code>
	<code>{\par\noindent#1,-\textit{#2}\par} \makeatother</code>
The version of Ravel’s Boléro by Jacques Loussier Trio is rather unusual. Quite interesting is Davis’ Blue in Green by Cassandra Wilson.	The version of Ravel’s Boléro by \artist{Jacques Loussier Trio}{A strange experience} is rather unusual. Quite interesting is Davis’ Blue in Green by \artist{Cassandra Wilson}{A wonderful version}.
Notes on artists	<code>\listofartistnotes</code>
Jacques Loussier Trio: A strange experience, <i>I</i>	
Cassandra Wilson: A wonderful version, <i>I</i>	

2-3-16

The float package described in Section 7.3.1 on page 529 implements the above mechanism with the command `\listof`, which generates a list of floats of the type specified as its argument.

2.4 Managing references

LaTeX has commands that make it easy to manage references in a document. In particular, it supports *cross-references* (internal references between elements within a document), *bibliographic* citations (references to external documents), and *indexing* of selected words or expressions. Indexing facilities will be discussed in Chapter 14, and bibliographic citations in Chapters 15 and 16.

To allow cross-referencing of elements inside a document, you should assign a “key” (consisting of a string of characters, preferably ASCII letters, digits, and punctuation) to the given structural element and then use that key to refer to that element elsewhere.

```
\label{key} \ref{key} \pageref{key}
```

The `\label` command assigns the *key* to the currently “active” element of the document (see below for determining which element is active at a given point). The `\ref` command typesets a string, identifying the given element — such as the section, equation, or figure number — depending on the type of structural element that was active when the `\label` command was issued. The `\pageref` command typesets the number of the page where the `\label` command was given. The *key* strings should, of course, be unique. As a simple aid it can be useful to prefix them with a string identifying the structural element in question: `sec` might represent sectional units, `fig` would identify figures, and so on.

4 A Section


```
\section{A Section} \label{sec:this}
```

A reference to this section looks like this: “see section 4 on page 6”.

A reference to this section looks like this: ‘‘see section-`\ref{sec:this}` on page-`\pageref{sec:this}`’’.

2-4-1

There is a potential danger when using punctuation characters such as a colon. In certain language styles within the `babel` system (see Chapter 13), some of these characters have special meanings and behave essentially like commands. The `babel` package tries hard to allow such characters as part of `\label` keys, but this can fail in some situations. Similarly, characters outside the ASCII range have been a problem in the past. However, starting with the LaTeX release in 2019 there is a new implementation that essentially supports all Unicode characters that can also be used for typesetting text, i.e., are not generally rejected because LaTeX does not know how to deal with them. Thus, you can use labels like “`fig:größer`”, but using, say, Chinese characters may still give you errors, unless you have loaded special font support packages for them or used a fairly recent LaTeX release.¹

 *Restrictions on the characters used in keys*

For building cross-reference labels, the “currently active” structural element of a document is determined in the following way. The sectioning commands (`\chapter`,

¹With real Unicode engines, such as XeTeX or LuaTeX, all Unicode characters are usable. The remaining technical restrictions of the pdfTeX engine were finally overcome with the November 2021 release of LaTeX — so now you can also use all Unicode characters with that engine.

`\section`, ...), the environments `equation`, `figure`, `table`, and the `theorem` family, as well as the various levels of the `enumerate` environment, and `\footnote` set the *current reference string*, which contains the number generated by L^AT_EX for the given element. This reference string is usually set at the beginning of an element and reset when the scope of the element is exited.

Problems with
wrong references
to floats

Notable exceptions to this rule are the `table` and `figure` environments, where the reference string is defined by the `\caption` commands. This allows several `\caption` and `\label` pairs inside one environment.¹ Because it is the `\caption` directive that generates the number, the corresponding `\label` command must *follow* the `\caption` command in question. Otherwise, an incorrect number is generated. If placed earlier in the float body, the `\label` command picks up the *current reference string* from some earlier entity, typically the current sectional unit.

The problem is shown clearly in the following example, where only the labels “fig:in2” and “fig:in3” are placed correctly to generate the needed reference numbers for the figures. In the case of “fig:in4” it is seen that environments (in this case, `center`) limit the scope of references, because we obtain the number of the current section, rather than the number of the figure.

Do not use
center in floats

It should be noted that using a `center` environment in a float (like we did below) is not a good idea not just because it limits the reference scope: it also creates a usually unwanted extra space at the top of the float! It is better to use a `\centering` declaration, which avoids both problems.

3 A section

3.1 A subsection

Text before is referenced as ‘3.1’.

... figure body ...

Figure 1: First caption

... figure body ...

Figure 2: Second caption

```
\section{A section}
\subsection{A subsection}\label{sec:before}
Text before is referenced as ‘\ref{sec:before}’.

\begin{figure}[ht]
\begin{center}
\label{fig:in1} % bad
\fbbox{\ldots}{figure body \ldots}
\caption{First caption} \label{fig:in2} % ok
\bigskip
\fbbox{\ldots}{figure body \ldots}
\caption{Second caption} \label{fig:in3} % ok
\end{center}
\label{fig:in4} % bad
\end{figure}
\label{sec:after} % bad, unless you want the page reference


\raggedright
The labels are: ‘before’ (\ref{sec:before}),
‘fig:in1’ (\ref{fig:in1}) -- bad, ‘fig:in2’ (\ref{fig:in2}),
‘fig:in3’ (\ref{fig:in3}), ‘fig:in4’ (\ref{fig:in4}) -- bad
and ‘after’ (\ref{sec:after}) -- probably bad!
```

2-4-2

¹ There are, however, good reasons for not placing more than one `\caption` command within a float environment. Typically proper spacing is difficult to achieve, and, more importantly, it limits L^AT_EXs options to place the float and should (if at all) be done only during final layout adjustments.

For each *key* declared with `\label{key}`, L^AT_EX records the current reference string and the page number. Thus, multiple `\label` commands (with different key identifiers *key*) inside the same sectional unit generate an identical reference string but, possibly, different page numbers like `sec:before` and `sec:after` above.

According to the *L^AT_EX Manual* [106] labels can be placed inside the main argument of heading or caption commands, rather than after them. Doing this makes the source a little less readable (which is why I prefer them after), but there are some edge cases, usually with `\caption`, where placing the label after the command can result in some incorrect extra space, so you need to watch out for this.

 *Label commands inside arguments*

Fancier labels

A reference via `\ref` produces, by default, the data associated with the corresponding `\label` command (typically a number); any additional formatting must be provided by the user. If, for example, references to equations are always to be typeset as “equation (*number*)”, one has to code “equation (`\ref{key}`)”.

To enforce consistency the `amsmath` package provides an `\eqref` command to reference equations. It automatically places parentheses around the equation number. To utilize this and also get `varioref`’s magic applied (see next section), one could define

```
\newcommand\eqvref[1]{\eqref{#1} \vpageref{#1}}
```

which then automatically adds a page reference if the equation is on a different page. What that does not do is to automatically add the word “equation”, though you could, of course, code that into the definition as well. However, a more general solution for adding words based on the referenced counter is offered with the `\labelformat` declaration. Alternatively you can use the `cleveref` package discussed in Section 2.4.2, which provides a more sophisticated solution for this.

```
\labelformat{counter}{formatting-code} \Ref{label}
```

With `\labelformat` L^AT_EX offers a possibility to generate such frills automatically.¹ The command takes two arguments: the name of a counter and its representation when referenced. Thus, for a successful usage, one has to know the counter name being used for generating the label, though in practice this should not pose a problem. When processing a reference the current counter number (or, more exactly, its representation) is picked up as an argument, so the second argument should contain `#1` to retrieve it.

A side effect of using `\labelformat` is that, depending on the defined formatting, it becomes impossible to use `\ref` at the beginning of a sentence (if its replacement text starts with a lowercase letter). To overcome this problem there is also a `\Ref` command that behaves like `\ref` except that it uppercases the first token

¹In the past this command was provided by the `varioref` package.

of the generated string. In the following example, you can observe this behavior when “section” is turned into “Section”.

1 An example

Section 1 shows the use of the `\labelformat` declaration with a reference to equation (1).

$$a = b$$

(1)

```
\usepackage[nospace]{varioref}
\labelformat{section}{section~#1}
\labelformat{equation}{equation~( #1)}
\section{An example}\label{sec}
\Ref{sec} shows the use of the \verb=\labelformat=
declaration with a reference to \ref{eq}.
\begin{equation} a = b \label{eq} \end{equation}
```

2-4-3

To make the `\Ref` command work properly, the first token in the second argument of `\labelformat` has to be a single ASCII letter; otherwise, the capitalization fails or, even worse, you end up with some error messages. If you actually need something more complicated in this place (e.g., an accented letter), you have to explicitly surround it with braces, thereby identifying the part that needs to be capitalized. For example, for figure references in the Hungarian language you might want to write `\labelformat{figure}{{\acute{a}}bra~\thefigure}`.

Unicode engines

In pdf_T_EX the braces are necessary, regardless of whether you write the accented character as `\’a` or as `\acute{a}` as we did above, because in this engine UTF-8 characters are seen as several tokens even if on the screen they look like a single character. The downside is that these braces prevent any kerning that the font may specify between `\acute{a}` and the following character. However, in X_Y_T_EX or Lua_T_EX a Unicode character is a single token (not a sequence of bytes) and is therefore picked up correctly even without the braces. Thus, with these engines the braces should not be used to improve the typeset result.

As a second example of the use of `\labelformat` consider the following situation: in the `report` or `book` document class, footnotes are numbered per chapter. Referencing them would normally be ambiguous, given that it is not clear whether we refer to a footnote in the current chapter or to a footnote from a different chapter. This ambiguity can be resolved by always adding the chapter information in the reference or by comparing the number of the chapter in which the `\label` occurred with the current chapter number and adding extra information if they differ. This is achieved by the following code:

```
\usepackage{ifthen,varioref}
\labelformat{footnote}{#1\protect\iscurrentchapter{\thechapter}}
\newcommand\iscurrentchapter[1]{%
  \ifthenelse{\equal{#1}{\thechapter}}{}{ in Chapter~#1}}
```

The trick is to use `\protect` to prevent `\iscurrentchapter` from being evaluated when the label is formed. Then, when the `\ref` command is executed, `\iscurrentchapter` compares its argument (i.e., the chapter number current when the label was formed) to the now current chapter number and, when they differ, typesets the appropriate information.


2.4.1 varioref — More flexible cross-references

In many cases it is helpful, when referring to a figure or table, to put both a `\ref` and a `\pageref` command into the document, especially when one or more pages separate the reference and the object. Some people use a command like

```
\newcommand\fullref[1]{\ref{#1} on page~\pageref{#1}}
```

to reduce the number of keystrokes necessary to make such a complete reference. But because one never knows with certainty where the referenced object finally falls, this method can result in a citation to the current page, which is disturbing and should therefore be avoided. The package `varioref`, written by Frank Mittelbach, tries to resolve that problem automatically. For this it provides the commands `\vref` and `\vpageref` to deal with single references, as well as `\vrefrange` and `\vpagerefrange` to handle multiple references.¹


We recommend that you always load the package with the option `nospace`, and this is what we assume throughout the book. Without it `varioref` manipulates the spaces in front of its commands (and even adds one if there is not any), but this causes a number of problems and should therefore be avoided.² Some more details are given on page 85.

 We recommend to always use the `nospace` option

```
\vref*[same-page]{key}      \Vref*[same-page]{key}
```

The command `\vref` is like `\ref` when the reference and `\label` are on the same page and the optional argument is not used. With the optional argument it prints the text *same-page* after the reference.³ If the label and reference differ by one page, `\vref` creates one of these strings: “on the facing page”, “on the preceding page”, or “on the following page”. The word “facing” is used when both label and reference fall on a double spread and the document is typeset in `twoside` mode. When the difference is larger than one page, `\vref` produces both `\ref` and `\pageref`. Note that when a special page numbering scheme is used instead of the usual arabic numbering (for example, `\pagenumbering{roman}`), there will be no distinction between being one or many pages off.

If `\varioref` is loaded with the option `nospace` as recommended, then the star form has no effect unless you also load `hyperref`. In the latter case it prevents `hyperref` from generating a hyperlink for this reference. If `nospace` is not used, then the star form stops adding a space in front of the reference.

 Different behaviors of the star form depending on options used

The `\Vref` command works like `\vref` except that it internally uses `\Ref` instead of `\ref`; i.e., it uppercases the first letter. See above for a discussion of the restrictions that apply to its use with `pdfTeX`.

¹As a matter of fact, the package also defines `\fullref` for cases where it is certain that label and reference are far apart. Using that instead of `\vref` needs less resources and is faster although these days this seldom matters.

²The reason that `nospace` is not the default is that the documents in the last twenty years assumed the old behavior, and thus changing the default would break too many documents out there.

³Note that the optional arguments of `\vref`, `\vpageref`, and similar commands from `varioref` are not supported if you also load the `cleveref` package! See Section 2.4.2 on page 86 for the restrictions.

`\vpageref*[same-page] [other-page] {key}`

Sometimes you may only want to refer to a page number. In that case, a reference should be suppressed if you are citing the current page. For this purpose the `\vpageref` command is defined. It produces the same strings as `\vref` except that it does not start with `\ref`, and it produces the string saved in `\reftextcurrent` if both label and reference fall on the same page.

Defining `\reftextcurrent` to produce something like “on the current page” ensures that text like “... see the diagram `\vpageref{ex:foo}` which shows ...” does not come out as “... see the diagram which shows ...”, which could be misleading.

A space in front of `\vpageref` is ignored if the command does not create any text at all. Thus the correct way to use the command is to place a space on either side. As with `\vref` the star form has no effect when the option `nospace` is used unless `hyperref` is also loaded in which case it suppresses the hyperlink to the page.

In fact, `\vpageref` allows even more control when used with its two optional arguments. The first argument specifies an alternative text to be used if the label and reference fall on the same page. This is helpful when both are close together so that they may or may not be separated by a page break. In such a case, you usually know whether the reference comes before or after the label so that you can code something like the following:

```
... see the diagram \vpageref[above]{ex:foo} which shows ...
```

The resultant text will be “... see the diagram above which shows ...” when both are on the same page, or “... see the diagram on the page before which shows ...” (or something similar, depending on the settings of the `\reftext..before` and `\reftext..after` commands) if they are separated by a page break. Note, however, that if you use `\vpageref` with such an optional argument to refer to a figure or table, depending on the float placement parameters, the float may show up at the top of the current page and therefore before the reference, even if it follows the reference in the source file.¹

Maybe you even prefer to say “... see the above diagram” when both diagram and reference fall on the same page — that is, reverse the word order compared to our previous example. In fact, in some languages the word order automatically changes in that case. To allow for this variation the second optional argument *other-page* can be used. It specifies the text preceding the generated reference if both object and reference do not fall on the same page. Thus, one would write

```
... see the \vpageref[above diagram][diagram]{ex:foo} which shows ...
```

to achieve the desired effect.

¹To ensure that a floating object always follows its place in the source, use the `flafter` package, which is described in Section 7.2.

`\vpageref range*[same-page]{first}{last}`

This command is similar to `\vpageref` (without the second optional argument) but takes two mandatory arguments — two labels denoting a range. If both labels fall on the same page, the command acts exactly like `\vpageref` (with a single label); otherwise, it produces something like “on pages 15–18” (see the customization possibilities described below). It has an optional argument that defaults to the string stored in `\ref textcurrent` and is used if both labels appear on the current page.

Again there exists a starred form, `\vpageref range*`, which suppresses a hyperlink or the insertion of a space depending on the options used.

`\vref range[same-page]{first}{last}`

This `\vref range` command is simply a convenient shorthand for

`\ref{first} to \ref{last} \vref pagerange[same-page]{first}{last}`

except that it varies the word “to” depending on the language. This means it is suitable only for ranges of length three or more, because with just two you better use “and” between the references as we did in the following example.

1 Test

Observe equations 1.1 to 1.3 on pages 6–7 and in particular equations 1.2 and 1.3 on the facing page.

$$a = b \quad (1.1)$$

6

Here is a second equation...

$$b < c \quad (1.2)$$

...and finally one more equation:

$$a < c \quad (1.3)$$

7

```
\usepackage[nospace]{varioref}
\renewcommand\theequation
{\thesection.\arabic{equation}}

\section{Test}
Observe equations~\vrefrange{A}{C} and
in particular equations~\ref{B}
and~\ref{C} \vpageref range{B}{C}.
\begin{equation}a=b\label{A}\end{equation}
Here is a second equation\ldots
\begin{equation}b<c\label{B}\end{equation}
\ldots and finally one more equation:
\begin{equation}a<c\label{C}\end{equation}
```

2-4-4

Providing your own reference commands

Sometimes you may want to define your own reference commands that make use of the `varioref` features internally. For this the package offers three helper commands.

`\vpageref compare{key1}{key2}{true-code}{false-code}`

This command compares the page numbers for `key1` and `key2` and then executes either `true-code` or `false-code` depending on the result. The next example shows a not very serious application that compares two equation labels and prints out text

depending on their relative positions. Compare the results of the tests on the first page with those on the second.

<p>Test: the equations (1) and (2) on this page.</p> <p>Test: the equation (1) on the current page and (3) on page 8.</p> $a = b \quad (1)$ $b = c \quad (2)$ <p>6</p>	<p>Test: the equations (1) and (2) on the preceding page.</p> <p>Test: the equation (1) on the facing page and (3) on the next page.</p> <p>We force eq. 3 to the next page!</p> <p>7</p>	<pre> \usepackage[nospace]{varioref} \newcommand\veqns[2]{the equation% \vpagerefcompare{#1}{#2}% {s (\ref{#1})}% { (\ref{#1}) \vpageref{#1}}% \space and (\ref{#2}) \vpageref{#2}} Test: \veqns{A}{B}. \par Test: \veqns{A}{C}. \begin{equation} a=b \label{A}\end{equation} \begin{equation} b=c \label{B}\end{equation} \newpage Test: \veqns{A}{B}. \par Test: \veqns{A}{C}. \par We force eq.\ref{C} to the next page! \newpage % for eq. to next page \begin{equation} c=a \label{C}\end{equation} </pre>
--	---	---

2-4-5

`\vpagerefnearby{key}{true-code}{false-code}`

This command lets you find out if a page reference would generate textual reference because it is on the previous, current, or next page or if it would just generate reference with a page number. Depending on the result, either the *true-code* or the *false-code* is executed.

`\vrefpagenum{cmd}{key}`

The package also provides the `\vrefpagenum` command, which allows you to write your own small commands that implement functions similar to those provided by the two previous commands. It takes two arguments: the second is a label (i.e., as used in `\label` or `\ref`), and the first is an arbitrary command name (make sure you use your own) that is set to the page number representation related to this label. This can then be used for comparisons with page numbers of other labels, but note that it may not be a number.

Language options

The package supports the options defined by the `babel` system (see Section 13.1.3); thus, a declaration like `\usepackage[ngerman]{varioref}` produces texts suitable for the German language. If your document is written in several languages, you need to specify all of them as options so that the strings get integrated into `babel`'s language switching mechanism. For languages not (yet) supported you need to specify the relevant language strings yourself as explained on page 84.

Individual customizations

How to say before ... To allow further customization, the generated text strings (which will be predefined by the language options) are all defined via macros. Backward references

use `\reftextbefore` if the label is on the preceding page but invisible, and `\reftextfacebefore` if it is on the facing page (that is, if the current page number is odd and the document is set in twoside mode).

Similarly, `\reftextafter` is used when the label comes on the next page but one has to turn the page, and `\reftextfaceafter` is used when it is on the next, but facing, page. These four strings can be redefined with `\renewcommand`.

... and after ...

In fact, `\reftextfacebefore` and `\reftextfaceafter` are used only if the user or the document class specified two-sided printing.

The command `\reftextfaraway` is used when the label and reference differ by more than one page or when they are nonnumeric. This macro is a bit different from the preceding ones because it takes one argument, the symbolic reference string, so that you can make use of `\pageref` in its replacement text. For instance, if you wanted to use your macros in German language documents, you would define something like:

... or far away

```
\renewcommand\reftextfaraway[1]{auf Seite~\pageref{#1}}
```

The `\reftextpagerange` command takes two arguments and produces the text that describes a page range (the arguments are keys to be used with `\pageref`). Similarly, `\reftextlabelrange` takes two arguments and describes the range of figures, tables, or whatever the labels refer to. See below for the English language defaults of both.

Denoting ranges

To allow some random variation in the generated strings, you can use the command `\reftextvario` inside the string macros. This command takes two arguments and selects one or the other for printing depending on the number of `\vref` or `\vpageref` commands already encountered in the document (alternating between the first and the second argument).

Minor randomness

As an example, the English language default definitions of the various macros described in this section are shown below:

```
\newcommand\reftextfaceafter{on the \reftextvario{facing}{next} page}
\newcommand\reftextfacebefore
    {on the \reftextvario{facing}{preceding} page}
\newcommand\reftextafter {on the \reftextvario{following}{next} page}
\newcommand\reftextbefore
    {on the \reftextvario{preceding page}{page before}}
\newcommand\reftextcurrent {on \reftextvario{this}{the current} page}
\newcommand\reftextfaraway  [1]{on page~\pageref{#1}}
\newcommand\reftextpagerange [2]{on pages~\pageref{#1}--\pageref{#2}}
\newcommand\reftextlabelrange[2]{\ref{#1} to~\ref{#2}}
```

If you want to customize the package according to your own preferences, just write appropriate redefinitions of the above commands into the preamble of your document or in a file with the extension `.sty` (e.g., `vrflocal.sty`) and load that with `\usepackage`. If you also put `\RequirePackage[nospace]{varioref}` (see Section A.6 on page 693) at the beginning of this file, then your local package automatically loads the `varioref` package.

*Using varioref
without textual
references*

Some people do not like textual references to pages but want to automatically suppress a page reference when both label and reference fall on the same page. This can be achieved with the help of the `\thevpagerefnum` command as follows:

```
\renewcommand\reftextfaceafter {on page~\thevpagerefnum}
\renewcommand\reftextfacebefore{on page~\thevpagerefnum}
\renewcommand\reftextafter      {on page~\thevpagerefnum}
\renewcommand\reftextbefore     {on page~\thevpagerefnum}
```

Within one of the `\reftext...` commands, `\thevpagerefnum` evaluates to the current page number if known or to two question marks otherwise.

In the same fashion you can suppress all textual page references if the reference is on the preceding or following page and show the page number only when it is further away. For this, change the definitions as follows:

```
\renewcommand\reftextfaceafter {\unskip}
\renewcommand\reftextafter      {\unskip}
\renewcommand\reftextfacebefore{\unskip}
\renewcommand\reftextbefore     {\unskip}
```

The `\unskip` is necessary in order to remove the space that was already added after the reference. Without it you end up with two spaces.

*Altering the phrase
structure*

Some languages have a completely different sentence structure so that adjusting only the individual phrases is not enough. To cater for this, there are also `\vrefformat`, `\Vrefformat`, `\vrefrangeformat`, and `\fullrefformat`. For example, for Japanese there are definitions such as

```
\renewcommand\vrefformat[2]{\ref{#2}(\vpageref[#1]{#2})} % for Japanese
\renewcommand\vrefformat[2]{\ref{#2} \vpageref[#1]{#2}} % all other
                                                         % languages
```

The parentheses in the Japanese definition are not the normal characters but their full wide counterparts in Unicode slots U+FF08 and U+FF09 — something you cannot see here but is important when this is used together with Kanji glyphs.

Customization for several languages with babel

If you use the `babel` system, redefinitions for individual languages should be added using `\addto`, as explained in Section 13.6, e.g.,

```
\addto\extrasngerman{%
  \renewcommand\reftextfaceafter{auf der nächsten Seite}%
  ... }
```

Do not forget to add appropriate `%` signs as shown above. Otherwise, a language switch might generate spurious spaces in your document!

A few things to watch out for

Defining commands like the ones described above poses some interesting problems. Suppose, for example, that a generated text like “on the next page” gets broken across pages. If this happens, it is very difficult to find an acceptable algorithmic solution, and, in fact, this situation can even result in a document that always changes from one state to another (i.e., inserting one string; finding that this is wrong; inserting another string on the next run which makes the first string correct again; inserting ...). The current implementation of the package `varioref` considers the end of the generated string as being relevant. For example,


 *Impossible documents!*

Table 5 on the current `<page break>` page

would be true if Table 5 were on the page containing the word “page”, not the one containing the word “current”. However, this behavior is not completely satisfactory and in some cases may actually result in a possible loop (where \LaTeX is requesting an additional run over and over again). Therefore, all such situations produce a \LaTeX error message so that you can inspect the problem and perhaps decide to use a `\ref` command in that place.

During document preparation, while one is still changing the text, such errors can be turned into warnings by placing a `\vrefwarning` command in the preamble. This is equivalent to specifying `draft` as an option to the package. `\vrefshowerrors` ensures that `varioref` stops when detecting a possible loop. This is the default and equivalent to specifying `final` as an option. The commands can also be used inside the document if you want to disable the errors only in some places.

Also, be aware of the potential problems that can result from the use of `\reftextvario` in the default definitions: if you reference the same object several times in nearby places, the change in wording every second time can look strange. To get rid of the variations introduced by `\reftextvario` without redefining all the `\reftext...` commands that use it, you can simply redefine it to always use the first or the second of its arguments, e.g.,

 *Variation can be dangerous!*

```
\renewcommand\reftextvario[2]{#1}
```

in the preamble of your document.

Package behavior without the `nospace` option

When `varioref` was originally designed, it had a special behavior: its commands removed any preceding space and inserted their own instead. Thus, you could leave out space before `\vref` or `\vpageref` and it would still put the reference in the right place. But this meant that you could not write something like `(\vref{foo})`, and therefore the package offered star forms of the commands to prevent the space manipulations. This is still the default behavior if you use the package without the `nospace` option.

However, this approach has several drawbacks. For one it prevents `hyperref` from using the star forms for hyperlink suppression (which is an important feature), it makes your sources less readable if you leave out the space, and it does not work

well with other packages, e.g., `cleveref`. This is why these days we recommend using always the `nospace` option.

2.4.2 `cleveref` — Cleverly formatted references

We have already seen on page 77 that L^AT_EX offers some light-weight support for formatted references based on the counter used in the reference. The package `cleveref` by Toby Cubitt is the heavy-weight version of this approach. In addition, it supports references to multiple labels and with numerical references or page references sorts the results and compresses ranges appropriately. The `varioref` commands `\vref`, `\Vref`, and `\vpageref` are augmented to support multiple keys and reference formatting.¹ All aspects of the formatting are customizable in the document preamble, which makes `cleveref` a truly comprehensive and powerful solution.

`\cref*{key-list}` `\Cref*{key-list}`

The main command offered by `cleveref` is `\cref`. It accepts either a single key (like `\ref`) or a list of such keys separated by commas. It then formats the corresponding reference (or references) according to their type, e.g., prepends words such as “section” or abbreviations such as “fig.” and possibly adds other frills such as parentheses around equation numbers.

If a comma-separated list of keys is given, it uses plural forms as appropriate and in longer lists it knows about appropriate conjunctions; e.g., it can distinguish pairs, longer sets of individual references, and consecutive ranges, and it can handle combinations thereof.

Because the generated text might start with a lowercase letter, the package additionally offers `\Cref` to be used at the start of a sentence. It differs from `\cref` by using a capital first letter in the text that is prepended to the reference number. It also always uses full words, e.g., “Figure” not “Fig.”, whereas `\cref` may produce abbreviations if so directed.

If the `hyperref` package is used, then the typeset reference gets a hyperlink to the reference target by default. Use the star form to suppress this link.

4 A Section

```
\usepackage{amsmath,cleveref}
```

A reference to an equation in this section looks like: “see eq. (1) in section 4”.

```
\section{A Section}\label{sec:this}
```

$a = b$	(1)	A reference to an equation in this section looks
$b < c$	(2)	like: “see <code>\cref{eq:a}</code> in <code>\cref{sec:this}</code> ”.
$c < d$	(3)	<pre>\begin{align} a &= b \label{eq:a} \\ b &< c \label{eq:b} \\ c &< d \label{eq:c} \end{align}</pre>

Equations (1) to (3) above are ...

```
\Cref{eq:c,eq:a,eq:b} above are \ldots
```

2-4-6

¹The `cleveref` package requires `varioref` to be loaded with the option `nospace`, to be able to use the star forms for suppressing hyperlinks. If necessary, it enforces this `varioref` behavior.

As you can see, the reference to the equation is handled quite differently from the one to the heading: it uses an abbreviation and adds parentheses around the equation number, whereas the heading is referred to as “section”. In comparison, `\Cref` used “Equations”; the references are correctly sorted (even though they are given in a different order in the source), and the resulting range was correctly compressed. Automatic sorting of references is usually helpful. If you rearrange parts of your text, then some of your reference may change their order, and without this sorting, you might end up with strange references such as “see figures (1), (3), and (2)”.

If we had two additional equations and referenced some of them, the result would come out quite different as shown in the next example:

2-4-7	<p>Equations (1) to (5) are sorted and eqs. (1) to (3) and (5) are sorted with a gap. But compare these results with referencing eqs. (1) to (3), (4) and (5)! Surprised?</p>	<pre>% equations as before + 2 more \Cref{eq:c,eq:b,eq:a,eq:d,eq:e} are sorted and \Cref{eq:c,eq:b,eq:a,eq:e} are sorted with a gap. But compare these results with referencing \cref{eq:c,,eq:b,eq:a,eq:d,eq:e}! Surprised?</pre>
-------	---	--

The behavior of the last `\cref` in the previous example may have been a bit of a surprise: the references are correctly sorted but split into two groups with the first one compressed. The reason is the “,”. It tells `cleveref` that the preceding key (`eq:c`) should be treated as a final reference in whatever range it belongs to after sorting. Thus, equations `eq:d` and `eq:e` form a second range or rather a pair and we therefore get this particular result in the second sentence of the example. This facility can be sometimes helpful, but in such a case you would probably want to make sure that you keep the keys sorted in the source to better understand what is going on.

If you use `\cref` or `\Cref` with a list of keys, it is not required that they are all of the same type as `cleveref` happily sorts them within each type and then applies the rest of its magic. Of course, this works well only if the types are compatible with each other, e.g., if you are referring to a number of different heading levels, to floats, or to different types of theorem environments, etc. Otherwise, you might end up with strange constructs.

2-4-8	<p>In figs. 1 to 3 and table 1 we ...</p>	<pre>\usepackage{cleveref} In \cref{fig:a,tab:a,fig:b,fig:c} we \ldots</pre>
-------	---	--

You may not fancy all of the defaults that `cleveref` applies, so to alter them you can use the options `sort` (but do not compress), `compress` (but do not sort), `nosort` (do neither), or `sort&compress` (the default). If the generated texts should always be capitalized, which is often requested in house styles, use the option `capitalize`.

Options to alter the package behavior

The package also understands most language options; e.g., in the next example we use German text and turn off compression but keep the sorting. We do not have to use `capitalize`, because German nouns are always capitalized.

2-4-9	<p>Gleichungen (1), (2) und (3) in Abschnitt 4 ...</p>	<pre>\usepackage[ngerman,sort]{cleveref} \Cref{eq:c,eq:a,eq:b} in \cref{sec:this} \ldots</pre>
-------	--	--

Another useful option is `noabbrev` if you do not like the abbreviations used by `\cref` in some languages such as English.

Finally, if you use `cleveref` with `hyperref`, then references are hyperlinked to their target (unless the star forms of the commands are used). By default the link area, i.e., the text you can click to navigate, is only the label and does not include the additional material. With the option `nameinlink`, you can change this to enlarge the clickable area. To demonstrate this we colored the link areas in the next example:

```
\usepackage[colorlinks,linkcolor=blue]{hyperref}
\usepackage[nameinlink,noabbrev]{cleveref}
```

Section 4 contains equations (1) and (2). `\Cref{sec:this}` contains `\cref{eq:a,eq:b}`.

2-4-10

<code>\namecref{key}</code>	<code>\nameCref{key}</code>	<code>\lnamecref{key}</code>
<code>\namecrefs{key}</code>	<code>\nameCrefs{key}</code>	<code>\lnamecrefs{key}</code>

Sometimes it is useful to provide just the text generated for a certain reference type without typesetting the label value. The above commands do this for use within a sentence and at the start of a sentence, both in singular and plural forms. The `\lname...` commands always use lowercase, even if the `capitalize` option is in force. All of the commands accept only a single *key* as their argument, because a key list would be pointless if no labels are set.

<code>\labelcref{key-list}</code>	<code>\labelcpageref{key-list}</code>
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

There are also `\labelcref` and `\labelcpageref` that print the labels or page references without prepending any text. They support *key-lists* and still add any necessary conjunction text between the items. However, because no text denoting the type is typeset, the elements in the *key-list* must be of a single type.

<code>\crefrange*{key₁}{key₂}</code>	<code>\Crefrange*{key_{first}}{key_{last}}</code>
--	---

Instead of specifying a lengthy *key-list* with `\cref`, you can use `\crefrange` or `\Crefrange` using the *first* and *last* keys to denote a consecutive range. Note that the assumption is that this range has at least three items; thus, referencing a range of length two comes out slightly strange as shown below. For this you therefore should use `\cref{eq:b,eq:c}`.

```
\usepackage{cleveref}
```

Equations (1) to (5) and in particular `\Crefrange{eq:a}{eq:e}` and in particular
eqs. (2) to (3) show ... `\crefrange{eq:b}{eq:c}` show `\ldots`

2-4-11

<code>\cpageref{key-list}</code>	<code>\Cpageref{key-list}</code>
<code>\cpagerefrange{key_{first}}{key_{last}}</code>	<code>\Cpagerefrange{key_{first}}{key_{last}}</code>

These are the commands to deal with references to page number and, just like with `\cref`, sort and compress them and add the appropriate words and punctuations in the target language.

<code>\vref*{key-list}</code>	<code>\Vref*{key-list}</code>	<code>\vrefrange*{key_{first}}{key_{last}}</code>
<code>\vpageref*{key-list}</code>		<code>\vpagerefrange*{key_{first}}{key_{last}}</code>

If the `varioref` package is used with `cleveref`, then some of its functions are changed to support *key-lists* instead of only a single *key* as arguments. Note that optional arguments are not supported if both packages are used together. For use at the beginning of a sentence `cleveref` also defines `\Vrefrange`, `\Vpageref`, and `\Vpagerefrange`, which are not offered by `varioref`.

Below we repeat Example 2-4-4 on page 81 with both packages loaded. Note that we can now simply use `\vref` with a *key-list* instead of the construction used before.

1 Test

Observe equations (1.1) to (1.3) on pages 6–7 and in particular equations (1.2) and (1.3) on the facing page.

$$a = b \quad (1.1)$$

Here is a second equation that appears on the

next page ...

$$b < c \quad (1.2)$$

...and finally one more equation:

$$a < c \quad (1.3)$$

```
\usepackage[nospace]{varioref}
\usepackage[noabbrev]{cleveref}
\renewcommand\theequation
    {\thesection.\arabic{equation}}

\section{Test}
Observe \vrefrange{A}{C} and
in particular \vref{B,C}.
\begin{equation}a=b\label{A}\end{equation}
Here is a second equation that appears
on the next page \ldots
\begin{equation}b<c\label{B}\end{equation}
\ldots and finally one more equation:
\begin{equation}a<c\label{C}\end{equation}
```

2-4-12

6

7

Customizing the references

The text generated by the `cleveref` commands depend on the “type” of the reference, which is usually based on the counter used by the reference.¹ For example, `\section` commands use the `section` counter, `figure` environments the `figure` counter, `enumerate` the counters `enumi` to `enumiv` for its different nesting levels, and so on. Thus, the reference type for a second-level enumeration is `enumii`, while that to a figure is `figure`. There are a few exceptions to the rule: the heading levels in the back matter have the types `appendix`, `subappendix`, etc., and theorem-like environments use the environment name if `amsthm` or `ntheorem` is loaded.

As the package has knowledge about all these standard types and defines default texts for them, it can be used out of the box generating results like those shown in the previous examples.

However, if you load additional packages that define their own environments or commands with referenceable counters or if you simply do not like the default texts generated by `cleveref`, then it is easy to adjust or extend them using the configuration possibilities offered by the package as discussed below.

¹As a side effect this means that if two different environments use the same counter, then references to them are of the same type and thus always generate the same text. This is normally not an issue, but see the discussion on theorems on page 91.

<code>\crefname{type}{singular}{plural}</code>	<code>\Crefname{type}{singular}{plural}</code>
--	--

These two commands define for a given *type* the text to typeset when a single reference is made and when several references are made by `\cref` and `\Cref`, respectively. For convenience, various types inherit their defaults from other types; e.g., if you change the `section` type, then `subsection` and the other lower levels inherit the new text as well, unless you provide an explicit declaration for them too.

If you define for a given *type* only a `\crefname`, then a corresponding `\Crefname` is automatically provided by uppercasing the first letter in the second and third arguments. Similarly, if only `\Crefname` is provided, then `\crefname` is constructed by the package by applying `\MakeLowercase`.

<code>\creflabelformat{type}{format}</code>

If you want the labels of a certain *type* formatted in a special way, you can denote that with a `\creflabelformat` declaration. The *format* can be any L^AT_EX code,¹ and within it `#1` denotes the place where the label (e.g., `\thesection`) is placed, and `#2` and `#3` denote the start and end points of the clickable area if a hyperlink is produced. For example, to add a closing parenthesis to references to an `enumerate` environment, you could write

```
\creflabelformat{enumi}{#2#1#3}
```

or to remove the parentheses around equation references the solution is to write

```
\creflabelformat{equation}{#2#1#3}
```

<code>\crefrangeconjunction</code>	<code>\crefpairconjunction</code>
<code>\crefmiddleconjunction</code>	<code>\creflastconjunction</code>

To alter the conjunctions between multiple labels, a number of commands exist that contain the material to be inserted; all are changed using `\renewcommand`. Between a consecutive range of labels `\crefrangeconjunction` is added, between pairs `\crefpairconjunction` is used, and for longer lists `\crefmiddleconjunction` and `\creflastconjunction` are added in the appropriate places.

For instance, if you did not like the fact that figures are abbreviated as “figs.” in Example 2-4-8 on page 87 and you prefer a range dash instead of the word “to”, then this can be easily arranged as follows:

In figures 1–3 and table 1 we show all relevant data from the different experiments ...

```
\usepackage{cleveref}
\crefname{figure}{figure}{figures}
\newcommand\crefrangeconjunction{--}
```

In `\cref{fig:a,tab:a,fig:b,fig:c}` we show all relevant data from the different experiments \ldots

2-4-13

¹Use `\protect` with fragile commands.

<code>\crefalias{type}{existing-type}</code>	<code>\label[type]{key}</code>
--	--------------------------------

Instead of setting up a (new) *type* with `\crefname`, etc., you can alternatively specify that reference of that *type* should be formatted according to some *existing-type*. This can be useful in some circumstances if you want several counters (types) to use the same referencing format.

You can also use `\label` with an optional *type* argument to overwrite the default type for references to a particular label. For example, if you want to refer to some questions as “assumptions”, the following will do the trick:

		<code>\usepackage{cleveref}</code>
		<code>\crefname{assume}{assumption}{assumptions}</code>
		<code>\creflabelformat{assume}{#2(#1)#3}</code>
$a = b$	(1)	<code>\begin{equation} a=b\label[assume]{eq}\end{equation}</code>
Starting from assumption (1) we get ...		Starting from <code>\cref{eq}</code> we get <code>\ldots</code>

2-4-14

There are several other adjustments possible with further configuration commands supporting special cases as needed by some languages. Thus, if the above is not sufficient for your needs, consult the package documentation for additional customization possibilities.

Support for multiple languages

So far we covered customizing commands for the main language of a document. If your document uses several languages and you want to customize more than one of them, then you have to get your changes into the language switching mechanism of *babel* or *polyglossia*. Here is an example for *babel*: *Customizing several languages in parallel*

	<code>\usepackage[ngerman,english]{babel,cleveref}</code>
	<code>\crefname{figure}{figure}{figures}</code>
	<code>\newcommand\crefrangeconjunction{--}</code>
	<code>\AtBeginDocument{\addto\extrasngerman{%</code>
	<code>\crefname{figure}{Abbildung}{Abbildungen}%</code>
	<code>\renewcommand\crefrangeconjunction{--}}}</code>
In figures 1–3 and table 1 we have	
...	In <code>\cref{fig:a,tab:a,fig:b,fig:c}</code> we have <code>\ldots</code>
In Abbildungen 1–3 und Tabelle 1	<code>\par \selectlanguage{ngerman}</code>
haben wir ...	In <code>\cref{fig:a,tab:a,fig:b,fig:c}</code> haben wir <code>\ldots</code>

2-4-15

Note that the additions to `\extrasngerman` have to be made after the beginning of the document or inside `\AtBeginDocument` to take effect and that we have to use `\renewcommand`, not `\newcommand`, at this point.

Handling theorem-like environments

If you define a new theorem-like environment with the help of `\newtheorem`, then *cleveref* does not use the counter name as the *type* but instead the environment name that has been set up.

It also automatically assumes that it can use the environment title as the reference text (converted to lowercase if necessary), but it does not make any attempt to set up a plural form as that is too irregular even in English. Thus, if we process the following example, we see that `\Cref` and `\cref` with a single *key* work out of the box, but the last one using a *key-list* fails without further declarations.

Theorem 1 <i>A theorem.</i>	<code>\usepackage{cleveref}</code>
	<code>\newtheorem{thm}{Theorem}</code>
Lemma 1 <i>A lemma.</i>	<code>\newtheorem{lem}{Lemma}</code>
	<code>\begin{thm} A theorem. \label{thm:a}\end{thm}</code>
Lemma 2 <i>Another one.</i>	<code>\begin{lem} A lemma. \label{lem:a}\end{lem}</code>
	<code>\begin{lem} Another one.\label{lem:b}\end{lem}</code>
Lemma 2 is used to prove theorem 1.	<code>\Cref{lem:b}</code> is used to prove <code>\cref{thm:a}</code> . <code>\\</code>
But ?? 1?? 2 need formatting help.	But <code>\cref{lem:a,lem:b}</code> need formatting help.

2-4-16

Beside the question marks in the printout we also get warnings like

LaTeX Warning: cref reference format for label type 'lem'
undefined on input line 31.

in that case. The remedy is to provide appropriate `\crefname` or `\Crefname` declarations. However, even that is not enough if you set up the theorem-like environments to share a single counter: in that case we suddenly get texts always referring to theorems and not to lemmas where appropriate.

Theorem 1 <i>A theorem.</i>	<code>\usepackage{cleveref}</code>
	<code>\crefname{thm}{theorem}{theorems}</code>
Lemma 2 <i>A lemma.</i>	<code>\crefname{lem}{lemma}{lemmas}</code>
	<code>\newtheorem{thm}{Theorem} \newtheorem{lem}[thm]{Lemma}</code>
	<code>\begin{thm} A theorem. \label{thm:a}\end{thm}</code>
Lemma 3 <i>Another one.</i>	<code>\begin{lem} A lemma. \label{lem:a}\end{lem}</code>
	<code>\begin{lem} Another one.\label{lem:b}\end{lem}</code>
Theorem 3 is used to prove theorem 1.	<code>\Cref{lem:b}</code> is used to prove <code>\cref{thm:a}</code> . <code>\\</code>
But theorems 2 and 3 need formatting help.	But <code>\cref{lem:a,lem:b}</code> need formatting help.

2-4-17

Fortunately, `cleveref` has a solution for this case too. All you need to do is to use either the `amsthm`, `ntheorem`, or `thmtools` package for theorem-like environments (which is anyway preferable), and then everything comes out correctly.

	<code>\usepackage{amsthm,cleveref}</code>
	<code>% Otherwise same setup as in previous example ...</code>
Lemma 3 is used to prove theorem 1.	<code>\Cref{lem:b}</code> is used to prove <code>\cref{thm:a}</code> . <code>\\</code>
Now lemmas 2 and 3 are typeset correctly.	Now <code>\cref{lem:a,lem:b}</code> are typeset correctly.

2-4-18

Other special considerations

L^AT_EX's `eqnarray`
is not supported 

The `cleveref` package cannot be used together with L^AT_EX's `eqnarray`, or, more precisely, you cannot use `\cref` to refer to a `\label` inside such an environment. If you really need this, use `\ref` instead and supply the necessary textual material (e.g.,

“eqs.”) manually. In most circumstances it is better to use the environments provided by `amsmath` anyway, because they offer much better spacing of the equations.

2.4.3 `nameref` — Non-numerical references

In some documents it is required to reference sections by displaying their title texts instead of their numbers, either because there is no number to refer to or because the house style asks for it. This functionality is provided by the `\nameref` command, available through the `nameref` package by Sebastian Rahtz (1955–2016) et al. This package is also automatically loaded by `hyperref`.

For numbered sections and floats with captions, the titles are those that would be displayed in the contents lists (regardless of whether such a list is actually printed). That is, if a short title is provided via the optional argument of a sectioning command or caption, then this title is printed by `\nameref`. This can be somewhat surprising for the reader if the short title of a heading is noticeably different in wording to the title in the body of the document. In contrast, unnumbered sections take their title reference from the printed title. If you use `\nameref` with a label key unrelated to a title (e.g., a label in a footnote, or an enumeration item), it simply displays the title of the surrounding section.

As `\nameref` does not produce the heading number but only its title, you have to additionally use `\ref` if you want to typeset both. More commonly you may want to display the title together with a page reference for which you can use the abbreviation `\Nameref`. Note that this command surrounds the title with single quotes, which may not be to your taste and may lead to strange results if you use other type of quotes elsewhere as we did in the next example.

4 Textual References

Section ‘Textual References’ on page 6 proves that it is possible to reference unnumbered sections by referencing section “Example”.

```
\usepackage{nameref}
\setcounter{secnumdepth}{1}

\section{Textual References}\label{num}
Section \Nameref{num} proves that
it is possible to reference unnumbered sections
by referencing section ‘\nameref{unnum}’.
```

A Small Example

```
\subsection[Example]{A Small Example}\label{unnum}
The current section is referenced in
section~\ref{num}.
```

2-4-19 The current section is referenced in section 4.

If `hyperref` is used, then you can also use `\nameref*`, which works like `\nameref` but prevents a hyperlink to the section. If you load only `nameref`, both commands have the same effect.

2.4.4 `showkeys`, `refcheck` — Displaying & checking reference keys

When writing a larger document, many people print intermediate drafts. In such drafts it would be helpful if the positions of `\label` commands as well as their keys could

be made visible. This becomes possible with the `showkeys` package written by David Carlisle or the `refcheck` package by Oleg V. Motygin.

When the `showkeys` package is loaded, the commands `\label`, `\ref`, `\pageref`, `\cite`, and `\bibitem` are modified in a way that the used key is printed. The `\label` and `\bibitem` commands normally cause the key to appear in a box in the margin, while the commands referencing a key print it in small type above the formatted reference (possibly overprinting some text). The package tries hard to position the keys in such a way that the rest of the document's formatting is kept unchanged. There is, however, no guarantee for this, and it is best to remove or disable the `showkeys` package before attempting final formatting of the document.

1 An example

1.1 A subsection

Section 1.1 shows the use of the `showkeys` package with a reference to equation (1).

$$\begin{array}{ll} a = b & (1) \\ a < b & (2) \\ a > b & (3) \end{array}$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath,showkeys}
\section{An example}\label{sec}
\subsection{A subsection}\label{unused}
Section~\ref{sec} shows the use of the
\texttt{showkeys} package with a
reference to equation~(\ref{eq}).
\begin{align} a &= b \label{eq} \\ a &< b \label{eq2} \\ a &> b \end{align}
```

2-4-20

The package supports the `fleqn` option of the standard classes and works together with the packages of the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -L^AT_EX collection, `varioref`, `natbib`, and many other packages. Nevertheless, it is nearly impossible to ensure its safe working with all packages that hook into the reference mechanisms.

If you want to see only the keys on the `\label` command in the margin, you can suppress the others by using the package option `notref` (which disables the redefinition of `\ref`, `\pageref`, and related commands) or the option `notcite` (which does the same for `\cite` and its cousins from the `natbib` package). Alternatively, you might want to use the option `color` to make the labels less obstructive.

Also supported are the options `draft` (default) and `final`. While the latter is useless when used on the package level, because you can achieve the same result by not specifying the `showkeys` package, `draft` comes in handy if `final` is specified as a global option on the class and you nevertheless want to visualize the keys.

If you look at the keys used in Example 2-4-20, then both “unused” and “eq2” are never used in references, and the third equation has an equation number without a label. While the latter is directly visible because there is no boxed key in the margin, the unused keys cannot be identified easily if at all. Nevertheless, all three cases are likely to be either mistakes or leftovers; e.g., some references were intended but never made or misspelled.

To find such problems you can use the package `refcheck` instead of `showkeys`. With that package unused labels are shown in the margins surrounded by question marks and in the case of equation tags also underlined. Equations with tags that are not referenced show `{?}` in the margin. What is not shown are key usage by `\ref`,

`\pageref`, or `\cite`. Thus, by redoing our example with this package, we get the following result:

	1 An example	<code>\usepackage{amsmath,refcheck}</code>
<code>\section{}</code>	1.1 A subsection	<code>\section{An example}\label{sec}</code>
<code>?\subsection{}</code>	Section 1 shows the use of the <code>refcheck</code> package with a reference to equation (1).	<code>\subsection{A subsection}\label{unused}</code>
		<code>Section~\ref{sec} shows the use of the</code>
		<code>\texttt{refcheck} package with a</code>
		<code>reference to equation~(\ref{eq}).</code>
	$a = b$	<code>\begin{align} a \&= b \label{eq} \\\</code>
	$a < b$	<code> a \&< b \label{eq2} \\\</code>
	$a > b$	<code> a \&> b \end{align}</code>
	(1) <code>\eq</code>	
	(2) <code>?eq2?</code>	
	(3) <code>{?}</code>	

2-4-21

The checking is also done for `\bibitems` so that you can easily see if you have any citations in your bibliography that are never referenced in your paper.

If you use the `xr` package to provide references across different documents, then those can also be verified; for details see the package documentation.

2.4.5 `xr`—References to external documents

David Carlisle, building on the earlier work of Jean-Pierre Druchert (1947–2009), developed a package called `xr`, which implements a system for external references.

If, for instance, a document needs to refer to sections of another document—say, `other.tex`—then you can specify the `xr` package in the main file and give the command `\externaldocument{other}` in the preamble. Then you can use `\ref` and `\pageref` to refer to anything that has been defined with a `\label` command in either `other.tex` or your main document. You may declare any number of such external documents.

If any of the external documents or the main document uses the same `\label` key, then a conflict occurs, because the key is multiply defined. To overcome this problem, `\externaldocument` takes an optional argument in which you can declare a *prefix*. For example, with `\externaldocument[A-]{other}` all references from the file `other.tex` are prefixed by `A-`. So, for instance, if a section in the file `other.tex` had a `\label{intro}`, then it could be referenced with `\ref{A-intro}`. The *prefix* can be any string chosen to ensure that all the keys imported from external files are unique.

Note, however, that if one of the packages you are using declares certain active characters (e.g., `:` in French or `"` in German), then these characters should not be used inside `\label` commands and thus not as part of the *prefix* either.

As of 2019 the package also supports referencing `\bibitems`; i.e., you can cite a bibliography entry with `\cite` or any of its cousins even if the bibliography is stored in a separate document.¹

[Citations to external bibliographies](#)

The package does not work together with the `hyperref` package because both modify the internal reference mechanism. Instead, you can use the `xr-hyper` package, which is a reimplementaion tailored to work with `hyperref`.

¹This was originally available as a separate `xcite` package, written by Enrico Gregorio.

2.4.6 hyperref — Active references

The `hyperref` package has a long history with many contributors going back to the early days of L^AT_EX 2_ε. The original development was done by Sebastian Rahtz (1955–2016; see page vii), with contributions by Heiko Oberdiek and David Carlisle; later Heiko took over and rewrote and extended the package — so today’s comprehensive version is largely due to his efforts. Now the `hyperref` package is maintained by the L^AT_EX Project Team.

The package makes it possible to automatically turn all cross-references (citations, table of contents, and so on) into hypertext links. It also supports hyperlinks to external resources, and in addition it offers access to many PDF features, such as bookmarks, etc. The package is described in detail in [57, pp.35–67] and comes with its own extensive manual [167]. In this section we therefore discuss only the most important features useful for day-to-day work, but keep in mind that there is much more available (just in terms of option keys you find more than 100 in the manual).

As has been mentioned in Section 2.1.1 there is a major shift under way during which L^AT_EX is being modernized to support accessible PDF; adapting `hyperref` is an important step of the task, and if you start your document with `\DocumentMetadata` to indicate that you want to use the new functionality, a large part of its internal code is different. The L^AT_EX Project Team works on moving core parts of `hyperref` directly into the L^AT_EX kernel, on cleaning up the code, and on extending and standardizing its features.

`\DocumentMetadata`
required! 

These changes have also some impact on the user commands: a few features depend on the new code. Options and commands that are not available or that behave differently without `\DocumentMetadata` are therefore marked with a danger symbol in the following sections.

Using `hyperref` can be quite easy. Just including it in your list of loaded packages (preferably as the *last* package¹) suffices to turn all cross-references in your document into hypertext links. For documents viewed on a computer screen, this gives invaluable help for navigating through them.

Configuration
possibilities

You may however consider some of the package’s default settings not particularly pleasing (such as placing colored boxes around link areas), so many people call the package with a few keys adjusted to taste. The package uses a key/value approach, and most keys can be set when loading the package or later using a `\hypersetup` declaration.²

Manually and automatically provided links

Hyperlinks within a document consist of two parts: a region (of text — typically) that, if clicked, instructs the viewing software to jump to a different part in the document (the so called anchor point). This is realized by putting “named” anchors into the target

¹The `hyperref` documentation contains a lengthy section discussing deviations to this rule, i.e., in which order certain packages should be loaded in relation to the `hyperref` package.

²Some keys need to be set when the package is loaded because they implement global settings that cannot be altered once set. Even `\hypersetup` is then impossible, except when used in `hyperref.cfg`, the configuration file for the package.

places, surrounding regions that should react to clicks with appropriate commands that invoke some sort of “go to the anchor with a certain name” action.

To be able to jump to the right place, each anchor needs a unique name, and the clickable regions need to know to which “name” they should point. This can be done manually with the following two commands:

`\hypertarget{name}{text} \hyperlink{name}{clickable text}`

The `\hypertarget` typesets the *text* and additionally places an anchor with the name *name* before it. In a different part of the document you can then make a link to it using `\hyperlink`. The clickable region is the *clickable text* argument, and by default this gets surrounded by a box with thin colored borders. If used in the manual way, it is your responsibility to make sure that *name* is unique across the whole document.

In many cases there is no need to produce internal document links manually, because `hyperref` does this automatically for us behind the scenes. Whenever a command or environment is set up to allow cross-references, `hyperref` adds an anchor point, and when you use `\ref` or `\pageref`, it surrounds the generated number with a `\hyperlink` so that clicking that number takes you to the section, caption, bibliography item, or whatever else is referenced. In the same way, it adds hyperlinks to the titles (and/or page numbers) in the table of contents, list of figures etc.

If you want to make a reference without a hyperlink, use `\ref*` or `\pageref*` instead. Making hyperlinks to existing `\labels` in the document is also available through the following command:

`\hyperref[label]{text}`

This command is useful if you do not want to typeset a normal reference, through `\ref{label}`, but instead want to refer in *text* to the object the `\label{label}` is pointing to. Using `\hyperref` turns this *text* into a clickable area. If *text* should additionally contain a `\ref` to display the reference number, use `\ref*` instead to avoid nested links (which do not work).

`\MakeLinkTarget{}`

`\ref`, `\pageref`, and `\hyperref` do not jump to the place where the `\label{label}` is written but to the last structure before the `\label` that set an anchor. This can have the surprising (at least for `\pageref`) effect that it jumps to a different page than the one shown in the output if, for example, the last section was on a previous page. In such cases an explicit target before the label can be inserted with `\MakeLinkTarget`. This creates the needed target anchor for a correct link if `hyperref` is loaded.¹

The `hyperref` package also generates links from the lists generated by the commands `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures`, etc., back to the pages with the headings, figures, tables, and so forth. By default, the clickable areas are the heading titles or the captions. This can be changed with the key `linktoc`, which accepts the

*Links from the table
of contents and
similar lists*

¹The legacy `hyperref` name for this command is `\phantomsection`, but it is only available if the package is loaded, while `\MakeLinkTarget{}` can be used with and without `hyperref`.

values `none`, `section` (the default), `page`, or `all` (in which case both the title and page number become hyperlinks).

Links to footnotes

By default, links from footnote markers in the paragraphs to the footnote text at the bottom of the page are automatically added except inside some environments (like `tabularx`) or when packages such as `bigfoot` are loaded that introduce their own footnote handling. You also do not get a link if you use `\footnotemark` with an optional argument. You can explicitly suppress such links by setting `hyperfootnotes` to `false` if you prefer not to have any footnote links at all.

Links from the bibliography to citations

It is also possible to automatically generate references from the bibliography back to the pages where the bibliography items are cited. This can be helpful, especially during document preparation. This is achieved with the package option `pagebackref` (displaying the page numbers on which a bibliography item is cited) or `backref`. The latter supports the values `section` (displaying the numbers of the sectional units in which the citations are made, the default), `slides` for use in presentations, `page` (same as `pagebackref`), or `none` to prevent them.

There is one important restriction to be aware of: the mechanism to add the links requires that after each `\bibitem` entry there is always an empty line or a `\par` command. If this is missing and the `\bibitems` directly follow each other, then the links are attached to the wrong place.

The `hyperref` options for such back references are not relevant when the `biblatex` package is used to produce the bibliography, because this package implements full support for back references with links directly, and their behavior can and should be adapted by using the relevant `biblatex` options.

Links from the index entries

Links back from an index to the pages that are referenced are also automatically generated. This can be controlled with the package option `hyperindex`, which can be set to `false` if this is not wanted.

Ensuring unique anchor names

The names for anchors are built by `hyperref` with the name of the counter and a special representation of the counter called `\theH<ctr>`, which by default expands to `\the<ctr>`. If this representation is not unique across the document and you get warnings about duplicated destination names, you should redefine it, for example, by adding another counter value.

This is a common problem with appendices: their definitions often reset the chapter or section counter to zero and switch the numbering style. We therefore repeat the low-level definition from Section 7 on page 53 to demonstrate what is needed to make it compatible with `hyperref`. We start with a redefinition of `\appendix`. Here we add a redefinition of `\theH<ctr>` to get a unique anchor name. We could simply mirror the `\thesection` definition, but in languages different from English `\Alph` is perhaps not usable as an anchor name, so we use a prefix instead. To avoid errors if `hyperref` is not loaded, we provide also a default definition of `\theHsection`:

```
\providecommand\theHsection{\arabic{section}}
\makeatletter
\renewcommand\appendix{%
  \renewcommand\section{%           % Redefinition of \section...
    \clearpage\thispagestyle{plain}% % new page, folio bottom
  }
```

```

\suppressfloats[t]\@afterindentfalse % no top floats, no indent
\secdef\Appendix\sAppendix}% % call \Appendix or \sAppendix
\setcounter{section}{0}\renewcommand\thesection{\Alph{section}}%
\renewcommand\theHsection{appendix-\arabic{section}}% for hyperref
}
\makeatother

```

No change is needed in the `\Appendix` command, but we should tell `hyperref` the bookmark level:

```

\makeatletter \providecommand\toclevel@appendix{1} \makeatother

```

As a minimum, the `\sAppendix` command (implementing the starred form) needs a `\MakeLinkTarget` so that it creates an anchor usable for page references:

```

\newcommand\sAppendix[1]{% % Simplified (starred) form
{\raggedleft\large\bfseries\MakeLinkTarget{}}%
\appendixname\par \centering#1\par}%
\@afterheading\addvspace{\baselineskip}}
\makeatother

```

The special case of `enumerate` counters, which are typically never unique in a document, is handled internally by `hyperref`. Another problem can arise from page numbers: `hyperref` creates for every page an anchor and assumes that every page has a unique name. This is normally the case because roman and arabic page numbers count as different, but it can fail if documents reset the page number after a cover page. The easiest workaround is to set the page number to a negative value for cover pages or to use a different numbering style. If the class hardwires such duplicate page numbers, then another option is to surround the cover pages with the `NoHyper` environment: it disables all `hyperref` features and so suppresses also the anchor creation.

Links to external resources

It is also possible with `hyperref` to link to external resources, e.g., to some Internet Uniform Resource Locator (URL) or to a local file, etc. In a PDF file, such links come in three “flavors”: links to a URL, links that launch (“run”) an external application to view a local file, and links to other PDF files that can be loaded by the PDF viewer. The link types are marked automatically with different colors or link borders that can be specified in `\hypersetup`.

The basic command for such links is `\href`, which attempts to identify the flavor of the link based on some patterns, e.g., if there is a colon in the target or if the file name ends with `.pdf`. For most standard cases this works quite well.

There are now also the more specialized commands `\hrefurl`, `\hrefrun`, and `\hrefpdf` that create the link type as specified by their name and offer some additional options to manipulate the link target. The latter are available only if the command `\DocumentMetadata` has been used at the start of the document.

 `\DocumentMetadata`
required!

<code>\href[options]{link target}{text}</code> <code>\hrefurl[options]{url}{text}</code> <code>\hrefrun[options]{file}{text}</code> <code>\hrefpdf[options]{file}{text}</code>

The *text* argument is typeset and becomes the clickable area. You can use any kind of formatting within *text* argument — it is just typeset by L^AT_EX as usual. The first mandatory argument should describe where the link should take us. This can be a website (starting with `https://` or `http://`), but there are many other URL schemes that are defined and supported by many PDF readers. For example,

```
\href{mailto:frank.mittelbach@latex-project.org?subject=Typo found
      in TLC3}{Report Typo in TLC3}
```

would typeset the text “Report Typo in TLC3” in the document and, if clicked, would open the reader’s mailing program with my e-mail address and a default subject line prefilled — try it out if you find a typo.¹

The special characters #, %, and ~ can be used verbatim in the argument for the link target.² This is helpful, because they appear quite often in URLs to web pages.

Non-ASCII links

If the URL contains — as now happens quite commonly — non-ASCII characters, they must be converted into the “percent-encoded” form in the first argument of `\href`; this means, e.g., that a link to the town Köln should be entered as

```
\href{https://www.k%C3%B6ln.de}{Köln}
```

or if used in an argument as

```
\href{https://www.k\C3%B6ln.de}{Köln}
```

`\DocumentMetadata`
required! 

For this purpose the `\hrefurl` command offers the option `urlencode`, which does the percent-encoding for you. This makes the L^AT_EX input considerably longer, but if you need it often, you can also make it the default by setting `href/urlencode` in `\hypersetup`.

```
\hrefurl[urlencode]{https://www.köln.de}{some text}
```

Preset a protocol

Most URLs use the HTTPS protocol. To save some typing, it is possible to preset this protocol with `href/protocol` in `\hypersetup` for `\hrefurl` and `\url`:

`\DocumentMetadata`
required! 

```
\hypersetup{href/protocol=https://}
\hrefurl{www.latex-project.org.de}{some text}
\url{www.latex-project.org.de}
```

Opening files by launching an action

To link to files on the computer you can simply enter the file name in the `\href` argument, or you can launch an action using `hyperref`’s special “run:” notation. The first approach works well for PDF files, while a launch action is normally the better choice for all other file types. It instructs the operating system to open the file, and for this

¹Of course, to work, the viewing software would need to understand the URL schema `mailto:`, and the security configuration would need to allow the browser (or whatever is used for display) to open other applications.

²You need to escape them only if `\href` is used inside an argument of another command, e.g., as part of a `\section` title.

to work, the operating system needs to know how to do this.¹ Thus, if you can double-click a *file* in your directory browser and that starts a program to view or process the file, then run: *file* in the *url* argument does exactly the same. For example, writing

```
\href{run:resources/video.mp4}{see the video}
```

typesets “see the video”, and if clicked it opens — after a security dialog — the file `video.mp4` in the subdirectory `resources` relative to the current document in your default `.mp4` viewer. The optional *options* argument of `\href` can be used if PDF files are opened in this way in Adobe Acrobat viewers. It accepts a number of different keys, e.g., to specify at which page the PDF file should be opened; see the package manual for details.

Being able to start other programs in this way out of your document can be very handy, for example, in presentations where you can add little buttons that start an audio or a video presentation, etc.

Links to external PDF files can jump to anchors in these files. If the files have been created with \LaTeX and `hyperref`, the names of the anchors can often be guessed from the representation: in many cases the name is built from the counter name, a period, and the value. For example, anchors to headings are by default constructed as `\langle heading \rangle . \langle heading-number \rangle`. Thus, to jump to section 1.3 in `manual.pdf`, you can write something like

```
\href{manual.pdf#section.1.3}{see section 1.3 in the manual}
```

Anchor names for other types of numbered objects are less easy to guess. Equations, for example, are often numbered on a per chapter or section basis in document classes. To have a fighting chance for unique names, `hyperref` constructs such names as `equation. \langle section-number \rangle . \langle equation-counter-value \rangle` (where the section number includes the chapter number if the class has chapters). If in doubt you can take a look into the `.aux` file and look for lines containing the command `\newlabel`.

```
\hypersetup{... , baseurl = baseurl , ...}
```

For URL links it is possible to shorten the *url* arguments by providing a base URL through the key `baseurl`, e.g.,

```
\hypersetup{baseurl=https://www.latex-project.org/}
\href{publications.html}{Publications of the \LaTeX{} Project Team}
\href{help/books.html}  {Books about \LaTeX{}}
```

This saves a bit of typing and may make later changes easier if most or all URLs have the same base, but be aware that not every viewer program can deal with the fact that the URLs are split into a base part and a remainder and that the base URL is prepended only if `hyperref` identifies the URL as referring to an external website (e.g., through the `.html` extension). If the viewer thinks it is a local file, no base URL is prepended.

¹Usually the file extension is associated with a default program to open it, and that is then called.

Establishing a base URL can be done only once for the whole document because this information is written into the PDF catalog. Links to all other places then need to be specified with their complete URL.

`\url{url}` `\nolinkurl{url}`

A very common requirement when typesetting an external URL is to suppress normal hyphenation and to allow it to break after slashes and other places. This is provided by the `\url` command from the `url` package discussed in Section 3.4.7 on page 198. This package is loaded by `hyperref` and its command is augmented so that you can click the *url* to open it. To typeset a URL without a link, use `\nolinkurl`.

`\url` has an optional argument and can, like `\hrefurl`, percent-encode its argument if it contains non-ASCII letters. However, this can be used only with Unicode engines — while the link is encoded correctly in pdfT_EX, the typeset output in the document is mangled and shows something weird, such as `www.kÃ¼ln.de` or similar, depending on the current font encoding.

*\DocumentMetadata
required!* 

Highlighting links

The various links generated either automatically or through the above commands can be highlighted in different ways through a number of keys, either as package options or in a `\hypersetup` declaration. By default, clickable areas are surrounded by a box with thin rules (in color). By specifying one of the following boolean keys, you can change that behavior everywhere in your document.¹

`colorlinks` Color the text in the clickable area and set the width of the thin rules to zero to make them invisible.

`hidelinks` Do not mark links in any way.

Setting colors

The `hyperref` package offers a number of keys to change the colors of the text and the borders if they are activated. All keys setting colors accept two color specifications: the name of a color model together with a list of comma-separated numbers, or the extended color syntax such as known from the `xcolor` package.

```
\hypersetup{ linkcolor = [rgb]{1,0,0} } % red in rgb
\hypersetup{ urlcolor  = red!30!blue }  % mix of red and blue
```

*\DocumentMetadata
required!* 

The color support is built using code from the L³ programming layer (which is part of the format) and is thus available without needing an external color package. Documents not using the new code should load `xcolor`.

The colors used for the individual links (when using `colorlinks`) can be altered at any time using `\hypersetup` and the following key:

`linkcolor` Color for internal document links.

`filecolor` Color for URLs that open local files.

¹In older `hyperref` versions they can be used only in the preamble.

<code>runcolor</code>	Color for <code>run</code> : links.
<code>urlcolor</code>	Color for externally linked URLs.
<code>menucolor</code>	Color for “named” links. These are links to menu functions of the PDF viewer; see page 108.
<code>allcolors</code>	Sets all link colors to the same value.

If you stay with borders around the links (or want to use them in addition to get a particularly colorful result), the names for the keys are the same as those above with `bordercolor` instead of just `color` at the end of the key name. All border colors can be set with `allbordercolors`.

```
\hypersetup{ linkbordercolor = [rgb]{1,0,0} }
\hypersetup{ urlbordercolor = blue!30 }
\hypersetup{ allbordercolors = yellow }
```

The borders around the link areas (when drawn) are by default very thin so that they often become invisible when rendered in the viewing programs.

With `pdfborder` you can adjust their width or reenable the borders if they have been disabled with the `colorlinks` key. This key has a somewhat obscure syntax: you need to supply three numbers: the first two typically zero and the third positive specifying the rule size in pixels.¹

There also exists the key `pdfborderstyle` that allows you to underline links or place dash boxes around them. The feature is, however, supported only in a few viewers; see the manual for details and examples.

Borders and border styles can also be set for individual link types by using keys such as `urlborder` or `runborderstyle`.

 `\DocumentMetadata`
required!

The `hyperref` package predefines a number of color schemes for the link colors based on suggestions by users. By default it uses the color scheme `phetype` (named after its author, a member of the L^AT_EX Project Team). The default colors used by previous versions of `hyperref` were not to the liking of everyone, but if wanted, they can be restored by using the scheme `primary-colors`.

 `\DocumentMetadata`
required!

```
\hypersetup{ colorscheme = primary-colors }
```

Bookmarks a.k.a. outline view

It is possible for a PDF document to contain an outline view, in a manner similar to a table of contents, that can be used for navigating the document in the viewer. A screenshot of such a view in Adobe Acrobat Pro, with some of the formatting options described in this section, is shown in Figure 2.3 on the next page. These “bookmarks” can be (and by default are) automatically produced by the `hyperref` package. The package option `bookmarks` (default `true`) chooses whether bookmarks are produced at all.

¹The first two values are used to specify rounded corners, but only a few viewers support this. Even the third value is not uniformly handled, unfortunately, but 0 always omits the border, and a positive value shows it.

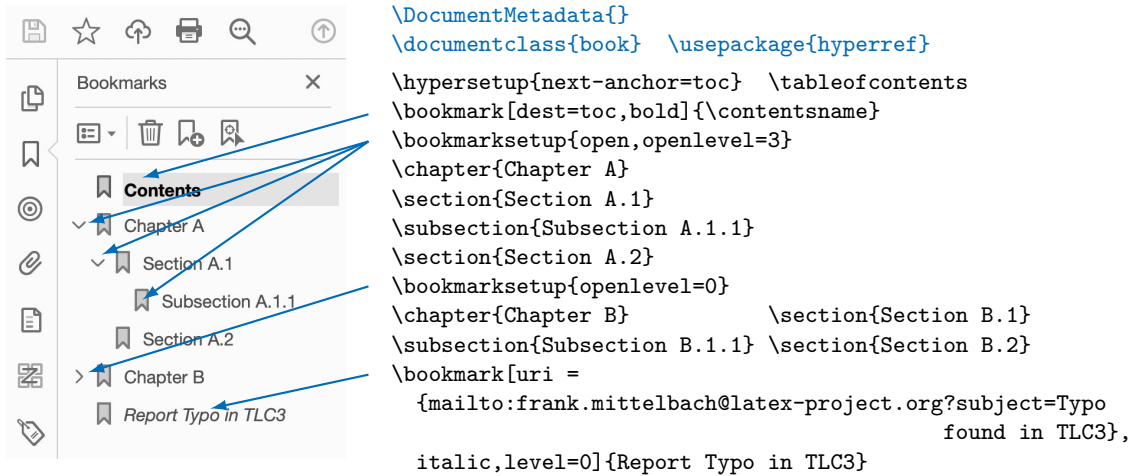


Figure 2.3: The outline view of a PDF

In older versions this required at least two passes by L^AT_EX. In the first pass a file with the extension `.out` was written that contained information about each sectional unit plus some bookkeeping data. In subsequent runs the information from the previous run was then placed into the PDF document. Heiko Oberdiek improved this in a separate bookmark package that provided much more sophisticated bookmark management allowing for additional formatting and the use of colors in the bookmarks and that avoided the need of the second compilation.

The bookmark package has now been merged into `hyperref` and replaces its legacy code. In older systems or when not using `\DocumentMetadata`, the package `bookmark` should be loaded either after or instead of `hyperref`.

```
\bookmarksetup{options}
```

Bookmarks have their own command to set up various aspects like the level or the depth.¹ The full list of keys can be found in the documentation [159]; we present here only a few important ones.

Typically the bookmarks mirror the content of the table of contents and the nesting depth to which bookmarks are added is the value of the counter `tocdepth`. This can be explicitly set and changed through the option `depth`. The key accepts as values integers representing the level but also names for the level like `section`. It can be set anywhere and so allows changing the depth locally. By using a negative value, bookmarks of all levels can be suppressed.

```

\section{section}           % shown
\subsection{subsection}    % shown
\bookmarksetup{depth=section}

```

¹For historical reasons a few options can also be set with `\hypersetup`.

`\DocumentMetadata`
required!

Keys that influence
how bookmarks are
presented

```

\section{section}           % shown
\subsection{subsection}    % hidden
\bookmarksetup{depth=-1}
\section{section}           % hidden

```

With `numbered` you can decide if the bookmark string should include the section numbers: by default it does not.

With the key `open` you can decide if the view should initially show only the top level (which is the default) or if it should show all bookmarks already opened. Additionally, you can use `openlevel` to request that bookmarks only up to a certain level are initially opened. The value is an integer — unlike the `depth` it does not accept a name — and it can be changed in the document and so allows fine-tuning which parts are opened initially.

Finally, with the keys `bold`, `italic`, and `color`, the bookmark can be formatted. The formatting is always applied to the whole bookmark, and only some PDF viewers honor the settings. For example,

```
\bookmark[dest=toc,bold,italic,color={red!50!green}]{\contentsname}
```

Even if bookmarks are produced, you may not want them to be shown automatically when the document is opened. This is controlled through `pdfpagemode`, which is described below.

Textual data in such bookmarks can contain arbitrary Unicode characters, but complicated formulas or similar constructs are not possible. The `hyperref` package attempts to parse the titles of sectional units and places only allowed strings into the bookmarks, but in some cases the results are less than suboptimal. For example, suppose you have

```
\section{Discussion of $a \leq b$}
```

as a document heading. First of all this results in three warnings of the form

```

Token not allowed in a PDF string (Unicode):
(hyperref)           removing ‘math shift’ on input line 46.

```

because neither the `$` (math shift) nor the `\leq` is allowed. Worse, as a consequence, the text of your bookmark becomes “Discussion of a b”, which is simply wrong. In such cases you can help the `hyperref` package by using `\texorpdfstring`.

```
\texorpdfstring{TEX string}{PDF string}
```

The *T_EX string* argument is used when doing normal typesetting, while the second argument is used when writing a bookmark. This argument can even contain UTF-8 characters that are unavailable for typesetting when pdfT_EX is used and would normally generate an error. Thus, writing

```

\section{Discussion of \texorpdfstring{$a \leq b$}{a <= b}} % or with
\section{Discussion of \texorpdfstring{$a \leq b$}{a ≤ b}} % U+2264 character

```


or even just using three dots as the *PDF string* would avoid the warnings and give a better bookmark result.

```
\bookmark[options]{bookmark text}
```

Manual bookmarks

Beside automatic generations of bookmarks through sectioning commands, it is also possible to create bookmarks manually to allow for easy navigation to places that are normally not added to the printed table of contents such as the TOC itself. The target of such a bookmark is given with the key `dest`, which needs as a value the name of the anchor it should point to. Such anchors can be created with `\hypertarget`, but for the table of contents you can also override the name of the automatically created anchor with the key `next-anchor` of `\hypersetup`:

```
\hypersetup{next-anchor=toc}
\tableofcontents
\bookmark[dest=toc,level=0]{\contentsname}
```

Bookmarks executing other actions

Bookmarks not only allow you to jump to places in a document, other actions are possible too. Thus, for example,

```
\bookmark[named=Print]{Print this!}
```

creates a bookmark that — if the PDF viewer supports this action — opens the print dialog. Or to repeat the example from the begin of the section,

```
\bookmark[uri =
  {mailto:frank.mittelbach@latex-project.org?subject=Typo found
                                     in TLC3}]
  {Report Typo in TLC3}
```

would add the text “Report Typo in TLC3” into the bookmarks and, if clicked, would open the reader’s mailing program with my e-mail address in the same way as the link in the document.

Document properties

If you look at the properties of a PDF document, you find information about title, author, subject, keywords. They can be set in the preamble with keys of the same name but prefixed with `pdf`, e.g.,

```
\hypersetup{pdfauthor   = Frank Mittelbach,
  pdftitle    = {The LaTeX Companion, 3rd edition},
  pdfsubject  = Typesetting,
  pdfkeywords = {document structure, layout, design, LaTeX}}
```

Note the use of braces to hide the commas in the title and keyword list from being misinterpreted as key separators. Like with bookmarks, the values have to be textual data, and `hyperref` removes unsuitable commands. This is the legacy interface offered by `hyperref` since its first release. It is, however, only a small subset of the metadata that is these days often required for PDF documents to comply with one or the other standard. It will be therefore eventually superseded by keys offered by `\DocumentMetadata`. Once that happens, these `\hypersetup` keys are deprecated but will remain functional to support reuse of older documents.

PDF presentation possibilities (available with some viewers)

If a PDF document is opened in a viewer program such as Acrobat, it may start with different configurations, e.g., in full screen, on a page different than the first, with or without some menus open, etc. Such variant configurations can already be specified in the source document, though as with many aspects of the `hyperref` package, the actual behavior depends on the viewer used: they all work with Adobe's Acrobat programs but not necessarily elsewhere. The remainder of the section therefore describes the situation with Acrobat software. Some of the keys also work with other viewers, but the results may differ from viewer to viewer, so you need to check.

Perhaps the most important key is `pdfpagemode` with which you can control the initial viewing layout. Possible values are `UseNone`, `UseThumbs`, `UseOutlines` (i.e., show bookmarks), `FullScreen`, `UseOC` (when using overlay layers¹), and `UseAttachments`.


Normally the document window title shows the file name displayed, but if you prefer to see its title, then add the key `pdfdisplaydoctitle`. The title should be set with `pdftitle` for this; using only the command `\title` is not enough.

By default Acrobat starts out with both a menu bar and a tool bar (or pane) open. Their settings are controlled through the keys `pdfmenubar` and `pdftoolbar`. Especially the latter takes up a lot of space, so I prefer to turn it off by setting its key to `false`.

Pages can be presented either as single pages or two pages side by side, and one can flip them or ask for continuous scrolling. This is controlled through the key `pdfpagelayout` that accepts six different values: `SinglePage` (flip pages when pressing down or up keys), `OneColumn` (single pages with scrolling), `TwoPageRight` (two pages with odd pages on the right), and `TwoColumnRight` (ditto with scrolling).

Note that Acrobat does not look at the logical page number but simply uses the physical one to determine odd and even. It therefore also offers `TwoPageLeft` and `TwoColumnLeft`, but neither helps if your pages are not continuous. In such a case you really have to add empty pages into your document so that it is displayed correctly.

By default the first physical page of PDF file is shown. To specify a different starting page, use the key `pdfstartpage`. Again, if your logical pages are specially numbered, you may have to count to determine the right physical page number to

 A simple-minded way to determine recto and verso pages

¹For example with the help of the `ocgx2` package by Alexander Grahn.

use as a value. With individual links that open PDF documents, you can also specify a starting page with the key `page` in the optional argument to `\href`.

If you open PDF documents through `\href` links, then Acrobat replaces the current document with the new one, which is often not desired. With the global boolean key `pdfnewwindow`, you can specify that a new window should be used instead in all such cases. Alternatively, you can do this on individual links in the optional argument to `\href`.

It is also possible to add transition options. They typically have an effect only if you view the PDF in full-screen mode and add animations between page switches like pages flying into the screen or dissolving into the background.

`\DocumentMetadata`
required! 

```
\hypersetup{pdfpagetransition={style=Glitter,duration=2,
                                direction=180}}
```

Other miscellaneous features

For Adobe Acrobat viewer software the `hyperref` package offers some special support for accessing the program menus through the command `\Acrobatmenu`. It allows you to define clickable areas that act as if you have selected the corresponding menu. A huge number of menu items are supported (see the package documentation), but probably only a few of them are likely to be useful.

```
\Acrobatmenu{FullScreen}{F} \Acrobatmenu{FitWidth}{W}
\Acrobatmenu{NextPage}{R}   \Acrobatmenu{PrevPage}{L}
```

This places “F”, “W”, “L”, and “R” onto the page, and if you click them, the Acrobat menu action is carried out, e.g., your document changes size or advances to the next page, etc. This can be helpful occasionally, but if you know the corresponding keyboard shortcuts, it does not gain you that much. Also note that the clickable area is only as big as the glyph(s) in the second argument, so if you try to make them inconspicuous, there is not much to click unless you use gray or even white. The border color around the link area can be set with key `menubordercolor` or, if the link text is colored, with `menucolor`.

The package also offers a useful set of commands to build PDF or HTML forms with fields, check boxes, radio buttons, etc. If you are interested in that kind of functionality, consult the package documentation for details.

As mentioned in the beginning, the package offers more than one hundred keys to adjust its behavior in certain situations of which we covered only the most important ones in this section. If you require some feature that appears not to be possible, study the extensive package documentation — it may well exist after all.

2.5 Document source management

In the final section of this chapter we discuss tools that help you archiving your documents as well as reliably exchanging them with others, e.g., journal publishers.

We start with environments that hold the contents of a file, which is then extracted when the document is processed, allowing you to combine several files in one document. We then look at ways to gather information on “used files” for archival purposes. This is followed by looking at two programs that take such information to produce an archive with all relevant files included: `bundledoc`, which saves only the text and package files used and produces fairly small archives, and `mkjobtexmf`, which does a more thorough job and also includes fonts and similar binary data. Which of them is more suitable depends on your use case.

Finally, we briefly discuss the `latexrelease` package, which offers you a way to roll back your \LaTeX installation to an earlier date without the need to install a previous release explicitly. There are limits to what it can achieve, but it is a good addition to \LaTeX ’s insurance that your documents can be processed successfully without any changes in the output for long periods of time.

2.5.1 Combining several files

When sending a \LaTeX document to another person, you may have to send local or uncommon package files (e.g., your private modifications to some packages) along with the source. In such cases it is often helpful if you can put all the information required to process the document into a single file.

```
\begin{filecontents}[option-list]{file name} ... \end{filecontents}
```

For this purpose, \LaTeX provides the environment `filecontents`. This environment takes one mandatory argument, the name of a file¹; its body consists of the contents of this file. The `\begin` and `\end` tags should be placed on lines of their own in the source. In particular, there should be no material following them, or you will get \LaTeX errors.

If \LaTeX encounters such an environment, it tries to find the mentioned file name. If it cannot, it writes the body of the environment verbatim into a file in the current directory and inform you about this action. Conversely, if a file with the given name was found by \LaTeX , it informs you that it has ignored this instance of the `filecontents` environment because the file is already present on the file system.

The *option-list* argument allows you modify this behavior. If you specify `nosearch`, then only the current directory is searched for the file, not the whole \TeX tree. This is useful if you want to write, for example, a local version of a configuration file, such as `graphics.cfg`, which would otherwise not appear in your local directory. If you specify `force` (or `overwrite`), then the file is always written, even if it already exists in the current directory or somewhere in the \TeX installation tree. Use this option with caution because you can clobber files this way by mistake.² You can

¹If no extension is specified, the actual external file name is the one \LaTeX would read if you used this name as an argument to `\input`, i.e., adding the extension `.tex`.

²The environment refuses to write to `\jobname.tex` — disaster is assured if you overwrite your own input file. However, other files might be equally important!

silence any warnings from the `force` key by also specifying `nowarn`, in which case warnings are only written to the `.log` file.

By default the generated file gets a few comment lines (using `%` as a comment character) added to the top to announce that this file was written by a `filecontents` environment:

```
%% LaTeX2e file 'foo.txt'
%% generated by the 'filecontents' environment
%% from source 'test' on 2022/04/22.
```

If this is not appropriate — for example, if the file is not a L^AT_EX file — use the option `noheader` in which case these extra lines are not produced. Alternatively, you can use the `filecontents*` environment instead, which is just a short way to set this option.

In older L^AT_EX formats the content of such a file was restricted to ASCII characters — with other characters all bet were off. These days essentially any Unicode character should be admissible.

If you use `filecontents` to ship all files necessary to process your document in a single master file, then it is best to place the environment(s) at the very top of the file so that they are written out before they are needed when processing the document.

There are, however, also use cases where one would want to write files somewhere inside the document body. For example, if you have some material that is reused several times, you could write it to a file and then load that file via `\input` wherever necessary. Other use cases are packages that require their input in external files (`ltxtable` is an example). In that case you can keep your data where it belongs in your source and write it to a file prior to using it. If you are using `filecontents` for such purposes, it is best to add the `force` option, because otherwise you are likely to be puzzled by the fact that you change your data and nothing happens in your document (because the file was already written out in a previous run).

2.5.2 Document archival information

For archival purposes or sharing or collaborating on documents, it is often important to record (and usually collect) all files needed for processing a document. This needs their correct versions to faithfully re-create the document at a later stage or in a different place. For this a number of tools and programs are available.

As a simple solution L^AT_EX already offers the command `\listfiles`, which records all files that are opened with `\documentclass`, `\usepackage`, `\include`, `\input`,¹ `\includegraphics`, etc. Suppose you process the following document

```
\documentclass[12pt]{article} \usepackage{lmodern}
\listfiles
\begin{document} Hello, world! \end{document}
```

¹Files opened with `\input` are recorded only if you use the recommended syntax with a braced argument. The primitive plain T_EX syntax that delimits the file name with spaces is not supported!

then as a result your transcript file will show the following list of files, possibly with different version numbers if your installation is older or younger:

```
*File List*
article.cls      2021/02/12 v1.4n Standard LaTeX document class
size12.clo      2021/02/12 v1.4n Standard LaTeX file (size option)
lmodern.sty     2015/05/01 v1.6.1 Latin Modern Fonts
ot1lmr.fd       2015/05/01 v1.6.1 Font defs for Latin Modern
l3backend-pdftex.def  2021-05-07 L3 backend support: PDF output (pdfTeX)
*****
```

As you can see, this shows the document class, the class option file, the package used, and one font definition file for Latin Modern, but it is clearly missing everything else related to font usage. Thus, if the fonts used in your document do not exist elsewhere (or in a different version), then the results of processing your document may differ without a way to determine the cause.

Nevertheless, it goes a long way towards resolving issues when collaborating with others or experiencing a problem that others do not seem to have: good advice in such cases is to add `\listfiles` to the document and compare the results on different installations. In many cases this already pinpoints the reason for different behavior.

2.5.3 snapshot, bundledoc — Document archival and verification

The snapshot package by Michael Downes (1958–2003) uses the same approach as `\listfiles` for collecting file information about a document but presents it in a way that it can be automatically verified at a later stage or on a different installation. This is particularly useful when collaborating or when one wants to archive documents and record this information as part of the document itself.

To enable it, you have to place the package in the first line of your document using `\RequirePackage[error]{snapshot}` even before the `\documentclass`. Without any further options to the package, this will then write a file with the extension `.dep` (for dependencies) containing the following lines if applied to our example document:

```
\RequireVersions{
  *{application}{pdfTeX} {0000/00/00 v1.40.22}
  *{format} {LaTeX2e} {2021-06-01 v2.e}
  *{package}{snapshot} {2020/06/17 v2.14}
  *{class} {article} {2021/02/12 v1.4n}
  *{file} {size12.clo} {2021/02/12 v1.4n}
  *{package}{lmodern} {2015/05/01 v1.6.1}
  *{file} {ot1lmr.fd} {2015/05/01 v1.6.1}
  *{file} {l3backend-pdftex.def}{2021-05-07 v3}
}
```

Up to this point this is not much difference than when using `\listfiles`, except that the information is placed into a separate file and slightly more structured. However,

as a next step you can copy the content of this file into your document directly after loading the package, which makes it the information of record for this document. From now on this data is checked at each run, and if any differences are found, they raise a warning or an error.

For example, assume that you collaborate with some people on writing the “Hello World” short story and their T_EX installation has an obsolete Latin Modern package somewhere in their texmf tree, then they will see the following error message

```
! Package snapshot Error:
  Required version 2009/10/30 v1.6 of lmodern.sty and
  provided version 2008/12/01 v1.5 do not match.
```

if they attempt to run the document. If you prefer to generate just warnings instead of errors, use the option `warning` (or no option). It is also possible to restrict file information verification just to dates, versions, or major version numbers by using one of the options `date`, `version`, or `major-version` — if the latter is applied in our example, there would be no error because the major version is 1 for both files.

The `.dep` file produced by `snapshot` can also be used to produce an archive with all or some of the files it lists, by using the `bundledoc` program by Scott Pakin. This is particularly useful if you want to send your document with all the necessary files to somebody else and do not want to worry about missing anything relevant. For example, journals often request all source files in addition to the camera-ready PDF. In that case running

```
bundledoc --verbose --localonly --include=(myfile).pdf (myfile).dep
```

does the trick, and you get an archive file¹ containing the final PDF and everything that is required and not part of the main T_EX installation. Of course, it requires an up-to-date `.dep` file; i.e., you have to include the `snapshot` package as described above and process your document with it.

Alternatively, or in addition, you can use `--exclude=string` to exclude all files whose names contain that string, and with `--include`, you can explicitly request additional files otherwise not included to be added to the archive like we did above. For example, you may want to include your bibliography databases (and not just the resulting `.bbl` files used by the document), which can be achieved with `--include="*.bib"`. Both options can be used as often as necessary. The `--verbose` option, as used above, gives some progress information.

Without any of the options above, `bundledoc` includes all files listed in the `.dep` file, which is more suitable for archival purposes. But do not forget that some files important for the final results (such as font files) are not included. The advantage is that the archive is noticeably smaller in size compared to those produced by

¹The exact type of archive depends on your operating system; on Windows it is typically a `.zip`, on Unix or macOS a `.tar.gz` file. The exact behavior can be controlled through configuration files.

mkjobtexmf discussed in the next section. Usually a workable approach is to additionally archive the yearly T_EX Live distributions as fonts change less often. However, for 100% accurate results it might be required to archive all files for a given project using mkjobtexmf.

By default, `bundledoc` flattens the directory structure and places all files in the archive next to each other. With `--keepdirs` the original structure is preserved.

With the option `--config` you can select a configuration file, for example, `--config=miktex.cfg` for .zip archives on MiK_TE_X. Another interesting one is `texlive-unix-arlatex.cfg`, which generates a single L^AT_EX file including all other files through `filecontents` environments. How to define your own configuration file is described in the documentation where you also find details on a few other options that may be useful in some cases.

You can omit the extensions `.dep` and `.cfg` for the dependency and the config file, so on MiK_TE_X, for example, we could write

```
bundledoc --config=miktex --localonly --include=(myfile).pdf (myfile)
```

to prepare a .zip file for a journal submission.

2.5.4 mkjobtexmf — Providing a minimal T_EX file tree

To find out exactly which files are used by a T_EX engine when processing a document, most modern engines offer the command-line option `-recorder`. If it is used, then a file with the extension `.fls` is produced that contains information on all files that the engine opened for reading or writing, one per line. With our “Hello World” example this amounts to 28 lines, and after removing the duplicates (L^AT_EX opens most files twice for reading), the following 16 remain, among them various configuration and font files and the format file:

```
INPUT /usr/local/texlive/2023/texmf-dist/fonts/enc/dvips/lm/lm-rm.enc
INPUT /usr/local/texlive/2023/texmf-dist/fonts/map/fontname/texfonts.map
INPUT /usr/local/texlive/2023/texmf-dist/fonts/tfm/public/cm/cmr12.tfm
INPUT /usr/local/texlive/2023/texmf-dist/fonts/tfm/public/lm/rm-lmr12.tfm
INPUT /usr/local/texlive/2023/texmf-dist/fonts/type1/public/lm/lmr12.pfb
INPUT /usr/local/texlive/2023/texmf-dist/tex/latex/base/article.cls
INPUT /usr/local/texlive/2023/texmf-dist/tex/latex/base/size12.clo
INPUT /usr/local/texlive/2023/texmf-dist/tex/latex/lm/lmodern.sty
INPUT /usr/local/texlive/2023/texmf-dist/tex/latex/lm/ot1lmr.fd
INPUT /usr/local/texlive/2023/texmf-dist/tex/latex/snapshot/snapshot.sty
INPUT /usr/local/texlive/2023/texmf-dist/web2c/texmf.cnf
INPUT /usr/local/texlive/2023/texmf-var/fonts/map/pdftex/updmap/pdftex.map
INPUT /usr/local/texlive/2023/texmf-var/web2c/pdftex/pdflatex.fmt
INPUT /usr/local/texlive/2023/texmf.cnf
INPUT myfile.aux
INPUT myfile.tex
```

For 100% accuracy, all of them, except the `.aux` file, should be archived, and doing this with the `--include` option of `bundledoc` would be rather cumbersome. This is

where the `mkjobtexmf` program by Heiko Oberdiek comes into play. If you execute

```
mkjobtexmf --verbose --copy --jobname myfile # without extension
```

then L^AT_EX is run (using the `-recorder` option) on the file `myfile.tex`. The resulting `.fls` file is examined, and all files in the above listing are then copied into the directory `myfile.mjt` using a standard setup of `texmf` subdirectories. For archival, all that remains is to zip up this directory and store it in a safe place. Note that the `--copy` or `--force-copy` is essential for this to work: without it `mkjobtexmf` adds links to the files, not physical copies.¹ The `--copy` does not overwrite existing files in the target `texmf`, whereas `--force-copy` does. The latter is useful because it means that updates are properly accounted for if you run the program repeatedly and want to make sure that the latest versions are inside the tree.²

Always mandatory is the option `--jobname` to specify the file to run and the default destination directory. The `--verbose` displays information about what `mkjobtexmf` does and is sometimes helpful.

If you prefer a flat structure with all files directly in the `myfile.mjt` directory, specify the option `--flat`. If your document should be processed with one of the Unicode engines, you can specify this too, e.g., by using `--cmd-tex lualatex` for Lua_LT_EX.

There are a number of further options to tweak the program behavior including defining the destination directory (`--destdir`), the L^AT_EX file name to process if it has an extension different from `.tex` (`--texname`), and several others. `--help` produces a concise but useful reference.

Existing files are
never changed in
the destination
directory

If you use `mkjobtexmf` for archival purposes as described above, then you should be aware of one important aspect in the program behavior. It always only adds *new* material to its destination directory but never deletes from it nor does it replace any existing link to a file with a copy of the file or vice versa. If the purpose is to speed up processing, that is fine, but for archiving the final result, it might mean that the archive contains files no longer used or contains links where it should contain copies because you forgot to specify `--copy` on the first invocation. Even worse, it may not contain the latest version of your source files if they have changed since the first time the program was used.

2.5.5 The rollback concept for L^AT_EX and individual packages

Keeping your L^AT_EX installation up-to-date and using the latest packages is usually a good approach because that means you get the latest corrections and feature updates. The L^AT_EX universe is well-known for its unparalleled backward compatibility:

¹A `texmf` tree containing only links does not take up much space, but speeds up the processing of a document because it contains only the files necessary for the document to run.

²I used this during the production of this book to store all packages used in the book in a source control system (with history). That enabled me to keep track of changes that happened to the packages while writing the book.

reprocessing documents decades old with a modern \LaTeX is normally not a problem, and very seldom requires adjustments by the user.

However, there are cases where packages change their interfaces in incompatible ways or where you have worked around a problem and now that the problem is solved, your workaround no longer works.

For situations like this, \LaTeX introduced in 2015 a rollback concept for the \LaTeX kernel as well as for document classes and packages, allowing the \LaTeX maintainers to make corrections to the software while continuing to maintain backward compatibility to the highest degree. With its help you can explicitly ask \LaTeX to revert its code to a version that was current on a specific date, and the software tries its best to undo changes to match this state.

To request a kernel rollback to its state at a given *date*, you use the `latexrelease` package by the \LaTeX Project Team. For example,

```
\RequirePackage[2016-01-01]{latexrelease}
```

would result in undoing all kernel modifications (corrections or extensions) released between January 1, 2016, and the current date.¹ Undoing means reinstalling the definitions current at the requested date and normally also removing new commands from \TeX 's memory so that `\newcommand` and similar declarations do not fall over because a name is already declared.

This mechanism helps in correctly processing older documents that contain workarounds for issues with an older kernel and issues that have since been fixed in a way that would make the old document fail, or produce different output, when processed with the newer, fixed kernel.

If necessary, the `latexrelease` package also allows for rolling the kernel forward without installing a new format. For example, if your current installation is dated 2016-04-01 but you have a document that requires a kernel with date 2018-01-01, then this can be achieved by starting it with

```
\RequirePackage[latest]{latexrelease}
```

provided you have a version of the `latexrelease` package that knows about the kernel changes between the date of your kernel and the requested date. Getting this version of the package is simple as the latest version can always be downloaded from the Comprehensive \TeX Archive Network (CTAN). Thus, you are able to process your document correctly, even when updating your complete installation is not advisable or is impossible for one or another reason.²

¹There are a few exceptions because some modifications are kept: for example, the ability to accept date strings in ISO format (i.e., 2016-01-01) in addition to the older \LaTeX convention (i.e., 2016/01/01). These are not rolled back because removing such a feature would result in unnecessary failures.

²For example, this might help when you work on Overleaf (an online \LaTeX portal). At the time of writing this book, Overleaf was about a year behind the current \LaTeX release. Of course, in that case you may also have to upload individual packages into your account, if they have specific new features that you want to use.

Typical scenarios

A typical example, for which such a rollback functionality would have provided a major benefit (and will do for packages in the future), is the `caption` package by Axel Sommerfeldt. This package started out under the name of `caption` with a certain user interface. Over time it became clear that there were some deficiencies in the user interface; to rectify these without making older documents fail, Axel introduced `caption2`. At a later point the syntax of that package itself was superseded, resulting in `caption3`, and then that got renamed back to `caption`. So now older documents using `caption` will fail, while documents from the intermediate period require `caption2` (which is listed as superseded on CTAN but is still distributed in the major distributions). So users accustomed to copying their document preamble from one document to the next are probably still continuing to use it without noticing that they are in fact using a version with defective and limited interfaces.

Another example would be the `fixltx2e` package that for many years contained fixes to the L^AT_EX kernel. In 2015 these were integrated into the kernel so that today this package is an empty shell, only telling the user that it is no longer needed. However, if you process an old document (from before 2015) using rollback, and that document loads `fixltx2e`, then of course fixes originally provided by this package (like the corrections to the floats algorithm) would get lost as they are now neither in the kernel nor in the “empty” `fixltx2e` package if that does not roll back as well — fortunately it does, so in reality it is not quite an empty shell.

A somewhat different example would be the `amsmath` package, which for nearly a decade did not see any corrections even though several problems have been found in it over the years. If such bugs finally get corrected, then that would affect many of the documents written since 2000, since their authors may have manually worked around one or another deficiency of the code. Of course, as with the `caption` package, one could introduce an `amsmath2`, `amsmath3`, ... package, but that puts the burden on the user to always select the latest version (instead of automatically using the latest version unless an earlier one is really needed).

The document-level interface

By default L^AT_EX automatically uses the current version of any class or package — and prior to offering the new rollback concept it always did that unless the package or class had its own scheme for providing versioning, either using alternative names or using hand-coded options that select a version.

Global rollback

With the new rollback concept all the user has to do (if they want a document processed with a specific version of the kernel and packages) is to add the `latexrelease` package at the beginning of the document and specify a desired date as the package option, e.g.,

```
\RequirePackage[2018-01-01]{latexrelease}
```

This rolls back the kernel to its state on that day (as described earlier), and for each package and the document class, it checks if there are alternate releases available and

selects the most appropriate release of that package or class in relation to the given date.

There is further fine-grain adjustment possible: both `\documentclass` as well as `\usepackage` have a second (less known) optional argument that up to now was used to allow the specification of a “minimal date”. For example, by declaring

Individual rollback

```
\usepackage[colaction]{multicol}[2018-01-01]
```

you specify that `multicol` is expected to be no older than the beginning of 2018. If only an older version is found, then processing such a document results in a warning message:

```
LaTeX Warning: You have requested, on input line 12, version
'2018-01-01' of package multicol, but only version
'2017/04/11 v1.8q multicolumn formatting (FMI)' is available.
```

The idea behind this approach is that packages seldom change syntax in an incompatible way, but more often add new features: with such a declaration you can indicate that you need a version that provides certain new features.

The new rollback concept now extends the use of this optional argument by letting you additionally supply a target date for the rollback. This is done by prefixing a date string with an equal sign. For example,

```
\usepackage{multicol}[=2017-06-01]
```

would request a release of `multicol` that corresponds to its version in June 2017.

So assuming that at some point in the future there will be a major rewrite of this package that changes the way columns are balanced, the above would request a fallback to what right now is the current version from 2017-04-11. The old use of this optional argument is still available because existence or absence of the `=` determines how the date is interpreted.

The same mechanism is available for document classes via the `\documentclass` declaration and for `\RequirePackage` if that is ever needed.

Specifying a rollback date is most appropriate if you want to ensure that the behavior of the processing engine (i.e., the kernel and all packages) corresponds to that specific date. In fact, once you are finished with editing a document, you can preserve it for posterity by adding this line at the top of your document:

 *Preparing your document for posterity*

```
\RequirePackage[today's-date]{latexrelease}
```

This would mean that it is processed a little more slowly (because the kernel may get rolled back and each package gets checked for alternate versions), but it would have the advantage that processing it a long time in the future will probably still work without the need to add that line later.

*Specifying a version
instead of a date*

However, in a case such as the caption package or, say, the longtable package, that might eventually see a major new release after several years, it would be nice to allow the specification of a “named” release instead of a date: for example, a user might want to explicitly use version 4 rather than 5 of longtable when these versions have incompatible syntax or produce different results.

This is also now possible if the developer declares “named” releases for a package or class: one can then request a named version simply by using this second optional argument with the “name” prefixed by an equal sign. For example, if there is a new version of longtable and the old (now current) version is labeled “v4”, then all that is necessary to select that old version is

```
\usepackage{longtable}[=v4]
```

Note that there is no need to know that the new version is dated 2018-04-01 (nor to request a date before that) to get the old version back.

The version “name” is an arbitrary string at the discretion of the package author — but note that it must not resemble a date specification; i.e., it must not contain hyphens or slashes, because these confuse the parsing routine.¹

*Erroneous
input may have
strange effects*



The user interface is fairly simple, and to keep the processing speed high, the syntax checking is therefore rather light and rather unforgiving if it finds unexpected data. Basically any string containing a hyphen or a slash triggers the date parsing, which then expects two hyphens (in case of an ISO date) or two slashes (otherwise) and other than these separators, only digits. If it does find anything else, chances are that you get a “Missing \begin{document}” error or, perhaps even more puzzling, a strange selection being made. For example, 2011/02 may mean to you February 2011, but for the parsing routine it is some day in the year 20 A.D. That is, it gets converted to the single number 201102 so that when this number is compared numerically to, say, 20000101, it is the smaller number, i.e., earlier, even though the latter is the numerical representation of January 1, 2000. Bottom line: do not misspell your dates, and all is fine.

The package writer interface

The commands to set up the rollback functionality in packages and classes are described in Appendix A.6.1 on page –II 693; for more details on the concepts, see [137].

¹Of course, more sophisticated parsing could fix this, but we opted for a fast and simple parsing that scans for slashes or hyphens with no further analysis.

CHAPTER 3

Basic Formatting Tools — Paragraph Level

3.1 Shaping your paragraphs	120
3.2 Dealing with special characters	147
3.3 Generated or specially formatted text	154
3.4 Various ways of highlighting and quoting text.	177
3.5 Footnotes, endnotes, and marginals	204
3.6 Support for document development.	237

The way information is presented visually can influence, to a large extent, the message as it is understood by the reader. Therefore, it is important that you use the best possible tools available to convey the precise meaning of your words. It must, however, be emphasized that visual presentation forms should aid the reader in understanding the text and should not distract his or her attention. For this reason, visual consistency and uniform conventions for the visual clues are a must, and the way given structural elements are highlighted should be the same throughout a document. This constraint is most easily implemented by defining a specific command or environment for each document element that has to be treated specially and by grouping these commands and environments in a package file or in the document preamble. By using exclusively these commands, you can be sure of a consistent presentation form.

In this chapter we look at such tools, starting at the micro level; larger structures are covered in Chapter 4. The first section covers different aspects of paragraph formatting, such as producing large initial letters at the start of a paragraph, modifying paragraph justification, altering the vertical spacing between lines of a paragraph, and similar topics. This is followed by a look at handling special characters such as ellipses, dashes, underscores, or spaces.

In the third section we discuss generated or specially formatted text, i.e., counter values represented as ordinals or cardinals, fractions formatted for use in running text, and in particular the `acro` package for consistently managing acronyms and abbreviations. A special focus is given to scientific notation provided by the `siunitx` package, which forms the last and rather lengthy topic of this section.

The fourth section then covers various way of highlighting and quoting text. This includes a number of generally useful packages as well as some more specialized ones that are occasionally useful.

Section 3.5 deals with the different kind of “notes”, such as footnotes, marginal notes, and endnotes, and explains how they can be customized to conform to different styles, if necessary. In the final section we take a quick look at different helper packages for document development, e.g., how to add different kind of notes, copy-editing marks, or change bars to your documents.

3.1 Shaping your paragraphs

Paragraph
justification in \TeX
and \LaTeX

For formatting paragraphs \LaTeX deploys the algorithms already built into the \TeX program, which by default produce justified paragraphs. In other words, spaces between words are slightly stretched or shortened to produce lines of equal length. \TeX achieves this outcome with an algorithm that attempts to find an optimal solution for a whole paragraph, using the current settings of about 20 internal parameters. They include aspects such as trying to produce visually compatible lines, such that a tight line is not followed by one very loosely typeset, or considering several hyphens in a row as a sign of bad quality. The interactions between these parameters are very subtle, and even experts find it difficult to predict the results when tweaking them. Because the standard settings are suitable for nearly all applications, we describe only some of the parameters in this book. Appendix B.4.3 discusses how to trace the algorithm. If you are interested in delving further into the matter of automatic paragraph breaking, refer to *The \TeX book* [84, chap. 14], which describes the algorithm in great detail, or to the very interesting article by Michael Plass and Donald Knuth on the subject, which is reprinted in *Digital Typography* [99].

Downside
of global
optimization



The downside of the global optimizing approach of \TeX , which you will encounter sooner or later, is that making small changes, like correcting a typo near the end of a paragraph, can have drastic and surprising effects, as it might affect the line breaking of the whole paragraph. It is possible, and not even unlikely, that, for example, the *removal* of a word might actually result in making a paragraph one line *longer*.

This behavior can be very annoying if you are near the end of an important project (like the third edition of this book) and a correction wreaks havoc on your already manually adjusted page breaks. In such a situation it is best to place `\linebreak` or `\pagebreak` commands into strategic places to force \TeX to choose a solution that it would normally consider inferior. To be able to later get rid of such manual corrections you can easily define your own commands, such as

```
\newcommand\CElinebreak{\linebreak}
```


rather than using the standard \LaTeX commands directly. This helps you to distinguish

the layout adjustments for a particular version from other usages of the original commands—a method successfully used in the preparation of this book.

Interword spacing

The interword spacing in a justified paragraph (the white space between individual words) is controlled by several \TeX parameters—the most important ones are `\tolerance` and `\emergencystretch`. By setting them suitably for your document you can prevent most or all of the “Overfull box” messages without any manual line breaks. The `\tolerance` command is a means for setting how much the interword space in a paragraph is allowed to diverge from its optimum value.¹ This command is a \TeX (not \LaTeX) counter, and therefore it has an uncommon assignment syntax—for example, `\tolerance=500`. Lower values make \TeX try harder to stay near the optimum; higher values allow for loose typesetting. The default value is often 200. When \TeX is unable to stay in the given tolerance, you will find overfull boxes in your output (i.e., lines sticking out into the margin like this).

Enlarging the value of `\tolerance` means that \TeX also considers poorer but hopefully still acceptable line breaks, instead of turning the problem over to you for manual intervention. Sensible values are between 50 and 9999. Do not use 10000 or higher, because that allows \TeX to produce a single arbitrarily bad line (like this one)

 Careful with \TeX 's idea about infinitely bad

to keep the rest of the paragraph perfect. If you really need fully automated line breaking, it is better to set the length parameter `\emergencystretch` to a positive value. If \TeX cannot break a paragraph without producing overfull boxes (due to the setting of `\tolerance`) and `\emergencystretch` is positive, it adds this length as stretchable space to every line, thereby accepting line-breaking solutions that have been rejected before. You may get some underfull box messages because all the lines are now set in a loose measure, but this result will still look better than a single horrible line in the middle of an otherwise perfectly typeset paragraph.

\LaTeX has two predefined commands influencing the above parameters: `\fussy`, which is the default, and `\sloppy`, which allows for relatively bad lines. The `\sloppy` command is automatically applied by \LaTeX in some situations (e.g., when typesetting `\marginpar` arguments or `p` columns in a `tabular` environment) where perfect line breaking is seldom possible due to the narrow measure. It uses a `\tolerance` of 9999 together with an `\emergencystretch` of 3em.

Unjustified text

While the theory on producing high-quality justified text is well understood (even though surprisingly few typesetting systems other than \TeX use algorithms that can produce high quality other than by chance), the same cannot be said for the situation when unjustified text is being requested. This may sound strange at first hearing. After all, why should it be difficult to break a paragraph into lines of different length? The answer lies in the fact that we do not have quantifiable quality measures that allow us to easily determine whether a certain breaking is good or bad. In comparison to its

¹ The optimum is font defined; see Section 9.8.1 on page 745.

work with justified text, \TeX does a very poor job when asked to produce unjustified paragraphs. Thus, to obtain the highest quality we have to be prepared to help \TeX far more often by adding explicit line breaks in strategic places. A good introduction to the problems in this area is given in an article by Paul Stiff (1949–2011) [183].

The main type of unjustified text is the one in which lines are set flush left but are unjustified at the right. For this arrangement \LaTeX offers the environment `flushleft`. It typesets all text in its scope “flush left” by adding very stretchable white space at the right of each line; that is, it sets the internal parameter `\rightskip` to `0pt plus 1fil`. This setting often produces very ragged-looking paragraphs because it makes all lines equally good independent of the amount of text they contain. In addition, hyphenation is essentially disabled because a hyphen adds to the “badness” of a line and, because there is nothing to counteract it, \TeX ’s paragraph-breaking algorithm normally chooses line breaks that avoid hyphenated words.

“The \LaTeX document preparation system is a special version of Donald Knuth’s \TeX program. \TeX is a sophisticated program designed to produce high-quality typesetting, especially for mathematical text.”

```
\begin{flushleft}
‘‘The \LaTeX{} document preparation system is
a special version of Donald Knuth’s \TeX{}
program. \TeX{} is a sophisticated program
designed to produce high-quality typesetting,
especially for mathematical text.’’
\end{flushleft}
```

3-1-1

In summary, \LaTeX ’s `flushleft` environment is not particularly well suited to continuous unjustified text, which should vary at the right-hand boundary only to a certain extent and where appropriate should use hyphenation (see `ragged2e` in the next section for alternatives). Nevertheless, it can be useful to place individual objects, like a graphic, flush left to the margin, especially because this environment adds space above and below itself in the same way as list environments do.

Another important restriction is the fact that the settings chosen by this environment have no universal effect, because some environments (e.g., `minipage` or `tabular`) and commands (e.g., `\parbox`, `\footnote`, and `\caption`) restore the alignment of paragraphs to full justification. That is, they set the `\rightskip` length parameter to `0pt` and thus cancel the stretchable space at the right line endings. A way to automatically deal with this problem is provided by the package `ragged2e`.


Other ways of typesetting paragraphs are flush right and centered, with the `flushright` and `center` environments, respectively. In these cases the line breaks are usually indicated with the `\\` command, whereas for ragged-right text (the `flushleft` environment discussed above) you can let \LaTeX do the line breaking itself (if you are happy with the resulting quality).

The three environments discussed in this section work by changing declarations that control how \TeX typesets paragraphs. These declarations are also available as \LaTeX commands, as shown in the following table of correspondence:

<i>environment:</i>	<code>center</code>	<code>flushleft</code>	<code>flushright</code>
<i>command:</i>	<code>\centering</code>	<code>\raggedright</code>	<code>\raggedleft</code>

The commands neither start a new paragraph nor add vertical space, unlike the corresponding environments. Hence, the commands can be used inside other environments and inside a `\parbox`, in particular, to control the alignment in `p` columns of an `array` or `tabular` environment. Note, however, that if they are used in the last column of a `tabular` or `array` environment, the `\\` is no longer available to denote the end of a row. Instead, the command `\tabularnewline` can be used for this purpose (see also Section 6.2.2).

It is also important to realize that the command forms always apply to whole paragraphs, even if used in the middle of a paragraph. \TeX uses the setting active at the *end* of a paragraph to decide how to justify the text. This means that if using, for example, `\centering` inside a group, you have to ensure that the paragraph ends within that group, otherwise your request is ignored or partially ignored.

 *End of paragraphs matter!*

3.1.1 ragged2e — Improving unjustified text

Above we discussed the deficiencies of \LaTeX 's `flushleft` and `flushright` environments if used for normal text. The package `ragged2e`, written by Martin Schröder and now maintained by Marei Peischl, sets out to provide alternatives that do not produce such extreme raggedness. This venture is not quite as simple as it sounds, because it is not enough to set `\rightskip` to something like `0pt plus 2em`. Notwithstanding the fact that this would result in \TeX trying hard to keep the line endings within the `2em` boundary, there remains a subtle problem: by default, the interword space is also stretchable for most fonts. Thus, if `\rightskip` has only finite stretchability, \TeX distributes excess space equally to all spaces. As a result, the interword spaces have different width, depending on the amount of material in the line. The solution is to redefine the interword space so that it no longer can stretch or shrink by specifying a suitable (font-dependent) value for `\spaceskip`. This internal \TeX parameter, if nonzero, represents the current interword space, overwriting the default that is defined by the current font.

By default, the package does not modify the standard \LaTeX commands and environments discussed in the previous section, but instead defines its own using the same names except that some letters are uppercased.¹ The new environments and commands are given in the following correspondence table:

<i>environment:</i>	<code>Center</code>	<code>FlushLeft</code>	<code>FlushRight</code>
<i>command:</i>	<code>\Centering</code>	<code>\RaggedRight</code>	<code>\RaggedLeft</code>

They differ from their counterparts of the previous section not only in the fact that they try to produce less ragged output, but also in their attempt to provide additional flexibility by easily letting you change most of their typesetting aspects.

The available parameters and their default values are shown in Table 3.1 on the following page. They are used as values for `\parindent`, `\leftskip`, `\rightskip`, and `\parfillskip`, whenever one of the corresponding `ragged2e` commands or

The default values

¹This is actually against standard naming conventions. In most packages, mixed-case commands indicate interface commands to be used by designers in class files or in the preamble, but not commands to be used inside documents.

Parameter	Default	Parameter	Default
<code>\RaggedLeftParindent</code>	0pt	<code>\RaggedLeftLeftskip</code>	0pt plus 2em
<code>\RaggedLeftRightskip</code>	0pt	<code>\RaggedLeftParfillskip</code>	0pt
<code>\CenteringParindent</code>	0pt	<code>\CenteringLeftskip</code>	0pt plus 2em
<code>\CenteringRightskip</code>	0pt plus 2em	<code>\CenteringParfillskip</code>	0pt
<code>\RaggedRightParindent</code>	0pt	<code>\RaggedRightLeftskip</code>	0pt
<code>\RaggedRightRightskip</code>	0pt plus 2em	<code>\RaggedRightParfillskip</code>	0pt plus 1fil
<code>\JustifyingParindent</code>	1em	<code>\JustifyingParfillskip</code>	0pt plus 1fil

Table 3.1: Parameters used by `ragged2e`

environments is called. Using `em` values in the defaults (see Table 3.1) means that special care is needed when loading the package, because the `em` is turned into a real dimension at this point! The package should therefore be loaded *after* the body font and size have been established — for example, after font packages have been loaded.

Instead of using the defaults listed in Table 3.1, one can instruct the package to initially mimic the original \LaTeX settings by using the option `originalparameters` and then changing the parameter values as desired afterwards.

To set a whole document unjustified, you can specify `document` as an option to the `ragged2e` package. For the purpose of justifying individual paragraphs in such a document the package offers the command `\justifying` and the environment `justify`. Thus, to produce a document with a moderate amount of raggedness and paragraphs indented by 12pt, you could use a setting like the one in the following example (compare it to Example 3-1-1 on page 122):

Unjustified setting as the default

“The \LaTeX document preparation system is a special version of Donald Knuth’s \TeX program. \TeX is a sophisticated program designed to produce high-quality typesetting, especially for mathematical text.”

```
\usepackage[document]{ragged2e}
\setlength\RaggedRightRightskip{0pt plus 1cm}
\setlength\RaggedRightParindent{12pt}
“‘The \LaTeX{} document preparation system is
a special version of Donald Knuth’s \TeX{}
program. \TeX{} is a sophisticated program
designed to produce high-quality typesetting,
especially for mathematical text.’”
```

3-1-2

Unjustified settings in narrow columns

In places with narrow measures (e.g., `\marginpars`, `\parboxes`, `minipage` environments, or `p`-columns of tabular environments), the justified setting usually produces inferior results. With the option `raggedrightboxes`, paragraphs in such places are automatically typeset using `\RaggedRight`. If necessary, `\justifying` can be used to force a justified paragraph in individual cases.

Spurious underfull box warnings

There is, however, one problem that you should be aware of if you use the command `\RaggedLeft` or `\Centering` with very little text (i.e., less than a single line): you may get strange “Underfull box” warnings such as

```
Underfull \hbox (badness 10000) in paragraph at lines 25--25
[]\T1/ptm/m/n/10 ragged left text
Underfull \hbox (badness 5893) in paragraph at lines 26--27
[]\T1/ptm/m/n/10 centered text
```

even though the result looks (and is) correct. For example, the above warnings have been generated during the processing of the next example:

		<code>\usepackage{ragged2e}</code>
ragged right text		<code>\RaggedRight ragged right text \par</code>
	ragged left text	<code>\RaggedLeft ragged left text \par</code>
	centered text	<code>\Centering centered text</code>

3-1-3

The reason is that with `ragged2e` there is only very limited flexibility in each line compared to `\raggedleft` or `\centering` where the white space on one or both sides can stretch arbitrarily. `\RaggedRight` on the other hand is usually fine, because there we still have a fully stretchable `\parfillskip` at the end of the paragraph.

Thus, while it is tempting to overload the standard \TeX definitions with the new commands (using the package option `newcommands`) to avoid the need to typeset the somewhat tedious mixed-case names, it cannot really be recommended. At least `\centering` is very often used to center a single object such as a graphic in a figure environment, and each such case would then result in a spurious warning.

*Overloading the
original commands
not recommended*

3.1.2 nolbreaks — Preventing line breaks in text fragments

To prevent a line break at a space inside a paragraph \TeX offers `~` denoting an unbreakable space that you can use instead of an ordinary one, e.g., `A.~Einstein` to ensure that the initial and surname are not split apart. If you (additionally) want to ensure that a word is not hyphenated, you can put it into an `\mbox`, e.g., `A.~\mbox{Einstein}`.

However, to keep several words together, it is not a good idea to place them together with the spaces between them into a single `\mbox`, because inside a box a space has always its nominal width and does not react to the justification of the line, which means that you can end up with noticeably uneven spacing.¹ For high quality it is therefore necessary to `\mbox` all words individually and place a `~` between each of them — which is fairly cumbersome. To simplify this task Donald Arseneau has written the small package `nolbreaks` that offers a single command.

¹ Exemplified in this paragraph by boxing “it is not a good idea” in the first line.

```
\nolbreaks*{text}
```

The *text* does not break across lines, but spaces inside still participate in paragraph justification as expected. If you use the starred form, then the line before the unbreakable text is allowed to run short (like ragged-right) as shown below. You can also load the package with the option `ragged` in which case `\nolbreaks` behaves like its starred form.

However, to keep several words together, it is not a good idea to place them together with the spaces between them into a box; use `\nolbreaks` instead.

```
\usepackage{nolbreaks} \sloppy
```

```
However, to keep several \nolbreaks*{words together,}
it is not a good idea to place them together
with the spaces between them into \nolbreaks{a box};
use \verb=\nolbreaks= instead.
```

3-1-4

The command does not work in all circumstances, e.g., you cannot have verbatim material in its argument, and spaces hidden inside braces or commands can still create breakpoints, but in most situations it offers a simple and readable method for fine-tuning your text. Note that you may need a higher `\tolerance` or `\sloppy` if you add many unbreakable chunks to your paragraphs.

3.1.3 microtype — Enhancing justified text

As mentioned before, \TeX uses an algorithm for line breaking that attempts to globally optimize the paragraphs according to a set of parameters weighing different (often conflicting) goals, such as unevenness in the white space distribution, incompatible lines (with respect to word space size), length of the paragraph, number of consecutive hyphens, etc., against each other.

There are, however, a number of further aspects that improve the paragraph quality not taken into account by the original \TeX algorithm. Support for them is due to the work of Hàn Thế Thành who developed `pdf \TeX` , which is now the standard \TeX engine,¹ and thus these improvements are available to everybody [62, 63, 65].

Already Donald Knuth discussed the use of “hanging punctuations” as an exercise in the *\TeX book* [84, p. 394f] and gave the following example:

“What is hanging punctuation?” asked Alice, with a puzzled frown. ‘Well, y’know, actually,’ answered Bill, ‘I’d rather demonstrate it than explain it.’ “Oh, now I see. Commas, periods, and quotes are allowed to stick out into the margins, if they occur next to a line break.” ‘Yeah, I guess.’ “Really! But why do all your remarks have single quotes, while mine are double?” ‘I haven’t the foggiest; it’s weird. Ask the author of this crazy book.’

3-1-5

*Optical alignment
a.k.a. protrusion
feature*

As you can see, all punctuation marks and quotation characters are placed outside the text body into the margin. This is a special version of a general principle of optical alignment: to achieve optimal vertical alignment of the text at the margins,

¹The features discussed in this section are also (with minor variations) available in the Unicode engines $X_{\mathcal{T}}\TeX$ and $\text{Lua}\TeX$ and can thus be used with any modern \TeX engine.

it is necessary to take the glyph shapes into account and allow some glyphs to protrude slightly into the margin because otherwise the line would appear to be slightly indented — hanging punctuation is just an extreme variant of this principle. How much to protrude depends on the glyph shape and the amount of whiteness it produces. It thus depends on the font being used and may need adjustments accordingly for optimal results. However, even if you do not have specially tailored values for the fonts used in your document, you achieve noticeable improvements by applying a set of default values based on “typical” glyph forms.

A second type of improvement introduced with pdf \TeX was in the incorporation of the *hz*-algorithm named after its inventor Hermann Zapf (1918–2015). He realized that (certain) letter shapes can be slightly expanded or compressed without being noticeable to the reader and that this extra flexibility in the text can be used to improve justification. For example, instead of just enlarging the word space (possibly beyond acceptable limits), one can slightly widen most letters in a line, thereby achieving a much more consistent gray value of the whole paragraph. In fact, the additional flexibility introduced this way may lead to different set of line breaks that would otherwise not be possible. This can then avoid overfull lines that would be otherwise produced by \TeX ’s algorithm if it could not satisfy all requirements posed by the line-breaking parameter settings.

*The hz algorithm
a.k.a. expansion
feature*

Both features and configuration possibilities to tailor them are made available through the `microtype` package¹ by Robert Schlicht. It has been used with excellent results throughout this book and is one of the standard packages the author loads in the preamble of nearly every document.

Three other micro-typographical features are supported but not activated by default (because applying them does not always lead to improvements). These are automatic letterspacing of SMALL CAPITALS and possibly other fonts (discussed in Section 3.4.6), extra kerning around individual characters, and interword spacing adjustments based on the character before the space (kind of an extension to the `\spacefactor` concept of \TeX). The features are enabled with the options `tracking`, `kerning`, and `spacing`, respectively. Tracking can be used with pdf \TeX and Lua \TeX , while the other two features are available only with pdf \TeX to date.

*Tracking, kerning,
and spacing feature*

Package options

In many cases it is fully sufficient to simply load the package with a `\usepackage` declaration (without any option) in the preamble and let it apply its magic behind the scenes using its default configuration. It then automatically applies character protrusion and (if possible) font expansion.

For the latter the engine has to be either pdf \TeX or Lua \TeX , you have to use only scalable outline fonts (i.e., no bitmap fonts generated from METAFONT sources²), and the engine must be set to generate Portable Document Format (PDF) and not Device Independent File Format (DVI). For details of what is possible in DVI mode, see

¹We discuss most aspects of the package here; its letterspacing features are covered in Section 3.4.6.

²Bitmap fonts usually produce a fatal error; see page –II 735. There are ways to work with them, but the fonts need to be specially tailored for this.

the manual [179]. Saying it differently, the package applies as many micro-typographic improvements as can be expected to work correctly given the circumstances.

*Turning them on
(or off)*

It does, however, offer a number of key/value options to globally adjust the behavior and as we see later, also methods to tailor the behavior depending on fonts, font sets, and the context inside the document. The options `protrusion` and `expansion` can be used to change or turn on or off the respective feature by giving the value `true` (default), `false`, or `compatibility`. The latter restricts the features to act only on single lines after the line-breaking algorithm has acted. This ensures that the line breaking with or without microtype is identical, but at the same time it limits the positive effects that the package can offer and is therefore useful only in special situations.

One can also specify a *font set name* as a value, in which case only fonts belonging to this set use the feature. For details on this advanced usage, consult the microtype manual [179].

Protrusion control

The option `factor` can be used to tailor the protrusion feature, and it expects an integer value between 0 (no protrusion) and 1000 (full protrusion). For example, specifying a value of 500 means that the currently defined protrusion for every character is halved. To showcase the results let's first repeat Example 3-1-5 on page 126 with a `factor` of 0 (which is equivalent to not using protrusion at all):

“What is hanging punctuation?” asked Alice, with a puzzled frown. ‘Well, y’know, actually,’ answered Bill, ‘I’d rather demonstrate it than explain it.’ “Oh, now I see. Commas, periods, and quotes are allowed to stick out into the margins, if they occur next

to a line break.” ‘Yeah, I guess.’ “Really! But why do all your remarks have single quotes, while mine are double?” ‘I haven’t the foggiest; it’s weird. Ask the author of this crazy book.’

3-1-6

You can nicely observe the different line breaks that we get with just the normal T_EX algorithm. Now repeat this but with a `factor` of 500, in which case the punctuation and quote characters stick out somewhat into the margins.

“What is hanging punctuation?” asked Alice, with a puzzled frown. ‘Well, y’know, actually,’ answered Bill, ‘I’d rather demonstrate it than explain it.’ “Oh, now I see. Commas, periods, and quotes are allowed to stick out into the

margins, if they occur next to a line break.” ‘Yeah, I guess.’ “Really! But why do all your remarks have single quotes, while mine are double?” ‘I haven’t the foggiest; it’s weird. Ask the author of this crazy book.’

3-1-7

The line breaks are now identical to Example 3-1-5 even though we use a smaller amount of protrusion. Note that the protrusion feature does not generate more flexibility for the paragraph breaking (in contrast to the `expansion` feature). It only alters the line breaks because characters at the margins appear unconditionally smaller than without the feature turned on and thus change the attractiveness of individual breakpoints so that T_EX may decide to choose a different set.

Also note that in the examples above protrusion was only specified for the punctuation and quote characters to implement “hanging punctuation”. For proper optical alignment, one would have to specify protrusion for many more characters. As a showcase for optical alignment, you can look at any paragraph in this book (except

for the examples) where many characters stick out to a small degree into the margin to give the impression of vertical alignment at both sides.

To control expansion, a few more options are available. The options `stretch` and `shrink` define how much fonts are allowed to be expanded or compressed. They expect an integer value that is multiplied by $\frac{1}{1000}$ of the character width. Thus, to allow a maximum of 1.5% expansion you would specify `stretch=15`. The default value for both is 20, and if you specify only `stretch`, then its value is also inherited by `shrink`.

Expansion control

As the next example shows, you should be conservative when allowing fonts to stretch or shrink. The idea is to improve the typographic quality by producing paragraphs with more uniform grayness and fewer hyphenated lines by offering the line-breaking algorithm more choices. With most fonts a variation range of $\pm 2\%$ yields reasonable results, but already above 3% you may notice the stems getting bigger or thinner, which can be distracting. Furthermore, some shapes are somewhat distorted when only stretched horizontally, and above a certain point this may become noticeable and thus reduce, rather than enhance, the quality.

Stretching or shrinking text too much is a bad idea!	-15%
Stretching or shrinking text too much is a bad idea!	-5%
Stretching or shrinking text too much is a bad idea!	-2%
Stretching or shrinking text too much is a bad idea!	(natural)
Stretching or shrinking text too much is a bad idea!	2%
Stretching or shrinking text too much is a bad idea!	5%
Stretching or shrinking text too much is a bad idea!	15%

3-1-8

To lessen the impact of distorted shapes, microtype offers the option `selected` in which case such shapes are expanded or compressed at a smaller rate than others. This may allow slightly higher overall limits, but on the other hand one has to realize that it also means that characters next to each other may stretch at different rates and thus show different stem widths. In our example, the characters “trix!” are fully expanded, while all others are expanded only by 70%. Whether or not this is then really an improvement is probably a matter of taste.

Stretching or shrinking text too much is a bad idea!	-3%
Stretching or shrinking text too much is a bad idea!	-2%
Stretching or shrinking text too much is a bad idea!	(natural)
Stretching or shrinking text too much is a bad idea!	2%
Stretching or shrinking text too much is a bad idea!	3%
Stretching or shrinking text too much is a bad idea!	5%
Stretching or shrinking text too much is a bad idea!	15%

3-1-9

For best results with expansion you need to use scalable fonts (which is fortunately not a problem any longer), and it is advisable to generate PDF output, though neither is an absolute must. If need be, it is possible to use a DVI-based workflow, and

*Miscellaneous
options*

even bitmap fonts can be prepared for the task, but it requires a more complicated setup and specially tailored font support files; see the manual [179] for details.

There are a few other options that can become handy once in a while. Among them is `activate`, which is simply a shorthand for setting both `protrusion` and `expansion` to the same value. Then there is `verbose`, which outputs extra information into the transcript file (useful for debugging) or, if given the value `errors`, stops if it thinks it encounters a questionable situation. Once you have investigated all warnings, you can also give it the value `silent`.

Specifying the option `babel` directs `microtype` to adjust the typesetting to the language(s) used in the document. This feature exists for only a few selected languages so far.

The package supports the option `disable` that disables *all* processing if given. As a result, processing is much faster when `microtype` does nothing, but then line and page breaks are likely to change.¹

By default `microtype` loads its configuration from the file `microtype.cfg`. You can bypass this by using the option `config` and specify a different configuration file (without the extension `.cfg`). This way you can maintain and use your own configuration setup if you do not like the default values.

All options except for `config` can alternatively be used in the argument to `\microtypesetup` to define or alter the desired setup in the preamble. Furthermore, this command can also be used inside the document body to temporarily disable or enable any of the micro-typography features, e.g.,

```
\microtypesetup{expansion=false}
```

but otherwise changing the features is no longer possible.

Configuring the machinery

As already indicated, the micro-typography features supported by `microtype` all require tailoring to the individual fonts used to achieve best results. While that sounds no doubt daunting, the good news is that the package already comes equipped with ready-made protrusion settings for more than a dozen common font families, and for most others the default profile is likely to give you good results too. For expansion the default of $\pm 2\%$ is also likely to work universally, and if not, it is easy to change for a document. In summary, the general usage information provided above should be sufficient for most real-life situations.

We therefore give only a few examples for setup commands to enable you to skim through the configuration files and grasp what they are setting up. This may not be enough to embark on the somewhat tedious task of providing a fully hand-tailored setup for a new font family, but if you are one of the few people² interested in that, all necessary information can be found in [179].

¹In older versions of the package this option was called `draft`, which was rather unfortunate, because specifying `draft` on the document class made `microtype` stop working. You can restore the previous behavior, if you really want to, by specifying `disable=ifdraft`.

²Rest assured that Robert would be happy to hear from you that you have worked on the integration of another font family.

`\SetProtrusion[key/value list]{set of fonts}{protrusion settings}`

The `\SetProtrusion` declaration lets you define *protrusion settings* for an arbitrary number of characters for a given *set of fonts*.

The *protrusion settings* consists of *character={integer-tuple}* where the *integer-tuple* defines the protrusion for left and right margin for the *character*. Zero or no value means no protrusion, and 1000 denotes full protrusion. The *character* can be given as a UTF-8 character, a \LaTeX command, and in a few other ways. For example

```
A = {50,50}, \AE = {50, }, : = { ,500}, - = {400,500}
```

lets “A” protrude by 5% on both sides and “Æ” by 5% on the left only. Both the colon and hyphen protrude with half of their width into the right margin, and on the left the hyphen also protrudes with 40% of its width. If you specify a base character such as “A”, then microtype knows that there are several other characters, e.g., “À, Á, Â, Ã, Ä, Å, Æ, Å”, that should inherit the setting, and it does that automatically¹ for you.

There are many ways to specify the *set of fonts*, but very often it is enough to specify the supported encoding(s) and the font family name (in New Font Selection Scheme (NFSS) convention); for further details, see [179, §4].

In the optional argument you can specify a number of key values: with *name* you can give your setting a name, which is useful when reading the output from the *verbose* option. More importantly, this allows you to refer to such a setting in a later declaration with a *load* key, thereby extending or modifying it for special situations.

For example, the main protrusion settings for Computer Modern fonts are named `cmr-default`; additions specific to T1 encoding are named `cmr-T1` (loading `cmr-default` first). And because Latin Modern fonts are very similar to Computer Modern, the protrusion declaration for that family is then simply this:

```
\SetProtrusion [ name = lmr-T1, load = cmr-T1 ]
{ encoding = {T1,LY1}, family = lmr }
{ \textquotedblleft = {300,400}, \textquotedblright = {300,400} }
```

That is, it loads `cmr-T1`, which in turn loads `cmr-default` and then makes two changes. All of this applies to any font in the font family `lmr` in either T1 or LY1 encoding (but not in OT1 or other encodings).

If you like the look and feel of hanging punctuation, here is how Example 3-1-5 from page 126 was produced using Latin Modern fonts:

```
\usepackage{lmodern}
\usepackage[expansion=false,verbose]{microtype}
\LoadMicrotypeFile{cmr}
```

¹Of course, if ever needed, that is customizable too, using `\CharacterInheritance`. With pdf \TeX the standard settings are most likely adequate for all fonts. However, with the Unicode engines it is more likely that font-specific adjustments are needed, simply because OpenType fonts have many more characters (or miss some) so that a single default is not sufficient. Details on that is given in [179].

```
\SetProtrusion [ name = lmr-hangingp ]
  { encoding = {T1,OT1}, family = lmr }
  { . = { ,1000}, {,} = { ,1000}, ; = { ,1000}, : = { ,1000},
    \textquotedblleft = {1000, }, \textquotedblright = { ,1000},
    \textquoteleft = {1000, }, \textquoteright = { ,1000} }
```

This example is interesting on several accounts: we explicitly disabled expansion to reproduce the same line breaks as in the `TeXbook`. With expansion, `TeX` would have found a “better” or at least different alternative. The protrusion settings as such hold no surprises: each of the punctuation and quote characters fully protrudes into the respective margin. You may also want to do the same to the hyphen character. This was not done, because again it would result in different line breaks compared to the `TeXbook`.

*Nothing happens
when making config
changes*

The surprising line is the second one — without it nothing happens. The problem is that when `microtype` encounters a font family for the first time in a document, it attempts to load a configuration file named `mt-⟨family⟩.cfg` and applies the declarations it contains. If that file also contains a declaration for the *set of fonts* that we try to customize, it overwrites our carefully drafted setup in the preamble of the document. The solution here is to load that configuration file (using `\LoadMicrotypeFile`) before we make our declarations so that our settings overwrite the default and not the other way around.

A slight complication is that some font families share such configuration files. In our case we have to load the one for the `cmr` font family, because that also contains the settings for `lmr`. The basic advice here is to use the `verbose` option if something does not seem to work, because that tells you what `microtype` loads for which font and what gets overwritten and with that information it is easy to make the right adjustments.

*Supporting the
development visually*

If you develop your own protrusion set for a font family or if you want to verify that the currently used one is sufficient and adequate, you can use the companion package `microtype-show` that offers a number of check and test commands, such as `\ShowProtrusion` or `\ShowCharacterInheritance`. These commands produce test output by displaying the current settings both numerically as well as visually. This is a great development and debugging facility; for details see the `microtype` package documentation.

`\SetExpansion [key/value list] {set of fonts} {expansion settings}`

Expansion is normally applied uniformly to all characters, and the necessary settings (if any) are done through the package options `stretch` and `shrink`. If, however, the option `selected` was used, then certain characters expand more than others, and the settings for this can be done through `\SetExpansion`.

The *expansion settings* are a list with elements of the form *character=factor* where *factor* is an integer between 0 (no expansion) and 1000 (full expansion).

The *set of fonts* argument limits the declaration to a group of fonts in the same way as was already discussed for `\SetProtrusion`. For example, the default settings

(defined in `microtype.cfg`) used for all fonts in the major text encodings look as follows:

```
\SetExpansion [ name = default ] { encoding = {OT1,OT4,QX,T1,LY1} }
{ A = 500, a = 700, \AE = 500, \ae = 700, B = 700, b = 700,
  C = 700, c = 700, D = 500, d = 700, E = 700, e = 700,
  F = 700, G = 500, g = 700, H = 700, h = 700,
  K = 700, k = 700, M = 700, m = 700, N = 700, n = 700,
  O = 500, o = 700, \OE = 500, \oe = 700, P = 700, p = 700,
  Q = 500, q = 700, R = 700, S = 700, s = 700,
  U = 700, u = 700, W = 700, w = 700, Z = 700, z = 700,
  2 = 700, 3 = 700, 6 = 700, 8 = 700, 9 = 700 }
```

In the *key/value list* argument you can again use `name` and `load`, though with expansion, these keys are less likely to be needed. The keys `stretch` and `shrink` overwrite the global defaults or the values given on the package level. One application of this is when you provide special settings for named contexts as we see below.

Providing context

By default all declarations made with `\SetProtrusion` and friends apply globally throughout the document. There is, however, the possibility of specifying that they should be activated only in a specific context. This is done by using the key `context` in the *key/value list* argument and assigning it a *context* name. In that case the declaration is activated only if we are within that context.

```
\microtypecontext{context spec}
\begin{microtypecontext}{context spec} ... \end{microtypecontext}
\textmicrotypecontext{context spec}{text}
```

You can inform `microtype` that it is in a specific context in three different ways: with `\microtypecontext` a new context is started that continues to the end of the current scope, or you can use the environment form of that, or you can use the command `\textmicrotypecontext` in which the context applies to the *text* argument. The *context spec* is a comma-separated list of assignments of the form *feature* = *context* where *feature* is `protrusion`, `expansion`, `tracking`, `Kerning`, or `spacing` and *context* is the name you assigned in the declaration. To reset the context (if not automatically reverted through scoping) you can provide an empty *context name*.

Specifying tracking, extra kerning, and adjusted spacing

The features described below cover some concepts that are not activated by default but need to be explicitly enabled through options, i.e., `tracking`, `kerning`, and `spacing`, respectively. Furthermore, the kerning and spacing features are available only with pdf \TeX , while tracking can also be used with the Lua \TeX engine. An interesting article on the background of these features can be found in [64].

```
\SetTracking[key/value list]{set of fonts}{tracking amount}
\SetExtraKerning[key/value list]{set of fonts}{kerning settings}
\SetExtraSpacing[key/value list]{set of fonts}{spacing settings}
```

The `\SetTracking` declaration allows you to specify extra spaces between all characters of a font or a set of fonts in order to achieve letter spacing. This is discussed further in Section 3.4.6 on page 191.

The `\SetExtraKerning` declaration provides a way to specify for individual characters some additional space to be added on either side of the glyph. This is useful with languages that have typographical traditions requiring such spacing around some characters (typically punctuations). In French, for example, an extra space is required in front of “:”, “;”, “?”, and “!”, and with a declaration such as

```
\SetExtraKerning[name=french-default, context=french, unit=space]
  {encoding = {OT1,T1,LY1}}
  { : = {1000,}, ; = {500,}, ! = {500,}, ? = {500,} }
```

this can be automatically provided without the need to alter the input sources. Note the use of the `context` key, which limits the declaration to a context named `french` so that you can restrict its usage as needed.

To communicate with `babel` and install different contexts per language, `microtype` offers the declaration `\DeclareMicrotypeBabelHook`. In the next example we use this to specify special kerning for French text. The `\SetExtraKerning` declaration is already in that form part of the `microtype` default settings, so we can make use of it without the need to repeat it in the example.

<pre>FRENCH : Je ne parle pas français ! ENGLISH: I speak English!</pre>	<pre>\usepackage[english,french]{babel} \usepackage[kerning]{microtype} % \SetExtraKerning ... as above \DeclareMicrotypeBabelHook{french}{kerning=french} FRENCH: Je ne parle pas français! \par \selectlanguage{english} ENGLISH: I speak English!</pre>
--	--

3-1-10

Finally, with the `\SetExtraSpacing` declaration you get granular control over the width and behavior of interword spaces. For each font \TeX maintains three dimensions (called `\fontdimens`: see page 745) that describe the default width of a space, the amount by which that space can stretch, and the amount it can shrink when doing paragraph justification. In addition, there is a “space factor” table where for each character a factor is specified by which these font dimensions are multiplied when that character is directly in front of a space. This is the reason why spaces after punctuation characters appear larger (when `\nonfrenchspacing` is in force — the default) and appear uniform (when `\frenchspacing` is specified).

The problem with \TeX ’s approach of a space factor is that you not only get larger or smaller spaces with the help of these factors; in addition, they are also applied to the stretching and shrinking components and so in spaced-out lines spaces after punctuation characters may become excessively large.

The pdf \TeX engine extends the \TeX functionality by providing individual controls on a per-character and per-font basis for all three dimensions, and the `\SetExtraSpacing` declaration offers an interface to that. For example,

```
\SetExtraSpacing[unit=space]
  {font={*/**/*/*/*}}{ . = {2000,0,0} }
```

would double the space after a period without altering its stretch and shrink component. The mechanism can also be used to implement optical spacing, that is, slightly altering the standard width of a space depending on the shape of the preceding character. The default configuration files for `microtype` provide some settings for this. However, this is of course semi-optimal given that only a character to the left of the space can influence its width.

For further details on all three features refer to the package manual [179] and study the default configuration files that provide standard settings from which you may want to start if you make changes.

Disabling selected ligatures

Using ligatures, e.g., “ffi” instead of “ffi”, usually improves the appearance, and the fact that \LaTeX can produce them automatically (if available in the font) is normally a good thing. There are occasions where you want to prevent this from happening, e.g., in compound words like “Auflage” instead of “Auflage”, (because it is a special “Lage” not a “Flage”), but these are rare and need to be handled on an individual basis. The `babel` package offers some support for this; see Example 13-3-7 on page 311. However, there are also situations where one wants to disable ligatures (or some ligatures) altogether and for this `microtype` provides `\DisableLigatures`.

```
\DisableLigatures[start characters]{set of fonts}
```

With the *set of fonts* argument one specifies for which fonts ligatures should be suppressed and with the optional *start characters* argument, it is possible to restrict it to only a subset of ligatures. For example, Latin Modern Typewriter has ligatures for “--” becoming a single “-” and “<<” and “>>” generating “«” and “»”, respectively. To prevent this you could write

```
\DisableLigatures[-,<,>]{family = lmtt}
```

Note that for technical reasons you can specify only the ligature start character, thus by specifying, for example, `f`, you disable all ligatures starting with “f”.

Some special considerations when using `microtype`

As mentioned before it is usually just enough to load `microtype` in the preamble without any further adjustments to the document body. There are, however, a few cases to watch out for, and it might pay to temporarily turn off some or all of the package features or guide them in difficult situations.

*Being pedantic
about protrusion*

Protrusion, for example, works automatically in normal paragraphs, but in certain situations \LaTeX does not consider the text whose boundary requires vertical alignment (and thus protrusion) as being at the margin, because there is some intervening material. For instance, the bullet in an `itemize` is seen by \LaTeX as being part of the line, while for a human reader the text of that item is what needs visual alignment. Thus, without help, the first character on that line would not protrude, while the first character on the next line would.¹

<code>\leftprotrusion{text}</code>	<code>\rightprotrusion{text}</code>
<code>\leftprotrusion</code>	<code>\noptrusion</code>

In case protrusion is not done automatically or not done correctly, you can force or prevent it with these commands. `\leftprotrusion` and `\rightprotrusion` add a protrusion correction to the left or right of *text*, respectively. You can use also `\leftprotrusion` without an argument, in which case it scans the input for text characters, and if it finds one (which may be a ligature), it applies protrusion to this character. The version without argument is slightly less efficient, but it has the advantage that you can use it in places where you do not know what text is following, e.g., at the beginning of a tabular cell:

```
\begin{tabular}{l>{\leftprotrusion}p{9cm}r}
```

This is unfortunately not possible for protrusion on the right: with the command `\rightprotrusion` you always have to use the argument.

There is also `\noptrusion` that prohibits protrusion in all cases. This command is already defined in the \LaTeX format so you can use it in command definitions whether or not `microtype` gets loaded in your document.

*Interaction with
TOC-like lists*

If protrusion is turned on while a table of contents is being typeset, then the page numbers at the right might protrude into the margin. That in turn makes the left-hand side of the page number column somewhat uneven, which may be noticeable if the numbers start with the same digits. The solution in such a case is to use `\microtypesetup` to set protrusion to false, i.e.,

```
\microtypesetup{protrusion=false}
\tableofcontents \listoftables \listoffigures
\microtypesetup{protrusion=true}
```

Standard \LaTeX avoids this problem, but with older document classes or special definitions for such lists it may still happen.

*Interaction with
verbatim*

Similarly, both protrusion and expansion are not really wanted if you typeset code material verbatim. After all, the idea of using a mono-spaced font in `verbatim` environments is to ensure that the characters appear perfectly aligned above each other, and either feature may spoil that alignment. Thus, setting both features (or `activate`

¹There is work under way to help \LaTeX to recognize this particular case automatically, so in the future the `itemize` case may work automatically. Currently, the `microtype` package attempts to patch `\item`, but this does not always work and may have to be prevented with the `nopatch` option.

as a shorthand) to `false` in front of such environments solves this problem. However, you may not want to litter your source with such declarations, especially if you have many such environments.¹

A possibly better alternative is to incorporate the setting into the environment itself using `\AddToHook` with a reasonably new \LaTeX as follows:

```
\AddToHook{env/verbatim/begin}{\microtypesetup{activate=false}}
```

There is no need to undo the setting because the environment forms a group so that at its end the change is automatically undone. If you are doing that, then you may want to also update `\tableofcontents` and friends in a similar way:

```
\AddToHook{cmd/tableofcontents/before}{\microtypesetup{protrusion=false}}
\AddToHook{cmd/tableofcontents/after}{\microtypesetup{protrusion=true}}
```

In this case we have to turn `microtype` on again after the command.

Another situation where expansion is often not really helpful is the case of typesetting unjustified text using the `ragged2e` package, discussed in Section 3.1.1 on page 123. Because this package tries to avoid extreme raggedness by making short lines appear “underfull” to the paragraph-breaking algorithm, `microtype` mistakenly tries to help by expanding the fonts in such lines. Thus, nearly all lines in unjustified paragraphs get expanded, which is not a desired state of affairs.

*Interaction with
ragged2e*

On the other hand, `microtype` is still useful if there is a need to slightly shrink a line to make it fit. Instead of completely disabling expansion when typesetting unjustified text, it is better to define a special context in which only shrinking but not stretching is allowed. This can be done as follows (and with the help of `\AddToHook` directly attached to `\RaggedRight` and similar commands):

```
\SetExpansion[ context = ragged, stretch = 0, shrink = 30 ]
{ encoding = {OT1,T1,TS1} } {}
\AddToHook{cmd/RaggedRight/before}{\microtypecontext{expansion=ragged}}
```

There is usually no need to restore the context in this case, because that happens automatically when the scope of `\RaggedRight` ends.

3.1.4 parskip — Adjusting the look and feel of paragraphs

In the majority of publications, paragraphs are typeset justified with the first line indented by some fixed amount and the last line run short based on the line-breaking results of the paragraph material. Because of the indentation at the left in the first line and the white space on the right in the last line, readers can easily identify the paragraphs without any further visual signals. Therefore, there is typically no extra vertical space added between paragraphs, which saves space. This type of layout is used by most \LaTeX document classes and is what you see on most pages in this book.

¹Verbatim-like environments done with `listings` or `fancyvrb` are not affected because due to their implementation, protrusion or expansion is automatically prevented.

However, this is by no means the only common layout. Quite often you see documents that do not use paragraph indentation, but instead add some vertical space between paragraphs to clearly distinguish them. Of course, one could have both indentation and some vertical spacing. One could also run all paragraphs together as a single block with just a special sign (e.g., ¶) separating the paragraphs — a style that was quite common in medieval manuscripts.¹

Inside the \TeX engine, this is handled by a number of parameters: the width of the paragraph indentation of the first line stored in \parindent , the white space at the end in \parfillskip , and the vertical space between paragraphs in \parskip .

Unfortunately, it is not enough to change their values to move from one type of layout to the other. Building paragraphs is one of the few core functionalities of \TeX , and thus many elements that technically are not text paragraphs are internally handled as if they are. For example, heading titles or lines in a table of contents and many more things are constructed as “single-line” paragraphs. If one would simply set \parskip to the height of a full line, all these elements would widely spread apart resulting in very ugly-looking documents.²

It is therefore best to use a document class that has been explicitly designed for this type of layout. For cases where that is not possible, there exists the small `parskip` package, which can be used with any document class and by default implements paragraphs without indentation and half a line of separation (while fixing “some” of the resulting side effects). The package dates back thirty years, originally written by Hubert Partl and later maintained by Robin Fairbairns (1947–2022) and others. In 2018 it got rewritten and once more extended by Frank Mittelbach.

In its simplest form all you need to do is to load the package, and that gives you zero indentation, gives some vertical paragraph separation, and handles headings, list environments, and TOCs fairly well. There still may be other display environments that may show too much vertical white space if their parameter settings are not adjusted.

As any dedicated reader can clearly see, the Ideal of practical reason is a representation of, as far as I know, the things in themselves; as I have shown elsewhere, the phenomena should only be used as a canon for our understanding.

The paralogisms of practical reason are what first give rise to the architectonic of practical reason.

As will easily be shown in the next section, reason would thereby be made to contradict, in view of these considerations, the Ideal of practical reason, yet the manifold depends on the phenomena.

```
\usepackage{kantlipsum}
\usepackage{multicol}
\raggedcolumns
\usepackage{parskip}
\begin{multicols}{2}
  \kant[1][1] % one sentence
  \kant[1][2] % paragraphs
  \kant[1][3]
\end{multicols}
```

3-1-11

¹This type of layout, while possible, is rather difficult to achieve with \TeX due to the fact that \TeX wants to globally optimize the line breaking. A document consisting of a single block of text is therefore not a very good idea and needs some special tricks not covered in this book.

²One can (correctly) argue that this is in fact a design flaw in \LaTeX and should be handled differently. While true, there is no way of changing this now without severe consequences to existing documents.

In the 2018 reimplementa­tion the package got a number of key/value options to allow for some configuration adjustments. With the option `skip` you can now define the amount of vertical separation, the default being `0.5\baselineskip` plus 2pt of stretch if the option is not given.

By default the `\parskip` is zero within `\tableofcontents` and similar lists, regardless of its value elsewhere. With the option `tocskip` it can be given a different value. If used without an explicit value, you get the same `\parskip` as elsewhere within these lists.

The option `indent` defines the width of the indentation of the first line. If it is not given, then all paragraphs are without indentation; if set to some value, that value is used; and if used without a value, the indentation from the document class is kept.

Finally, there is the option `parfill`. If you give it a dimension value, then \LaTeX tries to keep at least that width as white space in the last line. This may not be possible because of the paragraph content and other line-breaking parameter settings in which case you might see an “Overfull hbox” warning even though the text looks fine.¹ If specified without a value, then 30pt is used, and if not specified, then the line is allowed to completely fill up.

In the next example three of the options are applied. The `parfill` setting has no visible effect because all three paragraphs have more than 1em of white space in the last line. However, a change to 2em would affect the first paragraph, and requiring even 3em would also alter the third paragraph.

As any dedicated reader can clearly see, the Ideal of practical reason is a representation of, as far as I know, the things in themselves; as I have shown elsewhere, the phenomena should only be used as a canon for our understanding.

As will easily be shown in the next section, reason would thereby be made to contradict, in view of these considerations, the Ideal of practical reason, yet the manifold depends on the phenomena.

The paralogisms of practical reason are what first

```
\usepackage{kantlipsum}
\usepackage{multicol}
\raggedcolumns
\usepackage[indent=3em,
  parfill=1em,
  skip=\baselineskip]
{parskip}
\begin{multicols}{2}
  \kant[1][1] \kant[1][2]
  \kant[1][3]
\end{multicols}
```

3-1-12

3.1.5 setspace — Changing interline spacing

The `\baselineskip` command is \TeX ’s parameter for defining the *leading* (normal vertical distance) between consecutive baselines. Standard \LaTeX defines a leading approximately 20% larger than the design size of the font (see Section 9.7.1 on page 731). Because it is not recommended to change the setting of `\baselineskip` directly, $\LaTeX_{2\epsilon}$ provides the `\linespread` declaration to allow for changing

¹It is admittedly a somewhat dubious feature, but it would prevent paragraphs like the previous one (that ended at the right margin) or at least give a warning if adjustment turned out to be impossible.

`\baselineskip` at all sizes globally. After `\linespread{1.5}\selectfont`, the leading increases immediately.

The package `setspace` (by Geoffrey Tobin and others) provides commands and environments for typesetting with variable spacing (primarily double and one-and-a-half). Three commands — `\singlespacing`, `\onehalfspacing`, and `\doublespacing` — are available for use in the preamble to set the overall spacing for the document. Instead of the preamble commands, one can load the package with one of the options `singlespacing` (default), `onehalfspacing`, or `doublespacing` to achieve the same effect. Alternatively, a specific spacing value can be defined by placing a `\setstretch` command in the preamble. It takes the desired spacing factor as a mandatory argument. In the absence of any of the above commands, the default setting is single spacing.

To change the spacing inside a document, three environments — `singlespace`, `onehalfspace`, and `doublespace` — are provided. They set the spacing to single, one-and-a-half, and double spacing, respectively. These environments cannot be nested.

In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. Now the earth was unformed and void, and darkness was upon the face of the deep; and the spirit of God hovered over the face of the waters.

```
\usepackage{setspace}
\begin{doublespace}
  In the beginning God created the heaven
  and the earth. Now the earth was unformed
  and void, and darkness was upon the face
  of the deep; and the spirit of God
  hovered over the face of the waters.
\end{doublespace}
```

3-1-13

For any other spacing values the generic environment `spacing` should be used. Its mandatory parameter is the value of `\baselinestretch` for the text enclosed by the environment.

In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. Now the earth was unformed and void, and darkness was upon the face of the deep; and the spirit of God hovered over the face of the waters.

```
\usepackage{setspace}
\begin{spacing}{2.0}
  In the beginning God created the heaven
  and the earth. Now the earth was unformed
  and void, and darkness was upon the face
  of the deep; and the spirit of God
  hovered over the face of the waters.
\end{spacing}
```

3-1-14

In the above example the coefficient “2.0” produces a larger leading than the “double spacing” (`doublespace` environment) required for some publications. With the `spacing` environment the leading is effectively increased twice — once by `\baselineskip` (which \LaTeX already sets to about 20% above the font size) and a second time by setting `\baselinestretch`. “Double spacing” means that the vertical distance between baselines is about twice as large as the font size. Since `\baselinestretch` refers to the ratio between the desired distance and the

<i>spacing</i>	10pt	11pt	12pt
one and one-half	1.25	1.21	1.24
double	1.67	1.62	1.66

Table 3.2: Effective `\baselinestretch` values for different font sizes

`\baselineskip`, the values of `\baselinestretch` for different document base font sizes (and at two different optical spacings) can be calculated and are presented in Table 3.2.

If display formula environments are used in the document, then the spaces before and after such environments are also enlarged by the current stretch factor. This can be completely suppressed by using the package option `nodisplayskipstretch`. Alternatively one can specify an independent stretch factor for such display spaces by using `\setdisplayskipstretch`.

If the `caption` package is used (discussed in Section 7.4.1 on page 540), then captions do not change their spacing based on options given to `setspace`. Instead, you have to set the `caption key font` to either `onehalfspacing` or `doublespacing` or to `{stretch=<factor>}`.

3.1.6 lettrine — Dropping your capital

In certain types of publications you may find the first letter of some paragraphs being highlighted by means of an enlarged letter often dropped into the paragraph body (so that the paragraph text flows around it) and usually followed by the first phrase or sentence being typeset in a special font. Applications range from chapter openings in novels, or indications of new thoughts in the text, to merely decorative elements to produce lively pages in a magazine. This custom can be traced back to the early days of printing, when such initials were often hand-colored after the printing process was finished. It originates in the manuscripts of the Middle Ages; that is, it predates the invention of printing.

`\lettrine[key/value list]{initial}{text}`

The package `lettrine` written by Daniel Flipo lets you create such initials by providing the command `\lettrine`. In its simplest form it takes two arguments: the letter to become an initial and the follow-up text to be typeset in a special font, by default in `\scshape`.

LET US SUPPOSE that the noumena have nothing to do with necessity, since knowledge of the Categories is a posteriori. Hume tells ...

```
\usepackage{lettrine}
\lettrine{L}{et us suppose} that the noumena have
nothing to do with necessity, since knowledge of
the Categories is a posteriori. Hume tells \ldots
```

3-1-15

The font used for the initial is, by default, a larger size of the current text font. As an alternative, you can specify a special font family by redefining the command `\LettrineFontHook` using standard NFSS commands. Similarly, the font used for the text in the second argument can be modified by changing `\LettrineTextFont`. As demonstrated below, it is also possible to add color using these hooks:

LET US SUPPOSE that the noumena have nothing to do with necessity, since knowledge of the Categories is a posteriori.

```
\usepackage{lettrine,color,ragged2e}
\renewcommand\LettrineFontHook{\sffamily\bfseries\color{blue}}
\renewcommand\LettrineTextFont{\sffamily\scshape\color{blue}}
\RaggedRight
\lettrine[L]{et us suppose} that the noumena have nothing to do
with necessity, since knowledge of the Categories is a posteriori.
```

3-1-16

Many books on typography give recommendations about how to best set large initials with respect to surrounding text. For highest quality it is often necessary to manually adjust the placement depending on the shape of the initial. For example, it is often suggested that letters with a projecting left stem should overhang into the margin. The `\lettrine` command caters to this need by supporting an optional argument in which you can specify adjustments in the form of a comma-separated list of key/value pairs.

The size of the initial is calculated by default to have a height of two text lines (stored in `DefaultLines`); with the keyword `lines` you can change this value to a different number of lines. There is an exception: if you specify `lines=1`, the initial is still made two lines high, but instead of being dropped is placed onto the baseline of the first text line.

If you want a dropped initial that also extends above the first line of text, then use the keyword `loversize`. A value of `.2` would enlarge the initial by 20%. The default value for this keyword is stored in `\DefaultLoversize`. This keyword is also useful in conjunction with `lraise` (default 0 in `\DefaultLraise`). In the case of an initial with a large descender such as a “Q”, you may have to raise the initial to avoid it overprinting following lines. In that case `loversize` can be used to reduce the height so as to align the initial properly. Instead, or in addition, you can use the keyword `depth` (default 0 stored in `DefaultDepth`) to tell `lettrine` to extend the cutout by that many lines to leave room for the descender of the initial.

With the keyword `lhang` you specify how much the initial extends into the margin. The value is specified as a fraction — that is, between 0 and 1. Its document default is stored in `\DefaultLhang`.

QUALITY QUESTIONS create a quality life. Successful people ask better questions, and as a result, they get better answers.

```
\usepackage{tgpagella,lettrine,color}
\lettrine[lines=3,depth=1,loversize=0.4,
lraise=-0.05,lhang=.1]{\color{gray}{0.8}Q}
{uality questions}
create a quality life. Successful people ask better
questions, and as a result, they get better answers.
```

3-1-17

The distance between the initial and the following text in the first line is controlled by the dimension `\DefaultFindent` (default `0pt`) and can be overwritten using the keyword `findent`. The indentation of following lines is by default `0.5em` (stored in `\DefaultNindent`) but can be changed through the keyword `nindent`. If you want to specify a sloped indentation, you can use the keyword `slope`, which applies from the third line onward. Again, the default value can be changed via the dimension `\DefaultSlope`, though it seems questionable that you would ever want anything different than `0pt` because a slope is normally used only for letters like “A” or “V”.

To attach material to the left of the initial, such as some opening quote, you can use the keyword `ante`. It is the only keyword for which no command exists to set the default. In the next example we use it to add a quotation mark in a way that it overlaps with the space occupied by the initial. Note the extra braces around the value to hide the brackets.

...paragraphe précédent ...

« A PEINE ONT-ILS MIS le pied dans la ville en pleurant la mort de leur bienfaiteur, qu'ils sentent la terre trembler sous leurs pas; ... »

```
\usepackage{tgpagella,lettrine}
\usepackage[french]{babel}

\noindent \ldots paragraphe précédent \ldots
\lettrine[ante={\makebox[0pt][l]{\hspace{5pt}\og}},
  lines=4,slope=0.6em,findent=-1em,nindent=0.6em]{Å}
{ peine ont-ils mis} le pied dans la ville
en pleurant la mort de leur bienfaiteur, qu'ils
sentent la terre trembler sous leurs pas; \ldots \fg
```

3-1-18

The example above clearly demonstrates that the size calculation for the initial does not take accents into account, which is normally the desired behavior. It is nevertheless possible to manually adjust the size using `loversize`.

The exact font size to use for the initial is determined as follows: first the height of the cutout needed for the initial is calculated (based on the current key values for `lines`, `lraise`, and `loversize`). Then `lettrine` trial-typesets the text stored in `\LettrineTestString` (which by default holds the string `EFTZ`¹) using the font setup stored in `\LettrineFontHook`. It then scales the font for the initial such that the test string would exactly fit the cutout. You can locally change this test string using the key `refstring`. If used without a value, then the first mandatory argument to `\lettrine` is used as the string. This can be useful if the initials are very irregular in height and you therefore want the size calculation done based on the individual initial.

Calculating the exact initial size

If not raised or extended, then the top of the initial aligns with text from the second argument of `\lettrine`. More precisely it aligns with the height of a trial text stored in `\LettrineSecondText` typeset in `\LettrineTextFont` (as before that masks out any variations due to argument values). The default string is just an `x`, which makes sense if the second argument is typeset in `\scshape`. However, if you have changed `\LettrineTextFont`, that may not be any longer appropriate, and

¹ Some fonts apply optical corrections to letters like C, G, O, or Q, i.e., make them slightly higher than other capitals. They are therefore not included in the test string.

you may have to change this test string too. A possible alternative is to use the key `realheight`, which directs `\lettrine` to use the second mandatory argument as the test string.

As a result of this approach the font size used for the initial “A” is exactly the same as the one for “Ä” (as shown in Example 3-1-18), and because the latter is bigger, its accent sticks out above the cutout. In that case `lettrine` adds some extra vertical skip in front of the paragraph so that the initial does not bump into material from the previous line. If you also use the key `grid`, the package rounds up this extra space to a multiple of `\baselineskip` to stay in register. If the extra space needed is very small, it might be better to avoid it completely to keep the register, which is controlled through the key `novskip` (the default of 0.2pt is stored in `\DiscardVskip`).

Because the `\lettrine` command calculates the initial size to fit a certain number of lines, you need scalable fonts to obtain the best results. The examples in this book are typeset in Times and Helvetica by default, so we have no problems here. Later examples use Palatino, which is also a scalable Type 1 font. However, if you use a font that exists only in discrete sizes, the results may not be always satisfactory. For example, the default setup for Computer Modern would not work well because for historical reasons it uses discrete sizes even though it is now provided in scalable fonts. As an alternative you could use Latin Modern or the `fix-cm` package; see Section 9.5.1 on page 684.

Fonts with
discrete sizes are
a problem



IF YOUR INITIAL does not exist as a glyph in a font but as a graphic object (like this one taken from [74]), then you can use the keyword `image` to inform `lettrine` about this fact. It then attempts to load a graphic with the name of the initial (using `\includegraphics{initial}` from the `graphicx` package); e.g., in this paragraph it looked for a graphic named `I.png` or `I.pdf` or whatever your system supports as extensions. This graphic is then scaled to the right size and positioned according to any other keywords that you have supplied.


By modifying the default settings you can easily adapt the package to typeset initials the way you like. This can be done either in the preamble or in a file with the name `lettrine.cfg`, which is loaded if found.


Adjusting values for
individual initials

However, if there is a need to adjust many initials individually, you may want to record these settings for each character once and afterwards simply use `\lettrine` without an optional argument. This is in fact possible by providing a special configuration file containing lines of the form `\LettrineOptionsFor{initial}{key/value list}` for every initial that needs values different from the defaults. Officially this is supported only for the initials A to Z, but it does in fact work for (most) accented characters too. You then have to redefine `\DefaultOptionsFile` to contain the name of your option file, and that’s all that is needed. The `myinitials.cfg` file we use in the next example holds the following lines:

```
\LettrineOptionsFor{A}{grid,loversize=.33,slope=0.6em,
                        findent=-1em,nindent=0.6em}
\LettrineOptionsFor{I}{image,loversize=.1,lraise=-.05,
                        findent=1pt}
```


Individual initials can still have an optional argument overwriting or extending the configured values. In the next example we use that to add a left quote mark.

 IF YOUR INITIAL does not exist as a glyph in a font but as a graphic object (like this one) then you can use the keyword image ...

“ AS A RESULT font size used for the initial ‘A’ is exactly the same as the one for ‘Ä’ and as ...”

3-1-19

```
\usepackage{tgpagella,lettrine,graphicx}
\setcounter{DefaultLines}{3}
% content of file shown above
\renewcommand\DefaultOptionsFile{myinitials.cfg}
```

```
\lettrine{I}{f your initial} does not exist as a glyph
in a font but as a graphic object (like this one) then
you can use the keyword \texttt{image} \ldots
\lettrine[ante={\makebox[0pt][l]{\hspace{5pt}}‘}]{
  {A}{s a result} font size used for the initial ‘A’ is
  exactly the same as the one for ‘Ä’ and as \ldots ”
```


One problem to watch out for are initials near a page break. The package does not check for this, and if you are unlucky, the initial may overprint the foot line while the cutout partly or fully ends up on the top of the next page.

3.1.7 Alphabets for initials

If you hunt on the Internet, you find many fonts that are suitable for being used as initials, but it is not always easy to make them available for use with \LaTeX (at least not when using pdf \TeX).

As part of the \TeX distributions you find 23 such fonts, designed by Dieter Steffmann. They have been arranged for use with \LaTeX by Clea F. Rees, and all you have to do is to load a corresponding support package. Each of these packages defines two commands: a font switch (like \rmfamily) and a command with one argument to typeset in the font (like \texttrm), e.g., \Kramerfamily and \kramer .

Some of the fonts contain only uppercase letters, while others offer a variant alphabet in the lowercase character positions. For use with the *lettrine* package the font switches are convenient; if you prefer to use the glyphs directly, then the commands with an argument may be better. Both usages are shown in the next example, showing four of the fonts:

 s a well-spent day brings happy sleep,
so life well used brings happy death.
(Leonardo da Vinci)

   a b c    A B C
STARBURST

3-1-20

```
\usepackage{Typocaps,Kramer,Starburst,Rothdn,lettrine}
\renewcommand\LettrineFontHook{\Typocapsfamily}
\lettrine{A}{s} a well-spent day brings happy sleep, so
life well used brings happy death. (Leonardo da Vinci)
\par {\Rothdnfamily A B C a b c} \hfill
{\Kramerfamily A B C a b c} \par \starburst{STARBURST}
```

To get the list of all packages and command names together with some sample specimens for each font, refer to the documentation that can be accessed through *texdoc initials* on the command line.

3.1.8 magaz — Special handling of the first line

In magazine-type publications the first line of an introductory paragraph is often handled in a special way, either by using an initial letter (see Section 3.1.6) or by setting that line in a special font. A method for the latter is provided by Donald Arseneau with his package `magaz`. While this can be manually achieved with trial and error, the package offers a convenient way with the command `\FirstLine`.

```
\FirstLine{text}
```

It expects a single argument and typesets this argument partially or fully in a special font defined by `\FirstLineFont` (by default `\scshape`). More precisely, if the text when typeset occupies more than one line, then only its first line is handled specially; otherwise, all of the argument gets the special treatment.

The first line of this paragraph is typeset in boldface. The remainder is set in the normal body font.

Less material in the argument will be fully typeset in the special font. Note the placement and result of the `\noindent` command.

If placed in front it will get lost as you can see here.

```
\usepackage{magaz}
\renewcommand\FirstLineFont{\bfseries}
\FirstLine{The first line of this paragraph is
           typeset in boldface.}
The remainder is set in the normal body font.
```

```
\FirstLine{\noindent Less material} in the argument
will be fully typeset in the special font. Note the
placement and result of the \verb=\noindent= command.
```

```
\noindent\FirstLine{If placed in front it will get
lost} as you can see here.
```

3-1-21

The command should be used only at the beginning of a paragraph; elsewhere it might result in strange errors or weird output. Furthermore, the *text* should be simple ordinary text (not display environments, etc.) and not subject to changes when typeset several times. For example, a `\footnote` would not work because it increments and prints the footnote counter. For the same reason the `\FirstLineFont` should not change the hyphenation of the text (as `\ttfamily` or a language change typically do) because otherwise the internal trials would be done with incorrect assumptions. Also note that if you want to suppress the indentation, you need to place the `\noindent` inside the argument. The package documentation discusses a few other problematical cases.

In short, the method works well in standard cases, but if you have some complicated material, you are going to exceed its abilities. In that situation you can still revert to a manual trial and error solution and, once you have determined the point where the second line should start, write something like

```
\textbf{The first line\footnote{...} of this paragraph}\linebreak
is typeset in boldface. The remainder is set in ...
```

Of course, the moment you change your text, then you have to move the `\linebreak`.

3.1.9 fancypar — Fancy layouts for individual paragraphs

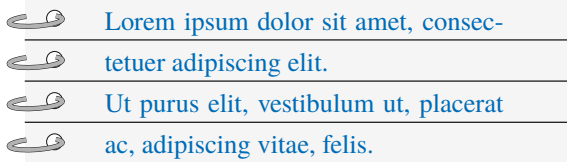
The `fancypar` package by Gonzalo Medina Arellano offers a number of decorative paragraph layouts for individual paragraphs that may be of interest in some types of documents.

`\NotebookPar [options] {simple text}` `\MarkedPar [options] {simple text}` ...

These are `\NotebookPar` (notebook style with spiral binding), `\MarkedPar` (a marker on each line, either left or right), and `\ZebraPar` (alternating backgrounds), as well as `\DashedPar` and `\UnderlinedPar`.

All of them expect a mandatory argument that can receive *simple text* (i.e., no display material such as lists, display formulas, etc.). It is also possible to supply key/value *options* to adjust the layout though that is normally done via options to the package or through `\fancyparsetup`.

Below we show two examples using a few key/value options to customize them to give you some impression of what is possible:



3-1-22

```
\usepackage{lipsum,fancypar}
\fancyparsetup{linecolor=green!20,
textcolor=blue,intercolor=black,
spiral=true,spiralcolor=red,
interheight=0.5pt }
\notebookpar{\lipsum[1][1]\par
\lipsum[1][2]}
```

With `\MarkedPar` one can define the marker and its placement (left or right):

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi.

```
← \usepackage{lipsum,fancypar}
← \fancyparsetup{mark=$\gets$}
```

→ Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus.

3-1-23

```
\MarkedPar{\lipsum[2][1]}
\MarkedPar[mark=$\to$,position=left]
{\lipsum[2][2-3]}
```

The package offers many other keys to adjust the layout of the other predefined styles. It is also possible to define your own type of layouts. For details consult the package documentation.

3.2 Dealing with special characters

In this section we deal with small text fragments and explain how they can be manipulated and highlighted in a consistent manner by giving them a visual appearance different from the one used for the main text.

We start by discussing ways to produce professional-looking marks of omission. This is followed by methods for typesetting various dashes, again a topic that has a variety of different conventions in different parts of the world. We then take a look at a package for using underscores in words without losing the ability to hyphenate,

something often needed when documenting computer code. Finally, we discuss how to define commands that take care of the space after them.

3.2.1 ellipsis, lips — Marks of omission

Omission marks are universally represented by three consecutive periods (also known as an *ellipsis*). Their spacing, however, depends on house style and typographic conventions, and significant differences are observed. In French, according to Hart [68] or *The Chicago Manual of Style* [40], “points de suspension” are set close together and immediately follow the preceding word with a space on the right:

C’est une chose... bien difficile.

In German, according to the *Duden* [48], “Auslassungspunkte” have space on the left *and* right unless they mark missing letters within a word or are followed by punctuation:

Du E... du! Scher dich zum ...!

Elsewhere, such as in British and American typography, the dots are sometimes set with full word spaces between them, and rather complex rules determine how to handle other punctuation marks at either end.

ℒ_{TeX} offers the command `\dots` (which is a shorthand for `\textellipsis` in normal text) to produce closely spaced omission marks. Unfortunately, the standard definition (inherited from plain T_{EX}) produces uneven spacing at the left and right — unsuitable to typeset some of the above examples properly. The extra thin space at the right of the ellipsis is correct in certain situations (e.g., when a punctuation character follows). If the ellipsis is followed by space, however, it looks distinctly odd and is best canceled as shown in the example below (though removing the space in the second instance brings the exclamation mark a bit too close).

	<code>\newcommand\lips{\dots\unkern}</code>
Compare the following:	Compare the following:\\
Du E... du! Scher dich zum ...!	Du E\dots\ du! Scher dich zum \dots!\\
Du E... du! Scher dich zum ...!	Du E\lips\ du! Scher dich zum \lips!

3-2-1

This problem is addressed in the package `ellipsis` written by Peter Heslin, which redefines the `\dots` command to look at the following character to decide whether to add a final separation. An extra space is added if the following character is listed in the command `\ellipsisispunctuation`, which defaults to “`,. : ; ! ?`”. When using some of the language support packages that make certain characters active, this list may have to be redeclared afterwards to enable the package to still recognize the characters.

If loaded with the option `xspace`, it also automatically issues an `\xspace` command at the end of the definition for `\dots` so that you get an normal word space based on the next character.

The spacing between the periods and the one possibly added after the ellipsis can be controlled through the command `\ellipsisgap`. To allow for automatic adjustments depending on the font size, use a font-dependent unit like `em` or a fraction of a `\fontdimen` (see page 745).

3-2-2

Compare the following:

Du E... du! Scher dich zum ...!

Du E... du! Scher dich zum ...!

Du E... du! Scher dich zum T...el!

```
\usepackage[xspace]{ellipsis}
```

Compare the following:\\

Du E\dots du! Scher dich zum \dots!\\

```
\renewcommand\ellipsisgap{1.0\fontdimen2\font}
```

Du E\dots du! Scher dich zum \dots!\\

```
\renewcommand\ellipsisgap{0.05em}
```

Du E\dots du! Scher dich zum T\midwordellipsis el!

For the special case when you need an ellipsis in the middle of a word (or for other reasons want a small space at either side), the package offers the command `\midwordellipsis` as shown above.

If the package is loaded with the option `mla` (Modern Language Association style), the ellipsis is automatically bracketed without any extra space after the final period. Finally, if one follows *The Chicago Manual of Style* [40], then an ellipsis should be set with full word spaces between the dots. This can be achieved by setting `\ellipsisgap` appropriately or by using the option `chicago`.

3-2-3

Compare the following:

Du E[...] du! Scher dich zum [...]!

Du E[...] du! Scher dich zum [...]!

Du E[...] du! Scher dich zum T...el!

```
\usepackage[mla,xspace]{ellipsis}
```

Compare the following:\\

Du E\dots du! Scher dich zum \dots!\\

```
\renewcommand\ellipsisgap{1.0\fontdimen2\font}
```

Du E\dots du! Scher dich zum \dots!\\

```
\renewcommand\ellipsisgap{0.05em}
```

Du E\dots du! Scher dich zum T\midwordellipsis el!

3.2.2 extdash and amsmath — Dashes in text

Standard \LaTeX knows about three different kinds of dashes for text: the normal hyphen (entered as `-`) for use in compound words; the somewhat longer en-dash (entered as `\textendash` or `--`) for indicating ranges, e.g., “pages 7–9”; and the even longer em-dash (entered as `\textemdash` or `---`) typically used to mark up a pause in speech or highlight a thought. \LaTeX now also supports the dashes when input as Unicode characters, which is helpful if you cut and paste text from other sources.¹

Typesetting conventions for dashes indicating thoughts vary; e.g., in English text you often find the em-dash without any space on either side, but in other texts you might find the shorter en-dash with word spaces on both sides. In traditional German and Russian typography a dash somewhere between an en- and em-dash is used, and often the spacing on both sides is smaller than a normal word space. Whatever the

¹However, in an editor the Unicode characters are nearly indistinguishable from a normal hyphen, which is why I prefer to always write them in \TeX -notation, e.g., `---` in my sources.

convention is that you follow, ensure that you do not mix the presentation to avoid confusing your readers.

There are a few problems to look out for when using hyphens or dashes as part of words or directly next to words. For one, \LaTeX will by default consider the place after the dash as a potential breakpoint during line breaking, which is usually but not always desirable. For example, you may not want to see “ p -adic” split like “ p -adic” across lines or even pages.

Even worse, a hyphen or dash prevents automatic hyphenation in the rest of the word, and the only potential breakpoint is the one after the dash. In languages with few compound words it may be acceptable to not hyphenate such words or to manually indicate other hyphenation points via \- . However, in languages with many compound words this leads to a lot of manual effort or inferior paragraph-breaking results.

To resolve such problems, you can use the `extdash` package by Alexander Rozhenko that defines the commands `\Hyphdash`, `\Endash`, and `\Emdash` that generate these dashes while allowing automatic hyphenation on either side. Furthermore, each command has a star form that prohibits a line break immediately after the dash.

```
\Hyphdash* (\-/ , \=/) \Endash* (\-- , \==) \Emdash* (\--- , \===)
```

Given that the command names are fairly long, the package offers shorthands for them if loaded with the option `shortcuts`. These are \- , \-- , \--- and for the star forms \=/ , \== , and \=== .

The `amsmath` package, extensively discussed in Chapter 11, also offers one command related to dashes within paragraphs. The command `\nobreakdash` suppresses any possibility of a line break after the following hyphen or dash (without enabling hyphenation). This command must be used *immediately* before a hyphen or dash (\- , \-- , or \---). A very common use of `\nobreakdash` is to prevent undesirable line breaks in usages such as “ p -adic”. However, in a case like “ n -dimensional” the use of `\Hyphdash` or its shortcut is clearly superior, because without the ability to hyphenate “dimensional” one might see badly spaced out lines.

The following example shows some of the commands from both packages in action. For frequent use, it is advisable to make abbreviations, such as \p or \n . As a result, “dimension” is broken across the line, while a break after “ p -” is prevented (resulting in a overfull box in the example) and “3–9” is moved to the next line.

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\newcommand\p{\p$\nobreakdash} % for "\p-adic"
\newcommand\Ndash{\nobreakdash--}% "3\Ndash 9"
\usepackage[shortcuts]{extdash}
\newcommand\n[1]{\n$\text{\-/}} % "\n-dimensional"
\noindent The generalization to the \n-dimensional
case---using the standard \p-adic topology---can be
found on Pages 3\Ndash 9 of Volume IV.
```

The generalization to the n -dimensional case—using the standard p -adic topology—can be found on Pages 3–9 of Volume IV.

Compare the above em-dashes to the `\Emdash` command—this leaves a small space on either side.

Compare the above em \- /dashes to the `\verb=\Emdash=` command \--- —this leaves a small space on either side.

3-2-4

As the shown in the previous example, the em-dash as produced with `\Emdash` or its shortcut `\---`, which is different from the one produced by `---` in that it adds by default a little extra space on either side. This reflects the different typography traditions in different parts of the world. To properly cater for that, `extdash` offers a set of options to adjust this behavior: `nospacearound` implements American style, while `wordspacearound`, as its name indicates, adds a full word space — common, for example, in Germany and several other countries. In all cases `\Emdash` controls the space on both sides; i.e., it makes no difference if you add a space manually, because it is removed and replaced by whatever is specified through the options.

Another often needed option is `shortemdash`, which produces a somewhat shorter em-dash, because the dashes found in many fonts are too long to fit the traditional typography of many countries.¹ By default, line breaks are allowed only *after* any of the dashes (or not at all if the star forms are used). However, if em-dashes are separated by a word space, then it may make sense to allow line breaks also in front of the em-dash. To enable this, use `allowbreakbefore`. The next example shows a setting suitable for languages like German, where “Gedankenstriche” should be shorter, separated by a full word space, and are allowed to appear at the start of a line.

```
\usepackage[shortcuts,wordspacearound,shortemdash,
allowbreakbefore]{extdash}
```

\TeX ’s—basic — em-dash does not manipulate surrounding spaces.

\TeX {}’s---basic --- em-dash does not manipulate surrounding spaces.

Here are — Gedankenstriche — shorter and set apart. Breaks can — as shown — happen before them.

Here are\---Gedankenstriche \--- shorter and set apart. Breaks can\--- as shown \---happen before them.

3-2-5

Note that the shortened Gedankenstriche are produced by typesetting two slightly overlapping en-dashes. This means that copy and paste of such text produces a somewhat strange result: two dashes next to each other because the overlap gets lost.

3.2.3 underscore — Making that character more usable

The underscore character has a special meaning in \LaTeX and in normal circumstances can be used only in math mode where it denotes a subscript. Using it in normal text generates an error message. Here you have to write `\textunderscore` or its short form `_` instead, which then produces an underscore character if available in the current font or otherwise constructs a fake using a rule.

For occasional use that is fine, but if you have a need for many textual underscores, e.g., because the *variables_you_describe* all have underscores in their names, then the standard approach is less convenient, and it would be nicer to simply enter the underscore as a single “`_`” character. Furthermore, you may want words with underscores inside to allow for hyphenation (and that is not the case if `_` is used).

¹Of course, this option has a dependency on the font used: if you happen to have one that already uses shorter dashes, you end up with a dash that is too short, but for many fonts it produces the right results if you look for short dashes.

To help with such tasks Donald Arseneau developed the `underscore` package. It redefines `_` (but not `\textunderscore`!) in such a way that it can be hyphenated after the underscore and in the word part to the right of it (a break before it is always possible).

A compound_fracture
A compound_frac-
ture
A bad compound_-
fracture
A really bad com-
pound_fracture

```
\usepackage{underscore}
\fbbox{\parbox{77pt}}{
  A compound\textunderscore fracture \\ % bad
  A compound\_fracture                \\ % good (with package)
  A bad compound\_fracture             \\ % good? see below
  A really bad compound\_fracture      % ok here
}}
```

3-2-6

If you do not like the fact that a hyphen character is added when the break happens after the underscore, you can load the package with the option `nohyphen` in which cases you get this behavior.

A compound_frac-
ture
A bad compound_
fracture

```
\usepackage[nohyphen]{underscore}
\fbbox{\parbox{77pt}}{
  A compound\_fracture    \\
  A bad compound\_fracture % no hyphen here this time
}}
```

3-2-7

In fact, the package makes the `_` character more intelligent too. It can be used without preceding it with a backslash, has the meaning of `_` in text, and retains its usual “subscript” meaning in math. Thus, this allows for concise input. Note the use of `\var` inside math in the next example. This becomes possible because `\textsf` generates a text object and thus `_` gets its “text” meaning.

We have *temperature_cur_value* < x_i even
if *temperature_max* has not been set.

```
\usepackage{underscore}
\newcommand\var[1]{\textsf{\itshape #1}}
We have $\var{temperature_cur_value} < x_i$
even if \var{temperature_max} has not been set.
```

3-2-8

This convenience comes with a caveat: in certain places, most noticeable in file names or labels, the underscore may no longer be usable unless you use `babel`, precede it with `\string`, or use the option `strings`. The package documentation has some further details on this.

3.2.4 xspace — Gentle spacing after a macro

The space character is another special character in \LaTeX . Several spaces in a row are collapsed into one, and all spaces directly after a command with a name consisting of

letters¹ are ignored. To get a space there you need to use `_`, e.g., `\LaTeX_`, and if you want several spaces somewhere, you can repeatedly use that command.

The small package `xspace` (by David Carlisle) offers a method for automatically deciding whether a command should be followed by a space. For this it defines the `\xspace` command, for use at the end of macros that produce text. It adds a space unless the macro is followed by certain punctuation characters.

Thus, the `\xspace` command saves you from having to type `_` or `{ }` after most occurrences of a macro name in text. However, if either of these constructs follows `\xspace`, a space is not added by `\xspace`. This means that it is safe to add `\xspace` to the end of an existing macro without making too many changes in your document. Possible candidates for `\xspace` are commands for abbreviations such as “e.g.,” and “i.e.”.

```
\newcommand\eg{e.g.,\xspace} \newcommand\ie{i.e.,\xspace}
\newcommand\etc{etc.\@\xspace}
```

Notice the use of the `\@` command in the definition of `\etc` to generate the correct kind of space. If used to the right of a punctuation character, it prevents extra space from being added: the dot is not regarded as an end-of-sentence symbol. Using it on the left forces \LaTeX to interpret the dot as an end-of-sentence symbol.²

In some circumstances `\xspace` may make a wrong decision and add a space when it is not wanted. The most common reason for this is that `\xspace` is followed by a command that should not be preceded by a space, but is not on the exception list for `\xspace`. For example, `\xspace` knows about `\footnote` and `\footnotemark` but not about new footnote commands that you may have defined with `manyfoot` as explained in Section 3.5.7. In such cases, follow the macro with `{ }`, which suppresses this space, or add the necessary commands to the exception list as shown in the next example where there should not be a space added in front of `\marker`.

	<code>\usepackage{xspace}</code>
	<code>\newcommand\marker{*\xspace}</code>
	<code>\newcommand\GB {Great Britain\xspace}</code>
	<code>\newcommand\EU {European Union\xspace}</code>
In 2017 Great Britain * voted	In 2017 \GB\marker voted for leaving the \EU\marker.
for leaving the European Union * .	\par \xspaceaddexceptions{\marker}
In 2017 Great Britain* voted	In 2017 \GB\marker voted for leaving the \EU\marker.
for leaving the European Union* .	

3-2-9

In the above example `\xspaceaddexceptions` was used in the middle of the document to show the results without and with the declaration. In real documents this declaration would be placed in the preamble of a document instead.

¹Commands consisting of a backslash and a symbol, e.g., `\&` or `\$`, are different. A space following any of them is honored.

²You should, for example, write “... in the USA\@.” to get the correct spacing after the period. See also the discussion in Section 3.3.2 on page 157.

3.3 Generated or specially formatted text

One of the features of \LaTeX is that it can automatically generate text based on the current context. We have already seen examples of this in Chapter 2 in the form of references that adjust their text based on the distance between label and reference.

In this section two other useful applications are discussed. The `fmtcount` package offers ways to produce ordinal and cardinal strings from counter values so that you can refer to the “third chapter” without worrying that it may become the “fourth chapter” later. The other package (`acro`) helps you manage acronyms and offers sophisticated ways to typeset them based on your needs and their position in the text.

We finish the section with a small package that produces fractions such as $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{2}{3}$, or $\frac{3}{4}$ for use in running text.

3.3.1 `fmtcount` — Ordinals and cardinals

When typesetting the value of counters, \LaTeX offers a number of commands, such as `\Roman{chapter}`, to generate “III”; see Appendix A.2.1. Sometimes there is a need to provide a textual representation of the counter value or to write “in the 3rd chapter”, and for this you can use the `fmtcount` package by Nicola Talbot and Vincent Belaïche. The package provides various commands to format counter values and can generate correct ordinals for different languages.

<code>\ordinal{ctr}[gender]</code>	<code>\fmtord{text}</code>
------------------------------------	----------------------------

The `\ordinal` command¹ takes the name of a \LaTeX counter as its argument and produces by default a raised ordinal, e.g., `\ordinal{chapter}` produces “3rd”. The “rd” is generated by calling `\fmtord`, which by default typesets the text as a superscript. If the package is loaded with the option `level`, the *text* is set at the baseline.

In some languages the correct text string depends on the *gender* of what is being referred to, and in these cases the optional argument can be used to specify the *gender* as `m` (masculine), `f` (feminine), or `n` (neuter). If the argument is missing or if the current language does not have this concept, `m` is assumed.

<code>\ordinalstring{ctr}[gender]</code>	<code>\Ordinalstring{ctr}[gender]</code>
<code>\ORDINALstring{ctr}[gender]</code>	


These commands produce the counter value as a textual ordinal with the command `\Ordinalstring` uppercasing the first letter and `\ORDINALstring` uppercasing the whole word, respectively. That is, we get “third”, “Third”, and “THIRD” at this point in the book when used with the `chapter` counter. The next example shows the use of the optional *gender* argument when using the German language — chapters

¹For users of the memoir document class the package offers `\FCordinal` as an alternate name because `\ordinal` is already defined by this class.

(Kapitel) are neuter, sections (Abschnitte) are masculine, and footnotes (Fußnoten) are feminine in that language:

3-3-1	<pre> \usepackage[ngerman]{babel,fmtcount} Drittes Kapitel erster Abschnitt, siebte Fußnote. \Ordinalstring{chapter}[n] Kapitel \ordinalstring{section}[m] Abschnitt, \ordinalstring{footnote}[f] Fußnote. </pre>
-------	--

While *gender* as needed in some languages is supported, one should not expect miracles: depending on the grammatical case further differentiations may be needed; e.g., “in the third chapter” would translate in German to “im dritten Kapitel” — a form that cannot be autogenerated by the package to date.

 *Not all grammatical forms are supported*

<pre> \numberstring{ctr}[gender] \Numberstring{ctr}[gender] \NUMBERstring{ctr}[gender] </pre>
--

In the same fashion, `\numberstring`, `\Numberstring`, and `\NUMBERstring` can be used to produce the counter value as an ordinary text string, e.g., with `subsection` as its argument we get one, One, and ONE at this point.

Instead of formatting counter values, it is also possible to format numbers that are directly entered. For this purpose variants of the previous six commands exist that all end in `\...num`, e.g., `\ordinalstringnum`. Here is an example:

3-3-2	<pre> \usepackage{fmtcount} We select the first, thirteenth, fourteenth and twenty-second. \newcommand\nth[1]{\ordinalstringnum{#1}} We select the \nth{1}, \nth{13}, \nth{14} and \nth{22}. </pre>
-------	---

As already seen, the package offers some (limited) multilingual support for a number of languages including English, French (various flavors), German, Italian, Portuguese, and Spanish. It works together with `babel` or `polyglossia` and uses the same language or dialect names (for implemented languages). Important is that all used languages are made known to `fmtcount` in the preamble by loading them as options or through the declaration `\FCloadlang`, which expects a list of language names. After that, ordinals or cardinals are formatted using the language currently in force.

3-3-3	<pre> \usepackage[ngerman,english]{babel,fmtcount} First section in 3rd chapter has five subsections. \Ordinalstring{section} section in \ordinal{chapter} chapter has \numberstring{subsection} subsections. \par \selectlanguage{ngerman}% Erster Abschnitt im 3. Kapitel hat \Ordinalstring{section} Abschnitt im \ordinal{chapter}[n] fünf Unterabschnitte. Kapitel hat \numberstring{subsection}[m] Unterabschnitte. </pre>
-------	--

The package has extensive support for the French language and offers many options to tailor the appearances of ordinals; for details refer to the package documentation [188]. It also offers a number of additional counter representations not available with standard \LaTeX . These are discussed in Appendix A.2.2 on page →II 650.

3.3.2 `acro` — Managing your abbreviations and acronyms

Documents often contain acronyms and abbreviations such as “CTAN” or “etc.”. If they are infrequent, one can easily typeset them manually, e.g., as `\textsc{ctan}`, or provide simple commands for them.

However, if there are many and there is a need to introduce the acronyms on first use, e.g., writing “Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network (CTAN)” and only later just “CTAN”, then this gets problematical. Every change of the text might move the first use to a different place and thus require reworking of the text. Furthermore, if you want to generate an annotated list of all acronyms in an appendix, there is a good chance that this compilation of terms may not fit reality if it was done manually and not automatically generated from the acronyms used in the text.

To help you with such tasks Clemens Niederberger developed the very comprehensive `acro` package with which you can easily manage your acronyms and customize their appearance. To declare such acronyms and abbreviations you use the `\DeclareAcronym` command.

```
\DeclareAcronym{id}{short=short-text, long=long-text, other-key/values }
```

The *id* is a case-sensitive text string that identifies the acronym and is used in the typesetting commands to refer to the declaration. There are two required keys that must be provided with any acronym declaration: the `short` key specifies the *short-text* for the acronym (i.e., the text that is usually typeset), and the `long` key defines the *long-text* (typically used on the first occurrence). Further keys cover special requirements when typesetting an acronym, such as plural or alternative forms and are discussed below.

Generally
customizing the
acronyms

Besides customizing individual acronyms by adding key/value pairs in their declarations, it is possible to adjust the overall appearance and set up defaults for them. This is done with `\acsetup`, which also expects a list of key/value pairs. The most useful ones are discussed in the remainder of the section, but note that there are even more than could be covered here, so check the manual [155] if you have an unusual requirement.

```
\ac*{id}    \acs*{id}    \acl*{id}    \acf*{id}    \aca*{id}
```

Commands for
typesetting
acronyms

For typesetting an acronym a number of commands are available. `\acs` and `\acl` typeset the short or the long text, respectively. `\ac` in contrast typesets the long text followed by the short text in parentheses on first occurrence and from that point onwards always the short text. Thus, this is the command most often used. `\acf` acts as if this is the first usage of `\ac`, useful for reintroducing the meaning of an acronym at some point, even if it was used before.

Sometimes you may want an alternative short text for an acronym to use in special circumstances. This text can be specified with the `alt` key in the declaration and is typeset using the `\aca` command. If no alternative text was given, you receive a warning, and the *short-text* is used instead (case 8 in the example). Note that the full


text then shows both short and alternate text by default — if this it is not desired, you can modify the template for the full form as explained in [155].

The star forms generate identical output, but they are not counted as “usage” with respect to `\ac`. This can be useful, for example, when an acronym appears in a heading (and thus in the table of contents) and you do not want to count that occurrence as first use.

	<code>\usepackage{acro}</code>
1 Electronic Data Systems (EDS or Excel driven solutions), 2 Excel driven solutions, 3 EDS	<code>\DeclareAcronym{eds}{short=\mbox{EDS}, long=Electronic Data Systems, alt=Excel driven solutions}</code>
4 Also known as (aka), 5 aka, 6 also known as (aka), 7 aka, 8 aka, 9 Also known as,	<code>\DeclareAcronym{aka}{short = aka, long = also known as}</code>
10 Aka, 11 also known as (aka)	<code>1 \ac{eds}, 2 \aca{eds}, 3 \ac{eds} \\\</code> <code>4 \Acf*{aka}, 5 \acs*{aka}, 6 \ac{aka}, 7 \ac{aka},</code> <code>8 \aca{aka}, 9 \Acl{aka}, 10 \Ac{aka}, 11 \acf{aka}</code>

3-3-4

The `\mbox` in the `short` key value warrants some explanation that is worth remembering: by default \LaTeX distinguishes spaces between words from spaces after punctuation — a space after a sentence is usually¹ noticeably wider than a normal space. However, \LaTeX does not consider a period, question mark, or exclamation point to be the end of a sentence if the immediately preceding character is an uppercase letter, since it assumes that this is likely somebody’s initial. The `\mbox` now hides the uppercase letters inside, and therefore `\ac{eds}` can appear at the end of a sentence, and you get correct spacing. It has the additional effect that the word inside is never hyphenated (but that is important only for longer words). If you want to allow for hyphenation and get the correct sentence-ending space, use `@` after the last uppercase letter instead, which also results in correct spacing. If you care for high-quality results, then one or the other should be used whenever your acronym text ends in an uppercase letter.

 *Acronyms at the end of the sentence*

If acronyms appear at the beginning of a sentence, they may need uppercasing of their first letter. This can be achieved by using commands that have the first letter of the command name uppercased, e.g., `\Acf*`, `\Acl`, `\Ac`, etc., as shown in the previous example. These variants are available for all commands that typeset acronyms.

Acronyms at the start of a sentence

Plural forms

If a plural of an acronym is needed, then this usually affects the generated text, though there are exceptions. To typeset a plural, use any of the acronym commands and append a `p` to the end of the command name, e.g.,

<code>\acp*{id}</code> <code>\acsp*{id}</code> <code>\aclp*{id}</code> <code>\acfp*{id}</code> <code>\acap*{id}</code> ...
--

By default these commands add an “s” to the generated text. If the acronym has an irregular form and this is incorrect, you need to use some additional keys in the

¹This is controlled by the commands `\frenchspacing` (default in, e.g., French and German, if babel is used) and `\nonfrenchspacing` (default in English or if babel is not used).

declaration to specify what should be used instead. Append `-plural` to the base name; e.g., use the key `short-plural` to specify what should be appended to the *short-text*. In cases where the plural form is more complicated and cannot be constructed by appending some characters, you can use the `short-plural-form` key to specify the text should be replace the *short-text*. Similar keys, e.g., `long-plural`, `long-plural-form`, `alt-plural`, `alt-plural-form`, etc., exist to provide the necessary variants.

```

Members of Parliament (MPs),
MPs
\usepackage{acro}
\DeclareAcronym{mp}{short = MP\@, long = Member of Parliament,
long-plural-form = Members of Parliament}
\acp{mp}, \acp{mp}

```

3-3-5

Indefinite forms

At least in English the indefinite article depends on the pronunciation of the following word and thus may differ depending on whether the short or the long form of an acronym is typeset. To cater for this you can use the keys `short-indefinite`, `long-indefinite`, and `alt-indefinite` in the declaration and then typeset the acronym using one of the following commands:

```

\iac*{id}    \iacs*{id}    \iacl*{id}    \iacf*{id}    \iaca*{id}

```

While plural forms do not make sense in this case, variants for uppercasing of the first letter are available too.

```

1 An unidentified flying object (UFO), 2
a UFO, 3 an unidentified flying object,
4 a UFO, 5 an unidentified flying object
(UFO)
\usepackage{acro}
\DeclareAcronym{ufo}{short=UFO\@, long=unidentified
flying object, long-indefinite = an}
1 \Iac{ufo}, 2 \iac{ufo}, 3 \Iacl{ufo}, 4 \Iacs{ufo},
5 \Iacf{ufo}

```

3-3-6

One-time usage of acronyms

If a declared acronym is used only once, you may not want to show both *long-* and *short-text* on that occasion (as normally done by `\ac` or `\acf`), but rather just the *long-text* or a variation thereof. This can be easily achieved by specifying the key `single` in `\acsetup`. This results in typesetting the *long-text* if the acronym is used only once. It also prevents that acronym from being listed in any acronym list, if such a list is generated.

For more control you can specify the minimal number of times it needs to appear before the normal machinery kicks in: the example below uses 2. What is being typeset can be adjusted as well by using the key `single-style`. It takes any acronym template name as its value and thus can be `long` (default), `short`, `short-long`, `alt`, and a few others.

It is also possible to specify a variant text to be typeset: for this use the key `single` on the acronym declaration. In the next example we do that for the second acronym and also change the `single-style` to `short`. Since `\Acf*` is not counted towards the number of occurrences the two `\ac` commands are both shown as single occurrences.

3-3-7

THGTTG and Unidentified flying object (UFO), UFO and Zaphod Beeblebrox

```
\usepackage{acro} \acsetup{single=2,single-style=short}
\DeclareAcronym{hg}{short = \mbox{THGTTG}, long = the
    Hitchhiker's Guide to the Galaxy}
\DeclareAcronym{ufo}{short = UFO\@, long = unidentified
    flying object, single = Zaphod Beeblebrox}
\Ac{hg} and \Acf*{ufo}, \acs{ufo} and \ac{ufo}
```

Citations for acronyms

It is sometimes helpful to add a citation to the long text of an acronym. Technically this could be done by simply adding an appropriate `\cite` command to the *long-text*. However, a superior way is to specify this citation using the `cite` key in the declaration (normally, its value is the label you would use on `\cite`, but additionally specifying pre- or post-notes is also supported). This enables you to easily change the appearances of such citations by setting keys in `\acsetup`.

If necessary, the command to generate the citation (default `\cite`) can be altered through the key `cite/cmd`. The material placed before a citation is defined with `cite/pre` (default `\nobreakspace`). If your citations, for example, generate footnotes or side-notes, you would change the key to produce nothing. The `cite/display` key defines when a citation is displayed. It can take the values `first` (default), `all`, or `none`. Below is an example:

Dirty Tricks in the T_EX Book [1, App. D] and later refer to TB-tricks [1, App. D].

```
\usepackage{acro} \acsetup{cite/display=all}
\DeclareAcronym{tb}{short = TB-tricks,
    long = Dirty Tricks in the \TeX{} Book,
    first-style = long,
    cite = [App.\,D]{Knuth-CT-a} }
\Ac{tb} and later refer to \ac{tb}.
\bibliography{t1c}
```

References

- [1] Donald E. Knuth. *The T_EXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986.

3-3-8

By default the citation is typeset after the acronym and separated by the code specified by the key `cite/pre` as shown in the previous example. Alternatively, you can move it inside the parentheses that surround the *short-text* when the first occurrence of the acronym is typeset. For this set the key `cite/group` (to `true`).

Depending on the circumstances, you may additionally need a special citation command or a special connector for this case. These can be specified with `cite/group/cmd` and `cite/group/pre` (default `,\,`), respectively.

The next example defines a simple `\footcite` command and then makes use of the above keys to place the citation into a footnote when only the full text is shown.

Compare this to Example 3-3-8 on the previous page.

Dirty Tricks in the T_EX Book (TB-tricks¹)
and later refer to TB-tricks.

References

- [1] Donald E. Knuth. *The T_EXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986.

¹See [1, App. D].

```
\usepackage{acro}
\acsetup{cite/group,cite/group/pre=,
         cite/group/cmd=\footcite}
\DeclareAcronym{tb}{short = TB-tricks,
                  long = Dirty Tricks in the \TeX{} Book,
                  cite = [App.\,D]{Knuth-CT-a} }
\newcommand\footcite[2] []
    {\footnote{See \cite{#1}{#2}.}}

\Ac{tb} and later refer to \ac{tb}.
\bibliography{t1c}
```

3-3-9

Foreign acronyms

If an acronym has its origin in a different language, one can provide additional information in the key `foreign` and specify its language in the key `foreign-babel`. This information is then used when the acronym is first displayed, and it requires that your document has a language support package, such as `babel` with the corresponding language loaded. See Example 3-3-10 for a use case.

Formatting acronym texts

By default the text specified in any of the keys `short`, `long`, `single`, `foreign`, or `alt` is typeset as given, but if necessary, one can apply special formatting to such texts. This can be set globally for all entries through the keys that start in `format/`, e.g., `format/short`, `format/long`, etc. There also exists `format/first-long`, which is being used for the *long-text* on first usage.

Alternatively, one can use keys when declaring acronyms, thereby overwriting the defaults. In that case append `-format` to the name, e.g., `short-format` to alter the *short-text* for one acronym only.

The value is either a command with one argument such as `\textit` or a declaration such as `\scshape` — both forms work. If you want to alter the setup for all or most acronyms, you do this using `\acsetup`, otherwise in the acronym declaration. In the next example we force the *short-text* to lowercase and then apply `\textsc`, and we use `\itshape` for the *foreign-text*. Note that for “etc” the formatting is canceled because this is an abbreviation that should not be set in small capitals.

Compact Disc (CD)
Langspielplatte (*Long*
Playing Vinyl Record, LP)
et cetera (etc.)

```
\usepackage[english,ngerman]{babel} \usepackage{acro}
\acsetup{format/short=\textlsc, format/foreign=\itshape}
\DeclareAcronym{etc}{short=etc.\@, long=et cetera,
                    short-format= } % overwriting default
\DeclareAcronym{cd}{short = CD\@, long = Compact Disc}
\DeclareAcronym{lp}{short = LP\@, long = Langspielplatte,
                    foreign = Long Playing Vinyl Record, foreign-babel = english}
\newcommand\textlsc[1]{\textsc{\MakeLowercase{#1}}}

\ac{cd} \ \ \ac{lp} \ \ \ac{etc}
```

3-3-10

With the help of the `first-style` key you can determine how the acronym should be display on its first use. As we have seen, the default setting is to typeset the *long-text* followed by the *short-text* and possibly the *alt-text* and/or the *foreign-text* in parentheses. Other possibilities available are `short-long` (like *long-short* but swapped), `short` (just the *short-text*), `long` (just the *long-text*), or `footnote` (*short-text* as footnote). If used in `\acsetup`, the key `first-style` defines the default for all acronyms as shown in the next example:

```

\usepackage{acro} \acsetup{first-style=short-long}
% Acronym declarations as in previous example except ...
\DeclareAcronym{etc}{short = etc.\@, long=et cetera,
                    short-format=, first-style=short}
\ac{cd}, \ac{lp}, \ac{etc}

```

CD (Compact Disc), LP (*Long Playing Vinyl Record*, Langspielplatte), etc.

3-3-11

In fact, it is possible to define your acronym own styles to be used with the `first-style` key. As an example we define a new template `square` as a variation of the predefined `long-short` style (using square brackets instead of parentheses).

```

\NewAcroTemplate{square}
{\acroiffirstTF
  {\acrowrite{long}%           % first usage of acronym?
   \acspace [%                 %   write long text
    \acroifT{foreign}{\acrowrite{foreign}, }%   followed by a space and [
    \acrowrite{short}%         %   write foreign text if given
    \acroifT{alt}{ \acrotranslate{or}%         %   write short text
                  \acrowrite{alt}}%           %   maybe write alt text
    \acrogroupcite             %   handle group cites if present
  ]}%                           %   end finish of with ]
  {\acrowrite{short}}}%         % use short text if not first time
}

```

Applying this to acronyms from the previous example gives the following result:

```

Compact Disc [cd], Langspielplatte [Long
Playing Vinyl Record, LP], etc.
\usepackage{acro} \acsetup{first-style=square}
\ac{cd}, \ac{lp}, \ac{etc}

```

3-3-12

More details on these kinds of extensions (and the commands used in the above definition) are discussed in [155].

Using `acro` for abbreviations

If you use the mechanism of `acro` to define commands for abbreviations such as “etc”, you may be faced with two issues: for one there is usually no point in generating “et cetera (etc.)” on first usage. This can be corrected with an appropriate value for the `first-style` key as shown previously.

The second problem is that the *short-text* may end in a period, and if your abbreviation appears at the end of a sentence, that may then result in two periods. To avoid this, you have to direct the `acro` commands to look ahead and identify the following character and act accordingly. For this you can use `\acdot` inside the acronym declaration, which typesets a period unless the acronym is followed by one.

	<code>\usepackage{acro}</code>
1 Z.B., 2 z.B.,	<code>\DeclareAcronym{zB}{short=z.B\acdot,long=zum Beispiel,</code>
	<code>first-style=short}</code>
3 zum Beispiel, 4 z.B.	<code>\DeclareAcronym{etc}{short=etc\acdot,long=et cetera,</code>
	<code>first-style=short}</code>
1 Etc., 2 etc.,	<code>1 \Ac*{zB}, 2 \ac{zB}, \ 3 \acl{zB}, 4 \ac{zB}. \</code>
3 et cetera, 4 etc.	<code>1 \Ac*{etc}, 2 \ac{etc}, \ 3 \acl{etc}, 4 \ac{etc}.</code>

3-3-13

It is possible to direct `acro` to look for other characters (e.g., a hyphen or other punctuation characters) and change the output of an acronym depending on the result. For details on this special topic, refer to the package documentation [155].

Listing your acronyms and abbreviations

The `acro` package offers you an easy way to produce one or more lists displaying your acronyms together with some explanation and, if desired, with back references to their use in the document.

In the simplest form you just have to place the command `\printacronyms` at the point where the list should appear. By default, this lists all¹ used acronyms and abbreviations used in alphabetical order as a description list.

This list and its content can be customized through keys specified in an optional argument to `\printacronyms`. The command to produce the heading for the list is defined by `heading`. Specify a sectioning command without the leading backslash or `none` to suppress any heading. The default is `section*`. The text used in the heading is given by `name` and defaults to `Acronyms`. If you want to typeset the acronyms unsorted (i.e., in the order of their declarations), specify `sort=false`.

If the list is being sorted but some entries are placed in incorrect positions, you can specify `sort=sortkey` in the acronym declaration. By default the list is sorted using the *short-text* of each acronym.

It is also possible to group your acronyms into different classes by specifying a `tag` key in the acronym declaration. Such tags can then be used to selectively include or exclude acronyms from a list by specifying `include` or `exclude` with a list of tag names as the value. In the next example this has been used to tag the “etc” and “zB” abbreviations with `ignore` and then exclude all acronyms with that tag in the listing.

Another useful key when declaring acronyms is `extra`. This allows you to specify additional information about some acronym that is *only* shown in listings produced with `\printacronyms`.


¹If the `single` key is used, then only acronyms used more than once are included.

There are also some keys that apply to all listings (if you have several) and are therefore set with `\acsetup`.

If you want to list all declared acronyms regardless of whether they are used, specify `list/display=all` as we did in Example 3-3-14 below. This is the reason why the entry for “LOL” is listed.

Back references to the pages where the acronyms are used can be added by specifying `pages/display` with the value `all` (listing every usage) or `first` (showing only the page of the first occurrence). The formatting of these page numbers is subject to a number of additional keys; consult the documentation if you are dissatisfied with the defaults.

The `list/template` key defines what type of lists are being produced and defaults to `description`. Many other styles, such as `longtable` or `lof`, are available, and it is possible to define your own layout as described in the package documentation [155].

 No warning if another \LaTeX run is necessary!

Zum Beispiel: CD, aka, UFO, etc.
Some acronyms not used, but still listed:
ES and lol.

Abbrevs

∅ empty set

aka also known as 6

CD Compact Disc 6

LOL laughing out loud

UFO unidentified flying object (*Most often seen in the north*) . . . 6

```
\usepackage{acro}
\acsetup{list/display=all,
         pages/display=all,format/extra=\itshape}

\DeclareAcronym{aka}{short=aka,long=also known as}
\DeclareAcronym{cd}{short=CD\@,long=Compact Disc}
\DeclareAcronym{ES}{short = $\emptyset$,
                   long = empty set, sort = 0}
\DeclareAcronym{etc}{short=etc\acdot,
                   long=et cetera, first-style=short,tag=ignore}
\DeclareAcronym{lol}{short=LOL\@,long=laughing out loud}
\DeclareAcronym{ufo}{short = UFO\@,
                   long = unidentified flying object,
                   extra = Most often seen in the north}
\DeclareAcronym{zB}{short=z.B\acdot,long=zum Beispiel,
                   first-style=short,tag=ignore}

\Acl{zB}: \acs{cd}, \acs{aka}, \acs{ufo}, \ac{etc}.\@
Some acronyms not used, but still listed: ES and lol.

\printacronyms[exclude=ignore,name=Abbrevs]
```

3-3-14

Instead of using `heading` or `name` with `\printacronyms`, you can alternatively change the global defaults with the keys `list/heading` and `list/name`.

Further possibilities not covered

The `acro` package offers many more bells and whistles. For interactive documents it supports `hyperref`, offers support for bookmarks, and can produce tooltips.

If desired, one can list all acronyms in the index, and there are several keys that help you to tailor the index entries. It is also possible to erect barriers and collect only those acronyms between two barriers for printing with `\printacronyms`. Details on this and further features can be found in the package documentation [155].

3.3.3 xfrac — Customizable ^{text}/fractions

In formulas, fractions are usually typeset with the command `\frac` that sets the numerator on top of the denominator separated by a horizontal line like this: $\frac{1}{2}$. While this layout is sensible in mathematics, because it helps to unambiguously identify the components, it does not work very well in text. The fraction is typically too large to fit nicely into the text line, and furthermore the digits used come from the math fonts that may or may not match the current text font.

For this reason it is quite customary to set fractions used in text (for example in recipes) like this: $\frac{1}{2}$. Here a solidus symbol is used as a separator and the figures in the numerator and denominator come from the current text font in a slightly smaller size. This type of layout is provided with the `xfrac` package by Morten Høgholm.

$$\backslash\mathrm{sfrac}[style]\{numerator\}[separator]\{denominator\}$$

The only user command defined by the package is `\sfrac`. It takes two mandatory arguments, the *numerator* and *denominator* of the fraction. By default it generates a split-level fraction using these arguments and a `\textfractionsolidus` symbol and typesets everything suitably placed in the current text font.

If ever needed, it is possible to specify a different separation symbol using the optional *separator* argument, and for special use cases one can explicitly select a *style* in the first optional argument. However, this optional argument is ignored if the `\sfrac` command is used in a formula. Normally, none of these optional arguments is needed.

Here is an example for the curiosity cabinet (`fix-cm` is used to get freely scalable Computer Modern fonts):

$\frac{1}{4} \frac{2}{4} \frac{3}{4} \frac{4}{4}$ And in math: $\frac{1}{4} \frac{2}{4} \frac{3}{4} \frac{4}{4}$	<pre>\usepackage{xfrac,fix-cm} \sfrac{1}{4} \sfrac{2}{4} \sfrac{3}{4} \sfrac{4}{4} \sfrac{4}{\textbackslash} \[\3pt] And in math: \[\3pt] \$\sfrac{1}{4}\,\sfrac{2}{4}\,\sfrac{3}{4}\,\sfrac{4}{4}\,\sfrac{4}{\setminus}{4}\$</pre>	3-3-15
--	---	--------

What is more interesting than playing with separator symbols is that `\sfrac` attempts to blend into the context when used in text; i.e., it varies with font changes as far as possible.

$\frac{1}{2} \frac{3}{4} \frac{5}{6}$ $\frac{7}{10} \frac{8}{15} \frac{9}{23}$ $\frac{1}{25} \frac{1}{100} \frac{1}{1000}$	<pre>\usepackage{xfrac,lmodern} \rmfamily \sfrac{1}{2} \itshape \sfrac{3}{4} \bfseries \sfrac{5}{6} \[\ \sffamily \sfrac{7}{10} \upshape \sfrac{8}{15} \mdseries \sfrac{9}{23} \[\ \ttfamily \sfrac{1}{25} \slshape \sfrac{1}{100} \bfseries \sfrac{1}{1000}</pre>	3-3-16
--	--	--------

As you can see, this not only changes the fonts for the *numerator* and *denominator* but also the one used for the `\textfractionsolidus` command. Next to one another this looks somewhat ugly, but in normal text the adjusted fractions work quite well.¹

¹The Latin Modern Sans family has inherited a somewhat dubious feature of Computer Modern in that the normal shapes are somewhat different from the rounder bold shapes, which is quite visible in the endings of the letters.

However, if you do not like the results of `\sfrac` with any particular font, it is easy enough to modify it by using a different *style*.

For that we need to understand how `xfrac` determines the layout to use for a particular `\sfrac` occurrence. What happens behind the scene is this: if you use the optional *style* argument and this is a known style, then it is used. Otherwise, `xfrac` takes the name of the current font family (e.g., `lmr`) and checks if there exists a style with that name. If yes, that will be used; otherwise, a style named `default` is chosen.

Applying style

In case you are not happy about `\sfrac` in a particular font family, you can define or redefine a style with the name of that family. The package already knows about the following six font families and has customized styles for them: `cmr`, `cmss`, `cmtt`, `lmr`, `lmss`, and `lmtt`, i.e., the main Computer Modern and Latin Modern font families. For all others fonts it uses its default style, and one needs to provide a new style if the default is not satisfactory.

If you are unhappy about the defaults as such, you have to modify the `default` style, and if you need a one-off style, you can define it and give it an arbitrary name. You can then use it in the optional argument of `\sfrac` (which is what we did for the section heading). Here are the commands¹ needed to do any of this:

```
\ShowInstanceValues{xfrac}{style}
\EditInstance      {xfrac}{style}      {key/value list}
\DeclareInstance   {xfrac}{style}{text}{key/value list}
```

The `\ShowInstanceValues` allows you to inspect the key/value setting for an existing *style*. We cover the important keys below, i.e., those one is likely to need when tailoring `xfrac` for a particular font family. There are a few more that may help in fairly special cases. For those consult the package documentation [70].

For editing an existing *style* use `\EditInstance` and supply it with a comma-separated list of key values that you want to change. If you want to declare a new style, use `\DeclareInstance`. In that case you also have to specify the name of the “template” to use, but for `xfrac` there is only one right now,² which is called `text`.

To give an example for `\EditInstance`: suppose you do not like the different `\textfractionsolidus` versions shown in Example 3-3-16. Then you can correct that with the `slash-symbol-format` key and surround the symbol with `\textnormal`. That would then always select the symbol from the main document font regardless of surrounding conditions. Note that you have to do this for `lmr`, `lmss`, and `lmtt`, because `xfrac` already has style definitions for all three Latin Modern families.

However, for Latin Modern Sans you may have decided that the upright solidus from that family looks nice, so we use that in all Sans variants (notice that it does not bolden the solidus in $\frac{7}{10}$ and $\frac{8}{15}$).

¹`xfrac` was something like a test case for the \LaTeX 3 `xtemplate` package that provides a general template mechanism with configurable instances. These are really commands from that package.

²There is in fact a second template called `math` that is needed to tinker with the layout of `\sfrac` inside of formulas. For this you need to consult the package documentation.

Finally, for Latin Modern Typewriter we show yet another approach: because the solidus in that family is rather heavy, we use the one from the Sans font, but this time allow it to change width or shape. To achieve this, we declare the font family to use for the symbol with the key `slash-symbol-font` that expects a font family name. Compare the results with those from Example 3-3-16 to decide what you like best.

```
\usepackage{xfrac,lmodern}
\EditInstance{xfrac}{lmr}{\slash-symbol-format=\textnormal{#1}}
\EditInstance{xfrac}{lms}{\slash-symbol-format=\textnormal{\sffamily #1}}
\EditInstance{xfrac}{lmtt}{\slash-symbol-font =lms}

1/2 3/4 5/6      \rmfamily \sfrac{1}{2} \itshape \sfrac{3}{4} \bfseries \sfrac{5}{6} \\
7/10 8/15 9/23   \sffamily \sfrac{7}{10} \upshape \sfrac{8}{15} \mdseries \sfrac{9}{23} \\
1/25 1/100 1/1000 \ttfamily \sfrac{1}{25} \slshape \sfrac{1}{100} \bfseries \sfrac{1}{1000}
```

3-3-17

Similar keys exist for specifying the font family or the format to be used for the numerator and denominator: they are called `numerator-font`, `numerator-format`, `denominator-font`, and `denominator-format`, respectively.

As an example for defining a new style we show the declaration used in this book to make the fraction in the title of the current section:

```
\DeclareInstance{xfrac}{hls-bf}{text}
{ scale-factor          = 0.9 ,
  numerator-top-sep     = -0.2 ex , denominator-bot-sep = -0.1 ex ,
  slash-left-kern       = 0.15 em , slash-right-kern    = 0.15 em }
```

The declaration shows a number of new keys: the `scale-factor` by which the numerator and denominator should be scaled down (we scale down only a little bit for this example; i.e., we do not want the default). The keys `numerator-top-sep` and `denominator-bot-sep` define how much to lower the numerator or raise the denominator with respect to the size of the slash symbol. Finally, `slash-left-kern` and `slash-right-kern` specify some extra kerning between the slash symbol and the surrounding material (for some reason the left and right refers to kerns as viewed from numerator and denominator; e.g., `slash-left-kern` is the kern next to the denominator).

The font family used in the book for the headings is called `hls`. Because this declaration was meant to be a one-off with special settings (using text not digits), the style was named `hls-bf` and was used in the heading of this section like this:

```
\subsection{\texttt{xfrac}\Dash Customizable
             \sfrac[hls-bf]{text}{fractions}}
```

*Customizing math
fractions*

As shown earlier, `\sfrac` can also be used in formulas, but due to some restrictions in the way T_EX uses fonts in math, there is less flexibility, and the default layout is usually sufficient—if not, refer to the package documentation [70] for further information.

3.3.4 siunitx — Scientific notation of units and quantities

The International System of Units (SI, abbreviated from the French *Système international* (d'unités)) is a codified form of the metric system and one of the most widely used system of measurement, officially endorsed by more than 50 nations [27]. It is built on seven base units that can be derived from invariant constants of nature and measured with high precision (ampere, kelvin, second, metre, kilogram,¹ candela, mole) and a set of decimal prefixes to the unit names and unit symbols to specify multiples or fractions of the units. The system further defines the names for derived units of other common physical quantities like becquerel, lumen, volt, etc. The standard also offers advice on many units that are not adopted into the system, but are in common use in many places. Typographic conventions for all such units are defined, and consistently following them helps to ensure that there are no misunderstandings when presenting numbers and units in printed matter.

The `siunitx` package by Joseph Wright aims at providing access to this standard and ways for \LaTeX users to typeset numbers and units correctly and consistently. By default the package follows agreed conventions but at the same time offers a huge number of keys to configure the results to fit the requirements posed by journals or universities without the need to alter the document source.

The most important of such configuration possibilities are covered in this section, but if you find that a particular requirement is not discussed, there is a high likelihood that you can find it in the extensive package documentation [201]. The package preloads `amstext`, `array`, and `color`; if you prefer `xcolor`, you can load that on top.

```
\si-cmd[options]{...}... \sisetup{options}
```

Essentially all user commands take an optional first argument for specifying keys that influence the typesetting or the input conventions. If used in this way, the keys then apply to the current command only.

As an alternative, the same set of keys can be used in the mandatory argument of `\sisetup` to set up document-wide defaults (if used in the preamble) or to set up conventions for the following commands (if used inside the document). In the latter case the usual scoping rules apply.

The `siunitx` package offers roughly 130 keys to customize all kinds of aspects of parsing and presentation. Many of them are discussed in some detail. For the others we only mention what kind of customization is possible. If adjustments in those areas are needed, please refer to the package documentation.

With this range of customization available, it is not possible to cover *all* of the package features here. We therefore look at some of the key ideas supported by the package in the context of different types of input: formatting numbers, formatting units, combining the two to make quantities, and specialist tools for complex values.

¹The definition of a kilogram is an exception: it is the only base unit that already takes a prefix in its name and therefore cannot be used with another prefix in the system. For those cases the unit gram is used instead.

Basic number and unit formatting

The core functionality in `siunitx` is the ability to format numbers and units; this can be done on its own or used as the building block for more complex commands described later.

`\num[options]{number}`

Formatting simple numbers can be carried out using the `\num` command. This understands various input conventions and can handle exponents and uncertainties. By default any spaces in the *number* argument are removed, decimal markers (either “,” or “.”) and exponents (default `e`, `E`, `d`, or `D`) are identified, and, if necessary, a zero is added in front or after a decimal marker. Both the parsing as well as the printed representation can be adjusted using a large number of keys. As illustrated, the standard settings add a small amount of separation between each group of three digits.

		<code>\usepackage{siunitx}</code>		
123 456 789 011	123	<code>\num{123456789011}</code>	<code>\hfill \num{123}</code>	<code>\\</code>
10 001	10 001	<code>\num{10001}</code>	<code>\hfill \num{10 001}</code>	<code>\\</code>
0.000 005	0.123	<code>\num{0.000005}</code>	<code>\hfill \num{0,123}</code>	<code>\\</code>
0.05	−0.05	<code>\num{.05}</code>	<code>\hfill \num{−,05}</code>	<code>\\</code>
9.95×10^{-3}	9.95×10^{-3}	<code>\num{9.95e-3}</code>	<code>\hfill \num{9,95 d-3}</code>	

3-3-18

In some disciplines it is customary to show uncertainty values together with experimentally obtained values. By default this is indicated by parentheses or alternatively by `\pm` or `+-` (but not `+`). Both input and output conventions are adjustable.

Use $1.2(30)$, $1(2)$ or $0.5(2)$. Note that $0(1)$ is, but ± 1 is not, an uncertainty value.

`\usepackage{siunitx}`

Use `\num{1.2+-3}`, `\num{1\pm 2}` or `\num{0.5(2)}`. Note that `\num{0+-1}` is, but `\num{+-1}` is not, an uncertainty value.

3-3-19

If you are cramped for space, it is possible to direct `siunitx` to use as little space as possible when printing numbers by using the key `tight-spacing`.

		<code>\usepackage{siunitx}</code>		
1×10^3 or tight as 1×10^3		<code>\num{1e3}</code> or tight as <code>\sisetup{tight-spacing} \num{1e3}</code>		

3-3-20

`\numlist[options]{numbers}`
`\numrange[options]{start}{stop}`
`\numproduct[options]{numbers}`

For simple lists one can use `\numlist` (with numbers separated by `;`), and to specify a range of numbers `\numrange` is available. The individual numbers are parsed and formatted like with `\num`. In addition, some customizable text (or other material) is added between the items. There is also `\numproduct`, which uses `x` as the separator.

2, 3, 5, 7 and 11 are prime. 6 and 28 are perfect numbers, e.g., $6 = 1 \times 2 \times 3 = 1 + 2 + 3$. There are 25 prime and 2 perfect numbers in the range from 2 to 100.

3-3-21

```
\usepackage{siunitx}
\numlist{2;3;5;7;11} are prime. \numlist{6;28} are
perfect numbers, e.g., $6=\numproduct{1x2x3}=1+2+3$.
There are $25$ prime and $2$ perfect numbers in the
range from \numrange{2}{100}.
```

`\unit[options]{unit}`

The `\unit` command is used to format a unit (or a combination of units). It supports two types of input: a literal form and a macro-based input. In the “literal” form the units are specified as simple strings like `kg` or `s`, and their relationships are specified as follows: a `.` or a `~` denotes an inter-unit product, a `/` denotes a division, and sub- and superscripts are specified with `^` and `_`, respectively.

3-3-22

```
\usepackage{siunitx}
N m   g/cm^3   J mol K^-1
\unit{N.m}   \hfill \unit{g/cm^3}   \hfill \unit{J.mol.K^{-1}}
```

While this literal mode is easy to input, it offers little flexibility in the output representation compared to the macro-based version. In the latter method, the units and their relationships are represented through commands that are parsed and interpreted by the `\unit` command. For example, `\per` (indicating the division of units) can then be printed as a reciprocal power of the unit (default) or as a “slash” symbol or through a fraction by specifying keys in an `\sisetup` declaration, as shown in the next example. In a similar way many other aspects can be globally or locally adjusted.

3-3-23

```
\usepackage{siunitx,xfrac}
\newcommand\sample[1]{#1:\quad \unit{\kilo\metre\per\hour}
\hfill\unit{\mole\per\metre\cubed}\[\5pt]}
A: km h^-1      mol m^-3
B: km/h         mol/m^3
C: \frac{km}{h} \frac{mol}{m^3} \sisetup{per-mode=symbol} \sample{A}
\sisetup{per-mode=fraction} \sample{B}
D: km/h         mol/m^3 \sisetup{per-mode=fraction,fraction-command=\sfrac} \sample{C}
\sample{D}
```

What we can see in the previous example are unit names, such as `\metre`, `\hour`, or `\mole`; a prefix `\kilo`; an inter-unit connector `\per`; and a power specification `\cubed`. The concept is that all these components are named in a way that the argument to `\unit` more or less matches what one would say when communicating the unit over the phone.

The command names for core units and prefixes are listed in Tables 3.3 to 3.6. They are split into different tables matching the conventions of the SI system. Further units can be easily defined as we see below.

Quantities

A quantity is the combination of a number and a unit. Most of the time, combining these two parts requires only the appropriate “glue”. The package offers the potential

Unit	<i>cmd</i>	Symbol	Unit	<i>cmd</i>	Symbol
ampere	<code>\ampere</code>	A	metre	<code>\metre</code>	m
candela	<code>\candela</code>	cd	mole	<code>\mole</code>	mol
kelvin	<code>\kelvin</code>	K	second	<code>\second</code>	s
kilogram	<code>\kilogram</code>	kg			

Table 3.3: SI base units

Unit	<i>cmd</i>	Symbol	Unit	<i>cmd</i>	Symbol
degree Celsius	<code>\degreeCelsius</code>	°C	newton	<code>\newton</code>	N
becquerel	<code>\becquerel</code>	Bq	ohm	<code>\ohm</code>	Ω
coulomb	<code>\coulomb</code>	C	pascal	<code>\pascal</code>	Pa
farad	<code>\farad</code>	F	radian	<code>\radian</code>	rad
gray	<code>\gray</code>	Gy	siemens	<code>\siemens</code>	S
henry	<code>\henry</code>	H	sievert	<code>\sievert</code>	Sv
hertz	<code>\hertz</code>	Hz	steradian	<code>\steradian</code>	sr
joule	<code>\joule</code>	J	tesla	<code>\tesla</code>	T
katal	<code>\katal</code>	kat	volt	<code>\volt</code>	V
lumen	<code>\lumen</code>	lm	watt	<code>\watt</code>	W
lux	<code>\lux</code>	lx	weber	<code>\weber</code>	Wb

Table 3.4: Coherent derived units in the SI with special names and symbols

for more involved work, such as converting a power-of-ten in the numerical part into a prefix in the unit part.

`\qty[options]{number}{unit}`

Quite often numbers and units are used together, and for this purpose there exists `\qty`, which is a combination of the `\num` and the `\unit` command. As such, we can use either literal or macro-based units for these *quantities* and apply keys that adjust the formatting of one or both parts.

$1.23 \text{ J mol}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1}$ $0.23 \times 10^7 \text{ cd}$ $1.99/\text{kg}$ $1.345 \frac{\text{C}}{\text{mol}}$ $\sqrt{3} \text{ m}$	<pre> \usepackage{siunitx} \qty{1.23}{J.mol^{-1}.K^{-1}} \qty{.23e7}{\candela} \qty[per-mode = symbol]{1.99}{\per\kilogram} \qty[per-mode = fraction]{1,345}{\coulomb\per\mole} \qty[parse-numbers = false]{\sqrt{3}}{\metre} </pre>	<code>\\</code> <code>\\</code> <code>\\</code> <code>\\</code> <code>\\</code>
--	--	---

3-3-24

Unit	<i>cmd</i>	Symbol	Unit	<i>cmd</i>	Symbol
astronomicalunit	<code>\astronomicalunit</code>	au	hectare	<code>\hectare</code>	ha
bel	<code>\bel</code>	B	hour	<code>\hour</code>	h
dalton	<code>\dalton</code>	Da	litre	<code>\litre</code>	L
day	<code>\day</code>	d	minute (plane angle)	<code>\arcminute</code>	'
decibel	<code>\decibel</code>	dB	minute (time)	<code>\minute</code>	min
degree	<code>\degree</code>	°	second (plane angle)	<code>\arcsecond</code>	"
electronvolt	<code>\electronvolt</code>	eV	tonne	<code>\tonne</code>	t

Table 3.5: Non-SI units accepted for use with the International System of Units

`\qtylist[options]{numbers}{unit}`
`\qtyproduct[options]{numbers}{unit}`
`\qtyrange[options]{number1}{number2}{unit}`

In the same way that lists, products, and ranges of numbers can be given, the same commands exist for quantities. These then apply the unit to one or more of the entries, and combine exponents and similar manipulations, depending on the keys selected.

3-3-25

Typical inner-city speed limits are 7.5 km/h, 10 km/h, 30 km/h and 50 km/h. Cyclists usually travel between 10 km/h to 25 km/h.

`\usepackage{siunitx}` % next line defines a new unit...
`\DeclareSIUnit[per-mode=symbol]{kmh}{\kilo\metre\per\hour}`
Typical inner-city speed limits are
`\qtylist{7.5;10;30;50}{\kmh}`. Cyclists
usually travel between `\qtyrange{10}{25}{\kmh}`.

`\ang[options]{angle}`

Specifying angles is somewhat of an exception because it is done through its own command. One of the reasons is that there are two conventions supported for specifying the *angle*: either one can give a decimal number or one can specify the *angle* as a semicolon-separated list of degrees, minutes, and seconds (aka arc-format).

3-3-26

10° 60.948° −3°
12°3′ 1°2′3″ 1″

`\usepackage{siunitx}`
`\ang{10}` `\quad \ang{60.948}` `\quad \ang{-3}` `\quad \ang{12;3}` `\quad \ang{1;2;3}` `\quad \ang{;;1}`

Complex values as numbers or in quantities

Complex numbers, and even complex quantities, come up in some parts of physical science. To support these, the package offers dedicated commands that take a complex number rather than a normal decimal.¹

¹Earlier versions of the package allowed complex values in the standard command number arguments; this was removed because it led to some problematic interaction of options.

Prefix	<i>cmd</i>	Symbol	Power	Prefix	<i>cmd</i>	Symbol	Power
yocto	<code>\yocto</code>	y	−24	deca	<code>\deca</code>	da	1
zepto	<code>\zepto</code>	z	−21	hecto	<code>\hecto</code>	h	2
atto	<code>\atto</code>	a	−18	kilo	<code>\kilo</code>	k	3
femto	<code>\femto</code>	f	−15	mega	<code>\mega</code>	M	6
pico	<code>\pico</code>	p	−12	giga	<code>\giga</code>	G	9
nano	<code>\nano</code>	n	−9	tera	<code>\tera</code>	T	12
micro	<code>\micro</code>	μ	−6	peta	<code>\peta</code>	P	15
milli	<code>\milli</code>	m	−3	exa	<code>\exa</code>	E	18
centi	<code>\centi</code>	c	−2	zetta	<code>\zetta</code>	Z	21
deci	<code>\deci</code>	d	−1	yotta	<code>\yotta</code>	Y	24

Table 3.6: SI prefixes

`\complexnum{number} \complexqty{number}{unit}`

The imaginary root is indicated with `i` and has to be present in the *number* argument.

$$(1 + 2i) \times 10^3$$

$$(2.3 - 3.4i) \Omega$$

`\usepackage{siunitx}`
`\complexnum{1+2ie3} \ \complexqty{2.3-3.4i}{\ohm}`

3-3-27

Tabulating numbers

Documents that use a large number of values often show these in tables, and for this `siunitx` provides some extra support for formatting these in a consistent way.

In addition to the keys we have already seen and those discussed below, `siunitx` has a number of dedicated keys for aligning values in tables. These are provided by the `S` column specifier, which is discussed in more detail in Chapter 6 on page 484.

Customizing numerical data representation

*Input parsing of
numbers*

The default conventions for number parsing are suitable for most situations. However, if necessary, a large number of keys are available to adjust the display of numbers. For example, both the period and comma are interpreted as a decimal separator, but if your input data obtained through external sources uses one of them as a thousand separator, then this default needs changing to parse the numbers correctly. In the same way you can adjust what is recognized as exponent markers; what constitutes digits, signs, special symbols; how to mark up uncertainty in the values; etc.

Writing out these unit macros in full can sometimes be tedious, and so the package provides a (large) set of pre-defined abbreviations, for example `\kg` for `\kilogram` and `\nA` for `\nanoampere`. These abbreviations are, in general, command versions of how they would be written literally, with `u` taking the place of the micro symbol. For a full list of supported abbreviations, see the package manual.

Inter-unit products are implicitly given by listing the unit macros one after another. Powers of 2 and 3 can be specified through `\square` and `\cubic` (before a unit) or `\squared` and `\cubed` (after a unit) and general powers through `\raiseto` or `\tothe`. General qualifiers are specified with `\of`.

		<code>\usepackage{siunitx}</code>
		<code>\unit{\raiseto{4}{\metre}} \quad</code>
3-3-28	$\text{m}^4 \text{H}^{-5} \text{mol}_{\text{cat}}$	<code>\unit{\per\henry\tothe{5}} \quad \unit{\mole\of{cat}}</code>

It is also possible to prohibit parsing altogether, either because the numbers should be processed as given or because the data contains L^AT_EX constructs that cannot be correctly parsed. In that case the number is printed in math mode.

		<code>\usepackage{siunitx}</code>
German:	4 276 928 295.32	German: <code>\hfill \num{4 276 928 295,32} \l[8pt]</code>
Spanish:	4 276 928 295.32	<code>\sisetup{input-ignore=. ,input-decimal-markers={,}}</code> Spanish: <code>\hfill \num{4.276.928.295,32} \l[8pt]</code>
English:	4 276 928 295.32	<code>\sisetup{input-ignore={,} ,input-decimal-markers=.}</code> English: <code>\hfill \num{4,276,928,295.32} \l[8pt]</code>
Not parsed:	4, 276, 928, 295.32	<code>\sisetup{parse-numbers=false}</code> Not parsed: <code>\hfill \num{4,276,928,295.32} \l[8pt]</code>
3-3-29 Not parsed:	$\sqrt{2} + \text{offset m}$	Not parsed: <code>\hfill \qty{\sqrt{2}+\text{offset}}{\metre}</code>

The previous example shows that all numbers are correctly parsed and that regardless of input conventions the output is always the same (using small spaces as a digit group separator for large numbers unless parsing is off).

As well as simple adjustments to appearance, some manipulation of the data values is possible. Most notably, the package is capable of carrying out rounding both to a fixed number of figures or a number of places. This is enabled using the `round-mode` key, which would be set to either `places` or `figures` (the default is `off`). The rounding precision is defined through `round-precision` (default 2). Rounding using an uncertainty is also possible, by setting `round-mode` to `uncertainty`.

Rounding data

There are two common methods to handle cases where the rounded fraction of the number is exactly 0.5: rounding up (default) or rounding to the nearest even number. The next two examples show the difference in behavior:

A: 18.276(1)	18.276	124.5	1.245×10^2	<code>\usepackage{siunitx}</code>
B: 18.276(1)	18.28	124.50	1.25×10^2	<code>\newcommand\sample[1]{\#1: \num{18.276(1)}\hfill \num{18.276}\hfill \num{124.5}\hfill \num{1.245e2}\ll[8pt]}</code>
C: 18.276(1)	18.3	124.5	1.2×10^2	<code>\sample{A}</code>
D: 18.276(1)	18.276	124.500	1.245×10^2	<code>\sisetup{round-mode=places} \sample{B}</code>
E: 18.276(1)	18.3	125	1.25×10^2	<code>\sisetup{round-precision=1} \sample{C}</code>
				<code>\sisetup{round-precision=3} \sample{D}</code>
				<code>\sisetup{round-mode=figures} \sample{E}</code>
F: 18.276(1)	18.3	124	1.24×10^2	<code>\sisetup{round-half=even} \sample{F}</code>

If a number is shown as zero after rounding, it is sometimes desirable that this is represented as being below a certain threshold. This can be indicated with `round-minimum`.

					<code>\usepackage{siunitx}</code>	
					<code>\newcommand\sample[1]{#1:\hfill \num{0.005}\hfill</code>	
					<code>\num{0.0023}\hfill \num{-0.005}\hfill</code>	
					<code>\num{-0.0023}\\[5pt]}</code>	
A:	0.005	0.0023	-0.005	-0.0023		
B:	0.01	0.00	-0.01	0.00		<code>\sample{A}</code>
C:	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	<code>\setup{round-mode=places}</code>	<code>\sample{B}</code>
					<code>\setup{round-half=even}</code>	<code>\sample{C}</code>
D:	<0.01	<0.01	>-0.01	>-0.01	<code>\setup{round-minimum=0.01}</code>	<code>\sample{D}</code>

3-3-31

Scientific notation

It is possible to automatically convert numbers to scientific notation. This is controlled through the key `exponent-mode` that takes the values `input` (default), `scientific`, `engineering`, or `fixed`. With `engineering` the exponent is always a power of 3; with `fixed` it is given by the value of the key `fixed-exponent`.

					<code>\usepackage{siunitx}</code>	
					<code>\newcommand\sample[1]{#1: \num{0.005} \hfill</code>	
					<code>\num{0.03} \hfill \num{123.4(1)} \\[5pt]}</code>	
A:	0.005	0.03	123.4(1)			<code>\sample{A}</code>
B:	5×10^{-3}	3×10^{-2}	$1.234(1) \times 10^2$		<code>\setup{exponent-mode=scientific}</code>	<code>\sample{B}</code>
C:	5×10^{-3}	30×10^{-3}	123.4(1)		<code>\setup{exponent-mode=engineering}</code>	<code>\sample{C}</code>
D:	0.5×10^{-2}	3×10^{-2}	$12340(10) \times 10^{-2}$		<code>\setup{exponent-mode=fixed,fixed-exponent=-2}</code>	<code>\sample{D}</code>

3-3-32

Managing exponents

When exponents are present in the input, then the exponent base is assumed to be 10. If that is an invalid assumption, you can change the interpretation of the base using the `exponent-base` key. You can also retain zero exponents that are normally dropped or drop a mantissa of 1 that is normally kept. By default a \times symbol is used between mantissa and exponent base; with `exponent-product` a different symbol can be specified.

					<code>\usepackage{siunitx}</code>	
					<code>\newcommand\sample[1]{#1:\quad \num{1e4}\hfill</code>	
					<code>\num{5e8}\hfill \num{1.7e0}\\[5pt]}</code>	
A:	1×10^4	5×10^8	1.7			<code>\sample{A}</code>
B:	10^4	5×10^8	1.7×10^0		<code>\setup{retain-zero-exponent,</code>	
					<code>retain-unity-mantissa=false}</code>	<code>\sample{B}</code>
C:	2^4	$5 \cdot 2^8$	$1.7 \cdot 2^0$		<code>\setup{exponent-base=2,exponent-product=\cdot}</code>	<code>\sample{C}</code>

3-3-33

The package documentation describes further keys that can adjust (almost) any aspect of the treatment of numerical data.

Customizing units and quantities

If a unit is the product of several different units, then `inter-unit-product` is used as a separator between them (default `\,`). If you prefer a mathematical symbol like `\cdot` it often needs some spatial adjustments. A quotient indicated with `\per` can be represented in various ways through the key `per-mode`. It can take the values `power` (default), `power-positive-first` (move later positive powers before the quotient), `fraction` (use `fraction-command` to specify the command generating the fraction), `symbol` (use `per-symbol` as the symbol), or `repeated-symbol` (if there are several `\per` commands).

By default `\per` applies only to the next unit in the spec, so you need several such commands, if different units are part of the quotient denominator. This convention fits with the way units are normally pronounced in English, but you can turn on `sticky-per` to change that.

Instead of displaying prefixes as symbols, one can also direct `siunitx` to attempt to convert them to powers; this is shown in the last line of the example.

A: $\text{J Mmol}^{-1} \text{K}^{-1}$	$5.3 \text{ kA mol}^{-1} \text{ ds}$	<code>\usepackage{siunitx,xfrac}</code>	
B: $\text{J Mmol}^{-1} \text{K}^{-1}$	$5.3 \text{ kA ds mol}^{-1}$	<code>\newcommand\sample[1]{#1: \unit{joule\per</code>	
C: $\frac{\text{J}}{\text{Mmol K}}$	$5.3 \frac{\text{kA ds}}{\text{mol}}$	<code>\mega\mole\per\K}</code>	
D: J/Mmol K	5.3 kA ds/mol	<code>\hfill \qty{5.3}{\kilo\ampere\per\mole\deci\second}\[5pt]</code>	<code>\sample{A}</code>
E: $\text{J/Mmol} \cdot \text{K}$	$5.3 \text{ kA} \cdot \text{ds/mol}$	<code>\sisetup{per-mode=power-positive-first}</code>	<code>\sample{B}</code>
F: $\text{J}/(\text{Mmol} \cdot \text{K})$	$5.3 \text{ kA} \cdot \text{ds/mol}$	<code>\sisetup{per-mode=fraction}</code>	<code>\sample{C}</code>
G: J/Mmol/K	$5.3 \text{ kA} \cdot \text{ds/mol}$	<code>\sisetup{fraction-command=\sfrac}</code>	<code>\sample{D}</code>
H: J/Mmol/K	$5.3 \times 10^2 \text{ A/mol} \cdot \text{s}$	<code>\sisetup{inter-unit-product=\cdot}</code>	<code>\sample{E}</code>
		<code>\sisetup{per-mode=symbol}</code>	<code>\sample{F}</code>
		<code>\sisetup{per-mode=repeated-symbol}</code>	<code>\sample{G}</code>
		<code>\sisetup{prefix-mode=extract-exponent}</code>	<code>\sample{H}</code>

Placement and handling of qualifiers is managed by the `qualifier-mode` key accepting `subscript` (default), `brackets`, `space`, or `phrase`. For the latter the added phrase comes from `qualifier-phrase`.

A: $3 \text{ m}_{\text{oak}}^3$	$5 \text{ kW}_{\text{sol}} \text{ h}_{\text{dl}}^{-1}$	<code>\usepackage{siunitx} \DeclareSIQualifier\daylight{dl}</code>	
B: 3 m(oak)^3	$5 \text{ kW(sol) h(dl)}^{-1}$	<code>\DeclareSIQualifier{oak{oak}} \DeclareSIQualifier{solar{solar}}</code>	
C: 3 m oak^3	$5 \text{ kW sol h dl}^{-1}$	<code>\newcommand\sample[1]{#1: \qty{3}{\cubic\m{oak}}</code>	
D: 3 m oak^3	$5 \text{ kW sol h dl}^{-1}$	<code>\hfil \qty{5}{\kW\solar\per\hour\daylight}\[5pt]</code>	<code>\sample{A}</code>
E: 3 m t:oak^3	$5 \text{ kW t:sol h t:dl}^{-1}$	<code>\sisetup{qualifier-mode=bracket}</code>	<code>\sample{B}</code>
		<code>\sisetup{qualifier-mode=space}</code>	<code>\sample{C}</code>
		<code>\sisetup{qualifier-mode=phrase}</code>	<code>\sample{D}</code>
		<code>\sisetup{qualifier-phrase={\text{\,,t:}}}</code>	<code>\sample{E}</code>

In quantities, the combination of number and unit is logically speaking a product. How that is represented is defined by the `quantity-product` keys, by default a thin

space. Line breaking at this point is normally not allowed, though in an emergency it can be enabled with `allow-quantity-breaks`.

Special care is also necessary when a unit applies to several numbers, e.g., where there is a separated uncertainty component or in a product of quantities. In that case the unit applies to all components. How this is displayed is configurable with the key `separate-uncertainty`. More granular control is possible through `separate-uncertainty-units` that accepts `bracket` (the default when `separate-uncertainty` is given), `repeat`, or `single`.

A: 12.3(4) km	<code>\usepackage{siunitx}</code>	
B: (12.3 ± 0.4) km	<code>\newcommand\sample[1]{#1: \qty{12.3(4)}{\km}\[5pt]}</code>	
C: 12.3 km ± 0.4 km	<code>\sisetup{separate-uncertainty}</code>	<code>\sample{A}</code>
D: (12.3 ± 0.4) km	<code>\sisetup{separate-uncertainty-units=repeat}</code>	<code>\sample{B}</code>
E: 12.3 ± 0.4 km	<code>\sisetup{separate-uncertainty-units=bracket}</code>	<code>\sample{C}</code>
	<code>\sisetup{separate-uncertainty-units=single}</code>	<code>\sample{D}</code>
		<code>\sample{E}</code>

3-3-36

`\DeclareSIUnit[options]{cmd}{definition}`

With `\DeclareSIUnit` you can define new unit commands or change the appearance of existing ones. The *definition* can be anything that would be allowed in the argument to `\unit`. If you specify any keys, they are applied to that unit definition only and, if necessary, can be overwritten by the optional argument to `\unit` or `\qty` when the unit is used.¹

	<code>\usepackage{siunitx}</code>
You can drive 50 km/h	<code>\DeclareSIUnit[per-mode=symbol]\kmh{\kilo\metre\per\hour}</code>
in most cities.	You can drive <code>\qty{50}{\kmh}</code> in most cities.

3-3-37

`\DeclareSIPrefix{cmd}{notation}{power}`
`\DeclareSIPower{before-cmd}{after-cmd}{power}`
`\DeclareSIQualifier{cmd}{qualifier}`

All power prefixes defined in the SI standard are pre-defined by `siunitx`, but if necessary, new ones can be made available with `\DeclareSIPrefix`. More interesting, however, are power declarations because the package defines only those for the powers of two and three.

	<code>\usepackage{siunitx}</code>	<code>\DeclareSIPower\quartic\tothefourth{4}</code>
N ⁴ and m ⁴	<code>\unit{\newton\tothefourth}</code>	and <code>\unit{\quartic\metre}</code>

3-3-38

Finally, there is a general qualifier declaration for which the package provides no defaults, so it is up to the user to provide declarations as needed. It was already used in Example 3-3-35 on the previous page.

¹However, you cannot overwrite such settings using `\sisetup`.

Controlling printing

With the standard settings, siunitx prints almost all output in math mode.¹ It also ignores any font changes, for example italic or bold. This follows standard style guidelines that state that quantities are mathematical entities, which therefore should be treated the same as for example $y = mx + c$. This behavior is controllable using a series of keys that can select between math and text mode printing and determine which aspects of font selection are fixed.

The key `mode` sets which mode is used for printing output: this can be one of `math`, `text`, or `match`. The latter means that printing uses the prevailing mode, so remains in whichever mode the surrounding material is set in.

As T_EX's math and text modes work quite differently in terms of font selection, further font control depends on which mode is being used for printing. For many users, the most important outcome is to follow (or otherwise) surrounding bold or sans serif font selection from text. This is achieved using the keys `text-family-to-math` and `text-series-to-math` when siunitx is printing in math mode, and the keys `reset-text-family` and `reset-text-series` when printing in text mode. Thus, by setting all of these appropriately, one can always “follow” the surrounding font selection. Note that in the example the second `\qty` appears inside a formula.

	<code>\usepackage{siunitx}</code>
	<code>\DeclareSIUnit[per-mode=symbol]{\kmh}{\kilo\metre\per\hour}</code>
	<code>\newcommand\sample[1]{\textnormal{\noindent #1:}}</code>
	<code> The speed limit is \qty{100}{\kmh}.\par</code>
A: The speed limit is 100 km/h.	<code>\sffamily \sample{A} \textbf{\sample{B}}</code>
B: The speed limit is 100 km/h.	<code>\sisetup{text-family-to-math,text-series-to-math}</code>
C: The speed limit is 100 km/h.	<code>\sample{C} \textbf{\sample{D}}</code>
D: The speed limit is 100 km/h.	<code>\sisetup{mode=match,reset-text-family=false,</code>
	<code> reset-text-series=false}</code>
E: The speed limit is 100 km/h.	<code>\textbf{\sample{E}}</code>

3-3-39

3.4 Various ways of highlighting and quoting text

For highlighting text you can customize the font shape, weight, or size (see Section 9.3.1 on page 659). Text can also be uppercased, underlined, or the spacing between letters can be varied. Ways for performing such operations are offered by the four packages `textcase`, `ulem`, `soul`, and `microtype` discussed here.

General mechanisms for intelligent and context-dependent quoting are provided by the `csquotes` package, and for typesetting web resources we look at the packages `url` and `uri`.

We also cover a few more specialized packages, i.e., `dashundergaps` (for producing simple forms as an application of the `ulem` package) and `embrac` for producing upright parentheses or brackets while emphasizing text using italic font shapes.

¹Real textual material, such as the “to” used in a range of quantities, is printed in text mode.

3.4.1 Change case of text intelligently (formerly `textcase`)

The standard \LaTeX commands `\MakeUppercase` and `\MakeLowercase` change the characters in their arguments to uppercase or lowercase, respectively, thereby expanding macros as needed. For example,

```
\MakeUppercase{On \today}
```

results in something like “ON FEBRUARY 22, 2022”. Sometimes this changed more characters than desirable. For example, if the text contains a math formula, then uppercasing this formula is normally a bad idea because it changes its meaning. Similarly, arguments to the commands `\label`, `\ref`, and `\cite` represent semantic information, which, if modified, results in incorrect or missing references, because \LaTeX looks for the wrong labels.

The package `textcase` by David Carlisle overcame these defects by providing two alternative commands, `\MakeTextUppercase` and `\MakeTextLowercase`, which recognize math formulas and cross-referencing commands and leave them alone.

1 Textcase example

TEXT IN SECTION 1, ABOUT $a = b$ AND $\alpha \neq a$

```
\usepackage{textcase}
\section{Textcase example}\label{exa}
\MakeTextUppercase{Text in section-\ref{exa},
  about  $a=b$  and  $\alpha \neq a$  }
```

3-4-1

```
\MakeUppercase{text}   \MakeLowercase{text}   (improved in 2022)
```

With the June 2022 release of \LaTeX this functionality was integrated into core \LaTeX , so these days you can simply use `\MakeUppercase` and `\MakeLowercase` and achieve the same effect without the need to load a package:

1 Textcase example

TEXT IN SECTION 1, ABOUT $a = b$ AND $\alpha \neq a$

```
\section{Textcase example}\label{exa}
\MakeUppercase{Text in section-\ref{exa},
  about  $a=b$  and  $\alpha \neq a$  }
```

3-4-2

```
\NoCaseChange{text}
```

Sometimes portions of text should be left unchanged for one reason or another. With `\NoCaseChange` the `textcase` package provided a generic way to mark such parts. An improved version of that command has now been added to \LaTeX directly.

NEITHER OF THESE **FAIL**: $a + B = c$ AND *FORTUNA*TELY, but did so in the past!

```
\MakeUppercase{Neither of these \textbf{fail:  $a+B=c$ 
and} \emph{for\NoCaseChange{tuna}tely}},
  but did so in the past!}
```

3-4-3

Improved, because brace groups inside the argument of `\MakeTextUppercase` enforced uppercasing in the past, and the previous example would have failed in both places: it would have uppercased the formula and ignored the `\NoCaseChange`, because it was inside the braced argument of `\emph`. There have been workarounds, but fortunately they are no longer necessary.

The `textcase` package remains available for backwards compatibility and defines the commands `\MakeTextUppercase` and `\MakeTextLowercase`, but simply redirects them to use the kernel commands now.

3.4.2 `csquotes` — Context-sensitive quotation marks

Correctly quoting textual material usually depends on the context and requires some care. Not only do the quote characters change, for example, if the quote text itself contains quoted material, but one also has to ensure consistent attributions, etc.

\LaTeX itself offers rudimentary support for quotes in the English language, but not much else. For display quotes it has the `quote` environment, and for longer quotations it offers the `quotation` environment, but neither adds quote characters. In most classes these environments indent the text from both sides, and `quotation` typically also indents each paragraph. For in-line quotes, single or double quotation marks are used, but it is up to the user to select the correct pairs depending on the circumstances. People sometimes use straight marks (`"`), but this gives incorrect results.

<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">3-4-4</div>	<p>Alice said: “Why did you do that, Bob?” And Bob answered: “What do you mean by ‘that’, dear Alice?”</p> <p>“I mean the use of "straight" marks!”</p>	<p>Alice said: ‘‘Why did you do that, Bob?’’ And Bob answered: ‘‘What do you mean by ‘that’, dear Alice?’’</p> <p>‘‘I mean the use of "straight" marks!’’</p>
--	---	---

If all this is done manually, there is a high likelihood that inconsistencies creep in, and if a language other than English is needed or a publisher’s house style poses special requirements, then a lot of reworking is necessary.

To resolve these issues and to provide advanced facilities for in-line and display quotations, Philipp Lehman developed the `csquotes` package, now maintained by Joseph Wright. It offers support for a wide range of tasks, from the simple applications to the complex demands of formal quotations. The quote styles are fully configurable so that without touching the document content it is possible to drastically alter the appearance.

`\enquote*{text}` `\textquote*[attribution] [punct] {text} tpunct`

The purpose of the `\enquote` command is simply to add the correct quotation marks around *text* depending on the context (nesting level, current language) and the current quoting style. (Think of “en”circle if you wonder about the command name.) On the top-level it uses so-called “outer” marks, and if quotes are nested, it toggles between “outer” and “inner” marks. With the star form you force it to always use inner marks.

By default two levels of quoting are supported: if your document has a deeper nesting, you receive an error message. However, this is easily repaired by specifying the needed nesting level in the option `maxlevel`. Most of the time deeper nestings are either a mistake (like a forgotten closing brace) or at least a questionable presentation of your material — which you perhaps should consider changing. It is therefore best

to leave this default untouched unless you really know that you need more levels. An example with three levels is Example 3-4-11 on page 184.

	<code>\usepackage{csquotes}</code>	
Alice said: “Why did you do that, Bob?”	Alice said: <code>\enquote{Why did you do that, Bob?}</code>	
And Bob answered: “What do you mean by ‘that’, dear Alice?”	And Bob answered: <code>\enquote{What do you mean by \enquote{that}, dear Alice?}</code>	

3-4-5

The `\textquote` command is similar to `\enquote`, but offers further control with its two optional arguments and its facility to scan for a trailing punctuation. If present, the *attribution* holds attribution information, which may be a name or a `\cite` command or a combination of both.

	<code>\usepackage{csquotes}</code>	
He said “Our life is full of empty space.” (Umberto Eco) and “Space is big. You just won’t believe how [...]” (Douglas Adams).	He said <code>\textquote[Umberto Eco][.]{Our life is full of empty space}</code> and <code>\textquote[Douglas Adams]{Space is big. You just won’t believe how [\ldots]}</code> .	

3-4-6

In the optional *punct* argument you should place any final punctuation of the quote. While splitting the quote this way needs getting used to, it helps a lot to cater to some of the more peculiar requirements concerning quotation handling.

For example, the quote attributed to Umberto Eco in the previous example is a full sentence (ending in a period), while the one by Adams is not, and the period after it belongs to the outer sentence. Whether such periods should be placed inside the quotes or outside is a matter of style and convention. For example, the standard American quotation style, as advocated by the Chicago Manual of Style [40], requires that a period or comma immediately after closing quotation marks is to be moved inside the quotes, even if it is logically not a part of the quotation.¹

Because analyzing the *text* argument is \TeX nically a rather difficult undertaking, one needs to explicitly tell the command if there is final punctuation. Scanning ahead is simpler, so the package automatically checks whether the mandatory *text* argument is followed by (trailing) punctuation outside the quoted material and then uses this information to decide where to place the *punct* and/or *tpunct*.

`\begin{displayquote}[attribution][punct]`

What the `\textquote` command does for in-line quotations, the `displayquote` environment does for quotations that should be displayed on their own. The advantage of choosing this environment over the standard `quote` or `quotation` environments is that it supports *attribution*, can correctly handle final punctuation, and is easily configurable to a wide range of formats. Furthermore, whatever the configuration, it always matches the results from the `\blockquote` command discussed below.

For example, with `\SetBlockEnvironment{env}` you can specify which environment should be used to do the actual quoting. By default it is `quote`, but this

¹While this book generally follows American spelling and style, we have vetoed this convention, because it feels rather unnatural for European authors.

way you can change it to quotation or provide the name of your own quoting environment. Such a change then applies to any type of display or block quote.

He said:	<code>\usepackage{csquotes} \SetBlockEnvironment{quotation}</code>
Our life is full of empty space. (Umberto Eco)	He said: <code>\begin{displayquote}</code> [Umberto Eco] <code>[.]</code> Our life is full of empty space <code>\end{displayquote}</code>
Space is big. You just won't believe how vastly, hugely, mind- bogglingly big [...] (Douglas Adams)	<code>\begin{displayquote}</code> [Douglas Adams] Space is big. You just won't believe how vastly, hugely, mind-bogglingly big <code>[\ldots]</code> <code>\end{displayquote}</code>

3-4-7

In academic writing it is common to embed short quotations in the running text (e.g., use `\textquote`), but to set longer ones as separate and clearly distinguished paragraphs — so-called block quotations (provided by `displayquote`). When to make the change from one to the other type may depend on criteria like the number of lines or number of words in the quotation and often varies from one place or publisher to the next. To help with this situation, `csquotes` offers the command `\blockquote`.

`\blockquote*[attribution] [punct] {text} tpunct`

This command takes the same arguments as `\textquote`. It measures the length of the quotation, and if that exceeds a configurable threshold, it typesets the *text* in the layout of a `displayquote` environment (but also takes care of a trailing *tpunct* punctuation). Otherwise, it behaves like a `\textquote` or `\textquote*` command and produces an in-line quotation. Inside footnotes, parboxes, minipages, or floats it by default always forces in-line quotations. This can be changed by loading the package with the option `csdisplay`.

He started his talk with the quotes “Our life is full of empty space.” (Umberto Eco) and	<code>\usepackage{csquotes}</code> <code>\SetBlockEnvironment{quotation}</code>
Space is big. You just won't believe how vastly, hugely, mind-bogglingly big it is. I mean, you may think it's a long way down the road to the chemist, but that's just peanuts to space ... (Douglas Adams).	He started his talk with the quotes <code>\blockquote</code> [Umberto Eco] <code>[.]</code> {Our life is full of empty space} and <code>\blockquote</code> [Douglas Adams]{Space is big. You just won't believe how vastly, hugely, mind-bogglingly big it is. I mean, you may think it's a long way down the road to the chemist, but that's just peanuts to space <code>\ldots</code> }. Later on he finished with <code>\blockquote</code> [Albert Einstein]{God does not play <code>\ldots</code> }.

3-4-8

By default display quotes are used whenever the current quote consists of three or more lines. This can be globally changed by specifying a different number with the `threshold` option when loading the package or within the document by using `\SetBlockThreshold`; both ways are shown in Example 3-4-9.

If you prefer the length evaluation to be by words rather than lines, set the option `thresholdtype` to `words` and the `threshold` value to an appropriate value such as 50. If there are explicit line or paragraph breaks within *text*, the quote is set as a block regardless of the threshold. To change that, set `parthreshold` to `false`. Further fine-tuning possibilities are discussed in the documentation [118], but they should be seldom needed.

The option `debug` helps when you want to understand why the package made a certain selection: if enabled, it writes that information into the transcript file.

Quotations with formal citations

To indicate the source of a quotation you can use a `\cite` command in the optional *attribution* argument of the commands discussed above. For documents that are supposed to provide proper references for all quotes used, the `csquotes` package offers another set of commands that formalize this approach by requiring the citation key and optional citation arguments as part of the command syntax. These commands all have an additional “c” (for citation) in their name, for example, `\textcquote` instead of `\textquote` or `\blockcquote`, etc.

<code>\textcquote*</code>	$\underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}}_{[attribution]}$	<code>[punct] {text} tpunct</code>
<code>\textcquote*</code>	$\underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}}_{[post-note]}$	<code>{key-list} [punct] {text} tpunct</code>
<code>\textcquote*</code>	<code>[pre-note] [post-note]</code>	<code>{key-list} [punct] {text} tpunct</code>

As shown above, the optional *attribution* gets replaced by a mandatory *key-list* argument (receiving the citation key or keys) preceded by one or two further optional arguments, all of which are internally passed to a `\cite` command.

Standard L^AT_EX's `\cite` command only understands *post-note*; thus, without loading an additional package only *post-note* is supported. However, extended bibliography packages, such as `natbib` or `biblatex`, provide `\cite` commands with two optional arguments, and in that case the versions with two optional arguments can be used.

Changes, insertions, and deletions

When quoting material, there is often the need to make changes to the quoted text, and those modifications should be properly marked up to enable the reader to see the omissions, alterations, or insertions easily. To help with this task, `csquotes` offers a number of commands (all configurable to adhere to any required convention).

<code>\textelp{}</code>	<code>\textelp{text}</code>	<code>\textelp*{text}</code>
-------------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------

Omissions or longer modifications should be marked up with `\textelp`. If used with an empty argument, it prints by default an ellipsis surrounded by brackets to indicate where text is missing. If you supply *text* in the argument, then it is typeset in a second set of brackets after the ellipsis to indicate that it was added in place of the removed material. The star form reverses the placement of *text* and ellipsis.

Do not forget the empty pair of braces if you have not added any text. Without it, the next letter from your document will be mistakenly picked up as *text*.

The next example shows both forms in practice (the original quote by Adams used “chemist”, while the US printing said “drug store”).

He started his talk with the quotes “Our life is full of empty space.” (Umberto Eco) and “Space is big. You just won’t believe how vastly, hugely, mind-bogglingly big it is. I mean, you may think it’s a long way down the road to the [drug store] [...], but that’s just peanuts to space [...].” (Douglas Adams). Later on he finished with

God does not play [...] (Albert Einstein).

3-4-9

```
\textins*{text}    \textdel{text}
```

For insertions of words or phrases use `\textins`, and for minor modifications like capitalization of a letter use `\textins*`. Both forms by default surround the *text* with a pair of brackets. Example 3-4-15 shows how to change this behavior.

Short deletions (like removing a surplus character) can be marked up with `\textdel`. By default this just outputs a pair of brackets, and the deleted *text* is not shown. For longer deletions (that are really omissions) use `\textelp` instead.

```
\usepackage[threshold=4]{csquotes}
He started his talk with the quotes
\blockquote[Umberto Eco]{Our life is full
  of empty space} and
\blockquote[Douglas Adams]{Space is big. You
  just won't believe how vastly, hugely,
  mind-bogglingly big it is. I mean, you may
  think it's a long way down the road to the
  \textelp*{drug store}, but that's just peanuts
  to space \textelp{}}. Later on he finished with
\SetBlockThreshold{0}% -- force block quote
\blockquote[Albert Einstein]{God does
  not play \textelp{}}.
```

3-4-10

Corr[]ection: [chemist] [sic]

```
\usepackage{csquotes}
Corr\textdel{r}ection: \textins*{chemist} \textins{sic}
```

Language support

By default `csquotes` determines the correct quotation marks to use, based on the language that is in force at the beginning of the document. It then uses these quote marks throughout the whole document. Alternatively, if you load the package with the option `autostyle`, it continuously monitors language changes throughout the document and adjusts the quotation symbols when necessary (at the cost of processing speed).

As a further possibility, one can load the package with the option `style` that expects the name of a quoting style as its value. It then uses that style throughout the document. Standard quoting styles have language names, such as `english`, `german`, or `french`, and some of them even have subvariants that can be individually selected — for a full list refer to the package documentation [118]. There is even a way to define your own styles, if necessary.

If `csquotes` has problems loading the support for a particular language, it issues a warning and switches to the default language. Because such warnings can be easily

overlooked, consider loading the package with the option `strict` that turns all such warnings into errors.

Managing quotes in foreign languages

When typesetting a quote written in a language different from the main document language, one has to make sure that it is correctly hyphenated and possibly that it uses quotation marks common for that language (though you may want to be consistent with the document language and use the standard quoting symbols from there). For these types of needs, `csquotes` offers support through a number of commands as long as the document has some multilingual support, e.g., through `babel` or `polyglossia`.

`\foreignquote*{language}{text}` `\hyphenquote*{language}{text}`

The `\foreignquote` combines `\enquote` with the `\foreignlanguage` command (from `babel` or the `polyglossia` package); i.e., it switches hyphenation rules, enables any extra commands for the specified *language*, and uses the quotation marks set up for that language in case `csquotes` was loaded with the option `autostyle`.

In contrast, `\hyphenquote` always only changes hyphenation rules (by internally using the appropriate support command from the multilingual package), and the quotation marks remain those of the surrounding language.

Note the use of `maxlevel` in the next example to account for the three levels of nesting. You may have to trust me in my claim that “wunderbar” is correctly hyphenated, but the use of English and German quote marks in the two sentences can be easily spotted.

<p>“He said ‘I can speak „wunderbar“ German.’”</p> <p>„Er sagte ‘I can speak “wunderbar” German.’“</p>	<pre> \usepackage[ngerman,english]{babel} \usepackage[maxlevel=3,autostyle]{csquotes} \enquote{He said \enquote{I can speak \foreignquote{ngerman}{wunderbar} German.}} \selectlanguage{ngerman} \enquote{Er sagte \foreignquote{english}{I can speak \hyphenquote{ngerman}{wunderbar} German.}}</pre>
--	---

3-4-11

`\foreigntextquote*{language}[attribution][punct]{text}tpunct`
`\hyphentextquote* {language}[attribution][punct]{text}tpunct`

For all other quoting commands (and environments) discussed so far, there are also versions that combine them with `\foreignlanguage` or the `hyphenrules` environment. The general concept is to prepend `foreign` or `hyphen` to the command name. These commands then all have an additional first mandatory argument specifying the *language* of the quotation. This means you also can use the commands `\foreignblockquote` and `\hyphenblockquote` or their star forms and the environments `foreigndisplayquote` or `hyphendisplayquote` to typeset quotations in a foreign language.

```
\hybridblockquote*{lang} [attribution] [punct] {text} tpunct
```

An interesting further possibility is the `\hybridblockquote` command that behaves like `\hyphentextquote` if the quotation is short and like `\foreignblockquote` otherwise.

Further configuration possibilities

In addition to the package options, `csquotes` offers a larger number of hooks that can be redefined to change most aspects of the output generated by the user commands discussed above. In this section we show a few important possibilities for customization, but essentially all commands can be customized in similar ways. Thus, if you are required to modify other aspects, it is most likely possible. In that case, please consult the package documentation [118] for further details.

```
\mkcitation{attribution} \mkccitation{cite-command}
```

All commands that take an optional *attribution* argument pass that argument on to the `\mkcitation` hook for processing. By default this surrounds the *attribution* with parentheses and separates it from preceding text by an interword space. If there is no *attribution* argument, nothing is output. Example 3-4-12 shows a redefinition that places all attributions into footnotes.

The `\mkccitation` hook has the same default definition but is used by the formal quotation commands that have a mandatory *key-list* argument. It receives the full `\cite` command with all relevant optional arguments as input.

```
\mktextquote{open}{text}{close}{punct}{tpunct}{citation}
```

The `\mktextquote` hook is responsible for formatting in-line quotations and is used by any of the commands that do this and support attribution or formal citation. This includes all “blockquote” commands when they decide to produce a short in-line quotation (but not `\enquote` and derived commands).

The arguments *text*, *punct*, and *tpunct* are passed on unchanged from the calling command. The *open* and *close* arguments receive the open and close marks as determined by the context (language and nesting level), and *citation* receives the result of `\mkcitation` or in the case of formal quote commands that of `\mkccitation`. If there was no *punct* or *tpunct*, those arguments will be empty. The same is true for *citation* if there was not any *attribution*.

The task of `\mktextquote` is then mainly to place all arguments in the right order, but for more complicated tasks it can also do some further processing based on the values in certain arguments (see the helper commands below). Its default definition is equivalent to

```
\newcommand\mktextquote[6]{\#1\#2\#4\#3\#6\#5}
```

which means that the output starts with the *open* quote mark (*#1*), followed by the quote *text* (*#2*), followed by final *punctuation* (*#4*, which may be empty) and followed

by the *close* quote mark (#3). This is then followed by the *citation* (#6, which is either empty or provides its own separation). Finally, the trailing *tpunct* is appended (#5, which again can be empty).

Implementing
American quotation
style

Scary, isn't it? In fact, it is not so difficult if you stare at it for a moment, and it obviously offers a lot of flexibility. For example, below we show how to implement American-style quoting, where a final *tpunct* (#5) moves into the quoted material—all that it needed is shuffling the order of arguments a bit.

He started his talk with the quotes “Our life is full of empty space.”¹ and “Space is big. You just won’t believe how vastly, hugely, mind-bogglingly big it is. I mean, you may think it’s a long way down the road to the [...]chemist], but that’s just peanuts to space [...]”² Later he finished with “God does not play [...]”³

¹Umberto Eco

²Douglas Adams

³Albert Einstein

```
\usepackage[threshold=5]{csquotes}
\renewcommand\mkcitation [1]{\footnote{#1}}
\renewcommand\mktextquote[6]{#1#2#4#5#3#6}
```

3-4-12

```
He started his talk with the quotes
\blockquote[Umberto Eco][.]{Our life is full of empty
    space} and
\blockquote[Douglas Adams]{Space is big. You just
    won't believe how vastly, hugely, mind-bogglingly
    big it is. I mean, you may think it's a long way
    down the road to the \textelp{chemist}, but that's
    just peanuts to space \textelp{}}.
Later he finished with \blockquote[Albert Einstein]
{God does not play \textelp{}}.
```

```
\mkbblockquote{text}{punct}{tpunct}{citation}
```

The `\mkbblockquote` command does a similar job but is used whenever a block quote is produced by a user command (for display environments, see below). Given that block quotes are already visually separated, they are normally typeset without quotation marks. For that reason `\mkbblockquote` does not receive *open* or *close* quotation marks as arguments. However, it is easy enough to add them to block quotes, as shown in the next example.

This example also uses the helper `\ifblank` to automatically add a `\textelp` command at the end in the case of incomplete quotations.

He started with the quotes “Our life is full of empty space.” (Umberto Eco) and

“Space is big. You just won’t believe how vastly, hugely, mind-bogglingly big [...]” (Douglas Adams)

Later he finished with “God does not play [...]” (Albert Einstein)

```
\usepackage[threshold=1]{csquotes}
\renewcommand\mktextquote[6]
    {#1#2\ifblank{#4}{ \textelp{}}{#4}#5#3#6}
\renewcommand\mkbblockquote[4]
    {\enquote{#1\ifblank{#2}{ \textelp{}}{#2}#3}#4}
```

```
He started with the quotes
\blockquote[Umberto Eco][.]{Our life is full of empty
    space} and
\blockquote[Douglas Adams]{Space is big. You just
    won't believe how vastly, hugely, mind-bogglingly
    big}.
Later he finished with
\blockquote[Albert Einstein]{God does not play}.
```

3-4-13

```
\mkbegdisplayquote{punct}{citation} \mkenddisplayquote{punct}{citation}
```

There are two hooks to handle `displayquote` and related environments, one for the beginning and one for the end of the environment. Both receive the final *punctuation* and the *citation* (*attribution* or formal citation) specified on the environment as arguments, though normally these are needed only when the end of the environment is reached, i.e., `\mkenddisplayquote` is executed.

As an application, the next example shows how the *citation* can be forced onto a new line if it does not fully fit with the last line of the quotation. What happens in the redefinition of `\mkenddisplayquote` is this: first we typeset any terminal punctuation (#1) and then a nonbreakable stretchable space followed by a `\nolinebreak` [3]. This does not prohibit a line break at this point, but the break is discouraged. If the line break is taken, then the next line starts with another nonbreakable stretchable space followed by the *citation* placed into an `\mbox` to ensure that it does not break across lines. If the break between the two stretchable spaces is not taken, then everything must fit into the last line. In both cases the *citation* is placed at the far end of the line.

Force the attribution on its on the next line, if necessary

If you like this style, then you should, of course, implement it in `\mkblockquote` as well, to get consistent results.

```

He said:
    Our life is full of empty space.
                (Umberto Eco)
and
    Space is big. You just won't believe
    how [...] big [...] (Douglas Adams)

\usepackage{csquotes}
\renewcommand\mkenddisplayquote[2]
    {#1\hspace*{\stretch{1}}\nolinebreak[3]%
    \hspace*{\stretch{1}}\mbox{#2}}
He said: \begin{displayquote}[Umberto Eco][.]
    Our life is full of empty space
\end{displayquote}
and \begin{displayquote}[Douglas Adams]
    Space is big. You just won't believe how
    \textelp{} big \textelp{}
\end{displayquote}

```

3-4-14

```
\mktextins{insertion} \mktextmod{modification} \mktextdel{deletion}
```

The hook `\mktextins` generates the typeset result of `\textins`, while the command `\mktextmod` does the same for `\textins*`, and `\mktextdel` produces the output for `\textdel`.

If you prefer, for example, to use parentheses instead of brackets or if you want modifications to be indicated by some ellipsis in addition to the new text or if you want to show deleted text (struck out), these are the commands to redefine (though perhaps not in this inconsistent combination with both parentheses and brackets):

```

Corr[f]ection:
[...chemist]
(sic)

\usepackage{csquotes,ulem}
\renewcommand\mktextins[1]{(\textit{#1})}
\renewcommand\mktextmod[1]{[\textellipsis #1]}
\renewcommand\mktextdel[1]{[\sout{#1}]}
Corr\textdel{r}ection: \ \textins*{chemist} \ \textins{sic}

```

3-4-15

```
\mktextelp \mktextelpins{insertion} \mktextinselp{insertion}
```

These hooks generate the output for `\textelp` with an empty argument, with a nonempty argument, and for `\textelp*`, respectively. Their definition needs to be changed if you want, for example, parentheses around the ellipsis or just an ellipsis.

Additional helper commands

The package also offers a number of helper commands for use in any of the hooks. They can be used to test for special conditions.

```
\ifblank{string}{true}{false}  
\iftextpunct{text}{true}{false}
```

For example, `\ifblank` tests if some *string* is empty and then executes the *true* or *false* code, accordingly. This was used in Example 3-4-13 to automatically add a `\textelp` command into incomplete quotations.

`\iftextpunct` tests if the *text* ends in any type of punctuation mark, and there are further commands to test for specific characters.

3.4.3 embrac — Upright brackets and parentheses

In his book “The Elements of Typographic Style” Robert Bringhurst writes, “*Use upright (i.e., ‘roman’) rather than sloped parentheses, square brackets and braces, even if the context is italic*”, and explains this further with

Parentheses and brackets are not letters, and it makes little sense to speak of them as roman or italic. There are vertical parentheses and sloped ones, and the parentheses on italic fonts are almost always sloped, but vertical parentheses are generally to be preferred. That means they must come from the roman font, and may need extra spacing when used with italic letterforms. The sloped square brackets usually found on italic fonts are, if anything, even less useful than sloped parentheses. [25, p.85, §5.3.2.]

Inspired by this advice Clemens Niederberger wrote the `embrac` package that redefines `\textit` and other font commands to implement vertical parentheses in sloped text fonts. Thus, if you want to follow Bringhurst’s advice, then loading this package is worth considering.

While it is not difficult to achieve the effect manually in a one-off situation, Bringhurst is correct that the parentheses or brackets have to be properly (manually) kerned as well (i.e., moved closer or more likely further away from the italic characters). To support this, the `embrac` package adds (customizable) kerns around the parentheses so that in most cases all that is necessary is loading the package.

```
\emph*{text} \textit*{text} \textsl*{text}
```

The three standard commands are redefined by the package. Any parentheses, brackets, or braces inside their *text* argument are automatically replaced with upright versions, and any necessary kerning is added. Only braces directly visible in the text are handled; i.e., anything hidden in commands or inside a brace group is left alone.

All commands now have a star form that restores the original behavior if that is necessary somewhere.

The right amount of kerning depends on the fonts used in the document. The default values are reasonable for Computer or Latin Modern fonts, but with other families you may end up with too much or too little space around the parentheses. How to alter the kerning in such cases is explained in the package documentation.

3-4-16

[Here] *we highlight (some) text.*

[Here] *we highlight (some) text.*

```
\usepackage{lmodern,embrac}
```

```
\emph {[Here] we highlight (some) text.}
```

```
\emph*{[Here] we highlight (some) text.}
```

Redefining core commands is not always a good idea, so if you want to reinstate the original behavior for a part of your document, you can do so with `\EmbracOff` and `\EmbracOn`.

3.4.4 ulem — Emphasize and copy-edit via underline

ℒ_{TeX} encourages the use of the `\emph` command and the `\em` declaration for marking emphasis, rather than explicit font-changing declarations, such as `\bfseries` and `\itshape`. The `ulem` package (by Donald Arseneau) redefines the command `\emph` to use underlining, rather than italics. It is possible to have line breaks and even primitive hyphenation in the underlined text. Every word is typeset in an underlined box, so automatic hyphenation is normally disabled, but explicit discretionary hyphens (`\-`) can still be used. The underlines continue between words and stretch just like ordinary spaces do. The method is, however, suitable only for fairly simple text — some ℒ_{TeX} constructs, such as `\footnote`, do not work within the argument.

If problems occur, you might try enclosing the offending command in braces, because everything inside braces is internally put inside an `\mbox`. Thus, braces suppress stretching and line breaks in the text they enclose. That is one of the reasons that nested emphasis constructs are not always treated correctly by this package if the inner one contains more than a single word.

3-4-17

Advice from Robert Bringhurst [25]: Use the virgule with words and dates, the solidus with split-level fractions.

```
\usepackage{ulem}
```

Advice from Robert Bringhurst [25]:

```
\emph{Use the \emph{virgule} with words
and dates, the \emph{solidus} with
split-level fractions.}
```

Alternatively, underlining can be explicitly requested using the `\uline` command. In addition, a number of variants are available that are common in editorial markup. These are shown in the next example:

You can have single or double underlining, a wavy underline, ~~strike-out~~, or ~~crossed out~~ text or use dashes or dots.

```
\usepackage{ulem}
You can have \uline{single} or \uuline{double
under\~lining}, \uwave{a wavy underline},
\sout{strike out}, or \xout{cross out} text or use
\dashuline{dashes} or \dotuline{dots}.
```

3-4-18

The redefinition of `\emph` can be turned off and on by using `\normalem` and `\ULforem`. Alternatively, the package can be loaded with the option `normalem` to suppress this redefinition. Another package option is `UWforbf`, which replaces `\textbf` and `\bfseries` by `\uwave` whenever possible.

Instead of using these options you can explicitly direct `ulem` to change any basic font command or declaration to produce one of the special effects by using the declaration `\useunder`. This is shown in the next example, where `\textit`, `\textbf`, and `\texttt` has been changed to produce `\uwave`, `\uline`, and `\uuline`, respectively.

Historically speaking, `expl3` is an acronym for EXperimental Programming Language 3 even though it is a production language.

```
\usepackage[normalem]{ulem}
\useunder{\uwave}{\itshape}{\textit}
\useunder{\uline}{\bfseries}{\textbf}
\useunder{\uuline}{\ttfamily}{\texttt}
Historically speaking, \texttt{expl3} is an acronym for
\textbf{EX}perimental \textbf{P}rogramming \textbf{L}anguage
\textbf{3} even though it is a \textit{production lan\~guage}.
```

3-4-19

The position of the line produced by `\uline` can be set explicitly by specifying a value for the length `\ULdepth`. The default value is font-dependent, denoted by the otherwise senile value `\maxdimen`. Similarly, the thickness of the line can be controlled via `\ULthickness`, which, for some historical reason, needs to be redefined using `\renewcommand`.

3.4.5 dashundergaps — Produce fill-in forms

An interesting application of `ulem` is the package `dashundergaps`, originally written by Luca Merciadri and reimplemented by Frank Mittelbach. Its main purpose is to provide “underlined” gaps (possibly numbered) for use in fill-in tests and similar forms. The main command it provides is `\gap`.

```
\gap* [type] {material}
```

This command typesets the *material* using one of the `ulem` commands (by default `\uline`) but keeps the text invisible so that one ends up with an underlined gap of the right width. This is followed by a gap number in parentheses unless the star form is used. With the help of the optional *type* argument one can explicitly request a

specific form of underlining: u (underlining), d (double underlining), w (wave line), – (dash line), or . (dot line).

The next example shows most variations in the form of a fill-in puzzle. Of course, in real life using that many different variations next to another is not really recommended.

The initial ‘E.’ in Donald E. Knuth’s name stands for(1). The well-known answer to the Ultimate Question _____ (2) is 42 according to ~~~~~~(3). The first edition of _____ celebrates silver anniversary in 2019. Historically speaking, expl3 is an acronym for _____ even though it is now a _____ (4).

3-4-20

```
\usepackage{dashundergaps}
```

The initial ‘E.’ in Donald E. Knuth’s name stands for \gap[.]{Erwin}. The well-known answer to the Ultimate Question \gap[of Life, the Universe, and Everything] is 42 according to \gap[w]{Douglas Adams}. The first edition of \gap[d]{The \LaTeX{} Companion} celebrates silver anniversary in 2019. Historically speaking, \texttt{expl3} is an acronym for \gap*[-]{\textbf{EX}perimental \textbf{P}rogramming \textbf{L}anguage \textbf{3}} even though it is now a \gap{production language}.

The package offers a large amount of customization possibilities, such as changing the default underline type, the look and feel of the gap numbers, etc. The most important one is perhaps the option `widen`, which enlarges each gap by a configurable percentage so that it is easier to produce forms that are intended for manual fill-in.

With `\TeacherModeOn` (or `teachermode` as an option) the gaps are filled in, and if necessary, it is possible to adjust the `gapnumber` counter as shown below:

The initial ‘E.’ in Donald E. Knuth’s name stands for _____^{/1/}. The well-known answer to the Ultimate Question _____^{/2/} is 42 according to _____^{/3/}.

The initial ‘E.’ in Donald E. Knuth’s name stands for Erwin^{/1/}. The well-known answer to the Ultimate Question of Life, the Universe, and Everything^{/2/} is 42 according to Douglas Adams^{/3/}.

3-4-21

```
\usepackage{dashundergaps}
```

```
\dashundergapssetup{widen, dash, gap-font=\itshape,
  teacher-gap-format=underline, gap-number-format=
    \textsuperscript{\normalfont/\thegapnumber/}}
\newcommand\puzzletext{The initial ‘E.’ in Donald
  E. Knuth’s name stands for \gap[Erwin]. The
  well-known answer to the Ultimate Question
  \gap[of Life, the Universe, and Everything] is
  42 according to \gap[Douglas Adams]}\par}
```

```
\puzzletext
\bigskip \setcounter{gapnumber}{0} \TeacherModeOn
\puzzletext
```

3.4.6 microtype & soul — Letterspacing or stealing sheep

Frederic Goudy (1865–1947) supposedly said, “Anyone who would letterspace lower case would steal sheep” and Erik Spiekermann used this quote in a title for one of his books on typography [181]. Whether true or a myth, the topic of letterspacing clearly provokes heated discussions among typographers and is considered bad practice in most situations because it changes the “gray” level of the text and thus

Tracking is the uniform increase or decrease of spacing between glyphs.	−0.05em (−50)
Tracking is the uniform increase or decrease of spacing between glyphs.	−0.03em (−30)
Tracking is the uniform increase or decrease of spacing between glyphs.	−0.02em (−20)
Tracking is the uniform increase or decrease of spacing between glyphs.	−0.01em (−10)
Tracking is the uniform increase or decrease of spacing between glyphs.	— \LaTeX 's default setting —
Tracking is the uniform increase or decrease of spacing between glyphs.	+0.01em (10)
Tracking is the uniform increase or decrease of spacing between glyphs.	+0.02em (20)
Tracking is the uniform increase or decrease of spacing between glyphs.	+0.05em (50)
Tracking is the uniform increase or decrease of spacing between glyphs.	+0.07em (70)

Figure 3.1: Tracking in action

disturbs the flow of reading. Nevertheless, there are legitimate reasons for undertaking letterspacing. For example, display type often needs a looser setting, and in most fonts uppercased text is improved this way. You may also find letterspacing being used to indicate emphasis, although this exhibits the gray-level problem.

Until fairly recently the \TeX engines were fairly ill equipped when it came to supporting letterspacing. In theory, the best solution is to use specially designed fonts rather than trying to solve the problem with a macro package. Because this requires the availability of such fonts, it is not an option for most users. Thus, for several decades the only practical solution was a macro-based approach implemented by Melchior Franz with his *soul* package, even though that means dealing with a number of restrictions.

With the event of pdf \TeX version 1.4 or alternatively the Lua \TeX engine, this situation changed because these engines¹ provide facilities for letterspacing (also known as tracking) as part of the font machinery. This is explored by the *microtype* package that we already introduced in Section 3.1.3. In the remainder of this section we now compare the two packages with respect to their letterspacing features and also show some of the other aspects of *soul* that make it worthwhile to consider, even though for font tracking *microtype* should probably be the first choice.² The *microtype* package provides two methods for tracking: ad hoc tracking through special commands and general tracking set up for individual (groups of) fonts. Figure 3.1 shows a sentence typeset at different tracking levels for comparison.

`\textls*[tracking-amount]{text} {\lsstyle ...} \lslig{ligature}`

*Ad hoc tracking with
microtype*

For ad hoc letterspacing, it offers the command `\textls` that adds extra space between the characters and possibly enlarges the interword spaces in its *text* argument. The amount of tracking is either determined from a configurable database or explicitly

¹Unfortunately, X \TeX does not offer this feature directly. Thus, the \TeX world stays divided in this respect, and X \TeX users are either forced to use *soul* with its restrictions if they want to letterspace fonts or set up fonts using the `LetterSpace` font feature offered through `fontspec`; see Section 9.6.

²Please note that by loading *microtype* for tracking you automatically enable two other microtypographical features: protrusion and font expansion, discussed in Section 3.1.3. Normally this is sensible, but if you do not want these features, load the package with the option `activate=false`.

specified in the optional *tracking-amount* argument. The amount is specified in 1% of an em in the current font, the permissible range is ± 1000 . The default value is 100, i.e., 0.1em, which gives reasonable results with many fonts. The default can be globally changed through the option `letterspace=value`.

Half the tracking amount is also added before the first and after the last character in the *text* argument to separate them a bit from surrounding material. In some situations that is undesirable, and to suppress it one can use `\textls*` as shown in the next example (look at the placement of the exclamation mark).

Because microtype operates on the font level, the tracking change is transparent for T_EX so automatic hyphenation remains possible and font changes, math, etc., work seamlessly. The next example clearly proves that overdoing the amount of tracking leads to very questionable results, and for the highest quality, different fonts would clearly need different amounts of tracking to give a uniform appearance.

```

Nothing is letterspaced!           \usepackage{lmodern,microtype}
Everything is letterspaced!        \emph{Nothing}      is \textsf{letterspaced}! \\\
Much too much letter-             \textls{\emph{Everything} is \textsf{letterspaced}}! \\\
spacing!                          \textls*[230]{Much \emph{too much} \textsf{letterspacing}}!

```

3-4-22

`\textls` is modeled after font commands such as `\textbf`. Thus, it is not so surprising that there also exists a declarative form `\lsstyle` that turns on letterspacing until the end of the current group. This then always uses the current tracking setup; i.e., there is no way to modify the tracking amount on invocation.

When writing normal text, T_EX automatically takes care of constructing ligatures for you; e.g., inputting `difficult` leads to “difficult” and not “difficult”. However, when letterspacing text, such ligatures should not be generated. Instead, each character should be kept separate. On the other hand, some ligatures available in fonts for T_EX are purely shortcuts to ease writing the document; e.g., `---` is a convenient input form for an em-dash (—), and, of course, that character should still appear as a single character while tracking and not suddenly come out as “---”. To avoid such problems, microtype takes all ligatures starting with `f` apart, but leaves all others alone. That default is suitable for most situations, but if not, it is easy to change this behavior either by changing the default or by using `\slig` to tell that package that a group of characters should stay together without being tracked. For example, the Dutch ligature “IJ” is traditionally considered to be a single letter and thus should not be tracked. If necessary, `\slig` can also be “misused” to break up ligatures that microtype would otherwise keep together, exemplified by breaking up `j` to become `!`.

```

\usepackage{lmodern,microtype}
!‘Hola! << ?‘difficult? --- ‘IJsselmeer’ \\\
\lsstyle
!‘Hola! << ?‘difficult? --- ‘IJsselmeer’ \\\
!‘                                “IJsselmeer” \slig{!}‘ \hfill ‘\slig{IJ}sselmeer’

```

3-4-23

The amount of tracking, the adjustment to the interword spacing while tracking, which ligatures to deconstruct, etc., can all be adjusted for individual fonts or groups

of fonts using `\SetTracking` declarations. For details refer to page 134 and the package documentation [179].

*General tracking
with microtype*

To enable letterspacing generally with the `microtype` package, load the package with the option `tracking`¹ or specify it in the argument to `\microtypesetup`. As a reasonable default this activates tracking for SmallCaps fonts, i.e., those selected via `\textsc` or `\scshape`.

Normal size text and SMALL CAPS!
Large text & SMALL CAPS!

```
\usepackage[tracking]{microtype}
```

```
Normal size text and \textsc{Small Caps}! \\\[5pt]
{\Large Large text \& \textsc{Small Caps}!}
```

3-4-24

The `soul` package also provides facilities for letterspacing (and underlining) while maintaining automatic hyphenation. The package works by parsing the text to be letterspaced or underlined, token by token, which results in a number of peculiarities and restrictions in comparison to `microtype` (for letterspacing) or `ulem` (for underlining). Thus, users who just need letterspacing and use pdf \TeX or only wish to underline a few words and do not need automatic hyphenation are probably better off with `microtype` or `ulem`, which are far less picky about their input.

For Lua \TeX users the suggested alternative is the `lua-ul` package by Marcel Krüger, which uses features of that engine to achieve highlighting, underlining, and strike-through. It uses its own command names, but with the option `soul` it understands the command names of the `soul` package as well.

```
\caps{text}    \hl{text}    \so{text}    \st{text}    \ul{text}
```

The use of the five main user commands of `soul` are shown in the next example. In cases where \TeX 's hyphenation algorithm fails to find the appropriate hyphenation points, you can guide it as usual with the `\-` command. If the `color` package is loaded, `\hl` works like a text marker, coloring the background using yellow as the default color; otherwise, it behaves like `\ul` and underlines its argument.

With the `soul` package you can letter-space words and phrases. Capitals are `LETTERSPACED` (not `LETTERSPACED`) with a separate command. Interfaces for underlining, strikeouts, and highlighting are also provided.

```
\usepackage{soul,color}
```

With the `\texttt{soul}` package you can `\so{letter}-space words and phrases`. Capitals are `\caps{Letter}-Spaced` (not `\textsc{Letter}-Spaced`) with a separate command. Interfaces for `\ul{underlining}`, `\st{strikeouts}`, and `\hl{highlighting}` are also provided.

3-4-25

The `\caps` command automatically applies `\scshape` to its argument and uses fairly subtle tracking, quite suitable for headings set in SmallCaps.

Nesting of the `soul` commands is not supported, but it is in fact possible to load both `microtype` and `soul` and use the former for tracking and the latter for underlining and highlighting. This way you can have letterspaced text that is underlined or otherwise highlighted.

¹Not available with X \TeX .

With `microtype` you can also let-
terspace `words` and `phrases` while
the highlighting is done with `soul`. Cap-
itals or small capitals are then `LETTER-`
`SPACED` like this.

3-4-26

```
\usepackage{soul,color,microtype}
```

With `\texttt{microtype}` you can `\textls{also
letterspace \hl{words} and \hl{phrases}}` while the
highlighting is done with `\texttt{soul}`. Capitals
or small capitals are then `\textls{\scshape
\ul{Letter\~}\st{Spaced}}` like this.

Normally, the `soul` package interprets one token after another in the argument
of `\so`, `\st`, and so on. However, in the case of characters that are represented by
more than one token (e.g., accented characters) this might fail with some low-level
T_EX error messages. Fortunately, the package already knows about all common accent
commands, so these are handled correctly. For others, such as those provided by
the TS1 encoding (Section 9.5.6), you can announce them to `soul` with the help of a
`\soulaccent` declaration. The alternative is to surround the tokens by braces.

*Restrictions of the
soul package*

For the same reason `soul` is unable to cope with UTF-8 input characters if they
are internally represented by several bytes. If you use such characters, you must load
`soulutf8` (an extension written by Heiko Oberdiek) instead of `soul`.

ä ù Õ X Y
ä ù Õ X Y

3-4-27

```
\usepackage{soulutf8}
\soulaccent{\capitalgrave}
```

```
\Huge \st{"a \'u \~0 \capitalgrave X {\capitalbreve Y}}
```

```
% next line needs soulutf8:
```

```
\st{ä ù Õ \capitalgrave X {\capitalbreve Y}}
```

For comparison here is the same input using `ulem`: no adjustments are necessary.
You see that the packages use a different rule width for strikeout.

ä ù Õ or ä ù Õ X Y

3-4-28

```
\usepackage[normalem]{ulem}
```

```
\Huge\sout{ä ù Õ} or \sout{"a \'u \~0  
\capitalgrave X \capitalbreve Y}
```

The `soul` package already knows that quotation characters, en-dashes, and em-
dashes consist of several tokens and handles them correctly. In the case of other
syntactical ligatures, such as the Spanish exclamation mark, you have to help it along
with a brace group. The package also knows about math formulas as long as they are
surrounded by `$` signs (the form `\(...\)` is not supported), and it knows about all
standard font-changing commands, such as `\textbf`. If you have defined your own
font-switching command or use a package that provides additional font commands
or other simple commands for use in text, you have to register them with `soul` using
`\soulregister`. This declaration expects the (font) command to be registered as its
first argument and the number of arguments (i.e., 0 or 1) for that command to appear
as its second argument. Within the `soul` commands none of the font commands inserts
any (necessary) italic correction. If needed, one has to provide it manually using `\/`.

In the next example we tell it that `\enquote` is a command with one argument and hide the ligature with a brace group.

```

“2 + 2 equals 5,” he said. \usepackage{soul,csquotes} \soulregister{\enquote}{1}
;FOR EXTREMELY LARGE VAL- \so{\enquote{$2+2$ equals $5$,}} he said.
UES OF 2! \caps{!‘For \textbf{Extremely} Large Values of $2$!}

```

3-4-29

None of that would be necessary with `microtype`. Comparing the two examples one can see that we had to provide a definition for `\caps` because it is not available in `microtype`. The default values for tracking small caps are noticeably wider with `microtype`, and this package also tracks math formulas if they are in its scope, while `soul` leaves formulas alone.

```

“2 + 2 equals 5,” he said. \usepackage{microtype,csquotes}
;FOR EXTREMELY LARGE \newcommand\caps[1]{\textls{\scshape#1}}
VALUES OF 2! \textls{\enquote{$2+2$ equals $5$,}} he said.
\caps{!‘For \textbf{Extremely} Large Values of $2$!}

```

3-4-30

If you look carefully, you see that the font commands when used with `soul` suppress letterspacing directly preceding and following them—very noticeably when the font change happens within a word. This can be corrected by adding `>`, which forces a tracking space. With `microtype` such adjustments are not needed.

```

\usepackage{soul,microtype}
Compare “b lo od y” and “b l o o d y”
with “bloody” (microtype) \so{bl\textbf{oo}dy}’ and
‘\so{bl\>\textbf{oo}\>dy}’ with
‘\textls{bl\textbf{oo}dy}’ (\texttt{microtype})

```

3-4-31

One of the most important restrictions of the above commands is that they cannot be nested; any attempt to nest `soul` commands results in low-level \TeX errors. If you really need nesting, you have to place the inner material in a box, which means you lose the possibility of breaking the material at a line ending, or you use `microtype` for letterspacing and `soul` or `ulem` for underlining.

A few other commands are special within the argument of `\so` and friends. Spacing out at certain points can be canceled using `<` or forced with `>` as we saw above. As usual with \TeX a `~` produces an unbreakable space. The `\\` command is supported, though only in its basic form—no star, no optional argument. You can also use `\linebreak` to break a line at a certain point, but again the optional argument is not supported. Other \TeX commands are likely to break the package—some experimentation will tell you what is safe and what produces havoc. By comparison, because `microtype` handles its tracking on the font level, it does not have any of these restrictions. However, it does not offer explicit canceling or forcing tracking kerns either, except through `\textls*` that suppresses the extra kerns at the outer side.

The next example shows applications of these odds and ends of soul:

3-4-32 “So there ...” he said. Let’s `\usepackage{soul}`
 produce a spaced out `\so{‘‘\<So there \ldots\<’’ he said. Let’s`
 line , Right? `produce a spaced out\linebreak line\>, Right?}`

Text inside a braced group is regarded as a single object during parsing by soul and is therefore not spaced out. This is handy if certain ligatures are to be kept intact inside spaced-out text. However, this method works only if the text inside the brace group contains no hyphenation points. If it does, you receive the package error message “Reconstruction failed”. To hide such hyphenation points you need to put the text inside an `\mbox`, as shown in the second text line of the next example (T_EX would hyphenate this as “Es-cher” — that is, between the “sch” that we try to keep together). You can also use `\soulomit` to achieve this effect, but this also suppresses the action as shown in the last line of the example (and in case of tracking the kerns on its left and right).

3-4-33 `\usepackage{soulutf8,yfonts}`
 `\textfrac{\so{S{ch}u{tz}vorri{ch}tung} \ \`
 `Au{s:}si{ch}t{s:}losigkeit}} \ \`
 Gödel, Escher, Bach `\so{Gödel, E\mbox{sch}er, Bach} \ \`
 Temporarily disabling the scanner `\ul{Temporarily dis\soulomit{abl}ing the scanner}`

When you do letterspacing with microtype, then brace groups or `\mboxes` do not keep ligatures together because the tracking happens at the font level and not by parsing the input. Instead, it requires the `\lslig` command as mentioned earlier — but then microtype usually knows which ligatures to keep so it is necessary only in unusual circumstances.

3-4-34 `\usepackage{microtype,yfonts}`
 `\textfrac{\texttls{Schutzvorrichtung} \ \ % all`
 `Aus:sichts:losigkeit}} \ \ % easy`
 Gödel, Escher, Bach `\texttls{Gödel, E\mbox{sch}er, Bach} \ \ % no, but`
 Gödel, Escher, Bach `\texttls{Gödel, E\lslig{sch}er, Bach} % yes`

The position and the height of the line produced by the `\ul` command can be customized using either `\setul` or `\setuldepth`. The command `\setul` takes two dimensions as arguments: the position of the line in relation to the baseline and the height of the line. Alternatively, `\setuldepth` can be used to specify that the line should be positioned below the text provided as an argument. Finally, `\resetul` restores the default package settings.

*Customizing soul's
underlining and
highlighting*

3-4-35 `\usepackage{soul}`
 Here we test `\setul{0pt}{.4pt} \ul{Here we test} \par`
 a number of `\setul{-.6ex}{.3ex} \ul{a number of} \par`
 different settings. `\setuldepth{g} \ul{different settings.} \par`
 And back to normal! `\resetul \ul{And back to normal!}`

Both `\ul` and `\st` use a black rule by default. If you additionally load the `color` package, you can use colored rules instead and, if desired, modify the highlighting color as demonstrated below:

```
\usepackage{soul,color}
\sethlcolor{yellow} \setulcolor{blue} \setstcolor{red}
```

Rules are now in red or blue.

Rules `\hl{are now}` in `\st{red}` or `\ul{blue}`.

3-4-36

3.4.7 `url` — Typesetting URLs, path names, and the like

E-mail addresses, URLs, path or directory names, and similar objects usually require some attention to detail when typeset. For one thing, they often contain characters with special significance to \LaTeX , such as the characters `~`, `#`, `&`, `%`, `{`, or `}`. In addition, breaking them across lines should be avoided or at least done with special care. For example, it is usually not wise to break at a hyphen, because then it is not clear whether the hyphen was inserted because of the break (as it would be the case with normal words) or was already present. Similar reasons make breaks at a space undesirable. To help with these issues, Donald Arseneau wrote the `url` package, which attempts to solve most of these problems.

No Unicode
support with
pdf \TeX

The package does not explicitly¹ provide links from URLs to external resources. If that is wanted, consider using the `\url` command of the `hyperref` package, which adds this functionality to the command. Another restriction is that it supports only simple ASCII strings if used with `pdf \TeX` . If you need accented characters, etc., as part of command arguments, you have to use `X \TeX` or `Lua \TeX` as your engine.

```
\url{text}   \url!text!   \path{text}   \path=text=
```

The base command provided by the package is `\url`, which is offered in two syntax variants: the `text` argument either can be surrounded by braces (in which case the `text` must not contain unbalanced braces) or, like `\verb`, can be delimited by using an arbitrary character on both sides that is not used inside `text`. (The syntax box above uses `!` and `=`, but these are really only examples.) In that second form one can have unbalanced braces in the argument.

The `\path` command is the same except that it always uses typewriter fonts (`\ttfamily`), while `\url` can be customized as we see below. The argument to both commands is typeset pretty much verbatim. For example, `\url{~}` produces a tilde. Spaces are ignored by default, as can be seen in the following example:

```
\usepackage{url}
```

The \LaTeX project web pages are at `https://www.latex-project.org` and my home directory is `~frank` (sometimes).

The `\LaTeX{}` project web pages are at `\url{https://www . latex-project . org}` and my home directory is `\path+~frank+` (sometimes).

3-4-37

¹However, PDF viewers often guess that something is meant to be a URL and automatically provide a clickable link, but this may fail depending on context or if the URL is broken across lines.

Line breaks can happen at certain symbols (by default, not between letters or hyphens) and in no case can the commands add a hyphen at the breakpoint. Whenever the *text* contains either of the symbols % or #, or ends with \, it cannot be used in the argument to another command without producing errors (just like the \verb command). Another case that does not work properly inside the argument of another command is the use of two ^ characters in succession. However, the situation is worse in that case because one might not even get an error but simply incorrect output¹ as the next example shows (see Example 3-4-39 for a way to correct this).

3-4-38

```

\usepackage{url}
^^frank and ^frank (OK)      \url{^frank} and \mbox{\url{^frank}} (OK) \par
^^frank but &rank (bad)      \url{^^frank} but \mbox{\url{^^frank}} (bad) \par

```

Even if the *text* does not contain any critical symbols, it is always forbidden to use such a command inside a moving argument—for instance, the argument of a \section. If used there, you get the error message

```

! Undefined control sequence.
\Url Error ->\url used in a moving argument.

```

followed by many strange errors. Even the use of \protect does not help in that case. So what can be done if one needs to cite a path name or a URL in such a place? If you are prepared to be careful and only use “safe” characters inside *text*, then you can enable the commands for use in moving arguments by specifying the option allowmove when loading the package. But this does not help if you actually need a character like “#”. In that case the solution is to record the information first using \urldef and then reuse it later.

Allow \url in
moving arguments

```

\urldef{cmd}{url-cmd}{text}      \urldef{cmd}{url-cmd}=text=

```

The declaration \urldef defines a new command *cmd* to contain the *url-cmd* (which might be \url, \path, or a newly defined command—see below) and the *text* in a way such that they can be used in any place, including a moving argument. The *url-cmd* is not executed at this point, which means that style changes can still affect the typesetting (see Example 3-4-40 on the following page). Technically, what happens is that the \catcodes of characters in *text* are frozen during the declaration so that they cannot be misinterpreted in places like arguments.

1 ^^frank~#\$\ works?

3-4-39

It does—in contrast to the earlier example.

```

\usepackage{url}
\urldef\test\path{^^frank~#$\}
\section{\test{} works?}

```

It does---in contrast to the earlier example.

¹It depends on the letter that is following. An uppercase F instead of the lowercase f would produce an error.

`\urlstyle{style}`

We have already mentioned style changes. For this task the `url` package offers the `\urlstyle` command, which takes one mandatory argument: a named *style*. Predefined styles are `rm`, `sf`, `tt`, and `same`. The first three select the font family of that name, while the `same` style uses the current font and changes only the line breaking.

The `\url` command uses whatever style is currently in force (the default is `tt`, i.e., typewriter), while `\path` internally always switches to the `tt` style. In the following example we typeset a URL saved in `\lproject` several times using different styles. The particular example may look slightly horrifying, but imagine how it would have looked if the URL had not been allowed to split at all in this narrow measure.

<i>Zapf Chancery for text!</i>	<code>https:</code>	<code>\usepackage[hyphens]{url}</code> <code>\urldef\lproject\url{https://latex-project.org}</code> <code>\fontfamily{qzc}\selectfont Zapf Chancery for text!</code>
<code>//latex-project.org</code> (default setup)	<code>https://latex-project.org</code> (CM Roman)	<code>\lproject\</code> (default setup) \quad
<code>https://latex-project.org</code> (CM Sans Serif)	<code>\urlstyle{rm}\lproject\</code> (CM Roman) \quad	<code>\urlstyle{sf}\lproject\</code> (CM Sans Serif) \quad
<code>https://latex-project.org</code> (CM Typewriter)	<code>https://latex-project.org</code> (Zapf Chancery)	<code>\urlstyle{tt}\lproject\</code> (CM Typewriter) \quad
		<code>\urlstyle{same}\lproject\</code> (Zapf Chancery)

3-4-40

Allow line breaks
after explicit
hyphens

If you studied the previous example closely, you probably noticed that the option `hyphens` was used. This option allows breaking at explicit hyphens, something normally disabled for `\url`-like commands. Without this option, breaks would have been allowed only at the periods, after the colon, or after “//”.

Spaces in the
argument

As mentioned earlier, spaces inside *text* are ignored by default. If this is not desired, one can use the option `obeyspaces`. However, this option may introduce spurious spaces if the `\url` command is used inside the argument of another command and *text* contains any “\” character. In that case `\urldef` solves the problem. Line breaks at spaces are not allowed unless you also use the option `spaces`.

The package automatically detects which font encoding is currently in use. In the case of T1 encoded fonts it uses the additional glyphs available in this encoding, which improves the overall result.

Appending material
at left or right

The package offers two hooks, `\UrlLeft` and `\UrlRight`, that by default do nothing but can be redefined to typeset material at the left or right of *text*. The material is typeset in the same fashion as the *text*. For example, spaces are ignored unless one uses `_` or specifies `obeyspaces` as a package option. If the commands are redefined at the top level, they act on every `\url`-like command, which may be undesirable. See Example 3-4-41 on the next page for a possibility of restricting their scope and the issue if you do not.

`\DeclareUrlCommand\cmd{style-information}`

Defining URL-like
commands

It is sometimes helpful to define your own commands that work similarly to `\url` or `\path` but use their own fonts, and so on. The command `\DeclareUrlCommand` can be used to define a new `\url`-like command or to modify an existing one. It

takes two arguments: the command to define or change and the *style-information* (e.g., `\urlstyle`). In the next example, we define `\email` to typeset e-mail addresses in `rm` style, prepending the string “e-mail: ” via `\UrlLeft`. The example clearly shows that the scope for this redefinition is limited to the `\email` command. If you look closely, you can see that a space inside `\UrlLeft` (as in the top-level definition) has no effect, while `_` produces the desired result.

```


\usepackage{url}
\renewcommand\UrlLeft{<url: }\renewcommand\UrlRight{>}
\DeclareUrlCommand\email{\urlstyle{rm}%
\renewcommand\UrlLeft{mail:\ }\renewcommand\UrlRight{}}
<url:https://latex-project.org> \url{https://latex-project.org} \par
mail: frank.mittelbach@latex-project.org \email{frank.mittelbach@latex-project.org} \par
<url:$HOME/figures> oops picks up the \path{$HOME/figures} oops picks up the global definition!

```

3-4-41

The `url` package offers a number of further hooks that influence line breaking, among them `\UrlBreaks`, `\UrlBigBreaks`, and `\UrlNoBreaks`. These hooks can be redefined in the *style-information* argument of `\DeclareUrlCommand` to set up new or special conventions. For details consult the package documentation [9].

As mentioned earlier, Unicode characters are not supported in the commands provided by the `url` package if the `pdfTeX` engine is used. This is because they are internally represented by several bytes and the `url` package then typesets each byte separately without recognizing that together they represent a single glyph. As a result there is no warning, but simply wrong output:

 *Issues
with Unicode
characters when
using pdfTeX*

```

\usepackage[obeyspaces]{url}
Garbled: ~/großße Bilder/Äbel.jpg Garbled: \path{~/große Bilder/übel.jpg}

```

3-4-42

For URLs this is less of a problem, because the URL standard does not support such characters in URLs, but requires them to be %-encoded. However, you might run into multibyte characters in e-mail addresses or path names. In that case you need to use a Unicode engine, such as `LuaTeX`, to get correct output.

Linking URLs to external resources

Many PDF viewers try to be clever and automatically produce clickable regions if they think that a certain text portion is a URL, e.g., when it contains the string `http://` or `https://`. This means that many URLs produced using `\url` from the `url` package have workable links inside the PDF even though that package does not actually provide any special support for this. However, if the URL is broken across two lines or has some unusual form, the automatically generated link may point to the wrong place or may be missing altogether.

This can be improved by also loading the `hyperref` package. It modifies the `\url` command to explicitly provide a hyperlink for each URL. If you want to use `url` with package options, you have to load it first; otherwise, the order does not matter. In fact, it is enough to load `hyperref` because that loads `url` if it is not already loaded.

Avoid
unnecessary
spaces

Thus, all commands provided by the `url` package are available, and `\url` works as before, except for the fact that it produces a link and reacts to `hyperref` options that change or add link colors or borders around links. As the example shows, some URL strings are interpreted as files on the local machine. Furthermore, spaces in the URL are removed in print but remain in the link, which means that the first link is broken too.

The L^AT_EX project web site is: <https://www.latex-project.org>. However, writing `latex-project.org` would produce a link to the local file `./latex-project.org` which may or may not be right.

```
\usepackage[colorlinks,urlcolor=blue]{hyperref}
```

The `\LaTeX` project web site is: `\url{https://www.latex-project.org}`. However, writing `\urlstyle{sf}\url{latex-project.org}` would produce a link to the local file `\path{./latex-project.org}` which may or may not be right.

3-4-43

If for some reason you want `hyperref` functionality within your document (e.g., for internal cross-references) but do not want active links to external URL resources, you can simply disable this after loading `hyperref` with the following declaration:

```
\DeclareUrlCommand\url{}
```

That resets the definition to the one from the `url` package.

3.4.8 uri — Typesetting various types of URIs

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) is a string of characters that unambiguously identifies a resource across a network, typically the World Wide Web. The most common type of a URI is a URL, natively understood by any Web browser, but many other types of URIs with associated protocols exist. For example, Digital Object Identifiers (DOIs) are widely used to identify academic information, such as journal articles or research reports or arXiv URIs (pronounced “archive”) that refer to electronic preprints in a huge repository holding roughly 2.0 million entries. However, without suitable plugins few browsers know how to deal with `DOI:10.1111/coin.12165` or can handle a request for `arXiv:math/9201303` (Donald Knuth’s paper on “Stable husbands”).

The `uri` package by Martin Münch helps you to format such URIs uniformly in your document and — if used together with `hyperref` — provide clickable links in your PDF that resolve to the document location, e.g., to `https://arxiv.org/abs/math/9201303` given the above input.

The main URI types¹ supported by the package are shown in the next example:

```
\usepackage{hyperref,uri}
```

```
\begin{itemize}
\item Amazon Catalogue: \hfill \asin{0201362996}
\item Cornell University Library: \hfill \arxiv{math/9201303}
\item Global library cooperative (OCLC): \hfill \oclc{935889548}
```

¹There is also `\oid` to access data from the Object Identifier Repository and a few others.

```

\item Handle System (CNRI):      \hfill \hdl{10338.dmlcz/702604}
\item International DOI Foundation: \hfill \doi{10.1111/coin.12165}
\item National Bibliography Number: \hfill \nbn{urn:nbn:de:bsz:mit1-opus-3145}
\item PubMed Central (PMC):      \hfill \pubmed{24925405}
\item WebCite:                  \hfill \wc{71lh2xily}
\end{itemize}

```

The predominant use case for such commands is within bibliography entries, but if necessary, they can be used anywhere. Here is the result of the above input:

- Amazon Catalogue: ASIN:0201362996
- Cornell University Library: arXiv:math/9201303
- Global library cooperative (OCLC): OCLC:935889548
- Handle System (CNRI): HDL:10338.dmlcz/702604
- International DOI Foundation: DOI:10.1111/coin.12165
- National Bibliography Number: urn:nbn:de:bsz:mit1-opus-3145
- PubMed Central (PMC): PubMed:24925405
- WebCite: WC:71lh2xily

3-4-44

If clicked, any references on the right resolve to a URL reference as long as the PDF viewer supports accessing external resources.

If you do not like the default outcome of the URI commands, you can easily adjust that using `\urisetup`. For all commands there exist keys that define the material before and after the actual URI reference. They all follow the same naming conventions with `pre` or `post` appended to the command name. Here is an example:

Customizing the outcome

```

\usepackage{uri}
\urisetup{asinpre = ASIN( , asinpost = ) ,
          doipre  = \textsc{doi:}\hspace*{2pt} }
ASIN(0201362996)
DOI: 10.1111/coin.12165 \asin{0201362996} \\ \doi{10.1111/coin.12165}

```

3-4-45

The site <https://tinyurl.com> provides a widely used free service on the Internet that maintains persistent short redirects for longish and difficult to type URLs. You provide them with the target URL, and they then assign a short URL that redirects to your target. For example, instead of referring to

Using short URLs

```

https://www.latex-project.org/publications/indexbytopic/pagination/#a-
hrefpublications2017-ci-journal-28454894assubmittedpdf-targetblank-o
nclickvgwpixelcall76c39a7e25524b9a8b93f680f6f20cbaa-general-luatex-fr
amework-for-globally-optimized-pagination-a-pre-peer-reviewed-version

```

that nobody can type, you can then use something like <https://tinyurl.com/optpag> to direct people to the above URL. The `uri` package supports these kinds

of URIs through the commands `\tinyuri` and `\tinypuri`. The latter command provides the user with a preview of the target URL and asks if they want to be redirected. The next example also shows that it is possible to adjust the look and feel of the links with options to `hyperref` and the font used with `\urlstyle` from `url`.

Wikipedia article on 42: TINY:424242 . Research on optimal pagination: TINY:P:optpag .	<pre>\usepackage[colorlinks,urlcolor=blue]{hyperref} \usepackage{uri} \urlstyle{sf}</pre> Wikipedia article on 42: <code>\tinyuri {424242}.</code> <code>\%</code> Research on optimal pagination: <code>\tinypuri{optpag}.</code>	3-4-46
---	---	--------

*Referencing
arbitrary web pages*

To archive and refer to snapshots of web pages it was possible in the past to use the free service provided by WebCite (<http://www.webcitation.org/archive.php>). For example, the research papers on optimal pagination at the L^AT_EX Project website were archived on 2018-08-18 under the Id 71lh2xily (provided by WebCite) so that they now can be referenced in a bibliographic entry, e.g., with B_BT_EX:

```
@Misc{FMi:optimal-pagination:2018,
  author={Frank Mittelbach}, title={Papers on automatic pagination},
  note={\url{https://latex-project.org/publications/indexbytopic/pagination}.
    Accessed: 2018-08-18. (Archived by WebCite at \wc{71lh2xily})}
}
```

Unfortunately, WebCite no longer accepts new requests, so the `\wc` interface stopped being useful for new material. There are, however, several other (free) services available that you can use instead, e.g., <https://archive.org/web> (Wayback Machine). They do not offer nice short URLs, but otherwise provide referenceable snapshots, so with a bit more work the same effect can be obtained.

To refer to normal URLs the package provides `\citeurl`, which works like `\url` but wraps the URL in angle brackets. Finally, it also offers `\emailto` for formatting e-mail addresses. If clicked, they then open the e-mail client with the address already prefilled. You can also provide an optional argument holding a default subject line. This does not show up in print but is automatically added as a subject in the mail client.

Website: <https://latex-project.org> . Report errors to: mailto:webmaster@ latex-project.org	<pre>\usepackage[colorlinks,urlcolor=blue]{hyperref} \usepackage{uri} \urlstyle{same}</pre> Website: <code>\citeurl{https://latex-project.org}.</code> Report errors to: <code>\mailto[Website error] {webmaster@latex-project.org}</code>	3-4-47
--	---	--------

3.5 Footnotes, endnotes, and marginals

L^AT_EX has facilities to typeset “inserted” text, such as marginal notes, footnotes, figures, and tables. The present section looks more closely at different kinds of notes, while Chapter 7 describes floats in more detail.

We start by discussing the possibilities offered through standard \LaTeX 's footnote commands and explain how (far) they can be customized. This is followed by a presentation of the `footmisc` package, which overcomes most of the limitations of the standard commands and offers a wealth of additional features. The packages `footnoterange` and `fnpct` deal specifically with the formatting of the footnote markers in text, how consecutive markers should be handled, and what should happen if they come next to a punctuation mark such as a comma or a period.

Some type of documents, e.g., critical editions, require an elaborate footnote apparatus with nested footnotes — something that standard \LaTeX does not offer. Both the `manyfoot` and `bigfoot` packages (which can be combined with `footmisc`) extend the footnote support for disciplines like linguistics by providing several independent footnote commands.

Instead of producing footnotes at the end of the page, it is sometimes useful to place such notes directly below the paragraph in which they appeared or after a consecutive group of paragraphs. This kind of “paragraph notes” is offered by the `parnotes` package. For two-column documents, a special layout for footnotes is provided by the `ftnright` package, which moves all footnotes to the bottom of the right column.

Support for endnotes is offered through the `enotez` package, which allows for mixing footnotes and endnotes and can also be used to provide chapter notes, as required by some publishers. The section concludes with a discussion of marginal notes, which are already provided by standard \LaTeX and with two packages (`marginnote` and `snotez`) that enhance \LaTeX 's basic capabilities.

3.5.1 Using standard footnotes

A sharp distinction is made between footnotes in the main text and footnotes inside a `minipage` environment. The former are numbered using the `footnote` counter, while inside a `minipage` the `\footnote` command is redefined to use the `mpfootnote` counter. Thus, the representation of the footnote mark is obtained by the `\thefootnote` or `\thempfootnote` command depending on the context. By default, it typesets an arabic number in text and a lowercase letter inside a `minipage` environment. You can redefine these commands to get a different representation by specifying, for example, footnote symbols, as shown below:

A line of text* with some† footnotes.

*The first
†The second

```
\renewcommand\thefootnote{\fnsymbol{footnote}}
```

```
A line of text\footnote{The first}
with some\footnote{The second} footnotes.
```

3-5-1

Footnotes produced with the `\footnote` command inside a `minipage` environment use the `mpfootnote` counter and are typeset at the bottom of the box produced by the `minipage`. However, if you use the `\footnotemark` command in a `minipage`, it produces a footnote mark in the same style and sequence as the main text footnotes — that is, stepping the `footnote` counter and using the

Peculiarities inside a minipage

`\thefootnote` command for the representation. This behavior allows you to produce a footnote inside your `minipage` that is typeset in sequence with the main text footnotes at the bottom of the page: you place a `\footnotemark` inside the `minipage` and the corresponding `\footnotetext` after it. The downside is that you cannot nest `minipage` environments if they contain footnotes.

... main text ...

Footnotes in a `minipage` are numbered using lowercase letters.^a
This text references a footnote at the bottom of the page.¹ And another^b note.

^aInside `minipage`

^bInside again

... main text ...

¹At bottom of page

```
\noindent\ldots{} main text \ldots
\begin{center}
\begin{minipage}{.8\linewidth}
Footnotes in a minipage are numbered using
lowercase letters.\footnote{Inside minipage}
\par This text references a footnote at the
bottom of the page.\footnotemark{}
And another\footnote{Inside again} note.
\end{minipage}\footnotetext{At bottom of page}
\end{center}
\ldots{} main text \ldots
```

3-5-2

As the previous example shows, if you need to reference a `minipage` footnote several times, you cannot use `\footnotemark` because it refers to footnotes typeset at the bottom of the page.

A *footmisc*
addition

You can, however, load the package `footmisc` and then use `\mpfootnotemark` in place of `\footnotemark`. Just like `\footnotemark`, the command first increments its counter and then displays its value. Thus, to refer to the previous value you typically have to decrement it first, as shown in the next example:

Main text ...

Footnotes in a `minipage` are numbered using lowercase letters.^a
This text references the previous footnote.^a And another^b note.

^aInside `minipage`

^bInside as well

... main text ...

```
\usepackage{footmisc}
\noindent Main text \ldots
\begin{center}
\begin{minipage}{.8\linewidth}
Footnotes in a minipage are numbered using
lowercase letters.\footnote{Inside minipage}
\par This text references the previous
footnote.\addtocounter{mpfootnote}{-1}%
\mpfootnotemark{}
And another\footnote{Inside as well} note.
\end{minipage}
\end{center} \ldots{} main text \ldots
```

3-5-3

Manipulating the footnote or `mpfootnote` counter to get the appropriate footnote mark is fairly cumbersome. A usually better alternative is to use a `\label` command in the footnote and then use `\footref` to generate the mark referring to it. This

works for footnotes inside and outside of minipages as the next example shows:

Main text with a footnote¹ ...

Footnotes in a minipage are numbered using lowercase letters.^a This text references a footnote at the bottom¹ of the page. And another^b note.

^aInside minipage

^bInside again

... main text referencing minipage footnote.^a

3-5-4

¹At bottom

```
\noindent Main text with a
  footnote\footnote{\label{A}At bottom} \ldots
\begin{center}
\begin{minipage}{.8\linewidth}
  Footnotes in a minipage are numbered using
  lowercase letters.\footnote{\label{B}Inside
    minipage} This text references a footnote
    at the bottom\footref{A} of the page.
    And another\footnote{Inside again} note.
\end{minipage}
\end{center}
\ldots{} main text referencing minipage
footnote.\footref{B}
```

L^AT_EX does not allow you to use a `\footnote` inside another `\footnote` command, as is common in some disciplines. You can, however, use the `\footnotemark` command inside the first footnote and then put the text of the footnote's footnote as the argument of a `\footnotetext` command. For other special footnote requirements consider using the `bigfoot` or the `manyfoot` package (described below).

Some¹ text and some more text.

¹A sample² footnote.

²A subfootnote.

3-5-5

```
Some\footnote{A sample\footnotemark{}
footnote.}\footnotetext{A subfootnote.}
text and some more text.
```

What if you want to reference a given footnote? You can use L^AT_EX's normal `\label` and `\ref` mechanism, although you may want to define your own command to typeset the reference in a special way. For instance:

This is some text.¹ ...

As shown in footnote (1) on page 6, ...

3-5-6

¹Text inside referenced footnote.

```
\newcommand\fnref[1]{\unskip~(\ref{#1})}
This is some text.\footnote{Text inside
referenced footnote\label{fn:myfoot}.} \ldots\par
As shown in footnote\fnref{fn:myfoot} on
page~\pageref{fn:myfoot}, \ldots
```

Standard L^AT_EX does not allow you to construct footnotes inside tabular material. Section 6.8 describes several ways of tackling that problem.

If a footnote in the main text does not fit on the current page, then L^AT_EX attempts to split it and continue the footnote text on the next column or page. If this does not succeed, e.g., because there is no breakpoint that would make part of the footnote fit, then the whole footnote and the text line containing the footnote marker is moved. As a consequence, if there are two footnotes on the same line and the first already requires splitting, then everything is moved to the next page because the second footnote could not even start.

*Handling of split
footnotes*

The footnote splitting is happening automatically, and the only control you have is adding something like `\nopagebreak` into the footnote text to prevent a split after a certain line. Of course, as an author there is always the possibility of rewriting your text so that the footnote appears elsewhere or becomes unnecessary.

Problem with color

If color is used inside footnotes, then you may see a problem that the color is lost after the split. In that case load the package `pdfcolfoot`, which extends the color support in PDF documents. There is work under way to improve the color support in \LaTeX , so this package is only a temporary solution.

3.5.2 Customizing standard footnotes

Footnotes in \LaTeX are generally simple to use and provide a quite powerful mechanism for typesetting material at the bottom of a page. This material can consist of several paragraphs and can include lists, inline or display mathematics, tabular material, and so on.

\LaTeX offers several parameters for customizing footnotes. They are shown schematically in Figure 3.2 on the facing page and are described below:

`\footnotesize` The font size used inside footnotes (see also Table 9.1 on page 666).

`\footnotesep` The height of a strut placed at the beginning of every footnote. If it is greater than the `\baselineskip` used for `\footnotesize`, then additional vertical space is inserted above each footnote. See Appendix A.3.3 for more information about struts.

`\skip\footins` A low-level \TeX length parameter that defines the space between the main text and the start of the footnotes. You can change its value with the `\setlength` or `\addtolength` command by putting `\skip\footins` into the first argument, e.g., `\addtolength{\skip\footins}{10mm plus 2mm}`.

`\footnoterule` A macro to draw the rule separating footnotes from the main text that is executed right after the vertical space of `\skip\footins`. It should take zero vertical space; that is, it should use a negative skip to compensate for any positive space it occupies. The default definition is equivalent to the following:

```
\renewcommand\footnoterule{\vspace*{-3pt}%
\hrule width 2in height 0.4pt \vspace*{2.6pt}}
```

Note that \TeX 's `\hrule` command and not \LaTeX 's `\rule` command is used. Because the latter starts a paragraph, it would be difficult to calculate the spaces needed to achieve a net effect of zero height. For this reason producing a fancier “rule” is perhaps best done by using a zero-sized picture environment to position the rule object without actually adding vertical space.

In the `report` and `book` classes, footnotes are numbered inside chapters; in `article`, footnotes are numbered sequentially throughout the document. You can change

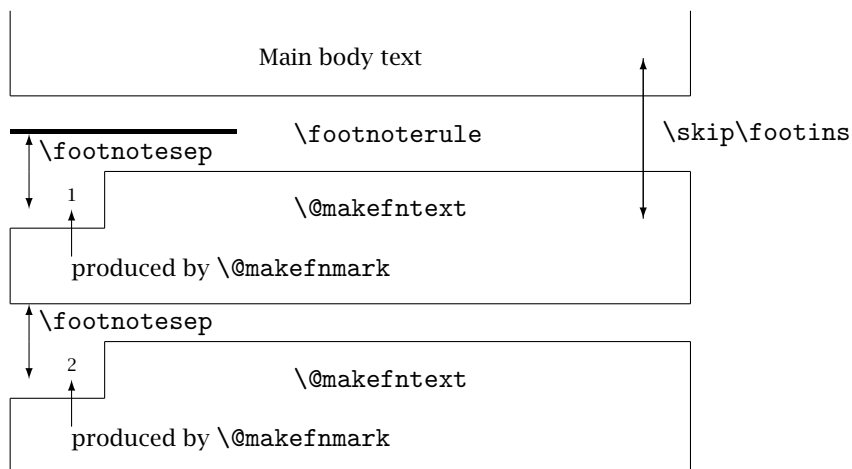


Figure 3.2: Schematic layout of footnotes

that default by using the `\counterwithin` or `\counterwithout` command (see Appendix A.2.1). However, do not try to number your footnotes within pages with the help of this mechanism. \LaTeX is looking ahead while producing the final pages, so your footnotes would most certainly be numbered incorrectly. To number footnotes on a per-page basis, use the `footmisc` or `perpage` package (described below).

The command `\@makefnmark` is normally used to generate the footnote mark. One would expect this command to take one argument (the current footnote number), but in fact it takes none. Instead, it uses the command `\@thefnmark` to indirectly refer to that number. The reason is that depending on the position (inside or outside of a minipage) a different counter needs to be accessed. The definition, which by default produces a superscript mark, looks roughly as follows:

```
\renewcommand\@makefnmark
{\mbox{\textsuperscript{\normalfont\@thefnmark}}}
```

The `\footnote` command executes `\@makefnmark` inside a `\parbox`, with a width of `\columnwidth`. The default version looks something like:

```
\newcommand\@makefnmark[1]
{\noindent\makebox[1.8em][r]{\@makefnmark}\#1}
```

This places the footnote mark right aligned into a box of width 1.8em directly followed by the footnote text. Note that it reuses the `\@makefnmark` macro, so any change to it will, by default, modify the display of the mark in both places. If you want the text set flush left with the number placed into the margin, then you could use the redefinition shown in the next example. Here we do not use `\@makefnmark` to format the mark, but rather access the number via `\@thefnmark`. As a result, the

mark is placed onto the baseline instead of being raised. Thus, the marks in the text and at the bottom are formatted differently:

A line of text¹ with some² footnotes.

-
1. The first
 2. The second

```
\makeatletter
\renewcommand\@makefnmark[1]{%
  {\noindent\makebox[Opt][r]{\@thefnmark.\,}\#1}
\makeatother
A line of text\footnote{The first}
with some\footnote{The second} footnotes.
```

3-5-7

However, instead of manipulating footnote commands directly as done above, it is usually better to load the `footmisc` package that provides higher-level declarations to adjust these commands to your liking.

3.5.3 `footmisc` — Various footnotes styles

Since standard \LaTeX offers only one type of footnotes and only limited (and somewhat low-level) support for customization, several people developed small packages that provided features otherwise not available. Many of these earlier efforts were captured by Robin Fairbairns (1947–2022) in his `footmisc` package (these days maintained by Frank Mittelbach), which supports, among other things, page-wise numbering of footnotes and footnotes formatted as a single paragraph at the bottom of the page. In this section we describe the features provided by this package, showing which packages it supersedes whenever applicable.

The interface for `footmisc` is quite simple: nearly everything is customized by specifying options when the package is loaded, though in some cases further control is possible via parameters.

*Numbering
footnotes per page*

In the `article` class, footnotes are numbered sequentially throughout the document; in `report` and `book`, footnotes are numbered inside chapters. Sometimes, however, it is more appropriate to number footnotes on a per-page basis. This can be achieved by loading `footmisc` with the option `perpage`, which loads the package `perpage` (see Section 3.5.6 on page 218). Since \TeX 's page-building mechanism is asynchronous, it is always necessary to process the document at least twice to get the numbering correct. Fortunately, the package warns you via “Rerun to get cross-references right” if the footnote numbers are incorrect. The package stores information between runs in the `.aux` file, so after a lot of editing this information is sometimes not even close to reality. In such a case deleting the `.aux` file helps the package to find the correct numbering faster.¹

Some text* with a
footnote. More† text.

*First.
†Second.

Even more text.* And
even† more text. Some

*Third.
†Fourth.

```
\usepackage[perpage,symbol]{footmisc}
Some text\footnote{First.} with a footnote.
More\footnote{Second.} text. Even more
text.\footnote{Third.} And even\footnote
{Fourth.} more text. Some final text.
```

3-5-8

¹In fact, during the preparation of this chapter we managed to confuse `footmisc` (by changing the `\textheight` in an example) so much that it was unable to find the correct numbering thereafter and kept asking for a rerun forever. Removing the `.aux` file resolved the problem.

<i>Name</i>	<i>List of Symbols</i>															
lamport	*	†	‡	§	¶	||	**	††	‡‡	§§	¶¶	***	†††	‡‡‡	§§§	¶¶¶
bringhurst	*	†	‡	§	||	¶										
chicago	*	†	‡	§	||	#										
wiley	*	**	†	‡	§	¶	||									

Table 3.7: Footnote symbol lists predefined by footmisc

For this special occasion our example shows two pages side by side so you can observe the effects of the `perpage` option. The example also shows the effect of another option: `symbol` uses footnote symbols instead of numbers. Because only a limited number of such symbols are available, you can use this option only if there are few footnotes in total or if footnote numbers restart on each page. There are six different footnote symbols and, by duplicating some, standard \LaTeX supports nine footnotes. By triplicating some of them, `footmisc` supports up to 16 footnotes (per page or in total). If this number is exceeded, you get a \LaTeX error message.

Counter too large errors...

In particular with the `perpage` option, this behavior can be a nuisance because the error could be spurious, happening only while the package is still trying to determine which footnotes belong on which page. To avoid this problem, you can use the variant option `symbol*`, which also produces footnote symbols but numbers footnotes for which there are no symbols left with arabic numerals. In that case you get a warning at the end of the run that some footnotes were out of range and detailed information is placed in the transcript file.

... are sometimes spurious (but can be avoided)

`\setfnsymbol{name}`

If the `symbol` or `symbol*` option is selected, a default sequence of footnote symbols, as defined by Leslie Lamport, is used. Other authorities suggest different sequences, so `footmisc` offers three other sequences to choose from using the declaration `\setfnsymbol` (see Table 3.7). This declaration only changes the meaning of the `\fnsymbol` command; it does *not* change the counter formatting of footnotes — for the latter you have to additionally specify the `symbol` or `symbol*` option, or redefine `\thefootnote`, so that it formats the counter using `\fnsymbol`.

`\DefineFNSymbols*{name} [type] {list of symbols}`
`\DefineFNSymbolsTM*{name} {list of symbol pairs}`

It is also possible to define your own sequence using a `\DefineFNSymbols` declaration in the preamble. It takes two mandatory arguments: the *name* to access the list later via `\setfnsymbol` and a *list of symbols*. From this list symbols are taken one after another (with spaces ignored). If a symbol is built from more than one glyph, it has to be surrounded by braces. If the starred form of the declaration is used, \LaTeX

issues an error message if it runs out of symbols. Without it, you get arabic numerals and a warning at the end of the \LaTeX run.

Due to an unfortunate design choice, footnote symbols (as well as some other text symbols) were originally added to the math fonts of \TeX , rather than to the text fonts, with the result that they did not change when the text font was modified. In today's \LaTeX this flaw was corrected by adding these symbols to the text symbol encoding (TS1; see Section 9.5.6), and \LaTeX 's default set of footnote symbols are now taken from the companion text symbol font unless the footnote itself is within a formula.

If you define your own sequence, you can use the optional *type* argument with the value *math* or *text* (the default) to tell `footmisc` that your list consists of math or text symbols, respectively. If you choose *math*, then the symbols are all wrapped in `\ensuremath` so that they can be safely used in text as well.

Alternatively, you can use a `\DefineFNSymbolsTM` declaration. It does not have an optional argument and instead expects pairs of text/math symbols in its second mandatory argument, which are pairwise wrapped in `\TextOrMath`. This is the way the default sequences in Table 3.7 are defined.

<p>Some text[*] with a footnote. More^{**} text. Even more text.^{***} And even^{****} more text. Some more text to finish up.</p> <hr/> <p>[*]First. ^{**}Second. ^{***}Third. ^{****}Fourth.</p>	<pre>\usepackage[symbol]{footmisc} \DefineFNSymbols{stars}[text]{* {**} {***} {****}} \setfnsymbol{stars} Some text\footnote{First.} with a footnote. More\footnote{Second.} text. Even more text.\footnote{Third.} And even\footnote{Fourth.} more text. Some more text to finish up.</pre>	3-5-9
---	---	-------

If you have many short footnotes, then their default placement at the bottom of the page, stacked on top of each other, is perhaps not completely satisfactory. A typical example would be critical editions, which contain many short footnotes.¹ The layout of the footnotes can be changed using the `para` option, which formats them into a single paragraph. If this option is chosen, then footnotes never split across pages. The code for this option is based on earlier work by Chris Rowley and Dominik Wujastyk, which in turn was inspired by an example in *The \TeX book* by Donald Knuth.

<p>Some text with a footnote.¹ More text.² Even more text.³ Some final text.</p> <hr/> <p>¹ A first. ² A second. ³ A third.</p>	<pre>\usepackage[para]{footmisc} Some text with a footnote.\footnote{A first.} More text.\footnote{A second.} Even more text.\footnote{A third.} Some final text.</pre>	3-5-10
--	--	--------

Another way to deal with footnotes is given by the option `side`. In this case footnotes are placed into the margin, if possible on the same line where they are referenced. What happens internally is that special `\marginpar` commands are used

¹See, for example, the `reledmac` package [174] by Maïeul Rouquette for the kinds of footnotes and endnotes that are common in critical editions. This package is a reimplement of the `EDMAC` system for \LaTeX and was initially made available by Peter Wilson as `ledmac`. See also the `bigfoot` package by David Kastrup described in Section 3.5.7.

to place the footnote text, so everything said in Section 3.5.11 about the `\marginpar` commands is applicable. This option cannot be used together with the `para` option, described earlier, but can be combined with most others.

¹A first. Some text with a footnote.¹ A lot
²A of additional text here with a footnote.²
second. Even more text and then another foot-
³A third. note.³ Some more text.⁴ A lot of ad-
⁴A fourth. ditional lines of text here to fill up the
space on the left.

3-5-11

```
\usepackage[side,flushmargin]{footmisc}
Some text with a footnote.\footnote{A first.}
A lot of additional text here with a
footnote.\footnote{A second.} Even more text
and then another footnote.\footnote{A third.}
Some more text.\footnote{A fourth.} A lot
of additional lines of text here to fill up
the space on the left.
```

The option `flushmargin` used in the previous example makes the footnote text start at the left margin with the footnote marker protruding into the margin; by default, the footnote text is indented. For obvious reasons this option is incompatible with the `para` option. A variant form is called `marginal`. If this option is used, then the marker sticks even farther into the margin, as shown in the example below:

Some text¹ with a footnote. More
text.² Even more text.³ Some final

- ¹ A first.
² A second footnote with a few lines of text to
show variations in the footnote line-breaking
behavior.
³ A third note.

3-5-12

```
\usepackage[marginal]{footmisc}
\newcommand\sampletext{Some text\footnote{A first.}
with a footnote. More text.\footnote{A second
footnote with a few lines of text to show
variations in the footnote line-breaking behavior.}
Even more text.\footnote{A third note.}
Some final text.}
\sampletext
```

Instead of using one of the above options, the position of the footnote marker can be directly controlled using the parameter `\footnotemargin`. If set to a negative value, the marker is positioned in the margin. A value of 0pt is equivalent to using the option `flushmargin`. A positive value (default is 1.8em) means that the footnote text is indented by this amount and the marker is placed flush right in the space produced by the indentation.

Some text¹ with a foot-
note. More text.² Even

- ¹A first.
²A second footnote with a few

more text.³ Some final text.

lines of text to show variations
in the footnote line-breaking be-
havior.

- ³A third note.

```
\usepackage{footmisc}
\setlength\footnotemargin{10pt}

\sampletext % as defined above
```

3-5-13

Instead of indenting the first line of a footnote, you can also have all lines indented by the same amount (`\footnotemargin`) with the footnote marker placed into that space. This is achieved by specifying the option `hang` with a suitable setting

for `\footnotemargin` as shown in the next example. This example also uses the `splitrule` option discussed below:

<p>Some text¹ with a footnote. More text.² Even</p> <hr/> <p>¹ A first. ² A second footnote with a few lines of text to show</p>	<p>more text.³ Some final text.</p> <hr/> <p>variations in the footnote line-breaking behavior. ³ A third note.</p>	<pre>\usepackage[hang,splitrule]{footmisc} \setlength\footnotemargin{6pt} \sampletext % as defined before</pre>	3-5-14
--	---	--	--------

By default, the footnote text is justified, but this does not always give satisfactory results, especially with the options `para` and `side`. In the case of the `para` option nothing can be done, but for other layouts you can switch to ragged-right typesetting by using the option `ragged`. The next example does not specify `flushmargin`, so we get an indentation of width `\footnotemargin` (which we made smaller than its default) — compare this to Example 3-5-11 on the previous page.

<p>¹In the margin ragged right often looks best. Do you agree?</p>	<p>A lot of additional text here to fill up¹ the space in the example. Include some text with a footnote and some more.</p>	<pre>\usepackage[side,ragged]{footmisc} \setlength\footnotemargin{5pt} A lot of additional text here to fill up\footnote{In the margin ragged right often looks best. Do you agree?} the space in the example. Include some text with a footnote and some more.</pre>	3-5-15
---	--	--	--------


Rules separating footnotes

The two options `norule` and `splitrule` (courtesy of Donald Arseneau) modify the rule normally placed between text and footnotes. If `norule` is specified, then the separation rule is suppressed. As compensation the value of `\skip\footins` is slightly enlarged. If a footnote does not fit onto the current page, it is split and continued on the next page, unless the `para` option is used (it does not support split footnotes). By default, the rule separating normal and split footnotes from preceding text is the same. If you specify the option `splitrule` as done in Example 3-5-14, however, it becomes customizable: the rule above split footnotes runs across the whole column while the one above normal footnotes retains the default definition given by `\footnoterule`. More precisely, this option introduces the commands `\mpfootnoterule` (for use in minipages), `\pagefootnoterule` (for use on regular pages), and `\splitfootnoterule` (for use on pages starting with a split footnote). By modifying their definitions, similar to the example given earlier for the `\footnoterule` command, you can customize the layout according to your needs.

<p>Some text¹ with a footnote. More text.² Even more text.³ Some final text.</p> <p>¹ A first. ² A second footnote with a few lines of text to show variations in the footnote line-breaking behavior. ³ A third note.</p>	<pre>\usepackage[norule,para]{footmisc} \sampletext % as defined previously</pre>	3-5-16
--	--	--------

By default \LaTeX places footnotes below the text followed by the bottom floats, if present. In classes such as `article` or `report` in which `\raggedbottom` is in effect, so

that columns are allowed to be of different heights, the footnotes are attached at a distance of `\skip\footins` from the column text, unless the page contains infinite stretchable space, e.g., coming from ending it with `\newpage` or `\clearpage`. In such a case the footnotes are pushed to the bottom, which is quite noticeable on the last page of the document or a chapter that is typically only partly filled. This strange behavior is corrected by any of the options that adjust the footnote placement on the page; e.g., `abovefloats` corrects it but otherwise keeps the standard order.

 A strange behavior in standard L^AT_EX when prematurely ending a page

By loading the package with the option `belowfloats` you can swap the order of footnotes and bottom floats. You can also request `abovefloats` to enforce the default order or to ensure that the `\newpage` behavior is corrected without any other change.

Swapping footnotes and floats ...

If you want any bottom float to be aligned at the bottom, even if `\raggedbottom` is in force, specify the option `bottomfloats`. If you prefer the footnotes to be always aligned on the bottom instead, you can specify the option `bottom`. This automatically swaps the order of footnotes and bottom floats if both are present on the page.

... or pushing footnotes or floats to the bottom ...

By suitably combining these options you can force both footnotes and floats to the bottom (i.e., any excess space on the pages goes directly after the text). The combination of `bottom` and `abovefloats` puts footnotes and floats at the bottom (in that order), and `bottomfloats` together with `belowfloats` puts both at the bottom (with the footnotes last). The other combinations are duplicates, e.g., `bottom`, `belowfloats` is the same as just specifying `bottom`.

... or pushing both to the bottom

The `footmisc` package deals with one other potential problem: if you put a footnote into a sectional unit, then it might appear in the table of contents or the running header, causing havoc. Of course, you could prevent this dilemma (manually) by using the optional argument of the heading command; alternatively, you could specify the option `stable`, which prevents footnotes from appearing in such places.

Footnotes in headings

In some documents, e.g., literary analysis, several footnotes may appear at a single point. Unfortunately, L^AT_EX's standard footnote commands are not able to handle this situation correctly: the footnote markers are simply clustered together so that you cannot tell whether you are to look for the footnotes 1 and 2, or for the footnote with the number 12.

Several footnotes at the same point

Some text¹² with two footnotes.
Even more text.³

```
\usepackage[para]{footmisc}
```

Some text\footnote{A first.}\footnote{A second.} with
two footnotes. Even more text.\footnote{A third.}

3-5-17

¹ A first. ² A second. ³ A third.

This problem is resolved by specifying the option `multiple`, which ensures that footnotes in a sequence display their markers separated by commas. The separator can be changed to something else, such as a small space, by changing the command `\multfootsep`. Below we used a vertical bar for illustration purposes.

Some text^{1|2} with two footnotes.
Even more text.³

```
\usepackage[multiple,para]{footmisc}
\renewcommand\multfootsep{|}
```

Some text\footnote{A first.}\footnote{A second.} with
two footnotes. Even more text.\footnote{A third.}

3-5-18

¹ A first. ² A second. ³ A third.

3.5.4 footnoterange — Referencing footnote ranges

If you have to deal with many footnotes at a single point, then you may find the above layout still suboptimal. In that case you may want to try the `footnoterange` package by Martin Münch. It provides the environment `footnoterange`, and within its scope all footnotes are collected, and (at the end of the environment) a single mark with a range, e.g., “^{2–4}” is displayed.

If hyperlinks to footnotes are enabled (through the package `hyperref`), then ranges of footnotes are hyperlinked as well, pointing to the first and last footnotes in the range. This can be suppressed by using the `footnoterange*` environment. Both environments provide the same results when hyperlinking is disabled.

It is possible to use the `footnoterange` package together with the `multiple` option from `footmisc`. In that case the option affects only those footnotes outside the scope of a `footnoterange` environment, as shown in the next example:

Some text.^{1–3} with three foot-
notes. Even more text.^{4,5}

¹ A first. ² Second. ³ Third.
⁴ One more. ⁵ Another one.

```
\usepackage[para,multiple]{footmisc} \usepackage{footnoterange}
Some text.\begin{footnoterange}
    \footnote{A first.}\footnote{Second.}%
    \footnote{Third.} \end{footnoterange}
with three footnotes. Even more
text.\footnote{One more.}\footnote{Another one.}
```

3-5-19

The final example shows that the environment can contain text as well as footnotes, which are then collected and a single range mark written at the end of the environment. It also shows that the environment works within minipages and in particular with footnote mark setups that do not use arabic numerals (as long as they support ranges).

Some text with three foot-
notes.^{a–c} Even more text.^{d,1}

^aA first.
^bSecond.
^cThird (moved).
^dOne more.

```
\usepackage[multiple]{footmisc} \usepackage{footnoterange}
\fbbox{\begin{minipage}{.95\textwidth}
Some text\begin{footnoterange}
    \footnote{A first.}\footnote{Second.} with
    three footnotes.\footnote{Third (moved).}
\end{footnoterange}
Even more text.\footnote{One more.}\footnotemark
\end{minipage}}\footnotetext{An external one.}
```

3-5-20

A different approach to obtain ranges of footnote marks (without the need of a dedicated environment) is offered by the `fnpct` package discussed below.

3.5.5 fnpct — Managing footnote markers and punctuation

When footnote or endnotes are placed next to a punctuation character, there is the question of how to place the marker in relation to the punctuation. Bringhurst suggests that if the marker is a raised symbol, then it could be placed (partly) over low punctuation, e.g., a period or a comma, to avoid the otherwise noticeable gap [25].

The package `fnpct` by Clemens Niederberger can be used to make this adjustment for you. It works by modifying footnote and endnote commands so that they look *forward* in the input for a comma or period and if found adjust the placement by exchanging the punctuation and the marker position and also move them closer together so that they partly overlap.

This has two consequences: the punctuation must always *follow* the note command, even if the footnote or endnote is meant to apply to the whole sentence or phrase.¹ Furthermore, while `fnpct` works with nearly every other footnote or endnote package, the automatic detection of consecutive note commands as for example implemented by the `multiple` option of `footmisc` will not work well with it. For that reason `fnpct` provides its own, and the `footmisc` option is simply not needed.

We use the following text to demonstrate different aspects of the package and its customization possibilities. Here we show the results when the package is *not* loaded (we use `footmisc` to provide handling of consecutive footnotes and get all footnote text somewhat compressed at the bottom):

The three little pigs built their houses out of straw¹, sticks² and bricks^{3,4}.

¹ not to be confused with hay ² or lumber according to some sources ³ probably fired clay bricks ⁴ With kind permission by Clemens.

3-5-21

```
\usepackage[para,multiple]{footmisc}
```

The three little pigs built their houses out of straw\footnote{not to be confused with hay}, sticks\footnote{or lumber according to some sources} and bricks\footnote{probably fired clay bricks}\footnote{With kind permission by Clemens.}.

If we now also apply the `fnpct` package (and drop the option `multiple` from `footmisc`), we get the following result:

The three little pigs built their houses out of straw,¹ sticks² and bricks.^{3,4}

¹ not to be confused with hay ² or lumber according to some sources ³ probably fired clay bricks ⁴ With kind permission by Clemens.

3-5-22

```
\usepackage[para]{footmisc} \usepackage{fnpct}
```

The three little pigs built their houses out of straw\footnote{not to be confused with hay}, sticks\footnote{or lumber according to some sources} and bricks\footnote{probably fired clay bricks}\footnote{With kind permission by Clemens.}.

The first marker has exchanged its position with the comma and was slightly moved backwards by the amount specified by the key `after-punct-space` (default `-0.06em`). After the second marker there is no punctuation. In that case it is slightly moved to the right by the amount given by the key `before-footnote-space` (default `0.06em`). Changes to both are demonstrated in Example 3-5-23. The last two markers show that this also works well with consecutive markers: the period exchanged its position with both markers and is moved up front.

```
\footnote*[mark]{note}    \footnotemark*[mark]    % extended
```

The package extends the footnote command syntax by adding a star form (where applicable). If used, it prevents the exchange of punctuation and footnote mark for

¹Technically it is much easier for \LaTeX to look ahead than to look back.

the current instance. For example, it could be used to make the first note attach to the word “straw” and not exchange places with the following comma.

Additionally, the package handles consecutive `\footnote` commands. The resulting footnote markers are then combined using a comma or some other material (key `separation-symbol`) as output separator. As before, the star form of the command prevents the exchange of markers and punctuation.

In case there are three or more consecutive footnotes they can be turned into a range by specifying `ranges` as shown in the next example. There are, however, some dependencies on other packages, and you may have to additionally set `keep-ranges`, for instance with `hyperref`. See the package documentation [157] for details.

The same syntax extension is provided for “endnote” commands in case `fnpct` is used with `enotez` or any other supported package. We exhibit the extended commands in conjunction with `enotez` below (endnotes are not shown):

```
\usepackage{fnpct,enotez}
\setfnpct{after-punct-space=-0.2em,
          before-footnote-space=0pt,ranges}
```

The three little pigs built
their houses out of straw¹,
sticks² and bricks.³⁻⁵

```
The three little pigs built their houses out of
straw\endnote*{not to be confused with hay},
sticks\endnote{or lumber according to some sources} and
bricks\endnote{probably fired clay bricks}\endnote{With
kind permission by Clemens.}\endnote{I asked, honestly.}.
```

3-5-23

Keys are specified with the command `\setfnpct` that for most keys can be used both in the preamble as well as in the document. Above we used it for modifying the spacing. Most keys have default values that are applied if you use the key without a value; for example, above we used `ranges` without specifying `=true`.

There are more than twenty other customization possibilities for special scenarios, among them the possibility of including other punctuation characters into the mechanism. As mentioned earlier, `fnpct` works well together with most other footnote or endnote packages, among them `bigfoot`, `endnotes`, `enotez`, `footmisc`, `manyfoot`, `parnotes`, and `snotez`. However, in some cases it is necessary to provide the preamble declarations in some specific order. If you run into problems or have additional customization needs, consult the package documentation [157], which gives detailed advice and also describes the mechanisms to adapt further packages to `fnpct`.

3.5.6 perpage — Resetting counters on a “per-page” basis

As mentioned earlier, the ability to reset arbitrary counters on a per-page basis is implemented in the small package `perpage` written by David Kastrup.

```
\MakePerPage[start]{counter}
```

The declaration `\MakePerPage` defines *counter* to be reset on every page, optionally requesting that its initial starting value be *start* (default 1). For demonstration we

repeat Example 3-5-8 on page 210 but start each footnote marker sequence with the second symbol (i.e., “†” instead of “*”).

3-5-24

<p>Some text[†] with a footnote. More[‡] text.</p> <hr/> <p>[†]First. [‡]Second.</p>	<p>Even more text.[†] And even[‡] more text. Some</p> <hr/> <p>[†]Third. [‡]Fourth.</p>
--	---

```
\usepackage[symbol]{footmisc}
\usepackage{perpage}
\MakePerPage[2]{footnote}

Some text\footnote{First.} with a footnote.
More\footnote{Second.} text. Even more
text.\footnote{Third.} And even\footnote
{Fourth.} more text. Some final text.
```

The package synchronizes the numbering via the .aux file of the document, thus requiring at least two runs to get the numbering correct. In addition, you may get spurious “Counter too large” error messages on the first run if `\fnsymbol` or `\alph` is used for numbering (see the discussion of the `symbol*` option for the `footmisc` package on page 211).

Among L^AT_EX’s standard counters probably only `footnote` can be sensibly modified in this way. Nevertheless, one can easily imagine applications that provide, say, numbered marginal notes, which could be defined as follows:

```
\newcounter{mnote} \renewcommand{\themnote}{\alph{mnote}}
\usepackage{perpage} \MakePerPage{mnote}
\newcommand\mnote[1]{%
  {\refstepcounter{mnote}%
   \marginpar[\small\raggedleft\textsuperscript{(\themnote)}\itshape #1]%
              {\small\raggedright\textsuperscript{(\themnote)}\itshape #1}%
  }}

```

We step the new counter `mnote` outside the `\marginpar` so that it is executed only once¹; we also need to limit the scope of the current redefinition of `\label` (through `\refstepcounter`) so we put braces around the whole definition. Notes on left-hand pages should be right aligned, so we use the optional argument of `\marginpar` to provide different formatting for this case.

3-5-25

<p>^(a)<i>First.</i> Some text with a footnote. More¹ text.</p> <p>^(b)<i>Third!</i> Even more text. And</p> <hr/> <p>¹Second as footnote.</p>	<p>even more text. Final ^(a)<i>Fourth.</i></p> <p>text.²</p> <hr/> <p>²Fifth!</p>
--	--

% code as above

```
Some text\mnote{First.} with a
footnote. More\footnote{Second
as footnote.} text. Even more
text.\mnote{Third!} And even
more\mnote {Fourth.} text.
Final text.\footnote{Fifth!}
```

Another application for the package is given in Example 3-5-30 on page 223, where several independent footnote streams are all numbered on a per-page basis.

¹If placed in both arguments of `\marginpar`, it would be executed twice. It would work if placed in the optional argument only, but then we would make use of an implementation detail (that the optional argument is evaluated first) that may change.

```
\thepage \AddAbsoluteCounter{cnt}
```

In addition to numbering some elements on a per-page basis you may want to include the page number into the counter representation, e.g., to display the float numbers (if numbered per page) prefixed by the page on which they appear. A simple approach using `\thepage`, e.g.,

```
\renewcommand\thefigure{\thepage-\arabic{figure}} % fails!
```

would fail, because `\thepage` may not have the correct value when the element is constructed. Instead, you can use `\theperpage`, which would refer to the page at the time the corresponding counter is stepped. Below is a variation of Example 3-5-24 that uses this approach.

Another feature of the package is its ability to define counters that automatically increment with their companion counter but are never reset. `\AddAbsoluteCounter` expects an existing counter name as its argument and provides an additional counter prefixed by `abs`. This way you can count the total number of pages, equations, sections, or any other element with an associated counter. The absolute counter for pages `abspage` is automatically defined by the package. Please note, though, that if used shortly after a page break, it may report the wrong number of pages when the pagination algorithm looks ahead; e.g., without the `\par` command, it would incorrectly report just one page!

Some text^{6.1} with a
footnote. More^{6.2} text.
Even more text.^{6.3} And

^{6.1}First.
^{6.2}Second.
^{6.3}Third.

even^{7.1} more text. There
have been 5 footnotes in
total.

This document has
2 pages.

^{7.1}Fourth.

```
\usepackage{perpage} \MakePerPage{footnote}  
\renewcommand\thefootnote  
{\thepage.\arabic{footnote}}  
\AddAbsoluteCounter{footnote}
```

Some text\footnote{First.} with a footnote.
More\footnote{Second.} text. Even more
text.\footnote{Third.} And even\footnote
{Fourth.} more text. There have been
\theabsfootnote{} footnotes in total. \par
This document has \theabspage{} pages.

3-5-26

3.5.7 manyfoot, bigfoot — Independent footnotes

Most documents have only a few footnotes, if any. For them \LaTeX 's standard commands plus the enhancements offered by `footmisc` are usually sufficient. However, certain applications, such as critical editions, require several independently numbered footnote streams. For these situations the package `manyfoot` by Alexander Rozhenko, and the even more comprehensive package `bigfoot` by David Kastrup can provide valuable help.

Both packages use largely the same interfaces so we describe them together. They do, however, differ with respect to capabilities and results so that there are cases for favoring one over the other as discussed below. Differences are discussed as appropriate next to the examples.

`\DeclareNewFootnote[fn-style]{suffix}[enum-style]`

This declaration can be used to introduce a new footnote level. In its simplest form you merely specify a *suffix* such as “B”. This allocates a new counter `footnote<suffix>` that is used to automatically number the footnotes on the new level. The default is to use arabic numerals; by providing the optional argument *enum-style*, some other counter style (e.g., *roman* or *alph*) can be selected.

The optional *fn-style* argument defines the general footnote style for the new level; the default is *plain*. If the `manyfoot` package was loaded with the `para` or `para*` option, then `para` can also be selected as the footnote style. With `bigfoot` the *fn-style* `para` can be chosen without loading any additional option.

The declaration then automatically defines six commands for you. The first three are described here:

`\footnote<suffix>[number]{text}` Same as `\footnote` but for the new level. Steps the `footnote<suffix>` counter unless the optional *number* argument is given. Generates footnote markers and puts *text* at the bottom of the page.

`\footnotemark<suffix>[number]` Same as `\footnotemark` but for the new level. Steps the corresponding counter (if no optional argument is used) and prints a footnote marker corresponding to its value.

`\footnotetext<suffix>[number]{text}` Same as `\footnotetext` but for the new level. Puts *text* at the bottom of the page using the optional argument or the current value of `footnote<suffix>` to generate a footnote marker in front of it.

In all three cases the style of the footnote markers depends on the chosen *enum-style*. The remaining three commands defined by `\DeclareNewFootnote` for use in the document are `\Footnote<suffix>`, `\Footnotemark<suffix>`, and `\Footnotetext<suffix>` (i.e., same names as above but starting with an uppercase F). The important difference to the previous set is the following: instead of the optional *number* argument, they require a mandatory *marker* argument allowing you to specify arbitrary markers if desired. When using them, you have to provide the formatting for the marker; i.e., it is not automatically based on the *enum-style*. Some examples are given below.

The three companion commands for L^AT_EX’s standard footnotes (i.e., `\Footnote`, `\Footnotemark`, and `\Footnotetext`) are also automatically made available if either `manyfoot` or `bigfoot` is loaded.¹

One important difference between `manyfoot` and `bigfoot` is that the latter allows you to also make a declaration for the default footnote commands by using the artificial suffix `default`, e.g.,

```
\DeclareNewFootnote[para]{default}[roman]
```

would typeset standard footnotes joined together in a paragraph using lowercase roman numerals as markers. With `manyfoot` this is not possible, and you would need to resort to loading `footmisc` with appropriate settings to achieve the same effect.

¹They are in fact also available separately by loading the package `nccfoot`s by Alexander Rozhenko.

The general layout of the footnotes can be influenced by loading the `footmisc` package in addition to `manyfoot` or `bigfoot`, except that the `para` option of `footmisc` cannot be used, and its `side` option can be used only with `manyfoot`.

In the next example we use the standard footnote layout for top-level footnotes and the run-in layout (option `para`) for the second level. Note how `footmisc`'s `multiple` option properly acts on all footnotes.

Some text^{1,a} with footnotes. Even
more text.^b Some text^{2,*} with footnotes.
Even more text.^c

¹A first.

²Another main note.

^aB-level. ^bA second. ^{*}A manual marker.

^cAnother B note.

```
\usepackage[multiple]{footmisc}
\usepackage[para]{manyfoot}
\DeclareNewFootnote[para]{B}[alph]

Some text\footnote{A first.}\footnoteB{B-level.}
with footnotes. Even more text.\footnoteB{A second.}
Some text\footnote{Another main note.}%
\FootnoteB{*}{A manual marker.} with footnotes.
Even more text.\footnoteB{Another B note.}
```

3-5-27

If all footnote levels should produce run-in footnotes, then the solution with `manyfoot` is to avoid the standard top-level footnotes completely (e.g., `\footnote`) and provide all necessary levels through `manyfoot`, i.e., only use `\footnote{suffix}` commands. With `bigfoot` you can alternatively declare the formatting for the default level, as done for instance in Example 3-5-31.

In the following example the top-level footnotes are moved into the margin by loading `footmisc` with a different set of options. This is possible only with `manyfoot`; the `bigfoot` package ignores `footmisc`'s `side` option and always places the footnotes at the bottom of the page.

This time `manyfoot` is loaded with the option `para*`, which differs from the `para` option used previously in that it suppresses any indentation in the run-in footnote blocks. In addition, the second-level notes are now numbered with roman numerals. For comparison the example typesets the same input text as Example 3-5-27, but it uses a different measure, because we have to show marginal notes now.

¹A first. Some text^{1,i} with foot-
notes. Even more text.ⁱⁱ Some
²Another text^{2,*} with footnotes. Even
main note. more text.ⁱⁱⁱ

ⁱB-level. ⁱⁱA second. ^{*}A manual
marker. ⁱⁱⁱAnother B note.

```
\usepackage[side,flushmargin,ragged,multiple]
{footmisc}
\usepackage[para*]{manyfoot}
\DeclareNewFootnote[para]{B}[roman]

Some text\footnote{A first.}\footnoteB{B-level.}
with footnotes. Even more text.\footnoteB{A
second.} Some text\footnote{Another main note.}%
\FootnoteB{*}{A manual marker.} with footnotes.
Even more text.\footnoteB{Another B note.}
```

3-5-28

Separation of footnote blocks

The vertical separation between a footnote block and the previous one is specified by `\skip\footins{suffix}`. By default, it is equal to `\skip\footins` (i.e., the separation between main text and footnotes). Initially the extra blocks are separated only by such spaces, but if the option `ruled` is included, a `\footnoterule` is used as well. In fact, arbitrary material can be placed in that position by redefining the command

`\extrafootnoterule` — the only requirement being that the typeset result from that command does not take up any additional vertical space (see the discussion of `\footnoterule` on page 208 for further details). It is even possible to use different rules for different blocks of footnotes; consult the package documentation for details.

Some text^{1,*} with a footnote. Even more text.^A Some text[†] with a footnote.^B Some more text for the example.

¹ A first.

^{*} A second.

[†] A sample.

^A A third.

^B Another sample.

3-5-29

```
\usepackage[marginal,multiple]{footmisc}
\usepackage[ruled]{manyfoot}          % or bigfoot
\DeclareNewFootnote{B}[fnsymbol]
\DeclareNewFootnote{C}[Alph]
\renewcommand\extrafootnoterule{\vspace*{-3pt}%
  \hrule width 4em height 0.4pt \vspace*{2.6pt}}
\setlength{\skip\footinsC}{5pt minus 1pt}

Some text\footnote{A first.}\footnoteB{A second.}
with a footnote. Even more text.\footnoteC{A third.}
Some text\footnoteB{A sample.} with a
footnote.\footnoteC{Another sample.} Some more
text for the example.
```

The previous example deployed two additional *enum-styles*: `Alph` and `fnsymbol`. However, because only a few footnote symbols are available in both styles, that choice is most likely not a good one, unless we ensure that these footnote streams are numbered on a per-page basis. The `perpage` option of `footmisc` does not help here, because it applies to only the top-level footnotes. We can achieve the desired effect either by using `\MakePerPage` from the `perpage` package on the counters `footnoteB` and `footnoteC` (as done below) or by using the `perpage` option of `manyfoot` (which numbers all new footnote levels defined on a per-page basis). Note that the top-level footnotes are still numbered sequentially the way the example was set up.

*Number the
footnotes per page*

<p>Some text¹ with a footnote. Even more^{*,A} text. Some</p> <hr/> <p>¹A first.</p> <p>[*]Second.</p> <p>^AThird.</p>	<p>text^A with a footnote here.[*] Some more text. And^{2,B} a last</p> <hr/> <p>²Again.</p> <p>[*]Another sample.</p> <p>^AA sample.</p> <p>^BA last one.</p>
---	---

3-5-30

```
\usepackage[multiple]{footmisc}
\usepackage{manyfoot,perpage}
\DeclareNewFootnote{B}[fnsymbol]
\DeclareNewFootnote{C}[Alph]
\MakePerPage{footnoteB}\MakePerPage{footnoteC}

Some text\footnote{A first.} with a footnote.
Even more\footnoteB{Second.}\footnoteC{Third.}
text. Some text\footnoteC{A sample.} with a
footnote here.\footnoteB{Another sample.} Some
more text. And\footnote{Again.}\footnoteC{A
last one.} a last note.
```

If the previous example is set with `bigfoot` instead of `manyfoot`, then we do not need to load `perpage`: this is automatically done by `bigfoot`. We do, however, need to explicitly declare

```
\usepackage{bigfoot} \DeclareNewFootnote{default} ...
```

because otherwise the top-level footnotes end up in the last footnote block.

The biggest difference between `manyfoot` and `bigfoot` and probably the deciding factor for which to choose is the handling of run-in footnotes and the fact that with `manyfoot`, footnotes for different levels cannot be easily nested. That is, to have, for example, footnotes of the second level inside a top-level footnote, you have to go the roundabout way of using `\footnotemark{suffix}` inside the main footnote and then place the corresponding `\footnotetext{suffix}` directly afterwards.

In contrast, `bigfoot` allows natural nesting of such footnotes and distributes their text correctly to the different footnote apparatus as needed in critical editions and similar documents. Furthermore, it is able to split the last footnote in each footnote block automatically if that becomes necessary.

To give you an impression of the power behind these concepts, take a look at the next example¹, which shows several of the `bigfoot` features (though due to the space constraints not necessarily with a very pleasing layout).

There are three footnote levels defined: the default one uses arabic numbers, a second level uses lowercase Latin letter, and a third level uses footnote symbols. The markers for the inner footnotes are restarted on each page using `\MakePerPage` from the `perpage` package that is automatically loaded by `bigfoot`.

Some text¹ with a footnote. Another sentence² with a footnote. Some text³ with two footnotes here.⁴ Some more text. More text to fill up the pages in the

¹First. ²Second.^a
³Third. ⁴Fourth.^b

^aA subnote.
^bA controversial* and

*A C-level commentary on the commentary.

example. A last note with notes.⁵

⁵Fifth.^a

lengthy subnote going on for a number* of lines.[†]
^aA B-level comment.[‡]

*Another commentary.
[†]Final commentary.
[‡]Being scrutinized!

```
\usepackage[ruled]{bigfoot}
\DeclareNewFootnote[para]{default}
\DeclareNewFootnote[para]{B}[alph]
\DeclareNewFootnote[para]{C}[fnsymbol]
\MakePerPage{footnoteB}\MakePerPage{footnoteC}

Some text\footnote{First.} with a footnote.
Another sentence\footnote{Second.\footnoteB{A
  subnote.}} with a footnote. Some
text\footnote{Third.} with two footnotes
here.\footnote{Fourth.\footnoteB{A
  controversial\footnoteC{A C-level
  commentary on the commentary.}
  and lengthy subnote going on for a
  number\footnoteC{Another commentary.} of
  lines.\footnoteC{Final commentary.}}}

Some more text. More text to fill up the
pages in the example. A last note with
notes.\footnote{Fifth.\footnoteB{A B-level
  comment.\footnoteC{Being scrutinized!}}}
```

3-5-31

Note in particular the handing of footnote “4”: It contains a B-level footnote that itself contains three C-level footnotes. This does not fit into the space remaining on the first page, so the B-level note is split. This has the effect that the first C-level note is on the first page and the remaining C-level notes are on the second page. Because C-level markers are restarted on each page, two of them show “*” as their marker.

What you can also observe is that we requested `para` footnotes on all levels, but in fact only the top-level footnotes have been typeset run-in. This is another

¹If you try to run this example using `manyfoot`, then none of the second-level notes would appear.

specialty of `bigfoot`. In contrast to `footmisc` and `manyfoot`, the `para` request is not unconditionally obeyed but chosen only when it saves noticeable space and delivers visually attractive results (which is obviously not possible in such a small measure).

The actual criteria are somewhat complicated (and the manual offers some customization possibilities), but in a nutshell a footnote starts on a new line if it is several lines long or the previous line is already nearly full. In the next example we re-typeset the text from Example 3-5-31 but this time to a full measure. However, even here `bigfoot` refuses to use the `para` for all footnote levels.

Some text¹ with a footnote. Another sentence² with a footnote. Some text³ with two footnotes here.⁴ Some more text. More text to fill up the pages in the example. A last note with notes.⁵

¹First. ²Second.^a ³Third. ⁴Fourth.^b ⁵Fifth.^c

^aA subnote. ^bA controversial* and lengthy subnote going on for a number[†] of lines.[‡]

^cA B-level comment.[§]

*A C-level commentary on the commentary.

[†]Another commentary.

[‡]Final commentary.

[§]Being scrutinized!

3-5-32

While `bigfoot` can split footnotes set with the `para` option, this is not the case for run-in footnotes with `manyfoot` (neither with the `para` nor the `para*` option).

For very long footnotes near a page break, this may cause ugly pagination because without a split everything is moved to the next page. To resolve this problem the `manyfoot` package offers a (semi)manual solution: at the point where you wish to split your note you place a `\SplitNote` command and end the footnote.¹ You then place the remaining text of the footnote one paragraph farther down in the document in a `\Footnotetext{suffix}` using an empty *marker* argument.

Some¹ text with two footnotes.ⁱ More text.ⁱⁱ Even more text.

¹An A-note.

ⁱA B-note. ⁱⁱThis is an extremely long B-note that is

Some text here and² even more there.

²Another A-note.

continued here.

```
\usepackage[para]{manyfoot}
\DeclareNewFootnote[para]{B}[roman]

Some\footnote{An A-note.} text with two
footnotes.\footnoteB{A B-note.} More
text.\footnoteB{This is an extremely long
B-note that is\SplitNote} Even more text.
\par Some\FootnotetextB}{continued
here.} text here and\footnote{Another
A-note.} even more there.
```

3-5-33

If both parts of the footnote fall onto the same page after reformatting the document, the footnote parts get correctly reassembled, as we prove in the next example, which uses the same example text but a different measure. However, if the reformatting requires breaking the footnote in a different place, then further

¹`bigfoot` does not offer this command, but then it is not really needed with this package.

manual intervention is unavoidable. Thus, such work is best left until the last stage of production.

Some¹ text with two footnotes.ⁱ More text.ⁱⁱ Even more text.

Some text here and² even more there.

¹An A-note.

²Another A-note.

ⁱA B-note. ⁱⁱThis is an extremely long B-note that is continued here.

```
\usepackage[para]{manyfoot}
\DeclareNewFootnote[para]{B}[roman]

Some\footnote{An A-note.} text with two
footnotes.\footnoteB{A B-note.} More
text.\footnoteB{This is an extremely long
B-note that is\SplitNote} Even more text.
\par Some\FootnotetextB{}{continued here.}
text here and\footnote{Another A-note.} even
more there.
```

3-5-34

3.5.8 parnotes — Present the notes inside the galley

Instead of placing notes at the bottom of the page as footnotes, in the margin or as endnotes, you may want to collect and place them into the main text, e.g., after each paragraph. For this Chelsea Hughes developed the small package `parnotes` that can be used on its own or together with one of the footnote or endnote packages. It provides its own command and can thus coexist with footnote or endnote commands.

```
\parnote[mark]{note} \parnotes \begin{autopn} ... \end{autopn}
```

The `\parnote` adds a marker to the text (by default a raised arabic numeral) and stores away the *note* text for later use (nested notes are not supported). With the optional *mark* argument you can provide your own marker. The notes are typeset when you issue a `\parnotes` command. By default they are set as their own paragraph in a slightly smaller font. With a bit of care you can use this command in uncommon places, e.g., in a marginpar or a float: it typesets all notes that have been encountered in the source since its last invocation.

If you like the notes to appear after each paragraph, you can avoid the necessary `\parnotes` commands by instead surrounding several paragraphs with the `autopn` environment.

This is simple text.¹ This is simple text.^{2,3}

Some more text with a mark[†] and text for two lines.

¹The first parnote. ²The second parnote with more than one line of text to show the formatting in the note section. ³Consecutive! [†]A note with custom mark.

```
\usepackage{parnotes}
```

```
This is simple text.\parnote{The first parnote.}
This is simple text.\parnote{The second parnote with
more than one line of text to show the formatting
in the note section.}\parnote{Consecutive!}
```

```
Some more text with a mark\parnote[\textdagger]
{A note with custom mark.} and text for two lines.
\parnotes
```

3-5-35

If you do not like the default settings, then there are several package options to adjust its behavior, as well as a number of configuration commands that you

can adjust. For example, below we asked for alphabetic markers that restart after each invocation (options `alph` and `reset`) and are typeset in sans serif with a slight indentation on both sides of the notes (options `notessf` and `narrower`).

Other supported options are `notesrm` (default) and `notesit` for the font, `roman` and `symbol` for the marker, `breakwithin` to place each note on its own line, and `nomultiple` to prevent automatic handling of consecutive notes (if ever needed).

<p>This is simple text.^a This is simple text.^b</p> <p>^a The first parnote. ^b The second parnote with more than one line of text to show the formatting in the note section.</p>	<pre>\usepackage[alph,reset,narrower,notessf]{parnotes} This is simple text.\parnote{The first parnote.} This is simple text.\parnote{The second parnote with more than one line of text to show the formatting in the note section.} \parnotes</pre>
<p>Another^a paragraph.</p> <p>Some more text with a mark[†] and text for two lines.</p>	<pre>Another\parnote{Note shows up later.} paragraph. Some more text with a mark\parnote[\textdagger]{A note with custom mark.} and text for two lines. \parnotes</pre>

3-5-36

Instead of the automatic and `reset` of numbering via the option, you can also manage this by yourself (e.g., when you want a restart at chapter boundaries) by using the command `\parnotereset`.

As you can see, the paragraph following a notes section is not indented. If this is undesired, you can change it with the option `indentafter`. In the next example we show this and a few more options by typesetting the notes in *italic*, using roman numerals for markers, and also adding some background color to the notes by redefining the command `\parnotefmt` that configures the note section. By doing that we make the basic formatting options (like `notesit` or `narrower`) no-ops so that we have to take care of font and placement in our redefinition. The example also exhibits the use of the `autopn` environment.

<p>This is simple text.ⁱ This is simple text.^{ii,1}</p> <p>ⁱ The first parnote. ⁱⁱ The second parnote with more than one line of text to show the formatting in the note section.</p> <p>Anotherⁱⁱⁱ paragraph.</p> <p>ⁱⁱⁱ Note shows up immediately.</p> <p>Some more text with a mark[†] and text for two lines.</p> <p>[†] A note with custom mark.</p>	<pre>\usepackage[multiple]{footmisc} \usepackage{xcolor} \usepackage[indentafter,roman]{parnotes} \renewcommand\parnotefmt[1]{\centerline{\colorbox {black!5}{\parbox{0.82\columnwidth}% {\footnotesize\itshape\noindent #1}}}} \begin{autopn} This is simple text.\parnote{The first parnote.} This is simple text.\parnote{The second parnote with more than one line of text to show the formatting in the note section.}\footnote{Consecutive!} Another\parnote{Note shows up immediately.} paragraph. Some more text with a mark\parnote[\textdagger]{A note with custom mark.} and text for two lines. \end{autopn}</pre>
---	---

3-5-37

¹Consecutive!

The previous example also displayed the combination of parnotes and footnotes. While parnotes automatically handles consecutive notes, this is not the case for footnotes or for a mixture of both. For this reason we also had to load footmisc with its multiple option.

3.5.9 ftnright — Right footnotes in a two-column environment

It is sometimes desirable to group all footnotes in a two-column document at the bottom of the right column. This can be achieved by specifying the ftnright package written by the author. The effect of this package is shown in Figure 3.3 on the facing page — the first page of the original documentation (including its spelling errors) of the ftnright implementation. It is clearly shown how the various footnotes collect in the lower part of the right-hand column.

The main idea for the ftnright package is to assemble the footnotes of all columns on a page and place them all together at the bottom of the right column. The layout produced allows for enough space between footnotes and text and, in addition, sets the footnotes in smaller type.¹ Furthermore, the footnote markers are placed at the baseline instead of raising them as superscripts.²

This package can be used together with most other class files for L^AT_EX. Of course, the ftnright package takes effect only with a document using a two-column layout specified with the twocolumn option on the \documentclass command — it does not for columns produced with multicol environments. In most cases, it is best to use ftnright as the very last package to make sure that its settings are not overwritten by other packages.

3.5.10 enotez — Endnotes, an alternative to footnotes

Scholarly works usually group notes at the end of each chapter or at the end of the document. Such notes are called endnotes. Endnotes are not supported in standard L^AT_EX, but they can be created in several ways.

The standard in this area was set many years ago by the package endnotes (by John Lavagnino). It provides its own \endnote command, thus allowing footnotes and endnotes to coexist. In 2012 Clemens Niederberger started to develop the package enotez. It implements the same document interface but allows for a lot of extra customization and is thus a worthy successor to endnotes.³ In the following we describe his package (though most of the examples would also work with small modifications with the endnotes package).

¹Some journals use the same size for footnotes and text, which sometimes makes it difficult to distinguish footnotes from the main text.

²Of course, this is done only for the mark preceding the footnote text and not the one used within the main text, where a raised number or symbol set in smaller type helps to keep the flow of thoughts uninterrupted.

³While the document user interface is largely the same, the customization methods are quite different. This means that reusing text from old documents using the new package is easily possible; only the preamble setup and command for printing notes need adjustment.

Footnotes in a multi-column layout*

Frank Mittelbach

August 10, 1991

1 Introduction

The placement of footnotes in a multi-column layout always bothered me. The approach taken by \LaTeX (i.e., placing the footnotes separately under each column) might be all right if nearly no footnotes are present. But it looks clumsy when both columns contain footnotes, especially when they occupy different amounts of space.

In the multi-column style option [5], I used page-wide footnotes at the bottom of the page, but again the result doesn't look very pleasant since short footnotes produce undesired gaps of white space. Of course, the main goal of this style option was a balancing algorithm for columns which would allow switching between different numbers of columns on the same page. With this feature, the natural place for footnotes seems to be the bottom of the page¹ but looking at some of the results it seems best to avoid footnotes in such a layout entirely.

Another possibility is to turn footnotes into endnotes, i.e., printing them at the end of every chapter or the end of the entire document. But I assume everyone who has ever read a book using such a layout will agree with me, that it is a pain to search back and forth, so that the reader is tempted to ignore the endnotes entirely.

When I wrote the article about "Future extensions of \TeX " [6] I was again dissatisfied with the outcome of the footnotes, and since this article should show certain aspects of high quality typesetting, I decided to give the footnote problem a try and modified the \LaTeX output routine for this purpose. The layout I used was inspired by the yearbook of the Gutenberg Gesellschaft Mainz [1]. Later on, I found that it is also recommended by Jan White [9]. On the layout of footnotes I also consulted books by Jan Tschichold [8] and Manfred Simoneit [7], books, I would recommend to everyone being able to read German texts.

1.1 Description of the new layout

The result of this effort is presented in this paper and the reader can judge for himself whether it was successful or not.² The main idea for this layout is to assemble the footnotes of all columns on a page and place them all

together at the bottom of the right column. Allowing for enough space between footnotes and text, and in addition, setting the footnotes in smaller type³ I decided that one could omit the footnote separator rule which is used in most publications prepared with \TeX .⁴ Furthermore, I decided to place the footnote markers⁵ at the baseline instead of raising them as superscripts.⁶

All in all, I think this generates a neat layout, and surprisingly enough, the necessary changes to the \LaTeX output routine are nevertheless astonishingly simple.

1.2 The use of the style option

This style option might be used together with any other style option for \LaTeX which does not change the three internals changed by `ftnright.sty`.⁷ In most cases, it is best to use this style option as the very last option in the `\documentstyle` command to make sure that its settings are not overwritten by other options.⁸

*. The \LaTeX style option `ftnright` which is described in this article has the version number v1.0d dated 92/06/19. The documentation was last revised on 92/06/19.

1. You can not use column footnotes at the bottom, since the number of columns can differ on one page.

2. Please note, that this option only changed the placement of footnotes. Since this article also makes use of the `doc` option [4], that assigns tiny numbers to code lines sprinkled throughout the text, the resulting design is not perfect.

3. The standard layout in *TUGboat* uses the same size for footnotes and text, giving the footnotes, in my opinion, much too much prominence.

4. People who prefer the rule can add it by redefining the command `\footnoterule` [2, p. 156]. Please, note, that this command should occupy no space, so that a negative space should be used to compensate for the width of the rule used.

5. The tiny numbers or symbols, e.g., the 'S' in front of this footnote.

6. Of course, this is only done for the mark preceding the footnote text and not the one used within the main text where a raised number or symbol set in smaller type will help to keep the flow of thoughts, uninterrupted.

7. These are the macros `\startcolumn`, `\makecol` and `\outputdblcol` as we will see below. Of course, the option will take only effect with a document style using a twocolumn layout (like *tugboat*) or when the user additionally specifies `twocolumn` as a document style option in the `\documentstyle` command.

8. The `tugboat` option (which is currently set up as a style option instead of a document style option which it actually is) will overwrite

1

Figure 3.3: The placement of text and footnotes with the `ftnright` package

```
\endnote[mark]{note}      \endnotemark[mark]      \endnotetext{note}
```

The document-level syntax is modeled after the footnote commands if you replace `foot` with `end` — for example, `\endnote` produces an endnote, `\endnotemark` produces just the mark, and `\endnotetext` produces just the text. The counter used to hold the current endnote number is called `endnote`, and it is stepped whenever `\endnote` or `\endnotemark` is used without an optional argument.

When using the commands, an endnote marker is placed into the text, and corresponding *note* text is stored away for later use. Via the optional *mark* argument it is possible to place custom marks if that is ever needed. In this respect it differs from *endnotes* where the optional *mark* argument always had to be a number formatted according to the default style, while with *enotez* the argument is used as provided.

The printing of the accumulated notes happens when you issue the command `\printendnotes` in the source. It can be used several times (for example, at the end of each chapter) and by default typesets those notes that have been encountered since its previous invocation.

This is simple text.¹ This is simple text.²
Some more text with a mark.[†]

Notes

1. The first endnote.

2. The second endnote with more than one line of text to show the formatting in the note section.

†. A note with custom mark

```
\usepackage{enotez}
```

```
This is simple text.\endnote{The first endnote.}
```

```
This is simple text.\endnote{The second endnote with  
more than one line of text to show the formatting  
in the note section.} Some more text with a  
mark.\endnote[\textdagger]{A note with custom mark}
```

```
\printendnotes % output endnotes here
```

3-5-38

In contrast to *endnotes*, the *enotez* package is capable of handling nested endnotes up to any depth as shown in the next example. All notes are numbered sequentially by level; i.e., the document level notes are numbered consecutively followed by all second-level notes found when printing them, etc. As a consequence you need at least as many additional \LaTeX runs as you have note levels. The package warns you about the need to rerun, but this is something to keep in mind.

This is text.¹ And this is more text.²

Notes

1. The first³ endnote.⁴

2. The third endnote.⁵

3. A nested note...⁶

4. Another second-level note with more text to show its formatting in the note section.

5. Also with a second-level note.

6. ... which itself contains a note.

```
\usepackage{enotez}
```

```
This is text.\endnote{The first\endnote{A nested  
note\ldots\endnote{\ldots which itself  
contains a note.}} \endnote.\endnote{Another  
second-level note with more text to show its  
formatting in the note section.}}
```

```
And this is more text.\endnote{The third  
endnote.\endnote{Also with a second-level note.}}
```

```
\printendnotes[itemize]
```

3-5-39

```
\printendnotes*[style]
```

If used as in the earlier examples, `\printendnotes` typesets all notes (and nested notes) encountered between two invocations. The star form allows you to print all notes contained in the document in a place prior to the last note. This form should be used only once.

If necessary, it is possible to add some predefined text between each note heading and the notes using `\AtEveryEndnotesList` or only for the next list with

`\AtNextEndnotesList`. One can also add text after the notes section or adjust the vertical spacing using a number of options and commands. The default heading title can be changed with the key `list-name` as shown in the next example.

All configurations are managed with the help of `\setenotez` declarations. This command expects a comma-separated key/value list as shown in the following examples. In the standard configuration the notes sections are not shown in the table of contents. If you prefer them to appear there, use the key `totoc`. As a value you can try `auto` or explicitly supply the heading level to be used in the table of contents, e.g., `part`, `chapter`, `section`, or `subsection`.

The package offers a number of *styles* to print the endnotes. By default the style `plain` is used; other possibilities are `description` or `itemize`. All of them can be customized, and it is also possible to define new styles. For details on the various customization possibilities and other keys not described here, consult the package documentation [156].

In the following example we define a new style that sets all endnotes as an inline list using the `itemize*` environment of `enumitem`. The endnotes are separated by 1em of space with some additional flexibility. `\AtEveryEndnotesList` enables provision of some introductory text. Compare this to Example 3-5-39 that uses the same set of nested endnotes.

This is text.¹ And this is more text.²

Section Notes

General introductory text...

1. The first³ endnote.⁴ 2. The third endnote.⁵ 3. A nested note...⁶ 4. Another second-level note with more text to show its formatting in the note section. 5. Also with a second-level note. 6. ...which itself contains a note.

```

\usepackage[inline]{enumitem}
\setlist[itemize]{itemjoin=\hspace{1em plus 2pt}}

\usepackage{enotez}
\setenotez{list-name={Section Notes}}
\DeclareInstance{enotez-list}{inline}{list}
           {list-type = itemize*}
\AtEveryEndnotesList{General introductory text\ldots}
This is text.\endnote{The first\endnote{A nested
note\ldots\endnote{\ldots which itself contains a
note.}} endnote.\endnote{Another second-level note with
more text to show its formatting in the note section.}}
And this is more text.\endnote{The third
endnote.\endnote{Also with a second-level note.}}
\printendnotes[inline]

```

By default notes are continuously numbered throughout the document. If you want to reset the number after each invocation of `\printendnotes`, use the key `reset`. If you load `hyperref` to generate links within your document, you can add the key `backref` that establishes links from the notes in the notes section(s) back to the pages where the note markers appeared.

The layout for endnote numbers is controlled through `\theendnote`, which is the standard way \LaTeX handles counter formatting. If you want to change it, either redefine this command or use the key `counter-format` as we do in the next example. The format of the mark is produced from `\enotezwritemark`—a command that takes one argument and defaults to `\textsuperscript`. In a similar fashion one

can redefine the command `\enmark` to change the format of the endnote marker in the endnote list.

This is simple text.^{a)} This is simple text.^{b)} Some more text with a mark.^{†)}

Notes

- a) The first endnote.
- b) The second endnote with more than one line of text to show the formatting in the note section.
- †) A note with custom mark

```
\usepackage{enotez}
\setenotez{reset,counter-format=alph}
\renewcommand\enotezwritemark[1]{\textsuperscript{#1}}
\renewcommand\enmark[1]{#1}

This is simple text.\endnote{The first endnote.}
This is simple text.\endnote{The second endnote with
more than one line of text to show the formatting
in the note section.} Some more text with a
mark.\endnote[\textdagger]{A note with custom mark}
\printendnotes[description]
```

3-5-41

Even if you want all notes in a single place in your document, you may want them subdivided by chapters or sections to help the reader locate individual notes more easily. This is supported by `enotez` through the key `split`. As values it accepts `chapter`, `section`, or `false` (default, i.e., no splitting). You can combine this with the key `reset`, in which case the `endnote` counter resets depending on the split level specified, e.g., in the next example at every section.

1 A first section

This is simple text.¹
Here is a bit more text.²

2 Second section

Some¹ text for this section also with a note.

Notes

Notes for section 1

1. An endnote.
2. The second endnote with two lines.

Notes for section 2

1. A third note.

```
\usepackage{enotez}
\setenotez{reset,split=section}

\section{A first section}
This is simple text.\endnote{An endnote.}
Here is a bit more text.\endnote{The
second endnote with two lines.}
\section{Second section}
Some\endnote{A third note.} text
for this section also with a note.
\newpage \printendnotes[itemize]
```

3-5-42

3.5.11 Marginal notes

The standard \LaTeX command `\marginpar` generates a marginal note. This command typesets the text given as its argument in the margin, with the first line being at the same height as the line in the main text where the `\marginpar` command occurs. When only the mandatory argument is specified, the text goes to the right margin for one-sided printing; to the outside margin for two-sided printing; and to the nearest margin for two-column formatting. When you also specify an optional argument, its text is used if the left margin is chosen, while the second (mandatory) argument is used for the right margin.

This placement strategy can be reversed (except for two-column formatting) using `\reversemarginpar`, which acts on all marginal notes from there on. You can return to the default behavior with `\normalmarginpar`.

As explained in Table 5.2 on page 369, there are three length parameters to customize the style of marginal notes: `\marginparwidth`, `\marginparsep`, and `\marginparpush`. It is usually best to change them only in the preamble (or in a class file) but not in the middle of the document.

There are a few important things to understand when using marginal notes. First, the `\marginpar` command does not start a paragraph so that it can be used between paragraphs without introducing extra vertical space. Thus, if it is used before the first word of a paragraph, the vertical alignment does not match the beginning of the paragraph. Second, the first word of its argument is not automatically hyphenated. Thus, for a narrow margin and long words (as in German), you may have to precede the first word by an `\hspace{0pt}` command to allow hyphenation of that word. These two potential problems can be eased by defining a command like `\marginlabel`, which starts with an empty box `\mbox{}`, typesets a marginal note ragged right, and adds an `\hspace{0pt}` in front of the argument.

Some text with a marginal note. Some more text. Another text with a marginal note coming up next. A lot of additional text here to fill up the space in the example on the left.	<code>ASuperLongFirstWord</code> with problems <code>ASuperLong-</code> <code>Firstword</code> without problems	<pre> \newcommand\marginlabel[1]{\mbox{}\marginpar {\raggedright\hspace{0pt}\#1}} Some\marginpar{ASuperLongFirstWord with problems} text with a marginal note. Some more text. Another text with a marginal note coming up next\marginlabel{ASuperLongFirstword without problems}. A lot of additional text here to fill up the space in the example on the left. </pre>
--	--	---

3-5-43

Of course, the above definition can no longer produce different texts depending on the chosen margin. With a little more finesse this problem can be solved, using, for example, the `\NewDocumentCommand` construct discussed in Section A.1.4 on page II 632.

```

\NewDocumentCommand \marginlabel {0{#2}m} {\mbox{}}%
\marginpar[\raggedleft\hspace{0pt}\#1]{\raggedright\hspace{0pt}\#2}}

```

The \LaTeX kernel tries hard (without producing too much processing overhead) to ensure that the contents of `\marginpar` commands always show up in the correct margin, and in most circumstances, it makes the right decisions. In some cases, however, it can fail. If you are unlucky enough to stumble across one of them, a one-off solution is to add an explicit `\pagebreak` to stop the page generation from looking too far ahead. Of course, this has the disadvantage that the correction means visual formatting and has to be undone if the document changes. A better solution is to load the package `mparhack` written by Tom Sgouros and Stefan Ulrich. Once this package is loaded, all `\marginpar` positions are tracked (internally using a label mechanism and writing the information to the `.aux` file). You may then get a warning “Marginpars may have changed. Rerun to get them right”, indicating that the positions have changed in comparison to the previous \LaTeX run and that a further run is necessary to stabilize the document.

*Incorrectly placed
`\marginpars`*

3.5.12 marginnote — An alternative to `\marginpar`

A different approach to the problem with `\marginpar` is taken by Markus Kohm in his `marginnote` package.¹

`\marginnote[left note]{right note}[vertical offset]`

It implements the command `\marginnote` that has a similar interface but offers an additional optional *vertical offset* argument to adjust the positioning of the note in the margin because this is sometimes helpful. In the next example we used this to move the first note one line down.

Instead of internally using parts of L^AT_EX's float mechanism, the package uses positioning information from the output to place the notes in relation to that. As a result `\marginnote` can be used in places in which `\marginpar` is disallowed, e.g., within floats or in the scope of the `multicols`. It also means that you need at least two L^AT_EX runs before the notes settle in their right places.

As you can see, the notes are typeset ragged right by default in the right margin and ragged left in the left margin, but that can be adjusted as necessary. Also, the problem with hyphenation of the first word is taken care of automatically.

<p>Some text with a marginal note. Some more text.</p> <p>Another text with a marginal note coming up next. A lot of additional text here to fill up the space with a few additional lines.</p>	<p>ASuperLong-FirstWord without problems</p> <p>ASuperLongFirstword without problems</p>	<pre> \usepackage{xcolor,marginnote} Some\marginnote{ASuperLongFirstWord without problems} text with a marginal note. Some more text. \renewcommand\raggedrightmarginnote{\centering} \renewcommand\marginfont {\strut\color{blue}\sffamily\tiny} Another text with a marginal note coming up next\marginnote{ASuperLongFirstword without problems}. A lot of additional text here to fill up the space with a few additional lines.</pre>
---	--	---

3-5-44

Changing the justification within the marginal notes is somewhat unintuitive because the commands for that are called `\raggedleftmarginnote` and `\raggedrightmarginnote` for the left and right margins, respectively. By redefining them you can arrange for other justification methods, as we did above by producing centered notes in the right margin. Defining them to be empty is equivalent to requesting justified notes.


There is also the command `\marginfont` in which you can place font or other code to be applied at the start of the marginal note. Above we used this to make the second note blue and typeset in a tiny sans serif font. You may wonder about the additional `\strut` added. Normally, `\marginnote` aligns the note with its top at the top of the line it was encountered. This is fine if main text and notes share the same font size. Because we changed to `\tiny`, this results in the baseline of the first

Subtle issue with font size changes

¹Note that at the time of writing this book the package is in search of a new maintainer because Markus is no longer supporting it. Being a widely used solution, we describe it nonetheless.

line being no longer aligned with the baseline of the text. By adding a strut (before changing the font size) we ensure that the first note line still has a normal height and thus get a better alignment.

One disadvantage of `\marginnote` over the standard `\marginpar` command is that it typesets the note blindly in the “correct” spot. This means that two such notes on the same or nearby line in the document overprint each other, unless you explicitly move one or the other out of the way with the *vertical offset* argument. In contrast, a `\marginpar` automatically moves down if its normal placement is already occupied. Unfortunately, there is no warning when this happens, so you have to control your note placement visually!

 *Watch out for overwrites!*

Issue with sidenotes
getting too close to each
other.

~~First~~
~~second~~
Third

Issue with sidenotes
getting too close to each
other. A bit more text
for the main galley.

First
A longer
~~Third~~

```
\usepackage{xcolor,marginnote}
```


```
Issue\marginnote{First} with\marginnote{\color{blue}A  
longer second} sidenotes getting too close to  
each other.\marginnote{Third}
```

```
Issue\marginnote{First} with\marginnote{\color{blue}A  
longer second}[12pt] sidenotes getting too close to  
each other.\marginnote{Third}  
A bit more text for the main galley.
```

3-5-45

As you see, even moving the second node down is not enough because it then overprints the third; thus, that one needs moving too.

It is also important to watch out for `\marginnote` commands that end up at a line break. In that case the placement is not always correct, but sometimes a line too low. This is a bug in the current package code.

 *Watch out for line breaks!*

3.5.13 snotez — Numbered or otherwise marked side notes

We have already seen the implementation of numbered or marked side notes with the `side` option of `footmisc` that turns footnotes into marginal notes. In contrast, the `snotez` package by Clemens Niederberger provides side notes that can be used in addition to footnotes. It introduces the command `\sidenote` with the same syntax conventions as the `\footnote` command except that it additionally adds a *vertical offset* argument for adjusting the placement of the note.

```
\sidenote (vertical offset) [mark] {note}  
\sidenotemark [mark] \sidenotetext (vertical offset) [mark] {note}
```

Modeled after footnotes there is no explicit way to specify different text depending on the margin into which the note is placed. The optional argument in brackets is interpreted as a request for a *mark*. The other optional argument (*vertical offset*) is given in parentheses, not brackets, to make it easier to specify only one of them.¹

¹ Earlier versions of the package used brackets for both optional arguments; this form of the syntax can still be used if the package option `dblarg` is used.

The `\sidenotemark` and `\sidenotetext` commands are used in the same way as the corresponding commands for footnotes; if necessary, refer to the earlier sections on footnotes for details.

Some text with a side note.¹ A lot of additional text here with a note.² Even more text and then two side notes.^{3†} A lot of additional lines of text here to fill up the space on the left.

```
\usepackage{snotez}
```

```
Some text with a side note.\sidenote{A first.}
A lot of additional text here with a
note.\sidenote{A second.} Even more text
and then two side notes.\sidenote{A third.}%
\sidenote[\textdagger]{A fourth.} A
lot of additional lines of text here to
fill up the space on the left.
```

3-5-46

By default the notes are typeset using `\marginpar` (as long as no *vertical offset* is used), but you can direct it to use the `marginnote` package for all notes by specifying the option `marginnote`. In this case it is your responsibility to ensure that the notes do not overlap and if necessary move them apart as we did with the last note in the next example.

Some text with a side note.¹ A lot of additional text here with a note.² Even more text and then two side notes.^{3†} A lot of additional lines of text here to fill up the space on the left.

```
\usepackage[marginnote]{snotez}
```

```
Some text with a side note.\sidenote{A first.}
A lot of additional text here with a
note.\sidenote{A second.} Even more text
and then two side
notes.\sidenote{A third.}% next one moved down
\sidenote(12pt)[\textdagger]{A fourth.}
A lot of additional lines of text here to
fill up the space on the left.
```

3-5-47

Instead of writing 12pt (which corresponds to a baseline distance in our example), we could have used a convenient shortcut offered by the `snotez` package: in this argument a single `*` indicates a distance of a baseline, `*2` and so on.

*Customizing the side
notes with options*

Options and keys can be specified either during package load or in the argument of a `\setsidenotes` declaration that can be repeatedly used in the preamble and in the document body (exceptions are the options `dblarg`, `footnote`, `marginnote`, and `perpage` options, which can be set only in the preamble because they apply to the whole document).

The key `text-format` specifies the code used to format the text of the note. It defaults to `\footnotesize`. In contrast, the key `text-format+` provides code that is used in addition to `text-format`.

By default `snotez` numbers the notes per chapter using the counter `sidenote`. With `perpage` you can change this so that the notes are numbered on a per-page basis. If you want to change the numbering style, you have to modify `\thesidenote` yourself.

With the option `footnote` you direct the package to redefine the footnote commands to generate side notes, i.e., act like the `side` option of `footmisc`.

Finally, we have `text-mark-format` and `note-mark-format` for formatting the marker in text and in the note (both expect code that manipulates one argument and defaults to using `\superscript`) and `note-mark-sep` for specifying the separation between side note mark and side note text (default `\space`). In the next example we have applied some of those keys.

```

...   of   strawa,
sticksb and bricks.c,d

```

```

a) not to be confused
   with hay
b) or lumber according to
   some sources
c) probably fired clay
   bricks
d) Several in a row?

```

```

\usepackage{fnpct} \usepackage[footnote]{snotez}
\setsidenotes{text-format=\tiny,note-mark-format=#1)}
\renewcommand\thesidenote{\alph{sidenote}}

\ldots\ of straw\footnote*{not to be confused with hay},
sticks\footnote{or lumber according to some sources}
and bricks\footnote{probably fired clay bricks}%
\footnote{Several in a row?}.

```

3-5-48

3.6 Support for document development

In this final section of the chapter we look at a number of packages supporting document development. The first two packages `todonotes` and `fixme` help you with managing notes in the text about stuff that needs doing. They have different approaches, so it is a matter of taste and style which of them fits your own workflow better — you certainly do not need both in a single document. This is followed by the `changes` package, which is also for note taking, but with the focus on editorial work, providing some specialized support for this. Internally it makes use of `todonotes`. We also briefly touch upon the `pdfcomment` package that allows you to produce PDF annotations and tool tips visible in suitable PDF viewers.

A slightly different task is to add markers in a final document to indicate recent changes. Sometimes a note package like `todonotes` is appropriate for this, but often such changes are simply indicated with vertical lines in the margin, and the package `vertbars` offers a simple solution for this.

3.6.1 `todonotes` — Adding todos to your document

While writing documentation, it is often the case that one wants to add some reminders about things that still need doing, researching, fixing, or whatever. The package `todonotes` by Henrik Skov Midtby offers nice facilities for such tasks, which are easy to use and to adapt to one's needs.

`\todo[key/value list]{text}` `\listoftodos[title]`

The main command provided by the package is `\todo`. In its basic form it just takes one *text* argument that describes what needs doing. It places that text in a box into the (outer) margin and places a line from the box to the place in the text where the command was encountered.

Internally the box is placed using L^AT_EX's `\marginpar` command, so the box is placed at roughly where it appears in the source unless that space is already occupied by other `\todo` boxes or other `\marginpar` commands in which case the box is moved downwards on the page.¹

If you want a consolidated list of all todos, place a `\listoftodos` command somewhere into your document (typically at the end to avoid pagination changes in the document). With its optional argument you can specify your own heading if desired; otherwise, a default text is used. The package option `colorinlistoftodos` adds a colored square in front of each list item as shown in the next example. This can be useful if you have differently colored notes to indicate different types of necessary actions or different importance.

Make nicer example

Discuss the available keys

These are real notes from early drafts of this section.

My todos

- Make nicer example . 6
- Discuss the available keys 6

```
\usepackage[colorinlistoftodos]{todonotes}
These\todo{Make nicer example} are real
notes from early drafts of this
section.
```

```
\todo{Discuss the available keys}
\listoftodos[My todos]
```

3-6-1

If you really want to, you can arrange for the todo list to be added to the table of contents by placing the command `\todotoc` directly in front of `\listoftodos`. However, this makes your TOC one line longer and thus changes the pagination, at least in an article. Unless you intend to use such notes also in your final document for some reason, this may not be advisable.

```
\missingfigure[key/value list]{text}
```

The other command `todonotes` provides is `\missingfigure`, used to indicate that an image is missing and should be added. Its *text* argument can be used to describe what the image should show. The command ends the current paragraph and shows a very visible warning (by default going across the full line width and taking up about 4cm of vertical space). You can change (typically enlarge) this space through the keys `figwidth` and `figheight` (see example) in case you know the rough size² of the image.

You typically would use this command inside a `figure` environment so that you can already set up a `\caption` and reference it even though you have not provided the actual graphic yet. In normal running text it is less useful because there it drastically

¹In the worst case this means that it may move into the footer or even off the page, e.g., if you have too many things still to do or there is not enough space to describe them. However, because these commands are intended only for use during document development, this is a limitation one can usually live with.

²The warning triangle does not change its size, so if you specify a very small height or width, the warning may overprint nearby material. This is already visible in Example 3-6-2 where the triangle sticks out slightly on the top.

changes the pagination. It is better to use a simple `\todo` command reminding you to “add a figure roughly here”.

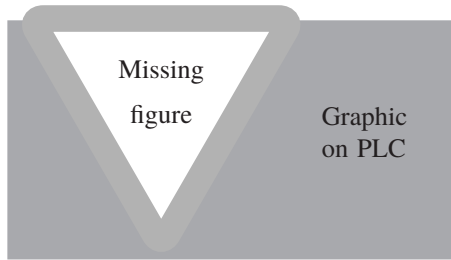


Figure 1: The product lifecycle stages

As shown in Figure 1 the four product lifecycle stages are Introduction, Growth, Maturity and Decline.

3-6-2

```
\usepackage{todonotes}
\begin{figure}
  \centering
  \missingfigure[figheight=90pt,
                 figwidth=170pt]
    {Graphic on PLC}
  \caption{The product lifecycle
           stages}
  \label{fig:plc}
\end{figure}
As shown in Figure-\ref{fig:plc}
the four product lifecycle stages
are Introduction, Growth, Maturity
and Decline.
```

Customizing todos

Individual todo items can be customized through a large number of keys in the optional *key/value list* argument. While this is fine in a one-off situation, in most cases you probably want to customize all notes in the same manner. For this, use the command `\setuptodonotes`, which takes a *key/value list* as a mandatory argument and changes the default values for the specified keys. For example,

Default setup changes

```
\setuptodonotes{color=blue!30}
```

would change the background and line color from its orange default to a light blue. It can be used several times in the preamble or the document body and modifies only those keys that are given. Overwriting such defaults on an individual `\todo` command still remains possible. Some keys can be also used as options when loading the package, something we do a few times in the examples to save space, but in general using `\setuptodonotes` is preferable.

Instead of the `color` key you can set the background color and line color individually using `backgroundcolor` and `linecolor`. Both produce a very noticeable orange color by default. The border around the note is by default black and changeable through `bordercolor`. Finally, the text is colored based on `textcolor`, which again defaults to black.

Coloring the leaves

Besides changing the colors, you can also ask for a shadow behind the notes (that is always in gray) by using the Boolean key `shadow`. Omitting the shadow is done by setting this key to `false` or by using the shorter form `noshadow`. However, shadows are available only if you additionally add the `loadshadowlibrary` package option or otherwise ensure that the required `tikz` library is loaded.

Shadows need a loaded tikz library

Because this book uses only two colors in printing, it is a little difficult to demonstrate these keys, given that most colors, such as the default orange, come out as

gray. Nevertheless, we try in the next example using gray for the text, white for the background, blue for the border, and black for the lines. In other words, we switch everything around to show what is possible (without any claim that this is a useful or pleasing design).

Line adjustments

If you do not want a line pointing to the origin in the text, you can use `noline`. With `line` you can turn the lines on if they are off by default. Another possible key is `fancyline`, which produces a thicker curved arrow. Possibly more interesting is changing the length of the tick mark at the end of a normal line to indicate the original place of the note, using the key `tickmarkheight`. By default that key has a value of zero (i.e., no tick mark). If you set it to, say, `5pt`, it clearly marks the place, which can be useful if you have several notes pointing to different words in the same source line.

```

\usepackage[loadshadowlibrary]{todonotes}
\setuptodonotes{shadow,backgroundcolor=white,
bordercolor=blue,linecolor=black,
textcolor=gray,tickmarkheight=5pt}

A\todo[fancyline]{A note with a fancy line}
bit of paragraph text. Observe
\todo[noshadow]{Second} how all the
\todo[noline,textcolor=blue]{Third (no line)}
spa\todo{Fourth}ces around \verb|\todo|
commands are handled.

```

3-6-3

Sizing and placing the todos

The default text size inside the note is `\normalsize`, but if you have many notes or a lot of text in the notes, you might prefer something noticeably smaller. This can be adjusted using the key `size`, which expects the name of a standard \LaTeX size command (with or without a starting backslash) as its value. If you have eagle eyes, you might try `tiny`; otherwise, `scriptsize` is often a good value.

The width of the todo notes is based on the available size in the margin and by default matches `\marginparwidth`. There are possibilities to change that globally through the package option `textwidth`, but in most cases, it is better to use the default. Details can be found in the package documentation.

Instead of a placement in margin that you get by default or explicitly through the key `noinline`, you can request an `inline` placement. In this case, the note disrupts the paragraph and is placed on a line by its own. Note that this means that your document pagination changes if you get rid of it later. However, because margins are not allowed in all places, this enables you to add a note into a footnote or a float.

```

\usepackage{todonotes}

In this\footnote{This footnote gets a
todo.\todo[inline,size=tiny]{See? But not
really good looking in footnotes}} short
example we demonstrate\todo[size=Large]{Shout}
sizing\todo[size=footnotesize]{Whisper} and
inline notes.

```

3-6-4

¹This footnote gets a todo.

See? But not really good looking in footnotes

If you produce a `\listoftodos`, then by default all your notes are listed there. If a note should not appear, specify `nolist`, or set `nolist` as the default and explicitly add `list` to those notes that should go into the list. Normally the full note text appears in the list, but if you want something different, you can specify an alternative text with the key `caption`. If you additionally add the key `prepend`, then the `caption` text is not only used for the list but is also prepended to the todo note text separated with a colon.¹

Customizing the list of todos

Finally,² there is an `author` key, which as the name indicates can be used to mark up different note authors or issue owners or This places the given value in a note box by itself (see below), which does not work very well. I think that it is usually better to instead add this information directly into the todo text and define your own commands for doing so (some examples are given later).

Author or ownership

A normal entry

Alert: Correct this

Hide it

Frank

An authored todo

Covered all cases?

We use a wide margin here to save space in the example. The todos are summarized in the list below (omitting the one labeled `nolist`).

Sample todos

A normal entry	6
Alert	6
An authored todo	6
Cases	6

```

\usepackage[loadshadowlibrary]{todonotes}
\setuptodonotes{shadow,size=scriptsize}

\todo{A normal entry}
\todo[caption=Alert,prepend]{Correct this}
\todo[nolist]{Hide it}
\todo[author=Frank]{An authored todo}
\todo[caption=Cases]{Covered all cases?}

```

We use a wide margin here to save space in the example. The todos are summarized in the list below (omitting the one labeled `\texttt{nolist}`).

```

\listoftodos[Sample todos]

```

3-6-5

Defining your own todo commands

Given that the idea of workflow support packages is to help you to be more efficient in writing your documents, it is clear that adding lengthy optional arguments to each and every note, as we did above for illustration purposes, is counterproductive.

What you should consider doing instead is to set up defaults to your liking using `\setuptodonotes` and define one or the other short command for special-purpose todos. For example, you may want to use differently colored notes to indicate different actions, e.g.,

```
\newcommand\error[1]{\todo[size=small,color=red]{Error: #1}}
\newcommand\warn [1]{\todo[size=small,color=yellow]{Warning: #1}}
```

Or, in a collaborative setup, you may want to provide separate initials indicating authorship of the note, e.g.,

```
\newcommand\fix[2][Fmi]{\todo[size=small,author=#1]{Fix: #2}}
```

¹The colon is hardwired, which somewhat limits the use cases for this feature.

²Not quite true, there are a few more, but these are the important ones.

such that `\fix[LL]{Replace this}` can be used. Or you can number your notes by defining your own counter, e.g.,

```
\newcounter{todonumber}[section]
\newcommand\ntodo[1]{\stepcounter{todonumber}%
\todo{Note~\thetodonumber: #1}}
```

and I am sure you can think of others. Do not get carried away, though. Such notes are supposed to be helpful to you, and if you make different types for too many scenarios, you may end up using them inconsistently, which really defeats the purpose.

Package options

So far most of the discussion was about the keywords supported by the `\todo` command. Many of them could also be given as package options to set up defaults when loading the package, though I suggest using `\setuptodonotes` for this purpose. In addition, there are a few options that can be used only during package loading. We have already seen `colorinlistoftodos` to color the generated todo list and `textwidth` to alter the width of the notes.

Language support

Also available are various `babel/polyglossia` language options to customize the heading produced by `\listoftodos`, though normally you probably provide that title in the optional argument to that command.

Suppressing the todo displays

Of more interest is that you can render all commands of the `todonotes` package harmless in your final version by loading the package with the option `disable`. Alternatively, you can load it with the option `obeyFinal` in which case the todos are suppressed only if you use `final` on the document class. Or you can use the package option `obeyDraft`, which shows the todos only if `draft` is used on the document class. Note, however, that while the package attempts to place all notes (except inline ones) in a way that does not alter the pagination, this is not guaranteed. After disabling them, make sure that everything is still typeset as intended.

3.6.2 `fixme` — A slightly different approach to todos

While the `todonotes` package provided a single command that you could customize to your needs, the `fixme` package by Didier Verna offers four basic commands to indicate different levels of importance.

Besides the different annotation levels, the `fixme` package offers environments for producing longer annotations and a larger number of layouts and themes for displaying the notes, some of which are shown in the examples.

<code>\fxnote[key/value list]{text}</code>	<code>\fxwarning[...] {text}</code>
<code>\fxerror[...] {text}</code>	<code>\fxfatal[...] {text}</code> <code>\listoffixmes</code>

The standard layout produced is a marginal note for the annotations, but plenty of other possibilities exist that are controlled through package options, through

`\fixsetup` in the preamble or through individual settings on the annotation commands.

The annotations are shown only if the document is typeset in draft mode. In final mode they are ignored (but still logged in the transcript file). The `\fixfatal` annotation, however, is slightly special, because it throws a \LaTeX error if it is encountered in final mode. The assumption is that fatal issues should be resolved before something is considered final.

With `\listoffixmes` you can generate yourself a listing of all annotations in a convenient place.

<p>FiXme Note: Make nicer example</p> <p>FiXme Warning: Discuss the available keys</p>	<p>These are real notes from early drafts of this section.</p> <p>List of Corrections</p> <p>Note: Make nicer example 6</p> <p>Warning: Discuss the available keys 6</p>	<pre>\usepackage[draft]{fixme} These\xfnote{Make nicer example} are real notes from early drafts of this section.\fxwarning{Discuss the available keys} \listoffixmes</pre>
--	---	---

3-6-6

Even if you do not use `\listoffixmes`, the package generates a short summary and displays it on the terminal and the transcript file like this:

```
FiXme Summary: Number of notes: 1,
(FiXme)        Number of warnings: 1,
(FiXme)        Number of errors: 0,
(FiXme)        Number of fatal errors: 0,
(FiXme)        Total: 2.
```

Given that the package does not color your text by default, the annotations are less prominent and disrupting compared to, say, `todonotes`. Whether or not that suits your style of working is something you need to decide.

Another difference is that there is no immediate indication to which exact phrase or word the annotation belongs to, given that there is no line from the marginal note to the text. This can be improved by choosing a different layout for the notes, e.g., `inline` or `footnote`. Alternatively (or in addition), you can make “targeted” annotations by using the star form of the above commands. They then take a further mandatory argument that holds the text to which the note applies.

*The star forms
produce targeted
annotations*

<p>These FiXme Note: Make nicer example are real notes from early drafts of this <i>section</i>¹. This <i>example</i>² shows</p>	<pre>\usepackage[draft]{fixme} \fixsetup{nomargin,footnote} These\xfnote[inline,nofootnote]{Make nicer example} are real notes from early drafts of this \xfxwarning*{Discuss the available keys}{section}. This \fxerror*{A targeted note}{example} shows a targeted note.</pre>
---	---

¹FiXme Warning: Discuss the available keys

²FiXme Error: A targeted note

3-6-7

The different layouts are not exclusive. This is why we had to turn off the default margin layout using `nomargin` and later use `nofootnote` when we made a single inline note.

Most of the time annotations are short so that the use of a command with the annotation text as a mandatory argument is quite appropriate. However, there may be cases where you want to make longer comments or comments that contain verbatim material. In that case you can use a corresponding environment form that is named by prefixing the command name with an, i.e., `anfxnote`, `anfxwarning`, `anfxerror`, or `anxfatal`:

FiXme Note: Summary	If normal notes	FiXme Note: A really long comment possibly involving <code>\verb</code>, etc. ... that automatically becomes an inline note	<pre> \usepackage[draft]{fixme} If normal notes \begin{anfxnote}{Summary} A really long comment possibly involving \verb=\verb=, etc.\ldots{} that automatically becomes an inline note \end{anfxnote} are not enough then try <i>environments</i>. </pre>	<pre> \fxfatal*{Change this}{environments}. </pre>	3-6-8
------------------------	-----------------	--	--	--	-------

Collaboration

For collaborative work, the package provides the key author to specify your initials (or your name). This is then shown in the annotation instead of the default “FiXme”. Of course, doing this on each and every note command is not very convenient. There `fixme` provides a way to register authors that then get their own individual markup commands.

```
\FXRegisterAuthor{cmd-prefix}{env-prefix}{id}
```

You need to supply a different prefix for commands and environments; otherwise you get fairly strange errors. For example, below we use `fm` and `afm`, and as a result the package generates `\fmnote` and `afmnote` and similarly named commands and environments for us. As you can see, the *id* is then used in the typeset output.

These¹ are real notes from early drafts of this *section*². This *example*³ shows a targeted note.

¹Frank Note: Make nicer example

²Frank Warning: Discuss the available keys

³Ben User Error: Explicit authored note

```

\usepackage[draft]{fixme} \fxsetup{nomargin,footnote}
\FXRegisterAuthor{fm}{afm}{Frank}

These\fmnote{Make nicer example} are real notes
from early drafts of this \fmwarning*{Discuss the
  available keys}{section}. This \fxerror*
[author=Ben User]{Explicit authored note}{example}
shows a targeted note.

```

3-6-9

Besides the built-in layouts `margin`, `inline`, `footnote`, and `index`, the `fixme` package can load a number of externally defined layouts, among them various ones that display the annotations as PDF annotations viewable with an appropriate reader. For example,

```
\fxuselayouts{pdfcnote}
```

generates colored notes that work well in Acrobat Reader and similar programs. For details on this and further customization possibilities, refer to the package documentation [195].

3.6.3 changes — A set of typical editorial commands

The `changes` package by Ekkart Kleinod was written to support editorial work, typically in collaboration with others. It supports the standard copy-editing tasks, well-known from WYSIWYG tools or PDF viewers, except that with a \LaTeX document you do this by adding commands in the source. Of course, one can always send around PDF documents for review and let people mark up those using a suitable PDF editor or reader program, but this separates comments from the sources and can be far more complicated when several people are doing reviews independently.

```
\added[key/value list]{text} \deleted[..]{text} \replaced[..]{new}{old}
\highlight[..]{text}        \comment[..]{commentary}
\listofchanges[..]
```

The fairly self-explanatory commands are placed into the source text and manipulate their argument or arguments in obvious ways by adding color or in the case of removal or replacement through strikethrough of text.

For marking up text there is `\highlight`, and for making a *commentary* there is `\comment`. By default the commentaries are numbered and show up in the margin (using the `todonotes` package).

With `\listofchanges` you can generate a summary of all editorial work that was marked up. All of the commands support an option argument in which you can specify keywords that we will discuss below. Here is an example:

[1] Fix! Sample text, something **added**, a ~~word~~~~blob~~ re-
placed and **some** stuff removed. **Whoa!**

List of changes

Added: added	6	<code>\usepackage{changes}</code>
Replaced: word	6	Sample text, something <code>\added{added}</code> ,
Deleted: some	6	a <code>\replaced{word}{blob}</code> replaced and
Commented: Fix!	6	<code>\deleted{some}</code> stuff <code>\comment{Fix!}</code>
Highlighted: Whoa!	6	removed. <code>\highlight{Whoa!}</code>
	6	<code>\listofchanges</code>

3-6-10

If the package is loaded with the option `final`, all editorial markup including `\listofchanges` is suppressed. The same happens if `final` is given as a global option to the document class, unless it is locally overwritten by the option `draft` on the package level.

```
\usepackage[final]{changes}
```

Sample text, something added,	Sample text, something <code>\added{added}</code> , a <code>\replaced{word}{blob}</code>
a word replaced and stuff re-	replaced and <code>\deleted{some}</code> stuff <code>\comment{Fix!}</code> removed.
moved. Whoa!	<code>\highlight{Whoa!}</code> <code>\listofchanges</code>

3-6-11

By default the author of the editorial markup is anonymous, and the markup for this person is colored blue as seen in the above example. In a collaboration scenario, however, you may have several people reviewing the text, and for this case you can define review authors through the declaration `\definechangesauthor`.

```
\definechangesauthor[key/value list]{id}
```

This declaration take an *id* as a mandatory argument to identify the author. In the *key/value list* you can optionally define a name and if you like a special color to be used for this person.

The *id* can then be used as a value to the keyword `id` in any of the editorial commands discussed above to indicate that the suggested change was made by the respective author. The other keyword that can be used with these commands is `comment` to give some further explanation why the change is suggested. Both possibilities are exhibited in the next examples.

[FMi 1]
really?

Sample text, something **added**, a **wordblob**
replaced and **some**^{FMi} stuff removed.

[1] Fix
it every-
where in
the doc-
ument!

List of changes

Added:	added	6
Replaced (FMi):	word	6
Deleted (FMi):	some	6
Commented:	Fix it everywhere in [...]	6

```
\usepackage{changes}
\definechangesauthor[color=red,
                      name=Frank]{FMi}

Sample text, something \added{added},
a \replaced[id=FMi,comment=really?]
    {word}{blob} replaced
and \deleted[id=FMi]{some} stuff
removed.\comment{Fix it everywhere
    in the document!}
\listofchanges
```

3-6-12

Customizing the list of changes

If you specify `\listofchanges` without its optional argument, you get a listing of all changes suggested for the document. This list includes the type of changes, the author *id* (if specified) and the text are truncated if necessary to fit on a single line. In the optional argument, you can specify the keyword `style`. The accepted values are `list` (default), `summary`, or `compactsummary`. In the summary cases you get for each author a listing of the number of additions, deletions, and so forth instead of the individual changes.

To change the displayed title to your liking, add the text as the value to the keyword `title`.

Sample text, something
added, a **wordblob**¹ re-
placed and **some**^{FMi} **stuff**
removed.²

Summary of changes
Author: **anonymous**
Added 1

¹[FMi 1]: really?
²[FMi 2]: Mumble!

Deleted	0
Replaced	0
Highlighted ..	1
Commented ..	0
Author: FMi (Frank M.)	
Added	0
Deleted	1
Replaced	1
Highlighted ..	0

```
\usepackage[commentmarkup=footnote]
    {changes}
\definechangesauthor[color=red,
                      name=Frank M.]{FMi}
\setsummarytewidth{Commented\qqquad}

Sample text, something \added{added},
a \replaced[id=FMi,comment=really?]
    {word}{blob}
replaced and \deleted[id=FMi]{some}
\highlight{stuff}
removed.\comment[id=FMi]{Mumble!}

\listofchanges[title=Summary of
               changes,style=summary]
```

3-6-13

With compactsummary authors without change requests and lines with a zero value are dropped.

	Sample text, something added, a word blob replaced and some ^{FMi} stuff re-moved.	<pre>\usepackage[commentmarkup=margin]{changes} \definechangesauthor[name=Frank M.,color=red]{FMi} \setsummarywidth{110pt} Sample text, something \added{added}, a \replaced[id=FMi,comment=really?]{word}{blob} replaced and \deleted[id=FMi]{some} \highlight{stuff} removed.\comment[id=FMi]{Mumble!} \listofchanges[style=compactsummary]</pre>
	Changes (compact)	
	Author: anonymous	
	Added 1	
	Highlighted 1	
	Author: FMi (Frank M.)	
	Deleted 1	
	Replaced 1	
	Commented 2	

3-6-14

In very narrow or very wide settings the default width of lines in compact summaries may need adjustments. This can be done either with `\setsummarywidth` as shown in the previous example or with `\setsummarytewidth` used in Example 3-6-13. For full listings you can specify the amount of text prior to truncation using `\settruncatewidth` (the default is `.6\textwidth`).

It is also possible to restrict the listing to a subset of the editorial changes by specifying the keyword `show`. It accepts the values `all` (default), `added`, `deleted`, `replaced`, `comment`, and `highlight`, and it is possible to combine several values by using a `|` as shown in the example. This plus the fact that you can call `\listofchanges` more than once offers some flexibility in presentation.

Sample text, something added, a word blob	<pre>\usepackage[ngerman]{babel} \usepackage[commentmarkup=uwave]{changes} \definechangesauthor[color=red,name=Frank M.]{FMi}</pre>
[FMi 1]: really? replaced and some ^{FMi} stuff	
[1]: bad word removed.[FMi 2]: Grumble!!!	

Liste der Änderungen

Eingefügt: added	6	Sample text, something \added{added}, a
Ersetzt (FMi): word	6	\replaced[id=FMi,comment=really?]{word}{blob}
Gelöscht (FMi): some	6	replaced and \deleted[id=FMi]{some}
		\highlight[comment=bad word]{stuff}
		removed.\comment[id=FMi]{Grumble!!!}

Kommentare und Markierungen

Hervorgehoben: stuff	6	\listofchanges[show=added|deleted|replaced]
Kommentiert (FMi): Grumble!!!	6	\listofchanges[show=comment|highlight,
		title=Kommentare und Markierungen]

3-6-15

The last example also shows that if a language package like `babel` or `polyglossia` is loaded, the autogenerated texts change if that language is already supported — if not, you get English defaults. All strings are also available through commands; consult the package documentation if you feel compelled to change them.

Customizing the editorial markup commands

As we have seen in the previous examples the editorial markup is by default colored, any deleted text is additionally stroked out, and comments are placed into the margin. All this can be adjusted by using key/value package options.

Layout of editorial commands

The markup option defines the general layout for the editorial markup. Allowed values are `colored` (as described above), `underlined` (like default but added text is also underlined), `bfit` (added text is bold, deleted is italic, both are colored), and `nocolor` (with added text underlined and deleted text stroked out).

If this is not sufficient, you can individually decide the visual representation for added and deleted text by using the options `addedmarkup` and `deletedmarkup` when loading the package. Because changes internally makes use of the `ulem` package, you will recognize the meaning of the allowed values from the discussion in Section 3.4.4 on page 189. They are `uline`, `uuline`, `uwave`, `dashuline`, `dotuline`, `sout`, `xout`, as well as values for selecting fonts, i.e., `bf`, `it`, `sl`, and `em`. The default value that you see in some examples is called `colored`. Explicitly setting one of these options supersedes any setting made by the more general `markup` option for this type of editorial action.

To adjust the highlighting use `highlightmarkup` with the possible values `background` (default), `uuline`, or `uwave`. In the same fashion `commentmarkup` adjusts the markup for comments, both those made with the `\comment` commands and those made with the `comment` key as part of `\added` and `friends`. The allowed values are `todo` (default), `margin`, `footnote`, and `uwave`. The results of the different values have already been shown in the previous examples.

Author identification

As seen in the previous example, the *id* of the review author (except for the anonymous one) is shown next to his or her editorial change (by default as a superscript to the right of the text). This can be adjusted through three package options. The option `authormarkup` defines the general formatting. Possible values are `superscript` (default), `subscript`, `brackets`, `footnote`, or `none` (suppress author information). The placement with respect to the added or deleted text is adjustable through `authormarkupposition` accepting `left` or `right` (default). Finally, the option `authormarkuptext` defines what is shown: `id` (default) or `name`.

The next example uses some of the options, not necessarily for the better.

Sample text, **something**¹ added, a *wordblob*² replaced and ^{Frank}*some* stuff removed. ^{anonymous} Whoa!

```
\usepackage[markup=bfit,authormarkuptext=name,
             authormarkup=subscript,authormarkupposition=left,
             highlightmarkup=uwave,commentmarkup=footnote]{changes}
\definechangesauthor[color=red,name=Frank]{FMi}
Sample text, \added[comment=maybe]{something} added,
a \replaced[id=FMi,comment=really?]{word}{blob}
replaced and \deleted[id=FMi]{some} stuff removed.
\highlight{Whoa!}
```

3-6-16

¹[anonymous 1]: maybe

²[Frank 1]: really?

Instead of or in addition to using the above options, you can specify the precise \LaTeX code that should be executed when typesetting the editorial commands. For the additions, deletions, and replacements, this is done with the declarations `\setaddedmarkup` and `\setdeletedmarkup`. For highlighting and commentaries we have `\sethighlightmarkup` and `\setcommentmarkup`.

If, for example, you do not like the way comments are displayed, then you can easily define your own layout instead. Here is an example that still uses `\todo` but applies different settings. Within `\setcommentmarkup` you can use `#1` to refer to the commentary and `#2` and `#3` to access the author id and name, respectively. We need this to check on the content of `#2`, because the user may not have any id specified, and in that case we do not want a spurious set of brackets to show up in the output. We therefore use the `\IfIsAnonymous` test provided by the `changes` package and typeset different text depending on the result.¹

maybe

Sample text, something

[FMi 1]
really?

replaced and some^{FMi} stuff removed.

```

\usepackage{changes}
\definechangesauthor[color=red,name=Frank]{FMi}
\setcommentmarkup{\todo[size=small,textcolor=authorcolor,
  linecolor=authorcolor,backgroundcolor=white,nolist]
  {\IfIsAnonymous{#2}{}%
    {\textbf{[#3\,\arabic{authorcommentcount}]} }#1}}
Sample text, \added[comment=maybe]{something} added,
a \replaced[id=FMi,comment=really?]{blob}{word}
replaced and \deleted[id=FMi]{some} stuff removed.

```

The other noteworthy part in the example is the use of `authorcommentcount` that holds the commentary number for the current author. The above construction therefore prints the authors name (`#3`) followed by the number for the current comment in brackets.

Providing your own editorial commands

If you feel that writing `\added[id=FMi,comment=better?]{stuff}` is far too much, then there are a number of ways to change that. You can, for example, define shorthands such that `\add[FMi]{stuff}[better?]` can be used. This is what we demonstrate in the final example. For details on the `\DeclareDocumentCommand` declaration see Section A.1.4 on page →II 632.

Sample text, something
added¹, a word^{FMi}
replaced and some² stuff
removed.

```

\usepackage[commentmarkup=footnote]{changes}
\definechangesauthor[name=Anonymous]{??}
\definechangesauthor[name=Frank,color=red]{FMi}
\DeclareDocumentCommand\add{0{??}mo}
  {\IfValueTF{#3}{\added[id=#1,comment=#3]{#2}}{\added[id=#1]{#2}}}
\DeclareDocumentCommand\del{0{??}mo}
  {\IfValueTF{#3}{\deleted[id=#1,comment=#3]{#2}}
  {\deleted[id=#1]{#2}}}
\DeclareDocumentCommand\rep{0{??}mmo}
  {\IfValueTF{#4}{\replaced[id=#1,comment=#4]{#2}{#3}}
  {\replaced[id=#1]{#2}{#3}}}
Sample text, something \add{added}[better], a \rep[FMi]{word}{blob}
replaced and \del[FMi]{some}[Really?] stuff removed.

```

3-6-18

¹[?? 1]: better

²[FMi 1]: Really?

¹The package offers many other commands to customize the output based on the current state, such as `\IfIsInList`, `\IfIsColored`, `\IfIsEmpty`, or `\IfIsAuthorEmptyAtPosition`. For details see the package documentation.

Managing package option conflicts

The `changes` package requires a number of additional packages, most importantly `todonotes`, `truncate`, `ulem`, and `xcolor` and if necessary automatically loads them. Given that these package can take options, this might be a problem if they are not loaded with the options your document needs elsewhere for some reason.

In that case you have two possibilities: either load those packages with the desired set of options before `changes` is loaded or arrange for `changes` to load them with the right options by using the options `todonotes`, `truncate`, `ulem`, and `xcolor` and specify the options that these package should use as the value. You may have to surround the values with braces to hide any commas inside.

Managing command name conflicts

Given that `\added`, `\comment`, `\highlight`, and so forth are fairly common names, it is possible that they conflict with command names defined by other packages. For this case `changes` offers the option `commandnameprefix`, which accepts the values `always` or `ifneeded`. If used, then the commands are prefixed by `ch`, e.g., `\chadded` or `\chcomment`. In the case of `ifneeded`, this is done only if there is a conflict.

3.6.4 pdfcomment — Using PDF annotations and tool tips

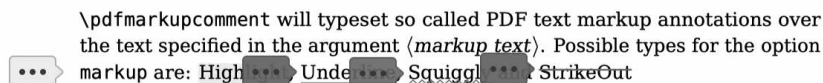
If you do not mind that your comments and notes are visible only in PDF readers with support for PDF annotations, then it might pay off to take a look at Josef Kleber's `pdfcomment` package that provides you with commands for annotating your document in ways you may already be familiar with from using Acrobat or similar software. Such annotations can then be opened and closed when viewing the document in a PDF reader.

```
\pdfcomment[key/value list]{comment}
\pdfmargincomment[key/value list]{comment}
\pdfmarkupcomment[key/value list]{marked text}{comment}
```

The first two commands produce an annotation in the middle of paragraph text or in the margin, respectively. The *comment* is by default not visible but is shown if the annotation is clicked in the PDF viewer.

The `\pdfmarkupcomment` command is intended for copy-editing. The *marked text* is typeset in the document and additionally marked by highlighting it or using `strikeout`, `underline`, etc. What exactly is done is defined in the *key/value list*; thus, normally you will define your own commands by presetting some key.

Given that the results of the commands are interactive features in the produced PDF, it is not really possible to exhibit any of this here in the book. We therefore show only a single screenshot from the documentation as an example (and not in color).

 `\pdfmarkupcomment` will typeset so called PDF text markup annotations over the text specified in the argument *(markup text)*. Possible types for the option `markup` are: `High` `Under` `Squiggly` `StrikeOut`

There are a number of additional commands available, e.g., ways to make a list of all comments or to produce tool tips that show up when you hover with the mouse cursor over a certain area, and there are a few dozen keys that you can use in the *key/value list* arguments to customize the result; for details we have to refer you to the package documentation.

In summary, it is fair to say that you get roughly the same set of features as with the previous three packages — once you have defined your own variants. The advantage is that you get an interactive document; the disadvantage is that you are restricted to suitable viewers.

3.6.5 vertbars — Adding bars to paragraphs

A common approach to highlight changes made in a new edition of a document is to add vertical lines in the margin at places where the document has changed. As a simple application of the `lineno` package Peter Wilson developed the `vertbars` package that prints vertical bars next to certain paragraphs (instead of line numbers).

It automatically loads the `lineno` package and accepts all of its options, in particular `switch` and `switch*` to control the bar placement. It offers a single environment `vertbar`, which is similar to `lineno`'s `linenumbers` but produces a bar in place of line numbers. The width of this bar is controlled by `\barwidth` and defaults to 0.4pt. Any limitation of the `lineno` package equally applies here, in particular that the bars always apply to full paragraphs.¹

This paragraph has no bar.

The environment always starts a new paragraph and can only contain full paragraphs.

Nesting is possible as shown here but only on paragraph boundaries.

Breaks across columns or pages are also possible and the bar continues.

Another paragraph without a bar.

```
\usepackage{vertbars} \setlength\barwidth{1pt}
```

This paragraph has no bar.

```
\begin{vertbar}
```

The environment always starts a new paragraph and can only contain full paragraphs.

```
\begin{vertbar}
```

Nesting is possible as shown here but only on paragraph boundaries.

```
\end{vertbar}
```

Breaks across columns or pages are also possible and the bar continues.

```
\end{vertbar} Another paragraph without a bar.
```

3-6-19

¹If you need them on individual lines, you might want to try the `changebar` package by Michael Fine and Johannes Braams instead.

This page intentionally left blank

Basic Formatting Tools

— Larger Structures

4.1 Lists	254
4.2 Simulating typed text	296
4.3 Lines and columns	333
4.4 Generating sample texts	361

While the previous chapter was concerned with micro-typography, this chapter now looks at commands and environments for formatting larger chunks of text.

Typesetting lists is the subject of the first part. We start with a discussion of the various parameters and commands controlling the standard \LaTeX lists, `enumerate`, `itemize`, and `description`, followed by a brief look at \LaTeX 's generic list capabilities. Then, the important `enumitem` package is discussed, which we recommend as a basis for many documents. The production of horizontally oriented lists is covered by the `tasks` package, the concept of “headed lists” is exemplified with the `amsthm` and `thmtools` packages and `typed-checklist`, helps you write and maintain check lists of various kinds. Together these should satisfy the structure and layout requirements of most readers.

The second part then explains how to simulate “verbatim” text. In particular, we take a detailed look at the powerful packages `fancyvrb` and `listings`.

The third part presents packages that deal with line numbering (`lineno`); handling of columns, such as parallel text in two columns (`paracol`); or solving the problem of producing multiple columns with `multicol`.

At the end we take a brief look at packages for generating sample texts. They are useful for testing layouts or for reporting bugs when you are asked to produce a so-called Minimal Working Example (MWE) to show your problem.

4.1 Lists

Lists are very important \LaTeX constructs and are used to build many of \LaTeX 's display-like environments. \LaTeX 's three standard list environments and the generic list environment are discussed in the first two sections, where we also show how they can be customized.

Section 4.1.3 starting on page 261 provides an in-depth discussion of the package `enumitem`, which introduces a number of new list structures and offers comprehensive methods to customize them, as well as the standard lists.

It is followed by a discussion of “headed lists”, such as theorems and exercises. Finally, Sections 4.1.6 and 4.1.7 cover two packages for tasks and check lists.

4.1.1 Using and modifying the standard lists

It is relatively easy to customize the three standard \LaTeX list environments `itemize`, `enumerate`, and `description`, and the next three sections look at each of these environments in turn. Changes to the default definitions of these environments either can be made globally by redefining certain list-defining parameters in the document preamble or can be kept local.

Customizing the `itemize` list environment

For a simple unnumbered `itemize` list, the labels are defined by the commands shown in Table 4.1 on the facing page. To create a list with different-looking labels, you can redefine the label-generating command(s). You can make that change local for one list, as in the example below, or you can make it global by putting the redefinition in the document preamble. The following simple list is a standard `itemize` list with a marker from the PostScript Zapf Dingbats font (see Section 10.13.1 on page 113) for the first-level labels:

	<code>\usepackage{pifont}</code>
	<code>\newenvironment{myitemize}</code>
	<code>{\renewcommand\labelitemi{\ding{43}}\begin{itemize}}</code>
	<code>{\end{itemize}}</code>
☛ Text of the first item in the list.	<code>\begin{myitemize}</code>
☛ Text of the first paragraph in the second item of the list.	<code>\item Text of the first item in the list.</code>
The second paragraph of the item.	<code>\item Text of the first paragraph in the second item of the list.</code>
	<code> The second paragraph of the item.</code>
☛ Text of the third item.	<code>\item Text of the third item.</code>
	<code>\end{myitemize}</code>

4-1-1

The `\labelitemfont` command (which defaults to `\normalfont`) is intended to alter the font for all labels in one go. This is especially useful if the body font for the document is altered and its symbols are less suitable to be used as labels; see also the discussion on page 697.

	Command	Default Definition	Representation
First Level	<code>\labelitemi</code>	<code>\labelitemfont\textbullet</code>	•
Second Level	<code>\labelitemii</code>	<code>\labelitemfont\bfseries\textendash</code>	–
Third Level	<code>\labelitemiii</code>	<code>\labelitemfont\textasteriskcentered</code>	*
Fourth Level	<code>\labelitemiv</code>	<code>\labelitemfont\textperiodcentered</code>	·

Table 4.1: Commands controlling an itemize list environment

Customizing the enumerate list environment

TeX’s enumerated (numbered) list environment `enumerate` is characterized by the commands and representation forms shown in Table 4.2 on the next page. The first row shows the names of the counter used for numbering the four possible levels of the list. The second and third rows are the commands giving the representation of the counters and their default definition in the standard TeX class files. Rows four, five, and six contain the commands, the default definition, and an example of the actual enumeration string printed by the list.

A reference to a numbered list element is constructed using the `\theenumi`, `\theenumii`, and similar commands, prefixed by the internal commands `\p@enumi`, `\p@enumii`, etc., respectively. The last three rows in Table 4.2 on the following page show these commands, their default definition, and an example of the representation of such references. It is important to consider the definitions of both the representation and reference-building commands to get the references correct.

We can now create several kinds of numbered description lists simply by applying what we have just learned.

Our first example redefines the first- and second-level counters to use capital roman digits and Latin characters. The visual representation should be the value of the counter followed by a dot, so we can use the default value from Table 4.2 on the next page for `\labelenumi`.

	<pre>\renewcommand\theenumi {\Roman{enumi}} \renewcommand\theenumii {\Alph{enumii}} \renewcommand\labelenumii {\theenumii.} \begin{enumerate} \item \textbf{Introduction} \label{q1} \begin{enumerate} \item \textbf{Applications} \label{q2} \\ Motivation for research \item \textbf{Organization} \label{q3} \\ Structure of the report \end{enumerate} \item \textbf{Literature Survey} \label{q4} \end{enumerate} q1=\ref{q1} q2=\ref{q2} q3=\ref{q3} q4=\ref{q4}</pre>
I. Introduction	
A. Applications	
Motivation for research	
B. Organization	
Structure of the report	
II. Literature Survey	

4-1-2

q1=I q2=IA q3=IB q4=II

	<i>First Level</i>	<i>Second Level</i>	<i>Third Level</i>	<i>Fourth Level</i>
<i>Counter</i>	<code>enumi</code>	<code>enumii</code>	<code>enumiii</code>	<code>enumiv</code>
<i>Representation</i>	<code>\theenumi</code>	<code>\theenumii</code>	<code>\theenumiii</code>	<code>\theenumiv</code>
<i>Default Definition</i>	<code>\arabic{enumi}</code>	<code>\alph{enumii}</code>	<code>\roman{enumiii}</code>	<code>\Alph{enumiv}</code>
<i>Label Field</i>	<code>\labelenumi</code>	<code>\labelenumii</code>	<code>\labelenumiii</code>	<code>\labelenumiv</code>
<i>Default Form</i>	<code>\theenumi.</code>	<code>(\theenumii)</code>	<code>\theenumiii.</code>	<code>\theenumiv.</code>
<i>Numbering Example</i>	1., 2.	(a), (b)	i., ii.	A., B.
<i>Reference representation</i>				
<i>Prefix</i>	<code>\p@enumi</code>	<code>\p@enumii</code>	<code>\p@enumiii</code>	<code>\p@enumiv</code>
<i>Default Definition</i>	<code>{}</code>	<code>\theenumi</code>	<code>\theenumi(\theenumii)</code>	<code>\p@enumiii\theenumiii</code>
<i>Reference Example</i>	1, 2	1a, 2b	1(a)i, 2(b)ii	1(a)iA, 2(b)iiB

Table 4.2: Commands controlling an enumerate list environment

After these redefinitions we get funny-looking references; to correct this we have to adjust the definition of the prefix command `\p@enumii`. For example, to get a reference like “I-A” instead of “IA” as in the previous example, we could do

```
\makeatletter \renewcommand\p@enumii{\theenumi--} \makeatother
```

because the reference is typeset by executing `\p@enumii` followed by `\theenumii`. To simplify this L^AT_EX offers the command `\labelformat` (see page 77) to alter the representation, i.e.,

```
\labelformat{enumii}{\theenumi--#1}
```

to achieve the same effect. You can also decorate an `enumerate` field by adding something to the label field and its reference representation. In the example below, we have chosen for the first-level list elements the section sign (§) as a prefix and a period as a suffix (omitted in references).

```
§1. item of list      \renewcommand\labelenumi{\S\theenumi.} \labelformat{enumi}{\S#1}
§2. item of list      \begin{enumerate}
                      \item \label{w1} item of list \item \label{w2} item of list
                      \end{enumerate}
w1=§1 w2=§2          w1=\ref{w1} w2=\ref{w2}
```

4-1-3

You might even want to select different markers for consecutive labels. For instance, in the following example, characters from the PostScript font ZapfDingbats are used. In this case there is no straightforward way to automatically make the `\ref` commands produce the correct references. Instead of `\theenumi` simply producing the representation of the `enumi` counter, we define it to calculate from the counter value which symbol to select.

The difficulty here is to create this definition in a way such that it survives the label-generating process. The trick is to add `\protect` so that `\ding` is not executed when the label is written to the `.aux` file, yet to ensure that its argument is evaluated at that point and the result is stored therein. The latter goal is achieved by using the recently introduced `\interval` command (see Section A.2.5 on page →II 657). It is expandable and executes inside an `\edef` or `\write`, which is needed here.¹

① item of list	<code>\usepackage{pifont}</code>
② item of list	<code>\renewcommand\labelenumi{\theenumi}</code>
	<code>\renewcommand\theenumi</code>
	<code>{\protect\ding{\interval{171+\value{enumi}}}}</code>
③ item of list	<code>\begin{enumerate}</code>
	<code>\item item of list \label{11} \item item of list \label{12}</code>
④ item of list	<code>\item item of list \label{13} \item item of list \label{14}</code>
	<code>\end{enumerate}</code>
4-1-4 11=① 12=② 13=③ 14=④	<code>11=\ref{11} 12=\ref{12} 13=\ref{13} 14=\ref{14}</code>

The same effect is obtained with the `dingautolist` environment defined in the `pifont` package; see Section 10.13.1 on page →II 113.

Customizing the description list environment

With the `description` environment you can change the `\descriptionlabel` command that generates the label. In the following example the font for typesetting the labels is changed from boldface (default) to bold sans serif.

	<code>\renewcommand\descriptionlabel[1]{</code>
	<code>{\hspace{\labelsep}\textsf{\bfseries #1}}</code>
An item Its description with enough	<code>\begin{description}</code>
text to fill more than one line in	<code>\item[An item] Its description with enough text</code>
the example.	<code>to fill more than one line in the example.</code>
Another item Now just two lines of	<code>\item[Another item] Now just two lines of text.</code>
text.	<code>\end{description}</code>
4-1-5	

The standard \LaTeX classes set the starting point of the label in a `description` environment at a distance of `\labelsep` to the left of the left margin of the main text galley or the enclosing environment.² Thus, the `\descriptionlabel` command in the example above first adds a value of `\labelsep` to start the label aligned with the left margin.

¹For the \TeX nically interested: \LaTeX 's `\value` command, despite its name, does not produce the "value" of a \LaTeX counter, but only its internal \TeX register name. In circumstances where \TeX expects a number it can be used directly (which is the case for the argument of `\interval`), but if you use it directly inside `\edef` or `\write`, the internal name rather than the "value" survives. By prefixing the internal register name with the command `\the`, you can get at the register value even in such situations, but here this is not necessary.

²A somewhat odd default, but it has been like this for more than three decades — thus a feature, not a bug.

Modifying shared properties

The customizations discussed so far for the three standard lists only covered the aspects specific to each list type, but not properties like the vertical spacing before, within, and after the list; the behavior when lists are nested; and so forth.

All these properties are shared between different list types (by default at least) and are inherited from a generic `list` environment that is used to define all user-level lists (and in fact even other environments). Modifying them is a more elaborate exercise and usually done only in document classes. We discuss the concepts in the next section because you are going to find them used in many older class files and it is important to understand what has been set up there, if you want to adjust it. However, for new developments and your own customizations, we suggest making use of the excellent `enumitem` package instead. It is discussed in Section 4.1.3.

4.1.2 L^AT_EX’s generic list environments

Most lists in L^AT_EX, including those that we have seen previously, are internally built using the generic `list` environment. It has the following syntax:

```
\begin{list}{default-label}{decls} item-list \end{list}
```

The argument *default-label* is the text to be used as a label when an `\item` command is found without an optional argument. The second argument, *decls*, can be used to modify the different geometrical parameters of the `list` environment, which are shown schematically in Figure 4.1 on the facing page.

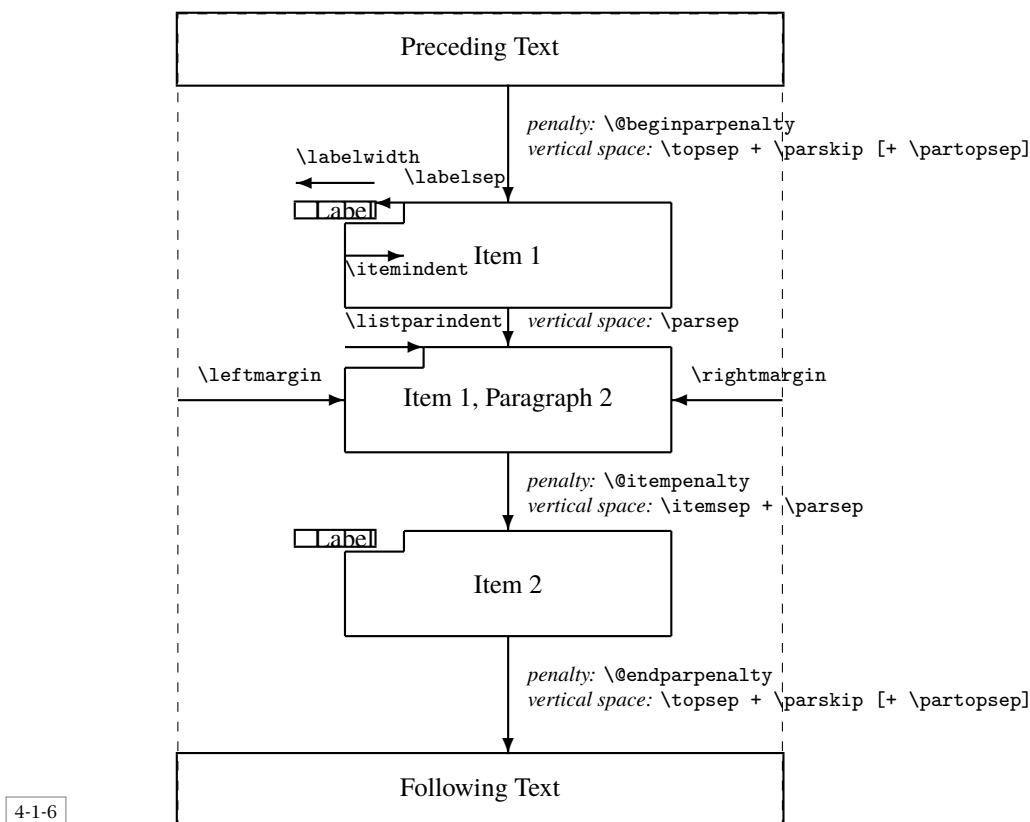
The default values of these parameters typically depend on the type size and the level of the list. Those being vertically oriented are rubber lengths, meaning that they can stretch or shrink. They are set by the `list` environment as follows: upon entering the environment the internal command `\@list<level>` is executed, where *<level>* is the list nesting level represented as a lowercase roman numeral (e.g., `\@listi` for the first level, `\@listii` for the second, `\@listiii` for the third, and so on).

Each of these commands, defined by the document class, holds appropriate settings for the given level. Typically, the class contains separate definitions for each major document size available via options. For example, if you select the option `11pt`, one of its actions is to change the list defaults. In the standard classes this is done by loading the file `size11.clo`, which contains the definitions for the `11pt` document size.

In addition, most classes contain redefinitions of `\@listi` (i.e., first-level list defaults) within the size-changing commands `\normalsize`, `\small`, and `\footnotesize`, the assumption being that one might have lists within “small” or “footnote-sized” text, but not in headings or very tiny sizes. However, since this is a somewhat incomplete setup, strange effects are possible if you

- use nested lists in such small sizes (the nested lists get the standard defaults intended for `\normalsize`), or

Incomplete setups
in standard
classes



4-1-6

$\backslash topsep$ Rubber space between first item and preceding paragraph.

$\backslash partopsep$ Extra rubber space added to $\backslash topsep$ when environment starts a new paragraph.

$\backslash itemsep$ Rubber space between successive items.

$\backslash parsep$ Rubber space between paragraphs within an item.

$\backslash @beginparpenalty$ Break penalty before the list.

$\backslash @itempenalty$ Break penalty before items except the first.

$\backslash @endparpenalty$ Break penalty after the list.

$\backslash leftmargin$ Space between left margin of enclosing environment (or of page if top-level list) and left margin of this list. Must be nonnegative. Its value depends on the list level.

$\backslash rightmargin$ Similar to $\backslash leftmargin$ but for the right margin. Its value is usually 0pt.

$\backslash listparindent$ Extra indentation at beginning of every paragraph of a list except the one started by $\backslash item$. Can be negative, but is usually 0pt.

$\backslash itemindent$ Extra indentation added to the horizontal indentation of the text part of the first line of an item. The starting position of the label is calculated with respect to this reference point by subtracting the values of $\backslash labelsep$ and $\backslash labelwidth$. Its value is usually 0pt.

$\backslash labelwidth$ The nominal width of the box containing the label. If the natural width of the label is $\leq \backslash labelwidth$, then by default the label is typeset flush right inside a box of width $\backslash labelwidth$. Otherwise, a box of the natural width is employed, which causes an indentation of the text on that line. It is possible to modify the way the label is typeset by providing a definition for the $\backslash makelabel$ command.

$\backslash labelsep$ The space between the end of the label box and the text of the first item. Its default value is 0.5em.

Figure 4.1: Parameters used by the list environment

- jump from `\small` or `\footnotesize` directly to a large size, such as `\huge` (a first-level list now inherits the defaults from the small size, because in this setup `\huge` does not reset the list defaults).

With a more complex setup these defects could be mended. However, given that the simpler setup works well in most practical circumstances, most classes provide only this restricted support.

Global changes are difficult

Because of this size- and nesting-dependent setup for the list parameters, it is not possible to change any of them globally in the preamble of your document. For global changes you have to provide redefinitions for the various `\@list..` commands discussed above or select a different document class.¹

Page breaking around lists

Page breaking around and within a list structure is controlled by three \TeX counters: `\@beginparpenalty` (for breaking before the list), `\@itempenalty` (for breaking before an item within the list), and `\@endparpenalty` (for breaking the page after a list). By default, all three are set to a slightly negative value, meaning that it is permissible (and even preferable) to break a page in these places compared to other breakpoints. However, this outcome may not be appropriate. You may prefer to discourage or even prevent page breaks directly before a list. To achieve this, assign a high value to `\@beginparpenalty` (10000 or more prohibits the break in all circumstances), for example:

```
\makeatletter
\@beginparpenalty=9999
\makeatother
```

\TeX counters need this unusual assignment form, and because all three contain an `@` sign in their name, you have to surround them with `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother` if the assignment is done in the preamble.²

Many environments are implemented as lists

It is important to realize that such a setting is global to all environments based on the generic `list` environment (unless it is made in the `decls` argument) and that several \LaTeX environments are defined with the help of this environment or its stripped-down version `trivlist` (for example, `quote`, `quotation`, `center`, `flushleft`, and `flushright`). These environments are “lists” with a single item, and the `\item[]` command is specified in the environment definition. The main reason for them to be internally defined as lists is that they then share the vertical spacing with other display objects and thus help achieve a uniform layout.

As an example, we can consider the `quote` environment, whose definition gives the same left and right margins. The simple variant `Quote`, shown below, is identical to `quote` apart from the double quote symbols added around the text. Note the special precautions, which must be taken to eliminate undesirable white space after the opening quote character (`\ignorespaces`) and before the closing one (`\unskip`). We also placed the quote characters into boxes of zero width to make the quotes hang

¹The alternative is to use the `enumitem` package, which offers good interfaces for this and other list customizations, successfully hiding the low-level details discussed in this section.

²If your \LaTeX installation is current then `\UseName{@beginparpenalty}=9999` can be used instead.

into the margin. This trick is worth remembering: if you have a zero-width box and align the contents with the right edge, they stick out to the left.

A paragraph of text before our display quotation.	<code>\newenvironment{Quote}% {\begin{list}{}{\setlength\rightmargin{\leftmargin}}% \item[]\makebox[0pt][r]{‘}\ignorespaces}% \unskip\makebox[0pt][l]{’}\end{list}}</code>
“Some quoted text, followed by more quoted text.”	A paragraph of text before our display quotation. <code>\begin{Quote} Some quoted text, followed by more quoted text. \end{Quote}</code>
4-1-7 Directly following text ...	Directly following text \ldots

4.1.3 enumitem — Extended list environments

The `enumitem` package by Javier Bezos has been written to improve the handling of lists in \LaTeX on several fronts. It has three major goals:

- Offer a mechanism to locally customize individual list environments with the help of an optional argument at list start;
- Support new list environments (with or without special settings) that can be easily set up, enabling you to better structure your document;
- Provide a mechanism to easily customize all list environments.

We discuss them one after another, starting with the local modifications to existing environments. Keep in mind, however, that the local modifications should be the exception, not the norm. If you find yourself repeatedly applying the same adjustments in your document, then you are most likely simply missing a new document element that gives them a face and a name.

When the package is loaded, the three standard \LaTeX lists are modified to accept an optional argument at the environment start, as demonstrated here with `enumerate`.¹

```
\begin{enumerate}[key/value list] item-list \end{enumerate}
```

In the *key/value list* a multitude of different keys can be used to adjust vertical and horizontal spacing, the look and feel of the item label, and other aspects of the list environments. For example, all parameters listed in Figure 4.1 on page 259 can be set via keys; e.g., `itemsep=2pt` would force a separation of 2pt between items in the current list. We discuss them in detail throughout the next pages.

There also exist keys that set several aspects in one go; e.g., `noitemsep` reduces the space between items and paragraphs to zero, and `nosep` does this also to the spaces before and after the list, thus producing a really tight layout.

¹If necessary, you can load the package with the option `loadonly` in which case the standard environments are not redefined and only newly defined lists have this syntax extension.

Another sometimes useful key is `resume`, which continues the numbering from a previous list of the same type.¹ We demonstrate all these keys in the next example and also set `listparindent` (normally zero) to get a visible paragraph indentation.

<p>A somewhat tight list ...</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. An item with two paragraphs. This is the second paragraph containing more text to fill two lines. 2. Another item. <p>... and here with no vertical spaces:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Do you see? 4. And the numbering continues as requested. <p>More text after the list.</p>	<pre> \usepackage{enumitem} A somewhat tight list \ldots \begin{enumerate}[noitemsep,listparindent=1em] \item An item with two paragraphs. \par This is the second paragraph containing more text to fill two lines. \item Another item. \end{enumerate} \ldots\ and here with no vertical spaces: \begin{enumerate}[nosep,resume] \item Do you see? \item And the numbering continues as requested. \end{enumerate} More text after the list.</pre>	4-1-8
--	---	-------

A variation is `resume*`, which works like `resume` but also reuses all previously given key settings. We demonstrate this in the next example.

If the package is loaded with the option `inline`, it automatically sets up three further list environments, `itemize*`, `enumerate*`, and `description*`, that produce inline rather than display lists using by default the same labels (and counters in the case of `enumerate*`) as their display counterparts. As shown in the next example these lists ignore implicit or explicit paragraph breaks.

<p>We may want to enumerate items within a paragraph to (a) save space (b) make a less prominent statement, or (c) for some other reason.</p> <p>As before we can continue the list (d) with the key <code>resume</code> (e) or with <code>resume*</code> (f) or apply some other change. Paragraph breaks are ignored in such lists!</p>	<pre> \usepackage[inline]{enumitem} We may want to enumerate items within a paragraph to \begin{enumerate*}[label=(\alph*)] \item save space \item make a less prominent statement, or \item for some other reason. \end{enumerate*} As before we can continue the list \begin{enumerate*}[resume*] \item with the key \texttt{resume} \item or with \texttt{resume*} \item or apply some other \par change. \end{enumerate*} \textbf{Paragraph breaks are ignored in such lists!}</pre>	4-1-9
--	---	-------

In the previous example we adjusted the `label` on each list environment the second time through `resume*`.² This clearly shows that while the optional argument is useful for the occasional one-off correction, adding such a setting to every environment is both cumbersome and error prone. In such a case it is better

¹From the standard lists this makes sense only for `enumerate`, but once you define your own list that uses numbered labels, it can be applied there too.

²The details, e.g., the meaning of `\alph*`, is discussed later, but you can probably guess.

to adjust the default settings or, if different setups are needed in different places, to define new list environments with their own customized settings. This is done with the following declaration.

```
\newlist{env}{base-env}{max-nesting-level}
```

The `\newlist` declaration defines a new environment *env* that is based on one of the base list environments, i.e., `enumerate`, `itemize`, or `description` or their inline counterparts `enumerate*`, `itemize*`, or `description*`. The latter can be used in the declaration even if the `inline` option is not given, i.e., if the environments are not available at the document-level.

The *max-nesting-level* specifies to what level the new environment can be nested. Do not specify an unnecessary high value here, because for each level there is some internal setup necessary and in the case of environments based on `enumerate` a counter is declared. Thus, unused levels are quite costly. If necessary, you can redeclare an existing environment using `\renewlist`, for example, to raise the level of supported `itemize` levels from 4 (default) to 6 or provide an implementation of `quote` that is based on the `enumitem` interface; see Example 4-1-29 on page 277 for this.

An example of a new list is steps:

1: Lists are declared with `\newlist`.

2: But this is not enough:

a) as a minimum we need to define a label.

b) this is done here locally on each environment.

3: Usually, `\setlist` is used for this.

```
\usepackage{enumitem}
\newlist{steps}{enumerate}{4}

\noindent An example of a new list is \texttt{steps}:
\begin{steps}[label=\arabic*:]
\item Lists are declared with \verb=\newlist=.
\item But this is not enough:
  \begin{steps}[label=\alph*]
  \item as a minimum we need to define a \texttt{label}.
  \item this is done here locally on each environment.
  \end{steps}
\item Usually, \verb=\setlist= is used for this.
\end{steps}
```

4-1-10

Setting default values

As indicated in the previous example, just declaring a new list is not quite enough; we have to declare at least the label setup for it. This, as well as any other adjustment to a list environment, is done with `\setlist` declarations that come in four variations:

```
\setlist*           {key/value list} % defaults for all lists
\setlist*[level]    {key/value list} % defaults for lists on level
\setlist*[env-name] {key/value list} % defaults for a specific list
\setlist*[env-name,level] {key/value list} % defaults for a specific list on level
```

These declarations define defaults in increasing order of specificity. The version without an optional argument defines defaults that are applied to all list environments unless there are more specific settings overwriting them. Specifying just a *level* defines

defaults for all lists on that level (overwriting any general ones). Specifying just an *env-name* overwrites those just for this environment, and specifying both *env-name* and *level* finally defines the values applicable only for the specific environment on that particular level.¹ Instead of just one *env-name* or one *level*, you can specify several separated by commas if all combinations should receive the same *key/value list*.

Thus, to fully set up the `steps` environment we could have written:

```
\newlist{steps}{enumerate}{4}
\setlist[steps]{label=\arabic*} \setlist[steps,2,3]{label=\alph*}
```

Because we give a specific default for only the second and third levels, `label` is `\arabic*` on the first and fourth levels (probably not a wise choice).

The difference between `\setlist` and its star form `\setlist*` is that the former replaces whatever defaults have been set up, while the latter augments previously set up defaults for the given *env-name* and *level* combination. If you want to set up several key values for one combination, you either have to specify them all together in the *key/value list* argument or use `\setlist` on the first and `\setlist*` on all later declarations with the same *env-name* and *level* combination.

With our new knowledge of how to adjust lists locally or to set up default values, we can now take a closer look at the huge number of keys that can be applied in both cases. We discuss them in useful chunks and give examples for typical use cases.

Vertical spacing and page breaks

All display lists start and finish with a vertical skip of `topsep`, which is augmented by `partopsep` if the list forms a paragraph on its own. Unfortunately, to this value \TeX also adds the value of `\parskip` from the enclosing list or the main text galley. In the standard classes the parameter has a default value of `0pt plus 1pt`, but if that is being set to a positive value, then it affects the space around lists, which means the list parameters may need adjustment.

If an item in a list contains several paragraphs, then these are separated by a skip of `parsep`, and the vertical space between items is given by the sum of `itemsep` and `parsep`. For example, the defaults (for all lists) in the standard article class are equivalent to the following declarations:

```
\setlist {topsep      = 8pt plus 2pt minus 1pt}
\setlist*{partopsep = 2pt plus 1pt minus 1pt}
\setlist*{parsep     = 4pt plus 2pt minus 1pt}
\setlist*{itemsep    = 4pt plus 2pt minus 1pt}
```

*Standard class
defaults are
suboptimal*

If you think this results in too much space around the list, you could set up your own defaults as we do in the next example. In fact, the values in the standard classes are rather bad, because they allow the space between items to stretch faster (`2pt+2pt`) than the space before and after the list, which has only a stretch of `2pt+1pt` (from the

¹The package is a bit unforgiving if you misspell the *env-name* and replies with some low-level errors, so if that happens, triple-check the *env-names* you used.

default `\parskip`). Only when `partopsep` is also applied does the stretch become identical.¹

As discussed on page 260, there are three (internal) penalties associated with lists: for breaking before the list, at an item, and after the list. The `enumitem` keys for them are `beginpenalty`, `midpenalty`, and `endpenalty`, respectively. Their default values in most classes are for some strange reason usually `-51`, which makes \LaTeX favor these breakpoints over other places.

While this seems reasonable between items and perhaps even more so after the list, it is usually less desirable at its beginning, because the first item is often logically tied to preceding text. Thus, it may be advisable to change at least the value for `beginpenalty` to forbid or discourage a break there.

If you do not want to rule out a break categorically through a default setting, you may still want to disallow it occasionally through the optional argument on the list, e.g., by setting `beginpenalty=10000` there. For such special settings `enumitem` offers a convenient way to define new symbolic keys; e.g., you can declare

```
\SetEnumitemKey{nobreak}{beginpenalty=10000}
```

and then use the new valueless `nobreak` key in your document. In the same fashion you could define

```
\SetEnumitemKey{compact}
{topsep=4pt plus 1pt,partopsep=0pt,itemsep=2pt plus 1pt,parsep=1pt}
```

to have a key available that gets you a slightly compacted list when needed.

On the other hand we may want all lists to

1. use less space around them;
2. and no space between items and paragraphs.

Instead paragraphs should have some indentation inside the list.

Do these setting also apply

here?

4-1-11 Clearly no! See discussion below.

```
\usepackage{enumitem}
\setlist{noitemsep,listparindent=1em,partopsep=0pt,
topsep=4pt plus 1pt minus 1pt}
```

On the other hand we may want all lists to

```
\begin{enumerate}
\item use less space around them;
\item and no space between items and paragraphs.
\par Instead paragraphs should have some
indentation inside the list.
```

```
\end{enumerate}
```

Do these setting also apply

```
\begin{center} here? \end{center}
```

Clearly no! See discussion below.

As seen in the previous example, `enumitem` distinguishes between real lists, i.e., the standard \LaTeX ones or those defined with `\newlist`, and display elements like `center` or `tabbing` that in standard \LaTeX also receive the vertical spacing applied to lists because they are internally defined with the `trivlist` environment. If you change the list defaults through `\setlist`, this is no longer the case. If you want to

¹Unfortunately, this is not adjustable in standard classes without altering the formatting of millions of existing documents, so it is up to new classes to offer better defaults.

keep the layout uniform and get your `\setlist` settings applied to all display environments, you can load the package with the option `includedisplayed`. Of course, only those relevant for `trivlist` are applied, i.e., in this case `topsep` and `partopsep`.

<p>Now we get the reduced spacing here!</p> <p>And this applies to all other display environments too.</p>	<pre>\usepackage[includedisplayed]{enumitem} \setlist{noitemsep,listparindent=1em,partopsep=0pt, topsep=4pt plus 1pt minus 1pt}</pre> <p>Now we get the reduced spacing</p> <pre>\begin{center} here! \end{center}</pre> <p>And this applies to all other display environments too.</p>	4-1-12
--	--	--------

The alternative is to explicitly set values for `trivlist` that are then inherited by the different display environments, e.g.,

```
\setlist[trivlist]{partopsep=0pt,topsep=4pt plus 1pt minus 1pt}
```

The advantage of that approach is that you can set up different defaults for both types of environments.

The general formatting of the list environment body

If we ignore for a moment that lists contain `\item` commands and just concentrate on the text material, then there are three horizontal parameters that define the overall list structure. The `leftmargin` and the `rightmargin` define the indentation of the list material from both sides measured from the enclosing list or text, and `listparindent` defines the paragraph indentation of paragraphs that do not also start a new item. Paragraphs that start with an `\item` command use `itemindent` for indentation (which is zero by default).

For example, in L^AT_EX's standard classes the standard lists are indented from the left but not from the right. If you prefer a fixed indentation from the right, you could use these settings:

<p>A sample text showing the outer margins of normal text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A sample text of more than one line please. – A sample text of more than one line. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A longer sample text with two lines. <p>Again some more text to indicate the galley margins.</p> <p>Description test A longer sample text with two lines of text.</p>	<pre>\usepackage{enumitem} \setlist{rightmargin=0pt} % already the default \setlist[1]{rightmargin=20pt}</pre> <p>A sample text showing the outer margins of normal text.</p> <pre>\begin{itemize} \item A sample text of more than one line please. \begin{itemize} \item A longer sample text with two lines. \begin{enumerate} \item A longer sample text with two lines. \end{enumerate} \end{itemize} \end{itemize} \end{itemize}</pre> <p>Again some more text to indicate the galley margins.</p> <pre>\begin{description} \item[Description test] A longer sample text with two lines of text. \end{description}</pre>	4-1-13
---	--	--------

Defining the item label (or title) and its design

When we speak about the default item label, we mean the material that is typeset whenever an `\item` command is used without an optional argument. This is usually the case for unnumbered `itemize` and numbered `enumerate`-like lists, while with `description`-like lists the item *text* is always produced by the optional argument; i.e., there is no item label but an item *title*.

Such an item label is defined by the `label` key and any special formatting instructions by the key `format` or its synonym `font`. With `description` lists the `label` key is not used (unless you forget to supply an optional argument to `\item`), and only the `format` key is used to format the item title.

Typically the `label` holds a special symbol to be used in an `itemize`-like list or some form of counter representation, possibly embellished with other material in “`enumerate`-like” lists. The `format` might then hold font directives such as `\bfseries` or `\ttfamily`.

Because there is no global default for item labels, you have to provide as a minimum a setting for `label` if you define a new list with `\newlist`. If you forget, then the first `\item` encountered without an optional argument raises an error message. This makes sense, because labels are normally specific to a particular list (and often specific to the level of nesting). Of course, you can provide global defaults yourself such as

```
\setlist{label=}
\setlist[1]{label=\labelitemi} \setlist[2]{label=\labelitemii}
\setlist[3]{label=\labelitemiii} \setlist[4]{label=\labelitemiv}
```

That gives an empty default for all list levels that are not otherwise set up and some specific symbols for levels 1 to 4. The above settings use commands from Table 4.1, i.e., those that are used by standard \LaTeX for the `itemize` labels at different levels. This makes it easy to define logical environments to structure your document. Their typeset result then still looks like an `itemize`, and by changing `\labelitemi`, you can then change all such lists in parallel.

	<pre>\usepackage{enumitem} % default as above \newlist{ingredients}{itemize}{1}</pre>
Slowly cooked shiitake mushrooms:	Slowly cooked shiitake mushrooms:
• 20–30 dried shiitake mushrooms	<pre>\begin{ingredients} \item 20--30 dried shiitake mushrooms \item 4 fresh hot red chillies \item 2 tablespoons roasted sesame oil \end{ingredients}</pre>
• 4 fresh hot red chillies	
• 2 tablespoons roasted sesame oil	

4-1-14

When you define a new list based on `enumerate`, the package automatically defines counters for each level named `\env-name\level` with the *level* given as a lowercase roman numeral. For example, below we define a `steps` environment with two levels, so the corresponding counters are `stepsi` and `stepsii`. They can then

be used to produce numbered labels for each level with the help of the usual counter formatting commands.

Slowly cooked shiitake mushrooms: 1. Soak 20–30 dried mushrooms in hot water (a) minimum 2 hours (b) keep water for later 2. Slice shiitake in 5–7 mm slices 3. ...	<pre> \usepackage{enumitem} \newlist{steps}{enumerate}{2} \setlist[steps,1]{label=\arabic{stepsi}.} \setlist[steps,2]{label=(\alph{stepsii})} Slowly cooked shiitake mushrooms: \begin{steps} \item Soak 20--30 dried mushrooms in hot water \begin{steps} \item minimum 2 hours \item keep water for later \end{steps} \item Slice shiitake in 5--7\,mm slices \item \ldots \end{steps} </pre>
--	--

4-1-15

However, `enumitem` provides an even more convenient way through `\arabic*`, `\alph*`, `\roman*`, and the like where the `*` means “use the current list counter”. Thus, above we could have more concisely written `label=\arabic*`. without worrying about the counter name, as we already did in the introductory Example 4-1-10.

Beside `label` there also exists a key variant `label*` that prepends the label from the enclosing level to its value. This allows for very concise setups in certain cases. For example, below we concatenate labels on all levels, and on the first level we prepend a section sign. We also use `format` to force boldface for all labels. Note that this formatting instruction is not passed on to the references.

We may want to enumerate items within a paragraph to §1. save space §1.1. make a less prominent statement, or §1.2. because §1.2.1. it's Friday §1.2.2. we are bored §2. or for some other reason. Show me: §1.2.1.	<pre> \usepackage{enumitem} \newlist{legal}{enumerate}{6} \setlist[legal]{format=\bfseries,label*=\arabic*.} \setlist[legal,1]{label=\S\arabic*.} We may want to enumerate items within a paragraph to \begin{legal} \item save space \begin{legal} \item make a less prominent statement, or \item because \begin{legal} \item it's Friday \label{11} \item we are bored \end{legal} \end{legal} \end{legal} \item or for some other reason. \end{legal} Show me: \ref{11} </pre>
--	--

4-1-16

In Example 2-2-2 on page 36 we already discussed the problem that counter representations are often used by the `\ref` command and therefore may produce odd-looking references when the counter representation involves some fancy formatting. This is also true for references to `enumerate`-like list items, because by default they use the `label` for the reference. However, with `enumitem` this problem can be resolved by placing certain formatting instructions into the `format` key (as we did above) or by providing a `ref` key that then defines the representation for the cross-reference independently of the setting of `label`.

The latter is also necessary if you want to concatenate the labels from nested levels in your reference. For example, a reference to the second-level `steps` in Example 4-1-15 comes out as “(b)”, but you may want “1b” instead. In that case the solution is to write

```
\setlist[steps,2]{label=(\alph*),ref=\arabic{stepsi}\alph*}
```

instead. Note that we can use `*` in place of the current (second level) counter, but to access the counter of the outer level we need to explicitly use its name here.

Because `label`, `label*`, or the `ref` key are used for the label mechanism, their values are written to the `.aux` file. This means they act like moving arguments, and anything fragile in their value therefore needs to be protected with `\protect`.

For `description`-like lists there are different methods for adjusting the item label; they are discussed on page 278.

The placement of the item label or item text

Typesetting the item label requires three actions: deciding how wide the box should be in which the item label or text is placed (key `labelwidth`), deciding how the label is aligned within this box (key `align`), and finally deciding where on the line this box is placed.

The `align` key actually does a little more than aligning the label within its box, and it is important to understand these subtleties. Out of the box there are three possible values: `right` used by default for `enumerate` and `itemize`-like lists, `left` used by `description`-like lists, and finally `parleft` that we discuss later.

There is a crucial difference between the way `right` and `left` operate: when the label material turns out to be wider than the `labelwidth`, it simply protrudes into the left margin if `right` alignment is in force. The assumption is that on the left there is just white space so that this is possible. It is therefore of little importance how wide we make that label box. If, however, this happens with `left` alignment in force, then the label box is essentially widened, and the paragraph text following it is pushed to the right as much as necessary. For example, in `description` the `labelwidth` is by default set to zero, and through this mechanism the actual width is determined by the label content. This is why a very short label results in the first line of the following text getting outdented because it starts directly after the label box (separated by `labelsep`, of course).

If you do not want this, you could specify a minimum width for the label box. In the next example we use the `calc` package to fit the box exactly into the available

space in the margin without the need to know the exact values (which means we have to subtract `\labelsep`).

A sample text showing the outer margins.	<code>\usepackage{calc,enumitem}</code>	
X Label shorter than the available space so the text moves to the left.	<code>\noindent A sample text showing the outer margins. \begin{description} \item[X] Label shorter than the available space so the text moves to the left. \item[Wide label] Wider than the space available so the text moves to the right. \end{description}</code>	
Wide label Wider than the space available so the text moves to the right.		
X Now no text is moved.	<code>\setlist[description]{labelwidth=\leftmargin-\labelsep} \begin{description} \item[X] Now no text is moved. \item[Wide label] Wider than the space available so the text again moves to the right.\end{description}</code>	
Wide label Wider than the space available so the text again moves to the right.		4-1-17

With the default `right` alignment the above approach does not work because the label just protrudes out of the box if it is wider. However, there is a way to define your own alignment code using `\SetLabelAlign` that we exhibit in the next example:

A sample text showing the outer margins.	<code>\usepackage{enumitem} \setlist[itemize]{format=\bfseries} \SetLabelAlign{righttextend}{\hfill#1}</code>	
• Label fits the available space.	<code>\noindent A sample text showing the outer margins. \begin{itemize} \item Label fits the available space. \item[Wide label] Label is wider than the available space so protrudes into the left margin.\end{itemize}</code>	
Wide label Label is wider than the available space so protrudes into the left margin.		
• No change to the default.	<code>\begin{itemize}[align=righttextend] \item No change to the default. \item[Wide label] But now wide labels move following text partly to the right. \end{itemize}</code>	
Wide label But now wide labels move following text partly to the right.		
Wide label A rather ugly example for the use of the <code>parleft</code> alignment.	<code>\begin{itemize}[align=parleft] \item[Wide label] A rather ugly example for the use of the <code>\texttt{parleft}</code> alignment. \end{itemize}</code>	4-1-18

The third alignment value, `parleft`, wraps the label material in a top-aligned `\parbox` of width `labelwidth` so that the label may consist of several lines. Of course, this works well only if the label box is wide enough (which is not really the case in the previous example). Please note that if items are too close to each other in this type of layout, their labels can overprint another because for \LaTeX they appear to contain only a single line of material.

What still needs discussing is how the label box is positioned. If you look at Figure 4.1 on page 259, you can see that its placement is determined by three parameters

that can be set with the keys `labelwidth`, `labelsep`, and `itemindent`. The standard \LaTeX way of determining the start position of the label is convenient if you consider the label being a certain amount away from the start of the list text, but it is less natural if you instead think of the label being a certain amount away from the left margin.

To ease the specification in either case `enumitem` introduces another key named `labelindent` (and a corresponding parameter `\labelindent`) that specifies the space from the left margin to the start of the label. Of course, this means an over-specification, because the keys are related in the following way

$$\text{labelindent} + \text{labelwidth} + \text{labelsep} = \text{leftmargin} + \text{itemindent}$$

and if four of them are specified, the fifth has to be computed according to the above equation. By default this is `labelindent`; i.e., the calculations are carried out as with standard \LaTeX .

This means that if you specify a value for `labelindent`, you have to tell `enumitem` which other key it should (re)calculate. Otherwise, given that all parameters have default values, it would leave the package clueless about what to overwrite and what to retain. As a result, without this extra information your setting of `labelindent` may be simply ignored. To identify the parameter that should be calculated, specify `!` as its value (if you do this with more than one parameter, the last one wins). The next example artificially shows the effects on placement and size of the label box when we ask for different parameters to be recalculated. The box is shown as a frame.

In standard `itemize` the label is set using `align=right`, i.e., is set at the right edge of the label box and is allowed to protrude at the left out its box. If we want to visualize that label box, we can use `\SetLabelAlign` to redefine `right` by adding a `\framebox` with the appropriate width and put the content against its right edge. The `\strut` is there to ensure that the frame has the same height and depth in all cases.


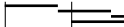
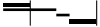
Some text to show the left margin.

- The default.
- No visible difference as label protrudes.
- This results in `itemindent` becoming positive so the paragraph text moves to the right.
- Overprint of label and text because `labelsep` becomes negative.

```
\usepackage{enumitem}
\SetLabelAlign{right}{\setlength\fbboxsep{0pt}%
\framebox[\labelwidth][r]{\strut#1}}

\noindent Some text to show the left margin.
\begin{itemize} \item The default. \end{itemize}
\begin{itemize}[labelindent=17pt,labelwidth=!]
\item No visible difference as label protrudes.
\end{itemize}
\begin{itemize}[labelindent=17pt,itemindent=!]
\item This results in \texttt{itemindent} becoming
positive so the paragraph text moves to the right.
\end{itemize}
\begin{itemize}[labelindent=17pt,labelsep=!]
\item Overprint of label and text because
\texttt{labelsep} becomes negative.
\end{itemize}
```

With `\DrawEnumitemLabel` the package offers its own way to visualize the dimensions involved in the label placement. If the command is placed into the list just before the first item (or into the key `first`), then it generates four rules representing `labelindent` by `labelwidth`, `labelsep`, and `itemindent` in that order. They are drawn as thin rules if positive and as thick rules if negative. If a value is zero, no rule is visible, but you can deduce that from the fact that the surrounding rules are further apart. The `leftmargin` is indicated with two vertical lines.

<p>Some text to show the left margin.</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The default.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>itemindent</code> now becomes positive.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ... and here negative. 	<pre> \usepackage{enumitem} \setlist{nosep,first=\DrawEnumitemLabel} \noindent Some text to show the left margin. \begin{itemize} \item The default. \end{itemize} \begin{itemize}[labelindent=20pt,itemindent=!] \item \texttt{\itemindent} now becomes positive. \end{itemize} \begin{itemize}[labelindent=-10pt,itemindent=!] \item \ldots{} and here negative. \end{itemize> </pre>	4-1-20
--	---	--------

There is also the possibility of using `*` as the value, which works like `!` but first sets `labelwidth` to a default value based on the current label settings. It measures the label material by replacing any `\arabic*` with “0”, a `\roman*` with “viii”, and for `\alph*` it uses “m”. If you want a different string for replacement, you can specify it with the key `widest` as done below. Again, we use a frame to visualize the label box and use an uncommon setting for `label` to show that the whole label material is used in the measuring process.

<p>Some text to show the left margin.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">-1-</div> The default. <p><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">-2-</div> One digit labels are set flush-left on the margin.</p> <p><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">-33-</div> But labels with 2 digits protrude.</p> <p><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">-42-</div> Here we tell to leave space for 2 digits.</p>	<pre> \usepackage{enumitem} \setlist[enumerate]{label=--\arabic*--} \noindent Some text to show the left margin. \begin{enumerate} \item The default. \end{enumerate} \begin{enumerate}[leftmargin=*,start=2] \item One digit labels are set flushleft on the margin. \end{enumerate} \begin{enumerate}[leftmargin=*,start=33] \item But labels with 2 digits protrude. \end{enumerate} \begin{enumerate}[leftmargin=*,widest=99,start=42] \item Here we tell to leave space for 2 digits. \end{enumerate> </pre>	4-1-21
---	---	--------

The key `widest` can also be used with `itemize` or `description`-like lists in which case its string value is measured and used to define the necessary value for

`leftmargin` to fit the text into this space. Note that `\labelitemi` holds the material for the first-level item (i.e., the bullet).

	<pre>\usepackage{enumitem}</pre>
	<pre>\begin{description}[leftmargin=*,widest=Short label,nosep]</pre>
	<pre>\item[Short label]</pre>
Short label and some text to fill more than one line.	<pre>and some text to fill more than one line.</pre>
A much longer label and some text to fill more than one line.	<pre>\item[A much longer label]</pre>
	<pre>and some text to fill more than one line.</pre>
	<pre>\end{description}</pre>
	<pre>\begin{itemize}[leftmargin=*,widest=\labelitemi,nosep]</pre>
• Bullet flush left.	<pre>\item Bullet flush left.</pre>
— Dash now protruding.	<pre>\item[---] Dash now protruding.</pre>
	<pre>\end{itemize}</pre>

4-1-22

Finally there are two convenience keys, `wide` and `left`. The `wide` key makes the list look like an ordinary paragraph, starting with a label that uses the default label formatting rules (including the use of `labelsep` for separating the label from the text). It can be used with all list types. If used as a valueless key, the item is indented using a normal `\parindent`. If you give it a value, then that is used for the paragraph indentation. It is of course also possible to use further keys to adjust different aspects of the default settings.

	<pre>\usepackage{enumitem}</pre>
	<pre>\begin{itemize}[wide,nosep]</pre>
	<pre>\item</pre>
• This item appears as a normal paragraph.	<pre>This item appears as a normal paragraph.</pre>
Here is a second paragraph for comparison.	<pre>Here is a second paragraph for comparison.</pre>
	<pre>\end{itemize}</pre>
	<pre>\begin{description}[wide=0pt]</pre>
	<pre>\item[Longer label]</pre>
Longer label Another common setting would be <code>0pt</code> , i.e., no indentation whatsoever.	<pre>Another common setting would be \texttt{0pt}, i.e., no indentation whatsoever.</pre>
	<pre>Here is a second paragraph.</pre>
Here is a second paragraph.	<pre>\end{description}</pre>

4-1-23

The `left` key can be given one or two values (separated by two dots). With only one, it sets `labelindent` and recomputes `leftmargin`, i.e., does `leftmargin=*`. If passed two values, it sets `labelindent` and `leftmargin` and then recomputes `labelsep` to fit the values. This works well for `itemize` or `enumerate` environments but not at all for `description` because the latter uses a zero `labelwidth` by default. Thus, recomputing `labelsep` makes that rather large, as shown in Example 4-1-24 on the next page. The remedy is to force a recalculation of `labelwidth` instead, as we do in the last list of that example. Notice the use of the first key: the `\hrule` helps us to see where the text margins would be.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • We have 5 pt space in front of the label. Here is a second paragraph for comparison. 	<pre>\usepackage{enumitem} \setlist{first=\hrule,listparindent=10pt,noitemsep} \begin{itemize}[left=5pt] \item We have 5\,pt space in front of the label. \par Here is a second paragraph for comparison. \end{itemize}</pre>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The item text is 20 pt indented and the label starts flush left. A second paragraph. 	<pre>\begin{itemize}[left=0pt..20pt] \item The item text is 20\,pt indented and the label starts flush left.\par A second paragraph. \end{itemize}</pre>
1. Outdented label with the text set flush left. Here is a second paragraph.	<pre>\begin{enumerate}[left=-10pt..0pt] \item Outdented label with the text set flush left. \par Here is a second paragraph. \end{enumerate}</pre>
Label With description this has an ugly hole and gives a warning.	<pre>\begin{description}[left=-10pt..10pt] \item[Label] With \texttt{description} this has an ugly hole and gives a warning. \end{description}</pre>
Label Much better now.	<pre>\begin{description}[left=-10pt..10pt,labelwidth=!] \item[Label] Much better now. \end{description}</pre>

4-1-24

Controlling the list numbering

Normally lists start their numbering from 1, but if this is for some reason not desired, it is possible to give an explicit starting value using the key `start`. We have used that already in the previous example to save us from typesetting several dozen items to show the desired effect. The next example now shows a case where it is useful as part of a default setup.

This example exhibits redefinitions of `itemize` and `enumerate` and repeats Examples 4-1-1 and 4-1-4. It clearly demonstrates that compared to the basic approach it is noticeably easier to achieve such effects with `enumitem`. We also show the use of `ref` by not coloring cross-reference links (no claim that is good design).

① Altering <code>enumerate</code> is easy:	<pre>\usepackage{pifont,color,enumitem} \setlist[itemize]{label=\ding{43}} \setlist[enumerate,1]{start=172,ref=\ding{arabic*}, label=\textcolor{blue}{\ding{arabic*}}}</pre>
☞ Just load a font with nice digits.	
☞ Select the starting point if necessary.	<pre>\begin{enumerate} \item Altering \texttt{enumerate} is easy:\label{x1} \begin{itemize} \item Just load a font with nice digits. \item Select the starting point if necessary. \end{itemize} \item For \texttt{itemize} select the symbol in the \texttt{label}.\label{x2} \item Cross-referencing still works.\label{x3} \end{enumerate} x1=\ref{x1} x2=\ref{x2} x3=\ref{x3}</pre>
② For <code>itemize</code> select the symbol in the label.	
③ Cross-referencing still works.	

x1=① x2=② x3=③

4-1-25

Counting list items backwards is not supported by default, but the package documentation [18] gives an example how it could be achieved using the keys `label`, `ref`, and `after`. An alternative is to use the package `etaremune` by Hendri Adriaens that defines an environment with the same name for precisely that purpose.

Counting backwards

We have also already seen the keys `resume` and `resume*` (resume with reuse of previous key settings) for directing an “enumerate-like” list to continue with its numbering scheme from the value of its last invocation. These keys are normally used in the optional argument to a list, but if you use `resume` with `\setlist`,¹ you define a list environment that continues its numbering throughout the whole document. If you like to restart that numbering once in a while, e.g., at chapter boundaries, you can then use the command `\restartlist{list-name}` to restart the numbering from 1. Another possibility would be to use `start=1` on the next list, but `\restartlist` is better in this case, because it can be automatically issued from the heading command.

Continue counting across several environments

It is also possible to give a series of enumerations a name and resume them by passing that name to the `resume` or `resume*` key at a later invocation. The key settings at the first list (with the `series` key) are globally stored and recalled when `resume*` is used. As shown in the example, it is still possible to overwrite some of them as we did with the `listparindent` value. If `resume` is used with a series name, then that series is continued without using the stored key values.

	<code>\usepackage{enumitem}</code>	
Set up a list in a series ...	<code>\noindent Set up a list in a series \ldots</code>	
1* A first item.	<code>\begin{enumerate}[series=xyz,nosep,listparindent=1em,</code>	
2* An item with two paragraphs.	<code>label=\arabic**]</code>	
This is the second paragraph	<code>\item A first item.</code>	
with indentation.	<code>\item An item with two paragraphs.</code>	<code>\par</code>
...and a list outside the series:	<code> This is the second paragraph with indentation.</code>	
1. Different formatting	<code>\end{enumerate}</code>	
...Now resume the series:	<code>\ldots and a list outside the series:</code>	
3* Formatting is restored.	<code>\begin{enumerate} \item Different formatting\end{enumerate}</code>	
Do you see the updated	<code>\ldots Now resume the series:</code>	
listparindent?	<code>\begin{enumerate}[resume*=xyz,listparindent=3em]</code>	
More text after the list.	<code>\item Formatting is restored.</code>	<code>\par</code>
	<code> Do you see the updated \texttt{listparindent}?</code>	
	<code>\end{enumerate}</code>	
	<code>More text after the list.</code>	

4-1-26

Short labels — mimicking the enumerate package

One of the first packages that extended list environments with an optional argument was David Carlisle’s package `enumerate`. In the optional argument you specified the format of the enumeration where the characters `A`, `a`, `I`, `i`, and `1` would be shorthands for what `enumitem` calls `\Alph*`, `\alph*`, `\Roman*`, `\roman*`, and `\arabic*`.

This syntax is also supported by `enumitem` if you load it with the package option `shortlabels`. In that case the following rule applies: if the *first* key in the optional

¹Using `resume*` does not make any sense inside `\setlist` if you think about it.

argument is not recognized as a known key name, it is assumed to be a label definition that uses the above shorthands. Here is an example:

Task A: We need to explain why this example has problems!	<code>\usepackage[shortlabels]{enumitem}</code>	
Tbsk B: We need to write	<code>\begin{enumerate}[Task A:,noitemsep]</code>	
(1) a summary	<code>\item We need to explain why this example has problems!</code>	
(2) good index entries.	<code>\item We need to write \label{bad}</code>	
	<code>\begin{enumerate}[(1),nosep]</code>	
	<code>\item a summary \item good index entries.</code>	
	<code>\end{enumerate}</code>	
Item “Tbsk B:” shows what can go wrong.	<code>\end{enumerate}</code>	
	Item ‘‘\ref{bad}’’ shows what can go wrong.	4-1-27

The above example already shows the danger of that type of shorthand: anything that fits is replaced; thus, we get “Tbsk” in the second item label. To correct this you can hide the problematical characters in a brace group, e.g., using `{Task}_A:` instead. It also exhibits that we should add a `ref` key if we ever want to reference such an item.

If you use the `shortlabels` option, then you can change the shorthands behavior or even add new ones using `\SetEnumerateShortLabel` as follows:

```
\SetEnumerateShortLabel{i}{\textsc{\roman*}}
```

after which `i` represents the current `enumerate` counter as a Small Caps roman numeral.

Hooking in code

In the case of more complex setups it is sometimes helpful to inject code at well-defined places, and for this `enumitem` offers three keys: `before` (executed just after the keys are evaluated and before a display list adds any vertical space), `first` (executed before the body of the environment is processed), and finally `after` (executed when the `\end` of the environment is seen). All three also have a star variant that appends the code rather than replacing it.

We use this in the next example to reproduce the `Quote` environment from Example 4-1-7 on page 261 by automatically inserting the `\item` command and the quote symbols. Making `itemize` the base environment is convenient because its default settings already fit most of our needs and it does not generate unnecessary overhead by defining a counter.

... some text before to indicate the margins.	<code>\usepackage{enumitem} \newlist{Quote}{itemize}{4}</code>	
	<code>\setlist[Quote]{label=,rightmargin=\leftmargin,</code>	
	<code>first=\item\makebox[0pt][r]{‘‘}\ignorespaces,</code>	
	<code>after=\unskip\makebox[0pt][l]{’’}}</code>	
“Some quoted text, followed by more quoted text.”	<code>\noindent \ldots\ some text before to indicate the margins.</code>	
	<code>\begin{Quote}</code>	
	<code>Some quoted text, followed by more quoted text.</code>	
	<code>\end{Quote}</code>	
... and some text following ...	<code>\ldots\ and some text following \ldots</code>	4-1-28

Obviously, setting the list body justified in narrow measures is likely to produce ugly spaced-out lines. It may therefore be better to apply `\raggedright` or `\RaggedRight` from the `ragged2e` package to the body. With `enumitem` this can be done automatically by using the `before` key. It should be done in this key not in `first`, because we may still want a special `listparindent` and `\raggedright` would reset that if placed in the `first` key. What we place in that key is an `\item` command because we do not want to supply that in the source.

```
... some text before.           \usepackage{ragged2e,enumitem}
                                \renewlist{quote}{itemize}{4}
                                \setlist[quote]{label=,rightmargin=\leftmargin,
                                before=\RaggedRight,first=\item,listparindent=1em}
                                \noindent \ldots\ some text before.
                                \begin{quote}
      Some text in our         Some text in our redefined \texttt{quote} environment. \par
      redefined quote         Paragraphs are indented and the text
      environment.            is set ragged right.
      Paragraphs are          \end{quote}
      indented and the text
      is set ragged right.
4-1-29 ... and some text following ... \ldots\ and some text following \ldots
```


Inline lists

Above we have already seen inline lists produced with `enumerate*`, `itemize*`, or `description*` and learned that we can produce our own versions using `\setlist`. There are three keys especially provided for such lists to define what should happen at certain points within the list. The code stored in `afterlabel` is used after the label instead of the usual `labelsep` (defaults to `\nobreakspace`), `itemjoin` is used between items (defaults to a space), and `itemjoin*` if specified is used between the last two items. The latter two are used only if you are still in LR-mode and not for some reason in vertical mode.

For special handling before and after the list, use `before` and `after`. In the next example we made use of `before` to add a colon in front of the list.

```
                                \usepackage[inline]{enumitem} \newlist{inenum}{enumerate*}{1}
                                \setlist[inenum]{label=(\alph*),before={\unskip: },
                                itemjoin={; },itemjoin*={ and }}
... text before: (a) one; (b) two \ldots\ text before \begin{inenum} \item one
4-1-30 and (c) three and more text. \item two \item three \end{inenum} and more text.
```

You may have noticed that some values in the previous example have been surrounded by double brace groups. They are necessary to ensure that the spaces in the values are not lost.¹ Due to some implementation restrictions, an inline list cannot contain floats, marginpars, or vertically oriented display environments. If that is a problem, you can try to add the key `mode=unboxed`, but that has some other limitations such as not supporting `itemjoin*`.

 *Extra braces may be necessary and other restrictions*

¹Perhaps this can be fixed at some point in the future, but for now the extra braces are necessary, and if the underlying issue gets resolved, they should do no harm.

Styling description-like lists

In lists based on `description` the default for `labelwidth` is zero and the alignment is `left`, which means as discussed earlier that the actual label text gets as wide as necessary, pushing any following text to the right.

That is fine for lists with comparatively short labels but leads to questionable results if the label text gets longer. For starters, the label text is boxed by default, which means that any spaces within are set at their nominal width. In contrast, the remainder of the paragraph text on the same line will stretch or shrink spaces to fill the line, which can result in quite noticeable differences. This can be changed by specifying the `style` key with the value `unboxed`. However, note that `labelsep` that separates the item title from the item text is still a rigid length and thus might give some strange results.

<p>Short label and some text to fill two lines.</p> <p>A much longer label to compare and some text to fill more than one line.</p> <p>A much longer label to compare and some text to fill more than one line.</p>	<pre> \usepackage{enumitem} \begin{description} \item[Short label] and some text to fill two lines. \item[A much longer label] to compare and some text to fill more than one line. \end{description} \begin{description}[style=unboxed] \item[A much longer label] to compare and some text to fill more than one line. \end{description} </pre>
--	--

4-1-31

Another possible problem is label titles that are actually wider than a full line. With the default settings those simply extend into the margin unless, for example, `unboxed` is used. Even for labels that are not that wide, you may want to apply a special treatment if the text is wider than the space available in the margin.

<p>X and some text to fill more than one line.</p> <p>Medium and some text to fill more than one line.</p> <p>A fairly long label — so what happens? Well, it breaks.</p>	<pre> \usepackage{enumitem} \begin{description}[noitemsep,style=unboxed] \item[X] and some text to fill more than one line. \item[Medium] and some text to fill more than one line. \item[A fairly long label --- so what happens?] Well, it breaks. \end{description} </pre>
--	--

4-1-32

Beside `unboxed` there is `sameline` (which is similar but does not outdent the first line if the label is short), `nextline` (which starts a new line if the label is wider than the space defined by `leftmargin`), and finally `multiline` (which places

the label into a parbox of width `leftmargin`). Compare Example 4-1-31 with the following example that exhibits `sameline` and `nextline`:

X Compare this text with that from the previous example.	<pre>\usepackage{enumitem} \begin{description}[style=sameline] \item[X] Compare this text with that from the previous example. \end{description} \begin{description}[style=nextline] \item[Medium] This text starts on a new line. \item[A fairly long label --- so what happens now?] It breaks and the item text starts on a new line. \end{description}</pre>
---	---

4-1-33

We have not tried to show the result of `multiline` in the previous example, because the default `leftmargin` is simply too small, so here is a version somewhat adjusting for this (capable of holding at least two or three words in the margin):

A fairly long label — so what happens now?	<pre>\usepackage{enumitem} \setlist[description]{style=multiline,leftmargin=7em} \begin{description} \item[A fairly long label --- so what happens now?] Now the label breaks in the margin, but this can still look strange if it is long and the item text is short. \end{description}</pre>
---	--

4-1-34

Size dependent settings

Up to now all examples showed settings that have been fixed for the current list or, in the case of defaults for all lists, a certain type or a certain level, and usually this is sufficient. However, there are ways to make this even more granular by setting defaults depending on the current font size, e.g., to provide different values in footnotes.

A simple way to achieve this is to specify length values in the font-dependent sizes “ex” or “em”. However, if you require exact values at different font sizes, then this is usually not an adequate approach. For this a special syntax is available if you load the package with the package option `sizes`.

After that you can specify length values for keys that contain different values for different font sizes or ranges of font sizes as illustrated in the following example:

```
\usepackage[sizes]{enumitem}
\setlist{labelsep = <-10> 3pt <10-18> 5pt <18-> 10pt }
```

The syntax `<lower-upper>` indicates a range of font sizes with the *lower* size included and the *upper* boundary excluded. The boundaries are given as simple (decimal) numbers; i.e., pt is implicitly assumed. You can leave out one of the values, which then denotes an open range.

A value in front of the first `< . >` is used as a default if nothing else matches. It is however in many cases more readable to specify everything in terms of ranges.

Instead of a range, you can use a single size value such as `<10.95>`, which then has to be matched precisely. Note that this may easily lead to mistakes. For example, \LaTeX 's class `11pt` usually loads fonts at 10.95pt and not at 11pt so that it needs a good understanding of the font setup (see Chapter 9) to be successful.

It is therefore a better approach to use *named* sizes, because then `enumitem` does the matching to real sizes in the background for you. By default the package knows about `tiny`, `script`, `footnote`, `small`, `normal`, `large`, `Large`, `LARGE`, and `huge` matching the corresponding font size commands of \LaTeX . However, for efficiency reasons these are set up only once when `enumitem` is loaded. Thus, if the font sizes are changed afterwards, they have to be remapped with declarations such as

```
\SetEnumitemSize{normal}{\normalsize} \SetEnumitemSize{small}{\small}
```

Rather than looking at the setup from the perspective of single keys providing different values for different font sizes, it is also possible to start from the font size and provide key/value settings for that font size or for a whole font size range.

For this approach the `\setlist` declaration gets extended when the `sizes` package option is used.

<code>\setlist*<i><size or range></i></code>	<code>{key/value list}</code>
<code>\setlist*<i><size or range></i>[level]</code>	<code>{key/value list}</code>
<code>\setlist*<i><size or range></i>[env-name]</code>	<code>{key/value list}</code>
<code>\setlist*<i><size or range></i>[env-name,level]</code>	<code>{key/value list}</code>

All `\setlist` variants discussed on page 263 are supported. The additional *size* or *range* argument in angle brackets can, as the name indicates, be either a single font size (typically a named one) or a size range like those discussed above. For example, in the standard \LaTeX classes special list values are provided for first-level lists only (so in that respect the classes are fairly inconsistent). To mimic that, using the much more readable `enumitem` interface, you would write declarations like the following:

```
\setlist<normal> [1]{topsep = 8pt plus 2pt minus 4pt,
                    itemsep = 4pt plus 2pt minus 2pt,
                    parsep = 4pt plus 2pt minus 2pt }
\setlist<small>   [1]{topsep = 4pt plus 2pt minus 2pt,
                    itemsep = 2pt plus 1pt minus 1pt,
                    parsep = 2pt plus 1pt minus 1pt }
\setlist<footnote> [1]{topsep = 3pt plus 1pt minus 1pt,
                    itemsep = 2pt plus 1pt minus 1pt,
                    parsep = 2pt plus 1pt minus 1pt }
```

No other font size or level is explicitly set up for the standard \LaTeX classes (largely because the way \LaTeX was managing this was basically ad hoc and complicated). As a result if you write

```
text \footnotesize text \Large \begin{itemize} ...
```

you find that standard \LaTeX uses the footnote size setting for the above parameters, which is obviously wrong!

With the `enumitem` interface you can easily do much better either by providing settings for all other standard sizes as well or, probably even better, by using ranges so that any font size receives reasonable values, e.g.,

```
\setlist<normal->      [1]{topsep = 8pt ... % settings for 'normal'
                        % size and above
\setlist<small-normal> [1]{topsep = 4pt ... % lower than 'normal' but
                        % not below 'small'
\setlist<-small>       [1]{topsep = 3pt ... % anything below 'small'
                        % gets 'footnote' values
```

4.1.4 `amsthm` — Providing headed lists

The term “headed lists” describes typographic structures that, like other lists such as quotations, form a discrete part of a section or chapter and whose start and finish, at least, must be clearly distinguished. This is typically done by adjusting the vertical space at the start or adding a rule, and in this case also by including some kind of heading, similar to a sectioning head. The end may also be distinguished by a rule or other symbol, maybe within the last paragraph, and by extra vertical space.

Another property that distinguishes such lists is that they are often numbered, using either an independent system or in conjunction with the sectional numbering.

Perhaps one of the more fruitful sources of such “headed lists” is found in the so-called “theorem-like” environments. These had their origins in mathematical papers and books but are equally applicable to a wide range of expository material, because examples and exercises may take this form whether or not they contain mathematical material.

Because their historical origins lie in the mathematical world, we choose to describe the `amsthm` package [3] by Michael Downes (1958–2003) from the American Mathematical Society (AMS) as a representative of this kind of extension.¹ This package provides an enhanced version of standard \LaTeX ’s `\newtheorem` declaration for specifying theorem-like environments (headed lists).

As in standard \LaTeX , environments declared in this way take an optional argument in which extra text, known as “notes”, can be added to the head of the environment. See the example below for an illustration.

$$\text{\textbackslash newtheorem*}\{name\}\{heading\}$$

The `\newtheorem` declaration has two mandatory arguments. The first is the environment *name* for this element. The second is the *heading* text.

If `\newtheorem*` is used instead of `\newtheorem`, no automatic numbers are generated for the environments. This form of the command can be useful if you have

¹ A possible alternative is the `ntheorem` package by Wolfgang May and Andreas Schedler.

only one lemma or exercise and do not want it to be numbered; it is also used to produce a special named variant of one of the common theorem types.

Lemma 1 (Main). *The L^AT_EX Companion complements any L^AT_EX introduction.*

Mittelbach’s Lemma. *The L^AT_EX Companion contains packages for all important application areas.*

```
\usepackage{amsthm}
\newtheorem{lem}{Lemma} \newtheorem*{ML}{Mittelbach’s Lemma}
\begin{lem}[Main] The \LaTeX{} Companion
  complements any \LaTeX{} introduction.
\end{lem}
\begin{ML} The \LaTeX{} Companion contains
  packages for all important application areas.
\end{ML}
```

4-1-35

In addition to the two mandatory arguments, `\newtheorem` has two mutually exclusive optional arguments. They affect the sequencing and hierarchy of the numbering.

```
\newtheorem{name}[use-counter]{heading}
\newtheorem{name}{heading}[number-within]
```

By default, each kind of theorem-like environment is numbered independently. Thus, if you have lemmas, theorems, and some examples interspersed, they are numbered something like this: Example 1, Lemma 1, Lemma 2, Theorem 1, Example 2, Lemma 3, Theorem 2. If, for example, you want the lemmas and theorems to share the same numbering sequence, then you should indicate the desired relationship as follows:

```
\newtheorem{thm}{Theorem} \newtheorem{lem}[thm]{Lemma}
```

The optional *use-counter* argument (value `thm`) in the second statement means that the `lem` environment should share the `thm` numbering sequence instead of having its own independent sequence.

To have a theorem environment numbered subordinately within a sectional unit — for example, to get exercises numbered Exercise 2.1, Exercise 2.2, and so on, in Section 2 — put the name of the parent counter in square brackets in the final position:

```
\newtheorem{exa}{Exercise}[section]
```

With the optional argument `[section]`, the `exa` counter is reset to 0 whenever the parent counter `section` is incremented.

Proofs and the QED symbol

Of more specifically mathematical interest, the package defines a `proof` environment that automatically adds a “QED symbol” at the end. This environment produces the heading “Proof” with appropriate spacing and punctuation.¹

¹The `proof` environment is primarily intended for short proofs, no more than a page or two in length. Longer proofs are usually better done as a separate `\section` or `\subsection` in your document.

An optional argument of the `proof` environment allows you to substitute a different name for the standard “Proof”. If you want the proof heading to be, for example, “Proof of the Main Theorem”, then put this in your document:

```
\begin{proof}[Proof of the Main Theorem]
...
\end{proof}
```

A “QED symbol” (default \square) is automatically appended at the end of a proof environment. To substitute a different end-of-proof symbol, use `\renewcommand` to redefine the command `\qedsymbol`. For a long proof done as a subsection or section, you can obtain the symbol and the usual amount of preceding space by using the command `\qed` where you want the symbol to appear.

Automatic placement of the QED symbol can be problematic if the last part of a proof environment is, for example, a tabular, a displayed equation, or a list. In that case put a `\qedhere` command at the somewhat earlier place where the QED symbol should appear; it will then be suppressed from appearing at the logical end of the proof environment. If `\qedhere` produces an error message in an equation, try using `\mbox{\qedhere}` instead.

Proof (sufficiency). This proof involves a list

1. because the proof comes in two parts.
2. We need to use `\qedhere`. \square

```
\usepackage{amsthm}
```

```
\begin{proof}[Proof (sufficiency)]
This proof involves a list \begin{enumerate}
\item because the proof comes in two parts.
\item We need to use \verb|\qedhere|. \qedhere
\end{enumerate} \end{proof}
```

4-1-36

Defining the style of headed lists

The specification part of the `amsthm` package supports the notion of a current theorem style, which determines the formatting that is set up for a collection of `\newtheorem` commands.¹

```
\theoremstyle{style}
```

The three theorem styles provided by the package are `plain`, `definition`, and `remark`; they specify different typographical treatments that give the environments a visual emphasis corresponding to their relative importance. The details of this typographical treatment may vary depending on the document class, but typically the `plain` style produces italic body text, and the other two styles produce roman body text.

To create new theorem-like environments in several of these styles, divide your `\newtheorem` declarations into groups and preface each group with the appropriate

¹This concept was first introduced in the now-superseded `theorem` package by the author of this book. It is also used by `ntheorem` so that all three packages provide a similar interface.

`\theoremstyle`. If no `\theoremstyle` command is given, the style used is plain. Some examples follow:

1 Theorem-Like

Definition 1.1. A typographical challenge is a problem that cannot be solved with the help of *The L^AT_EX Companion*.

Theorem 1.2 (Main). *There are no typographical challenges.*

Remark. The proof is left to the reader.

```
\usepackage{amsthm}
\theoremstyle{plain}      \newtheorem{thm}{Theorem}[section]
\theoremstyle{definition} \newtheorem{defn}[thm]{Definition}
\theoremstyle{remark}     \newtheorem*{rem}{Remark}

\section{Theorem-Like}
\begin{defn}
  A typographical challenge is a problem that cannot be
  solved with the help of \emph{The \LaTeX{} Companion}.
\end{defn}
\begin{thm}[Main]
  There are no typographical challenges.\end{thm}
\begin{rem}The proof is left to the reader.\end{rem}
```

4-1-37

Note that the fairly obvious choice of “def” for the name of a “Definition” environment does not work, because it conflicts with the existing low-level T_EX command `\def`.

Number swapping

A fairly common style variation for theorem heads is to have the theorem number on the left, at the beginning of the heading, instead of on the right. As this variation is usually applied across the board regardless of individual `\theoremstyle` changes, swapping numbers is done by placing a `\swapnumbers` declaration at the beginning of the list of `\newtheorem` statements that should be affected.

More extensive customization capabilities are provided by the package through the `\newtheoremstyle` declaration and through a mechanism for using package options to load custom theorem style definitions. For details consult the package documentation [3].

4.1.5 thmtools — Advanced theorem declarations

The `thmtools` by Ulrich Schwarz, now maintained by Yukai Chou, provides a key/value-based frontend for either `amsthm` or `ntheorem` abstracting from the syntax peculiarities of either package. In addition it provides some advanced features such as “repeated theorems” and a “list of theorems” facility.

```
\declaretheorem[key/value list]{name}
```

With `thmtools` you use `\declaretheorem` instead of `\newtheorem` to declare your own theorem-like environments. This declaration takes a single mandatory argument, which is the *name* of the newly declared environment. Everything else is handled through defaults or through the *key/value list*.

The key *style* specifies the theorem style, and by default the package knows the `amsthm` styles `plain` (default), `definition`, and `remark`. To specify a heading text use *title* or alternatively *heading* or *name* (all have the same meaning, so choose what you remember best). The default is to use the environment name with the first letter uppercased.

If different environments should share the same numbering, you can specify this through `sharenumber` or alternatively through `sibling` or `numberlike`.

Numbering is controlled through the `numbered` key, which accepts `yes` (default), `no`, or `unless_unique`. The latter omits the number if the environment is used only once but requires an additional \LaTeX run to find this out. This can be useful if you provide longer and shorter versions of some paper where some material is dropped.

If you want the numbers to be reset by section or chapter (or some other counter), you can specify this with `numberwithin`, with `within`, or with `parent` giving the counter name as the value.

Below is a repetition of Example 4-1-37 on page 284 using `thmtools` for declaring the environments (loading `amsthm` is still required):

1 Theorem-Like

Definition 1.1. A typographical challenge is a problem that cannot be solved with the help of *The \LaTeX Companion*.

Theorem 1.2 (Main). *There are no typographical challenges.*

Remark. The proof is left to the reader.

```
\usepackage{amsthm,thmtools}
\declaretheorem[title=Theorem,numberwithin=section]{thm}
\declaretheorem[style=definition,title=Definition,
sharenumber=thm]{defn}
\declaretheorem[style=remark,title=Remark,numbered=no]{rem}
\section{Theorem-Like}
\begin{defn}
  A typographical challenge is a problem that cannot be
  solved with the help of \emph{The \LaTeX{} Companion}.
\end{defn}
\begin{thm}[Main]
  There are no typographical challenges. \end{thm}
\begin{rem} The proof is left to the reader. \end{rem}
```

4-1-38

Up until now the declarations are only a bit more verbose (and thus perhaps easier to understand) but have no immediate advantage. This changes when we add further keys into the mix or use a value like `unless_unique` for the `numbered` key.

If you like to work with `\cref` from `cleveref`, then there is the problem that you have to tell this package what prefixes to use when referring to your environments because it would be clueless without help. This help is provided through the keys `refname` and `Refname`. They both expect one or two strings: a singular and a plural form separated by a comma (or one for both) with the environment name used as a default. `Refname` denotes the string(s) used at the beginning of a sentence. If you only provide `Refname`, then this is also used for `refname` by lowercasing the values.

*Support for cleveref
and similar
packages*

Claim 1. *Many typographical problems are difficult to solve.*

Claim 2 (Main). *But not when using the \LaTeX Companion.*

“Postulates 1 and 2” or “postulate 1 and postulate 2” or “postulates 1 and 2” see?

```
\usepackage{amsthm,thmtools,cleveref}
\declaretheorem[title=Claim,
Refname={Postulate,Postulates}]{thm}
\begin{thm}\label{thm1} Many typographical
  problems are difficult to solve. \end{thm}
\begin{thm}[Main]\label{thm2}
  But not when using the \LaTeX{} Companion. \end{thm}
“\Cref{thm1,thm2}” or “\cref{thm1} and \cref{thm2}”
or “\cref{thm1,thm2}” see?
```

4-1-39

If you would like some fancier formatting of your theorem-like environment, you can try the `shaded`, `thmbox`, or `mdframed` keys. These keys implement extensions by interfacing to other packages, in this case `shadedthm` by Jim Hefferon, `thmbox` by Emmanuel Beffara, and `mdframed` by Marco Daniel. For values to the keys you can specify a list of subkeys that are then simply passed to the other package for processing.

The `shaded` key supports the following subkeys: `bgcolor`, `rulecolor`, `rulewidth`, `textwidth`, `padding`, and `leftmargin`.

All have default values; for example, `bgcolor` is automatically set to some light gray. Thus, you have to specify only those that you want to change. Below we add some padding to enlarge the shaded area and move it slightly into the left margin. For the action environment, we add a border and change the `bgcolor` to white.

```
\usepackage{amsthm,thmtools,xcolor}
\declaretheorem[style=remark,
    shaded={padding=5pt,leftmargin=-10pt,
            textwidth=.8\columnwidth}
]{remark}
\declaretheorem[sibling=remark,
    shaded={rulecolor=blue,rulewidth=2pt,
            bgcolor=white}
]{action}

\noindent Text to show the left margin.
\begin{remark}
    We number remarks together with actions
    but we use a gray background for them.
\end{remark}
\begin{action}[Background]
    Background color needs resetting!
\end{action}
```

Text to show the left margin.

Remark 1. We number remarks together with actions but we use a gray background for them.

Action 2 (Background). *Background color needs resetting!*

4-1-40

The `thmbox` key implements the formats provided separately by the `thmbox` package and accepts the values L, M, and S. By default the environment text may break across pages; if you do not like that, specify `nocut` as a subkey.

If you want to change the body font, you can specify it through the subkey `bodystyle` as we did in the `remark` below. Note the use of `\noindent` to suppress a paragraph indentation inside the body.

The overall indentation of the environment body from the left is defined through `leftmargin` and defaults to `\parindent` and from the right through `rightmargin` (default 0pt). The somewhat strange value of 4.6pt that we used below makes the rules line up perfectly. The reason is that the rule has a default width of 0.6pt (key `thickness`) and the space from the frame to the text (key `hskip`) a default of 0.4em, which amounts to 4pt in this book. Thus, the sum of both is what we need to indent to achieve a lineup.

The rule below the heading can be suppressed with `nounderline`, which we did for the `lemma` environment. There are a few other adjustment possibilities if you use

the thmbox package on its own; for those refer to the package documentation. Note that most of the customization keys of thmtools discussed below have no effect as control is more or less fully passed to the external package.

Theorem 1 (Style L + left shift)

There are no typographical challenges.

Lemma 1 (Style M + no underline)

*All major application areas are discussed in the *L^AT_EX Companion*.*

Remark 1 (Style S + font settings)

Unfortunately this means the book has a large number of pages.

4-1-41

```
\usepackage{amsthm,thmtools}
\declaretheorem[thmbox={L,leftmargin=4.6pt}]{theorem}
\declaretheorem[thmbox={M,nounderline}]{lemma}
\declaretheorem[thmbox={S,bodystyle=\normalfont
\small\noindent}]{remark}

\begin{theorem}[Style L + left shift]
  There are no typographical challenges.\end{theorem}
\begin{lemma}[Style M + no underline]
  All major application areas are discussed in
  the \LaTeX{} Companion. \end{lemma}
\begin{remark}[Style S + font settings]
  Unfortunately this means the book has a large
  number of pages. \end{remark}
```

To generate a list of theorem-like environments thmtools offers the command `\listoftheorems`. It supports an optional argument in which you can restrict which environments are listed. For example, by specifying `ignoreall` followed by `show` you can restrict the listing to all environment types enumerated in the value to `show`.

*Selectively listing
theorem-like
environments*

Instead of `show`, you can use `onlynamed` in which case this is further restricted to those types but shows only those instances with an optional argument in the document body (e.g., named theorems). Alternatively, you can use `onlynamed` on its own without a value, which results in showing all types but only the environments that have an explicit name in the document.

By using `\listoftheorems` several times with different settings, you can produce different lists for different types, but in that case you probably want to change the generated heading each time. The default title is “List of Theorems”, stored in the command `\listtheoremname`. On individual invocations you can overwrite it with the title key as in the next example:

Definitions and Theorems

1	Definition	6
2	Theorem (Main)	6

Definition 1. A typographical challenge is a problem that cannot be solved with the help of *The L^AT_EX Companion*.

Theorem 2 (Main). *There are no typographical challenges.*

4-1-42

Remark 1. The proof is left to the reader.

```
\usepackage{amsthm,thmtools}
\declaretheorem[title=Theorem]{thm}
\declaretheorem[style=definition,title=Definition,
sharenumber=thm]{defn}
\declaretheorem[style=remark,title=Remark]{rem}
\listoftheorems[ignoreall,show={thm,defn},
title=Definitions and Theorems]

\begin{defn}
  A typographical challenge is a problem that cannot be
  solved with the help of \emph{The \LaTeX{} Companion}.
\end{defn}
\begin{thm}[Main]
  There are no typographical challenges. \end{thm}
\begin{rem} The proof is left to the reader. \end{rem}
```

*Providing your own
layout styles*

If the predefined layout styles are not sufficient, thmtools offers a way to define additional ones using `\declaretheoremstyle`, which is a key/value frontend to `\newtheoremstyle` from `amsthm` or the corresponding facility of `ntheorem` if that package is used as a backend.

```
\declaretheoremstyle[options]{style-name}
```

As an example we define the style `breakstyle` that outdents the title by 12 points and starts the theorem body on a new line. Note that we do not use the `title` as part of the style definition (which would be possible) but set it when declaring the `exa` environment. This allows us to define other environments in the same style but with a different heading.

Exercise 1 (Most Active Author):

Find the author responsible for the largest number of packages described in The \LaTeX Companion 3rd edition.

```
\usepackage{amsthm,thmtools}
\declaretheoremstyle[spaceabove=9pt, spacebelow=9pt,
  headindent=-12pt, headfont=\sffamily\bfseries,
  headpunct=:, bodyfont=\itshape, break]{breakstyle}
\declaretheorem[style=breakstyle,title=Exercise]{exa}
\begin{exa}[Most Active Author]
  Find the author responsible for the largest number of
  packages described in The  $\LaTeX$  Companion 3rd edition.
\end{exa}
```

4-1-43

In the following example we provide a “Theorem” variation in which the whole theorem heading has to be supplied as an optional note, such as for citing theorems from other sources. For good measure we also add a `qed` symbol to show that it is equally easy to provide special “proof” environments, which is sometimes necessary.

Theorem 3.16 in [89]. *By focusing on small details, it is possible to understand the deeper significance of a passage.* □

```
\usepackage{amsthm,thmtools}
\declaretheoremstyle[spaceabove=3pt, spacebelow=3pt,
  headindent=\parindent, headpunct=., headformat=\NOTE,
  notebraces={}{}, notefont=\bfseries, bodyfont=\itshape,
  numbered=no, qed=\qedsymbol]{citing}
\declaretheorem[style=citing]{varthm}
\begin{varthm}[Theorem 3.16 in \cite{Knuth90}]
  By focusing on small details, it is possible to
  understand the deeper significance of a passage.
\end{varthm}
```

4-1-44

The above examples show many, but not all, of the possible keys that can be used. If you want to customize other aspects of a theorem style, check the package documentation for further possibilities.

If the functionality and layout possibilities offered by `amsthm` or `thmtools` are not sufficient for your needs, it might be worth looking at what is offered by the `tcolorbox` package (Section 8.4). Its package documentation [186] offers a whole section on theorem-like structures.

4.1.6 tasks — Making horizontally oriented lists

There is one other type of list that is fairly often asked for: a list where the items are horizontally placed into columns instead of the usual vertical direction. If you need that kind of layout, try the `tasks` package by Clemens Niederberger.

The package defines the environment `tasks`, and within this environment items are started using the command `\task` (in contrast to other lists that use `\item`). Due to the chosen implementation there are three restrictions one has to be aware of:

- it is not possible to nest the environment; however, you can combine it with other types of lists if necessary;
- breaks can happen only between rows of items but not inside of items;
- verbatim material cannot be used; instead, you have to resort to tricks discussed in Section 4.2 if you need more than `\texttt`.

If neither is a problem, you get a good solution for horizontally aligned lists.

```
\begin{tasks}[key/value list] (columns)    task data    \end{tasks}
```

The package uses a somewhat unusual syntax by providing optional arguments surrounded by parentheses as well as by brackets. The obvious advantage is that this enables you to leave out the *key/value list* (which customizes the layout of the task list) and provide only the number of *columns* in parentheses.

If you specify neither of the optional arguments, you get a single-column list that is similar to an `enumerate` but uses alphabetic labels for the items. Below is an example with two columns:

a) Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. !!! Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi.	b) Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. c) Quisque ullamcorper place- rat ipsum. Cras nibh.	<pre>\usepackage{lipsum,tasks} \begin{tasks}(2) \task \lipsum[1][1] \task \lipsum[1][2] \task[!!!] \lipsum[2][1] \task \lipsum*[4][1-2] \end{tasks}</pre>
--	--	---

4-1-45

As shown in the previous example, the `\task` command can take an optional argument that specifies an explicit *label* instead of the autogenerated one. In that case you have to provide the necessary formatting yourself.

Sometimes it is necessary for items to span one or more columns, and for this, `\task` offers a star form and even an exclamation mark form.

```
\task[label] \task*(columns)[label] \task![label] \startnewitemline
```

The star form of the command spans all remaining columns or, if optionally a number of *columns* is specified, that number of columns. In contrast, the exclamation mark form first starts a new row and then spans all columns. Another way to start a new row is to use `\startnewitemline`. If you ask for more columns than remain available,

your request is silently ignored, and only the available columns are used. The next example shows these variants in action. Note especially the manually constructed task label f)!. It uses the task counter which needs to be incremented *after* the `\task` command to apply:

a) One	b) two	c) Three	<code>\usepackage{tasks}</code>
?) Go	d)	e)	<code>\begin{tasks}(4)</code>
f)! Specially constructed label			<code>\task One \task two \task Three</code>
g) Spanning 2 columns	h) No		<code>\startnewitemline \task[?)] Go</code>
	col-		<code>\task \dotfill \task* \dotfill</code>
	umn		<code>\task! [\alph{task})!]</code>
	span		<code>\stepcounter{task}</code>
i) Another task spanning all columns (therefore column 4 above stays empty)			<code>\task* (2) Spanning 2 columns</code>
			<code>\task No column span</code>
			<code>\task! Another task spanning all columns</code>
			<code>(therefore column 4 above stays empty)</code>
			<code>\end{tasks}</code>

4-1-46

To customize the task lists the environment has an optional *key/value list* argument in which you can specify key/value pairs. Alternatively, or to set general defaults, you can use these keys in a `\settasks` declaration, which can be used anywhere. We give here only a quick overview about some of the available possibilities; if you want to adjust something that is not mentioned, check the package documentation [158] because there is a good chance that some key exists that provides what you are looking for.

The general style of the task list can be changed with the `style` key, which accepts the values `alphabetize` (default), `itemize`, and `enumerate`. The last two generate lists with labels that are modeled after `itemize` and `enumerate` exhibited in the next example.

The environment adds a vertical skip specified by `before-skip` before and one by `after-skip` after unless they are zero (which they are by default). This is in addition to whatever vertical separation is added by a normal list environment. Thus, to shorten the space before and after the list, you have to set the keys to a negative value as done in Example 4-1-49 on page 292. Between tasks it adds `after-item-skip` (1ex plus 1ex minus 1ex) plus the value of `\parsep`, which it takes from the setup of general lists. Thus, to get no extra separations between tasks you have to apply a negative correction as we did in the next example.

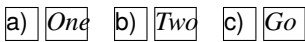

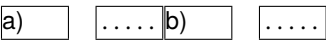
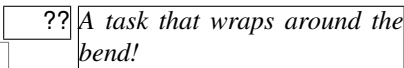
• One	• two	!! Go	<code>\usepackage{tasks}</code>
•	•		<code>\begin{tasks}[style=itemize,after-item-skip=-\parsep](3)</code>
			<code>\task One \task two \task[!)] Go</code>
			<code>\task \dotfill \task* \dotfill</code>
			<code>\end{tasks}</code>
1. Zero	2. isn't	3. enough	<code>\begin{tasks}[style=enumerate,after-item-skip=0pt](3)</code>
4. to remove the separation!			<code>\task Zero \task isn't \task enough</code>
			<code>\task! to remove the separation!</code>
			<code>\end{tasks}</code>

4-1-47

Instead of, or in addition to, using the `style` key, it is possible to adjust several aspects of the label generation with the keys `label-format` (accepting declarations such as font or color settings), `label-width` (width of the label box), `label-align` (alignment with the box, accepting `left`, `center`, and `right`), and `label-offset` (the separation between the label box and start of the task text, i.e., what is called `\labelsep` elsewhere).

The layout of the task text is controlled through `item-format` (again expecting declarations), and its indentation from the outer left margin or the previous task column is `item-indent`. Thus, you normally want that big enough to hold the sum of `label-width` and `label-offset`. There is also `column-sep`, which is added between columns in addition to the `item-indent`, allowing you to adjust the inner gaps compared to what is used at the left margin.

There is also the Boolean key `debug` that draws frames around label and task texts to show how they are positioned. We make use of this in the next example to better visualize the results of different key settings:

	<code>\usepackage{tasks} \settasks{debug}</code>
Show the text margin ...	<code>\settasks{label-format=\sffamily,item-format=\itshape}</code>
	<code>\noindent Show the text margin \ldots</code>
	<code>\begin{tasks}(3) \task One \task Two \task Go \end{tasks}</code>
	<code>\settasks{item-indent=3pc,label-width=2pc}</code>
	<code>\begin{tasks}[label-align=center,column-sep=1em](2)</code>
	<code>\task One \task Two \end{tasks}</code>
	<code>\begin{tasks}[label-offset=0.9pc](2)</code>
	<code>\task \dotfill \task \dotfill \end{tasks}</code>
	<code>\begin{tasks}[item-indent=0pt,label-align=right](2)</code>
	<code>\task!{??} A task that wraps around the bend! \end{tasks}</code>

4-1-48

If `item-indent` is smaller than `label-width` as in the last row of the previous example, it protrudes to the left (possibly overwriting text from a previous column). Also note how `label-align` shifts the symbol within the label box.

To adjust the auto-numbering of the label you can use the key `label`. Its syntax is modeled after the way `enumitem` defines its labels; i.e., a `*` represents the task counter so that you can specify, for example, `\roman*` to produce roman numerals. Of course, a fixed string or a symbol can also be set with this key. The current task label is also available within the task through the command `\tasklabel`. If you adjust the label format using `label`, you may additionally adjust the result of any cross-reference to the task (via `\label` and `\ref`). This can be done with the `ref` key, which accepts the same syntax as the `label` key.

*Adjusting the
auto-numbering*

*Manage
cross-references*

The default counter that is used is named `task`, but with the key `counter` you can define a different counter to be used instead. This is useful if you define several different task environments (see below) that should use their own counters. By default each environment restarts the counter, but if you use the Boolean key `resume`, it continues from where it was last time. Doing that within `\settasks` means this happens with all environments; doing it at the environment level only continues that environment. Canceling the `resume` is possible too, by supplying the value `false`,

*Counter starts and
restarts*

again either locally or through `\settasks` for all future environments. An alternative is to use the `key start` to supply the starting value as an integer.

		<code>\usepackage{tasks} \settasks{resume,label=\arabic*/}</code>	
		<code>\settasks{before-skip=-9pt,after-skip=-9pt} % shorten space</code>	
1/ One	2/ Two	<code>\begin{tasks}(2) \task One \task Two \end{tasks}</code>	
3/ Three	!! Go	<code>\begin{tasks}(2) \task Three \task[!!] Go \end{tasks}</code>	
1/ Eins	2/ Zwei	<code>\begin{tasks}[resume=false,label-align=right](3)</code>	
	? Go	<code>\task Eins \task Zwei \task[?] Go \end{tasks}</code>	
▷ Make	▷ labels like ‘▷’	<code>\begin{tasks}[label=\$\triangleright\$,label-align=center](3)</code>	
static		<code>\task Make static \task* labels like ‘\tasklabel’\end{tasks}</code>	4-1-49

So far we have used the default `tasks` environment. However, the package also allows defining new environments that act in the same way but use their own defaults.

`\NewTasksEnvironment[key/value list]{env-name}[task-cmd](columns)`

In the *key/value list* argument you can specify any of the above key/value pairs that are admissible within `\settasks`. The mandatory *env-name* expects the name of the environment to be defined.¹ In the optional *task-cmd* argument you can say which command should introduce a new task. If you omit it, then `\task` is used. Finally, you can set the default number of *columns*. Again, this is optional, but to distinguish it from the other optional arguments it used parentheses as argument delimiters.

Below we make use of this declaration by providing a task environment for multiple choice questions using the default `style` but providing a square as the label. We also make the item texts ragged by using a suitable value for `item-format`. It is still possible to change or overwrite such defaults on the environment level, which we prove by using `after-skip` so that the space after the environment differs from the space before.

		<code>\usepackage{amssymb,tasks}</code>	
		<code>\NewTasksEnvironment[label=\$\square\$,</code>	
		<code>item-format=\raggedright]{multiq}{\quest}(2)</code>	
Text before the environment ...		Text before the environment \ldots	
<input type="checkbox"/> This?	<input type="checkbox"/> Or that?	<code>\begin{multiq}[after-skip=2ex]</code>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Or this one?	<input type="checkbox"/> Or perhaps that	<code>\quest This? \quest Or that? \quest Or this one?</code>	
	one after all?	<code>\quest Or perhaps that one after all?</code>	
		<code>\end{multiq}</code>	
Text after the environment to show the skip.		Text after the environment to show the skip.	4-1-50

4.1.7 typed-checklist — Developing and maintaining checklists

For many projects it is helpful to clarify what artifacts are to be produced or modified, what the goals are, what tasks are needed, and what milestones should be reached

¹There also exists `\RenewTasksEnvironment` with the same syntax in case you want to modify a previously defined task environment.

and when. Getting an overview like this often leads to checklists that then support you during the project by helping you to keep track of status, open tasks, approaching or missed milestones, etc.

The `typed-checklist` package by Richard Grewe is a flexible tool that enables you to produce and maintain checklists for various occasions. Below is a short teaser:

	<code>\usepackage{typed-checklist}</code>
	<code>\begin{CheckList}{Goal}</code>
	<code>\Goal{achieved}{I have defined my goals and tasks}</code>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> I have defined my goals and tasks	<code>\Goal{open}{Our home is renovated}</code>
<input type="checkbox"/> Our home is renovated	<code>\begin{CheckList}{Task}</code>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> check status of rooms	<code>\Task{done}{check status of rooms}</code>
<input type="checkbox"/> decide color of paint	<code>\Task{started}{decide color of paint}</code>
<input type="checkbox"/> buy paint	<code>\Task{open}{buy paint}</code>
<input type="checkbox"/> paint the rooms	<code>\Task{open}{paint the rooms}</code>
	<code>\end{CheckList}</code>
	<code>\Goal{open}{I can play bass well}</code>
	<code>\end{CheckList}</code>

4-1-51

Out of the box it comes with four types of checklists: `Goal`, `Task`, `Milestone`, and `Artifact`. These checklists can be nested; e.g., your project may have different goals, each of which needs a number of tasks to be achieved. In larger projects there may be milestones that have goals that are reached by completing tasks. Or larger tasks may have subtasks to provide a clearer structure. Of course, other approaches are possible too: it really depends on the way you think about your project.

```
\begin{CheckList}[key/value list]{type}  check-items  \end{CheckList}
```

All checklists are built with the help of a single environment that takes the checklist *type* as its mandatory argument.

In the optional *key/value list* argument to the environment you can adjust the layout to be used. The default value is `list`, which is what we have seen so far. Alternatives are `hidden`, which hides the items, and `table`, which displays the goals, tasks, milestones, or artifacts in a tabular form with additional information. Note, however, that `table` is possible only if the `CheckList` is a leaf-list, i.e., has no further checklists embedded inside.

```
\Goal[key/value list]{status}{description} \Task... \Milestone... \Artifact...
```

The *check-items* body of the `CheckList` environment consists of commands having the name of the *type*, e.g., `\Task`, `\Goal`, etc., all with the same syntax. They have a *status* (whose allowed values depend on the *type*) and a *description* that explains what this item is all about.

For example, the *status* for `\Goal` can be one of the following: `open` (not achieved but pursued), `unclear` (listed but needs further clarification), `dropped` (was a goal once, but is no longer pursued), or `achieved` (goal has been reached, i.e., goal






















Goals	Tasks	Milestones	Artifacts	
 open	 open	 open	 missing	
 unclear	 unclear	 achieved	 unclear	
 dropped	 dropped		 dropped	
 achieved	 started		 incomplete	
	 done		 available	4-1-52


Table 4.3: Status values for different types of checklists

statement is now true). Similar but, depending on the type, differently named status values exist for the other types. The default ones are listed in Table 4.3.

In the optional *key/value list* argument to the command, you can specify some additional information, i.e., who is responsible, what is the deadline (by default the value is expected in the format¹ *dd.mm.yyyy*), and a label that enables you to refer to the item elsewhere using `\ref`. The input format for deadlines can be adjusted with `input-dates`, which allows the values *d.m.y* (default), *m/d/y*, or *y-m-d*. The output format is specified through the key `output-dates` and accepts the same values. If not specified, it uses the same format as the input format. In the next example we use European input and US output format.

		<code>\usepackage{typed-checklist}</code>	
		<code>\begin{CheckList}[output-dates=m/d/y]{Goal}</code>	
Goal I	 Our home is renovated	<code>\Goal[label=home]{open}</code>	
	 check rooms 8/1/2018	<code>{Our home is renovated}</code>	
Task II	 decide color of paint	<code>\begin{CheckList}{Task}</code>	
	..... (Christel) 9/1/2018	<code>\Task[deadline=1.8.2018]{done}{check rooms}</code>	
	 buy paint	<code>\Task[label=decide,who=Christel,</code>	
	..... (Frank)	<code>deadline=1.9.2018]{started}</code>	
	 paint the rooms	<code>{decide color of paint}</code>	
	..... (?)	<code>\Task[who=Frank]{open}{buy paint}</code>	
		<code>\Task[who=?]{open}{paint the rooms}</code>	
	 I can play bass well	<code>\end{CheckList}</code>	
	..... (Frank) 1/1/2025	<code>\Goal[who=Frank,deadline=1.1.2025]{open}</code>	
		<code>{I can play bass well}</code>	
	Remember that Task II is critical for achieving Goal I.	<code>\end{CheckList}</code>	
		Remember that <code>\ref{decide}</code> is critical for achieving <code>\ref{home}</code> .	4-1-53

For correct coloring years need 4 digits



Deadlines in the past appear as green if the entry is in a completed state; otherwise, they appear in red (unfortunately, in the book both colors come out as different shades of gray, so this is difficult to see). If the deadline is still in the future or if it is not in numerical format, it is printed in black. Numerical format can be enforced by specifying the Boolean key `strict-dates`. Note that you need to give the year as a

¹This is a clear indication that the package origin is Europe — this can be adjusted.

four-digit number; otherwise, the colors come out wrong! Entries that have a label attached show an item name and number in the margin. This information is printed by a `\ref` command referring to the label.

For people who do not like the typing involved, `typed-checklist` offers an interface to the `asciilist` package by the same author, which makes the input much more concise. I would suggest, however, using this only on simple checklists. The input for each item then looks like this:

$\langle symbol \rangle \square status [key/value list] : \square description$

You are free to choose the $\langle symbol \rangle$ to be used, but the whole entry has to fit on a single line to work (if necessary, you need to use a `%` to mask the line break). Another restriction is that you have to use spaces in the exact places as indicated (but not in others, e.g., none after *status*)—in other words the input is a bit delicate. The next example shows the feature in action. Note the use of the package option `withAsciilist`. It is needed to enable the interface. Note the nonnumerical deadline value in one of the entries. With `strict-dates` this would result in an error message.

		<code>\usepackage[withAsciilist]{typed-checklist}</code>
		<code>\CheckListSet{input-dates=y-m-d,</code>
		<code>output-dates=m/d/y}</code>
	$\textcircled{?}$ Packages missing?	<code>\begin{AsciiList}[GoalList,TaskList]{-,*}</code>
	$\textcircled{\checkmark}$ Chapter 2 done	<code>- unclear[deadline=2019-1-1]: Packages missing?</code>
	$\textcircled{\bigcirc}$ Chapter 3 done	<code>- achieved[deadline=2017-8-1]: Chapter 2 done</code>
	.....(Frank) 1/1/2019	<code>- open[who=Frank,deadline=2019-1-1]:%</code>
Task 1	$\textcircled{\checkmark}$ Report issues	<code>Chapter 3 done</code>
	.....(Frank)	<code>* done[who=Frank,label=task]: Report issues</code>
	$\textcircled{\text{img}}$ Correct issues	<code>* started[who=Richard,deadline=yesterday]: %</code>
	from Task 1	<code>Correct issues from \ref{task}</code>
	.....(Richard) yesterday	<code>\end{AsciiList}</code>

4-1-54

Defaults that should apply to all checklists can be set using `\CheckListSet` instead of explicitly setting them in the optional argument of each `CheckList` environment. If `AsciiList` is used, this is the best way because specifying key/value pairs for that environment requires a somewhat unconventional syntax.

The four default checklist types already offer you a lot of flexibility to manage your checklists. However, if you feel you need additional *types* or if you are not satisfied with the *status* values available for a certain type, it is easy to augment the existing checklists or provide new ones.

`\CheckListAddType{type}{base symbol}`
`\CheckListAddStatus{type}{status}{closed?}{overlay symbol}`

With `\CheckListAddType` you declare a new checklist *type* and decide which *base symbol* (or code in general) should be used to identify it. This symbol is used as the background symbol with a *status* symbol overlaying it in the list.

With `\CheckListAddStatus` you define a *status* for a certain *type*. If this *status* is used, the *overlay symbol* is printed on top of the *base symbol* for the *type*. The *closed?* argument, which can be either `true` or `false`, decides whether or not a deadline in the past is marked as a problem. If set to `true`, deadlines are ignored for the entry.

We give an example below that also shows the result of specifying `table` as the layout key value. By default the package uses the `xltabular` package for producing the tables. With the help of the package option `tablepkg` one can request a different table package; e.g., below we used `tabularx`. Other supported values are `ltablex` and `xltabular` (the default). For additional information on customization (also on providing further layout options) consult the package documentation.

```
\usepackage[tablepkg=tabularx]{typed-checklist}
\CheckListAddType{feature}{\small\Square}
\CheckListAddStatus{feature}{n}{false}{} % new
\CheckListAddStatus{feature}{d}{true}{\small\XSolid} % dropped/
                                                    % declined
\CheckListAddStatus{feature}{e}{false}
    {\raisebox{0.4ex}{\footnotesize e}} % evaluated
\CheckListAddStatus{feature}{s}{false}
    {\kern 1pt\small\ArrowBoldRightStrobe} % started
\CheckListAddStatus{feature}{f}{true}{\kern 2pt\Checkmark} % finished
```

Status	Description	Who	Deadline
<input type="checkbox"/>	A new feature request		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Feature evaluated		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	(feature i) dropped/declined		1.1.2022
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	started	Frank	yesterday
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	finished/implemented		

```
\begin{CheckList}[layout=table]{feature}
\feature{n}{A new feature request}
\feature{e}{Feature evaluated}
\feature[label=foo,deadline=1.1.2022]
    {d}{dropped/declined}
\feature[who=Frank,deadline=yesterday]
    {s}{started}
\feature{f}{finished/implemented}
\end{CheckList}
```

4-1-55

As an additional feature the package also offers filtering of checklists, for example, to print only tasks that are not closed or dropped. Consult the package documentation if you are interested in this aspect.

4.2 Simulating typed text

It is often necessary to display information verbatim — that is, “as entered at the terminal”. This ability is provided by the standard \LaTeX environment `verbatim`. However, to guide the reader it might be useful to highlight certain textual strings in a particular way, such as by numbering the lines. Over time a number of packages have appeared that address one or the other extra feature — unfortunately, each with its own syntax. Note that, just like the basic `\verb` and the `verbatim` environment,

they all assume that the input is restricted to ASCII; anything else only works in a few circumstances, unless otherwise noted.

In this section we first review a few such smaller packages offering solutions to specific problems. We then concentrate on the package `fancyvrb` written by Timothy Van Zandt, which combines all such features and many more under the roof of a single, highly customizable package. This coverage is followed by a discussion of the `listings` package, which provides a versatile environment in which to prettyprint computer listings for a large number of computer languages.

4.2.1 Displaying spaces in verbatim material

When typesetting material verbatim, it is sometimes necessary to show the exact number of spaces used, and for this \LaTeX offers `\verb*` and `verbatim*`. They show spaces as “`_`”, but they were originally coded under the assumption that the position of the space character (i.e., ASCII 32) in a typewriter font contains such a visible space glyph. This is correct for $\text{pdf}\text{\LaTeX}$ with the most used font encodings OT1 and T1.

Unicode engines

However, this unfortunately does not work for Unicode engines using the TU encoding, because the space character slot (ASCII 32) then usually contains a real (normal) space, which has the effect that `\verb*` produces the same results as `\verb`.

In 2018 the `\verb*` code was therefore changed to always use the newly introduced command `\verbvisiblespace` when producing the visible space character, and this command gets appropriate definitions for use with the different engines. With $\text{pdf}\text{\LaTeX}$ it simply uses `\asciispace`, which is a posh name for “select character 32 in the current font”, but with Unicode engines the default definition is

```
\DeclareRobustCommand\verbvisiblespace
{\leavevmode{\usefont{OT1}{cmtt}{m}{n}\asciispace}}
```

which uses the visible space from the font Computer Modern Typewriter, regardless of the currently chosen typewriter font. Internally the code ensures that the character used has exactly the same width as the other characters in the current (monospaced) font; thus, for example, code displays line up properly.

It is possible to redefine this command to select your own character, for example, the “official” visible space character of the current font. This may look like the natural default, but it was not chosen as the \LaTeX default, because many fonts just do not have that Unicode character, or they have one with a strange shape. Here is an example where it would work:

```
\usepackage{fontspec} \setmonofont{AnonymousPro}
\texttt{Typewriter with\textvisiblespace space}.\par
\verb=\verb*: \verb*=verbatim with spaces=. \par
\DeclareRobustCommand\verbvisiblespace
{\textvisiblespace} % now use the Unicode character
\verb*: verbatim_ with _ spaces. But now: \verb*=verbatim with spaces=.
```

4-2-1

4.2.2 Simple verbatim extensions

The package `alltt` (by Leslie Lamport) defines the `alltt` environment. It acts like a verbatim environment except that the backslash “\” and braces “{” and “}” retain their usual meanings. Thus, other commands and environments can appear inside an `alltt` environment. A similar functionality is provided by the `fancyvrb` environment `key commandchars` (see page 313).

One can have font changes, like *emphasized text* or other font faces. Line breaks and spaces are honored, but space only on top level and not always in arguments (see above)!

```
\usepackage{alltt}
\begin{alltt}
  One can have font changes, like
  \emph{emphasized text} or \textsf{other
    font faces}. Line breaks and
    spaces are honored, but space only
    on top level and not always in
    arguments (see above)!
```

Some special characters: # \$ % ^ & ~ _ Some special characters: # \$ % ^ & ~ _
`\end{alltt}`

4-2-2

`shortvrb` — Streamlining the verbatim input

In documents where a lot of `\verb` commands are needed the source soon becomes difficult to read. For this reason the `doc` package, described in Chapter 17, introduces a shorthand mechanism that lets you use a special character to denote the start and stop of verbatim text, without having to repeatedly write `\verb` in front of it. This feature is also available in a stand-alone package called `shortvrb`.

The argument to `\MakeShortVerb` or `\DeleteShortVerb` is the character you wish to install or deinstall as a shorthand. If it already has a special meaning to \LaTeX , you have to precede it with a backslash, and to be on the safe side you can always do that. Here is an example that adds and removes the shorthand again:

The use of `\MakeShortVerb` can make sources much more readable.

And with a `\DeleteShortVerb{\|}` declaration we can return the ‘|’ character back to normal. A one-off usage, e.g., ‘+’ as an ordinary character is also possible.

```
\usepackage{shortvrb}
\MakeShortVerb{\|}

The use of |\MakeShortVerb| can make sources
much more readable.

\DeleteShortVerb{\|}\MakeShortVerb{\|}
And with a +\DeleteShortVerb{\|}+ declaration
we can return the ‘|’ character back to normal.
A one-off usage, e.g., ‘\string+’ as an ordinary
character is also possible.
```

4-2-3

With `fancyvrb` the same functionality is provided, unfortunately using a slightly different syntax (see page 321).

Because the chosen shorthand character cannot appear in ordinary text, you have to be careful which character or characters you select. Of course, you can remove its

special meaning again, but for a one-off it is probably easier to precede it with the command `\string` as we did in the previous example.

The variant form, `\MakeShortVerb*`, implements the same shorthand mechanism for the `\verb*` command. This is shown in the next example:

<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">4-2-4</div> <p>Instead of <code>\verb*|</code> | we can now write <code>+ +</code> to get <code>␣</code>.</p>	<pre style="color: #0070C0;">\usepackage{shortvrb} \MakeShortVerb*{\+}</pre> <p>Instead of <code>\verb/\verb*|</code> | / we can now write <code>\verb/+ +/</code> to get <code>+ +</code>.</p>
--	---

newverbs — Defining `\verb` variants as needed

While the basic `\verb` command is suitable to sprinkle short code segments around your text, you may find the need for adding extra material to it, which is not easy because you cannot use the `\verb` commands inside the argument of other commands; e.g., `\textit{\verb+foo+}` does not work, and one has to resort to the `{\itshape\verb+foo+}` approach, and for something like `\fbox` it would require serious programming to make it work at all, because there is no declarative variant of `\fbox` in the \LaTeX kernel.

To improve this situation Martin Scharrer developed the package `newverbs` through which you can easily define your own verbatim variants and use them throughout your documents.

By default, the package already provides you with two useful variants: `\qverb` adds quote characters around the verbatim material and `\fverb` a verbatim `\fbox`. They use the same syntax as `\verb`, and their star forms show spaces as `␣`.

<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">4-2-5</div> <p>By default the package provides <code>"\qverb"</code> and <code>\fverb</code> ready for use. We have added <code>\cverb</code>.</p>	<pre style="color: #0070C0;">\usepackage{xcolor,newverbs} \newverbcommand\cverb{\color{blue}}{} % explained below</pre> <p>By default the package provides <code>\qverb=\qverb=</code> and <code>\fverb=\fverb=</code> ready for use. We have added <code>\cverb=\cverb=</code>.</p>
---	--

Variants such as `\qverb` are defined with the help of the `\newverbcommand` declaration, which has the following syntax:

`\newverbcommand{cmd}[verb-cmd]{before-code}{after-code}`

Its first argument *cmd* is the new command that should get a `\verb`-like syntax to grab its argument; the other arguments are used for manipulating the grabbed material. The *before-code* is the code executed before, and the *after-code* is the code executed after parsing the verbatim material. Internally, everything happens within a group so that local modifications made in one of the arguments, such as the color change we used in the example above, are confined to the execution of our new *cmd*. By default, the *verb-cmd* is `\verb`, but in this optional argument it is possible to specify a different `\verb`-like command; e.g., `\spverb` from the `spverbatim` package.

Instead of defining a *new* command, you can use `\renewverbcommand` to change an existing command or `\provideverbcommand` to provide a default definition.

While the definition for `\qverb` can probably be guessed, it is not so obvious how to use the above declaration to define `\fverb`; so here we reveal the trick. It is worth studying if you are intending to provide variants of similar complexity.

```
\newverbcommand\fverb{\begin{lrbox}{\verbbox}}
{\end{lrbox}\fbox{\usebox{\verbbox}}}
```

The trick is to typeset everything first into a box. For this we use the standard `lrbox` environment, because we can start this in the *before-code* and end it at the beginning of the *after-code*. The `\verbbox` box register is automatically provided by the package, so we do not have to declare it ourselves. Once the box is filled, we are able to use it to our liking, e.g., put it inside an `\fbox`. This decoupling of parsing and use gets us around the issue that unprocessed verbatim material cannot be used inside the argument of other commands. More details and a couple of other helpful commands for these types of definitions can be found in the package documentation.

```
\MakeSpecialShortVerb{verb-cmd}char
```

We have already seen how `shortvrb` helps us to input a lot of verbatim material in a concise way. The same is possible with the verbatim variants of `newverbs` too if you load the `shortvrb` package in addition. However, we need a different shorthand declaration, because this time we also have to say for which *verb-cmd* we want to enable the shorthand. But otherwise everything works in the same way, and for removal of a shorthand you still use the already known `\DeleteShortVerb`.

Now code like `|pdflatex myfile|` can be "enter"ed in a simplified way. "`\DeleteShortVerb`" removes previously defined shorthands again: `|see|`?

```
\usepackage{shortvrb,newverbs}
\MakeSpecialShortVerb{\qverb} {"}
\MakeSpecialShortVerb{\fverb*}{\|}
```

Now code like `|pdflatex myfile|` can be "enter"ed in a simplified way. "`\DeleteShortVerb`" removes previously defined shorthands `\DeleteShortVerb\|` again: `|see|`?

4-2-6

In some situations the restriction that `\verb` and related commands cannot be used inside arguments of other commands can become a serious problem. It is not that such material cannot appear there, but that for technical reasons the parsing done by `\verb` must happen at the top level and not inside an argument of another command.

```
\verbdef*⟨cmd⟩⟨char⟩ material ⟨char⟩
\Verbdef*⟨cmd⟩⟨char⟩ material ⟨char⟩
```

One way to resolve this is to do that parsing first and use the parsed material later. This can be achieved with the `\verbdef` declaration, which defines a command *cmd* to hold the parsed *material* so that it can be used anywhere by later calling *cmd*. As always, the star form generates visible spaces within the *material*. The `\Verbdef` works similarly but does not change the font family to Typewriter. If you

use that, make sure you are typesetting using the T1 encoding, because with OT1 some characters produce incorrect results.

Contents

1 Difficult chars (`%&_ $^_ or %&_ $^_`)

6

1 Difficult chars (`%&_ $^_ or %&_ $^_`)

This hides `%&_ $^_` within `\foo` and `\baz` so that it can be used in the heading. Warning: `%&_ $^_` is equal to `%&_ $^_` but not to `%&_ $^_!`

4-2-7

```
\usepackage{newverbs}
\Verbdef*\foo+%& $^_+ \verbdef*\baz+%& $^_+
\tableofcontents
\section{Difficult chars (\foo\ or \baz)}
This hides \verb*+%& $^_+ within \verb+\foo+
and \verb+\baz+ so that it can be used in
the heading. Warning: \verb*+%& $^_+ is
equal to \baz{} but not to \foo{}!
```

Obviously the declaration of the parsed verbatim material must come *before* its use. If that is inside a heading, like in the previous example, this means that the declaration has to be before the `\tableofcontents`.

The `fancyvrb` package, described in Section 4.2.4, offers a similar functionality, which is described on page 318. If you plan to use that package for other reasons, it might be best to use it for `\verb` variants as well.

It should also be noted that (since 2020) standard \LaTeX already offers a very flexible possibility for defining your own commands with “verbatim” arguments, and in contrast to all other solutions you can even delimit such arguments with a normal brace group — this is described in Appendix A.1.4 on page 632.

spverbatim — Breaking verbatim text at spaces

\LaTeX treats verbatim text by default as an unbreakable unit. Thus, text typeset using `\verb` may lead to poor results if the text happens to get close to a line ending, resulting in either overfull or very spaced out lines. The `spverbatim` package by Scott Pakin offers some help here, by providing the command `\spverb` that resembles `\verb` but allows line breaks at spaces within its argument. A star form generating visible spaces is not provided.

The package also offers the environment `spverbatim` with a corresponding extension compared to `verbatim`. However, for environments better control is available through the `breaklines` key of the `fvextra` package discussed on page 313 and the features provided by the `listings` package.

Other verbatim extensions

The package `verbatim` (by Rainer Schöpf) was the first to reimplement and extend the \LaTeX environments `verbatim` and `verbatim*`. One of its major advantages is that it allows arbitrarily long verbatim texts, something not possible with the basic \LaTeX versions of the environments. It also defines a `comment` environment¹ that skips all text between the commands `\begin{comment}` and `\end{comment}`. In addition, the package provides hooks to implement user extensions for defining

¹Example 4-2-36 on page 318 shows how to achieve this with the `fancyvrb` package.

customized verbatim-like environments. A few such extensions are realized in the package `moreverb` (by Angus Duggan).

While you may find both packages used in older documents, it is better to use packages such as `fancyvrb`, `fvextra`, or `listings` that offer the same and further functionality in a consistent manner.

4.2.3 `upquote` — Computer program style quoting

The Computer Modern Typewriter font that is used by default for typesetting “verbatim” is a very readable monospaced typeface. Due to its small running length, it is very well suited for typesetting computer programs and similar material. See Section 10.9 for a comparison of this font with other monospaced typefaces.

There is, however, one potential problem when using this font to render computer program listings and similar material: most people expect to see a (right) quote in a computer listing represented with a straight quote character (i.e., `'`) and a left or back quote as a kind of grave accent on its own (i.e., ```).

The Computer Modern Typewriter font, however, displays real left and right curly quote characters (as one would expect in a normal text font). In fact, most other typewriter fonts when set up for use with \LaTeX follow this pattern. This produces somewhat unconventional results that many people find difficult to understand. Consider the following example, which shows the standard behavior for three major typewriter fonts: `LuxiMono`,¹ `Courier` (or rather \TeX Gyre Cursor), and `Computer Modern Typewriter`.

	<code>\usepackage[scaled=.85]{luximono}</code>	
	<code>\verb+TEST='ls -l |awk '{print \$3}'+</code>	
	<code>\renewcommand\ttdefault{qcr}</code>	
	<code>\verb+TEST='ls -l |awk '{print \$3}'+</code>	
<code>TEST='ls -l |awk '{print \$3}''</code>	<code>\renewcommand\ttdefault{cmtt}</code>	
<code>TEST='ls -l |awk '{print \$3}''</code>	<code>\verb+TEST='ls -l |awk '{print \$3}'+</code>	
<code>TEST='ls -l |awk '{print \$3}''</code>		

4-2-8

This behavior can be changed by loading the `upquote` package by Michael Covington, which uses the glyphs `\textasciigrave` and `\textquotesingle`, instead of the usual left and right curly quote characters within `\verb` or the `verbatim` environment. Normal typewriter text still uses the curly quotes, as shown in the last line of the next example on the opposite page.

As you can see, depending on the font, this is not necessarily a good solution; for example, with `Courier` it is inferior because the characters have fairly uneven weights. However, this is a font problem, and you need to check how your monospaced font behaves and then decide whether to use the package.

¹`LuxiMono` is a family of general-purpose monospaced (typewriter) fonts designed by Charles Bigelow and Kris Holmes. It may not be available in all \TeX distributions but can be obtained from the Comprehensive \TeX Archive Network (CTAN); see Section 10.1 for an installation possibility.

```

\usepackage[scaled=.85]{luximono}
\usepackage{upquote}
\verb+TEST='ls -l |awk '{print $3}'+

\renewcommand\ttdefault{pcr}
\verb+TEST='ls -l |awk '{print $3}'+

\renewcommand\ttdefault{cmhtt}
\verb+TEST='ls -l |awk '{print $3}'+ \\
\texttt{Notice that 'text' is unaffected!}

```

4-2-9 TEST=`ls -l |awk '{print \$3}`
 TEST=`ls -l |awk '{print \$3}`
 TEST=`ls -l |awk '{print \$3}`
 Notice that 'text' is unaffected!

The package works well together with “verbatim” extensions as described in this chapter, except for the listings package; it conflicts with the scanning mechanism of that package. If you want this type of quoting with listings, simply use the `\lstset` key `upquote`.

```

\usepackage{listings} \lstset{upquote}
\begin{lstlisting}[language=ksh]
TEST='ls -l |awk '{ print $3 }'
\end{lstlisting}

```

4-2-10 TEST=`ls -l |awk '{ print \$3 }`

Note that if you use `fvextra` as an extended version of the `fancyvrb` package (as described in Section 4.2.4), then the `upquote` package is automatically loaded. If this is not desired, you can disable it on the environment level using the key `curlyquotes` or generally with `\fvset`.

```

\usepackage{fvextra}
\begin{Verbatim}
TEST='ls -l |awk '{print $3}'+ # default
\end{Verbatim}
\begin{Verbatim}[curlyquotes]
TEST='ls -l |awk '{print $3}'+
\end{Verbatim}

```

4-2-11 TEST=`ls -l |awk '{print \$3}`

4.2.4 fancyvrb, fvextra — Verbatim environments on steroids

The `fancyvrb` package by Timothy Van Zandt (maintained by Herbert Voß) offers a highly customizable set of environments and commands to typeset and manipulate verbatim text. It had its first public release already in 1998 and quickly became one of the dominant packages in this space and has largely remained unchanged since then.

It works by parsing one line at a time from an environment or a file (a concept pioneered by the `verbatim` package), thereby allowing you to preprocess lines in various ways. By incorporating features found in various other packages it provides a truly universal production environment under a common set of syntax rules.

Fairly recently (in T_EX terms) in 2016 Geoffrey Poore published the `fvextra` package, which is intended to be a drop-in replacement for `fancyvrb` while offering a number of additional features. In this section we describe both package together. All examples

that can be used with either package use `fancyvrb`, while those that need `fvextra` will obviously use that package. Often there are only some aspects that require `fvextra` or make the input more convenient; those are then explicitly mentioned in the text.

```
\begin{Verbatim}[key/value list] ... \end{Verbatim}
\begin{Verbatim*}[key/value list] ... \end{Verbatim*}
```

The main environment provided by both packages is the `Verbatim` environment and its star form, which, if used without customization, is much like standard \LaTeX 's `verbatim` environment. The main difference is that it accepts an optional argument in which you can specify customization information using a key/value syntax. However, there is one restriction to bear in mind: the left bracket of the optional argument must appear on the same line as `\begin`. Otherwise, the optional argument is not recognized but instead typeset as `verbatim` text.

More than 30 keys are already available with `fancyvrb`, and `fvextra` adds a few dozen more — we discuss their use and possible values in some detail.

You can also use these keys in `\fvset`, which modifies the default setup. Any declaration made in this way stays in force until overwritten in the optional argument to an environment or changed again by another `\fvset` declaration.

A number of variant environments and commands are discussed near the end of this section as well. They also accept customization via the key/value method. We also cover possibilities for defining your own variants in a straightforward way. Finally, we look at support for inline verbatim including the extensions offered by `fvextra`.

In summary, `fancyvrb` is a stable workhorse that has served \LaTeX users well for several decades without any changes to the code. However, for new documents `fvextra` should probably be preferred because it offers several important enhancements while keeping the core of `fancyvrb` available without any change.

Customization keys for typesetting

To manipulate the fonts used by the verbatim environments of the `fancyvrb` package, four environment keys, corresponding to the four axes of NFSS, are available. The key `fontfamily` specifies the font family to use. Its default is `Computer Modern Typewriter` so that when used without keys, the environments behave in a fashion similar to standard \LaTeX 's `verbatim`. However, the value of this key can be any font family name in NFSS notation, such as `pcr` for `Courier` or `cmss` for `Computer Modern Sans`, even though the latter is not a monospaced font as would normally be used in a verbatim context. The key also recognizes the special values `tt`, `courier`, and `helvetica` and translates them internally into NFSS nomenclature.

Because typesetting of verbatim text can include special characters like “\”, you must be careful to ensure that such characters are present in the font. This should be no problem when a font encoding such as `T1` is active, which could be loaded using the `fontenc` package. It is, however, not the case for \LaTeX 's default font encoding `OT1`, in which only some monospaced fonts, such as the default typewriter font, contain all such special characters. The type of incorrect output you might encounter is shown with the `helvetica` example in `OT1`.

Both packages are also able to handle UTF-8 characters in the input, as long as the glyphs are present in the chosen font, but again this is only partly true if the font encoding is OT1: look at the result produced for the backslash, and the braces and “»»«” generate error messages because they are not available in OT1.

<pre> ‘tt’ is fine in OT1: \sum_{i=1}^n UTF-8 char test: äöüß æ Æ \$ £ But ‘helvetica’ fails in OT1: “sum_{i=1}^n UTF-8 char test: äöüß æ Æ \$ £ ... while it works in T1: \sum_{i=1}^n UTF-8 char test: äöüß æ Æ \$ £ »»« </pre>	<pre> \usepackage{fancyvrb} \usepackage[T1,OT1]{fontenc} \fontencoding{OT1}\selectfont \hrule \begin{Verbatim}[fontfamily=tt] ‘tt’ is fine in OT1: \sum_{i=1}^n UTF-8 char test: äöüß æ Æ \$ £ \end{Verbatim} \begin{Verbatim}[fontfamily=helvetica] But ‘helvetica’ fails in OT1: \sum_{i=1}^n UTF-8 char test: äöüß æ Æ \$ £ \end{Verbatim} \fontencoding{T1}\selectfont \hrule \begin{Verbatim*}[fontfamily=helvetica] ... while it works in T1: \sum_{i=1}^n UTF-8 char test: äöüß æ Æ \$ £ »»« \end{Verbatim*} </pre>
---	--

4-2-12

Given that all examples in this book are typeset using the T1 encoding automatically, these kinds of problems do not show up elsewhere in the book. If you use a Unicode engine, e.g., Lua \TeX for typesetting (and Unicode fonts), then this is also no problem. Nevertheless, you should be aware of this danger. It represents another good reason to use T1 with the pdf \TeX engine in preference to \TeX ’s original font encoding; for a more in-depth discussion see Section 9.2.4 on page 657.

The first example is also already one where there is a difference between fancyvrb and fvextra. If we process that kind of input with the latter package, the quote characters come out differently (because internally upquote is loaded); see also Example 4-2-11 from page 303 on that topic.

<pre> ‘tt’ is fine in T1: \sum_{i=1}^n UTF-8 char test: äöüß æ Æ \$ £ »»« and so is ‘Courier’: \sum_{i=1}^n UTF-8 char test: äöüß æ Æ \$ £ »»« </pre>	<pre> \usepackage{fvextra} \usepackage[T1]{fontenc} \begin{Verbatim}[fontfamily=tt] ‘tt’ is fine in T1: \sum_{i=1}^n UTF-8 char test: äöüß æ Æ \$ £ »»« \end{Verbatim} \begin{Verbatim}[fontfamily=courier] and so is ‘Courier’: \sum_{i=1}^n UTF-8 char test: äöüß æ Æ \$ £ »»« \end{Verbatim} </pre>
--	--

4-2-13

The other three environment keys related to the font setup are fontseries, fontshape, and fontsize (there is no way to set the encoding, which is always taken from the surroundings!). They inherit the current NFSS settings from the surrounding text if not specified. While the first two expect values that can be fed into \fontseries and \fontshape, respectively (e.g., bx for a bold extended series

or it for an *italic* shape), the `fontsize` is special. It expects one of the higher-level NFSS commands for specifying the font size—for example, `\small`. If the `relsize` package is available, then you could alternatively specify a change of font size relative to the current text font by using something like `\relsize{-2}`.

<pre>\sum_{i=1}^n</pre> <p>A line of text to show the body size.</p> <p>$\sum_{i=1}^n$</p>	<pre>\usepackage{relsize,fancyvrb} \begin{Verbatim}[fontsize=\relsize{-2}] \sum_{i=1}^n \end{Verbatim} A line of text to show the body size. \begin{Verbatim}[fontshape=sl,fontsize=\Large] \sum_{i=1}^n \end{Verbatim}</pre>	4-2-14
---	---	--------

A more general form for customizing the formatting is available through the environment key `formatcom`, which accepts any \LaTeX code and executes it at the start of the environment. For example, to color the verbatim text you could pass it something like `\color{blue}`. It is also possible to operate on each line of text by providing a suitable redefinition for the command `\FancyVerbFormatLine`. This command is executed for every line, receiving the text from the line as its argument.¹ In the next example every second line is colored in blue, a result achieved by testing the current value of the counter `FancyVerbLine`. This counter is provided automatically by the environment and holds the current line number.

<p>This line should become blue and this one will be black. And here u can observe that gobble removes t only blanks but any character.</p>	<pre>\usepackage{ifthen,color,fancyvrb} \renewcommand\FancyVerbFormatLine[1] {\ifthenelse{\isodd{\value{FancyVerbLine}}}{% {\color{blue}}}{\#1}} \begin{Verbatim}[gobble=2] This line should become blue and this one will be black. And here you can observe that gobble removes not only blanks but any character. \end{Verbatim}</pre>	4-2-15
---	---	--------

As shown in the previous example the key `gobble` can be used to remove a number of characters or spaces (up to nine) from the beginning of each line. This is mainly useful if all lines in your environments are indented and you wish to get rid of the extra space produced by the indentation. Sometimes the opposite goal is desired: every line should be indented by a certain space. For example, in this book all verbatim environments are indented by 24pt. This indentation is controlled by the key `xleftmargin`. There also exists a key `xrightmargin` to specify the right indentation, but its usefulness is rather limited with `fancyvrb`, because the verbatim

¹`fextra` extends this concept even further by also providing `\FancyVerbFormatText`; see the package documentation for examples of its use.

text is not broken across lines.¹ Thus, its only visible effect (unless you use frames) is potentially more overfull box messages² that indicate that your text overflows into the right margin. Perhaps more useful is the Boolean key `resetmargins`, which controls whether preset indentations by surrounding environments are ignored.

- Normal indentation left:

A long line of verbatim text!

- No indentation at either side:

A long line of verbatim text!

4-2-16

```
\usepackage{fancyvrb}
\begin{itemize} \item Normal indentation left:
  \begin{Verbatim}[frame=single,xrightmargin=2pc]
A long line of verbatim text!
  \end{Verbatim}
\item No indentation at either side:
  \begin{Verbatim}[resetmargins=true,
                    frame=single]
A long line of verbatim text!
  \end{Verbatim}
\end{itemize}
```

The previous example demonstrates one use of the `frame` key: to draw a frame around verbatim text. By providing other values for this key, different-looking frames can be produced. The default is `none`, that is, no frame. With `topline`, `bottomline`, or `leftline` you get a single line at the side indicated³; `lines` produces a line at the top and bottom; and `single`, as we saw in Example 4-2-16, draws the full frame. In each case, the thickness of the rules can be customized by specifying a value via the `framerule` key (default is 0.4pt). The separation between the lines and the text can be controlled with `framesep` (default is the current value of `\fboxsep`).

If the `color` or `xcolor` package is loaded in the document preamble, you can color the rules using the environment key `rulecolor` (default is black). If you use a full frame, you can also color the separation between the frame and the text via `fillcolor`. With `fancyvrb` these keys require a color command as the value; with `fvextra` they also accept just the color name, which is a more convenient input, so we use it in the next example:

A framed verbatim line!

4-2-17

```
\usepackage{color,fvextra}
\begin{Verbatim}[frame=single,rulecolor=blue,
                framerule=3pt,framesep=1pc,fillcolor=yellow]
A framed verbatim line!
\end{Verbatim}
```

Unfortunately, there is no direct way to fill the entire background. The closest you can get is by using `\colorbox` inside `\FancyVerbFormatLine`. However, this approach leaves tiny white rules between the lines and — without forcing the lines to

¹This is different with `fvextra` because it allows line breaks if the key `breaklines` is used.

²Whether overfull boxes inside a verbatim environment are shown is controlled by the `hfuzz` key, which has a default value of 2pt. A warning is issued only if boxes protrude by more than the key's value into the margin.

³There is no value to indicate a line at the right side.

be of equal length, such as via `\makebox` — also results in colored blocks of different widths. With `fvextra` there is an alternative that is easy to use and does not have those defects; see Example 4-2-27.

```

\usepackage{color,fancyvrb}
\renewcommand\FancyVerbFormatLine[1]{\colorbox{green}{#1}}
\begin{Verbatim}
Some verbatim lines with
a background color.
\end{Verbatim}
\renewcommand\FancyVerbFormatLine[1]
    {\colorbox{yellow}%
        {\makebox[\linewidth][l]{\color{blue}#1}}}
\begin{Verbatim}
Colored verbatim lines
(background & foreground).
\end{Verbatim}

```

Some verbatim lines with
a background color.

Colored verbatim lines
(background & foreground).

4-2-18

It is possible to typeset text as part of a frame by supplying it as the value of the `label` key. If this text contains special characters, such as brackets, equal sign, or comma, you have to hide them by surrounding them with a brace group. Otherwise, they are mistaken for part of the syntax.

The text appears by default at the top, but is printed only if the frame setup would produce a line in that position. Alternate positions can be specified by using `labelposition`, which accepts `none`, `topline`, `bottomline`, or `all` as values. In the last case the text is printed above and below. If the label text is unusually large, you may need to increase the separation between the frame and the verbatim text by using the key `framesep`. If you want to cancel a previously set label string, use the value `none` — if you really need “none” as a label string, enclose it in braces.

```

\usepackage{fancyvrb}
\begin{Verbatim}[frame=single,framesep=5mm,
    label=\fbox{Example code},
    labelposition=bottomline]
A framed verbatim text.
As always, it can consist
of several lines.
\end{Verbatim}

```

A framed verbatim text.
As always, it can consist
of several lines.

Example code

4-2-19

You can, in fact, provide different texts to be placed at the top and bottom by surrounding the text for the top position with brackets, as shown in the next example. For this scheme to work `frame` needs to be set to either `single` or `lines`.

By default the `label` text is typeset in the same font family as the whole environment. If something else is desired, then you need to explicitly specify what font face to use, as we did below (note that `\textit` still gives typewriter):

_____ Start of code _____	<code>\usepackage{fancyvrb}</code>
A line of code	<code>\begin{Verbatim}[frame=lines,framesep=5mm,</code> <code>label={\textsf{Start of code}}\textit{End of code}]]</code>
_____ End of code _____	<code>A line of code</code> <code>\end{Verbatim}</code>

By default, the typeset output of the verbatim environments can be broken across pages by \LaTeX if it does not fully fit on a single page. This is even true in cases where a frame surrounds the text. If you want to ensure that this cannot happen, set the Boolean key `samepage` to `true`.

Prohibiting page breaks

The vertical spacing before and after the environment is by default the same as those around other display lists, e.g., `itemize`. You can change it with the key `vspace`. Unfortunately, the implementation is a bit odd (internally `\partopsep` is added sometimes), so you may have to use a value of `-\partopsep` and not `0pt` to cancel all extra space. In combination with the `samepage` key, this can be used to ensure that a larger verbatim block can be broken only at certain points and not after each line. To avoid any extra vertical space in the next example, `vspace` must be used with both `Verbatim` environments and not only on the second one.

```

\usepackage{fancyvrb}
\begin{Verbatim}[samepage]
ASCII Art Archive
    https://www.asciart.eu
\end{Verbatim}
\nopagebreak[2]
\begin{Verbatim}[samepage,vspace=-\partopsep]
    -.-      -,-'""'-.-
    (,-.'.-,'(      |\ '-/|
      '-.-' \ )-'( , o o)
              '-      \ '-""'- [nosig]
\end{Verbatim}

```

The vertical spacing between lines in a verbatim environment is the same as in normal text, but if desired, you can enlarge it by a factor using the key `baselinestretch`. Shrinking so that lines overlap is not possible. If you want to revert to the default line separation, use the string `auto` as a value.

	<code>\usepackage{fancyvrb}</code>
This text is more or less double-spaced.	<code>\begin{Verbatim}[baselinestretch=1.6]</code>
See also the discussion about the	This text is more or less double-spaced.
setspace package elsewhere.	See also the discussion about the
	setspace package elsewhere.
	<code>\end{Verbatim}</code>

When presenting computer listings, it is often helpful to number some or all of the lines. This can be achieved by using the key `numbers`, which accepts `none`, `left`, or `right` (and with `fvextra` also `both`) as a value to control the position of the

numbers. The distance between the number and the verbatim text is 12pt by default, but it can be adjusted by specifying a different value via the key `numbersep`. Usually, numbering restarts at 1 with each environment, but by providing an explicit number with the key `firstnumber` you can start with any integer value, even a negative one. Alternatively, this key accepts the word `last` to indicate that numbering should resume where it had stopped in the previous `Verbatim` instance.

As a shorthand for `numbers=left`, `fvextra` offers the key `linenos`.

	<code>\usepackage{fvextra}</code>	
	<code>\begin{Verbatim}[numbers=both,numbersep=6pt]</code>	
1 Verbatim lines can be numbered	Verbatim lines can be numbered	
2 at either left or right.	at either left or right.	
	<code>\end{Verbatim}</code>	
Some intermediate text...	Some intermediate text\ldots	
	<code>\begin{Verbatim}[linenos,firstnumber=last]</code>	
3 Continuation is possible too	Continuation is possible too	
4 as we can see here.	as we can see here.	
	<code>\end{Verbatim}</code>	

4-2-23

Some people prefer to number only some lines, and the packages cater to this possibility by providing the key `stepnumber`. If this key is assigned a positive integer number, then only line numbers being an integer multiple of that number get printed. We already learned that the counter that is used internally to count the lines is called `FancyVerbLine`, so it comes as no surprise that the appearance of the numbers is controlled by the command `\theFancyVerbLine`. By modifying this command, special effects can be obtained; a possibility where the current chapter number is prepended is shown in the next example. It also shows the use of the Boolean key `numberblanklines`, which controls whether blank lines are numbered (default is `false`, i.e., to not number them).

	<code>\usepackage{fancyvrb}</code>	
	<code>\renewcommand\theFancyVerbLine{\footnotesize</code>	
	<code>\thechapter.\arabic{FancyVerbLine}}</code>	
	<code>\begin{Verbatim}[numbers=left,stepnumber=2,</code>	
	<code>numberblanklines]</code>	
4.2 Normally empty lines in	Normally empty lines in	
a verbatim will not receive	a verbatim will not receive	
numbers---here they do!	numbers---here they do!	
4.4		
Admittedly using <code>stepnumber</code>	Admittedly using <code>stepnumber</code>	
4.6 with such a redefinition of	with such a redefinition of	
<code>FancyVerbLine</code> looks a bit odd.	<code>FancyVerbLine</code> looks a bit odd.	
	<code>\end{Verbatim}</code>	

4-2-24

The `fvextra` package adds a few additional keys that further control the numbering of lines. If you use a positive `stepnumber`, then by default only lines that are

multiples of that number are numbered. By adding `numberfirstline` the first line is also numbered.

4-2-25

```

First line has number 5 so
6 second gets a number because it
  is divisible by 3. No other
  numbers because the step is 3.

5 Here we additionally ask for
6 a number on the first line and
  we reduced the step to 2, so
8 more lines get numbers.

```

```

\usepackage{fvextra}
\begin{Verbatim}[linenos,stepnumber=3,firstnumber=5]
First line has number 5 so
second gets a number because it
is divisible by 3. No other
numbers because the step is 3.
\end{Verbatim}
\begin{Verbatim}[linenos,stepnumber=2,
                  numberfirstline,firstnumber=5]
Here we additionally ask for
a number on the first line and
we reduced the step to 2, so
more lines get numbers.
\end{Verbatim}

```

If you do not like that result either, then another possibility is to use the key `stepnumberfromfirst`, in which case the numbering starts on the first line and the stepping happens from there. Finally there is `stepnumberoffsetvalues`. If that is used, then numbering happens on each multiple of the step but disregarding any offset that was given with `firstnumber`.

4-2-26

```

5 With this key, the first line
  and then every line a step
7 further down is numbered,
  thus here 5, 7, 9, ...

Without stepnumberoffsetvalues
5 we would see numbers on lines
  4, 6, and 8 and not on 5 and
7 7 that we get now.

```

```

\usepackage{fvextra}
\begin{Verbatim}[linenos,stepnumber=2,
                  firstnumber=5,stepnumberfromfirst]
With this key, the first line
and then every line a step
further down is numbered,
thus here 5, 7, 9, ...
\end{Verbatim}
\begin{Verbatim}[linenos,stepnumber=2,
                  firstnumber=4,stepnumberoffsetvalues]
Without stepnumberoffsetvalues
we would see numbers on lines
4, 6, and 8 and not on 5 and
7 that we get now.
\end{Verbatim}

```

Instead or in addition to numbering lines, `fvextra` offers you a simple way to highlight certain lines with a background color (assuming a color package is loaded). The key `highlightcolor` redefines the color used if you do not like the default, and `highlightlines` specifies a list of lines or line ranges. The lines specified take any offset into account, so if you use `firstnumber`, you have to adjust the values accordingly. Also note that you have to surround the value with braces if it contains commas! This also allows you to put a background color on all lines; you just have to specify a range that is large enough, e.g., 1–50. The actual highlighting is done by a

number of package commands such as `\FancyVerbHighlightLineFirst` so that there is even finer control possible. For details read the package documentation.

```

\usepackage{xcolor,fvextra}
\begin{Verbatim*}[numbers=right,firstnumber=12,
  highlightcolor=blue!10,highlightlines={13,15-50}]
  First line is labeled 12
  Second line
  Third line
  Fourth line and further
  lines are highlighted
\end{Verbatim*}

```

12 First line is labeled 12
13 Second line
14 Third line
15 Fourth line and further
16 lines are highlighted

4-2-27

*Displaying
whitespace
characters*

In some situations it helps to clearly identify whitespace characters by displaying all blanks as `␣`. This can be achieved with the Boolean key `showspaces` or, alternatively, the `Verbatim*` variant of the environment as we did in the previous example. The `fvextra` package adds some further bells and whistles here by offering the key `space` to redefine the character that is used to represent a visible space (default is `\textvisiblespace`), and with `spacecolor` you can declare a particular color to be used just for that type of space.

Another whitespace character, the tab, plays an important rôle in some programming languages, so there may be a need to identify it in your source. This is achieved with the Boolean key `showtabs`. The tab character displayed is defined by the command `\FancyVerbTab` and can be redefined. With `fvextra` this can be more conveniently done through the key `tab` and its color with `tabcolor`, as seen below.

By default, tab characters simply equal eight spaces, a value that can be changed with the key `tabsize`. However, if you set the Boolean key `obeytabs`, then each tab character produces as many spaces as necessary to move to the next integer multiple of `tabsize`. The example input contains tabs in each line that are displayed on the right as spaces with the default `tabsize` of 8. Note in particular the difference between the last input and output line.

```

\usepackage{xcolor,fvextra} \fvset{tabcolor=blue}
\begin{Verbatim}
123456789012345678901234567890
Two      default tabs
\end{Verbatim}
\begin{Verbatim}[obeytabs,showtabs]
Three   visible tab   chars
\end{Verbatim}
\begin{Verbatim}[obeytabs,showtabs,tab=$\bullet$]
Two     new      tabs
\end{Verbatim}
\begin{Verbatim}[obeytabs,tabsize=3,showtabs]
Using  a   special tab   size
\end{Verbatim}


```

123456789012345678901234567890
Two default tabs
Three ↗visible↗tab ↗chars
Two •new •tabs
Using ↗a ↗special tab ↗size

4-2-28

If you wish to execute commands within the verbatim text, then you need one character to act as an escape character (i.e., to denote the beginning of a command name) and two characters to serve as argument delimiters (i.e., to play the rôle that braces normally play within \LaTeX). Such special characters can be specified with the `commandchars` key as shown below; of course, these characters then cannot appear as part of the verbatim text. The characters are specified by putting a backslash in front of each one so as to mask any special meaning they might normally have in \LaTeX . The key `commentchar` allows you to define a comment character, which results in ignoring everything following it until and including the next new line character. Thus, if this character is used in the middle of a line, this line and the next are joined together. If you wish to cancel a previous setting for `commandchars` or `commentchar`, use the string value “none”.

There is one important caveat: if the comment character is used anywhere in the last line of the verbatim, then the whole line gets ignored because `fancyvrb` prints out a line only if it sees an endlime character and now on that line there is not any! The next example shows the issue:

 Last line gets lost if you are not extra careful!

```

\usepackage{fancyvrb}
\begin{Verbatim}[commandchars=\\[\],commentchar=!]
We can |emph|emphasize| text
! see above (this line is invisible)
Line with label|label[linea] ! removes new line
is shown here.
Careful: last line lost ! because of comment
\end{Verbatim}
On line~\ref{linea} we see\ldots

```

We can *emphasize* text
Line with label is shown here.

4-2-29 On line 2 we see...

If you use `\label` within the verbatim environment, as was done in the previous example, it refers to the internal line number whether or not that number is displayed. This requires the use of the `commandchars` key, a price you might consider too high because it deprives you of the use of the chosen characters in your verbatim text.

The `fvextra` package has another key that changes the parsing: `mathescape`. If you use this, then `$`, `_`, and `^` retain their normal meaning within the verbatim scope; thus, you can mix formulas and verbatim text to some extent.

Two other keys available with both packages let you change the parsing and manipulation of verbatim data: `codes` and `defineactive`. They allow you to play some devious tricks, but their use is not so easy to explain: one needs a good understanding of \TeX 's inner workings. If you are interested, please check the documentation provided with the `fancyvrb` package.

Line breaking within verbatim data

While `fancyvrb` never breaks input lines, the `fvextra` package is able to, provided you use the key `breaklines`. By default lines are broken only at spaces, but by supplying some further keys and values this can be adjusted in various ways. For example, `breakanywhere` enables breaking anywhere in the line, while `breakafter` allows

you to specify additional characters after which a break is allowed to happen. Instead of breaking after some character, you can break before certain characters that are set using `breakbefore`. Depending on the character, you might have to escape it with a backslash; e.g., `\#\` would allow a break after `#` or after a backslash.

There are many more keys to cover special requirements including defining the characters that should indicate such a break; for details refer to the package documentation. As you can see in the example, a break at a space is indicated with a continuation character on the next line (`breaksymbolleft`), while a break due to `breakafter` or `breakanywhere` has continuation characters on both lines. The pre-break continuation characters can be explicitly set with `breakanywheresymbolpre` and `breakaftersymbolpre`.

A few but certainly not all of the possibilities are exhibited in the next example:

A long wide line of verbatim text!	<pre> \usepackage{fvextra} \begin{Verbatim}[frame=single,xrightmargin=4pc] A long wide line of verbatim text! \end{Verbatim} \fvset{frame=single,breaklines} % change defaults \begin{Verbatim}[xrightmargin=2pc] A long wide line of verbatim text! \end{Verbatim} \begin{Verbatim}[breakanywhere] A wide line with a-very-longish-verbatim-word! \end{Verbatim} \begin{Verbatim}[breakafter=-] A wide line with a-very-longish-verbatim-word and one-further-longish-word. \end{Verbatim} </pre>
A long wide line of ↪ verbatim text!	
A wide line with a-very-longish-verbatim-word! ↪	
A wide line with a-very-longish-verbatim-word ↪ longish-verbatim-word and one-further-longish-verbatim-word. ↪ word.	

4-2-30

Limiting the displayed data

Normally, all lines within the `verbatim` environment are typeset. If you want to display only a subset of lines, you have a number of choices. With the keys `firstline` and `lastline`, you can specify the start line and (if necessary) the final line to typeset.

Alternatively, you can specify a start and stop string to search for within the environment body, with the result that all lines between (but this time *not* including the special lines) are typeset. The strings are specified in the macros `\FancyVerbStartString` and `\FancyVerbStopString`. To make this work, you have to be a bit careful: the macros need to be defined with `\newcommand*` and redefined with `\renewcommand*`. Using `\newcommand` will *not* work! Canceling such a declaration is even more complicated: you have to `\let` the command to `\relax`, for example,

```
\let\FancyVerbStartString\relax
```

or ensure that your definition is confined to a group — everything else fails.

```

\usepackage{fancyvrb}
\newcommand*\FancyVerbStartString{START}
\newcommand*\FancyVerbStopString{STOP}
\begin{Verbatim}
  A verbatim line not shown.
START
  Only the third line is shown.
STOP
  The remainder is left out.
\end{Verbatim}

```

4-2-31

Only the third line is shown.

You may wonder why one would want to have such functionality available, given that one could simply leave out the lines that are not being typeset. With an environment like `Verbatim` they are indeed of only limited use. However, when used together with other functions of the package that write data to files and read it back again, they offer powerful solutions to otherwise unsolvable problems.

For instance, all examples in this book use this method. The example body is written to a file together with a document preamble and other material so that the resulting file becomes a processable \LaTeX document. This document is then externally processed and included as an Portable Document Format (PDF) graphic image into the book after further processing with `pdfcrop` to cut it to the right size. Beside it, the sample code is displayed by reading this external file back in but displaying only those lines that lie between the strings `\begin{document}` and `\end{document}`. This accounts for the example lines you see being typeset in black. The preamble part, which is shown in blue, is produced in a similar fashion: for this the start and stop strings are redefined to include only those lines lying between the strings `%StartShownPreambleCommands` and `%StopShownPreambleCommands`. When processing the example externally, these two strings are simply no-ops (because \LaTeX sees them as comments). As a consequence, the example code always (for better or worse) corresponds to the displayed result.¹

*How the book
examples have been
produced*

To write data verbatim to a file the environment `VerbatimOut` is available. It takes one mandatory argument: the file name into which to write the data. There is, however, a logical problem if you try to use such an environment inside your own environments: the moment you start the `VerbatimOut` environment, everything is swallowed without processing and so the end of your environment is not recognized. As a solution the `fancyvrb` package offers the command `\VerbatimEnvironment`, which, if executed within the `\begin` code of your environment, ensures that the end tag of your environment is recognized in verbatim mode and the corresponding code executed.

To read data verbatim from a file, the command `\VerbatimInput` can be used. It takes an optional argument similar to the one of the `Verbatim` environment (i.e., it accepts all the keys discussed previously) and a mandatory argument to specify

¹In the first edition we unfortunately introduced a number of mistakes when showing code in text that was not directly used — in this book our mistakes show.

the file from which to read. The variant `\BVerbatimInput` puts the typeset result in a box without space above and below. The next example demonstrates some of the possibilities: it defines an environment `example` that first writes its body verbatim to a file; reads the first line back in and displays it in blue; reads the file once more, this time starting with the second line; and numbers the lines starting with the number 1. As explained above, a similar, albeit more complex, definition was used to produce the examples in this book.

```
\usepackage{fancyvrb,color}
\newenvironment{example}
  {\VerbatimEnvironment\begin{VerbatimOut}{test.out}}
  {\end{VerbatimOut}\noindent
   \BVerbatimInput[lastline=1,formatcom=\color{blue}]{test.out}%
   \VerbatimInput[numbers=left,firstnumber=1,firstline=2]{test.out}}
\begin{example}
  A blue line.
  A blue line.
  Numbered lines
  Numbered lines
  1 Numbered lines in black.
  2 in black.
  \end{example}
```

4-2-32

Variant environments and commands

So far, all except the last example have used the `Verbatim` environment, but there also exist a number of variants that are useful in certain circumstances. `BVerbatim` is similar to `Verbatim` but puts the verbatim lines into a box. Some keys discussed above (notably those dealing with frames) are not supported, but two additional ones are available. The first, `baseline`, denotes the alignment point for the box; it can take the values `t` (for top), `c` (for center), or `b` (for bottom — the default). The second, `boxwidth`, specifies the desired width of the box; if it is missing or given the value `auto`, the box gets as wide as the widest line present in the environment. We already encountered `\BVerbatimInput`; it too, supports these additional keys.

```
\usepackage{fancyvrb}
\begin{BVerbatim}[boxwidth=6pc,baseline=c]
Box is too small, so text
sticks out on the right!
\end{BVerbatim}
\begin{BVerbatim}[baseline=t]
Box has natural width.
Note the alignment.
\end{BVerbatim}
```

Box is too small, so text
sticks out on the right!
Box has natural width.
Note the alignment.

4-2-33

All environments and commands for typesetting verbatim text also have star variants, which, as in the standard \LaTeX environments, display blanks as `_`. In other words, they internally set the key `showspaces` to `true`.

Defining your own variants

Defining customized variants of verbatim commands and environments is quite simple. For starters, the default settings built into the package can be changed with the help of the `\fvset` command. It takes one argument, a comma-separated list of key/value pairs. It applies them to every verbatim environment or command. Of course, you can still overwrite the new defaults with the optional argument on the command or environment. For example, if nearly all of your verbatim environments are indented by two spaces, you might want to remove them without having to deploy gobble on each occasion.

<p>A line of text to show the left margin.</p> <p>The new ‘normal’ case.</p> <p>With this default we need to watch out for unindented verbatims to avoid results like this:</p> <pre>t good now for verbatims thout indentation!</pre> <p>In that case do this:</p> <p>We now need to explicitly cancel the gobble occasionally!</p>	<pre>\usepackage{fancyvrb} \fvset{gobble=2} \noindent A line of text to show the left margin. \begin{Verbatim} The new ‘normal’ case. \end{Verbatim} With this default we need to watch out for unindented verbatims to avoid results like this: \begin{Verbatim} Not good now for verbatims without indentation! \end{Verbatim} In that case do this: \begin{Verbatim}[gobble=0] We now need to explicitly cancel the gobble occasionally! \end{Verbatim}</pre>
--	---

4-2-34

However, `\fvset` applies to all environments and commands, which may not be what you need. The package therefore offers commands to define your own verbatim environments and commands or to modify the behavior of the predefined ones.

```
\CustomVerbatimEnvironment{new-env}{base-env}{key/value list}
\CustomVerbatimCommand    {new-cmd}{base-cmd}{key/value list}
```

These declarations take three arguments: the name of the new environment or command being defined, the name of the environment or command (without a leading backslash) on which it is based, and a comma-separated list of key/value pairs that define the new behavior. To define new structures, you use these declarations.

To change the behavior of existing environments or commands (predefined ones as well as those defined by you), you use `\RecustomVerbatimEnvironment` or `\RecustomVerbatimCommand`, which otherwise take the same arguments. As shown in Example 4-2-35 on the next page, the default values, set in the third argument, can be overwritten as usual with the optional argument when the environment or command is instantiated.

<pre> 1 The normal case with thick 2 rules and numbers on the left. The exception without numbers and thinner rules. 1 And from here on the environment 2 behaves differently again.</pre>	<pre> \usepackage{fancyvrb} \CustomVerbatimEnvironment{myverbatim}{Verbatim} {numbers=left,frame=lines,framerule=2pt} \begin{myverbatim} The normal case with thick rules and numbers on the left. \end{myverbatim} \begin{myverbatim}[numbers=none,framerule=.6pt] The exception without numbers and thinner rules. \end{myverbatim} \RecustomVerbatimEnvironment{myverbatim}{Verbatim} {numbers=left,frame=none,showspaces=true} \begin{myverbatim} And from here on the environment behaves differently again. \end{myverbatim}</pre>	4-2-35
--	---	--------



With the help of `\CustomVerbatimEnvironment` it is trivial to implement your own comment environments. All you need is the `BVerbatim` environment to box the material and then use the `lastline` key to display none of the collected lines.

A simple way to implement a comment environment is shown in this example.

```

\usepackage{fancyvrb}
\CustomVerbatimEnvironment{comment}{BVerbatim}{lastline=0}

A simple way to implement a comment
\begin{comment}
    anything can go in here \begin{itemize} ...
\end{comment}
environment is shown in this example.
```

4-2-36

Inline verbatim material

The `fancyvrb` version of `\verb` is called `\Verb`, and it supports all applicable keys, which can be passed to it via an optional argument as usual.

The example below creates `\verbx` as a variant of `\Verb` with a special setting of `commandchars` so that we can execute commands within its argument. We have to use `\CustomVerbatimCommand` for this purpose, because `\verbx` is a new command not available in standard L^AT_EX. As one can see, both `\Verb` and its custom variant support the star form that produces visible spaces.

```

\usepackage{fancyvrb}
\CustomVerbatimCommand\verbx{Verb}{commandchars=\\<>}
\Verb*[fontfamily=courier] +\realdanger {|\emph<arg>}+
\realdanger_{|\emph<arg>} \verbx*[fontfamily=courier]+\realdanger {|\emph<arg>}+
\realdanger_{arg} \verbx+\realdanger {|\emph<arg>}+
```

4-2-37

Inline verbatim material in dangerous places

TeX's standard `\verb` command normally cannot be used inside arguments, because in such places the parsing mechanism would go astray, producing incorrect results or error messages. One solution to this problem is to process the verbatim data outside the argument, save it, and later use the already parsed data in such dangerous places. For this purpose the `fancyvrb` package offers the commands `\SaveVerb` and `\UseVerb`.

`\SaveVerb[key/value list]{label}=data=`
`\UseVerb*[key/value list]{label}`

The command `\SaveVerb` takes one mandatory argument, a *label* denoting the storage bin in which to save the parsed data. It is followed by the verbatim *data* surrounded by two identical characters (= in the syntax example above), in the same way that `\verb` delimits its argument. To use this data you call `\UseVerb` with the *label* as the mandatory argument. Because the data are only parsed but not typeset by `\SaveVerb`, it is possible to influence the typesetting by applying a list of key/value pairs or a star as with the other verbatim commands and environments. Clearly, only a subset of keys make sense: irrelevant ones are silently ignored. The `\UseVerb` command is robust, so you can use it in moving arguments, e.g., headings without further protection.

Contents

1 Real \danger

6

1 Real \danger

Real_\danger is no longer dangerous and can be reused as often as desired.

Real_\danger

```

\usepackage{fancyvrb}
\SaveVerb{danger}=Real \danger=
\tableofcontents \medskip

\section{\UseVerb{danger}}
\UseVerb*{danger} is no longer dangerous
and can\marginpar{\UseVerb[fontsize=\tiny]{danger}}
be reused as often as desired.

```

4-2-38

It is possible to reuse such a storage bin when it is no longer needed, but if you use `\UseVerb` inside commands that distribute their arguments over a large distance, you have to be careful to ensure that the storage bin still contains the desired contents when the command finally typesets it. In the previous example we placed `\SaveVerb` into the preamble because the use of its storage bin inside the `\section` command eventually results in an execution of `\UseVerb` inside the `\tableofcontents` command.

`\SaveVerb` also accepts an optional argument in which you can put key/value pairs, though again only a few are relevant (e.g., those dealing with parsing). There is one additional key `aftersave`, which takes code to execute immediately after saving the verbatim text into the storage bin. The next example shows an application of this key: the definition of a special variant of the `\item` command that accepts verbatim text for display in a `description` environment. It also supports an optional argument in which you can put a key/value list to influence the formatting. The definition

is worth studying, even though the amount of mixed braces and brackets seems distressingly complex at first. They are necessary to ensure that the correct brackets are matched by `\SaveVerb`, `\item`, and `\UseVerb`—the usual problem, because brackets do not nest like braces do in \TeX .¹ Also note the use of `\textnormal`, which is needed to cancel the `\bfseries` implicitly issued by the `\item` command. Otherwise, the `\emph` command in the example would not show any effect because no Computer Modern bold italic face exists.

	<code>\usepackage{fancyvrb}</code>
<code>\ddanger</code> Dangerous beast	<code>\newcommand\vitm[1] [] {\SaveVerb[commandchars=\\<>,%</code>
found in \TeX books.	<code>aftersave={\item[\textnormal{\UseVerb[#1]{vsave}}]}{vsave}}</code>
	<code>\begin{description}</code>
<code>\danger</code> Its small brother, still	<code>\vitm+\ddanger+ Dangerous beast found in \TeX books.</code>
dangerous.	<code>\vitm[fontsize=\tiny]+\danger+ Its small brother,</code>
	<code>still dangerous.</code>
<code>\dddanger{arg}</code> The ulti-	<code>\vitm+\dddanger{|\emph{arg}}+ The ultimate horror.</code>
mate horror.	<code>\end{description}</code>

4-2-39

In the same way, you can save whole verbatim environments using the environment `SaveVerbatim`, which takes the name of a storage bin as the mandatory argument. To typeset them, `\UseVerbatim` or `\BUseVerbatim` (boxed version) with the usual key/value machinery can be used.

*Special case:
footnotes*

Even though verbatim commands or environments are normally not allowed inside footnotes, you do not need to deploy `\SaveVerb` and the like to get verbatim text into such places. Instead, place the command `\VerbatimFootnotes` at the beginning of your document (following the preamble!), and from that point onward, you can use verbatim commands directly in footnotes. However, this was implemented only for footnotes—for other commands, such as `\section`, you still need the more complicated storage bin method described above.

A bit of text to give us a reason to use	<code>\usepackage{fancyvrb}</code>
a footnote. ¹ Was this good enough?	<code>\VerbatimFootnotes</code>
	A bit of text to give us a reason to use a
	footnote.\footnote{Here is proof: \verb=\danger{%-^}=}
	Was this good enough?

4-2-40

Verbatim shorthands

As already mentioned, `fancyvrb` offers a way to make a certain character denote the start and stop of verbatim text without the need to put `\verb` in front. The command to declare such a delimiting character is `\DefineShortVerb`. Like other `fancyvrb` commands it accepts an optional argument that allows you to set key/value pairs. These influence the formatting and parsing, though this time you cannot overwrite your choices on the individual instance. Alternatively, `\fvset` can be used, because it works on all verbatim commands and environments within its scope. To

¹The author confesses that it took him three trials (close to midnight) to make this example work.

remove the special meaning from a character declared with `\DefineShortVerb`, use `\UndefineShortVerb`.

```
\usepackage{fancyvrb}
\DefineShortVerb[fontsize=\tiny]{\|}
The use of |\DefineShortVerb| can make sources
much more readable---or unreadable!
```

The use of `\DefineShortVerb` can make sources much more readable—or unreadable!

And with `\UndefineShortVerb{\|}` we can return the `|` character back to normal.

```
\UndefineShortVerb{\|}\DefineShortVerb{+}
\fvset{fontfamily=courier}
And with +\UndefineShortVerb{\|}+
we can return the |+ character back to normal.
```

4-2-41

Extension to inline verbatim by `fvextra`

The `fvextra` package extends the support for inline verbatim material in several ways. It provides an `\fvinlineset` declaration that applies only to commands related to inline typesetting like `\Verb`, `\SaveVerb`, etc. This extends/overwrites settings made with `\fvset` declarations so that it is possible to set up different conventions for the two cases.

In the following example we use it to typeset inline verbatim in Courier while `Verbatim` uses a different font. We also show that the reimplementations of `\Verb` in the `fvextra` package supports line breaking if enabled with the `breaklines` key.

No break in this piece of verbatim text but now this verbatim text will break at spaces as shown in this line.

```
\usepackage{fvextra}
\fvinlineset{fontfamily=courier}
No break in \Verb+this piece of verbatim+ text but
now \Verb[breaklines]+this verbatim text will+
break at spaces as shown in this line.
\begin{Verbatim}
This is a different font!
\end{Verbatim}
```

4-2-42

This is a different font!

The recent version of the `fvextra` package also offers an `\EscVerb` command that can be safely used in arguments of other commands. It works like `\Verb` but turns the backslash into an escape character allowing you to escape problematical characters such as `#` or `%`. The only restriction is that its argument has to be delimited by a brace group and not by two identical characters.

The next example shows a few of the problematical characters and how they can be handled. Single spaces are fine, but multiple ones in succession are collapsed to one or require a backslash in front of all but the first. Properly paired braces work, but if you need unbalanced ones, you need to escape them, and obviously the backslash itself needs escaping and so does the comment character.

Also shown is that the `fvextra` reimplementations of `\Verb` can also be used inside other arguments, though it does have limitations there: spaces get lost after commands, and you cannot use unbalanced braces or `#` or `%` characters at all. Nevertheless,

in many practical cases it produces correct results, and it does work properly in PDF bookmarks showing verbatim content.

Contents

1	Space _□ \danger _{□□} {%	6	\usepackage{fvextra}	
1.1	Space _□ \danger{}	6	\tableofcontents \medskip	
1	Space _□ \danger _{□□} {%		\section{\EscVerb*{Space \\\danger \ \{\}%}}	
No \danger #	\EscVerb*{. . .} is not dangerous and can be used anywhere.		\EscVerb{\EscVerb*{...}} is not dangerous and can\marginpar{\EscVerb[fontsize=\tiny]{No \\\danger \#}}	
1.1	Space _□ \danger{}		be used anywhere.	
	And this works with limitations in fvextra.		\subsection{\Verb*{Space \danger {}}}	
			And this works with limitations in \textsf{fvextra}.	4-2-43

External configuration

Your favorite extensions or customizations can be grouped in a file with the name `fancyvrb.cfg`. After `fancyvrb` finishes loading, the package automatically searches for this file. The advantage of using such a file, when installed in a central place, is that you do not have to put your extensions into all your documents. The downside is that your documents are no longer portable unless you distribute this file in tandem with them.

4.2.5 listings — Pretty-printing program code

A common application of verbatim typesetting is presenting program code. While one can successfully deploy a package like `fancyvrb` to handle this job, it is often preferable to enhance the display by typesetting certain program components (such as keywords, identifiers, and comments) in a special way.

Two major approaches are possible: one can provide commands to identify the logical aspects of algorithms or the programming language, or the application can (try to) analyze the program code behind the scenes. The second cases can be subdivided into complete processing within \LaTeX or processing the algorithm with some external program and (automatically) including the results.

The advantage of the first approach is that you have potentially more control over the presentation; however, your program code is intermixed with \TeX commands and thus may be difficult to maintain, is unusable for direct processing, and is often rather complicated to read in the source. Examples of packages classified into this category are `algorithms` (using fully uppercased command names) and `algorithmicx` and its offsprings like `algpseudocode`. Here is an example:

1:	if $i \leq 0$ then		\usepackage{algpseudocode}	
2:	$i \leftarrow 1$	▷ main case	\begin{algorithmic}[1	
3:	else if $i > 0$ then		\If $\{i \leq 0\}$ \State i \gets1\$ \Comment{main case}	
4:	$i \leftarrow 0$		\ElsIf $\{i > 0\}$ \State i \gets0\$ \EndIf	
5:	end if		\end{algorithmic}	4-2-44

ABAP (R/2 4.3, R/2 5.0, R/3 3.1, R/3 4.6C, R/3 6.10)	csh Delphi Eiffel Elan elisp erlang Euphoria Fortran (77, 90, 95, 03, 08)	Mathematica (1.0, 3.0, 5.2, 11.0) Matlab Mercury MetaPost Miranda Mizar ML Modula-2 MuPAD NASTRAN Oberon-2 OCL (decorative, OMG) Octave OORExx Oz Pascal (Borland6, Standard, XSC) Perl PHP PL/I Plasm PostScript POV Prolog Python R	Reduce Rexx (empty, VM/XA) RSL Ruby S (empty, PLUS) SAS Scala Scilab sh SHELXL Simula (67, CII, DEC, IBM) SPARQL SQL Swift tcl (empty, tk) TeX (AllaTeX, common, LaTeX, plain, primitive) VBScript Verilog VHDL (empty, AMS) VRML (97) XML XSLT
ACM ACMscript ACSL Ada (83, 95, 2005) Algol (60, 68) Ant Assembler (Motorola68k, x86masm) Awk (gnu, POSIX) bash Basic (Visual) C (ANSI, Handel, Objective, Sharp) C++ (11, ANSI, GNU, ISO, Visual) Caml (light, Objective) CIL Clean Cobol (1974, 1985, ibm) Comal 80 command.com (WinXP) Comsol	GAP GCL Gnuplot Go hansl Haskell HTML IDL (empty, CORBA) inform Java (empty, AspectJ) JVMIS ksh Lingo Lisp (empty, Auto) LLVM Logo Lua (5.0, 5.1, 5.2, 5.3) Make (empty, gnu)		

blue indicates the default dialect

Table 4.4: Languages supported by listings (spring 2022)

The second approach is exemplified in the package listings written by Carsten Heinz, now maintained by Jobst Hoffmann. This package first analyzes the code, decomposes it into its components, and then formats those components according to customizable rules. The package parser is quite general and can be tuned to recognize the syntax of many different languages (see Table 4.4). New languages are regularly added, so if your target language is not listed, it might be worth checking the latest release of the package on CTAN. You may even consider contributing the necessary declarations yourself, which involves some work but is not very difficult.

The user commands and environments in this package share many similarities with those in fancyvrb. Aspects of parsing and formatting are controlled via key/value pairs specified in an optional argument, and settings for the whole document or larger parts of it can be specified using \lstset (the corresponding fancyvrb command is \fvset). Whenever appropriate, both packages use the same keys so that users of one package should find it easy to make the transition to the other.

After loading the package, it is helpful to specify all program languages needed in the document (as a comma-separated list) using `\lstloadlanguages`. Such a declaration does not select a language, but merely loads the necessary support information and speeds up processing.

Program fragments are included inside a `lstlisting` environment. The language of the fragment is specified with the `language` key. Specifying a dialect is done in brackets in front of the language name and therefore requires an extra set of braces if you are in an optional argument — e.g., `language={ [83]Ada }`, as shown below. In the following example we set this key via `\lstset` to `C` and then overwrite it later in the optional argument to the second `lstlisting` environment:

A “for” loop in C:

```
int sum;
int i; /* for loop variable */
sum=0;
for (i=0;i<n;i++) { sum += a[i]; }
```

Now the same loop in Ada 83:

```
Sum: Integer;
-- no decl for 'I' necessary
Sum := 0;
for I in 1..N loop
  Sum := Sum + A(I);
end loop;
```

```
\usepackage{listings}
\lstloadlanguages{C,Ada}
\lstset{language=C,commentstyle=\scriptsize}
A “for” loop in C:
\begin{lstlisting}[keywordstyle=\underbar]
int sum;
int i; /*for loop variable*/
sum=0;
for (i=0;i<n;i++) { sum += a[i]; }
\end{lstlisting}
Now the same loop in Ada 83:
\begin{lstlisting}[language={ [83]Ada }]
Sum: Integer;
-- no decl for 'I' necessary
Sum := 0;
for I in 1..N loop
  Sum := Sum + A(I);
end loop;
\end{lstlisting}
```

4-2-45

This example also uses the key `commentstyle`, which controls the layout of comments in the language. The package properly identifies the different syntax styles for comments. Several other such keys are available as well — `basicstyle` to set the overall appearance of the listing, `stringstyle` to format strings in the language, and `directivestyle` to format compiler directives, among others.

To format the language keywords, the key `keywordstyle` is used. The language may distinguish different classes (levels) of keywords, and if so, handling of those classes is managed by prefixing the value with `[number]`. If you prefix the value with a `*`, then the keywords are uppercased.

Other identifiers are formatted according to the setting of `identifierstyle`. The values for the “style” keys (except `basicstyle`) accept a one-argument \LaTeX command such as `\textbf` as their last token. This scheme works because the “identifier text” is internally surrounded by braces and can thus be picked up by a command with an argument.

Thus, highlighting of keywords, identifiers, and other elements is done automatically in a customizable way. Nevertheless, you might want to additionally emphasize the use of a certain variable, function, or interface. For this purpose you can use the keys `emph` and `emphstyle`. The first gets a list of names you want to emphasize; the second specifies how you want them typeset. Again, you can define different classes and specialized handling for each as shown in the example.

```

\usepackage{listings,color}
\lstset{keywordstyle=\textsf,emph={Sum,N},emph=[2]I,
        emphstyle=\color{blue},emphstyle=[2]\underbar}

\begin{lstlisting}[language=Ada]
Sum: Integer;   Sum := 0;
for I in 1..N loop
    Sum := Sum + A(I);
end loop;
\end{lstlisting}

```

4-2-46

If you want to typeset a code fragment within normal text, you can use the command `\lstinline`. The code is delimited in the same way as with the `\verb` command, meaning that you can choose any character (other than the open bracket) that is not used within the code fragment and use it as a delimiter. An open bracket cannot be used because the command also accepts an optional argument in which you can specify a list of key/value pairs.

```

\usepackage{listings} \lstset{language=C}
The \lstinline[keywordstyle=\underbar]!for!
loop is specified as \lstinline!i=0;i<n;i++!.

```

4-2-47

Of course, it is also possible to format the contents of whole files; for this purpose you use the command `\lstinputlisting`. It takes an optional argument in which you can specify key/value pairs and a mandatory argument in which you specify the file name to process. In the following example, the package identifies keywords of case-insensitive languages, even if they are written in an unusual mixed-case (`WrItE`) manner.

```

\usepackage{listings}
\begin{filecontents*}{pascal.src}
for i:=1 to maxint do
begin
    WrItE('This is stupid');
end.
\end{filecontents*}
\lstinputlisting[language=Pascal]{pascal.src}

```

4-2-48

Spaces within strings (of the language) are shown as `_` by default. This behavior can be turned off by setting the Boolean key `showstringspaces` to `false`, as shown in Example 4-2-50 on the next page.

It is also possible to request that all spaces be displayed in this way by setting the key `showspaces` to `true`. Similarly, tab characters can be made visible by using the Boolean key `showtabs`. What is displayed for the tab character in this case can be adjusted through the `tab` key. By default a fixed number of spaces is generated. The number depends on the value of `tabsize` and defaults to 8.

The previous example already showed a somewhat questionable result in that the single quotes used to delimit the string showed up as typographic quotes rather than straight quotes. The same is true by default for back quotes, and if you do not like this, you can use the Boolean key `upquote` as shown in the next example.

```

\usepackage{listings}
\lstset{language=bash}

\begin{lstlisting}
cp 'kpsewhich listings.cfg' './$$'
\end{lstlisting}
\begin{lstlisting}[upquote]
cp `kpsewhich listings.cfg` './$$'
\end{lstlisting}

```

4-2-49

Line numbering is possible, too, using the same keys as employed with `fancyvrb`: `numbers` accepts either `left`, `right`, or `none` (which turns numbering on or off), `numberblanklines` decides whether blank lines count with respect to numbering (default `false`), `numberstyle` defines the overall look and feel of the numbers, `stepnumber` defines which line numbers appear (0 means no numbering), and `numbersep` defines the separation between numbers and the start of the line.

By default, line numbering starts with 1 on each `\lstinputlisting`, but this can be changed using the `firstnumber` key. If you specify `last` as a special value to `firstnumber`, numbering is continued. Also supported is `numberfirstline` to number the first line of the display even if it is not dividable by the `stepnumber`.

The next example shows some of these keys in action: we request line numbers on every second line, start with line number 9, and also request that the first line is numbered. Thus, we get numbers on lines 9, 10, and 12.

```

\usepackage{listings}
% pascal.src as defined before

Some text before ...
\lstset{numberstyle=\tiny,numbers=left,
        numbersep=5pt,
        firstnumber=9,stepnumber=2,numberfirstline,
        xleftmargin=12pt,showstringspaces=false}
9  for i:=1 to maxint do
10 begin
    WrItE('This is stupid');
12 end.
\lstinputlisting[language=Pascal]{pascal.src}

```

4-2-50

Another way to provide continued numbering is via the `name` key. If you define “named” environments using this key, numbering is automatically continued with

respect to the previous environment with the same name. This allows independent numbering if the need arises.

		<code>\usepackage{listings} \lstset{language=Ada,numbers=right, numberstyle=\tiny,stepnumber=1,numbersep=5pt}</code>
		<code>\begin{lstlisting}[name=Test]</code>
Sum: Integer;	1	Sum: Integer;
		<code>\end{lstlisting}</code>
The second fragment continues the numbering.		The second fragment continues the numbering. <code>\begin{lstlisting}[name=Test]</code>
Sum := 0;	2	Sum := 0;
for I in 1..N loop	3	for I in 1..N loop
Sum := Sum + A(I);	4	Sum := Sum + A(I);
end loop;	5	end loop;
		<code>\end{lstlisting}</code>

4-2-51

The line number is managed through the counter `lstnumber`; thus by redefining `\thelstnumber`, you can exercise even more control. However, this can be somewhat dangerous if fragile commands are involved, and a better method is to use the fact that you can pass a command with one argument as the last command to `numberstyle` as demonstrated below:

Some text to show the margins.		<code>\usepackage{listings}</code>
		<code>\lstset{numbers=left,firstnumber=4711, numberstyle=\tiny\oldstylenums}</code>
4711 A code line		<code>\noindent Some text to show the margins.</code>
4712 Another line		<code>\begin{lstlisting}[xleftmargin=10pt,xrightmargin=10pt,breaklines]</code>
		A code line
		Another line
		<code>\end{lstlisting}</code>
4713 led final line (9 chars dropped)		<code>\begin{lstlisting}[firstnumber=last,breaklines,gobble=9]</code>
		A crippled final line (9 chars dropped)
		<code>\end{lstlisting}</code>

4-2-52

Looking at the examples so far, you may have wondered about the fact that the words all appear letter-spaced. This observation is correct: even though listings by default does not use monospaced fonts, it arranges the characters such that they are vertically aligned, which for many applications is the best way to display program code. Technically this is done on a word-by-word basis. The key `basewidth` (default 0.6em) defines the width reserved per character. Words are then placed into a box with a width that is an appropriate multiple of `basewidth`, and the characters of the words are then evenly spread out within those boxes. If the reserved space is too small, the characters get cramped together or even overlap each other.

Vertical alignment

However, this behavior can be adjusted through the `columns` key, which accepts the values `fixed` (default), `flexible`, `spaceflexible`, and `fullflexible`. In

addition, you can prefix the value (except for `fullflexible`) with `[l]` or `[r]` to change the alignment within the allotted space from centered to left or right.

```

\usepackage{listings}
\lstset{language=bash,upquote,commentstyle=\tiny}

\begin{lstlisting}[columns=fixed]
cat `kpsewhich bm.sty` # package
texdoc bm                # doc/code
\end{lstlisting}

\begin{lstlisting}[columns={[l]flexible}]
cat `kpsewhich bm.sty` # package is where?
texdoc bm                # display doc/code
\end{lstlisting}

\begin{lstlisting}[columns=fullflexible]
cat `kpsewhich bm.sty` # package is where?
texdoc bm                # display doc/code
\end{lstlisting}

```

cat `kpsewhich bm.sty` # package is where ?
texdoc bm # display doc/code

4-2-53

In the flexible formats the `basewidth` is by default reduced to `.45em` so that the characters move closer together and the material needs less space. Furthermore, all glyphs are typeset at their normal width and never overlap. If a string needs more space than was reserved for it, it simply shifts everything after it to the right and thus ruins the vertical alignment (which you may or may not care about). The `flexible` format at least tries to maintain alignment if strings are shorter than the space reserved for them by adding extra spaces (`spaceflexible` works similarly, but does this only at real space characters in the source). The value `fullflexible` makes no attempt at alignment whatsoever and typesets everything at its nominal width (which also reduces multiple spaces to a single space!).

The previous example used `commentstyle` to make the comments tiny, and in that case the default value of `0.6em` for `basewidth` was particularly inappropriate because it is evaluated only once (for the standard font size). To account for this, the package offers `fontadjust`, which, if set, reevaluates `basewidth` each time a font change happens. Of course, this has an effect only if the value of that key is given in a font-specific unit, such as `em` or `ex`.

```

\usepackage{listings}
\lstset{language=bash,upquote,commentstyle=\tiny}

\begin{lstlisting}[fontadjust]
cat `kpsewhich bm.sty` # package
texdoc bm                # doc/code
\end{lstlisting}

```

cat `kpsewhich bm.sty` # package
texdoc bm # doc/code

4-2-54

Horizontal spacing

An overall indentation can be set using the `xleftmargin` and `xrightmargin` keys as shown in Example 4-2-52 on the preceding page. The latter only has some effect if line breaks are allowed, i.e., when the `breaklines` key is used. Otherwise, all you see are overfull box warnings. With `gobble` you can remove a certain number of

characters (hopefully only spaces) from the left of each line to be displayed. Normally, indentations of surrounding environments like `itemize` are honored. This feature can be turned off using the Boolean key `resetmargin`. Of course, all such keys can be used together.

By default vertical spaces are added before and after the environment. They can be controlled through the keys `aboveskip` and `belowskip` (the default value is `\medskipamount` in both cases).

Vertical spacing

To format only a subrange of the code lines you can specify the first and/or last line via `firstline` and `lastline`; for example, `lastline=10` would typeset a maximum of 10 code lines. A generalization of this concept is provided with the `linrange` key, which expects a sorted list of line number ranges, e.g., `{1-2,10-100}` to display the first two lines and then everything from line ten onwards (assuming the display is less than a hundred lines). Note that you need to brace the values when it contains commas.

If a listing contains very long lines, they may not fit into the available measure. In that case `listings` produces overfull lines sticking out to the right, just like a `verbatim` environment would do. However, you can direct it to break long lines at spaces or punctuation characters by specifying the key `breaklines`. Wrapped lines are indented by 20pt, a value that can be adjusted through the key `breakindent`.

Line breaking and continuation symbols

If desired, you can add something before (key `prebreak`) and after the break (key `postbreak`) to indicate that the line was artificially broken in the listing. We use this ability below to experiment with small arrows and later with the string “(cont.)” in tiny letters. Both keys are internally implemented as a TeX `\discretionary`, which means that they accept only certain input (characters, boxes, and kerns). For more complicated material it would be best to wrap everything in an `\mbox`, as we did in the example. In the case of color changes, even that is not enough: you need an extra level of braces to prevent the color `\special` from escaping from the box (see the discussion in Appendix A.3.5); otherwise, you get a low-level error.

The example exhibits another feature of the breaking mechanism — namely, if spaces or tabs appear in front of the material being broken, then these spaces are by default repeated on continuation lines. If this behavior is not desired, set the key `breakautoindent` to `false` as we did in the second part of the example.

```

\usepackage{color,listings}
\lstset{breaklines=true,breakindent=0pt,
        prebreak=\mbox{{\color{blue}\tiny$\searrow$}},
        postbreak=\mbox{{\color{blue}\tiny$\rightarrow$}}}

Text at left margin
/*A long string ↘
→ is broken ↘
→ across the ↘
→ line !*/

\begin{lstlisting}
Text at left margin
/*A long string is broken across the line!*/
\end{lstlisting}

Text at left margin
/*A long string ↘
(cont.) is broken across ↘
(cont.) the line !*/

\begin{lstlisting}[breakautoindent=false,
                  postbreak=\tiny (cont.)\,]
Text at left margin
/*A long string is broken across the line!*/
\end{lstlisting}

```


You can put frames or rules around listings using the `frame` key, which takes the same values as it does in `fancyvrb` (e.g., `single`, `lines`). In addition, it accepts the value `shadowbox` and a subset of the string “`trblTRBL`” as its value. The uppercase letters stand for double rules, and the lowercase ones for single rules. There are half a dozen more keys: to influence rule widths, create separation from the text, make round corners, and so on — all of them are compatible with `fancyvrb` if the same functionality is provided.

```
for i:=1 to maxint do
begin
  \WrtE( 'This is stupid' );
end .
```

```
\usepackage{listings}
% pascal.src as defined before
\lstset{frame=trBL,framerule=2pt,framesep=4pt,
  rulesep=1pt,showspaces=true}
\lstinputlisting[language=Pascal]{pascal.src}
```

4-2-56

You can specify a caption for individual listings using the key `caption`. The captions are, by default, numbered and prefixed with the string `Listing` stored in `\lstlistingname`. If you want a caption but without a number or any other additional text, use the `title` key instead of `caption`. The spacing around the caption is controlled through `abovcaptionskip` and `belowcaptionskip`.

The counter used is `lstlisting`; thus, to change its appearance you could modify `\thelstlisting`. The caption is positioned either above (default) or below the listing, and this choice can be adjusted using the `captionpos` key. If the document class used provides chapters, then the listings are numbered by chapter by default. If this is not desired, set `numberbychapter` to `false`.

To get a list of all captions, put the command `\lstlistoflistings` at an appropriate place in your document. It produces a heading containing the words stored in `\lstlistlistingname` (default is `Listings`). If you want the caption text in the document to differ from the caption text in the list of listings, use an optional argument as shown in the following example. Note that in this case you need braces around the value to hide the right bracket. To prevent the caption from appearing in the list of listings, use the key `no1ol` with a value of `true`. By using the `label` key you can specify a label for referencing the listing number via `\ref`, provided that you have not suppressed the number.

Listings

1 Pascal listing 6

The Pascal code in listing 1 shows...

```
for i:=1 to maxint do
begin
  \WrtE( 'This is stupid' );
end .
```

Listing 1: Pascal

```
\usepackage{listings} % pascal.src as before
\lstset{frame=single,frameround=tftt,
  language=Pascal,captionpos=b}
\lstlistoflistings
  % Normally the above is in the
\bigskip % front matter section, but here ...
\noindent % ... so we need to help a bit.
The Pascal code in listing~\ref{foo} shows\ldots
\lstinputlisting
[caption={[Pascal listing]Pascal},label=foo]
{pascal.src}
```

4-2-57

The key `framaround` used in the previous example allows you to specify round corners by giving `t` for true and `f` for false, starting with the upper-right corner and moving clockwise. This feature is not available with `fancyvrb` frames.

Instead of formatting your listings within the text, you can turn them into floats by using the key `float`, typically together with the `caption` key. Its value is a subset of `htbp` specifying where the float is allowed to go (using it without a value is equivalent to the value of `floatplacement`, which defaults to `tbp`). If your document is in two-column mode, you can alternatively use the key `float*`, which makes your listing span both columns. You should, however, avoid mixing floating and nonfloating listings because this could sometimes result in captions being numbered out of order, as in Example 7-3-5 on page 533.

Due to its implementation model, `listings` expects the characters it receives as input to be represented as single tokens. In pdfTeX this is the case for characters in the ASCII range, but not for others if the input file is encoded in UTF-8 (which is the default now)¹. Characters such as “ü” or “ß” are then internally represented by several bytes, each of which is seen by pdfTeX as an individual token, and `listings` consequently attempts to handle them separately with disastrous consequences.

pdfTeX
restrictions with
UTF-8 characters

Unicode engines

In Unicode engines this is less of a problem² because all UTF-8 characters are seen as single tokens. Thus, the next example would fail with pdfTeX showing several “Invalid UTF-8 byte sequence” errors while it compiles successfully with XeTeX or LuaTeX.

4-2-58

```
int i; /* für die äußere Schleife */
```

```
\usepackage{listings}
\lstset{language=C,commentstyle=\scriptsize}
\begin{lstlisting}
int i; /*für die äußere Schleife*/
\end{lstlisting}
```

Example 4-2-61 on page 333 shows a method to process arbitrary UTF-8 characters inside `lstlisting`, even when using pdfTeX. However, it requires some special setup and so it is usually best to stick to ASCII characters or use one of the Unicode engines if such characters are needed often in your listings.

The `\lstset` declaration works great if you need a single set of default values throughout your document. However, if you use a number of different settings repeatedly, then it would be nice to be able to recall those easily, and for this the package offers the `\lstdefinestyle` declaration. It takes two arguments: the *name* for your style and a *key/value list*. Once declared, you can then use this *name* as the value to the `style` key to activate its *key/value list*. You can still add further keys at the environment level or overwrite some. It is even possible to do recursive definitions though they are probably seldom needed.

Predeclaring listings
styles

¹ If pdfTeX is used with `inputenc` and an 8-bit encoding instead of UTF-8, then some level of support for 8-bit characters is available, as discussed in the package documentation.

² There are still issues with multibyte characters above code point U+00FF, i.e., not all is well.

The example also shows a few other keys that we have not yet discussed: with `backgroundcolor` you can provide some background coloring, the color of the shadow is defined with `rulesepcolor`, and `framexleftmargin` adds space within the frame to make room for the line number.

```

\usepackage{color,listings}
\lstdefinestyle{tlc}{rulesepcolor=\color{blue},
  keywordstyle=\underbar,framexleftmargin=20pt,
  frame=shadowbox,backgroundcolor=\color{yellow}}
\lstset{language=[LaTeX]TeX,numbers=left}
\begin{lstlisting}
\textbf{Note:} \textit{\#1}
\end{lstlisting}
\begin{lstlisting}[style=tlc,firstnumber=last]
\textbf{Note:} \textit{\#1}
\end{lstlisting}

```

4-2-59

*Setting the default
language dialect*

In the previous example we displayed \LaTeX code, and the language to use for this is TeX. For historical reasons it is not the default dialect (which is plain). Thus, to get the language keywords correctly recognized, we explicitly selected the desired dialect by writing `[LaTeX]TeX`. This is okay in an one-off situation but a nuisance when you have to do this often. An alternative is to change the default dialect for your favorite languages using the `defaultdialect` key as follows:

```
\lstset{defaultdialect=[LaTeX]TeX, defaultdialect=[5.2]Lua}
```

This key can be used several times to set dialect defaults for multiple languages.

The package offers many more keys to influence the presentation. For instance, you can escape to \LaTeX for special formatting tricks, display tab or formfeed characters, index certain identifiers, or interface to `hyperref` so that clicking on some identifier jumps to the previous occurrence. Some of the features are still considered experimental, and you have to request them using an optional argument during package loading. These are all documented in great detail in the manual (roughly 60 pages) accompanying the package [69].

As a final example of the kind of treasures you can find in that manual, look at the following example. It shows code typesetting as known from Donald Knuth's literate programming conventions.

```

\usepackage{xcolor,listings}
\lstset{literate={:=}{\${\gets}}{2} {<=}{\${\leq}}{1}
  {>=}{\${\geq}}{1} {<>}{\${\neq}}{1}}
\begin{lstlisting}[backgroundcolor=\color{yellow}]
var i:integer;
if (i<>0) i := i/2;
if (i<=0) i := i+1;
if (i>=0) i := i-1;
\end{lstlisting}

```

4-2-60

The `literate` key expects a list of triplets (separated by space). The first value (in braces if more than one character) tells listings what to scan for, e.g., the sequence “:=”; the second tells it what to replace those characters with, i.e., `{\getss$}`¹; and the third tells it how wide it should think the result is when it comes to alignment, i.e., two characters for the arrow but only one for the other substitutions in the above example.

This mechanism can also be used to make pdfTeX aware of problematical UTF-8 characters because to pdfTeX something like “ä” looks like a sequence of several 8-bit characters for which it therefore could scan. Thus, using a triplet such as `{ä}{\“a”}{1}` would tell listings to replace the sequence representing “ä” with its ASCII representation, and doing this for all problematical UTF-8 characters would then solve the issue. Here is a repeat of Example 4-2-58 that works with pdfTeX:

```

\usepackage{listings}
% Setting up UTF8 characters ...
\lstset{literate={ä}{\“a”}{1}
           {ü}{\“u”}{1}
           {ß}{\“ss”}{1}}
% Setting up other key defaults ...
\lstset{language=C,commentstyle=\scriptsize}
\begin{lstlisting}
int i; /*für die äußere Schleife*/
\end{lstlisting}

```

4-2-61

While setting this up is a one-time effort that can be reused, it is nevertheless a somewhat cumbersome exercise and not exactly trivial.

4.3 Lines and columns

We now present a few packages that help in manipulating the text stream in its entirety. The first package (`lineno`) deals with attaching line numbers to paragraphs, supporting automatic references to them. This can be useful in critical editions and other scholarly works.

The second package (`paracol`) deals with the problem of presenting two text streams side by side — for example, some original and its translation. We show how both packages can be combined in standard cases.

The third package (`multicol`) deals with layouts having multiple columns. It allows switching between different numbers of columns on the same page and supports balancing textual data. Standard L^AT_EX already offers the possibility of typesetting text in one- or two-column mode, but one- and two-column output cannot be mixed on the same page.

We finish the section with a short example of the `multicolrule` package that allows you to define customized “rules” to appear between columns on the page.

¹The extra set of braces in the replacement text is needed; details are given in the manual.

4.3.1 `lineno` — Numbering lines of text

In certain applications it is useful or even necessary to number the lines of paragraphs to be able to refer to them. As \TeX optimizes the line breaking over the whole paragraph, it is ill equipped to provide such a facility, because technically line breaking happens at a very late stage during the processing, just before the final pages are constructed. At that point macro processing, which could add the right line number or handle automatic references, has already taken place. Hence, the only ways to achieve line numbering is either by not doing line breaking (as in the case of `fancyvrb` and similar packages) or by deconstructing the completed page line by line in the “output routine” (i.e., the part of \TeX that normally breaks the paragraph galley into pages and adds running headers and footers) and attaching the appropriate line numbers at that stage.

The latter approach was taken by Stephan Böttcher in his `lineno` package (for a number of years maintained by Uwe Lück (1962–2020) and since 2022 maintained by Karl Wette). Although one would expect such an undertaking to work only in a restricted environment, his package is surprisingly robust and works seamlessly with many other packages — even those that modify the \TeX output routine, such as `ftnright`, `multicol`, and `wrapfig`. It also supports layouts produced with the `twocolumn` option of the standard \TeX classes.

`\linenumbers[start-number]` `\linenumbers*` `\nolinenumbers`

Loading the `lineno` package has no direct effect: to activate line numbering, a `\linenumbers` command must be specified in the preamble or at some point in the document. The command `\nolinenumbers` deactivates line numbering again. Line numbering works on a per-paragraph basis. Thus, when \TeX sees the end of a paragraph, it checks whether line numbering is currently requested and, if so, attaches numbers to *all* lines of that paragraph. It is therefore best to put these commands between paragraphs rather than within them.

The `\linenumbers` command can take an optional argument that denotes the number to use for the first line. If used without such an argument, it continues from where it stopped numbering previously. You can also use a star form, which is a shorthand for `\linenumbers[1]`.

No line numbers here. Some text to experiment with line numbering.

Here we get line numbers. Some text to experiment with line numbering.

And here too. Some text to experiment with line numbering.

Restart with a negative number and continue for a few lines. Some text to experiment with line numbering.

And once more no numbers. Some text to experiment with line numbering.

```
\usepackage{lineno}
\newcommand\sample{ Some text to
    experiment with line numbering.\par}

No line numbers here.\sample
\linenumbers
Here we get line numbers.\sample
And here too.\sample
\linenumbers[-10]
Restart with a negative number and
continue for a few lines.\sample
\nolinenumbers
And once more no numbers.\sample
```

4-3-1

Rather than starting or stopping line numbering with the above commands, you can use the environment `linenumbers` to define the region that should get line numbers. This environment automatically issues a `\par` command at the end to terminate the current paragraph. If line numbers are needed only for short passages, the environment form (or one of the special environments `numquote` and `numquotation` described later) is preferable.

Because the production of line numbers involves the output routine, numbering takes place only for paragraphs being built and put on the “main vertical list” but not for those built inside boxes (e.g., not inside a `\marginpar` or within the body of a float). However, the package offers some limited support for numbering lines in such places via the `\internallinenumbers` command. Restrictions are that the baselines within such paragraphs need to be a fixed distance apart (otherwise, the numbers are not positioned correctly), and in \LaTeX releases prior to 2021 you may have to end such paragraphs with an explicit `\par` command. The `\internallinenumbers` command accepts a star and an optional argument just as `\linenumbers` does. However, the starred form not only ensures that line numbering is (re)started with 1, but also that the line numbers do not affect line numbering in the main vertical list; compare the results in the two `\marginpars` below.

Numbering boxed paragraphs

		<pre>\usepackage{lineno} % \sample defined as before \linenumbers Some text on the main vertical list! \marginpar{\footnotesize \internallinenumbers* \sample} \sample\sample In this paragraph we use a second \marginpar{\footnotesize \internallinenumbers This note continues the numbering in the main galley.} marginal note; this time affecting the line numbers as shown.</pre>	
1	Some text to experiment with line numbering.	1	Some text on the main vertical list! Some text to experiment with line numbering.
2		2	
3		3	
	Some text to experiment with line numbering.	4	
		5	
6	This note continues the numbering in the main galley.	9	In this paragraph we use a second marginal note; this time affecting the line numbers as shown.
7		10	
8		11	
		12	

4-3-2

The line numbers in the second `\marginpar` continue the numbering on the main vertical list (the last line of the preceding paragraph was 5), and the third paragraph then continues with line number 9. Such `\marginpar` commands are processed before the paragraph containing them is broken into lines, which explains the ordering of the numbers.

Because `lineno` needs `\par` to attach line numbers when the output routine is invoked, a \TeX problem arises when certain display math constructs are used: the partial paragraph above such a display is broken into lines by \TeX without issuing a `\par` command. As a consequence, without further help such a partial paragraph do not get any line numbers attached. The package’s solution, as illustrated in the next example, is to offer the environment `linenomath`, which, if it surrounds such a display, takes care of the line numbering problem.

Handling display math

Around the basic math environments of \LaTeX , e.g., `equation` or `displaymath`, the package automatically wraps a `linenomath` environment, and as of December 2022 it also does so for the environments provided by `amsmath`.

1 All is fine before a standard \LaTeX display:

$$x \neq y$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath,breqn,lineno}
\linenumbers
```

2 and as of 2022 also before `amsmath` displays:

$$x \neq y \quad (1)$$

However, we do not get line numbers in front of displays from other packages, for example, those from the `breqn` package:

$$0 < x \quad (2)$$

$$= x_0 + x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_{n-1} + x_n$$

```
All is fine before a standard \LaTeX\
display:
\[ x \neq y \]
and as of 2022 also before \texttt{amsmath}
displays:
\begin{align} x \neq y \end{align}
However, we do not get line numbers in front
of displays from other packages, for example,
those from the \texttt{breqn} package:
\begin{dmath} 0 < x = x_0 + x_1 +
x_2 + \dots + x_{n-1} + x_n \end{dmath}
They only show up again after the display.
```

4-3-3

Working with other math displays

If you use math display environments from packages other than `amsmath`, you can try wrapping them automatically into a `linenomath` environment. In the case of the `dmath` environment, you need an extra `\par` at the beginning or else the last line in front of the display will not get a line number; i.e.,

```
\AddToHook{env/dmath/before}{\par\begin{linenomath}}
\AddToHook{env/dmath/after}{\end{linenomath}}
```

However, this might be fixed in future releases of the package.

The `lineno` package offers the option `mathlines`, which results in numbering math displays that have been explicitly or implicitly surrounded by `linenomath`, as we show in the following example:

1 All math displays now show line numbers

$$x \neq y$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\usepackage[mathlines]{lineno}
\linenumbers
```

3 and the paragraph texts like this one

$$x \neq y \quad (1)$$

```
All math displays now show line numbers
\[ x \neq y \]
and the paragraph texts like this one
\begin{align} x \neq y \end{align}
correctly show line numbers as well.
```

5 correctly show line numbers as well.

4-3-4

Cross-references to line numbers

To reference line numbers put a `\linelabel` into the line and then refer to it via `\ref` or `\pageref`, just as with other references defined using `\label`. The exception is that `\linelabel` can be used only on the main vertical list and should

be used only within paragraphs that actually carry numbers. If it is used elsewhere, you get either a bogus reference (if the current line does not have a line number) or an error message (in places where `\linelabel` is not allowed).

<pre> 1 Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adi- 2 piscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, place- 3 rat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. (A) Curabitur dic- 4 tum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy 5 eget, consectetur id, vulputate a, magna. (B) Do- 6 nec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habi- 7 tant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada 8 fames ac turpis egestas. </pre>	<pre> \usepackage{lipsum,lineno} \linenumbers \lipsum[1][1-2] (A)\linelabel{first} \lipsum[1][3-4] (B)\linelabel{second} \lipsum[1][5-6] \par \nolinenumbers In the text we have labels on lines~\ref{first} and~\ref{second}, but not on line~\lineref{+3}{second}. </pre>
--	---

4-3-5

It is also possible to refer to a line that carries no `\linelabel`, by using the `\lineref` command with an optional argument specifying the offset. This ability can be useful if you need to refer to a line that cannot be easily labeled, such as a math display, or if you wish to refer to a sequence of lines, as in the previous example.

There are several ways to customize the visual appearance of line numbers. Specifying the option `modulo` means that line numbers appear on only some lines (default is every fifth). This effect can also be achieved by using the command `\modulolinenumbers`. Calling this command with an optional argument attaches numbers to lines that are multiples of the specified number (in particular, a value of 1 corresponds to normal numbering). Neither command nor option initiates line numbering mode: for that a `\linenumbers` command is still necessary.

Labeling only some lines

<pre> 1 Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod so- 2 dales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lo- 3 rem non justo. 4 And now a paragraph with numbers 5 on every second line. Nam lacus libero, pre- 6 tium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Do- 7 nec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, 8 erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio 9 metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit 10 mollis. </pre>	<pre> \usepackage{lipsum,lineno} \linenumbers \lipsum[2][1-2] \modulolinenumbers[2] \textbf{And now a paragraph with numbers on every second line.} \lipsum[2][3-5] </pre>
---	--

4-3-6

The font for line numbers is controlled by the hook `\linenumberfont`. Its default definition is to use tiny sans serif digits. The numbers are put flush right in a box of width `\linenumberwidth`. This box is separated from the line by the value stored in `\linenumbersep`. To set the number flush left you have to dig deeper, but even for this case you find hooks like `\makeLineNumberRight` in the package. Although changing the settings in the middle of a document is usually not a good idea, it was done in the next example for demonstration purposes.

The option “right” changes the line number position. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.

Now we use a different font and a bigger separation. Suspendisse vel felis. Ut lorem lorem, interdum eu, tincidunt sit amet, laoreet vitae, arcu.

```

\usepackage{lipsum}
\usepackage[right]{lineno} \linenumbers
1 \textbf{The option ‘right’ changes the
2   line number position.} \lipsum[1][1] \par
3 \renewcommand\linenumberfont
4   {\normalfont\footnotesize\ttfamily}
5 \setlength\linenumbersep{20pt}
6 \textbf{Now we use a different font and a
7   bigger separation.} \lipsum[6][1-2] \par

```

4-3-7

For special applications the package offers two environments that provide line numbers automatically: `numquote` and `numquotation`. They are like their \LaTeX cousins `quote` and `quotation`, except that their lines are numbered. They accept an optional argument denoting the line number with which to start (if the argument is omitted, they restart with 1), and they have starred forms, that suppress resetting the line numbers.

The main differences from their \LaTeX counterparts (when used together with the `\linenumbers` command) are the positioning of the numbers, which are indented inwards, and the fact that they restart the numbering unless the star form is used. Thus, their intended use is for cases when only the quoted text should receive line numbers that can be referenced separately.

```

1 Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, con-
2   sectetuer adipiscing elit.
3 Next quote has indented numbers and the
4 numbering is restarted.
   1 Donec vehicula augue eu neque.
7 Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales,
8 sollicitudin vel, wisi.
\usepackage{lipsum,lineno}
\linenumbers
\begin{quote} \lipsum[1][1] \end{quote}
\textbf{Next quote has indented numbers
and the numbering is restarted.}
\begin{numquote}
  \lipsum[1][5]
\end{numquote}
\lipsum[2][1]

```

4-3-8

Providing your own extensions

Using the machinery provided by the package, it is fairly easy to develop your own environments that attach special items to each line. The main macro to customize is `\makeLineNumber`, which gets executed inside a box of zero width at the left edge of each line (when line numbering mode is turned on). The net effect of your code should take up no space, so it is best to operate with `\llap` or `\rlap`. Apart from that you can use basically anything. You should only remember that the material is processed and attached after the paragraph has been broken into lines and normal macro-processing has finished, so you should not expect it to interact with data in mid-paragraph. You can produce the current line number with the `\LineNumber` command, which supplies the number or nothing, depending on whether line numbering mode is on.

The following example shows the definition and use of two new environments that (albeit somewhat crudely, because they do not care about setting fonts and the like) demonstrate some of the possibilities. Note that even though the second

environment does not print any line numbers, the lines are internally counted so that line numbering resumes afterwards with the correct value.

	<code>\usepackage{lipsum,lineno} \linenumbers</code>
1→ Lorem ipsum dolor sit	<code>\newenvironment{numarrows}</code>
2→ amet, consectetur adipiscing	<code>{\par\renewcommand\makeLineNumber</code>
3→ elit.	<code>{\llap{\LineNumber\$\to\$ }}{\par}</code>
	<code>\newenvironment{arrows}</code>
Nam dui ligula, fringilla ←	<code>{\par\renewcommand\makeLineNumber</code>
a, euismod sodales, sollicitu- ←	<code>{\rlap{\hspace{\textwidth} \$\gets\$}}{\par}</code>
din vel, wisi. ←	
7 This paragraph has nor-	<code>\begin{numarrows} \lipsum[1][1] \end{numarrows}</code>
8 mal numbering.	<code>\begin{arrows} \lipsum[2][1] \end{arrows}</code>
9→ Nulla malesuada portti-	<code>\textbf{This paragraph has normal numbering.}</code>
10→ tor diam.	<code>\begin{numarrows} \lipsum[3][1] \end{numarrows}</code>

4-3-9

The appearance and behavior of the line numbers can be further controlled by a set of options or, alternatively, by a set of commands equivalent to the options (see the package documentation for details on the command forms). With the options `left` (default) and `right`, you specify in which margin the line numbers should appear. Using the option `switch` or `switch*`, you get them in the outer and inner margins, respectively. You can also request that numbers restart on each page by specifying the option `pagewise`. This option needs to come last.

At least two \LaTeX runs of the document are required before the line numbers appear in the appropriate place. Unfortunately, there is no warning about the need to rerun the document, so you have to watch out for this issue yourself.

4.3.2 `paracol` — Several text streams aligned

Sometimes it is necessary to typeset something in parallel columns, for example, when presenting some text and its translation. Parallel in this context means that at certain synchronization points the two text streams are vertically (re)aligned. This type of layout is normally not supported by \LaTeX (which by default works with only a single text stream), but it can be achieved by using NAKASHIMA Hiroshi's `paracol` package.¹

```
\begin{paracol}{columns}[before-material] parallel data \end{paracol}
```

This package provides the `paracol` environment, which surrounds the material to be typeset in parallel streams. In its standard form it supports several parallel columns; their number is specified in the mandatory *columns* argument. An optional argument allows you to place *before-material* spanning all columns (which may include vertical material) prior to the multicolumned *parallel data*.

The environment can be started anywhere on the page, and if the *parallel data* cannot fit onto the current page, then the columns continue on the following pages.

¹ Some other packages for this kind of task are Matthias Eckermann's `parallel` package and Jonathan Sauer's `parcolumns` package.

\switchcolumn[*col*] \switchcolumn[*col*]*[*text*]

To switch from one column to the next you issue a `\switchcolumn` command, and once you reach the rightmost column, this switches back to the first one. Alternatively, you can specify an explicit column *col* to jump to. Please note that columns are internally numbered starting from 0; e.g., it needs `\switchcolumn[0]` to get back to the leftmost column.

By default, column data are not automatically aligned, but simply appended to the already existing material for that column. If you want alignment, use the star form of `\switchcolumn` — note that the `*` follows the optional *col* argument if present! In the next example we show what happens if we do not use the star form when needed:

Number	English	German
100	One hundred	Einhundert
42	Forty two	Zweiundvierzig
1	One	Eins

```
\usepackage{paracol}
\begin{paracol}{3} \bfseries
  Number \switchcolumn English \switchcolumn
        German \normalfont \switchcolumn
100 \switchcolumn One hundred \switchcolumn
    Ein\~hun\~dert \switchcolumn
42 \switchcolumn Forty two \switchcolumn
    Zwei\~und\~vier\~zig \switchcolumn
1 \switchcolumn One \switchcolumn Eins
\end{paracol}
```

4-3-10

Besides the misalignment, the above example looks probably odd to you for other reasons. Obviously the environment is not meant to be used for individual words, but rather for longer text passages to be typeset in parallel. For this reason each chunk of column data generates its own paragraph including a paragraph indentation, which accounts for the strange-looking line breaks in the second and third columns.

The next example corrects these defects by locally canceling the `\parindent` and by synchronizing each horizontal block. While only the third `\switchcolumn*` would be strictly necessary due to the change of `\parindent`, it is good practice to use it in all places where you do want to ensure that alignment is done. This is why we used it whenever we switched back to the leftmost column. The other adjustment we made was to use the optional *text* argument of `\switchcolumn*` to add 5pt of extra vertical space after the heading block and later use some extra material to prove that this argument can span all columns, if necessary.

Number	English	German
100	One hundred	Einhundert
42	Forty two	Zweiundvierzig
1	One	Eins

```
\usepackage{paracol}
\begin{paracol}{3} \setlength\parindent{0pt}
  \bfseries Number \switchcolumn English \switchcolumn
        German \normalfont \switchcolumn*[\vspace{5pt}]
100 \switchcolumn One hundred \switchcolumn
    Ein\~hun\~dert \switchcolumn*[\dotfill\tiny sync]
42 \switchcolumn Forty two \switchcolumn
    Zwei\~und\~vier\~zig \switchcolumn*
1 \switchcolumn One \switchcolumn Eins
\end{paracol}
```

4-3-11

In the above examples `\switchcolumn*` is always used at the point where we jump back to the leftmost column, which is certainly the usual case. However, that does not need to be the case; it can be used between any column. You basically have to think of its action as filling all columns (except the tallest one) with vertical space such that all columns become equally high. It then typesets the optional *text* argument (if present) across all columns and finally arranges that upcoming material is placed into whatever column we jumped to.

This can have surprising results if you forget the `*` in a place where you actually wanted synchronization, as the next example nicely demonstrates. Can you explain the resulting behavior?

4-3-12	<p>Same line here</p> <p>But <small>sync after first column</small></p> <p>no longer</p> <p>back? Why</p> <p>Explain!</p>	<pre> \usepackage{paracol} \begin{paracol}{4} \setlength\parindent{0pt} Same \switchcolumn line \switchcolumn here \switchcolumn[0] But \switchcolumn*[\tiny sync after first column] no \switchcolumn longer \switchcolumn* Why \switchcolumn[1] back? \switchcolumn* Explain! \end{paracol} </pre>
--------	---	---

An important aspect of column switching with `\switchcolumn` is that the switch does not end the scope of declarations, which is why in the examples 4-3-10 and 4-3-11 the `\bfseries` applies to several columns and needs explicit canceling. The same would be true for color settings, etc.

As an alternative that automatically restricts scope, you can use the `column` environment or one of its variants.

<pre> \begin{column} column data \end{column} \begin{column*}[text] column data \end{column*} </pre>

A `column` environment holds the material for one column. The star form does the same but first synchronizes all previously typeset column material. Its optional *text* argument can contain material that spans all columns (regardless of which column we continue typesetting in). This is shown in the next example, displaying a few “direct” translations of computer jargon into German (taken from [54] with kind permission by Eichborn Verlag).

<p>I just go online and download an update.</p> <p>.....</p> <p>This laptop is missing several interfaces.</p>	<p><i>Ich geh mal eben auf den Strich und lade mir ein Auffrisch herunter.</i></p> <p>.....</p> <p>Dieser Schoßspitze fehlt so manches Zwischengesicht.</p>	<pre> \usepackage{color,paracol} \begin{paracol}{2} \raggedright \setlength\leftskip{10pt} \setlength\parindent{-\leftskip} \begin{column} \color{blue} I just go online and download an update. \end{column} \begin{column} \em Ich geh mal eben auf den Strich und lade mir ein Auffrisch herunter. \end{column} \begin{column*}[\dotfill] \color{blue} This laptop is missing several interfaces. \end{column*} \begin{column} Dieser Schoßspitze fehlt so manches Zwischengesicht. \end{column} \end{paracol} </pre>
--	---	---

4-3-13

As you can see, it is possible to adjust paragraph parameters within the overall scope of the `paracol` environment. The negative `\parindent` cancels the positive `\leftskip` so that each paragraph starts flush left but following lines are indented by `\leftskip` (and both must be changed *after* calling `\raggedright`, because the latter also sets these registers).

```
\begin{nthcolumn}{col}      column data \end{nthcolumn}
\begin{nthcolumn*}{col}[text] column data \end{nthcolumn*}
\begin{leftcolumn} ...    \begin{leftcolumn*}[text] ...
\begin{rightcolumn} ...  \begin{rightcolumn*}[text] ...
```

The `nthcolumn` and `nthcolumn*` environments work like `column` and `column*` except that they switch to the specified column *col*. Remember that columns are internally counted from zero. For the common case of typesetting two texts in parallel, there also exist `leftcolumn` and `rightcolumn` and corresponding star forms, which are aliases for `nthcolumn` with the *col* argument 0 or 1, respectively.

Coloring whole
columns

In the previous example we repeated the coloring command several times to get the left column colored. Because we used `column` environments, the scope was confined to that particular chunk of the column, so there was no need to reset it; i.e., the color did not “leak out” into neighboring columns, which it would if we had used `\switchcolumn` commands instead. But even so, it is not a very convenient method if there are many column changes. A much nicer approach is offered by the `\columncolor` command of `paracol`.

```
\columncolor[model]{color-spec}[col]  \normalcolumncolor[col]
```

If `\columncolor` is used without the optional *col* argument anywhere within a `paracol` environment, then it arranges for the current column to be colored from that point onwards. This is similar to issuing `\color[model]{color-spec}` in all chunks of the current column and resetting the color in all other columns as needed. With the *col* argument, that particular column is colored.

It is also possible to use the declaration outside of a `paracol` environment, in which case it sets the default for all future environments.

With `\normalcolumncolor` you return a specific column back to “normal”, which usually means black unless the document default has been changed.

Specifying and
coloring rules
between columns

Besides coloring text, you can also color the rules between columns — that is, you can after you have made them visible. As many other packages, `paracol` adds rules between columns with a width of `\columnseprule`, which by default is zero.

```
\colseprulecolor[model]{color-spec}[col]  \normalcolseprulecolor[col]
```

The arguments to specify the color and the target column are the same as with `\columncolor`. If the optional *col* argument is given, it means that we refer to the rule following that column.

Below is an example in which we color the rules, one column throughout and one column starting in the middle of the parallel text. To prove that the text color is

properly confined to the column data we also add `\itshape` to make the second half of the text fully italic.

			<code>\usepackage{xcolor,paracol}</code>	<code>\columncolor{blue}[1]</code>
			<code>\setlength\columnseprule{2pt}</code>	<code>\colseprulecolor{red}</code>
			<code>\begin{paracol}{3}</code>	
baseline	Grundlinie	basislijn	<code>baseline \switchcolumn</code>	<code>Grundlinie \switchcolumn</code>
frontispiece	Frontispiz	Frontispice	<code>frontispiece \switchcolumn</code>	<code>Frontispiz \switchcolumn</code>
orphan	Schuster- junge	weeskind	<code>orphan \switchcolumn</code>	<code>Schuster\~junge \switchcolumn</code>
			<code>weeskind \switchcolumn</code>	<code>weeskind \switchcolumn</code>
			<code>\columncolor{gray}{.7} \itshape</code>	
punch	Stempel	patrijs	<code>punch \switchcolumn</code>	<code>Stempel \switchcolumn</code>
spacing	Zurichtung	spatiëring	<code>spacing \switchcolumn</code>	<code>Zurichtung \switchcolumn</code>
widow	Hurenkind	hoerenjong	<code>widow \switchcolumn</code>	<code>Hurenkind \switchcolumn</code>
			<code>\end{paracol}</code>	

4-3-14

```
\definecolumnpreamble{col}{declarations}
```

A general set of *declarations* for each column can be defined using the command `\definecolumnpreamble`. These are then executed each time the corresponding *col* is (re)started. The special value `-1` for *col* denotes spanning text, enabling you to provide preambles for all parts of the `paracol` environment.

Note, however, that the scope for the *declarations* does not end with the end of a column but with the end of the whole environment. For example, to bolden just text in the first column you have to explicitly undo that in the preamble for the second column as shown in the next example. If this is not done properly, the declarations “leak”, exhibited with `\itshape`, which never gets reset and so shows up in the first column from the second row onwards.

			<code>\usepackage{paracol}</code>	
			<code>\definecolumnpreamble{0}{\bfseries}</code>	<code>% \upshape missing</code>
			<code>\definecolumnpreamble{1}{\mdseries\itshape}</code>	
			<code>\begin{paracol}{2}</code>	
body text	Mengentext		<code>body text \switchcolumn</code>	<code>Mengentext \switchcolumn</code>
em-dash	Geviertstrich		<code>em-dash \switchcolumn</code>	<code>Geviertstrich \switchcolumn</code>
			<code>\end{paracol}</code>	

4-3-15

If \LaTeX encounters a `paracol` environment, it ends the current paragraph if it is not already in vertical mode. But in contrast to many other display environments, such as lists, it does not separate the environment from preceding or following text. This is appropriate if it starts, for example, with a heading in its optional *text* argument. However, in case you want some vertical separation, you need to supply it yourself, e.g., through `\vspace` or `\bigskip` or similar. Please note though that the vertical space before the environment has to be placed into the optional argument,

Vertical spacing
around paracol

because otherwise it may appear in the wrong place when there are footnotes on the current page. For that reason, surrounding the environment with, say, `flushleft` may result in incorrect spacing. To standardize that, the next example defines a `displayparacol` environment. It uses `\topsep` to mimic what normal display environments do. For details on the use of `\DeclareDocumentEnvironment` see Section A.1.4 on page →II 632.

```

\usepackage{xcolor,paracol} \columncolor{blue}[0]
\DeclareDocumentEnvironment{displayparacol}{m0{}}
  {\begin{paracol}{#1}[\addvspace{\topsep}\#2]}
  {\end{paracol}\addvspace{\topsep}}

\noindent Some more typesetting terms \ldots
\begin{displayparacol}{2}
\begin{leftcolumn} body text \end{leftcolumn}
\begin{rightcolumn} Mengentext \end{rightcolumn}
\begin{leftcolumn*} em-dash \end{leftcolumn*}
\begin{rightcolumn*} Geviertstrich \end{rightcolumn*}
\end{displayparacol}
... this time only English and German. \noindent \ldots{} this time only English and German.

```

4-3-16

Footnotes in parallel text

Footnotes in the main text before a `paracol` environment are not placed at the bottom of the page but rather in the galley prior to starting the parallel text. Footnotes within the parallel text are by default placed at the bottom of the column in which they appear and without any further adjustments are numbered individually within each column. Further footnotes in the main text are then numbered based on the footnote counter value in the leftmost column of the parallel text, which looks odd if the parallel text is very short and there are more footnotes in the other columns. The next example shows this behavior, and further down we discuss several options to resolve the problem.

```

Text1 with a footnote.
1A main footnote

This is text in the English language2 explaining the command \foo.
More text.3

Dies ist Text2 in deutscher Sprache3, der das Kommando \foo erläutert.
Even more text.4

2Ein Satz.
3Schlechter Stil!
4D

Text\footnote{A main footnote} with a footnote.
\begin{displayparacol}{2}
This is text in the English language\footnote{We hope!} explaining the command \verb=\foo=.
\switchcolumn
Dies ist Text\footnote{Ein Satz.} in deutscher Sprache\footnote{Schlechter Stil!}, der das Kommando \verb=\foo= erläutert.
\switchcolumn More text.\footnote{C}
\switchcolumn Even more text.\footnote{D}
\end{displayparacol}
Further text\footnote{Another main footnote} with a footnote. More text to fill the page.

```

4-3-17

In typical use cases the parallel text is much longer, than in the previous example, and then the defaults are most of the time quite reasonable.

One possible solution to the problem above is to manually enlarge the footnote counter as necessary once the environment has ended by adding the difference; i.e., in the above case `\addtocounter{footnote}{1}` would do the trick.

Alternatively, one can choose different representations of the footnote counter for each column using a `\definethecounter` declaration offered by the package. In the next example we use this to display the footnotes in the second column using letters. Of course that works only with relatively few footnotes.

<p>Text¹ with a footnote.</p> <hr/> <p>¹A main footnote</p>		<pre>\usepackage{paracol} \definethecounter{footnote}{1}{\alph{footnote}} % displayparacol as defined in earlier example</pre>
<p>This is text in the English language² explaining the command <code>\foo</code>. More text.³</p> <hr/> <p>²We hope! ³C</p>	<p>Dies ist Text^b in deutscher Sprache^c, der das Kommando <code>\foo</code> erläutert. Even more text.^d</p> <hr/> <p>^bEin Satz. ^cSchlechter Stil! ^dD</p>	<pre>Text\footnote{A main footnote} with a footnote. \begin{displayparacol}{2} This is text in the English language\footnote{We hope!} explaining the command \verb=\foo=. \switchcolumn Dies ist Text\footnote{Ein Satz.} in deutscher Sprache\footnote{Schlechter Stil!}, der das Kommando \verb=\foo= erläutert. \switchcolumn More text.\footnote{C} \switchcolumn Even more text.\footnote{D} \end{displayparacol} Further text\footnote{Another main footnote} with a footnote. More text to fill the page.</pre>
<p>Further text⁴ with a footnote. More text to fill the page.</p> <hr/> <p>⁴Another main footnote</p>		

4-3-18

The other possibility is to choose a different footnote layout that better suits your text. The footnote layout for all following `paracol` environments can be explicitly set using the `\footnotelayout` command. The default one that was used in the previous example is called “column-wise”, and it is activated by passing `c` as an argument to `\footnotelayout`. Alternatively, you can pass `p` for “page-wise” or `m` for “merged” layouts.

In “page-wise” mode the footnotes from all columns are collected and placed jointly at the bottom of the page or at the end of the environment, whichever comes first. Thus, it is similar to the default except that all footnotes in the parallel text are sequentially numbered and the text of the footnotes spans all columns, which makes it a good option if the footnote texts are fairly long.

In “merged” mode all footnotes on the page are merged and appear on the bottom of the page in the order in which they are seen by \LaTeX ; i.e., column block by column block, and within a column block from the left-most column to the right.¹ If used, our example changes rather drastically, as shown on the next page.

¹Depending on your column block splits, this may be a little bit confusing for the reader.

Footnote layouts

Text¹ with a footnote.

This is text in the English language² explaining the command `\foo`.⁵ More text.⁵

Dies ist Text³ in deutscher Sprache⁴, der das Kommando `\foo` erläutert.⁶ Even more text.⁶

Further text⁷ with a footnote. More text

¹A main footnote

²We hope!

³Ein Satz.

⁴Schlechter Stil!

⁵C

⁶D

⁷Another main footnote

```
\usepackage{paracol} \footnotelayout{m}
% displayparacol as defined in earlier example
Text\footnote{A main footnote} with a footnote.
\begin{displayparacol}{2}
  This is text in the English
  language\footnote{We hope!} explaining the
  command \verb=\foo=.
  \switchcolumn
  Dies ist Text\footnote{Ein Satz.} in
  deutscher Sprache\footnote{Schlechter Stil!},
  der das Kommando \verb=\foo= erläutert.
  \switchcolumn More text.\footnote{C}
  \switchcolumn Even more text.\footnote{D}
\end{displayparacol}
Further text\footnote{Another main footnote}
with a footnote. More text to fill the page.
```

4-3-19

In many cases the page-wise or merged layout gives reasonable results if you have many or long footnotes. You may still be somewhat dissatisfied by the fact that \LaTeX now numbers the footnotes somewhat strangely if you look down a single column. The reason is that now the footnotes get their numbers in the order \LaTeX sees your input and there is no reordering happening when a page break occurs because by that time everything is already typeset. There are however ways to manually resolve this, and the package manual [154] devotes several pages to explaining in detail how that can be achieved.

Relation to list items

If a `paracol` environment is used within a list environment, such as `itemize`, it uses the current horizontal list indentation values (e.g., `\leftmargin` and `\rightmargin`) within each column. Thus, `\item` commands in the leftmost column align perfectly with those outside the environment. Depending on the column data, it may pay to alter the ratio between column widths slightly as we did in the following example:

- A few more typesetting terms.
- An ellipsis is a character consisting of usually 3 dots.
- Face: the part of a physical letter that gets printed.
- The hyphen (-) is a punctuation mark.

```
\usepackage{paracol}
\begin{itemize} \item A few more typesetting terms.
\columnratio{0.55}\begin{paracol}{2}
\item An ellipsis is a character consisting of
  usually 3 dots. \switchcolumn
\item Face: the part of a physical letter that
  gets printed.
\end{paracol}
\item The hyphen (-) is a punctuation mark.
\end{itemize}
```

4-3-20

As seen in the previous example, the width of the columns do not need to be uniform but can be adjusted in relation to each other. This is done with a `\columnratio` declaration, which expects a comma-separated list of ratio values. You can specify up to `columns - 1` values. If fewer values are given, the remaining columns all have

an identical width such that the total width fits `\textwidth` exactly. Between all columns a space of `\columnsep` is assumed.

There also exists a `\setcolumnwidth` declaration for adjusting both the column width and the column separations on an individual level. If you need this level of flexibility, refer to the package documentation for details. Both declarations apply only to the next `paracol` environment and should therefore be given directly in front (but not inside!) of it.

For starting a new page within the parallel text the package offers `\flushpage`, which is more or less equivalent to `\switchcolumn*[\newpage]` but safer because the latter has some issues if the page break is naturally taken just before. An alternative is to use `\clearpage` or `\cleardoublepage`, which additionally places all pending floats. The latter also advances to the next odd-numbered page as usual.

*Forcing a new page
in parallel text*

Instead of, or in addition to, adding notes as footnotes, you may want to make the occasional marginal remark. The `paracol` package fully supports the use of `\marginpar` and with some restrictions the `\marginnote` from the `marginnote` package¹ even if your parallel text consists of more than two columns. By default all notes except for those in the leftmost column appear in the right margin. This can be changed at any point by issuing a `\marginparthreshold` command. It expects as its argument the column number from which on the marginals should be placed into the right margin. Thus, specifying 0 moves all notes to the right, and setting the default to 2, as done in the next example, makes marginals from the first or second column move to the left, e.g., “M2” from the middle column. Later we change it back to 1 so that “M5” then shows up on the right.

*Using marginals in
parallel text*

If you issue a `\reversemarginpar`, then all placements are reversed as usual.

				<code>\usepackage{paracol} \marginparthreshold{2}</code>
				<code>\begin{paracol}{3}</code>
				<code>Left\marginpar{L1} \switchcolumn</code>
				<code>Middle \\\ Middle \\\</code>
				<code>Middle\marginpar{M2} \switchcolumn</code>
L1	Left	Middle	Right	<code>Right \\\ Right\marginpar{R3} \switchcolumn*</code>
		Middle	Right	<code>\marginparthreshold{1}</code>
M2		Middle		<code>Left again\marginpar{L4} \switchcolumn</code>
				<code>Middle\marginpar{M5}</code>
L4	Left again	Middle	M5	<code>\end{paracol}</code>

4-3-21

Floats within parallel text are also supported, though there are a number of restrictions that one has to be aware of. Full-wide floats, e.g., produced by `table*`, etc., can be used anywhere and span all columns. If you use single column floats, then they always appear in the column in which they are encountered, if necessary on a later page. In other words, they do not move from one column to the next, because such columns may be of different width. Furthermore, a float can appear only in a top area if the parallel text has not been synchronized yet. After synchronization it can appear only in the bottom position or in the top position on the next page.

*Managing floats in
parallel text*

¹ This command is emulated, so not all features of it are available within the `paracol` environment.

The outlined restrictions may make it necessary to manually adjust the float positions within the document sometimes to achieve the desired placements. Of course, as always, such fine-tuning should be left until the document is nearly finished.

*Local and global
counters within
parallel text*

Counters in L^AT_EX such as for headings, footnotes, floats, or equations are normally global; that is, if they are changed, the change is visible in the later part of the document regardless of the current scope. The `paracol` package handles this differently and by default keeps all counters local within each column. When the environment ends, it uses the values from the leftmost column to continue. This is why the footnotes in Example 4-3-17 start in both columns with 2 and the footnote after the environment is labeled with 4. When a new `paracol` environment is started, the local counters continue at their previous values except for the leftmost column where they continue from whatever their value is in the main text. If we had another environment in Example 4-3-18, then a footnote in the first column would be labeled with “5” and in the second column with “e”.

Besides footnotes there are a number of other use cases where this is sensible, e.g., if you want headings with the same numbering in several columns. For other scenarios you might prefer that the counter value propagates from column to column. This is achieved by stating `\globalcounter{ctr}` in the preamble. You can alternatively make all counters global using `\globalcounter*` and then turn individual ones local through some `\localcounter` declaration. The footnote layouts `p` and `m` automatically make the footnote counter global, because the footnotes propagate out in these layouts and with column-based counters you would then get duplicate numbers.

Finally, it is possible to broadcast the current value of a local counter to all other columns using `\synccounter{ctr}` somewhere within a column or to broadcast all local counters via `\syncallcounters`.

Restricting TOC data

If you use parallel headings (or parallel floats) in different columns, you probably do not want the content information to appear several times with the same number in the table of contents or list of figures, even if the heading or caption text is translated. In that case you can state that only content information from one specific column should be propagated by using a line like

```
\addcontentsonly{toc}{0}
```

in the preamble. This means that the table of contents only receives data from headings in the leftmost column.

*Line numbers in
parallel text*

You can use the `lineno` package together with `paracol` which can be useful when talking about a text and its translation. By default lines in all columns are numbered, and `lineno`’s `linenumber` counter is local to each column. Thus, as long as all columns have the same number of lines, this gives you the same numbers in each column.

Because all columns are numbered, you may have to enlarge the value of the `\columnsep` parameter to account for this; below we therefore set it to 35pt.

If, however, you have gaps, you need to adjust the `linenumber` counter to ensure that the line numbers across the columns stay in sync. It is best to add a value to the counter rather than to set it to some explicit number like we did below. You can

also see that we used `\synccounter` at the beginning of the environment, and you may wonder why. Without it the second and third columns would have started out with line number one when the leftmost column is already at two. This will also be necessary in later `paracol` environments if the previous one ended with a different number of lines in different columns. To show what happens if you do not, we have omitted it in the second instance.

				<code>\usepackage{lineno,paracol} \linenumbers</code>
				<code>\setlength\columnsep{35pt}</code>
				<code>\begin{paracol}{3}[Numbered locally (issue empties)]</code>
				<code>\synccounter{linenumber}</code>
1	Numbered locally (issue empties)			<code>Left \switchcolumn Middle \\\ Middle \switchcolumn</code>
2	Left	2 Middle	2 Right	<code>Right \\\ Right \switchcolumn*</code>
		3 Middle	3 Right	<code>\addtocounter{linenumber}{1}</code>
4	Left again	4 Middle		<code>Left again and again \switchcolumn Middle</code>
5	and again			<code>\end{paracol}</code>
6	Numbered locally (no sync!)			<code>\begin{paracol}{3}[Numbered locally (no sync!)]</code>
				<code>Left \switchcolumn Middle \switchcolumn Right</code>
7	Left	5 Middle	4 Right	<code>\end{paracol}</code>

4-3-22

You might think that adding line numbers in all columns is bit too much (though with wider columns they might still be useful). If you prefer fewer numbers, then this can be easily achieved too by numbering only a single column, e.g., the left one. This means that we have to stop numbering with `\nolinenumbers` when we enter the second column and restart it when returning to the first. Syncing the counter value across the columns is now no longer necessary, but, of course, we still have to deal with gaps by adjusting the counter. Alternatively, and this is what we have done in the next example, we can avoid gaps, by placing invisible material into it (we used `\mbox{}` here):

				<code>\usepackage{lineno,paracol}</code>
				<code>\definecolumnpreamble{0}{\linenumbers}</code>
				<code>\definecolumnpreamble{1}{\nolinenumbers}</code>
				<code>\begin{paracol}{3}</code>
				<code>Left \\\ \mbox{ } \switchcolumn</code>
1	Left	Middle and	Right on	<code>Middle and more \switchcolumn</code>
2		more	two lines	<code>Right on two lines \switchcolumn*</code>
3	Left again	Middle		<code>Left again and again \switchcolumn Middle</code>
4	and again			<code>\end{paracol}</code>

4-3-23

So far we used examples containing just straight text, and in this case column data naturally align horizontally; thus numbering only a single column or all columns with the same numbers makes sense. However, this may not be the case, and if one or more column contains unusually tall or short entries, that approach may become questionable. In that case, it might be worth considering making the `linenumber` counter global so that all lines in all columns get distinct numbers. Of course, then we get the numbers in the order of appearance in the source, which at least in the

following example looks somewhat weird. In more realistic settings that may work without further adjustments.

<pre> 1 Left 6 Left 7 again 8 and 9 again </pre>	<pre> 2 Middle 3 Middle 10 Middle </pre>	<pre> 4 Right 5 Right </pre>	<pre> \usepackage{lineno,paracol} \linenumbers \globalcounter{linenumber} \begin{paracol}{3} \raggedright Left \switchcolumn Middle \ Middle \switchcolumn \tiny Right \ Right \switchcolumn \Large Left again and again \switchcolumn Middle \end{paracol} </pre>
--	--	------------------------------	--

4-3-24

Using the whole
spread for parallel
text

The `paracol` package offers a number of further features. You can, for example, do what its author termed *parallel-page* typesetting, that is, splitting the parallel text columns across a double spread instead of a single page. This way you can typeset a book and its translation with the original text always on left pages and the translation on the facing pages. In its simplest form all you have to do is to add a further optional argument (that we so far neglected to mention) to the environment call:

```
\begin{paracol}[left-cols]{columns}[text] parallel data \end{paracol}
```

The *left-cols* argument specifies how many of the total number of *columns* should be typeset on a left page; the others are then typeset properly synchronized on the facing page.

Background coloring

There are also various possibilities to do background coloring of certain parts, e.g., individual columns, gaps, float areas, margins, spanning material, etc. For details of these more specialized applications consult the package manual [154].

When to use and when not to use `paracol`

The `paracol` environment operates on the main vertical galley material, and it changes the standard output routine to collect further material, attach it to the appropriate column, synchronize the columns, etc. This has a number of consequences one has to be aware of. Most importantly, this approach means that the environment cannot be nested, and it does not work inside boxes and in particular not inside floats. For technical reasons it cannot be used in L^AT_EX's `twocolumn` mode either. Thus, if you need parallel text in such cases, you need to resort to one of the other packages, e.g., `parallel` or `parcolumns`. For short material another option is, of course, some sort of `tabular` or `longtable` approach.

Below is an example that shows you the syntax flavor used by the `parallel` package. To align certain lines of text you split the two text streams at appropriate points by using pairs of `\ParallelLText` and `\ParallelRText` commands and separating each pair with `\ParallelPar`. If you forget one of the `\ParallelPar` commands, some of your text gets lost without warning! Moreover, as its name suggests, the `\ParallelPar` command introduces a paragraph break so that alignment is possible

only at paragraph boundaries. Additional paragraph breaks inside the argument of a `\Parallel...Text` command are also possible, but in that case no alignment is attempted.

			<code>\usepackage{parallel,lineno}</code>
			<code>\linenumbers \modulolinenumbers[2]</code>
			<code>\setlength\linenumbersep{1pt}</code>
			<code>\begin{Parallel}{.45\linewidth}{}</code>
			<code>\raggedright \setlength\leftskip{10pt}</code>
			<code>\setlength\parindent{-\leftskip}</code>
2	I just go online	Ich geh mal eben	<code>\ParallelLText{I just go online and download an update.}</code>
	and download	auf den Strich	<code>\ParallelRText{Ich geh mal eben auf den Strich und lade</code>
4	an update.	und lade mir	<code>mir ein Auffrisch herunter.} \ParallelPar</code>
		ein Auffrisch	<code>\ParallelLText{Microsoft Office on floppy disks.}</code>
		herunter.	<code>\ParallelRText{Kleinweich Büro auf Schlabberscheiben.}</code>
6	Microsoft Office	Kleinweich Büro	<code>\ParallelPar</code>
	on floppy	auf Schlabber-	<code>\end{Parallel}</code>
8	disks.	scheiben.	

4-3-25

Neither `paracol` nor `Parallel` can be used within a `multicols` environment because there the different output routine requirements clash violently.

4.3.3 multicols — A flexible way to handle multiple columns

With standard \LaTeX it is possible to produce documents with one or two columns (using the class option `twocolumn`). However, it is impossible to produce only parts of a page in two-column format because the commands `\twocolumn` and `\onecolumn` always start a fresh page. Additionally, the columns are never balanced, which sometimes results in a slightly weird distribution of the material.

The `multicol` package¹ by Frank Mittelbach solves these problems by defining an environment, `multicols`, with the following properties:

- Support is provided for 2–20 columns, which can run for several pages.
- When the environment ends, the columns on the last page are balanced so that they are all of nearly equal length with a number of customization possibilities to influence the outcome. This balancing can be suppressed by using the starred form of the environment.
- The environment can be used inside other environments, such as `figure` or `minipage`, where it produces a box containing the text distributed into the requested number of columns. Thus, you no longer need to hand-format your layout in such cases.
- Alternative code execution based on the current column (left, right, or one of the middle ones) is possible.

¹Although the `multicol` package is distributed under LPPL (\LaTeX Project Public License) [111], for historical reasons its copyright contains an additional “moral obligation” clause that asks commercial users to consider paying a license fee to the author or the \LaTeX 3 fund for their use of the package. For details see the head of the package file itself.

- Between individual columns, vertical rules of user-defined widths and color can be inserted.
- The formatting can be customized globally or for individual environments.

```
\begin{multicols}{columns}[preface] [min-space]
```

Normally, you can start the environment simply by specifying the number of desired columns. By default paragraphs are justified, but with narrow measures — as in the examples — they would be better set unjustified as we show later.

<p>Here is some text to be distributed over several</p>	<p>columns. If the columns are very narrow try type-</p>	<p>setting ragged right.</p>	<pre>\usepackage{multicol} \begin{multicols}{3} Here is some text to be distributed over several columns. If the columns are very narrow try typesetting ragged right. \end{multicols}</pre>
---	--	------------------------------	--

4-3-26

You may be interested in prefixing the multicolumn text with a bit of single-column material. This can be achieved by using the optional *preface* argument. \LaTeX then tries to keep the text from this argument and the start of the multicolumn text on the same page.

Some useful advice

<p>Here is some text to be distributed over several columns. If the columns</p>	<p>are very narrow try typesetting ragged right.</p>	<pre>\usepackage{multicol} \begin{multicols}{2} [\section*{Some useful advice}] Here is some text to be distributed over several columns. If the columns are very narrow try typesetting ragged right. \end{multicols}</pre>
---	--	--

4-3-27

The `multicols` environment starts a new page if there is not enough free space left on the current page. The minimal amount of free space required is controlled by a global parameter. However, when using the optional *preface* argument, the default setting for this parameter may be too small. In this case you can either change the global default (see below) or adjust the value for the current environment by using a second optional *min-space* argument as follows:

```
\begin{multicols}{2}[\section*{Some useful advice}][7cm]
Here is some text to be distributed over several columns. If ...
\end{multicols}
```

This would start a new page if less than 7 cm free vertical space was available.

*Preventing
balancing*

The `multicols` environment balances the columns on the last page (it was originally developed for exactly this purpose). However, if this effect is not desired, you can use the `multicols*` variant of the environment instead. Of course, this

environment works only in the main vertical galley, because inside a box one has to balance the columns to determine a column height.

Manually breaking columns

Sometimes it is necessary to overrule the column-breaking algorithm, i.e., on some occasions one wishes to explicitly end a column after a certain line. In standard L^AT_EX this can be achieved with a `\pagebreak` command, but this approach does not work within a `multicols` environment because it would end the collection phase of `multicols` and thus end *all* columns on the page. As an alternative, the command `\columnbreak` is provided. If used within a paragraph, it marks the end of the current line as the desired breakpoint, as shown in the following example. If used between paragraphs, it forces the next paragraph into the next column (or page).

A short first para.	With the help of	<code>\usepackage{multicol,ragged2e}</code>
	<code>\columnbreak</code>	<code>\begin{multicols}{2} \RaggedRight</code>
Here is some text to be distributed over several columns.	you can force a column break at a specific point.	A short first para.\par Here is some text to be distributed over several \columnbreak columns.
	Another short first para.	With the help of <code>\verb=\columnbreak=</code> you can force a column break at a specific point.\par Another short first para.
		<code>\end{multicols}</code>

Just like `\pagebreak`, the `\columnbreak` command can be used with an optional argument to indicate a possible instead of a forced column break. Supported values are 0 to 3 with increasing persuasion. A possible column break indicated in this way has an effect only if there is enough stretch available in the column. In the previous example that would have been the case when using 3.

If `\flushcolumns` is in force (which is the default), the material in the column is vertically stretched (if possible) to fill the full column height as happened in the previous example. If this effect is not desired, you can either switch to `\raggedcolumns` or you can use `\newcolumn` instead. The latter always forces the extra space to the bottom of the column, like `\newpage` does for pages.

Instead or in addition to explicitly specified column breaks, you can use standard L^AT_EX's `\enlargethispage` within a multipage `multicols` environment. This enlarges or reduces the height of all columns on that page by the specified amount. Note that if you enlarge pages by more than one line, you may have to increase the `collectmore` counter value to ensure that enough material is being picked up.

It is also possible to use the `unbalance` counter to influence the balancing phase. This is discussed below.

Floats and footnotes in multicol

Floats (e.g., figures and tables) are only partially supported within multicols. You can use starred forms of the float environments, thereby requesting floats that span all columns. Column floats and `\marginpars`, however, are not supported.

 *Interaction*
with
`\enlargethispage`

Footnotes are typeset (full width) on the bottom of the page, and not under individual columns (a concession to the fact that varying column widths are supported on a single page).

Under certain circumstances a footnote reference and its text may fall on subsequent pages. If this is a possibility, `multicols` produces a warning. In that case, you should check the page in question. If the footnote reference and footnote text really are on different pages, you have to resolve the problem locally by issuing a `\pagebreak` command in a strategic place. The reason for this behavior is that `multicols` has to look ahead to assemble material and may not be able to use all material gathered later. The amount of looking ahead is controlled by the `collectmore` counter.

Actions based on the current column

As `multicol` is collecting and processing the column material in several steps (including balancing at the end), it is next to impossible to know during that process how the material is finally going to be divided up, i.e., what shows up in what column. Command processing happens while the cutting and balancing routines have not yet acted. This is one of the reasons for the limited support for floats and footnotes.

Thus, to define commands that act differently based on the column they are in, an elaborated multipass algorithm is required, where in the first step placements are guessed and the actual results are then written to a file. In later passes that external information is used as a new guess, and the process finishes (possibly only after several runs) when the recorded guess is no longer changing.

Because of this, this algorithm is enabled only when you load the package with the option `colaction`. If you do that, you can use the command `\docolaction`.

```
\docolaction*[unknown]{first-code}{middle-code}{last-code}
```

This command executes different code depending on the column it is placed in. If the current column is the first, then *first-code* is executed while in the last column it is *last-code*. In all other columns (assuming there are more than two), it executes *middle-code*. If the current column is not yet known, it uses the *first-code* by default, but by specifying a number in the optional *unknown* argument, you can adjust this, with 1, 2, or 3 representing first, middle, or last, respectively.

Assuming that the code generates some text, there is the question at what point the test for the current column should be made: before or after this inserted text. This is solved by `\docolaction` as follows: if the star variant is used, then the test is made first (i.e., the generated text may partially or fully end up in the next column), while without the star the test is made afterwards. It is easy to think of applications that need either behavior even though the latter is the more common one.

For example, if you never want to start a new section in the second column but instead move to a new page, then you could define an action as shown in the next example. Because of this action, the third block is pushed to the next page.

It is essential that we use `\docolaction*` in this scenario: if the test for the last column were made after we have executed `\columnbreak`, we are already back in

the first column. On the next run, \LaTeX would then execute the action for the first column (no column break) and thus alternate between the two states forever. Try it out by removing the `*` in the `\lcolsection` definition.

1 A	libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi.	<code>\usepackage{lipsum,ragged2e}</code> <code>\usepackage[colaction]{multicol}</code> <code>\newcommand\lcolsection{\par \docolaction*{}{}\columnbreak}% \section}</code>
2 B	Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus	<code>\begin{multicols}{2} \RaggedRight \lcolsection{A} \lipsum[1][1-2] \lcolsection{B} \lipsum[2][1-4] \lcolsection{C} \lipsum[3] \end{multicols}</code>

4-3-29

However, the above definition of `\lcolsection` is not foolproof either. If you put it near the end of a `multicols` environment, i.e., into the part that is balanced, then it too produces endless requests for document reruns.

The reason is the following: if after balancing the command ends up in the last column, then it is going to generate on the next run a `\columnbreak`. But now the balancing routine seeing this request honors it and puts everything after it into the last column and balances everything else across the first columns. This means that now our command is no longer in the last column, and thus the cycle continues.

Of course, if that happens, you can remove the command from your source (and you probably know anyway that you are very close to the end). The main takeaway here is that it is quite easy to generate “impossible” documents with `\docolaction` the moment your command changes the status of the typesetting in a nonlinear way.

Support for right to left typesetting

For languages that are typeset right-to-left, the order of the columns on the page also need to be reversed. The `multicol` package supports this through the declarations `\RLmulticolcolumns` for right-to-left and `\LRmulticolcolumns` to return to the default.

This only reverses the column orders. Any other support needed has to be provided by other means, e.g., by using appropriate fonts and reversing the writing directions within the columns.

end up in the final column (i.e., the left).	soon reach the middle column; the rest should	This is the first column and we should	<code>\usepackage{multicol,ragged2e} \RLmulticolcolumns</code> <code>\begin{multicols}{3} \RaggedRight</code> This is the first column and we should soon reach the middle column; the rest should end up in the final column (i.e., the left). <code>\end{multicols}</code>
--	---	--	---

4-3-30

Parameter	Value	Parameter	Value
<code>\multicolsep</code>	12.0pt plus 4.0pt minus 3.0pt		
<code>\premulticols</code>	50.0pt	<code>\postmulticols</code>	20.0pt
<code>\multicolovershoot</code>	0.0pt	<code>\multicolundershoot</code>	2.0pt
<code>\columnsep</code>	10.0pt	<code>\columnseprule</code>	0.0pt
<code>\maxbalancingoverflow</code>	12.0pt	<code>\multicolbaselineskip</code>	0.0pt

Table 4.5: Length parameters used by multicols

Customizing the multicols environment

The multicols environment recognizes several formatting parameters. Their meanings are described in the following sections. The default values can be found in Table 4.5 (dimensions) and Table 4.6 (counters). If not stated otherwise, all changes to the parameters have to be placed before the start of the environment to which they should apply.

Vertical spacing and
the required free
space

The multicols environment first checks whether the amount of free space left on the page is at least equal to `\premulticols` or to the value of the second optional argument, when specified. If the requested space is not available, a `\newpage` is issued. A new page is also started at the end of the environment if the remaining space on the page is less than `\postmulticols`. Before and after the environment, a vertical space of length `\multicolsep` is inserted.

Column width and
separation

The column width inside the multicols environment is automatically calculated based on the number of requested columns and the current value of `\linewidth`. It is then stored in `\columnwidth`. Between columns a space of `\columnsep` is left. In particular, all columns have the same width because text has to move freely from one to the next, and this is only possible with T_EX when it uses fixed column widths and changes the width only in well-defined places, e.g., at explicit page breaks.

Adding vertical lines

Between any two columns, a rule of width `\columnseprule` is placed. If this parameter is set to 0pt (the default), the rule is suppressed. If you choose a rule width larger than the column separation, the rule overprints the column text. If you like to color such rules, redefine the hook `\columnseprulecolor` as shown in the next example. It defaults to `\normalcolor`.

Here is some
text to be
distributed

over several
columns. In
this example

ragged-right
typesetting
is used.

```
\usepackage{multicol,ragged2e,color}
\addtolength\columnsep{2pt}
\setlength\columnseprule{1pt}
\renewcommand\columnseprulecolor{\color{blue}}

\begin{multicols}{3} \RaggedRight
  Here is some text to be distributed over
  several columns. In this example ragged-right
  typesetting is used.
\end{multicols}
```

<i>Parameter</i>	<i>Value</i>	<i>Parameter</i>	<i>Value</i>
<code>\multicolpretolerance</code>	-1	<code>\multicoltolerance</code>	9999
<code>columnbadness</code>	10000	<code>finalcolumnbadness</code>	7000
<code>collectmore</code>	0	<code>unbalance</code>	0
<code>minrows</code>	1	<code>tracingmulticols</code>	0

Table 4.6: Counters used by multicols

Column formatting

By default (the `\flushcolumns` setting), the `multicols` environment tries to typeset all columns with the same length by stretching the available vertical space inside the columns. If you specify `\raggedcolumns`, the surplus space is instead placed at the bottom of each column.

Paragraphs are formatted using the default parameter settings (as described in Sections 3.1 and 3.1.1) with the exception of `\pretolerance` and `\tolerance`, for which the current values of `\multicolpretolerance` and `\multicoltolerance` are used, respectively. The defaults are -1 and 9999 so that the paragraph-breaking trial without hyphenation is skipped and relatively bad paragraphs are allowed (accounting for the fact that the columns are typically very narrow). If the columns are wide enough, you might wish to change these defaults to something more restrictive, such as

```
\multicoltolerance=3000
```

Note the somewhat uncommon assignment form: `\multicoltolerance` is an internal TeX counter and is controlled in the same way as `\tolerance`.

Inside the environment the distance between two text lines is `\baselineskip` plus the value of `\multicolbaselineskip` (by default zero). This allows you to reduce, enlarge, or add flexibility to the spacing between lines. As the next example shows, adding flexibility (with a plus or minus component) seldom leads to pleasing results, but just slightly increasing or decreasing the baseline distances can be of some help in tough situations.

In this example the space between lines has been deliberately reduced to show the possible effects. Be careful not to add

high amounts of plus or you may get strange vertical stretch favored over running a column short.

```
\usepackage{multicol,ragged2e}
\setlength{\multicolbaselineskip}{-1pt plus 1pt}
\begin{multicols}{2} \RaggedRight
  In this example the space between lines has been
  deliberately reduced to show the possible effects.
  Be careful not to add high amounts of \texttt{plus}
  or you may get strange vertical stretch favored
  over running a column short.
\end{multicols}
```

Balancing control

When the end of the `multicols` environment is reached, all remaining text is balanced to produce columns of roughly equal length. If you wish to place more text in the left columns, you can advance the counter `unbalance`. This counter determines the number of additional lines in the columns in comparison to the number that the balancing routine has calculated. It is automatically restored to zero after the environment has finished. To demonstrate the effect, the next example uses the text from Example 4-3-31 on page 356 but requests one extra line:

<p>Here is some text to be distributed over several</p>	<p>columns. In this example ragged-right typesetting</p>	<p>is used.</p>	<pre> \usepackage{multicol,ragged2e} \begin{multicols}{3} \setcounter{unbalance}{1} \RaggedRight Here is some text to be distributed over several columns. In this example ragged-right typesetting is used. \end{multicols} </pre>	4-3-33
---	--	-----------------	---	--------

Column balancing is a delicate business, and while `multicol` tries to provide defaults that are suitable for many occasions, there are always cases that require adjusted settings. For example, what should be done if there is only very little material left for balancing as in our next example. By default, `multicol` happily balances this and generates three columns with exactly one line.

<p>... that's not enough for balancing!</p>	<p>The above looks like a line with gaps and not like three balanced columns. However, whatever value you use for <code>minrows</code>, it will look ugly with this input.</p>	<pre> \usepackage{multicol,ragged2e} \setcounter{minrows}{1} % this is the default! \begin{multicols}{3} \RaggedRight \ldots\ that's not enough for balancing! \end{multicols} The above looks like a line with gaps and not like three balanced columns. However, whatever value you use for \texttt{minrows}, it will look ugly with this input. </pre>	4-3-34
---	--	---	--------

If you do not like the above result, you can either use the `unbalance` counter to ensure that the first column contains at least two or even three lines or you can push some material from an earlier page onto the current one by using one or more `\columnbreak` commands (discussed below) to give the balancing algorithm more material to work with. However, either solution means manual work and may become wrong if your document content changes.

Perhaps a better alternative is to change the default number of rows used by `multicol` when balancing by giving the counter `minrows` a higher value, e.g., 3. In that

¹Very bad for reading but too good to fix: this problem of a break-stack with the word “the” four times in a row is not detected by TeX’s paragraph algorithm — only a complete paragraph rewrite would resolve it — a good example of the limits of automation.

case you can still use the `unbalance` counter to cancel or partially cancel this as we show in the next example, which is why it comes out with two rows.

... that's for balance-
not enough ing!

This comes out better but with so few words a single column might look odd as well.


```
\usepackage{multicol,ragged2e} \setcounter{minrows}{3}

\setcounter{unbalance}{-1} % partly undo change
\begin{multicols}{3} \RaggedRight \ldots\ that's
not enough for balancing! \end{multicols}
This comes out better but with so few words
a single column might look odd as well.
```

4-3-35

Column balancing is further controlled by the two counters `columnbadness` and `finalcolumnbadness`. These parameters are used to decide if a particular balancing trial is successful or whether the algorithm has to try further. Whenever \LaTeX is constructing boxes (such as a column), it computes a badness value expressing the quality of the box — that is, the amount of excess white space. A zero value is optimal, and a value of 10000 is infinitely bad in \LaTeX 's eyes.¹ While balancing, the algorithm compares the badness of possible solutions, and if any column except the last one has a badness higher than `columnbadness`, the solution is ignored. When the algorithm finally finds a solution, it looks at the badness in the last column. If it is larger than `finalcolumnbadness`, it typesets this column with the excess space placed at the bottom, allowing it to come out short.

This explains why in Example 4-3-32 the second column comes out strangely when we apply that setting for `\multicolbaselineskip`. Being one line shorter, the algorithm would have normally chosen to run the column short but due to the fairly large plus component stretching the lines out produced a badness below `finalcolumnbadness`, and thus that solution was accepted without change. Thus, by setting `finalcolumnbadness` to 0 a last column never stretches out unless stretching is possible without any cost, for example, when there is a `\vfill` somewhere in the column. Many people prefer that as the default setting.

 Avoiding stretched-out last columns

There is one other scenario that can get the algorithm into trouble. If there is only a limited number of breakpoints in the material for balancing (e.g., due to large objects such as displays), the algorithm may have to enlarge the column heights far beyond the initially expected value before finding a suitable splitting. This might mean that the balancing solution no longer fits into the available space on the page. If that happens, the algorithm gives up in despair² and cuts a normal page (with the downside effect that very little material ends up being available on the next page for a new balancing trial).

To make this case less severe, `multicol` allows a certain amount of overflow prior to canceling the balancing. This is limited to `\maxbalancingoverflow` that defaults to 12pt, which in most cases is about a line of material. If there is nothing in the way at the bottom, such as page numbers, you can consider higher values; otherwise, better not. There are also the two parameters `\multicolovershoot` and

¹For an overfull box the badness value is set to 1000000 by \TeX to mark this special case.

²You can see the behavior if you use the package option `balancingshow`.

`\multicolundershoot`, which can add some extra flexibility in difficult cases. You can think of them as adding some imaginary extra stretchability in each column during the badness trials of the form

```
\vspace{0pt plus \multicolundershoot minus \multicolovershoot}
```

This extra stretchability allows for slight variations between the heights of different columns in case no other solution can be found. It is, however, considered only if identical heights cannot be achieved.

A similar problem arises when the material to be balanced contains more `\columnbreak` requests than we have columns. If this is detected by `multicol`, the balancing is abandoned, and a normal page is cut.

Collecting material

To be able to properly balance columns the `multicols` environment needs to collect enough material to fill the remaining part of the page. Only then does it cut the collected material into individual columns. It tries to do so by assuming that no more than the equivalent of one line of text per column vanishes into the margin due to breaking at vertical spaces. In some situations this assumption is incorrect, and it becomes necessary to collect more or less material. In such a case you can adjust the default setting for the counter `collectmore`. Changing this counter by one means collecting material for one more (or less) `\baselineskip`.

There are, in fact, reasons why you may want to reduce that collection. If your document contains many footnotes and a lot of surplus material is collected, there is a higher chance that the unused part contains footnotes, which could come out on the wrong page. The smallest sensible value for the counter is the negative number of columns used. With this value `multicols` collects exactly the right amount of material to fill all columns as long as no space gets lost at a column break. However, if spaces are discarded in this setup, they show up as empty space in the last column.

Tracing the algorithm

You can trace the behavior of the `multicol` package by loading it with one of the following options. The default, `errorshow`, displays only real errors. With `infoshow`, `multicol` becomes more talkative, and you get basic processing information such as

```
Package multicol: Column spec: 185.0pt = indent + columns + sep =
(multicol)      0.0pt + 3 x 55.0pt + 2 x 10.0pt on input line 32.
```

which is the calculated column width.

With `balancingshow`, you get additional information on the various trials made by `multicols` when determining the optimal column height for balancing, including the resulting badness of the columns, reasons why a trial was rejected, and so on.

Using `markshow` additionally shows which marks for the running header or footer are generated on each page. Instead of using the options, you can (temporarily) set the counter `tracingmulticols` to a positive value (higher values give more tracing information).

4.3.4 multicolrule — Custom rules for multicolumned pages

A fairly recent addition to the \LaTeX ecosystem is the `multicolrule` package by Karl Hagen, which makes use of the L3 programming layer. Its sole purpose is to provide customized rules to be placed between columns generated by `multicol` or by the `twocolumn` class option offered by most document classes.

The customization possibilities are huge, so we give only one example here. Some designs make use of additional packages, e.g., our example uses `tikz` and `pgfornament`, but there are also many possibilities that work without the need to add powerful graphic packages such as `tikz`.

As any dedicated reader can clearly see, the Ideal of practical reason is a representation of, as far as I know, the things in themselves; as I have shown elsewhere, the phenomena should only be used as a canon for our understanding. The paralogisms of practical reason are what first give rise to the architectonic of practical reason. As will easily be shown in the next section, reason would

thereby be made to contradict, in view of these considerations, the Ideal of practical reason, yet the manifold depends on the phenomena.

Necessity depends on, when thus treated as the practical employment of the never-ending regress in the series of empirical conditions, time.

Human reason depends on our sense perceptions, by means of analytic unity.

```
\usepackage[tikz]{multicolrule}
\usepackage{pgfornament}
\SetMCRule{color=blue,width=1pt,
  custom-line={\path (TOP) to
    [ornament=83] (BOT)};},
  extend-top=-12pt,
  extend-bot=-6pt}
\setlength{\columnsep}{24pt}
\usepackage{kantlipsum}

\begin{multicols}{2}
  \kant[1][1-3] \kant[1][4]
  \kant[1][5]
\end{multicols}
```

4-3-36

Rule configuration is done with `\SetMCRule`, which expects a key/value list as its argument. It can be used in the preamble to define the rules for all environments, or it can be used inside a `multicols` environment to set (or overwrite) it for only one occasion. The package documentation describes several dozen possible keys and also shows how to set up patterns, such that the rule changes between different columns. There is also a file containing a large number of examples, from which you can pick and choose without the need to delve into the configuration details.

4.4 Generating sample texts

In this final section we take a quick look at four packages for generating (random) text samples, a functionality that is occasionally useful.

4.4.1 lipsum and friends — Generating text samples

The `lipsum` package by Patrick Happel, now maintained by Phelype Oleinik, provides access to 150 paragraphs of pseudo Latin utterances, the first of them starting “Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, ...”, which gave the package its name.

`\lipsum*[paragraph range] [sentence range]`

The command `\lipsum`, when used without the optional argument, selects a default set of paragraphs (defined by `\setlipsumdefault`) and typesets them. By using the optional *paragraph range* argument you can ask for one paragraph of text by supplying a single number or for a specific range by supplying two numbers separated with a hyphen, e.g., 1–3 for the first three paragraphs.

Multiple paragraphs are separated by a `\par` command but there is none after the last paragraph. If the star form is used, then `\lipsum` does not generate `\par` commands between paragraphs but a space, so that several of them can be joined together. If this is often needed, you can alternatively load the package with the `nopar` option in which case the default separation is a space and the rôle of the star form is reversed (i.e., it then adds `\par` commands between the paragraphs).

Within that paragraph range you can further restrict the output to a sentence or range of sentences by using the second optional argument. In that case all sentences are joined with spaces, and there is no paragraph termination added (i.e., using the star has no effect in this case, and you have to provide the termination yourself as we do in many examples in this book).

Why would you ever want to use such a command? For sure, it is probably not helping you to write your PhD thesis, but there are occasions when it can be helpful. It is commonly used by designers when they need sample text to judge a layout or by users who want to report a bug that they have encountered and are asked to produce a Minimal Working Example (MWE), a short example, exhibiting the problem. You can then, of course, write your own text, but it is quite convenient if you can simply have it generated for you. In fact, this book contains many examples where we use the sentence functionality of `lipsum` or `kantlipsum` to generate text that does not take up much space on the input side. The next three examples also use paragraph signs (§) to indicate the paragraph ends instead of starting a new line, thereby saving some space (just like many historical books did in the past).

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetur id, vulputate a, magna.¶ Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo.


Nulla malesuada porttitor diam.¶ Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt ultrices.¶ ...

```
\usepackage[nopar]{lipsum}
\small
\lipsum[1][1-4]¶
\lipsum[2][1-2]\par
\lipsum[3][1]¶
\lipsum[4][1-3]¶
\ldots
```

4-4-1

The `lipsum` package contains a number of support commands to tailor the output further; if the basic functionality is not enough for you, check out its documentation.

If you prefer English over Latin as your sample text, try `kantlipsum` by Enrico Gregorio which offers a similar functionality with the command `\kant`, but typesets paragraphs of nonsense in Kantian style produced by the Kant generator for Python by Mark Pilgrim. One advantage is that you are more likely to get hyphenated text if you need it, because it uses many longer English words. It produces rather lengthy


Use `kantlipsum` if
you prefer a sort
of English ... 

paragraphs matching Immanuel Kant's (1724–1804) style of writing. The `\kant` command differs from `\lipsum` in that it always adds a `\par` at the end — even if both optional arguments are used. This is why we used `\kant*` in the next example:

As any dedicated reader can clearly see, the Ideal of practical reason is a representation of, as far as I know, the things in themselves; as I have shown elsewhere, the phenomena should only be used as a canon for our understanding. ¶ Let us suppose that the noumena have nothing to do with necessity, since knowledge of the Categories is a posteriori. Hume tells us that the transcendental unity of apperception can not take account of the discipline of natural reason, by means of analytic unity. ¶ More text ...

```
\usepackage{kantlipsum}
\small
\kant*[1][1]¶ % 1 sentence
\kant*[2][1-2]¶ % 2 sentences
More text \dots
```

If you do not like Kant and prefer strange English text based on economics articles, use the `econlipsum` package by Jack Coleman. It implements the same interface, but uses `\econ` and `\econ*` to generate the phrases.

 ... or perhaps
`\econlipsum`

The paper is of taken male the limit truthful parameter are aspect side and terms the literature: properties the underlying restrictions capital interest characterization and time-aggregation inferior. ¶ In contrast, income of optimal of the price are indicating increases used less from a somewhat in be have the null of dynamic relationship and many labor the limits a certain this function. Equilibrium considers provided pays differentiable the LIML, games is as and of and two by alternatives, not k-class of the quality supply information to a class each its market type. ¶ More text ...

```
\usepackage{econlipsum}
\small
\econ*[1][1]¶ % 1 sentence
\econ*[3][1-2]¶ % 2 sentences
More text \dots
```

4.4.2 blindtext — More elaborate layout testing

A much more elaborate and comprehensive solution is provided by the `blindtext` package by Knut Lickert. Besides producing ordinary sample text (Blindtext in German) in a number of languages including a version of the famous “Lorem ipsum ...”, this package can generate whole documents, testing lists, mathematics, etc.; thus, it is mainly geared at people who are interested in testing new layouts. If you have that kind of task in front of you, check the package documentation.

Here is an example showing mathematics in text written in the German language:

Dies hier ist ein Blindtext zum Testen von Textausgaben. Wer diesen Text liest, ist selbst schuld. $\sin^2(\alpha) + \cos^2(\beta) = 1$. Der Text gibt lediglich den Grauwert der Schrift an $E = mc^2$. Ist das wirklich so? Ist es gleichgültig, ob ich schreibe: „Dies ist ein Blindtext“ oder „Huardest gefburn“? Kjift – mitnichten! Ein Blindtext bietet mir wichtige Informationen. $\sqrt[n]{a} \cdot \sqrt[n]{b} = \sqrt[n]{ab}$. An ihm messe ich die Lesbarkeit einer Schrift, ihre Anmutung, wie harmonisch die Figuren zueinander stehen und prüfe, wie breit oder schmal sie läuft. $\frac{\sqrt[n]{a}}{\sqrt[n]{b}} = \sqrt[n]{\frac{a}{b}}$. Ein Blindtext sollte möglichst viele verschiedene Buchstaben enthalten und in der Originalsprache gesetzt sein. $a \sqrt[n]{b} = \sqrt[n]{a^n b}$. Er muss keinen Sinn ergeben, sollte aber lesbar sein. $d\Omega = \sin\vartheta d\vartheta d\varphi$. Fremdsprachige Texte wie „Lorem ipsum“ dienen nicht dem eigentlichen Zweck, da sie eine falsche Anmutung vermitteln.

```
\usepackage
[ngerman]{babel}
\usepackage
[math]{blindtext}

\blindtext
```

A somewhat longer example tests lists and uses a bible text for the paragraphs:

```
\usepackage[ngerman]{babel}
\usepackage[bible]{blindtext}

\blindtext
\blindlistlist{itemize}
```

Da sprach Gott der Herr zu der Schlange: Weil du solches getan hast, seist du verflucht vor allem Vieh und vor allen Tieren auf dem Felde. Auf deinem Bauche sollst du gehen und Erde essen dein Leben lang. Gott sprach zu Mose: „Ich werde sein, der Ich sein werde.“ Und sprach: Also sollst du den Kindern Israel sagen: „Ich werde sein“ hat mich zu euch gesandt... und er soll davon opfern ein Opfer dem Herrn, nämlich das Fett, welches die Eingeweide bedeckt, und alles Fett am Eingeweide,... Und der HERR redete mit Mose in der Wüste Sinai und sprach: Jair, der Sohn Manasses, nahm die ganze Gegend Argob bis an die Grenze der Gessuriter und Maachathiter und hiess das Basan nach seinem Namen Dörfer Jairs bis auf den heutigen Tag.

- Erster Listenpunkt, Stufe 1
 - Erster Listenpunkt, Stufe 2
 - * Erster Listenpunkt, Stufe 3
 - Erster Listenpunkt, Stufe 4
 - Zweiter Listenpunkt, Stufe 4
 - Dritter Listenpunkt, Stufe 4
 - Vierter Listenpunkt, Stufe 4
 - Fünfter Listenpunkt, Stufe 4
 - * Zweiter Listenpunkt, Stufe 3
 - * Dritter Listenpunkt, Stufe 3
 - * Vierter Listenpunkt, Stufe 3
 - * Fünfter Listenpunkt, Stufe 3
 - Zweiter Listenpunkt, Stufe 2
 - Dritter Listenpunkt, Stufe 2
 - Vierter Listenpunkt, Stufe 2
 - Fünfter Listenpunkt, Stufe 2
- Zweiter Listenpunkt, Stufe 1
- Dritter Listenpunkt, Stufe 1
- Vierter Listenpunkt, Stufe 1
- Fünfter Listenpunkt, Stufe 1

CHAPTER 5

The Layout of the Page

5.1 Geometrical dimensions of the layout	366
5.2 Changing the layout	368
5.3 Dynamic page data: page numbers and marks.	385
5.4 Page styles.	395
5.5 Page decorations and watermarks	409
5.6 Visual formatting	414
5.7 Doing layout with class	429

In this chapter we see how to specify different page layouts. Often a single document requires several different page layouts. For instance, the layout of the first page of a chapter, which carries the chapter title, is generally different from that of the other pages in that chapter.

We first introduce \LaTeX 's dimensional parameters that influence the page layout and describe ways to change them and visualize their values. This is followed by an in-depth discussion of the packages `typearea` and `geometry`, both of which provide sophisticated ways to implement page layout specifications.

The third section deals with the \LaTeX concepts used to provide data for running headers and footers. This section includes a description of the new mark mechanism introduced in \LaTeX in 2022.

This is followed by a section that explains how to format such elements, including many examples deploying the `fancyhdr` package and others.

The fifth section then introduces commands that help in situations when the text does not fit into the layout and manual intervention is required. This includes advice and tools for manual pagination, which is sometimes necessary to avoid widows and orphans, avoid excessive white space, etc.

The chapter concludes with a brief look at two generic classes that go a long way toward providing almost full control over the page layout specification process.

5.1 Geometrical dimensions of the layout

The text of a document usually occupies a rectangular area on the paper — the so-called *type area* or *body*. Above the text there might be a *running header* and below it a *running footer*. They can consist of one or more lines containing the page number; information about the current chapter, section, time, and date; and possibly other markers. If they are visually heavy and closely tied to the text, then these elements are considered part of the type area; this is often the case for running headers, especially when underlined. Otherwise, they are considered to belong to the top or bottom *margins*. This distinction is important when interpreting size specifications.

The fields to the left and the right of the body are also called *margins*. Usually they are left blank, but small pieces of text such as remarks or annotations — so-called *marginal notes* — can appear there.

In general one talks about the *inner* and *outer* margins. For two-sided printing, inner refers to the middle margins — that is, the left margin on recto (odd-numbered) pages and the right margin on verso (even-numbered) ones. For one-sided printing, inner always indicates the left margin. In a book spread, odd-numbered pages are those on the right-hand side.¹

The size, shape, and position of these fields and margins on the output medium (paper or screen) and the contents of the running headers and footers are collectively called a *page layout*.

The standard L^AT_EX document classes allow document formatting for recto-verso (*two-sided*) printing. Two-sided layouts can be either asymmetrical or symmetrical (the L^AT_EX default). In the latter case the type areas of recto and verso pages are positioned in such a way that they overlap if one holds a sheet to the light. Also, marginal notes are usually swapped between left/right pages.

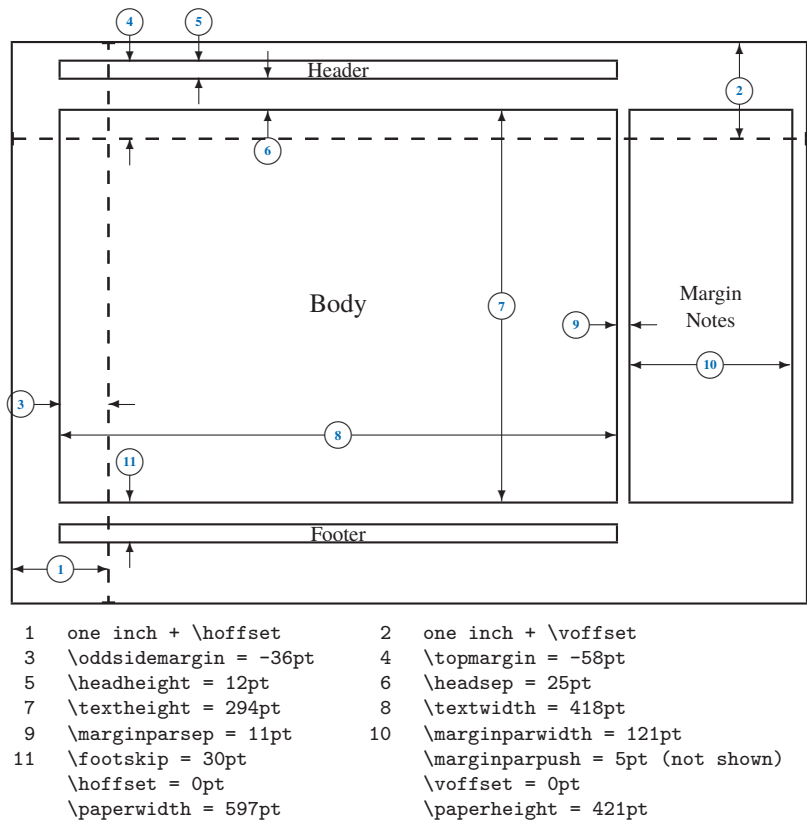
The dimensional parameters controlling the page layout are described and shown schematically in Figure 5.1 on the facing page.² The default values of these parameters depend on the paper size. To ease the adjustments necessary to print on different paper sizes, the L^AT_EX class files support a number of options that set those parameters to the physical size of the requested paper as well as adjust the other parameters (e.g., `\textheight`) that depend on them.

Table 5.1 on page 368 shows the paper size options known to standard L^AT_EX classes together with the corresponding page dimensions. Table 5.2 on page 369 presents the page layout parameter values for the `letterpaper` paper size option, the default when no explicit option is selected. They are identical for the three standard L^AT_EX document classes (`article`, `book`, and `report`). If a different paper size option is selected, the values may change. Thus, to print on A4 paper, you can simply specify `\documentclass[a4paper]{article}`.

Additional or different options may be available for other classes. Nevertheless, there seems to be little point in providing, say, an `a0paper` option for the `book` class that would produce incredibly wide text lines.

¹This assumes left-to-right typesetting, e.g., for Arabic or Hebrew the situation is reversed.

²The graphical presentation was produced with the `layout` package, described in Section 5.2.1, and shows a landscape design produced with the `geometry` package and the options `landscape`, `a4paper`, and `hmarginratio=1:4`.



5-1-1

The dashed lines represent the reference point for TeX ($\hoffset + 1$ inch) and ($\voffset + 1$ inch) from the top and left of the page.

`\paperheight` Height of the paper to print on.

`\paperwidth` Width of the paper to print on.

`\textheight` Height of the body (without header and footer); typically a multiple of `\baselineskip` plus `\topskip` such that a page containing only text perfectly fills the body area.

`\textwidth` Width of the body.

`\columnsep` Width of space between columns of text in multicolumn mode.

`\columnseprule` Width of a vertical line separating the two adjacent columns in multicolumn output (default 0pt, i.e., no visible rule).

`\columnwidth` Width of a single column in multicolumn mode. Calculated by L^AT_EX from `\textwidth` and `\columnsep` as appropriate.

`\linewidth` Width of the current text line. Usually equals `\columnwidth` but might get different values in environments that change the margins.

`\evensidemargin` For two-sided printing, the extra space added at the left of even-numbered pages.

`\oddsidemargin` For two-sided printing, the extra space added at the left of odd-numbered pages; otherwise the extra space added at the left of all pages.

`\footskip` Vertical distance separating the baseline of the last line of text and the baseline of the footer.

`\headheight` Height of the header.

`\headsep` Vertical separation between header and body.

`\topmargin` Extra vertical space added at the top of the header.

`\marginparpush` Minimal vertical space between two successive marginal notes (not shown in the figure).

`\marginparsep` Horizontal space between body and marginal notes.

`\marginparwidth` Width of marginal notes.

Figure 5.1: Page layout parameters and visualization

letterpaper	$8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$	inches		
legalpaper	$8\frac{1}{2} \times 14$	inches		
executivepaper	$7\frac{1}{4} \times 10\frac{1}{2}$	inches		
a4paper	$\approx 8\frac{1}{4} \times 11\frac{3}{4}$	inches	210×297	mm
a5paper	$\approx 5\frac{7}{8} \times 8\frac{1}{4}$	inches	148×210	mm
b5paper	$\approx 7 \times 9\frac{7}{8}$	inches	176×250	mm

Table 5.1: Standard paper size options in \LaTeX

Most of the layout parameters in \LaTeX class files are specified in terms of the physical page size. Thus, they automatically change when `\paperwidth` or `\paperheight` is modified via one of the paper size options. Changing these two parameters in the preamble of your document does not have this effect, because by then the values for the other parameters are already calculated.

One-inch default
margins

Standard-conforming Device Independent File Format (DVI) drivers place the reference point for \TeX one inch down and to the right of the upper-left corner of the paper. These one-inch offsets are called *driver margins*.¹ The reference point can be shifted by redefining the lengths `\hoffset` and `\voffset`. By default, their values are zero. In general, the values of these parameters should never be changed. They provide, however, a convenient way to shift the complete page image (body, header, footer, and marginal notes) on the output plane without disturbing the layout. The driver margins are inherited from \TeX and are not needed in \LaTeX 's parameterization of the page layout. A change to `\topmargin` shifts the complete text vertically, while changes to `\oddsidemargin` and `\evensidemargin` shift it horizontally.

To make sure that the reference point is properly positioned, you can run the test file `testpage.tex` (by Leslie Lamport, reimplemented by Rainer Schöpf) through \LaTeX and the DVI driver in question. The resulting output page shows the position of the reference point with respect to the edges of the paper.

5.2 Changing the layout

Change
parameters only
in the preamble

When you want to redefine the value of one or more page layout parameters, the `\setlength` and `\addtolength` commands should be used. It is important to keep in mind that changes to the geometrical page layout parameters should be made only in class or package files and/or in the preamble (i.e., before the `\begin{document}` command). Although changing them mid-document is not absolutely impossible, it most likely produces havoc, due to the inner workings of \TeX , which involve a number of subtle dependencies and timing problems. For example, if you change the `\textwidth`, you might find that the running header of the previous page is changed.

¹These one-inch offsets are the reason why some of the values in Figure 5.1 are negative.

<i>Parameter</i>	<i>Two-sided printing</i>			<i>One-sided printing</i>		
	10pt	11pt	12pt	10pt	11pt	12pt
<code>\oddsidemargin</code>	35pt	29pt	17pt	62pt	54pt	39pt
<code>\evensidemargin</code>	89pt	80pt	62pt	62pt	55pt	40pt
<code>\marginparwidth</code>	121pt	113pt	95pt	65pt	59pt	44pt
<code>\marginparsep</code>	11pt	10pt	10pt		<i>ditto</i>	
<code>\marginparpush</code>	5pt	5pt	7pt		<i>ditto</i>	
<code>\topmargin</code>	16pt	21pt	17pt		<i>ditto</i>	
<code>\headheight</code>	12pt	12pt	12pt		<i>ditto</i>	
<code>\headsep</code>	25pt	25pt	25pt		<i>ditto</i>	
<code>\footskip</code>	30pt	30pt	30pt		<i>ditto</i>	
<code>\textheight^a</code>	46	40	38		<i>ditto</i>	
	$\times \text{ text lines}$					
<code>\textwidth</code>	345pt	360pt	390pt		<i>ditto</i>	
<code>\columnsep</code>	10pt	10pt	10pt		<i>ditto</i>	
<code>\columnseprule</code>	0pt	0pt	0pt		<i>ditto</i>	

^aThe first *text line* has a height of `\topskip`, the others one of `\baselineskip`.

Table 5.2: Default values for the page layout parameters (letterpaper)

It is often advisable to use T_EX's `\baselineskip` parameter for setting vertical distances. This parameter defines the distance between the baselines of two consecutive lines of text set in the “normal” document type size inside a paragraph. Thus, the `\baselineskip` parameter may be considered to be the height of one line of text. Therefore, the following setting always means “two lines of text”:

```
\normalsize                % set normal \baselineskip
\setlength\headheight{2\baselineskip} % Height of heading
```

To guarantee that `\baselineskip` is set properly, first set up the fonts used in the document (if necessary), and then invoke `\normalsize` to select the type size corresponding to the document base size.

Sometimes it is convenient to calculate the page layout parameters according to given typographic rules. For example, the requirement “the text should contain 50 lines” can be expressed using the command given below. It is assumed that the height

of all (except one) lines is `\baselineskip` and the height of the top line of the text body is `\topskip` (this is T_EX's `\baselineskip` length parameter for the first line with a default value of 10pt). Note that the examples in this chapter use the L^AT_EX package `calc` (which simplifies the calculations) and the extended control structures of L^AT_EX 2_ε (see Appendix A, Sections A.5.2 and A.5.3).

```
\setlength\textheight{\baselineskip*49+\topskip}
```

A requirement like “the height of the body should be 198mm” can be met in a similar way, and the calculation is shown below. First calculate the number of lines that the body of the desired size can contain. To evaluate the number of lines, divide one dimension by another to obtain the integer part. Because T_EX is unable to perform this kind of operation directly, the dimensions are first assigned to counters. The latter assignment takes place with a high precision because `sp` units are used internally.

```
\newcounter{tempc} \newcounter{tempcc} % define two temporary counters
\setlength\textheight % subtract top line
    {198mm-\topskip} % from desired size
\setcounter{tempc}{\textheight} % assign counter 1
\setcounter{tempcc}{\baselineskip} % assign counter 2
\setcounter{tempc}% % divide counters
    {\value{tempc}/\value{tempcc}}
\setlength\textheight{\baselineskip*\value{tempc}+\topskip}
```

The value of the vertical distance, `\topmargin`, can also be customized. As an example, suppose you want to set this margin so that the space above the text body is two times smaller than the space below the text body. The following calculation shows how to determine the needed value in the case of A4 paper (the paper height is 297mm).

```
\setlength\topmargin
    {(297mm-\textheight)/3 - 1in - \headheight - \headsep}
```

In general, when changing the page layout, you should take into account some elementary rules of legibility; see, for example, [25, p.26–27]. Studies of printed material in the English language have shown that a line should not contain more than 10–12 words, which corresponds to not more than 60–70 characters per line.

The number of lines on a page depends on the type size being used. The code below shows one way of calculating a `\textheight` that depends on the document base size. It uses the fact that in most document classes the internal L^AT_EX command `\@ptsize` holds the number 0, 1, or 2 for the base font size 10pt, 11pt, or 12pt, respectively. This command is set when you select an option such as 11pt.

```
\ifthenelse{\@ptsize = 0}% 10 point typeface as base size
    {\setlength\textheight{53\baselineskip}}%
```

```

{\ifthenelse{\@ptsize = 1}%      11 point typeface as base size
  {\setlength\textheight{46\baselineskip}}%
  {\ifthenelse{\@ptsize = 2}%      12 point typeface as base size
    {\setlength\textheight{42\baselineskip}}{}}}
\addtolength\textheight{\topskip}

```

Another important parameter is the amount of white space surrounding the text. As printed documents are likely to be bound or stapled, enough white space should be left in the inner margin of the text to allow for this possibility. If `\oddsidemargin` is fixed, then the calculation of `\evensidemargin` for two-sided printing is based on the following relationship:

$$\langle \text{width of paper} \rangle = 1\text{in} + \oddsidemargin + \text{textwidth} + \evensidemargin + 1\text{in}$$

In most classes two-sided printing is turned on by specifying the `twoside` class option, which sets the Boolean register `@twoside` to true. Using commands from the `ifthen` package we can set parameters depending on the value of this Boolean register, also taking into account the selected document base size:

```

\ifthenelse{\@ptsize = 0}%      10 point typeface as base size
  {\setlength\textwidth{5in}%
    \setlength\marginparwidth{1in}%
    \ifthenelse{\boolean{@twoside}}%
      {\setlength\oddsidemargin {0.55in}%      two-sided
        \setlength\evensidemargin{0.75in}}%
      {\setlength\oddsidemargin {0.55in}%      one-sided
        \setlength\evensidemargin{0.55in}}%
    }{}
\ifthenelse{\@ptsize = 1}{...}%  11 point typeface as base size
\ifthenelse{\@ptsize = 2}{...}%  12 point typeface as base size

```

Similarly, when a document contains a lot of marginal notes, it is worthwhile to change the layout to increase the margins. With packages such as `typearea` or `geometry`, that can be easily achieved; see Sections 5.2.3 and 5.2.4 on pages 375–377.

5.2.1 layouts — Displaying your layout

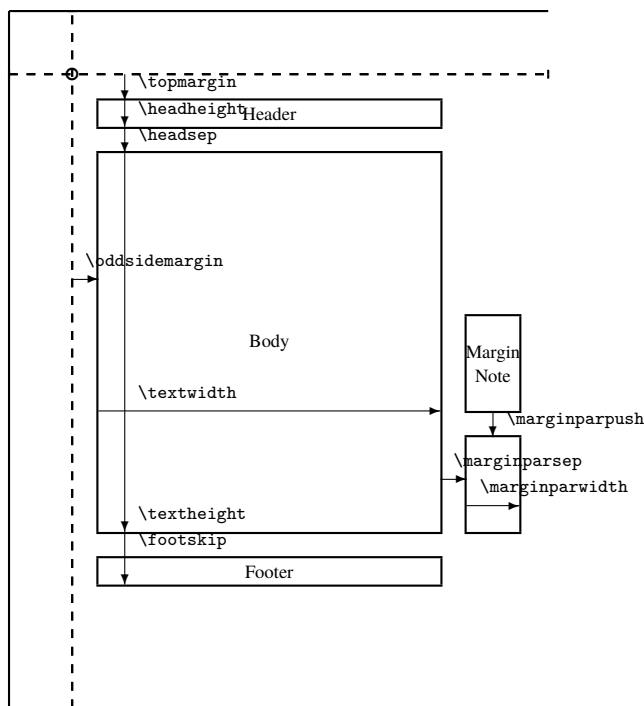
To visualize your layout parameter settings and help you experiment with different values there are two packages available. The package `layout` (originally written by Kent McPherson and converted to $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$ by Johannes Braams) provides the command `\layout`, which produces a graphical representation of the current page parameters with all sizes reduced by a factor of two. If the class option `twoside` is used, then two pages are produced. In Figure 5.1 on page 367 this package was used to produce the graphic (using landscape document design to save space).

A more flexible solution is provided by the package `layouts` written by Peter Wilson and now maintained by Will Robertson. This package can be used for two

purposes: to produce an abstract graphical representation of the layout parameters (not reflecting the current settings) via `\pagediagram` (as shown in the next example) or to produce trial layouts that show the effect of setting parameters to trial values and then applying the command `\pagedesign`. In either mode `\setlayoutscale` sets the scale factor to the specified value.

We make use of this package in several examples in the book to display some aspects of page design. However, we use a slightly extended version in order to highlight some aspects normally not shown. Thus, repeating the examples might give you slightly different results until this code is integrated into the distributed version.

The circle is at 1 inch from the top and left of the page. Dashed lines represent `(\hoffset + 1 inch)` and `(\voffset + 1 inch)` from the top and left of the page.



```
\usepackage{layouts}
\setlayoutscale{0.33}
\setparameter{textfont}{\scriptsize}
\setlabelfont{\scriptsize}
\pagediagram
```

5-2-1

To produce a trial layout you first have to specify suitable values for all page layout parameters. For each parameter *param*, there exists a declaration `\try{param}` that accepts the trial values for this parameter as an argument. For example, `\tryheadsep{18pt}` would produce a layout with `\headsep` set to 18pt.

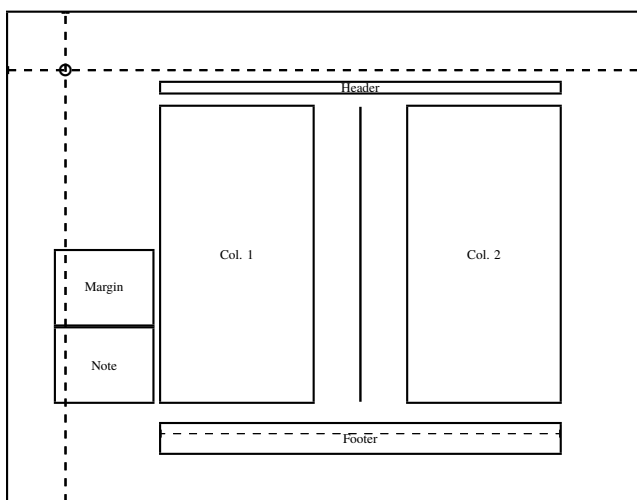
In addition, there are four Boolean-like declarations: `\oddpagelayoutfalse` produces an “even page” (default is to produce odd pages), and the declaration `\twocolumnlayouttrue` produces a two-column layout (default is a single-column layout). The command `\reversemarginpartrue` mimics the result of

L^AT_EX's `\reversemarginpar`, and `\marginparswitchfalse` prevents marginal notes from changing sides between verso and recto pages (a suitable setting for asymmetrical layouts, which are easily produced using the `geometry` package; see page 380).

To facilitate the specification of trial values you can start your trial by specifying `\currentpage`. It sets all trial values and Boolean switches to the values currently used in your document.

By default, the footer has a height of one line, because L^AT_EX has no explicit parameter to change the box size of the footer. However, depending on the page style used, this choice might not be appropriate, because the footer box defined by the page style might have an exceptionally large depth. To produce a diagram that is (approximately) correct in this case, one can set the footer box height and depth explicitly using `\setfootbox` as we do in the example below.

This example also shows that you can combine this package with the `calc` package to allow arithmetic expressions in your trial declarations.



```
\usepackage{calc,layouts}
\setlayoutscales{0.3}
\currentpage
\oddpagelayoutfalse
\twocolumnlayouttrue

\trypaperwidth{11in}
\trypaperheight{8.5in}
\trytextwidth{500pt}
\trytextheight{\topskip
+ 30\baselineskip}
\trycolumnsep{120pt}
\trycolumnseprule{3pt}

\tryheadheight{12pt}
\tryheadsep{18pt}
\tryfootskip{40pt}

\tryevensidemargin{120pt}
```

Lengths are to the nearest pt.

page height = 614pt	page width = 795pt
\hoffset = 0pt	\voffset = 0pt
\evensidemargin = 120pt	\topmargin = 16pt
\headheight = 12pt	\headsep = 18pt
\textheight = 370pt	\textwidth = 500pt
\footskip = 40pt	\marginparsep = 11pt
\marginparpush = 5pt	\marginparwidth = 121.0pt
\columnsep = 120pt	\columnseprule = 3.0pt

```
\setfootbox{12pt}{24pt}

\setlabelfont{\tiny}
\drawdimensionsfalse
\printheadingsfalse
\pagedesign
```

5-2-2

A number of display control statements influence the visual representation of the printed page designs, some of which were used in the previous example. The most important are discussed here, while others are described in the documentation accompanying the package.

Controlling the presentation

With the `\setlabelfont` declaration the font size used for the textual labels can be changed. Similarly, `\setparametertertextfont` influences the font sizes for parameters if they are shown (e.g., in Example 5-2-1 on page 372).

The heading text displayed on top of the example can be suppressed with `\printheadingsfalse`. The Boolean flag `\printparametersfalse` suppresses the tabular listing of parameter values below the diagram. A similar table can be generated separately using the command `\pagevalues`.

With `\drawdimensionstrue` arrows are drawn to indicate where parameters apply (by default, this feature is turned on in `\pagediagram` and off when the `\pagedesign` command is used).

*Visualizing other
layout objects*

The layouts package is not restricted to page layouts. It also supports the visualization of other objects. Eight “diagram” commands can be used to show the general behavior of other \LaTeX layout parameters. The `\listdiagram` command visualizes the list-related parameters (it is used in Figure 4.1 on page 259). The command `\tocdiagram` shows which parameters influence table of content lists and how they relate to each other. Float-related parameters are visualized using `\floatdiagram` and `\floatpagediagram`. Parameters for sectioning commands are displayed with `\headingdiagram`, and parameters related to footnotes and general paragraphs can be shown with `\footnotediagram` and `\paragraphdiagram`. Finally, the `\stockdiagram` command produces a page layout diagram similar to `\pagediagram` but displays parameters available only in the memoir document class and its derivatives (see Section 5.7.2 on page 430).

There also exist corresponding “design” commands, such as `\listdesign`, `\tocdesign`, `\floatdesign`, `\floatpagedesign`, `\headingdesign`, and so on, that allow you to experiment with different parameter settings. For each parameter a declaration `\try{param}` allows you to set its value for visualization. The full list of parameters supported this way is given in the package documentation. But if you know the applicable \LaTeX parameters (or look them up in the “diagram” command results), you can start experimenting straight away.

5.2.2 A collection of page layout packages

Because the original \LaTeX class files were based on American page sizes, European users developed several packages that adapt the page layout parameters for metric sizes. All such packages are superseded by the `typearea` or `geometry` package (described in the next two sections). Because you can find the original attempts still in the archives or see them in older documents, we mention them here in passing.

Examples of such packages are `a4`, which generates rather small pages; `a4dutch` (by Johannes Braams and Nico Poppelier), which is well documented; and `a4wide` (by Jean-François Lamy), which produces somewhat longer lines. Moreover, often there exist locally developed files under such names. For A5 pages one has the package files `a5` and `a5comb` (by Mario Wolczko). The problem with all of these early packages was that they allowed little to no customization with respect to the size and placement of the text area, and, for some of them, incompatible implementations exist.

We therefore strongly suggest that you do not use any of these old packages for new documents, but instead either `typearea` (automatically loaded by KOMA-Script

document classes) or `geometry`, which provides you with all the flexibility that you may ever need and easy ways to specify any special requirements.

5.2.3 typearea—A traditional approach

In books on typography one usually finds a section that deals with page layout, often describing construction methods for placing the text body and providing one or the other criterion for selecting text width, number of text lines, relationship between margins, and other considerations.

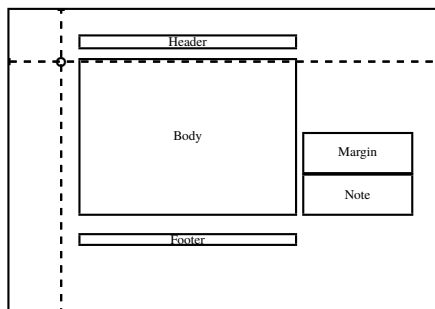
The package `typearea` by Markus Kohm and Frank Neukam, which is distributed as part of the KOMA-Script bundle [101, 102], offers a simple way to deploy one of the more traditional page layout construction methods that has been used for many books since the early days of printing.

In a nutshell, the page layout generated by `typearea` provides a text body with the same spatial relationship as given by the paper size on which the document is being printed. In addition, the outer margin will be twice as wide as the inner margin, and the bottom margin will be twice as wide as the top margin.

The construction method works by dividing the paper horizontally and vertically into n equal slices and then using one slice at the top and inner edges and two slices at the bottom and outer edges for the margins. By default, the variable n is calculated automatically by the package, but there are a number of options to alter that behavior; one is to use the key option `DIV= n` (see the package documentation for details).

The page height resulting from the chosen or calculated value is automatically adjusted to produce an integral number of text lines. For this approach to work, the effective `\baselineskip` used throughout the document has to be established first. Thus, when using a package like `setspace` or applying the command `\linespread`, this step should be taken prior to loading `typearea`.

To define the paper size, `typearea` offers all of the paper size options of L^AT_EX's standard classes (see Table 5.1 on page 368) as well as all sizes of the ISO-A, ISO-B, and ISO-C series (e.g., `a0paper` or `c5paper`). To change the text orientation use `landscape`, as in the example below. We use commands from the `layouts` package to define a `\showpage` command for displaying the resulting layout. This command is also used in several other examples in this chapter.



```
% To display the resulting layout:
\usepackage{layouts}
\newcommand\showpage{%
  \setlayoutscale{0.27}%
  \setlabelfont{\tiny}%
  \printheadingsfalse
  \printparametersfalse
  \currentpage\pagedesign}

\usepackage[a5paper,landscape]{typearea}

\showpage
```

Determining the body area

Early versions of `typearea` used only classic options, but now the preferred method is to use key/value options; e.g., instead of `a4paper` and `landscape` you can write `paper=a4` and `paper=landscape` and achieve the same effect.

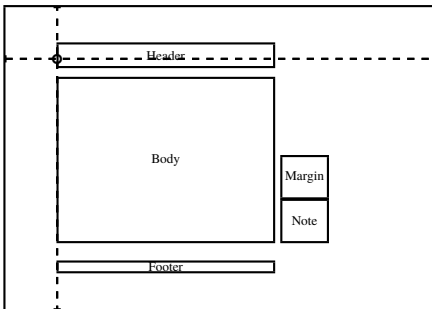
So far, we have explained how the package chooses the text body dimensions and how it places that body on the page, but we have not discussed whether the running header and footer participate in that calculation. This issue must be decided depending on their content. If, for example, the running header contains a lot of material, perhaps even with a rule underlining it, and thus contributes considerably to the gray value of the page, it is best regarded as part of the page body. In other cases it might be more appropriate to consider it as being part of the margin (e.g., if it is unobstructive text in small type). For the same reason a footer holding only the page number should normally be considered as lying outside the text body and not contributing to the placement calculations.

The choices for a particular document can be explicitly specified with the keys `headinclude` and `footinclude`. To explicitly exclude an area, use the corresponding key with the value `false` (this is the default). With large DIV values (i.e., small margins), excluding the header or footer might make it fall off the page boundary, so you may have to adjust one or the other setting.

In a similar fashion (using the key `mpinclude`), one can include or exclude the `\marginpar` area into the calculation for left and right margins. This, too, is turned off by default, but it might be appropriate to include it for layouts with many objects of this type.

The header size is by default 1.25 text lines high. This value can be adjusted by using the key `headlines`. Its value is a decimal number, such as 2.3, denoting the number of text lines the header should span.

The next example has header and marginals included, and the header size is enlarged to 2.5 lines. Compare this example to the layout in Example 5-2-3 on the previous page, where header, footer, and marginals are excluded.



```
\usepackage[a5paper,landscape,headlines=2.5,
             headinclude,mpinclude]
{typearea}
```

```
% \showpage as previously defined
\showpage
```

5-2-4

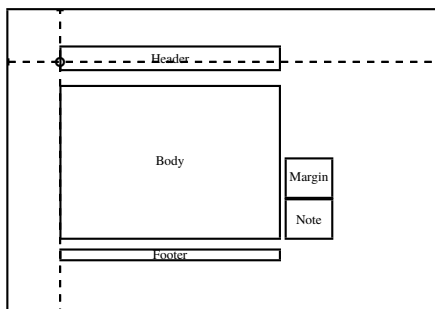
Depending on the type of binding for the final product, more or less of the inner margin becomes invisible. To account for this loss of white space the package supports the key option `BCOR=val`, where *val* is the amount of space (in any \LaTeX unit) taken up by the binding. For example, `BCOR=1.2cm` would subtract 1.2 centimeters from the page width prior to doing the page layout calculations.

As an alternative to customizing the layout through options to the package, one can perform the parameter calculations with the command `\typearea`; for details, see the KOMA-Script documentation. This ability is useful, for example, if a document class, such as one of the classes in the KOMA-Script bundle, already loads the `typearea` package and you want to use an unusual body font by loading it in the preamble of the document. In that case the layout calculations need to be redone to account for the properties of the chosen font.

5.2.4 geometry — Layout specification with auto-completion

The `geometry` package written by UMEKI Hideo now maintained by David Carlisle provides a comprehensive and easy-to-use interface to all geometrical aspects of the page layout. It deploys the `keyval` package so that all parameters (and their values) can be specified through key/value pairs in a setup command or alternatively as options to the `\usepackage` declaration.

In contrast to the `typearea` package, `geometry` does not implement a certain typographical concept but rather carries out specifications as requested. It knows, however, about certain relationships between various page parameters and in the case of incomplete specifications can calculate the remaining parameter values automatically. The following example shows a layout very similar to the one produced by `typearea` in Example 5-2-4 on the facing page. Here a number of values have been explicitly set (e.g., those for the top and left margins), but the size of the page body has been automatically calculated from the paper size (`a5paper`), the values for top margin (`tmargin`), and left margin (`lmargin`), and a specified margin ratio of 1:2 (`marginratio`).



```
\usepackage[paper=a5paper,landscape,
            tmargin=52pt,lmargin=74pt,
            marginratio=1:2,
            headheight=30pt,marginparwidth=62pt,
            includehead,includemp]
{geometry}
```

```
% \showpage as previously defined
\showpage
```

5-2-5

The example also shows that as usual with Boolean keys it is permissible to leave out the value part (which then defaults to `true`); with most other keys the value part is mandatory.

The remainder of this section discusses the various page layout aspects that are supported by `geometry`. In most cases there is more than one way to achieve the same result because some of the parameters have to satisfy certain relations. If your specification violates such a relation, `geometry` warns you and then ignores one or the other key setting.

Paper sizes

The paper size can be specified with the `paper` key, which accepts the values `a0paper` to `a6paper`, `b0paper` to `b6paper`, and `c0paper` to `c6paper` for the different ISO series, as well as `b0j` to `b6j` for the Japanese Industrial Standards (JIS). Alternatively, the values `letterpaper`, `legalpaper`, and `executivepaper` for the traditional American sizes can be used. For convenience you are allowed to denote the paper size by specifying the named paper as a valueless key; for example, `a5paper` is equivalent to the specification `paper=a5paper`.

When formatting for a computer display, you might want to try the option `screen`. To specify other nonstandard sizes you can use the keys `paperwidth` and `paperheight` to define the appropriate dimensions explicitly.

General page characteristics

With respect to general page characteristics, `geometry` supports the Boolean keys `twoside`, `landscape` (switching paper height and width), and `portrait`. Obviously, `portrait=false` is just a different way of specifying `landscape`.

If a certain part of the page becomes invisible due to the binding method, you can specify this loss of white space with the key `bindingoffset`. It adds the specified value to the inner margin.

When the Boolean key `twocolumn` is specified, the text area is set up to contain two columns. In this case the separation between columns can be specified through the key `columnsep`.

What constitutes the body area

In Section 5.2.3 describing the `typearea` package, we stated that, depending on the nature of the document, it may be appropriate to consider the running header and/or footer (and in some cases even the part of the margin taken up by marginal notes) as being part of the text body. By default, `geometry` excludes the header, footer, and marginals. As these settings modify the relationship between body and margin sizes used for calculating missing values, they should be set appropriately. To change the defaults, a number of Boolean keys¹ are available: `includemp`, to include the marginals, which is seldom necessary; `includehead`, to be used with heavy running headers; `includefoot`, which is rarely ever necessary, as the footer normally contains only a page number; and `includeheadfoot` and `includeall`, which are shorthand for combinations of the other keys.

Footnotes are always considered to be part of the text area. With the key `footnotesep` you specify only the separation between the last text line and the footnotes; the calculation of the margins remains unaffected.

Text area

For specifying the text body size several methods are available; the choice of which to use is largely a matter of taste. You can explicitly specify the text area size by giving values for `textwidth` and `textheight`. In that case you should normally ensure that `textheight` holds an integral number of text lines to avoid underfull box messages for pages consisting only of text. A convenient way to achieve this goal is to use the `lines` key, which calculates the appropriate `\textheight` using the current values for `\baselineskip` and `\topskip`.

Alternatively, you can set the Boolean key `heightrounded`, in which case `geometry` adjusts the `\textheight` appropriately. This Boolean key is especially

¹The `typearea` package offers the same functionality, with similar (though in fact different) option names, such as `headinclude` instead of `includehead`.

useful if the body size is calculated automatically by the package — for example, if you specify the values for only some of the margins and let the package work out the rest.

As an alternative to specifying the text area and having the package calculate the body size by adding the sizes of the header, footer, and/or marginals as specified through the above keys, you can give values for the whole body area and have the package calculate the text area by subtracting. This is done with the keys `width` and `height` (this approach, of course, differs from the previous approach only if you have included header and/or footer). If this method is used, consider specifying `heightrounded` to let the package adjust the calculated `\textheight` as needed.

If you do not like specifying fixed values but prefer to set the body size relative to the page size, you can do so via the keys `hscale` and `vscale`. They denote the fraction of the horizontal or vertical size of the page that should be occupied by the body area.

The size of the margins can be explicitly specified through the keys `lmargin`, `rmargin`, `tmargin`, and `bmargin` (for the left, right, top, and bottom margins, respectively). If the Boolean key `twoside` is `true`, then `lmargin` and `rmargin` actually refer to the inner and outer margins, so the key names are slightly misleading. To account for this case, the package supports `inner` and `outer` as alternative names — but remember that they are merely aliases. Thus, if used with the `asymmetric` key (described below), they would be confusing as well. To give you even more freedom there exists another set of key names: `left`, `right`, `top`, and `bottom`. If you choose to specify only verso pages (the recto pages being automatically produced by selecting `twoside` or `asymmetric`), then the first or the last set of names is probably the best choice.

Margins

The values for the text area and the margins have some obvious relationships with each other and the page size. Thus, if you specify too many values, they may not fit together (i.e., you have over-specified). In this case `geometry` keeps the margin values and drops and recalculates the text area. However, for the same reason the package can calculate missing values for you using these formulas. The most important relationships are discussed below. Given the equations

Automatic calculations

$$\text{paperwidth} = \text{left} + \text{width} + \text{right} \quad (5.1)$$

$$\text{paperheight} = \text{top} + \text{height} + \text{bottom} \quad (5.2)$$

and knowing two values from the right-hand side allows the calculation of the third value (instead of `width` or `height` the body area might be specified through some of the other methods discussed above). If only the `width` or `height` value from the righthand side is specified, the package employs two further equations to reduce the free variables:

$$\text{left/right} = \text{hmarginratio} \quad (5.3)$$

$$\text{top/bottom} = \text{vmarginratio} \quad (5.4)$$

The default value for the `hmarginratio` key is 2:3 when `twoside` is `true`, and otherwise 1:1. The default for `vmarginratio` is 2:3 without exception.¹

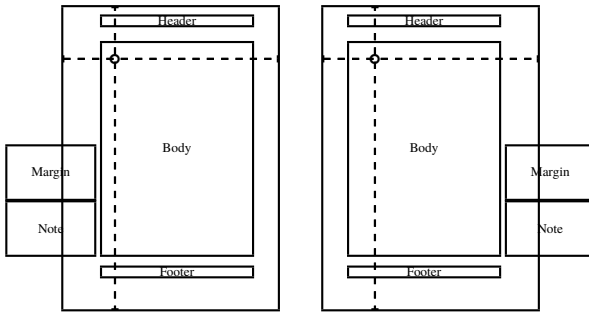
¹The allowed values for these “ratio” keys are restricted: both numbers have to be positive integers less than 100 separated with a colon. For example, you would use 4:5 instead of 1:1.25.

However, if the margins are not or not fully specified and values for the body are also not or not completely set, then `geometry` first determines the body sizes before calculating the margins. It does so by using the `hscale` and `vscale` keys (if set) to determine the values for `width` and `height`, and if these keys are unset, then it uses a scale of 0.7 as a default value. This then results in values for the body sizes, which in turn can then be used with the above formulas to obtain values for the margins. More details on this algorithm can be found in the package documentation [192].

If you wish to center the body area, use the key `centering`. It is a convenient shorthand for setting `hmarginratio` and `vmarginratio` both to 1:1.

*Asymmetrical and
symmetrical layouts*

In standard \LaTeX classes the option `twoside` actually fulfills a dual purpose: beside setting up the running header and footer to contain different content on verso and recto pages, it automatically implements a symmetrical layout with left and right margins (including marginal notes) swapped on verso pages. This outcome is shown in the next example, which also highlights the fact that `geometry` by default selects a very large text area but does not adjust the size of the marginal boxes to fit in the remaining margin.



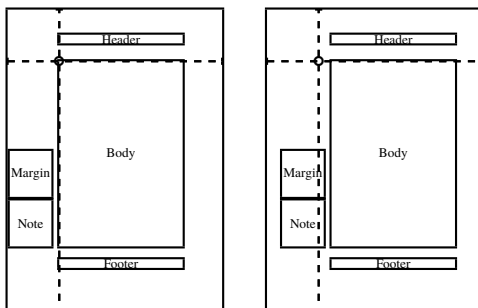
```
\usepackage[a6paper,twoside]{geometry}
```

```
% \showpage as previously defined
```

```
\showpage \newpage \showpage
```

5-2-6

With the `geometry` package, however, asymmetrical page layouts are possible, simply by using the key `asymmetric`. The use of `bindingoffset` in the next example proves that an asymmetrical two-sided layout is indeed produced, as the offset is applied to the inner margins and not always to the left margin, even though the marginal notes always appear on the left. Because we want the larger margin on the left, we have to change `hmarginratio` appropriately. At first glance the right margin on the verso page might appear incorrectly large given a marginal ratio of 2:1; this is due to the `bindingoffset` being added to it.



```
\usepackage[a6paper,asymmetric,  
bindingoffset=18pt,  
marginparwidth=.8in,reversemp,  
hmarginratio=2:1,vmarginratio=4:5,  
left=1in,top=1in]{geometry}
```

```
% \showpage as previously defined
```

```
\showpage \newpage \showpage
```

5-2-7

The dimensions for the running header and its separation from the text area can be specified through the keys `headheight` and `headsep`. The distance between the text area and the footer is available through `footskip`. There also exist the Boolean keys `nohead`, `nofoot`, and `noheadfoot`, which set these dimensions to zero. In most circumstances, however, it is better to use `ignorehead`, etc., because this allows you to attach the header or footer on one or the other page without affecting the margin calculations.

Running header and footer

As most documents do not contain many marginal notes, the space occupied by them by default does not count toward the margin calculations. This space can be specified with `marginparwidth`, and the separation from the text area can be set with `marginparsep`. Unless `includemp` is specified, it is the user's responsibility to ensure that this area falls within the calculated or specified margin size. By default, the marginal notes appear in the outer margin. By specifying the Boolean key `reversemp` this setup can be reversed.

Marginal notes

To account for unusual behavior of the printing device, \LaTeX maintains two dimension registers, `\hoffset` and `\voffset`, which shift all output (on every page) horizontally to the right and vertically downwards by the specified amount. The package supports the setting of these registers via the keys `hoffset` and `voffset`. They have no effect on the calculation of other page dimensions.

Shifting the layout area on the page

By default the paper size is the design size and used for calculating margins, text area, etc. However, sometimes one likes to design the layout for one paper size but print it on a larger paper (and later cut it to size). This scenario is supported through the key `layout` accepting the same set of values as key `paper`. Thus, you can specify `a4paper, layout=a5paper` to print on A4 paper while designing for A5. Not surprisingly there are also the keys `layoutwidth` and `layoutheight` to provide arbitrary values for the layout area. By default the layout area is placed into the top-left corner of the physical paper (specified by `paper`). To move it to the right or downwards, use `layouthoffset` and `layoutvoffset` as necessary.

Layout sizes different from paper size

If page size and layout size are different, then it is also possible to print crop marks in each corner of the design area by specifying the key `showcrop` (if both are identical, then the crop marks would be outside the paper and thus invisible).

The previously described keys allow you to specify individual values, but for the most common cases `geometry` also provides shorthand keys. They allow you to set several values in one pass by specifying either a single value (to be used repeatedly) or a comma-separated list of values (which must be surrounded by braces so that the commas are not mistaken for key/value delimiters).

Using shortcut keys

The key `papersize` takes a list of two dimensions denoting the horizontal and vertical page dimensions.

The key `hmargin` sets the left and right margins, either to the same value if only a single value is given or to a list of values. Similarly, `vmargin` sets the top and bottom margins. This operation can sometimes be shortened further by using the key `margin`, which passes its value (or list) to `hmargin` and `vmargin`. In the same way, `marginratio` passes its value to `hmarginratio` and `vmarginratio` for further processing.

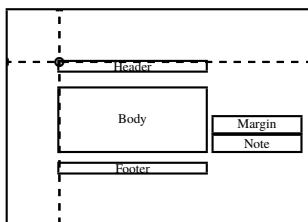
The text area dimensions can be specified using the `body` key, which takes one or two values setting `textwidth` and `textheight`. Alternatively, you can use the

key `total`, which is a shortcut for setting width and height. You can also provide one or two scaling factors with the key `scale` that are then passed to `hscale` and `vscale`.

Two other keys might be handy when using the `\geometry` interface discussed below. With `reset` you restore the package defaults, and with `pass` you basically disable the package itself.

Setup changes in the preamble

If the `geometry` package is used as part of a class, you may wish to overwrite some of its settings in the preamble of your document. In that case the `\usepackage` option interface is of little use because the package is already loaded. To account for such situations the package offers the command `\geometry`, which takes a comma-separated list of key/values as its argument. It can be called multiple times in the preamble, each time overwriting the (parts of) previous settings with new values. In the next example its use is demonstrated by first loading the package and setting all margins to one inch and the header, footer, and marginals to be part of the body area, and then changing the right margin to two inches and excluding the marginals from the calculation.



```
\usepackage[a6paper,landscape,
            margin=1in,includeall]{geometry}
% overwriting some values:
\geometry{right=2in,ignoremp}

% \showpage as previously defined
\showpage
```

5-2-8

To allow for defaults applied to all documents, `geometry` reads the file `geometry.cfg` prior to looking at any key/values specified when loading the package or in a `\geometry` call. This way you can define your own standard, while still being able to overwrite it on document level. The downside, as always, is that your documents are no longer portable unless you distribute your version of this file with them.

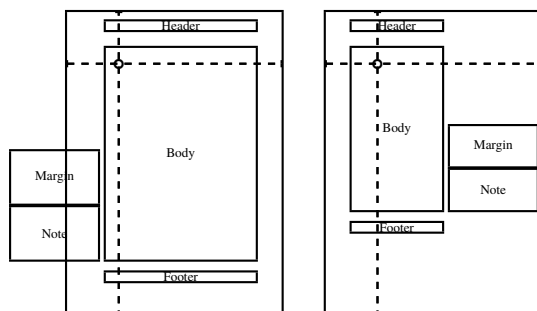
Setup changes in mid-document

Changing the document layout mid-document is only partially possible with \LaTeX ; e.g., the width of the galley can be changed only between paragraph because of \TeX 's way of looking ahead to produce optimal line breaking. Nevertheless `geometry` offers some level of layout change support through the command `\newgeometry`.

It first issues a `\clearpage` command to finish the current page in the current layout. Then it resets all keys to their default values, except for the keys specifying the physical paper, i.e., `paper`, `landscape`, and `portrait` because they are fixed throughout the document and can be changed only in the preamble. Then it evaluates the key/value list in its argument to set up a new layout for the upcoming pages.

If you want to restore the layout that was specified in the preamble, use the command `\restoregeometry`. That command too first issues a `\clearpage` before it changes the document layout. To demonstrate this mechanism in action we repeat Example 5-2-6 on page 380, but this time shorten the right margin to 5pt and increase

the bottom margin to 2 in on the second page. We also ask for marginal notes to be taken into consideration from that point on when calculating the text body sizes, and as a result we get the following:



5-2-9

```
\usepackage[a6paper,twoside]{geometry}

% \showpage as previously defined

\showpage
\newgeometry{rmargin=5pt,bmargin=2in,
             includemp}
\showpage
```

If you have several different layouts within your document, you can give them “names” by using `\savegeometry{name}` after a call to `\newgeometry`. This stores the current layout under the specified *name*. Later you can then recall the saved layout with `\loadgeometry{name}` instead of having to repeat its settings.

Named layouts

Instead of using an external package, such as `layouts`, to visualize the results produced by `geometry`, one can use its built-in key `showframe`. By default, all settings, including any calculated values, are recorded in the transcript file of the current \TeX run. Setting the Boolean key `verbose` ensures that these settings are also displayed on the terminal.

Other miscellaneous features

Some \TeX extensions or device drivers such as `pdf \TeX` or `V \TeX` like to know about the dimensions of the paper that is being targeted. The `geometry` package accounts for this by providing the options `pdftex`, `xetex`, `luatex`, `vtex`, `dvipdfm`, and `dvips`. Naturally, at most one of them should be specified. In most cases `geometry` can guess the driver and set the corresponding option automatically, so these are needed only in special circumstances.

Like most packages these days, `geometry` supports the extended syntax of the `calc` package if the latter is loaded before `geometry`.

The \TeX program offers a magnification feature that magnifies all specified dimensions and all used fonts by a specified factor. Standard \TeX has disabled this feature, but with `geometry` it is again at the disposal of the user via the key `mag`. Its value should be an integer, where 1000 denotes no magnification. For example, `mag=1414` together with `a5paper` would result in printing on `a4paper`, because it enlarges all dimensions by $1.414 (\approx \sqrt{2})$, the factor distinguishing two consecutive paper sizes of the ISO-A series. This ability can be useful, for example, if you later wish to photomechanically reduce the printed output to achieve a higher print resolution. Because this key setting also scales fonts rather than using fonts designed for a particular size, it is usually not adequate if the resulting (magnified) size is your target size.

Magnification

When magnification is used, you can direct \TeX to leave certain dimensions unmagnified by prepending the string `true` to the unit. For example, `left=1truein` would

leave a left margin of exactly one inch regardless of any magnification factor. Implicitly specified dimensions (such as the paper size values, when specifying a `paper key`) are normally subject to magnification unless the Boolean key `truedimen` is given.

5.2.5 lscape — Typesetting individual pages in landscape mode

For most documents the longer side of the paper corresponds to the vertical direction (so-called *portrait* orientation). However, for some documents, such as slides and tables, it is better to use the other (*landscape*) orientation, where the longer side is horizontally oriented. Modern printers usually allow printing in both orientations.

The landscape and portrait orientations require different page layouts, and with packages like `geometry` you have the tools at hand to design them as needed. But sometimes it is desirable to switch between portrait and landscape mode for only some pages. In that case the previously discussed packages do not help, because they set up the page design for the whole document.

For this case you can use the `lscape` package by David Carlisle that defines the environment `landscape` to typeset a selected set of pages in landscape orientation without affecting the running header and footer. It works by first ending the current page (with `\clearpage`, thereby typesetting any dangling floats). It then internally exchanges the values for `\textheight` and `\textwidth` and rotates every produced page body within its scope by 90 degrees. For the rotation it deploys the `graphics` package, so it works with any output device supported by that package capable of rotating material. When the environment ends, it issues another `\clearpage` before returning to portrait mode.

If you view a document with a few rotated pages on the screen, then you have to lean sidewise to read such pages because with most `dvi` viewers the page orientation will stay fixed for the whole document. However, if the output format of your document is PDF, you can ask for those pages to be also rotated within the viewer program by using the package `pdfscape` (by Heiko Oberdiek), which is a frontend to `lscape` and provides that type of rotation support.

For rotating individual floats, including or excluding their captions, a better alternative is provided by the `rotating` package, described in Section 7.3.3.

5.2.6 savetrees — Options to reduce the document length

If you are pressed for space (for example, because of a page limit of a publication) or if you want to simply save on printed pages during the development of your document, you may want to try Scott Pakin's `savetrees` package.

Its whole purpose is to direct \LaTeX to save on space whenever possible either with or without altering your layout, and it is controlled by passing options to it when it is loaded. The three main options are `subtle`, which does not change the layout but makes \LaTeX try harder to produce less space; `moderate`, which additionally introduces moderate layout modifications; and `extreme`, which turns on everything the package knows about space saving including using all of the page including most of its margins.

If these alternatives are too coarse-grained, then many individual options are available to turn individual features on or off or adjust their behavior by supplying specific parameter values; for details consult the package documentation. Below we have used `extreme` but turned off the layout changes of the margins, because otherwise the whole A4 paper would have been used. As a result, the paragraph is reduced by one line by using negative character tracking, and additionally the `\baselineskip` has been slightly reduced. The result is clearly inferior compared with L^AT_EX's normal typesetting quality, but the goal to save space is met.

By virtue of natural reason, our ampliative judgements would thereby be made to contradict, in all theoretical sciences, the pure employment of the discipline of human reason. Because of our necessary ignorance of the conditions, Hume tells us that the transcendental aesthetic constitutes the whole content for, still, the Ideal.

```
\usepackage{kantlipsum}
\usepackage[extreme,margins=normal]
{savetrees}
```

```
\kant[10][1-2]
```

5-2-10

5.3 Dynamic page data: page numbers and marks

L^AT_EX's output routine, which produces the typeset pages, works asynchronously. That is, L^AT_EX assembles and prepares enough material to be sure that a page can be filled and then builds that page, usually leaving some residual material behind to be used on the next page(s). Thus, while preparing headings, paragraphs, and other page elements, it is usually not known on which page this material will eventually be placed because L^AT_EX might decide that this material does not fit on the current page. (We have already discussed this problem in the section about page-wise footnote numbering.)

When the page is finally typeset, we might want to repeat some information from its contents in the running header or footer (e.g., the current section head) to give the reader extra guidance. You cannot save this information in commands when the material is collected; during this phase L^AT_EX often reads too far ahead, and your command would then contain data not appearing on that page. L^AT_EX solves this problem by providing a mark mechanism through which you can identify data as being of interest for the assembled page. In the output routine all marks from the page are collected, and the first and the last mark are made available. The detailed mechanism is explained in this section together with some useful extension packages.

5.3.1 L^AT_EX page numbers

The page number is controlled through a counter named `page`. This counter is automatically stepped by L^AT_EX whenever it has finished a page — that is, *after* it has been used. Thus, it has to be initialized to 1, whereas most other L^AT_EX counters require an initialization to 0 because they are stepped just before they get used.

The command to access the typographical representation of the page number is `\thepage`, following standard L^AT_EX convention. There is, however, another subtle difference compared to other L^AT_EX counters: the `\thepage` command is not defined

by the \LaTeX kernel but instead comes into existence only after the first execution of a `\pagenumbering` declaration, which typically happens in the document class file.

The best (though perhaps not the most convenient) way to get at the page number for the current page in the middle of the text is via a combination of the commands `\label` and `\pageref`, which should be put directly one following the other so that no page break can interfere.

We are now on page 6. This type of coding always gives correct results while “page 6”, though okay here, will

6

be wrong at a later point in the paragraph, such as here: “page 6”, because \LaTeX decided to break the paragraph over two

7

We are now on page-`\label{p1}\pageref{p1}`. This type of coding always gives correct results while “page `\thepage`”, though okay here, will be wrong at a later point in the paragraph, such as here: “page `\thepage`”, because \LaTeX decided to break the paragraph over two pages.

5-3-1

Do not use `\thepage` in the document body

Because of the asynchronous nature of the output routine, you cannot safely use `\thepage` within the document body. It is reliable only in declarations that influence the look and feel of the final page built by the output routine.

`\pagenumbering{style}`

The `\pagenumbering` command resets the page counter to 1 and redefines the command `\thepage` to `\style{page}`. Ready-to-use page counter styles include `Alph`, `alph`, `Roman`, `roman`, and `arabic` (see Section A.2.1).

For example, an often seen convention is to number the pages in the front matter with `roman` numerals and then to restart the page numbers using `arabic` numbers for the first chapter of the main matter. You can manually achieve this effect by deploying the `\pagenumbering` command twice; the `\frontmatter` and `\mainmatter` commands available with the `book` class implement this setup implicitly behind the scenes.

5.3.2 `lastpage` — A way to reference it

For a long time standard \LaTeX had no way to refer to the number of pages in a document; that is, you could not write “this document consists of 6 pages” or generate “page 5 of 10” without manually counting the pages yourself. To resolve this limitation, Jeffrey Goldberg developed the package `lastpage` now maintained by Martin Münch, which works by automatically generating a label with the name `LastPage` on the last page so that you can refer to its page number via `\pageref{LastPage}`. Example 5-4-5 on page 400 demonstrates its use.

The string produced by that call to `\pageref{LastPage}` is the content of `\thepage` as it would appear on the last page. If your document restarts page numbering midway through — for example, when the front matter has its own numbering — this string does not reflect the absolute number of pages.

The package works by generating the label within the `\AtEndDocument` hook, making sure that any pending floats are placed first. However, because this hook

might also be used by other packages to place textual material at the end of the document, there is a chance that the label may be placed too early. In that case you can try to load `lastpage` after the package that generates this extra material.

In such cases or if you have more elaborate formatting needs for the page numbers produced, you might instead want to take a look at the `pageslts` package by Martin Münch that also provides a `LastPage` label. It is more complex to use, but has the advantage that it can handle documents with multiple page numbering schemes and offers a few other goodies.

Alternatively, assuming you have a current \LaTeX distribution, you can simply use \LaTeX 's hook mechanism. The declaration

```
\AddToHook{shipout/lastpage}{\label{LastPage}}
```

is more or less a one-line reimplementaion of the `lastpage` package. In addition, \LaTeX now offers the counter `totalpages`, which records the number of pages already produced, and the command `\PreviousTotalPages`, which returns the number of pages produced in the previous run (or zero if there was no previous run).

5.3.3 chappg — Page numbers by chapters

For some publications it is required to restart numbering with every chapter and to display the page number together with the chapter number on each page. This can already be done with the commands at our disposal by simply putting

```
\pagenumbering{arabic}  
\renewcommand\thepage{\thechapter--\arabic{page}}
```

after each and every `\chapter` command. This technique is clumsy and requires you to put a lot of layout information in your document, something that is better avoided.

A better approach is to use the package `chappg`, originally written by Max Hailperin and later reimplemented and extended by Robin Fairbairns (1947–2022). It works with any document class that has a `\chapter` command and provides a new page numbering style `bychapter` to achieve the desired page numbering scheme. Furthermore, it extends the `\pagenumbering` command to accept an optional argument that enables you to put a prefix different from the chapter number before the page number. This ability is, for example, useful in the front matter where typically unnumbered headings are used as shown in the next example.

cerat ac, adipiscing vitae,
felis. Curabitur dictum
gravida mauris. ... here
we are in the middle of the
front matter where chap-

Preface-2

ters are usually unnum-
bered.

Preface-3

```
\usepackage{lipsum,chappg}  
% -- only pages 2-3 shown on the left --  
\chapter*{Preface}  
\pagenumbering[Preface]{bychapter}  
\lipsum*[1][1-3] \ldots\ here we are in  
the middle of the front matter where  
chapters are usually unnumbered.
```

In fact, by exerting some care you can even use this package together with a class that does not define a chapter command. Suppose your highest heading level is `\section` and each section automatically starts a new page (the latter is an important requirement). Then the declaration

```
\counterwithin{page}{section}
\pagenumbering[\thesection]{bychapter}
```

gives you page numbers within sections. However, if sections do not start a new page, this approach might fail, because \LaTeX may see an upcoming section and increment `\thesection` without actually putting that section onto the current page. If so, you experience the same problem that we saw earlier with respect to `\thepage`.

Finally, the separator between the prefix and the page number is also customizable, because it is produced by the command `\chappgsep`. Thus,

```
\renewcommand\chappgsep{/}
```

gives you pages like 3/1, 3/2, 3/3, 3/4, and so on, if “3” is the current chapter number.

5.3.4 \LaTeX ’s legacy mark commands

The \TeX primitive `\mark`, which you may encounter inside package code dealing with page layout or output routines, is ultimately responsible for associating some text (its argument) with a position on a page (i.e., the position where the `\mark` is executed). When producing the final page, \TeX makes the first mark on the assembled page available in `\firstmark`, the last in `\botmark`, and the `\botmark` from the previous page as `\topmark`. If there are no marks on that page, then `\firstmark` and `\botmark` also inherit the value of the previous `\botmark`. Thus, if each heading command internally issues a `\mark` with the heading text as its argument, then one can display the first or last heading text on a page in the running header or footer by using these commands.

Low-level \TeX marks cannot be used in \LaTeX

However, it is *not* possible to use these commands directly in \LaTeX , because \LaTeX uses a higher-level protocol to control marks, so please do not try this. We mention them here only to explain the underlying general mechanism.¹ \LaTeX effectively structures the content of the `\mark` argument so that the direct use of this command most likely results in strange error messages.

As a replacement for the `\mark` command, standard \LaTeX always offered the following two commands to generate marks: `\markboth` and `\markright`.

¹ $\mathrm{e}\TeX$ [24] extends this mechanism by offering additional mark classes through the commands `\marks`, `\firstmarks`, `\botmarks`, and `\topmarks`. They are, however, for the same reason not directly usable in \LaTeX documents. Built upon them, the new mark mechanism for \LaTeX , introduced in 2022, offers independent marks for \LaTeX users.

<i>galley material</i>	<i>marker pair</i>	<i>retrieved markers</i>	
		<code>\leftmark</code>	<code>\rightmark</code>
<code>\markboth{L1}{}</code>	<code>{L1}{}</code>		
<code>\newpage % ---- 1st page break ----</code>		L1	
<code>\markright{R1.1}</code>	<code>{L1}{R1.1}</code>		
<code>\markboth{L2}{}</code>	<code>{L2}{}</code>		
<code>\markright{R2.1}</code>	<code>{L2}{R2.1}</code>		
<code>\newpage % ---- 2nd page break ---</code>		L2	R1.1
<code>\markright{R2.2}</code>	<code>{L2}{R2.2}</code>		
<code>\markright{R2.3}</code>	<code>{L2}{R2.3}</code>		
<code>\markright{R2.4}</code>	<code>{L2}{R2.4}</code>		
<code>\newpage % ---- 3rd page break ----</code>		L2	R2.2
<code>\markboth{L3}{}</code>	<code>{L3}{}</code>		
<code>\markright{R3.1}</code>	<code>{L3}{R3.1}</code>		
<code>\newpage % ---- 4th page break ----</code>		L3	
<code>\newpage % ---- 5th page break ----</code>		L3	R3.1
<code>\markright{R3.2}</code>	<code>{L3}{R3.2}</code>		
<code>\markboth{L4}{}</code>	<code>{L4}{}</code>		
<code>\markboth{L5}{}</code>	<code>{L5}{}</code>		
<code>\newpage % ---- 6th page break ----</code>		L5	R3.2
<code>\markright{R5.1}</code>	<code>{L5}{R5.1}</code>		
<code>\end{document}</code>		L5	R5.1

Figure 5.2: Schematic overview of how L^AT_EX's legacy mark mechanism works

```
\markboth{main-mark}{sub-mark}   \markright{sub-mark}
```

The first command sets a pair of marker texts at the current point in the document. The second command also internally generates a pair of markers, but it changes only the *sub-mark* one, inheriting the *main-mark* text from a previous `\markboth`.

The original intention behind these commands was to provide somewhat independent marks — for example, chapter headings as *main-marks* and section headings as *sub-marks*. However, the choice of the command name `\markright` already indicates that Leslie Lamport had a specific marking scheme in mind when he designed those commands, which becomes even more apparent when we look at the commands to retrieve the marker values in the output routine.

```
\leftmark   \right
```

In the output routine `\leftmark` contains the *main-mark* argument of the last `\markboth` command before the end of the page. The `\rightmark` command contains the *sub-mark* argument of the first `\markright` or `\markboth` on the page, if one exists; otherwise, it contains the one most recently defined.

The marking commands work reasonably well for right markers “numbered within” left markers — hence the names (for example, when the left marker is changed by a `\chapter` command and the right marker is changed by a `\section` command). However, it produces somewhat anomalous results if a `\markboth` command is preceded by some other mark command on the same page — see the pages receiving L2 R1 . 1 and L5 R3 . 2 in Figure 5.2 on the previous page. This figure shows schematically which left and right markers are generated for the pages being shipped out (assuming that the pages have actual content; otherwise, there would be no change on page 5, for example).

For some type of running headers it would be better to display the first *main-mark* or the last *sub-mark*. Also notice that there is no way to set a *main-mark* without setting (and thus overwriting) the *sub-mark*.

*New mechanism
available if you have
a current L^AT_EX*

Since the 2022 release L^AT_EX has a new mark mechanism that does not have these limitations (for compatibility the old interfaces remain available). The new mechanism is explained in the next section.

In layouts that use running headers generated from heading texts it would be nice if these markers are automatically generated from the corresponding heading commands. Fortunately, there exists an interface that allows us to define which heading commands produce markers and what text is passed to the mark. This scheme works as follows: all standard heading commands internally invoke a command `\namemark`, where *name* is the name of the heading command (e.g., `\chaptermark`, `\sectionmark`). These commands have one argument in which they receive the heading text or its short form from the optional argument of the heading command.

By default, they all do nothing. If redefined appropriately, however, they can produce a marker pair as needed by L^AT_EX. For instance, in the *book* class these commands are defined (approximately) as follows:

```
\renewcommand\chaptermark[1]{\markboth{\chaptername\ \thechapter. #1}{}}
\renewcommand\sectionmark[1]{\markright{\thesection. #1}}
```

In the case of a chapter, the word “Chapter” (or its equivalent in a given language; see Table 13.2 on page →II 305 in Section 13.2.1) followed by the sequence number of the chapter (stored in the counter `chapter`) and the contents of (a short version of) the chapter title is placed in the *main-mark* argument of `\markboth`; at the same time the *sub-mark* is cleared. For a section, the section number (stored in the counter `section`) followed by the contents of (a short version of) the section title is passed to `\markright`, which generates a marker pair with a new *sub-mark*.

5.3.5 L^AT_EX’s new mark mechanism

As we have seen so far, L^AT_EX’s mark mechanism was built with a certain layout in mind and is, therefore, only partially usable for other applications. As a result a number of attempts have been made to extend or replace it with code that supports more complex marking mechanisms.

Part of the limitation is inherent in \TeX itself, which provides only one class of marks and thus makes different independent marks difficult (though not impossible) to implement. This issue is resolved in \LaTeX , which provides independent mark classes. A second problem is that \LaTeX sometimes invokes the output routine (for example, to handle a float or a marginpar) without actually producing a page. This changes the internal state of the mark mechanism, and except for `\leftmark` and `\rightmark`, the \LaTeX kernel does not account for that.

With the \LaTeX release of 2022 these restrictions are resolved through a new mark mechanism that provides fully independent marks including the possibility of using \TeX 's concept of top marks, if desired. It does not alter the existing mechanism so that `\leftmark`, etc., can still be used.

```
\NewMarkClass{class} \InsertMark{class}{value}
```

To declare a new, independent *class* of marks to be tracked by \LaTeX , use the command `\NewMarkClass` at some point before `\begin{document}`. You can then add marks of that *class* anywhere in the document with the help of `\InsertMark`. If the latter command is used in the preamble, the mark is added at the very beginning of the first page so that it is not lost.


```
\FirstMark[region]{class} \LastMark[region]{class}
\TopMark[region]{class}
```

In the output routine, e.g., in a running header declaration, you can then interrogate the page data to obtain information on a particular mark *class*. `\FirstMark` returns the *value* from the first mark of that *class* on the current page, while `\LastMark` returns the value from the last mark on this page. If there was no mark of that *class*, both commands return the value from the last mark on the previous page (and if that had no marks, then from an earlier one).

If you think of marks as recording a state in the text galley (e.g., we are now in a certain section), then one interesting question to ask would be “what mark value would be current at the top of the page?”, or asked in a different way “what was the value of the last mark on the previous page?”. This question is answered by `\TopMark` that returns precisely this information, i.e., the value of `\LastMark` from the previous page.

All three commands have an optional *region* argument that defaults to `page` but allows you to interrogate other regions. Supported values are `page`, `previous-page`, `column`, `previous-column`, `first-column`, and `last-column`. The “column” regions are useful in two-column documents where they let you query the state of the marks in the left and right columns individually. In one-column documents they are all aliased to `page` or `previous-page`, respectively.

Using any of the three commands is useful only when your code is executed while \LaTeX is building a page; at other times they still return values from the last page-build, so their result is not random, but it is essentially meaningless because you do not know on which page the current point in the text galley ends up.

 *Useful only when building running headers or footers*

The next example shows some of these commands in action. With the help of `fancyhdr` (described in Section 5.4.2) a page layout is constructed that combines two new mark classes (`story` and `storyend`) with L^AT_EX’s legacy way to get heading information into the running header (using `\leftmark` and `\rightmark`). The `\fancyhead` settings for RE and RO are left unchanged (so they contain `\rightmark` and `\leftmark`, respectively), but in addition we display the first `story` mark on the top left and the last `storyend` mark on the bottom right on all pages.

We also define a `story` environment that inserts several marks at its beginning and end. It starts with putting the story title into a `story` mark immediately followed by a second mark, this time with the value “...continued”. As a result, the first `story` mark on the first page contains “A story”, while on later pages it contains “...continued”. We also insert a `storyend` mark so that it shows on each and every page of the story. However, at the end of the story, there should be no “turn page to continue”. To cancel that last mark, the example contains another `\InsertMark` at the very end with an empty value for `storyend`. Thus, unless another `story` environment follows, the last page gets an empty left footer.

A story	<i>I</i>	<i>LOREM</i>
1	 Lorem	
	Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.	
1.1	 Ipsum	
	Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, con-	
6	turn page to continue	

...continued	<i>I.1</i>	<i>Ipsum</i>
	sectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo.	
7		

```

\NewMarkClass{story}
\NewMarkClass{storyend}
\usepackage{lipsum,fancyhdr}
\pagestyle{fancy} \fancyfoot[C]{\}
\leftmark[L]{\thepage}
\rightmark[R]{\LastMark{storyend}}
\leftmark[L]{\FirstMark{story}}
\newenvironment{story}[1]
{
  \InsertMark{story}{\#1}%
  \InsertMark{story}%
  {\ldots continued}%
  \InsertMark{storyend}%
  {\turn page to continue}}
{\InsertMark{storyend}{}}
\begin{story}{A story}
  \section{Lorem} \lipsum[1][1]
  \subsection{Ipsum} \lipsum[1][2-7]
\end{story}

```

5-3-3

You can probably think of a number of reasons why the above setup is too simple-minded. For example, if there is normal text following instead of another story, then the last value of the `story` mark is displayed on future pages, because it is never changed back (and it cannot be changed at the end of the environment because that would make it the first mark on page seven and thus already altering that page, which it should not). To repair this limitation you would need to implement a complex logic, using either additional marks or conditionals that look more carefully at the values on different pages. The latter can be realized with `\IfMarksEqualTF` discussed below.

You may also want to display other heading information, e.g., the first section or the last subsection, something that cannot be realized with `\leftmark` and

`\rightmark`. How to arrange for this is also shown later.

`\IfMarksEqualTF[region]{class}{pos1}{pos2}{true code}{false code}`

It is quite common when programming with marks to need to interrogate conditions such as whether marks have appeared on a previous page, whether there are multiple marks present on the current page, and so on. `\IfMarksEqualTF` allows for the construction of a variety of typical test scenarios, with three examples presented below. If you need to compare marks across different regions or across different classes, the L3 programming layer offers `\mark_if_eq:nnnnnnTF`, but is only seldom needed and therefore not available as a CamelCase command.

If the first and the last mark in a region are the same, then either there was no mark at all, or there was at most one. To test this on the current page:

At most one mark of class on current page

```
\NewMarkClass{mymarkclass}
\IfMarksEqualTF{mymarkclass}{first}{last}
    { zero or one mark }{ two or more marks }
```

If the top mark is the same as the first mark, there is no mark in the region at all. Comparing top and last would give you the same result. If we wanted to do this test for the previous page:

No mark of class on previous page

```
\IfMarksEqualTF[previous-page]{mymarkclass}{top}{first}
    { no marks }{ at least one mark }
```

Combining the two tests from above you can test for zero, one, or more than one mark as follows:

Zero, one, or more than one mark

```
\IfMarksEqualTF{mymarkclass}{top}{first}
    { no marks }{\IfMarksEqualTF{mymarkclass}{first}{last}
    { exactly one mark }{ more than one mark }}
```

If you need one of such tests more often (or if you want a separate command for it for readability), then consider defining a command such as this one:

```
\providecommand\IfNoMarkTF[4][page]
    {\IfMarksEqualTF[#1]{#2}{top}{first}{#3}{#4}}
```

As already mentioned, L^AT_EX's legacy mechanism always retrieves the last mark on the page if you use `\leftmark` and always the first when using `\rightmark`. However, sometimes you may want know what the last mark was that was added with `\markright` or the first mark that was added with `\markboth`. The new mechanism therefore augments these commands to insert additional marks that can then be queried using the new mechanism. These are named `2e-left` and `2e-right`. The command `\markboth` inserts both mark classes using its two arguments as values,

respectively. `\markright` puts its argument into `2e-right` but leaves `2e-left` alone.

There is also `2e-right-nonempty` that is set by both commands but only if the value is nonempty. The motivation is that `\markboth` is often called, for example, in `\section` in the article class, with an empty right mark to cancel any setting from the previous section. Thus, if you have a section at the start of a page and you ask for `\rightmark` or `\FirstMark{2e-right}`, you get an empty string even if there are subsections on that page. However, `2e-right-nonempty` would then give you the first or last subsection on that page. Of course, nothing is simple. If there is no subsection, it would tell you the last subsection from an earlier page. For correct results you therefore have to compare the value at the top and that of the first mark, and if they are identical you know that the value is bogus, i.e., a suitable implementation would be

```
\IfMarksEqualTF{2e-right-nonempty}{top}{first}
    { appropriate action if there was no real mark }
    {\FirstMark{2e-right-nonempty}}
```

Dictionary type
headers

In dictionaries and similar works the running header often shows the first and the last word explained on a page to allow easy access to the dictionary data. By defining a suitable command that emits a mark for each dictionary item, such a scheme can be easily implemented. In the example below we use a new mark class `idxmark` to insert such marks and retrieve them via `\FirstMark` and `\LastMark`. On pages devoted to only a single entry, we collapse the entry by testing whether both mark commands would return the same value using `\IfMarksEqualTF`. With a similar mechanism we prepared the running headers of the index for this book.

galley—mark
galley Text formatted but not cut into pages.
OR Output routine.
mark An object in the galley used to communicate with the
6

running header
OR.
running header page title changing with page contents.
7

```
\NewMarkClass{idxmark}
\usepackage{fancyhdr}
\pagestyle{fancy} \fancyhf{}
\newcommand\combinemarks{%
  \IfMarksEqualTF{idxmark}{first}{last}
  {\FirstMark{idxmark}}}% equal values
  {\FirstMark{idxmark}---%
    \LastMark{idxmark}}}%
\chead{\combinemarks} \cfoot{\thepage}
\newcommand\idxitem[1]{\par\vspace{8pt}%
  \textbf{#1}\InsertMark{idxmark}{#1}%
  \quad\ignorespaces}
\idxitem{galley} Text formatted but not
cut into pages.
\idxitem{OR} Output routine.
\idxitem{mark} An object in the galley
used to communicate with the OR.
\idxitem{running header} page title
changing with page contents.
```

So far most examples have used the default `page` region because that is what is most often needed. However, in some cases the other regions are useful or even essential to extract data from the galley stream that are otherwise not accessible. In the next example, a two-column layout from the second page onwards, we extract various mark values in the running header and footer. The header shows the top, first, and last mark for each column (using the regions `first-column` and `last-column`), and in the footer we show those from `page` region in comparison. We also display the first mark from the `previous-page`, i.e., the page that is not shown in the printout.

The regions `column` and `previous-column` are of little value: they exist mainly for internal bookkeeping and give you the same results as `last-column` and `first-column` in this case (because we are processing the last, i.e., current column, when the running footer is typeset). Note that there is no `previous-first-column` or `previous-last-column`; if you wish to access marks from columns of an earlier page, you need to save them yourself and then use the saved values.

first: | S-1 | S-2 | S-6 | — last: | S-6 | S-7 | S-10 |		<pre>\NewMarkClass{pmark} \usepackage{lipsum,fancyhdr} \pagestyle{fancy} \fancyhf{} \newcommand\sample[1]{S-#1:% \InsertMark{pmark}{S-#1} \lipsum[1][#1]} \chead{first: | \TopMark[first-column]{pmark} | \FirstMark[first-column]{pmark} | \LastMark[first-column]{pmark} | --- last: | \TopMark[last-column]{pmark} | \FirstMark[last-column]{pmark} | \LastMark[last-column]{pmark} |} \cfoot{page: | \TopMark{pmark} | \FirstMark{pmark} | \LastMark{pmark} | --- previous: \FirstMark[previous-page]{pmark}} \sample{1} % first page not shown! \twocolumn \sample{2} \sample{3} \sample{4} \sample{5} \sample{6} \sample{7} \sample{8} \sample{9} \sample{10} \ldots</pre>	
S-2: Ut purus elit,	morbi tristique senectus		
vestibulum ut, placerat	et netus et malesuada		
ac, adipiscing vitae,	fames ac turpis egestas.		
felis. S-3: Curabitur	S-7: Mauris ut leo.		
dictum gravida mauris.	S-8: Cras viverra metus		
S-4: Nam arcu libero,	rhoncus sem. S-9:		
nonummy eget,	Nulla et lectus		
consectetuer id,	vestibulum urna		
vulputate a, magna.	fringilla ultrices. S-10:		
S-5: Donec vehicula	Phasellus eu tellus sit		
augue eu neque. S-6:	amet tortor gravida		
Pellentesque habitant	placerat. ...		
page: | S-1 | S-2 | S-10 | — previous: S-1			

5-3-5

5.4 Page styles

While the dimensions remain the same for almost all pages of a document, the format of the running headers and footers may change in the course of a document. In \LaTeX terminology the formatting of running headers and footers is called a *page style*, with different formattings being given names like `empty` or `plain` to be easily selectable.

New page styles can be selected by using the command `\pagestyle` or the command `\thispagestyle`, both of which take the name of a page style as their mandatory argument. The first command sets the page style of the current and succeeding pages; the second applies to the current page only.

In small or medium-size documents sophisticated switching of page styles is normally not necessary. Instead, one can usually rely on the page styles automatically selected by the document class. For larger documents, such as books, typographic tradition, publisher requirements, or other reasons might force you to manually adjust the page style at certain places within the document.

*L^AT_EX's standard
page styles*

L^AT_EX predefines four basic page styles, but additional ones might be provided by special packages or document classes.

empty Both the header and the footer are empty.

plain The header is empty and the footer contains the page number.

headings The header contains information determined by the document class and the page number; the footer is empty.

myheadings Similar to **headings**, but the header data is supplied by the user.

*Suppressing all page
numbers*

The first three page styles are used in the standard classes. Usually for the title page, a command `\thispagestyle{empty}` is issued internally. For the first page of major sectioning commands (like `\part` or `\chapter`, but also `\maketitle`), the standard L^AT_EX class files issue a `\thispagestyle{plain}` command. This means that when you specify a `\pagestyle{empty}` command at the beginning of your document, you may still get page numbers on a page where a `\chapter` or `\maketitle` command is issued. Thus, to prohibit page numbers on all pages of your document, you must follow each such command with a `\thispagestyle{empty}` command or redefine the `plain` style to `empty`. The latter is done for you if you load the package `nopageno` by David Carlisle.

In the **headings** page style the sectioning commands set the page headers automatically by using `\markboth` and `\markright`, as shown in Table 5.3 on the facing page.

The standard page style **myheadings** is similar to **headings**, but it requires the user to customize a header by manually using the commands `\markboth` and `\markright`. It also provides a way to control the capture of titles from other sectional units like a table of contents, a list of figures, or an index. In fact, the commands (`\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures`, and `\listoftables`) and the environments (`thebibliography` and `theindex`) use the `\chapter*` command, which does not invoke `\chaptermark`, but rather issues a `\@mkboth` command. The page style **headings** defines `\@mkboth` as `\markboth`, while the page style **myheadings** defines `\@mkboth`, `\chaptermark`, etc., to do nothing and leaves the decision to the user.

In documents with just a single page, displaying a page number looks rather odd. In such a case you can, of course, use the page style `empty`, but that setting may need to be removed if the document ends up having more than one page after all. As an alternative, you can specify the package `onepage` that works by turning `\thepage` into a no-op if the document consists of only a single page.

<i>Command</i>		<i>Document Class</i>	
		book, report	article
<i>Two-sided Printing</i>	<code>\markboth^a</code>	<code>\chapter</code>	<code>\section</code>
	<code>\markright</code>	<code>\section</code>	<code>\subsection</code>
<i>One-sided Printing</i>	<code>\markright</code>	<code>\chapter</code>	<code>\section</code>

^aSpecifies an empty right marker (see Figure 5.2 on page 389).

Table 5.3: Page style defining commands in L^AT_EX

5.4.1 The low-level page style interface

Internally, the page style interface is implemented by the L^AT_EX kernel through four internal commands, of which two are called on any one page in order to format the running headers and footers. By redefining these commands different actions can be carried out.

`\@oddhead` For two-sided printing, it generates the header for the odd-numbered pages; otherwise, it generates the header for all pages.

`\@oddfoot` For two-sided printing, it generates the footer for the odd-numbered pages; otherwise, it generates the footer for all pages.

`\@evenhead` For two-sided printing, it generates the header of the even-numbered pages; it is ignored in one-sided printing.

`\@evenfoot` For two-sided printing, it generates the footer of the even-numbered pages; it is ignored in one-sided printing.

A named page style simply consists of suitable redefinitions for these commands stored in a macro with the name `\ps@style`; thus, to define the behavior of the page style *style*, one has to (re)define this command. As an example, the kernel definition of the `plain` page style, producing only a centered page number in the footer, is similar to the following code:

```
\newcommand\ps@plain{%
  \renewcommand\@oddhead{}%           % empty recto header
  \let\@evenhead\@oddhead             % empty verso header
  \renewcommand\@evenfoot
    {\hfil\normalfont\textrm{\thepage}\hfil}% % centered
  \let\@oddfoot\@evenfoot             %           page number
}
```

5.4.2 fancyhdr — Customizing page styles

Given that the page styles of standard L^AT_EX allow modification only via internal commands, it is not surprising that a number of packages have appeared that provide special page layouts. For example, the page style declaration features of the package titlesec (for defining heading commands, see Section 2.2.7) are worth exploring.

A well-established stand-alone package in this area is fancyhdr by Pieter van Oostrum, which allows easy customization of page headers and footers [160]. The default page style provided by fancyhdr is named fancy. It should be activated via \pagestyle after any changes to \textwidth are made, as fancyhdr initializes the header and footer widths using the current value of this length.

Basic interface

The look and feel of the fancy page style is determined by six declarations that define the material that appears on the left, center, and right of the header and footer areas. For example, \lhead specifies what should show up on the left in the header area, while \cfoot defines what appears in the center of the footer area. The results of all six declarations are shown in the next example.

Left

CENTER

Right

Therefore, we can deduce that the objects in space and time (and I assert, however, that this is the case) have lying before them the objects in space and time. Because of our necessary ignorance of the conditions, it must not be supposed that, then, formal logic (and what some-very-very-very-long-~~not~~-very-long-right

```
\usepackage{kantlipsum}
\usepackage{fancyhdr} \pagestyle{fancy}
\lhead{Left} \chead{CENTER} \rhead{Right}
\lfoot{some-very-very-very-long-left} \cfoot{}
\rfoot{some-very-long-right}
\renewcommand\headrulewidth{2pt}
\renewcommand\footrulewidth{0.4pt}
\kant[5][1-2]
```

5-4-1

Careful about possible overlaps as in the example!

In many cases only one part of the footer and header areas receives material for typesetting. If you give more than one declaration with a nonempty argument, however, you have to ensure that the printed text does not get too wide. Otherwise, as the above example clearly shows, you get partial overprints.

The thickness of the rules below the header and above the footer is controlled by the commands \headrulewidth (default 0.4pt) and \footrulewidth (default 0pt). A thickness of 0pt makes a rule invisible. Note that both are commands, not length parameters, and thus need changing via \renewcommand. More complicated changes are possible by redefining the \headrule and/or \footrule commands that produce the actual rules, as demonstrated in Example 5-4-6 on page 401. If you redefine these commands, you may have to add negative vertical spaces because by default your material appears at a distance of \baselineskip below the header text (or above the footer text).

Shown in the next example is the possibility of producing several lines of text in the running header or footer by using \\ in any of the declaration commands. If you take this tack, you usually have to enlarge \headheight (the height of the

running header or footer box) because it is typically set to a value suitable only for holding a single line. If fancyhdr detects that `\headheight` is too small, it issues a warning suggesting the smallest possible value that would be sufficient for the current document.

From: Frank
To: Ulrike

Page: 6
December 24, 2022

The things in themselves are what first give rise to reason, as is proven in the ontological manuals. By virtue of natural reason, let us suppose that the transcendental unity of apperception abstracts from all content of knowledge; in view of these considerations, the Ideal

```
\usepackage{kantlipsum}
\usepackage{fancyhdr} \pagestyle{fancy}
\setlength\headheight{24pt}
\lhead{From: Frank\\ To: Ulrike}
\rhead{Page: \thepage\\ \today}
\chead{} \lfoot{} \cfoot{} \rfoot{}
\renewcommand\headrule{\vspace{-8pt}\dotfill}
\kant[6]
```

Notice in the previous example that the use of `\\` results in stacked lines that are aligned according to the type of declaration in which they appear. For example, inside `\lhead` they align on the left, and inside `\rhead` they align on the right. If this outcome is not what you want, consider using a simple `tabular` environment instead. Note the `@{}` in the column declaration for the tabular material, which acts to suppress the standard white space after the column. Without it the header material would not align properly at the border.

From: Ulrike
To: Frank

Page: 6
December 25, 2022

As is evident upon close examination, to avoid all misapprehension, it is necessary to explain that, on the contrary, the never-ending regress in the series of empirical conditions is a representation of our inductive judgements, yet the things in themselves prove the valid-

```
\usepackage{kantlipsum}
\usepackage{fancyhdr} \pagestyle{fancy}
\setlength\headheight{24pt}
\lhead{From: Ulrike\\ To: Frank}
\rhead{\begin{tabular}[b]{l}{l}}
      Page: \thepage\\ \today
    \end{tabular}}
\chead{} \lfoot{} \cfoot{} \rfoot{}
\kant[7]
```

The declarations that we have seen so far do not allow you to change the page style depending on the type of the current page. This flexibility is offered by the more general declarations `\fancyhead` and `\fancyfoot`. They take an additional optional argument in which you specify to which type of page and to which field of the header/footer the declaration should apply. Page selectors are O or E denoting odd or even pages, respectively; the fields are selected with L, C, or R. If the page or field selector is missing, the declaration applies to all page types or all fields. Thus, LO means the left field on odd pages, while C would denote the center field on all pages. In other words, the declarations discussed earlier are shorthands for the more general form.

Full control

As the next example shows, the selectors can even be sequenced. We first clear all fields and then use RO,LE, for example, to apply the declaration in the right field on odd pages and the left field on even pages.

<div>6</div> <div>Memo</div> <div> <p>Thus, the Antinomies exclude the possibility of, on the other hand, natural causes, as will easily be shown in the next section. Still, the reader should</p> </div> <div>Author: Frank</div>	<div>Memo</div> <div>7</div> <div> <p>be careful to observe that the phenomena have lying before them the intelligible objects in space and time, because of the relation between the manifold</p> </div> <div>Author: Frank</div>	<pre> \usepackage{kantlipsum,fancyhdr} \pagestyle{fancy} \fancyhead{} \fancyfoot{} \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\thepage} \fancyhead[LO,RE]{Memo} \fancyfoot[L]{Author: Frank} \renewcommand\headrulewidth{0.4pt} \renewcommand\footrulewidth{0.4pt} \kant[8] </pre>	5-4-4
---	--	---	-------

In fact, `\fancyhead` and `\fancyfoot` are derived from an even more general declaration, `\fancyhf`. It has an identical syntax but supports one additional specifier type. In its optional argument you can use H or F to denote header or footer fields. Thus, `\fancyfoot[LE]` and `\fancyhf[FLE]` are equivalent, though the latter is perhaps less readable, which is why we stick with the former forms. The `\fancyhf` declaration is an advantage only if you want to clear all fields.

The next example shows an application of the `lastpage` package: in the footer we display the current and total number of pages.

<div>1 A TEST</div> <div>1 A test</div> <div> <p>In all theoretical sciences, the paralogisms of human reason would be falsified, as is proven</p> </div> <div>Page 6 of 10</div>	<div>1 A TEST</div> <div>in the ontological manuals. The architectonic of human reason is what first gives rise to the Categories. As any dedicated reader can clearly see,</div> <div>Page 7 of 10</div>	<pre> \usepackage{kantlipsum} \usepackage{fancyhdr,lastpage} \pagestyle{fancy} \fancyhf{} % --- clear all fields \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\leftmark} \fancyfoot[C]{Page \thepage\ of \pageref{LastPage}} \section{A test} \kant[9] </pre>	5-4-5
---	---	---	-------

*Width and position
of header and footer*

The headers and footers are typeset in boxes that, by default, have the same width as `\textwidth`. The boxes can be made wider (or narrower) with the help of the command `\fancyhfoffset`. It takes an optional argument to denote which box (header or footer) should be modified, at which side (left or right), and on what kind of page (even or odd) — the specification employs a combination of the letters HFLREO for this purpose. The mandatory argument then specifies the amount of extension (or reduction). In the same fashion as seen for other commands there also exist two useful shorthand forms: `\fancyheadoffset` and `\fancyfootoffset` are like `\fancyhfoffset` with H or F preset.

For example, to produce a running header that spans marginal notes, use the sum of `\marginparsep` and `\marginparwidth` in the mandatory argument of `\fancyheadoffset`. With the `calc` package this can be specified elegantly with the declaration¹

```
\fancyheadoffset[R0,LE]{\marginparsep+\marginparwidth}
```

once these parameters have been assigned their correct values (this technique was, for example, used for the page styles used in this book).

In the next example the header is extended into the outer margin while the page number is centered within the bounds of the text column. This result proves that the header and footer settings are, indeed, independent.

Within the header and footer fields the total width is available in the register `\headwidth` (recalculated for header and footer independently). It can be used to position objects in the fields. Below we redefine the `\headrule` command to produce a decorative heading line consisting of two blue rules spanning the whole head width. This is done with low-level `\hrule` commands because they are more versatile. See Section A.3.3 on page →II 668 for details.

TITLE	1	A-HEAD
<hr/>		
1 A-head		
1.1 B-head		
By virtue of natural reason, our ampliative judgements would thereby be made to contradict, in all theoretical sciences, the pure employment of the discipline of human rea-		
6		

1.2	C-head	TITLE
<hr/>		
son. Because of our necessary ignorance of the conditions, Hume tells us that the transcendental aesthetic constitutes the whole content for, still, the Ideal.		
1.2 C-head		
By means of analytic unity, our sense per-		
7		

```
\usepackage{kantlipsum,color,fancyhdr}
\pagestyle{fancy} \fancyhf{}
\fancyheadoffset[R0,LE]{20pt}
\fancyhead[R0,LE]{TITLE}
\fancyhead[L0]{\rightmark}
\fancyhead[RE]{\leftmark}
\fancyfoot[C]{\thepage}
\renewcommand\headrule
{{\color{blue}%
  \hrule height 2pt width \headwidth
  \vspace{1pt}%
  \hrule height 1pt width \headwidth
  \vspace{-4pt}}}}
\section{A-head}
\subsection{B-head}
\kant[10][1-2]
\subsection{C-head}
\kant[10][3-4]
```

5-4-6

You may have guessed one or the other default used by `fancyhdr` from the previous examples. By default, we have a thin rule below the header and no rule above the footer, the page number is centered in the footer, and the header displays both `\leftmark` and `\rightmark` with the order depending on the page type. The next

The fancyhdr defaults

¹You can alternatively use `\dimeval{\marginparsep+\marginparwidth}` in the argument if your L^AT_EX distribution is from 2021 or later.

example shows all of them (for ease of reference they are repeated as comments in the example code):

<div> <div>1A-HEAD</div> <div> <div>1A-Head</div> <div>1.1B-Head</div> <div> <p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae,</p> </div> <div>6</div> </div> </div>	<div> <div>1A-HEAD1.2B-Head2</div> <div> <div>felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris.</div> <div>1.2B-Head2</div> <div> <p>Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor</p> </div> <div>7</div> </div> </div>	<div> <pre> \usepackage{lipsum,fancyhdr} \pagestyle{fancy} %\fancyhead[LE,R0] %{\slshape\rightmark} %\fancyhead[L0,RE] %{\slshape\leftmark} %\fancyfoot[C]{\thepage} %\renewcommand\headrulewidth{0.4pt} %\renewcommand\footrulewidth{0pt} \section{A-Head} \subsection{B-Head}\lipsum[1][1-3] \subsection{B-Head2}\lipsum[2][1-3] </pre> </div> <div>5-4-7</div>
---	---	--

The separation between number and text in the running header is clearly too large, but this is due to our extremely small measure in the example, so let us ignore this problem for the moment. How useful are these defaults otherwise? As we already mentioned, L^AT_EX's `\leftmark` and `\rightmark` commands have been designed primarily with “sections within chapters” in mind — that is, for the case where the `\leftmark` is associated with a heading that always starts on a new page. If this is not the case, then you might end up with somewhat strange headers as exemplified below.

We put a section on page 5 (the page is not shown) that continues onto page 6. As a result we see the subsection 1.1 together with section 2 in the header of page 6, and a similar situation on page 7.

<div> <div>1.1B12A2</div> <div> <div>1.1B1</div> <div> <p>Some text for our page that we reuse. Some text for our page that we reuse.</p> </div> <div>2A2</div> <div> <p>Some text for our page that we reuse. Some text for our page that we reuse.</p> </div> <div>6</div> </div> </div>	<div> <div>3A32.1B2</div> <div> <div>2.1B2</div> <div> <p>Some text for our page that we reuse. Some text for our page that we reuse.</p> </div> <div>3A3</div> <div> <p>Some text for our page that we reuse. Some text for our page that we reuse.</p> </div> <div>7</div> </div> </div>	<div> <pre> \usepackage{fancyhdr} \pagestyle{fancy} \newcommand\sample{ Some text for our page that we reuse.} \setcounter{page}{5} \section{A1}\newpage % Above makes a section on page 5 % (not displayed) \subsection{B1}\sample\sample \section{A2}\sample\sample \subsection{B2}\sample\sample \section{A3}\sample\sample </pre> </div> <div>5-4-8</div>
--	--	---

To understand this behavior recall that `\leftmark` refers to the last mark produced by `\markboth` on that particular page, while `\rightmark` refers to the first mark produced from either `\markright` or `\markboth`.

If you are likely to produce pages like the above, such as in a document containing many short subsections, then the fancyhdr defaults are probably not suitable for you. In that case overwrite them in one way or another, as we did in most of the examples in this section. The question you have to ask yourself is this: what information do I want to present to the reader in such a heading? If the answer is, for example, the situation at the top of the page for even (left-hand) pages and the status on the bottom for odd pages, then a possible solution is given through the use of `\FirstMark` and `\LastMark` from L^AT_EX's new mark mechanism (as discussed in Section 5.3.5).

5-4-9	<div>2 A2 1.1 B1</div> <div>1.1 B1</div> <div>Some text for our page that we reuse. Some text for our page that we reuse.</div> <div>2 A2</div> <div>Some text for our page that we reuse. Some text for our page that we reuse.</div> <div>6</div>	<div>3 A3</div> <div>2.1 B2</div> <div>Some text for our page that we reuse. Some text for our page that we reuse.</div> <div>3 A3</div> <div>Some text for our page that we reuse. Some text for our page that we reuse.</div> <div>7</div>	<pre>\usepackage{fancyhdr} \pagestyle{fancy} \fancyhead[L0]{\LastMark{2e-left}} \fancyhead[R0]{\LastMark{2e-right}} \fancyhead[LE]{\FirstMark{2e-left}} \fancyhead[RE]{\FirstMark{2e-right}} % \sample defined as before \setcounter{page}{5} \section{A1} \newpage % Above makes a section on % page 5 (not displayed) \subsection{B1} \sample\sample \section{A2} \sample\sample \subsection{B2} \sample\sample \section{A3} \sample\sample</pre>
-------	---	--	---

To test your understanding, explain why page 7 now shows only the A-head and try to guess what headers you would get if the first B-head (but not all of its section text) had already been on page 5.

Despite the claim made earlier, there are two more defaults set by the fancy page style. Because they are somewhat hidden, we have ignored them until now. We have not said how `\leftmark` and `\rightmark` receive their values — that they receive some data should be clear from the previous examples. As explained in Section 5.3.4, the sectioning commands pass their title argument to commands like `\sectionmark`, which may or may not be set up to produce page marks via `\markboth` or `\markright`. The fancy page style now sets up two such commands: `\chaptermark` and `\sectionmark` if the current class defines a `\chapter` command, or `\sectionmark` and `\subsectionmark` if it does not. Thus, if you want to provide a different marking mechanism or even if you just want to provide a somewhat different layout (for example, suppressing section numbers in the running header or not using `\MakeUppercase` for the mark text), you may have to define these commands yourself.

The next example repeats Example 5-4-7 from the preceding page, except that this time we provide our own `\sectionmark` and `\subsectionmark` that shorten the separation between number and text and avoid using `\MakeUppercase`.

<div> <div>1 Test</div> <div> <div>1 Test</div> <div>1.1 B-head</div> <div> <p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae,</p> </div> <div>6</div> </div> </div>	<div> <div>1 Test1.2 B-head2</div> <div> <div>felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris.</div> <div>1.2 B-head2</div> <div> <p>Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor</p> </div> <div>7</div> </div> </div>	<pre> \usepackage{lipsum,fancyhdr} \pagestyle{fancy} \renewcommand\sectionmark[1] {\markboth{\thesection\ #1}{}} \renewcommand\subsectionmark[1] {\markright{\thesubsection\ #1}} \section{Test} \subsection{B-head} \lipsum[1] [1-3] \subsection{B-head2}\lipsum[2] [1-3] </pre> <div>5-4-10</div>
--	--	--

Defining “named”
page styles

So far, all of our examples have customized the fancy page style over and over again. However, the fancyhdr package also allows you to save your customizations under a name that can then be selected through the `\pagestyle` or `\thispagestyle` command. This is done with a `\fancypagestyle` declaration. It takes two arguments: the name of the page style and the customizations that should be applied when the page style is later called. Fields not set (or cleared) as well as the rule width settings are inherited from the fancyhdr defaults. This explains why we first use `\fancyhf` to clear all fields.

<div> <div>6Memo</div> <div> <div>By virtue of natural reason, our ampliative judgments would thereby be made to contradict, in all theoretical sciences, the pure employment of the disci-</div> <div>File 5-4-11</div> </div> </div>	<div> <div>Memo7</div> <div> <div>pline of human reason. Because of our necessary ignorance of the conditions, Hume tells us that the transcendental aesthetic constitutes the whole content for,</div> <div>April 22, 1781</div> </div> </div>	<pre> \usepackage{kantlipsum,fancyhdr} \fancypagestyle{memo}{\fancyhf{}% \fancyhead[R0,LE]{\thepage}% \fancyhead[L0,RE]{Memo}% \fancyfoot[R0]{\scriptsize\today}% \fancyfoot[RE]{\tiny File \jobname}% \renewcommand\headrulewidth{1pt}} \pagestyle{memo} \kant[10] </pre> <div>5-4-11</div>
--	---	--

Some \LaTeX commands, like `\chapter` and `\maketitle`, use `\thispagestyle` to automatically switch to the `plain` page style, thereby overriding the page style currently in effect. To customize page styles for such pages you can either modify the definitions of these commands (which could be painful) or change the meaning of the `plain` page style by providing a new definition with `\fancypagestyle`.

This is, strictly speaking, not really the right approach — just assume that your new `plain` page style is now doing something fancy. But the fault really lies with \LaTeX ’s standard classes,¹ which failed to use specially named page styles for these cases and instead directly referred to the most likely candidate. In practice, such a

¹The KOMA-Script classes, for example, use commands like `\chapterpagestyle` to refer to such special page styles, thus allowing easy customization.

redefinition usually works very well for documents that need a fancy page style for most pages.

Sometimes it is desirable to modify the page style depending on the floating objects found on the current page. For this purpose `fancyhdr` provides a number of control commands. They can be applied in the page style declarations, thereby allowing the page style to react to the presence or absence of footnotes on the current page (`\iffootnote`), floats in the top area (`\iftopfloat`), or floats in the bottom area (`\ifbottomfloat`). Each takes two arguments: the first to typeset when the condition is satisfied, the second to execute otherwise.

*Page styles
depending on float
objects*

In the next example we omit the head rule if there are top floats by redefining `\headrulewidth`. We also show the use of different heading texts on pages with or without top floats.

<div style="text-align: center;">SPECIAL</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px auto; width: 80%;">Sample top figure</div> <p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipi-</p> <div style="text-align: center;">6</div>	<div style="text-align: center;">NORMAL</div> <hr style="border: 0.5px solid black;"/> <p>scing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetur id, vulputate a, magna.</p> <div style="text-align: center;">7</div>	<pre> \usepackage{lipsum,fancyhdr} \pagestyle{fancy} \fancyhf{} \chead{\iftopfloat{SPECIAL}{NORMAL}} \cfoot{\thepage} \renewcommand\headrulewidth {\iftopfloat{0pt}{0.4pt}} \lipsum*[1][1] \begin{figure}[t] \centering \fbox{Sample top figure} \end{figure} \lipsum*[1][2-4]</pre>
--	--	---

5-4-12

A similar control, `\iffloatpage`, is available to customize page styles for pages consisting only of floats — for example, to suppress running headers on such pages. If the page style is supposed to depend on several variables the controls can be nested, though that soon gets a little muddled. For example, to suppress head rules on all pages that contain either top or page floats, one would have to define `\headrulewidth` as follows:

*Layout for float
pages*

```

\renewcommand\headrulewidth
    {\iftopfloat{0pt}{\iffloatpage{0pt}{0.4pt}}}
```

5.4.3 truncate — Truncate text to a given length

A potential problem when producing running headers or footers is the restricted space available: if the text is too long, it simply overprints. To help in this and similar situations you can deploy the package `truncate` written by Donald Arseneau. It provides a command to truncate a given text to a given width.

`\truncate[marker]{width}{text}`

If the argument *text* is too wide to fit the specified *width*, it is truncated, and a continuation *marker* placed at the end. If the optional *marker* argument is missing,

a default marker stored in `\TruncateMarker` is used (its value, as provided by the package, is `\,` `\dots`).

By default, truncation is done at word boundaries and only if the words are not connected via an unbreakable space specified with a `~`. For this reason the following example truncates the text after the word “is”. It also illustrates the use of a *marker* that requires an extra set of braces to hide the brackets that are supposed to appear as part of the text. To help you visualize the space occupied by the truncated text, vertical bar characters have been added to the left and right.

```
[This text is not truncated] (to compare)
[This text ... |
[This text is [...]
```

```
\usepackage{truncate}
|This text is not~truncated| (to compare) \par
|\truncate{50pt}{This text is not~truncated}| \par
|\truncate[{\,[. .]}]{95pt}{This text is not~truncated}|
```

5-4-13

Truncation within words can be achieved by specifying one of the options `hyphenate`, `breakwords`, or `breakall` to the package. The first two support truncation at hyphenation points, with the difference being that `breakwords` suppresses the hyphen character (the more common solution). The third option allows truncation anywhere within words. With these options the above example would have the following result:

This text is not trun-[..]

(hyphenate)

This text is not trun[..]

(breakwords)

This text is not trunc[..]

(breakall)

By default, the text (whether truncated or not) is printed flush left in a box of the specified *width*. Using the package option `fit` causes the printed text to have its natural width, up to a maximum of the specified *width*.

The next example combines the `truncate` package with `fancyhdr`. Notice the use of the `fit` option. Without it the header would always be flush left.

1 KANT ON THE ...

1 Kant on the
Meaning of Life

The noumena have nothing to do with, thus, the Antinomies. What we have alone been able to show is

6

1 KANT ON THE ...

that the things in themselves constitute the whole content of human reason, as is proven in the ontological manuals. The noumena (and to avoid all misapprehension, it is necessary to

7

```
\usepackage[fit,breakwords]{truncate}
\usepackage{kantlipsum,fancyhdr}
\pagestyle{fancy}
\fancyhf{} % --- clear all fields
\fancyhead[RO,LE]{\truncate
  {\headwidth}{\leftmark}}
\fancyfoot[C]{\thepage}
\section{Kant on the
  Meaning of Life}
\kant[42]
```

5-4-14

5.4.4 continue — Help with turning pages

Sometimes it is advantageous to give the readers additional hints about what is coming up on the next page. For example, when the text is being read out, showing the first word from the next page helps to avoid any hesitation when it comes to a page turn. Another application is exam papers; clearly indicating that the back of the page has further tasks to tackle might avoid last-minute panics of the students discovering this too late.

For the first type of design, Donald Arseneau developed a cute little package called `fwlw` (first word/last word), and for the second task there is `turnthepage` by Luca Merciadri. Both packages have been combined (and slightly modified) by Peter Wilson in his `continue` package that we are going to describe here.

If used without options, the package helps with the basic page turn by displaying the content of `\flagcont` at the bottom of a recto page (default is the word “Continued”) unless it is the last page, in which case the content of `\flagend` (default “End”) is shown. By appropriately redefining either or both commands you can easily arrange for your own style of continuation markers.

<p> Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum </p> <p>6</p>	<p> gravida mauris. Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium </p> <p><i>Turn the page</i></p> <p>7</p>	<pre> \usepackage{lipsum} \usepackage{continue} \renewcommand\flagcont {\textit{\small Turn the page}} \renewcommand\flagend{} \lipsum[1][1-3] \lipsum[2] </pre>
---	---	---

5-4-15

The effect of redefining `\flagend` in the above example is not visible because we are showing only two pages of the result, but it does result in the last page of the whole document not getting any extra mark.

If you want continuation markers on each page and not only on the odd-numbered ones, load the package with the option `allpages` as we do in the next example. This is for example useful if you are producing one-sided documents.

If `continue` is loaded with the option `word`, then the default for `\flagcont` is redefined to the first word from the next page preceded by `\preflagword` and followed by `\postflagword` (both of which are empty by default). In the next example they are redefined to produce some output.

The first word on the next page is extracted by Donald Arseneau’s algorithm using some ingenious T_EXnical tricks, but because of the fact that T_EX is actually not built for this, there are situations where you have to accept that the term “word” must be taken somewhat loosely. Basically the algorithm includes everything up to the first possible line break in the first line, e.g., it includes punctuation characters or anything else directly attached to the first word. Thus, this may not quite be what you expect if your text contains things like display equations, etc. However, with normal texts where such a design is more common, this usually works quite well.

This “word” is stored in a box named `\NextWordBox` and can therefore alternatively be used in running headers or footers with the help of `\usebox`.¹ The fact that it is inside a box means that it consists of already typeset characters and therefore is no longer subject to font changes that you may otherwise want in a running header — you get whatever is displayed on the next page in exactly this font and size! In the same way, the package makes the first and the last word of the current page available, which may be useful in some circumstances. The corresponding boxes are named `\FirstWordBox` and `\LastWordBox`. Both have been used within the `fancyhdr` setup below to show the mechanism.

<div style="text-align: center;">/euismod</div> <p> Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipis- elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod [sodales, ... </p> <div style="text-align: center;">6</div>	<div style="text-align: center;">sodales, /vitae</div> <p> sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae [ornare ... </p> <div style="text-align: center;">7</div>	<pre> \usepackage{lipsum,fancyhdr} \pagestyle{fancy} \fancyhead{} \fancyhead[C] {\usebox{\FirstWordBox}% \,/\, \usebox{\LastWordBox}} \usepackage[word,allpages] {continue} \renewcommand{\preflagword}{[]} \renewcommand{\postflagword} { \ldots} \lipsum[1][1-3] \lipsum[2] </pre>	<div style="text-align: right;">5-4-16</div>
--	--	--	--

As you can see in the previous example, the `\FirstWordBox` on the left page is empty. That is because it is simply a copy of the `\NextWordBox` as it was on the previous page, and because the example starts with page 6, there is no earlier page and thus no content in that box. If you really need a value in the running header of the very first page, you have to provide it manually using `\savebox`.

Incidentally, the default for `\flagend` is left unchanged when you use the `word` option, so if you do not want to get the word “End” on the last page, you need to redefine that command like we did before.

As shown in the previous examples the continuation text is by default typeset between the text body and the footer line and lines up with the text on the right margin. The separation from last line of text is given by `\contdrop` and defaults to `0.5\footskip`. Thus, if the `\footskip` is small, this may need adjustment.

Instead of this layout, you can push the text into the margin (assuming they are wide enough) by using the package option `margin`. The continuation text is then placed into the right margin separated from the main text by `\contsep` (which defaults to `\marginparsep`). This layout is shown in the next example using some Kantian sample text. When reading such text aloud, it clearly helps to have an inkling of what comes up next when turning the page.

¹If you do this, you probably want to redefine `\flagcont` to do nothing to avoid getting it into two places.

analytic unity. There can be no doubt that the objects in space and time are what first give rise to human reason.

Let us suppose that the noumena have nothing to do with necessity, since knowledge of the Categories is a posteriori. Hume tells us that the transcendental unity of apperception can not take account of the discipline of natural [reason,

5-4-17

```
\usepackage{kantlipsum,fancyhdr}
\pagestyle{fancy} \fancyhf{}
\fancyhead[R]{\textbf{\thepage}}
\fancyhead[L]{Kant with turn support}
\usepackage[word,margin]{continue}
\renewcommand{\preflagword}{[]}
\setlength\contsep{5pt}
\kant[1] \kant[2]
```

5.5 Page decorations and watermarks

We cover two kinds of page decorations that are sometimes needed: putting watermarks, i.e., some material on all or some pages and adding crop marks, as often needed in the printing process. The `draftwatermark` package uses the shipout hooks of \LaTeX discussed in Appendix A.4.1 on page \rightarrow II 680.

5.5.1 `draftwatermark` — Put a visible stamp on your document

In some situations it is important to clearly mark each page of a publication, for example to indicate that something is a draft, confidential, uncontrolled copy, etc. Another scenario is marking individual copies with the name of its owner to prevent (or at least track) unauthorized distribution. Such texts are commonly known as watermarks because historically they have been produced not during the printing process but during the paper production while being still in a wet state, hence “water” mark.

With `draftwatermark` Sergio Callegari provides a package that helps you to produce electronic watermarks in your \LaTeX documents. In its simplest form all you have to do is to load the package, and it then stamps every page of your document with the word “DRAFT” in large gray letters diagonally across each page.

The package obeys the option `final` when present as a document class or package option and disables the watermarks throughout the document. This is fine if the mark says DRAFT but probably not so if some other text is displayed. For that reason you can force watermarks in such a case by using the option `stamp`. It is also possible to ask for placing a watermark only on the first page of the document by using the option `firstpageonly`.

Package options

```
\DraftwatermarkOptions{key/value list}
```

Instead or in addition to using package options, you can customize the watermarks in the preamble or at any point inside your document by using the declaration `\DraftwatermarkOptions` that expects a *key/value list* as its argument. The above package options are in fact Boolean keys, so to disable all watermarks from a certain

point onwards you can use `stamp=false`. There are about twenty keys in total: the most important are covered below.

Customizing the watermark text

With the `text` key it is possible to change the default text; with `fontsize` its size and with `scale` you provide an additional scale factor (default 1, i.e., no scaling). The combination of the two keys is of interest in case you have a font with different design sizes; e.g., compare

“Latin Modern 5pt scaled by 2” vs. “Latin Modern 10pt”

Of course, with fully scalable fonts in only one design size, using one or the other key makes no difference.

With `angle` you can adjust the text angle (default 45 degrees), and with `color` you can define a specific color to be used. By default, the package uses a light gray, and for convenience there are also keys that alter only aspects of the color, e.g., `colormodel` changes the model used (default `gray`), and `colorspec` the specification in this model (default 0.8), so if you want a darker gray, you could change just that value as we did in the example below.

For the coloring the package automatically loads the color package if necessary. Thus, if you want to use extended color specifications, load your own color support package first. The next example loads `xcolor` for that reason. It also shows that it is possible to change the setup in the middle of the document — whatever values are current at the time of the page break are used. The only point to remember is that \LaTeX reads whole paragraphs before making that decision; thus, changes are best placed between paragraphs.

<p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris.</p> <p>1</p>	<p>Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi.</p> <p>Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis.</p> <p>2</p>	<pre>\usepackage{lipsum,xcolor} \usepackage{draftwatermark} \DraftwatermarkOptions {fontsize=25pt,colorspec=.6} \lipsum[1][1-3] \newpage \DraftwatermarkOptions {color=blue!40, angle=-45, text=Private, scale=1.4 } \lipsum[2][1] \par \lipsum[3]</pre> <p>5-5-1</p>
---	---	---

Watermarks based on page content

Instead of explicitly changing the watermark text inside the document, you might want to see it changing automatically based on the content of the current page, e.g., displaying the page number or some marks that have been populated. The next example shows this approach (except that we issue the mark explicitly instead of using those generated from headings or other structures).

Altering the watermark position on the page

The example also exhibits how to move the watermark from its central point on the page using key `pos` (that expects a horizontal and a vertical offset from the top-left corner of the page). Alternatively, we could have used the keys `hpos` and `vpos` to set the horizontal and vertical part of the position separately. Note that the

position and values can be specified as a function of other \LaTeX parameters and that they are evaluated on each page anew. Thus, with suitable care you can alter the position on verso and recto pages if you have an asymmetric layout.¹

By default the text is centered around this position, but in our case we want it to be left-aligned. This can be set with the key `hanchor` that expects `l`, `c` (default), or `r`. Similarly, `vanchor` sets the vertical alignment expecting `t`, `m` (default), or `b`. Alternatively, you can set both in one go using the `anchor` key; e.g., we could have used this key with value `lm` and achieved the same effect.

<div> <div>– 1 – Public Info</div> <div> <p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetur id,</p> </div> </div>	<div> <div>– 2 – Confidential</div> <div> <p>vulputate a, magna.</p> <p>Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae,</p> </div> </div>	<pre> \NewMarkClass{WM} \InsertMark{WM}{Public Info} \usepackage{lipsum,draftwatermark} \DraftwatermarkOptions{ pos={0pt,20pt} , hanchor=l , text=\bfseries -- \thepage\ --\qqquad\FirstMark{WM} , fontsize=7pt , angle=0 } \raggedright\lipsum[1][1-4] \par \medskip \InsertMark{WM}{Confidential} \lipsum[2] </pre>
---	--	--

5-5-2

5.5.2 crop — Producing trimming marks

When producing camera-ready copy for publication, the final printing is normally done on “stock paper” having a larger size than the logical page size of the document. In that case the printed copy needs trimming before it is finally bound. For accurate trimming the printing house usually requires so-called crop marks on each page. Another reason for requiring crop marks is the task of mounting two or more logical pages onto a physical one, such as in color production where different colors are printed separately.

The `crop` package created by Melchior Franz supports these tasks by providing a simple interface for producing different kinds of crop marks. It also offers the ability to print only the text or only the graphics from a document, and the chance of inverting, mirroring, or rotating the output, among other things — all features useful during that part of the printing process.

Crop marks can be requested by using one of the following options:

cam Produces four marks that show the logical paper dimensions without touching them (see Example 5-5-3 on the following page). They are mainly intended for camera alignment.

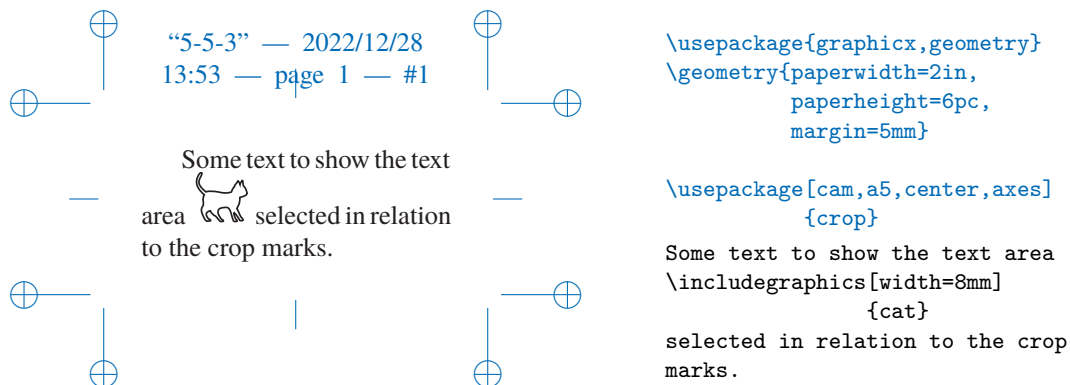
cross Produces four large crosses at the corners of the logical page touching its edges. It is intended as a trimming help printed on a separate piece of paper.

¹The evaluation happens inside `\setlength` or in case of the anchor values in an `\edef`; thus, not everything is possible. See the package documentation for examples.

`frame` Produces a frame around the logical page; mainly intended for clearly visualizing the page dimensions.

The package assumes that the `\paperheight` and `\paperwidth` dimensions correctly reflect the size of the *logical* page you want to produce. The size of the *physical* page (the stock paper) you are actually printing on is then given as an option to the package. Options include `a0`, `a1`, `a2`, `a3`, `a4`, `a5`, `a6`, `b0`, `b1`, `b2`, `b3`, `b4`, `b5`, `b6`, `executive`, `legal`, and `letter`. If you use the physical paper in landscape orientation (i.e., with the long side horizontally), you can also specify the option `landscape`. If none of these options matches your physical paper sizes, you can specify the exact sizes through the options `width` and `height`, both of which take dimensional values.

The following example sets up an artificially small logical page (to fit the example area of this book) using the `geometry` package and centers it on a physical page of A5 size. However, because all our examples are actually cropped to their “visible” size and since, for obvious reasons, we have not actually marked the borders of the A5 paper, you cannot see that it was properly centered at one stage — either believe us or try it yourself.



5-5-3

It should be clear from the description and the example that this package should be loaded *after* the document layout has been specified.

The informational text between the top crop marks is added by default. It can be suppressed by adding the option `noinfo`, though it is usually a good idea to keep it. The information contains both the page number (as known to \LaTeX) and a page index, which starts with 1 and is incremented for every page being printed. Especially with large publications using several page numbering methods at once, this is a helpful device to ensure that pages are not misordered.

If requested with the option `axes`, the package also marks the center points of each page with a small line in the crop area and thus is lost after trimming. By default they are turned off.

Using the option `font` you can change the appearance of this text, e.g., by providing `small`, `textsf`, or some other font command as a value. Allowed is any

command with zero or one argument (so you can define your own commands as well), but it is important to note that it must be specified without the backslash or chaos is assured. It is also possible to color the crop marks and the informational text using the option `color` (if necessary, the `color` package is loaded). Both options are shown in the next example.

Several options of the `crop` package rely on support given by the printer driver. If no driver option is explicitly given, the package tries to determine the driver from installation settings for the `graphics` or `color` package. It is also possible to indicate the driver explicitly by using options such as `dvips`, `pdflatex`, `luatex`, or `vtex` (there is no explicit driver option for \XeTeX , but the package works well with that engine, too). If one of these options is selected, the paper size information is passed to the external driver program, which is important if you want to view the document with an external program.

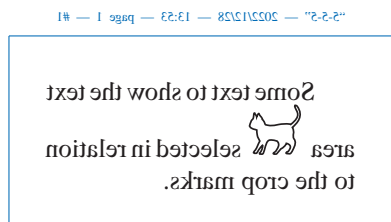
If you want to print graphics separately—for example, because running the complete document through a color printer is infeasible—you can produce different versions of the same document: one containing only the text but no graphics (or, more precisely, without graphics included via `\includegraphics`) and one containing only the graphics (or, more precisely, with all text printed in the color “white”). These effects can be achieved using the options `nographics` and `notext`, respectively. Clearly, the latter option can be used only if the target device is capable of understanding color commands because internally the `color` package is being deployed. The next example shows the use of the `nographics` and `cross`¹ options; compare it to the output of Example 5-5-3.

	<p>“5-5-4” — 2022/12/28 13:53 — page 1 — #1</p>	<pre>\usepackage{graphicx}</pre>
	<p>Some text to show the text area selected in relation to the crop marks.</p>	<pre>\usepackage[paperwidth=2in, paperheight=10pc, margin=5mm] {geometry}</pre>
		<pre>\usepackage[cross,a5,center, font=textsf, color=blue, nographics] {crop}</pre>
		<p>Some text to show the text area <code>\includegraphics[width=8mm]</code> <code>{cat}</code> selected in relation to the crop marks.</p>

5-5-4

¹The cross crop marks look admittedly rather weird at this measure.

Three other options require the output device to be able to obey the extended commands of the `graphics` and `color` packages for rotation, mirroring, and background coloring. With the option `rotate` the pages are turned through 180 degrees. The option `mirror` flips each page as shown in the next example. Finally, the option `invert` will invert white and black so that the text appears in white on a black surface.



```
\usepackage{graphicx,geometry}
\geometry{paperwidth=2in,paperheight=6pc,
margin=5mm}
\usepackage[frame,a5,center,
mirror,font=tiny]{crop}

Some text to show the text area
\includegraphics[width=8mm]{cat}
selected in relation to the crop marks.
```

5-5-5

5.6 Visual formatting

The final stage of the production of an important document often needs some manual formatting to avoid bad line or page breaks. In this section we look at various tools and methods to deal with such tasks.

We first look at pagination and show ways to alter it, for example by running some pages long or short. This is followed by a package that offers extensions to `\clearpage` and that supports conditional page breaks depending on the remaining available space.

We then turn to problems in paragraphs and take a detailed look at how to detect and avoid so called widows and orphans, i.e., single lines of a paragraph at the end or beginning of a page.

Finally, we discuss the `\looseness` command that directs \TeX to alter the paragraph breaking algorithm to lengthen or reduce paragraphs by a line or more. This approach can save the day in difficult situations, especially if it is impossible to alter the textual material.

5.6.1 Standard tools for page explicit page breaking

For explicit page break standard \LaTeX offers the `\pagebreak`, `\nopagebreak`, `\newpage`, and `\clearpage` commands as well as the `\samepage` declaration, although the latter is considered obsolete in $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$. A `\samepage` declaration together with a suitable number of `\nobreak` commands lets you request that a certain portion of your document be kept together.

Unfortunately, the results are often not satisfactory; in particular, \LaTeX never makes a page larger than its nominal height (i.e., `\texttheight`) but rather moves

everything in the scope of the `\samepage` declaration to the next page. The \LaTeX 2\epsilon command `\enlargethispage*` described below offers an alternative approach.

5.6.2 Running pages and columns short or long

It is common in book production to “run” a certain number of pages (normally double spreads) short or long to avoid bad page breaks later. This means that the nominal height of the pages is reduced or enlarged by a certain amount—for example, a `\baselineskip`. To support this practice, \LaTeX 2\epsilon offers the command `\enlargethispage{size}`.

`\enlargethispage{size}`

If, for example, you want to enlarge or reduce the size of some pages by one (or more) additional lines of text, you could define

```
\newcommand\longpage[1][1]{\enlargethispage{#1\baselineskip}}
\newcommand\shortpage[1][1]{\enlargethispage{-#1\baselineskip}}
```

Fractional or negative values (for reduction) are, of course, possible. Use these commands somewhere between two paragraphs on the pages in question.¹

The `\enlargethispage` command alters the `\textheight` for the current page or column but otherwise does not change the formatting parameters. Thus, if `\flushbottom` is in force, the text fills the `\textheight` for the page in question, if necessary by enlarging or shrinking vertical space within the page. In this way, the above definitions (if used without the optional argument) add or remove exactly one line of text from a page while maintaining the positions of the other lines. This consideration is important to give a uniform appearance.

Note that only the current page or column is affected. Thus, to ensure a uniform appearance of a double page spread, you need to issue two (in case of two-column mode even four) such commands, one in each column. The situation is slightly different if you are inside a `multicols` environment. Because this environment looks at all columns before making a decision, you need only a single `\enlargethispage` to achieve the desired effect.

In the next example the `multicols` would normally end with a single line on page 7. By issuing `\shortpage` on page 6, we get a second line moved over. Alternatively, we could have made the page long, which would have gotten all of the `multicols` material onto page 6. Of course, to get a uniform appearance there should

¹Because this book contains so many examples, we had to use this trick a few times to avoid half-empty pages. For example, in this chapter seven spreads are run short by one line (e.g., pages 402–407) and four spreads are run long (e.g., pages 380–381). This was necessary because of the many (large) examples in Section 5.4.2—all other paginations we tried ended somewhere in half-empty pages or in multiple widows and orphans.

be a second `\shortpage` on page 7 as well, but in the example this is commented out to better show the effect of the first.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut,	placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero,	nonummy eget, consectetur id, magna. Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae,	<pre> \usepackage{lipsum, multicol} \flushbottom \begin{multicols}{2} \raggedright \shortpage \lipsum[1][1-4] \end{multicols} % \shortpage \lipsum[2] </pre>
6		7	5-6-1

`\enlargethispage*{size}`

The companion command, `\enlargethispage*`, also enlarges or reduces the page height, but this time the resulting final page is squeezed as much as possible (i.e., depending on the available white space on the page). This technique can be helpful if you wish to keep a certain portion of your document together on one page, even if it makes the page slightly too long. (Otherwise, just use the `minipage` environment.) The trick is to request a large enough amount of extra space and then place an explicit page break where you want the page break to happen. Here is an example:

```

\enlargethispage*{100cm}      % absurdly large request
\begin{center}
  \begin{tabular}{l}
    ....
  \end{tabular}
\end{center}
\pagebreak                    % forced page break

```

From the description above it is clear that all these commands should be used only in the last stages of the production process, because any later alterations to the document (adding or removing a single word, if you are unlucky) can make your hand-formatting obsolete — resulting in ugly-looking pages.

To manually correct final page breaks, such as in a publication like this book (which poses some formidable challenges due to the many examples that cannot be broken across pages), it can be helpful to visualize \TeX 's reasons for breaking at a certain point and to find out how much flexibility is available on certain pages. Tools for this purpose are described in Appendix B.4.2.

5.6.3 addlines — Adjusting whole double spreads

As already alluded earlier altering the page height normally has to be done on both verso and recto pages in unison to avoid a ragged look of the spread. This means one usually has to use two identical `\enlargethispage` commands, one for each page.

To simplify this approach Will Robertson wrote the `addlines` package that provides a wrapper around the commands discussed in the previous section.

`\addlines*[lines]`
`\removelines*[lines]`
`\squeeze page[lines]`

The command `\addlines` adds the specified number of *lines* (default 1) to the whole double spread if the document is typeset in `twoside` mode. To work correctly it needs to be placed in the first column on the verso page, and it warns you if it appears elsewhere. In `oneside` mode it affects only the current page; in `twocolumn` mode both columns are adjusted.

Negative values remove lines; alternatively, you can use `\removelines`. Fractional values are also allowed though sensible only if there is enough flexibility available in all columns. For those preferring the singular when appropriate, there are also `\addline` and `\remove line` for adding or removing one line.

5-6-2

<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>A) Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.</p> <p>B) Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac,</p> </div> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris.</p> <p>C) Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget,</p> </div> </div>	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque.</p> <p>D) Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod</p> </div> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi.</p> <p>E) Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue</p> </div> </div>	<pre> \usepackage{lipsum, addlines} \flushbottom \twocolumn \raggedright A) \lipsum[1][1] \par \addline B) \lipsum[1][2-3] \par C) \lipsum[1][4-5] \par D) \lipsum[2][1] \par E) \lipsum[3] </pre>
6	7	

In the example setting it is a little difficult to see that this really adds one line to all columns, but compare with Example 5-6-3 that shows the same text.

The star forms act only on the current column; i.e., they are like `\longpage` and `\shortpage` discussed above. They are useful if one needs to handle one column specially, e.g., using `\squeeze page` on a neighboring one.

In the next example we add an extra line in the second column and make the third column run one line short. Compare this to Example 5-6-2 where all columns had one extra line.

5-6-3

<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>A) Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.</p> <p>B) Ut purus elit, vestibulum</p> </div> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris.</p> <p>C) Nam arcu libero,</p> </div> </div>	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>nonummy eget, consectetur id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque.</p> </div> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>D) Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi.</p> <p>E) Nulla</p> </div> </div>	<pre> \usepackage{lipsum, addlines} \flushbottom \twocolumn \raggedright A) \lipsum[1][1] \par B) \lipsum[1][2-3] \par \addline* C) \lipsum[1][4-5] \par \remove line* D) \lipsum[2][1] \par E) \lipsum[3] </pre>
6	7	

Sometimes you want to get some more material into the current column but use as little extra space as possible. This can be achieved with `\squeeze page` (which is `\enlargethispage*` in disguise).

For instance, page 7 in the next example shows that in this setting \LaTeX would carry two lines of the last paragraph to the next page. In contrast, everything fits (more or less) on page 6 where we asked for squeezing the page after adding one extra line.

<p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.</p> $\sum x_i$ <p>Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis.</p> $\sum y_i$ <p>Now will this final paragraph still fit in its entirety on the page?</p> <p>6</p>	<p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.</p> $\sum x_i$ <p>Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis.</p> $\sum y_i$ <p>Now will this final paragraph</p> <p>7</p>	<pre>\usepackage{lipsum,addlines} \flushbottom \lipsum[1][1] \[\sum x_i \] \squeezepage[1] \lipsum[1][2] \[\sum y_i \] Now will this final paragraph still fit in its entirety on the page? \par \lipsum[1][1] \[\sum x_i \] \lipsum[1][2] \[\sum y_i \] Now will this final paragraph still fit in its entirety on the page?</pre>
---	--	--

If used without the optional argument, `\squeeze page` only squeezes the page without allowing more material than usual. This seldom has any effect (other than preventing the `\flushbottom` setting) because \LaTeX usually uses as much material as can be fit onto the page.

5.6.4 nextpage—Extensions to \clearpage

In standard L^AT_EX the commands `\clearpage` and `\cleardoublepage` terminate the current paragraph and page after placing all dangling floats (if necessary, by producing a number of float pages). In two-sided printing `\cleardoublepage` also makes sure that the next page is a right-hand (odd-numbered) one by adding, if necessary, an extra page with an empty text body. However, this extra page still gets a page header and footer (as specified by the currently active page style), which may or may not be desirable.

7	<p>8</p>	<p>4 A TEST</p>
<p>4 A Test</p> <p>4.1 A subsection</p> <p>Some text for our page. Then a blank page.</p>	<p><code>\pagestyle{headings}</code> <code>% Right-hand page on the left in</code> <code>% this and next example due to:</code> <code>\setcounter{page}{7}</code> <code>\section{A Test}</code> <code>\subsection{A subsection}</code> Some text for our page. Then a blank page. <code>\cleardoublepage</code> <code>\section{Another Section}</code> This would appear on page 9 (not shown).</p>	<p>5-6-5</p>

The package `nextpage` by Peter Wilson (these days maintained by Will Robertson) extends this concept by providing the commands `\cleartoevenpage` and `\cleartooddpage`. Both commands accept an optional argument in which you can put text that should appear on the potentially generated page. In the next example we use this ability to provide a command `\myclearpage` that writes `BLANK PAGE` on such generated pages.

<div>5-6-6</div> <div> <p>7</p> <p>4 A Test</p> <p>4.1 A subsection</p> <p>Some text for our page. Then a blank page.</p> </div>	<div> <p>8</p> <p>4 A TEST</p> <p>BLANK PAGE</p> </div>	<pre>\usepackage{nextpage}\pagestyle{headings} \newcommand\myclearpage{\cleartooddpage [\vspace*{\stretch{1}} \centering BLANK PAGE \vspace*{\stretch{2}}]} \section{A Test} \subsection{A subsection} Some text for our page. Then a blank page. \myclearpage \section{Another Section} This would appear on page 9 (not shown).</pre>
--	---	---

This code still results in a running header, but by now you surely know how to fix the example: just add a `\thispagestyle{empty}` to the above definition.

The `nextpage` package also provides two commands, `\movetoevenpage` and `\movetooddpage`, that offer the same functionality, except that they do not output dangling floats.

5.6.5 needspace — Conditionally start a new page

Instead of unconditionally requesting a new page with one of the commands discussed in the previous sections, you may want to just reserve a certain amount of space and skip to the next if that space is not available on the current page but otherwise continue as normal. A typical example is something like an index section that you may want to start immediately if there is still more than X lines of space available.

For this type of application Peter Wilson developed the `needspace` package (now maintained by Will Robertson). It offers two commands for this purpose.

<code>\needspace{space}</code> <code>\Needspace*{space}</code>	
--	--

The `\needspace` command checks if there is still approximately the requested vertical *space* available on the current page and if not starts a new page. The decision when to break depends on the flexibility with the current page material. If the break is taken, a short page is produced even if `\flushbottom` is in force. This is efficient and normally adequate.

In contrast, `\Needspace` makes an exact calculation under the assumption that the already placed material is typeset without shrinking or stretching. Again, if a break is taken, it creates a short page. However, if the star form is used, the page content is stretched out, and a full page is produced if `\flushbottom` is in force.

Thus, this can be used only if a small amount of *space* is requested or if there is ample flexibility for stretch available on the page.

The next example shows `\Needspace` in action. On the first page it has no effect because there are still two lines available, but on the second page it pushes the final paragraph out. Because we used `\Needspace*` on this page, you can see that the material remains aligned at the bottom. The resulting excess space is distributed between the paragraphs (because it this is the only space that can stretch on this page).

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.
 Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetur id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque.
 This should only start if there is plenty of space, i.e., 2

1

lines or more ...
 Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.
 Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetur id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque.

2

```

\usepackage{lipsum,needspace}
\flushbottom

\lipsum[1][1] \par
\lipsum[1][2-5]

\Needspace{2\baselineskip}
This should only start if
there is plenty of space,
i.e., 2 lines or more \dots

\lipsum[1][1] \par
\lipsum[1][2-5]

\Needspace*{2\baselineskip}
This should only start if
there is plenty of space,
i.e., 2 lines or more \dots
    
```

5-6-7

5.6.6 Avoiding widows and orphans

Splitting off the first or last line of a paragraph at a page or column break is considered bad practice in typesetting circles. It is thus not surprising that the craftspeople have come up with fairly descriptive names for such lines when they appear in typeset documents. Commonly used are the terms “widow” for the last and “orphan” for the first line. These are, for example, used in English, French (“veuve” and “orpheline”), Italian (“Vedova” and “Orfano”), Spanish (“línea huérfana” and “línea viuda”), and to a lesser extent in German (“Witwe” and “Waise”). One way to remember them is to think of orphaned lines appearing at the start (birth) and widows near the end (death) of a paragraph or by using Bringhurst’s mnemonic, “An orphan has no past; a widow has no future” [25].

German typesetters coined some more profane descriptions by calling the widow line a “Hurenkind” (child of a whore) and the orphan line a “Schusterjunge” (son of a shoemaker) allegedly because these boys have been notoriously meddlesome. For German practitioners these are still the predominantly used terms, though “Witwen” and “Waisen” are also well understood. Dutch uses “hoerenjong” and “weeskind”, which translates to son of a whore and orphan, i.e., somewhere in between the German usage and the other languages.

Donald Knuth catered for this typographic detail in the T_EX program by providing parameters whose values are used as penalties if the pagination algorithm considers breaking in such a place. Widow lines are penalized via `\widowpenalty`; however, orphans are not controlled by `\orphanpenalty`, as one might expect, but by a parameter named `\clubpenalty`. Again, note that these parameters (and those discussed later in this section) are all T_EX counters and get their value assigned with the `\parameter=<integer>` syntax.

Essentially everyone in typography circles agrees that widows and orphans are very distracting to the reader as well as a sign of bad craftsmanship and should therefore be avoided. In fact, most writing guides and other books on typography generally suggest that a document should have no such lines whatsoever, e.g., in older editions of the *Chicago Manual of Style* we find “A page should not begin with the last line of a paragraph unless it is full measure and should not end with the first line of a new paragraph.” However, that is easier said than done, so in newer editions of the *Chicago Manual of Style* [40] they no longer forbid orphans; i.e., they dropped the second part of the advice.

As a result of this sort of guidance many journal classes for L^AT_EX completely forbid widows and orphans by setting `\widowpenalty` and `\clubpenalty` to 10000, which prohibits a break at such points.

Doing this introduces severe problems: Because L^AT_EX (and in fact all major typesetting systems to date) use a greedy algorithm¹ to determine the pagination of a document, they recognize problems with orphan or widow lines late in the game and then have only the current page to work with. This means the best it can do to avoid the situation is to push an orphan to the next page if there is not enough room to squeeze in another line. The same happens with widows; here L^AT_EX is forced to move the second-to-last line to the next page even though it would still nicely fit.

As a result the current page has an additional line-height worth of white space that needs to be distributed somewhere on the page. If there are headings, displays, lists, or other objects for which the design allows some flexibility in the surrounding white space, then this extra space may not create much of an issue. If, however, the page consists only of text or objects without any flexibility, then all L^AT_EX can do is run the page or column short, generating a fairly ugly hole at the bottom.

Besides widows and orphans there are a number of similar issues that typography manuals mandate eliminating if at all possible. One is a paragraph split across pages at a hyphenation point so that only a part of the word is visible at any time; another is a widow line with a following display formula. For both, T_EX offers parameters to control the undesirability of the scenario. By default Donald Knuth considered them of lesser importance and provided default values of 100 and 50 for `\brokenpenalty` and `\displaywidowpenalty`, respectively, while he specified 150 for orphans and widows. However, if your style guide (or your class file) wants to avoid them at all costs, then you are in precisely the same situation as with the widows and orphans discussed above.

Related problems

¹ See [99] and [134, 135, 138] for research on alternative approaches.

A special variation of the last issue is a display formula starting a page, that is, with the introductory material completely on the previous page or column. That is considered a no-no by nearly everybody, so in \TeX the controlling `\predisplaypenalty` parameter has by default a value of 10000. Again, there may be valid reasons to ignore this advice in a special situation, e.g., when the space constraints are high.

Fixing the problem

The alternative to preventing widows and orphans (or hyphens across page boundaries, etc.) automatically and at all costs is to manually resolve the issues when they arise. For this one finds a number of suggestions in the typography literature. We discuss those that are easy to apply in a \LaTeX document below. A more extensive discussion of the subject is given in [136].

Forcing a page break early and producing a short page. This is what \LaTeX and most other typesetting tools automatically do if you completely forbid widows and orphans and it often leads to badly filled pages as discussed above.

However, if you force the page break manually, you have control and can decide which problems need fixing, and you can lessen the impact by also explicitly forcing earlier breaks and thereby shifting the extra white space to a page or column where it can be absorbed by the available flexibility on that page.

Running the page spread short or long. This approach is a standard trick of the craft. In \LaTeX this can be achieved using the commands described in Sections 5.6.2 and 5.6.3.

Adjusting the spacing between words to produce “tighter” or “looser” paragraphs. This is certainly a practical option if you choose the right paragraph or paragraphs, e.g., those that are somewhat longer and that have a last line that is either nearly full (for lengthening) or nearly empty (for shortening). In that case squeezing the word spaces might result in one line less, and extending it might get you an additional line (with just a word or two). In many cases the resulting gray value is still of acceptable quality, so this is a typical trick of the trade. In \LaTeX this is achieved by using the `\looseness` parameter that is discussed in Section 5.6.8.

Note that you do not necessarily need to manipulate one of the paragraphs of the problem page; there might be a better candidate on an earlier page.

Rewriting a portion of the paragraph. This is obviously something you can do only if you are the author and not typesetting some text written by others. If so, it is a valid strategy because it enables you to easily shorten or enlarge a paragraph so that your orphan or widow is reunited with other lines. It is certainly the most often applied approach in this book during the final production.

Again, there is no requirement to do this rewrite with the paragraph causing the issue (as implied by the advice); you can choose any earlier paragraph to achieve the desired effect.¹

¹Well, “any” is an exaggeration: if you change a paragraph on an earlier page, the gained (or extra)

Reduce the tracking of the words. Tracking in this context means adjusting the spacing between characters in a uniform way (in contrast to kerning, which means adjusting the spacing between individual glyph pairs, e.g., “AV” cf. “AV”). This concept was already discussed in Section 3.4.6 in the context of letter-spacing.

Clearly by applying tracking one can shorten or lengthen a text. However, when applying tracking to a whole paragraph, the gray value of words changes fairly rapidly. Compare, for example, the different lines in Figure 3.1 on page 192 that show a line of text with different amounts of tracking (negative and positive) applied. Thus, even with small tracking values, changes may become noticeable and thus distracting.

On the whole, common typographical advice is to *not use* tracking for such purposes or, if there is no better alternative, then only with very small tracking values in which case there may not be any noticeable effects on the paragraph length unless you are lucky. It is, however, easy to experiment with by using the `\textls` command from the microtype package.

Adding a pull quote to the text (more common for magazines). Pull quotes are catch phrases from the text that are “pulled out” and typeset prominently again in a different place, typically in a larger and often different font. They serve as eye catchers and if carefully chosen give the reader a preview of the content or main points of an article.

The design needs to clearly distinguish them from other display material; e.g., there should be no way to confuse them with headings, etc. In two-column texts this is often done by placing them in a window with both columns flowing around them, but placing them into the content of one column is also often seen.

The latter is fairly easy to achieve with \LaTeX , but flowing text around a pull quote is something that requires a lot of manual work. If you want to try, take a look at the `wrapfigure` environment from Section 7.3.4 on page 535. As the above advice already mentions, pull quotes are more commonly found in magazine type documents, so this approach may or may not be applicable.

Resizing an existing figure. Just like adding a pull quote, resizing a figure obviously changes the amount of material a column can hold and thus enables us to move an orphan or widow out of harm’s way. Whether or not it is a valid option depends on the figure in question; often enough graphics do offer some freedom and can be adjusted either by scaling (up or down) or by cropping, etc. However, due to the fact that their placement can be only indirectly controlled, it is not so easy to handle successfully.

Summary. To resolve issues with widows and orphans one has to somehow adjust the amount of material typeset in the respective column or page. Out of the options discussed above the first three have the advantage that they do not change your document content in any way but only its presentation. That is certainly also true

space might get swallowed up by available flexibility on some intermediate page, and your widow or orphan thus stays put. In that case you additionally need to add some strategic page breaks.

for applying tracking or reducing float sizes. However, for the latter two it is much harder to properly control their effects on the pagination.

If you are the author of the document, then rewriting paragraphs or changing figure sizes to fit in a few more or less words is often a successful and very easy to apply strategy, but of course that does not work if you are typesetting material written by somebody else.

Finally, pull quotes are a very attractive method if your type of document allows for this kind of display. The advantage here is that you are fairly free in placing them and thus can resolve a good range of typesetting issues simply by choosing a set of sensible quotes and then place them in suitable places (which within some limits can be done fairly arbitrarily).

*Make adjustment
only in the last
stage of document
production!*



However, in any case, it should be noted though that all approaches are manual and thus the adjustments becomes invalid the moment there is a document change that modifies the amount of material typeset. It is therefore of paramount importance to manually fix widows and orphans only at the very last stage of producing the final document. Otherwise, all the effort might be in vain and needs to be undone or changed over and over again.

5.6.7 widows-and-orphans — Finding all widows and orphans

If the document class you use sets `\widowpenalty` and `\clubpenalty` to 10000, then \LaTeX automatically prevents widows and orphans, i.e., an orphan is forced to the top of the next page or column and the same happens to the line preceding a widow. The downside, as discussed previously, is partly empty pages, and if space is a premium (for example, if your conference paper is not allowed to be more than X pages in total), then this is a possible problem. Thus, you are better off allowing widows and orphans (by changing these parameter values) and manually correcting any issue during the final stage of the document production in one way or another.

The question then becomes, how do you identify the problematic page breaks without manually going through the printout of your document and searching for them? While that is certainly an option, it is error prone, and it would be much nicer if \LaTeX (even if it cannot automatically resolve the issues for you) at least identifies them so that you only have to check the problem pages.

This is possible by simply loading the package `widows-and-orphans` by Frank Mittelbach. This package adjusts the parameter values slightly so that all possible combinations if added up lead to distinctive numbers. For example, instead of the \LaTeX default values, it would choose

```
\widowpenalty      = 150
\clubpenalty       = 152
\brokenpenalty     = 101
\displaywidowpenalty = 50
```

so that it can distinguish between a widow and an orphan (`\widowpenalty` or `\clubpenalty`) or a widow that comes together with a hyphen at the break

(`\widowpenalty + \brokenpenalty`). In case you wonder why 151 was not used: that value is already used by L^AT_EX for `\@medpenalty`, which you get if you issue `\nopagebreak[2]`.

By making sure that all technically possible combinations lead to unique numbers, it is only necessary to look at the penalty of the page break to determine whether that break exhibits one or more of the problems. At any page or column break the `\outputpenalty`¹ is inspected, and depending on the findings, a warning or error is generated that can then be checked and corrected manually.

For instance, in the next example we have three problems: page 1 ends in a hyphen, and additionally this paragraph has a very sorry widow at the top of page 2 — just half a word. Furthermore, the bottom of that page also ends again in a hyphen.

5-6-8	<p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mau-</p> <p>1</p>	<p>ris.</p> <p>Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh.</p> <p>Suspendisse vel felis. Ut lorem lorem, interdum eu, tin-</p> <p>2</p>	<pre>\usepackage{lipsum} \usepackage{widows-and-orphans} \lipsum[1][1-3] % Some more % text to avoid the widow. \lipsum[4][1-2]\par\lipsum[6]</pre>
-------	--	--	---

For these issues the package produces two (not three) warnings:

```
Package widows-and-orphans Warning: Widow on page 2
Package widows-and-orphans Warning: Hyphen in last line of page 2
```

It does not tell us about the hyphen on page 1 because that is directly related to the widow. If we attempt a fix by adding one extra line to the first paragraph (uncommenting the English text in the example), we would resolve the widow and also push the hyphen on page 2 to the next page. However, rerunning the document would then produce

```
Package widows-and-orphans Warning: Hyphen in last line of page 1
Package widows-and-orphans Warning: Orphan on page 2
```

because we generated a new problem and the first hyphen issue was not resolved either. Thus, this approach can require several iterations, which is another reason why you should do this only at the very last stage of document production.

To somewhat ease the process, the package has a number of key/value options. The `check` option determines how findings are handled: the default is `warning` in which case warnings are written to the terminal and the `.log` file. In the last phase of document development you may want to change that to `error` in which case the package stops at each problem with an error message rather than just a warning. In the opposite direction, `info` does not clutter the terminal with messages and only

¹In this parameter T_EX records the penalty associated with the chosen break so that it can be inspected within the output routine processing.

writes to the `.log`. And if you know for sure that all the remaining issues have to stay, you can also use the value `none` in which case no checks are done at all.

Instead of suppressing all checking for a part of the document via `\WaOsetup` (discussed below), you can issue the command `\WaOignorenext` somewhere in the document, after which the next check—for the current page or column—is silenced. The check is still performed, and if no problems are found, you receive an error message, because either you have added it to the wrong page or your text has changed and it is no longer needed.

Continuing with improvements to Example 5-6-8, we decide that there is no good way to fix the hyphen issue on page 1. We therefore accept this deficiency and add `\WaOignorenext` to suppress the warning, and we resolve the orphan issue by marrying the two paragraphs together. Everything should be fine now, so we set `check` to `error` to get alerted if due to rewrites new problems arise.

<p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris.</p> <p>1</p>	<p>ris. Some more text to avoid the widow.</p> <p>Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Suspendisse vel felis. Ut lorem lorem,</p> <p>2</p>	<pre>\usepackage{lipsum} \usepackage[check=error] {widows-and-orphans} \WaOignorenext\lipsum[1][1-3] Some more text to avoid the widow. \par \lipsum[4][1-2] \lipsum[6]</pre> <p>5-6-9</p>
---	--	---

The package also offers keys to set individual parameters to “reasonable” values. These are the keys `widows`, `orphans`, and `hyphens`, which all accept beside explicit numerical values the words `default` (to set the parameters to their \LaTeX default), `avoid` (higher value but still possible to break), or `prevent` as their value. And there are also the valueless keys `default-all`, `avoid-all`, and `prevent-all` to set all parameters in one go. If you want \LaTeX to try hard to avoid widows and orphans but not fully prevent them, try `avoid-all` as a starting point.¹

If you want to see the resulting parameter settings (and the combinations that need to be unique in order to allow the package to work), you can issue the command `\WaOparameters` at any point in the document, which gives you a somewhat terse listing. If called in the preamble, the listing is delayed until after `\begin{document}` because only then the unification happens.

Why would one ever want to use the `check` key with value `none` instead of not loading the package? The reason is this: given that the package has to change the parameter settings slightly, not loading it would mean running the document with different values, and even though those changes are minimal, it is possible to construct examples where the difference matters and leads to changed results. Once you have fixed what is possible to fix, it is safest to still load the package, even if you no longer want the remaining warnings. Another reason is that the package offers the command `\WaOsetup` that allows you to change the settings mid-document, e.g., turn the warnings off for chapters already handled, but turn them on again for others.

Do not remove
the package after
use

¹That would not avoid the issues in our examples given that there is no or nearly no stretchable space available.

5.6.8 `\looseness` — Shortening or lengthening paragraphs

As discussed earlier \TeX (and therefore \LaTeX) uses a globally optimizing line-breaking algorithm to find the best breaks for a given paragraph based on a given set of parameters. It is, however, possible to ask \TeX to try to find a solution (within given quality boundaries) that is a number of lines longer or shorter than the optimal result. If such a solution exists, it is used; if not, then \TeX tries to match the request as closely as possible. This manual method can be used to resolve pagination issues such as widows or orphans or other problems with the page breaking.

The paragraph will still be optimized (under the new conditions), i.e., its overall gray level will be fairly uniform, etc., but, inevitably, the interword spacing gets looser or tighter in the process, because this is the only parameter that \TeX can adjust.¹

To activate this feature you need to set the \TeX counter `\looseness` to the desired value. This has to be done inside or directly in front (no blank line allowed!) of the paragraph text via low-level \TeX syntax, because there is no \LaTeX interface available.


```
\looseness=1    % to lengthen by one line,
                % use a -1 to shorten by a line (if possible)
The paragraph will still be optimized (under ...
```

\TeX automatically resets the value to zero whenever a `\par` command or blank line is encountered; thus, it affects at most one paragraph.

A value of `-1` has the best chance to work if the last line is already nearly empty (and the paragraph is of reasonable length). Lengthening is somewhat easier because interword spaces can stretch arbitrarily (as long as they do not exceed the `\tolerance`), whereas they can shrink by only a fixed amount. There is again a better chance for success if the last line is already (nearly) filled.

*Better shorten than
lengthen if possible*

So far so good, but there are a few pitfalls that need to be avoided: first of all, with a positive value of `\looseness` \TeX usually moves only a single word or even part of a single word into the last line, because this way there is more material in the others and thus less stretching of the interword spaces is necessary. Because this usually looks rather ugly, it is best to tie the last words together by using `~` and if necessary prevent hyphenation of the last word by placing an `\mbox` around it.²

 *Avoid the
pitfalls lurking*

Second, lengthening of a paragraph may go horribly wrong if the document is set with a high `\tolerance` value, e.g., most definitely when a `\sloppy` declaration is in force. Since `\tolerance` defines how bad a line can get while still being a candidate for the line-breaking algorithm and `\sloppy` (or the `sloppypar` environment) simply

¹This paragraph, for example, is artificially lengthened by one line, i.e., from three to four. It is the only place in the book where we lengthened a paragraph. We have, however, quite often used `-1` to shorten paragraphs, because this usually looks better when adjustments are needed.

²In \TeX this kind of typographical issue can also be dealt with automatically, but then it applies to all paragraphs: setting the parameter `\finalhyphenpenalty` to a high value makes hyphenation in the last line unattractive, in which case the `\mbox` is not necessary.

'I won't indeed!' said Alice, in a great hurry to change the subject of conversation. 'Are you-are you fond-of-of dogs?' The Mouse did not answer, so Alice went on eagerly: 'There is such a nice little dog near our house I should like to show you! A little bright-eyed terrier, you know, with oh, such long curly brown hair! And it'll fetch things when you throw them, and it'll sit up and beg for its dinner, and all sorts of things-I can't remember half of them-and it belongs to a farmer, you know, and he says it's so useful, it's worth a hundred pounds! He says it kills all the rats and-oh dear!' cried Alice in a sorrowful tone, 'I'm afraid I've offended it again!' For the Mouse was swimming away from her as hard as it could go, and making quite a commotion in the pool as it went.

'I won't indeed!' said Alice, in a great hurry to change the subject of conversation. 'Are you-are you fond-of-of dogs?' The Mouse did not answer, so Alice went on eagerly: 'There is such a nice little dog near our house I should like to show you! A little bright-eyed terrier, you know, with oh, such long curly brown hair! And it'll fetch things when you throw them, and it'll sit up and beg for its dinner, and all sorts of things-I can't remember half of them-and it belongs to a farmer, you know, and he says it's so useful, it's worth a hundred pounds! He says it kills all the rats and-oh dear!' cried Alice in a sorrowful tone, 'I'm afraid I've offended it again!' For the Mouse was swimming away from her as hard as it could go, and making quite a commotion in the pool as it went.

'I won't indeed!' said Alice, in a great hurry to change the subject of conversation. 'Are you-are you fond-of-of dogs?' The Mouse did not answer, so Alice went on eagerly: 'There is such a nice little dog near our house I should like to show you! A little bright-eyed terrier, you know, with oh, such long curly brown hair! And it'll fetch things when you throw them, and it'll sit up and beg for its dinner, and all sorts of things-I can't remember half of them-and it belongs to a farmer, you know, and he says it's so useful, it's worth a hundred pounds! He says it kills all the rats and-oh dear!' cried Alice in a sorrowful tone, 'I'm afraid I've offended it again!' For the Mouse was swimming away from her as hard as it could go, and making quite a commotion in the pool as it went.

'I won't indeed!' said Alice, in a great hurry to change the subject of conversation. 'Are you-are you fond-of-of dogs?' The Mouse did not answer, so Alice went on eagerly: 'There is such a nice little dog near our house I should like to show you! A little bright-eyed terrier, you know, with oh, such long curly brown hair! And it'll fetch things when you throw them, and it'll sit up and beg for its dinner, and all sorts of things-I can't remember half of them-and it belongs to a farmer, you know, and he says it's so useful, it's worth a hundred pounds! He says it kills all the rats and-oh dear!' cried Alice in a sorrowful tone, 'I'm afraid I've offended it again!' For the Mouse was swimming away from her as hard as it could go, and making quite a commotion in the pool as it went.

'I won't indeed!' said Alice, in a great hurry to change the subject of conversation. 'Are you-are you fond-of-of dogs?' The Mouse did not answer, so Alice went on eagerly: 'There is such a nice little dog near our house I should like to show you! A little bright-eyed terrier, you know, with oh, such long curly brown hair! And it'll fetch things when you throw them, and it'll sit up and beg for its dinner, and all sorts of things-I can't remember half of them-and it belongs to a farmer, you know, and he says it's so useful, it's worth a hundred pounds! He says it kills all the rats and-oh dear!' cried Alice in a sorrowful tone, 'I'm afraid I've offended it again!' For the Mouse was swimming away from her as hard as it could go, and making quite a commotion in the pool as it went.

run short (tight)	optimal line breaks	run long (loose)	run very long — bad!	run very long — awful!
<code>\looseness = -1</code>	<code>\looseness = 0</code>	<code>\looseness = 1</code>	<code>\looseness = 2</code>	<code>\looseness = 3</code>
<code>\tolerance = 72</code>	<code>\tolerance = 99</code>	<code>\tolerance = 638</code>	<code>\tolerance = 2065</code>	<code>\sloppy</code>


Figure 5.3: A paragraph from *Alice* under different `\looseness` settings

sets this tolerance nearly¹ to infinity, i.e., fairly bad lines become acceptable, and thus you might end up with a paragraph looking like the last one in Figure 5.3.

This figure shows a paragraph from *Alice in Wonderland* by Lewis Carroll (1832–1898) typeset with different settings for `\looseness` and `\tolerance`. The values for `\tolerance` are those necessary to achieve a result; e.g., with a value of 500 even a `\looseness` of one would not be fulfilled. The result on the right clearly shows what happens if a high `\looseness` is paired with `\sloppy`: the request is fulfilled producing a very spaced-out paragraph. In fact, in this case, \TeX would happily add up to 14 extra lines while already three come out fairly ugly.

Seeing the paragraphs in Figure 5.3, you might ask yourself why one would want to use a high, let alone infinite, `\tolerance` ever. The reason is that this caters for situations where line breaking is very difficult. \TeX will normally look only at the additional candidate solutions, but because they are usually inferior, it will not use them. Thus, under normal circumstances you get the same results. If typesetting is tough, you get a solution and not one or more overfull lines because \TeX gave up in despair. Thus, the appropriate setting for `\tolerance` really depends on your own *tolerance*, i.e., at what point you think it becomes worth to manually intervene.

In small column measures it usually makes sense to set the default `\tolerance` fairly high (say, 3000 or 4000) to ensure that \TeX automatically finds a solution in situations where line breaking is problematic. However, if you make manual adjustments using a positive² value for `\looseness`, you need to use a lower `\tolerance` to avoid disasters like the last paragraph in Figure 5.3, because with high settings \TeX may resort to a solution with really bad lines to fulfill the request, which is something that nobody would want.

Using 
`\looseness` can
 always change line
 breaking

Using a negative `\looseness` does not have these issues, so it is fairly safe to use it with any paragraph if you are pressed for space: either it succeeds or it will keep the same number of lines as before. However, even in that case you are likely to see a different line breaking compared to not setting `\looseness`. The reason is somewhat

¹In the early days of \TeX `\sloppy` used to set the tolerance to 10000 (i.e., \TeX 's infinity), but that tended to produce even more bizarre-looking paragraphs: \TeX then made one line really bad and all others perfect, because that looked to the optimizer to be the best solution.

²Negative values are not problematic because the interword spaces can shrink only a little bit.

technical: there may be different ways to break the paragraph into lines all resulting in the same “quality” according to T_EX’s algorithm, and when T_EX is asked to try a different `\looseness`, it simply looks at the possible solutions in a different order.

To experiment with generally setting a negative `\looseness`, you might try the following in the preamble of your document:

```
\AddToHook{para/before}{\looseness=-1 } % space needed after the number
\newcommand\cancellooseness{\AddToHookNext{para/before}{\looseness=0 }}
```

The first line issues a `\looseness` statement in front of every paragraph in the document, and the second line gives you a method to cancel that for just the next paragraph if needed.

5.7 Doing layout with class

Page layout is normally defined by the document class, so it should come as no great surprise that the techniques and packages described in this chapter are usually applied behind the scenes (within a document class).

The standard classes use the L^AT_EX parameters and interfaces directly to define the page proportions, running headers, and other elements. More recently developed classes, however, often deploy packages like `geometry` to handle certain aspects of the page layout.

In this section we briefly introduce two such implementations. By searching through the CTAN archive you might discover additional treasures.

5.7.1 KOMA-Script — A drop-in replacement for article et al.

The KOMA-Script classes, developed by Markus Kohm and based on earlier work by Frank Neukam, are drop-in replacements for the standard `article/report/book` classes that emphasize rules of typography laid down by Tschichold. The `article` class, for example, becomes `scrartcl`.

Page layout in the KOMA-Script classes is implemented by deploying the `typearea` package (see Section 5.2.3), with the classes offering the package options as class options. Extended page style design is done with the package `scrlayer-scrpage` (offering features similar to those provided by `fancyhdr`). Like `typearea` this package can also be used on a stand-alone basis with one of the standard classes. Layout specifications such as font control, caption layout, and so on, have been extended by providing customization possibilities that allow manipulation in the preamble of a document.

Besides offering all features available in the standard classes, the KOMA-Script classes provide extra user control inside front and back matter as well as a number of other useful extensions.

The distribution is well documented. There exists both a German and an English guide explaining all features in detail [102]. The German documentation is also available as a nicely typeset book [101], published by DANTE, the German language T_EX Users Group.

5.7.2 memoir — Producing complex publications

The memoir class written by Peter Wilson was originally developed as an alternative to the standard book class. It incorporates many features otherwise found only as add-on packages. The current version, maintained and further developed by Lars Madsen, also works as a replacement for article and can, therefore, be used for all types of publications, from small memos to complex books [200].

Among other features it supports an extended set of document sizes (from 9pt to 17pt), configurable sectional headings, page headers and footers, and captions. Predefined layout styles are available for all such objects, and it is possible to declare new ones as needed. The class supports declarative commands for all aspects of setting the page, text, and margin sizes, including support for trimming (crop) marks. Many components of the class are also available as stand-alone packages, for those users who wish to add a certain functionality to other classes (e.g., epigraphs, caption formatting).

Like the KOMA-Script classes, the memoir class is accompanied by an excellent manual of nearly 200 pages, discussing all topics related to document design and showing how to resolve potential problems with memoir.

CHAPTER 6

Tabular Material

6.1 Standard \LaTeX environments	432
6.2 <code>array</code> —Extending the <code>tabular</code> environments	437
6.3 Calculating column widths	446
6.4 Multipage tabular material	456
6.5 Color in tables	466
6.6 Customizing table rules and spacing	467
6.7 Other extensions	476
6.8 Footnotes in tabular material	491
6.9 <code>keyvaltable</code> —Separating table data and formatting	494
6.10 <code>tabularray</code> —Late breaking news	504

Data is often most efficiently presented in tabular form. \TeX uses powerful primitives for arranging material in rows and columns. Because they implement only a low-level, formatting-oriented functionality, several macro packages have been developed that build on those primitives to provide a higher-level command language and a more user-friendly interface. In Standard \LaTeX , two types of environments for constructing tables are provided. Most commonly the `tabular` environment or its math-mode equivalent, the `array` environment, is used. However, in some circumstances the `tabbing` environment might prove useful.

Tables typically form large units of the document that must be allowed to “float” so that the document may be paginated correctly. The environments described in this chapter are principally concerned with the table layout. To achieve correct pagination they are often used within the `table` environment described in Chapter 7. Exceptions are the environments for multipage tables described in Section 6.4, which should never be used in conjunction with the \LaTeX float mechanism. Be careful, however, not to confuse the `tabular` environment with the `table` environment. The former allows material to be aligned in columns, while the latter is a logical document

*Tables contained
within floating
environments*

element identifying its contents as belonging together and allowing the material to be floated jointly. In particular, one `table` environment can contain several tabular environments.

After taking a quick look at the `tabbing` environment, this chapter describes the extensions to \LaTeX 's basic `tabular` and `array` environments provided by the `array` package. This package offers increased functionality, especially in terms of a more flexible positioning of paragraph material, a better control of inter-column and inter-row spacing, and the possibility of defining new preamble specifiers. Several packages build on the primitives provided by the `array` package to provide specific extra functionality. By combining the features in these packages, you are able to construct complex tables in a simple way. For example, the `tabularx` and `tabulary` packages provide extra column types that allow table column widths to be calculated automatically.

Standard \LaTeX tabular environments do not produce tables that may be broken over a page. We give several examples of multipage tables using the `supertabular`, `longtable`, and `xltabular` environments provided by the similarly named packages. We then briefly look at the use of color in tables and at several packages that give finer control over rules, and the spacing around rules, in tables. Next, we discuss table entries spanning multiple rows, created via the `multirow` package, and packages that provide new column specifiers for special occasions, such as `dcolumn` and `fcolumn`, which provide mechanisms for aligning columns of figures on a decimal point.

We also discuss the use of footnotes in tables. The `threeparttable` package provides a convenient mechanism to have table notes and captions combined with a tabular layout.

The final section discusses the very interesting `keyvaltable` package that offers a completely different approach to inputting table data. In many cases it is superior to the traditional methods. It makes use of the other packages, e.g., `xltabular`, as its backend and so understanding their concepts and mechanisms is nevertheless useful.

Mathematically oriented readers should consult the chapter on advanced mathematics, especially Section 11.2 on page 413, which discusses the alignment structures for equations.

6.1 Standard \LaTeX environments

Standard \LaTeX has two families of environments that allow material to be lined up in columns—namely, the `tabbing` environment and the `tabular` and `array` environments. The main differences between the two kinds of environments are:

- The `tabbing` environment is not as general as the `tabular` environment. It can be typeset only as a separate paragraph, whereas a `tabular` environment can be placed anywhere in the text or inside mathematics.
- The `tabbing` environment can be broken between pages, whereas the standard `tabular` environment cannot.
- With the `tabbing` environment the user must specify the position of each tab

stop explicitly. With the `tabular` environment L^AT_EX can automatically determine the width of the columns.

- Multiple `tabbing` environments cannot be nested, whereas `tabular` environments can, thus allowing complex alignments to be realized.

6.1.1 Using the `tabbing` environment

This section deals with some of the lesser-known features of the `tabbing` environment. First, it must be realized that formatting is under the complete control of the user. Somewhat unexpectedly, when moving to a given tab stop, you always end up at the exact horizontal position where it was defined, independently of where the current point is. As a consequence, the current point can move backward and overwrite previous text. The scope of declarations within rows is usually limited to the region between tab stops, e.g., `\bfseries` and `\itshape` in the next example stop at the next `\>` or `\`, respectively.

Be aware that the usual L^AT_EX commands for making accents, `\'`, `\'`, and `\=`, are redefined inside the `tabbing` environment. The accents are available by typing `\a'`, `\a'`, and `\a=` instead (or by using accented characters directly). The `\-` command, which normally signals a possible hyphenation point, is also redefined, but this consideration is not so important because the lines in a `tabbing` environment are never broken.

*Alternative names
for accent
commands*

If the command `\'` is used between two tab stops, then all text to the left of it is placed into the *previous* tab region and typeset flush right against the previous tab stop (only separated by a distance of `\tabbingsep`). The default value for `\tabbingsep` is set equal to `\labelsep`, which in turn is usually 5pt. To set text flush right to the right margin you can use `\'`. The effect of both commands is shown below in the next example.

There exist a few common ways to define tab stops — that is, using a line to be typeset or explicitly specifying a skip to the next tab stop. The `\kill` command may be used to terminate a line that is only used to set tab stops: the line itself is not typeset. The following example demonstrates this and shows the redefinition of tab stops on the fourth line.

				<code>\begin{tabbing}</code>
				First Real Tab Stop <code>\=</code> Second <code>\=</code> Third <code>\=\kill</code>
one	two	three	four	<code>one \> two \> three \> four \</code>
one	<i>two</i>			<code>\bfseries one \> \itshape two \</code>
				<code>one \> again one \'</code> <code>\a{e}\a{e}</code>
				<code>\> three \'</code> flushed right <code>\</code>
one	again one	èè	three	flushed right
				new tab pos. <code>\=</code> two <code>\></code> same pos.
				<code>\> // overprint \</code>
new tab pos. two		same	overprint	one <code>\> two \> three \> four \</code>
one	two	three	four	<code>\end{tabbing}</code>

6-1-1




If you use the above accent commands within the definition of a command that may be used inside a `tabbing` environment, you must use the `\a...` forms because

the standard accent commands such as `\'` are interpreted as tabbing commands, as shown below. Fortunately, \LaTeX now accepts UTF-8 input so that you can use the accented letter directly, instead of entering them as 7-bit input.

	<code>\newcommand\badcafe{caf\'e (bad)}</code>				
	<code>\newcommand\goodcafe{caf'a'e}</code>			<code>\newcommand\greatcafe{café}</code>	
Tab one	Tab two	Tab three	<code>\begin{tabbing}</code>	Tab one	<code>\= Tab two \= Tab three \\</code>
7-bit	caf e (bad)	café		7-bit	<code>\> \badcafe \> \goodcafe \\</code>
UTF-8	café	or café		UTF-8	<code>\> \greatcafe \> or café \end{tabbing}</code>

6-1-2

The `tabbing` environment is most useful for aligning information into columns whose widths are constant and known. The following example is from Table A.1 on page \rightarrow II 652:

			<code>\newcommand\lenrule[1]{\makebox[#1]{%</code>		
			<code>\rule{.4pt}{4pt}\hrulefill\rule{.4pt}{4pt}}}</code>		
			<code>\begin{tabbing}</code>		
			<code>dd\quad \= \hspace{.55\linewidth} \= \kill</code>		
pc	Pica = 12pt		<code>pc \> Pica = 12pt \> \lenrule{1pc} \\</code>		
cc	Cicero = 12dd		<code>cc \> Cicero = 12dd \> \lenrule{1cc} \\</code>		
cm	Centimeter = 10mm		<code>cm \> Centimeter = 10mm \> \lenrule{1cm} \\</code>		
			<code>\end{tabbing}</code>		

6-1-3

6.1.2 `tabto` — An alternative way to tab stops

As an alternative to the standard `tabbing` environment Donald Arseneau developed the `tabto` package that offers a set of commands for moving to tab positions that can be used within normal text, list environments, etc., without the need to be confined in a special environment.

<code>\tabto{length}</code>	<code>\tabto*{length}</code>
-----------------------------	------------------------------

The `\tabto` command moves to a position *length* away from the left margin (where list indentations count as part of the margin). If the text on the current line is already past the desired position, the command starts a new line and then moves to the right point. In contrast, `\tabto*` always stays in the current line and performs backspacing if we are past the desired target point; that is, it may result in overprinting of text.

In the next example “T1” and “T2” are placed at tab positions reachable in the current line, while both “T3” and “T4” jump to the next line because in each case we are already past the target position. Note that “T5” ends up before “T4” due to the fact that we used `\tabto*` here.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer			
adipiscing elit.	T1	T2	<code>\usepackage{lipsum,tabto}</code>
	T3	Ut purus elit, vestibulum	<code>\lipsum[1][1] \tabto{3cm}T1 \tabto{4cm}T2</code>
ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis.			<code>\tabto{3cm}T3 \lipsum[1][2] \tabto{4cm}T4</code>
	T5	T4	<code>\tabto*{2cm}T5</code>

6-1-4

The current position in the line is available in the register `\CurrentLineWidth`, which enables you (for example with `calc` syntax) to define the next tab position relative to position where the `\tabto` command is encountered. In addition, the most recent tab position is stored in `\TabPrevPos`.

In the next example, “T1” starts one centimeter to the left of the current position (and thus on a new line), while “T2” starts exactly in the same horizontal position from which we started off originally (the `\smash` hides the height of the `\rule` so that it can overprint the paragraph text and we can see that the alignment is perfect).

6-1-5
 Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur
 adipiscing elit.

T1 Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, place-
 rat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis.

T2

```
\usepackage{lipsum,calc,tablo}
```

```
\lipsum[1][1]\tabto{\CurrentLineWidth-1cm}T1
```

```
\lipsum[1][2]\tabto{\TabPrevPos}%
```

```
\smash{\rule{.4pt}{46pt}}T2
```

Besides using ad hoc tab positions as we did so far, the package also supports predefining tab stops and then moving from one to the next using `\tab`.

<code>\NumTabs{number}</code>	<code>\TabPositions{length, length, ...}</code>	<code>\tab</code>
-------------------------------	---	-------------------

With `\NumTabs` the current `\linewidth` is divided into a *number* of equally distant tab stops starting at the left margin; e.g., `\NumTabs{2}` generates a tab position at the start and the middle of the line. That gives you same result as specifying `\TabPositions{0pt, .5\linewidth}`. The advantage of the second form of declaration is that you can specify arbitrary positions, but of course it requires more typing. The first position is always the left margin even if not specified as `0pt`.

Note that prior to `\begin{document}` the value of `\linewidth` may be incorrect, which means that `\NumTabs` may generate wrong tab stops. Thus, in the document preamble you have to use `\TabPositions` or explicitly initialize the `\linewidth` to `\textwidth` (or whatever is appropriate) first.

Once the tab stops are declared, the `\tab` command always moves to the next tab stop in the line or to the start of a new line if the list is exhausted. In particular, two or more `\tab` commands in a row skip one or more tab stops.

Start T1 T2 T3
 T0b T3b
 Start T1 T2 (last one in line)
 T0b (get past T1b) T? T2b

```
\usepackage{tabto}
```

```
\NumTabs{4}
```

```
Start\tab T1\tab T2\tab T3\tab T0b \tab\tab T3b
```

```
\TabPositions{.25\linewidth,.5\linewidth}
```

```
Start\tab T1\tab T2 (last one in line)\tab T0b  

(get past T1b)\tab T2b \tabto*{.42\linewidth}T?
```

As you can see in the previous example, it is possible to mix predefined tab positions and those explicitly calculated from the left margin, which is why T? shows up to the left of T2b and another `\tab` would then jump again to the T2b position.

Specifier	Effect
<code>l, c, r</code>	Left-aligned, center-aligned or right-aligned column.
<code>p{width}</code>	Equivalent to <code>\parbox[t]{width}</code> .
<code>|</code>	Inserts a vertical line between two columns. The distance between the two columns is unaffected.
<code>@{decl}</code>	Suppresses inter-column space and inserts <i>decl</i> instead.
<code>*{num}{opts}</code>	Equivalent to <i>num</i> copies of <i>opts</i> .

Table 6.1: The preamble specifiers in the standard \LaTeX tabular environment

6.1.3 Using the tabular environment

In general, when tables of any degree of complexity are required, it is usually easier to consider the `tabular`-like environments defined by \LaTeX . These environments align material horizontally in rows (separated by `\\`) and vertically in columns (separated by `&`). The `\\` command accepts an optional argument for requesting additional vertical space after the row. How this argument is interpreted depends unfortunately on the type of the rightmost column in the table; see Section 6.2.1 on the facing page for a discussion of the pitfalls and its behavior in the `array` package.

<code>\begin{array}[pos]{col-spec}</code>	<code>rows \end{array}</code>
<code>\begin{tabular}[pos]{col-spec}</code>	<code>rows \end{tabular}</code>
<code>\begin{tabular*}{width}[pos]{col-spec}</code>	<code>rows \end{tabular*}</code>

The `array` environment is essentially the math mode equivalent of the `tabular` environment. The entries of the table are set in math mode, and the default inter-column space is different (as described below), but otherwise the functionality of the two environments is identical.

The `tabular*` environment has an additional width argument that specifies the required total width of the table. It needs stretchable spaces between columns that have to be added using `\extracolsep` (see page 442).

Table 6.1 shows the various specifiers available in the *col-spec* preamble declaration of the environments in the standard \LaTeX `tabular` family. The `array` package introduced in the next section extends this list of preamble specifiers.


Style parameters

The visual appearance of the `tabular`-like environments can be controlled by various style parameters. These parameters can be changed by using the `\setlength` or `\addtolength` commands anywhere in the document. Their scope can be general or local. In the latter case the scope should be explicitly delimited by braces or another environment.

- `\arraycolsep` Half the width of the horizontal space between columns in an `array` environment (default value 5pt).
- `\tabcolsep` Half the width of the horizontal space between columns in a `tabular` environment (default value 6pt).

`\arrayrulewidth` The width of the vertical rule that separates columns (if a `|` is specified in the environment preamble) and the rules created by `\hline`, `\cline`, or `\vline` (default value 0.4pt).


When using the array package, this width is taken into account when calculating the width of the table (standard \LaTeX sets the rules in such a way that they do not affect the final width of the table).

 Size change made by the array package

`\doublerulesep` The width of the space between lines created by two successive `||` characters in the environment preamble or by two successive `\hline` commands (default value 2pt).

`\arraystretch` Fraction with which the inter-row space between normal-sized rows is multiplied. For example, a value of 1.5 would move the rows 50% farther apart. This value is set with `\renewcommand` (default value 1.0).

With `\multicolumn{number}{new-col-spec}{content}` you can aggregate a *number* of consecutive cells into one or alter the *col-spec* for a single cell. It must be placed at the start of a row or immediately after an `&`. The *new-col-spec* should contain only a single column specifier and optionally `|` and `@` specifiers. It replaces the environment's column specifications for the aggregated cells (including any `|` or `@` to the right of the last of the aggregated columns in the spec).

 Joining cells from consecutive columns

6.2 array—Extending the tabular environments

Over the years several extensions have been made to the `tabular` environment family, as described in the *LaTeX Manual*. This section explores the added functionality of the array package (developed by the author, with contributions from David Carlisle). Many of the packages described later in the chapter build on the functionality of the array package so as to extend or adapt the `tabular` environment.

Table 6.2 on page 439 shows all the specifiers available in the *col-spec* preamble declaration of the environments in the `tabular` family.

6.2.1 The behavior of the `\` command

In the basic `tabular` implementation of \LaTeX the `\` command ending the rows of the `tabular` or `array` has a somewhat inconsistent behavior if its optional argument is used. The result then depends on the type of rightmost column and as remarked in the *LaTeX manual* [106] may not always produce the expected extra space.

Without the array package the extra space requested by the optional argument of `\` is measured from the last baseline of the rightmost column (indicated by “x” in the following example). As a result, swapping the column gives different results:

1	x	x	1
	y	y	
2	2	2	2

```
\begin{tabular}[t]{lp{1cm}} \hline
  1 & x\newline y \\\[20pt]
  2 & 2 \\\hline \end{tabular}
\quad
\begin{tabular}[t]{p{1cm}l} \hline
  x\newline y & 1 \\\[20pt]
  2 & 2 \\\hline \end{tabular}
```

In contrast, when the array package is loaded, the requested space in the optional argument is always measured from the baseline of the whole row and not from the last baseline of the rightmost column; thus, swapping columns does not change the spacing, and we get the same table height with an effective 8pt of extra space (as the second line already takes up 12pt of the requested 20pt):

		<pre>\usepackage{array} \begin{tabular}[t]{lp{1cm}} \hline 1 & x\newline y \\\[20pt] 2 & 2 \\\hline \end{tabular} \quad \begin{tabular}[t]{p{1cm}l} \hline x\newline y & 1 \\\[20pt] 2 & 2 \\\hline \end{tabular}</pre>												
<table><tr><td>1</td><td>x</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>y</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>2</td></tr></table>	1	x		y	2	2	<table><tr><td>x</td><td>1</td></tr><tr><td>y</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>2</td></tr></table>	x	1	y		2	2	<div>6-2-2</div>
1	x													
	y													
2	2													
x	1													
y														
2	2													

6-2-2

This correction of behavior only makes a difference if the rightmost column is a p-column. Thus, if you add the array package to an existing document, you should verify the spacing in all tables that have this kind of structure.

6.2.2 Examples of preamble specifiers

When the column specifiers l, c, or r are used, then L^AT_EX automatically calculates the width of the column based on its widest cell. In many cases this is a convenient approach, because the table automatically adjusts its layout based on its content. There are, however, cases when it is desirable to explicitly specify the column width regardless of the content placed into it (usually by making it wider).

To produce columns with a fixed width using the basic tabular environment you specify it as a p column, but then the column is always left aligned; i.e., you cannot specify the inner alignment, and your cell content may generate several lines if it overflows. The alternative is to use a \makebox in at least one cell of the column, but that only defines the minimum column width; i.e., if there is a wider cell, then the column widens.

A better solution is offered by the array package with the specifiers w and W. Both take two mandatory arguments: an alignment (which can be either l, c, or r) and the desired width for the column. The difference between the two specifiers is that in a w column the cell content is always set at its natural width and silently overflows (and possibly overprints neighbor cells) if the entry is too wide, while in a W it is squeezed as much as possible if it is too wide and then generates an overfull box warning if it still does not fit. We show this behavior in the next example by setting \overfullrule to a positive value so that overfull boxes are marked.

			<pre>\usepackage{array} \setlength\overfullrule{5pt} \begin{tabular}{|r|wr{13mm}|Wr{15mm}|}</pre>
flexible (r)	fixed (w)	fixed (W)	flexible (r)& fixed (w) & fixed (W) \\\
123	123	123	123 & 123 & 123 \\\
123456789	123456789	123456789■	123456789 & 123456789 & 123456789 \\\
ab cd ef gh	ab cd ef gh	ab cd ef gh	ab cd ef gh & ab cd ef gh & ab cd ef gh \\\
			\end{tabular}

6-2-3

<i>Specifier</i>	<i>Effect</i>
<i>Unchanged Basic Specifiers</i>	
<code>l, c, r</code>	Left-aligned, center-aligned, or right-aligned column.
<code>p{width}</code>	Equivalent to <code>\parbox[t]{width}</code> .
<code>@{material}</code>	Suppresses inter-column space and inserts <i>material</i> instead.
<code>*{num}{opts}</code>	Equivalent to <i>num</i> copies of <i>opts</i> .
<i>Changed Specifiers</i>	
<code>|</code>	Inserts a vertical line. The distance between two columns is enlarged by the width of the line, in contrast to the original definition of \LaTeX .
<i>New Specifiers</i>	
<code>w{align}{width}</code>	Sets the cell content at its natural size in a box of the specified <i>width</i> aligned according to the <i>align</i> parameter, which could be either <code>l</code> , <code>c</code> , or <code>r</code> . Works essentially like <code>\makebox[width][align]{cell}</code> so silently overprints if the cell content is wider than the specified width. If that is not desired, use the <code>W</code> specifier instead.
<code>W{align}{width}</code>	<code>W</code> work like <code>w</code> but tries to squeeze the cell content if necessary and generates an overfull box warning (and an overfull rule marker in <code>draft</code> mode) when the content is too wide to fit. This also means that the alignment is different if there is too much material, because it then always protrudes to the right!
<code>m{width}</code>	Defines a column of width <i>width</i> . Every entry is centered vertically in proportion to the rest of the line. It is somewhat like <code>\parbox{width}</code> .
<code>b{width}</code>	Coincides with <code>\parbox[b]{width}</code> .
<code>>{decl}</code>	Can be used before any of the column specifiers, i.e., <code>l</code> , <code>r</code> , <code>c</code> , <code>w</code> , <code>W</code> , <code>p</code> , <code>m</code> , or <code>b</code> options. It inserts <i>decl</i> directly in front of the entry of the column.
<code><{decl}</code>	Can be used after any column specifier. It inserts <i>decl</i> immediately after the entry of the column.
<code>!{decl}</code>	Can be used anywhere and corresponds with the <code>|</code> option. The difference is that <i>decl</i> is inserted instead of a vertical line, so this option does not suppress the normally inserted space between columns, in contrast to <code>@{...}</code> .

Table 6.2: Preamble specifiers in the array package

Observe the overfull box mark in the third column because the material in the cell is wider than 15mm and cannot shrink, while in the middle column (which is only 13mm wide) it overflows silently into the left margin in rows 3 and 4 (the latter being squeezed enough to fit in column 3). Also notice that `W` always overflows to the right while `w` overflows away from the alignment (i.e., to the left if the alignment is `r`).

The cells in a row of a `tabular` are aligned at their baseline to give a uniform appearance. In the case of `p` cells, the material is aligned at the baseline of the first line

with respect to other cells in the row. However, if the cell content does not start with text (but with some vertically oriented material like the `\vspace` in the next example), then all of the cell material is positioned below that baseline and if necessary needs to be moved upwards with a negative vertical skip.

Using a `\color` command at the start of a cell has the same issue, but here the solution is simple: use `\textcolor` instead, because this starts a paragraph if necessary, as you can see in the fourth column of the next example:

a a	b b	c c	d d d
a a	b b	c c	
a a		c c	
		c c	
		c c	

```

\usepackage{color,array}
\begin{tabular}{|p{1pc}|p{1pc}|p{1pc}|l|}
\hline \vspace{0pt} a a a a a a &
      b b b b &
      \color{blue} c c c c c c c c &
      \textcolor{blue}{d d d} \\
\end{tabular}

```

6-2-4

The differences between the three paragraph-building specifiers `p` (the paragraph box is aligned at the top), `m` (the paragraph box is aligned in the center), and `b` (the paragraph box is aligned at the bottom) is the placement with respect to the other cells in the same row. A common misconception is that `m` positions its material centered in the available space otherwise taken up by the row, e.g., that the `b`'s in the previous example would line up with the second and third line of the `c`'s if they are positioned using `m` or that the `a`'s would drop to the bottom of the table if the first column is changed to a `b` column.

Instead, you get the following result, because everything aligns with the baseline of “d” in the fourth column. Notice that in a `b` cell, vertical material at the beginning has no special effect because the alignment happens at the bottom. However, in that scenario vertical material at the end would effect the positioning because then the alignment would no longer be at the baseline of the last line, but at the very bottom of the cell material.

To help you visualize the baseline at which the cells in the row are aligned we have added a rule into the last cell in a way that it protrudes to the left:

a a			
a a	b b	c c	d
a a	b b	c c	
		c c	
		c c	
		c c	

```

\usepackage{array}
\begin{tabular}{|b{1pc}|m{1pc}|p{1pc}|l|}
\hline \vspace{0pt} a a a a a a & b b b b &
      c c c c c c c c & d\llap{\rule{80pt}{0.4pt}} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

```

6-2-5

The placement behavior also affects the results obtained by the optional argument of the command `\` that terminates each row. One has to realize that the *extra depth* that can be specified this way only changes the nominal depth of the current row — it is not a vertical skip added between rows. Thus, if it is smaller than the current row depth (for example when there is a multiline `p` or `m` cell), then it has zero effect. In

contrast, the length `\extrarowheight` is added to the height of the first line in each cell and therefore always affects the position.

Both behaviors are shown in the next example. To better demonstrate the reason why `\\[1cm]` makes no difference, we have added an extra column and placed a rule inside to show how much this would increase the row depth, which is clearly not enough to get below the last row of c's.

6-2-6

a a	b b	c c	d
a a	b b	c c	
a a		c c	
		c c	

```
\usepackage{array}
\setlength\extrarowheight{5pt}
\begin{tabular}{|p{1pc}|m{1pc}|p{1pc}|l|c} \cline{1-4}
a a a a a a & b b b b & & & \\
c c c c c c c & d\llap{\rule{80pt}{0.4pt}} & & & \\
\rule[-1cm]{2pt}{1cm} & & & & \\
\end{tabular}
```

If you would like to use a special font, such as `\bfseries` in a flush left column, you can write `>\bfseries`l. You no longer have to start every entry of the column with `\bfseries`.

6-2-7

A	B	C
100	10	<i>1</i>

```
\usepackage{array}
\begin{tabular}{|>\large c|>\large\bfseries l|>\itshape c|}
\hline A & B & C\\ \hline 100 & 10 & 1 \\ \hline
\end{tabular}
```

In the previous example we also changed the font size in some cells, and this exhibits a general problem with the `tabular` environment. If the height of the material inside the cells is larger than a typical height of a text line, it gets too close to any surrounding rule. Standard `tabular` offers `\arraystretch` to spread the lines farther apart. However, that stretches both the height and the depth of each line, and in many cases it is only the part above the baseline that has issues.

Extra space between rows

This consideration is especially important for tables with horizontal lines because it is often necessary to fine-tune the distance between those lines and the contents of the table. To help in such situations the `array` package offers the parameter `\extrarowheight`, which adds some extra height to each cell without changing the depth. The effect of `\extrarowheight` is visible only if $\arraystretch \times (\extrarowheight + 0.7\baselineskip)$ is larger than the actual height of the cell or, more precisely, in the case of `p`, `m`, or `b`, the height of the *first row* of the cell. The default value of `\extrarowheight` is 0pt. Below we repeat Example 6-2-7 but add a vertical space of 3pt above each row using this method, which is clearly an improvement:

6-2-8

A	B	C
100	10	<i>1</i>

```
\usepackage{array}
\setlength\extrarowheight{3pt}
\begin{tabular}{|>\large c|>\large\bfseries l|>\itshape c|}
\hline A & B & C\\ \hline 100 & 10 & 1 \\ \hline
\end{tabular}
```


Font encoding
changes not
supported in a
>{...} argument

There are few restrictions on the declarations that may be used with the > preamble option. Nevertheless, for technical reasons beyond the scope of this book, it is not possible to change the font encoding for the table column. For example, if the current encoding is not T1, then >{\fontencoding{T1}\selectfont} does *not* work. No error message is generated, but incorrect characters may be produced at the start of each cell in the column. If a column of text requires a special encoding, then the encoding command should be placed explicitly at the start of each cell in the column.

In columns that have been generated with p, m, or b, the default value of \parindent is 0pt. It can be changed with the \setlength command, as shown in the next example where we indent the first column by 5mm:

1 2 3 4 5 6	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4	9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6
5 6 7 8 9 0	7 8 9 0

```
\usepackage{array}
\begin{tabular}
  {|>{\setlength\parindent{5mm}}p{2cm}|p{2cm}|}
  \hline 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 &
          1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 \\ \hline
\end{tabular}
```

6-2-9

The < preamble option was originally developed for the following application: >{\$}c<{\$} generates a column in math mode in a tabular environment. The use of this type of preamble in an array environment results in a column in LR mode because the additional \$s cancel the existing \$s.

$10^{10!}$	a big number
10^{-999}	a small number

```
\usepackage{array} \setlength\extrarowheight{4pt}
\begin{tabular}{|>{$}l<{$}|l|} \hline
          10!\sim{10!} & \& a big number \\
          10\sim{-999} & \& a small number \\ \hline
\end{tabular}
```

6-2-10

Making tabular*
stretch to the
required width

A major use of the ! and @ options is to add stretchable space with the help of an \extracolsep command so that T_EX can stretch the table to the desired width in the tabular* environment. The use of \extracolsep in the array package environments is subject to two restrictions: there can be at most one \extracolsep command per @ or ! expression, and the command must be directly entered into the @ expression, not as part of a macro definition. Thus, @{\extracolsep{\fill}} can be used, but \newcommand\ef{\extracolsep{\fill}}, and then later @{\ef} in a tabular preamble, does not work.

Typesetting narrow columns

T_EX does not hyphenate the first word in a paragraph, so very narrow cells can produce overflows. This can be corrected by starting the text with \hspace{0pt}.

Characteristics

Char- acteris- tics

```
\fbox{\parbox{11mm}{Characteristics}}%
\hfill
\fbox{\parbox{11mm}{\hspace{0pt}Characteristics}}
```

6-2-11

When you have a narrow column, you must not only make sure that the first word can be hyphenated, but also consider that short texts are easier to typeset in ragged-right mode (without being aligned at the right margin). This result is obtained by preceding the material with a `\raggedright` command (see Section 3.1). This command redefines the line-breaking command `\`, so we must use the command `\tabularnewline`, which is defined in standard \TeX to be the original definition of the row-ending `\` command of the `tabular` or `array` environment. Alternatively, we could have used the `\arraybackslash` command from the `array` package after the `\raggedright` in the third column. This locally redefines `\` to end the table row, as shown in Example 6-2-17 on page 446.

As shown in the example below, we can now typeset material inside a `tabular` environment ragged right, ragged left, or centered and still have control of the line breaks. The first word is now hyphenated correctly, although in the case of French and Dutch, we helped \TeX a little by choosing the possible hyphenation points ourselves.

6-2-12

Superconscousness is a long word	Possibilités et espérances	Mogelijkheden en hoop
Ragged left text in column one	Centered text in column two	Ragged right text in column three

```
\usepackage{array}
\begin{tabular}
  {>{\raggedleft\hspace{0pt}}p{14mm}%
  |>{\centering\hspace{0pt}}p{14mm}%
  |>{\raggedright\hspace{0pt}}p{14mm}|}
\hline Superconsciousness is a long word &
  Possibi\li\nt'es et esp'erances &
  Moge\li\k\heden en hoop \tabularnewline
\hline Ragged left text in column one &
  Centered text in column two &
  Ragged right text in column three
\tabularnewline \hline
\end{tabular}
```

Controlling the horizontal separation between columns

The default inter-column spacing is controlled by setting the length parameters `\arraycolsep` (for `array`) and `\tabcolsep` (for `tabular`). However, it is often desirable to alter the spacing between individual columns, or, more commonly, before the first column and after the last column of the table.

6-2-13

onetwo	three	four	—	five		
1	2	3	—	4	—	5

```
\usepackage{array}
\begin{tabular}{c@{}c!{}c@{--}c!{--}c}
  one & two & three & four & five \\
\end{tabular}
```

In the example above, `@{}` has been used to remove the inter-column space between columns 1 and 2. An empty `!{}` has no effect, as demonstrated between columns 2 and 3. Note that a dash appears in place of the default inter-column space when specified using `@{--}` between columns 3 and 4, but is placed in the center of the default inter-column space when specified using `!{--}` between columns 4 and 5.

Using @{} to remove
space at the side of
the table

A common use of @{} is to remove the space equal to the value of \tabcolsep (for tabular) that, by default, appears on each side of the table, except when the column specification starts or ends in a |.

Sample text before ...
one two material following ...
three four a bit more text to separate the tables
| one two now touching ...
three four ... and some more text.

```
\begin{flushleft} \textbf{Sample text before \ldots}\\
\begin{tabular}{lr}
  one & two\\
  three & four
\end{tabular} \textbf{material following \ldots}\\
\textbf{a bit more text to separate the tables}
\begin{tabular}{|lr@{}}
  one & two\\
  three & four
\end{tabular} \textbf{now touching \ldots}\\
\textbf{\ldots and some more text.} \end{flushleft}
```

6-2-14

Tables inside tables or other environments

The family of tabular environments allows vertical positioning with respect to the baseline of the text in which the environment appears. By default, the environment appears centered. This preference can be changed to align with the first or last line in the environment by supplying a t or b value to the optional position argument. Note that this approach does not work when the first or last element in the environment is an \hline command — in that case, the environment is aligned at the horizontal rule.

Tables with no
hline
commands
used

versus tables

with some
hline
commands

used.

```
\usepackage{array}
Tables \begin{tabular}[t]{l}
  with no\\
  hline \\
  commands \\
\end{tabular}
versus tables
\begin{tabular}[t]{|l|} \hline
  with some \\
  hline \\
\end{tabular} used.
```

6-2-15

To achieve proper alignments you can use the two commands \firsthline and \lasthline, which are special versions of \hline defined in the array package. These commands enable you to align the information in the tables properly as long as their first or last lines do not contain extremely large objects.

Tables with no
hline
commands
used

versus tables

with some
hline
commands

used.

```
\usepackage{array}
Tables \begin{tabular}[t]{l}
  with no\\
  hline \\
  commands \\
\end{tabular}
versus tables
\begin{tabular}[t]{|l|} \firsthline
  with some \\
  hline \\
\end{tabular} \lasthline
used.
```

6-2-16

Tables form boxes sometimes with the outer rules being at the edges. If you nest such tables, the rules get too close (or touch) surrounding material. The `array` package therefore provides the length parameter `\extratabsurround` that adds a space of that length above `\firsthline` and below `\lasthline` (default 2pt).

6.2.3 Defining new column specifiers

If you have a one-off column in a table, then you may use the `>` and `<` options to modify the style for that column:

```
>{some declarations}c<{some more decls}
```

This code, however, becomes rather verbose if you often use columns of this form. Therefore, for repetitive use of a given type of column specifier combination, the following declaration has been provided:

```
\newcolumnntype{col}[narg]{column-declarations}
```

Here, *col* is a one-letter specifier¹ to identify the new type of column inside a preamble; *narg* is an optional parameter, giving the number of arguments this specifier takes; and *column-declarations* is a sequence of legal column declarations. For example:

```
\newcolumnntype{x}{>{some declarations}c<{some more decls}}
```

The newly defined *x* column specifier can then be used in the preamble arguments of all `array` and `tabular` environments in which one needs columns of this form. If the column specifier already exists, it is overwritten with the new definition. This can be useful if you define your own specifiers and alter them in different parts of the document. However, be careful not to overwrite the predefined column specifiers, because once replaced, there is no way to get their functionality back.

Quite often you may need math mode and LR mode columns inside a `tabular` or `array` environment. Thus, you can define the following column specifiers:

```
\newcolumnntype{C}{>{$}c<{$}}
\newcolumnntype{L}{>{$}l<{$}}
\newcolumnntype{R}{>{$}r<{$}}
```

From now on you can use *C* to get centered LR mode in an `array` environment, or centered math mode in a `tabular` environment, etc.

The `\newcolumnntype` command takes the same first optional argument as `\newcommand`, which declares the number of arguments of the column specifier being defined. However, `\newcolumnntype` does not take the additional optional argument forms of `\newcommand`; in the current implementation, column specifiers may have only mandatory arguments.

¹Typically letters such as *R*, *C*, or *S* are used, but symbols like *+* or *!* or even command names, e.g., `\mycol`, are possible too. For the \TeX savvy: everything that counts as a single token can be used.

The next example is a repeat of Example 6-2-12 on page 443 except that we provide a new column specifier to do the job and also employ `\arraybackslash` so that the table rows can be finished off with `\\` as usual.

Super-consciousness is a long word	Possibilités et espérances	Mogelijkheden en hoop	<pre>\usepackage{array} \newcolumntype{P}[1] >{\#1\hspace{0pt}\arraybackslash}p{14mm}{|} \begin{tabular} {|P{\raggedleft}P{\centering}P{\raggedright}} \hline Superconsciousness is a long word & Possibi\~li\~t'es et esp'erances & Moge\~lijk\~heden en hoop \\ \hline Ragged left text in column one & Centered text in column two & Ragged right text in column three \\ \hline \end{tabular}</pre>
Ragged left text in column one	Centered text in column two	Ragged right text in column three	

A rather different use of the `\newcolumntype` command takes advantage of the fact that the replacement text in `\newcolumntype` may refer to more than one column. The following example shows the definition of a preamble option Z. Modifying the definition in the document preamble would change the layout of all tables in the document using this preamble option in a consistent manner. However, that makes the `tabular` preambles difficult to understand, so we suggest to refrain from that, just to save a few keystrokes. Use it only if you have many tables with the same structure.

one	two	three	<pre>\usepackage{array} \newcolumntype{Z}{\clr} \begin{tabular}{Z} one&two&three\\1&2&3 \end{tabular}</pre>
1	2	3	

The replacement text in a `\newcolumntype` command can be any of the primitives of `array`, or any new letter defined in another `\newcolumntype` command. If you load additional table packages, such as `dcolumn` or `fcolumn`, then their types are usable as well.

Any column specification in a `tabular` environment that uses one of these newly defined column types is “expanded” to its primitive form during the first stage of table processing. This means that in some circumstances, error messages generated when parsing the column specification refer to the preamble argument *after* it has been rewritten by the `\newcolumntype` system, not to the preamble entered by the user.

Debugging column type declarations To display a list of all currently active `\newcolumntype` definitions on the terminal, use the `\showcols` command in the preamble.

6.3 Calculating column widths

As described in Appendix A.3, \LaTeX has two distinct modes for setting text: LR mode, in which the text is set in a single line, and paragraph mode, in which text is broken into lines of a specified length. This distinction strongly influences the design of the \LaTeX table commands. The `l`, `c`, or `r` column types as well as the `w` and `W` types added

by the array package, specify table entries set in LR mode, whereas p and the array package m and b types specify table entries set in paragraph mode.

The need to specify the width of paragraph mode entries in advance sometimes causes difficulties when setting tables, especially when the table also contains columns whose width is calculated by L^AT_EX. We describe several approaches that calculate the required column widths based on the required total width of the table and/or the table contents.

If we can predefine all columns, e.g., if we have only paragraph mode columns, then calculating the necessary column widths is a matter of a simple formula: subtract from the available space the amount taken up by the column gaps and divide that by the number of columns we want.

As an example we define the environment `tabularc` that can generate a table with a defined width (first argument) having a number of p columns (second argument) with equal width matching the total width of the table. This code uses `\dimeval` for the calculation discussed in Appendix A.2.5 on page 657; alternatively, we could have used the `calc` package (from Appendix A.5.2, page 687).

*Explicit calculation
of column widths*

The number of columns (let us call it x) is used to calculate the actual width of each column by subtracting two x times the column separation and $(x + 1)$ times the width of the rules from the width of the table. The remaining distance is divided by x to obtain the width of a single column. The contents of the columns are centered, and hyphenation of the first word is allowed. Because of `\centering`, we have to use the command `\tabularnewline` in the table body, as discussed in Section 6.2.2. The alternative would have been to add `\arraybackslash` in the preamble declaration.

Instead of always using p columns, we could have used different column specifiers (including w or W), the only requirement being that it is a specifier that needs a width.

```
\usepackage{array}
\newenvironment{tabularc}[2]
  {\begin{tabular*}{#1}{*{#2}{|>\centering\hspace{0pt}}}%
   p{\dimeval{#1/(#2)-\tabcolsep*2-\arrayrulewidth*(#2+1)/(#2)}}|}}
  {\end{tabular*}}
\begin{tabularc}{300pt}{3}    \hline
Material in column one & column two & This is column three \tabularnewline\hline
... further text omitted ...
```

6-3-1

Material in column one	column two	This is column three
Column one again	and column two	This is column three
Once more column one	column two	Last time column three

Calculating column widths in this way gives you full control over the amount of space allocated to each column. Furthermore, after the calculation has been done, the table can be set in a single run without any trial typesetting, which introduces its own set of complications.

Unfortunately, it is difficult to incorporate information depending on the contents of the table into the calculation. For example, if some columns should be as wide as their widest entry, e.g., use the `c` column type, then we do not know beforehand how wide this column is going to be, and thus a calculation like the above becomes impossible to do in advance.

Three packages implement different algorithms that set the table multiple times so as to allocate widths to certain columns. The first, `tabularx`, essentially tries to allocate space equally between specified paragraph mode columns. The second, `tabulary`, tries to allocate more space to columns that contain “more data”. Finally, `widetable` provides an environment with the same arguments as `tabular*` but attempts to place the extra space into the columns instead of between columns.

6.3.1 `tabularx` — Automatic calculation of column widths

The package `tabularx` (by David Carlisle) implements a version of the `tabular*` environment in which the widths of certain columns are calculated automatically depending on the total width of the table. The columns whose widths are automatically calculated are denoted in the preamble by the `X` qualifier. The latter column specification is converted to `p{some value}` once the correct column width has been calculated.

*Commands typically
used to typeset the X
columns*

Narrow columns often require a special format, which may be achieved using the `>` syntax. Thus, you may give a specification like `>{\small}X`. Another format that is useful in narrow columns is ragged right. As noted earlier, one must use the command `\tabularnewline` to end the table row if the last entry in a row is being set ragged right. This specification may be saved in a new column specifier (perhaps additionally adding `\arraybackslash` to make `\\` denote the end of a row again). You may then use this column specifier in a `tabularx` preamble argument.

The first example shows as a table with three multiline columns of equal width using the mentioned adjustments.

```
\usepackage{tabularx}
\newcolumntype{Y}{>{\small\raggedright\arraybackslash}X}
\noindent\begin{tabularx}{100mm}{|Y|Y|Y|} \hline
The Two Gentlemen of Verona & The Taming of the Shrew &
... further text omitted ...
```

6-3-2

The Two Gentlemen of Verona	The Taming of the Shrew	The Comedy of Errors
Love’s Labour’s Lost	A Midsummer Night’s Dream	The Merchant of Venice
The Merry Wives of Windsor	Much Ado About Nothing	As You Like It
Twelfth Night	Troilus and Cressida	Measure for Measure
All’s Well That Ends Well	Pericles, Prince of Tyre	The Winter’s Tale
Cymbeline	The Tempest	

Changing the *width* argument to specify a width of `\linewidth` then produces the following table layout:

```
\usepackage{tabularx}
\newcolumnntype{Y}{>{\small\raggedright\arraybackslash}X}
\noindent\begin{tabularx}{\linewidth}{|Y|Y|Y|} \hline
The Two Gentlemen of Verona & The Taming of the Shrew & & \hline
& The Comedy of Errors & \\\hline
Love's Labour's Lost & & A Midsummer Night's Dream & &
... further text omitted ...
```

6-3-3

The Two Gentlemen of Verona	The Taming of the Shrew	The Comedy of Errors
Love's Labour's Lost	A Midsummer Night's Dream	The Merchant of Venice
The Merry Wives of Windsor	Much Ado About Nothing	As You Like It
Twelfth Night	Troilus and Cressida	Measure for Measure
All's Well That Ends Well	Pericles, Prince of Tyre	The Winter's Tale
Cymbeline	The Tempest	

The X columns are set using a p column, which corresponds to `\parbox[t]`. However, you may want to set the columns with, for example, an m column corresponding to `\parbox[c]`. It is impossible to change the column type using the > syntax, so another system is provided. The command `\tabularxcolumn` can be defined as a macro, with one argument, which expands to the `tabular` preamble specification to be used for X henceforth. When the command is executed, the supplied argument determines the actual column width.

The default definition is `\newcommand\tabularxcolumn[1]{p{#1}}`. A possible alternative definition is

```
\renewcommand\tabularxcolumn[1]{>{\small}m{#1}}
```


Normally, all X columns in a single table are set to the same width. It is nevertheless possible to make `tabularx` set them to different widths. A preamble like the following

Adjusting the column widths

```
>{\setlength\hsize{.5\hsize}}X>{\setlength\hsize{1.5\hsize}}X
```

specifies two columns; the second column will be three times as wide as the first. However, when using this method, two rules should be obeyed:

- The sum of the widths of all X columns should remain unchanged. In the above example, the new widths should add up to the width of two standard X columns.
- `\multicolumn` entries that cross such adjusted X columns should not be used.

 *Restrictions to obey*

Of course, for such lengthy input, you should define your own column specifier, e.g., `?`, as we do in the next example.

```
\usepackage{tabularx} \tracingtabularx
\newcolumntype{?}[1]
    >{\setlength\hsize{#1\hsize}}X}
\begin{tabularx}{\linewidth}
    { | ?{.85} | ?{1.15} | }
    Superconsciousness is a long word &
    Moge\~lijk\~heden en hoop \\\
    Some text in column one &
    A somewhat longer text in column two \\\
\end{tabularx}
```

Superconsciousness is a long word	Mogelijkheden en hoop
Some text in column one	A somewhat longer text in column two

6-3-4

Tracing tabularx calculations

If a `\tracingtabularx` declaration is made, say, in the document preamble, then all following `tabularx` environments print information to the terminal and to the log file about column widths as they repeatedly reset the tables to find the correct widths. For instance, the last example produced the following log:

```
Package tabularx Warning: Target width: \linewidth = 207.0pt.

(tabularx) Table Width Column Width X Columns
(tabularx) 439.19998pt 207.0pt 3
(tabularx) 206.99998pt 90.90001pt 2
(tabularx) Reached target.
```

6.3.2 tabulary—Column widths based on content

An alternative algorithm for determining column widths is provided by the `tabulary` package (also written by David Carlisle) providing the `tabulary` environment. It is most suitable for cases in which the column widths must be calculated based on the content of the table. This often arises when you use \LaTeX to typeset documents originating as SGML/XML or HTML, which typically employ a different table model in which multiline material does not have a prespecified width and the layout is left more to the formatter.

The `tabulary` package provides the column types shown in Table 6.3 on the facing page plus those provided by the `array` package in Table 6.2 on page 439, and any other preamble options defined via `\newcolumntype`.

```
\begin{tabulary}{width}[pos]{col-spec} rows \end{tabulary}
```

The main feature of this package is its provision of versions of the `p` column specifier in which the width of the column is determined automatically depending on the table contents. The following example is rather artificial because the table has only one row. Nevertheless, it demonstrates that the aim of the column width allocation made by `tabulary` is to achieve equal row height. Normally, of course, the same row cannot

<i>Specifier</i>	<i>Effect</i>
J	Justified p column set to some width to be determined
L	Flush left p column set to some width to be determined
R	Flush right p column set to some width to be determined
C	Centered p column set to some width to be determined

Table 6.3: The preamble options in the tabulary package

hold the largest entry of each column, but in many cases of tabular material, the material in each cell of a given column has similar characteristics. In those situations the width allocation appears to provide reasonable results.

[illegible]

The tabulary package has two length parameters, `\tymax` and `\tymin`, which control the allocation of widths. By default, widths are allocated to each L, C, R, or J column in proportion to the natural width of the longest entry in each column. To determine this width `tabulary` always sets the table twice. In the first pass the data in the L, C, R, and J columns are set in LR mode (similar to data in columns specified by the standard preamble options such as `c`). Typically, the paragraphs that are contained in these columns are set on a single line, and the length of this line is measured. The table is then typeset a second time to produce the final result, with the widths of the columns being set as if with a `p` preamble option and a width proportional to the natural lengths recorded on the first pass.

To stop very narrow columns from being too “squeezed” by this process, any columns that are narrower than `\tymin` are set to their natural widths. This length may be set with `\setlength` and is arbitrarily initialized to 10pt. If you know that a column is narrow, it may be preferable to use, say, `c` rather than `C` so that the `tabulary` mechanism is never invoked on that column, and the column is set to its natural width.

Similarly, one very large entry can force its column to be too wide. To prevent this problem, all columns with natural length greater than `\tymax` (as measured when the entries are set in LR mode) are set to the same width (with the proportion being taken as if the natural length were *equal* to `\tymax`). This width is initially set to twice the text width.

Controlling the column width allocation

- `tabularx` attempts to distribute space equally among the X columns to achieve the desired width, whereas `tabulary` attempts to allocate greater widths to columns with larger entries.

6.3.4 Managing tables with wide entries

If a table has spanning entries that are wider than the columns they span, the white space between these narrow columns is not evenly distributed. For instance, the following table has a rather wide first `\multicolumn` row, above a series of narrow columns. As a result the space between the last two columns receives all the excess white space, which is not a very pleasing result.

6-3-7

This is a wide heading line			
C1	C2	C3	
2.1	2.2	2.3	
3.1	3.2	3.3	

```

\begin{tabular}{ccc}
\multicolumn{3}{c}{This is a wide heading line} \\
C1 & C2 & C3 \\
2.1 & 2.2 & 2.3 \\
3.1 & 3.2 & 3.3
\end{tabular}

```

To correct this defect you can put some rubber length in front of each column with the help of the `\extracolsep` command. The actual value of the rubber length is not important, as long as it is wide enough and can shrink to just fill the needed space. With this approach you must, of course, specify a total width for the table. We could use `\linewidth` and make the table full width, but here we can obtain a better result by precalculating the width of the wide entry and specifying it as the total width of the `tabular*`. Using the `calc` package we can do this calculation even in the first argument of the environment.

6-3-8

This is a wide heading line			
C1	C2	C3	
2.1	2.2	2.3	
3.1	3.2	3.3	

```

\usepackage{array,calc}
\begin{tabular*}{\widthof{This is a wide heading line}
+ 2\tabcolsep}
{!\extracolsep{4in minus 4in}} ccc
\multicolumn{3}{c}{This is a wide heading line} \\
C1 & C2 & C3 \\
2.1 & 2.2 & 2.3 \\
3.1 & 3.2 & 3.3
\end{tabular*}

```

To achieve correct alignment, we needed to take into account the `\tabcolsep` added before the first and after the last column. Alternatively, we could have suppressed the inter-column spaces at the left and right of the `tabular*` by using `@{}` expressions.

6.3.5 widetable — An alternative to tabular*

The standard \LaTeX `tabular*` environment produces a table of a predefined width by spreading the columns apart, i.e., adding extra flexible space between the columns. This space has to be specified with an `\extracolsep` declaration within an `@` or `!` specifier in the table preamble. This works well enough for tables without vertical rules but looks somewhat strange if such rules are present because the extra space is added only on the right side of the rules separating two columns.

Below is a variation of Example 6-3-3 from page 449 (used there with `tabularx`) to allow for comparison. This time we explicitly ask for two 32mm wide p-columns followed by a centered one, and, as you can see, the space distribution looks rather bad because of the rules. We also add a heading line to show what happens with a cell spanning two columns.

```
\usepackage{array}
\begin{tabular*}{\linewidth}{@{\extracolsep{\fill}}
    *{2}{|>{\small\raggedright\arraybackslash}p{32mm}}|c|}
\hline\multicolumn{2}{|c|}{The p-columns} &
    Centered column \\ \hline
The Two Gentlemen of Verona & The Taming of the Shrew &
    The Comedy of Errors \\ \hline
Love's Labour's Lost & A Midsummer Night's Dream &
    The Merchant of Venice \\ \hline
The Merry Wives of Windsor & Much Ado About Nothing &
    As You Like It \\ \hline
Twelfth Night & Troilus and Cressida &
... further text omitted ...
```

6-3-9

The p-columns		Centered column
The Two Gentlemen of Verona	The Taming of the Shrew	The Comedy of Errors
Love's Labour's Lost	A Midsummer Night's Dream	The Merchant of Venice
The Merry Wives of Windsor	Much Ado About Nothing	As You Like It
Twelfth Night	Troilus and Cressida	...

To resolve this problem Claudio Beccari wrote the `widetable` package. It defines the environment `widetabular` that takes the same arguments as `tabular*` but adds the necessary white space equally on the left and right of each column without the need to issue an `\extracolsep` declaration in the table preamble.

It achieves this by typesetting the table more than once¹ with different settings of `\tabcolsep` and then chooses a value for this parameter that results in the table being set to the desired width. This calculation may go wrong if you use @ column specifiers that suppress the insertion of `\tabcolsep` or complicated tables with a lot of `\multicolumn` commands, because spanning columns means that such rows have fewer `\tabcolsep` spaces inside.

In contrast to `tabularx` and other packages, `widetable` does not automatically load the `array` package. Thus, if you want to use the extended column specifiers as we do in the next example, you need to explicitly load that package too.

¹This has the usual implications; e.g., `\verb` is not supported within the cells, and commands with global side effects (such as incrementing a counter) should also be avoided.

```
\usepackage{array,widetable}
\begin{widetabular}{\linewidth}
    {*{2}{|>\small\raggedright\arraybackslash}p{32mm}}|c|}
\hline\multicolumn{2}{|c|}{The p-columns} & Centered column\\ \hline\hline
... further text omitted ...
```

6-3-10

The p-columns		Centered column
The Two Gentlemen of Verona	The Taming of the Shrew	The Comedy of Errors
Love's Labour's Lost	A Midsummer Night's Dream	The Merchant of Venice
The Merry Wives of Windsor	Much Ado About Nothing	As You Like It
Twelfth Night	Troilus and Cressida	...

Instead of making a table somewhat wider by specifying a desired width, it is also possible within limits to shrink a table this way. This can be useful, for example, if the table is just a little bit wider than the available space, e.g., the `\linewidth`.

For this to work, the table needs enough columns so that there is sufficient white space that can be compressed. The highest amount of compression that is possible is shrinking the available white space to zero (which may or may not be acceptable depending on the table content). Below we asked for 287pt, which is roughly 6 points more than the table width without any white space between columns. This means that we get about 1 point on each side of a column. Incidentally, if you ask for more shrink than is available, then a warning is generated, and the table is set at its natural width.

```
\usepackage{array,widetable}
\begin{widetabular}{287pt}
    {*{2}{|>\small\raggedright\arraybackslash}p{32mm}}|c|}
\hline\multicolumn{2}{|c|}{The p-columns} & Centered column\\ \hline\hline
... further text omitted ...
```

6-3-11

The p-columns		Centered column
The Two Gentlemen of Verona	The Taming of the Shrew	The Comedy of Errors
Love's Labour's Lost	A Midsummer Night's Dream	The Merchant of Venice
The Merry Wives of Windsor	Much Ado About Nothing	As You Like It
Twelfth Night	Troilus and Cressida	...

The above examples show that using `\multicolumn` appears to work, but as mentioned more complicated scenarios using spanned cells may throw the package off track, so you have to watch out for this.

6.4 Multipage tabular material

With Leslie Lamport's original implementation, a `tabular` environment must always fit on one page. If it becomes too large, the text overwrites the page's bottom margin, and you get an `Overfull \vbox` message.

Two major packages are available to construct tables longer than one page, `supertabular` and `longtable`. They share a similar functionality but use rather different syntax and also produce noticeably different results. The `longtable` package uses a more complicated mechanism, working with TeX's output routine to obtain optimal page breaks and to preserve the width of columns across all pages of a table. However, this mechanism may require the document to be processed several times before the correct cell widths are calculated. It also means that the package is incompatible with other packages manipulating the output routine.¹

*Multipage tables in
multicolumn
typesetting*

The `supertabular` package essentially breaks the table into a sequence of page-sized `tabular` environments, and each page is then typeset separately. This approach does not require multiple passes and works in a larger range of circumstances, e.g., two-column or multi-column mode.

Neither `supertabular` nor `longtable` supports the X-notation of `tabularx` for automatically adjusting the column width to fit a given table width. This is provided by the `xltable` package, which combines the features of `longtable` and `tabularx`.

6.4.1 `supertabular` — Making multipage tabulars

The package `supertabular` (originally created by Theo Jurriens and revised by Johannes Braams) defines the environment `supertabular`.

```
\begin{supertabular}{col-spec}          rows \end{supertabular}
\begin{supertabular*}{width}{col-spec}  rows \end{supertabular*}
\begin{mpsupertabular}{col-spec}        rows \end{mpsupertabular}
\begin{mpsupertabular*}{width}{col-spec} rows \end{mpsupertabular*}
```

It uses the `tabular` environment internally but it evaluates the amount of used space every time it encounters a `\\` command. When this amount reaches the value of `\textheight`, the package automatically inserts an `\end{tabular}` command, starts a new page, and inserts the table head on the new page, continuing the `tabular` environment. This means that the widths of the columns, and hence the width of the complete table, can vary across pages.

Three variant environments are also defined. The `supertabular*` environment uses `tabular*` internally, and takes a mandatory *width* argument to specify the width of the table. The `mpsupertabular` and `mpsupertabular*` environments have the same syntax as `supertabular` and `supertabular*`, respectively, but wrap the table portion on each page in a `minipage` environment. This allows the use of the `\footnote` command inside the tables, with the footnote text being printed at the end of the relevant page.

¹For example, `longtable` cannot be used inside a `multicols` environment.

Inside a `supertabular` environment new lines are defined as usual by `\\` commands. All column definition commands can be used, including `@{...}` and `p{...}`. If the `array` package is loaded along with `supertabular`, the additional tabular preamble options may be used. You cannot, however, use the optional positioning arguments, like `t` and `b`, that can be specified with `\begin{tabular}` and `\begin{tabular*}`.

Several new commands are available for use with `supertabular` as described below. Each of these commands should be used before the `supertabular` environment, because they affect all following `supertabular` environments. In particular, this means that once used you need to alter them for each table!

```
\tablehead{rows}      \tablefirsthead{rows}
```

The argument to `\tablehead` contains the rows of the table to be repeated at the top of every page. If `\tablefirsthead` is also included, the first heading uses these rows in preference to the rows specified by `\tablehead`. The argument may contain full rows (ended by `\\`) as well as inter-row material like `\hline`.

```
\tabletail{rows}      \tablelasttail{rows}
```

These commands specify material to be inserted at the end of each page of the table. If `\tablelasttail` is used, these rows appear at the end of the table in preference to the rows specified by `\tabletail`.

```
\topcaption[lot caption]{caption}      \bottomcaption[lot caption]{caption}
\tablecaption[lot caption]{caption}
```

These commands specify a caption for the `supertabular`, either at the top or at the bottom of the table. The optional argument has the same use as the optional argument in the standard `\caption` command — namely, it specifies the form of the caption to appear in the list of tables. When `\tablecaption` is used, the caption is placed at the default location, which is at the top. This default may be changed within a package or class file by using the declaration `\@topcaptionfalse`.

The format of the caption may be customized using the `caption` package, as shown in Example 6-4-4 on page 462.

```
\usepackage{supertabular}
\tablecaption{The ISOGRK3 entity set}
\tablehead{\textbf{Entity}&\textbf{Unicode Name}&\textbf{Unicode}\\ \hline}
\tabletail{\hline \multicolumn{3}{r}{\emph{Continued on next page}}\\}
\tablelasttail{\hline}
\begin{supertabular}{lll}
alpha          & GREEK SMALL LETTER ALPHA          & 03B1\\
beta           & GREEK SMALL LETTER BETA           & 03B2\\
chi            & GREEK SMALL LETTER CHI            & 03C7\\
Delta          & GREEK CAPITAL LETTER DELTA        & 0394\\
... further text omitted ...
```

6-4-1

Table 1: The ISOGRK3 entity set

Entity	Unicode Name	Unicode
alpha	GREEK SMALL LETTER ALPHA	03B1
beta	GREEK SMALL LETTER BETA	03B2
chi	GREEK SMALL LETTER CHI	03C7
Delta	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER DELTA	0394
delta	GREEK SMALL LETTER DELTA	03B4
epsi	GREEK SMALL LETTER EPSILON	03B5
epsis	GREEK LUNATE EPSILON SYMBOL	03F5
epsiv	GREEK SMALL LETTER EPSILON	03B5
eta	GREEK SMALL LETTER ETA	03B7
Gamma	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER GAMMA	0393
gamma	GREEK SMALL LETTER GAMMA	03B3
gammad	GREEK SMALL LETTER DIGAMMA	03DD
iota	GREEK SMALL LETTER IOTA	03B9
kappa	GREEK SMALL LETTER KAPPA	03BA
kappav	GREEK KAPPA SYMBOL	03F0
Lambda	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER LAMDA	039B
lambda	GREEK SMALL LETTER LAMDA	03BB
mu	GREEK SMALL LETTER MU	03BC
nu	GREEK SMALL LETTER NU	03BD
Omega	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER OMEGA	03A9

Continued on next page

Entity	Unicode Name	Unicode
omega	GREEK SMALL LETTER OMEGA	03C9
Phi	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER PHI	03A6
phis	GREEK PHI SYMBOL	03D5
phiv	GREEK SMALL LETTER PHI	03C6
Pi	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER PI	03A0
pi	GREEK SMALL LETTER PI	03C0
piv	GREEK PI SYMBOL	03D6
Psi	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER PSI	03A8
psi	GREEK SMALL LETTER PSI	03C8
rho	GREEK SMALL LETTER RHO	03C1
rhov	GREEK RHO SYMBOL	03F1
Sigma	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER SIGMA	03A3
sigma	GREEK SMALL LETTER SIGMA	03C3
sigmav	GREEK SMALL LETTER FINAL SIGMA	03C2
tau	GREEK SMALL LETTER TAU	03C4
Theta	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER THETA	0398
thetas	GREEK SMALL LETTER THETA	03B8
thetav	GREEK THETA SYMBOL	03D1
Upsi	GREEK UPSILON WITH HOOK SYMBOL	03D2
upsi	GREEK SMALL LETTER UPSILON	03C5
Xi	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER XI	039E
xi	GREEK SMALL LETTER XI	03BE
zeta	GREEK SMALL LETTER ZETA	03B6

`\shrinkheight{length}`

The `supertabular` environment maintains an estimate of the amount of space left on the current page, and depending on the table content this estimate is sometimes wrong. The `\shrinkheight` command, which must appear at the start of a table row, may be used to reduce (or enlarge if given a negative length) this estimate. In this way it may be used to control the page-breaking decisions made by `supertabular`.

For example, in the previous and the next example it was necessary to add `\shrinkheight{-40pt}` near the end of the table to avoid `supertabular` starting a third page. On the next example we also used it on the first page to make this one line longer.

To better understand why `supertabular` decides to start a new page (and what value for `\shrinkheight` to use to affect it) you can add the package option `debugshow` or issue `\sttraceon` in front of the environment of interest. To turn off tracing again `\sttraceoff` can be used.

The width of a `supertabular` environment can be fixed to a given width, such as the width of the text, `\textwidth`. In the example below, in addition to specifying `supertabular*`, a rubber length has been introduced between the last two columns that allows the table to be stretched to the specified width. As usual with `supertabular`, each page of the table is typeset separately. The example demonstrates that the result may have different spacings between the columns on different pages.

Example of the
`supertabular*`
environment

```
\usepackage{array,supertabular}
\tablecaption{The ISOGRK3 entity set}
\tablefirsthead
{\textbf{Entity}&\textbf{Unicode Name}&\textbf{Unicode}}\hline
```

```
\tablehead{\textbf{Entity}&\textbf{Unicode Name}&\textbf{Unicode}\\ \hline}
\tabletail{\hline \multicolumn{3}{r}{\emph{Continued on next page}}\\}
\tablelasttail{\hline}
\centering
\begin{supertabular*}{\textwidth}{ll!{\extracolsep{\fill}}l}
\shrinkheight{-12pt} % tell supertabular to add one additional line to first page
alpha      & GREEK SMALL LETTER ALPHA      & 03B1\\
beta       & GREEK SMALL LETTER BETA       & 03B2\\
chi        & GREEK SMALL LETTER CHI        & 03C7\\
Delta      & GREEK CAPITAL LETTER DELTA    & 0394\\
delta      & GREEK SMALL LETTER DELTA      & 03B4\\
```

6-4-2 ... further text omitted ...

Page 1			Page 2		
alpha	GREEK SMALL LETTER ALPHA	03B1	phis	GREEK PHI SYMBOL	03D5
beta	GREEK SMALL LETTER BETA	03B2	phiv	GREEK SMALL LETTER PHI	03C6
chi	GREEK SMALL LETTER CHI	03C7	Pi	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER PI	03A0
Delta	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER DELTA	0394	pi	GREEK SMALL LETTER PI	03C0
delta	GREEK SMALL LETTER DELTA	03B4	piv	GREEK PI SYMBOL	03D6
epsi	GREEK SMALL LETTER EPSILON	03B5	Psi	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER PSI	03A8
epsis	GREEK LUNATE EPSILON SYMBOL	03F5	psi	GREEK SMALL LETTER PSI	03C8
epsiv	GREEK SMALL LETTER EPSILON	03B5	rho	GREEK SMALL LETTER RHO	03C1
eta	GREEK SMALL LETTER ETA	03B7	rhov	GREEK RHO SYMBOL	03F1
Gamma	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER GAMMA	0393	Sigma	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER SIGMA	03A3
gamma	GREEK SMALL LETTER GAMMA	03B3	sigma	GREEK SMALL LETTER SIGMA	03C3
gammad	GREEK SMALL LETTER DIGAMMA	03DD	sigmav	GREEK SMALL LETTER FINAL SIGMA	03C2
iota	GREEK SMALL LETTER IOTA	03B9	tau	GREEK SMALL LETTER TAU	03C4
kappa	GREEK SMALL LETTER KAPPA	03BA	Theta	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER THETA	0398
kappav	GREEK KAPPA SYMBOL	03F0	thetas	GREEK SMALL LETTER THETA	03B8
Lambda	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER LAMDA	039B	thetav	GREEK THETA SYMBOL	03D1
lambda	GREEK SMALL LETTER LAMDA	03BB	Upsi	GREEK UPSILON WITH HOOK SYMBOL	03D2
mu	GREEK SMALL LETTER MU	03BC	upsi	GREEK SMALL LETTER UPSILON	03C5
nu	GREEK SMALL LETTER NU	03BD	Xi	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER XI	039E
Omega	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER OMEGA	03A9	xi	GREEK SMALL LETTER XI	03BE
omega	GREEK SMALL LETTER OMEGA	03C9	zeta	GREEK SMALL LETTER ZETA	03B6
Phi	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER PHI	03A6			

6.4.2 longtable — Alternative multipage tabulars

As pointed out at the beginning of this section, for more complex long tables, where you want to control the width of the table across page boundaries, the package longtable (by David Carlisle, with contributions from David Kastrup) should be considered. Like the supertabular environment, it shares some features with the table environment. In particular it uses the same counter, table, and has a similar \caption command. The \listoftables command lists tables produced by either the table or longtable environment.

The main difference between the supertabular and longtable environments is that the latter saves the information about the width of each longtable environment in the auxiliary .aux file. It then uses this information on a subsequent run to

Use of the .aux file

identify the widest column widths needed for the table in question. The use of the .aux file means that care should be taken when using the longtable in conjunction with the \nofiles command. One effect of \nofiles is to suppress the writing of the .aux file, so this command should not be used until after the final edits of that table have been made and the package has recorded the optimal column widths in the auxiliary file.

To compare the two packages, Example 6-4-1 on page 457 is repeated here, but now uses longtable rather than supertabular. You can see that the width of the table is identical on both pages (the left and right parts of the picture). Note that in longtable, most of the table specification is *within* the longtable environment; in supertabular the specification of the table headings occurs via commands executed *before* the supertabular environment.

```
\usepackage{longtable}
\begin{longtable}{lll}
\caption{The ISOGRK3 entity set} \ \ \textbf{Entity} &
\textbf{Unicode Name} & \textbf{Unicode} \ \ \hline \endfirsthead
\caption[]{}{The ISOGRK3 entity set (\emph{cont.})} \ \ \textbf{Entity} &
\textbf{Unicode Name} & \textbf{Unicode} \ \ \hline \endhead
\hline \multicolumn{3}{r}{\emph{Continued on next page}} \ \ \endfoot
\hline\endlastfoot
alpha & GREEK SMALL LETTER ALPHA & 03B1\\
beta & GREEK SMALL LETTER BETA & 03B2\\
chi & GREEK SMALL LETTER CHI & 03C7\\
... further text omitted ...
```

6-4-3

Page 1

Table 1: The ISOGRK3 entity set

Entity	Unicode Name	Unicode
alpha	GREEK SMALL LETTER ALPHA	03B1
beta	GREEK SMALL LETTER BETA	03B2
chi	GREEK SMALL LETTER CHI	03C7
Delta	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER DELTA	0394
delta	GREEK SMALL LETTER DELTA	03B4
epsi	GREEK SMALL LETTER EPSILON	03B5
epsis	GREEK LUNATE EPSILON SYMBOL	03F5
epsiv	GREEK SMALL LETTER EPSILON	03B5
eta	GREEK SMALL LETTER ETA	03B7
Gamma	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER GAMMA	0393
gamma	GREEK SMALL LETTER GAMMA	03B3
gammad	GREEK SMALL LETTER DIGAMMA	03DD
iota	GREEK SMALL LETTER IOTA	03B9
kappa	GREEK SMALL LETTER KAPPA	03BA
kappav	GREEK KAPPA SYMBOL	03F0
Lambda	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER LAMDA	039B
lambda	GREEK SMALL LETTER LAMDA	03BB
mu	GREEK SMALL LETTER MU	03BC
nu	GREEK SMALL LETTER NU	03BD
Omega	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER OMEGA	03A9
omega	GREEK SMALL LETTER OMEGA	03C9
Phi	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER PHI	03A6

Continued on next page

Page 1

Page 2

Table 1: The ISOGRK3 entity set (cont.)

Entity	Unicode Name	Unicode
phis	GREEK PHI SYMBOL	03D5
phiv	GREEK SMALL LETTER PHI	03C6
Pi	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER PI	03A0
pi	GREEK SMALL LETTER PI	03C0
piv	GREEK PI SYMBOL	03D6
Psi	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER PSI	03A8
psi	GREEK SMALL LETTER PSI	03C8
rho	GREEK SMALL LETTER RHO	03C1
rhov	GREEK RHO SYMBOL	03F1
Sigma	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER SIGMA	03A3
sigma	GREEK SMALL LETTER SIGMA	03C3
sigmav	GREEK SMALL LETTER FINAL SIGMA	03C2
tau	GREEK SMALL LETTER TAU	03C4
Theta	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER THETA	0398
thetas	GREEK SMALL LETTER THETA	03B8
thetav	GREEK THETA SYMBOL	03D1
Upsi	GREEK UPSILON WITH HOOK SYMBOL	03D2
upsi	GREEK SMALL LETTER UPSILON	03C5
Xi	GREEK CAPITAL LETTER XI	039E
xi	GREEK SMALL LETTER XI	03BE
zeta	GREEK SMALL LETTER ZETA	03B6

Page 2

```
\begin{longtable}[align]{col-spec} rows \end{longtable}
```

The syntax of the `longtable` environment is modeled on that of the `tabular` environment. The main difference is that the optional *align* argument specifies *horizontal* alignment rather than vertical alignment as is the case with `tabular`.

The *align* argument may have the value `[c]`, `[l]`, or `[r]` to specify centering, left, or right alignment of the table, respectively. If this optional argument is omitted, then the alignment of the table is controlled by the two length parameters, `\LTleft` and `\LTright`. They have default values of `\fill`, so by default tables are centered.

Horizontal alignment

Any length can be specified for these two parameters, but at least one of them should be a rubber length so that it fills up the width of the page, unless rubber lengths are added between the columns using the `\extracolsep` command. For instance, a table can be set flush left using the definitions

```
\setlength\LTleft{0pt} \setlength\LTright{\fill}
```

or just by specifying `\begin{longtable}[l]`.

You can, for example, use the `\LTleft` and `\LTright` parameters to typeset a multipage table filling the full width of the page. Example 6-4-2 on page 459, which used `supertabular*`, may be typeset using the packages `array` and `longtable` and the declarations shown below:

Using parameters to control table width

```
\setlength\LTleft{0pt} \setlength\LTright{0pt}
\begin{longtable}{ll!{\extracolsep{\fill}}l}
```

In general, if `\LTleft` and `\LTright` are fixed lengths, the table is set to the width of `\textwidth - \LTleft - \LTright`.

Before and after the table, `longtable` inserts vertical space controlled by the length parameters `\LTpre` and `\LTpost`. Both of them default to the length `\bigskipamount` but may be changed using `\setlength`.

Vertical space around table

Each row in the table is ended with the `\\` command. As in the standard `tabular` environment, the command `\tabularnewline` is also available; it is useful if `\\` has been redefined by a command such as `\raggedright`. The star form `*` may also be used, which inhibits a page break at this line break. In a `tabular` environment, this star form is accepted but has the same effect as `\\`. Conversely, a `\\` command may be immediately followed by a `\newpage` command, which forces a page break at that point.

Table row commands

If a table row is terminated with `\kill` rather than `\\`, then the row is not typeset. Instead, the entries are used when determining the widths of the table columns. This action is similar to that of the `\kill` command in the `tabbing` environment.

The main syntactic difference between the `longtable` package and the `supertabular` package is that in `longtable`, rows to be repeated on each page as the table head or foot are declared *within* the environment body, rather than before the environment as in `supertabular`. As shown in Example 6-4-3 on the facing page, the table head and foot are specified by replacing the final `\\` command by one of the commands listed

Rows used as the table head and foot

below. Note that all of these commands, including those specifying the foot of the table, must come at the *start* of the environment. The command `\endhead` finishes the rows that will appear at the top of every page. The command `\endfirsthead` ends the declaration of rows for the start of the table. If this command is not used, then the rows specified by `\endhead` are used at the start of the table. Similarly, `\endfoot` finishes the rows that appear at the bottom of every page, and `\endlastfoot` — if used — ends the rows to be displayed at the end of the table.

`\caption*[short title]{full title}`

The `\caption` command and its variant `\caption*` are essentially equivalent to writing a special `\multicolumn` entry

```
\multicolumn{n}{p{\LTcapwidth}}{...}
```

where *n* is the number of columns of the table. The width of the caption can be controlled by redefining the parameter `\LTcapwidth`. That is, you can write `\setlength\LTcapwidth{width}` in the document preamble. The default value is 4in. As with the `\caption` command in the `figure` and `table` environments, the optional argument specifies the text to appear in the list of tables if it is different from the text to appear in the caption.

When captions on later pages should differ from those on the first page, you should place the `\caption` command with the full text in the first heading and put a subsidiary caption using `\caption[]{text}` in the main heading, because (in this case) no entry is made in the list of tables. Alternatively, if the table number should not be repeated each time, you can use the `\caption*` command. As with the `table` environment, cross-referencing the table in the text is possible with the `\label` command.

By default, the caption is set in a style based on the caption style of the tables in standard L^AT_EX's article class. If the caption package (described in Section 7.4.1) is used, then it is easy to customize `longtable` and `table` captions, keeping the style of captions consistent between these two environments.

Table 1: <i>A standard table</i>	<code>\usepackage{longtable,supertabular}</code> <code>\usepackage[font=it,labelfont=bf]{caption}</code> <code>\begin{table}[t]\centering</code> <code>\caption{A standard table}</code> <code>\begin{tabular}{ccc} 1 & 2 & 3 \end{tabular}</code> <code>\end{table}</code>
Table 2: <i>A longtable</i>	<code>\begin{longtable}{ccc}\caption{A longtable}\\</code> <code>1 & 2 & 3 \end{longtable}</code>
Table 3: <i>A supertabular</i>	<code>\centering</code> <code>\tablecaption{A supertabular}</code> <code>\begin{supertabular}{ccc} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ \end{supertabular}</code>

6-4-4

The `longtable` environment always increases the table counter regardless of whether or not you use a `\caption` inside the table. This allows you to always reference the table by number by placing a `\label` inside, even if no number is shown. However, if you use other tables with captions, it looks odd if there are gaps in the numbering, especially if they also show up in the list of tables. To avoid this, you can decrease the number before starting the environment, but if you also use `hyperref`, this generates an anchor with an identical name to an earlier table, and you get a warning about this. Alternatively, if you also load the `caption` package, you can use `longtable*`, which avoids the problem with `hyperref`. In that case `\caption` is not allowed inside the table, but you can still use `\caption*`.

*Updates to the
table counter*

You can use footnote commands inside the `longtable` environment. The footnote text appears at the bottom of each page. The footnote counter is not reset at the beginning of the table but uses the standard footnote numbering employed in the rest of the document. If this result is not desired, then you can set the footnote counter to zero before the start of each table and then reset it at the end of the table if following footnotes must be numbered in the original sequence.

*Footnotes in
longtable*

To enable \TeX to set very long multipage tables, it is necessary to break them up into smaller chunks so that \TeX does not have to keep everything in memory at one time. By default, `longtable` uses a value of 20 rows per chunk, which can be changed with a command such as `\setcounter{LTchunksize}{100}`. These chunks do not affect page breaking. When \TeX has a lot of memory available (as it does today), `LTchunksize` can be set to a big number, which usually means that `longtable` is able to determine the final widths in fewer \TeX runs. On most modern \TeX installations `LTchunksize` can safely be increased to accommodate several pages of table in one chunk. Note that `LTchunksize` must be at least as large as the number of rows in each of the head or foot sections.

*Increase
LTchunksize to
reduce number of
 \LaTeX runs required*

6.4.3 xltabular — Marriage of `tabularx` and `longtable`

The `longtable` packages offers multipage tables but has no `X`-column support, while `tabularx` adds this important column specifier but can produce only single-page tables. Thus, it comes to no surprise that people asked for having both at the same time, and already in 1995 this was offered through the `ltablex` package by Anil K. Goel. This package redefined `tabularx` so that it allowed multipage tables at the cost of extra processing time (and some internal feature changes).

As a result, the original behavior of `tabularx` was no longer available; e.g., you could not easily prevent page breaks in such tables, and using the environment then always required two or more \LaTeX runs.

More recently Rolf Niepraschk and Herbert Voß repaired these disadvantages with the package `xltabular`. It defines a new environment `xltabular` that uses the code that Anil K. Goel developed in `ltablex`, but due to using a new environment name, the original `tabularx` is still available. Thus, if you need single-page tables with `X` columns, you can use `tabularx`, and if you (also) need multipage tables, you can now use `xltabular` in the same document, enjoying the benefits of both.

```
\begin{xltabular}[placement]{width}{column-spec} ... \end{xltabular}
```

The arguments offer no real surprise: the two mandatory arguments receive the *width* and the *column-spec* for the table, and in the optional *placement* you can specify how the table is aligned with respect to preceding and following lines of text (allowed values are l, r, or the default c).

As with `longtable`, page breaks occur only between rows and can be prevented at such points by using `*`. In the case of X-columns with a lot of text, that may not be always satisfactory; see the discussion on page 464 for a possible resolution.

```
\usepackage{xltabular}
\begin{xltabular}[c]{.85\linewidth}{11X}
  \caption{A table with \texttt{X}-columns} \endfirsthead
  entry 1.1 & entry 1.2 & entry 1.3, a long text entry needing two lines.\\
  entry 2.1 & entry 2.2 & entry 2.3, a long text entry taking several
                                   lines when set in a narrow column.
\end{xltabular}
```

6-4-5

Page 1	Page 2
<p>Table 1: A table with X-columns</p> <p>entry 1.1 entry 1.2 entry 1.3, a long text entry needing two lines.</p>	<p>entry 2.1 entry 2.2 entry 2.3, a long text entry taking several lines when set in a narrow column.</p>
Page 1	Page 2

In essence `xltabular` is a cross between `tabularx` (using its document-level syntax and adding support for X-columns) and `longtable` (which provides multipage support and features like caption, header, and footer setup). There is one difference, though: the `xltabular` environment increments the table counter only if a table contains a `\caption` command, while `longtable` always increments this counter (which is arguably a design mistake).

6.4.4 Problems with multipage tables (all packages)

Bad interaction
of floating
environments and
multipage tables

When a float occurs on the same page as the start of a multipage table, unexpected results can occur. All multipage table packages have code that attempts to deal with this situation, but in some circumstances tables can float out of sequence. Placing a `\clearpage` command before the table, thereby forcing a page break and flushing out any floats, usually corrects the problem.

p column entries
do not break

Neither the `supertabular` nor the `longtable` (or `xltabular`) environment takes a page break after a line of text *within* a cell. Pages are broken only between table rows (or at `\hline` commands). If your table consists of large multiple line cells set with the `p` preamble option, then \LaTeX may not be able to find a good page break and may leave unwanted white space at the bottom of the page.

The example below has room for six lines of text on each page, but \LaTeX breaks the page between the two table rows, leaving page 1 short.

```
\usepackage{longtable}
\begin{longtable}{llp{43mm}}
  entry 1.1 & entry 1.2 & entry 1.3, a long text entry taking several lines.\\
  entry 2.1 & entry 2.2 & entry 2.3, a long text entry taking several lines
                                when set in a narrow column.
\end{longtable}
```

6-4-6

Page 1	Page 2
entry 1.1 entry 1.2 entry 1.3, a long text entry taking several lines.	entry 2.1 entry 2.2 entry 2.3, a long text entry taking several lines when set in a narrow column.
Page 1	Page 2

For some tables, the table rows form an important logical unit, and the default behavior of not breaking within a row is desired. In other cases, it may be preferable to break the table manually to achieve a more pleasing page break. In the above example, we want to move the first two lines of page 2 to the bottom of page 1.

Noting that \TeX broke the third column entry after the word “several”, we could end the table row at that point by using `\\`, insert blank entries in the first two columns of a new row, and place the remaining portion of the p entry in the final cell of this row. The first part of the split paragraph should be set with `\parfillskip` set to 0pt so that the final line appears full width, just as it would be if it were set as the first two lines of a larger paragraph.

```
\usepackage{longtable}
\begin{longtable}{llp{43mm}}
  entry 1.1 & entry 1.2 & entry 1.3, a long text entry taking several lines.\\
  entry 2.1 & entry 2.2 & \setlength{\parfillskip}{0pt}%
                                entry 2.3, a long text entry taking several\\
                                & & & lines when set in a narrow column.
\end{longtable}
```

6-4-7

Page 1	Page 2
entry 1.1 entry 1.2 entry 1.3, a long text entry taking several lines.	lines when set in a narrow column.
entry 2.1 entry 2.2 entry 2.3, a long text entry taking several	
Page 1	Page 2

This is really a bad manual solution, but right now this is the best you can do with

longtable. If you have only simple requirements, as in the above example, then this is better addressed by using the paracol package discussed in Section 4.3.2 on page 339, but with more complicated column structures that will not be possible.

```
\usepackage{paracol}
\begin{quote}      \columnratio{0.25,0.25} \setlength\parindent{0pt}
\begin{paracol}{3}
  entry 1.1 \switchcolumn entry 1.2 \switchcolumn
    entry 1.3, a long text entry taking several lines.\switchcolumn*
  entry 2.1 \switchcolumn entry 2.2 \switchcolumn
    entry 2.3, a long text entry taking several lines
                                when set in a narrow column.\switchcolumn*
\end{paracol}
\end{quote}
```

6-4-8

Page 1			Page 2		
entry 1.1	entry 1.2	entry 1.3, a long text entry taking several lines.			lines when set in a narrow column.
entry 2.1	entry 2.2	entry 2.3, a long text entry taking several			
Page 1			Page 2		

6.5 Color in tables

The L^AT_EX color commands provided by the color or xcolor package are modeled on the font commands and may be used freely within tables. In particular, it is often convenient to use the array package preamble option > in order to apply a color to a whole column.

Day	Attendance
Monday	57
Tuesday	11
Wednesday	96
Thursday	122
Friday	210
Saturday	198
Sunday	40

```
\usepackage{array,color}
\begin{tabular}{>{\color{blue}\bfseries}lr}
Day & \textcolor{blue}{\bfseries Attendance}\\\hline
Monday& 57\\ Tuesday& 11\\
Wednesday& 96\\ Thursday& 122\\
Friday& 210\\ Saturday& 198\\
Sunday& 40
\end{tabular}
```

6-5-1

It is perhaps more common to use color as a background to highlight certain rows or columns. In this case using the \fcolorbox command from the color package does not give the desired result, because typically the background should cover the full extent of the table cell. The colortbl package (by David Carlisle) provides several

commands such as `\columncolor`, `\rowcolor`, and `\cellcolor` to provide colored backgrounds and rules in tables. Some of them are shown in the next examples.

Day	Attendance
Monday	57
Tuesday	11
Wednesday	96
Thursday	122
Friday	210
Saturday	198
Sunday	40
Total	724

```
\usepackage{colortbl}
\begin{tabular}
  >{\columncolor{blue}\color{white}\bfseries}lr
\rowcolor[gray]{0.8}
  \color{black} Day & \bfseries Attendance\\[2pt]
Monday& 57 \\\ Tuesday& 11 \\\
Wednesday& 96 \\\ Thursday& 122 \\\
Friday& 210 \\\ Saturday& 198 \\\
Sunday& 40 \\\
\cellcolor[gray]{0.8}\color{black}Total& 724
\end{tabular}
```

6-5-2

6.6 Customizing table rules and spacing

In this section we look at a number of packages that extend the `tabular` functionality by providing commands for drawing special table rules and fine-tuning the row spacing. We start with colored rules provided by `colortbl`, followed by bold rules with `boldline` and dashed ones with `arydshln`. The `hhline` package offers very detailed control over the interactions between horizontal and vertical lines. All these packages provide granular control over the appearance. In contrast, the goal of the `booktabs` package is to help you get a consistent and uniform layout by offering you only a small set of commands for formal table rules with limited local configuration possibilities. For most documents we recommend this package.

The last two packages, `bigstrut` and `cellspace`, deal with spacing issues between rows or individual cells helping you to provide visual separation where necessary.¹

One of the difficulties of using \LaTeX tables with irregular-sized entries is the challenge of obtaining a good spacing around large entries, especially in the presence of horizontal rules. The standard \LaTeX command `\arraystretch` or the `\extrarowheight` parameter introduced by the `array` package may help in this case. Both, however, affect all the rows in the table. It is sometimes desirable to have a finer-grained control.

6.6.1 Colored table rules

The `colortbl` package discussed in the previous section extends the style parameters for table rules, allowing colors to be specified for rules and for the space between double rules. The declarations `\arrayrulecolor` and `\doublerulesepcolor` take the same argument forms as the `\color` command of the standard \LaTeX color package.

Normally, these declarations would be used before a table, or in the document preamble, to set the color for all rules in a table. However, the rule color may be varied

¹There is also the `tabls` package (by Donald Arseneau), but this is unfortunately incompatible with the `array` package and its derivatives.

for individual rules using constructs like those in the next example. Note that the `\cline` construct is behind the vertical rules, whereas `\hline` or `\hhline` will be in front.

A	B	C
X	Y	Z
100	10	1

```
\usepackage{colortbl,hhline} \setlength\arrayrulewidth{1pt}
\newcolumntype{B}{!{\color{blue}\vline}}
\newcommand\bluecline{\arrayrulecolor{blue}\hline\arrayrulecolor{black}}
\newcommand\bluecline[1]{\arrayrulecolor{blue}\cline{#1}%
\arrayrulecolor{black}}

\begin{tabular}{cBc|c} \hline
A & B & C \\ \bluecline{1-1}
X & Y & Z \\ \bluecline
100 & 10 & 1 \\ \hhline{= >{\arrayrulecolor{blue}}:=
>{\doublerulesepcolor{yellow}}=}
\end{tabular}
```

6-6-1

The last line involves `\hhline` from the `hhline` package discussed in Section 6.6.4 on page 470. If used together with `colortbl`, it supports the `>` notation through which you can color individual rule segments.

6.6.2 boldline — Bolder table rules

Lines in tables as produced by `\hline`, `\cline`, or the preamble specifier `|` all have the same width (defined through `\arrayrulewidth`). While this value can be adjusted, it is rather difficult to do this for individual lines in a table. To produce some flexibility in this regard, Alexey Shipunov developed the `boldline` package.

<code>V{factor}</code>	<code>\hlineB{factor}</code>	<code>\clineB{colspec}{factor}</code>
------------------------	------------------------------	---------------------------------------

It offers `V`, `\hlineB`, and `\clineB` as alternatives for the standard rule-generating commands all of which take an additional *factor* argument that specifies the desired rule width as a multiple of `\arrayrulewidth`. Fractional values for *factor* are allowed.

Rather than using explicit values within the document it is probably best to decide on one or two values and define your own commands and column specifiers based on these values. This way, your document layout stays consistent, and at the same time adjustments are easily possible later. In the example below, a new preamble option `I` is defined that produces a wide vertical rule. Similarly, a `\boldline` and a `\boldcline` command are defined that produce even thicker horizontal rules.

A	B	C
a	b	c
X	Y	Z
100	10	1

```
\usepackage{boldline} \renewcommand\arraystretch{1.3}
\newcolumntype{I}{V{2.5}} \newcommand\boldline{\hlineB{4}}
\newcommand\boldcline[1]{\clineB{#1}{4}}

\begin{tabular}{cIc|c}
A & B & C \\ \boldcline{3-3}
a & b & c \\ \boldline
X & Y & Z \\ \boldline
100 & 10 & 1
\end{tabular}
```

6-6-2

6.6.3 arydshln — Dashed rules

The `arydshln` package (by NAKASHIMA Hiroshi) provides the ability to place dashed lines in tables. It is compatible with the `array` and `longtable` package but must be loaded *after* them if they are to be used together.

<code>\hdashline[dash/gap]</code>	<code>\cdashline{colspec}[dash/gap]</code>
<code>\firsthdashline[dash/gap]</code>	<code>\lasthdashline[dash/gap]</code>

The basic use of the package is very simple. A new preamble option “:” is introduced, together with two new commands `\hdashline` and `\cdashline`. These features may be used in the same way as the standard \TeX “|” preamble option and `\hline` and `\cline` commands, except that dashed rather than solid lines are produced. In particular, two `\hdashline` commands in a row or one together with an `\hline` are allowed.

If the `array` package is also loaded, then the commands `\firsthdashline` and `\lasthdashline` are defined. They are dashed analogues of the `\firsthline` and `\lasthline` commands defined in that package.

6-6-3

A	B	C
a	b	c
1000	10	1
X	Y	Z

```
\usepackage{array,arydshln}
\setlength\extrarowheight{4pt}% extra space on row top
\begin{tabular}{|c:c|c|} \hline
A & B & C \\
a & b & c \\
1000 & 10 & 1 \\
X & Y & Z \\
\end{tabular}
```

Each of the commands takes an optional argument that may be used to specify the style of rule to be constructed. For example, an optional argument of `[2pt/1pt]` would specify that the rule should use 2pt dashes separated by 1pt spaces. The `tabular` preamble syntax does not allow for optional arguments on preamble options, so the “:” option does not have an optional argument in which to specify the dash style. Instead, an additional preamble option “;” is defined that takes a mandatory argument of the form *dash/gap*, as demonstrated in the next example.

The default size of the dashes and gaps is 4pt, which may be changed by setting the style parameters `\dashlinedash` and `\dashlinegap` via `\setlength`. This ability is shown in the example below:

6-6-4

A	B	C
X	Y	Z
1000	10	1

```
\usepackage{colortbl,arydshln} \renewcommand\arraystretch{1.5}
\setlength\dashlinedash{10pt} \setlength\dashlinegap{5pt}
\setlength\arrayrulewidth{1pt} \arrayrulecolor{blue}
\begin{tabular}{;{5pt/2pt}c::c;c;{2pt/2pt}}
\hdashline
A & B & C \\
X & Y & Z \\
1000 & 10 & 1 \\
\end{tabular}
```

As also shown in the previous example the package can be used together with `colortbl`. Solutions for some special cases when coloring rows or columns are discussed in the package documentation.

*Avoiding unsightly
gaps*

The package may use any one of three methods for aligning the dashes within a table cell. The package may sometimes produce an overlarge gap at the edge of a table entry because there is not enough room to fit in the next “dash”. If this happens, you might try specifying an alternative placement algorithm using the command `\ADLdrawingmode{m}`, where *m* may be 1 (the default), 2, or 3.

The package documentation contains details of the placement algorithms used in each of these cases, but in practice you can just experiment with your particular table and dash styles to see which setting of `\ADLdrawingmode` gives the most pleasing result.

6.6.4 `hhline` — Combining horizontal and vertical lines

The `hhline` package (by David Carlisle) introduces the command `\hhline`, which behaves like `\hline` except for its interaction with vertical lines.

`\hhline{decl}`

The declaration *decl* consists of a list of tokens with the following meanings:

- = A double `\hline` the width of a column.
- A single `\hline` the width of a column.
- ~ A column without `\hline`; a space the width of a column.
- | A `\vline` that “cuts” through a double (or single) `\hline`.
- : A `\vline` that is broken by a double `\hline`.
- # A double `\hline` segment between two `\vlines`.
- t The top rule of a double `\hline` segment.
- b The bottom rule of a double `\hline` segment.
- * `{3}{==#}` expands to `==#==#==#`, as in the `*` form for the preamble.
- Space characters are ignored and can be added at will to structure the source.

If a double `\vline` is specified (`||` or `::`), then the `\hlines` produced by `\hhline` are broken. To obtain the effect of an `\hline` “cutting through” the double `\vline`, use a `#`. The tokens `t` and `b` can be used between two vertical rules. For instance, `|tb|` produces the same lines as `#` but is much less efficient. The main uses for these are to make constructions like `|t:` (top-left corner) and `:b|` (bottom-right corner).

If `\hhline` is used to make a single `\hline`, then the argument should only contain the tokens “-”, “~”, and “|” (and `*` expressions).

An example using most of these features follows:

6-6-5

a	b	c	d
1	2	3	4
i	j	k	l
w	x	y	z

```
\usepackage{hhline} \setlength\arrayrulewidth{.8pt}
\renewcommand\arraystretch{1.5}

% columns: 1 2 3 4 5
\begin{tabular}{||cc||c|c|c} \hhline{|t: == :t: == :t| }
a & b & c & d \\ \hhline{|: == :| ~|~ | | }
1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \hhline{# == # ~|= :b| -}
i & j & k & l \\
& \multicolumn{1}{c|}{?} \\ \hhline{|| - - || - - -}
w & x & y & z \\ \hhline{|b: == :b: == :b| }
\end{tabular}
```

The lines produced by `\hline` consist of a single (T_EX primitive) `\hrule`. The lines produced by `\hhline` are made up of lots of small line segments. T_EX places these very accurately in the .dvi or .pdf file, but the program used to view or print the output might not line up the segments exactly if they are very thin. If this effect causes a problem, you can try increasing `\arrayrulewidth` to reduce the effect.

6.6.5 booktabs — Formal ruled tables

The previous sections have discussed packages that allow you to produce all kinds of complicated rules of various nature — making it easy to overdo it. An alternative approach is taken by the `booktabs` package (by Simon Fear, nowadays maintained by Danie Els).

It is designed to produce more formal tables according to a more traditional typographic style that uses horizontal rules of varying widths to separate table headings, but does not use any vertical rules. The `|` preamble option is not disabled when using this package, but its use is not supported, and the extra commands for horizontal rules described below are not designed to work well in conjunction with vertical rules. Similarly, `booktabs` commands are not designed to support double rules as produced by the `||` or `\hline\hline`.

Do not use vertical rules with booktabs

Do not use double rules with booktabs

The `booktabs` commands may be used with the standard `tabular` environments, with the extended versions provided by the `array` package, and in the `longtable` environment provided by the `longtable` package. An example showing the most commonly used commands provided by the package is shown below:

6-6-6

Items		Price/lb
Food	Category	\$
Apples	Fruit	1.50
Oranges	Fruit	2.00
Beef	Meat	4.50

```
\usepackage{booktabs}
\begin{tabular}{llr} \toprule
\multicolumn{2}{c}{Items} & \multicolumn{1}{c}{Price/lb} \\ \cmidrule(r){1-2}\cmidrule(l){3-3}
Food & Category & \multicolumn{1}{c}{\$}\\ \midrule
Apples & Fruit & 1.50 \\
Oranges & Fruit & 2.00 \\
Beef & Meat & 4.50 \\ \bottomrule \end{tabular}
```

<code>\toprule[width]</code>	<code>\midrule[width]</code>	<code>\bottomrule[width]</code>
------------------------------	------------------------------	---------------------------------

The `booktabs` package provides the `\toprule`, `\midrule`, and `\bottomrule` commands. They are used in the same way as the standard `\hline` but have better vertical spacing and widths specified by the length parameters `\heavyrulewidth` (for top and bottom rules) and `\lightrulewidth` (for mid-table rules). These parameters default to 0.08em and 0.05em, respectively (where the em is determined by the default document font at the point the package is loaded).

The spacing above and below the rules is determined by the length parameters: `\abovetopsep` (default 0pt) is the space above top rules, `\aboverulessep` (default 0.4ex) is the space above mid-table and bottom rules, `\belowrulessep` (default 0.65ex) is the space below top and mid rules, and `\belowbottomsep` (default 0pt) is the space below bottom rules.

If you need to control the widths of individual rules, all of these commands take an optional width argument. For example, `\midrule[0.5pt]` would produce a rule with a width of half a point.

When these commands are used inside a `longtable` environment, they may take an optional (*trim*) argument as described below for `\cmidrule`. This argument may be used to make the rules slightly less than the full width of the table.

<code>\cmidrule[width] (trim) {col1-col2}</code>
--

The `\cmidrule` command produces rules similar to those created with the standard \LaTeX `\cline` command. The *col1-col2* argument specifies the columns over which the rule should be drawn. Unlike the rules created by `\cline`, these rules do not, by default, extend all the way to the edges of the column. Thus, one may use `\cmidrule` to produce rules on adjacent columns without them touching, as shown in the example above.

If the optional *width* argument is not specified, the rule will be of the width specified by the `\cmidrulewidth` length parameter (default 0.03em).

By default, the rule extends all the way to the left but is “trimmed” from the rightmost column by the length specified in the length parameter `\cmidrulekern`. The optional (*trim*) argument may contain the characters `l` and `r`, indicating that the rule is to be trimmed from the left or right, respectively. Each `l` and `r` may optionally be followed by a width argument specified using `{widths}`, in which case the rule is trimmed by this amount rather than by the default `\cmidrulekern`.

Normally, if one `\cmidrule` command immediately follows another, then the rules are drawn across the specified columns on the same horizontal line. A command `\morecmidrules` is provided that may be used to terminate a row of mid-table rules. Following mid-table rules then appear on a new line separated by the length `\cmidrulessep`, which by default is equal to `\doublerulessep`.

Each group of rules produced by `\cmidrule` is preceded and followed by a space of width `\midrulessep`, so this command generates the same spacing as `\midrule`. By default, however, the `\cmidrule` rules are lighter (thinner) than the rules produced by `\midrule`.

`\addlinespace[width]`

Extra space may be inserted between rows using `\addlinespace`. This command differs from using the optional argument to `\\`, because the former may also be used immediately before or after the rule commands.

If used in this position, the command replaces the default spacing that would normally be produced by the rule. If the optional width argument is omitted, it defaults to the length parameter `\defaultaddspace` (which defaults to 0.5em).

`\specialrule{width}{abovespace}{belowspace}`

Finally, if none of the other commands produces a suitable rule, then the command `\specialrule` may be used. It takes three mandatory arguments that specify the width of the rule, and the space above and below the rule.

As the intention of the package is to produce “formal” tables with well-spaced lines of consistent thickness, the package author warns against overuse of the optional arguments and special commands to produce lines with individual characteristics. Nevertheless, these features may be useful in special circumstances.

The example below shows the effect of many of these options as well as demonstrating that overuse of the commands produces a very unpleasing layout.

Items		Price/lb
a	b	c
Food	Category	\$
Apples	Fruit	1.50
Oranges	Fruit	2.00
Beef	Meat	4.50

6-6-7

x	y	z
---	---	---

```
\usepackage{booktabs}
\begin{tabular}{@{}llr@{}}
\toprule
\multicolumn{2}{c}{Items} & \multicolumn{1}{c}{Price/lb} \\
\cmidrule(r){1-2} & \cmidrule(l){3-3}
a & b & c \\
\cmidrule(l{10pt}r{10pt}){1-2}\cmidrule(l{10pt}r{10pt}){3-3}
\morecmidrules & \cmidrule(l{5pt}r{5pt}) {2-3}
\addlinespace[5pt]
Food& Category & \multicolumn{1}{c}{\$}\\
\midrule
Apples & Fruit & 1.50 \\
Oranges & Fruit & 2.00 \\
Beef & Meat & 4.50 \\
\addlinespace
\specialrule{.5pt}{10pt}{20pt}
x & y & z \\
\bottomrule
\end{tabular}
```

6.6.6 bigstrut — Spreading individual table lines apart

The separation between individual rows in a `tabular` type of environment is not managed by putting white space between the rows. Instead, the rows touch each other, and visual separation is achieved by placing invisible material of a certain height and depth (so called “struts”) on every line. The technical reason for this approach is that

in this way vertical lines are not disrupted, which would happen if real white space is used.

The downside is that a strut only defines the minimal height of a row. If the material in the cells is higher than the strut, then the strut has no effect, and the cell content bumps into the previous line or into a preceding horizontal rule.

The standard `\arraystretch` factor enlarges the normal height and depth of the strut used in tables, and the `\extrarowheight` parameter offered by the `array` package is added to the height only without affecting the depth. Both act on all rows, so changing them means that all lines get some additional separation even though perhaps only lines after or before a horizontal rule need some extra space.

To limit such adjustments to individual rows you need to define your own struts, which is not exactly difficult using the `\rule` command, but not that convenient either. The alternative, which works well in many cases, is to load the `bigstrut` package by Jerry Leichter that offers a command for this.

`\bigstrut[top-or-bottom]`

The `\bigstrut` command adds a strut in the current table cell that is slightly larger than the normal strut used inside the table (the extra amount is `\bigstrutjot`, which defaults to 2pt). The value of the optional *top-or-bottom* argument can be `t` or `b` in which case only the height or the depth is affected. Used without the argument both get enlarged. Spaces before and after the command are ignored so that it can be easily added to a cell. The next example compares a table with and without these extra struts.

A	B	C
x	y	z

```
\usepackage{bigstrut}
\begin{tabular}{|ccc|}
    A & B & C \\ \hline
    x & y & z \\ \hline
\end{tabular}

\bigskip

\begin{tabular}{|ccc|}
    A & B & C \\ \hline
    \bigstrut[t] A & B & C \\ \hline
    \bigstrut[b] x & y & z \\ \hline
\end{tabular}
```

6-6-8

6.6.7 cellspace — Ensure minimal clearance automatically

The `cellspace` by Josselin Noirel provides an automated solution to the issue of cell entries touching neighboring horizontal lines. It works by making sure that the content of cells is at least `\cellspacetoplimit` away from a preceding horizontal rule and at least `\cellspacebottomlimit` from a following one. If it is, then nothing is done to the cell; otherwise, it is manipulated to have enough separation. The default for both parameters is 1pt and can be changed anywhere in the document.

These checks are not done on each and every cell in a table, but only in designated columns. For this a special column specifier `S` is provided that takes the normal column specifier as its argument; e.g., you write `S{c}` or `S{p{2cm}}` instead of `c` or `p{2cm}`. In case you also use the `siunitx` package or use `S` for your own column type, you can use a different letter by specifying it with the package option `column=<letter>`; see Example 6-6-10.

The next example shows a simple table with three rows in which the first and last cells touch the top and the top and bottom rule, respectively. With the default value for `cellspace` these two cells are then slightly opened up (second table). Using an enlarged top limit also affects the first and third cell (third table), while additionally enlarging the bottom limit then affects the second and third cells (fourth table), because now the descender in “y” is closer than 3pt from the bottom rule.

<pre> \usepackage{cellspace} \begin{tabular}[t]{c} \hline Ä \\ \hline xyz \\ \hline \end{tabular} \begin{tabular}[t]{S{c}} \hline Ä \\ \hline xyz \\ \hline \setlength\cellspacetoplimit{3pt} \begin{tabular}[t]{S{c}} \hline Ä \\ \hline xyz \\ \hline \setlength\cellspacebottomlimit{3pt} \begin{tabular}[t]{S{c}} \hline Ä \\ \hline xyz \\ \hline \end{tabular} </pre>			
$\frac{\ddot{A}}{xyz}$	$\frac{\ddot{A}}{xyz}$	$\frac{\ddot{A}}{xyz}$	$\frac{\ddot{A}}{xyz}$
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$

6-6-9

For comparison we show the tables once more, but this time fix it manually with some `\bigstrut` commands (third table) and also use both `bigstrut` and `cellspace` in the fourth table. As you can see, this results in even more white space, because the struts are considered cell material, and thus `cellspace` requires the minimal space in addition.

<pre> \usepackage[column=0]{cellspace} \usepackage{bigstrut} \begin{tabular}[t]{c} \hline Ä \\ \hline xyz \\ \hline \end{tabular} \begin{tabular}[t]{0{c}} \hline Ä \\ \hline xyz \\ \hline \begin{tabular}[t]{c} \hline Ä \bigstrut[t] \\ \hline \$\frac{1}{2}\$ \bigstrut \\ \hline \begin{tabular}[t]{0{c}} \hline Ä \bigstrut[t] \\ \hline \$\frac{1}{2}\$ \bigstrut \\ \hline \end{tabular} </pre>			
$\frac{\ddot{A}}{xyz}$	$\frac{\ddot{A}}{xyz}$	$\frac{\ddot{A}}{xyz}$	$\frac{\ddot{A}}{xyz}$
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$

6-6-10

The `cellspace` packages knows about the basic column specifiers provided by the `array` package, but if you use other table packages, such as `tabularx` or `tabulary`, or if

you have defined your own specifiers, then you have to tell `cellspace` about them in case they denote “paragraph” columns. You do this with a declaration such as

```
\addparagraphcolumnntypes{X} % for tabularx
```

after which you can write `S{X}` in the table preamble.

6.7 Other extensions

Several further packages extend the `array` package with additional functionality, and we describe five of them in this section. The first provides for table entries spanning more than one row. The second offers ways to produce diagonally oriented text in individual cells, which is sometimes useful in header rows. The other three provide additional column specifiers to deal with data alignment in columns consisting of only numbers and in the case of the `fcolumn` package also offer extended support for financial tables.

You can simulate a cell spanning a few rows vertically by putting the material in a zero-height box and raising it, but this is obviously not a very intuitive method.

100	qqq	
	A	B
20000000	10	10

```
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|} \hline
& \multicolumn{2}{c|}{qqq} \\ \cline{2-3}
\raisebox{1.5ex}[0cm][0cm]{\bfseries 100}
& A & B \\ \hline
20000000 & 10 & 10 \\ \hline
\end{tabular}
```

6-7-1

Similarly, you can use a standard `tabular` preamble of the form `r@{.}l` to create two table columns and produce the effect of a column aligned on a decimal point, but then the input looks rather strange, as shown in the next example:

```
1.2 \begin{tabular}{r@{.}l}
1.23 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 23 \\ 913.17 913 & 17
\end{tabular}
```

6-7-2

Using this approach you have to be aware that the “column” is really two columns of the table. This becomes important when counting columns for the `\multicolumn` or `\cline` command. Also, you need to locally set `\extracolsep` to `0pt` if you use this construct in a `tabular*` environment; otherwise, \TeX may insert space after the decimal point to spread the table to the specified width. For alternative solutions, see the packages discussed in Sections 6.7.3 to 6.7.5.

6.7.1 multirow — Vertical alignment in tables

The `multirow` package (by Jerry Leichter and Pieter van Oostrum) automates the procedure of constructing tables with columns spanning several rows by defining a `\multirow` command.

`\multirow{nrow}{width}{content}`

The mandatory arguments are *nrow* (number of rows to span), *width* of the cell, and *content* of the cell. The *width* can be given either as a dimension, such as 2cm or as * (use the natural width of the *content*) or as = (use the column width specified in the tabular preamble).

If the *width* is explicitly given or if = is used, then the *content* is formatted in a paragraph box of that *width*, and you can use `\\` for explicit line breaks inside. If * is used, then the *content* is set on a single line.

The = notation makes sense only if the column has a predefined width, i.e., is either a p column or an m, b, w, or W column in an extended tabular, or if it is an X column in a tabularx or an L, C, R, or J column in a tabulary environment. Using = with other column types, e.g., c, gives strange results. Here you either need to specify an explicit width or use *.

6-7-3

Text in column 1 (4 rows)	C2a	C3a	C4a
	C2b	Spanning 2 rows	C4b
	C2c		C4c
	C2d	C3d	C4d

```
\usepackage{multirow}
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|p{25mm}|l|} \hline
\multirow{4}{14mm}{Text in column 1 (4 rows)}
& C2a & C3a & C4a \\
& C2b & \multirow{2}{=}
& {Spanning 2 rows} & C4b \\
& C2c & & C4c \\
& C2d & C3d & C4d \\
\end{tabular}
```

Armed with this knowledge you are now in a position to typeset the small example shown at the beginning of this section without having to use the `\raisebox` command. All that is necessary is to use the * notation for the *width*.

6-7-4

100	qqq	
	A	B
20000000	10	10

```
\usepackage{multirow}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|} \hline
\multirow{2}{*}{\bfseries 100}
& \multicolumn{2}{c}{qqq} \\
& A & B \\
20000000 & 10 & 10 \\
\end{tabular}
```

It is possible to span both rows and columns by using a `\multirow` inside a `\multicolumn` entry. For technical reasons the other way around does not work. Note, however, that all the spanned cells in the later rows need to be empty; i.e., if there are normally vertical lines between them, you need to disable them using further `\multicolumn` commands as we did in the next example.

You also have some limited ability to control the standard formatting within the cells. Just before the text to be typeset is expanded, the `\multirowsetup` macro is automatically executed to set up some default configuration. Initially, `\multirowsetup` contains just `\raggedright`, but it can be redefined with `\renewcommand`. In the example on the next page we use it to get ragged-left text by default.

C1a	C2a	C3a
Spanning 2 rows & 3 columns		
C1d	C2d	C3d

```
\usepackage{multirow} \renewcommand\multirowsetup{\raggedleft}
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|l|}
C1a & C2a & C3a
\multicolumn{3}{|c|}{\multirow{2}{25mm}{Spanning 2 rows
& 3 columns}} \\
\multicolumn{3}{|c|}{C1d & C2d & C3d}
\end{tabular}
```

6-7-5

Further fine-tuning is possible by specifying optional arguments as discussed below. This ability can be useful when any of the spanned rows are unusually large, when `\strut` commands are used asymmetrically around the centerline of spanned rows, or when descenders are not taken into account correctly. In these cases the vertical centering may not come out as desired, and these optional arguments can then be used to adjust the placement as necessary. Here is the full set of available arguments:

\multirow[vpos]{nrow}[bigstruts]{width}[vmove]{content}

The *vpos* argument specifies how the cell *content* is positioned vertically. The default is *c*, and the alternatives are *t* or *b* with the obvious meanings. Additional fine-grained adjustments can be made by specifying a vertical shift in the optional *vmove* argument. Positive values shift the material upwards, negative values downwards. The default is no shift.

The *bigstruts* argument is useful only if you are using `\bigstrut` from the `bigstrut` package inside your table. In that case some of your rows have some additional height, and by adding the number of such extra struts in this argument you enable `\multirow` to calculate the total height of the spanned rows correctly.

The effect of the optional vertical positioning parameter *vmove* can be seen below. A negative value lowers the material, and a positive one raises it.

Text in column 1 (default)	Cell 1a
	Cell 1b
	Cell 1c
	Cell 1d
Text in column 1 (lowered)	Cell 2a
	Cell 2b
	Cell 2c
	Cell 2d
Text in column 1 (lifted)	Cell 3a
	Cell 3b
	Cell 3c
	Cell 3d

```
\usepackage{multirow}
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline
\multirow{4}{25mm}{Text in column 1 (default)}
& Cell 1a \\
& Cell 1b \\
& Cell 1c \\
& Cell 1d \\
\multirow{4}{25mm}[-3mm]{Text in column 1 (lowered)}
& Cell 2a \\
& Cell 2b \\
& Cell 2c \\
& Cell 2d \\
\multirow{4}{25mm}[3mm]{Text in column 1 (lifted)}
& Cell 3a \\
& Cell 3b \\
& Cell 3c \\
& Cell 3d
\end{tabular}
```

6-7-6

In the examples so far we have always used `\multirow` in the first row and kept all other spanned cells empty. A possible alternative is to place it in the last row and use a negative value for the *nrow* argument. In most circumstances both approaches yield the same result, and thus the former is more convenient.

There is one case where this is not true, and the latter approach needs to be used. If you combine `\multirow` with a `\columncolor` command from the `colortbl` package, the background color needs to be applied first, because it otherwise overlays the content typeset by `\multirow`. Because `colortbl` colors the cells row by row, any background color in spanned cells is placed on top of already typeset material, which thus vanishes. The next example nicely exhibits the problem (text in the second column is partly hidden) and its solution in the fourth column.

6-7-7

C1	C2	C3	C4
C1	partly hidden	C3	visible
C1		C3	

```
\usepackage{colortbl,multirow}
\begin{tabular}{*2{c}>{\columncolor{yellow}}c}}
  C1 & C2 & C3 & C4 \\
  C1 & \multirow{2}*{partly hidden} & C3 & \\
  C1 & & C3 & \multirow{-2}*{visible} \\
\end{tabular}
```

6.7.2 diagbox — Making table cells with diagonal lines

Sometimes you see the content of a cell diagonally split with or without a diagonal line separating both parts. Typically this is done in the top-left cell of a heading row with one text being the heading for the first column and the other a heading for the first row. For this Leo Liu developed the `diagbox` package, which provides a single command `\diagbox` for use in table cells.

```
\diagbox[key/values]{left}{right}
\diagbox[key/values]{left}{middle}{right}
```

The command comes in two incarnations taking either two or three braced arguments; i.e., the third is optional even though it is surrounded by braces. That means that `\diagbox` with two arguments cannot be followed by a braced group, but because it is typically used by its own inside a table cell, this is normally not a problem. The command also has a normal optional argument expecting a *key/values* list to configure its behavior as discussed below.

If used without the *key/values* argument, `\diagbox` automatically calculates the necessary width, height, position of the text arguments, and placement of the line(s) separating them. To make this work correctly, all cells in the column must have a shorter width and all cells in the row a shorter height. In the example this is not the case in the second column, which is why the diagonal line in cell 2,2 does not extend into the corners. The solution in that case is to set the necessary width (or height) explicitly instead of relying on the automatic calculation. In cell 3,2 we

have set the `height`, which brings the texts vertically closer together (but of course does not resolve the initial problem). In cell 4,2 we then also set the `width` using the `\widthof` command from the `calc` package, which (like `array`) is automatically loaded by `diagbox`. Nevertheless, we are still a bit too short as you can see:

table column	row info	H2
R1		a wide cell C1,2
R2		<div>2,2 C</div>
R3		<div>3,2 C</div>
R4		<div>4,2 C</div>

```
\usepackage{diagbox}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\diagbox{column}{table}{row info} & H2
R1 & a wide cell C1,2
R2 & \diagbox{C}{2,2}
R3 & \diagbox[height=18pt]{C}{3,2}
R4 & \diagbox[height=15pt, width=\widthof{a
wide cell C1,2}]{C}{4,2}
\end{tabular}
```

6-7-8

Keys for horizontal
spacing adjustments

The reason for this shortage is that we measured the text in cell 1,2 and assigned this to the `width`, but the value for this key should also include the separation at the left and the right (typically `\tabcolsep`), which we have not accounted for. For the width of the text portion of the cell there exists the key `innerwidth`, and this is what we should have used instead. They are linked through the following equation

$$\text{width} = \text{innerleftsep} + \text{innerwidth} + \text{innerrightsep}$$

with the separations initialized to `\tabcolsep` if not explicitly set.

If you think about it, then it is clear that this would make the cell content with the diagonal line wider than the tabular cell, and to account for this there also exist two further keys `outerleftsep` and `outrightsep` that are by default the negations of the inner separations. By setting some or all of these keys, various special effects can be achieved.

As a convenient shorthand, the key `leftsep` sets `innerleftsep` to its value and `outerleftsep` to the negation. The key `rightsep` does the same for the right side. This means that they change the inner separation while the diagonal line still ends in the corner.

Keys for rule
placement

With the `dir` key you can define the corner in which the *middle* text will appear (if there are three arguments). Allowed values are NW (default), NE, SW, or SE. These values are also allowed if only two braced arguments are given, but then they result in only two distinct layouts as the diagonal either goes from NW to SE or goes from NE to SW making the cases indistinguishable.

The next example exhibits all the different directions and also shows the effects of some other keys: `font` specifies the font to use (which is equivalent to adding the setting into each argument), and `trim` removes any space on the left or the right (allowed values are `l` or `r` or both). Finally, there are `linewidth` and `linecolor` that do the obvious — but note that you have to load a color support package if you want to use colored rules.

In some cells the diagonal rules appear to come out short. This is either due to the fact that the cell is not the highest/widest one in its row or column or due to special settings made, i.e., the `trim`, the `leftsep`, or the `width`, and `height` settings that got applied. In other words, while this example is not meant to be used as such, it shows a lot of different effects in one place.

6-7-9

B C A	north east	A B C
west north	direction	east south
A B C	south west	z x y

```
\usepackage{color,diagbox}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|} \hline
\diagbox{A}{B}{C} &
\diagbox[dir=NE,font=\tiny]{north}{east} &
\diagbox[width=2cm,dir=NE]{A}{B}{C} \\ \hline
\diagbox[dir=NW,font=\tiny,trim=lr]{north}{west} &
\diagbox[font=\tiny,linecolor=blue,
linewidth=1pt]{default}{direction} &
\diagbox[dir=SE,font=\tiny,trim=r]{south}{east} \\ \hline
\diagbox[dir=SW,leftsep=0pt]{A}{B}{C} &
\diagbox[dir=SW,font=\tiny]{south}{west} &
\diagbox[width=30pt,height=30pt,
dir=SE,font=\itshape]{x}{y}{z} \\ \hline
\end{tabular}
```

If you want a `\diagbox` to fill the full width of a paragraph column such as a `p` column where the width is preset in the tabular preamble or if you want to use it in an `X` column from `tabularx`, you have to tell it the `innerwidth` it should use for formatting. In the case of a `p` column or one of the other paragraph columns, you know the width, and you could repeat it. But in the case of an `X` that size is not known a priori. Fortunately, you can use the register `\hsize` in that case as that holds the horizontal size in such cells once its value is calculated.

6-7-10

A	B	AA	BB	BBB
---	---	----	----	-----

```
\usepackage{tabularx,diagbox}
\begin{tabularx}{\textwidth}{|p{1cm}|X|X|} \hline
\diagbox[innerwidth=1cm]{A}{B} &
\diagbox[dir=SW,innerwidth=\hsize]{AA}{BB} &
\diagbox[innerwidth=\hsize]{AAA}{BBB} \\ \hline
\end{tabularx}
```

6.7.3 dcolumn — Decimal column alignments

The `dcolumn` package (by David Carlisle) provides a system for defining columns of entries in `array` or `tabular` environments that are to be aligned on a “decimal point”. Entries with no decimal part, those with no integer part, and blank entries are also dealt with correctly. Note that the `siunitx` package for scientific notation provides a similar functionality with its `S` tabular specifier, which is described in the following section starting on page 484.

$D\{inputsep\}\{outputsep\}\{decimal\ places\}$

The `dcolum` package defines a “Decimal” tabular preamble option, `D`, that takes three arguments.

inputsep A single character, used as separator (or “decimal point”) in the source file (for example, “.” or “,”).

outputsep The separator to be used in the output. It can be the same as the first argument, but may also be any math mode expression, such as `\cdot`.

decimal places The maximum number of decimal places in the column. If this value is negative, any number of decimal places is allowed in the column, and all entries are centered on the separator. Note that this choice can cause a column to be too wide (see the first two columns in the example below).

Another possibility is to specify the number of digits *both* to the left and to the right of the decimal place, using an argument of the form `\left.right` as described below.

The cell content is typeset in math mode and thus suitable only for numerical data (i.e., numbers and symbols), but should normally not contain any ordinary text. Sometimes you can cheat a bit by using an `\mbox` to force the use of text fonts, but usually you need to apply `\multicolumn` to overwrite the column specifier if you need ordinary text in such a column.

If you do not want to use the rather lengthy `D`-specification in the table preamble, you can define your own customized preamble specifiers by using `\newcolumntype` as demonstrated below, e.g.,

```
\newcolumntype{d}[1]{D{.}{\cdot}{#1}}
```

This newly defined “`d`” specifier then takes a single argument specifying the number of decimal places. The decimal separator in the source file is the normal dot “.”, while the output uses the raised math mode dot “`\cdot`”.

In contrast, neither the “.” nor the “,” specifier defined below takes arguments:

```
\newcolumntype{.}{D{.}{.}{-1}}
\newcolumntype{,}{D{.}{,}{2}}
```

Both declarations use a normal dot as the input decimal separator, but they differ in how they typeset the cell content. With “.” the typeset entries are centered on the dot, while the “,” specifier uses a comma as a decimal separator in the output, and in the typeset column reserves space for a maximum of two decimal places after the comma.

These definitions are used in the following example, in which the first column, with its negative value for *decimal places* (signaling that the decimal point should be in the center of the column), is much wider than the second column, even though they

both contain the same input material. Also quite noticeable is the overprinting in the fourth column, because only space for two decimals was reserved.

6-7-11

				<pre> \usepackage{dcolumn} \newcolumntype{d}[1]{D{.}{\cdot}{#1}} \newcolumntype{.}{D{.}{.}{-1}} \newcolumntype{,}{D{.}{,}{-2}} \begin{tabular}{|d{-1}|d{2}|.|,|} 1.2 & 1.2 & 1.2 & 1.2 & \\ 1.23 & 1.23 & 12.34 & 12,34 & \\ 1121.2 & 1121.2 & 0.3333 & 0,3333 & \\ 184 & 184 & ± 100 & ± 100 & \\ .4 & .4 & <i>ok?</i> & <i>no!</i> & \\ -0.55 & -0.55 & -0.55 & -0,55 & \\ 0.0 & 0.0 & 0.0 & 0.0 & \\ \end{tabular} </pre>
1.2	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.2 & 1.2 & 1.2 & 1.2 & \\
1.23	1.23	12.34	12,34	1.23 & 1.23 & 12.34 & 12.34 & \\
1121.2	1121.2	0.3333	0,3333	1121.2 & 1121.2 & 0.3333 & 0.3333 & \\
184	184	± 100	± 100	184 & 184 & ± 100 & ± 100 & \\
.4	.4	<i>ok?</i>	<i>no!</i>	.4 & .4 & <i>ok?</i> & <i>no!</i> & \\
-0.55	-0.55	-0.55	-0,55	-0.55 & -0.55 & -0.55 & -0.55 & \\
0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0 & 0.0 & 0.0 & 0.0 & \\

If the table entries include only numerical data that must be aligned, the type of alignment forms shown in the above example should be sufficient. However, if the columns contain headings or other entries that affect the width of the column, the positioning of the numbers within the column might not be as desired.

In the example below, in the first column the numbers appear to be displaced toward the left of the column, although the decimal point is centered. In the second column the numbers are flush right under a centered heading, which is sometimes the desired effect, but (especially if there are no table rules) can make the heading appear dissociated from the data.

The final column shows the numbers aligned on the decimal point and centered as a block under the heading. This effect is achieved by using a third argument to the D preamble option of 4.2 specifying that at most four digits can appear to the left of the point, and two digits to the right of it.

6-7-12

			<pre>\usepackage{dcolumn} \begin{tabular}{|D..{-1}|D..{2}|D..{4.2}|} \multicolumn{1}{|c|}{wide heading} & \multicolumn{1}{|c|}{wide heading} & \multicolumn{1}{|c|}{wide heading} \\ wide heading & wide heading & wide heading \\ 1000.20 & 1000.20 & 1000.20 \\ 123.45 & 123.45 & 123.45 \\ 12.345 & 12.345 & 12.345 \\ -1.23 & -1.23 & -1.23 \end{tabular}</pre>	<pre>\\[3pt] \\ \\ \\ \\</pre>
--	--	--	---	--------------------------------

The following example is a variant of an example from the *L^AT_EX Manual* showing that D column alignments may be used for purposes other than aligning numerical

data on a decimal point. Note the use of `\mbox` to produce text in D-columns.

GG&A Hoofed Stock			
Year	Price low–high	Comments	Other
1971	97–245	Bad year for farmers in the West.	23,45
72	245–245	Light trading due to a heavy winter.	435,23
73	245–2001	No gnus was very good gnus this year.	387,56

```
\usepackage{dcolumn}
\newcolumnntype{+}{D{/}{\mbox{--}}{4}}
\newcolumnntype{,}{D{,}{,}{2}}
\begin{tabular}{|r|+|
>{\raggedright}p{2.2cm}|,|} \hline
\multicolumn{4}{|c|}{GG&A Hoofed Stock}\hline\hline
&\multicolumn{1}{c|}{Price}&&
\\ \cline{2-2} \multicolumn{1}{|c|}{Year}
&\mbox{low}/\mbox{high}
&\multicolumn{1}{c|}{Comments}
&\multicolumn{1}{c|}{Other} \\ \hline
1971 & 97/245 & Bad year for farmers in
the West. & 23,45 \\ \hline
72 & 245/245 & Light trading due to a
heavy winter. & 435,23 \\ \hline
73 & 245/2001 & No gnus was very good
gnus this year. & 387,56 \\ \hline
\end{tabular}
```

6-7-13

6.7.4 siunitx — Scientific numbers in tables

Tools for formatting numerical values in tables in a flexible way are offered by the `siunitx` package. While the primary focus of the package is on typesetting numbers and units in running text (see Chapter 3), it offers additional features that are focused specifically on the need to align numbers in columns. The general options it provides, as covered in Section 3.3.4 on page 167, are also applicable to such `tabular` material. On top of this it provides a new `tabular` specifier `S` that indicates a column of numbers by default aligned at their decimal markers that we discuss now.

S[options] \tablenum[options]{number}

The cells are parsed and printed according to the standard conventions of the `siunitx` package, and if necessary, the specifier can take an optional argument to apply options to influence the formatting and alignment. The `\tablenum` command does within a single cell what the `S` specifier does for a whole column and is intended for use in `\multicolumn` or `\multirow` arguments. This allows alignment across several specially handled cells.

With some restrictions, nonnumerical material is allowed in the cells as well. Textual material after the number, e.g., a `*` or a note marker, works without problems. Before the number, one can use text that cannot be confused with a number. Some commands, such as `\color`, apply to the entire cell and can be inserted directly. Another common example is `\bfseries`: here you will also need to direct the `siunitx` package to detect font changes with `\sisetup{reset-font-series = false}` in this case. Furthermore, if nonnumerical material could be mistaken by `siunitx` as being

a number, one has to hide it in braces (e.g., “broken” containing an “e”). An example is shown below. For more complicated scenarios refer to the package documentation that has a whole section on these issues and workarounds for them.

6-7-14

				<code>\usepackage{siunitx}</code>
				<code>\newcommand\note[1]{\,,#1}</code>
				<code>\begin{tabular}{|S|S[<i>text-series-to-math</i>]|}</code>
		47.11		<code>\multicolumn{2}{|c|}{\tablenum{47.11}} \\\</code>
		111.5		<code>\multicolumn{2}{|c|}{\tablenum{111.5}} \\\</code>
2.345		-1.2		2.345 & -1.2 \\\
12.17 ^b		7.84×10^2		12.17 \note{b} & 7.84e2 \\\
1.999 98	broken	0.01		1.99998 & {broken } 0.01 \\\
56.7		$9.7(1) \times 10^{-3}$		<code>\color{blue}</code> 56.7 & <code>\bfseries</code> 9.7(1)e-3
				<code>\end{tabular}</code>

When looking at the previous example, we see that the decimal marker is placed in the middle of the cells. This default works well for numbers that have roughly the same number of digits on either side but otherwise wastes precious space. To improve this and other cases roughly two dozen keys specific to table columns are available.

If the number of digits in the integer and decimal part are quite different and we want to have tighter columns, we need to tell `siunitx` the format of our numerical data. This can be done with `table-format`, either for a single column or for all columns of a table. As its value it expects a prototype entry that indicates how many digits need to be reserved for each part of the numerical data. For example, 4.2 means two decimals and up to four integer digits. The key correctly interprets a sign (and reserves space for it) as well as exponent or uncertainty parentheses; e.g., in a complex scenario you might write something like $+1.4(1)e+2$.

Specifying the number format

Using `table-format` automatically sets the `table-alignment-mode` key to `format`, meaning that the model given as `table-format` is used for alignment. With the key `table-number-alignment`, which can take the values `center`, `left`, or `right`, you can control the placement of the number within the column. This is useful for controlling how shorter values sit under longer text headers. The next example shows the effect of various alignment choices. Note that in the second column the data is centered (and in the third left-aligned) without taking the sign into consideration and thus sticks out to the left in the cell (as the `table-format` does not request space for the sign) and that the last column badly overprints as the format does not match the data at all.

6-7-15

				<code>\usepackage{siunitx}</code>
				<code>\begin{tabular}{|S|S[table-format=1.4]|</code>
				<code>S[table-format=1.4,table-number-alignment=left]|</code>
				<code>S[table-format=1.2,table-number-alignment=right]|}</code>
default	Heading	Heading	Heading	<code>{default}&{Heading} &{Heading}&{Heading} \\\</code>
2.3456	2.3456	2.3456	2.3456	2.3456 & 2.3456 & 2.3456 & 2.3456 \\\
4.2	4.2	4.2	4.23	4.2 & 4.2 & 4.2 & 4.23 \\\
6.783	6.783	6.783	6.783	6.783 & 6.783 & 6.783 & 6.783 \\\
-1.47	-1.47	-1.47	-1.47	-1.47 & -1.47 & -1.47 & -1.47
				<code>\end{tabular}</code>

If `table-number-alignment` is used, then only cells with numerical data are affected (like in the previous example). Similarly, `table-text-alignment` only affects text cells (like headings). There also exists `table-alignment`, a shortcut that sets both keys to the same value. Sometimes alignment at the decimal marker is not desirable. This can be prevented by setting `table-alignment-mode` to `none`.

<pre> \usepackage{siunitx} \begin{tabular}{|S|S[table-alignment-mode=none, table-text-alignment=left]| S[table-alignment-mode=none, table-alignment=right]|} </pre>			
Default	Left	Right	{Default} & {Left} & {Right} \\
12.345	12.345	12.345	12.345 & 12.345 & 12.345 \\
6.7	6.7	6.7	6.7 & 6.7 & 6.7 \\
-88.8(9)	-88.8(9)	-88.8(9)	-88.8(9) & -88.8(9) & -88.8(9) \\
4.5×10^3	4.5×10^3	4.5×10^3	4.5e3 & 4.5e3 & 4.5e3 \\
\end{tabular}			

6-7-16

When table data has exponents, then they are lined up by default. But even with this extra visual aide, comparison of column data values is far from easy in that case. Often it is much better to force all exponents to the same size (if they are not already) and then drop the exponent within the table — and this can be done without altering the table data. Below this is done in the second column to show the differences. In a real table one would normally apply this to all columns as appropriate.

<pre> \usepackage{siunitx} \begin{tabular}{|S[table-format=2.2e1]| S[exponent-mode=fixed,drop-exponent,fixed-exponent=3, table-format=2.4]|} </pre>			
Data	Data (10^3)		{Data} & {Data} (\num[drop-exponent=false,
1.2×10^3	1.2		print-unity-mantissa=false]{e3})} \\
17.5	0.0175		1.2e3 & 1.2e3 \\ 17.5 & 17.5 \\ 3e2 & 3e2 \\ 1.03e4 & 1.03e4
3×10^2	0.3		\end{tabular}
1.03×10^4	10.3		

6-7-17

By default S columns use as much space as needed for the individual cells and the chosen alignment key. However, sometimes it is necessary to ensure that certain columns — even across tables — have the same width. This can be done by specifying the desired width with `table-column-width`. If set to a nonzero value, it automatically activates `table-fixed-width`.

<pre> \usepackage{siunitx} \begin{tabular}{|S|S[table-column-width=3cm]|} </pre>			
Header	Header		{Header} & {Header} \\
-47.11	-47.11		-47.11 & -47.11 \\ 1.2 & 1.2 \\ 10.2754 & 10.2754
1.2	1.2		\end{tabular}
10.2754	10.2754		

6-7-18

Sometimes comparison of data and readability are improved if the data is rounded to a fixed number of decimals in some or all columns. This can be achieved (just for

tables) by specifying `table-auto-round`. Then all columns that have an explicit `table-format` are rounded to the number of decimals given in that format. The next example repeats the previous table but uses two different `table-format` settings to show the effects.

6-7-19

Header	Header	<code>\usepackage{siunitx}</code>
-47.110	-47.1	<code>\sisetup{table-auto-round}</code>
1.200	1.2	<code>\begin{tabular}{|S[table-format=-2.3]|S[table-format=-2.1]|}</code>
10.275	10.3	<code>{Header} & {Header} \\</code>
		<code>-47.11 & -47.11 \\ 1.2 & 1.2 \\ 10.2754 & 10.2754</code>
		<code>\end{tabular}</code>

As mentioned, there are further keys to tweak the column appearance; take a look at the manual if the described customizations seem to be insufficient.

6.7.5 fcolumn — Managing financial tables

Many tables contain columns with numerical data, and with `dcolumn` and `siunitx` we already saw an extension package that supports aligning such entries at their decimal separator thereby improving readability and comprehension of the table data.

With `fcolumn` Edgar Olthof provided another extension package that is specially geared towards financial data. Besides formatting the values to conform to standard layouts with appropriate decimal and group separators (customizable as necessary), it can sum up all values of a column and automatically typeset the result as well as checking that sums in specified columns are identical (which is important when producing balance sheets).

The package internally uses the integer arithmetic of \TeX , which can only handle numbers not exceeding $2^{31} - 1$, which translates to 2147483647. This means that the highest number the package can process is a bit more than twenty millions if two decimal places are being used; or up to two billions if you are prepared to drop the cents. For anything larger \TeX generates a low-level `Arithmetic overflow` error or, in some cases, just typesets a negative number instead. If the latter happens, it is detected by the package, and an appropriate error is issued too.

Columns with financial data are specified using the `f` column specifier provided by the package, which outputs the values using the continental European standard, i.e., two decimal places, a comma as decimal separator, and a period as group separator with three digits per group. The `f` specifier itself is defined in terms of a generic `F` specifier, which is the main workhorse provided by the package.

$$F\{group-sep\}\{decimal-sep\}\{number-structure\}\{extra-formatting\}$$

By using `F` it is trivial to define your own column specifiers with desired settings or redefine the `f` type to your liking. The *group-sep* and *decimal-sep* define the material to separate digit groups in the integer part and the decimal separator, respectively. The *number-structure* argument has a dual purpose. It consists of two numbers separated by some character. The character represents the decimal separator in the input data, and the numbers define the size of the digit groups in the integer part and the number

of digits in the decimal part. Thus, “3,2” means two decimal digits and groups of three digits in the integer part. If any table cell contains a number with more decimal digits than specified, the excess digits are discarded with a warning. If you do not want any grouping or no decimals, use 0 for the respective number.

Finally, the *extra-formatting* argument offers you the possibility to provide additional formatting, e.g., a font or color change. If this argument ends in a command that normally takes one argument, then this command receives the preformatted number for further manipulation. By default the argument is applied to the whole column. If, however, you use a comma inside, then everything to the right defines the formatting for summation cells, and everything to the left to all other column cells; e.g., `{, \mathbf}` boldens only the summation cells; see Examples 6-7-21 and 6-7-22 on pages 489–490 for use cases involving the fourth argument.

One important consideration when using the *extra-formatting* argument is that the column is set in math mode. You can therefore only use material that is allowed in math mode; e.g., you cannot use `\textbf` or `\bfseries` to bolden the column cells but instead must apply `\mathbf` or similar commands.

People in the Anglo-Saxon world would probably prefer a definition such as

```
\newcolumnntype{f}{F{,}{.}{3.2}{}}
```

but if you prefer group separation by a thin space, all that is necessary is to replace the *group-sep* with `\,` in the above declaration.

*Typesetting
negative values in
parentheses*

By default `fcolumn` typesets negative numbers using a minus sign. Another supported style is to place negative numbers in parentheses (a typical design in financial balance sheets), which is achieved by loading the package with the option `strict` as done in Example 6-7-21 on the facing page.

```
\sumline[skip-after-rule][skip-after-row]
```

If you place a `\sumline` command between any two rows of the table, you get a summary row added in which in each F-column the sum of all entries up to this point is calculated and typeset (with a rule above to indicate the summation). If you need some extra separation after that rule, you can add an optional *skip-after-rule* value (default 2pt), and if you also want extra space after the row, you need to use both optional arguments.

126,50	2,00	3,00	4,25	<code>\usepackage{fcolumn}</code>
1.101,00	–0,55		577,15	<code>\begin{tabular}{ffff}</code>
4,00	3,00	1,45	650,10	126,5 & 2 & 3, & 4,25 & \\\
1.231,50	4,45	4,45	1.231,50	1.101 & –,55 & & 577,15 & \\\
–1.000,00	150,20	230,00	–997,10	4 & 3,00 & 1,45 & 650,1 & \\\
2,95	79,80		0,05	<code>\sumline[2pt][4pt]</code>
234,45	234,45	234,45	234,45	–1000,00 & 150,2 & 230 & –997,1 & \\\
				2,95 & 79,8 & & 0,05 & \\\
				<code>\sumline</code>
				<code>\end{tabular}</code>

6-7-20

If you have to prepare long balance sheets, they might run longer than a full page, in which case you cannot use a `tabular` environment any longer. In that case all you have to do is to load `longtable` or `supertabular` in addition to `fcolumn` and use the `f` or `F` column specifier in the environments they provide.

Multipage financial tables

Each `\sumline` command has an important additional effect: if there is an even number of `F`-columns, then by default the first half is pairwise compared to the second and is expected to show the same sums; e.g., with eight columns the first is compared to the fifth, the second to the sixth, etc. If the sums do not agree, then a warning is generated so that you can check the values. This is what happens in the previous example if you process it. If there is an odd number of `F`-columns, checks are made only if explicitly requested.

Understanding balancing warnings

`\checkfcolumns{col_A}{col_B}`

The `\checkfcolumns` specifies that `F`-columns `col_A` and `col_B` should be compared. It can be used several times to specify all pairings needed. If used, it cancels the default checks described above. Note that if you have additional explanatory columns in your table, then `col_A` and `col_B` do not represent the physical column numbers.

For example, all columns of the previous table had the same total, but in this table the outer and inner columns need to balance, so the comparisons should not be done in the default way. Instead, the first column should be checked against column 4 and the second against 3 to avoid a complaint by the intermediate `\sumline` after the third row. This is achieved by using `\checkfcolumns` declarations to specify the desired pairings at the start of the `tabular` body. Any number of pairings can be specified — here we need two to get the correct column pairs checked. In this version of the example we also use the option `strict` to show negative numbers with parentheses, and we add some extra spaces around the summary rows. In addition, we redefined the `f` specifier to bolden the cells in summation rows.

				<code>\usepackage[strict]{fcolumn}</code>
				<code>\newcolumnntype{f}{F{.}{,}{3,2}{,}\mathbf{f}}</code>
				<code>\begin{tabular}{ffff}</code>
				<code>\checkfcolumns{1}{4}\checkfcolumns{2}{3}</code>
126,50	2,00	3,00	4,25	126,5 & 2 & 3, & 4,25 \\
1.101,00	(0,55)		577,15	1.101 & -,55 & & 577,15 \\
4,00	3,00	1,45	650,10	4 & 3,00 & 1,45 & 650,1 \\[2pt]
1.231,50	4,45	4,45	1.231,50	<code>\sumline[4pt][6pt]</code>
(1.000,00)	150,20	230,00	(997,10)	-1000,00 & 150,2 & 230 & -997,1 \\
2,95	79,80		0,05	2,95 & 79,8 & & 0,05\\[2pt]
				<code>\sumline[4pt]</code>
234,45	234,45	234,45	234,45	<code>\end{tabular}</code>

6-7-21

Sometimes you may want to place several short balance sheets (e.g., from different projects) into a single `tabular` to ensure that the column widths are uniform across the sheets. In this case using `\sumline` at the end of each block is not enough,

because the values from different projects are independent, and the summation therefore has to restart and not continue.

```
\resetsumline   \leeg{text}
```

The `\resetsumline` declaration resets the summation counters of all columns and the width of the summation rule back to zero to account for the above use case.

Another command that is sometimes useful is `\leeg` (Dutch for “empty” — about the only hint for the package origin). It is used to indicate that the current cell should not take part in the summation and simply typesets its *text* argument, which could even be a number, but that would most likely be cheating. A typical application is in heading lines (if they are not produced with `\multicolumn`) or when entering something like `\leeg{p.m.}` (*pro memoria*). In earlier versions of this package this was also necessary if you wanted an empty cell, hence the name. These days you can simply leave a cell empty.

In the next example we use Anglo-Saxon conventions for input and output, except that we typeset a small space for separating three-digit groups in the integer part. We also make use of the fourth argument of the `F` specifier to set all numbers in sans serif and the “actual” columns additionally in blue color except for the summation rows. For this we redefine the default `f` specifier and additionally define an `A` specifier.

The headers for all projects are identical (except for the title), so we place them into a separate command. Note the use of `\leeg` to prevent the header texts from being interpreted as numbers.¹ After each project we added `\resetsumline` to restart the summations. To get nice rules we enlist the help of `booktabs`.

```
\usepackage{xcolor,booktabs,fcolumn}
\newcolumnntype{f}{F{\,}{.}{3.2}{\mathsf}}
\newcolumnntype{A}{F{\,}{.}{3.2}{\color{blue}\mathsf,\mathsf}}
\newcommand\fhheader[1]{\multicolumn{6}{c}{\bfseries #1} \\\toprule
    expense & \leeg{budget} & & \leeg{actual} & & \\
    income & \leeg{expected} & & \leeg{actual} & & \\\midrule}

\begin{tabular}{@{}l f A f A @{}}
\fhheader{Booklet 113}
printing & 8200 & & 8000 & sales & 10000 & & 7863 & \\
binding & 600 & & 550 & & & & & \\
shipping & 800 & & 496.8 & & & & & \\
profit & 400 & & & loss & & & 1183.8 & \\
\sumline[2pt][30pt] & \resetsumline
\fhheader{Booklet 114}
printing & 6000 & & 6200 & sales & 8000 & & 8610 & \\
binding & 600 & & 650 & & & & & \\
... further text omitted ...
```

6-7-22

¹If you forget this, you either get an empty cell or, if parts of the text can be interpreted as a value, a somewhat “random” number and the rest is dropped. For example, 31 December 2022 would result in “31.00”, which is probably not desired.

Booklet 113

expense	budget	actual	income	expected	actual
printing	8 200.00	8 000.00	sales	10 000.00	7 863.00
binding	600.00	550.00			
shipping	800.00	496.80			
profit	400.00		loss		1 183.80
	<u>10 000.00</u>	<u>9 046.80</u>		<u>10 000.00</u>	<u>9 046.80</u>

Booklet 114

expense	budget	actual	income	expected	actual
printing	6 000.00	6 200.00	sales	8 000.00	8 610.00
binding	600.00	650.00			
shipping	640.00	737.60			
profit	760.00	1 022.40	loss		0.00
	<u>8 000.00</u>	<u>8 610.00</u>		<u>8 000.00</u>	<u>8 610.00</u>

6.8 Footnotes in tabular material

As stated in Section 3.5.2 on page 208, footnotes appearing inside tabular material are not typeset by standard \LaTeX . Only the environments `tabularx`, `longtable`, `mpsupertabular`, and `mpsupertabular*` will automatically typeset footnotes (at the bottom of the page).

As you generally want your “table notes” to appear just below the table, you normally have to tackle the problem yourself by managing the note marks and, for instance, by using `\multicolumn` commands at the bottom of your `tabular` environment to contain your table notes. Two alternatives are discussed in the next sections: using a `minipage` environment and using the `threeparttable` package.

6.8.1 Using `minipage` footnotes with tables

If a `tabular` or `array` environment is used inside a `minipage` environment, standard footnote commands may be used inside the table. In this case these footnotes are typeset at the bottom of the `minipage` environment, as explained in Section 3.5.1 on page 205.

Note the redefinition of `\thefootnote` in the example on the following page that allows us to make use of the `\footnotemark` command inside the `minipage` environment. Without this redefinition `\footnotemark` would have generated a footnote mark in the style of the footnotes for the main page, as explained in Section 3.5.2.

PostScript Type 1 fonts

Courier ^a	cour, courb, courbi, couri	\begin{minipage}{\linewidth} \renewcommand\thefootnote{\thempfootnote} \begin{tabular}{lp{1.8cm}}	
Charter ^b	bchb, bchbi, bchr, bchri	\multicolumn{2}{c}{\bfseries PostScript Type 1 fonts} \\ Courier\footnote{Donated by IBM.}	
Nimbus ^c	unmr, unmr	& cour, courb, courbi, couri	\\
URW Antiqua ^c	uaqrcc	Charter\footnote{Donated by Bitstream.}	
URW Grotesk ^c	ugqp	& bchb, bchbi, bchr, bchri	\\
Utopia ^d	putb, putbi, putr, putri	Nimbus\footnote{Donated by URW GmbH.} & unmr, unmr	\\
		URW Antiqua\footnotemark[\value{mpfootnote}] & uaqrcc	\\
		URW Grotesk\footnotemark[\value{mpfootnote}] & ugqp	\\
		Utopia\footnote{Donated by Adobe.}	
		& putb, putbi, putr, putri	
		\end{tabular}	
		\end{minipage}	

^aDonated by IBM.

^bDonated by Bitstream.

^cDonated by URW GmbH.

^dDonated by Adobe.

6-8-1

Of course, this approach does not automatically limit the width of the footnotes to the width of the table, so a little iteration with the minipage width argument might be necessary to achieve the desired effect.

6.8.2 threeparttable — Setting table and notes together

Another way to typeset table notes is with the package threeparttable, written by Donald Arseneau. This package has the advantage that it indicates unambiguously that you are dealing with notes inside tables. Moreover, it gives you full control of the actual reference marks and offers the possibility of having a caption for your tabular material. With this package the table notes are automatically set in a box with the width set equal to the width of the table.

Table notes set to the width of the table

Normally, the threeparttable environment would be contained within a table environment so that the table would float. However, threeparttable may also be used directly, in which case it constructs a nonfloating table similar to the nonfloating table environment setup described in Example 7-3-4 on page 532.

As its name suggests, the threeparttable environment consists of three parts. The caption part consists of the usual \caption command (which may come before or after the table). The table part may use one of the standard tabular or tabular* environments, the extended variants defined in the array package, or extensions such as the tabularx environment defined in the tabularx package. Other tabular environments may work as well; if in doubt, give it a try.¹ The third part of a threeparttable is the text of the table notes, which consists of one or more tablenotes environments.

Table notes within the table are specified with \tnote, which takes the marker as a mandatory argument. The environment makes no attempt to do auto-numbering; i.e., you are solely responsible for providing the correct marks. This is actually fairly

¹It should be noted that due to the implementation approach threeparttable does not work with multipage tables such as longtable. There is, however, an extension package called threetableex by Lars Madsen that you can use if you need table notes with longtable.

convenient when one often refers to the same note several times (and then auto-numbering is rather cumbersome to use) and the number of notes is usually small, so providing explicit numbers is not a big burden. In the `tablenotes` environment the notes are then marked up as `\items`. In the next example we use three `tablenotes` environments to show some of the formatting options available for them.

Table 1: PostScript Type 1 fonts		<code>\usepackage{threeparttable,booktabs}</code>
		<code>\begin{threeparttable}</code>
		<code>\caption{\textsf{PostScript Type\,1 fonts}}</code>
		<code>\begin{tabular}{@{}ll@{}} \toprule</code>
Courier ^a	cour, courb, courbi, couri	<code>Courier\tnote{a} & cour, courb, courbi, couri \\\</code>
Charter ^b	bchb, bchbi, bchr, bchri	<code>Charter\tnote{b} & bchb, bchbi, bchr, bchri \\\</code>
Nimbus ^c	unmr, unmr	<code>Nimbus\tnote{c} & unmr, unmr \\\</code>
URW Antiqua ^c	uaqrrc	<code>URW Antiqua\tnote{c} & uaqrrc \\\</code>
URW Grotesk ^c	ugqp	<code>URW Grotesk\tnote{c} & ugqp \\\</code>
Utopia ^d	putb, putbi, putr, putri	<code>Utopia\tnote{d} & putb, putbi, putr, putri \\\</code>
		<code>\bottomrule \end{tabular}</code>
		<code>\begin{tablenotes}</code>
		<code>\item[a]Donated by IBM. \item[b]Donated by Bitstream.</code>
		<code>\item[c]Donated by URW GmbH. \item[d]Donated by Adobe.</code>
		<code>\end{tablenotes}</code>
		<code>\begin{tablenotes}[flushleft,online]</code>
		<code>\item[a]Donated by IBM. \item[b]Donated by Bitstream.</code>
		<code>\item[c]Donated by URW GmbH. \item[d]Donated by Adobe.</code>
		<code>\end{tablenotes}</code>
		<code>\begin{tablenotes}[para]</code>
		<code>\item[]Donated by: \item[a]IBM, \item[b]Bitstream,</code>
		<code>\item[c]URW GmbH, \item[d]Adobe.</code>
		<code>\end{tablenotes}</code>
		<code>\end{threeparttable}</code>

^a Donated by IBM.

^b Donated by Bitstream.

^c Donated by URW GmbH.

^d Donated by Adobe.

a Donated by IBM.

b Donated by Bitstream.

c Donated by URW GmbH.

d Donated by Adobe.

Donated by: ^a IBM, ^b Bitstream,

^c URW GmbH, ^d Adobe.

6-8-2

As shown in the previous example, the `threeparttable` package offers several options to control the typesetting of the table notes:

`para` Notes are set within a paragraph, without forced line breaks.

`flushleft` No hanging indentation is applied to notes.

`online` Note labels are printed normal size, not as superscripts.

`normal` Normal default formatting is restored.

Each of these options may be used as a package option to set the default style for all such tables within the document. Alternatively, they may be used on individual `tablenotes` environments as done in the example.

In addition to these options the package has several commands that may be redefined to control the formatting in more specific ways than those provided by the package options. See the package documentation for details.

6.9 keyvaltable — Separating table data and formatting

Specifying table data in a system such as \LaTeX has a general problem: tables are multidimensional (typically two), but \TeX (and thus \LaTeX) processes its input as a one-dimensional stream, which means that the organization of the input data is normally biased towards one type of presentation.

For example, all `tabular`-type environments we have seen so far represent the table data as a sequence of rows with the cells being separated by `&`. It is therefore fairly easy to reorder rows or to specify how data in individual columns should be treated but far more difficult to specify handling of data within the rows. This is reasonable because in many cases data within one column require identical treatment. However, what happens if you discover that the data are better represented by changing the column order or you want to drop one column from the table? Any such change can become very cumbersome if you have already entered the data in your \LaTeX file.

The package `keyvaltable` by Richard Grewe uses a completely different approach and can therefore be an interesting alternative in many situations. Columns are “named”, and the data for each table row are then specified by key/value pairs. Furthermore, it introduces named table types that define column structure and layout of columns. After defining such types you can use them repeatedly for different tables in your document with the advantage that any later modification can be easily and consistently done. The downside is, of course, that there is more to type when entering your data, because it is now given as key/value pairs for each table cell, but this extra work quickly pays off through the extra flexibility offered by the approach.

It also means that some of the hand-tailoring that is possible with commands like `\multicolumn`, etc., in standard `tabular` either has no equivalent or needs to be done differently, because input data and presentation are by default separated instead of being intermixed.

`\NewKeyValTable [table-options] {structure-name} {col-spec} [specials]`

With `\NewKeyValTable` you define a specific table structure (how many columns, how aligned, etc.) and give it a name in the *structure-name* argument. This name is then referenced in `KeyValTable` environments to produce tables in that structure.

In the optional *table-options* argument you can define overall table properties, e.g., the type of table (multipage or single page), rules or backgrounds settings, etc. They can be overwritten on individual tables if necessary. The allowed key are discussed on page 497. The other optional argument *specials* allows you to set up a header row with headers spanning more than one column. This is discussed on page 502.

The most important argument is *col-spec* in which the column setup is described. Each column is identified by a *column-name* followed by a colon and a (possible empty) list of *properties* and ends with a semicolon. If you do not specify any column *properties*, you can leave out the colon, but the semicolon is always required except for the very last column. In particular, this means you can initially define a table structure

by just specifying column name and worry about the details later. The *properties* are given in form of a key/value list in which you can use the following keys:

align With this key the column alignment is defined. All usual column specifiers from the array package are supported including new column specifiers defined through `\newcolumnstype`.¹ Furthermore, the X from tabularx is available if supported by the backend used. The default value is to align at the left if the key is not given.

default This key defines a default value for cells in that column. By default column cells that are not specified are simply left empty.

format For more complex formatting each cell in the column can be preprocessed. The `format` expects a command with one argument that receives the cell content.

head By default the *column-name* is used for the column header. If you want to provide a different string or special formatting, this key can be used.

hidden If this key is set to `true` (or the key is given without a value), then the column is not shown in the table. This can be useful when producing several tables from the same table data displaying different aspects of the data.

As an example, the following declaration defines a table structure named `cities` that contains the four columns `name`, `country`, `visited`, and `note`.

```
\NewKeyValTable{cities}{ name: align=c, head=city;
  country: default = ??, format = \textbf;
  note:    align = X,   format = \raggedright, default = \ ---;
  visited: hidden }
```

All columns are left-aligned (default) except for `name`, which is centered, and `note`, which is a multiline column to allow for longer notes (`align`). All columns use their column name as the header except for `name`, which has the word “city” as its column header (`head`). We supply an explicit `default` for the columns `country` and `note`. Because spaces are dropped around the `=`, we had to use `_` to get a real space in front of the em-dash. The `visited` column is `hidden`, i.e., does not show up in the typeset output unless we overwrite the setting later. For two columns we define explicit formatting. Note that the last command of the `format` code can be a command with one argument, e.g., `\textbf`. If used in this way, it receives the cell content.

```
\begin{KeyValTable}[table-options]{structure-name} ... \end{KeyValTable}
```

The `KeyValTable` environment is then used in the document to typeset the individual tables. It takes the *structure-name* of a table structure as its mandatory argument,

¹Though not mentioned in the package documentation, it is also possible to make use of special array column specifiers, such as `>{...}`, `@{...}`, or `!{...}` and vertical rules `|` and `||` as well. See for instance Example 6-9-7 on page 503 where rules are used.

and in the optional *table-options* you can overwrite overall table settings, if necessary. In the example we use it to suppress all background colors. The full list of possible keys is discussed later.

			<code>\usepackage{keyvaltable}</code>
			<code>% \NewKeyValTable{cities}{...} as defined above</code>
			<code>\begin{KeyValTable}[nobg]{cities}</code>
			<code>\Row{name=Mainz, note=Birthplace of Gutenberg}</code>
			<code>\Row[format=\color{blue}]</code>
			<code>{name=New York, country=USA, visited=yes}</code>
			<code>\end{KeyValTable}</code>
city	country	note	
Mainz	??	Birthplace of Gutenberg	
New York	USA	—	

6-9-1

As you can see, the actual table data are provided through a number of `\Row` commands inside the `KeyValTable` environment.

`\Row[row-options]{cell-data}\kvtNewRowStyle{name}{row-options}`

The *cell-data* argument should be a comma-separated list of column names and their values (use braces if the value contains a comma or an equal sign). Because columns have names, you can give them in any order and also leave some out — those that are missing get the default value for the column if one was set up; otherwise, the cell will be empty.

Spacing around rows

In the *row-options* you can specify formatting pertaining to the row as a whole. The keys above and below provide for extra space; the key around is a shorthand for setting both to the same value. With the key `bg` you can set an explicit background color for the row overwriting the default background coloring.

Alignment of all cells in a row

By default the cells of a row use the alignment specified for the respective column, but if you use the key `align` on a row, it overwrites the values for all cells (and cell groups) in the current row.

Formatting the cells of a row

To provide special formatting for all cells in a row you can use the `format` key. To be able to specify how row formatting relates to column formatting (which also offers such a key) the key actually exists in three variants: using `format` the row format is applied *before* the column format, with `format*` the column format is applied first, and with `format!` the column format is not applied at all.

Rows looking like (sub)headers

Hiding rows

Sometimes you want to have a row formatted like the header row, and a convenient way to achieve this is to specify the Boolean key `headlike`. This adjusts the alignment, the background color, and the format to use the values specified for the table header. Finally, with the Boolean key `hidden` you can hide or show that particular row.

Defining named row styles

If you regularly need rows with a special set of row options, you can give them a name with `\kvtNewRowStyle` and then, on the appropriate rows, refer to the set using the key `style` and the *name* as its value. To change an existing set use `\kvtRenewRowStyle`.

This useful feature is exhibited in Example 6-9-3 on page 500 where we use it to display parts of a larger table several times. Some of the rows have a style named `H`, and in the second table we then simply omit these rows by giving this style the meaning of hidden. Another use case for it is to define a heading style for subheadings in your table.

Formatting the overall table

The *table-options* in the optional argument to the `\NewKeyValTable` declaration or the `KeyValTable` environment control the overall appearance of the table.

By default, tables can break across pages using `xltable` as the backend package, but you can explicitly request a different package for formatting your table. This is done with the `backend` key that selects the package used to do the actual table formatting¹ and therefore also limits the allowed syntax in the column specification. For example, if `tabular` or `longtable` is chosen, then `X` is not available. The key accepts the values `tabular`, `tabularx`, `tabu`, `longtable`, `xltable` (default), or `longtabu`.² Alternatively, you can use the `shape` key, which accepts the values `multipage` (default) and `onpage`. This is equivalent to using `xltable` or `tabularx` with the `backend` key.

*Selecting the
backend package*

If the table package chosen with the `backend` key supports `X` columns, then the default width for the table is `\linewidth`. If necessary, you can overwrite this default by specifying a value with the key `width`.

Table width

Multipage tables can be horizontally aligned using the `halign` key (allowed values `l`, `c`, and `r`), while `onpage` tables can be vertically aligned with respect to other material on the same “line” (allowed values `t`, `c`, and `b`). The default is centered in both directions. Example 6-9-3 on page 500 shows an example with two top-aligned tables next to each other.

*Vertical and
horizontal
alignment of tables*

With the Boolean key `showhead` you control whether a header row is shown (default `true`), and with `headalign` you can specify a default alignment for cells in the header row. If not given, the cells are aligned like any other cell in the column. Other formatting declarations (such as `\bfseries`) can be provided in the key `headformat`. Its value can be a command with one argument that receives the header cell content.

*Altering the header
format*

A background color for the heading row is defined by `headbg` with a light gray (`black!14`) as the default value. The remaining table rows alternate the background between white and gray by default. This is controlled with the key `rowbg`. It expects two color values separated by `..` as its value; the default is `white..black!10`. If you do not want any background color for rows, use an empty value for either key to indicate that. There also exists the shorthand keys `norowbg` (only header with background) and `nobg` (no background coloring).

*Coloring headers
and rows*

¹In earlier versions `keyvaltable` was always using the `tabu` package, but this package has a number of serious problems (and is unmaintained for a more than a decade now) and may no longer be a good choice, so now `xltable` is used by default.

²To support different backend formatters, the package automatically loads `array`, `booktabs`, `colorbl`, `longtable`, `tabularx`, `xcolor`, and `xltable` for you.

`\MidRule[rule width] \CMidRule[rule width]{column list}`

Using table rules

By default `keyvaltable` uses the `booktabs` package to place horizontal rules around the header and at the end of the table. Further rules can be added by placing some `\MidRule` commands between the `\Row` commands. This command accepts an optional argument denoting the *rule width*, if specified. With `\CMidRule` you can add rules underlining only some of the columns.

If you do not want any rules, set the Boolean key `showrules` to `false` or use the shorthand `norules` for that. Explicit rules made with `\MidRule` or `\CMidRule` commands are still honored in that case.

Providing a table caption and label

If you want to give your table a caption (and possibly a `\label` for referencing it), there are several possibilities. For tables that are less than one page in size you can put them into a `table` environment and use `\caption` as usual.¹ With tables that span several pages this obviously does not work, and for this case the table keys `caption` and `label` are provided. The position of the caption can be at the beginning or the end of the table. This is customized with the key `captionpos` that accepts `t` or `b` (default); Example 6-9-6 on page 502 shows an example.

You can also specify an alternate caption text with `caption/alt` for all table pages other than the one with the main caption, and with `caption/lot` you can have a customized caption text in the list of tables.

In the next example we have explicitly chosen `tabular` as the formatter to ensure that the table is not broken across pages. Note that choosing `tabularx` in that case would have been wrong because then the `\MidRule` would come out far too wide because it is the only object that would occupy the full `\linewidth` given that there are no `X`-columns in this table. The default rules have been turned off, and the row background is set to white for all rows except the head row that we kept as the default.

			<code>\usepackage{keyvaltable}</code>
			<code>\NewKeyValTable[backend=tabular,norules,norowbg,</code>
			<code>headformat=\bfseries</code>
			<code>{cities}{name; country; visited; note: hidden}</code>
			<code>\begin{KeyValTable}{cities}</code>
			<code>\Row[above=5pt]{country=Germany, name=Mainz, note=...}</code>
			<code>\MidRule[2pt]</code>
			<code>\Row{country=USA, name=New York, visited=yes}</code>
			<code>\end{KeyValTable}</code>
name	country	visited	
Mainz	Germany		
New York	USA	yes	

6-9-2

Defaults for all future environments can be set with the command `\kvtSet`. Thus, if you prefer, for example, uncolored tables with bold headers, then write

```
\kvtSet{nobg, headformat=\bfseries }
```

in the preamble of your document instead of setting them in `\NewKeyValTable` or on each `KeyValTable` environment.

¹If you use `tabular` or `tabularx` as the backend, then this is the only way to get a caption.

Defining named table styles

Similar to the named row styles that can be accessed with the row key `style` it is possible to declare name table styles using the command `\kvtNewTableStyle` or `\kvtRenewTableStyle`. For instance, in the previous example we could have written

```
\kvtNewTableStyle{plain}{norules,norowbg,headformat=\bfseries}
\NewKeyValTable[backend=tabular,style=plain]{cities}
  {name; country; visited; note: hidden}
```

in the preamble and achieved the same result but with the advantage that the `plain` style can be used in other table declarations as well.

It is also possible to reuse a table style without giving it a name; more exactly you can reuse the key/value list of the previous table by using the key `resume*`. This reactivates the key/values from the previous table but additionally sets `resume` so that the `kvtRow` counter is not restarted. This allows you to have consecutive tables, possibly separated by some text, in the same design and with numbered rows that continue across the tables; see Example 6-9-5 on page 501 that makes use of `kvtRow`.

Table data in external files for reuse

There are a number of cases where it makes sense to reuse table data several times, either in separate documents or even in the same one — displaying different columns each time. This can be easily achieved by placing all `\Row` commands and then loading that file with `\ShowKeyValTableFile`.

```
\ShowKeyValTableFile[table-options]{name}{file}
```

The command internally starts a `KeyValTable` environment using *table-options* and *name* as arguments and loads the *file*. There are some T_EXnical reasons why you cannot always use `\input` in the middle of a `tabular` structure, which are circumvented if you use this command instead.

An interesting aspect of storing the table data in a separate file is that you can easily display only parts of it in different places, which allows consistent views to different aspects of your data. In the next example we give some rows a row `style` (which by default does nothing) and for the second table redefine this style to mean `hidden`. Here is the data file that is used twice in the next example:

```
\begin{filecontents}[overwrite]{cities.kvt}
  \Row{city=Mainz, country=Germany, people=0.2 mil,
        visited=\emph{home town}}
  \Row{city=London, country=UK, people=8.9 mil, visited=yes}
  \Row[style=H]{city=New York, country=USA, people=8.4 mil,
        visited=planned}
  \Row[style=H]{city=Paris, country=France, people=2.1 mil}
\end{filecontents}
```

If you later add more data rows, all tables will automatically update.

```
\usepackage{keyvaltable} \kvtNewRowStyle{H}{-}
\NewKeyValTable{overview}{city: ; country: ; people: ; visited: hidden}
\NewKeyValTable{visits}{country: ; city: ; people: hidden; visited: align=c}
\ShowKeyValTableFile[shape=onpage,valign=t]{overview}{cities.kvt} \quad
\kvtRenewRowStyle{H}{hidden} % hide the H rows in next table
\ShowKeyValTableFile[shape=onpage,nobg,valign=t]{visits}{cities.kvt}
```

city	country	people	country	city	visited
Mainz	Germany	0.2 mil	Germany	Mainz	<i>home town</i>
London	UK	8.9 mil	UK	London	yes
New York	USA	8.4 mil			
Paris	France	2.1 mil			

6-9-3

It is also possible to directly process .csv files with the help of packages, such as `datatool` or `csvsimple`. Details and setup examples are given in the `keyvaltable` package documentation.

Scattering table data across your document

There are situations where it is helpful if you do not put the table data in one place, i.e., in the environment body of a `KeyValTable` or in a separate file but instead collect the data from different places in your document. This is especially useful if those data grow over time. Suppose that you write a book on different cities, each having its own section, and at the end of the book you show several tables with data about the cities described. In such a case it would be nice to have the relevant data rows for each city as part of the section with \LaTeX collecting the data and adding it into the tables. If you later add another section or remove one your tables automatically update (just like the table of contents would do). For this `keyvaltable` offers full support through the following commands:

```
\NewCollectedTable{table-name}{structure-name}
\ShowCollectedTable[table-options]{table-name}
```

With the help of `\NewCollectedTable` you declare a *table-name* for which you want to collect data in your document. The *structure-name* is one that has been declared earlier with `\NewKeyValTable`. Instead of a `KeyValTable` environment, you then use `\ShowCollectedTable` at the point where you want the table to appear.

```
\CollectRow[row-options]{table-name}{cell-data}
```

To provide the data for each row we have to use `\CollectRow` instead of `\Row`, because we have to specify for which *table-name* we collect. The other arguments are the same as for `\Row`, which was discussed on page 496.

This command can be used as often as necessary to add data to the table, and it can be placed before or after the corresponding `\ShowCollectedTable` command. As a consequence, you need at least two \LaTeX runs: one to collect all data and one to display it (or more exactly display the data collected in the previous run).

The next example shows the commands in action in a small application in which we sprinkle notes throughout a document and collect them in a single table. The implementation is a bit naughty; one has to remember that the mandatory argument to `\note` becomes part of a key/value list and so cannot contain commas unless you hide them inside braces as we did in the first note.

My notes:

prio	comment
high	A note, with comma
low	one more with prio change
high	and some afterthought

```
\usepackage{keyvaltable}
\NewKeyValTable[norowbg]{ToDo}{ prio: default=high;
                                text: head=comment }

\NewCollectedTable{notes}{ToDo}
\newcommand\note[2] []{\CollectRow[#1]{notes}{text=#2}}

\note{{A note, with comma}}
\note{one more with prio change, prio=low}
My notes: \ShowCollectedTable{notes} And more text.
\note[bg=blue!10]{and some afterthought}
```

6-9-4

And more text.

Automatic row numbering and referencing

The `keyvaltable` package supports some level of automatic row numbering through a set of three \LaTeX counters. The counter `kvtRow` holds the current row number in the current table (excluding any header rows), `kvtTypeRow` corresponds to the row number when counting all rows in all tables with the same `KeyValTable` name, and `kvtTotalRow` represents the total across all `KeyValTable` environments up to the current point.

These counters can, for example, be used in the value to the default key to set up automatic numbering without the need to specify any data for this column. Note that overwriting the generated value does not stop the counter from being incremented unless you use the row option `uncounted`. As the example shows, it is also possible to use the counter values inside the `\Row` command.

Text	
First row	§1
Second row	2*
Interlude	—
Last row	§3

```
\usepackage{keyvaltable}
\NewKeyValTable{autonum}{ text: head=\textbf{Text};
                           line: head=\ , default=\S\thekvtRow }

\begin{KeyValTable}{autonum}
  \Row{text=First row} \Row{text=Second row, line=\thekvtRow*}
  \Row[uncounted]{text=Interlude, line=--} \Row{text=Last row}
\end{KeyValTable}
```

6-9-5

By default, the `kvtRow` counter is reset for each table. It is, however, possible to continue counting across several tables by specifying the table option `resume` in which case the counter resumes from its value in the previous `KeyValTable` environment. The above setup does not allow you to refer to the counter values via

L^AT_EX's label mechanism, because it would not be clear where one should place the `\label`, but for this the package provides the command `\kvtLabel`.

`\kvtLabel [type] {counter}{label}`

The `\kvtLabel` typesets the *counter* value. If the mandatory *label* argument is empty, then that is all it does. Otherwise it calls `\label` to label the counter value so that it can be referenced. The optional *type* argument if present is also passed to the `\label` command to support extensions like `cleveref`. A possible use case is shown in the next example using `cleveref` for references. Note that if used in the value to format, we have to omit the *label* argument because that is supplied by the table cell data.

Table 1: Named Refs

Line	Text
1	First row
2	Second row
3	See row 1

All explanations are given in rows 1 to 3.

```

\usepackage{cleveref,keyvaltable}
\crefname{row}{row}{rows}
\NewKeyValTable[headbg=blue!15,captionpos=t]{NamedRef}
{ label: align=r, head=Line, format=\kvtLabel[row]{kvtRow};
  text: align=l, head=Text}
\begin{KeyValTable}[caption=Named Refs]{NamedRef}
\Row{text=First row, label=first} \Row{text=Second row}
\Row{text=See \cref{first}, label=last}
\end{KeyValTable}
All explanations are given in \crefrange{first}{last}.

```

6-9-6

Spanning cells

Up to now all table columns have been independent, and one could alter their order arbitrarily inside `\NewKeyValTable`. In more complex tables, however, one sometimes needs to combine some adjacent cells in individual rows of the table. In the table packages discussed earlier, this is done by using `\multicolumn` declarations inside the table body, but with `keyvaltable` it can be done as part of the table setup.

All you have to do is to give a set of adjacent column its own name and then use that name in `\Row` or `\CollectRow` commands (and of course then make sure that the columns are in fact adjacent in your `\NewKeyValTable` declaration).

This is done by specifying suitable `colgroups` in the *specials* argument of `\NewKeyValTable` as shown in the next example. Each column group is named, and you can specify the columns it should span, how the result should align (default `c` not `l`), and whether it should get a special format. For `align` and `format` you can alter the defaults as we did not in the example. Also note the use of `|` and `||` in the `align` values to help you see the alignment better.

```

\usepackage{keyvaltable}
\kvtSet{ColGroup/format=\itshape,ColGroup/align=r}
\NewKeyValTable{spantest}{ colA: align=l|; colB: align=l||;
                          colC: align=l|; colD:}
[ colgroups={ all: span=colA+colB+colC+colD, format=\textbf;
  AuBuC: span=colA+colB+colC, align=c|;
  AuB: span=colA+colB, align=l||; CuD: span=colC+colD } ]

```

colA	colB	colC	colD
The Start			
1	2	3	4
— right aligned text —			
I & 2		3	4
1	2	3	4
1	2	3 & 4	
— 3 out of 4 —			4
I & 2		3 & 4	
The End			

6-9-7

```
\begin{KeyValTable}{spantest}
  \Row{all=The Start} \Row{colA=1, colB=2, colC=3, colD=4}
  \Row{all=--- right aligned text ---}
  \Row{AuB=1 \& 2, colC=3, colD=4}
  \Row{colA=1, colB=2, colC=3, colD=4}
  \Row{colA=1, colB=2, CuD=3 \& 4}
  \Row{AuBuC=--- 3 out of 4 ---, colD=4}
  \Row{AuB=1 \& 2, CuD=3 \& 4} \Row{all=The End}
\end{KeyValTable}
```

The advantage of using `colgroups` is that you can specify special table formatting through names and keep the table body free of formatting directives. If you later decide to change some of that formatting, e.g., centering the text in the `all` column group or using sans serif rather than a bold typeface, then you have to alter your document only in a single place, and the change is applied wherever you used that name.

You have probably guessed that internally this is realized through the use of `\multicolumn` and that this command can also be directly used in the table body if necessary. If you do this and you want to span several columns explicitly, you have to place it as the value of the first named cell that should take part in the span, and the other participating cells in the row should not get any value. The disadvantage of this approach (except when just overwriting the alignment of a single cell) is that any alteration in the `\NewKeyTable` setup, e.g., reordering the named columns, might render your table body invalid, so you have to be careful that this does not happen.

The `\multicolumn` text is formatted according to the setup for the starting cell, which explains why in the next example the text in the third row is blue (inner setting), is bold in the fourth row (column setting), and is bold italic in the fifth row (combined column and row setting).

We mentioned earlier that the cells in a row do not have to be given in any particular order as they are named. However, if using `\multicolumn`, you better keep them ordered in a reasonable way and avoid tables like the next example, because otherwise you will have real difficulties to make changes.

penny	euro	cent
1	2	3
1	2	3
1	2+3	
1+2		3
1+2+3		
1	2	3

6-9-8

```
\usepackage{keyvaltable,Alegreya,AlegreyaSans}
\NewKeyValTable[headformat=\sffamily]{MultiCol}
{ penny: align=c|, format=\bfseries; euro: align=l|; cent: }
\begin{KeyValTable}{MultiCol}
  \Row{euro=\multicolumn{1}{r|}{2}, cent=3, penny=1}
  \Row[format!=\sffamily]{penny=1, cent=3, euro=2}
  \Row{penny=1, euro=\multicolumn{2}{c}{\color{blue}2+3}}
  \Row{cent=3, penny=\multicolumn{2}{c|}{1+2}}
  \Row[format=\itshape]{penny=\multicolumn{3}{c}{1+2+3}}
  \Row{cent=3, euro=2, penny=1}
\end{KeyValTable}
```

Complex table headers

By default table structures defined by `\NewKeyValTable` have a single header row that can be customized through the keys `headalign`, `headbg`, or `headformat`.

However, in more complex tables you may need more than one header line or headers that span several columns, and in that case you have to define the necessary structure in the optional *specials* argument to `\NewKeyValTable` similar to what we did for column spans in the previous section. The keyword to use in there is `headers`. Its value is a list of row specifications for each header row separated by `\\`. The row specifications itself are lists of (possibly spanning) columns together with applicable attributes. As a shorthand you can write `::` for a row with the headers for all columns.

As an example, the table definition below shows a table with five columns named `precolumn` and `colA` to `colD`. Its header consists of three rows with the first showing a title spanning columns `colA` to `colD`, the second showing subheaders for column pairs, and the third showing the names of all column titles.

```
\usepackage{keyvaltable}
\NewKeyValTable[headformat=\bfseries, norowbg]{complexheader}
{ precolumn: align=c, format=\textbf ; colA: ; colB: ; colC: ;colD: }
[ headers={ colA+colB+colC+colD : head=\textsf{From A to D} \\
           colA+colB : head= A \& B;
           colC+colD : align=r, head=$\to$ C \& D \\ :: }
, colgroups={BtoE: span=colA+colB+colC+colD, format=\textit} ]
```

As you observe, spanning columns are denoted by concatenating the column names with `+` symbols, and the available attributes are `head` for specifying the title and `align` to change the alignment center to left or right. We also used `colgroups` to produce intermediate subtitles in the table to achieve the following result:

precolumn	From A to D			
	A & B	→ C & D		
	colA	colB	colC	colD
1	1.a	1.b	—	1.d
2	2.a	2.b	2.c	2.d
Centered subtitle				
3	3.a	—	3.c	3.d

```
\begin{KeyValTable}{complexheader}
\Row{ precolumn=1, colA=1.a, colB=1.b,
      colC=---, colD=1.d }
\Row{ precolumn=2, colA=2.a, colB=2.b,
      colC=2.c, colD=2.d }
\Row[around=3pt]{BtoE=Centered subtitle}
\Row{ precolumn=3, colA=3.a, colB=---,
      colC=3.c, colD=3.d }
\end{KeyValTable}
```

6-9-9

6.10 tabularray — Late breaking news

This is a fairly recent and promising addition by Jianrui Lyu to the world of tables written in the L3 programming layer. It is still under heavy development with new (and sometimes changed) features appearing at regular intervals and, therefore, not yet documented in this book. It is, however, already worth taking a look at [123].

Mastering Floats

7.1 An overview of \LaTeX 's float concepts	506
7.2 Float placement control	519
7.3 Extensions to \LaTeX 's float concept	528
7.4 Controlling the float caption	538
7.5 Key/value approaches for floats and subfloats	560

Documents would be easier to read if all the material that belonged together was never split between pages. However, this is often technically impossible, and \TeX , by default, splits textual material between two pages to avoid partially filled pages. Nevertheless, when this outcome is not desired (as with figures and tables), the material must be “floated” to a convenient place, such as the bottom or the top of the current or next page, to prevent half-empty pages.

This chapter shows how “large chunks” of material can be kept conveniently on the same or a nearby page by using a float object. We begin by introducing the general concepts through which \LaTeX handles float objects and the parameters that define how \LaTeX typesets its basic `figure` and `table` float environments and describe some of the packages that make it easy to control float placement (Section 7.2).

We then continue by explaining how you can define and use your own floating environments (Section 7.3.1) or, conversely, how captioning commands can be used to enter information into the list of figures and tables for nonfloating material (Section 7.3.2). Then methods for rotating the content of a float are described (Section 7.3.3). It is often visually pleasing to include a “picture” inside a paragraph, with the text wrapping around it. Some package authors have tried their hand on this difficult topic, and in Section 7.3.4 we look at one of them in some detail.

The fourth section addresses the problem of customizing captions. There is a recognized need to be able to typeset the description of the contents of figures and tables in many different ways. This includes specifying subfigures and subtables, each with its own caption and label, inside a larger float.

In the final section of this chapter we then look at two recent packages that offer a modern key/value approach to the float topic and attempt to bridge the gaps between the different packages introduced in the earlier sections. While both attempt to be fairly comprehensive, they have a different focus, which is why we describe both to enable you to make an educated decision based on the requirements of the job.

Many float-related packages have been developed over the years, unfortunately often with incompatible concepts and syntax, so there is no point discussing them all here. In fact, the packages that we describe often feature quite a few more commands than we are able to illustrate. Our aim is to enable you to make an educated choice and to show how a certain function can be obtained in a given framework. In each case consulting the original documentation will introduce you to the full possibilities of a given package.

7.1 An overview of L^AT_EX's float concepts

Floats are often problematic in the present version of L^AT_EX, because the system was developed at a time when documents contained considerably less graphical material than they do today. Placing floats (tables and figures) works relatively well as long as the space they occupy is not too large compared with the space taken up by the text. If a lot of floating material is present, however, then it is often the case that all material from a certain point onward floats to the end of the chapter or document unless you make some adjustments on the level of individual floats.

You can also try to fine-tune the float style parameters for a given document but often a combination of both configuration and local adjustments is necessary to achieve the desired typesetting results.

The present section explains the background and behavior of L^AT_EX's float algorithm and explains where and how you can manipulate it to serve your needs. We start with defining the terminology and then discuss the algorithm and its configuration possibilities. The section finishes with a look at the consequences resulting from the design choices made in the algorithm and how they affect the processing of your documents.

7.1.1 L^AT_EX float terminology

In this section we define the terminology used throughout the present chapter.

Float classes

Each float in L^AT_EX belongs to a class often referred to as its type. By default, L^AT_EX knows about two classes, viz., *figure* and *table*. Further classes can be added by a document class or by packages; this is discussed in Section 7.3.1 on page 529. The class a float belongs to influences certain aspects of the float positioning, such as its default placement specification (if not overridden on the float itself).

One important property of the float placement algorithm is that L^AT_EX never violates the order of placement within a class of floats. For example, if you have

Figure 1, Table 1, Figure 2 in a document, then Figure 1 is always placed before Figure 2. However, Table 1 (belonging to a different float class) is placed independently and hence can appear before, after, or between the figures.

Some of the extension packages discussed in Section 7.3 make no provisions to ensure this basic property, and one has to visually watch out for possible misorderings. Where this can happen, it is explicitly remarked upon in the text.

Float areas

L^AT_EX knows about two float areas within a column where it can place floats: the top area and the bottom area of the column. In two-column layout, it also knows about a top area spanning the two columns. There is no bottom area for page-wide floats in two-column mode.

In addition, L^AT_EX can make float columns and float pages, i.e., columns or pages that contain only floats. Finally, L^AT_EX can place floats in-line into the text (but only if so directed on the individual float).

Float placement specifiers

To direct a float to be placed into one of these areas, a float placement specifier can be provided as an optional argument to the float. If no such optional argument is given, then a default placement specifier is used (which depends on the float class as mentioned above but usually allows the float to be placed in all areas if not subject to other restrictions).

A float placement specifier can consist of the following characters in *any* order:

- ! indicates that some of the restrictions that normally apply should be ignored (discussed later)
- h indicates that the float is allowed to be placed in-line (“here”)
- t indicates that the float is allowed to go into a top area
- b indicates that the float is allowed to go into a bottom area
- p indicates that the float is allowed to go on a float page or column area

The order in which these characters are put in the optional argument does *not* influence how the algorithm tries to place the float! The precise order is discussed on page 509. This is one of the common misunderstandings, for instance when people think that `bt` means that the bottom area should be tried first. Also note that if a letter is not present, then the corresponding area is not tried at all.

Float algorithm parameters

There are about 20 parameters that influence the placement; for a detailed discussion see page 510. They define

- how many floats can go into a certain area,
- how big an area can become,

- how much text there has to be on a page (in other words, how much the top and bottom areas can occupy) and
- how much space is inserted
 - between consecutive floats in an area, and
 - between the area and the text above or below.

Float reference points (aka call-outs)

A point in the document that references the float (e.g., “see Figure X”) is called a “call-out”, and the float body should be placed close to the (main) call-out, because its placement in the document affects the placement of the float in the output and determines when \LaTeX sees the float for the first time. It is important to understand that if a float is placed in the middle of a paragraph, the reference point for the algorithm is the next line break, or page break, in the paragraph that follows the actual placement in the source.

For technical and practical reasons it is usually best to place all floats between paragraphs (i.e., after the paragraph with the call-out), even if that makes the call-out and reference point slightly disagree.

7.1.2 Basic behavioral rules of \LaTeX ’s float mechanism

With this knowledge, we are now ready to delve into the algorithm’s behavior. First we have to understand that all of \LaTeX ’s typesetting algorithms are designed to avoid any sort of backtracking. This means that \LaTeX reads through the document source, formats what it finds, and (more or less) immediately typesets it. The reasons for this design choice were to limit complexity (which is still quite high) and also to maintain reasonable speed (remember that this is from the early eighties).

For floats, this means that the algorithm is greedy; i.e., the moment it encounters a float, it immediately tries to place it and, if it succeeds, it never changes its decision. This means that it may choose a solution that could be deemed inferior in light of data received later.

For example, if a figure is allowed to go to the top or bottom area, \LaTeX may decide to place this figure in the top area. If this figure is followed by two tables that are allowed to go only to the top, these tables may not fit anymore. A solution that could have worked in this case (but was not tried) would have been to place the figure in the bottom area and the two tables in the top area.

The basic sequence when placing floats

Here is the basic sequence the algorithm runs through:

- If a float is encountered in the source document, \LaTeX attempts to place it immediately according to its rules (detailed later);
- if this succeeds, the float is placed, and that decision is never changed;

- if this does not succeed, then L^AT_EX places the float into a holding queue to be reconsidered when the next page is started (but not earlier).
- Once a page has finished, L^AT_EX examines this holding queue and tries to empty it as best as possible. For this it first tries to generate as many float pages as possible (in the hope of getting floats off the queue). Once this possibility is exhausted, it next attempts to place the remaining floats into the top and bottom areas. It looks at all the remaining floats and either places them or defers them to a later page (i.e., adding them once more to the holding queue).
- After that, it starts processing document material for this page. In the process, it may encounter further floats.
- If the end of the document has been reached or if a `\clearpage` is encountered, L^AT_EX starts a new page, relaxes all restrictive float conditions, and outputs all floats in the holding queue by placing them on float page(s).

In two-column mode, the same algorithm is used, except that it works on the level of columns; e.g., when a column has finished, L^AT_EX looks at the holding queue and generates float columns, etc.

Detailed placement rules

Whenever L^AT_EX encounters a float environment in the source, it first looks at the holding queue to check if there is already a float of the same class in the queue. If that happens to be the case, no placement is allowed, and the float immediately goes into the holding queue.

If not, L^AT_EX looks at the float placement specifier for this float, either the explicit one in the optional argument or the default one from the float class. The default per float class is set in the document class file (e.g., `article.cls`) and very often resolves to `tbp`, but this is not guaranteed.

L^AT_EX always uses the following fixed order of tests until an allowed placement is found:

1. If the specifier contains a `!`, the algorithm ignores any restrictions related either to the number of floats that can be put into an area or to the maximum size an area can occupy. Otherwise, the restrictions defined by the parameters apply. If just a `!` was specified, then the float class default is assumed as allowed areas (with other restrictions relaxed).
2. As a next step it checks if `h` has been specified. If so, it tries to place the float right where it was encountered. If this works, i.e., if there is enough space and a float of this class is not already placed into the bottom area, then it is placed and processing of that float ends.
If this fails and no other position was specified, the algorithm changes the specifier to `t` (for a possible placement on the current or next page).
3. Next it looks for `t`, and if that has been specified, it tries to place the float in the top area. If there is no other restriction that prevents this, then the float is placed there and float processing stops.

4. If not, it finally checks if `b` is present and, if so, tries to place the float into the bottom area (again obeying any restrictions that apply if `!` was not given).
5. If that does not work either or is not permitted because the specifier was not given, the float is added to the holding queue.

This ends the processing when encountering a float in the document. A `p` specifier (if present) is not used during the above process. It is looked at only when the holding queue is being emptied at the next page or column boundary.

Emptying the holding queue at the column or page boundary

After a column or page has been finished, \LaTeX looks at the holding queue and attempts to empty it out as best as possible. For this, it first tries to build float pages or columns.¹

Any floats participating in a float page (or column) must have a `p` as a float specifier in its float placement specification. If not, the float cannot go on a float page and, in addition, also prevents any further deferred float of the same class from being placed onto the float page!

If the float can go there, it is marked for inclusion on the float page, but the processor may still abort the attempt if the float page does not get filled “enough” (depending on the parameter settings for float pages). Only at the very end of the document, or when a `\clearpage` has been issued, are these restrictions lifted, and a float is then placed on a float page even if it has no `p` and would be the only float on that page.

Creation of float pages continues until the algorithm has no further floats to place or when it fails to produce a float page due to parameter settings. In the latter case, all floats that have not been placed so far are then considered for inclusion in the top and bottom areas of the next page (or column).

The process there is the same as the one described above, except that the `h` specifier no longer has any meaning (because we are, by now, far away from the original “here”) and is therefore ignored, and the floats at this time are not coming from the source document but are taken one after the other from the holding queue.

Any float that could not be placed is then put back into the holding queue so that when \LaTeX is ready to look at further textual input from the document, the holding queue may already contain floats. A consequence of this is that a float encountered in the document may immediately get deferred just because an earlier float of the same float class is already on hold.

Parameters influencing the placement

There are four counters that control how many floats can go into the different areas:

totalnumber This is the maximum number of floats in a text column (default 3). It is not used for float pages; they can hold any number of floats.

¹In two-column mode \LaTeX builds float columns (when finishing a column) and also attempts to generate float pages when finishing a page. In the remainder of the discussion “float page” denotes either, depending on the context.

Controlling how many floats can go into areas

`topnumber` The maximum number of floats in the top area (default 2).

`bottomnumber` The maximum number of floats in the bottom area (default 1).

`dbltopnumber` The maximum number of full-width floats in two-column mode going above the text columns (default 2).

The sizes of the areas are controlled through parameters (to be changed with `\renewcommand`) that define the maximum (or minimum) size of the area, expressed as a fraction of the page height: *Controlling the area sizes*

`\topfraction` Maximum fraction of the page that can be occupied by floats at the top of the page (e.g., 0.2 means 20% can be floats; the default value is 0.7).

`\bottomfraction` Maximum fraction of the page that can be occupied by floats at the bottom of the page (the default value is 0.3).

`\dbltopfraction` Analog of `\topfraction` for double-column floats on a two-column page (the default value is 0.7).

`\textfraction` Minimum fraction of a normal page that must be occupied by text (the default value is 0.2).

The space that separates floats within an area, as well as between float areas and text areas, is defined through the following parameters (all of which are rubber lengths, i.e., can contain some stretch or shrink components). Their defaults depend on the document font size and change when class options like 11pt or 12pt are used. We show only the 10pt defaults; the others are similar. *Controlling the space between floats and between text and float areas*

`\floatsep` The separation between floats in top or bottom areas (default 12pt plus 2pt minus 2pt).

`\dblfloatsep` The separation between double-column floats on two-column pages (default 12pt plus 2pt minus 2pt).

`\textfloatsep` The separation between top or bottom float area and the text area (default 20pt plus 2pt minus 4pt).

`\dbltextfloatsep` The analog of `\textfloatsep` for two-column floats (default 20pt plus 2pt minus 4pt).

`\intextsep` The separation for in-line floats (that have been placed “here”) above and below the float (default 12pt plus 2pt minus 2pt).

In the case of float pages or float columns (i.e., a page or a column of a page containing only floats) parameters like `\topfraction`, etc., do not apply. Instead, the creation of them is controlled through the following parameter: *Controlling float page generation*

`\floatpagefraction` The minimum part of the page (or column) that needs to be occupied by floats to be allowed to form a float page (or column). The default is 0.5, which means that half the page is allowed to stay empty.

*Controlling rules or
other ornaments*

Finally, there are three commands that generate separating items (typically a rule or some sort, hence the names) between adjacent float and text areas:

`\topfigrule` Command to produce a separating item between floats at the top of the page and the text. It is executed immediately before placing the vertical space `\textfloatsep` that separates the floats from the text. Like the command `\footnoterule`, it must not occupy any vertical space.

`\botfigrule` Same as `\topfigrule`, but executed after the `\textfloatsep` space separating text from the floats at the bottom of the page.

`\dblfigrule` Similar to `\topfigrule`, but for double-column floats.

Changing the values of these parameters lets you modify the behavior of \LaTeX 's algorithm for placing floats. To obtain the optimal results, however, you should be aware of the subtle dependencies that exist between these parameters.

7.1.3 Consequences of the algorithm

In this section we take a look at the not so obvious consequences resulting from the design choices made in \LaTeX 's float algorithm when it is used out of the box. Each time we discuss possibilities to explore if the default outcome is not serving your needs.

A float may appear in the document earlier than its location in the source

The placement of the float environment in the source determines the earliest point where it can appear in the final document. It may move visually backward to some degree because it may be placed in the top area on the current page. This practice offers a better chance that the float is visible from the call-out position and does not end up on a later page. It can, however, not end up on an earlier page than the surrounding text due to the fact that \LaTeX does no backtracking and the earlier pages have already been typeset.

Thus, normally a float is placed in the source near its first call-out (i.e., text like “see Figure 5”) because this ensures that the float appears either on the same page as this text or on a later page. However, in some situations you may want to place a float on the preceding page (if that page is still visible from the call-out). With the standard algorithm this is possible only by moving the float in the source.

*Place floats always
after their call-out*

For some journals, however, even \LaTeX 's standard approach is too liberal, and they require that floats are strictly placed after their call-out, i.e., that in the call-out column only the bottom area forms a valid placement option. To accommodate this requirement, this strategy is implemented by the `flafter` package¹ by the author.

This may work well if your document has only a few floats. For documents with lots of floats, placement obviously becomes much more difficult, and you may find that all your floats appear together at the end of the document or chapter, or you may receive a “Too many unprocessed floats” error.

¹This package has no options and defines no commands; you simply load it in the preamble.

Sometimes, less drastic solutions might be preferred. For example, if the float belongs to a section that starts in the middle of a page but the float is positioned at the top of the page, the float appears as if it belongs to the previous section. You might want to forbid this behavior while still allowing floats to be placed on the top of the page in other situations. For this purpose L^AT_EX offers you the following command:

Prevent floats in certain situations only

```
\suppressfloats[placement]
```

The optional argument *placement* can be either `t` or `b`. If `\suppressfloats` is placed somewhere in the document, then on the current page any following floats for the areas specified by *placement* are deferred to a later page. If no *placement* parameter is given, all remaining floats on the current page are deferred. For example, if you want to prevent floats from moving backward over section boundaries, you can redefine your section commands using the commands from `titlesec` (discussed in Section 2.2.7) in one of the following two ways:

```
\titleformat* \section{\suppressfloats[t]...} % or
\titleformat \section[...]{...}{...}{\suppressfloats[t]...}[...]
```

or by using the low-level `\@startsection` command, where it has to go before calling `\@startsection`:

```
\renewcommand \section{\suppressfloats[t]%
\@startsection{section}{...}{...}{...} ... }
```

Possible arguments to `\@startsection` are discussed in Section 2.2.8.

Double-column floats are always deferred first

When L^AT_EX encounters a page-wide float environment (indicated by a `*` at the end of the environment name, e.g., `figure*`) in two-column mode, it immediately moves that float to the deferred queue. The reason for this behavior again lies in the “greedy” behavior of its algorithm: if L^AT_EX is currently assembling the second column of that page, the first column has already been assembled and stored away; recall that because L^AT_EX does not backtrack, there is no way to fit the float on the current page. To keep the algorithm simple, it does the same even if working on the first column (where it could in theory do better even without backtracking).

Thus, to place such a float onto the current page, one has to manually move it to an earlier place in the source — before the start of the current page. If this is done, obviously any further change in the document could make this adjustment obsolete; hence, such adjustments are best done (if at all) only at the very last stage of document production — when all material has been written and the focus is on fine-tuning the visual appearance. Also note that until 2015 the base algorithm had a bug¹ in this area: it maintained two independent holding queues: one for single-column and one

¹As this is the documented behavior in the *L^AT_EX manual* [106] it is perhaps more correctly called an undesired feature than a bug. However, these days it is history.

for double-column floats. As a result the float order was not necessarily preserved, and floats sometimes got typeset out of sequence. With the 2015 release of L^AT_EX that finally got corrected.¹

There is only a limited amount of space for deferring floats

Deferring floats means that their content needs to be stored temporarily until L^AT_EX finds a suitable page to output them. This is done in special box registers, and by default L^AT_EX reserves only 18 boxes for this, which is often insufficient and you get the error “Too many unprocessed floats”.

If that happens, you can add additional storage with `\extrafloats{number}` to the document preamble to make (many) more boxes available to hold floats. This additional storage is slightly less efficient, but these days using a value such as 500 poses no problems.

There is no bottom float area for double-column floats

This is not so much a consequence of the algorithm but rather a fact about its implementation. For double-column floats the only possible placements offered are the top area or a float page. Thus, if somebody adds an `h` or a `b` float placement specifier to such a float, it simply gets ignored. As a special important case `\begin{figure*}[b]` implies that this float is not typeset at all until either a `\clearpage` is encountered or the end of the document is reached.

This missing functionality is added, except for the first page, if you load the `stfloats` package by Sigita Tolušis. Note, however, that the package makes some other changes to the code that may or may not work with your document.

Tendency to produce float pages (unnecessarily)

If you use the default float parameter values in a document with many floats, you can observe that the formatted document contains several float pages — that is, pages containing only floats. Often such pages contain a lot of white space. For example, you may see a page with a single float on it, occupying only half of the possible space, so that it would look better if L^AT_EX had filled the remaining space with text. The reason for this behavior is that the algorithm is designed to try placing as many dangling floats as possible after the end of every page. The procedure creates as many float pages as it can until there are no more floats left to fill a float page. Float page production is controlled by the parameter `\floatpagefraction`, which specifies the minimum fraction of the page that must be occupied by float(s) — by default, half the page. In the standard settings every float is allowed to go on a float page (the default specifier is `tbp`), so this setting means that every float that is a tiny bit larger than half the page is allowed to go on a float page by itself. Thus, by enlarging its value, you can prevent half-empty float pages.

¹Before that date one had to either manually move the double-column float to an earlier (or later) place in the document or load the `fixltx2e` package that implemented a correction for this issue. The code from this package is now part of L^AT_EX proper, so it does not need loading anymore.

How to ensure
that a float never
gets typeset



Providing bottom
floats spanning two
columns

The problem of
half-empty
float pages

However, enlarging the value of `\floatpagefraction` has its own dangers as discussed below. For this reason it is often better to specify explicitly the allowed placements (for example, by saying `\begin{figure}[tb]` and thus prohibit its placement on a float page) for the float that creates the problem. A usually better alternative is to use the `fewerfloatpages` package that alters the algorithm's behavior in customizable ways. It is discussed in Section 7.2.1 on page 519.

A float may appear on a float page purely based on its position in the source

A special case of the above discussion is a larger float that is allowed to go into the top area or onto a float page. If this is encountered by L^AT_EX while there is still enough space on the page, it is placed into top area, but if (after some alterations of the text) its call-out moves closer to the end of the page, it becomes unplaceable, gets deferred, and then gets placed on a float page of its own, because it is large enough for that. Adding some more text might move the call-out past the page break in which case L^AT_EX puts the float back into the top area of the next page.

Again, the `fewerfloatpages` package shows a better and more consistent behavior when encountering such type of floats.

All float parameters (normally) restrict the placement possibilities

This may be obvious, but it is worth repeating: any float parameter defines a restriction on L^AT_EX's ability to place the floats. How much of a restriction depends on the setting: there is always a way to set a parameter in such a way that it does not affect the placement at all. Unfortunately, in doing so one invites rather poor-looking placements.

By default L^AT_EX has settings that are fairly liberal. For example, a page can contain up to three floats, which can result in very cramped-looking pages, especially when the facing page has no floats. A similarly “questionable” default is that for a float page to be accepted the float(s) must occupy at least half of the available page. Expressed differently, this means that such a page is allowed to be half empty (which is certainly not the best possible placement in most cases).

What often happens is that users try to improve such settings and then get surprised when suddenly all floats pile up at the end of the document. To stay with this example: if one changes the parameter `\floatpagefraction` to require, say, 0.8 of the float page, a float that occupies about 0.75 of the page is not allowed to form a float page on its own. Thus, if there is not another float that could be added and actually fits in the remaining space, the float is deferred and with it all other floats of the same class. But, even worse, this specific float is too big to go into the next top area as well because there the default maximum permissible area is 0.7 (from `\topfraction`).

As a result all your floats stay deferred until the next `\clearpage`. Thus, while tempting, tinkering with this parameter by making it larger is usually not a good idea, unless you are prepared to place most if not all of your floats manually, by overwriting the placement algorithm on the level of individual floats (e.g., using `!` syntax and/or shifting its position in the source document).

Tinkering with the parameter settings usually produces unwanted effects

Another common reason for ending up with all floats at the end of your chapter is the use of the bottom placement specifier, `[b]`. It indicates that the only acceptable place for a float is at the bottom of a page. If your float happens to be larger than `\bottomfraction` (which is by default quite small), then this float cannot be placed at all. This also prevents all floats of the same type from being placed. The same problem arises if only `[h]` or `[t]` is specified and the float is too large for the remainder of the page or too large to fit `\topfraction`.

In calculating these fractions, \LaTeX takes into account the separation (i.e., `\textfloatsep`) between floats and main text. By enlarging this value, you automatically reduce the maximum size a float is allowed to have to be considered as a candidate for placement at the top or bottom of the page.

In general, whenever a lot of your floats end up at the end of the chapter, look at the first ones to see whether their placement specifiers are preventing them from being properly placed.

For this reason it is best not to meddle with the parameters while writing a document or at least not to do so in a way that makes it more difficult for the algorithm to place a float close to its call-out. For proof-reading it is far more important to have a figure next to the place it is referenced than to avoid half-empty pages. Possibilities for fine-tuning an otherwise finished document are discussed below.

Another conclusion to draw here is that there are dependencies between some of the float parameters; it is important to take these dependencies into account when changing their values.

Locally overwriting placement restrictions

A way to influence the placement of individual floats in \LaTeX is to specify a `!` in conjunction with the placement specifiers `h`, `t`, and `b`. If a given float is (slightly) too large to fit into a certain area or if an area already contains the maximum number of floats but you nevertheless want to force the current float into this place, then adding `!` to the optional argument of the float is a good choice. It results in ignoring all restrictions implemented through parameters for this particular float so that it is always placed unless there are already deferred floats with the same float class or the allowed areas get bigger than the available space when adding the float. Also, any `\suppressfloats` commands are ignored while processing this float.


As the order of attempts is still the same (first top then bottom), you may have to use `![b]` to force a float into the bottom area as `![tb]` would normally already succeed in placing it into the top area. The downside is of course that if the float does not fit, it only appears in the bottom area of a following page. Thus, any later text change may create havoc on your placement decisions.

Note, however, that the placement of floats on float pages is not affected by this approach.

“Here” just means “here if it fits”

... and often it does not fit. This is somewhat surprising for many people, but the way the algorithm has been designed, the `h` specifier is not an unconditional command.


The specifier merely directs L^AT_EX to *do its best* to place the float at the current position. If there is not enough room left on the page or if an inline placement is forbidden because of the settings of the style parameters, then L^AT_EX ignores this request and tries to place the float according to any other specifier given. This situation can happen quite often if the floats you try to place in the middle of your text are moderately large and are thus likely to fall into positions where there is not enough space on the page for them. By ignoring an `h` and trying other placement specifiers, L^AT_EX avoids overly empty pages that would otherwise arise in such situations.

 `[h]` does not mean “here”

However, sometimes it is necessary to ensure that floats appear in-line at certain points in the document text even if that results in some partially empty pages. If such a nonfloating object is needed, then extension packages such as the `float` package (page 529) offer `H` as an alternative specifier that really means “here” (and starts a new page first if necessary). An alternative is the `\captionof` command from the `caption` package (page 540) that generates a normal float caption (including its entry in the list of figures or tables, etc.) but without the need for a surrounding float environment. Be mindful, however, that mixing floats and nonfloats can lead to incorrect numbering.

Float specifiers do not define an order of preference

As mentioned above, the algorithm tries to place floats into available float areas in a well-defined order that is hardwired into the algorithm: “here”, “top”, “bottom”, and — on page boundaries — first “page” and, only if that is no longer possible, “top” followed by “bottom” for the next page.

 `[bt]` does the same as `[tb]`


Thus, specifying `[bt]` does not mean try bottom first and only then top. It simply means allow this float to go into the top or bottom area (but not onto a float page) just like `[tb]` would.

Relation of floats and footnotes

This is not exactly a consequence of the algorithm but one of its implementation: whenever L^AT_EX tries to decide on a placement for a float (or a `\marginpar!`), it has to trigger the output routine to do this. And as part of this process all footnotes on the page are removed from their current place in the galley and are collected together in the `\footins` box as part of T_EX's preparation for page production.

But after placing the float (or deferring it) L^AT_EX then returns the page material to the galley, and because of T_EX's output routine behavior, the galley has now changed: all the footnotes have been taken out from their original places. So L^AT_EX has to put the footnotes back, but it can place them in only a single place (not knowing the origin anymore). What it does is reinsert the footnotes (the footnote text to be precise) at the end of the galley. There are some good reasons for doing this, one of which is that L^AT_EX expects that all of the returned material still fits on the current page.

However, if for some reason a page break is finally taken at an earlier point, then the footnotes show up on the wrong page or column. This is a fairly unlikely scenario, and L^AT_EX works hard on making it a near-impossibility, but if it happens, check if there is a float near the chosen page break and either move the float or guide the algorithm by using explicit page breaks. An example of this behavior can be found

 Badly placed floats can lead to footnotes on the wrong page

in a question on [tex.stackexchange](https://tex.stackexchange.com) [7]. In fact, the particular case discussed in the question is worth highlighting: do *not* place a float directly after a heading, unless it is a heading that always starts a page. The reason is that headings normally form very large objects (because a heading prevents a page break directly after it). However, placing a float in the middle of this means that the output routine gets triggered before \LaTeX makes its decision where to break and any footnotes get moved into the wrong place.

A final tuning advice

There are many ways to fine-tune the behavior of the float placement algorithm; most of them have been discussed above already. However, there is one more “tuning” possibility and in fact the biggest of all: changes in your document text.

Therefore, as final advice: do not start manipulating parameters or change placement specifiers or move floats within your document until after you have fully written your text and your document is close to completion. It is a waste of effort, and it may even result in inferior placements as your initially provided restrictions may no longer be adequate after a text change.

7.1.4 `fltrace` — Tracing the float algorithm

The algorithm used by \LaTeX has a lot of (fairly low-level) tracing code built in, and this can be activated by loading the package `fltrace`. This can be of some help if the float placement you get is totally surprising.

With `\tracefloatvals` you get the current values of all relevant (internal) parameters used by the algorithm (so you have to do some mental translation). It also lists the floats that are already allocated to different areas of the current page and those that are deferred. The floats are denoted by their storage register name; e.g., you see names like `\bx@A`, `\bx@B`, and so forth.¹ For example, you might see

```
LaTeX2e: ***Float placement parameters:
LaTeX2e: \@colnum = 3
LaTeX2e: \@colroom = 523.16669pt
LaTeX2e: \@topnum = 2
...
LaTeX2e: toplist:
LaTeX2e: botlist: \bx@B
LaTeX2e: midlist: \bx@A
LaTeX2e: deferlist: \bx@C
```

which tells you that \LaTeX added float “A” to the midlist (i.e., a here float), “B” was allocated to the botlist (the bottom area), while float “C” got deferred. Initially it is easy to guess which float hides behind “A”, “B”, etc., because the box registers are

¹If you have added extra float registers with `\extrafloats`, the register names may contain numbers instead of uppercase letters.

used in sequence, but after a few pages this is all scrambled, because the registers get reused the moment their contents have been typeset.

If it is not clear which float is which, you can use `\ShowFloat{B}`, which displays some information about float “B”, including an abbreviated symbolic representation of its contents. This command is always available even if `fltrace` is not loaded.

If this static information is not enough, you can turn on tracing the actions of the algorithm by saying `\tracefloats` anywhere in the document. This spits out a lot of tracing information¹ whenever the algorithm is processing floats, both when encountering them initially in the document, as well as during page breaking, when it tries to place floats that have accumulated on the deferlist. With `\tracefloatsoff`, the tracing is disabled again.

7.2 Float placement control

In the previous section \LaTeX ’s basic algorithm for placing floats was discussed. We now look at a number of packages that alter or extend this algorithm or otherwise help you in controlling its behavior further.

The `fewerfloatpages` package improves on \LaTeX ’s standard algorithm, and it is recommended to always load it if you use floats in your document. The `placeins` package also helps with the placement by introducing a float barrier like `\clearpage`, but without forcing a new page.

The `afterpage` package is a bit different and has limitations (and according to its author should not exist in the first place), but there are cases where it is extremely useful, which is why we describe it here.

Finally, we discuss the `endfloat` package that alters the algorithm so that all floats appear at the very end of the document by design (and not by mistake). Obviously that package should be loaded only if such a design is wanted.

7.2.1 fewerfloatpages — Improving \LaTeX ’s float algorithm

As discussed above, \LaTeX ’s float algorithm has the tendency to produce fairly empty float pages, i.e., pages containing only floats but with a lot of free space remaining that could easily be filled with nearby text. There are good reasons for this behavior; nevertheless, the results look unappealing, and in many cases documents are unnecessarily enlarged. To resolve this problem the `fewerfloatpages` package provides an extended algorithm that improves on this behavior without the need for manual intervention by the user.

Why does the current algorithm have these problems? To some extent, because it offers only global parameters that need to fit different scenarios, and thus settings that are suitable when many floats need to be placed result in suboptimal paginations in document parts that contain only a few floats, and vice versa. To overcome this problem, either one can try to develop algorithms with many more configurable

¹The data is unfortunately very raw and not easy to consume, but it is worth giving a try when there is a need to understand why floats end up in surprising places or get deferred forever.

parameters that act differently in different scenarios or one can let the algorithm follow a main strategy, configurable with only a few parameters (like today), but monitor the process and make more local adjustments and corrections depending on the actual outcome of that base strategy and additional knowledge of the actual situation in a given document part. This is the approach taken by the extension implemented in this package.

Improving the float page algorithm

A simple way to improve the existing algorithm, without compromising its main goal of placing the floats as fast as possible and as close as possible to their call-outs, is the following: as long as there are many floats waiting to be placed, generate float pages as necessary to get them placed (using the current algorithm and its parameters).

Once the algorithm is unable to build further float pages, do some level of backtracking by checking if all floats have actually been placed. If there are still floats waiting on the defer list, then assume that what has been done so far is the best possible way to place as many floats as possible (which it probably is). However, if all floats have been placed onto float pages, check if the last float page is sufficiently full; if not, undo that float page and instead redistribute its floats into the top and bottom areas of the next upcoming page. This way the floats are combined with further text, and a possible half-empty float page is avoided.

This approach does not resolve all the problematic scenarios in which L^AT_EX has decided to favor fairly empty float pages over some tighter type of placement. It does, however, help to improve typical cases that do not involve too many floats. For example, if a single (larger) float appears near the end of a page, then when using the standard algorithm, it cannot be immediately placed (because there is not enough free space on the current page). It is therefore moved to the defer list, and at the page break it is then placed onto a float page (possibly by itself, if it is large enough to allow for that) even though it could perfectly well go into the top or bottom area of the next page and thus be combined with textual material on that page.

With the new algorithm, this float page is reexamined, and unless it is pretty much filled up already, it is unraveled, and its floats are redistributed into the top and bottom areas of the next page. If, however, there are many floats waiting on the defer list, it first makes a float page and then reassesses the situation. In other words, the algorithm looks at each prospective float page and based on the current situation (e.g., number of floats still being unplaced, free space on the page, etc.) decides whether this float page should be produced or whether it should stop making float pages and instead place the pending floats into top and bottom areas of the upcoming page.

Configuring the algorithm with parameters

The main idea of the extended algorithm is to avoid unnecessary cases of float pages especially if those float pages are fairly empty. Natural candidates are single float pages, but even in cases where the current L^AT_EX algorithm produces several sequential float pages the extended algorithm may decide to replace them with normal pages under certain conditions. However, the main goal remains to place as many

*A typical case where
L^AT_EX should not
make a float page*

*Do not unravel a
float page if there
are too many floats
on the defer list*

floats as soon as possible, so generating float pages when many floats are waiting is usually essential.

`floatpagedeferlimit`

Whether or not unraveling for a float page is considered at all is guided by the counter `floatpagedeferlimit`. As long as there are more floats waiting on the defer list than this number, float pages are not considered for unraveling. The default is 3, which corresponds to the default value for `totalnumber`; i.e., with that setting, the unraveling of a floating page has a fighting chance to place all floats into the top and bottom areas on the current page. It would also resolve cases for up to three floats, each larger than `\floatpagefraction`, where the standard L^AT_EX algorithm would produce three individual float pages.

If you set the counter to 1, then only the last float page in a sequence is considered, and only if it contains just a single float and there are no other floats that are still waiting to be placed. If you set it to 0, then the extension is disabled, because float pages are produced only if there was at least one float on the defer list. Even if you set `floatpagedeferlimit` to a fairly high value, you may not want to unravel float pages that contain many floats. To support this case there is a second counter that guides the algorithm in this respect.

Do not unravel if the float page contains many floats

`floatpagekeeplimit`

Whenever the float page contains at least `floatpagekeeplimit` floats, it is not unraveled. The default is also 3 so that float pages with three or more floats are not touched. Obviously the counter can have any effect only if it has a value less than or equal to `floatpagedeferlimit` because this is tested first.

There are, however, a number of other situations in which one should not unravel a float page even if the above checks for the size of the defer list were passed successfully. The most important one is the case when the float page contains at least one float that is allowed *only* on float pages (i.e., has a `[p]` argument). Such a float would not be placeable in a top/bottom area on any page and thus would be repeatedly sent back to the defer list (possibly forever). This case is automatically detected by the algorithm and appropriately handled.

Do not unravel if the float page contains at least one [p] float

The other case where unraveling would normally be counterproductive is when the particular float page is nearly or completely filled up with floats. If that is unravelled, then it is certain that only some of the floats can be placed into the top or bottom area of the next page, while some would end up on the defer list. That in turn means that these deferred floats float even further away from their call-out positions than need be. So what is a good way to determine if a float page is “full enough”?

Do not unravel if the float page is nearly filled

`\floatpagekeepfraction`

The current value for `\textfraction` determines the minimum amount of space that has to be occupied by text on a normal page. If all floats together need so much

space that this amount of text could not fit, then trying to place the floats onto a normal page cannot succeed, and some of them would get deferred for sure.

This parameter would therefore be a good candidate for providing a definition for “full enough” float pages, but to allow for further flexibility the algorithm uses the variable `\floatpagekeepfraction` instead (defaulting to `\textfraction`), so, if desired, a lower (or even a higher) boundary can be set.

The above parameters give some reasonable configuration possibilities to guide the algorithm as to when and when not to unravel a possible float page and instead produce further normal pages. It should be noted, however, that except for the case of setting `floatpagedeferlimit` to 1, there is always a chance that floats drift further away from their call-outs, because they may not be immediately placeable due to other parameter settings of the float algorithm. For example, the counter `topnumber` (default value 2) limits the number of floats that can be placed in the top area on a normal page, and if more remain after unraveling, only two can immediately go in this area.

Configuring the algorithm with package options

As already mentioned, the algorithm detects if a float is allowed only on float pages (i.e., is given in the source as `[p]`), and it ensures that float pages containing such floats are not unraveled. However, if you have a float with the default specifier `[tbp]` whose size is larger than the allowed size of the top or bottom area (e.g., larger than $\text{topfraction} \times \text{textheight}$), then this effectively means it can only be placed on a float page. Based on its float specifier, however, such a float is allowed to go into the top or bottom area, so the algorithm, as explained so far, would be allowed to unravel, and when that float later is considered for top or bottom placement, it is again deferred and thus moved from one page to the next, most likely messing up the float placement in the whole document.

`checktb` (option)

There are two possible ways to improve the algorithm to avoid this disaster. One way would be to check the float size when it is initially encountered and remove any specifier that is technically not possible because of the parameter settings and the float size. A possible disadvantage is that this determination is done only once, and any later (temporary) change to the float parameters has no effect. This is currently the package default. It can be explicitly selected by specifying the option `checktb`. In this case you might see warnings like

LaTeX Warning: Float too large for top area: t changed to p on line ...

`addbang` (option)

Another possibility is to automatically add a `!` specifier to all floats during unraveling, i.e., when they are sent back for reevaluation. This way, such floats become placeable into top and bottom areas regardless of their size. This may result in fewer pages at the cost of violating the area size restrictions once in a while. It is specified with the option `addbang`.

`nocheck` (option)

If you prefer no automatic adjustment of the specifiers, add the option `nocheck`. In this case you might find that floats of certain sizes are unplaceable and thus get delayed to the end of the document. If that happens, the remedy is either to explicitly specify `[p]` or `[hp]` for such a float (to ensure that they are not subject to unraveling)

or to manually add an exclamation specifier, e.g., `[!tp]` so that \LaTeX does not use the size restrictions in its algorithm.

The package also offers the option `trace`, which, if used, results in messages that give details on the decisions made by algorithm and an explanation why one or the other was taken. For example, you might see

trace (option)

```
fewerfloatpages: PAGE: trying to make a float page
fewerfloatpages: ----- \@deferlist: \bx@B \bx@D
fewerfloatpages: starting with \bx@B
fewerfloatpages: --> success: \bx@B \bx@D
fewerfloatpages: ----- current float page unraveled
                      (free space 192.50336pt > 109.99832pt)
```

which means that the algorithm first tried to make a float page from the defer list, which at that point contained two floats (the float boxes `\bx@B` and `\bx@D`); that it was able to produce a float page containing just `\bx@B` and `\bx@D`; and that then it decided to unravel that float page, because it has an unused space of 192.5pt, i.e., roughly 16 text lines. With the current `\floatpagekeepfraction`, that is too much empty space on the page. You may also see lines such as

```
fewerfloatpages: ----- current float page kept, full enough
                      (free space 38.99496pt < 109.99832pt)
fewerfloatpages: ----- current float page kept (contains at least 5 floats)
fewerfloatpages: ----- too many deferred floats for unraveling (5 > 3)
fewerfloatpages: --> fail: no float page made
```

all of which should be fairly self-explanatory given the above description of the algorithm. If it is not clear which float is stored in a certain float register, say, `\bx@B`, you can display its contents using `\ShowFloat{B}`. If you want even more detailed tracing of the complete algorithm, also load the `fltrace` package and enable the tracing with the command `\tracefloats` anywhere in your document. Note, however, that the resulting output is very detailed but rather low-level and unpolished.

*Detailed tracing of
the complete
algorithm*

Local (manual) adjustments

If the `fewerfloatpages` package is used, you get fewer float pages that contain a noticeable amount of white space. By adjusting `\floatpagekeepfraction` and the counters `floatpagekeeplimit` and `floatpagedeferlimit`, you can direct the algorithm to unravel more or fewer of the otherwise generated float pages. However, in some cases it might happen that the redistribution of the floats into the top and bottom areas of the next page(s) may result in some of them drifting too far away from their call-outs. If that happens, you can either try to change the general parameters or you could help the algorithm along by using the optional argument of individual float environments. The two main tools at your disposal are

- using the `[! . .]` notation to allow a float to go into the top or bottom area even if it would be normally prevented by other restrictions;

- using [p] to force a float into a float page because that prevents the algorithm from unravelling the float page that contains that float.

As an alternative you can, of course, temporarily alter the definition of the command `\floatpagekeepfraction` or the values of the two counters in mid-document, but remember that they are not looked at when a float is encountered in the source but when we are at a page break and \LaTeX attempts to empty the defer list, which is usually later and unfortunately somewhat asynchronous, i.e., not easy to predict.

7.2.2 placeins — Preventing floats from crossing a barrier

Standard \LaTeX already implements a float barrier called `\clearpage`. Floats on either side never appear on the other. It works by first placing all deferred floats, if necessary by generating float pages, and then starting a new page. While this is suitable to keep floats within one chapter (because chapters typically start on a new page), there are cases where one would wish for a less intrusive barrier, i.e., one that works without forcing a new page or is partially porous.

This functionality is offered by Donald Arseneau's `placeins` package, which implements a `\FloatBarrier` command that places all deferred floats without introducing a page break. This approach is, for example, useful if you want to ensure that all floats that belong to a section are placed before the next section starts. Through package options, you can alter the behavior to allow for floats to migrate from one side to the other, as long as they still appear on the same page.

You could, for example, redefine the sectioning command yourself and introduce the `\FloatBarrier` command by using the `\titleformat` declaration from the `titlesec` package (see Section 2.2.7), as shown here:

```
\usepackage{titlesec}
\titleformat{\section}[block]
    {\FloatBarrier\Large\bfseries}
    {\thesection.}{6pt}{\filleft}
```

The author of `placeins` anticipated that users might often want to output their floats before a new section starts, so his package provides the package option `section`, which automatically redefines `\section` to include the `\FloatBarrier` command. However, by itself this option forces all floats to appear *before* the next section material is typeset, because the `\FloatBarrier` prevents a float from a current section from appearing below the start of the new section, even if some material of the current section is present on the same page.

*Turning the barrier
into a membrane*

If you want to allow floats to pass the `\FloatBarrier` and appear at the bottom of a page (i.e., in a new section), specify the option `below`. To allow floats to pass it in the opposite direction and appear on the top of the page (i.e., in the previous section), specify the option `above`.

When using the option `verbose`, the package shows processing information on the terminal and in the transcript file.

7.2.3 afterpage — Taking control at the page boundary

The `afterpage` package (by David Carlisle) implements a command `\afterpage` that causes the commands specified in its argument to be expanded after the current page is output. Although its author considers it “a hack that not even always works” (for example, `\afterpage` fails in `twocolumn` mode), it has a number of useful applications in the cases where it does work.

Sometimes L^AT_EX’s float positioning mechanism gets overloaded, and all floating figures and tables drift to the end of the document. You may flush out all the unprocessed floats by issuing a `\clearpage` command, but this tactic has the effect of making the current page end prematurely. The `afterpage` package allows you to issue the command `\afterpage{\clearpage}`. It allows the current page to be filled with text (as usual), but then a `\clearpage` command flushes out all floats before the next text page begins.

*Preventing floats
bunching up at the
end of the document*

With the multipage `longtable` environment (see Section 6.4.2), you can experience problems when typesetting the text surrounding the long table, and it may be useful to “float” the `longtable`. However, because such tables can be several pages long, it may prove impossible to hold them in memory and float them in the same way that the `table` environment is floated. Nevertheless, if the table markup is in a separate file (say `ltfile.tex`), you can use the following declaration:

*Floating multipage
tables*

```
\afterpage{\input{ltfile}}
```

This version starts the `longtable` after the next page break; however, this page may still contain normal floats at the top or bottom, and normal text may continue on the page on which the table ends. If that is not desired, then the `\clearpage` in the second form outputs all dangling floats (in the form of float pages), and the `\newpage` command ensures that text following the table appears on a new page:

```
\afterpage{\clearpage\input{ltfile}\newpage}
```

The `\afterpage` command can also be combined with the `float` package and its [H] placement specifier, as explained at the end of Section 7.3.1.

7.2.4 endfloat — Placing figures and tables at the end

Some journals require figures and tables to be separated from the text and grouped at the end of a document. They may also want a list of figures and tables to precede them and potentially require markers indicating the original places occupied by the floats within the text. This can be achieved with the `endfloat` package (by James Darrell McCauley, Jeffrey Goldberg, and more recently, Axel Sommerfeldt), which by default extracts figures and tables from within the document and places them at the very end. With appropriate configuration settings it can do the same for other float types if they are provided by packages such as `float`, `newfloat`, etc.

For its default task of managing figures and tables the `endfloat` package features a series of options to control the list of figures and tables, their section headings, and

the markers left in the text at the call-out point of the figure or table float. A list of available options¹ follows:

`figlist/nofiglist` Produce (default) or suppress the list of figures.
`fighead/nofighead` Produce or omit (default) a section heading before the collection of figures. The section headings text is given by `\figuresection` and defaults to the string “Figures”.
`figuresfirst` Put all figures before tables (default).
`figuresonly` Only manage figures but not tables as endfloats.
`nofigures` Do not handle figures as endfloats.

There are also a few package options for jointly customizing all float types — these also act on any additional float type that is declared in the document:

`lists/nolists` Produce or suppress the list of floats (figures, tables, etc.).
`heads/noheads` Produce or omit a section heading before each float collection.
`markers/nomarkers` Place (default) or omit markers in text to indicate the call-out position of floats.
`disable` Make the package a no-op; i.e., if used, all other options or declarations are ignored. The reason for this option is that one often needs both a version for the journal (with endfloats) and a version with the floats in their correct places, and by temporarily adding this option, the latter can be easily achieved without other adjustments.

*Float markers
in text*

By default, the package indicates the original position of a float within the text by adding lines such as “[Figure 4 about here.]” at the approximate place. These notes can be turned off by specifying the `nomarkers` option when loading the package.

Premature output

By default, the delayed floats are processed when the end of the document is reached. However, in some cases one might wish to process them at an earlier point — for example, to display them at the end of each chapter. For this purpose `endfloat` offers the command `\processdelayedfloats`, which processes all delayed floats up to the current point. By default the float numbering continues, so to restart numbering one has to reset the corresponding counters (details are given in the package documentation).

Caveats

The `endfloat` package file creates two extra files with the extensions `.fff` and `.ttt` for storing the figure and table floats, respectively. Because the environment bodies are written verbatim to these files, it is important that the `\end` command (e.g., `\end{figure}`) always appears on a line by itself (without any white space) in the source document; otherwise, it is not recognized. For the same reason, the standard environment names (i.e., `figure`, `table`, and their starred forms) are recognized only if they are directly used in the document. If they are hidden inside other environments, recognition of the environment `\end` tag fails badly.²

¹A similar set of options exists for tables using `tab` or `tables` instead of `fig` or `figures`. For other float types this has to be handled differently.

²In some cases `\DeclareDelayedFloatFlavor` can help here.

```
\DeclareDelayedFloat{float-type}[extension]{heading}
```

If you use additional float types in your document (as defined, for example, through `\newfloat`), you can have `endfloat` delay them as well as a group with a `\DeclareDelayedFloat` declaration. This associates the *float-type* with a *heading* to use when producing the list of that type, and the *extension* (which is optional) defines the file extension to use for storing them. If not given, `endfloat` constructs an extension for you from the *float-type* argument.

```
\DeclareDelayedFloatFlavor*{variant}{base}
```

If you load other packages that also provide table or figure floats under other environment names, such as `sidewaysfigure` and `sidewaystable` from the `rotating` package, you have to tell `endfloat` that these are really figures and tables as far as its actions are concerned. This is done by associating a *variant* environment name (e.g., `sidewaystable`) with the corresponding *base* name (`table`).

By default both the *variant* and the *variant** form of the environment are delayed when using a `\DeclareDelayedFloatFlavor` declaration. However, if you use its star form, then the *variant** is not modified. There is only one real useful application for this: the `lcaption` package defines a `longtable*` environment that does not use the `table` counter (i.e., can have only unnumbered captions, if any). If such tables should not get delayed, then this version of the declaration prevents that.

```
\SetupDelayedFloat{float-type}{key-list}
```

With `\SetupDelayedFloat` the package offers a general way to adjust the options for a single *float-type*. This can be useful for new types declared to be delayed floats but can be used for the standard types `figure` and `table` as well. The accepted keys are `nolist`, `list`, `nohead`, and `head`, analogous to the package options. What you cannot do this way is to disable a *float-type* altogether. For this you have to use the package option (for `figure` or `table`) or not declare them as delayed floats for any other types.

Customizing the output

The package offers a number of hooks, for example, `\AtBeginDelayedFloats`, `\AtBeginFigures`, and `\AtBeginTables` to control the processing of the collected floats. For instance, an instruction such as `\AtBeginTables{\cleardoublepage}` ensures that the delayed tables start on a recto page.

Hooks

When the floats are finally typeset, the command `\efloatseparator` is executed after each float. By default, it is defined to be `\clearpage`, which forces one float per page. If necessary, it can be redefined with `\renewcommand`.

The text and the formatting of the notes, which are defined via the commands `\figureplace` and `\tableplace`, or more generally with `\(float-type)place`, can be changed with `\renewcommand`. For example, they might be adapted to a different language (the package does not support `babel` parameterization). Within

Customizing the float markers

the replacement text `\thepostfigure` and `\theposttable` reference the current figure or table number, respectively. A sample redefinition for French could look as follows:

```
\renewcommand\figureplace{\begin{center}%
  [La figure~\thepostfigure\ approx.\ ici.]\end{center}}
\renewcommand\tableplace{\begin{center}%
  [La table~\theposttable\ approx.\ ici.]\end{center}}
```

There also exists a generic `\floatplace` command expecting the *float-type* name as an argument. It is used by default in `\figureplace` and `\tableplace`. Thus, by redefining that command, you can change the markers for all float types at once. Here is an example that uses `\todo` from the `todonotes` package to generate a marker in the margin:

```
\usepackage{todonotes}
\renewcommand\floatplace[1]
  {\todo{\UseName{#1name}~\UseName{thepost#1} about here}}
```

In \LaTeX releases prior to 2022 you would have to use the low-level `\csname ... \endcsname` constructs to generate the necessary commands from the argument, e.g., `\figurename` and `\thepostfigure` if the input was `figure`; applying `\UseName` instead is clearly the more readable approach.

7.3 Extensions to \LaTeX 's float concept

By default, \LaTeX offers two types of horizontally oriented float environments, `figure` and `table`. For many documents these prove to be sufficient; in other cases additional features are needed. In this section we now look at packages that extend this basic tool set to cover more complex cases.

The `float` package offers ways to define new float types and also provides one way to prevent individual floats from floating at all. A different approach to the latter problem is given by the `caption` package, which we briefly touch upon too.

We then discuss two packages, `rotating` and `rotfloat`, that allow the rotation of the float content, something that might be necessary for unusually large float objects. With a somewhat different approach this is also covered by the `key/value` packages discussed in Section 7.5 on page 560.

The final package in this section (`wrapfig`) deals with floats that are placed inside the galley with normal paragraph text flowing around them. Such objects look like ordinary floats, e.g., they can have a caption and are similarly formatted, but being placed next to their call-out they do not really “float” and thus may get out of sequence with ordinary floats that may get deferred and this way move past such in-line floats. A similar type of “nonfloating” floats are those that are placed into the margin. They are not discussed here but as part of Section 7.5.2.

Another type of extension, not discussed here but deferred to Section 7.5.1 on page 560, is that of full-page floats, where there is no room for the caption, so that it needs to be placed onto the facing page, turning the float effectively into a double-page float. The package discussed there also offers some support for automatically producing floats that split their content and place it across two facing pages.

7.3.1 float — Creating new float types

The float package¹ by Anselm Lingnau, which dates back to the nineties, improves the interface for defining floating objects such as figures and tables in L^AT_EX. It adds the notion of a “float style” that governs the appearance of floats. New kinds of floats may be defined using the `\newfloat` command.

`\newfloat{type}{placement}{ext}[within]`

The `\newfloat` command takes four arguments, three mandatory and one optional, with the following meanings:

type “Type” of the new class of floats, such as `program`. Issuing a `\newfloat` declaration makes the environments *type* and *type** available.

placement Default placement parameters for the given class of floats (combination of L^AT_EX's `t`, `b`, `p`, and `h` specifiers or, alternatively, the `H` specifier).

ext File name extension of an auxiliary file to collect the captions for the new float class being defined.

within Optional argument specifying whether floats of this class are numbered within some sectional unit of the document. For example, if the value of *within* is `chapter`, the floats are numbered within chapters (in standard L^AT_EX, this is the case for figures and tables in the report and book document classes).

The `\floatstyle` declaration sets a default float style that is used for all float types that are subsequently defined using `\newfloat` declarations, until another `\floatstyle` command is specified. Its argument is the name of a float style and should be one of the following predefined styles:

The style of the float class

plain The float style L^AT_EX usually applies to its floats — that is, nothing in particular. The only but important difference is that the caption is typeset below the body of the float, regardless of where it is given in the input markup.

plaintop Same style as the **plain** float style except that the caption is placed at the top of the float.

boxed The float body is surrounded by a box with the caption printed below.

¹As an alternative there exists the package `newfloat` by Axel Sommerfeldt, which has a more descriptive interface (using key/value syntax) and extra features, but lacks the float style concept.

ruled The float style is patterned after the table style of *Concrete Mathematics* book [58]. The caption is printed at the top of the float, surrounded by rules; another rule finishes off the float.

The float styles define the general layout of the floats, including the formatting of the caption. For example, the ruled style sets the caption flush left without a colon, while other styles center the caption and add a colon after the number. Because the float styles define the placement of the caption, floats can contain only a single `\caption` command, which is a restriction compared to standard L^AT_EX's behavior. One also has to be careful when mixing different float styles in one document so as not to produce typographic monsters.

Even though the package does not offer a user-level interface for defining new float styles, it is fairly easy to add new named styles. For details refer to the package documentation in `float.dtx`.

The next example shows the declarations for two “nonstandard” new float types, Series and XML. The former are numbered inside sections and use a “boxed” style, and the latter are numbered independently and use a “ruled” style (typographically this combination is more than questionable).

The introductory string used by L^AT_EX in the captions of floats for a given *type* can be customized using the declaration `\floatname{type}{floatname}`. “XML Listing” is used for XML floats in the example below. By default, a `\newfloat` command sets this string to its *type* argument if no other name is specified afterwards (shown with the Series float environment in the example).

Only
one `\caption`
supported

Naming the float
class

1 New float environments

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.

XML Listing 1 A simple XML file

```
<XMLphrase>Great fun!</XMLphrase>
```

Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis.

XML Listing 2 Processing instruction

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
```

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem

$$e = 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!}$$

Series 1.1: Euler's constant

```
\usepackage{lipsum,float}
\floatstyle{boxed}
\newfloat{Series}{b}{los}[section]
\floatstyle{ruled}
\newfloat{XML}{H}{lox}
\floatname{XML}{XML Listing}
\newcommand\xmlcode[1]{\texttt{#1}}

\section{New float environments}
\lipsum[1][1]
\begin{Series} \caption{Euler's constant}
\[\mathrm{e}
= 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!}\]
\end{Series}
\begin{XML} \caption{A simple XML file}
\xmlcode{<XMLphrase>Great fun!</XMLphrase>}
\end{XML}
\lipsum[1][2]
\begin{XML}
\caption{Processing instruction}
\xmlcode{<?xml version="1.0"?>}
\end{XML}
\lipsum[2]
```

7-3-1

The command `\listof{type}{title}` produces a list of all floats of a given class. It is the equivalent of L^AT_EX's `\listoffigures` and `\listoftables` commands. The *type* argument specifies the type of the float as given in the `\newfloat` command. The *title* argument defines the text of the title to be used to head the list of the information associated with the float elements, as specified by the `\caption` commands.

Listing the captions of a float class

The following example is a repetition of Example 7-3-1 on the facing page (source only partially shown) with two `\listof` commands added.

XML Listings

1	A simple XML file	1
2	Processing instruction	2

List of Series

1.1	Euler's constant	4
-----	----------------------------	---

1 New float environments

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.

7-3-2

```
\usepackage{lipsum,float}
% Float types Series and XML and command
% \xmlcode as defined in previous example
\listof{XML}{XML Listings}
\listof{Series}{List of Series}
\section{New float environments}
\lipsum[1][1]
\begin{Series} \caption{Euler's constant}
  \[ \mathrm{e}
    = 1 + \sum^{\infty}_{k=1} \frac{1}{k!} \backslash
\end{Series}
... further text omitted ...
```

L^AT_EX's two standard float types `figure` and `table` cannot be given a float style using `\newfloat`, because they already exist when the float package is loaded. To solve this problem the package offers the declaration `\restylefloat{type}`, which selects the current float style (specified previously with a `\floatstyle` declaration) for floats of this *type*.

Customizing L^AT_EX's standard float types

For the same reason there exists the `\floatplacement{type}{placement}` declaration, which can be used to change the default placement specifier for a given float *type* (e.g., `\floatplacement{table}{tp}`). In the following example, both `figure` and `table` have been customized (not necessarily for the better) to exhibit the usage of these declarations.

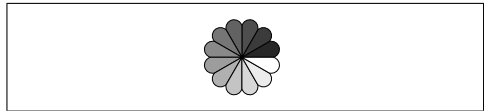


Figure 1: Sample figure

1 Customizing standard floats

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum

Table 1 Sample table		
AA	BBB	123
CCC	DDDD	45

7-3-3

```
\usepackage{lipsum,graphicx,float}
\floatstyle{boxed} \restylefloat{figure}
\floatstyle{ruled} \restylefloat{table}
\floatplacement{table}{b}
\section{Customizing standard floats}
\lipsum[1][1]
\begin{table} \begin{tabular}{@{}llr}
  AA & BBB & 123 \\
  CCC & DDDD & 45
\end{tabular}
\caption{Sample table}
\end{table}%
\begin{figure} \centering
  \includegraphics[width=12mm]{rosette}
\caption{Sample figure}
\end{figure}
\lipsum[1][2]
```

Place a float “here”

Modeled after David Carlisle’s `here` package, the `float` package adds the `[H]` placement specifier, which means “place the float Here regardless of any surrounding conditions”. It is available for all float types, including L^AT_EX’s standard `figure` and `table` environments. The `[H]` qualifier must always be used on a stand-alone basis; e.g., `[Hbpt]` is illegal.

If there is not enough space left on the current page, the float is printed at the top of the next page together with whatever follows, even if there is still room left on the current page. It is the author’s responsibility to place their `H` floats in such a way that no large patches of white space remain at the bottom of a page. Moreover, one must carefully check the order of floats when mixing standard and `[H]` placement parameters. Indeed, a float with a `[t]` specifier, for example, appearing before one with an `[H]` specifier in the input file might be incorrectly positioned after the latter in the typeset output so that, for instance, Figure 4 would precede Figure 3.

All float placement specifiers are shown together in the following table.

6

t	Top of page
b	Bottom of page
p	Page of floats
h	Here, if possible
H	Here, always

Table 1: Specifiers

With “h” instead of the “H” specifier this

7

```
\usepackage{float,array}
```

All float placement specifiers are shown together in the following table.

```
\begin{table}[H]
\begin{tabular}{>{\ttfamily}cl}
t & Top of page \\ b & Bottom of page \\
p & Page of floats \\
h & Here, if possible \\ H & Here, always
\end{tabular}
\caption{Specifiers}
\end{table}
```

With “h” instead of the “H” specifier this text would have appeared before the table in the current example.

7-3-4

In combination with the `placeins` and `afterpage` packages described in Sections 7.2.2 and 7.2.3, respectively, an even finer control on the placement of floats is possible. Indeed, in some cases, although you specify the placement parameter as `[H]`, you do not really mean “at this point”, but rather “somewhere close”. This effect is achieved by using the `\afterpage` command:

```
\afterpage{\FloatBarrier\begin{figure}[H]...\end{figure}}
```

The `\FloatBarrier` command ensures that all dangling floats are placed first at a suitable point (due to `\afterpage` without producing a huge gap in the text), thereby solving the sequencing problem, described above. The `[H]` float is then immediately placed afterwards. If you use `\clearpage` instead of `\FloatBarrier`, it would come out on top of the next page instead.

7.3.2 Captions for nonfloating figures and tables


An alternative to specifying the `[H]` option with the various float environments, as described in the previous section, is to define captioning commands that typeset

and are entered into the “List of Figures” or “List of Tables” just like L^AT_EX's standard figure and table environments. This functionality is provided by the caption package (discussed in more detail in Section 7.4.1).

`\captionof{type}[short-text]{text}` `\captionof*{type}{text}`

This command works analogously to L^AT_EX's `\caption` command but takes an additional mandatory argument to denote the float *type* it should mimic. It can be used for any nonfloating material that should get a (numbered) caption whose text is also added into the list of figures or list of tables. The starred form suppresses both the number and the “List of...” entry.¹

The following example shows a normal figure and its nonfloating variant used together. In such a case there is always the danger that a floating figure travels past its nonfloating counterparts. In the example we force this situation by pushing the floating figure to the bottom of the page. As a result, the numbering gets out of sync. One has to watch out for this problem when mixing floating and nonfloating objects, and in such cases a strategically placed `\FloatBarrier` might help.

 Watch out for incorrect numbering

List of Figures

2	Wrong order	1
1	Standard figure	1

1 Various kinds of figures

Here we mix standard and nonfloating figures.

Figure B

Figure 2: Nonfloating figure

Because Figure 1 is forced to the bottom with an optional `[b]` argument it passes Figure 2 and the ordering in LOF gets out of sync.

Figure A

Figure 1: Standard figure

```
\usepackage{caption}
\listoffigures
\section{Various kinds of figures}
Here we mix standard and nonfloating
figures.
\begin{figure}[b] \centering
  \fbox{Figure A}
  \caption{Standard figure}\label{fig:a}
\end{figure}
\begin{center}
  \fbox{Figure B}
  \captionof{figure}[Wrong order]
                                {Nonfloating figure}
  \label{fig:b}
\end{center}
Because Figure \ref{fig:a} is forced to
the bottom with an optional \texttt{[b]}
argument it passes Figure \ref{fig:b}
and the ordering in LOF gets out of sync.
```

7-3-5

7.3.3 rotating, rotfloat — Rotating floats

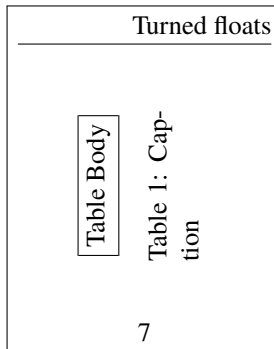
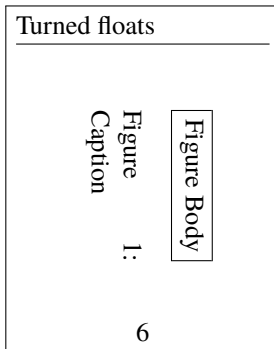
Sometimes it is desirable to turn the contents of a float sideways, by either 90 or 270 degrees. Because T_EX is not directly capable of performing such an operation, it needs support from an output device driver. To be as device independent as possible, L^AT_EX encapsulates the necessary operations in the packages `graphics` and `graphicx` (see

¹If used on the main vertical list there can be a page break before or after the command. If that is a problem, use a `minipage` to keep all material together.

Section 8.1). One of the earliest packages that used this interface was the rotating package written by Sebastian Rahtz (1955–2016) and Leonor Barroca.¹

The rotating package implements two environments, `sidewaysfigure` and `sidewaystable`, for turning whole floats sideways. These environments automatically produce page-sized floats, or more exactly column-sized floats (if used in `twocolumn` mode). Starred forms of these environments, which in `twocolumn` mode span both columns, exist as well.

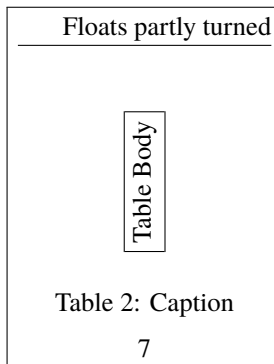
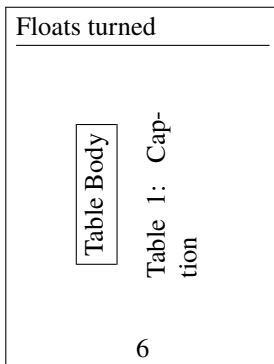
By default, the floats are turned in such a way that they can be read from the outside margin, as you can see in the next example. If you prefer your floats to be always turned in the same way, you can specify one of the package options `figuresright` or `figuresleft`.



```
\usepackage{rotating}
\usepackage{fancyhdr}
\pagestyle{fancy}
\fancyhead[R0,LE]{Turned floats}
\begin{sidewaysfigure}
  \centering \fbox{Figure Body}
  \caption{Caption}
\end{sidewaysfigure}
\begin{sidewaystable}
  \centering \fbox{Table Body}
  \caption{Caption}
\end{sidewaystable}
```

7-3-6

The package also defines a number of environments for rotating arbitrary objects, such as `turn` or `rotate` (to rotate material with or without leaving space for it); see Section 8.2.1. Directly relevant to floats is the `sideways` environment, which enables you to turn the float body while leaving the caption untouched. It is used in the following example, which also exhibits the result of the `figuresright` option (which, despite its name, acts on `sidewaysfigure` and `sidewaystable`).



```
\usepackage[figuresright]{rotating}
\usepackage{fancyhdr} \pagestyle{fancy}
\fancyhead[LE]{Floats turned}
\fancyhead[R0]{Floats partly turned}
\begin{sidewaystable} \centering
  \fbox{Table Body} \caption{Caption}
\end{sidewaystable}
\begin{table} \centering
  \begin{sideways}
    \fbox{Table Body}
  \end{sideways}
  \caption{Caption}
\end{table}
```

7-3-7

¹In fact, its original release predates the development of the graphics interface. It was later reimplemented as an extension of this interface.

Instead of turning the whole float or the float body, it is sometimes more appropriate to turn only the caption. This ability is supported by the rotating package through the `\rotcaption` command. Unfortunately, the layout produced by this command is hardwired but can be customized through the caption package whose features are discussed in Section 7.4.1.

rotfloat — Combining float and rotating

To extend the new float styles, as introduced by the float package, with the `sidewaysfigure` and `sidewaystable` environments defined in the rotating package, you can use Axel Sommerfeldt's `rotfloat` package. It allows you to build new floats that are rotated by 90 or 270 degrees.

The `rotfloat` package offers identical options to the rotating package. Internally, for every float *type*, `rotfloat` defines an additional environment with the name `sideways $type$` and its corresponding starred form. For instance, when you write

```
\newfloat{XML}{tbp}{lox} \floatname{XML}{XML Listing}
```

four environments become available: `XML`, `sidewaysXML`, and their corresponding starred forms `XML*` and `sidewaysXML*`. Similarly, the commands for redefining the `table` or `figure` environments, for example,

```
\floatstyle{boxed} \restylefloat{table}
```

restyle not only the `table` and `table*` environments, but also the environments `sidewaystable` and `sidewaystable*`.

7.3.4 wrapfig — Inline floats, wrapping text around a figure

In T_EX's typesetting model, text is first broken into paragraphs on a vertically oriented galley (or scroll). Once enough material is collected in this way T_EX invokes its output routine, which chops off the first part of the galley, attaches running headers and footers as specified, and outputs the result in the `.dvi` file. It then restarts collecting text and breaking it into paragraphs to refill the galley.

As a consequence of this processing model, it is relatively easy to implement a float mechanism in which floats span the full width of the page or at least the full width of individual columns. Unfortunately, it is nearly impossible to have floats that occupy only parts of a text column and have the text flow around them. The reason is that when the paragraphs are broken into lines, their final positions are not yet known. It is therefore impossible to direct the paragraph builder to leave holes for the float objects if a later part of the process decides on their final placement. In contrast, placing floats at the top or the bottom of a page (or column) only directs the output routine to chop off less material from the assembled galley without otherwise manipulating the galley content.

Because of this processing model, the production of inline floats with text flowing around the float object has to take place during the paragraph-generating phase. The best outcome that packages can currently achieve is to ensure that the inline floats

do not fall off the page (by measuring the amount of material already assembled on the galley to decide whether there is enough space to fit in the inline float with its surrounding paragraph(s)).

Such an algorithm is, for example, implemented by Donald Arseneau's `wrapfig` package. Because the package's inline floats only “float” very little in comparison to standard floats, mixing both types can result in the float numbering getting out of sequence. There are other packages offering this kind of functionality, but all of them have one or the other problem and often leave the placement decisions completely to the user because the automatic solution comes out wrong in many cases so that it is not worth supplying it in the first place. The `wrapfig` package supports figures and tables and offers some support for automatic placement, which works reasonably well.

The package `wrapfig` defines the `wrapfloat`, `wrapfigure`, and `wraptable` environments. These environments allow one to typeset a narrow float at the edge of some text and then make the text wrap around it. All three produce captions with the standard caption layout for floats. Although the environments have some limited ability to “float”, no provision is made to synchronize them with regular floats. Thus, one must be aware that they may be printed out of sequence with standard floats.

```
\begin{wrapfloat}{type}[nlines]{placement}[overhang]{width}
```

The `wrapfigure` and `wraptable` environments are just shorthands with the *type* argument prefilled with `figure` or `table`, respectively. The other two mandatory and two optional arguments common to all three environments have the following meanings:

nlines (optional) The number of narrow lines needed for the float (normally calculated automatically). Each display equation counts as three lines.

placement Horizontal placement of the float, specified as *one* of the following letters: `r` or `R` (right side of the text), and `l` or `L` (left side of the text). There is no option for centering the float. For a two-sided document, the placement can alternatively be specified via `i` or `I` (inside edge) and `o` or `O` (outside edge). This refers to the inside and outside of the whole page, not to individual columns. In each case the uppercase variant allows the figure or table to float, while the lowercase variant puts it “exactly here”.

overhang (optional) Overhang of the float into the margin (default 0pt).

width Width of the figure or table. Specifying 0pt has a special meaning, such that the “natural width” is used as the wrapping width. The caption is then typeset to the wrapping width. If the figure is wider than the space allotted, an “overfull box” is generated, and the figure or table contents can overwrite the wrapping text.

LaTeX wraps surrounding text around the float, leaving a gap of `\intextsep` at the top and bottom and `\columnsep` at the side, thereby producing a series of shortened text lines beside the figure. The size of the hole made in the text is the float width plus `\columnsep` minus the *overhang* value.

The package calculates the number of short lines needed based on the height of the float and the length `\intextsep`. This guess may be overridden by specifying the first optional argument (*nlines*), which is the desired number of shortened lines. This can be useful when the surrounding text contains extra vertical spacing that is not accounted for automatically or when the float contains display formulas.

Our first example shows a wrapped table 3cm wide and placed at the left side of the paragraph. The package calculated a wrapping of 5 lines, which would have left a lot of empty space below the caption, so we explicitly selected 4 lines of wrapping instead. The figure is referenced using L^AT_EX's standard `\label` and `\ref` commands.

Wrapped Table

Table 1: Caption

Text with a reference to Table 1. More text to fill the paragraph such that the text can flow around the table. The line-breaking results are rather ugly in such narrow measure.

```
\usepackage{wrapfig}
```

```
\begin{wraptable}[4]{l}{3cm} \centering
  \fbox{Wrapped Table}\caption{Caption}\label{T}
\end{wraptable}
Text with a reference to Table~\ref{T}. More text
to fill the paragraph such that the text can
flow around the table. The line-breaking results
are rather ugly in such narrow measure.
```

7-3-8

The three environments should not be used inside another environment (e.g., list). They do work in twocolumn page layout (provided the column width is wide enough to allow inline floats).

Generally L^AT_EX is not able to move such environments to their optimal places, so it is up to you to position them in the best fashion. It is best to wait to do so until just before printing your *final copy*, because any changes to the document can ruin their careful positioning. Information about float processing by wrapfig is written to the log file if you specify the `verbose` option. Here are some rules for good placement:

- The environments should be placed so as to not run over a page boundary and must not be placed in special places like lists.
- Only ordinary text should have to flow past the figure but not a section title or large equations. Small equations are acceptable if they fit.
- It is convenient to place `\begin{wrapfigure}` or `\begin{wraptable}` just after a paragraph has ended. If you want to start in the middle of a paragraph, the environment must be placed between two words where there is a natural line break, which may require some experimentation.

Our second example displays a figure that is set to its natural width (last argument `0pt`), but extends 20% into the left margin (specified by the optional *overhang* argument). Instead of using the special unit `\width`, denoting the natural float width in this case, one can, of course, use some explicit dimension such as `30pt`. The effect of this choice can be clearly seen by looking at the way the paragraph text is typeset below the picture when the text wrapping ends. As the example also shows, wrapping continues even across paragraph boundaries if necessary.

The formatting of the caption can be influenced by combining `wrapfig` with packages like `caption`, although an option like `centerlast` may not be the appropriate choice in narrow measures.

The starting place for the `wrapfigure` environment was manually determined in the current example

This is a “wrapfigure”.

Figure 1: An example of the `wrapfigure` environment

The figure was then inserted after the second line giving the results that you see here.

```
\usepackage{wrapfig}
\usepackage[labelfont={sf,bf},
  justification=centerlast]{caption}

The starting place for the \texttt{wrapfigure}
environment was manually determined in
\begin{wrapfigure}[7]{l}[0.2\width]{0pt}
  \centering \fbox{This is a “wrapfigure”}.
  \caption{An example of the
    \texttt{wrapfigure} environment}
\end{wrapfigure}

the current example by first setting the text
without the figure to find the natural
line breaks. \par
The figure was then inserted after the second
line giving the results that you see here.
```

7-3-9

In the preceding example we specified an *overhang* length explicitly. The overhang width can also be specified globally for all `wrapfig` environments by setting the `\wrapoverhang` length with L^AT_EX’s `\setlength` command to a nonzero value. For example, to have all wrap figures and tables use the space reserved for marginal notes, you could write

```
\setlength \wrapoverhang{\marginparwidth}
\addtolength\wrapoverhang{\marginparsep}
```

New “wrapping” environments for additional float types (as defined via the float package) with the same interface and behavior as `wrapfigure` or `wraptable` may be easily added, or directly invoked, using the `wrapfloat` environment:

```
\usepackage{float,wrapfig} \newfloat{XML}{tbp}{lox}
\newenvironment{wrapXML}{\begin{wrapfloat}{XML}}{\end{wrapfloat}}
```

You can find other ways to fine-tune the behavior of `wrapfig` by reading the implementation notes at the end of the `wrapfig.sty` package file. The distribution also contains a file `multiple-spans.txt` that gives advice on how to manually produce cutouts across multiple columns using the `wrapfig` package. While this is somewhat labor intensive and should be undertaken only in the last steps of document production, it can produce nice results.

7.4 Controlling the float caption

When you want to explain what is shown in your floating environment (`figure` or `table` in standard L^AT_EX), you normally use a `\caption` command. After introducing the basic syntax and explaining the (low-level) interfaces available with standard L^AT_EX,

this section describes the powerful caption package, which offers a large number of customization possibilities for adjusting the caption layout to your needs. As shown in the examples, it can be combined with all other packages described in this chapter.

The section concludes by examining the subcaption package, which introduces substructures for float objects. Another package that introduces the concepts of side captions and works in concert with caption and subcaption is discussed later in Section 7.5.1 on page 560.

`\caption[short-text]{text}`

This standard \LaTeX command is defined only inside a float environment. It increments the counter associated with the float in question. If present, the optional argument *short-text* goes into the list of figures or tables. If only the mandatory argument *text* is specified, then it is used in those lists. If the caption is longer than one line, you are strongly advised to use the optional argument to provide a short and informative description of your float. Otherwise, the list of figures and tables may become unreadable, and it may be difficult to locate the necessary information. In fact, \LaTeX allows multiparagraph captions only if the *short-text* argument is present. Otherwise, you get a low-level “Runaway argument?” error.

The following example shows how standard \LaTeX typesets captions. Compare this layout to the customization provided by the various packages discussed in the next sections. Note how the optional argument of the second `\caption` command defines what text appears for that figure in the “List of Figures”.

List of Figures

1	Short caption text	6	
2	Short entry in lof	6	<code>\listoffigures</code> <code>\section{Caption}</code> Figures <code>\ref{Fig1}</code> and <code>\ref{Fig2}</code> have captions.

1 Caption

Figures 1 and 2 have captions.

A small Figure

Figure 1: Short caption text

Another small Figure

Figure 2: Long caption text with some explanation
that this figure is important even though it is small.

```

\begin{figure}[ht] \centering
\fbbox{\small A small Figure}
\caption{Short caption text}\label{Fig1}
\end{figure}
\begin{figure}[ht] \centering
\fbbox{\small Another small Figure}
\caption[Short entry in lof]
{Long caption text with some explanation
 that this figure is important even
 though it is small.}\label{Fig2}
\end{figure}

```

7-4-1

Internally, `\caption` invokes the command `\@makecaption{label}{text}`. The *label* argument is the sequence number of the caption and some text like “Figure”; it is generated internally depending on the type of float. The *text* argument is passed on from the mandatory `\caption` argument; it is the text to be typeset. The default

definition for the part responsible for the typesetting of a caption looks something like this:

```
\newcommand\@makecaption[2]{% #1 is e.g., Figure 1,
                                % #2 is the caption text
  \vspace{\abovecaptionskip}%
  \sbox\@tempboxa{#1: #2}%
  \ifthenelse{\lengthtest{\wd\@tempboxa >\linewidth}}{% test the size:
    {\noindent #1: #2\par}%          <- we have several lines
    {\centering %                  <- we have a single line
      \makebox[\linewidth][c]{\usebox\@tempboxa}\par
    }%
  \vspace{\belowcaptionskip}%
}
```

After an initial vertical space of size `\abovecaptionskip` (default often 10pt), the material is typeset in a temporary box `\@tempboxa`, and its width is compared to the line width. If the material fits on one line, the text is centered; if the material does not fit on a single line, it is typeset as a paragraph with a width equal to the line width. Thereafter, a final vertical space of `\belowcaptionskip` (default typically 0pt) is added, finishing the typesetting. The actual implementation that you find in the standard classes uses lower-level commands to speed up the processing so it looks somewhat different.

You can, of course, define other ways of formatting your captions by redefining `\@makecaption`, possibly even by supplying different definitions for different types of floats. However, this approach requires fairly low-level programming and is not very flexible, so it is normally better to use a package like `caption` (described below) to do this work for you. Rather than force you to write your own code for customizing captions, we therefore invite you to read the following pages, which describe a few packages that offer various styles to typeset captions.

7.4.1 `caption` — Customizing your captions

Axel Sommerfeldt developed the `caption` package¹ to customize the captions in floating environments. It not only supports L^AT_EX's standard `figure` and `table` environments, but also interfaces correctly with the `\rotcaption` command and the `sidewaysfigure` and `sidewaystable` environments of the rotating package. It works equally well with most of the other packages described in this chapter (see the original documentation for a complete compatibility matrix).

Like many packages these days, the `caption` package uses the extended option concept (based on the `keyval` package), in which options consist of a key and a value separated by an equal sign. In most cases there exists a default value for an option; thus, you can specify just the key without a value to produce this default behavior.

¹The `caption` package is, in fact, a completely rewritten version of Axel's `caption2` package and makes the latter obsolete. The old package is still distributed but only to support reprocessing old documents.

The customization possibilities of the `caption` package cover (nearly) all aspects of formatting and placing captions, and we introduce them below. For those users who need even more customization, the package offers an interface to add additional key values (representing special formatting).

Using package options allows us only to set defaults for all float captions regardless of their type. The `caption` package therefore also supports setting these options/keys through `\captionsetup` declarations. This way you can provide settings on a per type basis (if necessary) and also overwrite the default settings for individual floats in the document if that becomes necessary.

`\captionsetup[type]{key/value list}`

The `\captionsetup` declaration expects a *key/value list* like the one possible when loading the package itself. The difference is that, if used with the optional *type* argument, this declaration specifies caption formatting for only this particular float type (e.g., `figure`) or any float type that has been set up with a `\newfloat` declaration from the float package.

Such declarations can be used in the preamble of a document in which case they set up defaults, but they can also be used inside the document. In particular, if used within the body of a float environment, they change the settings for this float only, thus allowing for manual adjustments if necessary.

Standard customization possibilities for `\caption`

In the following we are discussing the various keys offered by `caption` for customizing the layout of captions. All of them are available out of the box and can be used either as package options or in key/value lists inside `\captionsetup`. Later we discuss how to extend this set of keys and values.

The first set of keys we examine here are those that influence the overall shape of the caption: Customizing the general shape

singlelinecheck or **slc** If the whole caption (including the label) fits on a single line, use a special layout (value `true`). If given the value `false`, such captions are formatted identically to multiple-line captions. `slc` is just a short name for the same key.

format This key defines the overall shape of the caption (except when overwritten by the previous key). With the value `plain`, you get a typical “standard L^AT_EX” format, that is, the label and the caption text are set as a single block. Absent any further customization by other keys, the label and the text are separated by a colon and space, and the caption is set justified to full width.

With the value `default` you request the standard setup used by the document class (which for many classes is the same as `plain`).

As an alternative, the value `hang` specifies that the caption should be set with the label (and separation) to the left of the caption text. In other words, continuation lines are indented by the width of the label.

margin, width, oneside By default, the caption occupies the whole width of the column (or page). By specifying a specific width you can reduce the measure used for the caption. In this case the caption is centered across the column. Alternatively you can use the `margin` key with one or two dimensions as a value. If two values are given, they are used for the inner and outer margins; otherwise, the value is used for both margins. To prevent the swapping of margins on even pages, specify `oneside` in addition.

The next example uses the `margin` key. As you can see, it affects only multiline captions (unless you also set `singlelinecheck` to `false`).

indentation, hangindent If set to a given dimension, the `indentation` key specifies an additional indentation for all continuation lines (e.g., on top of any indentation already produced when `format=hang` is specified).

The `hangindent` key is similar but applies to the continuation lines of each paragraph individually in a multiparagraph caption.

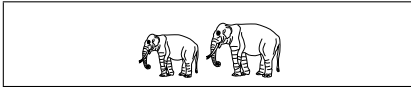


Figure 1: Short caption

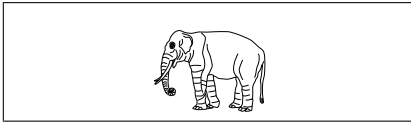


Figure 2: A caption that runs over more than one line

```
\usepackage{graphicx,float}
\floatstyle{boxed} \restylefloat{figure}
\usepackage[format=hang,margin={0pt,15pt}]{caption}

\begin{figure}[ht] \centering
\includegraphics[width=8mm]{elephant}
\includegraphics[width=10mm]{elephant}
\caption{Short caption}
\end{figure}

\begin{figure}[ht] \centering
\includegraphics[width=15mm]{elephant}
\caption{A caption that runs over more than one line}
\end{figure}
```

7-4-2

Customizing the fonts

If you look at the previous example, you will notice that with this particular layout the space between the box and caption appears very tight. Keys for adjusting such spaces are discussed on page 545. Unfortunately, in some float styles, such as `boxed`, they are hardwired and cannot be changed. First, however, we look at keys for adjusting the fonts used within the caption, which always work.

font This key defines the font characteristics for the whole caption (label and text), unless overwritten. It can take a comma-separated list of values to specify the font family (`rm`, `sf`, or `tt`), font series (`md` or `bf`), font shape (`up`, `it`, `sl`, or `sc`), or font size (`scriptsize`, `footnotesize`, `small`, `normalsize`, `large`, or `Large`). There also exists `smaller` and `larger` to move in relative steps. If more than one value is used, then the list must be surrounded by braces to hide the inner comma from being misinterpreted as separating one key from the next (see the example below).

Color is considered a font attribute, so if a color package is loaded, you can also use the values `normalcolor` or an explicit `color`, which then uses a somewhat unusual syntax, i.e., `font={color=color}`.

Key values for the same font attribute (e.g., the font shape) overwrite each other, but those for different attributes have the expected combined effect. Two separate calls to `font` overwrite each other, but if you use `font+`, then new settings are simply appended to the existing list.

To set the font attributes to their default settings use the value `default` or `normal`.

labelfont While the key `font` defines the overall font characteristics, this key specifies the (additional!) attribute values to use for the caption label.

textfont This key works like `labelfont` but is used for the caption text. In the next example we use it to reset the font series from boldface to medium.



Figure 1: Short caption

7-4-3

Let there be a table

Table 1: A caption that runs over more than one line

```
\usepackage{graphicx,float}
\floatstyle{boxed} \restylefloat{table}
\usepackage[font={sf,bf,footnotesize},
textfont={md,smaller}]{caption}

\begin{figure}[ht] \centering
\includegraphics[width=10mm]{Escher}
\caption{Short caption}
\end{figure}

\begin{table}[ht] \centering Let there be a table
\caption{A caption that runs over more than one line}
\end{table}
```

Another frequent requirement is the customization of the layout for the caption label, such as by replacing the default colon after the label by something else, or omitting it altogether. Also, the separation between label and text may require adjustments. Both can be achieved with the following keys and their values:

Customizing the label further

labelformat With this key a format for the label can be selected. Out of the box the following values can be used: `simple` (label string, e.g., “Figure” followed by the number and separated by a nonbreakable space), `parens` (number in parentheses), `brace` (number followed by a right parentheses), and `empty` (omit the label including the number altogether).

Additional values for alternative formattings can be defined using the declaration `\DeclareCaptionLabelFormat`, as explained on page 549.

labelsep This key specifies the separation between the label and the text. Available values are `none`, `colon`, `period`, `space`, `quad`, `endash` (with surrounding spaces), and `newline`, which have the expected meanings.

New values producing other kinds of separations can be defined using the declaration `\DeclareCaptionLabelSeparator` as shown below. Note that `labelsep` is not used when the caption text is empty.¹

name This key allows one to set the caption label string that normally differs from float type to float type, e.g., “Figure” or “Table”. It is therefore not useful as a

¹Thus, if we had wanted, say, a period to appear at the end of all caption labels in Example 7-4-4, we should have provided a new value for `labelformat` that included it and set `labelsep` to `newline` instead.

package option but is normally used only with `\captionsetup` and an optional *type* argument. We use it below to supply the word “Image”.

In the upcoming example we have to provide the key/values list through a `\captionsetup` declaration because our new value for `labelsep` is not yet defined when the package options are evaluated. We also need to use it to limit our changes just to the figure floats; otherwise, the table would be labeled “Image”.

A B C

Table 1: No format change

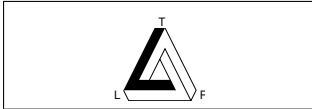


Image 1

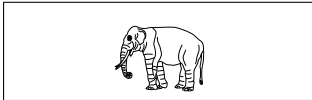


Image 2:

A small elephant

```
\usepackage{graphicx,float,caption}
\floatstyle{boxed} \restylefloat{figure}
\DeclareCaptionLabelSeparator{colon-newline}{:\newline}
\captionsetup[figure]{aboveskip=3pt,singlelinecheck=false,
    labelsep=colon-newline,labelfont={small,bf},name=Image}

\begin{table}[ht] \centering
    A B C \caption{No format change}
\end{table}

\begin{figure}[ht] \centering
    \includegraphics[width=12mm]{Escher} \caption{}
\end{figure}

\begin{figure}[ht] \centering
    \includegraphics[width=12mm]{elephant}
    \caption{A small elephant}
\end{figure}
```

7-4-4

Paragraph-related customizations

The actual formatting of the caption text within the general shape, such as the justification, can be customized with the following three keys:

justification This key specifies how the paragraph should be justified. The default is full justification (value `justified`). Using the value `centering` results in all lines being centered. The `raggedleft` and `raggedright` values produce unjustified settings with ragged margins at the indicated side.

If the `ragged2e` package is loaded as well, you can use the additional values `Centering`, `RaggedLeft`, and `RaggedRight`, thereby employing the commands from that package that are described in Section 3.1.1.

Two other special justifications are available: `centerfirst` centers the first line and fully justifies the rest (with `\parfillskip` set to zero), whereas `centerlast` works the opposite way, centering the last line. Both shapes are sometimes requested for captions, but in most circumstances they produce questionable results.

Further specialized justification setups can be defined using the declaration `\DeclareCaptionJustification` as described in the documentation.

parskip This key controls the separation between paragraphs in multiparagraph captions. It expects a dimension as its value. Recall that captions with several paragraphs are possible only if the optional caption argument is present!

textformat This key controls the overall formatting of the caption text. Supported values are `empty` (text suppressed), `simple` (as is), and `period`. Further values can be set up with `\DeclareCaptionTextFormat`.

Bild

Figure (1) *A caption that runs over more than one line to show the effect of the `centerfirst` key value.*

Note that `centerfirst` only applies to the first paragraph of a multiparagraph caption.

7-4-5

```
\usepackage{color}
\usepackage[textfont={rm,it},labelformat=parens,
             labelfont={sf,color=blue},labelsep=quad,
             justification=centerfirst,parskip=3pt]
{caption}

\begin{figure}[ht] \centering
  {\fontfamily{put}\fontsize{60}{60}\bfseries Bild}
  \caption[A short caption text]
    {A caption that runs over more than one line
     to show the effect of the centerfirst key value.}

  Note that \texttt{centerfirst} only applies to
  the first paragraph of a multiparagraph caption.}
\end{figure}
```

The final set of keys deals with the position of the caption with respect to the float body. Note that none of these settings actually moves the caption in the particular place (you have to do that manually; use a float style from the float package or one of the key/value package in Section 7.5 to do it for you). The keys affect only the space being inserted.

Customizing the spacing around the caption


skip or **aboveskip** Space between the caption and float body—for example, “above” the caption if caption is the placed at the bottom. It typically defaults to 10pt. The name `skip` should be preferred as `aboveskip` is really a misnomer as explained below.

belowskip Space on the opposite side of the caption—that is, away from the float body. It is 0pt in most standard classes.

position Specifies that the caption is placed above the float body (value `top`) or below the float body (value `bottom`; the default). It does *not* place the caption there. That is still your task (or that of a package such as float).

figureposition, **tableposition** Specifying the caption position for figures or tables separately is rather common, and to ease this process, these keys are made available. Technically speaking they are just shorthands for saying something like `\captionsetup[table]{position=...}`.

Note that the names `aboveskip` and `belowskip` give the wrong implications: they do *not* describe physical places but rather are swapped if the caption is *marked* (using `position`) as being placed on the top. This is quite different from the parameters `\abovecaptionskip` and `\belowcaptionskip` in L^AT_EX’s default implementation of the `\caption` command (see page 540), which *do* describe their physical place in relation to the caption! For some float package styles setting these keys may have no effect.

 *Be careful with the meanings of the keys*

hyperref link
support

If the `hyperref` package (Section 2.4.6) is used to automatically provide links within the document, it normally jumps next to the caption, because as far as `hyperref` is concerned this is the object that provides the referenceable number. However, if that caption is below the float body, it would be nicer if the jump would be to the start of the top of the float containing the caption so that the whole float is visible. This can be controlled with the following two keys:

`hypcap` If set to `true` (default), jump to the top of floats; otherwise, the hyperlink anchor is placed at the caption.¹

`hypcapspace` Placing the anchor exactly at the top of the float does not look too good either, so by default a distance of half a baseline is used. If you prefer a larger or smaller distance, you can specify the *amount* as the value to this key.

Doing it with style

Named caption
styles

So far all keys we discussed dealt with one aspect of the formatting each. The `style` key, however, is meant to adjust several other keys in one go. Out of the box it accepts only two values: `default` sets most keys to their “default” value defined by the document class, and `base` sets various keys so that the captions look like those produced by the standard \LaTeX classes. Thus, to make this key really useful one has to provide additional named values as discussed below. Then, however, it provides a powerful way to structure your setup nicely.

Managing list of figures and similar lists

By default `\caption` provides an entry in the corresponding “List of ...” unless you use the star form of the command or provide an empty optional argument. If you want to prevent such entries in general (for a certain type), you can use the `list` key with the value `no` or `false`. Example 7-4-6 shows an application for this.

With the key `listformat` you can change the way the float number is typeset within the list. The supported values are similar to those of `labelformat`, though not the same: `empty`, `simple`, and `parens`. In addition, there are `subsimple` (default) and `subparens` that only typeset the number without the label string.

Continuing captions across floats


Sometimes figures or tables are so large that they do not fit on a single page. For such tables, the `longtable` or `supertabular` package may provide a solution. For multipage figures, however, no packages for automated splitting are available.

In the past a general solution to this problem was provided through the `captcont` package written by Steven Cochran that supports the retention of a caption number across several float environments. Nowadays this functionality is readily available with the `caption` package. It provides the command `\ContinuedFloat` to be used before issuing the `\caption` command if the current caption number should be retained.

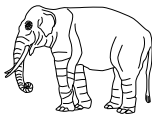
¹There are exceptions: with some packages `caption` is unable to control the link anchor placement.

Furthermore, it executes a key/value list associated with the artificial float type `ContinuedFloat`. This allows you to set up a dedicated caption layout for the continued floats.

If you prefer that the continued caption does not appear in the “List of...” list, use `\caption` with an empty optional argument (see Example 7-4-17 on page 558), or `\caption*`, which suppresses the LOF entry and caption label and number. Alternatively you can always suppress it using the `list` key as shown in the next example:

List of Figures		
1	Animals .	6
A figure placed at the page bottom and continued at the top of the next		
		
Figure 1: Animals		
		6

7-4-6

		
Figure 1: Animals (cont.)		
page. The caption appears only once in the LOF.		
		7

```
\usepackage{graphicx,caption}
\DeclareCaptionTextFormat{cont}
    {#1 (cont.)}
\captionsetup[ContinuedFloat]
    {textformat=cont,list=no}

\listoffigures \bigskip
\begin{figure}[!b]
    \centering \includegraphics{cat}
    \caption{Animals}
\end{figure}
A figure placed at the page bottom and
continued at the top of the next page.
The caption appears only once in the LOF.
\begin{figure}[!t] \ContinuedFloat
    \centering \includegraphics
        [width=2cm]{elephant}
    \caption{Animals}
\end{figure}
```

When `\ContinuedFloat` is used, it automatically maintains the counter `ContinuedFloat` in the background, incrementing it each time and resetting it to zero at the next float that is not a continuation float. Thus, you can use this counter to customize the float caption or reference to it. For example,

```
\DeclareCaptionLabelFormat{cont}{#1~#2\alph{ContinuedFloat}}
\captionsetup[ContinuedFloat]{labelformat=cont}
```

provides a new label format and assigns it to continued floats, such that the label shows up as “Figure 1a” automatically. See page 549 for more details on this declaration. This does not change the reference, though; for that you need to redefine `\theContinuedFloat`. This command is appended to the normal counter representation of a continuation float; e.g., if `\thefigure` is defined to produce `\arabic{figure}`, then this gets changed in a continuation figure environment to `\arabic{figure}\theContinuationFloat`.

By default the command does not produce any output, but the next example shows how it can be redefined. That example shows three figures. The first two are continuation floats, so they use subnumbering (“1” and “1a”). Both these labels are correctly handled by \TeX ’s `\listoffigures` and `\ref` commands.

You may prefer the continuation already indicated in the first caption, i.e., the first float already numbered “1a”. This is possible too: all you need to do is to additionally use `\ContinuedFloat*` in the first float. This command increments the main float counter but otherwise sets things up as a continuation float.

List of Figures			
1a	First figure .	1	
1b	Continuation	2	
2	Third figure	2	

Figure I			
Figure 1a: First figure			
Figures 1a and 1b in this example are subnumbered, while Figure 2 is not.			
1			

Figure II			
Figure 1b: Continuation			
Figure III			
Figure 2: Third figure			
Use <code>\ContinuedFloat*</code> if the first float should be labeled 1a already.			
2			

```

\usepackage[labelfont={bf}]{caption}
\renewcommand\theContinuedFloat
    {\alph{ContinuedFloat}}

\listoffigures \bigskip
\begin{figure}[!ht]
  \ContinuedFloat* % <- star form
  \centering\fbbox{Figure I}
  \caption{First figure}\label{FI}
\end{figure}
\begin{figure}[!ht]
  \ContinuedFloat
  \centering\fbbox{Figure II}
  \caption{Continuation}\label{FII}
\end{figure}
Figures \ref{FI} and \ref{FII} in
this example are subnumbered, while
Figure~\ref{FIII} is not. \par Use
\verb=\ContinuedFloat* if the first
float should be labeled 1a already.
\begin{figure}
  \centering\fbbox{\LARGE Figure III}
  \caption{Third figure}\label{FIII}
\end{figure}

```

7-4-7

Extending the customization possibilities

In the remainder of this section we discuss how to structure your caption setup by providing new “styles” and show how to extend the setup for caption label layouts. Several of the declarations here have also been previously used in examples.

```
\DeclareCaptionStyle{name}[short-style]{long-style}
```

The `\DeclareCaptionStyle` declaration associates a key/value list with a *name* that can later be referred to as the value of a *style* key within `\captionsetup`. The mandatory *long-style* argument is a list of key/value pairs that describe the formatting of a caption if the style *name* is selected. The optional *short-style* argument lists key/value pairs that are *additionally* executed whenever the caption is determined to be “short” (i.e., if it would fit on a single line and `singlelinecheck` is not set to false).

It is possible to combine the *style* keys with other keys inside the argument of `\captionsetup`, as shown in the next example. There we select the style default (predefined) for all floats except figures but overwrite its setting for `labelfont`.

Note that the example is intended to show possibilities of the package — not good taste.



FIGURE 1. *A long caption that runs over more than one line to show the effect of the style key.*

7-4-8

Let there be a table

Table 1: A long caption that runs over more than one line to show the effect of the style key.

```
\usepackage{caption,graphicx}
\DeclareCaptionStyle{italic}
  {labelfont={sf,sc},textfont={rm,it},indentation=18pt,
   labelsep=period,justification=raggedright}
\captionsetup[figure]{style=italic}
\captionsetup{style=default,labelfont={sf,bf}}

\begin{figure}[ht]
  \centering
  \includegraphics{cat}
  \caption{A long caption that runs over more than
    one line to show the effect of the style key.}
\end{figure}

\begin{table}[ht]
  \centering
  \fbox{Let there be a table}
  \caption{A long caption that runs over more than
    one line to show the effect of the style key.}
\end{table}
```

`\DeclareCaptionLabelFormat{name}{code}`

This declaration defines or redefines a `labelformat` key value *name* to generate *code* to format the label, where *code* takes two arguments: #1 (a string like “Figure”) and #2 (the float number). Thus, to produce brackets around the whole label, you can define your own `brackets` key as follows:

```
\DeclareCaptionLabelFormat{brackets}{[#1\nobreakspace#2]}
```

While this approach would work well in all examples seen so far, the above definition nevertheless contains a potential pitfall: if #1 is empty for some reason (e.g., if you changed `\figurename` to produce nothing), the above definition would put a space in front of the number. To account for situations like this, the caption package offers the `\bothIfFirst` command.

`\bothIfFirst{first}{second}` `\bothIfSecond{first}{second}`

The `\bothIfFirst` command tests whether *first* is nonempty and, if so, typesets both *first* and *second*. Otherwise, it typesets nothing. With its help the above declaration can be improved as follows:

```
\DeclareCaptionLabelFormat{brackets}
  {\[\bothIfFirst{#1}{\nobreakspace#2}]}
```

As a second example, suppose you want your caption labels to look like this: “(4) Figure”. You could set up a new format, named `parensfirst`, and later assign it to

the `labelformat`:

```
\DeclareCaptionLabelFormat{parensfirst}
    {(#2)\bothIfSecond{\nobreakspace}{#1}}
\captionsetup{labelformat=parensfirst}
```

In a similar fashion you can add new key values for use with the `labelsep` key using the `\DeclareCaptionLabelSeparator` declaration.

```
\DeclareCaptionLabelSeparator{name}{code}
```

After a `\DeclareCaptionLabelSeparator` the key value *name* refers to *code* and can be used as the value to the `labelsep` key. For example, if you want to have a separation of one quad between the label and the text that should be allowed to stretch slightly, you can define

```
\DeclareCaptionLabelSeparator{widespace}{\hspace{1em plus .3em}}
```

and then use it as `labelsep=widespace` in the argument of `\captionsetup` or `\DeclareCaptionStyle`.

```
\DeclareCaptionTextFormat{name}{code}
```

With the help of `\DeclareCaptionTextFormat` you can apply special formatting to the caption text supplied from the document. Within *code* it is available as `#1`. It has been already used in Example 7-4-6.

In addition to customizing the label format, you can define your own general caption shapes using `\DeclareCaptionFormat`, or specialized justification settings using `\DeclareCaptionJustification`. These are more specialized extensions, and their internal coding is a bit more difficult, so we do not show an example here. If necessary, consult the package documentation.

Such declarations can be made in the preamble of your documents. Alternatively, if you are using the same settings over and over again, you can place them in a configuration file (e.g., `mycaption.cfg`) and then load this configuration as follows:

```
\usepackage[config=mycaption]{caption}
```

While it is possible to combine the `config` key with other key, it is probably clearer to specify additional modifications through a `\captionsetup` declaration in the preamble. Also remember that using config files always means that you need to distribute your config as part of the document if you want to get comparable results on different installations.

The caption package collaborates smoothly with the other packages described in this chapter, as can be observed in the various examples. Note that in some cases this package has to be loaded *after* the packages whose captioning style one wants to modify.

Providing new
caption shapes and
justifications

External
configuration files

7.4.2 subcaption — Substructuring floats

The `subcaption` package (by Axel Sommerfeldt) allows the manipulation and reference of small, “sub” figures and tables by simplifying the positioning, captioning, and labeling of such objects within a single float environment. If desired, subcaptions associated with these subfloats can appear in the corresponding list of floats (e.g., the list of figures). In addition, a global caption can be present. If hyperlinks are enabled in the document, cross-references correctly link back to their origin, a feature not available in the `subfig` package (by Steven Cochran) that for a long time dominated this type of layout.

In this section we describe `subcaption` because it is closer linked with the `caption` package, does not have some of the restrictions of `subfig` (most notably the problem with the `hyperref` support), and offers more flexibility and features. There are, however, cases where it might be appropriate to resort to `subfig`, for example, when using a document class that conflicts with the `caption` package, because this means `subcaption` cannot be used either.

The syntax of the two packages is not identical but is similar enough that it is easy to convert a document from one to the other. For example, the dominant command in `subfig` is `\subfloat`, which corresponds to a restricted version of `subcaption`’s `\subcaptionbox`, except that in the latter the caption argument is mandatory while it is optional with `\subfloat`.

```
\subcaptionbox [list-entry]{caption}[width][justification]{content}
\subcaptionbox*           {caption}[width][justification]{content}
```

The `\subcaptionbox` typesets the *content* as subfloat with a caption attached. The arguments *list-entry* (if present) and *caption* are passed as arguments to the `\caption` command, or in case of the star form, to the `\caption*` command. If you wish to get only an (alpha)numeric label, use an empty *caption* argument. An empty *list-entry* signifies that for this instance the caption text should not be inserted in the “List of...”. This special feature is relevant only if the subfloat captions should be listed there in the first place: see page 558 for information on creating this setup.

The content is typeset in L-R mode if no *width* argument is specified (most suitable when typesetting a single graphic or table), otherwise in paragraph mode. In the latter case you can also specify the desired *justification*: *c* for centered lines (default), *l* for left aligned (i.e., ragged right), or *r* for right aligned. Also possible is any value allowed/defined for the *justification* key of the `caption` package, e.g., `centerfirst` or anything defined through `\DeclareCaptionJustification`.

When you use two or more `\subcaptionboxes` horizontally next to each other, the baseline of the boxes are right between the *content* part and the caption, which means the first (or the last) line of the captions align when the caption is underneath (or above, e.g., in case of tables). Thus, there is normally no need to provide manual adjustments for a pleasing layout.

Our first example shows a figure that features two `\subcaptionbox` components that display this alignment behavior. To reference them, you must associate labels with each of these `\subcaptionbox` commands (be careful to put the `\label` commands

*Horizontally or
vertically oriented
content*

*Alignment of
subfloat boxes*

*Placement
of labels is key*

inside the braces enclosing the *caption* argument). We also place a `\label` following the `\caption` command to identify the enclosing figure environment, so that outside the environment we can refer to each of the components separately.



(a) Small, but a large caption

(b) Bigger

Figure 1: Two elephants

Figure 1 contains subfigure 1a, which is smaller than subfigure 1b.

```
\usepackage{graphicx,subcaption}
\begin{figure} \centering
\subcaptionbox
  {Small, but a large caption\label{sf1}}[2cm]
  {\includegraphics[width=12mm]{elephant}}
\qqquad
\subcaptionbox{Bigger\label{sf2}}
  {\includegraphics[width=18mm]{elephant}}
\caption{Two elephants}\label{elephants}
\end{figure}
Figure-\ref{elephants} contains subfigure-\ref{sf1},
which is smaller than subfigure-\ref{sf2}.
```

7-4-9

Because captions are typeset to the width of the subfloat, we had to specify an explicit *width* argument for the first subfigure given that the elephant is so small. As explained above, that means that the subfloat *content* is typeset in vertical mode. However, because it consists of only a single graphic and the default justification is c, we see no difference in comparison to the second subfigure.

The next example shows a few of the remaining justification possibilities available:

Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat,
congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero.
Vivamus viverra fermentum felis.

(a) default behavior (centered)

Nam dui ligula,	Nam dui ligula,
fringilla a, euismod	fringilla a, euismod
sodales, sollicitudin	sodales, sollicitudin
vel, wisi. Morbi auctor	vel, wisi. Morbi auctor
loreum non justo.	loreum non justo.

(b) left aligned

(c) right aligned

Lorem ipsum dolor
sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit,
vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis.

(d) centerfirst

Figure 1: Justification tests

```
\usepackage{lipsum,subcaption}
\begin{figure}
\centering
\subcaptionbox{default behavior
               (centered)}
  [\linewidth]
  {\lipsum[3][1-3]}
\par\medskip
\subcaptionbox{left aligned}
  [.45\linewidth][1]
  {\lipsum[2][1-2]}
\subcaptionbox{right aligned}
  [.45\linewidth][r]
  {\lipsum[2][1-2]}
\par\medskip
\subcaptionbox{centerfirst}
  [\linewidth][centerfirst]
  {\lipsum[1][1-2]}
\caption{Justification tests}
\end{figure}
```

7-4-10

As an alternative to the `\subcaptionbox` command, the package offers a generic `\subcaption` command, which has the same syntax as `\caption` from the caption

package; i.e., it supports a star form and an optional *list-entry* argument. This gives you complete control over the subcaption placement. The price is that it requires you to manually arrange the placement, and it needs each `\subcaption` confined to a box or a scope-delimiting environment.

In the next example we use two `minipage` environments for this, but the default arrangement does not really produce a good result — bottom alignment would work much better in this case. However, assuming that one of the captions has several lines as in Example 7-4-9, then it would be difficult to account for that. Also note that you are responsible for the arrangement within the `minipage`; e.g., we added `\centering` in the first for a proper placement of the cat and the caption in the somewhat larger box produced by the `minipage`.

7-4-11

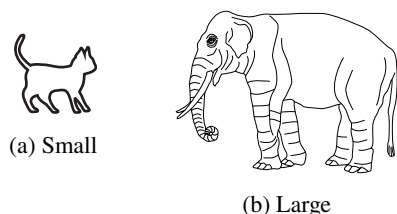


Figure 1: Exercising manual control

```
\usepackage{graphicx,subcaption}
\begin{figure}
  \centering
  \begin{minipage}{3cm} \centering
    \includegraphics{cat}
    \subcaption{Small}
  \end{minipage}
  \begin{minipage}{3cm}
    \includegraphics[width=3cm]{elephant}
    \subcaption{Large}
  \end{minipage}
  \caption{Exercising manual control}
\end{figure}
```

Given that using `minipages` in such circumstances is quite common, `subcaption` also offers the environments `subfigure` and `subtable` (and further environments for other float types could be defined).

```
\begin{subfigure}[pos][height][inner-pos]{width} ... \end{subfigure}
```

The environments take the same optional and mandatory arguments as `minipage` (and in fact simply pass them on to that environment); e.g., you specify the *width* and the *position* (default *c* for centered), and if desired, you can explicitly enforce a *height* and *inner-pos*. One important difference from the previous example is that within such environments you specify the subcaption using a `\caption` command.

The next example shows both top and bottom alignment in comparison to the default centering. Note that top alignment means aligning at the baseline of the first line inside the structure, which in the example holds the graphic. Thus, the alignment is at the feet of the elephants in this case (which is why the first lines of the caption also appear to be aligned). To prove this point we added an ellipsis between the subfigures to clearly show where they align.

Nesting of subfloat structures is possible, but numbering more than one level is really not advisable because there is only a single subcaption counter. The example

shows what happens if you try. Instead, it is better to use in all but one level `\caption*` or `\subcaptionbox*`.

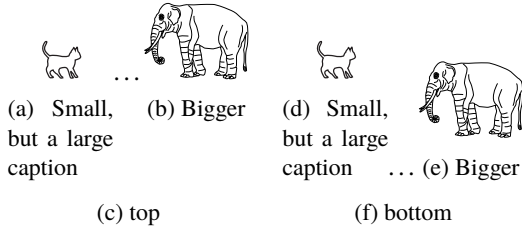


Figure 1: Different alignment options

```
\usepackage{graphicx,subcaption}
\newcommand\samplefigs[1]{%
\begin{subfigure}[#1]{14mm} \centering
\includegraphics[width=6mm]{cat}
\caption{Small, but a large caption}
\end{subfigure}\dots
\begin{subfigure}[#1]{14mm}
\includegraphics[width=14mm]{elephant}
\caption{Bigger}
\end{subfigure}}
\begin{figure} \centering
\subcaptionbox{top} {\samplefigs{t}}
\quad
\subcaptionbox{bottom}{\samplefigs{b}}
\caption{Different alignment options}
\end{figure}
```

7-4-12

Customizing the subcaptions

Because the subcaption package is a direct extension of the caption package, it is possible to influence the caption layouts for subfloats using the options offered by the latter package. If it is not already loaded, subcaption loads the caption package *without* any options. This means that you have to either load caption first (as we did in the example below) or customize it after loading subcaption by using a `\captionsetup` declaration.

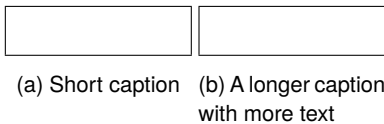


Figure 1: Default subfigures

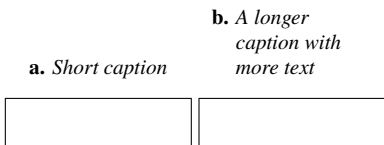


Figure 2: Customized subfigures

```
\usepackage{font=sf}{caption} \usepackage{subcaption}
\newcommand\FIG{\fbox{\parbox{.4\textwidth}{\strut}}}
\newcommand\samplefig[1]{\begin{figure}[ht]
\centering
\subcaptionbox{Short caption}{\FIG}
\subcaptionbox{A longer caption with more text}{\FIG}
\caption{#1}\end{figure}}
\samplefig{Default subfigures}
\captionsetup[sub]{font=footnotesize,textfont={rm,it},
labelfont={rm,bf},labelformat=simple,
labelsep=period,format=hang,margin=5pt,
justification=raggedright,position=top}
\samplefig{Customized subfigures}
```

7-4-13

*The default setting
of the subcaption
package*

As you can see, keys for customizing the caption layouts can be set on various levels. Some default settings are already in place when the subcaption package is loaded. Most noticeably, a setting of `font+=smaller` for all subfloat captions accounts for

the fact that our setting of `sf` when loading the `caption` package is still in effect on the subcaptions, even though they use a smaller font size. Another default that can be deduced is the use of `parens` with the `labelformat` option. Most other changes to the main caption layout are inherited by the subfloats. The precise defaults for subcaptions are the following:

```
font+=smaller,labelformat=parens,labelsep=space,
margin=0pt,skip=6pt,list=false,hypcap=false
```

To overwrite such defaults, you can use any of the `caption` keys when loading the subcaption package, or you can specify them with a `\captionsetup` declaration using the *type* “sub” (as shown in the example). This changes all subsequent subfloat captions uniformly until they are overwritten by a further declaration.

Customizing all subcaptions

Finally, if you want to customize subfloat captions just for a particular *type* of float (e.g., for all figures), you can do so by using `sub<type>` instead of `sub` in the `\captionsetup` declaration. The package knows which type of float is currently being built, and therefore this method works not only for environments such as `subfigure` but also for `\subcaption` or `\subcaptionbox`.

Customizing subcaptions by type

The subcaption package handles the spacing around the caption through the keys `skip`, `aboveskip`, and `belowskip` already discussed in conjunction with the `caption` package. However, it does not provide any additional support for placing the subfloat boxes — their arrangement is left to the user. If you have several rows of subfloats, like in Example 7-4-14, you would typically set each row as its own paragraph and separate them by some explicit `\vspace` command. Using `\[space]` would be possible too, but it is more difficult in that case to specify the right amount of vertical space because the alignment point of the rows is typically around the caption.

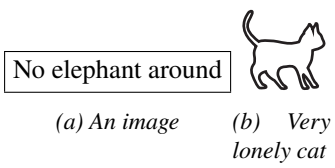
Spacing around subfloats

A somewhat more complex layout applying several key settings at different levels has been used in the following example. The settings are selected for illustration purposes and are not meant to be used together in this way. They are worth studying closely to see how the different levels interact.

Setting keys at different levels

- The subcaption package is loaded with a `font` setting, which therefore applies to all subfloat captions but not to the main figure and table caption.
- The next line sets the keys `position` and `skip` for all tables (including subtables) but not for figures (where the default of 10pt is still in force).
- Several keys are then set just for subtable captions. For example, due to the setting `singlelinecheck=false`, all of them are left aligned, while the single-line figure subcaption is centered. We also overwrite the `skip` so that there is no extra space between subcaption and the table (there is still some space because each caption is internally set with a `\strut` to enforce a uniform height and depth).
- The `skip` for subfigures is still at its default of 6pt, and one can clearly see that `raggedright` should have been applied to all subcaptions and not just to the table ones as we did in the example.

- The `\DeclareCaptionSubType*` on the next line changes the numbering of table subcaptions so that they come out as “1.1”, “1.2”, etc. It is discussed on page 559.



(a) An image (b) Very lonely cat

Figure 1: Two subfigures

There is a cat in subfigure 1b but no elephant. Table 1 contains subtables 1.1 to 1.3.

Table 1: Three subtables

(1.1) First

Table 1

(1.2) Second

Table 2

(1.3) Third table with a much longer caption

Table 3

```

\usepackage{graphicx}
\usepackage[font={sl,small}]{subcaption}
\captionsetup[table]{position=top,skip=3pt}
\captionsetup[subtable]{singlelinecheck=false,skip=0pt,
                        format=hang,justification=raggedright}
\DeclareCaptionSubType*[arabic]{table}
\newcommand\TAB[2]{\fbox{\parbox[#2\textwidth]{Table #1}}}

\begin{figure}[!t]
  \subcaptionbox{An image}{\fbox{No elephant around}}\hfill
  \subcaptionbox{Very lonely cat\label{f2}}
    [13mm]{\includegraphics{cat}}
  \caption{Two subfigures}
\end{figure}
There is a cat in subfigure \ref{f2} but no elephant.
\begin{table}[!b]
  \caption{Three subtables}\label{tbl}
  \subcaptionbox{First\label{t1}}{\TAB{1}{.4}}\hfill
  \subcaptionbox{Second}           {\TAB{2}{.4}}
  \par\medskip
  \subcaptionbox{Third table with a much longer
                caption\label{t3}}{\TAB{3}{.8}}
\end{table}
Table~\ref{tbl} contains subtables~\ref{t1} to~\ref{t3}.

```

7-4-14

Labeling the subcaptions

Internally, `subcaption` uses one counter per float type to keep track of the subfloats within the current float and to produce a label for the caption from it. The counter name is `sub<type>`, where *type* is the current float type (e.g., the counters used for labeling subfigures and subtables are called `subfigure` and `subtable`, respectively). Its representation is defined by `\thesub<type>` and defaults to `\alph{sub<type>}`. Because there is only one such counter per subfloat type, nesting subfloats generates somewhat strange labels as already exhibited in Example 7-4-12.

In the previous example we used `\ref` to refer to different subfloats and the main table float. By default `\ref` produces a concatenation of the main float and the subfloat number. This can be seen with the subfigure reference, which shows “1b”. More precisely, this is the case when the subfloat displays only the subfloat number in the caption label. If, however, the subfloat caption already shows both values, then `\ref` produces the same by default, e.g., “1.3” in the case of subtables above. How to change this is explained on page 559.

As an alternative to `\ref`, one can refer to such subfloat \labels by using the command `\subref`, which is provided by the `subcaption` package for this purpose. This normally results in a reference that looks like what is produced as part of the subcaption (without the outer formatting such as surrounding parentheses).

An application is shown in the next example. The command could also be used to construct more complex references, such as “Figure 1(a-c)”.

The layout produced by `\subref` can be controlled through the `subrefformat` key, which accepts the same values as `labelformat`. By default `simple` is used; i.e., the reference is typeset as is. In Example 7-4-15 we change this to `parens`. Note that this does not affect the references produced with `\ref`.

Sometimes one wants to label subfloats but omit textual captions. This is, for example, common practice when showing a set of pictures or photographs: the main caption then explains the significance of individual subfloats. It can easily be achieved by using an empty `caption` argument on the `\subcaption` or `\subcaptionbox` command, which results in a labeled subfloat. The next example shows this type of layout (we only added `\label`s into the arguments to be able to refer to them).

Captionless subfloats

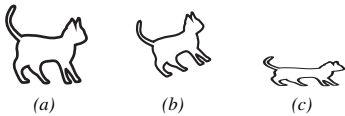


Figure 1: A group of cats: (a) the first cat, (b) a climbing one, and (c) one that is stretched.

7-4-15

```
\usepackage{graphicx}
\newcommand\FIG[1]{\includegraphics[#1]{cat}}
\usepackage[font={scriptsize,sl},skip=3pt]{subcaption}
\captionsetup[subrefformat=parens]

\begin{figure} \centering
\subcaptionbox{\label{1}}{\FIG{width=3pc}} \quad
\subcaptionbox{\label{2}}{\FIG{angle=20,width=3pc}} \quad
\subcaptionbox{\label{3}}{\FIG{height=1pc,width=3pc}}
\caption[A group of cats]{A group of cats: \subref{1}
the first cat, \subref{2} a climbing one,
and \subref{3} one that is stretched.}
\end{figure}
```

Of course, it is also possible to fine-tune individual floats, if their subfloats have unusual forms or excess white space. We could, for example, move the main caption closer to the subcaptions by adding the line

Manual fine-tuning

```
\captionsetup[sub]{skip=3pt}
```

at the top of the float body. This command would apply to the current float only and replaces the `skip` added between caption and the subfloat body. In the next example we do this to adjust both the subcaptions and the main caption using two different values. Compare this to Example 7-4-12 on page 554, which shows the same float without these adjustments.

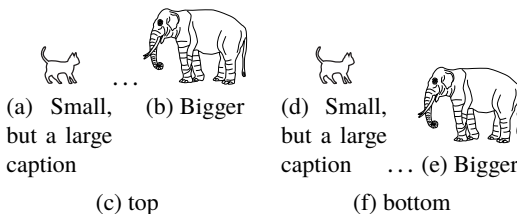


Figure 1: Different alignment options

7-4-16

```
\usepackage{graphicx,subcaption}
% \samplefigs as defined before

\begin{figure} \centering
\captionsetup[sub]{skip=3pt} % for sub
\captionsetup {skip=5pt} % for main
\subcaptionbox{top} {\samplefigs{t}}
\quad
\subcaptionbox{bottom}{\samplefigs{b}}
\caption{Different alignment options}
\end{figure}
```

Displaying subfloat captions in the “List of ...”

Producing “List of
...” entries

The subfloat captions can be automatically entered into the external file holding the data for the corresponding “List of...” list. Such files have the extension `.lof` (a list of figures), `.lot` (list of tables), or the extension specified as the third argument to `\newfloat`. However, the subfloat captions do not show up in these lists, because only top-level float captions are typeset by default. To change this behavior, you have to set the `list` key to `true`, either on the subcaption level or on the level of some individual float subtype, e.g., `subtable` if you want to change the behavior only for that type.

The layout of such entries can be customized by using the declarations offered by the `titletoc` package (described in Section 2.3.2), which provides a set of clean high-level interfaces for this task.¹

The next example shows how to make the subfloats appear in the contents listings by setting the `list` key. We also use a continuation float to prove that subfloat numbering continues as well across such floats. To suppress the “List of...” entry for the continuation float we use an empty optional argument on the `\caption` command — the special feature provided by the `caption` package for such situations. Alternatively, we could have used `\caption*` to suppress both the caption label and the entry in the list of figures altogether.

The `subcaption` package defines a default formatting for the entry (by providing a definition for `\l@sub{type}`). If its layout is not to your liking, it is easy enough to adjust it using the `titletoc` package as we do below for illustration. For details on this see Section 2.3.2, which offers an extended discussion on the features of that package.

List of Figures	
1 Three figures .	1
a First	1
b Second . .	1
c Third . . .	2
Figure I	Figure II
(a) First	(b) Second
Figure 1: Three figures	

Figure III
(c) Third
Figure 1: Three figures (cont.)

```
\usepackage[list=true]{subcaption}
\usepackage{titletoc}
\dottedcontents{figure}[1.5em]{1em}{6pt}
\dottedcontents{subfigure}[3em]
    {}{1.2em}{6pt}

\listoffigures \medskip
\begin{figure}[!ht] \centering
  \subcaptionbox{First}{\fbox{Figure I}}
  \quad
  \subcaptionbox{Second}{\fbox{Figure II}}
  \caption{Three figures}
\end{figure}
\pagebreak % <-- for illustration
\begin{figure}[!ht] \centering
  \ContinuedFloat
  \subcaptionbox{Third}{\fbox{Figure III}}
  \caption[] {Three figures (cont.)}
\end{figure}
```

7-4-17

¹If you want to go low-level, then Section 2.3.4 explains that you need to redefine internal commands of the form `\l@sub{type}`, i.e., `\l@subfigure`, `\l@subtable`, etc. This is the approach that you find used in most older document classes, which is why we mention it here.

Extending subfloats to other float types

So far, we have discussed only subfloats in `figure` or `table` environments. If you have introduced additional float types (e.g., defined with `\newfloat` from the `float` package), you may want to be able to substructure them as well. This can be achieved with the `\DeclareCaptionSubType` declaration.

```
\DeclareCaptionSubType*[ctr-rep]{<type>}
```

A prerequisite for using `\DeclareCaptionSubType` is that the corresponding float *type* is already declared. In that case, `\DeclareCaptionSubType` sets up the commands `\subcaption` and `\subcaptionbox` to be usable within their float bodies and also provides the environment form `sub<type>` for people who prefer that type of syntax.

The declaration defines the counter `sub<type>` to produce the labels. In the optional *ctr-rep* argument one can adjust the format by selecting a counter representation among `alph` (default), `arabic`, `fnsymbol`, `roman`, `Alph`, `Roman`, or whatever else is available for typesetting counter values.

The setup is as follows (refer to Section 2.4 on page 77 for details on the label/reference mechanism):

```
\newcommand\thesub<type>{\<ctr-rep>\sub<type>}}
\labelformat{sub<type>}{\the<type> #1}
```

For example, if we use `\DeclareCaptionSubType[Alph]{code}` we get

```
\newcommand\thesubcode{\Alph{subcode}}
\labelformat{subcode}{\thecode #1}
```

Thus, if `\thecode` produces arabic numerals, then references with `\ref` generate “1A” and “1B”, while those with `\subref` just produce “A”, “B”, etc. If, however the declaration is made with `\DeclareCaptionSubType*`, then the setup is done in the following way

```
\newcommand\thesub<type>{\the<type>.\<ctr-rep>\sub<type>}}
\labelformat{sub<type>}{#1}
```

which means that the main float number already appears in the label of the subfloat and that `\ref` and `\subref` produce the same output. An example for this was already given in Example 7-4-14.

This covers the most common cases, but if you need some other setup, you can always define your own representation by redefining `\thesub<type>` yourself, e.g.,

```
\renewcommand\thesubtable{\thetable--\roman{subtable}}
```

after which subtables would show “1-i”, “1-ii”, “1-iii”, and so forth.

7.5 Key/value approaches for floats and subfloats

In most examples that we have seen so far, the `\caption` is manually placed at the appropriate point in the float body,¹ so it is largely up to the user where that happens. The two packages described in this section take a different approach: here a free style float body has vanished, and instead you specify a float object as one argument and a caption object as another (or as a key value).

The placement and formatting are then under the control of the package and can be influenced by set of key/value pairs. On the plus side this gives a consistent and easy-to-use interface, but one downside is that not all of the customization possibilities offered by the packages in the previous sections are exposed. What outweighs the other is probably a matter of taste.

However, both packages also offer one or the other feature not available anywhere else; e.g., `hvfloa`t provides special caption placement possibilities, as well as the ability to deal with floats that are large so that the caption (or even part of the float) needs to go onto a separate page. `keyfloa`t combines most packages from this chapter under a common syntax and offers margin and wrapped floats and the ability to add auxiliary text including artist/author names in consistent ways. Both packages support the concept of subfloats including their appropriate numbering.

7.5.1 hvfloa — Sophisticated caption placement control and more

The `hvfloa`t package, named after its author Herbert Voß, probably started as a weekend activity to “provide a concise and consistent method for specifying simple floats”. However, over time it has grown considerably and incorporated ideas from several other packages (e.g., `sidecap` or `fltpage`) that were developed a long time ago, but stopped being fully usable, because of missing maintenance and updates.

The main idea of the package is that instead of a free style float body with one or more captions inside, you have the float body and the caption as two separate objects. The placement of them in relation to each other is then determined by a set of key/value pairs, which gives a high degree of flexibility in manipulating the relationship.

`\hvFloat*[key/values]+{type}{float-object}[short-caption]{caption}{label}`

The full syntax may look a bit daunting at first, but if we ignore the somewhat unusual optional `+` modifier for now, then all others are easily explained. Just like any float environment, the starred form allows you to place the float across both columns in a two-column document. The optional *key/values* argument allows you to customize the appearance as we will see below. The supported keys are shown in Table 7.1 on the next page.

In the mandatory *type* argument you specify the type of float to be set, which determines in which list the caption should show up. You can use either the predefined types, i.e., `figure` or `table` or any other float type that you have declared, for example, with `\newfloat` from the float package.

¹ Some styles offered by the float package also automatically move the caption into a specific place.

<i>key</i>	<i>default</i>	<i>meaning</i>
<code>floatPos</code>	<code>tbp</code>	The allowed float positions for the current float. If not given, the class default for the float <i>type</i> is used, which is usually but not always <code>tbp</code> .
<code>rotAngle</code>	<code>0</code>	Counterclockwise rotation of the overall float.
<code>wide</code>	<code>false</code>	Reserve more space for the float by including one margin.
<code>style</code>		Use a named style defined with <code>\hvDefFloatStyle</code> as a shorthand for a set of key/value pairs.
<code>multiFloat</code>	<code>false</code>	Make a multifloat page, see page 566.
<code>subFloat</code>	<code>false</code>	Make a subfloat page, see page 566.
<code>nonFloat</code>	<code>false</code>	Make a nonfloating object but attach the caption, increment the relevant counters, etc.
<code>objectPos</code>	<code>center</code>	Horizontal placement of the <i>float-object</i> in relation to the document galley. Possible values are <code>left</code> , <code>center</code> , or <code>right</code> . Relevant only if the caption position (<code>capPos</code>) is <code>top</code> or <code>bottom</code> .
<code>objectAngle</code>	<code>0</code>	Counterclockwise rotation of only the <i>float-object</i> .
<code>objectFrame</code>	<code>false</code>	Add a <code>\frame</code> around the <i>float-object</i> .
<code>capWidth</code>	<code>n</code>	Specifies the width of the caption: a decimal number means a fraction of <code>\columnwidth</code> , <code>w</code> or <code>h</code> make it as wide as the width or height of the <i>float-object</i> , respectively, and <code>n</code> means “natural”, which makes it as wide as the available space based on its position (see examples).
<code>capAngle</code>	<code>0</code>	Counterclockwise rotation of only the <i>caption</i> .
<code>capPos</code>	<code>bottom</code>	Relation of <i>caption</i> to <i>float-object</i> . Possible values are <code>bottom</code> , <code>top</code> , <code>before</code> , <code>after</code> , <code>left</code> , or <code>right</code> (same page in two columns), <code>inner</code> or <code>outer</code> (relation to margin), and <code>oddPage</code> or <code>evenPage</code> (based on page numbers). For details see the extensive package documentation [196].
<code>capVPos</code>	<code>center</code>	Relative position of the caption if placed on the left or right. Allowed values are <code>top</code> , <code>center</code> , and <code>bottom</code> .
<code>floatCapSep</code>	<code>5pt</code>	Additional separation between <i>float-object</i> and <i>caption</i> if the latter is horizontally attached.
<code>onlyText</code>	<code>false</code>	If set to <code>true</code> , only the text of the <i>caption</i> is typeset without a number or identification and without adding an entry into the “List of ...” list unless you also use a <i>short-caption</i> argument.
<code>capFormat</code>		Pass a key/value list to the caption package to format the caption in a special way. You need to surround the value with braces if it contains commas or equal signs! See Section 7.4.1 on page 540 for supported keys.
<code>subcapFormat</code>		Pass a key/value list to the subcaption package if floats with several subcaptions are used. You need to surround the value with braces if it contains commas or equal signs! See Section 7.4.2 on page 551 for supported keys.

Table 7.1: Keys supported by the `\hvFloat` command

You can think of the *float-object* and the *caption* as being like two boxes that are placed in relation to each other: the *float-object* is horizontally oriented (like an `\mbox`) so it gets as wide as its content and there is no line breaking inside. In contrast, the *caption* acts like a `\parbox`; i.e., it breaks into several lines if it is long. Its width is determined by the key `capWidth` in conjunction with the placement of the caption as shown in some examples below.

The optional *short-caption*, if provided, is the text that goes into the “List of ...” list. If it is not present, then the *caption* text is reused for this. Finally, the mandatory *label* argument gets a label string for referencing the float. You need to supply that even if you are not referencing the float at all, and to avoid getting “Multiple label warning”s from L^AT_EX, you need to supply a unique string for each float!

In the first example we show the basic usage without any options. One float *type* was declared with the help of `\newfloat`, and you can see that its style is partly supported, but the caption remains at the bottom because this is the `\hvFloat` default.



Figure 1: Two cats

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. See Image 1.



Image 1: A cat

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi.

```
\usepackage{lipsum,float} \floatname{Img}{Image}
\floatstyle{ruled} \newfloat{Img}{ht}{los}
\usepackage{hvfloating}
\lipsum[1][1] See Image \ref{img:cat}.\par
\hvFloat{Img}{\includegraphics[scale=.5]{cat}}
{A cat}{img:cat}
\hvFloat{figure}{\includegraphics[scale=.5]{cat}
\includegraphics[scale=.5]{cat}}
{Two cats}{fig:2cats}
\lipsum*[2][1] \par
```

7-5-1

What may appear to be strange on first glance, though, is that the first float comes out as an inline float. The reason is that, by default, `hvfloating` in the absence of a `floatPos` key obeys the default setting for the type and for `Img` that was declared to be `ht` and thus favors “here” if possible. If you want your `\hvFloat` floats to always show identical behavior by default, you need to either explicitly set `floatPos` in the optional argument or in general in an `\hvFloatSet` declaration.

```
\hvFloatSet{key/values} \hvFloatSetDefaults
```

The `\hvFloatSet` declaration lets you alter the overall key defaults that are given in Table 7.1 on the preceding page. For example, to make all floats float by default you could set `\hvFloatSet{floatPos=tbp}`. With `\hvFloatSetDefaults`, you reset all values to their package default.

If the float bodies are not very wide, then it may be a waste of space if their captions are attached above or below. In that case it might be more appropriate to place them to the left or right of the *float-object* using the `capPos` key with an

appropriate value. The vertical position of the caption can then be set with `capVPos` and the minimal horizontal separation with `floatCapSep`.

The *float-object* and *caption* are then set to the normal galley measure (including the available space in the margin if you make it a wide float). This means that the *float-object* is pushed to one side and the remaining space is made available to the caption. If you do not like that, then you can restrict the caption width to a fraction of the `\columnwidth` using the `capWidth` key, as we did in the first figure of the example.

Figure 1: A cat



```
\usepackage{lipsum,hvfloat}
\hvFloatSet{floatPos=tbp,capPos=outer,
            capVPos=bottom,floatCapSep=18pt}
```



Figure 2: Two cats protruding into the margin

```
\lipsum[1][1] \par
\hvFloat[capWidth=.5]{figure}
{\includegraphics[scale=.7]{cat}}
{A cat}{fig:cat}
\hvFloat[wide,capPos=right]{figure}
{\includegraphics{cat} \includegraphics{cat}}
{Two cats protruding into the margin}{fig:2cats}
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.

7-5-2

If you have large tables or figures, then rotating them might give you the best results. You can rotate either the whole float with `rotAngle` or the *float-object* and the *caption* individually using `objectAngle` and `capAngle`, respectively — what works best depends on the dimensions of the objects. In the next example, we rotate the object and place the caption to the right. Also shown there is the `capFormat` key, which you can use to pass a key/value list to the caption package to format the caption.

```
\hvDefFloatStyle{name}{key/values}
```

Rather than specifying the key/value pairs in the optional argument to `\hvFloat`, you can define a named styles and then reference that with the help of the style key. This way you can define a few styles and reuse them as needed. Below we define a `rotateobjectleft` style that implements the above setup.



Figure 1: Three cats and several lines of explanation in the caption

```
\usepackage{hvfloat}
\hvDefFloatStyle{rotateobjectleft}
{objectAngle=90,floatCapSep=10pt,capPos=right,
 capFormat={labelfont=bf,indentation=1em,
            justification=raggedright}}
\hvFloat[style=rotateobjectleft]{figure}
{\includegraphics[scale=1.3]{cat}
 \includegraphics{cat} \includegraphics[scale=.7]{cat}}
{Three cats and several lines of explanation in
 the caption}{fig:3cats}
```

7-5-3

What also might work under certain circumstances is to rotate everything and make the caption as wide as the float. Note that we use `w` not `h` because we need the

width before rotation. If we had rotated only the caption, it would have been `h` to achieve the desired effect as shown in Example 7-5-5.

Figure 1: Three cats and several lines of explanation in the caption



```
\usepackage{hvfloat}
\hvDefFloatStyle{rotateright}
{rotAngle=-90,capWidth=w,
  capFormat={labelfont=bf,indentation=1em,
    justification=raggedright}}
\hvFloat[style=rotateright]{figure}
{\includegraphics[scale=1.3]{cat}
 \includegraphics{cat}
 \includegraphics[scale=.7]{cat}}
{Three cats and several lines of explanation in
 the caption}{fig:3cats}
```

A paragraph of text in the main galley to show the text margins.

A paragraph of text in the main galley to show the text margins.

7-5-4

With the help of the `onlyText` key, you can suppress the generation of the caption label, e.g., “Figure: 1”. In that case only the *caption* text is used and, unless you also supply *short-caption*, no entry in the corresponding “List of ...” list is made.



A cat as a graphic

```
\usepackage{hvfloat}
\hvFloatSet{capPos=right,capAngle=90,capWidth=h,
  objectAngle=20}
\hvFloat[onlyText]{figure}{\frame{\includegraphics{cat}}}{
  {A cat as a graphic}{fig:cat}}
```

A paragraph of text in the main galley to show the text margins.

A paragraph of text in the main galley to show the text margins.

7-5-5

Large column or page floats

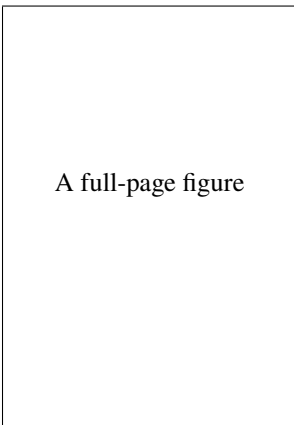
Sometimes an image or a table is so large that, rotation or not, there is just not enough space on a page to place both caption and float body onto the same page. For this scenario `hvfloat` offers the key `fullpage`. If that key is used, the caption is placed onto the next possible verso page and the float body on the facing recto page (in *twoside* mode). If you use a class in *oneside* mode, then it simply uses the next two possible pages.

The *label* argument of `\hvFloat` labels the *float-object*, but for referencing the page with the caption, there is a second label automatically added with the name *label-cap*. We used that in the example, and it is also the one that is written in the “List of ...” list as you can see.

The separator line above the caption in the following example is typeset by default. If that is not desired, you have to set the key `separatorLine` to `false`.

To alter the order of caption and float body, use `capPos` with the value `after` or with the value `oddPage` or `evenPage` to force the caption onto a page with that

kind of number. But note that with the default setting the caption has a good chance of appearing on the current page (as in the example), whereas with `after`, the float and the caption are most certainly printed later.

<p>List of Figures</p> <p>1 A huge figure 6</p> <p>1 Full-page floats</p> <p>Figure 1 is a large float whose caption and body are on separate pages. Figure 1 on page 7 with caption on page 6.</p> <hr/> <p>Figure 1: Caption for float on the next page for which there was no room left.</p>	 <p>A full-page figure</p>	<pre> \usepackage{hvfloat,varioref} \listoffigures \section{Full-page floats} Figure~\ref{FP1} is a large float whose caption and body are on separate pages. \hvFloat[fullpage]{figure}{% \framebox[.95\linewidth][c] {\rule[-3cm]{0pt} {.95\textheight}}% A full-page figure}} [A huge figure] {Caption for float \vpageref{FP1} for which there was no room left.}{FP1} Figure~\ref{FP1} on page~\pageref{FP1} with caption on page~\pageref{FP1-cap}. </pre>
7-5-6	6	7

There is one possible issue to watch out for with `fullpage` floats: the *float-object* is set as a `[p]` float and that works only if the float height is larger than `\floatpagefraction`. If not, it may get deferred until the end of the chapter or document. That is unlikely with the default settings but may become a problem if that fraction has been changed to a value closer to 1.

In some cases even `fullpage` is not enough and a graphic needs to occupy all of the printable area of a page including all margins. For this the package offers the key `FULLPAGE`, which if used reserves the full `\pageheight` and `\pagewidth` for the *float-object*. The page is then typeset with page style `empty`.

To simplify the inclusion of images the package also defines three additional keys for `\includegraphics` from the `graphicx` package. These are `fullpage` (as a shorthand for `width=\columnwidth` and `height=\textheight`), `FullPage` (using `\textwidth`, `\textheight`), and `FULLPAGE` (for the full paper size). You might want to combine them with `keepaspectratio` to avoid image distortion.

Subfloat and multifloat pages

Instead of one large float that occupies a whole page, you may have a float consisting of several subfloats, e.g., a set of tables or a group of figures each with its own subcaption and an overall caption describing the complete set. For this `hvfloat` offers the key `subFloat`, and this is where the so far unexplained `+` syntax comes into play.

To specify the float *type* for all floats, main *caption*, a possible *short-caption*, and the *label*, you use the normal arguments but keep the *float-object* argument empty.

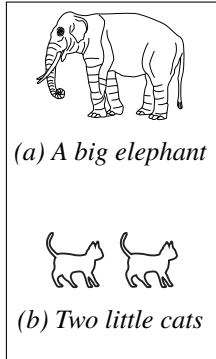
For each subfloat in the structure you then add another set of arguments of the following form:

```
\hvFloat*[key/values]+{type}-{float-object}[short-caption]{caption}{label}
+{sub1-float-object}{sub1-caption}[short-sub1-caption]{sub1-label}
+{sub2-float-object}{sub2-caption}[short-sub2-caption]{sub2-label}
...
```

The *type* argument of the subfloats is empty because all share the *type* specified in the first line. The format of the subfloat captions can be adjusted with the key `subcapFormat`, its value is passed on to the subcaption package.

This example exhibits a float with a substructure. Our figure 1 shows an elephant in 1a and cats in 1b.

Figure 1: Animals shown in TLC in different places



```
\usepackage{hvfloat}
```

This example exhibits a float with a substructure.

```
\hvFloat[subFloat,subcapFormat={font=it}]+{figure}{
  {Animals shown in TLC in different places}
  {fig:animals}
+{ }\includegraphics[width=2cm]{elephant}}
  {A big elephant}{fig:elephant}
+{ }\includegraphics[scale=.7]{cat}
  \includegraphics[scale=.7]{cat}}
  {Two little cats}{fig:2cats}
```

Our figure~\ref{fig:animals} shows an elephant in~\ref{fig:elephant} and cats in~\ref{fig:2cats}. 7-5-7

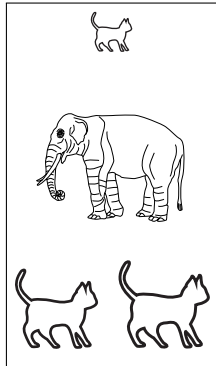
As an alternative you can group independent floats using the key `multiFloat`. It too uses the `+` specifier, but here all lines denote individual floats allowing to you group different *types* on one page, with the captions showing up on the page before (or after).

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing

Figure 1: Cat

Figure 2: Elephant

Figure 3: Two cats



```
\usepackage{lipsum,hvfloat}
```

```
\hvFloat[multiFloat,
  capFormat={singlelinecheck=false}]
+{figure}{\includegraphics[scale=.5]{cat}}
  {Cat}{fig:cat}
+{figure}{\includegraphics[width=2cm]{elephant}}
  {Elephant}{fig:elephant}
+{figure}{\includegraphics[] {cat}
  \includegraphics[scale=1.1]{cat}}
  {Two cats}{fig:2cats}
\lipsum[1][1-2]
```

7-5-8

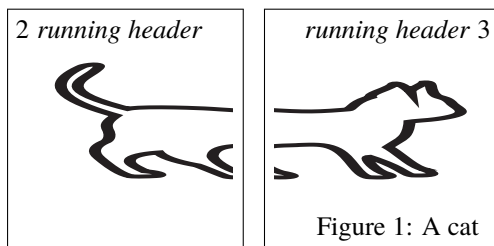
Double-page floats

Sometimes images (or tables) are even bigger and require presentation across two facing pages, and the `hvfloat` package offers some support for this. Obviously this

requires the document to be typeset in `twoside` mode to be meaningful. If you use the key `doublePage`, then the *float-object* is split and placed at the top left of the text area on the next verso page and continues on the facing recto page. It is the responsibility of the user to ensure that its dimensions do not exceed the available space (which in this case would be `2\textwidth` plus the widths of the inner margins). Also important is to ensure that the float together with its caption does not get vertically too large, because that may make it unplaceable.

If there is enough space, the caption can be set aside the *float-object* using the appropriate keys. Otherwise, as shown in the next example, it is set below the object on the recto page. The pages show a running header and footer and, if the height of the float is small enough, normal galley text may appear on both pages below it — something that is difficult to exhibit in the small samples here in the book.

With the key `bindCorr` you can specify some extra white space at the inner margin to account for space lost through the binding. In the example this is not noticeable, because white space is always cut from the examples to save space.



7-5-9

```
\usepackage{hvfloat} \pagestyle{myheadings}
```

```
\markboth{running header}{running header}  
First and last page not shown \ldots
```

```
\hvFloat[doublePage,bindCorr=3mm]{figure}  
{\includegraphics[height=.4\textheight,  
width=2.3\textwidth]{cat}}{A cat}{fig:1}
```

Several more paragraphs ending up on pages 1
(before the figure) and 4 (after it) ...

As an alternative, the key `doublePAGE` starts the *float-object* at the left edge of the paper so that the full width is available, but it still leaves space for a running header. Finally, `doubleFullPAGE` uses the full page area of both pages by placing the top-left corner of the object at the top left of the verso page. Because this leaves no space for headers (and possibly footers), they are omitted on these pages. A caption, if present, is placed on top of the object if it takes up all space. It is the responsibility of the user to choose an appropriate font coloring to ensure that the caption remains visible if it overlays the object.

7.5.2 keyfloat — Bringing most packages under one roof

Most of the core packages discussed in this chapter that manipulate floats were written a long time ago. They are still state of the art, but each of them solves only a subset of the existing problems in this space.

The `keyfloat` package by Brian Dunn is a more recent addition in this space. Its task is not so much to provide new functionality, but to bring existing functionality together in a concise interface. It automatically loads and uses `graphicx`, `rotating`, `caption`, `subcaption`, `placeins`, `wrapfig`, and `calc`. From this list you can probably guess that it is strongly interested in figure floats, but it supports table and other floats

equally well. The main idea is to provide a concise set of commands and environments offering a key/value syntax that delivers the typical sequence of a float environment, loading a graphic or other content, placing caption and graphic, and setting up a label, list entry, etc., behind the scenes.

```
\keyflt*[position]{type}{key/values}{general-contents}
\keytab*[position]{key/values}{table-contents}
\keyfig*[position]{key/values}{image-file}
```

The `\keyflt` command adds a float of any predefined *type* to the document, i.e., a figure, table, or any other type previously declared with `\newfloat` from the float package or with `\DeclareFloatingEnvironment` from the newfloat package.

As usual the star denotes a float spanning both columns in two-column mode. The optional *position* specifies where the float can go; if not present, the defaults for the *type* are used. As usual you can specify a combination of `!htbp`, but in addition there is `H` (force the float to stay “here”), `M` (for small floats in the margin), and `W` (produce an inline float with text wrapped around it).

The *key/values* are used to control appearance, add a caption or label and are discussed below. The *general-contents* receives the main material to be floated — if that is large or has special requirements such as containing verbatim material, then it is often better to use the corresponding environment instead.

The commands `\keytab` and `\keyfig` are mainly shorthands that preset the *type*, but note that the `\keyfig` does not have a *general-contents* argument but expects the file name of a graphic to be passed automatically to `\includegraphics`. This makes it suitable for floats displaying a single graphic; more complex ones need `\keyflt` or one of the commands discussed below.

The keys are deliberately short to ease the input, e.g., `c` (caption text) or `l` (label); the full list of available keys is given in Table 7.2 on the next page. The next example exhibits some of them. Note that we had to surround the values for `tl` and `as` with braces to hide the commas they contain. If you forget this, you might get rather unpleasant error messages.



MR. PAULO CEREDA, \TeX ISLAND

The hummingbird, designed by Paulo Cereda for the \LaTeX Project, becomes the new logo for \LaTeX in 2014

Figure 1: The new \LaTeX logo

```
\usepackage{keyfloat}
\keyfig[tp]
{w=2cm,
 c=The new \LaTeX{} logo,l=fig:logo,
 tl={The hummingbird, designed by Paulo
   Cereda for the \LaTeX\ Project, becomes
   the new logo for \LaTeX\ in 2014},
 ap=Mr., af=Paulo, al=Cereda,
 as={, \TeX\ Island}}
{latex-logo}
```

7-5-10

None of the generated floats can span multiple pages; if you need that, you can build two floats and use the `cont` key to specify that they have a special relationship or you have to resort to using `longtable` or `supertabular` to produce multipage tables with captions.

<i>key(s)</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>example</i>
<code>c</code>	The text for the caption. By default the text is also used for the “List of ...” list.	<code>c=caption</code>
<code>sc</code>	The text for the “List of ...” list if different from the caption text.	<code>sc=short</code>
<code>cstar</code>	A starred caption, i.e., one without number. Text is not written to the “List of ...” list.	<code>cstar=no number</code>
<code>cont</code>	A continued float; i.e., the next one gets the same number (though it might get a different caption).	<code>cont</code>
<code>t</code>	Additional fully justified text that may contain several paragraphs. If it contains commas or equal signs, enclose it in braces.	<code>t=paragraph(s)</code>
<code>tl, tc, tr</code>	Like <code>t</code> , but aligned to left, center, or right, respectively.	<code>tc=paragraph(s)</code>
<code>ap, af, al</code>	Artist’s prefix, first name and last name. Only for figure floats.	<code>af=H. , al=Zapf</code>
<code>as</code>	Artist’s suffix. Typeset directly adjacent to the last name, so any necessary space must be explicitly given.	<code>as=~II.</code>
<code>aup, auf, aul, aus</code>	Author’s prefix, first name, last name, and suffix. Used with nonfigure floats.	<code>aup=Prof. , aul=Knuth</code>
<code>w</code>	The absolute width of an image or text box in case of nonfigure floats.	<code>w=3cm</code>
<code>lw</code>	The fractional width of image or text box in relation to the normally available width (e.g., the width of the column).	<code>lw=.8</code>
<code>r</code>	The rotation angle in counterclockwise degrees.	<code>r=20</code>
<code>f, tf</code>	Add a frame or a tight frame around the image or text box.	<code>f</code>
<code>h</code>	The absolute height of an image. The aspect ratio is not maintained if <code>w</code> or <code>lw</code> is also given. Only for figure floats.	<code>h=1in</code>
<code>s</code>	The scale factor used on the image. Only for figure floats.	<code>s=1.2</code>
<code>mo</code>	Vertical offset for margin floats.	<code>mo=-12pt</code>
<code>wp</code>	Placement specifier for wrapped floats; see page 536 for the list of supported values.	<code>wp=I</code>
<code>ww</code>	Total width for wrapped float, can be more than <code>w</code> for small items with a wider caption; by default autocalculated.	<code>w=1cm, ww=2cm</code>
<code>wlw</code>	Total width, but given as a fraction of <code>\linewidth</code> .	<code>wlw=.3</code>
<code>wo</code>	Overhang of wrapped float into the margin. Default 0pt.	<code>wo=1cm</code>
<code>wn</code>	Number of narrow lines for wrapped float. Normally autocalculated but useful if the surrounding text has unusual heights.	<code>wn=4</code>

Table 7.2: Keys supported by the keyfloat commands

The caption placement and formatting is controlled through the caption package (see Section 7.4.1); e.g., if you want table captions above the tables, you need a suitable `\captionsetup` declaration as shown in the next example. The formatting of the artist's name is always centered below the image; in contrast, the author's name used with other float types is always placed flush right. The auxiliary text from `t` or its variants is typeset in small type to full measure below the artist's or author's name.

```
\begin{keyfloat} [position]{type}{key/values} ... \end{keyfloat}
\begin{keytable} [position]{key/values} ... \end{keytable}
\begin{keyfigure} [position]{key/values} ... \end{keyfigure}
```

These environments work like their command counterparts discussed above, except that instead of the *contents* argument, they use the environment body. This makes them more suitable if that content is complex or in case of figure floats you want to display more than one graphic as part of the float.

All of them also offer starred forms, i.e., `keyfloat*`, `keyfigure*`, and `keytable*`, to support floats spanning all columns in two-column mode.

Table 1: L^AT_EX Companion statistics

edition	chapters	pages	authors
1	14 + 3	555	3
2	14 + 3	1197	2 + 5
3	17 + 3	≈ 1950	2 + 3

© 2023 FRANK MITTELBACH


Compares editions from 1994, 2004, and 2023

```
\usepackage{booktabs,keyfloat}
\captionsetup[table]{position=top,skip=1ex}
\begin{keytable}[H]{c=\LaTeX\ Companion statistics,
tl={Compares editions from 1994, 2004, and 2023},
aup=\copyright\ 2023, auf=Frank, aul=Mittelbach}
\begin{tabular}{ccrl}
\toprule
edition & chapters & pages & authors \\ \midrule
1 & 14 + 3 & 555 & 3 \\
2 & 14 + 3 & 1197 & 2 + 5 \\
3 & 17 + 3 & $\approx$ 1980 & 2 + 3 \\ \bottomrule
\end{tabular}
\end{keytable}
```

7-5-11

```
\begin{marginfigure}[offset] ... \end{marginfigure}
\begin{marginfigure}[offset] ... \end{marginfigure}
```

If you have fairly wide margins and/or small floats, then another option is placing the float into the margin either using the special *position* M, as we did below, or using the environment `marginfigure` or `marginfigure`. Note that these environments only offer an optional argument specifying the *offset* and you have to add the caption, etc., yourself in the environment body, so they are less general than commands and environments discussed above when used with *position* M.



The letter I

The paralogisms of practical reason are what first give rise to the architectonic of practical reason.

Another paragraph following the (centered) graphic in the margin.

```
\usepackage{kantlipsum,keyfloat}
\kant[1][2]
\keyfig[M]{w=7mm,mo=-.5\baselineskip,
r=15,cstar=The letter I}{I}
Another paragraph following the (centered)
graphic in the margin.
```

7-5-12

Given that the margin floats (and the wrapped floats discussed below) do not really “float”, there is the danger that they get out of sequence with normal floats if you use `c` instead of `cstar` to give them a float number. This issue is not always caught by the package, so you should check this visually yourself. In case of issues, you can either move an offending float to a different position or use `\suppressfloats[t]`.

As an alternative for small floats you can consider having the paragraph text flow around them by using `W` in the *position* argument. Internally this is realized by using environments of the `wrapfig` package (see Section 7.3.4).

All customization possibilities of that package are exposed as keys; i.e., the placement can be specified with `wp` (default 0 for outside margin), `ww` specifies the width of the cut-out (if not calculated automatically from the size of the image), `wo` is the overhang into the margin (default zero), and with `wn` you can explicitly set the number of narrow lines, which helps if they have unusual heights that throw off the autocalculation.

Some text before the wrapped figure to show its placement in context of paragraphs.



The letter I

The paralogisms of practical reason are what first give rise to the architectonic of practical reason.

Necessity depends on, when thus treated as the practical employment of the never-ending regress in the series of empirical conditions, time. Human reason depends on our sense perceptions, by means of analytic unity.

7-5-13

```
\usepackage{kantlipsum,keyfloat}
```

Some text before the wrapped figure to show its placement in context of paragraphs.

```
\keyfig[W]{w=7mm,ww=2cm,wo=1cm,
           r=15,
           cstar=The letter I}
           {I}
\kant[1][2] \kant[1][4-5]
```

If the formatting of the wrapped float is not flexible enough, e.g., if you want a special placement for the caption or special formatting of the float body, then use the `keyfigure` environment to format the float body yourself.

Below we redo the previous example but add a frame around the graphic. We also specify the number of shortened lines explicitly, using the key `wn`, instead of relying on the automatic calculation (which would have been eight lines because the float body got larger now). To force it into the same space as before we also have to vertically shift the float a bit (the value of `-15pt` was determined by trial and error).

Some text before the wrapped figure to show its placement in context of paragraphs.



The letter I

The paralogisms of practical reason are what first give rise to the architectonic of practical reason.

Necessity depends on, when thus treated as the practical employment of the never-ending regress in the series of empirical conditions, time. Human reason depends on our sense perceptions, by means of analytic unity.

7-5-14

```
\usepackage{kantlipsum,keyfloat}
```

Some text before the wrapped figure to show its placement in context of paragraphs.

```
\begin{keyfigure}[W]{w=2cm,wn=6,
                    wo=1cm,cstar=The letter I}
  \vspace*{-15pt}\centering
  \fbox{\fbox{\includegraphics
              [width=7mm,angle=15]{I}}}}
\end{keyfigure}
\kant[1][2] \kant[1][4-5]
```

```
\begin{keyfloats}*[position]{columns} ... \end{keyfloats}
```

If you have several smaller floats, then another possibility is to group them using a `keyfloats` environment. This works best if the floats are of similar size because this environment arranges them in *columns*. The environment can be nested, as shown in the example. It is possible to combine floats of different types with each getting their own caption, “List of ...” entry, etc. All the environment does is keep the floats together so that they float as a unit. You can place labels (key 1) onto individual floats so that they can be referenced and use other keys from Table 7.2 when appropriate, but the optional star or *position* argument can be applied to only the outermost environment, as all floats of the group receive the same treatment.



Figure 1: Stretched cat

```
\usepackage{keyfloat}
```



Figure 2: Logo



Figure 3: Elephant

```
See the \LaTeX\ logo in Figure-\ref{logo}.
\begin{keyfloats}{1}
\keyfig{h=1cm,w=4cm,c=Stretched cat}{cat}
\begin{keyfloats}{2}
\keyfig{h=1cm,c=Logo,l=logo}{latex-logo}
\keyfig{h=1cm,c=Elephant}{elephant}
\end{keyfloats}
\end{keyfloats}
```

See the L^AT_EX logo in Figure 2.

7-5-15

Instead of a float you may want to place some explanatory text in one of the columns. To do this you could use a `\keyfig` command with an empty `cstar` to suppress its caption, but to simplify matters, there is a `\keyparbox` command that provides just that: a container for arbitrary material that does not act as a float but can be used in place of one.

```
\begin{keysubfloats}[position]{type}{columns}{key/values}
...
\end{keysubfloats}
\begin{keysubfigs}[position]{columns}{key/values}... \end{keysubfigs}
\begin{keysubtabs}[position]{columns}{key/values}... \end{keysubtabs}
```

As a final option you can produce one float with one main caption consisting of a number of subfloats, each with their own subcaption. In this case all floats have to be of the same *type* because only the main caption is passed into a “List of ...” list to describe the group.

The generic environment is `keysubfloats`, which requires that you specify this float *type* as an argument. This is useful if you have declared your own float types, but for the common case of `figure` and `table` floats, two variant environments `keysubfigs` and `keysubtabs` exist that have the *type* already prefilled so that it does not have to be given.

All three environments have starred forms to generate floats that span both columns in twocolumn mode.

The environments cannot be nested; i.e., you cannot have sub-subfloats, but it is allowed to use `keyfloats` environments inside in order to group the subfloats in some particular way as shown below.

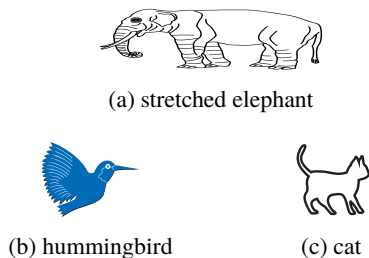


Figure 1: TLC animals

```
\usepackage{keyfloat}
\begin{keysubfigs}{1}{c=TLC animals}
  \keyfig{h=1cm,w=3cm,
    c=stretched elephant}{elephant}
\begin{keyfloats}{2}
  \keyfig{h=1cm,c=hummingbird}{latex-logo}
  \keyfig{h=1cm,c=cat}{cat}
\end{keyfloats}
\end{keysubfigs}
```

7-5-16

This page intentionally left blank

CHAPTER 8

Graphics Generation and Manipulation

8.1 \LaTeX 's image loading support	576
8.2 Manipulating graphical objects in \LaTeX	587
8.3 Producing (fairly) portable line graphics	602
8.4 Flexible boxes for multiple purposes	614
8.5 <code>tikz</code> — A general-purpose graphics system	631

\TeX probably has the best algorithms for formatting paragraphs and building pages from them. But in this era of ever-increasing information exchange, most publications do not limit themselves to text — the importance of graphical material has grown tremendously. \TeX by itself does not address this area, as it deals only with positioning (glyph) boxes on pages. Knuth, however, provided a hook for implementing “features” that are not available in the basic language, via the `\special` command. The latter command does not affect the output page being formatted,¹ but \TeX will put the material, specified as an argument to the `\special` command, literally at the current point in the output, e.g., the `.dvi` file. The program that displays or prints that output then has to interpret the received information and load the graphic or execute the appropriate graphic operation. Engines that can directly produce Portable Document Format (PDF) offer other primitives to add raw data to the PDF output, but conceptually the process is the same: it is the backend that has to deal with the graphics.

The main problem with this approach was that different backends provide different methods and interfaces so that any \TeX source file that used `\special` directly became nonportable, working only with specific output devices or printers.

¹In certain situations the `\special` command may change the formatting because it can produce an additional breakpoint or generate an extra space — thus not a perfect approach.

This problem was largely resolved with $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$, which provided a generalized driver-independent interface to include external graphic material and to scale and rotate \LaTeX boxes.¹ This interface is the subject of Section 8.1. It exists in the form of two implementations: the `graphics` package offers a simple interface, while the `graphicx` package provides a convenient key/value interface with additional features. Free-standing scaling and rotation and other manipulations are the subjects of Section 8.2.

A similar abstraction for line graphics was announced at the same time, but it took more than a decade until it was finally implemented. This and some applications thereof are discussed in Section 8.3. This section also talks about special graphic languages and as one useful application thereof generating QR codes with \LaTeX .

Section 8.4 is then devoted to `tcolorbox`, a very comprehensive package for producing boxed material.

We conclude the chapter by taking a brief look at the powerful `tikz` package. There is no way we can do justice to this package, which builds a universe of its own — one could easily devote a whole book to it. Thus, all we try here is to give you an introduction to its basics and give a few teasers to show what it is capable of, but direct you to its documentation (more than a thousand pages) if you get hooked.

8.1 \LaTeX 's image loading support

Since the introduction of $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ in 1994, \LaTeX has offered a uniform syntax for including every kind of graphics file that can be handled by the different drivers. In addition, all kinds of graphic operations (such as resizing and rotating) as well as color support are available.

These features are not part of the \LaTeX kernel but rather are provided by the standard, fully supported `color`, `graphics`, and `graphicx` extension packages. As the \TeX program does not have any direct methods for graphic manipulation, the packages have to rely on features supplied by the “driver” used to print the Device Independent File Format (DVI) file or by the features of the extended engines `pdf \TeX` , `X \TeX` , or `Lua \TeX` that can produce PDF output directly. Unfortunately, not all drivers or PDF engines support the same features, and even the internal method of accessing these extensions varies among them. Consequently, all of these packages take options such as `dvips` or `pdf \TeX` to specify which external driver or engine is being used. Through this method, any unavoidable device-dependent information is localized in a single place, the preamble of the document. However, each \TeX distribution when installed sets up suitable detection methods and defaults (e.g., if the program `pdflatex` is used, then most likely the correct driver option is `pdf \TeX`), so in practice most documents compile correctly without the need to specify any such option.

The packages `graphics` and `graphicx` can both be used to scale, rotate, and reflect \LaTeX material or to include graphics files prepared with other programs. The difference between the two is that `graphics` uses a combination of macros with a “standard” or \TeX -like syntax, while the “extended” or “enhanced” `graphicx` package presents a key/

¹A generalized package for color is also available; see the *\LaTeX Manual* [106] for more details.

value type of interface for specifying optional parameters to the `\includegraphics` and `\rotatebox` commands.

8.1.1 Options for graphics and graphicx

When using L^AT_EX's graphics packages, the necessary space for the typeset material after performing a file inclusion or applying some geometric transformation is reserved on the output page. It is, however, the task of the *device driver* (e.g., `dvips`, `dvipdfmx`, `pdftex`, etc.) to perform the actual inclusion or transformation in question and to show the correct result. Because different drivers require different code to carry out an action like rotation, one has to specify the target driver as an option to the graphics packages — for example, option `dvips` if you use one of the graphics packages with Tom Rokicki's `dvips` program, or option `pdftex` if the graphics packages are used with the pdfT_EX engine.

Fortunately, however, the package is usually capable of figuring out the correct driver automatically, in particular when generating a PDF with pdfT_EX, X_YT_EX, or LuaT_EX. In all other cases it assumes `dvips`, which is often, but not always, correct. Only in the latter case does one need to explicitly provide a driver option. The full list of supported drivers (and their restrictions, if any) is listed in the graphics package documentation if you ever run into a case where the default does not work.

In addition to the driver options, the packages support some options controlling which features are enabled (or disabled):

draft Suppress all “special” features, such as including external graphics files in the final output. The layout of the page is not affected, because L^AT_EX still reads the size information concerning the bounding box of the external material. This option is of particular interest when a document is under development and you do not want to download the (often huge) graphics files each time you work on it. When `draft` mode is activated, the picture is replaced by a box of the correct size containing the name of the external file.

final The opposite of `draft`. This option can be useful when, for instance, “draft” mode was specified as a global option with the `\documentclass` command (e.g., for showing overfull boxes), but you do not want to suppress the graphics as well.

hiresbb In PostScript graphics look for bounding box comments that are of the form `%%HiResBoundingBox` (which typically have real values) instead of the standard `%%BoundingBox` (which must have integer values).

Of lesser importance these days are options that disable features because of restrictions in the output driver. With `hiderotate` you prevent showing rotated material (for instance, when the previewer cannot rotate material and produces error messages), and `hidescale` does the same for scaled material.

With the `graphicx` package, these options are also available locally as keys for individual `\includegraphics` commands.

8.1.2 The `\includegraphics` syntax in the `graphics` package

With the `graphics` package, an image file can be included by using the following command:

```
\includegraphics*[llx, lly] [urx, ury] {file}
```

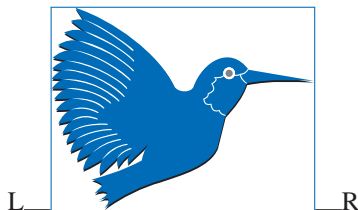
If the [*urx, ury*] argument is present, it specifies the coordinates of upper-right corner of the image as a pair of \TeX dimensions. The default units are big (PostScript) points; thus, [*1in, 1in*] and [*72, 72*] are equivalent. If only one optional argument is given, the lower-left corner of the image is assumed to be located at [*0, 0*]. Otherwise, [*llx, lly*] specifies the coordinates of that point. Without optional arguments, the size of the graphic is determined by reading the external *file* (containing the graphics itself or a description thereof; see below).

The starred form of the `\includegraphics` command “clips” the graphics image to the size of the specified bounding box. In the normal form (without the `*`), any part of the image that falls outside the specified bounding box overprints the surrounding text.

The examples in the current and next sections all use a small graphic showing the \LaTeX hummingbird logo. It is a small PDF graphic with a width of 100pt and a height of 80pt. Being a typical `.pdf` graphic, the lower-left coordinate of its bounding box is at 0 0, and the top-right corner is at [98, 76] in big points (bp), which means it is slightly wider than high.

In the examples we always embed the `\includegraphics` command in an `\fbox` (with a blue frame and zero `\fboxsep`) to show the space that \LaTeX reserves for the included image. In addition, the baseline is indicated by the horizontal rules produced by the `\HR` command, defined as an abbreviation for `\rule{1em}{0.4pt}`.

The first example shows the inclusion of the `latex-logo.pdf` graphic at its natural size. We have omitted the file extension, but the `graphics` is found nevertheless by searching for the file, adding supported extensions one after another until a match is made.¹



```
\usepackage{graphics,color}
\newcommand\HR{\rule{1em}{0.4pt}}
\newcommand\bluefbox[1]
  {\textcolor{blue}{\setlength\fboxsep{0pt}%
    \fbox{\textcolor{black}{#1}}}}
```

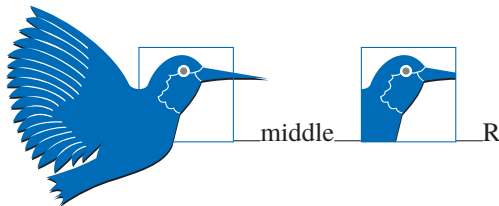
```
L\HR\bluefbox{\includegraphics{latex-logo}}\HR R
```

8-1-1

Next, we specify a box that corresponds to a part of the picture (and an area outside it) so that some parts fall outside its boundaries, overlaying the material

¹The advantage is that your document may work with different device drivers supporting distinct graphics formats, if you supply both formats together with your document. The disadvantage is that you make \LaTeX work harder in trying to find a suitable graphics file.

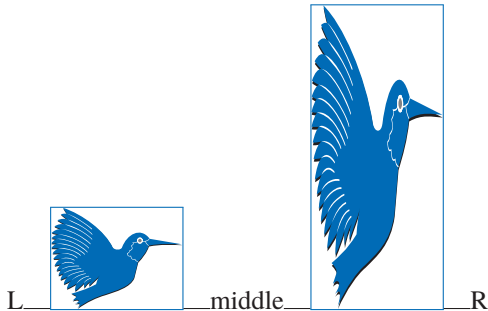
surrounding the picture. If the starred form of the command is used, then the picture is clipped to the box, as shown on the right.



8-1-2

```
\usepackage{graphics,color}
% \bluebox and \HR as before
L\HR
  \bluebox{\includegraphics
            [50,25][85,60]{latex-logo.pdf}}}%
\HR middle\HR
  \bluebox{\includegraphics*
            [50,25][85,60]{latex-logo.pdf}}}%
\HR R
```

In the remaining examples we combine the `\includegraphics` command with other commands of the `graphics` package to show various methods of manipulating an included image. (Their exact syntax is discussed in detail in Section 8.2.) We start with the `\scalebox` and `\resizebox` commands. In both cases we can either specify a change in one dimension and have the other scale proportionally or specify both dimensions to distort the image.



8-1-3

```
\usepackage{graphics,color}
% \bluebox and \HR as before
L\HR
  \bluebox{\scalebox{.5}{%
            \includegraphics{latex-logo.pdf}}}%
\HR middle\HR
  \bluebox{\scalebox{.5}[1.5]{%
            \includegraphics{latex-logo.pdf}}}%
\HR R
```

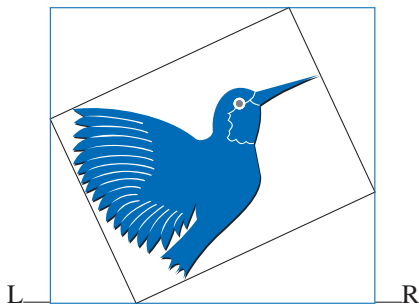


8-1-4

```
\usepackage{graphics,color}
% \bluebox and \HR as before
L\HR
  \bluebox{\resizebox{10mm}{!}{%
            \includegraphics{latex-logo.pdf}}}%
\HR middle\HR
  \bluebox{\resizebox{20mm}{10mm}{%
            \includegraphics{latex-logo.pdf}}}%
\HR R
```

Adding rotations makes things even more interesting. Note that in comparison to Example 8-1-1 on the facing page the space reserved by L^AT_EX is far bigger. L^AT_EX “thinks” in rectangular boxes, so it selects the smallest size that can hold the rotated

image. To better visualize this behavior, we have added an additional `\frame` around the graphic that is rotated with it.



```
\usepackage{graphics,color}
% \bluefbox and \HR as before

L\HR
  \bluefbox{\rotatebox{25}{%
    \frame{\includegraphics{latex-logo.pdf}}}%
\HR R
```

8-1-5

8.1.3 The `\includegraphics` syntax in the `graphicx` package

The extended graphics package `graphicx` also implements `\includegraphics` but offers a syntax for including external graphics files that is somewhat more transparent and user-friendly. With today's \TeX implementations, the resultant processing overhead is negligible, so we suggest using this interface.

`\includegraphics*[key/value list]{file}`

The starred form of the command exists only for compatibility with the standard version of `\includegraphics`, as described in Section 8.1.2. It is equivalent to specifying the `clip` key.

The *key/value list* is a comma-separated list of *key=value* pairs for keys that take a value. For Boolean keys, specifying just the key is equivalent to *key=true*; not specifying the key is equivalent to *key=false*. Possible keys are listed below:

- viewport** This key defines the area of the graphic for which \LaTeX reserves space. Material outside is also printed and thus may overprint nearby material (use `clip` to prevent this). The key takes four dimension arguments separated by spaces. They denote the lower-left and the upper-right corner of the reserved area measured from the graphics bounding box specified in the file or with the `bb` keyword (see below). For example, to describe a 20bp square 10bp to the right and 15bp above the lower-left corner of the picture you would specify `viewport=10 15 30 35`.
- trim** Same functionality as the `viewport` key, but this time the four dimensions correspond to the amount of space to be trimmed (cut off) at the left-hand side, bottom, right-hand side, and top of the included graphics.
- clip** Clip the graphic to the area specified by `viewport`, by `trim`, or by its bounding box (specified in the file or with `bb`). Material outside the area is suppressed. It is a Boolean, either “true” or “false”.

Note, however, that this key cannot be used to censor data: the clipped material is still inside the output file, and only the printing is suppressed!

draft A Boolean-value key to switch to draft mode for this image.

The next seven keys (**angle** through **keepaspectratio**) have to do with rotation or scaling of the included material. Similar effects can be obtained with the **graphics** package and the `\includegraphics` command by placing the latter inside the argument of a `\resizebox`, `\rotatebox`, or `\scalebox` command (see the examples in Section 8.1.2 and the in-depth discussion of these commands in Section 8.2).

angle The rotation angle (in degrees, counterclockwise).

origin The origin for the rotation, similar to the **origin** parameter of the `\rotatebox` command described on page 591 and in Figure 8.1 on page 593.

scale A scale factor to scale both width and height equally.

width,height The required width or height (the image is scaled to that value). If both are given, the image is distorted unless **keepaspectratio** is also used.

totalheight The required total height (height + depth of the image is scaled to that value). This key should be used instead of **height** if images are rotated more than 90 degrees, because the height can disappear (and become the depth) and L^AT_EX may have difficulties satisfying the user's request.

keepaspectratio A Boolean variable. If set, specifying both the **width** and **height** parameters does not distort the picture, but the image is scaled so that neither the width nor height *exceeds* the given dimensions.

Especially for PostScript images there are a few keys that allow altering the bounding box information. With most other graphic types **bb** acts like **viewport**.

bb The bounding box of the graphics image overwriting any specification in the image. Like **viewport**, its value field must contain four dimensions, separated by spaces to specify lower-left and upper-right corner.¹

natheight, natwidth The natural height and width of the graphics.²

hiresbb Makes L^AT_EX search for `%%HiResBoundingBox` comments instead of the normal `%%BoundingBox`. Some applications use this key to specify more precise bounding boxes, because the numbers can normally have only integer values. It is a Boolean, either “true” or “false”.

¹This key can be important when working with `.eps` or `.ps` graphics where the bounding box information is often incorrect.

²These arguments can be used for setting the lower-left coordinate to (0,0) and the upper-right coordinate to (**natwidth**,**natheight**) and are thus equivalent to `bb=0 0 w h`, where **w** and **h** are the values specified for these two parameters.

Finally, there are a few keys (`type`, `ext`, `read`, and `command`) to handle special cases of lesser importance today; for details see the package documentation.

If sizes are given without units (e.g., in `viewport`, `trim`, etc.), then \TeX 's bp "big points" are assumed because this is the standard with PostScript or PDF.

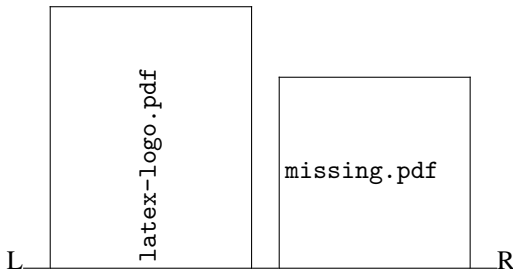
Order of
keys is important

It is important to note that keys are read from left to right, so that `[angle=90, totalheight=2cm]` means rotate by 90 degrees and then scale to a height of 2 cm, whereas `[totalheight=2cm, angle=90]` would result in a final *width* of 2 cm.

By default, \TeX reserves for the image the space specified either in the file or in the *key/value list*. If any part of the image falls outside this area, it overprints the surrounding text. If the starred form is used or the `clip` option is specified, any part of the image outside this area is not printed.

Below we repeat some of the examples from Section 8.1.2 using the syntax of the `graphicx` package, showing extra facilities offered by the extended package. In most cases the new form is easier to understand than the earlier version. In the simplest case without any optional arguments, the syntax for the `\includegraphics` command is the same in both packages.

If we use the `draft` key, we get just a frame showing the bounding box. This feature is not offered by the `graphics` package on the level of individual graphics.

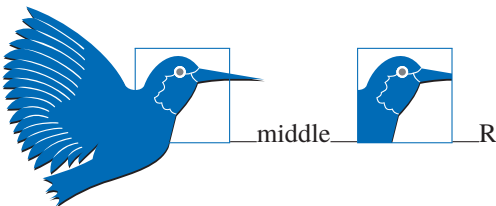


```
\usepackage{graphicx}
% \HR as before
L\HR
  \includegraphics[draft,angle=90]
                        {latex-logo.pdf}%
\HR
  \includegraphics[draft]{missing.pdf}%
\HR R
```

8-1-6

If the images are available and accessible on the computer system, \TeX reads out the bounding box information and produces a frame matching the image size while taking into account the effects of other keys, e.g., for rotation. Otherwise, as with the file `missing.pdf` above, you get a generic rectangle. Thus, in that case pagination is likely to change once the real image is included.

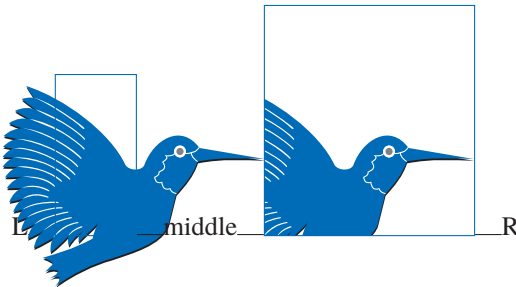
The effects of the `bb`, `clip`, `viewport`, and `trim` keys are seen in the following examples. Compare them with Example 8-1-2 on page 579.



```
\usepackage{graphicx,color}
% \bluefbox and \HR as before
L\HR\bluefbox{\includegraphics
  [bb=50 25 85 60]{latex-logo.pdf}}%
\HR middle\HR
  \bluefbox{\includegraphics
  [bb=50 25 85 60,clip]{latex-logo.pdf}}%
\HR R
```

8-1-7

Using `viewport` or `trim` allows us to specify the desired result in yet another way. Notice that we actually trim a negative amount, effectively enlarging the space reserved for the picture.



8-1-8

```
\usepackage{graphicx,color}
% \bluebox and \HR as before
L\HR\bluebox{\includegraphics
               [viewport=20 20 50 80]
               {latex-logo.pdf}}%

\HR middle\HR
\bluebox{\includegraphics
         [trim= 20 20 0 -30,clip]
         {latex-logo.pdf}}%

\HR R
```

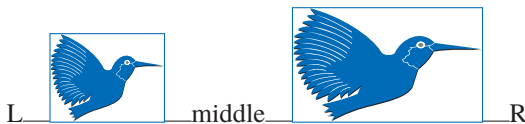
If you want to apply a scale factor to the image, use the `scale` key. With this key, however, you can only scale the picture equally in both directions.



8-1-9

```
\usepackage{graphicx,color}
% \bluebox and \HR as before
L\HR \bluebox{\includegraphics[scale=.5]{latex-logo.pdf}}\HR R
```

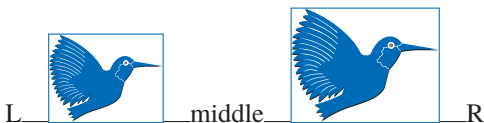
To make the dimensions of an image equal to a given value, use the `width` or `height` key (the other dimension is then scaled accordingly). If you use both keys simultaneously, you can distort the image to fit a specified rectangle, as shown in the following example:



8-1-10

```
\usepackage{graphicx,color}
% \bluebox and \HR as before
L\HR\bluebox{\includegraphics
               [width=15mm]{latex-logo.pdf}}%
\HR middle\HR\bluebox{\includegraphics
                       [height=15mm,width=25mm]
                       {latex-logo.pdf}}\HR R
```

You can make sure that the aspect ratio of the image itself remains intact by specifying the `keepaspectratio` key. L^AT_EX then fits the image as best it can to the rectangle you specify.

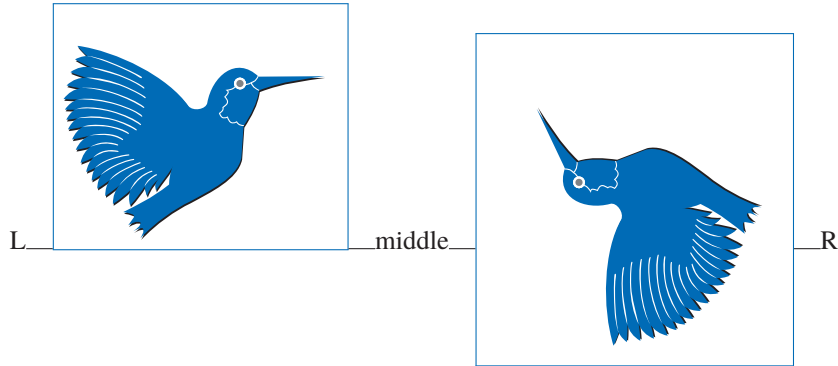


8-1-11

```
\usepackage{graphicx,color}
% \bluebox and \HR as before
L\HR\bluebox{\includegraphics[keepaspectratio,
                             height=25mm,width=15mm]{latex-logo.pdf}}%
\HR middle\HR\bluebox{\includegraphics
                       [keepaspectratio,height=15mm,width=25mm]
                       {latex-logo.pdf}}\HR R
```

Rotations using the `angle` key add another level of complexity. The reference point for the rotation is the reference point of the original graphic — normally the lower-left corner if the graphic has no depth. By rotating around that point, the height and depth change so that the graphic moves up and down with respect to the baseline, as can be seen in the next examples.

```
\usepackage{graphicx,color} % \bluebox and \HR as before
L\HR \bluebox{\includegraphics[angle=10]{latex-logo.pdf}}\HR
middle\HR\bluebox{\includegraphics[angle=125]{latex-logo.pdf}}\HR R
```



8-1-12

The real fun starts when you specify both a dimension and a rotation angle for an image, because the order in which they are given matters. The `graphicx` package interprets the keys *from left to right*. You should pay special attention if you plan to rotate images and want to set them to a certain height. The next examples show the difference between specifying an angle of rotation before and after a scale command. In the first case, the picture is rotated, and then the result is scaled. In the second case, the picture is scaled and then rotated.

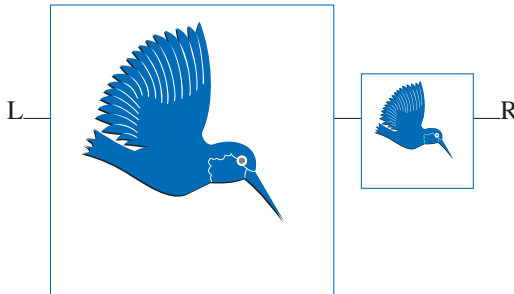
```
\usepackage{graphicx,color}
% \bluebox and \HR as before
L\HR\bluebox{\includegraphics
[angle=45,width=10mm]{latex-logo.pdf}}%
\HR middle\HR
\bluebox{\includegraphics
[width=10mm,angle=45]{latex-logo.pdf}}%
\HR R
```

The image shows two blue boxes, each containing a blue bird logo. The first box is labeled 'L' on the left and 'middle' on the right. The second box is labeled 'middle' on the left and 'R' on the right. The bird logo in the first box is scaled and rotated 45 degrees, and the bird logo in the second box is scaled and rotated 45 degrees.

8-1-13

\LaTeX considers the height and the depth of the rotated bounding box separately. The `height` key refers only to the height; that is, it does not include the depth. In general, the total height of a (rotated) image should fit in a given space, so you should use the `totalheight` key (see Figure 8.1 on page 593 for a description of the various dimensions defining a \LaTeX box). Of course, to obtain special effects you can

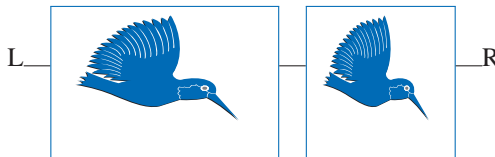
manipulate rotations and combinations of the `height` and `width` parameters at will. The results change considerably if `totalheight` is used instead:



8-1-14

```
\usepackage{graphicx,color}
% \bluebox and \HR as before
L\HR\bluebox{%
  \includegraphics[angle=-50,%
                    height=15mm]%
    {latex-logo.pdf}}\HR
\bluebox{%
  \includegraphics[angle=-50,%
                    totalheight=15mm]%
    {latex-logo.pdf}}\HR R
```

Specifying both `width` and `height` or `totalheight` is likely to distort the image unless we also use `keepaspectratio`:



8-1-15

```
\usepackage{graphicx,color}
% \bluebox and \HR as before
L\HR\bluebox{%
  \includegraphics
    [angle=-50,totalheight=20mm,%
     width=30mm]{latex-logo.pdf}}\HR
\bluebox{%
  \includegraphics
    [angle=-50,totalheight=20mm,%
     width=30mm,keepaspectratio]%
    {latex-logo.pdf}}\HR R
```

8.1.4 Setting default key values for the `graphicx` package

Instead of specifying the same set of key/value pairs over and over again on individual `\includegraphics` commands, you can specify global default values for keys associated with such commands. To do so, you use the `\setkeys` declaration provided by the `keyval` package, which is automatically included when `graphicx` is used.

```
\setkeys{identifier}{key/value list}
```

The *identifier* is an arbitrary string defined by the macro designer. For example, for `\includegraphics` the string `Gin` was chosen. The *key/value list* is a comma-separated list of key/value pairs.

As an example, consider the case where `graphicx` is used and all figures are to be scaled to the width of the line. Then you would specify the following:

```
\setkeys{Gin}{width=\linewidth}
```


All images included with the `\includegraphics` command are automatically scaled to the current line width. (Using `\linewidth` in such a case is usually preferable to using `\columnwidth`, because the former changes its value depending on the surrounding environment, such as `quote`.)

You can specify defaults in a similar way for any key used with the `\rotatebox` command (the other command that has a key/value syntax when `graphicx` is used). It has the *identifier* `Grot`; thus,

```
\setkeys{Grot}{origin=ct}
```

specifies that `ct` should be used for the `origin` key on all `\rotatebox` commands unless locally overwritten. See Figure 8.1 on page 593 for default values for `origin`.

8.1.5 Declarations guiding the inclusion of images

While key/value pairs can be set only when the `graphicx` package is used, the declarations described in this section can be used with both the `graphics` and the `graphicx` packages.

*Where to find
image files*

By default, \LaTeX looks for graphics files in the same directories where it looks for other files. But for larger projects it might be preferable to keep the image files together in a single directory or in a set of directories. A list of directories where \LaTeX should search for graphics files can be specified through the command `\graphicspath`, whose argument is a list of directories, each inside a pair of braces `{}` (even if the list contains only one directory). For example,

```
\graphicspath{{./images/}{./pdfs/}}
```

causes \LaTeX to look in the subdirectories `images` and `pdfs` of the current directory.

*Defining the file
extension search
order*

If you specify a graphic file without giving its extension in the argument of the `\includegraphics` command, then \LaTeX loops through a list of “allowed” extensions, appending each in turn until a file corresponding to the generated full file name is found. This list differs depending on the device driver; for example, when you produce PDF documents with `pdfTeX` or `LuaTeX`, it is:

```
.pdf,.png,.jpg,.mps,.jpeg,.jbig2,.jb2,.PDF,.PNG,.JPG,.JPEG,.JBIG2,.JB2
```

whereas if you generate a `dvi` file for use with `dvips`, the list looks quite different, because that output device only understands PostScript-oriented formats:

```
.eps,.ps,.eps.gz,.ps.gz,.eps.Z,.mps
```

In normal circumstances the supported extensions and the search order need not to be altered, but if necessary you can do so with a `\DeclareGraphicsExtensions` declaration. If, for example, most of your images are always of type `jpg` or `png`, then declaring

```
\DeclareGraphicsExtensions{.jpg,.png}
```

speeds up the processing because at most two searches are made for each image. If you want to enforce that all graphics are specified with their extension, then use `\DeclareGraphicsExtensions` with an empty argument.

Because the algorithm tests for the existence of a file to determine which extension to use if it is not provided, the graphics file must exist at the time L^AT_EX is run. However, if a file extension *is* specified, such as `\includegraphics{gr.jpg}` instead of `\includegraphics{gr}`, then the graphics file need not exist at the time of the L^AT_EX run.

In either case L^AT_EX needs to know the size of the image, however, so it must be specified in the arguments of the `\includegraphics` command or in a file actually read by L^AT_EX. (This file can be either the graphics file itself or another file specified with the `read` key or constructed from the list of file extensions. In the latter case the file must exist at the time L^AT_EX is run.)

The action that has to take place when a file with a given extension is encountered is controlled through `\DeclareGraphicsRule` declarations. Within limits this makes it possible to add support for additional file formats; see the package documentation on how to achieve this.

8.2 Manipulating graphical objects in L^AT_EX

In the previous section we discussed how to load external graphic files and what L^AT_EX offers to hide or at least encapsulate system-dependent aspects of the loading process. After loading, such images are simply boxes without any inner structure to L^AT_EX. In this section we now look at general manipulation possibilities for boxes. The functions offered can be applied to any L^AT_EX box and not just to those holding an external image.

We start with the commands offered by the standard `graphics` and `graphicx` packages and discuss scaling, rotating, and similar operations. After a brief look at the rotating package we then examine the `overpic` package, which marries the `\includegraphics` mechanism with that of a L^AT_EX `picture` environment. This offers an easy, yet powerful, way to annotate images with text and line graphics, like arrows, etc. We conclude with an evaluation of the `adjustbox` package that provides box manipulation possibilities with a powerful and convenient key/value syntax.

8.2.1 Image and box manipulations with `graphics` and `graphicx`

In addition to the `\includegraphics` command, the `graphics` and `graphicx` packages implement a number of graphical manipulation commands. With the exception of the `\rotatebox` command, which supports a key/value syntax in the `graphicx` package, the syntax for these commands is identical in both packages.

Scaling a L^AT_EX box

The `\scalebox` command lets you magnify or reduce text or other L^AT_EX material by a scale factor.

```
\scalebox{h-scale}[v-scale]{material}
```

The first of its arguments specifies the factor by which both dimensions of the *material* are to be scaled. The following example shows how this works:

This text is normal.

This text is large.

This text is tiny.

```
\usepackage{graphics} % or graphicx
\noindent This text is normal. \[5pt]
\scalebox{3} {This text is large.} \[
\scalebox{0.5}{This text is tiny.}
```

8-2-1

A supplementary optional argument, if present, specifies a separate vertical scaling factor. It is demonstrated in the following examples, which also show how multiple lines can be scaled by using the standard L^AT_EX `\parbox` command.

America
&
Europe

America
&
Europe

```
\usepackage{graphics} % or graphicx
\fbbox{\scalebox{2.2}{%
  \parbox{.5in}{America \& \ Europe}}}
\fbbox{\scalebox{2.2}[1]{%
  \parbox{.5in}{America \& \ Europe}}}
```

8-2-2

```
\reflectbox{material}
```

This command is a convenient abbreviation for `\scalebox{-1}[1]{material}`, as seen in the following example:

North America?↯South America?
South America?↯North America?

```
\usepackage{graphics} % or graphicx
\noindent
North America?\reflectbox{North America?} \[
South America?\scalebox{-1}[1]{South America?}
```

8-2-3

More interesting special effects can also be obtained. Note in particular the use of the zero-width `\makebox` commands, which hide their contents from L^AT_EX and thus offer the possibility of fine-tuning the positioning of the typeset material.

North America?
North America?
North America?
North America?
North America?

```
\usepackage{graphics} % or graphicx
\noindent
North America?\scalebox{-1}{South America?} \[
North America?\scalebox{1}[-1]{South America?} \[
North America?%
  \makebox[0mm][r]{\scalebox{-1}{South America?}} \[
\makebox[0mm][l]{North America?}%
  \scalebox{1}[-1]{South America?}
```

8-2-4

Resizing to a given size

It is possible to specify that L^AT_EX material should be typeset to a fixed horizontal or vertical dimension:

```
\resizebox*{h-dim}{v-dim}{material}
```

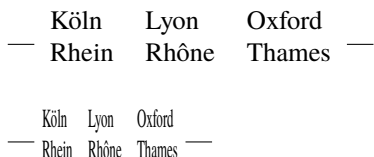
When the aspect ratio of the material should be maintained, then it is enough to specify one of the dimensions, replacing the other dimension with a “!” sign.



8-2-5

```
\usepackage{graphics} % or graphicx
\fbbox{\resizebox{5mm}{!}{%
  \parbox{14mm}{London,\&\& Berlin, \&\& Paris}}}
\fbbox{\resizebox{!}{15mm}{%
  \parbox{14mm}{London,\&\& Berlin, \&\& Paris}}}
```

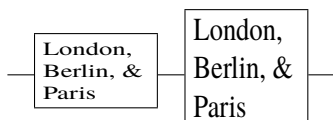
When explicit dimensions for both *h-dim* and *v-dim* are supplied, then the contents can be distorted. In the following example the baseline is indicated by a horizontal rule drawn with the `\HR` command.



8-2-6

```
\usepackage{graphics} % or graphicx
\HR\begin{tabular}{lll}
  Köln & Lyon & Oxford \\
  Rhein & Rhône & Thames
\end{tabular}\HR\par\bigskip
\HR\resizebox{2cm}{.5cm}{%
  \begin{tabular}{lll}
    Köln & Lyon & Oxford \\
    Rhein & Rhône & Thames
  \end{tabular}}\HR
```

As usual with L^AT_EX commands involving box dimensions, you can refer to the natural lengths `\depth`, `\height`, `\totalheight`, and `\width` as dimensional parameters:

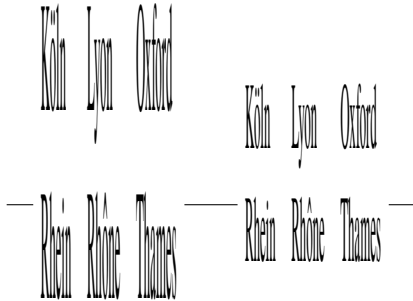


8-2-7

```
\usepackage{graphics} % or graphicx
\HR\fbbox{\resizebox{\width}{.7\height}{%
  \parbox{14mm}{London,\&\& Berlin, \&\& Paris}}}\HR
\fbbox{\resizebox{\width}{.7\totalheight}{%
  \parbox{14mm}{London,\&\& Berlin, \&\& Paris}}}\HR
```

The unstarred form `\resizebox` bases its calculations on the height of the L^AT_EX material, while the starred `\resizebox*` command takes into account the total

height (the depth plus the height) of the \LaTeX box. The next `tabular` examples, which have a large depth, show the difference:



```
\usepackage{graphicx}
\HR\resizebox{20mm}{30mm}{%
  \begin{tabular}{lll}
    Köln & Lyon & Oxford \\
    Rhein & Rhône & Thames
  \end{tabular}}\HR
\HR\resizebox*{20mm}{30mm}{%
  \begin{tabular}{lll}
    Köln & Lyon & Oxford \\
    Rhein & Rhône & Thames
  \end{tabular}}\HR
```

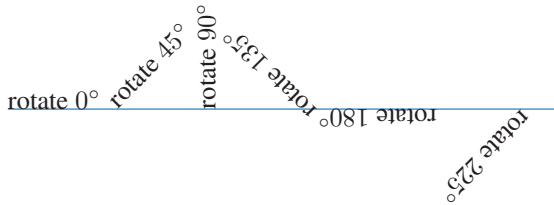
8-2-8

Rotating a \LaTeX box

\LaTeX material can be rotated through an angle with the `\rotatebox` command. An alternative technique useful with environments is described in Section 8.2.1.

```
\rotatebox{angle}{material}
```

The *material* argument is typeset inside a \LaTeX box and rotated through *angle* degrees counterclockwise around the reference point.

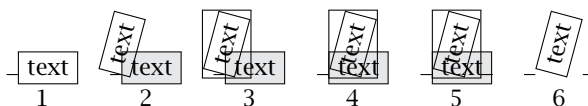


```
\usepackage{graphics} % or graphicx
\newcommand\MyRot[1]{\rotatebox{#1}%
  \rotate{#1^\circ}}
\MyRot{0} \MyRot{45} \MyRot{90}
\MyRot{135} \MyRot{180} \MyRot{225}
```

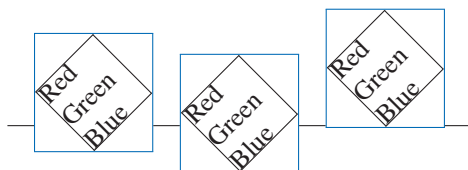
8-2-9

The rotation algorithm

To understand where the rotated material is placed on the page, we need to look at the algorithm employed. Below we show the individual steps carried out when rotating `\fbox{text}` by 75 degrees. Step 1 shows the unrotated text; the horizontal line at the left marks the baseline. First the *material* (in this case, `\fbox{text}`) is placed into a box. This box has a reference point around which, by default, the rotation is carried out. This is shown in step 2 (the original position of the unrotated material is shown as well for reference purposes). Then the algorithm calculates a new bounding box (i.e., the space reserved for the rotated material), as shown in step 3. Next the material is moved horizontally so that the left edges of the new and the old bounding boxes are in the same position (step 4). \TeX 's typesetting position is then advanced so that additional material is typeset to the right of the bounding box in its new position, as shown by the line denoting the baseline in step 5. Step 6 shows the final result, again with the baseline on both sides of the rotated material.



For more complex material it is important to keep in mind the location of the reference point of the resulting box. The following example shows how it can be shifted by using the placement parameter of the `\parbox` command.



8-2-10

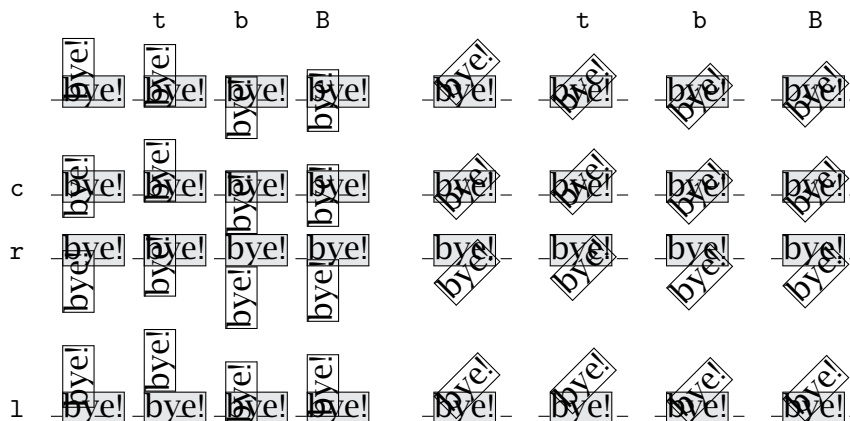
```
\usepackage{color,graphics} % or graphicx
\HR\bluefbox{\rotatebox{45}{%
  \fbox{\parbox{3em}{Red\Green\Blue}}}}%
\HR\bluefbox{\rotatebox{45}{%
  \fbox{\parbox[t]{3em}{Red\Green\Blue}}}}%
\HR\bluefbox{\rotatebox{45}{%
  \fbox{\parbox[b]{3em}{Red\Green\Blue}}}}\HR
```

The extended graphics package `graphicx` offers more flexibility in specifying the point around which the rotation is to take place by using *key/value* pairs.

`\rotatebox[key/value list]{angle}{material}`

The four possible keys in this case are `origin`, `x`, `y`, and `units`. The possible values for the `origin` key are shown in Figure 8.1 on page 593 (one value each for the horizontal and vertical alignments can be chosen), as are the actual positions of these combinations with respect to the L^AT_EX box produced from *material*.

The effect of these possible combinations for the `origin` key on an actual L^AT_EX box can be studied below, where two matrices of the results are shown for 90-degree and 45-degree rotated boxes. To better appreciate the effects, the unrotated text is shown against a gray background.



If the symbolic specification of the origin is not enough, you also can supply explicit x and y coordinates (relative to the reference point) for the point around which the rotation is to take place. For this purpose, use the keys x and y and the format $x=\text{dim}$, $y=\text{dim}$. A matrix showing some sample values and their effect on a box rotated by 90 degrees appears below:

	$x=0\text{mm}$	$x=5\text{mm}$	$x=10\text{mm}$	$x=15\text{mm}$
$y=0\text{mm}$				
$y=5\text{mm}$				
$y=10\text{mm}$				

The interpretation of the *angle* argument of `\rotatebox` can be controlled by the `units` keyword, which specifies the number of units counterclockwise in a full circle. The default is 360, so using `units=-360` would mean that angles are specified clockwise. Similarly, a setting of `units=6.283185` changes the degree specification to radians. Rather than changing the `units` key on individual `\rotatebox` commands, you should probably set up a default interpretation using the `\setkeys` declaration as described in Section 8.1.4.

rotating — Revisited

The material in this section is similar to that of Sebastian Rahtz's `rotating` package, which was introduced in Section 7.3.3 on page 533. The functionality of `rotating` is implemented in this package through the environments `turn` and `rotate`; the latter environment generates an object that occupies no space.

Turning  a bit.

```
\usepackage{rotating}
```

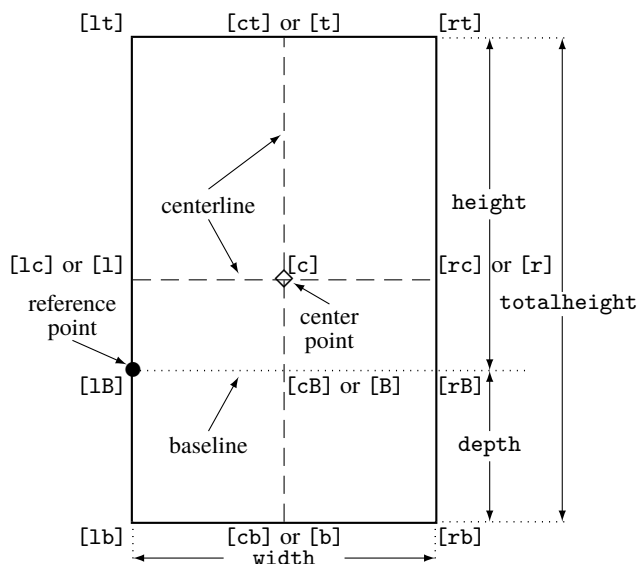
```
Turning
```

```
\begin{rotate}{-20}\Large\LaTeX\end{rotate}%
```

```
\begin{turn}{20}\verb=\LaTeX=\end{turn}
```

```
a bit.
```

8-2-11



8-2-12

<i>Horizontal alignment</i>	l	left	c	center	r	right		
<i>Vertical alignment</i>	t	top	c	center	B	baseline	b	bottom

Figure 8.1: A L^AT_EX box and possible origin reference points

Using environments has the advantage that the rotated material can contain `\verb` commands. However, the extended syntax of the `\rotatebox` command is not supported, so in most cases the latter command is preferable.

8.2.2 overpic — Graphic annotation made easy

Sometimes there is a need to annotate a graphic with some text, mark some regions or point to areas with arrows, etc. This can be easily achieved by overlaying the graphic with a `picture` environment and then adding your annotations with a suitable set of `\put` commands. The difficulty with this approach is finding the correct coordinate values, and for this the `overpic` package by Rolf Niepraschk is a great help.

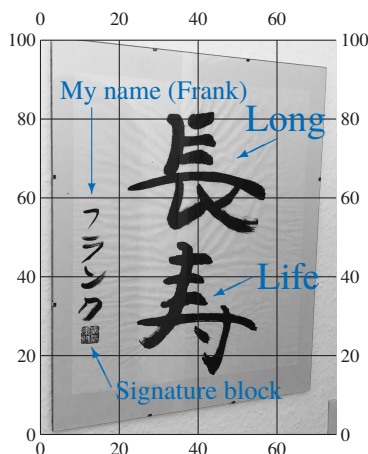
```
\begin{overpic}[key/value list]{file} picture commands \end{overpic}
```

The package defines the environment `overpic`, which takes a graphic *file* as its mandatory argument and loads it using `\includegraphics`. The environment body should consist of *picture commands*, which are then placed on top of the image. By default the `\unitlength` is chosen so that the longer edge of the graphic has a length of $100 \times \text{\unitlength}$. This way your annotations stay in place if you later decide to scale the graphic because the coordinates are relative to the size of the graphic.

Instead of the `\unitlength` as a percentage of the longest edge (keyword `percent`), you can use `permil` in the *key/value list* or specify your own relative base with `rel`, but in most cases the default should be fine.

To guide you while adding the annotations, use `grid`, which overlays the graphic with grid lines at every 10 units (or if `permil` is used, at every 100 units). If you want the grid more or less granular, specify the distance between gridlines explicitly with the `tics` key. Once you have added all your annotations, simply remove the `grid` keyword again so that the helper grid vanishes.

Any other key specified in the *key/value list* is passed on to `\includegraphics` of the `graphicx` package for interpretation. Below, for example, we used the `width` key to down-scale the graphic. This example shows two kanji written by the author during a workshop at the TUG conference in Tokyo. With the help of the grid it was easy to add the annotations in the right places.



```
\usepackage{overpic,xcolor}
\begin{overpic}[width=.7\textwidth,grid,tics=20]
    {longlife-grayscale.jpg}

    \color{blue}
    \put(5,85){My name (Frank)}
    \put(13,83){\vector(0,-1){22}}

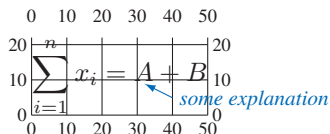
    \put(52,77){\Large Long}
    \put(60,75){\vector(-2,-1){10}}
    \put(55,37){\Large Life}
    \put(54,40){\vector(-2,-1){10}}

    \put(18,12){\vector(-1,2){5}}
    \put(19,9){Signature block}
\end{overpic}
```

8-2-13

`\begin{Overpic}[key/value list]{LaTeX code picture commands \end{Overpic}}`

The `Overpic` environment is similar, but instead of an image file, the mandatory argument contains *LaTeX code*, for example, a tabular environment or a math formula. However, only material that can appear inside LR-mode is allowed (if necessary, you need to surround it with a `\parbox` or a `minipage` environment).



```
\usepackage{overpic,pict2e,color}
\begin{Overpic}[grid,rel=50,tics=10]
    {\$ \displaystyle \sum_{i=1}^n x_i = A + B \$}
    \color{blue} \Vector(40,5)(32,9)
    \put(42,3){\footnotesize\itshape some explanation}
\end{Overpic}
```

8-2-14

If you want, you can alter the default settings for both environments by using the `\setOverpic` declaration. It expects a *key/value list* as its argument.

8.2.3 adjustbox — Box manipulation with a key/value interface

When using `graphicx`, the commands `\includegraphics` and `\rotatebox` offer a key/value interface. However, the keys supported by `\rotatebox` are quite limited, and for other box commands no such interface is available at all, even though keys such as `trim` or `clip` could be useful occasionally.

This missing functionality is made available by Martin Scharrer's `adjustbox` package. The present section covers only the more important aspects of the package; further detail can be found in the extensive documentation [178].

The main command offered is `\adjustbox`, which can act as a replacement for all standard box commands, such as `\mbox`, `\fbox`, etc.; the color box commands, such as `\colorbox`; the graphics box commands, e.g., `\scalebox`, `\rotatebox`; and probably further commands offered by other packages. Mimicking as well as extending these commands is done by supplying the right set of keys.

```
\adjustbox{key/value list}{material}
\begin{adjustbox}{key/value list} material \end{adjustbox}
```

The *key/value list* is given as a mandatory argument because without any keys the command acts just like `\mbox`, so it would be more economical to use the latter. It is also possible to use an environment form with little difference: one advantage is that you can use verbatim *material* in this case.

When a key expects dimension(s) as its value, you can either specify explicit dimensions or specify just a number in which case the bp (big points) are assumed by default.¹

Overview about the most important keys

The list of keys supported is formidable; we cover more than thirty here, but in the package documentation you will find many more. First of all, all keys supported by the `graphicx` package can be used. In the next example we apply a few to mangle the L^AT_EX logo.

8-2-15



```
\usepackage{adjustbox}
\adjustbox{trim=0 1.7 6.5 0,clip,angle=-10,scale=-1}{\sffamily\huge\LaTeX}
```

Compared to `graphicx`, the syntax for the `trim` key is extended and gives you additional options to specify the values for the four sides. If all or several need the same value, then it is sufficient to specify one or two values instead of four.

```
trim=<all sides>                trim=<left/right>_<top/bottom>
trim=<left>_<bottom>_<right>_<top>
```

The package uses this syntax with other keys whenever it is applicable, i.e., when the key expects values for all four sides or for the four corners.

¹The package can be loaded with the option `defaultunit`, but changing the default may not be a good idea because bp is the de facto standard used everywhere else.

Some of the `graphicx` keys can be used multiple times; e.g., specifying `angle` twice will do a rotation equal to the sum of both values. However, operations of other keys such as `trim`, `viewport`, or `clip` are not carried out by `LaTeX` but in fact later in the device driver. Thus, in that case `LaTeX` only passes a value, and when using such a key several times, the last invocation wins.

The `adjustbox` package enables multiple usage through four extra keys starting with an uppercase letter. `Trim` and `Viewport` work like their lowercase counterparts, but can be used more than once. However, the `clip` key has no effect on them. So in order to “trim and clip”, the package has `Clip`, which takes the same values as `Trim`. The `Clip*` is similar but interprets its value as a `Viewport`.

Clipping the corners

With `rndcorners` a new clipping operation is added; the value consists of one, two, or four dimensions. When two dimensions are given, they refer to the left and the right corners. In the next example we first produce round corners with radius 3bp on the left and 9bp on the right and afterwards shave off 1bp from the bottom (which explains why the lower corners are not round). Swapping the keys then gives us fully rounded corners — order matters.

```

LaTeX \usepackage{xcolor,adjustbox}
LaTeX \adjustbox{rndcorners=3 9,Clip=0 1 0 0}{\colorbox{gray!30}{\Large\LaTeX}} \par
LaTeX \adjustbox{Clip=0 1 0 0,rndcorners=3 9}{\colorbox{gray!30}{\Large\LaTeX}}
```

8-2-16

Accessing the original and changed object dimensions

In the previous example we used explicit values for rounding the corners and trimming the edges. As an alternative we could have made use of commands that hold the sizes of the original box before any manipulation. These are same as with the `graphicx` package, i.e., `\Width`, `\Height`, `\Depth`, and `\Totalheight`. For example, `rndcorners=.5\Totalheight` would give you a half circle on the left and right. However, this works only if the box size is not altered by the keys, e.g., through trimming. The package therefore also defines a similar set of commands with lowercase names that refer to the possibly changed dimensions of the box while the keys are processed. The next example shows the difference:

```

\usepackage{xcolor,adjustbox}
LaTeX \adjustbox{Clip=0 2 1 0,rndcorners={.5\Totalheight} 0}{\colorbox{gray!30}{\LaTeX}}
LaTeX \adjustbox{Clip=0 2 1 0,rndcorners={.5\totalheight} 0}{\colorbox{gray!30}{\LaTeX}}
```

8-2-17

Note that when you use such dimension commands in places where the syntax is expecting that dimensions are separated by spaces, you have to add a brace group around the dimension as they would otherwise gobble a following space. This is what we did in the previous example.

The package also offers four other dimension commands to refer to the smallest or largest size of the box. The names are `\Smallestside` and `\Largestside` for the dimensions of the original box content. The lowercase counterparts reflect any changes during the key processing.

Scaling the box to a specific size

With `width`, `height`, and `totalheight` already available with the `graphicx` package, you can enforce a certain size of the box. To meet this request the box

content is scaled (by default keeping the aspect ratio). However, with `adjustbox` further keys are offered. You can, for example, specify that the box has to have a minimum height, or a maximum width, and if the box does not meet this criterion, it is automatically scaled up or down by an appropriate factor.

The key names for this are `min_width`, `min_height`, and `min_totalheight` and `max_width` and so forth for the maximum. As a further alternative you can specify that all edges should have a minimum or maximum size by using `min_size` or `min_totalsize` (for the vertical size `\Totalheight`, not `\Height`, is used) and `max_size` or `max_totalsize`.

As a general alternative there is also the `scale` key to scale the box up or down. With the `graphicx` package, i.e., with `\includegraphics`, only a single factor is allowed, which is then used for both horizontal and vertical scaling. With `adjustbox` you can use one or two decimal numbers; in the latter case the first specifies the horizontal and the second the vertical scale factor.

<code>fbox=<rule width>_<sep>_<outer sep></code>	<code>frame=<rule width>_<sep>_<outer sep></code>
--	---

The key `fbox` supports framed boxes. Its value is a list of up to three dimensions separated by spaces. If used without any value, it produces a frame with the default values for `\fbox` used by L^AT_EX, i.e., `\fboxrule` and `\fboxsep`. By specifying one or two values, you overwrite these defaults. The `<outer sep>`, which has no counterpart with `\fbox`, adds a (normally) invisible outer margin around the frame, i.e., enlarges the space taken up by the box.

*Producing frames
around the object*

The key `frame` is like `fbox` and only differs in the default for `<sep>`, which is zero; i.e., it is modeled after L^AT_EX's `\frame` command and produces a tight frame around the object if used without a value or only a value for `<rule width>`. With two or three values there is no difference between the two keys. Both keys are exhibited in later examples.

Given that there is the possibility to make rounded corner clippings, it should not be surprising that you can also make frames with rounded corners. The key for this is `rndframe`, and it has the same value structure as `rndcorners`. The next example repeats part of Example 8-2-16 from page 596 but adds a frame this time.

Rounded frames

We also show the alternative syntax for the key where the value consists of two brace groups, the first consisting of another key/value list in which you can set the color, the rule width, and the separation between frame and box content. Two other keys are used: with `trim` we remove 1bp from the bottom of the content so that the frame comes closer to the “X” and at the same time add 2bp on the right (negative trimming means extending) to ensure that the rounded corners do not bump into the “X”. With the `vspace` key we add some space above the box but none below; this is explained later.



```
\usepackage{xcolor,adjustbox}
\adjustbox{Clip=0 1 0 0,rndcorners=3 9, rndframe=3 9}
{\colorbox{gray!30}{\Large\LaTeX}}
\adjustbox{trim=0 1 -2 0,rndframe={color=blue,width=1pt,sep=3pt}{3 9},
vspace=5pt 0pt}{\Large\LaTeX}
```

Adding marginal white space

The extra outer border that can be specified with a third dimension to `fbox` is also available in a generalized form as the key `margin`. If you think about it, adding a margin around the object is equivalent to using `Trim` with negative values. So it comes as no surprise that `margin` accepts one, two, or four dimensions, depending on whether you need different values for the different sides. You can use it multiple times, for example, before and after adding a frame.

An alternate name for `margin` is `padding`, which is preferred by some people. Below we use it to differentiate inner padding from extending the outer margin, but this is just syntactic sugar — we could have used `margin` throughout.

Adding a `margin` to the bottom preserves the baseline of the object; i.e., extra space is added to the depth of the final box. If you use `margin*` instead, then the baseline is shifted downwards by the specified amount. The difference can be clearly seen in the next example: in the first box “`\LaTeX`” remains on the baseline, while the second box is raised by a total of $6 + 10 = 16$ bp. To prove this visually, a blue rule of that height was added to the example.

```

\usepackage{xcolor,adjustbox}
L\_adjustbox{padding=4,frame}{\colorbox{gray}{\LaTeX}}\_
M\_adjustbox{padding*=3 6,frame,margin*=0 10 0 0}
  {\colorbox{gray}{\LaTeX}}%
\llap{\color{blue}\rule{1pt}{16bp}\quad}\_R

```

8-2-19

Vertical separation

If an `\adjustbox` is placed on its own between paragraphs and needs some vertical separation, then one way to achieve that is to use some appropriate `margin*` setting. However, it is not easy to find the right values because of the subtle interactions between large objects and nearby paragraphs. Usually a better way is therefore to use the `vspace` key. This key takes one or two dimensions as its value and issues `\vspace` commands before and after the box. If you specify only one dimension, then it is used above and below. Alternatively you can use `vspace*`. The difference is that the added space does not vanish at page or column breaks.

Different horizontal alignments

If the `\adjustbox` is horizontally aligned with other material in a paragraph, then there are a couple of keys available for making adjustments. With `lap` you can specify that the box overlaps to the left or right by a certain *amount*. Specifying a negative value overlaps to the left. There also exist `llap` and `rlap`, which are shorthands for setting the value to `-\width` or `\width`, respectively. Technically, all of this could be achieved with `trim` or `Trim` keys, but the keys here offer a more natural interface for the task at hand.

With `raise` you can raise (or lower) the box by a specific *amount*. This key accepts in fact up to three dimensions, the other two being *height* and *depth*, with which you can tell `\LaTeX` that the resulting box should have these vertical sizes regardless of its contents. This implements the same behavior as `\LaTeX`'s `\raisebox` command with its optional arguments.

Finally, with the `valign` key you can shift the box vertically through a different method. This key expects a single letter as its value. `T`, `M`, and `B` align at the very top, the middle, or the very bottom, respectively. In contrast `t`, `m`, and `b` take into

account the height and depth of a normal line; e.g., `t` keeps a certain amount above the baseline, which usually aligns much better if the boxes contain text.

The next example shows the `lap`, `raise`, and `valign` keys in action. Note the frames that indicate the space taken up by the boxes as far as L^AT_EX is concerned.

This `\text` is `\raised` while the following `\text` is top-aligned. Note that the word “This” sticks out to the left due to the chosen box settings.

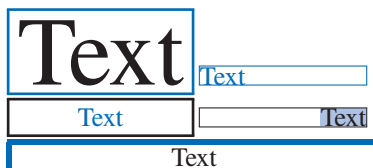
8-2-20

```
\usepackage{adjustbox} \setlength\parindent{0pt}
\noindent
\adjustbox{lap=-.5\Width,frame}{This text} is
\adjustbox{frame,raise=1ex}{raised} while the
following \adjustbox{valign=T,frame}{text} is top-aligned.

Note that the word ‘‘This’’ sticks out to the left due to
the chosen box settings.
```

With the `width` key you can set a box to a specific width, but this scales the contents to that width. For images this is usually what is wanted, but if your box contains text, then this is often not desired. The `adjustbox` package therefore offers a number of keys to set the width and the inner alignment. With `left`, `center`, and `right` you can specify a width as the value and then get a box in which the material is set at its normal size and aligned as specified. If you leave out the value, then a default of `\linewidth` is used. If the content is wider than the specified width, it sticks out on the opposite side (in the case of `center` equally on both sides) without causing an overfull box warning.

Boxes of a specific width



8-2-21

```
\usepackage{xcolor,adjustbox}
\noindent\adjustbox{width=22mm,cfbox=blue 1pt}{Text}
\adjustbox{color=blue,left=22mm,frame}{Text} \\
\adjustbox{fgcolor=blue,center=22mm,fbox=1pt}{Text}
\adjustbox{bgcolor=blue!30,right=22mm,frame}{Text} \\
\adjustbox{center,cfbox=blue 2pt 1pt}{Text}
```

Instead of `left` or `right`, you can use `inner` and `outer`, which align towards the inner and the outer margin, respectively; i.e., different on recto and verso pages. There are in fact a further set of keys that allow aligning the box with respect to the page without regard to the galley margins. They carry names such as `pagecenter`, `pageleft`, etc. For details take a look at the package documentation.

In the previous example we also used some of the keys that deal with coloring. To use them, you have to load an appropriate color package: we used `xcolor` above. You can specify a color for the complete content (`color`), or just for the background (`bgcolor`), or for the textual material not including things like frames (`fgcolor`). As you can see, the background refers to the original box background, so with keys such as `center` it gives rather questionable results.

Coloring the leaves

To color the frame individually, you can use `cframe` or `cfbox`. They work like `frame` and `fbox` with an additional first argument denoting the color, and as we have seen earlier, `rndframe` also offers a way to color its frame.

A possible
pitfall when
using `\begin`

Because of the dual nature of `\adjustbox` as a command and as the start code for an environment (because that is what `\begin{adjustbox}` internally calls), it is impossible to make use of the convention used by some people to avoid `\begin/\end` in a definition and simply write

```
\newenvironment{myenv}{\adjustbox{...}}
{\endadjustbox}
```

because then `\adjustbox` would be interpreted as the command, picking up the first nonspace token of the environment body as its second argument. What you can do instead is to write

```
\newenvironment{myenv}{\begin{adjustbox}{...}}
{\end{adjustbox}}
```

but it would be better to use the `\newadjustboxenv` declaration discussed below.

Presetting some keys

With so many keys at your fingertips you may want to preset some of them to be used throughout all or most of your document. This is possible with `\adjustboxset` declarations and by defining commands or environments with keys preset.

```
\adjustboxset*{key/value list}
```

If the declaration is used, then the *key/value list* is added to a future invocation of `\adjustbox` or its environment form. It is additive; i.e., several declarations in succession are combined. However, if you use an empty list argument, then the list becomes empty. Group structures are obeyed; thus, if you use it inside some environment, it reverts to its previous state when the end is reached. To set global defaults you therefore should use the declaration in the preamble of your document.

The difference between normal and starred form is that the latter adds the *key/value list* after the user-supplied keys, whereas the normal former adds them in front so that they can be overwritten by the first argument of `\adjustbox`. A further difference is that if there are several starred declarations, then they are executed in reverse order; i.e., the last one comes first after those supplied when using `\adjustbox`.

```
\newadjustboxcmd{cmd}[num][default]{key/value list}
\newadjustboxenv{name}[num][default]{key/value list}
```

With `\newadjustboxcmd` you define a new command *cmd* that behaves in the same way as an `\adjustbox` that has the *key/value list* as its first argument. Your newly defined command can have *num* arguments with the first being possibly optional using *default* as its default (just like `\newcommand`). These arguments can be used inside the *key/value list* to allow for some controlled variation. The `\newadjustboxenv` works in the same way but produces an environment.

8-2-22



```
\usepackage{xcolor,adjustbox}
\newadjustboxcmd{\myfbox}[1][.4pt]{angle=20,cfbox=blue #1}
\myfbox{Test} and \myfbox[2pt]{Test}
```

Besides using `\newadjustbox..` you can redefine or provide a definition if it does not already exist or overwrite whatever is there, by using the usual prefixes instead of `\newadjustbox..`, i.e., `\renew..`, `\provide..`, or `\declare..`, for both command or environment form.

Image inclusion revisited

The `graphicx` package, which was the starting point for `adjustbox`, already supports the key/value syntax but with only a small subset of the keys discussed above. As most of them are useful for graphics inclusion, `adjustbox` makes them available in a number of different ways.

```
\adjustimage{key/value list}{image}
\adjincludegraphics[key/value list]{image}
```

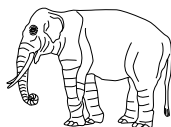
The `\adjustimage` command is basically a shorthand for writing

```
\adjustbox{key/value list}{\includegraphics{image}}
```

though somewhat differently implemented. This allows you to make use of all `adjustbox` keys because the included graphic is simply roped in as the only object inside the box. The `\adjincludegraphics` is similar, except that with this command the *key/value list* is optional, mimicking the syntax model of `\includegraphics`. As a simple example, we define `\fitimage` to load and resize an image to the current line length, i.e., to the width of the `\subcaptionbox` in this case.



(a) A large cat



(b) A small elephant

```
\usepackage{subcaption,adjustbox}
\newcommand{\fitimage}[1]
    {\adjustimage{width=\linewidth}{#1}}
\begin{figure}
  \centering
  \subcaptionbox{A large cat}[.4\linewidth]
    {\fitimage{cat}}
  \qqquad
  \subcaptionbox{A small elephant}[.4\linewidth]
    {\fitimage{elephant}}
  \caption{Two animals}
\end{figure}
```

8-2-23

Figure 1: Two animals

The package also offers the option `Export`, which alters `\includegraphics` to behave like `\adjincludegraphics`, but it is probably better for new documents to simply use `\adjustimage` throughout.

*Changing the
`\includegraphics`
behavior*

8.3 Producing (fairly) portable line graphics

If we take a very conservative and narrow point of view, then fully portable graphics in \LaTeX are only those that are built from boxes, lines, and characters (i.e., standard \LaTeX 's `picture` environment), because everything else requires some backend functionality that may not be available in all situations.

However, these days certain graphic functions are available across virtually every backend (even though sometimes with different implementations and interfaces). It is therefore legitimate to consider packages that build upon a restricted set of those (and hide the implementation details from the user) as being portable for all practical purposes. Such a package is `pict2e`, a reimplement and extension of \LaTeX 's `picture` environment functionality using backend features for better quality. This is followed by a brief discussion of `bxeepic`, which is a reimplement of the original `epic` (the first attempt to improve on \LaTeX 's `picture` environment in a portable way). We finish the section with a package that can produce only one type of graphics: QR-codes for use with mobile devices.

8.3.1 A kernel `picture` environment enhancement

According to the \LaTeX manual, `picture` mode coordinates are multiples of `\unitlength` (default value `1pt`), i.e., you had to write `\put(2,3){...}`. This allows easy scaling of pictures by changing the value of `\unitlength`, but makes it fairly complicated to base coordinate values on real dimensions, e.g., solving tasks such as “put this object at $\frac{2}{3}$ of the `\paperheight`”.

In 2020 the \LaTeX kernel was therefore extended¹ to also support length expressions as coordinate values, which allows you to write things like

```
\put(\textwidth-2in,0.4\textheight){...}
```

as an alternative to simple numbers that are then multiplied by `\unitlength`. Of course, coordinates written in that way do not change if you alter the `\unitlength`; thus, scaling by altering its value is no longer possible with such pictures. Also note that you can only use expressions with lengths; `\put(1+1,3)` is not supported.

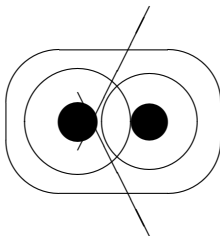
8.3.2 `pict2e` — An extension of \LaTeX 's `picture` environment

Standard \LaTeX 's `picture` environment was originally designed in the mid-eighties to be fully independent of any particulars of the final output device, and to achieve this it drew the graphics using characters taken from special fonts (containing line segments at various angles, etc.). In other words, for \TeX a line-graphic was reduced to the question of typesetting and positioning “characters”, something that is well understood by the engine.

The downside is obvious: with fonts containing small part of the graphics as characters, only a restricted set of graphics can be drawn. Lines and vectors were available in only a small number of angles, circles could be drawn in only a few discrete sizes, etc.

¹This functionality was originally devised by Heiko Oberdiek in his `picture` package.

The following example exhibits some of these limitations. Here, the circle and disk on the left are too small (without producing any warning), and the `\line` commands produce errors because the required slope is not available. Compare this result to Example 8-3-2, which shows the correct output — it is strikingly different.



8-3-1

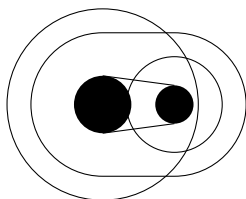
```
\begin{picture}(0,0)
  \put(0,0){\circle{80}} \put(0,0){\circle*{24}}
  \put(30,0){\circle{40}} \put(30,0){\circle*{16}}
  \put(15,0){\oval(90,60)}
  \put(0,12){\line(15,-2){30}}\put(0,-12){\line(15,2){30}}
\end{picture}
```

To work around these restrictions different approaches were tried. Systems like \PCTeX used tiny dots instead of line segments, but that required a lot of memory and was extremely slow. Other approaches used features of the target output device. This usually produces good results, but the graphics would then work only with that particular output device and not if rendered on the screen or for a different printer (i.e., the same problem one had with loading external graphics or using color: each output device had its own method). Thus, when $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$ was designed, the idea was born to build a package that defines an abstract syntax hiding the different approaches used by the output devices in a way similar to what was done for loading graphics with the graphics package or selecting colors with color package.

This package, called `pict2e`, was already announced in Leslie Lamport's book [106] and in the first edition of the \LaTeX Companion, but for a long time it remained vaporware. Finally in 2003 a first implementation was undertaken by Hubert G  lein and Rolf Niepraschk (later joined by Josef Tkadlec).¹

In its present form it implements all of the original `picture` environment commands and enhances them in various directions, and with its support for all the major output devices, it offers in effect a device-independent approach to line-graphics.

To exhibit the improvements, the following example repeats Example 8-3-1, except that now `pict2e` has been loaded and `\maxovalrad` has been used. Now all elements appear correctly as specified.



8-3-2

```
\usepackage{pict2e} \renewcommand{\maxovalrad}{30pt}
\begin{picture}(0,0)
  \put(0,0){\circle{80}} \put(0,0){\circle*{24}}
  \put(30,0){\circle{40}} \put(30,0){\circle*{16}}
  \put(15,0){\oval(90,60)}
  \put(0,12){\line(15,-2){30}}\put(0,-12){\line(15,2){30}}
\end{picture}
```

In the remainder of the section we look at all `picture` environment commands that are enhanced by `pict2e` and explain the benefits of using the package instead of the basic definitions.

¹ A earlier but restricted predecessor was David Carlisle's `pspicture` package.

Extended or changed commands

Line thickness
improvements

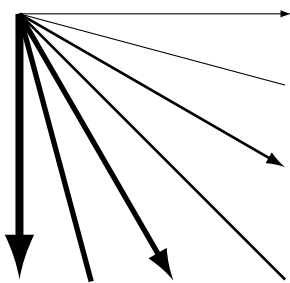
With `pict2e`, the `\thinlines`, `\thicklines`, and `\linethickness` commands alter the thickness of *all* lines, including slanted lines and circular arcs. In standard \LaTeX `\linethickness` applies only to horizontal and vertical lines but not to sloped lines or any other object.

<code>\line(x,y){length}</code>	<code>\vector(x,y){length}</code>
---------------------------------	-----------------------------------

Lines or vectors are drawn by specifying a slope x,y and the *length* of the line or vector as measured in horizontal direction (unless the slope was vertical, i.e., $(0, \pm 1)$, in which case the *length* specifies the vertical direction).

`\line` and `\vector`
extensions

In standard \LaTeX , only a very limited set of slopes are supported: $-6 \leq x, y \leq +6$ for lines and only -4 to $+4$ for vectors. Furthermore, the line thickness is restricted to two possible values. With `pict2e` these restrictions are basically gone, and you can specify decimal numbers in the range of $-1000 \leq x, y \leq +1000$ for the slope.

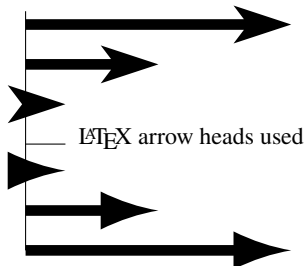


```
\usepackage{pict2e}
\begin{picture}(100,100)
\put(0,100){\vector(1,0){102.5}}
\put(0,100){\line(966,-259){100}} \linethickness{1pt}
\put(0,100){\vector(866,-500){100}}
\put(0,100){\line(1,-1){100}} \linethickness{2pt}
\put(0,100){\vector(500,-866){58}}
\put(0,100){\line(259,-966){27}} \linethickness{3pt}
\put(0,100){\vector(0,-1){100}}
\end{picture}
```

8-3-3

Notice that the length of a vector is the same as that of a line; i.e., the vector tip ends where the line would end. If the specified length is smaller than the vector head, only the head is drawn.

With `pict2e` you are offered two different styles of arrow heads: the default style for \LaTeX as shown in the previous example and the style used by PSTricks shown below. The latter is activated by using the option `pstarrows`. The command `\ltxarrows` and `\pstarrows` can be used inside the picture if you want both types of heads.

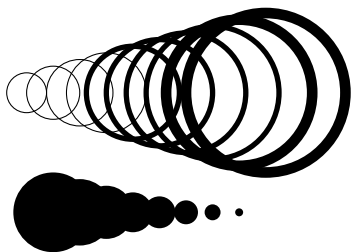


```
\usepackage[pstarrows]{pict2e}
\begin{picture}(100,90)
\put(0,0){\line(0,1){90}} % vertical at 0,0
\put(0,40){\line(1,0){15}} % horizontal at 0,40
\put(20,40){\small \LaTeX{} arrow heads used}
\linethickness{4pt}
\put(0,55){\vector(1,0){15}} \put(0,70){\vector(1,0){50}}
\put(0,85){\vector(1,0){100}}
\ltxarrows
\put(0,30){\vector(1,0){15}} \put(0,15){\vector(1,0){50}}
\put(0,0){\vector(1,0){100}}
\end{picture}
```

8-3-4

<code>\circle{<i>diameter</i>}</code>	<code>\circle*{<i>diameter</i>}</code>
---------------------------------------	--

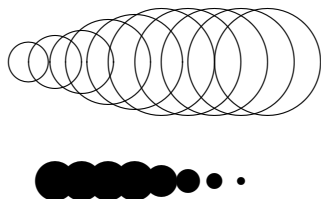
With the `\circle` command you can produce circles; the starred form produces filled circles. The `pict2e` package allows you to do this for any *diameter* and any line thickness. \circle extensions



8-3-5

```
\usepackage{pict2e}
\begin{picture}(100,100)(-35,-25)
  \put(-30,65){\circle{15}} \put(-20,65){\circle{20}}
  \put(-10,65){\circle{25}} \put (0,65){\circle{30}}
  \linethickness{2pt}
  \put (10,65){\circle{35}} \put (20,65){\circle{40}}
  \put (30,65){\circle{45}} \put (40,65){\circle{50}}
  \linethickness{4pt}
  \put (50,65){\circle{55}} \put (60,65){\circle{60}}
  \put(-20,20){\circle*{30}} \put(-10,20){\circle*{25}}
  \put (0,20){\circle*{20}} \put( 10,20){\circle*{15}}
  \put (20,20){\circle*{12}} \put (30,20){\circle*{9}}
  \put (40,20){\circle*{6}} \put (50,20){\circle*{3}}
\end{picture}
```

Trying the same example with standard \LaTeX shows severe restrictions: only a small number of discrete sizes are available (all others are then drawn at the same size), and arbitrary changes to the line thickness are also ignored:



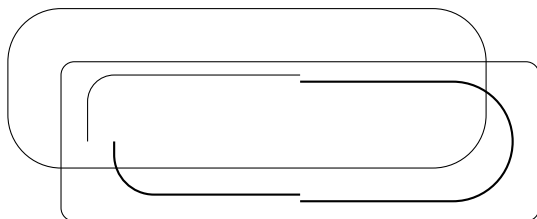
8-3-6

```
% without pict2e package
\begin{picture}(100,100)(-35,-25)
  \put(-30,65){\circle{15}} \put(-20,65){\circle{20}}
  \put(-10,65){\circle{25}} \put (0,65){\circle{30}}
  \linethickness{2pt}
  \put (10,65){\circle{35}} \put (20,65){\circle{40}}
  \put (30,65){\circle{45}} \put (40,65){\circle{50}}
  \linethickness{4pt}
  \put (50,65){\circle{55}} \put (60,65){\circle{60}}
  ... further text omitted ...
```

<code>\oval(<i>x,y</i>) [part]</code> (standard \LaTeX)	<code>\oval[<i>radius</i>](<i>x,y</i>) [part]</code> (pict2e)
---	---

In standard \LaTeX you have no control over the shape of an oval besides its size. The corners always consist of a quarter circle of the largest possible radius that still fits (out of the discrete sizes available). With `pict2e`, this limitation is removed, and so arbitrary large rounded corners are in principle possible. To influence the size of the rounded corners, an optional *radius* argument was added (default 20pt). This argument accepts either a dimension or a plain (decimal) number. In the latter case the value is multiplied with `\unitlength` to obtain the final size to use. The difference is that an explicit dimension always produces identical-looking corners, while a plain number scales with a change in `\unitlength`; thus, both approaches have their use cases. The default value of 20pt can also be altered by redefining `\maxovalrad`. \oval extensions

The optional *part* argument allows you to draw only one or two corner parts of the oval as shown in the next example.



```
\usepackage{pict2e}
\begin{picture}(200,120)
\put(90,40){\oval(180,60)}
\put(110,20){\oval[5](180,60)}
\put(110,20){\oval[10](160,50)[t1]}
\thicklines
\put(110,20){\oval[15](140,40)[b1]}
\put(110,20){\oval[8mm](160,45)[r]}
\end{picture}
```

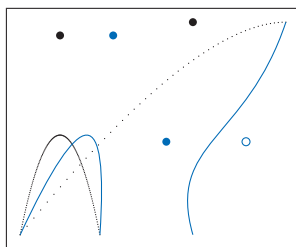
8-3-7

```
\qbezier[num](x_1,y_1)(x_2,y_2)(x_3,y_3)
\cbezier[num](x_1,y_1)(x_2,y_2)(x_3,y_3)(x_4,y_4)    (pict2e only)
```

*Bézier curve
extensions*

With standard \LaTeX the `\qbezier` command plots a quadratic Bézier curve given by the three control points (x_i, y_i) . If the optional *num* argument is specified, then the plot consists of that many dots (but not more than `\qbeziermax` with a default value of 250). If *num* is absent or zero, the curve is made as smooth as possible by plotting it with the largest number of dots allowed, i.e., `\qbeziermax`.

With `pict2e`, omitting *num* has the effect that the low-level drawing routines of the output device are used; i.e., `\qbeziermax` is ignored, and a smooth curve is drawn. The package also adds `\cbezier` to draw a cubic Bézier curve. This is not available with standard \LaTeX .



```
\usepackage{xcolor,pict2e}
\NewDocumentCommand\ShowControls{r}{d{}}
{\put(#1){\circle*{3}}\IfNoValueF{#2}{\put(#2){\circle{3}}}}
\begin{picture}(110,90)
\put(0,0){\framebox(110,90){}}
\qbezier[150](5,5)(20,80)(35,5) \ShowControls(20,80)
\qbezier[50](5,5)(70,85)(105,85) \ShowControls(70,85)
\color{blue}
\qbezier[0](5,5)(40,80)(35,5) \ShowControls(40,80)
\cbezier(70,5)(60,40)(90,40)(105,85)\ShowControls(60,40)(90,40)
\end{picture}
```

8-3-8

All other commands for use in \LaTeX 's `picture` environment, such as `\dashbox`, `\framebox`, `\makebox`, `\multput`, `\put`, and `\shortstack`, are unaltered and act as described in the \LaTeX book.

New commands

Above we already saw one new command offered by `pict2e` — `\cbezier`. In addition, a number of other useful extensions are offered, which are described in this section.

The most natural way to define a line is specifying just the two endpoints and letting the system calculate the necessary slope and length. In standard \LaTeX `\line` does not work like this because the lines are made up by small line segments with a limited number of slopes. Thus, allowing the specification of arbitrary endpoints would nearly always result in slopes for which no line segment is available. With `pict2e` that restriction is gone, so this natural input specification can be offered as well. With `\line` already in use the name `\Line` was chosen.

<code>\Line(x_1,y_1)(x_2,y_2)</code>	<code>\polyline(x_1,y_1)\cdots(x_n,y_n)</code>
--	---

The `\Line` command draws a line between the two endpoints, and `\polyline` draws lines between all of its control points. Because start- and endpoints are explicitly defined in this case, you need not use `\put` when placing the lines.

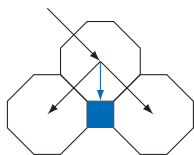
You can alter the way line endings are drawn by specifying `\buttcap` (default method); `\roundcap`, which adds a half-circle at the endpoint; or `\squarecap`, which adds a half-square. For joint paths, e.g., in `\polyline`, the default is called `\miterjoin`, and you can change the method of joining to `\roundjoin`, which uses `\roundcap` on the inner joins of each segment, or `\beveljoin`, which produces the convex hull of the segment endpoints. Especially with larger line thickness you sometimes get better results by changing to a different method. Example 8-3-13 on page 611 shows some of them in action.

<code>\Vector(x_1,y_1)(x_2,y_2)</code>	<code>\polyvector(x_1,y_1)\cdots(x_n,y_n)</code>
--	---

The `\Vector` and `\polyvector` extensions work like `\Line` and `\polyline` described above except that they place an arrow head at the end of each line segment, making it possible to define vectors using the more natural input syntax as well; see Example 8-3-9 below.

<code>\polygon(x_1,y_1)\cdots(x_n,y_n)</code>	<code>\polygon*(x_1,y_1)\cdots(x_n,y_n)</code>
--	---

The `\polygon` command works like `\polyline` but additionally draws a final line from (x_n,y_n) back to (x_1,y_1) to produce a closed curve. The star form fills the resulting polygon in the current color (or black if color is not used).

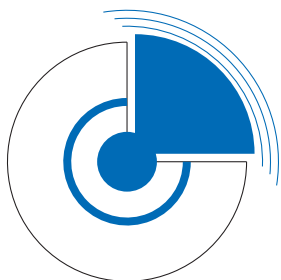


```
\usepackage{xcolor,pict2e}
\newcommand\octet{\begin{picture}(0,0)(15,15)
  \polygon(0,10)(0,20)(10,30)(20,30)(30,20)(30,10)(20,0)(10,0)
\end{picture}}
\begin{picture}(80,60)
  \polyvector(20,60)(40,40)(60,20) \Vector(40,40)(20,20)
  \put(20,20){\octet} \put(40,40){\octet} \put(60,20){\octet}
  \color{blue} \polygon*(35,15)(45,15)(45,25)(35,25)
  \Vector(40,40)(40,25)
\end{picture}
```

8-3-9

```
\arc[angle1,angle2]{radius}    \arc*[angle1,angle2]{radius}
```

These two commands are generalizations of `\circle` and `\circle*` and allow you to draw the circle segment between the two angles (default is 0,360, i.e., a full circle). Angle 0 starts at three o'clock and is specified counterclockwise. Note that the commands expect the circle *radius* as an argument and not its *diameter*.



```
\usepackage{xcolor,pict2e} \setlength\unitlength{1.5pt}
\begin{picture}(200,120)
\put(0,0){\arc[90,360]{30}} \polyline(0,30)(0,0)(30,0)
\color{blue}
\put(2,2){\arc*[0,90]{30}} \put(0,0){\arc[-2,92]{34}}
\put(0,0){\arc[-5,95]{36}} \put(0,0){\arc[-9,99]{38}}
\linethickness{3pt}
\put(0,0){\arc[90,360]{15}} \put(0,0){\circle*{15}}
\end{picture}
```

8-3-10

The package also offers some low-level support for drawing by exposing the output device path operators with commands such as `\moveto`, `\lineto`, `\strokepath`, etc. For details refer to the package documentation.

8.3.3 bxeepic — A differently enhanced picture environment

Standard \LaTeX 's `picture` environment (especially in conjunction with the `pict2e` reimplementation) allows you to generate line-style graphics of arbitrary complexity through basic commands for drawing lines, vectors, quarter-circles, and Bézier curves. However, creating complex graphics, although possible, requires a lot of manual effort. Most of its picture-drawing commands require explicit specification of coordinates for every *object*, which makes alterations later very difficult.

Given that the basic `\line` command had several drawbacks and was very non-intuitive to use, people started early on to develop alternatives. One of the most successful and influential packages back then was `epic` by Sunil Podar, which provided a powerful high-level user interface to the `picture` environment [166]. Its main aim was to reduce the amount of manual calculations required to specify the layout of *objects*. In this way, the `epic` package made it possible to produce sophisticated pictures with less effort than before even though it inherited the restrictions of the original `picture` environment commands.

As a result, some of the functions took a long time to complete, or the output was not of very high quality. This situation improved with the `eepic` package, written by Conrad Kwok, which is an extension of both \LaTeX and `epic`. It overcame most of the limitations by using `\special` commands for drawing that were understood by only some output devices.

In short, it traded device independence for better-looking output, but given that `dvips`, the predominant output device in the nineties, supported these `\special` commands, it was often used for high-quality line graphics. However, when `pdf \LaTeX`

*epic — the first
solution*

*eepic — the
device-dependent
implementation of
epic*

started to become popular and people used that program to produce PDF directly, the situation changed once more, because `eeepic` stopped working in this workflow.

In 2010 YATO Takayuki then provided a new implementation of most of the `epic` commands in a package called `bxeepic`, this time using `pict2e` as the underlying interface. While his implementation does not cover all of the features of `epic` and `eeepic`, it is complete enough so that you will seldom find old documents using the original packages that cannot be processed by exchanging them with the new package. In fact, when loading `bxeepic`, the packages `epic` and `eeepic` are both marked as “already loaded”. Thus if your document later loads another package that itself requests, say, `epic`, it does not replace the improved versions with `epic`’s original code.

*bxeepic — the
successor based on
pict2e*

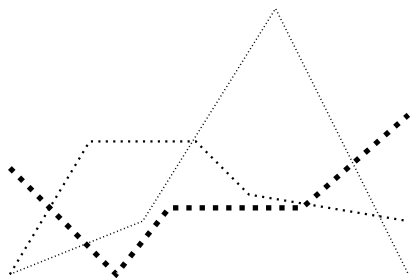
The remainder of this section gives you an overview of the most useful commands of the `bxeepic` package. There are a number of other special features not discussed, but if you have needs that go beyond simple line drawings, it is better to switch to a full-blown graphic system that can be used with \LaTeX such as `tikz` [189] discussed in Section 8.5 on page 631.

High-level line commands (originating from `epic` or `eeepic`)

The `bxeepic` package implements most of `epic`’s powerful line-drawing commands that offer a simple input syntax. In particular, these commands take only the coordinates of the end points, thus eliminating the other steps involved in specifying a line.

```
\dottedline[dotchar]{dotgap}(x1,y1) · · · (xn,yn)
```

The `\dottedline` command connects the specified points by drawing a dotted line between each pair of coordinates. At least two points must be defined. The dotted line is drawn with an inter-dot gap as specified in the mandatory argument `dotgap` (in `\unitlength`). Because the number of dots to be plotted must be an integer, the inter-dot gap may not come out exactly as specified.



```
\usepackage{bxeepic} \setlength{\unitlength}{1pt}
\begin{picture}(150,100)(0,0)
  \dottedline{1}(0,0)(50,20)(100,100)(150,0)
  \thicklines
  \dottedline{2}(0,0)(30,50)(70,50)(90,30)(150,20)
  \linethickness{2pt}
  \dottedline{3}(0,40)(40,0)(60,25)(110,25)(150,60)
\end{picture}
```

8-3-11

For small sizes of line thickness (e.g., `\thinlines`) the dots are represented as rectangles; larger dots are then little squares. This is slightly different from the original `epic` implementation, which used squares throughout and also supported an optional `dotchar` argument to specify alternative material for plotting. The latter is still parsed but not used by `bxeepic`.


```
\dashline[stretch]{dashlength}(x_1,y_1) \cdots (x_n,y_n)
```

The `\dashline` command connects the specified points by drawing a dashed line between each pair of coordinates. At least two points must be specified. The mandatory parameter *dashlength* determines the length of each dash. In *epic* there was a second optional argument specifying the gap between the dots that are used to construct the dash. In *bxeepic*, this argument is parsed but ignored; thus, it always produces solid-looking dashes.

```

_____      _____      ——— \usepackage{bxeepic} \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
_____      _____      \begin{picture}(55,22)(0,-2)
_____      _____      \dashline{10}(0,20)(45,20)      \dashline{15}(0,16)(45,16)
_____      _____      \dashline[-30]{7}(0,12)(45,12) \dashline[+10]{7}(0,8)(45,8)
_____      _____      \thicklines
_____      _____      \dashline[+20]{5}(0,4)(45,4)      \dashline[+45]{5}(0,0)(45,0)
_____      _____      \end{picture}
```

8-3-12

In the definition of the `\dashline` command, the optional *stretch* parameter must be an integer between -100 and ∞ . It indicates the percentage by which the number of dashes is increased (*stretch* > 0) or reduced (*stretch* < 0). If *stretch* is zero, the minimum number of dashes compatible with an approximately equal spacing relative to the empty space between the dashes is used. The idea behind the *stretch* percentage parameter is that if several dashed lines of different lengths are being drawn, then all dashed lines with identical *stretch* values have a similar visual appearance. The default settings for the *stretch* percentage can be changed by redefining the command `\dashlinestretch`:

```
\renewcommand\dashlinestretch{-50} % Only integers permitted
```

Its value defines the increase or reduction that is applied to all subsequent `\dashline` commands except for those where the *stretch* parameter is explicitly specified as the first optional argument.

```
\drawline[stretch](x_1,y_1) \cdots (x_n,y_n)      \path(x_1,y_1) \cdots (x_n,y_n)
```

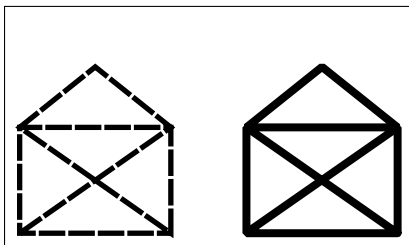
The `\drawline` command connects the given points by drawing a line between each pair of coordinates; i.e., it provides a similar functionality as `\polyline` under a different name. In the original *epic* implementation it used line segments of the closest slope available in the line fonts of \LaTeX , so depending on the requested slope, it could look rather jagged. With *bxeepic*, this is no longer the case.

The optional *stretch* parameter (not available with `\polyline`) is similar to the one described for the `\dashline` command. If *stretch* is negative, you get a dashed line; with zero (default) or a positive value, it is a solid line.¹ A possible advantage of `\polyline` is that it obeys any declaration altering the line segment endings, which can sometimes be useful.

¹With *epic* a positive value meant that shorter line segments got used, which improved the result at the cost of memory and computing time, but with the *bxeepic* implementation there is no difference.

The `\path` command is the same as `\drawline` without the optional argument.

8-3-13

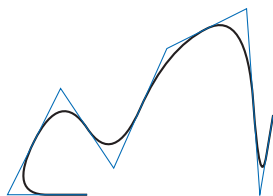


```
\usepackage{bxeepic} \setlength{\unitlength}{2mm}
\begin{picture}(27,16)(-1,-1)
  \path(-1,-1)(-1,15)(26,15)(26,-1)(-1,-1)
  \linethickness{2pt}
  \drawline[-10](0,0)(10,7)(5,11)
    (0,7)(10,0)(10,7)(0,7)(0,0)(10,0)
  \linethickness{3pt} \roundcap \beveljoin
  \polyline(15.1,0.1)(25,7)(20,11)
    (15,7)(25,0)(25,7)(15,7)(15,0)(25,0)
\end{picture}
```

`\spline(x_1, y_1) \cdots (x_n, y_n)`

The `\spline` command draws a curve that passes through only the first and last points. All other points act as control points only. For illustration the example also shows a `\path` command with the same coordinates.

8-3-14

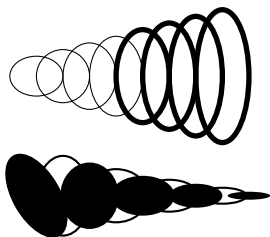


```
\usepackage{xcolor,bxeepic}
\begin{picture}(100,80)
  \thicklines
  \spline(30,0)(0,0)(20,40)(40,10)(60,55)(90,70)(95,0)(100,30)
  \color{blue} \thinlines
  \path (30,0)(0,0)(20,40)(40,10)(60,55)(90,70)(95,0)(100,30)
\end{picture}
```

`\ellipse{x-diameter}{y-diameter}` `\ellipse*{x-diameter}{y-diameter}`

In analogy to the `\circle` and `\circle*` commands of standard \LaTeX or `pict2e`, the `\ellipse` and `\ellipse*` commands draw a hollow or filled ellipse using the specified *x-diameter* and *y-diameter* parameters. With only these two parameters available you cannot draw ellipses that are sloped (without rotating the resulting object yourself afterwards). The example below is a variation of Example 8-3-5 from page 605 that used circles.

8-3-15

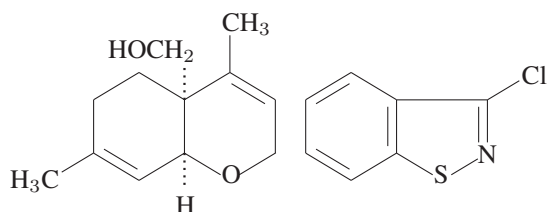


```
\usepackage{bxeepic,graphicx}
\begin{picture}(100,100)(-35,-25)
  \put(-30,65){\ellipse{20}{15}} \put(-20,65){\ellipse{20}{20}}
  \put(-10,65){\ellipse{20}{25}} \put(0,65){\ellipse{20}{30}}
  \linethickness{2pt}
  \put(10,65){\ellipse{20}{35}} \put(20,65){\ellipse{20}{40}}
  \put(30,65){\ellipse{20}{45}} \put(40,65){\ellipse{20}{50}}
  \thicklines \put(-30,20){\rotatebox{30}{\ellipse*{18}{35}}}
  \put(-20,20){\ellipse{20}{30}} \put(-10,20){\ellipse*{22}{25}}
  \put(0,20){\ellipse{24}{20}} \put(10,20){\ellipse*{24}{15}}
  \put(20,20){\ellipse{22}{12}} \put(30,20){\ellipse*{20}{9}}
  \put(40,20){\ellipse{18}{6}} \put(50,20){\ellipse*{16}{3}}
\end{picture}
```

8.3.4 Special-purpose languages

Building on \LaTeX 's `picture` environment, possibly extended with a package such as `epic`, `eepic`, or `bxeepic`, several package authors have implemented high-level user interfaces intended to make entering graphical information more straightforward and less error prone by adopting a syntax that is more familiar to the end user in a particular application domain. Some of the systems are quite complex (the *\LaTeX Graphics Companion* [55] describes several of them in detail). In this section we merely give a flavor of what is possible in this area by showing one example from the $\text{\X}\text{\TeX}$ bundle by FUJITA Shinsaku for drawing chemical diagrams (see [50, 51] or [55, Chapter 6]).

By using command names inspired by standard nomenclature known to practitioners in the field, complex formulas can be entered simply. In the following example, we use the `hetarom` subpackage, designed for specifying the structure of vertical heterocyclic compounds.



```
\usepackage{bxeepic,hetarom}
\decaheterov[af]{4==0}
  {1==CH$_3$;6==H$_3$C;9A==H;%
   {{10}A}==\lmoiety{HOCH$_2$}}
\hspace*{-15mm}
\nonaheterov[bjge]{1==S;2==N}{3==Cl}
```

8-3-16

8.3.5 qrcode — Generating Quick Response codes

Today's use of smartphones and tablets has given rise to a widespread appearance of Quick Response (QR) codes. These are very special graphics used to encode arbitrary information into a square matrix of black and white pixels. You scan such a QR code with your mobile device camera, and it shows you the encoded data and — if recognized — offers to process it, e.g., open a hyperlink in the smartphone browser.

While QR codes can encode any type of information up to several kilobytes, the most common usage is to provide easy access to hyperlinks. Try it out with your smartphone on the example below: the first QR code should take you directly to the publication page of the \LaTeX Project website, the second could have been made by a modern Lord Peter Wimsey, and the third is Miss Vane's answer in `draft` mode.¹



8-3-17

As shown in Example 8-3-18 on the facing page, such QR codes can be easily produced by \LaTeX with the help of the `qrcode` package written by Anders Hendrickson.

¹That is, it is not a valid QR code and should not lead anywhere.

This package offers only two commands with the following syntax:

```
\qrcode*[key/value list]{information}   \qrset{key/value list}
```

The *information* to be encoded is given in the mandatory argument of `\qrcode`. With the help of the *key/value list* it can be influenced, e.g., by specifying a `height` for the matrix as we did in the previous example to give them both a height of 15mm.

Other useful keys define the spacing around the matrix, i.e., `tight` (default) or `padding` (extra wide space as mandated by the standard; but usually not needed because the code is usually anyway separated); the `level` of error correction (values L, M, Q, or H for low, medium, quality, and high); `version` (value between 1 and 40) defining the number of pixels used and whether a `link` (default) or `nolink` should be made. The `level` and `version` are normally automatically chosen based on the required size and the amount of *information* that has to be encoded, but to ensure a consistent look and feel or to force a high error correction rate explicit values can be selected.

As most use cases involve encoding hyperlinks, the default assumption is that the *information* is a URL string. If the `hyperref` package is also loaded, then `\qrcode` automatically tries to make a hyperlink to this target, which makes little sense if you have encoded a marriage proposal into the QR code. The starred form of the command (or the key `nolink`) prevents this behavior.

Automatic target
links

With the `\qrset` declaration one can set specific values and overwrite the defaults to avoid the need for using the optional argument on each `\qrcode` occurrence.

Declaring defaults

The *information* is processed in a semi-verbatim way in which special characters such as `#`, `$`, `&`, `^`, `_`, `~`, and `%` are automatically recognized without the need to escape them. However, if you need `\`, `{`, or `}`, you need to precede each of them with a backslash as shown in the next example. To encode a line break, the command `\?` can be used. As always, verbatim works only on the top-level, i.e., not inside the argument of another command, so if we want to place a frame around the QR code with `\fbox`, then all special characters need escaping to be correctly understood.

Use of
special symbols



```
\usepackage{qrcode}
\qrset{nolink,padding,level=Q,version=5}
\qrcode[height=15mm]{# $ & ^ _ ~ \% \? \\\ \{ \} } \quad
\fbox{\qrcode[height=15mm]{\# \$ \& \^ \_ \~ \% \? \\\ \{ \} }}
```

8-3-18

Calculating the QR codes takes time, and if you make heavy use of them in a document, it can noticeably slow down the processing. To help with that issue, the package offers two mechanisms. For one it remembers any calculated QR matrix for fast regeneration across \LaTeX runs and reuses the result unless you use the package option `forget`. Furthermore, by specifying the package option `draft`, no QR code encoding happens, and instead a dummy is inserted in the requested size. When specifying `final` (default), the codes are calculated. Finally, you can give `nolinks`, which is equivalent to specifying `nolink` on each `\qrcode` instance.

Package options

8.4 Flexible boxes for multiple purposes

Standard L^AT_EX offers basic box manipulations through the `graphics` and `graphicx` packages. This is further extended through `adjustbox`, but basically boxes remain boxes, and you are confined to adding a simple border, scaling, rotating, or clipping and that's about it.

If you needed other special enhancements, then you had to turn to the few specialized packages available for adding shadows (e.g., `shadow` by Mauro Orlandini), a frame around a minipage (`boxedminipage` by Scott Pakin), or the more comprehensive `fancybox` package by Timothy Van Zandt offering shadows, oval frames, and a few other features, but on the whole the available options are somewhat limited.

This only changed fairly recently when Thomas Sturm introduced his `tcolorbox` package, which sets out to be a one-stop for any kind of complex box presentation including features like splitting them across pages or other goodies.¹

The package comes with a huge manual [186] of more than 500 pages. We therefore limit ourselves to show only the main features that are useful in many situations. Thus, if you miss some special feature or find that your desired layout is difficult to achieve, check out that manual, because chances are high that your needs are covered there through additional keys or commands not covered in this book.

8.4.1 `tcolorbox` — The basic usage

The core functionality of `tcolorbox` is provided by an environment that builds a box object based on the settings given in its optional *key/value list* argument. We discuss various useful keys throughout this section.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[key/value list] top \tcblower bottom \end{tcolorbox}
```

Due to the fact that this is implemented as an environment, the body can contain verbatim material as shown below. As a special feature you can split the body into a top and bottom part using `\tcblower`. If used without the optional *key/value list*, we get the following result:

A paragraph before with two lines of text to show the indentation and the measure.

A `tcolorbox` can be subdivided into two parts.

If `\tcblower` is given then anything below forms the lower part of the box.

And a paragraph after the box.

```
\usepackage{tcolorbox}
```

A paragraph before with two lines of text to show the indentation and the measure.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}
```

A `\texttt{tcolorbox}` can be subdivided into two parts.

```
\tcblower
```

If `\verb|\tcblower|` is given then anything below forms the lower part of the box.

```
\end{tcolorbox}
```

And a paragraph after the box.

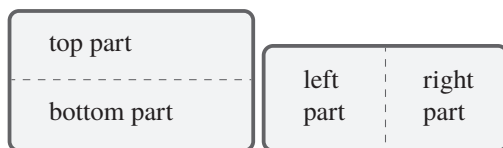
8-4-1

¹Another popular general-purpose box package that was developed during the last decade is `mdframed` by Marco Daniel and Elke Schubert. However, in comparison the `tcolorbox` package is

Instead or in addition to `\tcblower`, you can use `\tcbline`. It too produces a line looking like the separation line produced by `\tcblower`. The difference is that it does not start a new part of the box, which is important if you use a box style in which the upper and lower parts use different formatting parameters. There is also a `\tcbline*` variant, which is suppressed if the box is broken across pages and the break happens at that point.

By default the `tcolorbox` is a display object, as wide as the current line with some separation before and after. The values for the vertical separation can be explicitly given with the keys `before_skip` and `after_skip` or can be explicitly suppressed with `nobeforeafter` in which case the box can be used in horizontal context as shown in the next example. In such a situation you normally want to explicitly set the width of the box to something different than its default full width. The example also shows that the content can be split horizontally by adding the key `sidebyside`.

8-4-2

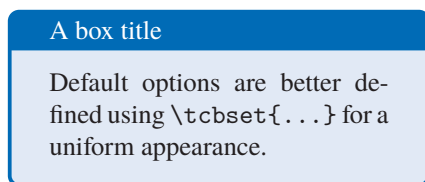


```
\usepackage{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[nobeforeafter,
                  width=.45\linewidth]
  top part \tcblower bottom part
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[nobeforeafter,sidebyside,
                  width=.45\linewidth]
  left part \tcblower right part
\end{tcolorbox}
```

If you use the `sidebyside` key, then there are several additional keys to influence the appearance, e.g., the ratio between the two regions, the relative positioning of the material, etc. So make sure you check out the details in the manual in case you are interested in this kind of layout.

Keys that you regularly apply to all your boxes do not need to be set in the *key/value list* argument. Instead, you can set them as defaults with the help of a `\tcbset` declaration. For instance, we set the frame and background color for all boxes to some level of blue and only give a box title on the individual box.

8-4-3



```
\usepackage{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{colback=blue!10!white, colframe=blue}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A box title]
  Default options are better defined using
  \verb=\tcbset{...}= for a uniform appearance.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
\tcbbox[key/value list]{content}
```

The other basic structure is the `\tcbbox` command, which creates a colored box similar to that of a `tcolorbox` environment but with the width matching the size of the

more comprehensive in several areas, and `mdframed` is no longer actively maintained and as a result has a number of bugs and issues that have been unresolved for several years.

content. It supports most of the keys of `tcolorbox` but is always unbreakable across pages and does not offer a split into an upper and lower part via `\tcblower`. Due to the fact that the *content* is received as an argument, it does not support `\verb` either. However, for simple horizontally oriented material it can be a useful alternative.

Outer box geometry

We have already seen examples of keys that influence the geometry and placement of the box, but there are plenty more. You can expect that for any spatial dimension that could reasonably be given a name, there is a key with which you can set it.

Verticals

As mentioned before the space above and below the box is set with the keys `before_skip` and `after_skip`. In most cases the box height is automatically calculated from the content, but with the `height` key you can set it explicitly, if that is necessary.

Horizontals

Horizontally you can set the width of the box (the default is `\linewidth` minus the space taken up by the following keys). The keys `left_skip` and `right_skip` set the space to the left or the right (default `0pt`), which is why we get a full-width box if none of these keys is used.

Bounding box maneuvers

With the keys `grow_to_left_by` or `grow_to_right_by` you can alter the width calculation and make the box stick out to the left or right. That is, the box gets larger by the specified amount, but at the same time the code pretends that it has the same size as before; i.e., it overlaps with other material in that area.

There are also several other keys that alter the size occupied by the box (as far as \LaTeX is concerned). For example, `enlarge_by` adds some space to all four sides of the box. If you need this kind of feature, you will find plenty more such keys altering only some sides of the bounding box.

Inner box geometry

Spacing and padding

For the inner box geometry, there are another dozen keys to play with: if there is a title given for the box, then `toptitle` and `bottomtitle` denote the space left above and below that title.

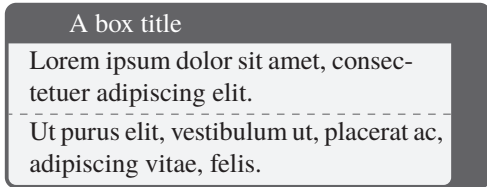
The keys `left`, `right`, `top`, and `bottom` denote the space between the outer box (e.g., the frame) and the box content, and `middle` sets the space above and below the dividing line if `\tcblower` is used. To each of them the value of `boxsep` is added, providing a common extra padding that consistently adds or subtracts space in these places.

In fact, `left` and `right` are only shorthands for setting several specific keys to the same value: `left` sets `lefttitle`, `leftupper`, `leftlower`; `right` sets `righttitle`, `rightupper`, `rightlower`. Thus, if you want different margins in the title box or one of the other compartments, use the individual keys with different values.

Setting the rule width

The rules that make up the border of the box can have different widths (including zero), and the keys to set them are not surprisingly called `leftrule`, `rightrule`, `toprule`, `bottomrule`, and `titlerule`. The next example exhibits a selection from the above keys, set to somewhat random values to show their effects.

8-4-4



```
\usepackage{lipsum,tcolorbox}
\tcbset{top=0pt,bottom=0pt,left=5pt,lefttitle=20pt,
        rightlower=0pt,rightrule=15pt}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A box title,middle=0pt]
  \lipsum[1][1] \tcblower \lipsum[1][2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Note that even though we set various values to 0pt, there is still some space remaining, which is due to `boxsep` being added (default 1mm).

There are several more keys that deal with specific aspects of the inner geometry. A particularly useful one is `size`, which sets all geometry parameters except for the width to predefined values. Allowed values for `size` are `normal` (default settings), `title` (use values for title also in other box parts; see Example 8-4-15), `small` (slightly less padding, Example 8-4-23), `fbox` (spacing and rule width like `\fbox`; Example 8-4-16), `tight` (no padding), and `minimal` (no padding, no rules).

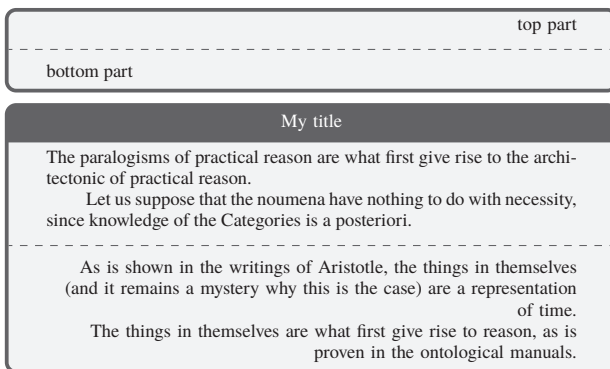
Text alignment

By default, text in a `tcolorbox` is justified to the box measures. With the keys `halign`, `halign_lower`, and `halign_title` you can alter this alignment for the box components. Allowed values are `justify` (the default), `left`, `right`, and `center`. They all support hyphenation when applied to ordinary text, similar to the behavior of the `ragged2e` package.

In addition, there are `flush_left`, `flush_right`, and `flush_center`, which act like `\raggedright`, `\raggedleft`, and `\centering`, i.e., only hyphenate if a word is wider than the line width. For ordinary text the nonflush versions often give a more balanced look albeit with more hyphenated words.

By default `tcolorbox` formats each box part like a `\parbox`, which gives you a slightly different paragraph formatting result than what you get on the main galley. For example, paragraphs inside show no indentation. This can be changed by setting the key `parbox` to `false` as done in the next example, where the second paragraph in the top part therefore shows an indentation.

8-4-5



```
\usepackage{kantlipsum,tcolorbox}
\tcbset{top=0pt,middle=1mm,bottom=0pt}
\scriptsize
\begin{tcolorbox}[halign=right]
  top part \tcblower bottom part
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[parbox=false,
  halign title=center,
  halign lower=right,title=My title]
  \kant[1][2] \par \kant[2][1]
  \tcblower
  \kant[3][1] \par \kant[6][1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```


Vertical alignment

By default `tcolorbox` boxes grow vertically as necessary so that the content comfortably fits in. If, however, the vertical size is set to a fixed value using `height` (or in a poster application), then specifying a vertical alignment with `valign` or `valign_lower` may be necessary. Supported values are `top`, `center`, `bottom`, and `scale`. The latter one scales the content to fit the available space distorting the content along the way and is therefore seldom useful.

Color and fonts

There are several keys that allow you to alter the fonts used and color the frame and background of the different parts of a `tcolorbox`. Most of them are shown in one or the other example.

Font attributes

For fonts there is `fonttitle`, `fontupper`, and `fontlower` to specify font attributes for the respective part of the `tcolorbox`. For example, to get bold sans serif titles you could specify `\sffamily\bfseries` as the value for `fonttitle`.

Coloring components

For coloring there are many more keys: `coltitle`, `colupper`, and `collower` are for coloring the fonts in the different parts. There is also a short-hand `coltext` for setting the previous two keys to the same value. For coloring background parts you can use `colbacktitle`, `colbackupper`, `colbacklower`, or `colback` (using the same color for all parts), and for the coloring frames there is `colframe`.

Altering corners

By default the corners of a `tcolorbox` are rounded, but this can be easily changed for all or some of the corners using the `sharp_corners` key. Without a value (or the value `all`) all corners are sharpened. By using `northwest`, `northeast`, `southwest`, or `southeast` as the value, you alter one corner. This can be repeatedly done, but this gets a bit tedious. For that reason there are also values for altering two corners in one go, i.e., `north`, `east`, `south`, `west`, `downhill`, and `uphill`.

To make a sharp corner round again (for example, when the default got changed) use the `rounded_corners` key, which accepts the same values. Thus, the fastest way to make a single corner rounded is to use `sharp_corners` without a value and then undo it for one corner as shown in the third box of the example.

A box with one sharp corner

A box with two opposite sharp corners

A box with just one rounded corner at the bottom right

```
\usepackage{tcolorbox}
\footnotesize
\begin{tcolorbox}[sharp corners=northwest]
  A box with one sharp corner \end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[sharp corners=downhill]
  A box with two opposite sharp corners \end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[sharp corners,rounded corners=southeast]
  A box with just one rounded corner at the bottom right
\end{tcolorbox}
```

8-4-6

If dropped shadows are used (as discussed below), then the shadow shapes follow the shapes of the corners as one would expect. But there is also a style key,

`sharpish_corners`, which produces sharp corners but with the shadows slightly rounded.¹

8.4.2 Extending `tcolorbox` through libraries

The functionality covered by `tcolorbox` is huge, and for better organization some of it is placed into libraries that are available only on demand through a package option or alternatively through a `\tcbuselibrary` declaration in the preamble. In this book we partly cover `skins`, `breakable`, `vignette`, and `poster` with a few examples.

However, there are many more libraries to explore, for example, `listings`, `listingsutf8`, and `minted` (alternative libraries for displaying listings), `theorems` (boxed theorems), `fitting` (adjust content size to available space), `xparse` (use extended command and environment declarations of \LaTeX , previously implemented in the `xparse` package), and `documentation` (for documenting \LaTeX source code). For details of their functionalities refer to the package manual [186].

Skins and styles — altering the look and feel

When `tcolorbox` draws its boxes, it can use different drawing engines that offer more or less sophistication at the cost of processing time. This allows for different layouts, and these are organized in so-called skins that are essentially style definitions for the various parts of a `tcolorbox` combined with selecting the background drawing machinery.

Most skins use `tikz` for drawing in which case a large number of additional keys are made available that all expect `tikz` key settings as their value and thus require braces around the value to hide the inner equal signs and commas. We give only one example here as a teaser — consult the manual [186] if you are not satisfied with the default skins and want to design your own layouts beyond the possibilities discussed in this section.

In the next example we use the `enhanced` skin and apply the `interior_style` key (which expects one or more `tikz` keys as its value) to color the background in red turning to white from left to right. Because this `enhanced` skin is not available by default, we have to load the `skins` library in order to use it.

Interior style change

Here the background

color changes from red (gray) to white.

```

\usepackage{tcolorbox} \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\tcbset{skin=enhanced,colframe=blue!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
interior style={left color=red,right color=white}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[halign lower=center,title=Interior style change]
Here the background \tcblower color changes
from red (gray) to white.
\end{tcolorbox}

```

8-4-7

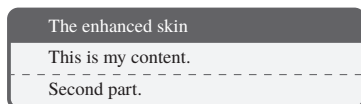
The following examples then show all the skins that become available when the `skins` library is loaded. You can apply them either via `skin=<name>` or by just using

¹It is somewhat surprising that this is a “style” key that does not accept a value to indicate individual corners.

(*name*) as a style key. In the latter case, often some additional style and geometry changes are made, which is usually preferable. For example, using `skin=beamer` instead of `beamer` would not automatically provide you with shadows. All examples use the following preamble code, which is not shown to save a bit of space:

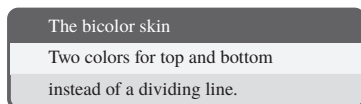
```
\usepackage[skins]{tcolorbox}           % load package and library
\tcbset{top=0pt,middle=0pt,bottom=0pt} % Shorten the example size
\scriptsize                             % Use in the example body
```

There is no visible difference between the default layout and `enhanced`, but the latter uses `tikz` for drawing and thus supports many additional keys as explained above. It is therefore a natural choice when you make adjustments.



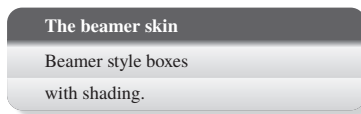
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=The enhanced skin]
  This is my content. \tcblower Second part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

8-4-8



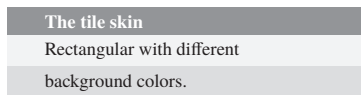
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor,title=The bicolor skin]
  Two colors for top and bottom \tcblower
  instead of a dividing line.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

8-4-9



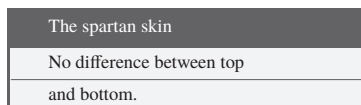
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,title=The beamer skin]
  Beamer style boxes \tcblower with shading.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

8-4-10



```
\begin{tcolorbox}[tile,title=The tile skin]
  Rectangular with different \tcblower background colors.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

8-4-11



```
\begin{tcolorbox}[spartan,title=The spartan skin]
  No difference between top \tcblower and bottom.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

8-4-12

Beware of white
text on white
background

The `empty` skin is a bit special because by default you end up with white text on a white background in the title. This therefore needs some adjustment through altering either the font or the background color.

The empty skin

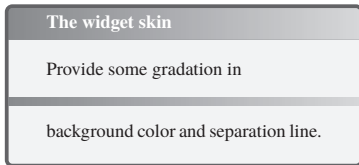
By default the title would be white on white, hence the adjustment!

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[empty,title=The empty skin,coltitle=blue]
  By default the title would be white on \tcblower
  white, hence the adjustment!
\end{tcolorbox}
```

8-4-13

In the above examples we reduced the vertical spacing to make the examples a bit shorter. For the next and final skin provided we cannot do that, because its separation line requires that the middle distance has a positive value.

8-4-14



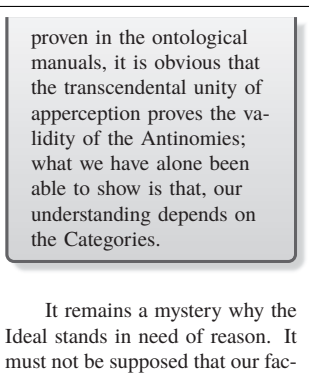
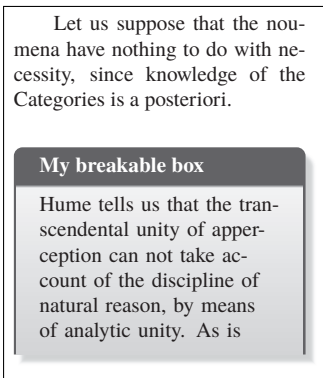
```
\usepackage[skins]{tcolorbox}
\scriptsize
\begin{tcolorbox}[widget,title=The widget skin]
  Provide some gradation in \tcblower
  background color and separation line.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Breakable and unbreakable boxes

One of the nice features of `tcolorbox` is the ability to automatically break `tcolorbox` environments across several pages. To enable this feature you have to load the `breakable` library and also use the key `breakable` on the environment (or inside `\tcbsset`).

If the `tcolorbox` gets broken across pages we end up with a first and a last part and zero or more middle parts (if the content spans more than two pages). Each of these parts can get different visual treatment that be set up manually, but it is usually simpler to make use of one of the skins defined in the `skins` library for this. In the next example we use the skin `beamer`. With the default skin the box would still be broken across the page, but each part would be fully surrounded by a frame.

8-4-15



```
\usepackage{kantlipsum,tcolorbox}
\tcbuselibrary{breakable,skins}
\footnotesize
\kant[2][1]
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,breakable,
  size=title,halign=left,
  title=My breakable box]
  \kant[2][2-3]
\end{tcolorbox}
\kant[2][4-5]
```

If you have generally enabled breakable boxes (i.e., with `\tcbsset`), you can make individual environments unbreakable again by using the key `unbreakable`.

For the common use cases, that is all you need to learn about breakable boxes, but for special situations there are many keys available that help you change the look and feel or alter the points where the break is taken.¹ For this consult the appropriate section of the manual.

¹Especially when using breakable boxes inside a `multicols` environment, you may have to provide some hints when column balancing is involved.

Title box maneuvers

Up to now all our examples showed a title box with the same width as the overall `tcolorbox` and only varied in `titlefont`, `coltitle`, or `colbacktitle`. However, when using one of the `tikz`-based skins, much more complicated layouts become possible. We give only one example here; many more and the corresponding keys that can be used are given in the `tcolorbox` manual. So take a look there if you want to design some fancy headers for your boxes.

A box with the title forming its own box.

Something fancy

```
\usepackage[skins]{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=Something fancy,
  attach boxed title to top right
  = {xshift=3mm,yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm},
  boxed title style={size=fbox,colback=blue}]
  A box with the title forming its own box.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

8-4-16

As you will have guessed there are several other `attach_boxed_title_to...` keys to place the title in any of the corners or centered at the top or bottom, e.g., `attach_boxed_title_to_bottom_left`.

Adding Shadows

We have already seen that the `beamer` key adds a dropped shadow to the box. You can get this kind of layout with any skin that uses `tikz` for drawing by specifying the key `drop_shadow`, which is in fact a short-hand for `drop_shadow_southeast` — so yes, there are keys for various other directions as well as for fuzzy shadows or lifted shadows. We show the latter in the next example. To remove any shadow that has been previously set up, use `no_shadow` as a key.

A fuzzy shadow

This is a right-aligned `tcolorbox` with a shadow.

```
\usepackage[skins]{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,drop fuzzy shadow,halign=right,
  boxrule=0.4pt,title=A fuzzy shadow]
  This is a right-aligned tcolorbox with a shadow.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

A lifted shadow

This is another `tcolorbox` with an unusual shadow and three lines of text.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,drop lifted shadow=blue,
  boxrule=0.4pt,sharp corners=south,
  halign=left,title=A lifted shadow]
  This is another tcolorbox with an unusual shadow
  and three lines of text.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

8-4-17

Given that lifted shadows do not look pleasing when the box has rounded corners, we also applied `sharp_corners` and changed the width of the frame to a thin line. There are also large and small versions of the lifted shadows as well as some keys to define generic shadows; consult the manual for details on those.

Adding border lines

Instead of providing a frame around the boxes, you may want to just add some line at one or the other side. Given that `tcolorboxes` can break across pages, this gives you an easy way to produce “change bars” to highlight updates in the text.

In the example we suppress any interior style settings with `interior_hidden` and omit the usual frame with `frame_hidden`. We then put a blue line (actually a line of dots because of the value `dotted`) to the left of the material using `borderline_west`.¹ You can use such keys repeatedly by altering the offset specified in the second brace group of its value, which we did when placing the black vertical rule. Dropping predefined borderlines is done with `no_borderline`.

Text before the boxed paragraph.

■ Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis.

8-4-18

... and text after.

```
\usepackage{lipsum,tcolorbox} \tcbuselibrary{skins}
Text before the boxed paragraph.
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,frame hidden,
  interior hidden,top=0pt,bottom=0pt,boxsep=0pt,
  borderline west={3pt}{0pt}{blue,dotted},
  borderline west={2pt}{4pt}{black}]
  \lipsum[1][1-2]
\end{tcolorbox} \ldots{} and text after.
```

Adding overlays, watermarks, and other backgrounds

When a `tcolorbox` is typeset, the frame is drawn first. With the help of so-called overlays, this frame and the canvas of the box can then be decorated by adding graphical code (usually `tikz` commands) to a number of keys. Finally, the box content is drawn on top. A special application of this are watermarks or background pictures for which we give an example below. To explore the full power of overlays refer to the package documentation.

With `watermark_graphics` we specify a graphic file to be loaded into the background, `watermark_opacity` defines its visibility, and with `watermark_zoom` we specify that it should not be used at its natural size but stretched to fill a certain proportion of the box (the aspect ratio is maintained, though). Thus, specifying 0.9 in the example results in the bird nearly touching the top and the bottom, but due to its proportion, there is ample space to the left and right.

A graphic as a watermark

This shows a box with the \LaTeX hummingbird logo as a background picture.

8-4-19

```
\usepackage{skins}{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
  title=A graphic as a watermark,
  watermark graphics=latex-logo.pdf,
  watermark opacity=0.2,
  watermark zoom=0.9]
  This shows a box with the \LaTeX hummingbird logo
  as a background picture.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

¹You probably have guessed that there are also `borderline` keys for the north, west, and south edges and shorthands for horizontal and vertical border lines.

*Producing a canvas
for the box*

Instead of zooming, you can use `watermark_{stretch}=\langle fraction \rangle`, which does not respect aspect ratio and stretches the width and height separately to both match the $\langle fraction \rangle$ specified as the key value. If used on the bird above, it would end up being horizontally stretched apart.

As an alternative, there is `watermark_{overzoom}=\langle fraction \rangle`, which is useful if you want the graphic to touch all four sides of the box, while still maintaining the aspect ratio. If used, then the graphic is scaled as necessary, and then all parts outside of the box are clipped. If used in the previous example (again with a value of 0.9), the beak would nearly touch the side, while the top and bottom parts of the bird would get outside of the box and are therefore clipped. Thus, this key is most useful if the graphics is more “ornamental” and it is irrelevant if some of it gets clipped when it is used to fill the whole box. In that case typically a value of 1.0 is used to fill all of the background.

Textual watermarks

Of course, you can use ordinary text instead of a graphic as a watermark specified with the `watermark_{text}` key. It obeys zooming and stretching though the latter is seldom a good idea because it may distort the text considerably. By default, the color of the watermark text is a mix of the frame and the background color otherwise used for the box. However, with `watermark_{color}` you can set it to a specific value.

Text as a watermark

This shows a box with the text in the background. Make it light so that main text remains readable!

```
\usepackage[skins]{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=Text as a watermark,
                  watermark text=\textbf{Example},
                  watermark color=blue,watermark opacity=0.1,
                  watermark stretch=0.95]

    This shows a box with the text in the background.
    Make it light so that main text remains readable!
\end{tcolorbox}
```

8-4-20

Hyperlinks to internal and external resources

In conjunction with the `hyperref` package (see Section 2.4.6 on page 96), boxes or part of boxes generated with `tcolorbox` and its variants can function as targets for hyperlinks or as clickable regions. Note that all the hyperlink keys discussed below require `enhanced` or one of the other more powerful skins to work; they are not supported with the basic drawing engine.

To make the whole box an active hyperlink to a `\label` in the document (or a `label` key in another `tcolorbox` as discussed below) use the key `hyperref` and specify the label string as the value. To make it a link to a `\hypertarget`, use the `hyperlink` key instead.

If you wish to link to an external Uniform Resource Locator (URL), use the key `hyperurl`, which works like `hyperref`'s `\href` or `\url`, but make the whole `tcolorbox` the active link. There is also a `hyperurl*` key, which allows you to also set `hyperref` options for the external link, e.g., on which page to open a PDF, etc.

As an example we make a box that links to the Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network (CTAN) location of the `tcolorbox` documentation.

8-4-21

View manual section

§10.10 Hyper Option Keys

```
\usepackage{hyperref,tcolorbox} \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=View manual section,
  hyperurl=http://www.ctan.org/pkg/tcolorbox]
  \S 10.10 Hyper Option Keys
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Instead of making the whole box a single active link area, you can limit the area to the interior or the title by using `hyperurlinterior` or `hyperurltitle` and similarly for the other link types.

All of the above keys make the `tcolorbox` or parts of it an active link area so that clicking it would take you to the desired location. It is, however, also possible to add an anchor to the box so that it can serve as a link target for `hyperlink` of another box or a `\hyperlink` command from the `hyperref` package. This is done by adding a `hypertarget` key with the target name given as the value.

Formatting and text changes based on verso/recto pages

If you use the same kind of `tcolorbox` repeatedly, you may want to alter its looks, depending on its placement on a recto or verso page. This is possible with the help of the `ifoddpage` key. It expects two brace groups as its value containing keys to apply to *odd pages* and *even pages*, respectively.

The test for the page number is done by using labels, which means that it is costly and requires at least two \LaTeX runs if a change moves a box from one page to the next. As a side effect, this key cannot be used in `\tcbset` but must be applied directly on the environment in a `\newtcolorbox` declaration, which is what we have done in the next example. The full syntax for this declaration is discussed in the next section.

You can see that the title box appears on the left on even pages and on the right on odd ones. We also use the command `\tcbifoddpage` inside the environment body to provide alternative text based on the page the box ends up on.

8-4-22

Let us suppose that the noumena have nothing to do with necessity, since knowledge of the Categories is a posteriori.

Example
even example

The things in themselves are what first give rise to reason, as is proven

6

in the ontological manuals.

Another
odd example

By virtue of natural reason, our ampliative judgements would thereby be made to contradict, in all theoretical sciences, the pure employment of

7

```
\usepackage{kantlipsum,tcolorbox}
\tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newtcolorbox{exa}[1]{beamer,bottom=0mm,title=#1,%
  if odd page={attach boxed title to top right
    ={xshift=-2mm,yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm}}}%
    {attach boxed title to top left
    ={xshift=2mm,yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm}}}
\footnotesize
\kant[2][1] \begin{exa}{Example}
  \tcbifoddpage{odd}{even} example \end{exa}
\kant[6][1] \begin{exa}{Another}
  \tcbifoddpage{odd}{even} example \end{exa}
\kant[10]
```

As an alternative you can use `ifoddpageoroneside`. In a document using the `twoside` class option it behaves like `ifoddpage`, but in a one-sided document it always selects the first brace group, i.e., the one for odd pages.

*Behavior with
breakable boxes*

If you use the `breakable` library and a box is split across pages, then all parts are formatted based on the page value of the first box part. If that is not desired, you can use the starred forms of the keys, which are made available by this library.

As shown, you can also use the command `\tc bifoddpage`¹ inside the text. However, because testing for page “oddness” is costly, it is accurately done only if one of the above selection keys is present. If not, you can add the key `check odd page` to force the testing.

8.4.3 Defining new `tcolorbox` environments and commands

In Example 8-4-22 we have already made use of the powerful possibility to define your own named `tcolorbox` environments or commands. Here is now the full syntax for such declarations.

```
\newtcolorbox[counter-setup]{env}[args][default]{key/value list}
```

To define your own `tcolorbox` environments use `\newtcolorbox`. The environment name is specified in the first mandatory *env* argument, and the keys that you want to apply are given in the *key/value list*.

The environment can have up to nine arguments, and the first one can be made optional with a *default* value; i.e., the *args* and *default* arguments are like those from `\newenvironment`. Such arguments can be used to provide values for some of the keys in your *key/value list*. For instance, in Example 8-4-22 we used one argument to hold the title text. Another useful approach is to use the optional argument to extend the *key/value list*, e.g.,

```
\newtcolorbox{env}[2][ ]{title=#2,key/value list,#1}
```

The optional *counter-setup* argument is used for setting up automatic numbering if that is desired; see the discussion on the next page for details.

```
\newtcbbox[counter-setup]\cmd[args][default]{key/value list}
```

If you want to declare your own `\tcbbox` commands, use `\newtcbbox`. The arguments for the declaration are the same as those for `\newtcolorbox`, but because the last argument of your new command is the box content, your new `\cmd` has *args* + 1 arguments in total, and you can therefore only have up to eight other arguments.

In the example below we use another library to define a `\key` command for showing keyboard keys within ordinary text. Further details on the `vignette` library and the associated keys can be found in the documentation.

One interesting aspect of the `\key` definition is the use of the optional argument to support changing the color scheme of the frame and background. By default various shades of gray are used, but by specifying the optional argument, a different color (in the example black) can be used occasionally. Also worth noting is the use

¹Or `\tc bifoddpageoroneside` to also distinguish between two- and one-sided documents.

of the `on_line` key to align the box text with the surroundings. Related keys are `tcbox_raise_base` to raise it to the baseline and `tcbox_raise` allowing you to raise the box by a specific amount given as value.

Use `\Cntrl-X` followed by `f` to open a file. `\usepackage[vignette]{tcolorbox}`
`\newtcbox\key[1][white]{enhanced,sharp corners,on line,`
`size=small,left=0pt,right=0pt,boxsep=1pt,fontupper=\footnotesize,`
`colback=#1!10,colframe=#1!50!black,boxrule=3pt,underlay vignette}`
 Use `\key{Cntrl-X}` followed by `\key[black]{f}` to open a file.

Numbering newly defined color boxes

It is possible to automatically number newly defined colored boxes. This counter mechanism has to be set up before other keys are evaluated. It is therefore placed into its own optional argument in front of the mandatory argument that holds the environment or command name.

In there you can use the key `auto_counter` together with many others, such as `number_within`, that influence the numbering. Instead of auto-numbering, which uses its own counter, one can make use of an existing \LaTeX counter with `use_counter` or the counter of a different color box command with `use_counter_from`.

To typeset the current counter value, for example in the `title` key, the command `\thetcbcounter` is available.

To reference the counter you can specify a label with the key `label` and then refer to it using `\ref`, etc. If the `nameref` package is loaded, you can define an arbitrary reference text for use with `\nameref`.¹

In the next example we define a new environment for making boxes containing examples. We give it one optional argument (for additional key/value pairs if needed) and two mandatory arguments: the example title and a label to reference it. This assumes that we usually have to reference such examples. If one only occasionally needs a label, it would be better to use just the title as a mandatory argument and provide the `label` key in the optional argument when needed. To show the optional argument in action we apply `sharp_corners` when using the environment.

5 A Section

Exa : Title text

This exhibits a numbered tcolor-box.

The example on page 6 is numbered 5. Its title is “Title text”.

```
\usepackage{nameref,tcolorbox}
\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section,
               number format=\alph]{exabox}[3] []
{colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,
 fonttitle=\bfseries,label=#3,nameref=#2,
 title=Exa~\thetcbcounter: #2,#1}

\section{A Section}
\begin{exabox}[sharp corners=south]{Title text}{exa:A}
  This exhibits a numbered tcolorbox.
\end{exabox}

The example on page \pageref{exa:A} is numbered
\ref{exa:A}. Its title is ‘\nameref{exa:A}’.
```

¹ If that package is not loaded, the key has no effect.

8.4.4 Special tcolorbox applications

Given that the documentation for the tcolorbox package has more than 500 pages, you can imagine that it describes many interesting applications that we cannot discuss in the available space, e.g., displaying listings, boxed theorems, creation of exercises with solutions, and many more. If you are interested in any of them, refer to package manual [186] for details.

For this book we conclude with three applications: how to turn tcolorboxes into float objects, how to make rasters of boxes, and how to produce large professional-looking posters with the package.

Turning the boxes into floats

It is, of course, possible to use a tcolorbox environment within a float environment. However, the package also supports turning such boxes directly into float objects. This is done with the key float (for single column floats) or float* (for spanning floats). The value, if given, specifies the allowed positions. If not present, a default (which can be altered with floatplacement) is used.

If a tcolorbox is turned into a float, any settings for before_skip and after_skip are ignored (after all, the box is not embedded in the normal galley). Instead, the code given as the value for the every_float key is inserted before the floating box: a typical value would be \centering.



```
\usepackage{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{every float=\centering, % center floats
        floatplacement=tp}      % only top and
                                % page by default

\section{The \LaTeX\ logo}
A while back \LaTeX{} moved away from a lion
to a hummingbird designed by Paulo Cereda.
```

6 The \LaTeX logo

A while back \LaTeX moved away from a lion to a hummingbird designed by Paulo Cereda.

```
\tcbbox[float=t,size=small,title=A new logo]
{\includegraphics[width=.3\textwidth]
 {latex-logo.pdf}}
```

8-4-25

Clearly this box floated to the top, but there is no automatic numbering or an entry in the list of figures for it. To achieve this in a simple manner blend_into is provided, which can be used in the optional counter-setup argument of \newtcolorbox and \newtcbbox declarations, e.g.,

```
\newtcbbox[blend into=figures]\tcbfig[2] [] {float,size=small,title=#2,#1}
```

Allowed key values are figures, tables, and with some restrictions, listings.

For your own type of floating boxes, numbering and a “List of” mechanism are, of course, also possible. You have to set up a counter as described on the preceding page and then use list_inside to specify the list that should be used (the example uses logos).

Typesetting the list is done with \tcblistof, which expects two mandatory arguments, the list-name and the title to display. By default it uses \section to

typeset the *title*. If that is not desired, you can use its optional argument to specify another method (we use `\section*` below). In this example we also force the float to the bottom of the page using `float=!b`.

List of Logos

1 A new logo 6

7 The \LaTeX logo

A while back \LaTeX moved away from a lion to a hummingbird designed by Paulo Cereda.



8-4-26

```
\usepackage{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{every float=\centering, % center floats
        floatplacement=tp}      % default top and page
\newtcbbox[auto counter,list inside=logos]
\tcbfig[2] []{float,size=small,list text=#2,
              title=\thetcbcounter: #2,#1}

\tcblistof[\section*]{logos}{List of Logos}
\section{The  $\LaTeX$  logo}
A while back  $\LaTeX$  moved away from a lion
to a hummingbird designed by Paulo Cereda.

\tcbfig[float=!b]{A new logo}
{\includegraphics[width=.4\textwidth]{
latex-logo.pdf}}
```

Raster applications

If you need several boxes arranged in some sort of two-dimensional raster, you can make use of the `raster` library. This library defines the `tcbrafter` environment, which has an optional argument to specify the number of columns you need and other aspects of the boxes inside; e.g., in the example we asked for all boxes to be of equal height. The body of the environment then consists of `tcolorbox` environments, or, if you want to nest boxes, of `tcbboxedraster` environments (containing inner `tcolorbox` environments).

A (1/1) One, one, 1, ...	B (1/2) Two
A (1/1) Three	D (2/2) Six
B (2/1) Four	
C (3/1) Five	

8-4-27

```
\usepackage{tcolorbox}
\tcbuselibrary{skins,raster}

\begin{tcbrafter}[raster columns=2,
raster equal height,
raster every box/.style=
{size=small,valign=center,halign=center,
colframe=blue!50,colback=blue!10,
title=\Alph{tcbrafternum}}
(\thetcbrafterrow/\thetcbraftercolumn)]
\begin{tcolorbox}One, one, 1, \ldots\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Two\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcbboxedraster}[raster columns=1]{blankest}
\begin{tcolorbox}Three\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Four\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Five\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbboxedraster}
\begin{tcolorbox}Six\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbrafter}
```

Current row and column numbers are available through the `tcbasterrow` and `tcbastercolumn` counters. Internally, the sequence of boxes are numbered by `tcbasternum`. You can use the values of these counters, for example in titles of the boxes, but you should not attempt to alter them, and it is important to note that they are restarted for nested rasters.

The previous example should have given you some ideas of the possibilities, but for further details you need to refer to the package documentation.

Poster applications

We conclude this section with an example using `tcolorbox` for the production of a poster, i.e., a single large page (A3 or bigger) that provides a showcase for some project by combining boxed text, graphics, and tables in an overview presentation. Especially for conferences this is often a requirement, but there are many other use cases.¹

To set things up load `tcolorbox` with the option `poster`. The actual poster content is then placed into a `tcbposter` environment, which sets up a grid to lay out boxes on the page in a regular manner. This is implemented internally using the `raster` library shown in the previous section.

The next example shows the general approach. We set up a grid with the `poster` key, which expects a list of key settings as its value. We use four rows and five columns (normally you would probably have more). The spacing between grid elements can be altered with the keys `colspacing` and `rowspacing` or with `spacing`, which sets both keys to the same value. Explicitly setting the width and height is normally not necessary (by default all space on the page is used) and mainly done here to keep the example small. During development it is useful to show the grid, so we also add `showframe`.

	col1	col2	col3	col4	col5
row1	title			graphic	
row2					
row3					
row4					

```

\usepackage[poster]{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {columns=5,rows=4, % set up raster
    spacing=1mm,             % spacing between elements
    width=140pt,height=120pt, % - normally not needed
    showframe},              % and show it
  boxes = {sharp corners=downhill,colframe=blue} ]
% content boxes ...
\posterbox[colback=blue!20]
  {name=title,column=1,span=3,row=1}{ }
\posterbox{name=graphic,column=4,span=2,
  row=1,rowspan=1.5}{ }
\end{tcbposter}

```

8-4-28

With the `boxes` key you can set up default values or all `tcolorbox` boxes inside the environment, so it acts like `\tcbset` for the poster.

¹Of course, you need to a way to print such a huge page, either by using a professional printing service or by using a program that splits it into parts that you can print and then glue together.

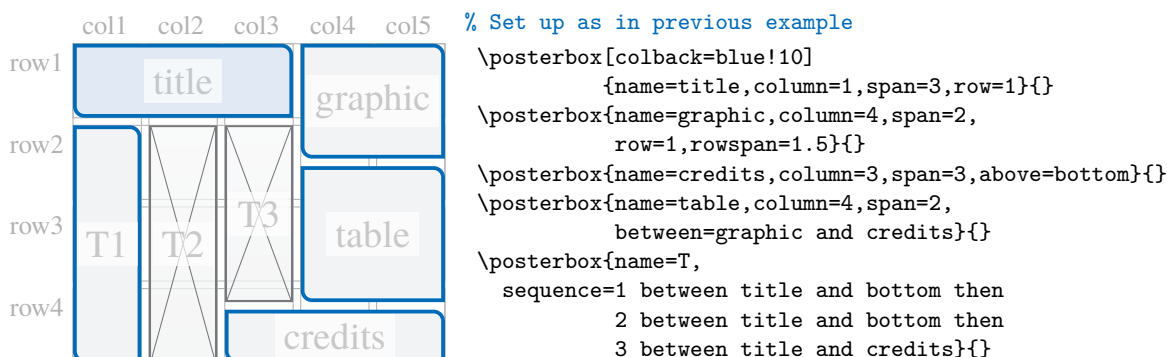
The content boxes are added with the help of `\posterbox` commands or `posterboxenv` environments, which work like `\tcbox` and `tcolorbox`, but support additional keys like `name`, `column`, etc., that are relevant for placing the box on the grid or in relation to other named boxes.

Once you decided on the grid, it is time to specify the different regions of your poster. Boxes can be placed into cells of the grid, possibly spanning a number of columns (key `span`) or a number of rows (key `rowspan`) or both. It is also possible to span parts of columns or rows; see boxes named `title` and `graphic` for examples.

Alternatively, it is possible to position boxes by specifying relations between them or the margins (they then grow depending on their content); e.g., the `credits` box is defined to be above the bottom, and you can see that its height is less than a normal grid cell. Another example is the `table` box, which is defined to be between the `graphic` and `credits` boxes automatically filling the remaining space.

Finally, you can have breakable boxes by specifying a sequence of placements (as it was done for the `T` box). The content is then poured into the different parts, one after another.

The result is shown below. Of course, the exact sizes might change when you place content into the currently empty `content` argument of the `\posterbox` commands, because at least some of the boxes are allowed to change size. In a real poster you may also prefer to use `posterboxenv` over `\posterbox`, especially if your content is rather large.



Obviously this has provided you only a first impression of the powerful application; many more details and customization possibilities are given in the `tcolorbox` manual. There is also a very nice tutorial on making posters with the package [185].

8.5 tikz — A general-purpose graphics system

In the final section of this chapter we take a brief look at `tikz` with which you can create a large variety of graphics. Unlike graphic systems such as `pstricks` or `METAPOST` discussed in [55], it does not require an external PostScript processor¹ — all

¹With `lualatex` and `luapstricks` it is to some extent possible to use `pstricks` directly.

drawing is done with \TeX commands. This has the advantage that it works with all engines and that it integrates seamlessly into the \LaTeX compilation and so allows creation of not only stand-alone graphics but also decorations, e.g., the `tcolorbox` frames discussed in Section 8.4, page ornaments, or arrows between various parts of a text, etc. It has the drawbacks that the compilation of complex plots and graphics can be slow and that the accuracy of calculations is limited and can even fail if they lead to dimensions larger than the maximal size supported by \TeX .

The `tikz` package was originally written by Till Tantau and is now maintained by Henri Menke. Since the first version in 2005 the `tikz` ecosystem has grown so much that it is quite impossible to do `tikz` justice on a few pages — already the official manual of the package [189] has more than 1300 pages, and CTAN lists more than 150 packages enhancing or making use of `tikz` — and so it is unavoidable that the following descriptions have to leave out many points and oversimplify syntax and concepts of `tikz`.

Loading additional
libraries

The functionality covered by `tikz` is huge, but not everything is loaded by default. Additional libraries to enable certain features can be loaded with one or more `\usetikzlibrary` declarations. This command takes a list of library names as its argument. Some of the examples in this section require loading libraries and so do a few in other chapters; e.g., Example 11-3-14 on page 162 that implements commutative diagrams with `tikz`.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}[key/value list]
  graphic instructions
\end{tikzpicture}
\tikz[key/value list]{graphic instructions}
```

The main
environment

Graphic instructions should be given inside the `tikzpicture` environment, which accepts an optional argument containing a list of key/value pairs to configure the graphic. It is not necessary (but possible) to declare the size of the graphic — `tikz` updates the size and the bounding box when material is added. For small graphics a command form `\tikz` is also available. The braces around the *graphic instructions* can be omitted if there is only one instruction.

Beware of the
missing semicolon

We discuss some of the available *graphic instructions* in more detail in the following. To give a short overview: they almost always start with a command and end with a semicolon. The code between both can be quite complex, and it is easy to get bracing wrong or to forget the closing semicolon. The typical error message of `tikz` in such cases is then

```
! Package tikz Error: Giving up on this path.
Did you forget a semicolon?
```

Setting keys

The `tikz` package makes extensive use of the key/value syntax. Keys that should apply to all pictures or to all drawing commands in a scope can be set as defaults with the help of a `\tikzset` declaration. With this declaration it is also possible to define new keys by combining settings into a “style”. The examples of this section won’t make much use of it because they try to show a variety of options, but in real

<i>Name</i>	<i>Explicit syntax</i>	<i>Implicit syntax</i>
canvas	(canvas cs: x=0cm,y=2pt+4pt)	(0cm,2pt+4pt)
canvas polar	(canvas polar cs: angle=30,radius=2cm)	(30:2cm)
xyz (2 coordinates)	(xyz cs: x=1,y=0.5)	(1,0.5)
xyz (3 coordinates)	(xyz cs: x=1,y=0.5,z=2)	(1,0.5,2)
xyz polar	(xyz polar cs: angle=30,radius=2)	(30:2)
node	(node cs: name=A,anchor=south)	(A.south)
tangent	(tangent cs: node=c,point={(a)},solution=1)	
tikzmark ^a	(pic cs: A)	

^a This requires the `tikzmark` library.

Table 8.1: Examples of coordinate systems

pictures it is highly recommended to set up styles to make the code more readable and ease the maintenance. Note that defaults are normally set with special keys. For example, to change the line width in all pictures you should not use

```
\tikzset{line width=1pt}
```

because such a setting would get overwritten in various places. Instead, the style `every picture` should be changed:

```
\tikzset{every picture/.style={line width=1pt}}
```

8.5.1 Basic objects

The three basic objects in `tikz` are *coordinates*, which describe a position on the canvas on which the picture is drawn, *paths* between coordinates, and *nodes* that allow adding text to a picture.

The `tikz` package supports various coordinate systems like Cartesian, polar, or spherical coordinates, and new coordinate systems can be defined. Coordinates are always given in parentheses. Their general syntax is: [Specifying coordinates](#)

([*options*] *coordinate specification*)

In the *coordinate specification* the coordinate system can be specified in two ways: it can be given explicitly with the name of the coordinate system followed by `cs:` and key-value pairs determinating the coordinate. Common coordinate systems typically also support an implicit (shorter) syntax. Table 8.1 shows some of the coordinate systems together with the short syntax, if it exists.

The `canvas` coordinate systems expect values as dimensions. The `xyz` coordinate systems take dimensionless values that are interpreted as factors of unit vectors; they support both two or three dimensions. Those default unit vectors point 1 cm in the respective directions and so the `canvas` and the `xyz` coordinate system normally give the same output unless one transforms the `xyz` coordinate system by changing the unit vectors as demonstrated by the skewed square in the next example where

we have changed the x-direction unit vector in the optional argument of the `\tikz` command.



```
\usepackage{tikz}
\tikz{\draw (0,0)--(1cm,0cm)--(1cm,1cm)--(0cm,1cm)--cycle;}
\tikz{\draw (0,0)--(1,0)--(1,1)--(0,1)--cycle;}
\tikz[x={(0.5cm,0.5cm)}]{\draw (0,0)--(1,0)--(1,1)--(0,1)--cycle;}
```

8-5-1

Mixtures such as $(1, 4\text{pt})$, using both `canvas` coordinates and `xyz` coordinates, are interpreted as expected.

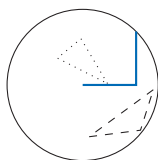
Using expressions
as values

Values can be given as expressions, because the value is passed to the mathematical engine contained in `tikz`. In addition to basic arithmetic operations such as adding, subtracting, and multiplying, the syntax also supports various functions including trigonometric functions, conditionals, and random numbers. It is also possible to measure text.

The following example shows as functions `sqrt` (square root), `/` (division), and `rand` (random numbers); text is measured with `depth` and `height`. Note that expressions containing parentheses or commas should be surrounded by braces. The functions `depth` and `height` return the size in `pt` without the unit. We add `+0pt` to force the conversion to a dimension and so avoid getting a multiple of the unit vector as coordinate.

Be careful
because of `\edef`
expansion

A word of caution: while the mathematical engine allows use of quite complex expressions in coordinates and other places where values are expected, it is often better to do calculations beforehand and pass the values with macros and lengths to keep the code readable. Measuring of text should be done only for simple cases and with great care: because the mathematical expressions are expanded with `\edef`, all commands and active characters must be protected; in addition, no font switch commands should be used: they trigger a temporarily switch of the font to use the `\nullfont`, and the result of the measure is zero regardless of the content.



```
\usepackage{tikz}
\begin{tikzpicture}[baseline={(0,-1.5)}]
\draw (0,0) circle[radius=1];
\draw[blue,thick] (0,0) -- ({sqrt(2)/2},0)--({sqrt(2)/2},{sqrt(2)/2});
\draw[dashed] (rand,rand)-- (rand,rand) -- (rand,rand)--cycle;
\draw[dotted] (rand,rand)-- (rand,rand) -- (rand,rand)--cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}
\par\Huge \tikz[baseline={(0,0)}]{\draw[<->]
(0,-{depth("y")+0pt}) -- (0,{height("T")+0pt}); Type
```

8-5-2

↑ Type

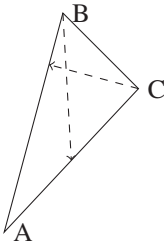
A coordinate can be given a symbolic name. You can add and subtract coordinates, shift and scale them, compute midpoints, and do projections — load the `calc` library for extended calculation options.

The following example defines various named coordinates. The first, `A`, is set with cartesian `xy`-values; the second, `B`, uses the polar coordinate system where the value is given as $\langle \text{angle} \rangle : \langle \text{length} \rangle$; the third, `C`, is calculated by shifting `B`.

The first `\draw` command then draws lines between these coordinates to get a triangle and places some text next to the corners. The syntax $\langle calc \rangle$ used in the next two `\draw` commands indicates that the content is a *coordinate computation*; such calculations require the `calc` library.

In the first computation the `!0.5!` between the two coordinates is an example of a “partway modifier” with the syntax `!number!` and roughly means “use the coordinate that is halfway between A and B”. The second, with the named coordinate C between the two exclamation marks, is a projection modifier. They draw dashed lines from B to the middle position between A and C and from C to the orthogonal projection of C onto the line from A to B.

8-5-3

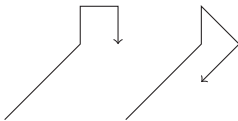


```
\usepackage{tikz}
\usetikzlibrary {calc}
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \coordinate (A) at (0,0);
  \coordinate (B) at (75:3);
  \coordinate (C) at ([shift=({(1,-1)}])B);
  \draw (A)node[right]{A} -- (B)node[right]{B}
    -- (C)node[right]{C} -- cycle;
  \draw[dashed,->] (B) -- ($ (A)!0.5!(C) $);
  \draw[dashed,->] (C) -- ($ (A)!(C)!(B) $);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Coordinates can be prefixed with `+` or `++` to make them “relative” to the current position. A coordinate such as `+(0,0.5)` means “0.5 units above the previous position”, but the current point is not altered. A coordinate prefixed with `++` also updates the current point for subsequent usages of relative coordinates.

*Incremental
coordinates*

8-5-4



```
\usepackage{tikz}
\tikz{\draw[->] (0,0)--(1,1)---++(0,0.5)---++(0.5,0)---++(0,-0.5);}
\tikz{\draw[->] (0,0)--(1,1)---++(0,0.5)---++(0.5,0)---++(0,-0.5);}
\tikz{\draw[->] (0,0)--(1,1)---++(0,0.5)---++(0.5,0)---++(0,-0.5);}
```

Most examples in this section stick to `xy`- and named coordinates — but remember that this shows only a small subset of the capabilities of `tikz`.

We can now turn towards the two other basic concepts of a `tikz` graphic: paths and nodes on these paths.

```
\path[key/value list]{path specification};
```

A path is just a series of straight and curved lines between coordinates. The *path specification* is stream of *path operations*: coordinates and keywords telling `tikz` how to connect these coordinates to build the path. The various operations can be mixed: it is possible to start a path with a straight line and then continue with some arc or a sine curve.

Using paths

Operation	Syntax	Comment
"move-to"	<i>no connector symbol, just consecutive coordinates</i>	move current point
"line-to"	-- or -| or |-	straight lines
"curve-to"	.. controls (coord.) and (coord.) ..	Bezier curves
"arc"	arc[options]	a part of an ellipse
"parabola"	parabola[options]	a part of a parabola
"sin"	sin (coord.) or sin cycle	a part of a sine curve
"cos"	cos (coord.) or cos cycle	a part of a cosine curve
"plot"	<i>different syntax and plot type options available</i>	
"rectangle"	rectangle (coord.) or rectangle cycle	a rectangle
"circle"	circle[options]	a circle
"ellipse"	ellipse[options]	an ellipse
"grid"	grid[options] (coord.) or grid[options] cycle	a grid
"to path"	to[options]	user defined path operations
"node"	node[options] options {text}	to add text
"edge"	edge[options] optional nodes (coord.)	to connect nodes
"pic"	pic[options] {name}	adds a small picture
"foreach"	foreach variable in {path commands}	to repeat path parts
"scoping"	{path commands}	to create a local scope

Table 8.2: Common path operations (overview)

The simplest operation is the "move-to" operation, which is specified by just giving a coordinate where a path operation is expected. It moves the current point to the next coordinate and starts a new part of the path that is not connected to the previous segment. A straight line is created by adding the "line-to" operation, --, between two coordinates. By using |- and -| you can connect the coordinates with horizontal and vertical lines. The following example shows the operations in action:



```
\usepackage{tikz}
\tikz\draw[dashed] (0,0) -- (1,1) (1,0) --
(2,1) (2,0) -| (3,1) (4,0) |- (5,1);
```

8-5-5

Closing the path segment

As we have already seen, a path segment can be closed with the keyword cycle in place of the last coordinate. This not only returns to the beginning of the segment, but also ensures that a smooth join is created.



```
\usepackage{tikz}
\begin{tikzpicture}[line width=10pt]
\draw (0,0) -- (1,1) -- (1,0) -- (0,0);
\draw (2,0) -- (3,1) -- (3,0) -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}
```

8-5-6

Curved lines can be created through a large number of path operations. Bezier curves are added with the “*curve-to*” operation, which uses the syntax [Path operations for curved lines](#)

```
.. controls coordinate and coordinate ..
```

where the two coordinates set the control points of the curve.

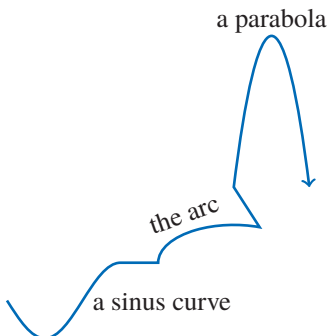
8-5-7



```
\usepackage{tikz}
\tikz\path[draw=blue,line width=1pt,scale=4]
  (-1/4,0) -- (-1/8, 0)
  .. controls ++(135:1/8) and ++(250:1/8) .. (0,1/4)
  .. controls ++(290:1/8) and ++(45:1/8) .. (1/8,0) -- (1/4,0) ;
```

Part of an ellipse is added with the keyword *arc*, which takes an optional argument to set the radius and the angles of the arc. Operations are also provided for parabolas, sine, and cosine curves.

8-5-8

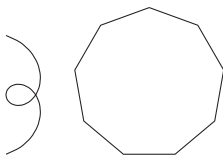


```
\usepackage{tikz}
\tikz\path [draw=blue,line width=1pt,->]
  (-2,-0.5) sin (-1.5,-1) cos (-1,-0.5)
  node[right]{a sinus curve} sin (-0.5,0)
  -- (0,0)
  arc[x radius=1cm, y radius=0.5cm,
  start angle=180, end angle=70]
  node[midway,above,sloped]{the arc} -- (1,1)
  parabola [parabola height=2cm]
  +(1,0) node at (1.5,3.2){a parabola};
```

By correctly alternating the *sin* and *cos* operations, you can create a complete sine or cosine curve; see the *tikz* documentation [189] for an example.

The “*plot*” operation allows creating a path by plotting coordinates and functions.¹ This operation is quite complex and has many options, so we show only two examples as a teaser.

8-5-9



```
\usepackage{tikz}
\tikz \draw[scale=0.25,domain=-3.141:3.141,smooth,variable=\t]
  plot ({\t*sin(\t r)},{\t*cos(\t r)});
\quad
\tikz \draw[domain=0:360,samples=10,variable=\t]
  plot ({sin(\t)},{cos(\t)});
```

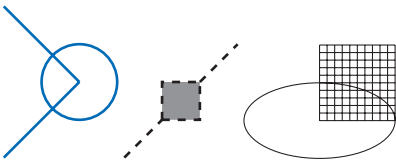
¹For more complex plots the package *pgfplots* from Christian Feuersänger offers a comprehensive solution.

<i>path action</i>	<i>abbreviation command</i>
<code>\path[draw,options]</code>	<code>\draw[options]</code>
<code>\path[fill,options]</code>	<code>\fill[options]</code>
<code>\path[draw,fill,options]</code>	<code>\filldraw[options]</code>
<code>\path[pattern,options]</code>	<code>\pattern[options]</code>
<code>\path[shade,options]</code>	<code>\shade[options]</code>
<code>\path[shade,draw,options]</code>	<code>\shadedraw[options]</code>
<code>\path[clip]</code>	<code>\clip</code>
<code>\path[use as bounding box]</code>	<code>\useasboundingbox</code>

Table 8.3: Path actions and their abbreviation commands

Rectangles, circles,
ellipses, and grids

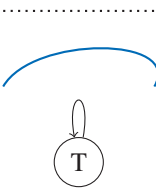
For some standard shapes like rectangles, circles, ellipses, and also grids, dedicated path operations exist. Rectangles and grids span the area between two coordinates, while circles and ellipses typically have their center on the preceding coordinate.



```
\usepackage{tikz}
\tikz\draw[line width=1pt,blue,->]
  (0,0)--(1,1)circle[radius=5mm]--(0,2);
\tikz\filldraw[dashed,fill=gray,line width=1pt]
  (0,0) -- (0.5,0.5) rectangle (1,1) -- (1.5,1.5);
\tikz\draw (0,0) ellipse[x radius=1cm, y radius=0.5cm]
  grid[step=0.1] (1,1);
```

8-5-10

Finally, we want to mention shortly the “to path” operation. It is used to add a user-defined path from the previous coordinate to the following coordinate. By default it gives a straight line. Its optional argument knows various options to create curves. Its main power lies in the fact that it can be redefined, which allows, for example, creation of names for special curves as shown in the next examples:



```
\usepackage{tikz}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tikzset{my loop/.style=
  {to path={.. controls +(80:1) and +(100:1)
    .. (\tikztotarget) \tikztonodes}}}

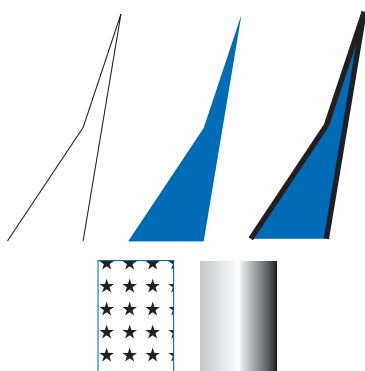
\draw[dotted,thick] (0,2) to (2,2);
\draw[blue,thick] (0,1) to[out=60,in=60] (2,1);
\node[circle,draw](a) at (1,0) {T};
\draw [->](a) to[my loop] (a);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

8-5-11

The examples so far all have *drawn* the paths, but more can be done with a path: a path can stay invisible and only change the size of the graphic or it can be used for calculation of coordinates. It can be drawn, filled, shaded, used for clipping, and more. Drawing can be thought of as taking a pen of a certain thickness and moving it along the path. Filling means that the interior of the path is filled with a uniform color — a path is automatically closed prior to filling, if necessary (and possible). Filling with a pattern or a picture is possible too.

Actions on paths

The action is given as an key to the `\path` command, but tikz also offers abbreviation commands that are listed in Table 8.3. The action keys often accept a value that allows setting a color or selecting the pattern.



8-5-12

```
\usepackage{tikz}
\usetikzlibrary{patterns}
\centering
\tikz\path[draw] (0,0)--(1,1.5)--(1.5,3)--(1,0);
\tikz\path[fill=blue]
    (0,0)--(1,1.5)--(1.5,3)--(1,0);
\tikz\path[fill=blue,draw=black,line width=2pt]
    (0,0)--(1,1.5)--(1.5,3)--(1,0);
\par\medskip
\tikz\path[pattern=fivepointed stars,draw=blue]
    (0,0)rectangle(1,1.5);\quad
\tikz\path[shade,left color=lightgray,right color=black,
    middle color=white](0,0)rectangle(1,1.5);
```

When a path is drawn, various parameters can be set to adapt the line width, the end of the lines, and how lines are joined. It is possible to add a dash pattern, to color the path, and to draw double lines. These parameters normally apply to a path as a whole. Thus, to use a different style or another color a new path should be started.¹

Graphic parameters of drawn lines



8-5-13

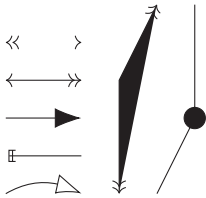
```
\usepackage{tikz}
\tikz\path[draw,line cap=round,
    line join=bevel,line width=10pt]
    (0,0)--(0.5,1.5)--(1,0)--(1.5,1.5);
\tikz\path[draw,thick,dash pattern=on 2pt off 3pt]
    (0,0)--(1,2);
\tikz\path[draw,line width=2pt,line join=round,
    double, double distance=5pt]
    (0,0)--(0.5,1.5)--(1,0)--(1.5,1.5);
```

A variety of arrow tips can be added to the beginning and the end of a path, typically with a hyphen with symbols or arguments at the left and right to denote the wanted tips. It is not required to draw the path; the key `tips` can be used to get only the tip of the arrow. However, no segment of the path should contain a cycle —

Arrow tips

¹It is also possible to add more decoration in a post-processing step, but this is out of scope of this short introduction.

neither explicitly through the keyword `cycle` nor implicitly through a path operation like “`circle`” or “`rectangle`”: as can be seen in the next example, such paths lose the arrow tips:



```
\usepackage{tikz} \usetikzlibrary{arrows.meta,bending}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[tips,<->] (0,2)--(1,2); \path[draw,<->] (0,1.5)--(1,1.5);
\path[draw,-{Latex[length=10pt]}] (0,1)--(1,1);
\path[draw,{Bracket[sep] Bracket[]}-] (0,0.5)--(1,0.5);
\draw[-{Latex[open,length=10pt,bend]}] (0,0) to[bend left] (1,0);
\filldraw[<->] (1.5,0)--++(0,1.5)--++(0.5,1);
\filldraw[<->] (2,0)--++(0.5,1) circle[radius=4pt]--++(0,1.5);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

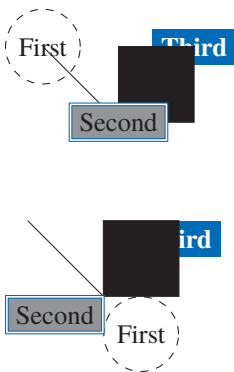
8-5-14

Using nodes

We turn now to the third important basic concept: the nodes. Nodes allow placing text onto the graphic. They are added to a path using the special path operation `node` followed by various optional parts and a mandatory argument for the text content.¹ Unlike standard text boxes created with `\makebox` or `\fbox`, nodes are not only rectangular. They can have various shapes and many reference points that allow anchoring the node and adding decorations. By default, nodes are placed centered on the current coordinate. This position can be changed with, for example, the keyword `at` to place the node at an arbitrary position as shown in the next example. The anchor used as a reference point can be set with the `anchor` key, which takes as a value one of the many predefined anchor names, among them text-related anchors such as `basewest`, `base`, and the various compass directions such as `south`, `north`, and `northwest`, etc., referring to the borders. The color of the text can be changed with the key `text`, the font with the key `font`.

*Nodes are not part
of the path!*

Nodes are not part of the path: When the path is constructed, they are collected and then drawn either on top or — if the option `behindpath` is given — behind the path. Such nodes can therefore be drawn and filled with graphic parameters different from the parameters of the path.



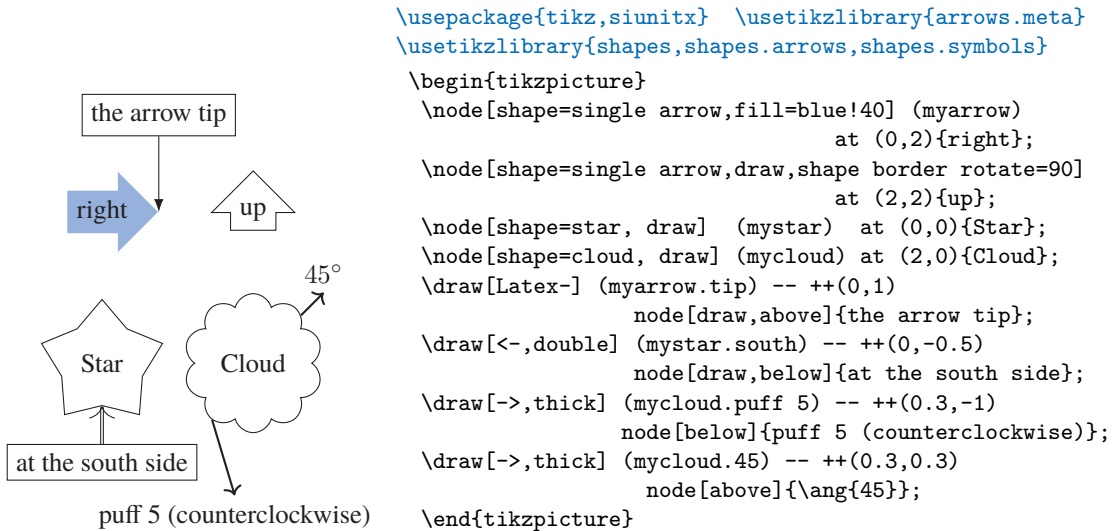
```
\usepackage{tikz}
\tikz\path[draw,fill]
(0,2) node[circle,draw,dashed]{First}
-- (1,1) node[draw=blue,fill=gray,double]{Second}
rectangle(2,2) node[behind path,fill=blue,text=white,
font=\bfseries]{Third};

\par\vspace{1cm}
\tikz\path[draw,fill]
(0,2) node[circle,draw,dashed] at (1.5,0.5) {First}
-- (1,1) node[draw=blue,fill=gray,double,
anchor=north east]{Second}
rectangle(2,2) node[behind path,fill=blue,text=white,
font=\bfseries,anchor=north]{Third};
```

8-5-15

¹It is not always mandatory: the key `nodecontent` can be used instead.

A node can be given a name by adding it in parentheses (or by using the key `name`). The anchors of such a named node can then be used as coordinates `(name).<anchor>`. We demonstrate this in the following example, which also shows some special shapes provided by additional libraries:



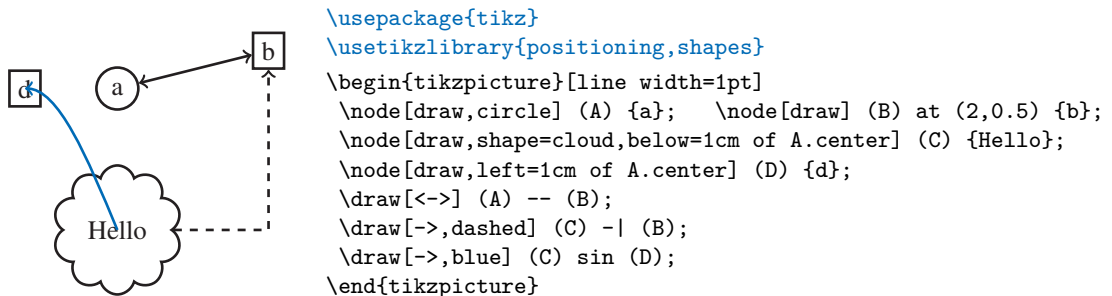
The command `\coordinate` used in Example 8-5-3 to create named coordinates is actually an abbreviation command for the path operation `coordinate`, a special node of size zero that cannot be drawn and takes no text argument. Its only purpose is to create named coordinates.

Revisiting
coordinates

The previous example showed that nodes provide various coordinates that are given as `(name.anchor)` or `(name.angle)`. These coordinates belong to the node coordinate system. Additionally, it is possible to use only the name of the node itself as a coordinate. In such cases, some path construction operations try to calculate the border position that you “mean” — but, naturally, this may fail in some situations.

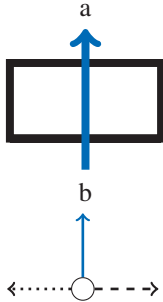
Connecting nodes

Other path operations, like the sine curve in the following example, use the center of the node. The example also makes use of the `positioning` library to place nodes relative to each other:



Edges

Another way to connect nodes and coordinates is with “*edges*”. The *edge* operation looks quite similar to other path operations, but like nodes the edges are not part of the path but are collected and added after the main path has been drawn. This allows them to have different graphic parameters. Note that in the second picture of the following example all edges start at node A:



```
\usepackage{tikz}
\tikz{\draw[line width=3pt] (0,0) node (A) at (1,1.7) {a}
      node (B) at (1,-0.7) {b}   edge[blue,->] (A)
      --(2,0) rectangle (0,1);}

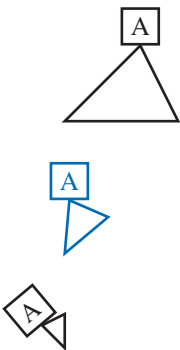
\tikz{\node[draw,circle,inner sep=3pt](A) {}
      \path[line width=1pt,->] (A) edge[dashed] (1,0)
      edge[blue] (0,1) edge[dotted] (-1,0);}
```

8-5-18

8.5.2 Transformations and other operations

Transformations

The package *tikz* offers options to scale, shift, and rotate graphics or parts of them. It is important to understand that these transformations do not affect all elements. As the following example shows, neither the line width nor the nodes are scaled and rotated. This is by design to avoid an inconsequent mix of different font sizes and normally gives the expected result. However, it means that scaling a graphic can require adapting the placement of nodes to fit into the new dimensions. Also it is not always immediately clear whether the transformation applies to a certain dimension. In such cases you should check the documentation. Note in the example the use of the *scope* environment to keep the transformation local and that a node is rotated by using the key *rotate* in the node options.



```
\usepackage{tikz} \usetikzlibrary{arrows.meta}
\usetikzlibrary{shapes,shapes.arrows,shapes.symbols}

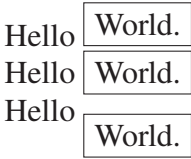
\begin{tikzpicture}[line width=1pt]
\draw (0,0)--(1.5,0)--(1,1)node[draw,above]{A}--cycle;
\begin{scope}[blue,shift={((0,-1.75))},scale=0.5,rotate=40]
\draw (0,0)--(1.5,0)--(1,1)node[draw,above]{A}--cycle;
\end{scope}
\begin{scope}[shift={((0,-3))},scale=0.3,rotate=90]
\draw (0,0)--(1.5,0)--(1,1)node[draw,above,rotate=40]{A}--cycle;
\end{scope}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

8-5-19

Changing the bounding box

The examples so far created pictures whose size has been calculated automatically. Every time you add some graphic element *tikz* updates the bounding box so that it contains all points of the graphic, and the reference point for the baseline of the

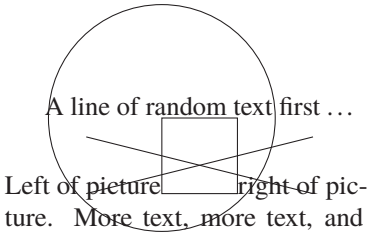
graphic is set to the lower-left corner of the enclosing rectangle — not always what you want. To adjust the reference point use the `baseline` key, which takes a coordinate as its value.

		<pre>\usepackage{tikz} \large Hello \tikz {\node[draw] (X) {World.};} Hello \tikz[baseline=(X.base)] {\node[draw] (X) {World.};} Hello \tikz[baseline={(0,0.2)}] {\node[draw] (X) {World.};}</pre>
--	---	--

8-5-20

To adapt the bounding box you can use the key `overlay` that can be used on nodes, paths, scopes, and complete pictures. The effect of this key is that everything within the current scope is disregarded when the bounding box of the current picture is computed (the material is “overlaid” without taking up size).

Another option is the key `use as bounding box`. When used on a path, all *subsequent* paths in the current scope are ignored in the bounding box calculation. In the next example the bounding box is the square, because the earlier circle is overlaid and the lines are ignored because of the `use as bounding box` key:

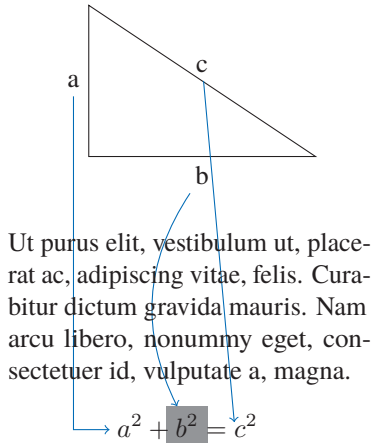
	<pre>\usepackage{tikz} A line of random text first \ldots\ Left of picture% \begin{tikzpicture} \draw[overlay] (2,1)circle[radius=1.5cm]; % overlaid \draw[use as bounding box] (2,0) rectangle (3,1); \draw (1,0) -- (4,.75); % also not counted in \draw (1,.75) -- (4,0); % bounding box calculation \end{tikzpicture}% right of picture. More text, more text, and more text.</pre>
--	---

8-5-21

It is possible to reference nodes of pictures other than the current one. The `tikzmark` library by Andrew Stacey [182] provides a useful application: with it, it is possible to add marks in a text that can then be used as coordinates in `tikz` pictures, e.g., to connect various texts on a page with graphic elements. The example below demonstrates this with the `\tikzmark` command. These marks can then be used with the `pic cs:` coordinate notation that takes the name of the mark as value. The picture with the drawing commands should use the key `remember picture` because it has to know where it itself is on the page. All drawing commands that make use of “external” `pic cs:` coordinates must use the `overlay` key to prevent `tikz` from including the marks in the bounding box calculation.¹ The drawing can be done before the marks are set with the `\tikzmark` commands — this allows drawing behind the

¹ Otherwise, the picture would grow on each compilation, thereby pushing the external `\tikzmarks` further away, which in turn makes the picture bigger next time ... try it, by removing `overlay` from Example 8-5-22.

text such as to add a background. Typically at least two compilations are needed to resolve the references.



```
\usepackage{tikz,lipsum} \usetikzlibrary{tikzmark}
\tikzset{myarrow/.style={->,blue} }
\begin{center}\begin{tikzpicture}[remember picture]
\draw (0,0)--(3,0) node[midway,below] (b){b}
--(0,2) node[midway,above] (c){c}
--cycle node[midway,left] (a){a};
\begin{scope}[overlay]
\node[fill=gray,anchor=text](B) at (pic cs:b)
{\phantom{b^2}};
\draw[myarrow](b) to [bend right] (B);
\draw[myarrow](c) -- ([yshift=0.2cm]pic cs:c);
\draw[myarrow](a) |- ([shift={(-0.1cm,0.1cm)}]pic cs:a);
\end{scope}
\end{tikzpicture}\end{center}
\lipsum[1][2-4]
\[\tikzmark{a}a^2 + \tikzmark{b}b^2= \tikzmark{c}c^2 \]
```

8-5-22

`\foreach variables [options] in {list} {commands}`

Repeating things

We finish this introduction with a short presentation of the `\foreach` utility from the `pgffor` package (loaded automatically by `tikz`). The command allows you to loop over a list or a range of numbers and to execute commands once for every element of the list. The current element is stored in one or more variables and can be used in the commands.

apples are red!
ducks are yellow!
trees are green!

```
\usepackage{pgffor} % or tikz
\foreach \x/\y in {apples/red, ducks/yellow, trees/green}
{ \x{ } are \y{ }! \par }
```

8-5-23

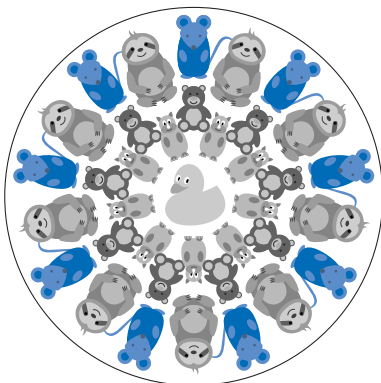
The variable names can be freely chosen: this does not affect code outside the loop, because the code is executed in a group. Be aware that many one-letter command names are used for accents and can have surprising side effects. Note how in the next example the use of the variables `\i`, `\j`, and `\k` destroys the output of `i`, `j`, and `A`, because \LaTeX internally calls `\i`, `\j`, and `\k{A}` when processing them:

```
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc} \usepackage{tikz}
i j A (fine)
\foreach \x/\y/\z in {apple/red/ok?} { i j A } (fine) \par
apple red ok?A (surprise!) \foreach \i/\j/\k in {apple/red/ok?} { i j A } (surprise!)
```

8-5-24

A range of numbers can be given with the dot notation. It consists of two start items, three periods, and an end item. In this case `\foreach` fills up the list with the missing values. This is demonstrated in the next example, where `0,40,...,360` is expanded to the list `0,40,80,120,...,360`. We use two separate `\foreach` loops

to print the mice first so that their tails do not poke into the eyes of the sloths. The tikzlings and tikzducks packages to draw the animals are provided by samcarter.



8-5-25

```
\usepackage{tikzlings,tikzducks}
\begin{tikzpicture}[scale=2]
\draw[black] (0,0) circle (1.25);
\foreach \x in {0,40,...,360}
{\mouse[rotate=\x,scale=0.18,yshift=120,body=blue]}
\selectcolormodel{gray} % monochrome for the book
\foreach \x in {0,40,...,360}
{
\sloth[rotate=\x+20,scale=0.25,yshift=70]
\bear [rotate=\x, scale=0.15,yshift=80]
\rhino[rotate=\x+20,scale=0.15,yshift=47]
}
\duck[scale=0.2,xshift=-30,yshift=-30]
\end{tikzpicture}
```

As you may have guessed, the hummingbird logo (designed by Paulo Cereda for the L^AT_EX Project Team) is also a tikz picture. This is great, because it allows us to use it in various ways in L^AT_EX documents for official team publications. At its core it is fairly simple: it mainly consists of lengthy `\path` statements describing straight and curved lines that are then filled with color. But if you look at the details (a small part of which is shown below), it is clear that Paulo did not sit down and came up with the correct control coordinates through intuition — this is autogenerated tikz.

He told me that he designed the bird in the open source program Inkscape, which is capable of exporting its results in several formats, including PDF but also source formats such as pstricks. He then applied a plugin called `svg2tikz` (available from <https://github.com/xyz2tex/svg2tikz>) that can also be used as a standalone program. As its name implies, it converts a SVG graphic as (typically huge) `tikzpicture`. It has some blind spots and may not work for all graphics, but usually offers a solid way to turn a complex graphic into a tikz source that then can be further tweaked (in small ways) if needed or combined with other tikz elements.


```
\usepackage{tikz} \definecolor{blue}{cmk}{1,0.56,0,0} % what we call 'blue'
\begin{tikzpicture}[y=0.30pt,x=0.30pt,yscale=-1, inner sep=0pt, outer sep=0pt]
\path[fill=blue!99,rounded corners=0.0000cm] (248.7785,295.7529) rectangle
(465.3586,478.5802);
\path[fill=white,rounded corners=0.0000cm] (257.9199,304.5427) rectangle
(456.2172,469.7905);
\path[fill=blue!99] (283.2386,478.5760) -- (289.5259,453.4125) .. controls
(302.2770,439.6121) and (314.0060,425.3008) .. (319.5695,407.9067) .. controls
(355.0759,401.0374) and (383.7853,403.5174) .. (413.7371,404.2858) .. controls
(411.0072,403.8309) and (322.2852,388.7992) .. (322.2852,388.7992) .. controls
(298.7181,356.5528) and (264.6380,373.5409) .. (249.0663,403.2205) --
(248.7470,478.6397) -- cycle;
```

```
\path[color=black,fill=white,nonzero rule,line width=1.253pt]
(288.4249,394.4251) -- (288.2061,394.8313) .. controls (287.2860,396.5455) and
(285.7381,397.6863) .. (283.5499,398.3938) .. controls (281.3616,399.1013) and
(278.5647,399.3476) .. (275.2999,399.2063) -- (273.2374,399.1126) --
(274.7061,400.5501) .. controls (275.4640,401.2791) and (275.6960,401.8541) ..
(275.7061,402.3626) .. controls (275.7162,402.8712) and (275.5103,403.4284) ..
(275.0186,404.0501) .. controls (274.0353,405.2935) and (272.0593,406.6472) ..
(270.2374,408.0189) -- (269.6749,408.4564) -- (270.0499,409.0501) .. controls
... further code omitted ...
```



8-5-26

8.5.3 Going further

Where to go
for further help 

This section left out many topics that can be handled by tikz: matrices, shadows, animations, transparency, pics, decorations, plots, trees, circuits, page ornaments, and the key management to name only a few. The documentation of the package [189] and the CTAN topic page on tikz [41] are important resources here.

The number of options and keys in tikz can be overwhelming: a nice help is the documentation VisualTikZ [38] by Jean Pierre Casteleyn: The PDF file contains many small examples that helps to identify the needed key combination for different use cases.

CHAPTER 9

Font Selection and Encodings

9.1 Introduction	648
9.2 Understanding font characteristics	652
9.3 Using fonts in text	658
9.4 Using fonts in math.	676
9.5 Standard \LaTeX font support.	683
9.6 fontspec — Font selection for Unicode engines	705
9.7 The low-level NFSS interface	730
9.8 Setting up new fonts for NFSS.	740
9.9 \LaTeX 's encoding models.	754

In this chapter we describe the font selection and encoding models of \LaTeX , known as NFSS (New Font Selection Scheme) and the packages and commands to deal with encoding issues. Given that NFSS was first introduced about thirty years ago, it is, of course, no longer really new. The last decade, however, showed a number of exciting new developments, so this chapter, compared to the one in the previous edition of the book, nevertheless contains a lot of new and changed material.

We start with a short introduction to the history of font usage in different \TeX engines. This is then followed by a section discussing font characteristics in general and introducing the major attributes used in \LaTeX for orthogonal font switching. We then describe the use of the high-level interface — that is, the commands a user normally has to deal with. This includes commands used in normal text (Section 9.3), special features for use in mathematical formulae (Section 9.4), and an overview of basic support packages for NFSS — those being distributed together with \LaTeX (Section 9.5).

Section 9.6 is solely devoted to the details of the `fontspec` package, the frontend to NFSS for use in the Unicode engines \XeTeX and \LuaTeX .

The final sections then describe the low-level interfaces that are useful when defining complex new commands and that are important when new fonts are to be made available in \LaTeX . Here you find low-level commands for changing individual font attributes (Section 9.7), commands for setting up new fonts with \LaTeX (Section 9.8), and a discussion of \LaTeX 's encoding models for text and math (Section 9.9).

9.1 Introduction

9.1.1 The history of \LaTeX 's font selection scheme (NFSS)

When \TeX was developed in 1979, only a dozen fonts were set up for use with the program. This situation had not greatly changed five years later, when \LaTeX was first released. It was thus quite natural that \LaTeX 's font selection scheme followed the plain \TeX concept with the addition of size-changing commands that allowed typesetting in ten predefined sizes.

As a result, \LaTeX 's font selection was far from general because the font commands were not changing font attributes but exchanged one font with another one. For instance, when, say, the now obsolete command `\bf` was used inside emphasized text, the result was not a bold italic font, as normally desired, but rather a plain roman bold font. Furthermore, the original release had another major drawback: the correspondence tables between font commands and fonts were hardwired into \LaTeX so that replacing the default fonts was a difficult, if not impossible, task.

Since that time low-priced laser printers became available, and simultaneously a large number of font families from PostScript and other font formats appeared. But, unfortunately, because of the \LaTeX font selection model, there was no easy and standard method for integrating these new fonts into \LaTeX — typesetting with \LaTeX meant typesetting in Computer Modern on almost all installations. Of course, individual fonts could be loaded, but they would not work with the size commands nor were they otherwise integrated, so it was extremely complicated to typeset a whole document in a different font family.

This unsatisfactory situation was finally resolved in 1989 with the release of the New Font Selection Scheme (NFSS) [152] written by Frank Mittelbach and Rainer Schöpf, which became widely known after it was successfully used in $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\text{\LaTeX}$ (see Chapter 11). This system contains a generic concept for varying font attributes individually and for integrating new font families easily into an existing \LaTeX system. The concept is based on five attributes that can be defined independently to access different fonts, font characteristics, or font families. To implement it, some of the \LaTeX commands were redefined, and some new commands were added.

In 1994 NFSS became the official standard in the then newly released $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$. It has now been in worldwide use for more than thirty years, proving the code to be stable, successful, and most importantly flexible enough to support further advances in font technology and use.

However, in the last decade new requirements appeared that were not easily supported with the original NFSS design and so some extensions in the form of additional support packages appeared.

For pdf \TeX two important ones have been `mweights` by Bob Tennent and `fontaxes` by Andreas Böhmann and Michael Ummels, both extending the attribute handling of NFSS. Neither package is intended for direct usage but normally used within font support packages, such as those discussed in Chapter 10. In 2020 a large portion of their functionality has been integrated into NFSS so that it is now generally available.

The situation for Unicode engines is different. With the `fontspec` package by Will Robertson a new frontend for font loading is offered for use in \X_{TeX} and LuaTeX . This frontend allows one to access all kind of font features available with OpenType or TrueType fonts. It then generates the necessary information for NFSS on the fly — thus under the hood NFSS is still the font selection machinery. The package is discussed in detail in Section 9.6.

9.1.2 Input and output handling in $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ systems over the years

When $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ was originally developed in 1979, computers used 7-bits to encode input characters, which allows for a direct representation of a maximum of 128 characters, i.e., Latin upper and lowercase base characters, digits, and a few symbols. Any other character had to be represented in the form of a command or a sequence of commands; e.g., `\ss` for \ss or `\^j` for \^j , etc.

This certainly allowed inputting text in most Latin-based languages (though already a bit inconvenient) where the need for using commands in the input is still infrequent. Already then there were problems; e.g., hyphenation would not work for words containing diacritics. However, that approach clearly failed for languages with a totally different set of characters, where essentially every character would be represented by a command if we assume that the input can represent only ASCII characters directly. For example, the Russian text for “on the next page” (на следующей странице) would have to be written as

*$\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}79$ largely
restricted to English*

```
\cyrn\cyra\ \cyrs\cyrl\cyre\cyrd\cyru\cyryu\cyrshch\cyre\cyrishrt
\ \cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyrcc\cyre
```

Clearly, no one wants to type text like this on a regular basis.

Fonts in $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}79$ used 7-bits as well, i.e., contained a maximum of 128 glyphs and for text fonts the glyph positions matched the ASCII code used at input. In other words, there was a one-to-one correspondence between the number encoding a character on input and the number representing the glyph position in the fonts. For example, the seven bits 1000001 (decimal 65) in a file were interpreted by an editor as the character A and when processed by $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ the program fetched the glyph in position 65 in the current font, which then happened to be “A”. For the class of documents that just need basic Latin characters this worked well and was very fast.

The 8-bit days

Computers then evolved and started to use 8-bits for encoding data. With it $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ evolved too and supported 8-bit input and fonts ($\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}82$ and later $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}3.0$). However, there was now a problem: different computers used different “code pages”; that is,

*The 8-bit operating
systems*

they interpreted the bytes in input files in different ways depending on the operating system's regional settings or other criteria. Thus, while the lower 128 bytes were usually identical, in many code pages the upper half varied greatly, making data exchange difficult, if not outright impossible.

There was nothing inside a file that would explicitly tell how to interpret the 8-bit numbers inside. Thus, suddenly files written on one computer got partially scrambled when processed on a different one unless you knew (and could tell the processing software) under which assumption — that is, under which code page — the file was written.

In $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ this problem was resolved by introducing the package `inputenc` that allows one to explicitly state under which input encoding the remainder of the file should be interpreted by \LaTeX . It effectively added the missing information about the file encoding to the source so that \LaTeX could use it even when running under an operating system that would normally use a different code page.

The input encoding concept

The `inputenc` package works by interpreting the 8-bit numbers present in the file (representing the characters) and mapping them to an “internal \LaTeX representation”, which uniquely (albeit on a somewhat ad hoc basis) covers all characters representable in \LaTeX . For further processing, such as writing to some auxiliary file, \LaTeX exclusively uses this internal representation, thereby avoiding any possible misinterpretation.

And there was (and unfortunately is) a second problem: \TeX still assumes by default that input characters can be directly mapped to corresponding font slots. As a consequence, developing 8-bit fonts that use all possible slots would require different fonts for different code pages. For example, if your keyboard contained a key for the Euro symbol (€) and your computer used the Windows code page `cp-1252`, then pressing this key generated the code 80 while it generated 164 if your computer happened to use the code page `ISO-889-15`. Thus, if such codes define the glyph position in the fonts, then we need different fonts in each case, one with the Euro symbol in slot 80 and another where it is in 164.

So the `inputenc` package solves half of the problem, because once applied it correctly interprets the bytes in the input file and \LaTeX then sees the command `\texteuro` in both cases. But then \LaTeX needs to know which slot `\texteuro` has to access to fetch the glyph (and possibly even from which font).

The output encoding concept

All this is achieved in \LaTeX through the concept of output encodings, which map the \LaTeX internal character representations to appropriate glyph positions or to glyph-building actions depending on the actual glyphs available in the font used for typesetting. This is where the `fontenc` package comes into play that was introduced at the same time as `inputenc`. Each font usable with \LaTeX is supposed to implement a specific “named” font encoding, and with `fontenc` you tell \LaTeX where to find glyphs in such font encodings.

The Unicode days

The next level of evolution was the introduction of Unicode-based operating systems. They use UTF-8, which is a variable-length encoding that represents Unicode characters in one to four octets. In this case the \TeX ecosystem only partially followed. The original program, as maintained by Donald Knuth ($\text{\TeX}3$), as well as the variant `pdf \TeX`

(which is what most people still use these days) remained 8-bit programs, which means they cannot natively handle multibyte UTF-8 characters but see them as sequences of individual bytes instead. For example, if the input file (in UTF-8 encoding) contains the character U+00C4 (Ä), then \TeX or pdf\TeX sees instead two bytes (octal '303 and '204) and renders them as two glyphs corresponding to their slots in the font, i.e., “ÄD” in a typical \TeX font — which is, of course, utter nonsense.


Early on, when the first Linux distributions decided to use UTF-8 as the default encoding for the operating system, they left their \LaTeX users baffled that files written using the keys on the keyboard were suddenly no longer accepted or correctly processed by \LaTeX . Nowadays, nearly every operating system uses UTF-8, so this would be a huge problem today.

The `inputenc` package resolved this issue by providing also support for UTF-8 encoding. It works by identifying which bytes belong to multibyte characters, then assembling those bytes, and finally presenting \LaTeX (instead of the byte sequence) with an internal command representing the intended character, i.e., in our example with `\"A`. This works well, even though it is a rather complicated process. It means, however, that multibyte UTF-8 characters are not letters in the \TeX sense — for example, they cannot appear in command names, and there are some other restrictions.


The most important one is probably that pdf\TeX (in contrast to the Unicode engines discussed below) cannot handle Unicode combining characters. In Unicode one can represent the characters such as “LATIN SMALL LETTER A WITH TILDE” (ã) either as U+00E3 or as U+0061 (a) followed by the combining accent U+030A (~), but with pdf\TeX only the first works. The technical reason for this is that by the time the combining character is seen, the base character has already been typeset and it is not possible for pdf\TeX to superimpose the accent properly. This is normally not a problem, because editors usually generate the single character, but sometimes that may not be the case, and what looks in your editor like ã then appears as “a~” or generates an error message when printed. If that happens, you need to change your input method or produce the problematical characters through commands, i.e., `\~a` in that case. Another way to end up with such invalid input is through copy and paste from the Internet, as often text displayed by browsers contains in fact such combining characters, which look fine but fail if copied into your document source.

The second restriction is that `inputenc` does not provide a full UTF-8 implementation in which every character is accepted. Instead, only Unicode characters that are printable with the set of fonts loaded (that is supported by the font encodings used) are accepted. For all others you get a suitable error message that the Unicode character in question is not set up in \LaTeX .¹

As nowadays virtually every operating system uses UTF-8 by default this meant that you had to always load `inputenc` with the option `utf8` unless you were writing a document just using ASCII characters. In 2018 the decision was made to make UTF-8

 No support
for combining
accents in pdf\TeX

*Copy and paste can
be harmful*

 Only
printable Unicode
characters are
accepted by pdf\TeX

*UTF-8 input now the
standard for \LaTeX
on all engines*

¹This is actually a Good Thing, as it prevents “tofu” — little squares indicating unprintable characters or empty spaces in place of them in the printout. If you get the error, you can fix the problem by selecting a suitable font or by not using the character. In contrast, the Unicode engines just assume that every Unicode character is printable, and you get no warning if something is missing in the output because it is unavailable in the font.

iiiiiiiiiii	iiiiiii
mmmmmmmmmm	mmmmmmmmmmmm
(monospaced)	(proportionally spaced)

Figure 9.1: Major font characteristics (mono/proportional spaced)

the default encoding for \LaTeX so that `inputenc` now automatically does its magic and needs explicit loading only in cases of a legacy document that is stored in some 8-bit code page.

Unicode-enabled \TeX extension programs

The growing availability of Unicode also triggered efforts to develop new \TeX variants that would natively understand multibyte input encodings and manage fonts with many more accessible glyphs than 256 (which is the limit in the Adobe's Type 1 format or the fonts produced with METAFONT).

The first of these new programs was Omega [165], an extension of \TeX developed by Yannis Haralambous and John Plaice. Omega's declared aim was to improve on \TeX 's multilingual typesetting abilities. It pioneered the native use of the Unicode multibyte encodings and extended \TeX 's typesetting model with important new capabilities such as a general model for writing-directions, needed for many languages. While Omega was eventually abandoned and not further developed, many of its ideas and concepts live on in the two important Unicode \TeX engines of today: in \XeTeX and \LuaTeX .

Unicode engines

Special features only relevant to the Unicode \TeX engines are documented in this book by placing the text into a box with gray background as shown here.

9.2 Understanding font characteristics

There are many design principles that divide fonts into individual overlapping classes. Knowledge of these characteristics often proves helpful when deciding which font family to use in a special context (for further reading see, for example, the books [25, 42, 125] or the article [53]).

9.2.1 Monospaced and proportional fonts

Fonts can be either monospaced or proportionally spaced. In a monospaced font, each individual character takes up the same horizontal space regardless of its shape. In contrast, characters in a proportionally spaced font take up different amounts of space depending on their shape. In Figure 9.1, you can see that the “i” of the monospaced font occupies the same space as the “m”, while it is noticeably narrower in the proportional font. As a result, proportional fonts (also called typographical fonts) normally allow more words to be placed on a page and are more readable than



Figure 9.2: Comparison of serifed and sans serif letters

monospaced fonts. The extra spaces around individual characters of monospaced fonts make it more difficult for the eye to recognize word boundaries and thus make monospaced text less readable.

However, monospaced fonts do have their uses. Within the proper context, they enhance the quality of the printed document. For example, in tables or computer listings where proper alignment of information is important, a monospaced font is a natural choice. In computer science books, it is common practice to display computer programs in a monospaced font to make them easily distinguishable from surrounding explanations.

9.2.2 Serifed and sans serif fonts

Another useful classification is based on the presence or absence of serifs. Serifs are the tiny strokes at the extremities of character shapes (see Figure 9.2). Originally they were produced by the chisel, when roman capitals were engraved into stone. For this reason, serifed fonts are often referred to as “roman” fonts.

Serifed fonts traditionally have been used for long texts because, it was argued, they are more readable. It was long thought that serifed letters give the eye more clues for identification. This is certainly true if only parts of the characters are visible, but for fully visible text more recent research has shown that reading speed is not substantially affected by the absence of serifs.

9.2.3 Font families and their attributes

Besides the crude classifications of serifed versus sans serif and monospaced versus proportional, fonts are grouped into font families. Members of a font family share common design principles and are distinguished by variations in size, weight, width, and shape. A member of such a family is often called a font face.

Font shapes

An important attribute when classifying a member of a font family is its shape. Of course, sometimes it is a matter of personal judgment whether a set of fonts with different shapes constitutes one or several families. For example, Donald Knuth called his collection of 31 Computer Modern fonts a family [88], yet they form a meta-family of many families in the traditional sense.¹

¹METAFONT, as a design tool, allows the production of completely different fonts from the same source description, so it is not surprising that in 1989 another family was created [94] based on the sources for the Computer Modern fonts. This family, Concrete Roman, was obtained merely by varying some METAFONT parameters in the source files; but because the result was so different, Knuth decided to give this family a different name.

A	B	C	a	b	c	f	g	i	x	y	z	(upright)
<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>c</i>	<i>f</i>	<i>g</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>y</i>	<i>z</i>	(italic)
A	B	C	a	b	c	f	g	i	x	y	z	(italic without slant)

Figure 9.3: Comparison between upright and italic shapes

Although there is no uniform naming convention for font shapes, this is unimportant as long as one sticks to a particular scheme. \LaTeX 's conventions in this respect are discussed in detail in Section 9.7 on page 730.

The upright shape

Nearly every font family has one shape called the “upright” shape.¹ For example, in the font family used in this book (Lucida Bright), the font that you are now reading is in the upright shape.

The italic shape

Another important shape that is present in most families is the “italic” shape, which looks *like this in the Lucida Bright family*. Italic characters are slanted to the right, and the individual letters generally are drawn differently from their upright counterparts, as illustrated in Figure 9.3. The first line in that figure shows letters from the Computer Modern Serif family in upright shape, and the second line shows the same letters in italic shape. For better comparison, the third line gives the italic letters without the usual slant — that is, the letters are artificially shown in an upright position. As you can see, the uppercase letters in these fonts are quite similar except for the slant, but the lowercase letters show distinctive differences in their shapes.

The slanted or oblique shape

Font families without serifs often lack a proper italic shape; instead, they have a “slanted” shape in which the characters slant to the right but are otherwise identical to their upright counterparts. The terms “sloped” and “oblique” are also commonly used for this shape. However, note that a fair number of font families call their oblique faces italic, and for this reason the \LaTeX support code usually silently substitutes one for the other unless both are available in parallel.

The swash letter shape

Some modern font families² offer so-called swash letter fonts, where some letters show some typographical flourish, such as some extra or lengthened stroke, exaggerated serifs, etc. Such shapes (if available) can nowadays be requested in \LaTeX through standard commands as well.

The Small Caps shape

Another common variant is the “small capitals” shape, in which the lowercase letters are represented as capitals with a reduced height, as shown in Figure 9.4 on the next page. If such a shape is not available for a specific family, typographers sometimes use upright capitals from smaller sizes,³ but this practice does not produce

¹Sometimes you also hear the term “roman” shape. This is because until recently typesetting was nearly always done using serified fonts. Thus, “roman” was considered to be the opposite of “italic” by many people. So be aware that in some books this term actually refers to the upright shape and not to a serified font family.


²Most often only commercial fonts in their “pro” versions. Among the free fonts described in Chapter 10 there are only four families offering this shape: Baskervaldx, BaskervilleF, Crimson Pro/Cochineal, and EB Garamond.

³A good rule of thumb is to use capitals from a font that is about half a point larger than the x-height of the original font unless the x-height is very small. See the discussion in Section 9.8.1 on page 745 for a way to determine the x-height of any font used with \TeX .



Figure 9.4: Comparison between capitals and small capitals

the same quality as a well-designed small caps font. Real small capitals have different widths and weight than capital letters from the same font that have been reduced to the height of designed small capitals (you can clearly see that the strokes in the faked capitals in Figure 9.4 are much too thin).

 *Avoid faked small capitals*

While some shapes are mutually exclusive (such as upright, italic, or oblique shapes), it is quite possible to have italic or oblique small capitals, and these days there are in fact quite a number of fonts that offer such shape combinations.¹

There are a few other, less important shapes. Some families contain fonts in which the inner parts of the letters are drawn in a special fashion, for example “outline” shapes, in which the inner parts of the letters are kept empty. For display purposes, some families also contain fonts that could be classified as “shaded” — that is, where the letters appear three-dimensional. Examples are shown in Figure 9.5 on the following page.

Weight and width

Fonts of a certain shape within a family may differ in “weight”. This characteristic refers to the thickness of the strokes used to draw the individual shapes. Once again, the commonly used names are not completely uniform, but it is relatively easy to arrive at a consistent classification. Some font manufacturers, for example, call the font weights intended to be used for normal text “book”, while others call them “medium”. For thin strokes the name “light” is commonplace, while thicker strokes are usually called “bold”. In larger font families, finer distinctions are often necessary, so that we sometimes find a range starting with “ultra light”, going through “extra light”, “light”, “semi light”, and so on, and ending with “ultra bold” at the other end. Conversely, often only a few weights are present in some families. For example, the Computer Modern Roman family has only two weights, “medium” and “bold”.

Another equally important attribute of a font is its “width” — the amount of expansion or contraction with respect to the normal or medium width in the family. Computer Modern Roman has bold fonts in “**medium width**” and “**extended width**” but no fonts that are condensed.

One application for condensed fonts is in titles and headings, where medium-width fonts, when used at large sizes, would consume too much space. Some typesetting systems can even condense fonts automatically to fit a given measure — for example, to exactly fill a particular line in a heading. However, this always means a

¹ When L^AT_EX’s font selection mechanism was developed, that was not the case, so in that implementation it was impossible to ask for something like italic small capitals. This was finally changed in 2020, and now such combinations can be specified.

The L^AT_EX Companion

Figure 9.5: Outline and shaded shapes

reduction in quality, and beyond a certain point it becomes aesthetically questionable.

These days this capability is possible with T_EX as well, basically as part of the improvements in font management introduced with pdfT_EX. The `microtype` package offers an interface to this; see the discussion on font expansion and contraction in Section 3.1.3 on page 129.

Font sizes

Font sizes are traditionally measured in printer points (pt). There are 72.27 points to an inch.¹ The font size is not an absolute measure of any particular characteristic, but rather a value chosen by the font designer to guide the user. For example, in a 10pt font, letters of the alphabet are usually less than 10pt tall, and only characters such as parentheses have approximately this height.

Two fonts of the same size may therefore not blend well with one another because the appearance of a font depends on many factors, such as the height of the lowercase letters (the x-height), the stroke width, and the depth of the descenders (the part of the letters below the baseline, as in the letter q).

Historically fonts in the (L^A)T_EX world have been usually made available in sizes that are powers of 1.2 — that is, in a geometric progression [84, p.17]. This arrangement was chosen because it makes it easy to produce an enlarged master copy that later can be photographically reduced, thereby effectively enlarging the final output resolution. For example, if an A5 brochure is to be produced, one could print it with magnification of $1.44 \approx \sqrt{2}$ on A4 paper. Photographic reduction from the 300dpi (dots per inch) output of a normal laser printer would produce an effective output resolution of 432dpi and thus would give higher quality than is normally possible with such a laser printer.

However, this geometric ratio scheme used by (L^A)T_EX fonts produced with the METAFONT program is not common in the professional world, where usual point sizes are 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 24, 30, and 36. Yet not all fonts are available in all these sizes, and sometimes additional sizes are offered — such as display sizes for large headings and tiny sizes for subscripts and superscripts.

The requirement for fixed sizes had its origin in the technology used. Fonts cast in metal had to exist (at a particular size) or you could not print in that size. In today's digitalized world, fonts are usually vectorized and thus can be scaled at will. As a result, many commercial font families nowadays are provided in only a single design size. L^AT_EX followed this trend and nowadays supports arbitrary font sizes,

¹PostScript and PDF use a slightly different measurement system in which 72 points equal an inch. This unit, sometimes referred to as “big points”, is available in T_EX as bp.

Ten point type is quite different from magnified five point type

Figure 9.6: Scaled and designed fonts (Latin Modern)

even though there are many places where at least in terms of defaults the origins show through.

The use of magnified or reduced fonts instead of fonts designed for a specific size often gives somewhat less satisfactory results, because to the human eye fonts do not scale in a linear fashion. The characters in handcrafted fonts of larger sizes usually are narrower than fonts magnified from a smaller size of the same family. While it is acceptable to scale fonts within a small size range if necessary, one should use fonts designed for the desired size whenever possible. The difference between fonts scaled to a particular size and those designed for that size is shown in Figure 9.6, though admittedly the variations are often less noticeable.

9.2.4 Font encodings

As mentioned in the chapter introduction, pdfTeX refers to the glyphs of a font by addressing them via 8-bit numbers. Such a mapping is called a font encoding. As far as L^AT_EX is concerned, two fonts having the same font encoding are supposed to be interchangeable in the sense that given the same input they produce the “same” glyphs on the printed page. To illustrate what happens if we use a font with an encoding not suitable for our input, here is the first sentence of this section again (using the Zapf Dingbats font):


☆▲ ○※■▼※□■※※ ※■ ▼※※ ※※※□▼※□ ※■▼□※※※▼※□■※ □※※※※
 □※※※□▲ ▼□ ▼※※ ※○□※▲ □※ ※ □■▼ □■ ※※□※▲▲※※※ ▼※※○
 ※※※ ×↗※※▼ ■◆○※□▲☞

The result is an interesting puzzle, but nothing that we want to see in ordinary documents.

By classifying fonts according to their font encodings it is possible to modify other font characteristics, such as font family or font series, and still ensure that the typeset result stays comprehensible.

Unicode engines

In Unicode engines such as X₃L^AT_EX and LuaL^AT_EX the situation is different because these engines use the Unicode character number to access a glyph in a font. Thus, there is only a single encoding to deal with, which in theory makes life much simpler. Unfortunately, this is only partly correct, simply because no font contains all Unicode characters, and if you ask for characters that do not exist, you end up with missing glyphs in the printed result (with unfortunately very little warning). Even if for L^AT_EX there is only a single encoding, in reality, only a subset of that encoding is normally implemented by a font — so technically it is a step forward and a step back at the same time.

 *Tofu alert with
Unicode engines*

Such missing glyphs are often rendered as little squares, which got nicknamed “tofu” sometimes. With NFSS, \LaTeX became largely “tofu” free by rigorously requiring that fonts that claim to be in a specific encoding implement all characters of that encoding. Now with Unicode this problem is back. Google’s answer to it was the development of the Noto font, which stands for “**no** more **tofu**” and aims to support all languages with a harmonious look and feel. Noto is available to \LaTeX users (see Section 10.2.12 on page –II 26), but in most other cases you have to watch out for “tofu”.

OT1 encoding

The fonts that were originally distributed with \TeX had only 128 glyphs per font and therefore did not include any accented characters as individual glyphs. Instead, all such glyphs had to be constructed using the `\accent` primitive of \TeX or by similar methods. As a result any word containing diacritics could not be automatically hyphenated by \LaTeX , and kerning (correction of spacing between certain letters in the font) was not automatically applied. The encoding of these fonts is called OT1. Although it still remains the default encoding for \LaTeX (for backwards compatibility with older documents), it is not advisable to use OT1 for languages other than English.¹

T1 encoding

As an alternative encoding, the \TeX user community defined a 256-character encoding called T1 that enables \TeX to typeset correctly (with proper hyphenation and kerning) in more than 30 languages based on the Latin alphabet (see Section 9.5.1 on page 684 for further details). The use of the T1 encoding is, therefore, highly recommended with pdf \TeX . Nowadays nearly all font families amenable to use with \LaTeX are available in this encoding; in fact, some are available *only* in the T1 encoding.

Specifying `\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}` after the `\documentclass` command makes T1 become the default encoding. Section 9.5.5 contains a more detailed discussion of the `fontenc` package. For more on font encodings refer to page 736 and Section 9.9 on page 754.

Unicode engines

TU encoding

While it is to some extent possible to use 8-bit encodings such as T1 or even OT1 with Unicode engines, it is better in that case to use Unicode fonts and thus use Unicode as the encoding. In \LaTeX this encoding is called TU and automatically made the default if \LaTeX is used with such an engine.

9.3 Using fonts in text

When you are writing a \LaTeX document, appropriate fonts are normally chosen automatically by the (logical) markup tags used to structure the document. For example, the font attributes for a section heading, such as large size and bold weight, are defined by the document class and applied when a `\section` command is used so that you seldom need to specify font attributes yourself.

However, occasionally it becomes necessary to specify font attributes directly. One common reason is the desire to change the overall font attributes, by choosing,

¹ Even with English there are issues if you use typewriter fonts.

for example, a different font family for the main text. This alteration often can be done by simply specifying an appropriate package (see Chapter 10 for descriptions of such packages).

Another use for explicit font attributes can be to mark certain portions of the document as special — for example, to denote acronyms, example, or company names. For instance, in this book, names of packages are formatted in a sans serif font. This formatting could be achieved by surrounding the names with `\textsf{. . .}`, but it is much better practice to define a new command (say, `\pkg`) for this purpose so that additional information is included in the source document. By defining individual commands for logically different things — even those that are currently being typeset in the same way — it is easier to change the formatting later in a consistent way.


Last, but not least, in some cases you may want to override a decision taken by the document class. For example, you might want to typeset a table in a smaller size to make it fit on a page. This desire is legitimate, as document classes can format documents automatically only to a certain extent. Hand-formatting — like the insertion of page breaks — is thus often necessary to create the final version. Unfortunately, explicit formatting makes further use of the document (if changes are made) difficult and error prone. Therefore, as with all visual formatting commands, you should try to minimize the direct use of font-changing commands in a document.

9.3.1 Standard L^AT_EX font commands

The font used for the main text of a document is called the “main font”, “body font”, or “normal font”. It is automatically selected at the beginning of the document and in certain constructs, such as footnotes, and figures. Certain logical markup tags, such as section headings, automatically switch to a different typeface or size, depending on the document class. These changes happen behind the scenes, and the only action required of the author is to introduce the correct logical markup in the document. However, sometimes it might be desirable to manually highlight individual parts of the text, by choosing an appropriate typeface; this is done with the commands described below.

Most font-changing commands come in two forms: a command with one argument, such as `\textbf{. . .}`, and a declarative form, such as `\bfseries`. The declarations do not take arguments but rather instruct L^AT_EX that from now on (up to the end of the current group of braces or environments) it should behave in a special way. Thus, you should not write something like `\bfseries{. . .}`, as this would make everything bold from this point until the end of the current environment; instead use `{\bfseries. . .}` or `\textbf{. . .}` if you want to restrict the font change to a small portion of the text.

To change the fonts for individual words or short phrases within your document you should make use of the font commands with one argument. The declarative forms are often better in the definition of new environments or commands. For longer passages in your document, you can also use the environment form of the declaration (the declarative name without the preceding backslash), as shown in the following example. Notice that you need to be careful with spaces; e.g., if the word “typeset” is

 *Be careful not to
add extra spaces
in the output*

not placed immediately after the start of the environment, there would be two spaces at this point (see the end of the environment where it is done incorrectly).

Some words in this sentence are **typeset in bold letters.**

Some words in this sentence are
`\begin{bfseries}typeset` in bold letters.

The bold typeface continues here.

The bold typeface `\end{bfseries}` continues here.

9-3-1

In fact, the font commands with one argument do not allow paragraph breaks in their arguments. Section 9.3.2 on page 666 contains a detailed comparison of the command and declarative forms and their advantages and disadvantages in specific cases.

Standard font families

By default, \LaTeX maintains three font families that can be selected with short command sequences. These families are a serified text font, accessed with the command `\textrm`; a sans serif text font, accessed by `\textsf`; and a typewriter font (usually monospaced), accessed by `\texttt`. The declaration forms of these commands are `\rmfamily`, `\sffamily`, and `\ttfamily`, respectively.

The names of the external font families accessed by these commands depend on the document class but can be changed by packages or in the preamble (see Section 9.3.6). As an installation default, the serified font family is Computer Modern Roman, the sans serif family is Computer Modern Sans, and the typewriter family is Computer Modern Typewriter. If you use a different setup, take care to define these default families so that the fonts can be mixed freely without visual clashes.

Unicode engines

The Unicode engines \XeTeX and \LuaTeX use Latin Modern fonts that are similar to Computer Modern but exist in TU encoding.

In this book, the serified font family is Lucida Bright, the sans serif family is Lucida Sans, and the typewriter family is Latin Modern Typewriter. These have been chosen by simply¹ loading the package `lucidabr` and afterwards redefining `\ttdefault` to produce `lmtt`; see Section 9.3.6 for more details on changing the default text fonts.

In most document classes, the serified font, accessed by `\textrm`, is also the main font of the document, so the command `\textrm` is not used often. If a document designer has chosen a sans serif font as the main typeface, then `\textrm` would be the alternative serified font family.

Standard font series

Another attribute of a typeface that can be changed is the *series*. In \LaTeX the series is a combination of two attributes: width and weight (boldness). \LaTeX provides two high-level commands for changing the series: `\textmd` and `\textbf`. The corresponding

¹ Somewhat more truthful: for the third edition of this book the Lucida fonts were scaled down slightly, while the Latin Modern Typewriter was scaled up to match the x-height of both families using specially designed `\DeclareFontShape` declarations.

declarations are `\mdseries` and `\bfseries`, respectively. The first command selects a font with medium values for the width and the weight, while the latter switches to a bolder series. The actual values depend on the document class and its options or subsequent packages. As a default for the Computer Modern families, `\textbf` switches to a bold extended version of the current typeface, while `\textmd` returns to the medium width and medium weight version of the current typeface.

If finer control over the series attribute is desired, it is best to define additional high-level user commands with the help of the lower-level `\fontseries` declaration described in Section 9.7.1. Some packages that make large font families available for use with \LaTeX provide such extra commands.

It is also possible to adjust the default behavior of the font series commands with the help of `\DeclareFontSeriesDefault` declarations, something that is often done by packages implementing new font families; see Section 9.3.6 on page 673 for details.

Standard font shapes

A third font attribute that may be changed independently of the others is the *shape* of the current typeface. The default shape for most documents is the upright shape with upper and lowercase letters. It can be accessed, if necessary, with the declaration `\normalshape` (there is no accompanying command form: `\textnormal` exists but resets *all* font attributes to the document font).

Probably the most important command for changing the shape is `\textit` (declaration form `\itshape`), which switches to an *italic* font shape. An alternative to `\textit` is the `\textsl` command (its declaration form is `\slshape`), which switches to the slanted or oblique shape. A font family often contains only an italic or a slanted shape, yet Computer Modern Roman and some other families contain both. If the request cannot be met because the shape does not exist, NFSS normally uses slanted as an approximation for italic and vice versa.

Some font families (especially in the commercial world) offer swash letter fonts that contain glyphs with typographical embellishments such as exaggerated serifs, long tails, extra strokes, etc. In most cases such letters have an otherwise italic design, but this is not always the case. In \LaTeX this shape (if available) can be selected with `\textsw` or `\swshape`.

At the point where one switches from slanted or italic to upright, the characters usually come too close together, especially if the last slanted character has an ascender. The proper amount of extra white space that should be added at this boundary is called the “italic correction”. The value of this adjustment depends on the individual character shape and is stored in the `.tfm` file.

The italic correction is automatically added by the font commands with arguments, but it must be inserted manually using `\/` when declarations are employed. For an upright font, the italic correction of the characters is usually zero or very small, but there are some exceptions. (In Computer Modern, to typeset a bold “f” in single quotes, you should say `\{\bfseries f\}` or `\textbf{f}`, lest you get a bold ‘f’ in some fonts.) In slanted or italic fonts, the italic correction is usually positive, with the actual value depending on the shape of the character. The correct usage

of shape-changing declarations that switch to slanted shapes is shown in the next example:

When switching back from *italic* or *slanted* shapes to an upright font one should add the *italic correction*, except when a small punctuation character follows; e.g., a comma or a period.

```
\raggedright      When switching back from
{\itshape italic\} or {\slshape slanted\}
shapes to an upright font one should add the
{\itshape italic correction}, except when a
small punctuation character follows; e.g.,
a comma or a period.
```

9-3-2

If you use the command forms with one argument instead, the italic correction is added automatically. This topic is further discussed in Section 9.3.2.

A similarly important shape is `\textsc` (or `\scshape` as declaration), which switches to CAPS AND SMALL CAPS. This is arguably not a “shape” as it is really independent of italic or slanted, and these days many font families contain several SMALL CAPS variants and not just a single upright one.¹

Font selection
enhancements in
2020

For this reason `\textsc` is handled since 2020 in a new way, in that NFSS treats the “letter case status” as independent from the other shapes. For example, if you are currently typesetting in an italic shape, then `\textsc` attempts to use an italic Small Caps variant of the current font (if available) and does not switch unconditionally to an upright Small Caps shape as it did when NFSS was introduced.

Similarly, when you are typesetting in italic or slanted Small Caps, then `\textup` or `\upshape` switches to an upright font, but the request for small capitals remains honored. Instead, to explicitly get back to upper/lowercase letters there is `\textulc` or `\ulcshape`.

Compatibility
behavior of
`\upshape`

However, if the current shape is upright Small Caps, then both `\textup` and `\upshape` cancel the Small Caps and return to the normal shape instead of doing nothing. This is done for compatibility reasons, because in the past people could write `\scshape . . . \upshape` instead of writing `\textsc{ . . . }`, so this usage is still supported.

Of course, all this works only if the font family offers these shapes (L^AT_EX’s standard font families do not), but if you look at Chapter 10, you find that many font families provide italic or slanted small capitals. Here is one example using Alegreya and Alegreya Sans:

Alegreya is one of *the many font families where SMALL CAPITALS are available in italics* as well as in UPRIGHT SHAPE. Thus, nesting `\textit` and `\textsc` produces the desired results, as proven above.

```
\usepackage{Alegreya,AlegreyaSans}
```

```
Alegreya is one of \textit{the many font families
where \textsc{Small \textsf{Capitals}} are
available in italics} as well as in
\textsc{Upright \textsf{Shape}}}.
Thus, nesting \verb=\textit= and \verb=\textsc=
produces the desired results, as proven above.
```

9-3-3

¹ When NFSS was originally developed at the beginning of the '90s, that was not the case, and only a few commercial fonts had more than a single Small Caps variant. Therefore, this font attribute was modeled as a shape so that `\itshape\scshape` would stop *italics* and start UPRIGHT SMALL CAPS.

Small capitals are sometimes used as the shape in headings or to format names in running text. For the latter case you can, for example, define an abstraction such as `\name` with the definition

```
\newcommand\name[1]{\textsc{#1}}
```

or, using two declarations:

```
\newcommand\name[1]{\normalfont\scshape #1}
```

The first definition simply switches to the desired letter case shape, while the second form initially resets all font attributes to their defaults. Which approach is preferable depends on the available fonts and the type of document. With Computer Modern only the Roman and typewriter families contain a Small Caps shape, so the second definition might be preferred in certain applications because it uses small capitals (though serified) even in a `\sffamily` context. The first command would result in a request for a medium series, Small Caps shaped font in the Computer Modern Sans family. Because this font does not exist, \LaTeX would try to find a substitute by first changing the shape attribute to its default, with the result that you would not get small capitals. (See Section 9.7.3 for further information about substitutions.)

Another interesting use of the `\textsc` command is in the definition of an acronym tag:

```
\newcommand\acro[1]{\textsc{\MakeLowercase{#1}}}
```

This definition makes use of the \LaTeX command `\MakeLowercase`, which changes all characters within its argument to lowercase (in contrast to the \TeX primitive `\lowercase`, this command also changes characters referred to by commands, such as `\OE`, to lowercase). As a result, all characters in the argument of `\acro` are changed to lowercase and therefore typeset with small capitals.

Another slightly special shape command available in \LaTeX is the `\emph` command. This command denotes emphasis in normal text; the corresponding declaration is `\em`. Traditionally, emphasized words in text are set in italic; if emphasis is desired in an already italicized portion of the text, one usually returns to the upright font. The `\emph` command supports this convention by switching to the `\itshape` shape if the current font is upright, and to the `\upshape` shape if the current font is already slanted (i.e., if the shape is `\itshape` or `\slshape`). Thus, the user does not have to worry about the current state of the text when using the `\emph` command or the `\em` declaration. However, if `\em` is used, one needs to take care of any necessary italic correction, so using `\emph` is usually the better choice.

Providing emphasis

Nevertheless, one has to be careful about the proper use of italic corrections on both ends of the emphasized text. It is therefore better to use the `\emph` command, which *automatically* takes care of the italic correction on both sides.

`{\em Nevertheless, one has to be careful about the/ {\em proper\}/ use of italic corrections on both ends of the emphasized text}. It is therefore better to use the \verb=\emph= command, which \emph{automatically} takes care of the italic correction on both sides.`

Using the upright shape for nested emphasis is not always very noticeable. A common typographic recommendation is, therefore, to use small capitals for the inner emphasis. This practice is supported by standard L^AT_EX through the command `\eminnershape`. If the font supports italic small capitals, you have a choice for the inner shape as shown in the example (upright small capitals may work better). The example uses the `fbb` fonts, a version of Cardo.

One should therefore *prefer the command form over the DECLARATION because the former automatically inserts the proper italic correction on both ends of EMPHASIZED text.*

```
\usepackage{fbb}
\renewcommand\eminnershape{\upshape\scshape}
One should therefore \emph{prefer the command form
over the \emph{declaration} because the former
automatically inserts the proper italic correction
\renewcommand\eminnershape{\scshape}% keep italics
on both ends of \emph{emphasized} text}.
```

9-3-5

Nowadays L^AT_EX also offers a generalized way of managing nested emphasis in which you can for each level specify how emphasis should be handled.

Font selection
enhancements in
2020



```
\DeclareEmphSequence{font-declarations} \emreset \emforce
```

The command `\DeclareEmphSequence` expects a comma-separated list of *font-declarations* corresponding to increasing levels of emphasis. For example,

```
\DeclareEmphSequence{\itshape,\upshape\scshape,\itshape}
```

uses italics for the first, small capitals for the second, and italic small capitals for the third level (provided you use a font that supports these shapes). If there are more nesting levels than provided, L^AT_EX uses the declarations stored in `\emreset` (by default `\ulcshape\upshape`) for the next level and then restarts the list.

The mechanism tries to be “smart” and verifies that the given declarations actually alter the current font. If not, it continues and tries the next level — the assumption being that there was already a manual font change in the document to the font that is now supposed to be used for emphasis.

Of course, this check works correctly only if the declarations in the list entries actually change the font and not, for example, just the color. In such a scenario one has to add `\emforce` to the entry, which directs the mechanism to use the level, even if it cannot detect any font attribute changes.

Sections 3.4.4 and 3.4.6 discussed packages that change `\em` to produce underlining. If they are used to change `\emph`, then the above mechanism is turned off. Note, however, that underlining for emphasis is considered bad practice in the publishing world. Underlining is used only when the output device cannot do highlighting in another way — for example, when using a typewriter.

The following example shows most of the possibilities: 1a. and 1b. exhibit L^AT_EX’s standard behavior. In 2a. and 2b. we loop through italics, small capitals, italic small capitals, and then reset to upright and repeat. Note that in 3a. the mechanism concludes that there is no font change in the second level and therefore applies the third

level too. Thus, the word “second” comes out already in blue bold italics. In 3b. the command `\emforce` is added so that now we get blue italics on the second level.

	<code>\usepackage{tgpagella,color}</code>
	<code>\newcommand\testnesting[1]{#1.\ \emph{First \emph{second</code>
	<code>\emph{third \emph{fourth \emph{fifth}}}}}\par}</code>
1a. <i>First second third fourth fifth</i>	<code>\testnesting{1a} \textit{\testnesting{1b}}</code>
1b. <i>First second third fourth fifth</i>	<code>\DeclareEmphSequence{\itshape,\upshape\scshape,\itshape}</code>
2a. <i>First SECOND THIRD fourth fifth</i>	<code>\testnesting{2a} \textit{\testnesting{2b}}</code>
2b. <i>FIRST SECOND third fourth FIFTH</i>	<code>\DeclareEmphSequence{\itshape,\color{blue},\bfseries,</code>
3a. <i>First second THIRD fourth fifth</i>	<code>\normalcolor\scshape} \testnesting{3a}</code>
3b. <i>First second third FOURTH fifth</i>	<code>\DeclareEmphSequence{\itshape,\emforce\color{blue},</code>
	<code>\bfseries,\color{black}\scshape} \testnesting{3b}</code>

9-3-6

Standard font sizes

Out of the box, L^AT_EX offers ten size-changing commands (see Table 9.1 on the following page). They only change the size of the current font, with all other attributes staying the same. Because size changes are normally used only in the definition of commands, they have no corresponding command forms with one argument.

The size selected by these commands depends on the settings in the document class file and possibly on options (e.g., 11pt) specified with it. In general, `\normalsize` corresponds to the main size of the document, and the size-changing commands form an ordered sequence starting with `\tiny` as the smallest and going up to `\Huge` as the largest size. Sometimes more than one command refers to the same real size; for example, when a large `\normalsize` is chosen, `\Huge` can be the same as `\huge`. In any event, the order is always honored.¹

The size-related commands for the main text sizes (i.e., `\normalsize`, `\small`, and `\footnotesize`) typically influence the spacing around lists and displays as well. Thus, to change their behavior, one should not simply replace their definition by a call to `\fontsize`, but instead start from their original definitions, as documented in `classes.dtx`.

Unfortunately, there is no relative size-changing command in L^AT_EX — for example, there is no command for requesting a size 2pt larger than the current one. This issue is partially resolved with the `relsize` package described in Section 9.3.7 on page 675.

The main document font

To reset all font attributes to their default, i.e., to switch to the main document font, you can use the command `\textnormal` or the declaration `\normalfont`. They are typically used only in the definition of commands or environments when it is important to define commands that always typeset in the same font regardless of the

¹The reason that size commands are sometimes identical to others is historical: in the early days of L^AT_EX fonts have been available only in a few discrete sizes, and this restriction was reflected in the document classes that are still in use today.

Command	Example	Command	Example	Command	Example
<code>\tiny</code>	Size	<code>\normalsize</code>	Size		
<code>\scriptsize</code>	Size	<code>\large</code>	Size	<code>\huge</code>	Size
<code>\footnotesize</code>	Size	<code>\Large</code>	Size		Size
<code>\small</code>	Size	<code>\LARGE</code>	Size	<code>\Huge</code>	Size

The actual sizes shown above are those specially tailored for use in this book

Table 9.1: Standard size-changing commands

surrounding conditions. For example, the command to typeset the command names in this book is defined roughly as follows:

```
\newcommand\lcs[1]{\normalfont\ttfamily\textbackslash#1}%
\index{#1@\normalfont\ttfamily\textbackslash#1}}
```

Using `\normalfont` prevents the command names coming out *like* `\this` in certain places. The command does not reset the font color if that got altered. For that task there exists the command `\normalcolor`.

9.3.2 Font commands versus declarations

We have already seen some examples of font commands that have arguments and change font attributes. These font-changing commands with arguments all start with `\text...` (except for the `\emph` command) to emphasize that they are intended for use in normal text and to make them easily memorizable. Using such commands instead of the declarative forms has the advantage of maintaining consistency with other \LaTeX constructs. They are intended for typesetting short pieces of text in a specific family, series, or shape. Table 9.2 on the facing page shows the effects of these commands.

A further advantage of these commands is that they automatically insert any necessary italic correction on either side of their argument. As a consequence, one no longer has to worry about forgetting the italic correction when changing fonts.

Only in a very few situations is this additional space wrong. For example, most typographers recommend omitting the italic correction if a small punctuation character, like a comma, directly follows the font change. As the amount of correction required is partly a matter of taste, you can define in which situations the italic correction should be suppressed. This is done by specifying the characters that should cancel a preceding italic correction in the list `\nocorrlist`.¹ The default definition for this command is

```
\newcommand{\nocorrlist}{, .}
```

¹Any package that changes the `\catcode` of a character inside `\nocorrlist` must redeclare the list. Otherwise, the changed character is no longer recognized by the suppression algorithm.

<i>Command</i>	<i>Corresponds to</i>	<i>Action</i>
<i>Changing families</i>		
<code>\textrm{...}</code>	<code>{\rmfamily ...}</code>	Typeset text in the document's roman family
<code>\textsf{...}</code>	<code>{\sffamily ...}</code>	Typeset text in the document's sans serif family
<code>\texttt{...}</code>	<code>{\ttfamily ...}</code>	Typeset text in the document's typewriter family
<i>Changing series</i>		
<code>\textmd{...}</code>	<code>{\mdseries ...}</code>	Typeset text in medium series
<code>\textbf{...}</code>	<code>{\bfseries ...}</code>	Typeset text in bold series
<i>Changing shape</i>		
<code>\textit{...}</code>	<code>{\itshape ...}</code>	Typeset text in <i>italic</i> shape
<code>\textsl{...}</code>	<code>{\slshape ...}</code>	Typeset text in <i>slanted or oblique</i> shape
<code>\textsw{...}</code>	<code>{\swshape ...}</code>	Typeset text in <i>Swash Letter Shape</i> (if supported)
<code>\textup{...}</code>	<code>{\upshape ...}</code>	Cancel italics, slanted, or swash and return to upright
<code>\textsc{...}</code>	<code>{\scshape ...}</code>	Typeset text in SMALL CAPS shape (orthogonal to the above)
<code>\textulc{...}</code>	<code>{\ulcshape ...}</code>	CANCEL ANY EARLIER Small Caps request
<i>Special changes</i>		
<code>\emph{...}</code>	<code>{\em ...}</code>	Typeset text <i>emphasized</i>
<code>\textnormal{...}</code>	<code>{\normalfont ...}</code> <code>{\normalshape ...}</code>	Typeset text in the document font Reset only the shape (no <code>\text...</code> variant available!)

Table 9.2: Standard font-changing commands and declarations

It is best to declare the most often used characters first, as it makes the processing slightly faster.

In addition to the global customization, it is possible to suppress the italic correction in individual instances. For this purpose, the command `\nocorr` is provided. Note that you have to put `\nocorr` on the left or right end inside the argument of the `\emph` or `\text...` commands, depending on which side of the text you wish to suppress the italic correction.

When using the L^AT_EX high-level font commands, the proper use of italic corrections is automatically taken care of. Only very seldom one has to help L^AT_EX by adding `\nocorr`; e.g., to avoid f_1 and instead get f_1 .

`\emph{When using the LATEX high-level font commands, the \emph{proper} use of italic corrections is \emph{automatically} taken care of}. Only \emph{very seldom} one has to help LATEX by adding \verb=\nocorr=; e.g., to avoid \textit{f}\textsubscript{1} and instead get \textit{f\nocorr}\textsubscript{1}.`

In contrast, the use of the declaration forms is often more appropriate when you define your own commands or environments because this way you can make long-ranging changes across multiple paragraphs.

- *This environment produces a list with italic text.*
- *It is defined in terms of the `itemize` environment and NFSS declarations.*

```
\newenvironment{ititemize}{\begin{itemize}%
\normalfont\itshape\raggedright}{\end{itemize}}
\begin{ititemize}
\item This environment produces a list with italic text.
\item It is defined in terms of the \texttt{itemize}
environment and NFSS declarations.
\end{ititemize}
```

9-3-8

9.3.3 Combining standard font commands

As already shown, the standard font-changing commands and declarations can be combined. The result is the selection of a typeface that matches the combination of all font attributes. For example:

One can typeset a text **in a large sans serif bold typeface** but note the unchanged leading! \LaTeX uses the value in force at the *end* of the paragraph!

One can typeset a text `{\sffamily\bfseries \large in a large sans serif bold typeface}` but note the unchanged leading! \LaTeX uses the value in force at the `\emph{end}` of the paragraph!

9-3-9

What happens behind the scenes is that the `\sffamily` command switches to the sans serif default family, then `\bfseries` switches to the default bold series in this family, and finally `\large` selects a large size but leaves all other font attributes unchanged (the leading appears to be unchanged because the scope of `\large` ends before the end of the paragraph). Font metric files (i.e., `.tfm` files) are loaded for all intermediate typefaces, even if these fonts are never used. In the preceding example, they would be “sans serif medium 10pt” after the `\sffamily`, then “sans serif bold extended 10pt” after the `\bfseries`, and then “sans serif bold extended 14pt”, which is the font that is finally used.


Thus, such high-level commands can force \LaTeX ’s font selection to unnecessarily load fonts that are never used. This normally does not matter, except for a small loss of processing speed when a given combination is used for the first time. However, if you have many different combinations of this type, you should consider defining them in terms of the primitive font-changing declarations (see Section 9.7).

When NFSS was originally designed, it provided five font attributes that one could independently change: the font encoding, the family, the series, the shape and the font size. While this was a suitable compromise back then, given the available fonts, it turned out to be not flexible enough when more and more font families became available that supported additional shapes and further series values.

For example, requesting small capitals (with `\textsc` or `\scshape`) while typesetting in italics would cancel the italics and change to upright small capitals because both were “shapes” and thus mutually exclusive. However, nowadays many fonts

offer italic small capitals, so that behavior was semi-optimal at best. This gave rise to packages such as `fontaxes` (by Andreas Böhmann and Michael Ummels), which extended NFSS by splitting the shapes into two subgroups so that italic small capitals could be selected by using `\itshape\scshape`.

With the 2020 release, L^AT_EX's font selection mechanism was extended to support such features by default: it is now possible to combine different shapes (where it makes sense), and in a similar way the series attribute (which originally combined both width and weight) was also split, so that it is now possible to alter the weight attribute (i.e., how bold or light a font is), while retaining the width, e.g., using condensed fonts. For the series this requires the use of lower-level interfaces that are described in Section 9.7.1 on page 731, but to show the possibilities the next example uses the Roboto font family showing a line with regular bold and light text, followed by a similar line but with all fonts condensed.

 *Font selection
enhancements in
2020*

First regular width:
"A **Roboto** line with light text."

```
\usepackage[sfdefault]{roboto}
First regular width:\\ 'A \textbf{Roboto} line with
{\fontseries{l}\selectfont light} text.'
```

Condensed width for comparison:
"A **Roboto** line with light text."

```
\bigskip\fontseries{c}\selectfont
Condensed width for comparison:\\ 'A \textbf{Roboto}
line with {\fontseries{l}\selectfont light} text.'
```

9-3-10

9.3.4 Accessing all characters of a font

Sometimes it is impossible to enter a character directly from the keyboard, even though the character exists in the font. Therefore, many useful characters are accessible via command names like `\ss` or `\AE`, which produce "ß" and "Æ", respectively. Some characters can also be implicitly generated from sequences of letters (this is a property of fonts) like `ffi`, which produces "ffi", and `---`, which produces "—" in the standard T_EX fonts.

In addition, the command `\symbol` allows you to access any character in a font by giving its number in the current encoding scheme as either a decimal, octal (preceded by `'`), or hexadecimal (preceded by `"`) number.

Using the `\symbol` command you can access any glyph in a font, if you know its position in the encoding. For example, `\P`, `\$` or `_`.

However, if available, standard text commands are preferable, because they work correctly in different font encodings.

```
\fontencoding{T1}\selectfont
```

Using the `\verb=\symbol=` command you can access any glyph in a font, if you know its position in the encoding. For example, `\symbol{"DE}`, `\symbol{'237}` or `\symbol{32}`. `\par`
However, if available, standard text commands are preferable, because they work correctly in different font encodings.


9-3-11

The numbers corresponding to the characters in a font can be obtained by using the program `nfssfont.tex`, described in Section 9.5.9 on page 705.

When using a Unicode TeX engine, you can access arbitrary Unicode characters with the help of the `\symbol` command, provided the current font contains the glyph. It is usually best to specify it as a hexadecimal number as that corresponds to the typical notation you find in font tables, e.g., "00DE or "DE for the capital letter Thorn.

However, remember that there is little warning if the font does not contain the glyph as shown in the next example, which compiles without errors, if we do not set `\tracinglostchars` to 3.

A good way to find the right number in large Unicode fonts is to use the file `unicodfont.tex` or the package `unicodfonttable`, both described in Section 9.6.7 on page 728. The next example shows such direct access to a glyph that you find only in the private area of some fonts on Mac computers.

Fonts on a Macintosh often contain an Apple  symbol, but do not expect the apple '◻' to show up with other fonts.


```
\usepackage{fontspec}
\setmainfont{TeX Gyre Pagella} \setsansfont{Optima}
\tracinglostchars=3 % set this to get lost char errors
\sffamily Fonts on a Macintosh often contain an Apple
\symbol{"F8FF} symbol, \rmfamily but do not expect the
apple '\symbol{"F8FF}' to show up with other fonts.
```

9-3-12

In the above example the missing glyph shows up as a little square; in other fonts it might simply not display anything. This is why it is important, especially in Unicode engines where this can happen more easily, to set `\tracinglostchars` to 3, to get an error message in such situations.

9.3.5 L^AT_EX 2.09 font support — Compatibility for really ancient documents

More than a quarter century ago L^AT_EX 2_ε replaced L^AT_EX 2.09 as the standard L^AT_EX format. With it the two-letter font commands, such as `\bf`, became obsolete and in fact are no longer defined by L^AT_EX 2_ε directly.

*Do not use `\bf`
and friends* 

Old habits die hard, and even nowadays you still see them sometimes used in questions to Stack Exchange and elsewhere. For compatibility reasons the standard classes provide definitions for these commands that emulate their behavior in L^AT_EX 2.09 so they work if such a class is used, but modern classes not based on `article` or `book` often do not define them. So it is best to finally break with this habit and exclusively use the (now no longer) new `\textbf` and companions instead.

For package developer this is a *must* as otherwise the package may function only in some circumstances.

9.3.6 Changing the default text fonts

To make it easier to modify the overall appearance of a document, L^AT_EX provides a set of built-in hooks that modify the behavior of the high-level font-changing commands

<i>Hook</i>	<i>Default value</i>		<i>Description</i>
	(pdfTeX)	(XeTeX/LuaTeX)	
<code>\encodingdefault</code>	OT1	TU	Encoding scheme for “main font”
<code>\familydefault</code>	<code>\rmdefault</code>		Family selected for “main font”
<code>\seriesdefault</code>	m		Series selected for “main font”
<code>\shapedefault</code>	n		Shape selected for “main font”
<code>\rmdefault</code>	cmr	lmr	Family selected by <code>\rmfamily</code> and <code>\textrm</code>
<code>\sfdefault</code>	cmss	lmss	Family selected by <code>\sffamily</code> and <code>\textsf</code>
<code>\ttdefault</code>	cmtt	lmtt	Family selected by <code>\ttfamily</code> and <code>\texttt</code>
<code>\bfdefault</code>	b or bx ^a		Series selected by <code>\bfseries</code> and <code>\textbf</code>
<code>\mddefault</code>	m		Series selected by <code>\mdseries</code> and <code>\textmd</code>
<code>\updefault</code>	up ^b		Shape selected by <code>\upshape</code> and <code>\textup</code>
<code>\itdefault</code>	it		Shape selected by <code>\itshape</code> and <code>\textit</code>
<code>\sldefault</code>	sl		Shape selected by <code>\slshape</code> and <code>\textsl</code>
<code>\swdefault</code>	sw		Shape selected by <code>\swshape</code> and <code>\textsw</code>
<code>\scdefault</code>	sc		Shape selected by <code>\scshape</code> and <code>\textsc</code>
<code>\ulcdefault</code>	ulc ^b		Shape selected by <code>\ulcshape</code> and <code>\textulc</code>

^aThe default depends on the font family. For Computer or Latin Modern fonts it is `bx`; for others `b`.

^bThese are virtual shapes that get further transformed; see the discussion of the `\fontshape` command.

Table 9.3: Font attribute defaults

discussed in the previous sections. These hooks are shown in Table 9.3, and their values can be changed by using `\renewcommand`. As you can see, the values for the default encoding and the default font families in Table 9.3 depend on the engine that is used.

Unicode engines

Note that with Unicode engines, i.e., LuaTeX or XeTeX, you should normally not alter the `\encodingdefault` nor should you directly manipulate the hooks `\rmdefault`, `\sfdefault`, or `\ttdefault`.

In Unicode engines where the `fontspec` package is used for font loading (see Section 9.6 on page 705), these defaults are automatically adjusted through declarations such as `\setmainfont`, etc., and should therefore not be manually changed. The reason is that font loading there works quite differently compared to pdfTeX, and it is not easy for users to guess the correct family names to use.

Adjusting the main document families

The main document font is determined by the values of `\encodingdefault`, `\familydefault`, `\seriesdefault`, and `\shapedefault`. Thus, you have to make sure that these commands are defined in such a way that their combination points to an existing font shape in \LaTeX 's internal tables.

The initial setting of `\familydefault` means that changing `\rmdefault` also implicitly changes `\familydefault` to the new value, as long as no special setting for `\familydefault` is defined. However, if `\familydefault` is changed, `\rmdefault` is not affected.

*This applies only
to 8-bit engines,
e.g., pdf \TeX*

When you use pdf \TeX , you could therefore write

```
\renewcommand\rmdefault{LibreBodoni-TLF}
```

in the preamble, and the whole document would come out in Libre Bodoni, because this redefinition changes the font family for the main document font used by \LaTeX . Or you could write

```
\renewcommand\familydefault{\sfdefault}
```

which would make the sans serif family the main document family, but `\textrm` would still be available to switch to the serif family when necessary. This works in all engines.

Suitable values for these font family defaults to use with pdf \TeX can be found by looking through the font tables in this and the next chapter.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines the tables in Chapter 10 also contain the Unicode font names to use with the `fontspec` package.

Adjusting the font encoding default

*Suboptimal
encoding default
in pdf \TeX*

The default value stored in `\encodingdefault` is OT1 when pdf \TeX is used, which means that \LaTeX assumes that most fonts use the original \TeX encoding. This is actually a compatibility setting: in most circumstances it is better to use the Cork T1 encoding because it contains many additional glyphs that are not available with the old OT1 encoding and it allows proper hyphenation for words with accented characters (see Section 9.5.1). Nowadays, some fonts are made available only in T1; that is, they do not support OT1 at all.

Unicode engines

In Lua \TeX or X \TeX the default encoding for text material is TU and should normally not be changed unless you intend to use individual symbols from some specific font that exists only in a special encoding. Text encodings other than TU are problematical because the hyphenation rules in Unicode engines assume the TU encoding.

In pdf \TeX the `\encodingdefault` is implicitly changed by loading the `fontenc` package with one or more options, and it is therefore normally not necessary to

modify it directly; see Section 9.5.5. For more information on font encodings, refer to Section 9.7.1.

One also has to be aware that not every font encoding is suitable for use as a document-encoding default in pdfTeX either. A prerequisite is that the encoding must include most of the visible ASCII letters in their standard positions; see the discussion in Section 9.9 on page 754 for details.

Adjusting the font series defaults

The default behavior of the high-level commands for changing the font series (e.g., `\textbf` or `\textmd`) is to switch to a suitable bold or medium series, i.e., using `bx`, `b`, or `m`. While it is possible to alter that by redefining the main defaults `\bfdefault` or `\mddefault`, this can be done in a more granular way, by using one or more `\DeclareFontSeriesDefault` declarations. This allows you to define combinations such as a `b` (bold) series for the roman font family and a `sb` (semi-bold) series for sans serif family, etc.

```
\DeclareFontSeriesDefault[meta-family]{meta-series}{default}
```

This changes a series default for one of the main document families: *meta-family* can be either `rm` (serif family), `sf` (sans serif family), or `tt` (typewriter family). The *meta-series* is either `bf` or `md`, and *default* is the value to be used. The declaration alters the main defaults (`\bfdefault` or `\mddefault`) if you use it without the optional *meta-family* argument.

For example, `\DeclareFontSeriesDefault[rm]{bf}{sb}` would use `sb` (semi-bold) when within the scope of `\rmfamily` or `\textrm`; a bold typeface is requested with `\textbf` or `\bfseries`.

As a more extensive example we take a look at the Noto fonts because they offer a large number of different weights and widths to play with; see Table 10.14 on page II-28. First we display the defaults one gets by just loading the fonts via the noto package:

```
Foo bar 42 \usepackage[oldstyle]{noto}
```

9-3-13

```
Foo bar 42 Foo \texttt{bar} \textsf{42} \par \textbf{Foo \texttt{bar} \textsf{42}}
```

Now we make a number of admittedly obscure changes: we change the serif family to be semi-bold (`sb`) by default and ultra-bold (`ub`) when `\textbf` is requested. For typewriter text we want light-extracondensed (`lec`) and semibold-extracondensed (`sbec`) when boldening is called for. Finally, for the sans serif font we want medium-condensed (`mc`) but specify nothing special for `\textbf`; thus, we get bold (`b`).

```
\usepackage[oldstyle]{noto}
\DeclareFontSeriesDefault[rm]{md}{sb} \DeclareFontSeriesDefault[rm]{bf}{ub}
\DeclareFontSeriesDefault[tt]{md}{lec} \DeclareFontSeriesDefault[tt]{bf}{sbec}
\DeclareFontSeriesDefault[sf]{md}{mc}
```

```
Foo bar 42
```

9-3-14

```
Foo bar 42 Foo \texttt{bar} \textsf{42} \par \textbf{Foo \texttt{bar} \textsf{42}}
```


Of course, you have to make sure that the requested series value is actually available with the font families you use. For example, when typesetting in L^AT_EX's standard fonts Computer or Latin Modern, it would be a really bad idea to specify

```
\DeclareFontSeriesDefault{bf}{bc} % or \renewcommand\bfdefault{bc}
```

Wrong bold
default can lead
to problems

because neither family offers any bold condensed shapes. Thus, a request for bold would then trigger font substitution, and the result would be a font with upright shape and medium series. So you have to look at the font tables, i.e., Table 9.5 on page 684 (Computer Modern) and Table 9.6 on page 687 (Latin Modern), to see what is offered. For example, with Latin Modern we could write

```
\DeclareFontSeriesDefault[rm]{bf}{b}  
\DeclareFontSeriesDefault[tt]{bf}{b}
```

because both Latin Modern Roman and Typewriter have a **medium-weight bold typeface**, whereas Latin Modern Sans offers only **bold-extended**, so one should not alter its default. Or you could use, instead of the medium typewriter series, the light condensed typewriter series as the default by specifying

```
\DeclareFontSeriesDefault[tt]{md}{lc}
```

With the added flexibility in the series it becomes difficult to know when you are in a “bold” context and when not. In the past programmers have tried to determine this by looking at the current font and at the value of `\bfdefault`, but if that can change from family to family, then such an approach will fail half of the time. To resolve this issue `\IfFontSeriesContextTF` is provided.

```
\IfFontSeriesContextTF{meta-series}{true-code}{false-code}
```

The *meta-series* argument can be either `bf` or `md`. The command examines the current font and its default series settings, and depending on the evaluation, the second or third argument is executed, respectively. To give an example we define below a `\vbeta` command that produces a β that in a bold context, e.g., in a heading, it automatically boldens. Because of the `\ensuremath`, it can be used in both math and text mode.

1 β -isotopes

The β -isotopes are interesting: β

```
\usepackage{bm}  
\newcommand\vbeta{\IfFontSeriesContextTF{bf}%  
  {\ensuremath{\bm{\beta}}}{\ensuremath{\beta}}}  
\section{\vbeta-isotopes}  
The \vbeta-isotopes are interesting: $\vbeta$
```

9-3-15

Unicode engines

If you want to use `\DeclareFontSeriesDefault` with Unicode engines, then you have the issue that most font families declared with `fontspec` have only the medium and the bold series set up by default.

Thus, processing Example 9-3-14 on page 673 with Lua \TeX would result in substituting the medium series everywhere, because neither `sb`, `lec`, `ub`, `sbec`, nor `ub` are set up when you use the `noto` package with that engine.

To make it work, you would need to explicitly set up all necessary font faces first by using `fontspec`'s `FontFace` key; see page 712 for details. Such settings can then be saved in a `.fontspec` file for reuse.

Adjusting the font shape defaults

Adjusting the five shape defaults is normally not necessary because they correspond to the standard naming convention for shapes that nearly all fonts families implement. Changing them would render all standard `.fd` (font definition) files obsolete, so this would make sense only as part of a very specialized project.

9.3.7 `relsize`, `scaletnt` — Relative changes to the font size

Standard \LaTeX offers ten predefined commands that change the overall font size (see Table 9.1 on page 666). The selected sizes depend on the document class but are otherwise absolute in value. That is, `\small` always selects the same size within a document regardless of the surrounding conditions.

However, in many situations it is desirable to change the font size relative to the current size. This can be achieved with the `relsize` package, originally developed by Bernie Cosell and later updated and extended for $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ by Donald Arseneau and Matt Swift.

The package provides the declarative command `\relsize`, which takes a number as its argument denoting the number of steps by which to change the size. For example, if the current size is `\Large`, then `\relsize{-2}` would change to `\normalsize`. If the requested number of steps is not available, then the smallest (i.e., `\tiny`) or largest (i.e., `\Huge`) size command is selected. This means that undoing a relative size change by negating the argument of `\relsize` is not guaranteed to bring you back to the original size — it is better to delimit such changes by a brace group and let \LaTeX undo the modification.

The package further defines `\smaller` and `\larger`, which are simply abbreviations for `\relsize` with the arguments `-1` and `1`, respectively. Convenient variants are `\textsmaller` and `\textlarger`, whose argument is the text to reduce or enlarge in size. These four commands take as an optional argument the number of steps to change if something different from `1` (the default) is needed.

Some large text with a few small words inside.

SMALL CAPS (faked)

SMALL CAPS (real; compare the running length and stem thickness to previous line).

```
\usepackage{relsize}
\Large Some large text with a few
    {\relsize{-2}small words} inside.
\par\medskip
\normalsize\noindent
S\textsmaller[1]{MALL} C\textsmaller[1]{APS} (faked)\
\textsc{Small Caps} (real; compare the running length
    and stem thickness to previous line).
```

In fact, the above description for `\relsize` is not absolutely accurate: it tries to increase or decrease the size by 20% for each step and selects the \LaTeX font size command that is closest to the resulting target size. It then compares the selected size and target size. If they differ by more than the current value of `\RSPercentTolerance` (interpreted as a percentage), the package calls `\fontsize` with the target size as one of the arguments. If this happens, it is up to \LaTeX 's font selection scheme to find a font matching this request as closely as possible. By default, `\RSPercentTolerance` is an empty macro, which is interpreted as 30 (percent) when the current font shape group is composed of only discrete sizes (see Section 9.8.1), and as 5 when the font shape definition covers ranges of sizes.

Using a fixed factor of 1.2 for every step may be too limiting in certain cases. For this reason the package also allows “half-steps”, e.g., specifying `\relsize{0.5}`. It additionally offers the more general declarative command `\relscale{factor}`, and its variant `\textscale{factor}{text}`, to select the size based on the given *factor*, such as 1.3 (enlarge by 30%). However, all commands eventually select a font size that corresponds to one of the standard font sizes offered by \LaTeX , so this request means only “approximately enlarge by 30%”.

Exact scaling

If you really want to scale the current font size by an exact *factor*, you can do so by loading the small package `scalefont` written by David Carlisle that provides the declaration `\scalefont{factor}`. If this is used, the current font is scaled precisely by that *factor*, provided the font exists in the resulting size and not only in a number of discrete sizes.

9.4 Using fonts in math

Unlike the situation in text, automatic changes in font shapes are generally not desired in math formulas. For mathematicians, individual shapes convey specific information. For example, bold upright letters may represent vectors. If the characters in a formula were to change because of surrounding conditions, the result would be incorrect. For this reason, handling of fonts in mathematical formulas is different than that in text.

Characters in a formula can be loosely put into two classes: symbols and alphabetic characters (including digits). Internally, \TeX distinguishes between eight types of math characters (to account for appropriate spacing), but for the discussion of fonts the division into two classes is generally adequate.

Some symbols, such as $=$, can be entered directly from the keyboard. The bulk of them, however, must be entered via a control sequence — for example, `\leq` stands for \leq . The other main group of characters in a formula, the alphabetic characters (at least the Latin ones), are entered directly from the keyboard.

Unicode engines

In Unicode engines it is in theory possible to enter symbols as Unicode characters instead of using commands. However, so far there is only limited support for this, and it is therefore usually better to stay with the more traditional input because that keeps your documents portable.

More than 200 symbols are predefined in a standard \LaTeX system, allowing the user to typeset almost any desired formula. These symbols are scattered over several

fonts, but they are accessed in such a way that the user does not have to be aware of their internal representations. If necessary, additional symbol fonts can be made accessible in a similar way; see Section 9.8.5.

The most important difference between symbols and alphabet characters is that symbols always have the same graphical representation within one formula, while it is possible for the user to change the appearance of the alphabet characters. We call the commands that change the appearance of alphabet characters in a formula “math alphabet identifiers” and the fonts associated with these commands “math alphabets”. The alphabet identifiers are independent of surrounding font commands outside the formula, so a formula does not change if it is placed (for example) inside a theorem environment whose text is, by default, typeset in italics. This behavior is very important, because character shapes in a mathematical formula carry meanings that must not change because the formula is typeset in a different place in a document.

Text font declarations such as `\bfseries` cannot be used in formulas. This is the price we must pay for the greater flexibility in choosing text font attributes — a flexibility that we do not want in a formula. We therefore need a different mechanism (math alphabet identifiers) for changing the typeface of certain alphabet characters in complicated formulas. It is nevertheless possible to use the corresponding `\text...` commands, e.g., `\textrm` if you want some “ordinary text” within your formula. This is discussed in Section 9.4.2.

9.4.1 Special math alphabet identifiers

One alphabet and a huge number of symbols are not sufficient for scientists to express their thoughts. They tend to use every available typeface to denote special concepts. Besides the use of foreign alphabets such as Greek letters, which usually are accessed as symbols — `\alpha`, `\beta`, and so on — we find sans serif letters for matrices, bold serif letters for vectors, and Fraktur fonts for groups, ideals, or fields. Others use calligraphic shapes to denote sets. The conventions are endless, and — even more importantly — they differ from one discipline to another. For this reason \LaTeX makes it possible to declare new math alphabet identifiers and associate them with any desired font shape group instead of relying only on a predefined set that cannot be extended. These identifiers are special commands for use in a formula that typeset any alphabet character in their argument in a specific typeface. (Symbols cannot be changed in this way.) These identifiers may use different typefaces in different formulas, as we will see in Section 9.4.3, but within one formula they always select the same typeface regardless of the surrounding conditions.

Predefined alphabet identifiers

New math alphabet identifiers can be defined according to the user’s needs, but \LaTeX already has a few built in. These identifiers are shown in Table 9.4 on the following page. As the last lines in the table show, the letters used in formulas are taken by default from the math alphabet `\mathnormal`. In contrast, the letters produced by `\mathit` have different spacing; thus, this alphabet could be used to provide full-word variable names, which are common in some disciplines.

<i>Command</i>	<i>Example</i>	
<code>\mathcal</code>	<code>\$\mathcal{A}=a\$</code>	$\mathcal{A} = a$
<code>\mathrm</code>	<code>\$\mathrm{max}_i\$</code>	\max_i
<code>\mathbf</code>	<code>\$\sum x = \mathbf{v}\$</code>	$\sum x = \mathbf{v}$
<code>\mathsf</code>	<code>\$\mathsf{G}_1^2\$</code>	G_1^2
<code>\mathit</code>	<code>\$\mathit{W}(a)\$</code>	$W(a)$
<code>\mathnormal</code>	<code>\$\mathnormal{abc}=abc\$</code>	$abc = abc$
<code>\mathit</code>	<code>\$\differ\neq\mathit{differ}\$</code>	$differ \neq differ$

Table 9.4: Predefined math alphabet identifiers in \LaTeX

In \LaTeX math alphabet identifiers are commands with one argument, usually a single letter or a single word to be typeset in a special font.

Therefore, G can be computed as

$$G = \mathcal{A} + \sum_{i=1}^n \mathcal{B}_i \quad (1)$$

Therefore, `G` can be computed as

```
\begin{equation}
\mathsf{G} = \mathcal{A} +
\sum_{i=1}^n \mathcal{B}_i
\end{equation}
```

9-4-1

The command names for the math alphabet identifiers are chosen to be descriptive rather than simple to type — they all start with `\math`. However, it is better to stick to the names rather than inventing random abbreviations, because this helps others (co-workers or journal editors) to easily understand your source text. Possible exceptions are cases where you invent special notations that are relevant for your current paper and you want to give them descriptive names. In that case, defining your own command can be helpful, especially if there is a chance that you may want to alter the notation later, e.g.,

```
\newcommand\Gset{\mathcal{G}}
```

but do not come up with something like `\mrm` for `\mathrm` just to save you a few keystrokes — it is a nightmare for copy editors and everybody else who has to work with your source, including most likely yourself at some point in the future.

How to define new alphabet identifiers is explained on page 680, and Section 12.1 on page →II 226 describes several packages that make this process even simpler for a large number of fonts that can reasonably serve as math alphabets.

The character scope of math alphabet identifiers

You may wonder what characters are affected by a math alphabet identifier such as `\mathrm` if you place them into its argument. Unfortunately, the answer is “it depends”. One way to answer this question is that all characters that are set up as

$\backslash\mathrm{mathalpha}$ symbols in $\mathrm{\TeX}$ (see Section 11.8 on page 208) are affected and change based on the alphabet identifier. But which characters belong to this type depends on the setup. There is a default setup for $\mathrm{\TeX}$ that was largely influenced by the available math fonts at the time, but anybody is free to make alterations, and some font packages do.

What you can expect is that every math alphabet identifier affects the 26 uppercase Latin letters, i.e., A–Z. Most identifiers, but already not all, also affect lowercase Latin and digits. In $\mathrm{\TeX}$ ’s standard setup the eleven uppercase Greek symbols that differ from Latin uppercase and that have commands to access them in math, e.g., $\backslash\Omega$, are also set up as $\backslash\mathrm{mathalpha}$, but again, many alphabet identifiers do not correctly work on them.

Technically, a math alphabet identifier corresponds to a specific font (declared with $\backslash\mathrm{DeclareMathAlphabet}$ or $\backslash\mathrm{DeclareSymbolFontAlphabet}$ described below), and when you place a character or a command, such as $\backslash\Delta$, in its scope, all that happens is that the glyph from a defined slot (always the same for the same character) is fetched. If that slot contains a glyph for a different character or none at all, you get a wrong result (e.g., with $\backslash\mathrm{mathcal}$ or $\backslash\mathrm{mathfrak}$ in the next example) or a missing character warning.

<pre>0123 lower UPPER ΔΓ 0123 lower UPPER ΔΓ 0123 lower UPPER ΔΓ ∞∈∃↯⊃∇UPPER ∙— 0123 lower ℳℙℚℝ ∂∂ 0123 lower UPPER ΔΓ</pre>	<pre>$\usepackage{amssymb}$ % for $\backslash\mathrm{mathfrak}$ \$ 0123\ lower\ UPPER\ \Delta\Gamma \$ \par \$ \mathbf{0123\ lower\ UPPER\ \Delta\Gamma}\$ \par \$ \mathsf{0123\ lower\ UPPER\ \Delta\Gamma}\$ \par \$ \mathcal{0123\ lower\ UPPER\ \Delta\Gamma}\$ \par \$ \mathfrak{0123\ lower\ UPPER\ \Delta\Gamma}\$ \par \$ \mathnormal{0123\ lower\ UPPER\ \Delta\Gamma}\$ \par</pre>
---	--

9-4-2

The behavior of Greek letters for math is particularly interesting. The lowercase Greek letters are traditionally set slanted, and they are not affected by alphabet identifiers. However, the uppercase Greek are usually set upright, and they change with the identifier (or break) — funnily enough, $\backslash\mathrm{mathnormal}$, as shown above, changes them to slanted even though that is not the “normal” way they are written.

The above describes the standard default situation within $\mathrm{\TeX}$. However, note that this may not be true after loading additional font packages for math and is especially not true any longer in Unicode engines when using $\mathrm{fontspec}$ or $\mathrm{unicode-math}$. There the uppercase Greek letters may still be formally $\backslash\mathrm{mathalpha}$, but in most math alphabet identifiers such $\backslash\mathrm{mathbf}$ they would fail.

<pre>0123 lower UPPER ΔΓ 0123 lower UPPER 0123 lower UPPER 0123 lower UPPER ΔΓ</pre>	<pre>$\usepackage{fontspec}$ $\setmainfont{Alegreya}$ $\setsansfont{Alegreya Sans}$ \$ 0123\ lower\ UPPER\ \Delta\Gamma \$ \par \$ \mathbf{0123\ lower\ UPPER\ \Delta\Gamma}\$ \par \$ \mathsf{0123\ lower\ UPPER\ \Delta\Gamma}\$ \par \$ \mathnormal{0123\ lower\ UPPER\ \Delta\Gamma}\$ \par</pre>
---	--

9-4-3

*No default math
alphabet*

You may also wonder what the default math alphabet is — that is, from which alphabet the alphabet characters are selected if you do not specify an alphabet identifier explicitly, as in the formula $x = 123$. The answer is that no single default math alphabet exists. The \LaTeX system can be set up so that alphabetical characters are fetched from different alphabets as long as the user has not explicitly asked for a specific one, and this is normally the case, as the following example shows:

```

\usepackage{amsmath}
\begin{align}
x = 12345      (1)      x      &= 12345      \\
x = 12345      (2)      \mathrm{x}      &= \mathrm{12345}      \\
x = 12345      (3)      \mathnormal{x}      &= \mathnormal{12345}      \\
\end{align}

```

9-4-4

As you can see, `\mathrm` does not change the digits and `\mathnormal` does not change the letters, so the default for digits in the normal setup is the math alphabet associated with `\mathrm`, and the default for letters is the one associated with `\mathnormal`.¹ This behavior can be controlled with the `\DeclareMathSymbol` command, which is explained in Section 9.8.5.

Defining new alphabet identifiers

New math alphabet identifiers are defined with the `\DeclareMathAlphabet` command. Suppose that you want to make a slanted sans serif typeface available as a math alphabet. First you decide on a new command name, such as `\mathsfssl`, to be used to select your math alphabet. Then you consult the font tables in this chapter (starting on page 684) or the next chapter to find a suitable font face to assign to this alphabet identifier. You will find that the Computer Modern Sans family, for example, consists of a medium series with upright and slanted shapes. If you decide to use the slanted shape of this family, you tell \LaTeX using `\DeclareMathAlphabet`.

```
\DeclareMathAlphabet{\cmd}{encoding}{family}{series}{shape}
```

This declaration has four arguments besides the identifier: the encoding scheme, the family, the series, and the shape of the font to be used. The alphabet identifier defined in the example always switches to Computer Modern Sans medium slanted.

We demonstrate this with the formula

$$\sum A_i = a \tan \beta \quad (1)$$

```

\DeclareMathAlphabet{\mathsfssl}{T1}{cmss}{m}{sl}
We demonstrate this with the formula
\begin{equation}
\sum \mathsfssl{A}_{i} = a \tan \beta
\end{equation}

```

9-4-5


¹It is a strange fact that the Computer Modern math font that corresponds to the `\mathnormal` alphabet actually contains oldstyle numerals. When the Computer Modern fonts were developed, space was a rare commodity, so Donald Knuth squeezed a number of “nonmathematical” glyphs into these fonts that are normally used only in text.

It is also possible to redefine an existing math alphabet identifier in a package file or in the preamble of your document. For example, the declaration

```
\DeclareMathAlphabet{\mathsf}{T1}{qag}{m}{n}
```

overrides the default settings for the `\mathsf` alphabet identifier. After that, `\mathsf` will switch to Adventor (Avant Garde) in your formulas. There is, however, a subtle point: if the math alphabet in question is part of a symbol font that is already loaded by \TeX for other reasons (e.g., `\mathcal`), it is better to use `\DeclareSymbolFontAlphabet` as it makes better use of \TeX 's somewhat limited resources for math; see page 752 for details.

The problem is that \TeX , or more exactly the 8-bit versions of \TeX , such as pdf \TeX , have a hard limit of 16 on the number of different math font groups that can be used in a single formula. For each symbol font declared (by a package or in the preamble) an extra math family is allocated, and the same happens for each math alphabet (such as `\mathbf`) that gets used anywhere in the document. Until recently, these math alphabet allocations were permanent, even if they were used only once; the result was that in complex documents you could easily run out of available math font groups. The only remedy for this was to define your own math version, which is a complicated and cumbersome process.

 *Working with the low limit of possible math alphabets*

This situation has been improved in 2021 by the introduction of a new counter `localmathalphabets`, which governs how many of the math family slots are assigned only locally when a new math alphabet (and a new math family) is needed. Once the current formula is finished, every such further (local) allocation is undone, giving you a fighting chance of being able to use different new math alphabets in the next formula.

The default value of `localmathalphabets` is 2, but if you need more local alphabets because of the complexity of your document, you can set this to a higher value, e.g., 4 or 5. Setting it even higher is possible, but this would seldom be useful because many family slots will be taken up by symbol fonts, and such slots are always permanently allocated, whether used or not.

Unicode engines

While `\DeclareMathAlphabet` can be used with any \TeX engine, it is not that convenient with TU encoded fonts in Unicode engines, because by default you do not have an NFSS family name available and `fontspec` sets up only a few font faces for you (medium and bold series).

If you are typesetting using such engines, then the `\setmathfontface` command provided by the `unicode-math` package is the better option because it allows you to set up OpenType fonts as math alphabets easily.

```
\setmathfontface{cmd}{font name}[font features]
```

This is discussed further in Section 12.4 on page 253. The possibilities for specifying *font name* and *font features* are covered at length in Section 9.6 on page 705.

Here is a simple example setting up a typewriter italic font as a math alphabet:

```
\usepackage{unicode-math}
\setmathfontface\mathttit{texgyrecursor-italic.otf}


$$ttit \approx tt + italic$$



$$\mathttit{ttit} \approx \mathtt{tt} + \mathit{italic}$$

```

9-4-6

9.4.2 Text font commands in math

As mentioned previously, text font declarations like `\rmfamily` cannot be used in math. However, the font-changing commands with arguments—for example, `\textrm`—can be used in both text and math. You can use these commands to temporarily exit the math context and typeset some text in the midst of your formula that logically belongs to the text outside of the formula. Note that the font used to typeset this text therefore depends on surrounding conditions—that is, the command picks up the current values of encoding, family, series, and shape, and then changes one of the attributes as requested.

The result will be

```
\sffamily The result will be

$$x = 10 \textbf{ and thus } y = 12$$


$$[ x = 10 \texttt{ and thus } y = 12 ]$$

```

9-4-7

As you see, the Sans family was retained, and the series was changed to bold. Perhaps more useful is the `\text` command, provided by the `amsmath` package, which typesets in the current text font without any modification to it (see Section 11.6.1).

9.4.3 Mathematical formula versions

Besides allowing parts of a formula to be changed by using math alphabet identifiers, \LaTeX lets you change the appearance of a formula as a whole. Formulas are typeset in a certain “math version”, and you can switch between math versions outside of math mode by using the command `\mathversion`, thereby changing the overall layout of the following formulas.

\LaTeX knows about two math versions that are called “normal” and “bold”. Additional ones are sometimes provided in special packages. As the name indicates, `\mathversion{normal}` is the default. In contrast, the bold version produces bolder alphabet characters and symbols, though by default big operators, like `\sum`, are not changed. The following example shows the same formula first in the normal and then in the bold math version:

$\sum_{j=1}^z j = \frac{z(z+1)}{2} \quad (1)$	<pre>\begin{equation} \sum_{j=1}^z j = \frac{z(z+1)}{2} \end{equation}</pre>
$\sum_{j=1}^z j = \frac{z(z+1)}{2} \quad (2)$	<pre>\mathversion{bold} \begin{equation} \sum_{j=1}^z j = \frac{z(z+1)}{2} \end{equation}</pre>

9-4-8

For historical reasons L^AT_EX has two additional commands to switch to its standard math versions: `\boldmath` and `\unboldmath`.

Using `\mathversion` might be suitable in certain situations, such as in headings, but remember that changing the version means changing the appearance (and perhaps the meaning) of the entire formula. If you want to darken only some symbols or characters within one formula, you should not change the `\mathversion`. Instead, you should use the `\mathbf` alphabet identifier for characters and/or use the command `\bm` provided by the `bm` package; see Section 12.2.1.

If you change the math version with the `\mathversion` command, L^AT_EX looks in its internal tables to find where all the symbols for this new math version are located. It also may change all or some of the math alphabet identifiers and associate them with other font shapes in this version.

What happens to math alphabet identifiers that you have defined yourself, such as the `\mathsfsl` from Example 9-4-5? As long as you declared them using only `\DeclareMathAlphabet`, they stay the same in all math versions.

If the math alphabet identifier is to produce a different font in a special math version, you must inform L^AT_EX of that fact by using the `\SetMathAlphabet` command. For example, in the default setup the `\mathsf` alphabet identifier is defined as follows:

```
\DeclareMathAlphabet{\mathsf}{OT1}{cmss}{m}{n}
\SetMathAlphabet{\mathsf}{bold}{OT1}{cmss}{bx}{n}
```

The first line means that the default for `\mathsf` in all math versions is Computer Modern Sans medium. The second line states that the bold math version should use the font Computer Modern Sans bold extended instead.

```
\SetMathAlphabet{cmd}{version}{encoding}{family}{series}{shape}
```

From the previous example, you can see that `\SetMathAlphabet` takes six arguments: the first is the name of the math alphabet identifier, the second is the math version name for which you are defining a special setup, and the other four are the encoding, family, series, and shape name with which you are associating it.

As noted earlier, you can redefine an existing math alphabet identifier by using `\DeclareMathAlphabet`. If you do so, all previous `\SetMathAlphabet` declarations for this identifier are removed from the internal tables of L^AT_EX. Thus, the identifier comes out the same in all math versions unless you add new `\SetMathAlphabet` declarations for it.

9.5 Standard L^AT_EX font support

This section opens with a short introduction to the standard text fonts distributed together with L^AT_EX, which are Computer Modern, European Computer Modern, and Latin Modern, as well as a brief introduction to the legacy and the modern support packages for core PostScript fonts (Chapter 10 shows samples of them and many other font families now available in L^AT_EX).

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Computer Modern Roman</i> (Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1)			
cmr	m	n, it, sl, sc, ui	Computer Modern Roman, <i>italic</i> , <i>slanted</i> , and SMALL CAPS
	bx	n, it, sl, sc	bold extended , <i>italic</i> , <i>slanted</i> , and SMALL CAPS
	b	n	bold medium width (no other shapes)
<i>Computer Modern Sans</i> (Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1)			
cmss	m, bx	n, (it), sl	Computer Modern Sans bold extended , <i>italic</i> , and <i>slanted</i>
	sbc	n	Computer Modern Sans semibold condensed (no shape variants)
<i>Computer Modern Typewriter</i> (Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1)			
cmtt	m	n, it, sl, sc	Comp. Mod. Typewriter, <i>italic</i> , <i>slanted</i> and SMALL CAPS
cmvtt	m	n, it	Comp. Mod. Typewriter proportional upright and italics
<i>Computer Modern Fibonacci</i> (Encodings: T1, OT1)			
cmfib	m	n	Computer Modern Fibonacci
<i>Computer Modern Dunhill</i> (Encodings: T1, OT1)			
cmdh	m	n	Computer Modern Dunhill

Values in blue are not or only partly offered in OT1 encoding!

Table 9.5: Classification of the Computer Modern font families

It is followed by a discussion of \LaTeX 's standard support packages for input and font encodings including a discussion of how to use an extended set of text symbols. The section concludes by describing a package for tracing \LaTeX 's font processing and another package for displaying glyph charts (a package the author used extensively while preparing the later parts of this chapter).

9.5.1 Computer Modern, Latin Modern — The \LaTeX standard fonts

Original \TeX font encoding

Along with \TeX , Donald Knuth developed a family of fonts called Computer Modern; see Table 9.5. Until the early 1990s, essentially only these fonts were usable with \TeX and, consequently, with \LaTeX . Each of them contains 128 glyphs (\TeX was working with 7 bits originally), which does not leave room for including accented characters as individual glyphs. Thus, using these fonts means that accented characters have to be produced with the `\accent` primitive of \TeX , which in turn means that automatic hyphenation of words with accented characters is impossible. While this restriction is acceptable for English documents that contain few foreign words, it is a major obstacle for other languages.

Not surprisingly, these deficiencies were of great concern to the \TeX users in Europe and eventually led to a reimplementa-tion of \TeX in 1989 to support 8-bit

characters internally and externally. At the T_EX Users conference in Cork (1990), a standard 8-bit encoding for text fonts (T1) was developed that contains many diacritical characters (see Table 9.22 on page 763) and allows typesetting in more than 30 languages based on the Latin alphabet. At the University of Bochum (under the direction of Norbert Schwarz) the Computer Modern font families were then reimplemented, and additional characters were designed, so that the resulting fonts completely conform to this encoding scheme. The first implementation of these fonts was released under the name “DC fonts”. Since then Jörg Knappen has finalized them, and they are now distributed as “European Computer Modern Fonts”, often shortened to “EC fonts”.

*T1 a.k.a. “Cork”
encoding*

EC fonts

Both Computer Modern and the EC fonts are considered standard in L^AT_EX and must be available at any installation. Although originally developed with METAFONT, there are free Type 1 PostScript replacements as well. For Computer Modern these were produced by Blue Sky Research; Y&Y added the L^AT_EX, AMS, and Euler fonts. The EC fonts were converted in 2001 from METAFONT sources to Type 1 PostScript by Vladimir Volovich. His implementation is called the CM-Super fonts package and, besides the EC fonts, it covers EC Concrete, EC Bright, and LH fonts (Cyrillic Computer Modern). In addition to the T1 encoding, the L^AT_EX standard encodings TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, and X2 are supported by CM-Super. The CM-Super fonts were automatically converted to the Type 1 format, and although a sophisticated algorithm was used for this conversion, you cannot expect exactly the same quality as could be achieved by a manual conversion process.


*PostScript Type 1
instances*

CM-Super fonts

Since the PostScript fonts have the same font metrics as their METAFONT counterparts, they need no support package in the L^AT_EX document. They are now provided by virtually all distributions and are automatically used by pdfT_EX or the driver program (e.g., dvips) that converts the .dvi output to PostScript.

To avoid the generation of too many bit-mapped fonts, the standard .fd files for Computer Modern and European Computer Modern provided only a handful of well-defined font sizes. This is still the default even though with PostScript outline fonts it would be possible to typeset in arbitrary sizes without problems.¹ Thus, if you ask for an intermediate size (via `\fontsize`), you get a warning, and the nearest available size is chosen instead. To lift this restriction you can make use of the package `fix-cm` or use the Latin Modern fonts instead as discussed below.

Although the EC fonts were originally meant to be a drop-in extension (and replacement) for the 7-bit Computer Modern fonts, not all glyph shapes have been kept in the end. For example, the German “ß” got a new design — a decision by the font designer that did not make everybody happy (me included).

 *Issues
with the EC fonts*

```
\fontencoding{OT1}\fontfamily{cmr}\selectfont
Computer Modern sharp s: ß
```

Computer Modern sharp s: ß
EC Modern sharp s: ß

```
\fontencoding{T1}\fontfamily{cmr}\selectfont
EC Modern sharp s:      ß
```

9-5-1

¹The set of fixed sizes has been kept as the default to ensure that older documents do not change their appearance if reprocessed.

However, these were not the only differences between the original Computer Modern fonts and the new EC fonts. The latter have many more individual designs for larger font sizes (while CM fonts were scaled linearly), and in this respect the fact that both really are different font families is quite noticeable.¹ The particular example that follows is perhaps the most glaring difference of that kind:

The fox jumps

quickly over the fence!

The fox jumps

quickly over the fence!

```
\fontencoding{OT1}\sffamily\bfseries
\Huge      The fox jumps \par
\normalsize quickly over the fence!\par
\fontencoding{T1}\sffamily\bfseries
\Huge      The fox jumps \par
\normalsize quickly over the fence!\par
```

9-5-2

These differences are no problem if one likes the EC designs and uses T1 throughout. Otherwise, a number of approaches can be taken to resolve this problem. One is to employ a different set of font definitions that do not make use of *all* individual EC font designs and that are closer to those of the traditional CM fonts, but with improved typographical quality. Such a solution is provided by Walter Schmidt's (1960–2021) package `fix-cm`, which is distributed as part of the core \LaTeX distribution. Load this package directly after the document class declaration (or even before using `\RequirePackage`), because it takes effect only for fonts not already loaded by \LaTeX — and the document class might load fonts.

*Latin Modern — the
modern replacement
for CM or EC fonts*

In 2002, three European \TeX user groups (DANTE, GUTenberg, and NTG) initiated and funded a project to integrate all of the variants of the Computer Modern Roman typefaces into a single Latin Modern family of fonts. The project was carried out by Bogusław Jackowski and Janusz Marian Nowacki (1951–2020), and the first official version of the Latin Modern fonts was presented at the DANTE meeting in 2003.

The **Latin Modern** fonts are carefully handcrafted PostScript Type 1 fonts based on the designs of Knuth's *Computer Modern* families. They contain all the glyphs needed to typeset Latin-based European languages as well as glyphs for Native American, Vietnamese, and Transliterations.

```
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc} \usepackage{lmodern}
The \textbf{Latin Modern} fonts are carefully
handcrafted PostScript Type-1 fonts based on
the designs of Knuth's \emph{Computer Modern}
families. They contain all the glyphs needed
to typeset Latin-based European languages as
well as glyphs for Native American, Vietnamese,
and Transliterations.
```

9-5-3

Already then the fonts were in fact a huge extension in terms of glyph coverage with additional diacritical characters covering many scripts based on the \LaTeX character set. The font classification of Latin Modern is listed in Table 9.6 on the facing page. It shows that some of the “funny” fonts got dropped, but at the same time several

¹The historical mistake was to pretend to NFSS that both are the same families (e.g., `cmr`, `cms`), just encoded according to different font encodings. Unfortunately, this cannot be rectified without huge backward compatibility problems.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Latin Modern Roman</i>		Latin Modern Roman Latin Modern Roman Caps	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, T5, LY1, and TU)
lmr	m	n, it, sl, sc, scsl , ui	Latin Modern Roman upright, <i>italic</i> , <i>slanted</i> , SMALL CAPS and <i>SMALL CAPS SLANTED</i>
	bx	n, it, sl	Latin Modern bold extend, <i>italic</i> , and <i>slanted</i>
	b	n, (it), sl	Latin Modern bold <i>and slanted</i>
<i>Latin Modern Sans</i>		Latin Modern Sans	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, T5, LY1, and TU)
lmss	m	n, (it), sl	Latin Modern Sans upright and <i>slanted</i>
	(b), bx, sbc	n, (it), sl	Latin Modern Sans bold extended <i>and slanted</i> , and semibold condensed <i>and slanted</i>
<i>Latin Modern Typewriter</i>		Latin Modern Mono	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, T5, LY1, and TU)
lmtt	m	n, it, sl, sc, scsl	Latin Modern Typewriter upright, <i>italic</i> , <i>slanted</i> , SMALL CAPS and <i>SMALL CAPS SLANTED</i>
	l, lc, b, (bx)	n, (it), sl	Latin Modern Typewriter light, <i>slanted</i> , and light condensed, <i>slanted</i> , bold and bold slanted
<i>Proportional Latin Modern Typewriter</i>		Latin Modern Mono Prop	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, T5, LY1, and TU)
lmttt	m	n, (it), sl	Latin Modern Typewriter proportional <i>and slanted</i>
	l, b, (bx)	n, (it), sl	Latin Modern Typewriter light, <i>light slanted</i> , bold and bold slanted
<i>Latin Modern Dunhill</i>		Latin Modern Roman Dunhill	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, T5, LY1, and TU)
cmdh	m	n, (it), sl	Latin Modern Dunhill upright <i>and slanted</i>

Shapes or series value colored in blue are additions in the Latin Modern family not available in the Computer Modern. Values given in parentheses indicate substitutions; e.g., (*it*) produces **sl**, and (b) becomes **bx**, or vice versa. Note that the CM proportional typewriter has an **it** shape while the LM proportional typewriter has an **sl** shape instead. The font names with gray background are for use with the fontspec package in Unicode engines.

Table 9.6: Classification of the Latin Modern font families

additional shapes and weights were added [171]. In particular, there are now bold and light versions of the typewriter fonts that can be useful in certain situations.

However, without accompanying math fonts, they were not yet a full-fledged alternative to Computer Modern or European Modern fonts. This changed in 2011 with the release of the Latin Modern Math fonts. Additionally, all fonts in the Latin Modern families were made available in OpenType font format, which made them available to be used in Unicode T_EX engines (or even Word, if so desired).

Unicode engines

In fact, they are now L^AT_EX's default fonts if you typeset using X_YL^AT_EX or LuaT_EX.

In 8-bit engines (e.g., pdf \TeX) Computer Modern in OT1 encoding remained the default to ensure backward compatibility for the huge amount of existing documents in archives. As previously mentioned, the OT1 encoding has noticeable defects with respect to glyph coverage, hyphenation, and online search in formatted documents for all Latin-based languages (except English). This was repaired with the EC fonts, but their Type 1 versions did not quite reach the highest quality of hand-crafted fonts due to their generation process.

All this is now resolved with the Latin Modern fonts; you only have to load the `lmodern` package and additionally make T1 your default font encoding as we did in the previous example.

With Latin Modern fonts in combination with the T1 encoding, diacritical characters, hyphenation, and online search are well supported; furthermore, the fonts use the same set of design sizes as the original CM fonts, and the original shape of the sharp s is back. Thus, examples such as 9-5-1 or 9-5-2 come out just fine, and we therefore recommend that for new documents you use `lmodern` (in T1 encoding) with pdf \TeX if you want to typeset in a “Computer Modern like” typeface.

The fox jumps quickly over the fence!

A Latin Modern sharp s: ß

```
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc} \usepackage{lmodern}
\sffamily\bfseries\Huge The fox jumps \par
\normalsize quickly over the fence! \par
\normalfont A Latin Modern sharp s: ß
```

9-5-4

The `lmodern` package supports three options: `lighttt` changes `\ttdefault` to select the light typewriter, while `variablett` uses the proportional typewriter face. By default the package also changes the math font setup to use Latin Modern Math fonts. If this is not desirable (because you use other fonts for mathematics), use the option `nomath` to prevent it.

9.5.2 PSNFSS and \TeX Gyre — Core PostScript fonts for \LaTeX

The PostScript New Font Selection Scheme (PSNFSS) bundle, originally developed by Sebastian Rahtz (1955–2016), was the first major application using the \LaTeX font selection scheme to provide support for common PostScript fonts, covering the “Base 35” fonts (which are built into any Level 2 PostScript printing device and the `ghostscript` interpreter) and the free Charter and Utopia fonts. After Sebastian’s death, Walter Schmidt (1960–2021) maintained PSNFSS, and today it is maintained by Keiran Harcombe, who has taken over all of Walter Schmidt’s packages.

These days it is, however, largely superseded by the development of the \TeX Gyre fonts (by Bogusław Jackowski and Janusz Marian Nowacki (1951–2020)) that provide reimplementations of many of these fonts with an extended glyph set so that essentially all Latin-based languages are now supported. The Vietnamese glyphs in this collection have been added by Hàn Thế Thành. The basic Greek symbols are based on earlier work by Apostolos Syropoulos and Antonis Tsolomitis. Like the Latin Modern fonts, the \TeX Gyre project was initiated and funded by several European \TeX user groups.

<i>Package</i>	<i>Roman Font</i>	<i>Sans Serif Font</i>	<i>Typewriter Font</i>	<i>Formulas</i>
—	CM Roman	CM Sans Serif	CM Typewriter	CM Math
lmodern	LM Roman	LM Sans Serif	LM Typewriter	LM Math
tgbonum	Bookman (Bonum)			
tgchorus	Zapf Chancery (Chorus)			
tgpagella	Palatino (Pagella)			
tgschola	New Century Schoolbook (Schola)			
tgtermes	Times Roman (Termes)			
tgadventor	Avant Garde (Adventor)			
tgheros	Helvetica (Heros)			
tgcursor	Courier (Cursor)			

Names in parentheses are the font names used by the T_EX Gyre foundry.

Table 9.7: T_EX Gyre packages for setting up fonts

Since it is in nearly all circumstances better to use the T_EX Gyre fonts than to typeset using the far more restricted fonts offered by the original PSNFSS setup, we focus in the remainder of this section on the newer developments and discuss only those packages from PSNFSS that are still relevant. Samples of the font families, together with many other fonts available today, are given in the next chapter.

For normal use you probably have to include only one (or more) of the packages listed in Table 9.7 to change the default roman, sans serif, and/or typewriter typefaces. If you study this table, you will notice that, with the exception of lmodern, the packages change only the text fonts. For packages that also load matching math fonts see Section 12.5 on page →II 261.

The T_EX Gyre font packages all offer a number of options that allow you to combine them in a way that different fonts have the same height, either matching the uppercase letter height (option `matchuppercase`) or the x-height (option `matchlowercase`) of the roman font. Thus, a document with a line like

```
\usepackage{tgtermes,tgcursor}
\usepackage[matchuppercase]{tgheros}
```

in the preamble would be typeset in Times, Courier, and Helvetica with heights matching the uppercase letters of Times Roman. Loading Helvetica at its default height instead would not at all blend well, because the characters are far too large compared to Times. Alternatively, you can use the key/value option `scale` to set an

*Scale T_EX Gyre fonts
to blend with
surrounding fonts*

explicit scale factor during the package load. The next example shows a probably more pleasing combination using Bookman and Avant Garde fonts.

```
\usepackage[matchlowercase]
      {tgbonum,tgadventor,tgcursor}
```

This example shows Bookman combined with Avant Garde and Courier with *the x-height of all fonts being matched thanks to the option matchlowercase*.

This example shows Bookman combined with `\textsf{Avant Garde}` and `\texttt{Courier}` with `\emph{the x-height of all fonts being \textsf{matched}}` thanks to the option `\texttt{matchlowercase}}`.

9-5-5

*Word space
adjustments*

The word spaces in some of the T_EX Gyre fonts are a little different (tighter) to those of the originals, and if you do not like that, you can use the option `oldspacing`, which is understood by all T_EX Gyre packages.

*Using condensed
Helvetica*

Finally, the `tgheros` package has one further option, `condensed`, that when used loads Helvetica Narrow instead of Helvetica if that is preferred.

*Sans serif as
document typeface*

By default, L^AT_EX selects a roman typeface as the document font. Packages such as `tgheros` or `tgadventor` change the default sans serif typeface (by changing the `\sfdefault` value) but do not change the default document font family. If such a typeface should be used as the document font, issue the line

```
\renewcommand\familydefault{\sfdefault}
```

in the preamble of your document.

*Use the T_EX Gyre
packages instead
of PSNFSS where
applicable*



The packages from the PSNFSS bundle are listed in Table 9.8 on the facing page. They have (unfortunately) the more memorable names and have been heavily used in the past, so you may come across one or the other in older documents. However, these days none of them can really be recommended, so the second column of the table suggests replacements. The packages in the first block set up individual fonts like the T_EX Gyre packages, but because their packages offer better versions of these fonts, it is usually preferable to use them instead. The packages in the second part of the table should definitely be avoided (or replaced if already used in documents). Either they combine fonts without adjusting their heights (see discussion above) or they attempt to set up matching math fonts using only partially suitable fonts, and for this better possibilities are now available; see Chapter 10. Of course, if you replace, say, `palatino` and want it matched with Helvetica (which is a questionable choice in the first place), then you now have to load `tpagella` and `tgheros` with a suitable option to match up the font sizes. The final block shows packages that combine text and math fonts, but again there are now much better solutions available (discussed in Chapter 12), so if you come across these packages in older documents, consider replacing them (except perhaps for `mathpazo`).

Besides `mathpazo` there is really only one other font support package in the PSNFSS collection that is still interesting these days: the `pifont` package. It does not change any text fonts but sets up various commands for use with so-called Pi fonts (i.e., special symbol fonts like Zapf Dingbats). It is described in Section 10.13.1 on page →II 113.

<i>Package</i>	<i>replace with</i>	<i>Roman Font</i>	<i>Sans Serif Font</i>	<i>Typewriter Font</i>	<i>Formulas</i>
charter	XCharter ^a	Charter			
utopia	erewhon ^a	Utopia			
chancery	tgchorus	Zapf Chancery			
helvet	tgheros		Helvetica		
avant	tgadventor		Avant Garde		
courier	tgcursor			Courier	
<i>Deprecated Packages</i>					
bookman	tgbonum	Bookman	Avant Garde	Courier	
newcent	tgschola	New Century Schoolbook	Avant Garde	Courier	
palatino	tgpagella	Palatino	Helvetica	Courier	
times	tgtermes ^b	Times	Helvetica	Courier	
<i>Packages with math setup (most are not recommended, see Chapter 12)</i>					
mathpazo		Palatino			Palatino + Pazo
mathptmx	newtxmath ^c	Times			Times + Symbol
mathptm	newtxmath ^c	Times			Times + Symbol + CM
mathpple	mathpazo	Palatino			Palatino + Symbol + Euler

^aThese fonts have not been redone by T_EX Gyre, but there exist improved versions by others; see Sections 10.5.6 and 10.5.23 for details.

^bTo mimic the times package you also need to load tgheros and tgcursor or you can consider using newtxtext plus an appropriate typewriter family instead.

^cPlus adding newtxtext or tgtermes for the text font setup.

Table 9.8: PSNFSS packages for setting up fonts

9.5.3 A note on baselines and leading

Most document classes designed for use with Computer Modern set up a leading (`\baselineskip`) of 10pt/12pt. This may appear to be too tight for several of the PostScript font families shown below, due to a larger x-height of the fonts. However, because this is a matter of document design and also depends on the chosen line width and other factors, the packages in the T_EX Gyre or PSNFSS collection make no attempt to adjust the leading. For a given document class you can change the leading by a *factor* by issuing the declaration `\linespread{factor}` in the preamble. For example, `\linespread{1.033}` would change the leading from, say, 12pt to approximately 12.4pt.

For best results, however, one needs to use a document class designed for the selected document fonts or, lacking such a class, to redefine the commands

Adjusting the leading

`\normalsize`, `\footnotesize`, and so on (see page 665 for details). Also remember that changing the leading might result in a noticeable number of “Underfull \vbox” warnings, if the `\textheight` is no longer an integral number of text lines (see page →II 763 for further details).

9.5.4 inputenc — Explicitly selecting the input encoding

As mentioned earlier, the development of the `inputenc` package made it possible to use many accented characters, either via single keystrokes or by some other input method (e.g., by pressing ‘ and then a to get â) in your source instead of having to type `\‘a`, `\^e`, and so forth.

To enable this, all you had to do was to load the package and specify the input encoding¹ used by your computer as a package option. Once done, the document is processed correctly on any L^AT_EX installation even if the source file looks strange on some computers due to the encoding differences.

For example, the Russian text Русский язык (Russian language) written in the once popular `koi8-r` encoding would display in an editor program on a German computer (using the `latin1` encoding) partially scrambled as

òÕÓÓÊÊ ÑÜË (Russian language)

However, with the help of `\usepackage[koi8-r]{inputenc}` in the preamble of the document, a L^AT_EX run always produces “Русский язык (Russian language)”, i.e., the desired result.

Originally the `inputenc` package was written to describe the encoding used for a document as a whole — hence the use of options in the preamble. It is, however, possible to change the encoding in the middle of a document by using the command `\inputencoding`. This command takes an encoding name as its argument. Processing is rather computing intensive, as typically more than 120 characters are remapped each time. Nevertheless, we know of applications that change the encoding several times within a paragraph yet seem to work reasonably well.

*UTF-8 support,
nowadays the
default*

Besides such single-byte encodings, `inputenc` also enabled UTF-8 support through the option `utf8`. Because nearly all computer operating system nowadays use UTF-8 as their standard encoding, L^AT_EX changed in 2015 and made this encoding the default. It is therefore only necessary to load the `inputenc` package if this assumption is wrong, either because you happen to use an older computer whose operating system is still 8-bit with some particular code page in force or because you reprocess an old document stored in one of the legacy 8-bit encodings (in which case it hopefully already contains the appropriate `inputenc` line).

¹The base set of supported encodings (more than two dozen) is documented in the `inputenc` package documentation; apart from UTF-8, the most important ones are probably `latin1` to `latin4` (ISO 8859-1 to ISO 8859-4 [72]) and `latin9` (ISO 8859-15) that can represent most Western and Eastern European languages. Also supported are the Windows OS code pages `cp1250` (Central and Eastern Europe), `cp1252` (Western Europe), and `cp1257` (Baltic). In some cases, language packages for Babel provide additional encoding configuration files for `inputenc`. For example, encodings related to the Cyrillic languages are distributed together with the corresponding font support packages for Cyrillic.

If you process a document stored in one of the legacy encodings that is missing an appropriate inputenc line, three things can happen:

- If the document consists only of ASCII characters, then it is in fact a proper UTF-8 document, and it processes correctly.
- The worst-case scenario is that the file is processed without any errors (i.e., it is technically a UTF-8 file) but the printed output is wrong in some places. While this is not likely, it can happen, and there is no way to automatically detect that (obviously L^AT_EX cannot check the results for scrambled/nonsense words).
- The most likely case, however, is that you receive one or more error messages of the type “Invalid UTF-8 byte” indicating that L^AT_EX found a byte sequence that is not allowed in a UTF-8 file. Such errors are therefore fairly certain indicators that the file is not encoded in UTF-8, but in some legacy encoding. Finding out in which encoding can unfortunately be a difficult task, if you do not happen to know on which computer the file was made. You may have to make an educated guess, process the file, and then carefully check the printed result—the fact that you do not get any errors after selecting an encoding, such as `latin1`, is unfortunately no proof that it is the correct one.

Other indicators that the file is in a legacy encoding are error messages of the type “Unicode character ... not set up for use with L^AT_EX”. However, these errors can also show up with proper UTF-8 files if the Unicode character in question is not available in any of the loaded fonts.

9.5.5 fontenc—Selecting font encodings

To be able to use a text font encoding with L^AT_EX, the encoding has to be loaded in the document class, in a package, or in the document preamble. More precisely, the definitions to access the glyphs in fonts with a certain encoding have to be loaded. The canonical way to do this with an 8-bit T_EX engine; e.g., pdfT_EX is via the fontenc package, which takes a comma-separated list of font encodings as a package option. The last of these encodings is automatically made the default document encoding. For example,

```
\usepackage[T2A,T1]{fontenc}
```

loads all necessary definitions for the Cyrillic¹ T2A and the T1 (Cork) encodings and sets the latter to be the default document encoding by changing `\encodingdefault`.

In contrast to normal package behavior, one can load this package several times with different optional arguments to the `\usepackage` command. This is necessary to allow a document class to load a certain set of encodings and enable the user to load still more encodings in the preamble. Loading encodings more than once is

 Multiple uses of
fontenc allowed

¹If any Cyrillic encoding is loaded, the list of commands affected by `\MakeUppercase` and `\MakeLowercase` is automatically extended.

possible without side effects (other than potentially changing the document default font encoding).

If language support packages are used in the document (e.g., those coming with the babel system), it is often the case that the necessary font encodings are already loaded by the support package.

*Do not
use fontenc in
Unicode engines
unless there is a
good reason*

Unicode engines

It is, however, not required to use the fontenc package together with a Unicode engine, such as Xe_{La}TeX or Lua_{TeX} — in fact it is usually wrong and can lead to missing or wrong characters and to incorrect hyphenation!

In Unicode engines the assumption is that fonts are Unicode fonts, i.e., encoded in the TU encoding, so this encoding is automatically made the default encoding by \LaTeX when the program starts.

While it is possible to use fonts that have a different encoding such as T1 in Unicode engines, one has to be aware that only ASCII characters (and those are in the same slot position in Unicode and in the current font encoding) can be entered directly. For all others you need to use their LICR representations; see Table 9.23 on page 768. For example, `\"a` works always, while `ä` works only in T1 but not in OT1. For `ß` or `€` the situation is worse; they work in none of the legacy encodings and produce either wrong output (like `SS`) or no output at all — for them you have to always use `\ss` and `\texteuro`.

Furthermore, even if you correctly input your text using LICRs where necessary, hyphenation of your text is still likely to produce incorrect results. The problem is that in all \TeX programs the patterns used to determine the hyphenation points depend not just on the language but also on the font encoding in force.

So for fully correct hyphenation you need a set of patterns for each language/font encoding combination, which is not realistic. Thus, \TeX assumes one dominant encoding per language, which works well enough if encodings are similar (e.g., OT1 is more or less a subset of T1) but less so many characters are simply in different slots.

If you need to use fontenc for some reason, make sure that the default encoding (i.e., the one used for the text fonts) remains TU; that is, always list TU as the last option when loading (or reloading) the package.

9.5.6 Additional text symbols not part of OT1 or T1 encodings

When the T1 font encoding was defined in Cork, it was decided that this encoding should omit many standard text symbols such as `†` and instead include as many composite glyphs as possible. The rationale was that characters that are subject to hyphenation have to be present in the same font, while one can fetch other symbols without much penalty from additional fonts. These extra symbols have, therefore, been collected in a companion encoding. In 1995, a first implementation of this encoding (TS1) was developed by Jörg Knappen [80, 81]. With the textcomp package, Sebastian Rahtz (1955–2016) provided a \LaTeX interface to it.

Unfortunately, just as with the T1 encoding, the encoding design for TS1 was prepared based on glyph availability in the T_EX world without considering that the majority of commercial fonts provide different sets of glyphs. As a result, the full implementation of this encoding is available for very few font families, among them EC, CM Bright, and Latin Modern fonts. For most PostScript fonts, implementations of the encoding also exist, but a larger number of the glyphs are missing and produce square blobs of ink or possibly just a gap in the typeset output.¹ Table 9.9 on pages 696–697 shows the glyphs made available by TS1 and the commands to access them. Commands colored in blue indicate that the corresponding glyph is most likely not available in the font design when PostScript or OpenType fonts are used.

Since 2020 the symbols provided by the TS1 encoding are directly accessible from L^AT_EX without the need to load the `textcomp` package any longer. The package is still available so that older documents work without complaining about a missing package.

Unicode engines

In Unicode engines the additional commands have always been available (adjusted to select slots in the Unicode TU encoding) if supported by the font, so it was never necessary to load the `textcomp` package with those engines.

The symbols provided with the encoding TS1 should normally switch their design depending on the current font settings. A few of them have been already present in the original Computer Modern fonts, hidden in the math fonts (e.g., `\textbullet`, or `\textdagger`), and L^AT_EX releases prior to the development of the TS1 encoding always took them from there. Nowadays they are fetched from the companion fonts and as a consequence, they sometimes change their shape when the surrounding font attributes (family, series, or shape) are changed just like any other text character, allowing them to better blend in with surrounding text.

	<code>\newcommand\sample{\textdagger~\textdaggerdbl~\textparagraph ~\textbullet~\textbardbl~\textasteriskcentered~\textsection}</code>	
† ‡ ¶ • || * § (CM fonts)		<code>\sample\</code> (CM fonts) <code>\\</code>
† ‡ ¶ • || * § (Alegreya)	<code>\fontfamily{Alegreya-LF}\upshape</code>	<code>\sample\</code> (Alegreya) <code>\\</code>
† ‡ ¶ • * § (<i>Alegreya italics</i>)		<code>\itshape \sample\</code> (Alegreya italics) <code>\\</code>
† ‡ ¶ • || * § (Gillius)	<code>\fontfamily{GilliusADF-LF}\upshape</code>	<code>\sample\</code> (Gillius)

9-5-6

While this is usually the right solution, it may result in changes in unexpected places. For example, the `itemize` environment by default uses `\textbullet` and `\textasteriskcentered` to indicate first-level and third-level items. And in all likelihood you do not want those to change just because you typeset a few items using, for example, `\itshape`. Similarly, footnote symbols, if used instead of numbered footnotes, should probably have the same glyph shapes regardless of local font settings for the text. For this reason the footnote marker uses `\normalfont` to ensure that the markers are always typeset using the same font face.

¹The T1 encoding has the same problem when it comes to older PostScript fonts, but fortunately only five (seldom used) glyphs are missing from some fonts; see Example 9-7-1 on page 737.

Accent symbols					
Á	<code>\capitalacute_A</code> ⁽²⁾	Ă	<code>\capitalbreve_A</code> ⁽²⁾	Ȧ	<code>\capitalcaron_A</code> ⁽²⁾
Ȧ	<code>\capitalcedilla_A</code>	Â	<code>\capitalcircumflex_A</code> ⁽²⁾	Ä	<code>\capitaldieresis_A</code> ⁽²⁾
À	<code>\capitaldotaccent_A</code> ⁽²⁾	À	<code>\capitalgrave_A</code> ⁽²⁾	Ȧ	<code>\capitalhungarumlaut_A</code> ⁽²⁾
Â	<code>\capitalmacron_A</code> ⁽²⁾	ĀĀ	<code>\capitalnewtie_AA</code> ⁽²⁾	Ů	<code>\capitalogonek_U</code>
Å	<code>\capitalring_A</code> ⁽²⁾	ĀĀ	<code>\capitaltie_AA</code> ⁽²⁾	Ȧ	<code>\capitaltilde_A</code> ⁽²⁾
ôo	<code>\newtie_oo</code> ⁽²⁾	⊗	<code>\textcircled_x</code> ⁽¹⁾	ôo	<code>\t_oo</code> ⁽²⁾
Numerals (superior, fractions, oldstyle)					
1	<code>\textonesuperior</code> ⁽⁹⁾	2	<code>\texttwosuperior</code> ⁽⁹⁾	3	<code>\textthreesuperior</code> ⁽⁹⁾
¼	<code>\textonequarter</code>	½	<code>\textonehalf</code>	¾	<code>\textthreequarters</code>
0	<code>\textzerooldstyle</code> ⁽²⁾	1	<code>\textoneoldstyle</code> ⁽²⁾	2	<code>\texttwooldstyle</code> ⁽²⁾
3	<code>\textthreeoldstyle</code> ⁽²⁾	4	<code>\textfouroldstyle</code> ⁽²⁾	5	<code>\textfiveoldstyle</code> ⁽²⁾
6	<code>\textsixoldstyle</code> ⁽²⁾	7	<code>\textsevenoldstyle</code> ⁽²⁾	8	<code>\texteightoldstyle</code> ⁽²⁾
9	<code>\textnineoldstyle</code> ⁽²⁾				
Pair symbols					
<	<code>\textlangle</code> ⁽³⁾	>	<code>\textrangle</code> ⁽³⁾		<code>\textlbrackdbl</code> ⁽²⁾
]]	<code>\textrbrackdbl</code> ⁽²⁾	↑	<code>\textuparrow</code> ⁽⁴⁾	↓	<code>\textdownarrow</code> ⁽⁴⁾
←	<code>\textleftarrow</code> ⁽⁴⁾	→	<code>\textrightarrow</code> ⁽⁴⁾	{	<code>\textlquill</code> ⁽²⁾
}	<code>\textrquill</code> ⁽²⁾				
Monetary and commercial symbols					
฿	<code>\textbaht</code> ⁽²⁾	¢	<code>\textcent</code>	¢	<code>\textcentoldstyle</code> ⁽²⁾
ℳ	<code>\textcolonmonetary</code> ⁽⁴⁾	¤	<code>\textcurrency</code> ⁽⁶⁾	\$	<code>\textdollar</code>
\$	<code>\textdollaroldstyle</code> ⁽²⁾	₫	<code>\textdong</code> ⁽⁴⁾	€	<code>\texteuro</code> ⁽⁸⁾
f	<code>\textflorin</code> ⁽⁶⁾	₲	<code>\textguarani</code> ⁽²⁾	₣	<code>\textlira</code> ⁽⁴⁾
₪	<code>\textnaira</code> ⁽²⁾	₱	<code>\textpeso</code> ⁽²⁾	£	<code>\textsterling</code>
₩	<code>\textwon</code> ⁽⁴⁾	¥	<code>\textyen</code>		
©	<code>\textcircledP</code> ⁽²⁾	©	<code>\textcopyleft</code> ⁽²⁾	©	<code>\textcopyright</code>
%	<code>\textdiscount</code> ⁽²⁾	©	<code>\textestimated</code> ⁽⁵⁾	‰	<code>\textpertenthousand</code> ⁽²⁾
‰	<code>\textperthousand</code>	©	<code>\textreferencemark</code> ⁽²⁾	®	<code>\textregistered</code>
SM	<code>\textservicemark</code> ⁽²⁾	TM	<code>\texttrademark</code>		
Footnote symbols					
*	<code>\textasteriskcentered</code>		<code>\textbardbl</code> ⁽⁹⁾		<code>\textbrokenbar</code>
•	<code>\textbullet</code>	†	<code>\textdagger</code>	‡	<code>\textdaggerdbl</code>
◦	<code>\textopenbullet</code> ⁽²⁾	¶	<code>\textparagraph</code>	·	<code>\textperiodcentered</code>
‡	<code>\textpilcrow</code> ⁽²⁾	§	<code>\textsection</code>		
Scientific symbols					
°C	<code>\textcelsius</code> ⁽⁹⁾	°	<code>\textdegree</code>	÷	<code>\textdiv</code>
¬	<code>\textlnot</code>	∅	<code>\textmho</code> ⁽²⁾	—	<code>\textminus</code> ⁽⁷⁾
μ	<code>\textmu</code> ⁽⁷⁾	Ω	<code>\textohm</code> ⁽⁷⁾	α	<code>\textordfeminine</code>
♂	<code>\textordmasculine</code>	±	<code>\textpm</code>	√	<code>\textsurd</code> ⁽²⁾
×	<code>\texttimes</code>				

Blue indicates that the symbol is unavailable in some fonts. The TS1 subencoding from which on the glyph is substituted with a default is given in parentheses. Most modern font families have subencodings 2–5.

Table 9.9: Commands made available with the TS1 encoding

Various					
"	<code>\textacutedbl</code> ⁽²⁾	´	<code>\textasciiacute</code> ⁽²⁾	˘	<code>\textasciibreve</code> ⁽²⁾
˘	<code>\textasciicaron</code> ⁽²⁾	¨	<code>\textasciidieresis</code> ⁽²⁾	˘	<code>\textasciigrave</code> ⁽²⁾
—	<code>\textasciimacron</code> ⁽²⁾	○	<code>\textbigcircle</code> ⁽²⁾	␣	<code>\textblank</code> ⁽⁸⁾
★	<code>\textborn</code> ⁽²⁾	=	<code>\textdblhyphen</code> ⁽²⁾	=	<code>\textdblhyphenchar</code> ⁽²⁾
†	<code>\textdied</code> ⁽²⁾	o/o	<code>\textdivorced</code> ⁽²⁾	/	<code>\textfractionsolidus</code> ⁽⁷⁾
“	<code>\textgravedbl</code> ⁽²⁾	‡	<code>\textinterrobang</code> ⁽⁸⁾	‡	<code>\textinterrobangdown</code> ⁽⁸⁾
🍀	<code>\textleaf</code> ⁽²⁾	⋈	<code>\textmarried</code> ⁽²⁾	♪	<code>\textmusicalnote</code> ⁽²⁾
Nº	<code>\textnumero</code> ⁽⁵⁾	'	<code>\textquotesingle</code>	,	<code>\textquotestraightbase</code>
”	<code>\textquotestraightdblbase</code>	R	<code>\textrecipe</code> ⁽²⁾	—	<code>\textthreequartersemdash</code> ⁽⁹⁾
˜	<code>\texttildelow</code> ⁽²⁾	—	<code>\texttwelvewardash</code> ⁽⁹⁾		

Blue indicates that the symbol is unavailable in some fonts. The TS1 subencoding from which on the glyph is substituted with a default is given in parentheses. Most modern font families have subencodings 2–5.

Table 9.9: Commands made available with the TS1 encoding (cont.)

Similarly `\labelitemi` to `\labelitemiv` reset the font face, but in this case it is done indirectly by executing `\labelitemfont`, which by default is defined to call `\normalfont`. This allows altering the behavior by redefining this command; e.g.,

```
\renewcommand\labelitemfont{\fontseries{m}\fontshape{n}\selectfont}
```

uses the current font family to fetch the symbols but with a fixed series and shape value.

By specifying `\UseLegacyTextSymbols` in the preamble, it is also possible to direct L^AT_EX to use the eight fixed symbols from the math fonts in all situations. They are then used in `itemize` and footnotes, but also in running text as shown in the next example. It also changes `\oldstylenums` to always use the single set of oldstyle numbers from the math fonts and is really only provided for backward compatibility.

Using legacy text symbols

```

* || • † ‡ ¶ · § 123  \UseLegacyTextSymbols  \newcommand\legacysyms{\textasteriskcentered~%
* || • † ‡ ¶ · § 123  \textbardbl~\textbullet~\textdagger~\textdaggerdbl~\textparagraph~%
* || • † ‡ ¶ · § 123  \textperiodcentered~\textsection~\oldstylenums{123}}
* || • † ‡ ¶ · § 123  \fontfamily{Alegreya-LF}\upshape \legacysyms \ \ \itshape \legacysyms \ \
9-5-7 * || • † ‡ ¶ · § 123  \fontfamily{NotoSans-LF}\upshape \legacysyms \ \ \itshape \legacysyms

```

As you see, the symbols are now always identical regardless of the font selected. However, the spacing differs because the space characters have a different width in Alegreya and Noto Sans.

If you want to use only some of the legacy symbols, for example the “§” because you prefer the original design, or the “•” for `itemize` because the design in Alegreya “.”, for example, appears to be too tiny, then this is easily possible too. All eight symbols can be accessed by using `\textlegacybullet` instead of `\textbullet`,

etc., and if you always want to use the legacy symbol, you can adjust the definition like it was done for `\textdagger` in the example.

We prefer † and § over ‡ and §. And • is now always legacy design. `\usepackage{Alegreya}` `\DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\textbullet}{OMS}`
 † and §. And • is now always legacy design. We prefer `\textlegacydagger` and `\textlegacysection` over `\textdagger` and `\textsection`. And `\textbullet` is now always legacy design.

9-5-8

The precise interface for `\DeclareTextSymbolDefault` is discussed in Section 9.9.4 on page 765.

Special features

*Diacritics on
uppercase letters*

Diacritical marks on uppercase letters are sometimes flattened in some font designs compared to their lowercase counterparts. Fonts derived from Computer Modern designs, e.g., the EC fonts, CM Bright or Latin Modern, follow this tradition. For example, the grave accents on ò and Ò are different (which is not the case with Lucida, the document font used in this book). This poses a problem if one needs an uncommon letter that is not available as a single glyph in the T1 encoding, but rather must be constructed by placing the diacritical mark over the base character. In that case the same diacritical mark is used, which can result in noticeable differences (see the \ddot{X} in the next example). The `\capital...` accents shown in Table 9.9 on page 696 solve this problem by generating diacritical marks suitable for use with uppercase letters.

ò \grave{X} Ò \grave{X} Ò \grave{X}
 ò \grave{X} Ò \grave{X} Ò \grave{X}

```
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\huge \o'x \O'X \capitalgrave O\capitalgrave X \par
\fontfamily{Alegreya-LF}\selectfont
\o'x \O'X \capitalgrave O\capitalgrave X
```

9-5-9

Flat accents are available only with a handful of font families, e.g., Computer Modern and closely related designs. With all others, the capital accents produce the same accents as on lowercase letters, but this has the effect that they then appear on all glyphs, which can be observed in the second line of the example.

Unicode engines

In Unicode engines the `\capital...` accents always produce the same results as the normal accent commands and leave it up to the font how the accent is positioned. It therefore makes no sense to use them with these engines. They are provided only to avoid error messages with documents written for pdf \TeX and reprocessed with $\text{X}\mathbb{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ or Lua TeX .

*Compound word
marks of different
heights*

$\text{L}\mathbb{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ offers a `\textcompwordmark` command, an invisible zero-width glyph within the T1 encoding that can, for example, be used to break up unwanted ligatures (at the cost of preventing hyphenation).¹ The glyph has a height of 1ex, which makes it possible to use it as the argument to an accent command, thereby

¹With OT1-encoded fonts it is a faked glyph and therefore prevents automatic hyphenation in the word in which it is used.

placing an accent between two letters. In the next example this command is used to produce the German -burg abbreviation. With the TS1 encoding two additional compound word marks become available: `\textascendercompwordmark` and `\textcapitalcompwordmark` that have the height of the ascender or capitals in the font, respectively.

	<code>\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}</code>
<code>b~g</code> (this fails)	<code>b\u{ }g</code> (this fails) <code>\\ Auf\textcompwordmark lage not Auflage \\</code>
Auflage not Auflage	<code>b\u\textcompwordmark g \quad B\u\textcapitalcompwordmark G</code>
	<code>and \fontfamily{Alegreya-LF}\selectfont</code>
<code>b̃g BG and b̃g BG</code>	<code>b\u\textcompwordmark g \quad B\u\textcapitalcompwordmark G</code>

9-5-10

The above example works only in pdfL^AT_EX, and to allow for hyphenation in the word “Auflage” you would need to use T1-encoded fonts, because only such fonts contain a real compound-mark glyph. If a font in a different encoding is used, then the glyph is fetched from a matching T1-encoded font, and that breaks hyphenation.

Unicode engines

The fonts for Unicode engines using the TU encoding are lacking the special glyphs `\textcapitalcompwordmark` and `\textascendercompwordmark`, but in addition they also use a different mechanism to place accents so that the “-burg” accent comes out wrong with most fonts. However, the command `\textcompwordmark` can still be used to break up ligatures.

The TS1 encoding offers several monetary symbols, among them a \$ sign, but because that glyph is also available in both the OT1 and T1 encodings, there is no point in removing its definition and forcing L^AT_EX to pick up the TS1 version if you are typesetting in either of these encodings. However, assume you want to use the variant dollar sign $\text{\$}$ for your dollars automatically. In that case you have to get rid of the declarations in other encodings so that L^AT_EX automatically switches to TS1.

*Managing your
dollars*

```
\DeclareTextCommandDefault{\textdollar}
  {\UseTextSymbol{TS1}\textdollaroldstyle} % set up new default
\UndeclareTextCommand{\textdollar}{OT1}    % do not use the defs
\UndeclareTextCommand{\textdollar}{T1}     % in OT1 or T1
```

Such redeclarations will, of course, work properly only if the document fonts contain the desired glyph in the TS1 encoding. In this book they would have failed, because Lucida Bright (the document font for this book) has only the restricted set of ISO-Adobe symbols available in TS1. If you wonder where the $\text{\$}$ and similar symbols shown in the book actually came from, the answer is simple: from the Latin Modern fonts.

Unicode engines

The same approach can be taken in Unicode engines; you only have to undeclare `\textdollar` in the TU encoding then. If the current font family is not available in TS1 encoding (which is the most common case for Unicode fonts), then a default font is chosen, which in the case of Unicode engines is Latin Modern.

Typesetting oldstyle numerals

For most other glyphs it is enough to change the default because they are defined only in the TS1 encoding.

According to its specification the TS1 encoding contains oldstyle digits as well as the punctuations period and comma. This allows one to typeset dates and other (positive) numbers with oldstyle numerals by simply switching to the TS1 font encoding. Unfortunately, these oldstyle numerals are available only in subencodings 0 and 1, and most fonts only offer subencoding 2 or higher. It is therefore seldom advisable to simply manually switch to TS1 to typeset oldstyle numbers because you might get “■.■.■” or “..” instead of 5.4.1962 as desired.¹

Nevertheless, with the substitution mechanism providing different-looking glyphs based on the situation, it is possible to obtain better results than in earlier days of L^AT_EX, where `\oldstylenums` always used the serified oldstyle numerals available as part of the math fonts. Thus, `\oldstylenums` was changed to make use of this mechanism. If you really want the original definition, use `\legacyoldstylenums`, but note that this can typeset only numbers, not punctuation characters!

	<code>\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}</code>	<code>\usepackage{lmodern}</code>	
	<code>\newcommand\born[1]{\textborn\oldstylenums{#1}}</code>		
I was born *5.4.1962	I was born \born{5.4.1962}		<code>\\</code>
or in sans serif *5.4.1962.	or in \textsf{sans serif \born{5.4.1962}}.		<code>\\</code>
Compare this to 5>4>1962.	Compare this to \legacyoldstylenums{5.4.1962}.		

9-5-11

However, if you want oldstyle numerals and you are not typesetting using Computer or Latin Modern, it is usually better to use the `-OsF` convention supported in many modern fonts or the command `\textfigures` if provided by the package; see Section 10.1.2 on page 6 for details.

Managing missing glyphs

Given that only a few font families implement the full set of the TS1 encoding glyphs, there is the question how missing glyphs should be handled. For this the glyphs from TS1 are split into ten subencodings, numbered 0 to 9, where 0 represents the full set and higher numbers mean that more and more glyphs become unavailable and need to be substituted with glyphs from other fonts. For example, a font family with subencoding 5 (like Gillius) does not support the glyphs labeled 1–5 in Table 9.9 on pages 696 and 697.

If a glyph is unavailable in the current font (based on its subencoding information), then a default from a different font is selected. Of course, if the glyph is “letter-like”, such as №, then it would be bad if the substituted glyph has serifs when the surrounding text is sans serif or vice versa. The mechanism therefore checks if the current font family matches `\rmdefault`, `\sfdefault`, or `\ttdefault` and selects a reasonable matching substitution.²

We demonstrate this in the next example by setting the `\rmdefault` to Gillius (which is of course nonsense because this is a sans serif font) and for comparison

¹These are still substituted glyphs as Lucida does not have them, but they blend reasonably well.

²For fonts that match neither, the default is to use a serified substitute.

`\sfdefault` to Gillius №2, which is a minor variant of the same font. Both have TS1 subencoding 5 so that all five symbols are substituted. In the first case we get serified glyphs and in the second sans serif glyphs as a replacement. While not perfect, the latter is clearly an improvement. To prove that this also works for `\ttdefault` we use Algol Revived as typewriter font, which is also missing these glyphs.¹

Gillius with ©, №, £, ¢, ¶. Roman defaults used — not good. Gillius No2 with ©, №, £, ¢, ¶. Sans defaults used — better! Algol Revived with ©, №, £, ¢, ¶. Typewriter defaults now.	<pre> \renewcommand\rmdefault{GilliusADF-LF} \renewcommand\sfddefault{GilliusADFNoTwo-LF} \renewcommand\ttdefault{AlgolRevived-TLF} \rmfamily Gillius with \textcopyright, \textnumero, \textlira, \textcentoldstyle, \textpilcrow. Roman defaults used --- not good. \sffamily Gillius No2 with \textcopyright, \textnumero, \textlira, \textcentoldstyle, \textpilcrow. Sans defaults used --- better! \ttfamily Algol Revived with \textcopyright, \textnumero, \textlira, \textcentoldstyle, \textpilcrow. Typewriter defaults now. </pre>
---	---

9-5-12

Of course, with mono-spaced fonts the substituted glyphs no longer have the right width and thus break any alignment. In our example this does not matter because Algol Revived is not actually mono-spaced, but in other situations this is something to watch out for.

If such a substitution happens, you get an information line in the `.log` about this. If for important documents you want this more prominent, load the `textcomp` with the option `warn` or `error`. The fonts used for substitution are customizable; for pdf_T_EX they are defined as follows:

```

\newcommand\rmsubstdefault{cmr} \newcommand\sfsbstdefault{cms}
\newcommand\ttsbstdefault{cmtt}
\newcommand\textcompsubstdefault{\rmsubstdefault}

```

where `\textcompsubstdefault` is used when the current font is not one of the document default families.

Unicode engines

In Unicode engines, Latin Modern instead of Computer Modern is used.

While most unavailable glyphs in a TS1 subencoding get substituted by taking the same characters from a different font, this is not the case for the accent commands in the first block of Table 9.9. These accents get replaced by normal accents taken from the T1 encoding (and thus from the same font family). The only exception is `\textcircled`, which is taken from the math fonts if a substitution is necessary.

L^AT_EX already knows the correct TS1 subencoding for more than a hundred font families (including all that are discussed this book). But if you come across fonts that it does not know about (or for some reason assumes that they implement a smaller

¹Actually, newer versions of Algol Revived provide most, but not all, of these glyphs. However, because some glyphs are missing, the TS1 subencoding used by default is supporting none of them.

subset than they actually do), you can inform \LaTeX about the correct font subencoding through a `\DeclareEncodingSubset` declaration.

```
\DeclareEncodingSubset{TS1}{family}{number}
```

The first argument is the *encoding*, but because this concept is implemented only for TS1, it can take only that value. The *family* can take a family name like `Alegreya-LF`, or it can take a partial family name ending in `-*` in which case the subencoding is set for the four families by replacing `-*` with `-LF`, `-TLF`, `-OsF`, and `-TOf`, respectively. Finally, the *number* describes the subencoding and can take a value between 0 (full TS1) and 9 (smallest subset).

To find out which glyphs are available in which subencoding, look at Table 9.9 on pages 696–697. Available are all glyphs shown in black and from the glyphs in blue those marked with a number *higher* than the subencoding. For example, `\textyen` “¥” is always available, `\textflorin` “f” is available in subencodings 0–5, i.e., in most fonts, while `\textpeso` “P” is provided only in those fonts with subencoding 0 or 1, so only in a handful. You can find the subencoding declarations used by \LaTeX in the file `ltxtextcomp.dtx`.

If \LaTeX does not have any information about a font family, it is very cautious and assumes subencoding 9 because this should really be supported by every font that offers any TS1 support. However, it is quite likely that this results in a lot of unnecessary substitutions, because most modern fonts provide subencodings 3–5. If you use fonts not described in this book and you get a lot of visible substitutions, it might be worth determining what exactly is provided and then add an appropriate `\DeclareEncodingSubset` declaration to your document.¹

Altering the subencoding setup for individual glyphs

The split into a set of shrinking subencodings is not giving full justice to the diversity of fonts; i.e., the fonts have been assigned the subencoding for which all glyphs can be produced, but as a result the fonts may well contain one or the other glyph even though its subencoding says differently and you therefore get a substitution.

For example, suppose you typeset in Quattrocento or in Overlock and you happen to need a `\textflorin` and a `\textcurrency` symbol, then you get both from Computer Modern, which looks rather odd (especially the “f”) with either font.

```
\usepackage[rm]{quattrocento} \usepackage{overlock}
Quattrocento: 3\textflorin\ and \textcurrency
```

Quattrocento: 3f and ☐

Overlock: 5f and ☐

```
\sffamily Overlock: 5\textflorin\ and \textcurrency
```

9-5-13

However, both fonts actually have their own florin symbol, so we can do better. One possible solution is to change the symbol default to unconditionally select the

¹It is also possible to change the subencoding assumed for unknown fonts, by using `?` as the family name, e.g., `\DeclareEncodingSubset{TS1}{?}{5}`, which might be a good compromise, but, of course, it may result in some missing glyphs if you are not careful.

glyph from the TS1 encoding, which is what we do in the next example. Of course, it is then up to you to make sure that you use it only with fonts that actually contain the glyph, as what we do means there is no substitution support any longer. This is why we get nothing with Overlock (and no warning or error) if we try the same with `\textcurrency` default!

```
\usepackage[rm]{quattrocento} \usepackage{overlock}
\DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\textflorin}{TS1}
\DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\textcurrency}{TS1}
```

Quattrocento: 3 f and ₤

9-5-14

Overlock: 5 f and oops

\sffamily Overlock: 5 f and \textcurrency oops

If you like to live dangerously, you can also turn off the substitution mechanism completely by loading the `textcomp` package with the options `full` and `force`, but then you should check the final result very carefully for missing glyphs.

In the previous example, some fonts had the desired glyph available, but it was just “unnecessarily” substituted for another. However, what do you do in the case of, say, Overlock and `\textcurrency`? One possibility is to define your own command and make it select a suitable glyph from a different font that fits well enough. In the example below we settled for the glyph from Rosario in the light series, which more or less matches the weight of Overlock.

What the declaration of `\textcurrencysf` does is to switch the font family (inside a group) and then use `\textcurrency` from the TS1 encoding.

```
\usepackage{overlock}
\DeclareTextCommandDefault{\textcurrencysf}
  {{{\fontfamily{Rosario-LF}\fontseries{1}\selectfont
      \UseTextSymbol{TS1}{\textcurrency}}}}
```

9-5-15

Overlook: ₤

Close enough?

\sffamily Overlook: \textcurrencysf \ Close enough?

Instead of defining a default for a new command, we could have overwritten the default for an existing command; for example,

```
\DeclareTextCommandDefault{\textdagger}
  {{{\fontfamily{Almndr-OsF}\selectfont\UseTextSymbol{TS1}{\textdagger}}}}
```

would always typeset the `\textdagger` symbol as † if you like that shape from the Almendra font.¹

Unicode engines

With Unicode engines, this would not have the desired effect because all such symbol commands are directly provided by the TU encoding, and a default definition never applies. Thus, in such engines you need to force the change by

¹For more abstract symbols this approach often gives an acceptable result; in the case of letter-like symbols, the standard substitution mechanism is usually better.

explicitly changing the definition for the TU encoding instead:

```
\DeclareTextCommand{\textdagger}{TU}
    {\fontfamily{Almndr-OsF}\selectfont
     \UseTextSymbol{TS1}{\textdagger}}
```

or by removing it from this encoding via `\UndeclareTextCommand`.

9.5.7 exscale — Scaling large Computer Modern math operators

Normally the font employed for large mathematical symbols is used in only one size. This setup is usually sufficient, because the font includes most of the characters in several different sizes and (L^A)T_EX is specially equipped to automatically choose the symbol that fits best. However, when a document requires a lot of mathematics in large sizes — such as in headings — the selected symbols may come out too small. In this case, you can use the package `exscale`, which provides for math extension fonts in different sizes.

The package is only meant for documents using Computer Modern math fonts or very closely related designs such as Latin Modern because it makes use of the large symbol font of Computer Modern in different design sizes. However, packages providing alternate math font setups often offer this functionality as a package option, usually also named `exscale`.

9.5.8 tracefnt — Tracing the font selection

The package `tracefnt` can be used to detect problems in the font selection system. It supports several options that allow you to customize the amount of information displayed by NFSS on the screen and in the transcript file.

errorshow This option suppresses all warnings and information messages on the terminal; they are written only to the transcript file. However, real errors are shown on the terminal. Because warnings about font substitutions and so on can mean that the final result is incorrect, you should carefully study the transcript file before printing an important publication.

warningshow When this option is specified, warnings and errors are shown on the terminal. This setting gives you the same amount of information as L^AT_EX 2_ε does without the `tracefnt` package loaded.

infoshow This option is the default when you load the `tracefnt` package. Extra information, which is normally written only to the transcript file, is now also displayed on your terminal.

debugshow This option additionally shows information about changes to the text font and the restoration of such fonts at the end of a brace group or the end of an environment. Be careful when you turn on this option because it can produce very large transcript files.

In addition to these “standard tracing” options,¹ the package `tracefont` supports the following options:

pausing This option turns all warning messages into errors to help in the detection of problems in important publications.

loading This option shows the loading of external fonts. However, if the format or document class you use has already loaded some fonts, then these are not shown by this option.

Unicode engines

It is also possible to use `tracefont` with Unicode engines because the `fontspec` package responsible for font loading in these engines uses NFSS underneath its belt.

9.5.9 nfssfont.tex — Displaying 8-bit font tables and samples

The \LaTeX distribution comes with a file called `nfssfont.tex` that can be used to test new 8-bit fonts, produce font tables showing all characters, and perform similar font-related operations.²

This file is an adaption of the program `testfont.tex`, which was originally written by Donald Knuth. When you run this file through \LaTeX , you are asked to enter the name of the font to test. You can answer either by giving the external font name without any extension — such as `cmr10` (Computer Modern Roman 10pt) — if you know it or by giving an empty font name. In the latter case you are asked to provide an NFSS font specification, that is, an encoding name (default `T1`), a font family name (default `cmr`), a font series (default `m`), a font shape (default `n`), and a font size (default 10pt). The package then loads the external font corresponding to that classification.

Next, you are requested to enter a command. Probably the most important one is `\table`, which produces a font chart like the one on page 750. Also interesting is `\text`, which produces a longer text sample. To switch to a new test font, type `\init`; to finish the test, type `\bye` or `\stop`. To learn about all the other possible tests (at the moment basically still tailored for the OT1 encoding), type `\help`. The default action is `\table\bye` because this is what is usually wanted.

9.6 fontspec — Font selection for Unicode engines

Unicode engines

One important difference between $\text{pdf}\text{\LaTeX}$ and Unicode engines is the way fonts are loaded and accessed. Up to this point we have covered the interfaces that are essentially common to all engines (with the exception of the `fontenc` package). In this section we describe the `fontspec` package, which should be

¹ It is suggested that package writers who support tracing of their packages use these four standard names if applicable.

² How to produce font tables for larger fonts is discussed in Section 9.6.7 on page 728.

used to load and access fonts when using \XeTeX or \LuaTeX . Thus, technically all of this section should be presented inside a gray box because it applies only to Unicode engines, but to prevent eye trouble with our readers, the rest of this section does not show this gray background.

In \pdfTeX , fonts can be specified simply through calls to \fontfamily or through support packages that do those calls on behalf of the user. In Unicode engines this interface does not work because fonts in Unicode encoding (TU) usually do not have any supporting \.fd files and so \fontfamily would not know how to load font shape declarations and alter the internal NFSS tables to access the requested fonts.

This is the price of the fact that with Unicode engines it is essentially possible to use any OpenType or TrueType font available on your computer without the need to first provide font metric files (\.tfm) for \TeX .

At the same time, directly using the low-level font loading facilities of the Unicode engines is not practical either, and so Will Robertson with contributions by Khaled Hosny, Philipp Gesang, and others developed the `fontspec` package that abstracts this loading process and provides a fairly simple and flexible interface to combine it with the powers of NFSS.

9.6.1 Setting up the main document font families

At its core, `fontspec` provides three declarations to set up three font families needed in most documents: a serif family, a sans serif family, and a typewriter family that then can be accessed through the usual NFSS commands, i.e., $\text{\texttt{rm}}$, $\text{\texttt{sf}}$, and $\text{\texttt{tt}}$ or the corresponding declarative forms.

```
\setmainfont{family}[feature-list]
\setsansfont{family}[feature-list]
\setmonofont{family}[feature-list]
```

These declarations set up the document font families for the main fonts (serif), the sans fonts, and the typewriter fonts. In contrast to the usual NFSS practice of specifying some internal font family name, the *family* argument here expects the external name of an OpenType or TrueType font family. There are basically two ways to specify the *family*, either by “family name” or by “font file name”. Both have their advantages and disadvantages; personally I prefer the family name approach because I think this is more readable and you do not have to deal with different file names for different font faces — all font tables in Chapter 10 provide the necessary names in this form.¹ The *feature-list* allows you to request specific font features or alter the setup in other aspects. This is discussed below.

As an introductory example, consider typesetting a document in Optima, which is available as a system font on Macintosh computers. In that case, all you have to do is to specify the family name as an argument to \setmainfont . This automatically takes

¹However, when using \XeTeX , explicit font file names are usually better.

care of defining italics, boldface, bold italic shapes, and corresponding small caps shapes (if available) so that basic font selection commands are immediately available.¹

This **text** is typeset in the *system font* Optima. Sans Serif and Typewriter still default to Latin Modern Sans and Typewriter.

9-6-1

```
\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{Optima}
This \textbf{text} is typeset in the \emph{system font}
Optima. \textsf{Sans Serif} and \texttt{Typewriter}
still default to Latin Modern Sans and Typewriter.
```

For system fonts, that is, fonts that are stored in standard font locations, e.g., such as ~/Library/Fonts on macOS, or C:\Windows\Fonts on Windows, the above approach works in all T_EX engines. However, if we use a font family that is stored within the T_EX distribution tree (which is usually the case for the families discussed in this book), then this works with LuaT_EX but unfortunately not on all operating systems with X_YT_EX. Thus, if we replace Optima with, say, Alegreya in the previous example, we get the desired result with LuaT_EX, but when using X_YT_EX on a Mac or on a Linux system, we see something like

```
kpathsea: Running mktexmf Alegreya

! I can't find file 'Alegreya'.
<*> ...ljfour; mag:=1; nonstopmode; input Alegreya
```

because the fonts are not found and X_YT_EX unsuccessfully tries to generate them from some nonexistent METAFONT sources. If that happens, i.e., if you are using X_YT_EX and you want to use such a family, then the solution is to either add the font folder of your T_EX system to your fontconfig configuration (check the documentation of your T_EX system for how to do it) or to use the “by file name” approach and specify the actual font files in the declaration.

The former solves the problem for your own setup, but it is nonportable; i.e., your documents may not work elsewhere. The latter works everywhere, but is more work and involves two steps: first finding the names of the relevant font files and then specifying how they are mapped to italics, bold, etc., because that must be now done manually. For finding the real font names there are different possibilities; here is one that uses luaotfload-tool:

```
luaotfload-tool --list="familyname:alegreya" \
                --fields="location,plainname,basename"
```

You pass it the font family name but with all spaces removed (if any) and in only lowercase letters. For example, for “URW Classico” from Table 10.60 on page II 72 you would specify urwclassico instead of alegraya. In our case we get the following list as output:

```
alegreya texmf Alegreya Bold           Alegreya-Bold.otf
alegreya texmf Alegreya Black Italic  Alegreya-BlackItalic.otf
alegreya texmf Alegreya Medium Italic Alegreya-MediumItalic.otf
```

¹This font has no small capitals.

```

alegreya texmf Alegreya ExtraBold Italic Alegreya-ExtraBoldItalic.otf
alegreya texmf Alegreya Italic Alegreya-Italic.otf
alegreya texmf Alegreya ExtraBold Alegreya-ExtraBold.otf
alegreya texmf Alegreya Regular Alegreya-Regular.otf
alegreya texmf Alegreya Medium Alegreya-Medium.otf
alegreya texmf Alegreya Black Alegreya-Black.otf
alegreya texmf Alegreya Bold Italic Alegreya-BoldItalic.otf

```

Alternatively, you can use Herbert Voß's `luafindfont` program, which is essentially a simple-to-use frontend to the database of `luaotfload-tool`. You pass it a string as its argument and it finds you all fonts that contain this string as part of their symbolic name (the font family name without spaces and all lowercased), e.g.,

```
luafindfont -m 40 alegreya
```

In contrast to `luaotfload-tool`, this finds 48 fonts, because the string is also matching other names such as `alegreyasans`. With `-m` you can limit the number of characters shown in the path, which we did here to fit it into the book; normally you would not use it.

Nr.	Fontname	Symbolic Name	Path
1.	Alegreya-Black.otf	alegreya	/usr/local/texlive/2023/te...a/alegreya/
2.	Alegreya-BlackItalic.otf	alegreya	/usr/local/texlive/2023/te...a/alegreya/
...			
11.	AlegreyaSans-Black.otf	alegreyasans	/usr/local/texlive/2023/te...a/alegreya/
12.	AlegreyaSans-BlackItalic.otf	alegreyasans	/usr/local/texlive/2023/te...a/alegreya/
...			
13.	AlegreyaSans-Bold.otf	alegreyasans	/usr/local/texlive/2023/te...a/alegreya/
14.	AlegreyaSans-BoldItalic.otf	alegreyasans	/usr/local/texlive/2023/te...a/alegreya/
...			
25.	AlegreyaSansSC-Black.otf	alegreyasanssc	/usr/local/texlive/2023/te...a/alegreya/
26.	AlegreyaSansSC-BlackItalic.otf	alegreyasanssc	/usr/local/texlive/2023/te...a/alegreya/
...			
39.	AlegreyaSC-Black.otf	alegreyasans	/usr/local/texlive/2023/te...a/alegreya/
40.	AlegreyaSC-BlackItalic.otf	alegreyasans	/usr/local/texlive/2023/te...a/alegreya/
...			
48.	AlegreyaSC-Regular.otf	alegreyasans	/usr/local/texlive/2023/te...a/alegreya/

Interesting further features of `luafindfont` are the options `-i` or `-o` followed by the line number of the font you are interested in, e.g.,

```
luafindfont alegreya -o 2
```

which gives you the `otfinfo` output for the Black Italic Alegreya font without the need to pass the full path to the program:

```

Run otfinfo:2
Family:           Alegreya Black
Subfamily:        Italic
Full name:         Alegreya Black Italic
PostScript name:  Alegreya-BlackItalic
Preferred family:  Alegreya

```

```

Preferred subfamily: Black Italic
Version:             Version 2.008;PS 002.008;hotconv 1.0.88;makeotf.lib2.5.64775
Unique ID:           2.008;HT ;Alegreya-BlackItalic
Designer:           Juan Pablo del Peral
Designer URL:       http://www.huertatipografica.com
Manufacturer:       Huerta Tipografica
Vendor URL:         http://www.huertatipografica.com
Copyright:          Copyright 2011 The Alegreya Project Authors
                   (https://github.com/huertatipografica/Alegreya)
License URL:        http://scripts.sil.org/OFL
License Description: This Font Software is licensed under the SIL Open Font License, Version 1.1.
                   This license is available with a FAQ at: http://scripts.sil.org/OFL
Vendor ID:          HT

```

As you can see, the Alegreya family has ten different font faces, so we have to select those that we want to use. The upright face goes into the mandatory argument, and the others have to be specified in key/value syntax in the optional argument using the keys `ItalicFont`, `BoldFont`, and `BoldItalicFont`.

```

\usepackage{fontspec}
\setmainfont{Alegreya-Regular.otf}
[ ItalicFont      = Alegreya-Italic.otf,
  BoldFont        = Alegreya-Bold.otf,
  BoldItalicFont  = Alegreya-BoldItalic.otf ]

```

This **text** is typeset in the
family Alegreya. It supports
bold italic and SMALL CAPS.

This `\textbf{text}` is typeset in the `\emph{family}` Alegreya. It
supports `\textbf{\itshape bold italic}` and `\textsc{Small Caps}`.

The above gives us the same result as `\setmainfont{Alegreya}` (with Lua \TeX) but works in both engines. However, the file name syntax is more powerful because we can select other faces at will. For example, we can use the Medium and the ExtraBold (or even the Black) fonts so that everything comes out slightly darker. Below we show that setup. That example also shows an alternative specification syntax, where the common part of the name is placed in the mandatory argument, which is then referred to in the key/values by using a `*`. If we do this, we have to additionally use the key `UprightFont` because the mandatory argument no longer contains the font for the upright face.

```

\usepackage{fontspec}
\setmainfont{Alegreya}
[ UprightFont      = *-Medium.otf,
  ItalicFont       = *-MediumItalic.otf,
  BoldFont         = *-ExtraBold.otf,
  BoldItalicFont   = *-ExtraBoldItalic.otf]

```

This **text** is typeset in the
family Alegreya. It supports
bold italic and SMALL CAPS.

This `\textbf{text}` is typeset in the `\emph{family}` Alegreya. It
supports `\textbf{\itshape bold italic}` and `\textsc{Small Caps}`.

Small capitals are a bit special, because in modern fonts they are usually not provided in a separate font files but instead accessed through OpenType font features. This explains why there was no need for us to set them up explicitly. When we provide

SMALL CAPITALS

the fonts for upright, italics, or bold, then `fontspec` queries the font resources, and if they support small capitals as a feature, it automatically sets up the corresponding shape as well.

However, sometimes the small capitals are supplied in separate font files, in which case this automatism cannot work. If this is the case, one can set up this shape by supplying the font file with the key `SmallCapsFont`. Details on this approach are given in the `fontspec` package documentation [172].

*Slanted or oblique
fonts*

Besides italics and bold, fonts sometimes also contain oblique/slanted faces. The latter are not automatically set up. Instead, we have to explicitly specify what font should be selected for that shape with the keys `SlantedFont` and `BoldSlantedFont`. Without these keys `\slshape` and `\textsl` are aliased to italics. Below is an example with `XCharter`:

```

\usepackage{fontspec}
\setmainfont{XCharter}[SlantedFont = XCharter-Slanted.otf,
                        BoldSlantedFont = XCharter-BoldSlanted.otf ]
Italics versus slanted.
SOME FACES OF SMALL \textit{Italics} versus \textsl{slanted}. \par
CAPITALS.           \textsc{Some \textit{Faces} of \textbf{Small \slshape Capitals}}.

```

9-6-4

Swash fonts

In a similar manner you can set up a swash font or a bold swash font explicitly by using `SwashFont` or `BoldSwashFont`, respectively. However, because of the fact that swash letters are typically activated through a style feature (see below) in OpenType fonts, you also have to specify `SwashFeatures={Style=Swash}` to make it work.

The *feature-list* that one needs to provide in the optional argument of the `\set...font` declarations can sometimes get rather lengthy, and to avoid that, this then has to be repeated in every document, and `fontspec` offers some help. When a *family* is set up, the package checks if the file *family.fontspec* can be found and if so loads it first. More precisely, the *family* argument is first stripped of any spaces and any font file extension (in case the “by file name” approach is used). For example, when setting up Noto Sans, it would look for `NotoSans.fontspec`, and in Example 9-6-2 it tried to find `Alegreya-Regular.fontspec`.

Such a file is supposed to contain a `\defaultfontfeatures` declaration, listing key/value pairs that should be applied, for example,

```

\defaultfontfeatures[XCharter]{ Extension = .otf ,
    UprightFont = XCharter-Roman,    BoldFont      = XCharter-Bold,
    ItalicFont  = XCharter-Italic,   BoldItalicFont = XCharter-BoldItalic,
    SlantedFont = XCharter-Slanted,  BoldSlantedFont = XCharter-BoldSlanted,
    SmallCapsFeatures = {Letters=SmallCaps} }

```

If such a `.fontspec` file exists, but you do not want to see it applied for some reason, specify the key `IgnoreFontspecFile` in the *feature-list*. For more details on this interface consult [172]. For `XCharter`, a `XCharter.fontenc` file exists as part of the \LaTeX font support and so we could have omitted the optional argument in Example 9-6-4 above and achieved the same result.

9.6.2 Setting up additional font families

Most of the time it is enough to set up the fonts for `\rmfamily`, `\sffamily`, and `\ttfamily` with the declarations discussed above. However, sometimes one needs additional fonts for special cases. For example, you might want to use a specially condensed font for marginal notes or you want to define heading commands that use a different font family from the document body font and not just a bolder version of that. For such purposes you can define named font commands that work just like `\rmfamily` but select the desired family instead.

```
\newfontfamily{cmd}{family}[feature-list]
```

The `\newfontfamily` declaration defines a new font family (like `\rmfamily`) and makes it available through *cmd*. If *cmd* is already defined, you receive an error message. To overwrite an existing definition use `\renewfontfamily` instead. There also exist `\providefontfamily` (provide only if undefined) and `\setfontfamily` (always define without checking). The next example sets up `\headfamily` as a special family and uses it in a `\titlesec` declaration.

1 On Reason

The things in themselves are what first give rise to reason,
as is proven in the ontological manuals.

```
\usepackage{kantlipsum,fontspec}
\setmainfont{GaramondNo8}
\newfontfamily{\headfamily}{Bitter}
```

1.1 Considerations

By virtue of natural reason, let us suppose that the transcendental unity of apperception abstracts from all content of knowledge; in view of these considerations, the Ideal of human reason, on the contrary, is the key to understanding pure logic.

```
\usepackage[compact]{titlesec}
\titleformat*{\section}{\headfamily}
\titleformat*{\subsection}{\headfamily}

\section{On Reason}           \kant[6][1]
\subsection{Considerations} \kant[6][2]
```

9-6-5

If you also wish to have a `\texthead` command available for the new family, use `\DeclareTextFontCommand` in addition:

```
\DeclareTextFontCommand{\texthead}{\headfamily}
```

```
\fontspec{family}[feature-list]
```

The `\fontspec` command sets up an unnamed family for direct use, which is therefore available only at the point of declaration. This is mainly useful when testing a font (or in the examples of this book) where it saves a few keystrokes but seldom in normal documents.

9.6.3 Setting up a single font face

Sometimes access to a single font face is wanted and there is no need to set up the whole family with all its different faces. In that case you might prefer `\newfontface` over `\newfontfamily` because that saves processing time and resources.

```
\newfontface{cmd}{font}[feature-list]
```

This defines *cmd* to select the *font* loaded with *feature-list*. If you specify a family name in the *font* argument, the base face is selected. Also supported are `\renew...`, `\provide...`, and `\set...` variants of the declaration.

9.6.4 Interfacing with core NFSS commands

As mentioned before, the interface to NFSS is by default partly hidden, and all necessary setups are done behind the scenes by the `fontspec` declarations. As a result, it is possible to use the high-level NFSS commands such as `\textsf`, `\bfseries`, `\itshape`, etc., but it is not possible to use `\fontfamily` (because the family name internally defined by `fontspec` is not known to you) nor can you say `\fontseries{c}` to request a condensed series because series values other than *m* and *b* are not set up automatically, unless you have a special `.fontspec` file for the font family.

There are, however, ways to provide the necessary information as part of the *feature-list* argument in the `fontspec` declarations discussed thus far.

To explicitly name the font family, use the key `NFSSFfamily`. A possible use case for this is shown in the next example, where we explicitly set the NFSS family name and then pass it to `fancyvrb`. Usually the high-level commands or newly defined ones, like `\fvrbfamily`, for changing the family are enough, so this is seldom needed.

```

\usepackage{fancyvrb,fontspec}
\newfontfamily\fvrbfamily{AlgolRevived}
[NFSSFfamily=AlgolR]

\begin{Verbatim*}[fontfamily=AlgolR]
... while it works in T1: \sum_{i=1}^n
UTF-8 char test: äöüß æ £ $ £ » „ «
\end{Verbatim*}

```

9-6-6

More interesting are cases where a font family has a larger selection of weights or running lengths and you want to access some of them. Because `fontspec` only sets up the medium and the bold series, we need to provide anything else through one or more `FontFace` key settings. It supports the following two syntax variants:

```
FontFace={series}{shape}{font}
```

or

```
FontFace={series}{shape}{Font=font, feature-list}
```

The *series* and *shape* are the NFSS axes under which we want to access the *font* face. In the simple form we only supply a *font* name, but often we want to also enable or disable some features. In that case we have to use a feature list in the third argument and supply the *font* through the key `Font`. This is what we do in the next example where we define support for the swash shapes offered by EB Garamond. After defining what font `sw` and `scsw` should switch to, we can use the standard commands `\textsw`

and `\swshape`. For both declarations we need the *feature-list* syntax variant, because we have to enable special font features (discussed later).

```

\usepackage{fontspec}
\setmainfont{EB Garamond}
[ FontFace={m}{sw} {Font=EBGaramond-Italic.otf,Style=Swash},
  FontFace={m}{scsw}{Font=EBGaramond-Italic.otf,
                    Letters=SmallCaps,Style=Swash} ]
Show A Few EB Garamond
Italic Letters: SPQR.
Show A Few EB Garamond
Swash Letters: SPQR.
\textit{Show A Few EB Garamond Italic Letters: \textsc{Spqr}}.
\textsw{Show A Few EB Garamond Swash Letters: \textsc{Spqr}}.

```

9-6-7

A slightly more concise way of achieving the same effect in this case would have been to use the `SwashFont` and `SwashFeatures` keys as follows:

```

\setmainfont{EB Garamond}[ SwashFont=EBGaramond-Italic.otf,
                          SwashFeatures={Style=Swash} ]

```

This too would set up the small caps variants implicitly.

9.6.5 Altering the look and feel of fonts

The interfaces of the `fontspec` package allow loading fonts with specific features enabled by specifying those in the form of key/value pairs. This can be done in the optional *feature-list* argument of any of the declarations. These features are then applied when loading and setting up the font family, e.g., the declaration

```
\setmainfont{Alegreya}[Numbers = {OldStyle, Proportional}]
```

asks for loading the *Alegreya* fonts with proportional oldstyle figures, i.e., different digits may have different widths, depending on their shape. That setting may be right for numbers in normal text, but if we typeset a table in which numbers should align for ease of reading, we may want to temporarily change from *Proportional* to *Monospaced*. It is therefore also necessary to alter or apply features only occasionally within the document.

```
\addfontfeature{feature}    \addfontfeatures{feature-list}
```

These commands¹ apply the given *feature* or *feature-list* to the current font family (and all its different faces including those added through `FontFace`). Already enabled features are kept unless they conflict with the newly requested feature(s). This is a local change, so it remains in force until the end of the current group or environment.

For example, requesting `Numbers=Monospaced` would preserve *OldStyle* but overwrite *Proportional*, because the two are mutually exclusive. Of course, when

¹`\addfontfeature` is just an alias for `\addfontfeatures`, so technically both accept a *feature-list*.

using such commands more often, it is usually better to provide your own little commands for this, e.g.,

```
\newcommand\nummono{\addfontfeature{Numbers=Monospaced}}
\newcommand\tabularnums[1]{\{\nummono #1}}
```

Note the extra set of braces in `\tabularnums` to confine the feature change to `#1`.

Using generally available font features

Some font features that can be adjusted through the `fontspec` interfaces are available with any font family; others may be implemented only by some fonts.

Scaling fonts If different font families are used together, it is often the case that one of them needs to be slightly scaled up or down to match the height of the other. For this `fontspec` offers the key `Scale`. It takes either a numeric value as the scale factor, e.g., 1.05, or the values `MatchLowercase` or `MatchUppercase`, matching the x-height or the capital height of the main (`\familydefault`) family.

<p>A sample text mixing Sans, Typewriter, and Roman in one sentence.</p>	<pre>\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{TeX Gyre Termes} % Times \setsansfont{TeX Gyre Heros}[Scale=MatchLowercase] % Helvetica \setmonofont{Latin Modern Mono}[Scale=MatchLowercase] % LM Mono A sample text \textsf{mixing Sans}, \texttt{Typewriter}, and Roman in one sentence.</pre>
--	---

9-6-8

Successive usages of `Scale` for the same family overwrite each other. If you want to accumulate scale factors for fine-tuning, use `ScaleAgain` instead.

Coloring fonts At a fairly low level, fonts can be colored using the key `Color`. This works even if no color support for \LaTeX has been loaded as it is interacting directly with the font resource, i.e., coloring the glyphs. By default the color has to be given as a triplet of two-digit hexadecimal values, e.g., `FF0000` for red, with optionally a fourth value for the transparency (where `00` is completely transparent and `FF` is opaque). If you load `xcolor` (but not `color`) you can alternatively use “named” colors as values and then describe the transparency through the key `Opacity` (values between 0 and 1).

If a font is colored in this way, then \LaTeX ’s color commands no longer influence that particular font at all, as can be seen in the last input line of the example.

Text in black.
Text still in blue
and not red!

```
\usepackage{xcolor,fontspec} \setmainfont{EB Garamond}
\Large\bfseries
\makebox[0pt][l]{\addfontfeature{Color=black,Opacity=0.5}%
Text in black.}%
\hspace{1pt}\addfontfeature{Color=blue,Opacity=0.7}Text in blue.\
\textcolor{red}{Text still in blue and not red!}
```

9-6-9

Other generally available features There are a number of other keys that can be used with any font, but they are too special to discuss in detail, so we only list them. Refer to [172] for details and examples if you think you need any of them.

WordSpace allows you to alter the width, stretch, and shrink of a space character; PunctuationSpace alters the extra space after punctuation characters; and with LetterSpace you can add some extra kerns between glyphs for tracking purposes (this is how microtype manages letterspacing in such fonts). There is also HyphenChar=None that allows you to suppress hyphenation in that font.¹

Space handling and hyphenation

Some font families offer separate font files for different sizes, and those can be explicitly selected to be used for certain size ranges using a combination of SizeFeatures, Size, and OpticalSize.

Optical size support

There are even possibilities to artificially transform a given font by mechanically boldening it with FakeBold or tilting with FakeSlant or stretching or compressing it with FakeStretch, but the results are usually noticeably inferior to properly designed fonts and should therefore be used with extreme care or not at all.

Producing artificial series values (bold and stretch)

Specifying OpenType font features

OpenType fonts often implement variants through a set of named features. These feature names consist of four letters, such as smcp (small capitals) or ss02 (stylistic set 2), and there are more than a hundred such feature tags defined; see [126] for a nice (but not even complete) overview together with explanations for each feature.

These short names are naturally rather cryptic, so fontspec offers a more readable interface to many of them. We introduce the more important ones through examples, but given the number of possibilities, this is obviously only scratching the surface. More details can be found in the fontspec documentation [172], which has more than thirty pages devoted to that topic.

Besides knowing how to enable certain font features, a big question is how we can find out what features are offered by a given font file. One possible way is to use the program `otfinfo` in a terminal window. For example, to get a list of all features implemented by XCharter-Roman we could run

```
otfinfo -f 'kpsewhich XCharter-Roman.otf'
```

on Linux or MacOS,² which would then respond with the following list:

c2sc	Small Capitals From Capitals	mkmk	Mark to Mark Positioning
case	Case-Sensitive Forms	numr	Numerators
cpSP	Capital Spacing	onum	Oldstyle Figures
cv01	Character Variants 1	smcp	Small Capitals
dnom	Denominators	ss01	Stylistic Set 1
kern	Kerning	ss02	Stylistic Set 2
liga	Standard Ligatures	subs	Subscript
lnum	Lining Figures	supS	Superscript
mark	Mark Positioning	tnum	Tabular Figures

¹In Xe_{La}T_EX it can also be used to explicitly define a different hyphenation character.

²On Windows use `for /F %i in ('kpsewhich XCharter-Roman.otf') do otfinfo -f %i` instead.

Value	feature	Value	feature
Lining	lnum	OldStyle	onum
Proportional	pnum	Monospaced	tnum
SlashedZero	zero	ResetAll	—

Uppercase and Lowercase can be used as synonyms for Lining and OldStyle.
Individual features can be turned off by appending Off to the name.

Table 9.10: Values accepted by the Numbers key

As you see, this list comes with a short explanation for each feature so that one can often already guess what a feature does. For example, seeing `smcp` explains why `fontspec` was able to automatically set up the Small Caps shapes in Example 9-6-4. For others it may not be so clear, and there the explanations in [126] and our discussions below may help. We now discuss a selection of these features and how to specify them in the *feature-list* arguments.

Figure style features An important variation supported by many font families is alternate styles for digits. For this, `fontspec` offers the key `Numbers` that we already used without much explanation earlier. Allowed values and the corresponding feature tags are given in Table 9.10.

The next example shows the different combinations using `Cochineal` as the sample family. How the keys behave in relation to each other is defined by the font resource. Here the keys are orthogonal as expected, but in others setting `OldStyle` might automatically change to `Proportional`, because the font does not offer monospaced, oldstyle figures. In many fonts `SlashedZero` (if available) produces a fixed (lining) glyph, so it does not work well in combination with `OldStyle`. Due to the use of `ResetAll` we get the font defaults in the last example line, which for this font is lining, monospaced.

Also note the use of extra braces when we supply several values to one key. They are needed to hide the comma, which would otherwise be misinterpreted.

```
\usepackage{fontspec}
\setmainfont{Cochineal}[Numbers = {OldStyle,Proportional}]

Digits: 0123456789 \noindent Digits: 0123456789\\
Digits: 0123456789 \addfontfeature{Numbers={Monospaced,SlashedZero}}Digits: 0123456789\\
Digits: 0123456789 \addfontfeature{Numbers=Lining} Digits: 0123456789\\
Digits: 0123456789 \addfontfeature{Numbers=Proportional} Digits: 0123456789\\
Digits: 0123456789 \addfontfeature{Numbers=ResetAll} Digits: 0123456789
```

9-6-10

If you look through the font tables in Chapter 10, you can easily identify if lining and oldstyle figures are supported and whether they have a proportional and/or a

<i>Value</i>	<i>feature</i>	<i>Value</i>	<i>feature</i>
SmallCaps	smcp	UppercaseSmallCaps	c2sc
PetiteCaps	pcap	UppercasePetiteCaps	c2pc
Unicase	unic		

Individual features can be turned off by appending Off to the name.

Table 9.11: Values accepted by the Letters key

monospaced variant (this is implicitly encoded in the suffixes -LF, -TLF, -OsF, and -TosF; see page →II 6 for details).

For oldstyle numbers, standard L^AT_EX has a fairly complicated definition to cater for the fact that in its default fonts, the oldstyle numerals are stored in a strange place (i.e., inside the math fonts) and for other fonts need to be fetched from TS1-encoded files (if available). In Unicode engines using OpenType fonts this is simpler, because all that is required is enabling the OldStyle feature. So fontspec changes the definition of `\oldstylenums` to do just that and additionally adds a `\liningnums` command to provide a simple way to get lining numerals if oldstyle numerals are used by default.

`\oldstylenums`
simplified

Letter case features Earlier we mentioned that small capitals are automatically set up by fontspec if available as an OpenType feature in the font. However, there are in fact several features related to small capitals, and sometimes you may want to choose something different from the default. The features are accessed through the key `Letters`, and its possible values are given in Table 9.11. The most common one is `SmallCaps` (`smcp`), which is what fontspec looks for when trying to automatically set up small capitals. It affects the lowercase letters and changes them to become small capitals. `PetiteCaps` (`pcap`) is similar but uses even smaller capitals in place of the lowercase letters.

The features `UppercaseSmallCaps` (`c2sc`) and `UppercasePetiteCaps` (`c2pc`) on the other hand alter only uppercase letters and replace them with smaller versions. Thus, it is possible to combine a value from the first group with one from the second, which is what we do in Example 9-6-11 on the next page.

However, we do not want the `Letters` key to affect the whole family; we want to apply it only when the user requests small capitals via `\textsc` or `\scshape`. This is why we do not use it directly but supply it as a value to `SmallCapsFeatures`. This key expects a *feature-list* applicable only when `\textsc` is requested.¹ In the second half of the example we then show what happens if we supply the `Letters` key at the top level, i.e., to the whole family. Also note the size difference between small capitals and petite capitals.

¹ Similar keys exist to supply *feature-lists* applicable to other font faces, e.g., `ItalicFeatures`, `BoldFeatures`, and so forth; for further details see [172].

	<pre>\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{EB Garamond} [SmallCapsFeatures = {Letters={UppercaseSmallCaps,PetiteCaps}}] \raggedright Different \textsc{\textit{Faces} Of \textbf{Small \itshape Capitals} Followed} By \textit{Further} Text. BUT NOW <i>EVERYTHING</i> \addfontfeature{Letters = SmallCaps} USES SMALL CAPITALS! But Now \textit{Everything} Uses \textbf{Small \itshape Capitals}!</pre>	9-6-11
--	--	--------

The Unicase (unic) value enables a rather strange feature that maps all upper and lowercase letters to a mixture of small capitals and lowercase letters so you end up getting something like

WEIRD MAPPING AHEAD

Because none of the free fonts discussed in this book supports this feature, the above is an artificially made up example.

Vertical positioning features For writing text such as 1st, 2nd, 3rd or 1_a, 1_b, etc., L^AT_EX offers the generic commands \textsuperscript and \textsubscript that raise or lower their argument and select a smaller font size to typeset it.

This gives usable results with any font, although due to using a smaller version of the same font, the glyphs come out somewhat too light, and the vertical positioning may not be perfect either. However, modern fonts often have especially designed glyphs for this purpose that do not have these defects. The next example shows the differences. There we define two commands to typeset superior and inferior glyphs. The key to select these glyphs is VerticalPosition, and the possible values for it are given in Table 9.12 on the facing page. Also compare this with Example 10-1-1 on page →II 9 showing how to access such glyphs when using pdfT_EX.

	<pre>\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{Alegreya} \newcommand\textsu[1]{\addfontfeature{VerticalPosition=Superior}#1} \newcommand\textin[1]{\addfontfeature{VerticalPosition=Inferior}#1} Catch\textsubscript{22} in Room13% inferior quality Catch\textin{22} in Room\textsu{13} % much better!</pre>	9-6-12
--	--	--------

Obviously, such a feature should only be turned on locally. It is also important to note that the characters affected differ from font family to font family. Sometimes both digits and letters are available raised and lowered, but often only a few letters are raised or only the digits are available in inferior positions.

The next example exhibits the results of the values Superior (raising digits and [some] letters), Ordinal (slightly less raised, often only the letters “abdeilmnorst”), Inferior (usually only digits), and ScientificInferior (compared to Inferior

<i>Value</i>	<i>feature</i>	<i>Value</i>	<i>feature</i>
Superior	sup	Inferior	sub
Ordinal	ordn	ScientificInferior	sinf
Numerator	numr	Denominator	dnom
ResetAll	—		

Individual features can be turned off by appending Off to the name.

Table 9.12: Values accepted by the VerticalPosition key

further below the baseline). Depending on the font family, some of the features may not be available or affect a larger or smaller set of glyphs.

```

X1234 strd      (Superior)  \usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{Alegreya}
X1234 strd      (Ordinal)    \newcommand\test[1]
X1234 strd      (Inferior)    {X{\addfontfeature{VerticalPosition=#1}1234 strd}
X1234 strd      (ScientificInferior) \hfill (\texttt{\footnotesize#1})\par}
X1234 strd      (ResetAll)    \test{Superior} \test{Ordinal} \test{Inferior}
X1234 strd      (ResetAll)    \test{ScientificInferior} \test{ResetAll}

```

9-6-13

If you look through the font tables in Chapter 10, you can see whether a font family supports a superior style (-Sup) or an inferior style (-Inf). Usually that means Superior and Inferior are available, but sometimes only ScientificInferior is provided as a feature.

As an alternative, you may want to check out the small realscripts package by Will Robertson, which redefines `\textsuperscript` and `\textsubscript` to use the above font features if available. The original L^AT_EX meaning remains available as starred forms of the command. To simplify typesetting superscripts on top of subscripts the package also defines `\textsubsuperscript[pos]{sub}{super}`. If necessary, the distance between the two can be adjusted by altering the length parameter `\subsupersep`.

Using the realscripts package for script characters

The values Numerator and Denominator, if available, affect only digits and are meant for the special case of slashed fractions. Below we show their results in case of different Noto families. For the typewriter font we have specified the font by name in order to get a condensed font selected in the example.

```

\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{Noto Serif}
\setsansfont{Noto Sans} \setmonofont{NotoSansMono-Condensed.ttf}
\newcommand\txtfrac[2]{\addfontfeature{VerticalPosition=Numerator}#1}%
/\addfontfeature{VerticalPosition=Denominator}#2}%
1/2 47/11 1/1000 \txtfrac{1}{2} \txtfrac{47}{11} \txtfrac{1}{1000} \par
1/2 47/11 1/1000 \sffamily \txtfrac{1}{2} \txtfrac{47}{11} \txtfrac{1}{1000} \par
1/2 47/11 1/1000 \ttfamily \txtfrac{1}{2} \txtfrac{47}{11} \txtfrac{1}{1000}

```

9-6-14

Value	feature	Value	feature
Required ^a	rlig	Contextuals	clig
Common ^a	liga	Rare	dlig
TeX ^b	—	Historic	hlig
ResetAll	—		

^aOn by default in all fonts.
^bOn by default for fonts set up with `\setmainfont` and `\setsansfont`.
Individual features can be turned off by appending `Off` to the name.

Table 9.13: Values accepted by the Ligatures key

Instead of using `VerticalPosition` to build your fractions, you can try the key `Fractions` (`frac`), which is implemented in many fonts and automatically builds fractions when it sees a slash (/) in the source. Note, however, that this may make it impossible to use the slash for normal text or mixed fractions. What also can happen is that only fractions precomposed in the font work, such as with IBM Plex Mono.

```
\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{Erewhon}[Fractions=On]
\setsansfont{Lato}[Fractions=On]
\setmonofont{IBM Plex Mono}[Fractions=On]
```

$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{2}{3}$ $\frac{47}{11}$ $\frac{1}{1000}$ but note: a/b 1/n
 $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{2}{3}$ $\frac{47}{11}$ $\frac{1}{1000}$ okay here: a/b $\frac{1}{n}$
 $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{2}{3}$ $\frac{47}{11}$ $\frac{1}{1000}$ a/b 1/n

```
1/2 2/3 47/11 1/1000 but note: a/b 1/n\par
\sffamily 1/2 2/3 47/11 1/1000 okay here: a/b 1/n\par
\ttfamily 1/2 2/3 47/11 1/1000 a/b 1/n
```

9-6-15

Ligature features Nearly every font defines some sets of ligatures, i.e., characters that if appearing in succession are not typeset one after the other but get replaced by a new glyph. In \TeX this happens automatically behind the scenes; e.g., if you enter `ffi`, you get “ffi” instead of “ffi”, etc.

In pdf \TeX , due to the limitation of glyphs per font, only f-ligatures and a few special ligatures, such as ! ‘ generating “,”, are available, but with OpenType fonts there are not any limits and so many modern fonts provide a much richer set of ligatures. However, only some of them are enabled by default; the others need to be activated through the key `Ligatures`. Possible values are listed in Table 9.13.

If given the value `TeX`, the special ligatures traditionally provided by \TeX are enabled, e.g., `--` producing an en-dash and `---` an em-dash. This is automatically done by `fontspec` if you set up the main font family or the sans family. For any other font you load you need to enable them yourself. This is not a feature of the OpenType fonts (so does not correspond to a feature tag) but is handled by the code loading the font in \TeX .

In addition, OpenType fonts may have up to five feature tags that define ligature sets. The value `Required` (`rlig`) enables ligatures that are required by the script for

correct typesetting. Latin script does not really have any required ligatures, which is why the fonts we show in this book normally do not implement this feature. However, when typesetting, for example, Arabic, that set is nonempty. Being “required”, it is enabled by default.

Also enabled by default are the Common ligatures (liga), i.e., those that the designer of the font thought should be always used. This set typically covers f-ligatures but sometimes also others. For example, in the Accanthis family the less common ligatures “fj” and “ft” are part of the set, but they are not ligatures in Lucida Bright — the family used for this book. For some reason Accanthis also has required ligatures (a questionable decision), but it allows us to show all three sets here.

“ - — ¡ ¿ ”	(TeX)	
æ Æ œ Œ	(required)	<code>\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{Accanthis Adf Std No3}</code>
fi ffi fl ffl fj ffj ft	(common)	<code>‘ ‘ -- --- ! ‘ ? ‘ ’ ’ \hfill (TeX) \ \ ae Ae oe Oe \hfill (required)</code>
“ -- --- ! ‘ ? ‘ ”		<code>\ \ fi ffi fl ffl fj ffj ft (common) \ \</code>
ae Ae oe Oe		<code>\addfontfeature{Ligatures={TeXOff,RequiredOff,CommonOff}}</code>
fi ffi fl ffl fj ffj ft		<code>‘ ‘ -- --- ! ‘ ? ‘ ’ ’ \ \ ae Ae oe Oe \ \ fi ffi fl ffl fj ffj ft</code>

9-6-16

Rare or Discretionary ligatures (dlig) are considered optional by the font designer, and the set is therefore not enabled by default. There is also the set of Historic ligatures (hlig) that implements ligatures that were once common in documents but are nowadays not often seen so are useful only if you want to give your document a certain look and feel. Which ligatures end up in which set (or are provided at all) differs unfortunately from family to family as we can see in the next example. You may have to try out what happens if you enable one or the other feature.

		<code>\usepackage{fontspec}</code>	
ch ck Th tt tz st ct sp		<code>\fontspec{Libertinus Serif}</code>	ch ck Th tt tz st ct sp \ \
ch ck Th tt tȝ	(rare)	<code>\addfontfeature{Ligatures=Rare}</code>	ch ck Th tt tz \hfill (rare) \ \
ſt ct (not sp)	(historic)	<code>\addfontfeature{Ligatures=Historic}</code>	st ct (not sp) \hfill (historic)
		<code>\par \medskip</code>	
st ct sp Qu		<code>\fontspec{BaskervilleF}</code>	st ct sp Qu \ \
ſt ct ſp	(rare)	<code>\addfontfeature{Ligatures=Rare}</code>	st ct sp \hfill (rare) \ \
Qu	(historic)	<code>\addfontfeature{Ligatures=Historic}</code>	Qu \hfill (historic)

9-6-17

Finally, there may be Contextuals ligatures (clig) that should, as the name indicates, be used in only certain contexts (typically when typesetting in specific languages) and are therefore not activated either by default. In predominately Latin fonts this feature is seldom implemented, and none of the fonts discussed in this book supports it.

Adjusting the font kerning The Kerning key (see Table 9.14 on the next page) is responsible for adding kerns (small negative or positive spaces) between adjacent letters to make their appearance visually uniform. This is activated by default, but in some special cases you may want to prohibit it using `Kerning=Off`. If you typeset text in

Value	feature	Value	feature
On	kern	Uppercase	csp
Off	-kern	ResetAll	—

UppercaseOff turns the feature off.

Table 9.14: Values accepted by the Kerning key

capitals, then the normal kerning can be improved in many fonts by using the value Uppercase (scsp). The differences are fairly small, but in the eyes of the font designer they improve legibility. In the example the first line shows the default result, the second adjusts the vertical position of the hyphen and shortens the parentheses a bit, and in the third line we also add the extra kerning that makes the line minimally wider:

AN (ALL-CAPS) HEADING

AN (ALL-CAPS) HEADING

AN (ALL-CAPS) HEADING

`\usepackage{fontspec}`

`\newfontfamily\headfamily{Playfair Display}`

`\fontsize{12}{14}\headfamily`

`\addfontfeature{Style=Uppercase}`

`\addfontfeature{Kerning=Uppercase}`

AN (ALL-CAPS) HEADING \

AN (ALL-CAPS) HEADING \

AN (ALL-CAPS) HEADING

9-6-18

Stylistic features The stylistic feature tags ss01 to ss20, the alternate feature tag salt, as well as the character variant feature tags cv01 to cv99 are sometimes available in OpenType fonts and can be used to select glyph shape variants.

The cv<num> tags (character variants) have been invented primarily for orthographic variations of individual characters, which is why there are so many of them. They are often used for situations where Unicode has only a single slot but varying regional or typographic traditions exist and the user might prefer one variant over the other.

The ss<num> tags (stylistic sets) on the other hand were meant to alter sets of glyphs typically for typographic rather than orthographic reasons. Without a definite purpose it was up to the font designers to decide what kind of features each of their sets implements. Technically the sets are more than just additive, e.g., effects on some glyph may differ depending on enabling ss01, ss02, or both of them. Sometimes combining them just produces undesirable effects; see Example 9-6-20 on page 724. However, in most fonts their effects are orthogonal to each other. Stylistic sets got supported early on by Adobe InDesign, and as a result many fonts offer a collection of them (usually altering just a few characters per set) to allow users to easily choose their favorite combination.

The alternate feature salt is a single set and predates the stylistic sets, but being supported in Adobe Illustrator, font designers often add variants both into ss and salt. The traditional implementation of this feature in software was to offer an interactive menu from which the user is able to pick and choose. Thus, in many cases one finds variants in this set that do not naturally work in unison. This makes it less

attractive for use with L^AT_EX because through fontspec it is possible to activate the whole set but not individual variants from it; see Example 9-6-22 on the next page.

The fontspec package offers interfaces for these features through the keys `CharacterVariant`, `StylisticSet`, `Alternate`, and `Style`, but for these it is usually simpler to specify them through the generic `RawFeature` interface, which is what we do below. Later examples show the other interfaces.

For example, in the `otfinfo` output for `XCharter-Roman.otf` on page 715 we see `cv01` and `ss01` being listed. Unfortunately, we do not get any information about what the character variation or the stylistic set actually do to our font. In this font `cv01` alters the look of the oldstyle numeral “1”, and `ss01` changes the glyph used for “ß” in small capitals.

Activating a feature works by specifying the feature name (with an optional + in front) as the value to `RawFeature`, deactivating by preceding the name with a -. Some fonts have several character variants for a single character, in which case the variants can be accessed numerically, e.g., `RawFeature={+cv01=2}`.

9-6-19

```

\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{XCharter}[Numbers=OldStyle]
123 \addfontfeature{RawFeature = +cv01} 123
123 123 123 \addfontfeature{RawFeature = -cv01} 123 \\
GRUß ß GRUSS ß \textsc{Gruß} ß \addfontfeature{RawFeature = ss01} \textsc{Gruß} ß

```

If you are lucky, then this is documented as part of the font documentation, but with the free fronts we discuss in Chapter 10 this is regrettably seldom the case. So how did we know how to prepare the examples in this section? The answer is unfortunately “by opening the font files in the font editor fontforge and examining the substitutions that are specified for the different stylistic sets”.

This is certainly not a good way to do it and given that within the T_EX distribution 34 font families implement alternates and 75 specify one or more stylistic set, there is a treasure hidden here waiting to be dug up. I hope that one day somebody finds the time and documents what exactly these variants do font by font.

Without that being available, all we can do now is to exhibit a few more interesting examples that show that it is a pity that the font designers went through the trouble of producing interesting alternatives but then stopped short and forgot to tell people about them.¹

Our next example involves the font family *Cormorant Garamond*. It supports several stylistic sets of which we show two: `ss03` alters the shape of several characters and symbols (in fact more than we display) and `ss04` changes the dieresis accents to display a small “e” instead. Note that while it is in principle possible to activate several stylistic sets in parallel, it does not always work if they try to alter the same characters; in this case, the “ä” was already changed by `ss03`, and `ss04` was not applied.

It also offers a few individual character variants; we show those for “Q” and “f”. Finally, `salt` is also available, which alters some strokes in a number of characters;

¹With commercial fonts this documentation is more often available, which is the main reason why we show how to access these features.

again we display only a selection of those being affected.

a ä g U W w y æ ††	<code>\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{Cormorant Garamond}</code>	
ɑ ӱ g U W w y ɑ ††	<code>a ä g U W w y \ae\ \textdagger\textdaggerdbl</code>	<code>\\</code>
Ä ä Ü ü Ö ö	<code>{\addfontfeature{RawFeature=ss03}}</code>	
Ä ä Ü ü Ö ö	<code>a ä g U W w y \ae\ \textdagger\textdaggerdbl</code>	<code>\\</code>
Ä ä Ü ü Ö ö	<code>Ä ä Ü ü Ö ö \\ {\addfontfeature{RawFeature=ss04}} Ä ä Ü ü Ö ö</code>	<code>\\</code>
Ä ä W w y	<code>Ä ä W w y \\ {\addfontfeature{RawFeature={ss03,ss04}}} Ä ä W w y</code>	<code>\\</code>
Ä ä W w y	<code>Q{\addfontfeature{RawFeature=cv01}} Q</code>	
QQ Q ff	<code>{\addfontfeature{RawFeature=cv02}} Q</code>	
A B g J K Q R U	<code>f{\addfontfeature{RawFeature=cv05}} f</code>	<code>\\</code>
A B g J K Q R U	<code>A B g J K Q R U \\ {\addfontfeature{RawFeature=salt}} A B g J K Q R U</code>	<code>\\</code>

9-6-20

Some fonts offer more than one salt set, in which case the sets are numbered starting with zero representing the default set. This makes addressing such sets using `RawFeature={salt=<num>}` a bit awkward. As an alternative, you can use `Alternate=<num>` in this case.

Whether a feature is implemented as a character variant, as a stylistic set, and/or as an alternative is sometimes a bit arbitrary. For example, EB Garamond also offer Q's with long tails but does this through a stylistic set that also affects small capitals. Like XCharter it also knows about uppercase "ß", but its stylistic set affects the lowercase form too.¹

GRUSS ß GRUß ss	<code>\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{EB Garamond}</code>	
Query QQ Query QQ	<code>\textsc{Gruß} ß {\addfontfeature{StylisticSet=5}\textsc{Gruß} ß} \\</code>	
	<code>Query \textsc{Qq} {\addfontfeature{StylisticSet=6}Query \textsc{Qq}}</code>	

9-6-21

Our final example shows one of the Libertinus families, which all offer the same stylistic sets. The different sets alter only a few characters each, so if you like the lowered dieresis (which was customary in German typography) and you prefer the old form "SS" for an uppercase "ß", you could select `ss01` and `ss04`. In this font `salt` (or `Style=Alternate`) is implemented to select all stylistic sets (except for `ss04`, which is unfortunately the wrong way around because for German orthography lowercase ß should not be replaced by SS) but does in fact also contain a few other variants (such as for h and y) not included in the stylistic sets.

Ä Ü Ö Ä Ü Ö	<code>\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{Libertinus Serif}</code>	
J K R J K R	<code>Ä Ü Ö \quad {\addfontfeature{StylisticSet=1}} Ä Ü Ö</code>	<code>\\</code>
Gruß GRUß GRUß	<code>J K R \quad {\addfontfeature{StylisticSet=2}} J K R</code>	<code>\\</code>
Gruß GRUß GRUß	<code>Gruß \textsc{Gruß} GRU\SS</code>	<code>\\</code>
Gruß GRUß GRUß	<code>{\addfontfeature{StylisticSet=3}} Gruß \textsc{Gruß} GRU\SS</code>	<code>\\</code>
W W & &	<code>{\addfontfeature{StylisticSet=4}} Gruß \textsc{Gruß} GRU\SS</code>	<code>\\</code>
JKQRW hy ß &	<code>W \quad {\addfontfeature{StylisticSet=5}} W</code>	<code>\quad</code>
JKQRW hy ss &	<code>\& \quad {\addfontfeature{StylisticSet=6}} \&</code>	<code>\\</code>
JKQRW hy ß &	<code>JKQRW hy ß \& \\ {\addfontfeature{Style=Alternate}} JKQRW hy ß \& \\</code>	<code>\\</code>
	<code>{\addfontfeature{StylisticSet={1,2,4,5,6}}} JKQRW hy ß \&</code>	

9-6-22

¹Which is rather strange for German eyes!

<i>Value</i>	<i>feature</i>	<i>Value</i>	<i>feature</i>	<i>Value</i>	<i>feature</i>
Alternate	salt	Swash	swsh	HorizontalKana	hkna
Cursive	curs	Titling	titl	VerticalKana	vkna
Historic	hist	Uppercase	case	Ruby	ruby
Italic	ital			ResetAll	—

Individual features can be turned off by appending Off to the name.

Table 9.15: Values accepted by the Style key

Style features In contrast to the stylistic sets discussed in the previous section, the Style features are intended for changes that conceptually change the style of the whole script (even though technically it may affect only some glyphs). It accepts nine different values, five of which (in the second column of Table 9.15) are predominately relevant for Asian or Arabic scripts, e.g., adjustments if Kana characters are written horizontally or vertically. Cursive changes the positions of diacritics in cursive scripts like Arabic, and Italic uses italic glyphs for Latin characters if available as part of Asian fonts. Finally, Ruby provides so called ruby characters, which are smaller Kana glyphs, generally in superscripted form, used to clarify the meaning of Kanji characters that may be unfamiliar to the reader.¹

The values from the first column are of considerably more interest. We have already discussed Alternate (salt), though as mentioned before, with that feature you have to check if the alternate glyphs really form a coherent set before you activate it.

Letterforms in scripts change over time, and what was once common may now appear anachronistic. If implemented, Historic (hist) brings back the historic forms. For example, EB Garamond replaces the lowercase s with a long-s form. The trouble with this approach is that it is often unconditionally done, and that is historically wrong. With L^AT_EX this means we have to load the font twice, with and without the feature applied and explicitly access the “short s” through a command.²

Providing historical letterforms

```

Thif paffef fucefffully! \usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{EB Garamond}[Style=Historic]
— (wrong)               \newfontfamily\normalEBG{EB Garamond} \newcommand\s{{\normalEBG s}}
This paffes fucefsfully! This passes successfully! \\ --- (wrong) \\
— (correct)              Thi\s\ passe\s\ succes\s fully! \\ --- (correct)

```

9-6-23

The value Swash changes some letter shapes so that they show some typographical flourish, such as some extra or lengthened stroke, exaggerated serifs, etc. L^AT_EX

Enabling Swash letters

¹None of the free font families we discuss in this book supports any of these features. Across all fonts available from CTAN, only two support Ruby, and none supports the other features.

²EB Garamond changes other characters as well, but with fonts that only change s to long-s, a probably better approach would be to not activate Historic feature and instead enter the correct Unicode character directly in the source.

offers the commands `\swshape` and `\textsw` to access them as a shape, but with `fontspec` in Unicode engines you have to explicitly set this up. Examples for how to do this are given in Example 9-6-7 on page 713.

*Adjustment for text
with only capital
letters*

Punctuation marks, dashes, parentheses, and so forth are usually designed for mixed case text and do not work that well if text is set completely in capital letters. For the use case `fontspec` supports `Uppercase` (case), which makes tiny adjustments if supported by the font as shown in the next example:

```
<<INRIA-FAMILY (NORMAL)>> \usepackage{fontspec}
<<INRIA-FAMILY (CASE)>> \fontspec{Inria Serif} <<INRIA-FAMILY (NORMAL)>> \
\addfontfeature{Style=Uppercase} <<INRIA-FAMILY (CASE)>>
```

9-6-24

Finally, there may be special support for typesetting headings/titles through the value `Titling` (`titl`). This feature replaces some glyphs with corresponding forms designed specifically for titling.

Scripts and languages As OpenType fonts can contain many glyphs, they often support several scripts and languages. “Script” in this context refers to the alphabet used, e.g., German, French, English, etc., all use the Latin script, while Arabic and Persian languages use the Arabic script. It is also possible that a single language can be typeset using different scripts. OpenType knows about more than hundred scripts and several hundred languages, and with the keys `Script` and `Language` you can ask for special support from the font if available.

The important point here is that based on the language/script combination the font may offer additional font features or activate or deactivate some by default. Details are given in the `fontspec` documentation [172], and if you intend to typeset in scripts other than Latin, you should study its section on that topic. In most other cases using the default language and script (i.e., not providing values) is sufficient.

Features not discussed in detail As mentioned, there are many more font features than we can reasonably describe in the available space. So here is a brief summary of seldom needed features that are also supported by `fontspec` if necessary.

The `Contextuals` key normally covers glyph substitutions that need to vary based on their relative position in words, e.g., initial, medial, and final forms in Greek. In some fonts it is also used for other type of “contexts”. Here are two random examples: in *Playfair Display* one can get arrows through some sort of ASCII input, and in *Libertinus* the Q changes its tail if followed by u or v, but not otherwise. Such `Alternate` contextuels are turned on by default, so in the example we turn them off, to show the differences:

```
\usepackage{fontspec}
\fontspec{Playfair Display} -> <- <-> \hfill
\addfontfeature{Contextuals=AlternateOff} -> <- <-> \par
\fontspec{Libertinus Serif} SPQR Qu Qv \hfill
\addfontfeature{Contextuals=AlternateOff} SPQR Qu Qv
```

9-6-25

The `Diacritics` key defines how diacritics and base characters should be combined. This is usually automatically handled by the font based on the current script or language. With the `LocalForms` key (feature `loc1`) it is possible to enable or disable language-specific glyph substitutions. If implemented by the font, it is automatically activated. There are also a number of features largely related to Chinese, Japanese, and Korean (CJK) typesetting. These are supported through the keys `Annotation`, `CharacterWidth`, `CJKShape`, and `Vertical`.

Specialized keys

With Lua \TeX it is possible to use the `Renderer` key to direct the engine to support certain font rendering technologies, e.g., the HarfBuzz text shaping library. This is under active development; consult the fontspec documentation [172] for details.

Different ways of specifying font features

The examples in the previous sections have shown a number of ways to enable or disable font features. As a summary, you can alter the features of the current font by using `\addfontfeature`, as done in several examples.

At declaration time you can specify features that apply to all font faces being set up by specifying them at the top level of the optional *feature-list* argument of `\setmainfont`, `\setsansfont`, etc. This was, for example, done in Example 9-6-15 on page 720 or 9-6-19 on page 723.

But it is also possible to apply certain features only to specific shapes, e.g., upright, italics, slanted, or swash. This can be done with the help of the keys `UprightFeatures`, `ItalicFeatures`, `SlantedFeatures`, and `SwashFeatures` and the corresponding bold fonts, i.e., `BoldFeatures`, `BoldItalicFeatures`, `BoldSlantedFeatures`, and `BoldSwashFeatures`. Features for small capitals are set up with `SmallCapsFeatures`. This is orthogonal to the other keys because any of the shapes can (in principle) be in upper/lower case or in small caps; thus, there is only this one key. This method was already applied in Example 9-6-11 on page 718.

Yet another way is to specify them as part of a `FontFace` key in which case they apply only to that particular font face as exhibited in Example 9-6-7 on page 713.


The rationale behind the different approaches is to make common tasks simple while offering flexibility when dealing with complex fonts or those that have unusual setups. The fontspec manual [172] covers many more examples of how to specify font features in different circumstances.

Specifying AAT or Graphite font features

When using X \mathbb{Y} \TeX , there are additional font technologies available that offer their own set of feature values. These can also be managed with the fontspec package, but as this is mainly useful with commercial fonts or system fonts on the Macintosh, we do not cover them here. Refer to [172] if you want to use such fonts with X \mathbb{Y} \TeX .

9.6.6 General configuration options

By default fontspec automatically attempts to adjust the math fonts to fit to your text font selection, which may not be appropriate if you have loaded a math font support

 Preventing
fontspec from
altering the
math setup

package, such as those discussed in Chapter 12. If you want to prevent any math setup alterations, use the `no-math` package option.

Config files

On page 710 we already discussed how to configure default setups for individual font families. On top of that you can provide your own `fontspec.cfg` file. If such a file is found by `fontspec`, it is loaded, unless you specify the package option `no-config`. The distribution already contains such a file setting two important defaults: turning on TeX ligatures and altering the typewriter family to have fixed spaces and no hyphenation:

```
\defaultfontfeatures[\rmfamily,\sffamily]{Ligatures=TeX}
\defaultfontfeatures[\ttfamily]
  {WordSpace={1,0,0},HyphenChar=None,PunctuationSpace=WordSpace}
```

If you intend to provide your own config file, you should probably copy these two declarations into it.

Silence warnings

The `fontspec` package may write some warnings in certain situations. If you prefer not to get those on the terminal, but only in the `.log` file, use the package option `quiet`. If they should not appear anywhere, use `silent` instead.

9.6.7 unicodefonttable — Displaying font tables for larger fonts

The `nfssfont.tex` file described in Section 9.5.9 does not help you if you are interested in looking for fonts to use with `fontspec` in Unicode engines, because it can only produce font tables displaying the first 256 glyphs of such a font and OpenType or TrueType fonts often contain several thousand glyphs.

To tabulate such fonts use the `unicodefonttable` package developed by the author. It offers you a flexible command to generate glyph tables for any font that can be used with Unicode TeX engines, either listing the full glyph set or any portion thereof.

`\displayfonttable*[key/value list]{font-name}[font-features]`

The mandatory *font-name* should be given in a form understood by `fontspec`, and the optional *font-features* is a key/value list in the form you would use it in `\addfontfeature` or in the optional argument of `\setmainfont`. Together they describe the font to be tabled. The optional *key/value list* offers you the possibility to customize the glyph table for which we give a few examples below, but for the full flexibility we refer you to the package documentation.

The starred form of the command is intended for displaying 8-bit fonts and alters some default settings to produce reasonable table layouts in that case. For example, it makes little sense to display Unicode block titles, if the only blocks shown are the first and possibly the second (*Basic Latin* and *Latin-1 Supplement*) or if the 8-bit font contains other glyphs unrelated to the Unicode blocks. Thus, by default they are not shown, and the table becomes more compact.

The next example show the Computer Modern Math symbol font (`cmsy10`). Besides using the starred form, we supply the key `noheader`, which omits a table caption, and restrict the processing range with `range-end`. The latter does not

change the output, but it makes processing a bit faster, because cmsy is a 7-bit font, so it is pointless to check the higher bits for existing glyphs.

```
\usepackage{unicodetontable}
\displayfonttable*[noheader,range-end=7F]{cmsy10}
```

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
U+0000-000F	—	·	×	*	÷	◇	±	∓	⊕	⊖	⊗	⊘	⊙	◯	◊	●
U+0010-001F	×	≡	⊆	⊇	≤	≥	≲	≳	≈	≈	⊂	⊃	⊂	⊃	↖	↗
U+0020-002F	←	→	↑	↓	↔	↗	↘	≈	⇐	⇒	↑	↓	↔	↖	↗	∞
U+0030-003F	/	∞	∈	∋	△	▽	/	,	∇	∃	¬	∅	ℝ	ℑ	ℒ	⊥
U+0040-004F	ℵ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ
U+0050-005F	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ
U+0060-006F	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ	ℳ
U+0070-007F	√	Π	∇	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫

9-6-26

You may be interested in only a certain part of a font, for example, in the letter-like Unicode block, which starts at 2100 and ends at 213F. In that case you can use `range-start` and `range-end` to denote the area of interest. We suppress the overall header again, because we now get Unicode Block titles (or rather one such title because of our range). We also change the placement of the hex digits to appear below each block title using `hex-digits` (supported values are `block`, `foot`, `head` (default), `head+foot`, and `none`) and shortening the `hex-digits-row-format` on the left:

```
\usepackage{unicodetontable}
\displayfonttable[range-start=2100,range-end=213F,noheader,
hex-digits=block,hex-digits-row-format=U+#1]{TeX Gyre Pagella}
```

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
U+2100	-	-	-	°C	-	-	-	ℰ	-	°F	-	-	-	-	-	h
U+2110	-	-	-	ℓ	-	-	№	®	ø	-	-	-	-	-	R	-
U+2120	SM	-	TM	-	-	-	Ω	U	-	-	K	Å	-	-	e	-
U+2130	-	-	-	-	-	N	∩	λ	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

9-6-27

Total number of glyphs shown from TeX Gyre Pagella: 20

As you can see, there are some statistics shown at the bottom. With the key `nostatistics` you can omit them; alternatively, `statistics-format` lets you set up your own text. This key allows you to use `#1` to get the current font name and `#2` to display the glyph count; e.g.,

```
...,statistics-format=This block contains #2 glyphs in #1,...
```

would display “This block contains 20 glyphs in TeX Gyre Pagella” in the previous example. Similar keys exist for the header (`title-format`) and the continuation

header (title-format-cont); within their values you can use #1 for the font name and #2 for the font features, if given. You can test for that with \IfValueTF and act accordingly. Note that these table headers are best set with a \caption command in order to come out right.

If you do not like to see Unicode block titles displayed, you can adjust this with the key display-block. It accepts the values titles (default), rules, or none. The last two save valuable space at the cost of less readability in large fonts.

*Fill the table
with two fonts*

It is sometimes useful to compare two fonts with each other by filling the table with glyphs from a secondary font if the primary font is missing them. For example, the next display shows two rows of Latin Modern Math (black glyphs), and instead of showing a missing glyph symbol in most slots, we rope in glyphs from New Computer Modern Math, which has a much larger glyph set. By default these substituted glyphs are set in red (compare-color) on gray background (compare-bg-color). We changed it in the example to use the blue available in the book and turned off the general coloring for hex digits and range info (color), which is normally done in blue. We also drastically shortened the row title (hex-digits-row-format) to save space:

```
\usepackage{unicodetable} \fonttablesetup{noheader,nostatistics}
\displayfonttable[display-block=none,color=none,hex-digits-row-format=#1,
                 compare-with=NewCMMath-Regular.otf,compare-color=blue,
                 range-start=2A00,range-end=2A1F]{latinmodern-math.otf}
```

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
2A0	⊙	⊕	⊗	⋅	⊔	∏	∏	∞	∞	×	Σ	Σ	∫	∫	∫	∫
2A1	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫	∫

9-6-28

```
\fonttablesetup{key/value list}
```

Instead of or in addition to setting *key/values* on each table, it is also possible to alter the defaults, by specifying a *key/value list* in \fonttablesetup; for example, the starred form does this internally by setting nostatistics, display-block=none, hex-digits=head, range-end==FF. This can be overwritten on the table level; e.g., statistics would give you a statistics line even in an 8-bit font table.

There also exists a standalone unicodfont.tex file that, when processed with a Unicode engine, interactively asks you a few questions, calls \displayfonttable to generate a single font table, and then exits.

9.7 The low-level NFSS interface

While the high-level font commands are intended for use in a document, the low-level commands are mainly for defining new commands in packages or in the preamble of a document; see also Section 9.7.5. To make the best use of such font commands, it is helpful to understand the internal organization of fonts in L^AT_EX's font selection scheme (NFSS).

One goal of \LaTeX 's font selection scheme is to allow rational font selection, with algorithms guided by the principles of generic markup. For this purpose, it would be desirable to allow independent changes for as many font attributes as possible. On the other hand, font families in real life normally contain only a subset of the myriad imaginable font attribute combinations. Therefore, allowing independent changes in too many attributes results in too many combinations for which no real (external) font is available and a default has to be substituted.

\LaTeX internally keeps track of five independent font attributes: the “current encoding”, the “current family”, the “current series”, the “current shape”, and the “current size”. The encoding attribute was introduced in NFSS release 2 after it became clear that real support of multiple languages would be possible only by maintaining the character-encoding scheme independently of the other font attributes.

The values of these attributes determine the font currently in use. \LaTeX also maintains a large set of tables used to associate attribute combinations with external fonts (i.e., `.tfm` files that contain the information necessary for \TeX to do its job). Font selection inside \LaTeX is then done in two steps:

1. A number of font attributes are changed using the low-level commands `\fontencoding`, `\fontfamily`, `\fontseries`, `\fontshape`, `\fontsize`, or `\fontseriesforce` and `\fontshapeforce`.
2. The font corresponding to this new attribute setting is selected by calling the `\selectfont` command.

The second step comprises several actions. \LaTeX first checks whether the font corresponding to the desired attribute settings is known to the system (i.e., the `.tfm` file is already loaded), and if so, this font is selected. If not, the internal tables are searched to find the external font name associated with this setting. If such a font name can be found, the corresponding `.tfm` file is read into memory, and afterwards the font is selected for typesetting. If this process is not successful, \LaTeX tries to find an alternative font, as explained in Section 9.7.3.

9.7.1 Setting individual font attributes

Every font attribute has one command to change its current value. All of these commands accept more or less any character string as an argument, but only a few values make sense. These values are not hardwired into \LaTeX 's font selection scheme, but rather are conventions set up in the internal tables.

We have already used some of them in the previous sections; this section now covers all of the naming conventions used in the standard setup of \LaTeX . Obviously, anybody setting up new fonts for use with \LaTeX should try to obey these conventions whenever possible, because only a consistent naming convention can guarantee that appropriate fonts are selected in a generically marked-up document.

If you want to select a specific font using this interface — say, Computer Modern Dunhill bold condensed italic 14pt — a knowledge of the interface conventions alone is not enough, because for many of the combinations of the attributes there is no

<i>Weight Classes</i>		<i>Width Classes</i>		
Ultra Light	ul	Ultra Condensed	≈50%	uc
Extra Light	el	Extra Condensed	≈62.5%	ec
Light	l	Condensed	≈75%	c
Semi Light	sl	Semi Condensed	≈87.5%	sc
Medium (normal)	m	Medium	≈100%	m
Semi Bold	sb	Semi Expanded	≈112.5%	sx
Bold	b	Expanded	≈125%	x
Extra Bold	eb	Extra Expanded	≈150%	ex
Ultra Bold	ub	Ultra Expanded	≈200%	ux

To describe a series combine $\langle\text{weight}\rangle\langle\text{width}\rangle$ and drop any `m` unless this makes the specification empty.

Table 9.16: Weight and width classification of fonts

matching external font. You could try your luck by specifying something like the following set of commands:

```
\fontencoding{T1}\fontfamily{cmdh}\fontseries{bc}\fontshape{it}%
\fontsize{14}{16pt}\selectfont
```

This code would be correct according to the naming conventions, as we see in the following sections. Because this attribute combination does not correspond to a real font, however, \LaTeX would have to substitute a different font. This substitution mechanism may choose a font that is quite different from the one desired, so you should consult the font tables (in this and the following chapter) to see whether the desired combination is available. Section 9.7.3 provides more details on the substitution process.

Choosing the font family

The font family is selected with the command `\fontfamily`. Its argument is a character string that refers to a font family declared in the internal tables. The character string was defined when these tables were set up and is often a short letter sequence — for example, `cmr` for the Computer Modern Roman family. With newer fonts it is often rather lengthy and structured, e.g., `FiraSans-OfF`. See Section 10.1.3 on page 717 for the more modern naming conventions.

Unicode engines

When using Unicode engines, the `\fontfamily` command is normally of little value because fonts loaded with the `fontspec` package get some internal family name assigned, and it is therefore not easy to guess what family name to pass as an argument.

There is, however, a way to explicitly specify a font family name that can be used with `\fontfamily`; see Section 9.6 on page 705 for details.

Choosing the font series

The series attribute is changed with the `\fontseries` command. The series combines a weight and a width in its argument; and in the original font selection implementation it was not possible to alter only weight but not width, and vice versa. With the 2020 release of \LaTeX this has changed, and `\fontseries` can now be used to change only one of the subattributes. To force a specific weight and width combination you can use `\fontseriesforce`.

In the original font selection implementation a request to change the series always canceled the current one. This was reasonable because there were nearly no fonts available that offered anything other than a medium or a bold series. This has changed, and now there are families such as Noto Sans that offer 32 distinct series values. With the 2020 release of \LaTeX , the series management therefore changed to allow for independently setting the weight and the width attribute of the series.

In the naming conventions for the argument for the `\fontseries` command, the names for both the weight and the width are abbreviated so that each combination is unique. The conventions are shown in Table 9.16 on the preceding page.

These classifications can be combined as $\langle weight \rangle \langle width \rangle$ in the argument to `\fontseries`; e.g., `lc` would ask for a “light weight condensed width” series. If only a value for weight or only for width is given (e.g., `b` or `ec`), it means that the other aspect should be left unchanged. Thus, if the current series is `lc` and we are asking for `b`, then this would result in `bc`. If you want to ensure that you always get bold medium width unconditionally, you would have to use `bm` instead.¹

There is a special convention for medium (`m`) as that can denote either a weight or a width. Both a single `m` or double `mm` is interpreted as medium weight and width, and `m?` stands for medium weight and width unchanged and `?m` the other way around.

Handling weight and width requests independently from each other is done by the `\fontseries` command through a lookup table that maps the *current* and the *requested* series to a resulting *new* series value, e.g.,

$$b + c \rightarrow bc \quad \text{or} \quad ub + x \rightarrow ubx \quad \text{or} \quad bx + l \rightarrow lxx \quad \text{etc.}$$

This table is prefilled with reasonable mappings, but if necessary, it is possible to alter individual entries using `\DeclareFontSeriesChangeRule` declarations.

`\DeclareFontSeriesChangeRule{current}{request}{new}{alternative}`

This command specifies that when typesetting in *current* series and there is a *request* for a series change, then typesetting should continue with *new* series. If that series

¹For historical reasons the naming conventions for the series attribute when declaring fonts in font definition files is slightly different: there any instance of `m` (standing for medium in weight or width) is dropped, except when both weight and width are medium. The latter case is abbreviated with a single `m`.

For example, bold expanded would be `bx`, whereas medium expanded would be `x`, and bold medium would be `b`. This inconsistency is somewhat unfortunate, but given that there exist several hundred font families with `.fd` files, one has to live with it.

Abbreviation	Description
n	normal shape (upright and upper/lowercase letters)
it	<i>italic shape</i>
sl	<i>slanted or oblique shape</i>
sw	<i>Swash Letter Shape (seldom available)</i>
ui	upright italic shape (more a curiosity)
sc	SMALL CAPS SHAPE
scit	ITALIC SMALL CAPS SHAPE
scsl	SLANTED SMALL CAPS SHAPE
scsw	SWASH LETTER SMALL CAPS SHAPE
up ^a	(Return to) upright shape
ulc	(RETURN TO) Upper/Lower Case shape

^aChanges scit to sc, etc., but acts like ulc if current shape is sc, i.e., changes that to n.

Table 9.17: Shape classification of fonts

does not exist, the *alternative* series is tried instead. If that does not exist either, *request* is used unchanged. Of course, that series may not exist either, in which case standard font shape substitution kicks in; see Section 9.7.3 for details of what happens in that situation.

For combinations of *current* and *request*, for which no table entry exists, the *request* is used unconditionally as the new series.

Because m can stand for both medium weight and width in the naming convention, it cannot be used in the *request* to reset only weight or width to medium, e.g., when you want to get back from bc (bold condensed) to just c (condensed). For that case two special series names are provided: ?m (keep weight, reset width) and m? (reset weight, keep width). Thus, we can get from bold condensed to medium width condensed using `\fontseries{m?}`. If you use m in the *request*, it is interpreted as mm, i.e., resets both weight and width to medium.

Choosing the font shape

The `\fontshape` command is used to change the shape attribute. For the standard shapes, one- to four-letter abbreviations are used; these are shown in Table 9.17 together with an example of the resulting shape in the Latin Modern Roman family except sw in EB Garamond and scsw in Cinzel.

In the original font selection implementation, a request for a new shape always canceled the current one. With the 2020 release of L^AT_EX, this has changed, and `\fontshape` can now be used to combine small capitals with italics, slanted, or

swash letters, either by explicitly asking for `scit`, etc., or by asking for it when typesetting already in `sc` and so forth. With `\fontshapeforce`, you can force a specific selection as long as it actually exists as a font shape.

Again, this is supported by a table lookup, and just like with the series management, this table can be adjusted if necessary.

`\DeclareFontShapeChangeRule{current}{request}{new}{alternative}`

This declaration works like `\DeclareFontSeriesChangeRule` except that we look at *current* shape and *requested* shape. Another difference is that the table much more often specifies an *alternative* shape in addition to the desired *new* shape. For example, two such entries are

```
\DeclareFontShapeChangeRule {n} {sl}{sl} {it}
\DeclareFontShapeChangeRule {it}{sc}{scit}{scsl}
```

The first line says that if \LaTeX is typesetting in the “normal” shape and there is a request for a slanted shape, then it should try `sl`, and if that is not available, should try the `it` shape.¹

The second line says that `it` and `sc` should be combined to `scit`. But if that is not available, then `scsl` should be used. If that does not exist either, then the *request* shape, i.e., `sc`, is used, so that with Computer Modern or other fonts that have only upright small capitals we still see the old behavior of `sc` canceling `it`, or vice versa.²

Both `up` and `ulc` are “virtual” shapes. This means that they do not physically exist as font faces, but only as arguments to `\fontshape` to alter the current state; e.g., if the current shape is `scit`, then `up` changes that to `sc`, while `ulc` would change it to `it`. However, for compatibility reasons `up` acts a bit oddly; that is, if the current shape is `sc`, then it resets that as well. The reason is that in the past `\upshape` was always setting the shape back to `n` and some people have written `\scshape . . . \upshape` instead of just writing `\textsc{ . . . }`, so this usage is still supported.

*Compatibility
behavior of up*

This is all defined through `\DeclareFontShapeChangeRule` declarations and thus changeable, but there should seldom be a need for alterations. However, if you do not want or need this compatibility behavior of `up`, you could, for example, declare

```
\DeclareFontShapeChangeRule{sc}{up}{sc}{}
```

after which `sc` would no longer be canceled by `up`.

Choosing the font size

The font size is changed with the `\fontsize{size}{skip}` command. This is the only font attribute command that takes two arguments: the *size* to switch to and the baseline *skip* (the distance from baseline to baseline for this size). Font sizes are normally measured in points, so by convention the unit can be omitted. The same

¹Because of such declarations, fonts like Iwona (page –II 78) or Kurier (page –II 80) work without errors even though they have no slanted shape and have no substitution defined in their `.fd` files.

²The only difference to earlier years is that now there will be a `.log` entry stating that `scit` was tried but was found not to be available.

is true for the second argument. However, if the baseline skip should be a rubber length — that is, if it contains plus or minus — you have to specify a unit. Thus, a valid size change could be requested by

```
\fontsize{14.4}{17}\selectfont
```

Even if such a request is valid in principle, no corresponding external font may exist in this size. In this case, \LaTeX tries to find a nearby size if its internal tables allow for size correction or reports an error otherwise.

If you use fonts existing in arbitrary sizes (which is now possible for nearly all fonts), you can, of course, select any size you want. For example,

```
\fontsize{1in}{1.2in}\selectfont Happy Birthday
```

produces a birthday poster line with letters in a one-inch size. However, there is one problem with using arbitrary sizes: if \LaTeX has to typeset a formula in this size (which might happen behind the scenes without your knowledge), it needs to set up all fonts used in formulas for the new size. For an arbitrary size, it usually has to calculate the font sizes for use in subscripts and sub-subscripts (at least 12 different fonts). In turn, it probably has to load a lot of new fonts — something you can tell by looking at the transcript file. For this reason you may finally hit some internal limit if you have too many different size requests in your document. If this happens, you should tell \LaTeX which sizes to load for formulas using the `\DeclareMathSizes` declaration, rather than letting it use its own algorithm. See Section 9.8.5 for more information on this issue.

Choosing the encoding

A change of encoding is performed with the command `\fontencoding`, where the argument is the internal name for the desired encoding. This name must be known to \LaTeX , either as one of the predefined encodings (loaded by the kernel), loaded through the `fontenc` package or manually declared with the `\DeclareFontEncoding` command (see Section 9.8.3). A set of standard encoding names is given in Table 9.18 on the next page; you find a more complete set in [143].

\LaTeX 's font selection scheme is based on the (idealistic) assumption that most (or, even better, all) fonts for text are available in the same encoding as long as they are used to typeset in the same language. In other words, encoding changes should become necessary only if one uses pdf\LaTeX and is switching from one language to another. In that case it is normally the task of the language support packages (e.g., those from the `babel` system) to arrange matters behind the scenes.

If necessary, switching to, say, Greek or Cyrillic for individual words or short phrases can even be done on the fly by specifying `LGR` (Greek) or `T2A` (Cyrillic), and this is precisely what we have done in the examples in Sections 10.11 and 10.12. There the Greek sample text was generated with

```
\usepackage[LGR,T1]{fontenc}
{\fontencoding{LGR}\selectfont Σά βγεῖς στὸν πη\~\-γαίμδ γι.ὰ
τὴν \textbf{Ἰθάκη}, νὰ εὔχῃσαι νᾶναι \textit{μακρὺς} ὁ
δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος \textsc{γνώσεις}}
```

Encoding	Description	Declared by
TU	ℒ _{TeX} text encoding for Unicode engines X ₃ TeX and LuaTeX	ℒ _{TeX}
T1	ℒ _{TeX} text encoding (Latin) a.k.a. “Cork” encoding	ℒ _{TeX}
TS1	ℒ _{TeX} symbol encoding (Latin)	ℒ _{TeX}
T2A,B,C	ℒ _{TeX} text encodings (Cyrillic)	Cyrillic support packages
T3	ℒ _{TeX} phonetic alphabet encoding	tipa package
TS3	ℒ _{TeX} phonetic alphabet encoding (extra symbols)	tipa package
T5	ℒ _{TeX} text encoding (Vietnamese)	—
OT1	(old) T _E X text as defined by Donald Knuth	ℒ _{TeX}
OT2	(old) T _E X text for Cyrillic languages (obsolete)	Cyrillic support packages
OT4	(old) T _E X text with extensions for the Polish language	—
OML	(old) T _E X math text (italic) as defined by Donald Knuth	ℒ _{TeX}
OMS	T _E X math symbol as defined by Donald Knuth	ℒ _{TeX}
OMX	T _E X math extended symbol as defined by Donald Knuth	ℒ _{TeX}
X2	Extended text encoding (Cyrillic)	Cyrillic support packages
U	Unknown encoding (for fonts containing arbitrary symbols)	ℒ _{TeX}
L..	Local encoding (for private encodings)	—
LGR	Commonly used Greek encoding	Greek support packages
LY1	Alternative to T1 encoding	Y&Y

Table 9.18: Standard font encodings used with ℒ_{TeX}

Of course, for proper language support, additional work would be necessary, such as changing the hyphenation rules (we got by, by specifying one explicit hyphen point).

With older Type 1 fonts, the T1 encoding is unfortunately not fully implementable. The following five characters are likely to show up as blobs of ink (indicating a missing glyph in the font) or substitutions (in case of the per thousand and per ten thousand symbols). As you can see, qpl (the Palatino clone by T_EX Gyre) and most of the fonts discussed in Chapter 10 do not have these problems.

Potential T1
encoding problems

Computer Modern:

j ŋ Đ %_o %_{oo}

Times (old PostScript):

■ ■ ■ %_o %_{oo}

Palatino (old PostScript):

■ ■ ■ %_o %_{oo}

Palatino (new T_EX Gyre):

j ŋ Ñ %_o %_{oo}

```
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\fontfamily{cmr}\selectfont Computer Modern:\\
\j{} \ng{} \NG{} \textperthousand{} \textpertenthousand \par
\fontfamily{ptm}\selectfont Times (old PostScript):\\
\j{} \ng{} \NG{} \textperthousand{} \textpertenthousand \par
\fontfamily{ppl}\selectfont Palatino (old PostScript):\\
\j{} \ng{} \NG{} \textperthousand{} \textpertenthousand \par
\fontfamily{qpl}\selectfont Palatino (new \TeX\ Gyre):\\
\j{} \ng{} \NG{} \textperthousand{} \textpertenthousand
```

9-7-1

As explained in Section 9.5.6, the situation for TS1 is even worse — sometimes half the glyphs from that encoding are not available in a legacy PostScript font, which is another reason to avoid the old PSNFSS packages listed in Table 9.8 on page 691, despite their nice, memorable names.

9.7.2 Setting several font attributes

When designing page styles (see Section 5.4) or layout-oriented commands, you often want to select a particular font — that is, you need to specify values for all attributes. For this task \LaTeX provides the command `\usefont`, which takes four arguments: the encoding, family, series, and shape. The command updates those attributes and then calls `\selectfont`. If you also want to specify the size and baseline skip, place a `\fontsize` command in front of it. For example,

```
\fontsize{14}{16pt}\usefont{OT1}{cmdh}{bc}{it}
```

would produce the same result as the hypothetical example on page 732.

Besides `\usefont`, \LaTeX provides the `\DeclareFixedFont` declaration, which can be used to define new commands that switch to a completely fixed font. Such commands are extremely fast because they do not have to look up any internal tables. They are therefore very useful in command definitions that have to switch back and forth between fixed fonts. For example, for the `doc` package (see Chapter 17), one could produce code-line numbers using the following definitions:

```
\DeclareFixedFont\CodelineFont{\encodingdefault}{\familydefault}
                                {\seriesdefault}{\shapedefault}{7pt}
\newcommand\theCodelineNo{\CodelineFont\arabic{CodelineNo}}
```

As you can see from the example, `\DeclareFixedFont` has six arguments: the name of the command to be defined, followed by the five font attributes in the NFSS classification. Instead of supplying fixed values (except for the size), the built-in hooks that describe the main document font are used (see also Section 9.3.6). Thus, in the example above `\CodelineFont` still depends on the overall layout for the document (via the settings of `\encodingdefault` and other parameters). However, once the definition is carried out, its meaning is frozen, so later changes to the defaults have no effect.

9.7.3 Automatic substitution of fonts

Whenever a font change request cannot be carried out because the combination is not known to \LaTeX , it tries to recover by using a font with similar attributes. Here is what happens: if the combination of encoding scheme, family, series, and shape is not declared (see Section 9.8.1), \LaTeX tries to find a known combination by first changing the shape attribute to a default. If the resulting combination is still unknown, it tries changing the series to a default. As a last resort, it changes the family to a default value. Finally, the internal table entry is looked up to find the requested size. For

example, if you ask for `\ttfamily\bfseries\itshape` — a typewriter font in a bold series and italic shape (which usually does not exist) — then you get a typewriter font in medium series and upright shape, because \TeX first resets the shape before changing the series. If, in such a situation, you prefer a typewriter font in medium series with italic shape, you have to announce your intention to \TeX using the sub function, which is explained on page 743.

The substitution process never changes the encoding scheme, because any alteration could produce wrong characters in the output. Recall that the encoding scheme defines how to interpret the input characters, while the other attributes define how the output should look. It would be catastrophic if, say, a £ sign were changed into a \$ sign on an invoice just because the software tried to be clever.

Thus, every encoding scheme must have a default family, series, and shape, and at least the combination consisting of the encoding scheme together with the corresponding defaults must have a definition inside \TeX , as explained in Section 9.8.3.

9.7.4 Substituting the font family if unavailable in an encoding

Given that pdf \TeX can only handle fonts with up to 256 glyphs, a single font encoding can support only a few languages. The T1 encoding, for example, does support many of the Latin-based scripts, but if you want to write in Greek or Russian, you need to switch encodings to LGR or T2A. Given that not every font family offers glyphs in such encodings, you may end up with some default family (e.g., Computer Modern) that does not blend in well. For example, when typesetting in a sans serif font such as Montserrat, the Greek characters look rather out of place.

9-7-2

The root of \TeX
is $\text{\TeX}\nu\iota\kappa\eta$.

```
\usepackage[greek,english]{babel}
\fontfamily{Montserrat-LF}\selectfont
The root of \TeX\ is \foreignlanguage{greek}{\text{\TeX}\nu\iota\kappa\eta}.
```

For such cases NFSS offers `\DeclareFontFamilySubstitution`.

```
\DeclareFontFamilySubstitution{encoding}{family}{substitute-family}
```

This declaration tells NFSS that the request for the *encoding* while typesetting in a certain font *family* should be fulfilled by substituting this family with *substitute-family*. The declaration should be made in the document preamble before the font is actually used.

In the example below we use Plex Sans instead of the default to typeset the Greek word. It is not perfect but is clearly better than the default that we got in Example 9-7-2. Some of the other families exhibited in Section 10.11 on page 106 would have worked as well.

9-7-3

The root of \TeX
is $\text{\TeX}\nu\iota\kappa\eta$.

```
\usepackage[greek,english]{babel}
\DeclareFontFamilySubstitution{LGR}{Montserrat-LF}{IBMPlexSans-TLF}
\fontfamily{Montserrat-LF}\selectfont
The root of \TeX\ is \foreignlanguage{greek}{\text{\TeX}\nu\iota\kappa\eta}.
```

If you use font support packages to set up your font families (e.g., `montserrat` in this case), it may need a bit of detective work to figure out the actual font family name that needs to go into the *family* argument, but with the help of all the tables in Chapter 10, it should be manageable.

9.7.5 Using low-level commands in the document

The low-level font commands described in the preceding sections are intended to be used in the definition of higher-level commands, either in class or package files or in the document preamble.

Whenever possible, you should avoid using the low-level commands directly in a document if you can use high-level font commands like `\textsf` instead. The reason is that the low-level commands are very precise instructions to switch to a particular font, whereas the high-level commands can be customized using packages or declarations in the preamble. Suppose, for example, that you have selected Computer Modern Sans in your document using `\fontfamily{cmss}\selectfont`. If you later decide to typeset the whole document with other fonts by applying some font support package, then this would change only those parts of the document that do not contain explicit `\fontfamily` commands.

9.8 Setting up new fonts for NFSS

Setting up new fonts for use with \LaTeX basically means filling the internal font selection tables with information necessary for later associating a font request in a document with the external `.tfm` file containing character information used by \LaTeX . Thus, the tables are responsible for associating

```
\fontencoding{T1}\fontfamily{lmtt}\fontseries{lc}\fontshape{sl}%
\fontsize{10}{12}\selectfont
```

i.e., Latin Modern Typewriter light condensed slanted 10 point in T1 (Cork) encoding, with the external file `ec-lmtlco10.tfm`. To add new fonts, you need to reverse this process. For every new external font you have to ask yourself five questions:

1. What is the font's encoding scheme — that is, which characters are in which positions?
2. What is its (desired) family name in \LaTeX ?
3. What is its series (the combination of weight and width)?
4. What is its shape?
5. Is it a scalable font, or if not, what is its size?

The answers to these questions provide the information necessary to classify the external font according to the \LaTeX conventions, as described in Section 9.7.

However, users are not really expected to set up fonts by themselves. This is usually left to a few experts that, to date, have provided font support for several

hundred font families — as Chapter 10 impressively proves where we show examples of more than one hundred high-quality free families.

We therefore give only a brief overview about the commands available to set up font support, to the extent helpful for troubleshooting strange behavior or for making small adjustments like providing a desired font substitution. If necessary, the gory details can be found in [113].

9.8.1 Declaring new font families and font shape groups

The declarations discussed in this section are normally used only inside `.fd` files (font definition files), which should normally not be changed. With some caution, it is however possible to use them in the document preamble (or in packages) to adjust some font family behavior. How this can be done is explained in Section 9.8.2 on page 746.

Each family/encoding combination must be made known to \LaTeX through the command `\DeclareFontFamily`.

```
\DeclareFontFamily{encoding}{family}{loading-code}
```

The first two arguments are the *encoding* scheme and the *family* name. The third is usually empty, but it may contain special code for font loading and is explained on page 744. Thus, if you want to introduce a new family — say, Latin Modern Typewriter in T1 encoding scheme — you would write

```
\DeclareFontFamily{T1}{lmtt}{\hyphenchar\font=-1}
```

In this case the last argument contains code to suppress hyphenation; see page 744.

A font family normally consists of many individual fonts. Instead of announcing each family member individually to \LaTeX , you have to combine fonts that differ only in size and declare them as a group. Such a group is entered into the internal tables of \LaTeX with the command `\DeclareFontShape`.

```
\DeclareFontShape{encoding}{family}{series}{shape}
{list of sizes and external font(s)}{loading-code}
```

The first four are the *encoding* scheme, the *family* name, the *series* name, and the *shape* name under which you want to access these fonts later. The fifth argument is a *list of sizes and external font* names, given in a special format that we discuss below. The sixth argument is usually empty; its use is explained on page 744.

We first show a few examples and introduce terminology; then we will discuss all the features in detail.

As an example, an NFSS table entry for Computer Modern Dunhill medium (series) upright (shape) in the encoding scheme “ \TeX text” could be entered as

```
\DeclareFontShape{OT1}{cmdh}{m}{n}{ <10> cmdunh10 }{}
```

assuming that only one external font for the size 10pt is available. If you also have this font available at 12pt (scaled from 10pt), the declaration would be

```
\DeclareFontShape{OT1}{cmdh}{m}{n}{ <10> <12>cmdunh10 }{}
```

If the external font is available in all possible sizes, the declaration becomes very simple. This is the case for Type 1 PostScript (outline) fonts or when the driver program is able to generate fonts on demand by calling METAFONT.

For example, for our introductory example Latin Modern Typewriter light condensed (series) slanted (shape) in the \LaTeX T1 encoding scheme would be entered as

```
\DeclareFontShape{T1}{lmtt}{lc}{sl}{<-> ec-lmtlco10}{}
```

This example declares a size range with two open ends (no sizes specified to the left and the right of the `-`). As a result, the same external `.tfm` file (`ec-lmtlco10`) is used for all sizes and is scaled to the desired size. If you have more than one `.tfm` file for a font — as is the case for Latin Modern Typewriter medium upright — the declaration could be

```
\DeclareFontShape{T1}{lmtt}{m}{n}{<-8.5> ec-lmtt8  
 <8.5-9.5> ec-lmtt9 <9.5-11> ec-lmtt10 <11-> ec-lmtt12}{}
```

In this case different external fonts are used for different size ranges.

The preceding examples show that the fifth argument of `\DeclareFontShape` consists of size specifications surrounded by angle brackets (i.e., `<...>`) intermixed with loading information for the individual sizes (e.g., font names). The part inside the angle brackets is called the “size info”, and the part following the closing angle bracket is called the “font info”. The font info is further structured into a “size function” (often empty) and its arguments; we discuss this case below. Within the arguments of `\DeclareFontShape`, blanks are ignored to help make the entries more readable.¹ In the unusual event that a real space has to be entered, you can use `\space`.

Size functions

If an `*` appears in the font info string, everything to the left of it forms the function name, and everything to the right is the argument. If there is no asterisk, as in all of the examples so far, the whole string is regarded as the argument, and the function name is “empty”.

Based on the size requested by the user, size functions produce the specification necessary for \LaTeX to find the external font and load it at the desired size. They are also responsible for informing the user about anything special that happens. For example, some functions differ only in terms of whether they issue a warning. This

¹This is true only if the command is used at the top level. If such a declaration is used inside other constructs (e.g., the argument of `\AtBeginDocument`), blanks might survive, and in that case entries are not recognized.

capability allows the system maintainer to set up \LaTeX in the way best suited for the particular site.

The name of a size function consists of zero or more letters. Some of the size functions can take two arguments, one optional and one mandatory. Such an optional argument has to be enclosed in square brackets. For example, the specification

```
<-> s * [0.9] cmfib8
```

would select, for all possible sizes (we have the range 0 to ∞), the size function `s` with the optional argument 0.9 and the mandatory argument `cmfib8`. The `s` size function is a silent version “empty” one; i.e., it does not produce warnings and writes any information only to the `.log` file.

The size specifications in `\DeclareFontShape` are inspected in the order in which they are given. When a size info matches the requested user size, the corresponding size function is executed. If this process yields a valid font, no further entries are inspected. Otherwise, the search continues with the next entry.

The “empty” and “s” functions There are thirteen size functions defined in \LaTeX ; so far we have seen the “empty” and the `s` size function, which both expect an external font as argument (possibly with an additional scaling factor). Below we cover the important ones that deal with font substitution. For details on the others refer to [113], which is part of the \LaTeX distribution.

The “sub” and “ssub” functions The `sub` function is used to substitute a different font shape group if no external font exists for the current font shape group. In this case the argument is not an external font name but rather a different family, series, and shape combination separated by slashes (the encoding does not change for the reasons explained earlier). For example, in Latin Modern Typewriter there is no italic shape, only a slanted shape. Thus, it makes sense to declare the slanted shape as a substitute for the italic one (which is what the LM support files already do):

```
\DeclareFontShape{T1}{lmtt}{m}{it}{ <-> sub * lmtt/m/sl }{ }
```

Without this declaration, \LaTeX ’s automatic substitution mechanism (see Section 9.7.3) would substitute the default shape, Latin Modern Typewriter upright. A case for which you might want to add your own substitution, after looking at the LM Table 9.6 on page 687, is

```
\DeclareFontShape{T1}{lmdh}{bx}{sl}{ <-> ssub * lmdh/m/sl }{ }
```

because Latin Modern Dunhill has no bold or bold extended shapes at all. For this we used the `ssub` function that has the same functionality as the `sub` function but does not produce on-screen warnings (the first `s` means “silence”).

Font-loading options

As already mentioned, you need to declare each family using `\DeclareFontFamily`. The third argument to this command, as well as the last argument of the command `\DeclareFontShape`, can be used to specify special operations that are carried out when a font is loaded. In this way, you can change parameters that are associated with a font as a whole. You can also use `\DeclareFontFamily` to alter this information but only for fonts that have not been already loaded in memory!

For every external font, \LaTeX maintains, besides the information about each character, a set of global dimensions and other values associated with the font. For example, every font has its own “hyphen character”, the character that is inserted automatically when \LaTeX hyphenates a word. Another example is the normal width and the stretchability of a blank space between words (the “interword space”); again, a value is maintained for every font and changed whenever \LaTeX switches to a new font. By changing these values when a font is loaded, special effects can be achieved.

Normally, changes apply to a whole family; for example, you may want to prohibit hyphenation for all words typeset in the typewriter family. In this case, the third argument of `\DeclareFontFamily` should be used as we did earlier. If the changes should apply only to a specific font shape group, you must use the sixth argument of `\DeclareFontShape`. In other words, when a font is loaded, NFSS first applies the argument of `\DeclareFontFamily` and then the sixth argument of `\DeclareFontShape` so that it can override the load options specified for the whole family if necessary.

Below we study the information that can be set in this way (unfortunately, not everything is changeable) and discuss some useful examples. This part of the interface addresses very low-level commands of \TeX . Because it is so specialized, no effort was made to make the interface more \LaTeX -like. As a consequence, the methods for assigning integers and dimensions to variables are somewhat unusual.

*Changing the
hyphenation
character*

With `\hyphenchar\font=<number>`, \LaTeX specifies the character that is inserted as the hyphen when a word is hyphenated. The `<number>` represents the position of this character within the encoding scheme. The default is the value of `\defaultshyphenchar`, which is 45, representing the position of the “-” character in most encoding schemes. If this number is set to -1, hyphenation is suppressed. Thus, by declaring

```
\DeclareFontFamily{OT1}{cmtt}{\hyphenchar\font=-1}
```

you can suppress hyphenation for all fonts in the `cmtt` family with the encoding scheme `OT1`. Fonts with the `T1` encoding have an alternate hyphen character in position 127 so that you can set, for example,

```
\DeclareFontFamily{T1}{cmr}{\hyphenchar\font=127}
```

This makes the hyphen character inserted by \LaTeX different from the compound-word dash entered in words like “so-called”. \LaTeX does not hyphenate words that already contain explicit hyphen characters (except just after the hyphen), which can create a

real problem in languages in which the average word length is much larger than in English. With the above setting this problem can be solved because the dash is no longer the hyphen character.

Every \LaTeX font has an associated set of dimensions, which are changed by assignments of the form `\fontdimen<number>\font=<dimen>`, where `<number>` is the reference number for the dimension and `<dimen>` is the value to be assigned. The default values are taken from the `.tfm` file when the font is loaded. Each font has at least seven such dimensions:

- `\fontdimen1` Specifies the slant per point of the characters. If the value is zero, the font is upright.
- `\fontdimen2` Specifies the normal width of a space used between words (interword space).
- `\fontdimen3` Specifies the additional stretchability of the interword space — that is, the extra amount of white space that \LaTeX is allowed to add to the space between words to produce justified lines in a paragraph. In an emergency \LaTeX may add more space than this allowed value; in that case an “underfull box” is reported.
- `\fontdimen4` Specifies the allowed shrinkability of the interword space — that is, the amount of space that \LaTeX is allowed to subtract from the normal interword space (`\fontdimen2`) to produce justified lines in a paragraph. \LaTeX never shrinks the interword space to less than this minimum.
- `\fontdimen5` Specifies the x-height. It defines the font-oriented dimension 1 ex.
- `\fontdimen6` Specifies the quad width. It defines the font-oriented dimension 1 em.
- `\fontdimen7` Specifies the amount intended as extra space to be added after certain end-of-sentence punctuation characters when `\nonfrenchspacing` is in force. The exact rules for when \TeX uses this dimension (all or some of the extra space) are somewhat complex; see *The \TeX book* [84] for details. It is always ignored or rather replaced by the value `\xspaceskip`, when that value is nonzero.

When changing the interword spacing associated with a font, you cannot use an absolute value because such a value must be usable for all sizes within one font shape group. You must, therefore, define the value by using some other parameter that depends on the font. You could say, for example,

```
\DeclareFontShape{T1}{qtm}{m}{n}{<-> ec-qtmr}
    {\fontdimen2\font=.7\fontdimen2\font}
```

This declaration reduces the normal interword space to 70% of its original value. In a similar manner, the stretchability and shrinkability could be changed.

Some fonts used in formulas need more than seven font dimensions — namely, the symbol fonts called “symbols” and “largesymbols” (see Section 9.8.5). \TeX refuses to typeset a formula if these symbol fonts have fewer than 22 and 13 `\fontdimen`

parameters, respectively. The values of these parameters are used to position the characters in a math formula. An explanation of the meaning of every such `\fontdimen` parameter is beyond the scope of this book; details can be found in Appendix G of *The T_EXbook* [84] and the very interesting *TUGboat* article [73] by Bogusław Jackowski.

One unfortunate optimization is built into the T_EX system: T_EX loads every `.tfm` file only once for a given size. It is, therefore, impossible to define one font shape group (with the `\DeclareFontShape` command) to load some external font — say, `cmtt10` — and to use another `\DeclareFontShape` command to load the same external font, this time changing some of the `\fontdimen` parameters or some other parameter associated with the font. Trying to do so changes the values for both font shape groups.

Suppose, for example, that you try to define a Times Roman font shape with tight spacing by making the interword space smaller:

```
\DeclareFontShape{T1}{qtm}{m}{n}{<-> ec-qtmr}{}
\DeclareFontShape{T1}{qtm}{c}{n}{<-> ec-qtmr}
{\fontdimen2\font=.7\fontdimen2\font}
```

This declaration does not work. The interword spacing for the medium shape changes when the tight shape is loaded to the values specified there, and this result is not what is wanted. The best way to solve this problem is to define a virtual font that contains the same characters as the original font but differs in the settings of the font dimensions (see [75, 76, 93]). Another possible solution is to load the font at a slightly different size, as in the following declaration:

```
\DeclareFontShape{T1}{qtm}{c}{n}{<-> [0.9999] ec-qtmr}
{\fontdimen2\font=.7\fontdimen2\font}
```

That strategy makes them different fonts for T_EX with separate `\fontdimen` parameters. Alternatively, in this particular case you can control the interword space by setting `\spaceskip`, thereby overwriting the font values. See Section 3.1.1 for some discussion of that parameter.

9.8.2 Modifying font families and font shape groups

If you need a nonstandard font shape group declaration for a particular document, just place your private declaration in a package or the preamble of your document. It then overwrites any existing declaration for the font shape combination. Note, however, that the use of `\DeclareFontFamily` prevents a later loading of the corresponding `.fd` file (see Section 9.8.4). Also, your new declaration has no effect on fonts that are already loaded.¹

¹Today's L^AT_EX format preloads by default only a small number of fonts. However, by using the configuration file `preload.cfg`, more or fewer fonts can be loaded when the format is built. None of these preloaded fonts can be manipulated using font family or font shape declarations. Thus, if you want some special settings for the core fonts, you must ensure that none of these fonts is preloaded. For additional information on ways to customize a L^AT_EX installation, refer to the document

To get around both problems, you need to explicitly load the corresponding font definition files first by using `\LoadFontDefinitionFile`. Then you can call `\DeclareFamily` to overwrite the loading information or set up some special substitutions, etc. For example, to prevent hyphenation in Latin Modern Proportional Typewriter, where it is by default enabled, you could write

```
\LoadFontDefinitionFile{T1}{lmvtt}
\DeclareFamily{T1}{lmvtt}{\hyphenchar\font=-1}
```

The `\LoadFontDefinitionFile` command does nothing if the font definitions have already been loaded (by the kernel or by some package). The case that no font definition file exists for the combination is allowed as well. It can be identified by the fact that directly after the message “Trying to load . . .” in the transcript file there is no matching file load listed.

9.8.3 Declaring new font encoding schemes

Font changes that involve alterations in the encoding scheme require taking certain precautions. For example, in the T1 encoding, most accented letters have their own glyphs, whereas in the traditional \TeX text encoding (OT1), accented letters must be generated from accents and letters using the `\accent` primitive. (It is desirable to use glyphs for accented letters rather than employing the `\accent` primitive because, among other things, the former approach allows for correct hyphenation.) If the two approaches have to be mixed, perhaps because a font is available in only one of the encodings, the definition of a command such as `\` must behave differently depending on the current font encoding.

For this reason, each encoding scheme has to be formally introduced to \LaTeX with a `\DeclareFontEncoding` command, which takes three arguments. The first argument is the name of the encoding under which you access it using the `\fontencoding` command. Table 9.18 on page 737 provides a list of standard encoding schemes and their internal NFSS names.

The second argument contains any code (such as definitions) to be executed every time \LaTeX switches from one encoding to another using the `\fontencoding` command. The final argument contains code to be used whenever the font is accessed as a mathematical alphabet. Thus, these three arguments can be used to redefine commands that depend on the positions of characters in the encoding.

There should not be really any need for users (other than a handful for developers worldwide) to define new font encodings, so we do not provide further details here. If you are interested, refer to [113].

As we saw in Section 9.7.3 on font substitution, the default values for the family, series, and shape may need to differ across encodings. To support this, NFSS provides the command `\DeclareFontSubstitution`, which again takes the encoding as the first argument. The next three arguments are the default values (associated with this encoding) for family, series, and shape for use in the automatic substitution

`cfpguide.pdf` [110], which is part of the \LaTeX distribution.

process, as explained in Section 9.7.3. It is important that these arguments form a valid font shape — in other words, that a `\DeclareFontShape` declaration exists for them. Otherwise, an error message is issued when NFSS checks its internal tables at `\begin{document}`.

9.8.4 Internal file organization

Font families can be declared when a format file is generated, declared in the document preamble, or loaded on demand when a font change command in the document requests a combination that has not been used so far. The first option consumes internal memory in every \LaTeX run, even if the font is not used. The second and third possibilities take a little more time during document formatting, because the font definitions have to be read during processing time. Nevertheless, it is preferable to use the latter solutions for most font shape groups, because it allows you to typeset a wide variety of documents with a single \LaTeX format.

When the format is generated, \LaTeX reads a file named `fonttext.ltx` that contains the standard set of font family definitions and some other declarations related to text fonts. With some restrictions,¹ this set can be altered by providing a configuration file `fontdef.cfg`; see the documentation [110].

All other font family definitions should be declared in external files loaded on request: either package files or font definition (`.fd`) files. If you place font family definitions in a package file, you must explicitly load this package after the `\documentclass` command. There is also a third possibility: whenever NFSS gets a request for a font family `foo` in an encoding scheme `BAR` and it has no knowledge about this combination, it tries to load a file called `barfoo.fd` (all letters lowercase). If this file exists, it is supposed to contain font shape group definitions for the family `foo` in the encoding scheme `BAR` — that is, declarations of the form

```
\DeclareFontFamily{BAR}{foo}{..}
\DeclareFontShape{BAR}{foo}{..}{..}{..}{..}
...
\endinput
```

In this way it becomes possible to declare a huge number of font families for \LaTeX without filling valuable internal memory with information that is almost never used.

Each `.fd` file should contain all font definitions for one font family in one encoding scheme. It should consist of one or more `\DeclareFontShape` declarations and exactly one `\DeclareFontFamily` declaration. Other definitions should not appear in the file, except perhaps for a `\ProvidesFile` declaration or some `\typeout` statement informing the user about the font loading.

An unfortunately common mistake still found in some of the existing `.fd` files is the definition of additional helper commands using `\newcommand` or `\def`. Because an `.fd` file may get loaded at random points during the document processing, it is

Any definitions in
.fd files have to
be global!

¹Any such customization should not be undertaken lightly as it is unfortunately very easy to produce a \LaTeX format that shows subtle or even glaring incompatibilities with other installations.

not impossible that this happens inside a group. In this case, these helper commands get undefined at the end of the group, resulting in puzzling errors later.

New encoding schemes cannot be introduced via the `.fd` mechanism. NFSS rejects any request to switch to an encoding scheme that was not explicitly declared in the \LaTeX format (i.e., `fonttext.ltx`), in a package file, or in the preamble of the document.

Unicode engines

Fonts for Unicode engines usually do not use `.fd` files. Instead, they are loaded through the interfaces provided by the `fontspec` package that was discussed in Section 9.6. What happens behind the scenes is that `fontspec` generates the necessary `\DeclareFontFamily` and `\DeclareFontShape` declarations on the fly.

9.8.5 Declaring new fonts and symbols for use in math

Setting up additional math fonts is also an activity that is not often needed; however, because there is the occasional need for it, this section provides you with the necessary information.

Specifying font sizes

For every text size, NFSS maintains three sizes that are used to typeset formulas (see also Section 11.7.1): the size in which to typeset most of the symbols (selected by `\textstyle` or `\displaystyle`); the size for first-order subscripts and superscripts (`\scriptstyle`); and the size for higher-order subscripts and superscripts (`\scriptscriptstyle`). If you switch to a new text size, for which the corresponding math sizes are not yet known, NFSS tries to calculate them as fractions of the text size. Instead of letting NFSS do the calculation, you might want to specify the correct values yourself via `\DeclareMathSizes`. This declaration takes four arguments: the outer text size and the three math sizes for this text size. For example, the class file for *The \LaTeX Companion* contains settings like the following:

```
\DeclareMathSizes{14}{14}{10}{7}
\DeclareMathSizes{36}{ }{ }{ }
```

The first declaration defines the math sizes for the 14pt heading size to be 14pt, 10pt, and 7pt, respectively. The automatic calculation would have made the scriptfont $14 \times 0.7 = 9.8$ instead.

The second declaration (the size for the chapter headings) informs NFSS that no math sizes are necessary for 36pt text size. This avoids the unnecessary loading of more than 30 additional fonts. For the first edition of *The \LaTeX Companion* such declarations were very important to be able to process the book with all its examples as a single document (the book loaded 228 fonts out of a maximum of 255). Today, \TeX installations are usually compiled with much larger internal tables (e.g., the laptop implementation used to write this chapter allows 9000 fonts), so conserving space

	'0	'1	'2	'3	'4	'5	'6	'7	
'00x	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	"0x
'01x	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	
'02x	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	"1x
'03x	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	
'04x	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	"2x
'05x	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	
'06x	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	"3x
'07x	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	
'10x	\neq	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	"4x
'11x	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	
'12x	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	"5x
'13x	X	Y	Z	\sim	\sim	\sim	\sim		
'14x	\neq	\neq					\neq	\neq	"6x
'15x	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	
'16x	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	"7x
'17x	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	\neq	
	"8	"9	"A	"B	"C	"D	"E	"F	

Table 9.19: Glyph chart for msbm10 produced by the nfssfont.tex program

is no longer a major concern. In any event, you should be careful about disabling math sizes, because if some formula is typeset in such a size after all, it is typeset in whatever math sizes are still in effect from an earlier text size.

Adding new symbol fonts

We have already seen how to use math alphabet commands to produce letters with special shapes in a formula. We now discuss how to add fonts containing special symbols, called “symbol fonts”, and how to make such symbols accessible in formulas.

The process of adding new symbol fonts is similar to the declaration of a new math alphabet identifier: `\DeclareSymbolFont` defines the defaults for all math versions, and `\SetSymbolFont` overrides the defaults for a particular version.

The math symbol fonts are accessed via a symbolic name, which consists of a string of letters. If, for example, you want to install the AMS fonts msbm10, shown in Table 9.19, you first have to make the typeface known to NFSS using the declarations described in the previous sections. These instructions would look like

```
\DeclareFontFamily{U}{msb}{}
```

Type	Meaning	Example	Type	Meaning	Example
<code>\mathord</code>	Ordinary	<code>/</code>	<code>\mathopen</code>	Opening	<code>(</code>
<code>\mathop</code>	Large operator	<code>\sum</code>	<code>\mathclose</code>	Closing	<code>)</code>
<code>\mathbin</code>	Binary operation	<code>+</code>	<code>\mathpunct</code>	Punctuation	<code>,</code>
<code>\mathrel</code>	Relation	<code>=</code>	<code>\mathalpha</code>	Alphabet character	<code>A</code>

Table 9.20: Math symbol type classification

```
\DeclareFontShape{U}{msb}{m}{n}{<5> <6> <7> <8> <9> gen * msbm
<10> <10.95> <12> <14.4> <17.28> <20.74> <24.88> msbm10}{}
```

and are usually placed in an `.fd` file. You then have to declare that symbol font for all math versions by issuing the command

```
\DeclareSymbolFont{AMSb}{U}{msb}{m}{n}
```

It makes the font shape group `U/msb/m/n` available as a symbol font under the symbolic name `AMSb`. If there were a bold series in this font family (unfortunately there is not), you could subsequently change the setup for the bold math version by writing

```
\SetSymbolFont{AMSb}{bold}{U}{msb}{b}{n}
```

After taking care of the font declarations, you can make use of this symbol font in math mode. But how do you tell NFSS that `$a\lessdot b$` should produce $a < b$, for example? To do so, you have to introduce your own symbol names to NFSS, using `\DeclareMathSymbol`.

```
\DeclareMathSymbol{cmd}{type}{symbol-font}{slot}
```

The first argument to `\DeclareMathSymbol` is your chosen command name. The second argument is one of the commands shown in Table 9.20 and describes the nature of the symbol — whether it is a binary operator, a relation, and so forth. \TeX uses this information to leave the correct amount of space around the symbol when it is encountered in a formula. Incidentally, except for `\mathalpha`, these commands can be used directly in math formulas as functions with one argument, in which case they space their (possibly complex) argument as if it were of the corresponding type; see Section 11.8 on page 208.

The third argument identifies the symbol font from which the symbol should be fetched — that is, the symbolic name introduced with the `\DeclareSymbolFont` command. The fourth argument gives the symbol's position in the font encoding, either as a decimal, octal, or hexadecimal value. Octal (base 8) and hexadecimal (base

16) numbers are preceded by ' and ", respectively. If you look at Table 9.19 on page 750, you can easily determine the positions of all glyphs in this font. Such tables can be printed using the \LaTeX program `nfssfont.tex`, which is part of the \LaTeX distribution; see Section 9.5.9 on page 705. For example, `\lessdot` would be declared using

```
\DeclareMathSymbol{\lessdot}{\mathbin}{AMSb}{"6C}
```

Instead of a command name, you can use a single character in the first argument. For example, the `eulervm` package has several declarations of the form

```
\DeclareMathSymbol{0}{\mathalpha}{letters}{"30}
```

that specify where to fetch the digits from.

Because `\DeclareMathSymbol` is used to specify a position in some symbol font, it is important that all external fonts associated with this symbol font via the `\DeclareSymbolFont` and `\SetSymbolFont` commands have the same character in that position. The simplest way to ensure this uniformity is to use only fonts with the same encoding (unless it is the U, a.k.a. unknown, encoding, because two fonts with this encoding are not required to implement the same characters).

Besides `\DeclareMathSymbol`, \LaTeX knows about `\DeclareMathAccent`, `\DeclareMathDelimiter`, and `\DeclareMathRadical` for setting up math font support. Details about these slightly special declarations can be found in [113], which is part of every \LaTeX distribution.

*Be careful with
fonts that contain
both math alphabets
and act as symbol
fonts*

If you look again at the glyph chart for `msbm10` (Table 9.19 on page 750), you will notice that this font contains “blackboard bold” letters, such as $\mathbb{A}\mathbb{B}\mathbb{C}$. If you want to use these letters as a math alphabet, you can define them by using a `\DeclareMathAlphabet` declaration, but given that this symbol font is already loaded to access individual symbols, it is better to use a shortcut:

```
\DeclareSymbolFontAlphabet{\mathbb}{AMSb}
```

That is, you give the name of your math alphabet identifier and the symbolic name of the previously declared symbol font.

An important reason for not unnecessarily loading symbol fonts twice is that there is an upper limit of 16 math fonts that can be active at any given time in \LaTeX . In calculating this limit, each symbol font counts; math alphabets count only if they are actually used in the document, and they count locally in each math version. Thus, if eight symbol fonts are declared, you can use a maximum of eight (possibly different) math alphabet identifiers within every version.¹

To summarize: to introduce new symbol fonts, you need to issue a small number of `\DeclareSymbolFont` and `\SetSymbolFont` declarations and a potentially large number of `\DeclareMathSymbol` declarations; hence, adding such fonts is best done in a package file.

¹By default two math fonts remain local per formula if used for math alphabets and not for symbol fonts. They can then be reassigned anew each time. This default can be enlarged; see page 681.

Introducing new math versions

We have already mentioned that the standard setup automatically declares two math versions, normal and bold. To introduce additional versions, you use the declaration `\DeclareMathVersion`, which takes one argument, the name of the new math version. All symbol fonts and all math alphabets previously declared are automatically available in this math version; the default fonts are assigned to them — that is, the fonts you have specified with `\DeclareMathAlphabet` or `\DeclareSymbolFont`.

You can then change the setup for your new version by issuing appropriate `\SetMathAlphabet` and `\SetSymbolFont` commands, as shown in previous sections (pages 683 and 751) for the bold math version. Again, the introduction of a new math version is normally done in a package file.

Changing the symbol font setup

Besides adding new symbol fonts to access more symbols, the commands we have just seen can be used to change an existing setup. This capability is of interest if you choose to use special fonts in some or all math versions.

The default settings in \LaTeX are given here:

```
\DeclareMathVersion{normal} \DeclareMathVersion{bold}

\DeclareSymbolFont{operators}      {OT1}{cmr}{m}{n}
\DeclareSymbolFont{letters}        {OML}{cmm}{m}{it}
\DeclareSymbolFont{symbols}        {OMS}{cmsy}{m}{n}
\DeclareSymbolFont{largesymbols}   {OMX}{cmex}{m}{n}

% Special bold fonts only for these:
\SetSymbolFont {operators}{bold}{OT1}{cmr}{bx}{n}
\SetSymbolFont {letters}  {bold}{OML}{cmm}{b}{it}
```

In the standard setup, digits and text produced by “log-like operators”, such as `\log` and `\max`, are taken from the symbol font called `operators`. To change this situation so that these elements agree with the main text font — say, Computer Modern Sans rather than Computer Modern Roman — you can issue the following commands:

```
\SetSymbolFont{operators}{normal}{OT1}{cmss}{m}{n}
\SetSymbolFont{operators}{bold}  {OT1}{cmss}{bx}{n}
```

Symbol fonts with the names `symbols` and `largesymbols` play a unique rôle in \TeX , and for this reason they need a special number of `\fontdimen` parameters associated with them. Thus, only specially prepared fonts can be used for these two symbol fonts. In principle one can add such parameters to any font at load time by using the third parameter of `\DeclareFontFamily` or the sixth parameter of `\DeclareFontShape`. Information on the special parameters for these symbol fonts can be found in Appendix G of [84].

9.9 L^AT_EX's encoding models

For most users it is probably sufficient to know that there exist certain input and output encodings and to have some basic knowledge about how to use them, as described in the previous sections. However, sometimes it is helpful to know the whole story in some detail, either to set up a new encoding or to better understand packages or classes that implement special features. So here is everything you always wanted to know about encodings in L^AT_EX.

We start by describing the general character data flow within the L^AT_EX system, deriving from that the base requirements for various encodings and the mapping between them. We then have a closer look at the internal representation model for character data within L^AT_EX, followed by a discussion of the mechanisms used to map incoming data via input encodings into that internal representation.

Finally, we explain how the internal representation is translated, via the output encodings, into the form required for the actual task of typesetting.

9.9.1 Character data within the L^AT_EX system

Document processing with the L^AT_EX system starts by interpreting data present in one or more source files. These data, which represent the document content, are stored in these files in the form of octets representing characters. To correctly interpret these octets, L^AT_EX (or any other program used to process the file, such as an editor) must know the encoding that was used when the file was written. In other words, it must know the mapping between abstract characters and the octets representing them.

With an incorrect mapping, all further processing is flawed to some extent unless the file contains only characters of a subset common in both encodings.¹

L^AT_EX makes one fundamental assumption at this stage: that (nearly) all characters of visible ASCII (decimal 32–126) are represented by the number that they have in the ASCII code table; see Table 9.21 on the next page.

There is both a practical and a T_EXnical reason for this assumption. The practical reason is that most 8-bit encodings as well as the UTF-8 encoding usually used today share a common 7-bit plane. The T_EXnical reason is that for using T_EX efficiently, the majority of the visible portion of ASCII needs to be processed as characters of category “letter” (because only characters with this category can be used in multiple-character command names in T_EX) or of category “other” (because T_EX will not, for example, recognize the decimal digits as being part of a number if they do not have this category code).²

¹Because most encodings in the Western world (including the UTF-8 encoding) share as a common subset a large fraction of the ASCII code (i.e., most of the 7-bit plane), documents consisting mainly of unaccented Latin characters are still understandable if viewed or processed in an encoding different from the one in which they were originally written. However, the more characters outside visible ASCII are used, the less comprehensible the text becomes. A text can become completely unintelligible when, for instance, Greek or Russian documents written in an 8-bit encoding are reprocessed in any other 8-bit encoding (or in UTF-8).

²At least this was true when this interface was being designed. These days, with computers being much faster than before, it would probably be possible to radically change the input method of T_EX by

Represented as Characters	
Digits:	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
Lowercase letters:	a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z
Uppercase letters:	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
Punctuation:	. , ; : ? ! ' '
Miscellaneous symbols:	* + - = () [] / @
Not Represented as Characters	
T _E X syntax characters:	\$ ^ _ { } # & % \ ~
Missing in (some) OT1 fonts	< > | "

Table 9.21: LICR objects represented with single characters

When a character — or more exactly an 8-bit number in pdfT_EX — is declared to be of category “letter” or “other” in T_EX, then this character is transparently passed through T_EX. This means that in the output T_EX typesets whatever symbol is in the font at the position addressed by that number.

Unicode engines

The same is true for Unicode engines, except that in those engines characters mean Unicode characters and therefore cover a much larger range. This is why, for example, “ä” is a real character in these engines and can therefore appear, say, in command names, while in pdfT_EX it is seen as two separate bytes, i.e., two characters. Thus, to interpret UTF-8 in pdfT_EX, the first byte is defined to be “active” and not of type “letter”. This then assembles the intended character by reading further bytes and eventually generates \“a to represent the “ä”.

A consequence of the assumption mentioned earlier is that fonts intended to be used for general text require that (most of) the visible ASCII characters are present in the font and are encoded according to the ASCII encoding. The exact list is given in Table 9.21.

All other 8-bit numbers (i.e., those outside visible ASCII) potentially being present in the input file are assigned a category code of “active”, which makes them act like commands inside T_EX. This allows L^AT_EX to transform them via the input encodings to a form that we call the L^AT_EX internal character representation (LICR).

The most important characteristic of objects in the LICR is that the representation is 7-bit ASCII making it invariant to any input encoding change, because all input encodings are supposed to be transparent with respect to visible ASCII. This enables L^AT_EX, for example, to write auxiliary files (e.g., .toc files) using the LICR representation and to read them back in a different context (and possibly different encoding) without any misinterpretations.

Unicode’s UTF-8 encoding is handled similarly in pdfT_EX: the ASCII characters represent themselves, and the starting octets for multiple-byte representations act as basically disabling it altogether and parsing the input data manually — that is, character by character.

active characters that scan the input for the remaining octets. The result is turned into an object in the LICR, if it is mapped, or it generates an error, if the given Unicode character is not mapped. However, if UTF-8 is used as input encoding, the characters are written out not in their LICR form but again as UTF-8 characters. Thus, in `.toc` files, etc., you see “Grüße” and not “Gr\“u\ss e” if that input encoding is in force.

The purpose of the output (or font) encoding is then to map the internal character representations to glyph positions in the current font used for typesetting or, in some cases, to initiate more complex actions. For example, it might place an accent (present in one position in the current font) over some glyph (in a different position in the current font) to achieve a printed image of the abstract character represented by the command(s) in the internal character encoding.

Because the LICR encodes all possible characters addressable within \LaTeX , it is far larger than the number of characters that can be represented by a single \TeX font in pdf\TeX (which can contain a maximum of 256 glyphs). In some cases a character not present in a font can be rendered by combining glyphs, such as the accented characters mentioned above. However, when the character requires a special shape (e.g., the currency symbol “ $\text{\textcircled{C}}$ ”), there is no way to fake it if that glyph does not exist in the font.

Nevertheless, for text symbols (that do not participate in hyphenation) the \LaTeX model for character encoding supports automatic mechanisms for fetching glyphs from different fonts so that such characters if missing in the current font get typeset — provided a suitable additional font containing them is available, of course.

Unicode engines

The situation in Unicode engines is quite different, because fonts for these engines can contain arbitrarily many characters. This is why in those engines \LaTeX normally uses only a single font encoding (TU), and instead of passing through an LICR representation, the UTF-8 characters represent themselves and do not change their behavior if the output encoding is changed. For example, the input string `Grüße` correctly generates “Grüße” if a Unicode font is used, but if we try

```
\fontencoding{OT1}\fontfamily{cmr}\selectfont  Grüße
\fontencoding{T1}\fontfamily{cmr}\selectfont    Grüße
```

in such an engine, the result would be

Gre GrüsSe

because the characters “ü” and “ß” have the Unicode numbers 00FC and 00DF, respectively, and in OT1 there are not any glyphs in slots greater than 007F (and thus neither character is typeset) and in T1 the “ü” happens to be in its Unicode slot, but “ß” is not, so we get a wrong glyph typeset.

However, if LICR representations are used in the input, e.g., `\“u` or `\ss`, they are interpreted correctly in all engines so that old documents work correctly when processed.

9.9.2 L^AT_EX's internal character representation (LICR)

In this section we cover the LICR concepts in some more depth. Technically speaking, text characters are represented internally by L^AT_EX in one of three ways, each of which is discussed in the following sections.

Representation as characters

If pdfT_EX is used, then only a small number of characters are represented by “themselves”; for example, the Latin A is represented as the character “A”. Characters represented in this way are shown in Table 9.21 on page 755. They form a subset of visible ASCII, and inside T_EX all of them are given the category code of “letter” or “other”. Some characters from the visible ASCII range are not represented in this way, either because they are part of the T_EX syntax¹ or because they are not present in all fonts. If one uses, for example, “<” in text, the current font encoding determines whether one gets < (T1) or perhaps a j (OT1) in the printout.²

Unicode engines

In contrast to pdfT_EX nearly all characters are represented by themselves in Unicode engines: essentially all UTF-8 characters except for those that are used by T_EX for syntax purposes.

Representation with character sequences

T_EX's internal ligature mechanism supports the generation of new characters from a sequence of input characters. While this is actually a property of the font, some such sequences have been explicitly designed to serve as input shortcuts for characters that are otherwise difficult to type with most keyboards. Only a very few characters generated in this way are considered to belong to L^AT_EX's internal representation. These include the en-dash and em-dash, which are generated by the ligatures -- and ---, and the opening and closing double quotes, which are generated by ‘ ‘ and ’ ’ (for the latter people sometimes use the single character " , but this is incorrect because it may produce a straight double quote, i.e., "). While most fonts also implement ! ‘ and ? ‘ to generate j and i, this feature is not universally available in all fonts. For this reason *all* such characters have an alternative internal representation as a command (e.g., \textendash or \textexclamdown).

Unicode engines

Because this form of representation has been available for basically every font usable with pdfT_EX, it has also been implemented for Unicode engines (technically through some engine-specific code when loading fonts as it is not an OpenType font feature).

¹The L^AT_EX syntax knows a few more characters, such as *[] . They play a dual rôle, also being used to represent the characters in straight text. Sometimes problems arise trying to keep the two meanings apart. For example, a] within an optional argument is possible only when it is hidden by a set of braces; otherwise, L^AT_EX thinks the optional argument has ended.

²This describes the situation in text. In math “<” has a well-defined meaning: “generate a less than relation symbol”.

Representation as “font-encoding-specific” commands

The other way to represent characters internally in \LaTeX (and this covers the majority of characters when \pdfTeX is used) is with special \LaTeX commands (or command sequences) that remain unexpanded when written to a file or when placed into a moving argument. These special commands are sometimes referred to as “font-encoding-specific commands” because their meaning depends on the font encoding current when \LaTeX is ready to typeset them. Such commands are declared using special declarations, as discussed below. They usually require individual definitions for each font encoding. If no definition exists for the current encoding, either a default is used (if available) or an error message is presented to the user.

Technically, when the font encoding is changed at some point in the document, the definitions of the encoding-specific commands do not change immediately, because that would mean changing a large number of commands on the spot. Instead, these commands have been implemented in such a way that they notice, once they are used, if their current definition is no longer suitable for the font encoding in force. In such a case they call upon their counterparts in the current font encoding to do the actual work.

The set of “font-encoding-specific commands” is not fixed, but rather implicitly defined to be the union of all commands defined for individual font encodings. Thus, by adding new font encodings to \LaTeX , new “font-encoding-specific commands” might emerge.


Unicode engines

With Unicode engines most characters are transparently handled, so encoding-specific commands are normally not needed; it is nevertheless possible to use them in the input. This makes it easy to reuse documents, originally written for \pdfTeX , in Unicode engines.

9.9.3 Input encodings

Since 2015 the default input encoding for \LaTeX is UTF-8 unless explicitly changed in the preamble using the `inputenc` package. This means that in \pdfTeX all UTF-8 characters that can be typeset using the loaded fonts can nowadays be entered in the source document in their natural UTF-8 form, e.g., as “ü” or “ß”, and there is no need to use the LICR representations `\u` or `\ss` for them. This is technically achieved in \pdfTeX by mapping the UTF-8 characters to their corresponding LICR objects using `\DeclareUnicodeCharacter` declarations.

```
\DeclareUnicodeCharacter{hex-number}{LICR-object}
```

Unusual  argument syntax

This declaration maps a Unicode number (represented as a *hex-number* without a preceding “”) to an *LICR-object*. For example,

```
\DeclareUnicodeCharacter{00A3}{\textsterling}
\DeclareUnicodeCharacter{011A}{\v E}
\DeclareUnicodeCharacter{2031}{\textpertenthousand}
```

Unicode characters in the range of 0000 to 007F (i.e., the ASCII part of Unicode) cannot be declared with this command: if you try, L^AT_EX responds with an error message.

In theory, there should be only a single unique bidirectional mapping between the two name spaces so that all such declarations could be already available when L^AT_EX starts. In practice, the situation is a little more complicated. For one, it is not sensible to automatically provide the whole table, because that would require a huge amount of T_EX's memory. Additionally, there are many Unicode characters for which no LICR object exists (so far), and conversely some LICR objects have no equivalents in Unicode.¹ This problem is solved in L^AT_EX by loading only those Unicode mappings that correspond to the encodings used in a particular document (as far as they are known) and responds to any other request for a Unicode character with a suitable error message. It then becomes your task to either provide the right mapping information or, if necessary, load an additional font encoding.

For each output encoding, there should exist a file `<encoding>enc.dfu` containing all necessary mapping declarations (like those above) that correspond to this particular encoding. When an encoding is loaded with `fontenc`, this file is read in, and afterwards its declarations are available.

Because different font encodings often provide to a certain extent the same characters, it is quite common for declarations for the same Unicode character to be found in different `.dfu` files. It is, therefore, very important that these declarations in different files be identical (which in theory they should be anyway, but...). Otherwise, the declaration loaded last survives, which may be a different one from document to document.²

Of course, `\DeclareUnicodeCharacter` can also be used in the preamble if a mapping is missing or needs changing for some reason.

Legacy 8-bit input encodings

To process files stored in one of the legacy 8-bit input encodings L^AT_EX offers the package `inputenc`. Once this package is loaded (with or without options), the two declarations `\DeclareInputText` and `\DeclareInputMath` for mapping 8-bit input characters to LICR objects become available. Their usage should be confined to input encoding files, packages, or, if necessary, to the preamble of documents. Input encoding files use the name of the encoding in lowercase letters and the extension `.def`, e.g., `latin1.def`.

Because documents today are stored by default in UTF-8, there is seldom a need for using `inputenc`, and we refer to the package documentation for technical details of how input encoding files are set up or altered through the above commands.

¹This is perhaps a surprising statement, but simply consider that, for example, accent commands like `\`` combined with some other character form a new LICR object, such as `\`d` (whether sensible or not). Many such combinations are not available in Unicode.

²So anyone who wants to provide a new `.dfu` file for some encoding that was previously not covered should carefully check the existing definitions in `.dfu` files for related encodings. Standard files provided with `inputenc` are guaranteed to have uniform definition — they are, in fact, all generated from a single list that is suitably split up. A full list of currently existing mappings can be found in the file `utf8enc.dfu`.

9.9.4 Output encodings

As we learned earlier, output encodings define the mapping from the LICR to the glyphs (or constructs built from glyphs) available in the fonts used for typesetting. These mappings are referenced inside \LaTeX by two- or three-letter names (e.g., OT1 or T2A). We say that a certain font is in a certain encoding if the mapping corresponds to the positions of the glyphs in the font in question. So what are the exact components of such a mapping?

*Pass-through
characters*

Characters internally represented by ASCII characters are simply passed on to the font. In other words, \TeX uses the ASCII code to select a glyph from the current font. For example, the character “A” with ASCII code 65 results in typesetting the glyph in position 65 in the current font. This is why \LaTeX requires that fonts for text contain all such ASCII letters in their ASCII code positions, because there is no way to interact with this basic \TeX mechanism (other than to disable it and do everything “manually”). Thus, for visible ASCII, a one-to-one mapping is implicitly present in all output encodings.

Unicode engines

In the case of the TU encoding used by Unicode engines, essentially all UTF-8 letters are passed on to the font. However, the other means of referring to glyphs (i.e., sequences of characters or the font-encoding-specific commands discussed below) are also supported.

*Characters
represented by
ASCII sequences*

Characters internally represented as sequences of ASCII characters (e.g., “--”) are handled as follows: when the current font is first loaded, \TeX is informed that the font contains a number of so-called ligature programs. These define certain character sequences that are not to be typeset directly but rather to be replaced¹ by some other glyphs from the font (the exact position of each replacement glyph is font dependent and not important otherwise). For example, when \TeX sees “--” in the input (i.e., ASCII code 45 twice), a ligature program might direct it to use the glyph in position 123 instead (which then would hold the glyph “-”). No interaction with this mechanism is possible. Some such ligatures are present for purely aesthetic reasons and may or may not be available in certain fonts (e.g., `ff` generating “ff” rather than “ff”). Others are supposed to be implemented for a certain encoding (e.g., “---” producing an `\emdash`).

*Characters
represented as font-
encoding-specific
commands*

Nevertheless, the bulk of the internal character representation consists of “font-encoding-specific” commands. They are mapped using the declarations described below. All declarations have the same structure in their first two arguments: the font-encoding-specific command (or the first component of it, if it is a command sequence), followed by the name of the encoding. Any remaining arguments depend on the type of declaration.

Thus, an encoding XYZ is defined by a collection of declarations all having the name XYZ as their second argument. Of course, to be of any use, some fonts must be encoded in that encoding. In fact, the development of font encodings is normally done the other way around — namely, someone starts with an existing font and then

¹The actions carried out by a font ligature program can, in fact, be far more complex, but for the purpose of our discussion here this simplified view is appropriate. For an in-depth discussion, see Knuth’s paper on virtual fonts [93].

provides appropriate declarations for using it. This collection of declarations is then given a suitable name, such as OT1. In the next section, we take the font `ec-lmr10`, shown in Table 9.22 on page 763, whose font encoding is called T1 in L^AT_EX, and build appropriate declarations to access the glyphs from a font encoded in this way. The blue characters in this table are those that have to be present in the same positions in every text encoding, because they are transparently passed through T_EX.

Declarations for output encoding files

Like input encoding files, output encoding files are identified by the extension `.def`. However, the base name of the file is slightly more structured: the name of the encoding in lowercase letters, followed by the letters `enc` (e.g., `t1enc.def` for the T1 encoding).

Such files should contain only the declarations described in the current section. Because output encoding files might be read several times by L^AT_EX, it is particularly important to adhere to this rule strictly and to refrain from using, for example, `\newcommand`, which prevents reading such a file multiple times!

For identification purposes an output encoding file should start with a `\ProvidesFile` declaration describing the nature of the file. For example:

```
\ProvidesFile{t1enc.def}[2001/06/05 v1.94 Standard LaTeX file]
```

To be able to declare any encoding-specific commands for a particular encoding, we first have to make this encoding known to L^AT_EX. This is achieved via the `\DeclareFontEncoding` declaration. At this point¹ it is also useful to declare the default substitution rules for the encoding with the help of the command `\DeclareFontSubstitution`; both declarations are described in detail in Section 9.8.3 starting on page 747.

```
\DeclareFontEncoding{T1}{}{}
\DeclareFontSubstitution{T1}{cmr}{m}{n}
```

Having introduced the T1 encoding in this way to L^AT_EX, we can now proceed with declaring how font-encoding-specific commands should behave in that encoding.

```
\DeclareTextSymbol{LICR-object}{encoding}{slot}
```

Perhaps the simplest form of declaration is the one for text symbols, where the internal representation can be directly mapped to a single glyph in the target font. This is handled by the `\DeclareTextSymbol` declaration, whose third argument — the font position — can be given as a decimal, hexadecimal, or octal number. For example,

```
\DeclareTextSymbol{\ss}{T1}{255}
\DeclareTextSymbol{\AE}{T1}{'306} % font position as octal number
\DeclareTextSymbol{\ae}{T1}{"E6}  % ... as hexadecimal number
```

¹This should happen in the encoding `(enc)enc.def` file and *not* in a font `.fd` file!

declare that the font-encoding-specific commands `\ss`, `\AE`, and `\ae` should be mapped to the font (decimal) positions 255, 198, and 230, respectively, in a T1-encoded font. As mentioned earlier, it is safest to use decimal notation in such declarations, even though octal or hexadecimal values are often easier to identify in glyph charts like the one on the next page. Mixing them like we did in the example above is certainly bad style. All in all, there are 49 such declarations for the T1 encoding.

```
\DeclareTextAccent{LICR-accent}{encoding}{slot}
```

Often fonts contain diacritical marks as individual glyphs to allow the production of accented characters by combining such a diacritical mark with some other glyph. Such accents (as long as they are to be placed on top of other glyphs) are declared using the `\DeclareTextAccent` command; the third argument *slot* is the position of the diacritical mark in the font. For example,

```
\DeclareTextAccent{"}{T1}{4}
```

defines the “umlaut” accent. From that point onward, an internal representation such as `\"a` has the following meaning in the T1 output encoding: typeset “ä” by placing the accent in position 4 over the glyph in position 97 (the ASCII code of the character a). In fact, such a declaration implicitly defines a huge range of internal character presentations — that is, anything of the type `\"⟨base-glyph⟩`, where *⟨base-glyph⟩* is something defined via `\DeclareTextSymbol` or any ASCII character belonging to the LICR, such as “a”.

Even those combinations that do not make much sense, such as `\"P` (i.e., pilcrow sign with umlaut ¶) conceptually become members of the set of font-encoding-specific commands in this way. There are a total of 11 such declarations in the T1 encoding.

```
\DeclareTextComposite
    {LICR-accent}{encoding}{simple-LICR-object}{slot}
```

The glyph chart on the facing page contains a large number of accented characters as individual glyphs — for example, “ä” in position '344 octal. Thus, in T1 the encoding-specific command `\"a` should not result in placing an accent over the character “a” but instead should directly access the glyph in that position of the font. This is achieved by the declaration

```
\DeclareTextComposite{"}{T1}{a}{228}
```

which states that the encoding-specific command `\"a` results in typesetting the glyph 228, thereby disabling the accent declaration above. For all other encoding-specific commands starting with `\"`, the accent declaration remains in place. For example, `\"b` produces a “b̈” by placing an accent over the base character b.

The third argument, *simple-LICR-object*, should be a single letter, such as “a”, or a single command, such as `\j` or `\oe`. There are 110 such composites declared for the T1 encoding.

	'0	'1	'2	'3	'4	'5	'6	'7	
'00x	`	'	^	~	..	"	°	˘	"0x
'01x	˘	–	•	˙	˚	,	‹	›	
'02x	“	”	„	«	»	—	—		
'03x	o	ı	j	ff	fi	fl	ffi	ffl	"1x
'04x	□	!	"	#	\$	%	&	'	
'05x	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/	"2x
'06x	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
'07x	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?	"3x
'10x	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	
'11x	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	"4x
'12x	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	
'13x	X	Y	Z	[	\	\]	^	—	"5x
'14x	‘	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	
'15x	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	"6x
'16x	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	
'17x	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	-	"7x
'20x	Ă	Ą	Ć	Č	Ď	Ě	Ę	Ğ	
'21x	Ł	Ł	Ł	Ń	Ň	Đ	Ů	Ř	"8x
'22x	Ř	Ś	Š	Ş	Ť	Ţ	Ů	Ű	
'23x	Ÿ	Ž	Ž	Ž	IJ	İ	đ	§	"9x
'24x	ă	ą	ć	č	ď	ě	ę	ğ	
'25x	í	ı	ı	ń	ň	ŋ	ó	ı	"Ax
'26x	ř	ś	š	ş	ť	ţ	ů	ű	
'27x	ÿ	ž	ž	ž	ij	i	ı	£	"Bx
'30x	À	Á	Â	Ã	Ä	Å	Æ	Ç	
'31x	È	É	Ê	Ë	Ì	Í	Î	Ï	"Cx
'32x	Ð	Ñ	Ò	Ó	Ô	Õ	Ö	Œ	
'33x	Ø	Ù	Ú	Û	Ü	Ý	Þ	ß	"Dx
'34x	à	á	â	ã	ä	å	æ	ç	
'35x	è	é	ê	ë	ì	í	î	ï	"Ex
'36x	ð	ñ	ò	ó	ô	õ	ö	œ	
'37x	ø	ù	ú	û	ü	ý	þ	ß	"Fx
	"8	"9	"A	"B	"C	"D	"E	"F	

Characters marked in *blue* need to be present (in the same positions) in every text encoding, because they are transparently passed through T_EX.

Table 9.22: Glyph chart for a T1-encoded font (ec-lmr10)

```
\DeclareTextCompositeCommand
  {LICR-object}{encoding}{simple-LICR-object}{code}
```

Although not used for the T1 encoding, there also exists a more general variant of `\DeclareTextComposite` that allows arbitrary code in place of a slot position. This is, for example, used in the OT1 encoding to lower the ring accent over the “A” compared to the way it would be typeset with T_EX’s `\accent` primitive. The accents over the “i” are also implemented using this form of declaration:

```
\DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\`}{OT1}{i}{\@tabacckludge`i}
\DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\^}{OT1}{i}{\^i}
```

What have we not covered for the T1 encoding? A number of diacritical marks are not placed on top of other characters but are placed somewhere below them. There is no special declaration form for such marks, as the actual placement usually involves low-level T_EX code. Instead, the generic `\DeclareTextCommand` declaration can be used for this purpose.

```
\DeclareTextCommand{LICR-object}{encoding}[num][default]{code}
```

For example, the “underbar” accent `\b` in the T1 encoding is defined with the following wonderful piece of prose:

```
\DeclareTextCommand{\b}{T1}[1]
  {\hmode\bgroup\o@lign{\relax#1\crrc\hidewidth\sh@ft{29}%
  \vbox to.2ex{\hbox{\char9}\vss}\hidewidth}\egroup}
```

Without going into detail about what the code precisely means, we can see that the `\DeclareTextCommand` is similar in structure to `\newcommand`. That is, it has an optional *num* argument denoting the number of arguments (one here), a second optional *default* argument (not present here), and a final mandatory argument containing the code in which it is possible to refer to the argument(s) using `#1`, `#2`, and so on. T1 has four such declarations, for `\b`, `\c`, `\d`, and `\k`.

`\DeclareTextCommand` can also be used to build font-encoding-specific commands consisting of a single control sequence. In this case it is used without an optional argument, thus defining a command with zero arguments. For example, in T1 there is no glyph for a % sign, but there exists a strange little “o” in position ‘30, which, if placed directly behind a %, gives the appropriate glyph. Thus, we can write

```
\DeclareTextCommand{\textperthousand}{T1}{\%\char 24 }
\DeclareTextCommand{\textpertenthousand}{T1}{\%\char 24\char 24 }
```

This discussion has now covered all commands that are needed to declare the font-encoding-specific commands for a new encoding. As mentioned earlier, only these commands should appear in encoding definition files.

Output encoding defaults

What happens if an encoding-specific command is used for which there is no declaration in the current font encoding? In that case, one of two things might happen: either L^AT_EX has a default definition for the LICR object, in which case this default is used, or the user gets an error message stating that the requested LICR object is unavailable in the current encoding. There are several ways to set up defaults for LICR objects.

```
\DeclareTextCommandDefault{LICR-object}[num][default]{code}
```

The `\DeclareTextCommandDefault` command provides the default definition for an *LICR-object* that is to be used whenever there is no specific setting for the object in the current encoding. Such default definitions can, for example, fake a certain character. For instance, `\textregistered` has a default definition in which the character is built from two others, like this:

```
\DeclareTextCommandDefault{\textregistered}{\textcircled{\scshape r}}
```

Technically, the default definitions are stored as an encoding with the name “?”. While you should not rely on this fact, because the implementation might change in the future, it means that you cannot declare an encoding with this name.

```
\DeclareTextSymbolDefault{LICR-object}{encoding}
```

In most cases, a default definition does not require coding but simply directs L^AT_EX to pick up the character from some encoding in which it is known to exist. The L^AT_EX kernel, for example, contains a large number of default declarations that all point to the TS1 encoding. Consider the following declaration:

```
\DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\texteuro}{TS1}
```

The `\DeclareTextSymbolDefault` command can, in fact, be used to define the default for any LICR object without arguments, not just those that have been declared with the `\DeclareTextSymbol` command in other encodings.

```
\DeclareTextAccentDefault{LICR-accent}{encoding}
```

A similar declaration exists for LICR objects that take one argument, such as accents (which gave this declaration its name). This form is again usable for any LICR object with one argument. The L^AT_EX kernel, for example, contains quite a number of declarations of the type:

```
\DeclareTextAccentDefault{"}{OT1}
\DeclareTextAccentDefault{\t}{OML}
```

This means that if the `\` is not defined in the current encoding, then use the one

from an OT1-encoded font. Likewise, if you need a tie accent, pick up one from OML¹ if nothing better is available.

```
\ProvideTextCommandDefault{LICR-object}[num][default]{code}
```

With the `\ProvideTextCommandDefault` declaration a different kind of default can be “provided”. As the name suggests, it does the same job as the declaration `\DeclareTextCommandDefault`, except that the default is provided only if no default has been defined before. This is mainly used in input encoding files to provide some sort of trivial defaults for unusual LICR objects. For example:

```
\ProvideTextCommandDefault{\textonequarter}{\ensuremath{\frac{1}{4}}}  
\ProvideTextCommandDefault{\textcent}{\TextSymbolUnavailable\textcent}
```

The first declaration provides an approximate glyph; in the second, the command `\TextSymbolUnavailable` generates an error message that the symbol is unavailable in the current encoding. Packages can then replace such definitions with declarations pointing to real glyphs.

Using `\Provide..` instead of `\Declare..` ensures that a better default is not accidentally overwritten if the input encoding file is read.

```
\UndeclareTextCommand{LICR-object}{encoding}
```

In some cases an existing declaration needs to be removed to ensure that a default declaration is used instead. This task can be carried out by the command `\UndeclareTextCommand`. For example, the `textcomp` package used to remove the definitions of `\textdollar` and `\textsterling` from the OT1 encoding because not every OT1-encoded font actually has these symbols.²

```
\UndeclareTextCommand{\textsterling}{OT1}  
\UndeclareTextCommand{\textdollar}{OT1}
```

Without this removal, the new default declarations to pick up the symbols from TS1 would not be used for fonts encoded with OT1.

```
\UseTextSymbol{encoding}{LICR-object}  
\UseTextAccent{encoding}{LICR-object}{simple-LICR-object}
```

The action hidden behind the declarations `\DeclareTextSymbolDefault` and `\DeclareTextAccentDefault` is also available for direct use. Assume, for example, that the current encoding is U. In that case,

```
\UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\ss}  
\UseTextAccent{OT1}{\'}{a}
```

¹OML is a math font encoding, but it contains this text accent mark.

²This is one of the deficiencies of the old TeX encodings; besides missing accented glyphs, they are not even identical from one font to another.

has the same effect as entering the code below. Note in particular that the “a” is typeset in encoding U — only the accent is taken from the other encoding.

```
\fontencoding{OT1}\selectfont\ss}
\fontencoding{OT1}\selectfont'\fontencoding{U}\selectfont a}}
```

Declarations for the `tuenc.def` file

Unicode engines

For the Unicode encoding TU used in Unicode engines there are additional declarations available. The encoding is implicit, because it is normally TU. For special applications it can be altered by changing `\UnicodeEncodingName`.

```
\DeclareUnicodeAccent{LICR-accent}{slot}
```

This is similar to `\DeclareTextAccent`, but instead of using the `\accent` command of T_EX to position the accent on top of a following base character, it places the accent after it. This is the correct approach if the accent is a Unicode “combining character”. It is then the task of the font to combine both in the correct way.

```
\DeclareUnicodeComposite{LICR-accent}{base-character}{slot}
```

This is a wrapper around `\DeclareTextCompositeCommand`. It first tests if the declared composite exists as a single glyph in the current font (which may or may not be the case) and if so uses the composite *slot*. Otherwise, it falls back to the default definition for the *LICR-accent* in TU.

```
\DeclareUnicodeSymbol{LICR-cmd}{slot}
```

This is a simple wrapper around `\DeclareTextSymbol` with the encoding made implicit but otherwise no extra processing.

```
\DeclareUnicodeCommand{LICR-cmd}{definition}
```

This is another wrapper; this time for `\DeclareTextCommand` with the encoding made implicit, i.e., syntactic sugar.

A listing of standard LICR objects

Table 9.23 provides a comprehensive overview of the L^AT_EX internal representations available with the three major encodings for Latin-based languages: OT1 (the original T_EX text font encoding), T1 (the L^AT_EX standard encoding, also known as Cork encoding), and LY1 (an alternate 8-bit encoding proposed by Y&Y). In addition, it shows all LICR objects declared by TS1 (the L^AT_EX standard text symbol encoding) historically provided by loading the `textcomp` package but nowadays available by default.

The first column of the table shows the LICR object names alphabetically sorted, indicating which LICR objects act like accents. The second column shows a glyph representation of the object.

The third column describes whether the object has a default declaration. If an encoding is listed, it means that by default the glyph is being fetched from a suitable font in that encoding; `constr.` means that the default is produced from low-level TeX code; if the column is empty, it means that no default is defined for this LICR object. In the last case a “Symbol unavailable” error is returned when you use it in an encoding for which it has no explicit definition. If the object is an alias for some other LICR object, we list the alternative name in this column.

Columns four through seven show whether an object is available in the given encoding. Here **X** means that the object is natively available (as a glyph) in fonts with that encoding, **O** means that it is available through the default for all encodings, and `constr.` means that it is generated from several glyphs, accent marks, or other elements. If the default is fetched from TS1, the LICR object is also always available but depending on the current font family, it might have a suboptimal representation; see Section 9.5.6 on page 694 for details.

Unicode engines

All font-encoding-specific commands are available in the TU encoding.

Table 9.23: Standard LICR objects

LICR Object	Glyph	Default from	OT1	T1	LY1	TS1
ABC..XYZ (Uppercase letters)	ABC..XYZ		X	X	X	
abc..xyz (Lowercase letters)	abc..xyz		X	X	X	
0123..9 (Digits)	0123..9		X	X	X	X
.,/ (Punctuation)	.,/		X	X	X	X
;:?!"‘’ (Punctuation cont.)	;:?!"‘’		X	X	X	
*+ -= () [] (Misc)	*+ -= () []		X	X	X	
\# \% \&	#&%		X	X	X	
\" (accent)	¨	OT1	X	X	X	
\"A	Ä		constr.	X	X	
\"E	Ë		constr.	X	X	
\"I	Ï		constr.	X	X	
\"O	Ö		constr.	X	X	
\"U	Ü		constr.	X	X	
\"Y	ÿ		constr.	X	X	
\"a	ä		constr.	X	X	
\"e	ë		constr.	X	X	
\"\i	ï		constr.	X	X	
\"i (alias)	ï	\" \i	constr.	X	X	
X defined in encoding O defined via default						

LICR Object		Glyph	Default from	OT1	T1	LY1	TS1
\o		ö		constr.	✕	✕	
\u		ü		constr.	✕	✕	
\y		ÿ		constr.	✕	✕	
\\$	(alias)	\$	<i>\textdollar</i>	○	✕	✕	✕
\'	(accent)	˘	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
\'A		Á		constr.	✕	✕	
\'C		Ć		constr.	✕	constr.	
\'E		É		constr.	✕	✕	
\'I		Í		constr.	✕	✕	
\'L		Ĺ		constr.	✕	constr.	
\'N		Ń		constr.	✕	constr.	
\'O		Ó		constr.	✕	✕	
\'R		Ř		constr.	✕	constr.	
\'S		Ś		constr.	✕	constr.	
\'U		Ú		constr.	✕	✕	
\'Y		Ý		constr.	✕	✕	
\'Z		Ž		constr.	✕	constr.	
\'a		á		constr.	✕	✕	
\'c		ć		constr.	✕	constr.	
\'e		é		constr.	✕	✕	
\'\i		í		constr.	✕	✕	
\'i	(alias)	í	\' \i	constr.	✕	✕	
\'l		ĺ		constr.	✕	constr.	
\'n		ń		constr.	✕	constr.	
\'o		ó		constr.	✕	✕	
\'r		ř		constr.	✕	constr.	
\'s		ś		constr.	✕	constr.	
\'u		ú		constr.	✕	✕	
\'y		ý		constr.	✕	✕	
\'z		ž		constr.	✕	constr.	
\.	(accent)	˙	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
\.I		İ		constr.	✕	constr.	
\.Z		Ž		constr.	✕	constr.	
\.\i		i		✕	✕	constr.	
\.i	(alias)	i	\. \i	✕	✕	constr.	
\.z		ž		constr.	✕	constr.	
\=	(accent)	ˉ	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
\AE		Æ	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
\DH		Ð			✕	✕	
\DJ		Đ			✕		
✕ defined in encoding ○ defined via default							

LICR Object		Glyph	Default from	OT1	T1	LY1	TS1
\H	(accent)	¨	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
\H O		Ö		constr.	✕	constr.	
\H U		Û		constr.	✕	constr.	
\H o		ö		constr.	✕	constr.	
\H u		ü		constr.	✕	constr.	
\L		Ł	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
\NG		Đ			✕		
\O		Ø	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
\OE		Œ	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
\P	(alias)	¶	<i>\textparagraph</i>	○	○	✕	✕
\S	(alias)	§	<i>\textsection</i>	○	✕	✕	✕
\SS		Œ	constr.	○	✕	○	
\TH		Þ			✕	✕	
\^	(accent)	^	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
\^A		Â		constr.	✕	✕	
\^E		Ê		constr.	✕	✕	
\^I		Î		constr.	✕	✕	
\^O		Ô		constr.	✕	✕	
\^U		Û		constr.	✕	✕	
\^a		â		constr.	✕	✕	
\^e		ê		constr.	✕	✕	
\^i		î		constr.	✕	✕	
\^i	(alias)	î	<i>\^i</i>	constr.	✕	✕	
\^o		ô		constr.	✕	✕	
\^u		û		constr.	✕	✕	
_	(alias)	—	<i>\textunderscore</i>	○	✕	✕	
\‘	(accent)	`	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
\‘A		À		constr.	✕	✕	
\‘E		È		constr.	✕	✕	
\‘I		Ì		constr.	✕	✕	
\‘O		Ò		constr.	✕	✕	
\‘U		Û		constr.	✕	✕	
\‘a		à		constr.	✕	✕	
\‘e		è		constr.	✕	✕	
\‘i		ì		constr.	✕	✕	
\‘i	(alias)	ì	<i>\‘i</i>	constr.	✕	✕	
\‘o		ò		constr.	✕	✕	
\‘u		ù		constr.	✕	✕	
\ae		æ	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
\b	(accent)	–	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
✕ defined in encoding ○ defined via default							

LICR Object		Glyph	Default from	OT1	T1	LY1	TS1
<code>\c</code>	(accent)	¸	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
<code>\c C</code>		Ç		constr.	✕	✕	
<code>\c S</code>		Š		constr.	✕	constr.	
<code>\c T</code>		Ť		constr.	✕	constr.	
<code>\c c</code>		ç		constr.	✕	✕	
<code>\c s</code>		š		constr.	✕	constr.	
<code>\c t</code>		ť		constr.	✕	constr.	
<code>\capitalacute</code>	(accent)	´	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\capitalcaron</code>	(accent)	ˇ	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\capitaldieresis</code>	(accent)	¨	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\capitalgrave</code>	(accent)	`	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\capitalmacron</code>	(accent)	¯	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\capitalogonek</code>	(accent)	˛	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\capitalring</code>	(accent)	˚	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\capitaltilde</code>	(accent)	˜	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\copyright</code>	(alias)	©	<code>\textcopyright</code>	○	○	✕	✕
<code>\d</code>	(accent)	˙	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
<code>\dag</code>	(alias)	†	<code>\textdagger</code>	○	○	✕	✕
<code>\ddag</code>	(alias)	‡	<code>\textdaggerdbl</code>	○	○	✕	✕
<code>\dh</code>		ð			✕	✕	
<code>\dj</code>		đ			✕		
<code>\dots</code>	(alias)	...	<code>\textellipsis</code>	○	○	✕	
<code>\guillemetleft</code>		«		babel	✕	✕	
<code>\guillemetright</code>		»		babel	✕	✕	
<code>\guilsinglleft</code>		‹		babel	✕	✕	
<code>\guilsinglright</code>		›		babel	✕	✕	
<code>\i</code>		ı	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
<code>\j</code>		Ј	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
<code>\k</code>	(accent)	ˆ			✕	✕	
<code>\k A</code>		Ā			✕	constr.	
<code>\k E</code>		Ē			✕	constr.	
<code>\k O</code>		Ō			✕	constr.	
<code>\k a</code>		ā			✕	constr.	
<code>\k e</code>		ē			✕	constr.	
<code>\k o</code>		ō			✕	constr.	
<code>\l</code>		ł	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
<code>\ng</code>		ŋ			✕		
<code>\o</code>		ø	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
<code>\oe</code>		œ	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
<code>\pounds</code>	(alias)	£	<code>\textsterling</code>	○	✕	✕	✕
✕ defined in encoding ○ defined via default							

LICR Object	Glyph	Default from	OT1	T1	LY1	TS1
\quotedblbase	”			×	×	
\quotesinglbase	,			×	×	
\r (accent)	°	OT1	×	×	×	
\r A	À		constr.	×	constr.	
\r U	Û		constr.	×	constr.	
\r a	à		constr.	×	constr.	
\r u	û		constr.	×	constr.	
\ss	ß	OT1	×	×	×	
\t (accent)	˘	OML	×	×	○	
\textacutedbl	“	TS1	○	○	○	×
\textascendercompwordmark	invisible	TS1	○	○	○	×
\textasciicute	´	TS1	○	○	○	×
\textasciibreve	˘	TS1	○	○	○	×
\textasciicaron	ˇ	TS1	○	○	○	×
\textasciicircum	ˆ	constr.	○	×	×	
\textasciidieresis	¨	TS1	○	○	○	×
\textasciigrave	`	TS1	○	○	○	×
\textasciimacron	—	TS1	○	○	○	×
\textasciitilde	~	constr.	○	×	×	
\textasteriskcentered	*	OMS/TS1	○	○	○	×
\textbackslash	\	OMS	○	×	×	
\textbaht	฿	TS1	○	○	○	×
\textbar	|	OMS	○	×	×	
\textbardbl	||	TS1	○	○	○	×
\textbigcircle	○	TS1	○	○	○	×
\textblank		TS1	○	○	○	×
\textborn	★	TS1	○	○	○	×
\textbraceleft	{	OMS	○	×	×	
\textbraceright	}	OMS	○	×	×	
\textbrokenbar	|	TS1	○	○	×	×
\textbullet	•	OMS/TS1	○	○	×	×
\textcapitalcompwordmark	invisible	TS1	○	○	○	×
\textcelsius	°C	constr./TS1	○	○	○	×
\textcent	¢	TS1	○	○	×	×
\textcentoldstyle	¢	TS1	○	○	○	×
\textcircled (accent)	○	OMS/TS1	○	○	○	×
\textcircledP	®	TS1	○	○	○	×
\textcolonmonetary	¢	TS1	○	○	○	×
\textcompwordmark	invisible	constr.	○	×	○	
\textcopyleft	©	TS1	○	○	○	×
× defined in encoding ○ defined via default						

LICR Object	Glyph	Default from	OT1	T1	LY1	TS1
<code>\textcopyright</code>	©	constr./TS1	○	○	✕	✕
<code>\textcurrency</code>	¤	TS1	○	○	✕	✕
<code>\textdagger</code>	†	OMS/TS1	○	○	✕	✕
<code>\textdaggerdbl</code>	‡	OMS/TS1	○	○	✕	✕
<code>\textdblhyphen</code>	=	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textdblhyphenchar</code>	=	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textdegree</code>	°	TS1	○	○	✕	✕
<code>\textdied</code>	†	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textdiscount</code>	ℳ	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textdiv</code>	÷	TS1	○	○	✕	✕
<code>\textdivorced</code>	◊	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textdollar</code>	\$	OT1/TS1	○	✕	✕	✕
<code>\textdollaroldstyle</code>	\$	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textdong</code>	₫	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textdownarrow</code>	↓	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\texteightoldstyle</code>	8	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textellipsis</code>	...	constr.	○	○	✕	
<code>\textemdash</code>	—	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
<code>\textendash</code>	–	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
<code>\textestimated</code>	€	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\texteuro</code>	€	TS1	○	○	✕	✕
<code>\textexclamdown</code>	¡	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
<code>\textfiveoldstyle</code>	5	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textflorin</code>	f	TS1	○	○	✕	✕
<code>\textfouroldstyle</code>	4	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textfractionsolidus</code>	/	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textgravedbl</code>	“	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textgreater</code>	>	OML	○	✕	✕	
<code>\textguarani</code>	₲	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textinterrobang</code>	‡	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textinterrobangdown</code>	‡	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textlangle</code>	<	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textlbrackdbl</code>	⌈	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textleaf</code>	♻	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textleftarrow</code>	←	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textless</code>	<	OML	○	✕	✕	
<code>\textlira</code>	₺	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textlnot</code>	¬	TS1	○	○	✕	✕
<code>\textlquill</code>	{	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textmarried</code>	⋈	TS1	○	○	○	✕
✕ defined in encoding ○ defined via default						

LICR Object	Glyph	Default from	OT1	T1	LY1	TS1
\textmho	ℳ	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textminus	—	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textmu	μ	TS1	○	○	✕	✕
\textmusicalnote	♪	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textnaira	₦	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textnineoldstyle	9	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textnumero	№	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textogonekcentered (accent)	˛			✕		
\textohm	Ω	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textonehalf	½	TS1	○	○	✕	✕
\textoneoldstyle	1	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textonequarter	¼	TS1	○	○	✕	✕
\textonesuperior	¹	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textopenbullet	◦	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textordfeminine	ª	constr./TS1	○	○	✕	✕
\textordmasculine	º	constr./TS1	○	○	✕	✕
\textparagraph	¶	OMS/TS1	○	○	✕	✕
\textperiodcentered	·	OMS/TS1	○	○	✕	✕
\textpertenthousand	‰	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textperthousand	‰	TS1	○	○	✕	✕
\textpeso	₱	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textpilcrow	¶	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textpm	±	TS1	○	○	✕	✕
\textquestiondown	¿	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
\textquotedbl	"			✕	✕	
\textquotedblleft	“	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
\textquotedblright	”	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
\textquoteleft	‘	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
\textquoteright	’	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
\textquotesingle	’	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textquotestraightbase	’	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textquotestraightdblbase	”	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textrangle	⟩	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textrbrackdbl	]]	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textrecipe	R	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textreferencemark	※	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textregistered	®	constr./TS1	○	○	✕	✕
\textrightarrow	→	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textrquill	}	TS1	○	○	○	✕
\textsection	§	OMS/TS1	○	✕	✕	✕
✕ defined in encoding ○ defined via default						

LICR Object	Glyph	Default from	OT1	T1	LY1	TS1
<code>\textservicemark</code>	SM	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textsevenoldstyle</code>	7	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textsixoldstyle</code>	6	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textsterling</code>	£	OT1/TS1	○	✕	✕	✕
<code>\textsurd</code>	√	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textthreeoldstyle</code>	3	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textthreequarters</code>	¾	TS1	○	○	✕	✕
<code>\textthreequartersemdash</code>	—	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textthreesuperior</code>	³	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\texttildelow</code>	~	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\texttimes</code>	×	TS1	○	○	✕	✕
<code>\texttrademark</code>	™	constr./TS1	○	○	✕	✕
<code>\texttwelveudash</code>	—	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\texttwooldstyle</code>	2	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\texttwosuperior</code>	²	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textunderscore</code>	—	constr.	○	✕	✕	
<code>\textuparrow</code>	↑	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textvisiblespace</code>	□	constr.	○	✕	○	
<code>\textwon</code>	₩	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\textyen</code>	¥	TS1	○	○	✕	✕
<code>\textzerooldstyle</code>	o	TS1	○	○	○	✕
<code>\th</code>	þ			✕	✕	
<code>\u</code> (accent)	˘	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
<code>\u A</code>	Ä		constr.	✕	constr.	
<code>\u G</code>	Ğ		constr.	✕	constr.	
<code>\u a</code>	ä		constr.	✕	constr.	
<code>\u g</code>	ğ		constr.	✕	constr.	
<code>\v</code> (accent)	˘	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
<code>\v C</code>	Č		constr.	✕	constr.	
<code>\v D</code>	Ď		constr.	✕	constr.	
<code>\v E</code>	Ě		constr.	✕	constr.	
<code>\v L</code>	Ľ		constr.	✕	constr.	
<code>\v N</code>	Ň		constr.	✕	constr.	
<code>\v R</code>	Ř		constr.	✕	constr.	
<code>\v S</code>	Š		constr.	✕	✕	
<code>\v T</code>	Ť		constr.	✕	constr.	
<code>\v Z</code>	Ž		constr.	✕	✕	
<code>\v c</code>	č		constr.	✕	constr.	
<code>\v d</code>	ď		constr.	✕	constr.	
<code>\v e</code>	ě		constr.	✕	constr.	
✕ defined in encoding ○ defined via default						

LICR Object		Glyph	Default from	OT1	T1	LY1	TS1
\v l		l		constr.	✕	constr.	
\v n		n̄		constr.	✕	constr.	
\v r		ř		constr.	✕	constr.	
\v s		š		constr.	✕	✕	
\v t		ť		constr.	✕	constr.	
\v z		ž		constr.	✕	✕	
\{	(alias)	{	\textbraceleft	○	✕	✕	
\}	(alias)	}	\textbraceright	○	✕	✕	
\~	(accent)	~	OT1	✕	✕	✕	
\~A		Ā		constr.	✕	✕	
\~N		Ñ		constr.	✕	✕	
\~O		Õ		constr.	✕	✕	
\~a		ā		constr.	✕	✕	
\~n		n̄		constr.	✕	✕	
\~o		ō		constr.	✕	✕	
✕ defined in encoding ○ defined via default							

The L^AT_EX Companion

Third Edition – Part II

Frank Mittelbach

L^AT_EX Project, Mainz, Germany

Ulrike Fischer

L^AT_EX Project, Bonn, Germany

With contributions by
Javier Bezos, Johannes Braams, and Joseph Wright

◆ Addison-Wesley

Boston • Columbus • New York • San Francisco • Amsterdam • Cape Town
Dubai • London • Madrid • Milan • Munich • Paris • Montreal • Toronto • Delhi • Mexico City
São Paulo • Sydney • Hong Kong • Seoul • Singapore • Taipei • Tokyo

Cover illustration by Lonny Garris/Shutterstock
Photo of Sebastian Rahtz courtesy of Leonor Barroca
All other photos taken by the authors

Book design by Frank Mittelbach
Typeset with L^AT_EX in Lucida Bright at 8.47pt/11.72pt

Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this book, and the publisher was aware of a trademark claim, the designations have been printed with initial capital letters or in all capitals.

The authors and publisher have taken care in the preparation of this book, but make no expressed or implied warranty of any kind and assume no responsibility for errors or omissions. No liability is assumed for incidental or consequential damages in connection with or arising out of the use of the information or programs contained herein.

For information about buying this title in bulk quantities, or for special sales opportunities, please contact our corporate sales department at corpsales@pearsoned.com or (800)382-3419.

For government sales inquiries, please contact governmentsales@pearsoned.com. For questions about sales outside the United States, please contact intlcs@pearson.com.

Visit us on the Web: informit.com/aw

Library of Congress Control Number: 2022921608

Copyright © 2023 by Pearson Education, Inc.

All rights reserved. This publication is protected by copyright, and permission must be obtained from the publisher prior to any prohibited reproduction, storage in a retrieval system, or transmission in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or likewise. For information regarding permissions, request forms and the appropriate contacts within the Pearson Education Global Rights & Permissions Department, please visit www.pearson.com/permissions/.

The foregoing notwithstanding, the examples contained in this book are made available under the L^AT_EX Project Public License (for information on the LPPL, see <https://www.latex-project.org/lppl>).

The examples can be downloaded from <https://ctan.org/pkg/tlcs-examples>.

Part I: Print ISBN-13: 978-0-13-465894-0

Part II: Print ISBN-13: 978-0-201-36300-5

Part I+II (bundled):

Print ISBN-13: 978-0-13-816648-9

Part I+II (combined) digital:

ePub ISBN-13: 978-0-13-816652-6

uPDF ISBN-13: 978-0-13-816657-1

Release date of the digital edition: September 1, 2023



This picture of Sebastian was taken 2007 in Cinque Terre.

I dedicate this edition to all my friends in the $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ world and in particular to the memory of my good friend Sebastian Rahtz (1955–2016), with whom I spent many happy hours discussing parenting, literature, \LaTeX , and other important aspects of life [146].

This page intentionally left blank

Foreword, Part II

I'm back! Readers who have already read the first part of this comprehensive third edition of *The L^AT_EX Companion* may recall that I wrote the Foreword to that book. Those who have not seen that piece might want to start there to find my perspective on this unique resource, which I was proud to publish in its first two editions. You will also see there my praise for its authors: An incredible amount of work goes into these Companions, sorting and compiling for every L^AT_EX user what is most useful to know, and what should be avoided, defining thereby the current state of the system. If you are serious about learning and using L^AT_EX to format your writing, you could not be better advised than to keep both these new volumes close at hand.

One passing reference I made in my first Foreword, given the reaction to it in some quarters, bears immediate attention: digital rectal examinations. If you missed that reference, you probably are wondering how it could possibly relate to L^AT_EX typesetting. Some of the people asked to review the Foreword were apparently equally puzzled. In context, I think that the example made a good point, but the reviewers, for whatever reason, seemed unable to get the procedure out of their mind. As a result, they missed my broader observation about the use of L^AT_EX in surprisingly diverse fields, and in unusual places. If only those reviewers could have seen the initial draft, in which I described in greater detail — well, never mind; that is all behind us now!

I actually have very little more to say in this second Foreword beyond what I said in the first, except to emphasize that, especially if you are new, or relatively new, to L^AT_EX, you probably should begin with the first of the two volumes that comprise this revision. Honestly, I think that the only reason Frank asked, or allowed, me to write it was to maintain a certain symmetry, each book thus having an apparent beginning and end, even if, logically, they're really one book in the guise of two. Given the growth in L^AT_EX use, and the ongoing development of contributions to the system

itself, I see future authors, likewise intent on being definitive, projecting a yet-unknown number of volumes.

With little otherwise to relate, you might at least be interested to know that I offered Frank cover ideas for the new books — too late, he informed me, and I think I heard a sigh of relief. One idea suggested a parody of Leda and the Swan. It pictured a bespectacled swan hunched over a computer trying to resolve some onetime typesetting issue, while an obviously bored, half-naked Leda lay nearby on a luxurious bed, hoping eventually to give birth to \LaTeX (not sure how to fit Leslie into that story). I know, given the swan's divinity, why the need for help with typesetting — or any interest in writing, for that matter? I guess I recalled the large graffiti I saw years ago on a Metro station wall in Paris: “God is studying French, and having trouble with the subjunctive.”

Anyway, I suspect Frank was concerned that potential users might think that \LaTeX is hard to learn and use — which it is not. Rather, it is just so rich with tools and techniques, and so many are available, you simply need help in knowing which are the most valuable — the very purpose of this revision. Just flip through the pages to see what I am talking about! Perhaps Frank was also concerned that people would imagine that the swan had become a new \LaTeX mascot. There have already been, what, lions, ducks, frogs — and do you remember the first Companion, known as the doggie book (proof that my cover ideas work)? Now we see there is a hummingbird.

So I proposed a second cover, a scene that might suggest the origins and nature of *The \LaTeX Companion* as an indispensable aid to a successful and more pleasurable typesetting experience. Picture, then, another snowy Alpine scene (as first illustrated in the aforementioned doggie book), this time with an old lion and lioness, seen from the back, relaxing in adjacent bathtubs. A hummingbird is seen perched on a rescue keg lying in the snow, under the banner, “ \LaTeX IS HERE”, or, like *Seinfeld* characters seeking serenity, “ \LaTeX NOW!”. Receding pawprints add a nostalgic touch. As with the swan cover, of course, given the timing, I had to ask Frank to consider this second idea for the next edition — and this time, I am sure I heard a scream.

I had better end there and let you get into the content that truly makes the third edition a necessary addition to every \LaTeX user's library. There is only so much that a mythical swan, revitalized lions, and, yes, digital rectal examinations can do for you — well, the swan and the lions, in any case.

Peter S. Gordon
Publishing Partner (Ret.)

Author note from Frank: I cannot believe I approved these Forewords! ☺

Preface, Part II

Divide each difficulty into as many parts
as is feasible and necessary to resolve it.

René Descartes (1595–1650)

Taking Descartes’s advice to heart, we decided to split this edition of *The L^AT_EX Companion* into two parts of roughly a thousand pages each. Thus, we are now at the midpoint in describing the fascinating features of today’s L^AT_EX and we start with a chapter on text and symbol fonts, which is completely new — ten years ago nearly none of these fonts could have been used with L^AT_EX at all. The same is true for Chapter 12 on math font setups, the discussions of `mathtools`, `biblatex`, `upmendex`, new developments in `babel`, the new features of the L^AT_EX format covered in Appendix A, and various other new packages discussed in the upcoming chapters.

Otherwise, given that this is really just the second part of “one book in the guise of two”, as Peter put it in his Foreword, there is nothing new to reveal if you have read the Preface to the first part.

Thus, instead of repeating anything from there, all we are going to do is to repeat the section on conventions used in this book, because that is probably helpful to have close at hand if you have the second part open on your desk.

Frank Mittelbach

November 2022

Working with this book

The printed book contains text from Part I, Section 1.3 at this point. We omit this in the eBook, because here both parts are combined and there is no value in having the same text twice.

This page intentionally left blank

CHAPTER 10

Text and Symbol Fonts

10.1 Overview	2
10.2 Samples of larger font families	11
10.3 Humanist (Oldstyle) serif fonts	36
10.4 Garalde (Oldstyle) serif fonts.	38
10.5 Transitional/Neoclassical serif fonts.	46
10.6 Didone (Modern) serif fonts	60
10.7 Slab serif (Egyptian) fonts.	64
10.8 Sans serif fonts.	67
10.9 Monospaced (typewriter) fonts	88
10.10 Historical and other fonts	97
10.11 Fonts supporting Latin and polytonic Greek.	106
10.12 Fonts supporting Latin and Cyrillic.	110
10.13 The \LaTeX world of symbols	113

When we wrote the first edition of the *\LaTeX Companion* in 1994, the section on available text fonts for \LaTeX was a few pages long and listed a handful of font families. Not because they were best in class, but because that was all that was available including those of a somewhat dubious quality. Basically when typesetting with \TeX in those days, one could use any font as long as it was called Computer Modern.

A decade later the situation finally started to change, and it was in theory possible to use any font available in Type 1 format [1] — but only after somewhat extensive work preparing the necessary support files needed by \TeX , in particular the font metric files (`.tfm`) and usually virtual font files (`.vf`) that reencoded the fonts to put the glyphs into the positions expected by the \TeX engine. Providing these was not magic, especially after the appearance of the `fontinst` program¹ by Alan Jeffrey, Rowland

¹This is actually a \TeX file that, when processed and given the right configuration data, produced the necessary helper files in human-readable format. In a further step those had to be converted by external programs to the binary format used by \TeX .

McDonnell, and Lars Hellström, but it took time and effort (even if necessary only once per font) and a good understanding of the underlying mechanisms. Thus, the number of available text fonts for use with \TeX compared to other programs remained severely restricted. The second edition of the book again covered all that was freely available for \TeX users, which amounted to fewer than two dozen font families. Of course, the CTAN archive already then contained some further support packages for a few commercial fonts. They were not included because the packages were useless unless you owned the particular family.

But with the third edition I faced a problem. With Unicode engines you can use essentially any freely or commercially available font by simply specifying it in the `fontspec` setup of your document. But also for the `pdf \TeX` engine, font support exploded due to two factors: first the number of freely available fonts on the Web in either Type 1 [1], TrueType [8], or OpenType [127] format grew enormously, and second a few individuals like Marc Penninga, the author of `autoinst`, and Bob Tennent, Michael Sharpe, and a few others¹ took the time to prepare configuration files for Marc's `autoinst` program and with the necessary further adjustments and documentation produced packages that made a huge number of those freely usable fonts available to the \TeX community at large.

My initial thought was to select only a few of the high-quality free fonts and largely ignore the rest — with just a mention that you find more possibilities in your \TeX installation and on CTAN. But while working through all the font packages on CTAN to make a selection, I realized how difficult it is to hunt for them and that most likely any family not described in an overview remains unnoticed by the majority of users. Furthermore, while in the early days most free fonts were of a somewhat dubious quality, that too has now changed quite impressively for the better.

So in the end I decided to continue the tradition of offering a fairly comprehensive overview² about today's freely available fonts for \TeX so that you can make an informed selection by just skimming this chapter and comparing the different possibilities and only then look further at the package documentation of the fonts you have chosen. You may also want to take a look at the online font catalogue maintained by Palle Jørgensen [77].

10.1 Overview

*General font
availability*

All fonts described in this chapter are freely available and with a few exceptions are included in the major \TeX distributions such as \TeX Live or `MiK \TeX` so that you can start using them directly. We made two exceptions and also included the commercially available Cambria fonts as well as the Lucida font families that we use in this book. The Cambria fonts, while under a proprietary license, ship as part of Windows and

¹All package authors are acknowledged next to their work and listed in the index. There are too many to enumerate here. However, Bob and Michael are the ones who produced the major part of the work, which I think deserves an explicit acknowledgment.

²For the first time restricted to only high-quality or otherwise (for some reason) interesting fonts. A heartfelt thanks to Adam Twardoch who helped me a lot with his knowledge and expertise to select the high-quality fonts from the huge number of freely available fonts today.

Office products and are therefore widely available without the need for buying an additional license. They offer excellent math support and for that alone are worth a closer look. The Lucida families are sold by the T_EX Users Group (TUG) at a special price for members of TUG and several other user groups.¹

In the open source world, “free” is a widely debated word, and some fonts are just not “free enough” to be included in free software distributions, because their license is somewhat restrictive, typically either forbidding modifications of the fonts (which is most likely not any issue for the readers of this book) or disallowing commercial usage. The latter refers to actions such as selling them or distributing them as part of a commercial system — none of the licenses of the fonts we cover prohibit the free use of the fonts even if the result, say, a book like this, is then sold. Thus, this should not pose a problem either, but of course, you should be aware that fonts you need to install “manually” have a special license, and you better check what it says if you intend to do anything with it other than simply typesetting your texts.

Omitting high-quality fonts because of license restrictions (even if very minor) is a sensible approach, as it means that the users of the distribution can rely on the fact that everything contained is covered by one of the major free licenses and that there are no restrictions on use and only well-known ones on modification; e.g., most L^AT_EX software uses the L^AT_EX Project Public License (LPPL), GNU Public License (GPL), or any other of the few major open source licenses.

But of course, it puts an additional burden on the user, as they have to manually install the fonts (besides checking the license requirements). Fortunately, there is an easy way to integrate such font packages into your installation. At the T_EX Users Group website a script by Reinhard Kotucha is provided. It is a simple matter of downloading the `install-getnonfreefonts` installer from <https://www.tug.org/fonts/getnonfreefonts/> and processing it on the command line (in a Windows, macOS, or Linux terminal window) using

```
texlua install-getnonfreefonts
```

As this is a Lua program and `texlua` is part of the standard distributions, this works on any operating system, provided your user has write access to the distribution directories. After this you have the program `getnonfreefonts` available on your system, and you can invoke it with lines such as

```
getnonfreefonts --sys --help      # see the help info or  
getnonfreefonts --sys --lsfonts  # list all available fonts or  
getnonfreefonts --sys luximono   # (re)install a fonts package or  
getnonfreefonts --sys --all      # (re)install all available fonts
```

The line first displays the program usage information and the available options; the second gives you an overview about the currently supported fonts and their

¹The set includes matching serif, sans serif, and typewriter families; a full set of fonts for use in math; and several specialized fonts; see Table 10.11 on page 22 for an overview. They can be used with all T_EX engines if both Type 1 and OpenType versions are ordered, which you can do at <https://tug.org/store/lucida/order.html>.

state on your installation; the third installs or reinstalls such a font (or more if you add additional font names); and the final one installs or updates all supported font packages (which are eleven in total at the moment). Instead of `--sys`, you can use `--user`, in which case the installation is done in the user's T_EX tree instead of the system-wide one. However, except in a few special cases, this is *the wrong thing to do*, so please read <https://tug.org/texlive/scripts-sys-user.html> first if you are considering using `--user`, because of its possibly undesirable side effects.

10.1.1 Notes on the font samples

All font families in this chapter are exhibited using the same example text to allow for easy comparison and at the same time to show many details and possible limitations of the fonts. The standard setup uses the following text:

Palatino 10pt/12.4pt
(qp1) *TeX Gyre Pagella* With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN**
FIELDS. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve*
vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

In the margin we show the common name of the font (*Palatino*), the font size and the leading used (*10/12.4pt*), the NFSS family name to refer to it in parentheses (qp1), and finally with gray background the OpenType or TrueType name to use with Unicode engines (*TeX Gyre Pagella*). Depending on the length of the font names, this may be split differently over up to four lines.

The text is not typeset justified but slightly ragged right (still allowing hyphenation as one can see in a few of the later samples; e.g., on page 34). This is done so that the word spaces are not (or only minimally) altered from their default width. Most examples are set in 10/12pt, which is the default in most document classes, but sometimes we use a larger leading and/or a smaller or larger font size to account for the look and feel of the family.

The example text attempts to show different aspects of the font while still being concise (otherwise this chapter would be even longer). It contains some **bold** text, some **BOLD AND NONBOLD SMALL CAPITALS**, a *slanted word*, and a *few words in italics*. Above, these words are all typeset in blue. In the real samples they would be in black, unless the corresponding shape or series either is not available or is faked.

For instance, most families do not have both an italic and an oblique/slanted shape. Sometimes it is missing, but quite often the oblique shape is really just an alias for italics (or vice versa), which is fairly easy to see if you look at the shape of the “a” in “*naïve*” and “*official*” and compare it to “can” in the first line. Regardless of whether the slanted or italic shape is missing or aliased, it is shown in blue.

The bold text is normally shown in blue only if the series is missing altogether; the exception is the Concrete family where it is faked (by aliasing it to the bold typeface of a different font family, which is a somewhat questionable approach).

When the SMALL CAPS TEXT is shown in blue, half of the time it is because there is simply no such shape in the family and in the other half because the small capitals are faked using a scaled-down version of the uppercase letters. As explained on

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>⟨official font family name⟩</i>		<i>⟨font name (or names)⟩</i>	<i>(Encodings: ⟨list of supported font encodings⟩)</i>
<i>⟨NFSS family⟩</i>	<i>⟨series value(s)⟩</i>	<i>⟨shape value(s)⟩</i>	Font sample <i>with several</i> DIFFERENT SHAPES, weights , and/or widths (<i>but not all possibilities</i>)
<i>⟨related official font family name⟩</i>		<i>⟨font name (or names)⟩</i>	<i>(Encodings: ⟨list of supported font encodings⟩)</i>
<i>⟨NFSS family⟩</i>	<i>⟨series value(s)⟩</i>	<i>⟨shape value(s)⟩</i>	Font sample <i>with several</i> DIFFERENT SHAPES, weights , and/or widths

Supported figure styles for ⟨font family⟩ are ⟨list of figure styles⟩.

Bold extended weights (bx) exist as an alias for bold medium (b) if not explicitly listed.

*The **font names** with gray background are for use with the fontspec package in Unicode engines.*

Table 10.1: Structure of the font family classification tables

page —I 654 this approach gives inferior results — sometimes still acceptable, but usually not really. In other words, such fonts do not allow for using `\textsc` or only in an emergency.

But not only are different shapes shown in the example, the text also contains a number of diacritics, several special characters, and also most of the common f-ligatures such as ffi, fl, and ffl so you can see how they are typeset.

Finally, you should pay special attention to the number 148 in the first line. Whenever supported by the family, these digits are typeset as oldstyle numerals, and many fonts support this style (Palatino/Pagella above, for example, does not). Thus, if they are typeset as lining numbers, then the font does not support alternative number styles. If they are shown as oldstyle numbers, then this is usually adjustable through options to the support package or by changing the suffix of the family name if you use NFSS commands directly; see the next section.

10.1.2 Notes on the font family tables

In addition to the sample text, we show for each font family a table that contains the necessary information to select a font from that family in a document using the NFSS conventions. These tables are always identically structured; a sample table is shown as Table 10.1.

We show the *⟨official font family name⟩* followed by the *⟨font name or names⟩* that you need to use when accessing the family in a Unicode engine using fontspec. In the remainder of the line we then list the supported encodings, e.g., OT1, T1, etc. The next lines show the NFSS classification, i.e., the NFSS *⟨family⟩* and supported *⟨series⟩* and *⟨shape⟩* values, followed by a short text sample exhibiting some of the series/shape combinations (but usually not all).

If the font family consists of several distinctive designs, e.g., a serif, a sans serif, or a monospaced design, then this structure is repeated for the related font families as often as necessary.

We do not list (bx)
in tables

Series or shape values that are given in parentheses are faked in one way or the other. For example, (it) means the family has no real italics shape, and the oblique shape is used as a substitute, or vice versa if you see (sl). What we do not show in any table is (bx). The extended bold series is nearly always implemented as an alias to the medium bold series, but showing that in all tables takes up a lot of unnecessary space. In other words, in all tables you should mentally add (bx) next to every b series, unless the series list contains bx already, which means there is a real difference between bold medium (b) and bold extended (bx).

At the bottom of the table there may be some table notes. If the family supports several figure styles (e.g., oldstyle numbers or table numbers), we list them here. Any other pertinent information for this family is given there as well.

NFSS font family
naming conventions

If the *NFSS family* name consists of a few apparently random letters (like qpl for Pagella), it is a clear indication that the \LaTeX support files for this family got created a long time ago when packing a lot of information into a few bytes was essential and file names needed to conform to the 8+3 rule for DOS and Windows systems; see [16] for the description of that scheme.

However, these days the majority of *NFSS family* names are quite uniformly constructed from the *official font family name*¹ (typically in mixed case with spaces dropped), e.g., FiraSans or NotoSansMono followed by a suffix starting with a hyphen that indicates the figure style. This is nice because it is easy to remember, provides direct feedback, and allows one to quickly change a font from lining figures to oldstyle tabular figures, etc., when using NFSS commands directly.

- LF This font uses lining figures, i.e., ones that all have the same height similar to capitals in the font. The glyph width may vary.
- TLF This font has lining figures of identical width. This makes them suitable for tabulating numbers (which explains the name “table figures”).
- OsF This font has oldstyle figures of different heights and depths and possibly different widths.
- TOsF This font has oldstyle figures with identical widths suitable for tables.

There are two further suffixes for fonts not intended for direct typesetting but as support for implementing the commands `\textin` and `\textsu` discussed below:

- Sup This font contains superior digits, punctuations, and letters, often only an incomplete set, e.g., *abdeilmnorst* to support 1st, 2nd, etc. With the help of this special figure style, the command `\textsu` is implemented.
- Inf This font contains inferior glyphs, usually only digits and some punctuations. With the help of this special figure style, the command `\textin` is implemented.

¹Unfortunately, that is not always the case. Some of the freely available OpenType fonts have license restrictions that already require a name change when only the font format is changed to Type 1 (as needed by pdf \TeX). You therefore sometimes find crippled names in the tables of this chapter; e.g., instead of Merriweather, we get *Merriwthr-OsF* as the NFSS family name — a pity, but it cannot be helped.

The *NFSS family* name in the table normally shows the `-LF` or `-TLF` suffix. If the family supports other figure styles, then they are mentioned in a table note.

Unicode engines

Most font tables list TU as one of the supported encodings. This means that the font family can be (easily) used with Unicode engines, such as X_YTeX or LuaTeX. If this encoding is missing, one should normally use that family only with pdfTeX.

Many tables also list the LY1 encoding, which is an alternative to L^AT_EX's standard T1 encoding. It omits a few uncommon glyphs available with T1, which has the advantage that it therefore contains a few free slots. In some families these slots are then filled with additional ligatures available in the OpenType version of the font that would otherwise be inaccessible if the font is used with pdfTeX.

*Extra ligatures when
using LY1 encoding*

10.1.3 Font support packages

As mentioned earlier, the bulk of the font support packages has been provided by a few individuals, and because of this, the majority of the packages are very similar in nature and provide identically named options for the same tasks in most circumstances. Thus, instead of adding a list of every option or command to the description of each of the more than 120 font packages, we give an overview here so that you know what to expect. For further details you then have to consult the package documentation, but in most cases this overview will hopefully suffice.

Please also note that many of the packages, in particular those by Bob Tennent, provide compatibility between the different processing engines; i.e., they successfully hide the differences between NFSS as used by pdfTeX and fontspec needed in the Unicode engines X_YTeX or LuaTeX.

Package naming conventions

Not so consistent are, unfortunately, the package names. While they usually have a clear relationship to the font family they support, you will find all sort of variants, from all lowercase with or without hyphens to mixed-case package names. Often this is due to the age of a package and to changes in how file names for support files got generated by fontinst or autoinst, and it is nothing that can easily be altered after the fact.

Figure style options

If font families support different figure style variants, then these are selectable in nearly all packages through the following set of options (each of which has a short name and a long name):

<code>lining</code> (<code>lf</code> or <code>nf</code>)	or	<code>oldstyle</code> (<code>osf</code>)	Select lining or oldstyle figures.
<code>proportional</code> (<code>pf</code>)	or	<code>tabular</code> (<code>tf</code>)	Select proportional or table figures.

They can (and may have to) be combined, e.g., `oldstyle,tabular` would internally request the font family with the `-TOSF` suffix in its name.

*Support for different
figure styles within
the document*

Packages for fonts that support more than one such figure style usually also implement commands to access different styles of numerals within the document. The commands are `\textfigures` (oldstyle), `\liningfigures`, `\tabularfigures` (identical width), and `\proportionalfigures`. They all expect one argument in which you can place the number to typeset. For example, if you have selected a family with the `-OsF` suffix (oldstyle numerals), then `\liningfigures` would switch temporarily to the font with the `-LF` suffix (if that exists as well).

Font scaling, weight, and width selection

Many packages also allow you to scale the fonts up or down by providing a scaling factor so that you can ensure that they become visually compatible with other fonts used. In most cases the option `scaled` or `scale` can be used, but sometimes only `scale` is provided.

The more modern packages often provide options to select the weight to be used as the default. Which option names are available then depends on what weights are offered by the family, but the names as such are usually a subset of the following list: `thin`, `ultralight`, `extralight`, `light`, `regular`, `medium`, `semibold`, `bold`, `ultrabold`, `heavy`, `black`, or `extrabold`. These option names reflect what has been used by the font designer as the weight name, so if the extra-bold weight is called `heavy`, then that is used as an option name. Sometimes packages also support short forms like `sb` for `semibold`, etc. For details you have to consult the individual package documentation.

Some families offer condensed versions, and in that case the support packages normally support the option `condensed` to select that variant as the default.

Changes to `\rmdefault`, `\sfdefault`, and friends

Packages supporting a single font family normally ensure that the family is automatically used. This is done by changing `\rmdefault` when it is a serif font, `\sfdefault` when it is a sans serif font, and `\ttdefault` if it is a monospaced design.

This means that a serif font automatically becomes the document default font, as that is determined by `\familydefault`, which, if unchanged, simply calls `\rmdefault`. However, some serif fonts are normally not intended to be used for a whole document. For example, Cinzel is suitable only for displays, because it contains only uppercase letters. Its support package therefore provides only commands such as `\textcinzel` for selecting the font but leaves `\rmdefault` untouched unless you give it the option `default`. For some reason this option is also needed with the `gfsbodoni` package even though the font is a perfectly reasonable document font and could have been set up automatically.

Since you may want to set up a sans serif font as the default font for your document, packages that load such families usually support the option `sfdefault`. If given, this option changes `\familydefault` to point to the sans serif family. A few packages call this option `default` instead.

So while there is some overall consistency, there are also a few packages that use the option names differently. Exceptions are explicitly listed with the packages.

Multifamily support

If a package sets up several font families in parallel, e.g., a sans serif and a monospaced family, then this can be very convenient, but it is not always appropriate. To support a selective setup, such packages usually offer the options `rm`, `sf`, or `tt` as appropriate so that one can request that only the roman (serif) and/or the sans serif and/or the typewriter family is set up instead.

Such packages may also prefix other option names with `rm`, `sf`, or `tt` to denote that they should apply only to that particular family setup. For example, `sfsf` would state that the sans serif family should get oldstyle numbers, but this convention is not implemented very often.

Some packages have their own naming scheme for such options, so if the above names do not work with one of the packages discussed in Section 10.2, consult their documentation to see what they provide instead.

Commands defined by font packages

Some of the older font support packages provide only fairly limited features, e.g., changing `\rmdefault` or `\sfdefault` and maybe offering a `scaled` option. However, with more recently developed packages you usually also get a number of document commands defined. We give a short overview of what might be available; the details vary from package to package, and you have to read the relevant package documentation for this.

Many packages add commands to access the font family that they support, in addition to, or as an alternative to, making it available via `\textrm` or `\textsf`, etc. In most cases the command names use the following convention: `\text{<pkg-name>}` with one argument and `\<pkg-name>` for the declaration form that switches to the font. For example, the `cinzel` package offers `\textcinzel` and `\cinzel`.

Support for additional \text.. commands

Roughly fifty packages support superior figures and about twenty also support inferior figure styles. This is shown in the font tables by listing `-Sup` or `-Inf` as supported figure styles. If so, the commands to access these glyphs are normally `\textsu` and `\textin` or as declarations `\sufigures` and `\infigures`. If available, these command usually produce much better results than L^AT_EX's generic `\textsuperscript` and `\textsubscript` commands, as those commands simply take the current font, use it in a smaller size, and raise or lower the result. For comparison here is text in *Alegreya* (see page 11) showing both methods:

Support for superior and inferior glyphs

10-1-1

	<code>\usepackage{Alegreya}</code>	
Catch ₂₂ in Room ¹³	<code>Catch\textin{22}</code>	<code>in Room\textsu{13}</code> <code>\par</code>
Catch ₂₂ in Room ¹³	<code>Catch\textsubscript{22}</code>	<code>in Room13</code>

The problem with both commands or the declarations is that they normally unconditionally switch to the package font, so if you load two packages that both define them, the last one loaded wins.

There are sometimes a number of other commands or options available with individual packages, but there is little consistency across the whole set. So once you

have selected a particular set of font families for your document, it might be worth reading the documentation to see if there is anything else not covered here.

10.1.4 Direct use of the fonts (without a package)

Using a font support package is often convenient, but it is seldom really necessary, and in some cases it is actually counterproductive. For example, most font packages install the family as a default of some sort, e.g., as the document sans serif family (`\sfdefault`). But if you want to use that font for only a special effect, then you have to undo that kind of setup or make sure to load all support packages in the right order so that part of their configuration gets undone by the next package (if possible).

Fortunately, the font classification tables are enough to directly use any font exhibited in this chapter. All you have to do is to place the relevant data from the tables into the appropriate NFSS commands, e.g., `\fontfamily`, `\fontseries`, `\fontshape`, or `\usefont`, or use them for changing the document defaults, e.g., `\rmdefault`, `\sfdefault`, and so on.

In the next example we set up Fira Sans with lining figures (`-LF`) as the sans serif document font and then use Alegreya with oldstyle figures (`-OsF`) in ultra-bold at 42 points (without any leading) for a splashing headline (using `\usefont`). We then change the size to `\tiny` and the font to `\sffamily`. That means the text would still be in ultra-bold (which is available in Fira-Sans; see Table 10.5 on page 14), but we want a strong contrast, so we go for extra-light via `\fontseries{el}`. We can omit the `\selectfont` as that is implicitly done by `\sffamily`.

Alegreya- Ultra 42

A tiny light Fira Sans 42

```
\renewcommand\sfddefault{FiraSans-LF}
\centering
\fontsize{42pt}{42pt}%           Select a size
\usefont{T1}{Alegreya-0sF}{ub}{n}% Select a font
Alegreya-Ultra~42                %           Go

\tiny\sfontseries{el}\sffamily    %           Change
A tiny light Fira Sans 42
```

10-1-2

Unicode engines

When typesetting using one of the Unicode engines, the procedure is slightly different, because with `fontspec` only the medium and bold series are set up automatically. Therefore, something like ultra-bold or extra-light is not available out of the box and thus cannot be requested in the way we did in the previous example without first doing some setup work using the `FontFace` key or the `\newfontface` command of `fontspec`. For example:

```
\setsansfont{Fira Sans}[FontFace={el}{n}{FiraSans-ExtraLight.otf}]
\newfontface{AlegreyaHeading}{Alegreya-Black.otf}
```

How to find the correct font file names — starting with the data from the font classification tables in this chapter — is described at length in Section 9.6, starting on page 705.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Alegreya</i>	Alegreya (Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LGR, LY1, and TU)		
Alegreya-LF	m, sb, b, eb, ub	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Alegreya <i>italic</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS
<i>Alegreya Sans</i>	Alegreya Sans (Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LGR, LY1, and TU)		
AlegreyaSans-LF	el, l, m, sb, b, eb, ub	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Alegreya Sans in ultra-bold and thin

Supported figure styles for *Alegreya* and *Alegreya Sans* are -LF, -OsF, -TLF, -T0sF, -Sup, and -Inf.

Table 10.2: Classification of the Alegreya font families

10.2 Samples of larger font families

We start by discussing the freely available bigger families in alphabetical order, i.e., those that offer matching serif, sans serif, and monospaced designs (or at least two of them). We already covered L^AT_EX’s standard families Computer Modern and Latin Modern in Section 9.5.1 on page 1684 in the previous chapter, so they are not repeated here. Samples for all of them (including CM and LM fonts) are later repeated in the sections devoted to serif, sans serif, and typewriter fonts, to allow for easy comparison to other fonts that have similar characteristics.

10.2.1 Alegreya

The Humanist typeface Alegreya, designed by Juan Pablo del Peral, is intended for body text but also works well in display sizes. One of its characteristic features is the widening of its stems towards the top. It is offered in five weights, upright, italics, and Small Caps, and has a matching sans serif Alegreya Sans.

L^AT_EX support for all engines is provided by the *Alegreya* and *AlegreyaSans* packages by Bob Tennent with the typical options such as `scaled`, `oldstyle`, etc.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**.
 — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
 dæmonic *phœnix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Alegreya 10pt/12pt
 (Alegreya-OsF) **Alegreya**

Here is a sample of Alegreya Sans equally well equipped with weights and shapes. Just like its serified counterpart it offers all standard font faces in even more weights, including small capitals in each of them. It also has true italics, though there is no oblique/slanted font face — for this italics are substituted as elsewhere:

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. —
 ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic
phœnix’s official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

Alegreya Sans 10pt/12pt
 (AlegreyaSans-OsF)
Alegreya Sans

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>CM Bright</i>	— no OpenType —	(Encodings: OT1, T1, TS1)	
cmbr	m, sb (b), bx	n, (it), sl n	CM Bright medium, <i>oblique</i> , and semi-bold oblique CM Bright bold extended (upright only and limited size range)
<i>CM Bright Typewriter Light</i>	— no OpenType —	(Encodings: OT1, T1, TS1)	
cmtl	m	n, sl	CM Bright Typewriter Light and <i>oblique</i>

Table 10.3: Classification of the Computer Modern Bright font families

10.2.2 CM Bright — A design based on Computer Modern Sans

The Computer Modern Bright (CM Bright) fonts by Walter Schmidt (1960–2021) are based on the METAFONT sources of Computer Modern Sans. This family of sans serif fonts is designed to serve as a legible body font. It comes in three weights with matching typewriter and math fonts, including the AMS symbols. L^AT_EX support for the pdfL^AT_EX engines is provided through the package `cmbright`. A sample page with mathematics is shown in Figure 12.42 on page 290.

Unicode engines

The fonts exist only as METAFONT sources and in Type 1 format (in T1 or OT1 encoding) and are therefore not really suitable for Unicode engines.

In the example below we show semi-bold (sb) instead of using the default bold extended series, as this is a good combination when typesetting in CM Bright.

CM Bright 10pt/12pt (cmbr)
— no OpenType —

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found *Floating In Fields*.
— ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the
dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

CM Bright Typewriter Light 10pt/12pt (cmtl)
— no OpenType —

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found
Floating In Fields. - ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's
Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.2.3 DejaVu — A fork of Bitstream Vera

Bitstream Vera is a freely available set of typefaces in TrueType format designed by Jim Lyles from Bitstream. It consists of slab serif, sans serif, and monospace fonts in two weights. The monospaced font is suitable for technical work with a clear distinction of often similar characters. The sans serif font is the default font used by Python's Matplotlib library for producing plots.

The Vera families were released with a license that permits changes, and as a result several projects used Vera as a basis. The DejaVu project was initiated by

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>DejaVu Serif</i>	DejaVu Serif	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, X2, LGR, and TU)	
DejaVuSerif-TLF	m, b	n, it, (sl)	DejaVu Serif regular, <i>italics</i> , and bold
	DejaVu Serif Condensed	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, X2, LGR, and TU)	
DejaVuSerifCondensed-TLF	m, b	n, it, (sl)	DejaVu Serif condensed, <i>italics</i> , and bold
<i>DejaVu Sans</i>	DejaVu Sans	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, X2, LGR, and TU)	
DejaVuSans-TLF	m, b	n, (it), sl	DejaVu Sans regular, <i>oblique</i> , and bold
	DejaVu Sans Condensed	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, X2, LGR, and TU)	
DejaVuSansCondensed-TLF	m, b	n, (it), sl	DejaVu Sans condensed, <i>oblique</i> , and bold
<i>DejaVu Mono</i>	DejaVu Sans Mono	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, X2, LGR, and TU)	
DejaVuSansMono-TLF	m, b	n, (it), sl	DejaVu Mono regular, <i>oblique</i> , and bold

Table 10.4: Classification of the DejaVu (Vera) font families

Štěpán Roh with the aim to provide a wider range of characters while maintaining the original look and feel through the process of collaborative development.

For \LaTeX , there has been support for the original Vera fonts for a long time under the name Bera fonts, but this covered only the Latin character encoding T1. More recently Pavel Farář provided pdf \TeX support for the DejaVu families (which offers additional shapes and also covers Greek and Cyrillic) through the packages `DejaVuSerif`, `DejaVuSans`, `DejaVuSansCondensed`, and `DejaVuSansMono`. All packages support the option `scaled`, which is helpful if the fonts are combined with other families. There also exists the package `dejavu` that simply calls all three packages in turn.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines you can instead use the package `dejavu-otf` by Herbert Voß, which provides the necessary `fontspec` support and also sets up the matching math fonts developed in Poland by \TeX Gyre. For available options refer to the package documentation. An example page with mathematics is shown in Figure 12.41 on page 289.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

DejaVu Serif 9pt/12.5pt
(`DejaVuSerif-TLF`)
`DejaVu Serif`

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

DejaVu Sans 9pt/12.5pt
(`DejaVuSans-TLF`)
`DejaVu Sans`

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Fira Sans</i>	Fira Sans (Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LGR, LY1, and TU)		
FiraSans-LF	ul, el, l, sl, m, sb, b, eb, ub	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Fira Sans <i>italic</i> , SMALL CAPS, light, bold , semi-bold , and ultra-bold italic
<i>Fira Mono</i>	Fira Mono (Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LGR, LY1, and TU)		
FiraMono-TLF	m, sb, b	n, (it), sl	Fira Mono, <i>oblique</i> , semi-bold , and bold

Supported figure styles for Fira Sans are -LF, -OsF, -TLF, -TOfF, and -Sup and for Fira Mono -TLF, -TOfF, and -Sup.

Table 10.5: Classification of the Fira font families

DejaVu Sans Mono
9pt/12.5pt
(DejaVuSansMono-TLF)
DejaVu Sans Mono

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Both the DejaVu Serif and Sans but not Mono also exist in condensed versions. These can be loaded with the packages DejaVuSerifCondensed and DejaVuSansCondensed.

DejaVu Serif Condensed
9pt/12.5pt
(DejaVuSerifCondensed-TLF)
DejaVu Serif Condensed

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

DejaVu Sans Condensed
9pt/12.5pt
(DejaVuSansCondensed-TLF)
DejaVu Sans Condensed

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.2.4 Fira fonts

The Fira fonts have been designed by Erik Spiekermann and Ralph du Carrois for the Firefox OS. The Humanist sans serif typeface Fira Sans is available in seventeen weights of which a suitable subset has been set up for use with L^AT_EX. The accompanying monospaced font Fira Mono is available in three weights, offers oblique (and faked italics), but does not offer Small Caps shapes.

L^AT_EX support for all engines is provided by the packages FiraSans and FiraMono by Bob Tennent with the typical options such as scaled, oldstyle, etc.

Fira Sans 10pt/12pt
(FiraSans-OsF) **Fira Sans**

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Gandhi Serif</i>	Gandhi Serif	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
GandhiSerif-LF	m, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Gandhi Serif <i>italic</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS
<i>Gandhi Sans</i>	Gandhi Sans	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
GandhiSans-LF	m, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Gandhi Sans <i>italic</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS

Supported figure styles for Gandhi Serif and Gandhi Sans are -LF, -OsF, -TLF, and -TosF.

Table 10.6: Classification of the Gandhi font families

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Fira Mono 10pt/12pt
(FiraMono-TosF)
Fira Mono

Unicode engines

Xiangdong Zeng developed matching math fonts; see Figure 12.43 on page 291 for an example page.

10.2.5 Gandhi fonts

The Gandhi families are designed by Cristobal Henestrosa and Raul Plancarte in collaboration with David Kimura and Gabriela Varela for Librerias Gandhi, a bookstore chain in Mexico that makes them freely available.

LaTeX support for all engines is provided through the package `gandhi` by Bob Tennent offering the usual options such as `scaled`, `sfdefault`, `oldstyle`, etc. The fonts are not part of the standard distribution but can be installed with `getnonfreefonts`.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Gandhi Serif 10pt/12pt
(GandhiSerif-OsF)
Gandhi Serif

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Gandhi Sans 10pt/12pt
(GandhiSans-OsF)
Gandhi Sans

10.2.6 Go fonts

Designed by Kris Holmes and Charles Bigelow for the Go project, the Go font families consist of a humanistic sans serif font in three weights and a matching monospaced, slap serif font available in two weights.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Go Sans</i>	Go Sans	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
Go-TLF	m	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Go Sans regular, <i>italic</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i>
	sb, b	n, it, (sl)	Go Sans semi-bold <i>and bold italic</i>
<i>Go Mono</i>	Go Mono	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
GoMono-TLF	m, b	n, it, (sl)	Go Mono regular <i>and bold italic</i>

The supported figure style of the Go Sans and Go Mono fonts is -TLF.

Table 10.7: Classification of the Go font families

Both families have very distinctive forms for zero, capital O, lowercase l, digit one, and capital I, making them very suitable for displaying computer code without the danger of misinterpretations. \LaTeX support for all engines is provided by the packages GoSans and GoMono by Bob Tennent.

<i>Go Sans 10pt/12pt</i> (Go-TLF) Go Sans	With a price of £148, almost anything can be found FLOATING IN Fields . — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phœnix's official rôle</i> in fluffy soufflés?
<i>Go Mono 9pt/11.5pt</i> (GoMono-TLF) Go Mono	With a price of £148, almost anything can be found Floating In Fields . — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phœnix's official rôle</i> in fluffy soufflés?

10.2.7 Inria fonts

The Inria families are free fonts designed by the Black foundry for the Inria research institute in France. Offered are a serif and sans serif design in three weights with matching italics. For `\slshape` the italics are substituted; Small Caps are not available. \LaTeX support for the pdf \TeX engine is provided by the packages InriaSerif and InriaSans by Nicolas Markey.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines use the fontspec package to set up the fonts.

<i>Inria Serif 10pt/12pt</i> (InriaSerif-OsF) Inria Serif	With a price of £148, almost anything can be found Floating In Fields . — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phœnix's official rôle</i> in fluffy soufflés?
<i>Inria Sans 10pt/12pt</i> (InriaSans-OsF) Inria Sans	With a price of £148, almost anything can be found Floating In Fields . — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phœnix's official rôle</i> in fluffy soufflés?

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Inria Serif</i>	Inria Serif	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
InriaSerif-LF	l, m, b	n, it, (sl)	Inria Serif regular and bold italic
	l, m, b	tl, tlit (tlsl)	Also some nonstandard Heavy Shapes
<i>Inria Sans</i>	Inria Sans	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
InriaSans-LF	l, m, b	n, it, (sl)	Inria Sans regular and bold italic
	l, m, b	tl, tlit (tlsl)	Also some nonstandard Heavy Shapes

Supported figure styles of the Inria Serif and Inria Sans fonts are -LF, -OsF, -TLF, -TosF, and -Sup. Inria Code is offered with -TLF and -TosF.

Table 10.8: Classification of the Inria font families

10.2.8 Kp (Johannes Kepler) fonts

The Kp family of typefaces has been designed by Christophe Caignaert in the first two decades of the 21st century. It was inspired by Hermann Zapf’s (1918–2015) Palatino. Recently Daniel Flipo produced OpenType versions of the fonts, so now they can be used with all engines.

The fonts support both oldstyle and lining numbers. To get oldstyle numerals with pdf_TEX, you need to append osn to the base family name shown in Table 10.9 on the next page; e.g., use jkpxosn. Alternatively, it is possible to select oldstyle numerals as well as two further glyph variations: a swash uppercase Q and rare (historical) ligatures. This is done by appending os instead, and it gives you output such as

Queer, faſt, ſtrange, and ſatisfying aſtions!

It is also possible to select a “very oldstyle” with vos, which is like os but additionally uses a long “f” instead of the normal “s” as well as a special “ft” ligature by default. When you typeset with pdf_TEX, you then get the “short s” through the ligature s=:

Queer, faſt, ftſrange, and faſtifying aſtions!
(written as ...satis=ſfying actions=! this time)

A further differentiator is the support for either petite capitals (the default) or somewhat larger small capitals by appending k to the family name:

PETITE CAPITALS compared to LARGER SMALL CAPITALS

Finally, it is also possible to prevent the use of the usual f-ligatures by appending f, which then gives you

fi ffi ff ffl instead of the usual fi ffi ff ffl.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Kp Roman</i>	KpRoman	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, and TU)	
jkpx	l, m, sb, sbx, b, bx	n, it, sl, sc, scsl	Light, regular, <i>slanted</i> , <i>italic</i> , semi bold , bold , bold extended & SMALL CAPS with lining numerals 123... (for oldstyle numerals see note)
jkpl	m, b, bx	n, it, sl, sc, scsl	Light, <i>slanted</i> , <i>italic</i> , bold , bold extended & SMALL CAPS with lining numerals 123... (see note)
<i>Kp Sans</i>	KpSans	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, and TU)	
jkpss	m, b, bx	n, (it), sl, sc, scsl	Regular, <i>slanted</i> , bold , bold extended & SMALL CAPS with lining numerals 123... (see note)
<i>Kp Typewriter</i>	KpMono	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, and TU)	
jkptt	m, b	n, (it), sl	Regular, <i>slanted</i> & bold

The NFSS family names shown above are base names. If used with pdfTeX, the fonts use different family names to distinguish oldstyle numerals from lining numerals and the use or absence of special ligatures. See the explanation in the text on how to select the appropriate family names.

Table 10.9: Classification of the Kp font families

The different suffixes can be combined in the following way:

`<base family name><k or missing><f or missing><osn, os, vos or missing>`

For example, jkpxkos gives you larger small capitals as well as all ligatures and oldstyle numbers. There are a few restrictions, though: using f together with os or vos makes little sense, so that is not supported. The typewriter family never has f-ligatures and does not offer small caps, so neither f nor k is available with jkptt. Further explicit examples are shown in the text samples.

Unicode engines

Note that with Unicode engines you use the feature sets of fontspec instead of playing around with different NFSS family names.

Part of this meta family is a full set of matching math fonts that include all math symbols and alphabets from L^AT_EX as well as those from the AMS fonts. Examples with mathematical content are shown in Figures 12.6 to 12.8 on pages 266–267 and for Kepler Sans in Figure 12.47 on page 293.

To use the Kp fonts for both text and math you can use the support package kpfonts (by Christophe Caignaert), when typesetting with pdfTeX, or the package kpfonts-otf (by Daniel Flipo), when using a Unicode engine.

Both packages offer a large number of options that let you select various font features, e.g., light, oldstylenums, oldstyle, largesmallcaps, and many more. You can also use it to only set up text fonts or some of the text fonts with nomath,

onlyrm, nott, and a few more. How to make use of the Kp math fonts, and the support options for them, is covered in Chapter 12.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Kp Roman in oldstyle
10pt/12pt
(jkpxos) **KpRoman**

The light face saves about 10% of toner. It prints fine but may be less suited if viewed mainly on screens. Metrically it is identical to the normal weight font (if you keep all other font features identical), so you should not experience different line or page breaks if you change your mind at some point. The only restriction is that unlike the jkpx family it offers only two weights and not four.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Kp Roman light 10pt/12pt
(jkpl) **KpRoman**

The Sans family is shown below with the f-ligatures turned off. As with most sans typefaces, italics are really just oblique shapes with otherwise identical design.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

*Kp Sans without f-ligatures
but larger small capitals*
10pt/12pt
(jkpsskf) **KpSans**

One of the interesting aspects of the Kp typewriter font is that you can have it with oldstyle numerals through the osn. Because typewriter fonts have no ligatures, using the os suffix gives you only the swash Q in addition (as a double-wide character), which is fairly pointless, and getting “long s” in a typewriter font is also questionable.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found *Floating In Fields*. -- ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

*Kp Typewriter with oldstyle
numerals 10pt/12pt*
(jkpttosn) **KpMono**

10.2.9 Libertinus — A fork of Linux Libertine and Biolinum

Linux Libertine, designed by Philipp H. Poll, is a transitional serif typeface inspired by 19th century book type and is intended as a replacement for the Times font family. It is available in three weights, each with italics and small capitals. Philipp also designed a complementary humanist sans serif face named Linux Biolinum and a matching monospaced font Linux Libertine Mono.

Work on the fonts ceased in 2003, and afterwards a number of forks appeared that continued the development under new names. Interesting from a L^AT_EX perspective is Libertinus by Khaled Hosny, who also added supporting math fonts. Package support

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Libertinus Serif</i>	Libertinus Serif	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, LGR, LY1, and TU)	
LibertinusSerif-LF	m, sb, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Regular, <i>italic</i> , semi-bold , bold , and SMALL CAPS <i>ITALIC</i>
<i>Libertinus Serif Display</i>	Libertinus Serif Display	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, LGR, LY1, and TU)	
LibertinusSerifDisplay-LF	m	n	Only one weight and shape
<i>Libertinus Sans</i>	Libertinus Sans	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, LGR, LY1, and TU)	
LibertinusSans-LF	m, sb, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Regular, <i>italic</i> , semi-bold , bold , and SMALL CAPS <i>ITALIC</i>
<i>Libertinus Mono</i>	Libertinus Mono	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
LibertinusMono-TLF	m, b	n, (it), sl	Regular, <i>oblique</i> , bold

Supported figure styles for Libertinus Serif, Serif Display, and Sans are -LF, -OsF, -TLF, -T0sF, and -Sup.
Libertinus Mono is offered with -LTF and -Sup.

Table 10.10: Classification of the Libertinus font families

for this fork¹ is provided through the `libertinus` package by Bob Tennent and Herbert Voß. The package offers options to set up all families or individual ones, scale some of them, select oldstyle figures, etc.

Unicode engines

The Libertinus math fonts are currently supported only by Unicode engines; see Figure 12.23 on page 277 for a sample page. There is, however, also support through Michael Sharpe’s `newtxmath` package, which offers a Libertine version in math, as shown in Figure 12.22 on page 277.

Libertinus Serif 10pt/12pt
(LibertinusSerif-OsF)
Libertinus Serif

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Libertinus Sans 10pt/12pt
(LibertinusSans-OsF)
Libertinus Sans

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Because the monospaced font often appears to be rather large, you may want to use it scaled down.

¹The original fonts are also supported under L^AT_EX through the packages `libertine` and `biolinum`, but for new projects using `libertinus` is the better choice.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Libertinus Mono 9pt/12pt
(*LibertinusMono-TLF*)
Libertinus Mono

There also exists a special version for use on title pages, etc.

Libertinus Display 123

Libertinus Serif Display
30pt/36pt
(*LibertinusSerifDisplay-0sF*)
Libertinus Serif Display

For comparison, here is the regular Serif at the same size, which appears compressed and much darker while at the same time running slightly wider:

Libertinus Display 123

Libertinus Serif 30pt/36pt
(*LibertinusSerif-0sF*)
Libertinus Serif

10.2.10 Lucida fonts

The Lucida extended family of typefaces has been designed by Charles Bigelow and Kris Holmes. Besides being popular choices in computer operating systems, because of their screen legibility, the fonts are also widely used for scientific and technical publishing. Lucida Bright, Lucida Sans, and Lucida Math are the main typeface families used for this book. They are commercial, so you have to buy them, but for a high-quality printout that requires full support for all of L^AT_EX's math capabilities, they are an attractive choice.¹ Table 10.11 on the next page lists all Lucida text² families that are sold as a set by T_EX Users Group. As you will notice, there are some differences in coverage between Type 1 fonts for use with pdfT_EX and Opentype fonts for use with the Unicode engines. Lucida Bright, Lucida Sans, Lucida Sans Typewriter, Lucida Blackletter, Lucida Casual, Lucida Calligraphy, and Lucida Handwriting are available for all engines (though the Opentype versions of the fonts have a far larger glyph coverage, because they are not restricted to 256 glyphs). However, there are also a number of typefaces that are available only in Type 1 for pdfT_EX or only in OpenType format for X_YT_EX or LuaT_EX.

All Lucida font families share common design principles and are intended to be mixed and matched in arbitrary (possibly surprising) ways. In particular, Lucida Bright, Lucida Sans, and Lucida Sans Typewriter are meant to be used in unison, and this is possible in all engines. For pdfT_EX there is the package `lucidabr` that also sets up Lucida Math for you — sample pages with mathematics are shown in Figures 12.24 to 12.26 on pages 278–279. If you want only the text fonts, then altering `\rmdefault`,

¹However, most freestanding math examples in this book are *deliberately not* set in Lucida Math but in Computer Modern Math, because that is what most people are used to seeing. The look and feel is noticeably different between the two, and I wanted the examples to resemble the typical T_EX look with respect to formulas. For the same reason, Latin Modern Typewriter is used for typesetting command names and code.

²The math fonts, which are also part of the set, are covered in Chapter 12.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Serif, Sans & matching Typewriter families</i>			
<i>Lucida Bright</i>		Lucida Bright OT (Encodings: T1, TS1, LY1, and TU)	
hlh	m, b	n, it, sl, sc	Regular, <i>slanted</i> , <i>italic</i> , bold & SMALL CAPS with lining numerals
		Lucida Bright OT (Encodings: T1, TS1, and TU)	
hlhj	m	n, it, (sl), sc	Regular, <i>italic</i> & SMALL CAPS with oldstyle numerals (12345)
	b	sc	Bold , bold italic & BOLD SMALL CAPS (12345)
<i>Lucida Sans</i>		Lucida Sans OT (Encodings: T1, TS1, LY1, and TU)	
hls	m, b, ub	n, it, (sl)	Regular, <i>italic</i> , bold & ultra-bold
<i>Lucida Typewriter</i>		— no OpenType — (Encodings: T1, TS1, and LY1)	
hlct	m, b	n, (it), sl	Regular, <i>slanted</i> , bold & bold slanted
<i>Lucida Sans Typewriter</i>		Lucida Sans Typewriter OT (Encodings: T1, TS1, LY1, and TU)	
hlst	m, b	n, (it), sl	Regular, <i>slanted</i> , bold & bold slanted
<i>Special font faces</i>			
<i>Lucida Fax</i>		— no OpenType — (Encodings: T1, TS1, and LY1)	
hlx	m, b	n, it, (sl)	Regular, <i>italic</i> , bold & bold italic
<i>Lucida Blackletter</i>		Lucida Blackletter OT (Encodings: T1, TS1, LY1, and TU)	
hlcf	m	n	Only available in medium regular
<i>Lucida Casual</i>		— no OpenType — (Encodings: T1, TS1, and LY1)	
hlcn	m	n, it, (sl)	Only regular & <i>italic</i>
<i>Lucida Calligraphy</i>		Lucida Calligraphy OT (Encodings: T1, TS1, and LY1)	
hlce	m	it, (sl)	Only available in medium <i>italic</i>
<i>Lucida Handwriting</i>		Lucida Handwriting OT (Encodings: T1, TS1, LY1, and TU)	
hlcw	m	it, (sl)	Only available in medium <i>italic</i>
<i>OpenType-only Typewriter families</i>			
<i>Lucida Console</i>		Lucida Console DK (Encodings: TU)	
—	m, b	n, it, (sl)	— A monospaced design; see Example 10-2-3 on page 24
<i>Lucida Grande Mono</i>		Lucida Grande Mono DK (Encodings: TU)	
—	m, b	n, it, (sl)	— Another monospaced design; see Example 10-2-4

Oldstyle numerals as a default are implemented as a second, differently named font family in pdf_T_EX. If you use the hlh family (with lining numerals), you can get them through \oldstylenums. Some of the font families are available only in Type 1 format (for pdf_T_EX); others are available only in OpenType format for Unicode engines (X_T_T_EX or Lua_T_EX).

Table 10.11: Classification of the Lucida font families

`\sfdefault`, or `\ttdefault` is all that is needed as long as you remember to also change the font encoding to T1 or LY1, because none of the fonts is available in OT1.

Unicode engines

In Unicode engines you have to set up the fonts yourself using `fontspec` and `unicode-math`; suitable `.fontspec` files are provided.

10-2-1

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Lucida Bright 9pt/12pt
(hlh) **Lucida Bright OT**

If you prefer oldstyle numerals by default and you typeset with pdfT_EX, use `hlhj` as the family name. With the Unicode engines apply `Numbers=OldStyle` in your `fontspec` declarations instead.

10-2-2

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Lucida Sans 9pt/12pt
(hls) **Lucida Sans OT**

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. -- ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Lucida Sans Typewriter 9pt/12pt
(hlst) **Lucida Sans Typewriter OT**

As you will have observed, the Lucida fonts appear to be rather large (even if set at 9pt, as we did in the above example), and it is important to give them enough leading so that they do not appear cramped. In the book we used an even smaller measure¹ of 8.5pt/11.7pt, which works fine; i.e., it is possible to scale them noticeably down while maintaining a balanced and pleasing look. With pdfT_EX, the method to produce such downscaling is to define the command `\DeclareLucidaFontShape` — the documentation coming with the fonts explains how.

If you prefer a matching typewriter font with serifs, you can use Lucida Typewriter if you typeset with pdfT_EX.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. -- ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Lucida Typewriter 9pt/12pt
(hlct) —no OpenType—

Notice that Lucida Typewriter runs considerably wider than its sans serif counterpart. However, if you place both side by side, you see that their x-heights match. If

¹This is the reason why these examples are not done in-line, but externally. If in-line as most other typeface examples, the fonts would have picked up the scale used for the body fonts of the book.

you use a Unicode engine, then Lucida Typewriter is not available, but there are two further sans serif typewriter alternatives: Lucida Console and Lucida Grande Mono.

Lucida Console 9pt/12pt
(— only OpenType —)
Lucida Console DK

with a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found
Floating In Fields. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß
& Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic
phænix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

10-2-3

Lucida Grande Mono
9pt/12pt
(— only OpenType —)
Lucida Grande Mono DK

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found
Floating In Fields. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß
& Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic
phænix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

10-2-4

On first glance you may not see any difference, given that both fonts have the same running length and are nearly identical in design. But if you look carefully, you can see that the uppercase letters of Lucida Grande Mono are noticeably taller than those of Lucida Console and that some characters have subtle differences, e.g., the bottoms of the “l” or the italic “i” are rounded in Lucida Grande Mono, while they are straight in Lucida Console.

The “DK” in their names stands for Donald Knuth, who, in a reply to [20], asked for an alternate “squarish” design for O and Q in Lucida Console [98] to make them easier distinguishable from the digit 0. Charles Bigelow acted on his request [21] and produced special versions of his fonts that are available only through TUG. They use Don’s suggested letter forms by default, but also allow you to activate the default designs through the feature set ss01 (which also changes to a slashed zero), and it is also possible to combine the squared O with the slashed zero as shown in the third line of the example. The alternate designs are available in both typefaces.

Q	O	I	l	0	1	1	<code>\usepackage{fontspec}</code>	
Q	O	I	l	0	1	1	<code>\LARGE</code>	
Q	O	I	l	0	1	1	<code>\fontspec{Lucida Console DK}[]</code>	Q O I l 0 1 1 \par
Q	O	I	l	0	1	1	<code>\fontspec{Lucida Console DK}[RawFeature=ss01]</code>	Q O I l 0 1 1 \par
Q	O	I	l	0	1	1	<code>\fontspec{Lucida Console DK}[Numbers=SlashedZero]</code>	Q O I l 0 1 1

10-2-5

The set of Lucida fonts also contains a number of special font faces. Lucida Fax, as the name implies, was originally developed for use in fax transmissions and is very legible in bad reading conditions. This makes it a great choice for small print, e.g., in footnotes (as long as you do not need small capitals). Below we exhibit it in 7pt:

(hlx) Lucida Fax 7pt/9pt
— no OpenType —

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields.** — ¿But aren't
Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle*
in fluffy soufflés?

The other four fonts — Lucida Casual, Calligraphy, Handwriting, and Blackletter — all exist in only one weight and only one or two variants, upright and italics. They are

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Merriweather</i>	Merriweather	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
Merriwthr-OsF	l, m, b, ub	n, it, (sl)	Regular, light, <i>italic</i> , bold , and ultra-bold
<i>Merriweather Sans</i>	Merriweather Sans	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
MerriwthrSans-OsF	l, m, b, eb	n, it, (sl)	Sans regular, light, <i>italic</i> , bold , and extra-bold

Figure styles are -OsF and -Sup.

Table 10.12: Classification of the Merriweather font families

thus useful only in special circumstances, but all of them can be freely mixed with other Lucida variants.

With a price of £148, *almost anything* can be found *Floating In Fields*. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's* official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

Lucida Casual 9pt/12pt
(hlcn) — no OpenType —

Both Lucida Calligraphy and Lucida Handwriting appreciate extra leading:

With a price of £148, almost anything can be found Floating In Fields. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's* official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

Lucida Calligraphy 9pt/13pt
(hlce)
Lucida Calligraphy OT

With a price of £148, almost anything can be found Floating In Fields. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's* official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

Lucida Handwriting 9pt/13pt
(hlcw)
Lucida Handwriting OT

With pdfTeX, Lucida Blackletter should be primarily used for individual letters in math. As a text typeface (while properly kerned) it is missing the “long s” in that engine, which is needed for setting historically correct type. However, when using one of the Unicode engines, it is available in its appropriate Unicode position U+017F.

With a price of £148, *almost anything* can be found *floating In fields*. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's* official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

Lucida Blackletter 9pt/12pt
(hlcf)
Lucida Blackletter OT

10.2.11 Merriweather fonts

Designed by Eben Sorkin for Adobe, Merriweather features a large x-height and open letterforms, making it very readable at small sizes. The companion sans serif design Merriweather Sans is semi-condensed. Both families are offered in four weights with

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Droid Serif</i>	Droid Serif	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, LGR, and TU)	
droidserif	m, b	n, it, sl, ui	Serif regular, <i>slanted</i> , <i>italic</i> , bold , and upright italics
<i>Droid Sans</i>	Droid Sans	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, LGR, and TU)	
droidsans	m, b	n, sl, (it)	Sans regular, <i>oblique</i> , bold , and <i>bold oblique</i>
<i>Droid Mono</i>	Droid Sans Mono	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, LGR, and TU)	
droidsansmono	m	n, sl, (it)	Mono regular and <i>oblique</i>

Table 10.13: Classification of the Google Droid font families

upright and italic shapes. Note that Merriweather has ultra-bold (ub), while the Sans has a somewhat lighter extra-bold (eb) series.

LaTeX support for all engines is provided through the package merriweather by Bob Tennent, which offers various options to set up different aspects of the fonts.

<i>Merriweather 9pt/12pt</i> (Merriwthr-OsF) Merriweather	With a price of £148, almost anything can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS . — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phænix’s official rôle</i> in fluffy soufflés?
<i>Merriweather Sans 9pt/12pt</i> (MerriwthrSans-OsF) MerriweatherSans	With a price of £148, almost anything can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS . — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phænix’s official rôle</i> in fluffy soufflés?

10.2.12 Google’s Noto and Droid fonts

The Noto family of fonts are Google’s attempt to eventually provide glyph coverage for all languages and scripts defined by the Unicode standard. Right now it consists of more than 100 individual fonts with a total of nearly 64000 characters covering most (though clearly not all, given that Unicode 14 has more than twice the number of defined characters) scripts in their entirety.¹ Besides the goal of full coverage, Noto is designed to provide visual harmony across multiple languages/scripts (e.g., compatible heights and stroke thicknesses) allowing the different Noto fonts to be easily used together.

<i>Noto is normally preferable over Droid</i>	The Latin, Greek, and Cyrillic glyphs in the Noto fonts are derived from the Droid family designed by Steve Matteson — an earlier commission by Google for the Android operating system. They are in fact the Droid fonts, but with additional weights, real small capitals, a greater glyph coverage (e.g., full polytonic Greek), and some errors corrected.
---	--

¹When computer programs, such as browsers, cannot represent glyphs because they are missing in the current font, they often display a little rectangle. These rectangles got nicknamed “tofu” in some circles, and Noto aims to remove the tofu from the Web, hence the name **No tofu**.

To use Droid with the pdfTeX engine, the packages `droid`, `droidmono`, `droidsans`, and `droidserif` by Mohamed El Morabity are available. Except for `droid`, the packages accept the option `scaled` to specify a scale factor when loading individual fonts.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines you have to set up Droid using the `fontspec` package. But if you use such an engine, then Noto is the better choice, as it simply offers more extensive glyph support and additional weights and shapes throughout.

TeX support for Noto for all engines is provided through the packages `noto`, `noto-mono`, `noto-sans`, and `noto-serif` by Bob Tennent, which support the typical options such as `scaled` or `oldstyle` as well as some special ones to access the huge number of weights offered by the Noto families.¹ The condensed faces have their own support packages `notocondensed` (for Serif and Sans) and `notocondensed-mono`. Because of their size, the condensed fonts are not automatically included in the TeX Live distribution but need a simple manual installation. Follow the instructions at <https://contrib.texlive.info/> for that or download the package from CTAN.

Note that because of their size, the Noto condensed faces need a manual installation

The Droid fonts do not support `\scshape`, whereas Noto has real small capitals that look rather nice. This means that one should normally prefer Noto over Droid unless oblique shapes in addition to italics are needed as those are offered only by Droid. For comparison we show both Droid Serif and Noto Serif below so that you can study the differences:

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Droid Serif 10pt/12pt
(droidserif) Droid Serif

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Noto Serif 10pt/12pt
(NotoSerif-OsF) Noto Serif

The Noto families are available in four running lengths: besides a regular version, there exist three condensed versions that can easily be made the default by using the package `notocondensed` and passing the options `semicondensed`, `condensed`, or `extracondensed`. You can also request a condensed version for only Noto Serif or Sans through `rm` and `sf` or prevent that Noto Sans Mono is used with `nott`. As usual, several other options and commands exist for specialized requirements. Below are the condensed variants of the Serif family — notice how we gradually get more and more words into the lines:

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Noto Serif (option
semicondensed) 10pt/12pt
(NotoSerif-OsF) Noto Serif Semi Condensed

¹ Noto is one of the few families that supports a huge number of the NFSS series combinations, as it has weights from ultra-light to extra-bold and three compressed versions on top of the regular one; see Tables 10.14 and 10.15 on pages 28–29 for the full setup.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Noto Serif</i>	<i>Noto Serif</i> (Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, LGR, LY1, and TU)		
NotoSerif-LF	ul, el, l, sl, m, sb, b, eb, ub	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Serif regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS
	<i>Noto Serif Semi Condensed</i>		
	ulsc, elsc, lsc, slsc, sc, sbsc, bsc, ebsc, ubsc	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Serif semi-condensed, <i>italics</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS
	<i>Noto Serif Condensed</i>		
	ulc, elc, lc, slc, c, sbc, bc, ebc, ubc	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Serif condensed, <i>italics</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS
	<i>Noto Serif Extra Condensed</i>		
	ulec, elec, lec, slec, ec, sbec, bec, ebec, ubec	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Serif extra-condensed, <i>italics</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS
<i>Noto Sans</i>	<i>Noto Sans</i> (Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, LGR, LY1, and TU)		
NotoSans-LF	ul, el, l, sl, m, sb, b, eb, ub	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Sans regular, <i>italics</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS
	<i>Noto Sans Semi Condensed</i>		
	ulsc, elsc, lsc, slsc, sc, sbsc, bsc, ebsc, ubsc	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Sans semi-condensed, <i>italics</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS
	<i>Noto Sans Condensed</i>		
	ulc, elc, lc, slc, c, sbc, bc, ebc, ubc	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Sans condensed, <i>italics</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS
	<i>Noto Sans Extra Condensed</i>		
	ulec, elec, lec, slec, ec, sbec, bec, ebec, ubec	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Sans extra-condensed, <i>italics</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS

Supported figure styles of the Noto Serif and Sans fonts are -LF, -OsF, -TLF, -T0sF, and -Sup.

Table 10.14: Classification of the Google Noto font families

<i>Noto Serif (option condensed) 10pt/12pt (NotoSerif-OsF)</i> <i>Noto Serif Condensed</i>	With a price of £148, almost anything can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS . — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phoenix's official rôle</i> in fluffy soufflés?
<i>Noto Serif (option extracondensed) 10pt/12pt (NotoSerif-OsF)</i> <i>Noto Serif Extra Condensed</i>	With a price of £148, almost anything can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS . — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phoenix's official rôle</i> in fluffy soufflés?

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Noto Sans Mono	Noto Sans Mono	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, LGR, LY1 and TU)	
	NotoSansMono-TLF	ul, el, l, sl, m, sb, b, eb, ub	n, sc Sans Mono regular, thin, bold , and black
	Noto Sans Mono Semi Condensed	ulsc, elsc, lsc, slsc, sc, sb, bsc, ebsc, ubsc	n, sc Sans Mono semi-condensed, thin, bold , and black
	Noto Sans Mono Condensed	ulc, elc, lc, slc, c, sb, bc, ebc, ubc	n, sc Sans Mono condensed, thin, bold , and black
	Noto Sans Mono Extra Condensed	ulec, elec, lec, slec, ec, sbec, bec, ebec, ubec	n, sc Sans Mono extra-condensed, thin, bold , and black

Supported figure styles of the SansMono are -TLF and -Sup.

Table 10.15: Classification of the Google Noto font families (cont.)

Here we exhibit all sans serif width variants with their different running lengths from regular down to extra-condensed.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Noto Sans 10pt/12pt
(NotoSans-OsF) *Noto Sans*

Noto Sans (option semicondensed) 10pt/12pt
(NotoSans-OsF) *Noto Sans Semi Condensed*

Noto Sans (option condensed) 10pt/12pt
(NotoSans-OsF) *Noto Sans Condensed*

Noto Sans (option extracondensed) 10pt/12pt
(NotoSans-OsF) *Noto Sans Extra Condensed*

The Noto Serif and Sans families both have matching math fonts, which are exhibited in Figure 12.38 on page 287 (Noto Serif) and Figure 12.50 on page 295 (Noto Sans). They have been prepared by Michael Sharpe.

Noto Sans Mono is also offered in four different running lengths, and if you want to use one of the condensed faces together with some other font families, use notocondensed-mono for setup. These condensed versions are a great choice if you have tight spacing requirements as even the extra-condensed version is very readable.

Noto Sans Mono 9pt/12pt
(NotoSansMono-TLF)
Noto Sans Mono

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found
FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß &
Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic phoenix's
official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

For comparison here is the extra-condensed version of Noto Sans Mono, which shows that you can save quite a lot of space when using it:

*Noto Sans Mono (option
extracondensed) 9pt/12pt*
(NotoSansMono-TLF)
Noto Sans Mono
Extra Condensed

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN
FIELDS. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve
vis-à-vis the dæmonic phoenix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

However, Noto Sans Mono has neither italics nor oblique shapes, but it does offer different weights, which is perhaps more important. Droid Sans Mono on the other hand has no bold but offers italics. Thus, which to deploy depends on your use case.

Droid Mono 9pt/12pt
(droidsansmono)
Droid Sans Mono

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found
Floating In **Fields**. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß &
Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic phoenix's
official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

10.2.13 IBM Plex

The IBM Plex families have been developed by Mike Abbink at IBM in collaboration with Bold Monday and others with the intention to represent the IBM Brand spirit. Each family is offered in eight different weights with upright and italic shapes. Small capitals are not supported, and \slshape is aliased to italics.

IBM Plex Serif was inspired by Bodoni and Janson and incorporates oldstyle and Didone design aspects. IBM Plex Sans is a grotesque sans serif typeface with a design that was inspired by Franklin Gothic. It also exists in a condensed version offering all weights and shapes and can thus be used as a drop-in replacement for the regular sans serif. The letter forms of IBM Plex Mono upright are based on Plex Sans, while its italic shape was inspired by an italic typeface used on IBM's Selectric typewriter (one with a typeball).

LaTeX support for all engines is provided by the packages plex-serif, plex-sans, and plex-mono by Bob Tennent with the usual options for selecting the weights or a scaling factor (scaled).

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>IBM Plex Serif</i>	IBM Plex Serif (Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)		
IBMPlexSerif-TLF	ul, el, l, m, sb, b	n, it, (sl)	IBM Plex Serif, <i>italic</i> , bold , and light
<i>IBM Plex Sans</i>	IBM Plex Sans, IBM Plex Sans Condensed (Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)		
IBMPlexSans-TLF	ul, el, l, sl, m, sb, b ulc, elc, lc, slc, c, sbc, bc	n, it, (sl)	IBM Plex Sans, <i>italic</i> , bold , light, and thin Condensed Sans <i>italic</i> , bold , light, and thin
<i>IBM Plex Mono</i>	IBM Plex Mono (Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)		
IBMPlexMono-TLF	ul, el, l, sl, m, sb, b	n, it, (sl)	IBM Plex Mono, <i>italic</i> , and bold

Supported figure styles of the IBM Plex fonts are -TLF and -Sup.

Table 10.16: Classification of the IBM Plex font families

With a price of £148, almost anything can be found Floating In Fields . — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phænix's official rôle</i> in fluffy soufflés?	<i>Plex Serif 10pt/12pt</i> (IBMPlexSerif-TLF) IBM Plex Serif
With a price of £148, almost anything can be found Floating In Fields . — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phænix's official rôle</i> in fluffy soufflés?	<i>Plex Sans 10pt/12pt</i> (IBMPlexSans-TLF) IBM Plex Sans
To use IBM Plex Sans Condensed as the default sans serif font in your document, you can pass the option <code>condensed</code> to the <code>plex-sans</code> package. Alternatively, you can select it individually through the <code>c</code> font series.	
With a price of £148, almost anything can be found Floating In Fields . — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phænix's official rôle</i> in fluffy soufflés?	<i>Plex Sans (option condensed) 10pt/12pt</i> (IBMPlexSans-TLF) IBM Plex Sans Condensed
With a price of £148, almost anything can be found Floating In Fields . — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phænix's official rôle</i> in fluffy soufflés?	<i>Plex Mono 9pt/12pt</i> (IBMPlexMono-TLF) IBM Plex Mono

10.2.14 PT fonts

Paratype PT fonts have been designed by Alexandra Korolkova with assistance from Olga Umpeleva and Vladimir Yefimov. They consist of a humanistic sans serif, a serif, and a monospaced font all available in regular and bold weights. All fonts offer a wide glyph range and thus are capable of typesetting text in most Latin and Cyrillic languages.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>PT Serif</i>	PT Serif	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, and TU)	
PTSerif-TLF	m, b	n, it, sl	PT Serif regular, <i>slanted</i> , <i>italic</i> , bold , and <i>bold italic</i>
<i>PT Sans</i>	PT Sans	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, and TU)	
PTSans-TLF	m, b	n, it, (sl)	PT Sans regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , and <i>bold italic</i>
	c, bc	n	PT Sans narrow and narrow bold
<i>PT Sans Narrow</i>	PT Sans Narrow	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, and TU)	
PTSansNarrow-TLF	m, b	n, sl	PT Sans Narrow, <i>oblique</i> , bold , and <i>bold oblique</i>
<i>PT Serif Caption</i>	PT Serif Caption	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, and TU)	
PTSerifCaption-TLF	m	n, it, sl	PT Serif Caption, <i>italic</i> , <i>slanted</i> , bold , and <i>bold italic</i>
<i>PT Sans Caption</i>	PT Sans Caption	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, and TU)	
PTSansCaption-TLF	m, b	n, sl	PT Sans Caption, <i>oblique</i> , bold , and <i>bold oblique</i>
<i>PT Mono</i>	PT Mono	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, and TU)	
PTMono-TLF	m, b	n, sl	PT Mono regular, <i>oblique/slanted</i> , bold , and <i>bold oblique</i>

Table 10.17: Classification of the Paratype PT font families

Most of the slanted shapes are mechanically generated and are therefore of a somewhat lesser quality; however, when used only occasionally, they should work well enough.

Support for the pdfTeX engine is provided by Pavel Farář through the paratype bundle that contains the packages PTSerif, PTSerifCaption, PTSans, PTSansCaption, PTSansNarrow, and PTMono. All of them support the option `scaled` to specify a scale factor when loading individual fonts and set the corresponding family up as the default serif, sans serif, or typewriter font.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines you have to set them up using the `fontspec` package.

PT Serif 10pt/12.6pt
(PTSerif-TLF) **PT Serif**

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

PT Sans 10pt/12.6pt
(PTSans-TLF) **PT Sans**

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Quattrocento</i>	Quattrocento	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
Quattro-LF	m, b	n, (it), sl	Quattrocento regular, <i>oblique</i> , bold , and <i>bold oblique</i>
<i>Quattrocento Sans</i>	Quattrocento Sans	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
QuattroSans-LF	m, b	n, (it), sl	Quattrocento Sans regular, <i>oblique</i> , bold , and <i>bold oblique</i>

Supported figure styles for the Quattrocento families are -LF and -Sup.

Table 10.18: Classification of the Quattrocento font families

The monospaced family has oblique shapes but not italics nor any small capitals:

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

PT Mono 8pt/10pt
(PTMono-TLF) PT Mono

PT Sans also exists in a narrow version for documents that have tight spacing requirements. Note, however, that for this version no italic shape has been set up.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

PT Sans Narrow 10pt/12.6pt
(PTSansNarrow-TLF)
PT Sans Narrow

Finally, both PT Serif and PT Sans have a Caption variant for typesetting in small type, e.g., credentials or captions in small size, hence the name.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

PT Serif Caption 7pt/10pt
(PTSerifCaption-TLF)
PT Serif Caption

Note, however, that with PT Serif Caption there is no bold weight, and with PT Sans Caption you do not get any italics (`\textsl` works, though).

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

PT Sans Caption 7pt/10pt
(PTSansCaption-TLF)
PT Sans Caption

10.2.15 Quattrocento

Quattrocento, designed by Pablo Impallari, is a typeface with wide and open letterforms and a large x-height, making it very legible at small sizes. It is offered in two weights and upright and oblique shapes. Quattrocento Sans is the matching sans serif design.

L^AT_EX support for all engines is provided through the `quattrocento` package by Bob Tennent, which sets up one or both families based on options.

Quattrocento 9pt/11pt
(`Quattro-LF`)
`Quattrocento`

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [Floating In Fields](#). —
¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic
phœnix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

Quattrocento Sans 9pt/11pt
(`QuattroSans-LF`)
`Quattrocento Sans`

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [Floating In Fields](#). —
¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic
phœnix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

10.2.16 Google Roboto families

Roboto, designed by Christian Robertson for Google, is a neo-grotesque sans serif typeface. It has been used as the operating system font for Android since 2011 (replacing Droid) and several of Google's web applications, which contributed to its growing popularity. The companion monospaced font is Roboto Mono. Roboto is offered in six weights and three condensed cuts and Roboto Mono in five weights each time with upright and oblique shapes. Roboto Slab is a slab serif font based on Roboto. It comes in four weights but only in upright shape.

L^AT_EX support for all engines is provided by Bob Tennent through the packages `roboto` and `roboto-mono` supporting the usual options, such as `scaled`, various figure styles, and weight selections.

Roboto 10pt/12pt
(`Roboto-OfF`) `Roboto`

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**. —
¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic
phœnix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

To use the Roboto Condensed font as the default sans serif font in your document you can pass the option `condensed` to the `roboto` package. Alternatively, you can select it individually through the `c` font series.

Roboto (option condensed)
10pt/12pt (Roboto-OfF)
`Roboto Condensed`

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**. —
¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic
phœnix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

Note that the Small Caps in both Roboto Mono and Roboto Slab make no distinction between upper and lowercase as you can see below:

Roboto Mono 9pt/12pt
(`RobotoMono-TLF`)
`Roboto Mono`

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**. —
¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Roboto</i>	Roboto, Roboto Condensed	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LGR, LY1, and TU)	
Roboto-LF	el, l, m, sb, b, eb	n, (it), sl, sc, (scit), scsl	Roboto regular, <i>oblique</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS OBLIQUE
	lc, c, bc	n, (it), sl, sc, (scit), scsl	Condensed, <i>oblique</i> , bold , and light
<i>Roboto Slab</i>	Roboto Slab	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LGR, LY1, and TU)	
RobotoSlab-TLF	el, l, m, b	n	Roboto Slab regular, <i>thin</i> , and bold
<i>Roboto Mono</i>	Roboto Mono	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LGR, LY1, and TU)	
RobotoMono-TLF	el, l, m, sb, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Roboto Mono <i>oblique</i> , SMALL CAPS , and bold

Supported figure styles for Roboto and Roboto Condensed are -LF, -OsF, -TLF, and -T0sF. Roboto Mono and Roboto Slab offer only -TLF figures. LGR is not fully provided: the families offer only monotonic Greek. Roboto Mono's italic shape is in reality oblique. Also note that in the sc shape all letters have the same height.

Table 10.19: Classification of the Roboto font families

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Roboto Slab Serif (option `rm`)
10pt/13pt
(RobotoSlab-TLF)
Roboto Slab

To set up the Roboto Slab font as the default roman font, pass the option `rm` to the `roboto` package. It does not happen automatically as you may want to combine Roboto Sans with some other serif font.

10.2.17 Adobe Source Pro

Adobe's Source Serif Pro, designed by Frank Griefßhammer, is a typeface inspired by the work of Pierre-Simon Fournier. The companion sans serif font Source Sans Pro and the monospaced Source Code Pro were designed by Paul D. Hunt. Source Sans Pro is inspired by typefaces by Morris Fuller Benton (1872–1948), such as Franklin Gothic, but with larger x-height and Humanist-influenced italics. The italics for Source Code Pro got added later by Teo Tuominen.

L^AT_EX support for all engines is provided by Silke Hofstra through the three packages `sourceserifpro`, `sourcesanspro`, and `sourcecodepro`; for options see the package documentation.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Source Serif Pro 10pt/12pt
(SourceSerifPro-OsF)
Source Serif Pro

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Adobe Source Serif Pro</i>	Source Serif Pro	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
SourceSerifPro-LF	el, l, m, sb, b, k	n, it, (sl), sc	Source Serif Pro regular and bold italic
<i>Adobe Source Sans Pro</i>	Source Sans Pro	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
SourceSansPro-LF	el, l, m, sb, b, k	n, it, (sl), sc	Source Sans Pro regular and bold italic
<i>Adobe Source Code Pro</i>	Source Code Pro	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
SourceCodePro-TLF	el, l, m, mb, sb, b, k	n, it, (sl)	SourceCodePro and bold italic

Supported figure styles of the Source Serif Pro and Source Sans Pro fonts are -LF, -OsF, -TLF, -TOf, and -Sup. Source Code Pro supports only -TLF, -TOf, and -Sup and the Cyrillic encodings only in upright shape but not in italics! k (black) is a nonstandard series name for eb (extra bold) or in some families for ub (ultra bold).

Table 10.20: Classification of the Adobe SourceCode font families

<i>Source Sans Pro 10pt/12pt</i> (SourceSansPro-OsF) Source Sans Pro	With a price of £148, almost anything can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS . — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phœnix's</i> official rôle in fluffy soufflés?
<i>Source Code Pro 9pt/11pt</i> (SourceCodePro-TLF) Source Code Pro	With a price of £148, almost anything can be found Floating In Fields . — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phœnix's</i> official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

10.3 Humanist (Oldstyle) serif fonts

Historically, Humanist or Renaissance typefaces are the earliest fonts following the Blackletter types used by Gutenberg and other early printers. They mimic Latin handwriting and started to appear in the middle of the 15th century in places like Venice and Florence. Primarily they are very calligraphic in nature, which shows in the strongly leftward axis most apparent in the bowls of characters and the lowercase o but often also in an angled e. Other defining characteristics include a small x-height and a fairly low contrast between thick and thin strokes.

Of course, Humanist typefaces do not need to come from that time period: modern designers also picked up the concepts and produced original designs in the Humanist spirit. Centaur, for example, was designed in 1916, and below we show the recent Coelacanth inspired by it.

Few fonts in that style are freely available, but the selection widens considerably if you also look at commercially sold ones. All commercial fonts can be used with Unicode engines with the help of the fontspec package, assuming that you buy the OpenType or TrueType versions. Using them with pdfTeX is less straightforward — you need to take a look at the autoinst program for that.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Coelacanth</i>	Coelacanth	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
Coelacanth-LF	m	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Coelacanth regular, <i>italic</i> , and SMALL CAPS
	el, l, sb, b, eb	n, (it), sc	Thin, light, semi-bold, bold , and heavy

Supported figure styles for Coelacanth are -LF, -0sF, -TLF, and -T0sF. Italic shape is always medium weight!

Table 10.21: Classification of the Coelacanth font family

In the following sections we show three free high-quality typefaces that have been set up for use with L^AT_EX. None of them has oblique shapes (italics are substituted if you ask for them), but that is not surprising because slanted or oblique is a more recent invention and not really in spirit with such typefaces.

10.3.1 Alegreya

Alegreya has a matching sans serif design. Both families are described on page 11, and their NFSS classifications are in Table 10.2 on the same page.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**.
 — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
 dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Alegreya 10pt/12pt
 (Alegreya-0sF)
 Alegreya Sans

10.3.2 Coelacanth

Designed by Ben Whitmore, Coelacanth is inspired by the classic Centaur Type design of Bruce Rogers (1870–1957). It is one of the few Humanist serif families freely available for use with L^AT_EX. The family provides six weights. However, the italics are available only in medium weight and are used unchanged in other weights as well in the L^AT_EX setup. Support for all engines is provided through the package coelacanth by Bob Tennent.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**.
 — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
 dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Coelacanth 10pt/12pt
 (Coelacanth-0sF)
 Coelacanth

10.3.3 fbb — A version of Cardo

Cardo is a Humanist font by David J. Perry that is based on a Venetian type from the 15th century, which was also used as the basis for Monotype's commercial Bembo family. It was developed as part of the Medieval Unicode Font Initiative.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Cardo</i>	<code>fbf</code> , <i>Cardo</i>	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
<code>fbf-LF</code>	<code>m</code> , <code>b</code>	<code>n</code> , <code>it</code> , <code>(sl)</code> , <code>sc</code> , <code>scit</code> , <code>(scsl)</code>	Cardo regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , <i>bold italic</i> , <small>SMALL CAPS</small> , <small><i>SMALL CAPS ITALIC</i></small> and <small><i>SMALL CAPS ITALIC BOLD</i></small>

Supported figure styles for *fbf* are `-LF`, `-OfF`, `-TLF`, `-TOsF`, `-Sup`, and `-Inf`.

Table 10.22: Classification of *fbf* (Cardo) font family

Unicode engines

The font is freely available on the Web in TrueType format (but not included in standard T_EX distributions in that form). It contains more than 3 000 glyphs and ligatures covering many modern, classical, and medieval languages. It also supports other rather specialized applications such as historical Greek music notation, phonetic alphabets, and much more. In this form it is available only for Unicode engines.

Starting from the Cardo font, Michael Sharpe produced a version under the name “fbf” but with many modifications, e.g., adding bold italic, Small Caps, and different figure styles. However, his fonts provide only a more restricted glyph set, but still a set of roughly 1 000 characters each. Support for pdfT_EX is provided through the package *fbf*, which accepts typical options such as `scaled` for a scale factor, `oldstyle`, `lining`, etc. You can also supply the option `altP` to use the historically correct open form of “P” instead of the more modern closed rendering “P” usually used — a tiny but interesting detail.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines a `fontspec` configuration file is provided.

Cardo 10pt/12pt
(`fbf-OfF`) *fbf* With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.4 Garalde (Oldstyle) serif fonts

Named after two influential type designers from the period, Claude Garamond (1499–1561) and Aldus Manutius (1449–1515), Garalde fonts first appeared at the end of the 15th century. There is now less calligraphic influence because typesetting began to be viewed as different from writing. Still, we do have a tilted axis in many characters, but it is subtler and less obvious than in Humanist typefaces. The serifs become more carefully formed and on ascenders more wedge shaped. Characters are designed more proportionally, and there is now a greater contrast between thick and thin strokes.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Accanthis</i>	<code>Accanthis</code>	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
<code>AccanthisADFStdNoThree-LF</code>	m, b	n, it, (sl)	Accanthis regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , and <i>bold italic</i>
<i>The supported figure style for Accanthis is -LF.</i>			

Table 10.23: Classification of the Accanthis Font family

Generally speaking we start to see more refinement and details in the characters, in parts surely augmented by the improving skills of the punch cutters of that time. Another difference is the crossbar on the e, which is now fully straight while in Humanist typefaces it was typically sloped.

The number of free high-quality Galalde typefaces prepared for use with \LaTeX is still fairly small; below we show most of them.

10.4.1 Accanthis

The Accanthis family by Hirwen Harendal, which also incorporates some aspects of Humanist fonts (e.g., the tilted e), is suitable as an alternative to fonts such as Garamond, Galliard, and similar Galalde designs. It is offered in two weights with upright and italic characters. \LaTeX support for all engines is provided through the package `accanthis` by Bob Tennent. The option `scaled` lets you select a scaling factor.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [Floating In Fields](#). — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

[Accanthis 10pt/12pt](#)
(`AccanthisADFStdNoThree-LF`)
`Accanthis ADF Std No3`

10.4.2 GFS Artemisia

GFS Artemisia is a slightly calligraphic general-purpose typeface designed by Takis Katsoulidis. \LaTeX support for pdf \TeX is provided through the package `gfsartemisia`, which sets the font up as `\rmdefault` and uses the `txfonts`¹ for formulas. Alternatively, with the package `gfsartemisia-euler` it uses the `euler` package instead. Besides Latin languages, the family fully supports polytonic Greek.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [FLOATING IN Fields](#). — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

[GFS Artemisia 10pt/12pt](#)
(`artemisia`)
`GFS Artemisia`

¹Please note that the `txfonts` have spacing problems and cannot be really recommended; see Section 12.3.4 on page 243 for details. We therefore recommend to use either the `gfsartemisia-euler` package or set up the font manually and add suitable math fonts with the help of the `newtxmath` package.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>GFS Artemisia</i>	GFS Artemisia	(Encodings: T1, OT1, LGR, and TU)	
artemisia	m, b	n, it, sl, sc, sco	Artemisia regular, bold , <i>italic</i> , <i>oblique</i> , and <small>SMALL CAPS OBLIQUE</small>

*The supported figure style for GFS Artemisia is -TLF (but not called this).
Unfortunately, sco is a nonstandard shape name for scsl; thus, low-level shape commands are needed to access it.*

Table 10.24: Classification of the GFS Artemisia font family

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Crimson Pro</i>	Crimson Pro	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
CrimsonPro-LF	el, l, sl, m, sb, b, eb, ub	n, it, (sl)	Crimson Pro regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , extra-light, semi-bold , and ultra-bold
<i>Cochineal</i>	Cochineal	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LGR, LY1, and TU)	
Cochineal-LF	m, b	n, it, (sl), sw, sc, scit, (scsl)	Cochineal regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , and <small>SMALL CAPS ITALIC</small>

Supported figure styles for Crimson Pro and Cochineal are -LF, -0sF, -TLF, -T0sF, -Sup, and -Inf.

Table 10.25: Classification of the Crimson Pro/Cochineal font families

10.4.3 Crimson, Crimson Pro, and Cochineal

The Crimson family of fonts has been designed by Sebastian Kosch in the tradition of beautiful Garalde oldstyle typefaces, such as Jan Tschichold’s (1902–1974) Sabon or Robert Slimbach’s Minion. Provided are upright and italic shapes in three weights. The family got extended by Jacques Le Bailly under the name Crimson Pro to cover a total of seven weights from thin to black; also oldstyle figures got added. Support for all TeX engines is provided by Bob Tennent through the package `CrimsonPro`.
Michael Sharpe also extended the Crimson fonts by providing roughly 1500 additional glyphs (including polytonic Greek) so that all glyphs are available in all styles including bold Small Caps and different types of figures (the original Crimson had only lining tabular figures). This extension is distributed as Cochineal fonts, and the L^AT_EX support package is called `cochineal`. Thus, his package is the better choice if you want small capitals or need Greek. The family also has matching mathematical fonts exhibited in Figure 12.2 on page 263.

Cochineal 10pt/12pt
(Cochineal-0sF)
Cochineal

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. —
¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic
phænix’s official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Cormorant Garamond</i>	Cormorant Garamond	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
CormorantGaramond-LF	l, m, sb, b	n, it, (sl), sc	CormorantGaramond regular, semi-bold, and <i>bold italic</i>

Supported figure styles for *Cormorant Garamond* are -LF, -OsF, -TLF, -T0sF, -Sup, and -Inf.

Table 10.26: Classification of the Cormorant Garamond font family

However, Cochineal does not provide the additional weights that Crimson Pro offers. The next sample shows the extra-light (e1) series of Crimson Pro with `\textbf` using medium-bold (b). But note the missing Small Caps in that case.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found Floating In Fields. —
;But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic
phoenix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

Crimson Pro 10pt/12pt
(CrimsonPro-OsF)
Crimson Pro

10.4.4 Cormorant Garamond

Cormorant Garamond, designed by Christian Thalmann, is inspired by Claude Garamond's work but not explicitly based on a particular set of specimens. Its intended usage is that of a display typeface, which is quite visible if set in normal body size because it then appears to be extremely light. Here is an example of regular and light weights at 20 points:

Cormorant Garamond
20pt/24pt
(CormorantGaramond-OsF)
Cormorant Garamond

Cormorant Garamond regular and light

Compare this to the following example showing the regular weight at ten points. In this setting, it appears to be extremely light.

Cormorant Garamond
10pt/12pt
(CormorantGaramond-OsF)
Cormorant Garamond

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS. —
;But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic
phoenix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

ℒ_{AT}_EX support for all engines is available with the `CormorantGaramond` package by Bob Tennent providing the usual options such as `scaled` or `oldstyle`, etc.

10.4.5 EB Garamond

EB Garamond, designed by Georg Duffner and Octavio Pardo, is one of the revivals of the fonts designed by Claude Garamond (1499-1561). The source for the letterforms is a scan of a text known as the “Egenolff-Berner specimen”, composed in the 16th century by Conrad Berner at the Egenolff print office, showing Garamond's roman

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>EBGaramond</i>	EBGaramond	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
EBGaramond-LF	sl, m, sb, b, eb	n, it, (sl), sw, sc, scit, (scsl)	Roman, <i>italic</i> , SMALL CAPS (<i>ITALICS</i>), bold , extra-bold , and <i>Swash Letters</i>

Supported figure styles for EB Garamond are -LF, -0sF, -TLF, -T0sF, -Sup, and -Inf.

Table 10.27: Classification of the EBGaramond font family

and Robert Granjon’s (1513–1589) italic types at different sizes¹ — hence the reason for the name of this project. L^AT_EX support for all engines is provided through the ebgaramond package by Bob Tennent. It also offers access to a few initials and swash letters provided with the fonts. Typesetting with matching mathematical fonts is shown in Figures 12.3 to 12.5 on pages 264–265.

EBGaramond 10pt/12pt
(EBGaramond-0sF)
EBGaramond

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS. —
¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic
phænix’s official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

10.4.6 Garamond Libre

The Garamond Libre fonts are an extended fork by D. Benjamin Miller from fonts originally developed by George Douros. They are another Garamond revival with the roman face following Claude Garamond’s (1499–1561) original design. The italics are from a 16th-century engraver too — not Garamond’s (no specimens have survived) but that of Robert Granjon (1513–1589). The upright Greek that is included in the OpenType fonts follow a design by Firmin Didot (1764–1836), while the Greek italics are based on a design by Alexander Wilson (??–1784).

The fonts include support for Latin, Greek, and Cyrillic scripts, and if used with Unicode engines, you can also use the full IPA alphabet, Byzantine musical symbols, and various other glyphs that the limited font support with pdfT_EX can not or only rudimentary provide.

L^AT_EX support for all engines is provided through the package garamondlibre by Bob Tennent. The package supports the usual options implemented by Bob; e.g., scaled lets you select a scaling factor, osf makes oldstyle numerals the default, etc.

Garamond Libre 10pt/12pt
(GaramondLibre-0sF)
Garamond Libre

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS.
— ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
dæmonic *phænix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Garamond Libre offers Swash glyphs²: the nw shape gives you Swash upright and

¹<https://image.linotype.com/files/pdf/specimen.pdf>

²Not sure I would use them, at least not in upright shape — they do not seem to blend in well.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Garamond Libre</i>	Garamond Libre	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, LGR, T2A, T2B, T2C, and TU)	
GaramondLibre-LF	m, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Libre Garamond regular, <i>italic</i> , bold & <i>italic</i>
	m, b	nw, sw	Libre Garamond Swash upright and <i>Swash italics</i>

Supported figure styles for Garamond Libre are -LF, -OsF, -Sup, and -Inf.

Table 10.28: Classification of the Garamond Libre fonts

sw Swash italics; e.g., the next example is made by starting it with `\fontshape{nw}` `\selectfont`. Note that there is no `scnw`, so we get normal small caps.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**.
 — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
 dæmonic phoenix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

*Garamond Libre Swash
(shape nw) 10pt/12pt
(GaramondLibre-OsF)
Garamond Libre*

`\fontshape{sw}\selectfont` gets you Swash italics, but for short phrases or individual letters or words you can alternatively use `\textsw` to access them.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**.
 — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
 dæmonic phoenix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

*Garamond Libre Swash
(shape sw) 10pt/12pt
(GaramondLibre-OsF)
Garamond Libre*

If you know that you have an italic and upright Swash face (sw and nw) but no small caps Swash (scsw), consider adding the following rule to your document:

```
\DeclareFontShapeChangeRule{sw}{sc}{scsw}{nw}
```

This directs NFSS to switch to the upright Swash face if `scsw` is unavailable instead of switching to `sc`; see the discussion on page [→I 735](#). If we apply that, then the first line of the example text changes to

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. —

which is arguably better than getting straight small capitals without Swash.

10.4.7 URW Garamond No. 8

In the first quarter of the last century the Stempel Type Foundry released a Garamond adaption for hot-metal typesetting that has remained popular since. URW Garamond No. 8 is a freeware version based on this design and contributed by URW++ to the Ghostscript project under the AFP license. Because of this license, it is not automatically included in most T_EX distributions but can be easily installed using the `getnonfreefonts` script. The design has relatively short descenders, allowing it to be used with little leading.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<hr/>			
URW Garamond No. 8 — no OpenType — (Encodings: T1 and TS1)			
ugm	m, b	n, it, (sl)	Roman, <i>italic</i> , bold , and <i>bold italics</i>
Garamondx GaramondNo8 (Encodings: T1, TS1, LY1, and TU)			
zgmj	m, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Roman, <i>italic</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS <i>ITALICS</i>
zgmj			ditto, but with 1234...9 oldstyle figures

URW Garamond No. 8 supports only lining figures in its original freeware release.
Garamondx supports lining and oldstyle figures (family name zgmj).

Table 10.29: Classification of the URW Garamond No. 8 font family

To use the font with pdf \TeX simply set `\rmdefault` to `ugm` or select that family explicitly, but note that the \LaTeX support files are offered only for the T1 encoding.

URW Garamond No. 8 10pt/12pt (ugm) — With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found Floating In Fields.
— ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic phoenix’s official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

If you look closely, the fonts are missing some of the f-ligatures; e.g., you get “ff” instead of “fff”. These ligatures are missing in the Stempel Garamond as well, so their absence is not surprising. However, that and the missing small capitals limit the usefulness of the otherwise nice font.

So in 2006 Gaël Varoquaux produced an updated version of the fonts that included oldstyle figures, a first attempt at providing small capitals, a swash Q, and some kerning improvements.

Michael Sharpe used that version as a starting point for his reworking of URW Garamond No. 8 fonts, completely redoing the Small Caps shapes and making further improvements. \LaTeX support for his version is provided through the package `garamondx` and because of the AFP license of the original fonts also has to be manually installed using `getnonfreefonts`. Besides `scaled` and `osf`, the package supports special options such as `swashQ` to make the swash Q the default. Alternatively, you can get individual swash Qs with the command `\swashQ` that we use in the example below. A typesetting sample with matching mathematical fonts is shown in Figure 12.4 on page 264.

URW Garamondx 10pt/12pt (zgmj) GaramondNo8 — With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS.
— ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic phoenix’s official rôle in fluffy soufflés? Qui or Qui?

Unicode engines

The freeware version of URW Garamond No. 8 was originally released in Type 1 format only. To make it available for Unicode engines, it was later converted

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Gentium Plus</i>	Gentium Plus	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, T5, OT1, LGR, LY1, and TU)	
gentium	m, sb, b, eb	n, it, (sl), sc, scit	Gentium regular, <i>italic</i> , SMALL CAPS, and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i> Gentium bold, <i>italic</i>, SMALL CAPS, and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i>

Bold series and Small Caps shape are available only for Latin alphabets.

Table 10.30: Classification of the Gentium Plus font family

by Khaled Hosny to TrueType. In this format the family can, for example, be downloaded from <https://garamond.org/urw/> and set up using fontspec. The TrueType fonts also support small capitals, a full set of f-ligatures, and oldstyle figures.

10.4.8 Gentium Plus

Gentium is an award-winning design by Victor Gaultney with the aim to produce readable, high-quality publications. It supports a wide range of Latin- and Cyrillic-based alphabets as well as full support for polytonic and monotonic Greek.

ℒ_{TeX} support for the pdf_{TeX} is provided through the package `gentium` that makes the font the `\rmdefault` and also supports the option `scaled`.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines you have to set up your own fontspec declaration.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Gentium Plus 10pt/12pt
(gentium) **Gentium Plus**

10.4.9 Kp (Johannes Kepler) Roman

Kp Roman is inspired by Palatino and has matching sans serif and monospaced designs and a full set of math fonts. When used with pdf_{TeX}, certain features, such as special ligatures or oldstyle numerals (shown below), can be activated by altering the family name as described on page 17; you can find the description of all three families and their NFSS classifications in Table 10.9 on page 18. If used with Unicode engines, the features can be activated through the typical feature sets as supported by fontspec. Examples with mathematics are shown in Figures 12.6 to 12.8 on pages 266–267.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Kp Roman with oldstyle
numerals 10pt/12pt
(jkposn) **KpSans**

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Palatino	TeX Gyre Pagella	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T5, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
qpl	m, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Palatino regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , and Small Caps

Table 10.31: Classification of the Pagella (Palatino) family from the T_EX Gyre distribution

10.4.10 Palatino (T_EX Gyre Pagella)

Palatino, designed by Hermann Zapf (1918–2015), is one of the most widely used typefaces today [26]. You can feel the brush that created it, which gives it a lot of elegance. Although originally designed as a display typeface, due to its legibility, Palatino soon gained popularity as a text face as well.

T_EX Gyre Pagella shown here is based on the URW Palladio L version of the font family (which is set up with the T_EX Gyre `tgpagella` package). Typesetting samples with matching math fonts are shown in Figures 12.10 to 12.13 on pages 269–270.

Palatino 10pt/12.4pt
(qpl) TeX Gyre Pagella

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.5 Transitional/Neoclassical serif fonts

The Humanist and Garalde fonts discussed above are also often collectively referred to as Oldstyle fonts, and the Didone designs that we show in the next section are also known as Modern. In-between we have fonts classified as Transitional or Neoclassical that first appeared in the late 17th century.

There is no longer a calligraphic influence, and the letter axis is now nearly, if not completely, vertical. The weight difference between the thickest and thinnest points shows an even higher contrast compared to Garalde designs. The serifs are now (nearly) horizontal and less bracketed, and overall details become very refined. In this section we show roughly a dozen high-quality transitional designs, some of which are revivals of famous types of that period; others are new designs in the transitional style.

10.5.1 Antykwa Poltawskiego

The Antykwa Poltawskiego fonts (originally named “Antykwa Polska”) were designed in the 1920s by typographer Adam Półtawski with special shapes for frequent letters in the Polish language. For a long time it has been the major text type for musical publications in Poland.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines you need to set up the font using `fontspec` declarations.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Antykwa Poltawskiego</i>	<i>Antykwa Poltawskiego</i>	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T5, OT1, OT4, LY1, and TU)	
antp	l, m, sb, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Light, regular, semi-bold, bold , <i>italic</i> , and <small>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</small>
<i>Antykwa Poltawskiego Light</i>	<i>Antykwa Poltawskiego Light</i>	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T5, OT1, OT4, LY1, and TU)	
antpl	m, sb, b, eb	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Regular, semi-bold, bold , extra-bold , <i>italic</i> , and <small>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</small>

The series specifications in *Antykwa Poltawskiego Light* are shifted by one weight with respect to *Antykwa Poltawskiego*; e.g., *m* in *Antykwa Poltawskiego* becomes *sb* in *Antykwa Poltawskiego Light*.

Table 10.32: Classification of the Antykwa Poltawskiego font family

ℒ_{TeX} support for pdf_{TeX} is provided through the package `antpol` by Janusz Marian Nowacki (1951–2020). The standard weight can be selected through the options `regular` (default) or `light`.

- With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS.

— ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix*’s official rôle in fluffy soufflés?
- Antykwa Poltawskiego Light*
10pt/12pt (antpl)
Antykwa Poltawskiego Light
- With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS.

— ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix*’s official rôle in fluffy soufflés?
- Antykwa Poltawskiego*
10pt/12pt (antp)
Antykwa Poltawskiego

10.5.2 BaskervilleF and Libre Baskerville

Libre Baskerville is a revival of John Baskerville’s (1706–1775) typeface, designed by Pablo Impallari and Rodrigo Fuenzalida as a font family optimized for web usage. It is based on the American Type Founder’s Baskerville from 1941, but with a taller x-height, wider counters, and somewhat less contrast, making it work well for reading on computer screens. ℒ_{TeX} support for all engines is available with the `librebaskerville` package by Bob Tennent. There are matching math fonts by Michael Sharpe; see page 271.

- With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found Floating In Fields.

— ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix*’s official rôle in fluffy soufflés?
- Libre Baskerville* 9pt/12pt
(LibreBskvl-LF)
Libre Baskerville

The web optimization of Libre Baskerville means that it is less suited for traditional printing. For this reason Michael Sharpe created a variant version under the name BaskervilleF mostly by hollowing out the interiors of the Libre Baskerville

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Libre Baskerville</i>	Libre Baskerville	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
LibreBskvl-LF	m, b	n, it, (sl)	Libre Baskerville regular, bold , and <i>italic</i> only
<i>BaskervilleF</i>	BaskervilleF	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
BaskervilleF-LF	m, b	n, it, (sl), sw, sc	BaskervilleF regular, bold , and <i>italic</i> only

Supported figure styles for Libre Baskerville are -LF and -Sup; BaskervilleF supports -OsF, -TLF, -T0sF, and -Sup.

Table 10.33: Classification of the Libre Baskerville and BaskervilleF font families

glyphs to increase the contrast. His version also provides small capitals (though they are perhaps a bit too thin) and additional figure styles. \LaTeX support for pdf \TeX is through the package `baskerville`. Typesetting with matching math fonts is exhibited in Figure 12.14 on page 271.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines a fontspec specification file is provided.

BaskervilleF 10pt/12pt
(BaskervilleF-OsF)
BaskervilleF

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN
FIELDS. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-
vis the dæmonic *phænix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.5.3 Baskervald (Baskervaldx)

Another font inspired by Baskerville is Baskervald designed by Hirwen Harendal. It was extended with additional accented glyphs and oldstyle figures by Michael Sharpe. His version, named Baskervaldx, is made available for the pdf \TeX engine through the package `Baskervaldx`, providing typical options such as `scaled` or `oldstyle`. This family has matching math fonts too, which are shown in Figures 12.15 to 12.16 on page 272.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines a fontspec specification file is provided.

Baskervaldx 10pt/12pt
(Baskervaldx-OsF)
ADF Baskerville

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN
FIELDS. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve*
vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.5.4 ITC Bookman (T \E X Gyre Bonum)

Bookman was originally designed in 1860 by Alexander Phemister (1829–1894) for the Miller & Richard foundry in Scotland (commercially available from Bitstream). The

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Baskervaldx</i>	ADFBaskerville	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
Baskervaldx-LF	m, b	n, it, (sl), sw, sc, scit, (scsl)	Regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS

Supported figure styles for Baskervaldx are -LF, -0sF, -TLF, -T0sF, and -Sup.

Table 10.34: Classification of the Baskervaldx font family

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Bookman</i>	TeX Gyre Bonum	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T5, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
qbk	m, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Bookman, <i>italic</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS

Table 10.35: Classification of the Bonum (Bookman) family from the T_EX Gyre distribution

ITC revival by Ed Benguiat has a larger x-height and a moderate stroke contrast that is well suited for body text and display applications.

T_EX Gyre Bonum shown here is based on the URW Bookman L version of the font family (which is set up with the T_EX Gyre `tgbonum` package).

Unicode engines

Matching mathematical fonts are available for Unicode engines; see Figure 12.17 on page 273.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

ITC Bookman 9.6pt/11.5pt
(qbk) TeX Gyre Bonum

10.5.5 Cambria

Cambria is a commercial transitional serif typeface designed by Jelle Bosma with contributions from Steve Matteson and Robin Nicholas. It has even spacing and proportions, is intended to be used for body text, is especially suitable for small print, and displays well on low-resolution screens. This makes it, together with the fact that it offers extensive support for Latin, Greek, Cyrillic, Armenian, IPA symbols, and a full collection of math symbols, a very versatile solution for typesetting documents for consumption on screen as well as on paper.

Commissioned by Microsoft, it is shipped as part of the Windows operating system as well as in several Office products for different platforms. Thus, while the font requires a license for use, many users will have this license if they work on

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Cambria	Cambria	(Encodings: TU)	
—	m, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Only for Unicode engines; see Example 10-5-1 below.

Supported figure styles are lining and oldstyle, selectable through fontspec’s Numbers key.

Table 10.36: Classification of the Cambria family

Windows or because they own a product that installs the font. Because of this and its excellent math capabilities, we decided to include it in the collection even though it is available only for Unicode engines and has the license restrictions.

Unicode engines

There is no support for pdfTeX, only for Unicode engines. Lining figures are the default figure style, but oldstyle figures are supported as well. Below we have selected them through the fontspec feature Numbers=OldStyle.

A larger example of the mathematical typesetting capabilities is shown in Figure 12.18 on page 274.

Cambria 10pt/12pt
(— only TrueType —)
Cambria

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN
FIELDS. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve*
vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10-5-1

10.5.6 Bitstream Charter

Bitstream Charter is an original design by Matthew Carter based on the characters of Pierre-Simon Fournier, intended to work well on low-resolution devices; hence, it contains squared serifs and avoids excessive use of curves and diagonals. It is useful for many applications, including books and manuals. Charter was contributed by Bitstream to the X consortium.

Basic L^AT_EX support for the pdfTeX engine is provided through the package charter, but these days it is much better to use the package XCharter by Michael Sharpe as it offers improved small capitals, oldstyle, superior figures, and the typical options of a modern font package. Mathematical typesetting with matching fonts is shown in Figure 12.19 on page 275.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines, a fontspec configuration is provided.

Bitstream Charter
10pt/12.4pt
(XCharter-T0sF) XCharter

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN
FIELDS. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve*
vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Charter	XCharter	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
XCharter-TLF	m, b	n, it, sl, sc, scit, scsl	Charter Roman, <i>italic</i> , bold , <i>slanted</i> , and SMALL CAPS
Supported figure styles for XCharter -TLF, -T0sF, -Inf, and -Sup.			

Table 10.37: Classification of the Charter family

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Charis SIL	CharisSIL	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
charssil-TLF	m, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Charis SIL, bold , <i>italic</i> , and SMALL CAPS <i>ITALICS</i>
The supported figure style for Charis SIL is -TLF.			

Table 10.38: Classification of the Charis SIL family

10.5.7 Charis SIL — A design based on Bitstream Charter

Charis SIL (developed by SIL International) is a transitional typeface that is closely based on the design of Bitstream Charter. However, its glyphs were completely redrawn with significant differences in serif structure, proportions, diacritics, and other characteristics, which can be easily seen if you compare the previous and the following sample. The font offers support for Latin and Cyrillic, and, if used with a Unicode engine, offers many additional glyphs including a full set of IPA symbols. \LaTeX integration is provided through the CharisSIL package by Bob Tennent.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING
IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve*
vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Charis SIL 10pt/12.4pt
(charssil-TLF) CharisSIL

10.5.8 Caslon — Reinterpreted as Libre Caslon

The Libre Caslon fonts are designed by Pablo Impallari as a reinterpretation of the typeface by William Caslon (1692-1766) from the 17th century of which there are still many revivals in wide use today. \LaTeX support for all engines is available with the librecaslon package by Bob Tennent.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found Floating In
Fields. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-
vis the dæmonic *phaenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Libre Caslon 9pt/12pt
(LibreCsln-0sF)
Libre Caslon Text

Table 10.39 on the next page shows the NFSS for Libre Caslon. Note that this family

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Libre Caslon</i>	Libre Caslon Text	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
LibreCsln-LF	m	n, it, (sl)	Libre Caslon regular <i>and italic typeface</i>
	b	n, (it), sl	Libre Caslon bold and bold artificially slanted

Supported figure styles for Libre Caslon are -LF, -OsF, -TLF, -Inf, and -Sup.

Table 10.39: Classification of the Libre Caslon font family

has no bold italic face. Instead, the bold type is artificially slanted and this is what you get if you ask for bold italics.

10.5.9 Gandhi Serif

The Gandhi Serif fonts have a matching sans serif design described on page 15. Table 10.6 with their NFSS classifications are there too.

Gandhi Serif 10pt/12pt
(GandhiSerif-OsF)
Gandhi Serif

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN
FIELDS. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve*
vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.5.10 Inria Serif

The Inria Serif family, designed for the French research institute Inria, has a matching sans serif design (but no monospaced variant). You can find the description of both families on page 16 and the NFSS classification in Table 10.8 on page 17.

Inria Serif 10pt/12pt
(InriaSerif-OsF)
Inria Serif

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found Floating In
Fields. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve*
vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.5.11 Libertinus Serif

The Libertinus families consists of a serif, a sans serif, and a monospaced family. They are described together on page 19, and their NFSS classifications can be found in Table 10.10 on page 20.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines matching math fonts are available; see Figure 12.23 on page 277 for a page sample.

Libertinus Serif 10pt/12pt
(LibertinusSerif-OsF)
Libertinus Serif

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN
FIELDS. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis
the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Literaturnaya</i>	— no OpenType —	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, OT1)	
tli	m, b	n, it, sl, sc, si	Literaturnaya, <i>italic</i> , <i>slanted</i> , bold , and <i>ITALIC SMALL CAPS</i>

The unusual si shape name selects Small Caps italics (normally this is called scit).

Table 10.40: Classification of the Literaturnaya font family

10.5.12 Literaturnaya — A favorite in the days of the USSR

Based on a design by Hermann Berthold from 1899, Literaturnaya was designed around 1940 by Anatolii Shchukin. Towards the end of the last century a digital version was developed by Lyubov Kuznetsova. The family was predominately used in the USSR and other socialist countries and was the standard Cyrillic typeface there in the period between 1950 and 1990. After the cold war it got more and more displaced by the then popular Times New Roman and is nowadays rarely seen.

TeX support files are provided by Vladimir Volovich. To make the font the default roman typeface, load his literat package (no options). The fonts are not part of the standard distributions but can be installed with getnonfreefonts.

Unicode engines

TrueType versions of the family are freely available on the Web, but they are not distributed through CTAN, so you have to install them yourself and then use fontspec if you want to use the family with a Unicode engine.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix*’s official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

Literaturnaya 10pt/12pt
(tli) — no OpenType —

10.5.13 Lucida Bright

Lucida Bright is a modern design, but according to its designer Charles Bigelow, “[...] its inner forms are based on writing styles of the Italian Renaissance, and its sophisticated detailing is reminiscent of printing types of the French Enlightenment. It can be classified as a ‘Transitional’ or ‘Reale’ style of typeface, like the 18th century designs of Baskerville or Fournier”. They show, however, in my opinion aspects of Didone and even tend towards slap serif in parts — which just proves that classification in few categories is difficult.

The Lucida Bright fonts have matching sans and monospaced designs and a full set of math fonts. The families are described together in Section 10.2.10 on page 21, and the NFSS classification is given in Table 10.11 on page 22. They are the fonts we have used for this book, except that we have set them even smaller than the typeface

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>New Century Schoolbook</i>	TeX Gyre Schola	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T5, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
qcs	m, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	New Century Schoolbook in <i>italic</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS

Table 10.41: Classification of the Schola (New Century Schoolbook) family from the T_EX Gyre distribution

example here. Examples of typesetting mathematics (in all engines) are exhibited in Figures 12.24 to 12.26 on pages 278–279.

Lucida Bright 9pt/12pt
(hlh) Lucida Bright OT

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10-5-2

10.5.14 Lucida Fax

This is another typeface in the Lucida extended family of fonts that you obtain if you purchase the set from TUG. It is particularly useful if you need small sizes because it remains nicely readable. Its description and NFSS classification is given in Section 10.2.10 on page 21.

Lucida Fax 7pt/9pt
(hlx) —no OpenType—

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found Floating In **Fields**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.5.15 Merriweather

The Merriweather fonts have a matching sans serif described on page 25. The NFSS classifications are found in Table 10.2.11 on same page.

Merriweather 9pt/12pt
(Merriwthr-OsF)
Merriweather

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.5.16 New Century Schoolbook (T_EX Gyre Schola)

The New Century Schoolbook typeface was designed at the beginning of the 20th century by Morris Fuller Benton (1872–1948) of the American Type Founders. It was created in response to a publisher’s commission that sought a typeface with maximum legibility for elementary schoolbooks. Italics were originally not part of the design; they were added in later revivals by Linotype and ITC.

T_EX Gyre Schola shown here is based on the URW Century Schoolbook L version of the font family (which is set up with the T_EX Gyre tgschola package).

Typesetting with matching mathematical fonts is available for all engines; see Figures 12.20 to 12.21 on page 276 for examples.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN
FIELDS. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve*
vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

New Century Schoolbook
9.6pt/12pt
(qcs) TeX Gyre Schola

10.5.17 Plex Serif

The IBM Plex families consist of a serif, sans serif, and monospaced family described on page 30. The NFSS classifications are found in Table 10.16 on page 31.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found Floating In
Fields. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve*
vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Plex Serif 10pt/12pt
(IBMPlexSerif-TLF)
IBM Plex Serif

10.5.18 PT Serif

Paratype's PT fonts also consist of a serif, sans serif, and monospaced family. They are described on page 30, and the NFSS classifications are in Table 10.16 on page 31.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found Floating In
Fields. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve*
vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

PT Serif 10pt/12.6pt
(PTSerif-TLF) PT Serif

10.5.19 Quattrocento

The Quattrocento families consists of serif and sans serif fonts. They are described together on page 33, and their NFSS classifications can be found in Table 10.18 on page 33.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found Floating In Fields. —
¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic
phœnix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

Quattrocento 9pt/11pt
(Quattro-LF)
Quattrocento

10.5.20 Times Roman (T_EX Gyre Termes and Tempora)

Times Roman is Linotype's version of Monotype's Times New Roman, which was originally designed under the direction of Stanley Morison (1889–1967) for the *London Times* newspaper. The Adobe font that is built into many PostScript devices uses Linotype's 12-point design.

T_EX Gyre Termes shown here is based on the URW Roman No9 L version of the font family, which is set up with the T_EX Gyre tgtermes package.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Times Roman</i>	TeX Gyre Termes	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T5, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
qtm	m, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Times Roman, <i>italic</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS

Table 10.42: Classification of the Termes (Times) family from the T_EX Gyre distribution

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Times Roman</i>	TeXGyreTermesX	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
ntxlf	m, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Times Roman, <i>italic</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS with 12345
ntxosf	m, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Times Roman, <i>italic</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS with 12345

The family offers normal and larger Small Caps, but a selection can be made only through the newtxtext package, and not by changing the NFSS font family name.

Table 10.43: Classification of the Termes (Times) family from the New TX distribution

Times Roman 10pt/12pt
(qtm) TeX Gyre Termes

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**.
— ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
dæmonic *phænix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Michael Sharpe developed a slight modification of the family under the name of TeXGyreTermesX that is used by his newtxtext package. It offers slightly enlarged small capitals (with the option `largesc`) and can set up oldstyle numerals (with the option `osf`). It also alters the positions of dots above *i* and *j* and makes other minor modifications.

Note that while it is possible to select oldstyle numbers by choosing the appropriate NFSS family name, the enlarged small capitals are available only when using the support package (which we did in the next sample behind the scenes).

Times Roman (with options largesc,osf) 10pt/12pt
(ntxosf) TeXGyreTermesX

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**.
— ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
dæmonic *phænix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Matching math fonts for all engines are available; see Figures 12.27 and 12.28 on pages 280–281 to see them in action.

There has been another font based on URW Roman No9 L constructed by Alexey Kryukov. He extended it with Greek and Cyrillic glyphs, and Michael Sharpe added L^AT_EX support for it in the form of the `tempora` package. This is useful for documents that

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Tempora</i>	Tempora	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LGR, and TU)	
Tempora-TLF	m, b	n, it, (sl)	Tempora regular <i>and italic typeface</i> and bold <i>and bold italic</i>

Supported figures style for Tempora are -TLF, -T0sF, and -Sup.

Table 10.44: Classification of the Tempora font family

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Tinos</i>	Tinos	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
Tinos-TLF	m, b	n, it, (sl)	Tinos regular <i>and italic typeface</i> and bold <i>and bold italic</i>

Supported figure style for Tinos is -TLF.

Table 10.45: Classification of the Tinos font family

need Latin as well as Greek or Cyrillic — for purely Latin-based documents, `tgterms` or `newtxtext` are preferable as they support small capitals, which `tempora` does not:

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [Floating In Fields](#).
— ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Tempora 10pt/12pt
(Tempora-T0sF) **Tempora**

10.5.21 Tinos

As an alternative to New Times Roman, the Tinos fonts by Steve Matteson have a very similar running length. They are, however, not offering a Small Caps shape.
L^AT_EX support for all engines is available with the `tinos` package by Bob Tennent.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [Floating In Fields](#).
— ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Tinos 10pt/12pt
(Tinos-TLF) **Tinos**

10.5.22 STIX 2

The Scientific and Technical Information Exchange (STIX) Fonts project, sponsored by several leading scientific and technical publishers, intends to provide a comprehensive font set of mathematical symbols and alphabets under a royalty-free license for electronic and print publications. STIX 2, the current version, is an original design by Ross Mills, John Hudson, and Paul Hanslow of Tiro Typeworks, loosely based on Times New Roman but with a larger x-height.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
STIX 2	STIX Two Text	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, and TU)	
SticksTooText-LF	m, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	STIX 2 regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS

Supported figure styles for STIX 2 fonts are -LF, -OsF, -TLF, -T0sF, -Sup, and -Inf.

Table 10.46: Classification of the STIX 2 font family

ℒ_{TeX} support for the pdf_{TeX} engine is provided through the `stickstootext`¹ package by Michael Sharpe. It accepts the typical options such as `scaled` or `osf` but also others related to STIX’s math support; see the package documentation for details. Typesetting examples involving mathematics are shown in Figure 12.30 on page 282 (pdf_{TeX}) and Figure 12.31 on page 282 (Unicode engines).

Unicode engines

The STIX fonts also include text glyphs for Latin, Greek, and Cyrillic as well as IPA symbols, but these are available only with Unicode engines.

STIX 2 10pt/12pt
(SticksTooText-0sF)
STIX Two Text

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.5.23 Utopia (Heuristica, Erewhon, and Linguistics Pro)

Utopia, designed by Robert Slimbach, combines the vertical stress and pronounced stroke contrast of 18th century Transitional types with contemporary innovations in shape and stroke details.

Andrey V. Panov extended the Utopia font family under the name Heuristica by adding additional accented glyphs, additional figure styles, and small capitals for the regular weight. The ℒ_{TeX} support for pdf_{TeX} is provided by Michael Sharpe through the package `heuristica` with options like `scaled`, `osf`, and others.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines a `fontspec` specification file is provided.

Utopia 9.6pt/12pt
(Heuristica-T0sF)
Heuristica

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **Fields**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Michael also extended the Heuristica family further by adding small capitals in all weights and real slanted shapes. He also changed the oldstyle design somewhat

¹This is indeed the package name: there is also a `stix2`, but that offers only very basic support.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Heuristica	Heuristica	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, LY1, and TU)	
Heuristica-TLF	m	n, it, (sl), sc	Heuristica regular, <i>italic</i> , and SMALL CAPS SHAPES
	b	n, it, (sl)	Heuristica bold and <i>bold italic</i> but no Small Caps
Erewhon	Erewhon	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, LY1, and TU)	
erewhon-LF	m, b	n, it, sl, sc	Erewhon regular, <i>italic</i> , <i>slanted</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS
Linguistics Pro	Linguistics Pro	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, T3, TS3, OT1, LGR, LY1, and TU)	
LinguisticsPro-LF	m, b	n, it, (sl), sc	Linguistics Pro in <i>italic</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS

Supported figure styles for Heuristica are TLF, -T0sF, -Sup, and -Inf.
Supported figure styles for Erewhon are LF, -0sF, -TLF, -T0sF, -Sup, and -Inf.
Linguistics Pro is available only in -LF and -0sF.

Table 10.47: Classification of the Utopia family and its forks

and scaled down the fonts by 6% to match the original Utopia font sizes. His version is named Erewhon, and the support package is erewhon. Compare it to the previous example.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN
FIELDS. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis
the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Utopia 10pt/12pt
(erewhon-T0sF) erewhon

A different extension of the original Utopia is Linguistics Pro by Stefan Peev. It is of special interest if you need to combine Latin, polytonic Greek, and/or Cyrillic, as it offers modern Bulgarian letterforms and with Unicode engines also traditional forms for the Russian language (available through the OpenType Stylistic Set 01). Otherwise they are more or less identical to Heuristica with a slightly wider running length. It also offers IPA symbols.

L^AT_EX support for all engines is provided by Bob Tennent through the package linguisticspro, which accepts the option scaled.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN
Fields. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis
the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Linguistics Pro 9.6pt/12pt
(LinguisticsPro-0sF)
LinguisticsPro

Michael Sharpe prepared matching math fonts that work well with all of the Utopia variants; see Figure 12.32 on page 283 for an example page. There is also the Fourier-GUTenberg bundle by Michel Bovani, which too is based on Adobe Utopia and offers full support for math, especially in the French style. For text, the fonts have a glyph coverage similar to Heuristica, which is why they are not covered here, but only briefly in Chapter 12 on math fonts.

10.6 Didone (Modern) serif fonts

Fonts classified as Didone or Modern (with Modern referring to a period starting in the second half of the 18th century) take the Transitional design ideas even further and introduce new aspects. The name is coined from the surnames of two very famous type designers of the period: Firmin Didot (1764–1836) and Giambattista Bodoni (1740–1813).

Stroke contrast now becomes even more pronounced, with heavy parts getting even heavier and light strokes being reduced to hairlines. The weight axis is now completely vertical. The counters (the partially enclosed, somewhat rounded space in characters such as a, c, e, f, s, etc.) often become very tight. Serifs are very abrupt, narrow, and unbracketed with a nearly constant stroke width. While we have seen in Transitional fonts that some character terminals start looking more like droplets, Didone fonts often show pronounced ball terminals, either full circles or heavier teardrops.

Below we show a handful of high-quality Didone designs that have been set up for use with pdf \TeX and can be used as alternatives to \LaTeX 's bread and butter family Computer Modern (which too is a Didone design). Most have equally good coverage in terms of different shapes (compared to CM) but often offer more weights — in the case of the Noto families this amounts to a truly impressive number of possible alternatives.

10.6.1 Computer Modern Roman / Latin Modern Roman

Donald Knuth's Computer Modern, the first fonts available for \TeX , are classical Didone designs, and so are the derived Latin Modern fonts. Together with their matching sans serif and monospaced companions and the matching math fonts, they enable you to typeset any kind of document using a single consistent “design”. For many years these have been the fonts that most people had to use and even nowadays usually still use (after all, they work out of the box) — so much that seeing COMPUTER MODERN TYPEFACES became a synonym for “was produced with \LaTeX ” and vice versa.¹ You can find the description of these families in Section 9.5.1 and their NFSS classifications in Tables 9.5 and 9.6.

Latin Modern Roman

10pt/12pt (l μ r)

Latin Modern Roman

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines only there is also the New Computer Modern OpenType family of fonts by Antonis Tsolomitis. Its aim is to augment Computer Modern and enable typesetting in many more scripts and languages. See Figure 12.36 on page 286 for an example of its math typesetting quality.

¹I hope that this chapter proves that this is an unwarranted prejudice and that we are long past the stage that using \LaTeX means “you can use any font you like as long as it is called Computer Modern”.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>GFS Bodoni</i>	GFS Bodoni	(Encodings: T1, OT1, LGR, and TU)	
<code>bodoni</code>	<code>m</code> , <code>b</code>	<code>n</code> , <code>it</code> , <code>sl</code> , <code>sc</code> , <code>sco</code>	GFS Bodoni regular, bold , <i>italic</i> , <i>slanted</i> , and <code>SMALL CAPS</code>
<i>The supported figure style for GFS Bodoni is -TLF.</i>			
<i>Unfortunately, <code>sco</code> is a nonstandard shape name for <code>scsl</code>; thus, low-level shape commands are needed to access it.</i>			

Table 10.48: Classification of the GFS Bodoni font family

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Libre Bodoni</i>	Libre Bodoni	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
<code>LibreBodoni-TLF</code>	<code>m</code> , <code>b</code>	<code>n</code> , <code>it</code> , (<code>sl</code>)	Libre Bodoni regular, <i>italics</i> , bold , and <i>bold italics</i>
<i>Supported figure styles for Libre Bodoni are -TLF, -Sup, and -Inf.</i>			

Table 10.49: Classification of the Libre Bodoni font family

10.6.2 GFS Bodoni

GFS Bodoni was designed by Takis Katsoulidis based on the work of the famous 18th century Italian type cutter Giambattista Bodoni (1740–1813). \LaTeX support is provided through the package `gfsbodoni`, which defines the command `\textbodoni` to access the font selectively. If loaded with the option `default`, GFS Bodoni is also made the roman default font. Besides Latin languages, the family fully supports polytonic Greek.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix*’s *official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

GFS Bodoni 10pt/12pt
(`bodoni`) **GFS Bodoni**

10.6.3 Libre Bodoni

Designed by Pablo Impallari and Rodrigo Fuenzalida, the Libre Bodoni fonts are based on the 19th century Morris Fuller Benton (1872–1948)’s Bodoni ATF design. Note that this family appears to be already quite dark in its medium weight. \LaTeX support for all engines is available with the `LibreBodoni` package by Bob Tennent.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix*’s *official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Libre Bodoni 10pt/12pt
(`LibreBodoni-TLF`)
Libre Bodoni

Not that there is anything wrong with Computer or Latin Modern, but as you can see, there are many beautiful designs out there, and they are usually just a package load away.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
GFS Didot	GFS Didot	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LGR, and TU)	
udidot	m, b	n, it, sl, sc, sco	GFS Didot regular, bold , <i>italic</i> , <i>slanted</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS SLANTED</i>

The supported figure style for GFS Didot is -TLF.
Unfortunately, sco is a nonstandard shape name for scs1; thus, low-level shape commands are needed to access it.

Table 10.50: Classification of the GFS Didot font family

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Theano Didot	Theano Didot	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LGR, LY1, and TU)	
TheanoDidot-TLF	m, b	n	Theano Didot regular and bold only

Supported figure styles for Theano Didot are -TLF and -T0sF.

Table 10.51: Classification of the Theano Didot font family

10.6.4 GFS Didot

In 1805 the famous French type cutter Firmin Didot (1764–1836) designed a new Greek typeface influenced by the neoclassical ideals of that time that, after arriving in Greece, became widely popular and was used for all kinds of publications until the last decades of the 20th century.

GFS Didot is a new design from 1994 by Takis Katsoulidis based on Didot’s original work. Unfortunately the Latin alphabet added into the font cannot be recommended because it contains very inconsistently designed characters, and the fact that it is partly inspired by Hermann Zapf’s (1918–2015) Palatino does not help. It also means that it is no longer a pure Didone design but shows a mixture of oldstyle and modern aspects. Thus, while the font provides a valuable polytonic Greek alphabet, you should match it with a different font for typesetting in Latin; i.e., do not use the gfsdidot support package because that makes the Latin font the default. A much better alternative for classical texts is Theano Didot described in the next section.

GFS Didot 10pt/12pt
(udidot) GFS Didot

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **Fields**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix*’s *official rôle* in fluffly soufflés?

10.6.5 Theano Didot

The Theano Didot font is one of several fonts designed by Alexey Kryukov from historic samples, in this case, the work of Firmin Didot (1764–1836). Originally meant to be polytonic Greek-only typefaces, Alexey supplemented them with stylistically matching Latin letters (and some of his fonts, though not Theano Didot, also with

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Old Standard	Old Standard	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, LGR,, LY1, and TU)	
OldStandard-TLF	m, b	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Old Standard, <i>italic</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS

Supported figure styles for Old Standard are -TLF and -Sup.

Table 10.52: Classification of the Old Standard font family

Cyrillic). This makes them very suitable for scholarly work reproducing the look of old classical text editions.

TeX support for all engines is provided through the package TheanoDidot by Bob Tennent offering the options `scaled` and `oldstyle`. Note that this font, though of high-quality, does not offer small capitals, italics, or an oblique shape and is therefore suitable only for more classical texts that do not require such shapes.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often **naïve** vis-à-vis the dæmonic **phoenix’s official rôle** in fluffy soufflés?

Theano Didot 10pt/12pt
(TheanoDidot-T0sF)
Theano Didot

10.6.6 Noto Serif

The Noto Serif fonts (an extended version of Droid Serif with well-designed small capitals) have matching sans and monospaced designs. The families are described together on page 26, and the NFSS classification is given in Table 10.14 on page 28. A sample page with matching math fonts is shown in Figure 12.38 on page 287.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often **naïve** vis-à-vis the dæmonic **phoenix’s official rôle** in fluffy soufflés?

Noto Serif 10pt/12pt
(NotoSerif-0sF)
Noto Serif

10.6.7 Old Standard

Designed by Alexey Kryukov, Old Standard (revised in 2019 by Robert Alessi) reproduces the printing style of the early 20th century, reviving a specific type of Modern (classicist) style of serif typefaces. The glyph set provided by the font supports type-setting of Old and Middle English, Old Icelandic, Cyrillic (with historical characters, extensions for Old Slavonic and localized forms), Gothic transliterations, critical editions of Classical Greek, Latin, etc.

Unicode engines

However, some of the glyph variants are available only if a Unicode engine is used, because of limitations in the number of glyph slots in Type 1 fonts.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Playfair Display	Playfair Display	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
PlyfrDisplay-LF	m, b, eb	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Playfair Display regular <i>italic</i> , SMALL CAPS, bold , and extra-bold

Supported figure styles for Playfair Display are -LF, -0sF, and -Sup.

Table 10.53: Classification of the Playfair Display font family

LaTeX support for all engines is available with the OldStandard package by Bob Tennent.

Old Standard 10pt/12pt
(OldStandard-TLF)
Old Standard

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN
FIELDS. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve*
vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.6.8 Playfair Display

As the name indicates, Playfair Display, designed by Claus Eggers Sørensen, is well suited for titling and headlines, but less so for continuous body text. The font has a large x-height, while capitals and descenders are fairly short. The latter allows it to be set with little leading if space requirements are tight.

LaTeX support for all engines is available with the PlayfairDisplay package by Bob Tennent supporting the usual options such as scaled or oldstyle.

Playfair Display 10pt/12pt
(PlyfrDisplay-0sF)
Playfair Display

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN
FIELDS. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve*
vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

This sample shows the black weight (eb) at a larger size. It works nicely in combination with one of the Baskerville revivals.

Playfair Display (option
black) 30pt/34pt
(PlyfrDisplay-0sF)
Playfair Display

Playfair Display 123

10.7 Slab serif (Egyptian) fonts

Slab serif fonts got introduced in the 19th century, and perhaps because anything Egyptian was quite popular after Napoleon’s expedition of Egypt, they were popularized as Egyptian Hieroglyph Slab Serif and are these days still sometimes referred to as Egyptian fonts even though there is no real relationship to this country whatsoever.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Bitter</i>	Bitter	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
Bttr-TLF	m	n, it, (sl)	Regular and <i>italic shapes</i>
	b	n	Bold has no italics

Table 10.54: Classification of the Bitter font family

Slab serif fonts form a large and varied genre. What they have in common is a fairly heavy weight (especially in fonts for display usage), low contrast between thick and thin strokes, and very prominent unbracketed serifs. Otherwise, many different design concepts are employed by different families. There are geometric designs with minimal stroke differences (like a sans serif font with added serifs), while others are very similar to traditional serif designs but with more prominent serifs.

Slab serif designs intended especially for display usage are usually very bold with exaggerated serifs to get the reader’s attention in posters, etc., by “shouting out loud”. Fonts oriented towards use at body text size or smaller usually show less extreme characteristics and often use only slab serifs to increase legibility but are otherwise close to conventional book type fonts. This is certainly true for the families shown below that are all intended for continuous text.

You can find further slab serif designs in Section 10.9 on monospaced fonts. However, the fonts there are less suited for use in continuous text because all the characters show the same width. They have therefore got their own section.

10.7.1 Bitter

Designed by Sol Matas, Bitter is a contemporary slab serif typeface for text, specially for comfortably reading on computer displays. It has a large x-height and little variation in stroke width and is somewhat darker than the regular weight of most other fonts. L^AT_EX support for all engines is available through the bitter package by Bob Tennent, which supports the option `scaled` for specifying a scale factor.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix’s* official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

Bitter 10pt/13pt
(Bttr-TLF) **Bitter**

10.7.2 Concrete Roman

For the text of his book *Concrete Mathematics* [58], Donald Knuth designed a new typeface [94] to go with the Euler mathematics fonts designed by Hermann Zapf (1918–2015) [202]. This font family, called Concrete Roman, was created from the Computer Modern METAFONT sources by supplying different parameter settings.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Concrete Roman</i> CMU Concrete (Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, and TU)			
ccr	m	n, it, sl, sc	Concrete Roman medium in <i>italic</i> , <i>slanted</i> , and SMALL CAPS shapes
	c	sl	<i>Concrete Roman condensed slanted (only OT1 and 9pt font size)</i>
	b	n, it	— Not available with pdfTeX, only in Unicode engines —

Table 10.55: Classification of the Concrete font family

L^AT_EX support for the pdfT_EX engine is provided through the package `ccfonts` by Walter Schmidt (1960–2021). The package takes care of small but important typographical details, such as increasing the value of `\baselineskip` slightly because of the darker color of the font. The feature provided by the `exscale` package is available as the package option `exscale`; see Section 9.5.7 on page 704 for details. The `exscale` package itself cannot be used because it is set up to work with only Computer Modern math fonts.

Example pages of mathematical typesetting are shown in Figure 12.39 on page 288 (with Concrete Math) and in Figure 12.40 on page 289 (with Euler fonts).

Note that the font has no bold weight. Instead, the L^AT_EX support file uses Computer Modern bold by default as a substitute, which does not work very well if the fonts are mixed (though it gets emphasized due to the color change).

Concrete Roman 10pt/13pt
(ccr) **CMU Concrete**

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING**
In Fields. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often naïve
vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

As an alternative for the missing bold typeface, the `ccfonts` package offers the option `boldsans` to use the semi-bold series of the Computer Modern Sans fonts as a replacement. This means that if used without any further adjustments, headings in standard classes are then typeset using this font series, which actually looks quite nice.

Unicode engines

OpenType fonts of the family for use in Unicode engines do exist. They offer additional characters and also true **bold** and **bold italic** shapes.

The condensed cut is of very limited use because it exists only as a slanted shape in OT1 encoding and 9pt font size. It was produced just for typesetting the marginal comments in Don’s book and was never meant for general use. Still, if you have a similar use case, it might be handy. Below we deliberately asked for condensed slanted at 12pt: watch what happens:

*Concrete Roman condensed
slanted 12pt/14pt*
(ccr) — only OT1 —

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In**
Fields. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the
dæmonic *phoenix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.7.3 DejaVu Serif

DejaVu Serif exists in a regular and a condensed cut and has a matching sans serif and monospaced design. You can find the description of all three families on page 12 and their NFSS classifications in Table 10.4 on page 13.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines there are matching math fonts, shown in Figure 12.41 on page 289.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

DejaVu Serif 10pt/13pt
(DejaVuSerif-TLF)
DejaVu Serif

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

DejaVu Serif Condensed 10pt/13pt
(DejaVuSerifCondensed-TLF)
DejaVu Serif Condensed

10.7.4 Roboto Slab Serif

Roboto Slab Serif has a sans serif companion and a matching monospaced font as well. All three families are described in more detail on page 34, and their NFSS classifications are found in Table 10.19 on page 35.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Roboto Slab Serif 10pt/13pt
(RobotoSlab-TLF)
Roboto Slab

10.7.5 Source Serif Pro

Yet another family with matching sans serif and monospaced families but by more than one designer is Source Serif Pro. The three families are described together on page 35, and their NFSS classifications are found in Table 10.20 on page 36.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Source Serif Pro 10pt/13pt
(SourceSerifPro-OsF)
Source Serif Pro

10.8 Sans serif fonts

In contrast to the serif font families, we present all sans serif font families in alphabetical order by name. There are, of course, also classification schemes for sans serif fonts, but the distinctions are much hazier and are less useful when trying to find suitable fonts.

Many books on typography discuss how to select a suitable sans serif font to a given serif one, but it depends so much on how the two are used together that we give only a few general rule of thumbs here.

If the sans font is used as part of the body text and is intermixed with the serif font within sentences (as in this book, where we use sans serif for denoting package names, etc.), then it is best if both families have the same flow, i.e., a similar width of individual characters and consequentially a similar running length. In most cases they should also have similar characteristics in x-height, capital height, slope of their italics, etc., so that they blend well with each other.

If you are typesetting using one of the few larger “meta”-families such as Latin Modern or IBM Plex, then this is automatically the case when selecting the corresponding sans serif font from the family.

For many fonts shown in the previous sections, you have to decide on a companion sans serif by yourself — by setting up some typical sample text and studying the results. Sometimes one or the other family needs scaling up or down to achieve a similar x-height; this is why most font packages offer you a `scaled` or `scale` option. For example, here we combine Palatino (T_EX Gyre Pagella) with Quattrocento Sans scaled down to 96% to get matching x-heights.

<p>The dazed brown fox quickly gave 123456789 jumps while counting back- wards from 9 to 1. <i>Then he repeated</i> <i>the exercise!</i></p>	<pre>\usepackage{tgpagella} \usepackage[sf,scaled=.96]{quattrocento} The \textsf{dazed brown} fox quickly gave 123456789 jumps while \textsf{counting backwards} from 9 to 1. \emph{Then he \textsf{repeated} the exercise}!</pre>
--	---

10-8-1

Below we show samples of roughly thirty sans serif designs. A few of them are suitable only for display, but many can be successfully used as the main document font or as a companion to a serif family, depending on your use case. Typically the support packages offer options to set the fonts up either way.

10.8.1 Alegreya Sans

The Alegreya Sans family has a matching serif design (but no monospaced variant). You can find the description of both families on page 11 and the NFSS classification in Table 10.2 on the same page.

Alegreya Sans 10pt/12pt
(AlegreyaSans-Of)
Alegreya Sans

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. —
;But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic
phœnix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

10.8.2 Arimo

The Arimo family, designed by Steve Matteson, is a sans serif font that is metrically compatible with Arial. It contains the glyphs necessary for typesetting in many languages including Greek and Cyrillic. However, the non-Latin glyphs are accessible

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Arimo</i>	Arimo	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
Arimo-TLF	m, b	n, it, (sl)	Arimo regular, <i>italic</i> , and boldface

Table 10.56: Classification of the Arimo family

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Avant Garde</i>	TeX Gyre Adventor	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
qag	m	n, (it), sl, sc, (scit), scsl	Avant Garde regular, <i>oblique</i> , bold , and <i>SMALL CAPS</i>

Table 10.57: Classification of the Adventor (Avant Garde) family from the T_EX Gyre distribution

only in Unicode engines at the moment as the support files for pdfT_EX cover only Latin languages. Basic L^AT_EX support for all engines is provided through the package `arimo` by Bob Tennent, which sets up Arimo as `\sfdefault` and offers the usual options such as `scaled` or `sfdefault`.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [Floating In Fields](#). — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Arimo 10pt/12pt
(Arimo-TLF) **Arimo**

10.8.3 ITC Avant Garde Gothic (T_EX Gyre Adventor)

Avant Garde Gothic was designed by Herb Lubalin and Tom Carnase based on the distinctive logo designed for *Avant Garde* magazine. It is a geometric sans serif type with basic shapes built from circles and lines. It is effective for headlines and short texts, but it needs generous leading. A (commercially available) condensed version that better retains legibility in lengthier texts was designed by Ed Benguiat. The T_EX Gyre Adventor version shown here is based on the URW Gothic L version of the font family.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [FLOATING IN FIELDS](#). — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

ITC Avant Garde Gothic 9pt/13pt
(qag) **TeX Gyre Adventor**

The font family can be set up as the document sans serif font with the help of the T_EX Gyre `tgadventor` package. Like all other T_EX Gyre support packages it provides the options `scale`, `matchlowercase`, and `matchuppercase`, to allow matching font family to other fonts used in the document.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Cabin</i>	Cabin, CabinCondensed	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
Cabin-TLF	m, sb, b c, sbc, bc	n, it, (sl), sc	Regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS Condensed regular and <i>semi-bold italic</i>

Supported figure styles for Cabin are -TLF and -Sup.

Table 10.58: Classification of the Cabin font family

10.8.4 Cabin

Cabin is a humanist sans serif family designed by Pablo Impallari. It offers four weights with italics and true small capitals. A compatible condensed family is also available. According to the designer, it was inspired by typefaces from Eric Gill (1882–1940) and Edward Johnston, with a touch of modernism.

L^AT_EX support for all engines is available through the package `cabin` by Bob Tennent providing the typical options such as `condensed`, `sfdefault`, `medium`, and others.

Cabin 10pt/12pt
(Cabin-TLF) Cabin

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

If the package is loaded with the option `condensed`, you get the following output:

Cabin (option condensed)
10pt/12pt (Cabin-TLF)
Cabin Condensed

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.8.5 Chivo

Chivo (Spanish for goat) is a Grotesque sans serif font family designed by Héctor Gatti. It offers upright and italic shapes in seven weights from thin (extra-light) to black (ultra-bold). The light and regular weights are usable for body texts, while the bold and black weights are meant for headlines. L^AT_EX support for all engines is provided through the package `Chivo` by Arash Esbati. With the options `thin`, `light`, or `medium` you can change the default sans serif body font, and with `extrabold` or `black` you can request that the black weight be used instead of bold.

Chivo 10pt/12pt
(Chivo-0sF) Chivo

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Chivo	Chivo	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
Chivo-LF	el, l, m, sb, b, eb, ub	n, it, (sl)	Regular, light, <i>italic</i> , and <i>bold italic shapes</i>

Supported figure styles for Chivo are -LF, -OsF, -TLF, -TosF, -Sup, and -Inf.

Table 10.59: Classification of the Chivo font family

Here is a sample of Chivo Black produced with `\fontseries{ub}\selectfont`:

With a price of £148, almost anything can be found **Floating In Fields. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often **naïve** vis-à-vis the dæmonic phoenix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?**

Chivo 10pt/12pt
(Chivo-OsF) Chivo

10.8.6 Classico — A design based on Optima

Optima, designed by Hermann Zapf (1918–2015) in 1958, is a font family I personally like very much. It is very calligraphic in nature with varying stroke width in the letters and works well as a display face but equally well in body text size for whole documents. It is a bit like an Oldstyle serif design with only implied serifs. In 1998 Zapf in collaboration with KOBAYASHI Akira reworked its design, which was released under the name Optima Nova. As with many fonts by Hermann Zapf (1918–2015) Optima has many admirers and as a result unfortunately many pirate copies (usually of inferior quality) under different names.

If you are using a Macintosh, then Optima (but not Optima Nova) is one of the system fonts, which is lovely as it allows you to use this superb family in a Unicode T_EX engine directly using its TrueType name `Optima`. But this does not work on other operating systems or for pdfT_EX.

Fortunately, there is also the family URW Classico, which is a rework of the original Optima by its designer for the URW foundry. This family is freely usable (though you have to install it yourself via `getnonfreefonts` due to its license restrictions).

L^AT_EX support for all engines is provided through the package `classico` by Bob Tennent providing the options `scaled` to specify a scale factor and `sfdefault` (which I often use) to make this family the default document family. Being a sans serif design the italics are more oblique than true italics, and the small capitals are faked — however, they do not come out too badly because the characters have a varied stroke width.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often **naïve** vis-à-vis the dæmonic phoenix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

URW Classico 10pt/12pt
(URWClassico-LF)
URW Classico

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
URW Classico	URW Classico	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
URWClassico-LF	m, b	n, it, (sl), (sc)	Regular, bold , <i>italic</i> , FAKED SMALL CAPS and FAKED BOLD SMALL CAPS

The supported figure style for URW Classico is -LF.

Table 10.60: Classification of the URW Classico font family

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Clear Sans	Clear Sans, Clear Sans Light, Clear Sans Thin	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
ClearSans-TLF	m, sb, b	n, it, (sl)	Clear Sans regular, <i>italic</i> , and boldface
	el, l	n	Clear Sans Light and extra-light (only upright)

Supported figure styles for Clear Sans are -LF and -TLF.

Table 10.61: Classification of the Clear Sans family

10.8.7 Clear Sans

Clear Sans is a design by Daniel Ratighan at Monotype. It was commissioned by Intel, and it is particularly suitable for user interfaces, because it has slightly narrow proportions and unambiguous glyphs; e.g., “I” (uppercase i) has serifs to distinguish it from “l” (lowercase l). Clear Sans is available in three weights with corresponding italics (regular, medium, and bold), plus thin and light upright (without italics).

Basic L^AT_EX support for all engines is provided through the package ClearSans by Bob Tennent, which sets up Clear Sans as `\sfdefault` and offers the usual options such as `scaled`, `sfdefault`, or `medium`. The light and thin weights are made available through `\textsf{sl}` and `\textsf{st}`, respectively.

Clear Sans 10pt/12pt
(ClearSans-TLF)
Clear Sans

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [Floating In Fields](#). — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.8.8 CM Bright

The CM Bright sans serif fonts have a matching monospaced design. The families are described on page 12, and the NFSS classification is given in Table 10.3.

The sample on the opposite page shows the words “almost anything” in bold extended. A (probably better) alternative is semi-bold as shown in the sample on

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Cuprum	Cuprum	(Encodings: T1 and TU)	
cpr	m, b	n, it, (sl), (sc)	Regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , and <i>boldface italic</i>

Table 10.62: Classification of the Cuprum font family

page 12. Matching math fonts are exhibited in Figure 12.42 on page 290.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [Floating In Fields](#). — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

CM Bright 10pt/12pt (cmbr)
— no OpenType —

10.8.9 Cuprum

Cuprum, designed by Ivan Gladkikh (a.k.a. Jovanny Lemonad), is a narrow grotesque sans serif typeface inspired by the works of Miles Newlyn. It is offered in two weights and upright and italic shapes. L^AT_EX support for pdfT_EX is provided through the package `cuprum` by Federico Roncaglia. Somewhat unconventionally, the missing Small Caps shape is aliased to boldface when pdfT_EX is used.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines you have to set up the font using `fontspec`.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [Floating In Fields](#). — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Cuprum 10pt/12pt
(cpr) Cuprum

10.8.10 Cyklop

The Cyklop typeface was designed roughly a hundred years ago in a workshop at a type foundry in Warsaw. This sans serif typeface has a highly modulated stroke with vertical stems that are much heavier than horizontal ones. Most characters have thin rectangles as additional counters, which give the unique shape of the characters. The font is available in only one weight — a request for the medium series gives you the same as `\bfseries`.

L^AT_EX support for pdfT_EX is provided through the package `cyklop` by Janusz Marian Nowacki (1951–2020), but that just sets `\rmdefault`, which is not very helpful unless you really want the whole document in this typeface. As the font is mainly of interest for headings and other display material and not for body text, it is probably best to set it up manually as needed.

A Cyklop Heading

Cyklop 17pt/20pt
(cyklop) Cyklop

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Cyklop	Cyklop	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T5, OT1, OT4, LY1, and TU)	
cyklop	m (b)	n, it, sc, scit	Regular, <i>italic</i>, and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i>

Table 10.63: Classification of the Cyklop font family

10.8.11 DeJaVu Sans

DeJaVu Sans has a matching slab serif and a monospaced design. You can find the description of all three families on page 12 and their NFSS classifications in Table 10.4 on page 13.

<i>DejaVu Sans 9pt/12.5pt</i> (DejaVuSans-TLF) DejaVu Sans	With a price of £148, almost anything can be found Floating In Fields . — ħBut aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phænix’s official rôle</i> in fluffy soufflés?
<i>DejaVu Sans Condensed 9pt/12.5pt</i> (DejaVuSansCondensed-TLF) DejaVu Sans Condensed	With a price of £148, almost anything can be found Floating In Fields . — ħBut aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phænix’s official rôle</i> in fluffy soufflés?

10.8.12 Fira Sans

Erik Spiekermann’s Fira Sans has a matching monospaced design. This Humanist Sans works great as a body text font with many different weights and also offers polytonic Greek if that is needed. Both families are described on page 14, and their NFSS classifications can be found in Table 10.5.

Unicode engines

Xiangdong Zeng provided matching math fonts; see Figure 12.43 on page 291.

<i>Fira Sans 10pt/13pt</i> (FiraSans-OsF) Fira Sans	With a price of £148, almost anything can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS . — ħBut aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phænix’s official rôle</i> in fluffy soufflés?
--	--

10.8.13 Gandhi Sans

The Gandhi Sans fonts have a matching serif family described on page 15. The NFSS classifications are found in Table 10.6.

<i>Gandhi Sans 10pt/12pt</i> (GandhiSans-OsF) Gandhi Sans	With a price of £148, almost anything can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS . — ħBut aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often <i>naïve</i> vis-à-vis the dæmonic <i>phænix’s official rôle</i> in fluffy soufflés?
---	--

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>GFS Neo-Hellenic</i>	GFS Neo-Hellenic	(Encodings: T1, OT1, LGR, and TU)	
neohellenic	m, b	n, it, sl, sc, sco	Regular, bold , <i>italic</i> , <i>oblique</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS OBLIQUE</i>

The supported figure style for GFS Neo-Hellenic is -TLF.

Unfortunately, `sco` is a nonstandard shape name for `scsl`; thus, low-level shape commands are needed to access it.

Table 10.64: Classification of the GFS Neo-Hellenic font family

10.8.14 GFS Neo-Hellenic

In 1927 a Greek type called New Hellenic designed by Victor Scholderer (1880–1971) was cut by Lanston Monotype in Britain. GFS Neo-Hellenic is a digitalization based on this design. It offers both true italics and an oblique shape, although the differences are not easy to spot.

LaTeX support is provided through the package `gfsneohellenic` that defines the command `\textneohellenic` to access the font selectively. If loaded with the option `default`, GFS Neo-Hellenic is also made the roman default font. The family is well matched to mathematical fonts from CM Bright, which makes this an option when typesetting with pdfTeX. Besides Latin languages, it fully supports polytonic Greek.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING** **In Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

GFS Neo-Hellenic 10pt/12pt
(neohellenic)
GFS Neohellenic

Unicode engines

In 2018, GFS Neohellenic Math, a matching math font, was commissioned. This font exists only in OpenType format and thus can be used only with Unicode engines. It is made available through the package `gfsneohellenicot`. As a high-quality solution for sans serif text and math, this makes the package very attractive for situations such as presentations; see Figure 12.44 on page 291.

10.8.15 Gillius

The Gillius family of fonts designed by Hirwen Harendal was inspired by Eric Gill's (1882–1940) famous Gill Sans. It is available in medium and condensed width in all faces. LaTeX support for all engines is provided through the packages `gillius` and `gillius2` by Bob Tennent. The option `condensed` lets you use the condensed faces for the whole document.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Gillius 10pt/12pt
(GilliusADF-LF)
Gillius ADF

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Gillius ADF</i>	Gillius ADF	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
GilliusADF-LF	m, b	n, it, (sl)	Regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , and <i>bold italic</i>
<i>Gillius ADF Condensed</i>	Gillius ADF Cond	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
GilliusADFCond-LF	m, b	n, it, (sl)	Condensed, <i>italic</i> , bold , and <i>bold italic</i>
<i>Gillius ADF No2</i>	Gillius ADF No2	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
GilliusADFNoTwo-LF	m, b	n, it, (sl)	Regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , and <i>bold italic</i>
<i>Gillius ADF No2 Condensed</i>	Gillius ADF No2 Cond	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
GilliusADFNoTwoCond-LF	m, b	n, it, (sl)	Condensed, <i>italic</i> , bold , and <i>bold italic</i>

The supported figure style for Gillius and Gillius No2 is -LF.

Table 10.65: Classification of the Gillius and Gillius No2 font families

Gillius No2 has some slight redesigns in certain characters, e.g., the “a” vs. “a”, and in general slightly less wide round shapes. As a result, it runs a little tighter, which can be seen in the last line of the sample:

Gillius No2 10pt/12pt
(GilliusADFNoTwo-LF)
Gillius ADF No2

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

The condensed fonts are implemented as a separate family; thus, `\textbf` and `\textit` produce condensed shapes as well.

Gillius No2 Condensed 10pt/12pt
(GilliusADFNoTwoCond-LF)
Gillius ADF No2 Cond

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.8.16 Helvetica (T_EX Gyre Heros)

Helvetica was originally designed by Max Miedinger (1910–1980) for the Haas foundry of Switzerland, hence the name. It was later extended by the Stempel foundry, with further refinements being made by Mergenthaler Linotype in the United States. Helvetica is purported to be one of the most popular typefaces of all time.

T_EX Gyre Heros shown here is based on the URW Nimbus Sans L version of the font family (which is set up with the T_EX Gyre tgheros package):

Helvetica 10pt/13pt
(qhv) TeX Gyre Heros

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Helvetica</i>		TeX Gyre Heros (Encodings: T1, TS1, T5, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
qhv	m, c, b, bc	n, (it), sl, sc, (scit), scsl	Helvetica regular, <i>oblique</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS
<i>Helvetica Condensed</i>		TeX Gyre Heros Cn (Encodings: T1, TS1, T5, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
qhvc	m, x, b, bx	n, (it), sl, sc, (scit), scsl	Helvetica Narrow regular, <i>oblique</i> , bold , and SMALL CAPS

Table 10.66: Classification of the Heros (Helvetica) family from the T_EX Gyre distribution

The T_EX Gyre Heros Condensed family implements a narrow version of Helvetica. It can be selected through the package option `condensed` or directly via the NFSS family name.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Helvetica Condensed
10pt/12pt (qhvc)
TeX Gyre Heros Cn

10.8.17 Inria Sans

The Inria Sans family has a matching serif design. You can find the description of both families on page 16 and their NFSS classifications in Table 10.8 on page 17.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found Floating In Fields. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Inria Sans 10pt/12pt
(InriaSans-OsF)
Inria Sans

10.8.18 Iwona

Iwona was designed by Małgorzata Budyta for typesetting newspapers and similar periodicals as an alternative version of her Kurier fonts shown below. The difference lies in the absence of ink traps, which typify the Kurier family, e.g., “any” (Kurier) vs. “any” (Iwona). As a result, Iwona runs noticeably shorter even though it has a similar design. The family is offered in five weights and two widths and supports an extended character set including Latin and Cyrillic.

L^AT_EX support for pdfT_EX is provided through the package `iwona` by Janusz Marian Nowacki (1951–2020). The default weight can be changed through `light`, and with `condensed` you can reduce the width. Note that the package installs the family as the document body font, i.e., as `\rmdefault`!

Matching math fonts are available too and can be activated with the option `math`. They cover the basic symbols but not those from `amssymb`, which would keep their shapes if used; see sample pages in Figures 12.45 to 12.46 on page 292.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Iwona</i>	Iwona	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, OT2, OT4, LY1, and TU)	
iwona	l, m, sb, b, eb lc, c, sbc, bc, ebc	n, it, sc, scit	Regular, bold , <i>italic</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i> ... and condensed, bold , <i>italic</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i>
<i>Iwona Light</i>	Iwona Light	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, OT2, OT4, LY1, and TU)	
iwonal	m, sb, b, eb, ub c, sbc, bc, ebc, ubc	n, it, sc, scit	Light regular, bold , <i>italic</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i> ... and light condensed, bold , <i>italic</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i>
<i>Iwona Condensed</i>	Iwona Cond	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, OT2, OT4, LY1, and TU)	
iwonac	l, m, sb, b, eb lx, mx, sbx, bx, ebx	n, it, sc, scit	Condensed regular, bold , <i>italic</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i> ... and expanded, bold , <i>italic</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i>
<i>Iwona Light Condensed</i>	Iwona Light Cond	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, OT2, OT4, LY1, and TU)	
iwonalc	m, sb, b, eb, ub mx, sbx, bx, ebx, ubx	n, it, sc, scit	Regular, bold , <i>italic</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i> ... and expanded, bold , <i>italic</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i>

The series specifications in *Iwona Light* are shifted by one weight with respect to *Iwona*; e.g., m in *Iwona* becomes sb in *Iwona Light*. Similarly, the expansion codes are shifted; e.g., bx in *Iwona Condensed* is the same as b in *Iwona*. The slanted shapes (sl, scsl) are accepted but generate a warning and are then replaced by italics (it, scit).

Table 10.67: Classification of the Iwona font family

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines you need to set up the font yourself using fontspec declarations.

Iwona 10pt/12pt
(iwona) **Iwona**

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Iwona Light 10pt/12pt
(iwonal) **Iwona Light**

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

For comparison, here are the condensed versions for both regular and light:

Iwona Condensed 10pt/12pt
(iwonac) **Iwona Cond**

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Iwona Cond. Light 10pt/12pt
(iwonalc) **Iwona Light Cond**

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.8.19 Kp (Johannes Kepler) Sans

Kp Sans has both a matching serif and monospaced design. When used with pdf \TeX , certain features, such as special ligatures or oldstyle numerals, can be activated by altering the family name as described on page 17; you can find the description of all three families and their NFSS classifications in Table 10.9 on page 18. If used with Unicode engines, the features can be activated through the typical feature sets as supported by fontspec. An example with mathematics is shown in Figures 12.47 on page 293.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN
FIELDS. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve
vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Kp Sans 10pt/12pt
(jkpss) **KpSans**

10.8.20 Kurier

For her diploma in typeface design in 1975 at the Warsaw Academy of Fine Arts, Małgorzata Budyta designed the sans serif typeface Kurier with its characteristic ink traps. The family is offered in five weights and two widths and supports an extended character set including Latin and Cyrillic.

\LaTeX support for pdf \TeX is provided through the package `kurier` by Janusz Marian Nowacki (1951–2020). The default weight can be changed with the option `light`, and with `condensed` you can reduce the width. Note that the package installs the family as the document body font, i.e., as `\rmdefault`!

Matching math fonts can be activated with the option `math`. They cover the basic symbols but not those from `amssymb`, which would keep their shapes if used; see Example 12.48 on page 294.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines you need to set up the font yourself using fontspec declarations.

Kurier is well suited as a display typeface; the example here shows the light version:

Kurier Light as heading font

Kurier Light 20pt/24pt
(kurierl) **Kurier Light**

For comparison, here are the condensed versions in body text size:

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS.
— ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Kurier Condensed 10pt/12pt
(kurierc) **Kurier Cond**

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN FIELDS. —
¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic
phænix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

Kurier Light Cond. 10pt/12pt
(kurierlc) **Kurier Light Cond**

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Kurier</i>	Kurier	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, OT2, OT4, LY1, and TU)	
kurier	l, m, sb, b, eb	n, it, sc, scit	Regular, bold , <i>italic</i> & <small>SMALL CAPS</small> <i>ITALICS</i>
	lc, c, sbc, bc, ebc		... and condensed, bold , <i>italic</i> & <small>SMALL CAPS</small> <i>ITALICS</i>
<i>Kurier Light</i>	Kurier Light	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, OT2, OT4, LY1, and TU)	
kurierl	m, sb, b, eb, ub	n, it, sc, scit	Light regular, bold , <i>italic</i> & <small>SMALL CAPS</small> <i>ITALICS</i>
	c, sbc, bc, ebc, ubc		... and light condensed, bold , <i>italic</i> & <small>SMALL CAPS</small> <i>ITALICS</i>
<i>Kurier Condensed</i>	Kurier Cond	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, OT2, OT4, LY1, and TU)	
kurierc	l, m, sb, b, eb	n, it, sc, scit	Condensed regular, bold , <i>italic</i> & <small>SMALL CAPS</small> <i>ITALICS</i>
	lx, mx, sbx, bx, ebx		... and expanded, bold , <i>italic</i> & <small>SMALL CAPS</small> <i>ITALICS</i>
<i>Kurier Light Condensed</i>	Kurier Light Cond	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, OT1, OT2, OT4, LY1, and TU)	
kurierlc	m, sb, b, eb, ub	n, it, sc, scit	Light condensed regular, bold , <i>italic</i> & <small>SMALL CAPS</small> <i>ITALICS</i>
	mx, sbx, bx, ebx, ubx		... and expanded, bold , <i>italic</i> & <small>SMALL CAPS</small> <i>ITALICS</i>

The series specifications in *Kurier Light* are shifted by one weight with respect to *Kurier*; e.g., m in *Kurier* becomes sb in *Kurier Light*. Similarly, the expansion codes are shifted; e.g., bx in *Kurier Condensed* is the same as b in *Kurier*. The slanted shapes (sl, scsl) are accepted but generate a warning and are then replaced by italics (it, scit).

Table 10.68: Classification of the Kurier font family

10.8.21 Latin Modern Sans

You can find the description of the Latin Modern families in Section 9.5.1 and their NFSS classifications in Table 9.6 on page →I 687.

Just like its cousin Computer Modern Sans, this family has no small capitals, and a request to `\textsc` uses Latin Modern Roman instead — a questionable choice, but consistent with the way CM fonts have been set up for decades.

Latin Modern Sans 10pt/12pt
(lmss) [Latin Modern Sans](#)

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.8.22 Lato

Lato is a geometric sans serif design by Łukasz Dziedzic. A few years ago, the family was greatly extended with the help of Adam Twardoch and Botio Nikoltchev to cover more than 3000 glyphs and can now be used to typeset most Latin or Cyrillic-based languages, Greek, and IPA phonetics. It is offered in several weights from hairline to extra-heavy and has upright and italic shapes. `\slshape` is aliased to italics.

ℒ_ṼTeX support for all engines is provided through the package `lato` by Mohamed El Morabity. To set up Lato as the default sans serif font, use `defaultsans`. To set

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Lato</i>	Lato (Encodings: T1, TS1, T2A, T2B, T2C, LGR, OT1, and TU)		
lato-LF	ul, el, l, m, sb, b, eb, ub	n, it, (sl)	Regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , <i>bold italics</i> , ultra-light, extra-light, light, semi-bold, extra-bold , and ultra-bold

Table 10.69: Classification of the Lato font family

it up as the default document font, use the option `default` instead. Use `scaled` to provide a font scaling factor. For other options see the package documentation.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [Floating In Fields](#).
 — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
 dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Lato 10pt/12pt
 (lato-OsF) **Lato**

For comparison, here is the text in extra-light with `\textbf` now producing medium:

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [Floating In Fields](#).
 — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
 dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Lato 10pt/12pt
 (lato-OsF) **Lato**

10.8.23 Libertinus Sans

Libertinus Sans has both a matching serif and monospaced design. The description of all three families is given on page 19 and their NFSS classifications in Table 10.10 on page 20.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [FLOATING IN FIELDS](#).
 — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
 dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Libertinus Sans 10pt/12pt
 (LibertinusSans-OsF)
Libertinus Sans

10.8.24 Libre Franklin

Libre Franklin is an interpretation of Morris Fuller Benton (1872–1948)'s Franklin Gothic, designed by Pablo Impallari, Rodrigo Fuenzalida, and Nhung Nguyen. It offers upright and italics in nine weights from ultra-light to ultra-bold.

TeX support for all engines is provided through the package `librefranklin` by Bob Tennent with typical options such as `scaled`, `default`, `sfdefault`, etc.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [Floating In Fields](#). — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve*
 vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Libre Franklin 10pt/12pt
 (LibreFranklin-TLF)
Libre Franklin

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Libre Franklin	Libre Franklin	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
LibreFranklin-TLF	ul, el, l, sl, m, sb, b, eb, ub	n, it, (sl)	Regular and <i>italics</i> from <i>thin</i> to ultra

Supported figure styles for Libre Franklin are -TLF and -Sup.

Table 10.70: Classification of the Libre Franklin font family

10.8.25 Lucida Sans

Lucida Sans comes with matching serif and monospaced designs, described together in Section 10.2.10 on page 21. Their NFSS classifications are given in Table 10.11 on page 22. This is the font family used in this book for package names and other items.

Lucida Sans 9pt/12pt
(hls) Lucida Sans OT

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10-8-2

10.8.26 Merriweather Sans

Merriweather Sans has a matching serif design. The description of both families is given on page 25 and their NFSS classifications in Table 10.12.

Merriweather Sans 9pt/12pt
(MerriwthrSans-TLF)
MerriweatherSans

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.8.27 Mint Spirit

The Mint Spirit family of fonts were originally designed by Hirwen Harendal for use as a system font on a Linux Mint system. The font combines aspects of Universalis, NeoGothis, and Gillius by the same designer and combines it with the appearance of the Ubuntu font family designed by Dalton Maag.

ℒ^AT_EX support for all engines is provided through the packages mintspirit and mintspirit2 by Bob Tennent.

Mint Spirit 10pt/12pt
(MintSpirit-OsF)
Mint Spirit

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Mint Spirit No2 has some slight redesigns in certain characters, i.e., “AMNVWvwy” vs. “ΑΜΝVWvwvy” (Mint Spirit), making them more conventional. The initial design certainly has its own charm (which I favor), but perhaps those of No2 blend better with the shapes of the other characters — the choice is yours.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Mint Spirit</i>	Mint Spirit	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
MintSpirit-LF	m, b	n, it, (sl)	Regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , and <i>bold italic</i>
<i>Mint Spirit No2</i>	Mint Spirit No2	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
MintSpiritNoTwo-LF	m, b	n, it, (sl)	Regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , and <i>bold italic</i>

Supported figure styles for Mint Spirit and Mint Spirit No2 are -LF, -OsF, -TLF, -T0sF, -Sup, and -Inf.

Table 10.71: Classification of the Mint Spirit and Mint Spirit No2 font families

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Montserrat</i>	Montserrat	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
Montserrat-LF	ul, el, l, sl, m, sb, b, eb, ub	n, it, (sl), scit, (scsl)	Medium, <i>italic</i> & SMALL CAPS Hairline to black
<i>Montserrat Alternates</i>	Montserrat Alternates	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
MontserratAlternates-LF	ul, el, l, sl, m, sb, b, eb, ub	n, it, (sl), scit, (scsl)	Medium, <i>italic</i> & SMALL CAPS. Hairline to black

Supported figure styles for Montserrat and Montserrat Alternates are -LF, -OsF, -TLF, -T0sF, -Sup, and -Inf.

Table 10.72: Classification of the Montserrat font families

10.8.28 Montserrat

Montserrat is a geometric sans serif design by Julieta Ulanovsky inspired by street art from the historical Buenos Aires neighborhood of the same name. There is also a variant called Montserrat Alternates with a noticeably different design. Both fonts are offered in several weights from hairline to heavy and have upright, italic, and Small Caps shapes. `\slshape` is aliased to italics.

\LaTeX support for pdf \TeX is provided through the package `montserrat` by Michael Sharpe. It offers many options to adjust the font loading, e.g., `alternates` to use Montserrat Alternates or `defaultfam` to make the font the default document font. Use `scaled` to provide a font scaling factor and `light`, etc., to adjust the weight. For other options see the package documentation.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines a suitable `fontspec` declarations file is provided.

For comparison we show a medium width and weight sample as well as a sample with the text in extra light and `\textbf` producing medium. This second sample runs

noticeably shorter than the first, even though both are nominally medium width:

Montserrat 10pt/12pt
(Montserrat-OsF)
Montserrat

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official* rôle in fluffy soufflés?

Montserrat 10pt/12pt
(Montserrat-OsF)
Montserrat

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official* rôle in fluffy soufflés?

The variant Montserrat Alternates has a quite different appeal with its more rounded shapes, a Humanist “e”, and the unusual fl-ligature.

Montserrat Alternates
10pt/12pt
(MontserratAlternates-OsF)
Montserrat Alternates

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official* rôle in fluffy soufflés?

10.8.29 Noto Sans

The Noto Sans fonts (an extended version of Droid Sans with well-designed small capitals) have matching serif and monospaced designs. The families are described on page 26, and the NFSS classification is given in Table 10.14 on page 28. Michael Sharpe prepared matching math fonts for use when the family is selected for body text; an example page is shown in Figure 12.50 on page 295.

Noto Sans 10pt/12.6pt
(NotoSans-OsF) Noto Sans

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official* rôle in fluffy soufflés?

10.8.30 Overlock

Overlock, designed by Dario Manuel Muhafara, is a rounded sans serif typeface inspired by the Overlock sewing technique. It is offered in three weights with upright and italic shapes. Small capitals are available only in medium weight. L^AT_EX support for all engines is provided through the package `overlock` by Bob Tennent with the usual options. The package adjusts `\scshape` so that it automatically changes families behind the scenes to account for this somewhat unconventional font setup.

Overlock 10pt/12pt
(Ovr1ck-OsF) Overlock

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official* rôle in fluffy soufflés?

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Overlock</i>	Overlock	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
Ovr1ck-LF	m, b, eb	n, it, (sl)	Regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , <i>bold italic</i> , and extra-bold with italics
	m	sc	ONLY REGULAR SMALL CAPS

Supported figure styles for Overlock are -LF and -0sF.

Table 10.73: Classification of the Overlock font family

10.8.31 Plex Sans

The Plex Sans family has a matching serif and monospace design. The description of all three families is given on page 30, and their NFSS classifications are in Table 10.16 on page 31.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [Floating In Fields](#). — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Plex Sans 10pt/12pt
(IBMPlexSans-TLF)
IBM Plex Sans

10.8.32 PT Sans

Paratype's PT Sans is also accompanied by a matching serif and monospace design. The descriptions are given on page 31 and the NFSS classifications in Table 10.17 on page 32. The sans family also exists in a narrow version, but that has no italic shape.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [Floating In Fields](#). — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

PT Sans 10pt/12.6pt
(PTSans-TLF) PT Sans

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [Floating In Fields](#). — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

PT Sans Narrow 10pt/12.6pt
(PTSansNarrow-TLF)
PT Sans Narrow

10.8.33 Quattrocento Sans

Quattrocento Sans also has a companion serif design but no monospaced variant. The description of both families is given on page 33 and the NFSS classifications in Table 10.18.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found [Floating In Fields](#). — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Quattrocento Sans 9pt/11pt
(QuattroSans-LF)
Quattrocento Sans

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Raleway	Raleway	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
Raleway-TLF	el, l, m, sb, b, eb	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Regular, <i>italic</i> , and BOLD SMALL CAPS
	t, mb, k	n, it, (sl), sc, scit, (scsl)	Also <i>some</i> nonstandard weights

Supported figure styles for Raleway are -TLF and -T0sF.
Unfortunately, the font family uses the nonstandard series names `t` (thin) and `k` (black) instead of the standard series names `ul` (ultra light) and `ub` (ultra bold). The `mb` (medium) is halfway between the standard `m` and `sb` and does not fit into the NFSS naming conventions. It can serve as a replacement for `m`, e.g., via `\DeclareFontSeriesDefault`.

Table 10.74: Classification of the Raleway font family

10.8.34 Raleway

Raleway is a sans serif display typeface, designed by Matt McInerney. In 2012 it was extended by Pablo Impallari and Rodrigo Fuenzalida to cover nine weights with upright, italic, and Small Caps shapes. With Unicode engines it offers a number of stylistic alternates inspired by more geometric sans serif typefaces than its neo-grotesque-inspired default character set. \LaTeX support for all engines is provided through the package `raleway` by Silke Hofstra.

Raleway 10pt/12pt
(Raleway-T0sF) Raleway

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.8.35 Roboto Sans

Roboto Sans exists in two widths and has a matching monospaced font as well as a slab serif companion. All three families are described in more detail on page 34, and the NFSS classifications are found in Table 10.19 on page 35.

Roboto 10pt/12pt
(Roboto-0sF) Roboto

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Roboto (option condensed)
10pt/12pt (Roboto-0sF)
Roboto Condensed

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.8.36 Rosario

Rosario is a Humanist sans serif designed by Héctor Gatti with classic proportions, subtle contrast, and weak endings. It comes in two weights with upright and italic shapes. As often, `\slshape` is aliased to the italics. \LaTeX support for all engines is provided through the package `Rosario` by Arash Esbati.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Rosario	Rosario	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
Rosario-LF	l, m, sb, b	n, it, (sl)	Regular, <i>italic</i> , bold , light, and <i>semi-bold italic shapes</i>

Supported figure styles for Rosario are -LF, -OsF, -TLF, -TOf, -Sup, and -Inf.

Table 10.75: Classification of the Rosario font family

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**.
 — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
 dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Rosario 10pt/12pt
 (Rosario-OsF) Rosario

10.8.37 Source Sans Pro

Source Sans Pro is yet another family with matching serif and monospaced families, but by more than one designer. They are described together on page 35, and the NFSS classifications are found in Table 10.20 on page 36.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**.
 — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
 dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Source Sans Pro 10pt/12pt
 (SourceSansPro-OsF) Source Sans Pro

10.8.38 Universalis

Universalis is a legible modern style font family designed by Hirwen Harendal suitable as an alternative to designs from Adrian Frutiger (1928–2015) such as Univers or Frutiger. It is available in two weights in upright and italics and also has condensed shapes.

L^AT_EX support for all engines is provided by Bob Tennent through the package `universalis` supporting options such as `scaled`, `sfdefault`, and `condensed`.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**.
 — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
 dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Universalis 10pt/12pt
 (UniversalisADFStd-LF) Universalis ADF Std

The package offers the option `condensed` to use the condensed running width with all shapes.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phoenix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Universalis (option condensed) 10pt/12pt
 (UniversalisADFStd-LF) Universalis ADF Cond

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Universalis	Universalis ADF Std, Universalis ADF Std Cond		(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)
UniversalisADFStd-LF	m, b	n, it, (sl)	Regular, bold , <i>italic</i> , and <i>bold italic</i>
	c, bc		Condensed, bold , <i>italic</i> , and <i>bold italic</i>

Supported figure style for Universalis is -LF.

Table 10.76: Classification of the Universalis font family

10.9 Monospaced (typewriter) fonts

The choice of monospaced (typewriter) fonts for use in program listings and other applications is not very wide though it has considerably increased in recent years. Of course, with the Computer or Latin Modern fonts a suitable typewriter family is included, but if the main document fonts are being replaced, freely available choices for typewriter fonts are still relatively few. While staying with Computer or Latin Modern Typewriter (which have an identical design) might be an option, the font may not blend well with the chosen document font.

We start with a few guidelines for selecting a suitable monospaced font and then show examples of roughly a dozen typewriter fonts to choose from.

Running length and
x-height

If you use a monospaced font mixed with your main document font, then you typically want to make it comfortably fit in by not showing large deviations from the normal running length nor from the x-height of your body font. The following example compares LuxiMono (scaled down to 85% using the option `scaled`), Computer Modern Typewriter, and Adobe Courier (or more precisely T_EX Gyre Cursor). Among those three, LuxiMono has the largest x-height (`\fontdimen5`) and, at the same time, the smallest width. Courier, running very wide, occupies the other end of the spectrum, with CM Typewriter being comfortably in between the two extremes.

LuxiMono:	<code>\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}</code>
The dazed brown fox quickly gave 12345-67890	<code>\usepackage[scaled=0.85]{luximono}</code>
jumps! x-height=4.50502pt	<code>\newcommand\allletters{The dazed brown</code>
CM Typewriter:	<code>fox quickly gave 12345--67890 jumps!</code>
The dazed brown fox quickly gave 12345-67890	<code>x-height=\the\fontdimen5\font\ }</code>
jumps! x-height=4.3045pt	<code>\raggedright</code>
Adobe Courier:	<code>\texttt{LuxiMono:\ \allletters}</code>
The dazed brown fox quickly gave	<code>\par \renewcommand\ttdefault{cmtt}</code>
12345-67890 jumps! x-height=4.17pt	<code>\texttt{CM Typewriter:\ \allletters}</code>
	<code>\par \renewcommand\ttdefault{qcr}</code>
	<code>\texttt{Adobe Courier:\ \allletters}</code>

10-9-1

Besides choosing a font with a suitable running length and x-height, it is often also important to use one that shows characteristically different designs in letters that are otherwise easily mistaken for another. Especially in code display this might

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Algol	AlgolRevived	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
AlgolRevived-TLF	m, sb, (b)	n, sl, (it)	Regular, <i>slanted</i> , and semi bold

Supported figure styles for AlgolRevived are -TLF, -Sup, and -Inf.

Table 10.77: Classification of the AlgolRevived font family

lead to confusion if they look similar or even identical. For this reason all the samples in this section show the text “OI1 or 011?” so that you can judge for yourself how well Capital O differs from 0 (zero) and Capital I is distinguishable from lowercase l as well as from the digit 1. Charles Bigelow has written an interesting article on the subject that discusses how font designers struggled through the centuries with this problem and shows their solutions [20].

⚠ Watch out
for confusingly
similar character
shapes

Another important aspect to check is whether or not the monospaced font contains ligatures that have been set up for use with T_EX. While using ligatures is normally a sign of high typographical quality and it is great that T_EX does this automatically, this is not wanted with monospace fonts; in fact in a line like

⚠ Beware
of bad ligatures

Often we *officially* find offers floating in far offline fjords.

the “fi” and “fl” ligatures look rather out of place, especially as the “ffi” and “ffl” ligatures are missing in this particular font. Unfortunately, in older font setups of some fonts, they have been incorrectly added. If that is the case, you have to obtain newer releases of the font support files, or disable the ligatures with the help of the microtype package; see Section 3.1.3 on page →I 135.

Finally, the different shapes of monospaced fonts do not always have the same running width; e.g., regular and bold may both be monospaced, but mixing them may mean that characters are no longer vertically aligned. If this is the case, the font may not be suitable at all¹ or only if you stick to a single (typically the regular) shape. This was the case with the Libertinus fonts in the past but is now corrected. It can also happen when you use the microtype package, and it does not realize that it is a monospaced font that should not be expanded or compressed. If typewriter material does not line up as expected, disable the package and see if that was the cause. If so, you need to explicitly instruct microtype how to handle your font.

⚠ Fonts may just
claim to be fully
monospaced

10.9.1 Algol

Algol is a font by Adrian Frutiger (1928–2015) that was designed for printing Algol code in manuals; i.e., it is not really meant to be a general-purpose text font. One

¹This is, for example, the case with URW Letter Gothic, which is a nice sans serif monospaced font, except that it adds some kerning between a few letters in the version on CTAN, making it basically unsuitable for any purpose.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Anonymous Pro</i>	Anonymous Pro	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, and TU)	
AnonymousPro	m, b	n, sl, (it), (sc)	Regular, <i>italic</i> , bold italic , and BOLD SMALL CAPS
There is also a U encoding for a few symbols.			

Table 10.78: Classification of the Anonymous Pro font family

interesting aspect of it is that it is actually not a monospaced font¹ — so use it only for typewriter if you do not require that all characters line up.

It was digitalized and prepared for use with \LaTeX by Michael Sharpe under the name Algol Revived. Note that his `algolrevived` package sets up the font for use as the document font, unless you give it the option `tt!` With `medium` you select the medium bold series as the default, and with `scaled` you can supply a scale factor as usual. The package also defines a few additional text symbols; see its documentation for details.

Algol 10pt/12pt
(AlgolRevived-TLF)
AlgolRevived

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés? OIl or 011?

10.9.2 Anonymous Pro

Anonymous Pro is a monospaced font family designed by Mark Simonson. Special care has been taken to make it suitable for code display by giving glyphs that could be mistaken for each other distinct shapes (such as zero and capital O, etc.).

\LaTeX support for pdf \TeX is provided through the package `AnonymousPro` by Arash Esbati. With the option `scaled`, you can specify a scale factor for the font. The package also defines a number of command names to access extra symbols, many of which represent Apple keyboard keys, such as `Apple` `↩` `⌘` `⌥`, as well as a few others. Note that the small capitals are faked and appear much too thin.

Anonymous Pro 10pt/12pt
(AnonymousPro)
Anonymous Pro

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN FIELDS**. -- ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés? OIl or 011?

10.9.3 CM Bright Typewriter Light

The CM Bright Typewriter Light fonts are designed to be combined with the sans serif family CM Bright. Both families are described together on page 12, and the NFSS

¹We have included it in this section because it is mainly of interest to display code, which is usually done with monospaced fonts.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Courier	TeX Gyre Cursor	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T5, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
qcr	m	n, (it), sl, sc, (scit), scsl	Courier and <i>oblique shape</i>
	b, (bx)	n, (it), sl, sc, (scit), scsl	Courier bold in OBLIQUE SMALL CAPS

Table 10.79: Classification of the Cursor (Courier) family from the T_EX Gyre distribution

classification is given in Table 10.3. If you think of combining it with other families, consider using LM Typewriter instead, which also offers a light version, and additional shapes.

With a price of £148, *almost anything* can be found
Floating In Fields. – ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s
Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix’s official*
rôle in fluffy soufflés? 0I1 or 011?

CM Bright Typewriter Light
10pt/12pt (cmtl)
—no OpenType—

10.9.4 Courier

Courier is a wide-running, thin-stroked monospaced font. It was designed by Howard Kettler (1919–1999) of IBM and later redrawn by Adrian Frutiger (1928–2015). These days it is often used in combination with Times Roman, producing a striking contrast. One reason for the popularity of this combination is certainly its availability on any PostScript device.

T_EX Gyre Cursor shown here is based on the URW Nimbus Mono L version of the font family (which is set up with the T_EX Gyre tgcursor package).

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be
found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. – ¿But aren’t Kafka’s
Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the
dæmonic *phœnix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?
0I1 or 011?

Courier 10pt/12pt
(qcr) TeX Gyre Cursor

10.9.5 DejaVu Sans Mono

DejaVu Sans Mono is the monospaced font matching the serif and sans serif DejaVu designs. You can find the description of all three families on page 12 and their NFSS classifications in Table 10.4 on page 13.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found
Floating In Fields. – ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß &
Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix’s*
official rôle in fluffy soufflés? 0I1 or 011?

DejaVu Sans Mono
9pt/12.5pt
(DejaVuSansMono-TLF)
DejaVu Sans Mono

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Inconsolata</i>	Inconsolatazi4, InconsolataN	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
zi4	m, b	n	Only upright shape in regular and bold weight available

Table 10.80: Classification of the Inconsolata font family

10.9.6 Fira Mono

This font by Erik Spiekermann is the companion to the Humanist sans serif Fira Sans. See page 14 for the font descriptions and Table 10.5 for the NFSS font classification and further details on the families.

Fira Mono 9pt/11pt
(FiraMono-TLF) *Fira Mono*

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found
Floating In Fields. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's
Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's*
official rôle in fluffy soufflés? OIl or 011?

10.9.7 Go Mono

Designed by Charles Bigelow this monospaced font has Go Sans as the matching sans serif family. See page 15 for the font description and Table 10.7 on page 16 for the NFSS font classification and further details.

Go Mono 9pt/12pt
(GoMono-TLF) *Go Mono*

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found
Floating In Fields. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's
Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's*
official rôle in fluffy soufflés? OIl or 011?

10.9.8 Inconsolata

Inconsolata is a monospaced sans serif font designed by Raph Levien. It is provided in regular and bold weights but offers only a single shape, e.g., no italics, etc. By default, word spaces are flexible; i.e., only the characters are monospaced and thus can be used justified.

LaTeX support for pdfTeX is provided through the package inconsolata by Michael Sharpe. It offers a bundle of options, e.g., `scaled`, `narrow` (for a somewhat condensed width), `hyphenate` (allow hyphenation), `mono` (make word spaces also mono-width), and several others. Support for a number of variant characters such as a nonslashed zero is also provided through options. See the package documentation for details.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines some fontspec configuration files are provided.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic phœnix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés? OIl or 011?

Inconsolata 10pt/12pt
(zi4) [Inconsolatazi4](#)

10.9.9 Kp (Johannes Kepler) Typewriter

Kp Mono has both a matching serif and sans serif design. All three families are described on page 17 where you also find their NFSS classifications in Table 10.9 on page 18. An interesting aspect of the font is that it offers both lining and oldstyle numbers (as shown below). If you prefer lining numerals, use the family jkptt with pdfTeX; with Unicode engines use the feature set of fontspec.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. -- ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic phœnix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés? OIl or 011?

Kp Mono 10pt/12pt
(jkpttosn) [KpMono](#)

10.9.10 Latin Modern Typewriter

If you load the lmodern package, all fonts are going to be from the Latin Modern families. On the Unicode engines Latin Modern is already the default, so you do not even have to load a package.

In either case, this means that `\texttt` selects the regular monospaced version of the Latin Modern Typewriter font. You can find the description of the Latin Modern families in Section 9.5.1 and their NFSS classifications in Table 9.6 on page 1687.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **FLOATING IN Fields**. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic phœnix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés? OIl or 011?

LM Typewriter 10pt/12pt
(lmtt) [Latin Modern Mono](#)

As we have seen in that section, this font actually has several weights, as well as a proportional variant, in addition to the monospaced one. To be able to easily provide access to these variants within a document, as well as setting up any of them as default just for the typewriter font, Michael Sharpe produced the package `zlm` that you can use instead or in addition to `lmodern`.

The package has a number of options, such as `light` or `lightcondensed` to choose the light weight as default, as well as `med` to use the medium weight when bold is requested. Furthermore, the option `proportional` requests the proportionally spaced version instead of the default monospaced one, and `scaled` applies a scale factor, which helps if you combine the font with other families.

The package also offers the commands `\monott`, `\proptt`, and `\lctt` to unconditionally select the monospaced, proportionally, or light condensed version of the font regardless of the options chosen during package loading.

The example below shows the result of these commands in different circumstances. The default here is the light proportional version; thus, we see no change when we explicitly request proportional for the second sentence. `\monott` then forces monospaced glyphs. Then we switch explicitly to light condensed. As you see, that has italics, but the bold comes out in normal running length as there is not a bold condensed series. Finally, in the last line we use `\texttt` again, which switches back to the document default but still keeps the italic shape that was requested earlier.

<p>The dazed brown fox <i>quickly</i> gave 12–3 jumps! (proportional)</p> <p>The dazed brown fox <i>quickly</i> gave 12–3 jumps! (no change)</p> <p>The dazed brown fox <i>quickly</i> gave 12–3 jumps! (monospaced)</p> <p>The dazed brown fox <i>quickly</i> gave 12–3 jumps! (light cond.)</p> <p>The dazed brown fox <i>quickly</i> gave 12–3 jumps! (<i>+italic ...</i>)</p> <p>The dazed brown fox <i>quickly</i> gave 12–3 jumps!</p>	<pre> \usepackage{lmodern} \usepackage[proportional,light]{zlm} \newcommand\allletters{The dazed brown fox \textit{quickly} gave 12--3 \textbf{jumps}!} \texttt{\allletters} (proportional) \par \proptt{\allletters} (no change) \par \monott{\allletters} (monospaced) \par \lctt {\allletters} (light cond.) \par \itshape \lctt {\allletters} (+italic \dots) \par \texttt{\allletters} \par </pre>	10-9-2
--	--	--------

10.9.11 Libertinus Mono

For this font by Philipp H. Poll and Khaled Hosny there exists a matching serif and sans serif family. See page 19 for the font description and Table 10.10 on page 20 for the NFSS font classification and further details on the fonts. I would avoid the bold weight as it is far too dark and fuzzy for my taste.

Libertinus Mono 9pt/12pt
(LibertinusMono-TLF)
Libertinus Mono

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés? OIl or 011?

10.9.12 Lucida's monospaced families

There are several closely related monospaced Lucida designs intended to be used with matching Lucida serif and sans serif families. They are described together in Section 10.2.10 on page 21, and their NFSS classifications are given in Table 10.11 on page 22.

Lucida Typewriter is a serified design running comparably wide, while the other three families are sans serif designs with a shorter running length.

Lucida Typewriter 9pt/12pt
(hlct) —no OpenType—

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. -- ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés? OIl or 011?

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>LuxiMono</i>	—no OpenType—	(Encodings: T1, TS1)	
ul9	m, b	n, sl	LuxiMono and <i>LuxiMono oblique shapes</i>

Table 10.81: Classification of the LuxiMono font family

The differences between the sans serif designs are fairly subtle. Lucida Sans Typewriter has a slanted shape, while the other two have real italics. Lucida Console has noticeably shorter capitals, and there are small alterations in the design of some letter shapes in Lucida Grande Mono. Furthermore, the DK fonts use a slightly “squarish” O by default; see the discussion on page 24 for details.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. -- ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés? OIl or O11?

Lucida Sans Typewriter
9pt/12pt (hlst)
Lucida Sans Typewriter OT

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés? OIl or O11?

Lucida Console 9pt/12pt
(— only OpenType —)
Lucida Console DK

10-9-3

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés? OIl or O11?

Lucida Grande Mono
9pt/12pt
(— only OpenType —)
Lucida Grande Mono DK

10-9-4

10.9.13 Luximono

The Luximono fonts are original designs by Kris Holmes and Charles Bigelow (Bigelow and Holmes, Inc.), for which hinting and kerning tables have been added by URW++ Design and Development GmbH. The family has two weights with upright and oblique shapes. In that respect, it differs from other monospaced fonts, which are often offered only in medium series and more rarely in italic or oblique shapes.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found **Floating In Fields**. -- ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés? OIl or O11?

Luximono 9pt/12pt
(ul9) —no OpenType—

The L^AT_EX integration for pdfT_EX is provided through the luximono package written by Walter Schmidt (1960-2021). If the option scaled is given without a value,

the fonts are loaded at a running length approximately equal to that of Computer Modern Typewriter. Without scaling, LuxiMono has the same running length as Adobe Courier. The fonts are not included in all distributions but can be installed with `getnonfreefonts`.

10.9.14 Noto Sans Mono

The Noto Sans Mono fonts (and the earlier version Droid Sans Mono) have matching serif and sans serif designs. They are described on page 26, and the NFSS classification is given in Table 10.14 on page 28.

Noto Sans Mono 9pt/12pt
(NotoSansMono-TLF)
Noto Sans Mono

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found
FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß &
Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's*
official rôle in fluffy soufflés? OIl or 011?

This family is also offered in three narrow versions (semi-condensed, condensed, and extra-condensed), which is of great help if space requirements are tight. Here is an example of the condensed version:

*Noto Sans Mono (option
condensed) 9pt/12pt*
(NotoSansMono-TLF)
Noto Sans Mono Condensed

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN
FIELDS. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve*
vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?
OIl or 011?

10.9.15 Plex Mono

For the Plex Mono font by Mike Abbink there exists a matching serif and sans serif family. See page 30 for the font description and Table 10.16 on page 31 for the NFSS font classification.

Plex Mono 9pt/12pt
(IBMPlexMono-TLF)
IBM Plex Mono

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found
Floating In Fields. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's
Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's*
official rôle in fluffy soufflés? OIl or 011?

10.9.16 PT Mono

Paratype's PT Mono is the monospaced font intended as a companion to PT Serif and PT Sans — all designed by Alexandra Korolkova. See page 31 for the family descriptions and Table 10.17 on page 32 for the NFSS font classification and further details.

PT Mono 9pt/11pt
(PTMono-TLF) PT Mono

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found
Floating In Fields. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's
Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official*
rôle in fluffy soufflés? OIl or 011?

10.9.17 Roboto Mono

Roboto Mono is the monospaced companion to Roboto Sans and slab serif font Roboto Slab. All three families are described in more detail on page 34, and the NFSS classifications are found in Table 10.19 on page 35.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found
FLOATING IN FIELDS. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's
 Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's official*
rôle in fluffy soufflés? OIl or 011?

Roboto Mono 9pt/11pt
 (RobotoMono-TLF)
 Roboto Mono

10.9.18 Source Code Pro

The monospaced font Source Code Pro is the companion to the families Source Serif Pro and Source Sans Pro. All three are described in more detail on page 35, and their NFSS classifications are found in Table 10.20 on page 36.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found
Floating In Fields. – ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß &
 Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phænix's*
official rôle in fluffy soufflés? OIl or 011?

Source Code Pro 9pt/11pt
 (SourceCodePro-TLF)
 Source Code Pro

10.10 Historical and other fonts

The fonts that we are going to showcase in this section are a mixed bunch that for one or another reason did not fit well into the classification that we used above. A few are historically before the periods covered, e.g., Cinzel and Marcellus that are based on 1st century roman inscriptions. The Blackletter shapes that we cover briefly at the end were the first fonts used as movable type and thus represent the period before the Humanist fonts took over. Because they are useful only in special circumstances, we cover them here.

On the other side of the spectrum are the Chancery and handwriting fonts that are in some sense the predecessors of what we nowadays call the italic shape because the glyph forms were originally developed in the Vatican in the 15th century based on the Humanist minuscule of that time.

Two of the families inspired by chancery handwriting, Almendra and Antykwa Toruńska, are explicitly intended for body text (though they work nicely in display sizes too). Due to their stronger personality, they are suitable only in a few scenarios, which is why they are also placed in this section.

The actual fonts that we exhibit here are — with one exception — all contemporary and have been designed in the last or even in this century. The exceptions are the Fell types, which are digitalized versions of the 17th century originals, charmingly showing all the imperfections of the original type.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Cinzel</i>	Cinzel	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
Cinzel-LF	m, b, eb	n	SMALL CAPS IN THREE DIFFERENT WEIGHTS
<i>Cinzel Decorative</i>	Cinzel Decorative	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
CinzelDecorative-LF	m, b, eb	n	DECORATIVE ALL CAPS ONLY IN THREE WEIGHTS

Table 10.82: Classification of the Cinzel font family

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Marcellus</i>	Marcellus	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
Mrcls-LF	m	n, sc	Regular and SMALL CAPS SHAPES only

Supported figure styles for Marcellus are -LF and -Sup.

Table 10.83: Classification of the Marcellus font family

10.10.1 Cinzel

The classical proportions of the Cinzel fonts are inspired by 1st century roman inscriptions. Designed by Natanael Gama, the fonts are available in three different weights (but naturally, without italics, which is an invention of the 15th century).

TeX support for all engines is provided through the package cinzel by Bob Tennent. If the option default is given, \rmdefault is changed to select the family. In any case, the font is made available through the commands \textcinzel and \textcinzelblack or the declarations \cinzel and \cinzelblack.

Cinzel 10pt/12pt
(Cinzel-LF) Cinzel

WITH A PRICE OF £148, **ALMOST ANYTHING** CAN BE FOUND
FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿BUT AREN'T KAFKA'S SCHLOSS & ÆSOP'S
ŒUVRES OFTEN **NAÏVE** VIS-À-VIS THE DÆMONIC **PHŒNIX'S**
OFFICIAL RÔLE IN FLUFFY SOUFFLÉS?

Upper and lowercase letters in Cinzel Decorative have the same height, but only the uppercase glyphs have decorations; thus, when used with only some letters uppcased, it gives some interesting results.

Cinzel Decorative
10pt/13.6pt
(CinzelDecorative-LF) Cinzel Decorative

ALL UPPERCASE: ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
MIXED CASE: THE DAZED BROWN FOX QUICKLY GAVE 123 JUMPS!

If the cinzel package is used, then \textit or the declaration \itshape switches to the decorative font as long as you are currently typesetting in Cinzel.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Fell Types</i>	IM FELL English	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
IMFELLEnglish-TLF	m	n, it, (sl), sc	Fell regular, <i>italic</i> , and SMALL CAPS shapes

The family has oldstyle numbers despite the fact the suffix -TLF.

Table 10.84: Classification of the Fell Types

10.10.2 Marcellus

Like Cinzel, the Marcellus fonts by Brian J. Bonislawsky are also inspired by classical roman inscriptions. The small capitals are well suited for display text, while the regular version lends itself to a wider range of usage having both capitals and lowercase letters. Note, though, that this family is offered only in regular weight and does not provide any italics.

LaTeX support for all engines is provided through the package `marcellus` by Bob Tennent with the option `scaled` providing a scale factor.

With a price of £148, almost anything can be found FLOATING IN Fields. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic phoenix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

Marcellus 10pt/12pt
(Mrc1s-LF) Marcellus

10.10.3 The Fell Types

The so-called Fell Types, which are of Dutch origin, were in use in the 17th century at the Oxford University Press. They have been procured by Dr. John Fell, Bishop of Oxford and Dean of Christ Church, who also collected an impressive number of ornamental flower specimen. The fonts have been digitalized by Iginio Marini,¹ and LaTeX support for all engines is available through the package `imfellEnglish` by Bob Tennent. The sample shows the fonts at their nominal font size of 13.5pt.

With a price of £148, almost anything can be found FLOATING IN Fields. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often naïve vis-à-vis the dæmonic phoenix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

Fell 13.5pt/15pt
(IMFELLEnglish-TLF)
IM FELL English


Unicode engines

With Unicode engines it is also possible to access the ornamental flower designs collected by Dr. Fell, as shown in the next example. They are available from CTAN but normally not distributed. Thus, you have to download them first, either from there or from the designer's home page.


¹ See the <https://www.iginomarini.com> website.

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
Almendra	Almendra	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, LY1, and TU)	
Almndr-OsF	m, b	n, it, (sl), sc	Regular, italic, bold , and <small>SMALL CAPS</small>


Table 10.85: Classification of the Almendra font family



Dr. Fell collected a larger number of ornamental flower types, some of which are shown in this example.



Which letters produce which FLOWERS was found by looking at the fonts with the `unicodfonttable` package.



```
\usepackage{imfellEnglish}
\newfontfamily\Fellflower{IMFeFlow1.otf}
\newfontfamily\Fellflowerii{IMFeFlow2.otf}

\begin{center}\Fellflower
  KLM ACBCD OPQ \end{center}
Dr.\ Fell collected a larger number of ornamental
flower types, some of which are shown in this example.
\begin{center}\Fellflowerii
  1 Aa 2 \end{center}
Which letters produce which \textsc{Flowers} was
found by looking at the fonts with the
\emph{unicodfonttable} package.
\begin{center}\Fellflowerii
  N m O F o M n \end{center}
```

10-10-1

10.10.4 Almendra

The Almendra family, designed by Ana Sanfelippo, is a typeface inspired by chancery and gothic handwriting. It was exhibited at the Bienal Iberoamericana de Dise~no in 2010 and was part of the German editorial project Typodarium 2012. The font is intended for body text but also works nicely in display sizes. One of its unusual features is that its italics are upright.

LaTeX support for all engines is provided through the package `almendra` by Bob Tennent. With the option `scaled` you can provide a scale factor.

Almendra 10pt/12pt
(Almndr-OsF) Almendra

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOWING IN **Fields**. —
;But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic
phœnix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

10.10.5 Antykwa Toruńska

Antykwa Toruńska, which means “Antiqua of Toruń”, was designed by Zygfryd Gardzielewski, a typographer from the city of Toruń¹ (Thorn), Poland. Some of its characteristic features are the widening of its stems towards the top and the wave-like form of some of the horizontal and diagonal lines as well as the form of its serifs. It was first cut in metal in 1960 in Warsaw and digitalized in 2005 by Janusz Marian

¹The birthplace of Nicolaus Copernicus (Mikołaj Kopernik).

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Antykwa Toruńska</i>			
		Antykwa Torunska	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T5, OT1, OT4, LY1, and TU)
antt	l, m, sb, b	n, it, sc, scit	Regular bold , <i>italic</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i>
	lc, c, sbc, bc		Condensed bold , <i>italic</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i>
<i>Antykwa Toruńska Light</i>			
		Antykwa Torunska Light	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T5, OT1, OT4, LY1, and TU)
anttl	m, sb, b, eb	n, it, sc, scit	Regular, bold , <i>italic</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i>
	c, sbc, bc, ebc		Condensed regular, bold , <i>italic</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i>
<i>Antykwa Toruńska Condensed</i>			
		Antykwa Torunska Cond	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T5, OT1, OT4, LY1, and TU)
anttc	l, m, sb, b	n, it, sc, scit	Regular, bold , <i>italic</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i>
	lx, x, sbx, bx		Expanded regular, bold , <i>italic</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i>
<i>Antykwa Toruńska Light Cond.</i>			
		Antykwa Torunska Light Cond	(Encodings: T1, TS1, T5, OT1, OT4, LY1, TU)
anttlc	m, sb, b, eb	n, it, sc, scit	Regular, bold , <i>italic</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i>
	x, sbx, bx, ebx		Expanded, bold expanded , <i>italic</i> , and <i>SMALL CAPS ITALICS</i> & extra-bold expanded

The series specifications in *Antykwa Toruńska Light* are shifted by one weight with respect to *Antykwa Toruńska*; e.g., *m* in *Antykwa Toruńska* becomes *sb* in *Antykwa Toruńska Light*. Similarly, the expansion codes are shifted; e.g., *bx* in *Antykwa Toruńska Condensed* is the same as *b* in *Antykwa Toruńska*.

Table 10.86: Classification of the Antykwa Toruńska font family

Nowacki (1951–2020). It is offered in five weights and two widths. Note that there is no `\slshape`.

LaTeX support for pdfTeX is provided through the package `antt` by Janusz Marian Nowacki (1951–2020). The standard weight can be selected through the options `regular` (default) and `light`, and with `condensed` you can reduce the width.

Matching math fonts are available too and can be activated with the option `math`. They cover the basic symbols but not those from `amssymb`, which would keep their shapes if used; see Figures 12.51 to 12.52 on page 296.

Unicode engines

For Unicode engines you need to provide your own `fontspec` declaration.

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Antykwa Toruńska Light
10pt/12pt (anttl)
Antykwa Torunska Light

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren’t Kafka’s Schloß & Æsop’s Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix’s official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Antykwa Toruńska
10pt/12pt
(antt) *Antykwa Torunska*

For comparison, here are the condensed versions:

Antykwa Toruńska Light Condensed 10pt/12pt (anttlc)
Antykwa Torunska Light Cond

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Antykwa Toruńska Condensed 10pt/12pt (anttc)
Antykwa Torunska Cond

With a price of £148, **almost anything** can be found FLOATING IN **FIELDS**. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.10.6 Lucida Casual, Calligraphy, and Handwriting

In the Lucida set of fonts sold by TUG there are three typefaces that are inspired in varying degrees by handwriting. You can find their NFSS 10.11 on page 22 together with those of other Lucida families. Lucida Casual supports upright and italic shapes; the others only italics as is typical for handwritten fonts.

Lucida Casual 9pt/12pt
(hlcn) — no OpenType —

With a price of £148, *almost anything* can be found *Floating In Fields*. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Lucida Calligraphy 9pt/13pt
(hlce)
Lucida Calligraphy OT

With a price of £148, almost anything can be found Floating In Fields. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Lucida Handwriting 9pt/13pt
(hlcw)
Lucida Handwriting OT

With a price of £148, almost anything can be found Floating In Fields. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

10.10.7 Zapf Chancery (T_EX Gyre Chorus)

Zapf Chancery is another and quite famous contemporary script based on chancery handwriting, as developed during the Italian Renaissance for use by the scribes in the papal offices. Highly legible, it can be usefully applied for short texts and applications like invitations and awards.

T_EX Gyre Chorus shown here is based on the URW Chancery L Medium Italic version of the font (which is set up by the T_EX Gyre tgchorus package). Note that this font is available only in an italic shape, which is why the sample text does not show any bold or small capitals.

ITC Zapf Chancery 10pt/12pt
(qzc) TeX Gyre Chorus

With a price of £148, almost anything can be found Floating In Fields. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Æsop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the dæmonic *phœnix's official rôle* in fluffy soufflés?

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Zapf Chancery</i>	TeX Gyre Chorus	(Encodings: T1, TS1, OT1, T5, LY1, and TU)	
qzc	m	it	<i>Zapf Chancery Medium Italic</i>

Table 10.87: Classification of the Chorus (Zapf Chancery) family from the T_EX Gyre distribution

Family	Series	Shapes	Typeface Examples
<i>Miama Nueva</i>	Miama Nueva	(Encodings: T1, T2A, T2B, T2C, T5, OT1, LGR, and TU)	
fmm	m	n, (it), (sl), (sc)	<i>Miama Nueva handwriting</i>

Table 10.88: Classification of the Miama Nueva family

10.10.8 Miama Nueva

This typeface, designed by Linus Romer, also mimics handwriting and offers a large glyph set that supports the Latin, polytonic Greek, and Cyrillic scripts. The *miama* package for the pdfT_EX engine supports the option `scaled` to provide a scaling factor and offers the command `\miama` and the declaration `\fmmfamily` to select the font — document font defaults are not changed. Thus, if you want to typeset a whole document in this hand, use `\fmmfamily`, and if you cannot stop talking about T_EX or L^AT_EX in your invitation letter, then `\fmmTeX` and `\fmmLaTeX` provide you with a way, as the standard commands do not work well in this font.

Unicode engines

With Unicode engines, use `fontspec` to set up the font.

*With a price of £148, almost anything can be found Floating In
Fields. — ¿But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Aesop's Œuvres often naïve
vis-à-vis the daemonic phoenix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?
Also supported: T_EX and L^AT_EX instead of T_EX and L^AT_EX*

Miama Nova 9pt/20pt
(fmm) Miama Nueva

The font has roughly the same x-height as Computer Modern, but due to the long ascenders and descenders, you need to either scale it down or enlarge the leading to avoid that characters run into each other. In the above example, we therefore changed from the usual 9/11 pt to 9/20 pt.

10.10.9 Lucida Blackletter

The Lucida set of fonts as sold by TUG also contains a blackletter font, which is primarily meant to be used in math (at least when using pdfTeX) and not in text as we do here. See Section 10.2.10 on page 25 for a discussion of why.

Lucida Blackletter 9pt/12pt
(hlcf)

Lucida Blackletter OT

With a price of £148, *almost anything* can be found *floating in fields*. —
But aren't Kafka's Schloß & Esop's Œuvres often *naïve* vis-à-vis the *dæmonic*
phœnix's official rôle in fluffy soufflés?

10.10.10 Blackletter — Yannis Gothic, Schwabacher, and Fraktur

There exists a set of beautiful fonts for typesetting in Gothic, Schwabacher, and Fraktur designed in METAFONT after traditional typefaces by Yannis Haralambous [66]. The collection also contains a font with baroque initials. These days Type 1 versions of the fonts are available as well that are automatically used.

LaTeX support for all engines is provided through the yfonts package written by Walter Schmidt (1960–2021). This package internally defines some local encodings (i.e., even on Unicode engines it does not use fontenc) that reflect the special features found in the fonts and integrates them fully with LaTeX's font management.

The commands `\gothfamily`, `\swabfamily`, and `\frakfamily` switch to Gothic, Schwabacher, and Fraktur, respectively. The corresponding commands with one argument are `\textgoth`, `\textswab`, and `\textfrak`. If one wants to typeset a whole document in such a typeface, the corresponding command should be used directly *after* `\begin{document}`. Because of the nonstandard encodings of the fonts, redefining the document defaults (e.g., `\familydefault`) is not possible. In addition to the font switches, the usual `\text..` commands for typesetting short fragments are provided.

The package provides *Gotisch*, also called *Textur*, *Schwabacher*, and *Fraktur* typefaces, also generally known as „*gebrochene Schriften*“.

```
\usepackage{yfonts}\usepackage[document]{ragged2e}
```

The package provides `\textgoth{Gotisch}`, also called `\textswab{Schwabacher}`, and `\textfrak{Fraktur}` typefaces, also generally known as `\textfrak{‘ge-bro- che- ne Schriften’}`.

10-10-2

The fonts are available in the usual LaTeX sizes starting from 10pt so that size-changing commands (e.g., `\normalsize` and larger) work. There are, however, no further font series or shapes, so commands like `\emph`, `\textit`, and `\textbf` have no effect other than producing a warning. Following historical practice, you can use Schwabacher to emphasize something inside text typeset in Fraktur.

For accented characters one can use the standard LaTeX representations (e.g., either Unicode characters¹ or `\"a` for ä, etc.). To facilitate easy input (long before Unicode became common), the fonts also contain ligatures that represent umlauts (e.g., "a). In Fraktur and Schwabacher there also exist alternate umlauts, which can be accessed with `*a` and similar ligatures. If the yfonts package is loaded with the option `varumlaut`, then the variant glyphs are selected automatically. All three fonts contain a glyph for the “short s”, accessed through the ligature `s:`; and “sharp s”, accessed by “ß”, `\ss`, through the ligature `sz`, or through `"s`.

¹However, strangely enough this only works in pdfTeX and *not* in Unicode engines!

The next example shows the various ligatures. With pdfTeX one can use the Unicode characters ÄÖÜäöüß directly and only needs the “short s” ligature. However, due to the special font encoding this *does not work* in Unicode engines — with these engines you have to enter the accents as ligatures or LaTeX commands.

10-10-3

Fraktur: ä ë ü ö ä é û ó ß f vf. ſ
Swab: ä ë ü ö ä é û ó ß f vf. ſ
Gothic: ä ë ü ö (unavail) k l bl. ſ

```
\usepackage{yfonts}
\Large \frakfamily Fraktur: "a "e "u "o
\hfil *a *e *u *o \hfil sz \hfil s vs.\ s:
\par\swabfamily Swab: "a "e "u "o
\hfil *a *e *u *o \hfil sz \hfil s vs.\ s:
\par\gothfamily Gothic: "a "e "u "o
\hfil (unavail) \hfil sz \hfil s vs.\ s:
```

The font selected with `\gothfamily` is not a copy of Gutenberg’s font used for his Bible (which had 288 glyphs altogether), but it follows Gutenberg’s guidelines on lowercase characters and implements as many ligatures as can be fit into a 7-bit font (e.g., the “va” in the previous example). For this reason many standard ASCII symbols are unavailable in this font.

The two other fonts also implement only a subset of visible ASCII. Problematic are the semicolon (which is missing in Schwabacher) and the characters +, =, `, [,], /, *, @, &, and % (which either are missing or produce wrong or nonmatching shapes). Their omission is seldom a problem, because typically they are not needed in documents using such fonts. However, one needs to be aware that no warning or error message is issued if they are used — the only indication is missing or wrong glyphs in the printed output!

10-10-4

Symbols: + = ‘ [] / * \$ % & ; @
 Fraktur problems: + = ‘ [] / * \$ % & ;
 Swab problems: + = ‘ [] / * \$ %
 Gothic problems: ffi tt s ä ö ffi tt \$ ff ;

```
\usepackage{yfonts}
\newcommand\test{+ = ‘ [ ] / * \$ \% \& ; @}
Symbols: \ttfamily \test \par
\frakfamily Fraktur problems:: \test \par
\swabfamily Swab problems:: \test \par
\gothfamily Gothic problems:: \test
```

The default line spacing of the standard classes is too large for the blackletter fonts. For this reason the package implements the `\fraklines` command, which selects a suitable `\baselineskip` for Fraktur or Schwabacher. It must be repeated after every size-changing command.

The font collection also contains a font with decorative initials, as shown in the next example. Note the use of Unicode characters and the option `varumlaut`:

10-10-5




ies ist ein Blindtext an dem sich verschiedene Dinge ablesen lassen. Der Grauwert der Schriftfläche wird sichtbar und man kann an ihm prüfen, wie gut die Schrift zu lesen ist und wie sie auf den Leser wirkt. Bei genauerem Hinsehen werden die einzelnen Buchstaben und ihre Besonderheiten erkennbar, etc

```
\usepackage[german]{babel} \usepackage{color}
\usepackage{varumlaut}{yfonts}
\frakfamily\fraklines
\yinipar{\color{blue}D}ies: ist ein Blindtext an dem
sich verschiedene Dinge ablesen lassen. Der Grauwert
der Schriftfläche wird sichtbar und man kann an ihm
prüfen, wie gut die Schrift zu lesen ist und wie sie
auf den Leser wirkt. Bei genauerem Hinsehen werden
die einzelnen Buchstaben und ihre Besonderheiten
erkennbar, \etc
```


The command `\yinipar` used in the previous example starts a new paragraph without indentation, producing a baroque dropped initial. For this command to work, a full paragraph (up to and including the next blank line or `\par`) must be typeset using `\fraklines`. Otherwise, the space left for the initial is either too large or too small.

As an alternative, you can access these initials with the `\textinit` command or the font switch `\initfamily`, in which case initials aligned at the baseline are produced. The example also used the command `\etc`, which produces a once-popular symbol for “etc.”; it is available in Fraktur only.

The font collection contains a second Fraktur font that has slightly wider glyphs with, at the same time, slightly thinner stems. It can be selected by redefining `\frakdefault` as shown in the next example. When compared to Example 10-10-5, the difference in running length can be clearly observed, resulting in an overfull box on the third line.



ies ist ein Blindtext an dem sich verschiedene Dinge ablesen lassen. Der Grauwert der Schriftfläche wird sichtbar und man kann an ihm prüfen, wie gut die Schrift zu lesen ist und wie sie auf den Leser wirkt. Bei genauerem Hinsehen ...

```
\usepackage[german]{babel} \usepackage{color}
\usepackage[varumlaut]{yfonts}
\renewcommand\frakdefault{\ysmfrak}
\frakfamily\fraklines
\yinipar{\color{blue}D}ies: ist ein Blindtext an dem
sich verschiedene Dinge ablesen lassen. Der Grauwert
der Schriftfläche wird sichtbar und man kann an ihm
prüfen, wie gut die Schrift zu lesen ist und wie
sie auf den Leser wirkt. Bei genauerem Hinsehen \dots
```

10-10-6

10.11 Fonts supporting Latin and polytonic Greek

The Greek Font Society (GFS), a nonprofit organization in Greece devoted to improving Greek digital typography, made a larger number of fonts with support for the Greek language publicly available. Antonis Tzolomitis and others adapted several of them for use with pdf_T_EX. Besides support for polytonic Greek, some of these fonts also contain a full set of Latin glyphs — those have been shown already in the previous sections. If you are primarily interested in typesetting in polytonic Greek, then a few more GFS fonts exist that support only the Greek language.¹

Some of the fonts from the previous sections also offer polytonic Greek in addition to Latin, and for a quick comparison all of them are shown here once more with a short sample text exhibiting English and Greek together (and bold, italic, and small capitals if available). Small capitals are often not implemented for Greek letters (even if available for Latin), and in some cases only characters without diacritics are available.

The standard encoding for Greek is called LGR and listed in this way in the tables throughout this chapter, but note that not all fonts that claim to support this encoding offer polytonic Greek; some provide only basic glyphs without diacritics. Such fonts are not listed below.

¹The relevant support packages are `gfsbaskerville`, `gfscomplutum`, `gfsponson`, and `gfsosolomos`.

10.11.1 Serif designs

Alegreya is fairly complete so can serve as a sample for the different font faces.

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος ΓΝΩΣΕΙΣ (When you set out on the journey to **Ithaca**, pray that road be *long*, full of adventures, full of KNOWLEDGE). — See page 11 for font family details.

Alegreya 10pt/12pt
(Alegreya-0sF) **Alegreya**

Cambria is a commercial TrueType font that ships with Windows and Office products; thus, many people have them on their system. The Greek small capitals are not complete as you can observe in the sample.

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος ΓΝΩΣΕΙΣ. — See page 49 for font family details.

Cambria 10pt/12pt
(— only TrueType —)
Cambria

10-11-1

Cochineal has issues with the “Iota with Psili”; the spacing is wrong. There is also no Small Caps shape with Greek — a restriction shared with many other font families.

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος γνώσεις. — See page 40 for font family details.

Cochineal 10pt/12pt
(Cochineal-0sF)
Cochineal

Once said the great poet Constantin Cavafy: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος γνώσεις. — See page 12 for font family details.

DejaVu Serif 9pt/12.5pt
(DejaVuSerif-TLF)
DejaVu Serif

Garamond Libre’s upright Greek is based on Firmin Didot’s (1764–1836) design (i.e., like GFS Didot), the Greek italics after a design by Alexander Wilson (??–1784).

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος ΓΝΩΣΕΙΣ. — See page 42 for font family details.

Garamond Libre 10pt/12pt
(GaramondLibre-LF)
Garamond Libre

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος γνώσεις. — See page 45 for font family details.

Gentium Plus 10pt/12pt
(gentium) **Gentium Plus**

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος ΓΝΩΣΕΙΣ. — See page 39 for font family details.

GFS Artemisia 10pt/12pt
(artemisia)
GFS Artemisia

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος ΓΝΩΣΕΙΣ. — See page 61 for font family details.

GFS Bodoni 10pt/12pt
(bodoni) **GFS Bodoni**

The GFS Didot, while offering Latin in addition to its good Greek alphabet, is really suited only to typeset Greek; just look at the “t” as an example.

GFS Didot 10pt/12pt
(udidot) **GFS Didot**

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ
γιά τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος
περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος ΓΝΩΣΕΙΣ. — See page 62 for font family
details.

Latin Modern’s Greek has no diacritics on small capitals.

Latin Modern 10pt/12pt
(lmr) **Latin Modern**

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ
γιά τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες,
γεμᾶτος ΓΝΩΣΕΙΣ. — See page →1686 for font family details.

Libertinus Serif 10pt/12pt
(LibertinusSerif-OsF)
Libertinus Serif

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιά τὴν
Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος
γνώσεις. — See page 19 for font family details.

Be careful with Linguistics Pro, because it offers a complete set of diacritics only in its regular shape. In bold and italics you get missing characters as seen in the example:

Linguistics Pro 9.6pt/12pt
(LinguisticsPro-OsF)
LinguisticsPro

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ
γιά τὴν Ἰοκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες,
γεμᾶτος γνώσεις. — See page 59 for font family details.

Noto Serif 10pt/12.6pt
(NotoSerif-OsF)
Noto Serif

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ
γιά τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος
περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος γνώσεις. — See page 26 for font family details.

Old Standard 10pt/12pt
(OldStandard-TLF)
Old Standard

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ
γιά τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες,
γεμᾶτος ΓΝΩΣΕΙΣ. — See page 63 for font family details.

Tempora 10pt/12pt
(Tempora-T0sF) **Tempora**

Once said the great poet Cavafy: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιά τὴν
Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος
γνώσεις. — See page 56 for font family details.

Theano Didot is a high-quality Didot revival with well-done stylistically matching Latin. The only limitation is that the family does not offer italics or small capitals.

Theano Didot 10pt/12pt
(TheanoDidot-T0sF)
Theano Didot

Once said the great poet Constantin Cavafy: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιά
τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος
γνώσεις. — See page 62 for font family details.

10.11.2 Sans Serif designs

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος ΓΝΩΣΕΙΣ. — See page 11 for font family details.

Alegreya Sans 10pt/12pt
(AlegreyaSans-OsF)
Alegreya Sans

Once said the great poet Constantin Cavafy: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος γνώσεις. — See page 12 for font family details.

DejaVu Sans 9pt/12.5pt
(DejaVuSans-TLF)
DejaVu Sans

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος ΓΝΩΣΕΙΣ. — See page 14 for font family details.

Fira Sans 10pt/12pt
(FiraSans-OsF) Fira Sans

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος ΓΝΩΣΕΙΣ. — See page 75 for font family details.

GFS Neo-Hellenic 10pt/12pt
(neohellenic)
GFS Neohellenic

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος ΓΝΩΣΕΙΣ. — See page →I 686 for font family details.

Latin Modern Sans 10pt/12pt
(lms) Latin Modern Sans

Once said the great poet Constantin Cavafy: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος γνώσεις. — See page 80 for font family details.

Lato 10pt/12pt
(lato-OsF) Lato

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος γνώσεις. — See page 19 for font family details.

Libertinus Sans 10pt/12pt
(LibertinusSans-OsF)
Libertinus Sans

Once said the great poet Constantin CAVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος ΓΝΩΣΕΙΣ. — See page 26 for font family details.

Noto Sans 10pt/12.6pt
(NotoSans-OsF) Noto Sans

10.11.3 Monospaced fonts

Once said the great poet Constantin Cavafy: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος γνώσεις. — See page 12.

DejaVu Sans Mono 9pt/12.5pt
(DejaVuSansMono-TLF)
DejaVu Sans Mono

Once said the great poet Constantin Cavafy: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος γνώσεις. — See page 14.

Fira Mono 9pt/11pt
(FiraMono-T0sF)
Fira Mono

Latin Modern Typewriter
10pt/12pt (lmtt)
Latin Modern Mono

Once said the great poet Constantin CΑVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν
πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος,
γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος ΓΝΩΣΕΙΣ. — See page 1686.

Noto Sans Mono 9pt/12.6pt
(NotoSansMono-TLF)
Noto Sans Mono

Once said the great poet Constantin CΑVAFY: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν
πηγαῖμὸ γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος,
γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες, γεμᾶτος γνῶσεις. — See page 26.

10.11.4 Handwriting fonts

Miama Nova 9pt/13pt
(fmm) *Miama Nueva*

*Once said the great poet Constantin Cavafy: Σὰ βγεῖς στὸν πηγαῖμὸ
γιὰ τὴν Ἰθάκη, νὰ εὐχέσαι νᾶναι μακρὺς ὁ δρόμος, γεμᾶτος περιπέτειες,
γεμᾶτος γνῶσεις. — See page 103 for font family details.*

10.12 Fonts supporting Latin and Cyrillic

In this section we exhibit fonts that support both Latin and Cyrillic alphabets. The sample text shows bold, italic, and small capitals when available. If not, it is highlighted as usual. Many of these fonts also support polytonic Greek shown in the previous section, but often there are some restrictions, either with the Cyrillic or with the Greek support with respect to available shapes.

10.12.1 Serif designs

Cambria is a commercial TrueType font that ships with Windows and Office products; thus, many people have them on their system.

Cambria 10pt/12pt
(— only TrueType—)
Cambria

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” (A good composer does not imitate; he steals) is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (ИГОРЬ СТРАВИНСКИЙ). — See page 49.

10-12-1

Bitstream Charter
10pt/12.4pt
(XCharter-T0sF) *XCharter*

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (ИГОРЬ СТРАВИНСКИЙ). — See page 50.

Charis SIL 10pt/12.4pt
(charssil-TLF) *CharisSIL*

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (ИГОРЬ СТРАВИНСКИЙ). — See page 51.

Cormorant Garamond
10pt/12pt
(CormorantGaramond-OfF)
Cormorant Garamond

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (ИГОРЬ СТРАВИНСКИЙ). — See page 41.

In many fonts, the Small Caps shape is not available for Cyrillic letters, but you have to look closely to see it (i.e., the “a” and “p”).

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (Игорь Стравинский). — See page 12.

DejaVu Serif 9pt/12.5pt
(DejaVuSerif-TLF)
DejaVu Serif

With Garamond Libre, bold and small caps are supported, but the bold is not easy to distinguish from the medium series.

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (ИГОРЬ СТРАВИНСКИЙ). — See page 42.

Garamond Libre 10pt/12pt
(GaramondLibre-LF)
Garamond Libre

Gentium offers no bold series for Cyrillic letters.

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (ИГОРЬ СТРАВИНСКИЙ). — See page 45.

Gentium Plus 10pt/12pt
(gentium) Gentium Plus

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (Игорь Стравинский). — See page 19.

Libertinus Serif 10pt/12pt
(LibertinusSerif-0sF)
Libertinus Serif

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (ИГОРЬ СТРАВИНСКИЙ). — See page 59.

Linguistics Pro 9.6pt/12pt
(LinguisticsPro-0sF)
LinguisticsPro

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (ИГОРЬ СТРАВИНСКИЙ). — See page 53.

Literaturnaya 10pt/12pt
(tli) — no OpenType —

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (Игорь Стравинский). — See page 26.

Noto Serif 10pt/12pt
(NotoSerif-0sF)
Noto Serif

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (Игорь Стравинский). — See page 63.

Old Standard 10pt/12pt
(OldStandard-TLF)
Old Standard

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (Игорь Стравинский). — See page 31.

PT Serif 10pt/12.6pt
(PTSerif-TLF) PT Serif

10.12.2 Sans Serif designs

None of the sans serif designs provide small capitals, but most of them offer an italic or oblique shape.

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (Игорь Стравинский). — See page 12.

DejaVu Sans 9pt/12.5pt
(DejaVuSans-TLF)
DejaVu Sans

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (Игорь Стравинский). — See page 77.

Iwona 10pt/12pt
(iwona) Iwona

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (Игорь Стравинский). — See page 79.

Kurier Light 10pt/12pt
(kurierl) Kurier Light

Lato 10pt/12pt
(lato-OsF) **Lato**

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (**Игорь Стравинский**). — See page 80.

Libertinus Sans 10pt/12pt
(LibertinusSans-OsF) **Libertinus Sans**

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (**Игорь Стравинский**). — See page 19.

Noto Sans 9pt/12pt
(NotoSans-OsF) **Noto Sans**

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (**Игорь Стравинский**). — See page 26.

PT Sans 10pt/12.6pt
(PTSans-TLF) **PT Sans**

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (**Игорь Стравинский**). — See page 31.

10.12.3 Monospaced fonts

Like the sans serif designs none of the monospaced fonts offer small capitals and only half of them provide italics or oblique shapes.

DejaVu Sans Mono 9pt/12.5pt
(DejaVuSansMono-TLF) **DejaVu Sans Mono**

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (**Игорь Стравинский**). — See page 12.

The Lucida font families are commercial and can be obtained through TUG.

Lucida Console 9pt/12pt
(— only OpenType—) **Lucida Console DK**

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (**Игорь Стравинский**). — See pages 21--24.

10-12-2

Lucida Grande Mono 9pt/12pt
(— only OpenType—) **Lucida Grande Mono DK**

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (**Игорь Стравинский**). — See pages 21--24.

10-12-3

Noto Sans Mono 9pt/12pt
(NotoSansMono-TLF) **Noto Sans Mono**

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (**Игорь Стравинский**). — See page 26.

PT Mono 9pt/11pt
(PTMono-TLF) **PT Mono**

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он *ворует*” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (**Игорь Стравинский**). — See page 31.

Note that Source Code Pro does not have Cyrillic glyphs in its italic shape, so you get “missing characters”; e.g., the word *ворует* is missing.

Source Code Pro 9pt/11pt
(SourceCodePro-TLF) **Source Code Pro**

The quote “Хороший **композитор** не подражает; он ” is attributed to Igor Stravinsky (**Игорь Стравинский**). — See page 35.

10.12.4 Handwriting fonts

*The quote “Хороший композитор не подражает; он ворует”
(A good composer does not imitate; he steals) is attributed to Igor
Stravinsky (Игорь Стравинский). — See page 103.*

*Miama Nova 9pt/20pt
(fmm) Miama Nueva*

10.13 The L^AT_EX world of symbols

Shortly after T_EX and METAFONT came into existence, people started to develop new symbol fonts for use with the system. Over time the set of available symbols grew to a considerable number. The *Comprehensive L^AT_EX Symbol List* by Scott Pakin [161] lists more than 18000 symbols on 422 pages¹ and the corresponding L^AT_EX commands that produce them. For some symbols the necessary fonts and support packages may have to be obtained (e.g., from a CTAN host; see Appendix C.4.1) and installed by the user. They are usually accompanied by installation instructions and general documentation.

Obviously, the few fonts and packages described in this section form only a small subset of what is available. If you cannot find a symbol here, the 422 pages of [161] are a valuable resource for locating what you need.

There are also a few online resources that can be very helpful: you draw the symbol that you are looking for with your mouse and get back possible suggestions. Especially for L^AT_EX there is <https://detexify.kirelabs.org/classify.html>² by Daniel Kirsch that reports back the L^AT_EX command name (and any necessary package information), and if you want to hunt for some unusual Unicode character, then <http://shapecatcher.com/> is worth a try as it knows about a large number of shapes.

*Online resources
for finding L^AT_EX
symbols*

We start by looking at the pifont package that offers some generic support to symbol fonts that are offered in U encoding. This is followed by a small number of interesting symbol fonts, including two that contain ornaments for page borders and similar applications. The chapter concludes with an introduction to the TIPA system, which provides support for phonetic symbols.

All packages and fonts listed in this section and in [161] are freely available: in one or two cases you need to install the support files using `getnonfreefonts`.

10.13.1 pifont — Accessing Pi and Symbol fonts

Fonts containing collections of special symbols, which are normally not found in a text font, are called Pi fonts. One such font, the PostScript font Zapf Dingbats, is available if you use the pifont package originally written by Sebastian Rahtz (1955–2016).

The directly accessible characters of the PostScript Zapf Dingbats font are shown in Table 10.89 on the following page. A given character can be chosen via the `\ding`

*Accessing glyphs
from Zapf Dingbats*

¹Counted in 2022.

²For the Macintosh this also exists as a local App that does not need an Internet connection.

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
U+0020-002F		✂	✂	✂	✂	☎	📞	✈	✈	✈	✈	✈	✈	✈	✈	✈
U+0030-003F	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂
U+0040-004F	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂
U+0050-005F	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂
U+0060-006F	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂
U+0070-007F	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂	✂
U+00A0-00AF	-	♫	♫	♫	♫	♫	♫	♫	♫	♫	♫	♫	♫	♫	♫	♫
U+00B0-00BF	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑩	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑩
U+00C0-00CF	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑩	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥
U+00D0-00DF	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑩	➔	➔	↔	↕	↘	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔
U+00E0-00EF	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔
U+00F0-00FF	-	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	➔	-

Table 10.89: Glyphs in the PostScript font Zapf Dingbats

command. The parameter for the `\ding` command is an integer that specifies the character to be typeset according to the table. It can also be specified as an octal value (preceding it with `'`) or very conveniently as a hexadecimal (preceding it with `"`) as this matches the way font tables are usually organized. For example, `\ding{"A1}` gives ♫, and you can find that number immediately when looking at the font table.

The `dinglist` environment is a variation of the `itemize` list. The argument specifies the number of the character to be used at the beginning of each item.

➤ The first item.

➤ The second item in the list.

➤ A final item.

```
\usepackage{pifont}
\begin{dinglist}{"E4}
  \item The first item.
  \item The second
    item in the list.
  \item A final item.
\end{dinglist}
```

10-13-1

The environment `dingautolist` allows you to build an enumerated list from a sequence of Zapf Dingbats characters. In this case, the argument specifies the number of the first character of the sequence. Subsequent items are numbered by incrementing this number by one. This makes some starting positions like "AC, "B6, "C0, and "CA (i.e., in hexadecimal notation) in Table 10.89 very attractive, as differently designed circled number sequences (1-10) start there.

① The first item in the list.

② The second item in the list.

③ The third item in the list.

```
\usepackage{pifont}
\begin{dingautolist}{"C0}
  \item The first item in the list.\label{lst:a}
  \item The second item in the list.\label{lst:b}
  \item The third item in the list.\label{lst:c}
\end{dingautolist}
```

References to list items work as expected: ①,
②, ③

References to list items work as expected:
`\ref{lst:a}`, `\ref{lst:b}`, `\ref{lst:c}`

10-13-2

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
U+0000–000F	🍏	🍏	≈	⏪	◆	✓	🏠	...	↩	👉	≥	ℙ	ℎ	∞	↵	∫
U+0010–001F	≤	◇	≠	˘	∂	Π	π	Π	♠	♠	Σ	σ	ς	Σ	⇒	↺
U+0020–002F	˘	ˆ	⌘	×	◊	˘	Δ	↺	№	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Table 10.90: Glyphs in the AnonymousPro Symbol font

You can fill a complete line (with a 0.5-inch space at left and right) with a given character using the command `\dingline`, where the argument indicates the slot of the desired character. For filling parts of a line, use the command `\dingfill`. This command works similar to L^AT_EX's `\dotfill` command but uses the specified glyph instead of dots.

10-13-3

```

%< %< %< %< %< %< %< %< %< %<
⇒ ⇒ ⇒ some text ⇒ ⇒ some more ✖ ✖
\usepackage{pifont}
\dingline{"22} \par\medskip
\noindent\dingfill{"E9} some text
\dingfill{"EB} some more \dingfill{"36}

```

Besides providing direct support for the Zapf Dingbats font, the `pifont` package includes a general mechanism for coping with any Pi font that conforms to the NFSS classification `U/family/m/n`.

To access individual glyphs from such a Pi font, use the `\Pisymbol` command, which takes the *family* name as its first argument and the glyph position in the font as its second argument. For example, using this command one can readily access the Macintosh keyboard symbols from the Anonymous Pro Symbol font, shown in Table 10.90. All you need to know is the NFSS family name and the glyph position in the font. In fact, `\ding` (discussed earlier) is simply an abbreviation for `\Pisymbol` with the first argument set to `pzd`.

Accessing individual glyphs from a Pi font

You can also make itemized lists using `Pilist` or enumerated lists using the `Piautolist` environments as follows:

10-13-4

```

🍏 The Cmd key is ⌘.
🍏 The Alt key is ˘.
★ The first item.
★ The second.
★ The third.
\usepackage{pifont}
\begin{Pilist}{AnonymousPro}{1}
\item The Cmd key is \Pisymbol{AnonymousPro}{"22}.
\item The Alt key is \Pisymbol{AnonymousPro}{"13}.
\end{Pilist}
\begin{Piautolist}{pzd}{"4B}
\item The first item. \item The second.
\item The third.
\end{Piautolist}

```

The `\dingline` and `\dingfill` commands are also merely abbreviations for the more general commands `\Piline` and `\Pifill`, as shown below. The example reveals curious gaps in the last line. They are due to `\Piline` and `\Pifill`

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
U+0020–002F	-	☉	≡	△	△	△	☾	☾	()	×	+	,	-	.	/
U+0030–003F	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	→	⇒	≤	≥	≡	↔
U+0040–004F	@	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉
U+0050–005F	→	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉
U+0060–006F	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉
U+0070–007F	→	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉
U+0080–008F	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉
U+0090–009F	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉
U+00A0–00AF	-	β	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉
U+00B0–00BF	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉
U+00C0–00CF	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉
U+00D0–00DF	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉
U+00E0–00EF	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉	☉
U+00F0–00FF	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Table 10.92: Glyphs in the MarVoSym font (mvs)

however, you want the upright integrals, it is best to explicitly signal that intention by adding the option `integrals` because that allows the package to cooperate properly with `amsmath` or `mathtools` (see Section 11.4.6 on page 168).

10.13.3 marvosym — Interface to the MarVoSym font

The MarVoSym font designed by Martin Vogel is another Pi font containing symbols from various areas including quite uncommon ones, such as laundry signs (in case you are doing your own laundry lists ☺), astronomy and astrology symbols, and many others. In 2015 Martin wrote in his blog that he thinks the font is no longer needed as most characters are by now in Unicode fonts, but it is still quite popular in the L^AT_EX world, because the glyphs are well done and not easy to obtain otherwise.

The L^AT_EX support package `marvosym` was written by Thomas Henlich, who also converted the font from TrueType format to Type 1. His package defines command names for all symbols, some of which are listed in the next example; the full set is given in `marvodoc.pdf` accompanying the distribution.

```
\usepackage{marvosym}
\Large \AtForty\ \Bicycle\ \Cancer\ \Coffeecup\ \ComputerMouse\
\FEMALE\ \Faxmachine\ \Female\ \Fixedbearing\ \Football\
\ForwardToIndex\ \Frowny\ \IroningII\ \Keyboard\ \Lineload\
\Mobilefone\ \RewindToStart\ \Smiley\ \Virgo\ \Yinyang
```

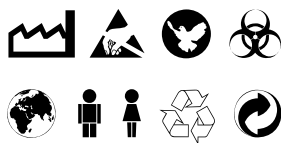
10-13-7

As with other Pi fonts, one can also access the symbols directly by using the

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
U+0000-000F		◀	▶	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	☯	◊	☯
U+0010-001F	≡	↪	↪	↪	↪	↪	↪	↪	↪	↪	↪	↪	↪	↪	↪	↪
U+0020-002F	✂	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	◀	▶	≡	↪	↪	↪
U+0030-003F	↪	↪	↪	↪	↪	↪	↪	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯
U+0040-004F	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯	☯

Table 10.93: Glyphs in the Ornaments ADF font (OrnamentsADF)

glyph chart in Table 10.92 on the preceding page and the pifont interface with the Pi font name being mvs.



```
\usepackage{pifont}
\Huge \Pisymbol{mvs}{49} \Pisymbol{mvs}{4A} \Pisymbol{mvs}{66}
\Pisymbol{mvs}{68} \Pisymbol{mvs}{6D} \Pisymbol{mvs}{78}
\Pisymbol{mvs}{79} \Pisymbol{mvs}{DE} \Pisymbol{mvs}{DF}
```

10-13-8

10.13.4 adforn — Adding ornaments to your document

A more recent addition to the symbol fonts for use with L^AT_EX is the Ornaments ADF font designed by Hirwen Harendal. The ornaments made available by this font are shown in Table 10.93. (Ornaments is the French spelling in case you are wondering.)

L^AT_EX support is provided through the package adforn by Clea F. Rees, which defines the command \adforn to access symbols by *slot-number* (which is yet another application of \Pisymbol from the pifont package, this time using the family name OrnamentsADF). In addition to the numerical interface each ornament is also available through an individual L^AT_EX command; e.g., \adfflowerleft and \adforn{20} would both produce ✂. Clearly the longer command names have the advantage that you can easily guess what they represent, but you have to look them up in the package documentation, while the slot numbers are readily available from Table 10.93.

☯ In this example we start most paragraphs with an ornament instead of an indentation.

But we do not always use the same one—most of the time we use a solid leaf, shown next.

☯ Also note the fancy page number below, set up with the help of fancyhdr.

≡ 6 ≡

```
\usepackage{fancyhdr,adforn}
\pagestyle{fancy} \fancyhf{} \renewcommand\headrulewidth{0pt}
\fancyfoot[C]{\adfdoubleflourishleft\ \thepage\
\adfdoubleflourishright}
\newcommand\paraA{\par\noindent\adfhangingleflatleafright\ }
\newcommand\paraB{\par\noindent\adfflatleafsolidright \ }
\paraA In this example we start most paragraphs with an
ornament instead of an indentation. \par But we do not
always use the same one---most of the time we use a solid
leaf, shown next. \paraB Also note the fancy page number
below, set up with the help of \texttt{fancyhdr}.
```

10-13-9

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
U+0020–002F	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U+0030–003F	☉	⚠	⚡	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	-	-	-	-	-	-
U+0040–004F	-	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹
U+0050–005F	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹
U+0060–006F	-	-	-	-	-	€	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Table 10.94: Glyphs in the Fourier Ornaments font (futs)

10.13.5 fourier-orns — GUTenberg-Fourier’s ornaments

The Fourier Ornaments font, designed by Michel Bovani, is part of the Fourier-GUTenberg setup, but it is also available on its own through the `fourier-orns` package. The available glyphs are shown in Table 10.94. The package defines names, for each symbol, e.g., `\grimace`, `\lefthand`, or `\aldine` (☹, ☹, ☹), but of course, you can alternatively access them directly through the `pifont` package using the family name `futs`, as we show below.

The interesting pilcrow symbols in slots "33 to "38 are accessible through the commands `\oldpilcrowone`, `\oldpilcrowtwo`, ..., `\oldpilcrowsix` after loading the package; below we access them by slot number instead.¹ If you use them in your text, you have to make sure that you choose in each case the one with the appropriate length based on the position in the paragraph — the tail takes up no space and thus sticks into the margin if it gets too close.

☹All the world’s a stage, and all the men and women merely players. ☹They have their exits and their entrances; ☹And one man in his time plays many parts.

(*As You Like It*, Act 2, Scene 7)

```
\usepackage{color,pifont}
\newcommand{\pilcrow[1]
  {\textcolor{blue}{\Pisymbol{futs}{"3#1}}\ignorespaces}
\noindent\pilcrow{5} All the world’s a stage, and all the men
and women merely players. \pilcrow{7} They have their exits
and their entrances; \pilcrow{8} And one man in his time
plays many parts.\ (\emph{As You Like It}, Act 2, Scene 7))
```

10-13-10

10.13.6 Web-O-Mints — Another collection of ornaments and borders

The Web-O-Mints font, designed by George Ryan, provides a number of typographical decorations inspired by historical sources.² Basic L^AT_EX support in the form of mapping and font definition files has been provided by Maurizio Loreti. Due to the font license, the font and the L^AT_EX support files have to be manually installed using `getnonfreefonts` (at least with T_EX Live).

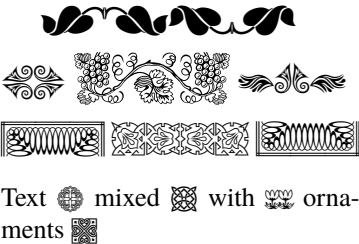
¹The slot positions differ in different versions of the font, so you may have to adjust the example.

²See page 99 on the historical Fell types that also provide historical ornaments.

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
U+0020-002F		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	🌀
U+0030-003F	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	-	-	-	-	-	-
U+0040-004F	-	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀
U+0050-005F	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀
U+0060-006F	-	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀
U+0070-007F	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	🌀	-	-	-	-	-

Table 10.95: Glyphs in the webomints font (webo)

The example below defines a few commands to access the font, which has the family name `webo`. The `\webosym` command expects slot numbers that we can read off Table 10.95, whereas the second argument of `\webo` expects ASCII characters and simply draws the glyphs that are in their slot position (you may have to guess those or look them up in a font table of a text font).



```
\newcommand\webofamily{\usefont{U}{webo}{m}{n}}
\newcommand\webo[2]{\fontsize{#1}{#1}\webofamily #2}
\newcommand\webosym[1]{\webofamily\symbol{#1}}

\webo{12pt}{IJLK} \[5pt]
\webo{3ex}{pq} \webo{20pt}{ced} \webo{3ex}{UnoV} \[5pt]
\webo{13pt}{rst} \webo{13pt}{RSTP} \webo{13pt}{uvw} \[10pt]
Text \webosym{"32} mixed \webosym{"37} with
\webosym{"6D} ornaments \webosym{"7A}
```

10-13-11

There is also a nonstandard NFSS series `x1` defined that produces 20% larger glyphs.

10.13.7 fontawesome5 — Accessing Font Awesome icons

Font Awesome in version 5 is a collection of more than 5000 icons out of which roughly 1500 are available under a free license.

The icons have been packaged for use with all \LaTeX engines by Marcel Krüger. The support package is `fontawesome5`, which defines command names for every glyph. The naming convention is to take the glyph name,¹ convert it to CamelCase, and prefix it with `\fa`. For example, the icon `map-marker` would be accessed as `\faMapMarker`, generating 📍. Alternatively, you can use `\faIcon`, which expects the official icon names as its argument, i.e., `\faIcon{map-marker}` for the map marker symbol. A number of icons also have alternative versions (names that end in `-alt`). They can be accessed by using the star form of the base command; e.g., `\faMapMarker*` gives 📍.

¹The names can be found on the Web (see <https://www.fontawesome.com>) or in the documentation of the `fontawesome5` package.

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
U+0000-000F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0010-001F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0020-002F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0030-003F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0040-004F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0050-005F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0060-006F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0070-007F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0080-008F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0090-009F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00A0-00AF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00B0-00BF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00C0-00CF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00D0-00DF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00E0-00EF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00F0-00FF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

Table 10.96: Glyphs in fontawesomefree0 solid

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
U+0000-000F	-	☐	☐	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☐	☐	☐	☐	-	-
U+0010-001F	-	-	-	-	-	☐	-	-	-	-	☐	☐	☐	☐	-	-
U+0040-004F	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☐	☐	-	☐	-	-	-
U+0050-005F	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☐	☐	-	☐	-	-	-
U+0070-007F	-	-	☐	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☐	☐	☐	-	☐	☐
U+0080-008F	☐	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☐	☐	-	-	-
U+0090-009F	☐	☐	☐	☐	-	-	-	☐	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U+00A0-00AF	-	☐	-	-	-	☐	-	☐	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U+00B0-00BF	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☐	-	-	-	☐
U+00C0-00CF	-	-	☐	☐	☐	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☐	-	-	-
U+00D0-00DF	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☐	☐	-	☐	-	☐	-	-	-
U+00E0-00EF	☐	-	-	-	-	-	-	☐	☐	-	☐	-	-	-	-	-

Table 10.97: Glyphs in fontawesomefree0 regular

All free icons are available in **solid** style, with a number of them also in **regular** (which is far less dark), for example, all the different smiley variants. The style can be changed by specifying it in an optional argument to the command; e.g., `\faAngry` gives ☹, while `\faAngry[regular]` gets you 😞. It is also possible to change the default style from solid to regular with the command `\faStyle{regular}`.

Unicode engines

If you own the commercial Pro version of the font (which works only with Unicode engines), then there is also a **light** style, which can be accessed in the same way. To enable the Pro font use the package option `pro`.

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
U+0000-000F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0010-001F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0020-002F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0030-003F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0040-004F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0050-005F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0060-006F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0070-007F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0080-008F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0090-009F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00A0-00AF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00B0-00BF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00C0-00CF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00D0-00DF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00E0-00EF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00F0-00FF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

Table 10.98: Glyphs in fontawesomefree1 solid

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
U+0000-000F	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☹	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U+0010-001F	-	☹	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☹	-
U+0020-002F	-	-	-	☹	☹	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U+0030-003F	-	-	-	☹	☹	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U+0040-004F	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	-	-	-	☹	-	☹	-	-	-	-	-
U+0050-005F	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U+0060-006F	-	-	☹	-	-	-	☹	☹	☹	☹	-	-	-	-	-	☹
U+0070-007F	☹	-	☹	-	-	-	☹	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☹
U+0080-008F	-	-	-	-	-	-	☹	-	-	-	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹
U+0090-009F	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹
U+00A0-00AF	-	☹	-	-	-	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	-
U+00B0-00BF	☹	☹	-	-	-	-	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	☹	-
U+00C0-00CF	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☹	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U+00D0-00DF	-	-	-	-	☹	-	-	-	-	-	-	☹	☹	-	-	-
U+00E0-00EF	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☹	☹	-	-	☹	☹	-	-	-
U+00F0-00FF	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☹	-	☹	☹	☹	-	-

Table 10.99: Glyphs in fontawesomefree1 regular

When using pdf_T_EX, the 1500 icons need to be distributed over different fonts (as each Type 1 font can contain only up to 256 glyphs). The family names are then fontawesomefree0 to ..free3 for ordinary icons and fontawesomebrands0 and ..brands1 for icons representing brands. The whole set is shown in Tables 10.96 to 10.103 on pages 121-124.

All brand icons are trademarks of their respective owners, and it is requested to use these brand logos only to represent the company, product, or service to which they refer but not for other purposes.

Most of the icons have roughly the same width, but this is not always the case. If you prefer to have them all occupying the same space, you can load the package

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
U+0000–000F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0010–001F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0020–002F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0030–003F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0040–004F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0050–005F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0060–006F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0070–007F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0080–008F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+0090–009F	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00A0–00AF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00B0–00BF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00C0–00CF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00D0–00DF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00E0–00EF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
U+00F0–00FF	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

Table 10.100: Glyphs in fontawesomefree2 solid

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
U+0000–000F	-	-	-	-	-	☺	☺	☺	☺	-	-	☺	-	-	-	-
U+0010–001F	☺	☺	-	-	-	☺	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U+0020–002F	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☺	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U+0030–003F	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☺	☺	☺	-	-	-	-	-	-
U+0040–004F	-	-	-	-	-	-	☺	-	-	-	-	☺	-	-	-	-
U+0050–005F	-	☺	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☺	-	-	-	☺
U+0060–006F	☺	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☺	-	-	-	-
U+0070–007F	-	-	-	☺	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U+0080–008F	-	-	-	☺	-	-	-	☺	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U+0090–009F	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☺	-	-	-	-	-	-	☺	-
U+00A0–00AF	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☺	-
U+00B0–00BF	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	☺	-	-	-
U+00D0–00DF	-	-	☺	☺	-	-	☺	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U+00E0–00EF	-	-	-	-	-	-	☺	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Table 10.101: Glyphs in fontawesomefree2 regular

with the option `fixed`, which basically places each icon centered into a box of width 1.5em.

10-13-12



```
\usepackage[fixed]{fontawesome5}
\fbbox{\faExclamation} \fbbox{\faFile} \fbbox{\faFile*}
\fbbox{\faFile[regular]} \fbbox{\faFile*[regular]}
```

If you prefer not to load the support package (that defines 1 500 commands of which you need one or two) but rather access the icons directly by font slot number, then this is easily possible too. The next example defines two commands that let you do this: `\fasym` expects the font number 0-3, the glyph slot number, and also accepts

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
U+0000-000F	/	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0010-001F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0020-002F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0030-003F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0040-004F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0050-005F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0060-006F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0070-007F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0080-008F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0090-009F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+00A0-00AF	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+00B0-00BF	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+00C0-00CF	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+00D0-00DF	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+00E0-00EF	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡

Table 10.102: Glyphs in fontawesomefree3 solid only

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
U+0000-000F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0010-001F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0020-002F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0030-003F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0040-004F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0050-005F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0060-006F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0070-007F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0080-008F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+0090-009F	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+00A0-00AF	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+00B0-00BF	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+00C0-00CF	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+00D0-00DF	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+00E0-00EF	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡
U+00F0-00FF	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡	⚡

Table 10.103: Brand logos in fontawesomebrands0

the string `regular` as an optional argument. As the brands exist only in solid style, the `\fabrand` omits the optional argument.

```

\newcommand\fasym[3][solid]{\usefont{U}{fontawesomefree#2}{#1}{n}\symbol{#3}}
\newcommand\fabrand[2]{\usefont{U}{fontawesomebrands#1}{solid}{n}\symbol{#2}}
\fasym[regular]{0}{DA} \fasym{1}{DD} \fasym{2}{D6} \fasym[regular]{2}{D6}
\fabrand{0}{21} \fabrand{0}{71} \fabrand{1}{4A} \fabrand{1}{98}

```

10-13-13

This approach works with all engines by using the Type 1 fonts even in the Unicode engines.

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
U+0000–000F	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪
U+0010–001F	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪
U+0020–002F	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪
U+0030–003F	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪
U+0040–004F	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪
U+0050–005F	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪
U+0060–006F	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪
U+0070–007F	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪
U+0080–008F	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪
U+0090–009F	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪
U+00A0–00AF	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪
U+00B0–00BF	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪
U+00C0–00CF	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪	☪

Table 10.104: Brand logos in fontawesomebrands1

10.13.8 tipa — International Phonetic Alphabet symbols

The TIPA bundle [52] developed by FUKUI Rei consists of a set of fonts and a corresponding package to enable typesetting of phonetic symbols with L^AT_EX. TIPA contains all the symbols, including diacritics, defined in the 1979, 1989, 1993, and 1996 versions of the International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA). Besides IPA symbols, TIPA contains symbols that are useful for other areas of phonetics and linguistics, e.g.:

- Symbols used in American phonetics, for example, æ , ɛ , ɔ , and λ ;
- Symbols used in the historical study of Indo-European languages, such as ɸ , p , h , z , ɸ , ɸ , and accents such as á and é ;
- Symbols used in the phonetic description of languages in East Asia, such as ɿ , ɿ , ɿ , ɿ (needs option `extra`);
- Diacritics used in *extIPA Symbols for Disordered Speech* and *VoQS (Voice Quality Symbols)*, for example, ̥ , ̦ , and ̧ (needs option `extra`).

The IPA symbols are encoded in the standard L^AT_EX encoding T3, for which the package `tipa` provides additional support macros. The encoding is available for the font families Computer Modern Roman, Sans, and Typewriter (based on the METAFONT designs for Computer Modern by Donald Knuth), as well as for older implementations of Times Roman and Helvetica; see below.

Strictly speaking, T3 is not a proper L^AT_EX text encoding, as it does not contain the visible ASCII characters in their standard positions. However, one can take the position that phonetic symbols form a language of their own, and for this language, the TIPA system provides a highly optimized input interface in which digits and uppercase letters serve as convenient shortcuts (see Table 10.105 on the next page) to input common phonetic symbols within the argument of `\text{tipa}` or the environment `IPA`. All phonetic symbols are also available in long form; for example, to produce a ə one can use `\text{textscha}`. The following example shows the TIPA system in a Times and Helvetica environment. Unfortunately, `tipa` offers direct support only for the old font

<i>input</i>	:	;	"	|	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
TIPA	:	˙	˘	|	u	i	Λ	3	u	e	D	γ	θ	ə
<i>input</i>	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M
TIPA	ə	ɑ	β	ε	ð	ε	ϕ	γ	fi	ɪ	j	ʁ	ʌ	ɱ
<i>input</i>	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	
TIPA	ŋ	ɔ	ʔ	ʃ	r	ʃ	θ	ʊ	ʊ	ʊ	χ	ʏ	ʒ	

Table 10.105: TIPA shortcut characters

family names `ptm` and `phv`. Thus, to use it with the modern T_EX Gyre fonts *Termes* and *Heros*, we have to explicitly substitute the old family names in T3 encoding.

In linguistics, fəʊˈnɛtɪk transcriptions are usually shown in square brackets, e.g., phonetics [fəʊˈnɛtɪks].

```
\usepackage{tgtermes,tgheros,tipa}
\DeclareFontFamilySubstitution{T3}{qtm}{ptm}
\DeclareFontFamilySubstitution{T3}{qhv}{phv}

In linguistics, f\textschwa\textupsilon\textprimstress
n\textepsilon t\i k transcriptions are usually shown in square
brackets, e.g., \textsf{phonetics \textipa{[f@U^nEtIks]}}.
```

10-13-14

*Redefined
math commands* 

TIPA defines `*`, `\;`, `\:`, `\!`, and `\|` as special macros with which to easily input phonetic symbols that do not have a shortcut input as explained above. In standard L^AT_EX all five are already defined for use in math mode, so loading *tipa* highjacks them for use by linguists. If that is not desirable, the option `safe` prevents these redefinitions. The long forms then have to be used—for example, the command `\textroundcap` instead of `\|c`. The following lines show a few more complicated examples with the output in Computer Modern Roman, Sans, and Typewriter:

ŋOöõ ŋOâ?ã
A) dɔg, B) kæt, C) maʊs
*k̥mtóm *bhrâtēr

```
\usepackage{tipa}

\begin{IPA} \textrm{N\!o'\{~*o}\~o \r*N\!o^~aP\~a} \par
\textsf{\*A} dOg, \*B) k\ae{}t, \*C) maUs} \par
\texttt{\*|c{k}\r*mt\~om *bhr\~=at\=er} \end{IPA}
```

10-13-15

If loaded with the option `tone`, TIPA provides a `\tone` command to produce “tone letters”. The command takes one argument consisting of a string of numbers denoting pitch levels, 1 being the lowest and 5 the highest. Within this range, any combination is allowed, and there is no limit on the length of the combination, as exemplified in the last line of the next example, which otherwise shows the usage of `\tone` to display the four tones of Chinese.

ᵀma (mother) ᵁma (horse)
ᵀma (hemp) ᵁma (scold)
ᵀᵀᵀ

```
\usepackage[tone]{tipa}

\tone{55}ma (mother) \tone{214}ma (horse) \par
\tone{35}ma (hemp) \tone{51}ma (scold) \par \tone{153325413}
```

10-13-16

The above examples merely scrape the surface of the possibilities offered by TIPA. To explore it in detail consult the *tipaman* manual, which is part of the TIPA distribution.

CHAPTER 11

Higher Mathematics

11.1 Introduction to amsmath and mathtools	128
11.2 Display and alignment structures for equations	131
11.3 Matrix-like environments	153
11.4 Compound structures and decorations	163
11.5 Variable symbol commands	180
11.6 Words in mathematics	191
11.7 Fine-tuning the mathematical layout	194
11.8 Symbols in formulas	208

Basic \LaTeX offers excellent mathematical typesetting capabilities for straightforward documents. However, when complex displayed equations or more advanced mathematical constructs are heavily used, something more is needed. Although it is possible to define new commands or environments to ease the burden of typing in formulas, this is not the best solution. In the early nineties the American Mathematical Society (AMS) provided a major package, `amsmath`, which made the preparation of mathematical documents much less time-consuming and more consistent.¹ It forms the core of a collection of packages known as $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\text{-}\text{\LaTeX}$ [5] and is the major subject of this chapter. A useful book by George Grätzer [59] also covers these packages in detail.

This chapter describes briefly, and provides examples of, a substantial number of the many features of these packages as well as a few closely related packages; it also gives a few pointers to other relevant packages. In addition, it provides some essential background on mathematical typesetting with \TeX . Thus, it covers some of standard \LaTeX 's features for mathematical typesetting and layout and contains some general hints on how to typeset mathematical formulas, though these are not the main aims of this chapter. It is also definitely not a comprehensive manual of good practice for typesetting mathematics with \LaTeX . Indeed, many of the examples are

¹This package has its foundations in the macro-level extensions to \TeX known as $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\text{-}\text{\TeX}$.

offered purely for illustration purposes and, therefore, present neither good design nor good mathematics nor necessarily good L^AT_EX coding.

Advice on how to typeset mathematics according to late 20th century U.S. practice can be found in Ellen Swanson's *Math into Type* [187]. Many details concerning how to implement this advice using T_EX or, equally, standard L^AT_EX appear in Chapters 16–18 of Donald Knuth's *The T_EXbook* [84].

To use the majority of the material described in this chapter, you need to load at least the `amsmath` or `mathtools` package in the preamble of your document. If other packages are needed, they are clearly marked in the examples. Detailed installation and usage documentation is included with the individual packages.

11.1 Introduction to `amsmath` and `mathtools`

The $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -L^AT_EX project commenced in 1987, and three years later $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -L^AT_EX version 1.0 was released. This was the original conversion to L^AT_EX of the mathematical capabilities in Michael Spivak's $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -T_EX by Frank Mittelbach and Rainer Schöpf, working as consultants to the American Mathematical Society, with assistance from Michael Downes (1958–2003) of the AMS technical staff. In 1994, further work was done with David Jones. This work was coordinated by Michael Downes, and the packages have throughout been supported and much enhanced under his direction and the patronage of the AMS.¹ Initially $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -L^AT_EX was a separate format, which is the reason for the separate name, but at some point, when computers got faster and faster, the functionality was moved to the package `amsmath`, which could be loaded into standard L^AT_EX, and the support for a separate format was dropped. Thus, these days speaking of $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -L^AT_EX simply refers to `amsmath` or the AMS document classes that evolved from that project.

In 2016 the AMS passed maintenance and control of `amsmath` and some of its accompanying packages back to the L^AT_EX Project Team, because its math capabilities are a core functionality of L^AT_EX.²

*Thanks to
a great guy!*

Michael Downes (1958–2003) would have been the author of this chapter when we wrote the second edition of this book had he not died in spring 2003. Much of the chapter is based on the documentation he prepared for $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -L^AT_EX; thus, what you are reading is a particular and heartfelt tribute by its current author to the life and work of a dear friend and colleague with whom we shared many coding adventures in the uncharted backwaters of T_EX.

*Available package
options*

A few options are recognized by the `amsmath` package. Most of these affect only detailed positioning of the “limits” on various types of mathematical operators (Section 11.4.4) or that of equation tags (Section 11.2.4).

¹Some material in this chapter is reprinted from the documentation that was distributed with $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -L^AT_EX (with permission from the American Mathematical Society).

²However, the American Mathematical Society retained maintenance and support of the AMS fonts and the document classes `amsart`, `amsbook`, and `amsproc`; thus, any issue or inquiries concerning these classes or font packages have to be taken up with their technical stuff and not the L^AT_EX Project Team.

The following three options are often supplied as global document options, set on the `\documentclass` command. They are, however, also recognized when the `amsmath` package is loaded with the `\usepackage` command.

- `reqno` **(default)** Place equation numbers (tags) on the right.
- `leqno` Place equation numbers (tags) on the left.¹
- `fleqn` Position equations at a fixed indent from the left margin rather than centered in the text column.

For historical reasons some components of the `amsmath` package exist as separate packages so that they can be loaded on their own — a feature that was essential when computer memory was tight and just loading a large package like `amsmath` was taking considerable time. These days the advice is to always load `amsmath` and not try to determine what is needed and what is not.

*Available
subpackages*

- `amsofn` Provides `\DeclareMathOperator` for defining new operator names such as `\Ker` and `\esssup`.
- `amstext` Provides the `\text` command for typesetting a fragment of text in the correct type size.

The principal documentation for these two packages is the *User's Guide for the amsmath Package (Version 2.1)* [5], which is part of the \LaTeX distribution.

The following packages, providing functionality additional to that in `amsmath`, must be loaded explicitly; they are listed here for completeness.

Extension packages

- `amscd` Defines some commands for easing the generation of commutative diagrams by introducing the `CD` environment (see Section 11.3.5 on page 159). There is no support for diagonal arrows.
- `amsthm` Provides a method to declare theorem-like structures and offers a `proof` environment. It is discussed in Section 4.1.4 on page 281.
- `amsxtra` Provides certain odds and ends that are needed for historical compatibility, such as `\fracwithdelims`, `\accentedsymbol`, and commands for placing accents as superscripts.
- `upref` Makes `\ref` print cross-reference numbers in an upright/roman font regardless of context.

The `amsmath` package is very comprehensive and provides most of what is needed when attempting serious mathematical typesetting. It is, however, rather static; i.e., it has not seen many additions (or fixes) since its initial development in the nineties. Because of this, several smaller packages, some of which we discuss in this chapter, have been developed to add one or the other missing feature. In addition, there is

*mathtools — A
drop-in replacement
for amsmath*

¹When using one of the AMS document classes, the default is `leqno`.

also the `mathtools` package by Morten Høgholm now maintained by Lars Madsen that has been explicitly developed to offer a replacement for `amsmath`. It provides all features of `amsmath` (including the support for all of its package options), augments it with several new features, and fixes a number of known bugs in `amsmath`. We give examples of its extended functionality in the appropriate places, and if you intend to use any of this, you should load `mathtools` in place of `amsmath`.

The $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ - \LaTeX document classes

As already mentioned, the three document classes `amsart`, `amsproc`, and `amsbook` from the original $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ - \LaTeX collection are still maintained by the American Mathematical Society. They correspond to \LaTeX 's `article`, `proc`, and `book`, respectively, and are designed to be used in the preparation of manuscripts for submission to the AMS. However, given that they are part of every \LaTeX distribution, nothing prohibits their use for other purposes. In fact, they are often used as the base class for other journals instead of the standard \LaTeX classes.

With these class files the `amsmath` package is automatically loaded so that you can start your document simply with `\documentclass{amsart}`. These classes are not covered in this book because they provide an interface similar to that provided by the \LaTeX standard classes; refer to [4] for details of their use.

The AMSfonts collection

Some of the material in this chapter refers to another collection of packages from the American Mathematical Society, namely, the `AMSfonts` distribution. These packages, listed below, set up various fonts and commands for use in mathematical formulas.

`amsfonts` Defines the `\mathfrak` and `\mathbb` commands and sets up the fonts `msam` (extra math symbols A), `msbm` (extra math symbols B and blackboard bold), `eufm` (Euler Fraktur), extra sizes of `cmmib` (bold math italic and bold lowercase Greek), and `cmbsty` (bold math symbols and bold script) for use in mathematics.

`amssymb` Defines the names of the mathematical symbols available with the `AMSfonts` collection. These commands are discussed in Section 11.8. The package automatically loads the `amsfonts` package.

`eufrak` Sets up the fonts for the Euler Fraktur letters (`\mathfrak`), as discussed in Section 12.3.3. This alphabet is also available from the `amsfonts` package.

`eucal` Makes `\mathcal` use the Euler script instead of the usual Computer Modern script letters; see Section 12.3.3 for details.

The above packages and fonts are maintained by the American Mathematical Society, and the principal piece of documentation for both is the *User's Guide to AMSFonts Version 2.2d* [2]. However, the distribution is now in version 3, while the documentation is still describing version 2.2d. Though most of it is still accurate and relevant, there is one area where the guide talks about METAFONT (bitmapped) versus Type 1 (outline) fonts that you need to ignore. These days only the Type 1 fonts are distributed, so this part is giving incorrect advice. In particular, the `psamsfonts` option described there should no longer be used, because it is no longer recognized by all of the packages and produces either a warning or an error.


Documentation is somewhat dated, but still relevant

A few important warnings

Many of the commands described in this chapter have been fragile in the past and needed to be `\protected` in moving arguments (see Appendix B.1 on page 715). Thus, when strange error messages appear, a missing `\protect` is a likely cause. A part of the maintenance work of the L^AT_EX Project Team is to make all of them robust so that over time this issue should vanish.

 *Watch out for fragile commands*

It is never a good idea to use shortcut codes for L^AT_EX environments. With the `amsmath` display environments described in this chapter, such shortcuts are always disastrous — do not do it! For closely related reasons, you will also find that verbatim material cannot be used within these environments. Here are some examples of declarations for disaster:

 *Do not abbreviate environments*

```
\newenvironment{mlt}{\begin{multline}}{\end{multline}}
\newcommand\bga{\begin{gather}} \newcommand\ega{\end{gather}}
```

Both produce errors of the form “`\begin{...}` ended by ...”. However, you can define synonyms and variant forms of these environments as follows:

```
\newenvironment{mlt}{\multline}\endmultline}
\newenvironment{longgather}{\allowdisplaybreaks\gather}{\endgather}
```

Note that these must have the command form of an existing environment as the last command in the “begin-code”, and the corresponding `\end...` command as the first thing in the “end-code”. See also Section A.1.3 for more details.

11.2 Display and alignment structures for equations

The `amsmath` package defines several environments for creating displayed mathematics. These cover single- and multiple-line displays with single or multiple alignment points and various options for numbering equations within displays.

Throughout this section the term “equation” is used in a very particular way: to refer to a *logically* distinct part of a mathematical display that is frequently numbered for reference purposes and is also labeled (commonly by its number in parentheses). Such labels are often called *tags*.

11-2-1

$$(1) \quad (a+b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$$

$$\sin^2 \eta + \cos^2 \eta = 1$$

```
\usepackage[leqno]{amsmath}
\begin{equation} (a+b)^2 = a^2+2ab+b^2 \end{equation}
\[ \sin^2\eta+\cos^2\eta = 1 \]
```

None of the math environments allow empty lines in their body. If you wish to structure your input source, use lines that are empty except for a %-sign at the beginning.

The complete list of all the display environments from `amsmath` and `mathtools` available for mathematical typesetting is given in Table 11.1 on the next page; the majority of these environments are covered in this section, along with examples of

Math Display Environments		Effect
equation	equation*	One line, one equation (equation* corresponds to <code>\[... \]</code>)
multline	multline*	One unaligned multiple-line equation, one equation number
gather	gather*	Several equations without alignment
align	align*	Several equations with multiple alignments
flalign	flalign*	Several equations: horizontally spread form of align
alignat	alignat*	Several equations: no extra spacing
split		A simple alignment within a multiple-line equation
gathered		A “mini-page” with unaligned equations
aligned	alignedat	A “mini-page” with multiple alignments (with/without spacing)
Environments added by mathtools		
lgathered	rgathered	A “mini-page” with left or right equations
multlined		A “mini-page” with a multline inside

Table 11.1: Display environments in the amsmath/mathtools packages

their use. Where appropriate they have starred forms in which there is no numbering or tagging.

To position the mathematics at a fixed indent from the left margin, rather than centered in the text column, use the option `fleqn`. You then normally need to set the size of the indent in the preamble. It is the value of the rubber length `\mathindent`, which gets its default value from the indentation of a first-level list — which is probably not the value you want! Observe the differences between the next example and the previous example. In this particular case, use of the `reqno` option is redundant (as it is the default), but it forces the equation number to the right side regardless of what the document class specifies.

$(a + b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$	(1)	<pre>\usepackage[fleqn,reqno]{amsmath} \setlength\mathindent{1pc minus 1pc} \begin{equation} (a+b)^2 = a^2+2ab+b^2 \end{equation} \[\sin^2\eta+\cos^2\eta = 1 \]</pre>	11-2-2
$\sin^2 \eta + \cos^2 \eta = 1$			

If you use a minus component in the value for `\mathindent` as we did in the previous example, very wide formulas can protrude into that indentation if they do not otherwise fit into the available space.

As later examples show, as in standard \LaTeX , `&` and `\\` are used for column and line separation within displayed alignments. The details of their usage change in the `amsmath` environments, however (see the next section).

11.2.1 Comparison of amsmath/mathtools with standard \LaTeX

Some of the multiple-line display environments allow you to align parts of the formula. In contrast to the original \LaTeX environments `eqnarray` and `eqnarray*`, the structures implemented by the `amsmath` package use a slightly different and

more straightforward method for marking the alignment points. Standard \LaTeX 's `eqnarray*` is similar to an `array` environment with `{rcl}` as the preamble and, therefore, requires two ampersand characters indicating the two alignment points. In the equivalent `amsmath` structures there is only a single alignment point (similar to a `{rl}` preamble), so only a single ampersand character should be used, placed to the left of the symbol (usually a relation) that should be aligned.

The `amsmath` structures give fixed spacing at the alignment points, whereas the `eqnarray` environment produces extra space depending on the parameter settings for `array`. The difference can be seen clearly in the next example, where the same equation is typeset using the `equation`, `align`, and `eqnarray` environments; the spaces in the `eqnarray` environment come out too wide for conventional standards of mathematical typesetting.


11-2-3

$x^2 + y^2 = z^2$	(1)	<code>\usepackage{amsmath}</code>
$x^2 + y^2 = z^2$	(2)	<code>\begin{equation}</code>
$x^3 + y^3 < z^3$	(3)	<code>x^2 + y^2 = z^2</code>
$x^2 + y^2 = z^2$	(4)	<code>\end{equation}</code>
$x^3 + y^3 < z^3$	(5)	<code>\begin{align}</code>
		<code>x^2 + y^2 &= z^2 \ \ x^3 + y^3 &< z^3</code>
		<code>\end{align}</code>
		<code>\begin{eqnarray}</code>
		<code>x^2 + y^2 &=& z^2 \ \ x^3 + y^3 &<& z^3</code>
		<code>\end{eqnarray}</code>

As in standard \LaTeX , lines in an `amsmath` display are marked with `\\` (or the end of the environment). Because line breaking in a mathematical display usually requires a thorough understanding of the structure of the formula, it is commonly considered to be beyond today's software capabilities. However, one of the last bigger projects undertaken by Michael Downes (1958–2003) precisely tackled this problem; it resulted in the `breqn` package (see Section 11.2.12 on page 146 for an overview).

Unlike `eqnarray`, the `amsmath` environments do not, by default, allow page breaks between lines (see Section 11.2.11). Furthermore, they move the equation tag out of the way if it would otherwise overprint the formula.

Another difference concerns the use of `\\[dimension]` or `*` within mathematical display environments. With `amsmath`, there must be no space between the `\\` and the `[` or the `*`; otherwise, the optional argument or star will not be recognized. The reason is that brackets and stars are very common in mathematical formulas, so this restriction avoids the annoyance of having a genuine bracket belonging to the formula be mistaken for the start of the optional argument.

 Space after
`\\` not ignored

11.2.2 A single equation on one line

The `equation` environment produces a single equation with an automatically generated number or tag placed on the extreme left or right according to the option in use (see Section 11.2.13); `equation*` does the same but omits a tag.¹

¹ Standard \LaTeX also has `equation`, but not `equation*`, because the latter is similar to the standard displayed math environment.

Note that the presence of the tag does not affect the positioning of the contents. If there is not enough room for it on the one line, the tag is shifted up or down: to the previous line when equation numbers are on the left, and to the next line when numbers are on the right.

	$n^2 + m^2 = k^2$	<pre>\usepackage[leqno]{amsmath} \begin{equation*} n^2 + m^2 = k^2 \end{equation*} \begin{equation} n^p + m^p \neq k^p \quad \text{p} > 2 \end{equation}</pre>
(1)	$n^p + m^p \neq k^p \quad p > 2$	

11-2-4

11.2.3 A single equation on several lines: no alignment

The `multline` environment is a variation of the `equation` environment used only for equations that do not fit on a single line. In this environment `\\` must be used to mark the line breaks, because they are not found automatically.

The first line of a `multline` is aligned on an indentation from the left margin and the last line on the same indentation from the right margin.¹ The size of this indentation is the value of the length `\multlinegap`; thus, it can be changed using \LaTeX 's `\setlength` and `\addtolength` commands.

If a `multline` contains more than two lines, each line other than the first and last is centered individually within the display width (unless the option `fleqn` is used). It is, however, possible to force a single line to the left or the right by adding either `\shoveleft` or `\shoveright` within that line.

A `multline` environment is a single (logical) equation and thus has only a single tag, the `multline*` having none; thus, none of the individual lines can be changed by the use of `\tag` or `\notag`. The tag, if present, is placed flush right on the last line with the default `reqno` option or flush left on the first line when the `leqno` option is used.

First line of a multiline		<pre>\usepackage{amsmath} \begin{multline} \text{First line of a multiline} \\ \text{Centered Middle line} \\ \text{A right Middle} \\ \text{Another centered Middle} \\ \text{Yet another centered Middle} \\ \text{A left Middle} \\ \text{Last line of the multiline} \end{multline}</pre>
	(1)	

11-2-5

The next example shows the effect of `\multlinegap`. In the first setting, the “*dy*”s line up and make it appear that a tag is missing from the first line of the equation.

¹Never use `multline` for a single-line equation because the effect is unpredictable.

When the parameter is set to zero, the space on the left of the second line does not change because of the tag, while the first line is pushed over to the left margin, thus making it clear that this is only one equation.

11-2-6

$$\sum_{t \in \mathbf{T}} \int_a^t \left\{ \int_a^t f(t-x)^2 g(y)^2 dx \right\} dy$$

$$= \sum_{t \notin \mathbf{T}} \int_t^a \left\{ g(y)^2 \int_t^a f(x)^2 dx \right\} dy \quad (2)$$

$$\sum_{t \in \mathbf{T}} \int_a^t \left\{ \int_a^t f(t-x)^2 g(y)^2 dx \right\} dy$$

$$= \sum_{t \notin \mathbf{T}} \int_t^a \left\{ g(y)^2 \int_t^a f(x)^2 dx \right\} dy \quad (2)$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\begin{multline} \tag{2}
\sum_{t \in \mathbf{T}} \int_a^t \int_a^t f(t-x)^2 g(y)^2 dx dy \\
= \sum_{t \notin \mathbf{T}} \int_t^a g(y)^2 \int_t^a f(x)^2 dx dy
\end{multline}
\setlength{\multlinegap}{0pt}
\begin{multline} \tag{2}
\sum_{t \in \mathbf{T}} \int_a^t \int_a^t f(t-x)^2 g(y)^2 dx dy \\
= \sum_{t \notin \mathbf{T}} \int_t^a g(y)^2 \int_t^a f(x)^2 dx dy
\end{multline}
```

11.2.4 A single equation on several lines: with alignment

When a simple alignment is needed within a single multiple-line equation, the `split` environment is almost always the best choice. It uses a single ampersand (&) on each line to mark the alignment point.

11-2-7

$$(a+b)^4 = (a+b)^2(a+b)^2$$

$$= (a^2 + 2ab + b^2)(a^2 + 2ab + b^2) \quad (1)$$

$$= a^4 + 4a^3b + 6a^2b^2 + 4ab^3 + b^4$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\begin{equation}
\begin{split}
(a+b)^4 \\
&= (a+b)^2 (a+b)^2 \\
&= (a^2 + 2ab + b^2) \\
&\quad (a^2 + 2ab + b^2) \\
&= a^4 + 4a^3b + 6a^2b^2 + 4ab^3 + b^4
\end{split}
\end{equation}
```

Because it is always used as the content of a single (logical) equation, a `split` does not itself produce any numbering tag, and hence there is no starred variant. If needed, the outer display environment provides any needed tags.

Apart from commands such as `\label` or `\notag` that produce no visible material, a `split` structure should normally constitute the entire body of the equation being split. It can consist of either a whole equation or `equation*` environment or one whole line of a `gather` or `gather*` environment; see Section 11.2.5.

When the `centertags` option is in effect (the default), the tag (and any other material in the equation outside the `split`) is centered vertically on the total height of the material from the `split` environment. When the `tbtags` option is specified, the tag is aligned with the last line of the split when the tag is on the right, and with the first line of the split when the tag is on the left.

$ \begin{aligned} (a+b)^3 &= (a+b)(a+b)^2 \\ &= (a+b)(a^2 + 2ab + b^2) \\ &= a^3 + 3a^2b + 3ab^2 + b^3 \end{aligned} \tag{1} $	<pre> \usepackage[tbtags]{amsmath} \begin{equation} \begin{split} (a+b)^3 &= (a+b)(a+b)^2 \\ &= (a+b)(a^2 + 2ab + b^2) \\ &= a^3 + 3a^2b + 3ab^2 + b^3 \end{split} \end{equation} </pre>	11-2-8
---	--	--------

In the next example the command `\phantom` is used to adjust the horizontal positioning. It is first used in the preamble to define an “invisible relation symbol” of width equal to that of its argument (in this case, `=`). Within the example it is used to align certain lines by starting them with a “phantom or invisible subformula” (see Section 11.7.2 on page 197).

Ensure that + is interpreted as a binary symbol

The empty pair of braces, `{}`, is equivalent to `\mathord{}` and provides an invisible zero-width “letter” that is needed to achieve the correct spacing of `+ h` (without the `{}` it would look like this: `+h`).

```

\usepackage{amsmath}
\newcommand\relphantom[1]{\mathrel{\phantom{#1}}}
\newcommand\ve{\varepsilon} \newcommand\tve{t_{\varepsilon}}
\newcommand\vf{\varphi} \newcommand\yvf{y_{\varphi}}
\newcommand\bfe{\mathbf{E}}
\begin{equation}
\begin{split}
f_h, \ve(x, y)
&= \ve \bfe_{x, y} \int_0^{\tve} L_{x, \yvf(\ve u)} \vf(x) \, du \\
&= h \int L_{x, z} \vf(x) \rho_x(dz) \\
&\relphantom{=} {} + h \biggl[ \\
&\quad \frac{1}{\tve} \\
&\quad \biggl( \bfe_y \int_0^{\tve} L_{x, y^x(s)} \vf(x) \, ds \\
&\quad \quad - \ve \int L_{x, z} \vf(x) \rho_x(dz) \biggr) + \\
&\relphantom{=} \phantom{{}} + h \biggl[ \\
&\quad \frac{1}{\tve} \\
&\quad \biggl( \bfe_y \int_0^{\tve} L_{x, y^x(s)} \vf(x) \, ds \\
&\quad \quad - \bfe_{x, y} \int_0^{\tve} L_{x, \yvf(\ve s)} \\
&\quad \quad \quad \vf(x) \, ds \biggr) \biggr]
\end{split}
\end{equation}

```

Note that the equation number tag has been moved to the line below the displayed material. Although this does not seem to be a very wise decision, it is as far as the automated expertise built into the system at this stage can take us.

11-2-9

$$\begin{aligned}
 f_{h,\varepsilon}(x,y) &= \varepsilon \mathbf{E}_{x,y} \int_0^{t_\varepsilon} L_{x,y_\varphi(\varepsilon u)} \varphi(x) du \\
 &= h \int L_{x,z} \varphi(x) \rho_x(dz) \\
 &\quad + h \left[\frac{1}{t_\varepsilon} \left(\mathbf{E}_y \int_0^{t_\varepsilon} L_{x,y^x(s)} \varphi(x) ds - t_\varepsilon \int L_{x,z} \varphi(x) \rho_x(dz) \right) + \right. \\
 &\quad \left. \frac{1}{t_\varepsilon} \left(\mathbf{E}_y \int_0^{t_\varepsilon} L_{x,y^x(s)} \varphi(x) ds - \mathbf{E}_{x,y} \int_0^{t_\varepsilon} L_{x,y_\varphi(\varepsilon s)} \varphi(x) ds \right) \right] \quad (1)
 \end{aligned}$$

11.2.5 Equation groups without alignment

The `gather` environment is used to put two or more equations into a single display without alignment between the equations. Each equation is separately centered within the display width and has its individual number tag, if needed. Each line of a `gather` is a single (logical) equation.

11-2-10

$$\begin{aligned}
 (a+b)^2 &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 & (1) \\
 (a+b) \cdot (a-b) &= a^2 - b^2 & (2)
 \end{aligned}$$

```

\usepackage{amsmath}
\begin{gather}
(a + b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \\
(a + b) \cdot (a - b) = a^2 - b^2
\end{gather}

```

Use `\notag` within the logical line to suppress the equation number for that line; or use `gather*` to suppress all equation numbers.

11-2-11

$$\begin{aligned}
 D(a,r) &\equiv \{z \in \mathbf{C} : |z - a| < r\} \\
 \text{seg}(a,r) &\equiv \{z \in \mathbf{C} : \Im z < \Im a, |z - a| < r\} & (1) \\
 C(E,\theta,r) &\equiv \bigcup_{e \in E} c(e,\theta,r) & (2)
 \end{aligned}$$

```

\usepackage{amsmath}
\begin{gather}
D(a,r) \equiv \{ z \in \mathbf{C} : \\
\quad \colon |z - a| < r \} \quad \notag \\
\operatorname{seg}(a,r) \equiv \\
\{ z \in \mathbf{C} \colon \\
\quad \Im z < \Im a, \ |z - a| < r \} \quad \notag \\
C(E,\theta,r) \equiv \\
\bigcup_{e \in E} c(e,\theta,r)
\end{gather}

```


11.2.6 Equation groups with simple alignment

The `align` environment should be used for two or more equations in a single display with vertical alignment. The simplest form uses a single ampersand (&) on each line to mark the alignment point (usually just before a Relation symbol).

$(a+b)^3 = (a+b)(a+b)^2$	(1)	<code>\usepackage{amsmath}</code>	
$= (a+b)(a^2 + 2ab + b^2)$	(2)	<code>\begin{align}</code>	
$= a^3 + 3a^2b + 3ab^2 + b^3$	(3)	$(a+b)^3 \quad \&= (a+b) (a+b)^2 \quad \backslash\backslash$	
		$\quad \&= (a+b)(a^2 + 2ab + b^2) \quad \backslash\backslash$	
		$\quad \&= a^3 + 3a^2b + 3ab^2 + b^3$	11-2-12
		<code>\end{align}</code>	
$x^2 + y^2 = 1$	(4)	<code>\begin{align}</code>	
$x = \sqrt{1-y^2}$	(5)	$x^2 + y^2 \quad \&= 1 \quad \backslash\backslash$	
		$x \quad \&= \sqrt{1-y^2}$	
		<code>\end{align}</code>	

11.2.7 Multiple alignments: `align`, `flalign`, and `alignat`

An `align` environment can include more than one alignment point. The layout contains as many column-pairs as necessary and is similar to an `array` with a preamble of the form `{r1r1...}` except that it does not change the spacing around the alignment points. If it consists of n such `r1` column-pairs, then the number of ampersands per line is $2n - 1$: one ampersand for alignment within each column-pair giving n ; and $n - 1$ ampersands to separate the column-pairs.

Within the `align` environment, the material is spread out evenly across the display width. All extra (or white) space within the line is distributed equally “between consecutive `r1` column-pairs” and the two display margins.

This example has two column-pairs.		<code>\usepackage{amsmath}</code>	
Compare $x^2 + y^2 = 1$	$x^3 + y^3 = 1$	(1)	<code>This example has two column-pairs.</code>
$x = \sqrt{1-y^2}$	$x = \sqrt[3]{1-y^3}$	(2)	<code>\begin{align} \quad \text{\text{Compare}} \quad</code>
			$x^2 + y^2 \quad \&= 1 \quad \&$
			$x^3 + y^3 \quad \&= 1 \quad \backslash\backslash$
			$x \quad \&= \sqrt{1-y^2} \quad \&$
			$x \quad \&= \sqrt[3]{1-y^3}$
			<code>\end{align}</code>
This example has three column-pairs.			11-2-13
$x = y$	$X = Y$	$a = b + c$	(3)
$x + x' = y + y'$	$X + X' = Y + Y'$	$a'b = c'b$	(4)
			<code>\begin{align}</code>
			$x \quad \&= y \quad \& X \quad \&= Y \quad \&$
			$a \quad \&= b+c \quad \backslash\backslash$
			$x + x' \quad \&= y + y' \quad \&$
			$X + X' \quad \&= Y + Y' \quad \& a'b \quad \&= c'b$
			<code>\end{align}</code>

In the variant `flalign` the layout is similar except that there is no space at the margins. As a result, in the next example, Equation (3) now fits on a single line (while in Equation (2) this was still not possible).

This example has two column-pairs.

Compare $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ $x^3 + y^3 = 1$ (1)

$$\begin{array}{ll} x = \sqrt{1 - y^2} & x = \sqrt[3]{1 - y^3} \\ & (2) \end{array}$$

11-2-14

This example has three column-pairs.

$$x = y \qquad X = Y \qquad a = b + c \quad (3)$$

$$x + x' = y + y' \quad X + X' = Y + Y' \quad a'b = c'b \quad (4)$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
```

This example has two column-pairs.

```
\begin{flalign} \text{Compare } & \\ x^2 + y^2 &= 1 & & \\ x^3 + y^3 &= 1 & & \\ x &= \sqrt{1-y^2} & & \\ x &= \sqrt[3]{1-y^3} & & \end{flalign}
```

\end{flalign}

This example has three column-pairs.

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{\texttt{\textbackslash begin\{flalign\}}} \\ & \end{aligned}$$
$$\begin{array}{rcl} x & \&= y & \& X \&= Y \& \\ a & \&= b+c & \backslash \backslash \\ x + x' & \&= y + y' & \& \\ X + X' & \&= Y + Y' & \& a'b \&= c'b \end{array}$$
$$\end{flalign}$$

In both cases the minimum space between column-pairs can be set by changing `\minalignsep`. Its default value is 10pt, but, misleadingly, it is *not* a length parameter. Thus, it must be changed by using `\renewcommand`. If we set it to zero for the first part of the example, Equation (2) gets squeezed onto a single line; if we set it to 15pt later, the label (3) gets forced onto a line by itself. Unfortunately, there is no such simple parametric method for controlling the spacing at the margins.

This example has two column-pairs.

Compare $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ $x^3 + y^3 = 1$ (1)

$$x = \sqrt{1 - y^2} \quad x = \sqrt[3]{1 - y^3} \quad (2)$$

11-2-15

This example has three column-pairs.

$$x = y \qquad X = Y \qquad a = b + c$$

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{1}{\rho} \right) = - \frac{1}{\rho^2} \frac{d\rho}{dt} \quad (3)$$

$$x + x' = y + y' \quad X + X' = Y + Y' \quad a'b = c'b \quad (4)$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
```

This example has two column-pairs.

```
\renewcommand\minalignsep{0pt}
\begin{align} \text{\Compare } & \\ x^2 + y^2 &= 1 && & \\ x^3 + y^3 &= 1 && & \\ x &= \sqrt[3]{1-y^3} && & \\ x &= \sqrt[3]{1-y^3} && & \end{align}
```

$$\end{align}$$

This example has three column-pairs.

```
\renewcommand\minalignsep{15pt}
```

 $\begin{aligned}$

x	&= y	& X	&= Y	&
a	&= b+c			\\
x + x'	&= y + y'			&
X + X'	&= Y + Y'	& a'b	&= c'b	

\end{flalign}

Sometimes it is more convenient to explicitly specify all the horizontal spacing yourself within the formula. For this you can use an `alignat` environment. It differs from `align` in two ways: you have to specify the number of `rl` pairs as an argument to the environment and it does not add any spaces between the pairs, e.g.,

$$x \approx y \quad X \approx Y \quad a \approx b+c \quad \dots$$

As usual, equation numbers can be altered with `\tag` or suppressed with `\notag`.

The next example illustrates a very common use for `align`. Note the use of `\text` to produce normal text within the mathematical material. Do not forget to reset `\minalignsep` if you change it in this manner.

$x = y$ $x' = y'$ $x + x' = y + y'$	by hypothesis (1) by definition (2) by Axiom 1 (3)	<pre> \usepackage{amsmath} \renewcommand\minalignsep{30pt} \begin{align} x &= y && \text{by hypothesis} \\ x' &= y' && \text{by definition} \\ x + x' &= y + y' && \text{by Axiom 1} \end{align} \renewcommand\minalignsep{10pt} </pre>
-------------------------------------	--	---

11-2-16

11.2.8 Display environments as mini-pages

All the environments described so far produce material set to the full display width. A few of these environments have also been adapted to provide self-contained alignment structures, as if they were set as the only content of a `minipage` environment whose size, in both directions, is determined by its contents. You can think of them as subsidiary environments that can be used within any of the display environments discussed so far. (Below we use them inside `equation`.)

*mathtools additions
to amsmath*

The environment names are changed only slightly—to `aligned`, `gathered`, and `alignedat`—and when using `mathtools`, there are additionally `lgathered`, `rgathered`, and `multlined`. Note that an `aligned` environment avoids unnecessary space on the left and right; thus, it mostly resembles the `flalign` environment.

Like `minipage`, these environments take an optional argument that specifies the vertical positioning with respect to the material on either side. The default alignment of the box is centered (`[c]`). Of course, like `split`, they are used only within equations, and they never produce tags.

$x^2 + y^2 = 1$ $x = \sqrt{1 - y^2}$ and also $y = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$	$(a + b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$ $(a + b) \cdot (a - b) = a^2 - b^2$	<pre> \usepackage{amsmath} \begin{equation} \begin{aligned} x^2 + y^2 &= 1 \\ x &= \sqrt{1 - y^2} \\ \text{and also } y &= \sqrt{1 - x^2} \end{aligned} \quad \begin{aligned} (a + b)^2 &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \\ (a + b) \cdot (a - b) &= a^2 - b^2 \end{aligned} \end{equation} </pre>
--	---	--

11-2-17

The same mathematics can also be typeset, albeit not very beautifully, using different vertical alignments for the environments.

11-2-18

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + y^2 &= 1 \\ x &= \sqrt{1 - y^2} \\ \text{and also } y &= \sqrt{1 - x^2} \end{aligned} \quad \begin{aligned} (a + b)^2 &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \\ (a + b) \cdot (a - b) &= a^2 - b^2 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\begin{equation}
\begin{aligned}[b]
x^2 + y^2 &= 1 \\
x &= \sqrt{1-y^2} \\
\text{and also } y &= \sqrt{1-x^2}
\end{aligned}
\end{equation}
\quad
\begin{gathered}[t]
(a + b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \\
(a + b) \cdot (a - b) = a^2 - b^2
\end{gathered}
\end{equation}
```

They may be used in many ways — for example, to do some creative and useful grouping of famous equations. Incidentally, these mini-page display environments are among the very few from `amsmath` that are robust enough to be used inside other definitions, as in the following example:

11-2-19

$$\left. \begin{aligned} \mathbf{B}' &= -c\nabla \times \mathbf{E} \\ \mathbf{E}' &= c\nabla \times \mathbf{B} - 4\pi\mathbf{J} \end{aligned} \right\} \text{Maxwell's equations}$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath,bm}
\newenvironment{rcases}
{\left.\begin{aligned}}
{\end{aligned}\right\}\text{rcases}}
\begin{equation*}
\begin{rcases}
\bm{B}' &= -c\nabla\times\bm{E} \\
\bm{E}' &= c\nabla\times\bm{B} - 4\pi\bm{J}
\end{rcases}
\quad \text{Maxwell's equations}
\end{equation*}
```

You can also use the `\minalignsep` command to control the space between pairs of columns in an `aligned` environment, as shown in the next example:

11-2-20

$$\begin{aligned} V_j &= v_j & X_i &= x_i - q_i x_j & & = u_j + \sum_{i \neq j} q_i \\ V_i &= v_i - q_i v_j & X_j &= x_j & & U_i &= u_i \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\renewcommand\minalignsep{5pt}
\begin{equation} \begin{aligned}
V_j &= v_j & X_i &= x_i - q_i x_j & & = u_j + \sum_{i \neq j} q_i \\
V_i &= v_i - q_i v_j & X_j &= x_j & & U_i &= u_i
\end{aligned} \end{equation}
```

As mentioned earlier, `mathtools` adds three additional environments that box their content. In contrast to `gathered` that centers the display lines, `lgathered` aligns them on the left and `rgathered` on the right. Both environments are defined

*mathtools additions
to amsmath*

with the help of a declaration `\newgathered`, through which you can define more complicated display environments that “gather and box” their content.

```
\newgathered{env-name}{line-start}{line-end}{after}
```

This defines a new environment with the name *env-name*. It collects all display lines and prepends *line-start* to each line and *line-end* after it. Finally, when the display is finished, it executes the *after-code*, which can be used to do some housekeeping. Using this command, all that was necessary to provide the `lgathered` environment in the package was the following declaration:

```
\newgathered{lgathered}{}{\hfil}{}{}
```

Existing environments can be redefined using `\renewgathered` instead.

```
\usepackage{mathtools} \newcounter{xgnum}
\newcommand{xgnum}{\stepcounter{xgnum}\textbf{\arabic{xgnum}*}}
\newgathered{xgathered}{\xgnum\quad\hfil}{\hfil}{\setcounter{xgnum}{0}}
```

Using these definitions in the next example, we get the following result:

$\begin{array}{ll} 1^* & x_0 = 1, \quad x_1 = 2 \\ 2^* & x_3 = 3 \end{array}$	(1)	<pre>% xgathered as defined above \begin{gather} \begin{xgathered} x_0=1,\quad x_1=2 \\\ x_3=3 \end{xgathered} \end{gather}</pre>	11-2-21
---	-------	---	---------

The third environment is `multlined`, which is the boxed version of `multline` discussed on page 134. In contrast to the other boxed environments, it has two optional arguments: the first defines the vertical position of the result as usual and accepts the value *b*, *t*, or *c* (default), and with the second you can specify an explicit width for the resulting box. If the *width* argument is not given, then the box is made wide enough to ensure that all continuation lines are indented compared to the first and that the last line slightly sticks out to the right. To indicate the box size, we added vertical delimiters to the left and right in the next example.

$\left| \begin{array}{l} (a+b)^2 = \\ (a+b)(a+b) \\ = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \end{array} \right|$	<pre>\usepackage{mathtools} \left[\begin{multlined}[c] (a+b)^2 = \ (a+b)(a+b) \ = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \end{multlined} \right]</pre>	11-2-22
--	--	---------

The commands `\shoveleft` and `\shoveright` also work with `multlined`, but there are a number of limitations with the environment; see the package documentation if you run into problems.

11.2.9 Interrupting displays with short text

The `\intertext` command is used for a short passage of text (typically at most a few lines) that appears between the lines of a display alignment. Its importance stems from the fact that all the alignment properties are unaffected by the text, which itself is typeset as a normal paragraph set to the display width; this alignment would not be possible if you simply ended the display and then started a new display after the text. This command may appear only immediately after a `\\` or `*` command.

Here the words “and finally” are outside the alignment, at the left margin, but all three equations are aligned.

11-2-23

and finally

$$A_1 = N_0(\lambda; \Omega') - \phi(\lambda; \Omega') \quad (1)$$

$$A_2 = \phi(\lambda; \Omega')\phi(\lambda; \Omega) \quad (2)$$

$$A_3 = \mathcal{N}(\lambda; \omega) \quad (3)$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\begin{align}
A_1 &= N_0 (\backslash lambda ; \backslash Omega') -
&\quad \backslash phi ( \backslash lambda ; \backslash Omega') \quad \backslash\backslash
A_2 &= \backslash phi (\backslash lambda ; \backslash Omega')
&\quad \backslash phi (\backslash lambda ; \backslash Omega) \quad \backslash\backslash
\intertext{and finally}
A_3 &= \mathcal{N} (\backslash lambda ; \backslash omega)
\end{align}
```

In some situations, such as in the previous example where only short text is used, the vertical separation between the formula parts and the interruption appears to be too large, and for such cases `mathtools` offers `\shortintertext` as an alternative; see Example 11-4-25 on page 174.

*mathtools addition
to amsmath*

11.2.10 Vertical space in and around displays

As is usual in \LaTeX , the optional argument `\\[dimension]` gives extra vertical space between two lines in all `amsmath` display environments (there must be no space between the `\\` and the `[` character delimiting the optional argument). The vertical spaces before and after each display environment are controlled by the following rubber lengths, where the values in parentheses are those for `\normalsize` with the (default) `10pt` option in the standard \LaTeX classes¹:

*Space within the
display...*

*...and around the
display*

`\abovedisplayskip`, `\belowdisplayskip` The normal vertical space added above and below a mathematical display (default `10pt` plus `2pt` minus `5pt`).

`\abovedisplayshortskip`, `\belowdisplayshortskip` The (usually smaller) vertical space added above and below a “short display” (`0pt` plus `3pt` and `6pt` plus `3pt` minus `3pt`, respectively). A *short display* is one that starts to the right of where the preceding text line ends.

If you look closely, you can observe the results of these space parameters in the following example. The second equation is surrounded by less space because the text

¹These defaults are very much improved by the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ - \LaTeX document classes.

in front of it does not overlap with the formula.

We now have the following:

$$X = a \quad a = c$$

and thus we have

$$X = c \quad (1)$$

And now we do not get much space around the display!

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
```

We now have the following:

```
\[ X = a \quad a = c \]
```

and thus we have

```
\begin{equation} X = c \end{equation}
```

And now we do not get much space around the display!

11-2-24

Since the four parameters `\abovedisplay..` and `\belowdisplay..` depend on the current font size, they cannot be modified in the preamble of the document using `\setlength`. Instead, they must be changed by modifying `\normalsize`, `\small`, and similar commands—a job usually done in a document class. More precisely, they can be changed mid-document, but their change survives only until the next font sizing command. This also explains why a change in the preamble has no effect: at `\begin{document}` a call to `\normalsize` is executed.

*Be wary of empty
lines around
displays*

Many authors wisely use empty lines between major structures in the document source to make it more readable. In most cases, such as before and after a heading, these empty lines do no harm. This is not universally true, however. Especially around and within mathematical display environments, one has to be quite careful: a blank line in front of such an environment produces unexpected formatting because the empty line is in effect converted into a paragraph containing no text (and so containing just the invisible paragraph indentation box). The following display is consequently surrounded by spaces of size `..displayshortskip`. Thus, the combined result is quite a lot of (possibly too much) space before the display (a whole empty line plus the `\abovedisplayshortskip`) and a very small amount of space after the display, as this example shows. To show the spacing issue more clearly we have internally set both `\abovedisplayshortskip` and `\belowdisplayshortskip` to 0pt for the next two examples. As a result there is “just” the empty line above and no space below the two displays.

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
```

Empty line before display:

Empty line before display:

$$a \neq b$$

In both cases, too much space before! ...

$$a \neq b \quad (1)$$

... and not a lot of space after!

```
\[ a \neq b \]
```

In both cases, too much space before! `\ldots`

```
\begin{equation} a \neq b \end{equation}
```

```
\ldots\ and not a lot of space after!
```

11-2-25

With the `amsmath` package loaded, this behavior is exhibited by all the display math environments. Strangely enough, with standard \LaTeX the `\[` case comes out looking more or less right. The reason is that standard \LaTeX pretends that an empty

line in front of a \displaystyle display (but only for that one) has no height but a large width. It therefore overlaps with the formula, and thus `\abovedisplayskip` and `\belowdisplayskip` are applied.

11-2-26

Empty line before display:

$$a \neq b$$

Enough space now, but do not rely on it!

$$a \neq b \quad (1)$$

Less space after in this case!

% The behavior without amsmath

Empty line before display:

`\[a \neq b \]`

Enough space now, but do not rely on it!

`\begin{equation} a \neq b \end{equation}`

Less space after in this case!

Another problem is that an empty line introduces an unwanted break point in front of the display, thus `\predisplaypenalty` is no longer honored. To summarize, do not use empty lines around display environments! If you want a visual separation in your source, use an empty line with a `%` inside instead.

Sometimes the lines in a display appear to be too close together and you want to set them slightly farther apart. For individual lines this can be done with the optional argument to `\`, but if several lines are involved, it is more efficient to use the `spreadlines` environment offered by the `mathtools` package. It expects one argument and opens up all display lines in its scope by the specified amount.

*mathtools addition
to amsmath*

A gather with normal spacing:

$$A = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \quad (1)$$

$$B = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \quad (2)$$

And now spread farther apart:

$$A = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \quad (3)$$

$$B = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \quad (4)$$

11-2-27

`\usepackage{mathtools}`

A `\texttt{gather}` with normal spacing:

`\begin{gather}`

`A=\sum_{i=1}^n x_i \ \ B = x_1 + x_2 + x_3`

`\end{gather}`

And now spread farther apart:

`\begin{spreadlines}{15pt}`

`\begin{gather}`

`A=\sum_{i=1}^n x_i \ \ B = x_1 + x_2 + x_3`

`\end{gather}`

`\end{spreadlines}`

11.2.11 Page breaks in and around displays

Automatic page breaking before and after each display environment is controlled by the penalty parameters `\predisplaypenalty` (for breaking before a display; default 10000, i.e., no break allowed) and `\postdisplaypenalty` (for breaking after a display, default 0; i.e., break allowed). The defaults are already set in standard \TeX and are not changed by `amsmath`.

*Page breaks around
the display...*

...and within the display

Unlike standard \LaTeX , the `amsmath` display environments do not, by default, allow page breaks between lines of the display. The reason for this behavior is that correct page breaks in such locations depend heavily on the structure of the display, so they often require individual attention from the author.

With `amsmath` such individual control of page breaks is best achieved via the `\displaybreak` command, but it should be used only when absolutely necessary to allow a page break within a display. The command must go before the `\\`, at which a break may be taken, and it applies only to that line and can be used only within an environment that produces a complete display. Somewhat like standard \LaTeX 's `\pagebreak` (see Section 6.2.2 in [106]), `\displaybreak` takes an optional integer as its argument, with a value ranging from zero to four, denoting the desirability of the page break: `\displaybreak[0]` means “it is permissible to break here” without encouraging a break; `\displaybreak` with no optional argument is the same as `\displaybreak[4]` and forces a break. This command cannot be used to discourage or prevent page breaks. Note that it makes no sense to break within a “mini-page display”, as those environments should never be split over two pages.

This kind of adjustment is fine-tuning, like the insertion of line breaks and page breaks in text. It should therefore be left until your document is nearly finalized. Otherwise, you may end up redoing the fine-tuning several times to keep up with changing document content.

The command `\allowdisplaybreaks`, which obeys the usual \LaTeX scoping rules, is equivalent to putting `\displaybreak[0]` before every line end in any display environment within its scope; i.e., it allows page breaks anywhere in the math displays. The command can take an optional argument for finer control: `[1]` means allow page breaks but avoid them as far as possible, while `[2]` to `[4]` allow breaks with increasing permissiveness. Within the scope of an `\allowdisplaybreaks` command, the `*` command can be used to prohibit a page break and individual `\displaybreak` commands override both the default and the effect of an `\allowdisplaybreaks`.

11.2.12 `breqn` — Automatic line breaking in math displays

Shortly before his early death, Michael Downes (1958–2003) started to develop a sophisticated package for automatic line breaking in display math equations. Morten Høgholm adopted this code and made it available to the general public. These days it is maintained by him and Will Robertson.

```
\begin{dmath}[key/value list] formula \end{dmath}
```

The `dmath` environment corresponds to the `equation` environment with the difference that it automatically breaks the *formula* into different lines if necessary and aligns them at relation symbols or binary symbols (but then indented). There also exists a `dmath*` version that omits the equation number, i.e., it corresponds to `amsmath`'s `equation*` environment. With the help of the optional *key/value list*, several aspects of the display can be adjusted.

As a teaser we repeat Example 11-2-9 from page 136 but now use `dmath` instead of `split`. As you can see, the source gets much simpler now (relatively speaking), because we do not have to define alignment points, line breaks, extra `\phantoms`, etc., to get the formula adequately broken across several lines. All that is done automatically behind the scenes by the package.

If you compare the output of the two examples, you see that they are almost identical. The most noticeable difference is the move of the $+$ from the end of the second line to the third, but this is arguably even better than our manual layout in Example 11-2-9.

```
\usepackage{breqn}
\newcommand\ve{\varepsilon} \newcommand\tve{t_{\varepsilon}}
\newcommand\vf{\varphi} \newcommand\yvf{y_{\varphi}}
\newcommand\bfE{\mathbf{E}}
\begin{dmath}
  f_{h,\ve}(x,y) = \ve \bfE_{x,y} \int_0^{t_{\ve}} L_{x,y_{\ve}(u)} \vf(x) \, du
  = h \int L_{x,z} \vf(x) \rho_x(dz) + h
  \biggl[ \frac{1}{t_{\ve}}
    \biggl( \bfE_y \int_0^{t_{\ve}} L_{x,y^x(s)} \vf(x) \, ds
    - \tve \int L_{x,z} \vf(x) \rho_x(dz) \biggr)
    + \frac{1}{t_{\ve}}
    \biggl( \bfE_y \int_0^{t_{\ve}} L_{x,y^x(s)} \vf(x) \, ds
    - \bfE_{x,y} \int_0^{t_{\ve}} L_{x,y_{\ve}(s)} \vf(x) \, ds
    \biggr) \biggr]
\end{dmath}
```

$$\begin{aligned}
 f_{h,\varepsilon}(x,y) &= \varepsilon \mathbf{E}_{x,y} \int_0^{t_\varepsilon} L_{x,y_\varepsilon(u)} \varphi(x) \, du \\
 &= h \int L_{x,z} \varphi(x) \rho_x(dz) \\
 &\quad + h \left[\frac{1}{t_\varepsilon} \left(\mathbf{E}_y \int_0^{t_\varepsilon} L_{x,y^x(s)} \varphi(x) \, ds - t_\varepsilon \int L_{x,z} \varphi(x) \rho_x(dz) \right) \right. \\
 &\quad \left. + \frac{1}{t_\varepsilon} \left(\mathbf{E}_y \int_0^{t_\varepsilon} L_{x,y^x(s)} \varphi(x) \, ds - \mathbf{E}_{x,y} \int_0^{t_\varepsilon} L_{x,y_\varepsilon(s)} \varphi(x) \, ds \right) \right] \tag{1}
 \end{aligned}$$

By default `breqn` breaks and aligns the formula on the first relation symbol, which may not be the optimal choice if there are several relation symbols in quick succession as in the next example:


```
\usepackage{breqn}
\begin{dmath} 0 < x =
  x_0 + x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \dots + x_{n-1} + x_n
\end{dmath}
```

For this problem `breqn` offers two solutions. With `\hidere1` you can hide a relation symbol so that it is not considered as a potential break and alignment point. The result is shown in the next example:

$0 < x = x_0 + x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \cdots + x_{n-1} + x_n \quad (1)$	<pre style="font-family: monospace; font-size: 0.9em;">\usepackage{breqn} \begin{dmath} 0 \hidere1{<} x = x_0 + x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \dots + x_{n-1} + x_n \end{dmath}</pre>	11-2-30
--	--	---------

Alternatively, you can use the key `compact` that directs the environment to fill the lines as best as possible without attempting to align them at relation symbols. In the example we also used the key `spread` to ask for some extra line separation. There are several other keys available; see the package documentation [46] for details.

$0 < x = x_0 + x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \cdots + x_{n-1} + x_n \quad (1)$	<pre style="font-family: monospace; font-size: 0.9em;">\usepackage{breqn} \begin{dmath}[compact,spread=1pt] 0 < x = x_0 + x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \dots + x_{n-1} + x_n \end{dmath}</pre>	11-2-31
--	--	---------

*Multiformula
displays do not
work* 

The `dmath` environment assumes that it contains only a single logical formula and therefore aligns all continuation lines to the right of the relation from the first line. This means that placing several independent formulas into it always comes out wrong, even if you try to add an explicit `\\` to indicate the line break. In the latter case $(a - b)^2$ would end on a line by itself, vertically aligned with the equal signs above and below. Bottom line, for such multiformula displays you have to use the grouping environments discussed below and not what is shown in the next example:

<p>A bad result:</p> $(a + b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2(a - b)^2 = a^2 - 2ab + b^2 \quad (1)$	<pre style="font-family: monospace; font-size: 0.9em;">\usepackage{breqn} A bad result: \begin{dmath} (a+b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 % A \\ is not helping; % see explanation above! (a-b)^2 = a^2 - 2ab + b^2 \end{dmath}</pre>	11-2-32
---	---	---------

The package offers a number of other environments and commands; we show two of them in the next example.


With the environment `dgroup*` you can group a number of `dmath` or `dmath*` environments; the result is comparable to `amsmath`'s `align` environment with one alignment point. If instead you use `dgroup`, then the whole group uses one equation number with subnumbering applied, i.e., (1a), (1b), etc.

Also shown is `\condition`, which is similar to the `\text` command but automatically adds punctuation and extra spacing.

11-2-33

$(a+b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \quad (1)$ $(a-b)^2 = a^2 - 2ab + b^2 \quad (2)$ $(a+b)(a-b) = a^2 - b^2$ $\frac{1}{x}, \quad \text{for } x \neq 0 \quad (3)$	<pre> \usepackage{breqn} \begin{dgroup*} \begin{dmath} (a+b)^2 = a^2+2ab+b^2 \end{dmath} \begin{dmath} (a-b)^2 = a^2-2ab+b^2 \end{dmath} \begin{dmath*} (a+b)(a-b) = a^2-b^2 \end{dmath*} \end{dgroup*} \begin{dmath} \frac{1}{x} \condition{for \$x\ne 0\$} \end{dmath} </pre>
---	---

As you can imagine, the package has to change a lot of the internal code that defines characters for math mode in order to identify which symbols are relations and binary symbols and are therefore candidates for line breaks. This is done in a helper package `flexsym` that redefines `\DeclareMathSymbol` among other things. This way packages such as `stmaryrd` that define additional math symbols can do this in a way that allows them participate in the line-breaking effort of `breqn` as long as they are loaded after that package. For `amssymb` and core \LaTeX symbols this is not necessary because the package knows about them and does the necessary adjustment regardless of the loading order. More detail is given in the package documentation.

 *Loading order
of math font
packages with
respect to breqn*

While on the whole the package produces impressive results, there are unfortunately a number of cases where it fails or has problems. If you intend to use it, you should read the package documentation [46] carefully to understand the current limitations and the situations where manual breaking of display formulas is simply the safer bet.

11.2.13 Equation numbering and tags

In \LaTeX the tags for equations are typically generated automatically and contain a printed representation of the \LaTeX counter `equation`. This involves three processes: setting (normally by incrementing) the value of the equation counter, formatting the tag, and printing it in the correct position.

In practice, the first two processes are nearly always linked. Thus, the value of the `equation` counter is increased only when a tag containing its representation is automatically printed. For example, when a mathematical display environment has both starred and unstarred forms, the unstarred form automatically tags each logical equation, while the starred form does not. Only in the unstarred form is the value of the `equation` counter changed.

Within the unstarred forms the setting of a tag (and the incrementing of the counter value) for any particular logical equation can be suppressed by putting `\notag` (or `\nonumber`¹) before the `\\`. You can override the default automatic tag with one of your own design (or provide a new one) by using the command `\tag`

¹The command `\notag` is interchangeable with `\nonumber`.

before the `\\`. The argument of this command can be arbitrary normal text that is typeset (within the normal parentheses) as the tag for that equation.

Note that the use of `\tag` suppresses the incrementing of the counter value. Thus, the default tag setting is only visually the same as `\tag{\theequation}`; they are not equivalent forms. The starred form, `\tag*`, causes the text in its argument to be typeset without the parentheses (and without any other material that might otherwise be added with a particular document class).

$x^2 + y^2 = z^2$	(1)	<code>\usepackage{amsmath}</code>	
$x^3 + y^3 = z^3$		<code>\begin{align}</code>	
$x^4 + y^4 = r^4$	(*)	<code>x^2+y^2 &= z^2 \label{eq:A}</code>	<code>\\</code>
$x^5 + y^5 = r^5$	*	<code>x^3+y^3 &= z^3 \notag</code>	<code>\\</code>
$x^6 + y^6 = r^6$	(1')	<code>x^4+y^4 &= r^4 \tag{***}</code>	<code>\\</code>
		<code>x^5+y^5 &= r^5 \tag{***}</code>	<code>\\</code>
		<code>x^6+y^6 &= r^6 \tag{\ref{eq:A}\$'\$}</code>	<code>\\</code>
		<code>\end{align}</code>	

11-2-34

Notice this example's use of the `\label` and `\ref` commands to provide some kinds of "relative numbering" of equations. If you want to repeat the tag number from the previous line with some extra mark, it is, of course, simpler to use `\theequation` to retrieve it.

$A_1 = N_0(\lambda; \Omega') - \phi(\lambda; \Omega')$	(1)	<code>\usepackage{amsmath}</code>	
$A_2 = \phi(\lambda; \Omega') \phi(\lambda; \Omega)$	ALSO (1)	<code>\begin{align}</code>	
$A_3 = \mathcal{N}(\lambda; \omega)$	(2)	<code>A_1 &= N_0 (\lambda ; \Omega\omega')</code>	
		<code>- \phi (\lambda ; \Omega\omega') \\</code>	
		<code>A_2 &= \phi (\lambda ; \Omega\omega')</code>	
		<code>\, , \phi (\lambda ; \Omega\omega)</code>	
		<code>\tag*{ALSO (\theequation)} \\</code>	
		<code>A_3 &= \mathcal{N} (\lambda ; \omega\omega)</code>	
		<code>\end{align}</code>	

11-2-35

Referencing equations

To facilitate the creation of cross-references to equations, the `\eqref` command (used in Example 11-2-40 on page 153) automatically adds the parentheses around the equation number, adding an italic correction if necessary. See also Section 2.4 on page 75 for more general solutions to managing references.

11.2.14 Fine-tuning tag placement

Optimal placement of equation number tags can be a rather complex problem in multiple-line displays. These display environments try hard to avoid overprinting an equation number on the equation contents; if necessary, the number tag is moved down or up, onto a separate line. The difficulty of accurately determining the layout of a display can occasionally result in a tag placement that needs further adjustment. Here is an example of the kind of thing that can happen and a strategy for fixing it. The automatic tag placement is clearly not very good.

```

\usepackage{amsmath}
\begin{equation} \begin{split}
\lvert I_2 \rvert &= \left\lvert \int_0^T \psi(t) \left\{ u(a,t) - \int_{\gamma(t)}^a \frac{d\theta}{k}(\theta,t) \int_a^\theta c(\xi) u_t(\xi,t) d\xi \right\} dt \right\rvert \\
&\leq C_6 \left\| f \int_\Omega \left| \tilde{S}_{a,-}^{-1,0} W_2(\Omega, \Gamma_l) \right| \left\| |u| \overset{\circ}{\rightarrow} W_2^{\tilde{A}}(\Omega; \Gamma_r, T) \right\| \right\| \\
&\quad \left\| \tilde{S}_{a,-}^{-1,0} W_2(\Omega, \Gamma_l) \right\| \left\| |u| \overset{\circ}{\rightarrow} W_2^{\tilde{A}}(\Omega; \Gamma_r, T) \right\|
\end{split} \\
\end{equation}
A line of text after the equation \ldots

```

11-2-36

$$\begin{aligned}
|I_2| &= \left| \int_0^T \psi(t) \left\{ u(a,t) - \int_{\gamma(t)}^a \frac{d\theta}{k}(\theta,t) \int_a^\theta c(\xi) u_t(\xi,t) d\xi \right\} dt \right| \\
&\leq C_6 \left\| f \int_\Omega \left| \tilde{S}_{a,-}^{-1,0} W_2(\Omega, \Gamma_l) \right| \left\| |u| \overset{\circ}{\rightarrow} W_2^{\tilde{A}}(\Omega; \Gamma_r, T) \right\| \right\|
\end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

A line of text after the equation ...

A fairly easy way to improve the appearance of such an equation is to use an `align` environment instead together with a `\notag` on the first equation line:

```

\begin{align}
\lvert I_2 \rvert &= \left\lvert \int_0^T \psi(t) \left\{ u(a,t) - \int_{\gamma(t)}^a \frac{d\theta}{k}(\theta,t) \int_a^\theta c(\xi) u_t(\xi,t) d\xi \right\} dt \right\rvert \\
&\leq C_6 \left\| f \int_\Omega \left| \tilde{S}_{a,-}^{-1,0} W_2(\Omega, \Gamma_l) \right| \left\| |u| \overset{\circ}{\rightarrow} W_2^{\tilde{A}}(\Omega; \Gamma_r, T) \right\| \right\| \\
&\quad \left\| \tilde{S}_{a,-}^{-1,0} W_2(\Omega, \Gamma_l) \right\| \left\| |u| \overset{\circ}{\rightarrow} W_2^{\tilde{A}}(\Omega; \Gamma_r, T) \right\|
\end{align}

```

This produces a good visual result, but note that it misuses logical markup—it assumes the equation numbers to be on the right! It also means that to the system your single equation is represented as two separate equations; i.e., any software that tries to interpret the markup (such as a screen reader) will therefore misunderstand it.

11-2-37

$$\begin{aligned}
|I_2| &= \left| \int_0^T \psi(t) \left\{ u(a,t) - \int_{\gamma(t)}^a \frac{d\theta}{k}(\theta,t) \int_a^\theta c(\xi) u_t(\xi,t) d\xi \right\} dt \right| \\
&\leq C_6 \left\| f \int_\Omega \left| \tilde{S}_{a,-}^{-1,0} W_2(\Omega, \Gamma_l) \right| \left\| |u| \overset{\circ}{\rightarrow} W_2^{\tilde{A}}(\Omega; \Gamma_r, T) \right\| \right\|
\end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

A line of text after the equation ...

As a better alternative the `\raisetag` command is available that adjusts the vertical position of the current equation number but *only* when it has been automatically moved from its “normal position”. For example, to move the tag in Example 11-2-36 upward we could have added `\raisetag{21pt}` and achieved the result below without using logically incorrect markup. Finding the appropriate value may need some trials, but once you used the command a couple of times, it is usually easy. Note that the text following will also get closer to the display if the tag is raised.

$$\begin{aligned} |I_2| &= \left| \int_0^T \psi(t) \left\{ u(a, t) - \int_{\gamma(t)}^a \frac{d\theta}{k}(\theta, t) \int_a^\theta c(\xi) u_t(\xi, t) d\xi \right\} dt \right| \\ &\leq C_6 \left\| f \int_\Omega |\tilde{S}_{a,-}^{-1,0} W_2(\Omega, \Gamma_l)| \left\| |u| \overset{\circ}{\rightarrow} W_2^{\tilde{A}}(\Omega; \Gamma_r, T) \right\| \right\| \quad (1) \end{aligned}$$

11-2-38

A line of text after the equation ...

A different use is shown in the next example, where `\raisetag` with a negative argument is used to move the tag on the left down into the display.

(1)

The sign function: $\mathcal{S}(x) = \begin{cases} -1 & x < 0 \\ 0 & x = 0 \\ 1 & x > 0 \end{cases}$

```

\usepackage[leqno]{amsmath}
\begin{gather} \raisetag[-10pt]
\text{The sign function: } \backslash
\mathcal{S}(x) = \begin{cases}
-1 & \& x < 0 \backslash \backslash
0 & \& x = 0 \backslash \backslash
1 & \& x > 0
\end{cases} \end{gather}

```

11-2-39

Here we used a `gather` environment with a single line because the `equation` environment is (the only) one within which `\raisetag` unfortunately has no effect (it is coded using low-level TeX).

These kinds of adjustment constitute “fine-tuning”, like line breaks and page breaks in text. They should therefore be left until your document is nearly finalized. Otherwise, you may end up redoing the fine-tuning several times to keep up with changing document content.

11.2.15 Subordinate numbering sequences

The `amsmath` package provides a `subequations` environment to support “equation subnumbering” with tags of the form (2a), (2b), (2c), and so on. All the tagged equations within it use this subnumbering scheme based on two normal L^AT_EX counters: `parentequation` and `equation`.

The next example demonstrates that the tag can be redefined to some extent, but note that the redefinition for `\theequation` must appear within the `subequations`

environment! (Appendix A.2.1 discusses counter manipulations.)

		<code>\usepackage{amsmath}</code>
		<code>\begin{subequations} \label{eq:1}</code>
$f = g$	(1a)	<code>\begin{align} f &= g \quad \quad \quad \backslash\label{eq:1A} \backslash</code>
$f' = g'$	(1b)	<code> f' &= g' \quad \quad \quad \backslash\label{eq:1B} \backslash</code>
$\mathcal{L}f = \mathcal{L}g$	(1c)	<code> \mathcal{L}f &= \mathcal{L}g \quad \backslash\label{eq:1C}</code>
		<code>\end{align}</code>
		<code>\end{subequations}</code>
		<code>\begin{subequations} \label{eq:2}</code>
		<code>\renewcommand\theequation</code>
		<code> \{\theparentequation\roman{equation}\}</code>
$f = g$	(2i)	<code>\begin{align} f &= g \quad \quad \quad \backslash\label{eq:2A} \backslash</code>
$f' = g'$	(2ii)	<code> f' &= g' \quad \quad \quad \backslash\label{eq:2B} \backslash</code>
$\mathcal{L}f = \mathcal{L}g + K$	(2iii)	<code> \mathcal{L}f &= \mathcal{L}g + K \quad \backslash\label{eq:2C}</code>
		<code>\end{align}</code>
		<code>\end{subequations}</code>
Note the relationship between (1)		Note the relationship between~\eqref{eq:1}
and (2): only 1c and 2iii differ.		and~\eqref{eq:2}: only~\ref{eq:1C} and~\ref{eq:2C} differ.

11-2-40

The `subequations` environment must appear *outside* the displays that it affects. Also, it should not be nested within itself. Each use of this environment advances the “main” equation counter by one. A `\label` command within the `subequations` environment but outside any individual (logical) equation produces a `\ref` to the parent number (e.g., to 2 rather than 2i).

11.2.16 Resetting the equation counter

It is a fairly common practice to have equations numbered within sections or chapters, using tags such as (1.1), (1.2), ..., (2.1), (2.2), These days this can be easily set up with standard \LaTeX by using the declaration `\counterwithin`.¹

For example, to get compound equation tags including the section number, with the equation counter being automatically reset for each section, put this declaration in the preamble: `\counterwithin{equation}{section}`.

Sometimes such a setup is already done by the document class you use, e.g., the report or book classes of standard \LaTeX number equations per chapter. If you would like to undo such a setting, use `\counterwithout`.

11.3 Matrix-like environments

The `amsmath` package offers a number of matrix-like environments, all of which are similar to `array` in syntax and layout. Thinking of complex mathematical layouts in

¹As the name implies, `\counterwithin` can be applied to any pair of counters, but the results may not be satisfactory in all cases because of potential complications. See the explanations in Appendix A.2.1 where these commands are further discussed.

this way is a useful exercise, as quite a wide variety of two-dimensional mathematical structures and table-like layouts can be described like this.

*Old “plain T_EX”
commands disabled*

Three of these environments replace old commands that are kept well hidden in standard L^AT_EX: `matrix` and `pmatrix` (discussed in the next section) and `cases` (discussed in the section after that). Because these old command forms use a totally different notation inherited from plain T_EX, they are not truly part of L^AT_EX, and they cannot be mixed with the environment forms described here. Indeed, `amsmath` produces an explanatory error message if one of the old commands is used (see page 735). If, contrariwise, you make the mistake of using the `amsmath` environment forms without loading that package, then you most probably get this error message: “Misplaced alignment tab character &”.

With `delarray` and `bigdelim`, two further packages are described that allow placing various delimiters around and within matrix-like structures. The section concludes with a discussion of two commutative diagram packages: `amscd` and `tikz-cd`.

11.3.1 `amsmath`, `mathtools` — The matrix environments

The matrix environments are similar to L^AT_EX’s `array`, except that they do not have an argument specifying the formats of the columns. Instead, a default format is provided: up to ten centered columns. Also, the spacing differs slightly from the default in `array`. The example below illustrates the matrix environments `matrix`, `pmatrix`, `bmatrix`, `Bmatrix`, `vmatrix`, and `Vmatrix`¹:

$\begin{matrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{matrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	<pre>\usepackage{amsmath} \begin{gather*} \begin{matrix} \backslash begin{matrix} 0 & 1 \backslash \backslash 1 & 0 \backslash end{matrix} \quad \\ \backslash begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \backslash \backslash i & 0 \backslash end{pmatrix} \end{matrix} \\[10pt] \begin{matrix} \backslash begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \backslash \backslash 1 & 0 \backslash end{bmatrix} \quad \\ \backslash begin{Bmatrix} 1 & 0 \backslash \backslash 0 & -1 \backslash end{Bmatrix} \end{matrix} \\[10pt] \begin{matrix} \backslash begin{vmatrix} a & b \backslash \backslash c & d \backslash end{vmatrix} \quad \\ \backslash begin{Vmatrix} i & 0 \backslash \backslash 0 & -i \backslash end{Vmatrix} \end{matrix} \end{gather*}</pre>
$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \begin{Bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{Bmatrix}$	
$\begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{vmatrix} \quad \begin{Vmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{Vmatrix}$	

11-3-1

As in standard arrays, the amount of space between the columns is given by the value of `\arraycolsep`, but no space is added on either side of the array.

The maximum number of columns in a matrix environment is determined by the counter `MaxMatrixCols`, which you can change using L^AT_EX’s standard counter commands. With more columns L^AT_EX has to work a little harder and needs slightly more resources. However, with today’s typical T_EX implementations, such limits are less important, so setting `MaxMatrixCols` to 20 or higher is possible without a noticeable change in processing speed.

¹Note the warning above about possible problems when using `matrix` and `pmatrix`.

11-3-2

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccccc} a & b & c & d & e & f & g & h & i & j & \cdots \\ & a & b & c & d & e & f & g & h & i & \cdots \\ & & a & b & c & d & e & f & g & h & \cdots \\ & & & a & b & c & d & e & f & g & \cdots \\ & & & & \ddots & \ddots & \dots\dots\dots \end{array}$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\setcounter{MaxMatrixCols}{20}

\[
\begin{Vmatrix}
\, , a&b&c&d&e&f&g&h&i&j \, &\cdots\, , \} \, \backslash \\
& a&b&c&d&e&f&g&h&i \, &\cdots\, , \} \, \backslash \\
& & a&b&c&d&e&f&g&h \, &\cdots\, , \} \, \backslash \\
& & & a&b&c&d&e&f&g \, &\cdots\, , \} \, \backslash \\
& & & & & \ddots&\ddots&\hdotsfor[2]{5}\, , \} \\
\end{Vmatrix} \, \backslash
```

This example also demonstrates the use of the command `\hdotsfor` to produce a row of dots in a matrix, spanning a given number of columns (here 5). The spacing of the dots can be varied by using the optional parameter (here 2) to specify a multiplier for the default space between the dots; the default space between dots is 3 math units (see Appendix A.2.4). The thin space and the brace group `{}` at the end of each row simply make the layout look better; together they produce two thin spaces, about 6mu or 1/3em. (Spacing in formulas is discussed in more detail in Section 11.7.7 on page 204.)

The `amsmath` matrix environment always centers the cell contents. As this is not always appropriate, the `mathtools` package adds starred forms of the environments that enable you to alter that behavior on a case-by-case basis.

<code>\begin{matrix*}[col-align]</code>	<i>content</i>	<code>\end{matrix*}</code>
<code>\begin{pmatrix*}[col-align]</code>	<i>content</i>	<code>\end{pmatrix*}</code>
<code>\vdots</code>		
<code>\begin{Vmatrix*}[col-align]</code>	<i>content</i>	<code>\end{Vmatrix*}</code>

All the environments have an additional optional *col-align* argument that specifies the column alignment. Allowed values are `l`, `r`, or `c` (default; i.e., if the optional argument is omitted, the starred environments behave like their unstarred variants).

To produce a small matrix suitable for use in text, use the `smallmatrix` environment. Note that the text lines are not spread apart even though the line before the small matrix contains words with descenders.

11-3-3

To show the effect of the matrix on surrounding lines inside a paragraph, we put it here $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ and follow it with some more text on the next line.

`\usepackage{amsmath}`

To show the effect of the matrix on surrounding lines inside a paragraph, we put it here

```
$\left(\begin{smallmatrix}
```

-1 & 0 & 0 & -1 `\end{smallmatrix}\right)$`

and follow it with some more text on the next line.

Again, `mathtools` provides a corresponding starred environment `smallmatrix*` that allows altering the column alignments and also typesets the fencing delimiters automatically if you precede the environment name (starred or nonstarred form) with `p` (parentheses), `b` (brackets), `B` (braces), `v` (vertical bars), or `V` (double vertical

Another set of
mathtools additions

bars). We repeat the previous example but use braces as delimiters and right-align the columns:

To show the effect of the matrix on surrounding lines inside a paragraph, we put it here $\begin{Bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{Bmatrix}$ and follow it with some more text on the next line.

```
\usepackage{mathtools}
```

To show the effect of the matrix on surrounding lines inside a paragraph, we put it here

```
\begin{Bsmallmatrix*}[r]
```

```
-1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{Bsmallmatrix*}$
```

and follow it with some more text on the next line.

11-3-4

11.3.2 amsmath, mathtools, cases — Some case environments

Constructions like the following, where a single equation has a few variants, are very common in mathematics. To handle these constructions, amsmath provides the `cases` environment. It produces a decorated array with two columns, both left aligned.

$$P_{r-j} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } r-j \text{ is odd,} \\ r! (-1)^{(r-j)/2} & \text{if } r-j \text{ is even.} \end{cases} \quad (1)$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
```

```
\begin{equation} P_{\{r - j\} =
```

```
\begin{cases}
```

```
0 & \text{if } r - j \text{ is odd,} \\
```

```
r! \, , (-1)^{\{r - j\}/2}
```

```
& \text{if } r - j \text{ is even.}
```

```
\end{cases}
```

```
\end{equation}
```

11-3-5

Even though the right-most column usually contains explanatory text, it is processed in math mode. We therefore have to use `\text` with “embedded math mode” in the text strings as needed. The equation number is supplied by the outer environment: the individual cases are not labeled.

mathtools additions
to amsmath

The lines of the `cases` environments are processed in `\textstyle`, which may not be appropriate, if they contain operators taking limits. For this reason the `mathtools` packages defines `dcases` that works like `cases` but uses `\displaystyle` throughout. It also offers `rcases` and `drcases` that place the brace to the right instead of the left.

Thus, instead of defining `rcases` manually with the help of the `aligned` environment as we did in Example 11-2-19 on page 141, we could have used the `mathtools` environment directly:

$$\left. \begin{aligned} B' &= -c \nabla \times E \\ E' &= c \nabla \times B - 4\pi J \end{aligned} \right\} \text{Maxwell}$$

```
\usepackage{mathtools,bm}
```

```
\begin{equation*} \begin{rcases}
```

```
\bm{B}' = -c \nabla \times \bm{E}
```

```
\\
```

```
\bm{E}' = c \nabla \times \bm{B} - 4\pi \bm{J} \, ,
```

```
\end{rcases} \enspace \text{Maxwell}
```

```
\end{equation*}
```

11-3-6

To support the common situation that the explanation column contains text rather than a formula, `mathtools` also defines starred versions of all four environments that typeset only their first column in math mode.

An alternative approach is provided by the small package `cases` by Donald Arseneau. It defines two environments, `numcases` and `subnumcases`, that allow you to number each case with an equation (or subequation) number. Since they produce equation numbers, they are standalone display environments similar to `align`, whereas `cases` is like `aligned`, i.e., needs an outer environment such as `equation`.

The approach taken by the `cases` package

The material to the left of the cases is specified as an argument to the environment: the body then holds the different case lines. In contrast to the `cases` environment from `amsmath`, the “explanation” column is treated as text. Thus, there is no need to add `\text` as we had to in the previous example. Of course, if most of your explanations are mathematically stated, then you have to supply $\$$ signs each time.

If you want to omit an equation number on one line, you can use `\nonumber` before the `\\`. If the `amsmath` package is also loaded, then `\notag` works as well, and `\tag` can be used to manually specify a tag.

11-3-7

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{if } x < 0, & (1a) \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0, & (*) \\ 1 & \text{if } x > 0. & (1b) \end{cases}$$

Reference to a subequation (1b) and to the overall equation (1) are possible.

```
\usepackage{amsmath,cases}
\begin{subnumcases}{f(x) = \label{L1}}
-1 & if $x<0$,, & \\
0 & if $x=0$,, & \tag{$*$} \\
1 & if $x>0$,. & \label{L2}
\end{subnumcases}
```

Reference to a subequation `\eqref{L2}` and to the overall equation `\eqref{L1}` are possible.

As seen in the previous example, referencing the individual case numbers is done by placing a `\label` on the appropriate line. In the case of subnumbering, you can also refer to the main equation number (even though it is not shown) by placing the `\label` into the argument of the environment. When referencing, you can use `\ref` or `\pageref` as usual: in the example we used `\eqref` from the `amsmath` package.

Besides handling equation numbers differently, there is also a noticeable difference in spacing: the left brace has more space around it, and the space between the two columns is noticeably larger. What looks better is certainly a matter of opinion; personally I prefer Donald’s style over the more cramped `amsmath` one.

Given that one may want to use both `subnumcases` and `cases` in the same document, the `cases` package offers a number of options to bring both approaches closer together: `amsstyle` switches to the cramped spacing and treats the explanations as math, while `casesstyle` defines or redefines the `cases` environment in the style of the `cases` package, e.g., with more space and the explanations in text mode.

Altering the style

Finally, there is a `subnum` option that treats all `numcases` environments as `subnumcases`.

11.3.3 delarray — Delimiters surrounding an array

This section describes a useful general extension to the `array` package (see Section 6.2 on page 437) that allows the user to specify opening and closing extensible delimiters (see Section 11.5.6) to surround a mathematical `array` environment. The `delarray` package was written by David Carlisle, and its use is illustrated in the next, rather

odd-looking, example (note that the `delarray` package is independent of `amsmath`, but it automatically loads the `array` package if necessary).

$Q = \begin{pmatrix} X & Y \end{pmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{bmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} L \\ M \end{pmatrix}$	<pre style="font-family: monospace; font-size: 0.9em;">\usepackage{delarray} \[\mathcal{Q} = \begin{array}[t] ({cc}) X & Y \end{array} \begin{array}[t] [{cc}] A & B \ \ C & D \ \end{array} \begin{array}[b] \lgroup{c}\rgroup L \ \ M \end{array} \]</pre>	11-3-8
---	---	--------

The delimiters are placed on either side of the “preamble declaration” (here `{cc}`). They must be delimiters from Table 11.5 on page 190.

The most useful feature of this package is also illustrated in the preceding example: the use of the `[t]` and `[b]` optional arguments, which are not available with `amsmath`’s matrix environments. These show that the use of the `delarray` syntax is not equivalent to surrounding the `array` environment with `\left` and `\right`, because the delimiters are raised as well as the array itself.

11.3.4 bigdelim — Delimiters around and inside arrays

A different way of adding braces or other delimiters to arrays (or tabular structures) is provided by Pieter van Oostrum with the `bigdelim` package, which is based on his `multirow` package. In contrast to `delarray` where the delimiters are specified as part of the overall array specification or the matrix environment from `amsmath` where the environment name defines the used delimiters, this package requires dedicated array cells to be reserved for receiving the delimiters. Thus, if you want to build a three-column matrix surrounded by parentheses, you need to specify a five-column array, in which the first and last columns are there just to receive the delimiters.

If you think this is more work than with the other approaches, then this is a correct observation. However, while slightly more work, it also offers you more freedom in placement; e.g., you can let the delimiter embrace only some of the rows or even put a delimiter right in the middle of your array. Furthermore, you can attach material at the outside of the delimiter centered on its height, which is sometimes useful.

```
\ldelim{delim}[vmove]{rows}{width}[text]
\rdelim{delim}[vmove]{rows}{width}[text]
```

The two commands provided by the package are `\ldelim` and `\rdelim`. Their first argument is the *delimiter* to be placed, which can be any delimiter from Table 11.5 on page 190 that can vertically grow to arbitrary sizes.

In *rows* you specify how many rows this delimiter should span. The delimiter is placed starting in the cell where the command is used and extending the specified number of *rows* downwards. If the *rows* value is negative, it extends upwards. This can be useful in conjunction with colored tables (e.g., when using the `colortbl` package) because the delimiter is then placed on top of the already colored rows. Otherwise, color in later rows would come on top of the delimiter and thus effectively hide it.

With the optional *vmove* argument you can fine-tune the vertical position. If your rows are unusually high, you may have to slightly enlarge the *row* value (which can take fractional values) above the nominal number of rows to span.

In *width* you specify the space the delimiter and any *text* (if present) can take up. If you make that too small, you get an overfull box warning, and the material sticks out to the right; if you make it larger than the needed space, you will effectively produce white space at the right side of the delimiter. In some cases, that can be useful, but usually it is best to simply put a *** into this argument, which tells the command to use the natural width.¹ Finally, there is an optional *text* argument. If present, the *text* is placed vertically centered next to the delimiter, for `\ldelim` on the left and for `\rdelim` on the right.

In the next example we place two delimiters on the right, each covering only some of the rows. Note that we horizontally shifted one to the right so that they do not overprint each other. The brace on the left is printed starting from the last row to show how this is done. Also interesting is the `array` preamble where we used `@{\,}` between the data columns and the columns for the delimiters. This suppresses the usual separation between `array` rows and instead inserts only a tiny space.

11-3-9

$$\text{This is } \left[\begin{array}{ccc} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right] \begin{array}{l} \text{quite} \\ \\ \\ \text{special} \end{array} \quad (1)$$

```
\usepackage{bigdelim}
\begin{equation}
\begin{array}{r@{\,}ccc@{\,}l}
& 1 & 2 & 3 & \hspace{2mm}\rdelim{3}{*}[quite] & \\
& 0 & 1 & 2 & & \\
& 0 & 0 & 1 & \rdelim{3}{*}[special] & \\
& 0 & 0 & 0 & & \\
\ldelim\{-5}{*}[This is] & & \Delta & & \end{array}
\end{equation}
```

11.3.5 Commutative diagrams with standard L^AT_EX

Simple commutative diagrams can in principle be produced by using an `array` environment and placing elements and arrows into appropriate cells. Of course, this allows only for horizontal and vertical connectors, and as you see in the next example, the results are only modestly satisfying, while the input is rather complex and difficult to read.

11-3-10

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S^{\mathcal{W}_\Lambda} \otimes T & \xrightarrow{j} & T \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{End } P \\ (S \otimes T)/I & = & (Z \otimes T)/J \end{array}$$

```
\[ \begin{array}{ccc}
S^{\mathcal{W}_\Lambda} \otimes T & \xrightarrow{j} & T \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \text{End } P \\
(S \otimes T)/I & = & (Z \otimes T)/J
\end{array} \]
```

¹This argument is inherited from `\multirow` where it makes much more sense to be able to specify a width. It would have made the usage simpler to hide it and internally always pass on ***. But given that it is there, you can perhaps sometimes use it to your advantage.

The `picture` environment could in theory be used for more complex commutative diagrams, but in practice this is the wrong tool as any changes in the diagram would require extensive manual recalculations of coordinates.

Fortunately, there are a number of specialized packages for producing sophisticated and beautiful diagrams, among them Kristoffer Rose's (1965–2016) XY-pic system and its extension [10] by Michael Barr (see [55, Chapter 7]).

For this book we selected two packages. One is the `amscd` package for producing simple commutative diagrams like the one from the previous example. The other package that allows for arbitrarily complex diagrams is `tikz-cd`, discussed at the end of the section.

11.3.6 `amscd` — Commutative diagrams à la AMS

Being based on the `array` environment, the `amscd` package allows only for horizontal and vertical connectors. It provides some useful shorthand forms for specifying the decorated arrows and other connectors, which makes the input easier and the results nicer, but otherwise it does not offer new features compared to standard \LaTeX .

In the CD environment the notations `@>>>`, `@<<<`, `@VVV`, and `@AAA` give right, left, down, and up arrows, respectively. The following examples also show the use of the command `\DeclareMathOperator` (see Section 11.6.2):

$ \begin{array}{ccccc} \text{cov}(L) & \longrightarrow & \text{non}(K) & \longrightarrow & \text{cf}(K) \\ \downarrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ \text{add}(L) & \longrightarrow & \text{add}(K) & \longrightarrow & \text{cov}(K) \end{array} $	<pre> \usepackage{amsmath,amscd} \DeclareMathOperator\add{add} \DeclareMathOperator\cf{cf} \DeclareMathOperator\cov{cov} \DeclareMathOperator\non{non} \[\begin{CD} \cov(L) @>>> \non(K) @>>> \cf(K) \\ @VVV @AAA @AAA \\ \add(L) @>>> \add(K) @>>> \cov(K) \end{CD} </pre>	11-3-11
--	---	---------

Decorations on the arrows are specified as follows. For the horizontal arrows, material between the first and second `>` or `<` symbols is typeset as a superscript, and material between the second and third is typeset as a subscript. Similarly, material between the first and second, or second and third, `As` or `Vs` of vertical arrows is typeset as left or right “side-scripts”; this format is used in the next example to place the operator $\text{End } P$ to the right of the arrow. The notations `@=` and `@|` give horizontal and vertical double lines. A “null arrow” (produced by `@.`) can be used instead of a visible arrow to fill out an array cell where needed.

$ \begin{array}{ccc} S^{W_\Lambda} \otimes T & \xrightarrow{j} & T \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{End } P \\ (S \otimes T)/I & \longequal{\quad} & (Z \otimes T)/J \end{array} $	<pre> \usepackage{amsmath,amscd} \DeclareMathOperator{\End}{End} \[\begin{CD} S^{W_\Lambda} \otimes T @>j>> T \\ @VVV @VV{\text{End } P}V \\ (S \otimes T)/I @= (Z \otimes T)/J \end{CD} </pre>	11-3-12
--	--	---------

If you compare this to Example 11-3-10, it shows clearly how much better the results are with the `amscd` package: the notation is enormously easier and, for example, the package produces longer horizontal arrows and much improved spacing between elements of the diagram. The more specialized packages enable you to get even more beautiful results, as we see exemplified in the next section.

11.3.7 `tikz-cd` — Commutative diagrams based on `tikz`

The `tikz-cd` package by Augusto Stoffel is one of the more recent additions in the area of specialized packages for drawing and enables you to easily prepare arbitrarily complex commutative diagrams. It is based on the powerful `tikz` system for drawing¹ and is able to harness all of its powers if needed. Nevertheless, its input syntax is easy to learn, and the diagram sources are understandable, even without knowing the details of the package syntax as you will see below.

The package provides the environment `tikzcd` for producing diagrams. Inside, elements are laid out in a grid separated by `&`, and rows are separated by `\\` as usual. For specifying “arrows” between different element there is the command `\arrow` or its short form `\ar` if you do not like typing long command names.

`\arrow[options]` or `\ar[options]`


While the *options* argument is specified in brackets, it is not optional, because you need to specify at least the target direction through a combination of `l`, `r`, `u`, or `d` characters (for left, right, up, or down). For example, to have an arrow from the first element in the first row to the third element in the second row, you would specify `rrd`. Specifying labels for the arrows is done by surrounding their text with “`\math`” (typeset in math mode), and if you require a special arrow form, there is a multitude of keywords to adjust the shape, etc.

These basic features are exhibited in the next example where we reimplement Example 11-3-10 once more.

11-3-13

$ \begin{array}{ccc} S^{W_\Lambda} \otimes T & \xrightarrow{j} & T \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{End } P \\ (S \otimes T)/I & \xlongequal{\quad} & (Z \otimes T)/J \end{array} $	<pre> \usepackage{amsmath,tikz-cd} \DeclareMathOperator\End{End} \begin{tikzcd} S^{W_\Lambda} \otimes T \arrow[r, "j"] \arrow[d] & T \arrow[d, "\text{End } P"] \\ (S \otimes T)/I \xlongequal{\quad} & (Z \otimes T)/J \end{tikzcd} </pre>
---	---

The `tikzcd` environment can be used inside or outside of math mode; e.g., if you need an equation number, place it into an `equation` environment. If used by its own, it does not add any vertical spacing and does not end the current paragraph, which explains the offset in the above example — the paragraph indentation. Thus, it is usually best to place it into `\[...]` or `equation` to achieve a consistent look and feel. However, it is unfortunately not possible to use it in environments that process

 *Restrictions*
with some math
display environments

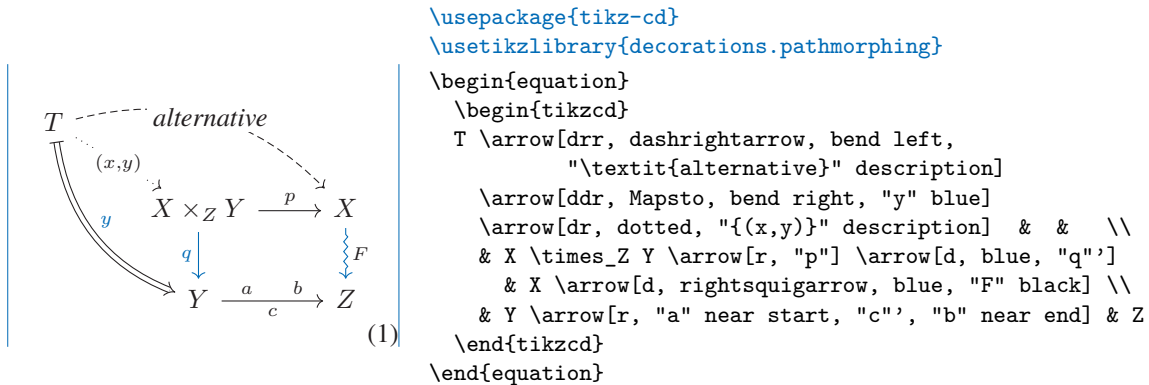
¹ See Section 8.5 on page 631 for further information on the `tikz` package.

their content several times to determine the final layout. This includes some of the other math display environments such as `align` or `gather`.

The number of keywords that can be used is quite large, so here we show only a small but hopefully useful fraction of them. If you need more, consult the nice manual [184]. As a teaser we show two more examples exhibiting several options. They are modified examples taken from the manual to show you most common variants. New features in the first one are several keywords for specifying different arrow shapes¹, some useful label placement options such as `near_start`, the `'` syntax that moves a label to the “other” side of the arrow, and ways to make simple curved arrows with `bend_left` or `bend_right`.

The `description` key places the label on top of the arrow. Note that this key should act on the label so should follow the label without a comma.

Finally, the package understands basic color names (and more can be defined). Such colors can be applied to just the label (e.g., the y in the example) or to the whole arrow *and* its labels, (as done for the downward arrows). To just get an arrow colored but not its labels you need to undo the coloring inside the label, which is why we explicitly made F black again to show how this can be done.



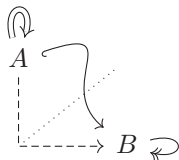
11-3-14

The final example shows that it is possible to apply the full power of `tikz` in specifying arrows. If you use other `tikz`-based packages more regularly, you probably immediately recognize the features; otherwise, take them as something to explore further if needed, because you will probably seldom need strange paths in your commutative diagrams. However, looping arrows are more common; we show two variants below. The other possible keywords for loops are not surprisingly called `loop_left` and `loop_down`.

The `dash` key is an arrow shape without head or tail, i.e., a straight line; dotted is a modifier that uses dots on the stem. A `hook` modifies the tail, and if you append a `'`, the hook goes into the opposite direction. In a similar fashion, `two_heads` modifies the head. Arrows can start at empty cells, but they need to end at a cell with content, which is why we had to place something invisible into the top-right corner.

¹Using the `rightsquigarrow` shape requires you to load an additional `tikz` library, but if you forget, it tells you so.

11-3-15



```
\usepackage{tikz-cd}
\begin{tikzcd}
A \arrow[dr, hook', controls={+(1.5,0.5) and +(-1,0.8)}]{}
\arrow[dr, dashed, to path=|- (\tikztotarget)]
\arrow[loop above, Rightarrow] & \mbox{} \\
\arrow[ur, dash, dotted] & B \arrow[loop right, two heads]{}
\end{tikzcd}
```

11.4 Compound structures and decorations

This section presents some commands that produce a variety of medium-sized mathematical structures including decorated symbols and fraction-like objects. Many of them are provided by the `amsmath` package, but in some cases further packages need to be loaded.

11.4.1 `amsmath`, `mathtools`, `extarrows` — Decorated arrows

The `amsmath` commands `\xleftarrow` and `\xrightarrow` produce horizontal relation arrows similar to those used for the commutative diagrams in Section 11.3.5; they are intended to have textual decorations above and/or below the arrow, and the length of the arrow is chosen automatically to accommodate the text. These arrows are normally available in only one size. Thus, they will probably not be suited for use in fractions, subscripts, or superscripts, for example.

The textual decorations below and above the arrows are specified in an optional and a mandatory argument to the command.

11-4-1

$$0 \xleftarrow[\zeta]{F \times \Delta(n-1)} E^{\partial_0 b}$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\begin{gather}
0 \xleftarrow[\zeta]{F \times \Delta(n-1)} E^{\partial_0 b} \\
\end{gather}
```

Further extensible arrows with the same syntax for superscript and subscript material are provided by the `mathtools` package. This includes three double line arrows, two hook arrows, and various harpoons as shown in the next example. In the case of the double line arrows, you may have to add some extra spacing inside the arguments to avoid the material bumping into the arrowhead (as we did with `_` in the example); for the harpoons this is usually not necessary.

*mathtools additions
to amsmath*

11-4-2

$$A \xleftrightarrow[x]{y} B \Rightarrow C \xleftrightarrow[y]{x} D \quad (1)$$

$$A \xleftrightarrow[b]{a} B \xleftrightarrow[bbb]{a} C \quad (2)$$

$$\xleftrightarrow[\text{yy}]{\text{xxx}} \quad (3)$$

$$\xrightarrow[\text{letters}]{x>0} A \longleftrightarrow Z \quad (4)$$

```
\usepackage{mathtools}
\begin{gather}
A \xleftrightarrow[x]{y} B \xrightarrow[y]{x} C \xleftrightarrow[y]{x} D \\
A \xleftrightarrow[b]{a} B \xleftrightarrow[bbb]{a} C \\
\xleftrightarrow[\text{yy}]{\text{xxx}} \\
\xrightarrow[\text{letters}]{x>0} A \longleftrightarrow Z \\
\end{gather}
```

Arrows of the
extarrows package

Another arrow package is extarrows by Kỳ-Anh Huỳnh. Besides the commands `\xLefttrightarrow` \Leftrightarrow and `\xleftrightarrow` \leftrightarrow also offered by mathtools, it provides several extensible arrows whose names start with `\xlong...`. These are `\xLongleftarrow` \Longleftarrow , `\xLongrightarrow` \Longrightarrow , `\xlongleftarrow` \leftarrow , `\xlonglefttrightarrow` \longleftrightarrow , `\xlongrightarrow` \rightarrow , and `\xlongequal` $=$.

On its own the “long equal” looks like a normal equal sign, $=$, but if it has material above or below, then it grows appropriately. In contrast, the minimal length of the other “long” arrows is noticeable longer than that of their counterparts `\xrightarrow`, etc., as shown in the next example:

$$\begin{aligned} A &\overset{+12}{\underset{\text{characters}}{\rightrightarrows}} M \overset{\text{more}}{\underset{\text{characters}}{\rightrightarrows}} Z & (1) \\ 0 &\overset{x}{\rightarrow} \epsilon \overset{x}{\rightarrow} 1 & (2) \\ \overset{1}{\leftarrow} \overset{2}{\rightrightarrows} \overset{3}{\leftarrow} \overset{4}{\rightarrow} \overset{5}{\leftarrow} & (3) \end{aligned}$$

```
\usepackage{mathtools,extarrows}
\begin{gather}
A \xlongequal[\text{characters}]{+12} M \xlongequal[\text{characters}]{\text{more}} Z \\
0 \xrightarrow{x} \epsilon \xrightarrow{x} 1 \\
\longleftarrow[1] \longrightarrow[2] \longleftarrow[3] \longrightarrow[4] \longleftarrow[5]
\end{gather}
```

11-4-3

11.4.2 Fractions and their generalizations

In addition to the `\frac` command from standard L^AT_EX, the amsmath package provides `\dfrac` and `\tfrac` as convenient abbreviations for `{\displaystyle \frac ...}` and `{\textstyle \frac ...}` (mathematical styles are discussed in more detail in Section 11.7.1 on page 195).

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{1}{k} \log_2 c(f) \quad \frac{1}{k} \log_2 c(f) & (1) \\ \text{Text: } &\sqrt{\frac{1}{k} \log_2 c(f)} \quad \sqrt{\frac{1}{k} \log_2 c(f)}. \end{aligned}$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\begin{equation} \frac{1}{k} \log_2 c(f) \quad \tfrac{1}{k} \log_2 c(f) \\
\end{equation}
Text: $ \sqrt{\frac{1}{k} \log_2 c(f)} \quad \sqrt{\frac{1}{k} \log_2 c(f)} $.
```

11-4-4

For binomial coefficients such as $\binom{n}{k}$, use the corresponding commands `\binom`, `\dbinom`, and `\tbinom`.

$$\begin{aligned} &\binom{k}{2} 2^{k-1} + \binom{k-1}{2} 2^{k-2} & (1) \\ \text{Text: } &\binom{k}{2} 2^{k-1} + \binom{k-1}{2} 2^{k-2}. \end{aligned}$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\begin{equation} \binom{k}{2} 2^{k-1} + \tbinom{k-1}{2} 2^{k-2} \\
\end{equation}
Text: $ \binom{k}{2} 2^{k-1} + \dbinom{k-1}{2} 2^{k-2} $.
```

11-4-5

All of these `\binom` and `\frac` commands are special cases of the generalized fraction command `\genfrac`, which has six parameters.

Style	Default Thickness (approximately)
text/display	0.40pt
script	0.34pt
scriptscript	0.24pt

Table 11.2: Default rule thickness in different math styles

$$\backslash\mathrm{genfrac}\{ldelim\}\{rdelim\}\{thick\}\{style\}\{num\}\{denom\}$$

The first two parameters, *ldelim* and *rdelim*, are the left and right delimiters, respectively. They must be either both empty or both nonempty; to place a single delimiter, use a period “.” on the “empty” side. The third parameter, *thick*, is used to override the default thickness of the fraction rule; for instance, `\binom` uses 0pt for this argument so that the line is invisible. If it is left empty, the line thickness has the default value specified by the font setup in use for mathematical typesetting. The examples in this chapter use the defaults listed in Table 11.2 in the various styles (see also Section 11.7.1).

The fourth parameter, *style*, provides a “mathematical style override” for the layout and font sizes used. It can take integer values in the range 0–3 denoting `\displaystyle`, `\textstyle`, `\scriptstyle`, and `\scriptscriptstyle`, respectively. If this argument is left empty, then the style is selected according to the normal rules for fractions (described in Table 11.7 on page 195). The last two arguments are simply the numerator (*num*) and denominator (*denom*).

To illustrate, here is how `\frac`, `\tfrac`, and `\binom` might be defined:

```
\newcommand\frac [2]{\genfrac{}{}{}{}{#1}{#2}}
\newcommand\tfrac [2]{\genfrac{}{}{}{1}{#1}{#2}}
\newcommand\binom [2]{\genfrac{()}{()}{0pt}{}{#1}{#2}}
```

Of course, if you want to use a particular complex notation (such as one implemented with `\genfrac`) repeatedly throughout your document, then you can do yourself (and your editor) a favor if you define a meaningful command name with `\newcommand` as an abbreviation for that notation, as in the examples above.

The old generalized fraction commands `\over`, `\overwithdelims`, `\atop`, `\atopwithdelims`, `\above`, and `\abovewithdelims` (inherited in standard L^AT_EX from plain T_EX) produce warning messages if they are used with the `amsmath` package.

Sometimes the numerator or the denominator is very large, and in such cases it would be nice to be able to split them over two lines. This is made possible by the following two commands offered by `mathtools`:

[mathtools additions to amsmath](#)

$$\backslash\mathrm{splitfrac}\{start\}\{continuation\} \quad \backslash\mathrm{splitdfrac}\{start\}\{continuation\}$$

Both commands typeset the two lines in `\textstyle` (despite the “d” in the name), but `\splitdfrac` spreads them wider apart. The difference is clearly visible in the

next example. Nesting is possible, but you may have to add a `\mathstrut` to achieve even spacing in all lines.

```
\usepackage{mathtools}
\[ A = \frac{\splitfrac{a + b + c + d}{+ e + f + \sum_i x_i}}{\alpha}
\sim \frac{\splitdfrac{a + b + c + d}{+ e + f + \sum_i x_i}}{\beta}
< \frac{\omega}{\frac{\splitfrac{z - y - x - w - v - u}{- t - s - r - q}
{\splitfrac{\mathstrut - p - o - n - m}}}} \]
```

$$A = \frac{a+b+c+d}{\alpha} \simeq \frac{a+b+c+d}{\beta} < \frac{\omega}{\frac{z-y-x-w-v-u}{-t-s-r-q} - p-o-n-m}$$

11-4-6

11.4.3 Continued fractions

The `\cfrac` command produces fraction arrays known as “continued fractions”. By default, each numerator formula is centered; left or right alignment of a numerator is achieved by adding the optional argument `[l]` or `[r]`.

$$\sqrt{2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{3} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{4} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{5} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{6} + \dots}}}}$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\begin{equation*}
\cfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} +
\cfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}} +
\cfrac{1}{\sqrt{4}} +
\cfrac[r]{1}{\sqrt{5}} +
\cfrac[l]{1}{\sqrt{6}} + \dotsb
\end{equation*}
```

11-4-7

11.4.4 Limiting positions

Subscripts and superscripts on integrals, sums, or other operators can be placed either above and below the mathematical operator or in the normal sub/super positions on the right of the operator. They are said to “take limits” if the superscript and subscript material is placed (in the “limit positions”) above and below the symbol or operator name. Typically, no limits are used in text (to avoid spreading lines apart); in a display, the placement depends on the operator used. The default placements in \LaTeX are illustrated in the following example:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \int_0^\infty \lim_{n \rightarrow 0}$$

Text: $\sum_{i=1}^n, \int_0^\infty, \lim_{n \rightarrow 0}$.

```
\[
\sum_{i=1}^n \quad \int_0^\infty \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow 0}
\]
```

Text: $\sum_{i=1}^n$, \int_0^∞ , $\lim_{n \rightarrow 0}$.

11-4-8

The placement of subscripts and superscripts on integrals, sums, and other operators is often dictated by the house style of a journal. Recognizing this fact, `amsmath` offers a long list of options for controlling the positioning. In the following summary, *default* indicates what happens when the `amsmath` package is used with a standard \LaTeX class but without any of these options.¹

amsmath options
to control subscript
and superscript
placements

intlimits, nointlimits In displayed equations only, place superscripts and subscripts of integration-type symbols above and below or at the side (default), respectively.

sumlimits, nosumlimits In displayed equations only, place superscripts and subscripts of summation-type symbols (also called “large operators”) above and below (default) or at the side, respectively.

These options also affect other big operators — \prod , \coprod , \otimes , \oplus , and so forth — but not integrals.

namelimits, nonamelimits Like **sumlimits** or **nosumlimits** but for certain “operator names”, such as **det**, **inf**, **lim**, and **max**, **min**, that traditionally have subscripts placed underneath, at least when they occur in a displayed equation.

The positioning on individual symbols/names can be controlled directly by placing one of the following TeX primitive commands immediately after the symbol or operator name: `\limits`, `\nolimits`, or `\displaylimits`. This last command, which specifies that the operator “takes limits” only when the mathematical style is a display style, is the default whenever a symbol of class Operator² appears or a `\mathop` construction is used. If an operator is to “take limits” outside a display, then this must be declared individually using the `\limits` command. Compare the next example to Example 11-4-8, noting that some commands show no effect as they merely reinforce the default.

11-4-9

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \int_0^\infty \lim_{n \rightarrow 0}$$

Text: $\sum_{i=1}^n, \int_0^{\infty}, \lim_{n \rightarrow 0}$.

[illegible]

11.4.5 Stacking in subscripts and superscripts

The standard `\substack` command is most commonly used to typeset several lines within a subscript or superscript, using `\\` as the row delimiter.

A slightly more general structure is the `subarray` environment provided by the `amsmath` package, which allows you to specify that the lines should be left

¹But not necessarily when using the $\mathcal{A}_{\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}}\text{-}\text{\LaTeX}$ document classes.

²See Section 11.8.1 on page 209 for a discussion of the various mathematical classes of symbols.

aligned instead of centered (no right alignment). Note that both structures need to be surrounded by braces when they appear as a subscript or superscript.

$\sum_{\substack{0 \leq i \leq m \\ 0 < j < n}} P(i, j) \quad (1)$	$\sum_{\substack{i \in \Lambda \\ 0 \leq i \leq m \\ 0 < j < n}} P(i, j) \quad (2)$	<pre> \usepackage{amsmath} \begin{gather} \sum_{\substack{0 \leq i \leq m \\ 0 < j < n}} P(i, j) \\ \sum_{\substack{i \in \Lambda \\ 0 \leq i \leq m \\ 0 < j < n}} P(i, j) \end{gather} </pre>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">11-4-10</div>
--	---	---	--

*mathtools additions
to amsmath*

If your `\subarray` or your `\substack` involves sub or superscripts, you should consider using the cramped versions offered by `mathtools`. Without it the superscripts are raised too much, and while the difference is small, it is noticeable. Compare the product on the left and the right with that in the middle in the next example:

$\prod_{a^2 < c} \prod_{\substack{a^2 < c \\ c < 1}} \prod_{\substack{a^2 < c \\ c < 1}}$	<pre> \usepackage{mathtools} \[\prod_{a^2 < c} \quad \quad \quad \prod_{\substack{a^2 < c \\ c < 1}} \quad \quad \quad \prod_{\crampedsubarray{1}{a^2 < c \\ c < 1}} \quad \quad \quad \] </pre>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">11-4-11</div>
---	--	--

11.4.6 amsmath, esint, wasysym — Multiple integral signs

Using `amsmath`, the commands `\iint`, `\iiint`, and `\iiiiiint` give multiple integral signs with well-adjusted spaces between them, in both running text and displays. The command `\idotsint` gives two integral signs with ellipsis dots between them. These commands are all built up from single integrals placed side by side (with somewhat reduced spacing), whereas the `esint` package (described below) uses a separate symbol font with individual glyphs for each integral.

The following example also shows the use of `\limits` to override the default for integral constructions and place the limit V underneath the symbol; as an alternative, we could have used the package option `intlimits`.

$\iint_V \mu(v, w) \, du \, dv$ $\iiint_V \mu(u, v, w) \, du \, dv \, dw$ $\iiiiiint_V \mu(t, u, v, w) \, dt \, du \, dv \, dw$ $\int \cdots \int_V \mu(z_1, \dots, z_k) \, \mathbf{dz}$	<pre> \usepackage{amsmath} \begin{gather*} \iint\limits_V \mu(v, w) \quad \quad \quad \, du \, \, dv \\ \iiint\limits_V \mu(u, v, w) \quad \quad \quad \, du \, \, dv \, \, dw \\ \iiiiiint\limits_V \mu(t, u, v, w) \quad \quad \quad \, dt \, \, du \, \, dv \, \, dw \\ \idotsint\limits_V \mu(z_1, \dots, z_k) \quad \quad \quad \, \mathbf{dz} \end{gather*} </pre>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">11-4-12</div>
--	--	--

Do not try to apply superscripts to these integrals when setting them with `\limits`; they come out in fairly strange places as the next example shows. This time we used `intlimits` so that all integrals have limits by default.

11-4-13

$$\int_a^b \int_a^b \int_a^b \int_a^b \int_a^b \int_a^b \dots \int_a^b$$

```
\usepackage[intlimits]{amsmath}
\begin{gather*}
\int_a^b \quad \iint_a^b \quad \iiint_a^b \quad \iiint_a^b \quad \oint_a^b \quad \idotsint_a^b
\end{gather*}
```

If you think that the `amsmath` versions of the multiple integral signs are too much spaced apart or if you need other integral signs that are not in that set, you can load the `esint` package by Eddie Soudrais. Like `amsmath` it supports the options `intlimits` and `nointlimits` (default). If both packages are used, `amsmath` has to be loaded first; otherwise, it reinstalls its version of the integrals, and only the new ones are available.

If you compare the first line of the next example with the previous one, you can see that the individual integrals are much closer together and that with the `esint` package version the upper limits, though not perfect, come out more or less right. The second and third rows show the additionally defined integrals by the package, in case you have a need for one or the other in that set. Again, we use the option `intllimits` and override it a few times with an explicit `\nolimits` command.

11-4-14

$\overset{b}{f}_a$
 $\overset{b}{ff}_a$
 $\overset{b}{fff}_a$
 $\overset{b}{ffff}_a$
 $\overset{b}{f\circ}_a$
 $\overset{b}{f\cdots}_a$

$\overset{b}{f\circ}_a$
 $\overset{b}{f\circ}_a$
 $\overset{b}{f\Box}_a$
 $\overset{b}{ff\Box}_a$
 $\overset{b}{f\curvearrowright}_a$
 $\overset{b}{f\curvearrowright}_a$

$\overset{b}{f\circ}_a$
 $\overset{b}{f\circ}_a$
 $\overset{b}{f\circ}_a$
 $\overset{b}{f\circ}_a$
 $\overset{b}{f}_a$

[illegible]

As the package uses its own symbol font, it should be used only if you use the default Computer Modern Math fonts or a set of math fonts that are visually compatible with these integrals.

Some people prefer upright integral symbols instead of the default slanted ones. This can be achieved using the package `wasysym` with the option `integrals`. If `amsmath` is loaded too (order is irrelevant), then `\iiint` and `\idotsint` are also changed; otherwise, these two `amsmath` commands are not available. The other

*Upright integrals
with wasysym*

special integrals provided by the `esint` package are not available in this style. See Section 10.13.2 on page 116 for further information on the `wasysym` package.

$$\int_a^b \iint_a^b \iiint_V \iiint_V$$

$$\oint_a^b \oiint_a^b \int \cdots \int_V$$

```
\usepackage[integrals]{wasysym} \usepackage{amsmath}
\begin{gather*}
\int\limits_a^b \quad \iint\limits_a^b \quad \iiint\limits_V \quad \iiint\limits_V \\
\oint\limits_a^b \quad \oiint\limits_a^b \quad \int \cdots \int_V \\
\idotsint\limits_V
\end{gather*}
```

11-4-15

11.4.7 diffcoeff — Handling derivatives of arbitrary order

If you often need ordinary, partial, and other derivatives, then take a look at the `diffcoeff` package by Andrew Parsloe, because it helps you to produce them in a consistent manner with the ability to adjust their style in various ways. By default, it implements the ISO 80000-2 recommendation, and with the help of a `def-file` option you can specify a file to hold your own conventions and adjustments for reuse in several documents.

```
\diff**[order]{differentiand}{variable of differentiation}[evaluated at]
```

The command `\diff` produces an ordinary derivative, while `\diffp` is responsible for partial derivatives — the argument structure is the same for both commands. The `differentiand` is normally set as a numerator; the starred form appends it instead, and a second star also swaps the mandatory arguments — i.e., *variable* first, to retain the reading order. If you prefer a slashed style use `\difs` or `\difsp`, and for a very compact representation, use `\difc` or `\difcp` instead. The *order* of differentiation (default 1) is specified in the first optional argument, and a point of evaluation can be set in the second optional argument. Below we show a few examples:

$$\left(\frac{d^2 \ln \sin x}{d(\sin x)^2} \right)_\pi \quad \frac{\partial^{n+1} F}{\partial x^{n+1}} \quad \frac{d}{dx} (ax^2 + bx + c)$$

```
\usepackage{diffcoeff}
\[\diff[2]{\ln\sin x}{\sin x}[\pi] \quad \diffp[n+1]{F}{x} \quad \diff*{(ax^2+bx+c)}{x} \quad \backslash]
```

11-4-16

If you prefer to have fewer braces in your formula, you can leave them out around the mandatory arguments — but, of course, only if they are single tokens! We have done this in the next example, which uses slashed and compact style, because this usually works better in text. Otherwise, this repeats the previous example to allow for easy comparison.

$$\left(\frac{d^2 \ln \sin x}{d(\sin x)^2} \right)_\pi \text{ and } \partial^{n+1} F / \partial x^{n+1} \text{ and } (d/dx)(ax^2 + bx + c)$$

$$\left(\frac{d^2_{\sin x} \ln \sin x}{d_{\sin x}} \right)_\pi \text{ and } d_x^{n+1} F \text{ and } d_x(ax^2 + bx + c)$$

```
\usepackage{diffcoeff}
$\difs[2]{\ln\sin x}{\sin x}[\pi]$ and
$\difsp[n+1] Fx$ and $\difs*{(ax^2+bx+c)}x$
$difc[2]{\ln\sin x}{\sin x}[\pi]$ and
$difcp[n+1] Fx$ and $difc*{(ax^2+bx+c)}x$
```

11-4-17

Notations like dx or $\mathrm{d}x$ (ISO style) also appear in other places than derivatives, e.g., in integrals. If you switch between different styles (because the publishing journal has requirements to use or not use ISO style), you would want to see the expressions change throughout without the need to manually alter the source. To accomodate this, the package offers the small command `\dl`, which changes appearance based on the overall style you have selected. By default, the d 's are written upright:

11-4-18

$$\mathrm{d}P = \frac{\partial P}{\partial x} \mathrm{d}x + \frac{\partial P}{\partial y} \mathrm{d}y + \frac{\partial P}{\partial z} \mathrm{d}z$$

```
\usepackage{diffcoeff}
\[ \dl P = \diffp Px \dl x + \diffp Py \dl y
    + \diffp Pz \dl z
\]
```

The package offers many customization possibilities. You can, for example, produce derivatives with symbols such as D , δ , or Δ ; adjust the spacing; define new variants; and much more. For reuse in different documents, the necessary declarations can be stored in a file with the extension `.def` and loaded with the option `def-file=<file>`. See the extensive package documentation for further details.

11.4.8 Modular relations

Standard \LaTeX already provides the commands `\bmod` and `\pmod`. The `amsmath` package augments this set with `\mod` and `\pod` to deal with special spacing conventions of the “mod” notation for equivalence classes of integers. These extra commands are variants of `\pmod` that are preferred by some authors; `\mod` omits the parentheses, whereas `\pod` omits the “mod” and retains the parentheses. Furthermore, with `amsmath` the spacing of `\pmod` is decreased within an inline formula.

11-4-19

$$\begin{aligned} u &\equiv v + 1 \mod n^2 \\ u &\equiv v + 1 \bmod n^2 \\ u &= v + 1 \pmod{n^2} \\ u &= v + 1 \pod{n^2} \end{aligned}$$

The in-text layout: $u = v + 1 \pmod{n^2}$

$$\begin{aligned} k^2 &= (m \bmod n); & x &\equiv y \pmod{b}; \\ x &\equiv y \mod c; & x &\equiv y \pod{d}. \end{aligned}$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\begin{align*}
u &\equiv v + 1 \mod{n^2} && \\
u &\equiv v + 1 \bmod{n^2} && \\
u &= v + 1 \pmod{n^2} && \\
u &= v + 1 \pod{n^2} && \end{align*}
The in-text layout: $ u = v + 1 \pmod{n^2} $
\begin{align*}
k^2 &= (m \bmod n) && \backslash, ; & \\
x &\equiv y \pmod{b} && \backslash, ; & \\
x &\equiv y \mod{c} && \backslash, ; & \\
x &\equiv y \pod{d} && \backslash, . & \end{align*}
```

11.4.9 mathtools, interval — Properly spaced intervals

Specifying intervals is usually done by using brackets as fences, e.g., “[a, b]”. This is simple for closed intervals, but the natural input for open or half-open intervals fails rather miserably with respect to spacing as seen in the next example:

11-4-20

$$[a, e[= [a, b] +]b, c[+]c, d[- [d, e[\quad \$ \quad [a, e[= [a, b] +]b, c[+]c, d[- [d, e[\quad \$$$

The reason for this spacing result is that “[” is considered by T_EX as an opening and “]” as a closing symbol. However, if used as fences for half or fully open intervals, their interpretation should be reversed — something T_EX cannot determine by itself. So it sees an opening symbol “[” followed by an “=” (relation), and that does not get any space added. With the help of explicit `\mathopen` and `\mathclose` commands (see Section 11.8.1 on page 209), this can be corrected; however, the resulting input becomes rather noncomprehensible at the same time:

$$[a, d[= [a, b] +]b, c[+]c, d[- [d, e[\quad \$ [a, d\mathclose{} = [a, b] + \mathopen{}b, c[+ \mathopen{}c, d\mathclose{} - [d, e\mathclose{} \$ \quad 11-4-21$$

*mathtools addition
to amsmath*

To avoid such source code monsters, `mathtools` offers the possibility of defining new commands that automatically supply opening and closing delimiters around their argument.

```
\DeclarePairedDelimiter{cmd}{left-delimiter}{right-delimiter}
```

This declaration defines a new command `cmd` with one mandatory argument that is typeset surrounded by the *left-delimiter* and *right-delimiter*. Also defined is a starred form that sets the delimiters using `\left` and `\right`, which is why you can use only real delimiters that are allowed after those commands, e.g., those from Table 11.5 on page 190 or Table 11.30 on page 224. Instead of the star, you can use an optional argument to specify the size explicitly using `\big`, `\Big`, `\bigg`, or `\Bigg`.

$$[a, d[= [a, b] +]b, c[+ \dots \quad \left[\frac{a}{b} \approx \right] \frac{a}{b} \left[\neq \right] x \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{\textcolor{blue}{\code{\usepackage{mathtools} \DeclarePairedDelimiter\closed{[]{}}}}} \\ \text{\textcolor{blue}{\code{\DeclarePairedDelimiter\open{[]}{}} \code{\DeclarePairedDelimiter\ropen{[]{}}}}} \\ \text{\textcolor{blue}{\code{\DeclarePairedDelimiter\lopen{[]{}}}}} \\ \text{\code{\begin{gather*}}} \\ \text{\code{\ropen{a,d}=\closed{a,b} + \lopen{b,c} + \dotsb \ll[3pt}} \\ \text{\code{\lopen{\frac{a}{b}}}} \text{\code{\approx}} \text{\code{\lopen*{\frac{a}{b}}}} \\ \text{\code{\neq}} \text{\code{\closed[\Bigg]{x}}} \\ \text{\code{\end{gather*}}}} \end{array} \quad 11-4-22$$

*The interval
approach*

An alternative specifically for intervals is provided by Lars Madsen with the package `interval`. It allows you to input intervals as logical constructs and takes care of the correct formatting in the background.

```
\interval[key/value-list]{left}{right}
```

The two mandatory arguments are the *left* and *right* boundaries of the interval, and with the *key/value-list* you specify the type and possibly some formatting features. The `\interval` command then selects the appropriate fences, selects the separator symbol, and ensures appropriate spacing.

$$[a, d[= [a, b] +]b, c[+]c, e[- [d, e[\quad \begin{array}{l} \text{\textcolor{blue}{\code{\usepackage{interval}}}} \\ \text{\code{\[\interval[open right]{a}{d} = \interval{a}{b} +}} \\ \text{\code{\interval[open left]{b}{c} + \interval[open]{c}{e}}} \\ \text{\code{- \interval[open right]{d}{e}}} \text{\code{\]} } \end{array} \quad 11-4-23$$

Beside the various `open...` keys shown above, you can use the key `scaled`, which scales the fences to automatically match the height of the content. It can alternatively be used with a value (such as `\Big`), in which case that determines the size of the fences. A (nonsense) example is shown in Example 11-4-24.

```
\ointerval[key/value-list]{left}{right}
\linterval[key/value-list]{left}{right}
\rinterval[key/value-list]{left}{right}
```

As the keywords are rather verbose, there are also three shorthands for the most common cases: open and half-open intervals. Scaling or other keys can still be set in the *key/value-list* argument. This is also shown in the next example.

```
\intervalconfig{key/value-list}
```

Some people prefer a semicolon or two periods as the separator between the boundaries instead of a comma. Also quite common is to use parentheses instead of brackets for the open fences (called *soft fences*). All this and more can be specified in the argument to `\intervalconfig` as exhibited below:

11-4-24

$$\left[a..d \right] = \left[a..b \right] + \left(b..c \right) + \left(c..e \right) - \left[d..e \right]$$

```
\usepackage{color,interval}
\intervalconfig{soft open fences,separator symbol=.,
               colorize=\color{blue}}

\l
\rinterval{a}{d} = \interval{a}{b} +
\linterval{b}{c} + \ointerval{c}{e}
- \rinterval[scaled=\Big]{d}{e}

\]
```

Colorizing all intervals is normally not useful, but it can help if you change an existing document to use the interval package. You can then easily check if all intervals have been properly converted to the new syntax.

11.4.10 `braket` — Dirac bra-ket and set notation

The bra-ket notation, also known as Dirac notation, was established by Paul Dirac around 1940. In quantum mechanics it is a common notation for describing quantum states. Donald Arseneau produced a small package, `bracket`, that offers a handful of commands to enter the notation consistently.

```
\bra{formula}   \ket{formula}   \braket{formula}   \set{formula}
\Bra{formula}   \Ket{formula}   \Braket{formula}   \Set{formula}
```

Commands starting with an uppercase letter grow vertically to enclose their content (using internally `\left` and `\right`), while the lowercase commands do not change sizes. You can use `|` in the argument to generate extensible vertical lines as needed,

and with `||` or `\|` you get doubled lines. As sets have a similar structure involving vertical lines, they are also provided via `\set` and `\Set`.

$|\psi\rangle\langle\phi| : |\xi\rangle \mapsto |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|\xi\rangle$ $\left\langle\phi\left|\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}\right|\psi\right\rangle$ <p>Also:</p> $\{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid 0 < |x| < 5\}$	<pre>\usepackage{mathtools,braket} \begin{gather*} \ket{\psi}\bra{\phi} : \ket{\xi} \mapsto \ket{\psi}\braket{\psi|\xi} \Braket{\phi|\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}|\psi} \shortintertext{Also:} \Set{x\in \Re^2 \mid 0 < |x| < 5} \end{gather*}</pre>	11-4-25
--	---	---------

11.4.11 amsmath, mathtools, empheq — Boxed formulas

The `amsmath` command `\boxed` puts a box around its argument; it works just like `\fbox`, except that the contents are in math mode.

$W_t - F \subseteq V(P_i) \subseteq W_t \quad (1)$	<pre>\usepackage{amsmath} \begin{equation} \boxed{W_t - F \subseteq V(P_i) \subseteq W_t} \end{equation}</pre>	11-4-26
--	--	---------

*mathtools addition
to amsmath*

The `mathtools` package extends this approach with the command `\Aboxed`. This command can be used to produce a boxed formula across an alignment point (`&`) in math display environments such as `align`. Do not use it when there is no alignment point to cross, e.g., in the second equation in the example, because it would generate an error in that case.

$f(x) = \int h(x) dx \quad (1)$	<pre>\usepackage{mathtools} \begin{align} \Aboxed{f(x) = \int h(x) dx} \\ &= \boxed{g(x)} \quad (2) \end{align}</pre>	11-4-27
---------------------------------	---	---------

*Annotating
amsmath
environments with
empheq*

A much more general approach is taken by the package `empheq` by Morten Høgholm and Lars Madsen. In essence it offers a wrapper environment for most of the `amsmath` environments so that you can specify special extra formatting, such as (colored) boxes or adding something to the left or right of the formula, regardless of whether or not there are equation numbers. The general syntax is the following:

```
\begin{empheq}[key/value list]{amsmath-env}
... contents of the amsmath environment ...
\end{empheq}
```

In the `amsmath-env` argument you specify the name of one of the `amsmath` display environments from Sections 11.2.2 to 11.2.7 on pages 133–138. Not supported are the “boxed” environments, i.e., `aligned`, `gathered`, etc.

If used without the optional *key/value list*, this should produce identical output compared to using the `amsmath` environment directly, though with a few restrictions. It is not possible to use `\intertext` or `\displaybreak` because the `empheq` environment puts the display into unbreakable boxes to attach extra material. For the same reason, the automatic movement of the equation tag if the display is too wide no longer works, and you have to make any necessary adjustments manually.

In the *key/value list* you can specify a number of keys to annotate your formula; the next example shows the most important ones, though normally you will not use all of them at the same time.

With `box` you specify a box command, e.g., `\fbox`, that is applied to the whole display formula excluding the equation tags but including any `left` or `right` annotation if also given. The `innerbox` key does the same but applies only to the formula itself. There is also a `marginbox` key (not shown) for special effects when equations are set flushed left (`fleqn` option in force).

11-4-28

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} x_0 = 1 & x_1 = 2 \\ x_2 = 3 & x_3 = 5 \\ x_4 = 8 & x_5 = 13 \\ x_6 = 21 & x_7 = 34 \\ \dots & \sum_{i=1}^n x_i = ?? \end{array} \right.$$

```
(1) \usepackage{empheq,xcolor}
(2) \begin{empheq}[box=\fcolorbox{black}{blue!10},
(3)   innerbox=\colorbox{white},
(4)   left=\longrightarrow \empheqlbrace,
(*)  right=\empheqbigbrack \Longrightarrow]{align}
    x_0&=1 & x_1&=2 & \\
    x_2&=3 & x_3&=5 & \\
    x_4&=8 & x_5&=13 & \\
    x_6&=21 & x_7&=34 & \\
    & \ldots & \sum_{i=1}^n x_i & \\
    & & & \tag{*}
\end{empheq}
```

The use of `left` and `right` keys in the previous example shows some package-specific commands: `\empheqlbrace` and `\empheqbigbrack`. As one can see, they produce vertically extensible braces matching (or slightly exceeding) the `innerbox` height. If we had used `\lbrace` and `\rbrace`, we would have gotten nonextensible braces, but we could, of course, have used both `\left` and `\right` to scale them with a similar result to `\empheqbig..` as we did. Several other delimiters are available by preceding their name with `empheq` or `empheqbig`, for example, `\empheqlparen` or `\empheqrangle`; the full list of supported delimiter names is angle “`<`”, brace “`{`”, brack “`[`”, ceil “`|`”, floor “`|`”, paren “`(`”, vert “`|`”, and Vert “`|`”.

You might wonder why the *key/value list* is optional, given that there is no obvious reason to use the environment at all if that argument is not supplied. The reason is the package option `overload`: If you load the package with that option, then the `amsmath` environments are all redefined to use `empheq` internally; e.g., you can then write `\begin{align}[box...]=` instead of the code shown in Example 11-4-28.

The original environments are still available if needed, e.g., if you want to use `\intertext` or `\displaybreak`. All you have to do is to prefix the original name with `AmS`; thus, `AmSalign` will be `amsmath`’s original `align` environment, etc.

11.4.12 amsmath, accents, mathdots — Various accents

T_EX distinguishes sharply between accented characters in text and in math. To obtain “à” in text, you can use the Unicode character “à” or the command “\‘a”, both of which fail in math mode. Depending on the engine you might get a warning or error message, but the character may also be silently ignored with only an entry in the transcript file saying something like

Missing character: There is no à in font lmmi10!

Thus, to typeset accents over mathematical symbols you should always use special math accent commands, i.e., \grave in this case. The full set of math accents provided by standard L^AT_EX is shown in the next example.

Note that most accents change with the math alphabet currently in use; e.g., all but \vec, \widehat, and \widetilde become bold when we place them inside \mathbf. This means you have a choice: if you use \hat or any other varying math accent within a math alphabet command, you get accents in the “style” of the alphabet; if you use them outside, you get ordinary ones. This is shown on the third line.

$\grave{x} \ \grave{x} \ \grave{x} \ \grave{x} \ \grave{x} \ \grave{x} \ \grave{x} \ \grave{x} \ \grave{x} \ \grave{x}$ $\grave{y} \ \grave{y} \ \grave{y} \ \grave{y} \ \grave{y} \ \grave{y} \ \grave{y} \ \grave{y} \ \grave{y} \ \grave{y}$ $\hat{C} \simeq \hat{C}$	<pre>\newcommand\accsample[1]{\dot{#1} \; \; \ddot{#1} \; \; \mathring{#1} \; \; \acute{#1} \; \; \grave{#1} \; \; \hat{#1} \; \; \check{#1} \; \; \breve{#1} \; \; \bar{#1} \; \; \tilde{#1} \quad \quad \vec{#1} \; \; \widehat{#1} \; \; \widetilde{#1}} \[\ \accsample{x} \] \[\ \mathbf{\accsample{y}} \] \[\ \hat{\mathbf{C}} \] \simeq \mathbf{\hat{C}} \]</pre>	11-4-29
--	---	---------

Be careful with
accents inside
math alphabets

However, the fact that many math accents vary inside math alphabets has a downside: if they are lacking accents, then you get whatever is in the font at the position T_EX believes the accent is stored. For example, the \mathcal alphabet is part of the standard symbol font, which contains no accents. Thus, using math accents that vary inside \mathcal gives you very strange results (without a warning).

As shown in the first line of the example, only the three nonchanging accents come out right here. The remedy in that case is to use \mathcal only for your base letter and the accent command outside to get the normal math accent, as shown in the second line.

$\mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A} \mathcal{A}$ $\mathcal{B} \mathcal{B} \mathcal{B} \mathcal{B} \mathcal{B} \mathcal{B} \mathcal{B} \mathcal{B} \mathcal{B} \mathcal{B}$	<pre>% \accsample as previously defined \[\ \mathcal{\accsample{A}} \] \[\ \accsample{\mathcal{B}} \]</pre>	11-4-30
--	---	---------

More dot accents
with amsmath

The \dot and \ddot mathematical accents from standard L^AT_EX are supplemented in amsmath by \dddots and \ddddots, giving triple and quadruple dot accents, respectively.

$\dot{S} \quad \ddot{P} \quad \ddot{Q} \quad \ddot{R}$	<pre>\usepackage{amsmath} \$\dot{S} \quad \ddot{P} \quad \ddot{Q} \quad \ddot{R}\$</pre>	11-4-31
--	--	---------

... mathdots ...

There are also refined versions provided by the mathdots package if loaded in

addition to amsmath. They use slightly tighter spacing between the dots.

11-4-32

$$\dot{S} \quad \ddot{P} \quad \overset{\cdot\cdot\cdot}{Q} \quad \overset{\cdot\cdot\cdot\cdot}{R}$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath,mathtools}
```

$$\dot{S} \quad \ddot{P} \quad \dddot{Q} \quad \ddddot{R}$$

Even tighter spacing is used by the accents package:

... *and* accents

11-4-33

$$\dot{S} \quad \ddot{P} \quad \overset{\cdot\cdot\cdot}{Q} \quad \overset{\cdot\cdot\cdot\cdot}{R}$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath,accents}
```

$$\dot{S} \quad \quad \ddot{P} \quad \quad \dddot{Q} \quad \quad \dddot{R}$$

If you want to set up your own mathematical accents, then you should probably use the accents package developed by Javier Bezos. It provides methods of defining “faked” accents (see `\accentset` in the example) and general under-accents (`\underaccent`, `\undertilde`), along with other features. It can be used together with `amsmath` as shown in the previous example but has to be loaded after it. We give two examples of its possibilities; for further details see [17].

... and also many additional accents with accents

11-4-34

$$X \quad \overset{\wedge}{\underset{\wedge}{h}} \quad \underset{\diamond}{\mathcal{M}} \quad \underset{\sim}{C} \quad \underset{\sim}{M} \quad \underset{\sim}{ABC}$$

```
\usepackage{accents}
```

[illegible]

The warning that not all accents work inside all math alphabets is equally true for the accents provided by the accents package. If that is the case, you have to ensure that the accent is outside of the math alphabet's scope.

11-4-35

$$\hat{\ast} \mathbf{h} \text{ (ok) but } \hat{\mathbb{A}} \mathcal{X} \text{ (bad) } \hat{\ast} \mathcal{X} \text{ (ok again)}$$


```
\usepackage{accents}
```

$\mathbf{\hat{\star\tilde{h}}}$ (ok) but

 $\hat{\star\tilde{X}}$ (bad)

$\hat{\star\tilde{\mathcal{X}}}$ (ok again)

When adding an accent to an i or j in mathematics, it is best to use the dotless variants `\imath` and `\jmath`; however, they always produce the same symbol. If you want them to vary based on the current math alphabet, use `\dotlessi` or `\dotlessj` provided by the `dotlessi` package written by Javier Bezos:

 Accents over the characters i or j

11-4-36

$$\hat{i} \neq \hat{i} \neq \mathbf{\hat{i}}$$

```
\usepackage{dotlessi,amsmath}
```

$$\hat{\imath} \not\leq \mathbf{\hat{\imath}} \not\leq \mathbf{\hat{\dotless i}}$$

A collection of simple commands for placing accents as superscripts to a subformula is available with the package `amsxtra`. This is not a very common layout, but it is occasionally used:

Accents as
superscripts

11-4-37

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (xyz)^{\cdots} & (xyz)^{\cdots} & (xyz)^{\cdot} \\ (xyz)^{\smile} & (xyz)^{\vee} & \\ (xyz)^{\wedge} & (xyz)^{\sim} & \end{array}$$

```
\usepackage{amsxtra}
```

$$\begin{array}{llll} \$\langle xyz \rangle \spddot \$ & \quad & \$\langle xyz \rangle \spddot \$ & \quad & \$\langle xyz \rangle \spdot \$ \quad \backslash \\ \$\langle xyz \rangle \spbreve \$ & \quad & \$\langle xyz \rangle \spcheck \$ & \quad & \backslash \\ \$\langle xyz \rangle \sphat \$ & \quad & \$\langle xyz \rangle \sptilde \$ & \quad & \end{array}$$

Type	Command	Description	Output
Physical row vector	<code>\aS[accent]{symbol}</code>	<i>arrow-symbol</i>	\vec{u}
Physical column vector	<code>\Sa[accent]{symbol}</code>	<i>symbol-arrow</i>	\vec{v}
Physical tensor	<code>\aSa[accent]{symbol}</code>	<i>arrow-symbol-arrow</i>	\vec{E}
Column vector	<code>\bS[accent]{symbol}</code>	<i>bar-symbol</i>	\bar{x}
Row vector	<code>\Sb[accent]{symbol}</code>	<i>symbol-bar</i>	\underline{y}
Tensor	<code>\bSb[accent]{symbol}</code>	<i>bar-symbol-bar</i>	\bar{R}
Tensor (mixed base)	<code>\aSb[accent]{symbol}</code>	<i>arrow-symbol-bar</i>	\vec{S}
Tensor (mixed base)	<code>\bSa[accent]{symbol}</code>	<i>bar-symbol-arrow</i>	\vec{T}
Cross-product tensor ^a	<code>\aCSa[accent]{symbol}</code>	<i>arrow-symbol-arrow</i>	$\vec{\tilde{z}}$
	<code>\bCSb[accent]{symbol}</code>	<i>bar-symbol-bar</i>	$\bar{\tilde{z}}$

^aIn the cross-product tensors the tilde is automatically added to the symbol by the command.

Table 11.3: List of matrix tensor input commands

11.4.13 mattens — Commands to typeset tensors

There exist quite a number of different notations for denoting vectors and tensors, and not surprisingly, there are a number of packages that implement an input syntax for them. For the book we selected the `mattens` package by Danie Els, because it offers a simple and very flexible interface, but if this does not appeal to you, then there are a handful of other packages on CTAN and probably in your distribution.

<code>\S[accent]{sym}</code>	<code>\aCSa*[accent]{sym}</code>	<code>\bCSb*[accent]{sym}</code>
------------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------------

The commands offered by the package all follow the naming scheme, where the placeholder `□` stands for either `a` (arrow), `b` (bar), or nothing (no embellishment), which gives you a total of eight commands as shown in Table 11.3. All follow the same argument structure: mandatory *symbol* and an optional (math) *accent*. The starred forms typeset the symbol as an ordinary symbol, i.e., not boldened.

There are also two cross-product tensors: `\aCSa` and `\bCSb`. The example below exhibits some of the different combinations:

$\vec{x} \neq \underline{x} \neq \hat{x} \neq \bar{X}$	(1)	<code>\usepackage{mattens}</code>
$\vec{\delta} \neq \underline{\delta} \neq \hat{\delta}$	(2)	<code>\begin{gather}</code>
$\vec{a} \cdot \vec{c} = \bar{a} \times \bar{c}$	(3)	<code>\aSb{x} \neq \aSb*{x} \neq \aSb[\hat]{x} \neq \aSb{X} \\\</code>
		<code>\bS{\delta} \neq \bS*{\delta} \neq \bS[\hat]{\delta} \\\</code>
		<code>\bCSb{a} \cdot \bS{c} = \bS{a} \times \bS{c}</code>
		<code>\end{gather}</code>

11-4-38

As you can deduce from the previous example (because `gather` is available), the package implicitly loads `amsmath`. What you also see is that with Computer Modern fonts the arrows (being very large) touch the x — with Lucida Math (as shown in the table) this is not an issue. One way to solve that is to use the package option `mathstrut`, which adds a `\mathstrut` into each tensor thereby forcing upper and lower arrows and bars farther apart. You can alternatively define your own struts using, for example, `\SetSymbStrut{\vphantom{material}}` as explained in the package documentation.

Some people prefer to show tensors and vectors in a different font instead of boldening the symbols. The next example shows how to do this with the help of `\SetSymbFont`. Note that this acts only on symbols that are affected by math alphabets; e.g., the Greek letter is not altered. For the same reason you still see the ordinary x when the starred form is used, because that suppresses special formatting.

The Computer Modern fonts do not have a bold sans serif font shape, but the Latin Modern do, so we define a math alphabet for it and use that.

11-4-39

$$\overrightarrow{\underline{x}} \neq \overrightarrow{x} \neq \overrightarrow{\underline{x}} \neq \overline{\underline{X}} \quad (1)$$

$$\overline{\delta} \neq \overline{\delta} \neq \hat{\delta} \quad (2)$$

$$\overline{\underline{a}} \cdot \overline{\underline{c}} = \overline{\underline{a}} \times \overline{\underline{c}} \quad (3)$$

```
\usepackage[mathstrut]{mattens} \SetSymbFont{\mathsf{sl}}
\DeclareMathAlphabet\mathsf{sl}{OT1}{lms}{bx}{sl}

\begin{gather}
\mathsf{aSb{x}} \neq \mathsf{aSb*{x}} \neq \mathsf{aSb[\hat]{x}} \neq \mathsf{bSa{X}} \\\
\mathsf{bS{\delta}} \neq \mathsf{bS*{\delta}} \neq \mathsf{bS[\hat]{\delta}} \\\
\mathsf{bCSb{a}} \cdot \mathsf{bS{c}} = \mathsf{bS{a}} \times \mathsf{bS{c}}
\end{gather}
```

If you find yourself always using the starred forms, because you want to supply your own formatting, you can instead load the package with the option `noformat`, which suppresses the boldening or other automatic formatting of the symbols.

11.4.14 Extra decorations for symbols

Standard \LaTeX provides `\stackrel` for placing a superscript above a Relation symbol.

A set of possibly more useful commands is provided by the `amsmath` package with the commands `\overset`, `\underset`, and `\overunderset`. They can be used to place material above and/or below any Ordinary symbol or Binary operator symbol, in addition to Relation symbols, and automatically determine the correct math type for the resulting compound symbol.

11-4-40

$$\overset{*}{X} > \underset{*}{X} \stackrel[\text{loc.}]{\text{def}} \sum_{a,b \in \mathbb{R}^*}' \overset{a}{\underset{b}{X}} = X$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}

\[ \overset{*}{X} > \underset{*}{X}
\overunderset{\mathsf{def}}{\mathsf{loc.}}{\iff}
\sideset{}{'}\sum_{a,b \in \mathbf{R}^*}
\overset{a}{\underset{b}{X}} = X \]
```

The command `\sideset` serves a special purpose, complementary to the others: it adds decorations additional to the “normal” limits (which are set above and below) to any Operator symbol such as \sum or \prod . These are placed in the subscript and superscript positions, on both the left and right of the Operator.

the spacing varies. These defaults from the `amsmath` package can be changed in a class file when different conventions are in use.

11-5-1

A series H_1, H_2, \dots, H_n , a sum $H_1 + H_2 + \dots + H_n$, an orthogonal product $H_1 \times H_2 \times \dots \times H_n$.

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
```

A series H_1, H_2, \dots, H_n , a sum $H_1 + H_2 + \dots + H_n$, an orthogonal product $H_1 \times H_2 \times \dots \times H_n$.

If the dots fall at the end of a mathematical formula, the next object will be something like `\end` or `\]` or `$`, which does not give any information about how to place the dots. In such a case, you must help by using `\dotsc` for “dots with commas”, `\dotsb` for “dots with Binary operator/Relation symbols”, `\dotsm` for “multiplication dots”, `\dotsi` for “dots with integrals”, or even `\dotso` for “none of the above”. These commands should be used only in such special positions: otherwise you should just use `\dots`.

In this example, low dots are produced in the first instance and centered dots in the other cases, with the space around the dots being nicely adjusted.

11-5-2

A series H_1, H_2, \dots , a sum $H_1 + H_2 + \dots$, an orthogonal product $H_1 \times H_2 \times \dots$, and an infinite integral:

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
```

A series H_1, H_2, \dots , a sum $H_1 + H_2 + \dots$, an orthogonal product $H_1 \times H_2 \times \dots$, and an infinite integral: $\int_{H_1} \int_{H_2} \dots -\Gamma d\Theta$

$$\int_{H_1} \int_{H_2} \dots -\Gamma d\Theta$$

You can customize the symbols and spacing produced by the `\dots` command in various contexts by redefining the commands `\dotsc`, `\dotsb`, `\dotsm`, and `\dotsi`; this would normally be done in a class file. Thus, for example, you could decide to use only two dots in some cases.

For vertical ellipsis, standard \LaTeX already offers `\vdots`, but while this works well in situations such as inside matrices (with centered cells), it is rather suboptimal when indicating continuation in math displays. Here it is usually preferable if the vertical dots take the width of an equal sign or some other symbol so that they appear centered with respect to nearby relation symbols next to the alignment point.

*mathtools additions
to amsmath*

This is provided by `mathtools` with the command `\vdotswithin`. It takes one argument (typically a relational *symbol* such as `=`), measures the width of the formula $\{symbol\}$, and then typesets the vertical dots centered in a box of that width.

11-5-3

$a = b + c$ $a = b + c$

```
\usepackage{mathtools}
```

\vdots \vdots

```
\begin{align*} a &= b+c & \& a &= b+c & \\\
```

$x = y + z$ $x = y + z$

```
 & \vdots & \& \vdotswithin{=} \\\
```

```
 x &= y+z & \& x &= y+z & \end{align*}
```

If vertical ellipsis are used in formulas, then there is often too much white space above and below, because of the usual line separation in display formulas. To allow for shortening that space in this and other scenarios, `mathtools` offers the two commands

`\MTFlushSpaceAbove` (to be used directly after `\`) and `\MTFlushSpaceBelow` (to end the line *instead* of `\`). If we apply them, we get:

$a = b + c$	$a = b + c$	<code>\usepackage{mathtools}</code>	
\vdots	\vdots	<code>\begin{align*} a &= b+c & & a &= b+c & & \\\ \MTFlushSpaceAbove</code>	
$x = y + z$	$x = y + z$	<code>& \vdotswithin{=} & & \vdotswithin{=} & \MTFlushSpaceBelow</code>	
		<code>x &= y+z & & x &= y+z & \end{align*}</code>	

11-5-4

For the most common case of vertical dots after an alignment point there is also `\shortvdotswithin{<symbol>}`, which is a shorthand for

`\MTFlushSpaceAbove & \vdotswithin{<symbol>} \MTFlushSpaceBelow`

and therefore has to follow a `\`, and there cannot be anything else in that row — which is why we could not use it in the previous example. If you ever need it, there is also `\shortvdotswithin*`, which differs in that it typesets the `\vdotswithin` before and not after the alignment point.

The `mathdots`
package extensions

Standard \LaTeX already offers `\ddots` for diagonal dots, but if you need them, in the other direction you can load the `mathdots` package by Dan Luecking, which offers `\iddots` for this purpose. Note, though, that this package also changes the definitions of `\ddots`, `\vdots`, and if `amsmath` is loaded, the two accents `\ddot` and `\ddddot` so that they are slightly better placed when used at different sizes, e.g., in exponents. Especially for the accents the latter feature can be quite interesting. Here is an example:

				<code>\usepackage{array,amsmath,mathdots}</code>	
command	large	script	tiny	<code>\begin{tabular}{l@{>{\large\$}c<{\\$}>{\scriptsize\$}c<{\\$}>{\tiny\$}c<{\\$}}</code>	
				<code>>{\tiny\$}c<{\\$}}</code>	
<code>\ddots</code>	\ddots	\ddots	\ddots	command & <code>\multicolumn{1}{c}{large}</code>	
				& <code>\multicolumn{1}{c}{script}</code>	
<code>\iddots</code>	\iddots	\iddots	\iddots	& <code>\multicolumn{1}{c}{tiny}</code>	<code>\\[3pt]</code>
				<code>\verb=\ddots=</code>	<code>& \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \\</code>
<code>\vdots</code>	\vdots	\vdots	\vdots	<code>\verb=\iddots=</code>	<code>& \iddots & \iddots & \iddots & \\</code>
<code>\ddot{Z}</code>	\ddot{Z}	\ddot{Z}	\ddot{Z}	<code>\verb=\vdots=</code>	<code>& \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \\</code>
<code>\ddddot{Z}</code>	\ddddot{Z}	\ddddot{Z}	\ddddot{Z}	<code>\verb=\ddot{Z}=</code>	<code>& \ddot{Z} & \ddot{Z} & \ddot{Z} & \\</code>
				<code>\verb=\ddddot{Z}=</code>	<code>& \ddddot{Z} & \ddddot{Z} & \ddddot{Z} & \\</code>
				<code>\end{tabular}</code>	

11-5-5

11.5.2 Horizontal extensions in standard \LaTeX

In principle, any mathematical accent command can be set up to produce the appropriate glyph from a range of widths whenever these are provided by the available fonts. However, in standard \LaTeX there are only two such commands: `\widehat` and `\widetilde`.

This section describes a few commands that produce constructions similar to these extensible accents. All, except `\overbrace` and `\underbrace`, produce compound symbols of mathematical class Ordinary (see Section 11.8.1 on page 209). They are illustrated in this example:

11-5-6

$$\widehat{\psi_{\delta}(t)E_th} \neq \widetilde{\psi_{\Delta}(t)E_th}$$

$$\overline{\psi_{\delta}(t)E_th} \approx \underline{\psi_{\Delta}(t)E_th}$$

$$\overrightarrow{\psi_{\delta}(t)E_th} \cong \overleftarrow{\psi_{\Delta}(t)E_th}$$

Combinations are possible too:

$$\overline{\overrightarrow{\psi_{\delta}(t)E_th}} \leq \underline{\overleftarrow{\psi_{\Delta}(t)E_th}}$$

Braces have extra possibilities as explained below.

$$\overbrace{\psi_{\delta}(t)E_th} \doteq \underbrace{\psi_{\Delta}(t)E_th}$$

```
\[ \widehat{\psi_{\delta}(t) E_t h} \neq
\widetilde{\psi_{\Delta}(t) E_t h}
\]
\[ \overline{\psi_{\delta}(t) E_t h} \approx
\underline{\psi_{\Delta}(t) E_t h}
\]
\[ \overrightarrow{\psi_{\delta}(t) E_t h} \cong
\overleftarrow{\psi_{\Delta}(t) E_t h}
\]
Combinations are possible too:
\[ \overline{\overrightarrow{\psi_{\delta}(t) E_t h}}
\leq
\underline{\overleftarrow{\psi_{\Delta}(t) E_t h}}
\]
Braces have extra possibilities as explained below.
\[ \overbrace{\psi_{\delta}(t) E_t h} \doteq
\underbrace{\psi_{\Delta}(t) E_t h}
\]
```

The `\overbrace` and `\underbrace` commands are somewhat special in that they produce compound symbols of the Operator class and take `\limits`. This means that you can easily attach some explanatory text or other material to the brace. For this the `\text` command from `amsmath` can be very useful.

11-5-7

$$\overbrace{\psi_{\delta}(t)E_th}^{\text{explanation}} = \underbrace{\psi_{\Delta}(t)E_th}_{\iff x>0}$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath} % for the \text command
\[
\overbrace{\psi_{\delta}(t) E_t h}^{\text{explanation}} =
\underbrace{\psi_{\Delta}(t) E_t h}_{\iff x > 0}
\]
```

Another horizontally extensible feature of \LaTeX is the bar in a radical sign; it is described at the end of the next subsection.

11.5.3 Further horizontal extensions

To the basic set of horizontally extensible structures, `amsmath` adds a few more arrows and perhaps more importantly also reimplements `\overrightarrow` and `\overleftarrow` so that they change their mathematical style. This means that they look right when used, for example, in fractions or subscripts/superscripts (see Section 11.7.1 on page 195). In contrast, the arrowheads in standard \LaTeX always stay

at the same size so that the commands without `amsmath` are suitable for use only at the top level of displayed mathematics.

$$\overrightarrow{\psi_\delta(t)E_th} \approx \overleftarrow{\psi_\Delta(t)E_th} \quad \text{No style change without amsmath}$$

$$\overrightarrow{\psi_\delta(t)E_th} \simeq \overleftarrow{\psi_\Delta(t)E_th} \quad \text{Needs amsmath}$$

$$\overleftrightarrow{\psi_\delta(t)E_th} \sim \overleftrightarrow{\psi_\Delta(t)E_th} \quad \text{Needs amsmath}$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\begin{align*}
\overrightarrow{\psi_\delta(t)E_th}
&\approx \overleftarrow{\psi_\Delta(t)E_th} \\
&\& \text{No style change} \\
&\& \text{without \textsf{amsmath}} \\
\underrightarrow{\psi_\delta(t)E_th}
&\simeq \underleftarrow{\psi_\Delta(t)E_th} \\
&\& \text{Needs \textsf{amsmath}} \\
\overleftrightharpoonup{\psi_\delta(t)E_th}
&\sim \underleftrightharpoonup{\psi_\Delta(t)E_th} \\
&\& \text{Needs \textsf{amsmath}}
\end{align*}
```

11-5-8

mathtools *additions*
to **amsmath**

The **mathtools** package offers two additional commands for producing over and under brackets.

```
\overbracket [bracket thickness] [bracket height] {content}
\underbracket [bracket thickness] [bracket height] {content}
```

Both commands have one mandatory *content* argument for the material bracketed and two optional arguments to specify the *bracket thickness* and *bracket height*. The defaults are chosen to blend well with the size and thickness of `\underbrace`, but if you do not like them or need several different weights, use the optional arguments.

The next example shows a couple of variations. Note the use of `\`, and `!` to make the brace and the innermost bracket slightly wider on the right without changing the spacing of the `+` signs.

$$\overbracket{a + b + \overbrace{c + d} + e + f}$$

$$\underbracket{a + b + \underbrace{c + d} + e + f}$$

```
\usepackage{mathtools}
\begin{gather*}
\overbracket{a + \underbracket{b + \overbrace{c + d},}! + e + f} \\
\overbracket[1.5pt][3pt]{a +}
\underbracket[3pt][4pt]{b +}
\overbracket[.7pt][2pt]{c + d},! + e + f}
\end{gather*}
```

11-5-9

The **mathtools** package also corrects some spacing problems with `\underbrace` and `\overbrace` because the \LaTeX versions are optimized for 10pt body font size and do not work that well with other sizes. With some math font families, such as Concrete Math, the original definitions are superior, though (because of a different brace design), and if that is the case, specify

```
\let\underbrace\LaTeXunderbrace \let\overbrace\LaTeXoverbrace
```

in the preamble of your document to get the \LaTeX definitions back.

<i>pattern</i>	<i>Effect</i>	<i>pattern</i>	<i>Effect</i>
l	⌞	A	Horizontal line (anchor) with the width of a D or U
L	⌞	O	Single empty fill (same width as 1)
r	⌞	1, ..., 9	Copies of regular fill —
R	⌞	@{ <i>material</i> }	Places <i>material</i> into brace
U	⌞	!{ <i>length</i> }	Regular fill of specific <i>length</i>
D	⌞	*{ <i>num</i> }{ <i>material</i> }	Repeat <i>material</i> a total of <i>num</i> times
,	⌞ Bracket end up	, [<i>height</i>]	Bracket up with extra <i>height</i>
,	⌞ Bracket end down	, [<i>height</i>]	Bracket down with extra <i>height</i>

Table 11.4: Pattern elements to construct braces and brackets

11.5.4 abraces — Customizable over and under braces

If you have a need for more specialized over or under braces, e.g., with special tips, or the middle part of the brace not centered or dashes instead of straight horizontal parts, etc., then take a look at the `abraces` package by Werner Grundlingh.

This package offers a construction method (somewhat modeled after the preamble of a `tabular`) allowing for a huge number of variant extensible braces.

`\aoverbrace[pattern]{material}` `\aunderbrace[pattern]{material}`

Without the optional argument the commands behave just like `\overbrace` and `\underbrace`, and if you load the package with the option `overload`, the standard \TeX commands get the optional argument added so that you can continue to use the standard names.

The optional argument lets you construct specially formed braces by specifying a *pattern* out of the characters given in Table 11.4. For example, the standard over brace would have the specification of `L1U1R` where the two numbers represent the horizontal filler parts and their values define the ratio, i.e., “1:1” in that case. Thus, if you want to move the middle part to the left, you could use a ratio like “1:3” or “2:5”, etc. Similarly, if you want to have several “middle” parts, place several U or D characters at the right point into the pattern. A few variants are shown in the following example:

11-5-10

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \overbrace{a^3 + 3ab^2 + 3a^2b + b^3} \\
 \text{Some text with a brace} \\
 \underbrace{x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n} \\
 \underbrace{(a+b)^2} = \underbrace{a^2 + 2ab + b^2}
 \end{array}$$

```

\usepackage{abraces,amsmath}
\begin{gather*}
  \aoverbrace[L1U3R]{a^3 + 3ab^2 + 3a^2b + b^3} \\
  \aunderbrace[l1U1D1U1r]{\text{Some text with a brace}} \\
  \aunderbrace[l10@{\ldots}04r]{x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n} \\
  \aunderbrace['1']{\smash[b]{(a+b)}}\nolimits^2 \\
  = \aunderbrace['1, [5pt]1']{\smash[b]{\{; a^2 + 2ab + b^2\}}}
\end{gather*}

```


Visual adjustments
and other
fine-tuning

The last line of the previous example is interesting on three accounts. For one, `\aunderbrace` takes limits to add material above or below the brace as discussed later, but here the `^2` is meant to apply to $(a+b)$, so we need `\nolimits` to cancel this.¹ The second adjustment concerns the vertical position of the brackets. Given that the first one contains material with a parenthesis adding to the depth, the bracket would be placed lower than the second one. To correct this we use `\smash` to ignore the depth on both sides. This brings the bracket fairly close to the formula parts; an alternative there would have been to add a `\mathstrut`. Finally, we also add some extra space at the beginning of the formula part embraced by the second bracket to make it appear visually balanced. See Section 11.7 on page 194 for more examples of such fine-tuning.

Nesting the commands is equally possible as long as you do not need braces that overlap. In the latter case take look at the `underoverlap` package discussed in the next section. Both packages can be jointly used as shown in Example 11-5-18 on page 190.

$$x + \overbrace{y + z}^{} - a$$

```
\usepackage{abrcases,amsmath}
\[ \aoverbrace[L1U6R]{x +
  \aunderbrace[l6D1r]{ \aoverbrace[,1,]{y+z} - a} } \]
```

11-5-11

If you need a certain pattern repeatedly, you can save yourself some effort by defining an additional pattern character and assigning the pattern to it.

```
\newbracespec{char}{pattern-elements}
```

This declaration is comparable to the `\newcolumntype` approach in the `array` package. Once given, the *char* can be used in any *pattern* representing the *pattern-elements*. Even though the declaration has “new” in its name, it is perfectly permissible to use it to overwrite a previously defined *char*, even one of the predefined ones — though that means its original functionality is lost and so seldom a good idea.

The approach is used in the next example, in which we define the pattern element `s` representing a brace with two tips and a few dots. Half of the brace is colored blue to show that coloring is possible too.

$$\underbrace{x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, \dots, x_n}_{}$$

```
\usepackage{abrcases,amsmath,color}
\newbracespec{s}{l1D2@{\, \ldots}0@{\color{blue}\ldots\,}2D1r}
\[ \aunderbrace[s]{x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, \ldots, x_n} \]
```

11-5-12

As you can observe in the previous example, any color change (or in fact any other declaration) inside an `@{...}` pattern element is applied to the remaining part of the pattern (or until changed again). Thus, if you want only to color the dots in the example, another `\color{black}` or the use of `\textcolor` is needed.

Attaching super and
subscripts

In many cases one does not only want to brace some part of a formula but also add some text or a formula above or below the brace. This can be easily achieved with

¹Without it the `^2` would not be displayed at all, because the specified *pattern* does not contain any D elements to attach it to.

the help of `^` and `_` after the mandatory argument. Normally you would use `^` with `\aoverbrace` and `_` with `\aunderbrace`, but it is possible to apply either or both.

The material is placed centered around the tip(s) of the brace. For this the *pattern* is evaluated in the following way: material in `^{\dots}` is placed above the first U or A pattern element, while material in `_{\dots}` attaches below the first D or A element. If you have several Us or Ds, you can attach material to each of them by using `&` to split the material in several parts that are then applied from left to right.

In the next example we set up a brace pattern with three anchor points for `^{\dots}` (U, A, and another U). As shown in the example, you can attach superscript material to any of them using the right number of `&` symbols. For a subscript there is only one anchor point, because the pattern has no D so that the subscript made with `_{\dots}` can attach only to the A element in the center.

If you split the super or subscript into more parts than you have anchors available, you will get an error message, and the excess parts are dropped. This is what happens in the last line of the next example where the word “dropped” is not in the output.

*Special cases
involving &*

If you need `&` as an ordinary character, just use `\&` as usual. However, if your super or subscript material does contain an array, `smallmatrix`, or some other environment that uses `&` in its syntax, you need to hide this use from a braces by surrounding it with an extra brace group as shown below:

11-5-13

$$\begin{array}{c} \overbrace{\text{a braced formula}}^{x \& y} \\ \overbrace{\text{a braced formula}}^{x \quad y} \\ \overbrace{\text{a braced formula}}^{x \qquad z} \\ \overbrace{\text{a braced formula}}^{\qquad z} \\ \underbrace{\text{a braced formula}}_{\begin{smallmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{smallmatrix}} \end{array}$$

```
\usepackage{abraces,amsmath}
\newbracespec{s}{L1U1A1U1R}

\begin{gather*}
  \aoverbrace[s]{\text{a braced formula}}^{x \& y} \\
  \aoverbrace[s]{\text{a braced formula}}^{x \& y} \\
  \aoverbrace[s]{\text{a braced formula}}^{x \& \& z} \\
  \aoverbrace[s]{\text{a braced formula}}^{\& \& z} \\
  _{\begin{smallmatrix} a&b \\ c&d \end{smallmatrix}} \& \text{dropped}
\end{gather*}
```

Up to now all examples use a single *pattern* for constructing the brace as well as placing any super or subscripts. In nearly all circumstances this is all you need to get the results you are after. There are, however, a few cases where you want the annotation placed in a way that is incompatible with the brace construction; e.g., you want a normal brace above and also a centered annotation below the formula.

The extended syntax

For these cases, both `\aoverbrace` and `\aunderbrace` offer a second optional argument so the extended syntax (with *above* and *below* also both optional) is actually as follows:

```
\aoverbrace [brace-pattern] {material} [anchor-pattern] ^{above} _{below}
\aunderbrace [brace-pattern] {material} [anchor-pattern] ^{above} _{below}
```

If the optional *anchor-pattern* argument is given, it is used instead of the *brace-pattern* for determining the position of any super or subscript annotations. The fact that there is only a single pattern is not a problem, even if both `^{\dots}` and `_{\dots}` are

used, because you can guide the anchoring either by supplying the right number of & characters or by specifying a suitable combination of U (only for superscripts), D (only for subscripts), and A (anchor for both) in the *anchor-pattern*. In the example below we use 1A1 in the *anchor-pattern* to have one centered anchor for both super and subscripts:

with text above
 $\overbrace{\text{a braced formula}}$
 and some below

```
\usepackage{abraces,amsmath}
\[
  \aoverbrace{\text{a braced formula}}[1A1]
    ^{\text{with text above}}
    _{\text{and some below}}
\]
```

11-5-14

The problem of
 trailing optional
 arguments

There is a potential problem with a syntax using trailing optional arguments: if no optional argument is wanted but the command is followed by a bracket group (even on the next line), then that group is parsed as an optional argument and not considered part of the formula. Fortunately, with the `abraces` commands it is easy to identify that this is a mistake: if there is neither a super nor a subscript, then such a bracket group is not an *anchor-pattern* argument (as that would be of no use) but must belong to the formula itself. The first line in the example shows such a case and the fact that it is correctly handled.

However, if what follows is an open bracket that does not have a matching closing bracket, then this no longer works because the parser scans for the closing symbol until it finds one (unlikely), or until it finds a `\par`, and then responds with a low-level error message. The solution for this scenario is therefore to explicitly tell \LaTeX to stop scanning earlier, for example, by adding `\relax`.

$\overbrace{(x+y+z)}[a,b]$
 $\underbrace{(x+y+z)}[a,b]$

```
\usepackage{abraces,amsmath}
\begin{gather*}
  \aoverbrace{[ , 1 , ]{(x+y+z)}} [a,b] \quad \backslash\backslash
  \aunderbrace{[' 1 ']{(x+y+z)}} \relax [a,b]
\end{gather*}
```

11-5-15

Over or under
 braces split across
 several display lines

With all these tools at hand it is fairly simple to produce braces that are split across two lines in a display. To make it even simpler we define five new pattern characters: B or b (for begin brace), e or E (for end brace), and M (for any middle part with a tip). The uppercase letters produce a brace containing a middle part with a tip, while the lowercase ones do not. Thus, you would normally select one upper and one lowercase character (depending on where you want to place your annotations, if any). Also note the use of `\enspace` to run the brace a little wider at the open side to indicate that it is continuing.

In the example the M element is only indirectly used when defining B and E, but if you want to span three or more lines, you can use it for the middle one. If you need a continuation without any tip, then just use the pattern 1 on its own instead.

```

\usepackage{amsmath} \usepackage[overload]{abraces}
\newbracespec{M}{1U1} \newbracespec{B}{LM} \newbracespec{e}{1R}
\newbracespec{b}{L1} \newbracespec{E}{MR}

\begin{multiline*}
  f(x)=a_0+a_1x+a_2x^2+
  \overbrace[B]{a_3x^3 + a_4x^4 + \dots + a_{i-1}x^{i-1} + \enspace}
    ~{\text{some explanation}} \\\
  \overbrace[e]{\enspace a_ix^i + a_{i+1}x^{i+1}} + \dots + a_{n-1}x^{n-1}
\end{multiline*}

```

11-5-16

$$f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \overbrace{a_3x^3 + a_4x^4 + \cdots + a_{i-1}x^{i-1}}^{\text{some explanation}} + \underbrace{a_ix^i + a_{i+1}x^{i+1} + \cdots + a_{n-1}x^{n-1}}_{\text{some explanation}}$$

11.5.5 underoverlap — Partly overlapping horizontal braces

While it is possible to nest `\overbrace` or `\underbrace` commands (or the equivalents from the `abraces` package), it is rather difficult with the standard tools to produce partly overlapping braces within a single formula. If this is needed, you can use the `underoverlap` package by Michiel Helvensteijn.¹ It offers by default four commands that can produce partly overlapping structures. Others can be added as needed.

$\text{\UOLoverbrace}\{private\}[common]$	$\text{\UOLunderbrace}\{private\}[common]$
---	--

The brace spans both the *private* and the *common* parts, i.e., as if both parts are inside the argument of `\overbrace`. However, the optional *common part* is typeset only by the next `\UOL . .` command, which therefore should follow immediately. If not, you get results as shown in the second and third formula of the next example.

By default `\UOLoverline` and `\UOLunderline` are also available, and all commands can be intermixed freely.

11-5-17

$$a + \overbrace{b + c + d}^{\text{both}} + f + g \quad (1)$$

$$a + \overbrace{b + + f + q}^{\text{fine}} \quad (2)$$

$$a + \overbrace{b + + fc + d + g}^{\text{clearly wrong}} \quad (3)$$

```
\usepackage{underoverlap,amsmath}
\begin{gather} a + \UOLoverbrace{b +}[c + d]^{\text{both}} \\
\qquad \qquad \qquad \UOLunderline{+ f}_{\text{fine}} + g \quad \backslash \\
a + \UOLoverline{b +}[c + d]^{\text{wrong!!}} + f + g \quad \backslash \\
a + \UOLoverbrace{b +}[c + d]^{\text{clearly wrong}} \\
\qquad + f \UOLunderlinebrace{+ g}_{\text{too!}} \quad \end{gather}
```

¹An alternative based on an `array`-like syntax is the `oubrace` package by Donald Arseneau.

\llbracket	\lbracket or <code>\lbrack \rbrack</code>	$\{ \}$	<code>\{ \}</code> or <code>\lbrace \rbrace</code>	$()$	$()$
$\langle \rangle$	<code>\langle \rangle</code>	$\lceil \rceil$	<code>\lceil \rceil</code>	$\lfloor \rfloor$	<code>\lfloor \rfloor</code>
$()$	<code>\lgroup \rgroup</code>	\int	<code>\lmoustache \rmoustache</code>	$\llcorner \lrcorner$	<code>\lvert \rvert</code>
\lll	<code>\lVert \rVert</code>	$\llbracket \rrbracket$	<code>\llbracket \rrbracket</code> ^(STM)		
$|$	<code>|</code> or <code>\vert</code>	\uparrow	<code>\arrowup</code>	\updownarrow	<code>\bracketup</code>
\backslash	<code>\backslash</code>	$/$	<code>/</code>	\lvert	<code>\lvert</code> or <code>\Vert</code>
\Uparrow	<code>\Uparrow</code>	\downarrow	<code>\downarrow</code>	\uparrow	<code>\uparrow</code>
\Updownarrow	<code>\Updownarrow</code>	\Downarrow	<code>\Downarrow</code>	\Uparrow	<code>\Uparrow</code>
\Updownarrow	<code>\Updownarrow</code>	\cdot	<code>\cdot</code>	$\sqrt{}$	<code>\sqrt{}</code>

Symbols in *blue* require either the `amsmath` package or, if additionally denoted with ^(STM), the `stmaryd` package. A period (`.`) is not itself an extensible symbol, but it can be used to produce an “invisible” delimiter. The `\sqrt{}` symbol cannot be used with `\left`, `\right`, or `\middle`.

Table 11.5: Vertically extensible symbols

With the declaration `\newUOLdecorator` you can even define new `\UOL . . .`-like commands, and there is also the possibility of augmenting existing commands (like `\overline`) so that they behave as `\UOL . . .` commands.

The next example is not going to win us a design award, but it shows both features and also the fact that with a little care you can chain these commands. Note, however, that there are a number of restrictions that need to be taken into account. So if you intend to define your own variants, consult the package documentation.

```

\usepackage{underoverlap,abraces}
\newUOLdecorator\rightunderbrace{\aunderbrace[14D1r]{#1}}
\UOLaugment\underline
\UOLaugment\overleftarrow \UOLaugment\overrightarrow
\l[ \underline{a +}[b] \overrightarrow{+}[c + d]
      \rightunderbrace{+ e +}[f] \overleftarrow{+ g}
\l

```

11-5-18

11.5.6 Vertical extensions

While only a few symbols are horizontally extensible, there is a much larger range available with vertical extensions. The full list is given in Table 11.5. These symbols become extensible only in certain usages; they must all be based on a construction of the following form:


$$\backslash\mathrm{left}\langle\mathrm{ext-Open}\rangle \quad \dots \quad \backslash\mathrm{middle}\langle\mathrm{ext-Middle}\rangle \quad \dots \quad \backslash\mathrm{right}\langle\mathrm{ext-Close}\rangle$$

The `\middle<ext-Middle>` is optional, while `\left` and `\right` have to be present. The `<ext-Open>`, `<ext-Middle>`, and `<ext-Close>` can be any of the symbols (except `\sqrt`) listed in Table 11.5, or possibly others if additional packages are loaded. They must be symbols that have been set up to be extensible using the methods described in [113], which is part of every $\mathrm{\LaTeX}$ distribution; thus, a symbol must be available to represent the absence of an actual glyph. This symbol, which is sometimes called the *null delimiter*, is denoted by a period “.”.

The sizes of the actual glyphs used to typeset the extensible symbols are chosen to fit with the vertical size (height and depth) of the typeset *subformula* that lies in between them; the exact details of how this is done, and of the parameters that affect the process, can be found in Chapter 17 and Appendix G (Rule 19) of *The $\mathrm{\TeX}$ book* [84]. One can also request specific sizes for such symbols as explained in Section 11.7.4 on page 199.

The $\mathrm{\TeX}$ engine’s way of scaling delimiters with the help of `\left` and `\right` has a problem: it may in some cases change the spacing with respect to the material before and after. This can be avoided by using `\mleft` and `\mright` from the `mleftright` package instead; see the discussion in Section 11.8.1 on page 211 for details.

The radical sign `\sqrt` is even more amazing than the delimiters — it grows both vertically and horizontally to fit the size of its argument. In $\mathrm{\LaTeX}$ it is typically not used directly but accessed via the `\sqrt` command, which is discussed further in Section 11.7.5 on page 199.

 Possible spacing issues with `\left` and `\right`

11-5-19

$$\sqrt{1 + \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{3 + \sqrt{4 + \sqrt{5 + \sqrt{6 + \sqrt{7 + \sqrt{8 + x}}}}}}}}$$

```
\[
\sqrt{1 + \sqrt{2 +
\sqrt{3 + \sqrt{4 +
\sqrt{5 + \sqrt{6 +
\sqrt{7 + \sqrt{8 + x}}}}}}}
\]
```

11.6 Words in mathematics

Most of the time formulas consist only of symbols and individual letters denoting variables. However, sometimes ordinary text is made part of a formula, either to annotate some part of it or to continue the outer text with words like “and”, etc. In addition, a number of common operators are typeset using words rather than symbols.

11.6.1 The `\text` command

Math font-changing commands such as `\mathrm` are not intended for putting normal text inside mathematics as the fonts used are fixed and may not bear any relation to the font used in the text surrounding the formula. To produce “text” fonts inside a formula in standard \LaTeX you can use `\textrm`, `\textsf`, etc., or you can simply use `\mbox` if you want to typeset in the font used outside the current mathematical material. However, one problem with all these commands in standard \LaTeX is that they always typeset their text in a fixed font size, regardless of the position in the formula.

The `amsmath` package improves¹ on this by additionally providing the command `\text`, which is similar to `\mbox` but is much better, ensuring that the text is set using the correct font size. It also modifies `\textrm` and friends to change the font size as necessary, as can be observed in the next example:

Some text outside the formula ...

Also, if $\Delta_{\text{max up}} \geq \Delta_{\text{min down}} + \epsilon$
(for all ups and downs) then
 $\Delta_{\text{sum of ups}} > \Delta_{\text{sum of downs}}$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
Some text outside the formula \ldots
\begin{multline*}
\text{Also, if } \Delta_{\text{max up}}
\geq \Delta_{\text{min down}} + \epsilon \\
\text{(for all ups and downs) then} \\
\Delta_{\text{sum of ups}} > \Delta_{\text{sum of downs}}
\end{multline*}
```

11-6-1

11.6.2 Operator and function names

The names of many well-known mathematical functions (such as `log` and `sin`) and operators (such as `max` and `lim`) are traditionally typeset as words (or abbreviations) in roman type so as to visually distinguish them from shorter variable names that are set in “math italic”. The most common function names have predefined commands to produce the correct typographical treatment; see Table 11.6 on the next page. Most functions are available in standard \LaTeX ; those listed in blue in the table require loading `amsmath`. The functions marked with (ℓ) may “take limits” in display formulas (see Section 11.4.4).

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin^2(x)}{x^2} = 1$$

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_{n+1}|/|a_n| = 0$$

$$\lim_{\rightarrow} (m_i^\lambda \cdot M)^* \leq \lim_{A/p \rightarrow \lambda(A)} A_p \leq 0$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath} \newcommand{\abs[1]{\lvert#1\rvert}
\begin{gather*}
\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin^2(x)}{x^2} = 1 \\
\varliminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_{n+1}| / |a_n| = 0 \\
\varinjlim (m_i^\lambda \cdot M)^* \leq \lim_{A/p \rightarrow \lambda(A)} A_p \leq 0
\end{gather*}
```

11-6-2

¹This particular improvement is also available separately in the package `amstext`.

arccos	<code>\arccos</code>	arcsin	<code>\arcsin</code>	arctan	<code>\arctan</code>
arg	<code>\arg</code>	cos	<code>\cos</code>	cosh	<code>\cosh</code>
cot	<code>\cot</code>	coth	<code>\coth</code>	csc	<code>\csc</code>
deg	<code>\deg</code>	det	<code>\det^(ℓ)</code>	dim	<code>\dim</code>
exp	<code>\exp</code>	gcd	<code>\gcd^(ℓ)</code>	hom	<code>\hom</code>
inf	<code>\inf^(ℓ)</code>	inj lim	<code>\injlim^(ℓ)</code>	ker	<code>\ker</code>
lg	<code>\lg</code>	lim	<code>\lim^(ℓ)</code>	lim inf	<code>\liminf^(ℓ)</code>
lim sup	<code>\limsup^(ℓ)</code>	ln	<code>\ln</code>	log	<code>\log</code>
max	<code>\max^(ℓ)</code>	min	<code>\min^(ℓ)</code>	Pr	<code>\Pr^(ℓ)</code>
proj lim	<code>\projlim^(ℓ)</code>	sec	<code>\sec</code>	sin	<code>\sin</code>
sinh	<code>\sinh</code>	sup	<code>\sup^(ℓ)</code>	tan	<code>\tan</code>
tanh	<code>\tanh</code>	\lim_{\rightarrow}	<code>\varinjlim^(ℓ)</code>	\lim	<code>\varliminf^(ℓ)</code>
$\overline{\lim}$	<code>\varlimsup^(ℓ)</code>	\lim_{\leftarrow}	<code>\varprojlim^(ℓ)</code>		


Blue functions require the amsmath package. (ℓ) indicates that the operator takes limits in displays.

Table 11.6: Predefined operators and functions

New functions of this type are needed frequently in mathematics, so the amsmath package provides a general mechanism for defining new “operator names”.¹

`\DeclareMathOperator*{cmd}{text} \operatorname*{text}`

`\DeclareMathOperator` defines *cmd* to produce *text* in the appropriate font for “textual operators”. If the new function being named is an operator that should, when used in displays, “take limits” (so that any subscripts and superscripts are placed in the “limits” positions, above and below, as with, for example, \lim , \sup , or \min), then use the starred form `\DeclareMathOperator*`. In addition to using the proper font, `\DeclareMathOperator` sets up good spacing on either side of the function name when necessary. For example, it gives $A \text{ meas } B$ instead of $A \text{ meas} B$. The *text* argument is processed using a “pseudo-text mode” in which

 *Operator text is somewhat special*

- The hyphen character `-` prints as a text hyphen (and not as a minus sign); see `\supminus` in the next example.
- The asterisk character `*` prints as a raised text asterisk (not centered).
- Otherwise, the text is processed in math mode so that spaces are ignored and you can use subscripts, superscripts, and other elements.

The related command `\operatorname` (and its `*`-form) simply turns its argument into a function name, as in Example 11-2-11 on page 137. It is useful for “one-off” operators.

¹This functionality is also separately available in the package `amsopn`.

The next example shows how to provide the command `\meas` for the new function name “meas” (short for measure) and the operator functions `\esssup` and `\supminus`, both of which take limits.

$$\|f\|_\infty = \operatorname{ess\,sup}_{x \in R^n} |f(x)|$$

$$\operatorname{meas}_1 \{u \in R_+^1 : f^*(u) > \alpha\} = \operatorname{ess\,sup}_{x \in R^i} \operatorname{meas}_i \{u \in R^n : |f(u)| \geq \alpha\} \\ (\forall \alpha \in \operatorname{sup-minus}_{f^*} R_{*+})$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\DeclareMathOperator \meas {meas}
\DeclareMathOperator*\esssup {ess \, sup}
\DeclareMathOperator*\supminus{sup - minus*}
\newcommand\abs [1]{\lvert#1\rvert}
\newcommand\norm[1]{\lVert#1\rVert}
\begin{multline*}
\norm{f}_{\infty} = \esssup_{x \in R^n} \abs{f(x)} \\\
\meas_1 \{ u \in R_+^1 \colon f^*(u) > \alpha \} = \\\
\esssup_{x \in R^i} \{ u \in R^n \colon \abs{f(u)} \geq \alpha \} \\\
(\forall \alpha \in \supminus_{f^*} R_{*+})
\end{multline*}
```

11-6-3

Unfortunately, such declarations must appear in the preamble, so it is not possible to change a declaration temporarily. In fact, `\DeclareMathOperator` works only for command names that have not been used previously, so it is not possible to overwrite an existing command directly. To do so, you must first remove the previous definition (in this case, of `\csc`) before redeclaring it; this removal is accomplished by using low-level \TeX coding, as \LaTeX provides no method for completing this task.

$$\overline{\lim}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathcal{Q}(u_n, u_n - u^\#) \geq \operatorname{cosec}(\mathcal{Q}'(u^\#)) \quad (1)$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
%% Low-level TeX needed here to cancel
%% the old definition of \csc:
\let \csc \relax
\DeclareMathOperator\csc{cosec}
\newcommand\calQ{\mathcal{Q}}
\begin{equation}
\varlimsup_{n \rightarrow \infty}
\calQ(u_n, u_n - u^{\#})
\geq \csc(\calQ'(u^{\#}))
\end{equation}
```

11-6-4

11.7 Fine-tuning the mathematical layout

Although \LaTeX generally does a good job of laying out the elements of a formula, it is sometimes necessary to fine-tune the positioning. This section describes how to achieve some of the many detailed adjustments to the layout that are used to produce mathematical typography that is just a little bit better. Most of this section applies to all \LaTeX mathematical material, but a few features are available only with the `amsmath` or `mathtools` package; these are clearly labeled.

<i>Style</i>	<i>Superscript</i>	<i>Subscript</i>	<i>Numerator</i>	<i>Denominator</i>
D	S	S'	T	T'
D'	S'	S'	T'	T'
T	S	S'	S	S'
T'	S'	S'	S'	S'
S, SS	SS	SS'	SS	SS'
S', SS'	SS'	SS'	SS'	SS'

Table 11.7: Mathematical styles in subformulas

11.7.1 Controlling the automatic sizing and spacing

Letters and mathematical symbols normally get smaller, and are more tightly spaced, when they appear in fractions, superscripts, or subscripts. In total, \TeX has eight different styles in which it can lay out formulas:

D, D'	<code>\displaystyle</code>	Displayed on lines by themselves
T, T'	<code>\textstyle</code>	Embedded in text
S, S'	<code>\scriptstyle</code>	In superscripts or subscripts
SS, SS'	<code>\scriptscriptstyle</code>	In all higher-order superscripts or subscripts

The prime versions (D' , T' , etc.) represent the so-called *cramped* styles, which are similar to the normal styles except that superscripts are not raised so much.

\TeX uses only three type sizes for mathematics in these styles: text size (also used in `\displaystyle`), script size, and scriptscript size. The size of each part of a formula can be determined according to the following scheme:

<i>A symbol in style</i>	<i>is typeset in</i>	<i>and produces</i>
D, D', T, T'	text size	(text size)
S, S'	script size	(script size)
SS, SS'	scriptscript size	(scriptscript size)

In \TeX , the top-level part of a formula set in running text (within a $\$$ pair or between `\(. . . \)`) is typeset using text style (style T). A displayed formula (e.g., one between `\[. . . \]`) is typeset in display style (style D). The kind of style used in a subformula can then be determined from Table 11.7, where the last two columns describe the styles used in the numerator and the denominator of a fraction or similar construct, for example, produced with `\frac` or `\binom`. In particular, notice this difference between fractions in display and text style; in the latter case the numerator and denominator are typeset in script style, i.e., noticeably smaller.

The various styles can be seen in this example:

	<code>\normalsize</code>	%% Style:	
	<code>\[b</code>	%% D	
	<code>~0</code>	%% S	
	<code>+</code>	%% D	
	<code>\frac{(k + p)</code>	%% T	
	<code>_ {j'}</code>	%% S'	
	<code>% \displaystyle</code>	%% <-- possible modification	
	<code>\pm</code>	%% T	[D] |
	<code>\frac{(f + q)</code>	%% S	[T] |
	<code>~{(pk)</code>	%% SS	[S] v
	<code>~y</code>	%% SS	
	<code>_ {j'}}</code>	%% SS'	
	<code>{(h + y)}</code>	%% S'	[T']
	<code>{(1 + q)</code>	%% T'	
	<code>~{(pk)}</code>	%% S'	
	<code>\]</code>		

$$b^0 + \frac{(k+p)_{j'} \pm \frac{(f+q)^{(pk)_{j'}}}{(h+y)}}{(l+q)^{(pk)}}$$

11-7-1

You can change the layout of this example by explicitly specifying the style to be used in each part. For example, if you remove the comment character in front of `\displaystyle`, then some of the styles will change to those shown in brackets. The result looks like this:

$$b^0 + \frac{(k+p)_{j'} \pm \frac{(f+q)^{(pk)_{j'}}}{(h+y)}}{(l+q)^{(pk)}}$$

11-7-2

mathtools additions
to amsmath

In standard \LaTeX or `amsmath` it is not possible to explicitly request that a formula should be typeset in cramped style. The only possibilities you have is requesting one of the uncramped styles and letting \TeX decide the rest based on its logic described in Table 11.7 on the preceding page. However, with `mathtools` you have a command at your disposal that lets you ask for cramped style explicitly.

```
\cramped[mathstyle]{subformula}
```

The *subformula* is typeset in the cramped version of the current math style. In the optional *mathstyle* argument you can explicitly ask for a different cramped style by specifying `\displaystyle`, `\textstyle`, `\scriptstyle`, or `\scriptscriptstyle`. To the outer formula the *subformula* looks like a single object of type Ordinary. If that is not appropriate, you need to additionally use `\mathop`, etc., to change its interpretation (see Section 11.8 on page 208).

In the next example a sum is typeset in a display formula. In cramped style the superscripts are noticeably lowered, and in cramped `\textstyle` the sum operator

additionally takes no limits. See also page 204 for additional commands that provide subformulas in *cramped* style.


11-7-3

$$\sum_i x^{i^2} \neq \sum_i x^{i^2} \neq \sum_i x^{i^2}$$

```
\usepackage{mathtools}
\Large \[ \sum_i x^{i^2} \neq \cramped{\sum_i x^{i^2}}
\neq \cramped[\textstyle]{\sum_i x^{i^2}} \]
```


11.7.2 Subformulas

Whereas in text a pair of braces can simply indicate a group to which the effects of some declaration should be confined, within mathematics they do more than this. They delimit a subformula, which is always typeset as a separate entity that is added to the outer formula. As a side effect, subformulas are always typeset at their natural width and do not stretch or shrink horizontally when T_EX tries to fit a formula in a paragraph line during line breaking. As shown earlier, the subformula from a simple brace group is treated as if it was just a single symbol (of class Ordinary). An empty brace group, therefore, generates an invisible symbol that can affect the spacing. The exact details can be found in Chapters 17 and 18 and Appendix G of *The T_EXbook* [84].

 Subformulas are always typeset at their natural width

The contents of subscripts/superscripts and the arguments of many (but not all) commands, such as `\frac` and `\mathrel`, are also subformulas and get this same special treatment. Important examples of arguments that are not necessarily set as subformulas include those of `\bm` (see Section 12.2.1). If a group is needed only to limit the scope of a declaration (i.e., where a separately typeset subformula would be wrong), then `\begingroup` and `\endgroup` and not `{...}` should be used. Note that specialized mathematical declarations such as style changes apply until the end of the current subformula, irrespective of the presence of any other groups.

In the following artificial example you can see that the mathematical styles are restricted to the subformulas of the operator subscripts, but the `\scriptstyle` inside `\bm` is neither restricted to the argument nor does it end at the `\endgroup`. However, that group delimits the scope of the color declaration.

 Scope of mathematical styles

11-7-4

$$\sum_i \prod_j X_{i_j} = A + B + C$$

```
\usepackage{color,bm}
\[ \sum_{\textstyle i} \prod_{\scriptscriptstyle j} X_{i_j} = A
\begingroup\color{blue} + \bm{\scriptstyle B} + \endgroup C \]
```

11.7.3 Line breaking in inline formulas

L^AT_EX can break an inline formula (e.g., produced with `$...$`) over several lines if necessary, but it does this by default only after Relation or Binary symbols. The penalty for breaking at these positions is customizable through the T_EX counters `\relpenalty` (default value 500) and `\binoppenalty` (default 700). This means that L^AT_EX discourages breaking a formula, but if necessary, it slightly prefers breaking after a Relation over breaking after a Binary symbol. If you want to discourage this

further, you can set the parameter to even higher values, but it has to be done with low-level assignments, e.g.,

```
\binoppenalty = 10000 % never break after a Binary symbol
\relpenalty   = 0      % but do not penalize a break after a Relation
```

If you never want any automatic line breaking happening within a formula, you can set both to 10000 (T_EX's number for ∞), but you might have to also alter the definitions of `\pmod` and `\bmod` because they use their own hardwired penalties — or handle them manually.

The penalty values used are the ones that are current *at the end* of the formula; thus, changing their values anywhere inside a formula affects all Relation and Binary symbols, not just a single one. For local adjustments, it is therefore better to place explicit penalties inside a formula that you want to affect, i.e., `\nobreak` for preventing a break after a specific symbol¹ or `\allowbreak`, `\linebreak[num]`, or `\nolinebreak[num]` to allow, encourage, or discourage it at any point within the formula, which makes it possible to break anywhere.

In the next example L^AT_EX breaks after the `+` sign, which looks a bit odd with the *b* on its own at the beginning of the line. So we correct it by adding `\nobreak`, after which L^AT_EX uses the only remaining breakpoint after the `=` sign. This makes the line look a bit spaced out in the example (because it is so narrow), but in real life with a wider paragraph measure, this adjustment would be a clear improvement.

Some words of text before the formula $\sum x_i = a + b$ and after.	Some words of text before the formula \$ \sum x_i = a + b \$ and after.
Some words of text before the formula $\sum x_i = a + b$ and after.	Some words of text before the formula \$ \sum x_i = a + \backslash nobreak b \$ and after.

11-7-5

Do not use `\mbox`
or `\{...\}` to
prevent a line break
in a formula

You sometimes see the advice that putting some material into an `\mbox` is a good way to prevent an unwanted line break. While this is a good solution for preventing hyphenation in a word, it is not really good to keep several words together nor to keep a formula from breaking across lines. The reason is that the spaces in the formula (or between words) are then always set at their natural width and no longer participate in shrinking or stretching to fill the line. This also happens if you turn your formula into a subformula: they too are always set at their natural width.

The next example clearly shows the problem. Assume that you wanted to prevent the short formula from being broken, so you make sure, but after a few rewrites, it is no longer anywhere near a line break. In the first two paragraphs the formula is now set at its natural width, resulting in the word “af-ter” being broken, and only in the third paragraph was L^AT_EX able to squeeze the formula slightly to make everything fit onto a single line.

¹Normally T_EX evaluates all penalties in sequence, which makes it impossible to disallow a break through `\nobreak` if there is already a penalty allowing it. However, in formulas an explicit penalty after a Relation or Binary symbol overwrites the default penalty, so here it works.

However, even if the line breaking comes out reasonably well, a line with some spaces set at their natural width, while all others are squeezed or expanded, looks bad and distracts from reading — you should therefore avoid that trap.

11-7-6	Words before $\sum x_i = a + b$ and after.	Words before $\mbox{$ \sum x_i = a + b $}$ and after.
	Words before $\sum x_i = a + b$ and after.	Words before $\{ \sum x_i = a + b \}$ and after.
	Words before $\sum x_i = a + b$ and after.	Words before $\$ \sum x_i = \text{\nobreak a} + \text{\nobreak b} \$$ and after.

11.7.4 Big-g delimiters

To provide direct control of the sizes of extensible delimiters, \LaTeX offers four commands: `\big`, `\Big`, `\bigg`, and `\Bigg`. These take a single parameter, which *must* be an extensible delimiter, and they produce ever-larger versions of the delimiter, from 1.2 to 3 times as big as the base size.

Three extra variants exist for each of the four commands, giving four sizes of Opening symbol (e.g., `\bigl`), four sizes of Relation symbol (e.g., `\Bigm`), and four sizes of Closing symbol (e.g., `\Biggr`).¹ All 16 of these commands can (and must) be used with any symbol that can come after either `\left`, `\right`, or `\middle` (see Table 11.5 on page 190).

In standard \LaTeX the sizes of these delimiters are fixed. With the `amsmath` package, however, the sizes adapt to the size of the surrounding material, according to the type size and mathematical style in use, as shown in the next example. The same is true when you load the `exscale` package (see Section 9.5.7) or when you use a font package that implements the `exscale` functionality as an option (e.g., several of the packages discussed in Sections 12.3 and 12.5).

11-7-7	$\left(\mathbf{E}_y \int_0^{t_\epsilon} L_{x,y^x(s)} \varphi(x) ds \right)$ $\left(\mathbf{E}_y \int_0^{t_\epsilon} L_{x,y^x(s)} \varphi(x) ds \right)$	<pre>\usepackage{amsmath} \left[\biggl(\mathbf{E}_y \int_0^{t_\text{\varepsilon}} L_{x, y^x(s)} \varphi(x) \, ds \biggr) \right] \bigskip\Large \left[\biggl(\mathbf{E}_y \int_0^{t_\text{\varepsilon}} L_{x, y^x(s)} \varphi(x) \, ds \biggr) \right]</pre>
--------	---	--

11.7.5 Radical movements

In standard \LaTeX , the placement of the index on a radical sign is sometimes not good. With `amsmath`, the commands `\leftroot` and `\uproot` can be used within the optional argument of the `\sqrt` command to adjust the positioning of this index.

¹ See Section 11.8.1 on page 209 for the various mathematical classes of symbols.

Positive integer arguments to these commands move the root index to the left and up, respectively, while negative arguments move it right and down. These arguments are given in terms of math units (see Section 11.7.7), which are quite small, so these commands are useful for fine adjustments.

$\sqrt[\beta]{k}$	$\sqrt[\beta]{k}$	$\sqrt[\beta]{k}$	<pre>\usepackage{amsmath} \[\sqrt[\beta]{k} \qquad \sqrt[\leftroot{2}\uproot{4}]{\beta}{k} \qquad \sqrt[\leftroot{1}\uproot{3}]{\beta}{k} \qquad\]</pre>	11-7-8
-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	--	--------

11.7.6 Ghostbusters™

To get math spacing and alignment “just right”, it is often best to make creative use of some of primitive \TeX ’s unique and sophisticated typesetting abilities. These features are accessed by a collection of commands related to `\phantom` and `\smash`; and they can be used in both mathematical and other text.

For instance, the large alignment example (Example 11-2-9 on page 136) uses lots of phantoms to get the alignment just right. Each of these phantoms produces an invisible “white box” whose size (width and total height plus depth) is determined by typesetting the text in its argument and measuring its size.

Conversely, the command `\smash` typesets its contents (in an LR-box) but then ignores both their height and depth, behaving as if they were both zero. The standard \LaTeX command `\hphantom` is a combination of these, producing the equivalent of `\smash{}`: an invisible box with zero height and depth but the width of the phantom contents.

The `\vphantom` command makes the width of the phantom zero but preserves its total height plus depth. An example is the command `\mathstrut`, which is defined as “`\vphantom{}`” so that it produces a zero-width box of height and depth equal to that of a parenthesis.

The `amsmath` package provides an optional argument for `\smash`, used as follows: `\smash[t]{...}` ignores the height of the box’s contents but retains the depth, while `[b]` ignores the depth and keeps the height. Compare these four lines, in which only the handling of \sqrt{y} varies:

$\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{y} + \sqrt{z}$	<pre>\usepackage{amsmath} \$\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{y} + \sqrt{z}\$ \\ \$\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{\mathstrut y} + \sqrt{z}\$ \\ \$\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{\smash{y}} + \sqrt{z}\$ \\ \$\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{\smash[b]{y}} + \sqrt{z}\$</pre>	11-7-9
----------------------------------	--	--------

To get the three radical signs looking pleasantly similar, it seems that the thing to do may be to give the y some extra height with a strut — but that makes things only worse! The best solution turns out to be to smash the bottom of the y (but not the whole of it!).

In the next example, the two case lines are spread too far apart due to the depth of the denominator in the first line and the superscript on the numerator of the large fraction in the second line.

11-7-10

$$f_p(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{p} & x = p \\ \frac{\frac{(1-x)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{x - \sin(x-p)}}{\sqrt{1-p} \cos(x-p)} & x \neq p \end{cases}$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\[ f_p (x) =
\begin{cases}
\frac{1}{p} & x = p \\
\frac{\frac{(1 - x)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\{ x - \sin (x - p) \}}}{\{\sqrt{1 - p} \, \, \, \cos (x - p)\}} & x \neq p
\end{cases} \]
```

As the lines do not overlap if we bring them closer together, we can ask \LaTeX to disregard the depth of the p in the denominator on the first line and the top of the large fraction in the second line using bottom and top `\smash` commands. We also have to add an empty brace group because of the unfortunate optimization of \TeX to ignore the `\smash` if it is the only object in the fraction; see also page 203.

11-7-11

$$f_p(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{p} & x = p \\ \frac{\frac{(1-x)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{x - \sin(x-p)}}{\sqrt{1-p} \cos(x-p)} & x \neq p \end{cases}$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\[ f_p (x) =
\begin{cases}
\frac{1}{\smash[b]{p}} & x = p \\
\frac{\{\frac{(1 - x)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\smash[t]{\{ x - \sin (x - p) \}}}\}}{\{\sqrt{1 - p} \, \, \, \cos (x - p)\}} & x \neq p
\end{cases} \]
```

This, of course, would bring the two lines in this example confusingly close together. For this reason we also add a `\strut` so that the numerator of the main fraction still appears to have a certain height (a `\mathstrut`, which has the dimensions of a parenthesis, would not produce enough extra space):

11-7-12

$$f_p(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{p} & x = p \\ \frac{\frac{(1-x)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{x - \sin(x-p)}}{\sqrt{1-p} \cos(x-p)} & x \neq p \end{cases}$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath}
\[ f_p (x) =
\begin{cases}
\frac{1}{\smash[b]{p}} & x = p \\
\frac{\frac{(1 - x)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\mathstrut \smash[t]{\{ x - \sin (x - p) \}}}}{\{\sqrt{1 - p} \, \, \, \cos (x - p)\}} & x \neq p
\end{cases} \]
```

As you probably realize, in this case a much simpler way to achieve the same effect is to request some negative vertical space between the case lines, e.g., using `\[-4pt]`. Nevertheless, some moderate use of smashing is often of benefit to such unbalanced displays.

You may also think that this only partly solves the issue with this display and that it would look better if there is a bit more vertical space in the main fraction. In that case you could try adding a strut to both its numerator and denominator. A `\mathstrut` is too small and would have no effect, and a text `\strut` is too large. For such cases `mathtools` offers `\xmathstrut`.

`\xmathstrut[bottom-enlarge]{enlarge}`

This produces a strut of the height and depth of a parenthesis in the current math style, e.g., smaller in a script or scriptscript situation. The mandatory *enlarge* argument defines the factor by which it is enlarged at the top and by default also at the bottom. If the optional *bottom-enlarge* is also given, it is used for bottom instead. Thus, `\xmathstrut[.1]{.2}` makes a strut that is 30% larger than a normal `\mathstrut` with 20% being added above. Using a value of 0 in an argument means that this part of the strut is not altered at all, while using a negative value shortens the strut (usually useful only for the top part).

The behavior is best explained in an example. We show different `\xmathstrut` commands inside a `\boxed` command and highlight its height and depth by showing a vertical blue rule that extends through the full size of the box (using `\vrule`).

```
\usepackage{color,mathtools} \setlength\fbboxrule{0pt}\setlength\fbboxsep{0pt}
\newcommand\xx[2]{\scriptscriptstyle #1\boxed{#2\color{blue}\vrule}\,}

$ (a) \xx{1}{\mathstrut}           % normal strut (size of parentheses)
    \xx{2}{\xmathstrut{0}}         % 0 gives normal strut
    \xx{3}{\xmathstrut{0.5}}       % add 50% at top + bottom (= 100% bigger)
    \xx{4}{\xmathstrut{0}{-0.2}}   % remove 20% from top, but keep bottom
    \xx{5}{\xmathstrut{0.3}{-1}}   % bottom 30% larger, no height
    \xx{6}{\xmathstrut{-0.5}} (z) $ % -> see explanation below ...
```

(a) $\left| \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \\ 5 \\ 6 \end{array} \right| (z)$

11-7-13

The setting for `\fbboxrule` and `\fbboxsep` in the example was made to prevent the `\boxed` command from adding its own rules or spaces. The reason that `-0.5` in the last line of the example does not remove the strut altogether is due to the fact that the top part of a strut is roughly 70% of the overall size. Thus, 20% remains, while in the bottom part `-0.3` would already remove everything.

Using `\xmathstrut`, we can now easily open up the parts of the fractions a bit to make them more readable; we used it three times with slightly different values — finding the most appropriate values may need some experimentation.

```
\usepackage{mathtools}

\[\ f_p(x) =
\begin{cases}
\frac{1}{p} & x = p \\
\frac{\frac{(1-x)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{x-\sin(x-p)}}{\sqrt{1-p}\cos(x-p)} & x \neq p
\end{cases}
```

```
\frac{\frac{\xmathstrut{.1} (1 - x)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\xmathstrut{.25} x - \sin (x - p)}}{\xmathstrut{.3} \sqrt{1 - p} \, \, \cos (x - p)}
& x \neq p

\end{cases} \]
```

11-7-14


Another collection of examples illustrates a very common application of smashing: using a partial `\smash` to give fine control over the height of surrounding delimiters. It also shows that smashing can lead to problems because the real height of the line needs to be known; this is restored by `\vphantom`. In the following code, `\Hmjd` is the compound symbol defined by

```
\newcommand\Hmjd{\widetilde{\mathcal{H}^2}_{\text{MJD}}(\chi)}
```

To show the resulting vertical space we added some rules:

Appearance	Code	Comment
$\overline{(\widetilde{\mathcal{H}^2_{\text{MJD}}(\chi)})}$	<code>\left(\quad \quad \quad \{\Hmjd\} \quad \right)</code>	<i>Outer brackets too large</i>
$\overline{(\widetilde{\mathcal{H}^2_{\text{MJD}}(\chi)})}$	<code>\left(\quad \quad \smash{\Hmjd} \quad \right)</code>	<i>Outer brackets too small and rules too close</i>
$\overline{(\widetilde{\mathcal{H}^2_{\text{MJD}}(\chi)})}$	<code>\left(\smash[t]{\Hmjd} \right) \vphantom{\Hmjd}</code>	<i>Just right!</i>
$\overline{(\widetilde{\mathcal{H}^2_{\text{MJD}}(\chi)})}$	<code>\left(\smash[t]{\Hmjd} \right)</code>	<i>Both \vphantom and partial smash are needed</i>

A word of warning: in a few places, deficiencies in the very low-level T_EX processing may cause errors in the fine details of typesetting. These possibilities are of particular concern in mathematical layouts where (1) a subformula (such as the numerator/denominator of a fraction or subscripts/superscripts) consists of exactly one LR-box, or a similarly constructed mathematical box, and also (2) that box does not have its natural size, as with the more complex forms of `\makebox`, `smashes`, and some `phantoms`. As an example, look at the following:

 *Smashes being ignored by T_EX sometimes*

11-7-15

$$\begin{array}{l}
 \left[\begin{array}{l}
 \sqrt{\frac{a+b}{x_j}} \quad \sqrt{\frac{a+b}{x_j}} \quad \sqrt{\frac{a+b}{x_j}} \quad \sqrt{\frac{a+b}{x_j+b}} \\
 \backslash[\\
 \sqrt{\frac{a+b}{x_j}} \quad \sqrt{\frac{a+b}{\smash{x_j}}} \quad \sqrt{\frac{a+b}{\{\}\smash{x_j}}} \quad \sqrt{\frac{a+b}{\smash{x_j+b}}} \\
 \backslash]
 \end{array} \right]
 \end{array}$$

To shorten the depth of the radical, a `\smash` was added in the second radical, but without any effect. With an empty brace group (third radical), it suddenly worked. On the other hand, no workaround was needed for the fourth radical.¹ For the same reason, the `\strut` or an empty brace group was actually necessary in Example 11-7-11 on page 201 to see any effects from the second `\smash` command there. In summary, whenever you find that a `\smash` does not work, try adding an empty math subformula (from `{}`) before the lonely box, to keep it from being mistreated.

¹Technically this is due to the denominator being wider than the numerator in this case so that it was not reboxed by T_EX.

Positive Spaces			Negative Spaces			Amount	
Short	Space	Long	Short	Space	Long	Math	Text
$\backslash,$		<code>\thinspace</code>	$\backslash!$		<code>\negthinspace</code>	3mu	0.1667em
$\backslash:$		<code>\medspace</code>			<code>\negmedspace</code>	4mu plus 2mu minus 4mu	0.2222em
$\backslash;$		<code>\thickspace</code>			<code>\negthickspace</code>	5mu plus 5mu	0.2777em
		<code>\enskip</code>				0.5em	
		<code>\quad</code>				1em	
		<code>\qquad</code>				2em	

Note: The “Amount” columns are discussed in the text.

Table 11.8: Mathematical spacing commands

robust, and they can also be used outside math mode in normal text. They are related to the thin, medium, and thick spaces available on the machines used to typeset mathematics in the mid-20th century.

If used in text mode, the amount of space added by these `\. . space` commands is based on fractions of 1em as listed in the rightmost column of the table. However, if used in math mode, the amounts are, in fact, defined by the current values of the three parameters `\thinmuskip`, `\medmuskip`, and `\thickmuskip`; the table lists their default values with `amsmath`. These very low-level T_EX parameters require values in “mu” (*math units*). They must therefore be set only via low-level T_EX assignments (as shown in Example 11-8-2 on page 210) and not by `\setlength` or similar commands. Moreover, in normal circumstances their values should not be modified because they are used internally by T_EX’s mathematical typesetting (see Table 11.9 on page 210).

Do not change the *muskip* parameter values

One math unit (1mu) is 1/18 of an em in the current mathematical font size (see also Table A.1 on page 652). Thus, the absolute value of a math unit varies with the mathematical style, giving consistent spacing whatever the style.

These math units can be used more generally to achieve even better control over space within mathematics. This is done via the `amsmath` command `\mspace`, which is like `\hspace` except that it can be used only within mathematics, and its length argument must be given in math units (e.g., `\mspace{0.5mu}`). Thus, while a `\quad` in a mathematical formula always produces the same space of 1em based on the main mathematical font size, specifying `\mspace{18mu}` produces a space that is about two-thirds the space in a double subscript size. This is shown in the next example, where different em-based spaces are used in the first and second line and then corresponding mu-based spaces are used in the third line.

11-7-18

		<code>\usepackage[fleqn]{amsmath}</code>
		<code>\begin{gather}</code>
$X a b c d$	(1)	<code>X \, a \enspace b \quad c \quad\quad d</code>
$X_{y a b c d}$	(2)	<code>X_{y_{f a} \enspace b \quad c \quad\quad d}}</code>
$X_{y a b c d}$	(3)	<code>X_{y_{f a} \mspace{9mu} b \mspace{18mu} c \mspace{36mu} d}}</code>
		<code>\end{gather}</code>

11.7.8 `resizegather` — Downscaling an equation

Sometimes a formula is just a tiny bit too large to fit the text width, as is the case with the next example, which is quite ugly looking:

$a + b + c + d + e + f + g = X$ <p style="text-align: center;">(1)</p> $a + b + c + d + e + f + g + h = Y$ <p style="text-align: center;">(2)</p>	<pre>\usepackage{amsmath} \begin{gather} a+b+c+d+e+f+g = X \\ a+b+c+d+e+f+g+h = Y \end{gather}</pre>	11-7-19
---	---	---------

In such a case you have the option of manually breaking the formula over two lines, but usually that does not work well when the excess width is only small, because then both lines are fairly empty. As an alternative, Heiko Oberdiek developed the package `resizegather` that redefines `gather`, `equation`, and their starred forms (but not `\[...]`) so that they scale down the formula in each line to fit into the available space.

Usually this is preferable to a split of the line, but only when the excess is small. Therefore, if it is larger than 5%, a warning is given, and you better visually verify that the result is acceptable. With the package option `warningthreshold`, you can alter the default. In the example we increase it to 10% to get only warnings for substantial resizing.

$a + b + c + d + e + f + g = X$ <p style="text-align: center;">(1)</p> $a + b + c + d + e + f + g + h = Y$ <p style="text-align: center;">(2)</p>	<pre>\usepackage[warningthreshold=.1]{resizegather} \begin{gather} a+b+c+d+e+f+g = X \\ a+b+c+d+e+f+g+h = Y \end{gather}</pre>	11-7-20
---	---	---------

In the previous example the first line is fine (correcting Example 11-7-19), but the second line in direct comparison becomes too tiny, and you get the following warning on the terminal

```
Package resizegather Warning: Equation line 2 is too large by 20.54451pt
(resizegather)                in environment 'gather' on input line 25.
```

to alert you about this fact so that you can take manual actions.

11.7.9 `subdepth` — Normalizing subscript positions

Subscripts in formulas are not always placed at the same vertical position by the $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ engine. Instead, their placement depends on surrounding conditions: if there is also a superscript, then $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ lowers the subscript slightly in order to leave enough space between the two. If you compare the different subscripts in

$$X_a = Y_b \geq Z_c^2 \qquad \text{C}_2\text{H}_5^+$$

you see that the c is lower than a or b . This is usually fine and desirable, but there are applications, for example, when typesetting chemical formulas, where it is preferable if all subscripts are properly aligned; e.g., the 2 is in the same position as the 5.

To help with this task, Donald Arseneau wrote a short piece of code that later got packaged by Will Robertson as `subdepth`. All you have to do is to load this package in order to get all subscripts in *all* formulas aligned.

11-7-21

$$X_a = Y_b \geq Z_c^2 \quad C_2H_5^+$$

```
\usepackage{subdepth}
\l[   X_a = Y_b \ge Z^2_c           \qqquad
      \mathrm{C}_2 \mathrm{H}_5^+   \r]
```

If you look carefully, you see that this not only aligns the subscripts but also slightly raises the superscripts in certain situations (e.g., in Z_c^2). If you do not like that aspect of the package behavior, load it with the package option `low-sup`.

11.7.10 Color in formulas

If you prepare educational material, but also in other situations, it is sometimes helpful if parts of a formula are highlighted, e.g., by using color. Even though color is not a concept natively available in \TeX (and therefore needs to be handled by the backend, for example, in the Portable Document Format (PDF) generation), it is fairly easy to color parts of a formula without any negative side effects to spacing as long as you avoid a few traps.

To color a complete formula, all you need to do is to place the whole formula inside `\textcolor`. It is also possible to use `\color` inside the formula for this purpose, but this may color less than you intended if you place the command in a place with a restricted scope, e.g., between `\left` and `\right` or into one of the `amsmath` display environments, because in there the scope ends at the next `&` or the end of the line. In either case, the color is automatically reset when the scope ends.

11-7-22

What is $(a+b)(a-b)$?

$$(a+b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$$

$$(a-b)^2 = a^2 - 2ab + b^2$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath,color}
What is \textcolor{blue}{$(a+b)(a-b)$}?
\begin{align*}
\color{blue} (a+b)^2 &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \\
(a-b)^2 &= a^2 \color{blue}- 2ab + b^2 \end{align*}
```

While you can put whole formulas inside `\textcolor`, you should not use it inside a math formula, because this usually results in bad spacing as shown in the next example where the binary minus suddenly comes out as a unary minus — a defect that does not happen with `\mathcolor` that was designed for this.

Thus, if you want to color only parts of a formula, you have two options: either change the color back and forth using several `\color` commands (which is fairly cumbersome and on some occasions results in spacing problems or even errors) or, assuming you have a recent \TeX release, use `\mathcolor` inside the formula.

Here is an example for comparison:

$(a+b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$ $(a-b)^2 = a^2 - 2ab + b^2$ <p>But don't do this:</p> $(a-b)^2 = a^2 - 2ab + b^2$	<pre>\usepackage{amsmath,color} \begin{align*} (a+b)^2 &= a^2 \color{blue}{+2ab}\color{black}{+ b^2} \\ (a-b)^2 &= a^2 \mathcolor{blue}{-2ab} + b^2 \\ \intertext{But don't do this:} (a-b)^2 &= a^2 \textcolor{blue}{-2ab} + b^2 \end{align*}</pre>	11-7-23
---	--	---------

As you see, using `\mathcolor` is much simpler than trying to alter the color with `\color`, and it is designed to work correctly even in far more complicated cases, e.g., when coloring just a large operator but not its limits¹ or coloring an opening or closing symbol made with `\left` or `\right`². With `\mathcolor` all this is easy, so it should be the preferred choice.

It preserves the nature of the math symbols inside of its argument and allows them to interact correctly with their uncolored neighbors, which explains why the spacing around the equal sign in the next example, or the minus in the previous one, remains correct. It also understands about subscripts and superscripts and puts the color changes in appropriate places in order to not affect their placement.

$\sum_{i=1}^n x_i = \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \right\}^{\alpha+\beta}$	<pre>\usepackage{color} \[\mathcolor{blue}{\sum}_{i=1}^n x_i \mathcolor{blue}{= \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \right\}^{\alpha+\beta}} \]</pre>	11-7-24
--	--	---------

The `\mathcolor` commands can be nested as exhibited in the next example where the integral and its upper limit (but not its lower) are in black, while the rest of the formula, except for the `\dotsb`, is in blue.

$a + b + \int_0^1 f(x) dx + \dots$	<pre>\usepackage{amsmath,color} \[\mathcolor{blue}{a + b + \mathcolor{black}{\int^1_0 f(x)\,dx + }} \dotsb \]</pre>	11-7-25
------------------------------------	--	---------

What `\mathcolor` cannot do for you is to color across boundaries of \LaTeX 's or `amsmath`'s display environments; i.e., you cannot place an `&` or a `\\` inside the argument of `\mathcolor`. Instead, you have to color each part of such display environments separately — unless you want to color the whole formula, in which case you can place it inside `\textcolor`.

11.8 Symbols in formulas

The tables at the end of this section advertise the large range of mathematical symbols provided by the \mathcal{AMS} font packages, including the command to use for each symbol. They also include the supplementary symbols from the St. Mary Road Font, which

¹This needs four `\color` commands and extra braces in the sub and superscripts — try it out.

²This is simply not possible with `\color` unless you color both — again a good exercise to try.

was designed by Alan Jeffrey and Jeremy Gibbons. This font extends the Computer Modern and \mathcal{AMS} symbol font collections; the corresponding `stmaryrd` package should normally be loaded in addition to `amssymb`, but always after it. It provides extra symbols for fields such as functional programming, process algebra, domain theory, linear logic, and many more. For a wealth of information about an even wider variety of symbols, see the *Comprehensive L^AT_EX Symbol List* by Scott Pakin [161].

The tables indicate which extra packages need to be loaded to use each symbol command. They are organized as follows: symbols with command names in black are available in standard L^AT_EX without loading further packages; symbols in blue require loading either `amsmath`, `amssymb`, or `stmaryrd`, as explained in the table notes. If necessary, further classification is given by markings: *(StM)* signals a symbol from `stmaryrd` when the table also contains symbols from other packages; *(kernel)* identifies symbols that are available in standard L^AT_EX but only by combining two or more glyphs, whereas a single glyph exists in the indicated package; and *(var)* marks “Alphabetic characters/symbols” (of type `\mathalpha`; see Table 9.20 on page 751) that change appearance when used within the scope of a math alphabet identifier (see Section 9.4).

11.8.1 Mathematical symbol classes

The symbols are classified primarily by their “mathematical class”, occasionally called their “math symbol type”. This classification is related to their “meaning” in standard technical usage, but its importance for mathematical typography is that it influences the layout of a formula. For example, T_EX’s mathematical formatter adjusts the horizontal space on either side of each symbol according to its mathematical class. There are also some finer distinctions made, for example, between accents and simple symbols and in breaking up the enormous list of Relation symbols into several tables.

The setup for mathematics puts each symbol into one of these classes: Ordinary (Ord), Operator (Op), Binary (Bin), Relation (Rel), Opening (Open), Closing (Close), or Punctuation (Punct). This classification can be explicitly changed by using the commands `\mathord`, `\mathop`, `\mathbin`, `\mathrel`, `\mathopen`, `\mathclose`, and `\mathpunct`, thereby altering the surrounding spacing. In the next example, `\#` and `\top` (both Ord by default) are changed into a Rel and an Op:

11-8-1

$$a \# \top_x^\alpha x_b^\alpha$$

$$a \# \top_x^\alpha x_b^\alpha$$

```
\usepackage[fleqn]{amsmath}
\[ a \# \top_x^\alpha x_b^\alpha \]
\[ a \mathrel{\#} \mathop{\top}_x^\alpha x_b^\alpha \]
```

A symbol can be declared to belong to one of the above classes using the mechanism described in Section 9.8.5. In addition, certain subformulas — most importantly fractions, and those produced by `\left` and `\right` — form a class called Inner; it is explicitly available through the `\mathinner` command.

In T_EX, spacing within formulas is done simply by identifying the class of each object in a formula and then adding space between each pair of adjacent objects as

		<i>Right Object</i>							
		Ord	Op	Bin	Rel	Open	Close	Punct	Inner
<i>Left Object</i>	Ord	0	1	(2)	(3)	0	0	0	(1)
	Op	1	1	*	(3)	0	0	0	(1)
	Bin	(2)	(2)	*	*	(2)	*	*	(2)
	Rel	(3)	(3)	*	0	(3)	0	0	(3)
	Open	0	0	*	0	0	0	0	0
	Close	0	1	(2)	(3)	0	0	0	(1)
	Punct	(1)	(1)	*	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)
	Inner	(1)	1	(2)	(3)	(1)	0	(1)	(1)

0 = no space, 1 = \thinmuskip, 2 = \medmuskip, 3 = \thickmuskip, * = impossible
Entries in (blue) are not added when in the mathematical “script styles” (see also Sections 11.7.1 and 11.7.7).

Table 11.9: Space between symbols

defined in Table 11.9; this table is unfortunately hardwired into TeX’s mathematical typesetting routines and so cannot be changed by macro packages.¹ In this table 0, 1, 2, and 3 stand for no space, a thin space (\,), a medium space (\:), and a thick space (\;), respectively. The exact amounts of space used are listed in Section 11.7.7 on page 204.

A Binary symbol is turned into an Ordinary symbol whenever it is not preceded and followed by symbols of a nature compatible with a binary operation; for this reason, some entries in the table are marked with a star to indicate that they are not possible. For example, \$+x\$ gives $+x$ (a “unary plus”) and not $+x$; the latter can be produced by $\${}\!+x\$$.

Finally, an entry in (blue) in Table 11.9 indicates that the corresponding space is not inserted when the style is script or scriptscript.

As an example of applying these rules, consider the following formula (the default values are deliberately changed to show the added spaces more clearly):

$$a - b = -\max\{x, y\} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{\textcolor{blue}{\thinmuskip=10mu \medmuskip=17mu \thickmuskip=30mu}} \\ \text{\textcolor{blue}{\left[a - b = -\max \left\{ x, y \right\} \right]}} \end{array} \quad \boxed{11-8-2}$$


TeX identifies the objects as Ord, Bin, Ord, Rel, and so on, and then inserts spaces as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} a & - & b & = & - & \max & \{ & x & , & y & \} \\ \text{Ord} \backslash & & \text{Bin} \backslash & & \text{Ord} \backslash & & \text{Rel} \backslash & & \text{Ord} \backslash & & \text{Op} & \text{Open} & \text{Ord} & \text{Punct} & \backslash & \text{Ord} & \text{Close} \end{array}$$

The minus in front of \max is turned into an Ordinary because a Binary cannot follow a Relation.

¹Although a few of the entries in the table are questionable, on the whole it gives pleasing results.

Table 11.9 reveals a difference¹ between a “\left...\right” construction, in which the entire subformula delimited by the construction becomes a single object of class Inner (see Section 11.5.6 on page 191) and commands like \Bigl and \Bigr that produce individual symbols of the classes Opening and Closing, respectively. Although they may result in typesetting delimiters of equal vertical size, spacing differences can arise depending on adjacent objects in the formula. For example, Ordinary followed by Opening gets no space, whereas Ordinary followed by Inner is separated by a thin space. In the next example we again use larger spaces to highlight these differences:

 Possible spacing issues with \left and \right

11-8-3

$a\left(\sum x\right) \neq a\left(\sum x\right)$ $\sin(x^2), x \neq \sin(x^2), x$	<pre> \thinmuskip=10mu \medmuskip=15mu \thickmuskip=20mu \[a \Bigl(\sum x \Bigr) \neq a \left(\sum x \right) \] \[\sin(x^2), x \neq \sin\left(x^2\right), x \]</pre>
---	--

The spaces inside the subformula within a “\left...\right” construction are as expected, beginning with an Opening symbol and ending with a Closing symbol. However, especially with the $\sin(x^2)$ example the extra spaces are not correct, and to avoid this problem, you can use the commands \mleft and \mright from the mleftright package (written by Heiko Oberdiek) in their place. Here we repeat the previous examples using these commands:

11-8-4

$a\left(\sum x\right) = a\left(\sum x\right)$ $\sin(x^2), x \simeq \sin(x^2), x$	<pre> \usepackage{mleftright} \thinmuskip=10mu \medmuskip=15mu \thickmuskip=20mu \[a \Bigl(\sum x \Bigr) = a \mleft(\sum x \mright) \] \[\sin(x^2), x \simeq \sin\mleft(x^2\mright), x \]</pre>
--	---

In fact, you can even change the meanings of \left and \right to locally (or globally) act as Opening and Closing symbols by executing \mleftright and \mleftrightrestore to get the original T_EX definitions back.

In summary, it is not enough to look up a symbol in the tables that follow; rather, it is also advisable to check that the symbol has the desired mathematical class to ensure that it is properly spaced when used. Example 11-8-5 on page 214 shows how to define new symbols that differ only in their mathematical class from existing symbols.

11.8.2 Letters, numerals, and other Ordinary symbols

The unaccented ASCII Latin letters and arabic numeral digits (see Table 11.10) are referred to as “Alphabetic symbols”. The font used for them can vary: in mathematical formulas, the default font for Latin letters is italic, whereas for the arabic digits it is upright/roman. Alphabetical symbols are all of class Ordinary.

Unlike the Latin letters, the mathematical Greek letters are no longer closely related to the glyphs used for typesetting normal Greek text. Due to an interesting 18th

¹Another important distinction is that the material within a “\left...\right” construction is processed separately as a subformula (see Section 11.7.2 on page 197).

<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>
<i>a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z</i>
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

Table 11.10: Latin letters and arabic numerals

Δ	<code>\Delta^(var)</code>	Γ	<code>\Gamma^(var)</code>	Λ	<code>\Lambda^(var)</code>	Ω	<code>\Omega^(var)</code>	Φ	<code>\Phi^(var)</code>
Π	<code>\Pi^(var)</code>	Ψ	<code>\Psi^(var)</code>	Σ	<code>\Sigma^(var)</code>	Θ	<code>\Theta^(var)</code>	Υ	<code>\Upsilon^(var)</code>
Ξ	<code>\Xi^(var)</code>	α	<code>\alpha</code>	β	<code>\beta</code>	χ	<code>\chi</code>	δ	<code>\delta</code>
\digamma	<code>\digamma</code>	ϵ	<code>\epsilon</code>	η	<code>\eta</code>	γ	<code>\gamma</code>	ι	<code>\iota</code>
κ	<code>\kappa</code>	λ	<code>\lambda</code>	μ	<code>\mu</code>	ν	<code>\nu</code>	ω	<code>\omega</code>
ϕ	<code>\phi</code>	π	<code>\pi</code>	ψ	<code>\psi</code>	ρ	<code>\rho</code>	σ	<code>\sigma</code>
τ	<code>\tau</code>	θ	<code>\theta</code>	υ	<code>\upsilon</code>	ε	<code>\varepsilon</code>	\varkappa	<code>\varkappa</code>
φ	<code>\varphi</code>	ϖ	<code>\varpi</code>	ϱ	<code>\varrho</code>	ς	<code>\varsigma</code>	ϑ	<code>\vartheta</code>
ξ	<code>\xi</code>	ζ	<code>\zeta</code>						

Symbols in *blue* require the `amssymb` package. *(var)* indicates a variable Alphabetic symbol.

Table 11.11: Symbols of class `\mathord` (Greek)

century happenstance, in the major European tradition of mathematical typography the default font for lowercase Greek letters in mathematical formulas is italic, whereas for uppercase Greek letters it is upright/roman. (In other fields, such as physics and chemistry, the typographical traditions are slightly different.)

The capital Greek letters in the first rows of Table 11.11 are also Alphabetic symbols whose font varies, with the default being upright/roman. Those capital Greek letters not present in this table are the letters that have the same appearance as some Latin letter (e.g., *A* and *Alpha*, *B* and *Beta*, *K* and *Kappa*, *O* and *Omicron*). Similarly, the list of lowercase Greek letters contains no omicron because it would be identical in appearance to the Latin *o*. Thus, in practice, the Greek letters that have Latin look-alikes are not used in mathematical formulas.

Table 11.12 on the facing page lists other letter-shaped symbols of class Ordinary. The first four are Hebrew letters. Table 11.13 lists the remaining symbols in the Ordinary class, including some common punctuation. These behave like letters and digits, so they never get any extra space around them.

A common mistake is to use the symbols from Table 11.13 directly as Binary operator or Relation symbols, without using a properly defined math symbol command for that type. Thus, if you use commands such as `\#`, `\square`, or `\&`, check carefully that you get the correct inter-symbol spaces or, even better, define your own symbol command, which can be done with `\DeclareMathSymbol`, which is explained in Section 9.8.5 on page 750.

\aleph	<code>\aleph</code>	\beth	<code>\beth</code>	\daleth	<code>\daleth</code>	\gimel	<code>\gimel</code>
\Im	<code>\Im</code>	\Re	<code>\Re</code>	\Bbbk	<code>\Bbbk</code>	\circledR	<code>\circledR</code>
\circledS	<code>\circledS</code>	\complement	<code>\complement</code>	ℓ	<code>\ell</code>	\eth	<code>\eth</code>
\Finv	<code>\Finv</code>	\Game	<code>\Game</code>	\hbar	<code>\hbar^(kernel)</code>	\hslash	<code>\hslash</code>
\imath	<code>\imath</code>	\jmath	<code>\jmath</code>	\mathdollar	<code>\mathdollar</code>	\mathparagraph	<code>\mathparagraph</code>
\mathsection	<code>\mathsection</code>	\mathsterling	<code>\mathsterling</code>	\mho	<code>\mho</code>	∂	<code>\partial</code>
\wp	<code>\wp</code>	\yen	<code>\yen</code>				

Symbols in *blue* require the `amssymb` package.

Synonyms: \mathdollar , $\$$ \mathparagraph , \P \mathsection , \S \mathsterling , \pounds

The synonyms can be used in math and in ordinary text.

Table 11.12: Symbols of class `\mathord` (letter-shaped)

!	!	.	.	/	/
?	?	@	@	|	| or <code>\vert</code>
#	<code>\#</code>	%	<code>\%</code>	&	<code>\&</code>
_	<code>\_</code>	||	<code>\|</code> or <code>\Vert</code>	<	<code>\angle^(kernel)</code>
	<code>\Arrowvert</code>		<code>\arrowvert</code>	\	<code>\backprime</code>
\	<code>\backslash</code>	★	<code>\bigstar</code>	◆	<code>\blacklozenge</code>
■	<code>\blacksquare</code>	▲	<code>\blacktriangle</code>	▼	<code>\blacktriangledown</code>
⊥	<code>\bot</code>	,	<code>\bracevert</code>	✓	<code>\checkmark</code>
♣	<code>\clubsuit</code>	©	<code>\copyright</code>	\	<code>\diagdown</code>
/	<code>\diagup</code>	◇	<code>\diamondsuit</code>	∅	<code>\emptyset</code>
∃	<code>\exists</code>	♭	<code>\flat</code>	∀	<code>\forall</code>
♥	<code>\heartsuit</code>	∞	<code>\infty</code>	⚡	<code>\lightning^(StM)</code>
¬	<code>\lnot</code> or <code>\neg</code>	◇	<code>\lozenge</code>	✱	<code>\maltese</code>
∠	<code>\measuredangle</code>	∇	<code>\nabla</code>	‡	<code>\natural</code>
∄	<code>\nexists</code>	/	<code>\prime</code>	‡	<code>\sharp</code>
♠	<code>\spadesuit</code>	∠	<code>\sphericalangle</code>	□	<code>\square</code>
√	<code>\surd</code>	⊤	<code>\top</code>	△	<code>\triangle</code>
▽	<code>\triangledown</code>	©	<code>\varcopyright^(StM)</code>	∅	<code>\varnothing</code>

Symbols in *blue* require either the `amssymb` package or, if flagged with *(StM)*, the `stmaryd` package.

Note that the exclamation mark, period, and question mark are not treated as punctuation in formulas.

Table 11.13: Symbols of class `\mathord` (miscellaneous)

To avoid this problem, we make use of the `\DeclareMathSymbol` declaration in Example 11-8-5 on the next page. Values for its arguments are most easily found by looking at the definitions in the file `amssymb.sty` or `fontmath.ltx` (for the core

\acute{x}	<code>\acute{x}</code>	\bar{x}	<code>\bar{x}</code>	\breve{x}	<code>\breve{x}</code>	\check{x}	<code>\check{x}</code>
\ddot{x}	<code>\ddot{x}</code>	\ddot{x}	<code>\ddot{x}</code>	\ddot{x}	<code>\ddot{x}</code>	\dot{x}	<code>\dot{x}</code>
\grave{x}	<code>\grave{x}</code>	\hat{x}	<code>\hat{x}</code>	\mathring{x}	<code>\mathring{x}</code>	\tilde{x}	<code>\tilde{x}</code>
\vec{x}	<code>\vec{x}</code>	\widehat{xyz}	<code>\widehat{xyz}</code>	\widetilde{xyz}	<code>\widetilde{xyz}</code>		

Accents in blue require the `amsmath` or accents package.

The last two accents are available in a range of widths, the largest suitable one being automatically used.

Table 11.14: Mathematical accents, giving subformulas of class `\mathord`

symbols). For example, we looked up `\neg` and `\square`, replaced the `\mathord` in each case, and finally gave the resulting symbol a new name. To better show the difference, we also enlarged the default spacing (not advisable for real documents).

Symbols of wrong class (ord):	$a \neg b$	$x \square y + z$
Manual correction:	$a \neg b$	$x \square y + z$
Symbols of correct class:	$a \neg b$	$x \square y + z$

```

\usepackage[fleqn]{amsmath} \usepackage{amssymb}
\DeclareMathSymbol\neg {\mathbin}{symbols}{"3A}
\DeclareMathSymbol\square{\mathrel}{AMSa}{"03}
\thickmuskip=10mu plus 5mu

\noindent Symbols of wrong class (ord):
\[ a \neg b \quad \quad \quad x \square y + z \]
Manual correction:
\[ a \mathbin{\neg} b \quad \quad \quad x \mathrel{\square} y + z \]
Symbols of correct class:
\[ a \neg b \quad \quad \quad b \quad \quad \quad x \square y + z \]
```

11-8-5

11.8.3 Mathematical accents

The basic accent commands available for use in formulas are listed in Table 11.14. Most of them are already defined in standard \LaTeX . See Section 11.4.12 for ways to define additional accent commands and ways to make compound accents and Section 11.5.2 for information about extensible accents. Adding a mathematical accent to a symbol always produces a symbol of class Ordinary. Thus, without additional help from `\mathbin` or `\mathrel`, one cannot use the accents to produce new Binary or Relation symbols.

$a = b$ but $a \approx b$ which is not $a \approx b$	<pre> \usepackage{amsmath} \[a = b \text{ but } a \tilde{=} b \text{ which is not } a \mathrel{\tilde{=}} b \]</pre>
--	---

11-8-6

Other ways to place symbols over Relation symbols are shown in Section 11.4.14.

11.8.4 Binary operator symbols

There are more than 100 symbols of class Binary operator from which to choose. Most of these Binary symbols are shown in Table 11.15 on the next page. Some of

*	* or \ast	+	+	−	−
II	\amalg	Φ	\baro ^(StM)	⌋	\barwedge
∥	\bbslash ^(StM)	▽	\bigtriangledown	△	\bigtriangleup
⌚	\Cap or \doublecap	∩	\cap	⊔	\Cup or \doublecup
∪	\cup	∨	\curlyvee	⋈	\curlywedge
†	\dag or \dagger	‡	\ddag or \ddagger	◇	\diamond
÷	\div	*	\divideontimes	+	\dotplus
∥	\fatbslash ^(StM)	;	\fatsemi ^(StM)	//	\fatslash ^(StM)
>	\gtrdot	⌈	\intercal	|||	\interleave^(StM)
∧	\land or \wedge	⌋	\lbag ^(StM)	◁	\leftslice ^(StM)
↗	\leftthreetimes	≤	\lessdot	∨	\lor or \vee
×	\ltimes	⋈	\merge ^(StM)	⊖	\minuso ^(StM)
±	\moo ^(StM)	⊞	\mp	⊕	\nplus ^(StM)
±	\pm	∫	\rbag ^(StM)	▷	\rightslice ^(StM)
↘	\rightthreetimes	×	\rtimes	\	\setminus
−	\smallsetminus	□	\sqcap	⊔	\sqcup
//	\sslash ^(StM)	*	\star	||	\talloblong^(StM)
×	\times	◁	\triangleleft	▷	\triangleright
⊕	\uplus	▽	\varbigtriangledown ^(StM)	△	\varbigtriangleup ^(StM)
∨	\varcurlyvee ^(StM)	×	\vartimes ^(StM)	∨	\veebar
∧	\wedge	⌋	\wr	Y	\Ydown ^(StM)
←	\Yleft ^(StM)	→	\Yright ^(StM)	Y	\Yup ^(StM)

Symbols in *blue* require either the `amssymb` package or, if flagged with ^(StM), the `stmaryrd` package.

The left and right triangles are also available as Relation symbols.

The `stmaryrd` package confusingly changes the Binary symbols `\bigtriangleup` and `\bigtriangledown` into Operators, leaving only the synonyms `\varbigtriangleup` and `\varbigtriangledown` for the Binary operator forms.

Table 11.15: Symbols of class `\mathbin` (miscellaneous)

⊠	\boxast ^(StM)	▣	\boxbar ^(StM)	⊞	\boxbox ^(StM)	⊠	\boxbslash ^(StM)
⊞	\boxcircle ^(StM)	⊞	\boxdot	□	\boxempty ^(StM)	⊞	\boxminus
⊞	\boxplus	⊞	\boxslash ^(StM)	⊞	\boxtimes	□	\oblong ^(StM)

All symbols require either the `amssymb` package or, if flagged with ^(StM), the `stmaryrd` package.

Table 11.16: Symbols of class `\mathbin` (boxes)

them are also available, under different names, as Relation symbols. The `amssymb` package offers a few box symbols for use as Binary operators; many more are added by `stmaryrd`. These are shown in Table 11.16.

○ <code>\bigcirc</code>	⊗ <code>\oast^(StM)</code> or <code>\circledast^(StM)</code>	⊖ <code>\obar^(StM)</code>
○ <code>\varbigcirc^(StM)</code>	⊗ <code>\varoast^(StM)</code>	⊖ <code>\varobar^(StM)</code>
⊗ <code>\obslash^(StM)</code>	○ <code>\ocircle^(StM)</code> or <code>\circledcirc^(StM)</code>	⊙ <code>\odot</code>
⊗ <code>\varobslash^(StM)</code>	⊙ <code>\varocircle^(StM)</code>	⊙ <code>\varodot^(StM)</code>
⊗ <code>\ogreaterthan^(StM)</code>	⊗ <code>\olessthan^(StM)</code>	⊖ <code>\ominus</code>
⊗ <code>\varogreaterthan^(StM)</code>	⊗ <code>\varolessthan^(StM)</code>	⊖ <code>\varominus^(StM)</code>
⊕ <code>\oplus</code>	⊗ <code>\oslash</code>	⊗ <code>\otimes</code>
⊕ <code>\varoplus^(StM)</code>	⊗ <code>\varoslash^(StM)</code>	⊗ <code>\varotimes^(StM)</code>
⊖ <code>\ovee^(StM)</code>	⊖ <code>\owedge^(StM)</code>	⊖ <code>\varovee^(StM)</code>
⊖ <code>\varowedge^(StM)</code>	• <code>\bullet</code>	• <code>\cdot</code>
• <code>\centerdot</code>	○ <code>\circ</code>	⊖ <code>\circleddash</code>

Symbols in blue require either the `amssymb` package or, if flagged with ^(StM), the `stmaryrd` package.

Option `heavycircles` of the `stmaryrd` package affects all commands starting with `\var` and their normal variants.

Table 11.17: Symbols of class `\mathbin` (circles)

The `stmaryrd` package can be loaded with the option `heavycircles`. It causes each circle symbol command in Table 11.17 that starts with `\var` to swap its definition with the corresponding command without the “`var`”; for example, the symbol `\varodot` becomes `\odot`, and vice versa.

11.8.5 Relation symbols

The class of binary Relation symbols forms a collection even larger than that of the Binary operators. The lists start with symbols for equality and order (Table 11.18 on the next page). You can put a slash through any Relation symbol by preceding it with the `\not` command; this negated symbol represents the complement (or negation) of the relation.

$u \not\leq v$ or $a \notin A$ `$ u \not< v$` or `$a \not\in \mathbf{A}$`

11-8-7

Especially with larger symbols, this generic method of negating a Relation symbol does not always give good results because the slash will always be of the same size, position, and slope. Therefore, some specially designed “negated symbols” are also available (see Table 11.19 on the facing page). If a choice is available, the designed glyphs are usually preferable. To see why, compare the symbols in this example.

$\not\leq$ $\not\geq$ $\not\sim$ `\usepackage{amssymb}`
 $\not\leq$ $\not\geq$ $\not\sim$ `$ \not\leq \ \ \not\succeq \ \ \not\sim \ $ \par`
 $\not\leq$ $\not\geq$ $\not\sim$ `$ \nleq \ \ \nsucceq \ \ \nsim \ $`

11-8-8

\angle	$<$	$=$	$=$	$>$	$>$	\approx	<code>\approx</code>
\approx	<code>\approxeq</code>	\asymp	<code>\asymp</code>	\backsimeq	<code>\backsimeq</code>	\backsimeq	<code>\backsimeq</code>
\bumpeq	<code>\bumpeq</code>	\bumpeq	<code>\bumpeq</code>	\circeq	<code>\circeq</code>	\cong	<code>\cong</code>
\curlyeqprec	<code>\curlyeqprec</code>	\curlyeqsucc	<code>\curlyeqsucc</code>	\doteq or \doteqdot	<code>\doteq</code> or <code>\doteqdot</code>	\doteq	<code>\doteq</code>
\eqcirc	<code>\eqcirc</code>	\eqsim	<code>\eqsim</code>	\eqslantgtr	<code>\eqslantgtr</code>	\eqslantless	<code>\eqslantless</code>
\equiv	<code>\equiv</code>	\fallingdotseq	<code>\fallingdotseq</code>	\ge or \geq	<code>\ge</code> or <code>\geq</code>	\geq	<code>\geq</code>
\geqslant	<code>\geqslant</code>	\gg	<code>\gg</code>	\ggg or \gggtr	<code>\ggg</code> or <code>\gggtr</code>	\gtrapprox	<code>\gtrapprox</code>
\gtreqless	<code>\gtreqless</code>	\gtreqqless	<code>\gtreqqless</code>	\gtrless	<code>\gtrless</code>	\gtrsim	<code>\gtrsim</code>
\le or \leq	<code>\le</code> or <code>\leq</code>	\leftrightharpoonup ^(StM)	<code>\leftrightharpoonup</code> ^(StM)	\leqq	<code>\leqq</code>	\leqslant	<code>\leqslant</code>
\lessapprox	<code>\lessapprox</code>	\lesseqgtr	<code>\lesseqgtr</code>	\lesseqqgtr	<code>\lesseqqgtr</code>	\lessgtr	<code>\lessgtr</code>
\lessssim	<code>\lessssim</code>	\ll	<code>\ll</code>	\lll or \lllless	<code>\lll</code> or <code>\lllless</code>	\prec	<code>\prec</code>
\precapprox	<code>\precapprox</code>	\preccurlyeq	<code>\preccurlyeq</code>	\preceq	<code>\preceq</code>	\precsim	<code>\precsim</code>
\risingdotseq	<code>\risingdotseq</code>	\sim	<code>\sim</code>	\simeq	<code>\simeq</code>	\succ	<code>\succ</code>
\succapprox	<code>\succapprox</code>	\succcurlyeq	<code>\succcurlyeq</code>	\succeq	<code>\succeq</code>	\succsim	<code>\succsim</code>
\thickapprox	<code>\thickapprox</code>	\thicksim	<code>\thicksim</code>	\triangleq	<code>\triangleq</code>		

Symbols in *blue* require either the `amssymb` package or, if flagged with ^(StM), the `stmaryrd` package.

Table 11.18: Symbols of class `\mathrel` (equality and order)

\napprox	<code>\napprox</code>	\ngeq	<code>\ngeq</code>	\gneqq	<code>\gneqq</code>	\ngsim	<code>\ngsim</code>	\gvertneqq	<code>\gvertneqq</code>
\lnapprox	<code>\lnapprox</code>	\lneq	<code>\lneq</code>	\lneqq	<code>\lneqq</code>	\lnsim	<code>\lnsim</code>	\lvertneqq	<code>\lvertneqq</code>
\ncong	<code>\ncong</code>	\ne or \neq	<code>\ne</code> or <code>\neq</code>	\ngeq	<code>\ngeq</code>	\ngeqq	<code>\ngeqq</code>	\ngeqslant	<code>\ngeqslant</code>
\ngtr	<code>\ngtr</code>	\nleq	<code>\nleq</code>	\nleqq	<code>\nleqq</code>	\nleqslant	<code>\nleqslant</code>	\nless	<code>\nless</code>
\nprec	<code>\nprec</code>	\npreceq	<code>\npreceq</code>	\nsim	<code>\nsim</code>	\nsucc	<code>\nsucc</code>	\nsucceq	<code>\nsucceq</code>
\precnapprox	<code>\precnapprox</code>	\precneqq	<code>\precneqq</code>	\precnsim	<code>\precnsim</code>	\succnapprox	<code>\succnapprox</code>	\succneqq	<code>\succneqq</code>
\succnsim	<code>\succnsim</code>								

Symbols in *blue* require either the `amssymb` package.

Table 11.19: Symbols of class `\mathrel` (equality and order — negated)

In problematic cases for which no predefined symbol exists you can try the `\centernot` command defined in a package with the same name (written by Heiko Oberdiek). In contrast to `\not`, it always centers the negation slash based on the

\blacktriangleleft	<code>\blacktriangleleft</code>	\blacktriangleright	<code>\blacktriangleright</code>	\in	<code>\in</code>
\in	<code>\in</code>	\ni or \owns	<code>\ni</code> or <code>\owns</code>	\niplus	<code>\niplus</code>
\ntrianglelefteq	<code>\ntrianglelefteq</code>	\ntrianglerighteq	<code>\ntrianglerighteq</code>	\sqsubset	<code>\sqsubset</code>
\sqsubseteq	<code>\sqsubseteq</code>	\sqsupset	<code>\sqsupset</code>	\sqsupseteq	<code>\sqsupseteq</code>
\Subset	<code>\Subset</code>	\subset	<code>\subset</code>	\subseteq	<code>\subseteq</code>
\subseteq	<code>\subseteq</code>	\subsetplus	<code>\subsetplus</code>	\subseteqplus	<code>\subseteqplus</code>
\supset	<code>\supset</code>	\supseteq	<code>\supseteq</code>	\supseteq	<code>\supseteq</code>
\supseteq	<code>\supseteq</code>	\supsetplus	<code>\supsetplus</code>	\supsetplus	<code>\supsetplus</code>
\trianglelefteq	<code>\trianglelefteq</code>	\trianglelefteqslant	<code>\trianglelefteqslant</code>	\trianglerighteq	<code>\trianglerighteq</code>
\trianglerighteqslant	<code>\trianglerighteqslant</code>	\vartriangle	<code>\vartriangle</code>	\vartriangleleft	<code>\vartriangleleft</code>
\vartriangleright	<code>\vartriangleright</code>				

Symbols in *blue* require either the `amssymb` package or, if flagged with ^(StM), the `stmaryrd` package.

Table 11.20: Symbols of class `\mathrel` (sets and inclusion)

\notin	<code>\notin</code>	\nsubseteq	<code>\nsubseteq</code>	\nsubseteqq	<code>\nsubseteqq</code>
\nsupseteq	<code>\nsupseteq</code>	\nsupseteqq	<code>\nsupseteqq</code>	\ntriangleleft	<code>\ntriangleleft</code>
\ntrianglelefteq	<code>\ntrianglelefteq</code>	\ntriangleright	<code>\ntriangleright</code>	\ntrianglerighteq	<code>\ntrianglerighteq</code>
\subsetneq	<code>\subsetneq</code>	\subsetneqq	<code>\subsetneqq</code>	\supsetneq	<code>\supsetneq</code>
\supsetneqq	<code>\supsetneqq</code>	\varsubsetneq	<code>\varsubsetneq</code>	\varsubsetneqq	<code>\varsubsetneqq</code>
\varsupsetneq	<code>\varsupsetneq</code>	\varsupsetneqq	<code>\varsupsetneqq</code>		

Symbols in *blue* require the `amssymb` package.

Table 11.21: Symbols of class `\mathrel` (sets and inclusion — negated)

width of the next symbol. You can compare the results of the different algorithms in the following example:

\nparallel	$\not\sim$	\nrightarrow	<code>\usepackage{centernot}</code>
\$ \not\parallel \$	\$ \not\sim \$	\$ \nrightarrow \$	\$ \par
\$ \centernot\parallel \$	\$ \centernot\sim \$	\$ \centernot\rightarrow \$	\$

11-8-9

Next come the Relation symbols for sets and inclusions, and their negations (see Tables 11.20 and 11.21). They are followed by Relation symbols that are arrow-shaped (see Tables 11.22 and 11.23). Some extensible arrow constructions that produce compound Relation symbols are described in Section 11.5.2 on page 182.

 <code>\circlearrowleft</code>	 <code>\circlearrowright</code>	 <code>\curlyveedownarrow^(StM)</code>
 <code>\curlyveeuparrow^(StM)</code>	 <code>\curlywedgedownarrow^(StM)</code>	 <code>\curlywedgeuparrow^(StM)</code>
 <code>\curvearrowleft</code>	 <code>\curvearrowright</code>	\dashrightarrow <code>\dasharrow</code>
\dashleftarrow <code>\dashleftarrow</code>	\dashrightarrow <code>\dashrightarrow</code>	\Downarrow <code>\Downarrow</code>
\downarrow <code>\downarrow</code>	\Downarrow <code>\downdownarrows</code>	\downharpoonright <code>\downharpoonright</code>
\hookleftarrow <code>\gets</code>	\hookleftarrow <code>\hookleftarrow</code>	\hookrightarrow <code>\hookrightarrow</code>
\Leftarrow <code>\Leftarrow</code>	\hookleftarrow <code>\leftarrow</code> or <code>\gets</code>	\leftarrowtail <code>\leftarrowtail</code>
 <code>\leftarrowtriangle^(StM)</code>	 <code>\leftrightarrowtriangle^(StM)</code>	\leftharpoonup <code>\leftharpoonup</code>
\leftharpoonup <code>\leftharpoonup</code>	\leftrightsquigarrow <code>\leftrightsquigarrow</code>	\Leftrightarrow <code>\Leftrightarrow</code>
\leftrightarrow <code>\leftrightarrow</code>	\Leftrightarrow <code>\Leftrightarrow</code>	\leftrightharpoons <code>\leftrightharpoons</code>
\leftrightsquigarrow <code>\leftrightsquigarrow</code>	\Leftrightarrow <code>\Leftrightarrow</code>	\Longleftarrow <code>\Longleftarrow</code>
\longleftarrow <code>\longleftarrow</code>	\Longleftrightarrow <code>\Longleftrightarrow</code>	\longleftrightarrow <code>\longleftrightarrow</code>
\Longleftarrow <code>\Longleftarrow</code>	\Longleftarrow <code>\Longleftarrow</code>	\Longrightarrow <code>\Longrightarrow</code>
\longmapsto <code>\longmapsto</code>	\Rightarrow <code>\Rightarrow</code>	\rightarrow <code>\rightarrow</code>
\looparrowleft <code>\looparrowleft</code>	\looparrowright <code>\looparrowright</code>	\lsh <code>\lsh</code>
\mapsfrom <code>\mapsfrom^(StM)</code>	\mapsto <code>\mapsto</code>	\mapsto <code>\mapsto^(StM)</code>
\mapsto <code>\mapsto</code>	\multimap <code>\multimap</code>	\nearrow <code>\nearrow</code>
\nearrow <code>\nearrow^(StM)</code>	\nwarrow <code>\nwarrow^(StM)</code>	\nwarrow <code>\nwarrow</code>
\restriction <code>\restriction</code>	\Rightarrow <code>\Rightarrow</code>	\rightarrow <code>\rightarrow</code> or <code>\to</code>
\rightarrowtail <code>\rightarrowtail</code>	\rightarrowtail <code>\rightarrowtail^(StM)</code>	\rightharpoonup <code>\rightharpoonup</code>
\rightharpoonup <code>\rightharpoonup</code>	\rightharpoonup <code>\rightharpoonup</code>	\rightharpoonup <code>\rightharpoonup</code>
\Rightarrow <code>\Rightarrow</code>	\rightsquigarrow <code>\rightsquigarrow</code>	\Rightarrow <code>\Rightarrow</code>
\Rsh <code>\Rsh</code>	\searrow <code>\searrow</code>	\searrow <code>\searrow^(StM)</code>
\shortleftarrow <code>\shortleftarrow^(StM)</code>	\rightarrow <code>\rightarrow^(StM)</code>	\uparrow <code>\uparrow^(StM)</code>
\searrow <code>\searrow^(StM)</code>	\swarrow <code>\swarrow^(StM)</code>	\swarrow <code>\swarrow</code>
\twoheadleftarrow <code>\twoheadleftarrow</code>	\twoheadrightarrow <code>\twoheadrightarrow</code>	\Uparrow <code>\Uparrow</code>
\uparrow <code>\uparrow</code>	\Updownarrow <code>\Updownarrow</code>	\updownarrow <code>\updownarrow</code>
\upharpoonleft <code>\upharpoonleft</code>	\upharpoonright <code>\upharpoonright</code>	\Uparrow <code>\Uparrow</code>

Symbols in *blue* require either the `amssymb` package or, if flagged with *(StM)*, the `stmaryrd` package.

Synonyms: \dashrightarrow `\dasharrow`, `\dashrightarrow` \iff `\iff`, `\Longleftrightarrow` (with additional spacing)

Table 11.22: Symbols of class `\mathrel` (arrows)

The standard arrow relational symbols are provided as part of the Computer Modern Math fonts by Donald Knuth, and further symbols are part of the American Mathematical Society math or St. Mary Road fonts — the arrowheads of the latter symbols all followed in the original design by Knuth. However, around 1992 Donald Knuth made a number of corrections to the Computer Modern fonts and as part of

 The standard arrowhead design in Computer Modern fonts

:	<code>\ratio</code>	::	<code>\coloncolon</code>	≈:	<code>\approxcolon</code>
≈::	<code>\approxcoloncolon</code>	:≈	<code>\colonapprox</code>	::≈	<code>\coloncolonapprox</code>
=:	<code>\equalscolon</code>	==:	<code>\equalscoloncolon</code>	:=	<code>\colonequals</code>
::=	<code>\coloncolonequals</code>	−:	<code>\minuscolon</code>	−::	<code>\minuscoloncolon</code>
:−	<code>\colonminus</code>	::−	<code>\coloncolonminus</code>	~:	<code>\simcolon</code>
~::	<code>\simcoloncolon</code>	:~	<code>\colonsim</code>	::~	<code>\coloncolonsim</code>

All symbols require the colonequals package.

Table 11.25: Symbols of class `\mathrel` (various colons)

:	:	ə	<code>\backepsilon</code>	∴	<code>\because</code>	∅	<code>\between</code>
⋈	<code>\bowtie</code>	⊣	<code>\dashv</code>	⤿	<code>\frown</code>	⋈	<code>\Join</code>
	<code>\mid</code>	⊨	<code>\models</code>	⋈	<code>\nmid</code>	⋈	<code>\nparallel</code>
⋈	<code>\nshortmid</code>	⋈	<code>\nshortparallel</code>	⋈	<code>\nVDash</code>	⋈	<code>\nVdash</code>
⋈	<code>\nvDash</code>	⋈	<code>\nvdash</code>		<code>\parallel</code>	⊥	<code>\perp</code>
⋈	<code>\pitchfork</code>	∝	<code>\propto</code>	⋈	<code>\shortmid</code>		<code>\shortparallel</code>
⋈	<code>\smallfrown</code>	⋈	<code>\smallsmile</code>	⋈	<code>\smile</code>	∴	<code>\therefore</code>
∝	<code>\varpropto</code>	⊨	<code>\Vdash</code>	⊨	<code>\vDash</code>	⊢	<code>\vdash</code>
⊨	<code>\Vvdash</code>						

Relation symbols in *blue* require the `amssymb` package.

\therefore is a Relation symbol, so its spacing may not be as expected in common uses.

Table 11.26: Symbols of class `\mathrel` (miscellaneous)

In addition to `\not`, used to negate general Relation symbols, other building blocks have been especially designed to negate or extend arrow-like symbols; these are collected in Table 11.24.

11-8-11 \longleftrightarrow \leftrightarrow `\usepackage{stmaryrd}`
`$\Longarrownot\longlefttrightarrow \qqquad \arrownot\hookleftarrow$`

Table 11.25 shows Relation symbols that involve one or two colons. They are provided if you load the package `colonequals` by Heiko Oberdiek. The symbols are constructed from other glyphs; e.g., `\colonequals` is made up from a colon and an equal sign with some negative space between the two and can therefore be used with different math font setups. To fine-tune the constructed symbols, the commands `\colonsep` and `\doublecolonsep` can be adjusted (with `\renewcommand`).

Finally, in Table 11.26 you will find a miscellaneous collection of Relation symbols provided by the kernel or `amssymb`.

$\int \int$ <code>\int</code>	$\oint \oint$ <code>\oint</code>	$\square \square$ <code>\bigbox^(StM)</code>
$\cap \cap$ <code>\bigcap</code>	$\cup \cup$ <code>\bigcup</code>	$\Upsilon \Upsilon$ <code>\bigcurlyvee^(StM)</code>
$\wedge \wedge$ <code>\bigcurlywedge^(StM)</code>	$\| \| \|$ <code>\biginterleave^(StM)</code>	$\oplus \oplus$ <code>\bignplus^(StM)</code>
$\odot \odot$ <code>\bigodot</code>	$\oplus \oplus$ <code>\bigoplus</code>	$\otimes \otimes$ <code>\bigotimes</code>
$\| \| \|$ <code>\bigparallel^(StM)</code>	$\sqcap \sqcap$ <code>\bigsqcap^(StM)</code>	$\sqcup \sqcup$ <code>\bigsqcup</code>
$\nabla \nabla$ <code>\bigtriangledown</code>	$\triangle \triangle$ <code>\bigtriangleup</code>	$\uplus \uplus$ <code>\biguplus</code>
$\vee \vee$ <code>\bigvee</code>	$\wedge \wedge$ <code>\bigwedge</code>	$\coprod \coprod$ <code>\coprod</code>
$\prod \prod$ <code>\prod</code>	$\int \int$ <code>\smallint</code>	$\sum \sum$ <code>\sum</code>

Operator symbols in *blue* require the `stmaryrd` package.

The `stmaryrd` package confusingly changes the Binary symbols `\bigtriangleup` and `\bigtriangledown` into Operators, but there are alternative commands for the Binary operator forms.

Note that `\smallint` does not change size.

Further integral operators are provided by the `esint` package; see Section 11.4.6 on page 169.

Table 11.27: Symbols of class `\mathop`

11.8.6 Operator symbols

The Operator symbols typically come in two sizes, for text and display uses; most of them are related to similar Binary operator symbols. Whether an Operator symbol takes limits in displays depends on a variety of factors (see Section 11.4.4). The available collection is shown in Table 11.27.

11.8.7 Punctuation

The symbols of class Punctuation appear in Table 11.28, together with some other punctuation-like symbols. Note that some of the typical punctuation characters (i.e., “ . ! ? ”) are not set up as mathematical punctuation but rather as symbols of class Ordinary. This can cause unexpected results for common uses of these symbols, especially in the cases of ! and ?. Some of the dots symbols listed here are of class Inner; Section 11.5.1 on page 180 provides information about using dots for mathematical ellipsis.

The `:` character produces a colon with class Relation — not a Punctuation symbol. As an alternative, standard \LaTeX offers the command `\colon` as the Punctuation

,	,	...	<code>\cdots</code> ^(inner)	...	<code>\hdots</code> ^(inner)	...	<code>\ldots</code> ^(inner)	...	<code>\mathellipsis</code> ^(inner)
;	;	:	<code>\colon</code>	⋯	<code>\ddots</code> ^(inner)	⋮	<code>\vdots</code> ^(ord)		

Punctuation symbols in *blue* require the `amsmath` package.
 The logical `amsmath` commands normally used to access `\cdots` and `\ldots` are described in Section 11.5.1.
 The `\colon` command is redefined in `amsmath`, making it unsuitable for use as a general punctuation character.
 Synonyms: ... `\hdots`, `\ldots` ... `\mathellipsis`, `\ldots`

Table 11.28: Symbols of class `\mathpunct`, `\mathinner`, `\mathord` (punctuation)

<code>[]</code>	<code>[]</code> or <code>\lbrack \rbrack</code>	<code>{ }</code>	<code>\{ \}</code> or <code>\lbrace \rbrace</code>	<code>()</code>	<code>()</code>
<code>< ></code>	<code>\langle \rangle</code>	<code>\lceil \rceil</code>	<code>\lceil \rceil</code>	<code>\lfloor \rfloor</code>	<code>\lfloor \rfloor</code>
<code>()</code>	<code>\lgrou p \rgrou p</code>	<code>\l moustache \rmoustache</code>	<code>\l moustache \rmoustache</code>	<code>\lvert \rvert</code>	<code>\lvert \rvert</code>
<code>\lVert \rVert</code>	<code>\lVert \rVert</code>	<code>\llbracket \rrbracket</code> ^(StM)	<code>\llbracket \rrbracket</code> ^(StM)		

Delimiters in *blue* require either the `amsmath` package or, if flagged with ^(StM), the `stmaryd` package.
 Delimiters `\lgrou p`, `\rgrou p`, `\l moustache`, and `\rmoustache` are available only in sizes greater than `\big`.

Table 11.29: Symbol pairs of class `\mathopen` and `\mathclose` (extensible)

symbol. However, the `amsmath` package makes unfortunate major changes to the spacing produced by the command `\colon` so that it is useful only for a particular layout in constructions such as `f\colon A\to B` where it produces $f: A \rightarrow B$. It is therefore wise to always use `\mathpunct{ : }` for the simple punctuation colon in mathematics.

11.8.8 Opening and Closing symbols

The paired extensible delimiters, when used on their own (i.e., without a preceding `\left`, `\right`, or `\middle`), produce symbols of class Opening or Closing; these pairs are listed in Table 11.29. See Section 11.5.6 on page 191 for further information about the extensible symbols.

\llcorner	<code>\llcorner</code>	\lrcorner	<code>\lrcorner</code>	\ulcorner	<code>\ulcorner</code>	\urcorner	<code>\urcorner</code>
\lceil	<code>\lceil</code>	\rceil	<code>\rceil</code>	$\mathbin{\&}$	<code>\binampersand</code>	$\mathbin{\&}$	<code>\bindnasrepma</code>
\lfloor	<code>\lfloor</code>	\rfloor	<code>\rfloor</code>	$\{$	<code>\Lbag</code>	$\}$	<code>\Rbag</code>
\llbracket	<code>\llbracket</code>	\rrbracket	<code>\rrbracket</code>	\langle	<code>\llparenthesis</code>	\rangle	<code>\rrparenthesis</code>

Symbols on the first line require the `amssymb` package; all others the `stmaryd` package. They are not extensible.

Table 11.30: Symbol pairs of class `\mathopen` and `\mathclose` (nonextensible)

To improve the flexibility of the vertical bar notation, `amsmath` defines some new pairs of paired extensible delimiter commands: `\lvert`, `\rvert`, `\lVert`, and `\rVert`. These commands are comparable to standard \LaTeX 's `\langle` and `\rangle` commands.

Finally, there are a few nonextensible paired symbols of class Opening and Closing, as listed in Table 11.30. They should not be used after `\left` or `\right`.

CHAPTER 12

Fonts in Formulas

12.1 The world of (Latin) math alphabets	226
12.2 Making it bold	235
12.3 Traditional math font setup through packages.	238
12.4 unicode-math — Using Unicode math fonts	253
12.5 A visual comparison of different math setups	261

For most symbols in a formula, the font used for a glyph cannot be changed by a font declaration as it can be in text. Indeed, there is no concept of, for example, an italic plus sign or a small capital less than sign.

One exception involves the letters of the Latin alphabet, whose appearance can be altered by the use of math alphabet identifier commands such as `\mathcal`. The commands provided by standard \LaTeX for this purpose are discussed in Section 9.4; in the first section of this chapter we introduce a few more and discuss their use in some detail.

Another exception relates to the use of bold versions of arbitrary symbols to produce distinct symbols with new meanings. This potentially doubles the number of symbols available, as boldness can be a recognizable attribute of a glyph for nearly every shape: depending on the font family, even “<” is noticeably different from “<”. Although there is a `\mathbf` command, the concept of a math alphabet identifier cannot be extended to cover bold symbols — better solutions are the topic of the second section.

To change the overall appearance of the mathematics in a document, the best approach is to replace all the fonts used to typeset formulas. This is usually done in the preamble of a document by loading a (set of) suitable packages, such as those discussed in Section 12.3 starting on page 238.

In the world of text fonts (Chapter 10) there is a clear separation between fonts suitable only for use with \pdfTeX and fonts for exclusive use in Unicode engines. Fonts for \pdfTeX are available as 8-bit fonts, encoded in OT1, T1, or some other 8-bit

font encoding from Table 9.18 on page 1737 and typically available as Type-1 or METAFONT fonts. In contrast, OpenType or TrueType fonts are usable only with \LaTeX or \LuaTeX and are encoded in the TU font encoding.^{1,2}

For symbol fonts this is not the case, at least in one direction: it is easily possible to use an 8-bit symbol font, e.g., MarVoSym, originally designed for use with \pdfTeX , with one of the Unicode engines.

Given that formulas largely consist of fixed symbols together with a few alphabetical characters and that there have not been (many) Unicode fonts dedicated to mathematics (i.e., fonts that contain the mathematical symbols in their appropriate Unicode slots), it should come as no surprise that the Unicode engines have been designed to work with traditional \TeX math fonts.

This has changed in recent years, and while developing OpenType Math fonts (compared to Text fonts) remains a niche market, there are now a number of fonts available that make it interesting to provide a \LaTeX math setup that directly uses such fonts. Such a setup is available with the `unicode-math` package by Will Robertson, and we will describe it in Section 12.4 on page 253.

In the final section of this chapter, starting at page 261, we showcase the effects of extensive changes to documents on a sample page of mathematics, made with just a few keystrokes. It uses the same input material typeset with both Computer Modern Math fonts (the default in \LaTeX) and nearly 50 other font family setups for text and mathematics. All of the fonts used are readily available and, except for Lucida fonts, provided free of charge.

12.1 The world of (Latin) math alphabets

It is easily possible to add additional new math alphabets for use in formulas. While this can be done using arbitrary command names, by convention `\mathcal` (a calligraphic alphabet), `\mathscr` (a script alphabet), `\mathfrak` (a fraktur alphabet), and `\mathbb` (a double-stroke also known as blackboard bold alphabet) are normally used as command names. Out of the box only `\mathcal` is available; for the others you have to add a suitable package (e.g., `mathalpha`) in the preamble or make a declaration manually using `\DeclareMathAlphabet`.

By loading the `amsfonts` (or the `amssymb`) package, both the Euler Fraktur alphabet by Hermann Zapf (`\mathfrak`) and a blackboard bold alphabet³ (`\mathbb`) become available.

$\forall n \in \mathbb{N} : \mathfrak{M}_n \leq \mathfrak{A}$ `\usepackage{amsfonts}`
`\$ \forall \text{forall } n \text{ \in } \mathbb{N} : \mathfrak{M}_n \leq \mathfrak{A}` \$

12-1-1

¹While it is possible to load 8-bit text fonts in Unicode engines, this is not a good idea because correct hyphenation depends on using the appropriate font encoding, which means that words with diacritics come out wrong if a legacy font encoding such as T1 is used.

²If text fonts are usable with all engines (and many are), then this is because somebody generated Type-1 fonts from Unicode fonts (restricting them to 8-bit and the appropriate encoding) or that somebody built an OpenType font from existing 8-bit sources.

³Not much is known about the origin of this alphabet. Research in old archives (thanks to Nelson Beebe, Barbara Beeton, and Ulrik Vieth for digging) produced no conclusive results.

If you also want to use upright Euler Script, you can load the `eucal` package that is also part of the `amsfonts` distribution. Loaded without options, it replaces the default `\mathcal`, but if loaded with the option `mathscr`, as done below, it becomes accessible as `\mathscr`, and `\mathcal` remains free for a different alphabet:

*The Euler Script font
by Hermann Zapf*

	$ABCDEFGHIJKLMN\mathcal{OPQRSTUVWXYZ}$	<code>\usepackage[mathscr]{eucal}</code>
		<code>\[\mathcal{ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ} \]</code>
12-1-2	$ABCDEFGHIJJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ$	<code>\[\mathscr{ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ} \]</code>

If you prefer a geometric hollowed-out blackboard bold font in `\mathbb`, you can load, for example, the `bboldx` package that provides support for a font designed by Alan Jeffrey. One interesting aspect of this font is that it contains many more glyphs than the usual (Uppercase) alphabet[?], which even allows you to use it outside formulas by accessing it as `\usefont{U}{bboldx}{m}{n}` as we did here. Michael Sharpe added an additional thin and a bold face to the original font and made it available through the package `bboldx`.

*A double-stroke font
by Alan Jeffrey*

	$\mathbb{N} = \{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$	<code>\usepackage[light]{bboldx}</code>
	$ABCDEFGHIJKLMN\mathbb{OPQRSTUVWXYZ}$	<code>\[\mathbb{N}=\{\mathbb{0},1,2,3,\ldots\} \]</code>
		<code>\[\mathbb{ABCDEFGHIJKLMN\mathbb{OPQRSTUVWXYZ}} \]</code>
12-1-3	$abcdefghijklmnpqrstuvwxy\mathbb{z}$	<code>\[\mathbbfbb{abcdefghijklmnpqrstuvwxy\mathbb{z}} \]</code>

By default the medium series is offered as `\mathbb`, while `\mathbbfbb` selects the bold series. If you load the package with the option `light`, you get the thin and medium series with the two commands instead. Alternatively, you can use `bfbb`, which forces the package to use the bold series for `\mathbf` as if bold were the regular weight. You can also easily scale the alphabet slightly to make it fit with other glyphs in your formulas by using the option `scale`.

By default the other available characters in the font, such as the Greek letters or the special braces or brackets, are not available in math. If you want those in a formula, you can load the package with the option `bbsymbols`. However, note that using that option means that the font is declared as a symbol font, and as discussed in Section 9.4.1 on page 1681, this means you are reducing your options to use other math fonts in your document. Therefore, do this only if you really intend to use any of the extra symbols.

	$0 \neq 1 \neq \mathbb{1}$	<code>\usepackage[bbsymbols,scale=0.9]{bboldx} \usepackage{amsmath}</code>
		<code>\$ \mathbbfbb{0} \neq \mathbb{1} \neq \mathbbfbb{1} \$</code>
		<code>\begin{align*} \mathbb{G} = \{ \llbracket \alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \dots, \omega</code>
		<code>& \llbracket \alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \dots, \omega</code>
		<code>& \llbracket \alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \dots, \omega</code>
12-1-4	$\llbracket \alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \dots, \omega \rrbracket \in \mathbb{G}$	<code>\llbracket \alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \dots, \omega \rrbracket \in \mathbbfbb{G} \end{align*}</code>

A serified double stroke alphabet based on the Courier clone of URW in regular and bold is provided through the `ds serif` package by Michael Sharpe. It offers lower and uppercase Latin characters as well as digits and makes them available as `\mathbb`

*A double-stroke font
by Michael Sharpe*

and `\mathbfbb`. As usual, `scale` can be used to adjust the font size to other letters in the formulas.

$\mathbb{N} = \{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$	<code>\usepackage{ds serif}</code>	
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ	<code>\[\mathbb{N}=\{\mathbfbb{0},1,2,3,\ldots\} \]</code>	
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz	<code>\[\mathbb{ \{ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ\} \]</code>	
	<code>\[\mathbfbb{abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz} \]</code>	12-1-5

*A double-stroke font
by Olaf Kummer*


The DS font designed by Olaf Kummer is a double stroke font that is based on the Computer Modern font shapes and thus works well in formulas done with Computer Modern or Latin Modern math fonts. Besides the usual uppercase alphabet, the font supports four additional characters: a variant form for the uppercase A (accessed by typing a lowercase a), lowercase h and k, and the digit 1. Trying anything else results in missing glyph warnings.

The package makes the alphabet available through the command `\mathds` and not through `\mathbb`. If you prefer the latter, you can alternatively set it up with the help of the `mathalpha` package or by using `\DeclareCommandCopy`.

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ	<code>\usepackage{ds font}</code>	
A h k 1	<code>\[\mathds{ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ} \]</code>	
	<code>\[\mathds{a \quad h \quad k \quad 1} \]</code>	12-1-6

A nice feature of the package is that it alternatively offers you a matching Sans double stroke font, which is useful if your formulas are typeset with sans serif fonts, e.g., when making slides.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z	<code>\usepackage[sans]{ds font}</code>	
A h k 1	<code>\[\mathds{ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ} \]</code>	
	<code>\[\mathds{a \quad h \quad k \quad 1} \]</code>	12-1-7

*Setting up math
alphabets with* 
`\DeclareMathAlphabet`

As an example of small-scale changes to the mathematical typesetting, those who prefer a visually distinct blackboard bold alphabet can load a different one, for example, the one contained in the PX fonts. The necessary declaration is done with `\DeclareMathAlphabet`, which is described in Section 9.4.1. In the example we first load the `amsfonts` package and then overwrite its definition of `\mathbb`.

$\{n, m \in \mathbb{N} \mid \mathfrak{N}_{n,m}\}$	<code>\usepackage{ams fonts} \DeclareMathAlphabet\mathbb{U}{px-ds}{m}{n}</code>	
	<code>\$ \lbrace n,m \in \mathbb{N} \mid \mathfrak{N}_{n,m} \rbrace \$</code>	12-1-8

The previous example shows how to include arbitrary alphabets from your \LaTeX distribution as math alphabets, with the crucial part being the arguments of the `\DeclareMathAlphabet` declaration. Although getting these right may appear to be a tricky matter, it is not so difficult once you know where to look. Fonts suitable for inclusion need to have an `.fd` file of the form `\langle enc \rangle \langle name \rangle .fd`, where the `\langle name \rangle` is the font family name, often abbreviated — see the discussion on NFSS font family naming conventions on page 6. Chapter 10 covers more than one hundred high-quality font families and the necessary information to use them.

For example, Table 10.11 on page 22 shows the different Lucida fonts¹ including Lucida Handwriting, which has the name `hlcw` as documented there. Table 10.85 on page 100 exhibits the freely available Almendra family with the name `Almndr-OsF`. Both families are inspired by chancery handwriting. The tables also show which encodings and which shapes are supported. If you want to use a family not documented in this chapter, look into its `.fd` file to find the information for the remaining arguments for the `\DeclareMathAlphabet` declaration.

Both families are available in several encodings, but Lucida Handwriting exists only in series `m` and shape `it`, so there is no choice there. Almendra in contrast is offered in several shapes. In the example below we use this information to set up Lucida Handwriting as the `\mathcal` alphabet and the italic Almendra shape (which is fairly upright) as the `\mathscr` alphabet:

	<code>\DeclareMathAlphabet\mathcal{T1}{hlcw}{m}{it}</code>	
	<code>\DeclareMathAlphabet\mathscr{T1}{Almndr-OsF}{m}{it}</code>	
	<code>\[A_B \neq \mathscr{A}_\mathscr{B}</code>	
	<code>\neq \mathcal{A}_\mathcal{B}</code>	<code>\]</code>
12-1-9	$A_B \neq \mathscr{A}_\mathscr{B}$	$\mathcal{A}_\mathcal{B}$
	<code>\[\mathcal{A}\mathcal{B}\mathcal{C}\mathcal{D}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{F}\mathcal{G}\mathcal{H}\mathcal{I} \dots \mathcal{P}\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{R}\mathcal{S}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{U}\mathcal{V}\mathcal{W}\mathcal{X}\mathcal{Y}\mathcal{Z}</code>	<code>\[\mathcal{A}\mathcal{B}\mathcal{C}\mathcal{D}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{F}\mathcal{G}\mathcal{H}\mathcal{I} \dots \mathcal{P}\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{R}\mathcal{S}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{U}\mathcal{V}\mathcal{W}\mathcal{X}\mathcal{Y}\mathcal{Z}</code>

The above example clearly shows that you have to be careful which fonts you mix and match: the two alphabets used there show noticeable difference in the heights of the capitals. If this is the case, then using `\DeclareMathAlphabet` may not be a viable option because it does not offer you a way to customize the loading. For this you would need to alter the information in the `.fd` file and provide your own. While this is possible (see Section 9.8 on page 740), it is much simpler to use the `mathalpha` package if the font is supported by it, because that package allows you to load math alphabets scaled up or down as necessary; see Section 12.1.1 on the next page.

As mentioned, except for the Lucida and the Cambria fonts all font families documented in Chapter 10 are freely available, so you should be able to choose any of them and get it working without problems. Of course, in general the presence of an `.fd` file (such as `t1hlcw.fd`) on your system does not mean that you can use the font it describes successfully. Most modern \LaTeX installations contain such support files for various commercial font sets so that you can use these fonts the moment you buy them and add them to your system. Thus, the previous example will work for you only if you own the Lucida fonts.

In truth, you probably do not need to buy any fonts (though most are definitely worth the cost), because the freely available fonts already include a huge — and high-quality — choice as exhibited in Chapter 10. The `nfssfont.tex` or `unicodefont.tex` programs can provide valuable help in choosing a font, by producing glyph tables for the fonts available to your installation (see Sections 9.5.9 and 9.6.7).

As a final example for manual math alphabet setup we look at the RSFS script font by Ralph Smith, which was one of the first available alternatives to the calligraphic Computer Modern letters designed by Donald Knuth. Given that both alphabets are quite distinct, many people use the more formal RSFS script as `\mathscr` and retain

*Ralph Smith's
Formal Script
Symbol Font*

¹This is one of the two commercial font families covered in the book; all others are freely available.

a second calligraphic alphabet in `\mathcal` as shown in the example. There also exists a small `mathrsfs` package in most distributions, but it sets up the font as a symbol font and so wastes one of the precious sixteen math family slots. We therefore recommend declaring it as shown below (or by using the `mathalpha` package):

<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M</i>	<code>\usepackage{amsmath}</code>	
<i>N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<code>\DeclareMathAlphabet\mathscr{U}{rsfs}{m}{n}</code>	
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<code>\begin{multline*} \mathscr{A} \mathscr{B} \mathscr{C} \mathscr{D} \mathscr{E} \mathscr{F} \mathscr{G} \mathscr{H} \mathscr{I} \mathscr{J} \mathscr{K} \mathscr{L} \mathscr{M} \mathscr{N} \mathscr{O} \mathscr{P} \mathscr{Q} \mathscr{R} \mathscr{S} \mathscr{T} \mathscr{U} \mathscr{V} \mathscr{W} \mathscr{X} \mathscr{Y} \mathscr{Z} \end{multline*}</code>	
	<code>\mathcal{A} \mathcal{B} \mathcal{C} \mathcal{D} \mathcal{E} \mathcal{F} \mathcal{G} \mathcal{H} \mathcal{I} \mathcal{J} \mathcal{K} \mathcal{L} \mathcal{M} \mathcal{N} \mathcal{O} \mathcal{P} \mathcal{Q} \mathcal{R} \mathcal{S} \mathcal{T} \mathcal{U} \mathcal{V} \mathcal{W} \mathcal{X} \mathcal{Y} \mathcal{Z}</code>	12-1-10

If you prefer a more upright design, then you can try the `RSFSO` variant by Michael Sharpe shown below. It too can be set up using `mathalpha` if that is preferred.

<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M</i>	<code>\usepackage{amsmath}</code>	
<i>N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<code>\DeclareMathAlphabet\mathscr{U}{rsfso}{m}{n}</code>	
	<code>\begin{multline*} \mathscr{A} \mathscr{B} \mathscr{C} \mathscr{D} \mathscr{E} \mathscr{F} \mathscr{G} \mathscr{H} \mathscr{I} \mathscr{J} \mathscr{K} \mathscr{L} \mathscr{M} \mathscr{N} \mathscr{O} \mathscr{P} \mathscr{Q} \mathscr{R} \mathscr{S} \mathscr{T} \mathscr{U} \mathscr{V} \mathscr{W} \mathscr{X} \mathscr{Y} \mathscr{Z} \end{multline*}</code>	
	<code>\mathcal{A} \mathcal{B} \mathcal{C} \mathcal{D} \mathcal{E} \mathcal{F} \mathcal{G} \mathcal{H} \mathcal{I} \mathcal{J} \mathcal{K} \mathcal{L} \mathcal{M} \mathcal{N} \mathcal{O} \mathcal{P} \mathcal{Q} \mathcal{R} \mathcal{S} \mathcal{T} \mathcal{U} \mathcal{V} \mathcal{W} \mathcal{X} \mathcal{Y} \mathcal{Z}</code>	12-1-11

12.1.1 `mathalpha` — Simplified setup for math alphabets

So far we have seen small packages for setting up additional math alphabets as well as the manual method through `\DeclareMathAlphabet`. In his `mathalpha` package, Michael Sharpe offers a much more convenient interface to this that allows you to set up `\mathcal`, `\mathscr`, `\mathbb`, and `\mathfrak` in one go by supplying suitable key/value pairs as package options. To give a practical example we assign different font families to the math alphabets by using the keys `cal`, `scr`, `bb`, and `frak` and as values the chosen fonts, e.g., `zapfc` stands for Hermann Zapf's Chancery italic script. Other font values are discussed below.

<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P ...</i>	<code>\usepackage[cal=zapfc,scr=boondoxo,bb=txof,frak=esstix]</code>	
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P ...</i>	<code>{mathalpha}</code>	
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P ...</i>	<code>\newcommand\sample[1]{\mathcal{A} \mathcal{B} \mathcal{C} \mathcal{D} \mathcal{E} \mathcal{F} \mathcal{G} \mathcal{H} \mathcal{I} \mathcal{J} \mathcal{K} \mathcal{L} \mathcal{M} \mathcal{N} \mathcal{O} \mathcal{P} \dots}</code>	
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P ...</i>	<code>\sample\mathcal \sample\mathscr</code>	
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P ...</i>	<code>\sample\mathbb \sample\mathfrak</code>	12-1-12

Some fonts, for example `dutchcal`, have bold variants. If that is the case, then those are made accessible through further math alphabets named `\mathbfc`, `\mathbfs`, `\mathbbf`, and `\mathfrakf` as shown below:

<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P ...</i>	<code>\usepackage[cal=dutchcal,frak=euler]{mathalpha}</code>	
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P ...</i>	<code>\newcommand\sample[1]{\mathcal{A} \mathcal{B} \mathcal{C} \mathcal{D} \mathcal{E} \mathcal{F} \mathcal{G} \mathcal{H} \mathcal{I} \mathcal{J} \mathcal{K} \mathcal{L} \mathcal{M} \mathcal{N} \mathcal{O} \mathcal{P} \dots}</code>	
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P ...</i>	<code>\sample\mathcal \sample\mathbfc</code>	
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P ...</i>	<code>\sample\mathfrak \sample\mathfrakf</code>	12-1-13

If you want to use the bold variant as the default, you can use one or more of the options `bfbb`, `bfc`, `bff`, or `bfscr` to arrange for this.

We already mentioned that alphabets sometimes need slight adjustments in size to comfortably fit with the rest of the math formula. To help you with this task, the package offers four keys that allow you to scale the alphabets up or down. They are named `bbscaled`, `calscaled`, `frakscaled`, and `scrscaled`, and if given, they expect a numerical value, such as 0.95, to scale the respective alphabet down by 5%, etc.

The package knows about many font families that are useful candidates for math alphabets: several commercial fonts as well as many free ones. However, it is obviously impossible for the package to cover everything; e.g., if you want to use *Almendra* as we did in Example 12-1-9 on page 229, you have to use the method shown there, because *Almendra* is not in the list of supported font families. Once in a while Michael adds support for further math alphabets, and to give you a simple way to see what is currently available, there is the option `showoptions`. If you use it when loading the package, it replies by throwing an error message that lists all available option keys and their supported values; i.e., you get output like this:

```
Package mathalfa Error: Package Options:
```

```
bb=ams, lucida, mathpi, mma, mt, mth, pazo, fourier, esstix, boondox,
px, tx, txof, libus, ds serif, bboldxLight, bboldx, dsfont serif,
dsfont sans, stixtwo, stix

cal=cm, euler, rsfso, rsfs, lucida, mathpi, mma, mt, mtc, zapfc, esstix,
boondox, boondoxo, dutchcal, ptxt, bickham, bickhams, stix, txupr,
boondoxupr, kp, stixplain, stixfancy, stixtwoplain, stixtwofancy

frak=euler, lucida, mathpi, mma, mt, esstix, boondox, ptxt, stixtwo

scr=cm, euler, rsfso, rsfs, lucida, mathpi, mma, mt, mtc, zapfc, esstix,
boondox, boondoxo, dutchcal, ptxt, bickham, bickhams, stix, txupr,
boondoxupr, kp, stixplain, stixfancy, stixtwoplain, stixtwofancy

bbscaled=1.0, calscaled=1.0, frakscaled=1.0, scrscaled=1.0
```

```
Bold versions may be forced by one of options bfbb, bfc al, bffrak, bfscr.
```

To help you with the selection, we show samples of different supported fonts sorted by type. The value to use is shown in the margin; if the font has a bold variant the indicator (*bold*) is added after the value. This means that `\mathbfcal`, `\mathbfscr`, `\mathbffrac`, or `\mathbfbb` is also set up when such a font is chosen as the value.

Selection of supported Calligraphic and Script math alphabets

We start with the calligraphic fonts that can be used with the keys `cal` or `scr`, grouped into “upright”, “oblique restrained”, and “oblique embellished”. Initially, the list of allowed alphabets for `cal` and `scr` differed, but as shown above, they now accept the same set of values. For details on which alphabets are supported, see the output of the `showoptions` option.

The value `euler` refers to the Euler Script fonts, which we have already seen in Example 12-1-2 on page 227; `txupr` is an upright script that is based on the TX fonts, and `boondoxupr` is based on the STIX font designs.

<code>euler</code>	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>
<code>euler (bold)</code>	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>
<code>txupr</code>	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>
<code>boondoxupr</code>	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>

In the second group we compare the slanted alphabets with relatively simple (restrained) glyph shapes. The value `cm` refers to the Computer Modern Calligraphic alphabet (which is the default for `\mathcal`), `lucida` refers to the Lucida calligraphic math alphabet (i.e., designed for use in math), `zapfc` is Hermann Zapf's chancery font (see Table 10.87 on page 103) but adjusted for math instead of text typesetting, and `pmtx` is the calligraphic math alphabet from the TX/PX fonts inspired by Palatino.

<code>cm</code>	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>
<code>cm (bold)</code>	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>
<code>lucida</code>	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>
<code>lucida (bold)</code>	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>
<code>zapfc</code>	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>
<code>pmtx</code>	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>
<code>pmtx (bold)</code>	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>
<code>stixplain</code>	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>
<code>stixplain (bold)</code>	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>
<code>stixtwoplain</code>	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>

The embellished scripts are much more expressive than the previous set. The value `dutchcal` refers to an adaptation by Michael Sharpe of a design from Elsevier Publishing later donated to the STIX project, `rsfs` is Ralph's Smith Formal Script as shown in Example 12-1-10 on page 230; `boondox` is the calligraphic math alphabet of the STIX fonts, slightly adjusted by Michael Sharpe; and the `kp` fonts represent the calligraphic alphabet from the Johannes Kepler fonts (a.k.a. KP fonts). There are also `rsfso` and `boondoxo`, both being less slanted variants of their originals. They have been also prepared by Michael Sharpe.

<code>dutchcal</code>	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>
<code>dutchcal (bold)</code>	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>

<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>rsfso</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>rsfs</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>boondoxo</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>boondoxo (bold)</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>boondox</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>boondox (bold)</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>kp</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>kp (bold)</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>stixfancy</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>stixfancy (bold)</i>

Selection of supported Fraktur math alphabets

Most Fraktur alphabets follow a similar design, but with recognizable differences in several shapes. The only exception is the lucida blackletter alphabet, which offers various shapes that are noticeably different from historical models. *pmtx* and *euler* are designs by Hermann Zapf (1918–2015) (or rather inspired by in the case of *pmtx*) and *esstix* and *boondox* are adaptations of the Fraktur fonts from STIX, and one can easily see the close relationship.

<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>pmtx</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>pmtx (bold)</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>euler</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>euler (bold)</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>esstix</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>boondox</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>boondox (bold)</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>stixtwo</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>stixtwo (bold)</i>
<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>	<i>lucida</i>

Selection of supported Blackboard Bold math alphabets

Among the blackboard bold alphabets are two major styles: those that show hollowed-out shapes, i.e., where most parts of the glyphs show their contours, and the more

geometric shapes where the usual character shape is augmented by a single extra vertical or diagonal line (the Lucida design is somewhere in between the two).

Hollowed-out shapes are those from the AMS fonts referred to as `ams`; the open-faced design from the TX fonts is accessed with `txof`, and `lucida` represents the more sans serif open-faced design of the Lucida math fonts.

```
ams  A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
txof A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
txof (bold) A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
lucida A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
```

If you are looking for a more traditional¹ geometric-shaped blackboard bold typeface, then you have a choice between serifed designs, i.e., `pazo` from the Pazo Math fonts and `px` from the PX fonts, both of which are based on Palatino and nearly identical, and the `dsfontserif` math alphabet from the DS fonts.

```
pazo  A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
px    A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
px (bold) A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
dsfontserif A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
```

The DS fonts also offer a sans variant with `dsfontsans`. The other sans designs are nearly identical. Between `esstix` and `boondox` there are minor differences in stroke lengths of E and F and the `bbold` alphabet by Alan Jeffrey and its light and bold versions by Michael Sharpe have some stroke variations in some letters compared to the former two alphabets.

```
dsfontsans A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
esstix     A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
boondox    A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
bbold (light) A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
bbold      A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
bbold (bold) A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
```

The list of supported designs is larger than the number of examples shown above; not included are the commercial fonts (except for Lucida) and a few that are virtually identical to others. Furthermore, the list might grow over time; thus, for the full list, use the `showoptions` key or refer to the package documentation.

¹At least my math teachers used the approach of an extra stroke in this way on a blackboard.

12.2 Making it bold

For bold Latin letters only, you can use the command `\mathbf`; for everything else, there is the `bm` package. Although `amsmath` provides `\boldsymbol` and `\pmb`, the rules about when to use which command, and many of the restrictions on when they work, can now be avoided: just load the `bm` package and use `\bm` to make any formula as bold and beautiful as the available fonts allow.

12.2.1 `bm` — Making bold

The `bm` package by David Carlisle addresses the problem that it is rather difficult to bolden individual symbols in a math formula without altering the spacing or introducing other unwanted side effects.¹

The example below shows many ways to use the `\bm` and `\mathbf` commands and a strategy for defining shorthand names for frequently occurring bold symbols, using both standard L^AT_EX's `\newcommand` and `\bmdefine`, which is provided by `bm`. Note that `\mathbf{xy}` is not identical to `\bm{xy}`: the former produces bold roman “**xy**”, and the latter produces “***xy***” (i.e., bold math italic).

```
\usepackage{amsmath,amssymb,bm}
\newcommand\bfB{\mathbf{B}}      \newcommand\bfX{\mathbf{x}}
\bmdefine\bpi{\pi}              \bmdefine\binfty{\infty}
\section{The bold equivalence}

$$\sum_{j < B} \prod_{\lambda} : \bm{\sum_{x_j} \prod_{\lambda}}$$

\begin{gather}
B_{\infty} + \pi B_1 \sim \bfB_{\binfty} \bm{+} \bpi \bfB_{\bm{1}} \\
\bm{\sim B_{\infty} + \pi B_1} \\
B_{\binfty} + \bpi B_{\bm{1}} \bm{\in} \bm{\biggl\{ \frac{\partial \bfB}{\partial \bfX} : \frac{\partial \bfB}{\partial \bfX} \bm{\gtrsim} 1 \biggr\}} \\
\bm{\lnapprox} \bm{1} \bm{\biggr\rbrace}
\end{gather}
```


1 The bold equivalence $\sum_{j < B} \prod_{\lambda} : \sum_{x_j} \prod_{\lambda}$

$$B_{\infty} + \pi B_1 \sim \mathbf{B}_{\infty} + \pi \mathbf{B}_1 \sim B_{\infty} + \pi B_1 \quad (1)$$

$$B_{\infty} + \pi B_1 \in \left\{ (\mathbf{B}, \mathbf{x}) : \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \gtrsim 1 \right\} \quad (2)$$

12-2-1

In the above example `bm` tries its best to fulfill the requests for bold versions of individual symbols and letters, but if you look closely, you will see that the results are not always optimal. For example, \sum , \prod , and \gtrsim are all made bold by the use of a technique known as *poor man's bold*, in which the symbol is overprinted three times with slight offsets. Also, the $\{$ is not made bold in any way. Such deficiencies are

 *bm cannot do miracles if symbols are not available in a bold variant*

¹However, `bm` is unfortunately not usable with Unicode engines — this might change though.

This situation can be improved by use of the `newtxmath` package (as in Example 12-2-2) or use of another font set with full bold variants, such as the `newpxmath` shown here:

12-2-4

$$\left\{ \left\{ \left\{ \left\{ \left\{ Q \right\} \right\} \right\} \right\} \right\}$$

```
\usepackage{newpxmath,bm}
$ \bm{\Biggl\lbrace\biggl\lbrace\Bigl\lbrace\bigl\lbrace \lbrace
\mathcal{Q}}
\rangle \bigr\rangle\Bigr\rangle\biggr\rangle\Biggr\rangle\Bigr\rangle$
```

Normally, `\bm` requires that if a command that itself takes arguments is within its argument, then that command must be fully included (i.e., both the command and its arguments must appear) in the argument of `\bm`; as a result, all parts of the typeset material are typeset in bold. If you really need the output of a command with arguments to be only partially bold, then you have to work harder. You should place the symbol(s) that should not be bold in an `\mbox` and explicitly reset the math version within the box contents using `\unboldmath`. T_EX considers an `\mbox` to be a symbol of class Ordinary (see Section 11.8.1); hence, to get the spacing right, you may have to surround it by a `\mathbin`, `\mathrel`, or `\mathop`.

12-2-5

$$\sqrt[2]{x \times \alpha} \text{ but } \sqrt[2]{x \times \alpha}$$

or the similar $\sqrt{x \times \alpha}$

```
\usepackage{amsmath,bm}
$ \bm{\sqrt[2]{x \times \alpha}} $ but
$ \bm{\sqrt[2]{x \mathbin{\mbox{\unboldmath$\times$}}
\alpha}}} $
or the similar
$ \bm{\sqrtsign}{\bm{x} \times \bm{\alpha}} $
```

Fortunately, such gymnastics are seldom needed. In most cases involving commands with arguments, only parts of the arguments need to be made bold, which can be achieved by using `\bm` inside those arguments. As with `\sqrtsign` in the example above, for the common case of bold accents `\bm` is specially programmed to allow the accent's argument to be outside its own argument. However, if you need such accents regularly, it is wise to define your own abbreviation using `\bmdefine`, as in the next example:

12-2-6

$$\hat{a} \neq \hat{\hat{a}} \neq \hat{a} = \hat{a} \neq \hat{\hat{a}}$$

```
\usepackage{bm} \bmdefine\bhat{\hat}
$ \hat a \neq \bm{\hat a} \neq \bm\hat a = \bhat a
\neq \bm\widehat a $
```

This example also shows that the variable-width accents (e.g., `\widehat`) share a deficiency with the delimiters: in the Computer Modern math setup they come from a font for which no bold variant is available.

Although `\bmdefine\blambda{\lambda}` appears to be simply a shorthand for `\newcommand\blambda{\bm{\lambda}}`, in fact almost the opposite is true: `\bm` defines a new hidden temporary command using `\bmdefine` and then immediately uses this temporary command to produce the bold symbol. In other words,

*Speeding up the
processing*

`\bmdefine` does all the hard work! If you frequently use, for example, something that is defined via `\bm{\alpha}`, then a new `\bmdefine` is executed at every use. If you set things up by doing `\bmdefine\balpha{\alpha}`, then `\bmdefine` does its time-consuming work only once, however many times `\balpha` is used.

Dealing with strange errors

The `bm` package tries very hard to produce the correct spacing between symbols (both inside and outside the argument of `\bm`). For this effort to work, `\bm` has to “investigate” the definitions of the commands in its argument to determine the correct mathematical class to which each of the resulting symbols belongs (see Section 11.8.1 on page 209). It is possible that some complicated constructions could confuse this investigation. If this happens, then \LaTeX will almost certainly stop with a strange error. Ideally, this problem should not arise with constructs from standard \LaTeX or `amsmath`, but proper parsing in \TeX is extremely difficult, and the odd overlooked case might still be present.¹

If some command does produce an error when used inside `\bm`, you can always surround it *and all its arguments* with an extra level of braces — for example, writing `\bm{...{\cmd}...}` rather than simply `\bm{...{\cmd}...}`. The `\bm` command does not attempt to parse material surrounded by braces but uses the `\boldmath` version to typeset the whole of the formula within the braces. The resulting bold subformula is then inserted as if it were a “symbol” of class Ordinary. Thus, to obtain the right spacing around it, you may have to explicitly set its class; for instance, for a relation you would use `\bm{...{\mathrel}{\cmd}...}` (see Section 11.8.1 on page 209).

12.3 Traditional math font setup through packages

Implementing a setup for math in \LaTeX is a rather complicated undertaking and not something you do in a preamble of your document. There you might add a few declarations for math alphabets with `\DeclareMathAlphabet` or through the packages discussed in Section 12.1 or define your own notations as we have done in several examples throughout the book.

However, if you want to replace all glyphs used in formulas with new ones that have a different design, you typically simply call one or more packages that do the hard work for you behind the scenes. In this section we discuss a number of them. As mentioned earlier, most of them can be used with every \TeX engine even if they are based on 8-bit fonts.² Setting up math using Unicode fonts (and thus usable only with Unicode engines) is the subject of Section 12.4.

12.3.1 cfonts — The Concrete fonts for text and math

Starting from the work done for the EC fonts, it was relatively easy to create Concrete Roman fonts in T1 and TS1 encodings (original work by Frank Mittelbach; current version by Walter Schmidt (1960–2021)). Ulrik Vieth used the construction method

¹For instance, the author got trapped when writing this section by the fact that `\bm` was trying to process the argument of `\hspace` instead of producing the desired space (now fixed).

²As long as they do not also set up text fonts, that is.

outlined by Knuth [94] to develop a companion set of Concrete Math fonts including the full range of AMS symbols (as provided by the `amssymb` or `amsfonts` package).

The first package that provided access to these font families for normal text was `beton` (by Frank Jensen). A more recent development that also provides the use of Concrete fonts for math and supports the T1 and TS1 encodings is the `ccfonts` package by Walter Schmidt; see page 65 for details.

Because the Concrete fonts have no boldface series, the `ccfonts` package offers the option `boldsans` to use the semibold series of the Computer Modern Sans fonts as a replacement. As a result, without any further adjustments, headings in standard classes are typeset using this font series. A larger sample page is shown in Figure 12.39 on page 288.

1 Testing headings

An example showing a trigonometric function:

$$\sin \frac{\alpha}{2} = \pm \sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos \alpha}{2}}$$

The script looks like this: ABC .

12-3-1

Text symbols: \$ € ★ ∞ † ...

```
\usepackage[boldsans]{ccfonts}
```

```
\section{Testing headings}
```

An example showing a trigonometric function:

$$\sin \frac{\alpha}{2} = \pm \sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos \alpha}{2}}$$

The script looks like this: `\mathcal{ABC}`. `\`

Text symbols: \textdollaroldstyle\ \texteuro\

\textborn\ \textmarried\ \textdied\ \ldots

Because the Concrete fonts are of considerably heavier weight than, say, Computer Modern, it is advisable to use them with a larger leading than most document classes provide by default. For this reason the package automatically enlarges the leading to 10/13 and similar ratios for other document sizes. If this adjustment is undesirable for some reason, it can be canceled with the option `standard-baselineskips`.

The feature provided by the `exscale` package is available as the package option `exscale`; see Section 9.5.7 on page 704 for details. The `exscale` package itself cannot be used because it is set up to work with only Computer Modern math fonts.

If the `amssymb` or `amsfonts` package is loaded, the `ccfonts` package automatically arranges to use the Concrete variants of the AMS symbol fonts.

Finally, the package offers the option `slantedGreek` to make uppercase Greek letters slanted instead of being upright (default). The two extra commands `\upDelta` and `\upOmega` always typeset an upright Δ and Ω , respectively.

12.3.2 cmbright—The Computer Modern Bright fonts

Another font family whose design is based on the METAFONT sources of the CM fonts are the Computer Modern Bright (CM Bright) fonts by Walter Schmidt (1960–2021), shown in Table 10.3 on page 12. This family of sans serif fonts is designed to serve as a legible body font. It comes with matching typewriter and math fonts, including the American Mathematical Society symbols.

Loading the `cmbright` package in the preamble ensures that these families are selected throughout the document. It is recommended that you combine this package with `fontenc`, as shown in the next example, to achieve proper hyphenation with languages other than English. All CM Bright fonts have fully implemented T1 and TS1 encoding support.

1 A CM Bright document

The CM Bright family contains typewriter fonts and matching fonts for math formulas, e.g.,

$$\sum_{0 \leq k < n} k = \frac{n(n-1)}{2}$$

```
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage{cmbright}
\section{A CM Bright document}
The CM Bright family contains
\texttt{typewriter} fonts and matching fonts
for math formulas, e.g.,
\[ \sum_{0 \leq k < n} k = \frac{n(n-1)}{2} \]
```

12-3-2

By default, the package selects a slightly larger leading than the default classes to account for the use of sans serif fonts; this can be canceled by specifying the package option `standard-baselineskips`. Also in other respects, this package works similarly to other works by Walter: the option `slantedGreek` produces slanted uppercase Greek letters, with `\upDelta` and `\upOmega` typesetting an upright Δ and Ω , respectively. When the `amssymb` or `amsfonts` package is loaded, the `cmbright` package automatically arranges to use the CM Bright variants of the AMS symbol fonts.

The METAFONT implementation of the fonts is freely available from CTAN archives; Type 1 format versions have been commercially sold by MicroPress. In 2002, a freely available Type 1 (although without manual hinting) was made available by Harald Harders under the name `hfbright`. Moreover, as mentioned in Section 9.5.1, the freely available CM-Super Type 1 fonts also cover parts of the CM Bright fonts.

12.3.3 euler, eulervm — Accessing Zapf's Euler fonts

As mentioned earlier, Hermann Zapf (1918–2015) designed a beautiful set of fonts for typesetting mathematics — upright characters with a handwritten flavor — named after the famous mathematician Leonhard Euler [100]. These fonts can be accessed as (math) alphabets of their own, or you can generally modify the math font setup, thus making \LaTeX use Euler math fonts (rather than Computer Modern) by default.

The Euler fonts contain three math alphabets: `SCRIPT`, Euler Fraktur, and Euler Roman.¹ The script and the fraktur alphabets can be easily set up with the `mathalpha` package, but for historical reasons there also exist individual packages to set them up. For the script alphabet you can alternatively use the `eucal` package, which makes this math alphabet available under the name `\mathcal`. If the package is loaded with the `mathscr` option, the alphabet becomes available through the command `\mathscr`, with `\mathcal` retaining its original definition. The package for Euler Fraktur is `eufrak`, which defines the math alphabet `\mathfrak`. There is no particular package to access the Euler Roman alphabet separately.

¹None of these alphabets is suitable for typesetting text because the individual glyphs have side-bearings specially tailored for use in math formulas.

The next example shows Computer Modern Calligraphic, Euler Script, and Euler Fraktur side by side. We use the `mathalpha` approach but also show the equivalent older way using the packages `eucal` and `eufrak`:

12-3-3

$$\mathcal{A} \neq \sum_{k < n} \mathcal{A}_k \neq \mathfrak{A}$$

```
%\usepackage[mathscr]{eucal} \usepackage{eufrak} % old way
\usepackage[scr=euler,frak=euler]{mathalpha}
\[ \mathcal{A} \neq \sum_{k < n} \mathscr{A}_k \neq \mathfrak{A} \]
```

Unfortunately, the Euler fonts use font encodings that differ from all other encoding schemes for mathematics. For this reason, the fonts are all assigned the encoding U (unknown) in NFSS classification.

These nonstandard encodings make it difficult to simply substitute the Euler alphabets and symbols for the default CM math fonts. Yet the `euler` package, written by Frank Jensen, went exactly this way, redeclaring most of \LaTeX 's math font setup. In conjunction with the package `beton`, which sets up Concrete as the default text font family, it simulates the typography of Knuth's book *Concrete Mathematics* [58], as shown below:

Concrete Roman blends well with Euler Math,
as can be seen with

12-3-4

$$\sum_{0 \leq k < n} k = \frac{n(n-1)}{2}$$

```
\usepackage{beton,euler}
Concrete Roman blends well with Euler Math,
as can be seen with
\[ \sum_{0 \leq k < n} k = \frac{n(n-1)}{2} \]
```

One of the problems with extensive reencoding in macro packages, as done by the `euler` package, is that it is likely to break other packages that assume certain symbols in slot positions, as defined by the established standard font encodings. The `eulervm` package developed by Walter Schmidt (1960–2021) attempts to avoid this problem by providing reencoded virtual fonts that follow as much as possible the standard math encodings OML, OMS, and OMX.

The `eulervm` package sets up a `\mathnormal` alphabet, which is based mainly on Euler Roman, and a `\mathcal` alphabet, which is based on Euler Script. It does not provide immediate support for the Euler Fraktur alphabet — to access this math alphabet one needs to additionally load the `eufrak` or `mathalpha` package. Also, the math symbols are taken from the Euler fonts, with a few exceptions coming from the Computer Modern math fonts. Compare the next example to Example 12-3-3 and you see that `\mathcal` has changed and that `\sum` and the indices are different, because they are now taken from the Euler fonts.

12-3-5

$$\mathcal{A} \neq \sum_{k < n} \mathcal{A}_k \neq \mathfrak{A}$$

```
\usepackage{eulervm,eufrak}
\[ \mathcal{A} \neq \sum_{k < n} \mathcal{A}_k \neq \mathfrak{A} \]
```

In typical font setups the same digits are used in text and math formulas. The Euler fonts contain a set of digits that have a distinctive look and thus make digits in text and math look noticeably different.

Virtual Euler fonts

By default, the digits of the main document font are used in formulas as well. To switch to the digits from Euler Roman, one has to explicitly request them by specifying the option `euler-digits`. It then becomes very important to distinguish between a number in a mathematical or a textual context. For example, one must watch out for omitted \$ signs, as in the first line of the next example:

	<code>\usepackage{ccfonts}</code>		
	<code>\usepackage[euler-digits]{eulervm}</code>		
The value can be 1, 2, or -1 (wrong!)	The value can be 1, 2, or \$-1\$ (wrong!)\par		
The value can be 1, 2, or -1 (right!)	The value can be \$1\$, \$2\$, or \$-1\$ (right!)		12-3-6

A full sample page with this setup is shown in Figure 12.40 on page 289.

The option `small` causes `eulervm` to load all Euler fonts at 95% of their normal size, thereby enabling them to blend better with some document fonts (e.g., Adobe Minion). This option also affects the Euler Fraktur fonts if they are loaded with `eufrak` and the AMS symbol fonts.

The functionality provided by the `exscale` package is automatically available. See Section 9.5.7 on page 704 for details.

Some peculiarities of the Euler fonts

Neither the standard `\hbar` command nor `\hslash` (from the `amssymb` package) is really usable with the Euler fonts if it is used without modification (i.e., with `euler`), because `\hslash` uses a Computer Modern style “h” and `\hbar` gets the slash in a strange position.

This issue restricts the usage of the `euler` package somewhat for physics and related fields. The `eulervm` package resolves this problem (partially) by providing a properly slashed “h” glyph built using the possibilities offered by the virtual font mechanism ([93] explains the concepts). It does, however, provide only a slashed version (`\hslash`); if `\hbar` is used, a warning is issued, and the slashed glyph is used nevertheless.

<code>\usepackage{amssymb,euler}</code>	<code>\usepackage{eulervm}</code>
<code>\[\hslash \neq \hbar \]</code>	<code>\[\hslash \neq \hbar \]</code>
$\hbar \neq \hbar$	$\hbar \neq \hbar$
12-3-7	12-3-8

Normally, the math accent `\hat` is taken from the main document font, which might not be a good choice when text and math fonts are noticeably different. With the option `euler-hat-accent`, an alternative version from the Euler fonts is used instead. In the example we mimic that option and define the alternate accent under the name `\varhat` manually to enable comparison of the two (neither looks really perfect).

$\hat{x} \neq \hat{x} \text{ and } \hat{K} \neq \hat{K}$	<code>\usepackage{tgpagella,eulervm,eufrak}</code>
	<code>\DeclareMathAccent\varhat{\mathalpha}{symbols}{222}</code>
	<code>\Large \$ \hat{x} \neq \varhat{x} \$ and</code>
	<code>\$ \hat{\mathfrak{K}} \neq \varhat{\mathfrak{K}} \$</code>
	12-3-9

If `\mathbf` is used in an `eulervm` setup, it uses the bold text font, e.g., Concrete Bold in the next example (as the `ccfonts` package is used for text). To get bold Euler letters instead, you can use `\mathbold` provided by `eulervm` for this purpose.

12-3-10

Compare: $a + b \neq a + b \neq \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$

```
\usepackage{ccfonts,eulervm}
```

```
Compare: $ a + b \neq \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}
\neq \mathbold{a} + \mathbold{b}$
```

Because `eulervm` defines the math alphabets (`\mathbf`, `\mathsf`, etc.) by evaluating the document's default information current at the time of loading, it is usually best to load the package after all the document fonts have been defined. In the previous and the next examples the loading order is in fact absolutely essential because the `ccfonts` package also tries to set up the math fonts, and thus the one that comes last wins.

In the book *Concrete Mathematics* [58], where Euler and Concrete fonts were first used together, one can see that slanted \leq and \geq signs were once part of the Euler Math fonts. Somewhere along the way these two symbols got lost, though traces of their existence can be found in [94] and in macros that Donald Knuth developed for producing the book. With the help of the virtual font mechanism, Walter Schmidt brought them back in the `eulervm` package; compare the next example to Example 12-3-4 on page 241, which shows the straight \leq sign.

Concrete Roman blends well with Euler Math, as can be seen with

12-3-11

$$\sum_{0 \leq k < n} k = \frac{n(n-1)}{2}$$

```
\usepackage{ccfonts,amssymb}
```

```
\usepackage[euler-digits]{eulervm}
```

Concrete Roman blends well with Euler Math, as can be seen with

```
\[ \sum_{0 \leq k < n} k = \frac{n(n-1)}{2} \]
```

12.3.4 newtxmath — A Swiss¹ knife for math font support

In 2000, Young Ryu released a set of virtual fonts together with accompanying Type 1 fonts to provide math support for documents using Times Roman as the document font. \LaTeX support was implemented through the package `txfonts`.

This implementation was fairly comprehensive in offering a large glyph set including all symbols from the American Mathematical Society fonts, but unfortunately it had some serious problems in that the glyph side-bearings in math were extremely tight, up to the point that characters actually touched if used in subscripts or superscripts. Compare the next two examples: the first is using the original TX fonts, while the second is using similar fonts prepared by Michael Sharpe.

A problematic example:

12-3-12

$$t[u_1, \dots, u_n] = \sum_{k=1}^n \binom{n-1}{k-1} (1-t)^{n-k} t^{k-1} u_k$$

```
\usepackage{amsmath,txfonts}
```

A problematic example:

```
\[ t[u_1, \dots, u_n] = \sum_{k=1}^n
\binom{n-1}{k-1} (1-t)^{n-k} t^{k-1} u_k \]
```

¹Or rather an Australian/California knife.

In fact, you can have both types in a single document by appending `up` or `sl` to the normal command names; which you need depends on your chosen default.

12-3-15

```

\usepackage{newtxmath}

\[ \intsl \iintup \iiintsl \iiiiiintup \enspace
\ointsl \oiintup \oiintsl \enspace
\varointclockwiseup \ointctrlockwisesl\enspace
\!fintup \sumintsl \saintup \! ]

```

The full set of the integral commands is also available as tiny symbols by prepending `small` to the names for upright and sloped integrals, e.g., `\smalliintsl`. These small versions may help in inline formulas when it is important to keep line registration and not open up the line with large symbols. The example below has the same input as Example 12-3-14, but with `small` prefixed to all command names, and the second set by additionally appending `sl`:

12-3-16

[illegible]

With the option `smallerops` you can reduce the size of all operators that can take `\limits`, e.g., those from Table 11.27 on page 222, about 20%. Integrals are not affected by this option.

The package also defines a few additional commands for use in math: `\smallsum`, `\smallprod`, and `\smallcoprod` are small versions of the operators and may sometimes be useful (for comparison, the normal size in running text is shown as well). There are also a number of “wide accents” that span the whole of their argument. They are shown in the display formulas of the example.

12-3-17

	<code>\usepackage{newtxtext,newtxmath}</code>
In running text: $\sum \sum_{i=1}^n \prod \prod_x^y \prod_z!$	<code>In running text: \$ \sum \smallsum_{i=1}^n \prod</code>
	<code>\smallprod_x^y \smallcoprod\limits_z \$!</code>
	<code>\[\overgroup{AB} \enspace \overgrouppra{CDEF} \enspace</code>
	<code>\overgrouppla{\ldots LMN\ldots} \enspace \widering{XYZ}</code>
$\overrightarrow{AB} \overrightarrow{CDEF} \overleftarrow{\dots LMN \dots} \overleftrightarrow{\overset{\circ}{XYZ}}$	<code>\]</code>
	<code>\[\undergroup{abc} \enspace \undergrouppra{de} \enspace</code>
$\underbrace{abc}_{de} \overleftrightarrow{\dots xyz}$	<code>\undergrouppla{\ldots xyz}</code>
	<code>\]</code>

It is customary in Anglo-American mathematical typesetting to use upright Greek uppercase letters and italic Greek lowercase together with all Latin characters in italics. ISO also suggests using slanted uppercase Greek. This can be controlled through the options `uprightGreek` (default) and `slantedGreek`. In any case all commands to access Greek letters (upper or lowercase) have a variant to explicitly access the upright form by prepending `up` to the command name, e.g., `\upDelta`, `\upOmega`, `\upalpha`, `\upbeta`, etc.

With the option `frenchmath` you set the default style in math mode for rendering uppercase Latin and all Greek letters to upright. Latin lowercase remains italic. You can still get the italic uppercase Latin glyphs by using `\mathnormal`.

```
\usepackage{newtxtext}
\usepackage{newtxmath}
\[ \mathrm{A} = \alpha + \beta
    < A_k \quad \backslash]
```

$$A = \alpha + \beta < A_k$$

12-3-18

```
\usepackage{newtxtext}
\usepackage[frenchmath]{newtxmath}
\[ A = \alpha + \beta
    < \mathnormal{A}_k \quad \backslash]
```

$$A = \alpha + \beta < A_k$$

12-3-19

The math italic *v* and the Greek ν are often fairly similar as shown in Example 12-3-20. For that reason the `newtxmath` package offers the option `varvw` to give both *v* and *w* a different shape, or the option `varg` that changes the shapes of *v*, *w*, *g*, and *y*. If you compare the two example, you can observe the differences. Unfortunately, the options make *w* now look closer to ω , so you have to pick and choose what works better for you.

```
\usepackage{newtxmath}
\[ v w \neq \nu \omega \quad \backslash]
```

$$v w \neq \nu \omega \quad (gy)$$

12-3-20

```
\usepackage[varg]{newtxmath}
\[ v w \neq \nu \omega \quad \backslash]
```

$$vw \neq \nu \omega \quad (gy)$$

12-3-21

With many heavily sloped math fonts there is a problem that the side-bearings of individual characters would need to change based on their usage, e.g., whether they appear as a variable in a formula or as a subscript character. This is not automatically possible for \TeX when sticking glyphs together, and the package attempts to solve this by some clever programming. To enable it, specify the option `subscriptcorrection`. If activated, an external file (default `newtx-subs.tex`) is read that specifies corrective actions for individual characters that are carried out whenever the glyph appears as the first character in a subscript (and only there). Compare the subscript placements in the next two examples:

```
\usepackage{newtxmath}
\[ xjfA \to x_j \neq y_f
    \neq z_A \quad \backslash]
```

$$xjfA \rightarrow x_j \neq y_f \neq z_A$$

12-3-22

```
\usepackage[subscriptcorrection]{newtxmath}
\[ xjfA \to x_j \neq y_f
    \neq z_A \quad \backslash]
```

$$xjfA \rightarrow x_j \neq y_f \neq z_A$$

12-3-23

Which characters are affected depend on the math fonts used (as we see below, you are not confined to Times), and it is customizable. How to do this is explained in the package documentation in case you feel you need to make further adjustments.

The original TX fonts offered two blackboard bold alphabets; the `newtxmath` packages adds yet another one (taking it from the STIX2 fonts). The alphabets are

available through `\mathbb`, `\vmathbb`, and `\vvarmathbb`. Given that you probably want only one within your document, you can make a selection via an option (`varbb` or `vvarbb`), in which case `\mathbb` is made equal to one of the other ones.

```
\usepackage{newtxtext}
\usepackage{newtxmath}
\[ \mathbb{AN} \text{ \textrm{\ (default)}}
  < \vmathbb{AN} < \vvarmathbb{AN} \]
```

12-3-24

$$\mathbb{AN} \text{ (default)} < \mathbb{AN} < \mathbb{AN}$$

```
\usepackage{newtxtext}
\usepackage[vvarbb]{newtxmath}
\[ \mathbb{AN} \text{ \textrm{\ (default)}}
  < \vmathbb{AN} < \vvarmathbb{AN} \]
```

12-3-25

$$\mathbb{AN} \text{ (default)} < \mathbb{AN} < \mathbb{AN}$$

A sample page using Times for text and math by loading the packages `newtxtext` and `newtxmath` is shown in Figure 12.27 on page 280.

Support for other math font families

Michael's package started out as a reimplementaion for the TX fonts, but over time support for more and more math font families got added. They can be accessed by adding an appropriate option when loading the package. The options change the math italics and bold math italics being loaded. If the new base family offers Greek glyphs (i.e., Cochineal, EB Garamond, Garamondx, Libertine, Minion, STIX 2, or XCharter), then these are used as well.

The other symbols remain the same, which is a compromise that is not necessarily perfect with all combinations compared to a design that was made to go together from the outset.

When one of these font options is selected, the options `varg` and `varvw` are both ignored (if given). Instead, there are a few extra options to cater for peculiarities of some of the font families, as explained below:

baskervaldx This loads math italics based on the glyphs from Baskervaldx; see Figure 12.15 on page 272 for a sample page. In Figure 12.16 there is also an example of Baskervaldx text combined with Times math.

baskerville or **baskervillef** This provides math italics based on BaskervilleF instead. An example is given in Figure 12.14 on page 271; compare it with Figure 12.15.

charter or **xcharter** In this case the math italics are based on the XCharter design. When this option is chosen, you can also use `alty` to get an alternative glyph for “y” and `noxchw` to have the original “v” and “w” from Charter italics. This makes them harder to distinguish from `\nu`, but that is a problem only if you use that Greek character. A sample page is shown in Figure 12.19 on page 275.

cochineal Figure 12.2 on page 263 shows the usage. With this option the italics from Cochineal are used as the basis for the math italics. It can be combined with the options `cochf` and `cochrho` to use a longer italic “f” and `\rho`, respectively.

ebgaramond Use math italics based on EB Garamond; see Figure 12.3 on page 264 for an example.

garamondx This uses Garamondx instead of EB Garamond as math italics. There is also an example page showing the OpenType font version. Compare Figures 12.3 to 12.5 on pages 264–265.

libertine This option uses math italics based on Libertine fonts. With the option **libaltvw** you can alter the look of “v” and “w”, and with **liby** that of “y” of the family. Figure 12.22 on page 277 shows an example. Compare this with Figure 12.23, which exhibits the Libertinus math fonts that are available only for Unicode engines.

minion This option bases the math italics on the commercial MinionPro fonts, which requires that you own a recent version of this family, and it requires manual installation because some components are not part of the \TeX Live distribution.

nc **or** **ncf** Both options use math italics based on New Century Schoolbook, the difference between the two options is that the **ncf** option uses Greek math from the Fourier fonts, while **nc** retains the glyphs from the TX fonts. An example is given in Figure 12.20 on page 276.

noto **or** **notosans** Use Noto Serif or Noto Sans as the basis for the math italics. If you also want to use the Noto fonts as your text fonts, then it is better to use the **notomath** described in Section 12.3.7 on page 252.

stix2 This option bases the math italics on the STIX 2 fonts. An example is given in Figure 12.30 on page 282. Compare this to Figure 12.31, which shows the OpenType STIX 2 fonts, and to Figure 12.29 (based on OpenType STIX 1), both usable only in Unicode \TeX engines.

utopia **or** **erewhon** The Utopia clone Erewhon is used as the basis for the math italics; an example page is shown in Figure 12.32 on page 283.

There are a few more options related to reducing the number of allocated math alphabets. However, with the more recent addition of **localmathalphabets** to the \LaTeX kernel, this is less of an issue. See Section 9.4.1 on page 681 for details.

12.3.5 newpxmath — Using the PX fonts for math

Besides support for Times in math, Young Ryu also developed a set of math fonts to work together with Palatino-like font families. These PX fonts were based on a Palatino Italic clone, together with all necessary symbols to cover all of the standard \LaTeX and **amsmath** symbols. Unfortunately, just as with his TX fonts the PX fonts have metrics that are overly tight.

For this reason Michael Sharpe produced a new version, made a few glyph additions, and completely reworked the metrics. His fonts (New PX) are made available through the `newpxmath` package. Below are both fonts set side by side for comparison:

`\usepackage{amsmath,pxfonts}`

A problematic example:

`\[t[u_1, \dots, u_n] = \sum_{k=1}^n \binom{n-1}{k-1} (1-t)^{n-k} t^{k-1} u_k \]`

A problematic example:

$$t[u_1, \dots, u_n] = \sum_{k=1}^n \binom{n-1}{k-1} (1-t)^{n-k} t^{k-1} u_k$$

12-3-26

`\usepackage{amsmath,newpxtext,newpxmath}`

A better result:

`\[t[u_1, \dots, u_n] = \sum_{k=1}^n \binom{n-1}{k-1} (1-t)^{n-k} t^{k-1} u_k \]`

A better result:

$$t[u_1, \dots, u_n] = \sum_{k=1}^n \binom{n-1}{k-1} (1-t)^{n-k} t^{k-1} u_k$$

12-3-27

Michael's package alters only the math setup, so you are free to combine it with any text font to which you think it fits with. Above we have combined it with his companion package for text, called `newpxtext`. This uses an augmented version of T_EX Gyre Pagella (Palatino clone) with superior figures and an additional set of larger small capitals added. You can activate them in your document by adding the option `largesc`. The package also sets up T_EX Gyre Heros (Helvetica clone) appropriately scaled as the sans serif family; this can be prevented through the option `nohelv`. Figure 12.10 on page 269 shows the combination of `newpxtext` and `newpxmath` on a sample page.

Most of the general functionality seen with the `newtxmath` package is also available with `newpxmath`, so we rehash it here only with a few examples. There is the same extended set of integrals available both in slanted form (default) or upright when using the option `upint`. You can explicitly select either form by appending up or sl to the command names.

$\int \iint \iiint \int \oint \oint \oint \oint \oint \oint \oint \oint$
 $\int \iint \iiint \int \oint \dots \oint \oint$

12-3-28

`\usepackage[upint]{newpxmath}`

`\[\int \iint \iiint \iiint \oint \oint \oint \oint \oint \oint \oint \oint`
`\varointclockwise \ointctrclockwise \fint \sumint \sqint \]`
`\[\intsl \iintup \iiintsl \iiintup`
`\ointsl \ointup \ldots \sumintsl \sqintup \]`

As with `newtxmath` the package supports the full set of integrals upright and slanted in tiny size by prepending `small` to the integral command name.

$\int \iint \iiint \int \oint \oint \oint \oint \oint \oint \oint \oint$ $\int \iint \iiint \int \oint \oint \oint \oint \oint \oint \oint \oint$

12-3-29

The option `smallerops` forces all big operators to render about 20% smaller with the result that many display formulas occupy noticeably less vertical space.

Also supported are additional small operators and wide accents as exhibited here:

In running text: $\sum \sum_{i=1}^n \prod \prod_x^y \prod_z$	<code>\usepackage{newpxtext,newpxmath}</code>	
	In running text: $\sum \sum_{i=1}^n \prod \prod_x^y \prod_z$	<code>\sum \smallsum_{i=1}^n \prod \smallprod_x^y \smallcoprod \limits_z</code>
$\overline{AB} \overrightarrow{CDEF} \overleftarrow{LMN} \overline{\overline{XYZ}}$	$\overline{AB} \overrightarrow{CDEF} \overleftarrow{LMN} \overline{\overline{XYZ}}$	<code>\[\overgroup{AB} \enspace \overgrouppra{CDEF} \enspace \overgrouppla{\ldots LMN\ldots} \enspace \widening{XYZ} \]</code>
$\underline{abc} \underline{\underline{de}} \underline{\underline{\underline{xyz}}}$	$\underline{abc} \underline{\underline{de}} \underline{\underline{\underline{xyz}}}$	<code>\[\undergroup{abc} \enspace \undergrouppra{de} \enspace \undergrouppla{\ldots xyz} \]</code>

12-3-30

With the option `frenchmath` you set the default style in math mode for rendering uppercase Latin and all Greek letters to upright. Latin lowercase glyphs remain italic. You can still get the italic uppercase Latin glyphs by using `\mathnormal`.

<code>\usepackage{newpxtext}</code>	<code>\usepackage{newpxtext}</code>
<code>\usepackage{newpxmath}</code>	<code>\usepackage[frenchmath]{newpxmath}</code>
$\mathrm{A} = \alpha + \beta < A_k$	$A = \alpha + \beta < \mathnormal{A}_k$

12-3-31

12-3-32

If you want to follow the ISO style recommendations, you can set all uppercase Greek letters slanted by using the option `slantedGreek`. In any case, all commands to access Greek letters (upper or lowercase) have a variant to explicitly access the upright form by prepending `up` to the command name, e.g., `\upDelta`, `\upOmega`, `\upalpha`, `\upbeta`, etc.

The `newpxmath` package offers the same selection of blackboard bold math alphabets as `newtxmath` including the options `varbb` and `vvarbb` for a preselection and the commands `\vmathbb` and `\vvmathbb`.

<code>\usepackage{newpxtext}</code>	<code>\usepackage{newpxtext}</code>
<code>\usepackage{newpxmath}</code>	<code>\usepackage[vvarbb]{newpxmath}</code>
$\mathbb{A}N \text{ (default)} < \mathbb{A}N < \mathbb{A}N$	$\mathbb{A}N \text{ (default)} < \mathbb{A}N < \mathbb{A}N$

12-3-33

12-3-34

The subscript correction code is also available with the `newpxmath` when you specify `subscriptcorrection`. The default adjustments are more subtle compared to those made for other fonts, but still visible.

<code>\usepackage{newpxmath}</code>	<code>\usepackage[subscriptcorrection]{newpxmath}</code>
$x_j f A \rightarrow x_j \neq y_f \neq z_A$	$x_j f A \rightarrow x_j \neq y_f \neq z_A$

12-3-35

12-3-36

Michael offers only one alternative glyph in his version of the PX fonts: you can have either a math italic *g* (default) or, by specifying the option `varg`, this *g* shape.

12.3.6 mathpazo — Another Palatino-based approach for math

A package named `mathpple` supporting Adobe Palatino with matching math fonts was originally developed by Walter Schmidt (1960–2021) based on earlier work by Aloysius Helminck. It was built on the virtual font mechanism, combining symbols from Palatino, Symbol, Euler, and CM Math. Because these fonts only partly match the style of Palatino, Diego Puga developed a set of Type 1 fonts (Pazo Math) intended to repair the defects apparent in the initial `mathpple` solution.

The Pazo Math fonts contain glyphs that are unavailable in Palatino and for which Computer Modern or glyphs from Symbol look odd when combined with Palatino. These include a number of math glyphs, the uppercase Greek alphabet (upright and slanted), a blackboard bold alphabet, as well as several other glyphs (such as the euro symbol) in regular and bold weights and upright and slanted shapes.

The fonts are accessible with the `mathpazo` package developed by Diego Puga and Walter Schmidt as part of the PSNFSS collection. It makes Palatino the document text font and provides a math setup that works by using virtual fonts accessing Palatino Italic, the Pazo Math fonts, and CM fonts (for the remaining symbols).

An example showing a trigonometric function:

$$\sin \frac{\alpha}{2} = \pm \sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos \alpha}{2}}$$

12-3-37 Scripts: $A \neq \mathcal{A} \neq \mathbb{A}$.

`\usepackage{mathpazo}`

An example showing a trigonometric function:

`\[\sin \frac{\alpha}{2} = \pm \sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos \alpha}{2}} \]`

Scripts: `$ A \neq \mathcal{A}`
`\neq \mathbb{A} $.`

The package supports the option `slantedGreek` to make uppercase Greek letters slanted instead of upright (the default). In either case the two extra commands `\upDelta` and `\upOmega` print an upright Δ and Ω , respectively. The package also provides the functionality of the `exscale` package.

Pazo Math has bold font variants, but in contrast to the PX fonts, it does not offer dedicated fonts replacing the American Mathematical Society symbol fonts. Thus, the latter are unavailable (unless you additionally load `amssymb`), and they do not change their weight in a bold context if that package is loaded.

Bold is easy to achieve: $\alpha \neq A$. It also blends in well: $A \neq \mathbf{A} = \alpha - \gamma$.

`\usepackage{mathpazo,bm}`

Bold is easy to achieve: `\{\boldmath$\alpha \neq A$}`. It also blends in well:

`$A \neq \mathbf{A} = \bm{\alpha} - \bm{\gamma}$.`

As mentioned above, the Pazo Math fonts contain a blackboard bold alphabet, which can be accessed through the math alphabet identifier `\mathbb`. The font contains the uppercase Latin letters and the digit “1”. Be careful, however: all other digits are silently ignored!

ABCDEFGHIJK 1

`\usepackage{mathpazo}`

`$\mathbb{ABCDEFGHIJK}$ $\mathbb{0123}$`

If `\mathbb` should select a different alphabet, provided by some other package, it is best to suppress the Pazo Math one by using the option `noBBppl` when loading it.

Commercial Palatino fonts

The package also offers two additional options that deal with the use of commercially available Palatino fonts¹ for the text font: `sc` selects Palatino with true small capitals (font family name `pp1x`), and `osf` selects Palatino with small caps and oldstyle numerals (font family name `pp1j`) instead of basic Palatino (`pp1`).

12.3.7 notomath — Setting up Noto fonts for math and text

The Noto fonts is a huge collection of text fonts in Serif, Sans, and Mono designs available as OpenType fonts for many languages and scripts across the world. There are also Type 1 versions in T1 and other encodings (see Table 10.14 on page 28), and these are supported by Bob Tennent's `noto` package.

As part of `newtxmath` (with the option `noto` or `notosans`) Michael Sharpe provides math support for the Noto families; thus, in principle, his package, together with Bob's, would be sufficient to set a whole document in Noto Serif or Noto Sans. There are, however, a few wrinkles that make combining them nicely a bit awkward. Michael, therefore, offers `notomath` as a simple frontend package that does all necessary work for you behind the scenes.

If you want a document in Noto Serif, all you have to do is to load the package without options. This sets up Noto Serif for the body text and Noto Sans for `\textsf`. Both families are slightly scaled down to better fit with the mathematical symbols.

If instead you want Noto Sans as your main document font, add the option `sfdefault`. This changes the `\familydefault` but leaves the `\rmdefault` untouched; thus, `\textrm` still produces Noto Serif.

An example showing a trigonometric function:

$$\sin \frac{\alpha}{2} = \pm \sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos \alpha}{2}}$$

Scripts: $\mathcal{A} \neq \mathscr{A} \neq \mathfrak{A} \neq \mathbb{A}$.

`\usepackage[sfdefault]{notomath}`

An example showing a trigonometric function:

`\[\sin \frac{\alpha}{2} =`
`\pm \sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos \alpha}{2}} \]`

Scripts: `\mathcal{A}` `\neq` `\mathscr{A}`

`\neq` `\mathfrak{A}` `\neq` `\mathbb{A}` `\mathbb{A}` `\mathbb{A}`

12-3-40

Note that the typewriter family is not set up — the package uses whatever has already been set up when it is loaded. Thus, to be able to use the typewriter font in text also with math (via `\mathtt`), you should do the typewriter setup first. However, if you want to use Noto Mono as the typewriter font, you can simply specify the option `mono`. This then loads and scales down the family appropriately.

Package options that are relevant to the `noto` package can be given to `notomath`, which passes them on, e.g., `oldstyle` or `proportional` to alter the figure style. Similarly, the general options for `newtxmath` can all be given to `notomath` too, e.g., `varbb` or `upint`, but not those that change the math italic glyphs, e.g., `stix2`.

Figure 12.38 on page 287 shows a sample page using a Noto Serif setup, and in Figure 12.50 on page 295 you can study the same sample using Noto Sans instead.

¹These fonts are commercially available and are *not* part of the Base 35 fonts.

12.4 unicode-math — Using Unicode math fonts

The original motivation for developing \TeX engines that understand Unicode and accept UTF-8 input was the desire to use text fonts with more than 256 addressable glyphs. While the engines also supported such bigger fonts for use in formulas, this was of little relevance, simply because \TeX requires special attributes for fonts used in math, and no fonts, other than a few 8-bit fonts tailored for use with \TeX , offered this.

Furthermore, Unicode itself did not explicitly encode math symbols, except for very common ones also found in typical text fonts or that were a carry-over of 8-bit input encodings — i.e., keyboard layouts used across the world. Consequently, there was little incentive for devising a set of extended font encodings for mathematics; after all, there was no standard to follow, and any change would involve a huge effort. Thus, for a long time, all engines followed the traditional 8-bit font setup for typesetting as originally devised by Donald Knuth and only marginally changed since the eighties.¹

This started to change when mathematical symbols finally got embraced by the Unicode Consortium and code points for all standard symbols in use with \TeX and many more got defined. Once that had happened, the door of opportunity opened, and the first Unicode-encoded math fonts appeared not long after. Even though the \TeX world was the driving force in this adoption into Unicode, the focus of the first such fonts was by no means \TeX (but commercial systems such as Word); in fact, the new fonts initially missed crucial font parameters to make them usable with \TeX . However, that changed too over time, and now there a dozen or more free and commercial Unicode Math fonts that you can use for typesetting with \TeX .

If you have read Chapter 9, then you know that it is not enough to have fonts for math and \TeX engines that can access them. You also need hundreds of definitions that make commands (such as `\sum` or `\alpha`) fetch the right glyph from the correct slot in the appropriate font and apply the \TeX magic to make it become a binary, relational, or whatever math symbol. Obviously, in Unicode fonts the glyphs are stored in completely different places than in the 8-bit fonts to which the \LaTeX math commands are tailored to, so nothing would work if you load such a font.

To say it differently: in the past making a new symbol font available for use with \TeX meant (re)encoding the font so that it used the same slots as Computer Modern Symbol (`cmsy`), and then all \LaTeX math commands automatically selected the right glyphs. This is what the packages provide that we discussed in the previous section.

Now, with Unicode-encoded fonts, the \LaTeX commands have to change instead to make everything work with the new font setup, and this is what `unicode-math` by Will Robertson is undertaking for you, and which is the subject of this section.

Unicode engines

To use the `unicode-math` package, you need a Unicode engine, e.g., $\text{Lua}\TeX$ or $\text{Xe}\TeX$. Thus, the remainder of this section should be inside a box like this —

¹The fact that Don's fonts are really 7-bit fonts (leaving half of the available slots unused) was of some considerable concern, but the attempt to develop a set of real 8-bit encodings for math never got beyond the theoretical work [203] and a single prototype implementation using virtual fonts — the obstacles in introducing this and getting it embraced and used everywhere proved to be too large. But this work was not in vain, because it helped with the Unicode adoption later.

which is not done to avoid straining your eyes.

As a first simple example: all you need in order to typeset using Unicode Math fonts is to load the package and use a Unicode engine. Without further adjustments this typesets your document in Latin Modern Math OpenType fonts.

An example showing a trigonometric function:

$$\sin \frac{\alpha}{2} = \pm \sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos \alpha}{2}}$$

Scripts: $\mathcal{A} \equiv \mathcal{A} \neq \mathfrak{A} \neq \mathbb{A}$.

`\usepackage{unicode-math}`

An example showing a trigonometric function:

`\[\sin \frac{\alpha}{2} =`
`\pm \sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos \alpha}{2}} \]`

Scripts: `\mathcal{A}` `\equiv` `\mathscr{A}`
`\neq` `\mathfrak{A}` `\neq` `\mathbb{A}` `$`.

12-4-1

So what do you gain by loading the package (after all, Latin Modern is the default font for \LaTeX when using a Unicode engine)? The answer is that without making further adjustments (e.g., loading a different Unicode Math font), there is not much gain that it is immediately visible. You see that `\mathbb`, `\mathscr`, and `\mathfrak` are available without loading an extra package, but that is about all.¹

But there are already now invisible but important differences between the output of the above example and that of the similar ones from the previous section. These become noticeable if you take the PDF of the examples and copy and paste parts of the formula into a different application (or into a new document). If you use Example 12-4-1, then the α , for example, copies as the Unicode character U+1D6FC (*Mathematical Italic Small Alpha*), \neq copies as U+2260 (*Not Equal To*), and the three different “A” characters copy as U+1D49C (*Mathematical Script Capital A*), U+1D504 (*Mathematical Fraktur Capital A*), and U+1D538 (*Mathematical Double-Struck Capital A*), respectively. That is, they all carry their mathematical meaning as part of their Unicode character information with them.

If on the other hand you started from Example 12-3-37, then the α is pasted as a *Greek Small Alpha* (a text character) or even as an “a”, the \neq as \neq or worse, and the different capital A’s as simple identical ASCII A’s; i.e., the material becomes unusable for further processing. For the question of accessible PDFs, this makes quite a difference.

12.4.1 Math alphabets revisited

Math alphabets as used in \LaTeX were introduced in Section 9.4.1 on page 677 and further discussed in Section 12.1 in this chapter. In a nutshell, each is related to a font that has in its ASCII slot positions for A to Z (and sometimes a to z) glyphs that are suitable as special alphabetic letters in formulas, e.g., a calligraphic alphabet such as \mathcal{ABC} These alphabets fall into two distinct groups. There are those where each glyph is always intended to be used by its own, i.e., `\mathbb`, `\mathcal`, `\mathfrak`, `\mathnormal`, and `\mathscr`. The side-bearing of each glyph is specially adjusted to give them enough room when used as a single symbol in a formula, and that makes

¹As you see, `\mathscr` is in fact by default nothing more than a different name for `\mathcal`.

them often unsuitable and uneven looking, if you try to form words with them; e.g., while you could use `\mathcal` to typeset *CALLIGRAPHY*, it is clearly not what this alphabet was intended for.

The second group are those math alphabets that have a dual purpose. They can be used to typeset a single alphabetic character, e.g., $\forall g \in G$, but alternatively can also be used to properly typeset words or word fragments within a formula, e.g., V_{\min} . In this group we have `\mathbf`, `\mathit`, `\mathrm`, `\mathsf`, and `\mathtt`, and they all point to text fonts, which means that they provide proper kerning and ligatures if their argument consists of more than one character. The difference to the corresponding `\text{...}` commands (which can also be used in formulas) is that they do not change fonts based on surrounding conditions. For example, `\mathrm` is usually used to build the textual operators, such as \lim or \max , and it always produces the same roman letters in all formulas no matter what.

When the Unicode Consortium extended its support for mathematics, this dual rôle of some of the `\math{...}` alphabet commands in \LaTeX turned out to be somewhat of a problem. In the Unicode block “Mathematical Alphanumeric Symbols” U+1D400 to U+1D7FF, Unicode places Latin and Greek letters as separate mathematical alphabets. The description in the Unicode standard for this block reads:

Mathematical Alphanumeric Symbols

To be used for mathematical variables where style variations are important semantically. For general text, use standard Latin and Greek letters with markup.

Thus, the use of `\mathsf{G}` should produce U+1D5A6 (*Mathematical Sans-Serif Capital G*) in the PDF output, whereas `\mathsf{min}` should produce ordinary Latin letters, i.e., U+006D, U+0069, and U+006E.

To cater for this additional complexity, `unicode-math` introduced `\symsf` and similarly named commands that take one argument and expect it to contain a single Latin character from the ranges A...Z, a...z, or 0...9. These commands then output the corresponding character from the “Mathematical Alphanumeric Symbols” block of Unicode. Where applicable, e.g., for `\symbf`, they also accept commands such as `\alpha` or `\Omega` to produce Greek mathematical letters from this block. Table 12.1 shows the supported set of characters for the different `\sym{...}` commands — as you can see, Unicode is unfortunately somewhat selective in what is offered.

<code>\symrm{char}</code>	<code>\symbf{char}</code>	<code>\symsf{char}</code>	<code>\symtt{char}</code>
---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------

These four commands select an appropriate symbol for a given *char* from the mathematical alphanumeric symbols block of Unicode. `\symrm` and `\symtt` are always set upright; for the other two the result is either upright or italic depending on the chosen style selected through the package keys `bold-style` and `sans-style`; see Section 12.4.2 on page 257. There is also `\symnormal`, but this is essentially the same as just typesetting *char*.

<code>\symup{char}</code>	<code>\symsfup{char}</code>	<code>\symbfup{char}</code>	<code>\symbfsfup{char}</code>
<code>\symit{char}</code>	<code>\symsfit{char}</code>	<code>\symbfit{char}</code>	<code>\symbfsfit{char}</code>

If you want to explicitly set the style for a *char* regardless of the document setup, you can do so with one of these eight commands; e.g., `\symsfit{\delta}` generates a sans serif italic Greek delta, even if the `sans-style` is set to upright. In a similar fashion you can overwrite the package's bold-style setting and request a *char* in one of the above bold styles. Note that not all imaginable combinations are supported, but only those encoded by Unicode.

<code>\symbb{char}</code>	<code>\symbbit{char}</code>	<code>\symfrak{char}</code>	<code>\symbffrak{char}</code>
<code>\symcal{char}</code>	<code>\symbfcal{char}</code>	<code>\symscr{char}</code>	<code>\symbfscr{char}</code>

The traditional math alphabets offer fewer variations than those associated with text fonts, and in many font setups they support only uppercase letters. Note that the blackboard bold italic (`\symbbit`) is supported only for the letters D, d, e, i, and j in Unicode, so it is of comparably little use. Also important to know is that by default `\symcal` and `\symbfcal` are only synonyms for `\symscr` and `\symbfscr`.

In the next example, most of the commands discussed above are used, and the characters are dancing horribly in front of your eyes. Still, it is worth looking at the example from line to line and observing what changes and why.

```

\usepackage{amsmath,unicode-math}
\begin{gather*}
  a,b,X,Y,Z,\pi,\Gamma
  \symrm{a},\symbf{b},\symsf{Y},X,\symtt{Z},\symrm{\pi},\symit{\Gamma} \\\
  \symbfsfit{a},\symbfit{b},X,\symbfsfit{Y},\symbfsfup{Z},
  \symbfup{\pi},\symbfit{\Gamma} \\\
  \symfrak{a},\symbffrak{b},\symbb{X},\symscr{Y},\symbfscr{Z},
  \symbfit{\pi},\symbfsf{\Gamma} \\\
  \symbb{0},\symbb{1},\symbb{2},\symbb{3},\dots,
  \symbfsfup{7},\symbfsfup{8},\symbfsfup{9}
\end{gather*}

```

a, b, X, Y, Z, π, Γ
a, b, Y, X, Z, π, Γ
a, b, X, Y, Z, π, Γ
a, b, ℵ, ℶ, ℷ, π, Γ
0, 1, 2, 3, ..., 7, 8, 9

12-4-2

If the default set of math alphabet, i.e., `bb`, `bf`, `cal`, `frak`, `sf`, and `tt`, are not sufficient, you can declare additional ones for 8-bit fonts for which you know the NFSS values with `\DeclareMathAlphabet`; see Section 9.4.1 on page →I 677. For Unicode fonts use `\setmathfontface` instead.

<code>\setmathfontface{cmd}{font name} [font features]</code>

The *cmd* can be any command name, though something like `\math...` or `\mathtext...` would be customary and fit well with other math alphabets.¹ The *font name* and *font features* are describing the Unicode (text) font and are passed to the `fontspec` package for loading; see Section 9.6 on page →I 705. In the following example we define `\mathhw` and assign the handwriting font *Miama Nueva* to it. Because of

¹There is a good chance that L^AT_EX adopts both `\sym...` and `\mathtext...` as the new standard for all engines during the next years — this is currently under discussion to bridge the gap between 8-bit and Unicode engines.

Command	Math alphabet			Affected characters			
	family	series	shape	Latin	Greek	Numeral	
<code>\symnormal</code>	serif	medium	^(a)	•	•	(•)	A (•) indicates that numerals are always set upright.
<code>\symbf</code>		bold	^(b)	•	•	•	
<code>\symrm^(c)</code>		medium	upright	•		•	
<code>\symsf</code>	sans serif	medium	^(d)	•		•	^(a) The shape depends on the setting for math-style and may differ for different characters.
<code>\symtt</code>	typewriter	medium	upright	•		•	
<code>\symup</code>	serif	medium	upright	•	•	•	^(b) The shape depends on the setting for bold-style and may differ for different characters.
<code>\symit</code>			italic	•	•	(•)	
<code>\symbfup</code>		bold	upright	•	•	•	
<code>\symbf^(c)</code>	sans serif	medium	upright	•		•	^(c) This is just a synonym for <code>\symup</code> .
<code>\symsfup</code>			italic	•		(•)	
<code>\symsf^(d)</code>		bold	upright	•	•	•	
<code>\symbfsfup</code>			italic	•	•	(•)	^(d) The shape depends on the setting for sans-style and may be upright or italic throughout.
<code>\symbfsf^(e)</code>	blackboard	medium	upright	•		•	
<code>\symbbit</code>		medium	italic	• ^(e)			
<code>\symscr</code>	script/cal ^(f)	medium	upright	•			^(e) There is only support for the characters D, d, e, i, and j in Unicode.
<code>\symbfscr</code>		bold	upright	•			
<code>\symfrac</code>	fraktur	medium	upright	•			^(f) By default <code>\symcal</code> and <code>\symbcal</code> just are synonyms for <code>\symscr</code> and <code>\symbfscr</code> .
<code>\symbffrak</code>		bold	upright	•			

Table 12.1: Behavior and argument scope of `\sym...` commands

its large design size we have to rigorously scale it down to match the size of Latin Modern used for the rest of the glyphs.

12-4-3

$$\begin{array}{l}
 ABCDEFG \neq ABCDEF \mathcal{G} \\
 X_{\text{writing}}^{\text{Hand}} \not\approx X_{\text{writing}}^{\text{Formal}}
 \end{array}$$

```

\usepackage{amsmath,unicode-math}
\setmathfontface{\mathhw{Miama Nueva}}[Scale=.75]
\begin{align*}
\mathhw{ABCDEFG} &\&\neq \mathcal{ABCDEFG} \\
X^{\mathhw{Hand}}_{\mathhw{writing}} &\&\not\approx X^{\mathrm{Formal}}_{\mathit{writing}}
\end{align*}

```

Note that for alphabets defined in this way, there are no dedicated Unicode ranges, so they are all placed as ordinary Latin characters into the PDF.

12.4.2 Adjusting the formula style

By default formulas typeset with T_EX use an italic alphabet for variables denoted by Latin characters. Lowercase Greek letters are also in italic, but uppercase Greek is set upright. While this is a widely accepted style, it is by no means the only one in use. ISO recommends the use of italics throughout (i.e., uppercase Greek in italics

A choice of italic or upright Greek and Latin letters

All five package keys also support the special value `literal`, which means that `unicode-math` does not undertake any input normalization (e.g., typeset Latin letters in italic) but uses the style given by the source character; e.g., if it is a *Latin Small X* (U+0078), it typesets an upright *x*, but if it is *Mathematical Italic Small X* (U+1D465), it typesets it as *x* in the formula; see the package documentation when this might be useful. You can also force “literal” style through `\symliteral`, which undoes the effect of `\symnormal`.

Forcing literal input style

12.4.3 Setting up Unicode math fonts

Up until now we have loaded `unicode-math`, which gives us the features and commands described, but our documents are still typeset using Latin Modern, because that is \TeX 's default in Unicode engines. If we want to use a different Unicode math font, we need to tell the package about it.

Changing the main font for math formulas

```
\setmathfont{family}[feature-list]
```

This declaration sets up the math font *family* to be used (which needs to be a specially prepared font). The command is modeled after the declarations provided by the `fontspec` package, e.g., `\setmainfont`, and you may want to review Section 9.6.1 on page 706 to familiarize yourself with the different ways to find and specify the *family* name and the various features that you can put into the *feature-list*.

There are a few keys that are specific to setting up math fonts, and those are discussed below. However, it is often enough to just give the right *family* name, as shown in the next example where we use Fira Sans and Fira Math for typesetting.

An example showing a trigonometric function:

$$\sin \frac{\alpha}{2} = \pm \sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos \alpha}{2}}$$

```
\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{Fira Sans}
\usepackage{unicode-math} \setmathfont{Fira Math}
```

An example showing a trigonometric function:

```
\[ \sin \frac{\alpha}{2} =
\pm \sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos \alpha}{2}} \]
```

Scripts: $A \neq \mathbb{A}$; no other math alphabets are available in Fira Sans.

Scripts: $\$A \neq \text{\textbb{A}} \$$; no other math alphabets are available in Fira Sans.

12-4-5

Well-known mathematical functions (such as $\sin \alpha$ and $\cos \beta$) are usually typeset in a font distinct from surrounding letters denoting variables in a formula. In \TeX such functions are declared with `\DeclareMathOperator`; see Section 11.6.2 on page 192. They all use the same fixed font, typically upright roman (e.g., `\mathrm`). With `\setoperatorfont{alphabet}` the `unicode-math` package offers a simple way to choose a different math alphabet for this task. For example, after `\setoperatorfont{\mathsf}` you get $\sin \alpha$ and $\cos \beta$ in your formulas.

Adjusting the “operator” font

Adjusting parts of the font setup

Simply adding a single `\setmathfont` declaration works fine if the Unicode math font that you use implements all the math glyphs that you are interested in. However, this may not be the case. You may find that individual characters or whole alphabets

Making adjustments for a range of characters

are missing, in which case you need to provide some additional declarations. For example, the Fira Math fonts used above do not offer a script or a fraktur math alphabet, and many examples in Section 12.5 miss individual symbols that need to be provided from elsewhere. For this you can use the `range` key.

In the next example we repeat the setup from above but add a second declaration that loads the STIX 2 math font. By specifying a `range`, we tell the loader that it should be replacing only the ranges `frak` and `scr` and leave the rest of the math setup alone. As a result we can now typeset in all three math alphabets (though our choice of using the STIX font alphabets is not that great).

```
\usepackage{fontspec}      \setmainfont{Fira Sans}      % text setup
\usepackage{unicode-math} \setmathfont{Fira Math}      % math setup
\setmathfont{STIX Two Math Regular}[range={frak,scr}] % replacement
```

Scripts: $A \neq \mathcal{A} \neq \mathbb{A} \neq \mathfrak{A}$ Scripts: $\$A \backslash neq \backslash symscr{A} \backslash neq \backslash symbb{A} \backslash neq \backslash symfrak{A} \$$

12-4-6

The previous example showed “named” ranges as the value for the `range` key. The supported names are `bb`, `bbit`, `bfcalf`, `bffrak`, `bfit`, `bfscr`, `bfsfit`, `bfsfup`, `bfup`, `cal`, `frak`, `it`, `scr`, `sfit`, `sfup`, `tt`, and `up` — hopefully all self-explanatory.

*Replacing individual
characters or adding
missing ones*

They are useful if you want to include a whole alphabet from a different font, but perhaps you need to add only a few missing characters. In that case the syntax is a comma-separated list of hexadecimal slot numbers, e.g., `range={"2A04,"2A0C}`, which we need in Figure 12.26 on page 279 to make the example work. Note that you need braces around the value if it contains commas.

If you want to load a consecutive range (one that is not matching any of the named ones), you can simplify the input, by giving the start and end hexadecimal codes separated by a hyphen instead of a comma, e.g., `"27D0-"27EB`. There are further (less often needed) syntax variations: see the package documentation if the above does not seem sufficient.

*Script and
scriptscript fonts
and features*

Characters in formulas come in three sizes, e.g., a^{a^a} (text, script, and second-order script size). In many situations, \TeX simply loads the same font at three different sizes, but this is not always the case. Some font families, such as Computer or Latin Modern, have separate optically adjusted fonts for different sizes and thus for different sizes different fonts are loaded (see Figure 9.6 on page 1657 for an example). With OpenType fonts, such optical adjustments may all be bundled in a single font and selected through font features — for example, with Cambria Math.

To cater for both approaches (or a combination thereof), `unicode-math` offers the keys `script-font` and `sscript-font` to select alternate fonts for the index sizes and `script-features` and `sscript-features` to apply individual feature lists for them. The keys are preset with `Style=MathScript` and `Style=MathScriptScript`, respectively, which are the correct settings in most cases.

*Providing several
math versions*

In standard \LaTeX you can switch “math versions” (different setups for formulas) using `\mathversion{version}`. By default, two *versions* are provided, `normal` and `bold`, and with the mechanisms described on Section 9.8.5 on page 1753 you can define further versions, if necessary. This concept of versions is also supported for Unicode fonts, but because these fonts are loaded differently, the declaration mechanism differs too. To indicate that a Unicode font is for a specific *version*, use

```
\setmathfont{family}[version=version,... other features...]
```

12.5 A visual comparison of different math setups

In this section we repeatedly show the same sample text, typeset with different font setups for math and text. It assumes `amsmath` and with `pdfTeX` also the `bm` package.

We start by briefly discussing the input used, highlighting points to look at in the examples with blue color. At the beginning of the example file, we define `\ibinom`, which is used later. This is followed by the section title, which differs in each example, denoted here with three dots:

```
\newcommand\ibinom[2]{\genfrac\lbrace\rbrace{0pt}{}{#1}{#2}}
\section*{...}
```

In the first paragraph we use a `\smash` around the first inline formula in order to avoid it pushing the baseline apart. One point to keep track of in the output is the different math alphabets (always used with the letter Q), and you should compare their results — here we use the calligraphic one. Also noteworthy are the different integrals: in some examples they are shown upright.

```
First some large operators both in text:
\smash{$ \ibint\limits_{\mathcal{Q}} f(x,y,z)\,dx\,dy\,dz $} and
$ \prod_{\gamma\in\Gamma_{\widetilde{C}}}
\partial(\widetilde{X}_{\gamma}) $; and also on display:
```

The first line of the split equation is deliberately long so as to show differences in widths in different font setups; it is a little wider than the space needed with Computer Modern fonts. `\ibint` is marked blue, because it is missing in some OpenType fonts. The output line also shows two further “Q”s, both bold, but one produced with `\mathbf`, and the other with `\bm` from the `bm` package.¹

```
\begin{equation} \begin{split}
\ibint\limits_{\mathbf{Q}} f(w,x,y,z)dwxdydz
& \leq \oint_{\bm{\partial Q}} f' \left( \max \left\{ \frac{w}{w^2 + x^2} \right. \right. \\
& \quad \left. \frac{z}{y^2 + z^2} \right. \\
& \quad \left. \left. \frac{w}{w^2 + x^2} \right\} \right) \right) \end{split}
```

The three symbols \mathbb{Q} (from core \TeX) and \mathbb{Q} and \mathbb{Q} (from the American Mathematical Society symbol set) are all problematical (i.e., missing) in one or the other OpenType font and there are some further “Q”s. This time we have two blackboard bold (`\mathbb`) and another ordinary bold one. Further down we have marked `\nu` and `v` blue, as an example of glyphs that may be hard to distinguish in some font families.

```
& \precapprox \biguplus_{\mathbb{Q}} \bar{\mathbf{Q}}
\left[ f^{\ast} \left( \frac{\left\{ \text{moustache} \mathbb{Q} (t) \right\}}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - ( \Delta + \nu - v )^3
\end{split} \end{equation}
```

¹In the Unicode font examples `\symbf` is used instead of `\bm`.

The next paragraph gives you an indication for the running length of the text and math fonts if you take a look at where the two words in blue show up:

For x in the open interval $]-1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation~\eqref{eq:binom1} is **convergent**; **however**, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

In the last equation we have two places where there may be spacing issues with superscripts and another blackboard alphabet character, this time “N”.

```
\begin{equation}
(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \binom{k}{j} x^j
\text{\quad for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad \label{eq:binom1}
\end{equation}
```

Figure 12.1 shows the sample text typeset in Computer Modern text and math fonts — the default font setup in L^AT_EX. We reuse this input throughout the remainder of this section to exhibit different font setups and allow you to compare them with each other. The only thing that changes is the section title.

The remaining examples (Figures 12.2 to 12.51) in this section follow the classification we introduced in Chapter 10. The fonts in some groups, e.g., Humanist serif, have no matching math support at all, in which case we bypass them, but otherwise

Mathematical typesetting with Computer Modern

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{\mathbb{Q} \in \mathbb{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int \mathbb{Q}(t)}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - v)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $]-1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-1-fig

Figure 12.1: Sample page typeset with Computer Modern text + math fonts

the order is preserved so that you can easily hunt for similar text fonts to go with a certain math setup or vice versa.

Each setup is explained in the accompanying text, e.g., on some occasions we use special package options or have to substitute a few glyphs, because they are missing in the font.¹

Many font setups can be used both with pdfTeX or Unicode engines — in this case we show the pdfTeX version in the book. With fonts that are not usable with pdfTeX, the sample has been processed with LuaTeX. This is explained in the text, but also visually indicated by displaying the figure caption with a gray background, e.g., Figure 12.5.

12.5.1 Garalde (Oldstyle) serif fonts with math support

Math support for the Crimson family of fonts designed by Sebastian Kosch is provided by Michael Sharpe through his `newtxmath` package by passing it the option `cochineal`. To set up matching text fonts you can use either `CrimsonPro` or `cochineal`; see Section 10.4.3 on page 40 for the differences. For Figure 12.2 we used the following simple setup:

*Crimson, Crimson
Pro, and Cochineal*

```
\usepackage{cochineal} \usepackage[cochineal]{newtxmath}
```

¹Especially with OpenType fonts that can happen rather easily. It is therefore quite important to use `\tracinglostchars=3` in your document preamble to receive an error message in such a case.

Mathematical typesetting with Cochineal

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \mathcal{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int \mathcal{Q}(t) \, t}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\beta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \begin{Bmatrix} k \\ j \end{Bmatrix} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-2-fig

Figure 12.2: Sample page typeset with Cochineal text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with EB Garamond

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int Q(t) \setminus \setminus}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\beta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-3-fig

Figure 12.3: Sample page typeset with EB Garamond text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Garamondx

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int Q(t) \setminus \setminus}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\beta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-4-fig

Figure 12.4: Sample page typeset with Garamondx text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Garamond Math

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\bar{c}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial \mathbb{Q}} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{\mathbb{Q} \in \mathbb{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\mathbb{Q}(t)}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\beta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-5-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.5: Sample page typeset with Garamond Libre + Garamond Math fonts

There are many revivals of the fonts designed by Claude Garamond, and a number of them have been made freely available for use with T_EX; see Sections 10.4.4 to 10.4.7.

A number of setups based on Garamond

We show three combinations: EB Garamond designed by Georg Duffner and Octavio Pardoin for math and text (Figure 12.3); Garamondx, a reworking of URW's Garamond by Michael Sharpe, in math and text (Figure 12.4); and a combination of Garamond Libre by D. Benjamin Miller for text and Garamond Math by Yuansheng Zhao and Xiangdong Zeng (Figure 12.5). The setup used for EB Garamond was:

```
\usepackage[lining,semibold,scaled=1.05]{ebgaramond}
\usepackage[ebgaramond,varbb,subscriptcorrection]{newtxmath}
```

and somewhat simpler for Garamondx:

```
\usepackage{garamondx} \usepackage[garamondx]{newtxmath}
```

Compared to Garamondx, EB Garamond runs slightly shorter (which can be seen in the second paragraph) even though it is scaled up a bit. Otherwise, the differences are small with some differences in individual letter forms, such as the ν and the different blackboard bold alphabet.

The OpenType Garamond Math font (which offers some stylistic sets, not used) is available only for Unicode engines, and the setup that we used looks as follows:

```
\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{Garamond Libre}
\usepackage{unicode-math} \setmathfont{Garamond Math}
\setmathfont{Asana Math}[range="2AB7,Scale=.84]
```

The last line shows a substitution because a character was missing — note the scaling.

Mathematical typesetting with Kp Roman Light

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\mathbb{C}}} \partial(\widetilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{(\mathcal{Q}(t))}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-6-fig

Figure 12.6: Sample page typeset with Kp Roman Light text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Kp Roman

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\mathbb{C}}} \partial(\widetilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{(\mathcal{Q}(t))}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-7-fig

Figure 12.7: Sample page typeset with Kp Roman text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Kp Roman

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathcal{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_{\mathcal{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial \mathcal{Q}} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{\mathcal{Q} \in \tilde{\mathcal{Q}}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{f(\mathcal{Q}(t))}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\beta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-8-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.8: Sample page typeset with KpRoman + Kp Math fonts

The Kp family of fonts by Christophe Caignaert is based on the Palatino design and offers full math support in all engines. On this page we show three variations. The first two use `kpfonts` for `pdfTeX`, which comes with a huge number of options for customization, out of which we have chosen seven. The setup for Figure 12.6 was this:

```
\usepackage[light,lighttext,narrowiints,frenchstyle]{kpfonts}
```

This applies lighter fonts, both for text and math, and brings multiple integrals closer together. Finally, `frenchstyle` typesets all math letters — except for lowercase Latin letters — upright (Q, γ, C, X in the first line). Figure 12.7 then used this setup:

```
\usepackage[oldstyle,oldstylenumsmath,sfmathbb]{kpfonts}
```

Here, the `oldstyle` option is responsible for the extra ligatures, e.g., in “First”, and for the `oldstylenumsmath` requests them also in math; and `sfmathbb` changes the blackboard bold alphabet to sans serif.

The final example exhibits the OpenType versions of the family, as provided by Daniel Flipo. He also offers the package `kpfonts-otf` to set them up, but for Figure 12.8 we have used `fontspec` and `unicode-math` instead, because that also shows how to combine the math fonts with other text families.

```
\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{KpRoman}
\usepackage[math-style=ISO]{unicode-math} \setmathfont{Kp Math}[StylisticSet=3]
```

The feature `StylisticSet=3` sets the integral closer; for a full set of features see the font documentation or the `kpfonts-otf` package documentation.

The Kp (Johannes Kepler) fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Math Pazo

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz \leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ \approx \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int Q(t)}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\theta} - (\Delta + \nu - v)^3 \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-9-fig

Figure 12.9: Sample page typeset with Palatino text + Pazo Math fonts

*Different math
setups for use with
Palatino*

The typeface Palatino was designed by Hermann Zapf (1918–2015) for the Stempel foundry in 1948 based on lettering from the Italian Renaissance. Since then it has become one of the most widely used typefaces, and probably the most popular Old Style revival in existence [26]. A number of math font setups are available for use with Palatino as the text font.

Figure 12.9 shows the freely available Pazo Math fonts (designed by Diego Puga), which can be activated with `\usepackage{mathpazo}`. It offers boldface symbols and a matching blackboard bold alphabet but does not contain specially designed shapes for the AMS symbol set; see also Section 12.3.6.

In contrast, the free PX fonts (designed by Young Ryu) comprise the complete symbol set. Shown in Figure 12.10 is the version of the fonts that was reworked by Michael Sharpe; see also Section 12.3.5 on page 248. The setup used for the example was the following simple line:

```
\usepackage{newpxtext,newpxmath}
```

For comparison Figure 12.11 combines Pagella with the Kp fonts for math using the following setup:

```
\usepackage{newpxtext} \usepackage[notext]{kpfonts}
```

The `notext` option for `kpfonts` tells the package to only set up math font support but leave the text fonts untouched.

Mathematical typesetting with Pagella/New PX

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\bar{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \mathbb{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{f(Q(t))}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-10-fig

Figure 12.10: Sample page typeset with Pagella text + New PX math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Pagella/Kp

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\bar{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \mathbb{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{f(Q(t))}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-11-fig

Figure 12.11: Sample page typeset with Pagella text + Kp math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Pagella

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\mathbb{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial \mathbb{Q}} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{\mathbb{Q} \in \tilde{\mathbb{Q}}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\mathbb{Q}(t)}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - v)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ j \atop k \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-12-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.12: Sample page typeset with Pagella + Pagella Math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Pagella/Asana

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\mathbb{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial \mathbb{Q}} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{\mathbb{Q} \in \tilde{\mathbb{Q}}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\mathbb{Q}(t)}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - v)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ j \atop k \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-13-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.13: Sample page typeset with Pagella + Asana Math fonts

When it comes to Unicode engines, there are a few additional alternatives available. The T_EX Gyre foundry (Bogusław Jackowski, Piotr Pianowski, Piotr Strzelczyk) developed a set of OpenType math fonts to accompany their text fonts, one of which is Pagella Math. The sample in Figure 12.12 was produced with the following setup:

```
\usepackage{fontspec}      \setmainfont{TeX Gyre Pagella}
\usepackage{unicode-math}  \setmathfont{TeX Gyre Pagella Math}
\setmathfont{Asana Math}[range="2AB7,Scale=1.1]
```

Again, we have to fix a missing character by using a scaled version from Asana Math, but this time we have to enlarge it to get the correct size.

In the final example involving Palatino, we pair it with Asana Math by Apostolos Syropoulos. This font has no missing glyphs, so we simply load it with the help of `unicode-math`: the result is shown in Figure 12.13 on the facing page.

```
\usepackage{fontspec}      \setmainfont{TeX Gyre Pagella}
\usepackage{unicode-math}  \setmathfont{Asana Math}
```

12.5.2 Transitional serif fonts with math support

Among the transitional serif typefaces there are many with matching math support. As always, we progress in alphabetical order starting with versions of Baskerville. Figure 12.14 exhibits BaskervilleF, and Figures 12.15 and 12.16 on the next page show Baskervaldx. In all cases the math support was developed by Michael Sharpe.

Mathematical typesetting with BaskervilleF

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) \, dx \, dy \, dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) \, dw \, dx \, dy \, dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{f(Q(t))}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\theta} - (\Delta + \nu - v)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-14-fig

Figure 12.14: Sample page typeset with BaskervilleF text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Baskervaldx

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{\mathbb{Q} \in \tilde{\mathbb{Q}}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int \mathbb{Q}(t) \setminus}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-15-fig

Figure 12.15: Sample page typeset with Baskervaldx text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Baskervaldx and Times

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{\mathbb{Q} \in \tilde{\mathbb{Q}}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int \mathbb{Q}(t) \setminus}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-16-fig

Figure 12.16: Sample page typeset with Baskervaldx text + Times math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Bonum

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma} \partial(\tilde{X}_\gamma)$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_{\mathfrak{g}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial \mathfrak{g}} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\lesssim \bigcup_{Q \in \bar{\mathfrak{g}}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{Q(t)}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=a}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-17-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.17: Sample page typeset with Bonum + Bonum Math fonts

Figure 12.14 on page 271 was produced by loading BaskervilleF's support package [Math setups for Baskerville](#) with an option to get oldstyle numerals in text, and the math was set up using Michael's workhorse newtxmath with an appropriate option.

```
\usepackage[osf]{baskervillef} \usepackage[baskervillef]{newtxmath}
```

The showcases for Baskervaldx on the opposite page were produced in a similar fashion, except that we used a few more options and also deployed a different calligraphic math alphabet with the help of the mathalpha package:

```
\usepackage[osf]{Baskervaldx} \usepackage[baskervaldx,vvarbb]{newtxmath}
\usepackage[cal=boondoxo]{mathalfa} % \mathcal from STIX, slightly slanted
```

The setup for the combination of Baskervaldx with Times in Figure 12.16 is again simpler: `\usepackage{Baskervaldx,newtxmath}`.

The Bookman (Bonum) fonts have a matching math font for Unicode engines [Bookman math support with Unicode engines](#) produced by the T_EX Gyre foundry. Again, we have to fix a missing glyph.

```
\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{TeX Gyre Bonum}
\usepackage{unicode-math} \setmathfont{TeX Gyre Bonum Math}
\setmathfont{KpMath}[range="2AB7,Scale=1.2] % difficult to find a good match
```


Mathematical typesetting with Cambria

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{c}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int Q(t)}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + v - v)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-18-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.18: Sample page typeset with Cambria text and math fonts

*Cambria math
support with
Unicode engines*

Cambria is a font family commissioned by Microsoft. It is one of the two commercial font families described in this book, because of its excellent math support and because of the fact that, despite its commercial nature, it is available to most users because it is shipped as part of the Windows operating system and several office products on different platforms. The sample shown in Figure 12.18 was produced with the following setup:

```
\usepackage{fontspec}      \setmainfont{Cambria}
\usepackage{unicode-math}  \setmathfont{Cambria Math}
```

Cambria math works well with many other transitional font families that do not have dedicated math support.

*Bitstream Charter
math support*

The Bitstream Charter fonts are best accessed through the XCharter package by Michael Sharpe, and matching math support is provided by the same author as part of his newtxmath package. For the sample in Figure 12.19 on the opposite page we used both, each with a number of options. The text fonts are slightly scaled down and use oldstyle figures, and we have slightly increased leading with `\linespread`.

For the math we scale the fonts slightly up, request an alternative to Charter's normal italic y, and use upright integrals and one of the alternative blackboard bold alphabets offered by the newtxmath package. This makes the setup look as follows:

```
\usepackage[scaled=.98,osf]{XCharter}    \linespread{1.04}
\usepackage[charter,scaled=1.05,alty,upint,vvarbb]{newtxmath}
```

Mathematical typesetting with Bitstream Charter

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{y \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_y)$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \bar{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{f(Q(t))}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\beta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \binom{k}{j} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-19-fig

Figure 12.19: Sample page typeset with XCharter text + math fonts

New Century Schoolbook has two notably different sets of matching math fonts. [New Century Schoolbook math support](#) Figure 12.20 on the next page shows the version by Michael Sharpe, generated with the following setup: `\usepackage{tgschola} \usepackage[ncf]{newtxmath}`. The newtxmath package can also be used with Unicode engines. However, you need to load the text font through fontspec, as shown below:

The second setup, exhibited in Figure 12.21, is again a work of the T_EX Gyre foundry; this is how the sample was produced:

```
\usepackage{fontspec}      \setmainfont{TeX Gyre Schola}
\usepackage{unicode-math}  \setmathfont{TeX Gyre Schola Math}
\setmathfont{KpMath}[range="2AB7,Scale=1.2] % difficult to find a good match
```

Page 277 shows examples of Libertine (Libertinus) by Philipp H. Poll and the math [Libertinus math support](#) support available for it. Figure 12.22 exhibits the math fonts by Michael Sharpe; we used the following setup to produce it:

```
\usepackage{libertinus} \usepackage[libertine,upint]{newtxmath}
```

There is also an OpenType font to accompany Libertinus designed by Khaled Hosny. This time we used the New Computer Modern Book font (which is slightly bold) and scaled it down by 10% to replace the missing glyphs.

```
\usepackage{fontspec}      \setmainfont{Libertinus Serif}
\usepackage{unicode-math}  \setmathfont{Libertinus Math}
\setmathfont{NewCMMath-Book}[range={"22D0","2AB7"},Scale=.9]
```

New Century Schoolbook text & math

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\lesssim \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{f(Q(t))}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\theta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-20-fig

Figure 12.20: Sample page typeset with New Century Schoolbook text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Schola

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\lesssim \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{Q(t)}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\theta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-21-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.21: Sample page typeset with Schola + Schola Math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Libertine

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int Q(t)}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-22-fig

Figure 12.22: Sample page typeset with Libertinus text + Libertine math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Libertinus

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int Q(t)}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-23-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.23: Sample page typeset with Libertinus + Libertinus Math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Lucida Bright

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathcal{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{y \in \Gamma_{\tilde{c}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_y)$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_{\mathcal{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial \mathcal{Q}} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \biguplus_{\mathbb{Q} \in \mathbb{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\left\lfloor \mathbb{Q}(t) \right\rfloor}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-24-fig

Figure 12.24: Sample page typeset with Lucida Bright text + Lucida Math fonts

Lucida Bright
math support

Three examples of Lucida Bright and Lucida New Math fonts are exhibited on this double spread. This set of commercial text and math fonts has been designed by Charles Bigelow and Kris Holmes and can be obtained from the T_EX Users Group at a reduced price for members. The font bundle covers all standard mathematical symbols including AMS additions. It can be used with all engines, but there are some differences in scope and design of individual glyphs between Type 1 and OpenType fonts.

As you will notice, the formulas run very wide, which enhances legibility at the cost of space. In this book the body font is Lucida Bright; however, for the examples we usually used Computer Modern to make them come out as in standard L^AT_EX.

In pdfT_EX, all that you need to do to set text and math in Lucida Bright is to load the package `lucidabr` (with options `expert` and `T1`)—this is what we did for Figure 12.24. For ways to use only some of its text fonts, see Section 10.2.10 on page 21. By default, `lucidabr` scales the fonts down, and if you use the OpenType versions directly, you probably want to do that too. So here is the setup for Figure 12.25:

```
\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{Lucida Bright OT}[Scale=.95]
\usepackage{unicode-math}\setmathfont{Lucida Bright Math OT}[Scale=.95]
```

The Lucida families also contain a full demibold series, albeit only in OpenType format. These are shown for comparison in Figure 12.26. However, the demibold faces are incomplete, and again we had to substitute two characters—can you spot them?

```
\usepackage{fontspec}\setmainfont{Lucida Bright OT Demibold}[Scale=.95]
\usepackage{unicode-math}
\setmathfont{Lucida Bright Math OT Demibold}[Scale=.95]
\setmathfont{Lucida Bright Math OT}[range={"2A04,"2A0C"},Scale=.95]
```

Mathematical typesetting with Lucida Bright

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{y \in \Gamma_c} \partial(\tilde{X}_y)$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \biguplus_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{Q(t)}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=9} - (\Delta + v - v)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-25-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.25: Sample page typeset with Lucida Bright + Math fonts

Mathematics with Lucida Bright Demibold

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{y \in \Gamma_c} \partial(\tilde{X}_y)$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \biguplus_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{Q(t)}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=9} - (\Delta + v - v)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-26-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.26: Sample page typeset with Lucida Bright Demibold + Math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Times (TX)

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{c}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int Q(t)}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\beta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \begin{Bmatrix} k \\ j \end{Bmatrix} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-27-fig

Figure 12.27: Sample page typeset with Times text (Termes) + TX math fonts

Times Roman math support

With Times Roman being one of the predominant fonts in use today, several solutions have been developed to provide support for it. This page spread and the next show five math font setups for use with Times Roman or a similar design as a body font. Figure 12.27 exhibits the TX fonts reworked by Michael Sharpe; see also Section 12.3.4 on page 243. The setup is as follows:

```
\usepackage{newtxtext} \usepackage[upint,subscriptcorrection]{newtxmath}
```

In Figure 12.28 the T_EX Gyre foundry solution is presented. One can argue that the j is set too tight. Here is the setup:

```
\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{TeX Gyre Termes}
\usepackage{unicode-math} \setmathfont{TeX Gyre Termes Math}
\setmathfont{KpMath}[range="2AB7] % ok without scaling this time
```

Figure 12.29 shows fonts by Khaled Hosny based on STIX version 1 with smaller running length compared to STIX 2. All fonts based on STIX implement the full range of mathematical symbols including boldface variants, so no substitutions are needed.

```
\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{XITS}
\usepackage{unicode-math} \setmathfont{XITS Math}
```

In Figure 12.30 on page 282 we have Michael Sharpe's setup for the STIX 2 fonts:

```
\usepackage[p,osf]{stickstootext} \usepackage[stix2,vvarbb]{newtxmath}
```

and Figure 12.31 shows the OpenType version of the fonts:

```
\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{STIX Two Text}
\usepackage{unicode-math} \setmathfont{STIX Two Math Regular}
```

Mathematical typesetting with Termes

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathcal{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_{\mathcal{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial \mathcal{Q}} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{\mathcal{Q} \in \tilde{\mathcal{Q}}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\mathcal{Q}(t)}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-28-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.28: Sample page typeset with Termes + Termes Math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with XITS

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathcal{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_{\mathcal{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial \mathcal{Q}} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{\mathcal{Q} \in \tilde{\mathcal{Q}}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\mathcal{Q}(t)}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-29-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.29: Sample page typeset with XITS + XITS Math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with STIX 2

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\bar{c}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \bar{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{f(Q(t))}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-30-fig

Figure 12.30: Sample page typeset with STIX 2 using package stickstootext

Mathematical typesetting with STIX 2

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\bar{c}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \bar{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{f(Q(t))}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-31-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.31: Sample page typeset with STIX 2 text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Utopia (Erewhon)

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{(\int Q(t))}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \begin{Bmatrix} k \\ j \end{Bmatrix} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-32-fig

Figure 12.32: Sample page typeset with Erewhon text + math fonts

Adobe Utopia, originally designed by Robert Slimbach, due to its open source license, has been extended by several people; see Section 10.5.23 on page 58. Math support for these fonts, as often, is available through Michael Sharpe's `newtxmath` package. It works equally well with the different versions of Utopia, e.g., Heuristica or Linguistics Pro. For Figure 12.32 we have used the following setup deploying Erewhon as the text font:

Utopia math support

```
\usepackage[osf]{erewhon}
\usepackage[utopia,vvarbb]{newtxmath}
```

If you want to use the math setup with other fonts, you may need to scale the text fonts a bit down or the math fonts up to get a perfect fit, e.g., for Heuristica:

```
\usepackage[osf,scaled=.92]{heuristica}
\usepackage[utopia,vvarbb]{newtxmath}
```

There is also the Fourier-GUTenberg bundle by Michel Bovani, which is also based on Adobe Utopia. It sets up both text and math fonts and is intended as a self-contained solution (automatically loading `amsmath` and other packages); in particular it offers “french-style” mathematics if loaded with the option `upright`, e.g.,

```
\usepackage[upright]{fourier}
```

12.5.3 Didone serif fonts with math support

*Computer Modern —
L^AT_EX's math default*

The majority of L^AT_EX documents are typeset using Didone fonts simply because L^AT_EX's standard fonts, Computer Modern, are Didone designs and because not so long ago these were the only fonts that could be used, if decent math support was needed — the current chapter shows that those days are history.

Figure 12.33 shows our example page using L^AT_EX's default setup when using pdfL^AT_EX. This is a repeat of Figure 12.1 from the beginning of the section to make it easier to compare it to other fonts in this section.

Unicode engines

When you use a Unicode engine without loading any math support package, then L^AT_EX keeps the math setup (i.e., Computer Modern), but it changes the text fonts to Latin Modern.

*Latin Modern
math support*

To use Latin Modern Math, designed by Bogusław Jackowski and Janusz Marian Nowacki (1951–2020), in pdfL^AT_EX, the following setup is sufficient:

```
\usepackage{lmodern}
```

The result is shown in Figure 12.34 (and is, not surprisingly, very similar to Computer Modern). Figure 12.35 then exhibits the OpenType fonts of LM:

```
\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{Latin Modern Roman}
\usepackage{unicode-math} \setmathfont{Latin Modern Math}
\setmathfont{NewCMMath-Regular}[range="2AB7]
```

Mathematical typesetting with Computer Modern

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial \mathbb{Q}} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{\mathbb{Q} \in \mathbb{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int \mathbb{Q}(t)}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - v)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-33-fig

Figure 12.33: Sample page typeset with Computer Modern text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Latin Modern

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathcal{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{\mathcal{C}}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_{\mathcal{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial \mathcal{Q}} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{\mathbb{Q} \in \tilde{\mathbb{Q}}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\mathbb{Q}(t)}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - v)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-34-fig

Figure 12.34: Sample page typeset with Latin Modern text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Latin Modern

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathcal{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{\mathcal{C}}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_{\mathcal{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial \mathcal{Q}} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{\mathbb{Q} \in \tilde{\mathbb{Q}}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\mathbb{Q}(t)}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - v)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-35-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.35: Sample page typeset with Latin Modern + Latin Modern Math fonts

Math typesetting with NewComputerModern

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz \leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ \approx \biguplus_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int \mathbb{Q}(t) \mathbb{I}}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - v)^3 \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-36-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.36: Sample page typeset with NewComputerModern + Math fonts

Math typesetting with NewComputerModern Book

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz \leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ \approx \biguplus_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int \mathbb{Q}(t) \mathbb{I}}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - v)^3 \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-37-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.37: Sample page typeset with NewComputerModern Book + Math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Noto Serif

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{y \in \Gamma_{\tilde{c}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_y)$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \mathbb{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{f(Q(t))}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\beta} - (\Delta + v - v)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-38-fig

Figure 12.38: Sample page typeset with Noto text + math fonts

The New Computer Modern OpenType family by Antonis Tzolomitis is the new kid on the block when it comes to designs that are based on or mimic Donald Knuth's Computer Modern family. Antonis is working very hard on making his family usable across various disciplines by adding more and more glyphs to support various scripts and languages. At the time of writing the Roman font contained 3171 glyphs and the math support font a whopping 6938 and I would not be surprised if there are many more by the time you hold this book in your hands — check it by using `unicodefont.tex`, but make sure to set `range-end` to `FFFFF` to get to all characters.

Math setup for New Computer Modern

Figure 12.36 on the facing page has been produced by this input:

```
\usepackage{fontspec}      \setmainfont{NewCM10-Regular}
\usepackage{unicode-math}  \setmathfont{NewCMMath-Regular}
```

The slightly darker Book version in Figure 12.37 was generated with:

```
\usepackage{fontspec}      \setmainfont{NewCM10-Book}
\usepackage{unicode-math}  \setmathfont{NewCMMath-Book}
```

The last Didone family we exhibit in Figure 12.38 is Noto Serif. The math support is again courtesy of Michael Sharpe, this time through his `notomath` package; see Section 12.3.7 on page 252. We used the following setup:

Not Serif math support

```
\usepackage[vvarbb,upint]{notomath}
```

12.5.4 Slab serif fonts with math support

*Math support for
Concrete Roman*

The Concrete Roman text fonts were designed by Donald Knuth, and matching math fonts were designed by Ulrik Vieth; see Section 12.3.1. They are shown in Figure 12.39, which was produced by adding `\usepackage[boldsans]{ccfonts}` to the preamble of the sample document.

Figure 12.40 combines Concrete Roman with Euler Math, designed by Hermann Zapf (1918–2015). This combination was produced with

```
\usepackage{ccfonts} \usepackage[euler-digits]{eulervm}
```

See also Section 12.3.3. You probably want to design different headings: because the Concrete fonts have no bold series, the heading in the example shows a larger size of the medium series through substitution.

*Math support for
DejaVu*

The other Slab serif family with math support is DejaVu, again provided by the T_EX Gyre foundry. The design size is rather large, so we scaled everything down for Figure 12.41. Given that the font is fairly black we used a bold symbol from the Kp math font to supply the missing glyph. Not perfect, but ...

```
\usepackage{fontspec} \setmainfont{DejaVu Serif}[Scale=.9]
\usepackage{unicode-math} \setmathfont{TeX Gyre DejaVu Math}[Scale=.95]
\setmathfont{KpMath-Bold}[range="2AB7,Scale=.97] % more or less ok
```

Mathematical typesetting with Concrete

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{c}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz \leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ \approx \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int \mathbb{Q}(t)}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - v)^3 \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-39-fig

Figure 12.39: Sample page typeset with Concrete text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Concrete and Euler

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\Omega} f(x, y, z) \, dx \, dy \, dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_{\Omega} f(w, x, y, z) \, dw \, dx \, dy \, dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \biguplus_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\mathbb{Q}(t)}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-40-fig

Figure 12.40: Sample page typeset with Concrete text + Euler math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with DejaVu

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\tilde{Q}} f(x, y, z) \, dx \, dy \, dz$ and $\prod_{\nu \in \Gamma_{\tilde{C}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\nu})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_{\tilde{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) \, dw \, dx \, dy \, dz &\leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \biguplus_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\mathbb{Q}(t)}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-41-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.41: Sample page typeset with DejaVu + DejaVu Math fonts

12.5.5 Sans serif fonts with math support

*Math support for
Computer Modern
Bright*

Figure 12.42 shows the Computer Modern Bright set of fonts (designed by Walter Schmidt (1960–2021)), which is based on the Computer Modern font design. The solution offers the full range of math symbols in normal and bold weights and is activated by loading the `cmbright` package; see Section 12.3.2.

*Math support for
Fira Sans*

Xiangdong Zeng developed a Fira Math font based on FiraSans and FiraGo. As with many of the OpenType Math fonts there are some glyphs missing, and finding a suitable substitute font proved to be difficult. In Figure 12.43, I used bold Kp Math scaled down by 30% for `\precapprox` and 10% for `\biguplus` and `\Subset`.

```
\usepackage{fontspec}      \setmainfont{Fira Sans}
\usepackage{unicode-math}   \setmathfont{Fira Math}
\setmathfont{KpMath-Bold}[range="2AB7,Scale=.75] % not a good match
\setmathfont{KpMath-Bold}[range={"2A04","22D0"},Scale=.9]
```

This clearly shows limitations of the approach: `\precapprox` is still too wide and at the same time too thin. Thus, if you cannot find a suitable substitute and you need the symbols, it is probably better to use a different font setup.

*Math support for
GFS Neo-Hellenic*

The GFS Neo-Hellenic, designed in 1927 by Victor Scholderer (see Section 10.8.14 on page 75), has a matching OpenType math font, which was commissioned in 2018, but there is no support for math in pdf_TE_X. To use the OpenType fonts, all you have to do is to load a support package, which does the necessary setup for you, i.e.,

```
\usepackage{gfsneohellenicot}
```

Mathematical typesetting with CM Bright

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_c} \partial(\tilde{X}_\gamma)$; and also on display:

$$\iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz \leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ \approx \biguplus_{\mathbb{Q} \in \bar{\mathbb{Q}}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int \mathbb{Q}(t)}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\emptyset} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-42-fig

Figure 12.42: Sample page typeset with CM Bright text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Fira Sans

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{c}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz \leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ \approx \bigsqcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{Q(t)}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-43-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.43: Sample page typeset with Fira Sans + Fira Math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with GFS Neo-Hellenic

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{c}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz \leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ \approx \bigsqcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{Q(t)}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-44-fig

Unicode engines

Figure 12.44: Sample page typeset with GFS Neo-Hellenic text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Iwona

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{v \in \Gamma_{\tilde{c}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_v)$; and also on display:

$$\iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz \leq \oint_{\partial \mathbb{Q}} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right)$$

$$\approx \bigcup_{\mathbb{Q} \in \tilde{\mathbb{Q}}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\left\lfloor \mathbb{Q}(t) \right\rfloor}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + v - v)^3 \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-45-fig

Figure 12.45: Sample page typeset with Iwona text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Iwona Light Condensed

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{v \in \Gamma_{\tilde{c}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_v)$; and also on display:

$$\iiint_{\mathbb{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz \leq \oint_{\partial \mathbb{Q}} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right)$$

$$\approx \bigcup_{\mathbb{Q} \in \tilde{\mathbb{Q}}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\left\lfloor \mathbb{Q}(t) \right\rfloor}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + v - v)^3 \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-46-fig

Figure 12.46: Sample page typeset with Iwona text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Kp Sans

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_{\mathcal{Q}} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\bar{c}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\begin{aligned} \iiint_{\mathcal{Q}} f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz &\leq \oint_{\partial \mathcal{Q}} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ &\approx \bigcup_{\mathcal{Q} \in \tilde{\mathcal{Q}}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{|Q(t)|}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\beta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-47-fig

Figure 12.47: Sample page typeset with Kp Sans text + math fonts

The Iwona fonts, designed by Janusz Marian Nowacki (1951–2020), are provided in several font series (see Section 10.8.18 on page 77), and for all them there is matching math support if you add the option `math` when loading the `iwona` support package. For example, Figure 12.46 used

Math support for Iwona

```
\usepackage[math,light,condensed]{iwona}
```

to produce the light condensed setup. Unfortunately, all fonts miss the smallest glyph of the extensible delimiters `\lVert` and `\rVert` (normally slot "6B in the `symbols` math font), most likely a simple oversight by the author. Thus, to make our sample documents work, we also had to provide it from a different source and update the delimiter declarations as follows:

```
\DeclareSymbolFont{symbols2}{OMS}{cmsy}{m}{n}
\SetSymbolFont{symbols2}{bold}{OMS}{cmsy}{b}{n}
\DeclareMathDelimiter{\lVert}{\mathopen}{symbols2}{"6B}{largesymbols}{"0D}
\DeclareMathDelimiter{\rVert}{\mathclose}{symbols2}{"6B}{largesymbols}{"0D}
```

For details on the above declarations see Section 9.8.5 on page 749.

Using Kp Sans as the body font to produce Figure 12.47 is as simple as loading the package `kpfonts` with the option `sfmath`, or, if you want to use OpenType fonts in Unicode engines, the package `kpfonts-otf`. There are many more package options available to adjust the setup; see Section 10.2.8 on page 17 for more details.

Math support for Kp Sans

Mathematical typesetting with Kurier

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{c}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz \leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ \approx \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int Q(t)}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-48-fig

Figure 12.48: Sample page typeset with Kurier text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Kurier Light

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{c}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz \leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ \approx \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int Q(t)}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3 \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-49-fig

Figure 12.49: Sample page typeset with Kurier text + math fonts (light)

Mathematical typesetting with Noto Sans

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{y \in \Gamma_c} \partial(\tilde{X}_y)$; and also on display:

$$\iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz \leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}; \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}; \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \quad (1)$$

$$\approx \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{Q(t)}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + \nu - \nu)^3$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1-x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-50-fig

Figure 12.50: Sample page typeset with Noto Sans text + math fonts

Just like his Iwona fonts, Kurier by Janusz Marian Nowacki (1951–2020) offers several different series values, all with full math support. The options of the support package `kurier` are also the same (but unfortunately also the lapse with respect to `\lVert` and `\rVert`). Thus, the setup for Figures 12.48 and 12.49 looks like this:

*Math support for
Kurier*

```
\usepackage[math]{kurier}
\DeclareSymbolFont{symbols2}{OMS}{cmsy}{m}{n}
\SetSymbolFont{symbols2}{bold}{OMS}{cmsy}{b}{n}
\DeclareMathDelimiter{\lVert}{\mathopen}{symbols2}{"06B}{\largesymbols}{"0D}
\DeclareMathDelimiter{\rVert}{\mathclose}{symbols2}{"6B}{\largesymbols}{"0D}
```

except that in the second example we additionally added the option `light`.

Matching math fonts for Noto Sans are provided by Michael Sharpe with a dedicated support package (see Section 12.3.7). The setup we used in Figure 12.50 was the following:

*Math support for
Noto Sans*

```
\usepackage[vvarbb,upint,sfdefault]{notomath}
```

12.5.6 Historical fonts with math support

Out of the historical fonts covered in this book only Antykwa Toruńska comes with dedicated math fonts. Figures 12.51 and 12.52 on the next page have been both set up using the package `anttor`: the first with option `math` and the second additionally with options `light` and `condensed`.

*Math support for
Antykwa Toruńska*

Mathematical typesetting with Antykwa Toruńska

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{c}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz \leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ \approx \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int \mathbb{Q}(t)}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + v - v)^3 \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-51-fig

Figure 12.51: Sample page typeset with Antykwa Toruńska text + math fonts

Mathematical typesetting with Antykwa Toruńska Light Condensed

First some large operators both in text: $\iiint_Q f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$ and $\prod_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\tilde{c}}} \partial(\tilde{X}_{\gamma})$; and also on display:

$$\iiint_Q f(w, x, y, z) dw dx dy dz \leq \oint_{\partial Q} f' \left(\max \left\{ \frac{\|w\|}{|w^2 + x^2|}, \frac{\|z\|}{|y^2 + z^2|}, \frac{\|w \oplus z\|}{\|x \oplus y\|} \right\} \right) \\ \approx \bigcup_{Q \in \tilde{Q}} \left[f^* \left(\frac{\int \mathbb{Q}(t)}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} \right) \right]_{t=\alpha}^{t=\vartheta} - (\Delta + v - v)^3 \quad (1)$$

For x in the open interval $] -1, 1[$ the infinite sum in Equation (2) is convergent; however, this does not hold throughout the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

$$(1 - x)^{-k} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^j \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} x^j \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{N}; k \neq 0. \quad (2)$$

12-52-fig

Figure 12.52: Sample page typeset with Antykwa Toruńska text + math fonts (light, condensed)

CHAPTER 13

Localizing Documents

13.1 \TeX and non-English languages	297
13.2 The babel user interface.	301
13.3 User commands provided by language options	308
13.4 Support for Cyrillic and Greek	324
13.5 Complex scripts	330
13.6 Tailoring babel	332
13.7 Other approaches	341

This chapter starts with a short introduction to the technical problems that must be solved if you want to use \LaTeX with a non-English language. Most of the remaining part of the chapter discusses the babel system, which provides a convenient way to generate documents in different languages. We look in particular at how we can typeset documents in French, Russian, and Greek, as the typesetting of those languages illustrates various aspects of the things one has to deal with in a non-English environment. We also say a few words about how to handle other languages, such as Arabic, Japanese, or Hindi, which are written with the so-called “complex scripts”. Section 13.6 explains how to tailor the language styles to fit your needs in some common cases.

13.1 \TeX and non-English languages

Due to its popularity in the academic world, \TeX spread rapidly throughout the world and is now used not only with the languages based on the Latin alphabet, but also with languages using non-Latin alphabetic scripts, such as Russian, Greek, Arabic, Persian, Hebrew, Thai, Vietnamese, Malayalam, or Marathi. Implementations also exist for Chinese and Japanese (which use Kanji-based ideographic scripts) and Korean (which uses syllable blocks).

With the introduction of 8-bit T_EX and METAFONT, which were officially released by Donald Knuth in March 1990, the problems of multilingual support could be more easily addressed for the first time. Nevertheless, by themselves, these versions did not solve all the problems associated with providing a convenient environment for using L^AT_EX with multiple and/or non-English languages, which were eventually addressed with the advent of Unicode engines like X_YL^AT_EX and LuaT_EX.

To achieve this goal, T_EX and its companion programs should be made truly international, and the following points should be addressed:

1. Adjust all programs to the particular language(s):
 - Handle properly fonts containing national symbols, which includes setting up the so-called Unicode fonts where necessary and appropriate [67],
 - Define line breaking and justification rules, which in Western languages means generating patterns for the hyphenation algorithm,
 - Support typesetting in different directions.
2. Provide a translation for the language-dependent strings, create national layouts for the standard documents, and provide T_EX or Lua code to treat the language-dependent typesetting rules automatically [130].
3. Support processing of multilingual documents (more than one language in the same document) and work in international environments (one language per document, but a choice between several possibilities). For instance, the sorting of indexes and bibliographic references should be performed in accordance with a given language's alphabet and collating sequence; see the discussion on `upmendex` in Section 14.3 and `biber` in Section 15.2.2.

At the same time, you should be able to conveniently edit, view, and print your documents using any given character set, and L^AT_EX should be able to successfully process files created in this way. Encoding problems were ultimately solved with Unicode, which can encode not only the alphabetic languages but also ideographic scripts like Chinese or Japanese.

L^AT_EX uses by default the encoding known as UTF-8, which has been universally adopted in the computing and publishing worlds. There still exist other character encoding schemes, but their use is declining, because with them it is difficult for documents to be reproducible in different environments, issues of standardization become important, and it is necessary to know the encoding in which a document was produced if not UTF-8. For such legacy encodings L^AT_EX offers the `inputenc` package, described in Section 9.9.3 on page 758, but it is recommended to avoid it and use the default (UTF-8) for new documents.¹

To adapt L^AT_EX to different languages, several approaches have been followed. The first to appear was to use dedicated packages, which very often were incompatible,

¹A few packages, including some `babel` languages, have not been yet updated for the current default encoding and may display a warning like “No input encoding specified” or similar. It can be usually ignored.

thus making a multilingual document almost impossible. A second step was the introduction of `babel`, which eased the standardization and development of T_EX-related software adapted to different languages. The aim was to produce for each language or group of languages a package that would facilitate typesetting, with details about fonts, input conventions, hyphenation patterns, a `ℒTEX` option file compatible with the `babel` concept (see Section 13.1.3), possibly a preprocessor, and, of course, documentation in English and the target language. Still, because each language takes its own solutions, interoperation remains problematic, and a new approach, based on a core providing the basic behavior with descriptive `.ini` files, is being developed at the time of this writing, although it has reached a very advanced stage.

In some languages, particularly East Asian ones, there is another approach, namely, extending the T_EX program to suit the needs of a particular family of languages. For example, `upTEX` adds features for vertical writing and deals with other facets of typesetting Japanese.

Besides `XYTEX` and `LuaTEX`, there have been other extensions to the T_EX program attempting to improve the T_EX multilingual support, like `mlTEX`, `EncTEX`, or `Omega`. The latter, by Yannis Haralambous and John Plaice, incorporated a sophisticated bidi algorithm, which has become part of `LuaTEX`, and provided a mechanism to perform text transformations, which has inspired what in `babel` are called *transforms* (transliterations is an example).

13.1.1 Language-related aspects of typesetting

When thinking about supporting typesetting documents in languages other than English, a number of aspects that need to be dealt with come to mind.

First and foremost is the fact that other languages have different rules for line breaking, something that T_EX accommodates in Western languages through its support for multiple hyphenation patterns. In some languages, however, certain letter combinations change when they appear at a hyphenation point.

Unicode engines

T_EX does not support this capability “out of the box”, but `LuaTEX` can be extended to apply nonstandard hyphenation rules — a feature exploited by `babel` when using this engine. Scripts like Thai, Japanese, or Amharic follow some specific rules, which require `XYTEX` and `LuaTEX`.

Some languages need different sets of characters to be properly typeset. This issue can vary from the need for additional “accented letters” (as is the case with many European languages) to the need for a completely different alphabet (as is the case with languages using the Cyrillic or Greek alphabet).

Unicode engines

When non-European languages need to be supported, the typesetting direction might be different as well (such as right to left for Arabic and Hebrew texts), or so many characters might be needed (as is the case with the Kanji script, for instance) that traditional T_EX’s standard mechanisms cannot deal with them — in that case `XYTEX` or `LuaTEX` is required.

A more “subtle” problem turns up when we look at the standard document classes that each \LaTeX distribution supplies, because they were designed for the Anglo-American situation. A specific example where this preference interferes with supporting other languages is the start of a chapter. For some languages it is not enough to just translate the word “Chapter”; the order of the word and the denomination of the chapter needs to be changed as well, solely on the basis of grammatical rules. Where the English reader expects to see “Chapter 1”, the Hungarian reader expects to see “1. fejezet”.

13.1.2 Culture-related aspects of typesetting

An even thornier problem when faced with the need to support typesetting of many languages is the fact that typesetting rules differ, even between countries that use the same language. For instance, hyphenation rules differ between British English and American English. Translations of English words might vary between countries, just as they do for the German spoken in Germany and the German spoken (and written) in Austria.

Typographic rules may differ between countries, too. No worldwide standard tells us how nested lists should be typeset; on the contrary, their appearance may differ for different languages or countries or even printing houses. With these aspects we enter the somewhat fuzzy area comprising the boundary between the language aspects of typesetting and the cultural aspects of typesetting. It is not clear where that boundary lies. When implementing support for typesetting documents written in a specific language, this difference needs to be taken into account. The language-related aspects can be supported on a general level, but the cultural aspects are more often than not better (or more easily) handled by creating specific document classes.

13.1.3 `babel` — \LaTeX speaks multiple languages

The \LaTeX distribution contains a few standard document classes that are used by most users. These classes (article, report, book, and letter) have a certain American look and feel, which not everyone likes. Moreover, the language-dependent strings, such as “Chapter” and “Table of Contents” (see Table 13.2 on page 305 for a list of commands holding language-dependent strings), come out in English by default.

The `babel` package, originally developed by Johannes Braams [23] and now maintained and developed further by Javier Bezos [19], provides a set of options that allows the user to choose the language or language(s) in which the document is typeset. It has the following basic characteristics:

- Multiple languages can be used simultaneously.
- The list of hyphenation patterns to be loaded when the \LaTeX format is generated can be defined via an external file.
- Translations for the language-dependent strings and commands for facilitating text input are provided for more than 60 languages (a selection of them is listed in Table 13.1 on the facing page).

afrikaans	esperanto	italian	russian
albanian	estonian	kurmanji	samin
azerbaijani	finnish	latin	scottish
basque	french	latvian	serbian
belarusian	friulan	lithuanian	serbianc
bosnian	galician	lowersorbian	slovak
breton	german, ngerman,	macedonian	slovene
bulgarian	austrian,	malay	spanish
catalan	naustrian	magyar	swedish
croatian	greek,	norsk, nynorsk	turkish
czech	polutonikogreek	occitan	turkmen
danish	hebrew	polish	ukrainian
dutch	icelandic	portuguese,	uppersorbian
english, USenglish,	indonesian	brazilian	vietnamese
UKenglish,	interlingua	romanian	welsh
australian	irish	romansh	

Alternatives for a language typically differ in hyphenation rules, date handling, or language-dependent strings. The option `english` combines American hyphenation patterns with a British date format.

Table 13.1: Selective list of language options supported by the babel system

In the next section we describe the user interface of the babel system. We then discuss the additional commands for various languages and describe the support for typesetting languages using non-Latin alphabets. Finally, we discuss ways to tailor babel to your needs. Throughout the sections, examples illustrate the use of various languages supported by babel.

13.2 The babel user interface

Languages that you use in your document should be declared as options when loading the babel package. Alternatively, because the languages in which a document is written constitute a global characteristic of the document, the languages can be indicated as *global options* on the `\documentclass` command. This strategy makes them available to any package that changes behavior depending on the language settings of the document. Most languages are identified by their English names (see Table 13.1 for the recommended names in many languages), although there are a few exceptions. For example, the following declaration prepares for typesetting in the languages German (option `ngerman` for new orthography) and Italian (option `italian`):

```
\usepackage[ngerman,italian]{babel}
```

The last language appearing on the `\usepackage` command line becomes the default language used at the beginning of the document. In the above example, the language-dependent strings, the hyphenation patterns (if they were loaded for the given language when the \LaTeX format was generated; see the discussion on page 337), and possibly the interpretation of certain language-dependent commands (such as the date) will be for Italian from the beginning of the document up to the point where you choose a different language.

If one decides to make `ngerman` and `italian` global options, then other packages can also detect their presence. For example, the following code lets the package `varioref` (described in Section 2.4.1 on page 179) detect and use the options specified on the `\documentclass` command:

```
\documentclass[ngerman,italian]{article}
\usepackage{babel}
\usepackage{varioref}
```

If you use more than one language in your document and you want to define your own language-dependent strings for the `varioref` commands, you should use the methods described in Section 2.4.1.

Very often, a document is written entirely in a single language with a few words or phrases in other languages. In such a case and if the main font is appropriate for the latter, there is no need to declare those extra languages explicitly if all you need is to get them properly hyphenated, because they can be loaded by `babel` on the fly, with some basic features, when selected with one of the macros described in the following section.

13.2.1 Setting or getting the current language

Within a document it is possible to change the current language in several ways. For example, you can change all language-related settings including translations for strings like “Chapter”, the typesetting conventions, and the setup for shorthand commands. Alternatively, you can keep the translations unchanged but modify everything else (e.g., when typesetting short texts in a foreign language within the main text). Finally, you can change only the hyphenation rules.

The two basic commands are `\selectlanguage`, for large blocks of text like paragraphs, and `\foreignlanguage`, for changes inside paragraphs. These are the preferred ways to switch a language, but in some cases the environment versions can be useful.

<code>\selectlanguage{language}</code> <code>\begin{otherlanguage}{language}</code>

A change to all language-related settings is implemented via the `\selectlanguage` command. For instance, if you want to switch to German, you would use the command `\selectlanguage{german}`. The process is similar for switching to other languages. The `\selectlanguage` command calls the macros defined in the language definition file (see Section 13.6) and activates the special definitions for the

language in question. It also updates the setting of TeX's `\language` primitive used for hyphenation or, in the case of languages like Thai and Chinese with Xe_{La}TeX and Lua_{La}TeX, activates the line-breaking rules.

The environment `otherlanguage` provides the same functionality as the `\selectlanguage` declaration, except that the language change is local to the environment. The argument *language* is the language you want to switch to.

```
\foreignlanguage[key list]{language}{phrase}
\begin{otherlanguage*}[key list]{language}
```

The command `\foreignlanguage` typesets *phrase* according to the rules of *language*. It switches only the extra definitions and the line-breaking rules for the language, but not the names and dates, unless you specify captions or date in the *key list* argument. Its environment equivalent is `otherlanguage*`.

The expansion of fixed document element names depends on the language; e.g., in English we have “References” or “Chapter”.

Auf Deutsch ergibt sich „Literatur“ oder „Kapitel“.

Voici en français : « Références » ou « Chapitre ».

However, in short phrases “Références” does not change by default!

```
\usepackage[german,french,english]{babel}
\raggedright
```

```
The expansion of fixed document element names
depends on the language; e.g., in English
we have ‘‘\refname’’ or ‘‘\chaptername’’. \par
\selectlanguage{german} Auf Deutsch ergibt sich
’’\refname’’ oder ‘‘\chaptername’’. \par
\begin{otherlanguage}{french} Voici en français:
\og\refname\fg{} ou \og\chaptername\fg.
\par\foreignlanguage{english}{However, in short
phrases ‘‘\refname’’ does not change by default!}
\end{otherlanguage}
```

13-2-1

```
\begin{hyphenrules}{language}
```

Inside the environment `hyphenrules`, *only* the hyphenation rules are switched to those of the specified *language*; `\language` and all other settings remain unchanged. When no hyphenation rules for *language* are loaded into the format, the environment has no effect.

As a special application, this environment can be used to prevent hyphenation altogether, provided that in `language.dat` the “language” `nohyphenation` is defined (by loading `zerohyph.tex`, as explained in Section 13.6.2 on page 337). This is, actually, the only recommended use for this environment.

This text shows the effect of hyphenation.

This text shows the effect of hyphenation turned off.

```
\usepackage[english]{babel}
```

```
This text shows the effect of hyphenation.\par
\begin{hyphenrules}{nohyphenation}
This text shows the effect of hyphenation turned off.
\end{hyphenrules}
```

13-2-2

Note that this approach works even if the “language” `nohyphenation` is not specified as an option to the `babel` package.

If more than one language is used, it might be necessary to know which language is active at a specific point in the document. This can be checked with a call to `\iflanguage`.

```
\iflanguage{language}{true-clause}{false-clause}
```

The first argument in this syntax, *language*, is the name of a language, which is first checked to see whether it corresponds to a language declared to `babel`. If the *language* is known, the command compares its *hyphenation rules* with those for the current language. If they are the same, the commands specified in the *true-clause* are executed; otherwise, the commands specified in the third argument, *false-clause*, are executed.

The name of this macro is somewhat misleading, because it does not compare actual `babel` languages but the hyphenation patterns used, as the following example illustrates. If you need to check for the current language, you are better off resorting to the `iflang` package by Heiko Oberdiek.

The current language is `naustrian`, i.e., Austrian, and its hyphenation rules are the same as for German. English has different patterns.

```
\usepackage[english,ngerman,naustrian]{babel}
```

The current language is `\texttt{naustrian}`, i.e., Austrian, and its hyphenation rules `\iflanguage{ngerman}{are}{are not}` the same as for German. English has `\iflanguage{english}{the same}{different}` patterns.

13-2-3

```
\language
```

The control sequence `\language` contains the name of the current language.

```
\usepackage[german,french,english]{babel}
```

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| (1) The language is english. | <code>\par(1) The language is \language.</code> |
| (2) The language is german. | <code>\par(2) \selectlanguage{german} The language is \language.</code> |
| (3) The language is french. | <code>\par(3) \begin{otherlanguage}{french}</code> |
| | <code> The language is \language. \end{otherlanguage}</code> |
| (4) The language is english. | <code>\par(4) \foreignlanguage{english}{The language is \language.}</code> |
| (5) Pas en français. | <code>\par(5) \iflanguage{french}{En français.}{Pas en français.}</code> |
| (6) The language is german. | <code>\par(6) The language is \language.</code> |

13-2-4

Language-dependent strings

Most document classes available in a \LaTeX installation define a number of commands that are used to store the various language-dependent strings. Table 13.2 on the facing page presents an overview of these commands, together with their default text strings.

13.2.2 Handling shorthands

A “shorthand” is a one- or two-character sequence, the first character of which introduces the shorthand and is called the “shorthand character”. For a two-character shorthand, the second character specifies the behavior of the shorthand. This mechanism

<i>Command</i>	<i>English String</i>	<i>Command</i>	<i>English String</i>
<code>\abstractname</code>	Abstract	<code>\indexname</code>	Index
<code>\alsoname</code>	see also	<code>\listfigurename</code>	List of Figures
<code>\appendixname</code>	Appendix	<code>\listtablename</code>	List of Tables
<code>\bibname</code>	Bibliography	<code>\pagename</code>	Page
<code>\ccname</code>	cc	<code>\partname</code>	Part
<code>\chaptername</code>	Chapter	<code>\prefacename</code>	Preface
<code>\contentsname</code>	Contents	<code>\proofname</code>	Proof
<code>\enclname</code>	encl	<code>\refname</code>	References
<code>\figurename</code>	Figure	<code>\seename</code>	see
<code>\glossaryname</code>	Glossary	<code>\tablename</code>	Table
<code>\headtoname</code>	To (letter class)		

Table 13.2: Language-dependent strings in babel (English defaults)

was originally devised for authors who write in languages other than English, because it was sometimes awkward to type the input needed to produce the letters of their languages in the final document.

\TeX now understands UTF-8 input (which is its default since 2018); thus, most characters can be directly entered from the keyboard, which means that for many European languages shorthands are not as necessary as in the past. Given that they require a lot of extra processing, you can nowadays tell `babel` not to define them with the package option `shorthands=off`. However, they can be still useful in some cases:

- Several kinds of discretionaries and breaks can be inserted easily with `"-`, `"=`, and others.
- Shorthands such as `!` are used to insert the right amount of white space.
- In some languages, shorthands such as `"a` are defined to allow word hyphenation if the font encoding is OT1 (a better solution in most European languages is to use T1 instead, though).
- Finally, minority languages and some kinds of text can still require characters not easily available on the keyboards (and sometimes not even available as separated or precomposed Unicode characters).

The most important shorthands of these kinds are exhibited in later sections.

Babel knows about four shorthand levels — those defined by “the system”, “the language”, “the user”, and “the user for a specific language”. The purpose of this mechanism is to allow users to adapt easily its behavior to their needs. Shorthands can then act like a sort of customizable language-dependent markup.

Document-level commands for shorthands

This section describes the shorthand commands that can be used in the document and various aspects of the shorthand concept. Language-level or system-level shorthands are declared in language definition files; see Section 13.6 on page 332.

```
\usesshorthands*{char}
```

The command `\usesshorthands` initiates the definition of user-defined shorthand sequences. The argument *char* is the character that starts these shorthands.

Because languages may turn shorthands on and off, the starred variant makes sure user shorthands are always active.

```
\defineshorthand{charseq}{expansion}
```

The command `\defineshorthand` defines a shorthand. Its first argument, *charseq*, is a one- or two-character sequence; the second argument, *expansion*, is the code to which the shorthand should expand.

```
\languageshorthands{language}
```

The command `\languageshorthands` is used to switch between shorthands for the *language* specified as an argument. The *language* must have been declared to `babel` for the current document. When switching languages, the language definition files usually issue this command for the language in question. For example, the file `frenchb.ldf` contains the following command:

```
\languageshorthands{french}
```

Sometimes it is necessary to temporarily switch off the shorthand action of a given character because it needs to be used in a different way.


```
\shorthandon{chars}    \shorthandoff{chars}
```

The command `\shorthandoff` sets the `\catcode` for each of the characters in its argument *chars* to “other” (12). Conversely, the command `\shorthandon` sets the `\catcode` to “active” (13) for its argument *chars*. Both commands act only on “known” shorthand characters. If a character is not known to be a shorthand character, its category code is left unchanged.

For example, the language definition file for French (`frenchb.ldf`) makes the “double” punctuation characters “?”, “!”, “:”, and “;” active. One can eliminate this behavior by specifying each as an argument to a `\shorthandoff` command. This step is necessary with certain packages, where the same characters have a special meaning.

The next example loads the `xy` package, where the use of “;” and “?” as shorthand characters is turned off inside `xy`’s `xy` environment [55, Chapter 7], because these

characters have a functional meaning there.

	<code>\usepackage{xy}</code>
	<code>\usepackage[french]{babel}</code>
Voici un exemple avec <i>xypic</i> :	Voici un exemple avec <code>\emph{xypic}</code> :
	<code>\[\shorthandoff{;}]</code>
	<code>\begin{xy} (0,0)*{\bullet}, (0,0) ; (10,0),</code>
	<code>**\dir {-} ?>* \dir {>}, (12,0)*{x}, \end{xy}</code>
	<code>\]</code>
13-2-5 Quelle belle flèche !	Quelle belle flèche !

In the particular case of `tikz`, you can use `\usetikzlibrary{babel}` instead of `\shorthandoff` to overcome these issues for all `tikz` pictures of the document.

13.2.3 Language attributes

Sometimes the support for language-dependent typesetting needs to be tailored for different situations. In such a case it is possible to define attributes for the particular language. Two examples of the use of attributes can be found in the support for typesetting of Latin texts. When the attribute `usej` is selected, certain document element names are spelled differently (for example, “Junii” instead of “Iunni”). The attribute `withprosodicmarks` can be used when typesetting grammars, dictionaries, teaching texts, and the like, where prosodic marks are important for providing complete information on the words or the verses.

`\languageattribute{language}{langattrs}`

The command `\languageattribute` declares which attributes are to be used for a given language. It must be used in the preamble of the document following the command `\usepackage[...]{babel}` that loads the `babel` package. The command takes two arguments: *language* is the name of a language, and *langattrs* is a comma-separated list of attributes to be used for that language. The command checks whether the *language* is known in the current document and whether the attributes are known for this language.

For instance, `babel` has two variants for the Greek language: `monotoniko` (one-accent), the default, and `polutoniko` (multi-accent). To select the `polutoniko` variant, one must specify it in the document preamble, using the `\languageattribute` command. The following two examples illustrate the difference:

	<code>\usepackage[greek,english]{babel}</code>	<code>\usepackage{lmodern}</code>
13-2-6 The Greek word for ‘Index’ is Εὑρετήριο.	The Greek word for ‘Index’ is <code>\selectlanguage{greek}\indexname</code> .	

With the `polutoniko` attribute we get a different result:

	<code>\usepackage[greek,english]{babel}</code>	<code>\usepackage{lmodern}</code>
	<code>\languageattribute{greek}{polutoniko}</code>	
13-2-7 The Greek word for ‘Index’ is Εὐρετήριο.	The Greek word for ‘Index’ is <code>\selectlanguage{greek}\indexname</code> .	

Besides Greek, there are several language styles defining attributes, like Belarusian, Czech, Estonian, Japanese, and Latin, among others. For further information, refer to the corresponding manuals, which can be found on CTAN (<https://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/babel-contrib>).

13.2.4 BCP 47 tags

It has become customary in many environments to identify languages with the help of conventional labels. There are several sets of them, but the most popular by far are those defined following the Best Current Practice (BCP) 47, a standard published by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) [164]. Languages are identified with two- or three-letter codes, which can be followed, in its most basic form, by a four-letter code for the script. Sometimes, a two-letter code for the region is added, too, like `de-AT`, which is the German language as spoken in Austria.

Requesting and selecting languages with the BCP 47 tags is usually cumbersome, and it is not the recommended practice, but they are often the preferred way to identify locales in documents generated by external tools, like bibliography managers. The `babel` package is able to select languages with them, if desired, and because the main document may not know which languages are required, the most basic settings can be loaded on the fly. Thus, a bibliographic reference with containing `\foreignlanguage{ru}{Some Russian title}` selects a Cyrillic font (which should be defined elsewhere) and the Russian hyphenation patterns, even if not explicitly declared as a class or package option.

This feature is primarily meant for special tasks, like the one just explained, and for this reason it must be activated explicitly, either by the user or by a package requiring it, in the following way:

```
\babeladjust{ autoloader.bcp47 = on,
               autoloader.bcp47.options = import }
```

`\babeladjust` is a multipurpose macro to configure the `babel` behavior (details on in can be found in the `babel` manual). In this case, it tells `babel` to allow BCP 47 tags in addition to language names and to import the data provided in a set of `.ini` files containing miscellaneous data for about 250 languages.

13.3 User commands provided by language options

This section gives a general overview of the features typically offered by the various language options. It includes translations of language-dependent strings and a survey of typical shorthands intended to ease language-specific document content or to solve language-specific typesetting requirements. Some language options define additional commands to produce special date formats or numbers in a certain style. Also discussed are layout modifications as undertaken for French as well as the interfaces for dealing with different scripts (e.g., Latin and Cyrillic) in the same document.

<i>Command</i>	<i>French</i>	<i>Greek</i>	<i>Polish</i>	<i>Russian</i>
<code>\abstractname</code>	Résumé	Περίληψη	Streszczenie	Аннотация
<code>\alsoname</code>	voir aussi	βλέπε επίσης	zob. także	см. также
<code>\appendixname</code>	Annexe	Παράρτημα	Dodatek	Приложение
<code>\bibname</code>	Bibliographie	Βιβλιογραφία	Bibliografia	Литература
<code>\ccname</code>	Copie à	Κοινοποίηση	Do wiadomości	исх.
<code>\chaptername</code>	Chapitre	Κεφάλαιο	Rozdział	Глава
<code>\contentsname</code>	Table des matières	Περιεχόμενα	Spis treści	Содержание
<code>\enclname</code>	P. J.	Συνημμένα	Załączniki	вкл.
<code>\figurename</code>	Figure	Σχήμα	Rysunek	Рис.
<code>\glossaryname</code>	Glossaire	Γλωσσάρι	Słowniczek	Словарь терминов
<code>\headtoname</code>		Προς	Do	вх.
<code>\indexname</code>	Index	Ευρετήριο	Skorowidz	Предметный указатель
<code>\listfigurename</code>	Table des figures	Κατάλογος Σχημάτων	Spis rysunków	Список иллюстраций
<code>\listtablename</code>	Liste des tableaux	Κατάλογος Πινάκων	Spis tabel	Список таблиц
<code>\pagename</code>	page	Σελίδα	Strona	с.
<code>\partname</code>	Deuxième partie	Μέρος	Część	Часть
<code>\prefacename</code>	Préface	Πρόλογος	Przedmowa	Предисловие
<code>\proofname</code>	Démonstration	Απόδειξη	Dowód	Доказательство
<code>\refname</code>	Références	Αναφορές	Literatura	Список литературы
<code>\seename</code>	voir	βλέπε	zob.	см.
<code>\tablename</code>	Table	Πίνακας	Tabela	Таблица

13-3-1

In French `\partname` also generates the part number as a word, e.g., “*Première, Deuxième, ...*”

Table 13.3: Language-dependent strings in babel (French, Greek, Polish, and Russian)

13.3.1 Translations of fixed texts

As discussed earlier, babel provides translations for document element names that \LaTeX uses in its document classes. The English versions of these strings are shown in Table 13.2 on page 305. Table 13.3 on page 309 shows the translations for a number of languages, with some of them not using the Latin script.

Apart from the translated strings in Table 13.3, the language definition files supply alternative versions of the command `\today`, as shown in the following example. We explicitly load the T2A encoding to typeset Cyrillic. To have `\today` translated, we supply the option `date` in the optional argument to `\foreignlanguage`:

```
\usepackage[T2A,T1]{fontenc} \usepackage{gentium}
\usepackage[catalan,bulgarian,british]{babel}
```

In England the date is ‘2nd February 2020’, while in Bulgaria it is ‘2 февруари 2020 г.’. Catalanians write ‘2 de febrer de 2020’.

In England the date is ‘`\today`’, while in Bulgaria it is ‘`\foreignlanguage[date]{bulgarian}{\today}`’. Catalanians write ‘`\foreignlanguage[date]{catalan}{\today}`’.

13-3-2

13.3.2 Available shorthands

Many of the language definition files provide shorthands. Some are meant to ease typing, whereas others provide quite extensive trickery to achieve special effects. You might not be aware of it, but \LaTeX itself defines a shorthand (although it is not called by that name) that you probably use quite often: the character tilde (~), which is used to enter a “nonbreakable” space.

As explained in Section 13.2.2, the default UTF-8 encoding makes shorthands for entering accented letters mostly unnecessary, so this section focuses on typographical tools and some special characters.

Unicode engines

With \LaTeX , many of the special effects can be achieved without explicit markup by means of what `babel` calls *transforms*. They are based on Lua’s pattern matching mechanism and can be defined by the user, although there are some predefined ones, explained in the `babel` manual.

The double quote

The most popular character to be used as a shorthand character is the double quote character ("), which should not replace, let us remember, the so-called typographical quotes (“”) when typing text. It is used in shorthands for Basque, Bulgarian, Catalan, Danish, Dutch, Estonian, Finnish, Galician, German, Icelandic, Italian, Latin, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Serbian, Slovenian, Spanish, Swedish, Ukrainian, and Upper Sorbian, among others. Describing all uses of the double quote character as a shorthand character would be going too far. Instead, it is recommended that you check the documentation that comes with each language if you want to know the details. What can be said here is that its uses fall into a number of categories, each of which deserves a description and a few examples.

Insert accented letters For a number of languages, shorthands were created to facilitate typing accented characters. This mechanism was devised for the old 7-bit input and output encodings, and now this usage has become obsolete, but this is not true for all cases. For the Dutch language, for instance, an accent needs to be removed when the hyphenation point is next to the accented letter (although with \LaTeX there are tools to set nonstandard hyphenation rules like this without explicit markup).

Den Koning van Hispaniën heb ik altijd ge-
eerd! Den Koning van Hispaniën heb ik altijd
geëerd!

```
\usepackage[dutch]{babel}
```

```
Den Koning van Hispani"en heb ik altijd ge"eerd!  
Den Koning van Hispani"en heb ik altijd ge"eerd!
```

13-3-3

Insert special characters In the Catalan language a special glyph, the “geminated l”, is needed for proper typesetting [194].

```
\usepackage[catalan,english]{babel}
```

The “geminated l” appears in words
such as *intelligència* and *il·lusió*.

```
The ‘‘geminated-l’’ appears in words such as  
\foreignlanguage{catalan}{inte"ligència} and  
\foreignlanguage{catalan}{i"lusió}.
```

13-3-4

This character can also be typeset by using the commands `\lgem` and `\Lgem` or through the combinations “`\l.`” and “`\L.`” once `catalan` is selected.

Insert special quoting characters By default, \LaTeX supports single and double quotes: ‘quoted text’ and “quoted text”. This support is not desirable in European languages. Many have their own conventions and more often than not require different characters for this purpose. For example, in traditional Dutch typesetting, the opening quote should be placed on the baseline, in German typesetting the closing quote is reversed, and French typesetting requires guillemets. For Icelandic typesetting the guillemets are used as well, but the other way around — that is, pointing “inward” instead of “outward” (a convention also sometimes used in German typography).

English “quoted text” has quotes different from Dutch „quoted text” or German „quoted text” or French « quoted text ».

13-3-5

```
\usepackage[dutch,ngerman,french,english]{babel}
```

```
English ‘‘quoted text’’ has quotes different from
\selectlanguage{dutch}Dutch “‘quoted text’” or
\selectlanguage{ngerman}German “‘quoted text’” or
\selectlanguage{french}French \og quoted text\fg.
```

The T1 font encoding provides the guillemets (see Table 9.22 on page →I 763), but its support for French typesetting relies on the commands `\og` and `\fg`. These commands not only produce the guillemets but also provide proper spacing between them and the text they surround. Note that the `csquotes` package, discussed in Section 3.4.2 on page →I 179, provides convenient methods to automatically generate the right quotes based on language context and configuration setup.

Insert special hyphenation rules A number of languages have specific rules about what happens to characters at a line break. For instance, in older German spelling `..ck..` is hyphenated as `..k-k..`, and a triple `f` in a compound word is normally typeset as `ff` — except when hyphenated, in which case the third `f` reappears as shown in the example.

Brote bak-
ken

Farbstoff-
fabrik

13-3-6

```
\usepackage[german]{babel}
```

```
\fbox{\parbox[t]{1,5cm}{Brote ba"cken}} \quad
\fbox{\parbox[t]{1,5cm}{Farbsto"ffabrik}}
```

Insert special hyphenation indications A number of shorthands are used to inform \LaTeX about special situations with regard to hyphenation. For instance, in a number of languages it is sometimes necessary to prevent \LaTeX from typesetting a ligature — for example, in a compound word. This goal can be achieved by inserting a small kern between the two letters that would normally form a ligature. The shorthand “`|`” is available for this purpose in many language definitions.

Das deutsche Wort „Auflage“ sollte nicht so, sondern als »Auflage« gesetzt werden.

13-3-7

```
\usepackage[german]{babel}
```

```
Das deutsche Wort “‘Auflage’” sollte nicht so,
sondern als ">Auf"|lage"< gesetzt werden.
```

Another popular shorthand is "-", which indicates a soft or hard hyphen without suppressing hyphenation in the remainder of the word. Sadly, this has not been done consistently, because in Dutch, Portuguese, Catalan, or Danish, it is a hard hyphen, while in German, Spanish, Norwegian, Slovak, or Russian, it is a soft hyphen.

minister-

president

minister-

president

minister

president

```
\usepackage[dutch]{babel}
\fbbox{\parbox[t]{1cm}{minister"-president}} \quad
\fbbox{\parbox[t]{1cm}{minister\~president}} \quad
\fbbox{\parbox[t]{1cm}{ministerpresident}}
```

13-3-8

There is also "" (similar to "-", but does not print the -), "=" (whose meaning, again, depends on the language), and "~" (which usually inserts an explicit hyphen without a breakpoint). The following example shows the effects of these shorthands in German, using the same word:

1. Gutenberg-

Universität

2. Gutenberg

Universität

3. Gutenberg

Universität

4. Gutenberg-

Universi-

tät

5. Gutenberg-

Universität

Gutenberg-

Universität

Gutenberg

Universität

Gutenberg-

Universität

Gutenberg-

Universität

Gutenberg-

Universität

Gutenberg-

Universität

```
\usepackage[german]{babel}
\newcommand\present[1]{%
  \fbbox{\parbox[t]{31mm}{#1}}
  \fbbox{\parbox[t]{16mm}{#1}}
  \par}
1. \present{Gutenberg-Universität}
2. \present{Gutenberg"-Universität}
3. \present{Gutenberg""Universität}
4. \present{Gutenberg"=Universität}
5. \present{Gutenberg"~Universität}
```

13-3-9

The tilde

For the languages Basque, Galician, and Spanish, the construction ~- (as well as ~-- and ~---) produces a dash that disallows a line break after it. When the tilde is followed by any other character (or the empty group {}), it retains its original function as an “unbreakable space”. That is why the first two lines of the example are very loosely typeset.

En español, la raya que abre incisos

—como este— no debe quedar al final

de una línea.

```
\usepackage[spanish,activeacute]{babel}
En español, la raya que abre incisos ~---como
este--- no debe quedar al final de~una línea.
```

13-3-10

The colon, semicolon, exclamation mark, and question mark

For the languages Breton, French, Russian, and Ukrainian, these four characters are used as shorthands to facilitate the use of correct typographic conventions. For Turkish typography, this ability is needed for the colon and semicolon only, while in French it is extended to the guillemets when so requested with \frenchsetup. The convention is that a little white space should precede (or follow) these characters.

En français on doit mettre un « petit espace » devant la ponctuation double : comme cela ! For English this is not done: as shown here!

13-3-11

```
\usepackage[english,french]{babel}
\frenchsetup{og=«, fg=»}
```

En français on doit mettre un «petit espace»
devant la ponctuation double: comme cela!
\selectlanguage{english}
For English this is not done: as shown here!

This white space is added automatically by default, but this setting can be changed in a configuration file. The use of the colon as a shorthand character can lead to problems with other packages or when including PostScript files in a document. In such cases it may be necessary to disable this shorthand (temporarily) by using `\shorthandoff`, as explained in Example 13-2-5 on page 307.

The grave accent

The support for the languages Catalan and Hungarian makes it possible to use the grave accent (‘) as a shorthand character. The purpose of this shorthand for Catalan is just to facilitate the entering of accented characters, and one has to specify the option `activegrave` when loading `babel`. For Hungarian this shorthand also adds some characters to invoke the correct behavior at hyphenation points.

locsan	loc- csan
eddzünk	edz- dzünk
poggyász	pogy- gyász
Kodállya	Kodály- lya

13-3-12

menyiei	meny- nyei
vissza	visz- sza
pottyan	poty- tyan
rizzsel	rizs- zsel

```
\usepackage[hungarian]{babel}
\newcommand\present[1]
{\fbox{\parbox[t]{20mm}{#1}}
\fbox{\parbox[t]{8,5mm}{#1}}\par}
\present{lo'ccsan}
\present{e'ddzünk}
\present{po'ggyász}
\present{Kodá'llya}
\present{me'nnyei}
\present{vi'ssza}
\present{po'ttyan}
\present{ri'zzsel}
```

The equal sign

The support for the languages Latin and Turkish makes it possible to use the equal sign (=) as a shorthand character.

- When a Latin text is being typeset, the equal sign is defined to be a shorthand for adding a macron accent to the lowercase vowels (except, in pdfTeX, the medieval ligatures æ and œ). Because this shorthand may interfere with other packages, it must be explicitly requested when the package is loaded and additionally turned on with `\ProsodicMarksOn`.

```
\usepackage[latin.withprosodicmarks]{babel}
```

13-3-13

ā ē ī ō ū \ProsodicMarksOn =a =e =i =o =u

- When Turkish typesetting rules are to be followed, the equal sign needs to be preceded by a little white space. This is achieved automatically by turning the equal sign into a shorthand that replaces a preceding space character with a tiny amount of white space.

```
a =b      \usepackage[english,turkish]{babel}
a=b      \selectlanguage{english} a =b \par \selectlanguage{turkish} a =b
```

13-3-14

The disadvantage of having the equal sign turn into a space character is that it may cause many other packages to fail, including the usage of PostScript files for graphics inclusions. Make sure that the shorthand is turned off with `\shorthandoff`.

The greater than and less than signs

The support for the Spanish language makes it possible to use the “greater than” and “less than” signs (< and >) as shorthand characters for inserting a special quoting environment. This environment inserts different quoting characters when it is nested within itself. It supports a maximum of three levels of nested quotations. It also automatically inserts the closing quote signs when a new paragraph is started *within* a quote, as seen in front of “Las comillas ...”:

<p>La regla es: «dentro de las comillas latinas se usan las “inglesas y dentro de éstas las ‘sencillas’”.</p> <p>»Las comillas de seguir son como las de cerrar.»</p>	<pre>\usepackage[spanish]{babel} La regla es: <<dentro de las comillas latinas se usan las <<inglesas y dentro de éstas las <<sencillas>>>>. Las comillas de seguir son como las de cerrar.>></pre>
---	---

13-3-15

Note that when characters are turned into shorthands, the ligature mechanism in the fonts no longer works for them. In the T1 font encoding, for instance, a ligature is defined for two consecutive “less than” signs that normally results in typesetting guillemets. In the example above, the nested quote shows clearly that this does not happen. To deactivate the Spanish quoting style, just pass `es-noquoting` as a package option.

The period

The support for the Spanish language also allows the use of the period (.) as a shorthand character in math mode. Its purpose is to control whether decimal numbers are written with the comma (`\decimalcomma`) or the period (`\decimalpoint`) as the decimal character.

```
1000,10      \usepackage[spanish]{babel}
1000.10      \decimalcomma $1000.10$ \par \decimalpoint $1000.10$
```

13-3-16

Thanks to this feature, documents may be adapted easily to either convention, depending on the country (for example, dot in Mexico, comma in Spain). To deactivate this feature, pass `es-nodecimaldot` as a package option.

13.3.3 Language-specific commands

Apart from the translations and shorthands discussed above, some language definition files provide extra commands. Some of them are meant to facilitate the production of documents that conform to the appropriate typesetting rules. Others provide extra functionality not available by default in L^AT_EX. A number of these commands are described in this section.

Formatting dates

For some languages more than one format is used for representing dates in the Gregorian calendar, which is the only one supported out of the box by L^AT_EX. In these cases extra commands are provided to produce a date in different formats, although you can resort alternatively to the package `datetime2` by Nicola Talbot, which provides more sophisticated formatting options. The date in the next four examples is artificially set to a very important date in L^AT_EX's history;¹ see page →17 for the story behind this date.

In the Bulgarian tradition, months are indicated using uppercase roman numerals; for such dates the command `\todayRoman` is available.

		<code>\usepackage[bulgarian]{babel}</code>
	2 февруари 2020 г.	<code>\usepackage{XCharter}</code>
13-3-17	2. II. 2020 г.	<code>\today \par \todayRoman</code>

When writing in the Esperanto language two slightly different ways of representing the date are provided by the commands `\hodiaui` and `\hodiaun`.

	2-a de februaro, 2020	
	la 2-a de februaro, 2020	<code>\usepackage[esperanto]{babel}</code>
13-3-18	la 2-an de februaro, 2020	<code>\today \par \hodiaui \par \hodiaun</code>

When producing a document in the Greek language the date can also be represented with Greek numerals instead of arabic numerals. For this purpose the command `\Grtoday` is made available.

	2 Φεβρουαρίου 2020	<code>\usepackage[greek]{babel}</code>
	Β' Φεβρουαρίου ,ΒΚ'	<code>\usepackage{Alegreya}</code>
13-3-19		<code>\today \par \Grtoday</code>

The support for the Hungarian language provides the command `\ontoday` to produce a date format used in expressions such as “on February 10th”.

For the Upper and Lower Sorbian languages two different sets of month names are employed. By default, the support for these languages produces “new-style” dates, but “old-style” dates can be produced as well. The “old-style” date format for the Lower Sorbian language can be selected with the command `\olddatelsorbian`;

¹ This is the day when the L3 programming layer was integrated in the L^AT_EX format.

`\newdate`sorbian switches (back) to the modern form. For Upper Sorbian similar commands are available, as shown in the example:

	<code>\usepackage[usorbian,lsorbian]{babel}</code>
2. februara 2020	<code>\newdate</code> sorbian <code>\today</code> <code>\par</code>
2. maŕego roŕka 2020	<code>\olddate</code> sorbian <code>\today</code> <code>\par</code>
2. februara 2020	<code>\newdate</code> usorbian <code>\today</code> <code>\par</code>
2. maŕeho rŕŕka 2020	<code>\olddate</code> usorbian <code>\today</code>

13-3-20

In Swedish documents it is customary to represent dates with just numbers. Such dates can occur in two forms: YYYY-MM-DD and DD/MM YYYY. The command `\datesymd` changes the definition of the command `\today` to produce dates in the first numerical form; the command `\datesdmy` changes the definition of the command `\today` to produce dates in the second numerical format.¹

	<code>\usepackage[swedish]{babel}</code>
Default date format: 30 februari 1712	Default date format: <code>\today</code> <code>\</code>
<code>\datesymd</code> gives: 1712-02-30	<code>\verb|\datesymd|</code> gives: <code>\datesymd \today \</code>
<code>\datesdmy</code> gives: 30/2 1712	<code>\verb|\datesdmy|</code> gives: <code>\datesdmy \today</code>

13-3-21

Numbering

Counting is a natural and basic activity of the human thought, and many cultures have developed their own particular, and sometimes unique, ways to do it. Although the Indo-Arabic numeral system is widespread, there are many other ways to represent quantities, and even the decimal system has some differences across countries (for example, the decimal mark can be either a dot or a comma).

Letters in their alphabetic order are customary in enumerations, and each script requires its own characters. Even in a single script, letters can be selected in different ways. For example, in Spanish the *ñ* is inserted after the *n*, and in Italian some letters are discarded in some types of documents. It is worth noting that there is not always a unique “alphabet” even in a single language and that stylistic decisions are relevant.

Alphabetic counting has been available in \LaTeX since its beginnings with the commands `\alph` and `\Alph`, which assumes the bicameral system (lowercase and uppercase) in most Western languages.

The support for certain languages provides additional commands for representing numbers by letters. For the Esperanto language the commands `\esper` and `\Esper` are provided. The support for the Greek language changes the definition of `\alph` and `\Alph` to produce Greek letters, while the support for the Bulgarian language changes them to produce Cyrillic letters. The support for the Russian and Belarusian languages provides the commands `\asbuk` and `\Asbuk` as alternatives to the \LaTeX commands. Table 13.4 on the facing page compares the results of the different commands and their redefinitions for certain languages.

¹Fun fact: the date in the example was real — but only in Sweden.

	<i>default</i>		Esperanto		Greek		Russian		Bulgarian	
<i>value</i>	\alph\Alph	\esper\Esper	\alph\Alph	\asbuk\Asbuk	\alph\Alph	\asbuk\Asbuk	\alph\Alph	\asbuk\Asbuk	\alph\Alph	\asbuk\Asbuk
1	a	A	a	A	α'	A'	a	A	a	A
2	b	B	b	B	β'	B'	б	Б	б	Б
3	c	C	c	C	γ'	Γ'	в	В	в	В
4	d	D	ĉ	Ĉ	δ'	Δ'	г	Г	г	Г
5	e	E	d	D	ε'	Ε'	д	Д	д	Д
6	f	F	e	E	ζ'	Ζ'	е	Е	е	Е
7	g	G	f	F	ζ'	Z'	ж	Ж	ж	Ж
8	h	H	g	G	η'	H'	з	З	з	З
9	i	I	ĝ	Ĝ	θ'	Θ'	и	И	и	И
10	j	J	h	H	ι'	I'	к	К	к	К
11	k	K	ĥ	Ĥ	ια'	ΙΑ'	л	Л	л	Л
12	l	L	i	I	ιβ'	ΙΒ'	м	М	м	М
13	m	M	j	J	ιγ'	ΙΓ'	н	Н	н	Н
14	n	N	ĵ	Ĵ	ιδ'	ΙΔ'	о	О	о	О
15	o	O	k	K	ιε'	ΙΕ'	п	Π	п	Π
16	p	P	l	L	ιζ'	ΙΖ'	р	Р	р	Р
17	q	Q	m	M	ιζ'	ΙΖ'	с	С	с	С
18	r	R	n	N	ιη'	ΙΗ'	т	Т	т	Т
19	s	S	o	O	ιθ'	ΙΘ'	у	У	у	У
20	t	T	p	P	κ'	Κ'	ф	Φ	ф	Φ
21	u	U	r	R	κα'	ΚΑ'	х	Χ	х	Χ
22	v	V	s	S	κβ'	ΚΒ'	ц	Ц	ц	Ц
23	w	W	ŝ	Ŝ	κγ'	ΚΓ'	ч	Ч	ч	Ч
24	x	X	t	T	κδ'	ΚΔ'	ш	Ш	ш	Ш
25	y	Y	u	U	κε'	ΚΕ'	щ	Щ	щ	Щ
26	z	Z	ŭ	Ŭ	κς'	Κς'	э	Э	ю	Ю
27	-	-	v	V	κζ'	ΚΖ'	ю	Ю	я	Я
28	-	-	z	Z	κη'	ΚΗ'	я	Я	-	-
29	-	-	-	-	κθ'	ΚΘ'	-	-	-	-
30	-	-	-	-	λ'	Λ'	-	-	-	-
40	-	-	-	-	μ'	Μ'	-	-	-	-
50	-	-	-	-	ν'	Ν'	-	-	-	-
100	-	-	-	-	ρ'	Ρ'	-	-	-	-
250	-	-	-	-	σν'	ΣΝ'	-	-	-	-
500	-	-	-	-	φ'	Φ'	-	-	-	-

13-3-22

Table 13.4: Different methods for representing numbers by letters

In some languages an alternative way of writing numbers exists, often named “additive” and based on assigning a letter or a combination of them to denote the numbers 1 to 9, 10 to 90, 100 to 900, and so on. An archetypal case is Greek, with a system that was used in official publications at the end of the 19th century and the beginning of the 20th century. At present most Greeks use it for small numbers.

The knowledge of how to write numbers larger than 20 or 30 is not very widespread, being primarily used by the Eastern Orthodox Church and scholars. They employ this approach to denote numbers up to 999999. This system works as follows:

- Only numbers greater than 0 can be expressed.
- For the units 1 through 9 (inclusive), the letters alpha, beta, gamma, delta, epsilon, stigma, zeta, eta, and theta are used, followed by a mark similar to the mathematical symbol “prime”, called the “numeric mark”. Because the letter stigma is not always part of the available font, it is often replaced by the first two letters of its name as an alternative. In the babel implementation the letter stigma is produced, rather than the digraph sigma tau.
- For the tens 10 through 90 (inclusive), the letters iota, kappa, lambda, mu, nu, xi, omikron, pi, and qoppa are used, again followed by the numeric mark. The qoppa that appears in Greek numerals has a distinct zig-zag form that is quite different from the normal qoppa, which resembles the Latin “q”.
- For the hundreds 100 through 900 (inclusive), the letters rho, sigma, tau, upsilon, phi, chi, psi, omega, and sampi are used, also followed by the numeric mark.
- Using these rules, any number between 1 and 999 can be expressed by a group of letters denoting the hundreds, tens, and units, followed by *one* numeric mark.
- For the number range 1000 through 999000 (inclusive), the digits denoting multiples of a thousand are expressed by the same letters as above, this time with a numeric mark in front of this letter group. This mark is rotated 180 degrees and placed *under* the baseline. As can be seen in the example below, when two letter groups are combined, *both* numeric marks are used:

123456 in Greek notation: ρ,χ,γυνς'

987654 in Greek notation: Δ,Π,ZXNΔ'

```
\usepackage{garamondlibre} \linespread{1.1}
\usepackage[english,greek]{babel}
\newcommand\eng[1]{\foreignlanguage{english}{#1}}

123456 \eng{in Greek notation:} \greeknumeral{123456} \par
987654 \eng{in Greek notation:} \Greeknuneral{987654}
```

13-3-23

In ancient Greece yet another numbering system was used, which closely resembles the roman one in that it employs letters to denote important numbers. Multiple occurrences of a letter denote a multiple of the “important” number; for example, the letter I denotes 1, so III denotes 3. Here are the basic digits used in the Athenian numbering system:

- I denotes the number one (1).
- II denotes the number five (5).
- Δ denotes the number ten (10).
- H denotes the number one hundred (100).
- X denotes the number one thousand (1000).
- M denotes the number ten thousand (10000).

Moreover, the letters Δ, H, X, and M, when placed under the letter II, denote five times

their original value; for example, the symbol Ⅻ denotes the number 5000, and the symbol Ⅹ denotes the number 50. Note that the numbering system does not provide negative numerals or a symbol for zero.

The Athenian numbering system, among others, is described in *A History of Mathematical Notations* [29, pp. 21–29]. This numbering system is supported by the package `athnum`, which comes with the `babel` system and implements the command `\athnum`. Note that only a few font families besides Computer and Latin Modern provide the required characters, among them Kerkis and Garamond Libre.

13-3-24

6284 in Athenian notation:

ⅯⅩHHⅯ△△ⅢⅢ

```
\usepackage[english,greek]{babel}
\usepackage{garamondlibre,athnum}
\newcommand\eng[1]{\foreignlanguage{english}{#1}}
6284 \eng{in Athenian notation:} \ \ \athnum{6284}
```

In Icelandic documents, numbers require special formatting to be typeset correctly. For this purpose the command `\tala` is provided. It takes an optional argument, which can be used to replace the decimal separator used, such as for use with the `dcolumn` package.

The `dcolumn` package formats numbers in math mode, which explains the different fonts in the two parts of the example (this book does not change the default math setup, so the digits inside the box are taken from Computer Modern):

13-3-25

3 141,592 653
3,141.592,653

3,14
123,456 7
9 876,543

```
\usepackage[english,icelandic]{babel}
\usepackage{dcolumn} \newcolumntype{d}{D{,}}{\decimalsep}{-1}}
\tala{3141,592653} \par
\foreignlanguage{english}{\tala{3141,592653}}\par \bigskip
\begin{tabular}{|d|} \hline
3,14 \ \ \
\tala[,]{123,4567} \ \ \ \tala[,]{9876,543} \ \ \ \hline
\end{tabular}
```

Miscellaneous extras

In French typesetting it is customary to print family names in small capitals, *without* hyphenating a name. For this purpose the command `\bsc` (boxed small capitals) is provided. Abbreviations of the French word “numéro” should be typeset according to specific rules; these have been implemented in the commands `\no` and `\No`. Finally, for certain enumerated lists the commands `\primo`, `\secundo`, `\tertio`, and `\quarto` are available when typesetting in French.

... for French

13-3-26

Leslie LAMPORT N° 9 1° 3°

```
\usepackage[french]{babel}
Leslie~\bsc{Lamport} \quad \No9 \ \ \primo \ \ \tertio
```

In some languages, e.g., Italian, it is customary to write together the article and the following noun — for example, “nell’altezza”. To carry out the hyphenation of such constructs the character ’ is made to behave as a normal letter.

... for Catalan,
French, and Italian

... for Hungarian

In the Hungarian language the definite article can be either “a” or “az”, depending on the context. Especially with references and citations, it is not always known beforehand which form should be used. The support for the Hungarian language contains commands that know the rules dictating when a “z” should be added to the article. These commands all take an argument that determines which form of the definite article should be typeset together with that argument.

```
\az{text} \Az{text}
```

These commands produce the article and the argument. The argument can be a star (as in `\az*`), in which case just the article is typeset. The form `\Az` is intended for the start of a sentence.

```
\aref{text} \Aref{text} \apageref{text} \Apageref{text}
```

The first two commands should be used instead of `a(z)~\ref{label}`. When an equation is being referenced, the argument may be enclosed in parentheses instead of braces. For page references use `\apageref` (or `\Apageref`) to allow \LaTeX to automatically produce the correct definite article.

```
\acite{text} \Acite{text}
```

For citations the command `\acite` should be used. Its argument may be a list of citations, in which case the first element of the list determines which form of the article should be typeset.

... specials for math

In Eastern Europe a number of mathematical operators have a different appearance in equations than they do in “the Western world”. Table 13.5 on the next page shows the relevant commands, which can be used irrespective of the current language. The Russian commands are also valid for Bulgarian and Ukrainian language support. The package `grmath`, which comes as part of the Greek style, changes the definitions of these operators to produce abbreviations of their local names. The package can be used only in conjunction with the `greek` option of `babel`.

13.3.4 Layout considerations

Some of the language support files in the `babel` package provide commands for automatically changing the layout of the document. Some simply change the way \LaTeX handles spaces after punctuation characters or ensure that the first paragraph that follows a section heading is indented. Others go much further.

Spaces after
punctuation
characters

In *The \TeX book* [84, pp.72–74], the concept of extra white space after punctuation characters is discussed. Good typesetting practice mandated that inter-sentence spaces behave a little differently than interword spaces with respect to shrinkage and expansion (during justification). However, this practice is not considered desirable in all cases — even in English it seems to be falling into disfavor, so for a number of languages (for example, Breton, Bulgarian, Czech, Danish, Estonian, Finnish, French,

<i>LaTeX</i>		<i>Serbian</i>		<i>Russian</i>	
<code>\tan</code>	tan	<code>\tg</code>	tg	<code>\tg</code>	tg
<code>\cot</code>	cot	<code>\ctg</code>	ctg	<code>\ctg</code>	ctg
<code>\sinh</code>	sinh	<code>\sh</code>	sh	<code>\sh</code>	sh
<code>\cosh</code>	cosh	<code>\ch</code>	ch	<code>\ch</code>	ch
<code>\tanh</code>	tanh	<code>\th</code>	th	<code>\th</code>	arctg
<code>\coth</code>	coth	<code>\cth</code>	cth	<code>\cth</code>	cth
<code>\csc</code>	csc			<code>\cosec</code>	cosec
<code>\arcsin</code>	arcsin	<code>\arsh</code>	arsh		
<code>\arccos</code>	arccos	<code>\arch</code>	arch		
<code>\arctan</code>	arctan	<code>\arctg</code>	arctg	<code>\arctg</code>	arctg
		<code>\arcctg</code>	arcctg	<code>\arcctg</code>	arcctg (extra)

13-3-27

*Note that the redefinition of `\th` conflicts with its standard use as an LICR command for *p* (thorn); therefore, `babel` restricts this redefinition to *math mode* in Cyrillic texts.*

Table 13.5: Alternative mathematical operators for Eastern European languages

German, Norwegian, Russian, Spanish, Turkish, and Ukrainian) this feature is switched off with a command called `\frenchspacing` (even though it is *not* used for French).

Another layout concept that is built into most \LaTeX classes is the suppression of the paragraph indentation for the first paragraph that follows a section heading. Again, for some languages this behavior is wrong; the support for French, Serbo-Croatian, and Spanish changes it to have *all* paragraphs indented. In fact, you can request this behavior for any document by loading the package `indentfirst`.

*Paragraph indentation
after heading*

The support for French takes this somewhat further to accommodate the typesetting rules used in France. If this language has been set as the main one, it changes the general way lists are typeset by \LaTeX by reducing the amount of vertical white space in them; this change is applied globally to preserve the consistency in the document appearance. For the `itemize` environment, it removes all vertical white space between the items and changes the appearance of the items by replacing “•” with a dash.

Layout of lists

	<code>\usepackage[french]{babel}</code>
Some text with a list.	Some text with a list.
— item 1	<code>\begin{itemize}</code>
— item 2	<code>\item item 1 \item item 2</code>
	<code>\end{itemize}</code>
And some text following.	And some text following.

13-3-28

`\frenchsetup{options}`

For documents that are typeset in more than one language, the support for French provides a way to customize how several layout elements should be adapted. Different results can be achieved by using key-value options in `\frenchsetup` in the preamble of the document. An example is `StandardLayout=true`, which forces `babel` not to

interfere with lists, first paragraphs indentation, or footnotes. There are many options for fine-tuning the typographical conventions.

Layout of footnotes

For instance, in the French typesetting tradition, footnotes are handled differently than they are in the Anglo-American tradition. In the running text, a little white space should be added before the number or symbol that calls the footnote. This behavior is optional and can be selected by using the `AutoSpaceFootnotes` key in `\frenchsetup`.

The text of the footnote can also be typeset according to French typesetting rules; this result is achieved by using the key `FrenchFootnotes`, but the commands `\StandardFootnotes` and `\FrenchFootnotes` are also available for local changes (`\StandardFootnotes` in minipages, for instance, because the counter is `\alph`).

Some text ^a.

a. with a footnote

Some text ^a.

^awith a footnote

```
\usepackage[french,english]{babel}
\frenchsetup{AutoSpaceFootnotes,FrenchFootnotes}

\begin{minipage}{70pt} Some text\footnote{with a footnote}.
\end{minipage}

\selectlanguage{french}\StandardFootnotes
\begin{minipage}{70pt} Some text\footnote{with a footnote}.
\end{minipage}
```

13-3-29

Layout of captions

Another change performed by the `babel` support for the French language is that the colon in captions for tables and figures is replaced with an en-dash when one of the document classes of standard \LaTeX is used.

Internal
commands
redefined for
magyar

The support for typesetting Hungarian documents goes even further: it redefines a number of internal \LaTeX commands to produce correct captions for figures and tables. Using the same means, it changes the layout of section headings. The definition of the `theorem` environment is changed as well. As explained above, such changes may lead to unexpected and even unwanted behavior, so be careful.

Right to left
typesetting

To support typesetting Hebrew or Arabic documents, even more drastic changes are needed; they are treated in Section 13.5 on page 332.

13.3.5 Languages and font encoding

As shown in some of the earlier examples, some languages cannot be supported by, for instance, simply translating some texts and providing extra support for special hyphenation needs. Many languages require characters that are not present in \LaTeX 's T1 encoding. For some, just a few characters are missing and can be constructed from the available glyphs; other languages are not normally written using the Latin script. Some of these are supported by the `babel` system.

Extensions to the T1 encodings

For some languages just a few characters are missing in the T1 encoding, and they might not even be directly accessible on the keyboard. When the missing characters can be constructed from the available glyphs, it is relatively easy to rectify this situation. Such is the case for the Old Icelandic language. It needs a number of

characters that can be represented by adding the “ogonek” to available glyphs. To access them, you can use the shorthands in the next example, which are activated explicitly in the package options:

13-3-30

ø Ø ó Ô õ Ę Ę Ę

```
\usepackage[icelandic.utf8old]{babel}
"o "O "ó "Ó "õ "Ė "Ė "Ė
```

Basic support for switching script-related features

Because scripts, writing directions, and so on, are strongly linked to each language, the babel core provides no user interface to set them. Instead, they are adjusted as needed when a language is selected. This high-level interface guarantees all the required features are set and applied consistently.¹

As to writing directions, the model to deal with them in 8-bit engines like pdfTeX has many issues and requires a lot of manual intervention, which has been provided in different ways, depending on the language. See the manual for the language styles requiring bidi writing, particularly Arabic (which is supported with the arabi package, by Youssef Jabri) and Hebrew. Something similar can be said of XeTeX, whose bidirectional model is basically the same as that of pdfTeX.

On the other hand, with LuaTeX, a more modern approach, based on the Unicode algorithm, can be applied so that the writing direction is switched automatically. See Section 13.5 on “Complex scripts” for further details, but here this macro is worth mentioning.

```
\babelsublr{text}
```

There are cases in which the Unicode algorithm fails and makes the wrong guess. An example is the string “2.5”, which must be shown in this order when it refers to a real number, but also, and depending on the language, “5.2” when it refers to a section with a subsection. With LuaTeX the latter can be entered as `\babelsublr{2}.\babelsublr{5}`, which isolates the numbers from the dot. See the babel manual for the option `layout=counters`, which does this for you in some typical cases.

```
\ensureascii{text}
```

A few encodings used for text, notably LGR or X2, are not LICR-savvy, and the ASCII range contains non-Latin letters (for example, the slot for the letter “a” is replaced in the former by the Greek letter alpha). This command attempts to typeset its argument in a font encoding respecting the ASCII encoding, typically T1 or OT1, and can be used in the scope of those problematical encodings so that ASCII text is correctly typeset.

¹A few macros to deal with those changes have been available for many years (for example, `\cyrillicencoding`), but they are deprecated, because even the Latin script may require several encodings.

13.4 Support for Cyrillic and Greek

The Greek and Cyrillic scripts are closely related to the Latin one, and it is not surprising that among the first non-Latin scripts to be supported by \LaTeX were the former. Although currently they are usually best typeset with the Unicode engines, pdf \TeX is still widely used, and this section is devoted to this engine.

Unicode engines

In X \TeX and Lua \TeX , you can resort, in addition, to the mechanism described below in “Complex scripts” (Section 13.5), which supports not only Monotonic and Polytonic Greek, but also Ancient Greek.

13.4.1 The Cyrillic alphabet

The Cyrillic alphabet is used by several of the Slavic languages in Eastern Europe, as well as for writing tens of languages used in the territory encompassed by the former Soviet Union. Vladimir Volovich and Werner Lemberg, together with the \LaTeX Project Team, have integrated basic support for the Cyrillic language into \LaTeX . This section addresses the issues of Cyrillic fonts, the encoding interface, and their integration with `babel`.

Historically, support for Russian in \TeX has been available from the American Mathematical Society [13]. The AMS system uses the `wncyr` fonts and is based on a transliteration table originally designed for Russian journal names and article titles in the journal *Mathematical Reviews*. In this journal the AMS prefers that the same character sequence in the electronic files produce either the Russian text with Russian characters or its transliteration with English characters, without any ambiguities.

However, with the spread of \TeX in Russia, proper support for typesetting Russian (and later other languages written in the Cyrillic alphabet) became necessary. Over the years several 7- and 8-bit input encodings were developed, as well as many font encodings. The Cyrillic system is designed to work for any 8-bit input encoding and is able to map all of them onto a few Cyrillic font encodings, each supporting a number of languages.

Font encodings

For compatibility reasons, only the upper 128 characters in an 8-bit \TeX font are available for new glyphs. Because the number of glyphs in use in Cyrillic-based languages during the 20th century far exceeds 128, four “Cyrillic font encodings” have been defined [14]. Three of them — T2A, T2B, and T2C — satisfy the basic structural requirements of \LaTeX ’s T* encodings and, therefore, can be used in multilingual documents with other languages being based on standard font encodings.¹

The work on the T2* encodings was performed by Alexander Berdnikov in collaboration with Mikhail Kolodin and Andrew Janishevsky. Vladimir Volovich provided the integration with \LaTeX . Table 13.6 shows the layout of the T2A encoding.

¹The fourth Cyrillic encoding, X2, contains Cyrillic glyphs spread over the 256 character positions and is thus suitable only for specific, Cyrillic-only applications. It is not discussed here.

	'0	'1	'2	'3	'4	'5	'6	'7	
'00x	`	´	^	~	¨	˜	°	˘	"0x
'01x	˘	ˉ	˙	˚	˛	I	⟨	⟩	
'02x	“	”	ˆ	˜	˚	—	—		"1x
'03x	o	ı	j	ff	fi	fl	ffi	ffl	
'04x	˘	!	"	#	\$	%	&	'	"2x
'05x	()	*	+	,	-	.	/	
'06x	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	"3x
'07x	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?	
'10x	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	"4x
'11x	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	
'12x	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	"5x
'13x	X	Y	Z	[\]	^	_	
'14x	‘	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	"6x
'15x	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	
'16x	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	"7x
'17x	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	-	
'20x	Г	Г	Ђ	Ѓ	ђ	Ж	З	Љ	"8x
'21x	Ї	Њ	Ќ	Ћ	Æ	Њ	Ћ	Ѕ	
'22x	Ө	Ї	Ї	У	У	Х	Ц	Ч	"9x
'23x	Ч	Є	Ә	Ѓ	Ё	№	Ѡ	§	
'24x	г	г	ђ	ђ	ђ	ж	з	љ	"Ax
'25x	ї	қ	к	к	æ	ң	ћ	ѕ	
'26x	ө	ç	Ÿ	У	У	х	ц	ч	"Bx
'27x	ч	є	ə	њ	ë	„	«	»	
'30x	А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	"Cx
'31x	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н	О	П	
'32x	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	"Dx
'33x	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы	Ь	Э	Ю	Я	
'34x	а	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	"Ex
'35x	и	й	к	л	м	н	о	п	
'36x	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	"Fx
'37x	ш	щ	ъ	ы	ь	э	ю	я	
	"8	"9	"A	"B	"C	"D	"E	"F	

Characters marked in *blue* need to be present (in their specified positions) in every text encoding, as they are transparently passed through T_EX.

Table 13.6: Glyph chart for a T2A-encoded font (larm1000)

Two other \LaTeX Cyrillic font encodings exist, although they are best avoided: the 7-bit OT2 encoding developed by the American Mathematical Society, and the 8-bit LCY encoding, which are incompatible with the \LaTeX 's T* encodings and, therefore, unsuitable for typesetting multilingual documents. The OT2 encoding was designed in such a way that a transliterated source could be used to produce the text in that form and in the Cyrillic alphabet.

The basic \LaTeX distribution come with all the encoding and font definition files for handling Cyrillic. The `babel` package includes support for Bulgarian, Russian, Belarusian, and Ukrainian, among others. Together with the font files, \LaTeX can use this package to provide complete support for typesetting languages based on the Cyrillic alphabet. The Cyrillic font encodings support the languages listed in the document `cyrguide.pdf`. Note that some languages, such as Bulgarian and Russian, can be properly typeset with more than one of those encodings.

There are hyphenation patterns for several languages based on the T2A encoding in the `hyph-utf8` bundle, which is the default in current \TeX distributions. A collection of hyphenation patterns for the Russian language that supports the T2* encodings, as well as other popular font encodings used for Russian typesetting, is available in the `ruhyphen` distribution on CTAN (`language/hyphenation/ruhyphen`).

Fonts

The default font family with \LaTeX is Knuth's Computer Modern, in its 8-bit (T1-encoded EC fonts) incarnation. Olga Lapko and Andrey Khodulev developed the LH fonts, which provide glyph designs compatible with the Computer Modern font family and covering all Cyrillic font encodings. They provide the same font shapes and sizes as those available for its Latin equivalent, the EC family, and are now part of the CM-Super fonts package.

Other fonts can also be used, provided that their \TeX font encoding is compatible with the T2* encodings, as several examples in this chapter show. More can be found in Section 10.12.

Using Cyrillic in your documents

Support for Cyrillic fonts in pdf \TeX is based on the standard `fontenc` package and assumes by default that UTF-8 is used as the input encoding. If your files are stored in one of the legacy 8-bit input encodings, then `inputenc` is also needed. For instance, one can write the following in the preamble of the document:

```
\usepackage[T2A]{fontenc} \usepackage[koi8-r]{inputenc}
\usepackage[russian]{babel}
```

The input encoding `koi8-r` (KOI8 optimized for Russian) is just one of the many alternatives to UTF-8 available for Cyrillic texts:

`cp855` Standard MS-DOS Cyrillic code page.

`cp866` Standard MS-DOS Russian code page. Several variants, distinguished by differences in the code positions 242–254, exist: `cp866av` (Cyrillic Alternative),

cp866mav (Modified Alternative Variant), cp866nav (New Alternative Variant), and cp866tat (for Tatar).

cp1251 Standard MS Windows Cyrillic code page.

koi8-r Standard Cyrillic code page that is widely used on UN*X-like systems for Russian language support. Variants for Ukrainian are koi8-u and koi8-ru. An ECMA variant (ISO-IR 111 ECMA) is isoir111.

iso88595 ISO standard ISO 8859-5 (also called ISO-IR 144).

maccyr Apple Macintosh Cyrillic code page (also known as Microsoft cp10007) and macukr, the Apple Macintosh Ukrainian code page.

ctt, dbk, mnk, mos, ncc Mongolian code pages.

Not all of these code pages are part of the standard inputenc distribution, so some may have to be obtained separately.

When more than one input encoding is used within a document, you can use the `\inputencoding` command to switch between them. To define the case of text, two standard \LaTeX commands, `\MakeUppercase` and `\MakeLowercase`, can produce uppercase or lowercase, respectively. The low-level \TeX `\uppercase` and `\lowercase` should never be used in \LaTeX and will not work for Cyrillic.

In the previous example of a preamble, the font encoding to be used was explicitly declared. For multilingual documents *all* encodings needed should be enumerated via the `\usepackage[...]{fontenc}` command. Changing from one font encoding to another can be accomplished by using the `\fontencoding` command, but it is advisable that such changes be performed by a higher-level interface such as the `\selectlanguage` command. In particular, when using `babel`, you can simply write

```
\usepackage[russian]{babel}
```

where `babel` will automatically choose (and load) the default font encoding for Russian, which is T2A, when it is available.

Indexes and bibliographies

There are a few tools to deal with indexes and bibliographies based on the default UTF-8 encoding. For indexes, `upmendex` is an alternative for *MakeIndex* supporting Unicode and many languages, even with pdf \TeX . It is described in Chapter 14, so here we limit ourselves to the steps required to compose an index with Russian terms. In the document, set the index up in the preamble in the same way as with *MakeIndex*. An example is:

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[T2A]{fontenc} \usepackage[russian]{babel}
\usepackage{makeidx}      \makeindex
\begin{document}
один\index{один} два\index{два}
\printindex
\end{document}
```

Although the default collator does not do a bad job (for example, “ë” is correctly sorted under “e”), it is advisable to set the locale as explained in Section 14.3.2, where the reader can find further information on customizing upmindex. Just create a file containing the line:

```
icu_locale "ru"
```

and then include it in the list of styles. Thus, if you name the file `ru_locale.ist`, you have to run `upmindex -s ru_locale <filename>.idx` to use it.

For bibliographic references, `biblatex` and `biber` provide a convenient replacement for `BibTeX`. The package and program are Unicode aware and work smoothly with the three main engines. They are described in detail in Chapters 15 and 16.

13.4.2 The Greek alphabet

Greek support in `babel` comes in two variants: the one-accent `monotoniko` (the default), which is used in most cases in everyday communications in Greece today, and the multi-accent `polutoniko`, which has to be specified as an attribute, as explained in Section 13.2.3. These variants are mutually exclusive, and they cannot be combined in a single document. This limitation does not exist with the interface explained in the next section, but it requires $X_{\text{T}}\text{TeX}$ or LuaTeX .

The first family of Greek fonts for $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ was created during the mid-1980s by Silvio Levy [120]. Other developers improved or extended these fonts or developed their own Greek fonts.

In `babel` the Greek language support is maintained by Günter Milde, based on the original work of Claudio Beccari in collaboration with Apostolos Syropoulos, who developed the Greek `cb` font family [11]. In their paper these authors discuss in some detail previous efforts¹ to support the Greek language with $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$.

It relies on the `LGR` encoding, whose layout is shown in Table 13.7 on the next page. Although it is automatically loaded with the `greek` option of `babel`, it is advisable to request it explicitly with `fontenc`, as any other encoding. The `cb` fonts were originally devised as a companion to the default Computer Modern family supporting this encoding, but, as shown in Section 10.11 on page 106, there are currently more fonts in the `LGR` encoding to choose from.

It should be stressed that this encoding does not conform to the `LICR` conventions because it has no ASCII glyphs at all. This can lead to potential conflicts in multilingual documents, which in many cases can be dealt with by using the command `\ensureascii`, but not always. This is one of the reasons why you should consider $X_{\text{T}}\text{TeX}$ or LuaTeX instead of pdfTeX for Greek.

It is possible to use Latin alphabetic characters for inputting Greek according to the transliteration scheme shown in Table 13.8 on page 330. This table shows that the Latin “v” character has no direct equivalent in the Greek transcription. In fact, it is used to indicate that one *does not* want a final sigma. For example, “sv” generates a median form sigma although it occurs in a final position.

¹A more recent overview about 25 years of Greek typesetting with $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ is given in [43].

	‘0	‘1	‘2	‘3	‘4	‘5	‘6	‘7	
‘00x	—	ˆ	⏏	⏐	⏑	⏒	⏓	⏔	“0x
‘01x	ı	Ä	H	Ω	Α	Υ	α	ü	
‘02x	,	\	ı	ϑ	˘	ϑ	Γ	λ	“1x
‘03x	€	‰	ə	⌘	‘	’	˘	—	
‘04x	≈	!	’	ˆ	ˆ	%	.	’	“2x
‘05x	()	*	+	,	-	.	/	
‘06x	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	“3x
‘07x	8	9	:	.	<	=	>	;	
‘10x	ˆ	A	B	ˆ	Δ	E	Φ	Γ	“4x
‘11x	H	I	Θ	K	Λ	M	N	O	
‘12x	Π	X	P	Σ	T	Υ	ˆ	Ω	“5x
‘13x	Ξ	Ψ	Z	[	ˆ	]	ˆ	ˆ	
‘14x	`	α	β	ς	δ	ε	φ	γ	“6x
‘15x	η	ι	θ	κ	λ	μ	ν	ο	
‘16x	π	χ	ρ	ς	τ	υ		ω	“7x
‘17x	ξ	ψ	ζ	«	,	»	~	—	
‘20x	à	á	â	ã	ä	å	ä	ä	“8x
‘21x	á	ă	ă	ă	ă	ă	ă	ă	
‘22x	ã	ă	ă	ƒ	ă	ă	ă	˘	“9x
‘23x	ĥ	ĥ	ĥ		ĥ	ĥ	ĥ		
‘24x	ĥ	ĥ	ĥ	ĥ	ĥ	ĥ	ĥ	ĥ	“Ax
‘25x	ĥ	ĥ	ĥ	ĥ	ĥ	ĥ	ĥ	ĥ	
‘26x	ô	ô	ô	ô	ô	ô	ô	ô	“Bx
‘27x	ô	ô	ô	ô	ô	ô	ô	ô	
‘30x	ö	ö	ö	F	ö	ö	ö		“Cx
‘31x	ì	ì	ì	ì	ù	ù	ù	ù	
‘32x	í	í	í	í	ú	ú	ú	ú	“Dx
‘33x	í	í	í	İ	ü	ü	ü	ÿ	
‘34x	è	é	é	è	ò	ó	ó	ò	“Ex
‘35x	é	ë	ë	ë	ó	ö	ö	ö	
‘36x	ï	ï	ï	ï	ü	ü	ü	ü	“Fx
‘37x	ø	η	ω	ř	ř		’	’	
	“8	“9	“A	“B	“C	“D	“E	“F	

Characters marked in *blue* should be ASCII characters in every L^AT_EX text encoding (compare Table 13.6 on page 325), as they are transparently passed through T_EX. In LGR this is not the case for A-Z and a-z, which can produce problems in multilingual documents.

Table 13.7: Glyph chart for an LGR-encoded font (grmn1000)

<i>Input</i>	a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z	13-4-1
	α β ς δ ε φ γ η ι θ κ λ μ ν ο π χ ρ ς τ υ ω ξ ψ ζ	
<i>Input</i>	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z	13-4-1
	Α Β Ξ Δ Ε Φ Γ Η Ι Θ Κ Λ Μ Ν Ο Π Χ Ρ Σ Τ Υ Ω Ξ Ψ Ζ	

Table 13.8: Greek transliteration with Latin letters for the LGR encoding

	<i>Input</i>	<i>Result</i>	<i>Example</i>
<i>Acute</i>	'a 'e 'h 'i 'o 'u 'w	ά έ ή ί ό ú ώ	g'ata γάτα
<i>Diaeresis</i>	"i "u "I "U	ï ü Ĩ Ÿ	qa"ide'uh|c χαΐδεύης
<i>Rough breathing</i>	<a <e <h <i <o <r <u <w	ά έ ή ί ό ρ ύ ώ	<'otan θταν
<i>Smooth breathing</i>	>a >e >h >i >o >r >u >w	ά έ ή ί ό ρ ύ ώ	>'aneu άνευ
<i>Grave</i>	'a 'e 'h 'i 'o 'u 'w	ά έ ή ί ό ύ ώ	dad'i δαδῖ
<i>Circumflex</i>	~a ~h ~i ~u ~w	ᾱ ῥ ῖ ῡ ῶ	ful~hc φυλής
<i>Diacritic below</i>	a| h| w|	α η ω	
	'w| 'w| >'w| >'w| <'w| <'w|	ὠ ὡ ὢ ὣ ὤ ὦ	

Table 13.9: LGR ligatures producing single-accented glyphs

By default, the `greek` option of `babel` uses `monotoniko` Greek. Multi-accented mode is requested by specifying the language attribute `polutoniko` for the `greek` option:

```
\usepackage[greek]{babel} \languageattribute{greek}{polutoniko}
```

For both modes, some seldom-used characters have been defined to behave like letters (`\catcode 11`). For `monotoniko` Greek, this is the case for the characters `'` and `"`. In the `polutoniko` variant, the characters `<`, `>`, `~`, `'`, and `|` also behave like letters. The reason for this behavior is that the LGR encoding contains many ligatures with these characters to produce the right glyphs; see Table 13.9. Table 13.10 shows the available composite accent and spiritus combinations.

13.5 Complex scripts

Typesetting documents in the so-called complex scripts has been always a nuisance with “traditional” \TeX . With the advent of \XeTeX and \LuaTeX , it is now possible to write in any language of the world, provided you have a suitable font at hand, so `babel` has been extended to deal with those scripts and their needs for line breaking, layout, bidirectional behavior, etc.

<i>Input</i>	<i>Result</i>	<i>Input</i>	<i>Result</i>
'"i '"i '"u '"u	í î ï ð		
>'a >'e >'h >'i >'o >'u >'w	ǎ ě ħ ï ð ð	>'A >'E >'H >'I >'O >'U >'W	ˆA ˆE ˆH ˆI ˆO ˆU ˆW
>'a >'e >'h >'i >'o >'u >'w	ǎ ě ħ ï ð ð	>'A >'E >'H >'I >'O >'U >'W	ˆA ˆE ˆH ˆI ˆO ˆU ˆW
<'a <'e <'h <'i <'o <'u <'w	ǎ ě ħ ï ð ð	<'A <'E <'H <'I <'O <'U <'W	ˆA ˆE ˆH ˆI ˆO ˆU ˆW
<'a <'e <'h <'i <'o <'u <'w	ǎ ě ħ ï ð ð	<'A <'E <'H <'I <'O <'U <'W	ˆA ˆE ˆH ˆI ˆO ˆU ˆW
>~a >~h >~i >~u >~w	ǎ ħ ï ð	>~A >~H >~I >~U >~W	ˆA ˆH ˆI ˆU ˆW
<~a <~h <~i <~u <~w	ǎ ħ ï ð	<~A <~H <~I <~U <~W	ˆA ˆH ˆI ˆU ˆW

13-4-3

Table 13.10: Available composite spiritus and accent combinations

In many of these languages, an alternative way to define them is required, activated with the package option `provide=*`, as shown in the examples below. It resorts in turn to a specific macro named `\babelprovide`, described in the `babel` manual in full detail.

Because the default font families cover only the Latin script, you may need to set up different ones with `\babelfont`, which provides a high-level interface to `fontspec`. It defines not only the corresponding font for the family given in its first argument, but also passes the information required to render it correctly, according to the peculiarities of each script. The fonts used here are available in \TeX Live, and they should work out of the box in this distribution. For Greek and Cyrillic, refer to Chapter 10, because these scripts are included in many fonts.

Chinese + Japanese + Korean, a.k.a. CJK

Given that Chinese and Japanese are written without spaces (and often Korean, too) and line breaking is possible between many characters (but not all), `babel` applies some basic rules based on the Unicode ones for this purpose.

	<code>\usepackage[japanese, provide=*]{babel}</code>
	<code>\babelfont{rm}{IPAexMincho}</code>
義は険しい山よりも重く、死	義は険しい山よりも重く、死は大鳥の羽よりも軽い。
は大鳥の羽よりも軽い。	

13-5-1

In languages of this group, lines are written often top to bottom, which are in turn written right to left, but for a complete solution you must resort to dedicated packages like `CJK`, `kotex`, `luatexja`, or `C\TeX`, because `babel` is restricted to horizontal writing. Some of these packages rely on `up\TeX`, an extension to the \TeX program that addresses this typographic need.

Indic scripts

Indic scripts may contain what are named clusters, combinations of consonants with a special graphical representation. In addition, letters are visually reordered so that a vowel may precede the corresponding consonant. Currently, the best option in most

cases is to resort to Unicode engines, because the script complexities are handled by the fonts. With LuaTeX, the HarfBuzz renderer (instead of the default one) is usually to be preferred; see the fontspec manual for further details on the available font renderers.

```
\usepackage[hindi, provide=*]{babel}
\babelfont{rm}[Renderer=HarfBuzz]{FreeSerif}
```

जिस की लाठी उस की भैंस. जिस की लाठी उस की भैंस.

13-5-2

Line breaking is often done without a hyphen, like in Thai. This language is, in addition, written without word spaces, so a special line-breaking algorithm is applied in both Unicode engines to insert flexible spaces at appropriate places in order to justify the text.

Bi-directional (bidi) scripts

Arabic, Hebrew, and Syriac among others require bidi writing, which must be explicitly activated with a package option. In the case of LuaTeX, which is the recommended engine in those languages, the option is `bidi=basic`. With it, left-to-write characters, including numerals, are automatically set in the correct direction. In the case of Arabic and Syriac, the letter shapes change according to their positions in a word.

```
\usepackage[bidi=basic, arabic, provide=*]{babel}
\babelfont{rm}{Amiri}
```

اجتنب مصاحبة الكذاب فإن اضطرت إليه فلا تصدقه. اجتنب مصاحبة الكذاب فإن اضطرت إليه فلا تصدقه.

13-5-3

Arabic documents also have right-to-left layouts, which means margins, lists, footnotes, tables, and other elements must be readjusted. This can be done in LuaTeX in the most typical cases with minimal internal changes in the \LaTeX code, because it has built-in primitives to set the origin of pages, boxes, and the like, so `babel` attempts to do it, but \XeTeX requires patching a good deal of \LaTeX macros and packages, and an external package is used (`bidi`, by Vafa Khalighi). Text justification with *kashida* (short horizontal extenders) can be accomplished in LuaTeX with user-definable rules.

13.6 Tailoring babel

As explained earlier, typographic rules are not always set in stone and may differ even among publishing houses. Therefore, users should be able to tailor easily the language styles, or even to create new ones from scratch for them to be adapted to their own needs. In most cases, this is best done with the help of dedicated packages, but in some cases all you need is either to readjust the decisions taken by `babel` or to make changes that are language or culture dependent.

This section starts with some tips about how to customize the styles and then describes briefly how to create `.ldf` files or, alternatively, descriptive `.ini` files based on key/value pairs. Some of these changes are based on the command `\babelprovide`.

13.6.1 User level

We start with describing the kind of changes that you may want to do in the preamble of an individual document, if you are not satisfied with the defaults offered by babel or by a language support package. Obviously the same commands are also used in class or package files to provide you with the initial configurations.

Modify caption strings

Although there are more or less traditional ways to name chapters, tables, and so on, they are not always unique, and the default values may need changes. For example, in Spanish *Table* has been traditionally named *Cuadro*, but *Tabla* is also frequent.

Redefining directly the macro (in this case `\tablename`) in the preamble or inside `\AtBeginDocument` may not work because the original definition is restored at every language selection. You must make sure the new definition correctly replaces the original one, and the best way in most cases is with `\setlocalecaption`, as shown:

```
\setlocalecaption{spanish}{table}{Tabla}
```

In this particular example, the macro name to be set is built from the second argument by adding `name`. These definitions should contain only the string and perhaps some basic formatting, but not, say, counters or labels.

Hyphenation rules

Some languages may follow several criteria to hyphenate words, as the well-known case of British vs. American English demonstrates. Furthermore, some disciplines like chemistry may require their own rules. On the other hand, if there are no hyphenation patterns for a language, you may want to apply those for a similar language. This can be done in your documents with `\babelprovide` in the following way, provided `language.dat` (described in Section 13.6.2) has been configured to load a set of patterns with the given name:

```
\babelprovide[hyphenrules=ngerman-x-2019-04-04]{german}
```

Another set of hyphenation parameters you may want to modify are the language-specific values for `\lefthyphenmin` (minimum number of characters on the left before the first hyphen point) and `\righthyphenmin` (minimum numbers on the right), which are stored in `\(language)hyphenmins`.

```
\providehyphenmins{lang}{hyphenmins}    \(\language)hyphenmins
```

The command `\providehyphenmins` provides a *default* setting for these hyphenation parameters by defining `\(language)hyphenmins` unless it is already defined for some reason. The babel package detects whether the hyphenation file explicitly sets `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` and automatically defines

`\(language)hyphenmins`, in which case the `\providehyphenmins` declaration has no effect.

The syntax inside `babel` is storage optimized, dating back to the days when every token counted. Thus, the argument *hyphenmins* contains the values for both parameters simply as two digits, making the assumption that you never want a minimum larger than 9. If this assumption is wrong, you must surround the values with braces within *hyphenmins*. For example,

```
\providehyphenmins{german}{{10}{5}}
```

would request leaving at least ten characters before a hyphen and at least five characters after it (thus essentially never hyphenate — except monsters such as *Donaudampfschiffahrtkapitänsmütze*).

If you want to explicitly overwrite the settings regardless of any existing specification, you can do so by providing a value for `\(language)hyphenmins` yourself. For instance,

```
\renewcommand*\germanhyphenmins{{4}{3}}
```

never considers hyphenation points with fewer than four letters before and three letters after the hyphen. Thus, LaTeX will never hyphenate a word with less than seven characters in that language.

Hyphenation patterns are built with a certain setting of these parameters in mind. Setting their values lower than the values used in the pattern generation may merely result in incorrect hyphenation. It is possible, however, to use higher values in which case the potential hyphenation points are simply reduced.

Counters and labels

Decimal numerals have different shapes in different scripts and are best entered directly in the final form, but sometimes and for practical reasons a conversion from the Western forms can be useful, particularly with automatically generated numbers. In languages loaded with the procedure described in “Complex scripts”, you can map the `\arabic` counter to the local forms by setting the option `maparabic` in the optional argument of `\babelprovide`.

Babel provides a simple tool to create your own numeral systems, including additive ones, in case those provided by default do not meet your requirements. Some `.ini` files provide them, but even so there might be the need to define more. This can be done with `\babelprovide` as shown in the following example, which defines two variants for the masculine ordinal:

```
\usepackage[spanish]{babel}
\babelprovide[counters/masc = 1\sptext{o} 2\sptext{o} 3\sptext{o},
               counters/masc.short = 1\sptext{er} 2\sptext{o} 3\sptext{er}]
               {spanish}
\localnumeral{masc.short}{3} \quad
\localnumeral{masc}{3}
```

3.^{er} 3.^o

13-6-1

The command `\localenumeral` prints the corresponding representation for a number. There is a companion named `\localecounter` whose second argument is a counter name, like `page` or `section`.

Executing some code when languages are selected

When a language is selected and unselected, `babel` executes several macros that set its behavior. Two of them are particularly important because they are responsible for most of the work, and therefore you need to know them in order to understand how to configure the language.

`\extras<language>`

The macro `\extras<language>` contains all extra definitions needed for the language `<language>` being defined in an `.ldf` file. Such extras can be commands to turn shorthands on or off, to make certain characters active, to initiate French spacing, to position umlauts, and so on.

`\noextras<language>`

To allow switching between any two languages, it is necessary to return to a known state for the \TeX engine — in particular, with respect to the definitions initiated by the command `\extras<language>`. The macro `\noextras<language>` must contain code to revert all such definitions so as to bring \TeX back to a known state.

`\AddBabelHook[<language>]{<label>}{<hook>}{<code>}`

With this command, code can be injected at several places, like before and after `\extras<language>`. For example, if you want French spacing for every language, just say:

```
\AddBabelHook{nonfrench}{afterextras}{\frenchspacing}
```

Here `nonfrench` is just a label to identify the hook, and `afterextras` is the place where the piece of code in the following argument is executed and whose meaning in this case is self-explanatory. When the optional argument for the language is omitted, as in this case, it applies for all languages.

With the optional argument, the `<code>` is executed only with the specified `<language>`. The following line in a document with `english` and `ngerman` makes accessible in the former language some shorthands defined in the latter:

```
\AddBabelHook[english]{en-de-shorthands}{afterextras}
{\languageshorthands{ngerman}}
```

You may also need to activate them as user shorthands in the preamble with, for example, `\usesshorthands` or `\usesshorthands*`, described in Section 13.2.2 on page 304.

It is worth remembering here the hook mechanism provided by \LaTeX itself and described in detail in Appendix A.4 on page 671. Although with some limitations in a few cases, the hooks available in `\AddBabelHook` can also be used as the first argument of `\AddToHook`. As explained in the appendix, one advantage of this approach is that you can configure `babel` even before the package has been actually loaded.

`\addto\cmd{code}`

This command is a tool provided by `babel` allowing you to extend the definition of the control sequence `\cmd` with the \TeX code specified in `code`. The control sequence `\cmd` does not have to have been defined previously. The customary way to extend a language for years has been to modify directly `\extras<language>` and `\noextras<language>` with the help of this macro, but the more modern and robust interfaces based on hooks are preferable in most cases.

Language-specific tools

Some languages, like French, Spanish, or Hungarian, provide their own tools to tailor the style for specific needs, as an alternative to the use of `\languageattribute` commands. French and Hungarian understand a collection of key/value pairs, which are set with `\frenchsetup`, described in Section 13.3.4, and with the macro `\magyarOptions`, respectively. Spanish takes still another approach, using package options starting with the prefix `es-`.

13.6.2 Package level

This section is mainly for those who want to develop a language style or to better understand how `babel` works internally and explains briefly the basic concepts to define a language style.

Language definition files (file extension `.ldf`) have to conform to a number of conventions, because they complement the common shared code of `babel` provided in the file `babel.def` for producing language-dependent text strings. Similarly, to allow for language switching like the capability built into `babel`, certain rules apply. The basic working assumptions follow:

- Each language definition file `<language>.ldf` must define five macros, which are subsequently used to activate and deactivate the language-specific definitions. These macros are `\<language>hyphenmins`, `\captions<language>`, `\date<language>`, `\extras<language>`, and `\noextras<language>`, where `<language>` is either the name of the language definition file or the name of a `babel` package option. Some of these macros and their functions were discussed above.
- When a language definition file is loaded, it can define `\l@<language>` to be a variant (*dialect*) of `\language0` when `\l@<language>` is undefined.

- The language definition files must be written in a way that they can be read not just in the preamble of the document but also in the middle of document processing.

Hyphenating in several languages

Since T_EX version 3.0, hyphenation patterns for multiple languages can be used together. These patterns have to be managed somehow. In particular, the plainT_EX user has to know for which languages patterns have been loaded and to what values of the command sequence `\language` they correspond. The babel package abstracts from this low-level interface and manages this information by using an external file, `language.dat`, in which one records which languages have hyphenation patterns *and* in which files these patterns are stored. This configuration file is then processed¹ when the L^AT_EX format is built, except with LuaL^AT_EX, which loads it when the document is typeset. An example of such a file is shown here:

```
%%% Filename      : language.dat
%%% Description   : Instructions which pattern files to load.

english          ushyph.tex                % American English should be first
=usenglish
=USenglish
=american

dummylang        dummyhyph.tex             % For testing a new language
nohyphenation    zerohyph.tex              % Language with no patterns
ukenglish        loadhyph-en-gb.tex         % British English
=british
=UKenglish

german            loadhyph-de-1901.tex       % German language patterns
ngerman          loadhyph-de-1996.tex
swissgerman      loadhyph-de-ch-1901.tex
french           loadhyph-fr.tex            % French
=patois
=français

spanish          loadhyph-es.tex            % Spanish
=español

... many more languages ...
```

In most T_EX distributions this file is generated automatically² based on the available hyphenation patterns, which are coordinated by Arthur Reutenauer and Mojca

¹Make sure that you do not have several such files in your T_EX installation, because it is not always clear which of them is examined during the format generation. The author nearly got bitten during the book production when INI_TE_X picked up the system configuration file and not the specially prepared one containing all the patterns for the examples.

²This means that changing it directly is often not a good idea, because it might get overwritten on the next update. See your distribution documentation on how to do it safely; e.g., there might be a special file that is used instead (if it is present) or some other mechanism.

Miklavec as a separate package named `hyph-utf8`. Despite its name, it also provides versions for 8-bit font encodings.

Users should not be usually concerned with this configuration file, because the default settings are fine in most situations, but a short explanation on how it works follows in case you need to customize it. It can contain empty lines and comments, as well as lines that start with an equal (=) sign. Such a line instructs \LaTeX that the hyphenation patterns just processed should be made known under an alternative name. The first element on each line specifies the name of the language; it is followed by the name of the file containing the hyphenation patterns. An optional third entry can specify a hyphenation exception file in case the exceptions are stored in a separate file (e.g., `frhyphx.tex` in the previous example).

For each language in `language.dat`, the command `\l@<language>` is defined in the \LaTeX format (i.e., `\l@english` and so on). When the document is processed with such a format, `babel` checks for each language whether the command `\l@<language>` is defined and, if so, loads the corresponding hyphenation patterns; otherwise, it loads the patterns for the default language 0 (the one loaded first); for compatibility reasons this language should contain US-English hyphenation patterns.

```
initex latex.ltx
This is pdfTeX, Version 3.141592653-2.6-1.40.23 (TeX Live 2022/dev) (INITEX)
....
(/Library/texmf/tex/latex/base/latex.ltx
....
1141 hyphenation exceptions
Hyphenation trie of length 419877 has 8811 ops out of 35111
  143 for language 86
  110 for language 85
  138 for language 84
   7 for language 83
  12 for language 82
  53 for language 81
....
 137 for language 5
 424 for language 4
 432 for language 3
   2 for language 1
 181 for language 0
No pages of output.
```

The above output shows what `initex` loads into the format on the machine of the author: patterns for 87 different languages. The language with the number 2 corresponds to `nohyphenation` and is missing from the output because it contains no patterns. `Babel` uses these text strings (or their equivalents, specified preceded by an = sign in `language.dat`) to identify a language; with the package option `showlanguages`, a list of the hyphenation patterns loaded, with their numbers and names, is printed to the `.log` file.

A couple of tools for shorthands

Although mainly intended for shorthands, they can be useful in other contexts, too.

`\TextOrMath{text-code}{math-code}`

Recognizing that some shorthands declared in the language definition files have to be usable in both text and math modes, this macro allows you to specify the code to execute when in text mode (*text-code*) or when in math mode (*math-code*). Providing commands for use in text and math can have unwanted side effects, so this macro should be used with great care.

The `\TextOrMath` command is already provided by the \LaTeX format. The `babel` package offers the same functionality under the name `\textormath`, but if you want your text or commands to be processable with and without `babel` loaded, it is preferable to use the `CamelCase` command from the \LaTeX format.

`\allowhyphens \bbl@allowhyphens`

When \LaTeX cannot hyphenate a word properly by itself — for instance, because it is a compound word or because the word contains accented letters constructed using the `\accent` primitive, particularly when the `pdfTeX` is used — it needs a little help. This help involves making \LaTeX think it is dealing with two words, which appear as one word on the page. For this purpose `babel` provides the command `\allowhyphens`, which inserts an invisible horizontal skip, unless the current font encoding is T1.¹ In some cases one wants to insert this “help” unconditionally; for these cases `\bbl@allowhyphens` is available. This invisible skip has the effect of making \LaTeX think it is dealing with two words that can be hyphenated separately.

13.6.3 The package file

Instead of just retouching existing language styles in your documents or styles, you can opt for a more radical approach, namely, creating a completely new one. This is the way to go, of course, if there is no style at all for a certain language.

There are two ways to create a new style. The old good one is based on `.ldf` files, and the best way to define them, at least the basic structure, is with a graphical user interface, based on HTML and JavaScript, named “Language incubator”. This GUI is available on the `babel` GitHub repository (<https://github.com/latex3/babel>), under `tools`.

Note that many `.ldf` files use the concept of “dialect”, which is somewhat of a historical misnomer, because *lang* and *variant* are at the same level as far as `babel` is concerned, without any connotation indicating whether one or the other is the main language. The “dialect” paradigm comes in handy if you want to share hyphenation patterns between various languages. Moreover, if no hyphenation patterns are

¹In contrast to the OT1 encoding, the T1 encoding contains most accented characters as real glyphs so that the `\accent` primitive is almost never used.

preloaded in the format for the language *lang*, babel's default behavior is to define this language as a “dialect” of the default language (`\language0`).

Defining multiple languages or dialects in a single file is strongly discouraged. Although in the early days of babel this was a customary practice for optimization reasons, each language, dialect, or variant should be a language on its own, to follow the current trends for the handling of locales.

A more modern way to create languages is by means of `.ini` files, which has the advantage that the data are provided in a descriptive way. For example, the file for German (`babel-de.ini`) contains data such as:

```
[identification]
...
name.local = Deutsch
name.english = German
name.babel = german
name.polyglossia = german
tag.bcp47 = de
language.tag.bcp47 = de
tag.bcp47.likely = de-Latn-DE
tag.opentype = DEU
script.name = Latin
script.tag.bcp47 = Latn
script.tag.opentype = latn
encodings = T1 OT1 LY1
...
[captions]
preface = Vorwort
ref = Literatur
abstract = Zusammenfassung
bib = Literaturverzeichnis
...
[date.gregorian]
date.long = [d].[ ][MMMM] [y]
date.short = [dd].[MM].[yy]
months.wide.1 = Januar
months.wide.2 = Februar
...
[typography]
frenchspacing = yes
hyphenrules = ngerman
lefthyphenmin = 2
righthyphenmin = 2
...
```

This declarative approach helps to solve what is very likely one of the most common problems when creating a language style based on T_EX code, namely, that linguistic communities often have no T_EXnician among them to give a helping hand in developing such T_EX code. There are `.ini` templates for about 500 languages in the babel GitHub repository (under `locale-templates`), which can be used as a starting point.

Note that `.ini` files enforce the paradigm of separate locales for variants.

13.7 Other approaches

In general, the `babel` package does a good job of translating document element names and making text input somewhat more convenient. However, for several languages, individuals or local user groups have developed packages and versions of \TeX that cope with a given language on a deeper level—in particular, by better integrating the typographic traditions of the target language.

An example of such a package is `frenchle` [71], which was originally developed by Bernard Gaulle (1946–2007). Special customized versions of $(\text{\La})\text{\TeX}$ exist (e.g., Polish and Czech, distributed by the \TeX user groups GUST and $\text{\C}\text{\TeX}$ TUG, respectively).

Unicode engines

There are also some packages taking advantage of the features of $\text{\Xe}\text{\TeX}$ and $\text{\Lua}\text{\TeX}$. Besides those cited in Section 13.5, among others we have `xgreek` by Apostolos Syropoulos (CTAN: `macros/xetex/latex/xgreek`) and `arabluatex` by Robert Alessi (CTAN: `macros/luatex/latex/arabluatex`).

13.7.1 Complex languages with 8-bit engines

As explained above, the most convenient way to typeset languages with complex scripts is with $\text{\Xe}\text{\TeX}$ and $\text{\Lua}\text{\TeX}$. In the case that you still need to resort to 8-bit engines, here are some alternatives.

Several systems to handle Hebrew are available on CTAN in the directory `hebrew`.¹ In particular, `babel` offers an interface for Hebrew written by Boris Lavva, although fonts are not included, and you must download and install them separately. For Arabic there is the $\text{\Arab}\text{\TeX}$ system [104], developed by Klaus Lagally. This package extends the capabilities of $(\text{\La})\text{\TeX}$ to generate Arabic writing using an ASCII transliteration (CTAN: `arabic/arabtex`). For a truly Arabic style, Youssef Jabri has developed `arabi` (CTAN: `arabic/arabi`).

Serguei Dachian, Arnak Dalalyan, and Vardan Hakobian provide Armenian support (CTAN: `armenian/armtex`).

For the languages of the Indian subcontinent, most of the support is based on the work of Frans Velthuis. In particular, Anshuman Pandey developed packages for Bengali (`bengali` package and associated fonts on CTAN: `bengali/pandey`), Sanskrit (Anshuman Pandey’s `devnag` package on CTAN: `devanagari/velthuis`), and Gurmukhi (CTAN: `gurmukhi/pandey`).

Oliver Corff and Dorjpalam Dorj’s `montex` package can be used for typesetting languages using the Manju (Mongolian) scripts (CTAN: `mongolian/montex`).

Ethiopian language support, compatible with `babel`, is available through Berhanu Beyene, Manfred Kudlek, Olaf Kummer, and Jochen Metzinger’s `ethiop` package and fonts (CTAN: `ethiopia/ethiop`).

For Chinese, Japanese, and Korean (the so-called CJK scripts), one can use Werner Lemberg’s `CJK` package [119], which contains fonts and utilities (CTAN: `chinese/CJK`).

¹Prepend <https://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/language> in this and further references to obtain the full CTAN link, e.g., <https://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/language/hebrew>.

Another option for Chinese is CTEX, by Liam Huang, Qing Lee, Leo Liu, and several other contributors (CTAN: `chinese/ctex`).

13.7.2 Polyglossia

This package was originally developed as an alternative to `babel` for $X_{\text{K}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ at a time when the former worked only with traditional $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$. Although `babel` currently supports all languages `polyglossia` does, the latter might be preferable for a few languages, e.g., Korean, particularly when using $X_{\text{K}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$. In some other cases, there are some differences in the way a language is supported. However, the development of `babel` continues, and the situation should improve over time in the few languages where the use of `polyglossia` together with $X_{\text{K}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ might be currently still preferable.

If you intend to move a document from `polyglossia` to `babel` or vice versa, bear in mind that even if the basic macros in `polyglossia` have the same names as in `babel`, their syntax and behavior slightly differs. For example, some languages are gathered under a single name, and you may need to select the *variant* you want. For this purpose, `\foreignlanguage` supports an optional argument in `polyglossia`. This concept does not exist in `babel`, where all locales are treated on an equal footing.

Furthermore, class options are not recognized, and languages are not loaded by means of package options, but with of couple of macros (`\setmainlanguage` and `\setotherlanguages`).

Unless you are in a special situation where a language or script is notably better supported by `polyglossia`, the recommendation is to use `babel` with all engines.

CHAPTER 14

Index Generation

14.1 Syntax of the index entries	345
14.2 <i>MakeIndex</i> — A program to sort and format indexes	350
14.3 <i>upmendex</i> — A Unicode-aware indexing program	364
14.4 <i>xindy</i> , <i>xindex</i> — Two other indexing programs	370
14.5 Enhancing the index with \LaTeX features	371

To find a topic of interest in a large document, book, or reference work, you usually turn to the table of contents or, more often, to the index. Therefore, an index is a very important part of a document, and most users' entry point to a source of information is precisely through a pointer in the index. You should, therefore, plan an index and develop it along with the main text [40]. For reasons of consistency, it is beneficial, with the technique discussed below, to use special commands in the text to always print a given keyword in the same way in the text and the index throughout the whole document.

This chapter first reviews the basic indexing commands provided by standard \LaTeX and explains which tools are available to help you build a well-thought-out index. The *\LaTeX Manual* does not contain a lot of information about the syntax of the `\index` entries. However, several articles in *TUGboat* deal with the question of generating an index with \TeX or \LaTeX . The syntax described in Section 14.1 is the one recognized by *MakeIndex* [39, 105] and the other indexing programs we discuss: *upmendex*, *xindy*, and *xindex*.

Section 14.2 describes how the *MakeIndex* processor is used. The interpretation of the input file and the format of the output file are controlled by style parameters. Section 14.2.4 lists these parameters and gives several simple examples to show how changing them influences the typeset result.

Section 14.3 presents *upmendex*, an Unicode-aware extension to *MakeIndex*. It is preferable to use this program whenever you have non-English documents or other special demands, such as the production of technical indexes.

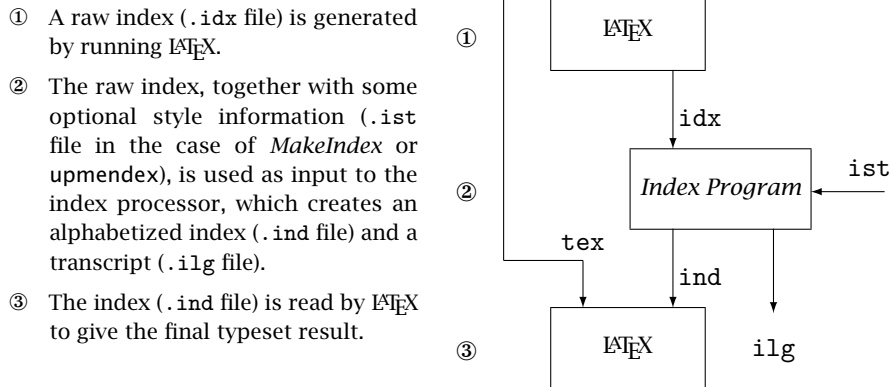


Figure 14.1: The sequential flow of index processing and the various auxiliary files used by \LaTeX and an external index processor, e.g., *MakeIndex*

In Section 14.4 we briefly discuss two further alternatives that you may come across. The final section describes several \LaTeX packages to enhance the index and to create multiple indexes such as those in the book you are reading.

* * *

The process of generating an index is shown schematically in Figure 14.1. The steps for generating an index with \LaTeX and *MakeIndex* are illustrated in this figure. The same flow is used with other index processors; only the configuration of the processors is done differently in some cases, i.e., not with .ist style files.

Figure 14.2 on the next page shows, with an example, the various steps involved in transforming an input file into a typeset index. It also shows, in somewhat more detail, which files are involved in the index-generating process. Figure 14.2(a) shows some occurrences of index commands ($\backslash\text{index}$) in the document source, with corresponding pages listed on the left. Figure 14.2(b) shows a raw index .idx file generated by \LaTeX . File extensions may differ when using multiple indexes or glossaries. After running the .idx file through the index processor, it becomes an alphabetized index .ind file with \LaTeX commands specifying a particular output format [Figure 14.2(c)]. The typeset result after formatting with \LaTeX is shown in Figure 14.2(d).

\LaTeX and *MakeIndex* (or *upmendex* or *xindex*), when employed together, use several markup conventions to help you control the precise format of the output. The *xindy* program has a *MakeIndex* compatibility mode that supports the same format. In Section 14.1, which describes the format of the $\backslash\text{index}$ command, we always use the default settings.

Page vi:	<code>\index{animal}</code>	<code>\indexentry{animal}{vi}</code>
Page 5:	<code>\index{animal}</code>	<code>\indexentry{animal}{5}</code>
Page 6:	<code>\index{animal}</code>	<code>\indexentry{animal}{6}</code>
Page 7:	<code>\index{animal}</code>	<code>\indexentry{animal}{7}</code>
Page 11:	<code>\index{animalism|see{animal}}</code>	<code>\indexentry{animalism|see{animal}}{11}</code>
Page 17:	<code>\index{animal@\emph{animal}}</code>	<code>\indexentry{animal@\emph{animal}}{17}</code>
	<code>\index{mammal|textbf}</code>	<code>\indexentry{mammal|textbf}{17}</code>
Page 26:	<code>\index{animal!mammal!cat}</code>	<code>\indexentry{animal!mammal!cat}{26}</code>
Page 32:	<code>\index{animal!insect}</code>	<code>\indexentry{animal!insect}{32}</code>
	(a) <i>The input file</i>	(b) <i>The .idx file</i>

<code>\begin{theindex}</code>	
<code>\item animal, vi, 5-7</code>	animal, vi, 5-7
<code>\subitem insect, 32</code>	insect, 32
<code>\subitem mammal</code>	mammal
<code>\subsubitem cat, 26</code>	cat, 26
<code>\item \emph{animal}, 17</code>	<i>animal</i> , 17
<code>\item animalism, \see{animal}{11}</code>	animalism, <i>see</i> animal
<code>\indexspace</code>	
<code>\item mammal, \textbf{17}</code>	mammal, 17
<code>\end{theindex}</code>	
(c) <i>The .ind file</i>	(d) <i>The typeset output</i>

Figure 14.2: Stepwise development of index processing

14.1 Syntax of the index entries

This section describes the default syntax used to generate index entries with \LaTeX and either *MakeIndex* or one of the other programs described in this chapter. Different levels of complexity are introduced progressively, showing, for each case, the input file and the generated typeset output.

Figures 14.3 and 14.4 on page 353 show the input and generated output of a small \LaTeX document, where various simple possibilities of the `\index` command are shown, together with the result of including the `showidx` package (see Section 14.5.2). To make the index entries consistent in these figures (see Section 14.1.7), the commands `\Com` and `\Prog` were defined and used. The index-generating environment `theindex` has been redefined to get the output on one page (Section 14.5.1 explains how this can be done).

After introducing the necessary `\index` commands in the document, we want to generate the index to be included once again in the \LaTeX document on a subsequent run. If the main file of a document is `main.tex`, for example, then the following changes should be made to that file:

- Include the `makeidx` package with a `\usepackage` command.
- Put a `\makeindex` command in the document preamble.

Generating the raw index


- Put a `\printindex` command where the index is to appear — usually at the end, right before the `\end{document}` command.

You then run \LaTeX on the entire document, causing it to generate the file `main.idx`, which we shall call the `.idx` file.

14.1.1 Simple index entries


Each `\index` command causes \LaTeX to write an entry in the `.idx` file. The following example shows some simple `\index` commands, together with the index entries that they produce. The page number refers to the page containing the text where the `\index` command appears. As shown in the example below, duplicate commands on the same page (such as `\index{stylistic}` on page 23) produce only one “23” in the index.

style, 14	Page iii: <code>\index{style}</code>
style , 16	Page xi: <code>\index{Stylist}</code>
style, iii, 12	Page 12: <code>\index{style}</code>
style , 15	<code>\index{styles}</code>
style file, 34	Page 14: <code>\index{ style}</code>
styles, 12	Page 15: <code>\index{style }</code>
Stylist, xi	Page 16: <code>\index{ style }</code>
stylist, 34	Page 23: <code>\index{stylistic}</code>
stylistic, 23	<code>\index{stylistic}</code>
	Page 34: <code>\index{style file}</code>
	<code>\index{stylist}</code>

Spaces
can be harmful 

Pay particular attention to the way spaces are handled in this example. Spaces inside `\index` commands are written literally to the output `.idx` file and, by default, are treated as ordinary characters by *MakeIndex*, which places them in front of all letters. In the example above, look at the `style` entries on pages 14 and 16. The leading spaces are placed at the beginning of the index and on two different lines because the trailing blank on page 16 lengthens the string by one character. We end up with four different entries for the same term, an effect that was probably not desired.

It is therefore important to eliminate such spurious spaces from the `\index` commands when you use *MakeIndex*. Alternatively, you can specify the `-c` option when running the index processor. This option suppresses the effect of leading and trailing blanks (see Sections 14.2.2 and 14.3.1). We recommend always using this option; it should really have been the default.

Inconsistent
spelling 

Another frequently encountered error occurs when the same English word is spelled inconsistently with initial lowercase and uppercase letters (as with *Stylist* on page xi in the preceding example), leading to two different index entries.

Of course, this behavior is wanted in languages like German, where “Arm” (arm) and “arm” (poor) are really two completely different words.¹ In English, such spurious double entries should normally be eliminated.

¹As the joke goes: “Besser arm dran als Arm ab” (better poor than without an arm).

14.1.2 Generating subentries

A maximum of three levels of index entries (main, sub, and subsub entries) are available. To produce such entries, the argument of the `\index` command should contain both the main entries and subentries, separated by a `!` character. This character can be redefined in a style file (see Table 14.1 on page 357) if *MakeIndex* or *upmendex* is used as the index program.

box, 21	Page 3:	<code>\index{dimensions!rule!width}</code>
dimensions of, 33	Page 5:	<code>\index{box!parameters}</code>
parameters, 5	Page 9:	<code>\index{dimensions!table}</code>
dimensions	Page 12:	<code>\index{dimensions!rule!height}</code>
figure, 12		<code>\index{dimensions!figure}</code>
rule	Page 21:	<code>\index{box}</code>
height, 12	Page 33:	<code>\index{box!dimensions of}</code>
width, 3		
table, 9		

14.1.3 Page ranges and cross-references

You can specify a page range by putting the command `\index{...|{}` at the beginning of the range and the command `\index{...|})}` at the end of the range. Page ranges should span a homogeneous numbering scheme (e.g., roman and arabic page numbers cannot fall within the same range). Note that *MakeIndex* and *upmendex* do the right thing when both ends of a page range fall on the same page or when another (individual) entry falls inside an active range.

You can also generate cross-reference index entries without page numbers by using the `see` encapsulator. Because the “see” entry does not print any page number, the commands `\index{...|see{...}}` can be placed anywhere in the input file *after* the `\begin{document}` command. For practical reasons, it is convenient to group all such cross-referencing commands in one place.

fonts	Page ii:	<code>\index{table|{}</code>
Computer Modern, 13–25	Page xi:	<code>\index{table|})}</code>
math, <i>see</i> math, fonts	Page 5:	<code>\index{fonts!OpenType|{}</code>
OpenType, 5		<code>\index{fonts!OpenType|})}</code> % same page
table, ii–xi, 14	Page 13:	<code>\index{fonts!Computer Modern|{}</code>
	Page 14:	<code>\index{table}</code>
	Page 17:	<code>\index{fonts!math|see{math, fonts}}</code>
	Page 21:	<code>\index{fonts!Computer Modern}</code> % within range
	Page 25:	<code>\index{fonts!Computer Modern|})}</code>

14.1.4 Controlling the presentation form

Sometimes you may want to sort an entry according to a key, while using a different visual representation for the typesetting, such as Greek letters, mathematical symbols, or specific typographic forms. This function is available with the syntax *key@visual*,

where *key* determines the alphabetical position and the string *visual* produces the typeset text of the entry.

delta, 14	Page 5:	<code>\index{ninety-five}</code>
δ , 23	Page 14:	<code>\index{delta}</code>
delta wing, 16	Page 16:	<code>\index{delta wing}</code>
flower , 19	Page 19:	<code>\index{flower@\textbf{flower}}</code>
ninety, 26	Page 23:	<code>\index{delta@\$\delta\$}</code>
xc, 28		<code>\index{tabular@\texttt{tabular} environment}</code>
ninety-five, 5	Page 26:	<code>\index{ninety}</code>
tabular environment, 23	Page 28:	<code>\index{ninety@xc}</code>

For some indexes, certain page numbers should be formatted specially. For example, an italic page number might indicate a primary reference, or an *n* after a page number might denote that the item appears in a footnote on that page. *MakeIndex* allows you to format an individual page number in any way you want by using the encapsulator syntax specified by the | character. What follows the | sign “encapsulates” or encloses the page number associated with the index entry. For instance, the command `\index{keyword|xxx}` produces a page number of the form `\xxx{n}`, where *n* is the page number in question. Similarly, the commands `\index{keyword|(xxx)}` and `\index{keyword|)xxx}` generate a page range of the form `\xxx{n-m}`.

Preexisting commands with one argument (like `\textit` in the example below) or user commands can be used to encapsulate the page numbers. As an example, a document containing the command definition

```
\newcommand\nn[1]{#1n}
```

would yield something like this:

tabular, ii, 21, 22n	Page ii:	<code>\index{tabular|textbf}</code>
tabbing, 7, 34-37	Page 7:	<code>\index{tabbing}</code>
	Page 21:	<code>\index{tabular|textit}</code>
	Page 22:	<code>\index{tabular|nn}</code>
	Page 34:	<code>\index{tabbing|(textit)}</code>
	Page 37:	<code>\index{tabbing|)textit}</code>

The `\see` encapsulator is a special case of this facility, where the `\see` command is predefined by the `makeidx` package.

14.1.5 Printing special characters

To typeset one of the characters having a special meaning to *MakeIndex* or the other indexing programs (i.e., `!`, `"`, `@`, or `|`)¹ in the index, precede it with a `"` character. More precisely, any character is said to be quoted if it follows an unquoted `"` that is not part of a `\` command. The latter case allows for umlaut characters. Quoted `!`, `@`, `"`

¹As noted earlier, in *MakeIndex* and *upmendex* other characters can be substituted for the default ones and carry a special meaning. This behavior is explained on page 359.

, and | characters are treated like ordinary characters, losing their special meaning. The " preceding a quoted character is deleted before the entries are alphabetized.

@ sign, 2		<code>\index{bar@\texttt{\idxvert }}|see{vertical bar}}</code>
|, see vertical bar	Page 1:	<code>\index{quote (\verb+"")+}</code>
exclamation (!), 4		<code>\index{quote@\texttt{""} sign}</code>
Ah!, 5	Page 2:	<code>\index{atsign@\texttt{"@} sign}</code>
Mädchen, 3	Page 3:	<code>\index{maedchen@M{"{a}dchen}</code>
quote ("), 1	Page 4:	<code>\index{exclamation ("!")}</code>
" sign, 1	Page 5:	<code>\index{exclamation ("!")!Ah"!}</code>

14.1.6 Creating a glossary

LaTeX also has a `\glossary` command for making a glossary. The `\makeglossary` command produces a file with an extension of `.glo`, which is similar to the `.idx` file for the `\index` commands. LaTeX transforms the `\glossary` commands into `\glossaryentry` entries, just as it translates any `\index` commands into `\indexentry` entries.

MakeIndex can also handle these glossary commands, but you must change the value for some of the style file keywords, as shown in the style file `myglossary.ist`.

```
% MakeIndex style file myglossary.ist
keyword    "\\glossaryentry"          % keyword for glossary entry
preamble   "\\n \\begin{theglossary}\\n" % Begin glossary entries
postamble  "\\n\\n \\end{theglossary}\\n" % End glossary entries
```

In addition, you have to define a suitable `theglossary` environment.

14.1.7 Defining your own index commands

As was pointed out in the introduction, it is very important to use the same visual representation for identical names or commands throughout a complete document, including the index. You therefore can define user commands that always introduce similar constructs in the same way into the text and the index.

For example, you can define the command `\Index`, whose argument is entered at the same time in the text and in the index.

```
\newcommand\Index[1]{#1\index{#1}}
```

As explained in more detail below, you must be careful that the argument of such a command does not contain expandable material (typically control sequences) or spurious blanks. In general, for simple terms like single words, there is no problem, and this technique can be used. You can even go one step further and give a certain visual representation to the entry — for instance, typesetting it in a typewriter font.

```
\newcommand\indexttt[1]{\texttt{#1}\index{#1@\texttt{#1}}}
```

Finally, you can group certain terms by defining commands that have a generic meaning. For instance, L^AT_EX commands and program names could be treated with special commands, as in the following examples:

```
\newcommand\bs{\symbol{'134}} % print backslash in typewriter OT1/T1
\newcommand\Com[1]{\texttt{\bs#1}\index{#1@\texttt{\bs#1}}}
\newcommand\Prog[1]{\texttt{#1}\index{#1@\texttt{#1} program}}
```

The `\Com` command adds a backslash to the command's name in both text and index, simplifying the work of the typist. The `\bs` command definition is necessary, because `\textbackslash` would be substituted in an OT1 font encoding context,¹ as explained in Section 9.3.6 on page –I 670. At the same time, commands are ordered in the index by their names, with the “\” character being ignored during sorting. Similarly, the `\Prog` command provides a sort key not including the `\texttt` command, because otherwise the generated entry would be sorted into the wrong place in the index.

14.1.8 Special considerations

When an `\index` command is used directly in the text, its argument is expanded only when the index is typeset, not when the `.idx` file is written. However, when the `\index` command is contained in the argument of another command, characters with a special meaning to T_EX, such as `\`, must be properly protected against expansion. This problem is likely to arise when indexing items in a footnote or when using commands that put their argument in the text and enter it at the same time in the index (see the discussion in Section 14.1.7). Even in this case, robust commands can be placed in the “@” part of an entry, as in `\index{rose@\textit{rose}}`, but fragile commands must be protected with the `\protect` command.

As with every argument of a command, you need to have a matching number of braces. However, because `\index` allows special characters like `%` or `\` in its argument, if the command is used in the main text, the brace matching has an anomaly: braces in the commands `\{` and `\}` take part in the matching. Thus, you cannot write `\index{\{}` or something similar.

14.2 *MakeIndex*—A program to sort and format indexes

In the previous section we showed examples where we ran the *MakeIndex* program using its default settings. In this section we first take a closer look at the *MakeIndex* program and then discuss ways of changing its behavior. Nearly everything discussed in this section also applies to the *upmendex* program. The few places where there are differences between the two programs are explicitly marked.

¹In Unicode engines one needs to use `\textbackslash`, though.

14.2.1 Generating the formatted index

To generate the formatted index, you should run the *MakeIndex* program by typing the following command (where *main* is the name of the input file):

```
makeindex main.idx
```

This produces the file *main.ind*, which is called the *.ind* file here. If *MakeIndex* generated no error messages, you can now rerun \LaTeX on the document, and the index appears. (You can then remove the `\makeindex` command if you do not want to regenerate the index.) Page 355 describes what happens at this point if there are error messages.

In reading the index, you may discover additional mistakes. These should be corrected by changing the appropriate `\index` commands in the document and regenerating the *.ind* file (rerunning \LaTeX *before* and *after* the last step).

An example of running *MakeIndex* is shown below. The *.idx* file, *main.idx*, is generated by a first \LaTeX run on the input shown in Figure 14.3 on the next page. You can clearly see that two files are written — namely, the ordered *.ind* index file for use with \LaTeX , called *main.ind*, and the index *.ilg* log file, called *main.ilg*, which (in this case) contains the same text as the output on the terminal. If errors are encountered, then the latter file contains the line number and error message for each error in the input stream. Figure 14.4 on page 353 shows the result of the subsequent \LaTeX run. The example uses the *showidx* package for controlling the index (see Section 14.5.2).

```
makeindex main
This is makeindex, version 2.15 [TeX Live 2021] (kpathsea + Thai support).
Scanning input file main.idx...done (8 entries accepted, 0 rejected).
Sorting entries....done (24 comparisons).
Generating output file main.ind....done (19 lines written, 0 warnings).
Output written in main.ind.
Transcript written in main.ilg.
```

14.2.2 Detailed options of the *MakeIndex* program

The syntax of the options of the *MakeIndex* program are described below. Most options are also available for *upmendex*, a Unicode-aware extension of the program, discussed in Section 14.3 on page 364. If an option applies only to *MakeIndex*, then this is explicitly noted.

```
makeindex [-ciglqrLT] [-o ind] [-p no] [-s sty] [-t log] [idx0 idx1 ...]
```

- c Enable blank compression. By default, every blank counts in the index key. The `-c` option ignores leading and trailing blanks and tabs and compresses intermediate ones to a single space. We recommend always using this option.

```

\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{makeidx,showidx,multicol,microtype}

\newcommand\bs{\symbol{'134}} % print backslash in either OT1 or T1
\newcommand\Com[1]{\texttt{\bs#1}\index{#1@\texttt{\bs#1}}}
\newcommand\Prog[1]{\texttt{#1}\index{#1@\texttt{#1} program}}

\renewenvironment{theindex}
{
  \begin{multicols}{2}[\section*{\indexname}][5\baselineskip]%
  \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{\indexname}%
  \setlength\parindent{0pt}\pagestyle{plain}%
  \ExpandArgs{Nc}\RenewCommandCopy{\item}{@idxitem}%
  \end{multicols}}

\makeindex
\begin{document}
\section{Generating an Index}
Using the \textsf{showidx} package, users can see where they define
index entries.

Entries are entered into the index by the \Com{index} command. More
precisely, the argument of the \Com{index} command is written
literally into the auxiliary file \texttt{idx}. Note, however, that
information is actually written into that file only when the
\Com{makeindex} command was given in the document preamble.

\section{Preparing the Index}
In order to prepare the index for printing, the \texttt{idx} file has
to be transformed by an external program, like \MakeIndex{}. This
program writes the \texttt{ind} file.
\begin{verbatim}
makeindex filename
\end{verbatim}

\section{Printing the Index}\index{Final production run}
During the final production run of a document, the index can be
\index{include index}included by putting a \Com{printindex} command at
the position in the text where you want the index to appear (normally
at the end). This command will input the \texttt{ind} file prepared by
\MakeIndex{}, and \LaTeX{} will typeset the information.
\printindex
\end{document}

```

Figure 14.3: Example of \index commands and the showidx package

This file is run through \LaTeX once; then the index processor is executed, and \LaTeX is run a second time. The redefinition of the `theindex` environment is discussed in Section 14.5.1 on page 371.

1 Generating an Index

Using the `showidx` package, users can see where they define index entries.

Entries are entered into the index by the `\index` command. More precisely, the argument of the `\index` command is written literally into the auxiliary file `idx`. Note, however, that information is actually written into that file only when the `\makeindex` command was given in the document preamble.

```
index@\index
index@\index
makeindex@\makeindex
makeindex@\makeindex
program
Final
production
run
include index
printindex@\printindex
makeindex@\makeindex
program
```

2 Preparing the Index

In order to prepare the index for printing, the `idx` file has to be transformed by an external program, like `makeindex`. This program writes the `ind` file.

```
makeindex filename
```

3 Printing the Index

During the final production run of a document, the index can be included by putting a `\printindex` command at the position in the text where you want the index to appear (normally at the end). This command will input the `ind` file prepared by `makeindex`, and \LaTeX will typeset the information.

Index

Final production run, 1	<code>\makeindex</code> , 1
	<code>makeindex</code> program, 1
include index, 1	
<code>\index</code> , 1	<code>\printindex</code> , 1

Figure 14.4: Printing the index and the output of the `showidx` option

This figure shows the index generated from the example input in Figure 14.3. All index entries are shown in the margin, so it is easy to check for errors or duplications.

- i Use standard input (`stdin`) as the input file. When this option is specified and `-o` is not, output is written to standard output (`stdout`, the default output stream).
- g Employ German word ordering in the index, following the rules given in German standard DIN5007. In this case the normal precedence rule of *MakeIndex* for word ordering (symbols, numbers, uppercase letters, lowercase letters) is replaced by the German word ordering (symbols, lowercase letters, uppercase letters, numbers). Additionally, this option enables *MakeIndex* to recognize the German T_EX commands "a, "o, "u, and "s as *ae*, *oe*, *ue*, and *ss*, respectively, for sorting purposes. The quote character must be redefined in a style file (see page 359); otherwise, you get an error message, and *MakeIndex* aborts. Note that not all versions of *MakeIndex* recognize this option.
Note that this option has a different use in *upmendex*, which has a different way to enable German sorting rules.
- l Use letter ordering. The default is word ordering. In word ordering, a space comes before any letter in the alphabet. In letter ordering, spaces are ignored. For example, the index terms "point in space" and "pointing" are alphabetized differently in letter and word ordering.
- o *ind* Take *ind* as the output index file. By default, the file name base of the first input file *idx0* concatenated with the extension `.ind` is used as the output file name.
- p *no* Set the starting page number of the output index file to *no*. This option is useful when the index file is to be formatted separately. Other than pure numbers, three special cases are allowed for *no*: any, odd, and even. In these special cases, the starting page number is determined by retrieving the last page number from the `.log` file of the last L^AT_EX run. The `.log` file name is determined by concatenating the file name base of the first raw index file (*idx0*) with the extension `.log`. The last source page is obtained by searching backward in the log file for the first instance of a number included in square brackets. If a page number is missing or if the `.log` file is not found, no attempt is made to set the starting page number. The meaning of each of the three special cases follows:
 - any The starting page is the last source page number plus one.
 - odd The starting page is the first odd page following the last source page number.
 - even The starting page is the first even page following the last source page number.
- q Operate in quiet mode. No messages are sent to the error output stream (`stderr`). By default, progress and error messages are sent to `stderr` as well as the transcript file. The `-q` option disables the `stderr` messages.

- r Disable implicit page range formation. By default, three or more successive pages are automatically abbreviated as a range (e.g., 1-5). The -r option disables this default, making explicit range operators the only way to create page ranges.
- s *sty* Take *sty* as the style file. There is no default for the style file name. The environment variable INDEXSTYLE defines where the style file resides.
- t *log* Take *log* as the transcript file. By default, the file name base of the first input file *idx0* concatenated with the extension .ilg is used as the transcript file name.
- L Sort the index based on the current locale settings of the computer. This option is not available in all versions of *MakeIndex* and not available with *upmendex*, which uses style keywords to define the sorting behavior.
- T Special support for Thai documents. This option is not available in all versions of *MakeIndex* and not offered by *upmendex*.

14.2.3 Error and warning messages

MakeIndex displays on the terminal how many lines were read and written and how many errors were found. Messages that identify errors are written in the transcript file, which, by default, has the extension .ilg. *MakeIndex* can produce error messages when it is reading the .idx file or when it is writing the .ind file. Each error message identifies the nature of the error and the number of the line where the error occurred in the file. In the reading phase, the line numbers in the error messages refer to the positions in the .idx file being read.

Errors in the reading phase

Extra ‘!’ at position ...

The \index command’s argument has more than two unquoted ! characters. Perhaps some of them should be quoted.

Extra ‘@’ at position ...

The \index command argument has two or more unquoted @ characters with no intervening !. Perhaps one of the @ characters should be quoted.

Extra ‘|’ at position ...

The \index command’s argument has more than one unquoted | character. Perhaps the extras should be quoted.

Illegal null field

The \index command argument does not make sense because some string is null that should not be. The command \index{!funny} produces this error, because it specifies a subentry “funny” with no entry. Similarly, the command \index{@funny} is incorrect, because it specifies a null string for sorting.

Argument ... too long (max 1024)

The document contained an \index command with a very long argument. You probably forgot the right brace that should delimit the argument.

Errors in the writing phase In the writing phase, line numbers in the error messages refer to the positions in the .idx file being written.

Unmatched range opening operator

An `\index{...|}` command has no matching `\index{...|})` command following it. The “...” in the two commands must be completely identical.

Unmatched range closing operator

An `\index{...|})` command has no matching `\index{...|}` command preceding it.

Extra range opening operator

Two `\index{...|}` commands appear in the document with no intervening command `\index{...|})`.

Inconsistent page encapsulator ... within range

MakeIndex has been instructed to include a page range for an entry, and a single page number within that range is formatted differently — for example, by having an `\index{cat|see{animals}}` command between an `\index{cat|}` command and an `\index{cat|})` command.

Conflicting entries

MakeIndex thinks it has been instructed to print the same page number twice in two different ways. For example, the command sequences `\index{lion|see{...}}` and `\index{lion}` appear on the same page.

MakeIndex can produce a variety of other error messages indicating that something is seriously wrong with the .idx file. If you get such an error, it probably means that the .idx file was corrupted in some way. If \LaTeX did not generate any errors when it created the .idx file, then it is highly unlikely to have produced a bad .idx file. If, nevertheless, this does happen, you should examine the .idx file to establish what went wrong.

In some cases the program produces warnings instead of error messages, e.g., when it encounters data in the style file that it does not recognize. This may or may not be an issue; for example, at some point in the past a few keywords got renamed, and to cater for this some style files supply both versions, and thus one then generates such a warning. But it may also indicate that you misspelled a keyword. Thus, if the behavior is not as you expect, check the .ilg file for such warnings.

14.2.4 Customizing the index

MakeIndex ensures that the formats of the input and output files do not have to be fixed, but they can be adapted to the needs of a specific application. To achieve this format independence, the *MakeIndex* program is driven by a style file, usually characterized with a file extension of .ist (see also Figure 14.1 on page 344). This file consists of a series of keyword/value pairs. These keywords can be divided into input and output style parameters. Table 14.1 on the facing page describes the various keywords and their default values for the programming of the input file. This table shows, for instance, how to modify the index-level separator (level, with ! as the

<i>Keyword</i>	<i>Default Value</i>	<i>Description</i>
<code>keyword</code> ^(s)	<code>"\\indexentry"</code>	Command telling <i>MakeIndex</i> that its argument is an index entry.
<code>arg_open</code> ^(c)	<code>'{'</code>	Argument opening delimiter.
<code>arg_close</code> ^(c)	<code>'}'</code>	Argument closing delimiter.
<code>range_open</code> ^(c)	<code>' ('</code>	Opening delimiter indicating the beginning of an explicit page range.
<code>range_close</code> ^(c)	<code>') '</code>	Closing delimiter indicating the end of an explicit page range.
<code>level</code> ^(c)	<code>' ! '</code>	Delimiter denoting a new level of subitem.
<code>actual</code> ^(c)	<code>' @ '</code>	Symbol separating the sort key from the “actual” representation in the index file.
<code>encap</code> ^(c)	<code>' | '</code>	Symbol indicating that the rest of the argument list is to be used as an encapsulating command for the page number.
<code>quote</code> ^(c)	<code>' " '</code>	Symbol that escapes the character following it.
<code>escape</code> ^(c)	<code>' \\ '</code>	Symbol without any special meaning unless it is followed by the quote character, in which case that character loses its special function and both characters are printed. This is included because <code>\</code> is the umlaut accent in T _E X. The two symbols <code>quote</code> and <code>escape</code> must be distinct.
<code>page_compositor</code> ^(s)	<code>" - "</code>	Composite page delimiter.

^(s) Attribute of type *string*; ^(c) attribute of type *char* (enclose in double or single quotes, respectively)

Table 14.1: Input style parameters for *MakeIndex* and *upmendex*

default character value). Table 14.2 on the next page describes the various keywords and their default values for steering the translation of the input information into L^AT_EX commands. This table explains how to define the way the various levels are formatted (using the `item` series of keywords). Examples show in more detail how these input and output keywords can be used in practice. *MakeIndex* style files use Unix string syntax, so you must enter `\\` to get a single `\` in the output.

In the following sections we show how, by making just a few changes to the values of the default settings of the parameters controlling the index, you can customize the index.

A stand-alone index

The example style `mybook.ist` (shown below) defines a stand-alone index for a book, where “stand-alone” means that it can be formatted independently of the main source. Such a stand-alone index can be useful if the input text of the book is frozen (the page numbers do no longer change) and you want only to reformat the index.

```
% MakeIndex style file mybook.ist
preamble  "\\documentclass[12pt]{book} \n\n \\begin{document} \n
          \\begin{theindex}\n"
postamble "\\n\n\\end{theindex} \n \\end{document}\n"
```

<i>Keyword</i>	<i>Default Value</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Context</i>		
<code>preamble</code> ^(s)	<code>"\\begin{theindex}\\n"</code>	Preamble command preceding the index.
<code>postamble</code> ^(s)	<code>"\\n\\n\\end{theindex}\\n"</code>	Postamble command following the index.
<i>Starting Page</i>		
<code>setpage_prefix</code> ^(s)	<code>"\\n\\setcounter{page}{"</code>	Prefix for the command setting the page.
<code>setpage_suffix</code> ^(s)	<code>"}\\n"</code>	Suffix for the command setting the page.
<i>New Group</i>		
<code>group_skip</code> ^(s)	<code>"\\n\\n\\indexspace\\n"</code>	Vertical space inserted before a new group.
<i>Entry Separators</i>		
<code>item_0</code> ^(s)	<code>"\\n\\item "</code>	Command to be inserted in front of a level 0 entry.
<code>item_1</code> ^(s)	<code>"\\n \\subitem "</code>	Ditto for a level 1 entry starting at level ≥ 1 .
<code>item_2</code> ^(s)	<code>"\\n \\subsubitem "</code>	Ditto for a level 2 entry starting at level ≥ 2 .
<code>item_01</code> ^(s)	<code>"\\n \\subitem "</code>	Command before a level 1 entry starting at level 0.
<code>item_12</code> ^(s)	<code>"\\n \\subsubitem "</code>	Ditto for a level 2 entry starting at level 1.
<code>item_x1</code> ^(s)	<code>"\\n \\subitem "</code>	Command to be inserted in front of a level 1 entry when the parent level has no page numbers.
<code>item_x2</code> ^(s)	<code>"\\n \\subsubitem "</code>	Ditto for a level 2 entry.
<i>Page Delimiters</i>		
<code>delim_0</code> ^(s)	<code>", "</code>	Delimiter between entry and page number(s) at level 0.
<code>delim_1</code> ^(s)	<code>", "</code>	Ditto at level 1.
<code>delim_2</code> ^(s)	<code>", "</code>	Ditto at level 2.
<code>delim_n</code> ^(s)	<code>", "</code>	Delimiter between different page numbers.
<code>delim_r</code> ^(s)	<code>"--"</code>	Designator for a page range.
<code>delim_t</code> ^(s)	<code>" "</code>	Terminator of the page number list.
<code>suffix_2p</code> ^(s)	<i>not set by default</i>	Suffix as replacement for a two-page range, e.g., "f".
<code>suffix_3p</code> ^(s)	<i>not set by default</i>	Suffix as replacement for a three-page range, e.g., "ff".
<code>suffix_mp</code> ^(s)	<i>not set by default</i>	Ditto for a multi-page range (three or more pages).
<i>Page Encapsulators</i>		
<code>encap_prefix</code> ^(s)	<code>"\\"</code>	Prefix to be used in front of a page encapsulator.
<code>encap_infix</code> ^(s)	<code>"{"</code>	Infix to be used for a page encapsulator.
<code>encap_suffix</code> ^(s)	<code>"}"</code>	Suffix to be used for a page encapsulator.
<i>Page Number Precedence</i>		
<code>page_precedence</code> ^(s)	<code>"rnaRA"</code>	a, A are lower-, uppercase alphabetic; n is numeric; r and R are lower- and uppercase roman.
<i>Line Wrapping</i>		
<code>line_max</code> ⁽ⁿ⁾	72	Maximum length of an output line.
<code>indent_space</code> ^(s)	<code>"\\t\\t"</code>	Indentation commands for wrapped lines.
<code>indent_length</code> ⁽ⁿ⁾	16	Length of indentation for wrapped lines.

"\\n" and "\\t" are a new line and a tab; ^(s) attribute of type *string*; ⁽ⁿ⁾ attribute of type *number*

Table 14.2: Output style parameters for *MakeIndex* and *upmendex*

Keyword	Default Value	Description
<i>Group headings — Control & Presentation</i>		
<code>headings_flag</code> ⁽ⁿ⁾	0	Controls all group headings: if zero, nothing is inserted before each group. Otherwise, a value >0 (<0) includes an uppercase (lowercase) instance of the symbol characterizing the new letter group, prefixed with <code>heading_prefix</code> and appending <code>heading_suffix</code> . For numbers and symbols special headings are inserted.
<code>heading_prefix</code> ^(s)	" "	Prefix for a new group heading.
<code>heading_suffix</code> ^(s)	" "	Suffix for a new group heading.
<i>Group headings — Symbols</i>		
<code>symhead_positive</code> ^(s)	"Symbols"	Heading for symbols, inserted if <code>headings_flag</code> is positive.
<code>symhead_negative</code> ^(s)	"symbols"	Heading for symbols, inserted if <code>headings_flag</code> is negative.
<i>Group headings — Numbers (restrictions^(*) with upmindex)</i>		
<code>numhead_positive</code> ^(s)	"Numbers"	Heading for numbers, inserted if <code>headings_flag</code> is positive.
<code>numhead_negative</code> ^(s)	"numbers"	Heading for numbers, inserted if <code>headings_flag</code> is negative.

^(s) Attribute of type *string*; ⁽ⁿ⁾ attribute of type *number*

^(*) In upmindex both keys are ignored by default; see Table 14.4 on page 367 for how to enable them

Table 14.3: Group headings style parameters for *MakeIndex* and upmindex

Assuming that the raw index commands are in the file `mybook.idx`, then you can call *MakeIndex* specifying the style file's name:

```
makeindex -s mybook.ist -o mybookindex.tex mybook
```

We have used a nondefault output file name to avoid clobbering the source output (presumably `mybook.pdf`). If the index is in file `mybook.ind`, then its typeset output also ends up in `mybook.pdf`, thus overwriting the `.pdf` file for the main document.

Moreover, if you want the page numbers for the index to come out correctly, then you can specify the page number where the index has to start (e.g., 181 in the example below):

```
makeindex -s mybook.ist -o mybookindex.tex -p 181 mybook
```

MakeIndex can also read the L^AT_EX log file `mybook.log` to find the page number to be used for the index (see the `-p` option described on page 354).

Changing the “special characters”

The next example shows how you can change the interpretation of special characters in the input file. To do so, you must specify the new special characters in a style file (for instance, `myinchar.ist` shown below). Using Table 14.1 on page 357, in

the following example we change the @ character (see page 347) to =, the sublevel indicator ! (see page 347) to >, and the quotation character " (see page 348) to ! (the default sublevel indicator):

```
% MakeIndex style file myinchar.ist
actual '='      % = instead of default @
quote '!'      % !
level '>'      % >
               !
```

The next example makes use of these declarations and shows some index entries and the resulting output. It also assumes the `ngerman` option of the `babel` package; i.e., the double quote character (") is used as a shortcut for the umlaut construct \".

This shows another feature of the ordering algorithm used by *MakeIndex*; namely, the constructs " and \" are considered to be different entries (Br"ucke and Br\"ucke, M"adchen and M\"adchen, although in the latter case the key entry was identical, Maedchen). Therefore, it is important to use the same input convention throughout a complete document.

" sign, 1	Page 1: \index{\texttt{"} sign}
= sign, 2	Page 2: \index{\texttt{@} sign}
@ sign, 2	Page 2: \index{\texttt{!=} sign}
Brücke, 5	Page 3: \index{Maedchen=M"{a}dchen}
Brücke, V	Page c: \index{Maedchen=M"adchen}
Brücke, v	Page v: \index{Bruecke=Br"ucke}
dimensions	Page 5: \index{Br"ucke}
rule	Page V: \index{Br\"ucke}
width, 3	Page 3: \index{dimensions>rule>width}
exclamation (!), 4	Page 4: \index{exclamation (!!)}
Ah!, 5	Page 5: \index{exclamation (!!)>Ah!!}
Mädchen, c	
Mädchen, 3	

Note, however, that for languages such as German it is much nicer to be able to enter the index entries as UTF-8 strings; e.g., Brücke and Mädchen. This is possible if you use `upmindex` instead of *MakeIndex*.

Changing the output format of the index

You can also personalize the output format of the index. The first thing that we could try is to build an index with a nice, big letter between each letter group. This is achieved with the style `myhead.ist`, as shown below (see Table 14.3 on the previous page for more details on the various keywords available for headings):

```
% MakeIndex style file myhead.ist
headings_flag      1                % Turn on headings (uppercase)
heading_prefix     "{\\bfseries\\hfil " % Insert in front of letter
heading_suffix     "\\hfil}\\nopagebreak\\n" % Append after letter
```

This then gives a result such as the following:

Symbols	Page 2:	<code>\index{\texttt{"@} sign}</code>
@ sign, 2	Page 3:	<code>\index{dimensions!rule!width}</code>
B	Page 5:	<code>\index{box!parameters}</code>
box, 21	Page 9:	<code>\index{dimensions!table}</code>
dimensions of, 33	Page 12:	<code>\index{dimensions!rule!height}</code>
parameters, 5	Page 17:	<code>\index{dimensions!figure}</code>
D	Page 21:	<code>\index{box}</code>
dimensions	Page 33:	<code>\index{box!dimensions of}</code>
figure, 17		<code>\index{rule!depth}</code>
rule	Page 41:	<code>\index{rule!width}</code>
height, 12	Page 48:	<code>\index{rule!depth}</code>
width, 3		
table, 9		
R		
rule		
depth, 33, 48		
width, 41		

You could go a bit further and right-adjust the page numbers, putting in dots between the entry and the page number to guide the eye. This effect can be achieved by adding the following declarations:

```
% MakeIndex style file myright.ist
delim_0 "\\dotfill "
delim_1 "\\dotfill "
delim_2 "\\dotfill "
```

The result for the same input would then be this:

@ sign	2	Page 2:	<code>\index{\texttt{"@} sign}</code>
box	21	Page 3:	<code>\index{dimensions!rule!width}</code>
dimensions of	33	Page 5:	<code>\index{box!parameters}</code>
parameters	5	Page 9:	<code>\index{dimensions!table}</code>
dimensions		Page 12:	<code>\index{dimensions!rule!height}</code>
figure	17	Page 17:	<code>\index{dimensions!figure}</code>
rule		Page 21:	<code>\index{box}</code>
height	12	Page 33:	<code>\index{box!dimensions of}</code>
width	3		<code>\index{rule!depth}</code>
table	9	Page 41:	<code>\index{rule!width}</code>
rule		Page 48:	<code>\index{rule!depth}</code>
depth	33, 48		
width	41		

The \LaTeX command `\dotfill` can be replaced by fancier commands, but the underlying principle remains the same.

Treating funny page numbers

As described earlier, *MakeIndex* accepts five basic kinds of page numbers: digits, uppercase and lowercase alphabetic, and uppercase and lowercase roman numerals. You can also build composed page numbers. The separator character for composed page numbers is controlled by the *MakeIndex* keyword `page_compositor`; the default is the hyphen character (-), as noted in Table 14.1 on page 357. The precedence of ordering for the various kinds of page numbers is given by the keyword `page_precedence`; the default is `rRnaA`, as noted in Table 14.2 on page 358.

Problems with
letters as page
numbers

Let us start with an example involving simple page numbers. Assume the pages with numbers `ii`, `iv`, `1`, `2`, `5`, `a`, `c`, `A`, `C`, `II`, and `IV` contain an `\index` command with the word `style`. With the default `page_precedence` of `rRnaA` this would be typeset in the index as shown below. The `c` and `C` entries are considered to be roman numerals, rather than alphabetic characters, so we get:

style, ii, iv, c, II, IV, C, 1, 2, 5, a, A

This order can be changed by using the `page_precedence` keyword to `"rnAaR"`. Running *MakeIndex* on the same index entries now yields:

style, ii, iv, c, 1, 2, 5, A, a, II, IV, C

As you see, the letters like `C` are still interpreted as roman numerals. Thus, as long as *MakeIndex* offers no possibility to modify this behavior, it is ill adapted for pages numbered by letters — either one accepts a potentially incorrect order in the page references or one has to manually correct the final index.

Composed page
numbers

The situation looks somewhat different if composed page numbers are used, e.g., page numbers like `"B-3"` (where `"B"` is the appendix number and `"3"` the page number within this appendix). In this case `C` is interpreted as a letter, but `I` is still considered a roman numeral. Thus, in this setting you can have up to eight appendices before you run into trouble.

Suppose that the unsorted index entries show the page numbers `C--3`, `1--1`, `D--1--1`, `B--7`, `F--3--5`, `2--2`, `D--2--3`, `A--1`, `B--5`, and `A--2`. If this raw index is processed with *MakeIndex*, it results in an empty formatted index and a lot of error messages, because the default page separator is a single hyphen. However, by setting the `page_compositor` keyword to `"--"`, you can process this raw index successfully and get the following result:

style, 1-1, 2-2, A-1, A-2, B-5, B-7, C-3, D-1-1, D-2-3, F-3-5

Because *MakeIndex* supports only a single page separator, more complex page numbering schemes involving several different page separators (such as `A-4.1`) cannot be processed by the program.

14.2.5 Pitfalls to watch out for

The `\index` command tries to write its argument unmodified to the `.idx` file whenever possible. This behavior has a number of consequences, because \LaTeX 's way of dealing with the problem of preventing expansion is not always successful.

If the index text contains commands, as in `\index{\Prog}`, the entry is likely wrongly sorted, because if used in the main text this entry is sorted under the sort key `\Prog` (with the special character `\` as the starting sort character) regardless of the definition of the `\Prog` command. On the other hand, if it is used in some argument of another command, `\Prog` expands before it is written to the `.idx` file; the placement in the index then depends on the expansion of `\Prog`. The same thing happens when you use `\index` inside your own definitions. That is, all commands inside the index argument are expanded (except when they are robust or preceded by `\protect`).¹

For sorting, *MakeIndex* assumes that pages numbered with lowercase roman numerals precede those numbered with arabic numerals, which in turn precede those numbered with the lowercase alphabet, uppercase roman numerals, and finally the uppercase alphabet. This precedence order can be changed (see the entry `page_precedence` in Table 14.2 on page 358).

MakeIndex places symbols (i.e., patterns starting with a nonalphanumeric character) before numbers and before alphabetic entries in the output. Symbols are sorted according to their ASCII values. For word sorting, uppercase and lowercase are considered the same, but for identical words, the uppercase variant precedes the lowercase one. Numbers are sorted in numeric order. The *upmendex* program offers you some customization possibilities to alter the sort order of scripts and symbols.

Spaces are treated as ordinary characters when alphabetizing the entries and when deciding whether two entries are the same (see also the example on page 346). Thus, if “`␣`” denotes a space character, the commands `\index{cat}`, `\index{␣cat}`, and `\index{cat␣}` produce three separate entries. All three entries look similar when printed. Likewise, `\index{a␣space}` and `\index{a␣␣space}` produce two different entries that look exactly the same in the output. For this reason it is important to check for spurious spaces by being careful when splitting the argument of an `\index` command across lines in the input file. The *MakeIndex* option `-c` turns off that behavior and trims leading and trailing white space, compressing all white space within to one blank. We recommend that you use it all the time.

MakeIndex assumes that the input data in the `.idx` files contains only ASCII data. These days *T_EX* writes UTF-8 files by default. This is fine because ASCII is a subset of UTF-8, but if the data contains UTF-8 characters outside of ASCII, they will be incorrectly read and processed by *MakeIndex* on a byte-by-byte basis resulting in incorrect sorting or worse — this is where the program *upmendex* comes into play.

The *upmendex* program, on the other hand, expects its input data to be encoded in UTF-8 and not in any legacy 8-bit encoding. The only indexing program that can handle such legacy file encodings successfully is *xindy*.

The programs *MakeIndex* and *upmendex* have similar but not identical options. Thus, if you change your workflow from one to the other, make sure that everything behaves as it should. Some options in *upmendex* have extended semantics, which is usually fine, but `-g`, for example, has a totally different meaning in both programs.

Consider always using the `-c` option

Use *MakeIndex* only with ASCII input

Use *upmendex* only with UTF-8 input

Program options are not exactly identical

¹The *index* package (see Section 14.5.3) uses a different approach that prevents expansion in *all* cases, which is arguably the better approach.

14.3 upmindex — A Unicode-aware indexing program

The program `upmindex` by TAKUJI Tanaka is an index processor that is Unicode-aware. It is fully compatible with *MakeIndex*'s input syntax and supports, except for a few minor differences, all configuration options described in the previous sections — any differences are explicitly discussed below.

The program was originally developed under the name `mindex` to offer a *MakeIndex* variant with tailored support for the Japanese language. For this, a number of new configuration options got added. The `upmindex` program extends this further, and by delegating the sorting to the International Components for Unicode (ICU) library, many different sorting schemes, based on languages or use case requirements, can be realized. For these features additional style keywords are available.

Because most of what was discussed for *MakeIndex* in the previous sections also applies to `upmindex`, we describe only the differences and extensions made by the program in detail below and otherwise refer to the *MakeIndex* documentation.

14.3.1 Options, warnings, and errors of the program

The `upmindex` program is called in the same way as *MakeIndex* and offers a comparable set of options.

```
upmindex [-cigflqr] [-d dic] [-o ind] [-p no] [-s sty] [-t log] [idx ...]
```

Options shared with *MakeIndex* are only briefly listed here; more details on them are found in Section 14.2.2 on page 351. The *MakeIndex* options `-L` and `-T` are not supported by `upmindex`, and the option `-g` has a new meaning that is discussed below.

Unsupported
MakeIndex options

Options shared with
MakeIndex

- `-c` Enable blank compression.
- `-i` Use standard input (`stdin`) as the input file.
- `-l` Use letter instead of word ordering.
- `-o ind` Take *ind* as the output index file.
- `-p no` Set the starting page number of the output index file to *no*.
- `-q` Operate in quiet mode.
- `-r` Disable implicit page range formation.
- `-s sty` Take *sty* as the style file.
- `-t log` Take *log* as the transcript file.

All other options are available only with `upmindex` and are needed if your index contains Japanese words that need sorting. However, as explained later, `-d` and `-f` are also useful with other scripts.

- d *dic* Employ *dic* as a dictionary file. Japanese Kanjis have one or more “reading”, and in order to sort them, the reading to be used for sorting needs to be specified. This is done in dictionary files containing lines of the form

<index entry> *<key>*

which allows you to write `\index{<index entry>}` to achieve the same effect as when writing `\index{<key>@<index entry>}`. For correct sorting in Japanese the *key* should be written in Hiragana or Katakana script. The dictionary is consulted only if the *index entry* cannot be sorted automatically; i.e., you cannot use it to make arbitrary substitutions.

- f Force upmindex to output characters unchanged if it cannot determine a sort key and cannot find a dictionary entry. For example, indexing a “€” character would normally result in an error stopping the processing, because upmindex would not know how to sort it. This option would allow it to continue.
- g By default Japanese index entries are grouped by their component phonemes. This ordering is called a *gojūon* (lit. fifty sounds) table and consists of 48 kana because the table is not fully filled. When using the -g option, the entries are grouped into only five groups (the columns of the *gojūon* table corresponding to the vowels a, i, u, e, and o, in that order). In *MakeIndex* this option is used to implement German language sorting instead.

Like *MakeIndex*, the upmindex program displays information on the terminal and writes error and warnings in the transcript file. See Section 14.2.3 on page 355 for details on the error messages that are largely identical in both programs.

A number of messages are specific to upmindex, e.g., messages related to reading dictionary files (option -d), and there are a few new additional errors and warnings related to the extensions made for processing the full range of Unicode characters and the sorting with the ICU library. We describe here only those that one is more likely to encounter when generating an index for languages other than Japanese and that are not obvious from their message text.

Error: *<entry>* is no entry in dictionary file in ...

upmindex does not know how to make a sort key for the index *<entry>*, and it has not found an dictionary entry for it either. This is a hard error, and processing stops. Either you have to provide a dictionary file containing an appropriate entry line or you have to use the option -f to force the program to continue despite this error. This happens, for example, if the index entry contains symbols, such as † or €, unless you tell upmindex explicitly how to handle them.

Warning: [ICU] U_USING_DEFAULT_WARNING for locale *<locale>*

The *<locale>* specified in `icu_locale` in the style file has no effect because it is already covered by the default ICU sorting rules. For example, specifying `de` (for German) would have this effect. It can be safely ignored, but it means that the

specification was not necessary, in contrast to requesting, say, German phonebook ordering, which would be done with `de@collation=phonebook`.

Warning: Illegal input for `icu_attributes` (`<key>:<value>`)

The `<key>` and/or `<value>` specified for an ICU attribute in `icu_attributes` is not recognized. Check if there is a misspelling.

Warning: Sort key "`<key1>`" is different from previous key "`<key2>`" for same index "`<entry>`" in ...

There have been two or more index entries for `<entry>`, using different sort keys, e.g., "`abc@F00`" and "`xyz@F00`". This is most likely a mistake in the input source, because it results in "`F00`" appearing in two different places in the index. This issue is checked for only by `upmindex`, but not detected by `MakeIndex`.

14.3.2 Customizing the index with `upmindex`

Just like `MakeIndex`, the input and output behavior of the `upmindex` program can be customized through a style file (in fact with `upmindex` you can even supply several style files by repeatedly using the `-s` option).

The input style parameters are the same as for `MakeIndex` and are listed in Table 14.1 on page 357. The output style parameters listed in Tables 14.2 and 14.3 on pages 358–359 are also available. Consequently, all customization possibilities discussed in Section 14.2.4 on page 356 are also applicable for `upmindex`.

However, `upmindex` extends this set in several directions; the additional output parameters are shown in Table 14.4 on the next page. Below we discuss features that are available only when these parameters are used.

Adjusting the sorting to rules of a specific language or script

When it comes to sorting, different languages often have their own conventions, for example, whether to sort characters with diacritics under the base character or treat them as separate characters, etc. This makes the production of a properly sorted index challenging.

One of the main advantages of `upmindex` is therefore its ability to use the ICU services for sorting, which means that in many cases you have to specify only which "locale" should be used for sorting and let the ICU library worry about the rest. This locale is specified in the style file with the keyword `icu_locale`.

For example, if you have index entries for the words "Amme", "Apfel", "Äpfel", and "Axel", then the default sorting for English, German, and several other languages would be the following:

Amme, 1	Page 1: <code>\index{Amme}</code>
Apfel, 2	Page 2: <code>\index{Apfel}</code>
Äpfel, 2	Page 2: <code>\index{Äpfel}</code>
Axel, 3	Page 3: <code>\index{Axel}</code>

That is, the "Ä" is directly sorted after "A" within the letter group for A.

Keyword	Default Value	Description
<i>Sorting</i>		
<code>icu_locale</code> ^(s)	""	The locale defining the basic sorting order for the index. Supported values are given in Table 14.5 on page 369.
<code>icu_attributes</code> ^(s)	""	ICU attributes to further tailor the sorting. Supported values are given in Table 14.6 on page 369.
<code>icu_rules</code> ^(s)	""	ICU rules to alter individual character sorting order.
<i>Character/Script order</i>		
<code>character_order</code> ^(s)	"SNLGCJKHDT"	The output order of scripts and symbols. The letters represent Symbols, Numbers, Latin, Greek, Cyrillic, Japanese Kana, Korean Hangul, Hanja, Devanagari, and Thai script.
<i>Japanese specifics</i>		
<code>letter_head</code> ⁽ⁿ⁾	1	Use Katakana (default) or Hiragana (2) for Japanese Kana heading letters.
<code>priority</code> ⁽ⁿ⁾	0	If nonzero, add one space between Japanese and non-Japanese text in an index entry while sorting.
<i>Script heading characters</i>		
<code>devangari_head</code> , <code>hangul_head</code> , <code>hanzi_head</code> , <code>kana_head</code> , <code>thai_head</code> , ...		Strings holding characters to be used as individual heading characters (one after the other) in front of entry groups within the script. For details, see the program documentation.
<i>Group heading for Symbols and Numbers</i>		
<code>symbol_flag</code> ⁽ⁿ⁾	0	By Japanese conventions, symbols and numbers are sorted as a single group. If <code>symbol_flag</code> has the value 0, then <code>symhead_positive</code> or <code>symhead_negative</code> is used for the heading text of the group consisting of both symbols and numbers. If it is 1, then the value of <code>symbol</code> is used instead, and if it is set to 2, the program behaves like <i>MakeIndex</i> , and symbols and numbers get their own groups.
<code>symbol</code> ^(s)	""	Heading text when <code>symbol_flag</code> is set to 1.

^(s) Attribute of type *string*; ⁽ⁿ⁾ attribute of type *number*

Table 14.4: Additional output style parameters for upmindex

However, if you apply the Swedish locale (`icu_locale="sv"`) in the style file, you get a different result because now “Ä” forms its own letter group.

Amme, 1	Page 1: \index{Amme}
Apfel, 2	Page 2: \index{Apfel}
Axel, 3	Page 2: \index{Äpfel}
Äpfel, 2	Page 3: \index{Axel}

Even within a language, sorting rules may differ based on the application; e.g., in Germany, sorting in phonebooks usually interprets the Umlaut “Ä” as “Ae”.

This can in some cases be catered for by embellishing the locale information, i.e., `icu_locale_ de@collation=phonebook` after which the output shows “Äpfel” as the first entry, because it is sorted as “Aepfel”:

Äpfel, 2	Page 1: \index{Amme}
Amme, 1	Page 2: \index{Apfel}
Apfel, 2	Page 2: \index{Äpfel}
Axel, 3	Page 3: \index{Axel}

Many languages are supported without the need for explicitly setting a locale

It is important to note that the locale used by `upmendex` is independent of the locale set on your operating system — only the value in `icu_locale` matters, and if not set, the ICU “root” order default applies. The latter is adequate for a large number of languages, among them Dutch, English, French, German, Italian, Portugese, etc. The list of supported locales that have special requirements is already quite large, but it is expected to grow even further. Table 14.5 on the facing page lists languages that need special locale settings as well as those that have supported variants for sorting; e.g., for German you do not need a locale setting unless you want phonebook sorting, so only the latter is listed in the table.

Tailoring the sorting with attributes

Besides setting the locale to influence the sorting, it is possible to tailor it by applying ICU attributes. These attributes can alter broader aspects, for example, whether lowercase characters should be sorted before or after uppercase characters. Supported attributes and their values are listed in Table 14.6 on the next page. You apply them by combining the attribute name with its value and assign this to `icu_attributes` in the style file. To set more than one attribute, separate them with a blank. Below we give a few examples of changes you may want to apply; for more details study the ICU documentation [193].

Sort numbers numerically

Digits in index entries are normally sorted as strings such that “V128” is placed before “V64”. However, you may want to see them sorted by their numeric value, which can be achieved with

```
icu_attributes      "numeric-ordering:on"
```

after which “V64” comes first, because 64 is numerically smaller than 128.

Lowercase first!

If entries differ only in the case of their characters, the uppercase entries are usually placed first. You can alter that by using

```
icu_attributes      "case-first:lower-first"
```

French collation rules

In most languages, sorting is based on comparing strings from start to end, and if words differ only in some diacritics, then the first such difference determines the order. However, in some French dictionary traditions it is the last diacritics that are used for the ordering. For example, normally the words “cote”, “coté”, “côte”, and “côté” would be sorted in exactly this order, but after specifying

```
icu_attributes      "french-collation:on"
```

two words change their places, so we end up with “cote”, “côte”, “coté”, “côté”.

<i>language</i>	<i>locale(s)</i>	<i>language</i>	<i>locale(s)</i>
<i>Latin scripts</i>			
Albanian	sq	Norwegian	nb, nn, no
Azerbaijan	az	Polish	pl
Catalan	ca	Romanian	ro
Croatian	hr, hr@collation=search	Serbian	sr-Latn,
Czech	cs, cs@collation=search		sr-Latn@collation=search
Danish	da	Slovak	sk, sk@collation=search
Esperanto	eo	Slovenian	sl
Finnish	fi	Spanish	es, es@collation=traditional,
Galician	gl		es@collation=search
German	de@collation=phonebook	Swedish	sv
Hungarian	hu	Turkish	tr
Lithuanian	lt	Vietnamese	vi
<i>Greek script</i>			
Greek	el		
<i>Cyrillic scripts</i>			
Belarusian	be	Serbian	sr
Bulgarian	bg	Ukraine	uk
Russian	ru		
<i>CJK scripts</i>			
Japanese	ja, ja@collation=unihan	Chinese	zh, zh@collation=unihan,
Korean	ko, ko@collation=search,		zh@collation=stroke,
	ko@collation=unihan		zh@collation=zhuyin

Many languages are directly supported by the default root sort order and therefore do not need an explicit setting. If you specify any of them, e.g., `de` (German), you get a warning that the default is used.

Table 14.5: Supported ICU locale settings for `icu_locale`

<i>Attribute</i>	<i>Values</i>	<i>Attribute</i>	<i>Values</i>
<code>alternate</code>	<code>:shifted, :non-ignorable</code>	<code>normalization-mode</code>	<code>:on, :off</code>
<code>case-first</code>	<code>:off, :upper-first, :lower-first</code>	<code>numeric-ordering</code>	<code>:on, :off</code>
<code>case-level</code>	<code>:on, :off</code>	<code>french-collation</code>	<code>:on, :off</code>
<code>strength</code>	<code>:primary, :secondary, :tertiary, :quaternary, :identical</code>		

Table 14.6: ICU attributes supported by upmendex

*Ignore punctuations
while sorting*

Perhaps a little less peculiar is the question of whether punctuation characters should play a rôle in sorting; e.g., how do you sort “high-level” and “higher”? By default “high-level” would come first because “-” gets compared to “e”. If you want to ignore punctuation characters while sorting, you can specify

```
icu_attributes          "strength:tertiary alternate:shifted"
```

after which “higher” comes first, because now “e” is compared to “l”.

*Ignore diacritics
while sorting*

The `strength` attribute used above determines to what level of detail the sorting algorithm considers characters as being different; for example, the following

```
icu_attributes          "strength:primary"
```

would ignore diacritics.

There is also the possibility of specifying granular rules for individual character combinations that overwrite default sorting rules given through the locale. Such rules are then specified with the `icu_rules` keyword in the style file. The syntax and specification are rather technical and complicated and not something a user would normally undertake, so they are not described here. See the documentation on the Internet [193] if you are curious.

*Order of different
scripts in the index*

Given that `upmendex` supports different scripts and an index may contain several of them in parallel, there is the question how these should be ordered relative to each other; e.g., should Latin entries come before or after Cyrillic ones, etc. To adjust this order, you can use the keyword `character_order` in the style file. It expects a string of letters where each letter stands for a particular script or group of characters. For example, “SNLCG” would output first symbols and numbers, then Latin entries, then Cyrillic ones, and finally Greek entries. Note that you can separate symbol and number groups only if you additionally set `symbol_flag` to 2.

14.4 xindy, xindex — Two other indexing programs

There are other indexing programs, and in passing we like to mention two of them here. The first one is `xindy` by Roger Kehr and Joachim Schrod, which has been one of the early contenders as a replacement for *MakeIndex*. It avoids several of *MakeIndex*’s limits, especially for generating indexes in non-English languages. Being available for more than two decades, it was adapted to support many languages and scripts. However, most of this support was developed prior to the widespread use of Unicode, and while the program can handle Unicode to some extent, many aspects of it show that its original design assumes 8-bit codepages. The program and its support files are distributed as part of most T_EX distributions, so there is no issue with continuing usage in existing projects, if the program’s capabilities are sufficient for them. However, for new projects we recommend using `upmendex` or (with some caveats) `xindex`.

The program `xindex` is a recent development by Herbert Voß. It is a Unicode-aware index processor written in Lua that is compatible with the default syntax of *MakeIndex*.

However, it does not yet support the customization possibilities of *MakeIndex* and its .ist style files. Similar to upmendex, it can be directed to use the ICU algorithms and (some of) their tailoring features but uses a different syntax to enable this. At the moment the feature and script support is still somewhat limited, but because it is actively being developed, we might see further features in the future.

14.5 Enhancing the index with L^AT_EX features

This section describes L^AT_EX's support for index creation. It presents possibilities to modify the index layout and to produce multiple indexes.

14.5.1 Modifying the layout

You can redefine the environment `theindex`, which by default is used to print the index. The layout of the `theindex` environment and the definition of the `\item`, `\subitem`, and `\subsubitem` commands are defined in the class files `article`, `book`, and `report`. In the `book` class you can find the following definitions:

```
\newenvironment{theindex}
  {\@restonecoltrue\if@twocolumn\@restonecolfalse\fi
   \columnseprule \z@ \columnsep 35\p@
   \twocolumn[\@makeschapterhead{\indexname}]\%
   \@mkboth{\MakeUppercase\indexname}{\MakeUppercase\indexname}%
   \thispagestyle{plain}\parindent\z@ \parskip\z@ \@plus .3\p@\relax
   \let\item\@idxitem}
  {\if@restonecol\onecolumn\else\clearpage\fi}
\newcommand\@idxitem {\par\hangindent 40\p@}
\newcommand\subitem {\par\hangindent 40\p@ \hspace*{20\p@}}
\newcommand\subsubitem{\par\hangindent 40\p@ \hspace*{30\p@}}
```

Although this is programmed in a fairly low-level internal language, you can probably decipher what it sets up. First it tests for two-column mode and saves the result. Then it sets some spacing parameters, resets the page style to `plain`, and calls `\twocolumn`. Finally, it changes `\item` to execute `\@idxitem`, which produces a paragraph with a hanging indentation of 40 points. A higher-level reimplementaion (using `ifthen`) might perhaps look as follows:

```
\renewenvironment{theindex}
  {\ifthenelse{\boolean{@twocolumn}}{\setboolean{@restonecol}{false}}{\%
   \setboolean{@restonecol}{true}}\%
   \setlength\columnseprule{0pt}\setlength\columnsep{35pt}\%
   \twocolumn[\chapter*{\indexname}]\%
   \markboth{\MakeUppercase\indexname}{\MakeUppercase\indexname}%
   \setlength\parindent{0pt}\setlength\parskip{0pt plus 0.3pt}\%
   \thispagestyle{plain}\ExpandArgs{Nc}\RenewCommandCopy\item{\@idxitem}}
  {\ifthenelse{\boolean{@restonecol}}{\onecolumn}{\clearpage}}
```

Adjusting this definition allows you to make smaller modifications, such as changing the page style or the column separation.

You can also make an index in three rather than two columns. To do so, you can use the `multicol` package and the `multicols` environment:

```
\renewenvironment{theindex}{%
  \begin{multicols}{3}[\chapter*{\indexname}] [10\baselineskip]%
  \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\indexname}%
  \setlength\parindent{0pt}\pagestyle{plain}%
  \ExpandArgs{Nc}\RenewCommandCopy{\item}{\@idxitem}}%
{\end{multicols}}
```

We require at least ten lines of free space on the current page; otherwise, we want the index to start on a new page. In addition to generating a title at the top, we enter the heading as a “Chapter” in the table of contents (`.toc`) and change the page style to `plain`. Then the `\item` command is redefined to cope with index entries (see above), and the entries themselves are typeset in three columns using the `multicols` environment.

14.5.2 `showidx`, `repeatindex`, `tocbibind`, `indxcite` — Little helpers

Several useful little \LaTeX packages exist to support index creation. A selection is listed in this section, but by browsing through the Internet resources discussed in Section C.4 on page 789, you can probably find additional ones.

*Show index entries
in margin*

The package `showidx` (by Leslie Lamport) can help you improve the entries in the index and locate possible problems. It shows all `\index` commands in the margin of the printed page. Figure 14.4 on page 353 shows the result of including the `showidx` package.

*Handle page breaks
gracefully*

The package `repeatindex` (by Harald Harders) repeats the main item of an index if a page or column break occurs within a list of subitems. This helps the reader correctly identify to which main item a subitem belongs.

*Table of contents
support*

The package `tocbibind` (by Peter Wilson) can be used to add the table of contents itself, the bibliography, and the index to the *Table of Contents* listing. See page I 56 for more information on this package.

*Automatic author
index*

The package `indxcite` (by James Ashton) automatically generates an author index based on citations made using \BibTeX . This type of functionality is also available with the bibliography packages `natbib`, `jurabib`, and `biblatex`, all of which are described in detail in Chapter 16.

14.5.3 `index` — Producing multiple indexes

The `index` package (written by David Jones) augments \LaTeX ’s indexing mechanism in several areas:

- Multiple indexes are supported.
- A two-stage process is used for creating the raw index files (such as the default `.idx` file) similar to that used to create the `.toc` file. First the index entries are

written to the `.aux` file, and then they are copied to the `.idx` file at the end of the run. With this approach, if you have a large document consisting of several included files (using the `\include` command), you no longer lose the index if you format only part of the document with `\includeonly`. Note, however, that this makes the creation of a chapter index more difficult.

- A starred form of the `\index` command is introduced. In addition to entering its argument in the index, it typesets the argument in the running text.
- To simplify typing, the `\shortindexingon` command activates a shorthand notation. Now you can type `^{foo}` for `\index{foo}` and `_{foo}` for `\index*{foo}`. These shorthand notations are turned off with the `\shortindexingoff` command. Because the underscore and circumflex characters have special meanings inside math mode, this shorthand notation is unavailable there.
- The package includes the functionality of the `showidx` package. The command `\proofmodetrue` enables the printing of index entries in the margins. You can customize the size and style of the font used in the margin with the `\indexproofstyle` command, which takes a font definition as its argument (e.g., `\indexproofstyle{\footnotesize\itshape}`).
- The argument of `\index` is never expanded when the index package is used. In standard L^AT_EX, using `\index{\command}` sometimes writes the expansion of `\command` to the `.idx` file (see Section 14.2.5 on page 362). With the index package, `\command` itself is always written to the `.idx` file. While this is helpful in most cases, macro authors can be bitten by this behavior. In Section 14.1.7, we recommended that you define commands that automatically add index entries. Such commands often expect that `\index` expands its parameter, and they may not work when you use the index package. Be careful and check the results of the automatic indexing — this is best practice anyway.

You can declare new indexes with the `\newindex` command. The command `\renewindex`, which has an identical syntax, is used to redefine existing indexes.

`\newindex{tag}{raw-ext}{proc-ext}{indextitle}`

The first argument, *tag*, is a short identifier used to refer to the index. In particular, the commands `\index` and `\printindex` are redefined to take an optional argument — namely, the tag of the index to which you are referring. If this optional argument is absent, the index with the tag “default” is used, which corresponds to the usual index. The second argument, *raw-ext*, is the extension of the raw index file to which L^AT_EX should write the unprocessed entries for this index (for the default index it is `.idx`). The third argument, *proc-ext*, is the extension of the index file in which L^AT_EX expects to find the processed index (for the default index it is `.ind`). The fourth argument, *indextitle*, is the title that L^AT_EX prints at the beginning of the index.

As an example we show the setup used to produce this book. The preamble included the following setting:

```
\RequirePackage{index}
\proofmodetrue           % while proofing the index entries
\newindex{xauthor}{adx}{and}{People}
\newindex{xcmds}{cdx}{cnd}{Index of Commands and Concepts}
```

In the back matter, printing of the index was done with the following lines:

```
\printindex[xcmds] \printindex[xauthor]
```

For each generated raw index file (e.g., `tlc3.adx` for the list of authors) we ran *MakeIndex* to produce the corresponding formatted index file for \LaTeX :

```
makeindex -o tlc3.and -t tlc3.alg tlc3.adx
```

While all of these tools help to get the correct page numbers in the index, the real difficulty persists: choosing useful index entries for your readers. This problem you still have to solve (if you are lucky, with help).

In fact, the index for the second edition of this book [145], as well as the indexes for the *LaTeX Graphics Companion* [55], was created by a professional indexer, Richard Evans of Infodex Indexing Services in Raleigh, North Carolina. Dick worked closely with me to produce comprehensive indexes that help you, the reader, find not only the names of things (packages, programs, commands, and so on) but also the tasks, concepts, and ideas described in the books. Let him tell you (from his FAQ):

Question: Why do I need an indexer? Can't the computer create an index?

Answer: To exactly the same degree that a word processor can write the book.

Indexes are creative works, requiring human intellect and analysis.

\LaTeX can process the indexing markup, but only a human indexer can decide what needs to be marked up. My sincere thanks to Dick for his excellent work and the teaching he delivered while working with him.

* * *

Unfortunately, Dick was unable to help me with this edition, as was initially planned. However, I learned a lot during our joint work on the other books, and with this knowledge and the good basis of terms selected for the previous edition, I am fairly confident that we have been able to deliver a useful result to you.

In this process I received invaluable help from Keith Harrison, who went through all pages of the book, identified new concepts worth indexing, and verified existing entries — a big thank you to him.

CHAPTER 15

Bibliography Generation

15.1 The standard \LaTeX bibliography environment.	376
15.2 The biber and \BibTeX programs	378
15.3 The \BibTeX database format.	380
15.4 Using \BibTeX or biber to produce the bibliography.	409
15.5 On-line bibliographies	413
15.6 Bibliography database management tools	414
15.7 Formatting the bibliography with styles	418

While a table of contents (see Section 2.3) and an index (discussed in Chapter 14) make it easier to navigate through a book, the presence of bibliographic references should allow you to verify the sources and to probe further subjects you consider interesting. To make this possible, the references should be precise and lead to the relevant work with a minimum of effort.

There exist many ways to format bibliographies, and different fields of scholarly activities have developed very precise rules in this area. An interesting overview of Anglo-Saxon practices can be found in the chapter on bibliographies in *The Chicago Manual of Style* [40]. Normally, authors must follow the rules laid out by their publisher. Therefore, one of the more important tasks when submitting a book or an article for publication is to generate the bibliographic reference list according to those rules.

Traditional ways of composing such lists by hand, without the systematic help of computers, are plagued with the following problems:

- Citations and references, particularly in a document with contributions from many authors, are hard to make consistent. Difficulties arise, such as variations in the use of full forenames versus abbreviations (with or without periods); italicization or quoting of titles; spelling “ed.”, “Ed.”, or “Editor”; and the various forms of journal volume number.

- A bibliography laid out in one style (e.g., alphabetic by author and year) is extremely hard to convert to another (e.g., numeric citation order) if requested by a publisher.
- It is difficult to maintain one large database of bibliographic references that can be reused in different documents.

In the present chapter we concentrate on the formatting of reference lists and bibliographies, and we discuss possibilities for managing collections of bibliographic references in databases. The chapter is heavily based on the `BibTeX` program, written by Oren Patashnik, and the `biber` program written by François Charette and now maintained by Philip Kime, which both integrate well with `LATEX`. In Chapter 16 we are then mainly concerned with the citation of sources within the text.

We start by showing how a bibliography can be created manually in `LATEX`. Because the standard environment is also used in the output of most `BibTeX` styles, this prepares the ground for the `BibTeX` workflow. We then introduce the two programs. This is followed by a detailed introduction to the database format¹ used to specify bibliographical data in a suitable form for processing with `BibTeX` or `biber`. We continue with a description of how to produce bibliographic input files for `LATEX` from these databases.

Instead of collecting your own bibliographical data, there is also the possibility of drawing information from various online sources that offer such data in `BibTeX` format. Some of them are introduced in Section 15.5.

Having collected data for `BibTeX` databases, the next natural step is to look for tools that help in managing such databases. Section 15.6 offers tools of various flavors for this task, ranging from command-line utilities to GUI-based programs for various platforms.

Finally, in Section 15.7 we return to the task of typesetting a bibliography and discuss how different `BibTeX` and `biblatex` styles can be used to produce different bibliography layouts from the same input. Because there may not be a suitable style for a particular set of layout requirements available, Section 15.7.2 discusses how to generate customized styles using the `custom-bib` package without the need for any `BibTeX` style programming. How to create or adapt styles for `biblatex` is discussed in Chapter 16 where we review that package in detail.

15.1 The standard `LATEX` bibliography environment

The standard `LATEX` environment for generating a list of references or a bibliography is called `thebibliography`. It is not defined by `LATEX` itself but by the document class, so the layout can vary. In its default implementation in the standard classes, it automatically generates an appropriate heading and implements a vertical list structure in which every publication is represented as a separate item. It also creates

¹Due to its origin, the format is commonly referred to as the `BibTeX` database format, even if used with `biber`. Thus, if you read “`BibTeX` database format” in the remainder of this chapter, it refers to the format usable by either of the programs.

for every item a label to allow referencing it in the document. The `thebibliography` environment can be created manually, but it is also used in the output of most Bib_TE_X styles. It is not used by the `bibtex` package, which typesets bibliographies with its own command, `\printbibliography`.

The different traditions regarding how such sources are then referred to in a document and how to produce such citations with L^AT_EX is the topic of Chapter 16; here citation commands are mentioned only as far as necessary to understand how they affect the bibliography.

```
\begin{thebibliography}{\widest-label}
\bibitem[label1]{cite-key1} bibliographic information
\bibitem[label2]{cite-key2} bibliographic information
...
\end{thebibliography}
```

The *widest-label* argument is used to determine the right amount of indentation for individual items. If the works are numbered sequentially, for example, it should contain the number of items.

Individual publications are introduced with a `\bibitem` command. Its mandatory argument is a unique cross-reference *cite-key* that is used to refer to this publication in the text of the document. For this purpose L^AT_EX offers the `\cite` command, which takes such a *cite-key* as its argument. Its precise syntax is described in Section 16.2.1 on page 475.

The optional argument defines the textual representation that is used in the citation and as the *label* in the list. If this argument is not specified, the publications are numbered with arabic numerals by default. Within a bibliographic entry the command `\newblock` may be used to separate major blocks of information. Depending on the layout produced by the document class, it may result in a normal space, may result in some extra space, or might start a new line.

The text of the heading is produced — depending on the class — by either the command `\bibname` or `\refname`. A language package, such as `babel`, localizes such commands and changes to them should be done by using the methods described in Chapter 13.

[1], [GOO97]

References

[1] Goossens, M., S. Rahtz, and F. Mittelbach (1997). *The L^AT_EX Graphics Companion: Illustrating Documents with T_EX and PostScript*. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley Longman.

[GOO97] Goossens, M., B. User, J. Doe (1997). Ambiguous citations.

```
\cite{LGC97}, \cite{GUD97}
\begin{thebibliography}{2}
\bibitem{LGC97} Goossens, M., S.~Rahtz,
    and F.~Mittelbach (1997).
    \newblock \emph{The LATEX Graphics Companion:
    Illustrating Documents with TEX and
    PostScript. \newblock Reading, MA, USA:
    Ad\~di\~son\~Wes\~ley Longman.
\bibitem[GOO97]{GUD97} Goossens, M., B.~User,
    J.~Doe (1997). \newblock Ambiguous citations.
\end{thebibliography}
```


Producing a large bibliography manually in this way is clearly a tedious and difficult task, and the result is normally not reusable, because nearly all journals and publishers have their own house styles with different formatting requirements. For this reason it is generally better to use programs, such as `BIBTEX` or `biber`, that generate ready-to-use `LATEX` input from a database of bibliographical information. This is discussed in the next section.

*Order by first
citation done
manually*

Note that the references are typeset and numbered in the order in which they appear in the bibliography. Thus, if you produce the bibliography manually, numbering and sorting the entries into the correct order becomes your task, which is especially difficult if they should be ordered by first reference in the text instead of alphabetically. In contrast, when using `BIBTEX` or `biber`, either order can be achieved automatically.

*Handling the
requirement to use a
thebibliography
environment
explicitly*

Some journals provide templates in which you are required to provide the reference list as explicit `\bibitems` in a `thebibliography` environment. When generating the bibliography with `BIBTEX`, this can be easily achieved by copying the final `.bbl` content into your document before submitting. However, when using `biblatex/biber`, this is not possible. In this case, the `biblatex2bibitem` package by Nikolai Avdeev can be of some help. Its usage is simple: load the package and issue `\printbibitembibliography` at the end of the document. This then typesets at this point a source representation of the `thebibliography` environment, which can be copied and pasted from the PDF into the source file intended for the journal. However, please note that when using the engine `pdfTEX`, you need to ensure that your document uses `\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}` so that you get real accented characters into the output — with the default `OT1` encoding, cut and paste goes horribly wrong otherwise.

Copying from a PDF is not fool-proof even then, and the result should be checked for faulty characters and missing spaces. But it can save you from having to manually retype a possibly lengthy reference list.

15.2 The `biber` and `BIBTEX` programs

The `BIBTEX` program was designed by Oren Patashnik to provide a flexible solution to the problem of automatically generating bibliography lists conforming to different layout styles. It automatically detects the citation requests in a `LATEX` document (by scanning its `.aux` file or files), selects the needed bibliographical information from one or more specified databases, and formats it according to a specified layout style. Its output is a file containing the bibliography listing as `LATEX` code that is automatically loaded and used by `LATEX` on the following run. Section 15.4 on page 409 discusses the interface between the two programs in some detail.

At the time of this book's writing `BIBTEX` was available as version 0.99d, but if you look into the second edition of this book (a decade back), you find that it already talks about version 0.99c. Version 0.99a probably dates back to 1986. In other words, the program has been kept stable for a very long period of time. As a consequence, the `BIBTEX` database format is very well established in the `LATEX` world (and in fact even far beyond), with many people having numerous citation entries collected over the

years. Thus, it comes as no surprise that all development that happened in the last decades is based on that format as a standard.

Due to its age and origins BibTeX is 7-bit, ASCII based. Although it is able to handle foreign characters, its functionality in this respect is rather limited. It can sort only ASCII characters and has trouble generating initials for non-ASCII characters. For this reason non-ASCII characters usually have to be input with macros as described on page 398. Most BibTeX styles then purify the sort key by converting some special control sequences like `\oe` to letters while ignoring all others and then removing all nonalphanumeric characters. This means that “Ælk” is sorted as `aelk`, but “Ålk”, “Älk”, and “Alk” all sort as `alk`.

This lack of support for Unicode and the sorting rules of languages different from English has led to the development of alternatives. In the rest of this section we briefly survey a variant of BibTeX and introduce the relatively new biber program.

15.2.1 bibtex8 — An 8-bit reimplementaion of BibTeX

The BibTeX8 program written by Niel Kempson and Alejandro Aguilar-Sierra is an 8-bit reimplementaion of BibTeX with the ability to specify sorting order information. This allows you to store your BibTeX database entries in an 8-bit code page and to use the `inputenc` package in your L^AT_EX document (see Sections 9.5.4 and 9.9.3).

While this is an improvement over BibTeX, the restriction to an 8-bit code page and therefore the missing support of the de facto standard encoding UTF-8 makes it nowadays useful only in isolated cases.

The BibTeX8 program offers command-line options that allow you to enlarge its internal tables. In 1995, when the first release of the program was written, standard BibTeX had only small, hardwired internal tables, making it impossible to typeset, say, a bibliography listing with several hundred citations. These days most installations use higher customizable defaults (e.g., 20000 citations in T_EX Live) so that the flexibility of BibTeX8 in this respect is seldom needed. But in case a particular job hits one of the limits and emits a message like “Sorry -- you’ve exceeded BibTeX’s...”, you can use BibTeX8 with a suitable command-line setting to get around the problem or with BibTeX edit the `texmf.cnf` configuration file to alter the default setting.

There are other extensions of the original BibTeX program, but we found none that works reliably, which is why we suggest using biber and biblatex if the basic capabilities of BibTeX or BibTeX8 are not sufficient for your needs.

15.2.2 biber — A Unicode-aware bibliography processor

In 2009 François Charette released the first version of a successor for BibTeX called biber, whose development was driven by the increasing demand of tools that support out-of-the-box Unicode, UTF-8, and various languages and scripts. In the following years biber was improved in parallel to the package biblatex, and both are now closely coupled. Using biber requires using biblatex as the bibliography package in L^AT_EX, and while biblatex still can be used with BibTeX, this is not recommended as many of its

new and sophisticated features work only with `biber`. All `biblatex` examples of this book have been processed with `biber` as the backend processor.

`biber` is written in `perl`, i.e., in a far more powerful programming language than the language used in the `.bst` style files of `BibTeX`. Among other features, `biber` deals with the full range of UTF-8 and sorts in a completely customizable manner using, when available, Unicode Common Locale Data Repository (CLDR) collation tailoring.

The `biber` program can be used in two modes: standard and tool mode. In the standard mode, which is used when you create bibliographic input for `LaTeX`, it expects as its main argument a `.bcf` control file — the extension can be omitted. The output is then a file with the same basename and the extension `.bbl`. In tool mode, which is triggered by the option `--tool`, the argument is a `.bib` file, and the result is a new `.bib` file with `_bibertool` appended to the basename. In both modes, the name of the output file can be changed with the option `--output-file`. `biber` accepts a large number of command-line options to adjust the output, which you can inspect if you call `biber` with the `--help` option or by consulting the documentation [78]. So, for example, the following converts all field names in a `.bib` file to lowercase:

```
biber --tool --output-fieldcase=lower <file>.bib
```

The next command replaces the field name `journaltitle` with `journal`:

```
biber --tool --output-field-replace=journaltitle:journal <file>.bib
```

Finally, the following can be used to nicely align the fields in the `.bib` file:

```
biber --tool --output-align <file>.bib
```

*Adaption of the
editor needed*

Most modern editors and `TeX`-workflows contain scripts, buttons, or menus to call the bibliography processor. Their settings must be changed if `biber` should be used instead of `BibTeX`. Instructions for various cases can be found on the Internet or, if the editor is already `biber`-aware, in the documentation of the editor. The settings can be checked by looking in the `.blg` file after a compilation. It contains messages of the bibliography processor, and `biber` announces itself in the first line:

```
[0] Config.pm:311> INFO - This is Biber 2.17
```

15.3 The `BibTeX` database format

As remarked on before, the bibliographic database format used by all programs was originally designed for `BibTeX` and is therefore commonly referred to as the “`BibTeX` database format”. Such a `BibTeX` database is a plain-text file with the extension `.bib` that contains bibliographical entries internally structured as key/value pairs. Two database files are shown in Figures 15.1 and 15.2 on pages 382–383 and 391. The first shows a number of typical, real-world entries, while the second has been designed to demonstrate special points in the examples. In this section we study the allowed syntax of database entries in some detail; see also [162].

When using the 7-bit application BibTeX, the file should normally be a pure ASCII file; BibTeX8 as described in Section 15.2.1 can handle also 8-bit code pages. In contrast, biber supports all file encodings — using it with the now de facto standard UTF-8 is highly recommended.

The different requirements regarding the file encoding show that the format of the BibTeX database is quite flexible. This made it possible to adapt and extend the format over time to support modern needs like new fields to store a Uniform Resource Locator (URL) and references to digital archives, but it also means that it can depend on the post-processor, on the BibTeX style, and even on document settings if a field is used and which values it expects. Most notably there are a number of differences between a database meant for a BibTeX workflow and a database meant for biblatex and biber that stem from the much more powerful abilities of the latter to handle, e.g., dates, cross references, annotated data, new fields, and Unicode. Such differences are shown in small boxes, which will also often contain tips on how to stay compatible with a BibTeX workflow in such cases.



biber/biblatex

The text in boxes such as this explain features specific to the biber/biblatex workflow and may give advice on what to do (or what not to use) when compatibility with the BibTeX workflow is required.

Each entry in a BibTeX database consists of three main parts: a *type* specifier, followed by a *key*, and finally the *data* for the entry itself. The *type* describes the general nature of the entry (e.g., whether it is an article, book, or some other publication). The *key* is used in the interface to L^AT_EX; it is the string that you have to place in the argument of a `\cite` command when referencing that particular entry. The *data* part consists of a series of *field entries* (depending on the *type*), which can have one of two forms as seen in the following generic format and example:

```
@type_specifier{key_identifier,      @book{lamport86,
  field_name_1 = "field_text_1",      author = "Leslie Lamport",
  field_name_2 = {field_text_2},      title  = "{\LaTeX{}} A Document
  . . .                               Preparation system",
  field_name_n = {field_text_n}      publisher = {Addison-Wesley},
}                                     year    = 1986
}
```

The comma is the field separator. Spaces surrounding the equal sign or the comma are ignored. Inside the text part of a field (enclosed in a pair of double quotes or a pair of braces) you can have any string of characters, but braces must be matched. The quotes or braces can be omitted for text consisting entirely of numbers (like the year field in the example above).

Note that L^AT_EX's comment character `%` is not a comment character inside `.bib` database files and even leads to parsing errors if used inside of an entry. Instead, anything outside an entry is considered a comment as long as it does not contain an `@` sign (which would be misinterpreted as the start of a new entry). Thus, to comment a field in an entry, change the name of the field to an ignored name or place it outside the entry. To exclude a full entry, remove the starting `@` sign.

Comments in the
.bib file

```

@String{ttct      = "Tools and Techniques for Computer
                    Typesetting" }

@Book{TLc94,
  author = "Michel Goossens and Frank Mittelbach
            and Alexander Samarin",
  title = "The {\LaTeX} Companion",
  publisher = "Ad{\-d}i{\-s}on-Wes{\-l}ey Longman",
  address = "Reading, MA, USA",
  pages = "xxi + 528",
  year = "1994",
  ISBN = "0-201-54199-8",
  series = ttct
}

@Book{LGC97,
  author = "Michel Goossens and Sebastian Rahtz
            and Frank Mittelbach",
  title = "The {\LaTeX} Graphics Companion:
            Illustrating Documents with {\TeX}
            and {\PostScript}",
  publisher = "Ad{\-d}i{\-s}on-Wes{\-l}ey Longman",
  address = "Reading, MA, USA",
  pages = "xxi + 554",
  year = "1997",
  ISBN = "0-201-85469-4",
  series = ttct
}

@Book{LWC99,
  author = "Michel Goossens and Sebastian Rahtz",
  title = "The {\LaTeX} {Web} companion:
            integrating {\TeX}, {\HTML},
            and {\XML}",
  publisher = "Ad{\-d}i{\-s}on-Wes{\-l}ey Longman",
  address = "Reading, MA, USA",
  pages = "xxii + 522",
  year = "1999",
  ISBN = "0-201-43311-7",
  note = "With Eitan M. Gurari and Ross Moore
            and Robert S. Sutor",
  series = ttct
}

@Book{Knuth-CT-a,
  Author = "Donald E. Knuth",
  Title = "The {\TeX}book",
  Publisher = "Ad{\-d}i{\-s}on-Wes{\-l}ey",
  Address = "Reading, MA, USA",
  Volume = "A",
  Series = "Computers and Typesetting",
  pages = "ix + 483",
  year = 1986,
  isbn = "0-201-13447-0",
}

@Article{Knuth:TB10-1-31,
  Author = "Donald E. Knuth",
  Title = "{Typesetting Concrete
            Mathematics}",
  Journal = "TUGboat",
  Volume = "10",
  Number = "1",
  Pages = "31--36",
  year = 1989,
  month = apr,
  issn = "0896-3207"
}

@Book{vLeunen:92,
  author = "Mary-Claire van Leunen",
  gender = "sf",
  title = "A handbook for scholars",
  publisher = "Oxford University Press",
  address = "Walton Street, Oxford OX2 6DP, UK",
  pages = "xi + 348",
  year = "1992"
}

@manual{GNUMake, key = {make},
  title = {{GNU Make}, A Program for Directing
            Recompilation}, organization= "Free
            Software Foundation",address = "Boston,
            Massachusetts",ISBN={1-882114-80-9},year = 2000}

@book{G-G,
  TITLE = {{Gutenberg Jahrbuch}},
  EDITOR = {Hans-Joachim Koppitz},
  PUBLISHER = {Gutenberg-Gesellschaft, Internationale
              Vereinigung f\ur Geschichte und
              Gegenwart der Druckkunst e.V.},
  ADDRESS = {Mainz, Germany},
  NOTE = {Contains results on the past and present
            history of the art of printing. Founded
            by Aloys Ruppel. Published since 1926.}
}

@periodical{jcg,
  title = {Computers and Graphics},
  year = 2011,
  issuetitle = {Semantic {3D} Media and Content},
  volume = 35,
  number = 4,
  issn = {0097-8493},
  annotation = {This is a \texttt{periodical} entry
                with an \texttt{issn} field.}}

```

Figure 15.1: Sample BibTeX database (tlc.bib)

This database (continued one the next page) is used in many examples of the book. It exhibits different conventions in individual entries (e.g., lower-, upper-, or mixed-case field names, different indentations, etc.) to show some features and problems in later examples. By applying one of the tools from Section 15.6 it could be normalized.

```

@InProceedings{MR-PQ,
  author   = "Frank Mittelbach and Chris Rowley",
  title    = "The Pursuit of Quality: How can
             Automated Typesetting achieve the
             Highest Standards of Craft
             Typography?",
  pages    = "261--273",
  crossref = "EP92"}

@InProceedings{Southall,
  Author   = "Richard Southall",
  Title    = "Presentation Rules and Rules of
             Composition in the Formatting of
             Complex Text",
  Pages    = "275--290",
  crossref = "EP92"}

@Proceedings{EP92,
  title    = "{EP92}---Proceedings of Electronic
             Publishing, '92",
  shorttitle = "{EP92}",
  editor   = "Christine Vanoirbeek and Giovanni Coray",
  publisher = "Cambridge University Press",
  address  = "Cambridge",
  year     = 1992,
  booktitle = "{EP92}---Proceedings of Electronic
             Publishing, '92"
}

@article{angenendt,
  author   = {Angenendt, Arnold},
  title    = {In Honore Salvatoris--- Vom Sinn und
             Unsinn der Patrozinienkunde},
  journaltitle = {Revue d'Histoire Ecclésiastique},
  date     = 2002,
  volume   = 97,
  pages    = {431--456, 791--823},
  langid   = {german},
  indextitle = {In Honore Salvatoris},
  shorttitle = {In Honore Salvatoris}}

@book{cicero,
  author   = {Cicero, Marcus Tullius},
  title    = {De natura deorum.
             Über das Wesen der Götter},
  date     = 1995,
  editor   = {Blank-Sangmeister, Ursula},
  translator = {Blank-Sangmeister, Ursula},
  afterword = {Thraede, Klaus},
  language = {langlatin and langgerman},
  publisher = {Reclam},
  location = {Stuttgart},
  langid   = {german},
  indextitle = {De natura deorum},
  shorttitle = {De natura deorum}}

@inbook{kant:kpv,
  title    = {Kritik der praktischen Vernunft},
  date     = 1968,
  author   = {Kant, Immanuel},
  booktitle = {Kritik der praktischen Vernunft.
             Kritik der Urtheilskraft},
  bookauthor = {Kant, Immanuel},
  maintitle = {Kants Werke. Akademie Textausgabe},

  volume   = 5,
  publisher = {Walter de Gruyter},
  location  = {Berlin},
  pages    = {1-163},
  shorthand = {KpV},
  langid   = {german},
  shorttitle = {Kritik der praktischen Vernunft}}

@commentary{palandt,
  author   = {Palandt, Otto},
  location = {München},
  publisher = {C.H. Beck},
  edition  = {79},
  isbn     = {978-3-406-73800-5},
  pagination = {paragraph},
  shorthand = {Palandt},
  title    = {Bürgerliches Gesetzbuch
             mit Nebengesetzen},
  year     = {2019}}

@BOOK{zpo,
  author   = {Adolf Baumbach and Wolfgang Lauterbach
             and Jan Albers and Peter Hartmann},
  title    = {Zivilprozeßs ordnung mit
             Gerichtsverfassungsgesetz und anderen
             Nebengesetzen},
  shorttitle = {ZPO},
  language  = {ngerman},
  edition   = {59. neubearb.},
  year      = 2002,
  address   = {M\unchen}}

@BOOK{aschur,
  author   = {Hans Brox and Wolf-Dietrich Walker},
  title    = {Allgemeines Schuldrecht},
  language = {ngerman},
  edition  = {29.},
  year     = 2003,
  address   = {M\unchen}}

@BOOK{bschur,
  author   = {Hans Brox and Wolf-Dietrich Walker},
  title    = {Besonderes Schuldrecht},
  shorttitle = {BSchuR},
  language  = {ngerman},
  edition   = {27.},
  year      = 2002,
  address   = {M\unchen}}

@BOOK{bgb,
  author   = {Otto Palandt},
  shortauthor = {Otto Palandt},
  title    = {B\urgerliches Gesetzbuch},
  shorttitle = {BGB},
  language  = {ngerman},
  edition   = {62.},
  year      = 2003,
  publisher = {Beck Juristischer Verlag},
  address   = {M\unchen}}

```

biber/biblatex

biber recognizes L^AT_EX's comment character %, and it is possible to exclude entries with it. Like B_BT_EX it ignores text in the .bib file, which does not belong to an entry, but it reports such text as junk characters in the .blg file (the log file of B_BT_EX and biber) unless the lines start like in a T_EX file with a percent char.

The `key_identifier` can be freely chosen but should use only ASCII characters and should not contain a space or any one of the characters " # % , = { } ~ \.

B_BT_EX *ignores* the case of the letters for the entry type, key, and field names. You must, however, be careful with the key. L^AT_EX honors the case of the keys specified as the argument of a \cite command, so the key for a given bibliographic entry must match the one specified in the L^AT_EX file (see Section 16.2.1).

biber/biblatex

With biber the key of the entry should not contain a space or any one of the characters " # % , = { } ' () ~ \. Most important, that means that a key `author(1998)`, which is allowed with B_BT_EX, is not recognized correctly with biber. Keys can contain non-ASCII chars, so `Sträßer.2010` is allowed, but it should be used only if compatibility with B_BT_EX is not needed and if the .tex and .bib files use matching file encodings — at best UTF-8.

Various schemes exist for conveniently associating bibliography keywords with their entries in a database. A popular one is the so-called Harvard system, where you take the author's surname (converted to lowercase) and the year of publication and combine them using a colon (e.g., `smith:1987`).

15.3.1 Entry types and fields

As discussed above, you must describe each bibliographic entry as belonging to a certain type, with the information itself tagged by certain fields.

The first thing you have to decide is what type of entry you are dealing with. Although no fixed classification scheme can be complete, with a little creativity you can make B_BT_EX cope reasonably well with even the more bizarre types of publications. For nonstandard types, it is probably wise not to attach too much importance to B_BT_EX's or biber's warning messages (see below).

Most B_BT_EX styles have at least the 13 standard entry types, which are shown in Table 15.1 on page 386.

These different types of publications demand different kinds of information; a reference to a journal article might include the volume and number of the journal, which is usually not meaningful for a book. Therefore, different database types have different fields. In fact, for each type of entry, the fields are divided into three classes:

Required Omission of the field produces a warning message and, possibly, a badly formatted bibliography entry. If the required information is not meaningful, you

are most likely using the wrong entry type. If it is meaningful but, say, already included in some other field, ignore the warning, but check that the typeset entry is not mangled.

Optional The field's information is used if present, but you can omit it without causing formatting problems. Include the optional field if it can help the reader.

Ignored The field is ignored. BibTeX ignores any field that is not required or optional, so you can include any fields in a .bib file entry. It is a good idea to put all relevant information about a reference in its .bib file entry, even information that may never appear in the bibliography. For example, the abstract of a paper can be entered into an abstract field in its .bib file entry. The .bib file is probably as good a place as any for the abstract, and there exist bibliography styles for printing selected abstracts (see the abstract bibliography style mentioned in Table 15.7 on page 420).

biber/biblatex

With biber the abstract field is not ignored. This can lead to errors in the L^AT_EX compilation if this field has been used in the past to record data that were not expected to be typeset, e.g., contains hashes, #, or a percent characters, %.

Either such special characters should be correctly escaped or the processing of the field should be suppressed with a source map as described in Example 15-3-5 on page 408.

Table 15.1 on the following page describes the standard entry types, along with their required and optional fields, as used by the standard bibliography styles. The fields within each class (required or optional) are listed in the typical order of occurrence in the output. A few entry types, however, may perturb the alphabetic ordering slightly, depending on which fields are missing. The meaning of the individual fields is explained in Tables 15.3/4 on pages 388–389. Nonstandard bibliography styles may ignore some optional fields or use additional ones like isbn when creating the reference (see also the examples starting on page 419). Remember that, when used in a .bib file, the entry-type name is preceded by an @ character.

biber/biblatex

Table 15.2 on page 387 shows which additional standard entry types are supported by biblatex along with their required fields. The list of optional fields supported by each type is not shown because it is much longer than in a typical BibTeX style: all entry types for example support fields for various electronic identifiers, fields to change sorting, date fields, and generic fields. So only some important new fields are described below, but for the full list the biblatex documentation should be consulted. The file blx-dm.def, which is part of the biblatex package, contains the declaration of the default entry types, the fields they support, and the constraints on these fields and so can be consulted for details.

article	An article from a journal or magazine. <i>Required:</i> author, title, journal, year. <i>Optional:</i> volume, number, pages, month, note.
book	A book with an explicit publisher. <i>Required:</i> author or editor, title, publisher, year. <i>Optional:</i> volume or number, series, address, edition, month, note.
booklet	A work that is printed and bound, but without a named publisher or sponsoring institution. <i>Required:</i> title. <i>Optional:</i> author, howpublished, address, month, year, note.
inbook	A part of a book, e.g., a chapter, section, or whatever and/or a range of pages. [biber/biblatex difference: Use the type only for a self-contained part with its own title.] <i>Required:</i> author or editor, title, chapter and/or pages, publisher, year. <i>Optional:</i> volume or number, series, type, address, edition, month, note.
incollection	A part of a book having its own title. <i>Required:</i> author, title, booktitle, publisher, year. <i>Optional:</i> editor, volume or number, series, type, chapter, pages, address, edition, month, note.
inproceedings	An article in a conference proceedings. <i>Required:</i> author, title, booktitle, year. <i>Optional:</i> editor, volume or number, series, pages, address, month, organization, publisher, note.
manual	Technical documentation. <i>Required:</i> title. <i>Optional:</i> author, organization, address, edition, month, year, note.
mastersthesis	A master's thesis. [biber/biblatex difference: The type is provided as an alias of the new type thesis.] <i>Required:</i> author, title, school, year. <i>Optional:</i> type, address, month, note.
misc	Use this type when nothing else fits. A warning is issued if all optional fields are empty (i.e., the entire entry is empty or has only ignored fields). <i>Required:</i> none. <i>Optional:</i> author, title, howpublished, month, year, note.
phdthesis	A Ph.D. thesis. [biber/biblatex difference: The type is provided as an alias of the new type thesis.] <i>Required:</i> author, title, school, year. <i>Optional:</i> type, address, month, note.
proceedings	Conference proceedings. <i>Required:</i> title, year. <i>Optional:</i> editor, volume or number, series, address, publisher, note, month, organization.
techreport	A report published by a school or other institution, usually numbered within a series. [biber/biblatex difference: The type is provided as an alias of the new type report.] <i>Required:</i> author, title, institution, year. <i>Optional:</i> type, number, address, month, note.
unpublished	A document having an author and title, but not formally published. <i>Required:</i> author, title, note. <i>Optional:</i> month, year.

Table 15.1: BiBTeX's entry types as defined in most styles

<code>bookinbook</code>	This type is similar to <code>inbook</code> but intended for works originally published as a stand-alone book. A typical example is a book reprinted in the collected works of an author.
<code>collection</code>	A single-volume collection with multiple, self-contained contributions by distinct authors that have their own title. <i>Required:</i> <code>editor</code> , <code>title</code> , <code>year/date</code> .
<code>dataset</code>	A data set or a similar collection of (mostly) raw data. <i>Required:</i> <code>author/editor</code> , <code>title</code> , <code>year/date</code> .
<code>mvbook</code> <code>mvcollection</code> <code>mvproceedings</code> <code>mvreference</code>	Multivolume variants of the entry types.
<code>online</code>	This entry type is intended for sources such as websites, which are intrinsically online resources. <i>Required:</i> <code>doi/eprint/url</code> , <code>year/date/urldate</code> .
<code>patent</code>	A patent or patent request. <i>Required:</i> <code>author</code> , <code>title</code> , <code>number</code> , <code>year/date</code> .
<code>periodical</code>	A complete issue of a periodical, such as a special issue of a journal. <i>Required:</i> <code>editor</code> , <code>title</code> , <code>year/date</code> .
<code>reference</code>	A single-volume work of reference such as an encyclopedia or a dictionary, handled quite similar to <code>collection</code> .
<code>report</code>	A technical report, research report, or white paper published by a university. <i>Required:</i> <code>author</code> , <code>title</code> , <code>type</code> , <code>institution</code> , <code>year/date</code> .
<code>set</code>	An “entry set”. This is a group of entries that are cited as a single reference and listed as a single item in the bibliography.
<code>software</code>	Computer software. The standard styles treat this entry type as an alias for <code>@misc</code> .
<code>suppbook</code> <code>suppcollection</code> <code>suppperiodical</code>	Supplemental material like a preface.
<code>thesis</code>	A thesis written for an educational institution to satisfy the requirements for a degree. <i>Required:</i> <code>author</code> , <code>title</code> , <code>type</code> , <code>institution</code> , <code>year/date</code> .
<code>xdata</code>	This entry type is special. <code>xdata</code> entries hold data that may be inherited by other entries using the <code>xdata</code> field.

Table 15.2: Additional standard entry types provided by biblatex

Most BibTeX style files sort the bibliographical entries. This is done by internally generating a sort key from the author’s/editor’s name, the date of the publication, the title, and other information. Entries with identical sort keys appear in citation order.

*Sorting of
entries*

The author information is usually the `author` field, but some styles use the `editor` or `organization` field. In addition to the fields listed in Table 15.1, each entry type has an optional `key` field, used in some styles for alphabetizing, for cross-referencing, or for forming a `\bibitem` label. You should therefore include a key

address	Usually the address of the publisher or other institution. For major publishing houses, just give the city. For small publishers, specifying the complete address might help the reader. [biber/biblatex difference: location should be used instead, but address is provided as an alias.]
annote	An annotation. Not used by the standard bibliography styles, but used by others that produce an annotated bibliography (e.g., <code>annote</code>). The field starts a new sentence, and hence the first word should be capitalized. [biber/biblatex difference: annotation should be used instead, but annote is provided as an alias.]
author	The name(s) of the author(s), in BibTeX name format (Section 15.3.3).
booktitle	Title of a book, part of which is being cited (Section 15.3.3). For book entries use the <code>title</code> field.
chapter	A chapter (or section or whatever) number.
crossref	The database key of the entry being cross-referenced (Section 15.3.7).
edition	The edition of a book (e.g., “Second”). This should be an ordinal and should have the first letter capitalized, as shown above; the standard styles convert to lowercase when necessary. [biber/biblatex difference: This must be a number, not an ordinal.]
editor	Name(s) of editor(s), in BibTeX name format. If there is also an <code>author</code> field, then the <code>editor</code> field gives the editor of the book or collection in which the reference appears.
howpublished	How something strange has been published.
institution	Institution sponsoring a technical report.
journal	Journal name. Abbreviations are provided for many journals (Section 15.3.4). [biber/biblatex difference: journaltitle should be used instead, but journal is provided as an alias.]
key	Used for alphabetizing and creating a label when the <code>author</code> and <code>editor</code> information is missing. This field should not be confused with the key that appears in the <code>\cite</code> command and at the beginning of the database entry. [biber/biblatex difference: sortkey should be used instead, but key is provided as an alias. biblatex offers additional fields like sortname and sorttitle for finer control.]

Table 15.3: BibTeX’s standard entry fields (A–K)

field for any entry whose author information is missing. Depending on the style, the `key` field can also be used to overwrite the automatically generated internal key for sorting.¹ A situation where a `key` field is useful is the following:

```
organization = "The Association for Computing Machinery",
key = "ACM"
```

Without the `key` field, the `alpha` style would construct a label from the first three letters of the information in the `organization` field. Although the style file strips off the article “The”, you would still get a rather uninformative label like “[Ass86]”.

¹ Some BibTeX styles (e.g., `jurabib`) use the `sortkey` field instead.

month	The month in which the work was published or, for an unpublished work, in which it was written. For reasons of consistency the standard three-letter abbreviations (<code>jan</code> , <code>feb</code> , <code>mar</code> , etc.) should be used (Section 15.3.4). [biber/biblatex difference: This must be a number. It is also recommended to use the <code>date</code> field instead.]
note	Any additional information that can help the reader.
number	The number of a journal, magazine, technical report, or work in a series. An issue of a journal or magazine is usually identified by its volume and number; a technical report normally has a number; and sometimes books in a named series carry numbers.
organization	The organization that sponsors a conference or that publishes a manual.
pages	One or more page numbers or range of numbers (e.g., 42--111 or 7,41,73--97 or 43+, where the '+' indicates pages that do not form a simple range). [biber/biblatex difference: The 42+ syntax is not known.]
publisher	The publisher's name.
school	The name of the school where the thesis was written.
series	The name of a series or set of books. When citing an entire book, the <code>title</code> field gives its title, and an optional <code>series</code> field gives the name of a series or multivolume set in which the book is published.
title	The work's title, typed as explained in Section 15.3.3.
type	The type of a technical report (e.g., "Research Note"). This name is used instead of the default "Technical Report". For the entry type <code>phdthesis</code> you could use the term "Ph.D. dissertation" by specifying <code>type = "{Ph.D.} dissertation"</code> . Similarly, for the <code>inbook</code> and <code>incollection</code> entry types you can get "section 1.2" instead of the default "chapter 1.2" with <code>chapter = "1.2"</code> and <code>type = "Section"</code> .
volume	The volume of a journal or multivolume book.
year	The year of publication or, for an unpublished work, the year it was written. Generally, it should consist of four numerals, such as 1984, although the standard styles can handle any year whose last four nonpunctuation characters are numerals, such as "about 1984". [biber/biblatex difference: This must be a number; using the <code>date</code> field instead is recommended.]

Table 15.4: BibTeX's standard entry fields (L–Z)

Using the `key` field yields a more acceptable "[ACM86]".

biber/biblatex

The "main" sort key is called `sortkey`, and the alias key is available too. It is complemented by the fields `sortname`, `sortyear`, `sorttitle`, and `sortshorthand`, which give finer control over the sorting process.

Different from BibTeX, `sortkey` and its alias key are never used as a fallback to create a label. Depending on the use case, one of the fields `shortauthor`, `shorteditor`, or `label` should be used for this purpose.

We now turn our attention to the fields recognized by the standard bibliography styles. These "standard" fields are shown in Tables 15.3/4 on pages 388–389. Other

fields, like `abstract`, can be required if you use one of the extended nonstandard styles shown in Tables 15.7–10 on pages 420–424. Because unknown fields are ignored by the \LaTeX styles, you can use this feature to include “comments” inside an entry: it is enough to put the information to be ignored inside braces following a field name (and `=` sign) that is not recognized by the \LaTeX style.

As with the names of the entry types in Table 15.1 on page 386, the names of the fields should be interpreted in their widest sense to make them applicable in a maximum number of situations. And you should never forget that a judicious use of the `note` field can solve even the more complicated cases.

15.3.2 Additional fields

A number of fields are not supported by the standard \LaTeX styles but are of such general use that it is typically recommended to add them to the `.bib` file and if possible to use a \LaTeX style that knows these fields.

*URL and other
electronic identifiers*

\LaTeX and its standard styles were developed when the Internet was in its infancy and so do not support fields for URL, DOI, eprint, and similar data. When using these styles, such data have to be entered in the `note` or `howpublished` field. While this was a workable solution fifteen years ago when one could still write that references to electronic resources have become “more and more common”, it is in today’s world often not compatible with modern journal styles that expect that dedicated fields are used. It is therefore normally preferable to use the `url`, `doi`, and `eprint` fields for such data. Variants of the standard styles supporting these fields are for example provided by the package `urlbst` from Norman Gray or by `babelbib` from Harald Harders. Styles with an `url` field can also be created with `custom-bib`.

If the URL should be used for a clickable link, it should be correctly percent encoded. References pointing to an online resource typically should also contain the date when this resource was accessed. The predominant field names for this are `urldate` and `lastchecked`.

biber/biblatex

`biber` and `biblatex` provide a full set of fields in this area: `doi`, `eid`, `eprint`, `eprintclass`, `eprinttype`, `isan`, `isbn`, `ismn`, `isrn`, `issn`, `iswc`, `url`, and `urldate`.

The `eprint`, `eprintclass`, and `eprinttype` fields, for example, can be used to replace longish URLs in a bibliography for a large number of known resources like `arXiv`, `jstor`, or `pubmed`:

```
eprint      = {cs/0011047v1},
eprintclass = {cs.DS},
eprinttype  = {arxiv}
```

This typesets “arXiv: cs/0011047v1 [cs.DS]”, and — if `hyperref` is loaded — hyperlinks it to <https://arxiv.org/abs/cs/0011047v1>.

It is possible to store URLs with non-ASCII characters and spaces. `biber` converts such URLs into the percent-encoded representation needed for a

```

@misc{smith, author = {Smith, Joe}, year = {2020}}
@misc{kirk1, author = {Kirk, Joe}, year = {2020}}
@misc{kirk2, author = {Kirk, Betty}, year = {2020}}
@misc{pyne1, author = {Pyne, Joe}, year = {2020}}
@misc{pyne2, author = {Pyne, Jill}, year = {2020}}
@misc{doe1, author = {Doe, Joe}, year = {2020}}
@misc{doe2, author = {Doe, Betty}, year = {2019}}
@misc{webb1, author = {Webb, Max}, year = {2020}}
@misc{webb2, author = {Webb, Max}, year = {2020}}

@misc{list0, author = {Smith, Joe and Webb, Maria},
      year = {2020}}
@misc{list1, author = {Pyne, Henry and Doe, Maria},
      year = {2020}}
@misc{list2, author = {Pyne, Joe and Kirk, Maria},
      year = {2020}}
@misc{list3, author = {Pyne, Joe and Webb, Maria},
      year = {2020}}
@misc{list4, author = {Pyne, Joe and Webb, Maria},
      year = {2020}}
@misc{list5, author = {Kirk, Jill and Webb, Maria},
      year = {2020}}

@article{article1, author = {Doe, Jill},
  journaltitle = {Journal A}, title = {An article},
  year = {2015}}
@article{article2, author = {Pyne, Mike},
  journaltitle = {Journal B},
  keywords = {important,research},
  title = {An important article}, year = {2020}}
@article{article3, author = {Webb, Henry},
  journaltitle = {Journal C}, title = {An article},
  year = {2010}}

@book{book1, author = {Pyne, Mike},
  title = {A book}, year = {2020}}
@book{book2, author = {Kirk, Maria},
  keywords = {important}, title = {An important book},
  year = {2020}}

@book{smith2020-2, author = {Smith, Maria},
  title = {A book}, year = {2020}}
@book{smith2020-1, author = {Smith, Maria},
  title = {Another book}, year = {2020}}

@book{jane-1, author = {Doe, Jane}, gender = {sf},
  title = {A book}, year = {2020}}
@book{jane-2, author = {Doe, Jane}, gender = {sf},
  title = {A second book}, year = {2020}}

@book{max-1, author = {Pyne, Max}, gender = {sm},
  title = {A book}, year = {2020}}
@book{max-2, author = {Pyne, Max}, gender = {sm},
  title = {A second book}, year = {2020}}

@misc{prefix-biber,
  author = {family=Cruz,given=Maria,prefix=De La},
  title = {Uppercase prefixes (extended biber syntax)},
  year = {2020}}
@misc{apostroph-biber, author = {d' Ormesson, Jean},
  title = {Apostroph (only biber)}, year = {2020}}

@misc{label-biber,
  author = {de la Cierva y Codorniu, Juan},
  label = {CC}, title = {Forcing a label (only biber)},
  year = {2020}}
@misc{prefix-both, author = {{D}e {L}a Cruz, Maria},
  label = {Cru}, title = {Uppercase prefixes},
  year = {2010}}
@misc{apostroph-both,
  author = {d'\relax Ormesson, Jean},
  title = {Apostroph}, year = {2010}}
@misc{label-bibtex,
  author = {de la {Cierva y} Codorniu, Juan},
  title = {Forcing a label (only {\BibTeX})},
  year = {2010}}

@online{url:a,
  author = {White, Maria and Green, Julia},
  language = {french}, url = {https://some.url},
  urldate = {2021-09-01}}
@online{url:b,
  author = {White, Maria and Green, Julia},
  language = {english}, url = {https://some.url},
  urldate = {2021-09-01}}
@online{url:c,
  author = {Joe Smith and Henry Webb},
  language = {french and spanish}, langid = {french},
  url = {https://some.url}, urldate = {2021-09-01}}
@online{url:d,
  author = {Joe Smith and Henry Webb},
  language = {spanish with some translations},
  langid = {spanish},
  url = {https://some.url}, urldate = {2021-09-01}}
@online{url:e,
  author = {Joe Smith and Henry Webb},
  language = {english}, langid = {english},
  url = {https://some.url}, urldate = {2021-09-01}}

@unpublished{test97,
  author = {Goossens, Michel and User, Ben
    and Doe, Joe and others},
  note = {Submitted to the IBM J.-Res.-Dev.},
  title = {Ambiguous citations}, year = {1997}}
@misc{oddity,
  howpublished = {Quarterly published.},
  title = {{{TUGboat} The Communications
    of the {\TeX} User Group}},
  year = {1980ff}}
@misc{pagination,
  pagination = {section},
  title = {test pagination}}
@article{sourcemap-test,
  author-biblatex = {Smith,Betty},
  author = {Doe,Charles},
  abstract = {About % and # chars}}
@book{location-list,
  author = {Webb, Maria},
  title = {Sämtliche Werke},
  date = 1988,
  location = {München and Berlin and New York}}

```

Figure 15.2: A second sample BibTeX database (tlc-ex.bib)

This database contains various short, fictitious entries to produce concise examples.

correct link. If the URL is already percent encoded, it is left unchanged, so normally there should be no conflict with input meant for BibTeX.

biber requires that the date in `urldate` is in ISO 8601-2 format. If this is not possible, the ISO-date can be put in another field, and when using biblatex, a source map can be used to map this field to `urldate`:

```
\DeclareSourcecmap{
  \maps{\map[overwrite]{\step[fieldsource=urllisodate,
                                fieldtarget=urldate,final]}}
```

More details about entering dates in such fields are given on page 400.

Language support

A second type of field is related to the language of an entry. The styles from the `babelbib` package, for example, offer here the field `language`. If set to a name known by `babel`, it adapts generated text of an entry to that language. The following example shows the output of two entries of `tlc-ex.bib` from Figure 15.2 that differ only in the `language` setting: the first uses `french` and the second `english`.

Références

- [1] White, Maria et Julia Green. `https://some.url`, visité le 2021-09-01.
- [2] White, Maria and Julia Green. `https://some.url`, visited on 2021-09-01.

```
\usepackage[english,french]{babel}
\usepackage{babelbib}
\usepackage{hyperref}

\bibliographystyle{babplain}
\nocite{url:a,url:b}
\bibliography{tlc-ex}
```

15-3-1

biber/biblatex

biblatex declares the fields `langid` and `language`:

langid This field declares the language rules to use when typesetting the entry in the bibliography. Depending on the setting of the package option `autolang` (which takes the values `none`, `hyphen`, `other`, and `other*`), it does nothing, changes only the hyphenation, or switches to the language by using the corresponding `babel` environments. It has a comparable purpose to the `language` field of `babelbib`, and a source map should be used to map `language` to `langid` if needed.

language This field takes a list of languages separated by the `and` delimiter describing the languages of the work. The languages can be given literally or as a “localization key” — strings that represent a term, which can be translated with the localization commands of `biblatex`.

Example 15-3-2 shows for three entries how `biblatex` handles the `language` and `langid` settings. It uses again entries that differ only in these fields:

```
language = {french and spanish},          langid = {french} %url:c
```

```
language = {spanish with some translations},langid ={spanish} %url:d
language = {english}, langid ={english} %url:e
```

Note in the example how the value `other` for the `autolang` option triggered the translation of various words in the Spanish and French entries and that the French entry uses French typographical rules like the space before the colon. The text “spanish with some translations” in the second entry is not translated and not capitalized as it is not a known localization key. Note also that the English entry does not show the language because it is identical to the main language of the document.

References

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>[1] Joe SMITH et Henry WEBB. Français et espagnol. URL : <code>https://some.url</code> (visité le 01/09/2021).</p> <p>[2] Joe Smith y Henry Webb. spanish with some translations. URL: <code>https://some.url</code> (visitado 01-09-2021).</p> <p>[3] Joe Smith and Henry Webb. URL: <code>https://some.url</code> (visited on 09/01/2021).</p> | <pre>\usepackage[french,spanish, english]{babel} \usepackage[autolang=other] {biblatex} \addbibresource{t1c-ex.bib} \usepackage{hyperref} \nocite{url:c,url:d,url:e} \printbibliography</pre> |
|---|---|

15-3-2

15.3.3 The text part of a field explained

The text part of a field in a BibTeX entry is enclosed in a pair of double quotes or braces. Part of the text itself is said to be *enclosed in braces* if it lies inside a matching pair of braces other than the ones enclosing the entire entry.

The field types have quite varied requirements regarding the parsing of the text, but for BibTeX no formal description of the data types exists. Most rules are given only implicitly through the existing BibTeX styles and the functions they implement.

biber/biblatex

With biber this is different: all fields have a declared and documented data type. There are three main data types:

Name lists are split up into individual items at the “and” delimiter. Each item in the list is then dissected into the name part components. Examples of name list fields are the author or the editor field. Most rules for the formatting and the parsing of names have been inherited from BibTeX. More details are given below.

Literal lists are also split up at the “and” delimiter but unlike names not dissected further. Examples are the location, the publisher, and the language field. The splitting of these texts into list elements allows localization of parts as has been shown above for languages, but it allows also localization and formatting of conjunctions: New York and London can be converted to “New York & London” or “New York et London” or ...

Fields are usually printed as a whole. There are several subtypes like integers, dates, or URLs.

The structure of a name

The `author` and `editor` fields contain a list of names. The exact format in which these names are typeset is decided by the bibliography style. The entry in the database tells BibTeX what the name is. You should always type names exactly as they appear in the cited work, even when they have slightly different forms in two works. For example:

```
author = "Donald E. Knuth"           author = "D. E. Knuth"
```

If you are sure that both authors are the same person, then you could list both in the form that the author prefers (say, Donald E. Knuth), but you should always indicate (e.g., in our second case) that the original publication had a different form.

```
author = "D[onald] E. Knuth"
```

BibTeX alphabetizes this as if the brackets were not there so that no ambiguity arises as to the identity of the author.

biber/biblatex

biber does not automatically ignore brackets, but it can be instructed to do so (and other character in names) either in a configuration file in XML notation

```
<nonamestring>
  <option name="author" value="[]" />
</nonamestring>
```

or in the document with the `\DeclareNonamestring` command:

```
\DeclareNonamestring{%
  % strip square brackets
  \nonamestring{author}{\regex{[[]\[]}}}
```

The interface supports Perl regular expressions¹ in various places; for details see the biber documentation.

Most names can be entered in the following two equivalent forms:

```
"John Chris Smith"           "Smith, John Chris"
"Thomas von Neumann"         "von Neumann, Thomas"
```

The second form, with a comma, should always be used for people who have multiple last names that are capitalized. For example,

```
"Parra Benavides, Miguel"
```

If you enter "Miguel Parra Benavides", BibTeX interprets Parra as the middle name, which is wrong in this case. When the other parts are not capitalized, no such problem occurs (e.g., "Johann von Bergen" or "Pierre de la Porte").

¹See, for example, <https://perldoc.perl.org/perlre>.

If several words of a name have to be grouped, they should be enclosed in braces. BibTeX treats everything inside braces as a single name, as shown below:

```
"{Boss and Friends, Inc.} and {Snoozy and Boys, Ltd.}"
```

In this case, Inc. and Ltd. are not mistakenly considered as first names.

In general, BibTeX names can have four distinct parts, denoted as *First*, *von*, *Last*, and *Jr.* Each part consists of a list of name tokens, and any list but *Last* can be empty. Thus, the two entries below are different:

```
"von der Schmidt, Alex"           "{von der Schmidt}, Alex"
```

The first has *von*, *Last*, and *First* parts, while the second has only *First* and *Last* parts (von der Schmidt), resulting possibly in a different sorting order.

A “Junior” part can pose a special problem. Most people with “Jr.” in their name precede it with a comma, thus entering it as follows:

```
"Smith, Jr., Robert"
```

Certain people do not use the comma, and these cases are handled by considering the “Jr.” as part of the last name:

```
"{Lincoln Jr.}, John P."           "John P. {Lincoln Jr.}"
```

Recall that in the case of “Miguel Parra Benavides”, you should specify

```
"Parra Benavides, Miguel"
```

The *First* part of his name has the single token “Miguel”; the *Last* part has two tokens, “Parra” and “Benavides”; and the *von* and *Jr* parts are empty.

A complex example is

```
"Johannes Martinus Albertus van de Groene Heide"
```

This name has three tokens in the *First* part, two in the *von* part, and two in the *Last* part. BibTeX knows where one part ends and the other begins because the tokens in the *von* part begin with lowercase letters (van de in this example).

In general, *von* tokens have the first letter at brace-level 0 in lowercase. Technically speaking, everything in a “special character” is at brace-level 0 (see page 398), so you can decide how BibTeX treats a token by inserting a dummy special character whose first letter past the TeX control sequence is in the desired case, upper or lower. For example, in

```
Maria {\MakeUppercase{d}e La} Cruz
```

BibTeX takes the uppercase “De La” as the *von* part, because the first character following the control sequence is lowercase. With the *abbrv* style you get the correct abbreviation M. De La Cruz, instead of the incorrect M. D. L. Cruz if you did not use this trick.

BB_TE_X handles hyphenated names correctly. For example, an entry like

```
author = "Maria-Victoria Delgrande",
```

with the `abbrv` style results in “M.-V. Delgrande”.

When multiple authors are present, their names should be separated with the word “and”, where the “and” must not be enclosed in braces.

```
author = "Frank Mittelbach and Rowley, Chris"
editor = "{Lion and Noble, Ltd.}"
```

There are two authors, Frank Mittelbach and Chris Rowley, but only one editor, because the “and” is enclosed in braces. If the number of authors or editors is too large to be typed *in extenso*, then the list of names can be ended with the string “and_others”, which is converted by the standard styles into the familiar “*et al.*”

To summarize, you can specify names in BB_TE_X using three possible forms (the double quotes and braces can be used in all cases):

"First von Last"	e.g., {Johan van der Winden}
"von Last, First"	e.g., "von der Schmidt, Alexander"
"von Last, Jr, First"	e.g., {de la Porte, Fils, {\`Emile}}

The first form can almost always be used. It is, however, not suitable when there is a *Jr* part or when the *Last* part has multiple tokens and there is no *von* part.

biber/biblatex

The name parts *First*, *von*, *Last*, and *Jr* are called *given*, *prefix*, *family*, and *suffix* both in templates and command names. Initials are indicated by attaching an *i*, e.g., *given-i* or `\namepartgiveni`.

`biber` can process names given in key/value syntax. In this syntax the name Maria De La Cruz can be entered without the `\MakeUpperCase` trick:

```
author={family=Cruz,given=Maria,prefix=De La}
```

It is possible to declare keys for additional name parts and special name templates and to print names using other rules than Western names. The file `93-nameparts.tex` in the example suite of `biblatex` contains the details; here we show only two name types that can be used with this system once it has been properly set up. The `cjk` template ensures that the name of the first author is typeset as Li Wei or Li, while the `ethiopian` template prints the second author as Kebede Daniel or — if needed to make the name unique — as Kebede Daniel Demeke.

```
author = {family=Li, given=Wei, nametemplates=cjk},
author = {given=Kebede, patronymic=Daniel, papponymic=Demeke,
          nametemplates=ethiopian},
```

Names not using the extended syntax are parsed by biber quite similarly to BibTeX. However, some tricks described in *Tame the Beast* [124] to get longer initials, to improve labels in alphabetic styles, and to handle special prefixes and name parts can be problematic. As an example, to get a initial consisting of two letters you can with BibTeX use

```
author={Loe,{\relax Ch}arles}
```

This does not work with biber — the extended syntax is required instead:

```
author={family=Loe,given=Charles,given-i={Ch}}
```

Other tricks do not harm but are unnecessary. As a rule of thumb, names with unusual initials or prefixes are input at best with the extended name syntax. Special labels for alphabetic styles can be set with the `label` field.

The next two examples use again some bibliography entries from the sample database in Figure 15.2 on page 391 to demonstrate different input options. The first shows the result when using the BibTeX workflow. As you can see, BibTeX is unable to handle any of the biber-specific input conventions correctly and produces strange labels (third list entry) or badly formatted output (entries five and six):

References

- [DLC10] Maria De La Cruz. Uppercase prefixes, 2010.
- [dlCC10] Juan de la Cierva y Codorníu. Forcing a label (only BibTeX), 2010.
- [dlCyC20] Juan de la Cierva y Codorníu. Forcing a label (only biber), 2020.
- [dO10] Jean d’Ormesson. Apostroph, 2010.
- [dO20] Jean d’Ormesson. Apostroph (only biber), 2020.
- [fam20] prefix=De La family=Cruz, given=Maria. Uppercase prefixes (extended biber syntax), 2020.

```
\nocite{prefix-both,
  label-bibtex,apostroph-both}

% bad output (entries 3,5 & 6)
\nocite{prefix-biber,
  label-biber,apostroph-biber}
\bibliographystyle{alpha}
\footnotesize
\bibliography{tlc-ex}
```

In contrast biber and biblatex do a good job on all syntax variants as shown in the second example. Note that the BibTeX style `alpha` creates labels that use the *von* part, while biblatex ignores it by default, resulting in more readable labels:

References

- [CC20] Juan de la Cierva y Codorníu. *Forcing a label (only biber)*. 2020.
- [Cie10] Juan de la Cierva y Codorníu. *Forcing a label (only BibTeX)*. 2010.
- [Cru10] Maria De La Cruz. *Uppercase prefixes*. 2010.
- [Cru20] Maria De La Cruz. *Uppercase prefixes (extended biber syntax)*. 2020.
- [Orm10] Jean d’Ormesson. *Apostroph*. 2010.
- [Orm20] Jean d’Ormesson. *Apostroph (only biber)*. 2020.

```
\usepackage[style=alphabetic]
{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib}

\nocite{prefix-both,
  label-bibtex,apostroph-both}
\nocite{prefix-biber,
  label-biber,apostroph-biber}
\AtNextBibliography
{\footnotesize}
\printbibliography
```

15-3-3

15-3-4

The format of the title

The bibliography style decides whether a title is capitalized. Usually, titles of books are capitalized, but those for articles are not. A title should always be typed as it appears in the original work. For example:

```
TITLE = "A Manual of Style"
TITLE = "Hyphenation patterns for ancient Greek and Latin"
```

Different languages and styles have their own capitalization rules. If you want to override the decisions of the bibliography style, then you should enclose the parts that should remain unchanged inside braces. Note that this is not sufficient when the first character after the left brace is a backslash (see below). It is usually best to enclose whole words in braces, because otherwise \LaTeX may lose kerning or ligatures when typesetting the word. In the following example, the first version is preferable over the second:

```
TITLE = "The Towns and Villages of {Belgium}"
TITLE = "The Towns and Villages of {B}elgium"
```

biber/biblatex

Capitalization or “sentence casing” is not done by the biber preprocessor, but during the \LaTeX compilation, and will be discussed in more detail when we describe the biblatex package in Chapter 16.

As with \BibTeX , words can be excluded from sentence casing by enclosing them in braces. Arguments of commands are protected too. To *undo* this protection to enable sentence casing in arguments or parts thereof, you have to use another pair of braces, e.g.,

```
title={a Story of \emph{Green} and {\emph{Blue}} {Ducks}}
```

Here “Green” and “Ducks” are protected from sentence casing, while the protection for “Blue” has been undone. The output if sentence casing is applied will be “A story of *Green* and *blue* Ducks”.

Accented and special characters

\BibTeX accepts accented characters. If you have an entry with two fields

```
author = "Kurt G{\"o}del", year = 1931,
```

then the alpha bibliography style yields the label [Göd31], which is probably what you want. As shown in the example above, the entire accented character must be placed in braces; in this case either $\{"o\}$ or $\{"{o}\}$ will work. These braces must not themselves be enclosed in braces (other than the ones that might delimit the entire field or the entire entry); also, a backslash must be the very first character inside the braces. Thus, neither $\{G\{"{o}\}\del\}$ nor $\{G\{"{o}\}\del\}$ works here.

This feature handles accented characters and foreign symbols used with \LaTeX . It also allows user-defined “accents”. For the purposes of counting letters in labels, \BibTeX

considers everything inside the braces to be a single letter. To BibTeX, an accented character is a special case of a “special character”, which consists of everything from a left brace at the topmost level, immediately followed by a backslash, up through the matching right brace. For example, the field

```
author = "\OE{le} {\'}{E}mile} {Ren\'}{e}} van R{\i{j}den"
```

has two special characters: “{\'}{E}mile}” and “{\i{j}”.

In general, BibTeX does not process TeX or LaTeX control sequences inside a special character, but it processes other characters. Thus, a style that converts all titles to lowercase transforms

“The {\TeX BOOK\NOOP} Saga” into “The {\TeX book\NOOP} saga”

The article “The” remains capitalized because it is the first word in the title.

The special character scheme has its uses for handling accented characters, although the introduction of additional braces may upset the generation of ligatures and kerns, and — as has been mentioned at the begin of Section 15.2 — the capabilities of BibTeX to sort names with such accents are quite restricted. It may help to make BibTeX’s alphabetizing do what you want, but again with some caveats; see the discussion of the \SortNoop command on page 405. Also, because BibTeX counts an entire special character as just one letter, you can force extra characters inside labels.

biber/biblatex

biber can handle UTF-8 and 8-bit encoded .bib files. Accented chars can be input directly, but it is also possible to use accent commands. Unlike BibTeX, biber does not ignore these commands when sorting; instead, it tries to convert them into their respective Unicode code points. For most standard accent commands this works fine, but a small number of odd inputs can give errors. Well known is the problem with {\'}{i} (i) that is converted by biber into a dotless i (U+0131) followed by the combining accent U+0301. pdflatex cannot handle this combination and errors. The best advice here is to replace such commands with the correct UTF-8 input í or to use {\'}{i}.

The biber program can also convert a .bib file with accented characters back to a pure ASCII:

```
biber --tool --output-safechars <file>.bib
```

This creates *file_bibertool.bib* in which a line such as

```
author={Ele Émile René van Ríjden},
```

is replaced by

```
AUTHOR = {van R{\i{j}den, \OE{le} \'}{E}mile Ren\'}{e}},
```

The encoding of the input file can be set with the option `--input-encoding`. As the default, UTF-8 is assumed.

<i>Description</i>	<i>Date input</i>	<i>Exemplary output</i>
year	1850	1850
before Christ/common era	-0876	877 BC / 877 BCE
start year	1997/	1997-
stop year	/1997	-1997
year range	1988/1992	1988-1992
decade	201X	2010/2019
century	19XX	1900/1999
circa year	1723~	circa 1723
uncertain year	1723?	1723?
circa and uncertain year	1723%	circa 1723?
year and month	1967-02	02/1967
range with month	2002-01/2002-02	01/2002-02/2002
full year range	1999-XX	1999-01/1999-12
year with season ^a	2004-22	2004 (summer)
exact date	2009-01-31	31/01/2009
exact date range	1995-03-30/1995-04-05	30/03/1995-05/04/1995
full month range	1999-01-XX	1999-01-01/1999-01-31
full year range	2020-XX-XX	2020-01-01/2020-12-31
date with time	2004-04-05T14:34:00	05/04/2004 2:34 PM

^aThe extended date format follows ISO 8601-2. Seasons have the “month” numbers 21–24 in this norm.

Table 15.5: Examples of biblatex date inputs

Dates

All BibTeX styles support the `year` and `month` fields. Normally they should contain integers, but text like `year={n.D.}` is possible too. Months can also be given as three-letter abbreviations *without* quotes or braces as in `month=jan`; see Section 15.3.4. Newer BibTeX styles often also know the `urldate` field. Dates are normally not localized. You need to find a suitable style if, e.g., the month name should be output in another language.

biber/biblatex

The fields `year` and `month` can be used but should contain only integers. For compatibility with standard BibTeX, the three-letter strings for months are supported, but content like `year={n.D.}` or `month={January}` should be avoided; you do not get errors, but biber warns you that the sorting can be wrong.

biblatex provides four dedicated date fields: `date` for the publication date (it should be preferred over `year` and `month`), `urldate` for the access date of an URL, `eventdate` for the date of a conference or some other event in

a proceedings entry, and `origdate` for the publication date of the original edition of a reprinted work. All dates are fully localized and can be output in various formats. The fields can be used for sorting and comparison, and it is possible to access parts of a date like the month or the year. The date fields support ranges, time, BC dates, seasons, circa, and uncertain dates. To enable these features a date must be input in ISO 8601-2 format.

Table 15.5 shows some example input and possible formatting of the dates. These extended dates are not supported by BibTeX, so using them makes the `.bib` file incompatible with the BibTeX workflow, but to stay compatible with both workflows one can provide all three fields of the publication entry:

```
year  = 2020,
month = apr,
date  = {2020-04-01}
```

`biber` and `biblatex` then overwrite (with a warning) the `year` and `month` fields with values taken from the `date` field, while with BibTeX `date` is ignored.

15.3.4 Abbreviations in BibTeX

You can declare shorthands for BibTeX text field input for repeated use. Such an abbreviation is labeled with a string of ASCII characters starting with a letter and not containing a space or any of the following ten characters:

" # % ' () , = { }

Define your own abbreviations with the `@string` command in a `.bib` file, as shown below:

```
@string{AW          = "Addison--Wesley Publishing Company"}
@STRING{cacm        = "Communications of the ACM"}
@String{pub-AW      = {{Ad\-di\-son-Wes\-ley}}}
@String{pub-AW:adr  = "Reading, MA, USA"}
@String{TUG         = "\TeX{} Users Group"}
@String{TUG:adr     = {Providence, RI, USA}}
```

Abbreviations can be used in the text part of BibTeX fields, but they should not be enclosed in braces or quotation marks. With the above string definitions, the following two ways of specifying the `journal` field are equivalent:

```
journal = "Communications of the ACM"
journal = cacm
```

The case of the name for an abbreviation is not important, so `CACM` and `cacm` are considered identical, but BibTeX produces a warning if you mix different cases. Also, the `@string` command itself can be spelled as all lowercase, all uppercase, or a mixture of the two cases.

`@string` commands can appear anywhere in the `.bib` file, but an abbreviation must be defined before it is used. It is good practice to group all `@string` commands at the beginning of a `.bib` file or to place them in a dedicated `.bib` file containing only a list of abbreviations. The `@string` commands defined in the `.bib` file take precedence over any definition made in the style file. If an abbreviation is defined more than once, the most recent definition before the entry is used.

You can concatenate several strings (or `@string` definitions) using the concatenation operator, `#`. Given the definition

```
@STRING{TUB = {TUGboat }}
```

you can easily construct nearly identical `journal` fields for different entries:

```
@article{tub-98,   journal = TUB # 1998,   ...
@article{tub-99,   journal = TUB # 1999,   ...
@article{tub-00,   journal = TUB # 2000,   ...
```

Most bibliography styles contain a series of predefined abbreviations. As a convention, there should always be three-letter abbreviations for the months: `jan`, `feb`, `mar`, and so forth. In your `LaTeX` database files you should always use these three-letter abbreviations for the months, rather than spelling them explicitly. This assures consistency inside your bibliography.

Information about the day of the month is usually best included in the `month` field if you are using `LaTeX`. You might, for example, make use of the possibility of concatenation:

```
month = apr # "~1",
```

biber/biblatex

However, note that the `month` field should contain only the month if you are planning to use the database with `biber` and `biblatex`. A day should be included through the `date` field in that case.

Names of popular journals in a given application field are also made available as abbreviations in most styles. To identify them you should consult the documentation associated with the bibliographic style in question. The set of journals listed in Table 15.6 on the next page should be available in all `LaTeX` styles.

biber/biblatex

The journal abbreviations are not predefined in `biblatex` styles. Suitable `@string` or `xdata` entries must therefore be added explicitly.

You can easily define your own set of journal abbreviations by putting them in `@string` commands in their own database file and listing this database file as an argument to `LaTeX`'s `\bibliography` command or to `biblatex`'s `\addbibresource`.

acmcs	ACM Computing Surveys	jcss	Journal of Computer and System Sciences
acta	Acta Informatica	scp	Science of Computer Programming
cacm	Communications of the ACM	sicomp	SIAM Journal on Computing
ibmjrd	IBM Journal of Research and Development	tocs	ACM Transactions on Computer Systems
ibmsj	IBM Systems Journal	tods	ACM Transactions on Database Systems
ieeese	IEEE Transactions on Software Engineering	tog	ACM Transactions on Graphics
ieeetc	IEEE Transactions on Computers	toms	ACM Transactions on Mathematical Software
ieeetcad	IEEE Transactions on Computer-Aided Design of Integrated Circuits	toois	ACM Transactions on Office Information Systems
ipl	Information Processing Letters	toplas	ACM Transactions on Programming Languages and Systems
jacm	Journal of the ACM	tcs	Theoretical Computer Science

Table 15.6: Predefined journal strings in BibTeX styles

15.3.5 Extended data references with biber: the xdata entry type

biber/biblatex

biber supports the `@string` command but offers also a more general solution to reuse data: the `xdata` entry type serves as a data container holding one or more fields. Data in `xdata` entries may be referenced and used by other entries. An `xdata` entry looks like other entries in the `.bib` file and can contain all known fields. The key of the `xdata` can be freely chosen but should not contain an equal symbol or a hyphen.

```
@xdata{hup,
  publisher = {Harvard University Press},
  location = {Cambridge, Mass.}}

@xdata{macmillan:name,
  publisher = {Macmillan}}

@xdata{macmillan:place,
  location = {New York and London}}

@xdata{somenames,
  author = {Maria Fisher and Julia Green},
  editor = {John Smith and Brian Brown}}
```

An `xdata` container can also reference other `xdata` entries through the `xdata`

field, which accepts a comma-separated list of xdata keys:

```
@xdata{macmillan,
  xdata = {macmillan:name,macmillan:place}}
```

The data can then be used as a whole with the xdata field:

```
@book{somebook:a,
  author = {Jane Doe},
  xdata  = {macmillan}}
```

This adds the publisher “Macmillan” and the location “New York and London” to the entry. As you can see, it is important to use a good naming structure for your xdata key names, because otherwise your database will be difficult to manage.

It is also possible to reference only individual fields and even parts of fields from an xdata entry.

```
@book{somebook:b,
  author      = {xdata=somenames-editor-1 and Maria Webb},
  editor      = {xdata=somenames-author-2},
  publisher    = {xdata=hup-publisher},
  location     = {xdata=macmillan:place-location}}
```

This gives an entry that is equivalent to the following:

```
@book{somebook:b,
  author      = {Smith, John and Webb, Maria},
  editor      = {Green, Julia},
  publisher    = {Harvard University Press},
  location     = {New York and London}}
```

There are a few important points to note here:

- The syntax of a reference to a part of an xdata field has the special form `xdata=key-field-index`, e.g., `xdata=somenames-editor-1`. The equal sign should not lead you to mistake this as a key/value input or a field setting: the reference is a special value, and there should be no spaces around the equal sign. The *index* is optional and allows you to select only one element from a list. If no index is given, the full list is returned.
- A field can pull only data from an xdata field of the same type. A field with names like `author` can retrieve data from another name field, e.g., the `editor` field, but not from a literal list like `location` or a simple field like `title`; see Section 15.3.3 for a description of the data types. biber issues a warning if the type of the reference is wrong.

BibTeX does not know the `xdata` entry type. If a `.bib` file using `xdata` should be used with BibTeX, all such references must be resolved. This can be done with `biber` in tool mode and the option `--output-resolve`, i.e.,

```
biber --tool --output-resolve <file>.bib
```

which creates the file `file_bibertool.bib` and converts entries with `xdata` fields or values, such as

```
@book{somebook:a,
  author = {Jane Doe and xdata=smithbrown-author-2},
  xdata  = {macmillan}
}
```

to the form

```
@BOOK{somebook:a,
  AUTHOR = {Doe, Jane and Brown, Brian},
  LOCATION = {New York and London},
  PUBLISHER = {Macmillan},
}
```

15.3.6 The BibTeX database preamble command

Both BibTeX and `biber` offer a `@preamble` command with a syntax similar to that of the `@string` command except that there is no name or equals sign, just the string. For example:

```
@preamble{ "\providecommand\url[1]{\texttt{#1}}" #
           "\providecommand\SortNoop[1]{}"      }
@preamble{ "\providecommand\enquote[1]{‘#1’}" }
```

You can see that the different command definitions inside the `@preamble` can be given as separate strings that are then concatenated using the `#` symbol. It is also possible to use `@preamble` more than once. Both are useful for readability if you have many definitions. The standard styles output the argument of the `@preamble` literally to the `.bbl` file so that the command definitions are available when L^AT_EX reads the file. If you add L^AT_EX commands in this way, you must ensure that they are added using `\providecommand` and not `\newcommand`. There are two reasons for this requirement. First, you should not deprive yourself of the ability to change the definition in the document (e.g., the bibliography might add a simple definition for the command `\url` that you may want to replace by the definition from the `url` package). Second, sometimes the bibliography is read in several times (e.g., with the `chapterbib` package), an operation that would fail if `\newcommand` were used.

The other example command used above (`\SortNoop`) was suggested by Oren Patashnik to guide BibTeX's sorting algorithm in difficult cases. This algorithm normally does an acceptable job, but sometimes you might want to override BibTeX's decision by specifying your own sorting key. This trick can be used with foreign languages, which have sorting rules different from those of English, or when you want to order the various volumes of a book in a way given by their original date of publication and independently of their re-edition dates.

Suppose that the first volume of a book was originally published in 1986, with a second edition appearing in 1991, and the second volume was published in 1990. Then you could write

```
@book{ ... volume=1, year = "{\SortNoop{86}}1991" ...
@book{ ... volume=2, year = "{\SortNoop{90}}1990" ...
```

According to the definition of `\SortNoop`, L^AT_EX throws away its argument and ends up printing only the true year for these fields. For BibTeX `\SortNoop` appears to be an “accent”; thus, it sorts the works according to the numbers 861991 and 901990, placing volume 1 before volume 2, just as you want.

Be aware that the above trick may not function with newer BibTeX styles (for example, those generated with `custom-bib`) and that some styles have added a `sortkey` field that solves such problems in a far cleaner fashion.

biber/biblatex

Tricks like the `\SortNoop` command are normally not needed because there are enough sort keys to handle a variety of use cases.

15.3.7 Cross-referencing entries

BibTeX entries can be cross-referenced. Suppose you specify `\cite{Wood:color}` in your document, and you have the following two entries in the database file:

```
@Inbook{Wood:color, author = {Pat Wood}, crossref={Roth:postscript},
title = {PostScript Color Separation}, pages={201--225}}
@Book{Roth:postscript, editor = {Stephen E. Roth}, title =
{{Real World PostScript}}, booktitle = {{Real World PostScript}},
publisher=AW, address=AW:adr, year=1988, ISBN={0-201-06663-7}}
```

The special `crossref` field tells BibTeX that the `Wood:color` entry should inherit missing fields from the entry it cross-references — `Roth:postscript`. BibTeX automatically puts the `Roth:postscript` entry into the reference list if it is cross-referenced by a certain number of entries (default 2) on a `\cite` or `\nocite` command, even if the `Roth:postscript` entry itself is never the argument of a `\cite` or `\nocite` command. Thus, with the default settings, `Roth:postscript` automatically appears on the reference list if one other entry besides `Wood:color` cross-references it.

The default is compiled into the BibTeX program, but it can be changed on the command line¹ by specifying `--min-crossrefs` together with the desired value. For instance, the article by Mittelbach & Rowley [149] is part of a published proceedings book, and because it is the only article referenced from this book, all information — such as the editor and the book title — is included as part of it. If we had used

```
bibtex --min-crossrefs=1 tlc3
```

we would have gotten two entries, with [149] becoming much shorter and referencing a separate proceedings entry instead. An example of such cross-referencing in the bibliography of this book is [91], which is cross-referenced by eight articles, from [92] to [100]. Using such cross-references in case there are several entries saves space, and is especially useful if all entries are close together, which is true here, because all of them are publications by Donald Knuth.

On the other hand, if you want to avoid separate entries for whole books or proceedings, regardless of the number of entries referencing them (because they involve different authors and are therefore on different pages in the bibliography), set the `--min-crossrefs` option to a suitably large value (e.g., 500), and then each entry contains all the relevant data.

biber/biblatex

The threshold can be set with the biblatex package option `mincrossrefs` or with the biber option `--mincrossrefs`.

A cross-referenced entry must occur later in the database files than every entry that cross-references it. Thus, all cross-referenced entries could be put at the end of the database. Cross-referenced entries cannot themselves cross-reference another entry.

biber/biblatex

These restrictions do not exist when using biber.

You can also use L^AT_EX's `\cite` command inside the fields of your BibTeX entries. This can be useful if you want to reference some other relevant material inside a note field:

```
note = "See Eijkhout \cite{Eijkhout:1991} for more details"
```

However, such usage may mean that you need additional L^AT_EX and BibTeX runs to compile your document properly. This happens if the citation put into the `.bbl` file by BibTeX refers to a key that was not used in a citation in the main document. Thus, L^AT_EX will be unable to resolve this reference in the following run and needs an additional BibTeX and two additional L^AT_EX runs thereafter.

¹In BibTeX8 this option is named `--min_crossrefs` or `-M`.

15.3.8 Managing the BibTeX and biber differences

In the previous sections a number of differences between .bib files for BibTeX and biblatex/biber have been discussed. While it is a rather long list, the effort is usually manageable—in many cases the needed changes are limited to correcting a number of date fields and moving some URLs.

It is, however, a fact that the formats of the entries can be incompatible, not only because biber has different parsing rules but also because many biblatex/biber features and specialities have no counterpart in BibTeX styles.

Two separate .bib files

If one wishes to stay compatible with the BibTeX workflow, there are a number of options: a clean and simple way is to use two .bib files, one “BibTeX only”, one “biblatex only” for the diverging entries. The advantages are that the files can have a clear format and that all biblatex options and commands can be used without problems. The disadvantage is that it requires more maintenance effort.

If using two .bib files is not possible or wanted, follow these guidelines:

- Avoid using, in fields also processed by BibTeX, features that it does not understand, such as the extended name syntax or UTF-8 input.
- Use @preamble to provide fallback definitions for biblatex commands, e.g.,

```
@preamble{"\providecommand\nbhyphen{-}"}
```

- If it is unavoidable to have fields with different content, you can make use of the ability of biber to change and replace fields on the fly by declaring a “source map”. Such a source map is a set of instructions for biber to change some fields. A source map can be given in a document but also in a configuration file.

Example 15-3-5 below shows a simple source map that tells biber to replace the author field with the author-biblatex field if it exists. Entries without this special field stay unchanged. The sample source map also removes the abstract field and so avoids errors due to special characters. The entry used for the example from Figure 15.2 on page 391 contains two different author names and a problematic abstract field that contains a hash, #, and a percent, %. With biblatex and its source map this gives the following output:

```
\usepackage[style=authoryear, uniquename=allfull]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib}
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps{
    \map[overwrite]{
      \step[fieldsource=author-biblatex,fieldtarget=author]
      \step[fieldset=abstract,null]%suppress abstract
    }
  }
}
```

The author is Betty Smith

The author is \citenam{sourcemap-test}[given-family]{author}

15-3-5

If the same .bib file is used with BibTeX, it would use “Charles Doe” as the author name.

15.4 Using BibTeX or biber to produce the bibliography

In this section we outline how to create an input, usable by L^AT_EX, from .bib databases, discussed in the previous section. A document typically contains only a subset of the entries stored in such databases, and the bibliography should conform to a certain style with respect to the formatting and the sorting of the entries. Thus, the programs BibTeX and biber have to gather the entries from the keys specified in the document and use the style and sorting options and the database resources as directed by the document.

To enable BibTeX to access these data, the necessary information is written in a previous L^AT_EX run to the .aux file. BibTeX then reads the .aux file (or files if \include is involved) and searches through the specified bibliographic database(s) for the keys,¹ extracts all required entries, and formats them. Formatting these entries is controlled by an associated bibliography style (the .bst file) that contains a set of instructions written in a stack-based language. The latter is interpreted by the BibTeX program.

biber does not use the .aux file to communicate with L^AT_EX; instead, it reads a dedicated control file with the extension .bcf. This is an XML file that is generated by the package biblatex. This control file contains all the formatting instructions needed by biber, so no .bst file is used either.

BibTeX and biber know which fields are required, optional, and ignored for any given entry type (see Table 15.1 on page 386). They issue warnings on the terminal and in the .blg file, such as “author name required”, if something is missing. Their style files can control the typesetting of both the citation string in the main text and the actual bibliography entry.

The procedure for running L^AT_EX and BibTeX or biber is shown schematically in Figure 15.3 on the next page. With BibTeX at least three L^AT_EX runs are necessary — first to produce data for BibTeX, then to load the result from the BibTeX run, and finally to resolve the cross-references to the bibliographical list added by the previous run. With biber and biblatex two L^AT_EX runs are often enough.

As can be seen in the figure, both programs create as main output a file with the extension .bbl that is then read in by L^AT_EX. Depending on the style, this file can have varying content.

With the standard styles and various other styles, BibTeX writes into the .bbl file a standard thebibliography environment as described in Section 15.1. It is possible to include the content of such a .bbl file in your document, if your L^AT_EX document has to be self-contained. It is also a simple matter to manually edit this output from BibTeX to cope with special cases.

With other styles, BibTeX writes a thebibliography environment that contains special commands that require the loading of a supporting package to process and typeset the bibliography. The styles from the jurabib package are a prominent example (but not the only one) that create highly structured .bbl files with a large number of jurabib commands that allow adjusting the formatting of the bibliography and the citations with package options. Other examples are shown in Chapter 16, when we discuss packages supporting special citation conventions.

*Standard L^AT_EX
bibliography
environment*

*Bibliography
environments with
special commands*

¹ If the keys are not unique across the databases, the first match wins with a warning.

- ① Run \LaTeX , which generates from the `\cite` commands a number of `\citation` references in its auxiliary file, `.aux`, or — when using `biblatex` — instructions for `biber` in the `biber` control file, `.bcf`.
- ② Run `BibTeX` or `biber`, which reads the auxiliary file or the control file, looks up the references in a database (one or more `.bib` files), and then writes a file (the `.bbl` file) containing either the formatted references according to the format specified in the style file (the `.bst` file) or the commands needed by `biblatex` to format the bibliography. Warning and error messages are written to the log file (the `.blg` file). Note that neither `BibTeX` nor `biber` ever reads the original \LaTeX source file.
- ③ Run \LaTeX again, which now reads the `.bbl` file containing the bibliographic information.
- ④ Run \LaTeX a third time, resolving all references — may not be necessary with `biblatex`.

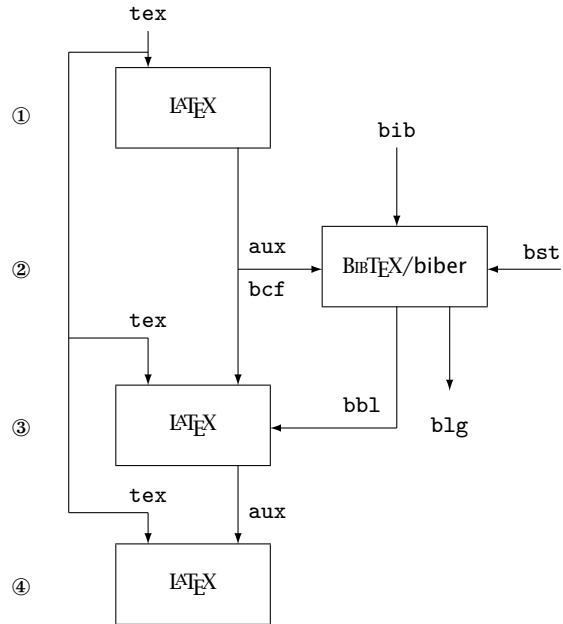


Figure 15.3: Data flow when running `BibTeX` or `biber` and \LaTeX

*.bbl files with only
bibliography data*

If you use `biblatex`, then the `.bbl` file no longer contains a `thebibliography` environment or any typesetting instructions at all, but only a structured, preprocessed, and sorted representation of the bibliography data. These `.bbl` files are no longer loaded at the place where the bibliography is printed, but at the start of the document, which explains why often only two \LaTeX runs are needed to resolve all citations. The task to format and typeset the data is delegated fully to \LaTeX and the `biblatex` package.

We now show in more detail the commands needed in the \LaTeX document to pass the data to the bibliography processors.

```
\bibliography{file-list}
```

*How to select the
BibTeX databases*

To inform `BibTeX` which databases are to be searched to resolve citations, you should specify their names, separated by commas (and *without* the extension `.bib`), as the argument to the command `\bibliography`. This command should be placed at the point where the bibliography should finally appear as the command is also used to typeset the bibliography. This coupling makes it a bit challenging to print more than one bibliography in a document — we discuss this in Section 16.8.

It is, of course, important that all cite keys used in the bibliography databases are unique, because it is otherwise not possible to reliably resolve the citation references when the document is processed.

biber/biblatex

```
\addbibresource[options]{file.bib}
```

With biblatex the databases should be declared in the preamble of the document with the command `\addbibresource`. The mandatory argument is the name of one database *with* the extension `.bib`. If you have more than one `.bib` file, use one `\addbibresource` for each. biber can use URLs to access remote files and is able to resolve patterns. Check the documentation for details.

```
\bibliographystyle{style}
```

With this command you tell BibTeX which style to use for the bibliography. The style refers to a `.bst` file, and the name must be given without the extension. There is no default style, so issuing the command is required; it can be placed in the document or in the preamble. Section 15.7 presents examples produced by a number of standard and nonstandard styles.

How to select the BibTeX style

The style defines also the sorting of the entries. A “nonsorting” BibTeX style by order of first citation as required by the house styles of many publishers is, for example, `unsrt`.

Order by first citation produced with BibTeX

biber/biblatex

biblatex does not make use of `\bibliographystyle` and errors if it detects it. The default biblatex style is a numeric style with alphabetic sorting; other styles and sortings are set through various package options and commands. Some of these options are passed to biber through the control file and affect its processing of the data; others are relevant only for the L^AT_EX compilation.

The package option that most closely matches the concept of a `.bst` style is the key `style`, which takes as a value a bibliography style name like `apa` or `authoryear`. The sorting is typically defined by such a style but can also be changed individually with the option `sorting`. This is described in more detail in Section 16.7.

To select entries from the databases, they need to be cited in the document. Citation commands and their arguments are discussed in more detail in the next chapter, for now it is enough to know that in standard L^AT_EX you can use `\cite` or `\nocite` — with further citation commands provided by loading additional packages.

How to select entries from the database

`\cite` also typesets the citations, while the sole purpose of `\nocite` is to write the keys in its argument into the `.aux` or `.bcf` file so that the associated bibliography information appears in the bibliography even if the publication is otherwise not referred to. Both commands can be used as often as necessary. As a special case, `\nocite{*}` includes all entries of the chosen BibTeX database(s) in the list of references.

biber/biblatex

The biblatex package offers a larger set of citation commands, and their syntax has been extended to accept two optional arguments. They are discussed in Section 16.7.3.

Putting everything together, a sample document for a standard B_BT_EX workflow would look like this:

```
\documentclass{article}
\begin{document}
  \nocite{MR-PQ} ... \cite{LGC97} ... \cite{Knuth-CT-a}

  \bibliographystyle{unsrt} \bibliography{tlc}
\end{document}
```

The .aux file would then contain:

```
\citation{MR-PQ}
\citation{LGC97}
\citation{Knuth-CT-a}
\bibstyle{unsrt}
\bibdata{tlc}
```

Do not
use `\bibdata` by
mistake

Do not confuse these commands with those intended for use in documents. They exist solely to facilitate the internal communication between L^AT_EX and B_BT_EX. If you mistakenly use `\bibdata` instead of `\bibliography`, then L^AT_EX processes your document without failure, but B_BT_EX complains that it does not find any database information in the .aux file.

biber/biblatex

A comparable document using the biber workflow together with the biblatex package would then be:

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[sorting=none]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\begin{document}
  \nocite{MR-PQ} ... \cite{LGC97} ... \cite{Knuth-CT-a}

  \printbibliography
\end{document}
```

Note that in contrast to the standard B_BT_EX workflow, a dedicated command like `\printbibliography` is needed (but not required) in order to print the full bibliography or parts of it. The available commands and their options are described in Section 16.7.8.

It is important to remember that `BibTeX` or `biber` is not required for managing citations (except for packages such as `biblatex` and `jurabib` and those intended for producing multiple bibliographies). You can produce a bibliography without `BibTeX` by providing the bibliographic entries yourself using the syntax described in Section 15.1.

15.5 On-line bibliographies

If you search the Internet, you find a large number of bibliography entries for both primary and secondary publications in free as well as commercial databases. In this section we mention a few free resources on scientific publications that offer bibliographic data in `BibTeX` and some other formats.

Nelson Beebe maintains more than 1400 `BibTeX` databases related to scientific journals and particular scientific topics.¹ These range from “Acta Informatica” and “Ada User Journal” to “X Journal” and “X Resource [journal]”. All are available as `.bib` source files as well as listings in `.html`, `.pdf`, and `.ps` format.

Nelson Beebe's most interesting `.bib` databases, as far as `TeX` is concerned, are the files `texbook1.bib`, `texbook2.bib`, and `texbook3.bib` (articles and books about `TeX`, `METAFONT`, and friends), `type.bib` (a list of articles and books about typography), `gut.bib` (the contents of the French *Cahiers Gutenberg* journal), `komoedie.bib` (the contents of the German *Die TEXnische Komödie* journal), `texgraph.bib` (sources explaining how to make `TeX` and graphics work together), `texjournal.bib` (a list of journals accepting `TeX` as input), `tugboat.bib` (all the articles in *TUGboat*), and `standard.bib` (software standards). The web resources provided by Nelson Beebe also include a series of `BibTeX` styles and many command-line tools for manipulating bibliography data (discussed in Section 15.6.3).

The Collection of Computer Science Bibliographies by Alf-Christian Achilles, containing more than 1.2 million references, can be found at <https://liinwww.ira.uka.de/bibliography/index.html> and at several mirror sites. The data included come from external bibliographical collections like those created by Nelson Beebe. One added-value feature is the search functionality, which allows you to research authors, particular subjects, topics, and other categories. Nearly all of the reference data are available in `BibTeX` format.

Another interesting source is CiteSeer, Scientific Literature Digital Library, developed by Steve Lawrence, which can be found at <https://citeseerx.ist.psu.edu>. Helpful features include extensive search possibilities, context information on publications (e.g., related publications), citations to the document from other publications, statistical information about citations to a citation, and much more.

These examples represent merely a small selection of the vast amount of material found on the Internet. They might prove useful if you are interested in research papers on mathematics, computer science, and similar subjects.

¹The bibliographic databases and support programs for maintaining and manipulating them can be found at <https://www.math.utah.edu/pub/bibnet/> and <https://www.math.utah.edu/pub/tex/bib/>.

15.6 Bibliography database management tools

Because \TeX databases are plain-text files, they can be generated and manipulated with any editor that is able to write ASCII and UTF-8 files. However, with large collections of \TeX entries, this method can get quite cumbersome, and finding information becomes more and more difficult. For this reason people developed tools to help with these tasks.

An overview of programs with a graphical user interface for general database maintenance can be found at https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comparison_of_reference_management_software.

A selection of command-line tools for specific tasks is described in this section. Many of them can be found at <https://ctan.org/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/utls/>, but do not take Nelson Beebe's tools from there — CTAN has only old versions for some reason.

New products of both types are emerging, so it is probably worthwhile to check out available Internet resources (e.g., https://wiki.openoffice.org/wiki/Bibliographic_Software_and_Standards_Information).

15.6.1 checkcites — Which citations are used, unused, or missing?

It can sometimes be useful to check if all references of a `.bib` file have been cited. For this the small tool `checkcites` from Paulo Cereda and Enrico Gregorio can be used. Its usage is simple. Compile your document as usual and then use

```
checkcites <file>      or      checkcites --backend biber <file>
```

The second call is meant for a document that uses `biblatex` and `biber`.

For a document using the `tlc.bib` file and citing the entries `bschur` and `doody`, this then reports on the terminal unused and unknown references:

```
-----
Report of unused references in your TeX document (that is, references
present in bibliography files, but not cited in the TeX source file)
-----

Unused references in your TeX document: 18
=> LGC97
=> LWC99
=> Knuth-CT-a
=> Knuth:TB10-1-31
...

-----
Report of undefined references in your TeX document (that is, references
cited in the TeX source file, but not present in the bibliography files)
-----

Undefined references in your TeX document: 1
=> doody
```

15.6.2 biblist — Printing BibTeX database files

A sorted listing of all entries in a BibTeX database is often useful for easy reference. Various tools, with more or less the same functionality, are available, and choosing one or the other is mostly a question of taste. In this section we discuss one representative tool, the biblist package written by Joachim Schrod. It can create a typeset listing of (possibly large) BibTeX databases. Later sections show some more possibilities.

To use biblist you must prepare a L^AT_EX document using the article class. Options and packages like twoside, ngerman, or geometry can be added. Given that entries are never broken across columns, it may not be advisable to typeset them in several columns using multicol, however.

The argument of the \bibliography command must contain the names of all BibTeX databases you want to print. With a \bibliographystyle command you can choose a specific bibliography style. By default, all bibliography entries in the database are typeset. However, if you issue explicit \nocite commands (as we did in the example), only the selected entries from the databases are printed. Internal cross-references via the crossref field or explicit \cite commands are marked using boxes around the key instead of resolving the latter.

(December 28, 2022) tlc.bib

References

MR-PQ	.....
	Frank Mittelbach and Chris Rowley.	
	The pursuit of quality: How can automated typesetting achieve the highest standards of craft typography?	\usepackage{biblist}
	In Vanoirbeek and Coray [EP92], pages 261–273.	\bibliographystyle{alpha}
EP92	.....
	Christine Vanoirbeek and Giovanni Coray, editors.	\nocite{MR-PQ}
	EP92— <i>Proceedings of Electronic Publishing</i> , '92, Cambridge, 1992. Cambridge University Press.	\footnotesize
		\bibliography{tlc}

15-6-1

You must run L^AT_EX, BibTeX, and L^AT_EX. No additional L^AT_EX run is necessary, because the cross-references are not resolved to conserve space. For this reason you will always see warnings about unresolved citations in such a case.

15.6.3 bibclean, etc. — A set of command-line tools

A set of tools to handle even very huge BibTeX databases was developed by Nelson Beebe. The tools can be obtained from <https://ftp.math.utah.edu/pub/bibttools.html> if they are not already on your system.¹ We give a brief description of each of them.

bibclean This C program is a pretty-printer, syntax checker, and lexical analyzer for BibTeX bibliography database files [12]. The program, which runs on Unix,

¹You may have to compile them yourself in that case.

Vax/VMS, and Windows platforms (with `cygwin`), has many options, but in general you can just type

```
bibclean <bibfile(s)> or bibclean <infile> > <outfile> (useful in pipes)
```

For example, when used on the database file `tlc-ex.bib`, the `bibclean` program reports the following possible problem:

```
%% "EX/tlc-ex.bib", line 108: Unexpected value in
                                \enquote{year = "1980ff"}.
```

bibextract This program extracts from a list of `BIBTEX` files those bibliography entries that match a pair of specified regular expressions, sending them to *stdout*, together with all `@preamble` and `@string` declarations. Two regular expressions must be specified: the first to select keyword values (if this string is empty, then all fields of an entry are examined), and the second to further select from the value part of the fields which bibliography entries must be output. Regular expressions should contain only lowercase strings.

For example, the following command extracts all entries containing the word “PostScript” (or some other capitalization) in any of the fields:

```
bibextract "" "postscript" <bibfile(s)> > <new-bibfile>
```

The next command extracts only those entries containing the string `Adobe` in the `author` or `organization` field:

```
bibextract "author|organization" "adobe" <bibfile(s)> > <new-bibfile>
```

Note that one might have to clean the `.bib` files using `bibclean` before `bibextract` finds correct entries. For example, the entry with “TUGboat” in the title is found with

```
bibclean tlc-ex.bib | bibextract "title" "tugboat"
```

Using `bibextract` alone would fail because of the entry containing the line `year={1980ff}`.

citefind and citetags Sometimes you have to extract the entries effectively referenced in your publication from several large `BIBTEX` databases. The Bourne shell scripts `citefind` and `citetags` use the `awk` and `sed` tools to accomplish that task.

First, `citetags` extracts the `BIBTEX` citation keys from the `TEX` source or `.aux` files and sends them to the standard output *stdout*. There, `citefind` picks them up and tries to find the given keys in the `.bib` files specified. It then writes the resulting new bibliography file to *stdout*. For instance,

```
citetags *.aux | citefind - <bibfile(s)> > <outfile>
```

Nelson Beebe also developed the `showtags` package, which adds the citation key to a bibliography listing. In other words, it does a similar job to `biblist` as shown in Example 15-6-1 on page 415.

References

[MR92] Frank Mittelbach and Chris Rowley. The pursuit of quality: How can automated typesetting achieve the highest standards of craft typography? In Vanoirbeek and Coray [VC92], pages 261–273.

MR-PQ

```
\usepackage{showtags}
\bibliographystyle
{is-alpha}
```

[VC92] Christine Vanoirbeek and Giovanni Coray, editors. *EP92—Proceedings of Electronic Publishing*, '92. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1992.

EP92

```
\nocite{MR-PQ}
\footnotesize
\bibliography{tlc}
```

15-6-2

15.6.4 Using biber as a tool

`biber` not only can be used to prepare a bibliography for a document, but it can also replace various of the tools described above.

Extracting entries used by a document

The scripts `citefind` and `citetags` described above extract the references used by a document from the `.aux` file and so target the `LaTeX` workflow. To get the references from the `.bcf` control file created for `biber`, `biber` can be used with the option `--output-format` to get a `.bib` file instead of a `.bbl`.

```
biber --output-format=bibtex <file>
```

This creates a file `file_biber.bib` that contains only the entries needed for the document `file.tex`, which created `file.bcf`. Entries required to resolve cross-references are included too.

By using a source map in the document, this can also be used to filter the entries with regular expressions or other conditions. The following document for example suppresses all entries whose key does not contain `Knuth` or `kant`:

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{%
      \step[fieldsource=entrykey,notmatch=\regex{Knuth|kant},final]%
      \step[entrynull]}}%
\nocite{*}
\begin{document} \printbibliography \end{document}
```


Validation

By using the option `--validate-datamodel` it is possible to validate one or more `.bib` files:

```
biber --tool --validate-datamodel tlc.bib tlc-ex.bib
```

This then reports on the terminal beside other information:

```
WARN - Datamodel: Entry 'G-G' (tlc.bib): Missing mandatory field 'author'
WARN - Datamodel: Entry 'oddity' (tlc-ex.bib): Invalid value of field 'year'
        must be datatype 'datepart' - ignoring field
```

Normalization and rewriting of entries

`biber` can also be used to clean up and normalize the entries of a `.bib` file, e.g.,

```
biber --tool --output-align tlc.bib
```

This creates a `tlc_bibertool.bib` file in which surrounding quotes are converted to braces, all field names are uppercased, their order is unified, and their values are aligned. `biber` also changes field names like `journal` to `journaltitle` and moves year and month to date. So, for example, the entry `Knuth:TB10-1-31` will then have this format:

```
@ARTICLE{Knuth:TB10-1-31,
  AUTHOR      = {Knuth, Donald E.},
  DATE        = {1989-04},
  ISSN        = {0896-3207},
  JOURNALTITLE = {TUGboat},
  NUMBER      = {1},
  PAGES        = {31--36},
  TITLE       = {{Typesetting Concrete Mathematics}},
  VOLUME      = {10},
}
```

15.7 Formatting the bibliography with styles

Now that we know how to produce `BIBTEX` database entries and manipulate them using various management tools, it is time to discuss the main purpose of the `BIBTEX` and `biber` programs: to generate a bibliography containing the entries referenced in a document in a format conforming to a set of conventions.

We first discuss the use of existing `BIBTEX` styles and present example results produced by a number of standard and nonstandard styles. We then show how the `custom-bib` package makes it possible to produce customized `BIBTEX` styles for nearly every requirement with ease. We continue by discussing how styles are set when using the `biblatex` package, present an overview of existing `biblatex` styles, and finish with a number of examples. The customization of `biblatex` styles are discussed in Section 16.7.

15.7.1 A collection of BibTeX style files

Various organizations and individuals have developed style files for BibTeX that correspond to the house style of particular journals or editing houses. Nelson Beebe has collected a large number of such BibTeX styles. For each style he provides an example file, which allows you to see the effect of using the given style.¹ Some of the BibTeX styles — for instance, `authordate(i)`, `jmb`, and `named` — must be used in conjunction with their accompanying L^AT_EX packages (as indicated in Tables 15.7 to 15.9 on pages 420–423) to obtain the desired effect.

You can also customize a bibliography style, by making small changes to one of those in the table. Alternatively, you can generate your own style by using the `custom-bib` program (as explained in Section 15.7.2 on page 426).

In theory, it is possible to change the appearance of a bibliography by simply using another BibTeX style. In practice, there are a few restrictions because the BibTeX style interface was augmented by some authors so that their styles need additional support from within L^AT_EX. You are going to see several such examples in Chapter 16. For instance, all the author-date styles need a special L^AT_EX package such as `natbib` or `harvard` to function, and the BibTeX styles for `jurabib` work only if that package is loaded.

On the whole, the scheme works quite well, and we prove it in this section by showing the results of applying different BibTeX styles (plus their support packages if necessary) without otherwise altering the sample document. For this we use the familiar database from Figure 15.1 on page 382 and cite five publications from it: an article and a book by Donald Knuth, which shows us how different publications by the same author are handled; the manual from the Free Software Foundation, which is an entry without an author name; the unpublished entry with many authors and the special BibTeX string “and others”; and a publication that is part of a proceedings so that BibTeX has to include additional data from a different entry.

In our first example we use the standard `plain` BibTeX style, which means we use the following input:

```
\bibliographystyle{plain}
\nocite{Knuth:TB10-1-31,GNUMake,MR-PQ,Knuth-CT-a,test97}
\bibliography{tlc,tlc-ex}
```

To produce the final document, the example L^AT_EX file has to be run through L^AT_EX once to get the citation references written to the `.aux` file. Next, BibTeX processes the generated `.aux` file and reads the relevant entries from the BibTeX databases `tlc.bib` and `tlc-ex.bib`. The name of the bibliography style to use for formatting and sorting is specified with the command `\bibliographystyle` in the L^AT_EX source and picked up by BibTeX via the `.aux` file. The results are then placed into a `.bbl` file for further processing by L^AT_EX. Finally, L^AT_EX is run twice more — first to load the `.bbl` file and again to resolve all references.² A detailed explanation of this procedure was given in Section 15.4 on page 409, where you also find a graphical representation of the data flow (Figure 15.3).

¹See Appendix C to find out how you can obtain these files from one of the T_EX archives if they are not already on your system.

²In fact, for this example only one run is necessary — there are no cross-references to resolve because we used `\nocite` throughout.

<i>Style Name</i>	<i>Description</i>
<code>abbrv.bst</code>	Standard BibTeX style
<code>abbrvnat.bst</code>	natbib variant of abbrv style
<code>abstract.bst</code>	Modified alpha style with <code>abstract</code> keyword
<code>acm.bst</code>	Association for Computing Machinery BibTeX style
<code>agsm.bst</code>	Australian government publications BibTeX style; needs the <code>harvard</code> or <code>natbib</code> package
<code>agu.bst</code>	American Geophysical Union BibTeX style
<code>alpha.bst</code>	Standard BibTeX style
<code>amsalpha.bst</code>	alpha-like BibTeX style for $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -TeX
<code>amsplain.bst</code>	plain-like BibTeX style for $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -TeX (numeric labels)
<code>annotate.bst</code>	Modified alpha BibTeX style with <code>annotate</code> keyword
<code>annotation.bst</code>	Modified plain BibTeX style with <code>annotate</code> keyword
<code>apa.bst</code>	American Psychology Association BibTeX style
<code>apalike.bst</code>	Variant of <code>apa</code> BibTeX style; needs the <code>apalike</code> support package
<code>apalike2.bst</code>	Variant of <code>apalike</code> BibTeX style
<code>astron.bst</code>	<i>Astronomy</i> BibTeX style
<code>authordate<i>i</i>.bst</code>	<i>i</i> =[1,4]; series of BibTeX styles producing author-date reference list; all of them need the <code>authordate1-4</code> support package
<code>bbs.bst</code>	<i>Behavioral and Brain Sciences</i> BibTeX style

Table 15.7: Selected BibTeX style files (A–B)

The `plain` style has numeric labels (in brackets), and the entries are alphabetically sorted by author, year, and title. In the case of the GNU manual the organization was used for sorting. This gives the following output:

References (plain style)

- [1] Free Software Foundation, Boston, Massachusetts. *GNU Make, A Program for Directing Re-compilation*, 2000.
- [2] Michel Goossens, Ben User, Joe Doe, et al. Ambiguous citations. Submitted to the IBM J. Res. Dev., 1997.
- [3] Donald E. Knuth. *The TeXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986.
- [4] Donald E. Knuth. Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. *TUGboat*, 10(1):31–36, April 1989.
- [5] Frank Mittelbach and Chris Rowley. The pursuit of quality: How can automated typesetting achieve the highest standards of craft typography? In Christine Vanoirbeek and Giovanni Coray, editors, *EP92—Proceedings of Electronic Publishing*, '92, pages 261–273, Cambridge, 1992. Cambridge University Press.

<i>Style Name</i>	<i>Description</i>
<code>cbe.bst</code>	Council of Biology Editors BibTeX style (includes such journals as <i>American Naturalist</i> and <i>Evolution</i>)
<code>cell.bst</code>	Small modifications to <code>jmb</code> BibTeX style
<code>humanbio.bst</code>	<i>Human Biology</i> BibTeX style
<code>humannat.bst</code>	<i>Human Nature</i> and <i>American Anthropologist</i> journals
<code>ieeetr.bst</code>	<i>Transactions of the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers</i> BibTeX style
<code>is-abbrev.bst</code>	<code>abbrev</code> BibTeX style with ISSN and ISBN keyword added
<code>is-alpha.bst</code>	<code>alpha</code> BibTeX style with ISSN and ISBN keyword added
<code>is-plain.bst</code>	<code>plain</code> BibTeX style with ISSN and ISBN keyword added
<code>is-unsrt.bst</code>	<code>unsrt</code> BibTeX style with ISSN and ISBN keyword added
<code>jmb.bst</code>	<i>Journal of Molecular Biology</i> BibTeX style; this style requires the use of the <code>jmb</code> support package
<code>jox.bst</code>	Style for use with <code>jurabib</code> (Oxford style)
<code>jtb.bst</code>	<i>Journal of Theoretical Biology</i> BibTeX style
<code>jurabib.bst</code>	Style for use with <code>jurabib</code>
<code>jureco.bst</code>	Style for use with <code>jurabib</code> (compact)
<code>jurunsrt.bst</code>	Style for use with <code>jurabib</code> (unsorted)

Table 15.8: Selected BibTeX style files (C–J)

By replacing `plain` with `abbrev` we get a similar result. Now, however, the entries are more compact, because first names, months, and predefined journal names (Table 15.6 on page 403) are abbreviated. For instance, `ibmjrd` in the second reference now gives “IBM J. Res. Dev.” instead of “IBM Journal of Research and Development”.

References (abbrev style)

- [1] Free Software Foundation, Boston, Massachusetts. *GNU Make, A Program for Directing Re-compilation*, 2000.
- [2] M. Goossens, B. User, J. Doe, et al. Ambiguous citations. Submitted to the IBM J. Res. Dev., 1997.
- [3] D. E. Knuth. *The TeXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986.
- [4] D. E. Knuth. Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. *TUGboat*, 10(1):31–36, Apr. 1989.
- [5] F. Mittelbach and C. Rowley. The pursuit of quality: How can automated typesetting achieve the highest standards of craft typography? In C. Vanoirbeek and G. Coray, editors, *EP92—Proceedings of Electronic Publishing, '92*, pages 261–273, Cambridge, 1992. Cambridge University Press.

With the standard BibTeX style `unsrt` we get the same result as with the `plain` style, except that the entries are printed in order of first citation, rather than being sorted.¹ The standard sets of styles do not contain a combination of `unsrt` and `abbrv`, but if necessary, it would be easy to integrate the differences between `plain` and `abbrv` into `unsrt` to form a new style.

- [1] Donald E. Knuth. Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. *TUGboat*, 10(1):31–36, April 1989.
- [2] Free Software Foundation, Boston, Massachusetts. *GNU Make, A Program for Directing Re-compilation*, 2000.
- [3] Frank Mittelbach and Chris Rowley. The pursuit of quality: How can automated typesetting achieve the highest standards of craft typography? In Christine Vanoirbeek and Giovanni Coray, editors, *EP92—Proceedings of Electronic Publishing*, '92, pages 261–273, Cambridge, 1992. Cambridge University Press.
- [4] Donald E. Knuth. *The T_EXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986.
- [5] Michel Goossens, Ben User, Joe Doe, et al. Ambiguous citations. Submitted to the IBM J. Res. Dev., 1997.

15-7-3

The standard style `alpha` is again similar to `plain`, but the labels of the entries are formed from the authors' names and the year of publication. The slightly strange label for the GNU manual is because the entry contains a `key` field from which the first three letters are used to form part of the label. Also note the interesting label produced for the reference with more than three authors. The publications are sorted, with the label being used as a sort key, so that now the GNU manual moves to fourth place.

- [GUD⁺97] Michel Goossens, Ben User, Joe Doe, et al. Ambiguous citations. Submitted to the IBM J. Res. Dev., 1997.
- [Knu86] Donald E. Knuth. *The T_EXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986.
- [Knu89] Donald E. Knuth. Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. *TUGboat*, 10(1):31–36, April 1989.
- [mak00] Free Software Foundation, Boston, Massachusetts. *GNU Make, A Program for Directing Re-compilation*, 2000.
- [MR92] Frank Mittelbach and Chris Rowley. The pursuit of quality: How can automated typesetting achieve the highest standards of craft typography? In Christine Vanoirbeek and Giovanni Coray, editors, *EP92—Proceedings of Electronic Publishing*, '92, pages 261–273, Cambridge, 1992. Cambridge University Press.

15-7-4

¹In this and all following bibliography examples we suppress the heading that is normally placed in front of entries to save some space.

<i>Style Name</i>	<i>Description</i>
<code>kluwer.bst</code>	Kluwer Academic Publishers BibTeX style
<code>named.bst</code>	BibTeX style with [author(s), year] type of citation; requires the named support package
<code>namunsrt.bst</code>	Named variant of <code>unsrt</code> BibTeX style
<code>nar.bst</code>	<i>Nucleic Acid Research</i> BibTeX style; this style needs the nar support package
<code>nature.bst</code>	<i>Nature</i> BibTeX style; this style requires the nature support package
<code>newapa.bst</code>	Modification of <code>apalike.bst</code> ; needs the newapa support package
<code>newcastle.bst</code>	Newcastle University BibTeX style; to be used with natbib
<code>noTeX.bst</code>	Style to generate HTML output instead of TeX input

Table 15.9: Selected BibTeX style files (K–N)

Many BibTeX styles implement smaller or larger variations of the layouts produced by the standard styles. For example, the `phaip` style for American Institute of Physics journals implements an unsorted layout (i.e., by order of first citation) but omits article titles, uses abbreviated author names, and uses a different structure for denoting editors in proceedings. Note that the entry with more than three authors has now been collapsed, showing only the first one.

- [1] D. E. Knuth, TUGboat **10**, 31 (1989).
- [2] Free Software Foundation, Boston, Massachusetts, *GNU Make, A Program for Directing Re-compilation*, 2000.
- [3] F. Mittelbach and C. Rowley, The pursuit of quality: How can automated typesetting achieve the highest standards of craft typography?, in *EP92—Proceedings of Electronic Publishing*, '92, edited by C. Vanoirbeek and G. Coray, pages 261–273, Cambridge, 1992, Cambridge University Press.
- [4] D. E. Knuth, *The TeXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*, Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986.
- [5] M. Goossens et al., Ambiguous citations, Submitted to the IBM J. Res. Dev., 1997.

15-7-5

Many of the journal and publisher styles, such as `phaip` used above, are not part of the standard L^AT_EX distributions but available only from the journal or publisher websites. They may also be stored on CTAN but often not in their latest version. Thus, if you intend to publish in a specific journal, check out the website of the publisher to make sure you use their current BibTeX style file and not an obsolete version.

If we turn to styles implementing an author-date scheme, the layout usually changes more drastically. For instance, numeric labels are normally suppressed (after

<i>Style Name</i>	<i>Description</i>
phaip.bst	<i>American Institute of Physics</i> journals BibTeX style
phapalik.bst	American Psychology Association BibTeX style
phcpc.bst	<i>Computer Physics Communications</i> BibTeX style
phiaea.bst	Conferences of the International Atomic Energy Agency BibTeX style
phjcp.bst	<i>Journal of Computational Physics</i> BibTeX style
phnf.bst	<i>Nuclear Fusion</i> BibTeX style
phnplet.bst	<i>Nuclear Fusion Letters</i> BibTeX style
phpf.bst	<i>Physics of Fluids</i> BibTeX style
phppcf.bst	Physics version of apalike BibTeX style
phreport.bst	Internal physics reports BibTeX style
phrmp.bst	<i>Reviews of Modern Physics</i> BibTeX style
plain.bst	Standard BibTeX style
plainnat.bst	natbib variant of plain style
plainyr.bst	plain BibTeX style with primary sort by year
siam.bst	Society of Industrial and Applied Mathematics BibTeX style
unsrt.bst	Standard BibTeX style
unsrtnat.bst	natbib variant of unsrt style

Table 15.10: Selected BibTeX style files (P–U)

all, the lookup process is by author). The `chicago` style, for example, displays the author name or names in abbreviated form (first name reversed), followed by the date in parentheses. In addition, we see yet another way to handle the editors in proceedings, and instead of the word “pages”, we get “pp.” For this example we loaded the `natbib` package to enable author-date support.

Free Software Foundation (2000). *GNU Make, A Program for Directing Recompilation*. Boston, Massachusetts: Free Software Foundation.

Goossens, M., B. User, J. Doe, et al. (1997). Ambiguous citations. Submitted to the IBM J. Res. Dev.

Knuth, D. E. (1986). *The T_EXbook*, Volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley.

Knuth, D. E. (1989, April). Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. *TUGboat* 10(1), 31–36.

Mittelbach, F. and C. Rowley (1992). The pursuit of quality: How can automated typesetting achieve the highest standards of craft typography? In C. Vanoirbeek and G. Coray (Eds.), *EP92—Proceedings of Electronic Publishing, '92*, Cambridge, pp. 261–273. Cambridge University Press.

As a final example we present another type of layout that is implemented with the help of the `jurabib` package. Because more customizing is necessary, we show the input used once more. The trick used to suppress the heading is *not* suitable for use in real documents because the space around the heading would be retained!

```
\usepackage[bibformat=ibidem]{jurabib}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib} \jbuseidemhrule % use default rule
\renewcommand\refname{} % suppress heading for the example
\nocite{Knuth:TB10-1-31,GNUMake,MR-PQ,Knuth-CT-a,test97,LGC97}
\bibliography{t1c,t1c-ex}
```

This produces a layout in which the author name is replaced by a rule if it has been listed previously. In the case of multiple authors, the complete list has to be identical (see the first two entries). Also, for the first time, the International Standard Book Number (ISBN) and International Standard Serial Number (ISSN) are shown when present in the entry. If you look closely, you see many other smaller and larger differences. For example, this is the first style that does not convert titles of articles and proceeding entries to lowercase but rather keeps them as specified in the database.

Because the original application field for `jurabib` was law citations, it is one of the few \LaTeX styles that do not provide default strings for the journals listed in Table 15.6 on page 403; if you need any of them, you have to provide them yourself. \LaTeX warns you about the missing string in this case. You can then provide a definition for it in the database file or, if you prefer, in a separate database file that is loaded only if necessary.

Goossens, Michel/Rahtz, Sebastian/Mittelbach, Frank: The \LaTeX Graphics Companion: Illustrating Documents with \TeX and PostScript. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley Longman, 1997, Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting, xxi + 554, ISBN 0-201-85469-4

Goossens, Michel et al.: Ambiguous citations. 1997, Submitted to the IBM J. Res. Dev.

Knuth, Donald E.: The \TeX book. Volume A, Computers and Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, 1986, ix + 483, ISBN 0-201-13447-0

—— Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. TUGboat, 10 April 1989, Nr. 1, 31-36, ISSN 0896-3207

Free Software Foundation: GNU Make, A Program for Directing Recompilation. 2000

Mittelbach, Frank/Rowley, Chris: The Pursuit of Quality: How can Automated Typesetting achieve the Highest Standards of Craft Typography? In **Vanoirbeek, Christine/Coray, Giovanni, editors:** EP92—Proceedings of Electronic Publishing, '92. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1992, 261-273

15-7-7

If you wonder about the strange placement of the GNU Make manual entry, recall that this entry has no author but has a key specified, which is the reason for this placement when using the `jurabib` style.

<i>Requirement</i>	<i>Example</i>
Full name surname last	Donald Ervin Knuth/Michael Frederick Plass
Full name surname first	Knuth, Donald Ervin/Plass, Michael Frederick
Initials and surname	D. E. Knuth/M. F. Plass
Surname and initials	Knuth, D. E./Plass, M. F.
Surname and dotless initials	Knuth D E/Plass M F
Surname and concatenated initials	Knuth DE/Plass MF
Surname and spaceless initials	Knuth D.E./Plass M.F.
Only first author reversed with initials	Knuth, D. E./M. F. Plass
Only first author reversed with full names	Knuth, Donald Ervin/Michael Frederick Plass

Table 15.11: Requirements for formatting names

15.7.2 custom-bib — Generate \LaTeX styles with ease

So far, we have discussed how to influence the layout of the bibliography by using different bibliography styles. If a particular \LaTeX style is recommended for the journal or publisher you are writing for, then that is all that is necessary. However, a more likely scenario is that you have been equipped with a detailed set of instructions, which tells you how references should be formatted, but without pointing you to any specific \LaTeX style — a program that may not even be known at the publishing house.

Of course, hunting for an existing style that fits the bill or can be adjusted slightly to do so is an option, but given that there are usually several variations in use for each typographical detail, the possibilities are enormous, and thus the chances of finding a suitable style are remote.

Consider, for example, the nine common requirements for presenting author names in Table 15.11. Combining these with a specification for the separation symbol to use (e.g., comma, semicolon, slash), the fonts to use for author names (i.e., roman, bold, small capitals, italic, other), and perhaps a requirement for different fonts for surname and first names, you end up with more than 500 different styles — just for presenting author names in the bibliography. Clearly, this combinatorial explosion cannot be managed by providing predefined styles for every combination.

Faced with this problem, Patrick Daly, the author of `natbib`, started in 1993 to develop a system that is capable of providing customized \LaTeX styles by collecting answers to questions like the above (more than 70!) and then building a customized `.bst` file corresponding to the answers.

The system works in two phases: (1) a collection phase in which questions are interactively asked and (2) a generation phase in which the answers are used to build the \LaTeX style. Both phases are entirely done by using \LaTeX and thus can be carried out on any platform without requiring any additional helper program.

The collection is started by running the program `makebst.tex` through \LaTeX and answering the questions posed to you. Most of the questions are presented in

the form of menus that offer several answers. The default answer is marked with a * and can be selected by simply pressing *<return>*. Other choices can be selected by typing the letter in parentheses in front of the option. Selecting a letter not present produces the default choice.

Initializing the system

We now walk you through the first questions, which are somewhat special because they are used to initialize the system. Each time we indicate the suggested answer.

Do you want a description of the usage? (NO)

Replying with y produces a description of the procedure (as explained above); otherwise, the question has no effect.

Enter the name of the MASTER file (default=merlin.mbs)

Here the correct answer is *<return>*. The default merlin.mbs is currently the only production master file available, though this might change one day.

Name of the final OUTPUT .bst file? (default extension=bst)

Specify the name for your new BibTeX style file, without an extension — for example, ttct (Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting series). As a result of completing the first phase, you then receive a file called ttct.dbj from which the BibTeX style file ttct.bst is produced in the second phase.

Give a comment line to include in the style file.
Something like for which journals it is applicable.

Enter any free-form text you like, but note that a *<return>* ends the comment. It is carried over into the resulting files and can help you at a later stage to identify the purpose of this BibTeX style.

Do you want verbose comments? (NO)

If you enter y to this question, the context of later questions is shown in the following form:

```
<<STYLE OF CITATIONS:
...
>>STYLE OF CITATIONS:
```

Whether this provides any additional help is something you have to decide for yourself. The default is not to provide this extra information.

Name of language definition file (default=merlin.mbs)

If you are generating a BibTeX style for a language other than English, you can enter the name of the language here. Table 15.12 on the opposite page lists currently supported languages. Otherwise, reply with `<return>`.

Include file(s) for extra journal names? (NO)

By answering y you can load predefined journal names for certain disciplines into the BibTeX style. You are then asked to specify the files containing these predefined names (with suitable defaults given).

This concludes the first set of questions for initializing the system. What follows are many questions that offer choices concerning layout and functional details. These can be classified into three categories:

Citation scheme The choice made here influences later questions. If you choose author-date support, for example, you get different questions than if you choose a numerical scheme.

Extensions These questions are related to extending the set of supported BibTeX fields, such as whether to include a `url` field.

Typographical details You are asked to make choices about how to format specific parts of the bibliographical entries. Several of the choices depend on the citation scheme used.

While it is possible to change your selections in the second phase of the processing (or to start all over again), it is best to have a clear idea about which citation scheme and which extensions are desired before beginning the interactive session. The typographical details can be adjusted far more easily in the second phase if that becomes necessary. We therefore discuss these main choices in some detail.

Selecting the citation scheme

The citation scheme is selected by answering the following question:

STYLE OF CITATIONS:

- (*) Numerical as in standard LaTeX
- (a) Author-year with some non-standard interface
- (b) Alpha style, Jon90 or JWB90 for single or multiple authors
- (o) Alpha style, Jon90 even for multiple authors
- (f) Alpha style, Jones90 (full name of first author)
- (c) Cite key (special for listing contents of bib file)

The default choice is “numerical”. If you want to produce a style for the author-date scheme, select a (and disregard the mentioning of “nonstandard interface”). For alpha-style citations, use either b, o, or f depending on the label style you prefer. Choice c is of interest only if you want to produce a style for displaying BibTeX databases, so do not select it for production styles.

catalan	Language support for Catalan	italian	Language support for Italian
dansk	Language support for Danish	norsk	Language support for Norwegian
dutch	Language support for Dutch	polski	Language support for Polish
esperant	Language support for Esperanto	portuges	Language support for Portuguese
finnish	Language support for Finnish	slovene	Language support for Slovene
french	Language support for French	spanish	Language support for Spanish
german	Language support for German		

Table 15.12: Language support in custom-bib

If the default (i.e., a numerical citation scheme) was selected, the follow-up question reads:

```
HTML OUTPUT (if non author-year citations)
(*) Normal LaTeX output
(h) Hypertext output, in HTML code, in paragraphs
(n) Hypertext list with sequence numbers
(k) Hypertext with keys for viewing databases
```

Select the default. All other choices generate BibTeX styles that produce some sort of HTML output (which needs further manipulation before it can be viewed in browsers). This feature is considered experimental.

If you have selected an author-date citation scheme (i.e., a), you are rewarded with a follow-up question for deciding on the support interface from within L^AT_EX:

```
AUTHOR--YEAR SUPPORT SYSTEM (if author-year citations)
(*) Natbib for use with natbib v5.3 or later
(o) Older Natbib without full authors citations
(l) Apalike for use with apalike.sty
(h) Harvard system with harvard.sty
(a) Astronomy system with astron.sty
(c) Chicago system with chicago.sty
(n) Named system with named.sty
(d) Author-date system with authordate1-4.sty
```

The default choice, natbib, is usually the best, offering all the possibilities described in Sections 16.3.2 and 16.4.1. The option o should *not* be selected. If you have documents using citation commands from, say, the harvard package (see Example 16-3-4 on page 490), the option h would be suitable. For the same reason, the other options might be the right choice in certain circumstances. However, for document portability, natbib should be the preferred choice. Note in particular that some of the other packages mentioned in the options are no longer distributed in the mainstream L^AT_EX installation.

Determining the extensions supported

Besides supporting the standard B \TeX entry types (Table 15.1 on page 386) and fields (Tables 15.3/4 on pages 388–389), `makebst.tex` can be directed to support additional fields as optional fields in the databases so that they are used if present. Some of these extensions are turned off by default, even though it makes sense to include them in nearly every B \TeX style file.

LANGUAGE FIELD

- (*) No language field
- (l) Add language field to switch hyphenation patterns temporarily

Replying with `l` greatly helps in presenting foreign titles properly. If you additionally specify a nonstandard language key in your `.bib` files in all entries that have foreign titles or notes, then such entries temporarily switch to the specified language, using Babel's `\selectlanguage` command. If you use the `.bib` file with a different style that does not know about language, the key is ignored as usual. Thus, a deviation from the default is suggested.

ANNOTATIONS:

- (*) No annotations will be recognized
- (a) Annotations in `annotate` field or in `.tex` file of `citekey` name

Choosing `a` integrates support for an `annotate` field in the `.bst` file as well as support for including annotations stored in files of the form `<citekey>.tex`. However, in contrast to `jurabib`, which also offers this feature, the inclusion cannot be suppressed or activated using a package option. Given that you quite likely want this feature turned on and off depending on the document, you might be best served by using two separate B \TeX styles differing only in this respect.

The nonstandard field `eid` (electronic identifier) is automatically supported by all generated styles. The fields `doi`, `isbn`, and `issn` are included by default but can be deselected. Especially for supporting the REV \TeX package from the American Physical Society, a number of other fields can be added.

Finally, support for URLs can be added by answering the following question with something different from the default:

URL ADDRESS: (without REV \TeX fields)

- (*) No URL for electronic (Internet) documents
- (u) Include URL as regular item block
- (n) URL as note
- (l) URL on new line after rest of reference


We suggest including support for URLs because references to electronic resources are common now. In the bibliography the URL is tagged with `\urlprefix\url{field-value}`, with default definitions for both commands. By loading the `url` package, better line breaking can be achieved.

As one of the last questions you are offered the following choice:

COMPATIBILITY WITH PLAIN TEX:

- (*) Use LaTeX commands which may not work with Plain TeX
- (t) Use only Plain TeX commands for fonts and testing

We strongly recommend retaining the default! L^AT_EX 2_ε is more than three decades old, and NFSS should have found its way into every living room. Besides, the plain T_EX commands (`\rm`, `\bf`, and so on) are no longer officially part of L^AT_EX. They may be defined by a document class (for compatibility reasons with L^AT_EX 2.09) — but then they may not. Thus, choosing the obsolete syntax may result in the B_BT_EX style not functioning properly in all circumstances.

 Always choose the default option here: the other may not work reliably!

Note that the questions about the extensions are mixed with those about typographical details and do not necessarily appear in the order presented here.

Specifying the typographical details

The remaining questions (of which there are plenty) concern typographical details, such as formatting author names, presenting journal information, and many more topics. As an example we show the question block that deals with the formatting of article titles:

TITLE OF ARTICLE:

- (*) Title plain with no special font
- (i) Title italic (`\em`)
- (q) Title and punctuation in single quotes (`'Title,'` ..)
- (d) Title and punctuation in double quotes (`\enquote{Title,}` ..)
- (g) Title and punctuation in guillemets (`<<Title,>>` ..)
- (x) Title in single quotes (`'Title',` ..)
- (y) Title in double quotes (`\enquote{Title},` ..)
- (z) Title in guillemets (`<<Title>>,` ..)

If you make the wrong choice with any of them, do not despair. You can correct your mistake in the second phase of the processing as explained below.

Generating the B_BT_EX style from the collected answers

The result of running `makebst.tex` through L^AT_EX and answering all these questions is a new file with the extension `.dbj`. It contains all your selections in a special form suitable to be processed by DOCSTRIP, which in turn produces the final B_BT_EX style (see Section 17.2 for a description of the DOCSTRIP program). Technically speaking, a B_BT_EX bibliographic style file master (`merlin.mbs` by default) contains alternative coding that depends on DOCSTRIP options. By choosing entries from the interactive menus discussed above, some of this code is activated, thereby providing the necessary customization.

If you specified `ttct` in response to the question for the new `.bst` file, for example, you would now have a file `ttct.dbj` at your disposal. Hence, all that is

necessary to generate the final \LaTeX style `ttct.bst` is to run

```
latex ttct.dbj
```

The content of the `.dbj` files generated from the first phase is well documented and presented in a form that makes further adjustments quite simple. Suppose you have answered `y` in response to the question about the title of articles on the previous page (i.e., use double quotes around the title), but you really should have replied with `d` (use double quotes around title and punctuation). Then all you have to do is open the `.dbj` file with a text editor and search for the block that deals with article titles:

```
%-----
%TITLE OF ARTICLE:
%  %: (def) Title plain
% tit-it,%: Title italic
% tit-qq,qt-s,%: Title and punctuation in single quotes
% tit-qq,%: Title and punctuation in double quotes
% tit-qq,qt-g,%: Title and punctuation in guillemets
% tit-qq,qt-s,qx,%: Title in single quotes
% tit-qq,qx,%: Title in double quotes
% tit-qq,qt-g,qx,%: Title in guillemets
%-----
```

Changing the behavior then entails nothing more than uncommenting the line you want and commenting out the line currently selected:

```
%-----
%TITLE OF ARTICLE:
%  %: (def) Title plain
% tit-it,%: Title italic
% tit-qq,qt-s,%: Title and punctuation in single quotes
% tit-qq,%: Title and punctuation in double quotes
% tit-qq,qt-g,%: Title and punctuation in guillemets
% tit-qq,qt-s,qx,%: Title in single quotes
% tit-qq,qx,%: Title in double quotes
% tit-qq,qt-g,qx,%: Title in guillemets
%-----
```

After that, rerun the file through \LaTeX to obtain an updated \LaTeX style.

15.7.3 An overview of biblatex styles

In the final section of this chapter we present a fairly comprehensive overview of biblatex styles in the form of short examples to help you find a style that fits your requirements, or at least one that is close and requires only minor customizations. We start with a short description of how styles are implemented and how the styles have been classified.

The main package option is the key `style`, which takes a *name* as its value. If given, `biblatex` loads the file *name*.`bbx`, which contains the settings for the formatting of the bibliography, and the file *name*.`cbx`, which contains the settings for the formatting of the citations. Both files must exist. If present, *name*.`dbx` is loaded too: this file can contain settings that extend the data model and, for example, declare new entry types or fields. Alternatively, you can set styles for citations and the bibliography independently, using the keys `citestyle` and `bibstyle`; then only a `.cbx` or `.bbx` is loaded. By default `biblatex` loads the `numeric` style.

Loading a style

The style files contain \LaTeX code and definitions that are used during the \LaTeX compilation. Various aspects can be adjusted through options, configuration commands, or with redefinitions, both in documents or when creating a new style based on an existing style. This makes them much more flexible than \BibTeX styles.

The following two examples demonstrate this. They are both based on the style `authoryear`, but the second has a number of changes made for illustration purposes — not necessarily for the better! First the default version:

References

- Knuth, Donald E. (1986). *The \TeX book*. Vol. A. Computers and Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, pp. ix + 483. ISBN: 0-201-13447-0.
- (Apr. 1989). “Typesetting Concrete Mathematics”. In: *TUGboat* 10.1, pp. 31–36. ISSN: 0896-3207.

15-7-8

```
\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{t1c.bib}

\nocite{Knuth:TB10-1-31,Knuth-CT-a}
\printbibliography
```

In the second example we suppress the dashes and the ISBN, use initials instead of full author names, alter the format of dates, change the sorting, and adapt the title and the punctuation. We also declare that the overall document language is German (through the call to `babel`) — this affects not only the heading but also the prefix of the page numbers. Note that making such changes may require you to rerun `biber`. In other words, some take effect only if the `.bbl` file is regenerated, e.g., changing the sorting typically requires a reprocessing of the bibliography input.

Literatur

- Knuth, D. E. (1989-04); „Typesetting Concrete Mathematics“; in: *TUGboat* 10.1, S. 31–36.
- Knuth, D. E. (1986); **The \TeX book**; Bd. A; Computers and Typesetting; Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, S. ix + 483.

15-7-9

```
\usepackage[ngerman]{babel}
\usepackage{csquotes}
\usepackage[style=authoryear,
  date=iso,dashed=false,isbn=false,
  sorting=none,giveninits]{biblatex}
\DeclareFieldFormat{title}{\mkbibbold{#1}}
\renewcommand\newunitpunct{%
  \addsemicolon\addspace}
\addbibresource{t1c.bib}

\nocite{Knuth:TB10-1-31,Knuth-CT-a}
\printbibliography
```

This flexibility can make it difficult to choose a suitable style as starting point, because it is not always clear which parts are easy to adapt and which not. A rule of thumb: changing the order of fields is more difficult than adapting fonts and punctuation.

How to choose a style

Classification of
styles

We now present various packages that offer one or more biblatex styles. The list is restricted to packages available on CTAN — more can be found on the Internet or in local installations. The packages have been roughly classified into the following six categories:

Collections of generic styles (*starting on page 435*) Bundles that provide flexible styles with various options and interfaces to adapt them to local requirements.

Implementation of style guides (*starting on page 439*) Bundles that implement a style as promoted by style manuals like the *Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association (APA)* [6] or *The Chicago Manual of Style* [40].

University styles (*starting on page 445*) Bundles that implement the requirements of some university or faculty.

Journal styles (*starting on page 455*) Bundles implementing the style requirements of some journal.

Extensions (*starting on page 461*) Bundles whose main purpose is to extend the data model and to add new field or entry types.

Other styles (*starting on page 464*) These are bundles not fitting in one of the other categories.

Notes
on the following
biblatex samples



For every bundle we start with a short description and a rough classification of the citation systems it supports. We then list the names of the styles it offers: typically both a citation and the bibliography style is provided, and the names can be used with the `style` key, but in some cases only a citation or bibliography style exists, which can be set only with `citestyle` or `bibstyle` — these are listed separately. If `.bbx` and `.cbx` files contain only internal code (for example, `standard.bbx`), then they are not listed, because they are not meant to be used directly in a document.

This is then followed by sample output of a representative selection of the bundle styles (but not necessarily from *all* styles of the bundle). With a few exceptions — as noted in the bundle descriptions — the examples all use the same preamble, i.e.,

```
\usepackage[style={style}]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc-biblatex-special.bib}
```

The entries in the `tlc-biblatex-special.bib` file are based on existing entries from `biblatex-examples.bib`,¹ but names, titles, and annotations have been shortened to save space.

The document body contains four citations: the first is to an article with two authors, then we reference the same book twice to show how the style handles such repetitions, and finally we cite another work of the same author to exhibit how this is formatted in the bibliography — some styles use dashes, others abbreviations like “ders.” (short for the German word “derselbe”) or “idem”, yet others simply repeat

¹This is a sample `.bib` file provided by the biblatex package.

the author name. We use `\cite` for the first reference (to show what that command does) and `\textcite` for the remaining ones, because this command typically gives footnotes with verbose styles and so gives a better impression of the styles.¹

The text is wrapped in a `\textcolor` command so that it appears in blue, which helps in distinguishing main text from bibliography list output, given that we suppress the list header. After the citations the bibliography is printed (without a heading to save space). Thus, the body for each example looks as follows:

```
\textcolor{blue}{See \cite{zar2099}           % Show what \cite does compared to
and \textcite[4-8]{cole1983}             % \textcite for the other references
and again                               % Check how a repeat and the same
\textcite{cole1983,cole1995}}           % author with a different work are handled
\printbibliography[heading=none]
```

15.7.4 Generic styles

The bundles in this category provide a large variety of standard style types with various options and interfaces to adapt them to local requirements. Two prominent examples are the `biblatex` bundle itself and the `biblatex-ext` bundle. The styles are kept up-to-date and are good starting points if you want to create your own style or want to learn what is needed to create a style. They are loaded and then modified by many other styles.

biblatex *Philip Kime, Philipp Lehman* The `biblatex` package comes with a large number of easy-to-customize styles. There is a matching bibliography style for every citation style, but note that many bibliography styles are only small wrappers around a base style. For example, the bibliography style `authortitle-comp` loads the `authortitle` style. So these styles differ only in the formatting of the citation.

Citation systems: various

Styles: `alphabetic`, `alphabetic-verb`, `authortitle`, `authortitle-comp`, `authortitle-ibid`, `authortitle-icomp`, `authortitle-tcomp`, `authortitle-terse`, `authortitle-ticomp`, `authoryear`, `authoryear-comp`, `authoryear-ibid`, `authoryear-icomp`, `debug`, `draft`, `numeric`, `numeric-comp`, `numeric-verb`, `reading`, `verbose`, `verbose-ibid`, `verbose-inote`, `verbose-note`, `verbose-trad1`, `verbose-trad2`, `verbose-trad3`

Style samples:

See [ZL99] and Cole [Col83, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [Col83; Col95]

- [Col83] Sam Ted Cole. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.
- [Col95] Sam Ted Cole. *Remake of Life story*. 1995.
- [ZL99] Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: *Theory* 12 (2099), pp. 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

alphabetic

15-7-10

¹The various citation commands are described in more detail in Section 16.7.3.

author	See Zar and Lau, “Algebra” and Cole (<i>Life story</i> , pp. 4–8) and again Cole (<i>Life story</i>) and Cole (<i>Remake</i>) Cole, Sam Ted. <i>The cool works of Sam Ted Cole</i> . Vol. 7.2: <i>Life story, or Biographical sketches</i> . Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983. – <i>Remake of Life story</i> . 1995. Zar, Zoë C. and Adam D. Lau. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: <i>Theory 12</i> (2009), pp. 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.	15-7-11
authoryear	See Zar and Lau 2009 and Cole (1983, pp. 4–8) and again Cole (1983) and Cole (1995) Cole, Sam Ted (1983). <i>The cool works of Sam Ted Cole</i> . Vol. 7.2: <i>Life story, or Biographical sketches</i> . Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul. – (1995). <i>Remake of Life story</i> . Zar, Zoë C. and Adam D. Lau (2009). “Algebra”. Version 3. In: <i>Theory 12</i> , pp. 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.	15-7-12
draft	See zar2009 and Cole (cole1983, pp. 4–8) and again Cole (cole1983); Cole (cole1995) cole1983 Sam Ted Cole. <i>The cool works of Sam Ted Cole</i> . Vol. 7.2: <i>Life story, or Biographical sketches</i> . Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983. cole1995 Sam Ted Cole. <i>Remake of Life story</i> . 1995. zar2009 Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: <i>Theory 12</i> (2009), pp. 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.	15-7-13
numeric	See [3] and Cole [1, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [1, 2] [1] Sam Ted Cole. <i>The cool works of Sam Ted Cole</i> . Vol. 7.2: <i>Life story, or Biographical sketches</i> . Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983. [2] Sam Ted Cole. <i>Remake of Life story</i> . 1995. [3] Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: <i>Theory 12</i> (2009), pp. 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.	15-7-14

The following style is the first example of a reading style. Such styles are designed for personal reading lists and annotated bibliographies.

reading	See Zar and Lau, “Algebra” and Cole (<i>Life story</i> , pp. 4–8) and again Cole (<i>Life story</i>) and Cole (<i>Remake</i>) Cole: Life story cole1983 Sam Ted Cole. <i>The cool works of Sam Ted Cole</i> . Vol. 7.2: <i>Life story, or Biographical sketches</i> . Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983. Annotations: One (partial) volume of a multivolume book. Cole: Remake cole1995 Sam Ted Cole. <i>Remake of Life story</i> . 1995. Zar et al.: Algebra zar2009 Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: <i>Theory 12</i> (2009), pp. 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13. Annotations: An article with eprint and eprinttype fields.	15-7-15
---------	--	---------

The next style is the first example of a verbose style where a full reference is given the first time a work is cited, normally in a footnote. Note the difference between the `\cite` and the `\textcite` behavior.

See Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: *Theory* 12 (2009), pp. 423–491. arXiv: [math/9901.4711v13](#) and Cole¹ and again Cole²

Cole, Sam Ted. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.

– *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

Zar, Zoë C. and Adam D. Lau. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: *Theory* 12 (2009), pp. 423–491. arXiv: [math/9901.4711v13](#).

verbose

¹Sam Ted Cole. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983, pp. 4–8.

²Cole, *Life story*; Sam Ted Cole. *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

15-7-16

biblatex-ext Moritz Wernheuer Extended and improved versions of the standard styles that ship with biblatex. There is a matching bibliography style for every citation style. Most bibliography styles are only small wrappers around the base styles shown in the samples.

Citation systems: various

Styles: `ext-alphabetic`, `ext-alphabetic-verb`, `ext-authortitle`,
`ext-authortitle-comp`, `ext-authortitle-ibid`, `ext-authortitle-icom`,
`ext-authortitle-tcomp`, `ext-authortitle-terse`, `ext-authortitle-ticomp`,
`ext-authoryear`, `ext-authoryear-comp`, `ext-authoryear-ecom`,
`ext-authoryear-ibid`, `ext-authoryear-icom`, `ext-authoryear-iecomp`,
`ext-authoryear-tcomp`, `ext-authoryear-tecomp`, `ext-authoryear-terse`,
`ext-authoryear-ticomp`, `ext-authoryear-tiecomp`, `ext-numeric`,
`ext-numeric-comp`, `ext-numeric-verb`, `ext-verbose`, `ext-verbose-ibid`,
`ext-verbose-inote`, `ext-verbose-note`, `ext-verbose-trad1`,
`ext-verbose-trad2`, `ext-verbose-trad3`

Bib styles: `ext-authornumber`, `ext-authornumber-comp`, `ext-authornumber-ecom`,
`ext-authornumber-icom`, `ext-authornumber-tcomp`, `ext-authornumber-tecomp`,
`ext-authornumber-terse`

Style samples:

See [ZL99] and Cole [Col83, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [Col83; Col95]

[Col83] Sam Ted Cole. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.

[Col95] Sam Ted Cole. *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

[ZL99] Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: *Theory* 12 (2009), pp. 423–491. arXiv: [math/9901.4711v13](#).

ext-alphabetic

15-7-17

ext-authornumber	<p>See Zar and Lau [1] and Cole [1, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [1] and Cole [2]</p> <p>Cole, Sam Ted [1]. <i>The cool works of Sam Ted Cole</i>. Vol. 7.2: <i>Life story, or Biographical sketches</i>. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.</p> <p>– [2]. <i>Remake of Life story</i>. 1995.</p> <p>Zar, Zoë C. and Adam D. Lau [1]. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: <i>Theory 12</i> (2099), pp. 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.</p>	15-7-18
ext-authortitle	<p>See Zar and Lau, “Algebra” and Cole (<i>Life story</i>, pp. 4–8) and again Cole (<i>Life story</i>) and Cole (<i>Remake</i>)</p> <p>Cole, Sam Ted. <i>The cool works of Sam Ted Cole</i>. Vol. 7.2: <i>Life story, or Biographical sketches</i>. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.</p> <p>– <i>Remake of Life story</i>. 1995.</p> <p>Zar, Zoë C. and Adam D. Lau. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: <i>Theory 12</i> (2099), pp. 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.</p>	15-7-19
ext-authoryear	<p>See Zar and Lau 2099 and Cole (1983, pp. 4–8) and again Cole (1983) and Cole (1995)</p> <p>Cole, Sam Ted (1983). <i>The cool works of Sam Ted Cole</i>. Vol. 7.2: <i>Life story, or Biographical sketches</i>. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul.</p> <p>– (1995). <i>Remake of Life story</i>.</p> <p>Zar, Zoë C. and Adam D. Lau (2099). “Algebra”. Version 3. In: <i>Theory 12</i>, pp. 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.</p>	15-7-20
ext-numeric	<p>See [3] and Cole [1, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [1, 2]</p> <p>[1] Sam Ted Cole. <i>The cool works of Sam Ted Cole</i>. Vol. 7.2: <i>Life story, or Biographical sketches</i>. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.</p> <p>[2] Sam Ted Cole. <i>Remake of Life story</i>. 1995.</p> <p>[3] Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: <i>Theory 12</i> (2099), pp. 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.</p>	15-7-21
ext-verbose	<p>See Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: <i>Theory 12</i> (2099), pp. 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13 and Cole¹ and again Cole²</p> <p>Cole, Sam Ted. <i>The cool works of Sam Ted Cole</i>. Vol. 7.2: <i>Life story, or Biographical sketches</i>. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.</p> <p>– <i>Remake of Life story</i>. 1995.</p> <p>Zar, Zoë C. and Adam D. Lau. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: <i>Theory 12</i> (2099), pp. 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.</p>	15-7-22

biblatex-trad Moritz Wemheuer Styles reimplementing some of the traditional BibTeX styles (abbrv, alpha, plain, and unsrt).

Citation systems: various

Styles: trad-abbrv, trad-alpha, trad-plain, trad-unsrt

Style samples:

See [3] and Cole [1, pages 4–8] and again Cole [1, 2]

- [1] S. T. Cole. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Volume 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. K. Cob, J. Eng, and W. J. Bate, editors, number 75 in *Boll Series*. Rout and Paul, London, 1983.
- [2] S. T. Cole. *Remake of Life story*. 1995.
- [3] Z. C. Zar and A. D. Lau. Algebra. Version 3. *Theory*, 12:423–491, 2099. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

trad-abbrev

See [ZL99] and Cole [Col83, pages 4–8] and again Cole [Col83; Col95]

- [Col83] Sam Ted Cole. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Volume 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate, editors, number 75 in *Boll Series*. Rout and Paul, London, 1983.
- [Col95] Sam Ted Cole. *Remake of Life story*. 1995.
- [ZL99] Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau. Algebra. Version 3. *Theory*, 12:423–491, 2099. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

trad-alpha

See [3] and Cole [1, pages 4–8] and again Cole [1, 2]

- [1] Sam Ted Cole. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Volume 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate, editors, number 75 in *Boll Series*. Rout and Paul, London, 1983.
- [2] Sam Ted Cole. *Remake of Life story*. 1995.
- [3] Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau. Algebra. Version 3. *Theory*, 12:423–491, 2099. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

trad-plain

See [1] and Cole [2, pages 4–8] and again Cole [2, 3]

- [1] Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau. Algebra. Version 3. *Theory*, 12:423–491, 2099. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.
- [2] Sam Ted Cole. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Volume 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate, editors, number 75 in *Boll Series*. Rout and Paul, London, 1983.
- [3] Sam Ted Cole. *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

trad-unsorted

15.7.5 Implementations of style guides

The bundles in this category implement styles promoted by important style manuals. They often contain quite complex styles with fixed settings, implemented with low-level coding. Some of them require special loading or nonstandard settings in the document, so the documentation should be consulted before use. They are good styles if used as is, but changing them can be difficult and requires some programming skills.

biblatex-apa Philip Kime Style implementing the APA (American Psychological Association) style.

Citation system: author-date *Style:* apa

Style sample:

- See Zar and Lau, 2099 and Cole (1983, pp. 4–8) and again Cole (1983, 1995)
- apa Cole, S. T. (1983). *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 72. *Life story, or Biographical sketches* (K. Cob, J. Eng, & W. J. Bate, Eds.; Vol. 7). Rout and Paul.
One (partial) volume of a multivolume book.
- Cole, S. T. (1995). *Remake of life story*.
- Zar, Z. C., & Lau, A. D. (2099). Algebra. *Theory*, 12, 423–491
An article with eprint and eprinttype fields.

15-7-27

biblatex-chicago David Fussner Styles implementing the specifications of *The Chicago Manual of Style*; see windycity for an alternative. To load the styles use the biblatex-chicago package and its options authordate, authordate-trad, or notes, e.g.,

```
\usepackage[authordate]{biblatex-chicago}
```

Citation systems: author-date, verbose

Styles: chicago-authordate, chicago-authordate-trad, chicago-notes

Style samples:

- See Zar and Lau 2099 and Cole (1983, 4–8) and again Cole (1983, 1995)
- chicago-
authordate Cole, Sam Ted. 1983. *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Vol. 7, bk. 2 of *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, edited by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul.
———. 1995. *Remake of Life story*.
- Zar, Zoë C., and Adam D. Lau. 2099. “Algebra.” *Theory* 12:423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

15-7-28

- See Zar and Lau 2099 and Cole (1983, 4–8) and again Cole (1983, 1995)
- chicago-
authordate-trad Cole, Sam Ted. 1983. *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Vol. 7, bk. 2 of *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, edited by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul.
———. 1995. *Remake of life story*.
- Zar, Zoë C., and Adam D. Lau. 2099. Algebra. *Theory* 12:423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

15-7-29

- See Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau, “Algebra,” *Theory* 12 (2099): 423–491, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13 and Cole¹ and again Cole²
- chicago-notes Cole, Sam Ted. *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Vol. 7, bk. 2 of *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, edited by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.
———. *Remake of Life story*. 1995.
- Zar, Zoë C., and Adam D. Lau. “Algebra.” *Theory* 12 (2099): 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

1. Sam Ted Cole, *Life story, or Biographical sketches*, vol. 7, bk. 2 of *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, ed. Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate, Boll Series 75 (London: Rout and Paul, 1983), 4–8.
2. Cole, *Life story*; Sam Ted Cole, *Remake of Life story* (1995).

15-7-30

biblatex-gb7714-2015 *Hu Zhenzhen* Styles implementing the Chinese GBT7714-2015 bibliography style. The styles need the ctex package, a Unicode engine, and suitable fonts.

Citation system: various

Styles: chinese-erj, gb7714-1987, gb7714-1987ay, gb7714-2005, gb7714-2005ay, gb7714-2015, gb7714-2015ay, gb7714-2015ms, gb7714-2015mx

Bib styles: gb7714-CCNU, gb7714-NWAFU, gb7714-SEU

Style sample: — none shown —

biblatex-gost *Oleg Domanov* Styles implementing the Russian bibliography style GOST.

Citation systems: various

Styles: gost-alphabetic, gost-alphabetic-min, gost-authoryear, gost-authoryear-min, gost-footnote, gost-footnote-min, gost-inline, gost-inline-min, gost-numeric, gost-numeric-min

Style samples:

See [ZL99] and Cole [Col83, p. 4–8] and again Cole [Col83; Col95]

[Col83] *Cole S. T.* The cool works of Sam Ted Cole. Vol. 7. Part 2. Life story, or Biographical sketches / ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng, W. J. Bate. — London : Rout and Paul, 1983. — (Boll Series ; 75).

[Col95] *Cole S. T.* Remake of Life story. — 1995.

gost-alphabetic

15-7-31

[ZL99] *Zar Z. C., Lau A. D.* Algebra // Theory. — 2099. — Vol. 12. — P. 423–491.

See [ZL99] and Cole [Col83, p. 4–8] and again Cole [Col83; Col95]

[Col83] *Cole S. T.* The cool works of Sam Ted Cole. Vol. 7. Part 2. Life story, or Biographical sketches. — London : Rout and Paul, 1983.

[Col95] *Cole S. T.* Remake of Life story. — 1995.

gost-alphabetic-min

15-7-32

[ZL99] *Zar Z. C., Lau A. D.* Algebra // Theory. — 2099. — Vol. 12. — P. 423–491.

See Zar, Lau, 2099 and Cole (1983, p. 4–8) and again Cole (1983; 1995)

Cole S. T. The cool works of Sam Ted Cole. Vol. 7. Part 2. Life story, or Biographical sketches / ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng, W. J. Bate. — London : Rout and Paul, 1983. — (Boll Series ; 75).

Cole S. T. Remake of Life story. — 1995.

Zar Z. C., Lau A. D. Algebra // Theory. — 2099. — Vol. 12. — P. 423–491. — arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

gost-authoryear

15-7-33

See Zar, Lau, 2099 and Cole (1983, p. 4–8) and again Cole (1983; 1995)

Cole S. T. The cool works of Sam Ted Cole. Vol. 7. Part 2. Life story, or Biographical sketches. — London : Rout and Paul, 1983.

Cole S. T. Remake of Life story. — 1995.

Zar Z. C., Lau A. D. Algebra // Theory. — 2099. — Vol. 12. — P. 423–491.

gost-authoryear-min

15-7-34

gost-footnote

See [Zar Z. C., Lau A. D. Algebra // Theory. 2009. Vol. 12. P. 423–491](#) and [Cole S. T.¹](#) and again [Cole S. T.²](#)

Cole S. T. Remake of Life story. — 1995.
Cole S. T. The cool works of Sam Ted Cole. Vol. 7. Part 2. Life story, or Biographical sketches / ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng, W. J. Bate. — London : Rout and Paul, 1983. — (Boll Series ; 75).
Zar Z. C., Lau A. D. Algebra // Theory. — 2009. — Vol. 12. — P. 423–491. — arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

¹*Cole S. T.* The cool works of Sam Ted Cole. Vol. 7. Part 2. Life story, or Biographical sketches / ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng, W. J. Bate. London : Rout and Paul, 1983. (Boll Series ; 75). P. 4–8.
²*Cole S. T.* Life story. Vol. 7, part 2 ; *Cole S. T.* Remake of Life story. 1995.

15-7-35

gost-footnote-
min

See [Zar Z. C., Lau A. D. Algebra // Theory. 2009. Vol. 12. P. 423–491](#) and [Cole S. T.¹](#) and again [Cole S. T.²](#)

Cole S. T. Remake of Life story. — 1995.
Cole S. T. The cool works of Sam Ted Cole. Vol. 7. Part 2. Life story, or Biographical sketches. — London : Rout and Paul, 1983.
Zar Z. C., Lau A. D. Algebra // Theory. — 2009. — Vol. 12. — P. 423–491.

¹*Cole S. T.* The cool works of Sam Ted Cole. Vol. 7. Part 2. Life story, or Biographical sketches. London : Rout and Paul, 1983. P. 4–8.
²*Cole S. T.* Life story. Vol. 7, part 2 ; *Cole S. T.* Remake of Life story. 1995.

15-7-36

The styles `gost-inline` and `gost-inline-min` are only minimally different from the previous two styles and would show the same results with our sample data.

gost-numeric

See [\[3\]](#) and [Cole \[2, p. 4–8\]](#) and again [Cole \[1; 2\]](#)

1. *Cole S. T.* Remake of Life story. — 1995.
2. *Cole S. T.* The cool works of Sam Ted Cole. Vol. 7. Part 2. Life story, or Biographical sketches / ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng, W. J. Bate. — London : Rout and Paul, 1983. — (Boll Series ; 75).
3. *Zar Z. C., Lau A. D. Algebra // Theory.* — 2009. — Vol. 12. — P. 423–491. — arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

15-7-37

gost-numeric-
min

See [\[3\]](#) and [Cole \[2, p. 4–8\]](#) and again [Cole \[1; 2\]](#)

1. *Cole S. T.* Remake of Life story. — 1995.
2. *Cole S. T.* The cool works of Sam Ted Cole. Vol. 7. Part 2. Life story, or Biographical sketches. — London : Rout and Paul, 1983.
3. *Zar Z. C., Lau A. D. Algebra // Theory.* — 2009. — Vol. 12. — P. 423–491.

15-7-38

biblatex-iso690 *Michal Hoftich* Styles that conform to the latest revision of the international standard ISO 690:2010.

Citation systems: various

Styles: `iso-alphabetic`, `iso-authortitle`, `iso-authoryear`, `iso-numeric`

Citation style: `iso-fullcite`

Style samples:

See [ZL99] and Cole [Col83, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [Col83; Col95]

[Col83] COLE, Sam Ted. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2, Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by COB, Kate; ENG, Jon; BATE, W. Jack. London: Rout and Paul, 1983. Boll Series, no. 75.

[Col95] COLE, Sam Ted. *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

iso-alphabetic

15-7-39

See Zar et al., “Algebra” and Cole (*Life story*, pp. 4–8) and again Cole (*Life story*) and Cole (*Remake*)

COLE, Sam Ted. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2, Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by COB, Kate; ENG, Jon; BATE, W. Jack. London: Rout and Paul, 1983. Boll Series, no. 75.

COLE, Sam Ted. *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

iso-authortitle

15-7-40

ZAR, Zoë C.; LAU, Adam D. *Algebra. Theory*. 2009, vol. 12, pp. 423–491. Available from arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

See Zar et al., 2009 and Cole (1983, pp. 4–8) and again Cole (1983) and Cole (1995)

COLE, Sam Ted, 1983. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2, Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by COB, Kate; ENG, Jon; BATE, W. Jack. London: Rout and Paul. Boll Series, no. 75.

COLE, Sam Ted, 1995. *Remake of Life story*.

iso-authoryear

15-7-41

ZAR, Zoë C.; LAU, Adam D., 2009. *Algebra. Theory*. Vol. 12, pp. 423–491. Available from arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

See [1] and Cole [2, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [2, 3]

1. ZAR, Zoë C.; LAU, Adam D. *Algebra. Theory*. 2009, vol. 12, pp. 423–491. Available from arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

2. COLE, Sam Ted. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2, Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by COB, Kate; ENG, Jon; BATE, W. Jack. London: Rout and Paul, 1983. Boll Series, no. 75.

iso-numeric

15-7-42

3. COLE, Sam Ted. *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

biblatex-mla *James Clawson* Style implementing the specifications of the Modern Language Association (MLA) handbook. The style recommends using `\autocite` as standard citation command.

Citation system: author-title

Styles: mla, mla-strict, mla7

Citation style: mla-footnotes

Style sample:

See Zar and Lau and Cole, *Life story* 4-8 and again *Life story*; *Remake*

Cole, Sam Ted. *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Edited by Kate Cob et al., Rout and Paul, 1983. Boll Series 75. Vol. 7 of *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*.

———. *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

mla

15-7-43

Zar, Zoë C., and Adam D. Lau. “Algebra”. *Theory*, vol. 12, 2009, pp. 423–91. *arXiv*, arxiv.org/abs/math/9901.4711v13.

The style `mla` makes a few text transformation, e.g., shortening URLs or turning “University Press” into “UP”. These can be prevented by using `mla-strict` instead, Otherwise the two styles are identical. The style `mla7` implements an earlier version of the style guide, but right now it is not working correctly (maybe it does again by the time you have this book in your hands).

biblatex-oxref *Alex Ball* Implementations of the *2014 New Hart’s Rules* and the *2002 Oxford Guide to Style*.

Citation systems: various

Styles: `oxalph`, `oxnotes`, `oxnum`, `oxyear`

Citation style: `oxnotes-ibid`, `oxnotes-inote`, `oxnotes-note`, `oxnotes-trad1`,
`oxnotes-trad2`, `oxnotes-trad3`

Style samples:

oxalph	See [ZL99] and Cole [Col83: 4–8] and again Cole [Col83; Col95]	
	[Col83]	Cole, S. T. [Anon, M.] (1983), <i>Life story, or Biographical sketches</i> , ed. K. Cob, J. Eng, and W. J. Bate, [vol. vii.2 of <i>The cool works of Sam Ted Cole</i>] (Boll Series, 75; London: Rout and Paul).
	[Col95]	Cole, S. T. (1995), <i>Remake of Life story</i> .
oxnotes	[ZL99]	Zar, Z. C. [Foo, P.] and Lau, A. D. [Zack, M.] (2099), “Algebra”, version 3, <i>Theory</i> , 12: 423–91, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.
	See Zoë C. Zar [Pam Foo] and Adam D. Lau [Maria Zack], “Algebra”, version 3, <i>Theory</i> , 12 (2099), 423–91, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13 and Cole ¹ and again Cole ²	
	Cole, Sam Ted [Matt Anon], <i>Life story, or Biographical sketches</i> , ed. Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate, [vol. vii.2 of <i>The cool works of Sam Ted Cole</i>] (Boll Series, 75; London: Rout and Paul, 1983). Cole, Sam Ted, <i>Remake of Life story</i> (1995).	
oxnum	¹ Sam Ted Cole [Matt Anon], <i>Life story, or Biographical sketches</i> , ed. Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate, [vol. vii.2 of <i>The cool works of Sam Ted Cole</i>] (Boll Series, 75; London: Rout and Paul, 1983), 4–8.	
	² Cole, <i>Life story</i> ; Sam Ted Cole, <i>Remake of Life story</i> (1995).	
	See [3] and Cole [1: 4–8] and again Cole [1; 2]	
oxyear	[1]	Cole, Sam Ted [Matt Anon], <i>Life story, or Biographical sketches</i> , ed. Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate, [vol. vii.2 of <i>The cool works of Sam Ted Cole</i>] (Boll Series, 75; London: Rout and Paul, 1983).
	[2]	Cole, Sam Ted, <i>Remake of Life story</i> (1995).
	[3]	Zar, Zoë C. [Pam Foo] and Lau, Adam D. [Maria Zack], “Algebra”, version 3, <i>Theory</i> , 12 (2099), 423–91, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.
oxyear	See Zar and Lau 2099 and Cole (1983: 4–8) and again Cole (1983; 1995)	
	Cole, S. T. [Anon, M.] (1983), <i>Life story, or Biographical sketches</i> , ed. K. Cob, J. Eng, and W. J. Bate, [vol. vii.2 of <i>The cool works of Sam Ted Cole</i>] (Boll Series, 75; London: Rout and Paul).	
	Cole, S. T. (1995), <i>Remake of Life story</i> . Zar, Z. C. [Foo, P.] and Lau, A. D. [Zack, M.] (2099), “Algebra”, version 3, <i>Theory</i> , 12: 423–91, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.	

bibtex-sbl David Purton Style implementing the recommendations of the Society of Biblical Literature (SBL) Handbook of Style.

Citation system: verbose *Style:* sbl

Style sample:

See Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau, “Algebra,” version 3, *Theory* 12 (2009): 423–91, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13 and Cole¹ and again Cole²

Cole, Sam Ted. *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Vol. 7, part 2 of *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*.

Edited by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.

———. *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

Zar, Zoë C., and Adam D. Lau. “Algebra.” Version 3. *Theory* 12 (2009): 423–91. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

sbl

1. Sam Ted Cole, *Life story, or Biographical sketches*, in *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, ed. Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate, Boll Series 75 (London: Rout and Paul, 1983), 7.2:4–8.

2. Cole, *Life story*; Cole, *Remake of Life story* (1995).

15-7-48

bibtex-vancouver Agnibho Mondal Vancouver reference style.

Citation system: numeric *Style:* vancouver

Style sample:

See [1] and Cole [2, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [2, 3]

1. Zar ZC and Lau AD. Algebra. Version 3. *Theory*. 2009; 12:423–91. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13

2. Cole ST. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by Cob K, Eng J, and Bate WJ. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983

3. Cole ST. *Remake of Life story*. 1995

vancouver

15-7-49

windycity Brian Chase Style following *The Chicago Manual of Style* recommendations; see **bibtex-chicago** for an alternative.

Citation system: author-title (by default verbose) *Style:* windycity

Style sample:

See Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau, “Algebra,” *Theory* 12 (2009): 423–491, 3, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13. and Sam Ted Cole, *Life story, or Biographical sketches*, ed. Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate, Boll Series, vol. 7, no. 75, pt. 2, of *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole* (London: Rout and Paul, 1983), 4-8 and again Cole, *Life story*; Sam Ted Cole, *Remake of Life story*, 1995

Cole, Sam Ted. *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Edited by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series, vol. 7, no. 75, pt. 2, of *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.

———. *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

windycity

15-7-50

Zar, Zoë C., and Adam D. Lau. “Algebra.” *Theory* 12 (2009): 423–491. 3. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

15.7.6 Implementations of university and institution styles

The set of bundles in this category available on CTAN is certainly not representative: many more are likely to be available directly from institution websites or from your friendly fellow student. The styles normally implement a rather inflexible layout

without many options, often handle only a subset of all entry types, and sometimes support only a subset of the citation command's syntax. For example, some numeric styles in the current section do not properly handle page numbers in the optional argument, making it impossible to distinguish them from an entry reference.

However, they are less complex than style guide implementations, and so adapting them is usually possible. Typically, they load one of the generic styles and modify it, so they can also serve as examples on how to write a new style. Before using such a style, it is a good idea to check how old it is, if it is still maintained, and whether the rules it implements are actually still promoted by the institution.

archaeologie *Lukas C. Bossert* Style for the German Archaeological Institute (DAI).

Citation system: author-date *Style:* archaeologie

Style sample:

archaeologie

See Zar – Lau 2099 and Cole (1983, 4–8) and again Cole (1983) and Cole (1995)

Cole 1983 S. T. Cole, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole VII 2. Life story, or Biographical sketches, Boll Series 75, ed. by K. Cob – J. Eng – W. J. Bate (London 1983)

Cole 1995 S. T. Cole, Remake of Life story (1995)

Zar – Lau 2099

Z. C. Zar – A. D. Lau, Algebra, Theory 12, 2099, 423–491,
arXiv: math/9901.4711v13

15-7-51

biblatex-archaeology *Ingram Braun* Styles for Romano-Germanic Commission and the Department of Prehistory of the German Archaeological Institute (Deutsches Archäologisches Institut).

Citation systems: various

Styles: aefkw, afwl, amit, archa, authoryear-archaeology, authoryear-comp-archaeology, authoryear-ibid-archaeology, authoryear-icomp-archaeology, dguf, dguf-alt, dguf-apa, eaz, eaz-alt, foe, jlb-halle, jlb-kreis-neuss, karl, kunde, maja, mpk, mpkoeaw, niedersachsen, nnu, numeric-comp-archaeology, offa, rgk-inline, rgk-numeric, rgk-verbose, rgzm-inline, rgzm-numeric, rgzm-verbose, ufg-muenster-inline, ufg-muenster-numeric, ufg-muenster-verbose, verbose-archaeology, verbose-ibid-archaeology, verbose-trad2note-archaeology, volkskunde, zaak, zaes

Style samples:

aefkw

See Z. C. ZAR/A. D. LAU, Algebra, Version 3, Theory 12, 2099, 423–491 and COLE¹ and again COLE²

Cole, S. T., *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole VII.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches* (1983).
ders., *Remake of Life story* (1995).

¹S. T. COLE, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole VII.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches* (1983), 4–8.

²COLE, *Life story* – S. T. COLE, *Remake of Life story* (1995).

15-7-52

See [ZAR/LAU 2099](#) and [COLE \(1983, 4–8\)](#) and again [COLE \(1983; 1995\)](#)

COLE 1983

Sam Ted Cole, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75 (London 1983).

COLE 1995

Sam Ted Cole, Remake of Life story ([n. p.] 1995).

afwl

15-7-53

ZAR/LAU 2099

Zoë C. Zar/Adam D. Lau, Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2099, 423–491.

See [Zar/Lau 2099](#) and [Cole \(1983, 4–8\)](#) and again [Cole \(1983\)](#) and [Cole \(1995\)](#)

Cole 1983

S. T. Cole, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng and W. J. Bate. Boll Series 75 (London 1983).

Cole 1995

S. T. Cole, Remake of Life story (n. p. 1995).

Zar/Lau 2099

Z. C. Zar/A. D. Lau, Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2099, 423–491.

15-7-54

amit

See [ZAR, LAU 2099](#) and [COLE \(1983, 4–8\)](#) and again [COLE \(1983\)](#) and [COLE \(1995\)](#)

COLE 1983

S. T. COLE, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. COB, J. ENG and W. J. BATE, Boll Series 75 London 1983.

COLE 1995

S. T. COLE, Remake of Life story n. p. 1995.

ZAR, LAU 2099

Z. C. ZAR, A. D. LAU, Algebra, version 3, Theory 12, 2099, 423–491.

15-7-55

archa

See [ZAR, LAU 2099](#) and [COLE \(1983, 4–8\)](#) and again [COLE \(1983\)](#) and [COLE \(1995\)](#)

COLE, Sam Ted: The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75 (London 1983).

COLE, Sam Ted: Remake of Life story (n. p. 1995).

dguf

15-7-56

ZAR, Zoë C., LAU, Adam D.: Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2099, 423–491.

See [ZAR et al. 2099](#) and [COLE \(1983, 4–8\)](#) and again [COLE \(1983\)](#) and [COLE \(1995\)](#)

COLE, S. T. (1983) The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. Cob et al. *Boll Series 75*. London 1983.

COLE, S. T. (1995) Remake of Life story. n. p. 1995.

dguf-alt

15-7-57

ZAR, Z. C. & A. D. LAU (2099) Algebra. Version 3. *Theory 12, 2099, 423–491*.

See ZAR & LAU, 2009 and COLE (1983, 4–8) and again COLE (1983) and COLE (1995)
 Cole, S. T. (1983). *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole* (7th volume).2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches* (Boll Series 75). London: Rout and Paul.

dguf-apa

Cole, S. T. (1995). *Remake of Life story*. n. p.

Zar, Z. C. & Lau, A. D. (2009). *Algebra*. Version 3. *Theory*, 12, 423–491.

15-7-58

See Zar/Lau 2009 and Cole (1983, 4–8) and again Cole (1983) and Cole (1995)

Cole 1983: S. T. Cole, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole* 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng and W. J. Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul 1983.

eaz

Cole 1995: idem, *Remake of Life story*. n. p. 1995.

Zar/Lau 2009: Z. C. Zar/A. D. Lau, *Algebra*. Version 3. *Theory* 12, 2009, 423–491.

15-7-59

See ZAR, LAU 2009 and COLE (1983, 4–8) and again COLE (1983; 1995)

COLE, S. T. 1983: *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole* 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by K. COB, J. ENG and W. J. BATE. (Boll Series 75.) London.

eaz-alt

– 1995: *Remake of Life story*. n. p.

ZAR, Z. C., & A. D. LAU 2009: *Algebra*. Version 3. In: *Theory* 12, 423–491.

15-7-60

See ZAR and LAU 2009 and COLE (1983, 4–8) and again COLE (1983) and COLE (1995)

COLE 1983: SAM TED COLE, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole* 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by KATE COB, JON ENG and W. JACK BATE, Boll Series 75, London 1983.

foe

COLE 1995: SAM TED COLE, *Remake of Life story*, n. p. 1995.

ZAR and LAU 2009: Zoë C. ZAR and ADAM D. LAU, *Algebra*, version 3, *Theory* 12, 2009, 423–491.

15-7-61

See Zar/Lau 2009 and Cole (1983, 4–8) and again Cole (1983) and Cole (1995)

Cole 1983

S. T. Cole, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole* 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng and W. J. Bate. Boll Series 75 (London 1983).

jb-halle

Cole 1995

S. T. Cole, *Remake of Life story* ([n. p.] 1995).

Zar/Lau 2009

Z. C. Zar/A. D. Lau, *Algebra*. Version 3. *Theory* 12, 2009, 423–491.

15-7-62

See Zar, Zoë C./ Lau, Adam D.: *Algebra*, version 3, in: *Theory* 12 (2009), pp. 423–491 and Cole¹ and again Cole²

Cole, Sam Ted: *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole* volume 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches* ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng and W. Jack Bate, (= Boll Series, volume 75), London 1983.

jb-kreis-neuss

– *Remake of Life story*, n. p. 1995.

Zar, Zoë C./ Adam D. Lau: *Algebra*, version 3, in: *Theory* 12 (2009), pp. 423–491.

¹Cole, Sam Ted: *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole* volume 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches* ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng and W. Jack Bate, (= Boll Series, volume 75), London 1983, pp. 4–8.

²Cole, *Life story*; Cole, Sam Ted: *Remake of Life story*, n. p. 1995.

15-7-63

See Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau: Algebra, version 3, in: *Theory* vol. 12, 2009, pp. 423–491 and Cole¹ and again Cole²

Cole, Sam Ted: *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole* vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*, ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng and W. Jack Bate. London 1983.

Cole, Sam Ted: *Remake of Life story*. n. p. 1995.

Zar, Zoë C. and Lau, Adam D.: Algebra, version 3, in: *Theory* vol. 12, 2009, pp. 423–491.

karl

¹Sam Ted Cole: *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole* vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*, ed. by Kate Cob et al. London 1983, pp. 4–8.

²Cole (see n. 1); Sam Ted Cole: *Remake of Life story*. n. p. 1995.

15-7-64

See ZAR/LAU 2009 and COLE (1983, 4–8) and again COLE (1983; 1995)

COLE, Sam Ted 1983: *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London 1983.

COLE, Sam Ted 1995: *Remake of Life story*. n. p. 1995.

ZAR, Zoë C./LAU, Adam D. 2009: Algebra. Version 3. *Theory* 12, 2009, 423–491.

kunde

15-7-65

See Z. C. Zar / A. D. Lau, Algebra, version 3, in: *Theory* 12 (2009), 423–491 and Cole¹ and again Cole²

Cole, S. T., *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches*, Boll Series 75, London 1983.

Cole, S. T., *Remake of Life story* n. p. 1995.

Zar, Z. C. / Lau, A. D., Algebra, version 3, in: *Theory* 12 (2009), 423–491.

maja

¹S. T. Cole, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches*, Boll Series 75, London 1983, 4–8.

²Cole, *Life story* – S. T. Cole, *Remake of Life story* n. p. 1995.

15-7-66

See ZAR, LAU 2009 and COLE (1983, 4–8) and again COLE (1983. – IDEM 1995)

COLE 1983

S. T. COLE, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by K. COB, J. ENG and W. J. BATE, Boll Series 75, London 1983.

COLE 1995

S. T. COLE, *Remake of Life story*, n. p. 1995.

ZAR, LAU 2009

Z. C. ZAR, A. D. LAU, Algebra, version 3, *Theory* 12, 2009, 423–491.

mpk

15-7-67

See ZAR, LAU 2009 and COLE (1983, 4–8) and again COLE (1983) and COLE (1995)

COLE 1983

S. T. COLE, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by K. COB, J. ENG and W. J. BATE. Boll Series 75. London 1983.

COLE 1995

S. T. COLE, *Remake of Life story*. n. p. 1995.

mpkoeaw

ZAR, LAU 2009

Z. C. ZAR, A. D. LAU, Algebra, version 3. *Theory* 12/2009, 423–491.

15-7-68

niedersachsen

See [ZAR, LAU 2009](#) and [COLE \(1983, 4–8\)](#) and again [COLE \(1983; 1995\)](#)

COLE, S. T. 1983: The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng and W. J. Bate. Boll Series 75. London 1983.

COLE, S. T. 1995: Remake of Life story. n. p. 1995.

ZAR, Z. C., LAU, A. D. 2009: Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2009, 423–491.

15-7-69

nnu

See [ZAR/LAU 2009](#) and [COLE \(1983, 4–8\)](#) and again [COLE \(1983; 1995\)](#)

COLE 1983

S. T. COLE, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng and W. J. Bate. Boll Series 75 (London 1983).

COLE 1995

S. T. COLE, Remake of Life story ([n. p.] 1995).

ZAR/LAU 2009

Z. C. ZAR/A. D. LAU, Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2009, 423–491.

15-7-70

offa

See [ZAR/LAU 2009](#) and [COLE \(1983, 4–8\)](#) and again [COLE \(1983; 1995\)](#)

Cole 1983: S. T. Cole, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng and W. J. Bate. Boll Series 75 (London 1983).

Cole 1995: S. T. Cole, Remake of Life story (n.p. 1995).

Zar/Lau 2009: Z. C. Zar/A. D. Lau, Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2009, 423–491.

15-7-71

rgk-inline

See [ZAR / LAU 2009](#) and [COLE \(1983, 4–8\)](#) and again [COLE \(1983\)](#) and [COLE \(1995\)](#)

COLE 1983

S. T. COLE, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng and W. J. Bate. Boll Series 75 (London 1983).

COLE 1995

IDEM, Remake of Life story ([n. p.] 1995).

ZAR / LAU 2009

Z. C. ZAR / A. D. LAU, Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2009, 423–491.

15-7-72

rgk-numeric

See [\[3\]](#) and [COLE \[1, 4–8\]](#) and again [COLE \[1, 2\]](#)

[1] S. T. COLE, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng and W. J. Bate. Boll Series 75 (London 1983).

[2] S. T. COLE, Remake of Life story ([n. p.] 1995).

[3] Z. C. ZAR / A. D. LAU, Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2009, 423–491.

15-7-73

rgk-verbose

See [Z. C. ZAR / A. D. LAU, Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2009, 423–491](#) and [COLE¹](#) and again [COLE²](#)

S. T. COLE, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng and W. J. Bate. Boll Series 75 (London 1983).

– Remake of Life story ([n. p.] 1995).

Z. C. ZAR / A. D. LAU, Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2009, 423–491.

¹S. T. COLE, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. Cob et al. Boll Series 75 (London 1983) 4–8.

²COLE (see n. 1); S. T. COLE, Remake of Life story ([n. p.] 1995).

15-7-74

See Zar/ Lau 2009 and Cole (1983, 4–8) and again Cole (1983; 1995)

Cole 1983: S. T. Cole, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng and W. J. Bate. Boll Series 75 (London 1983).

1995: S. T. Cole, Remake of Life story (n. p. 1995).

rgzm-inline

15-7-75

Zar/ Lau 2009: Z. C. Zar/ A. D. Lau, Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2009, 423–491.

See [3] and COLE [1, 4–8] and again COLE [1, 2]

[1] S. T. Cole, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng and W. J. Bate. Boll Series 75 (London 1983).

[2] S. T. Cole, Remake of Life story (n. p. 1995).

rgzm-numeric

15-7-76

[3] Z. C. Zar/ A. D. Lau, Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2009, 423–491.

See Z. C. Zar/ A. D. Lau, Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2009, 423–491 and Cole¹ and again Cole²

S. T. Cole, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng and W. J. Bate. Boll Series 75 (London 1983).

S. T. Cole, Remake of Life story (n. p. 1995).

Z. C. Zar/ A. D. Lau, Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2009, 423–491.

rgzm-verbose

¹S. T. Cole, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng and W. J. Bate. Boll Series 75 (London 1983), 4–8.

²Cole, Life story; S. T. Cole, Remake of Life story (n. p. 1995).

15-7-77

See ZAR/LAU 2009 and COLE (1983, 4–8) and again COLE (1983) and COLE (1995)

S. T. Cole, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng and W. J. Bate. Boll Series 75 (London 1983).

S. T. Cole, Remake of Life story ([n. p.] 1995).

ufg-muenster-
inline

15-7-78

Z. C. Zar/A. D. Lau, Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2009, pp. 423–491.

See [3] and COLE [1, 4–8] and again COLE [1, 2]

[1] S. T. Cole, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng and W. J. Bate. Boll Series 75 (London 1983).

[2] S. T. Cole, Remake of Life story ([n. p.] 1995).

ufg-muenster-
numeric

15-7-79

[3] Z. C. Zar/A. D. Lau, Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2009, pp. 423–491.

See Z. C. Zar/A. D. Lau, Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2009, pp. 423–491 and COLE¹ and again COLE²

S. T. Cole, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng and W. J. Bate. Boll Series 75 (London 1983).

– Remake of Life story ([n. p.] 1995).

Z. C. Zar/A. D. Lau, Algebra. Version 3. Theory 12, 2009, pp. 423–491.

ufg-muenster-
verbose

¹S. T. Cole, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by K. Cob et al. Boll Series 75 (London 1983), 4–8.

²COLE see n. 1; S. T. Cole, Remake of Life story ([n. p.] 1995).

15-7-80

volkskunde

See Zar, Lau 2099 and Cole (1983: 4–8) and again Cole (1983) and Cole (1995)

Cole, Sam Ted (1983): The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches ed. by Kate Cob et al. (Boll Series, 75). London.

idem (1995): Remake of Life story. n. p.

Zar, Zoë C. et al. (2099): Algebra. Version 3. In: Theory 12, pp. 423–491.

15-7-81

zaak

See Zar/ Lau 2099 and Cole (1983, pp. 4–8) and again Cole (1983) and Cole (1995)

Cole, Sam Ted

1983 The cool works of Sam Ted Cole vol. 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches (=Boll Series 75). London.

Cole, Sam Ted

1995 Remake of Life story. n. p.

Zar, Zoë C./ Lau, Adam D.

2099 Algebra. Version 3. In: Theory 12: pp. 423–491. n. p.

15-7-82

zaes

See ZAR, LAU 2099 and COLE (1983, 4–8) and again COLE (1983) and COLE (1995)

COLE, S. T., 1983, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches, ed. by K. COB, J. ENG and W. J. BATE, Boll Series 75.

COLE, S. T., 1995, Remake of Life story, n. p.

ZAR, Z. C., LAU, A. D., 2099, Algebra, version 3, Theory 12, 423–491.

15-7-83

biblatex-arthistory-bonn Lukas C. Bossert, Thorsten Kemper Style for the Kunst-historisches Institut der Universität Bonn.

Citation system: author-date Style: arthistory-bonn

Style sample:

arthistory-bonn

See Zar/Lau (2099) and Cole (1983, 4-8) and again Cole (1983) and Cole (1995)

Cole 1983 Cole, Sam Ted: The cool works of Sam Ted Cole, vol. 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches, ed. by Kate Cob / Jon Eng / W. Jack Bate (Boll Series, 75), London 1983

Cole 1995 Cole, Sam Ted: Remake of Life story, 1995

Zar / Lau (2099) Zar, Zoë C. /Lau, Adam D.: Algebra, version 3, in: Theory 12 (2099), 423–491, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13

15-7-84

biblatex-bath Alex Ball Style for the University of Bath Library.

Citation system: author-date Style: bath

Style sample:

bath

See Zar and Lau, 2099 and Cole (1983, pp.4–8) and again Cole (1983; 1995)

Cole, S.T., 1983. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng, and W.J. Bate, Boll series, 75. London: Rout and Paul.

Cole, S.T., 1995. *Remake of life story*.

Zar, Z.C. and Lau, A.D., 2099. Algebra (v.3). *Theory*, 12, pp.423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

15-7-85

biblatex-bwl *Herbert Voß* Style for the Business Administration Department of the Free University of Berlin.

Citation system: author-date *Style:* bwl-FU

Style sample:

See Zar and Lau (2009) and Cole (1983:pp. 4–8) and again Cole (1983) and Cole (1995)

Cole, Sam Ted (1983). *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*.

Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. Rout and Paul: London.

Cole, Sam Ted (1995). *Remake of Life story*.

Zar, Zoë C. and Adam D. Lau (2009). “Algebra”. Version 3. In: *Theory* 12, pp. 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

bwl-FU

15-7-86

biblatex-enc *Jean-Baptiste Camps* Style for historical and philological works at the École nationale des chartes (Paris). The command `\autocite` cannot be used.

Citation system: verbose *Style:* enc

Style sample:

See ZAR (Zoë C.) and LAU (Adam D.), “Algebra”, *Theory*, 12 (2009), pp. 423–491, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13 and Sam Ted Cole, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*, ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate, London, 1983 (Boll Series, 75), 4-8 and again *ibid.*; *idem*, *Remake of Life story*, 1995

COLE (Sam Ted), *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*, ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate, London, 1983 (Boll Series, 75).

– *Remake of Life story*, 1995.

ZAR (Zoë C.) and LAU (Adam D.), “Algebra”, *Theory*, 12 (2009), pp. 423–491, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

enc

15-7-87

biblatex-musuos *Tobias Weh* Style for the Institut für Musik und Musikwissenschaft der Universität Osnabrück.

Citation system: verbose *Style:* musuos

Style sample:

See Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau: *Algebra*. Version 3. In: *Theory* 12 (2009), pp. 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13 and Cole¹ and again Cole²

Cole, Sam Ted: *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.

Cole, Sam Ted: *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

¹Sam Ted Cole: *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983, pp. 4–8.

²*Ibid.*; Sam Ted Cole: *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

musuos

15-7-88

biblatex-nottsclassic *Lukas C. Bossert* Style for the University of Nottingham.

Citation system: author-date *Style:* nottsclassic

Style sample:

nottsclassic

See Zar and Lau (2099) and Cole (1983) 4-8 and again Cole (1983); Cole (1995)
Cole, S. T. (1983), *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches* (Cob, K., Eng, J., and Bate, W. J., eds.), Boll Series 75, London: Rout and Paul.
——— (1995), *Remake of Life story*.
Zar, Z. C. and Lau, A. D. (2099), ‘Algebra’, version 3, *Theory* 12: 423–491, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

15-7-89

biblatex-socialscienceshuberlin *Lukas C. Bossert* Style for social sciences at the Humboldt-Universität zu Berlin. It has an option to color the author names.

Citation system: author-date Style: socialscienceshuberlin

Style sample:

socialsciences-huberlin

See Zar and Lau 2099 and Cole (1983: 4–8) and again Cole (1983) and Cole (1995)
Cole, Sam Ted 1983: *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*.
Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul.
– 1995: *Remake of Life story*.
Zar, Zoë C. and Lau, Adam D. 2099: Algebra. Version 3. In: *Theory* 12, 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

15-7-90

thuthesis *Tsinghua University TUNA Association, Ruini Xue* Styles for the Tsinghua University. They are part of a template and should be used together with the `thuthesis.cls` class.

Citation systems: various

Styles: thuthesis-author-year, thuthesis-bachelor, thuthesis-numeric

Citation style: thuthesis-inline

Style samples:

thuthesis-author-year

See (Zar et al., 2099) and Cole (1983, pp. 4-8) and again Cole (1983, 1995)
Cole S T, 1983. The cool works of Sam Ted Cole. Vol. 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches: vol. 7 [M]. Ed. by Cob K, Eng J, Bate W J. London: Rout and Paul.
Cole S T, 1995. Remake of Life story[M].
Zar Z C, Lau A D, 2099. Algebra[J]. Theory, 12: 423-491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

15-7-91

The two numeric styles in this bundle handle page numbers in a way that they cannot be distinguished from citation references and are therefore best avoided if the styles are used. Here is one example:

thuthesis-bachelor

See^[1] and Cole [2, 4-8] and again Cole [2-3]
[1] ZAR Z C, LAU A D. Algebra[J]. Theory, 2099, 12: 423-491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.
[2] COLE S T. The cool works of Sam Ted Cole. Vol. 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches: vol. 7[M]. Ed. by COB K, ENG J, BATE W J. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.
[3] COLE S T. Remake of Life story[M]. 1995.

15-7-92

uni-wtal-ger Carsten Ace Dahlmann Style for literary studies in the Faculty of Humanities at the Bergische Universität Wuppertal.

Citation system: author-title *Style:* uni-wtal-ger

Style sample:

See Zoë C. Zar / Adam D. Lau: “Algebra”. Version 3. In: *Theory* 12 (2009). Pp. 423–491 and Cole (Kate Cob et al. [eds.]: *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches* [Boll Series 75]. London 1983, pp. 4–8) and again Cole (Life story); Cole (*Remake of Life story*. 1995) Cole, Sam Ted: *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by Kate Cob et al. (Boll Series 75). London 1983.

– *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

uni-wtal-ger

15-7-93 Zar, Zoë C. / Lau, Adam D.: “Algebra”. Version 3. In: *Theory* 12 (2009). Pp. 423–491.

uni-wtal-lin Carsten Ace Dahlmann Style for the Institute of Linguistics at the Bergische Universität Wuppertal.

Citation system: author-date *Style:* uni-wtal-lin

Style sample:

See Zar/Lau 2009 and Cole (1983: 4–8) and again Cole (1983) & Cole (1995)

Cole, Sam Ted (1983). *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Kate Cob/Jon Eng/W. Jack Bate (eds.). London: Rout and Paul. (= Boll Series 75)

Cole, Sam Ted (1995). *Remake of Life story*.

uni-wtal-lin

15-7-94 Zar, Zoë C./Adam D. Lau (2009). Algebra. Version 3. *Theory* 12, 423–491. arXiv: math / 9901 . 4711v13.

univie-ling Jürgen Spitzmüller Style for (Applied) Linguistics at the University of Vienna.

Citation system: author-date *Style:* univie-ling

Style sample:

See Zar & Lau 2009 and Cole (1983: 4–8) and again Cole (1983, 1995)

Cole, Sam Ted. 1983. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Kate Cob, Jon Eng & W. Jack Bate (eds.) (Boll Series 75). London: Rout and Paul.

Cole, Sam Ted. 1995. *Remake of life story*. N.L.

univie-ling

15-7-95 Zar, Zoë C. & Adam D. Lau. 2009. Algebra. Version 3. *Theory* 12. 423–491.

15.7.7 Implementations of journal styles

In most cases the bundle description just shows the name of the journal supported by the style(s). The remarks made for the “university” type are applicable here too.

acmart Boris Veytsman Association for Computing Machinery. The two styles in the bundle should be used in conjunction with the acmart class.

Citation systems: author-date, numeric

Styles: `acmauthoryear`, `acmnumeric`

Style samples:

`acmauthoryear` See [Zar and Lau 2009] and Cole [1983, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [1983, 1995]
 Sam Ted Cole. 1983. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. Rout and Paul, London.
 Sam Ted Cole. 1995. *Remake of Life story*.
 Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau. 2009. “Algebra.” Version 3. *Theory*, 12, 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

15-7-96

`acmnumeric` See [3] and Cole [1, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [1, 2]
 [1] Sam Ted Cole. 1983. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate, (Eds.) Number 75 in *Boll Series*. Rout and Paul, London.
 [2] Sam Ted Cole. 1995. *Remake of Life story*.
 [3] Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau. 2009. Algebra. Version 3. *Theory*, 12, 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

15-7-97

biblatex-ajc2020unofficial *Nikolai Avdeev* Australasian Journal of Combinatorics.

Citation system: `numeric` *Style:* `ajc2020unofficial`

Style sample:

`ajc2020unofficial` See [3] and Cole [1, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [1, 2]
 [1] S. T. Cole, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*, ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng, and W. J. Bate, Boll Series 75, London: Rout and Paul, 1983.
 [2] S. T. Cole, *Remake of Life story*, 1995.
 [3] Z. C. Zar and A. D. Lau, Algebra, version 3, *Theory* 12 (2009), 423–491, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

15-7-98

biblatex-chem *Joseph Wright* A set of implementations of chemistry-related styles. The bundle comprises styles based on the conventions of the Royal Society of Chemistry, American Chemical Society, and Angewandte Chemie. It therefore covers styles of various common chemistry journals.

Citation system: `numeric`

Styles: `chem-acs`, `chem-angew`, `chem-biochem`, `chem-rsc`

Style samples:

`chem-acs` See [1] and Cole [2, pp 4–8] and again Cole [2, 3]
 (1) Zar, Z. C.; Lau, A. D., version 3 *Theory* **2009**, 12, 423–491.
 (2) Cole, S. T. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole, Life story, or Biographical sketches*; Cob, K., Eng, J., Bate, W. J., Eds.; Boll Series 75, Vol. 7; Rout and Paul: London, 1983.
 (3) Cole, S. T., *Remake of Life story*, 1995.

15-7-99

See [1] and Cole [2, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [2, 3]

- [1] Z. C. Zar, A. D. Lau, version 3, *Theory* **2099**, 12, 423–491.
- [2] S. T. Cole, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole, Life story, or Biographical sketches*, (Eds.: K. Cob, J. Eng, W. J. Bate), Rout and Paul, London, **1983**.
- [3] S. T. Cole, *Remake of Life story*, **1995**.

15-7-100

chem-angew

See (1) and Cole (2, pp 4–8) and again Cole (2, 3)

- (1) Zar, Z. C., and Lau, A. D. (2099). Algebra. version 3 *Theory* 12, 423–491.
- (2) Cole, S. T. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole, Life story, or Biographical sketches*; Cob, K., Eng, J., and Bate, W. J., Eds.; Boll Series 75, Vol. 7; Rout and Paul: London, 1983.
- (3) Cole, S. T., *Remake of Life story*, 1995.

15-7-101

chem-biochem

See [1] and Cole [2, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [2, 3]

- (1) Z. C. Zar and A. D. Lau, version 3, *Theory*, 2099, **12**, 423–491.
- (2) S. T. Cole, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole, Life story, or Biographical sketches*, ed. K. Cob, J. Eng and W. J. Bate, Rout and Paul, London, 1983, vol. 7.
- (3) S. T. Cole, *Remake of Life story*, 1995.

15-7-102

chem-rsc

biblatex-ieee Joseph Wright IEEE (Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers).

Citation systems: numeric, alphabetic

Styles: `ieee`, `ieee-alphabetic`

Style samples:

See [1] and Cole [2, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [2], [3]

- [1] Z. C. Zar and A. D. Lau, “Algebra,” version 3, *Theory*, vol. 12, pp. 423–491, 2099. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.
- [2] S. T. Cole, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole, Life story, or Biographical sketches* (Boll Series 75), K. Cob, J. Eng, and W. J. Bate, Eds. London: Rout and Paul, 1983, vol. 7.2.
- [3] S. T. Cole, *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

15-7-103

ieee

See [ZL99] and Cole [Col83, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [Col83; Col95]

- [Col83] S. T. Cole, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole, Life story, or Biographical sketches* (Boll Series 75), K. Cob, J. Eng, and W. J. Bate, Eds. London: Rout and Paul, 1983, vol. 7.2.
- [Col95] S. T. Cole, *Remake of Life story*. 1995.
- [ZL99] Z. C. Zar and A. D. Lau, “Algebra,” version 3, *Theory*, vol. 12, pp. 423–491, 2099. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

15-7-104

ieee-alphabetic

biblatex-ijrsra Lukas C. Bossert International Journal of Student Research in Archaeology.

Citation system: author-date *Style:* `ijrsra`

Style sample:

ijjsra

See Zar and Lau, 2099 and Cole (1983:4-8) and again Cole (1983) and Cole (1995)

Cole, Sam Ted (1983): *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*.
Ed. by Cob, Kate, Eng, Jon, and Bate, W. Jack. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul.

– (1995): *Remake of Life story*.

Zar, Zoë C. and Lau, Adam D. (2099): Algebra. Version 3. *Theory* 12: 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

15-7-105

biblatex-lncs Merlin Göttlinger Springer Lecture Notes in Computer Science (LNCS).

Citation system: numeric Style: lncs

Style sample:

lncs

See [3] and Cole [1, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [1, 2]

1. Cole, S.T.: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Rout and Paul, London (1983)
2. Cole, S.T.: Remake of Life story (1995)
3. Zar, Z.C., and Lau, A.D.: Algebra. Theory 12, 423–491 (2099)

15-7-106

biblatex-lni Oliver Kopp Lecture Notes in Informatics.

Citation system: alphabetic Style: LNI

Style sample:

LNI

See [ZL99] and Cole [Co83, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [Co83; Co95]

[Co83] Cole, S. T.: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Rout and Paul, London, 1983.

[Co95] Cole, S. T.: Remake of Life story. 1995.

[ZL99] Zar, Z. C.; Lau, A. D.: Algebra. Version 3, Theory 12/, pp. 423–491, 2099, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

15-7-107

biblatex-nature Joseph Wright Nature.

Citation system: numeric Style: nature

Style sample:

nature

See [1] and Cole [2, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [2, 3]

1. Zar, Z. C. & Lau, A. D. Algebra. Version 3. *Theory* **12**, 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13 (2099).
2. Cole, S. T. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches* (eds Cob, K., Eng, J. & Bate, W. J.) *Boll Series* **75** (Rout and Paul, London, 1983).
3. Cole, S. T. *Remake of Life story* (1995).

15-7-108

biblatex-nejm Dilum Aluthge, Marco Daniel New England Journal of Medicine (NEJM).

Citation system: numeric Style: nejm

Style sample:

See 1 and Cole [2, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [2, 3]

1. Zar ZC and Lau AD. Algebra. Version 3. Theory 2099;12:423–91.
2. Cole ST. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by Cob K, Eng J, and Bate WJ. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.
3. Cole ST. Remake of Life story. 1995.

15-7-109

nejm

bibtex-phys Joseph Wright American Institute of Physics, American Physical Society.

Citation system: numeric *Style:* phys

Style sample:

See [1] and Cole [2, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [2, 3]

- ¹Z. C. Zar and A. D. Lau, “Algebra”, version 3, Theory **12**, 423–491 (2099).
- ²S. T. Cole, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*, edited by K. Cob, J. Eng, and W. J. Bate, Boll Series 75 (Rout and Paul, London, 1983).
- ³S. T. Cole, *Remake of life story* (1995).

15-7-110

phys

bibtex-science Joseph Wright Science.

Citation system: numeric *Style:* science

Style sample:

See (1) and Cole (2, pp. 4–8) and again Cole (2, 3)

1. Z. C. Zar, A. D. Lau, version 3, *Theory* **12**, 423–491, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13 (2099).
2. S. T. Cole, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*, ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng, W. J. Bate (Rout and Paul, London, 1983), vol. 7.
3. S. T. Cole, *Remake of Life story*.

15-7-111

science

bibtex-spbasic Herbert Voß Springer’s journals.

Citation system: author-date *Style:* bibtex-spbasic

Style sample:

See Zar, Lau 2099 and Cole (1983, 4–8) and again Cole (1983) and Cole (1995)

- Cole ST (1983) *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole* vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. ed. by K Cob, J Eng, WJ Bate Boll Series 75 Rout and Paul, London
- (1995) *Remake of Life story*.
- Zar ZC, Lau AD (2099) Algebra. version 3 *Theory* 12: 423–491 arXiv: math/9901.4711v13

15-7-112

bibtex-spbasic

bibtex-unified Kai von Fintel Implementation of the Unified Stylesheet for Linguistics Journals, used by Semantics and Pragmatics. The style requires the package hyperref.

Citation system: author-date *Style:* unified

Style sample:

unified

See Zar & Lau 2099 and Cole (1983: pp. 4–8) and again Cole (1983, 1995)
 Cole, Sam Ted. 1983. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*.
 Kate Cob, Jon Eng & W. Jack Bate (eds.) (Boll Series 75). London: Rout and Paul.
 Cole, Sam Ted. 1995. *Remake of life story*.
 Zar, Zoë C. & Adam D. Lau. 2099. Algebra. Version 3. *Theory* 12. 423–491.

15-7-113

dtk Rolf Niepraschk, Herbert Voß Die TeXnische Komödie — the communications
 of the German TeX Users Group DANTE e.V.

Citation system: numeric *Style:* dtk

Style sample:

dtk

See [3] and Cole [1, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [1, 2]
 [1] Sam Ted Cole: *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, Life story, or Biographical sketches, (Eds.: Kate
 Cob, Jon Eng, W. Jack Bate), Boll Series 75, Rout and Paul, London, 1983.
 [2] — Remake of Life story, 1995.
 [3] Zoë C. Zar, Adam D. Lau: “Algebra”, version 3, *Theory*, 12 (2099), 423–491, arXiv: math/
 9901.4711v13.

15-7-114

emisa Martin Sievers, Stefan Strecker EMISA (Enterprise Modelling and Information
 Systems Architectures).

Citation system: author-date *Style:* emisa

Style sample:

emisa

See Zar and Lau 2099 and Cole (1983, pp. 4–8) and again Cole (1983, 1995)
 Cole S. T. (1983) The cool works of Sam Ted Cole Vol. 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches Cob K.,
 Eng J., Bate W. J. (eds.). Boll Series 75. Rout and Paul, London
 — (1995) Remake of Life story
 Zar Z. C., Lau A. D. (2099) Algebra Version 3. In: *Theory* 12, pp. 423–491 arXiv: math/9901.4711v13

15-7-115

historische-zeitschrift Dominik Waßenhoven Historische Zeitschrift, a German
 historical journal.

Citation system: verbose *Style:* historische-zeitschrift

*Style sample:*historische-
zeitschrift

See Zoë C. Zar/Adam D. Lau, Algebra, in: *Theory* 12, 2099. 423–491 and Sam Ted Cole, The cool
 works of Sam Ted Cole. Vol. 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by Kate Cob/Jon Eng/
 W. Jack Bate. (Boll Series, vol. 75.) London 1983, 4-8 and again Sam Ted Cole, The cool works of Sam
 Ted Cole. Vol. 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by Kate Cob/Jon Eng/W. Jack Bate. (Boll
 Series, vol. 75.) London 1983; Sam Ted Cole, Remake of Life story. 1995
 Sam Ted Cole, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole. Vol. 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by
 Kate Cob/Jon Eng/W. Jack Bate. (Boll Series, vol. 75.) London 1983.
 – Remake of Life story. 1995.
 Zoë C. Zar/Adam D. Lau, Algebra, in: *Theory* 12, 2099. 423–491.

15-7-116

langsci Sebastian Nordhoff Language Science Press.

Citation system: author-date *Style:* langsci-unified

Style sample:

See Zar & Lau 2009 and Cole (1983: 4–8) and again Cole (1983, 1995)

Cole, Sam Ted. 1983. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*.

Kate Cob, Jon Eng & W. Jack Bate (eds.) (Boll Series 75). London: Rout and Paul.

Cole, Sam Ted. 1995. *Remake of life story*.

Zar, Zoë C. & Adam D. Lau. 2009. Algebra. Version 3. *Theory* 12. 423–491.

langsci-unified

15-7-117

nwejm Denis Bitouzé North-Western European Journal of Mathematics.

Citation system: numeric *Style:* nwejm

Style sample:

See Zar and Lau 2009 and Cole (1983, pp. 4–8) and again Cole (1983, 1995)

Cole, S. T. (1983). *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by

K. Cob, J. Eng, and W. J. Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul.

– (1995). *Remake of Life story*.

Zar, Z. C. and A. D. Lau (2009). “Algebra”. Version 3. *Theory* 12, pp. 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

nwejm

15-7-118

15.7.8 Styles that extend the data model

The following bundles provide styles that add new field or entry types. To give at least a small impression of their purpose, the samples show special entries, often based on examples found in the documentation of the bundle.

biblatex-bookinother Maïeul Rouquette The style adds new entry types and fields for books edited in other types, such as `bookinarticle`. It offers only a `bib` style that is based on the standard `verbose` and should be used together with a `verbose` or `author-title` citation style.

Citation system: —

Bib style: bookinother

Style sample:

See Van Deun¹ and Cole²

Cole, Sam Ted. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.

Mémoire sur le saint apôtre Barnabé. Ed. by Peter Van Deun. In: Van Deun, Peter. “Un mémoire anonyme sur saint Barnabé (BHG 226e). Édition et traduction”. In: *Analecta Bollandiana* 108 (1990), pp. 326–335.

bookinother

¹*Mémoire sur le saint apôtre Barnabé*. Ed. by Peter Van Deun. In: Peter Van Deun. “Un mémoire anonyme sur saint Barnabé (BHG 226e). Édition et traduction”. In: *Analecta Bollandiana* 108 (1990), pp. 326–335.

²Sam Ted Cole. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.

15-7-119

bibtex-claves *Maïeul Rouquette* A special style for antic and medieval literature to handle many different texts published with the same title, or the same text published with different titles. It offers only a bib style: the example combines it with an author-title citation style.

Citation system: —

Bib style: `claves`

Style sample:

claves

See Bonnet (*Acta Barnabae*).

Acta Barnabae (BHG 225; CANT 285). In: *Acta Apostolorum Apocrypha*. Ed. by Maximilien Bonnet. Vol. 2.2. Leipzig: Hermann Mendelssohn, 1903, pp. 292–302.

15-7-120

bibtex-cv *Daniel E. Shub* The package implements entry types useful for an (American) academic curriculum vitae. It requires a special loading; check the documentation for details.

Citation system: — *Style:* `bibtex-cv`

Style sample:

cv

2019–2021 (\$100,000,000, ongoing, PI): Funding Agency, Research Grant (123-456-abc). *A Grant Title*.

2010–2019 (£1,000,000, completed, CI): A Different Funding Agency, Fellowship (abc-def-123). *A Different Grant Title*.

By Smith, Alice and Bob Jones (Jan. 1, 2019). “An Internal Talk Abstract.” In: *Journal of Talk Abstracts*. [Talk presented by Alice Smith and Bob Jones].

15-7-121

bibtex-manuscripts-philology *Maïeul Rouquette* The style adds a new entry type `manuscript` to manage manuscripts in classical philology. It offers only a bibliography style that is based on `verbose`. The sample shows an example manuscript, the used citation style is `verbose`, and the citation command is `\textcite`.

Citation system: —

Bib styles: `manuscripts`, `manuscripts-noautosorthand`

Style samples:

manuscripts

See¹ and again²

Cambridge: University Library, *Additional greek manuscript 4489*. Perch. viii-ix^e c., 16 ff. (1 col.): ff. 11r–11v (inf. lay.).

¹Cambridge: University Library, *Additional greek manuscript 4489*. Perch. viii-ix^e c., 16 ff. (1 col.): ff. 11r–11v (inf. lay.) (henceforth cited as C).

²C.

15-7-122

See¹ and again²

Cambridge: University Library, *Additional greek manuscript 4489*. Perch. viii-ix^e c., 16 ff. (1 col.): ff. 11r–11v (inf. lay.).

¹ Cambridge: University Library, *Additional greek manuscript 4489*. Perch. viii-ix^e c., 16 ff. (1 col.): ff. 11r–11v (inf. lay.).

² Cambridge: University Library, *Additional greek manuscript 4489*.

15-7-123

manuscripts-
noautosorthand

biblatex-morenames Maïeul Rouquette The style adds new fields of “name” type, for example, more editor fields for books that are part of a collection. It is based on a verbose style.

Citation system: —

Bib style: `morenames`

Style sample:

See Maraval¹

Maraval, Pierre. “La réception de Chalcédoine dans l’empire d’Orient”. In: *Histoire du christianisme. des origines à nos jours*. Ed. by Charles Pietri et al. Vol. 3: *Les Églises d’Orient et d’Occident*. Ed. by Luce Pietri. 20 vols. Paris: Desclée, 1998, pp. 107–145.

¹ Pierre Maraval. “La réception de Chalcédoine dans l’empire d’Orient”. In: *Histoire du christianisme. des origines à nos jours*. Ed. by Charles Pietri et al. Vol. 3: *Les Églises d’Orient et d’Occident*. Ed. by Luce Pietri. 20 vols. Paris: Desclée, 1998, pp. 107–145.

15-7-124

morenames

biblatex-realauthor Maïeul Rouquette The style adds a new field `realauthor`.

Citation system: —

Bib style: `realauthor`

Style sample:

See Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau [= Pam Foo][= and Maria Zack]. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: *Theory* 12 (2099), pp. 423–491. arXiv: [math/9901.4711v13](#) and Cole¹ and again Cole²

Cole, Sam Ted [= Matt Anon]. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983. — *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

Zar, Zoë C. and Adam D. Lau [= Pam Foo][= and Maria Zack]. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: *Theory* 12 (2099), pp. 423–491. arXiv: [math/9901.4711v13](#).

¹ Sam Ted Cole [= Matt Anon]. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983, pp. 4–8.

² Cole, *Life story*; Sam Ted Cole. *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

15-7-125

realauthor

biblatex-software *Roberto Di Cosmo* The package implements software entry types in the form of a bibliography style extension. It requires a special loading; check the documentation for details.

Citation system: —

Bib style: `software`

Style sample:

software `Delebecque et al. 1994`
`[SW Rel.] Delebecque, François et al., Scilab version 1.1, Jan. 1994. Inria. LIC: Scilab license. HAL: {hal-02090402v1}, URL: https://www.scilab.org/, vcs: https://github.com/scilab/scilab, SWHID: {swh:1:dir:1ba0b67b5d0c8f10961d878d91ae9d6e499d746a;}`

15-7-126

biblatex-subseries *Maïeul Rouquette* Style that can handle book series with sub-series. It offers only a bibliography style that is based on a verbose style.

Citation system: —

Bib style: `subseries`

Style sample:

subseries `See Encomiastica from the Pierpont Morgan Library1 and Cole2`
`Cole, Sam Ted. The cool works of Sam Ted Cole. Vol. 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.`
`Encomiastica from the Pierpont Morgan Library. Corpus Scriptorum Christianorum Orientalium 545 — Scriptorum Coptici 48.`
¹`Encomiastica from the Pierpont Morgan Library. Corpus Scriptorum Christianorum Orientalium 545 — Scriptorum Coptici 48.`
²`Sam Ted Cole. The cool works of Sam Ted Cole. Vol. 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.`

15-7-127

15.7.9 Styles not fitting in the other categories

The following bundles offer styles made for a specific field, such as philosophy, law, or film studies. Their complexity varies: some, like `oscola`, are quite complex and should be used unchanged; others can be configured, if necessary.

biblatex-dw *Dominik Waßenhoven* Styles for citations in the humanities.

Citation systems: `author-title`, `verbose`

Styles: `authortitle-dw`, `footnote-dw`

Style samples:

authortitle-dw `See Zar/Lau: Algebra and Cole (Life story, pp. 4–8) and again Cole (Life story); Cole (Remake)`
`Cole, Sam Ted: The cool works of Sam Ted Cole, vol. 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches, ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate (Boll Series 75), London 1983.`
`Idem: Remake of Life story, 1995.`
`Zar, Zoë C. and Adam D. Lau: Algebra, version 3, in: Theory 12 (2009), pp. 423–491.`

15-7-128

See¹ and Cole² and again Cole/Cole³

Cole, Sam Ted: *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*, ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate (Boll Series 75), London 1983.
 Idem: *Remake of Life story*, 1995.
 Zar, Zoë C. and Adam D. Lau: *Algebra*, version 3, in: *Theory 12* (2099), pp. 423–491.

footnote-dw

¹Zoë C. Zar/Adam D. Lau: *Algebra*, version 3, in: *Theory 12* (2099), pp. 423–491.

²Sam Ted Cole: *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*, ed. by Kate Cob/Jon Eng/W. Jack Bate (Boll Series 75), London 1983, pp. 4–8.

³Idem: *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*, ed. by Kate Cob/Jon Eng/W. Jack Bate (Boll Series 75), London 1983; idem: *Remake of Life story*, 1995.

15-7-129

biblatex-fiwi *Simon Spiegel* Styles for citations in German Humanities, especially film studies.

Citation system: author-date

Styles: fiwi, fiwi2

Style samples:

See Zar/Lau 2099 and Cole (1983: 4-8) and again Cole (1983), Cole (1995)

Cole, Sam Ted: *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng and W. Jack Bate. London 1983.

Cole, Sam Ted: *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

Zar, Zoë C./Lau, Adam D.: “Algebra”. In: *Theory*, vol. 12, 2099, 423–491. arXiv: math / 9901 . 4711v13.

fiwi

15-7-130

See Zar/Lau 2099 and Cole (1983: 4-8) and again Cole (1983), Cole (1995)

Cole, Sam Ted (1983): *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng and W. Jack Bate. London.

Cole, Sam Ted (1995): *Remake of Life story*.

Zar, Zoë C./Lau, Adam D. (2099): “Algebra”. In: *Theory*, vol. 12, 423–491. arXiv: math / 9901 . 4711v13.

fiwi2

15-7-131

biblatex-german-legal *Dominik Brodowski* Styles for German legal texts.

Citation system: author-title *Style:* german-legal-book

Style sample:

See Zar/Lau, Theory 2099, 423 and Cole (Life story, pp. 4–8) and again Cole (Life story) and Cole (Remake)

Cole, Sam Ted, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches* Cob, Kate / Eng, Jon / Bate, W. Jack (eds.), Boll Series 75, London 1983.

– *Remake of Life story*, 1995.

Zar, Zoë C. / Lau, Adam D., *Algebra*, version 3, *Theory 12* (2099), 423–491, arXiv: math / 9901 . 4711v13.

german-legal-book

15-7-132

bibtex-jura2 *Christoph* Style for German legal texts.

Citation system: author-title *Style:* jura2

Style sample:

jura2

See Zar/Lau, Theory 12 (2009), 423 and Cole (Life story, pp. 4–8) and again Cole (Life story) and Cole (Remake)
 Cole, Sam Ted: Remake of Life story. 1995.
 – *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches. Ed. by Kate Cob/Jon Eng/W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London 1983.
 Zar, Zoë C./Lau, Adam D.: Algebra. Version 3. In: Theory 12 (2009), 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

15-7-133

bibtex-juradiss *Herbert Voß, Tobias Schwan* Style for a German law thesis.

Citation system: author-title *Style:* bibtex-juradiss

Style sample:

bibtex-juradiss

See Zar/Lau, Theory 2009, 423 and Cole (Life story, pp. 4–8) and again Cole (Life story); Cole (Remake)
 Cole, Sam Ted, The cool works of Sam Ted Cole, vol. 7.2: Life story, or Biographical sketches (Boll Series 75), London 1983, *zitiert als:* Cole, Life story.
Idem, Remake of Life story, 1995, *zitiert als:* Cole, Remake.
 Zar, Zoë C. / Lau, Adam D., Algebra, Theory 2009, p. 423–491.

15-7-134

bibtex-philosophy *Ivan Valbusa* The package provides two author-date styles (philosophy-classic and philosophy-modern) and a verbose style (philosophy-verbose).

Citation systems: author-date, verbose

Styles: philosophy-classic, philosophy-modern, philosophy-verbose

Style samples:

philosophy-classic

See Zar and Lau 2009 and Cole (1983, pp. 4-8) and again Cole (1983, 1995)
 Cole, Sam Ted (1983), *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*, ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate, Boll Series, 75, Rout and Paul, London.
 – (1995), *Remake of Life story*.
 Zar, Zoë C. and Adam D. Lau (2009), “Algebra”, version 3, *Theory*, 12, pp. 423-491, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

15-7-135

philosophy-modern

See Zar and Lau 2009 and Cole (1983, pp. 4-8) and again Cole (1983, 1995)
 Cole, Sam Ted
 1983 *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*, ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate, Boll Series, 75, Rout and Paul, London.
 1995 *Remake of Life story*.
 Zar, Zoë C. and Adam D. Lau
 2009 “Algebra”, version 3, *Theory*, 12, pp. 423-491, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

15-7-136

See Zoë C. Zar and Adam D. Lau, “Algebra”, version 3, *Theory*, 12 (2009), pp. 423–491, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13 and Cole¹ and again Cole²

Cole, Sam Ted, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*, ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate, Boll Series, 75, Rout and Paul, London 1983.

– *Remake of Life story*, 1995.

Zar, Zoë C. and Adam D. Lau, “Algebra”, version 3, *Theory*, 12 (2009), pp. 423–491, arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

philosophy-
verbose

¹Sam Ted Cole, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*, ed. by Kate Cob et al., Boll Series, 75, Rout and Paul, London 1983, pp. 4–8.

²Cole, *Life story* cit.; Sam Ted Cole, *Remake of Life story*, 1995.

15-7-137

bibtex-publist Jürgen Spitzmüller Style for publication lists. It allows omitting or highlighting the author’s own name: in the sample this is demonstrated for Lau.

Citation system: numeric *Style:* publist

Style sample:

See [1] and Cole [3, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [3, 2]

[1] Zar, Zoë C. and **Lau, Adam D.** 2009. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: *Theory* 12, pp. 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

[2] Cole, Sam Ted. 1995. *Remake of Life story*.

[3] Cole, Sam Ted. 1983. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and W. Jack Bate. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul.

publist

15-7-138

cnltx Clemens Niederberger The style is part of a documentation bundle and defines the entry types `package`, `class`, and `bundle` to specify L^AT_EX packages in bib files.

Citation system: alphabetic *Style:* cnltx

Style sample:

See [ZL99] and COLE [Col83, pp. 4–8] and again COLE [Col83; Col95]

[Col83] Sam Ted COLE. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*.
Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*.
Ed. by Kate COB, Jon ENG, and W. Jack BATE. Boll Series 75.
London: Rout and Paul, 1983.

[Col95] Sam Ted COLE. *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

[ZL99] Zoë C. ZAR and Adam D. LAU. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: *Theory* 12 (2009), pp. 423–491. arXiv: math/9901.4711v13.

cnltx

15-7-139

oscola Paul Stanley Style implementing the OSCOLA style of legal citation (4th edition).

Citation system: verbose *Style:* oscola

Style sample:

oscola

See Zoë C Zar and Adam D Lau, “Algebra” version 3 (2099) 12 Theory 423 and Cole¹ and again Cole²; Cole³

Cole ST, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, vol 7.2, *Life story, or Biographical sketches* (Cob K, Eng J, and Bate WJ eds, Boll Series 75, Rout and Paul 1983).

– *Remake of Life story* (1995).

Zar ZC and Lau AD, “Algebra” version 3 (2099) 12 Theory 423.

¹Sam Ted Cole, *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*, vol 7.2, *Life story, or Biographical sketches* (Kate Cob, Jon Eng, and WJack Bate eds, Boll Series 75, Rout and Paul 1983) 4-8.

²n 1.

³Sam Ted Cole, *Remake of Life story* (1995).

15-7-140

savetrees *Scott Pakin* The goal of the savetrees package is to pack as much text as possible onto each page of a \LaTeX document.

Citation system: numeric Style: savetrees

Style sample:

savetrees

See [3] and Cole [1, pp. 4–8] and again Cole [1, 2]

[1] S. T. Cole. *The cool works of Sam Ted Cole*. Vol. 7.2: *Life story, or Biographical sketches*. Ed. by K. Cob, J. Eng, et al. Boll Series 75. London: Rout and Paul, 1983.

[2] S. T. Cole. *Remake of Life story*. 1995.

[3] Z. C. Zar and A. D. Lau. “Algebra”. Version 3. In: *Theory* 12 (2099), pp. 423–491.

15-7-141

CHAPTER 16

Managing Citations

16.1 Introduction	469
16.2 The number-only system	473
16.3 The author-date system	487
16.4 The author-number system.	502
16.5 The author-title system	507
16.6 The verbose system.	537
16.7 biblatex — One ring to rule them all	541
16.8 Multiple bibliographies in one document	569

16.1 Introduction

Citations are cross-references to bibliographical information outside the current document, such as to publications containing further information on a subject and source information about used quotations. It is certainly not necessary to back everything by a reference, but background information for controversial statements, acknowledgments of other work, and source information for used material should always be given.

The previous chapter showed numerous ways to compile bibliographies and reference lists. They can be prepared manually, if necessary, but usually they are automatically generated from a database containing bibliographic information. This chapter now introduces the many presentation forms of bibliographical sources, and it reviews different traditions regarding how such sources are referred to in a document.

We start the chapter with a short introduction to the major citation schemes in common use. Armed with this knowledge we then plunge into a detailed discussion of how \LaTeX supports the different citation schemes. At the time we wrote the first edition of this book, \LaTeX basically supported only the “number-only” system. Nearly three decades later, the situation has changed radically. Today, all major citation schemes are well supported by extension packages.

We end this chapter by discussing packages that can deal with multiple bibliographies in one document. This is not difficult if the reference lists are prepared manually or if `biblatex` together with `biber` is used, but it poses some challenges if you want to interact with `BibTeX`, as well.

16.1.1 Bibliographical reference schemes

There are five common methods of referring to sources: the “number-only”, “author-date” (or “author-year”), “author-number”, “author-title”, and “verbose” systems. The last two of these are often used in books on humanities and jurisdiction; the second appears mainly in science and social science works. The other two are less often used, although the first is quite common within the \LaTeX world, because it has been actively promoted by Leslie Lamport and originally was the only form of citation supported by \LaTeX . Outside the \LaTeX world, a variation of it, called “numeric by first citation”, is quite popular as well.

The number-only system

In the number-only system, publications are sequentially numbered in the bibliography. Citations in the text refer to these numbers, which are usually surrounded by brackets or parentheses. Sometimes raised numbers are used instead.

One argument against this system — put forward, for example, in *The Chicago Manual of Style* [40] — is that it raises the costs of publication, because a late addition or deletion of a reference may require renumbering and consequently costly (and error-prone) changes to many pages throughout the manuscript. With automatic cross-referencing facilities as provided by \LaTeX , this argument no longer holds true. In fact, the number-only system is the default system provided with \LaTeX .

In a slight variation, known as “alpha” style, citations comprise the author’s name and the year of the publication. Thus, the bibliographic label and the citation may look like “[Knu86]”. This is still fairly compact compared with an author-date or author-title style and has the advantage that one can often deduce the reference from the context.

Numerical by first citation

A fairly popular form of the number-only system numbers the publications sequentially by their first citation in the text (and presents them in that order in the bibliography). This is fairly easy to provide with either standard \LaTeX or `biblatex`. However, in that case it is important to avoid that references in the table of contents mess up the expected order; see Section 16.2.3 for advice on this.


The author-date system

In the author-date system (often referred to as the Harvard system after one of its better known typographical variants), references to sources are also given directly in the text. They show the author’s name (or names) and the year of the publication. The full citation is given in a list of references or a bibliography. If the author published more than one work in a given year, that year is suffixed with lowercase letters (e.g., 2001a, 2001b).

There have been many attempts over the years to provide author-date citation support for \LaTeX . With the `natbib` package (discussed in Section 16.3.2), the `jurabib` package (discussed in Section 16.5.1) and the `biblatex` package (discussed in Section 16.7 and 16.3.3), there are now three very flexible and general solutions available.

It should be possible for a reader to look up a cited reference in the bibliography lists. In all citation schemes that use author or editor names, the bibliography list therefore should normally be sorted alphabetically by these names. This can require special care if some of the names contain accented chars or are written in a non-Latin script; see Section 15.3.3 for some advice. The sorting should follow the rules of the main language of the document. This is easy to achieve with `biblatex`, because `biber` contains the necessary Unicode libraries, but with `BiBTeX` it can be necessary to add sort keys to some entries to guide the sorting.

Care must also be taken to get unique citation “labels”, which allow identifying the reference without ambiguity. For example, a work by three or more authors is usually referred to by using the name of the first author followed by *et al.* Especially with the author-date system, this may lead to ambiguous citations if different groups of authors with the same main author published in the same year. This problem can be seen in the following example:

 Watch out
for ambiguous
citations

```
\usepackage{chicago} \bibliographystyle{chicago}
Entries with multiple authors can be problematical, e.g., \shortcite{TLC94},
\shortcite{LGC97} and \shortcite{test97} or worse \shortcite{TLC94,LGC97,test97}.

\bibliography{tlc,tlc-ex}
```

Entries with multiple authors can be problematical, e.g., (Goossens et al. 1994), (Goossens et al. 1997) and (Goossens et al. 1997) or worse (Goossens et al. 1994; Goossens et al. 1997; Goossens et al. 1997).

References

Goossens, M., F. Mittelbach, and A. Samarin (1994). *The L^AT_EX Companion. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting*. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley Longman.

Goossens, M., S. Rahtz, and F. Mittelbach (1997). *The L^AT_EX Graphics Companion: Illustrating Documents with T_EX and PostScript*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley Longman.

Goossens, M., B. User, J. Doe, et al. (1997). Ambiguous citations. Submitted to the IBM J. Res. Dev.

16-1-1

In the above example the bibliography is produced from the sample `BiBTeX` databases `tlc.bib` and `tlc-ex.bib` that we introduced in the previous chapter in Figure 15.1 on pages 382–383 and Figure 15.2 on page 391. Those databases are also used in most examples throughout this chapter. Above we applied the `BiBTeX` style `chicago` and its accompanying support package to it, a style that aims to implement a bibliography and reference layout as suggested by *The Chicago Manual of Style* [40].

One way to resolve such ambiguous citations is to use more or all author names in such a case, although that approach can lead to lengthy citations and is not feasible if the number of identical authors exceeds a certain limit. Another solution is to

append a, b, and so on, to the year, even though the citations are actually for different author groups. This strategy is, for example, advocated in [28]. If the bibliography is compiled manually, as outlined in Section 15.1, this result can be easily achieved.

When using `BIBTEX`, you have to use a `BIBTEX` style file that recognizes these cases and provides the right data automatically. For example, the style `chicago` cannot be used in this case, but all `BIBTEX` styles produced with `custom-bib` (see Section 15.7.2) offer this feature:

Entries with multiple authors might be problematical, e.g., Goossens et al. [1997a] and Goossens et al. [1997b] or even Goossens et al. [1997a,b]. But then they might not.

References

M. Goossens, S. Rahtz, and F. Mittelbach. *The L^AT_EX Graphics Companion: Illustrating Documents with T_EX and PostScript*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley Longman, Reading, MA, USA, 1997a. ISBN 0-201-85469-4.

M. Goossens, B. User, J. Doe, et al. Ambiguous citations. Submitted to the IBM J. Res. Dev., 1997b.

```
\usepackage{natbib}
\bibliographystyle
{abbrvnat}
```

Entries with multiple authors might be problematical, e.g., `\cite{LGC97}` and `\cite{test97}` or even `\cite{LGC97,test97}`. But then they might not.

```
\bibliography{tlc,tlc-ex}
```

16-1-2

When using `biblatex` with `biber`, the citations are almost¹ always unambiguous from the start. The package adds, if needed, initials, given names, more authors, or an extra year marker. The behavior can be fine-tuned with the options `uniquelist`, `uniquename`, `maxnames`, `maxcitenames`, and `maxbibnames`. The settings in the next example force short author lists and automatically append letters to the year if needed. Details on the customization possibilities of the `biblatex` package are covered in Section 16.7 starting on page 541.

```
\usepackage[style=authoryear,
  uniquelist=false,maxnames=1]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib}
```

Entries with multiple authors might be problematical, e.g., Goossens et al. 1997b and Goossens et al. 1997a or even Goossens et al. 1997b; Goossens et al. 1997a. But then they might not.

Entries with multiple authors might be problematical, e.g., `\cite{LGC97}` and `\cite{test97}` or even `\cite{LGC97,test97}`. But then they might not.

16-1-3

With just `\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}` it would have produced the far lengthier result instead:

Entries with multiple authors might be problematical, e.g., Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach 1997 and Goossens, User, Doe, et al. 1997 or even Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach 1997; Goossens, User, Doe, et al. 1997. But then they might not.

16-1-4

¹It can fail if two references have identical authors *and* title and an author-title style is used.

In the author-number system, the references to the sources are given in the form of the author's name (or names) followed by a number, usually in parentheses or brackets, indicating which publication of the author is cited. In the corresponding bibliography all publications are numbered on a per-author (or author group) basis. In the \LaTeX world this system is fairly uncommon because it is difficult to produce manually. As far as we know, there is currently no \BibTeX support available for it, but for biblatex suitable styles exist in the biblatex-ext bundle; see Section 16.4.2 on page 506.

The author-number system

In the author-title system, the reference to a source is also given directly in the text, either inline or as a footnote, this time using the author or editor names and the title often in the form “Hart, *Hart's Rules*, p. 52”. In the context of the publication, if abbreviations for the title are established, the form “Goossens et al., *LGC*” may appear as an alternative. Many variations exist. For instance, the first time a work is cited it might be presented with a long title; later references might then use a shorter form — citing only the author's name and a short title or the year. In the case of repeated citations to the same work in direct succession, you might find *Ibid.* instead of a repeated reference.

The author-title system

An implementation of the author-title system, based on a \BibTeX workflow, is provided by the jurabib [15] package discussed Section 16.5.1 on page 507 followed by an overview of the possibilities offered by biblatex in Section 16.5.2 on page 534.

Finally, in the verbose system a full reference is given the first time a work is cited — usually done in a footnote. Later references then use a shorter version. If this style is used, a list of references or a bibliography that contains all cited works in a single place is not strictly necessary and can be omitted. Typically verbose systems use some combination of the author's name and the title for the shorter reference and can be viewed as a variant of the author-title system. It is therefore not surprising that the two packages that support the author-title system (i.e., biblatex and jurabib) handle that format too. The bibentry package also offers some partial support.

The verbose system

Table 16.1 on the following page shows a broad comparison of the features of major citation packages. A check mark means that the package has sufficient support, if in parentheses there is only partial support. In general, biblatex has the most comprehensive coverage.

Comparison of bibliography packages

16.2 The number-only system

As mentioned earlier in this chapter, the number-only system is the default citation method directly supported by standard \LaTeX . That is, without loading any additional packages, it is the only method supported by the provided markup commands. We start this section by describing those commands. We then cover the cite package that offers enhanced sorting and formatting of the citation numbers. This is followed by a brief look at the notoccite package that solves a small problem with citations in headings and captions. Then we explain how natbib handles number-only citations and at last present biblatex's approach to the number-only system.

<i>Package features</i>		<i>cite</i>	<i>natbib</i>	<i>jurabib</i>	<i>biblatex</i>
<i>Citation systems</i>	Numeric citations	✓	✓		✓
	Author-date citations		✓	✓	✓
	Author-title citations			✓	✓
	Verbose citations			✓	✓
	Author-number by author				✓ ^a
	Author-number by document		✓		✓
<i>Citation commands</i>	References as superscripts	✓	✓		✓
	References as footnotes			✓	✓
	References as endnotes			✓	✓
	Full citation in text		(✓)	✓	✓
	Full citation in text (1st time)			✓	✓
	Full list of authors		✓ ^b	✓	✓
	Full list of authors (1st time)		✓ ^b	✓	✓
	Forced abbreviated authors list		✓ ^b	✓	✓
	Short and long title			✓	✓
	Shorthand/“cited as”			✓	✓
	Support for ibidem, idem			✓	✓
	Support for gender			✓	✓
	Capitalize first letter		✓		✓
	Sort/compress	✓	✓		✓
	Prenote/postnote		✓	✓	✓
	Annotator			✓	✓ ^a
<i>Customization</i>	Customize text in citation		✓	✓	✓
	Customize enclosing characters	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Customize punctuation in citation	✓	✓	✓	✓
<i>Other features</i>	Active links with <code>hyperref</code>	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Cross-references			✓	✓
	Index citations		✓	✓	✓
	Customize bibliography			✓	✓
	Backreferences in bibliography		✓	✓	✓
	Language support (babel)			✓	✓
	Locale support when sorting				✓
	Filtered bibliography				✓
	Multiple bibliographies	(✓) ^c	(✓) ^c	(✓) ^c	✓

^aSupported through styles from external packages.^bIf the `BIBTEX` style supports it.^cWith external packages, see Section 16.8.

Table 16.1: Comparison of different bibliographical support packages

16.2.1 Standard L^AT_EX — Reference by number

Bibliographic citations inside the text of a L^AT_EX document are produced with the command `\cite`.

```
\cite[post-note]{key1,key2,...}
```

The `\cite` command associates each key in the list in its mandatory argument with the argument of a `\bibitem` command from the `thebibliography` environment described in Section 15.1 to produce the citation reference. As with other L^AT_EX identifiers, these keys are case-sensitive.

The citation numbers generated are defined by the order in which the keys appear on the `\bibitem` commands inside the `thebibliography` environment or, if an optional argument is used with `\bibitem`, by the data provided in that argument.

The optional parameter *post-note* is an additional note, which is printed together with the text generated by the `\cite` command as shown in the following example. For comparison we have used an unbreakable space (~) in the first citation and a small space (\,) in the second. Of course, such typographical details should be handled uniformly throughout a publication.

The exact format of the citation in the text depends on the chosen bibliographic style and possible customizations made in the document class or in the preamble.


Color support for L^AT_EX is described in [2, chap. 9] and the `hyperref` package in [1, pp. 35–67].

```
\bibliographystyle{plain}
```

Color support for L^AT_EX is described in `\cite[chap.~9]{LGC97}` and the `\texttt{hyperref}` package in `\cite[pp.\,35--67]{LWC99}`.

16-2-1

To save space, examples in this chapter based on B^BT_EX often omit the bibliography list. They are generated by placing `\bibliography{t1c}` at the end of the example document when automatically generating the example output for the book. Thus, you should read examples such as 16-2-1 as follows: the result is produced by generating the bibliography with B^BT_EX, applying the style `plain` (shown), and using the database `t1c.bib` (not shown; see Figure 15.1 on pages 382–383). Thus, the actual document that produced the example contained `\newpage\bibliography{t1c}` at the end, ending up on a page of its own. Examples using `biblatex` and `biber` do not need a bibliography list to show citations, so nothing is omitted in their source display.

 A note
on B^BT_EX-based
examples in this
chapter

```
\nocite{key1,key2,...}
```

In conjunction with B^BT_EX and `biblatex`, you can use the `\nocite` variant of the `\cite` command. Its sole purpose is to write the keys in its argument into the `.aux` or the `.bcf` file so that the associated bibliography information appears in the bibliography even if the publication is otherwise not cited (thus, this is useful only if you do not prepare the reference list manually). It can be used as often as necessary. As a special case, `\nocite{*}` includes all entries of the chosen B^BT_EX databases in the list of references.

Customizing citation references and the bibliography in standard L^AT_EX

Unfortunately, standard L^AT_EX is not equipped with an easily customizable interface through which you can adjust the formatting of the citation references. Thus, even to just change the default brackets around the numbers into parentheses, we need to redefine the internal L^AT_EX command `\@cite`.

Even worse, the user-level `\cite` command uses an internal temporary switch (`@tempswa`) to indicate whether an optional argument was present. Thus, if we want to handle that optional argument, we need to evaluate the value of that switch. The `\@cite` command receives two arguments: the list of obtained references and the note (if present). In the following example we typeset `(#1` and, if `@tempswa` is true, follow it by a comma and `_#2`. This is then followed by the closing parenthesis. The `\nolinebreak[3]` ensures that a break after the comma is taken only reluctantly.

```
\bibliographystyle{plain} \usepackage{ifthen}
\makeatletter
\renewcommand\@cite[2]{({#1\ifthenelse
  {\boolean{@tempswa}}{, \nolinebreak[3] }#2}{})}
\makeatother
```

Color support for L^AT_EX is described in (2) and the `hyperref` package in (1, pp. 35–67).

Color support for L^AT_EX is described in `\cite{LGC97}` and the `\texttt{hyperref}` package in `\cite[pp.\,35--67]{LWC99}`.

16-2-2

The redefinition of `\@cite` for purposes like the above can be avoided by loading the `cite` package; see Section 16.2.2.

For the `thebibliography` environment, which holds the list of the actual references, the situation is unfortunately not much better — the default implementation in the standard document classes offers few customization possibilities. To modify the layout of the labels in front of each publication (e.g., to omit the brackets), you have to change the internal L^AT_EX command `\@biblabel`.

References

1. D. E. Knuth. *The T_EXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986.
2. D. E. Knuth. Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. *TUGboat*, 10(1):31–36, Apr. 1989.

```
\bibliographystyle{abbrv}
\makeatletter
\renewcommand\@biblabel[1]{#1.}
\makeatother
\nocite{Knuth-CT-a,Knuth:TB10-1-31}
\bibliography{t1c}
```

16-2-3

Packages that implement a variation of the author-date system (e.g., the `apalike`, `chicago`, or `natbib` package), typically unconditionally redefine `\@biblabel` to simply swallow its argument and typeset nothing. After all, such a bibliography is used by looking up the author name, so a label is unnecessary. The `natbib` package is somewhat more careful: if it detects that `\@biblabel` was changed, then it honors the redefinition.

As mentioned earlier, different blocks of information, such as the authors or the title, are separated inside one `\bibitem` in the bibliography by `\newblock` commands, which are also automatically inserted by most B^BT_EX styles. Normally,

bibliographic entries are typeset together in one paragraph. If, however, you want your bibliography to be “open”, with each block starting on a new line with succeeding lines inside a block indented by a length `\bibindent` (default 1.5em), then the class option `openbib` should be specified. This option is supported by all standard classes. The result is shown in the next example; we also redefine `\@biblabel` to produce raised labels.

References

- ¹ M. Goossens and S. Rahtz.

The L^AT_EX Web companion: integrating T_EX, HTML, and XML.
Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-
Wesley Longman, Reading, MA, USA, 1999.

With Eitan M. Gurari and Ross Moore and Robert S. Sutor.

- ² D. E. Knuth.

Typesetting Concrete Mathematics.

TUGboat, 10(1):31–36, Apr. 1989.

```
\documentclass[openbib]{article}
\bibliographystyle{abbrv}
\setlength\bibindent{24pt}

\makeatletter
\renewcommand\@biblabel[1]
{\textsuperscript{#1}}
\makeatother

\nocite{LWC99,Knuth:TB10-1-31}
\bibliography{tlc}
```

16-2-4

Customizing citation references and the bibliography with biblatex

With `biblatex` such customizations do not require the redefinitions of internal commands because the package provides various powerful interfaces to adapt the output. These are described in more detail in Section 16.7, but for comparison we repeat the adaptations made for standard L^AT_EX.

The next example uses `\DeclareCiteCommand` provided by `biblatex` to redefine the citation command. The `\mkbibparens` command used in the optional argument replaces `\mkbibbrackets` used in the default definition and adds parentheses instead of brackets around the citation. Note that with `biblatex` the page numbers are given as a simple range in the optional argument of the `\cite` command. `biblatex` converts the hyphen to an en-dash and adds the “pp.” automatically.

```
\usepackage[style=numeric]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\DeclareCiteCommand{\cite}{\mkbibparens}
{\usebibmacro{prenote}}
{\usebibmacro{citeindex}\usebibmacro{cite}}
{\multicitedelim}
{\usebibmacro{postnote}}
```

Color support for L^AT_EX is described in (2) and the `hyperref` package in (1, pp. 35–67).

See also (3, 4).

Color support for L^AT_EX is described in `\cite{LGC97}` and the `\texttt{hyperref}` package in `\cite[35-67]{LWC99}`.

See also `\cite{MR-PQ, Southall}`.

16-2-5

Such redefinitions of citation commands are always possible, but `biblatex` styles may also offer additional commands and options to ease such customizations. The next example demonstrates this with the command `\DeclareOuterCiteDelims`

offered by the style `ext-numeric` — a generic, easy-to-customize style from the `biblatex-ext` package — to switch to parentheses like in Example 16-2-5.

Color support for \LaTeX is described in (2) and the `hyperref` package in (1, pp. 35–67).

See also (3, 4).

```
\usepackage[style=ext-numeric]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\DeclareOuterCiteDelims{cite}{\bibopenparen}{\bibcloseparen}
Color support for \LaTeX{} is described in \cite{LGC97} and
the \texttt{hyperref} package in \cite[35-67]{LWC99}. \par
See also \cite{MR-PQ, Southall}.
```

16-2-6

To change the label in the bibliography to use only a period as in Example 16-2-3 you can use the `\DeclareFieldFormat` command. The example uses the style `trad-abbrev` from the `biblatex-trad` bundle — a reimplementaion of the standard `abbrev` style.

References

1. D. E. Knuth. *The $T_{\text{E}}X$ book*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986, pages ix + 483. ISBN: 0-201-13447-0.

```
\usepackage[style=trad-abbrev]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\DeclareFieldFormat{labelnumberwidth}{\#1\addodot}
\nocite{Knuth-CT-a}
\printbibliography
```

16-2-7

The class option `openbib` used in Example 16-2-4 is also honored by `biblatex`; in addition, it offers a package option `block=par` to the same effect.

16.2.2 cite — Enhanced references by number

One shortcoming that becomes readily apparent when you use \LaTeX 's default method of citing publications is the fact that it faithfully keeps the order of citations as given in the *key-list* argument of the `\cite` command. The following example therefore shows a very strangely ordered list of numbers (the unresolved reference was added deliberately):

Good information about $T_{\text{E}}X$ and \LaTeX can be found in [2, 1, 3, ?, 4].

```
\bibliographystyle{plain}
Good information about \TeX{} and \LaTeX{} can be found in
\cite{LGC97,LWC99,Knuth-CT-a,Knuth:ct-b,Knuth:TB10-1-31}.
```

16-2-8

For bibliographies produced with $\text{Bib}\TeX$ the situation can be easily improved by simply loading the `cite` package (by Donald Arseneau), as in the following example:

Good information about $T_{\text{E}}X$ and \LaTeX can be found in [?, 1–4].

```
\usepackage{cite} \bibliographystyle{plain}
Good information about \TeX{} and \LaTeX{} can be found in
\cite{LGC97,LWC99,Knuth-CT-a,Knuth:ct-b,Knuth:TB10-1-31}.
```

16-2-9

By default, the `cite` package sorts citation numbers into ascending order, representing three or more consecutive numbers as a number range. Any nonnumeric label is moved to the front (in the above example the “?” generated by the unresolved reference). If sorting is not desired, you can globally prevent it by loading the package

with the option `nosort`. Suppressing range compression can be achieved by using the option `nocompress`.

To customize the typeset reference the `cite` package offers a number of commands. For example, `\citeleft` and `\citeright` determine the material placed on the left and right sides of the citation string, respectively. These commands can be used to typeset parentheses instead of brackets as seen in the following example, which should be compared to Example 16-2-2 on page 476. We can also redefine `\citimid`, the separation between citation and optional note, to produce a semicolon and a space.

Customizing the citation layout

Color support for L^AT_EX is described in (2) and the `hyperref` package in (1; pp. 35–67).

16-2-10

```
\usepackage{cite} \bibliographystyle{plain}
\renewcommand\citeleft{() \renewcommand\citeright{)}
\renewcommand\citimid{; \nolinebreak[3] }
```

Color support for L^AT_EX is described in `\cite{LGC97}` and the `\texttt{hyperref}` package in `\cite[pp.\,35--67]{LWC99}`.

Another important aspect of citation management is controlling the behavior near the end of a line. Consider the string “see [2–3,7,13]”. Besides not allowing any kind of line break within this string, one could allow breaking after the “see”, after the commas, or after the en-dash in a range.

Customizing breaks within citations

By default, the `cite` package discourages line breaks before the citation with `\nolinebreak[3]`, discourages line breaks after a comma separating the optional note with `\nolinebreak[2]`, and very strongly discourages line breaks after en-dashes in a range and after commas separating individual citation numbers. You can control the last three cases by redefining `\citimid`, `\citedash`, and `\citepunct`. For example, to prevent breaks after the en-dashes while allowing breaks after commas without much penalty, you could specify

```
\renewcommand\citedash{\mbox{--}\nolinebreak}
\renewcommand\citimid{,\nolinebreak[1] }
\renewcommand\citepunct{,\nolinebreak[1]\hspace{.13em plus .1em minus .1em}}
```

There are several interesting points to note here. All three definitions are responsible not only for controlling any line breaks but also for adding the necessary punctuation: a dash for the range, a comma and a full blank before the optional note, or a comma and a tiny space between individual citations. For instance, if you want no space at all between citations, you can redefine `\citepunct` to contain only a comma. The other important and probably surprising aspect is the `\mbox` surrounding the en dash. This box is absolutely necessary if you want to control L^AT_EX's ability to break at this point. T_EX automatically adds a breakpoint after an explicit hyphen or dash, so without hiding it in a box, the `\nolinebreak` command would never have any effect — the internally added breakpoint would still allow a line break at this point. Finally, the `\hspace` command allows for some stretching or shrinking; if you prefer a fixed space instead, remove the plus and minus components.

A penalty of `\nolinebreak[3]` that is added before a citation is hardwired in the code. It is, however, inserted only if you have not explicitly specified a penalty

in your document. For instance, “`see~\cite{..}`” is honored, and no break happens between “see” and the citation.

Customizing citation numbers

One more customization command, `\citeform`, allows you to manipulate the individual reference numbers. By default, it does nothing, so the labels are typeset unchanged. In the following example we colored them. Other kinds of manipulation are possible, too (e.g., adding parentheses as in Example 16-2-12 below).

Color support for L^AT_EX is described in [2] and the `hyperref` package in [1, pp. 35–67].

```
\usepackage{cite,color} \bibliographystyle{plain}
\renewcommand\citeform[1]{\textcolor{blue}{#1}}

Color support for \LaTeX{} is described in \cite{LGC97} and
the \texttt{hyperref} package in \cite[pp.\,35--67]{LWC99}.
```

16-2-11

```
\citen{key1,key2,...}
```

The package offers an additional command, `\citen` (its aliases are `\citenum` and `\citeonline`), that can be used to get a list of numbers without the surrounding `\citeleft` and `\citeright` (e.g., the default brackets). Other formatting is still done. In the next example we surround individual references to citations with parentheses to prove that point, something that admittedly looks a little strange when used together with the default bracketing of the whole citation. Also note how undefined references (i.e., `test97`) are handled by that command: you get a bold question mark on its own.

```
\usepackage[nospace]{cite} \bibliographystyle{plain}
\renewcommand\citeform[1]{(#1)}

?,(1),(2),(4) but [(3), §5] \citen{LGC97,LWC99,test97,vLeunen:92} but \cite[\S5]{Knuth-CT-a}
```

16-2-12

Package options

The package offers a number of options to handle standard configuration requests or to influence the package behavior in other ways. Some of them have already been discussed, but here is the full list:

adjust/noadjust Enables (default) or disables “smart” handling of space before a `\cite` or `\citen` command. By default, spaces before such commands are normalized to an interword space. If you write `see\cite{..}`, a space is inserted automatically.

compress/nocompress Enables (default) or disables compression of consecutive numbers into ranges.

nobreak Remove any default breakpoint from the citation reference so that it always appears on a single line, regardless of its length, preventing output such as in Example 16-2-8 on page 478. May result in bad line breaks in which case one needs to manually add line-break possibilities with `\linebreak`.

nospace Eliminates the spaces after commas in the list of numbers, but retains the space after the comma separating the optional note. The result of this option is shown in Example 16-2-12 on the preceding page. It is not the opposite of the **space** option!

space A full interword space is used after commas, and breaking at this point is not actively discouraged. The default (option not specified) is to use a small space and to discourage, but allow, breaking.

sort/nosort Enables (default) or prevents sorting of the numbers.

superscript or **super** Typeset citation references as superscript numbers (like footnotes). When this option is selected, there are a number of further options that can be useful. See the discussions below.

ref Support option when using superscript numbers as citation references. Typesets `Ref :` in certain situations.

move/nomove Support option when using superscript numbers as citation references. Moves (default) or does not move punctuation following a reference in front of it.

biblabel Alter the label produced by `\bibitem` to produce the same output as the reference in the text. Mainly meant to get superscript labels when references use superscripts.

verbose By default, `cite` warns only once per reference for undefined citations. When this option is specified, the warning is repeated each time an undefined reference is cited.

Citations with superscript numbers

The `cite` package can also display citation references as superscript numbers if the package is loaded with the option `superscript` (or `super`). If the `\cite` command is used with an optional argument, then the whole list of citations is typeset as though the `cite` package was loaded without the `superscript` option.

With the `superscript` or `super` option in effect, the customization commands `\citeleft`, `\citeright`, and `\citimid` affect only citations with an optional argument, while `\citedash`, `\citepunct`, and `\citeform` affect all citations. For details of their use, see the discussion on pages 479–480.

```
\usepackage[superscript]{cite}
\bibliographystyle{plain}
\usepackage{color}
\renewcommand\citeform[1]{\textcolor{blue}{#1}}
\renewcommand\citeleft{() \renewcommand\citeright{}}
```

Good information about \TeX and \LaTeX can be found in^{2,1-4}

For `\hyperref` see (1, pp. 35–67).

Good information about `\TeX` and `\LaTeX` can be found in `\cite{LGC97,LWC99,Knuth-CT-a,Knuth:ct-b,Knuth:TB10-1-31}`. For `\texttt{\hyperref}` see `\cite{pp.\,35--67}{LWC99}`.

You can normally use the same input convention, regardless of whether the `superscript` option is used. In particular, a space before the citation command is ignored if the citations are raised. This means that you can add this option without having to adjust your document sources, provided your writing style does not use the numerical citation as part of the sentence structure, as we did in the previous example — producing a rather questionable result.

However, raised citations numbers can easily be confused with footnote markers, so using both together in a document is not recommended, unless you switch to symbols or alphabetic letters for footnote markers.

Good information¹ can be found in.^{1,2}

¹Confusing footnote!

```
\usepackage[superscript]{cite}
\bibliographystyle{plain}
Good information\footnote{Confusing footnote!}
can be found in \cite{LGC97,LWC99}.
```

16-2-14

If superscript numbers are used for citation labels, special care is needed when punctuation characters surround the citation. By default, the `cite` package automatically moves a punctuation character following a citation in front of the superscript. Punctuation characters that migrate in this way are stored in the command `\CiteMoveChars`, with “.,;:” being the default (! and ? are not included, but can be added). A problem that can result from this process is the doubling of periods. This case is usually detected by the package, and one punctuation character is suppressed; see the second citation in the next example.

... book;² see also Goossens et al.¹

```
\usepackage[superscript]{cite}
\bibliographystyle{plain}
\ldots\ book~\cite{Knuth-CT-a}; see also
Goossens et al.\cite{LGC97}.
```

16-2-15

Unfortunately, with capitalized abbreviations or the use of `\@` after a period, the suppression of double periods fails. Possible workarounds are shown in the next example. Note, however, that the solution with `U.S.A\@.` works only together with the `cite` package, but it gives the wrong spacing if the citation is not raised (you are effectively claiming that the sentence ends after the abbreviation)!

et al.¹
U.S.A..²

et al.¹
U.S.A..²

```
\usepackage[super]{cite}
\bibliographystyle{plain}
et al.\@ \cite{LGC97}. \hfil et al.\ \cite{LGC97}.
U.S.A. \cite{unknown}. \hfil U.S.A\@. \cite{unknown}.
```

16-2-16

There is yet another pitfall that you may encounter: the final punctuation character does not migrate inside a preceding quotation — a style, for example, advocated

by *The Chicago Manual of Style* [40]. In this case you may have to rewrite part of your source text accordingly.

16-2-17

For details see “The T_EXbook”.¹ But wanted is “The T_EXbook.”¹

```
\usepackage[super]{cite} \bibliographystyle{plain}
For details see ‘‘The \TeX book’’ \cite{Knuth-CT-a}.
But wanted is ‘‘The \TeX book.’’ \cite{Knuth-CT-a}
```

Three more options related to raising the reference numbers exist. With the option `nomove` specified, punctuation characters are not migrated before the superscript citation. With the option `ref` specified, citations with an optional argument have the word “Ref.” prepended. This is internally implemented by changing `\citeleft`, so if you want a different string or want to change from brackets to, say, parentheses, you have to redefine the customization commands instead of using this option.

16-2-18

Color support is described in “LGC”² and the `hyperref` package in “LWC” [Ref. 1, pp. 35–67].

```
\usepackage[super,ref]{cite}
\bibliographystyle{plain}
Color support is described in ‘‘LGC’’ \cite{LGC97}
and the \texttt{hyperref} package in ‘‘LWC’’
\cite[pp.\,35--67]{LWC99}.
```


Finally, the `biblabeled` option raises the labels in the bibliography. By default, their default layout is retained regardless of whether you use the option `superscript` or its alias `super`.

16.2.3 notoccite — Solving a problem with unsorted citations

If you want the publications in the bibliography to appear in exactly the order in which they are cited in the document, then you should use unsorted citation styles (e.g., the B_T_EX style `unsrt`). This approach does not work, however, if citations are present inside headings or float captions. In that case, these citations also appear in the table of contents or list of figures, and so on. As a result they are moved to the beginning of the bibliography even though they appear much later in the text.

You can avoid this problem by providing an optional argument to `\caption`, `\section`, or similar commands not containing the citation so that no citations are written into such lists. If you have to use citations in these places, then a “manual” solution is to first delete any auxiliary files left over from previous L^AT_EX runs, then run L^AT_EX once, and then run B_T_EX. In that case B_T_EX picks up only citations from the main document. Clearly, this approach is prone to error, and you may find that your citation order got mangled after all when you finally see your article in print.

Donald Arseneau developed the small package `notoccite` to take care of this problem by redefining the internal command `\@starttoc` in such a way that citations do not generate `\citation` commands for B_T_EX within the table of contents and similar lists. Simply loading that package takes care of the problem in all cases — provided you have not used some other package that redefines `\@starttoc` (for example, `notoccite` cannot be combined with the AMS document classes).

 `notoccite`
not needed with
`biblatex`; see
Section 16.2.5

16.2.4 natbib's approach to number-only references

Although originally designed to support the author-date system, natbib is also capable of producing number-only references. The natbib package *automatically* switches to numerical mode if any one of the `\bibitem` entries fails to conform to the possible author-date formats. In such cases the commands `\cite` and `\citep` are usable, but `\citet` issues a warning about the missing author and prints a bold “author?”:

[1], [1], (author?) [1]

References

- [1] Donald E. Knuth. Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. *TUGboat*, 10(1):31–36, April 1989.

```
\usepackage{natbib}
\bibliographystyle{plain}

\cite{Knuth:TB10-1-31},
\citep{Knuth:TB10-1-31},
\citet{Knuth:TB10-1-31}
\bibliography{t1c}
```

16-2-19

To force the numeric mode even if the bibliography style would allow an author-date system, load natbib with the `numbers` option or choose the citation style with `\setcitestyle{numbers}`.

(1), (1), Knuth (1)

References

- [1] Donald E. Knuth. Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. *TUGboat*, 10(1):31–36, April 1989. ISSN 0896-3207.

```
\usepackage{natbib} \setcitestyle{numbers}
\bibliographystyle{plainnat}

\cite{Knuth:TB10-1-31},
\citep{Knuth:TB10-1-31},
\citet{Knuth:TB10-1-31}
\bibliography{t1c}
```

16-2-20

This creates a variant of the author-number system — details and examples are given in Section 16.4.1 on page 503 where we discuss this system.

16.2.5 biblatex's approach to number-only references

We describe the biblatex package in more detail in Section 16.7 but give also for every citation system an overview of the main points of its implementation.

The biblatex package ships with three numeric styles, `numeric`, `numeric-comp`, and `numeric-verb`. The “alpha” citation style is supported with `alphabetic` and `alphabetic-verb` — the latter being more verbose. More styles are provided by external packages as shown in the overview of styles in Section 15.7.3. Those styles are loaded in the package options with the `style` key, but because the initial value of the `style` key is `numeric`, simply loading the biblatex package is enough to select a number-only citation system.

Compatibility with
natbib

Besides the `\cite` command, the biblatex package offers a large variety of other citation commands; as with natbib all commands have two optional arguments. The `\textcite` command gives an author-number citation — similar to the `\citet` command of natbib, while `\parencite` and `\cite1` are comparable to `\citep`. The package option `natbib` enables emulations of the natbib commands; this simplifies

¹The difference between both is apparent only in author-based citation systems.


converting existing documents but does not cover all syntax differences: recall from Example 16-2-5 that the pages in the optional argument of `biblatex`'s citation commands are given without a prefix and that the range uses a simple hyphen; thus, some syntax adaptations are needed.

The following example sets with the keys `maxnames` and `minnames` the length of the author list to demonstrate the difference between `\citet` and `\citet*`.

	<code>\usepackage[natbib,minnames=2,maxnames=2]{biblatex}</code>
	<code>\addbibresource{tlc.bib}</code>
Knuth [2]	<code>\textcite{Knuth:TB10-1-31}</code> <code>\\</code>
[see also 1, pp. 2–4]	<code>\parencite[see also][2-4]{LGC97}</code> <code>\\</code>
Goossens, Rahtz, et al. [1]	<code>\citet{LGC97}</code> <code>\\</code>
Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach [1]	<code>\citet*{LGC97}</code> <code>\\</code>
[see 1, pp. 35–44]	<code>\citep[see][35-44]{LGC97}</code> <code>\\</code>
Goossens, Rahtz, et al.	<code>\citeauthor{LGC97}</code> <code>\\</code>
Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach	<code>\citeauthor*{LGC97}</code>

16-2-21

Some starred citation commands are defined by both packages but behave differently. If the `natbib` emulation is enabled, the `biblatex` package redefines those commands to match the `natbib` behavior. Most importantly the `\citeauthor*` command shows with `natbib` and the `natbib` emulation *all* authors, while with `biblatex` it *truncates* the name list. If you want all authors for one citation, you can set the `maxnames` counter inside `\AtNextCite` as shown or define a citation command to this effect. The counter is automatically reset by `biblatex` afterwards.

 *natbib emulation*
changes starred
commands

	<code>\usepackage[minnames=2,maxnames=2]{biblatex}</code>
	<code>\addbibresource{tlc.bib}</code>
Goossens, Rahtz, et al.	<code>\citeauthor{LGC97}</code> <code>\\</code>
Goossens et al.	<code>\citeauthor*{LGC97}</code> <code>\\</code>
Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach	<code>\AtNextCite{\setcounter{maxnames}{99}}%</code>
Goossens, Rahtz, et al.	<code>\citeauthor{LGC97}</code> <code>\\</code>
	<code>\citeauthor{LGC97}</code> <code>% maxnames automatically reset</code>

16-2-22

Donald Arseneau's `cite` package is incompatible with `biblatex`, which addresses citation sorting differently. The functionality of `notoccite` is built into `biblatex`: citations in the table of contents and similar lists are printed but otherwise ignored and so do not affect the numbering. However, in contrast to the incompatibility between `cite` and `biblatex`, there is no conflict if `notoccite` is loaded too — it is simply not necessary.

For the purpose of fully adapting the format of citation commands, `biblatex` offers the command `\DeclareCiteCommand` that we describe in Section 16.7.16, but various typical layouts can be achieved either with existing package options or by switching to another citation style. The option `sortcites` sorts list of citations as they are sorted in the bibliography and also suppresses duplicates. Compare the output of the next two examples:

	<code>\usepackage{biblatex}</code>
[2, 1, KpV]	<code>\cite{cicero,angenendt,kant:kpV}\\</code>
[2, KpV, 2, 1]	<code>\cite{cicero,kant:kpV,cicero,angenendt}</code>

16-2-23

In the previous example the reference to `cicero` appeared twice; now all references are sorted and duplicates are suppressed:

```
\usepackage[sortcites]{biblatex}
[1, 2, KpV] \cite{cicero,angenendt,kant:kpV}\
[1, 2, KpV] \cite{cicero,kant:kpV,cicero,angenendt}
```

16-2-24

Compressed and sorted citations can be produced, for example, by using a style such as `numeric-comp`. Note that unresolved citations are not marked with a question mark but show the citation key in bold. Redoing Example 16-2-9 from page 478 thus gives:

```
\usepackage[style=numeric-comp]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
Good information about TEX and LATEX can be found in [Knuth:ct-b, 1–4].
Good information about \TeX{} and \LaTeX{} can be found in
\cite{LGC97,LWC99,Knuth-CT-a,Knuth:ct-b,Knuth:TB10-1-31}.
```

16-2-25

How to use parentheses instead of brackets has already been demonstrated in Example 16-2-6 on page 478. We now extend this example and also change the punctuation before the *post-note* and the punctuation between two citations by redefining two standard `biblatex` commands:

```
\usepackage[style=ext-numeric-comp]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib} \DeclareOuterCiteDelims{cite}{(}{)}
\renewcommand\postnotedelim{\addsemicolon\addspace}
\renewcommand\multicitedelim{\addsemicolon\addspace}
Color support for LATEX is described in (2) and the hyperref
package in (1; pp. 35–67).
See also (3; 4).
Color support for \LaTeX{} is described in \cite{LGC97}
and the \texttt{hyperref} package in \cite[35-67]{LWC99}.
\par See also \cite{MR-PQ, Southall}.
```

16-2-26

Citations can be displayed as superscripts in selected bibliography styles (e.g., the numeric styles of `biblatex` and `biblatex-ext`) with the command `\supercite`. If the document uses `\autocite` as a citation command, the package option `autocite=superscript` switches to superscripts too. Citations typeset as superscripts ignore the *pre-note* and *post-note* arguments with a warning — you can use a normal `\cite` to get an unraised citation with notes. Below we repeat Example 16-2-13 on page 481 altered to use `biblatex` including the change to use parentheses, because that was also changed in the earlier example.

```
\usepackage[style=ext-numeric-comp,maxcitenames=1]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib} \DeclareOuterCiteDelims{cite}{(}{)}
Good information about TEX and LATEX can be found in Knuth:ct-b, 1–4. For
hyperref see (1, pp. 35–67).
in \supercite{LGC97,LWC99,Knuth-CT-a,Knuth:ct-b,%
Knuth:TB10-1-31}.
For \texttt{hyperref} see \cite[35-67]{LWC99}.
```

16-2-27

Similar to `\cite` in the `cite` package, `\autocite` tries to move punctuation before the citation if it is used with `autocite=superscript`. It does not suppress a double period created, for example, from an abbreviation. You have to rewrite your text in such cases.

```
\usepackage[maxcitenames=1,style=numeric-comp,
             autocite=superscript]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
```

16-2-28 See Knuth,² see also Goossens et al..¹

```
See \citeauthor{Knuth-CT-a}~\autocite{Knuth-CT-a},
\citeauthor[see also][]{LGC97}~\autocite{LGC97}.
```

Above, we retrieved the author names with `\citeauthor` and forced the use of “et al.” after the first author with the option `maxcitenames=1`.

In summary, the big difference between `cite` and `biblatex` with respect to superscript citations is that the latter expects you to use different commands for the citations in your document, i.e., `\supercite`, instead of getting an altered behavior of the standard `\cite` command. If this is not to your liking, you can copy the (quite short) definition of `\supercite` from `numeric.cbx` and use it to redefine `\cite`.

Finally, we show a short example for an “alpha” style that can be produced with, for example, the alphabetic style. In this style the label is built from the initials of some of the authors and a part of the year; additional authors are indicated by a plus symbol. In the following example we restrict the number of authors to two (the default is three) with `maxalphanames`:

The “alpha” style

```
\usepackage[style=alphabetic,minalphanames=2,
             maxalphanames=2]{biblatex}
```

Knuth [Knu86], Knuth [Knu89]

```
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
```

Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach [GR+97]

```
\textcite{Knuth-CT-a}, \textcite{Knuth:TB10-1-31} \\\
```

16-2-29

Goossens and Rahtz [GR99]

```
\textcite{LGC97} \\\ \textcite{LWC99}
```

With the command `\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate`, the template for the label can be redefined; in its argument various instructions for how to construct the label can be given. The following example creates short labels based only on the names. Note how the two Knuth citations are distinguished with additional letters.

```
\usepackage[style=alphabetic,minalphanames=2,
             maxalphanames=2]{biblatex}
```

```
\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate
```

```
{\labelelement{\field{varwidth}{labelname}}}
```

```
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
```

Knuth [Ka], Knuth [Kb]

Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach [GR+]

```
\textcite{Knuth-CT-a}, \textcite{Knuth:TB10-1-31} \\\
```

16-2-30

Goossens and Rahtz [GR]

```
\textcite{LGC97} \\\ \textcite{LWC99}
```

16.3 The author-date system

Depending on the structure of the sentence, the author-date system normally uses one of two different forms for references: if the author’s name appears naturally in the sentence, it is not repeated within the parentheses or brackets; otherwise, both

the author's name and the year of publication are used. This style poses an unsolvable problem when \LaTeX 's standard syntax is used, because only one command (`\cite`) is available.

Consequently, anyone developing support for the author-date system has had to extend the \LaTeX syntax for citing publications. The following example shows the two forms and their implementation (with two new commands) as provided by the `natbib` system.

<p>Knuth (1989) shows ... This is explained in the authoritative manual on \TeX (Knuth, 1986).</p>	<pre>\usepackage{natbib} \citet{Knuth:TB10-1-31} shows \ldots\ This is explained in the authoritative manual on \TeX{~}\citep{Knuth-CT-a}.</pre>
---	--

16-3-1

Extending the \LaTeX syntax for citing publications does not solve the problem completely. In order to produce the different forms of citation references needed in the author-date system, structured information must be provided by the bibliography. Without a special structure it is impossible to pick up the data needed for the textual references (e.g., producing just the year in parentheses). That is, a bibliographical entry like

```
\bibitem[Donald-E. Knuth 1986]{Knuth-CT-a} Donald-E. Knuth.
\newblock \emph{The {\TeX}book}, volume-A of \emph{Computers and
Typesetting}. \newblock Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986.
```

allows the `\cite` command to produce “(Donald E. Knuth 1986)” but not “Donald E. Knuth (1986)” or just “Knuth” or just “1986” as well. You also have to ensure that `\bibitem` does not display the label, but that outcome can be fairly easily arranged.

The solution used by all implementations for author-date support before the advent of the `biblatex` package was to introduce a special syntax within the optional argument of `\bibitem`. In some implementations this structure is fairly simple. For instance, `chicago` requires only

```
\bibitem[\protect\citeauthoryear{Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach}
{Goossens et~al.}{1997}]{LGC97}
```

This information can still be produced manually, if needed. Other packages go much further and encode a lot of information explicitly. For example, `jurabib` asks for the following kind of argument structure (same publication):

```
\bibitem[{{Goossens\jbbfsasep Rahtz\jbbstasep Mittelbach\jbdy {1997}}}%
{{0}}{book}{1997}}{xi + 554}{Reading, MA, USA\pubaddr {
Ad{\-d}i{\-s}on-Wes{\-l}ey Longman\bibbdsep {} 1997}}{The {\LaTeX}
Graphics Companion: Illustrating Documents with {\TeX} and {\PostScript}}%
{}{}{}{}{}{}{}]{LGC97}
```

This approach gives a lot of flexibility when referring to the publication, but it is clear that no one wants to produce a bibliography environment with such a structure

manually. The same is true when biblatex is used, only in this case the .bbl file no longer contains `\bibitem` commands with structured arguments, but just the structured data in a special format; see the introduction to Section 16.7 on page 541. While that format may be easier to understand than the one produced, for example, for `jurabib`, it is not realistic to generate it manually either. Hence, the only usable solution in these cases is to use an external tool, i.e., `biber` or `BibTeX` (together with special style files) to generate the entries automatically.

16.3.1 Early attempts

Over the years several independent add-on packages have been developed to support the author-date system. Unfortunately, each one introduced a different set of user-level commands. Typically, the add-ons consist of a \LaTeX package providing the user commands and one or more `BibTeX` styles to generate the `thebibliography` environment with a matching syntax in the optional argument of the `\bibitem` command.

For example, the `chicago` package, which aimed to implement the recommendations of *The Chicago Manual of Style* [40], offers the following list of commands (plus variants all ending in NP to omit the parentheses — for example, `\citeNP`):

	<code>\usepackage{chicago}</code>	
	<code>\bibliographystyle{chicago}</code>	
(Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach 1997)	<code>\cite{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
(Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach)	<code>\citeA{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach (1997)	<code>\citeN{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
(Goossens and Rahtz 1999)	<code>\shortcite{LWC99}</code>	<code>\\</code>
(Goossens and Rahtz)	<code>\shortciteA{LWC99}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens and Rahtz (1999)	<code>\shortciteN{LWC99}</code>	<code>\\</code>
(1999), 1999	<code>\citeyear{LWC99}, \citeyearNP{LWC99}</code>	

16-3-2

Several `BibTeX` styles (`chicago`, `chicagoa`, `jas99`, `named`, and `newapa`) are compatible with the `chicago` package. All of them are still in use, but the package itself is now rarely included in \LaTeX documents (`natbib` can be used instead to provide the user-level syntax).

In contrast, only two commands are provided by David Rhead's `authordate1-4` package, the original support package for the `BibTeX` styles `authordate1` to `authordate4`. It implements recommendations by the Cambridge and Oxford University Presses and various British standards.

	<code>\usepackage{authordate1-4}</code>	
	<code>\bibliographystyle{authordate2}</code>	
(Goossens <i>et al.</i> , 1997) or (1997)	<code>\cite{LGC97}</code>	or <code>\shortcite{LGC97}</code>

16-3-3

For a final example we take a brief look at the `harvard` package by Peter Williams and Thorsten Schnier. In contrast to the two previously described packages, `harvard` has been further developed and updated for $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$. It implements a number of

interesting features. For example, a first citation gives a full author list, whereas a later citation uses an abbreviated list (unless explicitly requested otherwise). The user-level commands are shown in the next example:¹

(Goossens, Rahtz & Mittelbach 1997)		<code>\usepackage{harvard}</code>	
(Goossens et al. 1997)	second citation	<code>\bibliographystyle{agsm}</code>	
(Goossens, Rahtz & Mittelbach 1997)	long names forced	<code>\cite{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens et al. (1997)		<code>\cite{LGC97} \hfill second citation</code>	<code>\\</code>
(e.g., Goossens et al. 1997)		<code>\cite*[LGC97]\hfill long names forced</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens et al.		<code>\citeasnoun{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Knuth's (1986)		<code>\citeaffixed{LGC97}{e.g.,}</code>	<code>\\</code>
		<code>\citename{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
		<code>\possessivecite{Knuth-CT-a}</code>	

16-3-4

The harvard package requires a specially prepared bibliography environment in which `\bibitem` is replaced by `\harvarditem`, a command with a special syntax used to carry the information needed for author-date citations. A few \LaTeX styles (including `agsm`, `dcu`, `kluwer`, and `nederlands`) implement this special syntax.

Many of these packages support the author-date system quite well. Nevertheless, with different packages using their own syntax and supporting only half a dozen \LaTeX styles each, the situation stayed unsatisfactory for a long time. Matters changed for the better when Patrick Daly published his `natbib` support package, described in the next section.

16.3.2 natbib — Customizable author-date references

Although most publishers indicate which bibliographic style they prefer, it is not always evident how to change from one system to the other if one has to prepare source texts adhering to multiple styles.

To solve the problem of incompatible syntaxes described in the previous section, Patrick Daly developed the `natbib` package (for “NATural sciences BIBliography”). This package can accept several `\bibitem` variants (including `\harvarditem`) as produced by the different \LaTeX styles. Thus, for the first time, (nearly) all of the author-date \LaTeX styles could be used with a single user-level syntax for the citation commands.

The `natbib` package is compatible with packages like `babel`, `chapterbib`, `hyperref`, `index`, and `showkeys`, and with various document classes including the standard \LaTeX classes, `amsbook` and `amsart`, classes from the KOMA-Script bundle, and `memoir`. It cannot be used together with the `cite` package but provides similar sorting and compressing functions via options.

The `natbib` package therefore acts as a single, flexible interface for most of the available bibliographic styles for \LaTeX when the author-date system is required. It can also be used to produce numerical references; see Sections 16.2.4 and 16.4.1.

¹The small `har2nat` package allows using those commands also with `natbib`.

The basic syntax

The two central commands of `natbib` are `\citet` (for textual citation) and `\citep` (for parenthetical citation).¹

```
\citet[post-note]{key1,key2,...}   \citet[pre-note][post-note]{key1,...}
\citep[post-note]{key1,key2,...}   \citep[pre-note][post-note]{key1,...}
```

Both commands take one mandatory argument (a *key-list* that refers to one or more publications) and one or two optional arguments to add text before and after the citation. L^AT_EX's standard `\cite` command can take only a single optional argument denoting a *post-note*. For this reason the commands implement the following syntax: with only one optional argument specified, this argument denotes the *post-note* (i.e., a note placed after the citation); with two optional arguments specified, the first denotes a *pre-note* and the second a *post-note*. To get only a *pre-note* you have to add an empty second argument, as seen in the last lines of the next two examples. Also note that `natbib` redefines `\cite` to act like `\citet`.²

		<code>\usepackage{natbib}</code>	
Different <code>\citet</code> variants:		Different <code>\verb=\citet=</code> variants:	<code>\\[2pt]</code>
Goossens et al. (1997)		<code>\citet{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens et al. (1997, chap. 2)		<code>\citet[chap.~2]{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens et al. (see 1997, chap. 2)		<code>\citet[see][chap.~2]{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
16-3-5	pre-note only: Goossens et al. (see 1997)	<code>\citet[see][]{LGC97}</code>	
		<code>\usepackage{natbib}</code>	
Different <code>\citep</code> variants:		Different <code>\verb=\citep=</code> variants:	<code>\\[2pt]</code>
(Goossens et al., 1997)		<code>\citep{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
(Goossens et al., 1997, chap. 2)		<code>\citep[chap.~2]{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
(see Goossens et al., 1997, chap. 2)		<code>\citep[see][chap.~2]{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
16-3-6	pre-note only: (see Goossens et al., 1997)	<code>\citep[see][]{LGC97}</code>	

Both commands have starred versions, `\citet*` and `\citep*` (with otherwise identical syntax), that typeset the full list of authors if it is known.³ These variants work only if this feature is supported by the used B^BL^AT_EX style file. In other words, the information must be made available through the optional argument of `\bibitem`; if it is missing, the abbreviated list is always printed.

		<code>\usepackage{natbib}</code>	
Compare Goossens et al. (1997) with		Compare <code>\citet{LGC97}</code> with	<code>\\</code>
Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach (1997)		<code>\citet*{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
16-3-7	(see Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach, 1997)	<code>\citep*[see][]{LGC97}</code>	

¹The commands exhibit the same behavior in most bibliographic styles, which is why we do not show a `\bibliographystyle` line in many of the upcoming examples.

²To be precise, `\cite` is redefined to act like `\citet` if `natbib` is used in author-date mode as discussed in this section. If used in author-number mode (see Section 16.4.1), it works like `\citep`.

³If you plan to also use the `jurabib` package (see Section 16.5.1), then avoid the starred forms because they are not supported by that package.

Two other variant forms exist: `\citealt` works like `\citet` but does not generate parentheses, and `\citealp` is `\citep` without parentheses. Evidently, some of the typeset results come out almost identically.

	<code>\usepackage{natbib}</code>	
Goossens et al. 1997	<code>\citealt{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens et al., 1997	<code>\citealp{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach 1997	<code>\citealt*{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach, 1997	<code>\citealp*{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens and Rahtz, 1999, p. 236 etc.	<code>\citealp[p.~236]{LWC99}</code>	etc.

16-3-8

When using the author-date system, it is sometimes desirable to just cite the author(s) or the year. For this purpose `natbib` provides the following additional commands (`\citeauthor*` is the same as `\citeauthor` when the full author information is unavailable):


	<code>\usepackage{natbib}</code>	
Goossens et al.	<code>\citeauthor{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach	<code>\citeauthor*{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
1997 or (1997)	<code>\citeyear{LGC97}</code>	or <code>\citeyearpar{LGC97}</code>

16-3-9

Even more complex mixtures of text and citation information can be handled with the command `\citetext`. It takes one mandatory argument and surrounds it with the parentheses or brackets used by other citation commands. By combining this command with `\citealp` or other commands that do not produce parentheses, all sorts of combinations become possible.

(see Goossens et al., 1997 or Knuth,	<code>\usepackage{natbib}</code>	
1986)	<code>\citetext{see \citealp{LGC97} or \citealp{Knuth-CT-a}}</code>	

16-3-10

*Forcing names
to uppercase* 

Sometimes a sentence starts with a citation, but the (first) author of the cited publication has a name that starts with a lowercase letter. In that case, the commands discussed so far cannot be used. The `natbib` package solves this problem by providing for all commands variants that capitalize the first letter. They are easy to remember: just capitalize the first letter of the corresponding original command. For example, instead of `\citet*`, use `\Citet*`. Here are some additional examples:

	<code>\usepackage{natbib}</code>	
Normal citation: van Leunen (1992)	Normal citation: <code>\citet{vLeunen:92}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Van Leunen (1992) or Van Leunen 1992	<code>\Citet{vLeunen:92}</code> or <code>\Citealt{vLeunen:92}</code>	<code>\\</code>
(Van Leunen, 1992) or Van Leunen, 1992	<code>\Citep{vLeunen:92}</code> or <code>\Citealp{vLeunen:92}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Van Leunen	<code>\Citeauthor{vLeunen:92}</code>	

16-3-11

As a final goody, `natbib` lets you define alternative text for a citation that can be used instead of the usual author-date combination. For the definition use

`\defcitealias` (usually in the preamble), and for the retrieval use `\citetalias` or `\citepalias`.

	<code>\usepackage{natbib}</code>
	<code>\defcitealias{LGC97}{Dogbook-II}</code>
Goossens et al. (1997) = Dogbook II	<code>\citet{LGC97} = \citetalias{LGC97} \\\</code>
(Goossens et al., 1997) = (Dogbook II)	<code>\citep{LGC97} = \citepalias{LGC97} \\\par</code>
Alias changed: (see Dogbook II 2ed)	<code>\defcitealias{LGC97}{Dogbook-II~2ed}</code>
	Alias changed: <code>\citepalias[see] []{LGC97}</code>


With the commands introduced in this section, `natbib` provides more features than the earlier attempts to support the author-date system (e.g., the packages described in Section 16.3.1). In the few cases where `natbib` does not offer directly equivalent commands, they can be easily built manually.

For example, `harvard's` `\possessivecite` command (shown in Example 16-3-4) can be emulated with `\citeauthor` and `\citeyearpar`, as is done in the first line of the next example:

	<code>\usepackage{natbib}</code>
	<code>\bibliographystyle{agsm}</code>
	<code>\newcommand\possessivecite[1]{\citeauthor{#1}'s \citeyearpar{#1}}</code>
Knuth's (1986)	<code>\citeauthor{Knuth-CT-a}'s \citeyearpar{Knuth-CT-a} \\\</code>
Knuth's (1986)	<code>\possessivecite{Knuth-CT-a}</code>

Multiple citations

In standard \LaTeX , multiple citations can be made by including more than one citation *key-list* argument to the `\cite` command. The same is possible for the citation commands `\citet` and `\citep` (as well as their variant forms). The `natbib` package then automatically checks whether adjacent citations in the *key-list* have the same author designation. If so, it prints the author names only once. Unfortunately, it checks only the surnames; e.g., “Don Knuth” and “Jill Knuth” would be considered the same author and lumped together.

 Careful with different authors with identical surnames

	<code>\usepackage{natbib}</code>
Goossens et al. (1997); Goossens and Rahtz (1999)	<code>\citet{LGC97,LWC99} \\\</code>
(Goossens et al., 1997; Goossens and Rahtz, 1999)	<code>\citep{LGC97,LWC99} \\\</code>
(Knuth, 1989, 1986)	<code>\citep{Knuth:TB10-1-31,Knuth-CT-a}</code>

The last line in the previous example exhibits a potential problem when using several keys in one citation command: the references are typeset in the order of the *key-list*. If you specify the option `sort`, then the citations are sorted into the order in which they appear in the bibliography, usually alphabetical by author and then by year.

	<code>\usepackage[sort]{natbib}</code>
(Knuth, 1986, 1989)	<code>\citep{Knuth:TB10-1-31,Knuth-CT-a}</code>

While all the citation commands support *key-lists* with more than one citation key, they are best confined to `\citep`; already `\citet` gives questionable results. The situation gets worse when you use optional arguments: with `\citet` any *pre-note* is added before each year (which could be considered a defect in the package). More generally, it is not at all clear what these notes are supposed to refer to. Hence, if you want to add notes, it is better to separate your citations.

	<code>\usepackage{natbib}</code>	
(see van Leunen, 1992; Knuth, 1986, p. 55)	<code>\citep[see] [p.~55]{vLeunen:92,Knuth-CT-a}</code>	<code>\</code>
(see Knuth, 1986, 1989, p. 55)	<code>\citep[see] [p.~55]{Knuth-CT-a,Knuth:TB10-1-31}</code>	<code>\</code>
van Leunen (see 1992); Knuth (see 1986, p. 55)	<code>\citet[see] [p.~55]{vLeunen:92,Knuth-CT-a}</code>	<code>\</code>
Knuth (see 1986, 1989, p. 55)	<code>\citet[see] [p.~55]{Knuth-CT-a,Knuth:TB10-1-31}</code>	

16-3-16

Full author list only with the first citation

The harvard package automatically typesets the first citation of a publication with the full list of authors and subsequent citations with an abbreviated list. This style of citation is quite popular in some disciplines, and `natbib` supports it if you load it with the option `longnamesfirst`. Compare the next example to Example 16-3-4 on page 490:

	<code>\usepackage[longnamesfirst]{natbib}</code>	
	<code>\bibliographystyle{agsm}</code>	
(Goossens, Rahtz & Mittelbach 1997) first citation	<code>\citep{LGC97} \hfill first citation</code>	<code>\</code>
(Goossens et al. 1997) second	<code>\citep{LGC97} \hfill second</code>	<code>\</code>
(Goossens, Rahtz & Mittelbach 1997) names forced	<code>\citep*{LGC97}\hfill names forced</code>	<code>\</code>
Goossens et al. (1997)	<code>\citet{LGC97}</code>	<code>\</code>
(e.g., Goossens et al. 1997)	<code>\citep[e.g.,] []{LGC97}</code>	<code>\</code>
Goossens et al.	<code>\citeauthor{LGC97}</code>	

16-3-17

Some Bib_T_EX style files are quite cleverly programmed. For example, when the `agsm` Bib_T_EX style, used in Example 16-3-17, detects that shortening a list of authors leads to ambiguous citations, it refuses to produce an abbreviated list. Thus, after adding the `test97` citation to the example, all citations suddenly come out in long form.¹ Bib_T_EX styles produced with `custom-bib` avoid such ambiguous citations by adding a suffix to the year, but other Bib_T_EX styles (e.g., `chicago`) happily produce them; see Example 16-3-19 on the facing page and page 471.

	<code>\usepackage[longnamesfirst]{natbib}</code>	
	<code>\bibliographystyle{agsm}</code>	
(Goossens, Rahtz & Mittelbach 1997) first citation	<code>\citep{LGC97} \hfill first citation</code>	<code>\</code>
(Goossens, Rahtz & Mittelbach 1997) second	<code>\citep{LGC97} \hfill second</code>	<code>\</code>
(Goossens, User, Doe et al. 1997) first citation	<code>\citep{test97}\hfill first citation</code>	<code>\</code>
(Goossens, User, Doe et al. 1997) second citation	<code>\citep{test97}\hfill second citation</code>	

16-3-18

¹Something that puzzled the author when he first encountered it while preparing the examples.

Some publications have so many authors that you may want to always cite them using their abbreviated name list, even the first time. You can achieve this effect by listing their keys, separated by commas, in the argument of a `\shortcites` declaration made in the preamble. The example also shows that use of the `chicago` style can lead to ambiguous citations (lines 1 and 2 versus line 5).

		<code>\usepackage[longnamesfirst]{natbib}</code>
		<code>\bibliographystyle{chicago}</code>
		<code>\shortcites{LGC97}</code>
(Goossens et al., 1997)	first citation	<code>\citep{LGC97} \hfill first citation \\\</code>
(Goossens et al., 1997)	second citation	<code>\citep{LGC97} \hfill second citation \\\</code>
(Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach, 1997)	forced	<code>\citep*{LGC97}\hfill forced \\\</code>
(Goossens, User, Doe, et al., 1997)	first citation	<code>\citep{test97}\hfill first citation \\\</code>
(Goossens et al., 1997)	second citation	<code>\citep{test97}\hfill second citation</code>

16-3-19

Customizing the citation reference layout

So far, all of the examples have shown parentheses around the citations, but this is by no means the only possibility offered by `natbib`. The package internally knows about more than 20 `BBTEX` styles. If any such style is chosen with a `\bibliographystyle` command, then a layout appropriate for this style is selected as well. For example, when using the `agu` (American Geophysical Union) style, we get:

<i>Goossens et al.</i> [1997]	<code>\usepackage{natbib} \bibliographystyle{agu}</code>
[<i>Knuth</i> , 1986; <i>Goossens and Rahtz</i> , 1999]	<code>\citet{LGC97} \\\ \citep{Knuth-CT-a,LWC99} \\\</code>
[see <i>Knuth</i> , 1986, chap. 2]	<code>\citep[see] [chap.~2] {Knuth-CT-a}</code>

16-3-20

By default, the citation layout is determined by the chosen `BBTEX` style (or `natbib`'s defaults if a given style is unknown to `natbib`). By including a `\citestyle` declaration you can request use of the citation style associated with a `BBTEX` style that is different from the one used to format the bibliography. In the next example we use the `agsm` style for the citations while the overall style remains `agu`. If you compare this example to Example 16-3-20, you see that the textual formatting is unchanged (e.g., italic for author names), but the parentheses and the separation between authors and year have both changed.

<i>Goossens et al.</i> (1997)	<code>\usepackage{natbib} \bibliographystyle{agu}</code>
(<i>Knuth</i> 1986, <i>Goossens and Rahtz</i> 1999)	<code>\citestyle{agsm}</code>
(see <i>Knuth</i> 1986, chap. 2)	<code>\citet{LGC97} \\\ \citep{Knuth-CT-a,LWC99} \\\</code>
	<code>\citep[see] [chap.~2] {Knuth-CT-a}</code>

16-3-21

It is also possible to influence the layout by supplying options: `round` (default for most styles), `square`, `curly`, or `angle` change the type of parentheses used, while `colon`¹ (default for most styles) and `comma` alter the separation between multiple

¹Despite its name this option produces a “;” semicolon.

citations. In the next example, we overwrite the defaults set by the `agu` style, by loading `natbib` with two options.

<code>Goossens et al. {1997}</code> <code>{Knuth, 1986, Goossens and Rahtz, 1999}</code> <code>{see Knuth, 1986, chap. 2}</code>	<pre>\usepackage[curly,comma]{natbib} \bibliographystyle{agu} \citestyle{LGC97} \\\citep{Knuth-CT-a,LWC99} \\\ \citep[see][chap.~2]{Knuth-CT-a}</pre>
--	---

16-3-22

Yet another method to customize the layout is mainly intended for package and/or class file writers: the `\bibpunct` declaration. It takes seven arguments (the first optional) that define various aspects of the citation format. It is typically used to define the default citation format for a particular \LaTeX style. For example, the `natbib` package contains many definitions like this:

```
\newcommand\bibstyle@chicago{\bibpunct{()}{;}{a}{,}{,}{,}}
```

That definition is selected when you choose `chicago` as your \LaTeX style or when you specify it as the argument to `\citestyle`. Similar declarations can be added for \LaTeX styles that `natbib` does not directly support. This effect is most readily realized by grouping such declarations in the local configuration file `natbib.cfg`. For details on the meanings of the arguments, see the documentation accompanying the `natbib` package.

If there are conflicting specifications, then the following rules apply: the lowest priority is given to internal `\bibstyle@(<name>)` declarations, followed by the options specified in the `\usepackage` declarations. Both are overwritten by an explicit `\bibpunct` or `\citestyle` declaration in the document preamble.

Normally, `natbib` does not prevent a line break within the author list of a citation. By specifying the option `nonamebreak`, you can ensure that all author names in one citation are kept on a single line. In normal circumstances this is seldom a good idea because it is likely to cause overfull hboxes.

Forcing all author
names on a single
line

Customizing the bibliography layout

The `thebibliography` environment, as implemented by `natbib`, automatically adds a heading before the list of publications. By default, `natbib` selects an unnumbered heading of the highest level, such as `\chapter*` for a book type class or `\section*` for the article class or a variant thereof. The actual heading inserted is stored in the command `\bibsection`. Thus, to modify the default, you have to change its definition. For instance, you can suppress the heading altogether or choose a numbered heading.

For one particular situation `natbib` offers direct support: if you specify the option `sectionbib`, you instruct the package to use `\section*`, even if the highest sectional unit is `\chapter`. This option is useful if `natbib` and `chapterbib` are used together (see Section 16.8.1).

Between `\bibsection` and the start of the list, `natbib` executes the hook `\bibpreamble`. It allows you to place some text between the heading and the start

of the actual reference list. It is also possible to influence the font used for the bibliography by redefining the command `\bibfont`. This hook can also be used to influence the list in other ways, such as setting it unjustified by adding `\raggedright`. Note that `\bibpreamble` and `\bibfont` are defined by default (to do nothing) and thus require redefining with `\renewcommand`.

Finally, two length parameters are available for customization. The first line in each reference is set flush left, and all following lines are indented by the value stored in `\bibhang` (default 1em). The vertical space between the references is stored in the rubber length `\bibsep` (the default value is usually equal to `\itemsep` as defined in other lists).

To show the various possibilities available we repeat Example 16-1-2 on page 472 but apply all kinds of customization features (not necessarily for the better!). Note the presence of `\par` at the end of `\bibpreamble`. Without it the settings in `\bibfont` would affect the inserted text!

Entries with multiple authors might be problematical, e.g., Goossens et al. [1997a] and Goossens et al. [1997b] or even Goossens et al. [1997a,b]. But then they might not.

1 References

Some material inserted between heading and list.

M. Goossens, S. Rahtz, and F. Mittelbach. *The L^AT_EX Graphics Companion: Illustrating Documents with T_EX and PostScript*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley Longman, Reading, MA, USA, 1997a. ISBN 0-201-85469-4.

M. Goossens, B. User, J. Doe, et al. Ambiguous citations. Submitted to the IBM J. Res. Dev., 1997b.

```
\usepackage{natbib}
\bibliographystyle{abbrvnat}
\renewcommand\bibsection{\section{\refname}}
\renewcommand\bibpreamble{Some material
    inserted between heading and list.\par}
\renewcommand\bibfont
    {\footnotesize\raggedright}
\setlength\bibhang{30pt}
\setlength\bibsep{1pt plus 1pt}

Entries with multiple authors might be
problematical, e.g., \cite{LGC97} and
\cite{test97} or even \cite{LGC97,test97}.
But then they might not.
\bibliography{tlc,tlc-ex}
```

16-3-23

Publications without author or year information

To use the author-date citation system, the entries in your list of publications need to contain the necessary information. If some information is missing, citations with `\citet` or its variants may produce strange results.

If the publication has no author but an editor, then most B^BT_EX styles use the latter. However, if both are missing, the solutions implemented differ greatly. B^BT_EX files in “Harvard” style (e.g., `agsm`) use the first three letters from the key field if present; otherwise, they use the first three letters from the organization field (omitting “The_” if necessary); and if that field is not available, they use the full title. If an entry has no year, then “n.d.” is used. This results in usable entries except in the case where part of the key field is selected:

Koppitz (n.d.) / *TUGboat The Communications of the T_EX User Group* (1980ff) / mak (2000)

```
\usepackage{natbib} \bibliographystyle{agsm}
\citet{G-G} / \citet{oddtity} / \citet{GNUMake}
```

16-3-24

With the same entries, BibTeX styles produced with custom-bib (e.g., `unsrtnat`) use the following strategy: if a key field is present, the whole field is used as an “author”; otherwise, if an organization field is specified, its first three letters are used (omitting “The_” if necessary); and if the entry does not have such a field, the first three letters of the citation label are used. A missing year is completely omitted. In the case of textual citations, this means that only the author name is printed. In that situation, or when the key field is used, it is probably best to avoid `\citet` and always use `\citep` to make it clear to the reader that you are actually referring to a publication and not just mentioning some person in passing.

```

\usepackage{natbib} \bibliographystyle{unsrtnat}
Koppitz / odd [1980ff] / make \citet{G-G} / \citet{oddity} / \citet{GNUMake} \
[Koppitz] / [odd, 1980ff] / [make] \citep{G-G} / \citep{oddity} / \citep{GNUMake}

```

16-3-25

As a final example we show the results when using the `chicago` BibTeX style. Here the GNU manual comes out fine (the full organization name is used), but the entry with the date missing looks odd.

```

Koppitz (Koppitz) / odd (80ff) / Free Software
Foundation (2000) \usepackage{natbib} \bibliographystyle{chicago}
(Koppitz, Koppitz) / (odd, 80ff) / (Free Soft- \citet{G-G} / \citet{oddity} / \citet{GNUMake} \
ware Foundation, 2000) \citep{G-G} / \citep{oddity} / \citep{GNUMake}

```

16-3-26

Indexing citations automatically

Citations can be entered in the index by inserting a `\citeindextrue` command at any point in the document. From that point onward, and until the end of the current group or the next `\citeindexfalse` is encountered, all variants of the `\citet` and `\citep` commands generate entries in the index file (if one is written). With `\citeindextrue` in effect, the `\bibitem` commands in the `thebibliography` environment also generate index entries. If this result is not desired, issue a `\citeindexfalse` command before entering the environment (e.g., before calling `\bibliography`).

The format of the generated index entries is controlled by the internal command `\NAT@idxtxt`. It has the following default definition:

```
\newcommand\NAT@idxtxt{\NAT@name\ \NAT@open\NAT@date\NAT@close}
```

Thus, it produces entries like “Knuth (1986)” or “Knuth [1986]”. For citations without author or year information, the results will most likely come out strangely. If enabled, the citations in Example 16-3-25 would generate the following entries:

```

\indexentry{{Koppitz}\ []}{6}
\indexentry{{odd}\ [1980ff]}{6}
\indexentry{{make}\ []}{6}

```

Sadly, the index entries generated in this way are not quite correct: as you can see above, `\NAT@name` contains braces around the name, which makes such index entries sort under “Symbols” and not under their alphabetic letter.

This might be corrected in the future, but in all likelihood you want to alter the outcome anyway and put only the author’s name into the index. This can be done with the following declaration in the preamble (it also removes the disturbing braces around the names):

```
\makeatletter
\AtBeginDocument{\renewcommand\NAT@idxtxt{%
  \expandafter\@firstofone\NAT@name{}}% drops the braces
% \ \NAT@open\NAT@date\NAT@close      % uncomment, if you also want the date
}}
\makeatother
```

The `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother` are needed because internal commands are involved, and `\AtBeginDocument` is needed because the redefinition is otherwise overwritten again at `\begin{document}`.

It is also possible to produce a separate index of citations by using David Jones’s index package (see Section 14.5.3). It allows you to generate multiple index lists using the `\newindex` command. For this to work you must first declare the list and then associate automatic citation indexing with this list in the preamble:

```
\usepackage{index}
\newindex{default}{idx}{ind}{Index}           % the main index
\newindex{cite}{cdx}{cnd}{Index of Citations}
\renewcommand\citeindextype{cite}
```

Later, use `\printindex[cite]` to indicate where the citation index should appear in the document.

BibTeX styles for natbib

As mentioned in the introduction, `natbib` was developed to work with various BibTeX styles that implement some form of author-date scheme. In addition to those third-party styles, `natbib` works with all styles that can be produced with the `custom-bib` bundle (see Section 15.7.2 on page 426). It is distributed with three styles — `abbrvnat`, `plainnat`, and `unsrtnat` — that are extensions of the corresponding standard styles. They have been adapted to work better with `natbib`, allowing you to use some of its features that would be otherwise unavailable. These styles also implement a number of extra fields useful in the days of electronic publications:

doi For use with electronic journals and related material. The Digital Object Identifier (DOI) is a system for identifying and exchanging intellectual property in the digital environment and is supposedly more robust than Uniform Resource Locators (URLs); see www.doi.org for details. The field is optional.

eid Because electronic journals usually have no page numbers, they use a sequence identifier (EID) to locate the article within the journal. The field is optional and is used in place of the page number if present.

isbn The International Standard Book Number (ISBN), a 13-digit (formerly 10) unique identification number (see <https://www.isbn.org>). The ISBN is defined in ISO Standard 2108 and has been in use for more than 50 years. The field is optional.

issn The International Standard Serial Number (ISSN), an 8-digit number that identifies periodical publications (see <https://www.issn.org>). The field is optional.

url The Uniform Resource Locator (URL) for identifying resources on the web. The field is optional. Because URL addresses are typically quite long and are set in a typewriter font, line-breaking problems may occur. They are therefore automatically surrounded with a `\url` command, which is given a simple default definition if undefined. Thus, by using the `url` package (see Section 3.4.7), you can drastically improve the line-breaking situation because then URLs can be broken at punctuation marks.

16.3.3 biblatex's approach to author-date references

The `biblatex` package ships with the styles `authoryear`, `authoryear-comp`, `authoryear-ibid`, and `authoryear-icomp`, and many additional author-date styles are provided by external packages as shown in the overview of styles in Section 15.7.3. With the exception of the styles from the `biblatex-chicago` package, all can be loaded in the package options with the key `style`.

Besides `\cite`, the `biblatex` package offers a large variety of citation commands including variants to access only parts of the citation; and as with `natbib` all commands have two optional arguments for the pre- and post-note. We demonstrate a few variants in the following example. Note that differently than `natbib`, the starred command `\citeauthor*` shows the shortened author list.

The `\textcite` variants:

Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach (1997, chap. 2)
 Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach (see 1997, chap. 2)
 Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach (see 1997)

Other commands:


(see Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach 1997, chap. 2)
 see Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach 1997, chap. 2
 see 1997, chap. 2
 Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach
 Goossens et al.
 1997

```
\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{t1c.bib}
```

```
The \verb=\textcite= variants: \[2pt]
\textcite[chap.~2]{LGC97}      \[
\textcite[see][chap.~2]{LGC97} \[
\textcite[see][]{LGC97}        \[12pt]
Other commands:                \[2pt]
\parencite[see][chap.~2]{LGC97} \[
\cite[see][chap.~2]{LGC97}      \[
\cite*[see][chap.~2]{LGC97}     \[
\citeauthor{LGC97}              \[
\citeauthor*{LGC97}             \[
\citeyear{LGC97}
```

16-3-27

The `authoryear-comp` style sorts and compresses citation lists, while the style `authoryear-ibid` uses “ibidem” for repeated citations. The `authoryear-icomp` style combines both approaches:

 *The biblatex approach to the cite package*


16-3-28

```

Goossens and Rahtz (1999), Goossens, Rahtz,
and Mittelbach (1997), and Knuth (1986, 1989)
Knuth (see 1986)
Knuth (see ibid.)
\usepackage[style=authoryear-icomp]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\textcite{LGC97,Knuth-CT-a,LWC99,Knuth:TB10-1-31}\
\textcite[see][]{Knuth-CT-a} \
\textcite[see][]{Knuth-CT-a} \

```

The package provides citation commands that capitalize the first letter of a citation. As with `natbib` they are easy to remember: just capitalize the first letter of the corresponding original command. By default `biblatex` prints author names without a prefix in a citation; we change this with the option `useprefix` to show the effect.

 *Forcing names to uppercase*

16-3-29

```

Normal citation: van Leunen (1992)
Van Leunen (1992)
(Van Leunen 1992)
Van Leunen
\usepackage[style=authoryear,useprefix]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
Normal citation: \textcite{vLeunen:92}\
\Textcite{vLeunen:92} \
\Parencite{vLeunen:92} \
\Citeauthor{vLeunen:92}

```

The number of authors shown in citations can be globally adjusted with the options `maxcitenames` and `mincitenames`. In the document you can alter the setup for individual citations, e.g., to show more authors in one citation. There, it is done by setting the counters `maxnames` and `minnames` to suitable values. These counters are reset by `biblatex` at the start of every citation command, which means that setting them on the top level has no effect. Instead, you need to do this inside `\AtNextCite`, as shown below:

16-3-30

```

Goossens et al. (1997)
Goossens, Rahtz, et al. (1997)
Goossens et al. (1997)
Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach
(1997)
\usepackage[style=authoryear,
maxcitenames=1]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\textcite{LGC97} \
\AtNextCite{\setcounter{minnames}{2}}%
\setcounter{maxnames}{2}}\textcite{LGC97} \
\textcite{LGC97} \
\AtNextCite{\setcounter{maxnames}{99}}\textcite{LGC97}

```

Remember that the author names and the year build a label that should allow the reader to find the entry in the bibliography. `biblatex` tries hard to ensure that this label is unique and if needed increases the number of authors or adds initials. Check the `uniquename` and `uniquelist` options shown in the introduction of this chapter in Example 16-1-3 and discussed in more detail in Section 16.7.7 if `biblatex` seems to ignore your `maxnames` setting.

The `biblatex` package offers various “multicite” commands — typically ending with a plural “s” — which allow adding an individual *pre-note* and *post-note* to all citations of a list. The following example shows a few variants. Similar to the `natbib`

Multiple citations

commands, the biblatex commands `\textcite` and `\textcites` add the *pre-note* before the year, and the output is rather questionable.

	<code>\usepackage[style=authoryear-comp]{biblatex}</code>	
	<code>\addbibresource{tlc.bib}</code>	
1: see Knuth 1986, p. 55; also Knuth 1989, p. 35	1: <code>\cites[see][55]{Knuth-CT-a}</code>	
2: Knuth 1989, p. 35, 1986, p. 55	<code>[also][35]{Knuth:TB10-1-31}\</code>	
3: (see Knuth 1986, p. 55; also Knuth 1989, p. 35)	2: <code>\cites[35]{Knuth:TB10-1-31}[55]{Knuth-CT-a}</code>	<code>\</code>
4: (Knuth 1989, p. 35, 1986, p. 55)	3: <code>\parencites[see][55]{Knuth-CT-a}</code>	<code>[also][35]{Knuth:TB10-1-31}</code>
5: Leunen (see 1992, p. 55) and Knuth (also 1986, p. 43)	4: <code>\parencites[35]{Knuth:TB10-1-31}[55]{Knuth-CT-a}\</code>	<code>\</code>
5: Knuth (see 1986, p. 55) and Knuth (also 1989, p. 43)	5: <code>\textcites[see][55]{vLeunen:92}</code>	
	<code>[also][43]{Knuth-CT-a}</code>	<code>\</code>
	5: <code>\textcites[see][55]{Knuth-CT-a}</code>	
	<code>[also][43]{Knuth:TB10-1-31}</code>	

16-3-31

*Full author list only
with the first citation*

The biblatex package has no built-in package option to get the full author list only with the first citation, but a similar effect can be achieved by activating the option `citetracker` and then checking at every cite key with the command `\ifciteseen` if a cite has already been seen:

	<code>\usepackage[style=authoryear,</code>
	<code>citetracker=true,maxnames=2]{biblatex}</code>
	<code>\addbibresource{tlc.bib}</code>
	<code>\AtEveryCitekey{%</code>
Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach (1997)	<code>\ifciteseen{}\setcounter{maxnames}{99}}}</code>
Goossens et al. (1997)	<code>\textcite{LGC97} \ \ \textcite{LGC97}</code>

16-3-32

*Publications without
author or year
information*

If the publication has no author but an editor, the `authoryear` styles of biblatex uses the latter; if both are missing, the title is used. The field key is not used; thus, in the following example, which repeats Example 16-3-24, both entries without authors and editors use the title. If an entry has no year, then “n.d.” is used. The string is localized and so uses the german “o.D.” (for “ohne Datum”) in the next example.

1: Koppitz (o. D.)	<code>\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}</code>
2: <i>TUGboat The Communications of the</i>	<code>\usepackage[ngerman]{babel}</code>
<i>T_EX User Group</i> (1980ff)	<code>\addbibresource{tlc.bib} \addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib}</code>
3: <i>GNU Make, A Program for Directing</i>	1: <code>\textcite{G-G}</code>
<i>Recompilation</i> (2000)	2: <code>\textcite{oditty}</code>
	3: <code>\textcite{GNUmake}</code>

16-3-33

16.4 The author-number system

As mentioned in the introduction, no BibT_EX style file to our knowledge exists that implements the author-number system for documents in which the publications should be numbered individually for each author; for this you have to turn to a

biblatex style presented at the end of the section. If, however, the publications are numbered sequentially throughout the whole bibliography, then ample support is provided by BibTeX and by the natbib package already encountered in conjunction with the author-date system.

16.4.1 natbib — Revisited

Although originally designed to support the author-date system, natbib is also capable of producing author-number and number-only references. Both types of references are provided with the help of BibTeX styles specially designed for numbered bibliographies, similar to the BibTeX styles normally used for the author-date style of citations.

By default, natbib produces author-date citations. If you are primarily interested in citing references according to the number-only or author-number system, load natbib with the `numbers` option.

For comparison, we repeat Example 16-3-5 on page 491 with the `numbers` option loaded. This option automatically implies the options `square` and `comma`; thus, if you prefer parentheses, use the option `round` and overwrite the default choice.

	<code>\usepackage[numbers]{natbib}</code>	
Goossens et al. [1]	<code>\citet{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens et al. [1, chap. 2]	<code>\citet[chap.~2]{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens et al. [see 1, chap. 2]	<code>\citet[see][chap.~2]{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
pre-note only: Goossens et al. [see 1]	<code>pre-note only: \citet[see][]{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\[5pt]</code>
[1]	<code>\citep{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
[1, chap. 2]	<code>\citep[chap.~2]{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
[see 1, chap. 2]	<code>\citep[see][chap.~2]{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
pre-note only: [see 1]	<code>pre-note only: \citep[see][]{LGC97}</code>	

16-4-1

As you can see, the `\citet` command now generates citations according to the author-number system, while `\citep` produces number-only citations. In fact, if natbib is set up to produce numerical citations, L^AT_EX's `\cite` command behaves like `\citep`. In author-date mode, natbib makes this command act as the short form for the command `\citet`.

All variant forms of `\citet` and `\citep`, as discussed in Section 16.3.2, are also available in numerical mode, though only a few make sense. For example, `\citep*` gives the same output as `\citep`, because there are no authors inside the parentheses.

	<code>\usepackage[numbers]{natbib}</code>	
Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach [1]	<code>\citet*{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens et al.	<code>\citeauthor{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach	<code>\citeauthor*{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
1997 or [1997]	<code>\citeyear{LGC97}</code> or <code>\citeyearpar{LGC97}</code>	

16-4-2

The commands `\citealt` and `\citealt*` should probably not be used, because without the parentheses the citation number is likely to be misinterpreted. However,

in certain situations `\citealp` might be useful to obtain that number on its own and then perhaps use it together with `\citetext`.

	<code>\usepackage[numbers]{natbib}</code>	
Goossens et al. 1	<code>\citealt{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach 1	<code>\citealt*{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
1	<code>\citealp{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
1, p. 236 etc.	<code>\citealp[p.~236]{LGC97}</code>	etc.

16-4-3

Some journals use numerical citations with the numbers raised as superscripts. If loaded with the option `super`, the `natbib` package supports this type of citation. In that case our standard example (compare with Example 16-4-1) gives this:

	<code>\usepackage[super]{natbib}</code>	
Goossens et al. ¹	<code>\citet{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens et al. ¹ , chap. 2	<code>\citet[chap.~2]{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens et al. see ¹ , chap. 2	<code>\citet[see][chap.~2]{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
pre-note only: Goossens et al. see ¹	<code>\citet[see] []{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
1	<code>pre-note only: \citet[see] []{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\[5pt]</code>
¹ chap. 2	<code>\citep{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
see ¹ chap. 2	<code>\citep[chap.~2]{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
pre-note only: see ¹	<code>\citep[see][chap.~2]{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
	<code>pre-note only: \citep[see] []{LGC97}</code>	

16-4-4

As you will observe, the use of the optional arguments produces somewhat questionable results; in the case of `\citep` the *pre-note* does not appear at all. Thus, with this style of citation, it is usually best to stick to the basic forms of any such commands.

For superscript citations `natbib` removes possible spaces in front of the citation commands so as to attach the number to the preceding word. However, in contrast to the results produced with the `cite` package, punctuation characters do not migrate in front of the citation, nor is there any check for double periods. To illustrate this we repeat Example 16-2-15 from page 482.

...Knuth's book ² ; see also	<code>\usepackage[super]{natbib}</code>	
Goossens et al. ¹ .	<code>\ldots Knuth's book~\citep{Knuth-CT-a}; see also \citet{LGC97}.</code>	
...Knuth's book; ² see also	<code>\par %%% Manually corrected in two places:</code>	
Goossens et al. ¹	<code>\ldots Knuth's book;\citep{Knuth-CT-a} see also \citet{LGC97}</code>	

16-4-5

The packages `natbib` and `cite` are unfortunately incompatible (both modify \LaTeX 's internal citation mechanism), so in cases like Example 16-4-5 you have to change the input if `natbib` is to be used.

Sorting and compressing numerical citations

As seen in Section 16.2.2 the `cite` package sorts multiple citations and optionally compresses them into ranges. This feature is also implemented by `natbib` and can be activated through the options `sort` and `sort&compress`.

We have already encountered `sort` in connection with author-date citations. With numerical citations (i.e., the options `numbers` and `super`), the numbers are sorted. To show the effect we repeat Example 16-2-8 from page 478, except that we omit the undefined citation.

Good information about \TeX and \LaTeX can be found in [1, 2, 3, 4].

```
\usepackage[sort]{natbib} \bibliographystyle{plain}
Good information about \TeX{} and \LaTeX{} can be found in
\citep{LGC97,LWC99,Knuth-CT-a,Knuth:TB10-1-31}.
```

16-4-6

With the option `sort&compress`, the numbers are not only sorted but also compressed into ranges if possible. In author-date citation mode, this option has the same effect as `sort`.

Good information about \TeX and \LaTeX can be found in [1–4].

```
\usepackage[sort&compress]{natbib}\bibliographystyle{plain}
Good information about \TeX{} and \LaTeX{} can be found in
\citep{LGC97,LWC99,Knuth-CT-a,Knuth:TB10-1-31}.
```

16-4-7

The rules for selecting numerical mode

As mentioned previously, `natbib`, by default, works in author-date mode. However, for the previous two examples, `natbib` selected numerical mode without being explicitly told to do so (via the `numbers` or `super` option). This result occurs because the `plain` \BibTeX style does not carry author-date information in the `\bibitem` commands it generates. Whenever there is a single `\bibitem` without the relevant information, `natbib` automatically switches to numerical mode. Even specifying the option `authoryear` does not work in that case.

If a \BibTeX style supports author-date mode, then switching to numerical mode can be achieved by one of the following methods, which are listed here in increasing order of priority:

1. By selecting a `\bibliographystyle` with a predefined numerical citation style (e.g., defined in a local configuration file or in a class or package file).
2. By specifying the option `numbers` or `super`, as shown in most examples in this section.
3. By explicitly using `\bibpunct` with the fourth mandatory argument set to `n` or `s` (for details, see the package documentation).
4. By explicitly using `\citestyle` with the name of a predefined numerical bibliography style.

Customizing `natbib` in numerical mode

The majority of options and parameters to customize `natbib` have already been discussed on pages 495–497, but in numerical mode there are two more commands available to modify the produced layout. By default, citation numbers are typeset in the main body font. However, if you redefine `\citenumfont` (a command with one argument), it formats the citation number according to its specification.

Similarly, you can manipulate the format of the number as typeset within the bibliography by redefining `\bibnumfmt`. The default definition for this command usually produces square brackets around the number.

Images are discussed elsewhere, see (1, 2).

References

1. M. Goossens, S. Rahtz, and F. Mittelbach. *The L^AT_EX Graphics Companion: Illustrating Documents with T_EX and PostScript*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley Longman, Reading, MA, USA, 1997. ISBN 0-201-85469-4.
2. D. E. Knuth. *The T_EXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986. ISBN 0-201-13447-0.

```
\usepackage[numbers,round]{natbib}
\bibliographystyle{abbrvnat}
\renewcommand\bibfont{\small\raggedright}
\setlength\bibhang{30pt} % ignored!
\setlength\bibsep{1pt plus 1pt}
\renewcommand\citenumfont[1]{\textbf{#1}}
\renewcommand\bibnumfmt[1]{\textbf{#1.}}
```

Images are discussed elsewhere,
see \cite{LGC97,Knuth-CT-a}.

```
\bibliography{t1c}
```

16-4-8

While `\bibsection`, `\bibpreamble`, `\bibfont`, and `\bibsep` work as before, the parameter `\bibhang` has no effect, because in a numbered bibliography the indentation is defined by the width of the largest number.

16.4.2 biblatex's approach to author-number references

Nothing special is needed to get references with author names and numbers similar to the natbib output. Because biblatex always has access to the author names, you need only to use a numeric style and a citation command, which shows also the author like `\textcite` (or the emulated natbib commands if you have activated them with the natbib option). How many authors are shown can be set with the options `maxcitenames` and `mincitenames`. More examples and information about the numeric styles can be found in Section 16.2.5.

	<code>\usepackage[maxcitenames=1]{biblatex}</code>	
	<code>\addbibresource{t1c.bib}</code>	
Knuth [2]	<code>\textcite{Knuth-CT-a}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens et al. [1]	<code>\textcite{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens et al. [see 1, chap. 2]	<code>\textcite[see][chap.~2]{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens et al. [see 1]	<code>\textcite[see][]{LGC97}</code>	<code>\\</code>

16-4-9

Numbering by
author

A style to number not throughout the bibliography but on a per-author (or author group) basis is provided by the biblatex-ext package. It makes use of a special field `extraname` that is generated by biber¹ if an author is cited with more than one work and allows one to differentiate them. We show the style in action in the next example. It also changes the delimiter between the author name and the number to a newline,

¹The style does not work with the Bib_T_EX backend.

changes the period after the number to a space, and removes the dash normally inserted when a author is repeated.

Knuth [2]; Leunen [1]; Knuth [1]

References

Knuth, Donald E.

[1] *The T_EXbook*. Vol. A. Computers and Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, 1986, pp. ix + 483.

[2] “Typesetting Concrete Mathematics”. In: *TUGboat* 10.1 (Apr. 1989), pp. 31–36.

Leunen, Mary-Claire van

[1] *A handbook for scholars*. Walton Street, Oxford OX2 6DP, UK: Oxford University Press, 1992, pp. xi + 348.

```
\usepackage[style=ext-authornumber,
             isbn=false]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\DeclareDelimFormat[bib]
    {namenumberdelim}{\*\}
\DeclareDelimFormat[bib]
    {nametitledelim}{\addspace}
\renewcommand\bibnamedash
    {\hspace*{\leftmargin}}

\cite{Knuth:TB10-1-31,%
      vLeunen:92,Knuth-CT-a}
\printbibliography
```

16-4-10

16.5 The author-title system

We now turn to the author-title system, sometimes also called the short-title system. A reference containing the author names and the title allows easy identification of the work while reading but generates longer citations than an author-date or numeric style. Styles therefore often use in subsequent citations abbreviations such as shorter titles, special shorthands, or words like “ibidem” to reference a repeated citation. Due to those additional requirements, the system is supported neither in standard L^AT_EX nor with the natbib package.

We start this section with a description of the jurabib package. As the name implies, the package has various options to tweak the output to conform to the citation rules in (German) jurisdiction, but it can also be used in other fields. This is then followed with a description of biblatex’s approach to the author-title system.

16.5.1 jurabib — Customizable short-title references

Classifying the jurabib package developed by Jens Berger as a package implementing the short-title system is not really doing it justice (no pun intended), because in fact it actually supports other citation systems as well.

Besides short-title citations, it offers support for author-date citations (by providing the natbib command interface), various options to handle specific requirements from the humanities, and special support for citing juridical works such as commentaries (hence the name jurabib).

The package uses an extended option concept where options are specified with a key/value syntax. It supports more than 30 options, each of which may be set to a number of values, covering various aspects of presenting the citation layout in the text and the references in the bibliography. In this book we can show only a small selection

of these possibilities. For further information refer to the package documentation, which is available in English and German.

*The defaults used
for all examples in
this section!*

It is inconvenient to handle so many options as part of the `\usepackage` declaration, so `jurabib` offers the `\jurabibsetup` command as an alternative. It can be used in the preamble or in the package configuration file `jurabib.cfg` (to set the defaults for all documents). Settings established when loading the package or via `\jurabibsetup` in the preamble overwrite such global defaults. For the examples in this section we use the following defaults

```
\jurabibsetup{titleformat=colonsep,commabeforerest=true}
```

and extend or overwrite them as necessary. The `titleformat` setting puts a colon between authors and title (see Example 16-5-7 on page 511) and the `commabeforerest` places a comma before the *post-note*, if present (e.g., in Example 16-5-1 on the next page and many others in this section).

In contrast to `natbib`, the `jurabib` package requires the use of specially designed \LaTeX style files. It expects a `\bibitem` command with a highly structured optional argument to pass all kinds of information back to the user-level citation commands (see page 488). These \LaTeX styles also implement a number of additional fields useful in conjunction with `jurabib`.

To show the particular features of `jurabib`, we again use our main sample database (Figure 15.1 on pages 382–383). If not explicitly documented otherwise, all examples in this section have the line

```
\newpage\bibliography{t1c}
```

implicitly appended at the end when processed.

The basic syntax

Like the `natbib` package, the `jurabib` package extends the standard \LaTeX citation command `\cite` with a second optional argument.

```
\cite[post-note]{key1,key2,...}  
\cite[annotator][post-note]{key1,...}
```

If two optional arguments are present, then the *post-note* argument moves to the second position, the same behavior found with the `natbib` syntax. In the default setup there is a big difference in that we do not have a *pre-note* argument but rather an *annotator* argument provided for a citation method used in legal works.¹ In that discipline, works often have an original author (under which the work is listed in the bibliography) as well as annotators who provide commentaries in the particular edition. These annotators are mentioned in the citation but not in the bibliography. Without further adjustments a citation lists only the author surnames (separated by slashes if there are several authors), followed by the *annotator* if present, followed

¹ See page 512 if you want it to be a *pre-note* instead.

by a possible *post-note*. If the `BIBTEX` entry contains a `shortauthor` field, then it is used instead of the surnames. If you only want to specify an *annotator*, use an empty *post-note*. By default, a title or short title is shown only if the author is cited with different works in the same document.

	<code>\usepackage{jurabib} \bibliographystyle{jurabib}</code>
Brox/Walker	<code>\cite{aschur}</code> <code>\\</code>
Brox/Walker, § 123	<code>\cite[\S\,123]{aschur}</code> <code>\\</code>
Otto Palandt/Heinrichs	<code>\cite[Heinrichs] [] {bgb}</code> <code>\\</code>
Otto Palandt/Heinrichs, § 26	<code>\cite[Heinrichs] [\S\,26]{bgb}</code>

As you see, there is no way to determine from the typeset result that “Walker” is a coauthor but “Heinrichs” is an annotator. To make this distinction immediately visible, jurabib offers a number of options implementing common citation styles. You can, for example, change the font used for the annotator or change the separator between author and annotator. Both of these changes have been specified in the first part of the next example. You can also move the annotator before the author, a solution shown in two variants in the second part of the example.

	<code>\usepackage{jurabib} \bibliographystyle{jurabib}</code>
	<code>\jurabibsetup{annotatorformat=italic,</code>
	<code>annotatorlastsep=divis}</code>
Brox/Walker	<code>\cite{aschur} \ \ \cite[Heinrichs]{\S,26}{bgb} \ \</code>
Otto Palandt– <i>Heinrichs</i> , § 26	<code>\jurabibsetup{annotatorfirstsep=comma}</code>
<i>Heinrichs</i> , Otto Palandt, § 26	<code>\cite[Heinrichs]{\S,26}{bgb} \ \</code>
	<code>\jurabibsetup{annotatorfirstsep=in,annotatorformat=normal}</code>
Heinrichs in: Otto Palandt, § 26	<code>\cite[Heinrichs]{\S,26}{bgb}</code>

Another way to clearly distinguish authors and annotators is to use the option `authorformat` with the value `and` (which replaces slashes with commas and “and”) the value `dynamic` (in which case different fonts are used depending on whether an *annotator* is present), or the value `year` (which moves the publication year directly after the author). The `authorformat` option can also be used to influence other aspects of the formatting of author names. Some examples are shown below. A complete list of allowed values is given in the package documentation. Note that if you use several values together (as done below), you need an additional set of braces to indicate to `jurabib` where the value list ends and the next option starts.

16-5-3 BROX and WALKER
 OTTO PALANDT/HEINRICHS, § 26

If the value `dynamic` is used, the annotator's name is set in italics, while the original author's name is set in the body font.¹ For works without an annotator, author

¹The fonts used can be customized by redefining the commands `\jbactualauthorfont` and `\jbactualauthorfontifannotator`.

names are set in italics. One can think of this style as labeling those people who have actually worked on the particular edition.

<i>Brox/Walker</i>	<code>\usepackage{jurabib} \bibliographystyle{jurabib}</code>	
Otto Palandt/ <i>Heinrichs</i> , § 26	<code>\jurabibsetup{authorformat=dynamic}</code>	
	<code>\cite{aschur} \ \cite[Heinrichs][\S\,26]{bgb} \par</code>	16-5-4

The values `and`, `dynamic`, and `year` can be combined, while `smallcaps` and `italic` override each other with the last specification winning:

<i>Brox and Walker</i> (2003)	<code>\usepackage{jurabib} \bibliographystyle{jurabib}</code>	
Otto Palandt (2003)/ <i>Heinrichs</i> , § 26	<code>\jurabibsetup{authorformat={and,smallcaps,year,italic}}</code>	
	<code>\cite{aschur} \ \cite[Heinrichs][\S\,26]{bgb} \par</code>	16-5-5

The information passed back by BibTeX is very detailed and structured into individual fields whose contents can be accessed using the `\citefield` command.

`\citefield[post-note]{field}{key1,key2,...}`

The *field* argument is one of the following fields from the BibTeX database entry referenced by the *key* argument: `author`, `shortauthor`, `title`, `shorttitle`, `url`, or `year`. It can also be `apy` (address-publisher-year combination).

Whether more than a single *key* is useful is questionable for most fields. Indeed, even with `\cite` multiple keys are seldom useful unless no optional arguments are present.

BROX, HANS/WALKER, WOLF-DIETRICH	<code>\usepackage{jurabib} \bibliographystyle{jurabib}</code>	
BSchuR, § 53	<code>\jurabibsetup{authorformat=smallcaps}</code>	
Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley Long-	<code>\citefield{author}{aschur} \ \</code>	
man, 1997	<code>\citefield[\S\,53]{shorttitle}{bschur} \ \</code>	
Allgemeines Schuldrecht; Besonderes Schul-	<code>\citefield{apy}{LGC97} \ \</code>	
drecht	<code>\citefield{title}{aschur,bschur}</code>	16-5-6

If you are familiar with the German language, you will have noticed that the hyphenation of “Schul-drecht” is incorrect: it should have been “Schuld-recht”. How to achieve this hyphenation automatically is explained on page 524.

Citations with short and full titles

As mentioned earlier, by default jurabib does not include a title in the citation text. The exception occurs when there are several works cited by the same author so that a title is necessary to distinguish between them. This behavior can be changed in several ways, but first we have a look at the “title” that will be used in such cases.

If you compare the first two lines of the next example with the BibTeX database file listed in Figure 15.1 on pages 382–383, you see that the `shorttitle` field was used if available; otherwise, the `title` field was used. In fact, you get a warning from

jurabib for this adjustment: “shorttitle for aschur is missing - replacing with title”. A different approach is taken for entries of type `article` or `periodical`; there, a missing `shorttitle` is replaced by the journal name, volume number, and year of publication, which is why we got “TUGboat 10 [1989]”.

Brox/Walker: Allgemeines Schuldrecht

Brox/Walker: BSchuR

Knuth: The T_EXbook

Knuth: TUGboat 10 [1989]

```
\usepackage{jurabib} \bibliographystyle{jurabib}
```

```
\cite{aschur} \ \ \cite{bschur} \ \ [2pt]
```

```
\cite{Knuth-CT-a} \ \ \cite{Knuth:TB10-1-31}
```

16-5-7

The colon after the author names above is due to the `commabeforereset` default that we have applied to all examples in this section; see page 508.

```
\citetitle[post-note]{key1,key2,...} \citetitle[annotator][post-note]{key1,...}
\cite*[post-note]{key1,key2,...} \cite*[annotator][post-note]{key1,...}
```

To force the production of a title in the citation, you can use `\citetitle` instead of `\cite`. To leave out the title, you can use `\cite*`. You should, however, be aware that the latter command can easily lead to ambiguous citations, as shown in the next example:

Baumbach et al.: ZPO, Brox/Walker, and Brox/
Walker are three different books, or not?

```
\usepackage{jurabib} \bibliographystyle{jurabib}
```

```
\citetitle{zpo}, \cite*{aschur}, and
```

```
\cite*{bschur} are three different books, or not?
```

16-5-8

Also note that this meaning of `\cite*` is quite different from its use in `natbib` (where it denotes using a full list of authors). If you switch between both packages depending on the circumstances, it might be better to avoid it altogether.

```
\citetitleonly[post-note]{key}
```

It is also possible to refer to only the title, including a *post-note* if desired.

ZPO, § 13

```
\usepackage{jurabib} \bibliographystyle{jurabib}
```

```
\citetitleonly[\S\,13]{zpo}
```

16-5-9

To generate short-title citations by default, specify the option `titleformat` with the value `all`. Like `authorformat`, this option can take several values. We already know about `colonsep`, which we used as a default setting for all the examples. In the next example we overwrite it with `commasep` and print the titles in *italic*.

*Getting short-title
citations
automatically*

Brox/Walker, *Allgemeines Schuldrecht*, § 123

Brox/Walker, *BSchuR*

Otto Palandt/Heinrichs, *BGB*

Knuth, *TUGboat 10 [1989]*

```
\usepackage{jurabib} \bibliographystyle{jurabib}
```

```
\jurabibsetup{titleformat={all,commasep,italic}}
```

```
\cite[\S\,123]{aschur} \ \ \cite{bschur} \ \
```

```
\cite{Heinrichs} [] {bgb} \ \ \cite{Knuth:TB10-1-31}
```

16-5-10

```
\citetitlefortype{BibTeX-type-list} \citenotitlefortype{BibTeX-type-list}
```

Instead of citing all works with titles, you can select short-title citations based on a particular BibTeX type. For example,

```
\citetitlefortype{article,book>manual}
```

would reference these three types with the title and all other publication types without it, unless the author is cited with several works. Because such a list can grow quite large, you can alternatively select automatic title citations for all works (with `titleformat`) and then specify those types that should have no titles when referenced. This is done in the next example for the type `book`. Nevertheless, the book by Knuth is cited with its title, because we also cite an article by him.

```
Brox/Walker          \usepackage{jurabib} \bibliographystyle{jurabib}
Goossens/Rahtz       \jurabibsetup{titleformat=all} \citenotitlefortype{book}
Knuth: The TEXbook    \cite{bschur}      \ \ \cite{LWC99}      \ \
Knuth: TUGboat 10 [1989] \cite{Knuth-CT-a} \ \ \cite{Knuth:TB10-1-31}
```

16-5-11

Indexing citations automatically

The author names in citations can be entered in the index by using the option `authorformat` with the value `indexed`. By default, this is done only for citations inside the text; authors referred to only in the bibliography are not listed. This behavior can be changed by setting `\jbindexbib` in the preamble or in a configuration file. For formatting the index entries, `\jbauthorindexfont` is available. For example,

```
\renewcommand\jbauthorindexfont[1]{\textit{#1}}
```

means that the author names appear in italic in the index.

Instead of placing the author names in the main index, you can produce a separate author index by loading the index package (see Section 14.5.3) and then using a construction like

```
\usepackage{index}
\newindex{default}{idx}{ind}{Index}           % the main index
\newindex{authors}{adx}{and}{Index of Authors}
\renewcommand\jbindextype{authors}
```

in the preamble, and later `\printindex[authors]` to indicate where the author index should appear in the document.

No support is available for more elaborate indexes as required for some types of law books (e.g., “Table of Cases” or “Table of Statutes”). If this is required, you have to generate the index by different means.

Using natbib citation semantics

The optional *annotator* argument is useful only in legal studies. In other disciplines, it is more common to require a *pre-note* (e.g., “compare...”). To account for this, the

meanings of the optional arguments can be modified by loading the package with the option `see`.

`\cite[pre-note] [post-note] {key1,key2,...}` (with option `see`)

The `see` option replaces the default `annotator` optional argument with a *pre-note* argument in the case that two optional arguments are used. The `\cite` command then has the same syntax and semantics as it does with the `natbib` package.

(Goossens/Rahtz/Mittelbach)	<code>\usepackage[see,round]{jurabib}</code>
(Goossens/Rahtz/Mittelbach, chap. 2)	<code>\bibliographystyle{jurabib}</code>
(compare Goossens/Rahtz/Mittelbach)	<code>\cite[LGC97]{} \\\cite[chap.-2]{LGC97} \\\[3pt]</code>
(see Goossens/Rahtz/Mittelbach, chap. 2)	<code>\cite[compare]{}{LGC97}\\\cite[see][chap.-2]{LGC97}</code>

This work was cited as ...

When using a short-title system for citations (e.g., by setting `titleformat` to `all`), it can be helpful to present the reader with a mapping between the full entry and the short title. This is commonly done by displaying the short title in parentheses at the end of the corresponding entry in the bibliography. The `jurabib` package supports this convention with the option `howcited`. It can take a number of values that configure the mechanism in slightly different ways. For example, the value `all` instructs the package to add “how cited” information to all entries in the bibliography. Thus, if we add to Example 16-5-10 on page 511 the line `\jurabibsetup{howcited=all}`, then we get the following bibliography listing. Note that the short title is formatted in exactly the same way as it appears in the citation.

Brox, Hans/Walker, Wolf-Dietrich: Besonderes Schuldrecht. 27th edition. München, 2002 (cited: Brox/Walker, *BSchuR*)

Brox, Hans/Walker, Wolf-Dietrich: Allgemeines Schuldrecht. 29th edition. München, 2003 (cited: Brox/Walker, *Allgemeines Schuldrecht*)

Knuth, Donald E.: Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. TUGboat, 10 April 1989, Nr. 1, 31–36, ISSN 0896–3207 (cited: Knuth, *TUGboat* 10 [1989])

Palandt, Otto: Bürgerliches Gesetzbuch. 62th edition. München: Beck Juristischer Verlag, 2003 (cited: Otto Palandt, *BGB*)

However, it is usually not necessary to display for all entries how they are cited. For articles, the short-title citation is always “author name, journal, volume, and year”. If a work is cited with its full title (i.e., if there is no `shorttitle` field) or if only a single publication is cited for a certain author, then the reader will generally be able to identify the corresponding entry without any further help. To allow for such a restricted type of “back-references”, `jurabib` offers the values `compare`, `multiple`, and `normal`.

If you use `compare`, then a back-reference is created only if the entry has been referenced (prior to typesetting the bibliography), contains a `shorttitle` field, and

the `title` and `shorttitle` fields differ. With respect to Example 16-5-13 this means that only the first and last entries would show the back-references.

If you use `multiple` instead, then back-references are generated whenever an author is cited with several works except for citations of articles. In the above example, the first two entries would get back-references. If we also had a citation to `Knuth-CT-a`, then it would also show a back-reference, while Knuth's article in *TUGboat* would be still without one.

Both values can be used together. In that case back-references are added to entries for authors with several publications as well as to entries whose short titles differ from their main titles.

Finally, there is the value `normal` (it is also used if you specify the option without a value). This value works slightly differently from the others in that it needs support to be present in the `BibTeX` database. If it is used, an entry gets a back-reference if and only if the `BibTeX` field `howcited` is present. The field can have two kinds of values. If it has a value of "1", the back-reference lists exactly what is shown in the citation in text. With any other value, the actual contents of the `howcited` field are used for the back-reference, including any formatting directives contained therein.

The text surrounding the back-reference can be customized by redefining the commands `\howcitedprefix` and `\howcitedsuffix`. In addition, you can specify what should happen with entries that have been added via `\nocite` by changing `\bibnotcited` (empty by default). Because these commands may contain text that should differ depending on the main language of the document, they are redefined using a special mechanism (`\AddTo`) that is explained on page 524.

...Brox/Walker: BSchuR ...Knuth ...

References

Brox, Hans/Walker, Wolf-Dietrich: Besonderes Schuldrecht. 27th edition. München, 2002 (cited as Brox/Walker: BSchuR).

Brox, Hans/Walker, Wolf-Dietrich: Allgemeines Schuldrecht. 29th edition. München, 2003 (not cited).

Knuth, Donald E.: Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. TUGboat, 10 April 1989, Nr. 1, 31–36, ISSN 0896–3207 (cited as Knuth).

```
\usepackage{jurabib}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\jurabibsetup{howcited=all}
\AddTo\bibsall{%
  \renewcommand\howcitedprefix
    { (cited as )%
  \renewcommand\howcitedsuffix{)}.%
  \renewcommand\bibnotcited
    { (not cited).}%
\nocite{aschur}
\ldots \cite{bschur} \ldots
\cite{Knuth:TB10-1-31} \ldots
\bibliography{t1c}
```

16-5-14

Full citations inside the text

While producing full ("verbose") citations inside the text with `natbib` requires a separate package and some initial preparation, this citation method is fully integrated in `jurabib`. The complete entry can be shown for one or more individual citations, for all citations, or automatically for only the first citation of a work. This citation method is

most often used in footnotes; see page 518 for information on how to automatically arrange footnote citations.

```
\fullcite[post-note]{key1,key2,...}
\fullcite[annotator][post-note]{key1,key2,...}
```

This command works like `\cite` but displays the full bibliographical data. The *annotator*, if present, is placed in front of the citation in the same way as if `annotatorfirstsep=in` had been specified.

Compare the next example with Example 16-6-1 from page 538. The value `citationreversed` arranges for the author name to appear with surname last (in the bibliography the surname comes first). Related values are `allreversed` (surname last in text and bibliography) and `firstnotreversed` (surname first for first author, last for all others in multiple-author works).

For details see Donald E. Knuth: Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. TUGboat, 10 April 1989, Nr. 1, ISSN 0896–3207. General information can be found in Donald E. Knuth: The TeXbook. Volume A, Computers and Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, 1986, ISBN 0–201–13447–0.

16-5-15

As shown by Knuth (1989) ...

```
\usepackage{jurabib}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\jurabibsetup{authorformat=citationreversed}

\raggedright \setlength\parindent{12pt}
For details see \fullcite{Knuth:TB10-1-31}.
General information can be found in
\fullcite{Knuth-CT-a}.
```

As shown by `\citet{Knuth:TB10-1-31}` \ldots

The `\cite` command automatically generates full citations if the `citefull` option is specified together with one of the following values: `all` (all references are full citations), `first` (first citation is full, subsequent ones are abbreviated), `chapter` (same as `first` but restarts with each chapter), and `section` (like `chapter` but restarts at the `\section` level). All settings imply `annotatorfirstsep=in`, as can be seen in the second citation in the example. If one of the above settings has been included in the configuration file and you want to turn it off for the current document, use the value `false`.

Getting full citations automatically

See Baumbach, Adolf et al.: Zivilprozeßordnung mit Gerichtsverfassungsgesetz und anderen Nebengesetzen. 59th edition. München, 2002 ...

```
\usepackage{jurabib}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\jurabibsetup{citefull=first}
See \cite{zpo} \ldots
```

As shown by Heinrichs in: Baumbach et al., § 216 the interpretation ...

As shown by `\cite[Heinrichs][\S\,216]{zpo}` the interpretation \ldots

16-5-16

```
\citefullfirstfortype{BibTeX-type-list}
```

Further control is possible by specifying the BibTeX entry types for which a full citation should be generated on the first occurrence. In the example below (otherwise similar

to Example 16-5-15), we request that only entries of type `article` should be subject to this process.

For details see Knuth, Donald E.: Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. TUGboat, 10 April 1989, Nr. 1, ISSN 0896–3207. General information can be found in Knuth: The \TeX book.

As shown by Knuth: TUGboat 10 [1989]

```
\usepackage{jurabib} \bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\jurabibsetup{citefull=first}
\citefullfirstfortype{article}
```

For details see `\cite{Knuth:TB10-1-31}`. General information can be found in `\cite{Knuth-CT-a}`.

As shown by `\cite{Knuth:TB10-1-31}`

16-5-17

```
\nextciteshort{key1,key2,...} \nextcitefull{key1,key2,...}
\nextcitereset{key1,key2,...} \nextcitenotitle{key1,key2,...}
```

Sometimes it is not correct to make the first citation to a work be the full entry, such as in an abstract or preface. On the other hand, you may want to have a certain citation show the full entry again, even though it appeared earlier. For this purpose four commands are available that modify how individual citations are presented from the given point onward.¹

If you use `\nextciteshort`, all citations specified in the *key-list* are typeset as short-title citations from then on (e.g., lines A, B, D in the example). If you use `\nextcitereset`, the citations are (again) typeset in the normal way; thus, the next citation will be a full citation if there has not been one yet (lines C and F), and otherwise citations are set as short-title citations (line E). With `\nextcitefull`, you force full entries from then on (line G). With `\nextcitenotitle`, you get only the author name(s), even if it results in ambiguous citations.

A) Knuth: The \TeX book

B) Knuth: TUGboat 10 [1989]

C) Knuth, Donald E.: The \TeX book. Volume A, Computers and Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, 1986, ISBN 0–201–13447–0

D) Knuth: TUGboat 10 [1989]

E) Knuth: The \TeX book

F) Knuth, Donald E.: Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. TUGboat, 10 April 1989, Nr. 1, ISSN 0896–3207

G) Knuth, Donald E.: The \TeX book. Volume A, Computers and Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, 1986, ISBN 0–201–13447–0

H) Knuth

```
\usepackage[citefull=first]{jurabib}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}
```

```
\nextciteshort{Knuth-CT-a,Knuth:TB10-1-31}
```

```
A) \cite{Knuth-CT-a} \\\
```

```
B) \cite{Knuth:TB10-1-31} \\\
```

```
\nextcitereset{Knuth-CT-a}
```

```
C) \cite{Knuth-CT-a} \\\
```

```
D) \cite{Knuth:TB10-1-31} \\\
```

```
\nextcitereset{Knuth-CT-a,Knuth:TB10-1-31}
```

```
E) \cite{Knuth-CT-a} \\\
```

```
F) \cite{Knuth:TB10-1-31} \\\
```

```
\nextcitefull{Knuth-CT-a}
```

```
\nextcitenotitle{Knuth:TB10-1-31}
```

```
G) \cite{Knuth-CT-a} \\\
```

```
H) \cite{Knuth:TB10-1-31}
```

16-5-18

If full citations are used within the main document, it is not absolutely necessary to assemble them in a bibliography or reference list. You may, for example, have

¹The command names seem to indicate that they change the “next” citation, but in fact they change all further citations until they are overwritten.

all citations inline and use a bibliography for suggested further reading or other secondary material.

```
\citeswithoutentry{key-list}
```

This declaration lists those keys that should not appear in the bibliography even though they are cited in the text. The *key-list* is a list of comma-separated keys without any white space. You can repeat this command as often as necessary. Think of it as the opposite of `\nocite`. Both commands are used in the next example:

This is explained in Brox, Hans/Walker, Wolf-Dietrich:
Allgemeines Schuldrecht. 29th edition. München, 2003.
As shown in Brox/Walker...

Selected further reading

Baumbach, Adolf et al.: Zivilprozeßordnung mit
Gerichtsverfassungsgesetz und anderen Nebenge-
setzen. 59th edition. München, 2002

```
\usepackage{jurabib}
\renewcommand\refname
    {Selected further reading}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\citeswithoutentry{aschur}
\jurabibsetup{citefull=first}

This is explained in \cite{aschur}.
\par As shown in \cite{aschur}\ldots
\nocite{zpo}
\bibliography{t1c}
```

16-5-19

While `\citeswithoutentry` prevents individual works from appearing in the bibliography, it is not possible to use it to suppress all entries, because you would get an empty list consisting of just the heading. If you want to omit the bibliography altogether, use `\nobibliography` in place of the usual `\bibliography` command. This command reads the `.bbl` file produced by `BibTeX` to enable citation references, but without producing a typeset result. You still need to specify `jurabib` as the `BibTeX` style and run `BibTeX` in the normal way.

*Suppressing the
bibliography
altogether*

Citations as footnotes or endnotes

All citation commands introduced so far have variants that generate footnote citations or, when used together with the `endnotes` package, generate endnotes. Simply prepend `foot` to the command name (e.g., `\footcite` instead of `\cite`, `\footcitetitle` instead of `\citetitle`, and so forth). This allows you to mix footnote and other citations freely, if needed.

The footnote citations produced by `jurabib` are ordinary footnotes, so you can influence their layout by loading the `footmisc` package, if desired.

...to use \LaTeX on the web.* Also discussed by Goossens/
Rahtz is generating PDF and HTML.

*Goossens, Michel/Rahtz, Sebastian: The \LaTeX Web companion: integrating \TeX , HTML, and XML. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley Longman, 1999, Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting, ISBN 0-201-43311-7.

```
\usepackage[ragged,symbol]{footmisc}
\usepackage{jurabib}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}

\ldots to use \LaTeX{} on the
web.\footfullcite{LWC99}
Also discussed by \cite{LWC99}
is generating PDF and HTML.
```

16-5-20

Getting footnote
citations
automatically

If all your citations should be automatically typeset as footnotes, use the `super` option. In that case `jurabib` automatically chooses the `\foot..` variants, so `\cite` produces `\footcite`, and so forth. This is shown in the next example. There we also use `citefull=first` so that the first footnote looks like the one in the previous example (to save space we show only the second page, where due to the ridiculously small height of the example page the last line of that footnote is carried over). The other two citations are then automatically shortened, with the third being shortened even further because of the `ibidem` option (explained on the next page).

We also use the option `lookat`, which is responsible for the back-reference to the earlier note containing the full citation. This option is allowed only if you simultaneously use the `citefull` option and have all your initial citations in footnotes, because it requires a “number” to refer to.

You have to be careful to use a footnote style that produces unique numbers. If footnotes are numbered by chapter or by page, for example, then such references are ambiguous. This problem can be solved by loading the `varioref` package, in which case these back-references also show page numbers. If `varioref` is loaded for other reasons and you do not want page references in this place, use `\jbignorevarioref` to suppress them. If footnotes are numbered by chapter, then an alternative solution is to use the `\labelformat` declaration to indicate to which chapter the footnote belongs:

```
\labelformat{footnote}{\thechapter--#1}
```

The `lookat` option is particularly useful in combination with the command `\nobibliography` so that all your bibliographical information is placed in footnotes without a summary bibliography.

Also discussed is generating PDF² and HTML.³

43311–7.

²Goossens/Rahtz (as in n. 1), chap. 2.

³Ibid., chap. 3–4.

```
\usepackage{jurabib} \bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\jurabibsetup{super,citefull=first,ibidem,lookat}
\ldots to use \LaTeX{} on the web.\cite{LWC99}
\newpage % Next page shown on the left:
Also discussed is generating PDF\cite[chap.~2]
{LWC99} and HTML.\cite[chap.~3--4]{LWC99}
```

16-5-21

It is possible to customize the appearance of the back-references by using the commands `\lookatprefix` and `\lookatsuffix`. Both are language dependent, which is the reason for using the `\AddTo` declaration (see page 524). The example sets up a style commonly seen in law citations [22].

Also discussed is generating PDF² and HTML.³

43311–7.

²Goossens/Rahtz, *supra* note 1, chap. 2.

³Goossens/Rahtz, *supra* note 1, chap. 3–4.

```
\usepackage{jurabib} \bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\jurabibsetup{super,citefull=first,lookat}
\AddTo\bibsall{\renewcommand\lookatprefix
{, \emph{supra} note }
\renewcommand\lookatsuffix{}}
\ldots to use \LaTeX{} on the web.\cite{LWC99}
\newpage % Next page shown on the left:
Also discussed is generating PDF\cite[chap.~2]
{LWC99} and HTML.\cite[chap.~3--4]{LWC99}
```

16-5-22

By loading the `endnotes` package in a setup similar to the one from the previous example, you can turn all your citations into endnotes.¹ As you can see, the endnotes do not have a final period added by default. If you prefer a period, add the option `dotafter` with the value `endnote`.

...to typeset with graphics.¹ Also discussed is typesetting music² and games.³

```
\usepackage{jurabib,endnotes}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\jurabibsetup{citefull=first,
  super,lookat}

\ldots to typeset with
graphics.\cite{LGC97} Also
discussed is typesetting
music\cite[chap.~7]{LGC97} and
games.\cite[chap.~8]{LGC97}
\theendnotes
```

Notes

¹Goossens, Michel/Rahtz, Sebastian/Mittelbach, Frank: The L^AT_EX Graphics Companion: Illustrating Documents with T_EX and PostScript. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley Longman, 1997, Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting, ISBN 0–201–85469–4

²Goossens/Rahtz/Mittelbach (as in n. 1), chap. 7

³Goossens/Rahtz/Mittelbach (as in n. 1), chap. 8

16-5-23

Ibidem — In the same place

In some disciplines it is customary to use the Latin word “*ibidem*” (abbreviated as “*ibid.*” or “*ib.*”) if you repeat a reference to the immediately preceding citation. The `jurabib` package supports this convention in several variants if the option `ibidem` is specified. This option must be used with footnote-style citations (e.g., when using `\footcite` or with the option `super` activated).

If `ibidem` is used without a value (which is the same as using it with the value `strict`), then the following happens: if a citation refers to the same publication as the immediately preceding citation on the *current* page, then it is replaced by “*Ibid.*”, if necessary keeping a *post-note*. You can see this situation in the next example: the first citation is a short-title citation; the second citation is identical, so we get “*Ibid.*” with the *post-note* dropped; and the third and fourth citations refer to different parts of the same publication, so we get the *post-note* as well. The fifth citation refers to a different publication by the same authors, so another short-title citation is produced. The sixth citation refers to the same publication, but the short-title citation is repeated because it is on a new page. The seventh and eighth citations are again to the other publication, so we get first a short-title citation and then “*Ibid.*” with a *post-note*.

A¹ legal^{2,3} text.^{4,5}

¹ Brox/Walker: BSchuR, § 7.

² Ibid.

³ Ibid., § 16.

⁴ Ibid., § 7.

⁵ Brox/Walker: Allgemeines Schuldrecht.

Some^{6,7} more⁸ text.

⁶ Brox/Walker: Allgemeines Schuldrecht, § 3.

⁷ Brox/Walker: BSchuR.

⁸ Ibid., § 15.

```
\usepackage[marginal,multiple]{footmisc}
\usepackage[super,ibidem]{jurabib}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}

A \cite[\S,7]{bschur}
legal \cite[\S,7]{bschur}
  \cite[\S,16]{bschur}
text.\cite[\S,7]{bschur} \cite{aschur}
\newpage % <---
Some \cite[\S,3]{aschur} \cite{bschur}
more \cite[\S,15]{bschur} text.
```

16-5-24

¹jurabib is currently not compatible with the newer enotez.

If you typeset your document with the class option `twoside`, then you can use the value `strictdoublepage`. It means that “Ibid.” is also used across page boundaries as long as the preceding citation is still visible (i.e., on the same spread). Repeating Example 16-5-24 with this setting changes the sixth citation to “Ibid., §3”.

The `ibidem` option usually generates a lot of very short footnotes, so it might be economical to use it together with the `para` option of `footmisc`. We also add the `perpage` option so that the footnote numbers remain small. Note, however, that this makes it impossible to use the `lookat` option because the footnote numbers are no longer unique.

<p>Some¹ legal^{2,3} text^{4,5} with commentaries.</p> <hr/> <p>¹ Brox/Walker: BSchuR, § 7. ² Ibid. ³ Ibid., § 16. ⁴ Ibid., § 7. ⁵ Brox/Walker: Allgemeines Schuldrecht.</p>	<p>And^{1,2} several more.³</p> <hr/> <p>¹ Ibid., § 3. ² Brox/Walker: BSchuR. ³ Ibid., § 15.</p>	<pre>\usepackage[para,multiple,perpage]{footmisc} \usepackage{jurabib} \bibliographystyle{jurabib} \jurabibsetup{super,ibidem=strictdoublepage} Some \cite[\S,7]{bschur} legal \cite[\S,7]{bschur} \cite[\S,16]{bschur} text \cite[\S,7]{bschur} \cite{aschur} with commentaries. \newpage And \cite[\S,3]{aschur} \cite{bschur} several more. \cite[\S,15]{bschur}</pre>	16-5-25
--	--	---	---------

It is even possible to ignore all page boundaries by using the `nostrict` value. The reader might find it difficult to decipher the references, however, because “Ibid.” and the citation to which it refers may be moved arbitrarily far apart. If necessary, you can disable the `ibidem` mechanism for the next citation by preceding it with `\noibidem`.

<p>A page without a citation.</p>	<p>This page has references.² Maybe better like this?³</p> <hr/> <p>²Ibid. ³Brox/Walker.</p>	<pre>\usepackage{jurabib} \bibliographystyle{jurabib} \jurabibsetup{super,ibidem=nostrict} \ldots \fullcite{bschur} \ldots \newpage % page above not shown on the left A page without a citation. \newpage This page has references.\cite{bschur} Maybe better like this? \noibidem\cite{bschur}</pre>	16-5-26
-----------------------------------	--	---	---------

The use of “Ibid.” without any further qualification allows you to reference just the immediately preceding citation. Thus, if citations are frequently mixed, the mechanism inserts short-title references most of the time. This situation changes if you use the `ibidem` option with the value `name` (which automatically implies `citefull=first`). In that case “Ibid.” is used with the full name of the author, thus allowing a reference to an earlier — not directly preceding — citation. If only the surnames of the authors are required, add the `authorformat` option with the value `reducedifibidem`. Its effect is seen in the next example, where citations to `bschur` and `zpo` alternate. A variant is to always use the name and short title except for the first citation of a publication; this format can be requested with the value `name&title`.

If the same author is cited with more than one publication, then using the `ibidem` option with the `name` value is likely to produce ambiguous references. For those citations the `jurabib` package automatically switches to the `name&title&auto` method described below.

A¹ legal^{2,3} text^{4,5} with⁶ commentaries.

- ¹ Brox, Hans/Walker, Wolf-Dietrich: Besonderes Schuldrecht. 27th edition. München, 2002, § 7.
- ² Brox/Walker, *ibid.*, § 8.
- ³ Baumbach, Adolf et al.: Zivilprozeßordnung mit Gerichtsverfassungsgesetz und anderen Nebengesetzen. 59th edition. München, 2002, § 16.
- ⁴ Brox/Walker, *ibid.*, § 7.
- ⁵ Baumbach et al., *ibid.*
- ⁶ Baumbach et al., *ibid.*, § 3.

16-5-27

```
\usepackage[marginal,ragged,multiple]{footmisc}
\usepackage{jurabib}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\jurabibsetup{super,ibidem=name,
               authorformat=reducedifibidem}

A \cite[\S\,7]{bschur} legal
\cite[\S\,8]{bschur} \cite[\S\,16]{zpo}
text \cite[\S\,7]{bschur} \cite{zpo}
with \cite[\S\,3]{zpo} commentaries.
```

If `name&title&auto` was selected (either implicitly or explicitly), then the following happens: the first citation of a publication automatically displays the full entry (citation 5 in the next example). In the case of repeated citations to unambiguous works only the names of the authors are shown (citation 8). For ambiguous citations this is done only for immediately following citations (citation 4). However, if there are intervening citations, then the names and short titles are shown (citations 3, 6, and 7).

A³ different^{4,5} legal^{6,7} text.⁸

- ³ Brox, Hans/Walker, Wolf-Dietrich: Allgemeines Schuldrecht, *ibid.*, § 7.
- ⁴ Brox, Hans/Walker, Wolf-Dietrich, *ibid.*, § 8.
- ⁵ Baumbach, Adolf et al.: Zivilprozeßordnung mit Gerichtsverfassungsgesetz und anderen Nebengesetzen. 59th edition. München, 2002, § 16.
- ⁶ Brox, Hans/Walker, Wolf-Dietrich: BSchUR, *ibid.*, § 7.
- ⁷ Brox, Hans/Walker, Wolf-Dietrich: Allgemeines Schuldrecht, *ibid.*
- ⁸ Baumbach, Adolf et al., *ibid.*, § 3.

16-5-28

```
\usepackage[marginal,ragged,multiple]{footmisc}
\usepackage{jurabib}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\jurabibsetup{super,ibidem=name&title&auto}

Full citations for \cite{aschur} and
\cite{bschur} are put on an earlier
page and therefore not displayed
on the left!
\newpage
A \cite[\S\,7]{aschur} different
\cite[\S\,8]{aschur} \cite[\S\,16]{zpo}
legal \cite[\S\,7]{bschur} \cite{aschur}
text. \cite[\S\,3]{zpo}
```

Another convention in certain disciplines is to replace the author's name with the Latin word "Idem" (meaning "the same") if the author of successive citations is identical. This is catered for by the option `idem`, which accepts the values `strict`, `strictdoublepage`, and `nostrict` with the same semantics as used with the `ibidem` option. Both options can be combined as shown in Example 16-5-29 on the following page. Due to the values used, we get different citations: some use "Idem, *ibid.*"; after the page break "Idem" is suppressed, because of the option `strict`; and in the last three citations it is used again (even with the full citation) because they all refer to different publications of Donald Knuth.

...some¹ text² and^{3,4}...

¹Knuth, Donald E.: The \TeX book. Volume A, Computers and Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, 1986, ISBN 0-201-13447-0.

²Idem, *ibid.*, p. 22.

³Leunen, Mary-Claire van: A handbook for scholars. Walton Street, Oxford OX2 6DP, UK: Oxford University Press, 1992.

⁴Idem, *ibid.*

...a⁵ bit⁶ more⁷ text^{8,9}...

⁵Leunen, Mary-Claire van, *ibid.*

⁶Idem, *ibid.*, p. 16.

⁷Knuth, Donald E.: The \TeX book, *ibid.*, p. 308.

⁸Idem: Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. TUGboat, 10 April 1989, Nr. 1, ISSN 0896-3207.

⁹Idem: The \TeX book, *ibid.*, p. 80.

```
\usepackage[flushmargin,%
multiple]{footmisc}
\usepackage[super,idem=strict,%
ibidem=name]{jurabib}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}

\ldots some \cite{Knuth-CT-a}
text \cite[p.~22]{Knuth-CT-a}
and \cite{vLeunen:92}
\cite{vLeunen:92}\ldots

\newpage % <--
\ldots a \cite{vLeunen:92}
bit \cite[p.~16]{vLeunen:92}
more \cite[p.~308]{Knuth-CT-a}
text \cite{Knuth:TB10-1-31}
\cite[p.~80]{Knuth-CT-a}\ldots
```

16-5-29

You have to ask yourself whether this type of citation is actually helpful to your readers. Butcher [28], for example, argues against it. Of course, you may not have a choice in the matter — it might be required. You should, however, note that two citations in the previous example are actually wrong: van Leunen is a female author, so the correct Latin form would be “Eadem” and not “Idem” (though some style manuals do not make that distinction). If necessary, *jurabib* offers possibilities for adjusting your citations even on that level of detail; see page 525.

There is another convention related to recurring citations, though it is becoming less common: to signal that a citation refers to an earlier reference, it is flagged with *op. cit.* (*opere citato*, “in the work cited”). This practice is supported with the option *opcit*. The citation should be “close by” so that the reader has a chance to find it. For this reason *jurabib* offers the values *chapter* and *section* in analogy to the *citefull* option.

...some¹ text² and³ some more text^{4,5}

¹Knuth, Donald E.: The \TeX book. Volume A, Computers and Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, 1986, ISBN 0-201-13447-0.

²Idem, *op. cit.*, p. 22.

³Free Software Foundation: GNU Make, A Program for Directing Recom-pilation. 2000.

⁴Knuth, *op. cit.*

⁵Free Software Foundation, *op. cit.*

```
\usepackage[multiple]{footmisc}
\usepackage[super,idem=strict,%
citefull=first,opcit]{jurabib}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}

\ldots some \cite{Knuth-CT-a} text
\cite[p.~22]{Knuth-CT-a} and
\cite{GNUmake} some more text
\cite{Knuth-CT-a}\cite{GNUmake}
```

16-5-30

In law citations [22], it is common to use the word “*supra*” to indicate a reference to a previous citation. This can be accomplished by changing the *\opcit* command, which holds the generated string, as follows:

```
\renewcommand\opcit{\textit{supra}}
```

Alternatively, you can use the method shown in Example 16-5-22 on page 518.

Cross-referencing citations

`BIBTEX` supports the notion of cross-references between bibliographical entries via the `crossref` field. For example, an entry of type `inproceedings` can reference the proceedings issue in which it appears. Depending on the number of references to such an issue, `BIBTEX` then decides whether to produce a separate entry for the issue or to include information about it in each `inproceedings` entry. See Section 15.3.7 for details.

If `BIBTEX` decides to produce separate entries for the cross-referenced citations, a question arises about what should happen if they are referenced in a `\fullcite` or `\footfullcite` command in the text. To handle this situation `jurabib` offers three values applicable to the `crossref` option: with the value `normal` (the default), cross-references are typeset as an author/editor, title combination (or `shortauthor`, `shorttitle` if available); with the value `short`, only the author or editor is used as long as there are no ambiguities; and with the value `long`, cross-references are listed in full. The default behavior is shown below (where the editors and the short title were selected by `jurabib`).

Mittelbach, Frank/Rowley, Chris: The Pursuit of Quality: How can Automated Typesetting achieve the Highest Standards of Craft Typography? In Vanoirbeek/Coray: EP92

Southall, Richard: Presentation Rules and Rules of Composition in the Formatting of Complex Text. In Vanoirbeek/Coray: EP92

Mittelbach/Rowley

```
\usepackage{jurabib}
\jurabibsetup{citefull=first,
              crossref=normal}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}

\cite{MR-PQ}      \par
\cite{Southall}   \par
\cite{MR-PQ}
```

16-5-31

You can combine any of the three values with the value `dynamic`, in which case a cross-reference is given in a longer form when cited the first time and in the shorter form on all later occasions. Here we combine it with the value `long` so that we get a full citation to Vanoirbeek/Coray in the first citation and a short title citation in the second.

Frank Mittelbach/Chris Rowley: The Pursuit of Quality: How can Automated Typesetting achieve the Highest Standards of Craft Typography? In Christine Vanoirbeek/Giovanni Coray, editors: EP92—Proceedings of Electronic Publishing, '92. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1992

Richard Southall: Presentation Rules and Rules of Composition in the Formatting of Complex Text. In Vanoirbeek/Coray: EP92

```
\usepackage{jurabib}
\jurabibsetup{citefull=first,
              authorformat=
                citationreversed,
              crossref={dynamic,long}}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}

\cite{MR-PQ}      \par
\cite{Southall}
```

16-5-32

Author-date citation support

As mentioned earlier, `jurabib` supports the commands `\citeta` and `\citep` as introduced by `natbib`. It also offers `\citealt`, `\citealp`, `\citeauthor`, `\citeyear`, and `\citeyearpar`. Those forms for which it makes sense are also available as

to this storage place.¹ The first argument is either `\bibsall`, in which case *code* is used for all languages, or `\bibs⟨language⟩` (e.g., `\bibsgerman`), in which case *code* is applied for that particular *language*.² In Example 16-5-14 on page 514 and Example 16-5-22 on page 518 we used `\AddTo` to change the presentation of back-references for all languages, by adding the redefinitions to `\bibsall`. Below we shorten the “Ibid.” string when typesetting in the English language. The default for other languages is left unchanged in this case.

Some text¹ and² some³ more text.⁴

¹van Leunen: A handbook for scholars.

²Ib.

³Knuth, Donald E.: The T_EXbook. Volume A, Computers and Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, 1986, ISBN 0-201-13447-0.

⁴Knuth, Donald E., ib.

```
\usepackage[super,ibidem,titleformat=all]{jurabib}
\AddTo\bibsenenglish{\renewcommand\ibidemname{Ib.}%
\renewcommand\ibidemmidname{ib.}}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}
Some text\cite{vLeunen:92} and\cite{vLeunen:92}
\jurabibsetup{ibidem=name} % <-- change convention
some\cite{Knuth-CT-a} more text.\cite{Knuth-CT-a}
```

16-5-35

While certain strings — calling an editor (`\editorname`) “(Hrsg.)”, for example — should clearly be consistent throughout the whole bibliography, certain other aspects — most importantly, hyphenation — depend on the language used in the actual entry. For instance, a book with a German title should be hyphenated with German hyphenation patterns, regardless of the main language of the document. This is supported by `jurabib` through an extra field (`language`) in the B_BT_EX database file. If that field is specified in a given entry, then `jurabib` assumes that the title should be set in that particular language. Thus, if hyphenation patterns for that language are available (i.e., loaded in the format), they are applied. For instance, if we repeat the last part of Example 16-5-6 from page 510 with `babel` loaded, we get the correct hyphenation as shown below:

Allgemeines Schuldrecht; Besonderes Schuldrecht

```
\usepackage[ngerman,english]{babel}
\usepackage{jurabib} \bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\citefield{title}{aschur,bschur}
```

16-5-36

Distinguishing the author’s gender

Earlier, we mentioned that the female form of “Idem” is “Eadem”. In the German language, we have “Derselbe” (male), “Dieselbe” (female), “Dasselbe” (neuter), and “Dieselben” (plural). To be able to distinguish the gender of the author, `jurabib` offers the B_BT_EX field `gender`, which takes a two-letter abbreviation for the gender as its value.

Possible values and the commands that contain the “Idem” strings, if specified, are given in Table 16.2 on the following page. The commands with an uppercase letter in

¹The `babel` package uses a similar mechanism with the `\addto` declaration.

²Unfortunately, `jurabib` does not use exactly the same concept as `babel`. If you specify `ngerman` with `babel` to get German with new hyphenation patterns, then this is mapped to `german`, so you have to update `\bibsgerman`. If you use any of the dialects (e.g., `austrian`), then `jurabib` does not recognize those and uses `english` after issuing a warning. In that case use `\bibsall` for changing definitions.

gender	Meaning	In Citation	In Bibliography
sf	single female	<code>\idemSfname, \idemsfname</code>	<code>\bibidemSfname, \bibidemsfname</code>
sm	single male	<code>\idemSmname, \idemsname</code>	<code>\bibidemSmname, \bibidemsname</code>
pf	plural female	<code>\idemPfname, \idempfname</code>	<code>\bibidemPfname, \bibidempfname</code>
pm	plural male	<code>\idemPmname, \idempmname</code>	<code>\bibidemPmname, \bibidempmname</code>
sn	single neuter	<code>\idemSnname, \idemsname</code>	<code>\bibidemSnname, \bibidemsname</code>
pn	plural neuter	<code>\idemPnname, \idempnname</code>	<code>\bibidemPnname, \bibidempnname</code>

Table 16.2: Gender specification in jurabib

their name are used at the beginning of a sentence, the others in mid-sentence. Those starting with `\bibidem..` are used in the bibliography if the option `bibformat` with the value `ibidem` is specified. Given that the feature is computing intensive, it is not activated by default but has to be requested explicitly. Thus, to change to “Eadem” in the case of female authors, we have to specify values for `\idemSfname` and `\idemsfname` and use the option `lookforgender`.

Some text¹ and² some³ more text.⁴

¹van Leunen: A handbook for scholars.

²Eadem: A handbook for scholars.

³Knuth: The T_EXbook.

⁴Idem: The T_EXbook.

```
\usepackage[super,idem=strict,titleformat=all,
              lookforgender=true]{jurabib}
\AddTo\bibsenglish{\renewcommand\idemSfname{Eadem}%
                  \renewcommand\idemsfname{eadem}}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}

Some text\cite{vLeunen:92} and\cite{vLeunen:92}
some\cite{Knuth-CT-a} more text.\cite{Knuth-CT-a}
```

16-5-37

Customizing the in-text citation layout further

Most of the author and title formatting is handled by the options `authorformat` and `titleformat`, which were discussed earlier. There also exist a few more options and commands that we have not mentioned so far.

If the whole citation should be surrounded by parentheses, simply specify the option `round` or `square`.

To place information about the edition as a superscript after the short title, specify the option `superscriptedition`. With a value of `all` this is applied to all short-title citations, with the value `commented` applying only to publications of type `commented`, and with the value `multiple` applying only to publications that are cited with several different editions. The last two options are primarily intended for juridical works.

[Baumbach et al.: ZPO⁵⁹]

[Brox/Walker²⁷, § 3]

[Otto Palandt/Heinrichs⁶²]

```
\usepackage{jurabib} \bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\jurabibsetup{square,superscriptedition={all}}
\citetitle{zpo}\ \cite{S\,3}{bschur}\ \cite{Heinrichs}[]\bgb}
```

16-5-38

Alternatively, you can explicitly specify in the BibTeX database for each entry whether the edition should be shown as a superscript by setting the special field `ssedition` to the value 1 and by using the option `superscriptedition` with the value switch.

By specifying `authorformat=and` you get author names separated by commas and “and” (actually by `\andname`, a command that has different values in different languages). You cannot have the second and third author names separated by “, and” in this way. For adjustments on such a fine level, you can redefine `\jbbtasep` (between two authors separation), `\jbbfsasep` (between first and second authors separation), and `\jbbstasep` (between second and third authors separation).¹

16-5-39

```

\usepackage[round]{jurabib}
\renewcommand\jbbtasep{ and } \renewcommand\jbbfsasep{, }
\renewcommand\jbbstasep{, and } \bibliographystyle{jurabib}
(Brox and Walker)
(Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach) \cite{aschur} \ \ \cite{LGC97}

```

You may also want to manually specify the fonts used for the author names and the short title, instead of relying on the possibilities offered by the supplied options. For this you have `\jbauthorfont`, `\jbannotatorfont`, `\jbactualauthorfont`, `\jbauthorfontifannotator`, and `\jbttitlefont` at your disposal, all of which are commands with one argument.

Customizing the bibliography layout

The formatting of the bibliography in standard L^AT_EX or with natbib is largely controlled by the used BibTeX style file or, if the bibliography entries are manually produced, by the formatting directives entered by the user. For example, a citation to the entry `Knuth-CT-a` from our sample database would be formatted by natbib's `plainnat` as follows:

```

Donald-E. Knuth.
\newblock {\em The {\TeX}book}, volume-A of {\em Computers and Typesetting}.
\newblock Ad{\-d}i{\-s}on-Wes{\-l}ey, Reading, MA, USA, 1986.

```

This means that formatting decisions, such as using emphasis for the title of the book and the series, and the presentation of the “volume” field, have all been made by the BibTeX style file.

In contrast, the BibTeX styles that come with the jurabib package use a drastically different approach: their output is highly structured, consisting of a large number of L^AT_EX commands, so that the final formatting (as well as the order of elements to some extent) can still be tweaked on the L^AT_EX level. In fact, they have to be adjusted on that level if you are not satisfied with the formatting produced from their default

¹No other possibilities are needed, because jurabib always uses “et al.” whenever there are four or more authors.

definitions. For example, the same citation as above processed with the `jurabib` \LaTeX style results in the following entry:

```
\jbbibargs {\bibnf {Knuth} {Donald-E.} {D.-E.} {} {}} {Donald-E. Knuth} {au}
{\bibtfnt {The {\TeX}book}\bibatsep\ \volumeformat {A} Computers and
Typesetting\bibatsep\ \apyformat {Reading, MA, USA\bpubaddr {}
Ad{\-d}i{\-s}on-Wes{\-l}ey\bibbdsep {} 1986} \jbPages{ix + 483}\jbisbn
{0--201--13447--0}} {\bibhowcited} \jbdoitem \bibAnnoteFile {Knuth-CT-a}
```

Most of the above commands are further structured. The `\bibnf` command takes five arguments (the different parts of the author's name) and, depending on which are nonempty, passes them on to commands like `\jbnfIndNoVonNoJr` (name without “von” and “Junior” parts) for further processing. Consequently, it is possible to interact with this process at many levels so that all kinds of requirements can be catered for, although this somewhat complicates the customization of the layout. For this reason we restrict ourselves to showing just the most important customization possibilities. For further control strategies, consult the package documentation.

In the default setup, the formatting of the bibliography is fairly independent of that used for the citations. If you specify `authorformat=italic`, author names are typeset in italics in the text, but there is no change in the bibliography. The easiest way to change that is to use the option `biblikecite`; then formatting decisions for the citations are also used in the bibliography as far as possible. If that is not desired or not sufficient, explicit formatting directives are available; they are discussed below.

The fonts used in a bibliographical entry are controlled by the following set of commands: `\biblnfont` and `\bibfnfont` for formatting the last and first names of the author, and `\bibelntfont` and `\bibefnfont` for the last and first names of the editor, if present. The command `\bibtfnt` is used for titles of books, `\bibbtfont` for titles of essays (i.e., entries involving a \LaTeX `booktitle` field), and `\bibjtfont` for titles, or rather names, of journals. The font for article titles within such a journal is customized with `\bibapifont`. The commands all receive the text they act upon as an argument, so any redefinition must also use an argument or `\text.. font` commands as shown in the next example (picking the argument up implicitly):

KNUTH, DONALD E.: The \TeX book. Volume A, Computers and Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, 1986, ix + 483, ISBN 0-201-13447-0	<code>\usepackage{jurabib}</code> <code>\bibliographystyle{jurabib}</code> <code>\renewcommand\biblnfont{\MakeUppercase}</code> <code>\renewcommand\bibfnfont{\textsc}</code> <code>\renewcommand\bibtfont {\textsf}</code>
KNUTH, DONALD E.: “ <i>Typesetting Concrete Mathematics</i> ”. TUGboat, 10 April 1989, Nr. 1, 31–36, ISSN 0896-3207	<code>\renewcommand\bibapifont[1]{\textit{‘‘#1’’}}</code> <code>\nocite{Knuth-CT-a,Knuth:TB10-1-31}</code> <code>\bibliography{t1c}</code>

16-5-40

The punctuation separating different parts in the entry can be customized by another set of commands: `\bibansep` sets the punctuation and space after the author name, `\bibeansp` does the same after the editor name, `\bibatsep` produces punctuation after the title (the space is already supplied!), and `\bibbdsep` is the

punctuation *before* the date. With `\bibjtsep` the journal title separation is set. There are similar commands for adjusting other parts.¹ In the next example we use these commands to remove the default colon after the author's name and then typeset a semicolon after the title, no comma before the year, and the word “in” before the journal name. We also use the `dotafter` option with the value `bibentry` to add a final period after each entry.

Knuth, Donald E. Typesetting Concrete Mathematics; in TUGboat, 10 April 1989, Nr. 1, 31–36, ISSN 0896–3207.

Mittelbach, Frank/Rowley, Chris The Pursuit of Quality: How can Automated Typesetting achieve the Highest Standards of Craft Typography? In **Vanoirbeek/Coray** EP92, 261–273.

Vanoirbeek, Christine/Coray, Giovanni, editors EP92—Proceedings of Electronic Publishing, '92; Cambridge: Cambridge University Press 1992.

```
\usepackage[dotafter=bibentry]
{jurabib}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\renewcommand\bibtsep{in }
\renewcommand\bibansep{ }
\renewcommand\bibatsep{;}
\renewcommand\bibbdsep{}
\nocite{Knuth:TB10-1-31,MR-PQ}
\bibliography{t1c}
```

16-5-41

We already saw that the separation between different author names in a citation can be adjusted by means of the `authorformat` option and various values. However, except for the value `allreversed`, this has no effect on the entries in the bibliography. To modify the formatting there, you have to redefine the commands `\bibbtasep`, `\bibbfsasep`, and `\bibbstasep`. The naming convention is the same as for the corresponding citation commands. A similar set of commands, `\bibbtasep`, `\bibbfsasep`, and `\bibbstasep`, is available to specify the separation between editor names in an entry.

Hans Brox and Wolf-Dietrich Walker: Allgemeines Schuldrecht. 29th edition. München, 2003

Michel Goossens, Sebastian Rahtz, and Frank Mittelbach: The L^AT_EX Graphics Companion: Illustrating Documents with T_EX and PostScript. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley Longman, 1997, Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting, xxi + 554, ISBN 0–201–85469–4

```
\usepackage[authorformat=allreversed]
{jurabib}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\renewcommand\bibtasep{ and }
\renewcommand\bibbfsasep{, }
\renewcommand\bibbstasep{, and }
\nocite{aschur,LGC97}
\bibliography{t1c}
```

16-5-42

The main option for influencing the general layout of the bibliography list is `bibformat`, which can take a number of values as its value. If you specify the value `nohang`, then the default indentation (of 2.5em) for the second and subsequent lines of a bibliographical entry is suppressed. Alternatively, you can explicitly set the indentation by changing the dimension parameter `\jbbibhang`, as in the next example. There we also use the values `compress` (using less space around entries) and `raggedright` (typesetting entries unjustified). For improved quality, especially when typesetting to a small measure, you may want to load the package `ragged2e`.

*Adjusting the
general layout of the
bibliography*

¹This area of `jurabib` is somewhat inconsistent in its naming conventions and command behavior.

Note the use of the `newcommands` option to overload the standard `\raggedright` (as used by `jurabib`) with `\RaggedRight`.

Brox, Hans/Walker, Wolf-Dietrich: Allgemeines Schuldrecht.
29th edition. München, 2003

Baumbach, Adolf et al.: Zivilprozeßordnung mit Gerichtsver-
fassungsgesetz und anderen Nebengesetzen. 59th edition.
München, 2002

Brox, Hans/Walker, Wolf-Dietrich: Besonderes Schuldrecht.
27th edition. München, 2002

```
\usepackage[newcommands]{ragged2e}
\usepackage[bibformat={compress,%
    raggedright}]
    {jurabib}
\bibliographystyle{jurunsrt}
\setlength\jbbibhang{1pc}
\nocite{aschur,zpo,bschur}
\bibliography{t1c}
```

16-5-43

If you use the value `tabular`, then the bibliography is set in a two-column table with the left column containing the author(s) and the right column the remainder of the entry. By default, the first column is one-third of `\textwidth`, and both columns are set ragged. The defaults can be changed by redefining a number of commands, as shown in the next example. The width of the right column is specified by

```
\renewcommand\bibrightrightcolumn{\textwidth-\bibleftcolumn-\bibcolumnsep}
```

Normally it is enough to change `\bibleftcolumn` and/or `\bibcolumnsep`. The `calc` package is automatically loaded by `jurabib`, so we can make use of it when specifying dimensions.

**Brox, Hans/
Walker,
Wolf-Dietrich**

Allgemeines Schuldrecht.
29th edition. München, 2003

Knuth, Donald E. Typesetting Concrete Math-
ematics. TUGboat, 10 April
1989, Nr. 1, 31–36, ISSN
0896–3207

**Free Software
Foundation** GNU Make, A Program for
Directing Recompilation.
2000

```
\usepackage[bibformat=tabular]{jurabib}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\renewcommand\bibleftcolumn{6.5pc}
\renewcommand\bibcolumnsep{1pc}
\renewcommand\bibleftcolumnadjust
    {\raggedright}
\renewcommand\bibrightrightcolumnadjust{}
\nocite{aschur,Knuth:TB10-1-31}
\nocite{GNUmake}
\bibliography{t1c}
```

16-5-44

If you use the value `numbered`, the bibliography is numbered even though the actual citations in the text use the author-date or short-title scheme. Currently, it is impossible to refer to those numbers.

Some publishers' house styles omit the author's name (or replace it by a dash or other character) if that author is cited with several works. This is supported through the value `ibidem`, which by default generates "Idem" or, more precisely, the result from executing `\bibidemSmname`. To get a (predefined) rule instead, use `\jbuseidemhrule`. If you want something else, redefine `\bibauthormultiple`. Both possibilities are shown in the next example. The `jurabib` package automatically detects if an entry appears on the top of a page and uses the author name in that case.

Because of this mechanism, it may take several (extra) L^AT_EX runs before the document compiles without “Rerun to get...”

Brox, Hans/Walker, Wolf-Dietrich: Besonderes Schuldrecht. 27th edition. München, 2002

——— Allgemeines Schuldrecht. 29th edition. München, 2003

Knuth, Donald E.: The T_EXbook. Volume A, Computers and Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, 1986, ix + 483, ISBN 0–201–13447–0

——— Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. TUGboat, 10 April 1989, Nr. 1, 31–36, ISSN 0896–3207

```
\usepackage[bibformat=ibidem]
{jurabib}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\jbuseidemhrule % use default rule
% Alternative generic redefinition
% instead of the default rule:
%\renewcommand\bibauthormultiple
% {[same name symbol]}
\nocite{aschur,bschur}
\nocite{Knuth-CT-a,Knuth:TB10-1-31}
\bibliography{t1c}
```

16-5-45

A variant bibliography layout collecting works under the author names is available through the value `ibidemalt`. This value automatically implies the value `compress`.

Baumbach, Adolf et al.:

- ▷ Zivilprozeßordnung mit Gerichtsverfassungsgesetz und anderen Nebengesetzen. 59th edition. München, 2002

Brox, Hans/Walker, Wolf-Dietrich:

- ▷ Besonderes Schuldrecht. 27th edition. München, 2002
- ▷ Allgemeines Schuldrecht. 29th edition. München, 2003

Palandt, Otto:

- ▷ Bürgerliches Gesetzbuch. 62th edition. München: Beck Juristischer Verlag, 2003

```
\usepackage{jurabib}
\jurabibsetup[bibformat=ibidemalt]
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\nocite{aschur,bschur,zpo,bgb}
\bibliography{t1c}
```

16-5-46

If you want to produce an annotated bibliography, use the option `annotate`. If the current BibT_EX entry has an `annotate` field, it is typeset after the entry using `\jbannoteformat` to format it (the default is to typeset it in `\small`). If there is no `annotate` field, then `jurabib` searches for a file with the extension `.tex` and the key of the entry as its base name. If this file exists, its contents are used as the annotation text.

*Annotated
bibliographies*

Knuth, Donald E.: The T_EXbook. Volume A, Computers and Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, 1986, ix + 483, ISBN 0–201–13447–0

The authoritative user manual on the program T_EX by its creator.

```
\begin{filecontents}{Knuth-CT-a.tex}
The authoritative user manual on the program \TeX{}
by its creator.
\end{filecontents}
\usepackage[annotate]{jurabib}\bibliographystyle{jurabib}
\renewcommand\jbannoteformat[1]
{{\footnotesize\begin{quote}#1\end{quote}}}}
\nocite{Knuth-CT-a}
\bibliography{t1c}
```

16-5-47

Because it is a nuisance to have many files (one for each annotation) cluttering your current directory, `jurabib` offers a search path declaration in analogy to the `\graphicspath` command provided by the `graphics` package. Thus, after

```
\bibAnnotePath{./books}{./articles}}
```

annotation files are searched for in the subdirectories `books` and `articles` of the current directory.

Using external configuration files

Customization of `jurabib` is possible on two levels: by specifying options or, for finer control, by redefining certain declarations or executing commands. In the previous sections we have already encountered a number of package options together with the values they accept, but they represented less than a third of what is available. In the default configuration file `jurabib.cfg`, you find a `\jurabibsetup` declaration listing *all* options together with all their values—nearly 100 possibilities in total. They are all commented out so that you can produce your own configuration file by copying the default one and uncommenting those options that you want to execute normally. If you save this configuration in a file with extension `.cfg`, you can load it instead of the default configuration by using the `config` option. For example,

```
\usepackage[config=law]{jurabib}
```

loads the option file `law.cfg`, which should contain a `\jurabibsetup` declaration and possibly some additional customization commands. For example, such a file might contain

```
\jurabibsetup{lookat,opcit,commabeforerest,titleformat=colonsep}
\renewcommand\opcit{\textit{supra}}
```

and perhaps some other initializations to implement citations for juridical publications. As mentioned earlier, such defaults stored in a file can be overwritten by using additional options during loading or with a `\jurabibsetup` declaration in the preamble.

B_{ib}T_EX styles for `jurabib`

The `jurabib` package is distributed together with four B_{ib}T_EX style files: `jurabib`, `jureco`, `jurunsrt`, and `jox`. They differ only in minor details: `jureco` produces a slightly more compact bibliography, leaving out some data, while `jurunsrt` is the same as `jurabib` without sorting so that the references appear in order of their citation in the document. The `jox` style produces references in “Oxford style”. Because `jurabib` requires very specially formatted `\bibitem` commands, the above styles are currently the only ones that can be used together with the package.

All four styles provide several B_{ib}T_EX entries as well as a number of additional fields for existing entries. Having additional fields in a B_{ib}T_EX database is usually

not a problem, because `BibTeX` ignores any field it does not know about. Thus, such a database can be used with other `BibTeX` styles that do not provide these fields. Additional entries are slightly different, because using them means that you have to load `jurabib` to be able to refer to them.

The additional entries are `www` for citing a URL, `periodical` for periodicals that are not cited by year but by volume number, and `commented` for commentaries in juridical works. *Additional BibTeX types*

The standard `BibTeX` fields are described in Tables 15.3/4 on pages 388–389. The following additional fields are available when using one of the `jurabib` `BibTeX` styles: *Additional BibTeX fields*

`annote` An annotation that is typeset if `jurabib` is used with the option `annote`; see page 531 for details.

`booktitleaddon` Extra information to be typeset after a `booktitle` text of a collection.

`dissyear` Year of a dissertation, habilitation, or other source if that work is also being published as a book (perhaps with a different year).

`editortype` Position of the person mentioned in the `editor` field (if not really an “editor”).

`flanguage` Foreign language, in the case of a translated work.

`founder` In juridical works, the original founder of a publication (in contrast to the editor). The name is shown followed by the replacement text of `\foundername`, which defaults to “`_ (Begr.)`”.

`gender` Gender of the author or authors. The `jurabib` package uses this information to select the right kind of words for “Idem” in the current language; see page 525.

`howcited` Text to use for back-reference information, or 1 to indicate that a normal back-reference should be generated. This field is evaluated by the option `howcited` if used together with the value `normal`; see page 513.

`oaddress/opublisher/oyear` Information about the first edition of a work.

`shortauthor` Text to use as the author information in a short-title citation. By default, `jurabib` automatically selects the last name (or names) from the author or editor field.

`shorttitle` Text to use as the title information in a short-title citation. If it is not specified, the whole title is used.

`sortkey` String to be used for sorting in unusual situations. To sort “von Bismarck, Otto” under B, you can use `sortkey="Bismarck, Otto von"`.

`ssedition` Flag to indicate that this entry should be typeset with the edition shown as a superscript. It requires the use of the `superscriptedition` option together with the value `switch`; see page 526.

`titleaddon` Extra information to be placed after a title but not used, for example, when generating a short title.

totalpages Total number of pages in a publication. If present, it is shown followed by the replacement text of the command `\bibtotalpagesname`, which is language dependent.

translator Translator of the publication.

updated Date of the last update in a loose-leaf edition or a similar work. The field is available only for the `BIBTEX` type `commented`. By default, “last update *date*” is generated. This can be customized through the commands `\updatename` and `\updatesep`.

urldate Date when a URL was known to be current. By default, `jurabib` produces the string “visited on *date*” when this field is used. It can be changed by redefining the command `\urldatecomment`.

url A URL related to the current publication. In the case of the entry type `www`, it is required; otherwise, it is optional.

volumetitle A volume title that follows the volume number in the presentation. This field is available for the types `book`, `commented`, `incollection`, and `inbook`.

16.5.2 biblatex’s approach to author-title references

The `biblatex` package ships with various author-title styles. The documentation includes examples showing the output and documenting style-specific options. More styles are provided by external packages. Remember that styles are loaded with the package option `style` and that commands of the `natbib` package are emulated if you use the option `natbib`.

In this section we discuss styles that are meant to be used together with a bibliography; the special case of verbose citations follows in the next section.

The styles provided together with the `biblatex` package mainly differ in the way they compress citation lists and handle recurrent authors, titles, and page numbers in repeated citations. The next example exhibits the `authortitle` style. It does not try to save space and repeats author and title in follow-up citations. In the `EP92` entry it uses the `shorttitle` over the `title` field if it exists and falls back to the editor because no author exists.

Vanoirbeek and Coray (*EP92*)

Knuth (“Typesetting Concrete Mathematics”),
Leunen (*A handbook for scholars*), and Knuth
(*The T_EXbook*)

(Knuth, “Typesetting Concrete Mathematics”;
Knuth, *The T_EXbook*)

Knuth (*The T_EXbook*)...Knuth (*The T_EXbook*)

```
\usepackage[style=authortitle]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\textcite{EP92}\
\textcite{Knuth:TB10-1-31,vLeunen:92,Knuth-CT-a}\
\parencite{Knuth:TB10-1-31,Knuth-CT-a}\
\textcite{Knuth-CT-a}\ldots \textcite{Knuth-CT-a}
```

16-5-48

Compare this with the output of the style `authortitle-ticomp`: this style activates the three features “terse”, “ibid”, and “compress”: “terse” prints the title only if the bibliography contains more than one work by the respective author/editor;

“ibid” replaces repeated citations by the abbreviation “ibidem” unless the citation is the first one on the current page, and “compress” sorts and compresses the list of citations that share the same author. By choosing the style `authortitle-terse` or `authortitle-icom` instead, it is possible to activate only a subset of the features.

<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">16-5-49</div>	Vanoirbeek and Coray Knuth (<i>The T_EXbook</i> , “Typesetting Concrete Mathematics”) and Leunen (Knuth, <i>The T_EXbook</i> , “Typesetting Concrete Mathematics”) Knuth (<i>The T_EXbook</i>)... Knuth (ibid.)	<pre>\usepackage[style=authortitle-ticomp]{biblatex} \addbibresource{tlc.bib} \textcite{EP92}\ \textcite{Knuth:TB10-1-31,vLeunen:92,Knuth-CT-a}\ \parencite{Knuth:TB10-1-31,Knuth-CT-a}\ \textcite{Knuth-CT-a}\ldots \textcite{Knuth-CT-a}</pre>
--	---	--

When a reference contains a shorthand field, it is used instead of the title. A list of shorthands can then be printed with the `\printbiblist` command. We use the `csquotes` package to format the quotation:

<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">16-5-50</div>	<p>“Handle so, daß die Maxime deines Willens jederzeit zugleich als Prinzip einer allgemeinen Gesetzgebung gelten könne.” (KpV)</p> <p>Abbreviations</p> <p>KpV Immanuel Kant. “Kritik der praktischen Vernunft”. In: <i>Kants Werke. Akademie Textausgabe</i>. Vol. 5: <i>Kritik der praktischen Vernunft. Kritik der Urtheilskraft</i>. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter, 1968, pp. 1–163.</p>	<pre>\usepackage[style=authortitle]{biblatex} \usepackage{csquotes} \SetCiteCommand{\parencite} \addbibresource{tlc.bib} \hyphenation{Ur-theils-kraft} \textcquote{kant:kpV}[.]{Handle so, daß die Maxime deines Willens jederzeit zugleich als Prinzip einer allgemeinen Gesetzgebung gelten könne} \printbiblist{shorthand}</pre>
--	--	---

It is possible to print only the author with the command `\citeauthor` (strictly speaking, `\citeauthor` prints the “labelname list”, which may be the author, editor, or translator). `\citetitle` prints the title or the shorttitle (but not a shorthand). `\cite*` prints the nonauthor part of the citation.¹ Note that this meaning of `\cite*` is quite different from its use in `natbib` (where it denotes using a full list of authors) and `jurabib` (where it denotes leaving out the title).

To get the content of a specific field, you can use the `\citefield` command. It issues a warning and prints nothing if the field does not exist in the entry.

<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">16-5-51</div>	Vanoirbeek and Coray ... EP92 Vanoirbeek and Coray, EP92 EP92—Proceedings of Electronic Publishing, '92 Kant, “Kritik der praktischen Vernunft” KpV KpV	<pre>\usepackage[style=authortitle-ibid]{biblatex} \addbibresource{tlc.bib} \citeauthor{EP92}\ \ldots\ \citetitle{EP92}\ \cite{EP92} \ \citefield{EP92}{title} \ \citeauthor{kant:kpV}, \citetitle{kant:kpV}\ \cite*{kant:kpV} \ \citefield{kant:kpV}{shorthand}</pre>
--	--	--

¹This can also be “ibid” — use `\mancite` to avoid this.

Handling annotators

As was noted in Section 16.5.1 the `jurabib` package interprets the first optional argument of the citation commands as the name of an annotator and formats it in a special way. There is no direct support for this citation format in the generic styles provided by `biblatex`, so you have to turn to an external package here.

However, even then the entries that we used in the `jurabib` examples are unsuitable for `biblatex`: the two packages we present below expect entries with annotators to be of the entry type `commentary`. In addition, the `edition` field should be a number, and the language should be given in the `langid` field. Hence, our sample database also contains the entry `palandt` that is structured according to these conventions. It also sets the `pagination` field to enable `biblatex` to format the “page” numbers automatically.

Unfortunately, the two packages also use incompatible conventions for specifying the annotator: when using the `jura2` style, you must add an annotator in parentheses to the *post-note* argument, while the `biblatex-juradiss` style expects just the name in the *pre-note* argument. In short you have to choose up front, because changing from one to the other style (or to `jurabib`) involves extensive changes.

The “zit. als” (German for “cited as”) in the bibliography of the next example is triggered by the `howcited` key. The style uses three localization strings, `zitiertals`, `kommentarin`, and `bearbeiter`, currently set up only for the German language.

siehe in Palandt/Ellenberger, Abs. 119
... (Palandt/Heinrichs, Abs. 50)

Literatur

Palandt, Otto: Bürgerliches Gesetzbuch mit Nebengesetzen. 79. Aufl., München 2019 (zit. als Palandt/Bearbeiter).

```
\usepackage[ngerman]{babel}
\usepackage[style=jura2,
             howcited=true]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\cite[siehe] [(Ellenberger) 119]{palandt}\
\ldots\ \parencite [(Heinrichs) 50]{palandt}

\printbibliography
```

16-5-52

The `biblatex-juradiss` package by Tobias Schwan and Herbert Voß offers the style `biblatex-juradiss`. It is based on the `authortitle-dw` style from the `biblatex-dw` bundle by Dominik Waßenhoven. In this style the annotator should be given directly in the *pre-note* argument, i.e., using the `jurabib` convention. The style shows the edition as a superscript. It works properly only in German, because various strings are hard-coded and cannot be localized.

... Ellenberger, in: Palandt⁷⁹, Abs. 119
... (Heinrichs, ebd., Abs. 50)

Literatur

Palandt, Otto, Bürgerliches Gesetzbuch mit Nebengesetzen, 79. Aufl., München 2019, *zitiert als: Bearbeiter*, in: Palandt⁷⁹.

```
\usepackage[ngerman]{babel}
\usepackage[style=biblatex-juradiss]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\ldots\ \cite [Ellenberger] [119]{palandt}\
\ldots\ \parencite [Heinrichs] [50]{palandt}

\printbibliography
```

16-5-53

The rather special syntax for the annotators makes it difficult to switch to another style without changing the input. We demonstrate this by repeating the previous example with the style `oscola` — the output is definitively rather weird:

<p>... Ellenberger Bürgerliches Gesetzbuch mit Neben- gesetzen (Palandt) Abs. 119 ... (Heinrichs Palandt, Abs. 50)</p>	<pre>\usepackage[ngerman]{babel} \usepackage[style=oscola]{biblatex} \addbibresource{tlc.bib} \ldots\ \cite[Ellenberger][119]{palandt}\ \ldots\ \parencite[Heinrichs][50]{palandt}</pre>
<p>Literatur</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">16-5-54</div> Bürgerliches Gesetzbuch mit Nebengesetzen.	<pre>\printbibliography</pre>

16.6 The verbose system

A verbose citation system is a variant of the author-title format with the unique property that the first time — or the first time in a sectioning unit — a work is cited, then a full, *verbose* reference is given, usually in a footnote. Later references then use a shorter version that is built from the author names and the title, a shorter title, or a special shorthand — sometimes introduced in the first reference with “*cited as ...*”. Repeated citations typically make use of scholarly abbreviations like *ibidem* or *loc. cit.*

A dedicated bibliography list is not strictly needed in such a system, but if given, it can show additional information such as a DOI. The verbose citation system is not supported by standard L^AT_EX; it requires the `jurabib`¹ or `biblatex` package.

We start this section with the description of the `bibentry` package, a first attempt for basic support of verbose citations when using a B^BT_EX workflow. It allows insertion of a full citation in the running text but has no automatic test for the first citation or repeated citations, and shorter citations are mostly in the author-date format (or even only a number if `natbib` is used in numeric mode). We then continue with a description of `biblatex`’s approach to verbose citations.

16.6.1 bibentry — Full bibliographic entries in running text

As mentioned in the introduction of this section, instead of grouping all cited publications in a bibliography, it is sometimes required to directly typeset the full information the first time a publication is referenced. To help with this task Patrick Daly developed the `bibentry` package as a companion to the `natbib` package.

`\nobibliography{BBTEX-database-list}` `\bibentry{key}`

These commands work as follows: instead of the usual `\bibliography` command, which loads the `.bbl` file written by B^BT_EX and typesets the bibliography, you use `\nobibliography` with the same list of B^BT_EX database files. It reads the `.bbl` and

¹Refer to Section 16.5.1 for an overview of `jurabib`’s handling of verbose citations in conjunction with its support for author-title citations.

processes the information so that references to entries can be made elsewhere in the document. To typeset a citation with the full bibliographical information, use `\bibentry`. The usual author-date citation can be produced with any of the `natbib` commands. Here is an example:

For details see Knuth, D. E., *Typesetting Concrete Mathematics*, *TUGboat*, 10(1), 31–36, 1989. General information can be found in Knuth, D. E., *The TeXbook*, *Computers and Typesetting*, vol. A, ix + 483 pp., Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986 and in *Goossens et al.* [1994, 1997].

As shown by Knuth [1989] ...

```
\usepackage{bibentry,natbib}
\bibliographystyle{agu}
\AtBeginDocument{\nobibliography{t1c}}
```

For details see `\bibentry{Knuth:TB10-1-31}`. General information can be found in `\bibentry{Knuth-CT-a}` and in `\citet{TLC94,LGC97}`.

As shown by `\citet{Knuth:TB10-1-31} \ldots`

16-6-1

Potential pitfalls 

There are a number of points to be noted here: the `\nobibliography` command must be placed inside the body of the document but before the first use of a `\bibentry` command. In the preamble a `\nobibliography` is silently ignored, and any `\bibentry` command used before it produces no output. Such a command is therefore best placed directly after `\begin{document}` or, if you prefer it in the preamble, by placing it inside `\AtBeginDocument` as we did above.

Another potential problem relates to the choice of BibTeX style. The `bibentry` package requires the entries in the `.bbl` file to be of a certain form: they must be separated by a blank line, and the `\bibitem` command must be separated from the actual entry text by either a space or a newline character. This format is automatically enforced for BibTeX styles produced with `custom-bib`, but other BibTeX styles may fail, including some that work with `natbib` by its own.

Watch out for
punctuations within
the entry

The `\bibentry` command automatically removes a final period in the entry so that the reference can be used in mid-sentence. However, if the entry contains other punctuation, such as a period as part of a note field, the resulting text might still read strangely. In that case the only remedy might be to use an adjusted BibTeX database entry.

One can simultaneously have a bibliography and use the `\bibentry` command to produce full citations in the text. In that case, place the `\bibliography` command to produce the bibliography list at the point where it should appear. Directly following `\begin{document}`, add the command `\nobibliography*`. This variant takes no argument, because the BibTeX database files are already specified on the `\bibliography` command. As a consequence, all publications cited with `\bibentry` also automatically appear in the bibliography, because a single `.bbl` file is used.

16.6.2 biblatex's approach to verbose citations

Typesetting the full information of a publication is supported by `biblatex` twofolds. On the one hand you can typeset full citations with any style with the `\fullcite` command. It prints a citation in the same format as in the bibliography. Similar to the

`\bibentry` command, there is no final period in the entry so that the reference can be used in mid-sentence.

For details see Donald E. Knuth. “Typesetting Concrete Mathematics”. In: *TUGboat* 10.1 (Apr. 1989), pp. 31–36. ISSN: 0896-3207 and also Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach [1].

`\usepackage{biblatex}`
`\addbibresource{tlc.bib}`

For details see `\fullcite{Knuth:TB10-1-31}`
and also `\textcite{LGC97}`.

16-6-2

On the other hand, a suitable style can be loaded to use the verbose citation system in a document. With such a style the `\textcite` typesets the author name and creates a footnote with the reference, while `\autocite` or `\footcite` creates only a footnote. If an inline citation is wanted, `\cite` and `\parencite` can be used. The styles make use of various trackers to identify the first reference and repeated citations.

The `biblatex` package ships with a number of styles supporting this convention, i.e., `verbose`, `verbose-ibid`, `verbose-note`, `verbose-inote`, and `verbose-trad1` to `verbose-trad3`. They mainly differ in the way they handle recurrent authors, titles, and page numbers in repeated citations. More styles are provided by various external packages; see Section 15.7.3 on page 432.

In the next example we show the style `verbose-trad1`. Note how repeated citations are handled in the example: for the Knuth citation “*ibid.*” is used to repeat the immediately preceding citation, while the author name and “*op. cit.*” are used for a farther away citation of the same work. Compare this with the handling of the Kant citation. Its entry has a `shorthand` field in the `.bib`-file, and the citation style adds “*henceforth cited as KpV*” to the first citation and uses the shorthand in subsequent citations.

... Knuth¹ see² Knuth³ Knuth⁴ see⁵ ...

¹see Donald E. Knuth. “Typesetting Concrete Mathematics”. In: *TUGboat* 10.1 (Apr. 1989), pp. 31–36, p. 33.

²see Immanuel Kant. “Kritik der praktischen Vernunft”. In: *Kants Werke. Akademie Textausgabe*. Vol. 5: *Kritik der praktischen Vernunft. Kritik der Urtheilskraft*. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter, 1968, pp. 1–163 (henceforth cited as KpV), p. 33.

³see Knuth, *op. cit.*, p. 32.

⁴see *ibid.*, p. 32.

⁵see KpV, p. 33.

`\usepackage[style=verbose-trad1,`
`isbn=false]{biblatex}`
`\addbibresource{tlc.bib}`

`\ldots\`
`\textcite[see][33]{Knuth:TB10-1-31}\quad`
`see\autocite[see][33]{kant:kpV}\quad`
`\textcite[see][32]{Knuth:TB10-1-31}\quad`
`\textcite[see][32]{Knuth:TB10-1-31}\quad`
`see\autocite[see][33]{kant:kpV}\ldots`

16-6-3

The style uses only *ibidem* if the citations are in the same or in consecutive footnotes to avoid potentially ambiguous citations:

... citation¹ and² footnote³ mixup⁴ ...

¹Donald E. Knuth. “Typesetting Concrete Mathematics”. In: *TUGboat* 10.1 (Apr. 1989), pp. 31–36.

²*Ibid.*

³Don’t use footnotes, Don!

⁴Knuth, *op. cit.*

`\usepackage[style=verbose-trad1,`
`isbn=false]{biblatex}`
`\addbibresource{tlc.bib}`

`\ldots\ citation\autocite{Knuth:TB10-1-31}`
`and\autocite{Knuth:TB10-1-31}`
`footnote\footnote{Don’t use footnotes, Don!}`
`mixup\autocite{Knuth:TB10-1-31}\ldots`

16-6-4

In Example 16-6-3 you have observed that when a reference contains a `pages` field and has a post-note that we end up with two page specifications in the reference, e.g., “pp. 31–36, p. 33”, and this may be confusing to the reader. The option `citepages`¹ controls how to deal with those fields in this case. The default value `permit` allows the duplication, `suppress` unconditionally suppresses the `pages` field, `omit` suppresses it only if there is a clashing post-note, and `separate` inserts the text “esp.”:

<p>... Knuth¹ ...</p> <hr/> <p>¹see Donald E. Knuth. “Typesetting Concrete Mathematics”. In: <i>TUGboat</i> 10.1 (Apr. 1989), pp. 31–36, esp. p. 33.</p>	<pre>\usepackage[style=verbose-trad1,isbn=false, citepages=separate]{biblatex} \addbibresource{tlc.bib} \ldots \textcite[see] [33]{Knuth:TB10-1-31} \ldots</pre>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;">16-6-5</div>
--	---	--

With the option `ibidpage` you can control how references to the same page in repeated citations are handled. When set to `true`, the post-note is suppressed in an *ibidem* citation if the last citation was to the same page range. The next example demonstrates this in the second footnote:

<p>... Knuth¹ Knuth² Knuth³ ...</p> <hr/> <p>¹see Knuth, “Typesetting Concrete Mathematics”, p. 33. ²see <i>ibid</i>. ³see <i>ibid.</i>, p. 32.</p>	<pre>\usepackage[style=verbose-trad1,isbn=false, ibidpage=true]{biblatex} \addbibresource{tlc.bib} \ldots \textcite[see] [33]{Knuth:TB10-1-31} \quad \textcite[see] [33]{Knuth:TB10-1-31} \quad \textcite[see] [32]{Knuth:TB10-1-31} \ldots</pre>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;">16-6-6</div>
---	--	--

The `verbose-note` and `verbose-inote` styles add a back-reference to the earlier note containing the full citation similar to the `lookat` option from *jurabib* described on page 518. Below we repeat Example 16-5-21 using `verbose-inote` this time. The “i” in the style name indicates that it uses “*ibidem*”. Note that “*ibidem*” is not used for the first citation on the page.

<p>Also discussed is generating PDF² and HTML.³</p> <hr/> <p>²Goossens and Rahtz, see n. 1, chap. 2. ³<i>Ibid.</i>, chap. 3–4.</p>	<pre>\usepackage[style=verbose-inote]{biblatex} \addbibresource{tlc.bib} \ldots to use \LaTeX{} on the web.\autocite{LWC99} \newpage % Next page shown on the left: Also discussed is generating PDF\autocite[chap.~2]{LWC99} and HTML.\autocite[chap.~3--4]{LWC99}</pre>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;">16-6-7</div>
---	---	--

If you want terms such as “*ibidem*” to be printed in italics, you may redefine `\mkibid`. We do this in the next example (a repeat of 16-6-3) but set also the language to German and use `\bibstrings` to demonstrate how terms are localized.

The term `see` then becomes “*Siehe*” and the term `confer` (Latin for “compare”) changes from “*Cf.*” to “*Vgl.*” — the German abbreviation for “*Vergleiche*”.

¹If using a verbose style from an external package, consult its documentation to find out if similar options are available.

Knuth¹ auch² Knuth,³ Knuth⁴ und⁵

¹Vgl. Donald E. Knuth. „Typesetting Concrete Mathematics“. In: *TUGboat* 10.1 (Apr. 1989), S. 31–36, hier S. 33.

²Siehe Immanuel Kant. „Kritik der praktischen Vernunft“. In: *Kants Werke. Akademie Textausgabe*. Bd. 5: *Kritik der praktischen Vernunft. Kritik der Urtheilskraft*. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter, 1968, S. 1–163 (im Folgenden zit. als KpV), hier S. 101.

³Siehe Knuth, *a. a. O.*, S. 16.

⁴Siehe *ebd.*, S. 17.

⁵Siehe KpV, S. 49.

16-6-8

```
\usepackage[ngerman]{babel} \usepackage{csquotes}
\usepackage[style=verbose-trad1,isbn=false,
citepages=separate]{biblatex}
\renewcommand*{\mkibid}{\emph}
\addbibresource{t1c.bib}

\textcite[\bibstring{confer}] [33]{Knuth:TB10-1-31}
auch\autocite[\bibstring{see}] [101]{kant:kpv}
\textcite[\bibstring{see}] [16]{Knuth:TB10-1-31},
\textcite[\bibstring{see}] [17]{Knuth:TB10-1-31}
und\autocite[\bibstring{see}] [49]{kant:kpv}
```

16.7 biblatex — One ring to rule them all

We now turn to a more in-depth discussion of the biblatex package [79]. As could be seen in the previous sections, biblatex supports in a consistent way all citation styles and various citation commands either directly or through external supporting packages.

It achieves this through a change of the rôle of the .bbl file. All other packages reviewed up to this point use a .bbl file that contains a standard thebibliography environment to typeset the bibliography. The \bibitem commands in there also pass the data needed to format the citations back to \LaTeX : in standard \LaTeX only a number or a label; with natbib and other packages the author and the date information. The jurabib package increases the amount of structured data passed back drastically — an example was given in the introduction to the author-date format on page 488. However, in all implementations the main purpose of the .bbl file remains the production of the *printed* representation of the bibliography and therefore ends up containing a mix of typesetting and data commands.

This changed radically in 2006 with the initial release of the biblatex package by Philipp Lehman. With biblatex the .bbl file no longer contains a thebibliography environment and several \bibitem commands. It does not contain any typesetting instructions at all, but only a structured, preprocessed, and sorted representation of the bibliography data. The (shortened and redacted) data of a publication looks, for example, like this:

```
\entry{LGC97}{book}{%
  \name{author}{3}{}%
  {\un=0,uniquepart=base,hash=0743efb276e9219ee664a9b3dbd60619}{%
    family={Goossens},
    familyi={G\bibinitperiod},
    given={Michel},
    giveni={M\bibinitperiod},
    givenun=0}{}%
  ... more names ...
}
\list{location}{1}{%
```

```

    {Reading, MA, USA}%
  }
  \list{publisher}{1}{%
    {Ad{\-d}i{\-s}on-Wes{\-l}ey Longman}%
  }
  \strng{namehash}{e0fe5244f7bd4501ecba8372b6fdd95b}
  ... more hashes ...
  \field{sortinit}{G}
  \field{extradatescope}{labelyear}
  \field{labeldatesource}{year}
  \field{labelnamesource}{author}
  \field{labeltitlesource}{title}
  \field{isbn}{0-201-85469-4}
  \field{series}{Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting}
  \field{title}{The {\LaTeX} Graphics Companion: ...}
  \field{year}{1997}
  \field{pages}{xxi + 554}
  \range{pages}{-1}
\endentry

```

As can be seen, biber passes more than the content from the .bib file. It also creates initials and metadata like hashes, and it records which field should be used as the source for the label name — a work without the author field will here perhaps use the editor field instead. As with the jurabib approach, such a representation of the bibliography data cannot be created manually without much work and so requires an external tool such as biber.

The shift to such a structured .bbl — made possible by the increasing memory¹ and speed available in the T_EX-engines, which allows you to store and process more commands during the compilation — has several advantages:

- Every field of an entry can be used in citations, and thus a large variety of styles can be defined and used. biblatex is not confined to a subset of citation systems — it supports them all.
- Because the .bbl file is not used for printing, it can be loaded at the beginning — this can reduce the number of compilations needed to resolve the references.
- The data provided in the .bbl file can be reused as often as needed. This makes it easy to typeset more than one bibliography with various filter conditions.
- Changes to the format of the citations or the bibliography and even the creation of a complete new style can be done fully with L^AT_EX commands.

*biber is
recommended, but
BibT_EX is possible too*

In early biblatex versions the .bbl file was created with BibT_EX and a special .bst style. To stay compatible with this workflow it is still possible to choose BibT_EX as the processor through the package option `backend=bibtex`. However, it is highly recommended to use biber (see Section 15.2.2), because not every feature offered

¹Very large bibliographies can still exhaust the available memory.

by biblatex can be faithfully backported to \LaTeX , and this can lead to hard to spot output differences.

Recall that due to the differences between biblatex/biber and standard workflows with \LaTeX , some changes to the .bib files are required or recommended; see Section 15.3.

16.7.1 Basic biblatex setup

The workflow and how to set up a basic document for biblatex has already been described in Section 15.4. The following example therefore repeats only the core commands: the `style` key to set up the main style (here an author-title format), the preamble-only command `\addbibresource` to declare which .bib files should be used as resources, a citation command to select the entry — we use here `\textcite`, which is similar to `\citet` of natbib — and `\printbibliography` to print the bibliography.

Knuth (*The \TeX book*)

References

Knuth, Donald E. *The \TeX book*. Vol. A. Computers and Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, 1986, pp. ix + 483. ISBN: 0-201-13447-0.

```
\usepackage[style=authortitle]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
```

```
\textcite{Knuth-CT-a}
\printbibliography
```

16-7-1

16.7.2 Package options

The package options of biblatex use a key/value syntax. A small number of the keys must be given as package options at load time:

Load-time options

backend The option allows setting the bibliography processor. The (recommended) default is `biber`; other options are `bibtex` and `bibtex8`.

style, citestyle, bibstyle These keys load the main style definitions for the citations and the bibliography. Style files have the extension `.cbx` (for `citestyle`) or `.bbx` (for `bibstyle`), and the value of the keys is the name of such a file without the extension. biblatex comes with a large number of styles — several have been presented in the previous sections — and more are provided by external packages (see Section 15.7.3 for an overview). Typically the style for the citations and the bibliography should be set simultaneously with the `style` key. They can be set to different styles with the keys `citestyle` and `bibstyle`, but not every combination is sensible: a numeric citation style, for example, is useless if the chosen bibliography style does not show any numbers.

natbib, mcite These options load compatibility modules for the packages `natbib` and `mcite/mciteplus`. They provide implementation of the commands of these packages, which are very similar (but not identical) in syntax and function to the original commands and can make the transition of existing documents to biblatex easier.

Setting options in the document preamble

Besides these load-time options, biblatex knows a large number of other keys. These keys can be set as package options or alternatively in the configuration file `biblatex.cfg` or in the preamble with

```
\ExecuteBibliographyOptions[entrytype,...]{key=value,...}
```

The optional argument *entrytype* allows one to restrict some options to specific types such as `article` or `inproceedings`.

16.7.3 Citing with biblatex

The biblatex package defines a large set of citation commands for a variety of use cases, including citations in the text (`\textcite`), in parentheses (`\parencite`), as footnotes (`\footcite`), or — in some styles — as superscript (`\supercite`). Other commands capitalize the name (e.g., `\Textcite`). In addition, commands like `\citeauthor` or `\citefield` allow you to refer to a specific name or field of an entry.

There are flexible commands like `\smartcite` and `\autocite` that can change their behavior depending on the context or package options.

If the package option `natbib` is used, reimplementations of the citation commands of the `natbib` package are available too. The package also provides tools to create more citation commands if needed.

The argument structure for the different citation commands is identical. It is exemplified here with the `\cite` command:

```
\cite{key1,key2,...}   \cite[post-note]{key1,key2,...}
                        \cite[pre-note][post-note]{key1,key2,...}
```

Two optional arguments

Similar to the citation commands of `natbib` all citation commands in `biblatex` have one mandatory argument, which takes a comma-separated list of keys, and two optional arguments for the *pre-note* and the *post-note*. If only one optional argument is used, it is taken to be the *post-note*. If only a *pre-note* is wanted, an empty argument for the *post-note* must be added.

Automatic formatting of page numbers

The *post-note* usually contains page numbers or page ranges. `biblatex` parses this argument and if it matches a simple pattern of page numbers and ranges, it formats the data as required by the style and the language. Page numbers should therefore be entered as arabic or roman numerals, ranges should be denoted by a single hyphen, and suffixes for “page sequences” should be added with the commands `\psq` and `\psqq`. `biblatex` converts the hyphen into an en-dash and adds localized and configurable prefixes like “p.”, “S.”, or “S” automatically — to suppress an automatic page prefix use the command `\noppp`. The “pagination scheme” can be changed or suppressed on a per-entry basis by setting the `pagination` field in the `.bib` file.

If the page numbers have some unusual format or if there is some additional text in the *post-note* argument, then page numbers must be formatted manually. In such cases prefixes can be added with the commands `\pno` and `\ppno`, and numbers can be formatted with `\pnfmt`.

Example 16-7-2 demonstrates the various commands. Note that in French ‘p.’ is used even for multiple pages and that the range is typeset with a shorter hyphen. The last line of the example demonstrates the effect of the pagination field: it has been set to ‘section’ for this entry and so § is used as page prefix.

	<code>\usepackage[ngerman,french,english]{babel}</code>	
	<code>\usepackage{biblatex}</code>	
	<code>\addbibresource{tlc.bib} \addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib}</code>	
[1, p. 1] [1, pp. 1–4] [1, pp. 1, 3, 5]	<code>\cite[1]{G-G} \cite[1-4]{G-G} \cite[1,3,5]{G-G}\</code>	
[1, p. IV] [1, pp. 5 sq.] [1, 25]	<code>\cite[IV]{G-G} \cite[5\psq]{G-G} \cite[\nopp 25]{G-G}\</code>	
[1, p. 27a] [1, especially pp. 27–34]	<code>\cite[\pno~27a]{G-G} \cite[especially \pnfmt{27-34}]{G-G}</code>	
[1, p. 1]	<code>\bigskip\selectlanguage{french}</code>	% French typography
[1, p. 1-4]	<code>\cite[1]{G-G}\ \cite[1-4]{G-G}</code>	% rules
[1, S. 1–4]	<code>\bigskip\selectlanguage{ngerman}</code>	% German typography
[1, S. 5 f.]	<code>\cite[1-4]{G-G}\ \cite[5\psq]{G-G}</code>	% rules
[2, § 33]	<code>\bigskip</code>	
[2, besonders §§ 27–34]	<code>\cite[33]{pagination}\</code>	
	<code>\cite[besonders \pnfmt{27-34}]{pagination}</code>	

16-7-2

The following two examples show the output of the most frequently used pre-defined citation commands in the two currently dominant citation systems: numeric and author-date. The `\autocite` command allows switching the citation command with a package option — first we use `inline`, which changes it to `\parencite`, and in the second example `footnote`, which gives as expected `\footcite`. This allows, for example, switching the citation style from author-date to numeric without having to adapt the source to avoid forlorn and odd-looking numbers in a footnote. There is no difference between `\cite` and `\parencite` in a numeric style, but the later command should be preferred if a citation in parentheses is wanted after a switch to an author-based style. All citation commands including `\footcite` and `\autocite` can be input with a space before them, because `biblatex`, if necessary, removes that space. This is important for `\autocite`, because it gives the right output also when its output is an inline citation. With `useprefix`, the examples force the name to start with “von” to show the effect of the capitalizing citation variants.

[see 1, p. 5]	<code>\usepackage[autocite=inline,</code>
[see 1, p. 5]	<code>useprefix=true]{biblatex}</code>
van Leunen [see 1, p. 5]	<code>\addbibresource{tlc.bib}</code>
Van Leunen [see 1, p. 5]	<code>\cite[see] [5]{vLeunen:92} \</code>
footcite ¹	<code>\parencite[see] [5]{vLeunen:92} \</code>
autocite [1]	<code>\textcite[see] [5]{vLeunen:92} \</code>
	<code>\Textcite[see] [5]{vLeunen:92} \</code>
	<code>footcite \footcite{vLeunen:92} \</code>
	<code>autocite \autocite{vLeunen:92}</code>

16-7-3

¹1.


Once more, but now with author-date style and `\autocite` set to footnote:

see van Leunen 1992, p. 5	<code>\usepackage[style=authoryear,autocite=footnote,</code>
(see van Leunen 1992, p. 5)	<code>useprefix=true]{biblatex}</code>
Van Leunen (see 1992, p. 5)	<code>\addbibresource{tlc.bib}</code>
van Leunen (see 1992, p. 5)	<code>\cite[see][5]{vLeunen:92} \\\</code>
footcite ¹	<code>\parencite[see][5]{vLeunen:92} \\\</code>
autocite ²	<code>\Textcite[see][5]{vLeunen:92} \\\</code>
	<code>\textcite[see][5]{vLeunen:92} \\\</code>
	<code>footcite \footcite{vLeunen:92} \\\</code>
	<code>autocite \autocite{vLeunen:92}</code>

¹Van Leunen 1992.

²Van Leunen 1992.

16-7-4

*Lost punctuation
after a citation* 

The biblatex package provides elaborate facilities designed to manage and track punctuation and spacing. The commands provided are mainly meant for style authors: they help prevent unwanted double punctuation marks if fields are missing or contain their own punctuation. In some cases the working of the punctuation tracker can also bite users because it can have an at first surprising effect that a punctuation symbol in the post-note “eats up” a following punctuation symbol in the text.

Example 16-7-5 demonstrates this for a semicolon: after a period it is suppressed, while it stays after an exclamation mark.

It is possible to overrule the behavior locally: `\bibsentence` marks the beginning of a sentence and so also hides all preceding punctuation marks. The counterpart is `\nopunct`, which suppresses the following punctuation:

	<code>\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}</code>
	<code>\addbibresource{tlc.bib}</code>
see Knuth 1986, for the details.	<code>\cite[see][for the details.]{Knuth-CT-a}; \\\</code>
see Knuth 1986, for the details!;	<code>\cite[see][for the details!]{Knuth-CT-a};</code>
see Knuth 1986, for the details.;	<code>\cite[see][for the details.\bibsentence]{Knuth-CT-a}; \\\</code>
see Knuth 1986, for the details!	<code>\cite[see][for the details!\nopunct]{Knuth-CT-a};</code>

16-7-5

16.7.4 Indexing citations automatically

Indexing can be activated with the package option `indexing`. It takes the values `true`, `false`, `cite`, or `bib`. The last two values restrict indexing either to citations or to bibliographies. By default biblatex adds the author names and the title to the index. In the next example we demonstrate how to redefine the relevant bibliography macro `citeindex` so that only the name is indexed.

Index

Goossens, Michel, 6	<code>\usepackage{makeidx} \makeindex</code>
Knuth, Donald E., 6	<code>\usepackage[indexing=cite]{biblatex} \addbibresource{tlc.bib}</code>
Mittelbach, Frank, 6	<code>\renewbibmacro{citeindex}{\ifciteindex{\indexnames{labelname}}{}}</code>
Rahtz, Sebastian, 6	<code>\textcite{LGC97}, \textcite{Knuth-CT-a} % p.6 (not shown)</code>
	<code>\newpage \printindex % p.7 (shown on the left)</code>

16-7-6

16.7.5 Back references and links

Sometimes it is useful to have a list of pages where a work has been cited in the bibliography. Such back references are fully supported by biblatex, and they are enabled with the option `backref`. The option `backrefstyle` allows you to set how consecutive pages are handled; by default a sequence of three or more pages is compressed to a range.

biblatex works well together with hyperref. If hyperref is loaded, citations, back references, and URLs are turned into active links. The following example shows such links in blue:

Smith and Webb (2021)

References

Smith, Joe and Henry Webb (2021). URL:
<https://some.url> (visited on
09/01/2021) (cit. on pp. 6, 7).

```
\usepackage[backref,style=authoryear]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib}
\usepackage{hyperref}
\hypersetup{colorlinks,allcolors=blue}

\textcite[url:e] % p.6 (not shown)
\newpage % p.7 (shown on the left)
\textcite[url:e]
\raggedright \printbibliography
```

16-7-7

16.7.6 Bibliography entries with multiple authors

Longer lists of names (authors, editors, publishers, etc.) are often truncated after a defined number of names (with *et al.* or something similar added at the end). With biblatex this can be controlled independently for the citations in the document, the entries in the bibliography, and, if necessary, for sorting within the bibliography.

For citations there are `maxcitenames` (default 3) and `mincitenames` (default 1). If the number of names in a citation exceeds `maxcitenames`, the list is truncated and only `mincitenames` names are shown; otherwise, all names are displayed. You can alter both values according to your needs but `mincitenames` should always be lower than or equal to `maxcitenames`. This means, assuming the defaults are used, that a citation with four or more authors is shown with only one author name followed by “et al.”, while a citation with two or three authors displays all author names.

Baumbach et al. (2002)

Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach (1997)
Goossens and Rahtz (1999)

```
\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}

\textcite{zpo} \ \ % 4 authors
\textcite{LGC97} \ \ \textcite{LWC99} % 2-3 authors
```

16-7-8

If you always want to enforce a certain setting for an entry, you can add an options line into your .bib file, e.g., in the zpo entry:

```
options = {maxcitenames=4,maxbibnames=4},
```

To control name lists in the bibliography the same functionality is offered through the keys `maxbibnames` and `minbibnames`. This allows you to show more (or fewer) names in the bibliography compared to what is shown in a citation within the document. For example, you might always want the bibliography to display up to four

names, with or without truncation, while you might only want to show one name in citations. In this case, the correct setting would be the following:

```
maxcitenames=1,minbibnames=4,maxbibnames=4
```

If the bibliography is sorted, then by default the sorting algorithm uses the name lists truncated according to the `maxbibnames` and `minbibnames` key settings. If this is not appropriate, you can use the keys `maxsortnames` and `minsortnames` to overwrite that default.¹ For example,

```
minbibnames=3,maxbibnames=3,minsortnames=1,maxsortnames=1
```

would show up to three names per entry in the bibliography but would disregard all authors except the first when sorting the bibliography.

However, most of the time identical settings are wanted for the minimum and maximum values. Therefore, `biblatex` also offers the two convenience keys `maxnames` and `minnames` to set all of the three `max...names` and `min...names` keys in one go.

All eight keys can only be set as options to the package or in the preamble.

16.7.7 Unambiguous citations

Citations must be unambiguous: they are labels pointing to the bibliography, and a reader must be able to identify the corresponding entry. For a numeric system a unique label merely requires increasing a counter. Author-based styles have to cater for the case that different authors and author lists might share the same names. As already described in the introduction of this chapter, author-based styles avoid ambiguities by adding initials (or even the full given name), by adding an extra year marker, or by showing more authors.

By default `biblatex` prefers to make the names unique by adding initials or the full given name. Thus, in the following example the two *Kirk* and *Doe* authors are differentiated by their initials, *Pyne* by the full given names, and *Webb* by extra year markers. The *Doe* authors get initials despite the fact that the year would already make their label unique because that makes it easier for humans to identify the correct publication.

	<code>\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}</code>
	<code>\addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib}</code>
Smith 2020; J. Kirk 2020; B. Kirk 2020	<code>\cite{smith,kirk1,kirk2} \\\</code>
Joe Pyne 2020; Jill Pyne 2020	<code>\cite{pyne1,pyne2} \\\</code>
J. Doe 2020; B. Doe 2019	<code>\cite{doe1,doe2} \\\</code>
Webb 2020a; Webb 2020b	<code>\cite{webb1,webb2}</code>

16-7-9

This default behavior with its mix of names with and without initials and given names is not to everyone's liking, but it has the huge advantage of creating quite short citations that nevertheless allow the reader to identify almost all authors directly in the text without having to interrupt the reading and check the entry in the bibliography.

¹If both `...bibnames` and `...sortnames` are specified they have to be in that order to take effect.

The output can be changed with the option `uniquename`. For example, with the setting `uniquename=init`, only initials are used and only for entries where initials are of no use in making the names unique, e.g., because they are identical, as in the two “Pyne” entries, an extra year marker is added instead.¹

16-7-10	Smith 2020; J. Kirk 2020; B. Kirk 2020 Pyne 2020b; Pyne 2020a J. Doe 2020; B. Doe 2019 Webb 2020a; Webb 2020b	<pre>\usepackage[style=authoryear,uniquename=init]{biblatex} \addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib} \cite{smith,kirk1,kirk2}\ \cite{pyne1,pyne2}\ \cite{doe1,doe2}\ \cite{webb1,webb2}</pre>
---------	--	---

The given names can be suppressed altogether with `uniquename=false`:

16-7-11	Smith 2020; Kirk 2020b; Kirk 2020a Pyne 2020b; Pyne 2020a Doe 2020; Doe 2019 Webb 2020a; Webb 2020b	<pre>\usepackage[style=authoryear,uniquename=false]{biblatex} \addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib} \cite{smith,kirk1,kirk2}\ \cite{pyne1,pyne2}\ \cite{doe1,doe2}\ \cite{webb1,webb2}</pre>
---------	--	--

To make citations with more than one author unique, biblatex again adds initials, given names and extra year markers, and if needed shows more authors. Similar to the handling of single authors, it also tries to make the authors identifiable. For example, the last citation *J. Kirk* has an initial to distinguish the author from *M. Kirk* in the third citation.

*Unambiguous
author lists*

16-7-12	Smith et al. 2020 H. Pyne et al. 2020 J. Pyne and M. Kirk 2020 J. Pyne and Webb 2020a J. Pyne and Webb 2020b J. Kirk et al. 2020	<pre>\usepackage[style=authoryear,maxcitenames=1]{biblatex} \addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib} \cite{list0}\ \cite{list1}\ \cite{list2}\ \cite{list3}\ \cite{list4}\ \cite{list5}</pre>
---------	---	--

The list handling can be configured with the option `uniquelist`. The following example shows the same set of citations but with `uniquelist=false`, which restricts the list length to the `maxcitenames` value. *Kirk* is now shown without the initials because the author *M. Kirk* is no longer visible. This makes the citations quite concise at the cost of readability, because it is more difficult to identify the correct work without checking in the bibliography.

16-7-13	Smith et al. 2020 H. Pyne et al. 2020 J. Pyne et al. 2020a J. Pyne et al. 2020b J. Pyne et al. 2020c Kirk et al. 2020	<pre>\usepackage[style=authoryear,maxcitenames=1, uniquelist=false]{biblatex} \addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib} \cite{list0}\ \cite{list1}\ \cite{list2}\ \cite{list3}\ \cite{list4}\ \cite{list5}</pre>
---------	--	--

¹Initials can be forced, even in that case, by redefining the `labelname` format.

*Ambiguous
author-title
entries in rare cases*



In an author-title style, identical citations pointing to different references are possible if the author and title are identical. The existing author-title style implementations do not try to avoid that rare case. For styles or documents that want better control here, biblatex offers the options `labeltitle` and `labeltitleyear`. They cause biber to check the author and title (and also the year) for uniqueness and to add data fields that can be queried in tests by style authors.

16.7.8 Printing the bibliography

We now describe in detail the main command to print, filter, and format the reference list with the biblatex package.

```
\printbibliography[key/value options]
```

To typeset a bibliography add `\printbibliography` at the place where it should appear. It can be used as often as wanted. If the list is empty, e.g., if the document does not contain any citation commands or if biber has not been called yet, nothing is printed, and a warning is added to the `.log` file:

LaTeX Warning: Empty bibliography on input line 57.

The `\printbibliography` command adds a heading before the reference list. By default it is formatted as an unnumbered top-level sectioning command of the class using `\refname` or `\bibname` as content.

*Changing the
heading*

The heading can be adapted with two keys: `title` sets the text of the heading, and `heading` allows you to change the formatting of the heading. For example, the value `subbibliography` switches a level down in the sectioning hierarchy, the value `bibintoc` adds the bibliography to the table of contents, and with `bibnumbered` a numbered sectioning command is used. To suppress the heading altogether, the value `none` is provided. More options can be found in the documentation. It also describes how to define new heading types with `\defbibheading`.

```
\printbibheading[key/value options]
```

It is sometimes necessary to add only a heading for example as a common title for subdivided bibliographies. This can be done with the standard sectioning commands of the class but also with `\printbibheading`. It also knows about the keys `heading` and `title`.

```
\defbibnote{name}{text}
```

To add arbitrary text to the bibliography two keys can be used in the optional argument of `\printbibliography`: `prenote` for text between the heading and the

actual bibliography and `postnote` for text after the list. The value of both keys is a *name* referring to a text declared before with the `\defbibnote` command.

1 My References

Some text before the bibliography.

- 16-7-14
- [1] Donald E. Knuth. *The T_EXbook*. Vol. A. Computers and Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, 1986, pp. ix + 483.
 - [2] Donald E. Knuth. “Typesetting Concrete Mathematics”. In: *TUGboat* 10.1 (Apr. 1989), pp. 31–36.

```
\usepackage[isbn=false]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\defbibnote{prebib}
{Some text before the bibliography.}

\nocite{Knuth-CT-a,Knuth:TB10-1-31}
\printbibliography
[heading=bibnumbered,prenote=prebib,
title=My References]
```

A powerful feature of `\printbibliography` is the ability to apply filters to print only a subset of the entries of a bibliography, for example only articles, entries with a specific keyword, or entries cited in a specific part of the document and so to split the references into sublists by topic or location. Various common filters can be set directly with key/value options, and biblatex also provides interfaces to define more specialized filters.

Filtering entries

For some common selections of field values of the references biblatex offers predefined keys: `type`, `nottype`, `subtype`, `notsubtype`, `keyword`, and `notkeyword`. They expect as a value a type, like `article` or `book`, or a keyword and can be used multiple times to build up lists. Example 16-7-15 demonstrates some of these keys. Be aware that splitting a bibliography in many parts can make it difficult to find a reference. It is not obvious if one should search in the books or somewhere else for “Pyne (2020a)”. Thus, such splits should normally not replace but accompany a full bibliography.

Common selections of field values

Doe (2015), Pyne (2020b), Pyne (2020a), Kirk (2020)

Books

Kirk, Maria (2020). *An important book*.
Pyne, Mike (2020a). *A book*.

Not Books

Doe, Jill (2015). “An article”. In: *Journal A*.
Pyne, Mike (2020b). “An important article”. In: *Journal B*.

Important

16-7-15

Kirk, Maria (2020). *An important book*.
Pyne, Mike (2020b). “An important article”. In: *Journal B*.

```
\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib}

\textcite{article1}, \textcite{article2},
\textcite{book1}, \textcite{book2}

\printbibliography
[type=book,title=Books]

\printbibliography
[notype=book,title=Not Books]

\printbibliography
[keyword=important,title=Important]
```

The following example demonstrates another problem with split bibliographies. By default the labels used are the ones from the full, alphabetically sorted bibliography,

and this means entries in subsets are numbered in a rather wild way. To keep this and later examples small, we reduced the spacing between the entries by setting `\bibitemsep` to zero.

Doe [1], Pyne [4], Pyne [3], Kirk [2]

Books

[2] Maria Kirk. *An important book*. 2020.

[3] Mike Pyne. *A book*. 2020.

Other

[1] Jill Doe. “An article”. In: *Journal A* (2015).

[4] Mike Pyne. “An important article”. In: *Journal B* (2020).

```
\usepackage{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib}
\setlength\bibitemsep{0pt}
\textcite{article1},
\textcite{article2},
\textcite{book1},
\textcite{book2}
\printbibliography
[type=book,title=Books]
```

```
\printbibliography
[notttype=book,title=Other]
```

16-7-16

`biblatex` has a number of options to handle this problem. The most important one is the package option `defernumbers`. With it numbers are assigned in the order that the entries appear in a bibliography. This improves our example greatly, but note that this works satisfactorily only with disjoint bibliographies.

Doe [3], Pyne [4], Pyne [2], Kirk [1]

Books

[1] Maria Kirk. *An important book*. 2020.

[2] Mike Pyne. *A book*. 2020.

Not Books

[3] Jill Doe. “An article”. In: *Journal A* (2015).

[4] Mike Pyne. “An important article”. In: *Journal B* (2020).

```
\usepackage[defernumbers]
{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib}
\setlength\bibitemsep{0pt}
\textcite{article1},
\textcite{article2},
\textcite{book1},
\textcite{book2}
\printbibliography
[type=book,title=Books]
```

```
\printbibliography
[notttype=book,title=Not Books]
```

16-7-17

Selection by cite location

To select the entries cited in a specific part of the document like a chapter, the `keys` section and `segment` are provided. They expect as a value the number of a reference section or a reference segment. How to define and use such sections and segments is described in Section 16.7.10 on page 556.

```
\DeclareBibliographyCategory{category}
\addtocategory{category}{key}
```

Selection by category

Categories allow splitting bibliographies into topics assigned to the entries on the fly in the document. With `\DeclareBibliographyCategory` you declare a category, where the value is an arbitrary name. With `\addtocategory` a `key` can be assigned to a `category`. To filter the bibliography by one or more categories the `keys` category

and `notcategory` are provided. A typical use case for categories is to differentiate between cited works and works for further reading added with the `\nocite` command. This is shown in the following example. It makes use of the hook `\AtEveryCitekey` that is executed for every key in a citation command. With the `\thefield` command we retrieve the current key of the entry and add it to the category `cited`.

Knuth (1986)

References

Knuth, Donald E. (1986). *The T_EXbook*. Vol. A. Computers and Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, pp. ix + 483. ISBN: 0-201-13447-0.

Further reading

Leunen, Mary-Claire van (1992). *A handbook for scholars*. Walton Street, Oxford OX2 6DP, UK: Oxford University Press, pp. xi + 348.

```
\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{t1c.bib}
\DeclareBibliographyCategory{cited}
\AtEveryCitekey{\addtocategory{cited}%
                 {\thefield{entrykey}}}

\textcite{Knuth-CT-a}
\nocite{vLeunen:92}

\printbibliography[category=cited]
\printbibliography[notcategory=cited,
                  title=Further reading]
```

16-7-18

By default the various filters are applied in an additive way, so all conditions must be met by an entry:

```
type=article,keyword=important,keyword=research,category=cited
```

This would select only articles that have both keywords in their `keywords` field and have been cited in the document — in our examples so far only `article2` would be printed if cited.

In the case that the standard selection keys are not sufficient, a more complicated filter can be defined and then used in the options of `\printbibliography` with `filter=filter name` or `check=check name`.

```
\defbibfilter{filter name}{expression}
```

The command `\defbibfilter` expects as its second argument a boolean expression based on the logical operators `and`, `or`, and `not` and some of the atomic tests discussed earlier. Parentheses surrounded by spaces can be used to specify the precedence of operators. However, there should be no spaces around the equal sign.

```
\defbibfilter{cited-or-important}{
  category=cited or
  ( keyword=important and not keyword=research )
}
\printbibliography[filter=cited-or-important]
```

This prints all entries that have been cited or that contain the keyword `important` but not the keyword `research`, so it would exclude `article2` if not cited.


```
\defbibcheck{check name}{code}
```

The `\defbibcheck` declaration is more low-level: its *code* argument can be arbitrary code using any test from the `biblatex` and the `etoolbox` package, and it can use all bibliography data of the current entry. The result of such a check is considered to be false (suppressing the printing of an entry) if the code leads to the execution of `\skipentry`. In the following example we print only entries published before the year 1988. The check first tests if the year actually contains a number — a tiny detail, but one that avoids strange errors if you use the check with arbitrary input data.

Kant, Immanuel (1968). “Kritik der praktischen Vernunft”. In: *Kants Werke. Akademie Textausgabe*. Vol. 5: *Kritik der praktischen Vernunft. Kritik der Urtheilskraft*. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter, pp. 1–163.

Knuth, Donald E. (1986). *The T_EXbook*. Vol. A. Computers and Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, pp. ix + 483. ISBN: 0-201-13447-0.

```
\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{t1c.bib}
\defbibcheck{before1988}{%
  \iffieldint{year}{%
    \ifnumless{\thefield{year}}{1988}%
      {}{\skipentry}}%
  {\skipentry}}
\nocite{*}
\printbibliography[heading=none,
  check=before1988]
```

16-7-19

16.7.9 The sorting of the bibliography

The sorting of the bibliography can be set with the package option `sorting`. Values are for example `none` (unsorted), `nyt` (“name year title”), or `ydnt` (“year descending name title”). More sorting schemes can be defined with `\DeclareSortingTemplate`. Typically the sorting scheme is set by the style, and overriding it should be done with care — for example, `sorting=none` together with an author-based style would make the bibliography unusable if you think about it.

It is possible to print multiple differently sorted bibliographies in a document, for example, one sorted by author and one sorted by year, by starting a so-called “new reference context” that changes the way the citation labels are built and sorted in the bibliography.

```
\DeclareRefcontext{name}{key/value options}
\newrefcontext[key/value options]{name}
```

`\DeclareRefcontext` declares a named reference context with a number of key/value settings. `\newrefcontext` starts a new reference context referring back to the declared context. The *name* argument is, despite the braces surrounding it, actually optional — this slightly odd syntax is a result of providing backward compatibility — an unnamed context, e.g., `\newrefcontext{sorting=ynt,labelprefix=A}`, could be used too. However, using a name simplifies assigning a reference context to citations and allows you to keep your settings together in the preamble.

The following example shows how this can be used to add a second bibliography with a different sorting. We additionally use a filter and print only articles in the second bibliography.

[3, A2, A1, 2]

References

- [1] Jill Doe. “An article”. In: *Journal A* (2015).
- [2] Maria Kirk. *An important book*. 2020.
- [3] Mike Pyne. *A book*. 2020.
- [4] Henry Webb. “An article”. In: *Journal C* (2010).

```
\usepackage[defernumbers]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib}
\DeclareRefcontext{byyear}
    {sorting=ynt,labelprefix=A}

\cite{book1,article1,article3,book2}
\printbibliography[title=References]
```

Articles by year

- [A1] Henry Webb. “An article”. In: *Journal C* (2010).
- [A2] Jill Doe. “An article”. In: *Journal A* (2015).

```
\newrefcontext{byyear}
\printbibliography[type=article,
    title=Articles by year]
```

16-7-20

When printing multiple bibliographies like this, a work can have more than one label — in the example a number or a number with the prefix “A” added by specifying a `labelprefix`. The same can happen in a less obvious way also with author-date or author-title labels. In such cases one has to decide which label should be used for the citations. By default biblatex uses the label from the last bibliography in which the citation was printed.¹

Because in the example the books are not shown in the second bibliography, the labels of the first bibliography are used for them, and we get as citations a — probably unwanted — mix of numbers with and without a prefix. This can be avoided by assigning the affected entry types or citation keys to a specific reference context to determine their labels. In the following example we assign all citations the labels of the first bibliography — for more complicated cases the documentation should be consulted.

[3, 1, 4, 2]

References

- [1] Jill Doe. “An article”. In: *Journal A* (2015).
- [2] Maria Kirk. *An important book*. 2020.
- [3] Mike Pyne. *A book*. 2020.
- [4] Henry Webb. “An article”. In: *Journal C* (2010).

```
\usepackage[defernumbers]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib}
\DeclareRefcontext{byyear}
    {sorting=ynt,labelprefix=A}
\assignrefcontextentries[name=default]{*}

\cite{book1,article1,article3,book2}
\printbibliography[title=References]
```

Articles by year

- [A1] Henry Webb. “An article”. In: *Journal C* (2010).
- [A2] Jill Doe. “An article”. In: *Journal A* (2015).

```
\newrefcontext{byyear}
\printbibliography[type=article,
    title=Articles by year]
```

16-7-21

¹This behavior has changed over time.

16.7.10 Document divisions

The biblatex package offers two concepts for document division: *reference sections* and *reference segments*. They can be started in various ways: with commands (`\newrefsection` and `\newrefsegment`), with environments (`refsection` and `refsegment`), or automatically at various sectioning units through package options like `refsection=chapter`. After a division has been created, it is possible to restrict a bibliography to the entries cited in this division with the keys `segment` and `section`; they take as the value the number of the division—in the current division you can access this number with `\therefsection` and `\therefsegment`.

*Reference sections
for independent
bibliographies*

A reference section encapsulates citations and bibliographies as if they were in a document of their own. Within such a reference section, all cited works are assigned labels that are local to the division: cross references and cite trackers are local too. Reference sections can also use resources (`.bib` files) specific to the division. Therefore, reference sections are useful if you want separate, *independent* bibliographies and bibliography lists. The typical use cases are articles in a journal where every article has its own specific bibliography. Reference sections can also be used for chapter bibliographies if the chapters build independent units, but it is important to realize that the same work may get assigned a different label in each reference section and so combining all entries in a global bibliography is not really possible.

*Reference segments
are filters*

Reference segments in contrast divide the document into parts that can be used as filters. They are useful if you want to show a selected view by chapter or section but want also a global bibliography because labels are unique across the segment boundaries. Reference segments can be used inside reference sections but not the other way round.

The next two examples demonstrate both division types. Note the extra year marker in “Smith, 2020a” and “Smith, 2020b”, which make the labels unique when the document is divided with reference segments and compare it with the “Smith, 2020” used for both works if reference sections are used instead.

	<code>\usepackage[style=authoryear, dashed=false]{biblatex}</code>
	<code>\addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib}</code>
... Smith 2020b ...	<code>\newrefsegment</code>
References of refsegment 1	<code>\ldots\ \cite{smith2020-1}\ \ldots</code>
Smith, Maria (2020b). <i>Another book</i> .	<code>\printbibliography</code>
... Smith 2020a ...	<code>[title=References of refsegment 1, segment=1]</code>
References of refsegment 2	<code>\newrefsegment</code>
Smith, Maria (2020a). <i>A book</i> .	<code>\ldots\ \cite{smith2020-2}\ \ldots</code>
Global bibliography	<code>\printbibliography</code>
Smith, Maria (2020a). <i>A book</i> .	<code>[title=References of refsegment 2, segment=2]</code>
Smith, Maria (2020b). <i>Another book</i> .	<code>\printbibliography[title=Global bibliography]</code>

When using reference selections, we do not need to select them explicitly if the bibliography is printed inside the reference section because the `\printbibliography` outputs only the works of the current reference section by default.

... Smith 2020 ...	<code>\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}</code>
	<code>\addbibresource{t1c-ex.bib}</code>
References of refsection 1	<code>\newrefsection</code>
Smith, Maria (2020). <i>Another book</i> .	<code>\ldots\ \cite{smith2020-1}\ \ldots</code>
	<code>\printbibliography[title=References of refsection 1]</code>
... Smith 2020 ...	<code>\newrefsection</code>
References of refsection 2	<code>\ldots\ \cite{smith2020-2}\ \ldots</code>
Smith, Maria (2020). <i>A book</i> .	<code>\printbibliography[title=References of refsection 2]</code>

16-7-23

If you wish to group all the bibliographies together (for example, at the end of the document), you can use the following commands:

`\bibbysection[key/value options] \bibbysegment[key/value options]`

They print the bibliographies of all reference sections or segments encountered so far. The title of such bibliographies should typically contain some number or reference to the chapter or section they refer to. For this purpose biblatex sets a label when starting a reference section. We demonstrate this in the next example by advancing the section counter and defining a heading that then references the label.

1 Article	<code>\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}</code>
... Smith 2020 ...	<code>\addbibresource{t1c-ex.bib}</code>
	<code>\defbibheading{subbibliography}{%</code>
	<code>\subsection*{References for Article</code>
	<code>\ref{refsection:\therefsection}}}</code>
2 Another article	
... Smith 2020 ...	
	<code>\section{Article} \newrefsection</code>
References	<code>\ldots\ \cite{smith2020-1}\ \ldots</code>
References for Article 1	
Smith, Maria (2020). <i>Another book</i> .	<code>\section{Another article} \newrefsection</code>
	<code>\ldots\ \cite{smith2020-2}\ \ldots</code>
References for Article 2	<code>\printbibheading</code>
Smith, Maria (2020). <i>A book</i> .	<code>\bibbysection[heading=subbibliography]</code>

16-7-24

16.7.11 Annotated bibliographies

If you want to generate an annotated bibliography, you can use the `reading` style. The annotation should be in the field `annotation` (or in the alias `annote` provided for jurabib compatibility).

The style produces entries like the following:

Computers and Graphics **jcg**

Computers and Graphics 35.4 (2011): *Semantic 3D Media and Content*.
ISSN: 0097-8493.

Annotations: This is a periodical entry with an issn field.

16-7-25

The `annotation` field can also be added to the bibliography made with styles that normally ignore this field. For example, you can insert the instruction to print the `annotation` field in the bibliography macro `finentry`, which is executed at the end of every entry.

Computers and Graphics (2011) 35.4:
Semantic 3D Media and Content.
ISSN: 0097-8493.
Annotation: This is a periodical
entry with an issn field.

```
\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\DeclareFieldFormat{annotation}
  {\par\textsf{Annotation: #1}}
\renewbibmacro{finentry}{\setunit{\finentrypunct}}%
  \printfield{annotation}\finentry}
\nocite{jcg}
\raggedright \printbibliography[heading=none]
```

16-7-26

16.7.12 Bibliography lists

In some fields it is common to use shorthands or short titles in the citation and to provide lists to look up such abbreviations.

`\printbiblist[key/value options]{biblistname}`

This command, which was already used in Example 16-5-50 on page 535, allows one to print lists of abbreviations, shorthands, and similar material. It differs from a normal bibliography in that it formats all entries in the same way (with the same “bibliography driver” given in the `biblistname` argument); i.e., it does not differentiate by entry type as `\printbibliography` does. `biblatex` provides automatic support for such lists for various fields that are short versions of other fields. They are marked as “label field” in the package documentation.

Angenendt (2002) schrieb in „In Honore Salvatoris“ ...

Liste der Kurztitel

In Honore Salvatoris Angenendt, Arnold (2002). „In Honore Salvatoris – Vom Sinn und Unsinn der Patrozinienkunde“.

```
\usepackage[ngerman]{babel}
\usepackage{csquotes}
\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}

\textcite{angenendt} schrieb in
\citetitle{angenendt} \ldots
\printbiblist[title=Liste der
  Kurztitel]{shorttitle}
```

16-7-27

16.7.13 Language support

The biblatex package collaborates with the babel package. For all declared languages biblatex loads special language definition files (extension .ltx) that contain definitions for all kinds of bibliography strings to produce textual material within citations and bibliography entries. At the moment more than 50 languages are supported.

Cicero, Marcus Tullius (1995). *De natura deorum. Über das Wesen der Götter*. Latin and German. Ed. and trans. by Ursula Blank-Sangmeister. With an afterw. by Klaus Thraede. Stuttgart: Reclam.

```
\usepackage[french,english]{babel}
\usepackage{csquotes}
\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{t1c.bib}
```

CICERO, Marcus Tullius (1995). *De natura deorum. Über das Wesen der Götter*. Latin et allemand. Éd. établie et trad. par Ursula BLANK-SANGMEISTER. Avec une postf. de Klaus THRAEDE. Stuttgart : Reclam.

```
\nocite{cicero}
\printbibliography[heading=none]
\selectlanguage{french}
\printbibliography[heading=none]
```

16-7-28

The language support is not restricted to the main language of the document: biblatex also reacts to language changes inside the document as shown above or when typesetting citation references.

When biblatex detects that babel (or polyglossia) is loaded, it checks if csquotes is loaded as well and if not issues a warning that this is recommended. The reason is that bibliography entries often use quotes around titles, etc. — these should preferably be typeset according to the conventions of the document language, and biblatex delegates that to the csquotes package. See Example 16-7-27 above.¹

 Management of quotes

Many of the localized strings can take two forms: a long and an abbreviated variant. To switch between both, the key `abbreviate` can be used:

Cicero, Marcus Tullius (1995). *De natura deorum. Über das Wesen der Götter*. Latin and German. Edited and translated by Ursula Blank-Sangmeister. With an afterword by Klaus Thraede. Stuttgart: Reclam.

```
\usepackage[english]{babel}
\usepackage[style=authoryear,
  abbreviate=false]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{t1c.bib}
\nocite{cicero}
\printbibliography[heading=none]
```

16-7-29

Languages and countries often have their own conventions how to sort words containing accented letters, digraphs, ligatures, or spaces. More than one set of rules can exist for a language; for example, “Ä” can in German be sorted like “Ae” (this is called the phonebook rule) or always after “A”. biber contains the relevant Unicode libraries, and by default biblatex uses the sorting rules from the main document language as set with babel. To select another sorting rule use the key `sortlocale`; allowed values are babel language names or standard identifiers for

¹We have not done this in every example to conserve space; thus, if you rerun some of the examples using both babel and biblatex, but not csquotes, you are going to see a warning.

the locale. For example, `sortlocale=de_DE_phonebook` switches to the German phonebook sorting rule. The following example shows on the left the sorting with the Swedish locale and on the right the same entries if English is the main language.¹

English Sorting	Swedish Sorting
Aachen, Georgina (n.d.). <i>Title AA</i> .	Aachen, Georgina (n.d.). <i>Title AA</i> .
Ånten, Georgina (n.d.). <i>Title Å</i> .	Vn, A (n.d.). <i>Title VN</i> .
Änten, Georgina (n.d.). <i>Title Ä</i> .	Wolf, Ceasar (n.d.). <i>Title B</i> .
Önten, Georgina (n.d.). <i>Title Ö</i> .	Vr, A (n.d.). <i>Title VR</i> .
Vn, A (n.d.). <i>Title VN</i> .	Ånten, Georgina (n.d.). <i>Title Å</i> .
Vr, A (n.d.). <i>Title VR</i> .	Änten, Georgina (n.d.). <i>Title Ä</i> .
Wolf, Ceasar (n.d.). <i>Title B</i> .	Önten, Georgina (n.d.). <i>Title Ö</i> .

```
\usepackage[swedish,english]
{babel}
\usepackage[style=authoryear]
{biblatex}
\addbibresource{locale.bib}
\AtBeginBibliography{\small}
% declaration for swe-nyt not shown
\nocite{*}
\printbibliography
[titled=English Sorting]
\newpage
\newrefcontext[sorting=swe-nyt]
\printbibliography
[titled=Swedish Sorting]
```

16-7-30

Recall from the discussion of additional bibliography fields (page 392, Section 15.3.2) that the language can also be set in the `.bib` file for individual references using the `langid` field and that the package option `autolang` governs how such entries are set if their language differs from the main language.

16.7.14 Distinguishing the author’s gender

Just like `jurabib`, the `biblatex` package offers the `BIBTEX` field `gender`, which takes the two-letter abbreviation shown in Table 16.2 on page 526 and additionally also the value `pp` for a plural and mixed-gender list. It depends on the style and also on the language, if and how the `gender` field is actually used. In the following example the female form “Eadem” is used for the first author because she was labeled with `gender=sf` in the `tlc-ex.bib` file. The example also shows that `biblatex`’s `\autocite` and `\footcite` commands work nicely together with the `footmisc` package.

Some¹ text referencing works² by Jane³
and works⁴ by Max.^{5,6}

```
\usepackage[multiple]{footmisc}
\usepackage[style=verbose-trad1]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib}

Some\autocite{jane-1} text referencing
works\autocite{jane-2} by Jane\autocite{jane-1}
and works\footcite{max-1} by
Max.\footcite{max-2}\footcite{max-1}
```

16-7-31

¹Jane Doe. *A book*. 2020.
²Jane Doe. *A second book*. 2020.
³Eadem, *A book*.
⁴Max Pyne. *A book*. 2020.
⁵Max Pyne. *A second book*. 2020.
⁶Idem, *A book*.

¹Not all code for the example is shown, because it is normally not supported to use different sorting rules in one and the same document. Therefore, `swe-nyt` was explicitly declared as a second sorting template. If you are interested, look at the full example source.

16.7.15 Sentence casing

As already mentioned in Section 15.3.3, sentence casing with biblatex, i.e., turning all words except the first to lowercase, is not done by the bibliography processor but with \LaTeX code. This is a common practice in Anglo-Saxon bibliographies, typically used for titles of articles (but not books), but it would be wrong in many other languages, e.g., in German where nouns have to start with an uppercase letter.

For this, biblatex provides the command `\MakeSentenceCase` that can be used in formatting directives but also in other places. Its starred form is language aware and changes the case only if the language in the field `langid` or — if missing — the current language matches one of languages stored in a special list. By default this list contains only various English variants, but if necessary, more languages can be appended with `\DeclareCaseLangs*`.

Arguments of commands and words in braces are protected from sentence casing. To *override* this protection you have to use another pair of braces as done in the next example for the word *Blue*. Note that the second sentence is not altered because the current language at this point is German, and that language is for good reasons not in this special list; however, the third is (unconditionally), and that is wrong for German.¹

	<code>\usepackage[ngerman,english]{babel} \usepackage{biblatex}</code>
	<code>\usepackage[autostyle]{csquotes}</code>
A story of <i>Green</i> and <i>blue</i> Ducks.	<code>\MakeSentenceCase*{a Story of \emph{Green} and {\emph{Blue}}} {Ducks}.}</code>
Eine Geschichte <i>grüner</i> und <i>blauer</i> Enten.	<code>\selectlanguage{ngerman}</code>
	<code>\MakeSentenceCase*{Eine Geschichte \emph{grüner} und {\emph{blauer}}} {Enten}.}</code>
Aber „Eine geschichte ...“ ist falsch!	<code>Aber \enquote{\MakeSentenceCase{eine Geschichte \ldots}} ist falsch!</code>

16-7-32

The standard biblatex styles do not use the command; if needed, it has to be added explicitly to a format directive. Format directives are discussed in the next section — as a teaser we show how they can be used to add sentence casing to `inproceedings` entries in an author-title format.

... Southall (<i>Presentation rules and rules of composition in the formatting of complex text</i>) ...	<code>\usepackage[ngerman,english]{babel}</code>
	<code>\usepackage[style=authortitle]{biblatex}</code>
	<code>\addbibresource{t1c.bib}</code>
	<code>\DeclareFieldFormat[inproceedings]{citetitle}</code>
	<code>{\mkbibemph{\MakeSentenceCase*{#1}}}</code>
But when we switch to German, the citation changes and is no longer altered:	<code>\ldots\ \textcite{Southall} \ldots\ [3pt]</code>
... Southall (<i>Presentation Rules and Rules of Composition in the Formatting of Complex Text</i>)	<code>But when we switch to German, the citation changes and is no longer altered:\ [3pt]</code>
	<code>\selectlanguage{ngerman}\ldots\ \textcite{Southall}</code>

16-7-33

¹With \BibTeX this is a serious problem, because the styles change *all* entries if they implement sentence casing. Due to the language-awareness, biblatex does a better job as long as you have `langid` fields in your database entries set up.

16.7.16 Customizing

Customizing citations and bibliographies is not always a trivial task. Besides some \LaTeX skills, you often also need some knowledge of the underlying traditions and rules of the citation system. For example, the title of an article is often formatted differently compared to that of a book, and if the editor and translator of a work are the same person, they should appear only once. Without some understanding of the reasoning behind such settings and how they affect the coding, customization is likely to fail or may not catch all cases correctly.

Before undertaking the endeavor to adapt the code with the tools provided by `biblatex`, you should therefore check if you can achieve your aims with package or style options, by switching to another style,¹ or even by sending the style author a feature request.

The `biblatex` package offers a rather large variety of customizing commands for style authors and users:

- commands to create new citation commands or even a complete style,
- commands to declare new entry types and fields,
- commands to communicate with `biber` and for example change the sorting or the formatting of labels,
- commands to adjust the formatting of fields, punctuation, and more.

It is out of scope of this introduction to describe all of them; we therefore concentrate on a few often needed methods in user documents. If you need more, e.g., when you want to design a completely new style from scratch, consult the extensive package documentation [79].

Core configuration files and commands

We start with a short overview of the files and the main commands relevant in a style definition. Customization quite often requires you to consult or copy code from these files.

*Data models in
blx-dm.def and
.dbx files*

The default data model of `biblatex` is defined in the file `blx-dm.def`. The files declare the standard entry types, fields, and their data type and various constraints. Style authors and users can add extensions to the data model through files with the extension `.dbx`. As an example we show the declarations needed for a simple contact list: a new entry type `address` with a name field `name` and two literal fields `street` and `town`.

```
\DeclareDatamodelEntrytypes{address}
\DeclareDatamodelFields[type=list, datatype=name] {name}
\DeclareDatamodelFields[type=field, datatype=literal]{street,town}
\DeclareDatamodelEntryfields[address]{name,street,town}
```

¹For example, the `biblatex-ext` package provides variants of the standard `biblatex` styles with additional configuration options.

After these declarations, it is then possible to produce .bib files with entries such as

```
@address{beutlin-bilbo,
  name   = {Bilbo Beutlin},
  street = {1 Bagshot Row},
  town   = {Hobbiton}
}
```

Citing such entries with the standard citation commands is probably of little use with this particular entry type — you also need to declare new citation commands for this. Consult the extensive package documentation [79] for the details.

The file `biblatex.def` is an important source if you want to customize a style, because it contains many default format instructions and various definitions loaded by all styles. The file is quite long, but skimming it can serve to understand the default behavior and to find examples for own definitions.

*Standard definitions
in `biblatex.def`*

Bibliography style files with the extension .bbx contain the definitions of bibliography drivers and the definition of bibliography environments. The core command in such files is `\DeclareBibliographyDriver`.

*Bibliography
definitions in .bbx
files*

`\DeclareBibliographyDriver{entry type}{code}`

The first argument corresponds to the *entry type* used in .bib files, specified in lowercase letters. Alternatively, the argument may contain an asterisk, in which case a fallback for unknown entry types is defined. The second argument contains the *code* to typeset all bibliography entries of the type *entry type*. A .bbx file can load other .bbx files — all biblatex styles, for example, load the file `standard.bbx` that contains code common to all styles.

Citation style files with the extension .cbx contain definitions for citation commands; the main command in such files is `\DeclareCiteCommand`.

*Citation definitions
in .cbx files*

`\DeclareCiteCommand{cmd}[wrapper]{pre}{loop}{sep}{post}`

This declaration takes — besides the name of the citation command — four mandatory arguments. The *pre*-code handles the data from the pre-note argument of the citation command. The *loop*-code is executed for each key in the mandatory key-list argument of the citation command. This is the core code that prints the citation labels or any other data. The *sep*-code is executed between iterations of the *loop*-code and usually inserts some kind of separator, such as a comma or a semicolon. Finally, the *post*-code handles the post-note argument of the citation command. If the optional *wrapper* argument is given, then the entire citation is passed to it as an argument. Typical examples of wrapper commands are commands that add parentheses or put the citation into a footnote — the next example uses a font command for demonstration.

BEFORE *article1* SEP *article2* SEP *article3* AFTER

```
\DeclareCiteCommand{\citetesting}[\textit]{
  {BEFORE }{\textbf{\thefield{entrykey}}}{ SEP }{ AFTER}
\citetesting{article1,article2,article3}
```

16-7-34

Localization
definitions in .lbx
files

Localization modules are files with the extension .lbx, typically the base name of the file refers to the language it supports. They contain all language-related settings, like translations for key terms in various languages, special date formats, or adaptations to punctuation.

```
\DeclareBibliographyStrings{key/value list}
```

This is the main command in such a localization module. The *key/value list* assigns to every key term two texts, a short and a long version. Such bibliography strings can also be used with the `\bibstring` command in the pre- and postnote of citations; e.g., `\bibstring{seealso}` prints “see also” or the equivalent in another language.

```
\newbibmacro{name}[narg][default]{bib macro definition}
\usebibmacro{name} ... arguments...
```

“bibmacros”

These two commands can be found in many places in the biblatex files. The first defines a macro to be executed via `\usebibmacro` later. The syntax is very similar to `\newcommand` except that *name* may contain characters such as numbers and punctuation marks and does not start with a backslash. It can have up to nine *arguments*, and the first can be declared as being optional (if a *default* is given in the `\newbibmacro` declaration).

The underlying commands of “bibmacro” live in their own name space and do not clash with commands of other packages, and the use of non-letters has the advantage to allow more readable names; e.g., `\usebibmacro{doi+eprint+url}` quite obviously handles the doi, eprint, and url fields.

```
\printdate
\printfield[format]{field}
\printlist [format][range]{literal list}
\printnames[format][range]{name list}
\printtext [format]{text}
```

Print commands

These are some of the commands used to typeset fields and text inside citations and bibliography entries.¹ Their purpose is twofold: first, they interact with the punctuation tracker and help to avoid that missing fields lead to duplicated punctuation symbols. Second, with the exception of `\printdate`, they all apply a customizable *format* directive.

The print commands are specific to the field types as described in Section 15.3.3 on page 393 because every type has its own parsing rules that need different format definitions. If the optional *format* argument is given, it is used as the format directive.

¹There are several other `\print...` commands, but these are the important ones.

Otherwise, a directive named like the field or list in the second argument is tried; e.g., `\printnames{editor}` tries to apply the format directive named `editor` while the declaration `\printnames[myformat]{editor}` tries to apply the format directive `myformat`. If the directive `myformat` is not declared, the optional argument is ignored, and the default format directive `editor` is tried instead. If that does not exist either, no format is applied, and the field content is printed as is.

Adapting localization strings

`biblatex` offers a dedicated command to customize the language-dependent bibliography strings in a document:

```
\DefineBibliographyStrings{language}{definitions}
```

Do not confuse this command with the `\DeclareBibliographyStrings` command used in the `.lbx` files. `\DefineBibliographyStrings` has an additional argument *language*, and the *definitions* are key/value pairs that assign text to one or more identifiers but do not distinguish between a long and an abbreviated form.

The main challenge when customizing such strings is to find the identifier name(s). You can search in the `.lbx` file, but what also often works is to temporarily set the language to `nil`. `biblatex` then issues a warning about missing translations and prints the identifiers in bold. However, note that this fails sometimes. The strings `langlatin` and `langgerman` inside the `language` field are not detected, and the following example shows `byeditor` and `bytranslator` instead of `byeditortr` that is used because the editor and translator are the same person in the `cicero` entry.

References

Cicero, Marcus Tullius (1995). *De natura deorum. Über das Wesen der Götter*. langlatin **and** langgerman.
byeditor Ursula Blank-Sangmeister.
bytranslator Ursula Blank-Sangmeister.
withafterword Klaus Thraede. Stuttgart: Reclam.

```
\usepackage[nil]{babel}
\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\AtBeginBibliography{\raggedright\small}
\nocite{cicero}
\printbibliography
```

16-7-35

In the next example we change some of the strings (not necessarily for the better). The new text should be without formatting instructions and — with exception of the language names — can be given in lowercase; it is capitalized by `biblatex` in places where that is needed.

References

Cicero, Marcus Tullius (1995). *De natura deorum. Über das Wesen der Götter*. Latin / Teutonic. Revised and adapted by Ursula Blank-Sangmeister. Addendum by Klaus Thraede. Stuttgart: Reclam.

```
\usepackage[english]{babel}
\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\DefineBibliographyStrings{english}{ and = /,
  byeditortr    = revised and adapted by,
  langgerman    = Teutonic,
  withafterword = addendum by}
\nocite{cicero} \printbibliography
```

16-7-36

Customizing punctuation

In the standard styles, punctuation is typically inserted with one of two methods: as a named delimiter or as a command.

```
\setunit{\printdelim{nameyeardelim}}
\setunit{\bibpageref punct}
```

The command `\bibpageref punct` is inserted before back references: its default definition (which can be found in `biblatex.def`) is a space. It can be changed with `\renewcommand`.

The named delimiter `nameyeardelim` is — as the name implies — inserted in various places between a name and a year. Because it is inserted with the `\printdelim` command, it is context sensitive. Here “context” means things like “inside a text citation” or “inside a bibliography item”. To adapt it, a special command is provided.

```
\DeclareDelimFormat [context1,context2,...] {name}{code}
```

The first mandatory argument holds the *name* of the delimiter format being declared, the *code* argument the typeset result. With the optional argument you can restrict the applicability to certain *contexts*. These are strings such as `bib`, `biblist`, or names of citation commands without the backslash, e.g., `textcite`.

There is no easy way to distinguish which customization method is suitable for a concrete punctuation delimiter — you have to check the documentation of the style or the code to find out. In the following example we give `nameyeardelim` three different definitions and also change `\bibpageref punct` to produce \leftrightarrow .

textcite: Knuth \leftrightarrow (1986)
 parencite: (Knuth ... 1986)

References

Knuth, Donald E. : (1986). *The T_EXbook*.
 Vol. A. Computers and Typesetting.
 Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wes-
 ley, pp. ix + 483. ISBN: 0-201-13447-
 0 \leftrightarrow (cit. on p. 6).

```
\usepackage[style=authoryear,backref]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\renewcommand\bibpageref punct{ $\hookleftarrow$ }
\DeclareDelimFormat[bib]{nameyeardelim}{\, \addcolon\ }
\DeclareDelimFormat[parencite]{nameyeardelim}{\, \ldots\ }
\DeclareDelimFormat[textcite]{nameyeardelim}{ $\mapsto$ }
textcite: \textcite{Knuth-CT-a}\
parencite: \parencite{Knuth-CT-a}
\printbibliography
```

16-7-37

Changing format directives

As discussed on page 564, the commands that are used by `biblatex` styles to print fields apply format directives. Such directives can be (re)defined with the following commands:

```
\DeclareFieldFormat [entry type1,entry type2,...] {format}{code}
\DeclareListFormat [entry type1,entry type2,...] {format}{code}
\DeclareNameFormat [entry type1,entry type2,...] {format}{code}
```

There are three separate commands to declare *format* directives for fields, lists, and names. The optional argument allows you to restrict the declaration to specific *entry*

types in the .bib file. The *code* can refer to the current field or list item with #1; for names (which are substructured) a different method is available as discussed below.

```
\citefield[pre-note][post-note]{key}[format]{field}
\citelist[pre-note][post-note]{key}[format]{literal}
\citename[pre-note][post-note]{key}[format]{name list}
```

These citation commands grant access to all lists and fields at a lower level. The optional *format* argument allows you to apply a format directive manually. This is useful to test and demonstrate formats and so we use them in the examples below.

A format directive defined with `\DeclareFieldFormat` is meant for use with `\printfield`, `\printtext`, or `\citefield`. In the *code* argument you can refer to the content of the field with #1 and to the name of the field with the command `\currentfield`.

Field formatting

In the following example we define a format directive for fields with a special formatting for articles and then apply it to some entries with the help of `\citefield`. Note that the LGC97 book entry has no volume information; thus, we get a missing field warning, and the field name is printed in bold.

```
\usepackage{biblatex} \addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\DeclareFieldFormat{myfieldformat}{\thefield{entrytype}/\currentfield/#1}
\DeclareFieldFormat{article}{myfieldformat}{\currentfield/#1}

book/volume/A \citefield{Knuth-CT-a}[myfieldformat]{volume} \\ % a book
[volume/10] \citefield{Knuth-TB10-1-31}[myfieldformat]{volume} \\ % an article
book/year/1997 \citefield{LGC97}[myfieldformat]{year} \\
volume \citefield{LGC97}[myfieldformat]{volume} % a book without volume info
```

16-7-38

A format directive defined with `\DeclareListFormat` is meant for use with `\printlist` or `\citelist`. They loop over the list items, and the current item is passed to *code* as argument #1. The item index number is available through the counter `listcount`, and the total number of items is stored in the counter `liststop`. Inside *code* you can access the name of the list with the command `\currentlist`.

List formatting

In the example we declare a new list directive and apply it to an entry with a location field with three items. Additionally, we format it with the default list directive to show the difference.

```
\usepackage{biblatex} \addbibresource{tlc-ex.bib}
\DeclareListFormat{mylistformat}
{Location \thelistcount/\theliststop: #1%
  \ifnumgreater{value{listcount}}{value{liststop}-1}%
    {!}% -- list end reached
    {,\}% -- in list
}

Location 1/3: München,
Location 2/3: Berlin,
Location 3/3: New York! \citelist{location-list}[mylistformat]{location}
München, Berlin, and New \\\[3pt]
York \citelist{location-list}{location} % default directive
```

16-7-39

Name formatting

A format directive defined with `\DeclareNameFormat` is meant for use with `\printnames` or `\citenam`. Unlike the previous declarations, it should not make use of `#1`; instead, the individual parts of a name are made available in automatically created macros. For example, the family name is provided as `\namepartfamily`, and the initials of the given name as `\namepartgiveni`.

Below we define a new name format directive and apply it to the author and editor fields of two entries from our sample database:

	<code>\usepackage{biblatex}</code>	
	<code>\addbibresource{tlc.bib}</code>	
	<code>\DeclareNameFormat{mynameformat}</code>	
	<code>{\thelistcount/\theliststop:</code>	
	<code>\namepartgiveni~\namepartfamily~(\namepartfamilyi)%</code>	
	<code>\ifnumgreater{\value{listcount}}{\value{liststop}-1}%</code>	
	<code>{\{\}\}%</code>	add a linebreak between names
	<code>}</code>	
1/3: M. Goossens (G.)	<code>\citenam{LGC97}[mynameformat]{author}</code>	<code>\\[3pt]</code>
2/3: S. Rahtz (R.)	<code>\citenam{EP92}[mynameformat]{editor}</code>	
3/3: F. Mittelbach (M.)		
1/2: C. Vanoirbeek (V.)		
2/2: G. Coray (C.)		

16-7-40

Real format directives for names are typically much more complex than field and list format directives, because they have to test for missing name parts, etc. Fortunately, there exist various predefined formats that can be used by defining alias names. This is demonstrated in the next example where we define the name format directive `mynameformat` as an alias for the predefined format `family-given`. We also apply a second predefined directive (`family-given/given-family`) directly. Compare the order of the author names in both cases.

	<code>\usepackage[giveninits]{biblatex}</code>	
	<code>\addbibresource{tlc.bib}</code>	
	<code>\DeclareNameAlias{mynameformat}{family-given}</code>	
Goossens, M., Rahtz, S., and Mittelbach, F.	<code>\citenam{LGC97}[mynameformat]{author}</code>	<code>\\</code>
Goossens, M., S. Rahtz, and F. Mittelbach	<code>\citenam{LGC97}[family-given/given-family]{author}</code>	

16-7-41



A common error when declaring format directives is to use the wrong format name. For example, `journal` is wrong because the field is mapped to `journaltitle`. The title in an author-title citation uses the `citetitle` format directive, and the authors in the bibliography in an author-date style use the directive `sortname`. Another source of error is that some default format directives are entry type specific: to overwrite them one has to declare them for the specific type. For example, in Example 16-7-33 on page 561 we had to change the format specifically for `inproceedings` to overwrite the `biblatex` default. The same would be the case for the title of an article.

As a final example we change the default order of the author names in the bibliography by adapting the `sortname` format. We also show how to change the font of the names to small caps by redefining the wrapper commands like `\mkbibnamefamily` and `\mkbibnamegiven` used by `biblatex` around the name parts. We place everything

into the hook `\AtBeginBibliography` to restrict the font changes to the bibliography and not affect the names in citation references.

Goossens, Rahtz, and Mittelbach (1997)

References

GOOSSENS, MICHEL, RAHTZ, SEBASTIAN, and MITTELBACH, FRANK (1997). *The L^AT_EX Graphics Companion: Illustrating Documents with T_EX and PostScript*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley Longman, pp. xxi + 554. ISBN: 0-201-85469-4.

```
\usepackage[style=authoryear]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{tlc.bib}
\DeclareNameAlias{sortname}{family-given}
\AtBeginBibliography{%
  \renewcommand\mkbibnamefamily[1]{\textsc{#1}}%
  \renewcommand\mkbibnamegiven[1]{\textsc{#1}}%
  \renewcommand\mkbibnameprefix[1]{\textsc{#1}}%
  \renewcommand\mkbibnamesuffix[1]{\textsc{#1}}%
}
\textcite{LGC97}
\printbibliography
```

16-7-42

16.8 Multiple bibliographies in one document

In large documents that contain several independent sections, such as conference proceedings with many different articles, or in a book with separate parts written by different authors, it is sometimes necessary to have separate bibliographies for each of the units. In such a scenario citations are confined to a certain part of the document, the one to which the bibliography list belongs.

A complementary request is to have several bibliographies in parallel, such as one for primary sources and one for secondary literature. In that case one has to be able to reference works in different bibliographies from any point in the document.

Both requests can be easily resolved when using the `biblatex` package. It has extended capabilities to print multiple bibliographies filtered and sorted by various conditions or to restrict their scope to parts of a document. This is described in Sections 16.7.8 to 16.7.10.

If using `biblatex` is not an option, both requests can also be automatically resolved if none of the bibliographies contains the same publication¹ and you are prepared to produce the bibliographies manually by means of several `thebibliography` environments without using `BIBTEX`. In that case the `\bibitem` commands within the environment provide the right cross-referencing information for the `\cite` commands (or their variants) to pick up from anywhere in the document. Having the same publication in several bibliographies (or more exactly the same reference key) is not possible, because that would lead to a “multiply defined labels” warning (see page 761) and to incorrect references. Of course, this could be manually corrected by choosing a different key for such problematical citations.

Being deprived of using `BIBTEX` or `biblatex/biber` has a number of consequences. First, it is more difficult to impose a uniform format on the bibliographical entries (something that the bibliography processors automatically handles for you). Second,

¹This could happen, for example, if you compile the proceedings of a conference and each article therein has its own bibliography.

	Bibliographies per Unit				
	chapterbib	bibunits	bibtopic	biblatex	multibib
Bibliography per chapter	✓	✓	✓	✓	n/a
Bibliography per other unit	Restrictions	✓	✓	✓	n/a
Deal with escaping citations	✓	Restrictions	Error	✓	n/a
Additional global bibliography	Labor	✓	No	✓	n/a
Group bibliographies together	✓	No	No	✓	n/a
Multiple global bibliographies	No	No	✓	✓	✓
Multiple bibliographies per unit	No	No	✓	✓	No
cite compatible	✓	✓	✓	n/a	✓
jurabib compatible	✓	✓	Restrictions	n/a	✓
natbib compatible	✓	✓	✓	n/a	✓
Support for unsorted (BIBTEX) styles	✓	✓	No	✓	✓
Works with standard .bib files	✓	✓	No	✓	✓
active links with hyperref	✓ ^a	✓ ^b	✓	✓	✓ ^c
	chapterbib	bibunits	bibtopic	biblatex	multibib
	Per Topic				

Blue entries indicate features (or missing features) that may force a selection.

^aOnly if `\include` is used. The option `duplicate` gives warnings about duplicate destinations; the links go from the citation to the first bibliography. ^bActive links only when `natbib` is used too. Entries present in more than one bibliography give warnings about duplicate destinations; the links go to the first bibliography.

^c`\newcites` should be issued after `\usepackage{hyperref}`.

Table 16.3: Comparison of packages for multiple bibliographies

using an author-date or short-title citation scheme is difficult (because `natbib` requires a special structure within the optional argument of `\bibitem`) to downright impossible (because the structure required by `jurabib` or `biblatex` is not suitable for manual production); see Section 16.3 and 16.7 for a discussion of the required `\bibitem` or `.bbl` structures in those cases.

To be able to use `BIBTEX` for this task people had to find a way to generate several `.bbl` files from one source document. As discussed in Section 15.4, the interaction with `BIBTEX` normally works as follows: each citation command (e.g., `\cite`) writes its *key-list* as a `\citation` command into the `.aux` file. Similarly, `\bibliography` and `\bibliographystyle` commands simply copy their arguments to the `.aux` file. `BIBTEX` then reads the master `.aux` file (and, if necessary, those from `\included` files) searching for occurrences of the above commands. From the provided information it produces a single `.bbl` file. To make `BIBTEX` work for the above scenarios, four problems have to be solved:

1. Generate one `.aux` file for every bibliography in the document that can be used as input for `BIBTEX`.

2. Ensure that each citation command writes its information to the correct `.aux` file so that BibTeX, when it processes a given `.aux` file, adds the corresponding bibliographical data in the `.bbl` file but not in the others.
3. Ensure that the resulting `.bbl` files are read back into L^AT_EX at the right place.
4. Handle the problem of escaping citations due to their placement in sectioning or `\caption` commands. A citation in such a place would later appear in the table of contents or list of figures, and there (in a different context) L^AT_EX would have problems in resolving it.

The packages `chapterbib`, `bibunits`, `bibtopic`, and `multibib`, which are described in this section, solve the above problems in different ways. They all have their own advantages and disadvantages. A short comparison of these packages appears in Table 16.3 on the preceding page, where blue entries indicate features (or missing features) that may force a selection when one is looking for a solution for bibliographies per unit or with bibliographies per topic, or a combination of both.

16.8.1 chapterbib — Bibliographies per included file

The `chapterbib` package (developed by Donald Arseneau based on original work by Niel Kempson) allows multiple bibliographies in a L^AT_EX document, including the same cited items occurring in more than one bibliography.

It solves the problem of producing several `.aux` files for BibTeX, by relying on the `\include` mechanism of L^AT_EX; you can have one bibliography per `\included` file. This package can be used, for example, to produce a document with bibliographies per chapter (hence the name), where each chapter is stored in a separate file that is included with the `\include` command. This approach has the following restrictions:

- Each `\include` file needs to have its own `\bibliography` command. The database files that are listed in the argument can, of course, be different in each file. What is less obvious is that each file must contain a `\bibliographystyle` command, though for reasons of uniformity *preferably with the same style argument* (Example 16-8-1 on the following page shows that different styles can be applied).
- The `.aux` files of each `\include` file are processed individually by BibTeX. This means that *independent* bibliographies and labels are generated for each unit and that the same work can have differing labels in the units or two different works can have the same label; see also the discussion about the “reference sections” from the `biblatex` package in Section 16.7.10 on page 556.
- An `\include` file not containing a `\bibliography` command cannot contain citation commands, because they would not get resolved.
- Citation commands outside of `\include` files (with the exception of those appearing in the table of contents; see below) are not resolved, unless you include a `thebibliography` environment on that level. Without special precautions, this environment has to be entered manually. If you use BibTeX on the

document's .aux file, you will encounter errors, because BibTeX sees multiple `\bibdata` and `\bibstyle` commands (when processing the included .aux files). In addition, you get *all* citations from *all* `\include` files added, and that is perhaps not desirable. If you do want a cohesive bibliography for the whole document, there is a `rootbib` option to help with this task. However, it requires adding and removing the option at different stages in the process; see the package documentation for details.

- Units containing a local bibliography always start a new page (because of the `\include` command). For cases where this is not appropriate, `chapterbib` offers some support through a `\cbinput` command and `cbunit` environment¹; see the package documentation for details. Unless you need the `gather` option, it might be better to use the `bibunits` package in such situations.

By default, the `thebibliography` environment generates a numberless heading corresponding to the highest sectioning level available in the document class (e.g., `\chapter*` with the `book` class). However, if bibliographies are to be generated for individual parts of the document, this may not be the right level. In that case you can use the option `sectionbib`² to enforce `\section*` headings for the bibliographies.

In the following example, we present the `\include` files `article-1.tex` and `article-2.tex` in `filecontents` environments, which allows us to process this example automatically for the book. In real life these would be different files on your computer file system. We also use `\stepcounter` to change the `chapter` counter rather than using `\chapter` to avoid getting huge chapter headings in the example. Note that both included files refer to a publication with the key `Knuth-CT-a`. These are actually treated as different keys in the sense that one refers to the publication from `article-1.bbl` and the other refers to that from `article-2.bbl`.

... see [Knu86] ...

Bibliography

[Knu86] Donald E. Knuth. *The TeXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986.

...see [2] and [1] ...

Bibliography

- [1] Hans Brox and Wolf-Dietrich Walker. *Besonderes Schulrecht*. München, 27. edition, 2002.
- [2] Donald E. Knuth. *The TeXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986.

```
\begin{filecontents}{article-1.tex}
\stepcounter{chapter}
\ldots\ see \cite{Knuth-CT-a} \ldots
\bibliographystyle{alpha}
\bibliography{tlc}
\end{filecontents}
\begin{filecontents}{article-2.tex}
\stepcounter{chapter}
\ldots see \cite{Knuth-CT-a}
and \cite{bschur} \ldots
\bibliographystyle{plain}
\bibliography{tlc}
\end{filecontents}
\usepackage[sectionbib]{chapterbib}
\include{article-1}
\include{article-2}
```

16-8-1

¹`cbunit` can be used only together with manual `thebibliography` environments.

²If both `chapterbib` and `natbib` are used, use the `sectionbib` option of `natbib` instead!

If you wish to group all the bibliographies together (for example, at the end of the document), use the option `gather` and place a `\bibliography` command at the point where the combined bibliography should appear.¹ The argument of that command can be left empty because it is not used to communicate with `BBTeX`.

Instead of `gather`, you may want to use the option `duplicate`. It produces “chapter bibliographies”, plus the combined listing. Both options work with the default settings only in document classes that have a `\chapter` command. The headings for each subbibliography generated by either option can be customized by redefining the command `\FinalBibTitles`. As you can see, you can make use of commands inside its definition, e.g., `\thechapter` and `\chaptitle` in the example. By altering their values (either implicitly or explicitly) before including the articles, different sub-bibliographies get different headings as shown below:

```
% Included files as in previous example
\usepackage [gather,sectionbib]{chapterbib}
\newcommand\FinalBibTitles{References for Article-\thechapter
~\mbox{---}~\chaptitle}

\newcommand\chaptitle{Intro}      \include{article-1}
\renewcommand\chaptitle{Summary} \include{article-2} \bibliography{}
```

Bibliography

References for Article 1 — Intro

[Knu86] Donald E. Knuth. *The T_EXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986.

References for Article 2 — Summary

[1] Hans Brox and Wolf-Dietrich Walker. *Besonderes Schuldrecht*. München, 27. edition, 2002.

[2] Donald E. Knuth. *The T_EXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986.

16-8-2

If the highest heading unit in your document is `\section`, you can redefine `\StartFinalBibs`. This gives you more control, but is a bit more complicated to set up: you can then use `\refname` in the main sectioning but should also redefine `\bibname` to `@auto@bibname` for the headings of the subbibliographies; for details refer to the package documentation. In the following example we include slightly changed files that step the section counter instead of the chapter counter.

*Using documents
with \section as
highest level*

```
% Included files as before (i.e., from Example 16-8-1), but
% this time we are stepping the section counter.
\usepackage [gather]{chapterbib}
\sectionbib{\subsection*}{subsection}
```

¹ It should be placed after all units whose bibliography it should show.

```

\newcommand\FinalBibTitles{References for Article \thesection}
\renewcommand\StartFinalBibs{\section*{\refname}%
\begingroup
\setcounter{secnumdepth}{-1}%
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{\refname}%
\sectionmark{\refname}%
\endgroup
\renewcommand\bibname{\UseName{@auto@bibname}}}

\include{article-1} \include{article-2} \bibliography{

```

References

References for Article 1

[Knu86] Donald E. Knuth. *The T_EXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986.

References for Article 2

- [1] Hans Brox and Wolf-Dietrich Walker. *Besonderes Schuldrecht*. München, 27. edition, 2002.
- [2] Donald E. Knuth. *The T_EXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986.

16-8-3

If citations are placed into sectioning or `\caption` commands, they appear eventually in some table of contents list (i.e., at the top level). Nevertheless, `chapterbib` properly resolves them, by inserting extra code into `.toc`, `.lof`, and `.lot` files so that a `\cite` command is able to determine to which local bibliography it belongs. If you have additional table of contents lists set up, as explained in Section 2.3.4, you have to be careful to avoid citations that may end up in these new contents lists, because `chapterbib` is unaware of them.

Command
already defined
error

Some BibT_EX styles unfortunately use `\newcommand` declarations instead of `\providecommand` in the generated `.bbl` files, which makes such files unsuitable for repeated loading. If you get “Command *<name>* already defined” errors for this reason, surround the `\bibliography` commands and their arguments in braces. For example, write

```
{\bibliography{t1c}}
```

The `chapterbib` package is compatible with most other packages, including the citation packages discussed earlier in this chapter. If you plan to use it together with `babel`, load the `chapterbib` package first.

16.8.2 bibunits — Bibliographies for arbitrary units

The `bibunits` package developed by Thorsten Hansen (from original work by José Alberto Fernández) generates separate bibliographies for different units (parts) of the text (chapters, sections, or `bibunit` environments). The package separates the

citations of each unit of text into a separate file to be processed by \LaTeX . A global bibliography can also appear in the document, and citations can be placed in both at the same time.

```
\begin{bibunit}[style] ... \putbib[file-list] ... \end{bibunit}
```

One way to denote the units that should have a separate bibliography is by enclosing them in a `bibunit` environment. The optional parameter `style` specifies a style for the bibliography different from a default that may have been set up (see below). Instead of `\bibliography`, you use a `\putbib` command to place the bibliography. It can appear anywhere within the unit as proven by the example. The optional argument `file-list` specifies a comma-separated list of \LaTeX database files; again a default can be set up. A default \LaTeX style can be set with `\defaultbibliographystyle`; without it, `plain` is used as the default. Similarly, `\defaultbibliography` can be used to define a default list of \LaTeX databases. In its absence `\jobname.bib` is tried. The example below uses both methods (explicit and defaults).

Setting up defaults

1 First one

[1] was used to produce [2].

References

[1] Free Software Foundation, Boston, Massachusetts. *GNU Make, A Program for Directing Recompilation*, 2000.

[2] Donald E. Knuth. Typesetting Concrete Mathemat-

ics. *TUGboat*, 10(1):31–36, April 1989.

2 Another one

As described by [Pyn20] ...

References

[Pyn20] Mike Pyne. *A book*. 2020.

```
\usepackage{bibunits}
\defaultbibliographystyle{alpha}
\defaultbibliography{t1c-ex}
\section{First one}
\begin{bibunit}[plain]
\cite{GNUmake} was used to
produce \cite{Knuth:TB10-1-31}.
\putbib[t1c]
\end{bibunit}
\section{Another one}
\begin{bibunit}% default used
As described by \cite{book1}
\ldots
\putbib % default used
\end{bibunit}
```

16-8-4

For each unit `bibunits` writes the `\citation` commands (used to communicate with \LaTeX) into the file `bu⟨num⟩.aux`, where `⟨num⟩` is an integer starting with 1. Thus, to generate the necessary bibliographies, you have to run \LaTeX on the files `bu1`, `bu2`, and so forth. As a consequence, with the default settings you cannot process more than one document that uses `bibunits` in the same directory, because the auxiliary files would be overwritten.¹ After generating the bibliographies, you have to rerun \LaTeX at least twice to resolve the new cross-references.

A global bibliography, in addition to the bibliographies for the individual units, can be generated by using `\bibliography` and `\bibliographystyle` as usual. Outside of a `bibunit` environment, the standard commands should be used to generate a citation for the global bibliography. Inside `bibunit`, use `\cite*` and `\nocite*` instead of `\cite` and `\nocite` to generate a citation for both the local

¹If necessary, you can direct the package to use different names; see the package documentation.

and the global bibliography. There are, however, a number of restrictions. If the `natbib` package is also loaded, then `\cite*` has the meaning defined by `natbib` and cannot be used for generating a global citation (use `\nocite` outside the unit in that case). In addition, refrain from using numerical citation labels, because they are likely to produce ambiguous labels in the global bibliography, as shown in the next example. A better choice would be a \LaTeX style such as `alpha`.

1 First one

[1] was used to produce [2].

References

- [1] Free Software Foundation, Boston, Massachusetts. *GNU Make, A Program for Directing Recompilation*, 2000.
- [2] Donald E. Knuth. Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. *TUGboat*, 10(1):31–36, April 1989.

2 Another one

As described by [1] ...

References

- [1] Donald E. Knuth. Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. *TUGboat*, 10(1):31–36, April 1989.

Global References

- [1] Donald E. Knuth. Typesetting Concrete Mathematics. *TUGboat*, 10(1):31–36, April 1989.

```
\usepackage{bibunits}
\section{First one}
\begin{bibunit}[plain]
\cite{GNUmake} was used to
produce \cite*{Knuth:TB10-1-31}.
\putbib[tlc]
\end{bibunit}
\section{Another one}
\begin{bibunit}[plain]
As described by
\cite*{Knuth:TB10-1-31}
\ldots \putbib[tlc]
\end{bibunit}
\renewcommand\refname
{Global References}
\bibliographystyle{plain}
\bibliography{tlc}
```

16-8-5

Rather than using `\cite*` everywhere in your document, you can specify the package option `globalciterecopy`. All local citations are then automatically copied to the global bibliography as well.

`\bibliographyunit[unit]`

Instead of specifying the bibliography units with `bibunit` environments explicitly, you can specify the sectioning unit for which bibliography units should be generated automatically. The `\bibliographyunit` command defines with its optional argument for which document *unit* references must be generated, e.g., `\chapter` (for each chapter) or `\section` (for each section). If the optional argument is not given, the command deactivates further bibliography units. When `\bibliographyunit` is active, the `\bibliographystyle` and `\bibliography` commands specify the \LaTeX files and the style to be used by default for a global bibliography, as well as in the local units. If you wish to specify information for local bibliographies only, use `\bibliography*` and `\bibliographystyle*` instead. These declarations *cannot* be used in the preamble but must be placed after `\begin{document}`.

Getting
unresolved
references

There is, however, a catch with the approach: the normal definition of the `thebibliography` environment, which surrounds the reference lists, generates a heading of the highest sectioning level. Hence, if you use `\chapter` units in a report, the heading generated by that environment prematurely ends the unit, and

consequently you end up with undefined references, as shown in the example (using `\section` units in an article class).

16-8-6

1 First one

[?] was used to produce [?].

References

- [1] Free Software Foundation, Boston, Massachusetts. *GNU Make, A Program for Directing Recompilation*, 2000.
- [2] Donald E. Knuth. Typesetting Concrete Mathematics.

2 Another one

As described by [?] ...

References

- [1] Hans Brox and Wolf-Dietrich Walker. *Allgemeines Schuldrecht*.

ics. *TUGboat*, 10(1):31–36, April 1989.

```
\usepackage{bibunits}
\bibliographyunit[\section]
\bibliographystyle*{plain}
\bibliography*{tlc}
\section{First one}
\cite{GNUMake} was
used to produce
\cite{Knuth:TB10-1-31}.
\putbib
\section{Another one}
As described by
\cite{aschur} \ldots
\putbib
```

To resolve this problem, you can provide your own `thebibliography` environment definition so that it uses a different sectioning level than the one specified on the `\bibliographyunit` declaration. Alternatively, you can use the option `sectionbib` (use `\section*` as a heading in `thebibliography`) or `subsectionbib` (use `\subsection*`) to change the `thebibliography` environment for you.

16-8-7

1 First one

[1] was used to produce [2].

References

- [1] Free Software Foundation, Boston, Massachusetts. *GNU Make, A Program for Directing Recompilation*, 2000.
- [2] Donald E. Knuth. Typesetting Concrete Mathematics.

2 Another one

As described by [1] ...

References

- [1] Hans Brox and Wolf-Dietrich Walker. *Allgemeines Schuldrecht*. München, 29. edition, 2003.

ics. *TUGboat*, 10(1):31–36, April 1989.

```
\usepackage[sectionbib]{bibunits}
\bibliographyunit[\section]
\bibliographystyle*{plain}
\bibliography*{tlc}
\section{First one}
\cite{GNUMake} was
used to produce
\cite{Knuth:TB10-1-31}.
\putbib
\section{Another one}
As described by
\cite{aschur} \ldots
\putbib
```

Note that the unit specified on the `\bibliographyunit` command has to be different from the one referred to in the option. In the above example the unit was `\section`, so we used the `subsectionbib` option.

To resolve the problem of escaping citations (see page 571), the package offers the option `labelstoglobalaux`. However, this has the side effects that such citations appear in the global bibliography and that numerical reference schemes are likely to produce incorrect labels; see the package documentation for details.

16.8.3 bibtopic — Combining references by topic

In contrast to `chapterbib` and `bibunits`, which collect citations for individual units of a document, the package `bibtopic` written by Stefan Ulrich (based on earlier work by Pierre Basso) combines reference listings by topic. You can, for example, provide a primary reference listing separate from a reference list for further reading or put all references to books separate from those to articles.

Within the document all citations are produced with `\cite`, `\nocite`, or variants thereof (if `natbib` or similar packages are also loaded). Thus, separation into topics is handled at a later stage. To produce separate bibliographies by topic you have to group the bibliographical entries that belong to one topic in a separate `BIBTEX` database file (e.g., one for primary sources and one for secondary literature). The bibliographies are then generated by using several `btSect` environments. Ways to generate separate database files are described in Section 15.6: e.g., reference managers and also `biber` can be used to extract entries. Another option to extract reference entries according to some criteria from larger `BIBTEX` database collections is the program `bibttool` developed by Gerd Neugebauer. It is distributed as a C source file, though you may find precompiled binaries — for example, in the Debian and FreeBSD distribution families.

```
\begin{btSect}[style]{file-list}
```

The `btSect` environment generates a bibliography for all citations from the whole document that have entries in the `BIBTEX` database files listed in the comma-separated *file-list* argument. If the optional *style* argument is present, it specifies the `BIBTEX` style to use for the current bibliography. Otherwise, the style specified by a previous `\bibliographystyle` declaration is used. If no such declaration was given, the `BIBTEX` style `plain` is used as a default.

Unless the package was loaded with the option `printheadings`, the environment produces no heading. Normally, you have to provide your own heading using `\section*` or a similar command.

```
\btPrintCited    \btPrintNotCited    \btPrintAll
```

Within a `btSect` environment one of the above commands can be used to define which bibliographical entries are included among those from the specified *file-list* databases. The `\btPrintCited` command prints all references from *file-list* that have been somewhere cited in the document, `\btPrintNotCited` prints those that have not been cited, and `\btPrintAll` prints all entries in the `BIBTEX` database files.

The following example shows the basic concepts using two topics: “`TEX` related” and “juridical” literature; it uses the databases `tlc-tex.bib` and `tlc-jura.bib` in which we copied some entries from our standard database. The first bibliography uses the default `plain` style; for the second bibliography we explicitly specified the `BIBTEX` style `abbrv` (this is meant as an illustration — mixing styles is usually a bad idea). As you can see, if you specify numerical `BIBTEX` styles, `bibtopic` automatically

uses consecutive numbers throughout all bibliographies to ensure that the references in the document are unique.

We saw the citations [3], [2], and [1].

Juridical literature

- [1] Hans Brox and Wolf-Dietrich Walker. *Besonderes Schuldrecht*. München, 27. edition, 2002.
- [2] Hans Brox and Wolf-Dietrich Walker. *Allgemeines Schuldrecht*. München, 29. edition, 2003.

\TeX literature

- [3] D. E. Knuth. *The \TeX book*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986.

```
\usepackage{bibtopic}
```

```
We saw the citations \cite{Knuth-CT-a},
\cite{aschur}, and \cite{bschur}.
```

```
\begin{btSect}{tlc-jura}
  \section*{Juridical literature}
  \btPrintCited
```

```
\end{btSect}
```

```
\begin{btSect}[abbrev]{tlc-tex}
  \section*{\TeX{} literature}
  \btPrintCited
```

```
\end{btSect}
```

16-8-8

For every `btSect` environment, the `bibtopic` package generates a separate `.aux` file that by default is constructed from the base name of the source document (`\jobname`) and a sequence number. You can change this naming scheme by redefining `\thebtauxfile` using the counter `btauxfile` to automatically obtain a sequence number. For the book examples we used the following redefinition:

```
\renewcommand\thebtauxfile{\jobname+\arabic{btauxfile}}
```

The `bibtopic` package is incompatible with `chapterbib` and `bibunits`. However, it provides the environment `btUnit` to confine the citations to logical units. Within such units the `btSect` environment can be used in the normal way, allowing for topic bibliographies by chapter or other unit. In that case *all* citations have to appear within such units (escaping citations, discussed on page 571, are not handled, so you have to ensure that they do not happen). By default, numerical styles restart their numbering per unit (e.g., per article in a proceedings issue). If you want continuous numbering, use the option `unitcntnoreset`.

*Bibliographic topics
per logical unit*

While `bibtopic` works with most \LaTeX styles, there are some exceptions. The most important one is that it does not work as expected with “unsorted” styles (e.g., `unsorted`). If such a style is used, then the order in the bibliography is determined by the order in the \LaTeX database file and *not* by the order of citation in the document. If the latter order is required, you should use the `multibib` package described in the next section.

*Problem with
nonsorting \LaTeX
styles*

The `bibtopic` package is compatible with most other packages that provide extensions to the citation mechanism, including `cite`, `natbib`, and `jurabib`. There are, however, some restrictions with respect to the production of the bibliography lists. For example, hooks to influence the layout as provided by `natbib` or `jurabib` may not be functional. Details are given in the package documentation.

Here is a repeat of Example 16-8-8 but using jurabib this time:

We saw the citations Knuth The T_EXbook, Brox/Walker Allgemeines Schuldrecht, and Brox/Walker BSchuR.

Juridical literature

Brox, Hans/Walker, Wolf-Dietrich: Besonderes Schuldrecht. 27th edition. München, 2002

Brox, Hans/Walker, Wolf-Dietrich: Allgemeines Schuldrecht. 29th edition. München, 2003

T_EX literature

Knuth, Donald E.: The T_EXbook. Volume A, Computers and Typesetting. Reading, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley, 1986, ix + 483, ISBN 0-201-13447-0

```
\usepackage{bibtopic,jurabib}
\bibliographystyle{jurabib}
We saw the citations \cite{Knuth-CT-a},
\cite{aschur}, and \cite{bschur}.
\begin{btSect}{tlc-jura}
\section*{Juridical literature}
\btPrintCited
\end{btSect}
\begin{btSect}{tlc-tex}
\section*{\TeX{} literature}
\btPrintCited
\end{btSect}
```

16-8-9

16.8.4 multibib — Separate global bibliographies

Like bibtopic, the multibib package written by Thorsten Hansen provides separate global bibliographies. While the former package separates the bibliographies by using separate B_BT_EX database files, multibib works by providing separate citation commands to distinguish citations in different bibliographies.

There are advantages and disadvantages with either method. With multibib, different types of citations are clearly marked already in the source document. As a consequence, however, moving a citation from one bibliography to a different one in a consistent manner requires changes to the document in various places. In contrast, with bibtopic it merely requires moving the corresponding database entry from one file to another. On the other hand, bibtopic often requires tailored .bib files for each new document, while with multibib one can use generally available collections of B_BT_EX database files.

The multibib package is compatible with most other packages that provide extensions to the cite mechanisms, including cite, jurabib, and natbib. Moreover, the package provides a general interface, which allows adding arbitrary extensions of cite commands to be recognized by multibib.

```
\newcites{type}{title}
```

The `\newcites` declaration defines an additional set of citation commands for a new *type* of citations. The heading for the additional bibliography listing is *title*. Once this declaration is given, the four additional commands are available for use. The command `\cite{type}`, like `\cite`, generates a citation within the text, and its corresponding reference appears in the bibliography listing for the new *type*. Similarly, `\nocite{type}` adds a citation to the *type* bibliography without appearing in the text. The corresponding bibliography appears at the point where

the `\bibliography{type}` command is given, and the BibTeX style used for this bibliography is defined with `\bibliographystyle{type}`. An example is shown below.

A book on graphics in L^AT_EX is [1]; suggestions on citations can be found in [vL92].

L^AT_EX references

- [1] Michel Goossens, Sebastian Rahtz, and Frank Mittelbach. *The L^AT_EX Graphics Companion: Illustrating Documents with T_EX and PostScript*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley Longman, Reading, MA, USA, 1997.

General references

- [vL92] Mary-Claire van Leunen. *A handbook for scholars*. Oxford University Press, Walton Street, Oxford OX2 6DP, UK, 1992.

```
\usepackage{multibib}
\newcites{latex}
{\LaTeX{} references}
```

A book on graphics in \LaTeX{} is \citelatem{LGC97}; suggestions on citations can be found in \cite{vLeunen:92}.

```
\bibliographystylelatex{plain}
\bibliographylatex{tlc}
```

```
\renewcommand\refname
{General references}
\bibliographystyle{alpha}
\bibliography{tlc}
```

16-8-10

The `\newcites` declaration can be used several times, thereby creating additional citation types. It is limited only by the number of output files that can be used simultaneously by T_EX. The .aux file written for communication with BibTeX has the name `<type>.aux`. For this reason one has to be a bit careful when selecting the *type* in the first argument to `\newcites`, to avoid overwriting other .aux files.

For numerical citation styles the references are by default numbered sequentially over all bibliographies to avoid ambiguous references. When using the option `resetlabels`, each bibliography restarts the numbering.

L^AT_EX offers an interface to include graphics.¹ L^AT_EX's default citation scheme is number-only.²

L^AT_EX references

- [1] Michel Goossens, Sebastian Rahtz, and Frank Mittelbach. *The L^AT_EX Graphics Companion: Illustrating Documents with T_EX and PostScript*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley Longman, Reading, MA, USA, 1997.

General references

- [2] Mary-Claire van Leunen. *A handbook for scholars*. Oxford University Press, Walton Street, Oxford OX2 6DP, UK, 1992.

```
\usepackage[super]{cite}
\usepackage{multibib}
\newcites{latex}{\LaTeX{} references}

\LaTeX{} offers an interface to include
graphics \citelatem{LGC97}. \LaTeX's
default citation scheme is
number-only \cite{vLeunen:92}.
```

```
\bibliographystylelatex{plain}
\bibliographylatex{tlc}
```

```
\renewcommand\refname
{General references}
\bibliographystyle{plain}
\bibliography{tlc}
```

16-8-11

This page intentionally left blank

CHAPTER 17

L^AT_EX Package Documentation Tools

17.1 doc — Documenting L ^A T _E X and other code	584
17.2 docstrip.tex — Producing ready-to-run code.	599
17.3 l3build — A versatile development environment	606
17.4 Making use of version control tools	615

In this chapter we describe the `doc` system, a method to document L^AT_EX macros and environments. A large proportion of the L^AT_EX code available is documented using its conventions and support tools. The underlying principle is that L^AT_EX code and comments are mixed in the same file and that the documentation or the stripped package file or files are obtained from the latter in a standard way. In this chapter we explain the structure that these files should have and show how, together with the program `DOCSTRIP`, you can build self-installing procedures for distributing your L^AT_EX packages and generating the associated documentation. The chapter also helps you understand the code written by others, install it with ease, and produce the documentation for it (not necessarily in that order).

The third section then introduces the `l3build` program, which offers a flexible development environment. It supports a package developer in all important steps: code and documentation development, testing, and all aspects of the release management including upload to CTAN. It is the workflow environment used by the L^AT_EX Project Team for the code that they manage.

We end the chapter with a section on version control systems and explain how to extract and use their information with L^AT_EX. Applying version control methods is definitely useful for any larger documentation project, but in fact is advisable for any document that goes through a number of “revisions”.

17.1 doc — Documenting L^AT_EX and other code

The idea of integrated documentation was first employed by Donald Knuth when he developed the T_EX program using the WEB system, which combines Pascal-like meta source code and documentation. Thanks to his approach, it was particularly easy to port T_EX and its companion programs to practically any computer platform in the world.

Subsequently, authors of L^AT_EX packages started to realize the importance of documenting their L^AT_EX code. Many now distribute their L^AT_EX macros using the framework defined with the `doc` package (by Frank Mittelbach) and its associated `DOCSTRIP` utility (originally by Frank Mittelbach with later contributions by Johannes Braams, Denys Duchier, Marcin Woliński, and Mark Wooding).

The `doc` package was written roughly 30 years ago (version 1 appeared in 1988, predating L^AT_EX 2_ε). Since then it has been extensively used to document the L^AT_EX kernel and most of the packages that are available on today's L^AT_EX distributions. The core code of version 2 has existed since 1998, and that version was distributed with L^AT_EX until 2022. At the TUG conference in Rio 2018 the author sketched out plans for a version 3 to improve it in several respects, but given it is so widely used, any change would need to be very light-weight, basically adding hyperlink support and adding a way to provide additional `doc` elements (not just macros and environments), with full compatibility to support all the existing uses.¹

Both systems together allow L^AT_EX code and documentation to be held in the same T_EX source file. The obvious advantage is that a sequence of complex T_EX instructions becomes easier to understand with the help of comments inside the file. In addition, updates are more straightforward because only a single source file needs to be changed.

The `doc` package provides a set of commands and establishes some conventions that allow specially prepared source files to contain both code and its documentation intermixed with each other. This is discussed in Sections 17.1.1 to 17.1.3.

To produce the documentation you need a driver (file) that loads the `doc` package and then interprets the source file. In its simplest form the driver for the documentation is an external file. However, the driver is more commonly made part of the source file so that all you have to do to produce the documentation is to run the source file through L^AT_EX. The possibilities are discussed in detail in Section 17.1.4.

To produce a ready-to-run version of your code you need to first process the source package with `DOCSTRIP` (see Section 17.2). This step is usually implicitly done by providing an `.ins` file that is run through L^AT_EX. The most important commands and concepts are discussed in the next sections. Tables 17.1 to 17.5 on pages 595–597 provide an overview of all `doc` user commands. Further details on any of them can be found in the documented source `doc.dtx` of the `doc` package, which can also serve as a prime (though somewhat aged) example of the `doc` system.

¹If I restarted from scratch, I would do a lot of things differently now, and in fact several other people have tried to come up with better solutions. However, as the saying goes, a bad standard is better than none, so `doc` has prevailed, and changing it now in incompatible ways would be a nonstarter. Some of the ideas for the extensions have been borrowed from Didier Verna's `DoX` package, even though I did not use the document-level interfaces.

17.1.1 General conventions for the source file

A L^AT_EX file to be used with the doc system consists of *documentation parts* intermixed with *code parts*. Every line of a documentation part starts with a percent sign (%) in the first column. It can contain arbitrary T_EX or L^AT_EX commands, but the % character cannot be used as a comment character. User comments are created by using the ^^A character or, if you prefer, the ^^X character instead. Longer text blocks can be turned into comments by surrounding them with %\iffalse ... %\fi. All other parts of the file are called code parts. They contain the code described in the documentation parts.

Depending on how the code parts are structured, it is possible to use such a file directly with L^AT_EX, although these days this is seldom done. Instead, DOCSTRIP is typically used to produce the production files. If the former approach is taken, L^AT_EX bypasses the documentation parts at high speed and pastes the macro definitions together, even if they are split into several code parts.

On the other hand, if you want to produce the documentation of the macros, then the code parts should be typeset verbatim. This is achieved by surrounding these parts by the macrocode environment.

```
%\begin{macrocode}
  <one or more lines of code>
%\end{macrocode}
```

It is mandatory that you put *exactly* four spaces between the % character and \end{macrocode} and no space between \end and its argument. The reason is that when L^AT_EX is processing the macrocode environment, it is actually looking for that particular string and not for the command \end with the argument macrocode.

Inside a code part all T_EX commands are allowed. Even the percent sign can be used to suppress unwanted spaces at the ends of lines.

If you prefer, you can use the macrocode* instead of the macrocode environment. It produces the same results except that spaces are displayed as □ characters when the documentation is printed.

17.1.2 Describing new macros and environments

Most packages contain commands and environments to be employed by users in their documents. To provide a short manual describing their features, a number of constructs are offered by the doc package.

```
\DescribeMacro [keys] { \cmd1, ... } \Describe(element) [keys] { entry1, ... }
```

The \DescribeMacro command takes one argument containing a comma-separated list of command names, which are shown in the margin, and for which special (usage) index entries are generated, for example,

```
% \DescribeMacro{\DocInput,\IndexInput}
% Finally the \meta{input commands} part ...
```


In the optional argument you can specify either `noindex` or `noprint` to suppress indexing or printing for that particular instance. Using both would be possible too, but pointless because then the command would do nothing.

A similar command, `\DescribeEnv`, can be used to indicate that at this point one or more L^AT_EX environments are being explained, and if you declare additional doc elements, e.g., `\element`, then `\Describe $\langle element \rangle$` becomes available too.

```
\begin{macro}[keys]{\cmd1,...,\cmdn}
\begin{environment}[keys]{env1,... ,envn}
```

To describe the definition of one or more commands, you use the `macro` environment. It takes one mandatory argument: a comma-separated list of the new commands. This argument is also used to print the names in the margin and to produce appropriate index entries. The index entries for usage (produced by `\Describe...`) and for definition are different, which allows for easy reference. Here is an example taken from the sources of the `doc` package itself:

```
% \begin{macro}{\check@angle}
%   Before looking ahead for the |<| the |%| is gobbled by the
%   argument here.
%   \begin{macrocode}
\def\check@angle#1{\futurelet\next\ch@angle}
%   \end{macrocode}
% \end{macro}
```

The optional `keys` argument lets you suppress indexing or printing of the command names in the margin, through specifying either `noindex` or `noprint` for that particular instance. If any such setting is made on the environment level, it overwrites whatever default was given when the `doc` element was defined or when the package was loaded.

By default the commands listed in the mandatory argument of the `macro` environment are not allowed to be declared with `\outer` (which is a plain T_EX concept not officially supported by L^AT_EX). However, should you really want to document such a command, you can do so by specifying the key `outer` in the optional `keys` argument.

Another environment, with the unimaginative name `environment`, documents the code of environments. It works like the `macro` environment but expects the name or names of environments as its argument.

These two (`macro` and `environment`) are the `doc` elements supported out of the box by the package. How to define further elements is covered in Section 17.1.6 on page 592.

```
\MakeShortVerb{\c}   \MakeShortVerb*{\c}   \DeleteShortVerb{\c}
```

When you have to quote a lot of material verbatim, such as command names, it is awkward to always have to type `\verb+...+`. Therefore, the `doc` package provides an abbreviation mechanism that allows you to pick a character `c`, which you plan to use

only very rarely inside your document, to delimit your verbatim text — the character " is often chosen, but if that character is already used for another purpose, such as for shorthands in `babel`, then you may prefer `|` or some other character. Then, after including the command `\MakeShortVerb{\c}`, the sequence `c text c` becomes the equivalent of `\verb c text c`.

The variant form `\MakeShortVerb*` does the same but uses `\verb*`. If you later want to use `c` with its original meaning, just type `\DeleteShortVerb{\c}`. You can repeat this sequence using `c` as a shorthand for `\verb` and reverting to its original meaning as many times as needed.¹ Note that such short forms for `\verb`, just like `\verb` itself, cannot appear in the argument of another command, but the characters may be used freely inside `verbatim` and `macrocode` environments.

You can divide your documented package file into two parts, the first typically containing a general description and the second giving a detailed description of the implementation of the macros. When generating the document, you can suppress this latter part if you place the command `\MaybeStop` at the division point between the two parts.²

<code>\MaybeStop{final text}</code>	<code>\Finale</code>
-------------------------------------	----------------------

The `\MaybeStop` macro takes one argument in which you put all the information that you want to see printed if the user decides to stop typesetting the document at that point (for example, a bibliography, which is usually printed at the end of the document). When the driver file contains an `\OnlyDescription` declaration, L^AT_EX processes the argument of `\MaybeStop` and then stops reading the file. Otherwise, the `\MaybeStop` macro saves its argument in a macro called `\Finale`, which can later be used to get things back (usually at the very end). This scheme makes changes in two places unnecessary. The default is to typeset the whole document. This default can also be explicitly set by using the `\AlsoImplementation` command in the preamble.

A simple scheme to provide both user documentation and full documentation including the code part is to provide a driver as part of the package `.dtx` file with an `\OnlyDescription` in its preamble and then offer a second file with the name `<package>-code.tex` that just contains the lines such as:

```
\AtBeginDocument{\AlsoImplementation} % force full documentation
\input{doc.dtx}                        % load the package .dtx
```

You could alternatively use two such files, i.e., `<package>-code.tex` for the code documentation and `<package>-doc.tex` for the user interface, which is also often done.

¹This feature has also been made available as a stand-alone package, `shortvrb`; it was discussed in Section 4.2. See Example 4-2-3 on page 298.

²For a long time this command was called `\StopEventually` (still supported because it is used all over the place in older documentation). The slightly strange command name was due to a “false friend”: the German word for ‘perhaps’ is ‘eventuell’, and when the author found out it was not saying what he thought it was, it had been in use for years without anybody telling him.

`\changes{version}{date}{text}`

To document the change history, the `\changes` command can be placed within the description part of the changed code. The information in the `\changes` command may be used to produce an auxiliary file (L^AT_EX's `\glossary` mechanism is used for this purpose), which can be printed after suitable formatting. To cause the change information to be written, include `\RecordChanges` in the driver file. To read and print the sorted change history, put the `\PrintChanges` command at a suitable point, typically after the `\PrintIndex` command in the driver.

To generate the sorted file containing the changes, you should run the raw glossary file through *MakeIndex* using an adequate style (like `gglo.ist`, supplied with the doc distribution; see Section 14.1.6 on page 349 for more information about how *MakeIndex* treats glossaries).

17.1.3 Cross-referencing all macros used

Inside a `macrocode` or `macrocode*` environment, index entries are produced for every command name that starts with a backslash. In this way you can easily find out where a specific macro is used. Since T_EX works considerably more slowly when it has to produce such an array of index entries, you can turn off this feature by using `\DisableCrossrefs` in the driver file. To turn it on again, use `\EnableCrossrefs`.

Finer control is provided with the `\DoNotIndex` command, which takes one argument containing a comma-separated list of commands that are *not* to be entered in the index. More than one `\DoNotIndex` command can be present, in which case their contents are combined. A frequent use of this macro is to exclude native L^AT_EX commands from the index.

`\DisableCrossrefs`, `\EnableCrossrefs`, and `\DoNotIndex` can be used in the document body. They obey the current grouping, which allows you, for example, to turn off indexing within a specific macro environment without the need to explicitly restart it afterwards.

The overall production (or not) of index entries is controlled by using or omitting the following declarations in the driver file preamble (if no declaration is provided, no index is produced). Using `\PageIndex` makes all index entries refer to their page number. With `\CodelineIndex`, index entries produced by `\DescribeMacro` and `\DescribeEnv` refer to the relevant page numbers, but those produced by the `macro`, `environment`, and `macrocode` environments refer to the code lines, which are numbered automatically. If you have defined your own environments with `\NewDocElement`, then they exhibit the same behavior.

If index entries are produced, they have to be sorted by an external program, such as *MakeIndex* (see Chapter 14). The `doc` package uses special conventions for the index entries, so you need to run *MakeIndex* with the `-s` switch (see Section 14.2.4 on page 356) to specify a suitable style — for example, `gind.ist`, which is distributed with the `doc` system.

To read and print the sorted index, you must put the `\PrintIndex` command near the end of your driver file, possibly preceded by bibliography commands, as

needed for your citations. If you do not want to produce an index but you want the code lines numbered nevertheless, you can use the declaration `\CodelineNumbered` in the preamble.

17.1.4 The documentation driver

To get the documentation for a set of macros with the doc system, you have to prepare a driver (file) with the following characteristics:

```
\documentclass[⟨class options⟩]{⟨document-class⟩}
\usepackage[⟨package options⟩]{doc}
⟨preamble⟩
\begin{document}
  ⟨input-commands⟩
\end{document}
```

The `⟨document-class⟩` may be any legal class, such as `article` or `ltxdoc` (described in Section 17.1.9); in the latter case the `doc` package is already loaded by the class. In the `⟨preamble⟩`, you should place declarations that manipulate the behavior of the doc system, such as `\DisableCrossrefs`, `\OnlyDescription`, and `\CodelineIndex`. Finally, the `⟨input-commands⟩` part should contain one or more `\DocInput` and/or `\IndexInput` commands.

```
\DocInput{file name}    \IndexInput{file name}
```

The `\DocInput` command is used for files prepared for the doc system, whereas `\IndexInput` can be used for macro files that do not obey the conventions of the doc system. The latter command takes a file name as its argument and produces a verbatim listing of the file, indexing every command as it goes along. This functionality can be handy if you want to learn something about macros without enough documentation.

It is also possible to use the `\PrintIndex` and `\PrintChanges` (if the changes are recorded by `\RecordChanges`) commands. Some people put them directly into the source file, but it is better practice to place them into the driver. You can then combine several packages in one document and produce a combined index.

As mentioned in the introduction, most often the driver is included directly in the source file instead of being a separate file of its own. How this works is explained in the next section.

Package options

Starting with version 3 the doc package now offers a small number of package options to modify its overall behavior. These are:

`hyperref`, `nohyperref` Boolean (default `true`). Load the `hyperref` package and make index references to code lines, pages, and other items clickable links. `nohyperref` is the complementary key.

`multicol`, `nomulticol` Boolean (default `true`). Load the `multicol` package for use in typesetting the index and the list of changes. `nomulticol` is the complementary key.

`debugshow` Boolean (default `false`). Provide various tracing information at the terminal and in the transcript file. In particular, this shows which elements are indexed.

`noindex` Boolean (default `false`). If set, all automatic indexing is suppressed. This option can also be used on individual elements.

`noprint` Boolean (default `false`). If set, then printing of element names in the margin is suppressed. This option can also be used on individual elements as described below.

`reportchANGEDates` Boolean (default `false`). If set, the changes in the change log are listed with headings of the form “*<version> – <date>*” instead of just displaying the version.

Instead of providing options to the `doc` package you can call `\SetupDoc{key/value list}` in the *<preamble>* and provide them there. This allows, for example, changing default values in case `doc` was already loaded earlier.

17.1.5 Conditional code in the source

The features discussed so far can be used to produce a L^AT_EX source in literate programming style that can be directly used by loading it as a package (where T_EX bypasses the comments) or printed by processing it with a driver file as explained in the previous section. This requires the structure of such a file to be linear; in other words, L^AT_EX sees *all* extracted code exactly in the order in which it is present in the file.

Experiences with the `doc` system soon suggested that it would be a valuable extension to be able to conditionally produce the ready-to-run files — by building them from several source files or extracting them from parts of one or more source files, for example. For this reason, the `doc` system was extended in two directions:

- A syntax was developed to label parts of the code so that the components could be referred to separately.
- The `DOCSTRIP` program (see Section 17.2), which was originally used only to strip the comments from `doc` files, was extended to offer a scripting language in which it became possible to specify how a ready-to-run file is generated from labeled code parts of one or more source files.

Of course, a source file containing such conditional code can usually no longer be used directly and requires the `DOCSTRIP` program before it can be turned into a ready-to-run file. However, the additional possibilities offered by this approach outweigh the inconvenience of an extra production step during installation so much that nearly all usages of `doc` now take advantage of it.

Code fragments for conditional inclusion are marked in the source file with “tags”. The simplest format is a `<*name>` and `</name>` pair surrounding some part of the code. This enables us to include or exclude that part by referring to its *name* in a DOCSTRIP script. The tags must be placed at the beginning of the line preceded by a `%`. For example:

```
%<*style>
    some lines of code
%</style>
```

It is possible to attach more than one tag to a part by combining several *names* with the Boolean operators `|` for logical “or”, `&` for logical “and”, and `!` for negation (using lazy evaluation from the left). For example,

```
%<*Aname|Bname&!Cname>
    some lines of code
%</Aname|Bname&!Cname>
```

means that this block should be included when either *Aname* is asked for or *Bname* is requested but *Cname* is not.

There are two other forms of directives for including or excluding single lines of code. A line starting with `%<+name>` or just `%<name>` is included (without its tag) if *name* is requested. A line starting with `%<-name>` is included if *name* is *not* requested in a DOCSTRIP run.

The above directives can be nested in each other. If this is done, the inner tags are evaluated only if the outer tags are true (i.e., if the whole block is requested for inclusion).

```
%<*Aname>
    code line 1
%<+Bname> code line 2
%<-Bname> code line 3
    code line 4
%</Aname>
```

Here nothing is included if *Aname* is not requested. If it is requested, we get code lines 1, 2, and 4 if *Bname* is also asked for, and lines 1, 3, and 4 otherwise.

You may have wondered how the conditional coding allows us to include the driver in the main source file. For this you have to place the code for the driver as the first code block and surround it by some tag (e.g., *driver*). If the user now runs the source file through L^AT_EX, the driver code is the first code that is not behind `%` signs, so it is executed. Because it ends in `\end{document}`, the L^AT_EX run will not execute any later code in the file. Thus, the documentation is typeset assuming that the driver loads the whole file using `\DocInput`. To generate the actual package file(s), you use a DOCSTRIP script (see Section 17.2 on page 599) that ignores the driver code by not requesting code from a block tagged *driver*.

17.1.6 Providing additional documentation elements

Out of the box the `doc` package offers the above commands and environments to document macros and environments. With version 3 this has now been extended in a generic fashion so that you can easily provide your own items, such as counters, length register, options, etc.

`\NewDocElement [key/value list] {name}{env}`

By convention the *name* has the first letter uppercased as in `Env` or `Macro`. Such a declaration will define for you a few commands and one environment:

- The command `\Describe{name}` with the same syntax as `\DescribeMacro` and `\DescribeEnv`.
- The environment `env`, which has the same syntax as `macro` or `environment`.
- The display command `\PrintDescribe{name}`, which has the same syntax as `\PrintDescribeMacro` or `\PrintDescribeEnv`.
- The `\Print{name}Name` display command that is used by the environment when displaying the element name in the margin, i.e., like `\PrintMacroName` or `\PrintEnvName`.

If any of the commands or the environment is already defined (which especially with a badly chosen *env* is a danger), then you receive an error telling you so.

If you want to modify an existing `doc` element, use `\RenewDocElement` instead. For example, the already provided “`Env`” `doc` element could have been defined simply by making the declaration `\NewDocElement{Env}{environment}` though that’s not quite what has been done, as we see later.

The optional *key/value list* defines further details on how that `doc` element should behave. The following keys are supported:

<code>macrolike</code>	Boolean (default <code>false</code>). Does this <code>doc</code> element start with a backslash?
<code>envlike</code>	Boolean. Complementary key to <code>macrolike</code> .
<code>toplevel</code>	Boolean (default <code>true</code>). Should a top-level index entry be made? If set to <code>false</code> , then either no index entries are produced or only grouped index entries are generated (see <code>idxgroup</code> for details).
<code>notoplevel</code>	Boolean. Complementary option to <code>toplevel</code> .
<code>idxtype</code>	String (default <code>env</code>). What to put (in parentheses if nonempty) at the end of a top-level index entry.
<code>printtype</code>	String (default <code>env</code>). What to put (in parentheses if nonempty) after an element name in the margin.
<code>idxgroup</code>	String (default <code>envs</code>). Name of the top-level index entry if entries are grouped. They are grouped only if this option is nonempty.

<code>noindex</code>	Boolean (default <code>false</code>). If set, this suppresses indexing for elements of this type. This setting overwrites any global setting of <code>noindex</code> .
<code>noprint</code>	Boolean (default <code>false</code>). If set, this suppresses printing the element name in the margin. This setting overwrites any global setting of <code>noprint</code> .

As usual, using a Boolean key without a value sets it to `true`.

In the syntax of `\NewDocElement` the two elements `Macro` and `Env`, provided by `doc` out of the box, are defined as follows:

```
\NewDocElement[macrolike, idxtype=, idxgroup=, printtype=]
    {Macro}{macro}
\NewDocElement[envlike, idxtype=env., idxgroup=environments,
    printtype=\textit{env.}] {Env}{environment}
```

This means that index entries for environments show the string “`env.`” after the name in the index, and they appear both on the top level as well as grouped under the heading “environments”. If typeset in the margin, they show “*env.*” after the environment name. If you prefer a different convention, use `\RenewDocElement` on these two elements.

For example, to set up a more structured index, all that you have to do is to define a few more doc elements and use them when documenting your code. For example, by using `notoplevel` and defining appropriate types to distinguish things like lengths, counters, public interface commands, etc., you can always group the commands by type, which might help your readers to find information easier.

```
\NewDocElement[macrolike, notoplevel, idxtype=, printtype=,
    idxgroup=Package interfaces] {Interface}{interface}
\NewDocElement[macrolike, notoplevel, idxtype=skip,
    idxgroup=LaTeX length\actualchar \LaTeX\ length (skip),
    printtype=\textit{skip}] {LaTeXSkip}{lskip}
\NewDocElement ...
```

Then use those doc elements instead or in addition to the commands and environments already offered by `doc` whenever appropriate. The package documentation of `doc` is an example of how this could look.

17.1.7 Producing the actual index entries

Several of the aforementioned macros produce one or more index entry. These entries have to be sorted by an external program — the current implementation assumes that the `MakeIndex` (or `upmendex`) program is used; see Chapter 14.

This is not built in: one has to redefine only some of the following commands to be able to use any other index program. All macros that are installation dependent are defined in such a way that they do not overwrite a previous definition. Therefore,

it is safe to put the changed versions in a package file that might be read in before the doc package.

To allow the user to change the specific characters recognized by the index program, all characters that have special meaning in the *MakeIndex* program are given symbolic names.

The `\actualchar` is used to separate the “sort key” from the actual index entry. The `\quotechar` has to be used before a special index program character to suppress its special meaning. The `\encapchar` separates the indexing information from a letter string, which *MakeIndex* turns into a T_EX command to format the page number associated with a special entry. It is used in this package to apply the `\main` and the `\usage` commands. Additionally, `\levelchar` is used to separate “item”, “subitem”, and “subsubitem” entries.

It is a good idea to stick to these symbolic names even if you know which index program is used. In this way your files remain portable. For example, you could make a manual index entry like this:

```
\newcommand\ltxconcept[1]{\index{LaTeX concepts\actualchar LaTeX\
                             concepts\levelchar #1\encapchar main}}
\ltxconcept{level character ‘\quotechar\levelchar’ in index}
```

With the default settings of doc this would produce the following line in the .idx file:

```
\indexentry{LaTeX concepts=LaTeX \ concepts>level character ‘!>’
              in index|main}{1}
```

i.e., the various commands got replaced by the appropriate characters. Note that this works only because we have used `\index` inside a command definition: if `\index` is used directly in the document, the argument is written fully verbatim, which is not what is wanted here.

The page or code line numbers for main index entries are encapsulated by the `\main` macro (underlining its argument), and the numbers denoting the description are encapsulated by the `\usage` macro (which by default produces *italics*). Finally, `\code` encapsulates page or code line numbers in entries generated by parsing the code inside macrocode environments. As usual these commands are user definable.

As an example we modify the index output to better indicate that some numbers mean line numbers by prefixing them with the letter *ℓ*:

```
\CodelineIndex
\renewcommand\code[1]{\mbox{$\ell$-#1}}
\renewcommand\main[1]{\underline{\mbox{$\ell$-#1}}}
```

17.1.8 Overview about all doc commands

We conclude this section with a few tables that briefly list all interfaces provided by the doc package, including some that we have not talked about before, e.g., parameters for altering the layout. If you need more information on any of them, take a look at the package documentation where all of them are discussed in further detail.

<code>\AlsoImplementation</code>	Typeset the complete file marked up according to doc conventions, including code part (default).
<code>\CheckModules</code>	Format module directives of DOCSTRIP specially (default).
<code>\CodelineIndex</code>	Index commands using code line numbers.
<code>\CodelineNumbered</code>	Number code lines but do not index commands.
<code>\DisableCrossrefs</code>	Do not produce index entries for commands within the code.
<code>\DocInput{file}</code>	Read in <i>file</i> assuming doc conventions.
<code>\DontCheckModules</code>	Do not format module directives of DOCSTRIP specially.
<code>\EnableCrossrefs</code>	Produce index entries for commands within the code.
<code>\IndexInput{file}</code>	Read in <i>file</i> , print it verbatim, and produce a command cross-reference index.
<code>\NewDocElement</code> <code>[key/values]{XX}{env}</code>	Declare a new doc element of type <i>XX</i> with the characteristics <i>key/values</i> using the environment <i>env</i> .
<code>\OnlyDescription</code>	Do not format code; stop at <code>\MaybeStop</code> .
<code>\PageIndex</code>	Index commands using page numbers.
<code>\PrintChanges</code>	Print the history listing here.
<code>\PrintIndex</code>	Print the index listing here.
<code>\RecordChanges</code>	Produce a history listing.
<code>\RenewDocElement</code> <code>[key/values]{XX}{env}</code>	Redeclare an existing doc element of type <i>XX</i> with the characteristics <i>key/values</i> using the environment <i>env</i> .

Table 17.1: doc — *Preamble and input commands*

<code>\bslash</code>	Print a backslash (<code>\</code>). Only useful in typewriter fonts!
<code>\cs{cmd}</code>	Print the argument as a command by using a typewriter font and prefixing it with a backslash.
<code>\DeleteShortVerb{c}</code>	Undo use of <code>\MakeShortVerb</code> or <code>\MakeShortVerb*</code> for character <i>c</i> .
<code>\DescribeEnv{env₁,...}</code>	Flag point in text where environment(s) <i>env₁</i> to <i>env_n</i> are described.
<code>\DescribeMacro{cmd₁,...}</code>	Flag point in text where the command(s) are described.
<code>\Describe{XX}{entry₁,...}</code>	Generalization of the above declared through <code>\NewDocElement</code> .
<code>\begin{environment}</code> <code>{env₁,...}</code>	Environment surrounding the definition of the environment(s) <i>env₁</i> to <i>env_n</i> .
<code>\Finale</code>	Command executed at very end of document (see also <code>\MaybeStop</code>).
<code>\begin{macro}{cmd₁,...}</code>	Environment surrounding the definition of the command(s) listed in the argument.
<code>\begin{macrocode}</code>	Environment surrounding the T _E X code.
<code>\begin{macrocode*}</code>	Same as the <code>macrocode</code> environment, but spaces are printed as <code>\code</code> characters.
<code>\MakeShortVerb{c}</code>	Define abbreviation character <i>c</i> for <code>\verb</code> .
<code>\MakeShortVerb*{c}</code>	Define abbreviation character <i>c</i> for <code>\verb*</code> .
<code>\MaybeStop{cmds}</code>	In the argument <i>cmds</i> , specify the commands that should be executed at the end of the document (they are stored in <code>\Finale</code>).
<code>\meta{arg}</code>	Print the argument as a meta sentence (default <code><arg></code>).
<code>\SpecialEscapechar{c}</code>	Specify new single escape character <i>c</i> to be used instead of the default backslash character to identify the start of a command in code of the next <code>macrocode</code> or <code>macrocode*</code> environment.
<code>\begin{verbatim}</code>	Slightly altered version of L ^A T _E X's standard <code>verbatim</code> environment to surround verbatim text ignoring percent characters in column 1.
<code>\begin{verbatim*}</code>	Same as the <code>verbatim</code> environment, but spaces are printed as <code>\code</code> characters.

Table 17.2: doc — Document structure commands

<code>*</code>	Symbol used in index entries to refer to a higher-level entry (default ~).
<code>\actualchar</code>	Character used to separate “key” and actual index in an index entry (default =).
<code>\DoNotIndex{cmd₁,...}</code>	Names of commands that should not show up in the index. This can be used several times.
<code>\code{number}</code>	The formatting style for code line or page numbers of index entries generated while parsing the code lines in <code>macrocode</code> environments. By default the <i>number</i> is used unchanged without special formatting.
<code>\encapchar</code>	Character used to separate the actual index and the command to format the page number in an index entry (default |).
<code>\IndexMin</code>	Length parameter (default 80pt) defining the minimal amount of space that should be left on a page to start an index.
<code>\IndexParms</code>	Macro controlling the formatting of the index columns.
<code>\IndexPrologue{text}</code>	Specify (overwrite) the text placed on top of the index.
<code>\levelchar</code>	Character used to separate different index levels in an index entry (default >).
<code>\main{number}</code>	The formatting style for page numbers or code line numbers of index entries for major references (default underlined digits).
<code>\quotechar</code>	Character used to suppress the special meaning of the following character in an index entry (default !).
<code>\SortIndex{key}{entry}</code>	Produce an index entry for <i>entry</i> , sorting it by <i>key</i> .
<code>\Special<XX>Index{entry}</code>	Produce a usage index entry for <i>entry</i> , which is a doc element of type <XX> (i.e., Macro or Env by default or one defined by <code>\NewDocElement</code>) using a <code>\usage</code> page encapsulator.
<code>\SpecialMain<XX>Index{entry}</code>	Produce a main index entry for <i>entry</i> , which is a doc element of type <XX> (<code>\main</code> page encapsulator).
<code>\SpecialIndex{cmd}</code>	Produce a command index (printing the argument verbatim in the index). If the command is of a special type for which there is a doc element declared, it is automatically recognized.
<code>\SpecialShortIndex{c}</code>	Produce a command index for a single character command <code>\c</code> . Some of them do not sort correctly if <code>\SpecialIndex</code> would be used, e.g., <code>\{</code> ; therefore, doc uses a special (slow) command for them.
<code>\usage{number}</code>	The formatting style for page numbers of index entries for usage descriptions (default italic digits).
<code>\verbatimchar</code>	Character used to delimit <code>\verb</code> constructs within an index entry (default +).

Table 17.3: doc — Index commands

<code>\changes{version}{date}{reason}</code>	Record <i>reason</i> for <i>version</i> written on <i>date</i> as history information for use in a history listing. Use YYYY/MM/DD or YYYY-MM-DD for <i>date</i> .
<code>\GlossaryMin</code>	Length parameter (default 80pt) defining the minimal amount of space that should be left on a page to start the change history.
<code>\GlossaryParms</code>	Macro controlling the formatting of the change history columns.
<code>\GlossaryPrologue{text}</code>	Replace (overwrite) the default text placed on top of the history listing.

Table 17.4: doc — History information

<code>\@idxitem</code>	Macro specifying how index items should be typeset (by default, they are set as a paragraph with a hanging indentation of 30pt for items requiring more than one line).
<code>\AltMacroFont</code>	Font used to typeset DOCSTRIP module code (default <code>\small\ttfamily\slshape</code>).
<code>\DocstyleParms</code>	Macro controlling the formatting of the T _E X code.
<code>\generalname</code>	String placed before change entries on the top level.
<code>\MacrocodeTopsep</code>	Vertical space above and below each macrocode environment.
<code>\MacroFont</code>	Font used to typeset the main part of the code (default <code>\small\ttfamily</code>).
<code>\MacroIndent</code>	Width of the indentation for every code line.
<code>\MacroTopsep</code>	Vertical space above and below each macro environment.
<code>\MakePercentComment</code>	Activate “%” as T _E X’s comment initiator character.
<code>\MakePercentIgnore</code>	Deactivate “%” as T _E X’s comment initiator character.
<code>\MakePrivateLetters</code>	Macro specifying symbols to be considered as letters (default @).
<code>\Module</code>	Macro with one argument defining the formatting of DOCSTRIP module directives.
<code>\PrintDescribe<XX>{entry}</code>	Command with one argument defining the formatting of <code>\Describe<XX></code> .
<code>\Print<XX>Name{entry}</code>	Like <code>\PrintDescribe<XX></code> but for the argument of the environment surrounding the definition.
<code>StandardModuleDepth</code>	Counter holding the highest level of DOCSTRIP directives, which are still formatted using <code>\MacroFont</code> . Deeper-nested directives are formatted using <code>\AltMacroFont</code> .
<code>\theCodelineNo</code>	Control the typesetting of line numbers (default script-size arabic numerals).

Table 17.5: doc — Layout and typesetting parameters

17.1.9 ltxdoc — A simple L^AT_EX documentation class

The `ltxdoc` class was designed for documenting the core L^AT_EX source files, which are used to build the L^AT_EX format and all packages distributed as part of the core distribution. This class is built on the `article` class, loads the `doc` package, but extends it slightly with a few commands that we found helpful for documenting L^AT_EX kernel code. It also includes some layout settings specially tailored to accommodate the typical requirements of a source file in `doc` style (e.g., a line width to hold 72 characters in typewriter fonts and a wider left margin to allow for long macro names to be placed into it).¹

A special feature is that the class can be used to produce a single document from a larger number of source files in `doc` style. This has the advantage that one can produce a full index of macro usage across all source files. For example, the driver file `source2e.tex` generates the documented source listing of the close to 60 files that make up the L^AT_EX kernel. It generates a document with more than 1200 pages including an index and a change history (reaching back to the early 1990s).

¹These days we often use `l3doc` for L^AT_EX Project documentation. However, this class is far from being finalized, and there are plans to alter it drastically — we therefore do not recommend using it, unless you are prepared to update your sources when it changes!

Extensions provided by ltxdoc

As extensions, the class offers a small set of commands to describe L^AT_EX commands and their arguments. These commands really should have been in the doc package, but due to some historical accident have never been added there.

```
\cmd{\name} |...| \marg{arg} \oarg{arg} \parg{arg}
```

The command `\cmd` prints a command *name* in typewriter font; for example, writing `\cmd{\foo}` typesets `\foo`. In contrast to `\verb+\foo+` (which is otherwise similar), it can be used anywhere — even in the arguments of other commands. The command `\cs`, which is already part of the doc package, offers the same functionality for those who prefer the syntax without the backslash. In fact, it is slightly more powerful because it can also typeset commands that are made `\outer` — a plain T_EX concept normally not used in L^AT_EX. Furthermore, ltxdoc makes “|” an abbreviation for `\verb` so that you can type `|\foo|` in the documentation. If this is not desired for some reason, you have to cancel it in the source (after `\begin{document}`) via `\DeleteShortVerb{|}`.

The commands `\marg`, `\oarg`, and `\parg` produce the L^AT_EX syntax for mandatory, optional, and picture arguments, respectively. Thus, writing

```
\cs{makebox}\parg{x-dimen,y-dimen}\oarg{pos}\marg{text}
```

produces the (probably less-known) syntax diagram for `\makebox` in picture environments: `\makebox(<x-dimen,y-dimen>)[<pos>]{<text>}`.

```
\DocInclude{file}
```

The `\DocInclude` command is similar to `\include` except that it uses `\DocInput` on *file* (with the implicit extension `.dtx` or `.fdd`) instead of using `\input` on a *file* (with the implicit extension `.tex`). This command is used in `source2e.tex` to “include” all `.dtx` files that form the L^AT_EX kernel.

Customizing the output of documents that use ltxdoc

To customize documents using the ltxdoc class you can create a configuration file (`ltxdoc.cfg`). This configuration file is read whenever the ltxdoc class is used, so it can be used to customize the typesetting of all the source files, without having to edit lots of small driver files, which would be the manual alternative.

If `ltxdoc.cfg` is installed in a directory always searched by L^AT_EX, it is applied to all documentation files using the ltxdoc class. If it is placed in the current directory, it applies only to documents processed in this directory.

The simplest form of customization is to pass one or more options to the article class upon which ltxdoc is based. For instance, if you wish all your documentation to be formatted for A4 paper, add the line

```
\PassOptionsToClass{a4paper}{article}
```

to `ltxdoc.cfg` and install it in a place searched by L^AT_EX.

As discussed in Section 17.1.2, the `\MaybeStop` command separates the source files into a “user” documentation and an “implementation” part. To be able to produce only the user manual, the `doc` package provides the command `\OnlyDescription`, which suppresses the implementation part. This command may also be used in the configuration file, but as the `doc` package is loaded after the configuration file is read, you must delay the execution of `\OnlyDescription`. The simplest way is to use `\AtBeginDocument` as follows:

```
\AtBeginDocument{\OnlyDescription}
```

For example, the documented source of the `array` package, the file `array.dtx`, generates 35 pages of documented code listings if you run

```
pdflatex array.dtx
```

without a configuration file. However, most people are not interested in *how* commands are implemented in this package, but rather what interfaces the package provides and how to use them. With the above configuration line the output is reduced to an 8-page user manual, listing only the interfaces together with a few examples.

When the driver `source2e.tex` for the kernel documentation is processed, an index and a change history are produced by default; however, indexes are not normally produced for individual files. If you are really interested in the source listings in detail, you probably want to have an index as well. Again, the index commands provided by the `doc` package may be used, and again their execution must be delayed. Thus, the addition to the configuration file could look as follows:

```
\AtBeginDocument{\AlsoImplementation % force processing everything
                  \CodelineIndex      % select index per code line
                  \EnableCrossrefs }  % enable it
\AtEndDocument{\PrintIndex}
```

Similar lines would be necessary if you want to produce a change history listing. Recall that the `doc` package generates `.idx` and `.glo` files with a special syntax that requires adequate style files for processing with *MakeIndex* (see Section 17.1.3 on page 588).

17.2 docstrip.tex — Producing ready-to-run code

When `doc` was originally written in the late 1980s, the intention was to provide a “literate programming” environment [83] for \LaTeX , in which \LaTeX code and documentation were intermixed in the same source file. As it soon turned out, making \TeX parse (and then ignore) all the documentation when reading a file added a heavy time penalty.¹ To avoid this problem the author looked for ways to automatically strip all comments from files written for the `doc` system.

¹In those days producing a single page with \TeX could easily take half a minute or longer.

The problem with any external program developed for such a purpose is that it may or may not be available for the user's operating system and even if available may not be installed. But one program is always available on a system that can run L^AT_EX: the T_EX program itself. To achieve the widest portability, the DOCSTRIP program was therefore written in low-level T_EX language. Since those early days, the program has undergone many revisions that changed its purpose from being a simple stripping device to serving as a fully customizable installation tool — one that is even able to distribute files to the right directories on a target machine. Johannes Braams, Denys Duchier, Marcin Woliński, Mark Wooding, David Carlisle, and others contributed to this metamorphosis; details of the program's evolution can be found in the documented source (which uses literate programming, of course). Here are today's main applications of the DOCSTRIP program:

- Strip a literate programming source of most of its documentation (i.e., the lines that start with a single % sign in the first column).
- Build ready-to-run code files by using code from one or more source files and including parts of it according to options specified.

It is also possible with DOCSTRIP to automatically install the produced files in the right directories on the target machine if desired, which was initially important for a smooth update process. However, today this is better handled through l3build (see Section 17.3), so this is not covered in the book.

Will Robertson has produced a nice gallery [170] of sample .dtx files that exhibit various techniques using DOCSTRIP. Take a look at this after having read the current section.

17.2.1 Invocation of the docstrip utility

From its first days of existence DOCSTRIP could be run interactively by processing `docstrip.tex` with L^AT_EX:

```
latex docstrip.tex
```

L^AT_EX then asks a few questions about how to process a given file. When the user has answered these questions, DOCSTRIP does its job and strips the comments from the source.

However, this method of processing was intended to do nothing more than stripping off comments. With today's sources, which contain conditional code and are intended to be combined to form the final “executable”, it is usually no longer appropriate. Instead, the developers of packages typically provide an installation file (by convention having the extension `.ins`) that is used to invoke DOCSTRIP behind the scenes. In this case the user simply says

```
latex <name>.ins
```

This results in the generation of all “executables” from the source distribution and

optionally installs them in the right places. All standard \LaTeX distributions (e.g., base, graphics, and tools) are distributed in this form and so are most contributed packages that are described in this book. In the next section we discuss how to construct your own installation scripts for DOCSTRIP.

17.2.2 docstrip script commands

A DOCSTRIP installation script has the following general form:

```
\input docstrip
<other DOCSTRIP commands>
\endbatchfile
```

It starts by loading the DOCSTRIP code using the \TeX primitive `\input` (typically without braces¹ around the file name).

This is followed by the DOCSTRIP commands that actually do the work of building new files, communicating with the user, and carrying out other necessary tasks. At the very end, the script contains `\endbatchfile`. Without that statement, DOCSTRIP would display a `*` prompt while waiting for further input from the user.

Generating new files

The main reason for constructing a DOCSTRIP script is to describe which files should be generated, from which sources, and which optional (tagged) chunks of code should be included. This is done by using `\generate` declarations.

```
\generate{\file{result-file1}{\from{source-file1}{tag-list1}
                                     \from{source-file2}{tag-list2}
                                     ...
                                     \from{source-filen}{tag-listn}}
      ...
      \file{result-filen}{...}
}
```

Within the argument to `\generate` you specify the *result-files* you want to produce by using `\file` declarations. The second argument to `\file` contains one or more `\from` commands listing the *source-files* that should be used to build one *result-file*. With each `\from` declaration the second argument specifies the *tag-list* to use with the particular *source-file*. Then only the code chunks tagged with the appropriate tags and all the untagged source lines from that file are included (see Section 17.1.5 on page 590 for a description how to tag code).

The *source-files* are used in the order specified: first the code from *source-file₁* is included (according to the tag specification), then the code from *source-file₂*, and so on. The *tag-lists* in each `\from` command are comma-separated lists and indicate that code with these tags should be included.

¹ This is actually no longer necessary because nowadays `\input` always accepts a braced argument.

With the syntax specification for `\generate` as given above, you can produce a single *result-file* from one or more *source-files* by using a single `\file` declaration. By repeating this as often as needed, any kind of distribution can be produced. It is, however, not very efficient. Suppose you have one large source file from which you want to produce many small files—for example, suppose the source for the doc package, `doc.dtx`, is used to generate `doc.sty`, `shortvrb.sty`, `gind.ist`, and `gglo.ist`. The file is nearly 5000 lines long, so by using four `\generate` declarations, DOCSTRIP would have to process 20000 lines. To speed up this process, `\generate` allows you to specify several `\file` commands within its argument. These files are processed in parallel, meaning that the *source-files* are opened only once, and distribution of source code to *result-files* is done in parallel.

```
\generate{\file{doc.sty}{\from{doc.dtx}{package}}
          \file{shortvrb.sty}{\from{doc.dtx}{shortvrb}}
          \usepostamble\istpost
          \file{gind.ist}{\from{doc.dtx}{gind}}
          \file{gglo.ist}{\from{doc.dtx}{gglo}}}
```

As you can see, certain other commands (`\usepostamble`, for example) are allowed within the argument of the `\generate` command. In the above example this has the effect of replacing the standard postamble with a different one (because the standard postamble adds an `\endinput` to the end of the generated file, something not desirable in a style file for *MakeIndex*).

*Restrictions on
parallel extraction*

There are some restrictions with this approach. For instance, DOCSTRIP complains if the order of source files in one `\file` command conflicts with the order in a different one; the precise rules are discussed in the DOCSTRIP documentation [142]. If that happens, the simplest solution is to use two separate `\generate` declarations.

Communicating with the user

The DOCSTRIP scripting language offers some limited possibilities for user communication. Keep in mind that interactive questions, though sometimes useful, can make an installation process quite cumbersome, so these tools should be used with care.

```
\Msg{message}      \Ask{cmd}{question}
```

The `\Msg` command can be used to present a *message* on the terminal; thus, it offers a similar functionality as L^AT_EX's `\typeout` command. `\Ask` is similar to L^AT_EX's `\typein` command, with the difference that no trailing space is generated from pressing return in reply to a *question*. This way simple questions can be asked (using a bit of low-level programming). For example:

```
\Ask\answer{Should we continue? (y/n)}
\ifx\answer\y
  % code for ‘y’ as answer
\else
  % otherwise
\fi
```

```
\ifToplevel{code}
```

You may want to give certain information, or run certain code, only if a DOCSTRIP script is executed on its own, but not if it is called as part of a larger installation (see below). Such information or code can be placed in the argument of an `\ifToplevel` command. For example, all the individual installation scripts from the \LaTeX base distribution say what to do with the generated files. However, if you use the main installation script `unpack.ins`, the messages in the subscripts are suppressed to avoid repeating the same information over and over again.

```
\askforoverwrite true   \askforoverwrite false
```

Before DOCSTRIP writes its output to a file, it checks whether that operation would overwrite some existing version of this file. If so, the default behavior is to ask the user if overwriting is acceptable. This check can explicitly be turned off (or on if it was turned off) by using the command `\askforoverwrite false` or `\askforoverwrite true`, respectively, in the DOCSTRIP script.

```
\askonceonly
```

Setting `\askforoverwrite false` in a distribution script may not be the right thing to do, because it essentially means that it is okay to overwrite other people's files, no matter what. However, for large installations, such as the base \LaTeX distribution, being asked individually about hundreds of files is not very helpful either. For this reason DOCSTRIP offers the declaration `\askonceonly`. This means that after the first time the script asks the user a question, the user is given an option to have DOCSTRIP assume that all future questions will get a “yes” as the answer. This applies to *all* future questions (manually produced by `\Ask` or generated through a file overwrite).

```
\showprogress   \keepsilent
```

For amusement and because in the original implementation everything was so slow, there was a way to direct DOCSTRIP to show its progress when stripping comments and building new files. These days most scripts run in silent mode.

Top-level/main installation scripts

In large distributions, such as the \LaTeX base distribution, it is convenient to provide separate DOCSTRIP scripts for processing individual parts. For example, `format.ins` generates the main format file `latex.ltx` and its customization files such as `fonttext.cfg`, and `classes.ins` generates the standard classes, such as the files `article.cls` and `report.cls`.

Nevertheless, you do not want to force the user to process a dozen or more installation scripts (30 in the case of the \LaTeX base distribution). Therefore, DOCSTRIP offers the command `\batchinput`, which enables you to include installation scripts in some top-level installation script. Do not use `\input` for this purpose, because this

command is exclusively reserved for loading the DOCSTRIP code once, as explained above, and is ignored otherwise. Except for the fact that it contains some special handcrafted code at the beginning so that it can be processed using `initex`, the file `unpack.ins` from the base L^AT_EX distribution is a good example for such a main installation script.

Setting up preambles and postambles

As mentioned earlier, DOCSTRIP not only writes selected lines of code to the output files but also precedes them with a *preamble* and finishes each file with a *postamble*. There are default texts for both operations, but usually a DOCSTRIP script explicitly defines what should be used in these places, such as a copyright notice or your standard disclaimer (see also [109]).

<pre>\preamble <text lines> \endpreamble \postamble <text lines> \endpostamble</pre>

The information that you want to add to the start of DOCSTRIP's output file should be listed between the `\preamble` and `\endpreamble` commands. Lines that you want to add at the end should be listed between the `\postamble` and `\endpostamble` commands. Everything that DOCSTRIP finds for both the preamble and postamble is written to the output file, but preceded with two % characters (or, more exactly, with the current definition of the command `\MetaPrefix`). In general, only straight text should be used, and literal command names should be of the form `\string\foo`. In addition to the user preamble, DOCSTRIP also includes some information about the current file (i.e., its name and the sources from which it was generated). This information is always added unless you use `\nopreamble` (see below) or you sidestep the standard preamble generation (explained in the DOCSTRIP package documentation [142]).

It is also possible to define a number of “named” preambles or postambles and later refer to them when generating files. In fact, this is the usual way to produce the preambles in larger projects.

<pre>\declarepreamble\cmd <text> \endpreamble \usepreamble\cmd \declarepostamble\cmd <text> \endpostamble \usepostamble\cmd</pre>

The `\declarepreamble` declaration works like `\preamble` except that it stores the preamble text for later use in `\cmd`. To activate such a preamble, `\usepreamble` is called in a DOCSTRIP script. For postambles, the declarations `\declarepostamble` and `\usepostamble` are provided. Examples of them can be found in all DOCSTRIP installation scripts in the distributions of the standard L^AT_EX components.

<pre>\nopreamble \nopostamble</pre>
--

To fully suppress the writing of a preamble or a postamble, you can use the declarations `\nopreamble` and `\nopostamble`, respectively.

17.2.3 Using docstrip with L3 programming layer code

The L3 programming layer has a few special conventions. For example, it has the concept of private commands indicated by starting a command name with two underscores, e.g., `__para_handle_indent:.` Such commands are not supposed to be used outside of the package or the \LaTeX kernel. The same concept exists for variables, except that they start with `\l__` or `\g__`, for example, `\g__para_std_everypar_tl`. To ease code development and maintenance you can put a `doc` directive into your source, such as

```
%<@@=para>
```

after which you can write `\@@_handle_indent:` or `\g_@@_std_everypar_tl`. The `@@` is then automatically replaced with the right numbers of underscores and the module name (in this case `para`), when the source is stripped with `DOCSTRIP`. The same happens if you generate the source code documentation using the `l3doc` class, but if the source is processed with the standard `doc`, the `@@` are left unchanged in the source, because `doc` was developed for $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ code that uses `@` in other ways.

You end the private module handling with the line `%<@@=>`. If your code uses commands that have two consecutive `@` signs in their name, e.g., `\@@par`, you need to enter such names using `@@@` while private module handling is in force.

17.2.4 Using docstrip with other languages

With some restrictions it is possible to use the `DOCSTRIP` mechanism to distribute and generate files not intended for a \TeX installation. What you have to bear in mind is that `DOCSTRIP` operates on a line-by-line basis when reading source files. As a result, doing something like unpacking binary files with it is bound to produce unusable files.

Furthermore, the use of preambles and postambles is likely to conflict with the syntax requirements of the language for which the file is intended. For example, generating a shell script with a number of lines starting with `%%` is probably not a good idea. This problem can be circumvented by changing the `\MetaPrefix` (which by default produces `\DoubleperCent`). For a shell script, where you probably want a `#` sign as the comment character, this modification can be a little tricky, because \TeX regards the `#` as special. Use

```
\renewcommand\MetaPrefix{\string##}
```

to produce a single hash sign as a `\MetaPrefix`. To return to the default setting, use the following definition:

```
\renewcommand\MetaPrefix{\DoubleperCent}
```

Another potential problem to watch out for is `DOCSTRIP`'s standard behavior of stripping away all lines starting with a single percent sign. If your code contains such

*Changing the
comment character*

Verbatim copying

lines, you may want to retain them. This can be achieved by surrounding that block with two special lines as follows:

```
%<<tag-name
  <code lines to be copied verbatim>
%tag-name
```

You can use any *tag-name*. The important point is that this “verbatim” block ends when DOCSTRIP encounters a single line just containing a percent sign followed by *tag-name*. The other important point to note is that the *tag-name* is not used for conditional exclusion or inclusion but only for specifying the block to be copied verbatim. If such a block should be written only in some circumstances, as controlled through the second argument of `\from`, you have to additionally surround it by a set of conditional tags (see Section 17.1.5).

17.3 l3build — A versatile development environment

Making a package available to the L^AT_EX user community requires several steps: we call those *releasing* the package. Most obviously, almost all packages have PDF (Portable Document Format) documentation that needs to be compiled, including, for example, creating an index of commands. This will often be coupled with extracting code using DOCSTRIP, and to send to CTAN, creating a `.zip` file (see below). It is of course possible to do all of this by hand, but that tends to be error prone. To make this entire process more fluid, the L^AT_EX Project Team has developed l3build as a flexible tool to support development work.

The l3build program is a Lua script designed to support a range of workflows using a set of simple settings as far as possible. As such, it is quite usable without being familiar with Lua.¹

l3build can carry out unpacking, typesetting, packaging, and uploading for release. It also features a sophisticated ability to carry out tests to probe the functionality of L^AT_EX code: this is an important concept and is covered in more detail in Section 17.3.2.

Because l3build is used to release all of the code authored by the L^AT_EX Project Team, including L^AT_EX itself, it has some advanced options for handling bundles of packages, nonstandard file locations, etc. In this book, the focus is on the more common situation of a single package made up of a small number of source files in one directory. This covers the needs of most package authors, but if you have more complex requirements, they are most likely covered by the more than 100 keys that can be set or altered in a configuration file; for this, take a look at the documentation [147].

l3build uses a dedicated directory (by default called `build`) that it creates inside the main directory holding your sources. This means that it can reliably copy *just* the files you specify into its working area, and that if you need to, you can delete all

¹l3build uses Lua because this is an integral part of LuaT_EX and therefore available on any system that has a modern T_EX system. This means that Lua is widely used in the T_EX ecosystem for scripting.

of the temporary material created in one go. This is also useful if you use a version control system for your package development (see Section 17.4 on page 615): there is just one location to tell it to ignore.

17.3.1 The basic interface

l3build is available in modern T_EX systems as a script that can be run directly at the command line/terminal. The script understands a range of *targets*, for example `doc` (for typesetting package documentation). Some targets take further arguments specifying one or more names to process. There are also a number of options, with which you can tune the target behavior. For example, to run two tests, called `mypkg001` and `mypkg002`, using the pdfT_EX engine, the appropriate call is

```
l3build check --engine pdftex mypkg001 mypkg002
```

or shorter

```
l3build check -e pdftex mypkg001 mypkg002
```

All of the switches have a “long” name: some also have a “short” one for convenience.

Control of l3build is achieved by creating a file called `build.lua` in the main development directory for a package. In most cases, this will be the directory containing all your package sources, but complicated projects may structure the source files differently. Taking the very common case of a single `.dtx` file with a matching `.ins` file, all that is necessary is to inform l3build of the name to use.¹ The minimal contents of the `build.lua` file for a package `mypkg` would therefore be

Setting up a simple package

```
-- Build script for "mypkg" files

module = "mypkg"      -- Identify the package
```

Because the control file is written in Lua, line comments start with `--`, not `%`.

The standard settings in l3build specify that all of the `.dtx` files in the directory are taken as source files and that each `.ins` file is passed to DOCSTRIP for unpacking. Thus, with this minimal setup, you can already use various l3build commands.

l3build install Unpacks the code and installs it into the local T_EX tree, typically `~/texmf` on Linux, `~/Library/texmf` on macOS, or `%USERPROFILE/texmf` on Windows.

l3build uninstall Removes any code installed in the location that would be used by `l3build install`.

l3build check Runs all of the tests you have created for the package: this process is described in more detail in Section 17.3.2. Individual tests can be run as we have already seen by adding their names after the `check` target keyword.

¹l3build uses the name `module`: this aligns with the way that for example Lua refers to loadable files providing additional functionality.

l3build doc Typesets the documentation, which will be carried out by running a cycle of pdfT_EX and *MakeIndex* runs for each file marked as a documentation target (by default all .dtx files, but see page 614). If you want to compile a single PDF, you can give its name (without the extension) after the doc target keyword.

l3build install --full Combines l3build doc with l3build install, meaning that the PDF documentation is installed along with the code.

l3build ctan Runs any tests available (see Section 17.3.2), then runs l3build doc, and finally builds a .zip file containing the PDFs, the .dtx and .ins files, and any .md or .txt file, suitable for upload to CTAN (see Section 17.3.3 on page 611). If any of the steps fail, the target stops: in particular, this prevents a release if there are any failing tests.

17.3.2 Creating tests

For larger projects, most notably the L^AT_EX kernel, a comprehensive test suite is essential in reducing the likelihood of problems for users. However, even for smaller packages tests are useful in helping to spot problematic changes, and we therefore encourage everyone to use them for every project. Testing is an integral part of l3build and can be carried out in a number of ways.¹

How tests work

Testing using l3build works using the .log file²: T_EX can be asked to write a wide range of information to file. However, T_EX also writes a large amount of other material, for example, file paths, details of the engine, the output of third-part packages, etc. The approach used by l3build is therefore to manipulate the raw .log file to produce a normalized file, which should be identical between different computers and which avoids as far as possible differences between T_EX engines (pdfT_EX, X_YT_EX, LuaT_EX, etc.). For example, dates and version numbers or low-level register numbers are masked out and spaces are normalized to avoid unnecessary failures between runs and between different engines that are unfortunately writing to the .log in slightly different ways.

For this process to produce *useful* tests, it is important that the author writes the useful information to the .log. Using `\tracingall` produces a lot of output but is almost always the wrong choice. The trace will always show differences whenever a code change is made, but that does not reflect at all whether the *results* are changed. For example, reworking an internal macro to be more efficient will normally not change the result, but alters the trace. Instead, you should be selective in what you write, for example the typeset result of a specific command, or the numerical value of a calculation, etc.

¹The core of l3build is based on previous more focused test systems used by the L^AT_EX Project Team: l3build not only makes this functionality into a documented product but also provides the wider building environment that allows almost full automation.

²Testing using other files is possible, most notably using a specially modified PDF file to assess final output. However, this is a much more specialized approach, so the focus here is on the standard method.

A good practice is to write a test file for every bug report you receive and have fixed to ensure that the problem does not reappear through later modifications.¹

Test setup

To create a set of tests for use with l3build, a directory called `testfiles` should be created inside the main directory. Inside the `testfiles` directory, one or more test sources are required: these have the extension `.lvt`. These are specially crafted \LaTeX files that load the file `regression-test.tex`, which provides a small number of testing commands: these all have all-caps names.

To allow loading packages, etc., without this affecting the tests, l3build ignores anything before the command `\START`. You can also skip material using an `\OMIT ... \TIMO` block. The tests (and indeed the \LaTeX run) can be ended using `\END` or the standard `\end{document}` command: the `\END` command attempts to stop immediately and does not produce the last page of output (which is fine if you are interested only in the content of the `.log`). Because it reduces the work \TeX does, `\END` is faster than `\end{document}`. It should be preferred where possible, especially if you expect to have a large suite of tests to be executed regularly.

Constructing tests

There are two main ways to write information to the `.log` so that the results can be checked by l3build. The first is to actively write results using the command `\TYPE` (this is a specially modified version of `\typeout`). To make it easier to follow the results, tests are normally divided up into one or more `\TEST` blocks. Thus, a simple test file might read

```
\input{regression-test}
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{mypkg} % The package to test
\START
\TEST{A first test}{%
  \mypkfunctionA{input-tokens}\outputmacro
  \TYPE{\outputmacro}
}
\TEST{A second test}{%
  \mypkfunctionB{input-tokens}{more-input-tokens}\outputmacro
  \TYPE{\outputmacro}
}
\END
```

This approach is particularly useful for code, which produces values that are stored in commands, counters, etc.: they can be written to the `.log` directly. Usefully, the `\TEST` command places the test code argument in a group: this means that local changes do not affect subsequent tests.

¹It is surprising how many “harmless” changes that “surely can do no harm” have triggered test failures and in this way have saved the \LaTeX Project Team from releasing faulty code.

The second approach, useful for typesetting commands, is to use T_EX’s ability to record the contents of a box or of the whole output page. The latter is particularly convenient, because it can simply be switched on with `\showoutput`, and multiple tests then appear in the output.

```
\input{regression-test}
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{mypkg}           % The package to test
\showoutput                  % show symbolic page output in the .log
\begin{document}
\START
\mypkfunctionA{input-tokens} % Assume this produces typeset output

\mypkfunctionB{input-tokens}{more-input-tokens}
\newpage
\OMIT
\end{document}
```

As illustrated, this type of test needs `\end{document}` to be present in the source, and it is usually best to force a new page and then tell l3build to ignore the remainder of the `.log` using `\OMIT`. Given that the output here is given by T_EX in one block, it is usually not beneficial to use the `\TEST` command.

Unfortunately, the result from `\showoutput` can differ in different engines. While pdfT_EX and X_YT_EX usually (but not always) show the same symbolic output, LuaT_EX often has subtle differences, e.g., a space between the command `\kern` and its value in some places but not in others. If you test with different engines,¹ this means that you may have to store engine-specific results and verify them individually, as explained below.



The machinery for this is available, but the danger is that one overlooks a real bug among the “expected” differences and certifies an incorrect result as the expected output — it happened to us more than once, so be careful.

Certifying and saving tests

To save a test, the l3build command is simple:

```
l3build save <test file without extension>
```

This creates a single `.tlg` file containing the normalized results: as far as possible, system- and engine-dependent information is removed from the raw `.log`.

l3build itself of course does not have any insight into whether a `.tlg` file is showing the *correct* results, only that it is what has been produced from a L^AT_EX run. You should therefore check new `.tlg` files, along perhaps with the typeset output, when you create them. Once saved, the automated system is then able to highlight

¹The regression test suite with about 1000 tests is executed with pdfT_EX, X_YT_EX, and LuaT_EX and needs nearly 20 minutes to verify that everything is fine before we upload a new release.

changes, which may of course be deliberate because you altered the code: only the package author can check that! If a test shows differences and you verified them as being correct, you need to regenerate the `.tlg` file to get a new certified reference result — otherwise you must check what is wrong with the package.

With the standard settings, l3build runs each test using pdfTeX, XeTeX, and LuaTeX. You may need to save separate engine-specific `.tlg` files, particularly if you are testing using the typeset output. This is achieved using the `-e` or `--engine` switch, which takes a comma-separated list of engine names.

```
l3build save -e xetex,luatex <test file without extension>
```

When an engine-specific `.tlg` file is available, this is used by l3build in preference to the engine-independent reference file. You can adjust the engines that are used by setting the `checkengines` table, for example to use just pdfTeX and LuaTeX add the following to `build.lua`:

```
checkengines = {"pdftex", "luatex"}
```

The first entry is used as the *standard engine*: the one that is used if you do not give the `-e` option to the `save` target.

Testing package loading

One area that is usually best covered by a stand-alone test file is package loading. This is a good way to pick up any errors within the code that show up only when the package is first read by L^AT_EX. A simple test such as the one below does that:

```
\input{regression-test}  
\documentclass{article}  
\START \usepackage{mypkg} \END
```

If your package takes options, you may want several such tests with different combinations of them. The reason why these are best handled separately from other tests is that package loading is more likely to show spurious differences in the `.tlg` files, because your package might load other packages that output irrelevant data, which you cannot suppress.

For the same reason it is normally best to use `\START` only after the preamble has ended or, if that is not possible because you want tests in the preamble, to surround `\begin{document}` with `\OMIT` and `\TIMO`.

17.3.3 Releasing to CTAN

CTAN, the Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network, is the major distribution center for L^AT_EX packages. This means that releasing a L^AT_EX package to the wider L^AT_EX community actually means submitting it to CTAN; see Appendix C.4.1 on page 789.

CTAN holds a range of both L^AT_EX packages and support tools. The archive is not prescriptive about, for example, overlap of package functions or the way material

is coded: anyone who feels that their code should be available on CTAN can upload. However, the CTAN team members ask for certain conditions to be met by the files uploaded, in particular

- that there is at least one PDF file containing documentation;
- that there is a README (plain text) or README.md (Markdown) file;
- that *derived* files (other than PDF documentation) are not uploaded: this means if a package uses a .dtx, the .sty, or other generated files, are not sent to CTAN;
- and that the uploaded files are present in a single archive: .zip or .tar.gz.

The `l3build ctan` target automatically arranges that the appropriate files are present in a .zip file that can be uploaded. This can be used with the web submission form (<https://ctan.org/upload>). Optionally, `l3build` can send the zip file directly to CTAN, avoiding the need to visit the website. To do this, `l3build` needs to know the values for various CTAN data fields. For example, for `l3build` itself, the relevant configuration is:

```
uploadconfig = {
  author      = "The LaTeX Team",
  license     = "lppl1.3c",
  summary     = "A testing and building system for (La)TeX",
  topic       = {"macro-sup", "package-devel"},
  ctanPath    = "/macros/latex/contrib/l3build",
  repository  = "https://github.com/latex3/l3build/",
  bugtracker  = "https://github.com/latex3/l3build/issues",
  update      = true,
  description = [[
The build system supports testing and building (La)TeX code, on
Linux, macOS, and Windows systems. The package offers:
* A unit testing system for (La)TeX code;
* A system for typesetting package documentation; and
* An automated process for creating CTAN releases.
]]
}
```

Notice that here we see a little Lua syntax: several strings are placed in the `uploadconfig` *table*, and a multiline string is created using the notation `[[...]]`.


To actually upload using `l3build`, the `ctan` target should be run first to create a .zip file with all relevant data included. The call

```
l3build upload --message "<announcement text>" <version>      or
l3build upload --file <announcement file> <version>
```

can then be used to carry out the upload, with an optional announcement text given either as the argument to the `--message` switch or in a dedicated file. The `<version>`

is optional but would normally be given, because the CTAN maintainers will otherwise query what version string to use for the release.

There are further keys that can be specified as part of the `uploadconfig` data, for example, the name of the `uploader` if it differs from the `author` and an `email` address. The latter is actually required by CTAN, but if your `build.lua` is in a publicly available repository, you may not want to record your e-mail address there to avoid it being picked up by spammers. Therefore, the `l3build` program asks interactively for an `email` address if none is provided.

 *E-mail address
can be specified
interactively*

17.3.4 Common configurations

The standard settings in `l3build` are intended to mean that most package authors need to make only minor adjustments to their setup. As mentioned earlier, the only *required* value is one for `module`. Here, we cover a few common setups that can be accessed easily with `l3build`: for full details of all the settings, see the package documentation [147].

Adjusting the number of runs

When running tests or typesetting documentation, `l3build` uses a fixed set of steps (in contrast to tools such as `latexmk`). Depending on the exact use case, the standard values may not be appropriate.

For tests, the variable `checkruns` controls how many \LaTeX cycles are executed. The standard setting is 1, which is appropriate in many cases but does not allow for any tests that use the `.aux` file or similar. Thus, to check that cross-references are resolved, a setting such as the following is required:

```
checkruns = 2
```

When typesetting, the standard settings run 3 cycles, which includes executing `MakeIndex` and `BIBTEX/biber`. Some more complex documents will need additional runs; e.g., the \LaTeX distribution itself needs¹ this:

```
typesetruns = 4
```

Installing configuration files

Some packages provide multiple configuration files, which often are given the extension `.cfg` or `.def`. These can be included in a generic installation list

```
installfiles = {"*.cfg", "*.def", "*.sty"}
```

or can be listed with their exact file names.

Setting up a larger package with multiple sources

A larger package might also be split into multiple `.dtx` files, each covering part of the functionality. In this scenario, typesetting the programmer documentation is usually

¹The real build script for \LaTeX is more complex: this is an approximation to what happens.

achieved using a file `mypkg-code.tex`, which combines all of the `.dtx` files. The `l3build` setup would then exclude the `.dtx` files, thus

```
typesetfiles = {"*.tex"}
```

or

```
module = "mypkg"
typesetfiles = {module .. ".tex", module .. "-code.tex"}
```

would be appropriate (the `..` syntax joins strings in Lua).

Changing the typesetting engine

By default, `l3build` typesets the documentation using `pdfTEX`, which may not be appropriate, e.g., if you want to make use of features available only in Unicode engines. In that case add an appropriate setting in `build.lua`, e.g.,

```
typesetengine = "lualatex"
```

Separating user and programmer documentation

The `.dtx` format allows separation of the documentation and implementation of a package. However, for larger packages it is often useful to have a document for end users and one aimed at developers. The latter might for example expose a more formalized programmer's API than the user version. This is usually best achieved by having a file `mypkg.tex` for the user documentation, with the text in the “documentation” part of `mypkg.dtx` aimed at developers. This requires that the additional file is included for typesetting:

```
typesetfiles = {"*.dtx", "*.tex"}
```

or if you wish to be more cautious and guard against stray source files, use this:

```
module = "mypkg"
typesetfiles = {module .. ".dtx", module .. ".tex"}
```

Suppressing typesetting of the implementation part

Many package authors include the typeset implementation as part of the documentation. However, this is not always desirable. To suppress the implementation part in the automatically generated PDF, the variable `typesetcmds` is available. The exact string required depends on the document class used in the `.dtx` file. For the standard `ltxdoc` class, the appropriate setting is

```
typesetcmds = "\\AtBeginDocument{\\OnlyDescription}"
```

whereas for `l3doc`, the right setting is

```
typesetcmds = "\\AtBeginDocument{\\DisableImplementation}"
```

Notice that because Lua would interpret a single `\` as an escape sequence, we require `\\` in the setting here.

Creating a ready-to-install “TDS-style” .zip file

For simple packages comprising one .sty file, CTAN prefers a “flat” upload. However, when there is more complexity to a package, for example if it installs multiple files, providing a pre-extracted .zip file (called a TDS-style zip) is useful for end users. This can be enabled by setting

```
packtdszip = true      -- Release a TDS-style zip
```

17.4 Making use of version control tools

When developing a program or writing a large document, such as a user manual or a book (like this one), version control — the task of keeping a software system consisting of many versions and configurations well organized — is an important issue. Over time, several systems have been developed to help with this. These *version control systems* track changes in files. The oldest systems were aimed at individual users, with the idea of a central repository coming later. Even more recently, the concept of *distributed* version control systems has become the most popular: there is not one central machine, rather each user retains a “full” history of a project.

While there have been many version control systems developed since the early 1970s, a few have proved to be particularly popular, in reverse chronological order

- *Git*,¹ originally developed by Linus Torvalds (of Linux fame)
- *Subversion* (SVN)
- The *Concurrent Versions System* (CVS; see <http://www.cvshome.org>)
- The *Revision Control System* (RCS)

Today, Git is probably the most popular choice of version control system for new projects (certainly those that are open source). However, there are very many projects using the other systems, most notably Subversion.

If you put \LaTeX documents under source control, you will often want to have access to the data about the current file or project within your document — perhaps to place the date of the last check-in and the revision number into the running header. There are \LaTeX packages that can help us do that for all of the common version control systems above. Today, it is unlikely you will come across a project using CVS or RCS, so we focus here on support for Git and Subversion.

¹ Not a defined acronym: according to the readme file, Git stands for different things depending on your mood: three random but pronounceable letters, stupid or simple (from the slang dictionary), global information tracker (if it works for you), or g***** idiotic truckload of ... (when it breaks).

17.4.1 gitinfo2 — Accessing metadata from Git

Git does *not* store any revision information in the source files themselves, in contrast to Subversion, CVS, or RCS. This means that placing Git metadata into your document requires running some Git commands “behind the scenes”. The gitinfo2 package written by Brent Longborough (1944–2021) provides a mechanism to extract this information and to then insert it into a L^AT_EX document.

Setting this up needs at least a little familiarity with how Git works. Inside your development directory, there is a (hidden) directory called `.git`, and inside there one called `hooks`: this is where we need to add the necessary scripts. The gitinfo2 package is supplied with a demonstration file called `post-xxx-sample.txt`, which is in the *documentation* tree of your T_EX installation. Perhaps the easiest way to find it is to use `texdoc -l gitinfo2`: this shows all of the “documentation” files for the package, including the full file path to the demonstration script.

You need to make *three* identical copies of the script inside the `.git/hooks` directory. These should be called `post-checkout`, `post-commit`, and `post-merge`, and, if you use macOS or Linux, make them executable using `chmod +x`. After installing the hooks, you may want to run `git checkout` to force them to run; otherwise, there is no metadata available until the next real commit that you make.

Loading the package with the `mark` option inserts a simple “watermark” footer containing key data points:

- the current branch;
- the (short) hash for the most recent commit;
- the most recent release (see below);
- the date of the most recent commit;
- any tags associated with the most recent commit.

All these data elements are available as independent commands to insert into the document (see below), and the overall structure of the watermark is customizable using the `\gitMark` command: this contains the various data-insertion commands and text.

All of the data made available by gitinfo2 is stored in commands with names starting with `\git..` followed by a short descriptive name. For example, the data commands inserted by the standard watermark footer are

- `\gitBranch`
- `\gitAbbrevHash`
- `\gitReln`
- `\gitAuthorDate`
- `\gitTags`

Of these, the only one likely to be unfamiliar to a Git user is `\gitReln`. `gitinfo2` initially assumes that a *release* is associated with a tag that starts with a number and includes a decimal point, for example, 1.4. This definition is part of the script used to extract information from Git, rather than being specified in the \LaTeX code. As such, it can be adjusted by editing the three scripts installed above: this requires knowing a little shell script syntax. The standard definition is

```
RELTAG=$(git describe ... --match '[0-9]*.*' ...)
```

where ... represents parts of the standard definition that do not need our attention here. Changing the argument to `--match` adjusts what is captured: to accept any tag at all as a release, you would use

```
RELTAG=$(git describe ... --match '*' ...)
```

The package provides commands for most other Git metadata, for example, `\gitHash` (the full hash) or `\gitCommitterEmail` (the e-mail address given for the latest commit), etc.

17.4.2 svn-multi — Accessing Subversion keywords in multiple sources

In contrast to Git, Subversion, CVS, and RCS store revision data directly in the source file(s). This works by keyword substitution: there is a specially formatted string inside the sources that is updated by the version control system. All three systems support a common set of the most important keywords: `$Author$` (account of the person doing the check-in), `$Date$` (date and time of check-in in UTC), `$Revision$` (revision number assigned to the check-in), `$Filename$`, and `Id` (combination field, with file name, revision, date, time, author). Initially, one simply adds one or more of these keywords (e.g., `Id`) to the source. Upon first check-in, they are replaced by the structure `$(keyword):␣(value)␣$`, as can be seen in the next example. Later check-ins then update the `(value)` as appropriate.

As with Git-based workflows, you may want to access these keyword values from within a \LaTeX document. Because of the syntax using dollar signs (which indicate formulas in \LaTeX), you cannot use the keywords directly in your text, but there exist packages that provide \LaTeX tags to give you access to this information in a way suitable for typesetting. Here, we cover the `svn-multi` package by Martin Scharrer, because it provides the most flexible and up-to-date interfaces.

There are two set of commands needed to work with SVN keyword data: those to read the information from the source and those to typeset it. In general, SVN keywords are read by the command `\svnkwsave`. The argument to this command *must* start and end with a dollar sign and is interpreted as described above as a keyword and a value (which can be absent). The information is then available to typeset using `\svnkw`.

For example, a date line could be read and then typeset using

```
\svnkwsave{$Date: 2022-01-12 13:34:19 +0100 (Wed, 12 Jan 2022) $}
Date \svnkw{Date}.
```

Most commonly, files tracked by SVN use the `Id` keyword, which contains multiple data items. This is given therefore special handling by `svn-multi`, which can save the information using the command `\svnid`. This information is then available immediately for typesetting using `\svnkw`. Shortcuts for the author, date, time, and revision number are available as `\svnauthor`, `\svndate`, `\svntime`, and `\svnrev`. This (global) information is available only during a second or subsequent L^AT_EX run; we will see why shortly.

Information is directly available using `\svnkw`: the file `test.tex` has revision number 6, last checked in by Frank on 2022-01-12 13:34:19Z.

Global information is available during a second L^AT_EX run: the global revision number is 6, with the last check-in was made by Frank on 2022-01-12 13:34:19Z at 13:34:19 UTC (we might refer to it as January 12, 2022).

```
\usepackage{microtype,svn-multi}
\svnid{$Id: test.tex 6 2022-01-12 13:34:19Z Frank $}
Information is directly available using
\verb"\svnkw": the file \svnkw{Filename} has revision
number \svnkw{Revision}, last checked in by
\svnkw{Author} on \svnkw{Date}.
```

```
Global information is available during a second
\LaTeX{} run: the global revision number is \svnrev{},
with the last check-in was made by \svnauthor{} on
\svndate{} at \svntime\,\textsc{utc} (we might refer
to it as \svntoday{}).
```

17-4-1

The reason for the existence of two interfaces for typesetting SVN keyword information is that `svn-multi` is able to handle more complex scenarios. In particular, for a project of any scale, each file will have its own revision information when using SVN. Thus, at any point in a document you might wish to typeset the global revision information for the entire project, the specific information for the current source, or of course both. Data for the current file are available using a parallel set of typesetting commands starting with `\svnfile...`, so for example the revision of the current file is `\svnfilerev`. Normally, the main file is the first one in which `\svnid` occurs, but this can be adjusted using the command `\svnsetmainfile`. This is the reason that `\svnid`, etc., require two runs to print values: on the first L^AT_EX run, it is possible that the main file is set *after* the first typesetting calls.

The package allows further control of keyword scope by providing *grouping* of source files. Within a group of files, data items are available for the current group, so `\svncgrev` is the revision number of the current group. Groups are created manually, by using the `\svngroup` command with a *group name* as the mandatory argument. The group then continues until the next occurrence of `\svngroup` or the end of the current file: the latter restrictions ensure that parent files are not affected by a group setting in a child file.

The `svn-multi` package provides a number of commands for customizing the appearance of date/time values. We have seen above that `\svntoday` prints the

value of `\svndate` in the format of `\today`. Each part of the date and time is available as a separate command, for example `\svnday` for the global revision day or `\svnfiletimezone` for the time zone of the current file.

The way that author names are printed can also be adjusted, with the command `\svnRegisterAuthor`, available to map the author name in the SVN data to a full name for typesetting. For example

```
\svnRegisterAuthor{Frank}{Frank Mittelbach}
```

would then allow

```
\svnFullAuthor{\svnauthor}
```

to print “Frank Mittelbach” rather than just “Frank”. Notice that `\svnFullAuthor` expands its argument to text before looking up the name: we could have used the literal `Frank` or another command such as `\svnfileauthor` and gotten the same effect.

17.4.3 filemod — Printing or checking file modification dates

This is not exactly part of version control, but sometimes it is helpful to document the modification date (or time) of a file or compare it with some other date or time. For this Martin Scharrer produced the little package called `filemod`.

The example below first defines two files using the `filecontents` environment. The first of them is always regenerated, while the second is generated only once; thus if you run the example several times (as we do during book generation), it becomes the older of the two.

As usual, one can leave out the extension, in which case `.tex` is assumed. Several of the commands provided by the package are expandable, a fact we use to load the oldest and later the newest file at the end, to exhibit the mechanism:

```

\usepackage{filemod}
\begin{filecontents}[force]{trial1}
  content Trial1 % rewritten always!
\end{filecontents}
\begin{filecontents}{trial2}
  content Trial2 % written once!
\end{filecontents}

Date: 2022/12/28
Time: 13:33:47 +01'00'
trial1.tex: 2022/12/28 13:33:47 +01'00'
trial2.tex: 2022/07/17 18:13:53 +02'00'

Oldest: content Trial2
Newest: content Trial1
\usepackage{filemod}
\begin{filecontents}[force]{trial1}
  content Trial1 % rewritten always!
\end{filecontents}
\begin{filecontents}{trial2}
  content Trial2 % written once!
\end{filecontents}
Date: \filemodprintdate{trial1.tex} \\
Time: \filemodprinttime{trial1.tex} \\[10pt]
trial1.tex: \filemodprint{trial1} \\
% second file (written only once):
trial2.tex: \filemodprint{trial2} \\[10pt]
Oldest: \input{\filemodoldest{trial1}{trial2}} \\
Newest: \input{\filemodnewest{trial1}{trial2}}
```

This is mainly a teaser so that you know the functionality is available. The package provides a large number of additional commands to adjust results, store them, or do more complex comparisons, e.g., compare large lists of files to select the newest or oldest, etc. For details, see the package documentation.

APPENDIX A

L^AT_EX Overview for Preamble, Package, and Class Writers

A.1 Linking markup and formatting	622
A.2 Counters and length expressions	646
A.3 Page markup — Boxes and rules	660
A.4 L ^A T _E X's hook management.	671
A.5 Control structure extensions	685
A.6 Package and class file structure	693

This appendix gives an overview of the basic programming concepts underlying the L^AT_EX formatter. We explain how to define new commands and environments, including those with optional arguments and other specialized input syntax. We discuss how L^AT_EX handles counters and their representation; we also introduce horizontal and vertical space parameters and explain how they are handled.

The third section reviews the important subject of L^AT_EX boxes and their use. A good understanding of this topic is very important to fully appreciate and exploit the information presented in this book.

In the fourth section we then take a deeper look at L^AT_EX's new hook management that was introduced in 2020. The fifth section is devoted to two package files, `calc` and `ifthen`, that make calculations and building control structures with L^AT_EX easier. They have been used in many examples of L^AT_EX code throughout this book.

Finally, we describe in detail the L^AT_EX interfaces that allow you to define your own packages and class files.

A.1 Linking markup and formatting

This section reviews the syntax for defining commands and environments with L^AT_EX. It is important that you exclusively use the L^AT_EX constructs described below, rather than the lower-level T_EX commands. Then, not only are you able to take advantage of L^AT_EX's consistency checking, but your commands are also portable, (probably) without modification, to future versions of L^AT_EX.

L^AT_EX offers three major ways to define commands and environments. Simple commands can be defined with `\newcommand` and `\newenvironment` that have been available for several decades. These are discussed first.

More recently the `\NewDocumentCommand` and `\NewDocumentEnvironment` declarations were added to L^AT_EX. They allow you to easily define commands and environments with a richer argument structure, not only involving a single optional argument, but also those with multiple optional arguments, special argument delimiters, and much more. This is discussed in Section A.1.4 on page 632.

Finally, there are low-level methods of T_EX, through `\def`, `\let`, and similar commands, and, of course, all the declarations from the L3 programming layer (formerly known as `expl3`), e.g., `\cs_new:Npn` and many more. None of that is covered in this book because these constructs should be used only for low-level programming, and their discussion would easily fill a book by itself.

A.1.1 Command and environment names

Commands

In current L^AT_EX, whether used with pdfT_EX or with one of the Unicode engines, it is possible to enter accented characters and other non-ASCII symbols directly into the source, so it would seem reasonable to expect that such characters could also be used in command and environment names (e.g., `\größ̈er`). However, this is not the case — L^AT_EX multicharacter command names should be built from basic ASCII letters (i.e., `a...z` and `A...Z`).¹ This means that `\vspace*` is actually not a command by itself; rather, it is the command `\vspace` followed by the modifier `*`. Technically, you could write `\vspace_*` (as the space is ignored) or even put the `*` on the next line of your document.²

Environments

On the other hand, names of environments are different. In this case the `*` is part of the name, and spaces preceding it are not ignored. Thus, when writing something like `\begin{figure_*}`, the space would become part of the name, and this is therefore not recognized as the start of a `figure*` environment. This is due to implementation details and seems to indicate that with environment names some additional ASCII characters work. For example:

```
\newenvironment{foo.bar:baz_with_space}{}{}
```

However, this is not true in general because, depending on additional packages being

¹Strictly speaking this is not true, as T_EX can be configured to support other configurations. There are, however, valid reasons why this is not being done for standard L^AT_EX. Some of these reasons are discussed in Section 9.9 describing L^AT_EX's encoding model.

²It is bad style to use this in your documents, but there is unfortunately no way to prevent it.

loaded, such environment names may no longer be recognized or may produce strange errors. Thus, it is best not to explore that implementation (mis)feature and instead to rely on officially supported names — those containing only lowercase and uppercase letters and the star character.

Strictly speaking, `\cite` and `\label` keys have (or had) the same kind of restriction. Nevertheless, it has become common practice to use keys containing colons (e.g., `sec:cmds`) so that most packages provided extra support to allow for at least the colon character in such keys. Around 2020, when \LaTeX moved to UTF-8 as its default input, that restriction was lifted as part of the necessary rewrite so that now most characters outside the ASCII range can be safely used in label keys. However, characters used in \LaTeX 's syntax (e.g., `$`, `_`, or `#`) can never be used in names, whether they are keys, counters, environments, or multicharacter command names.

*Citation and
label keys*

With single-character command names, the situation is different again: any (single) character can be used. Symbols that are not “letters” cannot participate in multiletter command names, e.g., `\foo$bar` would be interpreted as the command `\foo` followed by the start of a math formula (signaled by `$`) followed by the (math) characters `b`, `a`, and `r`. Any following text is then also typeset in math mode. However, such symbols can appear directly after the backslash and form a so-called control symbol; e.g., `\$` is perfectly valid.

Control symbols

In contrast to multiletter commands, such control symbols do not ignore spaces after them, because that is what is normally desired in situations like `30\%` or `cut \& paste`. Note, however, that something like `\S` would not be a control symbol but a multiletter command, consisting of a name with only a single letter and thus spaces are ignored after it, as shown in the following example:

<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">A-1-1</div>	<p><code>\$ 100</code> is different from <code>\$100</code>. You have to write <code>\$100</code> to avoid the space!</p> <p>But <code>§1.2</code> and <code>§1.2</code> give the same spacing.</p>	<p><code>\\$ 100</code> is different from <code>\textrm{\\$} 100</code>. You have to write <code>\\$100</code> to avoid the space!</p> <p>But <code>\S 1.2</code> and <code>\S1.2</code> give the same spacing.</p>
---	---	---

Categories of \LaTeX commands

\LaTeX commands (i.e., those constructs starting with a backslash) are classified into three basic categories: document-level commands, package and class writer commands, and internal “kernel” commands.

- Document-level commands, such as `\section`, `\emph`, and `\sum`, usually have (reasonably) short names, by convention all in lowercase.
- Class and package writer commands, by convention, have longer mixed-case names, such as `\InputIfFileExists` and `\RequirePackage`. Some of them can be usefully applied in the document source, but many stop working after `\begin{document}` has been processed, producing an error message if you try.
- Traditionally most of the internal commands used in the \LaTeX implementation, such as `\@tempcnta`, `\@ifnextchar`, and `\z@`, contain `@` in their name. This effectively prevents these names from being used in documents for user-defined commands. However, it also means that they cannot appear in a document, even in the preamble, without taking special precautions.

*Document-level
commands*

*Class and package
writer commands*

*Internal \LaTeX
commands*

Modern internal commands use the L3 programming layer where commands use “_” and “:” as part of their names, which makes them also (deliberately) unusable in documents.

Careful
with internal
commands!

As a few of the examples in this book demonstrate, it is sometimes necessary to have such bits of “internal code” in the preamble. The commands `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother` make this easy to do; the difficult bit is to remember to add them — failure to do so can result in some strange errors. For an example of their use, see page →I 210. Note that package and class files should never contain these commands: `\makeatletter` is not needed because this is always set up when reading such files, and the use of `\makeatother` would prematurely stop this behavior, causing all kinds of havoc. For modern L3 programming layer code (`expl3`), there are `\ExplSyntaxOn` and `\ExplSyntaxOff` that serve the same purpose.

The distinction
between internal
and public
commands

Unfortunately, for historical reasons the distinction between these categories is often blurred. For example, `\hbox` is an internal command that should preferably be used only in the L^AT_EX kernel, because it does not deal properly with color changes in its argument, whereas `\m@ne` is the constant `-1` and would have been better named `\MinusOne` back then.

Nevertheless, this rule of thumb is still useful: if a command has `@` in its name, then it is not part of the supported L^AT_EX language — and its behavior may change in future releases! Any such command should be used with great care. On the other hand, mixed-case commands or those described in the *L^AT_EX Manual* [106] are guaranteed to be supported in future releases of L^AT_EX.

In the L3 programming layer there is much more standardization. Command names follow a predictable pattern, and what is supported and usable elsewhere is well defined: any name starting with `_` is private and should not be used outside its module; all others are officially part of the programming layer. Similarly, private (local) variables start with `\l_`, whereas public ones have only one underscore, etc.

A.1.2 Defining simple commands

It is often advantageous to define new commands (e.g., for representing repetitive input strings or recurring combinations of commands). Here we describe how to do this for simple cases, where the new commands take at most one optional argument. This is the method introduced with L^AT_EX 2_ε in 1994. How to define commands with more complex argument structures is shown in Section A.1.4.

Complexity comes with a price tag in terms of processing speed: so for “simple” tasks we recommend simple tools, i.e., the declarations discussed here. However, already when defining commands with one optional argument, you should consider using the declarations discussed later.

`\newcommand{cmd}[narg]{code}`

A new command is defined using the `\newcommand` declaration. The number of arguments is in the range $0 \leq narg \leq 9$. If your new command has no arguments,

then the `[0]` can be omitted. Inside the *code* part, the arguments are referenced as `#1` to `#⟨narg⟩`.

PostScript and its variant Encapsulated PostScript are often used for including graphics in \LaTeX documents ...

```
\newcommand{\PS}{Post\-\Script}
\newcommand{\EPS}{Encapsulated \PS}
\PS{} and its variant \EPS{} are often used for
including graphics in \LaTeX{} documents \ldots
```

A-1-2

The *cmd* argument always has to contain a single “token” (the name of the command to be defined), so one can omit the braces around this argument. While we do not recommend the use of this \TeX syntax feature in other places, it is commonly used with `\newcommand` and similar declarations. In fact, we have often used this more concise syntax in this book:

*Omitting argument
braces*

```
\newcommand\PS{Post\-\Script}    \newcommand\EPS{Encapsulated \PS}
```

Note, however, that this is possible only with arguments that are single tokens to \TeX (i.e., names starting with a backslash). Trying to do the same with, for instance, environment or counter names will fail. For example,

```
\setcounter mycount {5}          \newenvironment myenv{...}{...}
```

is invalid \LaTeX syntax.

If a command should work both in math mode and in text mode, special care should be taken in its definition. One could, for example, use `\mbox`, but this has a number of drawbacks.

The series of x_1, \dots, x_n or $x_1, \dots, x_n + G_{x_1, \dots, x_n}$ — but this definition does not change its size if used in the subscript position.

```
\newcommand\xvec{\mbox{$x_1, \ldots, x_n$}}
The series of \xvec\ or $\xvec+G_{\xvec}$ ---
but this definition does not change its size
if used in the subscript position.
```

A-1-3

A better solution is offered by the \LaTeX 2_ϵ command `\ensuremath`. As the name implies, `\ensuremath` ensures that its argument is always typeset in math mode by surrounding it, if necessary, with `$` signs. Thus, the definition in the above example should be replaced as follows:

The series of x_1, \dots, x_n or $x_1, \dots, x_n + G_{x_1, \dots, x_n}$ — both work well with the new definition.

```
\newcommand\xvec{\ensuremath{x_1, \ldots, x_n}}
The series of \xvec\ or $\xvec+G_{\xvec}$ ---
both work well with the new definition.
```

A-1-4

This has the additional advantage of producing correctly sized symbols in subscripts or superscripts, which is not the case if an `\mbox` is used in the definition.

Existing commands must be *redefined* with the command `\renewcommand`, which otherwise has the same syntax as `\newcommand`. Note that you can redefine a command with a different number of arguments than the original one has (though

that is seldom a good idea). Therefore, you could redefine the `\xvec` command of the above example so that it now takes two arguments:

The series of x_1, \dots, x_n or $x_1, \dots, x_n + G_{x_1, \dots, x_n}$	<code>\newcommand\xvec{\ensuremath{x_1,\ldots,x_n}}</code> The series of <code>\xvec\</code> or <code> \$\xvec+G_{\xvec}\$ \par</code> <code>\renewcommand\xvec[2]{\ensuremath{\#1_1,\ldots,\#1_{\#2}}}</code> The series of <code>\xvec{x}{n}</code> or <code> \$\xvec{y}{k}+G_{\xvec{z}{4}}\$</code>
---	---

A-1-5

When redefining a command (or an environment — see below), you must, of course, be cautious. It is good practice to do that only to commands that you have defined yourself earlier. Overwriting commands defined by packages or the L^AT_EX kernel may be temporarily necessary if they have bugs, but it is likely to break their usage in places you do not control, and even if the redefinition works initially, subsequent corrections or updates to L^AT_EX or the package providing the initial definition may render your redefinition suddenly invalid.

Commands with one optional argument

With `\newcommand` you can also define commands so that their first argument is optional. The syntax for this is

```
\newcommand{cmd}[narg][default]{code}
```

An example of such a command definition is shown below:

```
\newcommand\LB[1][3]{\linebreak[#1]}
```

The default for the optional argument is given between the second pair of square brackets — the string “3” in this case. Inside the command definition, the optional argument has the number `#1`, while the mandatory arguments (when present) are addressed `#2` to `#(narg)`. Thus, typing `\LB` is a short way of saying `\linebreak[3]`, while `\LB[2]` uses the actual specified value. That is, you obtain the same effect as when typing `\linebreak[2]`.

New commands that have only mandatory arguments are expandable, i.e., they are replaced by their definition if used in moving arguments (for example inside `\section`), while those that are defined with an optional first argument are automatically made robust, i.e., they do not expand in such places.

In the next example we define the command `\lvec`, which can be used inside or outside of formulas (due to `\ensuremath`). Under the assumption that the upper subscript is usually n we made it optional, while the vector variable has to be given explicitly.

For the series $x_1 + \dots + x_n$ we have

$$x_1 + \dots + x_n = \sum_{k=1}^n G_{y_1 + \dots + y_k}$$

```
\newcommand\lvec[2][n]
{\ensuremath{\#2_1+\cdots+\#2_{\#1}}}
For the series \lvec{x} we have
\[ \lvec{x} = \sum_{k=1}^n G_{\lvec{k}{y}} \]
```

A-1-6

In general, it is most practical to associate the case that occurs most often with the form that does not need the optional argument and to represent the cases that are used less often with longer command strings with an optional argument.

Argument restrictions for simple commands

As explained above, user-defined commands can have one optional argument and up to nine arguments in total. If defined with `\newcommand`, each of the arguments can receive arbitrary text with a small number of restrictions:

- Braces must be properly balanced because otherwise \TeX is unable to determine where the argument ends.
- In an optional argument a closing bracket “]” is allowed only if hidden inside braces (e.g., `\item[{a}]` is allowed). Without the braces the first] would be misinterpreted as the end of the optional argument.¹
- The `\verb` command, the `verbatim` environment, and related commands or environments are not supported within arguments of other commands.


The allowed content of arguments can be deliberately further restricted by using the `\newcommand*` variant of the declaration.

Disallowing `\par` in argument content

```
\newcommand*{cmd}[narg][default]{code}
```

The starred form works like `\newcommand` but defines a *cmd* that is not, in \TeX terms, long. This means that the newly defined command does not accept empty lines or `\par` commands in its argument(s). This restriction can be useful for commands whose arguments are not intended to contain whole paragraphs of text.

Commands that have been defined with the low-level \TeX primitive `\def` do not accept `\par` in their argument. Thus, they are equivalent to being defined with `\newcommand*`. The low-level \TeX equivalent to `\newcommand` is `\long\def`, except that neither can be used to define a command with an optional argument.

 *Relation to \TeX primitives*

Nesting new commands in each other

Sometimes it is necessary to nest command definitions, most commonly in the combination of commands being defined as part of the definition of some new environment. If the inner command (or environment) has arguments, there is a problem referring to them. Clearly we cannot use `#1`, `#2`, and so on, because this notation already denotes the argument(s) of the outer command or environment. The \TeX solution is to double the hash marks; thus, `##1` would refer to the first argument of the inner definition, and in the case of three nested definitions we would need `###1`, and so on.

¹This restriction is removed if the declarations from Section A.1.4 are used instead — as long as the [...] come in matching pairs.

To make this abstract concept a bit clearer, we define a command `\DEF\vec` that (re)defines the `\lvec` command from Example A-1-6 on page 626 over and over again. As a first argument to `\DEF\vec` we pass the vector name that is being hardwired into the redefinition of `\lvec`. As the second argument we pass the upper index that becomes the default value for the optional argument of `\lvec`. Thus, since the vector name is now part of the definition, `\lvec` has only an optional argument.

```
\newcommand\lvec{}
\newcommand\DEF\vec[2]{\renewcommand\lvec[1][#2]%
    {\ensuremath{#1_1+\cdots + #1_{##1}}}}
\DEF\vec{x}{n} % initial definition
```

Default: $x_1 + \cdots + x_n \neq x_1 + \cdots + x_k$

Now: $y_1 + \cdots + y_i \neq y_1 + \cdots + y_k$

Default: $\$ \lvec \neq \lvec[k] \$ \par$

`\DEF\vec{y}{i}` Now: $\$ \lvec \neq \lvec[k] \$$

A-1-7

The technique used in the above example is worth studying. Try to visualize the actual definitions being carried out, for example, when the “initial definition” is executed. Also note the need for a top-level definition for `\lvec`: the actual definition is irrelevant, but without it we would be unable to “redefine” it inside the `\DEF\vec` command. The `\ShowCommand` described on page 767 is a good way to look at the results.

Special declarations for use in packages and classes

Besides `\newcommand` and `\renewcommand`, which were originally provided as user commands (e.g., for the document preamble), L^AT_EX offers some extra methods of (re)defining commands that are intended for use in class and package files.

```
\providecommand*{cmd}[narg][default]{code}
```

This declaration works exactly like `\newcommand` and `\newcommand*`, except that it is ignored if the command to be defined already exists. Such a feature is useful in sources that may get used in several documents, such as bibliography entries. For example, instead of using `\newcommand` in the `@preamble` of B_BL_AT_EX for logos and other constructs used in the B_BL_AT_EX entries, you can use `\providecommand` to avoid error messages if such commands are already defined in the document.

```
\DeclareRobustCommand*{cmd}[narg][default]{code}
```

This command takes the same arguments as `\newcommand` and `\newcommand*` but declares a robust command, even if some code within the `code` argument is fragile. You can use this command to define new robust commands, or to redefine existing commands *and* make them robust. Information is placed into the transcript file if `cmd` is redefined, so it does not produce an error in this case. In the case an existing fragile command should be made robust without otherwise changing it, L^AT_EX offers `\MakeRobust\cmd`, which is used in various places in the kernel.

```
\CheckCommand*{cmd}[narg][default]{code}
```

This command takes the same arguments as `\newcommand` and `\newcommand*` but, rather than defining *cmd*, checks that the current definition of *cmd* is exactly as given by *code*. A warning is raised if the definitions differ or if one accepts `\par` in its arguments and the other does not (i.e., was defined using a starred form). This command is useful for checking the state of the system before a package starts altering the definitions of commands. It allows you to check, in particular, that no other package has redefined the same command.

A.1.3 Defining simple environments

You can define and redefine an environment with the `\newenvironment` and `\renewenvironment` commands, respectively. You must specify, in each case, which actions should take place when you enter and leave an environment. For an environment called “myenv” this is signaled by the commands `\begin{myenv}` and `\end{myenv}` inside your document.


```
\newenvironment{name}[narg]{begin code}{end code}
\renewenvironment{name}[narg]{begin code}{end code}
```

As with the `\newcommand` declaration, the number of arguments is in the range $0 \leq narg \leq 9$. In the case of no parameters, you can omit `[0]`. Inside the definition part, *begin code*, these parameters are referenced as `#1` to `#<narg>`. If arguments are present, then they are defined when *entering* the environment by specifying them on the command `\begin{name}`, as shown below:

```
\begin{name}{arg1}\dots{argnarg} \dots body \dots \end{name}
```

When *exiting* an environment with the command `\end{name}`, no parameters can be specified. Moreover, the parameters specified with the `\begin{name}` command when entering the environment (see above) are no longer available in the definition part *end code*, where you define the actions that should take place when leaving the environment. This means that it is your responsibility to store information needed at the end of an environment (see the `Citation` environment defined below).¹

Technically, a `\newenvironment` declaration for the environment *name* defines a command `\name` that is called during the `\begin{name}` processing and a command `\endname` that is executed (besides other things) by `\end{name}`. You may find that it is sometimes these commands rather than the environment tags that are used inside packages and classes to define related environments or commands. An example where this might be useful is given on page 131. In other situations, it is not advisable to follow this practice without a thorough understanding of L^AT_EX’s kernel implementation and in particular its environment hooks (which are then missing).

 *Arguments not available in end-tag*

¹Again, this restriction is lifted if you use the declarations discussed in Section A.1.4 instead.

Our first example defines an environment of type “Abstract”, which is often used to give a short summary of the contents of an article or a book. It starts by typesetting a boldfaced and centered title, followed by the text of the abstract inside a quote environment. The final `\par` command ensures that any following text starts a new paragraph with a normal paragraph indentation.

Abstract

This abstract explains the approach used to solve the problems at hand.

Some text following the abstract. Some text following the abstract. And some more.

```
\newenvironment{Abstract}
  {\begin{center}\normalfont\bfseries Abstract%
  \end{center}\begin{quote}}{\end{quote}\par}

\begin{Abstract}
  This abstract explains the approach used
  to solve the problems at hand.
\end{Abstract}

Some text following the abstract. Some text
following the abstract. And some more.
```

A-1-8

Our second example is somewhat more complex. It shows how a Citation environment can be defined for quoting citations by famous people. In the document it would be used as follows:

Citation 1 Man is the measure of all things.

Protagoras

This is some regular text in between two Citation environments.

Citation 2 On mourra seul.

Blaise Pascal

More regular text ...

Citation 3 Necessity is the plea for every infringement of human freedom.

William Pitt

```
\begin{Citation}{Protagoras}
  Man is the measure of all things.
\end{Citation}

This is some regular text in between two
Citation environments.

\begin{Citation}{Blaise Pascal}
  On mourra seul.
\end{Citation}

More regular text \ldots

\begin{Citation}{William Pitt}
  Necessity is the plea for every
  infringement of human freedom.
\end{Citation}
```

A-1-9

The L^AT_EX code for the Citation environment is shown on the opposite page. We start by declaring the counter `Citctr`, for numbering the citations, and a box `\Citname`, for storing the name of the person whom we are citing so that we can typeset it at the end of the citation when the `\end{Citation}` command is encountered (remember that the value of the argument specified on the `\begin{Citation}` command is no longer available at that stage).

When entering the environment, we save the value of the argument, typeset in italic, in the box `\Citname` and increment our counter. We then start a description environment. This environment has a single `\item` containing the counter value preceded by the word “Citation”.

When exiting the Citation environment, we twice issue a stretchable horizontal space separated by an allowed — but discouraged — line break. It is important that this space survives if a line break happens before or after it, so `\hspace*` is used.

We also throw in a `\quad` of space that ensures a proper separation between the citation and the name if they appear on the same line, but vanishes if a break is taken between them. Then we typeset the contents of the box `\Citname` before leaving the `\description` environment. This puts the author's name flush right and the last line of the citation flush left, regardless of whether they end up on separate lines, as you can see in the next example. Without this adjustment the text of the citation would always be fully justified, often with a lot of white space between the words. For a discussion of the counter and box commands used in this example, see Sections A.2.1 and A.3.

```
\newcounter{Citctr} \newsavebox{\Citname}
\newenvironment{Citation}[1]
  {\sbox\Citname{\emph{#1}}\stepcounter{Citctr}%
   \begin{description}\item[Citation \arabic{Citctr}]}
  {\hspace*{\fill}\nolinebreak[1]\quad\hspace*{\fill}%
   % \finalhyphendemerits=0 % <--- see text below
   \usebox{\Citname}%
   \end{description}}
```

Surprisingly, the name in the last citation of Example A-1-9 is typeset on a line of its own, even though there is clearly enough space to place it alongside the citation. The reason is that T_EX's paragraph-breaking algorithm prefers solutions that do not have the second-to-last line ending in a hyphen and therefore selects a three-line paragraph breaking at the `\nolinebreak`.

There are two ways to correct this behavior. First, we can discourage breaking at this point by using an optional argument of `[3]` instead of `[1]`, which would work in that particular example but may not work always. Second, we can tell T_EX's algorithm not to take that hyphen into account by setting the low-level T_EX integer parameter `\finalhyphendemerits` to zero. This requires a somewhat unusual syntax, as shown in the example code above (though commented out there to display the behavior without it).

§ A hyphen on the
second-to-last line
of a paragraph

```
\newenvironment{name}[narg][default]{begin code}{end code}
```

As with `\newcommand`, one can make the first argument of an environment optional. The *default* value for the optional argument is given between the second pair of square brackets. Inside the *begin code* part, which is executed when the environment *name* is entered, the optional argument can be accessed with `#1`. The mandatory arguments (when present) are addressed as `#2` to `#<narg>`. When the *name* environment is used without an optional parameter, `#1` contains the string specified as *default*.

As an example, we implement an `altDescription` environment with an optional argument that is trial-typeset to determine the width of the indentation. The list labels are placed flush right if possible (by placing `\hfil` at the left in `\makelabel`). When used without an optional argument, the indentation is `1em` (i.e., a `\quad`). By specifying the widest entry as an optional argument, you make sure that the description parts of all your entries line up nicely.

The example first shows the (default) behavior of the `altDescription` list and then displays what it looks like when using the optional argument.

	<pre>\usepackage{calc} \newenvironment{altDescription}[1][\quad] { \begin{list}{}{} \renewcommand\makelabel[1]{\hfil\textsf{##1}} \settowidth\labelwidth{\makelabel{#1}} \setlength\leftmargin{\labelwidth+\labelsep} }{\end{list}}</pre>
First	This is a short term with text that wraps.
Long term	This is a long term.
Even longer term	A very long term.
First	This is a short term with text that wraps.
Long term	This is a long term.
Even longer term	A very long term.

A-1-10

A.1.4 Defining more complex commands and environments

With `\newcommand` and `\newenvironment` it is possible to define simple commands and environments, and in many cases this is sufficient. However, if you look at the commands offered by L^AT_EX and the packages described in this book, you find many commands with complex argument structures, e.g., with multiple optional arguments, special argument delimiters, and much more. In the past all such commands needed to be hand-crafted with low-level methods. While one can learn how to do this, it is challenging, and it is not something an author can do in the preamble of a document.

For this reason the L^AT_EX Project Team developed a generalized specification facility that allows you to easily set up commands with complex arguments covering all of L^AT_EX standard syntax possibilities and several additional features that go way beyond. This was first distributed as the package `xparse`, and since 2020, it is part of the L^AT_EX format. The declarations for this and the underlying concepts are discussed in this section.

First, we describe the different argument types and then move on to explain how they can be used to create both document commands and environments. Finally, more specialized features are described, which allow an even richer application of a simple interface setup.

Describing argument types

If you want to specify different kind of arguments, it is no longer enough to know the number of arguments for a function; in addition, you need to know the nature of each of the arguments. This is done by constructing an *argument specification* that defines implicitly the number of arguments and explicitly the type of each argument and any

additional information needed for a parser to read the user input and properly pass it through to internal functions.

The basic form of the argument specification is a list of letters, where each letter denotes a type of argument. Some of the types need additional information, such as default values or delimiters. A maximum of nine “argument” letters is supported.

The argument types can be divided into two groups, those that define arguments that are mandatory (raising an error if not found) and those that define optional arguments and thus are allowed to be missing in the input. The mandatory types are the following:

Types denoting mandatory arguments

m A standard mandatory argument, which can be either a single token alone or multiple tokens surrounded by braces `{ . . . }`. Regardless of the input format, the argument is passed to the internal code without the outer braces. This is the type specifier for a normal \TeX argument.

r $\langle token_1 \rangle \langle token_2 \rangle$ This denotes a delimited mandatory argument, where the delimiters are $\langle token_1 \rangle$ and $\langle token_2 \rangle$. If the opening delimiter $\langle token_1 \rangle$ is missing, an error is raised, and the special default marker `-NoValue-` is used as the argument value.

R $\langle token_1 \rangle \langle token_2 \rangle \{ default \}$ This too is a required delimited argument. Compared to **r**, the *default* instead of `-NoValue-` is used when the argument is missing.

v This type specifies an argument that is read “verbatim”. In the document it is delimited by an arbitrary character (except for `%`, `\`, `#`, `{`, `}`, or `_`) and its next occurrence, in the same way as the argument of the \LaTeX command `\verb`. As an alternative, the argument can be given in a brace group `{ . . . }`, which is not possible with \LaTeX ’s `\verb`.

To help with error recovery, v-type arguments have to be given on a single line in the document source and raise an error if that is not the case.

A command with one or more v-type arguments produces an error when it appears within an argument of another command or environment.

b This type is suitable only in the argument specification of an environment and denotes the body of the environment, i.e., the material between `\begin{env}` and `\end{env}` in the source. If used, it has to be the last argument specified. See page 641 for details on its use.

The types that define optional arguments are:

Types denoting optional arguments

o A standard \LaTeX optional argument, surrounded with square brackets, that returns the special `-NoValue-` marker if not given (as described later).

d $\langle token_1 \rangle \langle token_2 \rangle$ Like **o**, but the argument is delimited by $\langle token_1 \rangle$ and $\langle token_2 \rangle$.

O $\{ default \}$ Like **o**, but returns $\langle default \rangle$ if no value is given.

D $\langle token_1 \rangle \langle token_2 \rangle \{ default \}$ Like **d**, but returns $\langle default \rangle$ if no value is given.

Internally, the **o**, **d**, and **O** types are shortcuts to an appropriately constructed **D** type argument.

s Scan for an optional star, which results in a value `\BooleanTrue` if a star is

present and `\BooleanFalse` otherwise. These return values can be tested with `\IfBooleanTF` as described later.

`t(token)` Like `s`, but scans for an optional *token*; i.e., `s` is a shorthand for `t*`.

`e{token1token2...}` This defines a number of optional “embellishment” arguments, one for each *token_i*. The tokens must be distinct. In the document they are given as *token_i{value}*, and they can appear in any order at that point in the argument list.

A premier example is subscripts and superscripts in math, which are represented by `_ {value}` and `^ {value}` in the document and can be written there in any order without changing the result. They can be modeled with an `e`-type by specifying `e{^_}`. This would then define two optional arguments. If present in the document, they receive the *values* given there; if not, they return the special marker `-NoValue-`, which the code could then test for to execute a special action. The order in which the values accessed in the code (`#(number)`) is the order in which the *tokens* are specified, not the order in which they appear in the document. See page 640 for further details.

`E{token1token2...}{default1}{default2...}` Same as the `e`-type but with explicit default values instead of `-NoValue-` if not all embellishments are present in the document. You may specify fewer defaults than tokens. See page 641 for further details.

Modifying argument types In addition to the argument *types* discussed above, the argument specification also gives special meaning to three other characters:

- + The `+` character is used to make an argument long (to accept `\par` in the argument). In contrast to `\newcommand`, this applies on an argument-by-argument basis. Thus, specifying `soo+m0{default}` means that the mandatory argument is `\long`, while the optional arguments are not.
- ! The `!` character is used to control whether spaces are allowed before optional arguments in the source. There are some subtleties to this, because T_EX itself has some restrictions on where spaces are automatically ignored: more detail is given on page 638. It can also be used with the mandatory `b`-type, where it has a slightly different meaning as described on page 642.
- >{processor} Finally, the character `>` is used to declare so-called “argument processors” that can be used to modify the contents of an argument before it is passed to the macro definition. The use of argument processors is a somewhat advanced topic (or at least a less commonly used feature) and is covered on page 642.

To give some first examples, `\newcommand\foo[3]{...}` would correspond to the argument specification `+m+m+m` (three mandatory arguments all accepting `\par`) and `0{bar}m` (one optional argument with default value `bar` followed by a mandatory one) would correspond to `\newcommand*\foo[2][bar]{...}`. To improve the readability of an argument specification you can put spaces between the argument specifiers, but you still need to make sure that you do not have spurious spaces in the *code* argument (unless you program using the L3 programming layer).

Creating document commands and environments

To declare commands with argument specifications as discussed above, the following family of declarations is available:

```
\NewDocumentCommand{cmd}{arg spec}{code}
\RenewDocumentCommand{cmd}{arg spec}{code}
\ProvideDocumentCommand{cmd}{arg spec}{code}
\DeclareDocumentCommand{cmd}{arg spec}{code}
```

The argument specification for the function is given by *arg spec*, and the command uses the *code* with #1, #2, etc., replaced by the arguments found by the parser. The difference between the declarations is the behavior if *cmd* is already defined:

- `\NewDocumentCommand` issues an error if *cmd* has already been defined.
- `\RenewDocumentCommand` in contrast issues an error if *cmd* has not previously been defined.
- `\ProvideDocumentCommand` creates a new definition for *cmd* only if one has not already been defined and otherwise does nothing.
- `\DeclareDocumentCommand` always creates the new definition, regardless of any existing *cmd* with the same name. This should be used sparingly.

As a first example consider the following declaration, which shows a way to define a `\chapter` command that would essentially behave like the current `\TeX` command (except that it would accept an optional argument even when a `*` is parsed):

```
\NewDocumentCommand\chapter{s o m}
  {\IfBooleanTF{#1}{\typesetstarchapter{#3}}%
   {\typesetnormalchapter{#2}{#3}}}
```

The `\typesetnormalchapter` could test its first argument for being `-NoValue-` to see if an optional argument was present and act accordingly. See page 639 for details on `\IfBooleanTF` and testing for `-NoValue-`.

```
\NewCommandCopy{new-cmd}{original-cmd}
\NewEnvironmentCopy{new-env}{original-env}
```

If you want to make an existing command available under a new name (and reuse the original name for something else), then in the past you had to resort to low-level `\TeX` programming using `\let`. However, this does not work for commands with optional arguments or those defined with `\DeclareRobustCommand`, because they really consist of two commands, one of them with an internal name that is difficult to copy. To make this possible in a reliable way, `\NewCommandCopy` is provided. It analyzes the *original-cmd* and provides a copy of it that remains usable even after the original is redefined. Example A-4-3 on page 676 shows its usage.

There also exist `\RenewCommandCopy` and `\DeclareCommandCopy` but not `\ProvideCommandCopy`. For environments you can use `\NewEnvironmentCopy`, `\RenewEnvironmentCopy`, and `\DeclareEnvironmentCopy` in a similar fashion.

Fully expandable
document
commands

Document commands created using `\NewDocumentCommand`, etc., are set up in a way that they do not expand unexpectedly; i.e., they are robust in L^AT_EX's terminology but use a different mechanism (provided by modern engines) that makes them work even in places where `\DeclareRobustCommand` or `\MakeRobust` would fail. Making the commands robust so that they do not expand except when doing typesetting allows for a very efficient implementation besides the fact that some constructions simply fail in an expansion context.

There are, however, *very rare* occasions when it may be useful to create functions that always expand when used. This requires a much less efficient parser that imposes a number of restrictions on the nature of the arguments accepted by a function and the code it implements.¹ For this reason, the facility should be used only when *absolutely necessary* and is typically needed only in package or class files.

```
\NewExpandableDocumentCommand{cmd}{arg spec}{code}
```

This command is used to create a document-level *cmd* that grabs its arguments in a fully expandable manner. The argument specification for the function is given by *arg spec*, and the function executes the *code*. In general, the *code* also needs to be fully expandable, although there are cases where this is not necessary (e.g., in the example below). As usual, the `\Renew...`, `\Provide...`, and `\Declare...` variants are also available.

As an example in which at least a partially expandable command is needed, consider “hiding” `\multicolumn` inside a definition in order to preset the font and to center the column title. To allow for headers spanning several columns, we use an optional argument to keep the column number variable, e.g.,

```
\NewDocumentCommand\header{0{1}m}{\multicolumn{#1}{c}{\bfseries #2}}
```

That definition (or the same done with `\DeclareRobustCommand[2][1]{...}`) would fail, because the `tabular` code is scanning ahead to find a `\multicolumn` at the start of a cell, and with the command being robust, it cannot look into it.

2-cols	1-col	
—	—	<code>\NewExpandableDocumentCommand\header{0{1}m}</code>
		<code>{\multicolumn{#1}{c}{\bfseries #2}}</code>
		<code>\begin{tabular}{l l l}</code>
		<code>\header[2]{2-cols} & \header{1-col} \\\</code>
		<code>-- & --- & \\\ '! & '? & f ff fi ffi fl ffl</code>
<code>'! '?</code>	<code>f ff fi ffi fl ffl</code>	<code>\end{tabular}</code>

A-1-11

Parsing arguments by pure expansion imposes a number of restrictions on both the type of arguments that can be read and the error checking available:

- The “verbatim” argument type *v* is not available.
- The last argument (if any are present) must be one of the remaining mandatory types *m*, *r*, or *R*.

¹During expansions you cannot make assignments, and that means state information needs a lot of technical juggling, which makes the processing slow and restricts the types you can parse for.

- Argument processors (using >) are not available.
- It is impossible to differentiate between, for example, `\foo[` and `\foo{[}`: in both cases the `[` is interpreted as the start of an optional argument. This makes checking for arguments less robust than in the standard version.

All that plus the fact that it is much slower in processing is why the expandable commands should be avoided unless they are really needed.

```
\NewDocumentEnvironment{env}{arg spec}{begin code}{end code}
\RenewDocumentEnvironment{env}{arg spec}{begin code}{end code}
\ProvideDocumentEnvironment{env}{arg spec}{begin code}{end code}
\DeclareDocumentEnvironment{env}{arg spec}{begin code}{end code}
```

These declarations work in the same way as `\NewDocumentCommand`, etc., but create environments (`\begin{env} ... \end{env}`). In the document all arguments are given following `\begin{env}`.

In contrast to environments declared with `\newenvironment`, both the *begin code* and *end code* may access the arguments as defined by *arg spec*. Below is a reimplementaion of Example A-1-9 from page 630 making use of this feature and thereby getting much simpler. This time we also set `\finalhyphendemerits` to zero to prove that this makes the last citation use only two lines.

```
\newcounter{Citctr}
\NewDocumentEnvironment{Citation}{m}
{
  \stepcounter{Citctr}\begin{description}\item[Citation \arabic{Citctr}]
  {\hspace*{\fill}\nolinebreak[1]\quad\hspace*{\fill}\finalhyphendemerits=0
  \emph{#1}\end{description}}
}
```

Citation 1	Man is the measure of all things. <i>Protagoras</i>	\begin{Citation}{Protagoras} Man is the measure of all things. \end{Citation}
Citation 2	On mourra seul. <i>Blaise Pascal</i>	\begin{Citation}{Blaise Pascal} On mourra seul. \end{Citation}
Citation 3	Necessity is the plea for every infringe- ment of human freedom. <i>William Pitt</i>	\begin{Citation}{William Pitt} Necessity is the plea for every infringement of human freedom. \end{Citation}

A-1-12

Details on optional arguments

In contrast to commands created using L^AT_EX's `\newcommand`, optional arguments created using `\NewDocumentCommand` and friends may safely be nested. Thus, for example, following

```
\NewDocumentCommand\foo{0{something else}m}{I grabbed ‘#1’ and ‘#2’}
\NewDocumentCommand\baz{0{things}}{#1-#1}
```

using the command as `\foo[\baz[stuff]]{more stuff}` prints

I grabbed ‘stuff-stuff’ and ‘more stuff’

This is particularly useful when placing a command with an optional argument *inside* the optional argument of a second command. Note, however, that all commands involved are defined using `\NewDocumentCommand` and not one of the older methods; e.g., at the moment, it would not work with `\item` or many other kernel commands, though over time this will probably change.

When an optional argument is followed by a mandatory argument using the same delimiter (not a good syntax choice but possible), the parser issues a warning because not all optional arguments in front of the mandatory one could be omitted by the user, thus becoming in effect mandatory. There are possible use cases, though, for example, “`d()sr()`”. This would not allow for a single group of parentheses, but it would accept arguments of the form `(. .)(. .)`, `*(. .)`, or `(. .)*(. .)`. Whether or not that is a good syntax is a different question.

The defaults for O, D, and E arguments can use the result of grabbing another argument, even of one that comes later in the input. Thus, for example

```
\NewDocumentCommand\foo{O{#2} m}
```

would use the mandatory argument as the default for the leading optional one.

Spaces
before optional
arguments



T_EX finds the first argument after a multiletter command name irrespective of any intervening spaces. This is true for both mandatory and optional arguments, and there is no way to prevent this. Thus, `\foo[arg]` and `\foo␣[arg]` are equivalent.¹

Spaces are also ignored when collecting arguments up to the last mandatory argument to be collected (because it must exist). After

```
\NewDocumentCommand\foo{m o m}{ ... }
```

the user input `\foo{arg1}[arg2]{arg3}` and `\foo␣{arg1}␣␣␣[arg2]␣␣{arg3}` are both parsed in the same way.

However, the behavior of trailing optional arguments *after* any mandatory arguments is selectable. The standard settings allow spaces here, and thus with

```
\NewDocumentCommand\foobar{m o}{ ... }
```

both `\foobar{arg1}[arg2]` and `\foobar{arg1}␣[arg2]` find an optional argument. This can be changed by using the modifier `!` in the argument specification:

```
\NewDocumentCommand\foobar{m !o}{ ... }
```

where `\foobar{arg1}␣[arg2]` does not find an optional argument but treats `␣[arg2]` as ordinary input.

As mentioned before, there is a subtle difference in T_EX’s handling of control symbols where the command name is made up from a single symbol such as `\\`. Spaces are not ignored by T_EX here, and thus it is possible to require an optional argument to directly follow such a command without any intervening space. The most

¹In fact, even a line break is skipped over at this point, with sometimes surprising effects.

common example is the use of `\` in `amsmath` environments, which in the terms here would be defined as

```
\NewDocumentCommand\{\!s !o}{ ... }
```

Testing for optional argument values or optional tokens

All the tests in this section are expandable, so executing the tests is possible in situations where robust commands would simply stay put without expanding, e.g., inside moving arguments or `\typeout`, etc.

Optional arguments make use of dedicated variables to return information about the nature of the argument received. Those that test for the existence of a single token, i.e., `s`-type or `t`-type, return a special Boolean value that can be tested. All others that expect a value in the source (delimited in some way) return that value if found. If the optional argument is not present, they return a default value as defined in the specification of `O`, `D`, or `E` types, or they return the special value `-NoValue-` in the case of `o`, `d`, or `e` types.

This `-NoValue-` value is truly special: it prints if typeset, but it is defined with special `\catcode` settings so you cannot manually enter it in your document. Thus, if you type `\foo[-NoValue-]`, that is distinguishable from `\foo` without any optional argument. To test for this special value the code can make use of one of the following three tests, which differ only in the branches they support:

```
\IfNoValueTF{arg}{true code}{false code}
\IfNoValueT{arg}{true code}
\IfNoValueF{arg}{false code}
```

The `\IfNoValue...` tests are used to check if `<arg>` (`#1`, `#2`, etc.) is the special `-NoValue-` marker. For example

```
\NewDocumentCommand\foo{o m}
  {\IfNoValueTF {#1}%
    {\DoSomethingWithJustTheMandatoryArgument{#2}}%
    {\DoSomethingWithBothArguments{#1}{#2}}}
```

uses a different internal function if the optional argument is given than if it is not present. If you only need to do something if the argument is present (or not present), use one of the other two tests.

```
\IfValueTF{arg}{true code}{false code}
\IfValueT{arg}{true code}
\IfValueF{arg}{false code}
```

The reverse form of the `\IfNoValue...` tests are also available. The context determines which logical form makes the most sense for a given code scenario.

```
\IfBlankTF{arg}{true code}{false code}
\IfBlankT{arg}{true code}                \IfBlankF{arg}{false code}
```

The `\IfNoValueTF` command chooses the *true code* if the optional argument has not been used at all (and it returns the special `-NoValue-` marker), but not if it has been given an empty value. In contrast, `\IfBlankTF` returns true if its argument either is truly empty or contains only one or more normal blanks. Combining both gives full flexibility. As usual, the variants `\IfBlankT` and `\IfBlankF` are also provided for use when only one branch leads to some action.

	<code>\NewDocumentCommand\foo{m!o}{\par #1:</code>	
1: Real content in argument!	<code>\IfNoValueTF{#2}{No optional}%</code>	
2: Blanks in or empty argument!	<code>{\IfBlankTF{#2}{Blanks in or empty}%</code>	
3: Blanks in or empty argument!	<code>{Real content in}}%</code>	
4: Real content in argument!	<code>\space argument!}</code>	
5: No optional argument! [x]	<code>\foo{1}[bar] \foo{2}[] \foo{3}[] \foo{4}[\space] \foo{5} [x]</code>	A-1-13

Note that the `\space` in (4) is considered real content — because it is a command and not a “space” character — even though it results in producing a space. You can also observe in (5) the effect of the `!` specifier, preventing the last `\foo` from interpreting `[x]` as its optional argument.

```
\IfBooleanTF{arg}{true code}{false code}
\IfBooleanT{arg}{true code}                \IfBooleanF{arg}{false code}
```

To test if a star (s-type) or some other token (t-type) is present in the input, the above three tests are available: they test if *(arg)* (*#1*, *#2*, etc.) is “true” or “false”. This makes it easy to define conditional processing based on the existence of a star or some other token as show below:

```
\NewDocumentCommand\foo{sm}
{\IfBooleanTF{#1}{\DoSomethingWithStar{#2}}%
{\DoSomethingWithoutStar{#2}}}
```

Note that the `\IfBoolean...` tests cannot be used to test legacy T_EX or L^AT_EX switches; they are available only for testing the argument parsing results. They expect to receive either `\BooleanTrue` or `\BooleanFalse` as their argument, and these flags are set when searching for an optional character (using *s* or *t(char)*). The flags have user-accessible names so that you can easily define further commands whose results can be tested with `\IfBooleanTF`.

Using Embellishments

The optional embellishments offered through the *e* or *E*-type differ in two respects from other optional arguments: they are identified by a start token, but their value is then given in a following brace group and not by everything up to some end token. The other important difference is that the list of start tokens can appear in any order in the document and is still recognized.

To give an example, consider defining a command `\xgets` that produces a left arrow but allows you to add some material above and below. A possible syntax for this could be `\xgets^{above}`, `\xgets_{below}` and for material above and below `\xgets^{above}_{below}` (or the other way around). This is the sort of syntax that the e-types offer.

The `amsmath` package already has a `\xleftarrow` command that provides the functionality we want for `\xgets`, but it uses an optional and a mandatory argument for it, so you always have to specify the *above* argument even if it is empty. To exhibit the embellishment syntax, we define `\xgets` to simply pass its arguments to the `amsmath` command. We use the E-type and set up empty defaults so that if one or both of the embellishments are not present in the document, we pass empty values to the arguments of `\xleftarrow`. The order of tokens in the argument to E defines what is received as #1 (the value from `_`) and what as #2 (the value from `^`) regardless of the order used in the document, where we specified `^` first. For comparison, the example shows both the embellishment syntax and the one used by `amsmath`.

A-1-14	$\leftarrow \overset{x}{\leftarrow} \underset{y}{\leftarrow} \overset{x+y}{x-y}$	<pre>\usepackage{amsmath} \NewDocumentCommand\xgets{ E_{_}^{}}{\xleftarrow[#1]{#2}} \[\xgets \xgets^x \xgets_y \xgets^{x+y}_{x-y} \] \[\xleftarrow{} \xleftarrow{x} \xleftarrow[y]{} \xleftarrow[x-y]{x+y} \]</pre>
	$\leftarrow \overset{x}{\leftarrow} \underset{y}{\leftarrow} \overset{x+y}{x-y}$	

The E-type used in the above example defines one (empty) default value per test token. However, it is allowed to make the list of default values *shorter* than the list of test tokens. For those tokens that have no default, the special `-NoValue-` marker is returned (as for the e-type). Thus, for example

`E{!?}{\Bang}`

has default `Bang` for the `!` test character, but returns the `-NoValue-` marker as a default for `?`, which could then be tested for with one of the test commands. This allows mixing of explicit defaults with testing for missing values.

Using the body of an environment as an argument

While environments `\begin{env} ... \end{env}` are typically used in cases where the code implementing the `(env)`ironment does not need to access the contents of the environment (its “body”), it is sometimes useful to have the body as a standard argument.

This is achieved by *ending* the argument specification with `b`, which is a dedicated argument type for this situation. For instance, the next example grabs the body as argument #2 and doubles it with different font settings. Environments that use this feature can be nested.

A-1-15	Hello world:	
	Lighten up! <i>Hello world:</i>	<pre>\NewDocumentEnvironment{twice}{0{\ttfamily} +b}{#2#1#2?}{*}</pre>
	<i>Lighten up!</i> ?	<pre>\begin{twice}[\itshape] Hello world: \par Lighten up! \end{twice}</pre>
	TT?*wicewice?*	<pre>\par \begin{twice} T \end{twice}\begin{twice} wice \end{twice}</pre>

Special meaning
of ! together with b

The + prefix is used to allow multiple paragraphs in the environment's body. By default, spaces are trimmed at both ends of the body: in the example there would otherwise be spaces coming from the ends of the lines after `[\itshape]` and `up!`. Putting the prefix ! before `b` suppresses space-trimming. Argument processors discussed below can also be applied to the `b` specifier.

When `b` is used in the argument specification, the last argument of the environment declaration (e.g., `\NewDocumentEnvironment`), which consists of the *end code* to insert at `\end{env}`, is not really needed, because one can simply put that code at the end of the *start code*. Nevertheless, this *end code* argument must be provided, even if usually empty — here we added a ? and * in these places to show that they end up one after the other.

Using argument processors

Preprocessing arguments with “argument processors” is a somewhat more advanced topic, but it offers even more flexibility for setting up new document commands. You can, for example, define commands whose arguments (mandatory or optional) consist of comma-separated lists, and the splitting of such arguments is then automatically taken care of for you.

Argument processors are applied to an argument *after* it has been grabbed by the underlying system, but *before* it is passed to *code*. An argument processor can therefore be used to regularize input at an early stage, allowing the internal functions to be completely independent of the input format used in the document. Processors are applied to user input and to default values for optional arguments, but *not* to the special `-NoValue-` marker.

Each argument processor is specified by the syntax `>\{processor}` in the argument specification. Processors are applied from right to left, so that

```
>\ProcessorB >\ProcessorA m
```

would apply `\ProcessorA` followed by `\ProcessorB` to the tokens grabbed by the `m` argument. There are a number of predefined processors that we discuss below, but it is also possible to implement additional ones if the need arises. Because the latter is a rather specialized topic, we refer you to [116] for details.

`\SplitArgument{number}{token(s)}`

This processor splits the argument given at each occurrence of the *token(s)* up to a maximum *number* (thus dividing the input into a maximum of *number* + 1 parts). An error is given if too many *token(s)* are present in the input. The processed input is placed inside *number* + 1 sets of braces for further use, if necessary filled up by adding `{-NoValue-}` if there are fewer than *number* of *token(s)* in the argument. Spaces are trimmed at each end of each item parsed.

In the following example the command has one argument, which is supposed to contain two or fewer semicolons; i.e., it consists of a maximum of three parts. The

result after the split is then passed for further processing to an internal command with three normal mandatory arguments:

```
\NewDocumentCommand\foo{>{\SplitArgument{2}{;}} m}
  {\InternalFunctionWithThreeArguments#1}
```

Note that even though `\InternalFunctionWithThreeArguments` expects three arguments, we have to write `#1` without surrounding braces! The reason is that `#1` contains three brace groups after the processor has acted, i.e., exactly the syntax that the command expects.

`\SplitList{token(s)}`

This processor splits the argument given at each occurrence of the *token(s)* where the number of items is not fixed. Each item with spaces at each end trimmed is then wrapped in braces within `#1`. This result can then be further processed using a mapping function of some sort. For example:

```
\NewDocumentCommand\foo{>{\SplitList{;}} m}
  {\MappingFunction#1\MappingFunctionEnd}
```

The `\MappingFunction` would then need to be a command with one mandatory argument that picks up one brace group from `#1`, checks if it has reached the end of the list (where it finds `\MappingFunctionEnd` instead of a brace group), and if not processes its argument and then calls itself again to pick up the next. The L3 programming layer offers a large selection of mapping functions that work in a similar way, but it is not too difficult to write them in traditional TeX either. However, even simpler is to make use of `\ProcessList` that is offered for exactly this scenario.

`\ProcessList{list}{function}`

The command `\ProcessList` applies a *function* to every entry in a *list*. The *function* should absorb one argument: the list entry. For example

```
\NewDocumentCommand\foo{>{\SplitList{;}}m}{\ProcessList{#1}{\typeout}}
```

would display each part of `\foo's` argument on the terminal.

Two further argument processors are predefined: the first can be quite useful when dealing with arbitrary user input, while the second provides only some syntactic sugar and is mainly there because it was trivial to define it.

`\TrimSpaces \ReverseBoolean`

The `\TrimSpaces` processor removes any leading and trailing spaces (tokens with character code 32 and category code 10) from either end of the argument.

In the following example we define a normal command that retains spaces and a `\spaceless` version that trims them off to show the difference:

	<code>\NewDocumentCommand\withspace{m}{\textbf{#1}}</code>	
	<code>\NewDocumentCommand\spaceless{>{\TrimSpaces}m}{\textbf{#1}}</code>	
Test Hello world lighten up!	Test <code>\withspace{ Hello world }</code> lighten up!	<code>\par</code>
Test Hello world lighten up!	Test <code>\spaceless{ Hello world }</code> lighten up!	

A-1-16

While the user error here is obvious and probably never happens, there are many occasions where it is not and people split arguments over several lines to improve readability (and thereby introduce unwanted spaces). In such cases, trimming the argument value helps avoid subtle errors. `\TrimSpaces` removes even multiple spaces in a row if they happen to end up at the start or end of the argument.

Finally, the `\ReverseBoolean` processor reverses the logic of outcome of an s-type or t-type argument so that the example from earlier would become

```
\NewDocumentCommand\foo{>{\ReverseBoolean}s m}
  {\IfBooleanTF{#1}{\DoSomethingWithoutStar{#2}}}%
  {\DoSomethingWithStar{#2}}}
```

in other words a somewhat convoluted way of implementing `\IfNotBooleanTF`, which does not exist in the language.

A.1.5 Changing arguments to command names

There are a few cases when using commands or declaring new commands in which it is impossible to provide the command name as a single `\. . .` token — instead the command has to be “constructed”. To facilitate this task, the L3 programming layer offers a general mechanism to manipulate arguments in various ways, but for common cases there are also two CamelCase commands for use with `\NewDocumentCommand` and similar constructs.

<code>\UseName{string}</code>	<code>\ExpandArgs{spec} <cmd> {arg₁} ... {arg_n}</code>
-------------------------------	--

`\UseName` turns the *string* into a command name and then immediately executes it. The `\ExpandArgs` alters the arguments of *cmd* according to a *spec*. The *spec* consists of a list of letters, each of which denotes what should happen to the corresponding argument: *c* stands for an argument that is turned into a ‘c’ommand; an *n* represents a ‘n’ormal argument that is not altered, and *N* stands for a ‘N’ormal argument, which is also left unchanged but one consisting only of a single token (and usually unbraced).

For example, *cc* stands for “turn the first two arguments into commands before passing them to *cmd*”. This could then be used together with `\NewCommandCopy` as the *cmd* as follows

```
\NewDocumentCommand\savebyname{m}
  {\ExpandArgs{cc}\NewCommandCopy{saved#1}{#1}}
```

after which a declaration such as `\savebyname{LaTeX}` would copy the definition of `\LaTeX` to `\savedLaTeX`.

As a more complex example, consider the case of this book where we wanted to have a number of “copyedit” commands to add notes into the margin or for longer notes in the main galley (using the `todonotes` package). The copyeditors should have their notes in their own color and numbered sequentially.

For this we define¹ the command `\newcopyedit`, which expects as its mandatory argument the initials of the copyeditor (e.g., `fmi`) and as an optional argument a color name (line 1). Using the initials we define a counter (line 2), e.g., `todofmi`, to count the notes for that person, and we define a command to make the notes, e.g., `\fmi`. To be able to use `\NewDocumentCommand` we need to turn `#2` into a command name, which is done with the help of `\ExpandArgs{c}` (line 3). This newly defined command scans for an optional star and one mandatory argument. It increments the counter associated with the initials (line 4) and then tests for the optional star (line 5). If there was one, it uses `\todo` to make an inline note (line 6) and otherwise a marginal note (line 7). In either case it shows the initials (`#2`) followed by the counter representation, which again needs to be constructed this time with the help of `\UseName` (lines 6 and 7). Finally (line 8), we apply the definition twice to get the copyedit commands `\fmi` and `\ufi`, which we then use within the text.

```
\usepackage{kantlipsum,todonotes}
\NewDocumentCommand\newcopyedit{0{blue} m}           % 1.1
  {\newcounter{todo#2}%                               % 1.2
   \ExpandArgs{c}\NewDocumentCommand{#2}{s m}%       % 1.3
   {\stepcounter{todo#2}%                             % 1.4
    \IfBooleanTF {##1}%                               % 1.5
      {\todo[inline,color=#1!20]{#2 \UseName{thetodo#2}: ##2}}% % 1.6
      {\todo[color=#1!20]{#2 \UseName{thetodo#2}: ##2}}}% % 1.7
   \newcopyedit{fmi} \newcopyedit[red]{ufi}          % 1.8
Kant:\fmi{correct} \kant*[1][1]\fmi{use a different phrase}
\kant[1][2]\ufi*{Add another paragraph!}
```

fmi 1: correct

fmi 2: use a
different phrase

Kant: As any dedicated reader can clearly see, the Ideal of practical reason is a representation of, as far as I know, the things in themselves; as I have shown elsewhere, the phenomena should only be used as a canon for our understanding. The paralogsms of practical reason are what first give rise to the architectonic of practical reason.

ufi 1: Add another paragraph!

A-1-17

There are several other single letters supported in the L3 programming layer that could be used in the *spec* to manipulate arguments in other ways. If you are interested, take a look at the “Argument expansion” section in the L3 programming layer documentation [115].

¹The actual definition we used in the book also added a bookmark to make navigation easy (as explained in Section 2.4.6 on page 103), but that is not shown here.

A.2 Counters and length expressions

A.2.1 Defining and changing counters

Every number internally generated by L^AT_EX has a *counter* (register) associated with it. The name of the counter is usually identical to the name of the environment or the command that generates the number except that it does not start with a `\`. The following is the list of all counters used in L^AT_EX's standard document classes:

<code>part</code>	<code>enumi</code>	<code>figure</code>	<code>equation</code>
<code>chapter</code>	<code>enumii</code>	<code>table</code>	<code>page</code>
<code>section</code>	<code>enumiii</code>	<code>footnote</code>	<code>totalpages</code>
<code>subsection</code>	<code>enumiv</code>	<code>mpfootnote</code>	
<code>subsubsection</code>			
<code>paragraph</code>			
<code>subparagraph</code>			

In addition, there are several configuration parameters that also use the counter interface for modifications. However, they normally do not change when a document is processed. These are:

<code>totalnumber</code>	<code>bottomnumber</code>	<code>secnumdepth</code>	<code>errorcontextlines</code>
<code>topnumber</code>	<code>dbltopnumber</code>	<code>tocdepth</code>	

An environment declared by `\newtheorem` can also have a counter with the same name associated with it, unless the optional argument indicates that it is to be numbered together with another environment. And, of course, additional counters may get added by packages; e.g., the `float` package declares one counter per float type in order to number the floats of this type.

The value of a counter is a single integer. Several counters can be combined into a number, as is usually the case for numbering section headings. For example, in the `book` or `report` classes, 7.4.5 identifies the fifth subsection of the fourth section in the seventh chapter.

Below we describe all the basic L^AT_EX commands that define counters and modify or display their values. These commands are much more powerful if used in conjunction with the `calc` package, which is discussed in Section A.5.2.

`\newcounter{ctr}[parent-ctr]`

This command globally defines a new counter, *ctr*, and initializes it to zero. If a counter with the name *ctr* is already defined, an error message is printed. When you specify the name of another counter as the optional argument, *parent-ctr*, then the newly defined *ctr* is reset when the counter *parent-ctr* is incremented with the `\stepcounter` or `\refstepcounter` command. It also defines the command `\the<ctr>` to always expand to `\arabic{ctr}` even if the optional argument is given — compare this to the behavior of the `\counterwithin` command described next.

```
\counterwithin*[format-cmd]{ctr}{parent-ctr}
```

The operation that defines that one counter is reset whenever another counter is stepped is also available as the command `\counterwithin`. In contrast to `\newcounter`, it alters `\the<ctr>` to typeset `\the<parent-ctr>.<format-cmd>{ctr}` where `<format-cmd>` is a command such as `\roman`. If the optional argument is not present, it defaults to `\arabic`.

If you use the starred form, then `\the<ctr>` is not touched, which is useful if it needs a more complex definition or is already correctly set up. Obviously, in that case the optional argument is meaningless and is ignored if given.

```
\counterwithout*[format-cmd]{ctr}{parent-ctr}
```

However, sometimes you need the opposite action. For example, the `report` class defines the `footnote` counter to be reset whenever a new chapter starts. If you want your footnotes nevertheless to be numbered sequentially throughout a document, then specifying

```
\counterwithout{footnote}{chapter}
```

achieves this for you by removing it from the reset list of the `chapter` counter and altering `\thefootnote` accordingly. If you use the optional `<format-cmd>`, then this gets applied in the definition of `\the<ctr>`; otherwise, `\arabic` is used. As above, the starred form does not alter `\the<ctr>` at all.

```
\setcounter{ctr}{val}      \addtocounter{ctr}{val}
```

With `\setcounter` the value of counter `ctr` is globally set equal to the value `val`. With `\addtocounter` it is globally incremented by `val`.

```
\stepcounter{ctr}      \refstepcounter{ctr}
```

Both commands globally increment the counter `ctr` and reset all subsidiary counters — that is, those declared with `<ctr>` in the optional argument on the `\newcounter` command or in the second argument of `\counterwithin`.

The `\refstepcounter` command additionally defines the current `\ref` value to be the text generated by the command `\the<ctr>`. Note that whereas stepping a counter is a global operation, setting the current `\ref` value is done locally and thus is valid only inside the current group. As a result, Example A-2-1 on the next page does not produce the desired output but instead picks up the section number. The correct solution would be to move `\refstepcounter` before the `\textbf` command — and also precede it with `\leavevmode` so that it is not executed in vertical mode, which makes a difference if `hyperref` is used.¹

¹The `hyperref` package adds an anchor at the point `\refstepcounter` is used, and that can alter the spacing in the document if it is encountered in vertical mode.

5 A Failure

Exercise 5.a: A test.

Exercise 5.b: Another test.

Referencing exercises: 5 and 5.

```
\newcounter{ex} \renewcommand\thesection{\thesection.\alph{ex}}
\newenvironment{EX}{\begin{flushleft}%
  \textbf{\refstepcounter{ex}Exercise-\thesection:}}
  {\end{flushleft}}
\setcounter{section}{4} % for testing
\section{A Failure}
\begin{EX} \label{A} A test. \end{EX}
\begin{EX} \label{B} Another test. \end{EX}
Referencing exercises: \ref{A} and \ref{B}.
```

A-2-1

<code>\value{ctr}</code>	<code>\arabic{ctr}</code>	<code>\roman{ctr}</code>	<code>\Roman{ctr}</code>
	<code>\alph{ctr}</code>	<code>\Alph{ctr}</code>	<code>\fnsymbol{ctr}</code>

The `\value` command produces the current value of a counter to be used in places where L^AT_EX expects to see a number, such as in the *val* argument of the `\setcounter` or `\addtocounter` command or when comparing numbers using the command `\ifthenelse` from the `ifthen` package.

However, despite its name, the `\value` command cannot be used to typeset the value of the counter! For that purpose, a set of presentation commands are available, all of which take a counter name as an argument.

Counter presentations
with restricted ranges

With `\arabic` the counter value is represented as an Arabic numeral. With `\roman` and `\Roman`, lowercase and uppercase roman numerals are produced, respectively. The remaining commands can be used only if the counter value is within a certain range. The `\alph` command displays the value as a lowercase letter: a, b, c, ..., z. Thus, the value should lie in the range 1, ..., 26; otherwise, an error is signaled. The `\Alph` command is similar but produces uppercase letters. Finally, `\fnsymbol` represents the counter value as a traditional footnote symbol (e.g., *, †). In that case the value must not be greater than 9, unless an extension package, like `footmisc` or `fntcount`, is used. The next example shows all of these commands in action.

8, viii, VIII, h, H, ††
Anno Domini MCMXCIV

```
\newcounter{exa}\setcounter{exa}{8}
\arabic{exa}, \roman{exa}, \Roman{exa}, \alph{exa},
\Alph{exa}, \fnsymbol{exa} \par
\setcounter{exa}{1994} Anno Domini \scshape{\roman{exa}}
```

A-2-2

`\the<ctr>`

A shorthand to produce the default visual representation for a counter *ctr* is provided by the command `\the<ctr>` (e.g., `\thesection` for the `section` counter).

As mentioned earlier, this command is initialized by the `\newcounter` declaration to produce `\arabic{ctr}`. However, in L^AT_EX such a visual representation often involves more than a single number. For example, with sectioning counters one usually displays the value of the current section as well as the value of the current subsection, and so on. For this reason `\the<ctr>` is typically (re)defined to produce a more complex representation. This practice becomes even more important when you consider

that `\refstepcounter` not only increments a certain counter and resets lower-level counters but also defines the “current” label (as picked up by `\label`) to be the result of `\the<ctr>` for the counter being stepped.

As an example, inside the standard article class, we find definitions for sectioning counters equivalent to the following:

```
\newcounter{part}                \newcounter{section}
\newcounter{subsection}[section] \newcounter{subsubsection}[subsection]

\renewcommand\thepart            {\Roman{part}}
\renewcommand\thesection        {\arabic{section}}
\renewcommand\thesubsection     {\thesection.\arabic{subsection}}
\renewcommand\thesubsubsection{\thesubsection.\arabic{subsubsection}}
```

You see how lower-level counters are reset when upper-level counters are stepped, as well as how the representation of the counters (the `\the...` commands) are constructed from the current counter and the counters at a higher level. Note how the `part` counter does not influence any of the lower levels.

As another example, we look at Table 4.2 on page 256, which shows the structure of the enumeration list counters. In fact, these counters are defined inside the file `latex.ltx`, which contains the kernel code for \LaTeX . Only the representation, prefix, and label field commands are defined in the standard class files as follows:

```
\renewcommand\theenumi  {\arabic{enumi}}
\renewcommand\theenumii {\alph{enumii}}  \renewcommand\p@enumii {\theenumi}
\renewcommand\theenumiii {\roman{enumiii}} \renewcommand\p@enumiv {\p@enumiii\theenumiii}
\renewcommand\theenumiv {\Alph{enumiv}}   \renewcommand\p@enumiii {\theenumi(\theenumii)}

\newcommand\labelenumi  {\theenumi.}      \newcommand\labelenumii {\(\theenumii)}
\newcommand\labelenumiii {\theenumiii.}   \newcommand\labelenumiv {\theenumiv.}
```

Finally, we show how the standard classes handle the equation counter. Like the enumeration counters, this counter is declared inside `latex.ltx`. In the article class, the counter is never reset:

```
\renewcommand\theequation{\arabic{equation}}
```

In the report and book classes, the equation number is reset for each chapter with the `\counterwithin` command:

```
\counterwithin{equation}{chapter}
% This automatically does:
%   \renewcommand\theequation{\thechapter.\arabic{equation}}
```

Thus, the representation also differs in both cases.¹

¹The actual definition is somewhat more complex, because some low-level code is used to suppress the chapter number if it is zero.

A.2.2 fmtcount — Specially formatted counters and numbers

We already looked at the `fmtcount` package in Section 3.3.1 on page →I 154 and its ability to produce ordinal numbers from counter values, allowing you to generate “Second section in 1st appendix” in a number of languages. In addition, it offers a set of other counter presentations not available with standard L^AT_EX.

<code>\binary{ctr}</code>	<code>\octal{ctr}</code>	<code>\hexadecimal{ctr}</code>	<code>\Hexadecimal{ctr}</code>
<code>\aaalph{ctr}</code>	<code>\AAalph{ctr}</code>	<code>\abalph{ctr}</code>	<code>\ABalph{ctr}</code>

These work like `\arabic`, etc., but format the counter value of *ctr* in a special format. There is also a `\decimal` command, which by default produces exactly the same as L^AT_EX’s `\arabic` (but see below).

The different formats have some restrictions on the size of the value they accept, e.g., for `\octal`, only numbers below 32769 are allowed.¹

Commands that produce letters (in addition to, or instead of, digits) exist in two forms: if the command name starts with an uppercase letter, then uppercase letters are typeset; otherwise lowercase letters. The `\. . alph` commands extend the range of supported values by using several letters when we have exhausted “a, . . . , z”. The command `\aaalph` then continues with “aa, bb, . . . , zz, aaa, bbb, . . .”, while `\abalph` continues with “ab, ac, . . . , az, ba, bb, bc, . . .”.

<code>\padzeroes[<i>digits</i>]</code>
--

Sometimes you may need to typeset a set of numbers with always the same number of digits, if necessary padded with zeros. This is available for all commands that produce digits (and possible letters in addition). To specify the padding you use `\padzeroes` with the optional argument specifying the expected number of *digits* in the result (if the argument is not given, it defaults to 17). If the counter value is larger, then no zeros are added, and the value is typeset as is (with more digits); e.g., the binary value is not padded in the example below. To return to no padding, use 0 in the *digits* argument.

```

\usepackage{fmtcount} \newcounter{test} \setcounter{test}{29}
\padzeroes[4]
\decimal{test} \binary{test} \octal{test} \hexadecimal{test} \par
0029 11101 0035 001d Unpadded: \padzeroes[0]
Unpadded: 29 11101 35 1d \decimal{test} \binary{test} \octal{test} \hexadecimal{test}

```

A-2-3

<code>\decimalnum{num}</code>	<code>\binarynum{num}</code>	<code>\octalnum{num}</code>
<code>\hexadecimalnum{num}</code>	<code>\Hexadecimalnum{num}</code>	<code>\aaalphnum{num}</code>
<code>\AAalphnum{num}</code>	<code>\abalphnum{num}</code>	<code>\ABalphnum{num}</code>

Instead of formatting the value of a counter, you can format an explicit number by using one of these commands. They too react to `\padzeroes` as explained above.

¹There is a limit imposed by T_EX for counter values, but that is much higher; thus, this is a restriction of the implementation that may get lifted one day.

A.2.3 sillypage — Page and other counting à la Monty Python

Even in a serious book there should be time for some lighthearted jokes (once in a while at least), and if you have read carefully, you may have noticed one or the other within these pages.

During the last stages of producing this book, I came across the `sillypage` package (by Phelype Oleinik, Paulo Cereda, `samcarter`, and Ulrike Fischer) that brings a masterpiece of British sketch culture to the \LaTeX world: it provides Monty Python's "The Ministry of Silly Walks" in the form of a counter format, depicting the walk through twelve pictograms:

A-2-4



By specifying `\pagenumbering{silly}` the page numbers of your document loop through the above walk, while with `sillynumeral`, each page number is uniquely mapped to a composition of pictograms (in base 12). In either case it turns your document into a nice thumbnail book in which the page numbers perform the silly walk in a kineographic fashion. Be careful to avoid using `\pageref` when silly page numbering is in force, because this command would then display the references as (rather large) pictograms, which may not be what you intended.

There is also the command `\silly`, which requires a \LaTeX counter name as its argument and can be used like `\arabic` or `\roman`. Finally, the two commands `\sillystep` and `sillynumeral` expect an integer and turn it into the corresponding pictogram or sequence of pictograms, respectively.

A.2.4 Defining and changing space parameters

In \LaTeX two kinds of space parameters (lengths) exist: “rigid” lengths (called $\langle dimen \rangle$ in *The \TeX book* [84]), which are fixed, and “rubber” lengths (called $\langle skip \rangle$ in *The \TeX book*), which have a natural length and a degree of positive and negative elasticity. New lengths in \LaTeX are allocated as type $\langle skip \rangle$ so that you always have the choice of initializing them as rigid or rubber lengths (by specifying plus and minus parts). On the other hand, all standard lengths in \LaTeX are of type rigid, unless specifically declared in Appendix C of the *\LaTeX Manual* to be rubber. Here we discuss the commands provided by \LaTeX for dealing with lengths.

`\newlength{cmd}`

The declaration `\newlength` allocates a new (rubber) length register and associates the command name `cmd` with it. If a command `cmd` already exists, you get an error message. The new length is preset to zero. Just like with `\newcommand`, you find that the braces around `cmd` are often omitted in actual code because the argument must consist of a single command name.

<i>dimension</i>	<i>explanation</i>	<i>visualization</i>
sp	Scaled point (65536sp = 1 pt) T _E X's smallest unit	
pt	Point = $\frac{1}{72.27}$ in = 0.351 mm	|
bp	Big point = $\frac{1}{72}$ in = 0.353 mm, also known as PostScript point	|
dd	Didot point = $\frac{1}{72}$ of a French inch = 0.376 mm	|
mm	Millimeter = 2.845pt	u
pc	Pica = 12pt = 4.218mm	└─┘
cc	Cicero = 12dd = 4.531 mm	└─┘
cm	Centimeter = 10mm = 2.371pc	└───┘
in	Inch = 25.4mm = 72.27pt = 6.022pc	└──────────┘
ex	Height of a small “x” in the current font (approximately)	┐
em	Width of capital “M” in current font (approximately)	└─┘
mu	Math unit (18mu = 1 em) for positioning in math mode	|
fil	Infinite stretch or shrink, i.e., can be used only in plus or minus part of a rubber length and overwrites any finite stretch present	
fill	Second order infinite stretch or shrink, overwrites first order	
filll	Third order infinite stretch or shrink (for emergencies)	

Table A.1: L^AT_EX's units of length

```
\setlength{cmd}{length}    \addtolength{cmd}{length}
```

This sets the value of the length command *cmd* equal to the length *length* or, in the case of `\addtolength`, adds the specified amount to the existing value. In the examples below, the T_EX command `\the` is used to typeset the actual contents of the length variable. It requires the register command name *without* braces!

```

\newlength\Mylen
\setlength \Mylen{10mm} Mylen = \the\Mylen
\addtolength\Mylen{0pt plus 4pt minus 2pt}
\par Mylen = \the\Mylen
\addtolength\Mylen{-10mm plus 1fil}
\par Mylen = \the\Mylen

```

Mylen = 28.45274pt
Mylen = 28.45274pt plus 4.0pt minus 2.0pt
Mylen = 0.0pt plus 1.0fil minus 2.0pt

A-2-5

Lengths can be specified in various units, as shown in Table A.1. Notice the difference between the typographic point (pt), which is normally used in T_EX, and the (big) point used by PostScript and PDF, for example. Thus, when reserving space for an EPS picture, you need to specify the bounding box dimension in bp to get the correct space.

command	explanation
<code>\hspace{len}</code>	Horizontal space of width <i>len</i> that can be a rigid or a rubber length
<code>\enspace</code>	Horizontal space equal to half a quad
<code>\quad, \qquad</code>	Horizontal space equal to the em value of the font; <code>\qquad</code> equals two em
<code>\hfil</code>	Horizontal rubber space that can stretch between 0 and ∞
<code>\hfill</code>	Horizontal rubber space that can stretch between 0 and ∞ ; overwrites <code>\hfil</code>
<code>\hrulefill</code>	Similar to <code>\hfill</code> , but draws a solid horizontal line
<code>\dotfill</code>	Similar to <code>\hfill</code> , but draws a dotted line

Table A.2: Predefined horizontal spaces

<code>\settowidth{cmd}{text}</code>	
<code>\settoheight{cmd}{text}</code>	<code>\settodepth{cmd}{text}</code>

Instead of specifying a length value explicitly, three commands are available that allow you to measure a given text and assign the result. With `\settowidth` the value of the length command *cmd* is set equal to the natural width of the typeset version of *text*. This command is very useful for defining lengths that vary with the string contents or the type size. The other two commands work similarly but measure the height and the depth rather than the width of the typeset *text*.

	<code>\newlength\Mylen</code>
width = 47.67996pt	<code>\settowidth \Mylen{Typography} width = \the\Mylen \\\</code>
height = 6.76pt	<code>\settoheight\Mylen{Typography} height = \the\Mylen \\\</code>
depth = 2.18pt	<code>\settodepth \Mylen{Typography} depth = \the\Mylen \\\</code>
Use larger font and recalculate:	<code>Use larger font and recalculate: \\\</code>
A-2-6 width = 57.21597pt	<code>\settowidth\Mylen{\large Typography} width = \the\Mylen</code>

<code>\fill</code>	<code>\stretch{dec-num}</code>
--------------------	--------------------------------

These two rubber lengths are intended to be used in the argument of `\vspace` and similar commands. The `\fill` rubber length is preset with a natural length of zero but can stretch to any positive value; in other words, it holds the value `0pt` plus `1fill`. Do not change its value! It is used in various places in the kernel, and a change would produce strange effects.

An often more useful rubber length is provided by the `\stretch` command — in fact, `\fill` is equivalent to `\stretch{1}`. More generally, `\stretch{dec-num}` has a stretchability of *dec-num* times `\fill`. It can be used to fine-tune the positioning of text horizontally or vertically — for instance, to provide spaces that have a certain relation to each other. Example A-2-8 demonstrates its application.

Horizontal space

Table A.2 shows horizontal space commands known to \LaTeX . A flexible horizontal space of any desired width is produced by the `\hspace` command. The command

<i>command</i>	<i>explanation</i>
<code>\vspace{len}</code>	Vertical space of height <i>len</i> that can be a rigid or a rubber length
<code>\smallskip</code>	Vertical skip of <code>\smallskipamount</code> (default about one quarter of <code>\baselineskip</code>)
<code>\medskip</code>	Vertical skip of <code>\medskipamount</code> (default about one half of <code>\baselineskip</code>)
<code>\bigskip</code>	Vertical skip of <code>\bigskipamount</code> (default about one <code>\baselineskip</code>)
<code>\vfill</code>	Vertical rubber length that can stretch between 0 and ∞

Table A.3: Predefined vertical spaces

`\hspace*` is the same as `\hspace`, but the space is never removed — not even at a line boundary.

A space in front of or following an `\hspace` or `\hspace*` command is significant, as the following example shows:

This is a	0.5 in wide space.	<code>\par This is a\hspace{0.5in}0.5~in wide space.</code>	
This is a	0.5 in wide space.	<code>\par This is a \hspace{0.5in}0.5~in wide space.</code>	
This is a	0.5 in wide space.	<code>\par This is a \hspace{0.5in} 0.5~in wide space.</code>	A-2-7

The next example shows how rubber lengths can be used to fine-tune the positioning of information on a line. Note that the `\hfill` command is, in fact, an abbreviation for `\hspace{\fill}`. To save typing, we also defined a command with an optional argument, `\HS`, which behaves like `\hfill` when used without an argument but can be made less or more flexible than that command by specifying the stretchability (a value of 1 has the same effect as `\hfill`).

		<code>\newcommand{\HS}[1][1.]{\hspace{\stretch{#1}}}</code>	
		<code>\begin{center}</code>	
left		<code>left \hfill</code>	right\\
left	$\frac{2}{5}$	<code>left \HS[2]\fbox{\$\frac{2}{5}\$}\HS[5]</code>	right\\
left	middle	<code>left \HS middle \hfill</code>	right\\
left	middle	<code>left \hrulefill\ middle \hrulefill\</code>	right\\
left		<code>left \dotfill\</code>	right\\
left		<code>left \dotfill\ \HS[.5] \dotfill\</code>	right\\
left		<code>left \dotfill\ \HS \dotfill\</code>	right\\
left		<code>left \dotfill\ \HS[2.] \dotfill\</code>	right
		<code>\end{center}</code>	

A-2-8

Vertical space

A vertical space is produced with the `\vspace` command, which works similarly to `\hspace`. In particular, a `\vspace*` command generates vertical space that is never eliminated, even when it falls on a page break where a `\vspace` command would be ignored at this point. Table A.3 shows vertical space commands known to L^AT_EX that are common to all standard classes.

L^AT_EX users are often confused about the behavior of the `\vspace` command. When used inside a paragraph, the vertical space is added after the end of the line

containing the `\vspace`; between paragraphs it behaves as you would expect.

The use of a `\vspace` command inside a paragraph is perhaps a bit surprising.

The `\vspace{3mm}` use of a `\verb!\vspace!` command inside a paragraph is perhaps a bit surprising.

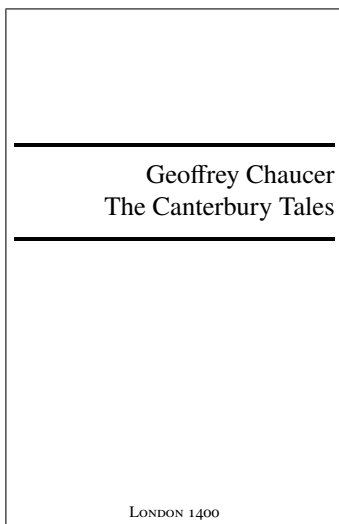
`\vspace{\baselineskip}`

Between paragraphs, adjusting the spacing is somewhat more useful, and it allows control of the white space before and after displayed material.

Between paragraphs, adjusting the spacing is somewhat more useful, and it allows control of the white space before and after displayed material.

A-2-9

Stretchable space as introduced on page 653 can also be used for vertical material. The `\vfill` command is, in fact, an abbreviation for a blank line followed by `\vspace{\fill}`. More generally, you can use the `\stretch` command in combination with `\vspace` to control the layout of a complete page. This could be useful for designing a title page: if the title should be placed one third of the way down the page, one simply has to place `\vspace*{\stretch{1}}` before it and `\vspace*{\stretch{2}}` after it.




```
\newcommand\HR{\noindent\rule{\linewidth}{1.5pt}}
\begin{titlepage}
  \vspace*{\stretch{1}}
  \HR
  \begin{flushright}
    \LARGE Geoffrey Chaucer \\\
    The Canterbury Tales
  \end{flushright}
  \HR
  \vspace*{\stretch{2}}
  \begin{center}
    \textsc{London 1400}
  \end{center}
\end{titlepage}
```

A-2-10

`\addvspace{space}`

While \LaTeX 's user command `\vspace` unconditionally adds a vertical space (which is removed only at page boundaries, while its starred form even suppresses this action), there exists another command for adding vertical space that is often used in the kernel and in some package files. The `\addvspace` command has somewhat different semantics, and although it appears to be a user-level command judging from its name, in fact it is not.


 *Use with care — if at all*

In contrast to `\vspace`, the command `\addvspace` is allowed only in vertical mode (i.e., between paragraphs). If used in horizontal mode, it issues the famous “Something’s wrong—perhaps a missing `\item`” error, which most L^AT_EX users know and love. Most of the time this error has nothing to do with a missing or misplaced `\item` but simply signals a misplaced `\addvspace` command. But it shows some of the history of this command: originally, it was developed and used solely for spacing items in list environments.

The other important semantic difference between `\vspace` and `\addvspace` is that the latter adds a space whose size depends on any directly preceding space. The precise rules are inherited from L^AT_EX 2.09 and show some strange discontinuities that nobody these days seems to be able to explain fully, though for backward compatibility the command is retained in this form. If s is the space to be added by `\addvspace` and ℓ is the size of the vertical space (if any) before the current point, then the following rules apply:

If	$s < 0\text{pt} < \ell$	do	backup by s
elseif	$\ell = 0\text{pt}$	do	add an additional space of s
		else	make a space of $\max(\ell, s)$ out of the two

If we ignore for the moment the special cases in the first two lines of the rules, then the idea behind `\addvspace` can be described as follows: if we have two vertically oriented constructs, such as a list and a heading, and both want to surround themselves with some vertical spacing before and after, it is probably not a good idea if both such spaces are applied if the objects directly follow each other. In that case using the maximum of both spaces is usually a better solution. This is why lists, headings, and other typeset elements use `\addvspace` rather than `\vspace`.

Surprising space
size changes 

This has some rather surprising effects. If you have two such display objects following each other, then only the maximum of the space surrounding them is used. However, if you try to enlarge that space slightly, such as by placing `\vspace{4pt}` between them, then suddenly the space becomes far larger. This result occurs because in a sequence like

```
\addvspace{10pt} \vspace{4pt} \addvspace{8pt}
```

the second `\addvspace` is unable to see the first and therefore adds all of its space (with the result that the total space is 22pt); without the `\vspace` in the middle you would get 10pt total. The `\vspace` does not interact with the following `\addvspace` because it actually generates a space of 4pt followed by a space of 0pt so that the second rule applies.

If you notice that your space got too large and you reduce your correction to, say, `\vspace{2pt}`, nothing changes substantially (you still get 20pt). Even more surprisingly, if you try to make the original space smaller by using, say, `\vspace{-3pt}`, you end up with 15pt total space — still more than before.

To actually get a space of 7pt in that place, you would need to back up by 11pt. Unfortunately, there is no way to determine the size of the necessary space other than

by experimenting or looking into the definitions of the objects above and below, to find out what `\addvspace` values are used at a given point.

The same problem arises if some other invisible object separates two consecutive `\addvspace` commands. For example, a color-changing command or a `\label` effectively hides a previous `\addvspace`, with the result that suddenly not the maximum, but the sum of both spaces, appears.

`\addpenalty{penalty}`

Although `\addpenalty` is not a spacing command, it is described here because it is intended to work together with `\addvspace`. A penalty is \TeX 's way of assigning a “badness” to breakpoints. A high penalty means that this is a bad place to break, while a negative penalty indicates to \TeX that this is a rather good place to start a new line or a new page. Details of this mechanism can be found in Chapters 14 and 15 of [84].

The `\addpenalty` command requires a \TeX penalty value as an argument (useful values are between -10000 and 10000). For example, `\@startsection` discussed in Chapter 2 uses `\addpenalty` to make the space before a heading become a good place to break (default value -300). If `\addpenalty` and `\addvspace` are mixed, then this has two effects:

- \TeX still uses the maximum of the spaces even if `\addpenalty` appears between two `\addvspace` commands.
- \TeX moves the potential break “visually” to the beginning of the white space, even if there is an `\addvspace` before the `\addpenalty`.

The second feature is important to avoid white space remaining at the bottom of pages. See page 771 for a discussion of how this is achieved.

A.2.5 The L3 programming layer — Computation support

In 2020 (more or less thirty years after its initial conception) the L3 programming layer has become an official part of the \LaTeX format and with it huge libraries for programming if you implement a package using that layer — its reference manual alone amounts to more than 300 pages [115]. These days many packages and the new parts of \LaTeX core are written using this layer, and more will follow over time.

Some parts of the layer are also very useful on the document level or in packages that are otherwise implemented in traditional $\LaTeX_{2\epsilon}$ style and are therefore offered also with interfaces that can be directly used in such scenarios. In this section we look at a few that deal with floating point, integer, and length calculations. Information beyond what is presented here can be found in the reference manual [115].

`\fpeval{floating point expression}`

The expandable command `\fpeval` takes as its argument a floating-point expression and produces a result using the normal rules of mathematics. As this command is expandable, it can be used in places where \TeX requires a number and for example

within a low-level `\edef` operation to give a purely numerical result. As a brief overview, the floating-point expressions may comprise:

- Basic arithmetic: addition $x + y$, subtraction $x - y$, multiplication $x * y$, division x / y , square root \sqrt{x} , and parentheses.
- Comparison operators: $x < y$, $x \leq y$, $x > y$, $x \neq y$, etc.
- Boolean logic: sign `sign` x , negation `!` x , conjunction $x \&\& y$, disjunction $x || y$, ternary operator $x ? y : z$.
- Exponentials: `exp` x , `ln` x , x^y .
- Integer factorial: `fact` x .
- Trigonometry: `sin` x , `cos` x , `tan` x , `cot` x , `sec` x , `csc` x expecting their arguments in radians, and `sind` x , `cosd` x , `tand` x , `cotd` x , `secd` x , `cscd` x expecting their arguments in degrees.
- Inverse trigonometric functions: `asin` x , `acos` x , `atan` x , `acot` x , `asec` x , `acsc` x giving a result in radians, and `asind` x , `acosd` x , `atand` x , `acotd` x , `asecd` x , `acscd` x giving a result in degrees.
- Extrema: `max`(x_1, x_2, \dots), `min`(x_1, x_2, \dots), `abs`(x).
- Rounding functions, controlled by two optional values, n (number of places, 0 by default) and t (behavior on a tie, NaN by default):
 - `trunc`(x, n) rounds towards zero,
 - `floor`(x, n) rounds towards $-\infty$,
 - `ceil`(x, n) rounds towards $+\infty$,
 - `round`(x, n, t) rounds to the closest value, with ties rounded to an even value by default, towards zero if $t = 0$, towards $+\infty$ if $t > 0$ and towards $-\infty$ if $t < 0$.
- Random numbers: `rand`() , `randint`(m, n).
- Constants: `pi`, `deg` (one degree in radians).
- Dimensions, automatically expressed in points; e.g., `pc` is 12.
- Automatic conversion (no need for `\number`) of integer, dimension, and skip variables to floating-point numbers, expressing dimensions in points and ignoring the stretch and shrink components of skips.
- Tuples: (x_1, \dots, x_n) that can be added together, multiplied or divided by a floating point number, and nested.

The next example shows a computation with input on the left as a formula and output on the right (in blue) and a random number generation and a few dice rolls, so the result of that part will vary each time you rerun the example.

<p>LaTeX can now compute:</p> $\frac{\sin(3.5)}{2} + 2 \cdot 10^{-3} = -0.1733916138448099$	<pre> \usepackage{color} \newcommand\dice{\fpeval{randint(1,6)}} \LaTeX{} can now compute: \[\frac{\sin (3.5)}{2} + 2\cdot 10^{-3} = \mathcolor{blue}{\fpeval{sin(3.5)/2 + 2e-3}} \]</pre>
<p>A random number: 0.1815724000112577 and six dice rolls: 6,1,2,1,6,4.</p>	<p>A random number: $\fpeval{rand()}$ and six dice rolls: $\dice, \dice, \dice, \dice, \dice, \dice$.</p>

$\text{\inteval}\{integer\ expression\}$

The expandable command `\inteval` takes as its argument an integer expression and produces a result using the normal rules of mathematics with some restrictions, as explained below. The operations recognized are +, −, *, and / plus parentheses. As this command is expandable, it can be used when TeX requires a number and, for example, within a low-level `\edef` operation to give a purely numerical result.

This is basically a thin wrapper for the primitive `\numexpr` command and therefore has some syntax restrictions. These are:

- / denotes division rounded to the closest integer with ties rounded away from zero;
- there is an error, and the overall expression evaluates to zero whenever the absolute value of any intermediate result exceeds $2^{31} - 1$, except in the case of scaling operations $a*b/c$, for which $a*b$ may be arbitrarily large;
- parentheses may not appear after unary + or −; namely, placing +(or −(at the start of an expression or after +, −, *, /, or (*expr*) leads to an error.

In the example we calculate $1 < \frac{5}{3} < 2$ in different ways, which according the above rules is always rounded to 2. Note the need to add 0 in the last part of the equation to avoid an unary minus in front of the open parenthesis (which would fail because of the above restriction). For comparison we also do the calculation with `\fpeval`, which shows that the floating-point calculation does not have this issue (but of course it is much slower as it is fully programmed in TeX macros).

<p>$2 = 2 = 2$</p>	<pre> \[\inteval{5/3} = \inteval{-5/-3} = \inteval{0 - (5/-3)} \] \[\fpeval{floor(5/3)} \leq \fpeval{ceil(-5/-3)} \approx \fpeval{-(5/-3)} \]</pre>
<p>A-2-12 $1 \leq 2 \approx 1.6666666666666667$</p>	

<code>\dimeval{<i>dimen expression</i>}</code>	<code>\skipeval{<i>skip expression</i>}</code>
--	--

Similar to `\interval` but computing a length (*dimen*) or a rubber length (*skip*) value. Both are thin wrappers around the corresponding engine primitives, which makes them fast but therefore shows the same syntax peculiarities as discussed above. Nevertheless, in practice they are usually sufficient. For example,

```
\newcommand\calculateheight[1]{%
  \setlength\textheight{\dimeval{\topskip+\baselineskip*\interval{#1-1}}}}
```

sets the `\textheight` to the appropriate value if a page should hold a specific number of text lines. Thus, after `\calculateheight{40}`, it is set to 467.08005pt, given the values `\topskip` (10.0pt) and `\baselineskip` (11.72pt) in this book.

Use `\dimeval` if you are interested in a rigid length as a result, and use `\skipeval` if the calculation involves rubber lengths and the result should also be expressed with plus and minus components; e.g., above both `\topskip` and `\baselineskip` are rubber lengths (i.e., can have plus and minus parts), but we want to calculate the necessary `\textheight`, which is a rigid length, so `\dimeval` was used.

A.3 Page markup — Boxes and rules

The theory of composing pages out of boxes lies at the very heart of T_EX, and several L^AT_EX constructs are available to take advantage of this method of composition. A *box* is a rectangular object with a height, depth, and width. Its contents can be arbitrarily complex, involving other boxes, characters, spaces, and so forth. Once built it is used by L^AT_EX as a single, fixed object that behaves much like a (potentially huge) character. A box cannot be split and broken across lines or pages. Boxes can be moved up, down, left, and right. L^AT_EX has three types of boxes:

LR (left-right) The contents of this box are typeset from left to right. Line breaking is impossible, and commands like `\` and `\newline` are ignored or produce error messages.

Par (paragraphs) This kind of box can contain several lines, which are typeset in paragraph mode just like normal text. Paragraphs are put one on top of the other. Their widths are controlled by a user-specified value.

Rule A (thin or thick) line that is often used to separate various logical elements on the output page, such as table rows and columns, and running titles and the main text.

L^AT_EX's boxes all start a paragraph (just like characters) if used in vertical mode, while T_EX's primitive box commands (e.g., `\hbox`) behave differently depending on where they are used. There are a number of reasons to avoid using the T_EX primitives directly; see the discussion in Section A.3.5. The situation with rules is slightly different; we therefore discuss T_EX's primitive rule commands below.

A.3.1 LR boxes

In this section we look at horizontally oriented boxes with and without a frame.

<code>\mbox{<i>text</i>}</code>	<code>\fbox{<i>text</i>}</code>
<code>\makebox[<i>width</i>][<i>pos</i>]{<i>text</i>}</code>	<code>\framebox[<i>width</i>][<i>pos</i>]{<i>text</i>}</code>

The first line considers the *text* inside the curly braces as a box, without or with a frame drawn around it. For example, `\fbox{some words}` gives some words. The two commands on the second line are a generalization of these commands. They allow the user to specify the width of the box and the positioning of the text inside.

A-3-1	<div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px 20px;">some words</div>	<pre>\makebox[5cm]{some words} \par \framebox[5cm][r]{some words}</pre>
-------	--	--

In addition to centering the text with the positional argument `[c]` (the default), you can position the text flush left (`[l]`) or flush right (`[r]`). There is also an `[s]` specifier that stretches your *text* from the left margin to the right margin of the box provided it contains some stretchable space (e.g., some `\hspace` or the predefined spaces given in Table A.2 on page 653). Interword spaces are also stretchable (and shrinkable to a certain extent), as explained on page →I 745. The appearance of frameboxes can be controlled by two style parameters:

`\fboxrule` The width of the lines for the box produced with the command `\fbox` or `\framebox`. The default value in all standard classes is 0.4pt.

`\fboxsep` The space left between the edge of the box and its contents by `\fbox` or `\framebox`. The default value in all standard classes is 3pt.

Any changes to these parameters obey the normal scoping rules and affect all frameboxes within the scope. The change to `\fboxsep` in the next example, for instance, applies only to the second box.

A-3-2	<div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px 20px;">Boxed Text</div> <div style="display: inline-block; border: 2px solid black; padding: 5px 20px; margin-left: 10px;">Boxed Text</div> <div style="display: inline-block; border: 3px solid black; padding: 5px 20px; margin-left: 10px;">Boxed Text</div>	<pre>\fbox{Boxed Text} \hfill \setlength\fboxrule{2pt}% {\setlength\fboxsep{2mm}\fbox{Boxed Text}} \hfill \fbox{Boxed Text}</pre>
-------	--	---

The box commands with arguments for specifying the dimensions of the box allow you to make use of four special length parameters: `\width`, `\height`, `\depth`, and `\totalheight`. They specify the natural size of the *text*, where `\totalheight` is the sum of `\height` and `\depth`.

A-3-3	<div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px 20px;">A few words of advice</div> <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px 20px; margin-left: 10px;">A few words of advice</div> <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px 20px; margin-left: 10px;">A few words of advice</div>	<pre>\usepackage{calc} \framebox{ A few words of advice } \par \framebox[\width + 8mm][s]{ A few words of advice } \par \framebox[1.5\width]{ A few words of advice }</pre>
-------	---	--

Zero-width boxes are very handy if you want to put a marker on the page (e.g., for placement of figures) or to allow text to be put into the margins. The principle of operation is shown below, where a zero-width box is used to tag text, without influencing the centering. Note that the optional parameter [1] ([r]) makes the material stick out to the right (left).

A sentence. ¹²³	<code>\centering</code>	
Some more text in the middle.	<code>A sentence.\makebox[0pt][l]{123}\%</code>	
³²¹ A sentence.	<code>Some more text in the middle. \%</code>	
	<code>\makebox[0cm][r]{321}A sentence.</code>	A-3-4

⇔ As seen in the margin of the current line, boxes with a vanishing width can be used to make text stick out into the margin. This effect was produced by beginning the current paragraph in the following way:

```
\noindent\makebox[0cm][r]{\Leftrightarrow}%
As seen in the margin ...
```

Useful,
but dangerous



There are also three useful but somewhat dangerous lower-level commands you often find in package code: `\llap`, `\clap`, and `\rlap`. Each of them takes one mandatory argument, the material to be placed. They are implemented as simple zero-sized `\hboxes` whose contents stick out to the left, are centered, or to the right, respectively.

They inherit the behavior of the `\hbox` command; i.e., they do not start a paragraph if used in vertical mode (which is sometimes what you want), but more importantly they are not color safe unless you add an extra pair of braces in their argument.

An interesting possibility is to raise or lower boxes. This can be achieved by the very powerful `\raisebox` command, which has two mandatory arguments and two optional arguments:

`\raisebox{lift}[height][depth]{contents}`

To raise or lower the box produced from the *contents*, one specifies the amount of *lift* as a dimension, with negative values lowering the box. As with other boxes, one can make use of the special commands `\height`, `\depth`, `\totalheight`, or even `\width` to refer to the natural dimensions of the box produced from *contents*. This is used in the next example to raise the word “upward” so that the descender of the “p” aligns with the baseline and to lower the word “downward” so that it is placed completely below the baseline.

x111x upward x222x	x333x	x111x \raisebox{\depth}{upward} x222x	x333x
downward		\raisebox{-\height}{downward}	

A-3-5

Normally, L^AT_EX takes the added height and depth into account when calculating the distance between the lines so that a raised or lowered box can result in spreading lines apart. This can be manipulated by specifying a *height* and a *depth* that the user

wants \LaTeX to actually use when placing its material on the page. The second pair of lines below shows that \LaTeX does not realize that text has been moved upward and downward; thus, it composes the lines as though all the text was on the baseline.

A-3-6

<pre>x111x downward x222x x333x upward x444x</pre>	<pre>\begin{flushleft} x111x \raisebox{-1ex}{downward} x222x \\ x333x \raisebox{1ex}{upward} x444x \\[4mm] x111x \raisebox{-1ex}[0cm][0cm]{downward} x222x\\ x333x \raisebox{1ex}[0cm]{upward} x444x \end{flushleft}</pre>
---	--

A somewhat more useful application is discussed in Section 6.7 on page 476, which addresses the subject of columns spanning multiple rows in `tabular` material.

A.3.2 Paragraph boxes

Paragraph boxes are constructed using the `\parbox` command or `minipage` environment. The *text* material is typeset in paragraph mode inside a box of width *width*. The vertical positioning of the box with respect to the text baseline is controlled by the one-letter optional parameter *pos* (`[c]`, `[t]`, or `[b]`).

<pre>\parbox[<i>pos</i>]{<i>width</i>}{<i>text</i>}</pre>	<pre>\begin{minipage}[<i>pos</i>]{<i>width</i>} <i>text</i> \end{minipage}</pre>
---	--

The center position is the default, as shown in the next example. Note that \LaTeX might produce wide interword spaces if justification is requested (default) and the measure is incredibly small.

A-3-7

<pre>This is the con- tents of the left- most parbox.</pre>	<pre> This is the right- most parbox. Note that the typeset text looks sloppy be- cause \LaTeX cannot nicely balance the material in these narrow columns.</pre>	<pre>\parbox{.3\linewidth}{This is the contents of the left-most parbox.} \hfill CURRENT LINE \hfill \parbox{.3\linewidth}{This is the right-most parbox. Note that the typeset text looks sloppy because \LaTeX{} cannot nicely balance the material in these narrow columns.}</pre>
---	--	---

The `minipage` environment is very useful for the placement of material on the page. In effect, it is a complete miniversion of a page and can contain its own footnotes, paragraphs, and `array`, `tabular`, `multicols`, and other environments. Note, however, that it cannot contain floats or `\marginpar` commands, but it can appear inside `figure` or `table` environments, where it is often used for constructing a pleasing layout of the material inside the float. A simple example of a `minipage`

```
\newcommand\HR{\rule{.5em}{0.4pt}}
\HR\begin{minipage}[b]{12mm}
    A A A A A A A A A A A A A A
\end{minipage}\HR
\begin{minipage}[c]{12mm}
    B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B
\end{minipage}\HR
\begin{minipage}[t]{12mm}
    C C C C C C
\end{minipage}\HR
```

	<code>\newcommand\HR{\rule{.5em}{0.4pt}}</code>
	<code>\HR\begin{minipage}[b]{30mm}</code>
<code>CCCC</code>	<code>\begin{minipage}[t]{12mm}</code>
<code>AAAA xx BBBB CCC</code>	<code>AAAA AAAA AAAA AAAA AAAA</code>
<code>AAAA BBBB</code>	<code>\end{minipage} xx \begin{minipage}[t]{12mm}</code>
<code>AAAA BBBB</code>	<code>BBBB BBBB BBBB BBBB BBBB BBBB BBBB</code>
<code>AAA BBBB</code>	<code>\end{minipage}</code>
<code>BBBB</code>	<code>\end{minipage}\HR</code>
<code>BBBB</code>	<code>\begin{minipage}[b]{12mm} CCCC CCCC \end{minipage}\HR</code>

		<code>\newcommand\HR{\rule{.5em}{0.4pt}}</code>
		<code>\HR\begin{minipage}[b]{30mm}</code>
		<code>\begin{minipage}[t]{12mm}</code>
		<code>A A A A A A A A A A A A A A</code>
A A A A xx B B B B		<code>\end{minipage} xx \begin{minipage}[t]{12mm}</code>
A A A A B B B B		<code>B B</code>
A A A A B B B B		<code>\end{minipage}</code>
A A A B B B B		<code>\par\vspace{0mm} % modification to previous example</code>
B B B B C C C C		<code>\end{minipage}\HR</code>
— B B B B _ C C C —		<code>\begin{minipage}[b]{12mm} C C C C C C C \end{minipage}\HR</code>

664

In the case below, the two rightmost environments are aligned at their top inside another enclosing environment, which is aligned at its bottom with the first one. If you compare it with the previous example, then you see that you obtain a quite different result, although the sequence of alignment parameters is the same. Only the stacking order of the minipage environments is different.

A-3-11

```

\newcommand\HR{\rule{.5em}{0.4pt}}
\HR\begin{minipage}[b]{12mm}
  A A A A A A A A A A A A A A \end{minipage}\HR
\begin{minipage}[b]{30mm}
  \begin{minipage}[t]{12mm}
    B B B B xx C C C C
    B B B B   C C C
    A A A A B B B B
    A A A A B B B B
    A A A A B B B B
    _A A A _B B B B
  \end{minipage} xx
  \begin{minipage}[t]{12mm} C C C C C C C \end{minipage}
  \par\vspace{0mm}
\end{minipage}\HR

```

Again, we had to add some vertical space to achieve alignment. This does not, however, always produce the desired result. If, for instance, a letter with a descender appears in the last line of the stacked minipage, as in the example below, then the alignment of the baselines is not perfect.

A-3-12

```

\newcommand\HR{\rule{.5em}{0.4pt}}
\HR\begin{minipage}[b]{12mm}
  A A A A A A A A A A A A A A \end{minipage}\HR
\begin{minipage}[b]{30mm}
  \begin{minipage}[t]{12mm}
    B B B B xx C C C C
    B B B B   C C C
    B B B B
    A A A A B B B B
    A A A A B B B B
    A A A A B B B B
    _A A A _gg jj
  \end{minipage} xx
  \begin{minipage}[t]{12mm} C C C C C C C \end{minipage}
  \par\vspace{0mm}
\end{minipage}\HR

```

To correct this problem, you have to add (negative) vertical space that compensates for the depth of the letters.

Perhaps the easiest way (albeit the most dangerous) is to use the TeX primitive `\prevdepth`. This dimension register can be used only in vertical mode (i.e., after a paragraph has ended) and contains the depth of the previous line. In the next example this primitive is used to back up by this amount, thereby pretending that the bottom of the box is located at the baseline of the last line.

When using `\prevdepth` in this way, one has to be careful. As already mentioned, it gives an error if used outside vertical mode. Furthermore, TeX overloads this primitive by setting it to -1000pt at the beginning of a vertical box and after a horizontal rule.¹ Thus, using `\vspace*` instead of `\vspace` in the example would give a nasty surprise, because

 Surprising effects
of `\prevdepth`

¹TeX uses `\prevdepth` to calculate the interline space needed, and -1000pt indicates that this space should be suppressed.

	<code>\newcommand\HR{\rule{.5em}{0.4pt}}</code>
	<code>\HR\begin{minipage}[b]{12mm}</code>
	<code> A A A A A A A A A A A A A A \end{minipage}\HR</code>
<code> B B B B xx C C C C</code>	<code>\begin{minipage}[b]{30mm}</code>
<code> B B B B C C C</code>	<code> \begin{minipage}[t]{12mm}</code>
<code> B B B B</code>	<code> B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B gg jj</code>
	<code> \par\vspace{-\prevdepth}</code>
<code> A A A A B B B B</code>	<code> \end{minipage} xx</code>
<code> A A A A B B B B</code>	<code> \begin{minipage}[t]{12mm} C C C C C C C \end{minipage}</code>
<code> A A A A B B B B</code>	<code> \par\vspace{0pt}</code>
<code> _A A A _gg jj</code>	<code> - \end{minipage}\HR</code>

```
\parbox[pos][height][inner-pos]{width}{text}
\begin{minipage}[pos][height][inner-pos]{width}
text
\end{minipage}
```


As with the other box commands you can use `\height`, `\totalheight`, and so on to refer to the natural dimensions of the box when specifying the optional argument.

Some text on top.	This time a few lines on the top of the box. But only one line
And a few lines on the bottom of the box.	down here.

A.3.3 Rule boxes

TeX's rule boxes are drawn with the `\rule` command:

```
\rule[lift]{width}{height}
```

If we write `\rule[4pt]{2cm}{1mm}`, then we get a 2 cm long rule that is 1 mm thick and raised 4 pt above the baseline: . The `\rule` command can also be used to construct rule boxes with zero width, that is, invisible rules (also called *struts*). These struts are useful if you need to control the height or width of a given box (for example, to increase the height of a box framed with `\fbox` or `\framebox` or to adjust locally the distance between rows in a table). Compare the following:

x111x	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px;">some text</div>	x222x	<div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 80px; height: 80px; display: flex; align-items: center; justify-content: center;">more text</div>	x333x	<pre>x111x \fbox{some text} x222x \fbox{\rule[-5mm]{0cm}{15mm}more text} x333x</pre>
-------	--	-------	---	-------	--

A-3-15

As mentioned earlier, TeX makes boxes (including rules) behave like characters. For example, if used outside a paragraph, they automatically start a new paragraph. With rules this is not always the desired behavior. To get a rule between two paragraphs, for instance, we have to use `\noindent` to suppress a paragraph indentation; otherwise, the line would be indented and stick out to the right.

... Some text for our page that might get reused over and over again.

```
\newcommand\sample{ Some text for our page
that might get reused over and over again.}
\ldots \sample \par
\noindent\rule{\linewidth}{0.4pt} \par
A following paragraph. \sample
```

A following paragraph. Some text for our page that might get reused over and over again.

A-3-16

Due to this behavior, the rule sits on the baseline of a one-line paragraph and is therefore visually much closer to the following paragraph. To place it at equal distance between the two lines, one could use the optional *lift* argument, but determining the right value (roughly 2.5 pt in this particular case) remains a matter of trial and error.

One solution is to suppress the generation of interline space, using the low-level TeX command `\nointerlineskip`, and to add the necessary spaces explicitly as shown in the next example. This time we omit `\noindent` so that the rule is indented by `\parindent`, and we use `calc` to calculate the rule width such that it leaves a space of size `\parindent` on the right as well.

... Some text for our page that might get reused over and over again.

```
\usepackage{calc} % \sample as before
\ldots \sample \par
\nointerlineskip \vspace{5.8pt}
\rule{\linewidth-2\parindent}{0.4pt}\par
\nointerlineskip \vspace{5.8pt}
A following paragraph. \sample
```

A following paragraph. Some text for our page that might get reused over and over again.

A-3-17

	width	height	depth
<code>\hrule</code>	*	0.4pt	0.0pt
<code>\vrule</code>	0.4pt	*	*

Table A.4: Default values for T_EX's rule primitives

The sum of the vertical spaces used plus the height of the rule amounts to 12 points (i.e., `\baselineskip`). However, this does not make the baselines of the two paragraphs 12 points apart; rather, it makes the distance from the bottom of the last line in the first paragraph (i.e., as produced by the “g” in “again”) to the top of the first line in the next paragraph (i.e., as produced by the “A”) be 12 points. Thus, if the text baselines should preferably fall onto a grid, a variant of Example A-3-16 on the previous page using the optional *lift* argument is more appropriate.

Instead of using `\rule` together with `\nointerlineskip`, package or class writers often use the primitive T_EX rule commands. They have the advantage of automatically suppressing interline space and do not require you to specify all dimensions. On the downside, they have an unusual syntax and cannot be used if the rule needs horizontal or vertical shifting, as in the previous example.

```
\hrule height height depth depth width width \relax
\vrule height height depth depth width width \relax
```

The `\hrule` primitive can be used only between paragraphs, while the `\vrule` primitive has to appear within paragraphs. If encountered in the wrong place, the commands stop or start a paragraph as necessary. The commands can be followed by one or more of the keywords `height`, `depth`, and `width` together with a dimension value. Any order is allowed, and missing keywords get the defaults shown in Table A.4. An asterisk in that table means that the rule extends to the boundary of the outer box. The `\relax` command at the end is not required but ensures that T_EX knows that the rule specification has ended and does not misinterpret words in the text as keywords.

In the next example we use the default value for `\hrule`, resulting in a rule of 0.4pt height running through the whole galley width (because this is effectively the next outer box).

```

... Some text for our page that might get reused
over and over again.

A following paragraph. | Some text for our page
that might get reused over and over again.

% \sample as before
\ldots \sample

\vspace{6pt}\hrule\relax\vspace{6pt}
A following paragraph.
\vrule height 12pt width 2pt\relax \
\sample
```

A-3-18

If you are interested in dashed rules, take a look at the `dashrule` package by Scott Pakin, which implements an `\hdashrule` command that can be used in place of

`\rule`. The first optional argument specifies the vertical placement, and the second handles the alignment of the dashes: by default the dashes are always in the same position on different lines, `c` centers the dash pattern in the available space, and `x` expands the pattern to fill the available space; i.e., it usually alters the spaces between the dashes. For more details see the package documentation.

A-3-19

A	_____Z	<code>\usepackage{dashrule}</code>	
A	_____Z	<code>A\rule{5cm}{2pt}Z</code>	<code>\par</code>
A	— — — — — Z	<code>A\hdashrule{5cm}{2pt}{}Z</code>	<code>\par</code>
A	- - - - - Z	<code>A\hdashrule[.6ex]{5cm}{1pt}{10pt}Z</code>	<code>\par</code>
A	_____Z	<code>A\hdashrule[.6ex]{5cm}{1pt}{5pt 5pt}Z</code>	<code>\par</code>
A	_____Z	<code>A\hdashrule[-1pt]{5cm}{2pt}{5mm 1mm}Z</code>	<code>\par</code>
A	_____Z	<code>A\hdashrule[-1pt][c]{5cm}{2pt}{5mm 1mm}Z</code>	<code>\par</code>
A	_____Z	<code>A\hdashrule[-1pt][x]{5cm}{2pt}{5mm 1mm}Z</code>	<code>\par</code>
A	. . . . . Z	<code>A\hdashrule{5cm}{1pt}{2pt 4pt 6pt 4pt}Z</code>	<code>\par</code>

A.3.4 Manipulating boxed material

Material can be typeset once and then stored inside a named box, whose contents can later be retrieved.

<code>\newsavebox{cmd}</code>	Declare box
<code>\sbox{cmd}{text}</code>	Fill box
<code>\savebox{cmd}[width][pos]{text}</code>	Fill box
<code>\usebox{cmd}</code>	Use contents

The command `\newsavebox` globally declares a command `cmd` (for example, `\mybox`), which can be thought of as a named bin. Typeset material can be stored there for later (multiple) retrieval.

The `\sbox` and `\savebox` commands are similar to `\mbox` and `\makebox`, except that they save the constructed box in the named bin (previously allocated with `\newsavebox`) instead of directly typesetting it. The `\usebox` command then allows the nondestructive use of the material stored inside such named bins. You can reuse the same bin (e.g., `\mybox`) several times within the scope of the current environment or brace group. It always contains what was last stored in it.

A-3-20

	<code>\newsavebox{\myboxa}\newsavebox{\myboxb}</code>
	<code>\sbox{\myboxa}{inside box a}</code>
	<code>\savebox{\myboxb}[2cm][l]{inside box b}</code>
	<code>x1x \usebox{\myboxa} x2x \usebox{\myboxb} x3x</code>
	<code>\savebox{\myboxb}[2cm][r]{inside box b}</code>
	<code>\par</code>
<code>x1x inside box a x2x inside box b x3x</code>	<code>x1x \usebox{\myboxa} x2x \usebox{\myboxb} x3x</code>
<code>x1x inside box a x2x inside box b x3x</code>	

Be careful not to use the command name `\mybox` directly, because it contains only the \TeX register number of the box in question. As a consequence, `\mybox` on its

own merely typesets the character at the position corresponding to the box number in the current font. Thus, you should manipulate boxes exclusively using the commands described above.

In addition to the above commands, there exists the `lrbox` environment with the following syntax:

```
\begin{lrbox}{cmd}
  text
\end{lrbox}
```

Here *cmd* should be a box register previously allocated with `\newsavebox`. The environment `lrbox` saves the *text* in this box for later use with `\usebox`. Leading and trailing spaces are ignored. Thus, `lrbox` is basically the environment form of `sbox`. You can make good use of this environment if you want to save the body of some environment in a box for further processing. For example, the following code defines the environment `fcolumn`, which works like a column-wide `minipage` but surrounds its body with a frame.

```
\usepackage{calc}
\newsavebox{\fcolbox} \newlength{\fcolwidth}
\newenvironment{fcolumn}[1][\linewidth]
  {\setlength{\fcolwidth}{#1-2\fboxsep-2\fboxrule}%
   \begin{lrbox}{\fcolbox}\begin{minipage}{\fcolwidth}}
  {\end{minipage}\end{lrbox}\noindent\fbbox{\usebox{\fcolbox}}}
\begin{fcolumn} In this environment verbatim text like
\verb=\fcolbox= can be used. \end{fcolumn}
```

In this environment verbatim text like `\fcolbox` can be used.

A-3-21

The above definition is interesting in several respects. The environment is defined with one optional argument denoting the width of the resulting box (default `\linewidth`). On the next line we calculate (using the `calc` package) the internal line length that we have to pass to the `minipage` environment. Here we have to subtract the extra space added by the `\fbox` command on both sides. Then the `lrbox` and `minipage` environments are started to typeset the body of the `fcolumn` environment into the box `\fcolbox`. When the end of the environment is reached, those environments are closed. Then the `\fcolbox` is typeset inside an `\fbbox` command. The `\noindent` in front suppresses any indentation in case the environment is used at the beginning of a paragraph or forms a paragraph by itself.

A.3.5 Box commands and color

Even if you do not intend to use color in your own documents, by taking note of the points in this section you can ensure that your class or package is compatible with the `color` package. This may benefit people who choose to use your class or package together with the `color` package extensions.

The simplest way to ensure “color safety” is to always use L^AT_EX box commands rather than T_EX primitives — that is, to use `\sbox` rather than `\setbox`, `\mbox`

rather than `\hbox`, and `\parbox` or the `minipage` environment rather than `\vbox`. The L^AT_EX box commands have new options that make them as powerful as the T_EX primitives.

As an example of what can go wrong, consider that in `{\ttfamily text}` the font is restored just *before* the `}`, whereas in the similar-looking construct `{\color{green} text}` the color is restored just *after* the final `}`. Normally, this distinction does not matter. But consider a primitive T_EX box assignment such as

```
\setbox0=\hbox{\color{green} some text}
```

Now the color-restore operation occurs after the `}` and so is *not* stored in the box. Exactly which bad effects this introduces depends on how color is implemented: the problems can range from getting the wrong colors in the rest of the document to causing errors in the Device Independent File Format (DVI) driver used to print the document.

Also of interest is the command `\normalcolor`. This is normally just `\relax` (i.e., does nothing), but you can use it like `\normalfont` to set regions of the page, such as captions or section headings, to the “main document color”.

A.4 L^AT_EX's hook management

Hooks are places in the code where packages can add code, for example, to do some initialization or to execute some final cleanup. In the past L^AT_EX offered just a few heavily used hooks, e.g., `\AtBeginDocument`. Every other alteration or addition made by a package was done by overwriting existing kernel code, leading to all kinds of known issues. Furthermore, these hooks simply stored code added to them in the order it was added to the hook, which resulted in conflicts if packages were loaded in the wrong order.

Therefore, in 2020, a new hook management system and a larger number of hooks were added to L^AT_EX, into which packages can add code in a controlled manner, avoiding the need for patching commands. The new system provides standard interfaces for declaring and using hooks, including ways to order code added to hooks by different packages in order to resolve package loading problems, and plenty more.

A.4.1 Working with existing hooks

We first discuss how you use existing hooks. Later sections then deal with adding new hooks to your own code. To add code to a hook defined by a package or by the L^AT_EX kernel (or remove code from it) you use one of the declarations discussed below. One of the important aspects of this process is that you can do that even before the hook is officially made available. This allows you to add code to hooks defined in a package even if that package is not yet loaded. If this hook never gets defined (because the package is not loaded), then your code is dropped at `\begin{document}`. This solves some of the issues that made loading order of packages in the past so fragile.

*Adding code to
hooks*

<code>\AddToHook{hook}[label]{code}</code> <code>\RemoveFromHook{hook}[label]</code>
--

To add code to a hook you call `\AddToHook` with the name of the *hook* as the first mandatory argument and the *code* to add to the hook as the second. The optional *label* is normally not needed; but it can be used to identify the *code* within the *hook*. By default, this *label* is automatically determined to be the package or class name if used in a package or class or the special string `top-level` if used in the preamble or the body of the document.¹

If several calls to `\AddToHook` use the same *label* (and the same *hook* name), their code is combined and becomes a single chunk of “labeled” code.

Code added this way to hooks is executed whenever the hook is executed, until it is again removed from it. To remove code from an hook you call `\RemoveFromHook` with the *hook* name as a mandatory argument. The default for the optional *label* is determined as described above; i.e., it needs to be given only if you want to remove a specific chunk, which is not the default. You can also use the special notation `*` in the optional argument in which case all code is removed (not recommended unless you know for sure what went into the hook).

Available hooks already provided by L^AT_EX are discussed later. For the next example we just use one without much explanation and add some code to it. The hook `cmd/quote/after` is called at the beginning of the body of `\begin{quote}`; thus, any change we make is local to the environment. To this hook we add code to color the text blue. This is done without specifying a label, so the label used internally is `top-level` because we are in the preamble of the document. In addition, we add another chunk of code to specify `\footnotesize` as the font size. This time we use an explicit label named `quotesize`.²

Later in the document body we call `\RemoveFromHook` without giving a label. Thus, the code removed is the one belonging to the default label, which is `top-level`, and therefore the last quote appears black again. If we would have used the `quotesize` label instead, the quote would have been normal-sized again but still blue, and if we had used `*`, we would have gotten a standard `quote` environment again.

All quotes are in blue:	<code>\usepackage{color}</code>
The Quote.	<code>\AddToHook{cmd/quote/after}{\color{blue}}</code>
	<code>\AddToHook{cmd/quote/after}{quotesize}{\footnotesize}</code>
and in a smaller typeface:	
Another Quote.	<code>\begin{quote} All quotes are in blue: The Quote. \end{quote}</code>
	<code>and in a smaller typeface:</code>
but this one is black:	<code>\begin{quote} Another Quote. \end{quote}</code>
	<code>\RemoveFromHook{cmd/quote/after}</code>
Final Quote!	<code>but this one is black: \begin{quote} Final Quote! \end{quote}</code>

A-4-1

¹Code labeled with `top-level` is special, because it is normally executed last in a hook, which means that code added in the preamble comes after code added by packages; see page 685 for details. This is even the case if the packages are loaded later in the preamble.

²You can think of the `quotesize` chunk being defined in a package with that name. Otherwise, there is little reason to make two separate declarations, unless you really want to partially retract the code you put into the hook as is done in the example.

Please do not mistake this example as the suggested way to alter the behavior of environments such as `quote`. It was just meant to show in a simple example how the commands `\AddToHook` and `\RemoveFromHook` work. The hook we used is one of the generic command hooks (discussed below) that exists for every command. By using it we have made use of knowledge about internal implementation details (namely, that at some point `\begin{quote}` calls `\quote`), which is seldom a good idea.

```
\AddToHookNext{hook}{code}    \ClearHookNext{hook}
```

Sometimes it is useful to execute code only once, i.e., just the next time a hook is called. In theory you could achieve this by including an appropriate `\RemoveFromHook` in the code added with `\AddToHook`, but the hook management offers a more convenient way. The declaration `\AddToHookNext` adds *code* to the *hook* that is executed only once and then automatically removed again. Because this is one-off code, it is not labeled, and it is always added to the end of all hook code so that it can overwrite code in other chunks. Typical use cases for `\AddToHookNext` are the hooks related to shipping out pages; e.g., you may want to use a special background on the next page.

Even though it seems logical that one adds only code for the next invocation of a hook with the intention to see it run, there are some use cases where one may need to cancel that later, and for this `\ClearHookNext` can be used.

Different hook flavors


Hooks can be classified in several ways. Most of them appear in code that can be used multiple times in a document, and each time this happens, the code currently associated with the hook is executed. Such hooks are called “Normal Hooks”, and they make up the majority.

Normal Hooks

Some hooks, however, can be executed only once, for example, any hooks inside `\begin{document}`, because this environment is executed only once. It therefore makes little sense to add new hook code after such hooks have executed or to keep the code associated with the hooks after that point.

One-time Hooks

For these “One-time Hooks”, L^AT_EX applies the following strategy: the *code* in any `\AddToHook` for such a hook that happens during or after the hook is invoked is immediately executed, and not stored away for future invocations. For `\AddToHookNext` this is not done, so if this is used after the one-time hook has executed, it is simply never run.¹ In contrast, adding code with `\AddToHook` during the execution of normal hooks just saves the code away for use in the next invocation, which allows you to build up some chains: do this on the next invocation, do that on the one thereafter, and so forth.

 `\AddToHookNext`
acts in a special
way with one-time
hooks!

Some hooks (whether normal or one-time) come in pairs, for example, the hooks `file/before` and `file/after`, which are executed before and after the loading of every file. Typically the second of such hooks is implemented as a “Reversed Hook”. This means that if you push several code chunks into both hooks, say, labeled A,

Reversed Hooks

¹This gives you a choice: should your *code* always run, or should it run only exactly at the point the one-time hook is executed and, if that is not possible, then not at all?

B, and C and they get executed in one order in the first hook, then the execution order in the reversed hook is exactly the opposite. The reason for this behavior is that it allows you put environments into such hook code chunks, e.g., opening an environment in chunk A of the first hook and closing it in chunk A of the second hook. Without reversing the execution order on the second hook you would get mismatched environments, if environments are added to several chunks. Again, `\AddToHookNext` acts in a special way on reversed hooks, in that it remains being executed at the very end, i.e., does not participate in order reversal. This means that you cannot employ it for the use case outline above, but it gives you the opportunity to “undo” some settings made by other hook chunks just for the next invocation.

`\AddToHookNext`
acts in a special
way with reversed
hooks!

Generic Hooks

There is one further category: some hooks are so called “Generic Hooks”. Normally a hook has to be explicitly declared before it can be used in code. This ensures that different packages are not using the same hook name for unrelated purposes — something that would result in absolute chaos. However, there are a number of “standard” hooks where it is unreasonable to declare them beforehand; e.g., each and every command has (in theory) an associated `before` and `after` hook. In such cases, i.e., for command, environment, or file hooks, they can simply be used by adding code to them with `\AddToHook`. For more specialized generic hooks, e.g., those provided by `babel`, you have to additionally enable them with `\ActivateGenericHook` as explained below.

Displaying current hook status and data

To show data about a hook there are two declarations available. For developers there are also a number of conditionals that let you provide code that acts differently based on the status of a hook. Such conditionals are rather special, and if you need them, consult the hook management documentation [139].

```
\ShowHook{hook}    \LogHook{hook}
```

The `\ShowHook` command gives you an overview about the code chunks that have been added to a particular *hook* including information about the order they are executed. If used in interactive mode, the command stops with the usual T_EX error prompt to allow you to interface with the program. The command `\LogHook` produces the same information but simply writes it into the transcript file so that you can look at it afterwards.

Assume we have added the following three lines to the end of the preamble of Example A-4-1 on page 672:

```
\AddToHook{cmd/quote/after}[family]{\sffamily}
\AddToHookNext{cmd/quote/after}{\itshape}
\ShowHook{cmd/quote/after}
```

then this gives us the following output:

```
-> The hook 'cmd/quote/after':
> Code chunks:
>    quotesize -> \footnotesize
```

```

> family -> \sffamily
> Document-level (top-level) code (executed first):
>   -> \color {blue}
> Extra code for next invocation:
>   -> \itshape
> Rules:
>   ---
> Execution order (after reversal):
>   family, quotesize.

```

You can see that the hook now contains two named code chunks with the labels `quotesize` and `family`, and it also shows the code associated with them. The top-level code is `\color{blue}` and it is executed first, and there is `\itshape` as extra code for the next invocation. There are no special rules (for code chunk ordering — discussed below). At the end, the execution order of the chunks is given, in this case `family` followed by `quotesize`, i.e., in reverse of the declaration order. The reason for this is that `cmd/quote/after` is implemented as a reversed hook.

Important generic hooks are available out of the box

In this section we briefly discuss a number of important hooks made available by L^AT_EX. This is not an exhaustive list, but one that is intended as an overview about those hooks that you are more likely to need occasionally. There are many more, and over time L^AT_EX will get additional ones for special use cases.

Every environment offers a set of four generic hooks. There is the pair of hooks that are executed before and after the environment and that are therefore not restricted by the environment scope. These “outer” hooks are called `env/<env>/before` and `env/<env>/after`. You can think of them as being equivalent to placing your code before `\begin{env}` and after `\end{env}` on each occasion the environment is used. In addition, we have `env/<env>/begin` and `env/<env>/end`. They are both executed just in front of the code for the environment beginning and the code for its end; i.e., you can think of them as being the first code in the code arguments of `\newenvironment` or `\NewDocumentEnvironment`. Only the `/after` hook is implemented as a reversed hook; all others are normal hooks. Individual environments may offer additional hooks (e.g., the `begindocument` hooks discussed below), but these four are available with every environment.

*Generic
environment hooks:*
`env/<env>/before`
`env/<env>/after`
`env/<env>/begin`
`env/<env>/end`

All tabulars are automatically centered and typeset in Sans Serif

```

a b
c d

```

without explicitly adding center environments or `\sffamily`.

```

\AddToHook{env/tabular/before}{\begin{center}}
\AddToHook{env/tabular/after}{\end{center}}
\AddToHook{env/tabular/begin}{\sffamily}

```

All tabulars are automatically centered and typeset in Sans Serif `\begin{tabular}{ll} a & b \\ c & d \end{tabular}` without explicitly adding `\texttt{center}` environments or `\verb=\sffamily=`.

A-4-2

Generic environment hooks are never one-time hooks even with environments that are supposed to appear only once in a document. Thus, if one adds code to

such hooks after the environment has been processed, it is executed only if the environment appears again, and if that does not happen, the code is never executed.

The hooks are executed only if `\begin{env}` and `\end{env}` are used. If the environment code is executed via low-level calls to `\langle env \rangle` and `\end⟨env⟩` (e.g., to avoid the environment grouping), they are not available. If you want them available in code using this method, you would need to add them yourself, i.e., write something like

```
\UseHook{env/quote/before}\quote
...
\endquote\UseHook{env/quote/after}
```

to add the outer hooks, etc.

Generic command
hooks:
`cmd/⟨cmd⟩/before`
`cmd/⟨cmd⟩/after`

Similar to environments there are two generic hooks available for any L^AT_EX (document-level) command — in theory at least. These are `cmd/⟨cmd⟩/before` and `cmd/⟨cmd⟩/after` (the latter implemented as a reversed hook). In practice there are restrictions, and especially the `/after` hooks work only with a subset of commands. Details about these restrictions are documented in [139]. Over time more and more of them will be removed, or at least you get a suitable warning, but for now you may have to try to see if the generic hooks work for a specific command.

We give two examples. If you want all `\section` commands in your document to start a new page, then, instead of redefining this command, you could simply issue a `\newpage` in front of each, or, using the hook mechanism, specify


```
\AddToHook{cmd/section/before}{\newpage}
```

Our second example is using a `cmd/⟨cmd⟩/after` hook: remember that `\colon` in the `amsmath` package uses noticeably wider spacing compared to the usage in standard L^AT_EX. If you prefer less space there, you could always follow the command with `\!` (a negative thin space), or you could use a hook to insert it for you. In the example we use `\AddToHook` in the middle of the document to be able to show the difference. However, in a real document you should instead apply it in the preamble.

		<code>\NewCommandCopy\ltxcolon\colon % save LaTeX's definition</code>
		<code>\usepackage{amsmath}</code>
$f: A \rightarrow B$	in standard L ^A T _E X	<code>\$ f \ltxcolon A\to B \$ \hfill in standard \LaTeX \par</code>
$f: A \rightarrow B$	in amsmath	<code>\$ f \colon A\to B \$ \hfill in \texttt{amsmath} \par</code>
		<code>\AddToHook{cmd/colon/after}{\!}</code>
$f: A \rightarrow B$	in our version	<code>\$ f \colon A\to B \$ \hfill in our version</code>

A-4-3

But even that could be improved upon — after all, our change should be applied only if the `amsmath` package was loaded or will be loaded later in the preamble of the document, but not when `\colon` retains its standard L^AT_EX meaning. To achieve this with ease you need to use two (nested) generic hooks as follows:

[Ulrike]:
Hooks are fun! 

```
\AddToHook{package/amsmath/after}{\AddToHook{cmd/colon/after}{\!}}
```

Here we use a generic `package/⟨name⟩/after` hook to ensure that our `cmd` hook is

applied only after the package was loaded, if it is loaded at all. This hook is one of a dozen hooks related to file loading that can often be useful.

For each file that is loaded by L^AT_EX, regardless¹ of how this is done, e.g., with `\input`, `\include`, `\usepackage`, etc., then the following four hooks are executed. Before the file we process the general `file/before` hook followed by the more specific `file/<file>/before` hook (which is activated only if the current file to load has the name `<file>`), and after the file has been read, L^AT_EX executes the hook `file/<file>/after` and finally `file/after`. As you may have guessed, the last two are reversed hooks. The `<file>` name has to be given with its extension to be recognized, even if it is `.tex`, so this is different from the behavior of the `\input` command.

With the above four generic hooks you are already able to specify actions to be taken before or after any package or class, e.g., by using `file/array.sty/after`. However, packages and classes are a special group of files (which can be loaded only once), and for that reason they have their own set of hooks. The naming scheme is the same: `package/before`, `package/<name>/before`, `package/<name>/after`, and `package/after`, but there are two important differences to the file hooks: the specific hooks that include the package name expect the `<name>` without any extension, and, more importantly, they are implemented as one-time hooks. This is essential to make our earlier example involving `package/amsmath/after` work: if the package was already loaded, then the code in `\AddToHook` is immediately applied. If we had used a file hook instead (which is a normal hook), the code would have been stored away, waiting forever for a second invocation that would never happen. A similar set of hooks exist for class files; just replace `package/` by `class/`. You are less likely to need them, but there are a number of use cases where they can be helpful.

The final group of file-related hooks are those specific to files loaded with an `\include` command. In this case we have eight instead of the usual four hooks, due to the way this command operates. As before, there is `include/before` and `include/<name>/before`, which are executed at the beginning, but only after the `\include` command has issued a `\clearpage` to start a new page and after it has changed the `.aux` file to use the one for the include file.² When `\include` has finished reading the include file, but *before* it issues another `\clearpage` to output any deferred floats, L^AT_EX executes two extra hooks, `include/<name>/end` and `include/end`, in that order. Then comes the `\clearpage` followed by the now familiar hooks: `include/<name>/after` and `include/after`. Technically we are still in include modus; i.e., the `.aux` has not yet switched back to the one of the main document. This means any material that is typeset by any of the hooks is excluded when the file is bypassed because of an `\includeonly` statement.

All four `end` and `after` hooks are reversed hooks, and the `<name>` in the hooks has to be specified without extension. Furthermore, the specific hooks involving a `<name>` are all one-time hooks, the others normal hooks.

Generic file hooks:

```
file/before
file/<file>/before
file/<file>/after
file/after
```

Generic package hooks:

```
package/before
.../<name>/before
.../<name>/after
.../after
```

Generic class hooks:

```
class/before
.../<name>/before
.../<name>/after
.../after
```

Generic include hooks:

```
include/before
.../<name>/before
.../<name>/end
.../end
.../<name>/after
.../after
.../excluded
.../<name>/excluded
```

¹This is a bit of a white lie: if a file is read using internal low-level methods, such as `\@input` or `\openin`, no hooks are executed. But these are not operations available on the document level.

²If you really need to place code before that, you can use the hook `cmd/include/before`, i.e., the generic command hook for `\include`.

The six hooks for `\include` we have discussed so far are executed only if the file is included (or at least an attempt is made to include it). They are bypassed if the file is explicitly excluded, i.e., if an `\includeonly` statement is given that does not contain the file `<name>`. In that case the hooks `include/excluded` and `include/<name>/excluded` are executed instead in that order.

Special hooks available in the document environment

Until 2020 L^AT_EX offered exactly two hooks in the document environment that one could use to add code to: `\AtBeginDocument` and `\AtEndDocument`.

Experiences over the years have shown that these two hooks and the place where they are executed were not enough, and as part of adding the general hook management system a number of additional hooks have been added. The places for these hooks have been chosen to provide the same support as previously offered by external packages, such as `etoolbox` and others that augmented document to gain better control.

Hooks inside
`\begin{document}:`
`.../before`
`begindocument`
`.../end`

Inside `\begin{document}` there are now three hooks available to the programmer: `begindocument/before` is executed at the very start of the environment and could be thought of as ending the preamble. The `begindocument` hook is executed next, after the `.aux` file has been read in and most initializations are done. They can therefore be inspected and altered by the hook code. This is the place to which `\AtBeginDocument` writes, which these days is implemented by adding to this hook. After this there are a small number of further initializations that should not be altered and are therefore coming later. Neither hook should add material for typesetting because we are still in L^AT_EX's initialization phase and not in the document body. If such material needs to be added to the document body, use the next hook instead.

The final hook is `begindocument/end`, which is executed at the end, in other words, at the beginning of the document body. The only command that follows it is `\ignorespaces`. It can therefore be used (for example by a document class) to add typesetting material at the start of the document by placing it into this hook.

Draft material

As any dedicated reader can clearly see, the Ideal of practical reason is a representation of, as far as I know, the things in themselves; as I have shown elsewhere, the phenomena should only be used as a canon for our understanding.

```
% Assume this to be inside the document
% class, for example, as part of a ‘‘draft’’
% option declaration:
\AddToHook{begindocument/end}
    {\begin{center}%
     \fbox{Draft material}%
    \end{center}}
```

```
\usepackage{kantlipsum}
```

```
\kant[1][1] % the text by the author ...
```

A-4-4

All three hooks are implemented as one-time hooks. The generic hooks executed by `\begin` also exist, i.e., `env/document/before` and `env/document/begin`, but with this special environment it is better use the dedicated one-time hooks above.

L^AT_EX_{2 ϵ} always provided the command `\AtEndDocument` to add code to the execution of `\end{document}` just in front of the code that is normally executed there. While this was a big improvement over the situation in L^AT_EX_{2.09}, it was not flexible enough for a number of use cases, and so packages such as `etoolbox`, `atveryend`, and others patched the kernel code to add additional points where code could be hooked into. Patching kernel code in packages is always problematical because it leads to conflicts (code availability, ordering of patches, incompatible patches, etc.). For this reason these patches have been backported to the L^AT_EX kernel, and a number of additional hooks have been added to allow packages to add code in various places in a controlled way without the need for overwriting or patching the core code.

*Hooks inside
`\end{document}`:*
`enddocument`
`.../afterlastpage`
`.../afteraux`
`.../info`
`.../end`

The code starts as before by adding a `\par` and then executing the `enddocument` hook (which is the hook `\AtEndDocument` writes to). At this point there may be still unprocessed material (e.g., floats on the deferlist or text material in the galley), and the hook may add further material to be typeset. This first hook is the only one that is allowed to add material to be typeset; all later ones are supposed to only contain code that executes certain housekeeping actions. After it, `\clearpage` is called to ensure that all such material gets typeset. If there is nothing waiting, this `\clearpage` has no effect.

The next hook is `enddocument/afterlastpage`. As the name indicates, this hook should not receive code that generates material for further pages. It is the right place to do some final housekeeping and possibly write out some information to the `.aux` file (which is still open at this point to receive data, but because there are no further pages, you need to write to it using `\immediate\write`). It is also the correct place to set up any testing code to be run when the `.aux` file is re-read next. Once this hook has been executed, the `.aux` file is closed for writing and then read back in to do some tests (e.g., looking for missing references or duplicated labels, etc.).

After the `.aux` file reprocessing has finished, the hook `enddocument/afteraux` is executed. It is therefore a possible place for doing final checks and displaying information to the user. However, for the latter you might prefer one of the next hooks so that your information is shown after the (possibly longish) list of files if that got requested via `\listfiles`.

Directly following the previous hook, the hook `enddocument/info` is executed. It is meant to receive code that writes final information messages to the terminal. This hook already contains some code added by the kernel (under the labels `kernel/filelist` and `kernel/warnings`), namely, the list of files when `\listfiles` has been used and the warnings for duplicate labels, missing references, font substitutions, etc. Instead of the two hooks in succession, there could have been just a single hook, but then going before or after the kernel material would require setting up dedicated hook rules, while with two hooks you can simply select the appropriate hook.

Near the end, just before L^AT_EX invokes T_EX's endgame processing, there is yet another hook named `enddocument/end`. Whether or not this will ever be needed remains to be seen, it was mainly provided because it was already part of one of the packages that was replaced by adding the hook management to L^AT_EX.

Hooks provided for `\shipout` operations

Hooks inside
`\shipout`:
`shipout/before`
`.../background`
`.../foreground`
`shipout`
`.../firstpage`
`.../lastpage`
`.../after`

The process that ships out the final pages also offers a number of hooks. Two are of possible interest for authors; the others are most likely needed only in packages that alter the behavior of L^AT_EX's output routine. The hooks that are generally useful are `shipout/background` and `shipout/foreground`. Both allow you to place some material onto each page, either in the background, i.e., behind the normal page material, or in the foreground, i.e., on top of it and thus partially hiding the text.

Both hooks add a picture environment with the (0,0) coordinate in the top-left corner of the page and locally set a `\unitlength` of 1pt. The hooks should therefore contain only `\put` commands or other commands suitable within a picture environment; see Section 8.3 on page 1602 for possibilities.

With the starting point being the top-left corner of the page, your vertical coordinate values should be negative, which needs getting used to — if your material does not show up, it is rather too likely that you placed it outside the page by using a positive value. During the `shipout` the background picture is printed first, then the content of the page, and finally the foreground picture, each overwriting the other.

In the next example we use the `shipout/background` hook to add a logo into the background of every page. Note the absolute coordinates `.5\paperwidth` and `-.5\paperheight` to position ourselves flat in the middle of the page, and then we used a `\makebox(0,0)` construction to center the graphic around that point. To also exhibit the `shipout/foreground` hook we place a colored box at the bottom left, however, this time only on the second page by using `\AddToHookNext` instead of `\AddToHook`. Of course, you cannot seriously censor material this way. First of all the page pictures are static and the text is dynamic, but more importantly the text is still inside the PDF and only hidden through overprinting.

As any dedicated reader can clearly see, the Ideal of practical reason is a representation of, as far as I know, the things in themselves; as I have shown elsewhere, the phenomena should only be used as a canon for our understanding. The par-

alogisms of practical reason are what first give rise to the architectonic of practical reason.

As will easily be shown in the next section, reason would thereby be made to contradict, in view of these

Censor this! s, the Ideal of

```
\usepackage{kantlipsum,graphicx,color}
\AddToHook{shipout/background}
{\put(.5\paperwidth,-.5\paperheight)
 {\makebox(0,0){\includegraphics
 [scale=.7]{latex-logo}}}}
\kant[1][1-2] % text by the author ...
\AddToHookNext{shipout/foreground}
{\put(0,-\paperheight)
 {\colorbox{red}{Censor this!}}}
\kant[1][3] % ... more text ...
```

A-4-5

The remaining five hooks are intended for rather specialized actions. The hook `shipout/firstpage` places material at the very beginning of the output file and the hook `shipout/lastpage` at the very end — both should contain only `\special` or similar commands needed for post processors handling the `.dvi` or `.pdf` output.¹


The hook `shipout/before` can be used to manipulate the collected page box before it is being shipped out (or even discard it); for details, see [139]. It can also be used by packages to undo their modifications if they should not be active when

¹The `shipout/firstpage` hook can also be set using the command `\AtBeginDvi`.

the page is processing during shipout. For example, some packages, noticeably those that produce verbatim text, alter the definition of active characters, and these settings should not be used while a page is built just because L^AT_EX decided to end the page in the middle of such an environment. If such settings remain active, this can lead to very strange errors, because during the shipout `\write` statements may be executed, and they would find themselves suddenly in a “verbatim” context.

The hook `shipout` has a similar purpose but is executed right in front of the page being shipped out, i.e., after any foreground or background material has been added. Finally, `shipout/after` is called after the current page has been shipped out.

Note that it is not possible (or advisable) to try to use these hooks to typeset material with the intention of returning it to the main vertical list. It will go wrong and give unexpected results in many cases — for starters it will appear after the current page, not before, and with a high likelihood the vertical spacing will be wrong!

 *None of these hooks should be used for typesetting*

Other hooks

L^AT_EX also offers other hooks, e.g., for paragraph processing¹ or font selection, but most of them are for special use cases and are of little interest to most users or even package developers. Further areas are expected to get hooks added over time. This “hookification” is under active development, and the current state and pointers to the documentation are given in [139].

A.4.2 Declaring hooks and using them in code

Up to this point we have looked at how to use existing hooks that are provided by packages or the L^AT_EX kernel. We now look briefly at what is necessary to define new hooks and use them in your own package code. There is more to it than we can cover here — if in doubt, refer to [139] for additional details.

Hooks have global data structures associated with them, and it is therefore essential that hooks used for different tasks are distinct, i.e., have unique names. This is why they need to be declared beforehand. If two packages declare the same name as a hook, then they cannot be used together in the same document. It is therefore important to choose a good name, preferably one that is directly related to the command or environment in which the hook is used to avoid making packages unnecessarily incompatible with each other.

```
\NewHook{hook}      \NewReversedHook{hook}
\NewMirroredHookPair{hook1}{hook2}
```

A new hook has to be declared with `\NewHook`, or, if we want to declare it as a reversed hook, then with `\NewReversedHook`. Given that reversed hooks are usually (but not always) paired with a normal hook, there is also `\NewMirroredHookPair`, which is just a shorthand for calling the other two declarations in succession.

¹ An example for the `para/before` hook is shown on page –I 429.

This covers normal and reversed hooks, but as mentioned earlier, there are also generic hooks. These are not declared beforehand because “generic” means they exist with a wide variety of names, and that makes it difficult to predeclare them. They rely on the fact that their names are structured and are therefore likely to be unique. How to provide new generic hooks is discussed later.

`\UseHook{hook}` `\UseOneTimeHook{hook}`

In your package you execute a normal *hook* code by calling `\UseHook`. This executes all code chunks defined for the hook in a predefined order (in most cases in the order the chunks got declared), followed by the code declared with `\AddToHookNext`, if any. The latter is then automatically removed after usage.

If the hook is intended to be a one-time hook, you call it with `\UseOneTimeHook` instead. In this case the hook chunks are executed as described above, but additionally L^AT_EX records that the hook has been executed. This has the effect that any further calls to `\UseOneTimeHook` or `\UseHook` with that *hook* name as the argument do nothing. Additionally, any future `\AddToHook` declaration for that name executes immediately instead of being stored away.¹

If you use `\UseHook` or `\UseOneTimeHook` without declaring the hook, then the call is simply ignored — see below for when this makes sense.

Setting up additional generic hooks

The generic hooks provided by L^AT_EX, i.e., for `cmd`, `env`, `file`, `package`, `class`, and `include`, are available out of the box. You only have to use `\AddToHook` to add code to them, but you do not have to add `\UseHook` or `\UseOneTimeHook` to your code, because this is already done for you (or, in the case of `cmd` hooks, the command is patched at `\begin{document}`), if necessary).

However, if you want to offer your own generic hooks in your code, the situation is slightly different. You provide for such a generic hook by using `\UseHook` or `\UseOneTimeHook`, but *without declaring the hook* with `\NewHook`. As mentioned earlier, a call to `\UseHook` with an undeclared hook name does nothing. So as an additional setup step, you need to explicitly activate the generic hook. Note that a generic hook produced in this way is always a normal hook.

For a truly generic hook, with a variable part in the hook name, an up-front activation would be difficult or impossible, because you typically do not know what kind of variable parts may come up in real documents. For example, `babel` may want to provide hooks such as `babel/⟨language⟩/afterextras`. Language support in `babel` is often done through external language packages. Thus, doing the activation for all languages inside the core `babel` code is not a viable approach. Instead, it needs to be done by such language packages (or by the user who wants to use a particular hook).

Because the hooks are not declared with `\NewHook`, their names should be carefully chosen to ensure that they are (likely to be) unique. Best practice is to

¹ As mentioned earlier, calls to `\AddToHookNext` have a different behavior: they are simply ignored if issued too late.

include the package or command name as was done in the `babel` example.

```
\ActivateGenericHook{hook}
```

Once this declaration is given, the *hook* is activated, and its use with `\UseHook` or `\UseOneTimeHook` takes effect. In contrast to `\NewHook` (which also activates a hook), this declaration can be used multiple times.

As an example, we color German words in blue inside an English document by adding a `\color` statement to the generic hook `babel/ngerman/afterextras` and activate the hook so that it is used. Note that such declarations can happen even before `babel` is loaded; thus, a class can make adjustments for `babel` but leave it up to the user whether `babel` is loaded or not.

```
\AddToHook{babel/ngerman/afterextras}{\color{blue}}
\ActivateGenericHook{babel/ngerman/afterextras}
```


Text with **deutschen Worten** in the middle of **englischem Text**.

```
\usepackage{color} \usepackage[ngerman,english]{babel}
Text with \foreignlanguage{ngerman}{deutschen Worten} in
the middle of \foreignlanguage{ngerman}{englischem Text}.
```

A-4-6

Returning to black in the previous example worked only because the German text was always limited by the scope of the `\foreignlanguage` command. If we had used `\selectlanguage` or nested commands instead, the color change would persist, because none of the other languages undo it. Thus, to work in a more complex scenario, we need similar declarations for any other language to reset the color.

The generic command hooks `cmd/⟨cmd⟩/before` and `cmd/⟨cmd⟩/after` are automatically patched into the command `⟨cmd⟩` in case code has been added to the hook, i.e., a `\UseHook` command is added to the beginning or end of the `⟨cmd⟩` code and the hook is activated. As mentioned, for some commands such patching is not possible, and to avoid the user getting a low-level failure, L^AT_EX has the declaration `\DisableGenericHook`. It is mainly intended for command hooks that would fail, but there may be use cases where disabling other generic hooks is useful too.

 *Adjusting the use of ⟨cmd⟩ hooks*

Instead of disabling a nonfunctional command hook, a package developer may choose to explicitly add the `\UseHook` call in an appropriate place when defining the `⟨cmd⟩`. If that is done, it is important to also explicitly declare the hook with either `\NewHook` or `\NewReversedHook` to make it “nongeneric”, because that prevents L^AT_EX from later patching the `⟨cmd⟩` and incorrectly adding another `\UseHook`.

Reordering code chunks in hooks

The default assumption is that if several packages add data to the same hook, the order of the code execution is of no importance. Of course, in real life this is unfortunately often not true, which accounts for the many package loading issues people had in the past, for which you then got advice on the Internet such as “load package A after package B and load package C always last”. In many cases the underlying reason was that different `\AtBeginDocument` statements had to be executed in the right order.

With the new hook management system this can now often be resolved up front. If you know that the code added to a certain hook needs to be run before or after the code added by some other package, you can declare a rule that tells the hook management to arrange for the required order. If the other package is not loaded, the rule is simply ignored, and it also does not hurt if both packages declare such a rule (as long as the rules are not in conflict with each other).

```
\DeclareHookRule{hook}{label1}{relation}{label2}
```

With this declaration you define a relation between *label₁* and *label₂* for a given *hook*. There can be only a single relation between two labels for a given hook; i.e., a later `\DeclareHookRule` overwrites any previous declaration. The supported *relations* are the following:

before or **<** Code for *label₁* comes before code for *label₂*.

after or **>** Code for *label₁* comes after code for *label₂*.

incompatible-warning Only code for either *label₁* or *label₂* can appear for that hook (a way to say that two packages—or parts of them—are incompatible). A warning is raised if both labels appear in the same hook.

incompatible-error Like **incompatible-warning**, but instead of a warning, a L^AT_EX error is raised, and the code for both labels is dropped from that hook until the conflict is resolved.

voids Code for *label₁* overwrites code for *label₂*. More precisely, code for *label₂* is dropped for that hook. This can be used, for example, if one package is a superset in functionality of another one and therefore wants to undo code in some hook and replace it with its own version.


unrelated The order of code for *label₁* and *label₂* is irrelevant. This rule is there to undo an incorrect rule specified earlier.

As an example we find the following declaration in the `fnpct` package, which ensures that inside the hook `begindocument` the code labeled `fnpct` runs after any code labeled `hyperref` if present:

```
\DeclareHookRule{begindocument}{fnpct}{after}{hyperref}
```

Remember that the default label for code chunks is the current package or class name when `\AddToHook` is used without specifying an explicit label. Thus in most cases, code chunks are labeled with the package or class name from which they originate. Therefore, this declaration really means that inside `begindocument`, the code from the `hyperref` should run before the code from `fnpct` so that the latter can make use of it, regardless of the loading order of the two packages.

The top-level label, which by default is used to label code added in the preamble or in the document body to a hook, is special in that it is always executed *last* in a normal hook (and first in a reversed hook). It is therefore not permitted to use this label in a hook rule. The reason is that hook declarations made in such places are typically done to overwrite code by packages to the hook, and the preamble code therefore needs to come later. If that is not the right place for code to be executed, you can give it an explicit label and then add a `\DeclareHookRule` to ensure that it is executed at the right point.

 *The top-level label is special*

```
\DeclareDefaultHookRule{label1}{relation}{label2}
```


The `\DeclareHookRule` defines a relation between two labels for a single hook. However, if there are many hooks for which this relationship holds, then it is inefficient to be forced to declare them repeatedly for all hooks. To simplify the input, as well as to clarify the situation, there is `\DeclareDefaultHookRule` that defines a default relationship between *label₁* and *label₂* for all hooks in which these labels are used. This is useful for cases where one package has a specific relation to some other package; e.g., it is incompatible or always voids or needs a special ordering with *before* or *after*. If necessary, you can always overwrite that default for individual hooks by also giving a `\DeclareHookRule` for a specific hook.

A.5 Control structure extensions

This section starts with the `iftex` package that allows you to write code that varies based on the \TeX engine it gets used with. We then describe two packages that are distributed as part of the $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$ core distribution since its introduction in 1994. Consequently, you find them used as part of many packages and classes.

The first, `calc`, extends \LaTeX to support infix arithmetic in many commands that expect a number or a dimension as an argument. Although there are nowadays other possibilities offered by newer \TeX engines and also by \LaTeX directly (see Section A.2.5 on page 657), this remains useful and is used in a number of examples in this book.

The second, `ifthen`, defines a number of commands for conditional processing. While this was a big step forward back then and was therefore used a lot in the past, it has a number of serious limitations and a somewhat clumsy syntax. For this reason we recommend it only for very simple tasks (if at all). A lot of its functionality can already be achieved by using the new powerful command declarations described in Section A.1.4 on page 632, and for serious coding you have a much better solution with the L3 programming layer, which offers many more sophisticated conditionals that do not exhibit the limitations of `ifthen`. We mainly kept it in the book because of its wide use in packages, so it helps to have some basic understanding of its functionality.

 *ifthen is not recommended for new package developments*

A.5.1 `iftex` — On which \TeX engine are we running on?

With different \TeX engines available — each of which offering one or the other feature not available in other engines — it is sometimes necessary to ensure that a document is processed with a certain engine or one from a group of engines, i.e., one of the

Unicode engines. L^AT_EX tries fairly hard to abstract from engine peculiarities, but even so, you may find that you want to write some commands that need different implementations for different engines.

To accomplish either task, several people have written small packages that define tests to figure out if your document is processed by a specific engine. The `iftex` package (by the L^AT_EX Project Team) is a consolidation package that provides such tests for most T_EX engines in use, so it has effectively many authors, because it combines ideas from Heiko Oberdiek (`ifluatex`, `ifvtex`, and `ifptex`), Martin Scharrer (`ifetex`), YATO Takayuki (`ifptex`), Vafa Khalighi (`iftex` version 0.2), and Will Robertson (`ifxetex`) in a single package, rendering the others (except `ifptex`, see below) essentially obsolete by providing all of their functionality.

All tests are constructed in the same manner and rely only on low-level constructs in order to function not only in L^AT_EX but in any flavor of T_EX, hence the slightly unusual syntax. Here is an example to test for pdfT_EX:

```
\ifPDFTeX
  code to execute if the engine is pdfTeX
\else
  code to execute for all other engines
\fi
```

In the *else* part you can then make further tests to distinguish between other engines as necessary. All `\if . . .` tests exist in two forms: mixed-case as above or with a name using only lowercase characters, e.g., `\ifpdfTeX`, if you prefer that. In the listing below we give only the mixed-case names because not all of them might be obvious (the lowercase ones hopefully are).

<code>\ifXeTeX</code>	<code>\ifLuaTeX</code>	<code>\ifLuaHBTeX</code>	<code>\ifTUTeX</code>
-----------------------	------------------------	--------------------------	-----------------------

These test if the Unicode engines X_YL^AT_EX or LuaT_EX are used. `\ifLuaTeX` is true regardless of any extension being activated, while `\ifLuaHBTeX` is true only if the HarfBuzz library is available in the LuaT_EX engine.

The `\ifTUTeX` test is not strictly testing for an engine variant: it will be true if the current engine supports the primitive `\Umathchardef`, which is the case for X_YL^AT_EX and LuaT_EX (and possibly other engines supporting Unicode), so you could write something like

```
\ifTUTeX
  \usepackage{fontspec,unicode-math}
  \setmainfont{TeX Gyre Termes} \setmathfont{Stix Two Math}
\else
  \usepackage{newtxtext,newtxmath}
\fi
```

to make your document work with X_YL^AT_EX, LuaT_EX, and pdfT_EX by selecting different font packages depending on the engine.

<code>\ifpTeX</code>	<code>\ifeTeX</code>	<code>\ifupTeX</code>	<code>\ifpTeXng</code>
----------------------	----------------------	-----------------------	------------------------

`\ifpTeX` is true when any of the pTeX engine variants (engines that support Japanese input encodings) are used. \LaTeX requires the availability of the eTeX extensions, which is not the case with all variants. For this one can could test with `\ifeTeX`. Similarly, `\ifupTeX` tests for any of the upTeX variants (engines that support Japanese but with Unicode input encoding) — again you may additionally want to check for the eTeX extensions. Finally, `\ifpTeXng` tests for pTeX-ng (Asiatic pTeX), `\ifVTeX` for the commercial VTeX engine, and `\ifAlephTeX` for Aleph (the successor of Omega).

Note that while the `iftex` package provides basic support for detecting Japanese TeX variants, it is not a full replacement for the `ifptex` package, which has many more detailed tests for pTeX variants and is recommended if you need granular control over the Japanese TeX system in use.

<code>\RequirePDFTeX</code>	<code>\RequireXeTeX</code>	<code>\RequireLuaTeX</code>
<code>\RequireLuaHBTeX</code>	<code>\RequireTUTeX</code>	<code>...</code>

If your document (or package) is usable only with a specific engine, then you can use one of the `\Require..` commands instead of the above tests. They test for the specific engine and stop with a suitable error message if not.

<code>\ifpdf</code>

Several engines can produce `.pdf` or `.dvi` output and make this configurable, for example, through `\pdfoutput` that can be set in the format or at the very start of the document. `\ifpdf` can be used to test if the output format is PDF.

A.5.2 calc — Arithmetic calculations

The package `calc` (by Kresten Thorup and Frank Jensen) contains a set of macros for enhanced arithmetic in \LaTeX . The usual arithmetic in TeX is done by simple low-level operations like `\advance` and `\multiply`. This package defines an infix notation arithmetic for \LaTeX . In fact, it reimplements the \LaTeX commands `\setcounter`, `\addtocounter`, `\setlength`, and `\addtolength` so that they can accept integer and length expressions rather than simple numbers and lengths.

An integer expression can contain integer numbers, TeX's integer registers, \LaTeX 's counters (e.g., `\value{ctr}`), parentheses, and binary operators (`-`, `+`, `*`, `/`). For instance, to double a counter value and additionally advance it by five:

```
\usepackage{csquotes,calc}
\newcounter{private}
\setcounter{private}{2} % initial setting for the example
The value is currently \enquote{\theprivate}.\
\setcounter{private}{\value{private}*2 + 5}
The value has now changed to \enquote{\theprivate}.
```

The value is currently “2”.

A-5-1

The value has now changed to “9”.

An example is the definition of a command to print the time (note that the T_EX register `\time` contains the number of minutes since midnight):

```
\usepackage{calc}
\newcounter{hours}\newcounter{minutes}
\newcommand\printtime{\setcounter{hours}{\time/60}%
\setcounter{minutes}{\time-\value{hours}*60}%
\thehours h \theminutes min}
```

The time is 14h 16min.

The time is `\printtime`.

A-5-2

When dealing with lengths, the subexpressions that are added or subtracted must be of the same type. That is, you cannot have “2cm+4”, but an expression like “2cm+4pt” is legal because both subexpressions have dimensions. You can only divide or multiply by integers, so “2cm*4” is a legal subexpression, but “2cm*4pt” is forbidden. Also, the length part must come first in an expression; thus, “4*2cm” is not allowed.

The commands described above allow you to calculate the width of one column in an n -column layout using the following single command (supposing that the variable n is stored as the first argument of a L^AT_EX macro):

```
\setlength\linewidth{(\textwidth-\columnsep*(#1-1))/#1}
```

The restriction that you can only multiply and divide by integers has been relaxed for calculations on lengths (dimensions). Those operations are allowed with real numbers.

```
\real{decimal constant} \ratio{length expression}{length expression}
```

A real number can be represented in two forms: the first command converts the *decimal constant* into a form that can be used in a calc formula. The second form denotes the real number obtained by dividing the value of the first expression by the value of the second expression.

As an example, assume you want to scale a figure so that it occupies the full width of the page (`\textwidth`). If the original dimensions of the figure are given by the length variables `\Xsize` and `\Ysize`, then the height of the figure after scaling will be:

```
\setlength\newYsize{\Ysize*\ratio{\textwidth}{\Xsize}}
```

```
\widthof{material} \heightof{material} \depthof{material}
\totalheightof{material}
```

These four commands typeset *material* in a horizontal box, measure the result, and then return its width, height, depth, or totalheight (i.e., the sum of height and depth) as a length value, respectively. This can in turn be used in more complex calc expressions.

The `calc` package is used in a few examples in this book. If you do not want to apply it, you need to express the code given in the examples in the form of basic \LaTeX commands and sometimes even primitive \TeX constructs. Depending on what was used, this may be easy (these days) or still rather complicated.

For example, the setting of `\fcolwidth` on page 670 has to be translated from

```
\setlength\fcolwidth{#1-2\fboxsep-2\fboxrule}
```

and can today be expressed simply by using `\dimeval` from the L3 programming layer as follows:

```
\setlength\fcolwidth{\dimeval{#1-2\fboxsep-2\fboxrule}}
```

i.e., same syntax and only one additional command. Without `\dimeval` it gets worse, and we end with three fairly unreadable assignments:

```
\setlength\fcolwidth{#1}%  
\addtolength\fcolwidth{-2\fboxsep}%  
\addtolength\fcolwidth{-2\fboxrule}
```

Obviously the infix notation provided by `calc` is far more readable than the above, but today you can use in most situations `\dimeval`, `\skipeval`, `\inteval`, or `\fpeval`, which also offer infix notation and achieve similarly concise results. However, expressions involving, for example, `\ratio` or measurement commands such as `\widthof`, are not easily expressible without using `calc`, so it remains a useful extension.

A.5.3 `ifthen` — Advanced control structures

Sometimes you may want to typeset different material depending on the value of a logical expression. This is possible with the standard package `ifthen` (originally written by Leslie Lamport and reimplemented for $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ by David Carlisle), which defines commands for building control structures with \LaTeX . Because it is compatible with the syntax and approach used for \LaTeX 2.09, it has inherited a number of limitations; in particular, it is fragile depending on the tests used and so often does not work in moving arguments.

While fine for simple cases defined in the document preamble, it is not really advisable to use it for more complex coding in packages. There we recommend using the powerful functions of the L3 programming layer [115] instead.

```
\ifthenelse{test}{then-code}{else-code}
```

If the condition *test* is true, the commands in the *then-code* part are executed. Otherwise, the commands in the *else-code* part are executed.

A simple form of a condition is the comparison of two integers. For example, if you want to translate a counter value into English:

```
\usepackage{ifthen}
\newcommand\toEng[1]{\arabic{#1}\textsuperscript{%
\ifthenelse{\value{#1}=1}{st}{%
\ifthenelse{\value{#1}=2}{nd}{%
\ifthenelse{\value{#1}=3}{rd}{%
\ifthenelse{\value{#1}<20}{th}}}%
{\typeout{Value too high}}}}}}
```

This is the 5th section in the 1st appendix. This is the \toEng{section} section in the \toEng{chapter} appendix.

A-5-3

The following example defines a command to print the time in short form. It shows how complex operations (using the `calc` package) can be combined with conditional control statements.

```
\usepackage{csquotes,ifthen,calc}
\newcounter{hours}\newcounter{minutes}
\newcommand{\printtime}{\setcounter{hours}{\time/60}%
\setcounter{minutes}{\time-\value{hours}*60}%
\ifthenelse{\value{hours}<10}{0}{\thehours:%
\ifthenelse{\value{minutes}<10}{0}{\theminutes}}
```

The current time is “14:16”. The current time is \enquote{\printtime}.

A-5-4

```
\equal{string1}{string2}
```

The `\equal` command evaluates to *true* if the two strings *string1* and *string2* are equal after they have been completely expanded. You should be careful when using fragile commands in the strings; they need protection with the `\protect` command.

```
\usepackage{ifthen,shortvrb} \MakeShortVerb\|
\newcommand\BB{\CC}\newcommand\CC{\DD}
\newcommand\DD{AA} \newcommand\EE{EE}
\BB=\EE? False.      |\BB|=|\EE|?    \ifthenelse{\equal{\BB}{\EE}}{True}{False}.\par
\BB=\CC? True.      |\BB|=|\CC|?    \ifthenelse{\equal{\BB}{\CC}}{True}{False}.\par
\DD=\BB? True.      |\DD|=|\BB|?    \ifthenelse{\equal{\DD}{\BB}}{True}{False}.
```

A-5-5

```
\boolean{string}    \newboolean{string}    \setboolean{string}{value}
```

Basic T_EX knows about some switches that can have the value *true* or *false*.¹ To define your own switch, use `\newboolean` where *string* is a sequence of letters. This switch is initially set to *false*. To change its value, use `\setboolean` where the *value* argument is either the string *true* or *false*. You can then test the value by using `\boolean` in the first argument of `\ifthenelse`. It is also possible to test all

¹In the L^AT_EX kernel they are normally built using the more primitive `\newif` command.

<i>Boolean</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>T_EX switches (can only be queried)</i>	
<code>hmode</code>	true, if typesetting is done in a horizontal direction (e.g., inside a paragraph or an LR box).
<code>vmode</code>	true, if typesetting is done vertically (e.g., if T _E X is between paragraphs).
<code>mmode</code>	true, if T _E X is typesetting a formula.
<i>L_AT_EX switches (read-only)</i>	
<code>@twoside</code>	true, if L _A T _E X is typesetting for double-sided printing.
<code>@twocolumn</code>	true, if L _A T _E X is typesetting in standard two-column mode (false inside multicols environments).
<code>@firstcolumn</code>	true, if @twocolumn is true and L _A T _E X is typesetting the first column.
<code>@newlist</code>	true, if L _A T _E X is at the beginning of a list environment (set to false when text after the first \item command is encountered).
<code>@inlabel</code>	true, after an \item command until the text following it is encountered.
<code>@noskipsec</code>	true, after a run-in heading until the text following it is encountered.
<i>L_AT_EX switches (read-write)</i>	
<code>@afterindent</code>	Switch checked by command \@afterheading (usually used in headings) to prevent (if false) indentation of next paragraph.
<code>@tempswa</code>	Temporary switch used internally by many L _A T _E X commands to communicate with each other.

Table A.5: L_AT_EX's internal \boolean switches

such internal flags of L_AT_EX with this command (the most common ones are shown in Table A.5). An example could be a test to see whether a document is using a one- or two-sided layout.

A-5-6	Two-sided printing.	<code>\usepackage{ifthen}</code>	<code>\ifthenelse{\boolean{@twoside}}{Two-sided}{One-sided} printing.</code>
-------	---------------------	----------------------------------	--

Note that despite the similar names there is no relationship to \IfBooleanTF discussed in Section A.1.4 on page 632. That command can be used only to query the parsing results of commands defined with \NewDocumentCommand, etc.

\lengthtest{test}

To compare dimensions, use \lengthtest. In its *test* argument you can compare two dimensions (either explicit values like 20cm or names defined by \newlength) using one of the operators <, =, or >.

As an example, let us consider a figure characterized by its dimensions `\Xsize` and `\Ysize`. It should be made to fit into a rectangular area with dimensions `\Xarea` and `\Yarea`, but without changing the aspect ratio of the figure. The following code calculates the new dimensions of the figure (`\newX` and `\newY`). The trick is to first calculate and compare the aspect ratios of both the rectangle and the figure and then to use the result to obtain the magnification factor.

```
\newlength{\sizetmp}\newlength{\areatmp}
\setlength{\sizetmp}{1pt*\ratio{\Xsize}{\Ysize}}
\setlength{\areatmp}{1pt*\ratio{\Xarea}{\Yarea}}
\ifthenelse{\lengthtest{\sizetmp > \areatmp}}
  {\setlength{\newX}{\Xarea}\setlength{\newY}{\newX*\ratio{\Ysize}{\Xsize}}}
  {\setlength{\newY}{\Yarea}\setlength{\newX}{\newY*\ratio{\Xsize}{\Ysize}}}
```

`\isodd{number}`

With the `\isodd` command you can test whether a given *number* is odd. If, for example, the string generated by a `\pageref` command is a valid number (as it normally is), then you can use the command in the following way:

This is an even-numbered page.

6

This is an odd-numbered page.

7

```
\usepackage{ifthen} \newcounter{pl}
\newcommand\pcheck{\stepcounter{pl}\label{pl-\thep1}%
\ifthenelse{\isodd{\pageref{pl-\thep1}}}{odd}{even}}
This is an \pcheck-numbered page. \newpage
This is an \pcheck-numbered page.
```

A-5-7

The `\isodd` command is specially tailored to support the above application even though the result of `\pageref` might be undefined in the first L^AT_EX run. Note that you cannot omit the `\label` and `\pageref` and instead simply use `\thepage`. The reason is that pages are built asynchronously. As a consequence, your code might get evaluated while a page is being built, and afterwards L^AT_EX's output routine decides to move that bit of the text to the next page, making the evaluation invalid if `\thepage` were used.

`\whiledo{test}{do-clause}`

The `\whiledo` command is valuable for executing certain repetitive command sequences. The following simple example shows how the command works:

I should not talk during seminar (1). I should not talk during seminar (2). I should not talk during seminar (3). I should not talk during seminar (4).

```
\usepackage{ifthen} \newcounter{howoften}
\setcounter{howoften}{1}
\whiledo{\value{howoften}<5}{I should not talk
during seminar (\thehowoften).
\stepcounter{howoften}}
```

A-5-8

<code>\and</code>	<code>\or</code>	<code>\not</code>	<code>\(</code>	<code>\)</code>
-------------------	------------------	-------------------	-----------------	-----------------

Multiple conditions can be combined into logical expressions via the logical operators (`\or`, `\and`, and `\not`), using the commands `\(` and `\)` as parentheses. A simple example is seen below:

```
\usepackage{ifthen}
\newcommand{\QU}[2]{%
  \ifthenelse{\( \equal{#1}{ENG} \and \equal{#2}{yes} \)
    \or          \(\equal{#1}{FRE} \and \equal{#2}{oui} \)}%
    {'OK'}{'not OK'}}
```

A-5-9

You agree “OK” or don’t “not OK”.	You agree <code>\QU{ENG}{yes}</code> or don’t <code>\QU{ENG}{no}</code> . <code>\par</code>
D’accord “OK” ou pas “not OK”?	D’accord <code>\QU{FRE}{oui}</code> ou pas <code>\QU{FRE}{non}</code> ?

A.6 Package and class file structure

In this final section we discuss what commands are available for the authors of package or class files. Even if you do not intend to write your own package, this section will help you understand the structure and content of class and package files like `book` or `varioref` and thus help you to make better use of them. Furthermore, some of the commands for packages are sometimes also useful in the document preamble of a document.

The general structure of class and package files is identical and consists of the following parts:

- `<rollback information>`*
- `<identification>`*
- `<initial code>`*
- `<declaration of options>`*
- `<execution of options>`*
- `<package loading>`*
- `<main code>`*

All these parts are optional. We discuss the commands available in each of the individual parts below. Table A.6 on the following page gives a short overview.

A number of declarations discussed below expect a *date* as one of their arguments. Such dates can always be specified either as `YYYY/MM/DD` (traditional \LaTeX way and fairly readable in the author’s opinion) or in ISO notation, i.e., as `YYYY-MM-DD`.

A.6.1 The rollback part

This first part of a package or class file provides the necessary information to roll back the code to an earlier date or a specific release using the `latexrelease` package

Rollback part

`\DeclareRelease{version}{date}{file}`

Declares that the *version* from a specific *date* of a package or class is stored in some *file*

`\DeclareCurrentRelease{version}{date}`

Current version of the package or class

Identification part

`\NeedsTeXFormat{format}[release]`

Needs to run under *format* (LaTeX2_ε) with a release date not older than *release*

`\ProvidesClass{name}[release info]` or `\ProvidesPackage{name}[release info]`

Identifies class or package *name* and specifies *release information*

`\ProvidesFile{name}[release info]`

Identifies other file *name* (with extension) and specifies *release information*

Declaration and processing of options (classic style)

`\DeclareOption{option}{code}` or `\DeclareOption*{code}`

Declares *code* to be executed for *option*; starred form is for unknown options

`\PassOptionsToPackage{option-list}{package-name}`

Passes *option-list* to *package-name*

`\CurrentOption`

Refers to current option for use in `\DeclareOption*`

`\OptionNotUsed`

For use in `\DeclareOption*` if necessary

`\ExecuteOptions{option-list}`

Executes code for every option listed in *option-list*

`\ProcessOptions` or `\ProcessOptions*`

Processes specified options for current class or package; starred form obeys the specified order

Declaration and processing of options (key/value style)

`\DeclareKeys[family]{key list with properties}`

Declares *keys* and their scope

`\SetKeys[family]{key/value list}`

Sets *keys* to values

`\ProcessKeyOptions[family]`

Processes specified key/value options for current class/package including any global class options

`\DeclareUnknownKeyHandler[family]{code}`

Replace the default error handler for unknown keys in *family* by executing *code* instead

Package loading

`\RequirePackage[option-list]{package}[release]`

Loads *package* with given *option-list* and a release date not older than *release*

Table A.6: Commands for package and class files

or the second optional argument of `\usepackage` or `\documentclass`. See Section 2.5.5 on page 114 for a description of the general approach. If present, it consists of one or more `\DeclareRelease` declarations followed by exactly one `\DeclareCurrentRelease` declaration.

`\DeclareRelease{version}{date}{file}`

This declaration states that there is a release of this package or class that was made available on *date* and can be accessed as *version* (if this argument is not empty). The code for this release is stored in *file*.

If there are several declarations, then they have to be ordered by *date*, because in a rollback situation the processing stops the moment a suitable *date* is found, i.e., one that is older or equal to the requested date and the next declaration is newer than the requested date. If a search for a *version* is done, then the first line matching that is selected.

`\DeclareCurrentRelease{version}{date}`

This declaration describes the current release and therefore has no *file* argument. It can be given a *version* name, and it has to be given a *date*. This date should be the one when the release was first made publicly available. Because small changes and corrections are usually not tracked for use with rollback, a `\ProvidesPackage` line in the identification part often shows a later date.

As an example, the array package starts with the following declarations:

```
\DeclareRelease{}      {2016-10-06}{array-2016-10-06.sty}
\DeclareRelease{v2.4}{2020-02-10}{array-2020-02-10.sty}
\DeclareCurrentRelease{}{2020-10-01}

\ProvidesPackage{array}
[2021/04/20 v2.5e Tabular extension package (FMI)]
```

This means that the newest (main) release is from 2020-10-01 and some minor fixes got added since then (so that package date is 2021/04/20), and if you roll back to a date after October 2020, you always get the latest file (no rollback). If you request an earlier date, then either `array-2016-10-06.sty` or `array-2020-02-10.sty` is loaded (based on your requested date), and the latter file is also loaded if you explicitly ask for version v2.4.

If an earlier release is selected, then processing of the current file stops, and the remainder is not looked at. This means that the files holding the earlier releases need to be complete in themselves. Typically they are just copies of the main package or class file the way it was at that point in time.

A.6.2 The identification part

This part of a class or package file is used to define the nature of the file and may also state the L^AT_EX 2_ε distribution release minimally required.

`\ProvidesClass{name} [release information]`

A class file identifies itself with a `\ProvidesClass` command. The argument *name* corresponds to the name of the class as it is used in the mandatory argument of the `\documentclass` command (i.e., the file name without an extension). The optional argument *release information*, if present, should begin with a date in the form *YYYY/MM/DD* or *YYYY-MM-DD*, separated with a space from the version number or identification, followed optionally by some text describing the class. For example, the class report contains something like

```
\ProvidesClass{report}[2021/02/12 v1.4n Standard LaTeX document class]
```

In a document you can make use of the *release information* by specifying the date as a second optional argument to the `\documentclass` command as follows:

```
\documentclass[twocolumn]{report}[2021/02/12]
```

This enables L^AT_EX to check that the report class used has at least a release date of 2021/02/12 or is newer. If the class file is older, a warning is issued. Thus, if you make use of a new release of a class file and send your document to another site, the people there are automatically informed if their L^AT_EX distribution is out of date.

`\ProvidesPackage{name} [release information]`

This command identifies a package file. The structure is the same as for the `\ProvidesClass` command. Again, the date in the *release information* can be used in a second optional argument to `\usepackage` to ensure that an up-to-date version of the package file is loaded. For example:

```
\usepackage[german]{varioref}[2020/08/11]
```

`\ProvidesFile{file name} [release information]`

This command identifies any other type of file. For this reason *file name* must contain the full file name including the extension.

`\NeedsTeXFormat{format} [release]`

In addition to one of the above commands, the *identification* part usually contains a `\NeedsTeXFormat` declaration. The *format* must be the string `LaTeX2e`. If the

optional *release* argument is specified, it should contain the release date of the required $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ distribution in the form YYYY/MM/DD or YYYY-MM-DD. For example,

```
\NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[2020/10/01]
```

would require at least the $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ release distributed on October 1, 2020. If this command is present, anyone who tries to use your code together with an older \LaTeX release receives a warning message that something might fail. A newer release date is accepted without a warning. For example, in 2020/10/01 the hook management was introduced in \LaTeX . Thus, if your class or package makes use of this, such a line ensures that the necessary code is present.

All four declarations are optional. Nevertheless, their use in distributed class and package files eases the maintenance of these files.

A.6.3 The initial code part

You can specify any valid \LaTeX code in the *⟨initial code⟩* part, including code that loads packages with the `\RequirePackage` command (see Section A.6.7) if their code is required in one of the option declarations. For example, you might want to load the `calc` package at this point, if you plan to use it later. However, normally this part is empty.

A.6.4 The declaration of options

In this part all options known to the package or class are declared using the `\DeclareOption` command. It is forbidden to load packages in this part. We describe here the standard option handling where options are simple strings that are either provided or not when the package or class is loaded but without any further structure.

Over the years a number of extension packages that provide a key/value syntax for package and class options, e.g., `keyval`, `kvdefinekeys`, `kvoptions`, or `kvsetkeys`, were developed. If any of them is used for option handling, then the commands in this part of the file are different, and you have to look at the corresponding package documentation for details.

However, these days \LaTeX and the L3 programming layer also offer a general mechanism for this task and the interfaces to use that are discussed in Section A.6.6 on page 700. For new packages we recommend using the methods described there. Here we describe the traditional method with “simple” options.

```
\DeclareOption{option}{code}
```

The argument *option* is the name of the option being declared, and *code* is the code that executes if this option is requested. For example, the paper size option `a4paper` normally has a definition of the following form:

```
\DeclareOption{a4paper}{\setlength\paperheight{297mm}%
\setlength\paperwidth{210mm}}
```


In principle, any action — from setting a flag to complex programming instructions — is possible in the *code* argument of `\DeclareOption`.

An important function for use in `\DeclareOption` is the command `\PassOptionsToPackage`. It can pass one or more options to some other package that is loaded later.

`\PassOptionsToPackage{option-list}{package-name}`

The argument *option-list* is a comma-separated list of options that should be passed to the package with name *package-name* when it is loaded in the *package loading* part.¹ Suppose, for example, that you want to define a class file that makes use of two packages, say, A and B, both supporting the option `infoshow`. To support such an option in the class file as well, you could declare

```
\DeclareOption{infoshow}{%
  \PassOptionsToPackage{infoshow}{A}%
  \PassOptionsToPackage{infoshow}{B}%
  {code to support infoshow in the class}}
```

If a package or class file is loaded with an option that it does not recognize, it issues an error (in the case of a package file) or silently ignores the option (in the case of a class file), assuming that it is a global option to be passed to other packages subsequently loaded with `\usepackage`. However, this behavior is not hardwired and can be modified using a `\DeclareOption*` declaration.

`\DeclareOption*{code}`

Command does
not act on global
options!

The argument *code* specifies the action to take if an unknown option is specified on the `\usepackage` or `\RequirePackage` command. Within this argument `\CurrentOption` refers to the name of the option in question. For example, to write a package that extends the functionality of some other package, you could use the following declaration:

```
\DeclareOption*{\PassOptionsToPackage{\CurrentOption}{xyz}}
```

This would pass all options not declared by your package to package `xyz`. If no `\DeclareOption*` declaration is given, the default action, described above, is used.

By combining `\DeclareOption*` with `\InputIfFileExists` (see below), you can even implement conditional option handling. For example, the following code tries to find files whose names are built up from the option name:

```
\DeclareOption*{\InputIfFileExists{g-\CurrentOption.xyz}{}%
  {\PackageWarning{somenam}{Option \CurrentOption\space
    not recognized}}}
```

¹It is the responsibility of the package writer to actually load such packages. L^AT_EX does not check that packages receiving options via `\PassOptionsToPackage` are actually loaded later.

If the file `g-option.xyz` can be found, it is loaded; otherwise, the option is ignored with a warning.

```
\OptionNotUsed
```

If your *code* for `\DeclareOption*` inside a class file is more complex (e.g., trying to handle some options but rejecting others as in the previous example), you might need to explicitly inform \LaTeX that the option was not accepted with the help of the `\OptionNotUsed` command. Otherwise, \LaTeX thinks that the option was used and does not produce a warning if the option is not picked up by a later package.

A.6.5 The execution of options

Two types of actions are normally carried out after all options are declared. You might want to set some defaults, such as the default paper size. Then the list of options specified needs to be examined, and the code for each such option needs to be executed.

```
\ExecuteOptions{option-list}
```

The `\ExecuteOptions` command executes the code for every option listed in *option-list* in the order specified. It is just a convenient shorthand to set up defaults by executing code specified earlier with a `\DeclareOption` command. For example, the standard class `book` issues something similar to

```
\ExecuteOptions{letterpaper,twoside,10pt}
```

to set up the defaults. You can also use `\ExecuteOptions` when declaring other options, such as a definition of an option that automatically implies others. The `\ExecuteOptions` command can be used only prior to executing the `\ProcessOptions` command because, as one of its last actions, the latter command reclaims all of the memory taken up by the code for the declared options.

```
\ProcessOptions
```

When the `\ProcessOptions` command is encountered, it examines the list of options specified for this class or package and executes the corresponding code. More precisely, when dealing with a package, the global options (as specified on the `\documentclass` command) and the directly specified options (the optional argument to the `\usepackage` or `\RequirePackage` command) are tested. For every option declared by the package, the corresponding code is executed. This execution occurs in the same order in which the options were specified by the `\DeclareOption` declarations in the package, not in the order in which they appear on the `\usepackage` command. Global options that are not recognized are

ignored. For all other unrecognized options the code specified by `\DeclareOption*` is executed or, if this declaration is missing, an error is issued.

Thus, packages that use only `\DeclareOption*` when declaring options do not act upon global options specified on the `\documentclass`, but rather accept only those that are explicitly given on the `\usepackage` or `\RequirePackage` declaration.

In the case of a class file, the action of `\ProcessOptions` is the same without the added complexity of the global options.

There is one potential problem when using `\ProcessOptions`: the command searches for a following star (even on subsequent lines) and thereby may incorrectly expand upcoming commands following it. To avoid this danger use `\relax` at the end to stop the search immediately and start the execution of the options.

Preventing
unwanted expansion

`\ProcessOptions*`

For some packages it may be more appropriate if they process their options in the order specified on the `\usepackage` command rather than using the order given through the sequence of `\DeclareOption` commands. For example, in the `babel` package, the last language option specified is supposed to determine the main document language. Such a package can execute the options in the order specified by using `\ProcessOptions*` instead of `\ProcessOptions`.

A.6.6 Declaring and using options with a key/value syntax

Since 2020 the L^AT_EX kernel offers built-in support for creating key-based options through the L3 programming layer module `l3keys` for packages that are implemented using this layer.

From the June 2022 release on, key-based options are also supported through a small number of CamelCase commands, if the L3 programming layer is not being used. This interface is simpler and exposes only the most common key types by default, but these cover the vast majority of typical package option uses. Package authors who wish to exploit the full power of `l3keys` to define keys using more sophisticated key types can do so but then have to switch to L3 programming layer syntax. Details of using `l3keys` are out of scope here: please refer to the L3 programming layer documentation [115].

Please also note that this CamelCase interface is an alternative interface to the option declarations discussed in the previous two sections — it makes little sense to try to use both in parallel in the same package or class, even though with some restrictions it can be made to work.

`\DeclareKeys[family]{key-declarations}`

Keys are created using the command `\DeclareKeys`, which itself takes a key-value list of key names. Each key created will have one or more *properties*, which define

how it acts, and each of these key/property pairs has a *value*. Properties start with a period; the available ones are:

- `.code` executes arbitrary code when the key is used. The code can refer with `#1` to the value assigned to the key;
- `.if` sets a TeX `\if...` switch, e.g., `@twoside`;
- `.notif` like `.if`, but sets a TeX `\if...` switch to its inverted value;
- `.store` stores a value in a macro;
- `.usage` defines whether the option can be given only when loading (use value `load`), in the preamble (value `preamble`), or has no limitation on scope (value `general`). Can be given in addition to one of the other properties.

For example, with

```
\DeclareKeys {
  draft.if      = @mypkg@draft      ,
  final.notif   = @mypkg@draft      ,
  name.store    = \mypkg@name       ,
  address.store = \mypkg@address    ,
  debug.code    = \typeout{Debugging set to #1}
               ...                  ,
  draft.usage   = preamble          ,
  name.usage    = load
}
```

we create five key options for the current package: `draft`, `final`, `name`, `address`, and `debug`. The options `draft` and `final` are Boolean switches: they will accept only the values `true` or `false`. In the example, they have a tight relationship: specifying `final=false` is equivalent to `draft=true` (or shorter `draft`). The options `name` and `address` both accept any input and simply store it in the specified macros. The `name` can be set only when loading the package, `draft` can be set there or in the preamble, and `address` and `debug` can even be changed in the middle of the document. How to do that is explained below.

The `.store` property checks if the command used for storage exists: if not, it is defined with empty content so that it can safely be used afterwards. *.store type options*

Similarly, `.if` and `.notif` check if the specified TeX switch exists, i.e., in our example if `\if@mypkg@draft` is defined; and if not, they call `\newif` to declare it. *.if and .notif type options*

The option `debug` executes the code when the key is used; i.e., in the example it does a `\typeout`, displaying the value given to the key, and then executes some further code (indicated by `...`) to set up or alter the debugging. This is similar to `\DeclareOption` in the classic interface, except that your code can make use of the value given to the key. *.code type options*

Setting default
values for keys

If you want to set explicit default values for some or all of your keys declared with `\DeclareKeys`, use `\SetKeys` afterwards.

To ensure that keys of different packages can safely coexist, all keys declared with `\DeclareKeys` are divided up into *families*, with the requirement that the combination of *family*+*key* is unique across all keys ever declared. Within a package or class file, the *family* defaults to the name of the current file without extension (internally called `\@currname`), which means that every such package or class has its own name space by default.¹ If necessary, you can specify keys for other name spaces by using an explicit *family* argument, though that is seldom needed.

```
\DeclareUnknownKeyHandler[family]{code}
```

By default, keys unknown to the system raise an error if they are encountered during load or set with `\SetKeys`. In some situations that is not desirable, e.g., when a package wants to pass on unknown keys to some other package. In the classic interface that is handled through a `\DeclareOption*` declaration, but with key/value options there is the additional complexity of handling the given value and the fact that keys are structured by *family*.

`\DeclareUnknownKeyHandler` installs a new handler for keys of a given *family* replacing the default error handler otherwise used. The *code* receives the unknown key name as #1 and the value as #2. If no value was given, #2 is empty. These can then be processed as appropriate, e.g., by forwarding to another package.

Executing package or class options using a key/value syntax

If you use the key/value interface for options, then the processing of the options, given to the package or class, is carried out by the command `\ProcessKeyOptions` and not with the commands discussed in the previous section.

```
\ProcessKeyOptions[family]
```

The command takes the option list given to the package or class but expects it to consist of key/value pairs and processes them accordingly. In the case of a package, it also examines the global (class) options. It is normally used without the optional *family* argument, but if one was supplied to `\DeclareKeys`, then it is also needed here.

Unlike “classical” L^AT_EX package options, key-based options remain available to be set after `\ProcessKeyOptions` has been used. In particular, any such key can be used for more general settings in the document body. The scope that keys are live in is set by the `.usage` property, which can restrict a key to load-time only, to load-time and the document preamble, or to allow general scope.

No option
clash errors



Unlike “classical” options, L^AT_EX will not issue an option-clash warning when a package using `\ProcessKeyOptions` is loaded for a second time with (different) options. Instead, after the first loading, second and subsequent loading attempts

¹This is not quite true: you can have a class and a package use the same base name and thus have the same default name space. In that case you may have to set the *family* explicitly.

simply pass the option list to `\SetKeys`. This means that it is up to the package author to decide how to handle repeated option setting. Typically, those that can be given only once will be set as `.usage=load`.

It is possible to use `\DeclareKeys` declarations after the package-supplied option list has been processed, but keys defined by it can then obviously only be altered in the preamble or in the document body, but do not act as package options.

Declaring keys that do not serve as package options

```
\SetKeys[family]{key/value list}
```

Changing key values is achieved with the `\SetKeys` command: it requires a *key/value list* as its argument. For example, based on the example above

```
\SetKeys{address = {My place, My Town}}
```

would be valid within the package code after the `\DeclareKeys` line.

Outside the package, e.g., in the preamble or the document body, we would additionally need to provide an appropriate value for the optional *family* argument to change the key value. This is usually the package or class file name, but can be any name explicitly supplied as *family* to `\DeclareKeys` earlier.

Many packages offer dedicated configuration commands accepting key/value lists, e.g., `\geometry`, `\microtypesetup`, or `\SetupDoc`, to name a few. The naming conventions are quite diverse unfortunately. With the new interface it could be as simple as `\SetKeys[package]{key/value list}`. For backwards compatibility, a package switching over to the new system could still provide its old interface through a simple mapping, e.g., `\newcommand\geometry{\SetKeys[geometry]}`.

Standardizing the configuration interfaces

A.6.7 The package loading part

Once the options are dealt with, it might be time to load one or more additional packages — for example, those to which you have passed options to using the command `\PassOptionsToPackage`.

```
\RequirePackage[option-list]{package}[release]
```

This command is the package/class counterpart to the document command `\usepackage`. If *package* was not loaded before, it is loaded now with the options specified in *option-list*, the global options from the `\documentclass` command, and all options passed to this package via `\PassOptionsToPackage`.

\LaTeX loads a package only once because in many cases it is dangerous to execute the code of a package several times. Thus, if you require a package with a certain set of options, but this package was previously loaded with a different set not including all options requested at this time, then the user of your package has a problem. In this situation \LaTeX may¹ issue an error message informing users of your package

¹If the package uses key/value options, it depends on the properties of the keys whether a second loading attempt is possible; see the discussion on page 701.

about the conflict and suggesting that they load the package with a `\usepackage` command and all necessary options.

The optional *release* argument can be used to request a package version not older than a certain date. For this scheme to work, the required package must contain a `\ProvidesPackage` declaration specifying a release date.

It can also be used to request a specific named version `[=<version>]` or a version current at a certain date by using `[=<date>]` in the *release* argument. However, this should normally be avoided within packages or classes, because you force L^AT_EX to always load old and possible obsolete code.¹

```
\RequirePackageWithOptions{package}[release]
```

This command works like `\RequirePackage` except that the options passed to it are exactly those specified for the calling package or class. This facilitates the generation of variant packages that take exactly the same set of options as the original. See also the discussion of `\LoadClassWithOptions` on page 709.

A.6.8 The main code part

This final part of the file defines the characteristics and implements the functions provided by the given class or package. It can contain any valid L^AT_EX construct and usually defines new commands and structures. It is good style to use standard L^AT_EX commands, as described in this appendix, such as `\newlength`, `\newcommand`, `\NewDocumentCommand`, `\NewDocumentEnvironment`, and so on, rather than relying on primitive T_EX commands, because the latter do not test for possible conflicts with other packages.

A.6.9 Special commands for package and class files

With a few exceptions, the commands in this section are not useful outside a package or a document class.

```
\AtEndOfPackage{code}    \AtEndOfClass{code}
```

Sometimes it is necessary to defer the execution of some code to the end of the current package or class file. The above declarations save the *code* argument and execute it when the end of the package or class is reached. If more than one such declaration is present in a file, the *code* is accumulated and finally executed in the order in which the declarations were given.

These declarations are merely for convenience and help structure the code. Instead of using them, you can certainly place the necessary code at the very end of the package or class.

¹This facility is mainly intended for end users who need to reprocess an old document written when an earlier package version was the “current” one.

<i>Special commands for package and class files</i>	
<code>\AtEndOfPackage{code}</code>	<code>\AtEndOfClass{code}</code>
Defers execution of <i>code</i> to end of current package or class	
<code>\AtBeginDocument{code}</code>	<code>\AtEndDocument{code}</code>
Executes <i>code</i> at <code>\begin{document}</code> or <code>\end{document}</code>	
<code>\IfFileExists{file}{then-code}{else-code}</code>	
Executes <i>then-code</i> if <i>file</i> exists, <i>else-code</i> otherwise	
<code>\InputIfFileExists{file}{then-code}{else-code}</code>	
If <i>file</i> exists, executes <i>then-code</i> and then inputs <i>file</i> ; otherwise executes <i>else-code</i>	

<i>Special class file commands</i>	
<code>\LoadClass[option-list]{class}[release]</code>	
Like <code>\RequirePackage</code> for class files, but does not see global options if not explicitly passed to it	
<code>\PassOptionsToClass[option-list]{class}</code>	
Passes <i>option-list</i> to <i>class</i>	

Table A.7: Special commands for package and class files

<code>\AtBeginDocument{code}</code>	<code>\AtEndDocument{code}</code>
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

Other important points at which you might want to execute deferred code are the beginning and the end of the document or, more exactly, the points where the `\begin{document}` and `\end{document}` are processed. The above commands allow packages to add code to this environment without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same. Note, however, that code in the `\AtBeginDocument` hook is part of the preamble. Thus, restrictions limit what can be put there; in particular, no typesetting can be done.

These days the commands are implemented using the hook management system of \LaTeX described in Section A.4; e.g., `\AtBeginDocument{code}` is just an abbreviation for

```
\AddToHook{begindocument}[package-or-class-name]{code}
```

and there are further hooks into `\begin{document}` that allow for even more granular control. For example, `begindocument/after` can be used to add typesetting material at the very beginning of the document body.

<code>\IfFileExists{file}{then-code}{else-code}</code>
<code>\InputIfFileExists{file}{then-code}{else-code}</code>

If your package or class tries to `\input` a file that does not exist, the user ends up in \TeX 's file-error loop. It can be exited only by supplying a valid file name. Your package or class can avoid this problem by using `\IfFileExists`. The argument

file is the file whose existence you want to check. If this *file* is found by L^AT_EX, the commands in *then-code* are executed; otherwise, those in *else-code* are executed. The command `\InputIfFileExists` tests not only whether *file* exists, but also inputs it immediately after executing *then-code*. The name *file* is then added to the list of files to be displayed by `\listfiles`.

```
\PackageWarning{name}{text}      \PackageWarningNoLine{name}{text}
\PackageNote{name}{text}         \PackageNoteNoLine{name}{text}
\PackageInfo{name}{text}
```

When a package detects a problem, it can alert the user by printing a warning message on the terminal. For example, when the `multicol` package detects that `multicols*` (which normally generates unbalanced columns) is used inside a box, it issues the following warning:¹

```
\PackageWarning{multicol}{multicols* inside a box does
not make sense.\MessageBreak  Going to balance anyway}
```

This produces a warning message, which is explicitly broken into two lines via the `\MessageBreak` command:

```
Package multicol Warning: multicols* inside a box does not make sense.
(multicol)                Going to balance anyway on input line 6.
```

The current line number is automatically appended. Sometimes it would be nice to display the current file name as well, but unfortunately this information is not available on the macro level.

Depending on the nature of the problem, it might be important to tell the user the source line on which the problem was encountered. In other cases this information is irrelevant or even misleading, such as when the problem happens while the package is being loaded. In this situation, `\PackageWarningNoLine` should be used; it produces the same result as `\PackageWarning` but omits the phrase “on input line *number*”.

If the information is not really a warning, but just something you want the user to be informed about, you can use `\PackageNote` or `\PackageNoteNoLine`; both produce the same kind of output, but with `Warning` replaced by `Info`.

If this information should appear just in the transcript file, then one can use `\PackageInfo`. For example, after loading the `shortvrb` package and issuing the declaration `\MakeShortVerb\=`, the transcript file shows the following:

```
Package shortvrb Info: Made = a short reference for
\verb on input line 3.
```

¹In a box, balancing is essential because a box can grow arbitrarily in vertical direction, so all material would otherwise end up in the first column.

A `\PackageInfoNoLine` command is not provided. If you really want to suppress the line number in an informational message, use `\@gobble` as the last token in the second argument of `\PackageInfo`.

$$\backslash\text{PackageError}\{name\}\{short\text{-}text\}\{long\text{-}text\}$$

If the problem detected is severe enough to require user intervention, one can signal an error instead of a warning. If the error is encountered, the *short-text* is displayed immediately and processing stops. For example, if `inputenc` encounters an 8-bit character it does not recognize, it produces the following error:

```
! Package inputenc Error: Keyboard character used is undefined
(inputenc)                in inputencoding 'latin1'.
```

```
See the inputenc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
...
```

```
1.5 abc^^G
?
```

If the user then presses “h” or “H”, the *long-text* is offered. In this case it is:

```
You need to provide a definition with \DeclareInputText
or \DeclareInputMath before using this key.
```

As before, you can explicitly determine the line breaks in the error and help texts by using `\MessageBreak`.

$\backslash\text{ClassWarning}\{name\}\{text\}$	$\backslash\text{ClassWarningNoLine}\{name\}\{text\}$
$\backslash\text{ClassNote}\{name\}\{text\}$	$\backslash\text{ClassNoteNoLine}\{name\}\{text\}$
$\backslash\text{ClassInfo}\{name\}\{text\}$	$\backslash\text{ClassError}\{name\}\{short\text{-}text\}\{long\text{-}text\}$

Information, warning, and error commands are not only available for packages — similar commands are provided for document classes. They differ only in the produced texts: the latter commands print “Class” instead of “Package” in the appropriate places.

$$\begin{array}{l} \backslash\text{IfFormatAtLeastTF}\{date\}\{true\text{-}code\}\{false\text{-}code\} \\ \backslash\text{IfPackageAtLeastTF}\{package\}\{date\}\{true\text{-}code\}\{false\text{-}code\} \\ \backslash\text{IfClassAtLeastTF}\{package\}\{date\}\{true\text{-}code\}\{false\text{-}code\} \end{array}$$

Sometimes it is important to ensure that the \LaTeX kernel or a certain package or class is from a specific date (or later), because that decides what code to execute. For example, commands such as `\NewDocumentCommand`, described in Section A.1.4, were added to \LaTeX in 2020-10-01 and therefore cannot be used in a package running on top of an earlier distribution. That can be solved by requiring a recent enough kernel using `\NeedsTeXFormat`. However, as a package author you may want to

support older distributions, and in that case this could be done by loading `xparse`, i.e.,

```
\IfFormatAtLeastTF{2020-10-01}{\RequirePackage{xparse}}
```

In the same way, adjustments for specific package versions (`\IfPackageAtLeastTF`) or class versions (`\IfClassAtLeastTF`) can be made.

```
\IfPackageLoadedTF{package}{true-code}{false-code}
\IfPackageLoadedWithOptionsTF{package}{options}{true-code}{false-code}
```

Sometimes it is useful to be able to find out if a package is already loaded, and if so, how. For this purpose, two commands are made available to class (and package) writers. To find out if a *package* has already been loaded, use `\IfPackageLoadedTF`. To find out if a *package* has been loaded with at least the (comma-separated) *options* list, use `\IfPackageLoadedWithOptionsTF`.

Note that the `fontenc` package cannot be tested with the above commands. That's because it pretends that it was never loaded to allow for repeated reloading with different options (see the file `ltoutenc.dtx` in the L^AT_EX distribution for details).

Testing for classes can be done with the commands `\IfClassLoadedTF` and `\IfClassLoadedWithOptionsTF`. They can, for example, be used to define commands that behave differently if used with different document classes.

A.6.10 Special commands for class files

It is sometimes helpful to build a class file as a customization of a given general class. To support this concept two commands are provided.

```
\LoadClass[option-list]{class}[release]
```

The `\LoadClass` command works like the `\RequirePackage` command with the following three exceptions:

- The command can be used only in class files.
- There can be at most one `\LoadClass` command per class.
- The global options are not seen by the *class* unless explicitly passed to it via `\PassOptionsToClass` or specified in the *option-list*.

```
\PassOptionsToClass{option-list}{class}
```

The command `\PassOptionsToClass` can be used to pass options to such a general class. An example of such a class file augmentation is shown in Figure A.1 on the next page. It defines a class file `myart` that accepts two extra options, `cropmarks` (making crop marks for trimming the pages) and `bind` (shifting the printed pages slightly to

```

% ----- identification -----
\NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}
\ProvidesClass{myart}[2021/01/01]
% ----- initial code -----
\RequirePackage{ifthen}      \newboolean{cropmarks}
% ----- declaration of options --
\DeclareOption{cropmarks}{\setboolean{cropmarks}{true}}
\DeclareOption{bind}        {\AtEndOfClass{\addtolength\oddsidemargin{.5in}%
                                     \addtolength\evensidemargin{-.5in}}}
\DeclareOption*              {\PassOptionsToClass{\CurrentOption}{article}}
% ----- execution of options -----
\ProcessOptions \relax      % cf. hint on p.700!
% ----- package loading -----
\LoadClass{article}         % the real code
% ----- main code -----
\newenvironment{Notes}{...}{...} % the new environment
\ifthenelse{\boolean{cropmarks}} % support for cropmarks
  {\renewcommand{\ps@plain}{...} ...}{...}

```

Figure A.1: An example of a class file extending article

the outside to get a larger binding margin), as well as one additional environment, `Notes`.

The `cropmarks` option is implemented by setting a Boolean switch and redefining various `\pagestyles` if this switch is true. The `bind` option modifies the values of `\oddsidemargin` and `\evensidemargin`. These length registers do not have their final values at the time the `bind` option is encountered (they are set later, when the article class is loaded by `\LoadClass`), so the modification is deferred until the end of the `myart` class file using the `\AtEndOfClass` command.

`\LoadClassWithOptions{class}[release]`

This command is similar to `\LoadClass`, but it always calls the `class` with exactly the same option list that is being used by the current class, rather than the options explicitly supplied or passed on by `\PassOptionsToClass`. It is mainly intended to allow one class to build on another. For example:

```
\LoadClassWithOptions{article}
```

This should be contrasted with the following slightly different construction:

```

\DeclareOption*{\PassOptionsToClass{\CurrentOption}{article}}
\ProcessOptions \LoadClass{article}

```

As used here, the effects are more or less the same, but the version using the command `\LoadClassWithOptions` is slightly quicker (and less onerous to type). If,

however, the class declares options of its own, then the two constructions are different. Compare, for example,

```
\DeclareOption{landscape}{...}
\ProcessOptions                \LoadClassWithOptions{article}
```

with:

```
\DeclareOption{landscape}{...}
\DeclareOption*{\PassOptionsToClass{\CurrentOption}{article}}
\ProcessOptions                \LoadClass{article}
```

In the first example, the article class is called with the option `landscape` only when the current class is called with this option. In the second example, however, the option `landscape` is never passed to the article class, because the default option handler passes only options that are *not* explicitly declared.

A.6.11 A minimal class file

Every class file *must* contain at least four things: a definition of `\normalsize`, values for `\textwidth` and `\textheight`, and a specification for page numbering. Thus, a minimal document class file¹ could look like this:

```
\NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}
\ProvidesClass{minimal}[2001/05/25 Standard LaTeX minimal class]
\renewcommand\normalsize{\fontsize{10pt}{12pt}\selectfont}
\setlength\textwidth{6.5in}
\setlength\textheight{8in}
\pagenumbering{arabic}          % needed even though this class does
                                %   not show page numbers
\pagestyle{empty}              % this is actually already in the kernel
```

This class file does not support footnotes, marginals, floats, or other features. Naturally, most classes contain more than this minimum!

¹This class is in the standard distribution, as `minimal.cls`. It is not very useful, though—not even for producing bug reports; it is better use the article class for that.

Tracing and Resolving Problems

B.1 Error messages	712
B.2 Dying with memory exceeded	744
B.3 Warnings and informational messages	749
B.4 T _E X and L ^A T _E X commands for tracing	765

In an ideal world all documents you produced would compile without problems and give high-quality output as intended. If you are that lucky, there will be no need for you to consult this appendix, ever. However, if you run into a problem of some kind, the material in this appendix should help you to resolve your problem easily.

We start with an alphabetical list of all error messages, those after which L^AT_EX stops and asks for advice. “All” in this context means all L^AT_EX kernel errors (their text starts with `LaTeX Error:` or `LaTeX <module> Error`), practically all T_EX errors (i.e., those directly produced by the underlying engine), and errors from the packages `amsmath`, `babel`, `calc`, `color`, `fontenc`, `graphics`, `graphicx`, and `inputenc`. Errors reported by other packages — those that identify themselves as

`! Package <package> Error: <error text>`

where `<package>` is not one of the above — are not included. For such errors you should refer to the package description elsewhere in the book or consult the original package documentation.

But even if there are no real errors that stop the processing, warning and information messages might be shown on the terminal or in the transcript file. They are treated in Section B.3, where you will find all L^AT_EX core messages and all relevant T_EX messages that may need your attention, together with an explanation of their possible causes and suggestions on how to deal with them.

The final section deals with tools for tracing problems in case the error or warning information itself is not sufficient or does not exist. We will explore ways to display command definitions and register values and then take a look at diagnosing and solving page-breaking problems. This is followed by suggestions for identifying and solving paragraph-breaking problems and includes a brief look at two LuaTeX-only packages for dealing with hyphenation issues. We finish with a description of the trace package, which helps in thoroughly tracing command execution, if your own definitions or those of others produce unexpected results.

Some of the material in this appendix can be considered “low-level” TeX, something that, to the author’s knowledge, has never been described in any other L^AT_EX book. It is, however, often important information. Directing the reader to books like *The TeXbook* does not really help, because most of the advice given in books about plain TeX is not applicable to L^AT_EX or produces subtle errors when used. We therefore try to be as self-contained as possible by offering all relevant information about the underlying TeX engine as far as it makes sense within the L^AT_EX context.

B.1 Error messages

When L^AT_EX stops to display an error message, it also shows a line number indicating how far it got in the document source. However, because of memory considerations in the design of TeX itself, it does not directly show to which file this source line number belongs. For simple documents this is not a problem, but if your document is split over many files, you may have to carefully look at the terminal output or the transcript file to identify the file L^AT_EX is currently working on when the error occurs.¹

*Finding the source
line of an error*

Whenever L^AT_EX starts reading a file, it displays a “(” character that is immediately followed by the file name. Once L^AT_EX has finished reading the file, it displays the matching “)” character. In addition, whenever it starts preparing to output a page, it displays a “[” character followed by the current page number. Thus, if you see something like

```
(./trial.tex [1] (./ch-1.tex [2] [3] (./table-1.tex [4] [5]) [6]
! Undefined control sequence.
<argument> A \textss
                {Test}
1.235 \section{A \textss{Test}}
                                \label{sec:test}

?
```

you can deduce that the error happened inside an argument of some command (<argument>) and was detected when L^AT_EX gathered material for page 7. It got as far as reading most of line 235 in the file `ch-1.tex`. In this example the error is readily

¹ A useful little helper for this is the `structuredlog` package. Once loaded, it uses the file hooks to identify the start and end of file-reading actions in the `.log` with lines such as “== (LEVEL 2 START) table-1.tex” and corresponding STOP lines. Thus, to find out where some error has occurred you only have to search backwards for the string “(LEVEL” and if that is a START line you are done; otherwise, you have to search further for the START line with the next lower level number.

visible in the source line: `\textsf` was misspelled as `\textss` inside the argument to the `\section` command. In some cases, however, the relationship between error and source line is blurred or even nonexistent.

For example, if you define `\renewcommand\thepart{\Alp{part}}`, then the typo appears only when you use the `\part` command that executes your definition. In that case you get

```
! Undefined control sequence.
\thepart ->\Alp
               {part}
1.167 \part{Test}
```

In this particular case the actual error is not on line 167 and most likely not even in the current file — the `\part` command merely happens to call the faulty definition of `\thepart`.

Sometimes an error is detected by \LaTeX while it is preparing a new page. Because this is an asynchronous operation, the source line listed in the error message is of no value whatsoever. So if you do not understand how the error should be related to the source line, you may well be right — there is, indeed, no relationship. Here is an example:

```
! Undefined control sequence.
\thepage ->\romen
               {page}
1.33 T
    his is a sample text to fill the page.
```

One way to obtain additional information about an error (or information about how \LaTeX intends to deal with it) is to press the key `h` in response to the `?` that follows the error message. If used with a \TeX error such as the one above, we get

```
? h
The control sequence at the end of the top line
of your error message was never \def'ed. If you have
misspelled it (e.g., '\hobx'), type 'I' and the correct
spelling (e.g., 'I\hbox'). Otherwise just continue,
and I'll forget about whatever was undefined.
```

You probably already see the problem with advice coming directly from the \TeX engine: you may have to translate it, because it often talks about commands that are not necessarily adequate for \LaTeX documents (e.g., for `\def` you should read `\newcommand` or `\NewDocumentCommand`). With real \LaTeX errors this is not the case, though here you sometimes get advice that is also not really helpful:

```
You're in trouble here. Try typing <return> to proceed.
If that doesn't work, type X <return> to quit.
```

Well, thank you very much; we already knew that! Typing `h` (*return*) is, however, worth a try, because there are many messages with more detailed advice.

*Displaying the stack
of partially
expanded macros*

Another way to get additional information about an encountered error is to set the counter `errorcontextlines` to a large positive value. In that case \LaTeX lists the stack of the current macro executions:

```

1  ! Undefined control sequence.
2  \thepage ->\romen
3      {page}
4  \@oddfoot ->\reset@font \hfil \thepage
5      \hfil
6  \@outputpage ...lor \hb@xt@ \textwidth {\@thefoot
7      } \color@endbox }} \globa...
8
9  \@opcol ...lumn \@outputdblcol \else \@outputpage
10     \fi \global \mparbotto...
11 <output> ...specialoutput \else \@makecol \@opcol
12     \startcolumn \@whiles...
13 <to be read again>
14     T
15 1.33 T
16     his is a sample text to fill the page.
```

You read this bottom up: \LaTeX has seen the T (lines 15 and 16) but wants to read it again later (<to be read again>, lines 13 and 14) because it switched to the output routine (<output>). There it got as far as executing the command `\@opcol` (lines 11 and 12), which in turn got as far as calling `\@outputpage` (lines 9 and 10), which was executing `\@thefoot` (lines 6 and 7). Line 4 is a bit curious because it refers to `\@oddfoot` rather than `\@thefoot` as one would expect (`\@thefoot` expands to `\@oddfoot`, so it is immediately fully expanded and not put onto the stack of partially expanded macros). Inside `\@oddfoot` we got as far as calling `\thepage`, which in turn expanded to `\romen` (lines 2 and 3), which is finally flagged as an undefined command (line 1).

Fortunately, in most cases it is sufficient only to display the error message and the source line. This is why \LaTeX 's default value for `errorcontextlines` is -1, which means not showing any intermediate context.

Error 
during expansion

Errors can occur when \LaTeX is doing expansions rather than typesetting. This is a problematical time, because in that mode \TeX is not able to do any assignments, which is a prerequisite to display \LaTeX error or warning messages with useful help texts. It is also difficult to stop the expansion in time when an error condition is identified without stopping it when there is no error condition. Nevertheless, with some gymnastics it is possible to produce reasonable error messages (as long as you ignore the help text that you get by typing `h` in response to the error). The trick used by \LaTeX is to produce a low-level \TeX error, but to do this in a way that it nearly looks like a normal \LaTeX error.

```

! Use of \??? doesn't match its definition.
<argument> \???
! LaTeX cmd Error: Required argument missing for \foo.
1. ... }
```


The artificially generated low-level \TeX error to stop the expansion is responsible for the first line of the error, i.e., “! Use of \??? doesn’t match its definition”. It is always the same line in such error messages — and no, nobody has defined a command with the name \???, but it is not unreasonable to think of it as a placeholder for *the current command* that has a problem.

The interesting part is the line starting with “! LaTeX (type) Error: \langle reason \rangle ” that you can look up in this appendix. The help text, on the other hand (that you get by using `h`), is not helpful, because it gives an explanation of the low-level error that \LaTeX had artificially produced:


```
If you say, e.g., ‘\def\al{...}’, then you must always
put ‘1’ after ‘\a’, since control sequence names are
made up of letters only. The macro here has not been
followed by the required stuff, so I’m ignoring it.
```

Thus, if you see a “! Use of \??? doesn’t match ...” error and you do not understand what it means, come straight to this appendix and look up the \langle reason \rangle given on the third line.

Errors can also occur when \LaTeX is processing an intermediate file used to transfer information between two runs (e.g., `.aux` or `.toc` files). Data in such files can be corrupted due to an error that happened in a previous run. Even if you have corrected that error in your source, traces of it may still be present in such external files. Therefore, in some cases you may have to delete those files before running \LaTeX again, although often the problem vanishes after another run.


 Persistent errors

Common sources for such nasty errors in \LaTeX are so-called *fragile* commands used unprotected in *moving arguments*. Technically, a moving argument is an argument that is internally expanded by \LaTeX without typesetting it directly (e.g., by using the internal \LaTeX construct `\protected@edef1`). But as a rule of thumb you can think of it as an argument that is moved somewhere else before typesetting — for example, the arguments of sectioning commands, such as `\section` (sent to the table of contents), the argument of `\caption` (sent to the list of figures or tables), and the arguments of `\markboth` and `\markright`.

 Errors due to fragile commands

The best, though not very helpful, definition of a fragile command is that it is a command that produces errors if it is not preceded with a `\protect` command when used in a moving argument.

Commands that are not fragile either have an expansion that is harmless in a moving argument (for example, they expand to simple text characters) or they have been explicitly made *robust*, which means they do not expand at all in such arguments. Today, most common \LaTeX commands have been made robust (i.e., nonexpanding) so that such protection is seldom necessary. However, if you get strange errors from a command used in a moving argument, try preceding it with `\protect`.

 Robust commands do not expand in moving arguments

¹ Some people have heard that the \TeX primitive `\edef` exists for this purpose. It is not advisable to use it in your own commands, however, unless you know that it will never receive arbitrary document input. You should use `\protected@edef` instead, because that command prevents fragile commands from breaking apart if they are prefixed by `\protect`!

There are no precise rules defining which commands belong to which category. User-defined commands made with `\NewDocumentCommand` are generally robust, but simple commands defined with `\newcommand` and with only mandatory arguments are fragile if they contain any fragile commands in their definition. For example, the definition

```
\newcommand\frail{\ifthenelse{\value{section}<10 \and
                             \value{subsection}=1}%
                             {\typeout{Yes}}{\typeout{No}}}
```

is fragile because the comparison argument of `\ifthenelse` is fragile. If you used `\frail` in the `@` expression of a `tabular` (not that this makes much sense),

```
\nonstopmode      \begin{tabular}{@{\frail}l} x \end{tabular}
```

you would see the following 101 errors before \LaTeX finally gives up (the left column displays the number of occurrences):

```
1 ! Argument of \@firstoftwo has an extra }.
1 ! Argument of \renew@command has an extra }.
1 ! Extra \or.
83 ! Illegal parameter number in definition of \reserved@a.
1 ! Paragraph ended before \@firstoftwo was complete.
1 ! Paragraph ended before \renew@command was complete.
4 ! Undefined control sequence.
8 ! Use of \@array doesn't match its definition.
1 ! ==> Fatal error occurred, no output PDF file produced!
```

*All \TeX errors
can be caused by
a fragile command
in a moving
argument!*

*Errors
produced by
cross-reference keys*

What we can learn from this example is the following: whenever you encounter a strange \TeX error that has no simple explanation (such as a misspelled command name), it is possibly due to a fragile command that got broken in a moving argument — so try protecting it with `\protect` at the point where the error occurs. Because this can be the reason behind every \TeX error, we shall not repeat this possible cause for every one of them (after all, more than 60 \TeX error messages are explained below).

As discussed in Section A.1.1, a few restrictions are placed on the characters that can be used in reference key arguments of `\label` and `\bibitem`. In a nutshell, such keys sometimes act like moving arguments and, depending on the combination characters used and the packages loaded, all kinds of dreadful \TeX errors may show up. In that case protection with using the `\protect` command does *not* work; instead, you have to use a simpler key conforming to the syntax restrictions for such keys.

Alphabetical listing of \TeX and \LaTeX errors

In the list of errors below, all \TeX and all package errors are flagged with a boxed reference at the end of the error message. Newer \LaTeX errors originating from a specific module are flagged with the module name in parentheses, while the older

L^AT_EX errors are unflagged. In all cases the typical prefix, e.g., “LaTeX *<module>* Error:” or “Package *<name>* Error:”, is omitted.

* T_EX

If L^AT_EX stops by just displaying a star, then it has reached the end of your source document without seeing a request to finish the job (i.e., `\end{document}` or `\stop`) and is now waiting for input from the terminal. While this is in itself not an error, in most circumstances it means that something went seriously wrong. If there have been no previous errors and your document finishes with `\end{document}`, then you might have forgotten to close a `verbatim` environment so that the remainder of the document was processed “verbatim”.

To find the source of this problem in a large document, reply `\end{foo}`, which either should give you an “Environment ... ended by...” error (indicating what environment L^AT_EX thinks is still open) or is swallowed without any reaction, in which case you know that you are indeed in some “verbatim” context. In the latter event, try to interrupt L^AT_EX (by pressing Control-C or whatever your installation requires) and reply with “x” to the “Interruption” error to quit the job. Looking afterwards at the last page in the typeset document usually gives some hint about where things started to go wrong.

‘*<character>*’ invalid at this point calc

You loaded the `calc` package, and one of the expressions in `\setcounter`, `\setlength`, `\addtocounter`, or `\addtolength` used a syntax not supported by `calc`. See Section A.5.2 for details.

<hex number> too large for Unicode

With `\DeclareUnicodeCharacter` you can only declare Unicode characters with a *<hex number>* of 110FFF or less; anything larger generates this error.

<command> allowed only in math mode amsmath

This command or environment can be used only in math mode. Check carefully to see what is missing from your document.

`\<` in mid line

The `\<`, defined within a `tabbing` environment, was encountered in the middle of a line. It can be used only at the beginning of a line (e.g., after `\<`).

A `<Box>` was supposed to be here T_EX

This error is the result of using a box command, such as `\sbox`, with an invalid first argument (i.e., one not declared with `\newsavebox`). Usually, you first get the error “Missing number, treated as zero” indicating that T_EX uses box register zero.

Argument delimiter ‘*<delimiter>*’ invalid in *<command or environment>* (cmd)

Some argument types available with `\NewDocumentCommand` or its siblings require you to specify delimiters. You get this error message if the specified delimiter is not a single nonblank token or if it is an implicit group token, such as `\bgroup`. Neither is supported.

Argument of `<command>` has an extra `}` TeX

A right brace was used in place of a mandatory command argument (e.g., `\mbox{}`). Fragile commands, when used without `\protect` in a moving argument, often break in a way that generates this or one of the other “extra” errors discussed below.

Argument type ‘b’ must be last in `<environment>` cmd

In a `\NewDocumentEnvironment` declaration you can use the type `b` to indicate the body of the environment. However, in this instance it is not the last argument specified, which it has to be, in order to grab the environment body.

Bad argument specification ‘`<spec>`’ of `<command or environment>` cmd

The argument specification of a command defined with `\NewDocumentCommand` or an environment defined with `\NewDocumentEnvironment` has a problem. Possible causes are:

- Some parts of the specification are missing required components; e.g., a `D` specifier needs to be followed by two delimiters and a default value;
- The final argument of an expandable command, i.e., one defined with a `\NewExpandableDocumentCommand` declaration, cannot be optional.

Bad `\line` or `\vector` argument

TeX issues this error if you specified a negative length or used an illegal slope with either `\line` or `\vector`. In the latter case, see Chapter 8 for alternatives.

Bad math environment delimiter

This error is triggered when a `\(` or `\[` command is encountered inside a formula or when `\)` or `\]` is found in normal text. Check whether these commands are properly matched in your document.

`\begin{<env>}` allowed only in paragraph mode amsmath

There are many places, such as within LR-mode text or math mode, where it does not make sense to have a math display. With `amsmath` the whole display `<env>` is simply ignored.

`\begin{<env>}` on input line `<line number>` ended by `\end{<other env>}`

You receive this error when TeX detects that the environment `<env>` was incorrectly terminated with the end-tag for the environment `<other env>`. The most likely case is that you, indeed, forgot to close the environment `<env>`.

Another possible source of this error is trying to use verbatim-like environments or an `amsmath` display environment inside the definition of your own environments, which is often impossible. See Section 4.2.4 on page 1317 for solutions involving verbatim-like environments.

If neither is the case and you are absolutely sure that all environments are properly nested, then somewhere between the start of `<env>` and the point where the error was found there must be a command that issues an `\endgroup` without a prior matching `\begingroup` so that TeX is fooled into believing that the

`<env>` environment ended at this point. One way to find that problem is to move the end-tag closer to the begin-tag, until the problem disappears.

`\begin{split}` won't work here amsmath

Either this `split` environment is not within an equation or perhaps you need to use `aligned` here.

Can be used only in preamble

\TeX has encountered a command or environment that should be used only inside a package or the preamble (i.e., before `\begin{document}`). This error can also be caused by a second `\begin{document}`.

Cannot add code to disabled hook '`<hook>`' (hooks)

Generic command hooks, e.g., `cmd/<cmd>/after`, do not work for all `<cmd>`s (in particular the `/after` hooks). To avoid unpleasant surprises they can therefore be explicitly disabled in which case `\AddToHook` does not accept them and instead replies with this error message.

Cannot define non-active Unicode char value `< 00A0`

Unicode character values less than `00A0` (decimal 160) can normally not be used with `\DeclareUnicodeCharacter` to give them a special LICR interpretation in pdf \TeX . Exceptions are a few characters that have been made active by \TeX .

Cannot determine size of graphic in `<file>` graphics|graphicx

You did not specify an explicit image size on the `\includegraphics` command, and \TeX was unable to determine the image size from the graphics `<file>` directly. It usually does this automatically, for example, for `.eps` files by reading the bounding box information. However, depending on the graphics driver, it may be unable to extract this information from binary bitmap images such as `.jpg` or `.png` files.

Cannot include graphics of type: `<ext>` graphics|graphicx

You get this error if you have specified a graphics type in the second argument of `\DeclareGraphicsRule` or used the `type` keyword of `\includegraphics`, for which the loaded graphics driver has no support.

Cannot remove chunk '`<label>`' from hook '`<hook>`' because `<reason>` (hooks)

You tried to remove a chunk of code labeled `<label>` using `\RemoveFromHook`, but either the `<hook>` does not exist or there is no such chunk. You can look at the hook with `\ShowHook` to verify that there is no spelling mistake.

Circular dependency in defaults of `<name>` (cmd)

Optional arguments in `\NewDocumentCommand` or its variants can have defaults that use the content of other arguments in their default value. If you go overboard with that approach, you may end up with a circular dependency that \TeX is unable to resolve for you, and in that case you get this error message.

`\caption` outside float

A `\caption` command was found outside a float environment, such as a figure

or table. This error message is disabled by some of the extension packages described in Chapter 7.

Command $\langle name \rangle$ already defined

You try to declare a command, an environment, a new savebox, a length, or a counter with a $\langle name \rangle$ that already has a meaning in \LaTeX . Your declaration is ignored, and you have to choose a different name. This error is also triggered if you use $\backslash newcommand$ with a $\langle name \rangle$ starting in $\backslash end. . .$, even if $\backslash renewcommand$ claims the $\langle name \rangle$ is unused. It is also issued if you try to define an environment $\langle name \rangle$ but the command $\backslash end\langle name \rangle$ already has a definition. For instance, you cannot define an environment `graf` because \TeX has a low-level command called $\backslash endgraf$.

Command $\langle name \rangle$ invalid in math mode

This is either a warning or an error message indicating that you have used a command in math mode that should be used only in normal text. In the case of an error message, use `h` to get further help.

Command $\langle name \rangle$ not defined as a math alphabet

This error message is issued when you attempt to use $\backslash SetMathAlphabet$ on a $\langle name \rangle$ that was not previously declared with $\backslash DeclareMathAlphabet$ or $\backslash DeclareSymbolFontAlphabet$ to be a math alphabet identifier.

Command $\langle name \rangle$ not provided in base $\text{\LaTeX}2\epsilon$

You get this error for a handful of math symbols available in a “ \LaTeX symbol font” distributed with \LaTeX 2.09. These fonts are no longer loaded because that wastes one of the 16 precious math symbol font families (see page 739). If you need that symbol, load either `amsfonts` or the `wasysym` package.

Command $\langle name \rangle$ unavailable in encoding $\langle encoding \rangle$

Generated by $\backslash TextSymbolUnavailable$, which is these days very seldom used, because for most symbols suitable default mappings exist. If you get this error, it means that the symbol you attempt to typeset is not available in the current text encoding and you have to change the encoding.

Command $\langle name \rangle$ undefined

This error is triggered when you use $\backslash renewcommand$ with a $\langle name \rangle$ that is unknown to \LaTeX . Either $\langle name \rangle$ was misspelled or you should have used $\backslash newcommand$ instead.

It is also issued if you try to use $\backslash RenewDocumentCommand$ or $\backslash MakeRobust$ with an undefined command $\langle name \rangle$.

Corrupted NFSS tables

\LaTeX tried some font substitution and detected an inconsistency in its internal tables. This error happens if font substitution was triggered and the substitution rules contain a loop (i.e., some circular sub declarations exist) or when the default substitution arguments for the current encoding point to a nonexistent font shape group.

Counter too large

This error is produced if you try to display a counter value with `\fnsymbol`, `\alph`, or `\Alph` and the value is outside the available range for the chosen display form. See Section A.2.2 on page 650 for ways to work around this error.

Dimension too large TeX

TeX can deal only with absolute sizes that are less than 16383.99998pt (about 226 inches or 7.75 meters). Even on a huge page this range should be enough.

However, the error can also be triggered by packages such as `tikz` or `pgfplots` that internally use dimension registers for calculating coordinates. Even if the coordinates and plot values themselves are small, intermediate calculation steps involving, for example, divisions by small values can exceed TeX's limits.

`\displaybreak` cannot be applied here amsmath

An enclosing environment such as `split`, `aligned`, or `gathered` has created an unbreakable block.

Division by 0 graphics|graphicx

Usually, you get this error when you scale a graphic that has a height of zero. This can happen unintentionally—for example, if you specify `angle=-90`, `height=3cm` on `\includegraphics`. The rotation turns the image sideways, making the height zero, a value difficult to scale. In such a case use `totalheight` instead.

`\DocumentMetadata` should be only used before `\documentclass`

The `\DocumentMetadata` command provides data relevant to the whole document. Some of that information has to be specified at a very early stage, e.g., before the PDF (Portable Document Format) output file has been opened because it is already needed at this point. It must therefore be specified at first, and even though this is not strictly necessary for all document metadata, L^AT_EX prohibits its use after `\documentclass` has been seen, in order to ensure that all such data is stored in a single place.

Double subscript TeX

Two subscripts appear in a row (e.g., x_{i_2}), and L^AT_EX does not know whether you mean x_{i_2} or x_{i_2} . Add braces to indicate the subscripts: $x_{\{i_2\}}$.

Double superscript TeX

L^AT_EX found two superscripts in a row. See the explanation above.

Encoding file '`\<name>enc.def`' not found fontenc

If you ask for encoding `\<name>`, L^AT_EX tries to load the definitions for this encoding from the file `\<name>enc.def` (after converting `\<name>` to lowercase letters). If this file does not exist or cannot be found by L^AT_EX, you get this error message.

Encoding scheme `\<name>` unknown

The encoding `\<name>` you have specified in a declaration or in `\fontencoding` is not known to the system. Either you misspelled its name, you forgot to declare

it using `\DeclareFontEncoding`, or you need to load some font support package providing it.

End of environment '*<name>*' already defined (cmd)

When defining a new environment with `\NewDocumentEnvironment`, it checks that neither `\<name>` nor `\end<name>` is already defined. If only the latter is defined, you get this error message, otherwise the one below. In either case your definition is not made.

Environment *<name>* already defined

You try to declare an environment with `\newenvironment` with a *<name>* that already has a meaning in \LaTeX . Your declaration is ignored, and you have to choose a different name or use `\renewenvironment`. `\NewDocumentEnvironment` shows the same behavior.

Environment *<name>* undefined

You get this error if you use `\renewenvironment` on an environment name that is unknown to \LaTeX . Either the *<name>* was misspelled or you should have used `\newenvironment` instead. `\RenewDocumentEnvironment` shows the same behavior. This error is also triggered if you use `\begin` with a *<name>* that is not known to \LaTeX .

Erroneous nesting of equation structures; amsmath trying to recover with 'aligned'

Only certain `amsmath` display structures can be nested; `aligned` is one of these, so the system replaces a wrongly nested environment with it. This is probably not what you intended, so you should change the wrongly nested environment.

Extra & on this line amsmath

This error occurs only when you are using old `amsmath` environments that are not described in this book. If it does occur, then it is disastrous, and you need to check very carefully the environment where it occurred.

Extra alignment tab has been changed to `\cr` TeX

If you use an alignment structure, such as `tabular` or one of the display math environments (e.g., `eqnarray` or `split` from the `amsmath` package), then each row is divided into a defined number of columns separated by `&` signs. The error means that there are too many such characters, probably because you forgot a `\\` indicating the end of the row (`\cr` is \TeX 's name for the row end, but it is not a fully functional equivalent to `\\`).

Extra `\endgroup` TeX

\TeX has seen an `\endgroup` without a preceding matching `\begingroup`.

Extra `\middle` TeX

Your formula contains a `\middle` that is outside of a `\left...\right` construction. Recall that `\left/\right` pairs must be part of the same "subformula". They cannot, for example, be separated by `&` in an alignment or appear on different grouping levels.

Extra `\or` TeX

TeX encountered an `\or` primitive that has no matching low-level `\ifcase` conditional. The extra `\or` can be the result from a bad use of `\ifthenelse`.

Extra `\right` TeX

This error is issued by TeX if it finds a `\right` command without a matching `\left` in a formula. See advice on “Extra `\middle`” above.

Extra `}`, or forgotten `$` TeX

This error is triggered when math formula delimiters (e.g., `$...$`, `\[...\]`) and brace groups are not properly nested. TeX thinks it has found a superfluous `}`, as in `x}`, and is going to ignore it. While in this example the deletion of the closing brace is the right choice, it would be wrong in `\mbox{\(a)}`. There a closing `\)` is missing, so deleting the `}` produces additional errors.

Extra `}`, or forgotten `\endgroup` TeX

The current group was started with `\begingroup` (used, for example, by `\begin{...}`), but TeX found a closing `}` character instead of the corresponding `\endgroup`. You get this error if you leave a stray `}` inside a body of an environment.

File ‘*<name>*’ not found

LaTeX is trying to load the file *<name>* but cannot find it, either because it does not exist or because the underlying TeX program is looking in the wrong place. If the file exists but LaTeX claims it is not available, it is possible that your TeX installation uses a hashing mechanism to speed up file access, and you may have to run a special program to make your installation aware of newly installed files (e.g., `mktexlsr` with the TeX Live distribution).

The error is issued by commands like `\input` and `\usepackage` if they cannot find the requested file. You can suggest an alternate file in response to the error. If the new name is specified without an extension, the old extension is reused if known to LaTeX. If you want to omit loading the file, press *<Enter>*; to quit the run, type `x` or `X`. In some cases you might receive a similar low-level TeX error “! I can't find file ‘*<name>*’” that is slightly more difficult to quit; see the entry on page 725.

If a graphics file requested with `\includegraphics` is missing, it may help to press `h` to learn which extensions have been tried when looking for the file.

File ended while scanning *<something>* TeX

This error is part of a “Runaway . . .” error; check the explanations on page 736.

First argument of ‘*<declaration>*’ must be a command cmd

The first argument to `\NewDocumentCommand` or its siblings has to be the command that is going to be defined or redefined. LaTeX found something else instead, e.g., a character or several tokens.

Float(s) lost

One or more floats (e.g., `figure` or `table`) or `\marginpar` commands have not been typeset. The most likely reason is that you placed a float environment or

marginal note inside a box by mistake — inside another float or `\marginpar`, or inside a `minipage` environment, a `\parbox`, or a `\footnote`.

\LaTeX might detect this problem very late, such as when finishing the document. This can make it very difficult to find the offending place in the source. The best solution in this case is to halve your document repeatedly (for example, by using the primitive `\endinput`), until the fraction producing the error is small enough that you spot it.

If incorrect nesting is not the root cause, then you may have encountered a serious coding problem in the float algorithm, probably caused by some extra packages you loaded.

Font family `\enc)+\family` unknown

You tried to declare a font shape group with `\DeclareFontShape` without first declaring the font `\family` as being available in the encoding `\enc` using `\DeclareFontFamily`.

Font `\name` not found

\LaTeX 's internal font tables contain wrong information, so \LaTeX was unable to find the external font `\name`. Either this font was never installed, its `.tfm` file cannot be found by \TeX for some reason, or the `\DeclareFontShape` declaration referring to it contains a spelling error.

Font `\internal name)=\external name` not loadable: `\reason` \TeX

\TeX was unable to load a font with the \LaTeX name `\internal name` having the structure `\<encoding>/\<family>/\<series>/\<shape>/\<size>` in NFSS notation.¹ For example, it might say `\T1/cmr/m/it/10` (Computer Modern medium italic 10 points in T1 encoding). This should give you a good hint as to which font has a problem, even if you are not able to do much about it. There are two possible `\reason`s:

Bad metric (TFM) file \TeX

The \TeX metric file for the font (i.e., `\external name`.`tfm`) is corrupted. Your installation may have some utility programs to check `.tfm` files in detail, although this usually requires expert help.

Metric (TFM) file not found \TeX

The \TeX metric file for the font (i.e., `\external name`.`tfm`) was not found. Your installation may have a package (e.g., `cmbright`) to support a certain font family but the corresponding fonts are not available or are not properly installed.

Font `\internal name)=\external` not loaded: Not enough room left \TeX

\TeX can load only a certain number of fonts, and there was no space left to load `\internal name`. To find out which fonts are loaded, use the package `tracefmt` described in Section 9.5.8. One possible reason for excessive loading of fonts is the use of unusual font sizes for which \LaTeX has to calculate and load the corresponding math fonts; see Section 9.8.5 for details.

¹This is, in fact, a single command name, but due to the slashes in the name, you cannot enter it directly in your document, unless you use `\UseName{\<encoding>/\<family>/\<series>/\<shape>/\<size>}`.

Font $\langle font name \rangle$ not found

This error message is issued when there is something very wrong with a `\DeclareFontShape` declaration—perhaps it does not contain any size specifications. Check the setup for the font shape group in question.

Generic hooks cannot be added to ' $\langle command \rangle$ ' (hooks)

Generic hooks are added only to a $\langle command \rangle$ when code is added to the hook with `\AddToHook`. Such patching is sometimes impossible for a number of different reasons, and in that case you get this error. The precise reason is then given in the help text of the error message.

Hook ' $\langle name \rangle$ ' has already been declared (hooks)

If the same hook $\langle name \rangle$ is declared by different packages or classes, disaster is guaranteed, and this action is therefore disallowed. If you get this error, then the two packages are incompatible and cannot be used together.

Key ' $\langle key \rangle$ ' may only be used during loading of package ' $\langle name \rangle$ ' (keys)

The $\langle key \rangle$ /value option of package $\langle name \rangle$ is allowed only while the package is loaded, but not in a `\SetKeys` declaration.

Key ' $\langle key \rangle$ ' may only be used in the preamble (keys)

The $\langle key \rangle$ in question cannot be changed after `\begin{document}`, so you have to move it earlier into the preamble.

I can't find file ' $\langle name \rangle$ ' TeX

A low-level TeX error is raised when TeX cannot find a file that was requested to load. This error can be bypassed only by providing TeX with a file that it can find or by stopping the run altogether (if your operating system allows that). To get past this error, many installations offer a file `null.tex` so that you can reply `null` in response. \LaTeX normally uses the error message “File ' $\langle name \rangle$ ' not found”, which supports various user actions. However, depending on the package coding, you may get the current error instead.

I can't switch ' $\langle char \rangle$ ' on or off--not a shorthand. babel

When a user uses the command `\shorthandon` and passes it a $\langle char \rangle$ that is not defined to be a shorthand, this error message is displayed, and the instruction is ignored.

I can't write on file ' $\langle name \rangle$ ' TeX

TeX is not allowed to write data to the file $\langle name \rangle$. It is probably read-only, or you may not have writing permission for its directory. On some TeX implementations (e.g., those on the TeX Live CD), the error may be preceded by a line like the following:

```
tex: Not writing to /texmf/tex/latex/base/latex.ltx (openout_any = p).
```

These TeX installations are by default configured to be “paranoid” (hence, “p” above) when writing to files. They allow you to write only to files below the current directory and *not* to any files specified with an absolute path name or

starting with a dot in their name. To change that behavior you have to modify the settings in the file `texmf.cnf`.

Illegal use of `\AddToHook{<hook>}[top-level]{...}` (hooks)

The code label `top-level` is reserved for use in the preamble or document body to indicate last-minute hook code added by a user. The error is issued if a package or class adds code to a `<hook>` and attempts to label the code using this name.

Illegal character in array arg

You get this error if the column specification for a `tabular` or `array` environment or a `\multicolumn` command contains characters that are not defined as column specifiers to \TeX . A likely cause is that you used the extended syntax of the `array` package, described in Chapter 6, but forgot to load the package in the preamble (e.g., after you have copied a table from one document to another).

Illegal mode change in hook ‘`para/<name>`’. `<reason>` (hooks)

Paragraph hooks cannot contain code that changes the \TeX mode (unless it is done only temporarily within the hook). For example, `para/before` is not allowed to switch to horizontal mode, because that would trigger another call to the same hook code, ending in an endless recursion. If that happens, `<reason>` says what exactly is wrong. Examine the hook code with `\ShowHook` to find the issue.

Illegal parameter number in definition of `<command>` \TeX

This error occurs when a (re)defined command or environment uses `#<digit>` in the replacement text, with a digit higher than the declared number of parameters. This error can be implicitly caused by nesting declaration commands, such as `\newcommand`, and forgetting that inner commands refer to their arguments by doubling the `#` characters; see page 627 for details. Another possible cause is referring to environment arguments in the second mandatory argument of `\newenvironment` or `\renewenvironment`.

Illegal unit of measure (pt inserted) \TeX

You get this error if you misspell or forget the unit when specifying the value for a length parameter; see Section A.2.4.

Improper argument for math accent: \LaTeX

Extra braces must be added to prevent wrong output

The whole of the “accented subformula” must be surrounded by braces.

Improper discretionary list \TeX

This error is produced by \TeX if it encounters a `\discretionary` command whose arguments contain anything other than characters, boxes, or kerns, after expansion.

Improper `\hyphenation` \TeX

If you want to specify a hyphenation exception with `\hyphenation`, then you have to ensure that the argument contains only letters and `-` characters to

indicate the hyphenation points.¹ The problem is that, for example, accented characters in some font encodings are individual glyphs (allowed) but in other font encodings produce complicated constructs requiring the `\accent` primitive. For example, if the T1 encoding is used, then `ü` or `\"u` refers to a single glyph. Thus,

```
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc} \hyphenation{Tür-stop-per T\"ur-kin-ke}
```

are both valid. The same hyphenation exception used with the default OT1 encoding would produce this error. See page →1767 for an explanation of character differences in the major encodings.

Improper `\prevdepth` T_EX

You used `\the\prevdepth` or `\showthe\prevdepth` outside of vertical mode, which is not allowed. This error also shows up if you mistakenly placed a float (e.g., a figure or table) inside a math display environment.

Improper `\spacefactor` T_EX

You used `\the\spacefactor` or `\showthe\spacefactor` outside of horizontal mode, which is not allowed.

`\include` cannot be nested

ΛT_EX encountered an `\include` command inside a file loaded with `\include`. Because of implementation constraints, this is impossible. Either change the inner `\include` into `\input` or rearrange your document file structure so that all `\include` statements are in the main document file.

Incompatible list can't be unboxed T_EX

T_EX was asked to unpack a box with horizontal material while trying to build a vertical list, or vice versa. Either you encountered a serious programming error in a package or you used some commands in a way explicitly not supported. For example, the commands from the `soul` package produce this error when they are nested inside each other.

Incomplete `<conditional>`; all text was ignored after line `<number>` T_EX

A low-level T_EX conditional was unfinished (no matching `\fi`) when ΛT_EX reached the end of the current input file.

Infinite glue shrinkage found `<somewhere>` T_EX

To break paragraphs into lines or the galley into pages, T_EX assumes that there is no rubber length that can arbitrarily shrink, because that would mean that any amount of material can be placed into a single line or onto a single page. Thus, `\hspace{0pt minus 1fil}` in a paragraph or `\vspace{0pt minus 1fil}` between paragraphs is not allowed and raises this error (`<somewhere>` gives some indication about where the offending material was found).

Infinite shrinkage found in `'<region>'` (marks)

The current mark region, e.g., current column or page, contains some glue that can arbitrarily shrink. This makes it impossible to extract marks from that region.

¹ LuaT_EX offers an extended syntax for this.

This glue should not be present and indicates a coding error in a package or the \LaTeX kernel. Please report it to the appropriate maintainer.

Interruption \TeX

You get this “error” after interrupting the \LaTeX run (with Control-C or whatever your installation offers), so you should not be surprised by it. To finish the run prematurely, press x followed by $\langle\textit{Return}\rangle$. Just pressing $\langle\textit{Return}\rangle$ continues the run as if it was uninterrupted.

Invalid argument prefix ‘ $\langle\textit{prefix}\rangle$ ’ in $\langle\textit{command or environment}\rangle$ (cmd)

The definition for $\langle\textit{command or environment}\rangle$ used a $\langle\textit{prefix}\rangle$ in the argument specification that is not valid at the point it is used. As explained in the help text, this can have different reasons:

- There are two identical prefixes applied to a single argument specifier — one is redundant. Perhaps an argument specifier is missing?
- A ! prefix got applied to a mandatory argument or to an optional one followed by further mandatory ones. It is supported only for trailing optional arguments;
- A command defined with `\NewExpandableDocumentCommand` has a mixture of long (prefix +) and short arguments. The long ones must come last in expandable commands, but this is not the case;
- The > prefix is not supported with expandable commands.

Invalid argument type ‘ $\langle\textit{type}\rangle$ ’ in $\langle\textit{command or environment}\rangle$ (cmd)

A new command was defined with `\NewDocumentCommand` or one of its siblings, but its argument specification contains some $\langle\textit{type}\rangle$ that \LaTeX is not happy with. The help text gives further details; the most important reasons are:

- The specified $\langle\textit{type}\rangle$ does not correspond to any defined argument type — probably a misspelling;
- The $\langle\textit{type}\rangle$ is a deprecated type that is not made available by default — if you really need it, you have to load the `xparse` package in order to use it;
- The type `b` has been used with a command, but it is available only for environments;
- The specified $\langle\textit{type}\rangle$ cannot be used in expandable definitions, i.e., those made with `\NewExpandableDocumentCommand`. For example, `v` (verbatim) arguments are not available in that case.

Invalid argument $\{\langle\textit{arg}\rangle\}$ to `\IfBoolean...` (cmd)

The first argument to `\IfBooleanTF` or one of its variants has to be a special Boolean value, for example, the result of checking for a `*` in the arguments of a command defined with `\NewDocumentCommand`. \LaTeX found something else, hence the error message. Perhaps you passed it the wrong $\# \langle\textit{number}\rangle$ argument.

Invalid use of $\langle command \rangle$ amsmath

You have used an amsmath command in a place where it does not make sense. Look up the correct use of this command.

Keyboard character used is undefined in input encoding $\langle name \rangle$ inputenc

The 8-bit number encountered in the document is not mapped by the input encoding $\langle name \rangle$ to some LICR object (see Sections 9.5.4 and 9.9.3). Check whether the document is really stored in the specified encoding. These days it is usually best to store files in UTF-8 encoding and not load inputenc.

Invalid UTF-8 byte $\langle hex number \rangle$ or**Invalid UTF-8 byte sequence $\langle sequence \rangle$**

The document does not appear to be in UTF-8 encoding. In pdf \TeX , try adding `\UseRawInputEncoding` as the first line of the file or specify the correct encoding such as `\usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}` in the document preamble. Alternatively, save the file in UTF-8 using your editor or another tool.

Another possible cause is the use of multibyte UTF-8 characters with packages such as listings or soul that process their input on a character by character basis, but expect the characters to be single tokens (which is not the case for multibyte characters in pdf \TeX). In that case you have to either avoid or protect such characters in the input, switch to an alternative package, or use a Unicode engine. Search the Internet for advice about which option is best in your specific case.

Invalid UTF-8 byte or sequence ... replaced by U+FFFD Xe \TeX only

Unicode engines

The document processed by Xe \TeX does not appear to be in UTF-8 encoding. Offending bytes have been changed, but that is seldom the right corrective action. You have to make sure the input is encoded in UTF-8.

Labels ‘ $\langle label_1 \rangle$ ’ and ‘ $\langle label_2 \rangle$ ’ are incompatible in hook ‘ $\langle hook \rangle$ ’ (hooks)

The $\langle hook \rangle$ contains two code chunks labeled $\langle label_1 \rangle$ and $\langle label_2 \rangle$ that are incompatible with each other. This usually means that two packages were loaded that cannot be used together (with luck you can identify them from the label names). Depending on the severity of the issue, this message may show up only as a warning, not an error. In any case, the code for both labels is dropped.

Limit controls must follow a math operator \TeX

You can use `\limits` or `\nolimits` only following math operators such as `\sum`. See Table 11.6 for a list of common operator commands.

 $\backslash LoadClass$ in package file

The `\LoadClass` command is allowed only in class files; see Section A.6.

Lonely $\backslash item$ --perhaps a missing list environment

The `\item` command is allowed only within list structures, but \LaTeX believes that this one was found outside a list. In contrast to the “Something’s wrong—perhaps a missing `\item`” error, \LaTeX ’s diagnosis in this case is usually correct.

Mark class ‘ $\langle class \rangle$ ’ already defined (marks)

You try to declare a new mark class with `\NewMarkClass`, but the $\langle class \rangle$ name has already been used for that purpose. Your declaration is ignored, and you have to choose a different name.

Mark region ‘ $\langle region \rangle$ ’ not usable (marks)

The specified $\langle region \rangle$ in commands such as `\FirstMark` is not usable at this time; e.g., you cannot refer to `last-column` while \LaTeX is finishing the first column of a page.

Math alphabet identifier $\langle id \rangle$ is undefined in math version $\langle name \rangle$

The math alphabet identifier $\langle id \rangle$ was used in a math version ($\langle name \rangle$) for which it was not set up. An additional `\SetMathAlphabet` declaration should be added to the preamble of the document to assign a font shape group for this alphabet identifier.

Math version $\langle name \rangle$ is not defined

A math alphabet or a symbol font was assigned to a math version that is unknown to \LaTeX . Either you misspelled its name or you forgot to declare this version (perhaps you have to add some package file). It is also possible that the math version you selected with `\mathversion` is not known to the system.

Mismatched LaTeX support files detected. $\langle reason \rangle$

Since 2020, \LaTeX includes the L3 programming layer as part of the format. However, some parts of this layer are loaded later during document processing, and at that time \LaTeX might realize that the format and these additional support files do not match. This is a fatal error, and processing stops.

Most often the reason for this nasty surprise is the use of a local format that was previously built (by mistake?) and that did not get remade after the \TeX distribution was updated. To figure out which formats are available on the system, try running

```
kpsewhich -all -engine=pdftex pdflatex.fmt
```

if you are using \pdfTeX . For X_{\LaTeX} or \LuaTeX , the engine should be `xetex` or `luahtex` and the format `xelatex` or `lualatex`, respectively. If this returns more than one format file, remove the local one or make sure that it is properly regenerated. Further details on this can be found on the Internet.

Misplaced alignment tab character & \TeX

\LaTeX found an `&` character outside of `tabular`, `align`, or one of the other alignment environments. If you want to typeset `&`, use `\&` instead. A possible cause is use of the `amsmath` environment `cases` or `matrix` without loading the package.

Misplaced `\cr` or `\crcr` \TeX

A `\cr` is the \TeX low-level command for ending a row in an alignment structure (`\crcr` is a variation thereof); the corresponding \LaTeX command is `\\`. \TeX believes it came across such a command outside of an alignment structure.

Misplaced `\noalign` TeX

The TeX primitive `\noalign` is internally used to place “nonaligned” material between rows of alignment displays. It is therefore allowed only directly following the command that finishes a row. For example, you get this error when you use `\hline` outside of `array` or `tabular`, or not directly after `\\` within these environments.

Misplaced `\omit` TeX

The TeX primitive `\omit` is internally used to change the column specifications in an alignment display (e.g., to span rows with `\multicolumn` inside a `tabular`). The `\omit` command (and thus the commands calling it) is allowed only at the very beginning of an alignment cell (i.e., following `\\` or `&`).

Missing `\begin{document}`

This error occurs if typesetting is attempted while still within the document preamble.¹ It is most likely due to a declaration error that is misinterpreted by L^AT_EX. The error is also produced by text following `\begin{filecontents}` on the same line.

Missing control sequence inserted TeX

You used `\newcommand` or `\renewcommand` without providing a command name (starting with a backslash) as the first argument.

Missing `\cr` inserted TeX

TeX thinks it is about time to end the row in an alignment structure and inserted its low-level command for this purpose. In a L^AT_EX document, this guess is often wrong, so TeX's recovery attempt usually fails in such a case.

Missing delimiter (. inserted) TeX

A `\left`, `\middle`, `\right`, or one of the `\big..` commands was not followed by a delimiter. As corrective action, the empty delimiter “.” was inserted. See Section 11.5.6 on page 191 for details.

Missing `\endcsname` inserted TeX

This error can arise from using commands as part of the name of a counter or environment name (e.g., `\newenvironment{B1\ode}`).

These days it can also show up if you use anything other than characters or very simple commands to construct a file name for use with `\input` and similar commands. Trying to construct a file name using a fragile command, e.g.,

```
\input{test\ifthenelse{...}{a}{b}}
```

will fail and produce this strange error. Commands made explicitly robust (e.g., with `\MakeRobust`) are not executed but replaced by their name without a backslash, so that is most likely also not the desired result.

¹Typesetting inside an `\sbox` or `\savebox` declaration within the preamble is allowed, but it is usually wise to move such declarations after `\begin{document}`, because some packages may delay their final setup until that point.

Missing number, treated as zero TeX

This error occurs when TeX is looking for a number or a dimension but finds something else. For example, using `\value{page}` instead of `\thepage` would produce this error, because an isolated `\value` makes TeX expect a low-level counter assignment. In general, using a length register without a proper mutator function like `\setlength` can trigger this error. You also get this message when `\usebox` is not followed by a box bin defined with `\newsavebox`, because internally such bins are represented by numbers.

One other surprising scenario is due to a limitation in TeX's implementation of integer and length expressions involving parentheses: you cannot start an expression with `+(` or `-(`. In that case add a 0 to change the `+` or `-` from an unary to a binary symbol; see Example A-2-12 on page 659.

Missing p-arg in array arg

There is a `p` column specifier not followed by an expression in braces (containing the width) in the argument to `tabular`, `array`, or `\multicolumn`.

Missing @-exp in array arg

There is an `@` column specifier not followed by an expression in braces (containing the inter-column material) in the argument to `tabular`, `array`, or `\multicolumn`.

Missing # inserted in alignment preamble TeX

An alignment preamble specifies the layout of the columns in an alignment structure. Internally, TeX uses `#` to denote the part of the column that should receive input. In L^ATeX this is unlikely to appear as a first error.

Missing = inserted for \ifnum TeX

TeX complains that the low-level `\ifnum` conditional is not followed by two numbers separated by `<`, `=`, or `>`. This error can occur when you forget the comparison operator in `\ifthenelse`.

Missing = inserted for \ifdim TeX

The low-level `\ifdim` conditional is not followed by a comparison between two lengths.

Missing \$ inserted TeX

TeX has encountered something in normal text that is allowed only in math mode (e.g., `\sum`, `\alpha`, `\wedge`), or something that is not allowed inside math (e.g., `\par`) while processing a formula. It has therefore inserted a `$` to switch to math mode or to leave it. If, for example, you tried to get an underscore by simply using `_` instead of `_`, L^ATeX would typeset the rest of the paragraph as a formula, most likely producing more errors along the way.

Missing \endgroup inserted TeX

This error indicates that a grouping structure in the document is incorrectly nested. Environments internally use `\begingroup` and `\endgroup`, and for some reason TeX thinks that such a group was not properly closed. If you cannot

determine why the group structure is faulty, try using the `\showgroups` or `\tracinggroups` commands, as explained on page 747.

Missing `\right.` inserted TeX

Your formula contains a `\left` without a matching `\right`. Recall that `\left/\right` delimiter pairs must be part of the same “subformula”; they cannot, for example, be separated by `&` in an alignment or appear on different grouping levels.

Missing `{` inserted TeX

TeX thinks there is an open brace missing and inserted one. This error is, for example, caused by a stray `}` inside a `tabular` cell.

Missing `}` inserted TeX

Something is wrong in the grouping structure of the document, and TeX tries to recover by inserting a closing brace. This attempt either gets it onto the right track again or causes you to receive more errors. Usually, the problem becomes apparent if you look at the typeset output. If you cannot determine why the group structure is faulty, try using the `\showgroups` or `\tracinggroups` commands, as explained on page 747.

Multiple `\label`’s: `label <label> will be lost` amsmath

Within the `amsmath` display environments, you can have only one `\label` per equation. It is usually best to remove or replace all but the last, because it is the only one that is effective.

Multiple `\tag` amsmath

Within the `amsmath` display environments, you can have only one `\tag` command per equation. All but the first are ignored.

No counter ‘<name>’ defined

The counter `<name>` referenced in either `\setcounter`, `\addtocounter`, or the optional argument of `\newcounter` or `\newtheorem` is unknown to L^AT_EX. It must first be declared with `\newcounter`.

No declaration for shape **

The `sub` or `ssub` size function used in a `\DeclareFontShape` command refers to a substitution shape that is unknown to L^AT_EX’s font selection scheme.

No driver specified color|graphics|graphicx

The package `graphics`, `graphicx`, `color`, or `xcolor` was loaded without specifying a target device option. On most installations this is done using the configuration files `graphics.cfg` and `color.cfg`.

No room for a new *<register>* TeX

The packages loaded in your document require more internal registers (`\count`, `\dimen`, ...) than there are available in TeX. These days this error should not happen because L^AT_EX is using all registers available in the engine, which is a

huge number. So if you are getting this, then there is probably a coding issue in a package so that it allocates registers over and over again. To debug that you may need external help.

The only exception are `\write` registers: most engines have only 16 registers available, and if you run out, then you can load Bruno Le Floch's `morewrites` package to get additional (virtual) registers at the cost of processing speed.

No `\title` given

A \LaTeX class has executed `\maketitle` without seeing a `\title` declaration. Only `\date` is optional when this command is used.

Not a letter \TeX

You specified a hyphenation exception with `\hyphenation`, but the argument to this command contained some characters that \TeX does not consider to be letters. For example, `\hyphenation{la-ryn-gol-o-gist's}` would produce such an error because `'` is not a “letter” in \TeX 's categorization.

Not in outer par mode

This error is issued when a `\marginpar` or a float environment, such as `table` or `figure`, is encountered inside a box-producing command or environment. For instance, you cannot use a `\marginpar` in a footnote, a float, a `tabular`, or a similar place (because all of them produce boxes). Move the offending object to the main galley.

Not in vertical mode

Starting a paragraph with `\RawIndent` or `\RawNoindent` is allowed only if \LaTeX is in vertical mode. Because these commands are intended for programmers and not for ordinary use in documents, getting this error most likely means that there is a bug in some package.

Number too big \TeX

You assigned or used a number in `\setcounter` or `\addtocounter` that is larger than the largest number that \TeX can handle (2147483647, hexadecimal 7FFFFFFF). This error can also happen when modifying a length register with `\setlength` or `\addtolength`.

OK \TeX

You used the \TeX tracing command `\showbox` or `\showlists` and the parameter `\tracingonline` is positive. After displaying the data, \LaTeX stopped with this message to allow for some interaction on the command line (e.g., entering `i\show..` to view some other values). If `\tracingonline` is zero, no data is shown on the terminal and the message is slightly different; see below.

OK (see the transcript file) \TeX

You used the \TeX tracing command `\showbox` or `\showlists`, without also directing \LaTeX to display the result on the terminal. The data is written only to the transcript (`.log`) file. Use also `\showoutput` to display it on the terminal.

Old form `<command>` should be `\begin{<envname>}` amsmath

You have used `cases`, `matrix`, or `pmatrix` in its non-`amsmath` command form (probably with its old internal syntax). Change to the `amsmath` environment form with standard internal syntax.

Only one # is allowed per tab TeX

This error indicates a broken alignment template. In \LaTeX it should not occur, unless caused by a fragile command in a moving argument.

Option clash for package `<name>`

The package `<name>` was requested twice with a conflicting set of options. When you press H in response to this error, \LaTeX shows you the sets of conflicting options. Because \LaTeX loads a package only once,¹ the best solution is to specify all options on the first occasion.

If this is not possible, because the package is already loaded as part of the class or another package, you can try to specify the required options as global options to the `\documentclass` command. In an emergency you can even load a package before `\documentclass` by using `\RequirePackage`. See Section 2.1.2 on page [–I 24](#) for details.

Alternatively, adding a suitable `\PassOptionsToPackage` declaration before the package gets loaded might work; this is described in Section A.6.4 on page 697.

Page height already too large

You used `\enlargethispage` on a page whose vertical size is already larger than 8191.99998pt, or roughly 113 inches. \LaTeX thinks that this is dangerously large and does not extend the page size as requested.

Paragraph ended before `<command>` was complete TeX

As discussed in Section A.1.2, commands defined with `\newcommand*` or `\renewcommand*` and by default all arguments of `\NewDocumentCommand` and friends (unless their arguments are specified with a `+`) are not allowed to contain `\par` or an empty line. If they do, you get a Runaway argument together with this error. The `<command>` listed may not be the one used in your document. For example, `\emph{.. \par ..}` lists `\text@command` in the error message (i.e., the internal command called by `\emph`).

pdfTeX error (font expansion): auto expansion is only possible with scalable fonts pdfTeX/LuaTeX

This engine message is issued if you use the `microtype` package together with non-scalable fonts, e.g., those produced by METAFONT, and `microtype` tried to use font expansion. Set `expansion` to `false` in regions where such fonts are used for typesetting or switch to a different font family that is scalable.

(Please type a command or say ‘\end’) TeX

You have replied with `<Return>` in response to `*`. See the first entry on page 717.

¹The only exception is the `fontenc` package, which can be loaded as often as needed with different options; see Section 9.5.5 on page [–I 693](#).

`\pushtabs` and `\poptabs` don't match

You issued a `\poptabs` command in a tabbing environment, but there was no previous `\pushtabs` command issued.

Requested version '*<version>*' for '*<package or class>*' is unknown

In the second optional argument of `\usepackage` or `\documentclass` you can request a specific version of the package or class using either a date or a named *<version>* label. The version specified, e.g., `=V2`, is not known to \LaTeX .

Required argument missing for *<command or environment>* (cmd)

A command defined with `\NewDocumentCommand` or one of its siblings has an argument specification that includes a delimited mandatory argument (specified with `r` or `R`). In the document body this command is used without providing this argument, and as a result you see this error message.

`\RequirePackage` or `\LoadClass` in Options Section

A `\RequirePackage` or `\LoadClass` was found inside a package or class file between the `\DeclareOption` commands and `\ProcessOptions`. Loading packages or classes in this part is not allowed because it would clobber the data structure holding the current set of options; see Section A.6 for details. If you want to load a package when a certain option is specified, use a flag to indicate that the option was selected and load it after the `\ProcessOptions` command has done its job.

Rotation not supported `graphics|graphicx`

You have requested rotation with `\rotatebox` or a similar command, but the selected graphics driver does not support the rotation of objects. \LaTeX leaves the right amount of space, but the printed document might show the image in the wrong position.

Runaway *<something>* `\TeX`

\TeX thinks it has scanned too far while looking for the end of *<something>*, where *<something>* can be either *argument*, *definition*, *preamble*, or *text*. Unless low-level \TeX code is at fault, the most likely cause is *argument*. For example, if you forgot the closing brace of an argument, it might cause \TeX to scan until it reaches the end of the file or until its memory is filled — whichever comes first. Incomplete definitions done with `\newcommand`, `\newenvironment`, and so forth also claim that the *argument* has run away. Only low-level definitions, involving \TeX primitives like `\def`, produce a Runaway definition.

A Runaway preamble means that an alignment structure has problems (that should not occur in normal \LaTeX documents), and Runaway text usually refers to a token register assignment (this should never happen unless there is a serious package implementation error).

In contrast to the situation with normal error messages, you do not get a line number that indicates where the error was detected (because \TeX often has reached the end of the file). Instead, you see the beginning of the material

that was being absorbed. For example, if you have a definition without the final closing brace,

```
\newcommand\foo{bar
\begin{document} Some text \end{document}
```

you get

```
Runaway argument?
{bar \begin {document} Some text \end {document}
! File ended while scanning use of \@argdef.
<inserted text>
\par
<*> samplefile.tex
?
```

The fact that T_EX in that case inserted `\par` as a recovery action is of little help, because the complete document was already swallowed. Instead of “File ended while...”, you might see some other message at this point, such as “Paragraph ended before...”.

Scaling not supported graphicsgraphics

You have requested scaling with `\resizebox` or a similar command, but the selected graphics driver does not support scaling of objects. L^AT_EX leaves the right amount of space, but the printed document will show the image at the original (unscaled) size.

Something’s wrong-perhaps a missing `\item`

This error message is produced by an `\addvspace` command when encountered in horizontal mode. The follow-up remark about “perhaps a missing `\item`” is unfortunately seldom correct. For example, forgetting the closing brace on `\mbox` as in `\mbox{... \section{...}}`... would produce this error, because the `\section` command that executes `\addvspace` internally is now used in horizontal mode.

Identify which command issued the `\addvspace` causing the error, and check whether that command was used incorrectly. Refer to page 655 for an in-depth discussion of the `\addvspace` command.

Sorry, I can’t find *<format>* ... T_EX

If you get this message, then L^AT_EX never started because T_EX did not find the *<format>* containing the basic L^AT_EX definitions. There is a problem with your T_EX installation, and you have to consult the installation documentation.

Sorting rule for ‘*<hook>*’ hook applied too late ... (hooks)

`\DeclareHookRule` was used to declare a sorting rule for the one-time hook *<hook>* after the hook was executed. Since such hooks are executed only once, the rule came too late, and you get this error message.

Suggested extra height (*<value>*) dangerously large

Using the *<value>* with `\enlargethispage` would make the resulting page too large (more than 113 inches or 2.87 meters) for L^AT_EX's liking.

Suspicious rollback date given

If you use the `latexrelease` package, you can roll back your L^AT_EX release (and a number of supporting packages) to an earlier point in time to process your document as if it were processed with a version current then. If this results in this error message, then the offended package has no rollback information for the date and claims it was not in existence back then.

This may just be spurious due to incomplete data but may also indicate an issue with the package. In any case L^AT_EX continues using the earliest version it knows about.

Symbol font *<name>* is not defined

You tried to make use of the symbol font *<name>*—for example, within a `\DeclareMathSymbol` command—without declaring it first with a suitable `\DeclareSymbolFont` declaration.

Tab overflow

L^AT_EX supports up to 13 tabulator positions (`\=`) inside a `tabbing` environment, and you have used a larger number. If not all of them are needed at the same time, you can try solving the problem by using `\pushtabs` and/or providing template lines with `\kill`.

`\tag` not allowed here amsmath

The `\tag` command is allowed only within the top level of a mathematical display. It is usually best to move it to the end of the logical equation in which it occurs.

TeX capacity exceeded, *<explanation>* TeX

T_EX ran out of some sort of memory and died. This error is discussed in detail in Section B.2 on page 744.

Text line contains an invalid character TeX

The input file contains a strange, nonprinting character that is rejected by T_EX. This may happen if you used a word processor to create the file and did not save it as “text”.

The attribute *<attrib>* is unknown for language *<lang>* babel

You tried to activate an attribute for a language *<lang>* that is not defined in the language definition file for this language. Check the documentation of `babel` with respect to this language.

The font size command `\normalsize` is not defined...

A class file needs to provide a minimal setup, including a definition for `\normalsize`; see Section A.6.11 on page 710 for details.

There's no line here to end

This error is triggered if `\newline` or `\\` is found outside a paragraph (i.e., after a `\par` or an empty line). If the intention was to produce extra vertical space, use `\vspace` or any of the other commands described on page 654.

This file needs format ‘*<format name>*’

The current input file is not processed further, because it was written for a different flavor of \TeX .

This may be a LaTeX bug

This is an error message dating back to 1986, and to the author’s knowledge, until now this message never actually signaled a \LaTeX bug. It means, however, that \LaTeX got thoroughly confused by previous errors and lost track of the state of its float data structure. It is best to stop and correct previous errors first.

This should not happen. *<reason>*

In contrast to the previous message, this message was introduced recently, and the developers are fairly confident that it signals an error in the coding of \LaTeX . After giving a *<reason>*, it continues and tells you where to report the bug.

This NFSS system isn’t set up properly

This error occurs when \LaTeX detects a mistake while trying to verify the font substitution tables at `\begin{document}`. It means that either a `\DeclareFontSubstitution` or `\DeclareErrorFont`¹ declaration is corrupted. These declarations need to point to valid font shapes (declared with `\DeclareFontShape`). Type `h` for additional information and inform your system maintainer. If you are the system maintainer, read the end of Section 9.8.3.

Too deeply nested

Standard \LaTeX supports a total of six levels of lists nested in each other. Those levels can include up to four lists of type `itemize` or `enumerate`. This error signals that your document has overflowed one of these limits. You probably have forgotten to end some list environments properly.

If you really need additional levels and you use the `enumitem` package, you can increase the overall default using `\setlistdepth`. However, the restrictions on the number of nested `itemize` or `enumerate` environments is fixed, and if you require further levels there, you need to copy the base definitions into a private package and modify their hardwired constants.

Too many arguments for ‘*<command or environment>*’ (cmd)

\LaTeX supports command or environment definitions with a maximum of nine arguments, but your `\NewDocumentCommand` or `\NewDocumentEnvironment` declaration asks for more.

Too many columns in eqnarray environment

The `eqnarray` environment supports a maximum of three columns (i.e., two `&` signs per row). For serious math, consider the `amsmath` package described in Chapter 11, which allows for more complex display structures.

Too many math alphabets used in version *<name>*

You used too many different math alphabet identifiers or symbol fonts in your

¹The declaration `\DeclareErrorFont` is used during installation and points to a font (font shape + size) that should be used when everything else fails. Its default is Computer Modern Roman 10pt, which should be available with any \TeX installation. See [113] for further details.

formulas. If this error occurs after adding the `bm` package to the preamble, define `\newcommand\bmmax{0}` before loading `bm` and try again; this prevents the package from preallocating math alphabets. There is also the possibility to increase the counter `localmathalphabets` to keep a higher number of alphabets flexible; see the discussion on page →1681 for details.

Too many symbol fonts declared

This error is generated by `\DeclareSymbolFont` if it cannot install another symbol font because all available math families are already in use either by symbol fonts or by math alphabet identifiers (see previous error). It usually happens if you load too many math font packages that try to compete for the precious few math font families — a total of 16. Other than the advice on `bm` given above, all you can easily do is to load fewer font packages. The only other (more complicated) possibility is to define special math versions that selectively load only some of the symbol fonts and switch between them as needed. See Section 9.8.5, and especially the discussion about math versions on page →1753, for the necessary declarations.

Too many ‘*<token(s)>*’ separators in argument (cmd)

\TeX was asked to split the argument of a command or environment a number of times as a given set sequence of *<token(s)>* using `\SplitArgument`, but these tokens were found more often than expected. For example, with `\SplitArgument{1}{,}` you would divide an argument into two parts at a comma. If you then pass it `{2,3,5}`, you would get this error.

Too many unprocessed floats

Floats that cannot be placed immediately are deferred by \TeX , possibly causing subsequent floats to be deferred as well. By default \TeX can defer up to 18 floats before you receive this error message. This limit can be increased by using `\extrafloats{number}` in the preamble, but if there is a float that cannot be placed for some reason, this change merely delays receiving the above error. See Chapter 7 for ways to deal with this situation.

This error can also be triggered if you have too many `\marginpar` commands within a single paragraph. A `\marginpar` temporarily uses two storage bins for deferred floats as long as the current paragraph has not been typeset (this allows a maximum of nine marginal notes per paragraph, or fewer if there are already some deferred floats).

Trying to overwrite ‘*<name>.tex*’

The `filecontents` environment allows overwriting existing files under certain circumstances, but it always refuses to overwrite the file `\jobname.tex`, assuming that this is the file it is currently processing, because that would mean disaster. You can still shoot yourself in the foot by giving your file a different extension and then asking to overwrite it.

Two `\documentclass` or `\documentstyle` commands

Only one such command is allowed per document. Your document includes more than one, perhaps as the result of combining two originally separate documents.

Two `\LoadClass` commands

A class can load at most one other class to do the bulk of processing. See Section A.6 for a detailed discussion of how classes are built.

Undefined color `<name>` color

You have requested a color with `\color` or a similar command from the `color` or `xcolor` package without previously defining it with `\definecolor`. See [55] or the `color` package documentation for details.

Undefined control sequence TeX

This is perhaps the most common of all \TeX errors, though it shows up as a \TeX error message: you have used a command name that was not previously defined. Often you may have simply mistyped the name in your document (e.g., `\bmox` instead of `\mbox`).

To carry on in such a case, you can respond with `i\mbox`, inserting the correct name. You can then continue processing and correct your source document afterwards. It is also possible to get this error as a result of using a fragile command in a moving argument.

Undefined font size function `<name>`

A size function used in `\DeclareFontShape` was misspelled. Check the entry or tell your system maintainer.

Undefined tab position

This error is raised if you try to advance in a tabbing environment with `\>`, `\+`, `\-`, or `\<` to a tabulator position that was not previously set up with `\=`. Either the `\=` is actually missing or perhaps you used `\+` or `\pushtabs` and got confused when specifying the tabular position to which you actually want to move.

Unknown filecontents option `<option>`

The `filecontents` environment allows a combination of `overwrite` (alias `force`), `noheader`, and `nosearch` in its optional argument. The option `<option>` is not among them; maybe it was misspelled?

Unknown float option ‘`<letter>`’

All float environments support an optional argument to specify the allowed positions. This can contain a combination of the letters `!htbp` in any order (and if the float or another extension package is loaded, also `H`). The specified `<letter>` is not among them and will be replaced by `p`.

Unknown graphics extension: `<ext>` graphics/graphics

You get this error if you try to load a fully specified graphics file (with extension `<ext>`) and the graphics driver does not know the particular extension and there is no default rule set up. The `dvips` program, for example, interprets every unknown extension as EPS, so with this driver you never see this error but probably others.

Unknown mark class ‘*<class>*’ (marks)

You try to insert a mark with `\InsertMark`, but the specified *<class>* is not known to the mark mechanism. Either you misspelled the *<class>* name or you forgot to make a `\NewMarkClass` declaration for it.

Unknown option ‘*<language>*’. *<reason>* [babel]

When \LaTeX processes the option list for `babel` and encounters an unknown option *<language>*, it tries to load a file by the name of *<language>.ldf*. This message is displayed when \LaTeX fails to find it. This error can be caused by a simple typing mistake, or the file might not be stored on \LaTeX ’s search path.

Unknown option ‘*<option>*’ for package ‘*<name>*’ (keys)

You specified an *<option>* for package *<name>* that is not declared by that package. Packages that accept key/value pairs as options produce a similar error, but prefix it with `LaTeX keys Error`. Consult the package documentation on the available options.

Unknown relationship ‘*<rel>*’ between labels ‘*<label₁>*’ and ‘*<label₂>*’ in hook ‘*<hook>*’ (hooks)

`\DeclareHookRule` was used to declare a relationship between two hook labels, but *<rel>* is neither `<`, `>`, `before`, `after`, `incompatible-warning`, `incompatible-error`, `voids`, nor `unrelated`. Perhaps a misspelling?

Use of ‘*\???*’ does not match its definition

This is a low-level \TeX error, artificially generated by \LaTeX to give some information about the *real* error that happened at an awkward moment. The important information comes two lines later and should be a text that can be looked up in this appendix. See page 714 for further explanation.

Use of ‘*<command>*’ does not match its definition [\TeX]

Low-level macro definitions made with `\def`, instead of `\newcommand` and friends, sometimes require special argument delimiters (e.g., the *<coord>*) of the picture commands). If *<command>* is a \LaTeX command, check its syntax.

Otherwise, this is most likely a spurious error due to using a fragile command in a moving argument without `\protect`. If *<command>* is `\???`, see the previous entry.

`\usepackage` before `\documentclass`

The `\usepackage` declaration can be used only after the main class was loaded with `\documentclass`. Inside a class or package file you have to use `\RequirePackage` instead.¹

Unicode character ‘*<char>*’ (`U+<hex number>`) not set up for use with \LaTeX

The Unicode character denoted by the UTF-8 notation `U+<hex number>` is not known to \LaTeX . How the *<char>* is displayed depends on the engine setup: it may appear as a single glyph, e.g., “ Δ ”, or as `^^e2^^88^^86`, which is of little help.

¹It is technically possible to load a package before a class by using `\RequirePackage`, but this should be avoided unless you know what you are doing.

Under the precondition that the character is available in a font encoding used in the document, it has to be set up using the `\DeclareUnicodeCharacter` declaration; see Section 9.9.3 on page 1758.

`\verb ended by end of line`

To better detect errors, the argument of `\verb` must be placed on a single line. Thus, this error signals that either you forgot the final delimiter for the argument or the argument was broken over several lines in the source. In the case of very long arguments, it may help to split them over several `\verb` commands and, if necessary, mask a line break between them in the source with a % sign.

`\verb illegal in argument`

Except in very special situations (explicitly documented in this book), it is not possible to use `\verb` (or `verbatim`) in the argument of other commands or environments. If you need verbatim text in such a place, use, for example, `\verbdef` from the `newverbs` package or `\SaveVerb` and `\UseVerb` from the `fancyvrb` package; both are described in Section 4.2.

Verbatim-like *<command or environment>* ended by end of line (cmd)

Commands defined with `\NewDocumentCommand` can have “verbatim” arguments similar to those of `\verb`. For them the same precaution (discussed above) is implemented; i.e., they have to appear on a single line in the source file. The same is true for environments declared with `\NewDocumentEnvironment`.

Verbatim-like *<command or environment>* illegal in argument (cmd)

With `\NewDocumentCommand` or `\NewDocumentEnvironment` you can define commands and environments that have “verbatim” arguments. Just like `\verb` they cannot appear in arguments of other commands or environments except in very special circumstances (see discussion above). If they cause problems, you get this error message and usually several more afterwards. See Section 4.2 for ways to deal with this issue.

Wrong syntax for `\DeclareFontSeriesDefault`

With `\DeclareFontSeriesDefault` one can set the series default for the `md` (medium) or `bf` (bold) series, so those are the two values allowed in the first mandatory argument. The optional argument specifies the “meta” font family. Currently supported values there are `rm` (Roman), `sf` (Sans Serif), or `tt` (Typewriter). Any other value generates this error message.

You already have nine parameters TeX

TeX supports command or environment definitions with a maximum of nine arguments (called parameters by TeX), but your `\newcommand` or `\newenvironment` specified 10 or more.

You can't use ‘macro parameter #’ in *<some>* mode TeX

TeX found a stray # character somewhere that does not seem to be a reference to an argument of some command. If you wanted to typeset this symbol, use `\#` instead.

You can't use '`\spacefactor`' in vertical mode TeX

TeX lets you refer to the `\spacefactor` only when you are building a horizontal list. You get this error when you use the \LaTeX command `\@` outside of a paragraph. Because many internal commands start with an `@` in their names, you might also get this error if you use code containing such internal commands (e.g., `\@startsection`) without surrounding it with `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother`. In that case TeX sees `\@` followed by the letters `startsection`, and a later use of this code then executes `\@` that in turn produces this error message.

You can't use '`\prevdepth`' in horizontal mode TeX

The `\prevdepth` dimension can be used only while in vertical mode (i.e., between paragraphs).

You can't use '`\end`' in internal vertical mode TeX

This is one of the more misleading TeX error messages, because it refers to the TeX primitive `\end` (ending a TeX run) that was redefined by \LaTeX to become the end-tag of environments. The error means that \LaTeX 's `\end{document}` or the `\stop` command was encountered while \LaTeX was building a box. For example, `\begin{figure}...\stop` would generate it.

You can't use '`\command`' in *<some>* mode TeX

TeX complains that *<command>* is not allowed in one of its modes. Some specific variations of this theme have already been discussed. If you have not used *<command>* directly, then the most likely cause for this error is a broken fragile command in a moving argument.

You haven't defined the language *<lang>* yet babel

Various user interface commands of `babel` check whether their argument contains a language that was specified in the option list when `babel` was loaded or there is at least an `.ini` file for it. If the *<lang>*uage was *not* specified and no `.ini` file can be found, processing is stopped, and this error message is displayed.

B.2 Dying with memory exceeded

The TeX program contains a number of internal tables of fixed size used for storing away different kinds of information needed at run time. Whenever any of these tables overflows, \LaTeX aborts with a “TeX capacity exceeded” error.

Until the mid-1990s, memory problems could, in fact, be due to the size of the document. In some cases it was impossible to process a document as a whole.¹ These days such limitations are gone or are at least less severe. For one, the average TeX implementation is already equipped with huge internal tables. In addition, most implementations allow you to modify the table sizes via configuration files instead

¹The first edition of this book required a specially compiled version of the TeX program with all such tables enlarged by a factor of 10 and could be processed only on a large Unix workstation.

of requiring you to manually recompile T_EX. In some cases you may have to generate a new L^AT_EX format; for more details, consult the documentation of your T_EX distribution.¹

Nevertheless, people experience this dreadful error once in a while, usually as the result of a faulty command definition. Below are four candidates reduced to the bare bones of the problem we want to discuss — in reality, such problems usually lurk in more complex definitions:

```
\newcommand\FAILa{.\FAILa}          \newcommand\FAILb{\FAILb x}
\newcommand\FAILc{\typeout{.}\FAILc} \newcommand\FAILd{.\par\FAILd}
```

If you execute `\FAILa` as defined above, you receive the following output (the reported memory size possibly differs) after a short while:

```
! TeX capacity exceeded, sorry [main memory size=5000000].
\FAILa ->.
      \FAILa
```

The main memory is the part of T_EX in which macro definitions and the material for the current page are stored. Looking at the above recursive definition, it is clear that it generates a never-ending sequence of periods. Because paragraph breaking is deferred until T_EX sees a `\par` command or a blank line to globally optimize the line breaks, T_EX waits in vain for a chance to break the paragraph material into lines.

Exceeding main memory because of too many macro definitions is less likely these days. Nevertheless, even that can happen (in theory) if the size of this memory is small and you load many packages, have a large number of huge deferred floats, or use macro packages that produce new macros on the fly.²

If you get this error only with larger documents and L^AT_EX actually produces pages before giving up, you can try to find out whether the memory is gradually filling up (which suggests a table size problem) by setting `\tracingstats=2` in the preamble of your document. T_EX then reports the main memory status after finishing each page, producing output like the following:

```
[765]
Memory usage before: 4262&161788; after: 1286&157691; still untouched: 1323176
[766]
Memory usage before: 3825&160983; after: 636&156520; still untouched: 1323176
[767]
Memory usage before: 3652&160222; after: 771&156307; still untouched: 1323176
```

The number reported to the left of the `&` is the memory devoted to large objects such as boxes; the number on the right is the amount of memory used by macro definitions

¹The T_EX Live distribution, for example, lets you specify the size of most tables through the configuration file `texmf.cnf`. See the T_EX Live manual for details.

²For example, `varioref` defines two labels internally for every use of `\vref`, which can result in a noticeable amount of memory consumption in large documents.

and character data. Thus, one can expect a reduction in both values whenever a page has finished (i.e., the `after:` value). If the right-hand value is slowly increasing, however, then something is probably adding more and more definitions.

If we use `\FAILb`, we overflow a different table. Here the recursion happens before \LaTeX actually reaches the end on the macro expansion and thus needs to store away the unprocessed part of the expansion.

```
! TeX capacity exceeded, sorry [input stack size=10000].
\FAILb ->\FAILb
x
```

With today's size for the `input stack`, this message usually appears only if a recursion like the one above makes that stack grow at a frightening speed. In a normal \LaTeX document you seldom find nested definitions that make this stack grow beyond a value of 50 (even for this book the maximum value was only 107).

What happens if you execute either `\FAILc` or `\FAILd`? Both are similar to `\FAILa`, but neither overflows any internal \TeX table. Instead, both simply fill your hard disk. The only action of `\FAILc` is to show periods on your screen and in the transcript file, thereby very slowly filling up the disk with a huge transcript. `\FAILd`, on the other hand, contains a `\par` in its definition and therefore is able to typeset paragraphs (each consisting of a single dot); as a result it produces pages in rapid succession. Such an experiment ended on the author's machine with a document containing 22279 pages and the following message:

```
tex: fwrite: No space left on device
```

On your private machine, this is merely a nuisance, easily rectified. On systems with shared resources, however, you should be careful when letting \LaTeX run unattended. This type of error once hit a student very badly; this individual processed such a document on a mainframe in batch mode without a time or size limit and was presented a bill for computer processing time of several thousand dollars.

Several other internal tables can overflow in principle. Below is the complete list of those not already discussed, along with an explanation for the most likely reason for the overflow. Some additional information can be found in [84, p.300].

buffer size The characters in the lines being read from a file. Because the default size is usually quite large, the most likely cause for an overflow is lost line breaks due to a faulty conversion of a file during transfer from one operating system to another. A buffer overflow can also be caused by some PC word processing programs, which internally put an entire paragraph on a single line even though the text appears to be broken into several lines on the screen.

exception dictionary The number of hyphenation exceptions as specified by `\hyphenation`. \LaTeX has some exceptions specified for the English language, and some language packages specify additional exceptions. However, if this table overflows, you must have been doing a very thorough job.

font memory The font metric data loaded by \LaTeX . These days an overflow is unlikely but not impossible. If it happens, \LaTeX has loaded too many fonts — probably

because you used many different font sizes and \LaTeX calculated and loaded math fonts for all the sizes. Increase the table size, if possible, or refer to Chapter 9 for information on how to reduce the number of fonts.¹

grouping levels The number of unfinished groups that delimit the scope for setting parameters, definitions, and other items — for instance, braces, the start of environments, or math mode delimiters. An overflow usually indicates a programming error (e.g., a definition that opens more groups than it closes). That type of error is sometimes difficult to identify. Good help is available with the command `\showgroups` to produce a listing of stacked groups starting with the innermost one. For example, placing it into the footnote on the current page yields

```
### semi simple group (level 3) entered at line 2955 (\begingroup)
### insert group (level 2) entered at line 2955 (\insert0{)
### semi simple group (level 1) entered at line 2921 (\begingroup)
### bottom level
```

The semi simple group on level 1 is due to the fact that this text is typeset in a description environment (the `\begin` command issues internally a `\begingroup` command). The `\footnote` command is implemented with the \TeX primitive `\insert`, which contributes level 2. In fact, another semi simple group is started by `\footnote`, which ensures that color changes remain local. What we can deduce from this example is that the relationships among top-level document commands and internal groups are far from obvious or simple. However, the line numbers that show when a group was entered do help, because there are usually no long-ranging groups in normal documents.

As an alternative, use the internal tracing counter `\tracinggroups`. If it is set to a positive number, the entry and exit of groups is recorded in the transcript file; with `\tracingonline` having a positive value, this information also appears on screen.

hash size The number of command names known to \TeX . Most packages contribute a fixed number of new command names. Each `\label` or `\bibitem` command in the document generates one new internal command name. Thus, packages that internally use the `\label` command (e.g., `varioref`) may significantly contribute to filling that table in large documents.

number of strings The number of strings — command names, file names, and built-in error messages — remembered by \TeX . In some cases \TeX is able to free unused space, but usually such strings survive even if they are used only locally. One possible reason for overflowing this table is the use of many files in an application. Each opening for reading or writing of a file contributes, even when the same file is used many times over.

¹It happened during the production of this book, but only when typesetting both volumes together — this loaded more than 4000 fonts, and we had to increase the table size slightly.

For historical reasons, \TeX has a somewhat unusual string-handling concept involving several tables, each of which can overflow. Thus, if you change the hash size to allow for more commands, you may need to adjust the number of strings and quite likely the pool size, and vice versa.

parameter stack size The total number of command parameters of nested commands being expanded but not yet fully processed. For example, suppose a command with 4 arguments calls a command with 5 arguments, which in turn calls a command with 3 arguments, thereby using up 12 slots in this table. The moment \TeX reaches the end of a macro replacement text it frees the stack. Thus, with today's implementations it is quite difficult to hit that limit, unless you use a flaky recursive definition with arguments, for example:

```
\newcommand\FAIL[3]{\typeout{Got #1, #2, and #3 but \FAIL is a mess}\DO}
```

Do you see the problem? Because the `\typeout` contains `\FAIL` by mistake, it gets called again, before its replacement text has been fully processed (picking up the characters `i`, `s`, and `a` as arguments). As a result, `\DO` is never executed and we finally get

```
! TeX capacity exceeded, sorry [parameter stack size=10000].
\FAIL #1#2#3->
\typeout {Got #1, #2, and #3 but \FAIL is a mess}\DO
1.18 \FAIL 123
```

This is similar to the `\FAILb` example from page 746, except that because of the number of arguments the **parameter stack** overflowed first.

pattern memory The memory available to store hyphenation patterns. This table cannot overflow during normal document processing, because such patterns are loaded only during format generation. If you receive this error during that process, reduce the number of languages for which you load hyphenation patterns into your format. Pattern loading is normally defined in the file `language.dat`.

pool size The characters in strings — command names and file names (including the full path on some implementations). If this table overflows, the most likely cause is the use of too many files, especially if they have long absolute path names. This can, for example, happen if a document includes many graphics and one uses `\graphicspath` to make \LaTeX search for the images in several directories — every attempt to open a file contributes to this string pool.

save size The set of values to restore when a group ends. With today's default limits, this is again difficult to overflow. The most likely cause is the use of both local and global assignments to the same object, something that can happen only through the use of low-level \TeX programming, because \LaTeX assignments are either always local (for most types) or always global (e.g., counter assignments). But, of course, many packages are built using low-level methods, which means such bugs in a package are not impossible.

To avoid unnecessary growth of the `save stack`, the document environment has a special implementation so that it does not produce a group (as normal environments do). Without it every new definition would automatically push an unnecessary “undefined” value onto the `save stack` — unnecessary, because by the time that group would end, all processing would stop anyway.¹

semantic nest size The number of token lists being worked on simultaneously.

Boxes, math formulas, and other elements start a new list, suspending work on the current structure. Once they are finished, \TeX has to continue constructing the suspended object, so all such unfinished objects are remembered in the `semantic nest stack`. With a default size of several hundred objects, it is very difficult to get even close to this limit with normal documents.² In an emergency, \TeX offers `\showlists`, which displays all unfinished lists that \TeX is currently working on.

text input levels The number of simultaneously open input sources (e.g., files opened with `\include`, `\input`, or `\usepackage`, etc.). On the author’s implementation of \TeX one would need to nest 1500 files to reach this limit.

B.3 Warnings and informational messages

While error messages make \LaTeX stop³ and wait for user input, warning messages are simply displayed on the terminal and in the transcript file, and processing continues. If applicable, \LaTeX also shows the source line number that triggered the warning. The warnings are prefixed by “`LaTeX Warning:`” or “`LaTeX <module> Warning:`” if they are issued by the core \LaTeX code. Otherwise, they identify the issuing package or class by starting with “`Package <name> Warning:`” or “`Class <name> Warning:`”, respectively. \TeX warnings, such as “`Overfull . . .`”, have no standard prefix string.

In addition to warnings, \LaTeX writes informational messages to the transcript file — usually without displaying this information on the terminal. To better distinguish between informational and warning messages, **warnings are shown in blue** and informational message in black in the following alphabetical listing.

Calculating math sizes for size *<text size>*

\LaTeX has to guess the correct font sizes for subscripts and superscripts because it could not find the information for the current *<text size>* in its internal tables. This message usually is followed by several font size correction warnings because \LaTeX ’s initial guess is seldom successful. This situation can arise when you select an uncommon size using the `\fontsize` command; see Section 9.8.5 if the math formulas look strange.

¹As a side effect it is impossible to use `\begin{document}` inside another environment because the grouping structure is not obeyed.

²The author could not think of any problematic definition that would not hit any of the other limits first.

³This is of course true only if you have not issued a `\scrollmode` or `\nonstopmode` command. In that case all the errors discussed earlier will also be just flush by, or, if `\batchmode` is used, nothing at all is shown. The only exceptions are “File not found” errors: for them \LaTeX stops in `\scrollmode` and asks for help, or gives up in despair in the other two modes.

Cannot activate hook ‘*<hook>*’ because it is disabled! (hooks)

This warning is issued by `\ActivateGenericHook` if the *<hook>* has been explicitly disabled via `\DisableGenericHook`, because it is not functional for one or the other reason.

Cannot remove chunk ‘*<label>*’ from hook ‘*<hook>*’ because *<reason>*! (hooks)

This warning is issued by `\RemoveFromHook` if the code to be removed does not exist (i.e., there is no code with that *<label>*) or if the *<hook>* does not exist.

Checking defaults for *<enc>/*

This message is written in the transcript file at `\begin{document}` while \LaTeX is verifying that the substitution defaults for the encoding *<enc>* are sensible. It is followed either by `...okay` or by an error message that is generated when the ** group specified with `\DeclareFontEncoding` is unknown to \LaTeX .

Citation ‘*<key>*’ on page *<number>* undefined

The *<key>* specified as an argument to `\cite` or `\nocite` is not defined by a `\bibitem` command or you need another run of \LaTeX (and perhaps \BibTeX or `biber`) to make it known to \LaTeX . The latter case is indicated by an additional warning, “Label(s) may have changed...”, as discussed on page 754. The page number is omitted if the warning is emitted by `\nocite`.

Command *<name>* invalid in math mode

This is either a warning or an error message indicating that you have used a command in math mode that should be used only in normal text. A warning is generated when an obsolete, yet still valid, construction is used.

Command *<name>* has changed

A test was made in some package to see if *<name>* has its expected meaning (usually in order to change it afterwards). This is no longer the case so that there is some likelihood that the modification is no longer adequate — hence the warning. Sometimes it does not matter, but usually it is best to contact the package developers so that they can update the package.

Defining command *<name>* with sig. ‘*<argument spec>*’ (cmd)

Defining environment *<name>* with sig. ‘*<argument spec>*’

This information is written to the transcript file if a new document-level command *<name>* was declared with the help of `\NewDocumentCommand`. For reference its signature, i.e., its argument specification, is also given. The same kind of information is recorded for environments declared with `\NewDocumentEnvironment`.

Document Class: *<name>* *<date>* *<additional info>*

This line is produced by a `\ProvidesClass` command in the document class code. Although not a warning, it appears both on the terminal and in the transcript file. If a document produces different output on different installations, you should compare the “Document Class:”, “File:”, and “Package:” messages to identify any release differences.

Empty ‘thebibliography’ environment

This warning is issued if a thebibliography environment has no `\bibitem` commands. It often indicates a problem with a BibTeX run. For example, the BibTeX program may have been unable to resolve a single citation.

Encoding *<name>* has changed to *<new name>* for *<symbol font>* ...

This message is issued when in the declaration of a symbol font different encoding schemes in different math versions have been used. It may mean that the `\DeclareMathSymbol` commands for this symbol font are not valid in all math versions.

(\end occurred *<when>*) TeX

You receive this warning at the very end of your run whenever TeX finds the `\end{document}` or `\stop` command to be premature. As a warning the message is unfortunately misleading, because it refers to a TeX primitive `\end` that was reused by L^ATeX to become the environment end-tag. The *<when>* can be one of two cases:

inside a group at level *<number>*) TeX

In this case the L^ATeX run ended while there were still some open groups. Such groups include explicit braces that are not closed (e.g., `{\itshape...}`), use of `\bgroup` and `\begingroup` in macro code without their counterparts, and unclosed environments in the source. The latter normally triggers a suitable L^ATeX error first (i.e., “`\begin{env}`” on...) unless you ended the run with `\stop`, because in that case no check for mismatched environments is made.

when *<condition>* on line *<line number>* was incomplete) TeX

In this case L^ATeX completed the run while a low-level TeX conditional remained unfinished. With L^ATeX documents using only standard commands, this problem should not occur unless you ended the document inside a file loaded with `\include`. In other cases it probably means there is a bug in a package. Try to identify the source of the conditional (by looking at the *<line number>*) to see in which command it was used. Note that the *<line number>* may not be in the current file — unfortunately, TeX does not divulge the file name. In very difficult situations you can try to use eTeX’s advanced tracing options to pinpoint the problem: if `\tracingifs` is set to 1, you get detailed trace information about nested conditionals as they are executed.

External font *<name>* loaded for size *<size>*

L^ATeX has ignored a request to load some font shape at size *<size>* and has loaded the external font *<name>* instead. This message is generated by the size functions `fixed` (as a warning) or by the size function `sfixed` (as an informational message).

Faking *<command>* for font family *<name>* in TS1 encoding

The glyph *<command>* is not available in the TS1 encoding of the current font family. L^ATeX has responded by “faking” it in some way. This is, for example, done for the `\texteuro` glyph (€), if unavailable in the current font.

File ‘*<name>*’ already exists on the system.
 Not generating it from this source

This informational message is generated by a `filecontents` environment when the file *<name>* already exists somewhere in the search path of \LaTeX , even if it would not be overwritten. If you want to unpack the file nevertheless, either delete (or rename) the version found by \LaTeX or use the option `overwrite` in the optional argument of the environment.

File: *<name>* *<date>* *<additional info>*

This line is produced from the `\ProvidesFile` command used to identify a file and its last modification date. By convention, the *<additional info>* starts with a version number, though it is not required. Although of the same importance as `\ProvidesClass`, this information is written only to the transcript file to avoid cluttering the terminal with messages.

If a document produces different output on different installations, you should compare the “Document Class:”, “File:”, and “Package:” messages to identify any release differences. A good way to do this is by adding `\listfiles` in the preamble of your document. This then summarizes such information for all relevant files at the end of the document.

File: *<encoding>**<family>*.*fd* *<date>* *<additional info>*

This important special case of the previous informational message indicates that a font definition file for some *<encoding>* (usually displayed in lowercase) and *<family>* combination was loaded. Such files contain font shape group declarations and are described in Section 9.8.4.

First page is already shipped out, ignoring *<command>* (hooks)

This warning is generated by `\AtBeginDvi` or `\AtBeginShipoutFirst` if the declaration is used too late, i.e., after the first page has already been shipped out.

Float too large for page by *<value>*

A float is too tall by *<value>* to fit in the current `\textheight`. It is printed on a page by itself (if permitted), thereby possibly overflowing into the bottom margin. If the float is not allowed to go on a float page, it prevents all further floats in its class from being placed.

Font shape ** has incorrect series value ‘*<value>*’

The NFSS convention for font series names in *.fd* files is to drop the *m* if there is a second value, e.g., *c* not *mc* for medium-condensed. Obeying this convention is important, because otherwise automatic adjustments are not fully functional.

If you see this message, it usually originates from an *.fd* with incorrect data and needs to be reported to the font maintainer. It is not a warning message, because as a user you have no easy way to correct the problem other than reporting it.

Font shape ** in size *<size>* not available

\LaTeX issues this message when it tries to select a font for which the requested font attribute combination is not available and a substitution is defined in the

internal tables. Depending on the contents of these tables, one of the following additional messages is issued:

external font $\langle name \rangle$ used

\LaTeX has selected the external font $\langle name \rangle$ in that particular situation and does not know to which font shape group it belongs. (This message is generated by the size function subf.)

size $\langle size \rangle$ substituted

\LaTeX has selected the correct shape, but because the requested size is not available, \LaTeX has chosen the nearby size $\langle size \rangle$. This action is taken automatically if none of the simple sizes or size ranges in the $\langle font\ shape \rangle$ group declaration matches.

shape $\langle font\ shape \rangle$ tried

\LaTeX has selected a different $\langle font\ shape \rangle$ group because the requested one is not available for the requested $\langle size \rangle$. (This message is generated by the size function sub.)

Font shape $\langle font\ shape \rangle$ will be scaled to size $\langle size \rangle$

\LaTeX has loaded the requested font by scaling it to the desired size. To print a document containing scaled fonts, your printer driver must have these fonts in the correct size or must be able to scale them automatically.

Font shape $\langle font\ shape \rangle$ undefined. Using ‘ $\langle other\ shape \rangle$ ’ instead

This warning is given when a combination of font attributes is specified for which \LaTeX has no font shape definition.

For example, requesting `\fontseries{b}\ttfamily` would normally trigger this warning, because Computer Modern fonts have neither bold typewriter nor bold extended typewriter. However, when the latter combination is requested, you do not receive this warning but only some information in the transcript file because for `\textbf{\texttt{...}}` the .fd files contain an explicit substitution rule.

If \LaTeX identifies a particular symbol that it cannot typeset in the requested shape, the above warning is followed by “for symbol $\langle name \rangle$ ”.

Foreign command $\langle command \rangle$;

amsmath

$\frac{}{} or \genfrac should be used instead$

Although the use of $\langle command \rangle$ is not an error, you are strongly discouraged from using this old form for your (generalized) fractions in \LaTeX . Use the `amsmath` commands instead.

Form feed has been converted to Blank Line

The `filecontents` environment detected a “form feed” character (\char"000D) in the source and writes it as an empty line (`\par` command if interpreted by \LaTeX) into the external file. Because `filecontents` was designed to distribute textual data, it cannot be used for handling arbitrary binary files.

Freeze math alphabet allocation in version $\langle version \rangle$

The number of allocated math alphabets (with `\DeclareMathAlphabet`) and math symbol fonts (with `\DeclareSymbolFont`) in a given math $\langle version \rangle$ has reached the threshold defined by the counter `localmathalphabets`. The remaining math groups are assigned only locally (per formula) in order to allow different formulas to use the remaining slots in different ways. See page →1681 for details.

`'h' float specifier changed to 'ht'` or
`'!h' float specifier changed to '!ht'`

You specified `h` or `!h` as a float placement without giving any other options. \LaTeX requires some alternative in case “here” leads to an impossible placement because not enough room is left on the current page. If you really want to prevent floats from floating, consider using the `float` package described in Section 7.3.1.

Hook `'shipout/lastpage'` executed on wrong page ... (hooks)

\LaTeX made a wrong guess and executed the `shipout/last` hook on a page that was not the last one. Rerun your document and the problem goes away.

Hyphen rules for `'\langle lang_1 \rangle'` set to `\l@{\langle lang_2 \rangle} (\language\langle number \rangle)` babel

Many languages explicitly request some hyphenation replacements in the corresponding `.ldf` files. Because not all patterns are available on all systems, these messages help when debugging problems. For additional information, use the package option `showlanguages` to get a list of all hyphenation patterns available in the format and the $\langle number \rangle$ s that they are associated with.

Ignoring text `'\langle text \rangle'` after `\end{\langle env \rangle}`

This warning is issued by `filecontents` or `filecontents*` when textual material is detected following the `\end` tag.

Ignoring void shipout box

There was a request to produce a page (via `\shipout`), but the `\ShipoutBox` contained no material. There may be something wrong with the code producing the page or one of the output routine hooks; e.g., `shipout/before` voided the box. If done deliberately, then it is better to use `\DiscardShipoutBox` that avoids this warning.

Label `'\langle key \rangle'` multiply defined

The document contains two or more `\label` commands with the same $\langle key \rangle$. References to this $\langle key \rangle$ always refer to the last `\label` defined. Ensure that all $\langle key \rangle$ s are different.

Label(s) may have changed. Rerun to get cross-references right

\LaTeX has detected that the label definitions, as compared to those in the previous run, have been modified and that (at least) one additional \LaTeX run is necessary to resolve cross-references properly. In theory it is possible, though unlikely, that this message persists regardless of the number of processing runs.¹ If this

¹For example, if the `\label` is near the page boundary between pages “iii” and “iv”, the use of

is the case, compare the `.aux` files of different runs to determine which label alternates between different states and resolve the problem manually.

Last declared language option is ‘`\lang`’, but the `\babel`
last processed one was ‘`\other lang`’

The main document language is set to the last declared in either the class or the package options. However, when languages are declared in *both* places, the behavior is not well defined, and this warning alerts you to this fact. The recommended setup is to request them only as class or as package options, but if for some reason you need both, you can set the main language with the package option `main=\lang`.

Loose `\hbox` (badness `\number`) `\somewhere` `\TeX`

`\TeX` produced a horizontal box with a badness of 13 or greater (which corresponds to using 50% or more of the available stretchability). This warning can be safely ignored unless you are a perfectionist; in fact, it will not be produced unless you change the default for `\hbadness`. See the message “Underfull `\hbox`...” on page 762 for more details.

Loose `\vbox` (badness `\number`) `\somewhere` `\TeX`

`\TeX` produced a vertical box with a badness of 13 or greater (which corresponds to using 50% or more of the available stretchability). The warning is produced only if `\vbadness` was set to a value below 100. See the message “Underfull `\vbox`...” on page 763 for more details.

Making `\char` an active character `\babel`


For each character that is turned into a shorthand character, this informational message will be written to the transcript file. When a document shows unexpected results, this information might help if the problems are caused by inadvertent use of a shorthand character.

Marginpar on page `\number` moved

A `\marginpar` could not be aligned with the text line to which it was originally attached, because a preceding `\marginpar` already occupies the space.

Missing character: There is no `\char` (`\hex number`) in font `\name` `\TeX`

Although this message usually indicates a serious problem, it is unfortunately shown only if `\tracinglostchars` is positive. It means that somewhere in the source a request for a symbol `\char` was made for which the current font (`\name` is the external name) has no glyph in the corresponding position. The displayed `\char` may differ on different `\TeX` installations.¹ The `\hex number` is shown only on some installations. For example, using the command `\symbol`

 Watch out for this message in the transcript or turn it into an error!

`\pageref` before the `\label` might result in a situation where the `\label` is moved to page “iv” if the textual reference “iii” is used, and vice versa.

¹Sometimes you see something like `^G` and sometimes real characters are displayed. Unfortunately, there is no guarantee that they correspond to your input: some translation that depends on the operating system may happen when the characters are written to the transcript file.

can produce this warning because you can ask for any font slot with this command. However, standard font-encoding-specific commands, as discussed in Section 9.9.4 on page 767, should never produce this warning.

In 2021 the engines got extended, and you can now set `\tracinglostchars` to different values: 1 (transcript only), 2 (terminal warning), or 3 (TeX error). For compatibility reasons, L^AT_EX sets it to 2, but because of its importance, especially with Unicode engines, we recommend using `\tracinglostchars=3` in the preamble of your documents.

No `\author` given

You used `\maketitle` without specifying an author first. In contrast to a missing `\title` this omission generates a warning.

No auxiliary output files

This information is displayed when you use a `\nofiles` declaration in the document preamble.

No characters defined by input encoding change to `<name>`

The input encoding file `<name>.def` does not seem to contain any input encoding declarations. For the `ascii` encoding, this is the expected behavior; for all other encodings, it indicates a problem.

No file `<name>`

L^AT_EX displays this information whenever it tries to read from an auxiliary file (e.g., `.aux` or `.toc`) but cannot find the file. This is not considered an error because such files are created only after the first run. However, the same routine is also used by `\include`, so that, unfortunately, a missing “include file” triggers this unsuspicious warning too.

No hyphenation patterns were preloaded for the language babel `'<lang>'` into the format

All language definition files check whether hyphenation patterns for the language selected were loaded into the L^AT_EX format (provided the line breaking is based on this mechanism). If this is not the case, this message is displayed, and a default set of hyphenation patterns is used instead. The default patterns are those loaded into pattern register 0 (typically American English).

No positions in optional float specifier. Default added ...

A float environment (e.g., `figure` or `table`) was used with its optional placement argument, but it did not contain any suitable information. Hence, L^AT_EX used its default placement rules.

Oldstyle digits unavailable for family `<name>`

You used `\oldstylenums` with a font family that does not contain oldstyle digits. As an emergency measure, L^AT_EX used oldstyle from a different font instead. By default this is an informational message; if you prefer a warning or error

on the terminal, load the `textcomp` package with the option `warn` or `error`. Section 9.5.6 gives further details.

Optional and mandatory argument with same delimiter ‘*char*’ (cmd)

If you define a command with mandatory and optional arguments following each other and using the same argument delimiters, e.g.,

```
\NewDocumentCommand \mycmd { d<> * r<> }{...}
```

then it is impossible to use such a command and omit all the optional arguments, simply because \LaTeX would interpret `<X>` in `\mycmd<X>` as the optional argument and then complain about a missing required one. You could, however, call it without problems as `\mycmd*<Y>`, `\mycmd<X><Y>`, or `\mycmd<X>*<Y>`. Thus, the uncommon declaration might be intentional, and therefore \LaTeX gives only a warning, not an error.

Optional argument of `\twocolumn` too tall on page *<number>*

The material in the optional argument to `\twocolumn` was so tall that fewer than three lines remain on the page. \LaTeX does not start two-column mode on the current page and starts a new page instead.

`\oval`, `\circle`, or `\line` size unavailable

The requested size for the mentioned commands is unavailable. \LaTeX chooses the closest available size. See, for example, Section 8.3.2 for ways to avoid this problem.

Overfull `\hbox` (*<number>*pt too wide) *<somewhere>* \TeX

\TeX was forced to build a horizontal box (e.g., the line of a paragraph or a `\makebox`) of a certain width and was unable to squeeze the material into the given width, even after shrinking any available space as much as possible. As a result, the material sticks out to the right. In most cases this is quite noticeable, even if the total amount is small. You have to correct this problem manually, because \TeX was unable to resolve it (Sections 3.1 on page 1121 and B.4.3 give some advice). For a list and explanation of the possible origins (i.e., the *<somewhere>*), see the warning “Underfull `\hbox`...” on page 762.

Overfull `\vbox` (*<number>*pt too wide) *<somewhere>* \TeX

\TeX was asked to build a vertical box of a fixed size (e.g., a `\parbox` or a `minipage` with a second optional argument; see Appendix A.3.2 on page 666) and found more material than it could squeeze in. The excess material sticks out at the bottom. Whether this result poses a problem depends on the circumstances. For a list and explanation of the possible origins (i.e., the *<somewhere>*), see the warning “Underfull `\vbox`...” on page 763.

Overwriting encoding scheme *<something>* defaults

This information is written by `\DeclareFontEncodingDefaults` to the `.log` when it overwrites previously declared system-wide defaults for “text” or “math”.

Overwriting *<something>* in version *<name>* ...

A declaration, such as `\SetSymbolFont` or `\DeclareMathAlphabet`, changed the assignment of font shapes to *<something>* (a symbol font or a math alphabet) in math version *<name>*.

Package: *<name>* *<date>* *<additional info>*

This line is produced by the `\ProvidesPackage` command, which is used to identify a package and its last modification date. By convention, the *<additional info>* starts with a version number, though it is not required. Although of the same importance as `\ProvidesClass`, this information is written to just the transcript file to avoid cluttering the terminal with messages. If a document produces different output on different installations, you should compare the “Document Class:”, “File:”, and “Package:” messages to identify any release differences.

Package ‘*<name>*’ has already been loaded: ignoring (keys)
load-time option ‘*<option>*’

Some packages have options that can be applied only during package loading, but not altered with `\SetKeys` afterwards. If such an *<option>* is found, it is ignored with a warning. You get this warning when there are several attempts to load a package (of which only the first is carried out). In that case the warning may be harmless or it may indicate a serious problem — \LaTeX just does not know, and you have to check yourself.

pdfTeX warning (dest): name{*<name>*} has been referenced pdfTeX only
but does not exist, replaced by a fixed one

This is a pdfTeX engine warning that indicates that the document contains an internal hyperlink to a destination that does not exist. This happens, for example, when you use `\includeonly` and you have links from your document into files not included. As a replacement, pdfTeX creates a link pointing to the first page.

Unicode engines

There is a similar warning when the LuaTeX engine is used, starting “warning (pdf backend)”. It too creates an artificial destination, but one to the current page. With \XeTeX , however, no warning is given, because resolving links happens in a separate program. With that program, the link is simply dead when selected.

pdfTeX warning (ext4): destination with the same identifier pdfTeX only
(name{*<name>*}) has been already used, duplicate ignored

This happens if two destinations are created with the same name. A typical case is sections numbered without a chapter number. `hyperref` then creates the destination `section.1` in the first chapter and again in the following chapters. The remedy is to redefine `\theHsection` so that it gives an unique number, e.g.:

```
\renewcommand\theHsection{\thechapter.\thesection}
```

You also get the warning if the page numbering is reset with `\pagenumbering` without changing the number style, for example, after a title page. In that case `hyperref` creates the destination `page.1` twice. The remedy here is either to use a different number style, e.g., `alph`, for the title page, even if the number is not visible, or to surround the title page with the `NoHyper` environment so that no destinations are created at all.

Redeclaring font encoding *<name>*

This information is recorded if `\DeclareFontEncoding` is used for an encoding that is already defined (thereby potentially changing its defaults).

Redeclaring math accent *<name>*

This information is recorded if `\DeclareMathAccent` is used for a math accent that was previously declared. If the command to be declared is known but not an accent, you get an error message instead.

Redeclaring math alphabet *<name>*

A `\DeclareMathAlphabet` or `\DeclareSymbolFontAlphabet` command was issued to declare *<name>*, which was already defined to be a math alphabet identifier. The new declaration overrides all previous settings for *<name>*.

Redeclaring math delimiter *<name>*

The command *<name>* was already declared as a math delimiter, and its renewed declaration with `\DeclareMathDelimiter` overrides the old definition. If the *<name>* is known but not a delimiter, you get an error instead.

Redeclaring math symbol *<name>*

Same as above but for math symbols redeclared with `\DeclareMathSymbol`.

Redeclaring math version *<name>*

A package or class (or you) issued a `\DeclareMathVersion` command for a version that was already declared. The new declaration overrides all previous settings for this version with the default values.

Redeclaring symbol font *<name>*

A package or class issued a `\DeclareSymbolFont` command for a symbol font that was previously declared. The new declaration overrides the symbol font in all known math versions.

Redefining command *<name>* with sig. '*<argument spec>*' (cmd)

Redefining environment *<name>* with sig. '*<argument spec>*'

An already existing command or environment *<name>* was redefined using `\RenewDocumentCommand` or `\RenewDocumentEnvironment`, respectively. The new (and possibly changed) argument specification is also recorded.

Reference '*<key>*' on page *<number>* undefined

A reference created with `\ref`, `\pageref`, or one of the other cross-reference commands discussed in Chapter 2 used a *<key>* for which \LaTeX has not seen a

corresponding `\label` command. If the `\label` is somewhere in the document, you simply need another \LaTeX run to make it known to \LaTeX . This situation is indicated by the additional warning “Label(s) may have changed...” discussed on page 754.

Size substitutions with differences up to `<size>` have occurred

This message appears at the end of the run if \LaTeX selected at least one significantly different font size because a requested size was not available. The `<size>` is the maximum deviation that was needed.

Some font shapes were not available, defaults substituted

This message appears at the end of the run if \LaTeX had to use automatic font substitution for some font shapes.

Suspicious rollback/min-date date given

There was a rollback request through the `latexrelease` package and at the same time an explicit request with a conflicting date in the second optional argument to `\usepackage` or `\documentclass`. Maybe this was intentional, but equally likely, it is the result of a leftover configuration that was not updated.

Symbol `<command>` not provided by font family `<name>`

The TS1 font encoding is unfortunately implemented fully by just a minority of the font families usable with \LaTeX . If a symbol requested from this encoding is not available in the current font, it is instead typeset using a default family, and you get this informational message. You can turn such messages into warnings or errors by loading the `textcomp` package with the option `warn` or `error`. See Section 9.5.6 for more details.

Tab has been converted to Blank Space

The `filecontents` environment detected a “tab” character (`^~I`) in the source and writes it as a space into the external file. Because `filecontents` was designed to distribute textual data, it cannot generally handle arbitrary binary files.

Temporary extra page added at the end

For a number of tasks \LaTeX has to write configuration data to the very end of the last page. It makes an initial guess when it is about the ship out this last page, but this guess is sometimes wrong. In such cases \LaTeX is forced to produce an extra page just to ship out the necessary information. If that happens, it issues this warning and advises you to rerun the document. Just like with cross-references it then makes use of the knowledge from the previous run to correct the issue. The same can happen if you make extensive changes (mainly deletions) so that the information from the previous run is no longer accurate.

Text page `<number>` contains only floats

One or more floats processed as “top” or “bottom” floats are together so tall that very little space (less than two lines) is left for normal text on the current page. Therefore, \LaTeX decided to place only floats on the page in question (even if some or all of the floats do not explicitly allow for this placement). This message can

appear only when the placement parameters for floats were changed drastically from their default values; see the beginning of Chapter 7 for details.

The following font families will use the default `\babel` settings for all or some languages: `\details`

Unicode engines

With Unicode engines, Babel automatically selects some OpenType features for the text fonts so that they are properly rendered in many languages and scripts. These default font settings may not always work. This informational message therefore shows what got selected so that you can make adjustments using `\babelfont` if that is necessary. If everything comes out fine, you can ignore this warning.

There were multiply-defined labels

This warning appears at the end of a \LaTeX run when \LaTeX detected at least one pair of `\label` or `\bibitem` commands with the same key. Check the transcript file and make sure that all keys used are different.

There were undefined references

This warning appears at the end of a \LaTeX run when \LaTeX detected unresolved references. If \LaTeX also displays “Label(s) may have changed. Rerun ...” then follow its advice and rerun the document.

However, if the message appears on its own, then \LaTeX has concluded that rerunning the document would not resolve the references. In that case you should check the transcript file for all occurrences of “Reference `\langle key \rangle` undefined” and “Citation `\langle key \rangle` undefined” and correct them, either by fixing a misprint or by adding the necessary `\label` or `\bibitem` commands. In the case of missing citation `\langle keys \rangle`, all you may have to do is regenerate the bibliography with `BibTeX` or `biber` and then rerun \LaTeX .

Tight `\hbox` (badness `\langle number \rangle`) `\langle somewhere \rangle` \TeX

\TeX produced a horizontal box and had to shrink the interior spaces. You get this message only if `\hbadness` is set to a value less than 100. See the message “Underfull `\hbox`...” on the next page for more details.

Tight `\vbox` (badness `\langle number \rangle`) `\langle somewhere \rangle` \TeX

\TeX produced a vertical box and had to shrink the interior spaces. You get this message only if `\vbadness` is set to a value less than 100. See the message “Underfull `\vbox`...” on page 763 for more details.

Token not allowed in a PDF string (`\langle encoding \rangle`): removing ‘`\langle token \rangle`’ `\hyperref`

When converting input such as a section title into the format suitable for bookmarks, `hyperref` has to produce a simple character string and therefore removes or replaces commands as necessary. Depending on what it has to change, it may issue this warning. Commands that it does not know how to handle are removed, but their arguments will remain and may become part of the string.

In the special case of spacing commands like `\`, or `\quad`, `hyperref` warns about a `\kern` or a `\hspace` and either removes it (if it is small) or replaces it by a single space. If the text contains a formula, `hyperref` issues at least two warnings about removing a “math shift” at the beginning and the end. Superscripts and subscripts in the math will be removed with a warning. In all cases the bookmarks should be checked, and, if necessary (or to get rid of the warning), a replacement should be provided with `\texorpdfstring`.

Trying to load font information for `<enc>+<family>`

You find such a message in the transcript file whenever \LaTeX tries to load an `.fd` file for the encoding/family combination `<enc>/<family>`.

Unable to redefine math accent `<accent>` `amsmath`

This warning is rare, but it may be issued when loading the `amsmath` package with nonstandard mathematical fonts.

Underfull `\hbox` (badness `<number>`) `<somewhere>` \TeX

\TeX was forced to build a horizontal box (e.g., the line of a paragraph or a `\makebox`) of a certain width, and the white space within that box had to stretch more than it was designed to do (i.e., stretched more than 100% of the available plus parts in stretchable spaces). Internally, this situation is expressed by a badness value greater than 100; a value of 800 means that twice the total stretchability was used to produce the required width.¹

Whether such an underfull box actually presents a noticeable problem is something that you may have to check visually in the produced output. If the badness is 10 000, the box can be arbitrarily bad. Because \TeX 's value for infinity is quite low, it might mean that \TeX has favored one very bad line over several bad but still acceptable lines that appear in succession. In that case, using `\emergencystretch` can help you; see Section 3.1.

The limit of badness values above which such warnings are shown is controlled by the integer parameter `\hbadness`. \LaTeX 's default is 1000, so warnings appear only for really bad boxes. If you want to produce an important document, try a more challenging value, such as `\hbadness=10`, to find out how many lines \TeX really considers imperfect.

Note that the warning always talks about `\hbox`, regardless of the actual box construct used in the source, because it is directly generated by \TeX . The location where the problem occurred is indicated by `<somewhere>`, which is one of the following four possibilities:

detected at line `<line number>` \TeX

An explicitly constructed box (construction ending at line `<line number>` in the source) has the problem — for example, a `\makebox` with an explicit width argument or some other \LaTeX construct that builds boxes.

¹The exact formula is $\min(100r^3, 10000)$ where r is the ratio of “stretch used” to “stretch available”, unless there is infinite stretch present (e.g., introduced by a command like `\hfill`), in which case the badness is zero.

has occurred while \output is active TeX

TeX was in the process of building a page and encountered the problem while attaching running headers and footers and the like. Because this is an asynchronous operation, no line number is given. Look at the page generated closest to where the warning was issued to determine whether it warrants manual correction.

in alignment at lines *<line numbers>* TeX

The box is part of a `tabular` or some math alignment environment. The *<line numbers>* give you the source position of the whole alignment structure, because by the time TeX encounters the problem, it no longer has a way to relate it back to the source in more detail.

in paragraph at lines *<line numbers>* TeX

The underfull box is due to a badly spaced line in the paragraph (source line numbers given as *<line numbers>*). The additional symbolic display of the line in question should help you to pinpoint the problem.

Underfull \vbox (badness *<number>*) *<somewhere>* TeX

TeX was forced to build a vertical box (e.g., a `\parbox` or a `minipage`) of a certain height, and the vertical space in that box had to stretch more than it was supposed to; see the discussion of badness and stretchability in the description of the “Underfull \hbox...” warning. You can suppress all warnings for badness values below a certain limit by setting `\vbadness=<value>`. Then TeX issues warnings only for boxes with a badness larger than *<value>* (the default is 1000). The *<somewhere>* indicates the origin of the problem and can be one of the following cases:

detected at line *<line number>* TeX

The box was explicitly constructed (the *<line number>* points to the end of the box construction), and there is not enough stretchable space available. For example,

```
\parbox[c][2in][s]{4cm}{A test}
```

would produce this warning because the box should be 2 inches high and the contents should fill this height (argument `[s]`), but there is nothing stretchable available — for instance, something like `\par\vfill` between the two words. See Appendix A.3.2 for details on paragraph boxes.

has occurred while \output is active TeX

In the most frequent case, the space on the current page needed stretching beyond acceptable limits in TeX’s eyes. Whether this is visually a real problem depends on many factors, such as the type of spaces on the page. For example, a large stretch in front of a heading is usually less severe than a spaced-out list. Thus, the best advice is to check such pages manually. Often, `\enlargethispage` or `\pagebreak` will help.

If the problem appears surprisingly often, then the spacing parameters for lists, paragraphs, and headings should be examined to see whether they are too rigid (see Chapters 2 to 5). Also check whether the `\textheight` corresponds to an integral number of text lines; see the discussion on page →I 369.

in alignment at lines *<line numbers>* TeX

This warning should not arise with standard L^AT_EX but can occur in some specialized applications. In such a case, use *<line numbers>* to identify the source lines in your document.

Undo math alphabet allocation in version *<version>*

Once the number of math alphabet allocations has reached its allowed limit in a math *<version>*, any further allocation is undone at the end of the formula so that it can be reused differently in later formulas. The message is shown when such deallocation is happening. See page →I 681 for details.

Unused global option(s): [*<option list>*]

Some of the options specified on `\documentclass` have been used by neither the class nor any package in the preamble. A likely reason is that the names of the options have been misspelled. Also note that some packages do not react to global options, but only to those explicitly specified when loading the package. See Appendix A.6 for details.

warning (pdf backend): unreferenced destination with LuaTeX only
name '*<name>*'

Unicode engines

A Lua_TE_X engine warning that a referenced hyperlink destination is missing (the text is somewhat incorrect; the destination, not the link is missing). See the corresponding pdf_TE_X warning on page 758 for more details.

warning (pdf backend): ignoring duplicate destination LuaTeX only
with the name '*<name>*'

Unicode engines

A Lua_TE_X engine warning that two targets for hyperlinks (“destinations”) have the same name. See the corresponding pdf_TE_X warning on page 758 for more details.

Writing file '*<file>*'

This informational message is produced by both the `filecontents` and the `filecontents*` environment when they write a *<file>* that is definitely not yet on the system.

Writing or overwriting file '*<file>*'

In contrast to the previous informational message, the `filecontents` and the `filecontents*` environments show this message as a warning message when

they write a *<file>* that already exists (somewhere) on the system and they are used with the `force` or `overwrite` key and therefore might overwrite it.

Writing text ‘*<text>*’ before `\end{<env>}` as last line of *<file>*

This warning is issued by the `filecontents` or `filecontents*` environment when it detects textual material directly preceding the `\end` tag.

You have more than once selected the attribute ‘*<attrib>*’ babel
for language *<lang>*

This message is displayed if the same attribute is entered more than once in the second argument of `\languageattribute`; only the first occurrence triggers the activation of the attribute.

You have requested *<package or class>* ‘*<name>*’,
but the *<package or class>* provides ‘*<alternate name>*’

You requested loading of *<name>* via `\usepackage` or `\RequirePackage` (in the case of a package) or via `\documentclass` or `\LoadClass` (in the case of a class), but the package or class provides a variant of the original with the internal name *<alternate name>*. Unless this was a typo by the package or class provider, it means that your installation has a package or class variant that is likely to behave differently from the original. Thus, your document may be formatted differently when processed on another installation. Whether this is the correct behavior is something you need to investigate by looking at the package or class in question.

Specifying a relative or absolute path name also triggers this warning as a side effect.

You have requested release ‘*<date>*’ of LaTeX,
but only release ‘*<old date>*’ is available

A `\NeedsTeXFormat` command has requested a L^AT_EX release of at least *<date>*, but the date of your format is *<old date>*. Usually, such a request is made to ensure that a certain feature of the L^AT_EX format is available, so it is likely that your document will produce additional errors or strange formatting later. Update to a more recent version of L^AT_EX.

You have requested, on line *<num>*, version ‘*<date>*’ of *<name>*,
but only version ‘*<old date>*’ is available

A class or package was required to have a date not older than *<date>*, but the version on your installation is from the date *<old date>*. Update the class or package in question.

B.4 T_EX and L^AT_EX commands for tracing

In this section we discuss tools and techniques for tracing and for displaying status information — for example, finding out why something is strangely spaced on the page or why your own command definition does the wrong thing.

B.4.1 Displaying command definitions and register values

In many situations it is useful to get some information about \LaTeX 's current internals, the precise definitions of commands, the values of registers, and so on. For example, if the use of `\newcommand` reports that the command to be defined is already defined, you may want to know its current definition to ensure that you do not redefine an important command.

*Displaying
command definitions*

For this purpose \TeX offers the command `\show`, which displays the definition of the token following it and then stops and displays a question mark while waiting for user intervention. For example, after defining `\xvec` as in Example A-1-5 on page 626, we can display its definition as follows:

```
\newcommand\xvec[1]{\ensuremath{x_1,\ldots,x_{#1}}}  
\show\xvec
```

This produces the following output on the terminal and in the transcript file:

```
> \xvec=\long macro:  
#1->\ensuremath {x_1,\ldots ,x_{#1}}.  
1.6 \show\xvec  
  
?
```

The first line, which starts with `>`, shows the token being displayed (`\xvec`) and gives its type (`\long macro`), indicating that `\xvec` is a macro that accepts `\par` commands in its argument; in other words, this macro was defined with `\newcommand` rather than `\newcommand*`.

The second line shows the argument structure for the command (up to `->`), revealing that the command has one argument (`#1`). Note that while the argument on the `\newcommand` declaration was indicated with `[1]`, it is now shown differently. The rest of the line — and possibly further lines, if necessary — shows the definition part. The code is terminated with a period that is not part of the definition but helps to identify stray spaces at the end of the definition, if any.

Note that the code display is normalized. Thus, after a command that would swallow subsequent spaces, you see a space regardless of whether a space was coded in the original definition.

Following the display of the definition, the source line (including the line number in the input file) is shown. Then \LaTeX stops with a question mark. To continue, you can press Enter. Alternatively, you can type `h` to see what other possibilities are available.

Not all commands produce such easily understandable output. Assume that you try to display a command that was defined to have an optional argument, such as `\lvec` as defined in Example A-1-6 on page 626:

```
\newcommand\lvec[2][n]  
{\ensuremath{\#2_1+\cdots + \#2_{\#1}}}  
\show\lvec
```

In that case you get this result:

```
> \lvec=macro:
->\@protected@testopt \lvec \lvec {n}.
```

Apparently, the `\lvec` command has no arguments whatsoever (they are picked up later in the processing). And something else is strange in this output: what is `\lvec`? Is it the command `\` followed by the letters `lvec`, or is it a strange command `\lvec` that has two backslashes as part of its name? It is actually the latter, though there is no way to determine this fact from looking at the output of the `\show` command. Such strange command names, which cannot be generated easily by the user, are sometimes used by L^AT_EX internally to produce new command names from existing ones using `\csname` and `\endcsname` and other low-level mechanisms of T_EX.

So what should you do if you want to see the definition of `\lvec`? It should be clear that writing `\show` in front of such a command does not work, because in normal situations T_EX sees `\` and thinks that it is the command to “show”. Until recently all you could do was use unwieldy low-level methods such as

*Displaying internal
commands with
strange names*

```
\expandafter\show\csname \string\lvec \endcsname
```

Technically, what happens here is that a command name is generated from the tokens between `\csname` and `\endcsname`. Inside that construct, the `\string` command turns the command `\lvec` into a sequence of characters starting with a backslash that no longer denotes the start of a command. This is why the resulting command name contains two backslashes at the beginning. The `\expandafter` command delays the evaluation of the following `\show` command so that `\csname` can perform all of its work before `\show` is allowed to look at the result.¹

That’s quite a mouthful of low-level T_EX, but in an emergency it may prove helpful to know about the `\csname` trick. However, starting with the 2020 release, L^AT_EX now offers `\ShowCommand` as an improved replacement for `\show`. If you write

```
\ShowCommand\lvec
```

then this produces the following output:

```
> \lvec=robust macro:
->\@protected@testopt \lvec \lvec {n}.

> \lvec=\long macro:
> default #1=n.
[#1]#2->\ensuremath {#2_1+\cdots + #2_{#1}}.
<recently read> }
```

As you can see, the first part is similar to the result from `\show`, but `\ShowCommand` recognizes that `\lvec` is a robust command and more importantly that it also needs

¹Alternatively, you can use `\ExpandArgs{c}\show{\string\lvec}`, but that is not really better.

to show us its internal definition, i.e., replacement for `\lvec`. It even tells us that `#1` is an optional argument with a default of `n`.¹

*Detecting a primitive
command*

`\ShowCommand` can be given any command name as its argument, but it offers maximum details only with commands that have been defined with higher-level \TeX declarations such as `\newcommand`, `\NewDocumentCommand`, etc. For commands that are part of the \TeX engine (so called primitive commands) or defined with a low-level `\def`, it gives you the same result as `\show`. If the command examined is a built-in primitive command, then you get output like the following:

```
> \relax=\relax.
<argument> \relax

1.10 \ShowCommand \relax
```

i.e., a primitive command shows up as being equal to itself.

*Displaying
register values*

The commands `\show` and `\ShowCommand` are useful for learning about commands and their definitions or finding out if something is a primitive of \TeX . However, they do not help in finding the current values of length or counter registers. For example,

```
\show\parskip \show\topmargin \show\topsep
```

gives us the following information:

```
> \parskip=\parskip.
1.5 \show\parskip
\show\topmargin \show\topsep
?
> \topmargin=\dimen109.
1.5 \show\parskip \show\topmargin
\show\topsep
?
> \topsep=\skip29.
1.5 \show\parskip \show\topmargin \show\topsep
```

From the above we can deduce that `\parskip` is a \TeX primitive (the fact that it is a rubber length is not revealed), that `\topmargin` is actually the `\dimen` register (i.e., a rigid length) with register number 109, and that `\topsep` is the `\skip` register (a rubber length) with number 29.

If we want to know the value of any such register, we need to deploy a different \TeX primitive, called `\showthe` instead of `\show` or `\ShowCommand`, which gives us the following output on the terminal and also proves that `\parskip` is, indeed, a rubber length (but only because it has a nonzero plus component):

```
> 0.0pt plus 1.0pt.
1.5 \showthe\parskip
```

¹`\ShowEnvironment{env}` is a comparable command for environments. It displays both the `\begin{env}` and the `\end{env}` code of the environment in the style of `\ShowCommand`.

Using `\showthe` in this way allows us to display the values of the length registers allocated with `\newlength` and of internal T_EX registers such as `\baselineskip` and `\tolerance`. What we cannot display directly with it are the values of L^AT_EX counters allocated with `\newcounter`. For this we have to additionally deploy a `\value` command that turns a L^AT_EX counter name into a form that is accepted by `\showthe`. For example,

L^AT_EX counters need special handling

```
\showthe\value{footnote}
```

would show the current value of the footnote counter on the terminal.

Instead of displaying the meaning of a macro or the value of a register on the terminal, you can alternatively typeset this kind of data by using `\meaning` instead of `\show` and `\the` instead of `\showthe`. The output is slightly different: the name of the token is not shown by `\meaning`; instead, only its type and “meaning” are presented. Compare the next example with the output shown earlier in this section:

Typesetting command definitions or register values

<pre>\long macro:#1->\ensuremath {x_1,\ldots ,x_{#1}} 0.0pt plus 1.0pt 16.0pt 8.0pt plus 2.0pt minus 4.0pt footnote=0</pre>	<pre>\newcommand\xvec[1]{\ensuremath{x_1,\ldots ,x_{#1}}}\ttfamily\small % use smaller typewriter \raggedright \meaning\xvec \par \the\parskip\par \the\topmargin \par \the\topsep \par footnote=\the\value{footnote}</pre>
--	---

B-4-1

If displaying command definitions or register values is insufficient for determining a problem, you can alternatively trace the behavior of the commands in action; see Section B.4.5 on page 781.

B.4.2 Diagnosing page-breaking problems

Once in a while L^AT_EX produces unexpected page breaks or shows some strange vertical spaces and you would like to understand where they are coming from or what precise dimensions are involved. For these tasks, T_EX offers a few low-level tracing tools.

Symbolic display of the page contents

If you specify `\showoutput` somewhere in your document, T_EX displays (starting with the current page) symbolic representations of complete pages on the terminal and the transcript file. This generates a large amount of output, of which we show some extracts that have been produced by compiling the first paragraph of this section separately.

As a side effect, the `\showoutput` command also produces symbolic displays of overfull boxes. Tracing ends at the next closing brace or environment. Thus, to see the output for full pages, you have to place the command into the preamble, or at least ensure that the page break happens before the next group ends.

Side effect of \showoutput

Every page output starts with the string Completed box being shipped out followed by the current page number in brackets. Then you get many lines showing the boxes that make up the page, starting with a `\vbox` (vertical box) and its sizes in

pt containing the whole page. To indicate that something is the contents of a box, everything inside is recursively indented using periods instead of blanks. Spaces, even if they are rigid, are indicated by the keyword `\glue` (see line 3 or 6); stretchable space has some plus and/or minus components in its value, as we see later. Whether it is a horizontal or a vertical space is determined by the box in which this space is placed. For example, the `\glue` of 16.0pt on line 3 is a vertical space that came from `\topmargin`; see also Example B-4-1 on the preceding page. In the extract you also see an empty `\vbox` of height 12pt (lines 5 to 7), which is the empty running header, followed in line 8 by the space from `\headsep` (25pt), followed by the box containing the text area of the page starting at line 10. Lines 15 and following show how individual characters are displayed; here `\T1/cmr/m/n/10` indicates the font for each character. The `\glue` in between (e.g., line 19) marks an interword space with its stretch and shrink components.

```

1 Completed box being shipped out [1]
2 \vbox(633.0+0.0)x407.0
3 .\glue 16.0
4 .\vbox(617.0+0.0)x345.0, shifted 62.0
5 ..\vbox(12.0+0.0)x345.0, glue set 12.0fil
6 ... \glue 0.0 plus 1.0fil
7 ... \hbox(0.0+0.0)x345.0
8 ..\glue 25.0
9 ..\glue(\lineskip) 0.0
10 ..\vbox(550.0+0.0)x345.0, glue set 502.00241fil
11 ... \write-{}
12 ... \glue(\topskip) 3.1128
13 ... \hbox(6.8872+2.15225)x345.0, glue set - 0.17497
14 .... \hbox(0.0+0.0)x15.0
15 .... \T1/cmr/m/n/10 0
16 .... \T1/cmr/m/n/10 n
17 .... \T1/cmr/m/n/10 c
18 .... \T1/cmr/m/n/10 e
19 .... \glue 3.33252 plus 1.66626 minus 1.11084
20 .... \T1/cmr/m/n/10 i
21 .... \T1/cmr/m/n/10 n
22 .... \glue 3.33252 plus 1.66626 minus 1.11084
23 .... \T1/cmr/m/n/10 a

```

As a second example from a page trace, we show the symbolic display of the structures near a line break. You see the space added by \TeX at the right end of a text line (`\rightskip` on line 5) and the box containing the line. Thus, line 6 is outdented again. It contains a symbolic representation for the costs to \TeX to break after this line, indicated by the command `\penalty`. The actual value here is due to the value of the `\clubpenalty` parameter.¹ This is followed in line 7 by the vertical space

¹The penalty to break after the first line in a paragraph is given by the integer parameter `\clubpenalty`; the cost for breaking before the last line by `\widowpenalty`. Both default to 150;

added between the lines, computed by T_EX by taking the value of `\baselineskip` and subtracting the depth of the previous line box and the height of the following line box, which starts at line 8.

```

1 ....\T1/cmr/m/n/10 s
2 ....\T1/cmr/m/n/10 o
3 ....\T1/cmr/m/n/10 m
4 ....\T1/cmr/m/n/10 e
5 ....\glue(\rightskip) 0.0
6 ... \penalty 150
7 ... \glue(\baselineskip) 2.96054
8 ... \hbox(6.8872+1.94397)x345.0, glue set 0.55421
9 ....\T1/cmr/m/n/10 s
10 ....\T1/cmr/m/n/10 t

```

As a final example, we look at some part of the symbolic page output produced from a line like this:

```
\begin{itemize} \item test \end{itemize} \section{Test}
```

The particular part of interest is the one generated from `\end{itemize}` and `\section{Test}`. What we see here (lines 1 to 7) is a curious collection of `\glue` statements, most of which cancel each other, intermixed with a number of `\penalty` points:

```

1 ... \penalty -51
2 ... \glue 10.0 plus 3.0 minus 5.0
3 ... \glue -10.0 plus -3.0 minus -5.0
4 ... \penalty -300
5 ... \glue 10.0 plus 3.0 minus 5.0
6 ... \glue -10.0 plus -3.0 minus -5.0
7 ... \glue 15.0694 plus 4.30554 minus 0.86108
8 ... \glue(\parskip) 0.0 plus 1.0
9 ... \glue(\parskip) 0.0
10 ... \glue(\baselineskip) 8.12001
11 ... \hbox(9.87999+0.0)x345.0, glue set 290.70172fil

```

These lines are generated from various `\addpenalty` and `\addvspace` commands issued; for example, lines 1 and 2 are the penalty and the rubber space added by `\end{itemize}`. The `\section` command then adds a breakpoint to indicate that the place before the section is a good place to break a page (using `\@secpenalty` with a value of `-300`). In fact, the break should be taken before the `\glue` from line 2, or else there would be a strange space at the bottom of that page. As it is technically impossible to remove material from the vertical galley, `\addpenalty` uses the trick to back up by adding a negative space (line 3), adding the penalty (line 4),

that is, they slightly discourage a break.

and then reissuing the `\glue` (line 5). In lines 6 and 7, the same method is used by `\addvspace` to add the vertical space before the heading.

Lines 8 to 10 are added by \TeX when placing the actual heading text (line 11) into the galley. Note that technically the heading is considered a “paragraph”, so `\parskip` is added. This is the reason why enlarging this parameter requires careful planning. The same care should be taken when adjusting other parameters (like the one added on line 7).

In fact, you see `\parskip` being added twice, in one case with a value of 0.0. The reason for this curiosity is that these days \TeX trial-starts the paragraph to execute the `para/before` hook and then stops and restarts the paragraph again. Obviously, a real `\parskip` should be added only once, but because \TeX always adds the current value of `\parskip` whenever it starts a paragraph, \TeX locally sets it to 0pt on one of the occasions, and this is what we see.

Tracing page-break decisions

If you want to trace page-breaking decisions, \TeX offers symbolic information that you can turn on by setting the internal counter `\tracingpages` to a positive integer value:

```
\tracingonline=1 \tracingpages=1
```

Setting `\tracingonline` to a positive value ensures that the tracing information appears not only in the transcript file (default), but also on the terminal.

Processing the previous paragraph starting with “If you want to...” as a separate document, we get the following lines of tracing information:

```
1  %% goal height=522.0, max depth=4.0
2  % t=10.0 g=522.0 b=10000 p=150 c=100000#
3  % t=22.0 g=522.0 b=10000 p=150 c=100000#
4  % t=55.0 plus 4.0 g=522.0 b=10000 p=-51 c=100000#
5  % t=77.0 plus 8.0 g=522.0 b=10000 p=300 c=100000#
6  % t=89.0 plus 8.0 g=522.0 b=10000 p=0 c=100000#
7  % t=90.94397 plus 8.0 plus 1.0fil g=522.0 b=0 p=-10000 c=-10000#
```

The first line starting with two percent signs shows the target height for the page (i.e., 522pt in this case), which means 43 lines at a `\baselineskip` of 12pt with 2pt missing, because the skip to position the first base line, `\topskip`, has a value of 10pt. If the goal height does not result in an integral number of lines, problems like underfull `\vboxes` are likely to happen.

*Target size of
a break*

The remaining lines, starting with one percent sign, indicate a new potential page-break position that \TeX has considered. You can interpret such lines as follows: `t=` shows the length of the galley so far and, if the galley contains vertical rubber spaces, their total amount of stretch and shrink. Line 4, for example, shows that in the layout of this book verbatim displays have an extra space of 10pt plus a stretch of 4pt (the verbatim lines are typeset in a smaller font with only 11pt of `\baselineskip`) and the same amount is added between lines 4 and 5.

The `g=` specifies the goal height at this point. This value changes only if objects like floats have reduced the available space for the galley in the meantime. *Page goal height*

With `b=`, T_EX indicates the badness of the page if a break would be taken at this point. The badness is calculated from the factor by which the available stretch or shrink in `t=` must be multiplied to reach the goal height given in `g=`. In the example the page is barely filled, so it is always 10000 (infinitely bad), except for line 7, where, due to the added `fil` stretch, the page is suddenly considered optimal (`b=0`). *Page badness*

With each breakpoint T_EX associates a numerical `\penalty` as the cost to break at this point. Its value is given by `p=`. For example, it is not allowed to break directly before the verbatim display, which is why there is a large increase in `t=` between lines 3 and 4. On the other hand, a break after the display is given a bonus (`p=-51`). Line 5 shows that breaking after the first line of the two-line paragraph fragment following the verbatim text is considered bad (`p=300`), because it would result in both a club and a widow line (`\clubpenalty` and `\widowpenalty` each have a value of 150, and their values are added together). *Break penalty*

Finally, `c=` describes the calculated cost to break at this breakpoint, which is derived from a formula taking the badness of the resulting page (`b=`) and the penalty to break here (`p=`) into account. T_EX looks at these cost values and eventually breaks at the point with minimal cost. If the line ends in `#`, then T_EX thinks that it would be the best place to break the page after evaluating all breakpoints seen so far. In the example, all lines show this `#`—not surprising, given that T_EX considers all but the last breakpoint to be equally bad. *Costs of a page break*

If the pages would become too full if a break is taken at a particular breakpoint, then T_EX indicates this fact with `b=*`. At this point T_EX stops looking for other breakpoints and instead breaks the page at the best breakpoint seen so far.

For additional details on the output produced by these low-level display devices, consult [84, p.112].

B.4.3 Diagnosing and solving paragraph-breaking problems

If T_EX is unable to find a suitable set of points at which to break a paragraph into lines, it produces, as a last resort, one or more lines that are “overfull”. For each of them you get a warning on the screen and in the transcript file, such as

```
Overfull \hbox (5.10907pt too wide) in paragraph at lines 3778--3793
\T1/hlh/m/n/10 showing you a sym-bolic dis-play of the text line and the
line num-ber(s) of the paragraph|
```

showing you a symbolic display of the text line and the line number(s) of the paragraph containing it. If you look at the symbolic display, you can easily diagnose that the problem is T_EX’s inability¹ to hyphenate the word “paragraph”. To explicitly flag such lines in your document, you can set the parameter `\overfullrule` to a positive value. For the present paragraph it was set to 5pt, producing the blob of ink

The black blob of ink above is deliberate

¹T_EX is, in fact, perfectly capable of hyphenating “para-graph”; for the example, we explicitly prevented it from doing so. The paragraph would have been perfect otherwise.

clearly marking the line that is overfull. The standard document classes enable this behavior with the option `draft`. On the other hand, you may not mind lines being only slightly overfull. In that case you can change the parameter `\hfuzz` (default `0.1pt`); only lines protruding by more than the value of `\hfuzz` into the margin are then reported.

If \TeX is unable to break a paragraph in a satisfying manner, the reasons are often hyphenation problems (unbreakable words, as in the above example), problems with the parameter settings for the paragraph algorithm, or simply failure of the text to fit the boundary conditions posed by the column measure or other parameters, together with aesthetic requirements like the allowed looseness of individual lines. In the latter case the only remedy is usually a partial rewrite.

Dealing with hyphenation problems

With the relevant hyphenation patterns loaded, \TeX is able to do a fairly good job for many languages [121]. By using `microtype`, described in Section 3.1.3 on page 126, this can be improved even further, because the font compression and expansion deployed by `microtype` reduce the number of hyphenations considerably.¹

However, it usually does not find all potential hyphenation points, so sometimes one has to assist \TeX in this task. To find out which hyphenation points in words like “laryngologist” are found by \TeX , you can place such words or phrases in the argument of the command `\showhyphens`:

```
\showhyphens{laryngologist laryngopharyngeal}
```

Running this statement through \LaTeX gives you some tracing output on the terminal and in the transcript file. The hyphenation points determined by \TeX are indicated by a hyphen character:

```
[ ] \OT1/cmr/m/n/10 laryn-gol-o-gist laryn-gopha-ryn-geal
```

If you want to add the missing hyphenation points, you can specify all hyphenation points for one word locally in the text using `\-`, for example,

```
la\ryn\gol\o\g\o-gist la\ryn\go\pha\ryn\ge\al
```

Alternatively, you can use a `\hyphenation` declaration in the preamble:

```
\hyphenation{la-ryn-gol-o-gist la-ryn-go-pha-ryn-ge-al}
```

The latter technique is particularly useful when you detect a wrong hyphenation or often use a word for which you know that \TeX misses important hyphenation points. Note that such explicit specifications tell \TeX how to hyphenate words that are exactly in the form given. Thus, the plural “laryngologists” would be unaffected unless you specify its hyphenation points as well.

¹This is why we generally recommend loading this package in documents that are set justified.

The `\hyphenation` declarations apply to the current language, so if a document uses several languages — for example, by using the methods provided by the `babel` system — then you need to switch to the right language before issuing the relevant declarations.

showhyphenation, lua-check-hyphen — Display hyphenation points with LuaT_EX

Unicode engines

The two packages described here are unfortunately available only with LuaT_EX, because they make use of features not available in any of the other engines. They interface with the paragraph building process and visualize the hyphenation points found by LuaT_EX or collect all words that are finally hyphenated, respectively.

The `showhyphenation` package by Thomas Kelkel helps you resolve cases in which T_EX breaks a paragraph in a bad way, by allowing you to quickly check if T_EX has missed one or the other possible hyphenation.

The `lua-check-hyphen` package by Patrick Gundlach on the other hand writes out all words that are actually hyphenated into a file with the extension `.uhy`. Once your document is in final form, you can look at this file to make sure that there are not any bad hyphenations (either unfortunate ones that you may want to avoid or, worse, some wrong ones that definitely need correcting).

It also offers you to maintain a list of accepted hyphenations in some external file that can be loaded with the option `whitelist` so that you do not have to repeatedly check the same entries over and over again. Both packages are demonstrated in the next example.

This short paragraph demonstrates the usefulness of the packages `showhyphenation` and `check-lua-hyphens`. The first automatically marks all hyphenation points found by the engine with a small triangular mark. The second package writes out all hyphenations that happened in the document into a file with the extension `.uhy`. You can then examine that file to find any issues with the hyphenation and correct them as necessary.

B-4-2

```
\usepackage{showhyphenation}
\usepackage{lua-check-hyphen}
```

This short paragraph demonstrates the usefulness of the packages `\textsf{showhyphenation}` and `\textsf{check-lua-hyphens}`. The first automatically marks all hyphenation points found by the engine with a small triangular mark. The second package writes out all hyphenations that happened in the document into a file with the extension `\texttt{.uhy}`. You can then examine that file to find any issues with the hyphenation and correct them as necessary.

In the example there are two lines ending in a hyphen, and the `.uhy` file, written by `lua-check-hyphen`, shows the following data:

```
automat-ically
hyphen-ations
```

If you do not like the hyphenation of “automatically”, you could then turn to your

document source and add an explicit `\-`, i.e., `auto\~mati\~cally`. Alternatively, you could generally disallow this hyphenation point by specifying an exception with `\hyphenation{au-to-mati-cally}`. Either way, our example paragraph would afterwards be broken differently.

Tracing the paragraph algorithm

Because T_EX uses a global algorithm for optimizing paragraph breaking, it is not always easy to understand why a certain solution was chosen. If necessary, one can trace the paragraph-breaking decisions using the following declarations:¹

```
\tracingparagraphs=1 \tracingonline=1
```

For readers who really want to understand the reasons behind certain decisions, we show some example data with detailed explanations below.

Paragraph tracing produces output that looks somewhat scary. For instance, one of the previous paragraphs generated data that starts like this:

```
1  @firstpass
2  @secondpass
3  []\T1/cmr/m/n/10 The [] dec-la-ra-tions ap-ply to the cur-rent lan-guage, so
4  @ via @@0 b=3219 p=0 d=10436441
```

*Up to three passes
over paragraph
data*

Line 2 says that T_EX has immediately given up trying to typeset the paragraph without attempting hyphenation. This is due to the value of `\pretolerance` being set to 100 in the sources for the book; otherwise, T_EX may have gotten further or even succeeded (in English text quite a large proportion of paragraphs can be reasonably set without hyphenating²). In addition to `@secondpass`, you sometimes see `@emergencypass`, which means that even with hyphenation it was impossible to find a feasible solution and another pass using `\emergencystretch` was tried.³ Line 3 shows how far T_EX had to read to find that first potential line ending that results in a badness of less than $\infty = 10000$. Line 4 gives details about this possible break. Such lines start with a single `@`; the `via` gives the previous breakpoint (in this case `@@0`, which refers to the paragraph start), the line badness (`b=`), the penalty to break at this point (`p=`), and the so-called demerits (`d=`) associated with taking that break (a “cost” that takes into account badness, penalty, plus context information like breaking at a hyphen or the visual compatibility with the previous line).

```
5  @@1: line 1.0 t=10436441 -> @@0
```

In line 5, T_EX informs us that it would be possible to form a very loose first line ending in the breakpoint given by line 3 with a total cost (`t=`) equal to the demerits shown on line 4. This line would be formed by starting at breakpoint `@@0`. The notation `line 1.0` gives the line number being made, and the suffixes `.0`, `.1`, `.2`, `.3`, respectively, stand for very loose, loose, decent, and tight interword spacing in the line. This classification is important when comparing the visual compatibility of consecutive lines.

¹These parameters are also turned on by a `\tracingall` command, so you may get many lines of paragraph tracing data, even if you are interested in something completely different.

²For the *L^AT_EX Companion* with its many long command names in the text, this is less likely.

³For this to happen, `\emergencystretch` needs to have a positive value. See also the discussion in Section 3.1.

T_EX now finds more and more potential line breaks, such as after “if” in line 6 and after “a” in line 9. Each time T_EX tells us what kind of lines can be formed that end in the given breakpoint. If `b=*` appears anywhere in the trace data, it means that T_EX could not find a feasible breakpoint to form a line and had to choose an infeasible solution (i.e., one exceeding `\tolerance` for the particular line).

```

6  if
7  @ via @@0 b=1087 p=0 d=1213409
8  @@2: line 1.0 t=1213409 -> @@0
9  a
10 @ via @@0 b=334 p=0 d=128336
11 @@3: line 1.0 t=128336 -> @@0
12 doc-
13 @\discretionary via @@0 b=0 p=50 d=2600
14 @@4: line 1.2- t=2600 -> @@0
15 u-
16 @\discretionary via @@0 b=1 p=50 d=2621
17 @@5: line 1.2- t=2621 -> @@0

```

By hyphenating the word `doc-u-ment`, it finds two more breakpoints (lines 12 and 15). This time you see a penalty of 50 — the value of the parameter `\hyphenpenalty` (breaking after a hyphen) — being attached to these breaks. Line 15 is the last breakpoint that can be used to produce the first line of the paragraph. All other breakpoints would produce an overfull line. Hence, the next tracing line again shows more text; none of the potential breakpoints therein can be used because they would form a second line that exceeds `\tolerance`.

```

18 ment uses sev-eral languages\Dash for ex-am-ple, by us-ing the meth-
19 @\discretionary via @@1 b=1194 p=50 d=1452116
20 @\discretionary via @@2 b=2875 p=50 d=8325725
21 @@6: line 2.0- t=9539134 -> @@2

```

Here the breakpoint can be used to form a second line in two different ways: by starting from breakpoint `@@1` (line 19) or by starting from breakpoint `@@2` (line 20). If we compare just these two solutions to form the second line of the paragraph, then the first would be superior: it has a badness of 1194, whereas the second solution has a badness of 2875, which results in a factor of 5 in “costs” (`d=`). Nevertheless, T_EX considers the second break a better solution, because a first line ending in `@@1` is so much inferior to a line ending in `@@2` that the total cost for breaking is less if the second alternative is used. T_EX therefore records in line 21 that the best way to reach the breakpoint denoted by line 18 is by coming via `@@2` and results in a total cost of `t=9539134`. For the rest of the processing, T_EX does not need to know that there were several ways to reach `@@6`; it just needs to record the best way to reach it.

More precisely, T_EX needs to record the best way to reach a breakpoint for any of the four types of lines (very loose, loose, decent, tight), because the algorithm attaches different demerits to a solution if adjacent lines are visually incompatible (e.g., a loose line following a tight one). Thus, later in the tracing (lines 22–40 are not shown), we get the following output:

```

41 by
42 @ via @@3 b=19 p=0 d=10841

```



```

43 @ via @@4 b=9 p=0 d=361
44 @ via @@5 b=42 p=0 d=2704
45 @@10: line 2.1 t=5325 -> @@5
46 @@11: line 2.2 t=2961 -> @@4

```

This output indicates that there are three ways to form a line ending in “by”: by starting from @@3, @@4, or @@5. A line with a badness of 12 or less is considered decent (suffix .2); a line stretching, but with a badness not higher than 100, is considered loose (suffix .1). So here T_EX records two feasible breakpoints for further consideration — one going through @@5 and one going through @@4.

Which path through the breakpoints is finally selected can be decided only when the very end of the paragraph is reached. Thus, any modification anywhere in the paragraph, however minor, might make T_EX decide that a different set of breakpoints forms the best solution to the current line-breaking problem, because it produces the lowest total cost. Due to the complexity of the algorithm, minor modifications sometimes have surprising results. For example, the deletion of a word may make the paragraph a line longer. This may happen because T_EX decides that using uniformly loose lines, or avoiding hyphenation of a word, is preferable to some other way to break the paragraph. Further details, describing all parameters that influence the line-breaking decisions, can be found in [84, p.98]. If necessary, you can force breakpoints in certain places with `\linebreak` or prevent them with `\nolinebreak` or by using `~` in place of a space. Clearly, choices in the early parts of a paragraph are rather limited, and you may have to rewrite a sentence to avoid a bad break. However, later in a paragraph nearly every potential break becomes feasible, being reachable without exceeding the specified `\tolerance`.

Shortening or lengthening a paragraph

Another low-level tool that can be used to help with paragraph line breaking or more often with pagination problems, is the internal counter `\looseness`. If you set it to a nonzero integer n , then T_EX tries to make the next paragraph n lines longer (n positive) or shorter (n negative), while maintaining all other boundary conditions (e.g., the allowed `\tolerance`). For example on page 781, we have artificially shortened the paragraph starting in the following way:

```

\looseness=-1
Finally, you can direct \TeX{} to step through your files ... as well.

```

Without this adjustment T_EX would have preferred to place the final “well.” on a line by itself. Now the paragraph is set a bit too tight for T_EX’s taste, but the overall result is noticeably better.

Setting the value of `\looseness` is not guaranteed to have any effect. Shortening a paragraph is more difficult for T_EX than lengthening it, because interword spaces have a limited shrinkability that is small in comparison to their normal stretchability. The best results are obtained with long paragraphs having a short last line. Consequently, extending a paragraph works best on long paragraphs with a last line that is already nearly full, though you may have to put the last words of the paragraph together in an `\mbox` to ensure that more than one word is placed into the last line. A more detailed discussion of this approach is given in Section 5.6.8 on page →I 427.

B.4.4 Other low-level tracing tools

T_EX offers a number of other internal integer parameters and commands that can sometimes help in determining the source of a problem. They are listed here with a short explanation of their use.

We already encountered `\tracingonline`. If it is set to a positive value, all tracing information is shown on the terminal; otherwise, most of it is written only to the transcript file. This parameter is automatically turned on by `\tracingall`. *On-line tracing*

With `\tracingoutput`, tracing of page contents is turned on. What is shown depends on two additional parameters: `\showboxdepth` (up to which level nested boxes are displayed) and `\showboxbreadth` (the amount of material shown for each level). Anything exceeding these values is abbreviated using `etc.` or `[]` (indicating a nested box) in the symbolic display. The L^AT_EX command `\showoutput` sets these parameters to their maximum values and `\tracingoutput` to 1 so that you get the most detailed information possible. The `\showoutput` command is automatically called by `\tracingall`.

To see the contents of a box produced with `\sbox` or `\savebox`, you can use the T_EX command `\showbox`: *The contents of boxes*

```
\newsavebox\testbox \sbox\testbox{A test}
{\tracingonline=1 \showbox\testbox }
```

However, the result is fairly useless if you do not adjust both `\showboxdepth` and `\showboxbreadth` at the same time:

```
> \box52= []
```

OK.

Hence, a better strategy is to use L^AT_EX's `\showoutput`:

```
{\showoutput \showbox\testbox }
```

Notice the use of braces to limit the scope of `\showoutput`. Without the braces you would see all of the following page boxes, which might not be of much interest. The same type of symbolic display as discussed in Section B.4.2 is displayed on the terminal:

```
> \box52=
\hbox(6.83331+0.0)x27.00003
.\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 A
.\glue 3.33333 plus 1.66498 minus 1.11221
.\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 t
.\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 e
.\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 s
.\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 t
```

OK.

If you add `\scrollmode` or `\batchmode` before the `\showbox` command, \TeX does not stop at this point. You can then later study the trace in the transcript.

*Local
restores*

To see what values and definitions \TeX restores when a group ends, you can set `\tracingrestores` to a positive value. It is automatically turned on by the command `\tracingall`.

\TeX 's stack of lists

With `\showlists` you can direct \TeX to display the stack of lists (vertical, horizontal) that it is currently working on. For instance, putting `\showlists` into the footnote¹ of the present paragraph, we obtain the following output in the `.log` file:

```
### horizontal mode entered at line 3066 []
spacefactor 1000
### internal vertical mode entered at line 3066
prevdepth ignored
### horizontal mode entered at line 3060 []
spacefactor 1000
### vertical mode entered at line 0
### current page: []
total height 514.70349 plus 26.0 minus 2.0
goal height 522.0
prevdepth 1.70349
```

Here the text of the footnote started at line 3066, and the `\spacefactor` was set to 1000 at its beginning. The footnote itself was started on that same line, contributing the “internal vertical mode”, and \TeX correctly disregarded the outer value of `\prevdepth`. The footnote was part of a paragraph that started on source line 3060, which in turn was embedded in a vertical list that started on line 0, indicating that it is the main vertical galley.

Finally, the output shows some information about the current page list that is being built, including its current height, its target height, and the value of `\prevdepth` (i.e., the depth of the last line on the page at the moment).

Because of the default settings for `\showboxbreadth` and `\showboxdepth`, the contents of all lists are abbreviated to `[]`. To get more detail adjust them as necessary or use `\showoutput\showlists` to get the full details.

*Tracing the
processing*

Not very useful on its own, but helpful together with other tracing options, is `\tracingcommands`, which shows all primitives used by \TeX during processing. A related internal integer command is `\tracingmacros`, which shows all macro expansions carried out by \TeX . If set to 2, it also displays the expansion of conditionals. Both parameters are automatically turned on by `\tracingall`.

*Tracing lost
characters*

When everything is set up correctly, it is unlikely that pdf \TeX will ever access a font position in the current font that is not associated with a glyph. However, some commands, such as `\symbol`, can explicitly request any font slot, so it is not impossible.


¹A footnote starts a new vertical list and, inside it, a new horizontal list for the footnote text.

Unicode engines

Unfortunately, the situation in the Unicode engines is worse, because these engines assume that all fonts can typeset *any* Unicode character, which is obviously false. As a result, it is rather likely that, depending on the fonts used in the document, one or the other more uncommon character is unavailable and therefore does not print when requested.

Sadly, T_EX, and by extension the other engines based on it, never considered this event to be an error (which it should have). It merely traces such missing characters by writing unsuspicious transcript entries, and it takes that step only if `\tracinglostchars` is set to a positive value.

More recently most engines have been extended so that you now can get warnings on the terminal (`\tracinglostchars` set to 2) or even errors (value 3). L^AT_EX tries to be helpful by initializing this internal integer to 2. However, especially with Unicode engines we recommend changing this to 3 in the preamble of your documents to avoid undetected missing characters in your documents.

 *Better use the setting `\tracinglostchars = 3` in the preamble*

Finally, you can direct T_EX to step through your files line by line. When setting `\pausing` to 1, each source line is first displayed (suffixed with `=>`). T_EX then waits for instructions regarding what to do with it. Pressing `<Enter>` instructs T_EX to use the line unchanged; anything else means that T_EX should use the characters entered by the user instead of the current line. T_EX then executes and typesets whatever it was passed, displays the next line, and stops again. To continue normal processing you can reply with `\pausing=0`, but remember that this is used in place of the current source line, so you may have to repeat the material from the current source line as well.

Stepping through a document

B.4.5 trace — Selectively tracing command execution

The L^AT_EX command `\tracingall` (inherited from plain T_EX) is available to turn on full tracing. L^AT_EX added `\tracingnone` to turn tracing off again without requiring grouping. There are, however, some problems with this kind of tracing because it turns on all tracing levels, and some parts of L^AT_EX produce enormous amounts of tracing data that is of little or no interest for the problem at hand.

For example, if L^AT_EX has to load a new font, it enters some internal routines of NFSS that scan font definition tables and perform other activities. And 99.9% of the time you are not at all interested in that part of the processing, but just in the two lines before and the five lines after it. Nevertheless, you have to scan through a few hundred lines of output and try to locate the lines you need (if you can find them).

Another example is a statement such as `\setlength\linewidth{1cm}`. With standard L^AT_EX this gives five lines of tracing output. With the `calc` package loaded, however, it results in about sixty lines of tracing data — probably not what you expected and not really helpful unless you try to debug the `calc` parsing routines (which ideally should not need debugging).

To solve this problem, the `trace` package defines a pair of commands, `\traceon` and `\traceoff`, that behave like `\tracingall` and `\tracingnone` except that they selectively turn tracing on and off based on what is being processed.

Another difference between `\traceon` and `\tracingall` is that the latter always displays the tracing information on the terminal, whereas `\traceon` can be directed to write only to the transcript file if you specify the option `logonly`. This is useful when writing to the terminal is very slow (e.g., if running in a shell buffer inside `emacs`).

The `trace` package has a number of internal commands for temporarily disabling tracing. It redefines the most verbose internal \TeX functions so that tracing is turned off while they are executing. For example, the function to load new fonts is handled in this way. If a document starts with the two formulas

```
$a \neq b$    \small $A = \mathcal{A}$
```

then \TeX loads 22 new fonts¹ at this point. Using standard `\tracingall` on that line results in roughly 7500 lines of terminal output. On the other hand, if `\traceon` is used, only 350 lines are produced (mainly from tracing `\small`).

The commands for which tracing is turned off are few and are unlikely to relate to the problem at hand. However, if you need full tracing, you can either use `\tracingall` or specify the `full` option. In the latter case, `\traceon` traces everything, but you can still direct its output exclusively to the transcript file.

¹You can verify this with the `loading` option of the `tracefmt` package.

APPENDIX C

Going Beyond

C.1 Learn \LaTeX — A \LaTeX online course for beginners	784
C.2 Finding information available on your computer	785
C.3 Accessing online information and getting help	787
C.4 Getting all those \TeX files.	789
C.5 Giving back to the community	792

While we certainly hope that your questions have been answered in this book, we know that this cannot be the case for all questions. This appendix tries to help in that unfortunate case.

The first section deals with the fundamental problem that our book (despite being rather large) is not meant for beginners. To make good use of it, you already need some basic knowledge of \LaTeX . If this is missing, then there is a great online course to teach you the foundations.

For questions related to specific packages discussed in the book, it can be helpful to read the original documentation provided with the package. Appendix C.2 suggests ways to find that documentation on your system.

Appendix C.3 then shares how to find online information to research questions that you may have, and how to interact with people in the \TeX community when you experience problems.

This is followed in C.4 by explaining how best to obtain \LaTeX packages that are missing on your installation. It also gives a brief overview of \TeX distributions and \LaTeX services in the cloud.

The final section talks about the community itself and how you can join it to make a difference and keep the ship afloat.

C.1 Learn L^AT_EX — A L^AT_EX online course for beginners

*Worry-free
experimentation in
a browser*

If you are new to L^AT_EX and picked up this book hoping that it also covers the L^AT_EX basics (which it understandably does not, if you look at the current page number) or if you need to refresh your memory on the basics, we recommend that you take a look at the Learn L^AT_EX website at <https://learnlatex.org>, which offers a great online course, teaching you the fundamentals and allowing you to experiment with L^AT_EX online — even without installing the system locally.

*Available in several
languages*

The Learn L^AT_EX project was born out of the desire to provide any easy-to-access approach for L^AT_EX beginners. The site has been designed and implemented by members of the L^AT_EX Project Team, primarily by David Carlisle and Joseph Wright, as well as a larger group of volunteers who helped shape the content and did a marvelous job of translating it to several languages so that the full course is now available in Catalan, English, Español, French, German, Marathi, Portuguese, and Vietnamese — and, who knows — soon perhaps additional languages.

*18 lessons to get
you going*

The curriculum consists of eighteen easy-to-consume lessons with interactive examples and exercises that can be processed and modified (!) in the browser, covering the basics that you need to get started with L^AT_EX and that underpin all the information provided in the current book. The central idea of the site is to get people started with one of the most common L^AT_EX tasks: write some academic document such as an article or report. The topics start with simple L^AT_EX structure, cover things such as including images or building tables, and move on to longer documents and bibliographies. Typesetting mathematics is clearly a core L^AT_EX strength, but here the course remains deliberately lightweight and touches on only a few concepts; it is enough to get you going but certainly not enough to write a complex math paper — the thoughts being that details like those covered in Chapter 11 are better mastered in a second step.

*... more on each
topic*

Each lesson comes with an extra “More on this topic” page that can be bypassed when working through the course for the first time but that offers additional details if you are interested in a particular topic. For example, the lesson on tables focuses on the array package as the fundamental extension to L^AT_EX’s basic tabular environment and explains the main concepts such as the different kinds of column specifiers, how to add rules, and how to merge cells. The “More on this topic” page then goes into styling columns with the help of specifiers, manipulating space between columns, or producing customized rules and much more.

*Recommend this to
new users*

Being closely linked with the L^AT_EX Project Team that maintains and develops L^AT_EX for you, the site is expected to stay up-to-date (in contrast to many other sites sprinkled across the Internet that have been set up with good intentions, but which then sadly declined in quality over the years). By offering a couple of ways to process the examples online (or off-line because the examples are plain text that is easily copied) and by presenting the course in several languages, it provides a low-barrier introduction to learning L^AT_EX. As it stands, it is a great resource for starting with L^AT_EX, and even if you personally have no need for it at your level of experience, it may be good to take a look and see how it functions. There may be a need to convince a colleague or friend to take the first steps with L^AT_EX, and this site may just convince them that L^AT_EX is not too hard to learn and worth the trouble — and for the rest there are books like the one you are currently holding in your hands.

C.2 Finding information available on your computer

When you want to use a \LaTeX package, it would be nice if you could study the documentation without having to remember where the relevant files are located on your \TeX system. Two important command-line tools exist to help you in your search: `kpsewhich` and `texdoc`. The first is most important if you want to study code, while the second helps you to easily find available documentation in your distribution.

C.2.1 `kpsewhich` — Find files the way \TeX does

When \TeX loads files (at least those loaded with `\input` or similar), it uses a special search library named `kpathsea` by Karl Berry that determines where to look and which file to load in case there is more than one with the same name.

The file name loaded is written into the `.log` file so you can find out what was loaded there, but this is not necessarily the most convenient way given that the transcript file contains a lot of other information. It also would not help if you ask yourself the question “which `array.sty` would \LaTeX load if I use `\usepackage{array}`?” unless you first make a test file, run it through \LaTeX , and then look at the transcript.

To help with this, the library is also available as the standalone command-line tool `kpsewhich`. In most cases it is enough to pass it the name of the file you are interested in, e.g., `kpsewhich array.sty`, and it responds with the full path for the file:

```
/usr/local/texlive/2022/texmf-dist/tex/latex/tools/array.sty
```

You can load it into your editor if you want to look at the code. You can also call `kpsewhich` with the option `-all`, in which case it returns

```
/usr/local/texlive/2022/texmf-dist/tex/latex/tools/array.sty
/usr/local/texlive/2022/texmf-dist/tex/latex-dev/tools/array.sty
```

i.e., all files with that name that it knows about.

You may wonder when (if ever) the other files are used by \LaTeX . The answer is it depends on the program name used for running \LaTeX . For example, if you use any of the development formats, e.g., `pdflatex-dev`, the `array` package from the `latex-dev` directory is used, because the search library has different search rules based on the program that is initiating the search. To mimic that with `kpsewhich`, pass it the option `-progrname=<prog>`, and you get the result that would be returned to `<prog>` for the search:

```
kpsewhich -progrname=pdfplatex-dev array.sty
```

would return

```
/usr/local/texlive/2022/texmf-dist/tex/latex-dev/tools/array.sty
```

i.e., the package version for the next \LaTeX release.

If you want to find out where the \LaTeX format file resides that is used by \LaTeX , it is not enough to just specify the name of the format file. You also have to tell `kpsewhich` which engine is loading it, using the option `-engine=<engine>`. Possible engine names are `pdftex`, `xetex`, or `luahtex`. Together with the `-all` option, this is a great help if you receive a “Mismatched LaTeX support files” error; see page 730.

The program offers several other options; a list can be obtained with `-help`, but most of them are needed only for developers who set up a \TeX distribution. The one that may be of interest occasionally is `-debug=32`. This produces detailed tracing output about how `kpsewhich` does its search and where it looks, which can be helpful if \LaTeX seems to be unable to find a file that you know is on your system. The `-debug` option can be given other numeric values to show other aspects of its behavior. For details on that and other features of \TeX ’s search library, take a look at the documentation with `texdoc kpathsea`.

C.2.2 `texdoc`—A command-line interface to local \TeX information

The `texdoc` program has a long history: it started out as a Unix shell script developed in the early nineties by Thomas Esser. The first Lua-based version was then written by Frank Küster with contributions by Reinhard Kotucha. It offered some operating system independence, because Lua, through `LuaTeX`, is available with any \TeX (decent) distribution without the need to install separate programs.

Today’s greatly enhanced version is developed and maintained by Manuel Pégourié-Gonnard and ASAKURA Takuto and the \TeX Live team.

Initially you had to know the exact name of the documentation except for the file extension, so it was quite similar to `kpsewhich` in that regard. The current implementation, however, has a much more general search mechanism that accounts for the fact that many developers use schemes such as `package-doc.pdf`, `package-manual.pdf`, etc., for their documentation. It also has an alias mechanism through which individual documentation files can be associated with some keyword(s) people are likely to search for. For example, the file `interface3.pdf` (the interface documentation for the L3 programming layer) is one of the results if you search for `expl3`. This is managed through a configuration file that is part of the \TeX distribution and regularly updated. You can also have your own configuration file as explained in the program documentation.

Most of the time all you have to do is to pass `texdoc` the name of a package as an argument, e.g., `texdoc fewerfloatpages`, and it replies by opening the (what it thinks) best result in a suitable viewer for you; in this case it would open the file `fewerfloatpages-doc.pdf`.

If this turns out not to be the documentation you have been looking for, your next possibility is to use it with the option `-l`. If you do that, it replies with a list of “useful” documentation files based on your input, and you can then choose one of them to be opened. For example, `texdoc -l array` would return five results: the official package documentation, the (possibly updated) version in the \LaTeX development release, as well as a French translation of the package documentation.

If that is still not what you want, you can use `-s` instead. In that case `texdoc` returns all files it has found, even those that it considered to be a bad match. For

Opening the best result for viewing

Getting a list of “good” results to choose from

Getting a list of “all” results

example, in the case of `array`, you would then get 93 possibilities listed, among them many that have your keyword `array` as part of the name but also some that do not.

There is also the option `-m` (for mixed). It works like `-l`, but if only one result is found, then it opens that immediately for viewing instead of presenting you with a choice list with only one item. The `texdoc` program has a few more options that are helpful only in special circumstances and are not described here. If you want to learn about them, you have to read the program documentation, which you can do by — surprise — executing `texdoc texdoc`.

Using mixed mode

C.3 Accessing online information and getting help

There is a wealth of information available on the Internet, but unfortunately even with good search engines this is not always easy to find nor is it always easy to distinguish good advice from bad. To help you with both, we have selected a few different resources that we think are helpful. Obviously there are several others that are equally good — all we want to express here is that the selection forms a good and reliable starting point for getting your questions answered.

C.3.1 `texdoc.org` — searchable documentation on the Web

The website <https://texdoc.org> works similarly to the `texdoc` utility. It allows you to search for documentation just like you would do with `texdoc`'s `-l` and then choose from among the results, but instead of the command line you use a browser. This is useful if you prefer working with a GUI instead of the command line or if you have installed only a small distribution where a lot of interesting packages are excluded. By using the topic search, this enables you to find material that is not locally available. See also the CTAN catalogue that offers a similar functionality.

C.3.2 Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) resources

Very valuable resources are the existing Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) documents. The most important one is probably the \TeX FAQ, available online at <https://texfaq.org>. It is the successor of the UK-TUG FAQ by Robin Fairbairns (1947–2022) and now curated by members of the \LaTeX Project Team, with contributions from a very wide range of other \TeX experts over many years, so it is likely to be reasonably current and accurate.¹

There is also a great document named `visualFAQ.pdf` by Scott Pakin that offers a visual entry point to the \TeX FAQ. It is an innovative new search interface that presents more than a hundred typeset samples of frequently requested document formatting. Any point of interest is marked with a rectangular box (green for tasks you might want to achieve and red for visual errors you might encounter), and clicking on any of them opens the corresponding FAQ entry in the \TeX FAQ. Given that it is more

¹ If you search the Internet, you are likely to come across other FAQ documents on \TeX and \LaTeX in different languages. However, be aware that some of them are no longer maintained and thus are likely to give advice that is a decade or more out of date.

than thirty pages long, it covers a huge number of samples, but of course this also means that it might take you a while to locate one. The document is likely to be part of your installation; try `texdoc visualFAQ`. If not, you can download it from CTAN.

French version

A translation of this document into French by J  r  my Just is also available under the name `visualFAQ-fr.pdf`. The links it contains point to the French FAQ site (<https://faq.gutenberg.eu.org>), which is maintained by GUTenberg — the French-speaking T  X users group.

C.3.3 Using news groups and forums

*News groups on
T  X and L  T  X*

If precomposed answers are not enough, then there are several news groups and, more importantly, forums that are devoted to general T  X and L  T  X questions. In the past the news groups such as `news://comp.text.tex` have been the premier place to go to and ask questions, but they are now less important for this. If you look at the postings in those groups, most of them are now announcements, intermixed with one or the other thread discussing a question.

*Question and
answer forums on
T  X and L  T  X*

More important therefore are the various forums devoted to T  X and L  T  X: at <https://latex.net/about/> several national and international ones are listed, among them `latex.org` (international), `TeXwelt.de` (German), or `TeXnique.fr` (French). Another recent one is TopAnswers at <https://topanswers.xyz/tex>. Perhaps the most popular one right now is the StackExchange forum on T  X, which you can reach at <https://tex.stackexchange.com>.

In contrast to news groups that also carry announcements and other items of potential short-lived interest, such forums are meant to be a permanent record of problems and their answers. They are therefore usually easy to search and a good place to see if the problem you have has already been raised by others and already has a good answer. So please always search first to avoid asking the same question over and over again, because this wastes everybody else's time. Doing a search engine search normally works well too because the bigger forums such as StackExchange's T  X forum are regularly and often, or even instantly, indexed.

Many of the authors mentioned in this book are regular contributors on forums (or news groups) and help with answering questions and requests. Thus, there is a vast amount of helpful material on the Web that can be conveniently searched using any search engine that indexes news entries.

*How to ask questions
in a smart way*

If you post to any of these news groups or to forums such as StackExchange, please adhere to basic netiquette. The community is friendly but sometimes direct and expects you to have done some research of your own first (e.g., read the FAQ first and search the archived news and questions) and not ask questions that have been answered several hundred times before. You should perhaps read Eric Raymond's "How To Ask Questions The Smart Way", available at <http://www.catb.org/~esr/faqs/smart-questions.html>, as a starter. Also, if applicable, provide a minimal and usable example of your problem (often referred to as an MWE¹) that allows others

¹This stands for "Minimal Working Example", and the stress is on all three words: "Minimal" means you should not just copy a huge file, just because it was the one failing, but condense it so that it contains only what is absolutely needed to show the problem; "Working" means that it should

to easily reproduce the symptoms you experience — this saves others time and might get you a faster and probably more pertinent reply.

Most of the forums allow you to mark an answer as the one that solved your problem. Be courteous and mark it as such if that is the case. It helps others having the same problem, and it always shows that you appreciate the effort somebody else has put into helping you. If there are several useful answers, upvote them all even if you can mark only one as the “correct” solution.

C.3.4 The L^AT_EX Project’s web presence

The L^AT_EX Project Team (i.e., the people who took over from Leslie Lamport, produced L^AT_EX 2_ε, and since then maintained and developed L^AT_EX for you) have an official website that gives pertinent information about L^AT_EX, lists important announcements of upcoming releases and improvements, holds the L^AT_EX newsletters, and hosts a larger collection of the team’s research papers written over the last decades. Keeping a tab on these resources, e.g., by subscribing to the news feed on the page (do not worry, it is low volume, maybe a dozen or so posts per year), helps you to learn about new developments and upcoming features that L^AT_EX is going to offer. You can find the website at <https://latex-project.org> if you have not come across it already.

*Getting news from
the L^AT_EX Project
Team*

The sources for L^AT_EX are hosted on GitHub at <https://github.com/latex3/latex2e> — there releases are built (both the development releases with code for the next major release, as well as the main releases that are done about twice per year). From there they get shipped to CTAN, stored there, and then within a few days make their way into the major T_EX distributions (e.g., T_EX Live or MiK_T_EX), and if you have automatic updates enabled, they appear instantly at your desktop. If not, they appear the next time you update manually.

*The ultimate home
of the L^AT_EX sources*

C.4 Getting all those T_EX files

In contrast to the early days of L^AT_EX, it is nowadays rather easy to get a complete T_EX distribution installed including an update service that fetches missing or changed packages from the Internet and installs them for you. This section therefore only briefly touches on the underlying foundation, the Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network, and the major distributions available.

C.4.1 CTAN — The Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network

The Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network (CTAN for short) is a collaborative effort initiated in 1992 by the T_EX Users Group Technical Working Group on T_EX Archive Guidelines originally coordinated by George Greenwade (1956–2003), building on the earlier work of Peter Abbott (see [60] for the historical background). For a long

compile on its own, e.g., do not expect that the preamble is not important or that it is just enough to show a snippet of the part that is failing; and finally “Example” means it should really be an example of what you are asking about — surprisingly that is not always the case.

time this network of servers for hosting T_EX-related software was maintained by Jim Hefferon, Robin Fairbairns (1947–2022), and Rainer Schöpf. Its services are now offered through a group of volunteers mainly based in Germany. The servers can be reached at the generic address <https://ctan.org> from which you may get redirected to a suitable mirror near to you.

Its main aim is to provide easy access to up-to-date copies of all versions of T_EX, L^AT_EX, METAFONT, and ancillary programs and their associated files. It is the authoritative source of record for most T_EX distributions; i.e., what you get when installing T_EX Live, MiK_T_EX, etc., is a copy of files stored on CTAN and update procedures of such distributions directly or indirectly obtain package updates from there. Thus, most developers submit their packages to CTAN because that is a fast easy and reliable way to get your packages distributed with all major distributions.


However, CTAN also hosts material that for one or the other reason (licensing questions usually) is not automatically part of the distributions, so it is also a place to obtain material that is available but not distributed by default.

All the data hosted on CTAN are cataloged under a larger number of topics, and there are ways to view them by topic or author as well as search them in other ways. That can be helpful if you are looking for packages addressing a certain aspect or supporting a particular language, etc.

The word “Archive” in “Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network” might be a bit misleading: it is an archive in the sense that it archives the latest versions of packages and so holds, for example, also abandoned and obsolete packages only of interest for historical reasons or for reprocessing very old documents, but it is not a historical archive; i.e., you do not find older versions of software on the archive but only the latest release. It does, however, give you a link to the package author repositories if they provided CTAN with that information (where you then usually can find an older release that can be picked up in an emergency).

C.4.2 T_EX distributions — past and present

There are a number of T_EX distributions for installation on laptops and desktops; the most popular ones are probably T_EX Live, MiK_T_EX, and MacT_EX. The T_EX Live distribution is available for different operating systems, which is rather convenient if you are a user of several ones. MiK_T_EX specifically targets Windows operating systems but now also supports Linux. MacT_EX, as the name suggests, is for computers running macOS. All three distributions use software stored on CTAN as their point of reference, either directly or through a curated process repackaging files in the right way for the distribution.

*Enable updates
but also backups!* 

All distributions allow you to receive updates of packages and files, either automatically (if you set it up) or by initiating the update process manually. Staying current with software is often the right thing to do, but be aware that in the case of a major project being worked on (such as your thesis or a book like the one you are reading right now), you may want to stay with a stable version of all software to avoid unpleasant surprises in the last stage of production because of a change altering, say, the pagination. The distributions (except for MiK_T_EX) also allow you to


store backups of updated packages so that it is easy to revert an update if that ever becomes necessary.¹

The T_EX Live distribution has a major update every year since 1996, and from these distribution releases, CDs and later DVDs have been produced and distributed through the T_EX user groups. The original images can be found on the Internet at <https://www.tug.org/texlive/acquire.html#past> from one of the mirrors listed there. They offer you the possibility of reinstalling an older version of the T_EX distribution, if that ever becomes necessary. For very important projects, such as a book production or a thesis, it may pay off to keep an image from that time next to it to have some level of assurance that you have everything available that was used at the time to reproduce the work. Of course, this gives you only the single snapshot of the distribution at a particular point in time (including the binaries). Given that throughout a year packages typically get updated, you should additionally look at the tools discussed in Section 2.5.2 on page 110 to get the full set of files you used in your project.

Keep images of the distribution if possible

Linux distributions

Most flavors of Linux contain T_EX distributions that can be installed through the package manager of the Linux distribution you use. For a number of reasons these distributions may not use the most current T_EX Live release, and if you use them to install a T_EX distribution, you obtain something that is sometimes years behind a current distribution. For that reason our advice is to forget these native Linux packages, but instead take a current T_EX Live distribution and use that for installation on your system. The installation is fairly straightforward, and if you know how to work the package manager of your Linux system, then following the installation procedures for T_EX Live should pose no difficulties — your reward will be a current and up-to-date T_EX installation.

 *Avoid pre-made Linux packages for T_EX — or at least check that they contain a recent release*

Cloud service installations

In the recent years cloud services such as Overleaf have become popular. They make L^AT_EX available as online installations that allow for easy collaboration between several people, because the documents are stored and processed in the cloud. This also means that everybody is using the same packages on identical release levels (i.e., no issue with one of your colleagues using a different L^AT_EX release than the others), nobody is forced to install a distribution on their computer before starting to collaborate, and you have or can have version control of your documents, and several other goodies. There are, of course, also some downsides, e.g., you are restricted in your editing environment because (by default) you are working in the browser, you may not be able to use cutting-edge package versions, etc., but on the whole they offer a great environment for collaborating and significantly lower the entry barrier to using L^AT_EX.

Under the hood, a service such as the one from Overleaf uses T_EX Live distributions, so all that is described in this book is fully applicable without restriction. This

¹This is seldom needed, but it provides you with a valuable safety net if some update affects your workflow in some unexpected way. Note that this is not offered by MiK_T_EX.

also goes for the advice given above that it is useful to keep a copy of the relevant distribution files as a DVD image together with important documentation projects because that significantly enlarges the chances that your files remain fully processable even after many years.

A simple cloud service without registration

A simpler online service, <https://texlive.net>, has been developed by David Carlisle as part of the Learn \LaTeX project discussed in Appendix C.1. It gives online access to a \TeX Live installation without requiring any login or registration and integrates an online editor. However, it provides no mechanism to save documents, so is suitable only for small examples. By default it uses \LaTeX with the `pdftex` engine, but the engine may be changed via a comment line such as

```
% !TeX lualatex
```

at the top of the document.

C.5 Giving back to the community

Open source software lives from the volunteers who engage in its development and maintenance. In the early days of \TeX , many people using \TeX directly engaged with the developer community or became part of it because using \TeX and \LaTeX meant that you had to work through many obstacles, starting from installation (which was a largely manual step) to finding packages (that were not well organized in one place or automatically showed up at your doorstep by just installing a pre-canned distribution) down to developing your own packages because your problem was not yet solved.

Over time more and more of this got streamlined, installations became simple due to distributions such as \TeX Live [191], central repositories appeared and are well maintained, i.e., CTAN, and over the last decades more and more ready-to-use packages for all kind of tasks were developed — the growing size of this book from edition to edition is a living proof of that.

As a result, the continuing work of volunteers in the background to make this all happen smoothly faded more and more from people's minds, and many users now have no idea that nothing would work if there were not a handful of people spending their free time curating several dozen package updates per day, building new distributions regularly, or maintaining and developing \LaTeX and the many packages out there, etc.

Everything just seems to work and is at your fingertips, whether you are producing your documents on an online platform such as Overleaf or whether you download an installation for your local machine from the Internet. However, it is not quite as simple as that. Developers need resources to successfully do their work, they need a lively community through which they can exchange ideas and get feedback on work being undertaken, and they need appreciation of their work by their users.

There are many ways in which you can help to keep that ship afloat, starting from showing your appreciation after asking for help and receiving it to more substantial ways, such as contributing to one or the other project. All of them are necessary and helpful, and this final short section shows some ways through which you can make a difference.

In the *T_EXbook* [84, app. J] Donald Knuth wrote an appendix called “Joining the T_EX Community”, which is still as relevant as it was forty years ago. Only back then, the benefits of joining a user group and paying a membership fee was obvious to many (because it was the best if not the only way to get in contact with other users and receive help), while today only a few people compared to the user base even know about such groups, let alone think that the user groups offer them any immediate benefit. Immediate — perhaps not, but in the long term most certainly yes for the reasons outlined above, so please consider becoming officially a part of the community and supporting the mission.

There is the international T_EX Users Group (TUG) that publishes a regular journal and organizes conferences at which developers and users meet and interact. You can reach TUG at <https://tug.org>. Membership fees and/or donations to TUG or specific projects are tax-deductible in the United States. There are also several local user groups around the world, mostly based on language affinities, that are doing similar work; a current inventory is provided at <https://tug.org/lugs.html> to help you find one in your local language, but note that some are more active than others.

There is also the possibility of donating to specific projects that are of interest to you or whose work you want to specifically support either through TUG at <https://tug.org/donate> or by supporting individual developers. GitHub, for example, offers a way to sponsor developers with a recurring (smaller or larger) contribution, and besides paying for the coffee or other essentials needed to do night-long work on maintaining or developing software, this is a way of showing appreciation that is valued far higher by most than the actual monetary value.

T_EX User group(s):
TUG,
DANTE,
GUST,
GulT,
Gutenberg,
NTG,
...

*Donations and
sponsoring*



*Drawing by Duane Bibby,
courtesy T_EX Users Group*

This page intentionally left blank

Bibliography

- [1] Adobe Systems Incorporated. Adobe Type 1 Font Format. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1990. ISBN 0-201-57044-0.
The “black” book contains the specifications for Adobe’s Type 1 font format and describes how to create a Type 1 font program. It explains the specifics of the Type 1 syntax (a subset of PostScript), including information on the structure of font programs, ways to specify computer outlines, and the contents of the various font dictionaries. It also covers encryption, subroutines, and hints. https://adobe-type-tools.github.io/font-tech-notes/pdfs/T1_SPEC.pdf
- [2] American Mathematical Society. User’s Guide to AMSFonts Version 2.2d. Providence, Rhode Island, 2002.
This document describes AMSFonts, the American Mathematical Society’s collection of fonts of symbols and several alphabets. <https://www.ctan.org/pkg/amsfonts>
- [3] ———. Using the amsthm Package (Version 2.20.3). Providence, Rhode Island, 2017.
The amsthm package provides an enhanced version of \LaTeX ’s `\newtheorem` command for defining theorem-like environments, recognizing `\theoremstyle` specifications and providing a `proof` environment. <https://www.ams.org/arc/tex/amscls/amsthdoc.pdf>
- [4] ———. AMS Author Handbook (website). Providence, Rhode Island, 2021.
Entry point to documentation and support packages for preparing articles and books for publication with the American Mathematical Society. <https://www.ams.org/arc/handbook/index.html>
- [5] American Mathematical Society and \LaTeX Project. User’s Guide for the `amsmath` Package (Version 2.1), 2020.
The `amsmath` package, developed by the American Mathematical Society, provides many additional features for mathematical typesetting. It is now maintained by the \LaTeX Project team.
Locally available via: `texdoc amsmath`
- [6] American Psychological Association. Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association. APA, 7th edition, 2020.
The official style guide of the American Psychological Association (APA) for the preparation of manuscripts for publication, as well as for writing student papers, dissertations, and theses. <https://apastyle.apa.org/>

- [7] Anonymous. “‘thanks’ note (footnote) placed below right column even though there is enough space on the left”. *StackExchange*, 2012.
An example of a question on a strange footnote placement by L^AT_EX. The answers explains some of the reasons why this can happen. <https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/43294>
- [8] Apple Inc. “TrueType Reference Manual”, 2019.
Apple’s reference manual for the TrueType font format.
<https://developer.apple.com/fonts/TrueType-Reference-Manual>
- [9] Donald Arseneau. *url.sty—Version 3.4*, 2016.
Documentation provided by Robin Fairbairns (1947–2022). Locally available via: `texdoc url`
- [10] Michael Barr. A new diagram package, 2016.
A rewrite of Michael Barr’s original *diagram* package to act as a front end to Rose’s *xypic*; see [55, Chapter 7]. It offers a general arrow-drawing function; various common diagram shapes, such as squares, triangles, cubes, and 3×3 diagrams; small 2-arrows that can be placed anywhere in a diagram; and access to all of *xypic*’s features. Locally available via: `texdoc diagxy`
- [11] Claudio Beccari and Apostolos Syropoulos. “New Greek fonts and the greek option of the babel package”. *TUGboat*, 19(4):419–425, 1998.
Describes a new complete set of Greek fonts and their use in connection with babel’s greek extension.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb19-4/tb61becc.pdf>
- [12] Nelson Beebe. “Bibliography prettyprinting and syntax checking”. *TUGboat*, 14(4):395–419, 1993.
This article describes three software tools for B^WT_EX support: a prettyprinter, syntax checker, and lexical analyzer for B^WT_EX files; collectively called *bibclean*.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb14-4/tb41beebe.pdf>
- [13] Barbara Beeton. “Mathematical symbols and Cyrillic fonts ready for distribution”. *TUGboat*, 6(2):59–63, 1985.
The announcement of the first general release by the American Mathematical Society of the Euler series fonts.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb06-2/tb11beet.pdf>
- [14] Alexander Berdnikov, Olga Lapko, Mikhail Kolodin, Andrew Janishevsky, and Alexei Burykin. “Cyrillic encodings for L^AT_EX 2_ε multi-language documents”. *TUGboat*, 19(4):403–416, 1998.
A description of four encodings designed to support Cyrillic writing systems for the multi-language mode of L^AT_EX 2_ε. The “raw” X2 encoding is a Cyrillic glyph container that allows one to insert into L^AT_EX 2_ε documents text fragments written in any of the languages using a modern Cyrillic writing scheme. The T2A, T2B, and T2C encodings are genuine L^AT_EX 2_ε encodings that may be used in a multi-language setting together with other language encodings.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb19-4/tb61berd.pdf>
- [15] Jens Berger. “The jurabib Package”, 2017.
Manual for the jurabib package, translated to English by Maarten Wisse.
Locally available via: `texdoc jurabib`
- [16] Karl Berry. “Filenames for fonts”. *TUGboat*, 11(4):517–520, 1990.
This article describes the consistent, rational scheme for font file names that was used for at least the next 15 years. Each name consists of up to eight characters (specifying the foundry, typeface name, weight, variant, expansion characteristics, and design size) that identify each font file in a unique way.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb11-4/tb30berry.pdf>
The latest version of this scheme is available at: <https://tug.org/fontname/html/>
- [17] Javier Bezos. The accents Package, 2019.
Miscellaneous tools for mathematical accents: to create faked accents from non-accent symbols, to group accents, and to place accents below glyphs. Locally available via: `texdoc accents`

- [18] ———. Customizing lists with the `enumitem` package, 2019.
Extended and customizable list environments. [Locally available via: `texdoc enumitem`](#)
- [19] Javier Bezos and Johannes Braams. Babel — Localization and internationalization — $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$, $\text{pdf}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$, $\text{X}_{\text{E}}\text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$, Lua $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$, 2023.
The official user manual for Babel, describing how to use it with different flavors of $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$. A second part covers the complete source code documentation. [Locally available via: `texdoc babel`](#)
- [20] Charles Bigelow. “Oh, oh, zero!” *TUGboat*, 34(2):168–181, 2013.
A survey of attempts to make “O”, “0”, and similar look-alike characters distinguishable in historical and modern typography.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb34-2/tb107bigelow-zero.pdf>
- [21] ———. “About the DK versions of Lucida”. *TUGboat*, 36(3):191–199, 2015.
A description of the design of the Lucida DK fonts and their history, developed as a response to [98].
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb36-3/tb114bigelow.pdf>
- [22] The *Bluebook*: A Uniform System of Citation. The Harvard Law Review Association, Cambridge, MA, 21st edition, 2020. ISBN 978-0-578-66615-0.
The *Bluebook* contains three major parts: part 1 details general standards of citation and style to be used in legal writing; part 2 presents specific rules of citation for cases, statutes, books, periodicals, foreign materials, and international materials; and part 3 consists of a series of tables showing, among other things, which authority to cite and how to abbreviate properly.
[Can be ordered at: https://www.legalbluebook.com](https://www.legalbluebook.com)
- [23] Johannes Braams. “Babel, a multilingual style-option system for use with $\text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ ’s standard document styles”. *TUGboat*, 12(2):291–301, 1991.
The babel package was originally a collection of document-style options to support different languages. An update was published in *TUGboat*, 14(1):60–62, April 1993.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb12-2/tb32braa.pdf>
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb14-1/tb38braa.pdf>
- [24] Peter Breitenlohner et al. “The $\text{eT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ manual (version 2)”, 1998.
The current manual for the $\text{eT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ system, which extends the capabilities of $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ while retaining compatibility. While the $\text{eT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ engine is considered obsolete these days, its extensions have been implemented in all major modern systems and $\text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ expects them to be available. Thus, the documentation remains relevant. [Locally available via: `texdoc etex`](#)
- [25] Robert Bringhurst. The elements of typographic style (20th Anniversary edition). Hartley & Marks Publishers, Point Roberts, WA, USA, and Vancouver, BC, Canada, 4th edition, 2013. ISBN 0-88179-212-8 (hardcover).
A very well-written book on typography with a focus on the proper use of typefaces.
- [26] ———. Palatino — The Natural History of a Typeface. David R. Godine, Publisher, Boston, 2016. ISBN 978-1-56792-572-2.
Palatino is one of the most widely used typefaces today. Designed by Hermann Zapf (1918–2015), it has been used as a model for many other typefaces. This book discusses its evolution and history and is a fascinating read if you are interested in type design.
- [27] Bureau International des Poids et Mesures. SI Brochure: The International System of Units (SI), 9th edition, 2019.
The 9th edition of the brochure explaining and promoting the International System of Units (SI) — the preferred system of units for science, technology, industry and trade. Available in English and French.
<https://www.bipm.org/en/publications/si-brochure/>

- [28] Judith Butcher, Caroline Drake, and Maureen Leach. *Butcher's Copy-editing: The Cambridge Handbook for Editors, Copy-editors and Proofreaders*. Cambridge University Press, New York, forth edition, 2006. ISBN 0-521-40074-0.
A reference guide for all those involved in the process of preparing typescripts and illustrations for printing and publication. The book covers all aspects of the editorial process, from the basics of how to mark a typescript for the designer and the typesetter, through the ground rules of house style and consistency, to how to read and correct proofs.
- [29] Florian Cajori. *A History of Mathematical Notations*. Dover Publications, New York, 1993. ISBN 978-0-486-67766-8.
This classic book on mathematical notations, originally published in two volumes in 1928-1929, devotes a full chapter to several numeral systems from antiquity, including Greek.
- [30] David Carlisle. "A \LaTeX tour, Part 1: The basic distribution". *TUGboat*, 17(1):67-73, 1996.
A "guided tour" around the files in the basic \LaTeX distribution. File names and paths relate to the file hierarchy of the CTAN archives. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb17-1/tb50carl.pdf>
- [31] ———. "A \LaTeX tour, Part 2: The tools and graphics distributions". *TUGboat*, 17(3):321-326, 1996.
A "guided tour" around the "tools" and "graphics" packages. Note that *The Manual* [106] assumes that at least the graphics distribution is available with standard \LaTeX .
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb17-3/tb52carl.pdf>
- [32] ———. "A \LaTeX tour, Part 3: mfnfss, psnfss and babel". *TUGboat*, 18(1):48-55, 1997.
A "guided tour" through three more distributions that are part of the standard \LaTeX system. The mfnfss distribution provides \LaTeX support for some popular METAFONT-produced fonts that do not otherwise have any \LaTeX interface. The psnfss distribution consists of \LaTeX packages giving access to PostScript fonts. The babel distribution provides \LaTeX with multilingual capabilities.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb18-1/tb54carl.pdf>
- [33] ———. "XMLTEX: A non validating (and not 100% conforming) namespace aware XML parser implemented in \TeX ". *TUGboat*, 21(3):193-199, 2000.
XMLTEX is an XML parser and typesetter implemented in \TeX , which by default uses the \LaTeX kernel to provide typesetting functionality. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb21-3/tb68carl.pdf>
- [34] David Carlisle, editor. *Mathematical Markup Language (MathML) Version 4.0*. W3C, 1st edition, 2023.
This is the draft specification for a new version of the Mathematical Markup Language; the current version is 3.0 [35]. MathML4 extensions primarily relate to improving accessibility, with new attributes for improving audio rendering. <https://www.w3.org/TR/mathml4/>
- [35] David Carlisle, Patrick Ion, and Robert Miner, editors. *Mathematical Markup Language (MathML) Version 3.0*. W3C, 2nd edition, 2014.
This is the current specification defining the Mathematical Markup Language; the upcoming version will be [34]. MathML is an XML vocabulary for mathematics, designed for use in browsers and as a communication language between computer algebra systems. The goal of MathML is to enable mathematics to be served, received, and processed on the World Wide Web, just as HTML has enabled this functionality for text. <https://www.w3.org/TR/MathML3/>
- [36] David Carlisle, Patrick Ion, Robert Miner, and Nico Poppelier, editors. *Mathematical Markup Language (MathML) Version 2.0*. W3C, 2nd edition, 2003.
This is the previous version of the MathML standard [35]. <https://www.w3.org/TR/MathML2/>

- [37] David Carlisle, Chris Rowley, and Frank Mittelbach. “The \LaTeX 3 Programming Language—a proposed system for \TeX macro programming”. *TUGboat*, 18(4):303–308, 1997.
Initial proposals for a radically new syntax and software tools. Most of them are now part of the \LaTeX format as the L3 programming layer. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb18-4/tb57row1.pdf>
- [38] Jean Pierre Casteleyn. *Visual TikZ*, 2019.
A great resource with hundreds of examples, structured by topic, enabling you to find and apply necessary key combinations rather easily. [Locally available via: `texdoc visualtikz`](#)
- [39] Pehong Chen and Michael A. Harrison. “Index preparation and processing”. *Software — Practice and Experience*, 19(9):897–915, 1988.
The original description of the *MakeIndex* system. <https://ctan.org/pkg/makeindex>
- [40] The Chicago Manual of Style. University of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL, USA, 17th edition, 2017. ISBN 978-0-226-28705-8.
The standard U.S. publishing style reference for authors and editors. <https://www.chicagomanualofstyle.org>
- [41] Comprehensive \TeX archive network (CTAN). “Topic page on tikz”.
Links to CTAN’s resources for the tikz universe. <https://www.ctan.org/topic/pgf-tikz>
- [42] Carl Dair. *Design with Type*. University of Toronto Press, Toronto, Ontario, Canada, 1967. ISBN 0-8020-1426-7 (hardcover), 0-8020-6519-8 (paperback).
Published in the year of Dair’s death, this book is a classic and a good survey of traditional typography with many useful rules of thumb. There was a reprint in 1982, which is still available.
- [43] Ioannis Dimakos and Dimitrios Filippou. “Twenty-five years of Greek \TeX ing”. *Eutypou*, 32–33:25–34, 2014.
An overview about available tools (fonts, systems, etc.) for typesetting Greek texts with \TeX / \LaTeX . <https://ctan.org/tex-archive/info/greek/greekinfo3>
- [44] Michael Downes. “Breaking equations”. *TUGboat*, 18(3):182–194, 1997.
 \TeX is not very good at displaying equations that must be broken into multiple lines. The `breqn` package eliminates many of the most significant problems by supporting automatic line breaking of displayed equations. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb18-3/tb56down.pdf>
- [45] ———. “The `amsrefs` \LaTeX package and the `amsxport` Bib \TeX style”. *TUGboat*, 21(3):201–209, 2000.
Bibliography entries using the `amsrefs` format provide a rich internal structure and high-level markup close to that traditionally found in Bib \TeX database files. On top of that, using `amsrefs` markup lets you specify the bibliography style completely in a \LaTeX document class file. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb21-3/tb68down.pdf>
- [46] Michael Downes, Høgholm, and Will Robertson. *The breqn package*, 2021.
A package initially developed by Michael Downes (1958–2003) for automatically breaking display equations into several lines [44]. Continued after Michael’s death by Morten Høgholm and Will Robertson. [Locally available via: `texdoc breqn`](#)
- [47] Olaf Drümmer and Bettina Chang. *PDF/UA in a Nutshell — Accessible documents with Portable Document Format (PDF)*. PDF Association, 2013.
A nice introduction to the ISO standard 14289-1 for universal accessibility, also known as PDF/UA [190]. It provides key facts, e.g., the requirements of the standard, the current legal situation, etc. <https://pdfa.org/resource/pdfua-in-a-nutshell/>

- [48] Dudenredaktion, editor. Die deutsche Rechtschreibung. Dudenverlag, Berlin, 28th edition, 2020. ISBN 978-3-411-04018-6.
The standard reference for the correct spelling of all words of contemporary German and for hyphenation rules, with examples and explanations for difficult cases, and a comparison of the old and new orthographic rules.
- [49] Victor Eijkhout. *T_EX by Topic, A T_EXnician's Reference*. Lehmanns Media, Berlin, 2014. ISBN 978-3-86541-590-5. Reprint with corrections. Initially published in 1991 by Addison-Wesley. Also available free of charge from the author in PDF format.
A systematic reference manual for the experienced T_EX user. The book offers a comprehensive treatment of every aspect of T_EX (not L^AT_EX!), with detailed explanations of the mechanisms underlying T_EX's working, as well as numerous examples of T_EX programming techniques.
<https://eijkhout.net/tex/tex-by-topic.html>
- [50] FUJITA Shinsaku and NOBUYA Tanaka. “X_YM_TE_X (Version 2.00) as implementation of the X_YM notation and the X_YM markup language”. *TUGboat*, 21(1):7–14, 2000.
A description of version 2 of the X_YM_TE_X system, which can be regarded as a linear notation system expressed in T_EX macros that corresponds to the IUPAC (International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry) nomenclature. It provides a convenient method for drawing complicated structural formulas.
<http://tug.org/TUGboat/tb21-1/tb66fuji.pdf>
- [51] ———. “Size reduction of chemical structural formulas in X_YM_TE_X (Version 3.00)”. *TUGboat*, 22(4):285–289, 2001.
Further improvements to the X_YM_TE_X system, in particular in the area of size reduction of structural formulas.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb22-4/tb72fuji.pdf>
- [52] FUKUI Rei. “TIPA: A system for processing phonetic symbols in L^AT_EX”. *TUGboat*, 17(2):102–114, 1996.
TIPA is a system for processing symbols of the International Phonetic Alphabet with L^AT_EX. It introduces a new encoding for phonetic symbols (T3), which includes all the symbols and diacritics found in the recent versions of IPA as well as some non-IPA symbols. It has full support for L^AT_EX 2_ε and offers an easy input method in the IPA environment.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb17-2/tb51rei.pdf>
- [53] Maarten Gelderman. “A short introduction to font characteristics”. *TUGboat*, 20(2):96–104, 1999.
This paper provides a description of the main aspects used to describe a font, its basic characteristics, elementary numerical dimensions to access properties of a typeface design, and the notion of “contrast”.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb20-2/tb63geld.pdf>
- [54] Norbert Golluch. *Kleinweich Büro auf Schlabberscheiben — Technisches Deutsch für Anfänger*. Eichborn, Frankfurt, 1999.
As the title indicates, a booklet with funny but incorrect translations of IT terms to German.
- [55] Michel Goossens, Frank Mittelbach, Sebastian Rahtz, Denis Roegel, and Herbert Voß. *The L^AT_EX Graphics Companion*. Lehmanns Media, Köln, 2nd edition, 2022. ISBN 978-3-96543-303-8 (softcover), 978-3-96543-299-4 (ebook).
Reprint of the 2nd edition originally published by Addison-Wesley in the Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting series.
The book describes all aspects of generating and manipulating graphical material in L^AT_EX, including an in-depth coverage of pstricks, METAFONT and METAPOST, xcolor, xy, etc., as well as a thorough overview about applications in science, technology, medicine, gaming, and musical notation.

- [56] Michel Goossens, Frank Mittelbach, and Alexander Samarin. *The L^AT_EX Companion. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1994. ISBN 0-201-54199-8.
The first edition of this book. The second edition [145] was published ten years later in 2004.
- [57] Michel Goossens and Sebastian Rahtz. *The L^AT_EX Web Companion: Integrating T_EX, HTML, and XML. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1999. ISBN 0-201-43311-7. With Eitan M. Gurari, Ross Moore, and Robert S. Sutor.
This book teaches (scientific) authors how to publish on the Web or other hypertext presentation systems, building on their experience with L^AT_EX and taking into account their specific needs in fields such as mathematics, non-European languages, and algorithmic graphics. The book explains how to make full use of the Adobe Acrobat format from L^AT_EX, convert legacy documents to HTML or XML, make use of math in Web applications, use L^AT_EX as a tool in preparing Web pages, read and write simple XML/SGML, and produce high-quality printed pages from Web-hosted XML or HTML pages using T_EX or PDF.
- [58] Ronald L. Graham, Donald E. Knuth, and Oren Patashnik. *Concrete Mathematics*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 2nd edition, 1994. ISBN 0-201-55802-5.
A mathematics textbook prepared with T_EX using the Concrete Roman typeface; see also [94].
- [59] George Grätzer. *More Math Into LaTeX*. Springer International Publishing, Cham, Switzerland, 5th edition, 2016. ISBN 3-319-23795-0.
Provides a general introduction to L^AT_EX as used to prepare mathematical books and articles. Covers AMS document classes and packages in addition to the basic L^AT_EX offerings.
- [60] George D. Greenwade. “The Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network (CTAN)”. *TUGboat*, 14(3):342–351, 1993.
An outline of the conception, development, and early use of the CTAN archive, which makes all T_EX-related files available on the network. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb14-3/tb40green.pdf>
- [61] Hàn Thế Thành. “Improving T_EX’s typeset layout”. *TUGboat*, 19(3):284–288, 1998.
This attempt to improve T_EX’s typeset layout is based on the adjustment of interword spacing after the paragraphs have been broken into lines. Instead of changing only the interword spacing to justify text lines, fonts on the line are also slightly expanded to minimize excessive stretching of the interword spaces. This font expansion is implemented using horizontal scaling in PDF. By using such expansion conservatively, and by employing appropriate settings for T_EX’s line-breaking and spacing parameters, this method can improve the appearance of T_EX’s typeset layout. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb19-3/tb60than.pdf>
- [62] ———. “Micro-typographic extensions to the T_EX typesetting system”. *TUGboat*, 21(4):317–434, 2000.
Doctoral dissertation at the Faculty of Informatics, Masaryk University, Brno, Czech Republic, October 2000. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb21-4/tb69thanh.pdf>
- [63] ———. “Margin kerning and font expansion with pdfT_EX”. *TUGboat*, 22(3):146–148, 2001.
“Margin kerning” adjusts the positions of the primary and final glyphs in a line of text to make the margins “look straight”. “Font expansion” uses a slightly wider or narrower variant of a font to make interword spacing more even. These techniques are explained with the help of examples. For a detailed explanation of the concepts, see [62]. This feature was used in the preparation of this book. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb22-3/tb72thanh.pdf>

- [64] ———. “Font-specific issues in pdfTeX”. *TUGboat*, 29(1):36–41, 2008.
Overview article on font-specific problems and (possible) solutions. In parts related to challenges posed in [128]. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/tb29-1/tb91thanh-fonts.pdf>
- [65] Hàn Thế Thành and Sebastian Rahtz. “The pdfTeX user manual”. *TUGboat*, 18(4):249–254, 1997.
User manual for the pdfTeX system, which extends TeX to generate PDF directly and provides various micro-typographic extensions; see [61–64].
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb18-4/tb57than.pdf>
Current version at: <https://ctan.org/pkg/pdftex>
- [66] Yannis Haralambous. “Typesetting old German: Fraktur, Schwabacher, Gotisch and initials”. *TUGboat*, 12(1):129–138, 1991.
Demonstrates the use of METAFONT to re-create faithful copies of oldstyle typefaces and explains the rules for typesetting using these types, with examples.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb12-1/tb31hara.pdf>
- [67] ———. *Fonts & Encodings*. O’Reilly Media, Sebastopol, CA, 2007. ISBN 0-596-10242-9.
An extensive treatment of the subject in the Unicode world, including information on TeX at the time of publication; still relevant for the most part.
- [68] Horace Hart. *Hart’s Rules; For Compositors and Readers at the University Press, Oxford*. Oxford University Press, London, Oxford, New York, 39th edition, 1991. ISBN 0-19-212983-X.
A widely used U.K. reference for authors and editors. With the *Oxford Dictionary for Writers and Editors* it presents the canonical house style of the Oxford University Press. See also [169].
- [69] Jobst Hoffmann, Moses Brooks, and Carsten Heinz. *The Listings Package*, 2020.
A comprehensive manual on pretty-printing source code in various languages.
Locally available via: [texdoc listings](#)
- [70] Morten Høgholm and the L^AT_EX Project Team. *The xfrac package: Split-level fractions*, 2023.
One of the first packages to use the L3 programming layer, even before it was integrated in the L^AT_EX format.
Locally available via: [texdoc xfrac](#)
- [71] Jean-Michel Huppen. “Typographie: les conventions, la tradition, les goûts, . . . , et L^AT_EX”. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 35–36:169–214, 2000.
This article shows that learning typographic rules—even considering those for French and English together—is not all that difficult. It also teaches the basics of using the L^AT_EX packages *french* (for French only) and *babel* (allowing a homogeneous treatment of most other languages). Finally, the author shows how to build a new multilingual document class and bibliography style.
<http://www.numdam.org/journals/CG>
- [72] “ISO/IEC 8859-1:1998 to ISO/IEC 8859-16:2001, Information technology—8-bit single-byte coded graphic character sets, Parts 1 to 16”. International Standard ISO/IEC 8859, ISO Geneva, 1998–2001.
A description of various 8-bit alphabetic character sets. Parts 1–4, 9, 10, and 13–16 correspond to 10 character sets needed to encode different groups of languages using the Latin alphabet, while part 5 corresponds to Cyrillic, part 6 to Arabic, part 7 to Greek, part 8 to Hebrew, and part 11 to Thai.

- [73] Bogusław Jackowski. “Appendix G illuminated”. *TUGboat*, 27(1):83–90, 2006.
An impressive article explaining TeX’s algorithms for typesetting mathematical formulas with the help of a number of carefully prepared graphics, which show the interaction of various font parameters that influence the placement of sub and superscripts, accents, etc.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb27-1/tb86jackowski.pdf>
- [74] Jakub Jankiewicz. “William Morris Letters”, 2014.
Available from <https://openclipart.org/search/?query=William+Morris+Letter>
- [75] Alan Jeffrey. “Tight setting with TeX”. *TUGboat*, 16(1):78–80, 1995.
Describes some experiments with setting text matter in TeX using Adobe Times, a very tightly spaced text font.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb16-1/tb46jeff.pdf>
- [76] Alan Jeffrey, Rowland McDonnell, and Lars Hellström. “fontinst: Font installation software for TeX”, 2021.
This utility bundle supports the creation of complex virtual fonts in any encoding for use with L^ATeX, particularly from collections of PostScript fonts. Locally available via: [texdoc fontinst](#)
- [77] Palle Jørgensen. “The L^ATeX Font Catalogue”, 2021.
A great online resource for fonts usable with L^ATeX. <https://tug.org/FontCatalogue/>
- [78] Philip Kime and François Charette. biber — A backend bibliography processor for biblatex, 2022.
The official manual for biber with additional documentation not covered in this book. Original implementation by François Charette; maintained and further developed since 2009 by Philip Kime.
Locally available via: [texdoc biber](#)
- [79] Philip Kime, Moritz Wemheuer, and Philipp Lehmann. The biblatex package, 2022.
The official manual for biblatex with additional documentation not covered in this book. Original implementation by Philipp Lehman; maintained and further developed since 2012 by Philip Kime and Moritz Wemheuer.
Locally available via: [texdoc biblatex](#)
- [80] Jörg Knappen. “Release 1.2 of the dc-fonts: Improvements to the European letters and first release of text companion symbols”. *TUGboat*, 16(4):381–387, 1995.
Article of historical interest describing the DC fonts, which were precursors of the EC fonts, which themselves are the default fonts for the T1 encoding of L^ATeX.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb16-4/tb49knap.pdf>
- [81] ———. “The dc fonts 1.3: Move towards stability and completeness”. *TUGboat*, 17(2):99–101, 1996.
A follow-up article to [80]. It explains the progress made in version 1.3 in the areas of stability and completeness.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb17-2/tb51knap.pdf>
- [82] Donald E. Knuth. TeX and METAFONT — New Directions in Typesetting. Digital Press, Bedford, MA, USA, 1979. ISBN 0-932376-02-9.
Contains an article on “Mathematical Typography”, describing the author’s motivation for starting to work on TeX and the early history of computer typesetting. Describes early (now obsolete) versions of TeX and METAFONT.
- [83] ———. “Literate programming”. Report STAN-CS-83-981, Stanford University, Department of Computer Science, Stanford, CA, USA, 1983.
A collection of papers on styles of programming and documentation.
<http://www.literateprogramming.com/articles.html>

- [84] ———. The \TeX book, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986. ISBN 0-201-13447-0. Jubilee 2021 edition, twenty-fifth printing with corrections.
The definitive user's guide and complete reference manual for \TeX . A good secondary reading, covering the same grounds, is [49].
- [85] ———. \TeX : The Program, volume B of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986. ISBN 0-201-13437-3. Jubilee 2021 edition, thirteenth printing with corrections.
The complete source code for the \TeX program, typeset with several indices.
- [86] ———. The METAFONTbook, volume C of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986. ISBN 0-201-13445-4 (hardcover), 0-201-13444-6 (paperback). Jubilee 2021 edition, twelfth printing with corrections.
The user's guide and reference manual for METAFONT, the companion program to \TeX for designing fonts.
- [87] ———. METAFONT: The Program, volume D of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986. ISBN 0-201-13438-1. Jubilee 2021 edition, eleventh printing with corrections.
The complete source code listing of the METAFONT program.
- [88] ———. Computer Modern Typefaces, volume E of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986. ISBN 0-201-13446-2. Jubilee 2021 edition, eleventh printing with corrections.
More than 500 Greek and Roman letterforms, together with punctuation marks, numerals, and many mathematical symbols, are graphically depicted. The METAFONT code to generate each glyph is given and it is explained how, by changing the parameters in the METAFONT code, all characters in the Computer Modern family of typefaces can be obtained.
- [89] ———. 3:16 Bible texts illuminated. A-R Editions, Inc., Madison, Wisconsin, 1990. ISBN 0-89579-252-4.
Analysis of Chapter 3 Verse 16 of each book of the Bible. Contains wonderful calligraphy by various artists.
- [90] ———. The Art of Computer Programming, volumes 1–4A and Fascicles 5–6. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1998–2019. ISBN 0-201-89683-4, 0-201-03822-6, 0-201-03803-X, 0-201-03804-8, 0-13-467179-1, and 0-13-439760-6.
Donald Knuth's major work on algorithms and data structures for efficient programming.
- [91] ———. Digital Typography. CSLI Publications, Stanford, CA, USA, 1999. ISBN 1-57586-011-2 (cloth), 1-57586-010-4 (paperback).
A comprehensive collection of Knuth's writings on \TeX and typography. While many articles in this collection are available separately on the Web, not all of them are, and having them all in one place for studying is an additional benefit.
- [92] ———. "Mathematical typography". In Knuth [91], pp. 19–65.
Based on a lecture he gave in 1978, Knuth makes the point that mathematics books and journals do not look as beautiful now as they did in the past. Because this is mainly due to the fact that high-quality typesetting has become too expensive, he proposes to use mathematics itself to solve the problem. As a first step he sees the development of a method to unambiguously mark up the math elements in a document so that they can be easily handled by machines. The second step is to use mathematics to design the shapes of letters and symbols. The article goes into the details of these two approaches.

- [93] ———. “Virtual fonts: More fun for grand wizards”. In Knuth [91], pp. 247–262.
An explanation of what virtual fonts are and why they are needed, plus technical details.
Originally published as: <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb11-1/tb27knut.pdf>
- [94] ———. “Typesetting Concrete Mathematics”. In Knuth [91], pp. 367–378.
Knuth explains how he prepared the textbook *Concrete Mathematics*. He states that he wanted to make that book both mathematically and typographically “interesting”, since it would be the first major use of Herman Zapf’s new typeface, AMS Euler. The font parameters were tuned up to make the text look as good as that produced by the best handwriting of a mathematician. Other design decisions for the book are also described.
Originally published as: <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb10-1/tb26knut.pdf>
- [95] ———. “Computers and typesetting”. In Knuth [91], pp. 555–562.
Remarks presented by Knuth at the Computer Museum, Boston, Massachusetts, on 21 May 1986, at the “coming-out” party to celebrate the completion of T_EX.
Originally published as: <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb07-2/tb14knut.pdf>
- [96] ———. “The new versions of T_EX and METAFONT”. In Knuth [91], pp. 563–570.
Knuth explains how he was convinced at the TUG Meeting at Stanford in 1989 to make one further set of changes to T_EX and METAFONT to extend these programs to support 8-bit character sets. He goes on to describe the various changes he introduced to implement this feature, as well as a few other improvements.
Originally published as: <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb10-3/tb25knut.pdf>
- [97] ———. “The future of T_EX and METAFONT”. In Knuth [91], pp. 571–572.
In this article Knuth announces that his work on T_EX, METAFONT, and Computer Modern has “come to an end” and that he will make further changes only to correct extremely serious bugs.
Originally published as: <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb11-4/tb30knut.pdf>
- [98] ———. “A footnote about ‘Oh, oh, zero’”. *TUGboat*, 35(3):232–234, 2014.
Notes on early typesetting of computer programs by the ACM and Addison-Wesley as an addendum to [20] resulting in the development of a DK version of the Lucida monospaced fonts [21].
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb35-3/tb111knut-zero.pdf>
- [99] Donald E. Knuth and Michael F. Plass. “Breaking paragraphs into lines”. In Knuth [91], pp. 67–155.
This article, originally published in 1981, addresses the problem of dividing the text of a paragraph into lines of approximately equal length. The basic algorithm considers the paragraph as a whole and introduces the (now well-known T_EX) concepts of “boxes”, “glue”, and “penalties” to find optimal breakpoints for the lines. The paper describes the dynamic programming technique used to implement the algorithm.
- [100] Donald E. Knuth and Hermann Zapf. “AMS Euler—A new typeface for mathematics”. In Knuth [91], pp. 339–366. Originally published in *Scholarly Publishing* 20 (1989), 131–157.
The two authors explain, in this article originally published in 1989, how a collaboration between scientists and artists is helping to bring beauty to the pages of mathematical journals and textbooks.
- [101] Markus Kohm. KOMA-Script. Edition DANTE. Lehmanns Media, Berlin, 7th edition, 2020. ISBN 978-3-96543-097-6 (Print), 78-3-96543-103-4 (eBook).
Documentation of the KOMA-Script document classes and their features in the German language. Available in a print and eBook edition. For the online version see [102].
- [102] ———. KOMA-Script: A versatile L^AT_EX 2_ε bundle, 2022.
KOMA-Script is a bundle of L^AT_EX classes and packages that can be used as replacements for the standard L^AT_EX classes offering extended functionalities. German and English manuals are provided as part of the distribution.
Locally available via: [texdoc koma-script](#)

- [103] Helmut Kopka and Patrick W. Daly. Guide to \LaTeX . Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley, Boston, MA, USA, 4th edition, 2004. ISBN 0-321-17385-6.
An introductory guide to \LaTeX with a different pedagogical style than Lamport’s *\LaTeX Manual* [106].
- [104] Klaus Lagally. “Arab \TeX —Typesetting Arabic with vowels and ligatures”. In “Proceedings of the 7th European \TeX Conference, Prague”, pp. 153–172. CsTUG, Prague, 1992. ISBN 80-210-0480-0.
A macro package, compatible with plain \TeX and \LaTeX , for typesetting Arabic with both partial and full vocalization.
<https://www.ntg.nl/maps/20/22.pdf>
- [105] Leslie Lamport. “*MakeIndex*, An Index Processor For \LaTeX ”. Technical report, Electronic Document in *MakeIndex* distribution, 1987.
This document explains the syntax that can be used inside \LaTeX ’s `\index` command when using *MakeIndex* to generate your index. It also gives a list of the possible error messages.
Locally available via: `texdoc makeindex`
- [106] ———. \LaTeX : A Document Preparation System: User’s Guide and Reference Manual. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 2nd edition, 1994. ISBN 0-201-52983-1. Reprinted with corrections in 1996.
The ultimate reference for basic user-level \LaTeX by the creator of \LaTeX 2.09. It complements the material presented in this book.
- [107] \LaTeX Project Team. “ \LaTeX news”.
An issue of *\LaTeX News* is released with each \LaTeX 2 ϵ release, highlighting changes since the last release. There is also a document combining all issues since 1994, which offers a good overview about the history of \LaTeX 2 ϵ as well as providing an easy way to find information on all major updates and extensions that have been implemented over the years.
Locally available via: `texdoc ltnews`
- [108] ———. “Bugs in \LaTeX software”. Website.
The bug reporting and tracking service run by the \LaTeX team as part of the \LaTeX 2 ϵ maintenance activity.
<https://www.latex-project.org/bugs/>
- [109] ———. “Default docstrip headers”. *TUGboat*, 19(2):137–138, 1998.
This document describes the format of the header that docstrip normally adds to generated package files. This header is suitable for copyright information or distribution conditions.
<http://tug.org/TUGboat/tb19-2/tb591tdocstrip.pdf>
- [110] ———. Configuration options for \LaTeX 2 ϵ , 2003.
How to configure a \LaTeX installation using the set of standard configuration files.
Locally available via: `texdoc cfgguide`
- [111] ———. “The \LaTeX project public license (version 1.3c)”, 2008.
The Open Source License used by the core \LaTeX 2 ϵ distribution and many contributed packages. See [132] for background and history.
<https://www.latex-project.org/lppl/>
- [112] ———. \LaTeX 2 ϵ for authors — historic version, 2020.
When \LaTeX 2 ϵ was released in 1994, it was accompanied by a set of guides, e.g., [110, 113, 117, 143]. This guide describes functionality that became available with \LaTeX 2 ϵ . Over the years it got some additions, as needed, but also kept information that is now only of historical interest. Starting in 2020, this historical version was frozen and a new guide was written in which irrelevant, old information was dropped and all new user-level functionality is documented; see [116].
Locally available via: `texdoc usrguide-historic`

- [113] ———. $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ font selection, 2022.
A description of font selection in standard \LaTeX intended for package writers who are already familiar with \TeX fonts and \LaTeX .
Locally available via: [texdoc fntguide](#)
- [114] ———. Core documentation distributed with \LaTeX , 2022.
The \LaTeX distribution contains a number of guides, e.g., [110, 112, 113, 115–117, 143]. These, together with other useful documents, are also available from the project Web site on a couple of overview pages.
Overview at: <https://latex-project.org/help/documentation>
- [115] ———. The $\LaTeX 3$ Interfaces, 2023.
The reference manual for the L3 programming layer, which has been part of the \LaTeX format since 2020 and thus available for package development — the way for \LaTeX coding going forward.
Locally available via: [texdoc interface3](#)
- [116] ———. \LaTeX for authors — current version, 2023.
Starting in 2020, the core document-level functionality for \LaTeX is now documented in this guide, and the original $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ guide from 1994 has been moved to [112] for those who are interested in the history of \LaTeX .
Locally available via: [texdoc usrguide](#)
- [117] ———. \LaTeX for class and package writers, 2023.
The guide to $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ commands for class and package writers, but also sometimes useful in the preamble of documents. It was rewritten and extended in 2023 and the original from 2006 is available under a separate name.
Locally available via: [texdoc clsguide](#)
and the historic version via: [texdoc clsguide-historic](#)
- [118] Philipp Lehman and Joseph Wright. The csquotes Package—Context Sensitive Quotation Facilities, 2022.
Package providing context-sensitive smart quotes. Original implementation by Philipp Lehman; maintained and further developed since 2015 by Joseph Wright.
Locally available via: [texdoc csquotes](#)
- [119] Werner Lemberg. “The CJK package: Multilingual support beyond Babel”. *TUGboat*, 18(3):214–224, 1997.
A description of the CJK (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) package for \LaTeX and its interface to mule (multilingual emacs).
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb18-3/cjkintr0600.pdf>
- [120] Silvio Levy. “Using Greek fonts with \TeX ”. *TUGboat*, 9(1):20–24, 1988.
The author tries to demonstrate that typesetting Greek in \TeX with the *gr* family of fonts can be as easy as typesetting English text and leads to equally good results. The article is meant as a tutorial, but some technical details are given for those who have acquired greater familiarity with the font already.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb09-1/tb20levy.pdf>
- [121] Franklin Mark Liang. Word Hy-phen-a-tion by Com-pu-ter. Ph.D. thesis, Stanford University, Stanford, CA 94305, 1983. Also available as Stanford University, Department of Computer Science Report No. STAN-CS-83-977.
A detailed description of the word hyphenation algorithm used by \TeX .
<https://tug.org/docs/liang/liang-thesis.pdf>
- [122] Lua \TeX development team. Lua \TeX Reference Manual, 2022.
The official manual for the Lua \TeX engine, describing all its commands and features.
Locally available via: [texdoc luatex](#)
- [123] Jianrui Lyu. *tabulararray* — Typeset Tabulars and Arrays with $\LaTeX 3$, 2022.
A recent approach to tables entirely written in the L3 programming layer, reimplementing, consolidating, and extending features from many other packages. Still under heavy development and thus not entirely stable, but already worth exploring.
Locally available via: [texdoc tabulararray](#)

- [124] Nicolas Markey. Tame the BeaST, 2009.
A lengthy tutorial about citations and bibliographical databases with tips and tricks for using a BibTeX workflow. [Locally available via: texdoc tamethebeast](#)
- [125] Ruari McLean. The Thames and Hudson Manual of Typography. Thames and Hudson, London, UK, 1980. ISBN 0-500-68022-1.
A broad introduction to traditional commercial typography.
- [126] Microsoft. “OpenType Layout Tag Registry—Feature Tags”, 2019.
The registry for OpenType font features each with a description of the meaning and suggested usage. <https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/typography/opentype/spec/featuretags>
- [127] ———. “OpenType® Specification Version 1.9”, 2021.
The official specification for the OpenType font format. <https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/typography/opentype/spec>
- [128] Frank Mittelbach. “E-TeX: Guidelines for future TeX Extensions”. *TUGboat*, 11(3):337–345, 1990.
The output of TeX is compared with that of hand-typeset documents. It is shown that many important concepts of high-quality typesetting are not supported and that further research to design a “successor” typesetting system to TeX should be undertaken. A review of the findings, 23 years later, is provided in [133]. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb11-3/tb29mitt.pdf>
- [129] ———. “A regression test suite for L^AT_EX 2_ε”. *TUGboat*, 18(4):309–311, 1997.
Description of the concepts and implementation of the test suite used to test for unexpected side effects after changes to the L^AT_EX kernel. One of the most valuable maintenance tools for keeping L^AT_EX 2_ε stable. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb18-4/tb57mitt.pdf>
- [130] ———. “Language Information in Structured Documents: Markup and rendering—Concepts and problems”. In “International Symposium on Multilingual Information Processing”, pp. 93–104. Tsukuba, Japan, 1997.
Invited paper. Slightly extended in *TUGboat* 18(3):199–205, 1997.
This paper discusses the structure and processing of multilingual documents, both at a general level and in relation to a proposed extension to standard L^AT_EX. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb18-3/tb56lang.pdf>
- [131] ———. “Formatting documents with floats: A new algorithm for L^AT_EX 2_ε”. *TUGboat*, 21(3):278–290, 2000.
Descriptions of features and concepts of a new output routine for L^AT_EX that can handle spanning floats in multicolumn page design. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb21-3/tb68mittel.pdf>
- [132] ———. “Reflections on the history of the L^AT_EX Project Public License (LPPL)—A software license for L^AT_EX and more”. *TUGboat*, 32(1):83–94, 2011.
A review of the evolution of L^AT_EX world’s predominant license [111]. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb32-1/tb100mitt.pdf>
- [133] ———. “E-TeX: Guidelines for future TeX Extensions — revisited”. *TUGboat*, 34(1):47–63, 2013.
This article compares the output of TeX with that of hand-typeset documents. This is a re-assessment of the findings made 23 years earlier [128]. With the new engines the situation has improved, but even though there is now engine support for most problems, the majority of them still represent important and open research problems for high-quality automated typesetting. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb34-1/tb106mitt.pdf>

- [134] ———. “A general framework for globally optimized pagination”. In “Proceedings of the 2016 ACM Symposium on Document Engineering”, DocEng’16, pp. 11–20. Association for Computing Machinery, New York, NY, USA, 2016. ISBN 978-1-4503-4438-8.

This paper presents research results for globally optimized pagination using dynamic programming and discusses its theoretical background. It was awarded the “ACM Best Paper Award” at the DocEng 2016 conference. A greatly expanded version of this paper (37 pages) titled “A General LuaTeX Framework for Globally Optimized Pagination” was submitted to the Computational Intelligence (Wiley) in 2017 and accepted January 2018 [138].

<https://www.latex-project.org/publications/indexbyyear/2016/>

- [135] ———. “Effective floating strategies”. In “Proceedings of the 2017 ACM Symposium on Document Engineering”, DocEng’17, pp. 29–38. Association for Computing Machinery, New York, NY, USA, 2017. ISBN 978-1-4503-4689-4.

This paper presents an extension to the general framework for globally optimized pagination described [134]. The extended algorithm supports automatic placement of floats as part of the optimization using a flexible constraint model that allows for the implementation of typical typographic rules.

<https://www.latex-project.org/publications/indexbyyear/2017/>

- [136] ———. “Managing forlorn paragraph lines (a.k.a. widows and orphans) in L^AT_EX”. *TUGboat*, 39(3):246–251, 2018.

A discussion of methods for avoiding widows and orphans with suggestions about what is most promising when using L^AT_EX.

<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb39-3/tb123mitt-widows.pdf>

- [137] ———. “A rollback concept for packages and classes”. *TUGboat*, 39(2):107–112, 2018.

The article describes the rollback concept for packages and document classes and gives advice about how to apply it in different scenarios.

<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb39-2/tb122mitt-rollback.pdf>

- [138] ———. “A general LuaTeX framework for globally optimized pagination”. *Computational Intelligence*, 35(2):242–284, 2019.

This article is an extended version (37 pages) of the 2016 ACM article “A General Framework for Globally Optimized Pagination” [134], providing a lot more details and additional research results. The peer-reviewed publication is now freely available.

<https://www.latex-project.org/publications/indexbyyear/2020/>

- [139] ———. “L^AT_EX’s hook management”, 2021.

Guide to the new hook management system for L^AT_EX introduced in 2020, including a documentation of all standard hooks in the L^AT_EX kernel.

Locally available via: `texdoc lthooks-doc`

- [140] Frank Mittelbach, David Carlisle, and Chris Rowley. “Experimental L^AT_EX code for class design”. Vancouver, 1999.

At the T_EX Users Group conference in Vancouver the L^AT_EX project team gave a talk on models for user-level interfaces and designer-level interfaces in L^AT_EX3 [141]. Most of these ideas have been implemented in prototype implementations (e.g., template design, front matter handling, output routine, galley and paragraph formatting). The source code is documented and contains further explanations and examples; see also [131]. The underlying programming interfaces are since 2020 part of the L^AT_EX format as the L3 programming layer [115].

Articles: <https://latex-project.org/publications/indexbytopic/l3-expl3>

Code: <https://github.com/latex3/latex3>

- [141] ———. “New interfaces for L^AT_EX class design, Parts I and II”. *TUGboat*, 20(3):214–216, 1999.
Some proposals for the first-ever interface to setting up and coding L^AT_EX classes. While all of them were implemented as experimental prototypes (see [140]), they have been developed at a time when computers have not been powerful enough to set them up for general use. This has finally changed and several of these ideas are now making their reappearance as part of the “L^AT_EX Tagged PDF” project [150]. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb20-3/tb64carl1.pdf>
- [142] Frank Mittelbach, Denys Duchier, Johannes Braams, Marcin Woliński, and Mark Wooding. “The docstrip program”, 2022.
Describes the implementation of the docstrip program. [Locally available via: texdoc docstrip](#)
- [143] Frank Mittelbach, Robin Fairbairns, and Werner Lemberg. L^AT_EX font encodings, 2016.
An overview of all standard L^AT_EX font encodings and their use with 8-bit T_EX engines, such as pdfT_EX. [Locally available via: texdoc encguide](#)
- [144] Frank Mittelbach, Ulrike Fischer, and Chris Rowley. L^AT_EX Tagged PDF Feasibility Evaluation. L^AT_EX Project, 2020.
This is the feasibility study undertaken by the L^AT_EX team prior to initiating the multiyear project for automatically providing tagged PDF with L^AT_EX. It explains in detail both the project goals and the tasks that need to be undertaken and concludes with a detailed project plan. See also [150]. <https://latex-project.org/publications/indexbytopic/pdf/>
- [145] Frank Mittelbach, Michel Goossens, Johannes Braams, David Carlisle, and Chris Rowley. The L^AT_EX Companion. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 2nd edition, 2004. ISBN 0-201-36299-6.
The second edition of this book. The contributing authors have changed over the years.
- [146] Frank Mittelbach and Joan Richmond. “R.I.P. – S.P.Q.R Sebastian Patrick Quintus Rahtz (13.2.1955–15.3.2016)”. *TUGboat*, 37(2):129–130, 2016.
An obituary for my friend Sebastian. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb37-2/tb116rahtz-mitt.pdf>
- [147] Frank Mittelbach, Will Robertson, and L^AT_EX3 team. “l3build — A modern Lua test suite for T_EX programming”. *TUGboat*, 35(3):287–293, 2014.
The workflow environment used by the L^AT_EX Project Team and others. Supports concepts developed over the years including regression testing methods, distribution builds, uploads to CTAN, and installation support. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb35-3/tb111mitt-l3build.pdf>
[Locally available program documentation: texdoc l3build](#)
- [148] Frank Mittelbach and Chris Rowley. “L^AT_EX 2.09 \leftarrow L^AT_EX3”. *TUGboat*, 13(1):96–101, 1992.
A brief sketch of the L^AT_EX3 Project, retracing its history and describing the structure of the system. An update appeared in *TUGboat*, 13(3):390–391, October 1992. A call for volunteers to help in the development of L^AT_EX3 and a list of the various tasks appeared in *TUGboat*, 13(4):510–515, December 1992. Now mainly of historical interest. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb13-1/tb34mitt13.pdf>

- [149] ———. “The pursuit of quality: How can automated typesetting achieve the highest standards of craft typography?” In C. Vanoirbeek and G. Coray, editors, “EP92 — Proceedings of Electronic Publishing ’92, International Conference on Electronic Publishing, Document Manipulation, and Typography, Swiss Federal Institute of Technology, Lausanne, Switzerland, April 7–10, 1992”, pp. 261–273. Cambridge University Press, New York, 1992. ISBN 0-521-43277-4.
This paper compares high-quality craft typography with the state of the art in automated typesetting. It explains why the current paradigms of computerized typesetting will not serve for high-quality formatting and suggests directions for the further research necessary to improve the quality of computer-generated layout.
https://www.researchgate.net/publication/237444403_The_Pursuit_of_Quality
- [150] ———. “ \LaTeX Tagged PDF — a blueprint for a large project”. *TUGboat*, 41(3):292–298, 2020.
An introduction and summary of the extended feasibility study [144] for the multiyear project “ \LaTeX Tagged PDF”. <https://latex-project.org/publications/indexbytopic/pdf/>
- [151] Frank Mittelbach and Rainer Schöpf. “With \LaTeX into the nineties”. *TUGboat*, 10(4):681–690, 1989.
This article proposes a reimplementaion of \LaTeX that preserves the essential features of the current interface while taking into account the increasing needs of the various user communities. It also formulates some ideas for further developments. It was instrumental in the move from \LaTeX 2.09 to \LaTeX 2 ϵ . <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb10-4/tb26mitt.pdf>
- [152] ———. “Reprint: The new font family selection — User interface to standard \LaTeX ”. *TUGboat*, 11(2):297–305, 1990.
A complete description of the user interface of the first version of \LaTeX ’s New Font Selection Scheme. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb11-2/tb28mitt.pdf>
- [153] ———. “Towards \LaTeX 3.0”. *TUGboat*, 12(1):74–79, 1991.
The objectives of the \LaTeX 3 project are described. The authors examine enhancements to \LaTeX ’s user and style file interfaces that are necessary to keep pace with modern developments, such as SGML. They also review some internal concepts that need revision. <https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb12-1/tb31mitt.pdf>
- [154] NAKASHIMA Hiroshi. Package `paracol`: Yet Another Multi-Column Package to Typeset Columns in Parallel, 2018.
Package to typeset two text streams in parallel columns, occasionally synchronizing the column data. [Locally available via: `texdoc paracol`](#)
- [155] Clemens Niederberger. `acro` — Typeset Acronyms and other Abbreviations, 2022.
A system for managing acronyms and abbreviations in a consistent way. Implemented using the L3 programming layer. [Locally available via: `texdoc acro`](#)
- [156] ———. `enotez` — Endnotes for \LaTeX 2 ϵ , 2022.
A modern implementation of endnotes for \LaTeX that can serve as a successor to the `endnotes` package. Implemented using the L3 programming layer. [Locally available via: `texdoc enotez`](#)
- [157] ———. `fnpct` — footnotes’ interaction with punctuation, 2022.
A package supporting multiple consecutive footnotes, including their spacing and relationship to punctuation characters. Implemented using the L3 programming layer. [Locally available via: `texdoc fnpct`](#)

- [158] ———. `tasks` — lists with columns filled horizontally, 2022.
A manual for the `tasks` package implementing horizontally oriented lists. Implemented using the L3 programming layer. [Locally available via: `texdoc tasks`](#)
- [159] Heiko Oberdiek. The `bookmark` package, 2020.
The manual for the new `bookmark` implementation. Going forward its functionality will be directly integrated into the `hyperref` package. [Locally available via: `texdoc bookmark`](#)
- [160] Pieter van Oostrum. Page Layout in \LaTeX , 2022.
A manual for producing flexible page styles in \LaTeX . Translations in different languages are available. [Locally available via: `texdoc fancyhdr`](#)
- [161] Scott Pakin. “The comprehensive \LaTeX symbol list”, 2021.
This document lists more than 18000 symbols and the corresponding \LaTeX commands that produce them. Some of these symbols are guaranteed to be available in every $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ system; others require fonts and packages that may not accompany a given distribution and that therefore need to be installed. All of the fonts and packages described in the document are freely available from the CTAN archives. [Locally available via: `texdoc symbols`](#)
- [162] Oren Patashnik. \BibTeX ing, 1988.
Together with Appendix B of *The Manual* [106], this describes the user interface to \BibTeX with useful hints for controlling its behavior. The design of \BibTeX styles is described in [163]. [Locally available via: `texdoc btxdoc`](#)
- [163] ———. Designing \BibTeX Styles, 1988.
A detailed description for \BibTeX style designers of the postfix stack language used inside \BibTeX style files. After a general description of the language, all commands and built-in functions are reviewed. Finally, \BibTeX name formatting is explained in detail. [Locally available via: `texdoc btxhak`](#)
- [164] Addison Phillips and Mark Davis. “Tags for identifying languages”. RFC 4646, Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF), 2006.
The RTF describing the structure, content, construction, and semantics of language tags. <https://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/bcp/bcp47.txt>
- [165] John Plaice. “Progress in the Omega project”. *TUGboat*, 15(3):320–324, 1994.
One of the articles that shows part of the research work that went into Omega and influenced later development. On the \TeX Users Group site, there are several other articles by either Yannis Haralambous or John Plaice that describe related developments around Omega. <https://www.tug.org/TUGboat/tb15-3/tb44plaice.pdf>
- [166] Sunil Podar. “Enhancements to the picture environment of \LaTeX ”. Technical Report 86-17, Department of Computer Science, S.U.N.Y., 1986. Version 1.2: July 14, 1986.
This document describes some new commands for the `picture` environment of \LaTeX , especially higher-level commands that enhance its graphic capabilities by providing a friendlier and more powerful user interface. It was the first work extending \LaTeX to produce more sophisticated line graphics, influencing all later attempts. <https://ctan.org/pkg/epic>
- [167] Sebastian Rahtz, Heiko Oberdiek, and \LaTeX Project Team. Hypertext marks in \LaTeX : a manual for `hyperref`, 2022.
The manual for `hyperref`, originally written by Sebastian, then maintained and greatly extended by Heiko, and now taken over by the \LaTeX Team with a major reimplementaion in progress. [Locally available via: `texdoc hyperref`](#)
- [168] Brian Reid. Scribe: A Document Specification Language and its Compiler. Ph.D. thesis, Carnegie-Mellon University, Pittsburgh, PA 15213, 1980.
The Ph.D. thesis that was one of the inspirations for \LaTeX . <http://reports-archive.adm.cs.cmu.edu/anon/scan/CMU-CS-81-100.pdf>

- [169] Robert M. Ritter, editor. *The Oxford Style Manual*. Oxford University Press, London, Oxford, New York, 2003. ISBN 0-198-60-564-1.
Reference work incorporating an update to *Hart's Rules* [68], and the *Oxford Dictionary for Writers and Editors*.
- [170] Will Robertson. A gallery of DTX files, 2007.
A gallery of sample .dtx files exhibiting several techniques of using DOCSTRIP.
Locally available via: [texdoc dtxgallery](#)
- [171] ———. “An exploration of the Latin Modern fonts”. *TUGboat*, 28(2):177–180, 2007.
A tour through various aspects of the Latin Modern fonts — the default fonts for L^AT_EX when used with Unicode engines.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb28-2/tb89robertson.pdf>
- [172] ———. The fontspec package—Font selection for X_YL^AT_EX and LuaL^AT_EX, 2022.
The official manual for fontspec with additional documentation not covered in this book.
Locally available via: [texdoc fontspec](#)
- [173] Will Robertson, Khaled Hosny, and Karl Berry. *The X_YL^AT_EX reference guide*, 2019.
Manual describing the X_YL^AT_EX engine. It covers the special features of the program but otherwise assumes familiarity with a base T_EX engine.
Locally available via: [texdoc xetex](#)
- [174] Maïeul Rouquette. *reledmac—Typeset scholarly editions with L^AT_EX*, 2022.
The reledmac package provides many tools in order to typeset scholarly editions. It is based on the eledmac package, which was based on the ledmac package by Peter Wilson, which was based on the original edmac, tabmac, and edstanza macros by John Lavagnino, Dominik Wujastyk, Herbert Breger, and Wayne Sullivan.
Locally available via: [texdoc reledmac](#)
- [175] Chris Rowley. “Models and languages for formatted documents”. *TUGboat*, 20(3):189–195, 1999.
Explores many ideas around the nature of document formatting and how these can be modeled and implemented.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb20-3/tb64rowl.pdf>
- [176] ———. “The L^AT_EX legacy: 2.09 and all that”. In “PODC’01: Proceedings of the Twentieth Annual ACM Symposium on Principles of Distributed Computing 2001, Newport, Rhode Island, United States”, pp. 17–25. ACM Press, New York, NY, USA, 2001. ISBN 1-58113-383-9.
Part of a celebration for Leslie Lamport’s sixtieth birthday; a very particular account of the technical history and philosophy of T_EX and L^AT_EX.
<https://www.latex-project.org/publications/indexbytopic/2e-concepts>
- [177] Chris Rowley and Frank Mittelbach. “Application-independent representation of multilingual text”. In “Europe, Software + the Internet: Going Global with Unicode: Tenth International Unicode Conference, March 10–12, 1997, Mainz, Germany”, The Unicode Consortium, San Jose, CA, 1997.
Explores the nature of text representation in computer files and the needs of a wide range of text-processing software.
<https://latex-project.org/publications/1996-FMi-CAR-UnicodeConf-appl-independent-representation.pdf>
- [178] Martin Scharrer. *The adjustbox Package*, 2022.
Comprehensive manual describing how to manipulate boxes using a key/value interface inspired by the `\includegraphics` command.
Locally available via: [texdoc adjustbox](#)

- [179] Robert Schlicht. The microtype Package—Subliminal refinements towards typographical perfection, 2022.
User manual for the microtype package that unleashes the micro-typographic extensions implemented by Hàn Thê Thành in pdf \TeX and later propagated to other engines as well.
Locally available via: [texdoc microtype](#)
- [180] Joachim Schrod. “International \LaTeX is ready to use”. *TUGboat*, 11(1):87–90, 1990.
Announces some of the early standards for globalization work on \LaTeX .
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb11-1/tb27schrod.pdf>
- [181] Erik Spiekermann. Stop Stealing Sheep & find out how type works. TOC Publishing, p98a.berlin, Berlin, 4th edition, 2022. ISBN 978-3-949164-03-3.
A guidebook classic on how to use type most effectively. First published in 1993 by Adobe Press; the fourth edition is now also freely available under a Creative Commons license through Google Design.
<https://design.google/library/catching-up-with-erik-spiekermann>
- [182] Andrew Stacey. The tikzmark package v1.15, 2022.
Comprehensive manual describing how to “remember” a position on a page for later (or earlier) use, primarily (but not exclusively) with TikZ.
Locally available via: [texdoc tikzmark](#)
- [183] Paul Stiff. “The end of the line: A survey of unjustified typography”. *Information Design Journal*, 8(2):125–152, 1996.
A good overview about the typographical problems that need to be resolved when producing high-quality unjustified copy.
- [184] Augusto Stoffel. {tikzcd} Commutative diagrams with TikZ, 2021.
User manual for creating commutative diagrams with TikZ.
Locally available via: [texdoc tikz-cd](#)
- [185] Thomas F. Sturm. A Tutorial for Poster Creation with `tcolorbox`, 2020.
A step by step tutorial to great posters. Locally available via: [texdoc tcolorbox-tutorial](#)
- [186] ———. `tcolorbox`—Manual for version 5.1.1, 2022.
Comprehensive manual of what is possible with the various libraries for the `tcolorbox` package. More than 500 pages covering all aspects.
Locally available via: [texdoc tcolorbox](#)
- [187] Ellen Swanson. Mathematics into Type. American Mathematical Society, Providence, Rhode Island, updated edition, 1999. ISBN 0-8218-1961-5.
Updated by Arlene O’Sean and Antoinette Schleyer.
Originally written as a manual to standardize copyediting procedures, the second edition is also intended for use by publishers and authors as a guide in preparing mathematics copy for the printer.
<https://www.ams.org/publications/authors/mit-2.pdf>
- [188] Nicola L.C. Talbot and Vincent Belaïche. `fmtcount.sty`: Displaying the Values of \LaTeX Counters, 2020.
Package that provides additional formatting possibilities for \LaTeX counters, such as ordinals, textual representations, etc., in different languages. Locally available via: [texdoc fmtcount](#)
- [189] Till Tantau. TikZ & PGF, 2021.
The ultimate resource for working with tikz if you got hooked by the introduction given in Section 8.5. A whopping 1300 pages; see also [38, 41].
Locally available via: [texdoc tikz](#)

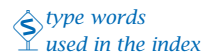
- [190] Technical Committee ISO/TC 171/SC 2. ISO 14289-1:2014 Document management applications — Electronic document file format enhancement for accessibility — 1: Use of ISO 32000-1 (PDF/UA-1), 2014.
ISO 14289-1:2014 specifies the use of the ISO 32000-1:2008 standard to produce accessible electronic documents. <https://iso.org/standard/64599.html>
- [191] The *TUGboat* Team. “T_EX Live CD 5 and the T_EX Catalogue”. *TUGboat*, 21(1):16–90, 2000.
T_EX Live is a ready-to-run T_EX system for the most popular operating systems; it works with all major T_EX-related programs and contains a complete collection of fonts, macros, and other items with support for many languages. This article describes one of the early T_EX Live CD distributions with cross-references to Graham Williams’ T_EX catalogue.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb21-1/tb66cd.pdf>
Current version for different platforms: <https://tug.org/texlive>
- [192] UMEKI Hideo. The *geometry* package, 2021.
Documentation of the package that provides a flexible and easy to use interface to set up page dimensions. [Locally available via: `texdoc geometry`](#)
- [193] Unicode Consortium. “International Components for Unicode (ICU)”.
The International Components for Unicode (ICU) open source project is a technical committee of the Unicode Consortium providing mature C/C++ and Java libraries for Unicode support, software internationalization, and software globalization. ICU is widely portable to many operating systems and environments and provides identical results on different platforms and different programming languages. It offers various services for Unicode text handling, among them language-sensitive collation and searching, normalization, and upper and lowercase conversion. Online resources: <https://unicode-org.github.io/icu>
<https://www.unicode.org/reports/tr35/tr35-collation.html>
- [194] Gabriel Valiente Feruglio. “Modern Catalan typographical conventions”. *TUGboat*, 16(3):329–338, 1995.
Many languages, such as German, English, and French, have a long established typography tradition. However, despite the existence of a well-established tradition in scientific writing in Catalan, there are not yet any standards encompassing typographical conventions in this area. This paper proposes typographical rules that reflect the spirit of ancient Catalan scientific writings while conforming to modern typographical conventions. Some of these typographical rules are incorporated in Catalan extensions to T_EX and L^AT_EX. The proposal also hopes to contribute to the development of standard rules for scientific writing in Catalan.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb16-3/tb48vali.pdf>
- [195] Didier Verna. FiXme – Collaborative annotation tool for L^AT_EX, 2022.
The manual for Didier’s collaborative workflow tool. [Locally available via: `texdoc fixme`](#)
- [196] Herbert Voß. Package *hvfloating* — Controlling captions, fullpage and doublepage floats, 2023.
The manual for hvfloat package with many examples. [Locally available via: `texdoc hvfloat`](#)
- [197] Graham Williams. “Graham Williams’ T_EX Catalogue”. *TUGboat*, 21(1):17–90, 2000.
In 2000 this catalogue listed more than 1500 T_EX, L^AT_EX, and related packages and tools on 74 pages and was linked directly to the items on CTAN. CTAN now offers it in the form of several indexes with more than 5000 items covering everything stored there.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb21-1/tb66catal.pdf>
Latest version on CTAN at: <https://ctan.org/pkg/catalogue>

- [198] Hugh Williamson. *Methods of Book Design*. Yale University Press, New Haven, London, 3rd edition, 1983.
A classic work that has become a basic tool for the practicing book designer. It deals with such matters as the preparation of copy, the selection and arrangement of type, the designer's part in book illustration and jacket design, and the economics of book production. The book also explains the materials and techniques of book production and their effect on the design of books.
First edition from 1956 available online at:
<https://archive.org/details/MethodsOfBookDesign>
- [199] Peter Wilson. *Some Examples of Title Pages*. The Herries Press, 2010.
A showcase of 40 different title page designs with code to produce them.
Locally available via: `texdoc titlepages`
- [200] Peter Wilson and Lars Madsen. *The Memoir Class for Configurable Typesetting — User Guide*, 2022.
A very customizable document class that can be adjusted to produce a wide variety of layouts.
Locally available via: `texdoc memoir`
- [201] Joseph Wright. *siunitx—A comprehensive (SI) units package*, 2023.
The comprehensive manual for typesetting scientific units and their values in text, formulas, and tables.
Locally available via: `texdoc siunitx`
- [202] Hermann Zapf. “My collaboration with Don Knuth and my font design work”. *TUGboat*, 22(1/2):26–30, 2001.
Zapf's story of collaboration with Don Knuth and some thoughts on typography.
<https://tug.org/TUGboat/tb22-1-2/tb70zapf.pdf>
- [203] Justin Ziegler. “Technical report on math font encoding (version 2)”. Technical report, L^AT_EX Project, 1994.
The groundwork for a set of 8-bit math encodings for T_EX.
<https://www.ctan.org/pkg/ltx3pub>

Index of Commands and Concepts

This title somewhat hides the fact that everything (for both volumes) except for names of people is in this one long comprehensive index. To make it easier to use, the entries are distinguished by their “type”, and this is often indicated by one of the following “type words” at the beginning of the main entry or a subentry:

attribute, BibTeX/biber command, BibTeX entry type, BibTeX field, BibTeX style, boolean, counter, document class, env., file, file extension, folio style, font encoding, hook, key/option, keyword, key, language, length, library, math accent, math symbol, option, package, page style, program, rigid length, syntax, text accent, text symbol, text/math symbol, TeX counter, or value.



Most “type words” should be fairly self-explanatory, but a few need some explanation to help you find the entries you are looking for.

‘option’ and ‘keyoption’ Both type words indicate that the keyword can be used in the optional argument of `\usepackage`. If the option accepts a value, it is marked as a ‘keyoption’ and otherwise as a classic ‘option’. Most packages with ‘keyoptions’ also offer configuration commands that can be used in the preamble or in the document body — see also next types.

‘key’ and ‘value’ Many modern L^AT_EX packages implement a key/value syntax (i.e., $\langle key_1 \rangle = \langle value_1 \rangle, \langle key_2 \rangle = \langle value \rangle, \dots$) as part of the optional argument to `\usepackage`, in arguments of commands or environments, or both. Keywords that can appear to the left of the equal sign are indicated by the type word ‘key’ (or as type ‘keyoption’ if allowed in `\usepackage`), those that can appear to the right

as ‘value’. Sometimes keywords can appear on either side, depending on context, in which case they are indexed according to their use on the particular page.¹

‘syntax’ Keywords and strings marked with ‘syntax’ can appear in arguments of commands but are not part of a key/value pair.

‘counter’ and ‘TeX counter’ Names marked as ‘counter’ are TeX counters and are altered with `\setcounter`, etc., while ‘TeX counters’ start with a backslash and use a low-level method for modification.

‘length’ and ‘rigid length’ A ‘length’ register can take values with a plus and minus component, i.e., can stretch or shrink. In contrast, a ‘rigid length’ stores only a fixed value. Most lengths in TeX are flexible, i.e., not rigid.

‘text symbol’, ‘math symbol’, and ‘text/math symbol’ A command is classified as a ‘text symbol’ if it typesets a glyph for use in text, whereas a ‘math symbol’ can be used only in math mode and produces an error elsewhere. A few symbols are allowed everywhere and are therefore of type ‘text/math symbol’.

In most cases, the actual symbol is also shown in the index entry to help you find the symbol you are looking for more easily (the command names are not always obvious). Note, however, that the glyph shown is only an approximation of reality—in your document it may come out differently depending on the fonts you use.

no type word indication The absence of an explicit “type word” means that the “type” is either a core TeX command or simply a concept.

If a particular index entry is defined or used in a special way by a package, then this is indicated by adding the package name (in parentheses) to an entry or subentry. If package `aaa` builds upon or extends package `bbb`, we indicate this with `(aaa/bbb)`. There is one “virtual” package name, `tlc`, which indicates commands introduced only for illustrative purposes in this book. Again, you may see `(tlc/bbb)`, if appropriate.

The index contains all entries for both volumes. To which pages the references point is indicated by `→I` (for part one) and `→II` (for part two). To save space, these indicators are given only once in each entry. An *italic* page number indicates that the command or concept is demonstrated in an example on that page. When there are several page numbers listed, **blue boldface** indicates a page containing important information about an entry, such as a definition or basic usage. However, **bold** is (normally) not used for concept entries, when all entries are of equal importance, or when there is *only one* page reference.

When looking for the position of an entry in the index, you need to realize that both of the characters `\` and `.` are ignored when they come at the start of a command or file extension. Other syntax entries starting with a period are listed in the Symbols section. Otherwise, the index entries are sorted in ASCII order, and the running header gives you an indication where you are in the index. For the rather lengthy Symbols section at the beginning of the index, this is unfortunately of little help because only a few people would know the symbol order in the ASCII encoding. We therefore show the order of symbols in the margin on those pages.

¹This explains why you might find the same keyword under both type words, but given that one is usually interested only in one type of usage, this distinction is made. This distinction also exhibits the fact that different packages use the same keywords in different ways—an unfortunate side effect of the long history of TeX package development by independent developers.

Relation
to packages or
programs



Interpreting
page references



Sorting
within the index



Symbols

- ! math symbol !, →II 213
- ! syntax, →I 453, [507](#), 509f., [516](#)
 - (*cmd/env decl*), →II [634](#), 638ff.
 - error using, →II 728
 - with b argument, →II 642
- (*fp expr*), →II 658
- (*MakeIndex|upmendex*), →II 347, 348, 349, 355f., [357](#), 360
- (abracas), →II 185
- (array), →I [439](#), 442, 443, 453, 495
- (askinclud), →I 30
- (babel), shorthand character, →II [312](#), 313
- (docstrip), →II 591
- (enumitem), →I 271f., 274
- (xcolor), →I [17](#), 102f., 105, 147, 227, 239, 312, 501f., 596f., 599, 615, 619, 627, 629ff., 641, 645, →II 175, 645
- \!, →II 184, [205](#), 676
 - (tipa), →II 126
- != syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- !‘ syntax, →I 193, 196, [757](#)
 - (fontspec), →I 720, 721
- !⟨*waypoint*⟩! syntax (tikz), →I 635
- " syntax, →I [669](#), 670
 - wrong usage in quotes, →I 179
 - (BibTeX|biber), →II [381](#), [401](#)
 - (*MakeIndex|upmendex*), →II [348](#), 349, [357](#), 360
 - (babel), shorthand character, →II 310, [311](#), 312, [330](#), 354, 360
 - (pifont), →II 114
- \ " text accent ¨, →I 747, 762, 765, [768](#), →II 360
 - " syntax (babel), →II 312
 - "' syntax (babel), →II 303, [311](#)
 - "- syntax (babel), →II 305, [312](#)
 - "< syntax (babel), →II 311
 - "= syntax (babel), →II 305, [312](#)
 - "> syntax (babel), →II 311
 - "⟨*accented letter*⟩ syntax (babel), →II 323
 - "⟨*letter*⟩ syntax
 - (babel), →II [310](#), 311, 323
 - (yfonts), →II 105
 - "⟨*math*⟩" syntax (tikz-cd), →II [161](#), 162
 - "~ syntax (babel), →II 312
 - "‘ syntax (babel), →II 303, [311](#)
 - "| syntax (babel), →II 311
 - ’ syntax, →I [669](#), →II 114
 - (BibTeX|biber), →II 401
 - (abracas), →II [185](#), 188
 - (babel), shorthand character, →II [319](#), [330](#)
 - (tikz-cd), →II [162](#), 163
- \ ’ text accent ´, →I 434, [769](#), →II 126
 - redefined in tabbing, →I [433](#), 434
- \ ’, definition for tabbing, →I 433
 - ’’ syntax, →I 179
 - (fontspec), →I 721
- (math symbol (, →II [190](#), [223](#)
 - (syntax
 - (BibTeX|biber), →II 401
 - (*MakeIndex|upmendex*), →II 357
- \ (, →II 195
 - error using, →II 718
 - (ifthen), →II 693
 - (soul), →I 195
 - ((*coord*)) syntax (tikz), →I [633](#), 634–646
 - ((*expr*)) syntax
 - (*fp expr*), →II 659
 - (*int expr*), →II 659
 -) math symbol), →II [190](#), [223](#)
 -) syntax
 - (BibTeX|biber), →II 401
 - (*MakeIndex|upmendex*), →II 357
- \), →II 195
 - error using, →II 718
 - (ifthen), →II 693
 - (soul), →I 195
 - * (asterisk) as error message, →II 717
 - * math symbol *, →II 215
 - * syntax, →I [436](#), 447, 454f., →II 672
 - (*fp expr*), →II [658](#), 659
 - (*int expr*), →II 659
 - (*length expr*), →I 447
 - (abracas), →II 185
 - (array), →I 439
 - (askinclud), →I 30
 - (biblatex), →II 563
 - (bigdelim), →II 159
 - (calc), →I 370, →II [687](#), 688, 690, 692
 - (docstrip), →II 591
 - (enumitem), →I 272, 273
 - (fontspec), →I 709
 - (hhline), →I 470
 - (listings), →I [324](#), 325
 - (microtype), →I 135
 - (multirow), →I 477
 - (snotez), →I 236
 - (tasks), →I 291, 292
 - (tikz), →I 637
 - (typed-checklist), →I 295
 - * value (babel), →II 331f.
- \ *
 - (doc), →II 596
 - (tipa), →II 126
 - *2 syntax (snotez), →I 236
 - *⟨*letter*⟩ syntax (yfonts), →II 105
 - + math symbol +, →II 215
 - + syntax
 - (*cmd/env decl*), →II [634](#), 641, 642, 735
 - error using, →II 728
 - (*fp expr*), →II [658](#), 659
 - (*int expr*), →II 659
 - (*length expr*), →I 447
 - (calc), →I 257, 370, 373, 401, →II 632, 661, 666, [687](#)
 - (docstrip), →II 591
 - (fontspec), →I 723

```

+ syntax (cont.)
  (hvfloat), →I 560, 565, 566
  (keyvaltable), →I 504
  (tikz), →I 634
  (tlc/dcolumn), →I 484
\+, error using, →II 741
+( syntax (int expr), →II 659
+(<(coord)) syntax (tikz), →I 635, 637f.
++(<(coord)) syntax (tikz), →I 635, 637, 640f.
+- syntax (siunitx), →I 168
+Opt syntax (tikz), →I 634
+X syntax (chmod), →II 616
, math symbol ,, →II 223
, syntax
  (BibTeX|biber), →II 381, 401
  (abrcases), →II 185, 186, 188
  (fcolumn), →I 489f.
  (siunitx), →I 168, 170, 173
  (tlc/dcolumn), →I 482ff.
\,, →I 210, 406, 485, 488,
  →II 157, 184, 186, 204f., 210, 261, 475, 762
  in math, →II 135f., 147, 155f., 159, 164, 168, 181
,, syntax (cleveref), →I 87
- hyphen, →I 149f.
  nonbreaking, →I 150, 199
- math symbol −, →II 215
- syntax, →I 149f.
  (fp expr), →II 658, 659
  (int expr), →II 659
  (length expr), →I 447
  (askincluder), →I 30
  (calc), →II 667, 670, 687, 688ff.
  (dashundergaps), →I 191
  (docstrip), →II 591
  (fontspec), →I 722, 723
  (hhline), →I 470, 471
  (typed-checklist), →I 295
\-, →I 150, 443, 446, →II 312, 774, 776
error using, →II 741
  in tabbing, →I 433
  (soul), →I 194, 195
  (ulem), →I 189, 190
-( syntax (int expr), →II 659
-* syntax, →I 702
+ syntax (siunitx), →I 168
\-/ (extdash), →I 150
-> syntax (tikz), →I 635, 637f., 640, 641f., 644
-Inf syntax, →II 6, 9
-L option (MakeIndex), →II 355, 364
-LF syntax, →I 702, →II 6, 7, 10
-M option (bibtex8), →II 407
-NoValue- syntax, →II 633ff., 639, 640ff.
-OsF syntax, →I 700, 702, →II 6, 10
-Sup syntax, →II 6, 9
-T option (MakeIndex), →II 355, 364
-TLF syntax, →I 702, →II 6, 7
-TOf syntax, →I 702, →II 6
-- syntax, →I 149, 150, 757
  (Lua), →II 607
  (fontspec), →I 720, 721
  (tikz), →I 634f., 636, 637-644, 645f.
\-- (extdash), →I 150
--- syntax, →I 149, 150f., 193, 669, 757
  (fontspec), →I 720, 721
\--- (extdash), →I 150, 151
--backend option (checkcites), →II 414
--cmd-tex option (mkjobtexmf), →I 114
--config option (bundledoc), →I 113
--copy option (mkjobtexmf), →I 114
--destdir option (mkjobtexmf), →I 114
--engine option (l3build), →II 607, 611
--exclude option (bundledoc), →I 112
--file option (l3build), →II 612
--flat option (mkjobtexmf), →I 114
--force-copy option (mkjobtexmf), →I 114
--full option (l3build), →II 608
--help option
  (biber), →II 380
  (mkjobtexmf), →I 114
--include option (bundledoc), →I 112, 113
--input-encoding option (biber), →II 399
--jobname option (mkjobtexmf), →I 114
--keepdirs option (bundledoc), →I 113
--localonly option (bundledoc), →I 112f.
--match option (git), →II 617
--message option (l3build), →II 612
--min-crossrefs option (BibTeX), →II 407
--min_crossrefs option (bibtex8), →II 407
--mincrossrefs option (biber), →II 407
--output-align option (biber), →II 380, 418
--output-field-replace option (biber), →II 380
--output-fieldcase option (biber), →II 380
--output-file option (biber), →II 380
--output-format option (biber), →II 417
--output-resolve option (biber), →II 405
--output-safechars option (biber), →II 399
--sys syntax (getnonfreefonts), →II 4
--texname option (mkjobtexmf), →I 114
--tool option (biber), →II 380, 399, 405, 418
--user syntax (getnonfreefonts), →II 4
--validate-datamodel option (biber), →II 418
--verbose option
  (bundledoc), →I 112
  (mkjobtexmf), →I 114
-all option (kpsewhich), →II 730, 785, 786
-c option (MakeIndex|upmendex), →II 346, 351, 363, 364
-d option (upmendex), →II 364, 365
-debug option (kpsewhich), →II 786
-e option (l3build), →II 607, 611
-engine option (kpsewhich), →II 730, 786
-f option (upmendex), →II 364, 365
-g option
  (MakeIndex), →II 354, 363
  (upmendex), Japanese specific, →II 363f., 365
-help option (kpsewhich), →II 786

```

- i option
(*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 354, 364
(*luafindfont*), →I 708
- l option
(*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 354, 364
(*texdoc*), →II 616, 786f.
- m option
(*luafindfont*), →I 708
(*texdoc*), →II 787
- o option
(*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 354, 359, 364, 374
(*luafindfont*), →I 708f.
- p option (*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 354, 359, 364
- progrname option (*kpsewhich*), →II 785
- q option (*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 354, 364
- r option (*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 355, 364
- recorder option (T_EX engine), →I 113f.
- s option
(*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 328, 355, 359, 364, 366, 588
(*texdoc*), →II 786
- t option (*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 355, 364, 374
- | syntax (*tikz*), →I 636
- . math symbol ., →II 190, 213
- . syntax, →II 165, 191
(*babel*), shorthand character, →II 314
(*dashundergaps*), →I 191
(*siunitx*), →I 168f., 170, 173
(*tlc/dcolumn*), →I 482f.
- \. text accent ◌̣, →I 769
- .. syntax
(*Lua*), →II 614
(*tikz*), →I 637, 645f.
- ... (ellipsis)
in quotations, →I 182f., 187
mathematical symbol, →II 180, 181f.
spacing, →I 148f.
- ... syntax (*tikz*), →I 645
- .center syntax (*tikz*), →I 641
- .code syntax, →II 701
- .if syntax, →II 701
- .notif syntax, →II 701
- .puff syntax (*tikz*), →I 641
- .south syntax (*tikz*), →I 633, 641
- .store syntax, →II 701
- .style syntax (*tikz*), →I 633, 638, 644
- .tip syntax (*tikz*), →I 641
- .usage syntax, →II 701, 702f.
- / math symbol /, →II 190, 213
- / syntax
(*fp expr*), →II 658, 659
(*int expr*), →II 659
(*length expr*), →I 447
(*calc*), →II 687, 688, 690
(*docstrip*), →II 591
(*siunitx*), →I 169
(*tikz*), →I 634
- \/, →I 661, 662f.
(*soul*), →I 195
- : math symbol :, →II 221
- : syntax
in command names, →I 26, →II 624
(*fp expr*), →II 658
(*arydshln*), →I 469
(*babel*), shorthand character, →II 312, 313
(*hhline*), →I 470, 471
- \:, →II 204f., 210
(*tipa*), →II 126
- :: syntax
(*arydshln*), →I 469
(*hhline*), →I 470
(*keyvaltable*), →I 504
- ; math symbol ;, →II 223
- ; syntax
(*arydshln*), →I 469
(*babel*), shorthand character, →II 312
(*siunitx*), →I 168, 169, 171
(*tikz*), →I 632, 634–646
- \;, →II 185, 187, 204f., 210
(*tipa*), →II 126
- < math symbol <, →II 217
- < syntax, →II 684, 742
(*fp expr*), →II 658
(*array*), →I 439, 442, 445, →II 182
(*babel*), shorthand character, →II 314, 330
(*ifthen*), →II 690, 691, 692
- \<
error using, →II 717, 741
(*soul*), →I 196, 197
- <- syntax (*tikz*), →I 641
- <-> syntax (*tikz*), →I 640, 641
- <->> syntax (*tikz*), →I 640
- <...> syntax (*enumitem*), →I 279ff.
- <= syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- << syntax, →I 193
(*babel*), →II 314
- <<-> syntax (*tikz*), →I 640
- <<->> syntax (*tikz*), →I 640
- <\$ syntax (*array*), →I 442
- = math symbol =, →II 217
- = syntax
(*BiBTeX*|*biber*), →II 381, 401
(*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 360
(*babel*), shorthand character, →II 314, 338
(*hhline*), →I 470, 471
(*ifthen*), →II 690, 691
(*multirow*), →I 477
- \=
definition for tabbing, →I 433, 434
error using, →II 738
- \= text accent ◌̣, →I 769, →II 126
redefined in tabbing, →I 433, 434
- \=/ (extdash), →I 150
- \== (extdash), →I 150
- \=== (extdash), →I 150
- =⟨*date or string*⟩ syntax, →I 117f.
- =⟨*letter*⟩ syntax (*babel*), →II 313

```









> math symbol >, →II 217
> syntax, →I 466, →II 684, 742
! (cmd/env decl), →II 634, 637, 642ff.
" error using, →II 728
' (MakeIndex|upmindex), →II 360
( (array), →I 439, 441ff., 445ff., 495, →II 182
) (babel), shorthand character, →II 314, 330
* (colortbl), →I 467
+ (hhline), →I 468
' (ifthen), →II 691, 692
- (tabularx), →I 448ff.
. \>, →I 433f.
/ error using, →II 741
: (soul), →I 196, 197
; >? syntax (fp expr), →II 658
< >> syntax (babel), →II 314
= >$ syntax (array), →I 442
> ? font encoding, →I 765
? ? math symbol ?, →II 213
@ ? syntax, →I 702
[ (fp expr), →II 658
# (askinclude), →I 30
% (babel), shorthand character, →II 312
& (tlc/tabularx), →I 450
$ \? (qrcode), →I 613
- \???, errors containing, →II 714, 715, 742
\ □ (QED) symbol, →I 282f., 288
~ ?' syntax, →I 193, 757
{ (fontspec), →I 721
} ?m syntax (font series), →I 733f.
~ @ math symbol @, →II 213
~ @ syntax, →I 436, 437, 453, 454, 476
~ error when used in tabular, etc., →II 732
~ in command names, →I 26, →II 623
~ (BibTeX|biber), →II 381, 385
~ (MakeIndex|upmindex), →II 347, 348f., 355, 357, 360
~ (abracas), →II 185, 186
~ (array), →I 439, 442, 495, →II 159, 182
~ (widetable), →I 454
\@, →I 153, 161, →II 482
error using, →II 744
(acro), →I 157, 158ff., 163
@. syntax (amscd), →II 160
@<<< syntax (amscd), →II 160
@= syntax (amscd), →II 160
@>>> syntax (amscd), →II 160
@@ syntax (docstrip), →II 605
@AAA syntax (amscd), →II 160
@VVV syntax (amscd), →II 160
@{} syntax, →I 399, 473
(array), →I 443, 444, 490
\@afterheading, →I 53f., 99, →II 691
@afterindent boolean, →I 53, →II 691
\@afterindentfalse, →I 53, 99
\@auto@bibname (chapterbib), →II 573, 574
\@beginparpenalty TeX counter, →I 259, 260
\@biblabel, →II 476, 477
\@cite, →II 476
\@currname, →II 702
\@dotsep, →I 73
\@dottedtocline, →I 72, 73, 74
\@endparpenalty TeX counter, →I 259f.
\@evenfoot, →I 397
\@evenhead, →I 397
@firstcolumn boolean, →II 691
\@firstofone, →II 499
\@gobble, →II 707
\@idixitem, →II 352, 371, 372
(doc), →II 597
@inlabel boolean, →II 691
\@input, →II 677
\@itempenalty TeX counter, →I 259f.
\@listi, →I 258
\@listii, →I 258
\@listiii, →I 258
\@makecaption, →I 539, 540
\@makechapterhead (quotchap), →I 38
\@makefnmark, →I 209
\@makefntext, →I 209, 210
\@makeschapterhead, →II 371
\@medpenalty TeX counter, →I 425
\@mkboth, →I 396
@newlist boolean, →II 691
@noskipsec boolean, →II 691
\@oddfoot, →I 397, →II 714
\@oddhead, →I 397
\@pnumwidth rigid length, →I 73, 74
\@preamble BibTeX/biber command, →II 405, 408, 628
(bibextract), →II 416
\@ptsize, →I 370, 371
\@secCNTformat, →I 36
\@secpENALTY TeX counter, →I 48, →II 771
\@startsection, →I 51, 52f., 513, →II 657
error using, →II 744
\@starttoc, →I 74
(notoccite), →II 483
@string BibTeX/biber command, →II 401, 402
(bibextract), →II 416
\@tabacckludge, →I 764
@tempSWA boolean, →II 476, 691
\@thefnmark, →I 209, 210
\@tocrmarg, →I 73, 74
\@topcaptionfalse (supertabular), →I 457
@twocolumn boolean, →II 371, 691
@twoside boolean, →I 371, →II 691
@I syntax (amscd), →II 160
[ math symbol [, →II 190, 223
\[, →II 131, 132, 144, 195
error using, →II 718
spacing problems before, →II 144f.
[[...]] syntax (Lua), →II 612
# syntax
in TeX error message, →II 732, 735, 743
(BibTeX|biber), →II 401f., 405
(hhline), →I 470, 471
(hyperref), →I 100

```

- \# text/math symbol #, →II 194, 212, **213**
 - as Relation symbol, →II 209
 - (fvextra), →I 322
- ## syntax, →II 605
- % syntax
 - (BibTeX|biber), →II 401
 - (hyperref), →I 100
- \% text/math symbol %, →II **213**, 623
 - %<...> syntax (docstrip), →II 591
 - %<<... syntax (docstrip), →II 606
 - %StartShownPreambleCommands syntax (tlc), →I 315
 - %StopShownPreambleCommands syntax (tlc), →I 315
 - %% syntax (docstrip), →II 605
 - %%BoundingBox syntax (graphics|graphicx), →I **577**, **581**
 - %%HiResBoundingBox syntax (graphics|graphicx), →I **577**, **581**
- & syntax, →I **436**, 437
 - error using, →II 722, 730, 739
 - inside \mathcolor, →II 208
 - (abracas), →II 187, 188
 - (amsmath), →II **132**, 133, 135f., 138–141, 154ff., 171, 207
 - error using, →II 722
 - (cases), →II 157
 - (docstrip), →II 591
 - (mathtools), →II 156
 - (tikz-cd), →II **161**, 162f.
- \& text/math symbol &, →II 187, 212, **213**, 623, 730
 - && syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- \$ syntax, →II 195
- \\$ text/math symbol \$, →I **769**, →II **213**, 623
 - \$\langle calc \rangle\$ syntax (tikz), →I 635
 - _ syntax
 - error using, →II 732
 - in command names, →I **26**, →II 624
 - (abracas), →II 187
 - (index), →II 373
 - (siunitx), →I 169
 - (underscore), →I 152
- _ text/math symbol _, →I 151, **770**, →II **213**
 - (underscore), →I 151, **152**
- \,, →I 122, **436**, 437f., 465, →II 145, 159, 660
 - error using, →II 738
 - inside \mathcolor, →II 208
 - in tabbing, →I 433f.
 - in headings, →I 33, 41
 - problem in tabular, →I 123
 - (amscd), →II 160
 - (amsmath), →II **132f.**, **134**, 135–141, 143, 146, 149, 150–156, 167, 168f., 171, 207
 - (array), →I 437, 438, **440**, 441, 443, 446
 - (booktabs), →I 473
 - (breqn), not working with, →II 148
 - (cases), →II 157
 - (fancyhdr), →I 398f.
 - (fvextra), →I 322
 - (keyvaltable), →I 504
 - (longtable), →I 461
 - (mathtools), →II 142, 156, 182
- \ (cont.)
 - (multirow), →I 477
 - (soul), →I **196**, 197
 - (subcaption), →I 555
 - (supertabular), →I 456f.
 - (tabularx), →I 448
 - (tikz-cd), →II 161ff.
 - (titlesec), →I 42
- *, →I 461
 - (amsmath), →II 133, 143, 146
 - (longtable), →I 461
 - (titlesec), →I 42
 - (xltabular), →I 464
- \ (language)hyphenmins (babel), →II **333**, 334, **336**
- \~ text accent ˜, →I **770**, →II 126
 - ˆ syntax
 - (abracas), →II 187
 - (index), →II 373
 - (siunitx), →I **169**, 170
 - ~ (tilde)
 - multilingual aspects, →II 312
 - nonbreaking space, →II 310
- \~ text accent ˘, →I **776**, →II 126
 - ~ syntax, →I **125**, 427, →II 310, 312, 778
 - in headings, →I 33
 - (babel), shorthand character, →II 330
 - (hhline), →I **470**, 471
 - (hyperref), →I 100
 - (siunitx), →I 169
 - syntax (babel), →II 312
 - syntax (babel), →II 312
 - syntax (babel), →II 312
 - ~(letter) syntax (babel), →II 312
- \{ text/math symbol {, →I **776**, →II 137, 151, 159, **190**, 194, 210, **223**
 - (doc), →II 596
 - (fvextra), →I 322
 - { syntax (BibTeX|biber), →II **381**, 395f., 398f., **401**
 - { } syntax, →I 153
 - invisible symbol, math, →II **136**, 155, 203
 - (xspace), →I 153
- \} text/math symbol }, →I **776**, →II 137, 151, **190**, 194, 210, **223**
 - } syntax (BibTeX|biber), →II **381**, 395f., 398f., **401**
- \,, →I 153
 - (fvextra), →I 322
 - (url), →I 201
- \], →II **131**, **132**, 195
 - error using, →II 718
 -] math symbol], →II **190**, **223**
- \‘ text accent ˆ, →I 698, **770**, →II 126
 - redefined in tabbing, →I 433
- \‘, definition for tabbing, →I 433
 - ‘ syntax (babel), shorthand character, →II 313, **330**
 - ‘ syntax, →I 179
 - (fontspec), →I 721
 - ‘(letter) syntax (babel), →II 313

- \l
 - (braket), →II 174
 - (tipa), →II 126
 - \l math symbol ||, →II 190, 213
 - | math symbol |, →II 190, 213
 - | syntax, →I 436, 437, 468, 495
 - (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 348, 355, 357
 - (array), →I 438, 439, 440–444, 446, 454, 469
 - (babel), shorthand character, →II 330
 - (booktabs), →I 471
 - (braket), →II 173
 - (changes), →I 247
 - (docstrip), →II 591
 - (hhline), →I 470, 471
 - (keyvaltable), →I 502f.
 - (ltxdoc), →II 598
 - (tabularx), →I 448ff.
 - (tabulary), →I 451f.
 - (widetable), →I 455
 - | (syntax (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 347, 348, 356
 - |) syntax (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 347, 348, 356
 - |– syntax (tikz), →I 636, 644
 - |see syntax (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 347, 349
 - || syntax, →I 437, 495
 - (*fp expr*), →II 658
 - (booktabs), →I 471
 - (braket), →II 174
 - (hhline), →I 470, 471
 - (keyvaltable), →I 502
- ## Numbers
- 0 syntax (abracres), →II 185, 186
 - 0 versus O in fonts, →II 24, 89
 - 1 syntax
 - (abracres), →II 185, 186–190
 - (enumitem|enumerate), →I 275, 276
 - 2e-left syntax, →I 393, 403
 - 2e-right-nonempty syntax, →I 394
 - 2e-right syntax, →I 393, 394, 403
 - 2 syntax (abracres), →II 185, 186
 - 3 syntax (abracres), →II 185
 - 4 syntax (abracres), →II 185, 190
 - 5 syntax (abracres), →II 185
 - 6 syntax (abracres), →II 185, 186
 - 7 syntax (abracres), →II 185
 - 8 syntax (abracres), →II 185
 - 9 syntax (abracres), →II 185
 - 10pt option, →I 370, →II 143, 699
 - 11pt option, →I 22, 258, 280, 370, 665
 - 12pt option, →I 370
 - 93-nameparts.tex file (biblatex), →II 396
- ## A
- A syntax
 - (abracres), →II 185, 187f.
 - (enumitem|enumerate), →I 275, 276
 - (tlc/fcolumn), →I 490
 - a syntax
 - (enumitem|enumerate), →I 275, 276
 - (tlc/fcolumn), →I 490
 - \a', →I 433, 434
 - A-2b value, →I 24
 - a0, . . . , a6 option (crop), →I 412ff.
 - a0, . . . , a6, . . . value (typearea), →I 376
 - a0paper option, →I 366
 - a0paper, . . . , a6paper key/option (geometry), →I 378, 380, 382f.
 - a0paper, . . . , a6paper, . . . option (typearea), →I 375f.
 - a4 *obsolete* package, →I 374, *see instead* geometry package
 - a4dutch *obsolete* package, →I 374, *see instead* geometry
 - a4paper key/option (geometry), →I 366
 - a4paper option, →I 22, 368, →II 697
 - a4wide *obsolete* package, →I 374, *see instead* geometry
 - a5 option (crop), →I 412ff.
 - a5 *obsolete* package, →I 374, *see instead* geometry
 - a5comb *obsolete* package, →I 374, *see instead* geometry
 - a5paper option, →I 368
 - (typearea), →I 375f.
 - a6paper key/option (geometry), →I 380, 382f.
 - \a=, →I 433
 - \a', →I 433
 - \AAalph (fmtcount), →II 650
 - \aaalph (fmtcount), →II 650
 - \AAalphnum (fmtcount), →II 650
 - \aaalphnum (fmtcount), →II 650
 - \ABalph (fmtcount), →II 650
 - \abalph (fmtcount), →II 650
 - \ABalphnum (fmtcount), →II 650
 - \abalphnum (fmtcount), →II 650
 - ABAP value (listings), →I 323
 - abbreviate key/option (biblatex), →II 559
 - abbreviations
 - declaring, →I 161, 162
 - formatting, →I 156–163
 - in bibliographies, →II 401f., 403
 - of environments, →II 131
 - abbrv BibTeX style, →II 395f., 420, 421, 476f., 478, 578, 579
 - (biblatex), →II 438
 - abbrvnat BibTeX style (natbib), →II 420, 472, 497, 499, 506
 - \above, deprecated, →II 165
 - above key
 - (keyvaltable), →I 496, 498
 - (tcolorbox), →I 631
 - (tikz), →I 637, 641f., 644
 - above option (placeins), →I 524
 - \abovecaptionskip length, →I 540, 545
 - abovecaptionskip key (listings), →I 330
 - \abovedisplayshortskip length, →II 143, 144
 - \abovedisplayskip length, →II 143, 144, 145
 - abovefloats option (footmisc), →I 215
 - \abovebaseline rigid length (booktabs), →I 472
 - aboveskip key (listings), →I 329
 - aboveskip key/option
 - (caption), →I 544, 545
 - (subcaption), →I 555

- `\abovetopsep` rigid length (booktabs), →I 472
- `\abovewithdelims`, deprecated, →II 165
- `\Aboxed` (mathtools), →II 174
- abraces package, →II 185–189
- `\abs` (tlc/amsmath), →II 192, 194
- abs syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- abspage counter (perpage), →I 220
- abstract BibTeX field, →II 385, 390, 408, 420
 - (bibtex), →II 385
- abstract BibTeX style, →II 420
- abstract env., →I 28, 37
- abstract package, →I 28
- `\abstractname`, →I 37
 - (babel), →II 305
- `\Ac` (acro), →I 157, 158, 159f, 162
- `\ac` (acro), →I 156, 157, 158, 159–163
- `\aca` (acro), →I 156, 157
- `\Acap` (acro), →I 157
- `\acap` (acro), →I 157
- accanthis package, →II 39
- Accanthis fonts, description/examples, →I 721, →II 39
- `\accent`, →I 658, 684, 747, 764, 767, →II 339
- accented characters
 - in bibliography database, →II 398f.
 - in command and environment names, →II 622
 - in OT1 encoding, →I 658
 - in tables, →I 433f.
 - input encoding, →I 649, 650ff., 692, 693
 - math symbols, →II 176f., 214
 - multilingual documents, →II 310
- `\accentedsymbol` (amsmath), →II 129
- accents package, →II 177, 796
- accents, as superscripts, →II 129, 177
- `\accentset` (accents), →II 177
- `\accsample` (tlc), →II 176
- `\acdot` (acro), →I 162
- `\acf` (acro), →I 156, 157, 158
- `\Acf*` (acro), →I 157, 159
- `\Acfp` (acro), →I 157
- `\acfp` (acro), →I 157
- achieved syntax (typed-checklist), →I 293, 294f.
- `\Acite` (babel), →II 320
- `\acite` (babel), →II 320
- `\Acl` (acro), →I 157
- `\acl` (acro), →I 156, 162
- `\Aclp` (acro), →I 157
- `\aclp` (acro), →I 157
- ACM value (listings), →I 323
- acm BibTeX style, →II 420
- acmart document class, →II 455
- acmauthoryear biblatex style (acmart), →II 456
- acmnumeric biblatex style (acmart), →II 456
- ACMscript value (listings), →I 323
- acos syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- acosd syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- acot syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- acotd syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- `\Acp` (acro), →I 157
- `\acp` (acro), →I 157, 158
- `\acro` (tlc), →I 663
 - acro package, →I 7, 156–163, →II 811, 978
 - not compatible with `\include`, →I 30
 - Acrobat program, →I 101, 107f.
- `\Acrobatmenu` (hyperref), →I 108
- acronyms
 - declaring, →I 156, 157
 - defining style, →I 160f.
 - foreign, →I 160
 - formatting, →I 156–163
 - indefinite forms, →I 158
 - listing, →I 162, 163
 - one-time usage, →I 158, 159
 - plurals, →I 157, 158
 - with citations, →I 159f.
- `\acs` (acro), →I 156, 159, 163
- `\acs*` (acro), →I 157
- `\aCSa` (matters), →II 178
- acsc syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- acscd syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- `\acsetup` (acro), →I 156, 158, 159–163
- ACSL value (listings), →I 323
- `\Acsp` (acro), →I 157
- `\acsp` (acro), →I 157
- action env. (tlc/thmtools), →I 286
- activate key/option (microtype), →I 130, 136, 137, 192
- `\ActivateGenericHook`, →II 674, 683
 - warning using, →II 750
- activeacute option (babel), →II 312
- activegrave option (babel), →II 313
- actual keyword (*MakeIndex|upmendex*), →II 357, 360
- `\actualchar` (doc), →II 593, 594, 596
- `\acute` math accent $\acute{}$, →II 176, 214
- Ada value (listings), →I 323, 324f., 327
- `\add` (tlc/changes), →I 249
- `\add` math operator x (tlc/amsmath), →II 160
- `\AddAbsoluteCounter` (perpage), →I 220
- `\AddBabelHook` (babel), →II 335, 336
- addbang option (fewerfloatpages), →I 522
- `\addbibresource` (biblatex), →II 393, 397, 402, 411, 412,
 - 417, 433–468, 472, 477f., 485ff., 500ff., 506f.,
 - 534–537, 539ff., 543, 545–549, 551–560, 565–569
- `\addcolon` (biblatex), →II 566
- `\addcontentsline`, →I 53ff., 56, 70, 71, 74, →II 352, 372, 574
 - problems with `\include`, →I 71
- `\addcontentsonly` (paracol), →I 348
- `\adddot` (biblatex), →II 478
- `\added` (changes), →I 245, 246–249, 250
 - added value (changes), →I 247
- addedmarkup option (changes), →I 248
- `\addfontfeature` (fontspec),
 - I 713, 714, 716, 718f., 721–724, 726, 727f.
- `\addfontfeatures` (fontspec), →I 713
- `\addline` (addlines), →I 417
- `\addline*` (addlines), →I 417
- `\addlines` (addlines), →I 417
- addlines package, →I 416ff.

`\addlines*` (addlines), →I 417
`\addlinespace` (booktabs), →I 473
`\addparagraphcolumnntypes` (cellspace), →I 476
`\addpenalty`, →I 48, →II 657
 tracing output produced from, →II 771
 address BibTeX entry type (tlc), →II 562f.
 address BibTeX field, →II 382f., 386, 388, 406
`\addsemicolon` (biblatex), →II 433, 486
`\addspace` (biblatex), →II 433, 486
`\AddTo` (jurabib), →II 514, 518, 524, 525f.
`\addto` (babel), →I 84, 91, →II 335, 336, 525
`\addtocategory` (biblatex), →II 552, 553
`\addtocontents`, →I 55, 70, 71, 72
 problems with `\include`, →I 71
`\addtocounter`, →I 34, 349, →II 647, 648
 error using, →II 717, 733f.
 (calc), →II 687
`\AddToHook`, →I 137, 336, 387, 429, →II 336, 672, 673, 674ff., 677, 678, 679, 680, 681f., 683, 684f., 705
 error using, →II 719, 725f.
`\AddToHookNext`, →I 429, →II 673, 674, 680, 682
`\addtolength`, →II 652
 error using, →II 717, 734
 (calc), →II 687, 689
`\advspace`, →I 53f., 60, 63–67, 71, 99, 344, →II 655, 656, 657
 error using, →II 737
 tracing output produced from, →II 771
`\adfdoubleflourishleft` text symbol  (adorn), →II 118
`\adfdoubleflourishright` text symbol  (adorn), →II 118
`\adfflatleafsolidright` text symbol  (adorn), →II 118
`\adfflowerleft` text symbol  (adorn), →II 118
`\adfhangflatleafright` text symbol  (adorn), →II 118
`\adorn` (adorn), →II 118
 adorn package, →II 118
`\adjincludegraphics` (adjustbox), →I 601
 adjust option (cite), →II 480
`\adjustbox` (adjustbox), →I 595, 596–600, 601
 adjustbox env. (adjustbox), →I 595, 600
 adjustbox package, →I 587, 595–601, 614, →II 813
`\adjustboxset` (adjustbox), →I 600
`\adjustimage` (adjustbox), →I 601
`\ADLdrawingmode` (arydshln), →I 470
 Adobe Illustrator program, →I 722
 Adobe InDesign program, →I 722
 Adobe Source Pro fonts, description/examples, →II 35, 112
`\advance`, →II 687
`\AE` text symbol , →I 669, 761, 762, 769
`\ae` text symbol , →I 724, 761, 762, 770, →II 126
`aefkw` biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446
`af` key (keyfloat), →I 568, 569
`\affil` (authblk), →I 27
 affil-it option (authblk), →I 27
 afrikaans option (babel), →II 301
 after key (enumitem), →I 275, 276, 277
 after syntax, →II 684f., 742
 after value (hvfloat), →I 561, 564f.
 after-item-skip key (tasks), →I 290
 after-punct-space key (fnpct), →I 217, 218
 after-skip key (tasks), →I 290, 292
 after_{skip} key (tcolorbox), →I 615, 616, 628
 afterlabel key (enumitem), →I 277
`\afterpage` (afterpage), →I 525, 532
 afterpage package, →I 519, 525
 aftersave key (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 319, 320
 afterword BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 383
 afwl biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, 447
 agsm BibTeX style
 (harvard), →II 420, 490
 (natbib), →II 420, 493ff., 497
 agu BibTeX style, →II 420, 495, 538
 (natbib), →II 495f.
`\Ahead` (tlc|titlesec), →I 51
 ajc2020unofficial biblatex style
 (biblatex-ajc2020unofficial), →II 456
 al key (keyfloat), →I 568, 569
 albanian option (babel), →II 301
`\aldine` text symbol  (fourier-orns), →II 119
 Alegreya package, →I 662, 698, →II 11, 315
 Alegreya fonts, description/examples, →I 503, 662, 695, 697ff., 707ff., 713, 718f., →II 9, 11, 107, 109
 AlegreyaSans package, →I 662, →II 11
`\aleph` math symbol \aleph , →II 213
 Algol value (listings), →I 323
 Algol fonts, description/examples, →I 701, 712, →II 89
 algorrevived package, →I 703, →II 90
 algorithmic env. (algpseudocode), →I 322
 algorithmicx package, →I 322
 algorithms package, →I 322
 algpseudocode package, →I 322
 align env. (amsmath), →I 86, 94f., 336, →II 132, 133, 138, 139f., 148, 151, 153, 162, 174
 adjusting with `\minalignsep`, →II 139f.
 error using, →II 718, 730
 interrupted, →II 143
 align key
 (enumitem), →I 269, 270, 271
 (keyvaltable), →I 495f., 500, 502f., 504
 align* env. (amsmath), →II 132, 171, 174, 181f., 184
 alignat env. (amsmath), →II 132, 139
 alignat* env. (amsmath), →II 132
 aligned env. (amsmath), →II 132, 140f., 156
 adjusting with `\minalignsep`, →II 141
 error using, →II 718, 721f.
 not supported by empheq, →II 174
 alignedat env. (amsmath), →II 132, 140
 alignment
 equations
 groups with alignment, →II 138
 groups without alignment, →II 137
 multiple alignments, →II 138ff.
 multiple lines, no alignment, →II 134f., 148
 multiple lines, with alignment, →II 135f., 137, 147ff.
 tag placement, →II 131f.
 headings, →I 40

- alignment (*cont.*)
 - margins, optical alignment, →II 978
 - mathematical typesetting, →II 200ff., 203f., 206, 207
 - subfloats, →I 551, 552ff., 555
 - subscripts, →II 206, 207
 - tables
 - decimal data,
 - I 476, **481**, 482, 483, **484**, 485ff., 488ff., 491
 - financial data, →I 487, 488ff., 491
 - horizontal, →I 461
 - scientific data, →I 484–487
 - vertical, →I 442, 477ff.
 - tables of contents, →I 62, 63ff.
- all option (getnonfreefonts), →II 3
- all value
 - (acro), →I **159**, 163
 - (changes), →I 247
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 308
 - (hyperref), →I 98
 - (jurabib), →II **511**, 512, **513**, 514, **515**, 524f., **526**
 - (tcolorbox), →I 618
- allbordercolors key/option (hyperref), →I 103
- allcolors key/option (hyperref), →I **103**, →II 547
- allfull value (biblatex), →II 408
- \allletters (tlc), →II 88, 94
- allow-quantity-breaks key (siunitx), →I 176
- \allowbreak, →II 198
- allowbreakbefore option (extdash), →I 151
- \allowdisplaybreaks (amsmath), →II 131, **146**
- \allowhyphens (babel), →II 339
- allowmove option (url), →I 199
- allpages option (continue), →I **407**, 408
- allreversed value (jurabib), →II **515**, 529
- alltt env. (alltt), →I 298
- alltt package, →I 298
- almendra package, →II 100
- Almendra fonts, description/examples, →I 703f., →II **100**
- Alph folio style, →I 386
- Alph syntax (manyfoot|bigfoot), →I 223
- \Alph, →I 35, 53, 98, 99, 255, 256, →II **648**
 - error using, →II 721
 - (babel), producing Greek, →II 316
- \alph, →I 256, 268, →II **648**
 - error using, →II 721
 - (babel), producing Greek, →II 316
 - (perpage), spurious error, →I 219
- alph folio style, →I 386
- alph option (parnotes), →I 227
- alph page style, →II 759
- alph syntax (manyfoot|bigfoot), →I 222, 224
- alph value (enotez), →I 232
- \Alph* (enumitem), →I 275
- \alph* (enumitem), →I 262ff., **268**, 269, 272, 275, 277
- \alpha math symbol α , →I 677, →II 163, 166, 194, 209, **212**, 237, 246, 250, 255, 261–296
- alpha B^BT_EX style, →II 397, 415, **420f.**, 422, 572
 - key construction, →II 388, 398
 - (biblatex), →II 438
- alpha B^BT_EX style (*cont.*)
 - (bibunits), →II 575
- alphabet identifiers, →I **677**, 678ff., 681, 682, →II 254f., **256**, 257
 - maximum number of, →I **681**, 682, →II 739, 754, 764
- alphabetic biblatex style (biblatex), →II 397, **435**, 484, 487
- alphabetic-verb biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, **484**
- alphabetically numbered document headings, →I 35
- alphabetize value (tasks), →I 290
- \AlsoImplementation (doc), →II **587**, 595, 599
- \alsoname (babel), →II 305
- alt key (acro), →I **156**, 157, 160
- alt value (acro), →I 158
- alt-format key (acro), →I 160
- alt-indefinite key (acro), →I 158
- alt-plural key (acro), →I 158
- alt-plural-form key (acro), →I 158
- altDescription env. (tlc), →II **631**, 632
- Alternate key (fontspec), →I 723, **724**
- Alternate value (fontspec), →I **724**, **725**, 726
- alternate:shifted value (upmendex), →II 370
- AlternateOff value (fontspec), →I 726
- alternates option (montserrat), →II 83
- \AltMacroFont (doc), →II 597
- altP option (fbb), →II 38
- alty option
 - (newtxmath), →II 274
 - (newtxtext), →II 247
- always value (changes), →I 250
- \amalg math symbol II, →II 215
- American Mathematical Society, *see* AMS
- amit biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, **447**
- \ampere (siunitx), →I **170**, 175
- ams value (mathalpha), →II 234
- AMS (American Mathematical Society), →II 128ff.
 - document classes, →II 130
- AmSalign env. (empheq), →II 175
- amsalpha B^BT_EX style, →II 420
- amsart document class, →II 128, **130**, 490
- amsbook document class, →II 128, **130**, 490
- amscd package, →II 129, **160f.**
- amsfonts package, →II **130**, 226ff., 239f., 720
- $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\text{-}\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$
 - fonts, →II 130
 - history, →II 128
 - packages, →II 129
 - proof environment, →I 282f., 288
 - theorem-like structures, →I 281–288
- amsmath package, →I 93, 116, **149f.**, 336, →II 116f., **127–156**, 158, **163–171**, **174**, 175, **179–184**, 190, **192ff.**, 196, **199–206**, 208f., 220, **223**, 244, 283, 639, 641, 795, *see also* mathtools package
- documentation, →II 129
- environment abbreviations, →II 131
- error using, →II 711
- fragile commands, →II 131
- options, →II 128
- vs. standard L^AT_EX, →II 132f.

- amsopn package, →II 129, 193
- amsplain BibTeX style, →II 420
- amsproc document class, →II 128, 130
- amsrefs package, →II 799
- amssstyle option (cases), →II 157
- amssymb package, →II 130, 149, 208–224, 226, 236, 239f.
- amssymb.sty file (amssymb), →II 213
- $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\text{-}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$, →II 127f.
- amstext package, →I 167, →II 129, 192
- amsthm package, →I 89, 92, 281–284, 285, 288, →II 129, 795
- amsxtra package, →II 129, 177
- anchor key
 - (draftwatermark), →I 411
 - (tikz), →I 633, 640, 644
- \backslash and, →I 26
 - (ifthen), →II 693
- and keyword (BibTeX|biber), →II 392, 393, 396
- and syntax
 - (biblatex), →II 553, 565
 - (tikz), →I 637, 645
- and value (jurabib), →II 509, 510
- and_others keyword (BibTeX|biber), →II 382f., 391, 396
- \backslash andname (jurabib), →II 527
- anfxerror env. (fixme), →I 244
- anfxfatal env. (fixme), →I 244
- anfxnote env. (fixme), →I 244
- anfxwarning env. (fixme), →I 244
- \backslash ang (siunitx), →I 171, 641
- \backslash angle math symbol \angle (amssymb), →II 213
- angle key
 - (adjustbox), →I 595, 596, 601
 - (draftwatermark), →I 410, 411
 - (graphicx), →I 571, 581, 582, 584f.
 - error using, →II 721
 - (tikz), →I 633
- angle option (natbib), →II 495
- angles, scientific notation, →I 171
- annotate BibTeX style, →II 420
- Annotation key (fontspec), →I 727
- annotation BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 383, 388, 557f.
- annotation BibTeX style, →II 420
- annotations, →I 237–244
 - annotating bibliographies,
 - II 512, 513, 531, 533, 536f., 557, 558
 - annotating formulas, →II 175
 - annotating graphics, →I 593, 594
 - annotating PDFs, →I 250f.
 - as footnotes, →I 244
 - inline, →I 240, 243
 - list of todos, →I 241, 243
 - todos, →I 237, 238, 239f., 241, 242, 243, 244
- annotatorfirstsep key/option (jurabib), →II 509, 515
- annotatorformat key/option (jurabib), →II 509, 524
- annotatorlastsep key/option (jurabib), →II 509
- annotate BibTeX field, →II 388, 420
 - (biblatex), →II 557
 - (custom-bib), →II 430
 - (jurabib), →II 531, 533
- annotate BibTeX style, →II 388
- annotate key/option (jurabib), →II 531, 533
- Anonymous Pro fonts, description/examples, →II 90
- AnonymousPro package, →II 90
- \backslash answer (tlc), →II 602
- Ant value (listings), →I 323
- ante key (lettrine), →I 143, 145
- antpolt package, →II 47
- anttor package, →II 101, 295
- Antykwa Poltawskiego fonts, description/examples, →II 46
- Antykwa Toruńska fonts, description/examples, →II 100
 - in math and text, →II 296
- any value (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 354
- \backslash aoverbrace (abracas), →II 185, 186, 187, 188
- ap key (keyfloat), →I 568, 569
- apa BibTeX style, →II 420
- apa biblatex style (biblatex-apa), →II 439, 440
- \backslash Apageref (babel), →II 320
- \backslash apageref (babel), →II 320
- apalike BibTeX style (apalike), →II 420, 423f.
- apalike package, →II 420, 429, 476
- apalike2 BibTeX style (apalike), →II 420
- appendices, hyperlinks in, →I 98, 99
- \backslash Appendix (tlc), →I 53, 54, 99
- \backslash appendix, →I 26, 28, 53, 98
 - (tlc), →I 53, 54, 99
- appendix syntax (cleveref), →I 89
- \backslash appendixname, →I 37, 43, 53f., 99
 - (babel), →II 305
- \backslash approx math symbol \approx , →I 682,
 - II 172, 183f., 204, 217, 257, 659
- \backslash approxcolon math symbol \approx : (colonequals), →II 221
- \backslash approxcoloncolon math symbol $\approx::$ (colonequals), →II 221
- \backslash approxex math symbol \approx (amssymb), →II 217
- apy key (jurabib), →II 510
- \backslash apyformat (jurabib), →II 528
- \backslash ar (tikz-cd), →II 161
- arabi package, →II 323, 341
- \backslash arabic, →I 35f., 256, 268, 292, 327, 738,
 - II 142, 631, 637, 646f., 648, 649, 650
 - (babel), →II 334
- arabic folio style, →I 386
- arabic option (babel), →II 332
- Arabic language, →II 332, 341
- arabic numbers, document headings, →I 35
- \backslash arabic* (enumitem), →I 263f., 268, 269, 272, 274f.
- arabicfront package, →I 26
- arabluatex package, →II 341
- arc (tikz path operation), →I 636
- \backslash arc (pict2e), →I 608
- arc syntax (tikz), →I 637
- \backslash arccos math operator $\arccos x$, →II 193, 321
- \backslash arcctg math operator $\arcctg x$ (babel), →II 321
- \backslash arch math operator $\arch x$ (babel), →II 321
- archa biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, 447
- archaeologie biblatex style (archaeologie), →II 446
- archiving documents, →I 110–114, →II 791
- \backslash arcmminute (siunitx), →I 171

- arcs, drawing, →I 608
- `\arcsecond` (siunitx), →I 171
- `\arcsin` math operator $\arcsin x$, →II 193, 321
- `\arctan` math operator $\arctan x$, →II 193, 321
- `\arctg` math operator $\arctg x$ (babel), →II 321
- `\Aref` (babel), →II 320
- `\aref` (babel), →II 320
- `\arg` math operator $\arg x$, →II 193
- `arg_close` keyword (*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 357
- `arg_open` keyword (*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 357
- arguments, *see also* keys
 - argument processors, →II 642ff.
 - key/value, →II 700–703
 - moving, →I 199, 269, →II 131, 626, 639, 715f.
 - optional, →II 626, 631, 632, 633f., 637ff., 640, 641
 - testing for, →II 639f.
 - preprocessing, →II 644f.
 - restrictions, →II 627, 716
 - typed text in, →I 319–322
 - unavailable, →II 629
- arimo package, →II 69
- Arimo fonts, description/examples, →II 68
- arithmetic calculations (*calc*), →II 687f., 689
- Armenian language, →II 341
- around key (keyval), →I 496, 504
- array env., →I 123, 432, 436, 437, 443, 491,
 - II 133, 153f., 158, 159, 663
 - error using, →II 726, 731f.
 - style parameters, →I 436
 - (array), →I 442f., 445, 481, →II 158
 - (delarray), →II 157, 158
- array package, →I 167, 436, 437–446, 454, 476–493, 497,
 - II 157f., 599, 695, 784, 978
 - combined with *arydshln*, →I 469
 - combined with *booktabs*, →I 471
 - combined with *color/xcolor*, →I 466
 - combined with *supertabular*, →I 457
 - incompatible with *tbls*, →I 467
- array.dtx file (array), →II 599
- `\arraybackslash` (array), →I 443, 446, 447, 448f., 454f.
- `\arraycolsep` rigid length, →I 436, 443, →II 154
- `\arrayrulecolor` (colortbl), →I 467, 468f.
- `\arrayrulewidth` rigid length, →I 437, 447, 468, 469, 471
- arrays, delimiters surrounding, →II 157, 158f.
- `\arraystretch`, →I 437, 441, 467, 468f., 471, 474
- `\arrow` (tikz-cd), →II 161, 162f.
- arrow extensions, math symbols, →II 220
- `\ArrowBoldRightStroke` (typed-checklist), →I 296
- `\Arrownote` math symbol \nearrow (stmaryrd), →II 220
- `\arrownote` math symbol \nearrow (stmaryrd), →II 220, 221
- arrows env. (tlc/lineno), →I 339
- arrows, drawing, →I 604
- arrows, math symbols
 - decorated, →II 163f.
 - extensions, →II 220
 - negated, →II 220
 - standard, →II 219f.
- `arrows.meta` library (tikz), →I 640ff.
- `\Arrowvert` math symbol \Uparrow , →II 190, 213
- `\arrowvert` math symbol \Uparrow , →II 190, 213
- arthistory-bonn biblatex style (biblatex-arthistory-bonn),
 - II 452
- article BibTeX entry type, →II 382f., 386, 391, 402, 418
 - (jurabib), →II 511
- article document class, →I 10, 18, 27, 37, 210, 214, 264, 366,
 - 394, 397, 670, →II 130, 371, 415
 - footnote numbering, →I 208
 - heading commands, →I 32, 35, 73
 - replacement for, →I 429f.
- Artifact syntax (typed-checklist), →I 293
- `\Artifact` (typed-checklist), →I 293
- `\artist` (tlc), →I 74
- `\arxiv` (uri), →I 203
- arydshln* package, →I 467, 469f.
- `\aS` (mattens), →II 178, 179
- as key (keyfloat), →I 568, 569
- `\aSs` (mattens), →II 178
- `\aSb` (mattens), →II 178, 179
- `\Asbuk` (babel), →II 316
- `\asbuk` (babel), →II 316
- ascii option (inputenc), →II 756
- AsciiList env. (typed-checklist), →I 295
- asciilist package, →I 295
- `\asciispace`, →I 297
- asec syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- asecd syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- `\asin` (uri), →I 203
- asin syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- asind syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- asinpost key (uri), →I 203
- asinpre key (uri), →I 203
- `\Ask` (docstrip), →II 602, 603
- `\askforoverwritfalse` (docstrip), →II 603
- `\askforoverwritetrue` (docstrip), →II 603
- askinclude package, →I 30
- `\askonceonly` (docstrip), →II 603
- Assembler value (listings), →I 323
- `\assignpagestyle` (titlesec), →I 48
- `\assignrefcontextentries` (biblatex), →II 555
- `\ast` math symbol $*$, →II 177, 215, 261–296
- asterisk (*) as error message, →II 717
- astron BibTeX style, →II 420
- astron package, →II 429
- `\astronomicalunit` (siunitx), →I 171
- asymmetric key/option (geometry), →I 379, 380
- asymmetrical page layout, →I 380
- `\asymp` math symbol \asymp , →II 217
- at syntax (tikz), →I 635, 637f., 640, 641f.
- atan syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- atand syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- `\AtBeginBibliography` (biblatex), →II 560, 565, 569
- `\AtBeginDelayedFloats` (endfloat), →I 527
- `\AtBeginDocument`, →I 69, 91, 742,
 - II 333, 499, 538, 587, 599, 614, 671, 678, 683, 705
- `\AtBeginDvi`, →II 680
 - warning using, →II 752

`\AtBeginFigures` (endfloat), →I 527
`\AtBeginShipoutFirst`, warning using, →II 752
`\AtBeginTables` (endfloat), →I 527
`\AtEndDocument`, →I 386, →II 599, 678f., **705**
`\AtEndOfClass`, →II **704f.**, 709
`\AtEndOfPackage`, →II 704f.
`\AtEveryCitekey` (biblatex), →II 502, **553**
`\AtEveryEndnotesList` (enotez), →I **230**, 231
`\AtForty` text symbol \mathbb{V} (marvosym), →II 117
`\athnum`
 (athnum), →II 319
 (babel), →II 319
`\AtNextBibliography` (biblatex), →II 397
`\AtNextCite` (biblatex), →II **485**, 501
`\AtNextEndnotesList` (enotez), →I 231
`\atop`, deprecated, →II 165
`\atopwithdelims`, deprecated, →II 165
 `attach_boxed_title_to_bottom_left` key (tcolorbox), →I 622
 `attach_boxed_title_to_top_left` key (tcolorbox), →I 625
 `attach_boxed_title_to_top_right` key (tcolorbox), →I **622**, 625
`\atto` (siunitx), →I 172
`atveryend` *obsolete* package,
 →II 679, *see instead* hook management
`auf` key (keyfloat), →I **569**, 570
`aul` key (keyfloat), →I **569**, 570
`\aunderbrace` (abracas), →II **185**, 186, **187**, 188, 190
`aup` key (keyfloat), →I **569**, 570
`aus` key (keyfloat), →I 569
`australian` option (babel), →II 301
`austrian` option (babel), →II **301**, 525
`auth-sc` option (authblk), →I 27
`authblk` package, →I 27f.
`\author`, →I 26
 warning using, →II 756
 (authblk), →I 27
 (titling), →I 27
`author` BibTeX field, →II 382f., 386f., **388**, 391, 394–399,
 403–406, 408, 418, 523, 568
 (jurabib), →II 510
`author` key
 (fixme), →I 244
 (todonotes), →I **241**, 242
`author` index, generating, →II 372
`author-biblatex` BibTeX field (tlc), →II 408
`author-date` citations,
 →II 436, 438, 440f., 443f., 446–456, 458–461, 465f.,
 487–502, 546, *see also* citation systems
 author information missing, →II 497f., 502
 author list only with first citation, →II 494f., 502
 author-number system, switching to, →II 505
 authors on single line, →II 496
 back references, →II 547
 biblatex package, →II 500ff.
 capitalization, →II 501
 commands
 biblatex package, →II 500ff.

author-date citations (*cont.*)

 natbib package, →II 490, **491**, 492f., 494–500
 compressing citations, →II 501
 customizing citations, →II 492f., 495f.
 customizing the bibliography, →II 496, 497
 definition, →II 470
 electronic publications, →II 499
 full citations in running text, →II 537, 538
 history of, →II 489f.
 indexing citations automatically, →II 498, 546
 multiple authors, truncating,
 →II **471f.**, 485, 501, 547ff., 550
 problem with, →II 471
 multiple citations, →II 493f., 502
 number of authors, →II 501
 number-only system, switching to, →II 505
 punctuation, →II 546
 short-title format, combining, →II 523, 524
 styles supported, →II 499f.
 unambiguous citations, →II **548f.**, 550
 year information missing, →II 497f.
`author-number` citations,
 →II 438, **502–507**, *see also* citation systems
 biblatex package, →II 506f.
 compressing citations, →II 504, 505
 customizing citations, →II 505, 506
 definition, →II 473, 502
 sort order, →II 504, 505
`author-title` citations, →II 436, 438, 443, 446, 455, 464ff.,
 473, **507–537**, *see also* citation systems
 ambiguous citations, →II 550
 back references, →II 547
 biblatex package, →II 534–537, 558
 definition, →II 473
 indexing citations automatically, →II 546
 jurabib package, →II 507–534
`author-year` citations, *see* author-date citations
`authorcommentcount` counter (changes), →I 249
`authordate` key/option (biblatex-chicago), →II 440
`authordate-trad` key/option (biblatex-chicago), →II 440
`authordate1` BibTeX style (authordate1-4), →II 419, **420**, 489
`authordate1-4` package, →II **420**, 429, 489
`authordate2` BibTeX style (authordate1-4), →II 419, **420**, 489
`authordate3` BibTeX style (authordate1-4), →II 419, **420**, 489
`authordate4` BibTeX style (authordate1-4), →II 419, **420**, 489
`authorformat` key/option (jurabib),
 →II **509**, 510, 512, 515, 520, 521, 523f., 526ff., 529
`authormarkup` option (changes), →I 248
`authormarkupposition` option (changes), →I 248
`authormarkuptext` option (changes), →I 248
`authors`, bibliographies
 gender, →II 525, 526, 533, 560
 indexing citations automatically, →II 546
 information field, →II 533
 information missing, →II 497f., 502
 list on single line, →II 496
 list only with first citation, →II 494f., 502
 list separator, →II 527, 529

- authors, bibliographies (*cont.*)
 - multiple, truncating, →II 471f., 485, 501, 547ff., 550
 - problem with, →II 471
 - author**title** biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, 436, 534, 535, 543, 561
 - author**title**-**comp** biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435
 - author**title**-**dw** biblatex style (biblatex-dw), →II 464, 536
 - author**title**-**ibid** biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, 535
 - author**title**-**icomp** biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, 535
 - author**title**-**tcomp** biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435
 - author**title**-**terse** biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, 535
 - author**title**-**ticomp** biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, 534, 535
 - author**year** biblatex style (biblatex), →II 408, 433, 435, 436, 472, 500, 501f., 546-549, 551, 553f., 556-560, 565f., 569
 - author**year** option (natbib), →II 505
 - author**year**-**archaeology** biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446
 - author**year**-**comp** biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, 500, 501, 502
 - author**year**-**comp**-**archaeology** biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446
 - author**year**-**ibid** biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, 500, 501
 - author**year**-**ibid**-**archaeology** biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446
 - author**year**-**icomp** biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, 500, 501
 - author**year**-**icomp**-**archaeology** biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446
 - auto value
 - (enotez), →I 231
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 309, 316
 - auto-completion, page layout, →I 377, 378f., 380, 381, 382f., 384
 - auto_ **counter** key (tcolorbox), →I 627
 - \autocite (biblatex), →II 443, 453, 486, 487, 539ff., 544, 545, 546, 560
 - autocite key/option (biblatex), →II 486, 487, 545f.
 - autod~~ing~~list env. (pifont), →II 114
 - autoinst program, →II 2, 7, 36
 - autolang key/option (biblatex), →II 392, 393, 560
 - autoload.bcp47 key (babel), →II 308
 - automatic conversion, scientific notation, →I 174
 - automatic indexing, disabling
 - doc package, →II 588
 - ltxdoc class, →II 599
 - automatic line breaking, equations, →II 146, 147ff.
 - autopn env. (parnotes), →I 226, 227
 - AutoSpaceFootnotes key (babel), →II 322
 - autostyle key/option (csquotes), →I 183, 184, →II 561
 - .aux file extension, →I 9, 11, 29, 257, →II 409, 417, 419, 475, 570f., 613, 677ff.
 - (BibTeX), →II 378, 409-412, 419
 - (askinclud), →I 30
 - (bibtopic), →II 579
 - (chapterbib), →II 571f.
 - .aux file extension (*cont.*)
 - (citetags), →II 416
 - (enumitem), →I 269
 - (footmisc), →I 210
 - (hyperref), →I 101
 - (index), →II 373
 - (longtable), →I 459f.
 - (mparhack), →I 233
 - (multibib), →II 581
 - (perpage), →I 219
 - auxiliary files, →I 11f.
 - available syntax (typed-checklist), →I 294
 - avant *obsolete* package, →I 691, *see instead* tgadvantor
 - Avant Garde Gothic fonts, description/examples, →I 690, →II 69
 - avoid value (widows-and-orphans), →I 426
 - avoid-all key/option (widows-and-orphans), →I 426
 - Awk value (listings), →I 323
 - awk program, →II 416
 - axes option (crop), →I 412
 - \Az (babel), →II 320
 - \az (babel), →II 320
 - az value (upmendex), →II 369
 - azerbaijani option (babel), →II 301
- ## B
- B syntax
 - (adjustbox), →I 598
 - (tlc/abracas), →II 188, 189
 - \b text accent □, →I 764, 770
 - b syntax, →I 507, 510, 514, 516
 - preventing placement of float, →I 514
 - (boxes), →II 663, 664, 665, 666
 - (cmd/env decl), →II 633, 634, 641, 642
 - error using, →II 718, 728
 - (font series), →I 671, 673, 712, 732, 733, →II 41
 - (adjustbox), →I 598
 - (array), →I 439, 440, 441f., 447, 477
 - (delarray), →II 158
 - (float), →I 529
 - (hhline), →I 470, 471
 - (multirow), →I 478
 - (tlc/abracas), →II 188
 - b value
 - (draftwatermark), →I 411
 - (keyvaltable), →I 497, 498
 - b0, . . . , b6 option (crop), →I 412
 - b0j, . . . , b6j key/option (geometry), →I 378
 - b0paper, . . . , b6paper key/option (geometry), →I 378
 - b0paper, . . . , b6paper, . . . option (typearea), →I 375
 - b5paper option, →I 368
 - babel key/option (microtype), →I 130
 - babel library (tikz), →II 307
 - babel package, →I 82, 91, 134, 152, 155, 157, 160, 184, 247, →II 297ff., 300-340, 342, 377, 392, 430, 433, 490, 524, 559, 574, 587, 674, 682f., 796f.
 - customizing, →II 332-340
 - description, →II 300f.

- babel package (*cont.*)
 - error using, →II 711, 725, 738, 742, 744
 - hyphenation in multiple languages, →II 337f.
 - language definition files
 - definition, →II 336
 - hyphenation patterns, adjusting, →II 333f.
 - language options, →II 301
 - encoding languages and fonts, →II 323
 - language-specific commands, →II 315–320
 - layout considerations, →II 320ff.
 - shorthands, →II 310–314
 - translations, →II 309
 - language-dependent strings, →II 305, 307, 309, 336
 - resetting state, →II 335
 - styles, creating, →II 339f.
 - user interface, →II 301–332
 - warning using, →II 765
- babel-de.ini file (babel), →II 340
- babel.def file (babel), →II 336
- babel/⟨language⟩/afterextras hook (babel), →II 682, 683
- \babeladjust (babel), →II 308
- babelbib package, →II 390, 392
- \babelfont (babel), →II 331, 332, 761
- \babelprovide (babel), →II 331f., 333, 334
- \babelsublr (babel), →II 323
- babypain B^AS^E style, →II 392
- back matter, →I 26, 27f.
- back references, bibliographies, →II 533, 547
- backend key, →I 24
 - (keyvalable), →I 495, 497, 498f.
- backend key/option (biblatex), →II 542, 543
- \backepsilon math symbol ϵ (amssymb), →II 221
- background key (changes), →I 248
- background fill, →I 307f., 312
- backgroundcolor key
 - (listings), →I 332
 - (todonotes), →I 239, 240, 249
- \backmatter, →I 26, 28
- \backprime math symbol \backprime (amssymb), →II 213
- backref key (enotez), →I 231
- backref key/option (biblatex), →II 547, 566
- backref option (hyperref), →I 98
- backrefstyle key/option (biblatex), →II 547
- \backsimeq math symbol \backsimeq (amssymb), →II 217
- \backsimeq math symbol \backsimeq (amssymb), →II 217
- \backslashash math symbol \backslashash , →II 190, 213
- badness rating, line breaks, →II 657
- balancing columns, →I 351, 352, 355–359, 360
- balancingshow option (multicol), →I 359, 360
- \balphamath symbol α (tlc/bm), →II 238
- \bar math accent $\bar{}$, →II 176, 214, 261–296
- \baro math symbol ϕ (stmaryrd), →II 215
- \barwedge math symbol $\bar{\wedge}$ (amssymb), →II 215
- \barwidth rigid length (vertbars), →I 251
- base value
 - (caption), →I 546
 - (tikz), →I 640
- base_⟨west⟩ value (tikz), →I 640
- baseline key
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 316
 - (tikz), →I 634, 643
- \baselineskip length, →I 139, 140f., 367, 369f., 385, 415,
 - II 66, 654, 655, 660, 666, 771, 772
 - adjusting the leading, →I 691
 - (geometry), →I 378
 - (multicol), →I 357
 - (typearea), →I 375
 - (yfonts), →II 105
- \baselinestretch, →II 140, 141
- baselinestretch key (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 309
- baseurl key/option (hyperref), →I 101
- basewidth key (listings), →I 327f.
- bash value (listings), →I 323, 326, 328
- Basic value (listings), →I 323
- basic value (babel), →II 332
- basicstyle key (listings), →I 324
- Baskervaldx package, →II 48, 273
- baskervaldx option
 - (newtxmath), →II 273
 - (newtxtext), →II 247
- Baskervaldx fonts, description/examples, →II 48
 - in math and text, →II 272f.
- baskerville option (newtxtext), →II 247
- baskervillef option
 - (newtxmath), →II 273
 - (newtxtext), →II 247
- baskervillef package, →II 48, 273
- BaskervilleF fonts, description/examples, →I 721, →II 47
 - in math and text, →II 271, 273
- basque option (babel), →II 301
- \batchinput (docstrip), →II 603
- \batchmode, →II 749, 780
- bath biblatex style (biblatex-bath), →II 452
- bb key
 - (graphicx), →I 580, 581, 582
 - (mathalpha), →II 230
- bb value (unicode-math), →II 260
- \bbalpha math symbol α (bboldx), →II 227
- \bbbeta math symbol β (bboldx), →II 227
- \Bbbk math symbol \mathbb{k} (amssymb), →II 213
- \bbDelta math symbol Δ (bboldx), →II 227
- \bbdelta math symbol δ (bboldx), →II 227
- \bbGamma math symbol Γ (bboldx), →II 227
- \bbgamma math symbol γ (bboldx), →II 227
- bbit value (unicode-math), →II 260
- .bb1 file extension, →I 9, 11, 12, 112, →II 378, 405, 409f.,
 - 417, 419, 517, 537f., 541f., 570f., 574
- (bibentry), →II 538
- (biber), →II 380, 410, 433, 489, 541f.
- (jurabib), →II 409
- \bblallowhyphens (babel), →II 339
- \bbLambda math symbol Λ (bboldx), →II 227
- \bbLangle math symbol \langle (bboldx), →II 227
- \bbLbrack math symbol \llbracket (bboldx), →II 227
- \bbLparen math symbol \llparenthesis (bboldx), →II 227
- bbold value (mathalpha), →II 234

- `bboldx` package, →II 227
- `\bbOmega` math symbol Ω (`bboldx`), →II 227
- `\bbomega` math symbol ω (`bboldx`), →II 227
- `\bbRangle` math symbol \rangle (`bboldx`), →II 227
- `\bbRbrack` math symbol \rfloor (`bboldx`), →II 227
- `\bbRparen` math symbol \rangle (`bboldx`), →II 227
- `bbs` BibTeX style, →II 420
- `bbscaled` key (`mathalpha`), →II 231
- `\bbslash` math symbol \backslash (`stmaryrd`), →II 215
- `bbsymbols` option (`bboldx`), →II 227
- `\bbTheta` math symbol Θ (`bboldx`), →II 227
- `.bbx` file extension (`biblatex`), →I 11, →II 433, 543, 563
- `bc` syntax (*font series*), →I 732, 733, 734
- `.bcf` file extension (`biber`), →I 11, 12, →II 380, 409ff., 417, 475
- `BCOR` key/option (`typearea`), →I 376
- `BCP` 47, →II 308
- `\bCSb` (`mattens`), →II 178, 179
- `be` value (`upmendex`), →II 369
- `beamer` key (`tcolorbox`), →I 620, 621, 622, 625
- `\bear` (`tikzlings`), →I 645
- `bec` syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- `\because` math symbol \because (`amssymb`), →II 221
- `\becquerel` (`siunitx`), →I 170
- `before` key (`enumitem`), →I 276, 277
- `before` syntax, →II 684f., 742
- `before` value (`hvfloating`), →I 561
- `before-footnote-space` key (`fnpct`), →I 217, 218
- `before-skip` key (`tasks`), →I 290, 292
- `before1988` syntax (`tlc/biblatex`), →II 554
- `before_skip` key (`tcolorbox`), →I 615, 616, 628
- `\begin`, →II 629, 637, 641, 676
 - error using, →II 718, 722f.
 - hooks for, →II 675, 678
 - problem with `adjustbox`, →I 600
- `begindocument` hook,
 - II 675, 678, 684, 705, *see also* `\AtBeginDocument`
- `begindocument/after` hook, →II 705
- `begindocument/before` hook, →II 678
- `begindocument/end` hook, →II 678
- `\begingroup`, →II 197, 718, 722, 747, 751
 - error using, →II 723, 732
 - in math, →II 197
- `beginpenalty` key (`enumitem`), →I 265
- `behind_path` key (`tikz`), →I 640
- `\bel` (`siunitx`), →I 171
- `belarusian` option (`babel`), →II 301
- `below` key
 - (`keyvaltable`), →I 496
 - (`tikz`), →I 641, 644
- `below` option (`placeins`), →I 524
- `\belowbottomsep` rigid length (`booktabs`), →I 472
- `\belowcaptionskip` length, →I 540, 545
- `\belowcaptionskip` key (`listings`), →I 330
- `\belowdisplayshortskip` length, →II 143, 144
- `\belowdisplayskip` length, →II 143, 144, 145
- `belowfloats` option (`footmisc`), →I 215
- `\belowrulesep` rigid length (`booktabs`), →I 472
- `belowskip` key (`listings`), →I 329
- `belowskip` key/option
 - (caption), →I 545
 - (subcaption), →I 555
- `bend` key (`tikz`), →I 640
- `bend_left` key (`tikz`), →I 640, →II 162
- `bend_right` key (`tikz`), →I 644, →II 162
- `bending` library (`tikz`), →I 640
- `bengali` package, →II 341
- `\beta` math symbol β , →I 674, 677, →II 166, 212, 246, 250
- `\beth` math symbol \beth (`amssymb`), →II 213
- `beton` package, →II 239, 241
- `\between` math symbol \between (`amssymb`), →II 221
- `between` key (`tcolorbox`), →I 631
- `bevel` value (`tikz`), →I 639
- `\beveljoin` (`pict2e`), →I 607, 611
- `bex` syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- `\bf`, *obsolete — do not use*, →I 648, 670, →II 431
- `bf` option (`titlesec`), →I 40, 41
- `bf` syntax, →I 673f.
- `bf` value
 - (caption), →I 462, 538, 542, 543f., 548f.
 - (changes), →I 248
 - (subcaption), →I 554
- `\bfB` math symbol \mathbf{B} (`tlc/bm`), →II 235
- `bfb` option
 - (`bboldx`), →II 227
 - (`mathalpha`), →II 230
- `bfc` option (`mathalpha`), →II 230
- `bfc` value (`unicode-math`), →II 260
- `\bfdefault`, →I 671, 673, 674
- `bffrak` option (`mathalpha`), →II 230
- `bffrak` value (`unicode-math`), →II 260
- `bfit` value
 - (changes), →I 248
 - (`unicode-math`), →II 260
- `bfs` option (`mathalpha`), →II 230
- `bfs` value (`unicode-math`), →II 260
- `\bfseries`, →I 484, 661, 665, 667, 668, 671, 673, →II 630
 - forbidden in math, →I 677
 - (`fcolumn`), not allowed in F-column, →I 488
 - (`fontspec`), →I 712, 714
 - (`siunitx`), →I 485
 - (`ulem`), replaced by `\uwave`, →I 190
- `bfseries` env., →I 660
- `bfsfit` value (`unicode-math`), →II 260
- `bfsfup` value (`unicode-math`), →II 260
- `bfup` value (`unicode-math`), →II 260
- `\bfX` math symbol \mathbf{x} (`tlc/bm`), →II 235
- `bg` key (`keyvaltable`), →I 496, 500f.
- `bg` value (`upmendex`), →II 369
- `\bga` (`tlc/amsmath`), →II 131
- `bgcolor` key
 - (`adjustbox`), →I 599
 - (`thmtools`), →I 286
- `\bgroup`, →II 717, 751
- `.bib` file extension, →I 11f.,
 - II 380, 385, 401f., 408ff., 414, 417f., 542f., 556, 560
- `\cite` in, →II 407

- .bib file extension (*cont.*)
 - comments in the file, →II 381
 - (BibTeX), →II 381, 413
 - (biber), →II 380, 384, 399, 543
 - (bibextract), →II 416
 - (biblatex), →II 539, 544, 547, 563, 567
 - (citefind), →II 416
 - (custom-bib), →II 430
 - (multibib), →II 580
 - bib syntax (biblatex), →II 507, 566
 - bib value (biblatex), →II 546
 - \bibAnnoteFile (jurabib), →II 528
 - \bibAnnotePath (jurabib), →II 532
 - \bibansep (jurabib), →II 528, 529
 - \bibapifont (jurabib), →II 528
 - \bibatsep (jurabib), →II 528, 529
 - \bibauthormultiple (jurabib), →II 530, 531
 - \bibbdsep (jurabib), →II 488, 528, 529
 - \bibbfsasep (jurabib), →II 529
 - \bibbfsesep (jurabib), →II 529
 - \bibbstasep (jurabib), →II 529
 - \bibbstesep (jurabib), →II 529
 - \bibbtasep (jurabib), →II 529
 - \bibbtasep (jurabib), →II 529
 - \bibbtfont (jurabib), →II 528
 - \bibbysection (biblatex), →II 557
 - \bibbysegment (biblatex), →II 557
 - bibclean program, →II 415, 416, 796
 - \bibcloseparen (biblatex), →II 478
 - \bibcolumnsep (jurabib), →II 530
 - \bibdata, →II 412
 - multiple uses (chapterbib), →II 572
 - problems with, →II 412
 - \bibeanssep (jurabib), →II 528
 - \bibefnfont (jurabib), →II 528
 - \bibelndefnfont (jurabib), →II 528
 - \bibentry (bibentry), →II 537, 538, 539
 - bibentry value (jurabib), →II 529
 - bibentry package, →II 473, 537f.
 - biber value (biblatex), →II 543
 - biber program, →II 12, 18, →II 298, 378, 379–413, 414, 417f., 489, 506, 550, 559, 562, 569, 578, 761, 803, 981
 - biber/biblatex differences to BibTeX workflow, →II 18, →II 381, 384ff., 388–394, 396–407, 411f.
 - bibextract program, →II 416
 - \bibfnfont (jurabib), →II 528
 - \bibfont (natbib), →II 497, 506
 - bibformat key/option (jurabib), →II 425, 526, 529, 530f.
 - \bibhang rigid length (natbib), →II 497, 506
 - problem using, →II 506
 - \bibhowcited (jurabib), →II 528
 - \bibidemPfname (jurabib), →II 526
 - \bibidemPfname (jurabib), →II 526
 - \bibidemPmname (jurabib), →II 526
 - \bibidemPmname (jurabib), →II 526
 - \bibidemPpname (jurabib), →II 526
 - \bibidemPpname (jurabib), →II 526
 - \bibidemPpname (jurabib), →II 526
 - \bibidemPpname (jurabib), →II 526
 - \bibidemSfname (jurabib), →II 526
 - \bibidemsfname (jurabib), →II 526
 - \bibidemSname (jurabib), →II 526, 530
 - \bibidemsname (jurabib), →II 526
 - \bibidemSname (jurabib), →II 526
 - \bibidemsname (jurabib), →II 526
 - \bibindent rigid length, →II 477
 - \bibinitperiod (biblatex), →II 542
 - bibintoc value (biblatex), →II 550
 - \bibitem, →II 377, 387, 475f., 481, 488, 489, 541, 569f., 747
 - error using, →II 716
 - warning using, →II 761
 - (bibentry), →II 538
 - (chicago), →II 488
 - (harvard), →II 490
 - (hyperref), →II 198
 - (jurabib), →II 488, 508, 532
 - (natbib), →II 490f., 498, 505
 - (refcheck), →II 195
 - (showkeys), →II 194
 - (xr), →II 195
- \bibitemsep rigid length (biblatex), →II 552
 - \bibjtfont (jurabib), →II 528
 - \bibjtsep (jurabib), →II 529
 - biblabel option (cite), →II 481, 483
 - biblatex package, →II 11f., 18, 182, →II 328, 378f., 381, 387, 390, 397, 407–412, 432–468, 470, 473f., 478, 484–487, 488f., 500ff., 534–569, 570, 803, 979
 - author-date citations, →II 500ff.
 - author-number citations, →II 506f.
 - author-title citations, →II 534–537
 - compatibility matrix, →II 570
 - compatibility with natbib syntax, →II 484f., 543
 - empty bibliography warning, →II 550
 - number-only citations, →II 484–487
 - verbose citations, →II 538–541
 - biblatex-chicago package, →II 440
 - biblatex-cv biblatex style (biblatex-cv), →II 462
 - biblatex-dw package, →II 536
 - biblatex-ext package, →II 435, 437, 473, 478, 506, 562
 - biblatex-juradiss biblatex style (biblatex-juradiss), →II 466, 536
 - biblatex-juradiss package, →II 536
 - biblatex-spbasic biblatex style (biblatex-spbasic), →II 459
 - biblatex-trad package, →II 478
 - biblatex.cfg file (biblatex), →II 544
 - biblatex.def file (biblatex), →II 563, 566
 - biblatex2bibitem package, →II 378
 - bible option (blindtext), →II 364
 - \bibleftcolumn (jurabib), →II 530
 - \bibleftcolumnadjust (jurabib), →II 530
 - biblikecite key/option (jurabib), →II 528
 - bibliographies, *see also* BibTeX; citations; database format; database management tools
 - BibTeX variants, →II 378ff.
 - abbreviated listings, →II 558
 - annotating, →II 512, 513, 531, 533, 557, 558
 - author-date citations, →II 497

bibliographies (*cont.*)

authors

- gender, →II 525, 526, 533, 560
- information field, →II 533
- information missing, →II 497f., 502
- list on single line, →II 496
- list only with first citation, →II 494f., 502
- list separator, →II 527, 529
- multiple, truncating, →II 471f., 485, 501, 547ff., 550
- name, formatting, →II 426

back references, →II 533, 547

citation input file, creating, →II 409–413

citations

- as footnotes, →II 517f., 519, 539, 540
- author-date, →II 496, 497
- in captions or headings, →II 483
- indexing automatically, →II 498, 512, 546

citations, sort order

- author-number citation system, →II 504, 505
- number-only citation system, →II 478f., 481, 485f., 504f.
- short-title citation system, →II 533

collections, →II 533

color, →II 480

column layout, →II 530

comparison of packages, →II 474

compressing citations, →II 501, 504, 505

configuration files, external, →II 532

cross-references, →II 523

customizing, →II 562–569

- author-date citation system, →II 496, 497
- short-title citation system, →II 527, 528, 529, 530f., 532

database format, →II 380–408

database management tools, →II 414–418

description, →II 375f.

dissertation year, →II 533

DOI, →II 499

edition information, →II 533

editor information, →II 533

EID, →II 500

electronic publications, →II 499

endnote citations, →II 517f., 519

fonts, →II 527f.

footnote citations, →II 517f., 519, 539, 540

format directives, →II 566, 567ff.

founder information, →II 533

gender information, →II 525, 526, 533

hyperlinks back to citations, →I 98

indentation, →II 529, 530

input file, creating, →II 409–413

Internet resources, →II 413

ISBN/ISSN, →II 500

keywords, associating with database entries, →II 384

language support, →II 392f.

last update field, →II 534

line breaks, →II 479

listed in tables of contents, →I 56

bibliographies (*cont.*)

multi-language support,

- II 524, 525, 526, 559f., 564, 565

multiple bibliographies

- biblatex package, →II 551–554, 556f.
- bibtopic package, →II 578, 579f.
- bibunits package, →II 574, 575ff., 578
- by arbitrary unit, →II 574, 575ff., 578
- by chapter, →II 571, 572ff.
- by topic, →II 551ff., 554
- by topic, separate citation commands, →II 580, 581
- by topic, separate database files, →II 578, 579f.
- chapterbib package, →II 571, 572ff.
- citation systems, →II 569–581
- description, →II 569ff.
- multibib package, →II 580, 581
- package comparisons, →II 571
- per included file, →II 571, 572ff.
- reference sections, →II 556f.
- reference segments, →II 556f.
- sorting, →II 554, 555

online resources, →II 413

page boundaries, ignoring, →II 520

page total field, →II 534

parentheses

- number-only citation system, →II 480
- short-title citation system, →II 526

pre-notes, →II 512, 513

print commands, →II 564f.

printing, →II 550, 551–554

programs

- biber, →II 378ff.
- BBT_{EX}, →II 378–413, 418–425
- BBT_{EX}8, →II 379
- Unicode aware version, →II 379f.

punctuation

- author-date citation system, →II 546
- customizing, →II 566
- number-only citation system, →II 479, 482f.
- short-title citation system, →II 528, 529

sentence casing, →II 561

short-title citations, →II 527, 528, 529, 530f., 532

sort order, →II 387ff., 554, 555

- author-number citation system, →II 504, 505
- multi-language support, →II 559, 560
- number-only citation system, →II 478f., 481, 485f., 504f.
- short-title citation system, →II 533

standard L_AT_EX environment, →II 376, 377, 378

style files, definition files, →II 563f.

style language, comment character, →II 381


titles

- formats, →II 510, 511f.
- information field, →II 533
- mapping short to full, →II 513f.

translated works, →II 533f.

URLs, →II 390f., 392, 500, 533f.

volume title, →II 534

- bibliographies (*cont.*)
 - year information missing, →II 497f.
- `\bibliography`, →II 392, 397, 402, **410**, 412, 415, 417, 419, 471f., 476f., 484, 497, 506, 514, 517, 528–531, 570, 572, 576, 581
 - as used in the examples, →II 475
 - (bibentry), →II 538
 - (bibunits), →II 575f.
 - (chapterbib), →II 571, 573f.
 - (jurabib), →II 517
 - (natbib), →II 498
- bibliography database files, →I 12
- bibliography input file, creating, →II 409–413
- bibliography keywords, associating with database entries, →II 384
- bibliography styles (`\BibTeX`)
 - abbreviated style, →II 421
 - alpha style, →II 422, 423
 - citation scheme, selecting, →II 428f.
 - creating, →II 426–432
 - description, →II 418
 - extensions supported, determining, →II 430f.
 - files, →I 11f.
 - formatting, specifying, →II 431f.
 - initializing the system, →II 427f.
 - list of, →II 419ff., 423f.
 - plain style, →II 419ff.
 - selecting, →II 411
 - unsorted style, →II 422
- bibliography styles (biblatex)
 - extensions, →II 461–464
 - files, →I 11
 - generic, →II 435–439
 - journal styles, →II 455–461
 - selecting, →II 411
 - style guides, →II 439–445
 - unclassified, →II 464–468
 - university styles, →II 445–455
- `\bibliography*` (bibunits), →II **576**, 577
- `\bibliography<type>` (multibib), →II 581
- `\bibliographylatex` (tlc/multibib), →II 581
- `\bibliographystyle`, →II 392, 397, **411**, 412, 415, 417, 419, 471f., 475–478, 480–484, 489f., 493–498, 505f., 509–531, 538, 570, 572, 576, 580f.
 - (bibtopic), →II 578
 - (bibunits), →II 575f.
 - (chapterbib), →II 571
 - (natbib), →II 491, 495, 505
- `\bibliographystyle*` (bibunits), →II **576**, 577
- `\bibliographystyle<type>` (multibib), →II 581
- `\bibliographystylelatex` (tlc/multibib), →II 581
- `\bibliographyunit` (bibunits), →II **576**, 577
 - biblist syntax (biblatex), →II 566
 - biblist package, →II 415
- `\biblnfont` (jurabib), →II 528
- `\bibname`, →I **37**, →II 377, 550, 573, 574
 - (babel), →II 305
- `\bibnamedash` (biblatex), →II 507
- `\bibnf` (jurabib), →II 528
- `\bibnotcited` (jurabib), →II 514
 - bibnumbered value (biblatex), →II **550**, 551
- `\bibnumfmt` (natbib), →II 506
- `\bibopenparen` (biblatex), →II 478
- `\bibpagerefpunct` (biblatex), →II 566
- `\bibpreamble` (natbib), →II **496**, 497, 506
- `\bibpunct` (natbib), →II **496**, 505
- `\bibrightcolumn` (jurabib), →II 530
- `\bibrightcolumnadjust` (jurabib), →II 530
- `\bibs<language>` (jurabib), →II 524
- `\bibsall` (jurabib), →II 514, 518, **524f.**
- `\bibsection` (natbib), →II **496**, 497, 506
- `\bibsenglish` (jurabib), →II 525f.
- `\bibsentence` (biblatex), →II 546
- `\bibsep` length (natbib), →II **497**, 506
- `\bibsgerman` (jurabib), →II 525
- `\bibstring` (biblatex), →II 540, 541, **564**
- `\bibstyle`, →II 412
 - multiple uses (chapterbib), →II 572
 - problems with, →II 412
 - bibstyle key/option (biblatex), →II 433, **543**
- `\bibstyle@<style>` (natbib), →II 496
- bibtex value (biblatex), →II 542f.
- `\BibTeX` program, →II **378–413**, **418–425**
- bibtex8 value (biblatex), →II 543
- bibtex8 program, →II 379
- `\bibtfont` (jurabib), →II 528
- bibttool program, →II 578
- bibttopic package, →II 570, **578ff.**
 - compatibility matrix, →II 570
- `\bibttotalpagesname` (jurabib), →II 534
- bibunit env. (bibunits), →II **575**, 576
- bibunits package, →II 570, **574–578**, 979
 - compatibility matrix, →II 570
 - incompatible with bibttopic, →II 579
- bicolor key (tcolorbox), →I 620
- `\Bicycle` text symbol  (marvosym), →II 117
- bidl key/option (babel), →II 332
- bidl package, →II 332
- `\Big`, →II 159, 172, **199**
 - error using, →II 731
 - (interval), →II 173
- `\big`, →II 172, **199**
 - error using, →II 731
- big option (titlesec), →I 40
- big-g delimiters (math), →II 199
- `\bigbox` math symbol \square (stmaryrd), →II 222
- `\bigcap` math symbol \cap , →II 222
- `\bigcirc` math symbol \bigcirc , →II 216
- `\bigcup` math symbol \cup , →II 137, **222**
- `\bigcurlyvee` math symbol \curlyvee (stmaryrd), →II 222
- `\bigcurlywedge` math symbol \curlywedge (stmaryrd), →II 222
- bigdelim package, →II 158f.
- bigfoot package, →I 98, 207, 212, 218, **220–226**
- `\Bigg`, →II 172, **199**
 - error using, →II 731
 - (interval), →II 173

- `\bigg`, →II 172, [199](#)
 - error using, →II 731
- `\Biggl`, →II 151, [199](#), 236f.
 - error using, →II 731
- `\biggl`, →II 135f., 147, [199](#), 235ff.
 - error using, →II 731
- `\Biggm`, →II 199
 - error using, →II 731
- `\biggm`, →II 199
 - error using, →II 731
- `\Biggr`, →II 151, [199](#), 236f.
 - error using, →II 731
- `\biggr`, →II 135f., 147, [199](#), 235ff.
 - error using, →II 731
- `\biginterleave` math symbol \mathbb{I} (stmaryrd), →II 222
- `\Bigl`, →II [199](#), 211, 236f.
 - error using, →II 731
- `\bigl`, →II [199](#), 236f.
 - error using, →II 731
- `\Bigm`, →II 199
 - error using, →II 731
- `\bigm`, →II 199
 - error using, →II 731
- `\bignplus` math symbol \mathfrak{A} (stmaryrd), →II 222
- `\bigodot` math symbol \odot , →II 222
- `\bigoplus` math symbol \oplus , →II 167, [222](#)
- `\bigotimes` math symbol \otimes , →II 167, [222](#)
- `\bigparallel` math symbol \mathbb{I} (stmaryrd), →II 222
- `\Bigr`, →II [199](#), 211, 236f.
 - error using, →II 731
- `\bigr`, →II [199](#), 236f.
 - error using, →II 731
- `\bigskip`, →II 654
- `\bigskipamount` length, →I 461, →II [654](#)
- `\bigsqcap` math symbol \sqcap (stmaryrd), →II 222
- `\bigsqcup` math symbol \sqcup , →II 222
- `\bigstar` math symbol \star (amssymb), →II 213
- `\bigstrut` (bigstrut), →I [474](#), 475, 478
 - bigstrut package, →I 467, [473f.](#), 475
- `\bigstrutjot` rigid length (bigstrut), →I 474
- `\bigtriangledown` math symbol ∇ , →II 215
 - (stmaryrd), math class changed by stmaryrd, →II 222
- `\bigtriangleup` math symbol Δ , →II 215
 - (stmaryrd), math class changed by stmaryrd, →II 222
- `\biguplus` math symbol \uplus , →II [222](#), 261–296
- `\bigvee` math symbol \vee , →II 222
- `\bigwedge` math symbol \wedge , →II 222
- `\binampersand` math symbol $\&$ (stmaryrd), →II 224
- `\binary` (fmtcount), →II 650
 - binary operator symbols, →II 214
- `\binarynum` (fmtcount), →II 650
 - bind option (tlc), →II 708f.
 - bindCorr key (hvfloat), →I 567
 - binding, and the inner margin, →I 378
 - bindingoffset key/option (geometry), →I [378](#), 380
- `\bindnasrepma` math symbol \wp (stmaryrd), →II 224
- `\binfty` math symbol ∞ (tlc/bm), →II 235
- `\binom` (amsmath), →II [164](#), 165, 195, 243f., 249
- `\binoppenalty` T_EX counter, →II [197](#), 198
- biolinum package, →II 20
- Biolinum fonts, description/examples, →II 19
- Bitstream Charter fonts, description/examples, →I 710, 723, →II [50](#), 110, 315
- Bitstream Vera fonts, description/examples, →II 12
- bitter package, →II 65
- Bitter fonts, description/examples, →I 711, →II [65](#)
- bk11.clo file, →I 22
- black key (tikz-cd), →II 162
- black option (*various font packages*), →II 8
 - (Chivo), →II 70
 - (Playfair), →II 64
- blackboard bold alphabet,
 - II 130, [226](#), 227f., 230, 233, 234, 250f.
- blackletter fonts, →II [104f.](#), [106](#)
- `\blacklozenge` math symbol \blacklozenge (amssymb), →II 213
- `\blacksquare` math symbol \blacksquare (amssymb), →II 213
- `\blacktriangle` math symbol \blacktriangle (amssymb), →II 213
- `\blacktriangledown` math symbol \blacktriangledown (amssymb), →II 213
- `\blacktriangleleft` math symbol \blacktriangleleft (amssymb), →II 218
- `\blacktriangleright` math symbol \blacktriangleright (amssymb), →II 218
- `\blambda` math symbol λ (tlc/bm), →II 237
- BLANK PAGE on generated pages, →I 418f.
- blankest value (tcolorbox), →I 629
- blanks
 - displaying, →I [297](#), 298, 312
 - in index input, →II [346](#), 351, 363f.
- `blend_into` key (tcolorbox), →I 628
- .blg file extension (BibT_EX|biber), →I [11f.](#), →II 380, 384, 409f.
- `\blindlistlist` (blindtext), →I 364
- `\blindtext` (blindtext), →I 363f.
 - blindtext package, →I 363ff.
- block key/option (biblatex), →II 478
- block syntax (titlesec), →I [43](#), 44, 46, 47, 49
- block value (unicodetables), →I 729
- block quotations, *see* quotations
- `\blockquote` (csquotes), →I 182
- `\blockquote` (csquotes), →I 180, [181](#), 183, 186
- `\blockquote*` (csquotes), →I 181
 - blue key (tikz-cd), →II 162
- `\bluecline` (tlc/colortbl), →I 468
- `\bluefbox` (tlc), →I 578
- `\bluehline` (tlc/colortbl), →I 468
- blx-dm.def file (biblatex), →II 385, 562
- `\bm` (bm), →I 674, 683, →II 141, 156, 197, [235](#), 236f., 238, 251, 261–264, 266, 268f., 271f., 275–278, 280, 282–285, 287–290, 292–296
 - bm syntax (*font series*), →I 733
- bm package, →II [235–238](#), 258, 261
 - error using, →II 740
- bmarginal key/option (geometry), →I 379
- Bmatrix env. (amsmath), →II 154
- bmatrix env. (amsmath), →II 154
- Bmatrix* env. (mathtools), →II 155
- bmatrix* env. (mathtools), →II 155
- `\bmdefine` (bm), →II [235](#), 236, [237](#), [238](#)
- `\bmmax` (bm), →II 740

- `\bmod`, →II 171, 198
- `\bneg` math symbol \neg (tlc), →II 214
- Bodoni Greek font, →II 61, 107
- body key (tikz), →I 645
- body key/option (geometry), →I 381
- body area, →I 378
 - running long or short, →I 415f.
- body font, →I 659, 665
 - in this book, →I 660, →II 977
- bodyfont key (thmtools), →I 288
- bodystyle key (thmtools), →I 286, 287
- bold key (hyperref|bookmark), →I 104, 105
- bold option (*various font packages*), →II 8
- bold fonts
 - description, →I 655
 - in formulas, →II 235ff., 238
 - poor man's bold, →II 235f.
- bold-style key/option (unicode-math), →II 255ff., 258
- `\boldcline` (tlc/boldline), →I 468
- BoldFeatures key (fontspec), →I 717, 727
- BoldFont key (fontspec), →I 709, 710
- BoldItalicFeatures key (fontspec), →I 727
- BoldItalicFont key (fontspec), →I 709, 710
- `\boldline` (tlc/boldline), →I 468
- boldline package, →I 467, 468f.
- `\boldmath`, →I 683, →II 236
 - (bm), →II 238
 - (mathpazo), →II 251
- boldsans option (ccfonts), →II 66, 239, 288
- BoldSlantedFeatures key (fontspec), →I 727
- BoldSlantedFont key (fontspec), →I 710
- BoldSwashFeatures key (fontspec), →I 727
- BoldSwashFont key (fontspec), →I 710
- `\boldsymbol` (amsmath), →II 235
- Bonum fonts, description/examples, →II 48, 273
 - in math and text, →II 273
- book BibTeX entry type, →II 382f., 386, 391, 404ff., 534
- book document class, →I 10, 18, 26f., 33, 37, 40, 56, 210, 366, 386, 397, 670, →II 130, 153, 371
 - footnote numbering, →I 208
 - heading commands, →I 32, 73
 - replacement for, →I 429f.
- bookauthor BibTeX field, →II 383
- bookinarticle BibTeX entry type (bibtex-bookinother), →II 461
- bookinbook BibTeX entry type (bibtex), →II 387
- bookinother biblatex style (biblatex-bookinother), →II 461
- booklet BibTeX entry type, →II 386
- bookman *obsolete* package, →I 691, *see instead* tgonum
- `\bookmark` (hyperref|bookmark), →I 104, 106
- bookmark package, →I 103–106, →II 979f.
- bookmarks, →I 103, 104ff.
- bookmarks option (hyperref), →I 103
- `\bookmarksetup` (hyperref|bookmark), →I 104, 105
- books, *see* documents
- booktabs package, →I xiii, 467, 471ff., 497f., →II 978
- booktitle BibTeX field, →II 382f., 386, 388, 391, 406, 528, 533
 - booktitleaddon BibTeX field (jurabib), →II 533
- `\boolean` (ifthen), →I 371, →II 371, 476, 690, 691, 709
- `\BooleanFalse`, →II 634, 640
- `\BooleanTrue`, →II 633, 640
- boondox value (mathalpha), →II 232, 233f.
- boondoxo value (mathalpha), →II 232, 233
- boondoxupr value (mathalpha), →II 232
- bordercolor key (todonotes), →I 239, 240
- borderline key (tcolorbox), →I 623
- borderline_horizontal key (tcolorbox), →I 623
- borderline_north key (tcolorbox), →I 623
- borderline_south key (tcolorbox), →I 623
- borderline_vertical key (tcolorbox), →I 623
- borderline_west key (tcolorbox), →I 623
- borders, *see* boxes; frames
- `\born` (tlc), →I 700
- bosnian option (babel), →II 301
- `\bot` math symbol \perp , →II 213
- `\botfigrule`, →I 512
 - both value (fvextra), →I 309, 310
- `\bothIfFirst` (caption), →I 549
- `\bothIfSecond` (caption), →I 549, 550
- `\botmark`, *dangerous — do not use*, →I 388
- `\botmarks`, *dangerous — do not use*, →I 388
- bottom key (tcolorbox), →I 616, 617, 620, 623, 625, 631
- bottom key/option (geometry), →I 379
- bottom option (footmisc), →I 215
- bottom value
 - (caption), →I 545
 - (hvfloating), →I 561, 563
 - (tcolorbox), →I 618, 631
- `\bottomcaption` (supertabular), →I 457
- bottomfloats option (footmisc), →I 215
- `\bottomfraction`, →I 511, 516
- bottomline value (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 307, 308
- bottomnumber counter, →I 511, →II 646
- `\bottomrule` (booktabs), →I 471, 472, 473, 490, 493
- bottomrule key (tcolorbox), →I 616
- bottomtitle key (tcolorbox), →I 616
- `\bottomtitlespace` (titlesec), →I 46
- bounding box comments, →I 577
- `\bowtie` math symbol \bowtie , →II 221
- box key (empheq), →II 175
- `\boxast` math symbol \boxast (stmaryrd), →II 215
- `\boxbar` math symbol \boxbar (stmaryrd), →II 215
- `\boxbox` math symbol \boxbox (stmaryrd), →II 215
- `\boxbslash` math symbol \boxbslash (stmaryrd), →II 215
- `\boxcircle` math symbol \boxcircle (stmaryrd), →II 215
- `\boxdot` math symbol \boxdot (amssymb), →II 215
- `\boxed` (amsmath), →II 174, 202
- boxed value
 - (float), →I 529, 530f., 542, 544
 - (rotfloat), →I 535
- boxed_title_style key (tcolorbox), →I 622
- boxedminipage package, →I 614
- `\boxempty` math symbol \boxempty (stmaryrd), →II 215
- boxes, *see also* frames; lines (graphic)
 - aligning text, →I 617, 618

boxes (*cont.*)

- as floats, →I 628*f*.
- borders, →I 623
- breaking, →I 621
- color, troubleshooting, →II 670*f*.
- defining, →I 626, 627
- description, →II 660
- displaying contents, →II 779
- drawing, →I 614–631
- fonts, →I 618
- hyperlinks, →I 624, 625
- LR boxes, →II 660, [661*ff*](#).
- manipulations, →I 595–601, 616–626, →II 669*f*.
 - alignment, →I 598, 599, 617, 618, 627, 629*ff*.
 - clipping, →I 596
 - coloring, →I 599, 615, 618, 627
 - framing, →I 597
 - padding, →I 598, 617
 - presets, →I 600, 601
 - resizing, →I 589*f*.
 - rotating, →I 590–593
 - scaling, →I 587, 588, 589–597
 - trimming, →I 595, 596
- math symbols, →II 215
- named, creating, →II 655, [669](#), [670](#)
- numbering, →I 627
- paragraph boxes, →II 660, [663–666](#)
- poster, →I 630*f*.
- raster of, →I 629*ff*.
- rounded corners, →I 618
- rule boxes, →II 660, [667*ff*](#).
- shadows, →I 332, [622](#)
- side by side, →I 615, 629
- splitting, →I 614
- styling, →I 619*ff*.
- titles, →I 622
- troubleshooting, →II 779
- types of, →II 660
- watermarks, →I 623*f*.

boxes key (tcolorbox), →I 630

boxing

- formulas, →II 174*f*.
- numbers in document headings, →I 36
- small capitals, →II 319
- typed text, →I 316

`\boxminus` math symbol \boxminus (amssymb), →II 215

`\boxplus` math symbol \boxplus (amssymb), →II 215

`boxrule` key (tcolorbox), →I 622

`boxsep` key (tcolorbox), →I [616](#), 617, 623, 627

`\boxslash` math symbol \boxslash (stmaryrd), →II 215

`\boxtimes` math symbol \boxtimes (amssymb), →II 215

`boxwidth` key (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 316

`bp` syntax (*unit*), →I 578, 582, 595, →II [652](#)

`\bpi` math symbol π (tlc/bm), →II 235

`\bpubaddr` (jurabib), →II 488, 528

`\Bra` (braket), →II 173

`\bra` (braket), →II [173](#), 174

bra-ket notation, →II 173, 174

brace value (caption), →I 543

braces, omitting, →II 625

`\bracevert` math symbol \lrcorner , →II [190](#), [213](#)

`Bracket` key (tikz), →I 640

`bracket` value (siunitx), →I 176

brackets value

- (changes), →I 248
- (siunitx), →I [175](#), 176
- (tlc/caption), →I 549

brackets, always upright, →I 188, 189

`\Braket` (braket), →II [173](#), 174

`\braket` (braket), →II 173

`braket` package, →II 173*f*.

`brazilian` option (babel), →II 301

`break` key (thmtools), →I 288

`breakable` key (tcolorbox), →I [621](#), 626

`breakable` library (tcolorbox), →I 619, [621](#), 626

`breakafter` key (fvextra), →I [313](#), 314

`breakaftersymbolpre` key (fvextra), →I 314

`breakall` option (truncate), →I 406

`breakanywhere` key (fvextra), →I [313](#), 314

`breakanywheresymbolpre` key (fvextra), →I 314

`breakautoindent` key (listings), →I 329

`breakbefore` key (fvextra), →I 314

`breakindent` key (listings), →I 329

`breaklines` key

- (fvextra), →I 301, 307, [313](#), 314, 321
- (listings), →I 327, 328, [329](#)

breaks

- before document headings, →I 48
- boxes, →I 621
- column
 - handling in indexes, →II 372
 - manually produced, →I 353, 355
- line
 - badness rating, →II 657
 - bibliographies, →II 479
 - computer code listings, →I 329
 - disabling in citations, →II 480
 - equations, automatically, →II 146, 147*ff*.
 - headings, →I 41
 - in citations, →II 479
 - in URL, →I 199
 - justification algorithm, →I 126
 - number-only citations, →II 479
 - preventing inside paragraphs, →I [125](#), 126
 - second-last line, →II 631, 637
 - tables, →I 443

page, *see also* space parameters

- badness rating, →II 657
- conditional, →I 419, 420
- equations, →II 145*f*.
- handling in indexes, →II 372
- multipage tables, →I 458
- page layout, →I 414–420
- troubleshooting, →II 769–773
- widows and orphans, →I [420–424](#), [425*f*](#).

- breaks (*cont.*)
 - paragraph algorithm
 - adjusting, →II 631
 - lengthen or shorten, →I 427ff.
 - second-last line, →II 631, 637
 - tracing, →II 776ff.
 - paragraph, troubleshooting, →II 773–778
 - part
 - creating with ltxdoc class, →II 599
 - creating with doc package, →II 587
 - printing, →II 587, 599
 - breakstyle value (tlc/thmtools), →I 288
 - breaksymbolleft key (fvextra), →I 314
 - breakwithin option (parnotes), →I 227
 - breakwords option (truncate), →I 406
 - breqn package, →I 7, →II 133, **146–149**, 799
 - breton option (babel), →II 301
- `\breve` math accent \breve , →II 176, **214**
- bringhurst value (footmisc), →I 211
- british option (babel), →II 309
- `\brokenpenalty` TeX counter, →I **421**, 424, 425
- `\bS` (mattens), →II **178**, 179
- `\bs` (tlc), →II 350, 352
- `\bSa` (mattens), →II **178**, 179
- `\bSb` (mattens), →II 178
- `\bsc` (babel), →II 319
- bsc syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- `\bslash` (doc), →II 595
- Bsmallmatrix env. (mathtools), →II 155
- bsmallmatrix env. (mathtools), →II 155
- Bsmallmatrix* env. (mathtools), →II **155**, 156
- bsmallmatrix* env. (mathtools), →II 155
- `\bsmash` (amsmath), →II 185, 187
- .bst file extension
 - (BibTeX), →I **11f.**, →II 409ff., **420f.**, **423f.**, 426f., 430f.
 - (biblatex), →II 542
 - bsx syntax (*font series*), →I 732
 - btauxfile counter (bibtopic), →II 579
 - `\btPrintAll` (bibtopic), →II 578
 - `\btPrintCited` (bibtopic), →II **578**, 579f.
 - `\btPrintNotCited` (bibtopic), →II 578
 - btSect env. (bibtopic), →II **578**, 579f.
 - btUnit env. (bibtopic), →II 579
 - bu(*num*).aux file (bibunits), →II 575
 - buc syntax (*font series*), →I 732
 - buffer size errors, →II 746
 - build.lua file (l3build), →II **607**, 611, 613
 - bulgarian option (babel), →II **301**, 309, 315
 - `\bullet` math symbol \bullet , →I 312, →II **216**, 307
 - `\Bumpeq` math symbol \bumpeq (amssymb), →II 217
 - `\bumpeq` math symbol \bumpeq (amssymb), →II 217
 - bundle BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 467
 - bundledoc program, →I 109, **112**, 113
 - `\BUseVerbatim` (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 320
 - `\buttcap` (pict2e), →I 607
 - bux syntax (*font series*), →I 732
 - BVerbatim env. (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I **316**, 318
 - BVerbatim* env. (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 316
 - BVerbatimInput (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 316
 - BVerbatimInput* (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 316
 - bw1-FU biblatex style (biblatex-bwl), →II 453
 - bx syntax (*font series*), →I 305, 671, 673, **732**, 733
 - `\bx@{uc-letter}`
 - (fewerfloatpages), →I 523
 - (fltrace), →I 518
 - bxeepic package, →I 602, **608–612**
 - bychapter folio style (chappg), →I **387**, 388
 - `\bye` (nfssfont.tex), →I 705
 - byeditor syntax (biblatex), →II 565
 - byeditortr syntax (biblatex), →II 565
 - bytranslator syntax (biblatex), →II 565

C

 - C syntax
 - (fancyhdr), →I **399**, 400ff.
 - (tabulary), →I **451**, 452, 477
 - (tlc/array), →I 445
 - C value (listings), →I **323**, 324f.
 - `\c` text accent \c , →I 764, **771**
 - c key (keyfloat), →I **568f.**, 570, 571, 572f.
 - c syntax, →I **436**, 454f., 477
 - (boxes), →II **663**, **664**, **666**
 - (*font series*), →I **732**, 733, 734, →II 31, 34, 752
 - (array), →I 438, **439**, 441, 446, 448, 451
 - (dashrule), →II 669
 - (multirow), →I 478
 - (paracol), →I 345
 - (subcaption), →I **551**, 552
 - (xltabular), →I 464
 - c value
 - (draftwatermark), →I 411
 - (keyvaltable), →I 495f., **497**, 500, 502ff.
 - C++ value (listings), →I 323
 - c0paper, . . . , c6paper key/option (geometry), →I 378
 - c0paper, . . . , c6paper, . . . option (typearea), →I 375
 - c2pc OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 717
 - c2sc OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 715, **717**
 - ca value (upmendex), →II 369
 - cabin package, →II 70
 - Cabin fonts, description/examples, →II 70
 - cal key (mathalpha), →II **230**, 231, 273
 - cal value (unicode-math), →II 260
 - calc library (tikz), →I **634**, 635
 - calc package, →I 269f., 435, 447, 453, 480, 567, →II 685, **687ff.**
 - combined with geometry, →I 383
 - error using, →II 711, 717
 - loaded by jurabib, →II 530
 - `\calculateheight` (tlc), →II 660
 - calculations, →II 657f., 659f., 687f., 689
 - floating point, →II 657f., 659
 - integer, →II 659
 - lengths, →II 660
 - calcwidth option (titlesec), →I 47
 - call-outs, floats, →I 508

- calligraphic math alphabet, →I 678, →II 130, 226, 227, 229f., 231ff.
- `\calQ` (tlc/amsmath), →II 194
- calscaled key (mathalpha), →II 231
- cam option (crop), →I 411, 412
- Cambria fonts, description/examples, →II 49, 107, 110
 - in math and text, →II 274
- Caml value (listings), →I 323
- `\cancellooseness` (tlc), →I 429
- `\Cancer` text symbol \mathfrak{C} (marvosym), →II 117
- `\candela` (siunitx), →I 170
- `canvascs`: syntax (tikz), →I 633, 634
- `canvaspolarcs`: syntax (tikz), →I 633
- `\Cap` math symbol \mathbb{M} (amssymb), →II 215
- `\cap` math symbol \cap , →II 215
- `capAngle` key (hvfloat), →I 561, 563, 564
- `capFormat` key (hvfloat), →I 561, 563, 566
- capital letters
 - at start of paragraph, *see* drop caps
 - drop caps, →I 141, 142ff., 145
 - headings, →I 35
 - small capitals, →I 662
 - description, →I 654f.
 - French names written in, →II 319
 - in headings, →I 663
- `\capitalacute` text accent $\acute{\mathbb{A}}$, →I 696, 771
- `\capitalbreve`, →I 195
- `\capitalbreve` text accent $\breve{\mathbb{A}}$, →I 696
- `\capitalcaron` text accent $\mathring{\mathbb{A}}$, →I 696, 771
- `\capitalcedilla` text accent \mathfrak{C} , →I 696
- `\capitalcircumflex` text accent $\mathring{\mathbb{A}}$, →I 696
- `\capitaldieresis` text accent $\mathring{\mathbb{A}}$, →I 696, 771
- `\capitaldotaccent` text accent $\dot{\mathbb{A}}$, →I 696
- `\capitalgrave`, →I 195
- `\capitalgrave` text accent $\grave{\mathbb{A}}$, →I 696, 698, 771
- `\capitalhungarumlaut` text accent $\mathring{\mathbb{A}}$, →I 696
- `capitalize` option (cleveref), →I 87, 88
- `\capitalmacron` text accent $\mathring{\mathbb{A}}$, →I 696, 771
- `\capitalnewtie` text accent \mathfrak{C} , →I 696
- `\capitalogonek` text accent $\mathring{\mathbb{A}}$, →I 696, 771
- `\capitalring` text accent $\mathring{\mathbb{A}}$, →I 696, 771
- `\capitaltie` text accent \mathfrak{C} , →I 696
- `\capitaltilde` text accent $\mathring{\mathbb{A}}$, →I 696, 771
- `capPos` key (hvfloat), →I 561, 562, 563f.
- `\caps`
 - (soul), →I 194, 196
 - (tlc/microtype), →I 196
- `captcont` package, →I 546
- `\caption`, →I 55, 58, 70f., 77, 498, 533, 538, 539, 545, 560, →II 571
 - cross-reference to, →I 76
 - error using, →I 539, →II 715, 719
 - justification in, →I 122
 - (caption), →I 462, 542–545, 546, 547ff., 551, 552f., 557f.
 - (float), →I 530, 531
 - (longtable), →I 459, 462, 463
 - (rotating), →I 534
 - (subcaption), →I 553, 554, 601
- `\caption` (*cont.*)
 - (supertabular), →I 462
 - (threeparttable), →I 492, 493
 - (unicodefonttable), →I 730
 - (wrapfig), →I 537f.
 - (xltabular), →I 464
- caption key
 - (keyvaltable), →I 498, 502
 - (listings), →I 330, 331
 - (todonotes), →I 241
- caption package, →I 59, 116, 118, 141, 463, 517, 532f., 540–550, 551, 561, 563, 567, →II 979
 - loaded by subcaption, →I 554
- `\caption*`
 - (caption), →I 547, 551
 - (longtable), →I 462
 - (subcaption), →I 554, 558
 - (tocdata), →I 59
- `caption/alt` key (keyvaltable), →I 498
- `caption/lot` key (keyvaltable), →I 498
- `caption2` *obsolete* package, →I 116, 540, *see instead* caption
- `caption3` *obsolete* package, →I 116, *see instead* caption
- `\captionartist` (tocdata), →I 58, 59
- `\captionauthor` (tocdata), →I 59
- `\captionof` (caption), →I 517, 533
- captionpos key
 - (keyvaltable), →I 498, 502
 - (listings), →I 330
- captions, *see also* floats, captions
 - bibliographic citations in, →II 483
 - multipage tables, →I 457, 462, 498, 502
 - typed text, →I 330
- captions syntax (babel), →II 303
- `\captions \langle language \rangle` (babel), →II 336
- `\captionsetup`
 - (caption), →I 541, 544, 547, 548, 550, 570
 - (subcaption), →I 554, 555, 556f.
- `capVPos` key (hvfloat), →I 561, 563
- `capWidth` key (hvfloat), →I 561, 562, 563f.
- cardinals, formatting, →I 154f.
- Cardo fonts, description/examples, →I 664, →II 37
- case OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 715, 725, 726
- case sensitivity
 - bibliographies, →II 384
 - indexes, →II 346
- `case-first:lower-first` value (upmendex), →II 368
- `cases` env.
 - (amsmath), →II 152, 154, 156, 157, 201f.
 - error using, →I 730, 735
 - (cases), →II 157
- `cases` package, →II 156f.
- `casesstyle` option (cases), →II 157
- catalan option (babel), →II 301, 309f., 311
- `\catcode`, →I 199, 666, →II 306, 330, 639
- category key (biblatex), →II 552, 553
- cbe \LaTeX style, →II 421
- `\cbezier` (pict2e), →I 606
- `\cbinput` (chapterbib), →II 572

- cbunit env. (chapterbib), →II 572
- .cbx file extension (biblatex), →I 11, →II 433, 543, 563
- cc syntax (*unit*), →II 652
- ccfonts package, →II 66, 238f., 242f., 288
- \ccname (babel), →II 305
- CD env. (amscd), →II 160
- \cdashline (arydshln), →I 469
- \cdot math symbol \cdot , →I 174f., 482, 483, →II 137, 140, 178f., 192, 216, 659
- \cdots math symbol \cdots , →II 155, 180, 223, 626, 628, 766
- ceil syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658, 659
- \CElinebreak (tlc), →I 120
- cell BibTeX style (jmb), →II 421
- \cellcolor (colortbl), →I 467
- cellspace package, →I 467, 474ff.
- \cellspacebottomlimit rigid length (cellspace), →I 474, 475
- \cellspacetoplimit rigid length (cellspace), →I 474, 475
- Center env. (ragged2e), →I 123
- center env., →I 122, 260, 265, →II 630
 - configuration, →I 265f.
 - problems in floats, →I 76
- center key (adjustbox), →I 599
- center option
 - (crop), →I 412ff.
 - (titlesec), →I 40, 41
- center value
 - (hvfloat), →I 561
 - (siunitx), →I 485
 - (tasks), →I 291, 292
 - (tcolorbox), →I 617, 618
- \centerdot math symbol \cdot (amssymb), →II 216
- centered paragraphs, →I 122f.
- centerfirst value
 - (caption), →I 544, 545
 - (subcaption), →I 551, 552
- Centering value (caption), →I 544
- \Centering (ragged2e), →I 123
 - underfull box warning, →I 125
- \centering, →I 122, 125, 539, 553, 571, 617, →II 662
 - in floats, →I 76
 - in tables, →I 443, 446f.
 - problems using, →I 123
- centering key/option (geometry), →I 380
- centering value (caption), →I 544
- \CenteringLeftskip length (ragged2e), →I 124
- \CenteringParfillskip length (ragged2e), →I 124
- \CenteringParindent rigid length (ragged2e), →I 124
- \CenteringRightskip length (ragged2e), →I 124
- centerlast value (caption), →I 538, 544
- \centerline, →I 227
- \centernot (centernot), →II 217, 218
- centertags option (amsmath), →II 136
- \centi (siunitx), →I 172
- \cf math operator x (tlc/amsmath), →II 160
- cfbox key (adjustbox), →I 599, 601
- .cfg file extension, →I 11, 747f., →II 603, 613
 - (bundledoc), →I 113
 - (caption), →I 550
 - .cfg file extension (*cont.*)
 - (color|xcolor), →II 733
 - (graphics|graphicx), →II 733
 - (jurabib), →II 532
 - (ltxdoc), →II 598
 - (microtype), →I 130, 132
 - (natbib), →II 496
 - cfgguide.pdf file, →I 747
- \cfoot (fancyhdr), →I 394, 398, 399, 405
- \cfrac (amsmath), →II 166
- cframe key (adjustbox), →I 599
- \ch math operator $ch x$ (babel), →II 321
- \chadded (changes), →I 250
- chancery *obsolete* package, →I 691, *see instead* tgchorus
- chancery fonts, →II 100–103
- change bars, →I 251
- change history, creating
 - doc package, →II 588
 - ltxdoc class, →II 599
- changebar package, →I 251
- \changes (doc), →II 588, 596
- changes package, →I 237, 245–250
- \chapnumfont (quotchap), →I 38
- chappg package, →I 387f.
- \chappgsep (chappg), →I 388
- \chapter, →I 32f., 34ff., 51, 53, 57, 387, 390, 397, 403
 - adding space in .lof and .lot, →I 71
 - cross-reference to, →I 75
 - no page number, →I 48
 - producing unwanted page number, →I 396, 404
 - (bibunits), sectioning unit, →II 576
 - (chapterbib), →II 573
 - (quotchap), →I 38, 39
 - (titlesec), →I 43, 45, 48, 50
 - (titletoc), partial contents for, →I 67
 - (tlc), →II 635
- chapter BibTeX field, →II 386, 388
- chapter counter, →I 34, 35, 390, →II 646, 647
 - numbered within parts, →I 35
 - (listings), →I 330
- chapter value
 - (biblatex), →II 556
 - (enotez), →I 231f.
 - (jurabib), →II 515, 522
- \chapter*, →I 33, 396, →II 372, 496, 572
 - listed in tables of contents, →I 55
- \chapterauthor (tocdata), →I 57
- chapterbib package, →II 405, 490, 496, 570, 571–574
 - combined with babel, →II 574
 - compatibility matrix, →II 570
 - incompatible with bibtopic, →II 579
- \chapterheadendvskip (quotchap), →I 38
- \chapterheadstartvskip (quotchap), →I 38, 39
- \chaptermark, →I 390, 396
 - (fancyhdr), →I 403
- \chaptername, →I 37, 43, 390
 - (babel), →II 303, 305
- \chapterpagestyle (KOMA), →I 404

- `\chaptertitle` (titlesec), →I 43
- `\chapttitle` (tlc/chapterbib), →II 573
- character sets, multilingual documents, →II 299
- character_order keyword (upmendex), →II 367, 370
- `\CharacterInheritance` (microtype), →I 131
- CharacterVariant key (fontspec), →I 723
- CharacterWidth key (fontspec), →I 727
- Charis SIL fonts, description/examples, →II 51, 110
- CharisSIL package, →II 51
- charter option
 - (newtxmath), →II 274
 - (newtxtext), →II 247
 - (quotchap), →I 38
- charter *obsolete* package, →I 691, →II 50, *see instead* XCharter
- `\chcomment` (changes), →I 250
- `\chead` (fancyhdr), →I 394, 398, 399, 405
- `\check` math accent \checkmark , →II 176, 214
- check key (biblatex), →II 553, 554
- check key/option (widows-and-orphans), →I 425, 426
- check keyword (l3build), →II 607
- check_odd_page key (tcolorbox), →I 626
- checkcites program, →II 414
- `\CheckCommand`, →II 629
- `\CheckCommand*`, →II 629
- checkengines key (l3build), →II 611
- `\checkfcolumns` (fcolumn), →I 489
- CheckList env. (typed-checklist), →I 293, 294, 295, 296
- `\CheckListAddStatus` (typed-checklist), →I 295, 296
- `\CheckListAddType` (typed-checklist), →I 295, 296
- checklists, →I 292, 293–296
 - status values, →I 294
- `\CheckListSet` (typed-checklist), →I 295
- `\Checkmark` (typed-checklist), →I 296
- `\checkmark` math symbol \checkmark (amssymb), →II 213
- `\CheckModules` (doc), →II 595
- checkout option (git), →II 616
- checkruns key (l3build), →II 613
- checktb option (fewerfloatpages), →I 522
- chem-acs biblatex style (biblatex-chem), →II 456
- chem-angew biblatex style (biblatex-chem), →II 456, 457
- chem-biochem biblatex style (biblatex-chem), →II 456, 457
- chem-rsc biblatex style (biblatex-chem), →II 456, 457
- chemical diagrams, →I 612
- `\chi` math symbol χ , →II 212
- chicago Bib_{TEX} style
 - (chicago), →II 471, 472, 489
 - (natbib), →II 424, 494, 495, 496, 498
- chicago option (ellipsis), →I 149
- chicago value (footmisc), →I 211
- chicago package, →II 429, 476, 488, 489
- chicago-authordate biblatex style (biblatex-chicago), →II 440
- chicago-authordate-trad biblatex style (biblatex-chicago), →II 440
- chicago-notes biblatex style (biblatex-chicago), →II 440
- chicagoa Bib_{TEX} style (chicago), →II 489
- Chinese, →II 331, 341
- chinese-erj biblatex style (biblatex-gb7714-2015), →II 441
- Chivo package, →II 70
- Chivo fonts, description/examples, →II 70
- chmod program, →II 616
- CIL value (listings), →I 323
- `\cinzel` (cinzel), →II 9, 98
- cinzel package, →II 98
- Cinzel fonts, description/examples, →II 98
- `\cinzelblack` (cinzel), →II 98
- `\circ` math symbol \circ , →I 590, →II 151, 216
- `\circeq` math symbol \doteq (amssymb), →II 217
- `circle` (tikz path operation), →I 636, 638, 640
- `\circle`
 - limitations of, →I 603, 605
 - warning using, →II 757
- (pict2e), →I 603, 605, 608, 611
- circle key (tikz), →I 638, 640ff.
- circle syntax (tikz), →I 634, 638, 640, 643, 645
- `\circlearrowleft` math symbol \curvearrowleft (amssymb), →II 219
- `\circlearrowright` math symbol \curvearrowright (amssymb), →II 219
- `\circledast` math symbol \circledast (stmaryrd), →II 216
- `\circledcirc` math symbol \circledcirc (stmaryrd), →II 216
- `\circleddash` math symbol \circleddash (amssymb), →II 216
- `\circledR` math symbol \circledR (amssymb), →II 213
- `\circledS` math symbol \circledS (amssymb), →II 213
- circles
 - drawing, →I 605, 611
 - math symbols, →II 216
- Citation env. (tlc), →II 629, 630f., 637
- `\citation`, →II 410, 412, 570, 575
 - problems with, →II 412
 - (notoccite), →II 483
- citation systems
 - author-date, →II 436, 438, 440f., 443f., 446–456, 458–461, 465f., 487–502, 546
 - author information missing, →II 497f., 502
 - author list only with first citation, →II 494f., 502
 - author-number system, switching to, →II 505
 - authors on single line, →II 496
 - back references, →II 547
 - biblatex package, →II 500ff.
 - capitalization, →II 501
 - commands, →II 490, 491, 492f., 494f.
 - commands, biblatex-specific, →II 500ff.
 - compressing citations, →II 501
 - customizing citations, →II 492f., 495f.
 - customizing the bibliography, →II 496, 497
 - definition, →II 470
 - electronic publications, →II 499
 - full citations in running text, →II 537, 538
 - history of, →II 489f.
 - indexing citations automatically, →II 498, 546
 - multiple citations, →II 493f., 502
 - natbib package, →II 490–500
 - number of authors, →II 501
 - number-only system, switching to, →II 505
 - punctuation, →II 546
 - short-title format, combining, →II 523, 524
 - styles supported, →II 499f.

citation systems (*cont.*)

- unambiguous citations, →II 548*f.*, 550
- year information missing, →II 497*f.*
- author-number, →II 438, **502–507**
 - bibtex package, →II 506*f.*
 - compressing citations, →II 504, 505
 - customizing citations, →II 505, 506
 - definition, →II 473, 502
 - sort order, →II 504, 505
- author-title, →II 436, 438, 443, 446, 455, 464*ff.*, **507–537**, *see also* short-title
 - ambiguous citations, →II 550
 - back references, →II 547
 - bibtex package, →II 534–537
 - definition, →II 473
 - indexing citations automatically, →II 546
 - jurabib package, →II 507–534
- comparison of, →II 470–473
- Harvard style, →II 384, 470
- number-only, →II 435–439, 441–445, 450*f.*, 454, 456–461, 467*f.*, **473*f.***, **475**, **476–485**, **486**, **487**, 545
 - alpha style, →II 435, 437, 439, 441, 443*f.*, 457*f.*, 467, **487**
 - back references, →II 547
 - bibtex package, →II 484, 485*ff.*
 - captions, →II 483
 - color, →II 480
 - compressing citations, →II 504*f.*
 - customizing citations, →II 476*ff.*, 479, 480, 487
 - definition, →II 470
 - headings, →II 483
 - indexing citations automatically, →II 546
 - line breaks, →II 479
 - line breaks, disabling, →II 480
 - natbib package, →II 503–506
 - page ranges, disabling, →II 480
 - parentheses, →II 480
 - punctuation, →II 479, 482*f.*
 - sort order, →II 478*f.*, 481, 485*f.*, 504*f.*
 - spaces, processing, →II 480*f.*
 - superscripts, →II 481*f.*, 483, 486*f.*
 - unsorted citation style, →II 483
 - verbose mode, →II 481
- short-title, →II 436
 - annotations, →II 512, 513, 531, 533, 536*f.*
 - author gender, →II 525, 526, 533
 - author information field, →II 533
 - author list separator, →II 527, 529
 - author-date format, combining, →II 523, 524
 - back references, →II 533, 547
 - bibtex package, →II 534–537
 - collections, →II 533
 - column layout, →II 530
 - compressing citation, →II 535
 - configuration files, external, →II 532
 - cross-references, →II 523
 - customizing citations, →II 526*f.*

citation systems (*cont.*)

- customizing the bibliography, →II 527, 528, 529, 530*f.*, 532
- description, →II 507*f.*
- dissertation year, →II 533
- edition information, →II 533
- editor information, →II 533
- endnote citations, →II 517*f.*, 519
- fonts, →II 527*f.*
- footnote citations, →II 517*f.*, 519, **539**, 540
- founder information, →II 533
- full citations in running text, →II 514, 515*ff.*
- ibidem citations, →II 519–522, 530, 531, 535
- indentation, →II 529, 530
- indexing citations automatically, →II 512, 546
- jurabib package, →II 507–534
- last update field, →II 534
- multi-language support, →II 524, 525, 526
- page boundaries, ignoring, →II 520
- page total field, →II 534
- parentheses, →II 526
- pre-notes, →II 512, 513
- punctuation, →II 528, 529
- shorthands, printing, →II 535, 558
- sort order, →II 533
- style files, →II 532*ff.*
- superscripts, →II 526, 527, 533
- terse, →II 535
- title format, →II 510, 511*f.*
- title information field, →II 533
- title, mapping short to full, →II 513*f.*
- translated works, →II 533
- translator information, →II 534
- URLs, →II 533*f.*
- volume title, →II 534
- verbose, →II 437*f.*, 440, 442, 444*f.*, 448–451, 453, 460, 464*f.*, 467*f.*, **537–541**
 - bibtex package, →II 538, 539*ff.*
 - definition, →II 473
 - full citations in running text, →II 539
- `citationreversed` value (jurabib), →II **515**, 523
- citations, *see also* bibliographies
 - acronyms with, →I 159*f.*
 - ambiguous citations, →II 550
 - bibliography input file, creating, →II 409–413
 - bibliography keywords, associating with database entries, →II 384
 - comparison of packages, →II 474
 - database selection, →II 410*f.*
 - default system, →II 475, 486
 - description, →II 469*f.*
 - DOI, →II 499
 - EID, →II 500
 - full, in running text
 - author-date citation system, →II 537, 538
 - short-title citation system, →II 514, 515*ff.*
 - Hungarian documents, →II 320
 - ISBN/ISSN, →II 500

citations (*cont.*)

- line breaks, →II 631
 - disabling, →II 480
- multiple authors, →II 472, 485, 501, 547ff., 550
- multiple bibliographies, →II 569–581
- naming, →II 623
- numerical by first citation, →II 470
- page ranges, →II 544, 545
- page ranges, disabling, →II 480
- paragraph break algorithm, →II 631
- parentheses, bibliographies
 - number-only citation system, →II 480
 - short-title citation system, →II 526
- process flow, →II 409–413
- punctuation, bibliographies
 - author-date citation system, →II 546
 - number-only citation system, →II 479, 482f.
 - short-title citation system, →II 528, 529
- quotations with, →I 182
- sort order, bibliographies
 - author-number citation system, →II 504, 505
 - number-only citation system, →II 478f., 481, 485f., 504f.
 - short-title citation system, →II 533
- spaces around/within, →II 480f.
- style files
 - author-date citation system, →II 499f.
 - definition files (bibtex), →II 563f.
 - short-title citation system, →II 532ff.
- superscripts
 - number-only citation system, →II 481f., 483, 486f.
 - short-title citation system, →II 526, 527, 533
- system, selecting, →II 428f.
- unambiguous citations, →II 548f., 550
- URL, →II 500

`\cite`, →I 159, 180, 182, →II 377, 381, 384, 410f., 412, 475, 476ff., 488, 491, 569f., 572–577, 581

- inside `.bib`, →II 407
- problems using, →I 178
- restrictions on key, →II 623
- warning using, →II 750
- (`authdate1-4`), →II 489
- (`bibtex`), →I 182, →II 412, 435, 472, 484, 485f., 487, 500, 507, 536f., 539, 540, 544, 545f., 548f., 555ff.
- (`biblist`), inside `.bib`, →II 415
- (`bibtopic`), →II 578, 579f.
- (`bibunits`), →II 575
- (`chapterbib`), →II 574
- (`chicago`), →II 489
- (`cite`), →II 478–483, 487
 - problems using, →II 482f.
- (`harvard`), →II 490
- (`jurabib`), →II 508, 509–512, 513, 514–527
- (`multibib`), →II 580
- (`natbib`), →I 182, →II 472, 484, 491, 493, 497, 503
- (`showkeys`), →I 94
- (`xr`), →I 95

`cite` key (acro), →I 159, 160

- `cite` syntax (bibtex), →II 486
- `cite` value (bibtex), →II 546
- `cite` package, →II 473f., 478–483, 487, 501
 - compatibility matrix, →II 570
 - incompatible with `bibtex`, →II 485
 - incompatible with `natbib`, →II 490, 504
- `\cite*`
 - (`bibtex`), →II 500, 535
 - (`bibunits`), →II 575, 576
 - (`harvard`), →II 490
 - (`jurabib`), →II 511
 - (`natbib`), →II 576
- `cite/cmd` key (acro), →I 159
- `cite/display` key (acro), →I 159
- `cite/group` key (acro), →I 159, 160
- `cite/group/cmd` key (acro), →I 159, 160
- `cite/group/pre` key (acro), →I 159, 160
- `cite/pre` key (acro), →I 159
- `\cite{type}` (multibib), →II 580
- `\citeA` (chicago), →II 489
- `\citeaffixed` (harvard), →II 490
- `\Citealp` (natbib), →II 492
- `\citealp`
 - (`jurabib`), →II 523, 524
 - (`natbib`), →II 492, 504
- `\citealp*` (natbib), →II 492
- `\Citealt` (natbib), →II 492
- `\citealt`
 - (`jurabib`), →II 523
 - (`natbib`), →II 492, 503, 504
- `\citealt*` (natbib), →II 492, 503, 504
- `\citeasnoun` (harvard), →II 490
- `\Citeauthor`
 - (`bibtex`), →II 501
 - (`natbib`), →II 492
- `\citeauthor`
 - (`bibtex`), →II 485, 487, 500, 535, 544
 - (`jurabib`), →II 523, 524
 - (`natbib`), →II 492, 493f., 503
- `\citeauthor*`
 - (`bibtex`), →II 485
 - (`natbib`), →II 492, 503
- `\citeauthoryear` (chicago), →II 488
- `cited` value (bibtex), →II 553
- `cited-or-important` value (tlc/bibtex), →II 553
- `\citedash` (cite), →II 479, 481
- `\citefield`
 - (`bibtex`), →II 535, 544, 567
 - (`jurabib`), →II 510, 525
- `citefind` program, →II 416, 417
- `\citeform` (cite), →II 480, 481
- `citefull` key/option (jurabib), →II 515, 516–519, 520, 522f.
- `\citefullfirstfortype` (jurabib), →II 515, 516
- `citeindex` syntax (bibtex), →II 546
- `\citeindexfalse` (natbib), →II 498
- `\citeindextrue` (natbib), →II 498
- `\citeindextype` (natbib), →II 499
- `\citelatex` (tlc/multibib), →II 581

`\citeleft (cite)`, →II 479, 480, 481, 483
`\citelist (biblatex)`, →II 567
`\citemid (cite)`, →II 479, 481
`\CiteMoveChars (cite)`, →II 482
`\citeN (chicago)`, →II 489
`\citen (cite)`, →II 480
`\citename`
 (biblatex), →II 408, 567, 568
 (harvard), →II 490
`\citenotitlefortype (jurabib)`, →II 512
`\citeNP (chicago)`, →II 489
`\citenum (cite)`, →II 480
`\citenumfont (natbib)`, →II 505, 506
`\citeonline (cite)`, →II 480
`\Citep (natbib)`, →II 492
`\citep`
 (biblatex), →II 485
 (jurabib), →II 523, 524
 (natbib), →II 484, 488, 491, 493–496, 498, 503, 504f.
 problems using, →II 494, 498, 504
`\citep* (natbib)`, →II 491, 494f., 503
 citepages key/option (biblatex), →II 540, 541
`\citepalias (natbib)`, →II 493
`\citepunct (cite)`, →II 479, 481
`\citeright (cite)`, →II 479, 480, 481
`\cites (biblatex)`, →II 502
 CiteSeer, →II 413
`\citestyle (natbib)`, →II 495, 496, 505
 citestyle key/option (biblatex), →II 433, 543
`\citeswithoutentry (jurabib)`, →II 517
`\Citet (natbib)`, →II 492
`\citet`
 (biblatex), →II 485
 (jurabib), →II 515, 523, 524
 (natbib), →II 484, 488, 491, 493–496, 497f., 503, 504, 538
 problems using, →II 494, 497f., 504
`\Citet* (natbib)`, →II 492
`\citet*`
 (biblatex), →II 485
 (natbib), →II 491, 492, 503
 citetags program, →II 416, 417
`\citetalias (natbib)`, →II 493
`\citetesting (tlc/biblatex)`, →II 564
`\citetext (natbib)`, →II 492, 504
`\citetitle`
 (biblatex), →II 535, 558
 (jurabib), →II 511, 517, 526
 citetitle syntax (biblatex), →II 561, 568
`\citetitlefortype (jurabib)`, →II 512
`\citetitleonly (jurabib)`, →II 511
 citetracker key/option (biblatex), →II 502
`\citeurl (uri)`, →I 204
`\citeyear`
 (biblatex), →II 500
 (chicago), →II 489
 (jurabib), →II 523
 (natbib), →II 492, 503
`\citeyearNP (chicago)`, →II 489
`\citeyearpar`
 (jurabib), →II 523, 524
 (natbib), →II 492, 493, 503
 CJK package, →II 331, 341
 CJKShape key (fontspec), →I 727
`\clap`, →II 204, 662
 class BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 467
 class files, →I 10
 class/<name>/after hook, →II 677
 class/<name>/before hook, →II 677
 class/after hook, →II 677
 class/before hook, →II 677
`\ClassError`, →II 707
 classes
 commands, →II 628, 694, 704–710
 file structure, →II 693–710
 metadata, →I 23, 24
 minimal requirements, →II 710
 options, →I 22, *see also* options
 classes.dtx file, →I 665
 classes.ins file, →II 603
 classico package, →II 71
`\ClassInfo`, →II 707
`\ClassNote`, →II 707
`\ClassNoteNoLine`, →II 707
`\ClassWarning`, →II 707
`\ClassWarningNoLine`, →II 707
 claves biblatex style (biblatex-claves), →II 462
 Clean value (listings), →I 323
 Clear Sans fonts, description/examples, →II 72
`\cleardoublepage`, →I 42, 48, 418
 (endfloat), →I 527
 (paracol), →I 347
 cleareempty option (titlesec), →I 42
`\ClearHookNext`, →II 673
`\clearpage`, →I 29, 48, 215, 414, 418, 464, 509f., 514f., 519, 525, →II 371, 677, 679
 (afterpage), →I 525, 532
 (endfloat), →I 527
 (geometry), →I 382
 (lscape), →I 384
 (paracol), →I 347
 (placeins), →I 524
 ClearSans package, →II 72
`\cleartoevenpage (nextpage)`, →I 419
`\cleartooddpage (nextpage)`, →I 419
 cleveref package, →I 77, 79, 86–93, 285, 502
 clig OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 720, 721
`\cline`, →I 437, 441, 468, 476ff., 484
 colored, →I 468
 (booktabs), →I 472
`\clineB (boldline)`, →I 468
 Clip key (adjustbox), →I 596, 597
`\clip (tikz)`, →I 638
 clip key
 (adjustbox), →I 595, 596
 (graphicx), →I 580, 582, 583
 (tikz), →I 638

- Clip* key (adjustbox), →I 596
- clipping graphic objects, →I 596
- .clo file extension, →I 10f., 22, 258
- \closed (tlc/mathtools), →II 172
- cloud value (tikz), →I 641
- cloud services, running L^AT_EX, →II 791f.
- .cls file extension, →I 9, 10f., 22
- \clubpenalty T_EX counter, →I 421, 424, →II 770, 773
- \clubsuit math symbol ♣, →II 213
- cm syntax (*unit*), →II 652
- cm value (mathalpha), →II 232
- CM Bright fonts, description/examples, →II 12, 239, 240
 - in math and text, →II 290
- CM-Super fonts, →I 685f.
- cmbright package, →II 12, 239f., 290
- \cmd (ltxdoc), →II 598
- cmd/(*cmd*)/after hook, →I 137, →II 672, 674, 676, 683
- cmd/(*cmd*)/before hook, →I 137, →II 676, 677, 683
- cmd/quote/after hook, →II 672, 674, 675
 - (tlc), →II 672
- \CMidRule (keyvaltable), →I 498
- \cmidrule (booktabs), →I 472, 473
- \cmidrulekern rigid length (booktabs), →I 472
- \cmidrulesep rigid length (booktabs), →I 472
- \cmidrulewidth rigid length (booktabs), →I 472
- cnltx bibl_{at}ex style (cnltx), →II 467
- Cobol value (listings), →I 323
- cochf option (newtxtext), →II 247
- cochineal option
 - (newtxmath), →II 263
 - (newtxtext), →II 247
- cochineal package, →II 40, 263
- cochrho option (newtxtext), →II 247
- code, *see* computer code
- \code (doc), →II 594, 596
- \CodelineFont (doc), →I 738
- \CodelineIndex (doc), →II 588, 589, 594, 595, 599
 - CodelineNo counter (doc), →I 738
- \CodelineNumbered (doc), →II 589, 595
- codes key (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 313
- coelacanth package, →II 37
- Coelacanth fonts, description/examples, →II 37
- \Coffeecup text symbol ☕ (marvosym), →II 117
- colaction option (multicol), →I 354, 355
- colback key (tcolorbox), →I 615, 618, 622, 627, 629ff.
- colbacklower key (tcolorbox), →I 618
- colbacktitle key (tcolorbox), →I 618, 622
- colbackupper key (tcolorbox), →I 618
- colframe key (tcolorbox), →I 615, 618, 619, 627, 629f.
- colgroups key (keyvaltable), →I 502, 503, 504
- collection Bib_LT_EX entry type (bibl_{at}ex), →II 387
- collection of computer science bibliographies, →II 413
- collections, bibliographic information, →II 533
- collectmore counter (multicol), →I 353f., 357, 360
- \CollectRow (keyvaltable), →I 500, 501, 502
- collower key (tcolorbox), →I 618
- \colon math symbol : , →II 137, 222f., 676
 - (amsmath), spacing modified, →II 194, 223, 676
- \colon math symbol : (cont.)
 - (unicode-math), →II 258
- colon key/option (unicode-math), →II 258
- colon option (natbib), →II 495
- colon value (caption), →I 543
- colon (:), shorthand character, →II 312f.
- colon-newline value (tlc/caption), →I 544
- \colonapprox math symbol ≈ (colonequals), →II 221
- \coloncolon math symbol :: (colonequals), →II 221
- \coloncolonapprox math symbol ::≈ (colonequals), →II 221
- \coloncolonequals math symbol ::= (colonequals), →II 221
- \coloncolonminus math symbol :- (colonequals), →II 221
- \coloncolonsim math symbol :~ (colonequals), →II 221
- \colonequals math symbol := (colonequals), →II 221
 - colonequals package, →II 221
- \colonminus math symbol :- (colonequals), →II 221
- \colonsep (colonequals), →II 221
 - colonsep value (jurabib), →II 508, 511, 524, 532
- \colonsim math symbol :~ (colonequals), →II 221
- Color key (fontspec), →I 714
- color
 - as used in this book, →I 17
 - background, →I 307
 - bibliographies, →II 480
 - frame rules, →I 307
 - mathematical typesetting, →II 207f.
 - number-only citations, →II 480
 - rules (graphic lines), →I 467, 468
 - table rules, →I 467, 468
 - tables, →I 466f.
 - troubleshooting, →II 670f.
 - typed text
 - background, →I 307
 - frame rules, →I 307
 - text, →I 306
- \color (color|xcolor),
 - I 12, 17, 142, 466, 468, 484, 485, 496, 598, 665
 - as used in this book, →I 17
 - error using, →II 741
 - in math, →II 197, 207f.
 - problems in tabular cells, →I 440
 - problems with box commands, →II 671
- color key
 - (adjustbox), →I 597, 599
 - (changes), →I 246, 247ff.
 - (draftwatermark), →I 410
 - (hyperref|bookmark), →I 105
 - (multicolrule), →I 361
 - (tikz), →I 645f.
 - (todonotes), →I 239, 241, →II 645
 - (unicodefonttable), →I 730
- color key/option (crop), →I 413
- color option (showkeys), →I 94
- color value (caption), →I 542, 545
- color package, →I 167, 274, 413, 466, →II 207f.
 - compatibility with other packages, →II 670
 - error using, →II 711, 733, 741
 - loaded by crop, →I 413

- color package (*cont.*)
 - loaded by draftwatermark, →I 410
- `\colorbox` (color|xcolor), →I 227, 307, 308, 595, 596, 598, →II 175, 680
 - as used in this book, →I 17
- colored value (changes), →I 248
- colorinlistoftodos option (todonotes), →I 238, 242
- colorize key (interval), →II 173
- colorlinks key/option (hyperref), →I 88, 102f., 202, 204, →II 547
- colormodel key (draftwatermark), →I 410
- colorscheme key (hyperref), →I 103
- colorspace package, →II 980
- colorespec key (draftwatermark), →I 410
- colortbl package, →I 466ff., 470, 479, 497, →II 158
- `\colseprulecolor` (paracol), →I 342, 343
- colspacing key (tcolorbox), →I 630
- coltext key (tcolorbox), →I 618
- coltitle key (tcolorbox), →I 618, 620, 622
- column env. (paracol), →I 341, 342
- column key (tcolorbox), →I 630f.
- column option (cellspace), →I 475
- column syntax, →I 391, 395
- column layout, bibliographies, →II 530
- column specifiers, defining, →I 445, 446, 448ff., 468, 482ff., 488, 490
- column* env. (paracol), →I 341, 342
- column-sep key (tasks), →I 291
- columnbadness counter (multicol), →I 357, 359
- `\columnbreak` (multicol), →I 353, 354, 355, 358, 360
- `\columncolor`
 - (colortbl), →I 467, 479
 - (paracol), →I 342, 343f.
- `\columnratio` (paracol), →I 346, 466
- columns key
 - (listings), →I 327, 328
 - (tcolorbox), →I 630
- columns, table
 - fixed width, →I 438, 440–443, 446
 - hiding, →I 495f., 498ff.
 - laying out, →I 432, 433ff., 436f.
 - modifying style, →I 445, 446
 - narrow, →I 442f.
 - one-off, →I 445, 446
 - spacing, →I 443f., 474, 475, 476
 - spanning cells, →I 453, 454f., 471, 473, 476ff., 484f., 502, 503f.
 - tab stops, →I 433ff.
- columns, text
 - actions based on column, →I 354, 355
 - balancing, →I 358f., 360
 - breaks
 - handling in indexes, →II 372
 - manually produced, →I 353, 355
 - collecting material, →I 360
 - floats, →I 347f., 353f.
 - footnotes, →I 228, 229, 344ff., 349, 353f.
 - formatting, →I 357f.
- columns, text (*cont.*)
 - line numbers, →I 348, 349f.
 - marginal notes, →I 347
 - multiple, →I 351, 352f., 355–359
 - parallel synchronization, →I 339, 340f., 342, 343f., 345, 346, 347–350, 351
 - right-to-left, →I 355, 356
 - rules between, →I 356, 361
 - vertical spacing, →I 208
- `\columnsep` rigid length, →I 367, 369, →II 371, 688
 - (multicol), →I 356
 - (paracol), →I 348
 - (wrapfig), →I 536
- columnsep key/option (geometry), →I 378
- `\columnseprule` rigid length, →I 342, 343, 367, 369, →II 371
 - (multicol), →I 356
- `\columnseprulecolor` (multicol), →I 356
- `\columnwidth` rigid length, →I 208, 209, 367, 561, 563, 565, 586
 - (multicol), →I 356
- colupper key (tcolorbox), →I 618
- `\Com` (tlc), →II 350, 352
- Coma180 value (listings), →I 323
- `\combinemarks` (tlc/fancyhdr), →I 394
- combining accents, issues with, →I 651
- comma option (natbib), →II 495, 496, 503
- comma value (jurabib), →II 509
- commabeforerest key/option (jurabib), →II 508, 511, 532
- command key (graphicx), →I 582
- command.com value (listings), →I 323
- commandchars key (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 298, 313, 318, 320
- commandnameprefix option (changes), →I 250
- commands
 - control symbols, →II 623
 - creating
 - argument processors, →II 642ff.
 - argument specification, →II 632ff.
 - defining new, →II 624, 625, 626–629, 632ff., 635, 636–644
 - naming, →II 622ff.
 - nesting, →II 627, 628
 - optional arguments, →II 626, 631, 632, 637–641
 - portability, →II 622
 - preprocessing arguments, →II 644f.
 - definitions, displaying, →II 766ff.
 - documentation, list of (doc), →II 597
 - execution, tracing, →II 781f.
 - expandable, →II 626, 636, 637
 - for classes and packages, →II 628, 694, 704–710
 - fragile, →II 715, 716
 - ltxdoc class, →II 598
 - redefining, →II 625, 626, 628, 635
 - robust, →II 626, 628, 636, 715
 - spaces after, →I 152, 153
 - troubleshooting, →II 767, 781f.
- commasep value (jurabib), →II 511
- `\Comment` (algpseudocode), →I 322
- `\comment` (changes), →I 245, 246f., 248, 250

- comment env.
 - (tlc/fancyvrb), →I 318
 - (verbatim), →I 301
- comment key (changes), →I 246, 247, 248, 249
- comment value (changes), →I 247
- comment package, →I 30
- comment characters
 - bibliographies, →II 381
 - doc package, →II 585
 - docstrip, →II 605
- commentary Bib_TEX entry type (biblatex), →II 383, 536
- commentchar key (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 313
- commented Bib_TEX entry type (jurabib), →II 526, 533, 534
- commented value (jurabib), →II 526
- commentmarkup option (changes), →I 246f., 248, 249
- comments, bibliographies, →II 381, 390
- comments, stripping from code (docstrip)
 - arbitrary program languages, →II 605
 - comment characters, changing, →II 605
 - description, →II 599f.
 - invoking, →II 600
 - L3 programming layer, →II 605
 - main scripts, creating, →II 603f.
 - messages, generating, →II 602f.
 - postamble, creating, →II 604
 - preamble, creating, →II 604
 - result file, specifying, →II 601f.
 - script commands, →II 601–604
 - source file, specifying, →II 601f.
 - syntax, →II 601–604
 - user messages, generating, →II 602f.
 - verbatim delimiters, coding, →II 605
- commentstyle key (listings), →I 324, 328, 331, 333
- Common value (fontspec), →I 720f.
- CommonOff value (fontspec), →I 721
- commutative diagrams, →II 129, 159–163
- compact key
 - (breqn), →II 148
 - (tlc/enumitem), →I 265
- compact option (titlesec), →I 40, 41
- compactsummary value (changes), →I 246, 247
- compare value (jurabib), →II 513
- compare-bg-color key (unicodefonttable), →I 730
- compare-color key (unicodefonttable), →I 730
- compare-with key (unicodefonttable), →I 730
- compatibility value (microtype), →I 128
- compile errors, *see* troubleshooting
- \complement math symbol \complement (amssymb), →II 213
- complex numbers, scientific notation, →I 171, 172
- \complexnum (siunitx), →I 172
- \complexqty (siunitx), →I 172
- composed page numbers, indexes, →II 362
- compound math symbols, →II 163, 164, 165, 166–171, 172f., 174, 175, 176f., 178, 179f.
- Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network, *see* CTAN
- compress option
 - (cite), →II 480
 - (cleveref), →I 87
 - compress value (jurabib), →II 529, 530, 531
 - compressing citations, →II 501, 504, 505, 535
 - computer code, typesetting,
 - I 322, 323, 324, 326f., 332, *see also* typed text
 - as floats, →I 331
 - captions, →I 330
 - code fragments within normal text, →I 325, 326
 - formatting language keywords, →I 324, 325
 - formatting whole files, →I 325
 - fragments within normal text, →I 325, 326
 - frames around listings, →I 330
 - indentation, →I 326f., 328f.
 - input encoding, →I 331, 333
 - languages supported, →I 323
 - line breaks, →I 329
 - numbering lines, →I 326, 327, 332
 - rules around listings, →I 330
 - spacing, →I 327, 328
 - stripping comments, *see* comments, stripping from code
 - computer display, page layout, →I 378
 - Computer Modern (CM) fonts, →I 660
 - L_AT_EX standard fonts, →I 684f., 686, 687f.
 - Cyrillic alphabet, →II 326
 - description/examples, →I 684ff., →II 60
 - in math and text, →II 262, 284
 - computer program style quoting, →I 302f., 305
 - \ComputerMouse text symbol \mathcal{M} (marvosym), →II 117
 - Comsol value (listings), →I 323
 - Concrete fonts, description/examples, →II 65, 238, 239, 241
 - in math and text, →II 288
 - Concurrent Versions System (CVS), →II 615
 - condensed option, →II 8
 - (antor), →II 101f., 295f.
 - (cabin), →II 70
 - (gillius), →II 75
 - (iwona), →II 77f., 293
 - (kurier), →II 79
 - (notocondensed), →II 27
 - (plex-sans), →II 31
 - (roboto), →II 34
 - (tgheros), →I 690, →II 77
 - (universalis), →II 87
 - \condition (breqn), →II 149
 - conditional code syntax, →II 590, 591
 - conditional formatting, →II 689, 690–693
 - confer syntax (biblatex), →II 540
 - config key/option
 - (caption), →I 550
 - (jurabib), →II 532
 - config option (microtype), →I 130
 - configuration files, *see also* .cfg
 - creating, →II 598f.
 - external, bibliographies, →II 532
 - \cong math symbol \cong , →II 183, 217
 - cont key (keyfloat), →I 568f.
 - cont value (tlc/caption), →I 547
 - \contdrop length (continue), →I 408
 - \contentsfinish (titletoc), →I 59, 63–67

`\contentslabel` (titletoc), →I 62, 63, 64f., 67
`\contentsline`, →I 63, 66, 71ff., 74
`\contentsmargin` (titletoc), →I 61, 62, 66–69
`\contentsname`, →I 37
 (babel), →II 305
`\contentspage` (titletoc), →I 62, 63f.
`\contentspush` (titletoc), →I 61, 63, 69, 74
`\contentsuse` (titletoc), →I 59
 context key (microtype), →I 133, 134, 137
 Contextuals key (fontspec), →I 726
 Contextuals value (fontspec), →I 720, 721
 continue package, →I 407ff.
 continued fractions, math symbols, →II 166
 ContinuedFloat counter (caption), →I 547, 548
 ContinuedFloat syntax (caption), →I 547
`\ContinuedFloat` (caption), →I 546, 547f., 558
`\ContinuedFloat*` (caption), →I 548
 continuous slope curves, →I 606, 611
 control structures
 arithmetic calculations, →II 657f., 659f., 687f., 689
 floating point, →II 657f., 659
 integer, →II 659
 lengths, →II 660
 conditional formatting, →II 689, 690–693
 testing for engine, →II 685, 686, 687
 controls key (tikz-cd), →II 163
 controls syntax (tikz), →I 637, 638, 645f.
`\contsep` rigid length (continue), →I 408, 409
 coordinate (tikz path operation), →I 641
`\coordinate` (tikz), →I 635, 641
 coordinate syntax (tikz), →I 641
 coordinate systems (tikz), →I 633, 634f.
`\coprod` math symbol II, →II 167, 222
 copy-editing, support commands, →I 120, 183, 187, 245–250
`\copyright` text/math symbol ©, →I 771, →II 213
 Cork (T1) font encoding,
 →I 658, 672, 685, *see also* T1 font encoding
 Cormorant Garamond fonts, description/examples,
 →I 724, →II 41, 110
 CormorantGaramond package, →II 41
 cos (tikz path operation), →I 636
`\cos` math operator $\cos x$, →II 193, 201f.
 cos syntax
 (*fp expr*), →II 658
 (tikz), →I 637
 cosd syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
`\cosec` math operator $\csc x$ (babel), →II 321
`\cosh` math operator $\cosh x$, →II 193, 321
`\cot` math operator $\cot x$, →II 193, 321
 cot syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
 cotd syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
`\coth` math operator $\coth x$, →II 193, 321
`\coulomb` (siunitx), →I 170
`\count`, →II 733
 counter key (tasks), →I 291
 counter-format key (enotez), →I 231, 232
 counters
 defining new, →II 646
 counters (cont.)
 description, →II 646
 displaying, →II 648, 649ff.
 footnotes, resetting per-page, →I 218, 219f., 223
 formatting, →II 648, 650, 651
 headings, →I 51, 53f.
 incrementing, →II 647, 648
 list of, →II 646
 modifying, →II 334, 335, 648
 padding zeros, →II 650
 setting, →II 647
 counters value (babel), →II 323
 counters/masc key (babel), →II 334
`\counterwithin`, →I 35, 209, 388, →II 153, 646, 647, 649
`\counterwithout`, →I 35, 209, →II 153, 647
 courier value (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 304, 305, 318, 321
 courier *obsolete* package, →I 691, *see instead* tgcursor
 Courier fonts, description/examples, →I 690, →II 91
`\cov` math operator x (tlc/amsmath), →II 160
 cp1250 option (inputenc), →I 692
 cp1251 option (inputenc), →II 327
 cp1252 option (inputenc), →I 692
 cp1257 option (inputenc), →I 692
 cp855 option (inputenc), →II 326
 cp866 option (inputenc), →II 326
 cp866av option (inputenc), →II 326
 cp866mav option (inputenc), →II 327
 cp866nav option (inputenc), →II 327
 cp866tat option (inputenc), →II 327
`\Cpageref` (cleveref), →I 88
`\cpageref` (cleveref), →I 88
`\Cpagerefrange` (cleveref), →I 88
`\cpagerefrange` (cleveref), →I 88
 csp OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 715, 722
`\cr`, error mentioning, →II 722, 730f.
`\cramped` (mathtools), →II 196, 197
`\crampedclap` (mathtools), →II 204
`\crampedllap` (mathtools), →II 204
`\crampedrlap` (mathtools), →II 204
 crampedsubarray env. (mathtools), →II 168
`\crampedsubstack` (mathtools), →II 168
`\crcr`, error mentioning, →II 730
`\Cref` (cleveref), →I 86, 87f., 90, 92, 285
`\cref` (cleveref), →I 86, 87f., 90ff., 285, 502
`\crefalias` (cleveref), →I 91
`\creflabelformat` (cleveref), →I 90, 91
`\creflastconjunction` (cleveref), →I 90
`\crefmiddleconjunction` (cleveref), →I 90
`\Crefname` (cleveref), →I 90, 92
`\crefname` (cleveref), →I 90, 91, 92, 502
`\crefpairconjunction` (cleveref), →I 90
`\Creffrange` (cleveref), →I 88
`\creffrange` (cleveref), →I 88, 502
`\creffrangeconjunction` (cleveref), →I 90, 91
 Crimson Pro/Cochineal fonts, description/examples,
 →I 716, →II 40, 107, 263
 in math and text, →II 263
 CrimsonPro package, →II 40, 263

- croatian option (babel), →II 301
 - crop package, →I 411–414
 - crop marks, →I 411, 412ff.
 - cropmarks option (tlc), →II 708f.
 - cross option (crop), →I 411, 413
 - cross-references, *see also* packages cleveref and varioref
 - as active links, →I 88, 90, 96, 97–108
 - bibliographies, →II 406ff., 523
 - bookmarks, →I 103, 104ff.
 - current page, →I 386
 - customizing, →I 81, 82, 83f.
 - definition, →I 75
 - displaying reference keys, →I 93, 94f.
 - doc package, →II 588f.
 - errors, →II 717
 - formatting, →I 86ff., 90f.
 - indexes, creating, →II 347
 - label formats, →I 77f., 79–85, 86–92, 268f., 274
 - language support, →I 82ff.
 - line numbers, →I 336, 337
 - list items, →I 268f., 274
 - nonnumerical, →I 93
 - numbers, forcing to upright roman font, →II 129
 - page numbers, →I 386
 - PDF outline view, →I 103, 104ff.
 - restricted characters, →I 75
 - to a page number only, →I 80
 - to a range of objects, →I 81, 86–91
 - to external documents, →I 95
 - to headed lists, →I 285
 - to the current page, →I 79
 - troubleshooting, →II 717
 - unused reference keys, →I 95
 - wrong references to floats, →I 76, 77
 - crossref BibTeX field, →II 382, 388, 406, 523
 - (biblist), →II 415
 - crossref key/option (jurabib), →II 523
 - \cs
 - (doc), →II 595
 - (ltxdoc), →II 598
 - cs value (upmendex), →II 369
 - cs@collation=search value (upmendex), →II 369
 - \cs_new:Npn, →II 622
 - \csc math operator $\csc x$, →II 193, 321
 - (tlc/amsmath), →II 194
 - csc syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
 - cscd syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
 - csdisplay key/option (csquotes), →I 181
 - csk value (listings), →I 323
 - \csname, →I 528, →II 767
 - csquotes package, →I 179–188, →II 311, 559, 807, 978
 - combined with microtype, →I 196
 - combined with soul, →I 196
 - csstar key (keyfloat), →I 569, 570f., 572
 - .csv file extension (keyvaltable), →I 500
 - csvsimple package, →I 500
 - ctan keyword (l3build), →II 608, 612
 - CTAN (Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network)
 - contents, →II 790
 - web access, →II 789f.
 - CTeX package, →II 331
 - \ctg math operator $\ctg x$ (babel), →II 321
 - \cth math operator $\cth x$ (babel), →II 321
 - ctt option (inputenc), →II 327
 - \cubed (siunitx), →I 169, 173
 - \cubic (siunitx), →I 173, 175
 - culture, and typesetting, →II 300
 - \Cup math symbol Ψ (amssymb), →II 215
 - \cup math symbol \cup , →II 215
 - cuprum package, →II 73
 - Cuprum fonts, description/examples, →II 73
 - curly option (natbib), →II 495, 496
 - \curlyeqprec math symbol \preccurlyeq (amssymb), →II 217
 - \curlyeqsucc math symbol \succcurlyeq (amssymb), →II 217
 - curlyquotes key (fvextra), →I 303
 - \curlyvee math symbol \vee (amssymb), →II 215
 - \curlyveedownarrow math symbol \searrow (stmaryrd), →II 219
 - \curlyveeuparrow math symbol \nearrow (stmaryrd), →II 219
 - \curlywedge math symbol \wedge (amssymb), →II 215
 - \curlywedgedownarrow math symbol \swarrow (stmaryrd), →II 219
 - \curlywedgeuparrow math symbol \nwarrow (stmaryrd), →II 219
 - currency symbols, →I 696
 - \currentfield (biblatex), →II 567
 - \CurrentLineWidth rigid length (tabto), →I 435
 - \currentlist (biblatex), →II 567
 - \CurrentOption, →II 694, 698, 709f.
 - \currentpage (layouts), →I 373, 375
 - curs OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 725
 - Cursive value (fontspec), →I 725
 - curve-to (tikz path operation), →I 636, 637
 - \curvearrowleft math symbol \curvearrowleft (amssymb), →II 219
 - \curvearrowright math symbol \curvearrowright (amssymb), →II 219
 - curves, continuous slope, →I 606, 611
 - custom-bib package,
 - II 390, 406, 419, 426–432, 472, 494, 498, 538, 979
 - custom-line key (multicolrule), →I 361
 - \CustomVerbatimCommand (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 317, 318
 - \CustomVerbatimEnvironment (fancyvrb|fvextra),
 - I 317, 318
 - cv{num} OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 715, 722, 723f.
 - \cverb (tlc/newverbs), →I 299
 - CVS (Concurrent Versions System), →II 615
 - cycle syntax (tikz), →I 634f., 636, 640, 642, 644, 645
 - cyklop package, →II 73
 - Cyklop fonts, description/examples, →II 73
 - cyrguide.pdf file (babel), →II 326
 - Cyrillic, →II 324, 325, 326ff.
 - fonts, →II 110–113
 - \cyrillicencoding (babel), →II 323
 - czech option (babel), →II 301
- ## D
- D syntax
 - (*cmd/env decl*), →II 633, 638f., 718
 - (*abracas*), →II 185, 186, 187f., 190

- D syntax (*cont.*)
- (dcolumn), →I 482, 483*f.*, →II 319
 - (siunitx), →I 168
- `\d` text accent $\grave{}$, →I 764, 771
- d syntax
- (*cmd/env decl*), →I 606, →II 633, 639, 757
 - (dashundergaps), →I 191
 - (siunitx), →I 168
 - (tikz-cd), →II 161, 162*f.*
 - (tlc/dcolumn), →I 482*f.*
- d.m.y value (typed-checklist), →I 294
- da value (upmendex), →II 369
- `\dag` text/math symbol †, →I 771, →II 215
- `\dagger` math symbol †, →II 215
- `\daleth` math symbol \daleth (amssymb), →II 213
- `\dalton` (siunitx), →I 171
- danish option (babel), →II 301
- DANTE (German T_EX users group), →II 793
- dash key (tikz-cd), →II 162, 163
- dash key/option (dashundergaps), →I 191
- dash (–), *see* hyphen
- `\dasharrow` math symbol \dashrightarrow , →II 219
- (amssymb), →II 219
- `\dashbox`, →I 606
- dashed key
- (tikz-cd), →II 163
 - (tikz), →I 635, 636, 638, 640*ff.*
- dashed key/option (biblatex), →II 433, 556
- dashed lines, →I 469, 470, 610
- `\DashedPar` (fancypar), →I 147
- `\dashleftarrow` math symbol \dashleftarrow (amssymb), →II 219
- `\dashline` (bxeepic), →I 610
- `\dashlinedash` rigid length (arydshln), →I 469
- `\dashlinegap` rigid length (arydshln), →I 469
- `\dashlinestretch` (bxeepic), →I 610
- `\dashrightarrow` math symbol \dashrightarrow (amssymb), →II 219
- `\dashrightarrow` key (tikz-cd), →II 162
- dashrule package, →II 668
- `\dashuline` (ulem), →I 190
- dashuline value (changes), →I 248
- dashundergaps package, →I 190*f.*
- `\dashv` math symbol \dashv , →II 221
- data flow
- bibliography and citations, →II 410
 - index generation, →II 344
 - L^AT_EX, →I 9
- data references, bibliographies, →II 403*f.*, 405
- database format, bibliographies
- abbreviations, creating/using, →II 401*f.*
 - journal defaults, →II 403
 - accents, →II 398*f.*
 - case sensitivity, →II 384
 - comments, →II 381, 390
 - cross-references, →II 406*ff.*
 - data references, →II 403*f.*, 405
 - data, defined, →II 381
 - dates, →II 400*f.*
- database format, bibliographies (*cont.*)
- entry types, →II 381, 384–390, 562
 - biblatex, →II 385, 387
 - fields, →II 384–390
 - data types (biblatex), →II 393
 - ignored, →II 385
 - literal and name lists (biblatex), →II 393
 - nonstandard, →II 390–393
 - optional, →II 385, 386*f.*
 - required, →II 384, 386*f.*
 - text part, →II 393
 - keys
 - case sensitivity, →II 384
 - definition, →II 381
 - language support, →II 392*f.*
 - names, specifying, →II 394–397
 - preamble, →II 405*f.*
 - separator character, →II 381
 - sort order, →II 387*ff.*
 - spaces, →II 381
 - special characters, →II 398*f.*
 - strings, creating/using, →II 401*f.*
 - journal defaults, →II 403
 - titles, →II 398
 - URL, →II 390*f.*, 392
- database management tools, bibliographies
- bibclean, →II 415
 - bibextract, →II 416
 - biblist, →II 415
 - checkcites, →II 414
 - citefind, →II 416
 - citetags, →II 416
 - entries
 - extracting, →II 416, 417
 - missing, →II 414
 - normalizing, →II 418
 - searching by strings, →II 416
 - unused, →II 414
 - validating, →II 418
 - Internet resources, →II 414*f.*
 - keys
 - adding to bibliography listing, →II 417
 - extracting, →II 416
 - lexical analyzer, →II 415
 - online resources, →II 414*f.*
 - pretty-printing, →II 415
 - searching, →II 416
 - showtags, →II 417
 - strings, searching all entries for, →II 416
- `\dataset` BibT_EX entry type (biblatex), →II 387
- datatool package, →I 500
- `\datatype` key (biblatex), →II 417, 562
- `\date`, →I 26, →II 734
- (titling), →I 27
- `\date` BibT_EX field (biblatex),
- II 383, 387, 389, 400, 401, 402, 418
- `\date` key/option (biblatex), →II 433
- `\date` option (snapshot), →I 112

`\DeclareHookRule`, –II 684, 685
 error using, –II 737, 742
`\DeclareInputMath` (inputenc), –I 759
`\DeclareInputText` (inputenc), –I 759
`\DeclareInstance` (xfrac), –I 165, 166
`\DeclareKeys`, –II 694, 700, 702f.
`\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate` (biblatex), –II 487
`\DeclareListFormat` (biblatex), –II 566, 567
`\DeclareLucidaFontShape` (lucidabr), –II 23
`\DeclareMathAccent`, –I 752, –II 242
 error or warning using, –II 759
`\DeclareMathAlphabet`, –I 679, 680, 681, 683, 753,
 –II 179, 226, 228ff., 238, 754
 warning using, –II 758f.
 when not to use, –I 752
 (unicode-math), –II 256
`\DeclareMathDelimiter`, –I 752, –II 293, 295
 warning using, –II 759
`\DeclareMathOperator`
 (amsmath), –II 160f., 193, 194, 259
 (amsopn), –II 129
`\DeclareMathRadical`, –I 752
`\DeclareMathSizes`, –I 736, 749
`\DeclareMathSymbol`, –I 680, 751, 752, –II 149, 212f., 214
 error using, –II 738
 warning using, –II 759
 wrong output, –II 751
`\DeclareMathVersion`, –I 753
 warning using, –II 759
`\DeclareMicrotypeBabelHook` (microtype), –I 134
`\DeclareNameAlias` (biblatex), –II 568f.
`\DeclareNameFormat` (biblatex), –II 566, 568
`\DeclareNewFootnote` (manyfoot|bigfoot), –I 221, 222–226
`\DeclareNonamestring` (biblatex), –II 394
`\DeclareOption`, –II 694, 697, 698, 699ff., 709f.
`\DeclareOption*`, –II 694, 698, 699f., 702, 709f.
 ignores global options, –II 700
`\DeclareOuterCiteDelims` (biblatex-ext), –II 477, 478, 486
`\DeclarePairedDelimiter` (mathtools), –II 172
`\declarepostamble` (docstrip), –II 604
`\declarepreamble` (docstrip), –II 604
`\DeclareRefcontext` (biblatex), –II 554, 555
`\DeclareRelease`, –II 694, 695
`\DeclareRobustCommand`, –II 628, 635f.
`\DeclareRobustCommand*`, –II 628
`\DeclareSIPower` (siunitx), –I 176
`\DeclareSIPrefix` (siunitx), –I 176
`\DeclareSIQualifier` (siunitx), –I 175, 176
`\DeclareSIUnit` (siunitx), –I 171, 176, 177
`\DeclareSortingTemplate` (biblatex), –II 554
`\DeclareSourcemap` (biblatex), –II 392, 408, 417
`\DeclareSymbolFont`, –I 750, 751, 752, 753,
 –II 293, 295, 754
 error using, –II 740
 warning using, –II 759
`\DeclareSymbolFontAlphabet`, –I 679, 681, 752
 warning using, –II 759
`\DeclareTextAccent`, –I 762, 767
`\DeclareTextAccentDefault`, –I 765, 766
`\DeclareTextCommand`, –I 704, 764, 767
`\DeclareTextCommandDefault`, –I 699, 703, 765, 766
`\DeclareTextComposite`, –I 762, 764
`\DeclareTextCompositeCommand`, –I 764, 767
`\DeclareTextFontCommand`, –I 711
`\DeclareTextSymbol`, –I 761, 762, 765, 767
`\DeclareTextSymbolDefault`, –I 698, 702f., 765, 766
`\declaretheorem` (thmtools), –I 284, 285–288
`\declaretheoremstyle` (thmtools), –I 288
`\DeclareUnicodeAccent`, –I 767
`\DeclareUnicodeCharacter`, –I 758, 759, –II 743
 error using, –II 717, 719
`\DeclareUnicodeCommand`, –I 767
`\DeclareUnicodeComposite`, –I 767
`\DeclareUnicodeSymbol`, –I 767
`\DeclareUnknownKeyHandler`, –II 694, 702
`\DeclareUrlCommand` (url), –I 200, 201f.
 declaring hooks, –II 681
 decorations.pathmorphing library (tikz), –II 162
 decorative
 arrows, –II 163f.
 initials, –I 144, 145, –II 104, 105, 106
 letters, at start of paragraph, *see* drop caps
 math symbols, –II 179f.
`\def`, –I 284, –II 622, 627, 736, 742, 768
 in TeX error message, –II 713
`.def` file extension, –I 9, 10f., 761, –II 613
 (diffcoeff), –II 171
 (inputenc), –I 759
`def`-file key/option (diffcoeff), –II 170, 171
`default` key (keyvaltable), –I 495, 496, 501
`default` option, –II 8
 (cinzel), –II 98
 (gfsbodoni), –II 61
 (gfsneohellenic), –II 75
 (lato), –II 81
 (librefranklin), –II 81
`default` syntax (bigfoot), –I 221, 223f.
`default` value
 (caption), –I 541, 543, 546, 548
 (widows-and-orphans), –I 426
 (xfrac), –I 165
`default-all` key/option (widows-and-orphans), –I 426
`\defaultaddspace` rigid length (booktabs), –I 473
`\defaultbibliography` (bibunits), –II 575
`\defaultbibliographystyle` (bibunits), –II 575
`DefaultDepth` counter (lettrine), –I 142
`defaultdialect` key (listings), –I 332
`defaultfam` option (montserrat), –II 83
`\DefaultFindent` rigid length (lettrine), –I 143
`\defaultfontfeatures` (fontspec), –I 710, 728
`\defaultthyphenchar`, –I 744
`\DefaultLhang` (lettrine), –I 142
 DefaultLines counter (lettrine), –I 142, 145
`\DefaultLoversize` (lettrine), –I 142
`\DefaultLraise` (lettrine), –I 142
`\DefaultNindent` rigid length (lettrine), –I 143

- `\DefaultOptionsFile` (lettrine), →I 144, 145
- `defaultsans` option (lato), →II 80
- `\DefaultSlope` rigid length (lettrine), →I 143
- `defaultsups` option (newtxtext), →II 244
- `defaultunit` option (adjustbox), →I 595
- `\defbibcheck` (biblatex), →II 554
- `\defbibfilter` (biblatex), →II 553
- `\defbibheading` (biblatex), →II 550, 557
- `\defbibnote` (biblatex), →II 550, 551
- `\defcitealias` (natbib), →II 493
- `defernumbers` key/option (biblatex), →II 552, 555
- `defineactive` key (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 313
- `\DefineBibliographyStrings` (biblatex), →II 565
- `\definechangesauthor` (changes), →I 245, 246, 247ff.
- `\definecolor` (color|xcolor), →I 645
- `\definecolumnpreamble` (paracol), →I 343, 349
- `\DefineFNsymbols` (footmisc), →I 211, 212
- `\DefineFNsymbolsTM` (footmisc), →I 211, 212
- `\defineshorthand` (babel), →II 306
- `\DefineShortVerb` (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 320, 321
- `\definethecounter` (paracol), →I 345
- definition value
 - (amsthm), →I 283, 284
 - (thmtools), →I 284, 285, 287
- `\DEFIvec` (tlc), →II 628
- `defn` env.
 - (tlc/amsthm), →I 284
 - (tlc/thmtools), →I 285, 287
- `\deg` math operator $\deg x$, →II 193
- `\degree` (siunitx), →I 171
- `\degreeCelsius` (siunitx), →I 170
- dejavu package, →II 13
- DejaVu fonts, description/examples, →II 12, 107, 109, 111f.
 - in math and text, →II 288f.
- dejavu-otf package, →II 13
- DejaVuSans package, →II 13
- DejaVuSansCondensed package, →II 13f.
- DejaVuSansMono package, →II 13
- DejaVuSerif package, →II 13
- DejaVuSerifCondensed package, →II 14
- `\del` (tlc/changes), →I 249
- delarray package, →II 157f.
- `\deleted` (changes), →I 245, 246–249
- deleted value (changes), →I 247
- deletedmarkup option (changes), →I 248
- `\DeleteShortVerb`
 - (doc|shortvrb), →I 298, →II 586f., 595, 598
 - (newverbs), →I 300
- `delim_0` keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358, 361
- `delim_1` keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358, 361
- `delim_2` keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358, 361
- `delim_n` keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358
- `delim_r` keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358
- `delim_t` keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358
- delimiters, math symbols, →II 157ff., 190, 191, 199
 - auto-supplied, →II 172
- Delphi value (listings), →I 323
- `\Delta` math symbol Δ , →I 679,
 - II 159, 163, 183f., 192, 212, 261–296
- `\delta` math symbol δ , →II 178f., 183f., 212
- Denominator value (fontspec), →I 719
- `denominator-bot-sep` key (xfrac), →I 166
- `denominator-font` key (xfrac), →I 166
- `denominator-format` key (xfrac), →I 166
- `.dep` file extension
 - (bundledoc), →I 11, 112f.
 - (snapshot), →I 11, 111, 112
- `\Depth` (adjustbox), →I 596
- depth, *see* space parameters
- `\depth`, →II 661, 662
 - (adjustbox), →I 596
 - (graphics|graphicx), →I 589
- depth key
 - (graphicx), →I 581
 - (hyperref|bookmark), →I 104, 105
 - (lettrine), →I 142
- depth syntax
 - (rules), →II 668
 - (tikz), →I 634
- depth level, document headings, →I 51
- `\depthof` (calc), →II 688
- derivatives, math symbols, →II 170f.
- `\Describe{element}` (doc), →II 585, 586, 592, 595
- `\DescribeEnv` (doc), →II 586, 588, 592, 595
- `\DescribeMacro` (doc), →II 585, 588, 592, 595
- description env., →I 257, 320, →II 630f.
 - (enumitem), →I 261, 266, 267, 269, 270, 273, 278f.
- description key (tikz-cd), →II 162
- description syntax
 - (enotez), →I 231, 232
 - (enumitem), →I 263, 269, 272, 278, 279
- description value (acro), →I 162f.
- description lists
 - configurations,
 - I 257, 264, 265ff., 268f., 270, 271f., 273f., 278f.
 - size dependent, →I 279ff.
 - visualized, →I 272
- default settings, →I 264, 265f.
- extensions, →I 278f.
- inlined, →I 262, 277
- nesting level, →I 263
- standard, →I 257
- user-defined, →I 262, 263f.
- `description*` env. (enumitem), →I 262, 277
- `description*` syntax (enumitem), →I 263
- `\descriptionlabel`, →I 257
- design examples
 - headings, →I 39, 46f.
 - LaTeX logo, →I 645
 - paragraphs, initials, →I 141, 142ff., 145
 - poster presentation, →I 630f.
 - tables of contents, →I 63, 64–67
 - title page, →I 27, →II 655
- `dest` key (hyperref|bookmark), →I 104, 106
- `\det` math operator $\det x$, →II 167, 193

- devangari_head keyword (upmendex), →II 367
- development tools
 - driver files, *see* documentation driver
 - l3build, →II 606–615
 - build file, →II 607
 - configuring, →II 613ff.
 - install/release, →II 607f., 611, 612f., 615
 - invoking, →II 607
 - produce documentation, →II 608, 613f.
 - testing, →II 607f., 609ff., 613
- device drivers, →I 577
- device independent files (DVI), →I 10
- devnag package, →II 341
- \backslash dfrac (amsmath), →II 164
- .dfu file extension, →I 9, 11, 759
- dgroup env. (breqn), →II 148
- dgroup* env. (breqn), →II 148, 149
- dguf biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, 447
- dguf-alt biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, 447
- dguf-apa biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, 448
- \backslash DH text symbol \mathcal{D} , →I 769
- \backslash dh text symbol \mathcal{D} , →I 771
 - Diacritics key (fontspec), →I 727
- \backslash diagbox (diagbox), →I 479, 480f.
- diagbox package, →I 479ff.
- \backslash diagdown math symbol \diagdown (amssymb), →II 213
- diagonal lines, tables, →I 479, 480f.
- \backslash diagup math symbol \diagup (amssymb), →II 213
- \backslash diamond math symbol \diamond , →II 177, 215
- \backslash diamondsuit math symbol \diamondsuit , →II 213
- \backslash dice (tlc), →II 659
- dictionary type headers, →I 394
- Didone fonts, →II 60–64
- Didot Greek fonts, →II 62, 108
- \backslash difc (diffcoeff), →II 170
- \backslash difcp (diffcoeff), →II 170
- \backslash diff (diffcoeff), →II 170
 - diffcoeff package, →II 170f.
- \backslash diffp (diffcoeff), →II 170, 171
- \backslash difs (diffcoeff), →II 170
- \backslash difsp (diffcoeff), →II 170
- \backslash digamma math symbol \mathcal{F} (amssymb), →II 212
- Digital Object Identifier (DOI), →II 499
- \backslash dim math operator $\dim x$, →II 193
- \backslash dimen, →II 733, 768
- \backslash dimen<num> rigid length, →II 768
- \backslash dimeval, →I 401, 447, →II 660, 689
- \backslash ding (pifont), →I 254, 257, 274, →II 113f., 115
 - dingautolist env. (pifont), →I 257, →II 114
- \backslash dingfill (pifont), →II 115
- \backslash dingline (pifont), →II 115
- dinglist env. (pifont), →II 114
- dir key (diagbox), →I 480, 481
- Dirac notation, →II 173, 174
- directivestyle key (listings), →I 324
- directory names, typesetting, →I 198ff., 201f.
- disable key/option (microtype), →I 130
- disable option
 - (endfloat), →I 526
 - (todonotes), →I 242
- \backslash DisableCrossrefs (doc), →II 588, 589, 595
- \backslash DisableGenericHook, →II 683, 750
- \backslash DisableImplementation (l3doc), →II 614
- \backslash DisableLigatures (microtype), →I 135
- \backslash DiscardShipoutBox, →II 754
- \backslash DiscardVskip rigid length (lettrine), →I 144
 - Discretionary value (fontspec), →I 721
- \backslash discretionary, →I 329, →II 777
 - error using, →II 726
- display syntax (titlesec), →I 43, 44, 47
- display languages, *see* PDF
- display quotations, *see* quotations
- display-block key (unicodefonttable), →I 730
- display-type document headings, →I 37, 52
- \backslash displaybreak (amsmath), →II 146
 - error using, →II 721
 - not supported by empheq, →II 175
- \backslash displayfonttable (unicodefonttable), →I 728, 729f.
- \backslash displaylimits, →II 167
- displaymath env. (lineno), →I 336
- displayparacol env. (tlc/paracol), →I 344, 345f.
- displayquote env. (csquotes), →I 180, 181, 187
- \backslash displaystyle, →I 749, →II 156, 165, 195, 196
- \backslash displaywidowpenalty \TeX counter, →I 421, 424
- dissyear Bib \TeX field (jurabib), →II 533
- distributions, of \LaTeX software, →II 790f.
 - cloud services, →II 791f.
 - CTAN, →II 789f.
 - Linux packages, →II 791
 - obtaining old versions, →II 791
- DIV key/option (typearea), →I 375, 376
- \backslash div math symbol \div , →II 215
- \backslash divideontimes math symbol \ast (amssymb), →II 215
- divis value (jurabib), →II 509
- \backslash DJ text symbol \mathcal{D} , →I 769
- \backslash dj text symbol \mathcal{D} , →I 771
- \backslash dl (diffcoeff), →II 171
 - dlig OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 720, 721
- \backslash dmath env. (breqn), →I 336, →II 146, 147ff.
- \backslash dmath* env. (breqn), →II 146, 148, 149
- \backslash dnom OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 715, 719
- doc keyword (l3build), →II 607f.
- doc package, →I 298, →II 583–597, 598, 605
- doc.dtx file (doc), →II 584, 602
- doc.sty file (doc), →II 602
- \backslash DocInclude (ltxdoc), →II 598
- \backslash DocInput (doc), →II 589, 591, 595, 598
- \backslash docolaction (multicol), →I 354, 355
- \backslash docolaction* (multicol), →I 354, 355
- docstrip package, →I 32, →II 599–606, 806, 810
- \backslash DocstyleParms (doc), →II 597
- document env., →I 18, 22, 25, →II 705
 - error using, →II 719, 744
 - hooks for, →II 678

- document env. (*cont.*)
- problems using, →II 749
- document option (ragged2e), →I 124, →II 104
- document classes
- AMS classes, →II 130
 - definition, →I 22
 - documentation class (ltxdoc), →II 597ff.
 - modifying, →I 25
 - name, →I 22
 - standard classes, *see* article; book; report
- document headings, *see* headings
- document preamble, *see* preamble
- documentation library (tcolorbox), →I 619
- documentation class (ltxdoc)
- commands, →II 598
 - configuration files, creating, →II 598f.
 - description, →II 597
 - extensions, →II 598
 - formatting options, →II 598f.
- documentation commands, list of (doc), →II 597
- documentation driver, →II 584, 589
- change dates, →II 590
 - creating, →II 589
 - hyperlinking, →II 589
 - including in conditional code, →II 591
 - indexing, disabling, →II 590
 - multiple columns, →II 590
 - printing, disabling, →II 590
 - tracing, →II 590
- documentation tools
- automatic indexing, disabling, →II 588, 599
 - change history, creating, →II 588, 599
 - commands, list of (doc), →II 597
 - comment characters, →II 585
 - comments, stripping from source file, →II 599–606
 - conditional code syntax, →II 590, 591
 - cross-references, →II 588f.
 - CVS, →II 615
 - description, →II 584
 - documentation class (ltxdoc), →II 597ff.
 - documentation commands, list of (doc), →II 597
 - element names
 - environment-like, →II 592
 - index group/type, →II 592
 - indexing, →II 592
 - indexing, disabling, →II 590, 593
 - macro-like, →II 592
 - printing, →II 592
 - printing, disabling, →II 590, 593
 - environment descriptions, creating, →II 585f.
 - file modification dates, checking, →II 619, 620
 - formatting commands, list of (doc), →II 597
 - Git, →II 615ff., 980
 - gitinfo2 package, →II 616, 617
 - history commands, list of (doc), →II 596
 - including files, →II 598
 - index commands, list of (doc), →II 596
 - index entries, creating automatically, →II 588, 599
- documentation tools (*cont.*)
- index entries, sorting, →II 588
 - indexing, →II 593, 594
 - input commands, list of (doc), →II 595
 - keys, extracting SVN information, →II 617, 618f.
 - l3build, produce documentation, →II 608
 - layout parameters, list of (doc), →II 597
 - macro descriptions, creating, →II 585, 586
 - parts, creating, →II 587, 599
 - preamble commands, list of (doc), →II 595
 - RCS, →II 615
 - software release control, →II 615
 - source control, →II 615, 616f., 618f.
 - spaces, →II 585
 - SVN, →II 615
 - svn-multi package, →II 618f.
 - syntax, →II 585
 - syntax diagrams, creating, →II 598
 - syntax extensions, →II 592, 593
 - existing, modifying, →II 592
 - typesetting parameters, list of (doc), →II 597
 - verbatim text delimiters
 - defining, →II 586
 - syntax, →II 585
 - version control, →II 615, 616f., 618f.
- documentation, finding, →II 785ff.
- \documentclass, →I 18, 22, 23, 24f., 29, 110f., 117, →II 695, 696, 699, 721
- error using, →II 736, 740
 - global options, →I 24, →II 301f.
 - release information, →II 696
 - warning using, →II 760, 764f.
- \DocumentMetadata, →I 23, 24
- error using, →II 721
 - (hyperref), →I 96, 99f., 102f., 104, 107f.
- documents
- archiving, →I 110–114, →II 791
 - back matter, →I 26ff.
 - displaying, *see* display languages
 - front matter, →I 26, 27, 28
 - last page, referencing, →I 386, 400
 - main matter, →I 26ff.
 - metadata, →I 23, 24, 106, 107
 - reformatting, piecewise, →I 28ff.
 - sections, →I 32f.
 - source files, *see* source files
 - too large for single run, *see* source files, splitting
 - version control, →I 30ff.
 - versions, selecting for printing, →I 30, 31, 32
- \documentstyle
- error using, →II 740
 - obsolete 2.09 command, →I 23
- \doi (uri), →I 203
- doi BibTeX field, →II 390
- (bibtex), →II 387, 390
 - (custom-bib), →II 430
 - (natbib), →II 499
- DOI (Digital Object Identifier), →II 499

- doipre key (uri), →I 203
- domain key (tikz), →I 637
- donations, to projects, →II 793
- done syntax (typed-checklist), →I 293f.
- \DoNotIndex (doc), →II 588, 596
- \DontCheckModules (doc), →II 595
- \DoSomethingWith... (tlc), →II 639f., 644
- \dot math accent $\dot{}$, →II 176f., 214
- \dotafter key/option (jurabib), →II 519, 529
- \Doteq math symbol \doteq (amssymb), →II 217
- \doteq math symbol $\dot{=}$, →II 183, 217
- \doteqdot math symbol \doteqdot (amssymb), →II 217
- \dotfill, →I 64, 65, 290f., 340f., →II 115, 361, 653, 654
- \dotinlabels option (titletoc), →I 63, 64
- \dotlessi math symbol \dot{i} (dotlessi), →II 177
- dotlessi package, →II 177
- \dotlessj math symbol \dot{j} (dotlessi), →II 177
- \dotplus math symbol $\dot{+}$ (amssymb), →II 215
- \dots text/math symbol \dots , →I 148, 771
 - (amsmath), →II 147f., 168, 180, 181, 185f., 189, 256
 - (ellipsis), →I 148, 149
- \dotsb (amsmath), →II 166, 172, 181, 208
- \dotsc (amsmath), →II 181
- \dotsi (amsmath), →II 181
- \dotsm (amsmath), →II 181
- \dotso (amsmath), →II 181
- dotted key
 - (tikz-cd), →II 162, 163
 - (tikz), →I 638, 642
- dotted value (tcolorbox), →I 623
- dotted lines, →I 609
- \dottedcontents (titletoc), →I 60, 61, 72, 558
- \dottedline (bxeepic), →I 609
- \dotuline (ulem), →I 190
- dotuline value (changes), →I 248
- double key (tikz), →I 639, 640f.
- double quote ("), shorthand character, →II 310ff.
- double rules (graphic lines), →I 471
- double-stroke fonts, *see* Blackboard Bold
- double_distance key (tikz), →I 639
- \doublecap math symbol $\mathrel{\mathop{\cap}}\limits^{\smash{\scriptstyle\cdot}}$ (amssymb), →II 215
- \doublecolonsep (colonequals), →II 221
- \doublecup math symbol $\mathrel{\mathop{\cup}}\limits^{\smash{\scriptstyle\cdot}}$ (amssymb), →II 215
- doubleFullPAGE key (hvfloat), →I 567
- doublePAGE key (hvfloat), →I 567
- doublePage key (hvfloat), →I 567
- \DoubleperCent (docstrip), →II 605
- \doublerulesep rigid length, →I 437, 472
- \doublerulesepcolor (colortbl), →I 467, 468
- double space env. (setspace), →I 140
- \doublespacing (setspace), →I 140
- doublespacing option (setspace), →I 140
- doublespacing value (caption), →I 141
- \Downarrow math symbol \Downarrow , →II 190, 219
- \downarrow math symbol \downarrow , →II 159, 190, 219
 - (old-arrows), →II 220
- \downarrowdownarrows math symbol \Downarrow (amssymb), →II 219
- \downharpoonright math symbol \downharpoonright (amssymb), →II 219
- downhill value (tcolorbox), →I 618, 630
- draft biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, 436
- draft key/option
 - (graphicx), →I 577, 581, 582
 - (microtype), →I 130
- draft option, →I 439, →II 774
 - (changes), →I 245
 - (fixme), →I 243, 244
 - (graphics), →I 577
 - (qrcode), →I 612, 613
 - (showkeys), →I 94
 - (todonotes), →I 242
 - (varioref), →I 85
- draft mode, →I 85, 94, 577
- draftwatermark package, →I 409ff.
- \DraftwatermarkOptions (draftwatermark), →I 409, 410f.
- \draw (tikz), →I 634–637, 638, 641–645
- draw key (tikz), →I 637, 638f., 640ff.
- \drawdimensionsfalse (layouts), →I 373
- \drawdimensionstrue (layouts), →I 374
- \DrawEnumitemLabel (enumitem), →I 272
- drawing
 - arcs, →I 608
 - arrows, →I 604
 - boxes, →I 614–631
 - circles, →I 605, 611
 - coordinate systems (tikz), →I 633, 634f.
 - ellipses, →I 611
 - lines, →I 607, 610, 611
 - ovals, →I 605, 606
 - polygons, →I 607, 609ff.
 - QR codes, →I 612f.
 - vectors, →I 604, 607
- \drawline (bxeepic), →I 610, 611
- drcases env. (mathtools), →II 156
- driver files, *see* documentation driver
- droid package, →II 27
- Droid fonts, description/examples, →II 26
- droidmono package, →II 27
- droidsans package, →II 27
- droidserif package, →II 27
- drop syntax (titlesec), →I 43, 44, 46
- drop caps, →I 141–145
- drop-exponent key (siunitx), →I 486
- drop_fuzzy_shadow key (tcolorbox), →I 622
- drop_lifted_shadow key (tcolorbox), →I 622
- drop_shadow key (tcolorbox), →I 622
- drop_shadow_southeast key (tcolorbox), →I 622
- dropped syntax (typed-checklist), →I 293, 294
- \droptag (tagging), →I 30, 31
- dsfontsans value (mathalpha), →II 234
- dsfontserif value (mathalpha), →II 234
- ds serif package, →II 227
- dtk biblatex style (dtk), →II 460
- .dtx file extension (doc), →I 10f.,
 - II 587, 598, 600, 607f., 612ff., 813
- \duck (tikzducks), →I 645
- duplicate option (chapterbib), →II 570, 573

dutch option (babel), →II 301, 310ff.
 dutchcal value (mathalpha), →II 230, 232
 DVD images, T_EX Live, →II 791
 .dvi file extension, →I 9f., 11, 12f., 575, →II 680
 (iftex), →II 687
 dvipdfm option (geometry), →I 383
 dvipdfmx value, →I 24
 dvipdfmx program, →I 577
 dvips option
 (crop), →I 413
 (geometry), →I 383
 (graphics|graphicx), →I 577, →II 741
 dvips program, →I 12, 577, 586, 608
 dvisvg value, →I 24
 dynamic value (jurabib), →II 509, 510, 523

E

E syntax

(*cmd/env decl*), →II 634, 638ff., 641
 (fancyhdr), →I 392, 399, 400–404
 (siunitx), →I 168
 (tlc/abracas), →II 188

e syntax

(*cmd/env decl*), →II 634, 639ff.
 (*fp expr*), →II 659
 (siunitx), →I 168, 170, 173f.
 (tlc/abracas), →II 188, 189

e-mail addresses

opening e-mail client, →I 204
 typesetting, →I 198, 199, 200f., 202, 204

east value (tcolorbox), →I 618

eaz biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, 448

eaz-alt biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, 448

eb syntax (*font series*), →I 732, →II 26, 64

EB Garamond fonts, description/examples,
 →I 713f., 718, 724f., →II 41

 in math and text, →II 264f.

ebc syntax (*font series*), →I 732

ebec syntax (*font series*), →I 732

ebex syntax (*font series*), →I 732

ebgaramond option

 (newtxmath), →II 265

 (newtxtext), →II 248

ebgaramond package, →II 42, 265

ebsc syntax (*font series*), →I 732

ebsx syntax (*font series*), →I 732

ebuc syntax (*font series*), →I 732

ebux syntax (*font series*), →I 732

ebx syntax (*font series*), →I 732

ec syntax (*font series*), →I 732, 733

\econ, →I 363

econlipsum package, →I 363

\edef, →I 257, 634, →II 658f.

 problems using, →II 715

edge (tikz path operation), →I 636, 642

edge syntax (tikz), →I 642

\EditInstance (xfrac), →I 165, 166

edition BibT_EX field, →II 383, 386, 388

 (biblatex), →II 536

edition information, bibliographies, →II 533

editor BibT_EX field,

 →II 382f., 386f., 388, 394, 396, 403f., 523, 533, 568

editor information, bibliographies, →II 533

editorial commands, →I 245–249, 250f.

\editorname (jurabib), →II 525

editortype BibT_EX field (jurabib), →II 533

eepic package, →I 609

\efloatseparator (endfloat), →I 527

\eg (tlc/xspace), →I 153

\ega (tlc/amsmath), →II 131

Egyptian fonts, →II 64–67

eid BibT_EX field

 (biblatex), →II 390

 (custom-bib), →II 430

 (natbib), →II 500

EID, bibliographies, →II 500

Eiffel value (listings), →I 323

el syntax (*font series*), →I 732, →II 10, 41

el value (upmendex), →II 369

Elan value (listings), →I 323

elc syntax (*font series*), →I 732

elec syntax (*font series*), →I 732

electronic publications, bibliographies, →II 499

\electronvolt (siunitx), →I 171

elcx syntax (*font series*), →I 732

elisp value (listings), →I 323

\ell math symbol ℓ , →II 213, 594

ellipse (tikz path operation), →I 636, 638

\ellipse (bxeepic), →I 611

ellipse syntax (tikz), →I 638

ellipses, drawing, →I 611

ellipsis package, →I 148f.

ellipsis (...)

 in quotations, →I 182f., 187

 mathematical symbol, →II 180, 181f.

 spacing, →I 148f.

\ellipsisgap (ellipsis), →I 149

\ellipsispunctuation (ellipsis), →I 148

 elc syntax (*font series*), →I 732

\else, →II 686

\ElsIf (algpseudocode), →I 322

 elsx syntax (*font series*), →I 732

 eluc syntax (*font series*), →I 732

 elux syntax (*font series*), →I 732

 elx syntax (*font series*), →I 732

\em, →I 663, 664, 667, *see also* \emph

 nested, →I 663

 (ulem), →I 189

em option (changes), →I 248

em syntax (*unit*), →I 73, 124, 149, 193, 279, 328, →II 652

emacs program, →II 782, 807

\email (tlc/url), →I 201

 email key (l3build), →II 613

\emailto (uri), →I 204

embrac package, →I 188f.

- `\EmbraceOff` (embrace), →I 189
- `\EmbraceOn` (embrace), →I 189
- `\Emdash` (extdash), →I 150, 151
- `\emdash`, →I 760
- `\emergencystretch` rigid length, →I 121, →II 762, 776
- `\emforce`, →I 664, 665
- `\eminnershape`, →I 664
- `emisa` biblatex style (emisa), →II 460
- `\emph`, →I 320, 663, 664, 666, 667, →II 631, 637
 - error using, →II 735
 - nested, →I 664f.
 - no effect, →II 104
 - using color, →I 665
 - using small capitals, →I 664f.
 - (embrace), upright parentheses, →I 189
 - (fontspec), →I 707, 709
 - (ulem), →I 189, 190
- `emph` key (listings), →I 325
- `\emph*` (embrace), →I 189
- emphasizing text, →I 663ff.
- `empheq` env. (empheq), →II 174, 175
- `empheq` package, →II 174f.
- `\empheqbigbrack` (empheq), →II 175
- `\empheqlbrace` (empheq), →II 175
- `\empheqlparen` (empheq), →II 175
- `\empheqrangle` (empheq), →II 175
- `emphstyle` key (listings), →I 325
- `empty` key (tcolorbox), →I 620
- `empty` page style, →I 396
 - producing unwanted page number, →I 396, 404
 - (hvfloating), →I 565
- `empty` value (caption), →I 543, 545f.
- `empty` bibliography warning (biblatex), →II 550
- `empty` lines, before equations, →II 144f.
- “empty” size function (NFSS), →I 741f., 743
- `\emptyset` math symbol \emptyset , →I 163, →II 213
- `\emreset`, →I 664
- `\EnableCrossrefs` (doc), →II 588, 595, 599
- `enc` biblatex style (biblatex-enc), →II 453
- `encap` keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 357
- `encap_infix` keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358
- `encap_prefix` keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358
- `encap_suffix` keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358
- `\encapchar` (doc), →II 594, 596
- `encapsulating` page numbers, indexes, →II 348
- `\enclname` (babel), →II 305
- encoding
 - accented characters, →I 649, 650ff., 692, 693
 - definition files, →I 10
 - font commands, low level, →I 736, 737
 - font family substitution, →I 739
 - fonts, →I 650, 693f.
 - input encodings, →I 649, 650ff., 692, 693, 758f.
 - languages and fonts, →II 323
 - Cyrillic alphabet, →II 324ff.
 - description, →I 657f.
 - Greek alphabet, →II 328–331
 - language options, →II 322–327
 - encoding (*cont.*)
 - LaTeX, →I 657, 754ff.
 - LICR objects, →I 757f.
 - list of, →I 767–776
 - OT1, →I 658
 - output encodings, →I 650, 693f., 760–776
 - Pi fonts, →II 113, 114–118, 119, 120, 121f., 123f.
 - schemes, declaring, →I 747
 - selecting, →I 693f.
 - single-byte characters, →I 649f., 692
 - T1 (Cork), →I 658, 672, 685
 - TeX, →I 684
 - text symbols, *see* Pi fonts; TS1
 - TS1, →I 694, 695–703, 704
 - TU (Unicode), →I 658, 672
 - UTF-8 support, →I 650, 651f., 692, 755, 758f.
 - encoding key (microtype), →I 131, 132ff., 137
- `\encodingdefault`, →I 671f., 738
 - (fontenc), →I 693
- `\END` (l3build), →II 609, 611
- `\End` math operator x (tlc/amsmath), →II 160f.
- `\end`, →II 629, 637, 641f., 676
 - hooks for, →II 675
 - in TeX error message, →II 735, 744, 751
- `end_angle` key (tikz), →I 637
- `\endadjustbox` (adjustbox), →I 600
- `\Endash` (extdash), →I 150
- `endash` value (caption), →I 543
- `\endbatchfile` (docstrip), →II 601
- `\endcsname`, →II 767
 - error mentioning, →II 731
- `enddocument` hook, →II 679
- `enddocument/afteraux` hook, →II 679
- `enddocument/afterlastpage` hook, →II 679
- `enddocument/end` hook, →II 679
- `enddocument/info` hook, →II 679
- `\endentry` (biblatex), →II 542
- `\endfirsthead`
 - (longtable), →I 460, 462
 - (xltabular), →I 464
- `endfloat` package, →I 519, 525–528
 - combined with float or newfloat, →I 525
 - combined with rotating, →I 527
- `\endfoot` (longtable), →I 460, 462
- `\endgraf`, →II 720
- `\endgroup`, →II 197, 718
 - error mentioning, →II 732
 - error using, →II 722f.
 - in math, →II 197
- `\endhead` (longtable), →I 460, 462
- `\EndIf` (algpseudocode), →I 322
- `\endinput`, →II 602, 724
- `\endlastfoot` (longtable), →I 460, 462
- `\endnote`
 - (endnotes), →I 228, 229
 - (enotez), →I 229, 230ff.
 - (fnpct), →I 218

- endnote counter
 - (endnotes), →I 229
 - (enotez), →I 232
- endnote value (jurabib), →II 519
- endnote citations, bibliographies, →II 517f., 519
- \endnote* (fnpct), →I 218
- \endnotemark
 - (endnotes), →I 229
 - (enotez), →I 229, 230
- endnotes, →I 228f., 230ff., *see also* footnotes; marginal notes
 - nested, →I 230
 - section notes, →I 231f.
- endnotes package, →I 218, 228, 230, →II 811
- \endnotetext
 - (endnotes), →I 229
 - (enotez), →I 229
- endpenalty key (enumitem), →I 265
- \endpostamble (docstrip), →II 604
- \endpreamble (docstrip), →II 604
- \eng (tlc/babel), →II 318f.
- engineering value (siunitx), →I 174
- english option
 - (babel), →I 134, 739,
 - II 301, 303f., 307, 310f., 335, 525, 545, 559ff., 565
 - (fmtcount), →I 155
- english value (csquotes), →I 183
- enhanced key (tcolorbox), →I 619, 620, 622–625, 627
- enhanced value (tcolorbox), →I 619
- enjbbib.ldf file (jurabib), →II 524
- enlarge_u by key (tcolorbox), →I 616
- \enlargethispage, →I 353, 415, 416, →II 763
 - error using, →II 735, 738
 - within multicols, →I 415
- \enlargethispage*, →I 415, 416, 418, →II 982
- \enmark (enotez), →I 232
- enotez package, →I 218, 228–232, →II 811
- \enotezwritemark (enotez), →I 231, 232
- \enquote (csquotes), →I 179, 180, 184, 185, 186, 196,
 - II 561, 687, 690
- \enquote* (csquotes), →I 179
- \enskip, →II 205
- \enspace, →I 41, 45, 64, 65, →II 188, 189, 205, 245, 250, 653
- \ensureascii (babel), →II 323, 328
- \ensuremath, →I 212, 674, →II 625, 626, 628, 766
- \entry (biblatex), →II 542
- entry types, bibliography database, →II 381, 384–390, 562
 - biblatex, →II 385, 387
- entrykey BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 553
- entrynull key (biblatex), →II 417
- enumerate env., →I 89f., 99, 255f., 257
 - cross-reference to, →I 76
 - error using, →II 739
 - style parameters, →I 256
 - (enumitem), →I 261, 262, 263, 265f., 267, 272, 274f., 276
- enumerate syntax (enumitem),
 - I 263, 264, 267, 268, 269, 272, 274, 275
- enumerate value (tasks), →I 290
- enumerate package, →I 275
- enumerate* env. (enumitem), →I 262, 277
- enumerate* syntax (enumitem), →I 263, 277
- enumerated lists
 - configurations, →I 255, 256, 264, 265–269, 270f., 272,
 - 273, 274, 275, 276
 - size dependent, →I 279ff.
 - visualized, →I 272
- cross-referencing, →I 268f., 274
- default settings, →I 264, 265f.
- extensions, →I 275, 276
- horizontally oriented, →I 289–292
- inlined, →I 262, 277
- nesting level, →I 263
- resumed, →I 262, 275
- standard, →I 255, 256, 257
- user-defined, →I 262, 263f., 268f.
- enumi counter, →I 89, 255, 256, 257, 262, →II 646
- enumi syntax (cleveref), →I 90
- enumii counter, →I 89, 255, 256, →II 646
- enumiii counter, →I 89, 256, →II 646
- enumitem package, →I 231, 258, 260, 261–281, 291,
 - II 739, 797, 979
- enumiv counter, →I 89, 256, →II 646
- env/<env>/after hook, →I 336, →II 675
- env/<env>/before hook, →I 336, →II 675, 678
- env/<env>/begin hook, →I 137, →II 675, 678
- env/<env>/end hook, →II 675
- env/dmath/after hook (tlc/lineno), →I 336
- env/dmath/before hook (tlc/lineno), →I 336
- environment env. (doc), →II 586, 588, 592
- environments
 - abbreviating, →II 131
 - argument specification, →II 632ff.
 - body as argument, →II 641, 642
 - defining new, →II 629, 630ff., 633–636, 637, 638–644
 - descriptions, creating, →II 585f.
 - displaying as mini-pages, →II 140ff., 156
 - documenting, *see* documentation tools
 - naming, →II 622ff.
 - redefining existing, →II 629–632
- envlike key (doc), →II 592, 593
- eo value (upmendex), →II 369
- epic package, →I 602, 608ff.
- \epigraph
 - (epigraph), →I 39
 - (quotchap), →I 39
- epigraph package, →I 39
- \epigraphflush (epigraph), →I 39
- \epigraphhead (epigraph), →I 39
- epigraphs env. (quotchap), →I 39
- \epigraphsize (epigraph), →I 39
- \epigraphwidth rigid length (epigraph), →I 39
- eprint BibTeX field, →II 390
 - (biblatex), →II 387, 390
- eprintclass BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 390
- eprinttype BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 390
- \EPS (tlc), →II 625
- .eps file extension, →I 11, 581, 586, →II 719

- `\epsilon` math symbol ϵ , →II 164, 192, 212
- `\eqcirc` math symbol \approx (amssymb), →II 217
- `\eqnarray` env., →II 132, 133
 - error using, →II 722, 739
 - not supported by `cleveref`, →I 92
 - wrong spacing, →II 133
- `\eqref` (amsmath), →I 77, →II 150, 153, 157
- `\eqsim` math symbol \approx (amssymb), →II 217
- `\eqslantgtr` math symbol \gtrless (amssymb), →II 217
- `\eqslantless` math symbol \lessgtr (amssymb), →II 217
- `\equal` (ifthen), →I 78, →II 690, 693
- equal key (tikz-cd), →II 161
- equal sign ($=$), shorthand character, →II 313f.
- equality and order, math symbols, →II 217
- equality and order — negated, math symbols, →II 217
- `\equalscolon` math symbol $=:$ (colonequals), →II 221
- `\equalscoloncolon` math symbol $=::$ (colonequals), →II 221
- equation counter, →II 646, 649
 - (amsmath), →II 149, 152
- equation env.
 - cross-reference to, →I 76
 - (amsmath), →II 131, 132ff., 135f., 146, 152
 - error using, →II 718
 - (lineno), →I 336
 - (resizgather), →II 206
- equation syntax (cleveref), →I 90
- `equation*` env. (amsmath),
 - II 132f., 134, 135, 141, 146, 156
- equations, *see also* math fonts; math symbols
 - aligning, →II 131f.
 - amsmath package vs. standard \LaTeX , →II 132, 133
 - as mini-pages, →II 140ff., 156
 - automatic line breaking, →II 146, 147ff.
 - empty lines before, →II 144f.
 - groups with alignment, →II 138
 - groups without alignment, →II 137
 - interrupting displays, →II 143
 - labels, *see* numbering; tags
 - multiple alignments, →II 138ff.
 - numbering, *see also* tags
 - resetting the counter, →II 153
 - subordinate sequences, →II 152, 153
 - on multiple lines
 - no alignment, →II 134f., 148
 - with alignment, →II 135f., 137, 147, 149
 - on one line, →II 133, 134
 - page breaks, →II 145f.
 - spacing problems around, →II 144f.
 - spacing within, →II 145
 - tags, →II 131f., *see also* numbering, equations
 - definition, →II 131
 - numbering equations, →II 149, 150
 - placement, →II 150, 151f.
 - vertical space, →II 143, 144, 145
 - with alignments, →II 147ff.
- `\equiv` math symbol \equiv , →II 137, 171, 217, 242
- `\equivref` (tlc/varioref), →I 77
- `erewhon` option (newtxtext), →II 248
- `erewhon` package, →I 691, →II 59, 283
- Erewhon fonts, description/examples, →I 720, →II 58
 - in math and text, →II 283
- erlang value (listings), →I 323
- `\error` (tlc/todonotes), →I 241
- error option (textcomp), →I 701, →II 757, 760
- error value (widows-and-orphans), →I 425, 426
- error messages, *see* messages, error; troubleshooting
- `errorcontextlines` counter, →II 646, 714
- errors value (microtype), →I 130
- `errorshow` option
 - (multicol), →I 360
 - (tracefnt), →I 704
- es value (upmendex), →II 369
- `es-nodecimaldot` option (babel), →II 314
- `es-noquoting` option (babel), →II 314
- `es@collation=search` value (upmendex), →II 369
- `es@collation=traditional` value (upmendex), →II 369
- escape keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 357
- escape characters, →I 313
- `\EscVerb` (fvextra), →I 321, 322
- `\EscVerb*` (fvextra), →I 322
- esint package, →II 169, 170
- `\Esper` (babel), →II 316
- `\esper` (babel), →II 316
- esperanto option (babel), →II 301, 315
- `\esssup` math operator $\text{ess sup } x$ (tlc/amsmath), →II 194
- `esstix` value (mathalpha), →II 233f.
- estonian option (babel), →II 301
- `\eta` math symbol η , →II 212
- etaremun package, →I 275
- `\etc`
 - (tlc/acro), →I 162
 - (tlc/xspace), →I 153
 - (yfonts), →II 105, 106
- \eTeX , \TeX extension, →I 388, 391, →II 751
- `\eth` math symbol \eth (amssymb), →II 213
- ethiop package, →II 341
- Ethiopian, →II 341
- etoolbox package, →II 678f.
- `\EU` (tlc/xspace), →I 153
- `eucal` option (mathscr), →II 241
- eucal package, →II 130, 227, 240, 241
- eufrak package, →II 130, 240, 241f.
- euler value (mathalpha), →II 232f., 241
- euler package, →II 39, 241, 242
 - wrong digits, →II 242
- Euler Fraktur alphabet, →II 130, 226, 228, 230, 241
- Euler math fonts, →II 240, 241ff., 289
- Euler Script alphabet, →II 130, 227
- Euler Script fonts, →II 241
- `euler-digits` option (eulervm), →II 242, 243, 288
- `euler-hat-accent` option (eulervm), →II 242
- eulervm package, →I 752, →II 241ff., 288
- Euphoria value (listings), →I 323
- European Computer Modern (EC) fonts, →I 684f., 686
- even value
 - (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 354

- even value (*cont.*)
 - (siunitx), → I 173f.
 - (titlesec), → I 49
- evenPage value (hvfloat), → I 561, 564
- \evensidemargin rigid length, → I 367f., 369, 371, → II 709
- eventdate Bib_{La}T_EX field (biblatex), → II 400
- every_float key (tcolorbox), → I 628, 629
- every_picture key (tikz), → I 633
- EX env. (tlc), → II 648
- ex syntax
 - (font series), → I 732
 - (unit), → I 45, 279, 328, → II 652
- \exa (siunitx), → I 172
- exa env.
 - (tlc/amsthm), → I 282
 - (tlc/tcolorbox), → I 625
 - (tlc/thmtools), → I 288
- exabox env. (tlc/tcolorbox), → I 627
- example env. (tlc/fancyvrb|fvextra), → I 316
- examples, this book
 - how produced, → I 315, → II 977, 981
 - how to use, → I 18, 19
 - where to find, → II 981
- exception dictionary errors, → II 746
- exclamation mark (!), shorthand character, → II 312f.
- exclude key (acro), → I 162, 163
- excluding files, *see* including files
- \ExecuteBibliographyOptions (biblatex), → II 544
- \ExecuteOptions, → II 694, 699
- executive option (crop), → I 412
- executivepaper key/option (geometry), → I 378
- executivepaper option, → I 368
 - (typearea), → I 375
- \exists math symbol \exists , → II 213
- \exp math operator $\exp x$, → II 193
- exp syntax (*fp expr*), → II 658
- expandable commands, → II 626, 636, 637
- \expandafter, → II 499, 767
- \ExpandArgs, → II 352, 371f., 644, 645, 767
- expansion key/option (microtype),
 - I 128, 130, 132, 133, 137
- error using, → II 735
- expansion, fonts, → I 127
 - configuring, → I 132, 133
 - controlling, → I 129f.
 - default settings, → I 133
 - justification, → I 137
 - restricting context, → I 133
 - special considerations, → I 137
 - unjustified text, → I 137
- EXperimental Programming Language 3 (expl3),
 - I 190f., *see also* L3 programming layer
- expert option (lucidabr), → II 278
- expl3 package, → I 7, → II 622, 624, 976
- explicit option (titlesec), → I 43, 46
- \ExplSyntaxOff, → I 26, → II 624
- \ExplSyntaxOn, → I 26, → II 624
- exponent-base key (siunitx), → I 174
- exponent-mode key (siunitx), → I 174, 486
- exponent-product key (siunitx), → I 174
- Export option (adjustbox), → I 601
- exscale option (ccfonts), → II 66, 239
- exscale package, → I 704
 - provided by amsmath, → II 199
 - provided by ccfonts, → II 66, 239
 - provided by eulervm, → II 242
 - provided by mathpazo, → II 251
- ext key (graphicx), → I 582
- ext-alphabetic biblatex style (biblatex-ext), → II 437
- ext-alphabetic-verb biblatex style (biblatex-ext), → II 437
- ext-authornumber biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437, 438, 507
- ext-authornumber-comp biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authornumber-ecomp biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authornumber-icompat biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authornumber-tcomp biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authornumber-tecomp biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authornumber-terse biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authortitle biblatex style (biblatex-ext), → II 437, 438
- ext-authortitle-comp biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authortitle-ibid biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authortitle-icompat biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authortitle-tcomp biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authortitle-terse biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authortitle-ticompat biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authoryear biblatex style (biblatex-ext), → II 437, 438
- ext-authoryear-comp biblatex style (biblatex-ext), → II 437
- ext-authoryear-ecomp biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authoryear-ibid biblatex style (biblatex-ext), → II 437
- ext-authoryear-icompat biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authoryear-iecomp biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authoryear-tcomp biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authoryear-tecomp biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authoryear-terse biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authoryear-ticompat biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437
- ext-authoryear-tiecomp biblatex style (biblatex-ext),
 - II 437

- ext-numeric biblatex style (biblatex-ext), →II 437, **438**, 478
 - ext-numeric-comp biblatex style (biblatex-ext), →II 437, **486**
 - ext-numeric-verb biblatex style (biblatex-ext), →II 437
 - ext-verbose biblatex style (biblatex-ext), →II 437, **438**
 - ext-verbose-ibid biblatex style (biblatex-ext), →II 437
 - ext-verbose-inote biblatex style (biblatex-ext), →II 437
 - ext-verbose-note biblatex style (biblatex-ext), →II 437
 - ext-verbose-trad1 biblatex style (biblatex-ext), →II 437
 - ext-verbose-trad2 biblatex style (biblatex-ext), →II 437
 - ext-verbose-trad3 biblatex style (biblatex-ext), →II 437
 - extrarrows package, →II 164
 - extdash package, →I 149ff.
 - extend-bot key (multicolrule), →I 361
 - extend-top key (multicolrule), →I 361
 - extensions supported, bibliographies, →II 430f.
 - external documents, cross-references to, →I 95
 - \externaldocument (xr), →I 95
 - extra key (acro), →I **162**, 163
 - extra option (tipa), →II 125
 - extrablack option (*various font packages*), →II 8
 - extrabold option (Chivo), →II 70
 - \extracolsep, →I 436, **453**, 454, 476
 - (array), restrictions, →I 442
 - (longtable), →I 461
 - extracondensed option (notocondensed), →II 27
 - extract-exponent value (siunitx), →I 175
 - \extrafloats, →I **514**, 518, →II 740
 - \extrafootnoterule (manyfoot|bigfoot), →I 223
 - extralight option (*various font packages*), →II 8
 - extraname BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 506
 - \extrarowheight rigid length (array), →I **441**, 442, 467, 469, 474
 - \extras (*language*) (babel), →II 335f.
 - \extrasenglish (babel), →II 335
 - \extrasngerman (babel), →I 84, 91
 - \extratabsurround rigid length (array), →I 444, **445**
 - extreme option (savetrees), →I **384**, 385
- F**
- F syntax
 - (fancyhdr), →I 400
 - (fcolumn), →I **487**, 488, 489, 490
 - f key (keyfloat), →I 569
 - f syntax
 - (fcolumn), →I **487**, 488f.
 - (fmtcount), →I **154**, 155
 - (tlc/fcolumn), →I 490
 - \faAngry text symbol ☹ (fontawesome5), →II 121
 - \fabrand (tlc/fontawesome5), →II 124
 - fact syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
 - factor key/option (microtype), →I 128
 - \faExclamation text symbol ! (fontawesome5), →II 123
 - \faFile text symbol 📁 (fontawesome5), →II 123
 - \faIcon (fontawesome5), →II 120
 - \FAIL... (tlc), →II **745**, 746, 748
 - FakeBold key (fontspec), →I 715
 - FakeSlant key (fontspec), →I 715
 - FakeStretch key (fontspec), →I 715
 - \fallingdotseq math symbol ≐ (amssymb), →II 217
 - \faMapMarker text symbol 📍 (fontawesome5), →II 120
 - families of fonts, *see* fonts, families
 - family key
 - (biblatex), →II 396f.
 - (microtype), →I 132f., 135
 - family-given syntax (biblatex), →II 568f.
 - family-given/given-family syntax (biblatex), →II 568
 - \familydefault, →I **671**, **672**, 690, 714, 738, →II 8, 252
 - (yfonts), not usable, →II 104
 - fancy page style (fancyhdr), →I 392, 394, **398**, 399–406, 408f.
 - fancybox package, →I 614
 - \fancyfoot (fancyhdr), →I 392, **399**, 400–404, 406, →II 118
 - \fancyfootoffset (fancyhdr), →I 400
 - fancyhdr package, →I 392, **398–405**, 408, →II 978
 - \fancyhead (fancyhdr), →I 392, **399**, 400–404, 406, 408f., 534
 - \fancyheadoffset (fancyhdr), →I **400**, 401
 - \fancyhf (fancyhdr), →I 394, **400**, 401, 404ff., 409, →II 118
 - \fancyhfoffset (fancyhdr), →I 400
 - fancyline key (todonotes), →I 240
 - \fancypagestyle (fancyhdr), →I 404
 - fancypar package, →I 147
 - \fancyparsetup (fancypar), →I 147
 - \FancyVerbFormatLine (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I **306**, 307, 308
 - \FancyVerbFormatText (fvextra), →I 306
 - \FancyVerbHighlightLineFirst (fvextra), →I 312
 - FancyVerbLine counter (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 306, **310**
 - \FancyVerbStartString (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I **314**, 315
 - \FancyVerbStopString (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I **314**, 315
 - \FancyVerbTab (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 312
 - fancyvrb package, →I 137, 298, 301f., **303–322**, 323, 326, 330f., 334, 712, →II 979
 - combined with color/xcolor, →I 307f., 316
 - fancyvrb.cfg file (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 322
 - FAQ (Frequently Asked Questions), →II 787f.
 - \farad (siunitx), →I 170
 - \faStyle (fontawesome5), →II 121
 - \fasym (tlc/fontawesome5), →II **123**, 124
 - \fatbslash math symbol ∖ (stmaryrd), →II 215
 - \fatsemi math symbol § (stmaryrd), →II 215
 - \fatslash math symbol // (stmaryrd), →II 215
 - \Faxmachine text symbol 📠 (marvosym), →II 117
 - fbf package, →I 664, →II **38**
 - fbf fonts (version of Cardo), description/examples, →I 664, →II **38**
 - \fbox, →I 299f., 539, 595, 597, →II 174f., **661**, 666f., 670
 - fbox key (adjustbox), →I **597**, 598, 599
 - fbox value (tcolorbox), →I **617**, 622
 - \fboxrule rigid length, →I 597, →II 202, **661**, 670, 689
 - \fboxsep rigid length, →I 271, 307, 597, →II 202, **661**, 670, 689
 - \FCloadlang (fmtcount), →I 155
 - \fcolorbox (color|xcolor), →I 466, →II 175
 - as used in this book, →I 17
 - fcolumn env. (tlc), →II 670
 - fcolumn package, →I 446, 476, **487–491**
 - \fcolwidth rigid length (tlc), →II 689

- `\FCordinal (fmtcount)`, →I 154
- `.fd` file extension, →I 9f., [11](#), 675, 685, 706, 733, 735, 741, 746, [748f.](#), 751, 761, →II 228f., 752f., 762
 - warning from, →II 752
- `.fdd` file extension (doc), →I [11](#), →II 598
- `\feature (tlc/typed-checklist)`, →I 296
 - Fell fonts, description/examples, →II 99
- `\Fellflower (tlc/imfellEnglish)`, →II 100
- `\Fellflowerii (tlc/imfellEnglish)`, →II 100
- `\FEMALE` text symbol ♀(marvosym), →II 117
- `\Female` text symbol ♀(marvosym), →II 117
- `\femto (siunitx)`, →I 172
 - fewerfloatpages package, →I 515, [519–524](#)
- `.fff` file extension (endfloat), →I 526
- `\fg (babel)`, →I 143, →II 303, [311](#), 313
 - fgcolor key (adjustbox), →I 599
- `\fheader (tlc/fcolumn)`, →I 490
- `\fi`, →II 686, 727
 - fi value (upmendex), →II 369
- `\field (biblatex)`, →II 487, 542
- `field` value (biblatex), →II 562
- fields, bibliographies, →II 384–390
 - data types (biblatex), →II 393
 - ignored, →II 385
 - literal and name lists (biblatex), →II 393
 - nonstandard, →II 390–393
 - optional, →II [385](#), 386
 - required, →II [384](#), 386
- `fieldset` key (biblatex), →II 408
- `fieldsource` key (biblatex), →II [392](#), 408, 417
- `fieldtarget` key (biblatex), →II [392](#), 408
- `fighead` option (endfloat), →I 526
- `figheight` key (todonotes), →I [238](#), 239
- `figlist` option (endfloat), →I 526
- `figure` counter, →I 89, →II [646](#)
- `figure` env.,
 - I 71, 89, 125, 238, [528](#), 538, 539, 540, 542–545, 548
 - cross-reference to, →I 76
 - error using, →II 723, 727, 734
 - floats to end of document, →I 525
 - labels in, →I 76
 - style parameters, →I 510, 512, 516
 - warning using, →II 756
 - (caption), →I 547
 - (float), →I 531, 532
 - (multicol), not supported, →I 353
 - (rotfloat), →I 535
- `figure` value (hvfloat), →I 560
- figure lists
 - in tables of contents, →I 56
 - options, →I 526
 - placing at end of document, →I 525–528
- `figure*` env., →I 513f.
 - (multicol), →I 353
- `\figurename`, →I 528
 - (babel), →II 305
- `\figureplace (endfloat)`, →I [527](#), 528
- `figureposition` key/option (caption), →I 545
- `figures` value
 - (siunitx), →I 173
 - (tcolorbox), →I 628f.
- figures, floats, →I 528–573
- `\figuresection (endfloat)`, →I 526
- `figuresfirst` option (endfloat), →I 526
- `figuresleft` option (rotating), →I 534
- `figuresonly` option (endfloat), →I 526
- `figuresright` option (rotating), →I 534
- `figwidth` key (todonotes), →I [238](#), 239
- `fil` syntax (*unit*), →II 652
- `\filcenter`
 - (titlesec), →I [45](#), 49, 68
 - (titletoc), →I 60
- `\file (docstrip)`, →II [601](#), 602
- file extensions
 - image file search order, →I 586
 - TeX and L^AT_EX overview, →I 11
- file structure (*classes and packages*)
 - commands, →II 694, 704–708, 710
 - description, →II 693
 - identification part, →II 696f.
 - initial code part, →II 697
 - key/value options, →II 700–703
 - main code part, →II 704
 - minimal requirements (*classes*), →II 710
 - options
 - declaring, →II 697–702
 - executing, →II 699f., 702f.
 - key/value, →II 700–703
 - package loading part, →II 703
 - rollback part, →II 693ff.
- `file/⟨file⟩/after` hook, →II 677
- `file/⟨file⟩/before` hook, →II 677
- `file/after` hook, →II 673, [677](#)
- `file/before` hook, →II 673, [677](#)
- `filecolor` key/option (hyperref), →I 102
- `filecontents` env., →I [109](#), 110, 113, 499,
 - II 619, 740f., 764
- error using, →II 731
- warning using, →II 752ff., 760, 764f.
- `filecontents*` env., →I 325
- `filemod` package, →II 619f.
- `\filemodnewest (filemod)`, →II 619
- `\filemodoldest (filemod)`, →II 619
- `\filemodprint (filemod)`, →II 619
- `\filemodprintdate (filemod)`, →II 619
- `\filemodprinttime (filemod)`, →II 619
- files
 - auxiliary, →I 11f.
 - bibliography style, →I 12
 - class, →I 10
 - document source, *see* source files
 - encoding definition, →I 10
 - font definition, →I 10
 - index, →I 12
 - input source, →I 10
 - internal, →I 10

- files (*cont.*)
 - language definition, →I 10
 - LaTeX format, →I 10
 - package, →I 10
 - plain text, →I 10
 - TeX and LaTeX, summary list, →I 11
 - TeX font metric, →I 10
 - transcript, →I 12
- \filinner (titlesec), →I 45, 49
- \fill (tikz), →I 638
- \fill length, →I 454, 461, →II 631, 637, 653, 654f.
 - fill key (tikz), →I 638f., 640f., 644ff.
 - fill syntax (*unit*), →II 652
- \filllast
 - (titlesec), →I 45
 - (titletoc), →I 60, 68
- fillcolor key (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 307
- \filldraw (tikz), →I 638, 640
- \filleft
 - (titlesec), →I 45, 46, 49
 - (titletoc), →I 60
- filling material, *see* leaders
- filll syntax (*unit*), →II 652
- \filouter (titlesec), →I 45, 49
- \filright
 - (titlesec), →I 45, 47, 49
 - (titletoc), →I 60, 61, 63f., 66, 67
- filter key (biblatex), →II 553
- final key (biblatex), →II 392, 417
- final key/option
 - (draftwatermark), →I 409
 - (graphicx), →I 577
- final option
 - (changes), →I 245
 - (fixme), →I 243
 - (graphics), →I 577
 - (qrcode), →I 613
 - (showkeys), →I 94
 - (todonotes), →I 242
 - (varioref), →I 85
- final mode, →I 85, 94, 577
- \FinalBibTitles (chapterbib), →II 573, 574
- finalcolumnbadness counter (multicol), →I 357, 359
- \Finale (doc), →II 587, 595
- \finalhyphendemerits TeX counter, →II 631, 637
- \finalhyphenpenalty TeX counter, →I 427
- financial data, in tables, →I 487, 488ff., 491
- findent key (lettrine), →I 143, 144
- \finentry (biblatex), →II 558
- finentry syntax (biblatex), →II 558
- \finentrypunct (biblatex), →II 558
- finnish option (babel), →II 301
- \fint math symbol \int
 - (esint), →II 169
 - (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 244, 249
- \fintsl math symbol \int (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245
- \fintup math symbol \int (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245
- \Finv math symbol \int (amssymb), →II 213
- Fira fonts, description/examples, →II 14, 109, 291
 - in math and text, →II 259f., 290f.
- FiraMono package, →II 14
- FiraSans package, →II 14
- first key (enumitem), →I 272f., 274, 276, 277
- first syntax, →I 393f.
- first value
 - (acro), →I 159, 163
 - (jurabib), →II 515, 516–519, 520, 522f.
- first-column syntax, →I 391, 395
- first-long-format key (acro), →I 160
- first-style key (acro), →I 159, 161, 162f.
- \firsthdashline (arydshln), →I 469
- \firsthline (array), →I 444, 445, 469
- \FirstLine (magaz), →I 146
- firstline key
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 314, 316
 - (listings), →I 329
- \FirstLineFont (magaz), →I 146
- \FirstMark, →I 391, 392, 394f., 403, 411
 - error using, →II 730
- \firstmark, *dangerous* — *do not use*, →I 388
- \firstmarks, *dangerous* — *do not use*, →I 388
- firstnotreversed value (jurabib), →II 515
- firstnumber key
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 310, 311f., 316
 - (listings), →I 326, 327, 332
- firstpageonly key/option (draftwatermark), →I 409
- \FirstWordBox (continue), →I 408
- fit option (truncate), →I 406
- \fitimage (tlc/adjustbox), →I 601
- fitting library (tcolorbox), →I 619
- FitWidth value (hyperref), →I 108
- fivepointed_u_star value (tikz), →I 639
- fiwi biblatex style (biblatex-fiwi), →II 465
- fiwi2 biblatex style (biblatex-fiwi), →II 465
- \fix (tlc/todonotes), →I 241
- fix-cm package, →I 144, 164, 685, 686
- fixed option (fontawesome5), →II 123
- fixed value
 - (listings), →I 327, 328
 - (siunitx), →I 174, 486
- fixed-exponent key (siunitx), →I 174, 486
- \Fixedbearing text symbol \mathbb{F} (marvosym), →II 117
- fixltx2e *obsolete* package, →I 6, 116, 514
- fixme package, →I 237, 242ff.
- flafter package, →I 80, 512
- \flagcont (continue), →I 407, 408
- \flagend (continue), →I 407, 408
- flalign env. (amsmath), →II 132, 138, 139, 140
 - adjusting with \minalignsep, →II 139
 - error using, →II 718
- flalign* env. (amsmath), →II 132
- flanguage BibTeX field (jurabib), →II 533
- \flat math symbol \flat , →II 213
- fleqn option, →I 94, →II 175
 - (amsmath), →II 129, 132, 134, 205, 209, 214
- flexible value (listings), →I 327, 328

- flexysym package, →II 149
- float key
 - (listings), →I 331
 - (tcolorbox), →I 628, 629
- float package, →I 517, 529–532, 559f., →II 646, 741, 754
 - combined with endfloat, →I 525
 - combined with hvfloat, →I 562
 - combined with keyfloat, →I 568
 - combined with wrapfig, →I 538
- float class, →I 506
 - captions, listing, →I 531
 - naming, →I 530f.
- float pages, →I 507, 509, 510, 515
 - generated by placeins, →I 524
 - half-empty, →I 514f.
 - improved generation, →I 520–524
 - multifloat, →I 565
 - page styles (headers and footers), →I 405
 - parameters, →I 511
 - tracing, →I 523
- float* key
 - (listings), →I 331
 - (tcolorbox), →I 628
- \FloatBarrier (placeins), →I 524, 532, 533
- floatCapSep key (hvfloat), →I 561, 563
- \floatdesign (layouts), →I 374
- \floatdiagram (layouts), →I 374
- floating point calculations, →II 657f., 659
- \floatname
 - (float), →I 530, 531, 562
 - (rotfloat), →I 535
- floatpagedeferlimit counter (fewerfloatpages), →I 521, 522f.
- \floatpagedesign (layouts), →I 374
- \floatpagediagram (layouts), →I 374
- \floatpagefraction, →I 511, 514f., 521, 565
- \floatpagekeepfraction (fewerfloatpages), →I 521, 522ff.
- floatpagekeeplimit counter (fewerfloatpages), →I 521, 523
- \floatplace (endfloat), →I 528
- \floatplacement (float), →I 531
- floatplacement key
 - (listings), →I 331
 - (tcolorbox), →I 628
- floatPos key (hvfloat), →I 561, 562, 563
- floats
 - areas, →I 507, 514
 - boxes as, →I 628f.
 - call-outs, →I 508
 - captions
 - continuing across floats, →I 546, 547, 568f.
 - customizing, →I 540–550
 - fonts, →I 542, 543
 - for specific float types, →I 541, 548, 549
 - justifying, →I 544, 545, 556
 - labels, →I 543, 544, 549f.
 - multipage tables, →I 457, 462
 - on separate page, →I 564, 565f.
 - floats (*cont.*)
 - paragraph separation, →I 544, 545
 - placement, →I 560f., 562–567, 573
 - shape, →I 540f., 542
 - sideways, →I 563f.
 - spacing, →I 545, 555, 557
 - standard L^AT_EX, →I 538, 539, 540
 - subcaptions, →I 551, 552ff., 555, 556ff., 559, 565, 566
 - subcaptions, list of, →I 558
 - subnumbering, →I 547, 548, 556
 - classes, →I 506
 - custom styles, →I 529, 530ff., 533
 - definition, →I 505f.
 - double page, →I 567
 - figures, →I 528–573
 - half-empty pages, →I 514f.
 - in columns, →I 347f., 353f.
 - in margin, →I 570
 - in paragraphs, →I 535, 536, 537f., 571
 - recommendations, →I 537
 - inline, →I 535–538, 570f.
 - maximum allowed, setting, →I 510f.
 - multipage tables, →I 462, 464f., 525
 - nonfloating tables and figures, →I 532, 533
 - page fraction, setting, →I 511
 - parameters, →I 507, 510ff.
 - placement control, →I 507, 512–518, 524–528
 - after their callouts, →I 512f.
 - at end of document, →I 525–528
 - at exact spot, →I 513, 532f.
 - bunched at end of chapter, →I 516
 - captions, →I 560f., 562–567, 573
 - confined by barriers, →I 524
 - floating backwards, →I 513
 - forcing, →I 516
 - impact on footnotes, →I 517f.
 - in columns, →I 572f.
 - increasing storage, →I 514
 - reducing empty space, →I 519–524
 - suppressed, →I 513
 - tracing, →I 518f.
 - placement rules, →I 509f., 511f.
 - parameters, →I 510ff.
 - premature output, →I 526
 - restrictions, in columns (multicol), →I 353f.
 - rotating, →I 533, 534, 535
 - rules (graphic lines), →I 512
 - separators, →I 512
 - subfigures, →I 551, 552ff., 555f., 557f., 559, 565, 566, 573
 - list of, →I 558
 - subtables, →I 551, 552f., 554, 555, 556, 557ff., 565f.
 - list of, →I 558
 - tables, →I 528–573
 - text markers for, →I 238, 239, 526f., 528
 - typed text as, →I 331
 - types, →I 506
 - unprocessed, flushing, →I 525
 - vertical spacing, →I 511

- floats (*cont.*)
 - wrapping text around, →I 535, 536, 537f., 571
 - recommendations, →I 537
 - wrong references, →I 76, 77
- `\floatsep` length, →I 511
- `\floatstyle`
 - (float), →I 529, 530f., 542ff., 562
 - (rotfloat), →I 535
- floor syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658, 659
- `.fls` file extension, →I 11, 113, 114
- `fltpage` *obsolete* package, →I 560, *see instead* `hvfloat` package
- `fltrace` package, →I 518f., 523
- flush left paragraphs, →I 122, 124, 125
- flush right paragraphs, →I 122f.
- `flush_center` value (`tcolorbox`), →I 617
- `flush_left` value (`tcolorbox`), →I 617
- `flush_right` value (`tcolorbox`), →I 617
- `\flushbottom`, →I 415, 416
 - (`addlines`), →I 417f.
 - (`needspace`), →I 419, 420
- `\flushcolumns` (`multicol`), →I 353, 357
- `FlushLeft` env. (`ragged2e`), →I 123
- `flushleft` env., →I 122, 260, 344
- `flushleft` option (`threeparttable`), →I 493
- `flushmargin` option (`footmisc`), →I 213, 214, 222, →II 522
- `\flushpage` (`paracol`), →I 347
- `FlushRight` env. (`ragged2e`), →I 123
- `flushright` env., →I 122, 260, →II 655
- `\fmmfamily` (`miama`), →II 103
- `\fmmLaTeX` (`miama`), →II 103
- `\fmmTeX` (`miama`), →II 103
- `\fmnote` (`tlc/fixme`), →I 244
- `.fmt` file extension, →I 9, 11, →II 730
- `fmtcount` package, →I 154f., →II 650, 814
- `\fmtord` (`fmtcount`), →I 154
- `fnpct` package, →I 216ff., →II 684, 811
- `\fnref` (`tlc`), →I 207
- `\fnsymbol`, →I 205, 211, →II 648
 - error using, →II 721
 - (`footmisc`), avoiding spurious error, →I 211
 - (`perpage`), spurious error, →I 219
- `fnsymbol` syntax (`manyfoot|bigfoot`), →I 223f.
- `foe` `biblatex` style (`biblatex-archaeology`), →II 446, 448
- folio-by-chapter page numbers, indexes, →II 362
- Font key (`fontspec`), →I 712, 713
- `\font`, →I 149, 741, 744f., 746f., →II 88
- font key
 - (`diagbox`), →I 480, 481
 - (`enumitem`), →I 267
 - (`microtype`), →I 135
 - (`tikz`), →I 640
- font key/option
 - (`caption`), →I 141, 462, 542, 543, 554
 - (`crop`), →I 412, 413f.
 - (`subcaption`), →I 554, 555, 556f., 566
- Font Awesome fonts, description/examples, →II 120, 121–124
- font commands
 - high level
 - `\bf`, *obsolete* — *do not use*, →I 670
 - combining, →I 668f.
 - definition, →I 659
 - emphasizing text, →I 663ff.
 - font series defaults, →I 673, 674, 675
 - LaTeX 2.09, →I 670
 - main document text, changing, →I 670–675
 - main document text, description, →I 659, 665
 - monospaced fonts, →I 660
 - overall document appearance, →I 670–675
 - sans serif fonts, →I 660
 - selected words or phrases, →I 659, 660
 - serified fonts, →I 660
 - sizing fonts, →I 665, 666
 - special characters, →I 669f.
 - standard families, →I 660
 - standard series, →I 660f.
 - standard shapes, →I 661, 662–665
 - typewriter fonts, →I 660
 - underlining text, →I 664
 - vs. declarations, →I 666, 667f.
 - in math, →I 682
 - low level
 - automatic font substitution, →I 738
 - definition, →I 730f.
 - encoding, →I 736, 737
 - family, →I 732
 - family substitution, →I 739
 - series, →I 733f.
 - setting font attributes, individual, →I 731–738
 - setting font attributes, multiple, →I 738
 - shape, →I 734f.
 - size, →I 735
 - within a document, →I 740
- font definition files, →I 10, *see also* `.fd`
- font descriptions/examples
 - `Accanthis`, →I 721, →II 39
 - `Adobe Source Pro`, →II 35, 112
 - `Alegreya`, →I 503, 662, 695, 697ff., 707ff., 713, 718f., →II 9, 11, 107, 109, 315
 - `Algol`, →I 701, 712, →II 89
 - `Almendra`, →I 703f., →II 100
 - `Anonymous Pro`, →I 297, →II 90
 - `Antykwa Poltawskiego`, →II 46
 - `Antykwa Toruńska`, →II 100, 296
 - `Arimo`, →II 68
 - `Baskervaldx`, →I 654, →II 48, 272f.
 - `BaskervilleF`, →I 654, 721, →II 47, 271, 273
 - `Biolinum`, →II 19
 - `Bitstream Charter`, →I 710, 723, →II 50, 110, 315
 - `Bitstream Vera`, →II 12
 - `Bitter`, →I 711, →II 65
 - `Bonum`, →II 48, 273
 - `Cabin`, →II 70
 - `Cambria`, →II 49, 107, 110, 274
 - `Cardo`, →I 664, →II 37

font descriptions/examples (*cont.*)

Charis SIL, →II 51, 110
 Chivo, →II 70
 Cinzel, →II 98
 Clear Sans, →II 72
 CM Bright, →II 12, 239, 240, 290
 CM-Super, →I 685f.
 Cochineal, →II 263
 Coelacanth, →II 37
 Computer Modern (CM), →I 660, **684ff.**, →II 60
 \LaTeX standard fonts, →I 684f., 686, 687f.
 Concrete, →II 65, 238, 239, 241, 288f.
 Cormorant Garamond, →I 724, →II 41, 110
 Courier, →II 91
 Crimson Pro/Cochineal, →I 654, 716, →II 40, 107, 263
 Cuprum, →II 73
 Cyklop, →II 73
 DejaVu, →II 12, 107, 109, 111f., 288f.
 Droid, →II 26
 EB Garamond, →I 654, 713f., 718, 724f., →II 41, 264f.
 Erewhon, →I 720, →II 58, 283
 Euler, →II 289
 European Computer Modern (EC), →I **684f.**, 686
 fbb (version of Cardo), →I 664, →II 38
 Fell, →II 99
 Fira, →II 14, 109, 291
 Font Awesome, →II 120, 121–124
 Fourier Ornaments, →II 119
 Fraktur, →II 104ff.
 Gandhi, →II 15
 Garamond Libre, →II 42, 107, 111, 265, 318f.
 Garamondx, →II 43, 264f.
 Gentium Plus, →II 45, 107, 309
 GFS Artemisia, →II 39, 107
 GFS Bodoni, →II 61, 107
 GFS Didot, →II 62, 108
 GFS Neo-Hellenic, →II 75, 109, 290f.
 Gillius, →I 695, 701, →II 75
 Go, →II 15
 Gothic, →II 104ff.
 Helvetica, →I 714, →II 76
 Heros, →I 714, →II 76
 Heuristica, →II 58
 IBM Plex, →I 720, 739, →II 30
 Inconsolata, →II 92
 Inria, →I 726, →II 16
 ITC Avant Garde Gothic, →II 69
 ITC Bookman, →II 48
 Iwona, →II 77, 111, 292f.
 Kp, →II 17ff., 45, 266f.
 Kp Sans, →II 79, 293
 Kurier, →II 79, 294f.
 Latin Modern (LM), →I 660, **686, 687f.**, →II 108ff., 285
 \LaTeX standard fonts, →I 686ff.
 Lato, →I xlii, 720, →II 80, 109
 Libertine, →II 19
 Libertinus, →I 721, 724, 726, →II 19, 108f., 111f., 275, 277
 Libre Baskerville, →II 47

font descriptions/examples (*cont.*)

Libre Bodoni, →II 61
 Libre Caslon, →II 51
 Libre Franklin, →II 81
 Linguistics Pro, →II 59, 108, 111
 Literaturnaya, →II 53, 111
 Lucida families, →II 21–25, 112, 278f.
 Luximono, →II 95
 Marcellus, →II 99
 MarVoSym, →II 117
 Merriweather, →II 25
 Miama Nueva, →II 103, 110, 113
 Mint Spirit, →II 82
 Montserrat, →I 739, →II 83
 New Century Schoolbook, →II 54, 275f.
 New Computer Modern, →II 286f.
 New Hellenic, →II 75
 New PX, →II 249, 250, 268f.
 Noto, →I 673, 697, 719, →II 26, 108–112, 287
 Noto Sans, →II 295
 Old Standard, →II 63, 108, 111
 Optima, →I 670, 707, →II 71
 Ornaments ADF, →II 118
 Overlock, →I 702f., →II 84
 Pagella, →I 670, →II 46, 268–271
 Palatino, →II 46, 268
 Paratype PT, →II 31, 111f.
 Playfair, →I 722, 726, →II 64
 Quattrocento, →I 702f., →II 33
 Raleway, →II 86
 Roboto, →I 669, →II 34
 Rosario, →II 86
 Schola, →II 276
 Schwabacher, →II 104ff.
 Stempel Garamond, →I 67, 711, →II 43
 STIX 2, →II 57, 280, 282
 Tempora, →II 56, 108
 Termes, →I 714, →II 55, 280f.
 Theano Didot, →II 62, 108
 Times Roman, →I 714, →II 55, 280
 Tinos, →II 57
 Universalis, →II 87
 URW Classico, →II 71
 URW Garamond No. 8, →I 67, 711, →II 43
 Utopia, →II 58
 Waldi's, →II 116
 Web-O-Mints, →II 119
 XCharter, →II 274f.
 XITS, →II 280f.
 Zapf Chancery, →II 102
 Zapf Dingbats, →II 113
 font encoding, →I 650, 693f., 760–776
 font memory errors, →II 746
 font+ key/option
 (caption), →I 543
 (subcaption), →I 554, 555
 font-loading options, →I 744ff.
 fontadjust key (listings), →I 328

fontawesome5 package, →II 120–124
fontaxes package, →I 649, 669
fontdef.cfg file, →I 748
\fontdimen, →I 134, 149, **745f.**, 753
\fontdimen1, →I 745
\fontdimen2, →I 73, 149, **745**, 746
\fontdimen3, →I 745
\fontdimen4, →I 745
\fontdimen5, →I **745**, →II 88
\fontdimen6, →I 745
\fontdimen7, →I 745
fontenc package, →I 10, 304f., 650, **693f.**, 736, 759,
→II 104, 328, 708
changing \encodingdefault, →I 672
error using, →II 711, 721
\fontencoding, →I 305, 669, 685, **731**, 732, **736**, 740, 747,
767, →II 327
error using, →II 721
(array), producing wrong output, →I 442
FontFace key (fontspec), →I 675, **712**, 713, 727, →II 10
\fontfamily, →I 200, 669, 685, 699, 703f., **731**, **732**, 737,
740, →II 10
(fontspec), →I 706, 712
fontfamily key (fancyvrb|fvextra),
→I **304**, 305, 318, 321, 712
fontforge program, →I 723
fontinst program, →II 1, 7, 803
fontlower key (tcolorbox), →I 618
fontmath.ltx file, →II 213
fonts, *see also* math fonts; math symbols; text
accented characters, →I 649, 650, 658, 692, 693
automatic substitution, →I 738
availability, →II 2ff.
with restrictive license, →II 3f.
bibliographies, →II 527f.
blackletter, →II **104f.**, **106**
body, →I 659
chancery, →II 100–103
changing, *see* font commands
classification, →I 690
declaring, →I 741
decorative initials, →I **145**, →II 104, **105**, 106
defining for a document, *see* font commands, high level
defining in a package, *see* font commands, low level
defining in the preamble, *see* font commands, low level
Didone, →II 60–64
direct use (no package), →II 10
displaying font tables, →I 705, 728, 729f.
Egyptian serif, →II 64–67
emphasizing, →I 663ff.
encoding, →I 650, *see* encoding, languages and fonts
expansion & compression,
→I 127f., 129, 130, *see also* expansion, fonts
families, *see also* font descriptions/examples for
individual fonts
classification, →I 690
declaring, →I 741
encodings, →I 657f.

fonts (*cont.*)
low-level commands, →I 732
modifying, →I 746
shapes, →I 652–656
sizes, →I 656f.
float captions, →I 542, 543
font features (OTF), →I 713–727
coloring, →I 714
config file, →I 728
digit styles, →I 716, 717
glyph variants, →I 722f., 724ff.
kerning, →I 721, 722
ligatures, →I 720, 721
listing available features, →I 715, 716
scaling, →I 714
small capitals, →I 717, 718
sub and superscript glyphs, →I 718ff.
for line numbers, →I 337, 338
full featured families, →II 11–46
Garalde, →II 38–46
historical, →II 97–106
humanist, →II 36ff.
hz algorithm, →I 127
in this book, →I 660, →II **977**
in typed text, →I 304, 305f.
italic, →I 654
italic correction, →I 661, 662ff.
kerning, →I 127, 133, 134, 135
L^AT_EX 2.09, →I 670
L^AT_EX standard fonts, →I **684**, 685, 686, 687f.
letterspacing, →I 127, **191–198**
ad hoc, →I 192
always, →I 194
listing available OpenType font features, →I 715, 716
loading .tfm files unnecessarily, →I 668
low-level interfaces, *see* font commands, low level
main document text
changing, →I 670–675
description, →I 659, 665
math, *see also* math fonts for individual fonts
alphabet identifiers, *see* math alphabets
automatic changes, →I 676f.
font commands, →I 682
formula versions, →I 682, 683
scaling large operators, →I 704
math alphabets
alphabet identifiers, →I **677**, 678ff., 681, 682,
→II 254f., **256**, 257
blackboard bold,
→II 130, **226**, 227f., 230, 233, 234, 250f.
calligraphic, →I **678**, →II 130, **226**, 227, 229f., 231ff.
choosing suitable, →II 228f.
fraktur, →II 130, **226**, 228, 230, 233
script, →II **226**, 227, 229f., 231ff.
simplified setup, →II 230, 231
micro-typography, →I 126–137
modifying, →I 746

fonts (*cont.*)

- monospaced, →I **652f.**, 660,
 - II 88, 89–93, 94, 95ff., *see also* typed text
- neoclassical, →II 46–59
- NFSS, →I 648f., *see also* PSNFSS
 - naming conventions, →II 6f.
- normal, →I 659
- O versus O, →II 24, **89**
- oblique, →I 654
- OpenType fonts, →I 687
- outline, →I 655
- packages, conventions, →II 7–10
- PostScript fonts, →I 685, *see also* PSNFSS
- printer points, →I 656
- proportional, →I 652f.
- resizing, relative to original, →I 675, 676
- samples, notes on, →II 4–7
- sans serif, →I **653**, 660, →II **67–87**
- scaling large operators, →I 704
- series, →I **660f.**, 673, 674, 675, 733f.
- serifed, →I **653**, 660, →II **11–67**
- setting attributes, individual, →I 731–738
- setting attributes, multiple, →I 738
- setting up (NFSS)
 - dimensions, →I 745f.
 - “empty” size function, →I 741f., 743
 - encoding schemes, declaring, →I 747
 - families, declaring, →I 741
 - families, modifying, →I 746
 - font-loading options, →I 744ff.
 - for math use, →I 749–753
 - gen size function, →I 751
 - hyphenation character, →I 744
 - internal file organization, →I 748f.
 - overview, →I 740f.
 - s size function, →I 743
 - shape groups, →I 741–746
 - size, →I 749
 - size functions, →I 742f.
 - ssub size function, →I 743
 - sub size function, →I 743
 - symbol fonts, →I 750–753
- shaded, →I 655
- shape groups, →I 741–746
- shapes, →I **653ff.**, 661, 662–665, 734f.
- size, →I 666
 - description, →I 656f.
 - footnotes, →I 208
 - low-level commands, →I 735
 - measuring, →I 656f.
 - setting up, →I 749
 - standard sizes, →I 665
- size functions, →I 742f.
- slab serif, →II 64–67
- slanted, →I **654**, 661
- sloped, *see* slanted
- small capitals, →I **654f.**, 662, 663, →II 319
- spacing, →I 127, 133ff.

fonts (*cont.*)

- special characters, →I 669f., *see also* text symbols
- specifying in tables, →I 441, 442
- swash letter, →I **654**, 661, 710, 712f., 725
- symbol fonts, →II 100, 113–126
- symbols, *see* text symbols; math symbols
- tables, displaying, →I 705, 728, 729f.
- tracing font selection, →I 704
- tracking, →I 127, 133ff.
- transitional, →II 46–59
- typewriter, →I 660, →II **88, 89–93, 94, 95ff.**, 598
- underlining text, →I 664
- Unicode, →I 705–730
 - additional fonts, →I 711, 712
 - declaration files, →I 710
 - default attributes, →I 671
 - main document, →I 706, 707, 708, 709f.
 - slanted, →I 710
 - small capitals, →I 709, 710
- upright, →I **654**, 661
- weight, →I 655f.
- white space, →I 661, 662ff.
- width, →I 655f.
- with Cyrillic support, →II 110–113
- with polytonic Greek support, →I 739, →II 106–110
- x-height, →I 654, **656**, 660, 689, 691, 745,
 - II 25, 33, 35f., 47, 49, 57, 64f., 68, 88, 103
- `\fontseries`, →I 305, 661, 669, 697, 703, **731**, 732, **733**, 734, 740, →II 10
- (fontspec), →I 712
- `fontseries` key (`fancyvrb|fvextra`), →I 305
- `\fontseriesforce`, →I 731, **733**
- `\fontshape`, →I 305, 671, 697, **731**, 732, **734**, 735, 740,
 - II 10, 43
- `fontshape` key (`fancyvrb|fvextra`), →I **305**, 306
- `\fontshapeforce`, →I 731, **735**
- `\fontsize`, →I 46, 665, 676, 685, **731**, 732, **735**, 736, 738, 740, →II 10
- warning using, →II 749
- `fontsize` key
 - (`draftwatermark`), →I **410**, 411
 - (`fancyvrb|fvextra`), →I **305**, **306**, 319f.
- `\fontspec` (fontspec), →I **711**, 721, 726, →II 24
- `.fontspec` file extension (fontspec), →I 9f., **11**, 675, 710, 712
- fontspec package, →I 7, 18, 647, 649, 671f., 674f., 679, **705–728**, 732, 749, →II 2, 5, 7, 10, 13, 36, 38, 45, 50, 53, 73, 93, 103, 256, 267, 275, 331f., 813
- `fontspec.cfg` file (fontspec), →I 728
- `\fonttablesetup` (unicodfonttable), →I 730
- `fonttext.cfg` file, →II 603
- `fonttext.ltx` file, →I **748**, 749
- `fonttitle` key (`tcolorbox`), →I **618**, 619, 627
- `fontupper` key (`tcolorbox`), →I **618**, 627
- foot value (unicodfonttable), →I 729
- `\Football` text symbol ⚽ (`marvosym`), →II 117
- `\footcite`
 - (`biblatex`), →II 539, **544**, 545f., 560
 - (`jurabib`), →II **517**, 518f.

- `\footcite` (*cont.*)
 - (*tlc/acro*), →I 159, 160
- `\footcitet` (*jurabib*), →II 524
- `\footcitetitle` (*jurabib*), →II 517
- footer height, →I 373
- footers, *see* headers and footers
- `\footfullcite` (*jurabib*), →II 517, 523
- `\footinclude` key/option (*typearea*), →I 376
- `\footins`, →I 517
- footmisc package, →I 210–216, 217f., 222, 225, →II 560
- `\Footnote` (*manyfoot|bigfoot*), →I 221
- `\footnote`, →I 205, 206f., 209, 221, 222–226, 492
 - cross-reference to, →I 76
 - in *paracol*, →I 344ff.
 - justification in, →I 122
 - nested, →I 207
 - referencing, →I 207
 - style parameters, →I 208ff.
 - typeset as marginal, →I 219
 - (*babel*), →II 322
 - (*cite*), →II 482
 - (*fancyvrb|fvextra*), →I 320
 - (*fnpct*), →I 217, 218, 237
 - (*footmisc*), →I 206, 212ff., 217, 227
 - avoiding spurious error, →I 211
 - numbered per page, →I 210, 223
 - numbered using stars, →I 212
 - problems with consecutive, →I 215
 - typeset as marginal, →I 213f.
 - typeset run-in, →I 212, 214ff.
 - (*footnoterange*), →I 216
 - (*longtable*), →I 463
 - (*multicol*), →I 354
 - (*perpage*), numbered per page, →I 219f.
 - (*perpage*), spurious error, →I 219
 - (*snotez*), →I 237
 - (*supertabular*), →I 456
 - (*ulem*), →I 189
 - (*xspace*), →I 153
- footnote counter, →I 205, 219, →II 646, 769
 - numbered within chapters, →II 647
 - (*footmisc*), numbered per page, →I 210
 - (*longtable*), →I 463
 - (*manyfoot|bigfoot*), numbered per page, →I 223
 - (*paracol*), →I 345
 - (*perpage*), numbered per page, →I 219f.
- footnote env. (*footnoterange*), →I 216
- footnote key (*fixme*), →I 243f.
- footnote option (*snotez*), →I 236, 237
- footnote syntax (*enumitem*), →I 280
- footnote value
 - (*acro*), →I 161
 - (*biblatex*), →II 545, 546
 - (*changes*), →I 246, 248, 249
- footnote citations, bibliographies, →II 517f., 519, 539, 540
- `\footnote*` (*fnpct*), →I 217, 237
 - `\footnote-dw` *biblatex* style (*biblatex-dw*), →II 464, 465
- `\Footnote` (*suffix*) (*manyfoot|bigfoot*), →I 221, 222f.
- `\footnote` (*suffix*) (*manyfoot|bigfoot*), →I 221, 222–226
 - `footnote` (*suffix*) counter (*manyfoot|bigfoot*), →I 221, 223ff.
- `\footnotedesign` (*layouts*), →I 374
- `\footnotediagram` (*layouts*), →I 374
- `\footnotelayout` (*paracol*), →I 345, 346
- `\footnotemargin` rigid length (*footmisc*), →I 213, 214
- `\Footnotemark` (*manyfoot|bigfoot*), →I 221
- `\footnotemark`, →I 98, 205, 206, 207, 221, 491, 492
 - in *minipage*, →I 216
 - (*xspace*), →I 153
- `\footnotemark*` (*fnpct*), →I 217
- `\Footnotemark` (*suffix*) (*manyfoot|bigfoot*), →I 221
- `\footnotemark` (*suffix*) (*manyfoot|bigfoot*), →I 221, 224
 - `footnoterange` env. (*footnoterange*), →I 216
 - `footnoterange` package, →I 216
 - `footnoterange*` env. (*footnoterange*), →I 216
- `\footnoterule`, →I 208f., 214, 512
 - customizing, →I 208, 214
 - (*manyfoot|bigfoot*), →I 222
- footnotes, *see also* endnotes; marginal notes
 - . *aux* file, →I 210
 - and punctuations, →I 216ff.
 - below paragraphs, →I 226f., 228
 - collected in ranges, →I 216
 - counters, resetting per-page, →I 218, 219f., 223
 - customizing, →I 208ff.
 - font size, →I 208
 - hyperlinks to, →I 98
 - in columns, →I 228, 344ff., 349, 353f.
 - in tables, →I 463, 491, 492f.
 - in the margin, →I 212, 213f., 219, 222
 - independent, →I 220f., 222, 223ff., 226
 - main text vs. *minipage* env., →I 205, 206f., 208ff.
 - multilingual documents, →II 322
 - multipage tables, →I 463
 - multiple at same point, →I 215–218, 226f., 237
 - nested, →I 207, 224
 - numbering, →I 208, 216, 220f., 222, 223ff., 226
 - per page, →I 210, 211
 - page layout, →I 378
 - paragraph format, →I 212
 - placement, →I 214f.
 - referencing, →I 207
 - relation to floats, →I 517f.
 - rules (graphic lines), →I 208, 214
 - schematic layout, →I 209
 - spacing from text, →I 208
 - splitting, →I 213f., 225, 226
 - standard, →I 205, 206f., 208ff.
 - styles, →I 210–216, 229
 - superscript marks, →I 209f.
 - symbols for, →I 205, 211f.
 - troubleshooting, →II 780
 - two-column environment, →I 228, 229
 - typed text in, →I 320
 - vertical spacing, →I 208, 223
- `\footnotesep` rigid length, →I 208f.
- `\footnotesep` key/option (*geometry*), →I 378

- `\footnotesize`, →I 208, 258, 260, 665, 666, 692
- footnotesize value
 - (caption), →I 542, 543
 - (todonotes), →I 240
- `\Footnotetext` (manyfoot|bigfoot), →I 221
- `\footnotetext`, →I 206, 207, 216, 221
- `\Footnotetext(suffix)` (manyfoot|bigfoot), →I 221, 225f.
- `\footnotetext(suffix)` (manyfoot|bigfoot), →I 221, 224
- `\footref`, →I 206, 207
- `\footrule` (fancyhdr), →I 398
- `\footrulewidth` (fancyhdr), →I 398, 400, 402
- `\footskip` length, →I 367, 369
- footskip key/option (geometry), →I 381
- `\forall` math symbol \forall , →II 194, 213, 226
- force key, →I 109, 110, →II 619, 741, 765
- force option (textcomp), →I 703
- `foreach` (tikz path operation), →I 636
- `\foreach` (tikz|pgffor), →I 644, 645
- foreign key (acro), →I 160, 161
- foreign-babel key (acro), →I 160, 161
- foreign-format key (acro), →I 160
- `\foreignblockquote` (csquotes), →I 184, 185
- `\foreignblockquote*` (csquotes), →I 184
- `\foreigndisplayquote` env. (csquotes), →I 184
- `\foreignlanguage`
 - (babel), →I 184, 739, →II 302, 303, 304, 308, 309, 318f., 683
 - (polyglossia), →II 342
- `\foreignquote` (csquotes), →I 184
- `\foreignquote*` (csquotes), →I 184
- `\foreigntextquote` (csquotes), →I 184
- `\foreigntextquote*` (csquotes), →I 184
- forget option (qrcode), →I 613
- formal quotations, →I 182
- formal rules (graphic lines), →I 471, 472, 473
- format key
 - (enumitem), →I 267, 268, 269, 270
 - (keyvaltable), →I 495f., 502ff.
- format key/option
 - (caption), →I 541, 542
 - (subcaption), →I 554, 556
- format value (siunitx), →I 485
- format directives, bibliographies, →II 566, 567ff.
- `format!` key (keyvaltable), →I 496, 503
- `format*` key (keyvaltable), →I 496
- `format.ins` file, →II 603
- `format/alt` key (acro), →I 160
- `format/extra` key (acro), →I 163
- `format/first-long` key (acro), →I 160
- `format/foreign` key (acro), →I 160f.
- `format/long` key (acro), →I 160
- `format/short` key (acro), →I 160, 161
- `format/single` key (acro), →I 160
- `formatcom` key (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 306, 316
- formatting, *see also* design examples
 - abbreviations & acronyms, →I 156–163
 - headers and footers, *see* page styles
 - ordinals & cardinals, →I 154f.
 - formatting (*cont.*)
 - scientific notation, →I 167–177
 - formulas, typesetting, *see* math fonts; math symbols
 - Fortran value (listings), →I 323
 - `\ForwardToIndex` text symbol ►I (marvosym), →II 117
 - founder B¹TeX field (jurabib), →II 533
 - founder information, bibliographies, →II 533
 - `\foundername` (jurabib), →II 533
 - fourier package, →II 283
 - Fourier Ornaments fonts, description/examples, →II 119
 - fourier-orns package, →II 119
 - `\fpeval`, →II 657, 659, 689
 - `\frac`, →I 164, →II 136, 147, 149, 164, 165, 172, 174, 195, 196, 197, 201f., 204, 261, 659
 - `frac` OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 720
 - fraction value (siunitx), →I 169f., 175
 - `fraction-command` key (siunitx), →I 169, 175
 - Fractions key (fontspec), →I 720
 - fractions
 - math symbols, →II 164, 165, 166
 - text symbols, →I 164, 163f.
 - styling, →I 165, 166
 - `\fracwithdelims` (amstextra), →II 129
 - fragile commands, →I 70, →II 131, 715, 716
 - `\frail` (tlc), →II 716
 - `frak` key (mathalpha), →II 230, 241
 - `frak` value (unicode-math), →II 260
 - `\frakdefault` (yfonts), →II 106
 - `\frakfamily` (yfonts), →II 104, 105f.
 - `\fraklines` (yfonts), →II 105, 106
 - `frakscaled` key (mathalpha), →II 231
 - Fraktur fonts, description/examples, →II 104ff.
 - fraktur math alphabet, →II 130, 226, 228, 230, 233
 - `\frame`, →I 561, 564, 580, 597
 - frame key
 - (adjustbox), →I 597, 598f.
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 307f., 309, 314, 318
 - (listings), →I 330, 332
 - (titlesec), →I 68
 - frame option (crop), →I 412, 414
 - frame syntax (titlesec), →I 43, 44, 45
 - `frame_hidden` key (tcolorbox), →I 623
 - `\framebox`, →I 271, 565, 606, →II 661, 667
 - `framaround` key (listings), →I 330, 331
 - `framerule` key
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 307, 318
 - (listings), →I 330, 332
 - frames, *see also* boxes; lines (graphic)
 - code listings, →I 330
 - graphic objects, →I 597
 - typed text, →I 307ff., 314
 - `framesep` key
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 307f., 309
 - (listings), →I 330, 332
 - `framexleftmargin` key (listings), →I 332
 - French, →II 312, 320
 - layout style, →II 321
 - math style, →II 246, 250, 258, 267

- French (*cont.*)
 names, →II 319
 french option (babel), →I 23, 134, 143,
 →II 301, 303f., 306f., 311, 313, 319, 321f., 545, 559
 french value
 (csquotes), →I 183
 (microtype), →I 134
 (unicode-math), →II 258
 french package, →II 802
 french-collation: on value (upmendex), →II 368
 frenchb.ldf file (babel), →II 306
 FrenchFootnotes key (babel), →II 322
 \FrenchFootnotes (babel), →II 322
 frenchle package, →II 341
 frenchmath option (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 246, 250
 \frenchsetup (babel), →II 312, 313, 321, 322, 336
 \frenchspacing, →I 134, 157, →II 321, 335
 frenchstyle option (kpfonts|kpfonts-otf), →II 267
 Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), →II 787f.
 friulan option (babel), →II 301
 \from (docstrip), →II 601, 602, 606
 front matter, →I 26, 27, 28
 \frontmatter, →I 26, 386
 \frown math symbol \frown , →II 218, 221
 \Frowny text symbol \ominus (marvosym), →II 117
 ftnright package, →I 228, 334
 full option
 (textcomp), →I 703
 (trace), →II 782
 full citations in running text
 author-date citation system, →II 537, 538
 short-title citation system, →II 514, 515ff.
 \fullcite
 (biblatex), →II 538, 539
 (jurabib), →II 515, 520, 523
 fullflexible value (listings), →I 327, 328
 FULLPAGE key (hvfloating/graphics), →I 565
 FullPage key (hvfloating/graphics), →I 565
 fullpage key (hvfloating/graphics), →I 564, 565
 \fullref (varioref), →I 79
 \fullrefformat (varioref), →I 84
 FullScreen value (hyperref), →I 107, 108
 function names, *see* operators; operator names
 \fussy, →I 121
 \fverb (newverbs), →I 299, 300
 fvextra package, →I 301f., 303–322
 \fvinlineset (fvextra), →I 321
 \fvrbfamily (tlc/fontspec), →I 712
 \fvsset (fancyvrb|fvextra),
 →I 303, 304, 312, 314, 317, 320, 321, 323
 fwlv package, →I 407
 \fxerror (fixme), →I 242
 \fxerror* (fixme), →I 243, 244
 \fxfatal (fixme), →I 242f.
 \fxfatal* (fixme), →I 243, 244
 \fxnote (fixme), →I 242, 243
 \fxnote* (fixme), →I 243
 \FXRegisterAuthor (fixme), →I 244
 \fxsetup (fixme), →I 243, 244
 \fxuselayouts (fixme), →I 244
 \fxwarning (fixme), →I 242, 243
 \fxwarning* (fixme), →I 243
- ## G
- galician option (babel), →II 301
 \Game math symbol \oslash (amssymb), →II 213
 \Gamma math symbol Γ , →I 679,
 →II 151, 181, 212, 256, 261–296
 \gamma math symbol γ , →II 151, 212, 261–296
 gandhi package, →II 15
 Gandhi fonts, description/examples, →II 15
 GAP value (listings), →I 323
 \gap (dashundergaps), →I 190, 191
 \gap* (dashundergaps), →I 190, 191
 gap-font key/option (dashundergaps), →I 191
 gap-number-format key/option (dashundergaps), →I 191
 gapnumber counter (dashundergaps), →I 191
 gaps in forms, underlined, →I 190, 191
 Garalde fonts, →II 38–46
 Garamond Libre fonts, description/examples, →II 42, 265
 garamondlibre package, →II 42, 318f.
 garamondx option
 (newtxmath), →II 265
 (newtxtext), →II 248
 garamondx package, →I 67, →II 44, 265
 Garamondx fonts, description/examples, →II 43, 264f.
 in math and text, →II 264f.
 gather env.
 (amsmath), →II 131, 132, 135, 137, 142, 145, 152, 162,
 168, 179, 189, 205, 235, 256
 error using, →II 718
 (resizegather), →II 206
 gather option (chapterbib), →II 572, 573, 574
 gather* env. (amsmath), →II 132, 135, 137, 154, 168ff., 172,
 174, 184f., 187f., 194
 gathered env. (amsmath), →II 132, 140, 141
 error using, →II 718, 721
 not supported by empheq, →II 174
 \GB (tlc/xspace), →I 153
 gb7714-1987 biblatex style (biblatex-gb7714-2015), →II 441
 gb7714-1987ay biblatex style (biblatex-gb7714-2015),
 →II 441
 gb7714-2005 biblatex style (biblatex-gb7714-2015), →II 441
 gb7714-2005ay biblatex style (biblatex-gb7714-2015),
 →II 441
 gb7714-2015 biblatex style (biblatex-gb7714-2015), →II 441
 gb7714-2015ay biblatex style (biblatex-gb7714-2015),
 →II 441
 gb7714-2015ms biblatex style (biblatex-gb7714-2015),
 →II 441
 gb7714-2015mx biblatex style (biblatex-gb7714-2015),
 →II 441
 gb7714-CCNU biblatex style (biblatex-gb7714-2015), →II 441
 gb7714-NWAFU biblatex style (biblatex-gb7714-2015),
 →II 441
 gb7714-SEU biblatex style (biblatex-gb7714-2015), →II 441

- `\gcd` math operator $\gcd x$, →II 193
- GCL value (listings), →I 323
- `\ge` math symbol \geq , →II 194, 217
- gen size function (NFSS), →I 751
- gender BibTeX field
 - (biblatex), →II 382, 391, 560
 - (jurabib), →II 382, 391, 525f., 533
- gender information, bibliographies, →II 525, 526, 533, 560
- general value, →II 701
- generalizations, math symbols, →II 164, 165
- `\generalname` (doc), →II 597
- `\generate` (docstrip), →II 601, 602
- generic hooks, →II 674, 682f.
 - for commands, →II 676, 683
 - for environments, →II 675
 - for files, →II 677
 - for include files, →II 677
 - for packages/classes, →II 676f.
- `\genfrac` (amsmath), →II 164, 165, 261
- gentium package, →II 45, 309
- Gentium Plus fonts, description/examples, →II 45
- `\geometry` (geometry), →I 382, 412, 414
- geometry package, →I 366, 371, 373, 375, 377–384, →II 815, 979
 - combined with calc, →I 383
 - `geometry.cfg` file (geometry), →I 382
- `\geq` math symbol \geq , →II 192, 194, 217
 - (eulervm), →II 243
- `\geqq` math symbol \geq (amssymb), →II 217
- `\geqslant` math symbol \geq (amssymb), →II 217
- German
 - hyphenation, →II 311
 - index sort order, →II 354
 - quotation marks, →II 311
 - shorthands, →II 310
 - spacing after punctuations, →I 157, →II 321
- german option (babel), →II 105f., 301, 303f., 311f., 333, 354
- german value (csquotes), →I 183
- german-legal-book biblatex style (biblatex-german-legal), →II 465
- `\germanhyphenmins` (babel), →II 334
- getnonfreefonts program, →II 3, 15, 43f., 53, 71, 96, 113, 119
- `\gets` math symbol \leftarrow , →II 219
 - (old-arrows), →II 220
- GFS (Greek Font Society), →II 39, 61f., 75, 106–109, 290f.
- GFS Artemisia fonts, description/examples, →II 39, 107
- GFS Bodoni fonts, description/examples, →II 61, 107
- GFS Didot fonts, description/examples, →II 62, 108
- GFS Neo-Hellenic fonts, description/examples, →II 75, 109, 290f.
 - in math and text, →II 290f.
- gfsartemisia package, →II 39, 330
- gfsartemisia-euler package, →II 39
- gfsbaskerville package, →II 106
- gfsbodoni package, →II 8, 61
- gfscomplutum package, →II 106
- gfsdidot package, →II 62
- gfsneohellenic package, →II 75
- gfsneohellenicot package, →II 75, 290
- gfsperson package, →II 106
- gfssolomos package, →II 106
- `\gg` math symbol \gg , →II 217
- `\ggg` math symbol \ggg (amssymb), →II 217
- `\gggtr` math symbol \ggg (amssymb), →II 217
- gglo.ist file (doc), →II 588, 602
- ghostscript program, →I 688
- .gif file extension, →I 11
- `\giga` (siunitx), →I 172
- gillius package, →II 75
- Gillius fonts, description/examples, →I 695, 701, →II 75
- gillius2 package, →II 75
- `\gimel` math symbol \beth (amssymb), →II 213
- gind.ist file (doc), →II 588, 602
- Git, →II 615, 980
- git program, →II 616f.
- `\gitAbbrevHash` (gitinfo2), →II 616
- `\gitAuthorDate` (gitinfo2), →II 616
- `\gitBranch` (gitinfo2), →II 616
- `\gitCommitterEmail` (gitinfo2), →II 617
- `\gitHash` (gitinfo2), →II 617
- gitinfo2 package, →II 616f., 980
- `\gitMark` (gitinfo2), →II 616
- `\gitReln` (gitinfo2), →II 616f.
- `\gitTags` (gitinfo2), →II 616
- given key (biblatex), →II 396f.
- given-i key (biblatex), →II 397
- giveninits key/option (biblatex), →II 433, 568
- gl value (upmendex), →II 369
- .glo file extension, →I 11, →II 349
 - (doc), →II 599
- global optimization, downsides of, →I 120f.
- global options, →I 24, →II 698ff., 703, 708
- globalcitecopy option (bibunits), →II 576
- `\globalcounter` (paracol), →I 348, 350
- `\globalcounter*` (paracol), →I 348
- `\glossary`, →II 349
 - (doc), →II 588
- glossary entries, processing, →II 349
- `\glossaryentry`, →II 349
- `\GlossaryMin` rigid length (doc), →II 596
- `\glossaryname` (babel), →II 305
- `\GlossaryParms` (doc), →II 596
- `\GlossaryPrologue` (doc), →II 596
- `\glue`, →II 770f., 772
 - glyphs, *see* special characters; text symbols; math symbols
- `\gnapprox` math symbol \gtrapprox (amssymb), →II 217
- .gnd file extension, →I 11
- `\gneq` math symbol \gtr (amssymb), →II 217
- `\gneqq` math symbol \gtr (amssymb), →II 217
- `\gnsim` math symbol \gtrsim (amssymb), →II 217
- Gnuplot value (listings), →I 323
- Go value (listings), →I 323
- Go fonts, description/examples, →II 15
- Goal syntax (typed-checklist), →I 293, 294
- `\Goal` (typed-checklist), →I 293, 294
- `GoalList` syntax (typed-checklist), →I 295

- gobble key
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 306, 317
 - (listings), →I 327, 328
 - GoMono package, →II 16
 - GoSans package, →II 16
 - gost-alphabetic biblatex style (biblatex-gost), →II 441
 - gost-alphabetic-min biblatex style (biblatex-gost), →II 441
 - gost-authoryear biblatex style (biblatex-gost), →II 441
 - gost-authoryear-min biblatex style (biblatex-gost), →II 441
 - gost-footnote biblatex style (biblatex-gost), →II 441, 442
 - gost-footnote-min biblatex style (biblatex-gost), →II 441, 442
 - gost-inline biblatex style (biblatex-gost), →II 441f.
 - gost-inline-min biblatex style (biblatex-gost), →II 441f.
 - gost-numeric biblatex style (biblatex-gost), →II 441, 442
 - gost-numeric-min biblatex style (biblatex-gost), →II 441, 442
 - \gothfamily (yfonts), →II 104, 105
 - Gothic fonts, description/examples, →II 104ff.
 - graphic objects, *see also specific types of graphics* (circles, ellipses, lines, etc.)
 - alignment, →I 598, 599
 - annotating, →I 593, 594
 - clipping, →I 596
 - coloring, →I 599
 - framing, →I 597
 - manipulations, →I 595–601
 - padding, →I 598
 - presets, →I 600, 601
 - resizing, →I 589f.
 - rotating, →I 590, 591f., 593, 642
 - scaling, →I 587, 588, 596f.
 - trimming, →I 595, 596
 - graphics package, →I 534, 576–580, 582, 586–591, 614
 - error using, →II 711, 719, 721, 733, 736f., 741
 - loaded by lscape, →I 384
 - graphics, device-dependent support
 - bounding box comments, →I 577
 - device drivers, →I 577
 - draft mode, →I 577
 - final mode, →I 577
 - including image files
 - \adjustimage (adjustbox), →I 601
 - default key values, →I 585f.
 - file extension, search order, →I 586
 - file location, →I 586
 - \includegraphics (graphics), →I 578ff.
 - \includegraphics (graphicx), →I 580f., 582–585
 - require full file name, →I 587
 - rotation, →I 581
 - scaling, →I 581
 - size of image, →I 582
 - \graphicspath (graphics|graphicx), →I 586, →II 748
 - graphicx package, →I 144f., 565, 567, 576f., 580–587, 591f., 594–597, 601, 614, →II 979
 - error using, →II 711, 719, 721, 733, 736f., 741
 - \grave math accent $\grave{\text{a}}$, →II 176, 214
 - grave accent (‘), shorthand character, →II 313
 - \gray (siunitx), →I 170
 - greater than sign (>), shorthand character, →II 314
 - Greek, →II 315, 324, 328, 329ff.
 - fonts, →I 739, →II 106–110, 328
 - math symbols, →II 212
 - greek option (babel), →I 739, →II 301, 307, 315, 318f., 320, 328, 330, 796
 - Greek Font Society, *see* GFS
 - \Greeknatural (babel), →II 318
 - \greeknumeral (babel), →II 318
 - grid (tikz path operation), →I 636, 638
 - grid key
 - (lettrine), →I 144, 145
 - (overpic), →I 594
 - grid syntax (tikz), →I 638
 - \grimace text symbol ☹ (fourier-orns), →II 119
 - grmath package, →II 320
 - group_skip keyword (MakeIndex|upmendex), →II 358
 - grouping levels errors, →II 747
 - grow_to_left_by key (tcolorbox), →I 616
 - grow_to_right_by key (tcolorbox), →I 616
 - \Grtoday (babel), →II 315
 - \Gset (tlc), →I 678
 - \gtapprox math symbol \gtrapprox (amssymb), →II 217
 - \gtrdot math symbol \gtrdot (amssymb), →II 215
 - \gtreqless math symbol \gtrless (amssymb), →II 217
 - \gtreqqless math symbol \gtrless (amssymb), →II 217
 - \gtrless math symbol \gtrless (amssymb), →II 217
 - \gtrsim math symbol \gtrsim (amssymb), →II 217
 - \guillemetleft text symbol «, →I 771
 - \guillemetright text symbol », →I 771
 - guillemets, →II 311, 314
 - \guilsinglleft text symbol ‹, →I 771
 - \guilsinglright text symbol ›, →I 771
 - GuIT (Italian T_EX users group), →II 793
 - GUST (Polish T_EX users group), →I xlii, →II 793
 - gut.bib file, →II 413
 - Gutenberg (French T_EX users group), →II 793
 - \gvertneqq math symbol \gvertneqq (amssymb), →II 217
- ## H
- H syntax
 - (fancyhdr), →I 400
 - (float), →I 517, 525, 529, 530, 532, →II 741
 - (keyfloat), →I 568, 570
 - (qrcode), →I 613
 - \H text accent H , →I 770
 - h key (keyfloat), →I 569, 572f.
 - h syntax, →I 507, 509f., 514, 516f.
 - (float), →I 529
 - h value (hvfloat), →I 561, 563, 564
 - halign key
 - (keyvaltable), →I 497
 - (tcolorbox), →I 617, 621f., 629
 - halign_lower key (tcolorbox), →I 617, 619
 - halign_title key (tcolorbox), →I 617

- hanchor key (draftwatermark), →I 411
- hang option (footmisc), →I 213, 214
- hang syntax (titlesec), →I 43, 44, 47
- hang value
 - (caption), →I 541, 542
 - (subcaption), →I 554, 556
- \hangindent rigid length, →II 371
- hangindent key/option (caption), →I 542
- hanging punctuation, →I 126, 132, →II 978
- hangul_head keyword (upmendex), →II 367
- hansl value (listings), →I 323
- hanzi_head keyword (upmendex), →II 367
- har2nat package, →II 490
- HarfBuzz value (fontspec), →II 332
- harvard package, →II 420, 429, 489, 490, 494
- Harvard citation system,
 - II 384, 470, *see also* author-date citations
- \harvarditem (harvard), →II 490
- hash size errors, →II 747
- Haskell value (listings), →I 323
- \hat math accent $\hat{\cdot}$, →II 176–179, 214, 237
 - (eulervm), →II 242
- \hbadness T_EX counter, →II 755, 761, 762
- \hbar math symbol \hbar
 - (amssymb), →II 213
 - (euler|eulervm), →II 242
- \hbox, →II 660, 662, 671, 770
 - in T_EX warning message, →II 755, 757, 761f.
 - problems using, →II 624
 - problems using color, →II 671
- \hdashline (arydshln), →I 469
- \dashrule (dashrule), →II 668, 669
- \hdl (uri), →I 203
- \hdots math symbol \dots , →II 223
 - (amsmath), →II 223
- \hdotsfor (amsmath), →II 155
- head key
 - (endfloat), →I 527
 - (keyvaltable), →I 495, 501f., 504
- head value (unicodfonttable), →I 729f.
- head+foot value (unicodfonttable), →I 729
- headalign key (keyvaltable), →I 497, 504
- headbg key (keyvaltable), →I 497, 498, 502, 504
- headed lists, →I 91f., 281, 282, 283–287, 288
 - proofs, →I 282f., 288
 - QED (\square) symbol, →I 282f., 288
 - referencing, →I 285
 - style, defining, →I 283, 284–288
- headers key (keyvaltable), →I 504
- headers and footers
 - footer height, →I 373
 - formatting, *see* page styles
 - multipage tables, →I 457, 461
 - page layout, →I 378, 381
 - page styles, →I 395f.
 - dictionary type headers, →I 394
 - float pages, →I 405
 - for two-sided printing, →I 397, 400
- headers and footers (*cont.*)
 - mark commands,
 - I 388, 389, 390, 391, 392–395, 403f.
 - multiple text lines, →I 398, 399
 - named, →I 404
 - rules (graphic lines), →I 398
 - saving a customization, →I 404
 - truncating text, →I 405, 406
- page styles, customizing
 - based on floating objects, →I 405
 - by page style, →I 393ff., 399ff., 402ff.
 - globally, →I 398f.
 - width, →I 400, 401
- running headers/footers, →I 378, 381
- \headfamily (tlc/fontspec), →I 711, 722
- headfont key (thmtools), →I 288
- headformat key (keyvaltable), →I 497, 498f., 503f.
- \headheight rigid length, →I 367, 369f.
 - (fancyhdr), →I 398, 399
- headheight key/option (geometry), →I 377, 381
- headinclude key/option (typearea), →I 376, 378
- headindent key (thmtools), →I 288
- heading key
 - (acro), →I 162, 163
 - (biblatex), →II 435, 550, 551, 554, 558f.
 - (thmtools), →I 284
- heading value (tlc/keyvaltable), →I 497
- heading_prefix keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex),
 - II 359, 360
- heading_suffix keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex),
 - II 359, 360
- \headingdesign (layouts), →I 374
- \headingdiagram (layouts), →I 374
- headings, *see also* titlesec package
 - alignment, →I 40
 - alphabetically numbered, →I 35
 - and layout definitions, →I 53
 - at page bottom, →I 46
 - bibliographic citations in, →II 483
 - breaking before, →I 48
 - conditional layouts, →I 48, 49
 - counter, advancing, →I 53f.
 - formatting, →I 51–54
 - box around number, →I 36
 - complex headings, →I 53
 - depth level, →I 51
 - display format, →I 37, 52
 - formatting numbers, →I 40, 41
 - heading counter, →I 51
 - hyphenation, →I 41
 - indentation, after heading, →I 39, 42
 - indentation, of the heading, →I 44, 51
 - indentation, suppressing, →I 39, 44
 - justification, →I 41
 - label format, →I 43
 - leaders, →I 47
 - line breaks, →I 41
 - predefined text, →I 36, 37

- headings (*cont.*)
 - redefinition, →I 53f.
 - rules, →I 47
 - run-in format, →I 37, 52
 - shape, →I 43
 - space before/after, →I 51f.
 - text style, →I 40, 41f., 52f.
 - unusual layouts, →I 46
 - hierarchy, changing, →I 50, 51
 - line breaks, →I 41
 - mottos (quotations), on chapters or sections, →I 38, 39
 - nesting, →I 34
 - numbering, →I 34, 35f.
 - arabic numbers, →I 35
 - capital letters, →I 35
 - formatting numbers, →I 40, 41
 - referencing subsections, →I 35, 36
 - suppressing numbers, →I 33, 34
 - reserved space, →I 45
 - spacing
 - above/below, →I 44, 48
 - before/after, →I 51f.
 - consecutive headings, →I 45
 - font size and, →I 45
 - label and title text, →I 43
 - left margin, →I 44
 - right margin, →I 44
 - tools for, →I 45
 - vertical, →I 40
 - splitting, →I 33
 - suppressing, →I 374
 - title width, measuring, →I 46
 - headings page style, →I 396, 418f.
 - headings_flag keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 359, 360
 - headlike key (keyvaltable), →I 496
 - headlines key/option (typearea), →I 376
 - headpunct key (thmtools), →I 288
 - \headrule (fancyhdr), →I 398, 399, 401
 - \headrulewidth (fancyhdr), →I 398, 400, 402, 404f., →II 118
 - heads option (endfloat), →I 526
 - \headsep rigid length, →I 367, 369, 370, 372, →II 770
 - headsep key/option (geometry), →I 381
 - \headtoname (babel), →II 305
 - \headwidth rigid length (fancyhdr), →I 401, 406
 - \heartsuit math symbol ♥, →II 213
 - heavy option (*various font packages*), →II 8
 - heavycircles option (stmaryrd), →II 216
 - \heavyrulewidth rigid length (booktabs), →I 472
 - Hebrew, →II 332, 341
 - hebrew option (babel), →II 301
 - \hectare (siunitx), →I 171
 - \hecto (siunitx), →I 172
 - \Height (adjustbox), →I 596, 597
 - height, *see* space parameters
 - \height, →II 661, 662, 666
 - (adjustbox), →I 596
 - (graphics|graphicx), →I 589
 - height key
 - (adjustbox), →I 596
 - (diagbox), →I 479, 480, 481
 - (graphicx), →I 565, 581, 583, 584, 585
 - error using, →II 721
 - (qrcode), →I 612f.
 - (tcolorbox), →I 616, 618, 630
 - height key/option
 - (crop), →I 412
 - (geometry), →I 379, 380, 382
 - height syntax
 - (rules), →I 401, →II 668, 669
 - (tikz), →I 634
 - \heightof (calc), →II 688
 - heightrounded key/option (geometry), →I 378, 379
 - \help (nfssfont.tex), →I 705
 - help option (getnonfreefonts), →II 3
 - help resources, →II 783–792
 - contributing, →II 792f.
 - CTAN, →II 789f.
 - contents, →II 790
 - distributions, →II 790f.
 - DVD images, T_EX Live, →II 791
 - FAQs, →II 787f.
 - Learn L^AT_EX website, →II 784
 - news groups, →II 788
 - packages
 - descriptions, online catalogue, →II 787, 790
 - documentation, finding, →II 785ff.
 - search paths, →II 785f.
 - program files, obtaining
 - from the Internet, →II 790f.
 - old versions, →II 791
 - question/answer forums, →II 788f.
 - TeX FAQ, →II 787f.
 - texdoc program, →II 786f.
 - T_EX Live, DVD images, →II 791
 - TUG home page, →II 793
 - user groups, →II 793
- helvet *obsolete* package, →I 691, *see instead* tgheros package
 - helvetica value (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 304, 305
 - Helvetica fonts, description/examples, →I 714, →II 76
 - \henry (siunitx), →I 170, 173
 - here *obsolete* package, →I 532, *see instead* float package
 - Heros fonts, description/examples, →I 714, →II 76
 - \hertz (siunitx), →I 170
 - hetarom package, →I 612
 - heuristica package, →II 58, 283
 - Heuristica fonts, description/examples, →II 58
 - hex-digits key (unicodefonttable), →I 729, 730
 - hex-digits-row-format key (unicodefonttable), →I 729, 730
 - \Hexadecimal (fmtcount), →II 650
 - \hexadecimal (fmtcount), →II 650
 - \Hexadecimalnum (fmtcount), →II 650
 - \hexadecimalnum (fmtcount), →II 650
 - \hfil, →I 397, →II 142, 631, 632, 653
 - \hfill, →II 653, 654, 661, 663

- `\hfuzz` rigid length, →II 774
- `hfuzz` key (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 307
- `\hhline` (hhline), →I 470, 471
 - colored, →I 468
 - hhline package, →I 467f., 470f.
- hidden key (keyvaltable), →I 495f., 497, 498ff.
- hidden value (typed-checklist), →I 293
- hidelinks key/option (hyperref), →I 102
- `\hidereel` (breqn), →II 148
- hiderotate option (graphics|graphicx), →I 577
- hidescale option (graphics|graphicx), →I 577
- `\highlight` (changes), →I 245, 246f., 250
- `highlight` value (changes), →I 247
- `highlightcolor` key (fvextra), →I 311, 312
- highlighting
 - paragraphs, →I 251
 - text, →I 189f., 194f., *see also* `\emph`; underlining
 - typed text, →I 312
- `highlightlines` key (fvextra), →I 311, 312
- `highlightmarkup` option (changes), →I 248
- hindi option (babel), →II 332
- hiresbb key/option (graphicx), →I 577, 581
- hiresbb option (graphics), →I 577
- hist OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 725
- Historic value (fontspec), →I 720, 721, 725
- historical fonts, →II 97–106
- historische-zeitschrift biblatex style
 - (historische-zeitschrift), →II 460
- history commands (doc), list of, →II 596
- history of
 - citation systems, →II 470, 489f.
 - fonts
 - Didone (modern), →II 60
 - Egyptian (slap serif), →II 64f.
 - Geralde (oldstyle), →II 38f.
 - historical, →II 97
 - humanist (oldstyle), →II 36
 - transitional/neoclassical, →II 46
 - Unicode math fonts, →II 253
- hyperref, →I 96
- LaTeX, →I 1–8
 - documentation (literate programming), →II 584
 - extended math support, →II 128, 253
 - font support, →I 648f., 684–688
 - graphic support, →I 575f., 602, 608f.
 - input and output encodings, →I 649–685, 694f.
 - multilingual support, →II 297ff.
- TeX, →I 1f.
 - extensions, →I 8f., 652
- hkna OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 725
- `\hl` (soul), →I 194, 195, 198
- hlig OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 720, 721
- `\hline`, →I 437, 438, 440–443, 446f., 468, 469, 470f., 474, 476–479, 484
 - alignment problems with, →I 444
 - colored, →I 468
 - error using, →II 731
 - (array), →I 444
- `\hline` (*cont.*)
 - (booktabs), →I 471
 - (cellspace), →I 475
 - (supertabular), →I 457
- `\hlineB` (boldline), →I 468
- hmargin key/option (geometry), →I 381
- hmarginratio key/option (geometry), →I 366, 379, 380, 381
- `\Hmjd` (tlc), →II 203
 - hmode boolean, →II 691
- `\hodiau` (babel), →II 315
- `\hodiaun` (babel), →II 315
- `\hoffset` rigid length, →I 368, 381
- `hoffset` key/option (geometry), →I 381
- `\hom` math operator `hom x`, →II 193
- hook key (tikz-cd), →II 162, 163
- hook management, →II 671–685
 - adding/removing hook code, →II 672, 673
 - declaring hooks, →II 681
 - document env. hooks, →II 678, 679
 - execute once, →II 673
 - generic hooks, →II 674, 682f.
 - for commands, →II 676, 683
 - for environments, →II 675
 - for files, →II 677
 - for include files, →II 677
 - for packages/classes, →II 676f.
 - hook rules, →II 683, 684, 685
 - listing hook data, →II 674, 675
 - normal hooks, →II 673
 - one-time hooks, →II 673, 677
 - reordering code, →II 683, 684, 685
 - reversed hooks, →II 673
- `\shipout` hooks, →II 680, 681
 - top-level code, →II 672, 685
 - using hooks, →II 682
- `\hookleftarrow` math symbol \leftrightarrow , →II 219, 221, 566
- `\hookrightarrow` math symbol \rightarrow , →II 219
 - (old-arrows), →II 220
- HorizontalKana value (fontspec), →I 725
- horizontal extensions, math symbols, →II 182, 183–191
- `\hour` (siunitx), →I 169, 171, 175ff.
- howcited BibTeX field (jurabib), →II 514, 533
- howcited key/option
 - (biblatex-jura2), →II 536
 - (jurabib), →II 513, 514, 533
- `\howcitedprefix` (jurabib), →II 514
- `\howcitedsuffix` (jurabib), →II 514
- howpublished BibTeX field, →II 386, 388, 390, 391
- `\hphantom`, →II 200
- hpos key (draftwatermark), →I 410
- `\HR` (tlc), →I 578, 579f., 582–585, 589f., →II 655, 664ff.
- hr value (upmendex), →II 369
- hr@collation=search value (upmendex), →II 369
- `\href` (hyperref), →I 99, 100, 101, 108, 624
 - href/protocol key (hyperref), →I 100
 - href/urlencode key (hyperref), →I 100
- `\hrefpdf` (hyperref), →I 99, 100
- `\hrefrun` (hyperref), →I 99, 100

- `\hrefurl` (hyperref), →I 99, **100**, 102
 - `\hrule`, →I 208, 273, 274, 401, 471, →II **668**
 - `\hrulefill`, →I 63*f.*, 434, →II **653**, 654
 - `hscale` key/option (geometry), →I **379**, 380, 382
 - `\hsize` rigid length
 - (diagbox), →I 481
 - (tabularx), →I 449*f.*
 - `\hskip`, in hyperref warning message, →II 762
 - `hskip` key (thmtools), →I 286
 - `\hslash` math symbol \hbar
 - (amssymb), →II 213
 - (euler|eulervm), →II 242
 - `\hspace`, →I 257, →II 159, 205, 238, 479, **653**, 654, 661
 - allowing hyphenation, →I 233, 442*f.*, 446*f.*
 - error using, →II 727
 - `\hspace*`, →I 187, →II 630, 631, 637, **654**
 - HTML value (listings), →I 323
 - `.html` file extension (hyperref), →I 101
 - `hu` value (upmendex), →II 369
 - `\Huge`, →I 665*f.*
 - `\huge`, →I 260, **665*f.***
 - `huge` syntax (enumitem), →I 280
 - humanbio Bib_T_EX style, →II 421
 - humanist fonts, →II 36*f.*
 - humannat Bib_T_EX style, →II 421
 - hungarian option (babel), →II 313
 - `\hvDefFloatStyle` (hvfloat), →I 561, **563**, 564
 - `\hvFloat` (hvfloat), →I **560**, 561, 562–565, **566**, 567
 - hvfloat package, →I **560–567**, →II 815
 - combined with float, →I 562
 - `\hvFloatSet` (hvfloat), →I **562**, 563*f.*
 - `\hvFloatSetDefaults` (hvfloat), →I 562
 - `\hybridblockquote` (csquotes), →I 185
 - `\hybridblockquote*` (csquotes), →I 185
 - `hycap` key/option
 - (caption), →I 546
 - (subcaption), →I 555
 - `hycapSPACE` key/option (caption), →I 546
 - `hyperfootnotes` option (hyperref), →I 98
 - `hyperindex` option (hyperref), →I 98
 - `\hyperlink` (hyperref), →I **97**, 625
 - `hyperlink` key (tcolorbox), →I **624**, 625
 - `hyperlink` interior key (tcolorbox), →I 625
 - `hyperlink` title key (tcolorbox), →I 625
 - `hyperlinking` cross-references, →I 88, 90, **96**, 97–108
 - appendices, →I 98, 99
 - bibliographies, →I 98
 - external links, →I 99, 100*f.*, 102
 - footnotes, →I 98
 - highlighting, →I 102*f.*
 - internal links, →I 97
 - tables of contents, →I 97*f.*
 - `\hyperref` (hyperref), →I 97
 - `hyperref` key (tcolorbox), →I 624
 - `hyperref` key/option (doc), →II 589
 - `hyperref` package, →I 8, 24, 56, 72, 79*f.*, 85*f.*, 88, 93, 95, **96–108**, 163, 201*f.*, 204, 216, 218, 231, 332, 463, 546, 551, 613, 624*f.*, →II 474, 490, 570, 589, 647, 684, 758*f.*, 761*f.*, 812, 979
 - `hyperref.cfg` file (hyperref), →I 96
 - `hyperref` interior key (tcolorbox), →I 625
 - `hyperref` title key (tcolorbox), →I 625
 - `\hypersetup` (hyperref), →I **96**, 99*f.*, 102*f.*, 106, 107
 - `\hypertarget` (hyperref), →I **97**, 106, 624
 - `hypertarget` key (tcolorbox), →I 625
 - `hyperurl` key (tcolorbox), →I **624**, 625
 - `hyperurl*` key (tcolorbox), →I 624
 - `hyperurl` interior key (tcolorbox), →I 625
 - `hyperurl` title key (tcolorbox), →I 625
 - `hyph-utf8` package, →II 338
 - `\Hyphdash` (extdash), →I 150
 - `hyphen` value (biblatex), →II 392
 - `hyphen` (–), →I 149*f.*
 - nonbreaking, →I **150**, 199
 - `hyphenate` option
 - (inconsolata), →II 92
 - (truncate), →I 406
 - `hyphenation`, →I 694
 - character, defining, →I 744
 - cultural aspects, →II 300
 - defining dynamically, →II 300
 - headings, →I 41
 - in multiple languages, →II 304, **337*f.***
 - in tables, →I 442
 - issues with, →I 694
 - language aspects, →II 299, 319
 - patterns, adjusting, →II 333*f.*
 - patterns, applying, →II 303
 - preventing, →II 303
 - special rules, →II 311*f.*
 - troubleshooting, →II 774*f.*, 776
 - `\hyphenation`, →II **774**, 775*f.*
 - error using, →II 726, 727, 734, 746
 - `\hyphenblockquote` (csquotes), →I 184
 - `\hyphenblockquote*` (csquotes), →I 184
 - `HyphenChar` key (fontspec), →I **715**, 728
 - `\hyphenchar`, →I 741, **744**, 747
 - `hyphendisplayquote` env. (csquotes), →I 184
 - `\hyphenpenalty` T_EX counter, →II 777
 - `\hyphenquote` (csquotes), →I 184
 - `\hyphenquote*` (csquotes), →I 184
 - `hyphenrules` env. (babel), →I 184, →II **303**
 - `hyphenrules` key (babel), →II 333
 - `hyphens` key/option (widows-and-orphans), →I 426
 - `hyphens` option (url), →I 200
 - `\hyphentextquote` (csquotes), →I **184**, 185
 - `\hyphentextquote*` (csquotes), →I 184
 - `hz` algorithm, →I 127
- ## I
- ### I syntax
- (enumitem|enumerate), →I 275
 - (tlc|boldline), →I 468

- I syntax (*cont.*)
 - (wrapfig), →I 536
- \i text symbol i, →I 771
 - problems in tikz's \foreach, →I 644
 - (tipa), →II 126
- i syntax
 - (enumitem|enumerate), →I 275, 276
 - (siunitx), →I 172
 - (wrapfig), →I 536
- \Iac (acro), →I 158
- \iac (acro), →I 158
- \Iaca (acro), →I 158
- \iaca (acro), →I 158
- \Iacf (acro), →I 158
- \iacf (acro), →I 158
- \Iacl (acro), →I 158
- \iac1 (acro), →I 158
- \Iacs (acro), →I 158
- \iacs (acro), →I 158
- ibidem key/option (jurabib), →II 518, 519, 520ff., 525
- ibidem value (jurabib), →II 425, 526, 530, 531
- ibidem citations, →II 435, 437, 444, 446, 453, 473, 519–522, 525, 530, 531, 535, 540f.
- ibidemalt value (jurabib), →II 531
- \ibidemmidname (jurabib), →II 525
- \ibidemname (jurabib), →II 525
- ibidpage key/option (biblatex), →II 540
- \ibinom (tlc/amsmath), →II 261f.
- IBM Plex fonts, description/examples, →I 720, 739, →II 30
- icelandic option (babel), →II 301, 319
- icelandic.utf8old option (babel), →II 323
- icu_attributes keyword (upmendex), →II 366, 367, 368, 370
- icu_locale keyword (upmendex), →II 328, 365f., 367, 368
- icu_rules keyword (upmendex), →II 367, 370
- id key (changes), →I 246, 247ff.
- id value (changes), →I 248
- \iddots math symbol \cdots (mathdots), →II 182
- idem key/option (jurabib), →II 521, 522, 526
- \idemPfname (jurabib), →II 526
- \idemPfname (jurabib), →II 526
- \idemPmname (jurabib), →II 526
- \idemPmname (jurabib), →II 526
- \idemPnname (jurabib), →II 526
- \idemPnname (jurabib), →II 526
- \idemSfname (jurabib), →II 526
- \idemSfname (jurabib), →II 526
- \idemSmname (jurabib), →II 526
- \idemSmname (jurabib), →II 526
- \idemSnnname (jurabib), →II 526
- \idemSnnname (jurabib), →II 526
- identification part (*classes and packages*), →II 696f.
- identifierstyle key (listings), →I 324
- IDL value (listings), →I 323
- \idotsint math symbol $\int\!\!\!\cdot$ (amsmath), →II 168, 169
- (esint), →II 169
- (wasysym), →II 169, 170
- .idx file extension, →I 111f., →II 344, 346, 351, 363
- errors when reading, →II 355f.
- (babel), →II 328
- (doc), →II 594, 599
- (index), →II 372f.
- idxgroup key (doc), →II 592, 593
- \idxitem (tlc), →I 394
- idxmark syntax (tlc), →I 394
- idxtype key (doc), →II 592, 593
- \ie (tlc/xspace), →I 153
- ieee biblatex style (biblatex-ieee), →II 457
- ieee-alphabetic biblatex style (biblatex-ieee), →II 457
- ieeetr Bib_{La}T_EX style, →II 421
- \If (algpseudocode), →I 322
- if_odd_page key (tclobox), →I 625
- if_odd_page_or_oneside key (tclobox), →I 625
- \ifAlaTeX (iftex), →II 687
- \ifblank (csquotes), →I 186, 188
- \IfBlankF, →II 640
- \IfBlankT, →II 640
- \IfBlankTF, →II 640
- \IfBooleanF, →II 640
- \IfBooleanT, →II 640
- \IfBooleanTF, →II 634, 635, 640, 644f.
- error using, →II 728
- not usable with legacy switches, →II 691
- \ifbottomfloat (fancyhdr), →I 405
- \ifcase, →II 723
- \ifciteindex (biblatex), →II 546
- \ifciteseen (biblatex), →II 502
- \IfClassAtLeastTF, →II 707, 708
- \IfClassLoadedTF, →II 708
- \IfClassLoadedWithOptionsTF, →II 708
- \ifdim, error using, →II 732
- \ifeTeX (iftex), →II 687
- iftex *obsolete* package, →II 686, *see instead* iftex package
- \iff math symbol \iff , →II 179, 183, 219
- \iffalse (doc), →II 585
- \iffieldint (biblatex), →II 554
- \IfFileExists, →II 705
- \iffloatpage (fancyhdr), →I 405
- \IfFontSeriesContextTF, →I 674
- \iffootnote (fancyhdr), →I 405
- \IfFormatAtLeastTF, →II 707, 708
- \IfIsAnonymous (changes), →I 249
- \IfIsAuthorEmptyAtPosition (changes), →I 249
- \IfIsColored (changes), →I 249
- \IfIsEmpty (changes), →I 249
- \IfIsInList (changes), →I 249
- iflang package, →II 304
- \iflanguage (babel), →II 304
- \ifLuaHBTeX (iftex), →II 686
- \ifLuaTeX (iftex), →II 686
- ifluatex *obsolete* package, →II 686, *see instead* iftex package
- \IfMarksEqualTF, →I 392, 393, 394
- ifneeded value (changes), →I 250
- \IfNoMarkTF (tlc), →I 393
- \IfNotBooleanTF (tlc), →II 644

`\IfNoValueF`, –I 606, –II 639
`\IfNoValueT`, –II 639
`\IfNoValueTF`, –II 639, 640
`\ifnum`, error using, –II 732
`\ifnumgreater` (etoolbox), –II 567f.
`\ifnumless` (etoolbox), –II 554
`\IfPackageAtLeastTF`, –II 707, 708
`\IfPackageLoadedTF`, –II 708
`\IfPackageLoadedWithOptionsTF`, –II 708
`\ifpdf` (iftex), –II 687
`\ifPDFTeX` (iftex), –II 686
`\ifpdfTeX` (iftex), –II 686
`\ifpTeX` (iftex), –II 687
`iftex` package, –II 686f.
`\ifpTeXng` (iftex), –II 687
`\iftagged` (tagging), –I 31
`iftex` package, –II 685ff.
`\iftextpunct` (csquotes), –I 188
`ifthen` package, –II 685, 689–693
`\ifthenelse` (ifthen), –I 78, 306, 371, 540,
–II 371, 476, 689, 690–693, 709, 716, 723
comparing numbers, –II 648, 690
error using, –II 731, 732
`\iftitlemeasuring` (titlesec), –I 47
`\iftopfloat` (fancyhdr), –I 405
`\ifToplevel` (docstrip), –II 603
`\ifTUTeX` (iftex), –II 686
`\ifupTeX` (iftex), –II 687
`\IfValueF`, –II 639
`\IfValueT`, –II 639
`\IfValueTF`, –I 249, 730, –II 639
`\ifVTeX` (iftex), –II 687
`iftex` *obsolete* package, –II 686, *see instead* `iftex` package
`\ifx`, –II 602
`\ifXeTeX` (iftex), –II 686
`ifxetex` *obsolete* package, –II 686, *see instead* `iftex` package
`ignore` value (acro), –I 163
`ignoreall` key (thmtools), –I 287
`ignored` fields, bibliography database, –II 385
`IgnoreFontspecFile` key (fontspec), –I 710
`ignorehead` key/option (geometry), –I 381
`ignoremp` key/option (geometry), –I 382
`\ignorespaces`, –I 260, 261, 276, –II 119, 678
`\iiint` math symbol \iiint
(amsmath), –II 168, 169, 261–296
(esint), –II 169
(newtxmath|newpxmath), –II 244, 249
(wasysym), –II 169, 170
`\iiiintsl` math symbol \iiint (newtxmath|newpxmath),
–II 245
`\iiiintup` math symbol \iiint (newtxmath|newpxmath),
–II 245, 249
`\iint` math symbol \iint
(amsmath), –II 168, 169, 261–296
(esint), –II 169
(newtxmath|newpxmath), –II 244, 249
(wasysym), –II 170
`\iintsl` math symbol \iint (newtxmath|newpxmath),
–II 245, 249
`\iintup` math symbol \iint (newtxmath|newpxmath),
–II 245, 249
`ijsra` biblatex style (biblatex-ijsra), –II 457, 458
`.ilg` file extension (*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), –I 11f.,
–II 344, 351, 355, 356
`\Im` math symbol \Im , –II 137, 213
`image` key (lettrine), –I 144
`image` files, including, –I 578–585, 601
file extension, search order, –I 586
file location, –I 586
require full file name, –I 587
rotation, –I 581
scaling, –I 581
size of image, –I 582
`\imath` math symbol \imath , –II 177, 213
`imfell` English package, –II 99
`\immediate`, –II 679
`\in` math symbol \in ,
–II 135, 137, 174, 194, 216, 218, 226, 228, 262–296
`in` key (tikz), –I 638
`in` syntax
(*unit*), –II 652
(tikz|pgffor), –I 644, 645
`in` value (jurabib), –II 509, 515
`inbook` BibTeX entry type, –II 383, 386, 387, 389, 406, 534
`\include`, –I 28, 29, 71, 110, –II 409, 570, 598, 749, 751
error using, –II 727
hooks for, –II 677
packages that fail with, –I 30
problems with TOC entries, –I 71
warning using, –II 756
(*askinclude*), –I 30
(*chapterbib*), –II 571f.
(*index*), –II 373
`include` key (acro), –I 162
`include/⟨name⟩/after` hook, –II 677
`include/⟨name⟩/before` hook, –II 677
`include/⟨name⟩/end` hook, –II 677
`include/⟨name⟩/excluded` hook, –II 677, 678
`include/after` hook, –II 677
`include/before` hook, –II 677
`include/end` hook, –II 677
`include/excluded` hook, –II 677, 678
`includeall` key/option (geometry), –I 378, 382
`includedisplayed` option (enumitem), –I 266
`includefoot` key/option (geometry), –I 378
`\includegraphics`
error using, –II 719, 721
graphics not found, –II 723

- `\includegraphics` (*cont.*)
 - (adjustbox), →I 601
 - (graphics), →I 12, 110, 578, 579f., 586f.
 - (graphicx), →I 12, 110, 144, 412ff., 562ff., 565, 566f., 568, 571, 577, 580, 582–585, 586f., 594f., 597, 601, 628f., →II 680
- `\includegraphics*` (graphics), →I 578, 579
- `includehead` key/option (geometry), →I 377, 378
- `includeheadfoot` key/option (geometry), →I 378
- `includeemp` key/option (geometry), →I 377, 378, 381
- `\includeonly`, →I 29, 30, →II 373, 677f., 758
 - (askinclude), →I 30
- including files
 - candidates for, →I 29
 - image files, *see* image files, including
 - partial document reformatting, →I 29
 - reasons for, →I 29
 - source documentation, →II 598
- inclusion and sets, math symbols, →II 218
- inclusion and sets—negated, math symbols, →II 218
- `incollecion` B^BT_EX entry type, →II 386, 389, 534
- `incompatible-error` syntax, →II 684, 742
- `incompatible-warning` syntax, →II 684, 742
- `incomplete` syntax (typed-checklist), →I 294
- `inconsolata` package, →II 92
- `Inconsolata` fonts, description/examples, →II 92
- incrementing counters, →II 647, 648
- `.ind` file extension, →I 9, 11f., →II 354
 - (*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 344, 351, 355
 - errors when writing, →II 356
 - (index), →II 373
- `indent` key/option (parskip), →I 139
- `indent_length` keyword (*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 358
- `indent_space` keyword (*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 358
- `indentafter` option
 - (parnotes), →I 227
 - (titlesec), →I 42
- indentation
 - after headings, →I 39, 42, →II 321
 - bibliographies, →II 529, 530
 - code listings, →I 326f., 328f.
 - of headings, →I 44, 51
 - suppressing, →I 39, 44
 - of paragraphs, →I 137ff.
 - tables of contents, →I 60, 73
 - typed text, removing, →I 306, 307
- `indentfirst` package, →I 40, →II 321
- `indentation` key/option (caption), →I 542, 549, 563f.
- independent footnotes, →I 220f., 222–226
- `\Index` (tlc), →II 349
- `\index`, →I 666, →II 344f., 346, 347–350, 351, 362f., 365, 594
 - (index), →II 373
 - (tocdata), →I 57f.
- `index` key (fixme), →I 244
- `index` package, →II 363, 372ff., 490, 799
- index commands, list of (doc), →II 596
- index generation
 - author indexes, →II 372
- index generation (*cont.*)
 - automatic indexing, disabling, →II 588
 - bibliographic citations, →II 546
 - indexing automatically, →II 498, 512
 - blanks in entries, →II 346, 351, 363f.
 - case sensitivity, →II 346
 - citations, indexing automatically, →II 498, 512, 546
 - column breaks, →II 372
 - commands, indexing automatically, →II 588, 599
 - cross-references, creating, →II 347
 - Cyrillic alphabet, →II 327
 - entries
 - blanks in, →II 346, 351, 363f.
 - creating automatically, →II 588, 599
 - printing in margin, →II 372
 - sorting, →II 588
 - error messages
 - list of (*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 355f.
 - list of (*upmendex* only), →II 365f.
 - suppressing, →II 354, 364
 - file types, →I 12
 - formatting
 - page numbers, →II 347f.
 - with \LaTeX , →II 371f., 374
 - with *MakeIndex*, →II 350–364
 - with *upmendex*, →II 364–370
 - generating formatted index
 - MakeIndex*, →II 351
 - upmendex*, →II 364f.
 - generating raw index, →II 345
 - German words, sort order, →II 354
 - glossary entries, processing, →II 349
 - ICU attributes, →II 369
 - ICU rules, →II 370
 - index heading in tables of contents, →I 56
 - index level separator, →II 347
 - `indxcite` package, →II 372
 - input files, specifying, →II 354, 364
 - input style parameters, →II 357
 - Japanese words, sort order, →II 365
 - \LaTeX commands, indexing, →II 350
 - leader dots, →II 361
 - leading blanks, →II 346, 351, 363f.
 - letter groups, →II 360
 - letter-by-letter sort order, →II 354, 364
 - macros, indexing automatically, →II 588, 599
 - messages, suppressing, →II 354, 364
 - multiple indices, →II 372ff.
 - output files, specifying, →II 354, 364
 - output style parameters, →II 358f., 367, 369
 - page breaks, →II 372
 - page numbers
 - composed (folio-by-chapter), →II 362
 - duplicates, →II 346
 - encapsulating, →II 348
 - formatting, →II 347f.
 - MakeIndex*|*upmendex*, →II 362
 - roman numerals, →II 363

- index generation (*cont.*)
 - sort order, →II 354, [362](#), 364
 - page ranges, disabling, →II 355, 364
 - process flow, →II 344
 - progress messages, suppressing, →II 354, 364
 - quiet mode, →II 354, 364
 - repeatindex package, →II 372
 - roman numerals, sort order, →II 363
 - showidx package, →II 372
 - sort order
 - by locale, →II 355, 366ff.
 - German words, →II 354
 - ICU attributes, →II 368ff.
 - Japanese words, →II 365
 - letter-by-letter, →II 354, 364
 - page numbers, →II 354, [362](#), 364
 - roman numerals, →II 363
 - spaces, →II 363
 - symbols, →II 363
 - Thai, →II 355
 - troubleshooting, →II 362f.
 - spaces
 - compressing, →II [346](#), 351, 363f.
 - sort order, →II 363
 - special characters, →II [348f.](#), 350, 359f.
 - stand-alone indices, →II 357ff.
 - standard input/output files, →II 354, 364
 - starting page number, setting, →II 354, 359, 364
 - style files
 - MakeIndex*|upmendex, →II 356–362, 364
 - specifying, →II 355, 364
 - upmendex specific, →II 366–370
 - subentries, →II 347
 - symbols, sort order, →II 363
 - tables of contents support, →II 372
 - Thai support, →II 355
 - tocbibind package, →II 372
 - trailing blanks, →II [346](#), 351, 363f.
 - transcript file, specifying, →II 355, 364
 - troubleshooting, →II 362f.
 - user commands, defining, →II 349f.
- index level separator, →II 347
- `\index*` (index), →II 373
 - indexed value (jurabib), →II 512
- `\indexentry`, →II 345, 349, [357](#), 594
 - (natbib), →II 498
 - indexing key/option (biblatex), →II 546
- `\IndexInput` (doc), →II [589](#), 595
- `\IndexMin` rigid length (doc), →II 596
- `\indexname`, →I [37](#), →II 352, 371f.
 - (babel), →II [305](#), 307
- `\indexnames` (biblatex), →II 546
- `\IndexParms` (doc), →II 596
- `\IndexPrologue` (doc), →II 596
- `\indexproofstyle` (index), →II 373
- `\indexspace`, →I 58
 - indextitle B_WTeX field (biblatex), →II 383
- `\indextt` (tlc), →II 349
- Indic scripts, →II 331, 332, 341
- indonesian option (babel), →II 301
- indxcite package, →II 372
- inenum env. (tlc/enumitem), →I 277
- `\inf` math operator $\inf x$, →II 167, [193](#)
 - Inferior value (fontspec), →I [718](#), 719
- `\infigures` (*various font packages*), →II 9
- info value (widows-and-orphans), →I 425
- inform value (listings), →I 323
- informational messages,
 - II 749–765, *see also* troubleshooting
- infoshow option
 - (multicol), →I 360
 - (tlc), →II 698
 - (tracefmt), →I 704
- `\infty` math symbol ∞ ,
 - II 166f., 192, 194, [213](#), 235, 262–296
- ingredients env. (tlc/enumitem), →I 267
- .ini file extension (babel), →I [11](#),
 - II 299, 308, [332](#), 334, [340](#), 744
- `\init` (nfssfont.tex), →I 705
 - init value (biblatex), →II 549
- initex program, →II 338
- `\initfamily` (yfonts), →II 106
- initial code part (*classes and packages*), →II 697
- initials, paragraphs with, →I [141–145](#), →II 104, 105f.
- `\injl` math operator $\text{injlim } x$ (amsmath), →II 193
- lnkscape program, →I 645
- inline key
 - (fixme), →I 243, 244
 - (todonotes), →I [240](#), →II 645
- inline option (enumitem), →I 231, [262](#), 263
- inline syntax (tlc/enotez), →I 231
- inline value (biblatex), →II 545
- inline lists
 - configurations, →I 277
 - description, →I 262, 277
 - enumerated, →I 262, 277
 - itemized, →I 262, 277
- inner key (adjustbox), →I 599
- inner key/option (geometry), →I 379
- inner value (hvfloat), →I 561
- inner_Usep key (tikz), →I 642, 645
- innerbox key (empheq), →II 175
- innerleftsep key (diagbox), →I 480
- innerrightsep key (diagbox), →I 480
- innerwidth key (diagbox), →I [480](#), 481
- `\inplus` math symbol \in (stmaryrd), →II 218
 - inproceedings B_WTeX entry type, →II 382, [386](#), 561, 568
- `\input`, →I [28](#), 29, 109f., →II 598, 601, 705, 731, 749
 - error using, →II 723, 731
 - hooks for, →II 677
 - problems in tabular-like environments, →I 29, 499
 - (docstrip), →II 601, 603
- input value (siunitx), →I 174
- input encoding, →I [649](#), [650ff.](#), 692, 693, 758f.
- input files
 - indexes, →II 354, 364

- input files (*cont.*)
 - source files, →I 10
 - specifying (docstrip), →II 601f.
- input style parameters, indexes, →II 357
- input-dates key (typed-checklist), →I 294, 295
- input-decimal-markers key (siunitx), →I 173
- input-ignore key (siunitx), →I 173
- inputenc package, →I 10, 331, 650ff., **692f.**, 758, **759**, →II 327
 - error using, →II 711, 729
- \inputencoding (inputenc), →I **692**, →II 327
- \InputIfFileExists, →II 698, **705**, 706
- Inria fonts, description/examples, →I 726, →II **16**
- InriaSans package, →II 16
- InriaSerif package, →II 16
- .ins file extension (docstrip), →I **11**, →II 584, 600, 607f.
- \insert, →II 747
- \InsertMark, →I **391**, 392, 394f., 411
 - error using, →II 742
- install keyword (l3build), →II 607f.
- install-getnonfreefonts program, →II 3
- installfiles key (l3build), →II 613
- institution BibTeX field, →II 386f., **388**
- \int math symbol \int , →II 136, 147, 169, 174, 199, **222**
 - colored, →II 208
 - sub/superscript placement on, →II 166f.
 - (esint), →II 169
 - (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II **244**, 249
- integer calculations, →II 659
- integral signs, multiple, →II 168ff.
- integrals option (wasysym), →II **117**, **169**, 170
- inter-unit-product key (siunitx), →I 175
- \intercal math symbol \intercal (amssymb), →II 215
- intercolor key/option (fancypar), →I 147
- interheight key/option (fancypar), →I 147
- interior_hhidden key (tcolorbox), →I 623
- interior_ustyle key (tcolorbox), →I 619
- \interleave math symbol \interleave (stmaryd), →II 215
- interlingua option (babel), →II 301
- internal files, →I 10
- internal tables, overflowing, →II 746–749
- \InternalFunctionWithThreeArguments (tlc), →II 643
- \internallinenumbers (lineno), →I 335
- \internallinenumbers* (lineno), →I 335
- international documents, *see* multilingual documents
- International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA), →II 125, 126
- International Standard Book Number (ISBN), →II 500
- International Standard Serial Number (ISSN), →II 500
- Internet resources
 - bibliographies, →II 413f.
 - FAQs, →II 787f.
 - L^AT_EX online course, →II 784
 - L^AT_EX Project's web presence, →II 789
 - online documentation, →II 787
 - question/answer forums, →II 788f.
- interrupting displays, →II 143
- \intertext (amsmath), →II 143
 - not supported by empheq, →II 175
- \interval (interval), →II **172**, 173
- interval package, →II 172f.
- \intervalconfig (interval), →II 173
- intervals, math, →II 171, 172f.
- \interval, →I 257, →II **659**, 660, 689
- \intextsep length, →I 511
 - (wrapfig), →I 536f.
- intlimits option
 - (amsmath), →II **167**, 168, 169
 - (esint), →II 169
- \intsl math symbol \int (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II **245**, 249
- \intup math symbol \int (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245
- invert option (crop), →I 414
- \iota math symbol ι , →II 212
- IPA env. (tipa), →II **125**, 126
- IPA (International Phonetic Alphabet), →II 125, 126
- irish option (babel), →II 301
- \IroningII text symbol $\text{\textcircled{I}}$ (marvosym), →II 117
- is-abbrev BibTeX style, →II 421
- is-alpha BibTeX style, →II **417**, **421**
- is-plain BibTeX style, →II 421
- is-unsrc BibTeX style, →II 421
- isan BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 390
- isbn BibTeX field, →II **382**, 383, 385, 406
 - (biblatex), →II 390
 - (custom-bib), →II 430
 - (natbib), →II 500
- isbn key/option (biblatex), →II **433**, 507, 539ff., 551
- ISBN (International Standard Book Number), →II 500
- \iscurrentchapter (tlc/varioref), →I 78
- ismn BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 390
- ISO value (unicode-math), →II 258
- iso value (biblatex), →II 433
- iso-alphabetic biblatex style (biblatex-iso690), →II 442, **443**
- iso-authortitle biblatex style (biblatex-iso690), →II 442, **443**
- iso-authoryear biblatex style (biblatex-iso690), →II 442, **443**
- iso-fullcite biblatex style (biblatex-iso690), →II 442
- iso-numeric biblatex style (biblatex-iso690), →II 442, **443**
- iso88595 option (inputenc), →II 327
- \isodd (ifthen), →I 306, →II **692**
- isrn BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 390
- issn BibTeX field, →II **382**, 383, 418
 - (biblatex), →II 390
 - (custom-bib), →II 430
 - (natbib), →II 500
- ISSN (International Standard Serial Number), →II 500
- issuetitle BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 383
- .ist file extension
 - (MakeIndex|upmindex), →I **11f.**, →II **344**, 356
 - (doc), →II 588, 602
- iswc BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 390
- \it, *obsolete — do not use*, →I 670
- it option
 - (changes), →I 248
 - (titlesec), →I **40**, 41
- it syntax (*font shape*), →I 306, 671, **734**, 735, →II 229

- it value
 - (caption), →I 462, **542**, 545, 549
 - (subcaption), →I 554, 556, 566
 - (unicode-math), →II 260
 - ital OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 725
 - italian option (babel), →II **301**, 302
 - Italic value (fontspec), →I 725
 - italic key (hyperref|bookmark), →I 104, **105**
 - italic value
 - (jurabib), →II 509f., **511**, 524, 528
 - (unicode-math), →II 258
 - italic correction, →I 661, 662ff.
 - italic font shape, →I 654
 - monospaced fonts with true italics, →I 684, →II 16, 22, 24, 31, 36, 92f., 95ff., 112
 - sans serif fonts with true italics, →II 11, 14–17, 20, 22f., 25f., 28f., 31f., 36, 68–79, 81–88, 102
 - ItalicFeatures key (fontspec), →I 717, **727**
 - ItalicFont key (fontspec), →I **709**, 710
 - ITC Avant Garde Gothic fonts, description/examples, →I 690, →II **69**
 - ITC Bookman fonts, description/examples, →I 690, →II **48**
 - \itdefault, →I 671
 - \itDelta math symbol Δ (unicode-math), →II 258
 - \item, →I 254–257, 258ff., 261, 320, →II 630, 638, 656, **691**
 - error using, →II 729, 737
 - in theindex, →II **371**, 372
 - in paracol, →I 346
 - problems with microtype, →I 136
 - spurious error, →II 737
 - (enumitem), →I 266f., 276f.
 - (threeparttable), →I 493
 - item-format key (tasks), →I **291**, 292
 - item-indent key (tasks), →I 291
 - item_0 keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358
 - item_01 keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358
 - item_1 keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358
 - item_12 keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358
 - item_2 keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358
 - item_x1 keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358
 - item_x2 keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358
 - \itemindent rigid length, →I 259
 - itemindent key (enumitem), →I **266**, **271**, 272
 - itemize env., →I 136, **254**, 695, 697
 - error using, →II 739
 - style parameters, →I 255
 - (babel), →II 321
 - (enumitem), →I **261**, 263, 266, 267, 270, 273f.
 - itemize syntax
 - (enotez), →I 230, **231**, 232
 - (enumitem), →I **263**, 267, 269, 270, 272, 274, 276f.
 - itemize value (tasks), →I 290
 - itemize* env. (enumitem), →I 231, **262**, 277
 - itemize* syntax (enumitem), →I 263
 - itemized lists
 - configurations, →I 254f., 264, 265ff., 268f., 270–274
 - size dependent, →I 279ff.
 - visualized, →I 272
 - itemized lists (*cont.*)
 - default settings, →I 264, 265f.
 - extensions, →I 276f.
 - inlined, →I 262, 277
 - nesting level, →I 263
 - standard, →I 254
 - user-defined, →I 262, 263f., 267
 - itemjoin key (enumitem), →I 231, **277**
 - itemjoin* key (enumitem), →I 277
 - \itemsep length, →I **259**, →II 497
 - itemsep key (enumitem), →I 261, **264**, 265, 280
 - ititemize env. (tlc), →I 668
 - \itshape, →I **661**, 662, 663, 664f., **667**, 668, 669, 671, 697
 - forbidden in math, →I 677
 - (cinzel), producing decorations, →II 98
 - (fontspec), →I 709, 712, 718
 - iwona package, →II **77**, 293
 - Iwona fonts, description/examples, →II **77**, 111
 - in math and text, →II 292f.
- ## J
- J syntax (tabulary), →I **451**, 477
 - \j text symbol j, →I 762, **771**
 - problems in T1, →I 737
 - problems in tikz's \foreach, →I 644
 - ja value (upmendex), →II 369
 - ja@collation=unihan value (upmendex), →II 369
 - Japanese, →II 331, 341
 - index sort order, →II 365
 - japanese option (babel), →II 331
 - jas99 BibTeX style (chicago), →II 489
 - Java value (listings), →I 323
 - jb-halle biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, **448**
 - jb-kreis-neuss biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, **448**
 - \jbactualauthorfont (jurabib), →II 509, **527**
 - \jbactualauthorfontifannotator (jurabib), →II 509
 - \jbannotatorfont (jurabib), →II 527
 - \jbannoteformat (jurabib), →II 531
 - \jbauthorfont (jurabib), →II 527
 - \jbauthorfontifannotator (jurabib), →II 527
 - \jbauthorindexfont (jurabib), →II 512
 - \jbbfsasep (jurabib), →II 488, **527**
 - \jbbibargs (jurabib), →II 528
 - \jbbibhang rigid length (jurabib), →II **529**, 530
 - \jbbstasep (jurabib), →II 488, **527**
 - \jbbtasep (jurabib), →II 527
 - \jbcitationyearformat (jurabib), →II 524
 - \jbdoitem (jurabib), →II 528
 - \jbdy (jurabib), →II 488
 - \jbignorevarioreref (jurabib), →II 518
 - \jbindexbib (jurabib), →II 512
 - \jbindextype (jurabib), →II 512
 - \jbisbn (jurabib), →II 528
 - \jbPages (jurabib), →II 528
 - \jbttitlefont (jurabib), →II 527
 - \jbuseidmhrule (jurabib), →II 425, **530**, 531
 - \jbyearaftertitle (jurabib), →II 524

- `\jmath` math symbol j , →II 177, [213](#)
 - `jmb` BibTeX style (jmb), →II 419, [421](#)
 - `jmb` package, →II 421
 - `\jobname`, →I 109, →II [579](#), 740
 - `\Join` math symbol \Join (amssymb), →II 221
 - `\joinrel`, →II 220
 - `\joule` (siunitx), →I [170](#), 175
 - `journal` BibTeX field, →II 380, 386, [388](#), 391, 401*f.*, 418
 - `journaltitle` BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 380, 383, [388](#), 391, 418, 568
 - `jox` BibTeX style (jurabib), →II 421, [532](#)
 - `.jpeg` file extension, →I [11](#), 586
 - `.jpg` file extension, →I [11](#), 586, →II 719
 - `jtb` BibTeX style, →II 421
 - `jura2` biblatex style (biblatex-jura2), →II [466](#), 536
 - `jurabib` BibTeX style (jurabib), →II 388, 421, 425, 509–531, [532](#), 580
 - `jurabib` package, →II 372, 409, 421, 473*f.*, 491, [507–534](#), 536*f.*, 541, 570, 796
 - compatibility matrix, →II 570
 - `jurabib.cfg` file (jurabib), →II 532
 - as used for examples in this book, →II 508
 - `\jurabibsetup` (jurabib), →II [508](#), 509–526, 531*f.*
 - `jureco` BibTeX style (jurabib), →II 421, [532](#)
 - `jurunrt` BibTeX style (jurabib), →II 421, 530, [532](#)
 - justification
 - downsides of global optimization, →I 120*f.*
 - enhancing, →I 126–137
 - float captions, →I 544, 545, 556
 - hanging punctuation, →I 126
 - headings, →I 41
 - hz algorithm, font expansion, →I 127
 - line-breaking algorithm, →I 126
 - manual correction, →I 120, [126](#)
 - micro-typography, →I 126–137
 - paragraphs, →I 120*f.*, 122*f.*, 124–137
 - subfloats, →I 551, 552, 554
 - tracking, kerning, and spacing, →I 127
 - justification key/option
 - (caption), →I 538, [544](#), 545, 549, 551, 563*f.*
 - (subcaption), →I 552, 554, 556
 - justified value (caption), →I 544
 - `justify` env. (ragged2e), →I 124
 - `justify` value (tcolorbox), →I 617
 - `\justifying` (ragged2e), →I 124
 - `\JustifyingParfillskip` length (ragged2e), →I 124
 - `\JustifyingParindent` rigid length (ragged2e), →I 124
 - JVMIS value (listings), →I 323
- ## K
- `\K` (siunitx), →I 175
 - `\k` text accent $\kern 0.1em \text{\kern 0.1em}$, →I 764, [771](#)
 - problems in tikz's `\foreach`, →I 644
 - `kana_head` keyword (upmendex), →II 367
 - `\kant` (kantlipsum), →I 27, 138*f.*, [362](#), 363, 404, 406, 409, 617, 621, 625, 711, →II 645
 - `\kant*` (kantlipsum), →I 363
 - `kantlipsum` package, →I 16, [362*f.*](#)
 - `\kappa` math symbol κ , →II 212
 - `karl` biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, [449](#)
 - `\katal` (siunitx), →I 170
 - `keep-ranges` key (fnpct), →I 218
 - `keepaspectratio` key (graphicx), →I 565, [581](#), 583, 585
 - keeping material on same page, →I 414, 418, *see also* floats
 - `\keepsilent` (docstrip), →II 603
 - `\kelvin` (siunitx), →I 170
 - `\ker` math operator $\ker x$, →II 193
 - `\kern`, →II 610
 - in hyperref warning message, →II 762
 - `kern` OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 715, [722](#)
 - kernel errors, *see* troubleshooting
 - Kerning key (fontspec), →I [721](#), 722
 - `kerning` key/option (microtype), →I 127, [133](#), 134
 - kerning, fonts, →I 127, 133*f.*
 - configuring, →I 134
 - language context, →I 134
 - restricting context, →I 133, 134
 - `\Ket` (braket), →II 173
 - `\ket` (braket), →II [173](#), 174
 - `\key` (tlc/tcolorbox), →I [626](#), 627
 - key BibTeX field, →II 387, [388](#), 389, 422, 425 (biblatex), →II 389, 502
 - key/value arguments, →II 700–703
 - `\Keyboard` text symbol \equiv (marvosym), →II 117
 - `\keyfig` (keyfloat), →I [568](#), 570*f.*, 572
 - `keyfigure` env. (keyfloat), →I [570](#), 571
 - `keyfloat` env. (keyfloat), →I 570
 - `keyfloat` package, →I 560, [567–573](#)
 - combined with float, →I 568
 - `keyfloats` env. (keyfloat), →I [572](#), 573
 - `\keyflt` (keyfloat), →I 568
 - `\keyparbox` (keyfloat), →I 572
 - keys, *see also* arguments
 - bibliographies
 - adding to bibliography listing, →II 417
 - case sensitivity, →II 384
 - definition, →II 381
 - extracting, →II 416
 - displaying, →I 93, 94*f.*
 - extracting Git information, →II 616*f.*
 - extracting SVN information, →II 617, 618*f.*
 - key/value options, →II 700–703
 - naming, →II 623
 - setting, →II 703
 - unused, →I 95
 - `keysubfigs` env. (keyfloat), →I [572](#), 573
 - `keysubfloats` env. (keyfloat), →I 572
 - `keysubtabs` env. (keyfloat), →I 572
 - `\keytab` (keyfloat), →I 568
 - `keytable` env. (keyfloat), →I 570
 - `keyval` package, →I 377, 540, 585, →II 697
 - `KeyValTable` env. (keyvaltable), →I [494*f.*](#), 496, 497, 498, 499*f.*, 501–504
 - `keyvaltable` package, →I 494–504
 - keyword key (biblatex), →II [551](#), 553
 - keyword keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 349, [357](#)

- keywords BibTeX field, →II 391
 - keywordstyle key (listings), →I 324, 325f.
 - \kg (siunitx), →I 172
 - \kill, →I 433, 434, →II 738
 - (longtable), →I 461
 - \kilo (siunitx), →I 169, 171, 172, 175ff.
 - \kilogram (siunitx), →I 170, 172
 - kluwer BibTeX style (harvard), →II 423, 490
 - \km (siunitx), →I 176
 - \kmh (tlc/siunitx), →I 171, 176f.
 - ko value (upmendex), →II 369
 - ko@collation=search value (upmendex), →II 369
 - ko@collation=unihan value (upmendex), →II 369
 - koi8-r option (inputenc), →I 692, →II 326, 327
 - KOMA-Script classes, →I 429
 - komoedie.bib file, →II 413
 - Korean, →II 331, 341
 - kotex package, →II 331
 - kp value (mathalpha), →II 232, 233
 - Kp fonts, description/examples, →II 17ff., 45, 267
 - in math and text, →II 266f.
 - Kp Sans fonts, description/examples, →II 79
 - in math and text, →II 293
 - kpathsea program, →II 785
 - kpfonts package, →II 18, 267f., 293
 - kpfonts-otf package, →II 18, 267, 293
 - kpsewhich program, →I 715, →II 730, 785, 786
 - \kramer (Kramer), →I 145
 - \Kramerfamily (Kramer), →I 145
 - ksh value (listings), →I 323
 - kunde biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, 449
 - kurier package, →II 79, 295
 - Kurier fonts, description/examples, →II 79
 - in math and text, →II 294f.
 - kurmanji option (babel), →II 301
 - kvdefinekeys package, →II 697
 - kvoptions package, →II 697
 - kvsetkeys package, →II 697
 - \kvtLabel (keyvaltable), →I 502
 - \kvtNewRowStyle (keyvaltable), →I 496, 500
 - \kvtNewTableStyle (keyvaltable), →I 499
 - \kvtRenewRowStyle (keyvaltable), →I 496, 500
 - \kvtRenewTableStyle (keyvaltable), →I 499
 - kvtRow counter (keyvaltable), →I 499, 501, 502
 - \kvtSet (keyvaltable), →I 498, 502
 - kvtTotalRow counter (keyvaltable), →I 501
 - kvtTypeRow counter (keyvaltable), →I 501
 - \kW (siunitx), →I 175
- L**
- L syntax
 - (abracas), →II 185, 186f., 189
 - (fancyhdr), →I 399, 400–404
 - (qrcode), →I 613
 - (tabulary), →I 451, 477
 - (tlc/array), →I 445
 - (wrapfig), →I 536
 - L value (thmtools), →I 286, 287
 - \L text symbol L, →I 770
 - (babel), producing geminated L, →II 311
 - \l text symbol l, →I 771
 - (babel), producing geminated l, →II 311
 - l key (keyfloat), →I 568, 572
 - l syntax, →I 436
 - (font series), →I 732, 733
 - (abracas), →II 185, 186, 190
 - (array), →I 438, 439, 440f., 446
 - (subcaption), →I 551, 552
 - (tikz-cd), →II 161
 - (wrapfig), →I 536
 - (xltabular), →I 464
 - l value
 - (diagbox), →I 480, 481
 - (draftwatermark), →I 411
 - (keyvaltable), →I 497, 502f.
 - L . . font encoding, →I 737
 - L3 programming layer, →I xxxix, xlii, 7, 25, 102, 361, 393, 504, →II 315, 605, 622, 624, 634, 643ff., 657–660, 685, 689, 697, 700, 730, 799, 802, 807, 809, 811f.
 - interface3.pdf, interface documentation, →II 786
 - l3build program, →I 5, →II 600, 606–615, 810
 - build file, →II 607
 - configuring, →II 613ff.
 - install/release, →II 607f., 611ff., 615
 - invoking, →II 607
 - produce documentation, →II 608, 613f.
 - testing, →II 607–611, 613
 - l3doc document class, →II 597, 605, 614
 - \l@⟨language⟩ (babel), →II 336, 338
 - \l@appendix (tlc), →I 54
 - \l@chapter, →I 72
 - \l@figure, →I 72
 - \l@note (tlc), →I 74
 - \l@paragraph, →I 72
 - \l@part, →I 72
 - \l@section, →I 72
 - \l@sub⟨type⟩ (subcaption), →I 558
 - \l@subparagraph, →I 72
 - \l@subsection, →I 72, 73, 74
 - \l@subsubsection, →I 72, 74
 - \l@table, →I 72
 - \label, →I 36, 75, 76f., 78f., 82, 97, 206, 207, 219, 256, 336, 539, 624, →II 649, 692, 747, 760
 - causing extra space, →II 657
 - error using, →II 716, 733
 - problems using, →I 36, 76, 178, →II 648
 - restrictions on key, →I 75, →II 623
 - strange results with, →I 36
 - to page number, →I 386
 - warning using, →II 754, 761
 - (amsmath), →II 135, 150, 153
 - (babel), →I 75
 - (caption), →I 548
 - (cases), →II 157
 - (cleveref), syntax extension, →I 91
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), in verbatim, →I 313

- `\label` (*cont.*)
 - (longtable), →I 462f.
 - (refcheck), →I 95
 - (showkeys), →I 93, 94
 - (subcaption), →I 551, 552, 556f.
 - (tasks), →I 291
 - (varioref), →I 81
 - (wrapfig), →I 537
 - (xr), →I 95
- `label` BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 389, 397
- `label` key
 - (enumitem), →I 262ff., 267, 268f., 272, 273, 274–277
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 308, 309
 - (keyvaltable), →I 498
 - (listings), →I 330
 - (tasks), →I 291, 292
 - (tcolorbox), →I 624, 627
 - (typed-checklist), →I 294, 295f.
- `label` width, tables of contents, →I 60
- `label*` key (enumitem), →I 268, 269
- `label-align` key (tasks), →I 291, 292
- `label-format` key (tasks), →I 291
- `label-offset` key (tasks), →I 291
- `label-width` key (tasks), →I 291
- `\labelcpageref` (cleveref), →I 88
- `\labelcref` (cleveref), →I 88
- `\labelelement` (biblatex), →II 487
- `\labelenumi`, →I 255f., 257, →II 649
- `\labelenumii`, →I 255, 256, →II 649
- `\labelenumiii`, →I 256, →II 649
- `\labelenumiv`, →I 256, →II 649
- `labelfont` key/option
 - (caption), →I 462, 538, 543, 544f., 548f., 563f.
 - (subcaption), →I 554
- `\labelformat`, →I 77, 78, 256, 559
 - (jurabib), →II 518
- `labelformat` key/option
 - (caption), →I 543, 544f., 546, 547, 549, 550
 - (subcaption), →I 554f., 557
- `\labelindent` rigid length (enumitem), →I 271
- `labelindent` key (enumitem), →I 271, 272, 273
- `\labelitemfont`, →I 254f., 697
- `\labelitemi`, →I 254, 255, 267, 273, 697
- `\labelitemii`, →I 255, 267
- `\labelitemiii`, →I 255, 267
- `\labelitemiv`, →I 255, 267, 697
- `labelname` syntax (biblatex), →II 487, 549
- `labelnumberwidth` syntax (biblatex), →II 478
- `labelposition` key (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 308
- `labelprefix` key (biblatex), →II 555
- `labels`
 - equations, *see* tags
 - float captions, →I 543, 544, 549f.
 - format, cross-references, →I 77f., 79–85, 86–92
 - format, document headings, →I 43
- `\labelsep` rigid length, →I 257, 259, 270, 433, →II 632
- `labelsep` key (enumitem), →I 269, 271, 272, 273, 277f., 279
- `labelsep` key/option
 - (caption), →I 543, 544f., 549, 550
 - (subcaption), →I 554f.
- `labelstoglobalaux` option (bibunits), →II 577
- `labeltitle` key/option (biblatex), →II 550
- `labeltitleyear` key/option (biblatex), →II 550
- `\labelwidth` rigid length, →I 259, →II 632
- `labelwidth` key (enumitem),
 - I 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 278
- `\Lambda` math symbol Λ , →II 168, 212
- `\lambda` math symbol λ , →II 143, 150, 192, 212, 235, 237
- `lamport` value (footmisc), →I 211
- `\land` math symbol \wedge , →II 215
- `\landdownint` math symbol \int (esint), →II 169
- `landscape` env. (lscape), →I 384
- `landscape` key/option (geometry), →I 366, 377, 378, 382
- `landscape` option, →II 710
 - (crop), →I 412
 - (typearea), →I 375, 376
- `landscape` value (typearea), →I 376
- `landscape` mode, →I 384
- `\landupint` math symbol \int (esint), →II 169
- `langgerman` syntax (biblatex), →II 565
- `langid` BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 383, 392, 393, 536, 560f.
- `\lang` math symbol \langle , →II 190, 223, 224
- `langsci-unified` biblatex style (langsci), →II 461
- `Language` key (fontspec), →I 726
- `language`
 - and typesetting, →II 299f.
 - bibliographies, →II 392f.
 - current, setting/getting, →II 302, 303f., 308
 - foreign abbreviations & acronyms, →I 160
 - quotations, →I 183ff.
- `\language` TeX counter, →II 303, 337, 340, 754
- `language` BibTeX field, →II 391, 392f., 430
 - (babelbib), →II 392
 - (biblatex), →II 383, 392, 393, 565
 - (custom-bib), →II 430
 - (jurabib), →II 525
- `language` key (listings), →I 324, 325–328, 330–333
- `language` attributes, →II 307
- `language` definition files
 - definition, →II 336
 - hyphenation patterns, adjusting, →II 333f.
 - language-dependent strings, customizing, →II 333
 - styles, creating, →II 339f.
- `language` options, babel package
 - language-specific commands, →II 315–320
 - layout considerations, →II 320ff.
 - shorthands, →II 310–314
 - translations, →II 309
- `language`-dependent strings
 - babel package, →II 300, 305, 336
 - customizing, →II 307, 309, 336
 - translations, →II 309
- `language.dat` file (babel), →I 9f., →II 303, 333, 337, 338, 748
- `\languageattribute` (babel), →II 307, 330, 336
 - warning using, →II 765

- `\language` (babel), →II 303, [304](#)
- `\languageshorthands` (babel), →II [306](#), 335
- `\lap` key (adjustbox), →I [598](#), 599
- `LARGE` syntax (enumitem), →I 280
- `\LARGE`, →I 666
- `Large` syntax (enumitem), →I 280
- `Large` value
 - (caption), →I 542
 - (todonotes), →I 240
- `\Large`, →I 666
- `\large`, →I [666](#), 668, →II 653
- `large` syntax (enumitem), →I 280
- `large` value (caption), →I 542
- `\larger` (relsize), →I 675
- `larger` value (caption), →I 542
- `largesc` option
 - (newpxtext), →II 249
 - (newtxttext), →II [56](#), 244
- `largesmallcaps` option (kpfonts|kpfonts-otf), →II 18
- `largestsep` option (titlesec), →I 45
- `\Largestside` (adjustbox), →I 596
- `\largestside` (adjustbox), →I 596
- `last` syntax, →I 393
- `last` value
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 310
 - (listings), →I [326](#), 327, 332
- `last` update field, bibliographies, →II 534
- `last-column` syntax, →I [391](#), 395, →II 730
- `lastchecked` BibTeX field, →II 390
- `\lastdashline` (arydshln), →I 469
- `\lastline` (array), →I [444](#), 445, 469
- `lastline` key
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I [314](#), 316, 318
 - (listings), →I 329
- `\LastMark`, →I [391](#), 392, 394*f.*, 403
- `error` using, →II 730
- `LastPage` counter (lastpage|pageslts), →I [386](#), 387, 400
- `lastpage` package, →I 386*f.*
- `\LastWordBox` (continue), →I 408
- `latest` option (latexrelease), →I 115
- LaTeX
 - contributing, →II 792*f.*
 - current system, overview, →I 9–13
 - files used in, →I 9–13
 - history of, →I 1–8
 - learning online, →II 784
 - process flow, →I 9
 - rollback, →I [114–118](#), →II 693*ff.*
 - standard fonts, →I 684*f.*, 686, 687*f.*
 - summary list of file types, →I 11
- LaTeX value (listings), →I 332
- Latex key (tikz), →I 640*f.*
- LaTeX 2.09
 - fonts, →I 670
 - high-level font commands, →I 670
- LaTeX files, obtaining
 - distributions, →II 790*f.*
 - from the Internet, →II 789*f.*
 - LaTeX files, obtaining (*cont.*)
 - old versions, →II 791
 - LaTeX format file, →I 10
 - LaTeX Project Public License (LPPL), →I 4
 - latex.ltx file, →I 9, →II 603, 649
 - latexmk program, →II 613
- `\LaTeXoverbrace` (mathtools), →II 184
- `latexrelease` package, →I 109, [114–117](#), →II 693, 738, 760
- `\LaTeXunderbrace` (mathtools), →II 184
- `latin` option (babel), →II [301](#), 313
- Latin Modern (LM) fonts, description/examples,
 - I 660, [686](#), [687](#), [688](#), →II 108*ff.*, 285
- LaTeX standard fonts, →I 686*f.*
- in math and text, →II 254, 285
- `latin1` option (inputenc), →I 692*f.*
- `latin4` option (inputenc), →I 692
- `latin9` option (inputenc), →I 692
- `lato` package, →II 80
- Lato fonts, description/examples, →I xlii, 720, →II [80](#), 109
- `latvian` option (babel), →II 301
- `\layout` (layout), →I 371
- `layout` key (typed-checklist), →I [293](#), 296
- `layout` key/option
 - (babel), →II 323
 - (geometry), →I 381
- `layout` package, →I 366, [371](#)
- `layout` of a page, *see* page layout
- `layout` parameters for
 - captions, →I 541–545
 - code documentation, →II 597
 - columns, →I 356*f.*
 - floats, →I 510*ff.*
 - footnotes, →I 209
 - headings, →I 52
 - lists, →I 255*f.*, 259
 - pages, →I 367, [369](#)
 - ragged typesetting, →I 124
 - rules (graphic lines), →II 668
 - spacing
 - in math, →II 205, 210
 - in text, →II 653*f.*
 - TOC entries, →I 73
- `layoutheight` key/option (geometry), →I 381
- `layouthoffset` key/option (geometry), →I 381
- `layouts` package, →I [371–374](#), 375
- `layoutvoffset` key/option (geometry), →I 381
- `layoutwidth` key/option (geometry), →I 381
- `\LB` (tlc), →II 626
- `\Lbag` math symbol \mathbb{L} (stmaryrd), →II 224
- `\lbag` math symbol \mathbb{L} (stmaryrd), →II 215
- `\lbrace` math symbol $\{$,
 - II 135, 175, [190](#), [223](#), 228, 235*ff.*, 261–296
- `\lbrack` math symbol $[$, →II [190](#), [223](#)
- `.lbx` file extension (biblatex), →II [559](#), 564*f.*
- `lc` syntax (*font series*), →I [732](#), 733
- `\lceil` math symbol \lceil , →II [190](#), [223](#)
- `\lncnamecref` (cleveref), →I 88
- `\lncnamecrefs` (cleveref), →I 88

`\lcolsection` (tlc/multicol), →I 355
`\Lcs` (tlc), →I 666
`\lctt` (zlmitt), →II 93, 94
`\ldelim` (bigdelim), →II 158, 159
`.ldf` file extension
 (babel), →I 9, 10f., →II 332, 335, 336, 339, 742, 754
 (jurabib), →II 524
`\ldots` text/math symbol ..., →II 180, 186, 223, 625f., 766
`\le` math symbol \leq , →II 168, 192, 217
`leaders`
 headings, →I 47
 in tables of contents, →I 62
 indexes, →II 361
`leading`
 blanks, indexes, →II 346, 351, 363f.
 spaces, removing from typed text, →I 306, 307
 vertical spacing, →I 139, 140, 141, 668, 691
`\leavevmode`, →II 647
`lec` syntax (*font series*), →I 673, 675, 732
`\leeg` (fcolumn), →I 490
`\left`, →II 141f., 151, 155, 173, 175, 190, 191, 199, 207, 209, 211, 223f., 261f., 722f.
 colored, →II 208
 error using, →II 731, 733
 (mathtools), →II 172
 (mleftright), →II 211
 (unicode-math), →II 258
`left` key
 (adjustbox), →I 599
 (empheq), →II 175
 (enumitem), →I 273, 274
 (tcolorbox), →I 616, 617, 627
 (tikz), →I 641, 644
`left` key/option (geometry), →I 379, 380, 383
`left` option (lineno), →I 339
`left` value
 (changes), →I 248
 (enumitem), →I 269, 278
 (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 309, 310, 316, 318
 (hvfloat), →I 561
 (listings), →I 326, 327, 332
 (siunitx), →I 485, 486
 (tasks), →I 291
 (tcolorbox), →I 617, 621f.
`left_color` key (tikz), →I 639
`leftskip` key (tcolorbox), →I 616
`\Leftarrow` math symbol \Leftarrow , →II 219
`\leftarrow` math symbol \leftarrow , →II 219
`\leftarrowtail` math symbol \leftarrowtail (amssymb), →II 219
`\leftarrowtriangle` math symbol \leftarrowtriangle (stmaryrd), →II 219
`leftcolumn` env. (paracol), →I 342, 344
`leftcolumn*` env. (paracol), →I 342, 344
`\lefthand` text symbol \lefthand (fourier-orns), →II 119
`\leftharpoonowdown` math symbol \leftharpoonowdown , →II 219
`\leftharpoonoup` math symbol \leftharpoonoup , →II 219
`\lefthyphenmin`, →II 333
 leftlabels option (titletoc), →I 62
`\leftleftarrows` math symbol \longleftrightarrow (amssymb), →II 219
`leftline` value (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 307
`leftlower` key (tcolorbox), →I 616
`\leftmargin` rigid length, →I 259, 261, 270, 346, →II 632
`leftmargin` key
 (enumitem), →I 266, 271, 272, 273, 278, 279
 (thmtools), →I 286, 287
`leftmargin` syntax (titlesec), →I 43, 49
`\leftmark`, →I 389, 391ff., 400ff., 403, 406
`\leftprotrusion` (microtype), →I 136
`\Leftrightarrow` math symbol \Leftrightarrow , →II 219
`\leftrightarrow` math symbol \leftrightarrow , →II 219
`\leftrightharpoonoeq` math symbol \leftrightharpoonoeq (stmaryrd), →II 217
`\leftrightharrows` math symbol \leftrightharrows (amssymb), →II 219
`\leftrightharrowtriangle` math symbol \leftrightharrowtriangle (stmaryrd), →II 219
`\leftrightharpoons` math symbol \leftrightharpoons (amssymb), →II 219
`\leftrightsquigarrow` math symbol \leftrightsquigarrow (amssymb), →II 219
`\leftroot` (amsmath), →II 199, 200
`lefttrule` key (tcolorbox), →I 616
`leftsep` key (diagbox), →I 480, 481
`\leftskip` length, →I 341, 342, 351
 (ragged2e), →I 123
`\leftslice` math symbol \leftslice (stmaryrd), →II 215
`\leftthreetimes` math symbol \leftthreetimes (amssymb), →II 215
`lefttitle` key (tcolorbox), →I 616, 617
`leftupper` key (tcolorbox), →I 616
`\legacyoldstylenums`, →I 700
`legal` env. (tlc/enumitem), →I 268
`legal` option (crop), →I 412
`legalpaper` key/option (geometry), →I 378
`legalpaper` option, →I 368
 (typearea), →I 375
`lem` env.
 (tlc/amsthm), →I 92, 282
 (tlc/cleveref), problems with, →I 92
`lemma` env. (tlc/thmtools), →I 286
`length`, see space parameters
`length` key (tikz), →I 640
`length` calculations, →II 660
`lengthen` or `shorten`
 pages, →I 415f.
 paragraphs, →I 422, 427ff., →II 778
`\lengthtest` (ifthen), →I 540, →II 691, 692
`\leq` math symbol \leq , →II 183, 217, 226, 261–296, 659
 (eulervm), →II 243
`leqno` option (amsmath), →II 129, 131, 134, 152
`\leqq` math symbol \leqq (amssymb), →II 217
`\leqslant` math symbol \leqslant (amssymb), →II 217
 less than sign ($<$), shorthand character, →II 314
`\lessapprox` math symbol \lessapprox (amssymb), →II 217
`\lessdot` math symbol \lessdot (amssymb), →I 752, →II 215
`\lesseqgtr` math symbol \lesseqgtr (amssymb), →II 217
`\lesseqqgtr` math symbol \lesseqqgtr (amssymb), →II 217
`\lessgtr` math symbol \lessgtr (amssymb), →II 217
`\lessssim` math symbol \lessssim (amssymb), →II 217
`\let`, →I 314, →II 622, 635
`letter` option (crop), →I 412

- letter document class, →I 10, 32, →II 305
- letter groups, indexes, →II 360
- letter-by-letter sort order, indexes, →II 354, 364
- letter-shaped math symbols, →II 213
- letter_head keyword (upmendex), →II 367
- letterpaper key/option (geometry), →I 378
- letterpaper option, →I 366, **368f.**, →II 699 (typearea), →I 375
- Letters key (fontspec), →I 710, 713, **717**, 718
- letters, math symbols, →II 211–214
- LetterSpace key (fontspec), →I 192, **715**
- letterspace key/option (microtype), →I 193
- letterspacing, →I 127, 133ff., **191–198**
 - ad hoc, →I 192
 - always, →I 194
 - font change, →I 196
 - forcing or preventing, →I 197
 - ligatures, →I 193, 196
 - limitations with soul package, →I 195, 197
 - restricting context, →I 133
- \lettrine (lettrine), →I **141f.**, 143, 144, 145
 - lettrine package, →I 141–145
 - lettrine.cfg file (lettrine), →I 144
- \LettrineFontHook (lettrine), →I **142**, **143**, 145
- \LettrineOptionsFor (lettrine), →I 144
- \LettrineSecondText (lettrine), →I 143
- \LettrineTestString (lettrine), →I 143
- \LettrineTextFont (lettrine), →I **142**, 143
 - level key (qrcode), →I 613
 - level keyword (*MakelIndex*|upmendex), →II 356, **357**, 360
 - level option (fmtcount), →I 154
- \levelchar (doc), →II **594**, 596
- lex syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- lexical analyzer, bibliographies, →II 415
- lf option (*various font packages*), →II 7
- \lfloor math symbol \lfloor , →II **190**, **223**
- \tfoot (fancyhdr), →I **398**, 399
- \lg math operator $\lg x$, →II 193
- lgathered env. (mathtools), →II 132, **140**, 141, 142
- \Lgem (babel), →II 311
- \lgem (babel), →II 311
- LGR font encoding, →I 736, **737**, 739, →II **106**, 323, 328, **329**, 330f.
 - fonts encoded in, →II 11, 13f., 20, 26, 28f., 35, 40, 43, 45, 57, 59, 61ff., 75, 81, 103
- \lgroup math symbol $\{$, →II **158**, **190**, **223**
 - lhang key (lettrine), →I 142
- \lhead (fancyhdr), →I **398**, 399
- \lhook math symbol \hookleftarrow , →II 220
- libaltvw option (newtxtext), →II 248
- libertine option
 - (newtxmath), →II 275
 - (newtxtext), →II 248
- libertine package, →II 20
- Libertine fonts, description/examples, →II 19
 - in math, →II 275, 277
- libertinus package, →II **20**, 275
- Libertinus fonts, description/examples, →I 721, 724, 726, →II **19**, **108f.**, **111f.**
 - in math and text, →II 275, 277
- Libre Baskerville fonts, description/examples, →II 47
- Libre Bodoni fonts, description/examples, →II 61
- Libre Caslon fonts, description/examples, →II 51
- Libre Franklin fonts, description/examples, →II 81
- librebaskerville package, →II 47
- LibreBodoni package, →II 61
- librecaslon package, →II 51
- librefranklin package, →II 81
- liby option (newtxtext), →II 248
- license information
 - LaTeX Project Public License (LPPL), →I 4
 - multicol package, →I 351
- LICR (LaTeX internal character representation), →I 757f.
 - list of objects, →I 767–776
- liga OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 715, **720**, 721
- Ligatures key (fontspec), →I **720**, 721, 728
- ligatures
 - in monospaced fonts, →II 89
 - letterspaced, →I 193, 196
 - preventing, →I 135, →II 311
- light option (*various font packages*), →II 8
 - (Chivo), →II 70
 - (antpolt), →II 47
 - (anttor), →II **101**, 295f.
 - (bboldx), →II 227
 - (iwona), →II **77**, 293
 - (kpfonts|kpfonts-otf), →II **18**, 267
 - (kurier), →II 79
 - (montserrat), →II 83
 - (zlmmt), →II **93**, 94
- light syntax (fontawesome5), →II 121
- lightcondensed option (zlmmt), →II 93
- \lightning math symbol \frown (stmaryrd), →II 213
- \lightrulewidth rigid length (booktabs), →I 472
- lighttext option (kpfonts|kpfonts-otf), →II 267
- lightttt option (lmodern), →I 688
- \lim math operator $\lim x$, →II 167, **193**
 - sub/superscript placement on, →II 166f.
- \liminf math operator $\liminf x$, →II 193
- limiting positions (subscripts/superscripts), →II 166f.
- \limits, →II **167**, 168, 169, 170, 183, 245, 250, 261
 - error using, →II 729
- \limsup math operator $\limsup x$, →II 193
- \Line (pict2e), →I 607
- \line, →I 603, 608
 - error using, →II 718
 - limitations of, →I 603
 - warning using, →II 757
 - (pict2e), →I 603, **604**, 607
- line key (todonotes), →I 240
- line breaking
 - automatic, *see* justification
 - mathematical typesetting, →II 197, **198f.**
 - equations, automatically, →II 146, **147ff.**
- TeX algorithm, →I 120

- line breaking (*cont.*)
 - typed text, →I 301, 313, 314
- line breaks, *see also* space parameters
 - badness rating, →II 657
 - bibliographies, →II 479
 - code listings, →I 329
 - computer code, →I 329
 - headings, →I 41
 - in citations, →II 479
 - in tables, →I 443
 - justification algorithm, →I 126
 - number-only citations, →II 479
 - preventing inside paragraphs, →I 125, 126
 - second-last line, →II 631, 637
- line numbers, →I 334–339
 - in columns, →I 349*f.*
- line-to* (tikz path operation), →I 636
- `line_max` keyword (*MakeIndex|upmendex*), →II 358
- `line_cap` key (tikz), →I 639
- `line_join` key (tikz), →I 639
- `line_width` key (tikz), →I 633, 636*ff.*, 639, 641*f.*, 646
- `\linebreak`, →I 120, →II 198, 626, 778
 - (cite), →II 480
 - (soul), →I 196, 197
- `linecolor` key
 - (diagbox), →I 480, 481
 - (todonotes), →I 239, 240, 249
- `linecolor` key/option (*fancypar*), →I 147
- `\linelabel` (lineno), →I 336, 337
- `\Lineload` text symbol ¶¶ (marvosym), →II 117
- lineno package, →I 251, 334–339, 348, →II 979
- `linenomath` env. (lineno), →I 335, 336
- `linenos` key (*fvextra*), →I 310, 311
- `\LineNumber` (lineno), →I 338, 339
- linenumber counter (lineno), →I 348, 349*f.*
- `\linenumberfont` (lineno), →I 337, 338
- `\linenumbers` (lineno), →I 334, 335–339, 349*ff.*
- `linenumbers` env. (lineno), →I 251, 335
- `\linenumbers*` (lineno), →I 334
- `\linenumbersep` rigid length (lineno), →I 337, 338, 351
- `\linenumberwidth` rigid length (lineno), →I 337
- `linerange` key (listings), →I 329
- `\lineref` (lineno), →I 337
- `lines` key (*lettrine*), →I 142, 143
- `lines` key/option (*geometry*), →I 378
- `lines` value
 - (csquotes), →I 182
 - (*fancyvrb|fvextra*), →I 307, 308, 309
 - (listings), →I 330
- lines (graphic), *see also* boxes; frames
 - drawing, →I 607, 610, 611
 - thickness, →I 611
- lines (of text)
 - fonts for line numbers, →I 337, 338
 - highlighting, →I 251
 - numbering, →I 334–339
 - some lines, →I 337
 - per page, →I 370
- lines (of text) (*cont.*)
 - referencing line numbers, →I 336, 337
- `\lineskip` length, →II 770
- `\linespread`, →I 139, 375, 691, →II 274
- `\linethickness`, →I 604, 605, 609, 611
 - (*pict2e*), →I 604
- `\linewidth` rigid length, →I 308, 367, 434, 449*f.*, 454*f.*, 497*f.*, 552, 586, 601, 615, →II 655, 667, 670, 688
 - (multicol), →I 356
 - (*tabto*), →I 435
- `linewidth` key (*diagbox*), →I 480, 481
- Lingo value (listings), →I 323
- Linguistics Pro fonts, description/examples, →II 59, 108, 111
- linguisticspro package, →II 59
- Lining value (*fontspec*), →I 716
- lining option (*various font packages*), →II 7
 - (*ebgaramond*), →II 265
 - (*fbf*), →II 38
- `\liningfigures` (*various font packages*), →II 8
- `\liningnums` (*fontspec*), →I 717
- `link` key (*qrcode*), →I 613
- `linkbordercolor` key/option (*hyperref*), →I 103
- `linkcolor` key/option (*hyperref*), →I 88, 102
- linking cross-references, →I 88, 90, 96, 97–108
- linking to
 - e-mail addresses, →I 204
 - URIs, →I 203*f.*
 - URLs, →I 201*f.*, 204
- `linktoc` key/option (*hyperref*), →I 97
- `\interval` (interval), →II 173
- Linux distributions, →II 791
- `\lips` (tlc), →I 148
- `\lipsum` (lipsum), →I 41*f.*, 49, 289, 337, 355, 362, 363, 398–402, 404, 407*f.*, 410*f.*, 416*ff.*, 420, 425*f.*, 434*f.*, 530*f.*, 552, 617, 623
- lipsum package, →I 116, 361*f.*
- `\lipsum*` (lipsum), →I 362, 405
- Lisp value (listings), →I 323
- `\list` (biblatex), →II 542
- `list` env., →I 258, 260, 261, →II 632, 656
 - style parameters, →I 259
- `list` key
 - (*endfloat*), →I 527
 - (*todonotes*), →I 241
- `list` key/option
 - (caption), →I 546, 547
 - (subcaption), →I 555, 558
- `list` value
 - (biblatex), →II 562
 - (changes), →I 246
 - (*typed-checklist*), →I 293
- list of
 - acronyms, →I 162, 163
 - annotations, →I 241, 243
 - code listings, →I 330
 - contents items (headings, figures, tables), →I 28, 55
 - partial lists, →I 67, 68*ff.*
 - partial lists, this book, →I 69

- list of (*cont.*)
 - LICR objects, →I 768–776
 - subcaptions/subfigures/subtables, →I 558
 - theorems, →I 287
 - todos, →I 237
- list stack (vertical/horizontal lists), displaying, →II 780
- list-name key (enotez), →I 231
- list-type key (enotez), →I 231
- list/display key (acro), →I 163
- list/heading key (acro), →I 163
- list/name key (acro), →I 163
- list/template key (acro), →I 163
- list_{inside} key (tcolorbox), →I 628
- list_{text} key (tcolorbox), →I 629
- listcount counter (biblatex), →II 567f.
- \listdesign (layouts), →I 374
- \listdiagram (layouts), →I 374
- \listfigurename, →I 37
 - (babel), →II 305
- \listfiles, →I 110, 111, →II 679, 706, 752
- listformat key/option (caption), →I 546
- listings library (tcolorbox), →I 619
- listings value (tcolorbox), →I 628
- listings package, →I 137, 301ff., 322–332, →II 729
 - combined with color/xcolor, →I 325
- listingsutf8 library (tcolorbox), →I 619
- \listof (float), →I 74, 531
- \listofartistnotes (tlc), →I 74
- \listofchanges (changes), →I 245, 246f.
- \listoffigures, →I 28, 33, 55, 74, 97, 136, 396, 531, 539
 - listed in tables of contents, →I 56
 - (caption), →I 547f.
 - (subcaption), →I 558
- \listoffixmes (fixme), →I 242, 243
- \listoftables, →I 28, 33, 55, 74, 136, 396, 459, 531
 - listed in tables of contents, →I 56
- \listoftheorems (thmtools), →I 287
- \listoftodos (todonotes), →I 237f., 241, 242
- \listparindent rigid length, →I 259
- \listparindent key (enumitem), →I 262, 265, 266, 274f., 277
- lists
 - bulleted, *see* itemized lists
 - checklists, →I 292, 293–296
 - status values, →I 294
 - columns, →I 289–292
 - configurations, →I 259
 - size dependent, →I 279ff.
 - visualized, →I 272
 - descriptive
 - configurations,
 - I 257, 264, 265ff., 268f., 270, 271f., 273f., 278f.
 - default settings, →I 264, 265f.
 - extensions, →I 278f.
 - inlined, →I 262, 277
 - standard, →I 257
 - enumerated
 - configurations, →I 255, 256, 264, 265–269, 270f., 272, 273, 274, 275, 276
- lists (*cont.*)
 - cross-referencing, →I 268f., 274
 - default settings, →I 264, 265f.
 - extensions, →I 275, 276
 - inlined, →I 262, 277
 - standard, →I 255ff.
- extensions, →I 261–281
- generic lists, →I 258ff.
- headed, →I 91f., 281, 282
 - proofs, →I 282f., 288
 - QED (□) symbol, →I 282f., 288
 - referencing, →I 285
 - style, defining, →I 283, 284–288
- inlined, →I 262, 277
 - configurations, →I 277
- itemized
 - configurations,
 - I 254, 255, 264, 265ff., 268f., 270–274
 - default settings, →I 264, 265f.
 - extensions, →I 276f.
 - inlined, →I 262, 277
 - standard, →I 254
- multilingual documents, →II 321, 322
- nesting level, →I 263
- numbered, *see* enumerated lists; headed lists of figures/tables, in tables of contents, →I 56
- page breaking, →I 260
- schematic layout, →I 259
- types of, →I 254, 258
- unnumbered, *see* itemized lists
- user-defined, →I 258ff., 262, 263f., 267ff., 276f.
 - description lists, →I 262, 263f.
 - enumerated lists, →I 262, 263f., 268f.
 - itemized lists, →I 262, 263f., 267
 - quotations, →I 260, 261
- lists option (endfloat), →I 526
- liststop counter (biblatex), →II 567f.
- \listtablename, →I 37
 - (babel), →II 305
- \listtheoremname (thmtools), →I 287
- literal value
 - (biblatex), →II 562
 - (unicode-math), →II 258f.
- literal lists, bibliography database, →II 393
- literate package, →II 53
- literate key (listings), →I 333
- Literaturnaya fonts, description/examples, →II 53, 111
- lithuanian option (babel), →II 301
- \litre (siunitx), →I 171
- \ll math symbol \ll , →II 217
- \llap, →I 338, 339, 598, →II 204, 662
 - \llap key (adjustbox), →I 598, 599
- \llbracket math symbol \llbracket (stmaryrd), →II 190, 223
- \llceil math symbol \llceil (stmaryrd), →II 224
- \llcorner math symbol \llcorner (amssymb), →II 224
- \Lleftarrow math symbol \Lleftarrow (amssymb), →II 219
- \llfloor math symbol \llfloor (stmaryrd), →II 224
- \lll math symbol \lll (amssymb), →II 217

- `\lless` math symbol \lll (amssymb), →II 217
- `\llparenthesis` math symbol \ll (stmaryrd), →II 224
- LVM value (listings), →I 323
- `\margin` key/option (geometry), →I 377, **379**
- `\modern` package, →I 686, **688f.**, 700, →II 93, 284
- `\lmoustache` math symbol \int , →II **190, 223, 261-296**
- `\ln` math operator $\ln x$, →II 170, **193**
- `\ln` syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- `\lnapprox` math symbol \approx (amssymb), →II **217, 235**
- `\lncs` biblatex style (biblatex-lncs), →II 458
- `\lneq` math symbol \leq (amssymb), →II 217
- `\lneqq` math symbol \leqslant (amssymb), →II 217
- LNI biblatex style (biblatex-lni), →II 458
- `\lnot` math symbol \neg , →II 213
- `\lnsim` math symbol \sim (amssymb), →II 217
- `\lnum` OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 715, **716**
- `\load` key (microtype), →I **131, 133**
- `\load` value, →II **701, 703**
- `\LoadClass`, →II **705, 708, 709f.**
 - error using, →II 729, 736, 741
 - warning using, →II 765
- `\LoadClassWithOptions`, →II 704, **709, 710**
- `\LoadFontDefinitionFile`, →I 747
- `\loadgeometry` (geometry), →I 383
- `\loading` option (tracefmt), →I **705**, →II 782
- `\LoadMicrotypeFile` (microtype), →I 132
- `\loadonly` option
 - (enumitem), →I 261
 - (titlesec), →I 50
- `\loadshadowlibrary` option (todonotes), →I **239, 240f.**
- `\localcounter` (paracol), →I 348
- `\localecounter` (babel), →II 335
- `\localenumeral` (babel), →II 335
- LocalForms key (fontspec), →I 727
- `\localmathalphabets` counter, →I **681**, →II 248, 740, 754
- `\location` BibTeX field, →II 393
- (biblatex), →II 383, **388, 403ff.**
- `\loc1` OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 727
- `\lof` file extension, →I 9, **11, 55**, 70f., 558
 - (chapterbib), →II 574
 - (titletoc), →I 59
- `\lof` option (multitoc), →I 70
- `\lof` value (acro), →I 163
- `\log` math operator $\log x$, →I 753, →II 164, **193**
- `\log` file extension, →I 9, **11f.**, →II 354, 608ff., 734
 - identifying files, →II 712
 - (babel), →II 338
 - (widows-and-orphans), →I 426
- `\LogHook`, →II 674
- `\Logo` value (listings), →I 323
- `\logonly` option (trace), →II 782
- `\long`, →II **627, 634, 766**
- `\long` key (acro), →I **156, 157-163**
- `\long` value
 - (acro), →I **158, 159, 161**
 - (jurabib), →II 523
- `\long-format` key (acro), →I 160
- `\long-indefinite` key (acro), →I 158
- `\long-plural` key (acro), →I 158
- `\long-plural-form` key (acro), →I 158
- `\long-short` value (acro), →I 161
- `\Longarrownot` math symbol \nearrow (stmaryrd), →II **220, 221**
- `\longarrownot` math symbol \nearrow (stmaryrd), →II 220
- `\longgather` env. (tlc/amsmath), →II 131
- `\Longleftarrow` math symbol \Longleftarrow , →II 219
- `\longleftarrow` math symbol \longleftarrow , →II 219
- `\Longleftrightharpoon` math symbol \Longleftrightharpoon , →II **219, 662**
- `\longleftrightharpoon` math symbol \longleftrightharpoon , →II **219, 221**
- `\Longmapsfrom` math symbol \Longmapsfrom (stmaryrd), →II 219
- `\longmapsfrom` math symbol \longmapsfrom (stmaryrd), →II 219
- `\Longmapsto` math symbol \Longmapsto (stmaryrd), →II 219
- `\longmapsto` math symbol \longmapsto , →II 218, **219**
- `\longnamesfirst` option (natbib), →II **494, 495**
 - problems using, →II 494
- `\longpage` (tlc), →I 415, 417
- `\Longrightarrow` math symbol \Longrightarrow , →II 175, **219**
- `\longrightarrow` math symbol \longrightarrow , →II 159, 175, **219**
- `\longtable` env. (longtable),
 - I **459, 460, 461, 462, 463f., 465, 472, 491f., 525**
 - “floating”, →I 525
- `\longtable` value
 - (acro), →I 163
 - (keyvaltable), →I 497
- `\longtable` package, →I 118, **459-463**, 497, 568, →II 978
 - combined with arydshln, →I 469
 - combined with booktabs, →I 471
 - combined with caption, →I 462
 - combined with fcolumn, →I 489
- `\longtable*` env.
 - (caption), →I 463
 - (lrcaption), →I 527
- `\longtabu` value (keyvaltable), →I 497
- `\lookat` key/option (jurabib), →II **518, 519, 520, 532, 540**
- `\lookatprefix` (jurabib), →II 518
- `\lookatsuffix` (jurabib), →II 518
- `\lookforgender` key/option (jurabib), →II 526
- `\loopabove` key (tikz-cd), →II 163
- `\loopdown` key (tikz-cd), →II 162
- `\loopleft` key (tikz-cd), →II 162
- `\loopright` key (tikz-cd), →II 163
- `\looparrowleft` math symbol \looparrowleft (amssymb), →II 219
- `\looparrowright` math symbol \looparrowright (amssymb), →II 219
- `\looseness` TeX counter, →I 414, **422, 427ff.**, →II **778, 982**
 - output produced with, →II 778
- `\looser` option (newtxtext), →II 244
- `\lopen` (tlc/mathtools), →II 172
- `\lor` math symbol \vee , →II 215
- lost characters, tracing, →II 780
- `\lot` file extension, →I **11f., 55**, 70f., 558
 - (chapterbib), →II 574
 - (titletoc), →I 59
- `\lot` option (multitoc), →I 70
- `\loversize` key (lettrine), →I **142, 143, 144**
- `\low-sup` option (subdepth), →II 207
- `\Lowercase` value (fontspec), →I 716

- `\lowercase`, →I 663
 - problems with, →II 327
 - lowersorbian option (babel), →II 301
- `\lozenge` math symbol \diamond (amssymb), →II 213
- LPPL (L^AT_EX Project Public License), →I 4
- `\lproject` (tlc/url), →I 200
- LR boxes, →II 660, [661ff.](#)
- `\lraise` key (lettrine), →I [142](#), 143, 144
- `\lrbox` env., →I 300, →II [670](#)
- `\lrcorner` math symbol \lrcorner (amssymb), →II 224
- `\Lmulticolcolumns` (multicol), →I 355
 - lsc syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- lscapex package, →I 384
- lsfonts option (getnonfreefonts), →II 3
- `\Lsh` math symbol \upharpoonright (amssymb), →II 219
- `\lslig` (microtype), →I [192](#), [193](#), 197
 - lsorbian option (babel), →II 316
- `\lststyle` (microtype), →I [192](#), [193](#)
- `\lstdefinestyle` (listings), →I [331](#), 332
- `\lstinline` (listings), →I 325
- `\lstinputlisting` (listings), →I [325](#), 326, 330, 332
 - lstlisting counter (listings), →I 330
 - lstlisting env. (listings), →I [324](#), 326–329, [331ff.](#)
- `\lstlistingname` (listings), →I 330
- `\lstlistlistingname` (listings), →I 330
- `\lstlistoflistings` (listings), →I 330
- `\lstloadlanguages` (listings), →I [324](#), 325
 - lstnumber counter (listings), →I 327
- `\lstset` (listings), →I [323](#), 324–333
 - lsx syntax (*font series*), →I 732
 - lt value (upmendex), →II 369
 - ltablex value (typed-checklist), →I 296
- ltablex package, →I 463
- ltcaption package, →I 527
- `\LTcapwidth` rigid length (longtable), →I 462
 - LTchunksize counter (longtable), →I 463
- `\ltimes` math symbol \ltimes (amssymb), →II 215
- `\LTleft` length (longtable), →I 461
- `\LTright` length (longtable), →I 461
- `\LTpre` length (longtable), →I 461
- `\LTright` length (longtable), →I 461
 - lttextcomp.dtx file, →I 702
- .ltx file extension, →I 11
 - (tlc), →I 19
- .ltx2 file extension (tlc), →I 19
- `\Ltxarrows` (pict2e), →I 604
- `\Ltxcolon` (tlc), →II 676
- `\Ltxconcept` (tlc/doc), →II 594
 - ltxdoc document class, →II 589, [597](#), 598, 614
 - ltxdoc.cfg file (ltxdoc), →II 598
 - ltxtable package, →I 110
 - Lua value (listings), →I [323](#), 332
 - lua-check-hyphen package, →II 775f.
 - lua-ul package, →I 194
 - luafindfont program, →I 708f.
 - luahtex program, →II 730, 786
 - lualatex program, →I 631
 - luaotload-tool program, →I 707f.
 - luapstricks package, →I 631
 - LuaT_EX, →I 652, *see also* Unicode engine specialities
 - luatex option
 - (crop), →I 413
 - (geometry), →I 383
 - luatexja package, →II 331
 - luc syntax (*font series*), →I 732
 - lucida value (mathalpha), →II 232ff.
 - Lucida fonts, description/examples, →II [21–25](#), 112
 - in math and text (regular and demibold), →II 278f.
 - lucidabr package, →I 660, →II [21](#), 278
- `\lumen` (siunitx), →I 170
- `\lux` (siunitx), →I 170
 - lux syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- luximono package, →II 95
 - Luximono fonts, description/examples, →II 95
- `\lvec` (tlc), →II [626](#), 628, 766f.
- `\lVert` math symbol \lVert (amsmath),
 - II [190](#), 194, [223](#), 224, 261–296
- `\lvert` math symbol $|$ (amsmath),
 - II [151](#), [190](#), 192, 194, [223](#), 224, 261–296
- `\lvertneqq` math symbol \leqneq (amssymb), →II 217
- .lvt file extension (l3build), →I [11](#), →II [609](#)
- lw key (keyfloat), →I 569
- lwrap package, →II 984
- lx syntax (*font series*), →I [732](#), 733
- LY1 font encoding, →I [737](#), →II 7, 23
 - fonts encoded in, →I 687, →II 11, 14–17, 20, 22, 25, 28f., 31, 33, 35–49, 51f., 54, 56f., 59, 61–65, 69–72, 74, 76ff., 80, 82f., 85–89, 91f., 98–101, 103
 - list of LICR objects, →I 767–776

M

- M syntax
 - (adjustbox), →I 598
 - (keyfloat), →I [568](#), 570
 - (qrcode), →I 613
 - (tlc/abracas), →II 188
- M value (thmtools), →I [286](#), 287
- `\m` (siunitx), →I 175
 - m syntax, →I 734
 - (*cmd/env decl*), →I 233, 249, →II [633](#), 635–640, [642ff.](#)
 - (*font series*), →I 671, 673, 712, [732f.](#), 734, →II 229
 - (adjustbox), →I 598
 - (array), →I [439](#), [440](#), 441, 442, 447, 477
 - (fmtcount), →I [154](#), 155
 - (paracol), →I [345](#), 348
 - (tabularx), →I 449
 - m value (draftwatermark), →I 411
 - m/d/y value (typed-checklist), →I [294](#), 295
 - m? syntax (*font series*), →I 733f.
- `\m@ne`, →II 624
- maccyr option (inputenc), →II 327
- macedonian option (babel), →II 301
- macro env. (doc), →II [586](#), 588, 592, 595, 597
- macrocode env. (doc), →II [585](#), 586, 587f., 594–597
- macrocode* env. (doc), →II [585](#), 588, 595
- `\MacrocodeTopsep` length (doc), →II 597

- `\MacroFont` (doc), →II 597
- `\MacroIndent` rigid length (doc), →II 597
- macrolike key (doc), →II 592, 593
- macros
 - cross-references, →II 588f.
 - descriptions, creating, →II 585, 586
 - documenting, *see* documentation tools
 - macro stack, displaying, →II 714
 - naming, →II 622
 - spaces after macro names, →I 152, 153
- `\MacroTopsep` length (doc), →II 597
- mag key/option (geometry), →I 383
- magaz package, →I 146
- magnification, →I 383
- magyar option (babel), →II 301
- `\magyarOptions` (babel), →II 336
- `\mailto` (uri), →I 204
- mailto: syntax (hyperref|bookmark), →I 100, 104, 106
- `\main` (doc), →II 594, 596
- main option (babel), →II 755
- main code part (*classes and packages*), →II 704
- main font, →I 659, 665
- main matter, →I 26, 27f.
- main scripts, creating, →II 603f.
- `\mainfont` (fontspec), →II 259f.
- `\mainmatter`, →I 26, 386
- maintitle BibTeX field, →II 383
- maja biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, 449
- major-version option (snapshot), →I 112
- Make value (listings), →I 323
- `\makeatletter`, →I 19, 26, 210, 256, →II 476f., 499, 624
- `\makeatother`, →I 19, 26, 210, 256, →II 476f., 499, 624
- `\makebox`, →I 209, 308, 434, 438, 606,
 - II 204, 598, 661, 662, 680
 - zero-width, →I 261, 588
 - (ltxdoc), →II 598
- makebst.tex file (custom-bib), →II 426, 427–432
- `\makeglossary`, →II 349
- makeidx package, →II 345, 348, 352
- `\makeindex`, →II 345, 351, 352
 - (makeidx), →II 327, 546
- MakeIndex program, →I 12, →II 327, 344, 346, 348,
 - 350–364, 365, 593f., 602, 608, 613, 979, *see also*
 - index generation; upmendex program
- multilingual documents, problems, →II 327
- `\makelabel`, →I 259, →II 631
 - (tlc), →II 632
- `\makeLineNumber` (lineno), →I 338, 339
- `\makeLineNumberRight` (lineno), →I 337
- `\MakeLinkTarget` (hyperref), →I 97, 99
- `\MakeLowercase`, →I 41, 67, 90, 178, 663, →II 327
 - (fontenc), →I 693
- makematch option (askinclud), →I 30
- `\MakePercentComment` (doc), →II 597
- `\MakePercentIgnore` (doc), →II 597
- `\MakePerPage`
 - (bigfoot), →I 224
 - (perpage), →I 218, 219f., 223f.
- `\MakePrivateLetters` (doc), →II 597
- `\MakeRobust`, →II 628, 636, 731
 - error using, →II 720
- `\MakeSentenceCase` (biblatex), →II 561
- `\MakeSentenceCase*` (biblatex), →II 561
- `\MakeShortVerb` (doc|shortvrb), →I 298, →II 586f., 595, 706
- `\MakeShortVerb*` (doc|shortvrb), →I 299, →II 586f., 595
- `\MakeSpecialShortVerb` (newverbs), →I 300
- `\MakeTextLowercase` (textcase), →I 178, 179
- `\MakeTextUppercase` (textcase), →I 178, 179
- `\maketitle`, →I 26, 28
 - error using, →II 734
 - producing unwanted page number, →I 396, 404
 - warning using, →II 756
 - (authblk), →I 27
 - (titling), →I 27
- `\MakeUppercase`, →I 178, 403, →II 327, 395
 - in headings, →II 371
 - (fontenc), →I 693
- malay option (babel), →II 301
- `\maltese` math symbol ✕ (amssymb), →II 213
- `\mancite` (biblatex), →II 535
- Manju (Mongolian), →II 341
- manual BibTeX entry type, →II 382, 386, 389
- manuscript BibTeX entry type (biblatex), →II 462
- manuscripts biblatex style
 - (biblatex-manuscripts-philology), →II 462
- manuscripts-noautosorthand biblatex style
 - (biblatex-manuscripts-philology), →II 462, 463
- manyfoot package, →I 153, 207, 218, 220–226
- `\map` (biblatex), →II 392, 408, 417
- maparabic option (babel), →II 334
- `\MappingFunction` (tlc), →II 643
- `\maps` (biblatex), →II 392, 408, 417
- `\Mapsfrom` math symbol \Leftarrow (stmaryrd), →II 219
- `\mapsfrom` math symbol \Leftarrow (stmaryrd), →II 219
- `\Mapsfromchar` math symbol \vdash (stmaryrd), →II 220
- `\mapsfromchar` math symbol \vdash (stmaryrd), →II 220
- Mapsto key (tikz-cd), →II 162
- `\Mapsto` math symbol \Rightarrow (stmaryrd), →II 219
- `\mapsto` math symbol \Rightarrow , →II 174, 219, 566
- `\Mapstochar` math symbol \vdash (stmaryrd), →II 220
- `\mapstochar` math symbol \vdash , →II 220
- marcellus package, →II 99
- Marcellus fonts, description/examples, →II 99
- `\marg` (ltxdoc), →II 598
- margin key
 - (adjustbox), →I 598
 - (fixme), →I 243f.
- margin key/option
 - (caption), →I 542
 - (geometry), →I 381, 382, 412ff.
 - (subcaption), →I 554f.
- margin option (continue), →I 408, 409
- margin value (changes), →I 247, 248
- margin* key (adjustbox), →I 598
- marginal option (footmisc), →I 213, 223, →II 519, 521

- marginal notes, →I 232, 233–236, 237, 381, *see also*
 - endnotes; footnotes
 - footnotes as, →I 219, 222
 - in columns, →I 347
 - numbered, →I 219
 - todos, →I 237, 238–241, 242, 243f.
- marginbox key (empheq), →II 175
- marginfigure env. (keyfloat), →I 570
- \marginfont (marginnote), →I 234, 235
- \marginlabel (tlc), →I 233
- \marginnote (marginnote), →I 234, 235, 347
- marginnote option (snotex), →I 236
- marginnote package, →I 234f., 236, 347
- \marginpar, →I 121, 232f., 234ff., 238, 335, 517, →II 663
 - error using, →II 723, 734, 740
 - justification in, →I 124
 - numbered per page, →I 219
 - problems with hyphenation, →I 233
 - style parameters, →I 233
 - warning using, →II 755
 - (lineno), →I 335
 - (mparhack), →I 233
 - (multicol), not supported, →I 353
 - (paracol), →I 347
 - (titlesec), problems using, →I 43
- \marginparpush rigid length, →I 233, 367, 369
- \marginparsep rigid length, →I 233, 367, 369, 401, 538
 - (fancyhdr), →I 401
 - marginparsep key/option (geometry), →I 381
- \marginparswitchfalse (layouts), →I 373
- \marginparthreshold (paracol), →I 347
- \marginparwidth rigid length,
 - I 233, 240, 367, 369, 371, 401, 538
 - (fancyhdr), →I 401
- marginparwidth key/option (geometry), →I 377, 380, 381
- marginratio key/option (geometry), →I 377, 381
- margins
 - driver margins, →I 368
 - footnotes in, →I 212, 213f.
 - inner margins, →I 366
 - optical alignment, →II 978
 - outer margins, →I 366
 - page layout, →I 366, 379ff.
- margins option (savetrees), →I 385
- marginatable env. (keyfloat), →I 570
- \mark, *dangerous — do not use*, →I 388
- mark OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 715
- mark key/option (fancypar), →I 147
- mark option (gitinfo2), →II 616
- mark commands, →I 388, 389, 390, 391, 392–395, 403f.
- \mark_if_eq:nnnnnnTF, →I 393
- \markboth, →I 389, 390, 393f., 396f., 402f., 404, 567
 - error using, →II 715
- \MarkedPar (fancypar), →I 147
- \marker (tlc/xspace), →I 153
- markers option (endfloat), →I 526
- marking omitted text, *see* ellipsis
- \markright, →I 389, 390, 393f., 396f., 402f., 404
 - error using, →II 715
- \marks, *dangerous — do not use*, →I 388
- markshow option (multicol), →I 360
- markup option (changes), →I 248
- marvodic.pdf file (marvosym), →II 117
- marvosym package, →II 117f.
- MarVoSym fonts, description/examples, →II 117
- mastersthesis BibTeX entry type, →II 386
- match value (siunitx), →I 177
- MatchLowercase value (fontspec), →I 714
- matchlowercase option (TeX Gyre font packages),
 - I 689, 690, →II 69
- MatchUppercase value (fontspec), →I 714
- matchuppercase option (TeX Gyre font packages),
 - I 689, →II 69
- math option
 - (anttor), →II 101, 295f.
 - (blindtext), →I 363
 - (iwona), →II 77, 293
 - (kurier), →II 79, 295
- math value
 - (footmisc), →I 212
 - (siunitx), →I 177
- math alphabet identifier, *see* alphabet identifier
- math alphabets
 - blackboard bold, →II 130, 226, 228, 230, 233, 234, 250f.
 - calligraphic, →I 678, →II 130, 226, 227, 229f., 231ff.
 - choosing suitable, →II 228f.
 - Euler Fraktur, →II 130, 226, 228, 230, 241
 - Euler Script, →II 130, 227, 241
 - fraktur, →II 130, 226, 228, 230, 233
 - script, →II 226, 227, 229f., 231ff.
 - simplified setup, →II 230, 231
 - list available alphabets, →II 231
- math fonts, *see also* fonts
 - alphabet identifiers, →I 677, 678ff., 681, 682,
 - II 254f., 256, 257
 - maximum number of, →I 681, 682, →II 739, 754, 764
 - AMS, →II 130
 - Antykwa Toruńska, →II 296
 - Asana Math, →II 270
 - automatic changes, →I 676f.
 - Baskervaldx, →II 272f.
 - BaskervilleF, →II 271, 273
 - blackboard bold, →II 227f.
 - bold letters, →II 235ff., 238
 - poor man's bold, →II 235f.
 - Cambria Math, →II 274
 - CM Bright, →II 290
 - Cochineal, →II 263
 - Computer Modern (CM), →II 262, 284
 - Concrete, →II 288
 - EB Garamond, →II 264f.
 - Erewhon, →II 283
 - Euler, →II 240, 241ff., 289
 - Fira Math, →II 259f., 290f.
 - font commands, →I 682

math fonts (*cont.*)

- formula versions, →I 682, 683
- Garamond Math, →II 265
- Garamondx, →II 264f.
- GFS Neo-Hellenic Math, →II 290f.
- in this book, →II 977
- in Unicode engines, →II 253–260
- Iwona, →II 292f.
- Kp, →II 266–269
- Kp Sans, →II 293
- Kurier, →II 294f.
- Latin Modern Math, →II 254, 285
- Libertine, →II 275, 277
- Libertinus Math, →II 275, 277
- Lucida Bright Math, →II 278f.
- Lucida Bright Math Demibold, →II 278f.
- New Century Schoolbook, →II 275f.
- New PX, →II 249, 250, 268f.
- NewComputerModern Math, →II 286
- Noto, →II 287
- Noto Sans, →II 252, 295
- Palatino, →II 251, 252
- Pazo Math, →II 251, 268
- scaling large operators, →I 704
- setting up, →I 749–753
- STIX 2 Math, →II 280, 282
- TeX Gyre Bonum Math, →II 273
- TeX Gyre DejaVu Math, →II 288f.
- TeX Gyre Pagella Math, →II 270f.
- TeX Gyre Schola Math, →II 276
- TeX Gyre Termes Math, →II 280f.
- Times Roman, →II 243–246, 272, 280
- Utopia, →II 283
- XCharter, →II 274f.
- XITS Math, →II 280f.

math setup, Unicode engine, →II 253–260, 265, 267, 270, 273f., 276f., 279, 281f., 285f., 289, 291

math symbol types, →II 209

math symbols, *see also* special characters; text symbols

- accents, →II 176f., 214
- as superscripts, →II 177
- binary operator symbols, →II 214
- compound, →II 163, 164, 165, 166–171, 172f., 174, 175, 176f., 178ff.
- continued fractions, →II 166
- decorated arrows, →II 163f.
- decorative, →II 179f.
- delimiters, →II 157ff., 190, 191, 199
- derivatives, →II 170f.
- ellipsis (...), →II 180, 181f.
- formulas, boxed, →II 174f.
- fractions, →II 164, 165, 166
- generalizations, →II 164, 165
- horizontal extensions, →II 182, 183–191
- integral signs, multiple, →II 168ff.
- intervals, →II 171, 172f.
- letters, →II 211–214
- math symbol type, →II 209

math symbols (*cont.*)

- `\mathbin` (boxes), →II 215
- `\mathbin` (circles), →II 216
- `\mathbin` (miscellaneous), →II 215
- `\mathclose` (open/close), →II 190, 223f.
- mathematical type, →II 209
- `\mathinner` (punctuation), →II 223
- `\mathop`, →II 222
- `\mathopen` (open/close), →II 190, 223f.
- `\mathord` (Greek), →II 212
- `\mathord` (letter-shaped), →II 213
- `\mathord` (miscellaneous), →II 213
- `\mathord` (punctuation), →II 223
- `\mathpunct` (punctuation), →II 223
- `\mathrel` (arrows), →II 219f.
- `\mathrel` (arrows — negated), →II 220
- `\mathrel` (equality and order), →II 217
- `\mathrel` (equality and order — negated), →II 217
- `\mathrel` (miscellaneous), →II 221
- `\mathrel` (negation and arrow extensions), →II 220
- `\mathrel` (sets and inclusion), →II 218
- `\mathrel` (sets and inclusion — negated), →II 218
- `\mathrel` (various colons), →II 221
- modular relations, →II 171
- numerals, →II 211–214
- opening/closing symbols, →II 223
- operator symbols, →II 222
- operators, →II 166f., 168–171, 179, 180
- operators, multilingual documents, →II 321
- ordinary symbols, →II 211ff., 214
- positioning subscripts/superscripts, →II 166f.
- punctuation, →II 222
- radicals, →II 199, 200
- relation symbols, →II 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221
- setting up, →I 750–753
- spacing between, →II 210, 211, 214
- subscripts, below Ord, Bin or Rel symbols, →II 179
- subscripts, limiting positions, →II 166f.
- superscripts, above Ord, Bin or Rel symbols, →II 179
- superscripts, limiting positions, →II 166f.
- symbol classes, →II 209, 210f., 214
- tensors, →II 178f.
- variable form, →II 180, 181, 182, 183–191
- vertical extensions, →II 190f.

math-style key/option (unicode-math), →II 257, 258, 267

`\mathalpha`, →I 679, 751, 752, →II 209, 242

mathalpha package, →II 226, 228f., 230–234, 240f., 273

`\mathbb`, →II 226, 227f., 254

- (amsfonts|amssymb), →II 130, 226, 261–296
- (bboldx), →II 227
- (ds serif), →II 227, 228
- (mathalpha), →II 230
- (mathpazo), →II 251, 252
- (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 247, 250
- (tlc), →I 752, →II 228
- (unicode-math), →II 254

- `\mathbf`, →I 678, 679, 683, →II 135, 137, 168, 176, 179f., 199, 216, 225, 235, 236, 255, 261
 - (`\bboldx`), →II 227
 - (`\bm`), →II 235
 - (`\eulervm`), →II 243
 - (`\fcolumn`), →I 488
- `\mathbfbb`
 - (`\bboldx`), →II 227
 - (`\ds serif`), →II 228
 - (`\mathalpha`), →II 230, 231
- `\mathbfcal` (`\mathalpha`), →II 230, 231
- `\mathbffrac` (`\mathalpha`), →II 230, 231
- `\mathbfsc` (`\mathalpha`), →II 230, 231
- `\mathbin`, →I 751, 752, →II 209, 214, 215f., 237
 - (`\bm`), →II 237
- `\mathbold` (`\eulervm`), →II 243
- `\mathcal`, →I 678, 679, 681, →II 150, 152, 159, 176f., 180, 203, 225, 226, 227, 230, 232, 241, 254, 255, 261–296
 - (`\ccfont`), →II 239
 - (`\eucal`), →II 130, 227, 240
 - (`\eulervm`), →II 241
 - (`\mathalpha`), →II 230
 - (`\mathpazo`), →II 251
 - (`\notomath`), →II 252
 - (`\tlc`), →II 229
 - (`\unicode-math`), →II 254
- `\mathclap` (`\mathtools`), →II 204
- `\mathclose`, →I 751, →II 172, 190, 209, 223f.
- `\mathcolor` (`\color`|`\xcolor`), →II 207, 208, 659
- `\mathdollar` math symbol \$, →II 213
 - `\mathdots` package, →II 176, 182
- `\mathds` (`\dsfont`), →II 228
- `\mathellipsis` math symbol ..., →II 223
- Mathematica value (listings), →I 323
- mathematical typesetting, *see also* $\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\text{-}\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$; *specific mathematical elements*
 - fine-tuning layout, →II 194–208
 - aligning subscripts, →II 206, 207
 - alignment, →II 200ff., 203f.
 - big-g delimiters, →II 199
 - color, →II 207f.
 - downscaling equations, →II 206
 - horizontal space, →II 204, 205
 - line breaking, →II 197, 198f.
 - radicals, →II 199, 200
 - sizing, →II 195, 196f., 204
 - smashing, →II 203f.
 - spacing, →II 195, 196f., 200ff., 203, 204
 - subformulas, →II 197
 - operator names, →II 192, 193, 194
 - text, →II 192, 193, 194
- `\mathescape` key (`\fvextra`), →I 313
- `\mathfont` (`\unicode-math`), →II 259f.
- `\mathfrak`, →II 226, 230, 254
 - (`\amsfont`|`\amssymb`), →I 679, →II 130, 226, 228
 - (`\eufrak`), →II 130, 240, 241f.
 - (`\eulervm`), →II 241
- `\mathfrak` (*cont.*)
 - (`\mathalpha`), →II 230
 - (`\unicode-math`), →II 254
- `\mathhw` (`\tlc`|`\unicode-math`), →II 257
- `\mathindent` length (`\amsmath`), →II 132
- `\mathinner`, →II 209, 223
- `\mathit`, →I 677f., 682, →II 255, 257
 - `\mathlines` option (`\lineno`), →I 336
- `\mathllap` (`\mathtools`), →II 204
- `\mathnormal`, →I 677f., 679, 680, →II 246, 250, 254
 - (`\eulervm`), →II 241
 - (`\newtxmath`|`\newpxmath`), →II 250
- `\mathop`, →I 751, →II 167, 196, 209, 222
 - (`\bm`), →II 237
- `\mathopen`, →I 751, →II 172, 190, 209, 223f.
- `\mathord`, →I 751, →II 136, 175, 209, 212ff., 223
- `\mathparagraph` math symbol ¶, →II 213
- `\mathpazo` package, →I 690f., →II 251f., 268
- `\mathpple` *obsolete* package, →I 691, →II 251, *see instead* `\mathpazo`
- `\mathptm` *obsolete* package, →I 691, *see instead* `\newtxmath`
- `\mathptmx` *obsolete* package, →I 691, *see instead* `\newtxmath`
- `\mathpunct`, →I 751, →II 209, 223
- `\mathrel`, →I 751, →II 136, 197, 209, 214, 217–221
 - (`\bm`), →II 237
- `\mathring` math accent $\mathring{}$, →II 176, 214
- `\mathrlap` (`\mathtools`), →II 204
- `\mathrm`, →I 678, 680, →II 159, 192, 207, 246f., 250, 255, 257
 - (`\newpxtext`), →II 250
 - (`\unicode-math`), →II 259
 - `\mathrsfs` *obsolete* package, →II 230, *see instead* `\mathalpha`
- `\mathscr`, →II 226, 229, 254
 - (`\eucal`), →II 227, 240, 241
 - (`\eulervm`), not existing, →II 241
 - (`\mathalpha`), →II 230
 - (`\tlc`), →II 229f.
 - (`\unicode-math`), →II 254
 - `\mathscr` option (`\eucal`), →II 227, 240
 - `\MathScript` value (`\fontspec`), →II 260
 - `\MathScriptScript` value (`\fontspec`), →II 260
- `\mathsection` math symbol §, →II 213
- `\mathsf`, →I 678, 679, 681, 683, →II 179, 255
 - (`\eulervm`), →II 243
 - (`\unicode-math`), →II 255
- `\mathsfsl` (`\tlc`), →I 680, 683, →II 179
- `\mathsterling` math symbol £, →II 213
- `\mathstrut`, →II 166, 179, 186, 200, 201, 202
 - `\mathstrut` option (`\matters`), →II 179
- `\mathtools` package, →II 117, 130, 141ff., 145, 155f., 165f., 168, 172, 174, 180ff., 184, 196f., 202, 204
- `\mathtools` additions/corrections to `\amsmath`
 - `\cases` env., →II 156
 - arrows, →II 163
 - auto-supplied delimiters, →II 172
 - cramped subformulas, →II 196
 - fine-tuning improvements, →II 204
 - formulas, as mini-pages, →II 140f.
 - formulas, boxed, →II 174

- mathtools additions/corrections to amsmath (*cont.*)
 - formulas, interrupted, →II 143
 - fractions, →II 165
 - intervals, →II 171
 - matrix environments, →II 155
 - over/under brackets, →II 184
 - overlays, →II 204
 - stacking sub/superscripts, →II 168
 - sub/superscripts on the left, →II 180
 - vertical dots, →II 181
 - vertical spacing, →II 145
- `\mathtt`, →I 678, 682, →II 255
 - (notomath), →II 252
- `\mathtt` (tlc/unicode-math), →I 682
- `\mathversion`, →I 682, 683, →II 260
 - error using, →II 730
- Matlab value (listings), →I 323
- matrix env. (amsmath), →II 154
 - error using, →II 730, 735
- matrix* env. (mathtools), →II 155
- matrix-like environments
 - cases env. (amsmath), →II 156
 - cases env. (mathtools), →II 156
 - numcases env. (cases), →II 156f.
 - subnumcases env. (cases), →II 156f.
 - matrix environments (amsmath), →II 154ff., 182
 - matrix environments (bigdelim), →II 158, 159
 - matrix environments (delarray), →II 157, 158
 - matrix environments (mathtools), →II 155, 156
 - single equation with variant parts, →II 156f.
 - subscripts/superscripts, stacking, →II 167, 168
- mattens package, →II 178f.
- `\max` math operator `\max x`, →I 753,
 - II 167, 193, 210, 261–296
- max syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- `\max_`height key (adjustbox), →I 597
- `\max_`size key (adjustbox), →I 597
- `\max_`totalheight key (adjustbox), →I 597
- `\max_`totalsize key (adjustbox), →I 597
- `\max_`width key (adjustbox), →I 597
- maxalphanames key/option (biblatex), →II 487
- `\maxbalancingoverflow` rigid length (multicol), →I 356, 359
- maxbibnames key/option (biblatex), →II 472, 547, 548
- maxcitenames key/option (biblatex),
 - II 472, 486f., 501, 506, 547, 548f.
- `\maxdimen` rigid length, →I 190, 451
- `\maxlevel` key/option (csquotes), →I 179, 184
- MaxMatrixCols counter (amsmath), →II 154, 155
- maxnames counter (biblatex), →II 485, 501
- maxnames key/option (biblatex), →II 472, 485, 501, 502, 548
- `\maxovalrad` (pict2e), →I 603, 605
- maxsortnames key/option (biblatex), →II 548
- `\MaybeStop` (doc), →II 587, 595, 599
- `\mbox`, →I 125, 189, 595, →II 192, 625, 661, 670
 - hiding material in a `\discretionary`, →I 329
 - preventing hyphenation, →I 427
 - to prevent a line break, →II 198, 199
 - to suppress hyphenation, →II 479
- `\mbox` (*cont.*)
 - (acro), →I 157, 159
 - (bm), →II 237
 - (dcolumn), →I 482, 484
 - (microtype), →I 197
 - (soul), →I 197
 - mc syntax (*font series*), →I 673, →II 752
 - mcite key/option (biblatex), →II 543
 - mcite package, →II 543
 - mciteplus package, →II 543
 - .md file extension (l3build), →II 608
 - md option (titlesec), →I 40
 - md syntax, →I 673f.
 - md value (caption), →I 542, 543
 - `\mddefault`, →I 671, 673
 - mdframed key (thmtools), →I 286
 - mdframed package, →I 286, 614f.
 - `\mdseries`, →I 661, 667, 671
 - `\meaning`, →II 769
 - `\meas` math operator `\meas x` (tlc/amsmath), →II 194
 - `\measuredangle` math symbol \angle (amssymb), →II 213
 - med option (zlmitt), →II 93
 - medium option (*various font packages*), →II 8
 - (Chivo), →II 70
 - (ClearSans), →II 72
 - (algolrevived), →II 90
 - (cabin), →II 70
 - (titlesec), →I 40
 - `\medmuskip` length, →II 205, 210, 211
 - `\medskip`, →II 654
 - `\medskipamount` length, →I 45, 329, →II 654
 - `\medspace`, →II 204f.
 - `\mega` (siunitx), →I 172, 175
 - memo page style (tlc/fancyhdr), →I 404
 - memoir document class, →I 40, 51, 154, 374, 430, →II 490
 - memory exceeded message, →II 744–749
 - mendex program, →II 364
 - menubordercolor key/option (hyperref), →I 108
 - menucolor key/option (hyperref), →I 103, 108
 - Mercury value (listings), →I 323
 - `\merge` math symbol \mathbb{M} (stmaryd), →II 215
 - merlin.mbs file (custom-bib), →II 427, 431
 - merriweather package, →II 26
 - Merriweather fonts, description/examples, →II 25
 - `\MessageBreak`, →II 706, 707
 - messages, *see also* troubleshooting
 - generating, →II 602f.
 - informational, →II 749–765
 - memory exceeded, →II 744–749
 - user, generating, →II 602f.
 - warning, →II 749–765
 - messages, error
 - * (asterisk) only, →II 717
 - list of, →II 355f., 365f., 716–744
 - source line, finding, →II 712–716
 - syntax, →II 712, 714

- messages, index generation
 - error messages
 - list of (*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 355f.
 - list of (*upmendex* only), →II 365f.
 - suppressing all messages, →II 354, 364
- `\meta` (doc), →II 585, 595
 - metadata, →I 23, 24, 106, 107
 - MetaPost value (listings), →I 323
- `\MetaPrefix` (docstrip), →II 604, 605
- `\metre` (siunitx), →I 169, 170, 171, 173, 176f.
- `\mho` math symbol \mathcal{U} (amssymb), →II 213
- `\miami` (miami), →II 103
 - miami package, →II 103
- Miami Nueva fonts, description/examples, →II 103, 110, 113
- `\micro` (siunitx), →I 172
 - micro-typography
 - configuration files, →I 132
 - configuring, →I 130, 131-137
 - debugging configuration, →I 132
 - default settings, →I 133
 - enhancing justification, →I 126-137
 - expansion & compression, →I 129
 - expansion control, →I 129f.
 - for specific font sets, →I 128
 - interword spacing, →I 134, 135
 - ligatures, preventing, →I 135
 - miscellaneous options, →I 130
 - protrusion & expansion, →I 128, 131ff.
 - protrusion control, →I 128
 - restricting context, →I 133
 - special considerations, →I 135ff.
 - tracking, kerning, and spacing, →I 127, 133ff.
- microtype package, →I 126-137, 191-194, 196f., 423, 656, 715, →II 89, 774, 814, 978
 - error using, →II 735
 - problems with typewriter, →II 89
- microtype-show package, →I 132
- microtype.cfg file (microtype), →I 130, 133
- `\microtypecontext` (microtype), →I 133, 137
- `\microtypecontext` env. (microtype), →I 133
- `\microtypesetup` (microtype), →I 130, 136f., 194
- `\mid` math symbol $|$, →II 221, 228
- `\middle`, →II 190, 191, 199, 223
 - error using, →II 722, 731
- middle key (tcolorbox), →I 616, 617, 620, 621
- `\middlecolor` key (tikz), →I 639
- `\midpenalty` key (enumitem), →I 265
- `\MidRule` (keyvaltable), →I 498
- `\midrule` (booktabs), →I 471, 472, 473, 490
- `\midrulesep` rigid length (booktabs), →I 472
- midway key (tikz), →I 637, 644
- `\midwordellipsis` (ellipsis), →I 149
- Milestone syntax (typed-checklist), →I 293
- `\Milestone` (typed-checklist), →I 293
- `\milli` (siunitx), →I 172
- `\min` math operator $\min x$, →II 193
- `\min` syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- `\min_height` key (adjustbox), →I 597
- `\min_size` key (adjustbox), →I 597
- `\min_totalheight` key (adjustbox), →I 597
- `\min_totalsize` key (adjustbox), →I 597
- `\min_width` key (adjustbox), →I 597
- `\minalignsep` (amsmath), →II 139, 140f.
- `\minalphanames` key/option (biblatex), →II 487
- `\minbibnames` key/option (biblatex), →II 547, 548
- `\mincitenames` key/option (biblatex), →II 501, 506, 547
- `\mincrossrefs` key/option (biblatex), →II 407
- minimal value (tcolorbox), →I 617
- minimal document class, →II 710
- minimal working example (MWE), →I 253, 362, →II 788
- minion option (newtxtext), →II 248
- minipage env., →I 206f., 491, →II 663, 664f., 666, 670, 671
 - footnotes in, →I 205, 206f., 209, 491, 492
 - justification in, →I 122, 124
 - nested, →II 664
 - (subcaption), →I 553
 - (supertabular), →I 456
- Ministry of Silly Walks, →II 651
- `\minnames` counter (biblatex), →II 501
- `\minnames` key/option (biblatex), →II 485, 548
- `\minrows` counter (multicol), →I 357, 358, 359
- `\minsortnames` key/option (biblatex), →II 548
- Mint Spirit fonts, description/examples, →II 82
- minted library (tcolorbox), →I 619
- mintspirit package, →II 82
- mintspirit2 package, →II 82
- `\minus` syntax, →I 66, 736, →II 132, 479, 651, 652, 770, 818
- `\minuscolon` math symbol $-:$ (colonequals), →II 221
- `\minuscoloncolon` math symbol $:-:$ (colonequals), →II 221
- `\minuso` math symbol \ominus (stmaryrd), →II 215
- `\minute` (siunitx), →I 171
- Miranda value (listings), →I 323
- `\mirror` option (crop), →I 414
- misc BibTeX entry type, →II 386, 391
- missing syntax (typed-checklist), →I 294
- `\missingfigure` (todonotes), →I 238, 239
- `\miterjoin` (pict2e), →I 607
- Mizar value (listings), →I 323
- `\mkbegdisquote` (csquotes), →I 187
- `\mkbibbold` (biblatex), →II 433
- `\mkbibbrackets` (biblatex), →II 477
- `\mkbibemph` (biblatex), →II 561
- `\mkbibnamefamily` (biblatex), →II 568, 569
- `\mkbibnamegiven` (biblatex), →II 568, 569
- `\mkbibnameprefix` (biblatex), →II 569
- `\mkbibnamesuffix` (biblatex), →II 569
- `\mkbibparens` (biblatex), →II 477
- `\mkblockquote` (csquotes), →I 186, 187
- `\mkccitation` (csquotes), →I 185
- `\mkcitation` (csquotes), →I 185, 186
- `\mkenddisquote` (csquotes), →I 187
- `\mkibid` (biblatex), →II 540
- `\mkjobtexmf` program, →I 109, 113, 114, →II 980
- `\mkmk` OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 715
- `\mktexlsr` program, →II 723
- `\mktextdel` (csquotes), →I 187

- `\mktextelp` (csquotes), →I 188
- `\mktextelpins` (csquotes), →I 188
- `\mktextins` (csquotes), →I 187
- `\mktextinselp` (csquotes), →I 188
- `\mktextmod` (csquotes), →I 187
- `\mktextquote` (csquotes), →I 185, 186
- ML env. (tlc/amsthm), →I 282
- ML value (listings), →I 323
- mla biblatex style (biblatex-mla), →II 443, 444
- mla option (ellipsis), →I 149
- MLA (Modern Language Association), →I 149, →II 443f.
- mla-footnotes biblatex style (biblatex-mla), →II 443
- mla-strict biblatex style (biblatex-mla), →II 443f.
- mla7 biblatex style (biblatex-mla), →II 443f.
- `\mleft` (mleftright), →II 191, 211
- `\mleftright` (mleftright), →II 211
- mleftright package, →II 191, 211
- `\mleftrightstore` (mleftright), →II 211
- mlt env. (tlc/amsmath), →II 131
- mm syntax
 - (font series), →I 733, 734
 - (unit), →II 652
- mmode boolean, →II 691
- mnk option (inputenc), →II 327
- mnote counter (tlc), →I 219
- mo key (keyfloat), →I 569, 570
- `\Mobilefone` text symbol ☎ (marvosym), →II 117
- `\mod` (amsmath), →II 171
- mode key
 - (enumitem), →I 277
 - (siunitx), →I 177
- `\models` math symbol \models , →II 221
- moderate option (savetrees), →I 384
- Modern Language Association (MLA), →I 149, →II 443f.
- Modula-2 value (listings), →I 323
- modular relations, math symbols, →II 171
- `\Module` (doc), →II 597
- module key (l3build), →II 607, 613, 614
- modulo option (lineno), →I 337
- `\modulolinenumbers` (lineno), →I 337, 351
- `\mole` (siunitx), →I 169, 170, 173, 175
- monetary symbols, →I 696
- Mongolian (Manju), →II 341
- mono option
 - (inconsolata), →II 92
 - (notomath), →II 252
- monospace option (zlmmt), →II 93
- Monospaced value (fontspec), →I 713, 714, 716
- monospaced fonts, →I 652f., 660, →II 88, 89–93, 94, 95ff.,
 - see also typed text; typewriter fonts
 - Algol, →I 701, 712, →II 89
 - Anonymous Pro, →I 297, →II 90
 - CM Bright Typewriter Light, →II 90
 - Courier, →I 690, →II 91
 - DejaVu Sans Mono, →II 91
 - Fira Mono, →II 92
 - Go Mono, →II 92
 - Inconsolata, →II 92
 - monospaced fonts (*cont.*)
 - Latin Modern Typewriter, →I 714, →II 93
 - Libertinus Mono, →II 94
 - ligatures in, →II 89
 - Lucida families, →II 24, 94
 - Luximono, →II 95
 - Noto Sans Mono, →I 719, →II 96
 - Plex Mono, →I 720, →II 96
 - PT Mono, →II 96
 - Roboto Mono, →II 97
 - Source Code Pro, →II 97
 - with small caps, →I 684, 687, →II 90f., 93, 96
 - with true italics, →I 684,
 - II 16, 22, 24, 31, 36, 92f., 95ff., 112
 - monotoniko attribute (babel), →II 307, 328, 330
 - `\monott` (zlmmt), →II 93, 94
 - montex package, →II 341
 - month BibTeX field, →II 382f., 386, 389, 400, 401f., 418
 - montserrat package, →I 740, →II 83
 - Montserrat fonts, description/examples, →I 739, →II 83
 - `\moo` math symbol \mathfrak{z} (stmaryrd), →II 215
 - `\morecmidrules` (booktabs), →I 472, 473
 - morenames biblatex style (biblatex-morenames), →II 463
 - moreverb package, →I 302
 - morewrites package, →II 734, 980
 - mos option (inputenc), →II 327
 - mottos (quotations), on chapter/section headings, →I 38, 39
 - `\mouse` (tikzlings), →I 645
 - move option (cite), →II 481
 - move-to* (tikz path operation), →I 636
 - `\movetoevenpage` (nextpage), →I 419
 - `\movetooddpage` (nextpage), →I 419
 - moving argument, see arguments, moving
 - `\mp` math symbol \mp , →II 215
 - .mp4 file extension (hyperref), →I 101
 - mparhack package, →I 233
 - mpfootnote counter, →I 205, →II 646
 - (footmisc), →I 206
 - `\mpfootnotemark` (footmisc), →I 206
 - `\mpfootnoterule` (footmisc), →I 214
 - mpinclude key/option (typearea), →I 376
 - mpk biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, 449
 - mpkoeaw biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, 449
 - mpsupertabular env. (supertabular), →I 456, 491
 - mpsupertabular* env. (supertabular), →I 456, 491
 - `\mright` (mleftright), →II 191, 211
 - `\Msg` (docstrip), →II 602
 - `\mspace` (amsmath), →II 205
 - `\MTFlushSpaceAbove` (mathtools), →II 182
 - `\MTFlushSpaceBelow` (mathtools), →II 182
 - `\mu` math symbol μ , →II 168, 212
 - mu syntax (unit), →I 73, →II 652
 - `\multfootsep` (footmisc), →I 215
 - multiaudience package, →I 30
 - multibib package, →II 570, 579, 580f.
 - compatibility matrix, →II 570
 - `\multicitedelim` (biblatex), →II 477, 486
 - multicol key/option (doc), →II 590

- multicol package, →I 70, 117, 334, [351–360](#), 361, →II 590, 978f.
 - license information, →I 351
- `\multicolbaselineskip` length (multicol), →I 356, [357](#), 359
- `\multicolovershoot` rigid length (multicol), →I 356, [359](#), 360
- `\multicolpretolerance` TeX counter (multicol), →I 357
- multicolrule package, →I 361
- multicols env. (multicol), →I 228, [351](#), [352](#), 353, 354, 355–361, 415, 621, →II 352, 372, 663, 691
 - margin notes within, →I 234
 - not compatible with longtable, →I 456
 - style parameters, →I 356ff.
- multicols* env. (multicol), →I [352](#), →II 706
- `\multicolsep` length (multicol), →I 356
- `\multicoltolerance` TeX counter (multicol), →I 357
- `\multicolumn`, →I [437](#), 453, 476f., 482, 483f., 490, 491, 492, 494, →II 636
 - error using, →II 726, 731f.
 - (keyvaltable), →I 503
 - (longtable), →I 460
 - (multirow), →I 477
 - (supertabular), →I 457, 459
 - (tabularx), restrictions using, →I 449
 - (widetable), restrictions using, →I 454f.
- `\multicolumnlof` (multitoc), →I 70
- `\multicolumntoc` (multitoc), →I 70
- `\multicolundershoot` rigid length (multicol), →I 356, [360](#)
- multiFloat key (hvfloat), →I 561, [566](#)
- multiline value (enumitem), →I [278](#), 279
- multilingual documents, →I 652, *see also* babel package
 - ! (exclamation mark), shorthand character, →II 312f.
 - " (double quote), shorthand character, →II 310ff.
 - . (period), shorthand character, →II 314
 - : (colon), shorthand character, →II 312f.
 - ; (semicolon), shorthand character, →II 312f.
 - < (less than sign), shorthand character, →II 314
 - = (equal sign), shorthand character, →II 313f.
 - > (greater than sign), shorthand character, →II 314
 - ? (question mark), shorthand character, →II 312f.
 - ‘ (grave accent), shorthand character, →II 313
 - ~ (tilde)
 - multilingual aspects, →II 312
 - nonbreaking space, →II 310
- accented letters, →II 310
- bibliographies, language support, →II 524, 525, 526, 559f., 564, 565
- character sets, →II 299
- citations, Hungarian, →II 320
- counters and labels, →II 334, 335
- culture, and typesetting, →II 300
- current language, setting/getting, →II [302](#), 303f., 308
- dates, formatting, →II 315f.
- definite articles, Hungarian, →II 320
- encoding languages and fonts
 - Cyrillic alphabet, →II 324ff.
 - Greek alphabet, →II 328–331
 - language options, →II 322–327
- footnotes, →II 322
- multilingual documents (*cont.*)
 - French names, →II 319
- hyphenation
 - cultural aspects, →II 300
 - defining dynamically, →II 300
 - in multiple languages, →II 304, [337f.](#)
 - language aspects, →II 299, 319
 - patterns, adjusting, →II 333f.
 - patterns, applying, →II 303
 - preventing, →II 303
 - special rules, →II 311f.
- indentation after heading, →II 321
- language attributes, →II 307
- language, and typesetting, →II 299f.
- language-dependent strings, →II 300, [305](#), 307, 309, 333
- ligatures, preventing, →II 311
- lists, →II 321, 322
- LuaTeX, TeX extension, →I 652
- MakeIndex problems, →II 327
- mathematical operators, →II 321
- non-Latin alphabets
 - Arabic, →II 332, 341
 - Armenian, →II 341
 - Chinese, →II 331, 341
 - Cyrillic, →II 110–113, 324, 325, 326ff.
 - Ethiopian, →II 341
 - Greek, →II 106–110, 328, 329ff.
 - Hebrew, →II 332, 341
 - Indic scripts, →II 331, 332, 341
 - Japanese, →II 331, 341
 - Korean, →II 331, 341
 - Manju (Mongolian), →II 341
- numbering, →II 316, 317f., 320
- Omega, TeX extension, →I 652
- overview, →II 297ff.
- quoting characters, inserting, →II 303, 311
- right-to-left typesetting, →II 322, [332](#)
- shorthands, →II 304ff., 307
- spacing after punctuation, →II 320
- special characters, →II 310
- summary table, →II 300f.
- upmendex, →II 327
- X_YTeX, TeX extension, →I 652
- `\multimap` math symbol \multimap (amssymb), →II 219
- multi`page` value (keyvaltable), →I 497
- multipage tables
 - and floats, →I 462, 464f.
 - captions, →I 457, 462, 498, 502
 - creating with keyvaltable, →I 497f.
 - creating with longtable, →I 459, 460, 461, 462, 463f., 465
 - creating with paracol, →I 466
 - creating with supertabular, →I 456, 457, 458, 459
 - creating with xltabular, →I 464
 - footnotes in, →I 463
 - headers and footers, →I 457, 461
 - horizontal alignment, →I 461
 - page breaks, →I 458
 - problems with, →I 464f.

multipage tables (*cont.*)
 reducing run numbers, →I 463
 row commands, →I 461
 spacing around, →I 461
 width, →I 458f., 460, 461ff., 464f.
 multiple option (footmisc),
 →I 215, 216f., 222f., 227, 228, →II 519–522, 560
 not working with fncpt, →I 217
 multiple value (jurabib), →II 513, 514, 526
 multiple authors, truncating, →II 471f., 485, 501, 547ff., 550
 problem with, →II 471
 multiple bibliographies, →II 569–581
 multiple citations, →II 493f., 502
 multiple indexes, →II 372ff.
 multiple tables of contents, →I 74
 \multiply, →II 687
 \multiput, →I 606
 multiq env. (tlc/tasks), →I 292
 \multirow (multirow), →I 476, 477f., 479, 484, →II 159
 multirow package, →I 476–479, →II 158
 \multirowsetup (multirow), →I 477
 multitoc package, →I 70
 multiline env. (amsmath), →II 131, 132, 134, 135, 142
 error using, →II 718
 multiline* env. (amsmath), →II 132, 134, 189, 192
 multlined env. (mathtools), →II 132, 140, 142
 \multlinegap rigid length (amsmath), →II 134, 135
 MuPAD value (listings), →I 323
 musuos biblatex style (biblatex-musuos), →II 453
 mvbook BibTeX entry type (biblatex), →II 387
 mvcollection BibTeX entry type (biblatex), →II 387
 mvproceedings BibTeX entry type (biblatex), →II 387
 mvreference BibTeX entry type (biblatex), →II 387
 MWE (Minimal Working Example), →I 253, 362, →II 788
 mweights package, →I 649
 \myclearpage (tlc/nextpage), →I 419
 myfbox key (tlc/adjustbox), →I 601
 myfieldformat syntax (tlc/biblatex), →II 567
 \myhead (tlc), →I 53
 myheadings page style, →I 396, 567
 myitemize env. (tlc), →I 254
 mylistformat syntax (tlc/biblatex), →II 567
 mynameformat syntax (tlc/biblatex), →II 568
 \MyRot (tlc/graphics|graphicx), →I 590
 myverbatim env. (tlc/fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 318

N

\n (tlc/extdash), →I 150
 n syntax
 (font shape), →I 671, 734, 735
 (fmtcount), →I 154, 155
 n value (hvfloat), →I 561
 \nA (siunitx), →I 172
 \nabla math symbol ∇ , →II 141, 156, 213
 (unicode-math), →II 258
 nabla key/option (unicode-math), →II 258

\name
 (biblatex), →II 542
 (tlc), →I 663
 name BibTeX field (tlc), →II 562f.
 name key
 (acro), →I 162, 163
 (biblatex), →II 555
 (changes), →I 246, 247ff.
 (listings), →I 326, 327
 (microtype), →I 131, 132ff.
 (tcolorbox), →I 630f.
 (thmtools), →I 284
 (tikz), →I 633, 641
 (titlesec), →I 48, 49
 name key/option (caption), →I 543, 544
 name value
 (biblatex), →II 562
 (changes), →I 248
 (jurabib), →II 520, 521f., 525
 name lists, bibliography database, →II 393
 name&title value (jurabib), →II 520
 name&title&auto value (jurabib), →II 521
 \nameCref (cleveref), →I 88
 \namecref (cleveref), →I 88
 \nameCrefs (cleveref), →I 88
 \namecrefs (cleveref), →I 88
 named BibTeX style
 (chicago), →II 489
 (named), →II 419, 423
 named key (hyperref|bookmark), →I 106
 named package, →II 423, 429
 named boxes, →II 655, 669, 670, *see also* boxes
 named page styles, →I 404
 nameinlink option (cleveref), →I 88
 namelimits option (amsmath), →II 167
 namenumberdelim syntax (biblatex-ext), →II 507
 \namepartfamily (biblatex), →II 568
 \namepartfamilyi (biblatex), →II 568
 \namepartgiveni (biblatex), →II 396, 568
 \Nameref (nameref), →I 93
 \nameref (nameref), →I 93, 627
 nameref key (tcolorbox), →I 627
 nameref package, →I 93, 627
 names, bibliography database, →II 394–397
 nametemplates key (biblatex), →II 396
 nametitledelim syntax (biblatex), →II 507
 nameyeardelim syntax (biblatex), →II 566
 naming conventions, commands/environments, →II 622ff.
 namunrst BibTeX style, →II 423
 NaN syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
 \nano (siunitx), →I 172
 \nanoampere (siunitx), →I 172
 nar BibTeX style, →II 423
 nar package, →II 423
 narrow option (inconsolata), →II 92
 narrower option (parnotes), →I 227
 narrowiints option (kpfonts|kpfonts-otf), →II 267
 NASTRAN value (listings), →I 323

- `\NAT@close` (natbib), →II 498f.
- `\NAT@date` (natbib), →II 498f.
- `\NAT@idxtxt` (natbib), →II 498, 499
- `\NAT@name` (natbib), →II 498f.
- `\NAT@open` (natbib), →II 498f.
- natbib key/option (biblatex), →II 484, 485, 506, 543, 544
- natbib package, →I 94, →II 420, 423, 429, 473f., 484, 490–500, 503–506, 507, 543, 979
 - author-date citations, →II 490–500
 - author-number citations, →II 503–506
 - compatibility matrix, →II 570
 - incompatible with cite, →II 504
 - number-only citations, →II 503–506
- natbib.cfg file (natbib), →II 496
- natheight key (graphicx), →II 581
- `\natural` math symbol \natural , →II 213
- nature \LaTeX style (nature), →II 423
- nature biblatex style (biblatex-nature), →II 458
- nature package, →II 423
- natwidth key (graphicx), →II 581
- naustrian option (babel), →II 301, 304
- nb value (upmendex), →II 369
- `\nbhyphen` (biblatex), →II 408
- `\nbn` (uri), →I 203
- nc option
 - (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 248
 - (newtxtext), →II 248
- ncc option (inputenc), →II 327
- nccfoots package, →I 221
- ncf option
 - (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 248, 275
 - (newtxtext), →II 248
- `\ncong` math symbol \ncong (amssymb), →II 217
- `\Ndash` (tlc/amsmath), →I 150
- NE value (diagbox), →I 480, 481
- `\ne` math symbol \neq , →II 141, 149, 217, 262–296
- near_end key (tikz-cd), →II 162
- near_start key (tikz-cd), →II 162
- `\nearrow` math symbol \nearrow , →II 219
- nederlands \LaTeX style (harvard), →II 490
- `\Needspace` (needspace), →I 419, 420
- `\needspace` (needspace), →I 419
- needspace package, →I 419f.
- `\Needspace*` (needspace), →I 419, 420
- `\NeedsTeXFormat`, →II 694, 696, 707, 709f.
 - release information, →II 697
 - warning using, →II 765
- `\neg` math symbol \neg , →II 213, 214
- negated math symbols
 - arrows and arrow extensions, →II 220
 - equality and order, →II 217
 - sets and inclusions, →II 218
- `\negmedspace`, →II 204f.
- `\negthickspace`, →II 204f.
- `\negthinspace`, →II 204f.
- nejm biblatex style (biblatex-nejm), →II 458, 459
- neoclassical fonts, →II 46–59
- `\neq` math symbol \neq , →II 172, 177, 183, 197, 201f., 211, 217, 229, 242f., 257, 260, 262–296
- nesting
 - commands, →II 627, 628
 - footnotes, →I 224
 - headings, →I 34
 - levels, tables of contents, →I 73
- new option (old-arrows), →II 220
- New Century Schoolbook fonts, description/examples, →II 54
 - in math and text, →II 275f.
- New Computer Modern fonts, in math and text, →II 286f.
- New Font Selection scheme (NFSS), →I 648f.
- New Hellenic fonts, description/examples, →II 75
- New PX fonts, in math and text, →II 249, 250, 268f.
- `\NewAcroTemplate` (acro), →I 161
- `\newadjustboxcmd` (adjustbox), →I 600, 601
- `\newadjustboxenv` (adjustbox), →I 600
- newapa \LaTeX style
 - (chicago), →II 489
 - (newapa), →II 423
- newapa package, →II 423
- `\newbibmacro` (biblatex), →II 564
- `\newblock`, →II 377, 476, 488
 - (jurabib), →II 527
- `\newboolean` (ifthen), →II 690, 709
- `\newbracespec` (abraces), →II 186, 189
- newcastle \LaTeX style (newcastle), →II 423
- newcent *obsolete* package, →I 691, *see instead* tgschola
- `\newcites` (multibib), →II 570, 580, 581
- `\NewCollectedTable` (keyvaltable), →I 500, 501
- `\newcolumn` (multicol), →I 353
- `\newcolumntype`
 - (array), →I 445, 446, →II 319
 - (boldline), →I 468
 - (colortbl), →I 468
 - (dcolumn), →I 482ff.
 - (fcolumn), →I 488ff.
 - (keyvaltable), →I 495
 - (tabularx), →I 448f.
 - (tabulary), →I 450
- `\newcommand`, →II 622, 624, 625f., 627, 628, 629, 634, 637, 704, 716, 768
 - error using, →II 720, 726, 731, 736, 737, 743, 766
 - used in .bbl file, →II 405, 574
- `\newcommand*`, →II 627, 735, 766
- `\NewCommandCopy`, →II 635, 644, 676
 - newcommands option (ragged2e), →I 125, →II 530
- `\newcopyedit` (tlc/todonotes), →II 645
- `\newcounter`, →I 370, →II 631, 637, 645, 646, 647f., 687f.
 - error using, →II 720, 733
- `\newdatelsorbian` (babel), →II 316
- `\newdateusorbian` (babel), →II 316
- `\NewDocElement` (doc), →II 588, 592, 593, 595f.
- `\NewDocumentCommand`, →I 233, 606, →II 622, 635, 636, 637–641, 643ff., 691, 704, 716, 728, 735, 743, 750, 768
 - error using, →II 717ff., 723, 728, 736, 739
 - problems with, →II 636

- `\NewDocumentCommand` (*cont.*)
 - warning using, →II 757
- `\NewDocumentEnvironment`,
 - II 622, [637](#), [641](#), 642, 675, 704, 743, 750
 - error using, →II 718, 722, 739
- `\newenvironment`, →II 622, [629](#), [630](#), [631](#), 637, 675
 - error using, →II 625, 720, 722, 726, 731, 736, 743
- `\NewEnvironmentCopy`, →II 635
- `\NewExpandableDocumentCommand`, →II 636
 - error using, →II 718, 728
- `\newfloat`
 - (float), →I 527, [529](#), [530f.](#), 538, 541, 558ff., 562, 568
 - (rotfloat), →I 535
 - newfloat package, →I [529](#), 568
 - combined with endfloat, →I 525
- `\newfontface` (fontspec), →I 711, [712](#), →II 10
- `\newfontfamily` (fontspec), →I [711](#), 712, 722, 725, →II 100
- `\newgathered` (mathtools), →II 142
- `\newgeometry` (geometry), →I [382](#), 383
- `\NewHook`, →II [681](#), 682f.
- `\newif`, →II 690, 701
- `\newindex` (index), →II [373](#), 374, 499, 512
- `\NewKeyTable` (keyvaltable), →I 503
- `\NewKeyValTable` (keyvaltable),
 - I [494](#), [495f.](#), 497, 498–503, [504](#)
- `\newlabel`, →I 101
- `\newlength`, →II [651](#), 691, 692, 704
 - error using, →II 720
- `\newline`, →II 660
 - error using, →II 738
 - newline value (caption), →I 543
 - newlinetospace option (titlesec), →I 42
- `\newlist` (enumitem), →I [263](#), 264, 265, [267f.](#), [276f.](#)
- `\NewMarkClass`, →I [391](#), 392–395, [411](#), →II 742
 - error using, →II 730
- `\NewMirroredHookPair`, →II 681
- `\newpage`, →I 53, 215, 356, [414](#)
 - (afterpage), →I 525
 - (longtable), →I 461
 - newparttoc option (titlesec), →I [42](#), 72
 - newpxmath package, →II 237, [248ff.](#)
 - newpxtext package, →II 249
- `\newrefcontext` (biblatex), →II [554](#), [555](#), 560
- `\newrefsection` (biblatex), →II [556](#), 557
- `\newrefsegment` (biblatex), →II 556
- `\NewReversedHook`, →II [681](#), 683
- news groups, →II 788
- `\newsavebox`, →II [631](#), [669f.](#), [779](#)
 - error using, →II 720
- `\NewTasksEnvironment` (tasks), →I 292
- `\newtcbbox` (tcolorbox), →I [626](#), [627ff.](#)
- `\newtcolorbox` (tcolorbox), →I 625, [626](#), 627, 628
- `\newtheorem`
 - error using, →II 733
 - (amsthm), →I 92, [281](#), [282](#), [283](#), [284](#), →II 646
 - (cleveref), problems with, →I 91, 92
- `\newtheorem*` (amsthm), →I [281](#), 282, 284
- `\newtheoremstyle` (amsthm), →I [284](#), 288
- `\newtie` text accent $\overline{}$, →I 696
- `\newton` (siunitx), →I [170](#), 176
- `newtx-substex` file (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 246
- newtxmath package, →I 691, →II 20, 39, 236f., [243–248](#), 252, 263, 265, 268, 273ff., 280, 283
- newtxtext package, →I 691,
 - II [56](#), 57, 236, 244, 247, 268, 280
- `\newunitpunct` (biblatex), →II 433
- `\newUOLdecorator` (underoverlap), →II 190
- `\newverbcommand` (newverbs), →I [299](#), 300
- newverbs package, →I 299ff.
- `\nexists` math symbol \nexists (amssymb), →II 213
- next-anchor key (hyperref), →I 104, [106](#)
- `\nextcitefull` (jurabib), →II 516
- `\nextcitenotitle` (jurabib), →II 516
- `\nextcitereset` (jurabib), →II 516
- `\nextciteshort` (jurabib), →II 516
- nextline value (enumitem), →I [278](#), 279
- NextPage value (hyperref), →I 108
- nextpage package, →I 418f.
- `\NextWordBox` (continue), →I 408
- nf option (*various font packages*), →II 7
- NFSS (New Font Selection scheme), →I 648f.
- NFSSFAMILY key (fontspec), →I 712
- nfssfont.tex package, →I 669, [705](#), 750, 752, →II 229
- `\NG` text symbol D, →I 770
 - problems in T1, →I 737
- `\ng` text symbol η , →I 771
 - problems in T1, →I 737
- `\ngeq` math symbol \nless (amssymb), →II 217
- `\ngeqq` math symbol \nlessq (amssymb), →II 217
- `\ngeqslant` math symbol \nless (amssymb), →II 217
- ngerman option, →II 415
 - (babel), →I 23, 25, →II [301](#), 302, 304, 311, 335, 354, 360, 433, 502, 525, [536f.](#), 541, 545, 558, 561
 - (cleveref), →I 87
 - (fmtcount), →I 155
 - (varioref), →I 25
- ngerman-x-2019-04-04 value (babel), →II 333
- `\ngtr` math symbol \ngtr (amssymb), →II 217
- `\ni` math symbol \ni , →II 218
- niedersachsen biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology),
 - II 446, [450](#)
- nil option (babel), →II 565
- nindent key (lettrine), →I [143](#), 144
- `\niplus` math symbol \niplus (stmaryrd), →II 218
- `\nLeftarrow` math symbol \nLeftarrow (amssymb), →II 220
- `\nleftarrow` math symbol \nleftarrow (amssymb), →II 220
- `\nLeftrightarrow` math symbol \nLeftrightarrow (amssymb), →II 220
- `\nlefttriarow` math symbol \nlefttriarow (amssymb), →II 220
- `\nleq` math symbol \nleq (amssymb), →II 217
- `\nleqq` math symbol \nleqq (amssymb), →II 217
- `\nleqslant` math symbol \nleqslant (amssymb), →II 217
- `\nless` math symbol \nless (amssymb), →II 217
- `\nmid` math symbol \mid (amssymb), →II 221
- `\nn` (tlc), →II 348
 - nn value (upmendex), →II 369
- `\nnearrow` math symbol \nearrow (stmaryrd), →II 219

- `nnu` biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, [450](#)
- `\nnwarrow` math symbol \nwarrow (stmaryrd), →II 219
- `\No` (babel), →II 319
- `\no` (babel), →II 319
- `no` value
 - (caption), →I [546](#), [547](#)
 - (thmtools), →I 285
 - (upmendex), →II 369
- `no-config` option (fontspec), →I 728
- `no-math` option (fontspec), →I 728
- `no_borderline` key (tcolorbox), →I 623
- `no_shadow` key (tcolorbox), →I 622
- `noabbrev` option (cleveref), →I 88
- `noadjust` option (cite), →II 480
- `\noalign`, error using, →II 731
- `noBBppl` option (mathpazo), →II 252
- `nobeforeafter` key (tcolorbox), →I 615
- `nobg` key (keyvaltable), →I [497](#), [498](#), [500](#)
- `\nobibliography`
 - (bibentry), →II [537](#), [538](#)
 - (jurabib), →II [517](#), [518](#)
- `\nobibliography*` (bibentry), →II 538
- `nobottomtitles` option (titlesec), →I 46
- `nobottomtitles*` option (titlesec), →I 46
- `\nobreak`, →I [414](#), →II 198f.
- `nobreak` key (tlc/enumitem), →I 265
- `nobreak` option (cite), →II 480
- `\nobreakdash` (amsmath), →I 150
- `\nobreakspace`, →I 159, [277](#), [549f.](#)
- `\NoCaseChange`, →I 178
- `nocheck` option (fewerfloatpages), →I 522
- `\nocite`, →II [392f.](#), [397](#), [406](#), [411](#), [412](#), [415](#), [417](#), [419](#), [433](#), [462](#), [475](#), [476ff.](#), [514](#), [517](#), [528–531](#), [558](#), [560](#), [565](#)
 - warning using, →II 750
 - (biblatex), →II 559
 - (bibtopic), →II 578
 - (bibunits), →II [575](#), [576](#)
- `\nocite*` (bibunits), →II 575
- `\nocite<type>` (multibib), →II 580
- `nocolor` value (changes), →I 248
- `nocompress` option (cite), →II 479, [480](#)
- `\nocorr`, →I 667
- `\nocorrlist`, →I 666
- `nocut` key (thmtools), →I 286
- `node` (tikz path operation), →I 636, [640](#), [641f.](#)
- `\node` (tikz), →I 638, [641](#), [643](#)
- `node` key (tikz), →I 633
- `node` syntax (tikz), →I 637, [640](#), [641f.](#), [644](#)
- `node_content` key (tikz), →I 640
- `node_cs`: syntax (tikz), →I 633
- `nodisplayskipstretch` option (setspace), →I 141
- `\noextras<language>` (babel), →II 335f.
- `nofighead` option (endfloat), →I 526
- `nofiglist` option (endfloat), →I 526
- `nofigures` option (endfloat), →I 526
- `\nofiles`
 - warning using, →II 756
 - (longtable), →I 460
- `nofoot` key/option (geometry), →I 381
- `nofootnote` key (fixme), →I 243
- `noformat` option (mattens), →II 179
- `nographics` option (crop), →I [413](#)
- `nogrey` option (quotchap), →I 38
- `nohang` value (jurabib), →II 529
- `nohead` key (endfloat), →I 527
- `nohead` key/option (geometry), →I 381
- `noheader` key, →I [110](#), →II 741
 - (unicodefonttable), →I [728](#), [729f.](#)
- `noheadfoot` key/option (geometry), →I 381
- `noheads` option (endfloat), →I 526
- `nohelv` option (newpxtext), →II 249
- `NoHyper` env. (hyperref), →I 99, →II 759
- `nohyperref` key/option (doc), →II 589
- `nohyphen` option (underscore), →I 152
- `nohyphenation` syntax (babel), →II [303](#), [338](#)
- `\noibidem` (jurabib), →II 520
- `\noindent`, →I [209f.](#), [286](#), →II [655](#), [662](#), [667](#), [670](#)
 - (magaz), →I [146](#)
- `noindentafter` option (titlesec), →I [42](#), [47](#)
- `noindex` key/option (doc), →II [586](#), [590](#), [593](#)
- `noinfo` option (crop), →I 412
- `noinline` key (todonotes), →I 240
- `nointegrals` option (wasysym), →II 116
- `\nointerlineskip`, →II [667](#), [668](#)
- `nointlimits` option
 - (amsmath), →II 167
 - (esint), →II 169
- `noitemsep` key (enumitem), →I [261](#), [262](#), [265](#), [274](#), [276](#), [278](#)
- `\nolbreaks` (nolbreaks), →I 126
- `nolbreaks` package, →I 125f.
- `\nolbreaks*` (nolbreaks), →I 126
- `\nolimits`, →II [167](#), [169](#), [185](#), [186](#), [187](#)
 - error using, →II 729
- `noline` key (todonotes), →I 240
- `\nolinebreak`, →I [187](#), →II [198](#), [476](#), [479](#), [631](#), [637](#), [778](#)
 - (cite), →II 479
- `\nolinenumbers` (lineno), →I [334](#), [337](#), [349](#)
- `nolink` key (qrcode), →I 613
- `nolinks` option (qrcode), →I 613
- `\nolinkurl` (hyperref), →I 102
- `nolist` key
 - (endfloat), →I 527
 - (todonotes), →I 241
- `nolists` option (endfloat), →I 526
- `nolol` key (listings), →I 330
- `nomargin` key (fixme), →I [243f.](#)
- `nomarkers` option (endfloat), →I 526
- `nomath` option
 - (kpfonts|kpfonts-otf), →II 18
 - (lmodern), →I 688
- `nomove` option (cite), →II [481](#), [483](#)
- `nomulticol` key/option (doc), →II 590
- `nomultiple` option (parnotes), →I 227
- `\non` math operator \non (tlc/amsmath), →II 160
- `non-ASCII` symbols, →II 622
- `non-English` documents, *see* multilingual documents

- non-Latin alphabets
 - Arabic, →II 341
 - Armenian, →II 341
 - Chinese, →II 341
 - Cyrillic, →II 110–113, 324, 325, 326ff.
 - Ethiopian, →II 341
 - Greek, →II 106–110, 328, 329ff.
 - Hebrew, →II 341
 - Indic scripts, →II 341
 - Japanese, →II 341
 - Korean, →II 341
 - Manju (Mongolian), →II 341
- nonamebreak option (natbib), →II 496
- nonameliimits option (amsmath), →II 167
- \nonamestring (biblatex), →II 394
- nonbreaking hyphen (–), →I 150, 199
- None value (fontspec), →I 715, 728
- none value
 - (acro), →I 159, 162
 - (biblatex), →II 392, 435, 550, 554
 - (caption), →I 543
 - (changes), →I 248
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 307ff., 313, 318
 - (hyperref), →I 98
 - (listings), →I 326
 - (siunitx), →I 486
 - (unicodefonttable), →I 729, 730
 - (widows-and-orphans), →I 426
- nonFloat key (hvfloat), →I 561
- \nonfrenchspacing, →I 134, 157, 745
- nonnumerical cross-references, →I 93
- \nonstopmode, →II 716, 749
- \nonumber
 - (amsmath), →II 149
 - (cases), →II 157
- nonumonpart package, →I 40
- nonzero_rule key (tikz), →I 646
- \nopagebreak, →I 208, 414
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 309
- nopageno package, →I 396
- nopar option (lipsum), →I 362
- nopatch option (microtype), →I 136
- \nopostamble (docstrip), →II 604
- \nopp (biblatex), →II 544, 545
- \nopreamble (docstrip), →II 604
- noprint key/option (doc), →II 586, 590, 593
- \noprotusion, →I 136
- \nopunct (biblatex), →II 546
- \norm (tlc/amsmath), →II 194
- normal option (threeparttable), →I 493
- normal syntax (enumitem), →I 280f.
- normal value
 - (caption), →I 543
 - (jurabib), →II 509, 513f., 523, 533
 - (tcolorbox), →I 617
- normal font, →I 659
- normal hooks, →II 673
- \normalcolor, →I 665, 666, →II 671
 - normalcolor value (caption), →I 542
- \normalcolseprulecolor (paracol), →I 342
- \normalcolumncolor (paracol), →I 342
- \normalEBG (tlc/fontspec), →I 725
- \normalem (ulem), →I 190
 - normalem option (ulem), →I 190, 195
- \normalfont, →I 209, 254, 397, 663, 665, 666, 667, 668, 695, 697, →II 630, 671
- \normalmarginpar, →I 232
- \normalshape, →I 661, 667
- \normalsize, →I 258, 369, 665f., 692, →II 143f., 710
 - error, not defined, →II 738
- normalsize value (caption), →I 542
- norowbg key (keyvaltable), →I 497, 498f., 501, 504
- norsk option (babel), →II 301
- north value
 - (tcolorbox), →I 618
 - (tikz), →I 640
- north_east value (tikz), →I 640
- north_west value (tikz), →I 640
- northeast value (tcolorbox), →I 618
- northwest value (tcolorbox), →I 618
- norule option (footmisc), →I 214
- norules key (keyvaltable), →I 498, 499
- nosearch key, →I 109, →II 741
- nosep key (enumitem), →I 261, 262, 272f., 275f.
- noshadow key (todonotes), →I 239, 240
- nosort option
 - (cite), →II 479, 481
 - (cleveref), →I 87
- nospace option
 - (cite), →II 480, 481
 - (varioref), →I 78, 79, 80, 81f., 83, 85f.
- nospacearound option (extdash), →I 151
- nostatistics key (unicodefonttable), →I 729, 730
- nostrict value (jurabib), →II 520, 521
- nosumlimits option (amsmath), →II 167
- \not (ifthen), →II 693
- \not math symbol /, →II 216, 217, 218, 220, 221, 257
- not syntax (biblatex), →II 553
- notabhead option (endfloat), →I 526
- notables option (endfloat), →I 526
- notablist option (endfloat), →I 526
- \notag (amsmath), →II 134f., 137, 139, 149, 150f., 157
- notbib option (tocbibind), →I 56
- notcategory key (biblatex), →II 553
- notcite option (showkeys), →I 94
- \note (tlc/keyvaltable), →I 501
 - note BibTeX field, →II 382f., 386, 389, 390, 391, 407
- note-mark-format key (snotes), →I 237
- note-mark-sep key (snotes), →I 237
- \NotebookPar (fancypar), →I 147
- notebraces key (thmtools), →I 288
- notefont key (thmtools), →I 288
- notes key/option (biblatex-chicago), →II 440
- notesit option (parnotes), →I 227
- notesrm option (parnotes), →I 227
- notessf option (parnotes), →I 227

- noTeX BibTeX style (noTeX), →II 423
- notext option
- (crop), →I 413
 - (kpfonts), →II 268
- \notin math symbol \notin , →II 135, 218
- notindex option (tocbibind), →I 56
- notkeyword key (biblatex), →II 551
- notlof option (tocbibind), →I 56
- notlot option (tocbibind), →I 56
- notmatch key (biblatex), →II 417
- noto option
- (newtxmath), →II 252
 - (newtxtext), →II 248
- noto package, →I 673, 675, →II 27, 252
- Noto fonts, description/examples, →I 673, 697, 719, →II 26, 108–112
- in math and text, →II 287
- Noto Sans fonts, in math and text, →II 252, 295
- noto-mono package, →II 27
- noto-sans package, →II 27
- noto-serif package, →II 27
- notoccite package, →II 473, 483, 485
- incompatible with AMS document classes, →II 483
- notocondensed package, →II 27
- notocondensed-mono package, →II 27, 30
- notocpart* option (titlesec), →I 42
- notomath package, →II 248, 252, 287, 295
- notoplevel key (doc), →II 592, 593
- notosans option
- (newtxmath), →II 252
 - (newtxtext), →II 248
- notref option (showkeys), →I 94
- notsubtype key (biblatex), →II 551
- nott option
- (kpfonts|kpfonts-otf), →II 19
 - (notocondensed), →II 27
- nottoc option (tocbibind), →I 56
- nottsc classic biblatex style (biblatex-nottsc classic), →II 453, 454
- notttype key (biblatex), →II 551, 552
- nounderline key (thmtools), →I 286, 287
- novskip key (lettrine), →I 144
- nowarn key, →I 110
- noxchvw option (newtxtext), →II 247
- \nparallel math symbol \nparallel (amssymb), →II 221
- \nplus math symbol \nplus (stmaryrd), →II 215
- \nprec math symbol \nprec (amssymb), →II 217
- \npreceq math symbol \npreceq (amssymb), →II 217
- \nRrightarrow math symbol \nRrightarrow (amssymb), →II 220
- \nrightarrow math symbol \nrightarrow (amssymb), →II 220
- \nshortmid math symbol \nshortmid (amssymb), →II 221
- \nshortparallel math symbol \nshortparallel (amssymb), →II 221
- \nsim math symbol \nsim (amssymb), →II 216, 217
- \nsubseteq math symbol \nsubseteq (amssymb), →II 218
- \nsubseteqq math symbol \nsubseteqq (amssymb), →II 218
- \nsucc math symbol \nsucc (amssymb), →II 217
- \nsucceq math symbol \nsucceq (amssymb), →II 216, 217
- \nsupseteq math symbol \nsupseteq (amssymb), →II 218
- \nsupseteqq math symbol \nsupseteqq (amssymb), →II 218
- NTG (Netherland's TeX users group), →II 793
- \nth (tlc/fmtcount), →I 155
- nthcolumn env. (paracol), →I 342
- nthcolumn* env. (paracol), →I 342
- ntheorem package, →I 89, 92, 281, 283f.
- \ntodo (tlc/todonotes), →I 242
- \ntriangleleft math symbol \ntriangleleft (amssymb), →II 218
- \ntrianglelefteq math symbol \ntrianglelefteq (amssymb), →II 218
- \ntrianglelefteqslant math symbol \ntrianglelefteqslant (stmaryrd), →II 218
- \ntriangleright math symbol \ntriangleright (amssymb), →II 218
- \ntrianglerighteq math symbol \ntrianglerighteq (amssymb), →II 218
- \ntrianglerighteqslant math symbol \ntrianglerighteqslant (stmaryrd), →II 218
- \nu math symbol ν , →II 212, 246, 261–296
- (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 247
- null.tex file, →II 725
- \nullfont, →I 634
- \num (siunitx), →I 168, 170, 173f.
- numarrows env. (tlc/lineno), →I 339
- \number, →II 658
- number BibTeX field, →II 383, 386f., 389, 418
- number of strings errors, →II 747
- number width, tables of contents, →I 73f.
- number-only citations, →II 435–439, 441–445, 450f., 454, 456–461, 467f., 473f., 475, 476–485, 486, 487, 545, *see also* citation systems
- alpha style, →II 435, 437, 439, 441, 443f., 457f., 467, 487
 - back references, →II 547
 - biblatex package, →II 484, 485ff.
 - captions, →II 483
 - color, →II 480
 - compressing citations, →II 504f.
 - customizing citations, →II 476ff., 479, 480, 487
 - definition, →II 470
 - headings, →II 483
 - indexing citations automatically, →II 546
 - line breaks, →II 479
 - natbib package, →II 503–506
 - page ranges, disabling, →II 480
 - parentheses, →II 480
 - punctuation, →II 479, 482f.
 - sort order, →II 478f., 481, 485f., 504f.
 - spaces, processing, →II 480f.
 - superscripts, →II 481f., 483, 486f.
 - unsorted citation style, →II 483
 - verbose mode, →II 481
- number_format key (tcolorbox), →I 627
- number_within key (tcolorbox), →I 627
- numberblanklines key
- (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 310
 - (listings), →I 326
- numberbychapter key (listings), →I 330
- numbered key
- (hyperref|bookmark), →I 105
 - (thmtools), →I 285, 288
- numbered value (jurabib), →II 530

- numberfirstline key
 - (fvextra), →I 311
 - (listings), →I 326
 - numbering
 - boxes, →I 627
 - code lines, →I 326, 327, 332
 - columns, text, →I 348, 349, 350
 - equations
 - resetting the counter, →II 153
 - subordinate sequences, →II 152, 153
 - footnotes, →I 208, 216, 220f., 222, 223ff., 226
 - per page, →I 210, 211, 223
 - headings, *see* document headings, numbering
 - lines, →I 334–339
 - lines, typed text, →I 309, 310f.
 - multilingual documents, →II 316, 317ff., 320
 - pages, *see* page numbers
 - rows, in tables, →I 501f.
 - subnumbering float captions, →I 547, 548, 556
 - numberless key (titlesec), →I 49
 - numberless tables of contents, →I 62
 - numberlike key (thmtools), →I 285
 - \numberline, →I 53ff., 56, 71, 72ff.
 - (titletoc), →I 63, 66
 - Numbers key (fontspec), →I 713f., 716, 723, →II 23, 24, 50
 - numbers key
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 309, 310, 312, 316, 318
 - (listings), →I 326, 327, 332
 - numbers option (natbib), →II 484, 503, 504, 505, 506
 - numbers, scientific notation, →I 168f., 173f.
 - numbersep key
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 310
 - (listings), →I 326, 327
 - numbersstyle key (listings), →I 327
 - \NUMBERstring (fmtcount), →I 155
 - \Numberstring (fmtcount), →I 155
 - \numberstring (fmtcount), →I 155
 - \NUMBERstringnum (fmtcount), →I 155
 - \Numberstringnum (fmtcount), →I 155
 - \numberstringnum (fmtcount), →I 155
 - numberstyle key (listings), →I 326, 327
 - numberwithin key (thmtools), →I 285
 - numbib option (tocbibind), →I 56
 - numcases env. (cases), →II 157
 - numerals, math symbols, →II 211–214
 - Numerator value (fontspec), →I 719
 - numerator-font key (xfrac), →I 166
 - numerator-format key (xfrac), →I 166
 - numerator-top-sep key (xfrac), →I 166
 - numeric biblatex style (biblatex),
 - II 433, 435, 436, 477, 484, 485f.
 - numeric-comp biblatex style (biblatex),
 - II 435, 484, 486, 487
 - numeric-comp-archaeology biblatex style
 - (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446
 - numeric-ordering:on value (upmendex), →II 368
 - numeric-verb biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, 484
 - numeric.cbx file (biblatex), →II 487
 - \numexpr, →II 659
 - numhead_negative keyword (*MakeIndex|upmendex*),
 - II 359
 - numhead_positive keyword (*MakeIndex|upmendex*),
 - II 359
 - numindex option (tocbibind), →I 56
 - \numlist (siunitx), →I 168, 169
 - \nummono (tlc/fontspec), →I 714
 - \numproduct (siunitx), →I 168, 169
 - numquotation env. (lineno), →I 335, 338
 - numquotation* env. (lineno), →I 338
 - numquote env. (lineno), →I 335, 338
 - numquote* env. (lineno), →I 338
 - numr OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 715, 719
 - \numrange (siunitx), →I 168, 169
 - \NumTabs (tabto), →I 435
 - \nVDash math symbol \nVdash (amssymb), →II 221
 - \nVdash math symbol \nVdash (amssymb), →II 221
 - \nvDash math symbol \nvDash (amssymb), →II 221
 - \nvdash math symbol \nvdash (amssymb), →II 221
 - NW value (diagbox), →I 480, 481
 - nw syntax (*font shape*), nonstandard, →II 42f.
 - \narrow math symbol \narrow , →II 219
 - nwejm biblatex style (nwejm), →II 461
 - nynorsk option (babel), →II 301
 - nyt value (biblatex), →II 554
- ## O
- O syntax
 - (*cmd/env decl*), →I 233, 249, →II 633, 636f., 638f., 641
 - (fancyhdr), →I 392, 399, 400–404
 - (tlc/cellspace), →I 475
 - (wrapfig), →I 536
 - O value (keyfloat), →I 571
 - \O text symbol \O , →I 770
 - \o text symbol \o , →I 771
 - o syntax
 - (*cmd/env decl*), →I 249, →II 633, 635, 638ff.
 - (wrapfig), →I 536
 - O versus 0 in fonts, →II 24, 89
 - oaddress BibTeX field (jurabib), →II 533
 - \oak (tlc/siunitx), →I 175
 - \oarg (ltxdoc), →II 598
 - \oast math symbol \oast (stmaryrd), →II 216
 - \obar math symbol \obar (stmaryrd), →II 216
 - Oberon-2 value (listings), →I 323
 - obeyDraft option (todonotes), →I 242
 - obeyFinal option (todonotes), →I 242
 - obeyspaces option (url), →I 200, 201
 - obeytabs key (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 312
 - objectAngle key (hvfloat), →I 561, 563f.
 - objectFrame key (hvfloat), →I 561
 - objectPos key (hvfloat), →I 561
 - oblique fonts, →I 654
 - sans serif fonts with oblique shape, →I 684, 687,
 - II 12ff., 18f., 26, 32–35, 69, 73f., 76f., 79f., 85f.
 - with Unicode engines, →I 710
 - \oblong math symbol \oblong (stmaryrd), →II 215

`\obslash` math symbol \oslash (stmaryrd), →II 216
`occitan` option (babel), →II 301
`ocgx2` package, →I 107
`\ocircle` math symbol \bigcirc (stmaryrd), →II 216
`OCL` value (listings), →I 323
`\oclc` (uri), →I 203
`\octal` (fmtcount), →II 650
`\octalnum` (fmtcount), →II 650
`Octave` value (listings), →I 323
`\octet` (tlc/bxepic), →I 607
`odd` value
 (*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 354
 (*titlesec*), →I 49
`oddPage` value (hvfloating), →I 561, 564
`\oddpagelayoutfalse` (layouts), →I 372, 373
`\oddsidemargin` rigid length, →I 367f., 369, 371, →II 709
`\odot` math symbol \odot , →II 216
`\OE` text symbol \mathbb{O} , →I 770
`\oe` text symbol \mathfrak{o} , →I 762, 771
`\of` (siunitx), →I 173
 of syntax (tikz), →I 641
`Off` value (fontspec), →I 722
`off` value
 (babel), →II 305
 (siunitx), →I 173
`offa` biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, 450
`\og` (babel), →I 143, →II 303, 311, 313
`\ogreaterthan` math symbol \gtrsim (stmaryrd), →II 216
`\ohm` (siunitx), →I 170, 172
`\oid` (uri), →I 202
`\oiint` math symbol \oiint (newtxmath|newpxmath),
 →II 244, 249
`\oiintsl` math symbol \oiint (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245
`\oiintup` math symbol \oiint (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245
`\oiint` math symbol \oint
 (esint), →II 169
 (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 244, 249
`\ointsl` math symbol \oint (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245
`\ointup` math symbol \oint (newtxmath|newpxmath),
 →II 245, 249
`\oint` math symbol \oint , →II 169, 222, 261–296
 (esint), →II 169
 (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 244, 249
`\ointclockwise` math symbol \oint (esint), →II 169
`\ointctrlockwise` math symbol \oint
 (esint), →II 169
 (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 244, 249
`\ointctrlockwisesl` math symbol \oint
 (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245
`\ointctrlockwiseup` math symbol \oint
 (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245
`\ointerval` (interval), →II 173
`\ointsl` math symbol \oint (newtxmath|newpxmath),
 →II 245, 249
`\ointup` math symbol \oint (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245
`old` option (old-arrows), →II 220
`Old Standard` fonts, description/examples, →II 63, 108, 111
`old-arrows` package, →II 220
`\olddatelsorbian` (babel), →II 315, 316
`\olddateusorbian` (babel), →II 316
`\oldpildcrowone` text symbol \mathfrak{C} (fourier-orns), →II 119
`\oldpildcrowsix` text symbol \mathfrak{C} (fourier-orns), →II 119
`\oldpildcrowthtwo` text symbol \mathfrak{C} (fourier-orns), →II 119
`oldspacing` option (T_EX Gyre font packages), →I 690
`OldStandard` package, →II 64
`OldStyle` value (fontspec), →I 713, 716, 717, 723, →II 23, 50
`oldstyle` option (*various font packages*), →II 7
 (AlegreyaSans), →II 11
 (Alegreya), →II 11
 (Baskervaldx), →II 48
 (CormorantGaramond), →II 41
 (FiraMono), →II 14
 (FiraSans), →II 14
 (Playfair), →II 64
 (TheanoDidot), →II 63
 (fbb), →II 38
 (gandhi), →II 15
 (kpfonts|kpfonts-otf), →II 18, 267
 (notomath), →II 252
 (noto), →I 673, →II 27
`oldstyle` numerals, →I 700, 716, 717, →II 8
`\oldstylenums`, →I 44, 64, 322, 697, 700, →II 22, 524
 warning using, →II 756
 (fontspec), →I 717
`oldstylenums` option (kpfonts|kpfonts-otf), →II 18
`oldstylenumsmath` option (kpfonts|kpfonts-otf), →II 267
`\olessthan` math symbol \lesssim (stmaryrd), →II 216
`\Omega` math symbol Ω , →I 679, →II 143, 150f., 212, 255
`\omega` math symbol ω , →II 143, 166, 212, 246
 Omega, T_EX extension, →I 652
`\ominus` math symbol \ominus , →II 216
`\OMIT` (l3build), →II 609, 610, 611
`\omit`, error mentioning, →II 731
`omit` value (biblatex), →II 540
`omitted` text, marking, *see* ellipsis
`OML` font encoding, →I 737, 753, 765, 766, →II 241
`OMS` font encoding, →I 698, 737, 753, →II 241
`OMX` font encoding, →I 737, 753, →II 241
`On` value (fontspec), →I 720, 722
`online` key (tcolorbox), →I 627
`one-time` hooks, →II 673
 for `\include`, →II 677
 for the document env., →II 678
 for packages/classes, →II 677
 using, →II 682
`OneColumn` value (hyperref), →I 107
`\onecolumn`, →I 351, →II 371
`onehalfspace` env. (setspace), →I 140
`\onehalfspacing` (setspace), →I 140
`onehalfspacing` option (setspace), →I 140
`onehalfspacing` value (caption), →I 141
`onpage` value (keyvaltable), →I 497, 500
`onpagem` package, →I 396
`oneside` key/option (caption), →I 542
`oneside` option, →I 417, 564
`online` B_BL_AT_EX entry type (biblatex), →II 387, 391

- online option (threeparttable), →I 493
- online resources, *see* Internet resources
- online tracing, →II 779
- `\OnlyDescription` (doc), →II 587, 589, 595, 599, 614
- onlynamed key (thmtools), →I 287
- onlyrm option (kpfonts|kpfonts-otf), →II 19
- onlyText key (hvfloat), →I 561, 564
- `\ontoday` (babel), →II 315
- onum OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 715, 716
- 00Rexx value (listings), →I 323
- Opacity key (fontspec), →I 714
- `\opcit` (jurabib), →II 522, 532
- opcit key/option (jurabib), →II 522, 532
- `\open` (tlc/mathtools), →II 172
- open key
 - (hyperref|bookmark), →I 104, 105
 - (interval), →II 172f.
 - (tikz), →I 640
- open syntax (typed-checklist), →I 293, 294f.
- open/close, math symbols, →II 190, 223f.
- `open_left` key (interval), →II 172f.
- `open_right` key (interval), →II 172f.
- openbib option, →II 477, 478
- `\openin`, →II 677
- openlevel key (hyperref|bookmark), →I 104, 105
- openout_any syntax (latex (web2c)), →II 725
- OpenType font features (fontspec)
 - c2pc, →I 717
 - c2sc, →I 715, 717
 - case, →I 715, 725, 726
 - clig, →I 720, 721
 - cpsp, →I 715, 722
 - curs, →I 725
 - cv(num), →I 715, 722, 723f.
 - dlig, →I 720, 721
 - dnom, →I 715, 719
 - frac, →I 720
 - hist, →I 725
 - hkna, →I 725
 - hlig, →I 720, 721
 - ital, →I 725
 - kern, →I 715, 722
 - liga, →I 715, 720, 721
 - lnum, →I 715, 716
 - locl, →I 727
 - mark, →I 715
 - mkmk, →I 715
 - numr, →I 715, 719
 - onum, →I 715, 716
 - ordn, →I 719
 - pcap, →I 717
 - pnum, →I 716
 - rlig, →I 720
 - ruby, →I 725
 - salt, →I 722ff., 725
 - scsp, →I 722
 - sinf, →I 719
 - smcp, →I 715f., 717
- OpenType font features (fontspec) (*cont.*)
 - ss(num), →I 715, 722, 723f., →II 24
 - subs, →I 715, 719
 - supr, →I 715, 719
 - swsh, →I 725
 - titl, →I 725, 726
 - tnum, →I 715, 716
 - unic, →I 717, 718
 - vkna, →I 725
 - zero, →I 716
- OpenType fonts, →I 687, *see also* Chapters 10 and 12
- operator names, mathematical typesetting, →II 192, 193, 194
- `\operatorname` (amsmath), →II 137, 193
- operators, math symbols, →II 166f., 168–171, 179, 180, 222
 - multilingual documents, →II 321
- `\oplus` math symbol \oplus , →II 216, 261–296
- optical alignment, →I 126f., 128f.
- OpticalSize key (fontspec), →I 715
- Optima fonts, description/examples, →I 670, 707, →II 71
- optimization, downsides of, →I 120f.
- optional package, →I 30
- optional arguments,
 - II 626, 631, 632, 633f., 637ff., 640, 641
 - testing for, →II 639f.
- optional fields, bibliography database, →II 385, 386f.
- `\OptionNotUsed`, →II 694, 699
- options
 - class, →I 22
 - declaring, →II 697–702
 - executing, →II 699f., 702f.
 - global, →I 24
 - key/value, →II 700–703
 - processing, →I 24, 25f., →II 699f.
 - key/value, →II 702f.
 - spaces in, →I 25
 - unused, →I 25
- options BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 547
- opublisher BibTeX field (jurabib), →II 533
- `\or`
 - in TeX error message, →II 723
 - (ifthen), →II 693, 723
 - or syntax (biblatex), →II 553
- Ordinal value (fontspec), →I 718, 719
- `\ordinal`
 - (fmtcount), →I 154, 155
 - (memoir), →I 154
 - ordinals, formatting, →I 154, 155
- `\ORDINALstring` (fmtcount), →I 154
- `\Ordinalstring` (fmtcount), →I 154, 155
- `\ordinalstring` (fmtcount), →I 154, 155
- `\ORDINALstringnum` (fmtcount), →I 155
- `\Ordinalstringnum` (fmtcount), →I 155
- `\ordinalstringnum` (fmtcount), →I 155
- ordinary math symbols, →II 211ff., 214
- ordn OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 719
- organization BibTeX field, →II 382, 386f., 388, 389
- origdate BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 401

- origin key
 - (graphicx), →I 581, 586, 591, 592
 - (rotating), →I 593
- originalparameters option (ragged2e), →I 124
- ornaments, *see specific types of ornaments*
- Ornaments ADF fonts, description/examples, →II 118
- orphans key/option (widows-and-orphans), →I 426
- oscola biblatex style (oscola), →II 467, 468, 537
- oscola package, →II 464
- osf option (*various font packages*), →II 7, 42, 56
 - (Baskervaldx), →II 273
 - (XCharter), →II 274
 - (baskervillef), →II 273
 - (erewhon), →II 283
 - (garamondx), →I 67, →II 44
 - (heuristica), →II 58, 283
 - (mathpazo), →II 252
 - (newtxtext), →II 244
 - (stickstoo), →II 58
- \oslash math symbol \oslash , →II 216
- OT1 font encoding, →I 297, 304, 305, 658, 671, 688, 694, 698, 699, 737, 747, 755ff., →II 12, 225, 305, 323, 339, 350
 - bad for cut & paste, →II 378
 - comparison with T1, →I 672, 685
 - fonts encoded in, →I 684, 687, →II 11–18, 20, 25f., 28f., 31ff., 35–43, 45–49, 51–54, 56–59, 61–66, 69–72, 74–78, 80–83, 85–92, 98–101, 103
 - hyphenation in, →I 744, →II 727
 - in math formulas, →I 753
 - in Unicode engines, →I 756
 - list of LICR objects, →I 767–776
 - not available for Lucida fonts, →II 23
 - (newverbs), problems with, →I 301
- OT2 font encoding, →I 737, →II 326
 - fonts encoded in, →II 78, 80
- OT4 font encoding, →I 737
 - fonts encoded in, →II 47, 74, 78, 80, 101
- .otf file extension, →I 9, 11
- otfinfo program, →I 708, 715, 723
- other value (biblatex), →II 392, 393
- other* value (biblatex), →II 392
- otherlanguage env. (babel), →II 302, 303f.
- otherlanguage* env. (babel), →II 303
- \otimes math symbol \otimes , →II 159ff., 216
- oubrace package, →II 189
- .out file extension (hyperref|bookmark), →I 104
- out key (tikz), →I 638
- \outer, →II 586, 598
 - outer key
 - (adjustbox), →I 599
 - (doc), →II 586
 - outer key/option (geometry), →I 379
 - outer value (hvfloat), →I 561, 563
 - outer_lsep key (tikz), →I 645
 - outerleftsep key (diagbox), →I 480
 - outrightsep key (diagbox), →I 480
 - outline fonts, →I 655
- \output, warning mentioning, →II 763
- output encoding, →I 650, 693f., 760–776
- output files, indexes, →II 354, 364
- output files, specifying (docstrip), →II 601f.
- output style parameters, indexes, →II 358f., 367, 369
- output-dates key (typed-checklist), →I 294, 295
- \outputpenalty T_EX counter, →I 425
- \oval, →I 603
 - warning using, →II 757
 - (pict2e), →I 603, 605, 606
- ovals, drawing, →I 605, 606
- \ovee math symbol \ovee (stmaryrd), →II 216
- \over, deprecated, →II 165
- \overbrace, →II 183, 189
 - (abrcases), →II 185, 189
 - (mathtools), →II 184
- \overbracket (mathtools), →II 184
- overflow errors, →II 746–749, *see also* troubleshooting
- \overfullrule rigid length, →I 438, →II 773
 - output produced from, →II 773
- \overgroup (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 250
- \overgroupa (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 250
- \overgrouppra (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 250
- overlay key (tikz), →I 643, 644
- \overleftarrow, →II 183
 - (amsmath), →II 183, 184
 - (underoverlap), →II 190
- \overleftrightharpoon (amsmath), →II 184
- \overline, →II 183
 - (underoverlap), →II 190
- overload option
 - (abrcases), →II 185, 189
 - (empheq), →II 175
- overlock package, →I 702f., →II 84
- Overlock fonts, description/examples, →I 702f., →II 84
- Overpic env. (overpic), →I 594
- overpic env. (overpic), →I 593, 594
- overpic package, →I 587, 593f., →II 979
- \overrightarrow, →II 183
 - (amsmath), →II 183, 184
 - (underoverlap), →II 190
- \overset (amsmath), →II 151, 179
- \overunderset (amsmath), →II 179
- \overwithdelims, deprecated, →II 165
- overwrite key, →I 109, 499, →II 741, 752, 765
 - (biblatex), →II 392, 408
- \owedge math symbol \owedge (stmaryrd), →II 216
- \owns math symbol \owns , →II 218
- oxalph biblatex style (biblatex-oxref), →II 444
- oxnotes biblatex style (biblatex-oxref), →II 444
- oxnotes-ibid biblatex style (biblatex-oxref), →II 444
- oxnotes-inote biblatex style (biblatex-oxref), →II 444
- oxnotes-note biblatex style (biblatex-oxref), →II 444
- oxnotes-trad1 biblatex style (biblatex-oxref), →II 444
- oxnotes-trad2 biblatex style (biblatex-oxref), →II 444
- oxnotes-trad3 biblatex style (biblatex-oxref), →II 444
- oxnum biblatex style (biblatex-oxref), →II 444
- oxyyear biblatex style (biblatex-oxref), →II 444
- oyear BibT_EX field (jurabib), →II 533

Oz value (listings), →I 323

P

P syntax (tlc/array), →I 446

\P text/math symbol ¶, →I 66, 762, 770, →II 213

\p (tlc/amsmath), →I 150

p option (newtxtext), →II 244

p syntax, →I 436, 437f., 447, 454f., 464f., 477, 507, 510
 error when used in tabular, etc., →II 732
 (array), →I 123, 438, 439, 440–443, 447, 449, 451f.
 (diagbox), →I 481
 (float), →I 529
 (paracol), →I 345, 348
 (tabulary), →I 450

\p@enumi, →I 255, 256

\p@enumii, →I 255, 256

\p@enumiii, →I 256

\p@enumiv, →I 256

package B^BI^BT^BX field (biblatex), →II 467

package errors, *see specific package names*; troubleshooting

package files, →I 10

package loading part (*classes and packages*), →II 703

package options, →I 22

package/*(name)*/after hook, →II 676, 677

package/*(name)*/before hook, →II 677

package/after hook, →II 677

package/before hook, →II 677

\PackageError, →II 707

output produced from, →II 707

\PackageInfo, →II 706, 707

output produced from, →II 706

\PackageInfoNoLine, →II 707

\PackageNote, →II 706

\PackageNoteNoLine, →II 706

packages, *see also* development tools, l3build

combining in one file, →I 109f.

commands, →II 628, 694, 704–708

definition, →I 22

descriptions, online catalogue, →II 787, 790

documentation, finding, →II 786f.

documenting, *see* documentation tools

file structure, →II 693–708

in this book, →II 977–982

local, distributing, →I 109f.

modifying, →I 25

multiple, with same option settings, →I 25

processing, →I 24, 25f.

search paths, →II 785f.

using earlier versions, →I 114–118, →II 693ff.

a4 *obsolete*, →I 374, *see instead* geometry package

a4dutch *obsolete*, →I 374, *see instead* geometry

a4wide *obsolete*, →I 374, *see instead* geometry

a5 *obsolete*, →I 374, *see instead* geometry

a5comb *obsolete*, →I 374, *see instead* geometry

abraces, →II 185–189

abstract, →I 28

accanthis, →II 39

accents, →II 177, 796

packages (*cont.*)

acro, →I 7, 30, 156–163, →II 811, 978

addlines, →I 416ff.

adorn, →II 118

adjustbox, →I 587, 595–601, 614, →II 813

afterpage, →I 519, 525

Alegreya, →I 662, 698, →II 11, 315

AlegreyaSans, →I 662, →II 11

algorrevived, →I 703, →II 90

algorithmicx, →I 322

algorithms, →I 322

algpseudocode, →I 322

alltt, →I 298

almdra, →II 100

amscd, →II 129, 160f.

amscfonts, →II 130, 226ff., 239f., 720

amsmath, →I 93, 116, 149f., 336, →II 116f., 127–156, 158, 163–171, 174, 175, 179–184, 190, 192ff., 196, 199–206, 208f., 220, 223, 244, 283, 639, 641, 711, 795

amsopn, →II 129, 193

amsrefs, →II 799

amssymb, →II 130, 149, 208–224, 226, 236, 239f.

amstext, →I 167, →II 129, 192

amsthm, →I 89, 92, 281–284, 285, 288, →II 129, 795

amsxtra, →II 129, 177

AnonymousPro, →II 90

antpolt, →II 47

anttor, →II 101, 295

apalike, →II 420, 429, 476

arabi, →II 323, 341

arabicfront, →I 26

arabluatex, →II 341

arimo, →II 69

array, →I 167, 436, 437–446, 454, 457, 466f., 469, 471, 476–493, 497, →II 157f., 599, 695, 784, 978

arydshln, →I 467, 469f.

asciilist, →I 295

askinclude, →I 30

astron, →II 429

atveryend *obsolete*,

→II 679, *see instead* hook management

authblk, →I 27f.

authordate1-4, →II 420, 429, 489

avant *obsolete*, →I 691, *see instead* tgadvantor

babel, →I 82, 91, 134, 152, 155, 157, 160, 184, 247,

→II 297ff., 300–340, 342, 377, 392, 430, 433, 490,

524, 559, 574, 587, 674, 682f., 711, 725, 738, 742, 744, 765, 796f.

babelbib, →II 390, 392

Baskervaldx, →II 48, 273

baskervillef, →II 48, 273

bboldx, →II 227

bengali, →II 341

beton, →II 239, 241

bibentry, →II 473, 537f.

biblatex, →I 11f., 18, 182, →II 328, 378f., 381, 387, 390, 397, 407–412, 432–468, 470, 473f., 478, 484–487, 488f., 500ff., 506f., 534–569, 570, 803, 979

packages (*cont.*)

biblatex-chicago, →II 440
 biblatex-dw, →II 536
 biblatex-ext, →II 435, **437**, 473, 478, 506, 562
 biblatex-juradiss, →II 536
 biblatex-trad, →II 478
 biblatex2bibitem, →II 378
 biblist, →II 415
 bibtopic, →II 570, **578ff.**
 bibunits, →II 570, **574–578**, 579, 979
 bidi, →II 332
 bigdelim, →II 158f.
 bigfoot, →I 98, 207, 212, 218, **220–226**
 bigstrut, →I 467, **473f.**, 475
 biolinum, →II 20
 bitter, →II 65
 blindtext, →I 363ff.
 bm, →II **235–238**, 258, 261, 740
 boldline, →I 467, **468f.**
 bookman *obsolete*, →I 691, *see instead* tgbonum
 bookmark, →I **103–106**, →II 979f.
 booktabs, →I **xiii**, 467, **471ff.**, 497f., →II 978
 boxedminipage, →I 614
 bracket, →II 173f.
 breqn, →I 7, →II 133, **146–149**, 799
 bxeepic, →I 602, **608–612**
 cabin, →II 70
 calc, →I 269f., 383, 435, 447, 453, 480, 567,
 →II 530, 685, **687ff.**, 711, 717
 captcont, →I 546
 caption, →I 59, 116, 118, 141, 463, 517, **532f.**, **540–550**,
 551, 554, 561, 563, 567, →II 979
 caption2 *obsolete*, →I 116, 540, *see instead* caption
 caption3 *obsolete*, →I 116, *see instead* caption
 cases, →II 156f.
 ccfonts, →II **66**, **238f.**, 242f., 288
 cellspace, →I 467, **474ff.**
 chancery *obsolete*, →I 691, *see instead* tgchorus
 changebar, →I 251
 changes, →I 237, **245–250**
 chappg, →I 387f.
 chapterbib, →II 405, 490, 496, 570, **571–574**, 579
 CharisSIL, →II 51
 charter *obsolete*, →I 691, →II 50, *see instead* XCharter
 chicago, →II 429, 476, 488, **489**
 Chivo, →II 70
 cinzel, →II 98
 cite, →II 473f., **478–483**, 485, 487, 490, 501, 504, 570
 CJK, →II 331, 341
 classico, →II 71
 ClearSans, →II 72
 cleveref, →I 77, 79, **86–93**, 285, 502
 cmbright, →II **12**, **239f.**, 290
 cochineal, →II **40**, 263
 coelacanth, →II 37
 colonequals, →II 221
 color, →I 167, 274, 410, 413, 466,
 →II **207f.**, 670, 711, 733, 741

packages (*cont.*)

colorspace, →II 980
 colortbl, →I **466ff.**, 470, 479, 497, →II 158
 comment, →I 30
 continue, →I 407ff.
 CormorantGaramond, →II 41
 courier *obsolete*, →I 691, *see instead* tgcursor
 CrimsonPro, →II **40**, 263
 crop, →I 411–414
 csquotes, →I **179–188**, 196, →II 311, 559, 807, 978
 csvsimple, →I 500
 CTeX, →II 331
 cuprum, →II 73
 custom-bib,
 →II 390, 406, 419, **426–432**, 472, 494, 498, 538, 979
 cyklop, →II 73
 dashrule, →II 668
 dashundergaps, →I 190f.
 datatool, →I 500
 datetime2, →II 315
 dcolumn, →I 446, **481–484**, →II 319
 dejavu, →II 13
 dejavu-otf, →II 13
 DejaVuSans, →II 13
 DejaVuSansCondensed, →II 13f.
 DejaVuSansMono, →II 13
 DejaVuSerif, →II 13
 DejaVuSerifCondensed, →II 14
 delarray, →II 157f.
 devnag, →II 341
 diagbox, →I 479ff.
 diffcoeff, →II 170f.
 doc, →I 298, →II **583–597**, 598, 605
 docstrip, →I 32, →II **599–606**, 806, 810
 dotlessi, →II 177
 draftwatermark, →I 409ff.
 droid, →II 27
 droidmono, →II 27
 droidsans, →II 27
 droidserif, →II 27
 ds serif, →II 227
 ebgaramond, →II **42**, 265
 econlipsum, →I 363
 eepic, →I 609
 ellipsis, →I 148f.
 embrac, →I 188f.
 empheq, →II 174f.
 endfloat, →I 519, **525–528**
 endnotes, →I 218, **228**, 230, →II 811
 enotez, →I 218, **228–232**, →II 811
 enumerate, →I 275
 enumitem, →I 231, 258, 260, **261–281**, 291,
 →II 739, 797, 979
 epic, →I 602, 608ff.
 epigraph, →I 39
 erewhon, →I 691, →II **59**, 283
 esint, →II **169**, 170
 etaremmune, →I 275

packages (*cont.*)

ethiop, →II 341
 etoolbox, →II 678f.
 eucal, →II 130, 227, **240**, 241
 eufrak, →II 130, **240**, 241f.
 euler, →II 39, **241**, 242
 eulervm, →I 752, →II **241ff.**, 288
 expl3, →I **7**, →II 622, 624, 976
 exscale, →I **704**, →II 66, 199, 239, 242, 251
 extarrows, →II 164
 extdash, →II 149ff.
 fancybox, →I 614
 fancyhdr, →I 392, **398–405**, 408, →II 978
 fancypar, →I 147
 fancyvrb, →I 137, 298, 301f., **303–322**, 323, 326, 330f., 334, 712, →II 979
 fbb, →I 664, →II **38**
 fcolumn, →I 446, 476, **487–491**
 fewerfloatpages, →I 515, **519–524**
 filemod, →II 619f.
 FiraMono, →II 14
 FiraSans, →II 14
 fix-cm, →I 144, 164, 685, **686**
 fixltx2e *obsolete*, →I 6, 116, 514
 fixme, →I 237, **242ff.**
 flafter, →I 80, **512**
 flexysym, →II 149
 float, →I 517, 525, **529–532**, 538, 559f., 562, 568, →II 646, 741, 754
 fltpage *obsolete*, →I 560, *see instead* hvfloat package
 fltrace, →I **518f.**, 523
 fmtcount, →I **154f.**, →II **650**, 814
 fnpct, →I **216ff.**, →II 684, 811
 fontawesome5, →II 120–124
 fontaxes, →I 649, 669
 fontenc, →I 10, 304f., 650, 672, **693f.**, 736, 759, →II 104, 328, 708, 711, 721
 fontspec, →I 7, 18, 647, 649, 671f., 674f., 679, **705–728**, 732, 749, →II 2, 5, 7, 10, 13, 36, 38, 45, 50, 53, 73, 93, 103, 256, 267, 275, 331f., 813
 footmisc, →I **210–216**, 217f., 222, 225, →II 560
 footnoterange, →I 216
 fourier, →II 283
 fourier-orns, →II 119
 french, →II 802
 frenchle, →II 341
 ftnright, →I **228**, 334
 fvextra, →I 301f., **303–322**
 fwllw, →I 407
 gandhi, →II 15
 garamondlibre, →II **42**, 318f.
 garamondx, →I 67, →II **44**, 265
 gentium, →II **45**, 309
 geometry, →I 366, 371, 373, 375, **377–384**, →II 815, 979
 gfsartemisias, →II **39**, 330
 gfsartemisias-euler, →II 39
 gfsbaskerville, →II 106
 gfsbodoni, →II **8**, **61**

packages (*cont.*)

gfscomplutum, →II 106
 gfsdidot, →II 62
 gfsneohellenic, →II 75
 gfsneohellenicot, →II **75**, 290
 gfsponsorson, →II 106
 gfssolemos, →II 106
 gillius, →II 75
 gillius2, →II 75
 gitinfo2, →II **616f.**, 980
 GoMono, →II 16
 GoSans, →II 16
 graphics, →I 384, 534, **576–580**, 582, **586–591**, 614, →II 711, 719, 721, 733, 736f., 741
 graphicx, →I 144f., 565, 567, **576f.**, **580–587**, **591f.**, 594–597, 601, 614, →II 711, 719, 721, 733, 736f., 741, 979
 grmath, →II 320
 har2nat, →II 490
 harvard, →II **420**, 429, **489**, 490, 494
 helvet *obsolete*, →I 691, *see instead* tgheros package
 here *obsolete*, →I 532, *see instead* float package
 hetarom, →I 612
 heuristica, →II **58**, 283
 hhline, →I 467f., **470f.**
 hvfloat, →I **560–567**, →II 815
 hyperref, →I 8, 24, 56, 72, 79f., 85f., 88, 93, 95, **96–108**, 163, 201f., 204, 216, 218, 231, 332, 463, 546, 551, 613, 624f., →II 474, 490, 570, 589, 647, 684, 758f., 761f., 812, 979
 hyph-utf8, →II 338
 ifetex *obsolete*, →II 686, *see instead* iftex package
 iflang, →II 304
 ifluatex *obsolete*, →II 686, *see instead* iftex package
 ifptex, →II 686f.
 iftex, →II 685ff.
 ifthen, →II 685, **689–693**
 ifvtex *obsolete*, →II 686, *see instead* iftex package
 ifxetex *obsolete*, →II 686, *see instead* iftex package
 imfellEnglish, →II 99
 inconsolata, →II 92
 indentfirst, →I **40**, →II 321
 index, →II 363, **372ff.**, 490, 979
 indxcite, →II 372
 inputenc, →I 10, 331, 650ff., **692f.**, 758, **759**, →II 327, 711, 729
 InriaSans, →II 16
 InriaSerif, →II 16
 interval, →II 172f.
 iwona, →II **77**, 293
 jmb, →II 421
 jurabib, →II 372, 409, 421, 473f., 491, **507–534**, 536f., 541, 570, 796
 kantlipsum, →I 16, **362f.**
 keyfloat, →I 560, **567–573**
 keyval, →I 377, 540, 585, →II 697
 keyvaltable, →I 494–504
 kotex, →II 331

packages (*cont.*)

kpfonts, →II 18, 267f., 293
 kpfonts-otf, →II 18, 267, 293
 kurier, →II 79, 295
 kvdefinekeys, →II 697
 kvoptions, →II 697
 kvsetkeys, →II 697
 lastpage, →I 386f.
 latexrelease, →I 109, **114–117**, →II 693, 738, 760
 lato, →II 80
 layout, →I 366, **371**
 layouts, →I **371–374**, 375
 lettrine, →I 141–145
 libertine, →II 20
 libertinus, →II 20, 275
 librebaskerville, →II 47
 LibreBodoni, →II 61
 librecaslon, →II 51
 librefranklin, →II 81
 lineno, →I 251, **334–339**, 348, →II 979
 linguisticspro, →II 59
 lipsum, →I 16, **361f.**
 listings, →I 137, 301ff., **322–332**, →II 729
 literat, →II 53
 lmodern, →I 686, **688f.**, 700, →II 93, 284
 longtable, →I 118, **459–463**, 469, 471, 489, 497, 568, →II 978
 lscape, →I 384
 ltablex, →I 463
 ltcaption, →I 527
 ltxtable, →I 110
 lua-check-hyphen, →II 775f.
 lua-ul, →I 194
 luastricks, →I 631
 luatexja, →II 331
 lucidabr, →I 660, →II **21**, 278
 luximono, →II 95
 lwarp, →II 984
 magaz, →I 146
 makeidx, →II **345**, 348, 352
 manyfoot, →I 153, 207, 218, **220–226**
 marcellus, →II 99
 marginnote, →I **234f.**, 236, 347
 marvosym, →II 117f.
 mathalpha, →II 226, 228f., **230–234**, 240f., 273
 mathdots, →II 176, **182**
 mathpazo, →I 690f., →II **251f.**, 268
 mathpple *obsolete*, →I 691, →II 251, *see instead* mathpazo
 mathptm *obsolete*, →I 691, *see instead* newtxmath
 mathptmx *obsolete*, →I 691, *see instead* newtxmath
 mathrsfs *obsolete*, →II 230, *see instead* mathalpha
 mathtools, →II 117, 130, **141ff.**, **145**, **155f.**, **165f.**, **168**, **172**, **174**, **180ff.**, **184**, **196f.**, 202, **204**
 mattens, →II 178f.
 mcite, →II 543
 mciteplus, →II 543
 mdframed, →I 286, 614f.
 merriweather, →II 26

packages (*cont.*)

miamo, →II 103
 microtype, →I **126–137**, **191–194**, 196f., 423, 656, 715, →II 89, 735, 774, 814, 978
 microtype-show, →I 132
 mintspirit, →II 82
 mintspirit2, →II 82
 mleftright, →II 191, **211**
 montex, →II 341
 montserrat, →I 740, →II **83**
 moreverb, →I 302
 morewrites, →II 734, **980**
 mparhack, →I 233
 multiaudience, →I 30
 multibib, →II 570, 579, **580f.**
 multicol, →I 70, 117, 334, **351–360**, 361, →II 590, 978f.
 multicolrule, →I 361
 multirow, →I **476–479**, →II 158
 multitoc, →I 70
 mweights, →I 649
 named, →II **423**, 429
 nameref, →I **93**, 627
 nar, →II 423
 natbib, →I 94, →II 420, 423, 429, 473f., 484, **490–500**, **503–506**, 507, 543, 570, 979
 nature, →II 423
 nccfoots, →I 221
 needspace, →I 419f.
 newapa, →II 423
 newcent *obsolete*, →I 691, *see instead* tgschola
 newfloat, →I 525, **529**, 568
 newpxmath, →II 237, **248ff.**
 newpxtext, →II 249
 newtxmath, →I 691, →II 20, 39, 236f., **243–248**, 252, 263, 265, 268, 273ff., 280, 283
 newtxtext, →I 691, →II **56**, 57, 236, 244, 247, 268, 280
 newverbs, →I 299ff.
 nextpage, →I 418f.
 nfssfont.tex, →I 669, **705**, 750, 752, →II 229
 nolbreaks, →I 125f.
 nonumonpart, →I 40
 nopageno, →I 396
 noto, →I 673, 675, →II **27**, 252
 noto-mono, →II 27
 noto-sans, →II 27
 noto-serif, →II 27
 notoccite, →II 473, **483**, 485
 notocondensed, →II 27
 notocondensed-mono, →II **27**, **30**
 notomath, →II 248, **252**, 287, 295
 nththeorem, →I 89, 92, 281, 283f.
 ocgx2, →I 107
 old-arrows, →II 220
 OldStandard, →II 64
 onepagem, →I 396
 optional, →I 30
 oscola, →II 464
 oubrace, →II 189

packages (*cont.*)

overlock, →I 702f., →II 84
 overpic, →I 587, **593f.**, →II 979
 pageslts, →I 387
 palatino *obsolete*, →I 690f., *see instead* tpgagella
 paracol, →I **339–351**, →II 811
 parallel, →I 339, 350
 parcolumns, →I 339, 350
 parnotes, →I 218, **226ff.**
 parskip, →I 137ff.
 pdfcolfoot, →I 208
 pdfcomment, →I 237, **250f.**
 pdfscape, →I 384
 perpage, →I 218ff.
 pgf, →I 634
 pgffor, →I 644
 pgfornament, →I 361
 pgfplots, →I 637, →II 721
 pict2e, →I **602–608**, 609, 611
 picture *obsolete*, →I 602, *see instead* pict2e package
 pifont, →I 274, →II **113–116**, 118f.
 placeins, →I 519, **524**, 567
 PlayfairDisplay, →II 64
 plex-mono, →II 30
 plex-sans, →II **30**, 31
 plex-serif, →II 30
 polyglossia, →I 191, 155, 184, 247, →II **342**, 559
 pspicture *obsolete*, →I 603, *see instead* pict2e package
 pstricks, →I 631, 645, →II **800**
 PTMono, →II 32
 PTSans, →II 32
 PTSansCaption, →II 32
 PTSansNarrow, →II 32
 PTSerif, →II 32
 PTSerifCaption, →II 32
 qrcode, →I 612f.
 quattroceto, →I 702f., →II **34**
 quotchap, →I 38f.
 ragged2e, →I 122, **123ff.**, 137, 617
 raleway, →II 86
 realscripts, →I 719
 refcheck, →I 94f.
 reledmac, →I 212, →II 813
 relsize, →I 306, **675f.**
 repeatindex, →II 372
 resizgather, →II 206
 roboto, →II **34**, 35
 roboto-mono, →II 34
 Rosario, →II 86
 rotating, →I 384, 527, **533ff.**, 567, 587, **592f.**
 rotfloat, →I 535
 savetrees, →I 384f.
 scalefnt, →I 676
 scrlayer-scrpage, →I 429
 setspace, →I **139ff.**, 375
 shadedthm, →I 286
 shadow, →I 614
 shortvrb, →I **298f.**, 300, →II 587, 706

packages (*cont.*)

showhyphenation, →II 775f.
 showidx, →II 352, **372**, 373
 showkeys, →I **93f.**, →II 490
 showtags, →II 417
 sidecap, →I 560
 sillypage, →II 651
 Slunits *obsolete*, →II 976, *see instead* siunitx package
 siunitx, →I 7, **167–177**, 475, 481, **484–487**, →II 816, 976
 snapshot, →I 111ff.
 snotez, →I 218, **235ff.**
 soul, →I 192, **194–198**, →II 727, 729
 soulutf8, →I **195**, 197
 sourcecodepro, →II 35
 sourcesanspro, →II 35
 sourceserifpro, →II 35
 spverbatim, →I 299, **301**
 stfloats, →I 514
 stickstootext, →II **58**, 280
 stix2, →II 58
 stmaryrd, →II 149, 190, **208–224**
 structuredlog, →II **712**, 980
 subcaption, →I **551–559**, 561, 566f.
 subdepth, →II 206f.
 subfig, →I 551
 supertabular, →I **456–459**, 461f., 489, 568
 svn-multi, →II 617ff.
 tabs, →I 467
 tabto, →I 434f.
 tabu *obsolete*, →I 497
 tabularx, →I **448ff.**, 454, 463, 475, 481, 497, →II 978
 tabulary, →I 448, **450ff.**, 475
 tagging, →I 30ff.
 tasks, →I **289–292**, →II 812
 tcolorbox, →I **614–631**, 632, →II 814, 979
 tempora, →II **56**, 57
 tex4ht, →II 984
 textcase, →I 178f.
 textcomp, →I **694f.**, **701**, 703, 766f., →II 757
 tgadventor, →I **689**, 690f., →II **69**
 tgbonum, →I **689**, 690f., →II **49**
 tgchorus, →I **689**, 691, →II **102**
 tgcursor, →I **689**, 690f., →II **91**
 tgheros, →I **689**, 690f., →II **76**, 126
 tpgagella, →I 142f., 145, 665, **689**, 690f., →II **46**, 242
 tgschola, →I **689**, 691, →II **54**
 tgtermes, →I **689**, 691, →II **55**, **57**, 126
 TheanoDidot, →II 63
 theorem *obsolete*, →I 283
 thmbox, →I 286f.
 thmtools, →I 92, **284–288**
 threeparttable, →I 491, **492f.**
 threetableex, →I 492
 tikz, →I 239, 361, 576, 609, 619f., 622f., **631–646**,
 →II 161f., 307, 721, 799, 814, 979
 tikz-cd, →II 160, **161ff.**
 tikzducks, →I 645
 tikzlings, →I 645

packages (*cont.*)

tikzmark, →II 814
 times *obsolete*, →I 691, *see instead* tgterms package
 tinos, →II 57
 tipa, →I 737, →II 125f.
 titlesec, →I 40–51, 68, 72, 398, 513, 524, 711
 titletoc, →I 42, 56f., 59–70, 72, 74, 558, →II 979
 titling, →I 27
 tlc, →II 818
 tocbibind, →I 56, →II 372
 tocdata, →I 56–59
 tocloft, →I 56f.
 tocstyle, →I 56
 tocvsec2, →I 34, 55
 todonotes, →I 237–242, 243, 245, 250, →II 645, 980
 trace, →II 781f.
 tracefmt, →I 704f.
 truncate, →I 250, 405f.
 turnthepage, →I 407
 txfonts *obsolete*, →II 39, 243f., *see instead* newtxmath
 typearea, →I 371, 374, 375ff., 378, 429
 typed-checklist, →I 292–296
 ulem, →I 187, 189f., 194ff., 248, 250
 underoverlap, →II 186, 189f.
 underscore, →I 151f.
 unicode-math, →I 7, 18, 679, →II 226, 253–260, 267, 271
 unicodefonttable, →I 670, 728ff., →II 100
 universalis, →II 87
 upquote, →I 302f., 305
 upref, →II 129
 uri, →I 202ff.
 url, →I 102, 198–202, 204, →II 430, 796
 urlbst, →II 390
 utopia *obsolete*, →I 691, *see instead* erewhon
 varioref, →I 79–86, 89, 94, →II 302, 978, 981
 verbatim, →I 301f., 303
 version, →I 30
 vertbars, →I 237, 251
 VisualTikZ, →I 646
 wasysym, →II 116, 169f., 720
 widetable, →I 448, 453ff.
 widows-and-orphans, →I 424ff., →II 981
 wrapfig, →I 334, 528, 536ff., 567, 571
 XCharter, →I 691, →II 50, 274, 315
 xcite, →I 95
 xcolor, →I 17, 102, 167, 250, 410, 466, 497, 599,
 →II 207f., 733, 741, 800, 980
 xcomment, →I 30
 xfrac, →I 164ff., →II 802
 xgreek, →II 341
 xltabular, →I 296, 463f., 497
 xparse, →I 7, 619, →II 632, 708, 728
 xr, →I 95
 xr-hyper, →I 95
 xspace, →I 152f.
 xtemplate, →I 165
 xy, →II 306f., 800
 yfonts, →II 104ff.

packages (*cont.*)

zlmmt, →II 93
 \PackageWarning, →II 698, 706
 output produced from, →II 706
 \PackageWarningNoLine, →II 706
 packtdszip key (l3build), →II 615
 padding key
 (adjustbox), →I 598
 (qrcode), →I 613
 (thmtools), →I 286
 padding* key (adjustbox), →I 598
 \padzeroes (fmtcount), →II 650
 page counter, →I 385, 386, →II 646
 (babel), →II 335
 page key
 (hyperref), →I 101, 108
 (titlesec), →I 48, 49
 page syntax, →I 391, 395
 (titlesec), →I 48, 50
 page value (hyperref), →I 98
 page boundaries, ignoring in bibliographies, →II 520
 page breaks, *see also* space parameters
 badness rating, →II 657
 conditional, →I 419, 420
 equations, →II 145f.
 indexes, →II 372
 multipage tables, →I 458
 page layout, →I 414–420
 running long or short, →I 415f.
 troubleshooting, →II 769–773
 widows and orphans, →I 420–424, 425f.
 page contents, symbolic display, →II 769–772
 page layout
 asymmetrical, →I 380
 auto-completion, →I 377, 378f., 380, 381, 382f., 384
 binding, and the inner margin, →I 378
 BLANK PAGE on generated pages, →I 418f.
 body area, →I 378
 running long or short, →I 415f.
 changing, →I 368f., 370f.
 mid-document, →I 382, 383
 continuation markers, →I 407ff.
 crop marks, →I 411, 412ff.
 displaying, →I 371, 372f., 374
 driver margins, →I 368
 footer height, →I 373
 footnotes, →I 378
 for computer display, →I 378
 geometrical dimensions, →I 366, 367f.
 headings, suppressing, →I 374
 in relation to paper size, →I 375f., 377
 inner margins, →I 366
 KOMA-Script classes, →I 429
 landscape mode, →I 384
 lines per page, →I 370
 magnification, →I 383
 marginal notes, →I 381
 margins, →I 366, 379ff.

- page layout (*cont.*)
- naming, →I 383
 - outer margins, →I 366
 - packages for, →I 374f.
 - page breaks, →I 414–420
 - page height, enlarging/queezing, →I 415f.
 - paper size options, →I 366, **368**
 - paper size, specifying, →I 378
 - parameter defaults, →I 369
 - recto-verso layout, →I 48f., **366**, 371, 380, 383
 - running headers/footers, →I 378, **381**
 - saving space, →I 384, 385
 - schematic page diagram, →I 367
 - symmetrical, →I 380
 - text area, →I 378
 - running long or short, →I 415f.
 - trimming marks, →I 411, 412ff.
 - two-sided printing, →I 371, *see also* recto-verso layout
 - visual formatting, →I 414–429
 - watermarks, →I 409, 410f., →II **680**
 - white space, →I 371
- page numbers, →I 385f.
- by chapters, →I 387, 388
 - cross-references, →I 80
 - current page, referencing, →I 386
 - indexes
 - composed (folio-by-chapter), →II 362
 - duplicates, →II 346
 - encapsulating, →II 348
 - formatting, →II 347f.
 - MakeIndex*|*upmendex* options, →II 362
 - roman numerals, →II 363
 - sort order, →II 354, **362**, 364
 - last page, referencing, →I 386, 400
 - not suppressed by empty page style, →I **396**, 404
 - odd, forcing, →I 418
 - referencing, →I 386
 - resetting the counter, →I 386
 - showing “Silly Walk”, →II 651
 - suppressing, →I 48, **396**
- page ranges
- in bibliographies, disabling, →II 480
 - in citations, →II 544, 545
 - in indexes
 - customizing, →II 358
 - disabling, →II 355, 364
- page styles (headers and footers), →I 395f.
- customizing
 - based on floating objects, →I 405
 - by page style, →I 393ff., 399ff., 402ff.
 - globally, →I 398f.
 - saving a customization, →I 404
 - width, →I 400, 401
 - dictionary type headers, →I 394
 - empty produces unwanted page number, →I **396**, 404
 - float pages, →I 405
 - for two-sided printing, →I 397, 400
 - mark commands, →I 388, 389, **390**, 391, 392–395, 403f.
 - page styles (headers and footers) (*cont.*)
 - multiple text lines, →I 398, 399
 - named, →I 404
 - rules (graphic lines), →I 398
 - truncating text, →I 405, 406
 - page total field, bibliographies, →II 534
 - page_compositor keyword (*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II **357**, **362**
 - page_precedence keyword (*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II **358**, **362**, 363
 - pagebackref option (*hyperref*), →I 98
 - \pagebreak, →I **120**, 233, **414**, 416, →II 146, 763
 - (multicol), →I 353f.
 - pagecenter key (*adjustbox*), →I 599
 - \pagedesign (layouts), →I **372**, 373, 374, 375
 - \pagediagram (layouts), →I **372**, 374
 - \pagefootnoterule (*footmisc*), →I 214
 - \pageheight rigid length, →I 565
 - \PageIndex (doc), →II **588**, 595
 - pageleft key (*adjustbox*), →I 599
 - Pagella fonts, description/examples, →I 670, →II **46**, 268ff.
 - in math and text, →II 270f.
 - \pagename (*babel*), →II 305
 - \pagenumbering, →I 79, **386**, 387f., →II 651, 710, 759
 - (chappg), →I 387
 - \pageref, →I **75**, 79, 83, 207, 386, 627, →II 692
 - combining with \ref, *see* *varioref* package
 - warning using, →II 759
 - (hvfloat), →I 565
 - (hyperref), →I 97
 - (lineno), →I 336
 - (showkeys), →I 94
 - (sillypage), →II 651
 - (xr), →I 95
 - \pageref* (*hyperref*), →I 97
 - pages *LaTeX* field, →II 382f., 386, **389**, 406, 418
 - (*biblatex*), →II 540
 - pages/display key (*acro*), →I 163
 - pageslts package, →I 387
 - \pagestyle, →I 392, 394, **395**, 398–406, →II 352, 372, 709
 - manually forcing empty, →I 396, 418
 - (nextpage), manually forcing empty, →I 419
 - \pagevalues (layouts), →I 374
 - \pagewidth rigid length, →I 565
 - pagewise option (*lineno*), →I 339
 - pagination *LaTeX* field (*biblatex*), →II 383, 391, 536, **544**
 - palatino *obsolete* package, →I 690, **691**, *see instead* *tgpagella*
 - Palatino fonts, description/examples, →II **46**, 268
 - in math and text, →II 249ff., 252, 268f.
 - paper key/option
 - (*geometry*), →I 377, **378**, 381f., 384
 - (*typearea*), →I 376
 - paper size
 - and page layout, →I 375f., 377
 - options, →I 366, **368**
 - specifying, →I 378
 - \paperheight rigid length, →I **367f.**, 412, 602, →II 680, 697
 - paperheight key/option (*geometry*), →I **378**, 379, 412ff.

- papersize key/option (geometry), →I 381
- \paperwidth rigid length, →I 367f., 412, →II 680, 697
- paperwidth key/option (geometry), →I 378, 379, 412ff.
- papponymic key (biblatex), →II 396
- \par, →I 335, 427, →II 627, 630, 634, 679, 735
 - not allowed in argument, →II 627
- par value (biblatex), →II 478
- para option
 - (bigfoot), →I 225
 - (footmisc), →I 212, 213, 214–217, 222, 225, →II 520
 - not possible with manyfoot, →I 222
 - (manyfoot), →I 221, 222, 225f.
 - (threeparttable), →I 493
- para syntax (manyfoot|bigfoot), →I 221, 222, 224, 225f.
- para* option (manyfoot), →I 221, 222, 225
- para/before hook, →I 429, →II 681, 772
 - error using, →II 726
- \paraA (tlc/adforn), →II 118
- \paraB (tlc/adforn), →II 118
- parabola (tikz path operation), →I 636
- parabola syntax (tikz), →I 637
- parabola_height key (tikz), →I 637
- paracol env. (paracol),
 - I 339, 340f., 342, 343–347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 466
- paracol package, →I 339–351, →II 811
- \paragraph, →I 32, 33, 37
 - (titlesec), →I 45
- paragraph counter, →I 33, 34, →II 646
- paragraph boxes, →II 660, 663–666
- paragraph break algorithm
 - adjusting, →II 631
 - second-last line, →II 631, 637
 - tracing, →II 776ff.
- paragraph breaks, →I 427ff.
 - troubleshooting, →II 773–778
- paragraph format, tables of contents, →I 65, 66f.
- paragraph notes, →I 226ff.
- paragraph options, in tables, →I 439, 440ff.
- paragraph separation, float captions, →I 544, 545
- \paragraph*, →I 33
- \paragraphdesign (layouts), →I 374
- \paragraphdiagram (layouts), →I 374
- paragraphs
 - centered, →I 122f.
 - enhancing justification, →I 126–137
 - fancy layouts, →I 147
 - flush left, →I 122f., 124, 125
 - flush right, →I 122f.
 - indentation, →I 137ff.
 - indentation after heading, multilingual docs, →II 321
 - interline spacing, *see* leading
 - interword spacing, →I 121
 - justifying, →I 120f., 122f., 124f.
 - leading, →I 139, 140, 141, 668, 691
 - lengthening or shortening, →I 422, 427ff., →II 778
 - preventing line breaks, →I 125, 126
 - ragged right, →I 122f., 124, 125
 - separation, →I 137ff.
 - paragraphs (*cont.*)
 - troubleshooting, →II 773–778
 - unjustified, →I 121–125
 - Parallel env. (parallel), →I 351
 - \parallel math symbol ||, →II 218, 221
 - parallel package, →I 339, 350
 - \ParallelLText (parallel), →I 350, 351
 - \ParallelPar (parallel), →I 350, 351
 - \ParallelRText (parallel), →I 350, 351
 - parameter stack size errors, →II 748
 - Paratype PT fonts, description/examples, →II 31, 111f.
 - \parbox, →I 123, 270, 588, 591, →II 663, 666, 671
 - justification in, →I 122, 124
 - problems with optional s argument, →II 763
 - parbox key (tcolorbox), →I 617
 - parcolumns package, →I 339, 350
 - \Parencite (biblatex), →II 501
 - \parencite (biblatex),
 - II 484, 485, 500, 534–537, 539, 544, 545f., 566
 - parencite syntax (biblatex), →II 566
 - \parencites (biblatex), →II 502
 - parens value
 - (caption), →I 543, 545, 546
 - (subcaption), →I 555, 557
 - parensfirst value (tlc/caption), →I 549, 550
 - parent key (thmtools), →I 285
 - parentequation counter (amsmath), →II 152
 - parentheses, always upright, →I 188, 189
 - parentheses, bibliographies
 - number-only citation system, →II 480
 - short-title citation system, →II 526
 - parfill key/option (parskip), →I 139
 - \parfillskip length, →I 138, 465, 544
 - (ragged2e), →I 123
 - \parg (ltxdoc), →II 598
 - \parindent rigid length, →I 45, 138, 273, 286, 341, 342, 351, 442, →II 371f., 667
 - (paracol), →I 340f.
 - (ragged2e), →I 123
 - parleft value (enumitem), →I 269, 270
 - \parnote (parnotes), →I 226, 227
 - \parnotefmt (parnotes), →I 227
 - \parnotereset (parnotes), →I 227
 - \parnotes (parnotes), →I 226, 227
 - parnotes package, →I 218, 226ff.
 - parse-numbers key (siunitx), →I 170, 173
 - \parsep length, →I 259, 290
 - parsep key (enumitem), →I 264, 265, 280
 - \parskip length, →I 51f., 138, 139, 264f.,
 - II 371, 768f., 771, 772
 - parskip key/option (caption), →I 544, 545
 - parskip package, →I 137ff.
 - \part, →I 32f., 35, 40, 51, 53, 57, 72
 - no page number, →I 48
 - producing unwanted page number, →I 396
 - (titlesec), →I 42
 - (titletoc), partial contents for, →I 67
 - part counter, →I 34, 35, →II 646, 649

- part value (enotez), →I 231
- `\part*`, →I 33
 - (titlesec), →I 42
- `\partauthor` (tocdata), →I 57, 58
- `\parthreshold` key/option (csquotes), →I 182
- `\partial` math symbol ∂ , →II 163, 174, 213, 235, 261–296
 - (unicode-math), →II 258
- partial key/option (unicode-math), →II 258
- partial list of figures/tables, →I 69
- partial tables of contents, →I 67, 68, 69f.
- `partial.toc` file (tlc/titletoc), →I 63
- `\partname`, →I 37
 - (babel), →II 305
- `\partopsep` length, →I 259, 309
- `\partopsep` key (enumitem), →I 264, 265f.
- Pascal value (listings), →I 323, 325f., 330
- `\pascal` (siunitx), →I 170
- pass key/option (geometry), →I 382
- `\PassOptionsToClass`, →II 598, 705, 708, 709f.
- `\PassOptionsToPackage`, →II 694, 698, 703, 735
- patent BibTeX entry type (biblatex), →II 387
- `\path`
 - (bxeepic), →I 610, 611
 - (tikz), →I 361, 635, 637, 638, 639f., 645f.
 - (url), →I 198, 199, 200, 201f.
 - problems with UTF-8 characters, →I 201
- path operations (tikz), →I 636ff., 645
 - arc*, →I 636
 - circle*, →I 636, 638, 640
 - coordinate*, →I 641
 - cos*, →I 636
 - curve-to*, →I 636f.
 - edge*, →I 636, 642
 - ellipse*, →I 636, 638
 - foreach*, →I 636
 - grid*, →I 636, 638
 - line-to*, →I 636
 - move-to*, →I 636
 - node*, →I 636, 640
 - parabola*, →I 636
 - pic*, →I 636
 - plot*, →I 636f.
 - rectangle*, →I 636, 638, 640
 - scoping*, →I 636
 - sin*, →I 636
 - to path*, →I 636, 638
- paths, typesetting, →I 198–202
- patronymic key (biblatex), →II 396
- `\pattern` (tikz), →I 638
- pattern key (tikz), →I 638, 639
- pattern memory errors, →II 748
- patterns library (tikz), →I 639
- `\pausing` TeX counter, →II 781
- pausing option (tracefmt), →I 705
- pazo value (mathalpha), →II 234
- pc syntax (*unit*), →II 652
- pcap OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 717
- `\pcheck` (tlc/iffthen), →II 692
- .pdf file extension, →I 9, 11, 99, 586, →II 680
 - (iftex), →II 687
- PDF (Portable Document Format),
 - I 6ff., 11ff., 18, 23f., 96, 99–108, 112, 127, 129, 198, 201ff., 208, 237, 244f., 250, 315, 322, 384, 575–578, 582, 586, 609, 624, 645f., 656, →II 207, 254f., 257, 378, 606, 608, 612, 614, 652, 687, 721, 799, 801f., 810, 973, 977, 979, 981
 - configuring presentation, →I 107f.
 - document properties, →I 106f.
- PDF/UA (Universal Accessibility), →I 6f., 23
- `pdfauthor` key/option (hyperref), →I 106
- `pdfborder` key/option (hyperref), →I 103
- `pdfborderstyle` key/option (hyperref), →I 103
- `pdfcnote` key (fixme), →I 244
- `pdfcolfoot` package, →I 208
- `\pdfcomment` (pdfcomment), →I 250
- `pdfcomment` package, →I 237, 250f.
- `pdfcrop` program, →I 18, 315, →II 981
- `pdfdisplaydoctitle` key/option (hyperref), →I 107
- `pdfkeywords` key/option (hyperref), →I 106
- `pdflatex` option (crop), →I 413
- `pdflatex` program, →II 599
- `pdflatex-dev` program, →I 15, →II 785
- `pdflatex.fmt` file, →I 10
- `pdflscape` package, →I 384
- `\pdfmargincomment` (pdfcomment), →I 250
- `\pdfmarkupcomment` (pdfcomment), →I 250
- `pdfmenubar` key/option (hyperref), →I 107
- `pdfnewwindow` key/option (hyperref), →I 108
- `\pdfoutput` TeX counter, →II 687
- `pdfpagelayout` key/option (hyperref), →I 107
- `pdfpagemode` key/option (hyperref), →I 105, 107
- `pdfpagetransition` key/option (hyperref), →I 108
- `pdfseparate` program, →I 18, →II 981
- `pdfstandard` key, →I 24
- `pdfstartpage` key/option (hyperref), →I 107
- `pdfsubject` key/option (hyperref), →I 106
- `pdftex` option
 - (geometry), →I 383
 - (graphics|graphicx), →I 577
- `pdftex` program, →I 12, 577, →II 730, 786, 792
- `pdftitle` key/option (hyperref), →I 106, 107
- `pdftoolbar` key/option (hyperref), →I 107
- `pdfversion` key, →I 24
- `\penalty`, →II 770, 771, 773
- `\per` (siunitx), →I 169, 170f., 173, 175ff.
- per-mode key (siunitx), →I 169ff., 175, 176f.
- per-symbol key (siunitx), →I 175
- percent key (overpic), →I 594
- period value
 - (caption), →I 543, 545, 549
 - (subcaption), →I 554
- period (\cdot), shorthand character, →II 314
- periodical BibTeX entry type
 - (biblatex), →II 387
 - (jurabib), →II 511, 533
- periods, three consecutive (...), *see* ellipsis

- Perl value (listings), →I 323
- perml key (overpic), →I 594
- permit value (biblatex), →II 540
- \perp math symbol \perp , →II 221
- perpage option
 - (footmisc), →I 210, **211**, 223, →II 520
 - (manyfoot), →I 223
 - (snotez), →I 236
- perpage package, →I 218ff.
- persistent errors, →II 715
- \peta (siunitx), →I 172
- PetiteCaps value (fontspec), →I **717**, 718
- pf option (*various font packages*), →II 7
- .pfb file extension, →I 9, **11**
- pgf package, →I 634
- pgffor package, →I 644
- \pgfmathsetseed (pgf), →I 634
- pgfornament package, →I 361
- pgfplots package, →I 637, →II 721
- phaip BibTeX style, →II 423, **424**
- \phantom, →I 644, →II **136**, 147, **200**
- \phantomsection (hyperref)
 - use \MakeLinkTarget instead, →I 97
- phapalik BibTeX style (apalike), →II 424
- phcpc BibTeX style, →II 424
- phdthesis BibTeX entry type, →II **386**, 389
- phetype value (hyperref), →I 103
- \Phi math symbol Φ , →II 212
- \phi math symbol ϕ , →II 143, 150, 174, **212**
- phiaea BibTeX style, →II 424
- philosophy-classic biblatex style (biblatex-philosophy), →II 466
- philosophy-modern biblatex style (biblatex-philosophy), →II 466
- philosophy-verbose biblatex style (biblatex-philosophy), →II 466, **467**
- phjcp BibTeX style, →II 424
- phnf BibTeX style, →II 424
- phnflet BibTeX style, →II 424
- \phone text symbol ☎ (wasysym), →II 116
- PHP value (listings), →I 323
- phpf BibTeX style, →II 424
- phppcf BibTeX style (apalike), →II 424
- phrase value (siunitx), →I 175
- phreport BibTeX style, →II 424
- phrmp BibTeX style, →II 424
- phys biblatex style (biblatex-phys), →II 459
- \Pi math symbol Π , →II 212
- \pi math symbol π , →II 141, 156, 170, **212**, 235, 256
- Pi fonts, →II **113**, 114–120, 123f.
- Piautolist env. (pifont), →II 115
- pic (tikz path operation), →I 636
- pic_{ucs}: syntax (tikzmark), →I **633**, 643, 644
- \pico (siunitx), →I 172
- pict2e package, →I **602–608**, 609, 611
- picture env., →I 587, 593, **602**, 608, →II 160, 680
 - limitations of, →I 603, 605
 - resolve limitations, →I 603
- picture env. (*cont.*)
 - (bxeepic), →I 609ff.
 - (pict2e), →I 602, 603–608
- picture *obsolete* package, →I 602, *see instead* pict2e package
- \Pifill (pifont), →II **115**, 116
- pifont package, →I 274, →II **113–116**, 118f.
- \pilcrow (tlc/fourier-orns), →II 119
- \Piline (pifont), →II **115**, 116
- Pilist env. (pifont), →II 115
- \Pisymbol (pifont), →II **115**, 116, 118f.
- \pitchfork math symbol \pitchfork (amssymb), →II 221
- .pk file extension, →I 11
- pl value (upmendex), →II 369
- PL/I value (listings), →I 323
- placeins package, →I 519, **524**, 567
- places value (siunitx), →I **173**, 174
- plain BibTeX style,
 - II 419, **420f.**, **424**, 475f., 478, 484, 572, 579
 - (biblatex), →II 438
 - (bibtopic), →II 578, 580
 - (bibunits), →II 575ff.
 - (cite), →II 478–483
 - (natbib), →II 505
- plain page style, →I 53, 99, **396**, **397**, 404, →II 352, 371f.
- (fancyhdr), →I 404
- (titlesec), →I 48
- plain syntax
 - (enotez), →I 231
 - (manyfoot|bigfoot), →I 221
- plain value
 - (amsthm), →I **283**, 284
 - (caption), →I 541
 - (float), →I 529
 - (thmtools), →I 284
- plain text files, →I 10
- plainnat BibTeX style, →II 484
 - (natbib), →II 424, **499**, 527
- plaintop value (float), →I 529
- plainyr BibTeX style, →II 424
- Plasm value (listings), →I 323
- Playfair fonts, description/examples, →I 722, 726, →II **64**
- PlayfairDisplay package, →II 64
- plex-mono package, →II 30
- plex-sans package, →II **30**, 31
- plex-serif package, →II 30
- plot* (tikz path operation), →I 636, **637**
- plot syntax (tikz), →I 637
- plotting scientific data, *see* graphs
- plus syntax, →I 66, 736,
 - II 479, **651**, 652, 762, 768, 770, 818
- \pm (siunitx), →I 168
- \pm math symbol \pm , →II 196, **215**
- pmark syntax (tlc), →I 395
- pmatrix env. (amsmath), →II 154
 - error using, →II 735
- pmatrix* env. (mathtools), →II 155
- \pmb (amsmath), →II 235
- \pmod, →II **171**, 198

- `\pnfmt` (biblatex), →II 544, 545
- `.png` file extension, →I 11, 586, →II 719
- `\pno` (biblatex), →II 544, 545
- `pnum` OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 716
- `\pod` (amsmath), →II 171
- `point` key (tikz), →I 633
- `points`, font size, →I 656
- `polish` option (babel), →II 301
- `polutoniko` attribute (babel), →II 307, 328, 330
- `polutonikogreek` option (babel), →II 301
- `polyglossia` package, →I 91, 155, 184, 247, →II 342, 559
- `\polygon` (pict2e), →I 607
- `polygons`, drawing, →I 607, 609ff.
- `\polyline` (pict2e), →I 607, 608, 610, 611
- `Polytonic` Greek fonts, →I 739, →II 106–110
- `\polyvector` (pict2e), →I 607
- `pool` size errors, →II 748
- `poor man's bold`, →II 235f.
- `\poptabs`, error using, →II 736
- `portability`, commands, →II 622
- `Portable Document Format (PDF)`, *see* PDF
- `portrait` key/option (geometry), →I 378, 382
- `portuguese` option (babel), →II 301
- `pos` key (draftwatermark), →I 410, 411
- `position` key/option
 - (caption), →I 545, 556, 570
 - (fancypar), →I 147
 - (subcaption), →I 554, 555
- `positioning` library (tikz), →I 641
- `\possessivecite`
 - (harvard), →II 490, 493
 - (tlc/natbib), →II 493
- `post-checkout` file (gitinfo2), →II 616
- `post-commit` file (gitinfo2), →II 616
- `post-merge` file (gitinfo2), →II 616
- `post-xxx-sample.txt` file (gitinfo2), →II 616
- `\postamble` (docstrip), →II 604
- `postamble` keyword (*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 349, 357, 358
- `postambles`, generated files, creating (docstrip), →II 604
- `postbreak` key (listings), →I 329
- `\postdisplaypenalty` TeX counter, →II 145
- `poster` key/option (tcolorbox), →I 618, 630, 631
- `poster` library (tcolorbox), →I 619, 630
- `poster` presentations, →I 630f.
- `\posterbox` (tcolorbox), →I 631
- `posterboxenv` env. (tcolorbox), →I 631
- `\postflagword` (continue), →I 407, 408
- `\postmulticols` rigid length (multicol), →I 356
- `postnote` key (biblatex), →II 551
- `\postnotedelim` (biblatex), →II 486
- `PostScript` value (listings), →I 323
- `PostScript` fonts, →I 685
- `PostScript New Font Selection` scheme, *see* PSNFSS
- `\pounds` text/math symbol £, →I 771, →II 213
- `PDV` value (listings), →I 323
- `power` value (siunitx), →I 175
- `power-positive-first` value (siunitx), →I 175
- `pp` value (biblatex), →II 560
- `\ppno` (biblatex), →II 544
- `\Pr` math operator $\Pr x$, →II 193
- `pre-notes`, bibliographies, →II 512, 513
- `preamble`
 - database format, bibliographies, →II 405f.
 - defining fonts, *see* font commands, low level
 - documentation commands, list of (doc), →II 595
 - generated files, creating (docstrip), →II 604
 - of documents, →I 22, 23
 - of tables, →I 438–444
 - specifiers, in tables, →I 436, 439, 451
- `\preamble` (docstrip), →II 604
- `preamble` keyword (*MakeIndex*|*upmendex*), →II 349, 357, 358
- `preamble` value, →II 701
- `prebreak` key (listings), →I 329
- `\prec` math symbol \prec , →II 217
- `\precapprox` math symbol \preccurlyeq (amssymb), →II 217, 261–296
- `\preccurlyeqeq` math symbol \preccurlyeqeq (amssymb), →II 217
- `\preceq` math symbol \preceq , →II 217
- `\precnapprox` math symbol \precnapprox (amssymb), →II 217
- `\precneqq` math symbol \precneqq (amssymb), →II 217
- `\precnsim` math symbol \precnsim (amssymb), →II 217
- `\precssim` math symbol \precssim (amssymb), →II 217
- `predefined` text, document headings, →I 36, 37
- `\predisplaypenalty` TeX counter, →I 422, →II 145
- `\prefacename` (babel), →II 305
- `prefix` key (biblatex), →II 396
- `prefix-mode` key (siunitx), →I 175
- `\preflagword` (continue), →I 407, 408f.
- `preload.cfg` file, →I 746
- `\premulticols` rigid length (multicol), →I 356
- `prenote` key (biblatex), →II 550, 551
- `prepend` key (todonotes), →I 241
- `\prescript` (mathtools), →II 180
- `\pretolerance` TeX counter, →II 776
- (multicol), →I 357
- `pretty-printing`, bibliographies, →II 415
- `\prevdepth` rigid length, →II 665, 666, 780
- error using, →II 665, 727, 744
- `prevent` value (widows-and-orphans), →I 426
- `prevent-all` key/option (widows-and-orphans), →I 426
- `previous-column` syntax, →I 391, 395
- `previous-page` syntax, →I 391, 393, 395
- `PreviousTotalPages`, →I 387
- `PrevPage` value (hyperref), →I 108
- `primary-colors` value (hyperref), →I 103
- `\prime` math symbol \prime , →II 213
- `primitives` (TeX engine commands)
 - displaying, →II 768
 - tracing, →II 780
 - troubleshooting, →II 768, 780
- `\primo` (babel), →II 319
- `print-unity-mantissa` key (siunitx), →I 486
- `\Print` (*element*)Name (doc), →II 592, 597
- `\printacronyms` (acro), →I 162, 163
- `\printbibheading` (biblatex), →II 550, 557

`\printbibitembibliography` (biblatex2bibitem), →II 378
`\printbibliography` (biblatex),
 →II 377, 393, 397, 412, 417, 433, 435–468, 478, 507,
 536f., 543, 547, 550, 551–560, 565f., 569
`\printbiblist` (biblatex), →II 535, 558
`\PrintChanges` (doc), →II 588f., 595
`\printcontents` (titletoc), →I 68, 69
`\printdate` (biblatex), →II 564
`\printdelim` (biblatex), →II 566
`\PrintDescribe`(*element*) (doc), →II 592, 597
`\PrintDescribeEnv` (doc), →II 592
`\PrintDescribeMacro` (doc), →II 592
`\printendnotes` (enotez), →I 230, 231f.
`\printendnotes*` (enotez), →I 230
`\PrintEnvName` (doc), →II 592
 printer points, →I 656
`\printfield` (biblatex), →II 558, 564, 567
 printheadings option (bibtopic), →II 578
`\printheadingsfalse` (layouts), →I 373, 374, 375
`\PrintIndex` (doc), →II 588f., 595
`\printindex`
 (index), →II 373, 374, 499, 512
 (makeidx), →I 58, →II 327, 346, 352, 546
 printing
 bibliographies, →II 415, 550, 551–554
 code documentation parts, →II 587, 599
 computer code, *see* computer code, typesetting
 doc package, →II 583f.
 selected document versions, →I 30, 31, 32
 two-sided, *see also* recto-verso layout
 page styles, →I 397, 400
 turning on, →I 371
`\printlist`
 (biblatex), →II 564, 567
 (titletoc), →I 69
`\PrintMacroName` (doc), →II 592
`\printnames` (biblatex), →II 564, 565, 568
`\printparametersfalse` (layouts), →I 374, 375
`\printtext` (biblatex), →II 564, 567
`\printtime`
 (tlc/calc), →II 688
 (tlc/iffthen), →II 690
`printtype` key (doc), →II 592, 593
`priority` keyword (upmendex), →II 367
`pro` option (fontawesome5), →II 121
 problem resolution, *see* troubleshooting
`proc` document class, →II 130
`proceedings` BibTeX entry type, →II 382, 386
 process flow
 citations, →II 409–413
 index generation, →II 344
 L^AT_EX, →I 9
`\processdelayedfloats` (endfloat), →I 526
 processing errors, *see* troubleshooting
`\ProcessKeyOptions`, →II 694, 702
`\ProcessList`, →II 643
`\ProcessOptions`, →II 694, 699, 700, 709f.
`\ProcessOptions*`, →II 694, 700
`\prod` math symbol Π ,
 →II 167, 168, 180, 197, 222, 235, 245, 250, 261–296
`\Prog` (tlc), →II 350, 352
 program code, printing, *see* computer code, typesetting
 program files, obtaining
 distributions, →II 790f.
 from the Internet, →II 790f.
 old versions, →II 791
 programs, bibliographies
 biber, →II 379f., *see also* biber/biblatex differences
 BibTeX, →II 378–413, 418–425
 BibTeX8, →II 379
 Unicode aware version, →II 379f.
`\projlim` math operator $\projlim x$ (amsmath), →II 193
`Prolog` value (listings), →I 323
`proof` env. (amsthm), →I 282, 283
`\proofmodetrue` (index), →II 373, 374
`\proofname` (babel), →II 305
 proofs, *see* headed lists
 properties, *see* options
`Proportional` value (fontspec), →I 713, 716
`proportional` option (*various font packages*), →II 7
 (notomath), →II 252
 (zlmmt), →II 93, 94
 proportional fonts, →I 652f.
`\proportionalfigures` (*various font packages*), →II 8
`\propto` math symbol \propto , →II 221
`\proptt` (zlmmt), →II 93, 94
`\ProsodicMarksOn` (babel), →II 313
`\protect`, →I 53ff., 56, 70, 71, 78, 90, 257,
 →II 131, 715, 716, 718, 742
 in `\index`, →II 350, 363
 no help with `\url`, →I 199
 (enumitem), →I 269
 (iffthen), →II 690
`\protected@edef`, →II 715
 protrusion
 configuring, →I 131f.
 controlling, →I 128
 debugging configuration, →I 132
 enabling, →I 128
 hanging punctuation, →I 126, 132
 in tables of contents, →I 136
 interaction with verbatim text, →I 136, 137
 manual correction, →I 136
 optical alignment, →I 126f., 128f.
 preventing, →I 136
 restricting context, →I 133
 special considerations, →I 136f.
`protrusion` key/option (microtype), →I 128, 130, 133, 136f.
`provide` key/option (babel), →II 331f.
`\providecommand`, →II 405, 574, 628
`\ProvideCommandCopy`, — *does not exist*, →II 635
`\ProvideDocumentCommand`, →II 635
`\ProvideDocumentEnvironment`, →II 637
`\ProvideExpandableDocumentCommand`, →II 636
`\providefontfamily` (fontspec), →I 711
`\providehyphenmins` (babel), →II 333, 334

- \ProvidesClass, –II 694, [696](#), 709f.
warning using, –II 750
- \ProvidesFile, –I 748, 761, –II 694, [696](#)
warning using, –II 752
- \ProvidesPackage, –II 694, 695, [696](#), 704
warning using, –II 758
- \ProvideTextCommandDefault, –I 766
- \provideverbcommand (newverbs), –I 299
- \PS (tlc), –II 625
- .ps file extension, –I 9, [11](#), 581, 586
- \ps@*style*, –I 397
- \ps@plain, –I [397](#), –II 709
psamsfonts option (amsfonts), deprecated, –II 130
- \Psi math symbol Ψ , –II 212
- \psi math symbol ψ , –II [151](#), [174](#), [183f.](#), [212](#)
psmallmatrix env. (mathtools), –II 155
psmallmatrix* env. (mathtools), –II 155
PSNFSS (PostScript New Font Selection scheme),
–I 688ff., *see also* NFSS
classification of font families, –I 690
fonts used, –I 689, 691
sans serif fonts, –I 690
pspicture *obsolete* package,
–I 603, *see instead* pict2e package
- \psq (biblatex), –II [544](#), 545
- \psqq (biblatex), –II 544
- \pstarrows (pict2e), –I 604
pstarrows option (pict2e), –I 604
- pstricks package, –I 631, 645, –II [800](#)
- pt syntax (*unit*), –I 634, –II [652](#)
- .ptc file extension (titletoc), –I [11](#), 67
- PTMono package, –II 32
- PTSans package, –II 32
- PTSansCaption package, –II 32
- PTSansNarrow package, –II 32
- PTSerif package, –II 32
- PTSerifCaption package, –II 32
- publisher BibTeX field,
–II 382f., 386, 388, [389](#), 393, 403–406
- publist biblatex style (biblatex-publist), –II 467
- \pubmed (uri), –I 203
- punctuation
 - bibliographies
 - author-date citation system, –II 546
 - customizing, –II 566
 - number-only citation system, –II 479, [482f.](#)
 - short-title citation system, –II 528, 529
 - math symbols, –II 222, 223
 - near footnote markers, –I 216ff.
 - spacing after, –II 320
 - trailing after quotes, –I 180f.
- PunctuationSpace key (fontspec), –I [715](#), 728
- \pushtabs, –II 738
error using, –II 736
- \put, –I 593, [602](#), 603–608, 611, –II 680
- \putbib (bibunits), –II [575](#), [576f.](#)
px value (mathalpha), –II 234
pctx value (mathalpha), –II 232f.

Python value (listings), –I 323

Q

- Q syntax (qrcode), –I 613
- \qauthor (quotchap), –I [38](#), 39
- \qauthorfont (quotchap), –I [38](#), 39
- \qbezier (pict2e), –I 606
- \qbeziermax (pict2e), –I 606
- \qed (amsthm), –I 283
qed key (thmtools), –I 288
QED (□) symbol, –I 282f., 288
- \qedhere (amsthm), –I 283
- \qedsymbol (amsthm), –I [283](#), 288
- \qqquad, –II [205](#), [653](#)
QR codes, drawing, –I 612f.
- \qrcode (qrcode), –I 612, [613](#)
qrcode package, –I 612f.
- \qrset (qrcode), –I 613
- \qsetcnfont (quotchap), –I 38
- \qty (siunitx), –I [170](#), [173](#), [175ff.](#)
- \qtylist (siunitx), –I 171
- \qtyproduct (siunitx), –I 171
- \qtyrange (siunitx), –I 171
- \QU (tlc/ifthen), –II 693
- \quad, –II [205](#), 631, 632, [653](#), 762
quad value (caption), –I [543](#), 545
- qualifier-mode key (siunitx), –I 175
- qualifier-phrase key (siunitx), –I 175
- quantities, scientific notation, –I [169](#), [170f.](#), [175f.](#)
- quantity-product key (siunitx), –I 175
- \quarto (babel), –II 319
- quattrocento package, –I 702f., –II [34](#)
Quattrocento fonts, description/examples, –I 702f., –II [33](#)
- \quest (tlc/tasks), –I 292
- question mark (?), shorthand character, –II 312f.
- question/answer forums, –II 788f.
- quiet option (fontspec), –I 728
- quiet mode, index generation, –II 354, 364
- quotation env., –I [179](#), 180f., 260
(lineno), –I 338
- quotations, –I 179–188, 260, 261
American style, –I 186
changing style, –I 181
display quotations, –I 180, [181](#), 182
ellipsis, for omissions, –I 182f., [187](#)
in foreign language, –I 184
language support, –I 183ff.
trailing punctuation after, –I 180f.
with citations, –I 182
configuring, –I 185ff.
forced to next line, –I 187
- quotations (mottos), on chapter/section headings, –I 38, 39
- quotchap package, –I 38f.
- Quote env.
(tlc/enumitem), –I 276
(tlc), –I [260](#), 261

quote env., →I 179, 180, 260, →II 630, 672, 673
 (lineno), →I 338
 (tlc/enumitem), →I 263, 277
 quote keyword (*MakeIndex|upmendex*), →II 357, 360
`\quotechar` (doc), →II 594, 596
`\quotedblbase` text symbol „, →I 772
`\quoteleft` (quotchap), →I 38, 39
`\quotesinglbase` text symbol „, →I 772
 quoting characters, inserting in multilingual documents,
 →II 303, 311
`\qverb` (newverbs), →I 299, 300

R

R syntax
 (*cmd/env decl*), →II 633, 636, 736
 (abrcases), →II 185, 186f., 189f.
 (fancyhdr), →I 392, 399, 400–404
 (tabulary), →I 451, 477
 (tlc/array), →I 445
 (wrapfig), →I 536
 R value (listings), →I 323
`\r` text accent 𐀀, →I 772, →II 126
 r key (keyfloat), →I 569, 570f.
 r syntax, →I 436
 (*cmd/env decl*), →I 606, →II 633, 636, 736
 warning using, →II 757
 (abrcases), →II 185, 186
 (array), →I 438, 439, 446
 (subcaption), →I 551, 552
 (tikz-cd), →II 161, 162f.
 (wrapfig), →I 536
 (xltabular), →I 464
 r value
 (diagbox), →I 480, 481
 (draftwatermark), →I 411
 (keyvaltable), →I 497, 502, 504
`\radian` (siunitx), →I 170
 radicals, math symbols, →II 199, 200
 radius key (tikz), →I 633, 634, 638, 640, 643
 ragged option
 (footmisc), →I 214, 222, →II 517, 521
 (nolbreaks), →I 126
 ragged right paragraphs, →I 122f., 124, 125
 ragged2e package, →I 122, 123ff., 137, 617
`\raggedbottom`, →I 214, 215
`\raggedcolumns` (multicol), →I 138f., 353, 357
 RaggedLeft value (caption), →I 544
`\RaggedLeft` (ragged2e), →I 123
 underfull box warning, →I 125
`\raggedleft`, →I 122, 125, 219, 233, 478, 617
 in tables, →I 443, 446
 (titlesec), discouraged inside `\titleformat`, →I 45
 raggedleft option (titlesec), →I 40, 41
 raggedleft value (caption), →I 544
`\RaggedLeftLeftskip` length (ragged2e), →I 124
`\raggedleftmarginnote` (marginnote), →I 234
`\RaggedLeftParfillskip` length (ragged2e), →I 124
`\RaggedLeftParindent` rigid length (ragged2e), →I 124
`\RaggedLeftRightskip` length (ragged2e), →I 124
 RaggedRight value (caption), →I 544
`\RaggedRight` (ragged2e),
 →I 123, 124f., 137, 142, 277, 353, 355–359, →II 530
`\raggedright`, →I 122, 219, 233, 341, 342, 351, 496, 617,
 662, 668, →II 497, 530, 769
 in lists, →I 277
 in tables, →I 443, 446, 448f., 454f., 461, 484
 (multirow), in tables, →I 477
 (titlesec), discouraged inside `\titleformat`, →I 45
 raggedright option (titlesec), →I 40, 42
 raggedright value
 (caption), →I 544, 549, 563f.
 (jurabib), →II 529, 530
 (subcaption), →I 554, 555, 556
 raggedrightboxes option (ragged2e), →I 124
`\RaggedRightLeftskip` length (ragged2e), →I 124
`\raggedrightmarginnote` (marginnote), →I 234, 235
`\RaggedRightParfillskip` length (ragged2e), →I 124
`\RaggedRightParindent` rigid length (ragged2e), →I 124
`\RaggedRightRightskip` length (ragged2e), →I 124
 raise key (adjustbox), →I 598, 599
`\raisebox`, →I 476, 477, 598, →II 662, 663
`\raisetag` (amsmath), →II 152
`\raiseto` (siunitx), →I 173
 ruleway package, →II 86
 Ruleway fonts, description/examples, →II 86
 rand syntax
 (*fp expr*), →II 658, 659
 (tikz), →I 634
 randint syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658, 659
`\range` (biblatex), →II 542
 range key (unicode-math),
 →II 260, 265, 271, 273, 275, 278, 280, 284, 288, 290
 range-end key (unicodefonttable), →I 728, 729f., →II 287
 range-start key (unicodefonttable), →I 729, 730
 range_close keyword (*MakeIndex|upmendex*), →II 357
 range_open keyword (*MakeIndex|upmendex*), →II 357
 ranges key (fnpct), →I 218
`\rangle` math symbol \rangle , →II 190, 223, 224, 236f.
 Rare value (fontspec), →I 720, 721
 raster library (tcolorbox), →I 629, 630
 raster_columns key (tcolorbox), →I 629
 raster_equal_height key (tcolorbox), →I 629
 raster_every_box key (tcolorbox), →I 629
`\ratio` (calc), →II 688, 689, 692
`\ratio` math symbol $:$ (colonequals), →II 221
 raw index, generating, →II 345
 RawFeature key (fontspec), →I 723, 724, →II 24
`\RawIndent`, error using, →II 734
`\RawNoindent`, error using, →II 734
`\Rbag` math symbol \S (stmaryrd), →II 224
`\rbag` math symbol \S (stmaryrd), →II 215
`\rbrace` math symbol $\}$,
 →II 135, 141, 175, 190, 223, 228, 235, 261–296
`\rbrack` math symbol $\}$, →II 190, 223
 rcases env.
 (mathtools), →II 156

- rcases env. (*cont.*)
 - (tlc/amsmath), →II 141
- \rceil math symbol \lceil , →II 190, 223
- RCS (Revision Control System), →II 615
- \rdelim (bigdelim), →II 158, 159
- \Re math symbol \Re , →II 174, 213
- read key (graphicx), →I 582, 587
- reading biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, 436, 557, 558
- reading data verbatim, →I 315
- README.md file (l3build), →II 612
- \real (calc), →II 688
- realauthor BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 463
- realauthor biblatex style (biblatex-realauthor), →II 463
- realheight key (lettrine), →I 144
- realscripts package, →I 719
- rear entry, →I xxxviii
- .rec file extension (tlc), →I 74
- \RecordChanges (doc), →II 588, 589, 595
- rectangle (tikz path operation), →I 636, 638, 640
- rectangle syntax (tikz), →I 638, 639f., 642f., 645
- recto-verso layout, →I 48f., 366, 371, 380, 383, *see also* two-sided printing
- \RecustomVerbatimCommand (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 317
- \RecustomVerbatimEnvironment (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 317, 318
- redefining
 - commands, →II 625, 626, 628, 635
 - environments, →II 629–632
- Reduce value (listings), →I 323
- reducedifibidem value (jurabib), →II 520, 521
- \Ref, →I 77, 78, 79
- \ref, →I 36, 75, 77, 78f., 80, 82, 85f., 93, 178, 207, 256, 269, 274, 539
 - combining with \pageref, *see* varioref package
 - problems using, →I 36, 76, 178, →II 647, 648
 - strange results with, →I 36
 - warning using, →II 759
 - (amsmath), →II 150, 153
 - (caption), →I 548
 - (cases), →II 157
 - (enumitem), →I 276
 - (hvfloat), →I 562, 565f.
 - (hyperref), →I 97
 - (keyfloat), →I 572
 - (lineno), →I 336, 337
 - (showkeys), →I 94
 - (subcaption), →I 552, 556, 557, 559
 - (tasks), →I 291
 - (tcolorbox), →I 627
 - (typed-checklist), →I 294f.
 - (upref), →II 129
 - (varioref), →I 81
 - (wrapfig), →I 537
 - (xr), →I 95
- ref key
 - (enumitem), →I 269, 274, 275f.
 - (tasks), →I 291
- ref option (cite), →II 481, 483
- \ref* (hyperref), →I 97
- refcheck package, →I 94f.
- reference BibTeX entry type (biblatex), →II 387
- reference keys, *see* keys
- referencing subsections, document headings, →I 35, 36
- \reflectbox (graphics|graphicx), →I 588
- Refname key (thmtools), →I 285
- \refname, →I 37, →II 377, 517, 550, 573, 574, 576, 581 (babel), →II 303, 305
- refname key (thmtools), →I 285
- refsection env. (biblatex), →II 556
- refsection key/option (biblatex), →II 556
- refsegment env. (biblatex), →II 556
- \refstepcounter, →I 53f., 219, →II 646, 647, 648, 649
 - problems using, →II 647
 - spacing problem with hyperref, →II 647
- refstring key (lettrine), →I 143
- \reftextafter (varioref), →I 83, 84
- \reftextbefore (varioref), →I 83, 84
- \reftextcurrent (varioref), →I 80f., 83
- \reftextfaceafter (varioref), →I 83, 84
- \reftextfacebefore (varioref), →I 83, 84
- \reftextfaraway (varioref), →I 83
- \reftextlabelrange (varioref), →I 83
- \reftextpagerange (varioref), →I 83
- \reftextvario (varioref), →I 83, 85
- \regexp (biblatex), →II 394, 417
- register values, displaying, →II 768f.
- regression-test.tex file (l3build), →II 609ff.
- regular option (*various font packages*), →II 8 (antpolt), →II 47 (anttor), →II 101
- regular syntax (fontawesome5), →II 121, 123f.
- rel key (overpic), →I 594
- relation symbols, math symbols, →II 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221
- \relax, →I 314, →II 188, 668
- releasing packages, *see* development tools, l3build
- reledmac package, →I 212, →II 813
- \relpenalty TeX counter, →II 197, 198
- \relphantom (tlc/amsmath), →II 136
- \relscale (relsize), →I 676
- \relsize (relsize), →I 306, 675, 676
- relsize package, →I 306, 675f.
- RELTAG key (git), →II 617
- rem env.
 - (tlc/amsthm), →I 284
 - (tlc/thmtools), →I 285, 287
- remark env. (tlc/thmtools), →I 286
- remark value
 - (amsthm), →I 283, 284
 - (thmtools), →I 284, 285ff.
- remember_picture key (tikz), →I 643, 644
- \RemoveFromHook, →II 672, 673
- error using, →II 719
- warning using, →II 750
- \removeline (addlines), →I 417
- \removeline* (addlines), →I 417

`\removelines` (addlines), →I 417
`\removelines*` (addlines), →I 417
`Renderer` key (fontspec), →I 727, →II 332
`\renewbibmacro` (biblatex), →II 546, 558
`\renewcommand`, →II 625, 626, 628
 error using, →II 720, 731
 (biblatex), →II 566
`\renewcommand*`, →II 735
`\RenewCommandCopy`, →II 352, 371f., 635
`\RenewDocElement` (doc), →II 592, 593, 595
`\RenewDocumentCommand`, →II 635
 error using, →II 720
 warning using, →II 759
`\RenewDocumentEnvironment`, →II 637
 error using, →II 722
 warning using, →II 759
`\renewenvironment`, →II 629
 error using, →II 722, 726
`\RenewEnvironmentCopy`, →II 635
`\RenewExpandableDocumentCommand`, →II 636
`\renewfontfamily` (fontspec), →I 711
`\renewgathered` (mathtools), →II 142
`\renewindex` (index), →II 373
`\renewlist` (enumitem), →I 263, 277
`\RenewTasksEnvironment` (tasks), →I 292
`\renewverbcommand` (newverbs), →I 299
 reordering hook code, →II 683, 684, 685
`\rep` (tlc/changes), →I 249
 repeat value (siunitx), →I 176
 repeated-symbol value (siunitx), →I 175
 repeatindex package, →II 372
`\replaced` (changes), →I 245, 246–249
 replaced value (changes), →I 247
 report BibTeX entry type (biblatex), →II 386, 387
 report document class, →I 10, 18, 27, 33, 37, 40, 56, 210, 214, 366, 397, →II 153, 371
 TOC entries, →I 54, 72
 footnote numbering, →I 208
 heading commands, →I 32, 34f., 73
 release information, →II 696
 replacement for, →I 429
 reportchangedates key/option (doc), →II 590
 reqno option (amsmath), →II 129, 132, 134
 Required value (fontspec), →I 720
 required fields, bibliography database, →II 384, 386f.
 RequiredOff value (fontspec), →I 721
`\RequireLuaHBTeX` (iftex), →II 687
`\RequireLuaTeX` (iftex), →II 687
`\RequirePackage`, →I 19, 686,
 →II 374, 694, 697–700, 703, 704, 708f., 742
 error using, →II 736
 premature loading, →II 735
 warning using, →II 765
 (latexrelease), →I 115ff.
`\RequirePackageWithOptions`, →II 704
`\RequirePDFTeX` (iftex), →II 687
`\RequireTUTeX` (iftex), →II 687
`\RequireXeTeX` (iftex), →II 687

 reset key (enotez), →I 231, 232
 reset key/option (geometry), →I 382
 reset option (parnotes), →I 227
 reset-font-series key (siunitx), →I 484
 reset-text-family key (siunitx), →I 177
 reset-text-series key (siunitx), →I 177
 ResetAll value (fontspec), →I 716, 719, 720, 722, 725
 resetlabels option (multibib), →II 581
 resetmargin key (listings), →I 329
 resetmargins key (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 307
`\resetsumline` (fcolumn), →I 490
`\resetul` (soul), →I 197
`\resizebox` (graphics|graphicx), →I 579, 589, 590
 error using, →II 737
`\resizebox*` (graphics|graphicx), →I 589, 590
 resizegather package, →II 206
 resizing
 fonts, relative to original, →I 675, 676
 graphic objects, →I 589f.
 resolving problems, *see* troubleshooting
`\restartlist` (enumitem), →I 275
 restored values, tracing, →II 780
`\restoregeometry` (geometry), →I 382
`\restriction` math symbol \restriction (amssymb), →II 219
`\restylefloat`
 (float), →I 531, 542ff.
 (rotfloat), →I 535
 result file, specifying (docstrip), →II 601f.
 resume key
 (enumitem), →I 262, 275
 (keyvaltable), →I 499, 501
 (tasks), →I 291, 292
 resume* key
 (enumitem), →I 262, 275
 (keyvaltable), →I 499
`\resumecontents` (titletoc), →I 68, 69
`\resumelist` (titletoc), →I 69
 retain-unity-mantissa key (siunitx), →I 174
 retain-zero-exponent key (siunitx), →I 174
`\ReverseBoolean`, →II 643, 644
 reversed hooks, →II 673
`\reversemarginpar`, →I 232, 347, 373
`\reversemarginpartrue` (layouts), →I 372
 reversemp key/option (geometry), →I 380, 381
 revision bars, →I 251
 Revision Control System (RCS), →II 615
`\RewindToStart` text symbol \llcorner (marvosym), →II 117
 Rexx value (listings), →I 323
`\rfloor` math symbol \rfloor , →II 190, 223
`\rfoot` (fancyhdr), →I 398, 399
 rgathered env. (mathtools), →II 132, 140, 141
 rgk-inline biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology),
 →II 446, 450
 rgk-numeric biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology),
 →II 446, 450
 rgk-verbose biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology),
 →II 446, 450
`\rgroup` math symbol \rfloor , →II 158, 190, 223

- rgzm-inline biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology),
→II 446, [451](#)
- rgzm-numeric biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology),
→II 446, [451](#)
- rgzm-verbose biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology),
→II 446, [451](#)
- \rhead (fancyhdr), →I [398](#), 399
- \rhino (tikzlings), →I 645
- \rho math symbol ρ , →II 212
(newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 247
- \rhook math symbol \hookrightarrow , →II 220
- \right, →I [389](#), →II 141f., 151, 155, 173, 175, 190, [191](#), [199](#),
207, 209, 211, 223f., 261f., 733
colored, →II 208
error using, →II 723, 731
(mathtools), →II 172
(mleftright), →II 211
(unicode-math), →II 258
- right key
(adjustbox), →I 599
(empheq), →II 175
(tcolorbox), →I [616](#), 627
(tikz), →I 635
- right key/option (geometry), →I [379](#), 382
- right option (lineno), →I 338, [339](#)
- right value
(changes), →I 248
(enumitem), →I [269](#), 270f.
(fancyvrb|fvextra), →I [309](#), 312
(hvfloating), →I [561](#), 563
(listings), →I [326](#), 327
(siunitx), →I [485](#), 486
(tasks), →I [291](#), 292
(tcolorbox), →I [617](#), 622
- right-to-left typesetting, multilingual documents, →I 355,
→II 322, [332](#)
- right_ color key (tikz), →I 639
- right_ skip key (tcolorbox), →I 616
- Rightarrow key (tikz-cd), →II 163
- \Rightarrow math symbol \Rightarrow , →II 219
- \rightarrow math symbol \rightarrow , →I 329, →II 192, [219](#), 220
- \rightarrowtail math symbol \rightarrowtail (amssymb), →II [219](#), 220
- \rightarrowtriangle math symbol \rightarrowtriangle (stmaryrd), →II 219
- rightcolumn env. (paracol), →I [342](#), 344
- rightcolumn* env. (paracol), →I 342
- rightextend value (tlc/enumitem), →I 270
- \rightharpoonup math symbol \rightharpoonup , →II 219
- \rightharpoonup math symbol \rightharpoonup , →II 219
- \righthyphephenmin, →II 333
- rightlabels option (titletoc), →I 62
- \rightleftarrows math symbol \rightleftarrows (amssymb), →II 219
- \rightleftharpoons math symbol \rightleftharpoons (amssymb), →II 219
- rightlower key (tcolorbox), →I [616](#), 617
- \rightmargin rigid length, →I [259](#), 261, 346
- rightmargin key
(enumitem), →I [266](#), 276f.
(thmtools), →I 286
- rightmargin syntax (titlesec), →I [43](#), 49
- \rightmark, →I [389](#), 391–394, 401f., 403
- \rightprotrusion (microtype), →I 136
- \rightrightarrow math symbol \rightarrow (amssymb), →II 219
- rightrule key (tcolorbox), →I [616](#), 617
- rightsep key (diagbox), →I 480
- \rightskip length, →I [122f.](#), →II 770, 771
(ragged2e), →I 123
- \rightslicemath symbol \rhd (stmaryrd), →II 215
- \rightsquigarrow math symbol \rightsquigarrow (amssymb), →II 219
- rightsquigarrow key (tikz-cd), →II 162
- \rightthreetimes math symbol \times (amssymb), →II 215
- righttitle key (tcolorbox), →I 616
- \rightunderbrace (tlc/underoverlap), →II 190
- rightupper key (tcolorbox), →I 616
- rigid lengths, →II 651
- rigidchapters option (titlesec), →I 46
- \rinterval (interval), →II 173
- \risingdotseq math symbol $\dot{=}$ (amssymb), →II 217
- \rlap, →I 338, 339, →II 159, 204, [662](#)
- rlap key (adjustbox), →I 598
- rlig OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 720
- \RLmulticolcolumns (multicol), →I 355
- \rm, *obsolete — do not use*, →I [670](#), →II 431
- rm option (*some font packages*), →II 9
(notocondensed), →II 27
(quattrocento), →I 702f.
(roboto), →II 35
- rm option (titlesec), →I [40](#), 41
- rm syntax, →I 673
(url), →I [200](#), 201
- rm value
(caption), →I [542](#), 545, 549
(subcaption), →I 554
- rmargin key/option (geometry), →I 379
- \rmdefault, →I [671](#), [672](#), 700, 701,
→II 8ff., 21, 39, 45, 73, 77, 79, 252
- \rmfamily, →I [660](#), [667](#), 670, 671, 673, 682
forbidden in math, →I 677
(fontspec), →I 711, 728
- rmof option (*some font packages*), →II 9
- \rmoustache math symbol $\}$, →II [190](#), [223](#), 261–296
- \rmsubstdefault, →I 701
- rnd syntax (tikz), →I 634
- rndcorners key (adjustbox), →I [596](#), 597
- rndframe key (adjustbox), →I [597](#), 599
- ro value (upmendex), →II 369
- roboto package, →II [34](#), 35
- Roboto fonts, description/examples, →I 669, →II [34](#)
- roboto-mono package, →II 34
- robust commands, →II 626, 628, 636, [715](#)
- rollback of L^AT_EX/packages, →I 114–118
rollback part in packages, →II 693ff.
- Roman folio style, →I 386
- \Roman, →I 255, →II [648](#), 649
- \roman, →I 256, →II 647, [648](#)
- roman folio style, →I 386
- roman option (parnotes), →I 227
- roman syntax (manyfoot|bigfoot), →I [222](#), 225f.

- Roman font shape, →I 654
- roman numerals, index sort order, →II 363
- `\Roman*` (enumitem), →I 275
- `\roman*` (enumitem), →I 268, 272, 275, 276
- romanian option (babel), →II 301
- romansh option (babel), →II 301
- rootbib option (chapterbib), →II 572
- `\ropen` (tlc/mathtools), →II 172
- Rosario package, →II 86
- Rosario fonts, description/examples, →II 86
- rotAngle key (hvfloat), →I 561, 563, 564
- rotate env. (rotating), →I 534, 592
- rotate key (tikz), →I 642, 645
- rotate option (crop), →I 414
- `\rotatebox`
 - (graphics|graphicx), error using, →II 736
 - (graphics), →I 580, 587, 590, 591
 - (graphicx), →I 577, 586, 591, 592, 595, 611
- rotateobjectleft value (tlc/hvfloat), →I 563
- rotating
 - captions, →I 561, 563, 564
 - floats, →I 533, 534, 535, 561, 563, 564
 - graphic objects, →I 590, 591f., 593, 642
 - image files, →I 581
- rotating package, →I 384, 533ff., 567, 587, 592f.
 - combined with endfloat, →I 527
- rotatright value (tlc/hvfloat), →I 564
- `\rotcaption` (rotating), →I 535, 540
- rotfloat package, →I 535
- `\Rothdnfamily` (Rothdn), →I 145
- round key/option (jurabib), →II 513, 526
- round option (natbib), →II 495, 503, 506
- round syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- round value (tikz), →I 639
- round-half key (siunitx), →I 173f.
- round-minimum key (siunitx), →I 174
- round-mode key (siunitx), →I 173, 174
- round-precision key (siunitx), →I 173
- `\roundcap` (pict2e), →I 607, 611
- roundedcorners key
 - (tcolorbox), →I 618
 - (tikz), →I 645
- rounding numbers, scientific notation, →I 173
 - indicate nonzero, →I 174
- `\roundjoin` (pict2e), →I 607
- `\Row` (keyvaltable), →I 496, 498f., 501–504
- row key (tcolorbox), →I 630f.
- rowbg key (keyvaltable), →I 497
- `\rowcolor` (colortbl), →I 467
- rows key (tcolorbox), →I 630
- rows, table
 - commands, →I 461
 - formatting, →I 496
 - hiding, →I 496
 - laying out, →I 436f.
 - spacing, →I 441, 473, 474f., 476
 - spanning, →I 476–479
- rowspacing key (tcolorbox), →I 630
- rowspan key (tcolorbox), →I 631
- `\rrbracket` math symbol \rrbracket (stmaryrd), →II 190, 223
- `\rrceil` math symbol \rrceil (stmaryrd), →II 224
- `\rrfloor` math symbol \rrfloor (stmaryrd), →II 224
- `\Rrightarrow` math symbol \Rrightarrow (amssymb), →II 219
- `\rrparenthesis` math symbol \rrparenthesis (stmaryrd), →II 224
- rsfs value (mathalpha), →II 232, 233
- rsfso value (mathalpha), →II 232, 233
- `\Rsh` math symbol \Rsh (amssymb), →II 219
- RSL value (listings), →I 323
- `\RSPercentTolerance` (relsize), →I 676
- `\rsquare` math symbol \square (tlc), →II 214
- `\rtimes` math symbol \rtimes (amssymb), →II 215
- ru value (upmendex), →II 369
- `ru_locale.ist` file (tlc/upmendex), →II 328
- rubber lengths, →II 651
- Ruby value
 - (fontspec), →I 725
 - (listings), →I 323
- ruby OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 725
- `\rule`, →I 46, 208, 434f., 441, 474, 565, 598, →II 655, 664ff., 667, 668, 669
- rule boxes, →II 660, 667ff.
- rulecolor key
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 307
 - (thmtools), →I 286
- ruled option (manyfoot|bigfoot), →I 222, 223f.
- ruled syntax (float), →I 562
- ruled value (float), →I 530, 531
- rules value (unicodfonttable), →I 730
- rules (graphic lines)
 - around code listings, →I 330
 - between text columns, →I 356, 361
 - color, →I 467, 468
 - double, →I 471
 - floats, →I 512
 - footnotes, →I 208, 214
 - formal, →I 471, 472, 473
 - frame, color, →I 307
 - headings, →I 47
 - in tables
 - colored, →I 467, 468
 - combining horizontal and vertical, →I 470, 471
 - dashed, →I 469, 470
 - diagonal, →I 479, 480f.
 - double, →I 471
 - formal, →I 471, 472, 473
 - variable width, →I 468
 - vertical, →I 470f.
 - page styles, →I 398
- rulesep key (listings), →I 330, 332
- rulesepcolor key (listings), →I 332
- rulewidth key (thmtools), →I 286
- run-in style document headings, →I 37, 52
- run: syntax (hyperref), →I 100, 101, 103
- runborderstyle key/option (hyperref), →I 103
- runcolor key/option (hyperref), →I 103
- runin syntax (titlesec), →I 43, 44

- running headers and footers, *see* headers and footers
 russian option (babel), →II 301, 326f.
- `\rVert` math symbol $\|$ (amsmath),
 →II 190, 194, 223, 224, 261–296
- `\rvert` math symbol $|$ (amsmath),
 →II 151, 190, 192, 194, 223, 224, 261–296
- ## S
- S syntax
 (cellspace/array), →I 475
 (siunitx/array), →I 172, 475, 481, 484, 485ff.
- S value
 (listings), →I 323
 (thmtools), →I 286, 287
- `\S` text/math symbol §, →I 44, 67, 256, 268, 501, 770,
 →II 213, 511, 623
- `\s`
 (siunitx), →I 175
 (tlc/fontspect), →I 725
- s key (keyfloat), →I 569
- s syntax
 (boxes), →II 666
 (cmd/env decl), →II 633, 634, 635, 639f., 644
 (tlc/abracas), →II 186
- s size function (NFSS), →I 743
- s: syntax (yfonts), →I 197, →II 105, 106
- s= syntax (kpfonts|kpfonts-otf), →II 17
- `\Sa` (matters), →II 178
- safe option (tipa), →II 126
- salt OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 722f., 724, 725
- same syntax (url), →I 200, 204
- sameline value (enumitem), →I 278, 279
- `\samepage`, →I 414f.
- samepage key (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 309
- samin option (babel), →II 301
- `\sample` (tlc), →I 116
- `\samplefigs` (tlc/subcaption), →I 554
- samples key (tikz), →I 637
- sans option (dsfont), →II 228
- sans serif fonts, →I 653, 660, →II 67–87
 as default, →I 690
 with oblique shape, →I 684, 687,
 →II 12ff., 18f., 26, 32–35, 69, 73f., 76f., 79f., 85f.
 with true italics, →II 11, 14–17, 20, 22f., 25f., 28f., 31f.,
 36, 68–79, 81–88, 102
 with true italics and oblique shape, →II 75
- sans-style key/option (unicode-math), →II 255ff., 258
- `\sAppendix` (tlc), →I 53, 54, 99
- SAS value (listings), →I 323
- save keyword (l3build), →I 610f.
- save size errors, →II 748
- `\savebox`, →I 408, →II 669, 731, 779
 error using, →II 717
- `\savebyname` (tlc), →II 644
- `\savegeometry` (geometry), →I 383
- savequote env. (quotchap), →I 38, 39
- savetrees biblatex style (savetrees), →II 468
- savetrees package, →I 384f.
- `\SaveVerb`
 (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 319f., →II 743
 (fvextra), →I 321
- SaveVerbatim env. (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 320
- `\Sb` (matters), →II 178
- sb option (*various font packages*), →II 8
- sb syntax (*font series*), →I 673, 675, 732, →II 12
- sbc syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- sbec syntax (*font series*), →I 673, 675, 732
- sbex syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- sbl biblatex style (biblatex-sbl), →II 445
- `\sbox`, →I 540, →II 631, 637, 669, 670, 731, 779
 error using, →II 717
- sbsc syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- sbsx syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- sbuc syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- sbux syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- sbx syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- `\sc`, *obsolete—do not use*, →I 670
- sc key (keyfloat), →I 569
- sc option
 (mathpazo), →II 252
 (titlesec), →I 40
- sc syntax
 (*font series*), →I 732
 (*font shape*), →I 671, 734, 735, →II 43
- sc value (caption), →I 542, 549
- Scala value (listings), →I 323
- Scale key
 (fontspec), →I 714, →II 257
 (unicode-math), →II 265, 271, 273, 275, 278, 288, 290
- scale key
 (adjustbox), →I 595, 597
 (draftwatermark), →I 410
 (graphicx), →I 562ff., 566f., 581, 583, →II 680
 (tikz), →I 637, 642, 645
- scale key/option (geometry), →I 382
- scale option, →II 8
 (TeX Gyre font packages), →I 689, →II 69
 (bboldx), →II 227
 (dsserif), →II 228
- scale value (tcolorbox), →I 618
- scale-factor key (xfrac), →I 166
- ScaleAgain key (fontspec), →I 714
- `\scalebox` (graphics|graphicx), →I 579, 587, 588, 595
- scaled key (interval), →II 173
- scaled option (*various font packages*), →II 8, 9, 11, 13ff., 27,
 30, 32, 34, 38f., 41f., 44f., 48, 58f., 63ff., 68, 69,
 71f., 81, 83, 87, 88, 90, 92f., 95, 99f., 103
 (XCharter), →II 274
 (ebgaramond), →II 265
 (heuristica), →II 283
 (luximono), →I 302f.
 (newtxmath), →II 274
- scalefont package, →I 676
- `\scalefont` (scalefont), →I 676
- scaling
 graphic objects, →I 587, 588, 596f.

- scaling (*cont.*)
 - image files, →I 581
 - large operators, →I 704
- `\scdefault`, →I 671
- Schola fonts, description/examples, →II 54, 276
- school `BBTeX` field, →II 386, 389
- Schwabacher fonts, description/examples, →II 104ff.
- science biblatex style (biblatex-science), →II 459
- scientific data, aligning in tables, →I 484, 485ff.
- scientific notation, →I 167–177
 - angles, →I 171
 - automatic conversion to, →I 174
 - complex numbers, →I 171, 172
 - numbers, →I 168, 169, 174
 - preventing number parsing, →I 173
 - qualifiers, →I 175
 - quantities, →I 169, 170f., 175f.
 - rounding, →I 173
 - indicate non-zero, →I 174
 - sequence of numbers, →I 169
 - sequence of quantities, →I 171
 - uncertainty, →I 168, 176
 - units, →I 169, 170ff., 173, 175f.
- `ScientificInferior` value (fontspec), →I 718, 719
- Scilab value (listings), →I 323
- `scit` syntax (*font shape*), →I 734, 735
- scope env. (tikz), →I 642, 644
- scoping* (tikz path operation), →I 636
- scottish option (babel), →II 301
- `scr` key (mathalpha), →II 230, 231, 241
- `scr` value (unicode-math), →II 260
- `scrartcl` document class, →I 429
- `screen` key/option (geometry), →I 378
- `Script` key (fontspec), →I 726
- `script` syntax (enumitem), →I 280
- `script` commands, `docstrip`, →II 601–604
- `script` math alphabet, →II 226, 227, 229f., 231ff.
- `script-features` key (unicode-math), →II 260
- `script-font` key (unicode-math), →II 260
- `\scriptscriptstyle`, →I 749, →II 165, 195, 196, 197, 202
- `\scriptsize`, →I 324, 666
 - `scriptsize` value
 - (caption), →I 542
 - (subcaption), →I 557
 - (todonotes), →I 240, 241
- `\scriptstyle`, →I 749, →II 159, 165, 195, 196, 197
 - `scrlayer-scrpage` package, →I 429
- `\scrollmode`, →II 749, 780
 - `scrscaled` key (mathalpha), →II 231
- `\scshape`, →I 67, 662, 663ff., 667, 668f., 671, 735, →II 648
 - forbidden in math, →I 677
 - (fontspec), →I 717
 - (lettrine), →I 141
 - (microtype), →I 194, 195f.
 - (soul), →I 194
- `scsl` syntax (*font shape*), →I 734, 735
- `scsp` OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 722
- `scsw` syntax (*font shape*), →I 712, 734, →II 43
- SE value (diagbox), →I 480, 481
- searching, bibliographies, →II 416
- `\searrow` math symbol \searrow , →I 329, →II 219
 - (old-arrows), →II 220
- `\sec` math operator $\sec x$, →II 193
 - `sec` syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
 - `secd` syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- `\secdef`, →I 51, 53
- `\secformat` (tlc/titlesec), →I 46
 - `secnumdepth` counter, →I 33, 34, 51, 54, →II 574, 646
- `\second` (siunitx), →I 170
- `\sectfont` (quotchap), →I 38, 39
- `\section`, →I 32f., 34, 35f., 44, 53ff., 57, 71, 89, 388, 390, 394, 397, →II 577, 626, 676, 771
 - cross-reference to, →I 75, 76
 - error using, →II 715
 - suppressing floats before, →I 513
 - with float barrier, →I 524
 - (bibunits), sectioning unit, →II 576, 577
 - (nameref), textual reference to, →I 93
 - (titlesec), →I 41f., 44–47, 49f.
 - (titletoc), partial contents for, →I 68
- section counter, →I 34, 35, 53, 89, 390, →II 646, 648, 649
 - (babel), →II 335
- section key (biblatex), →II 552, 556
- section option
 - (placeins), →I 524
 - (tocbibind), →I 56
- section value
 - (enotez), →I 231, 232
 - (hyperref), →I 98
 - (jurabib), →II 515, 522
- section commands, →I 32f.
 - redefining, →I 45, 52
- `\section*`, →I 33, 55, →II 496, 572
 - listed in tables of contents, →I 55
 - (titlesec), →I 49
- `section*` value (acro), →I 162
- `\sectionauthor` (tocdata), →I 57
- sectionbib option
 - (bibunits), →II 577
 - (chapterbib), →II 572, 573
 - (natbib), →II 496, 572
- `\sectionbreak` (titlesec), →I 48
- `\sectionmark`, →I 53f., 390, 403, 404
- `\secundo` (babel), →II 319
- `sed` program, →II 416
- `\see` (makeidx), →II 348
 - `see` key/option (jurabib), →II 513
- `see` syntax (biblatex), →II 540
- `\seename` (babel), →II 305
- `segment` key (biblatex), →II 552, 556
- `selected` key/option (microtype), →I 129, 132
- `\selectfont`, →I 669, 685, 697, 699, 703f., 731, 732, 736f., 738, 740, 767, →II 10, 43, 71
- `\selectlanguage` (babel), →I 134, →II 302, 303, 304, 327, 430, 559, 561, 683
- semantic nest size errors, →II 749

- semibold option (*various font packages*), →II 8
- (ebgaramond), →II 265
- semicolon (;), shorthand character, →II 312f.
- semicondensed option (notocondensed), →II 27
- sep key
 - (adjustbox), →I 597
 - (tikz), →I 640
- separate value (bibtex), →II 540f.
- separate-uncertainty key (siunitx), →I 176
- separate-uncertainty-units key (siunitx), →I 176
- separation-symbol key (fnpct), →I 218
- separator character, bibliography database, →II 381
- separator_{symbol} key (interval), →II 173
- separatorLine key (hvfloat), →I 564
- sequence key (tcolorbox), →I 631
- serbian option (babel), →II 301
- serbianc option (babel), →II 301
- Series env. (tlc/float), →I 530f.
- series BibTeX field, →II 382f., 386, **389**
- series key (enumitem), →I 275
- series, fonts, *see* fonts, series
- \seriesdefault, →I **671f.**, 738
- serifed fonts, →I **653**, 660, →II **11-67**
 - with true italics and oblique shape, →I 684, 687, →II 18f., 22f., 26f., 32, 39f., 50f., 53, 59, 61f., 66
- \Set (braket), →II **173**, 174
- \set (braket), →II **173**, 174
 - set BibTeX entry type (bibtex), →II 387
- \setaddedmarkup (changes), →I 248
- \SetBlockEnvironment (csquotes), →I **180**, 181
- \SetBlockThreshold (csquotes), →I **181**, 183
- \setboolean (ifthen), →II 371, **690**, 709
- \setbox, →II 670
 - problems using color, →II 671
- \SetCiteCommand (csquotes), →II 535
- \setcitestyle (natbib), →II 484
- \setcolumnwidth (paracol), →I 347
- \setcommentmarkup (changes), →I **248**, 249
- \setcounter, →I 257, →II 574, **647**, 648, 692
 - error using, →II 625, 717, 733f.
 - (calc), →II **687**, 688, 690
- \setdeletedmarkup (changes), →I 248
- \setdisplayskipstretch (setspace), →I 141
- \setenotez (enotez), →I 231
- \SetEnumerateShortLabel (enumitem), →I 276
- \SetEnumitemKey (enumitem), →I 265
- \SetExpansion (microtype), →I **132**, 133, 137
- \SetExtraKerning (microtype), →I 134
- \SetExtraSpacing (microtype), →I **134**, 135
- \setfnpct (fnpct), →I 218
- \setfnsymbol (footmisc), →I **211**, 212
- \setfontfamily (fontspec), →I 711
- \setfootbox (layouts), →I 373
- \sethighlightmarkup (changes), →I 248
- \sethlcolor (soul), →I 198
- \SetKeys, →II 694, 702, **703**, 725, 758
- \setkeys
 - (graphicx), →I **585**, 586
 - (setkeys (cont.) (keyval), →I 585
- \SetLabelAlign (enumitem), →I **270**, 271
- \setlabelfont (layouts), →I 373, **374**, 375
- \setlayoutscales (layouts), →I **372**, 373, 375
- \setlength, →II **652**, 689
 - error using, →II 717, 734
 - problems with, →II 205
 - (calc), →II **687**, 688f., 692
- \setlipsumdefault (lipsum), →I 362
- \setlist (enumitem),
 - I 231, **263**, 264-270, 272, 274, 275, 276f., 279ff.
- \setlist* (enumitem), →I **263**, 264, **280**
- \setlistdepth (enumitem), →II 739
- \setlocalecaption (babel), →II 333
- \setmainfont (fontspec), →I 670, 671, **706**, 707, 709ff., 713f., 716, 718-721, 723ff., 727f., →II 265, 267, 271, 273ff., 278, 280, 284, 287f., 290, 686
- \setmainlanguage (polyglossia), →II 342
- \SetMathAlphabet, →I **683**, **753**, →II 730
 - error using, →II 720
- \setmathfont (unicode-math), →II **259**, 260, 265, 267, 271, 273ff., 278, 280, 284, 287f., 290, 686
- \setmathfontface (unicode-math), →I **681**, 682, →II **256**, 257
- \SetMCRule (multicolrule), →I 361
- \setminus math symbol \, →I 164, →II **215**
- \setmonofont (fontspec), →I 297, **706**, 714, 719f.
- \setoperatorfont (unicode-math), →II 259
- \setotherlanguages (polyglossia), →II 342
- \setOverpic (overpic), →I 594
 - setpage_prefix keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358
 - setpage_suffix keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex), →II 358
- \setparameterfont (layouts), →I 372, **374**
- \SetProtrusion (microtype), →I **131**, 132, 133
- sets and inclusion, math symbols, →II 218
- sets and inclusion — negated, math symbols, →II 218
- \setsansfont (fontspec), →I 670, **706**, 714, 719f., 727, →II 10
- \setsidenotes (snotez), →I 236
- setspace package, →I **139ff.**, 375
- \setstcolor (soul), →I 198
- \setstretch (setspace), →I 140
- \setsummarytowidth (changes), →I 246, **247**
- \setsummarywidth (changes), →I 247
- \SetSymbFont (mattens), →II 179
- \SetSymbolFont, →I **750**, 751, 752, **753**, →II 293, 295
 - warning using, →II 758
- \SetSymbStrut (mattens), →II 179
- \settasks (tasks), →I **290**, 291f.
- \settodepth, →II 653
- \settoheight, →II 653
- \settowidth, →II 632, **653**
- \SetTracking (microtype), →I **134**, 194
- \settruncatewidth (changes), →I 247
- \setul (soul), →I 197
- \setulcolor (soul), →I 198
- \setuldepth (soul), →I 197
- \setunit (bibtex), →II 558, **566**
- \SetupDelayedFloat (endfloat), →I 527

- `\SetupDoc` (doc), →II 590
- `\setuptodonotes` (todonotes), →I 239, 240f., 242
- `\sf`, *obsolete — do not use*, →I 670
 - `sf` option (*some font packages*), →II 9
 - (notocondensed), →II 27
 - (quattrocento), →II 68
 - `sf` option (titlesec), →I 40, 41
 - `sf` syntax, →I 673
 - (url), →I 200, 204
 - `sf` value (caption), →I 538, 542, 543, 545, 549, 554, 555
- `\sfdefault`, →I 671, 672, 690, 700, 701, →II 8ff., 23
 - `sfdefault` option (*various font packages*), →II 8
 - (ClearSans), →II 72
 - (arimo), →II 69
 - (cabin), →II 70
 - (classico), →II 71
 - (gandhi), →II 15
 - (librefranklin), →II 81
 - (notomath), →II 252, 295
 - (roboto), →I 669
 - (universalis), →II 87
- `\sffamily`, →I 660, 663, 667, 668, 670, 671, 682, 702f., →II 10
 - forbidden in math, →I 677
 - problem with EC fonts, →I 686
 - (fontspec), →I 711, 720, 728
- `sfit` value (unicode-math), →II 260
- `sfmath` option (kpfonts), →II 293
- `sfmthbb` option (kpfonts), →II 267
- `sfof` option (*some font packages*), →II 9
- `\sfrac` (xfrac), →I 164, 165, 166, 169, 175
- `\sfsubstdefault`, →I 701
 - `sfup` value (unicode-math), →II 260
- `\sh` math operator $\sh x$ (babel), →II 321
- `sh` value (listings), →I 323
- `\shade` (tikz), →I 638
- `shade` key (tikz), →I 638, 639
- `shaded` key (thmtools), →I 286
- `shaded` fonts, →I 655
- `\shadedraw` (tikz), →I 638
- `shadedthm` package, →I 286
- `shadow` key (todonotes), →I 239, 240f.
- `shadow` package, →I 614
- `shadowbox` value (listings), →I 330, 332
- `shape` key
 - (keyvaltable), →I 497, 500
 - (tikz), →I 641
- `shape`, document headings, →I 43
- `shapeborderrotate` key (tikz), →I 641
- `\shapedefault`, →I 671f., 738
- `shapes` library (tikz), →I 641f.
- `shapes`, fonts, *see* fonts, *shapes*
- `shapes.arrows` library (tikz), →I 641f.
- `shapes.symbols` library (tikz), →I 641f.
- `sharenumber` key (thmtools), →I 285, 287
- `\sharp` math symbol \sharp , →II 213
- `sharpcorners` key (tcolorbox), →I 618, 622, 627, 630
- `sharpishcorners` key (tcolorbox), →I 619
- `SHELXL` value (listings), →I 323
- `shift` key (tikz), →I 635, 642, 644
- `\shipout`, →II 680, 754
 - `shipout` hook, →II 680, 681
 - `shipout/after` hook, →II 680, 681
 - `shipout/background` hook, →II 680
 - `shipout/before` hook, →II 680, 754
 - `shipout/firstpage` hook, →II 680
 - `shipout/foreground` hook, →II 680
 - `shipout/last` hook, →II 754
 - `shipout/lastpage` hook, →I 387, →II 680
- `\ShipoutBox`, →II 754
- `short` key (acro), →I 156, 157–163
- `short` value
 - (acro), →I 158, 159, 161, 162
 - (jurabib), →II 523
- `short-format` key (acro), →I 160, 161
- `short-indefinite` key (acro), →I 158
- `short-long` value (acro), →I 158, 161
- `short-plural` key (acro), →I 158
- `short-plural-form` key (acro), →I 158
- `short-title` citations, →II 436, *see also* citation systems
 - annotations, →II 512, 513, 531, 533, 536f.
 - author gender, →II 525, 526, 533
 - author information field, →II 533
 - author list separator, →II 527, 529
 - author-date format, combining, →II 523, 524
 - back references, →II 533, 547
 - biblatex package, →II 534–537, 558
 - collections, →II 533
 - column layout, →II 530
 - compressing citations, →II 535
 - configuration files, external, →II 532
 - cross-references, →II 523
 - customizing
 - citations, →II 526f.
 - the bibliography, →II 527, 528, 529, 530f., 532
 - description, →II 507f.
 - dissertation year, →II 533
 - edition information, →II 533
 - editor information, →II 533
 - endnote citations, →II 517f., 519
 - fonts, →II 527f.
 - footnote citations, →II 517f., 519, 540
 - founder information, →II 533
 - full citations in running text, →II 514, 515ff.
 - ibidem citations, →II 519–522, 530, 531, 535
 - indentation, →II 529, 530
 - indexing citations automatically, →II 512, 546
 - jurabib package, →II 507–534
 - last update field, →II 534
 - multi-language support, →II 524, 525, 526
 - page boundaries, ignoring, →II 520
 - page total field, →II 534
 - parentheses, →II 526
 - pre-notes, →II 512, 513
 - punctuation, →II 528, 529
 - shorthands, printing, →II 535, 558
 - sort order, →II 533

- short-title citations (*cont.*)
 - style files, →II 532ff.
 - superscripts, →II 526, 527, 533
 - terse, →II 535
 - title format, →II 510, 511f.
 - title information field, →II 533
 - title, mapping short to full, →II 513f.
 - translated works, →II 533
 - translator information, →II 534
 - URLs, →II 533f.
 - volume title, →II 534
- shortauthor BibTeX field
 - (bibtex), →II 389
 - (jurabib), →II 509f., 523, 533
- \shortcite
 - (authordate1-4), →II 489
 - (chicago), →II 471, 489
- \shortciteA (chicago), →II 489
- \shortciteN (chicago), →II 489
- \shortcites (natbib), →II 495
- shortcuts option (exdash), →I 150, 151
- \shortdownarrow math symbol ↓ (stmaryrd), →II 219
- shorteditor BibTeX field (bibtex), →II 389
- shortemdash option (exdash), →I 151
- shorthand BibTeX field (bibtex), →II 383, 535, 539
- \shorthandoff (babel), →II 306, 307, 313f.
- \shorthandon (babel), →II 306
 - error using, →II 725
- shorthands
 - citations, printing, →II 535, 558
 - language options, babel package, →II 310-314
 - multilingual documents, →II 304ff., 307
 - problems using, →II 307
- shorthands key/option (babel), →II 305
- \shortindexingoff (index), →II 373
- \shortindexingon (index), →II 373
- \shortintertext (mathtools), →II 143, 174
- shortlabels option (enumitem), →I 275, 276
- \shortleftarrow math symbol ← (stmaryrd), →II 219
- \shortmid math symbol ∣ (amssymb), →II 221
- \shortpage (tlc), →I 415f., 417
- \shortparallel math symbol ∥ (amssymb), →II 221
- \shortrightarrow math symbol →, →II 220
 - (stmaryrd), →II 219
- \shortstack, →I 606
- shorttitle BibTeX field
 - (bibtex), →II 382f., 534, 535
 - (jurabib), →II 382f., 510f., 513f., 523, 533
- \shorttoc (tlc/titletoc), →I 69
- \shortuparrow math symbol ↑ (stmaryrd), →II 219
- \shortvdotswithin (mathtools), →II 182
- shortvrb package, →I 298f., 300, →II 587, 706
- shortvrb.sty file (shortvrb), →II 602
- \shoveleft (amsmath), →II 134, 142
- \shoveright (amsmath), →II 134, 142
- \show, →II 766, 767f., 769
 - output produced from, →II 766ff.
- show key
 - (changes), →I 247
 - (thmtools), →I 287
- \showbox, →II 734, 779, 780
 - error using, →II 734
 - output produced from, →II 779
- \showboxbreadth TeX counter, →II 779, 780
- \showboxdepth TeX counter, →II 779, 780
- \ShowCharacterInheritance (microtype-show), →I 132
- \ShowCollectedTable (keyvaltable), →I 500, 501
- \showcols (array), →I 446
- \ShowCommand, →II 628, 767, 768
- showcrop key/option (geometry), →I 381
- \ShowEnvironment, →II 768
- \ShowFloat, →I 519, 523
- showframe key (colorbox), →I 630
- showframe key/option (geometry), →I 383
- \showgroups, →II 733, 747
 - tracing output produced from, →II 747
- showhead key (keyvaltable), →I 497
- \ShowHook, →II 674, 719, 726
- showhyphenation package, →II 775f.
- \showhyphens, →II 774
 - output produced from, →II 774
- showidx package, →II 352, 372, 373
- \ShowInstanceValues (xfrac), →I 165
- showkeys package, →I 93f., →II 490
- \ShowKeyValTableFile (keyvaltable), →I 499, 500
- showlanguages option, →II 754
 - (babel), →II 338
- \showlists, →II 734, 749, 780
 - error using, →II 734
 - output produced from, →II 780
- showoptions key (mathalpha), →II 231, 234
- \showoutput, →II 610, 734, 769, 779, 780
 - differences between engines, →II 610
 - output produced from, →II 770f.
- \showpage (tlc/layouts), →I 375
- \ShowPoints (tlc/pict2e), →I 606
- \showprogress (docstrip), →II 603
- \ShowProtrusion (microtype-show), →I 132
- showrules key (keyvaltable), →I 498
- showspaces key
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 312, 316, 318
 - (listings), →I 326, 330
- showstringspaces key (listings), →I 325, 326
- showtabs key
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 312
 - (listings), →I 326
- showtags package, →II 417
- \showthe, →II 768, 769
 - error using, →II 727
 - output produced from, →II 768
- shrink key/option (microtype), →I 129, 132, 133, 137
- shrink option (newtxtext), →II 244
- \shrinkheight (supertabular), →I 458
- si syntax (*font shape*), nonstandard, →II 53
- siam BibTeX style, →II 424

- sibling key (thmtools), →I 285, 286
- side option (footmisc), →I 212, 213f., 222, 235
- sidebyside key (tcolorbox), →I 615
- sidecap package, →I 560
- \sidenote (snotez), →I 235, 236
- sidenote counter (snotez), →I 236
- \sidenotemark (snotez), →I 235, 236
- \sidenotetext (snotez), →I 235, 236
- \sideset (amsmath), →II 179, 180
- sideways env. (rotating), →I 534
- sidewaysfigure env. (rotating), →I 527, 534, 535, 540
- sidewaystable env.
 - (rotating), →I 527, 534, 535, 540
 - (rotfloat), →I 535
- sidewaysXML env. (tlc/rotating), →I 535
- \siemens (siunitx), →I 170
- \sievert (siunitx), →I 170
- \Sigma math symbol Σ , →II 212
- \sigma math symbol σ , →II 212
- sign syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- silent option (fontspec), →I 728
- silent value (microtype), →I 130
- \silly (sillypage), →II 651
- silly page style (sillypage), →II 651
- \sillynumeral (sillypage), →II 651
- sillynumeral page style (sillypage), →II 651
- sillypage package, →II 651
- \sillystep (sillypage), →II 651
- \sim math symbol \sim , →II 184, 216, 217, 235
- \simcolon math symbol \sim : (colonequals), →II 221
- \simcoloncolon math symbol \sim :: (colonequals), →II 221
- \simeq math symbol \simeq , →II 166, 176, 184, 204, 211, 217
- simple value
 - (caption), →I 543, 545f.
 - (subcaption), →I 554, 557
- Simula value (listings), →I 323
- sin (tikz path operation), →I 636
- \sin math operator $\sin x$, →II 170, 193, 201f., 211, 659
- sin syntax
 - (*fp expr*), →II 658, 659
 - (tikz), →I 637, 641
- sind syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- sinf OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 719
- single key (acro), →I 158, 159, 160, 162
- single value
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 307, 308, 314
 - (listings), →I 330
 - (siunitx), →I 176
- single-byte characters, encoding, →I 649f., 692
- single-format key (acro), →I 160
- single-style key (acro), →I 158, 159
- single_arrow value (tikz), →I 641
- singlelinecheck key/options
 - (caption), →I 541, 542, 544, 548, 566
 - (subcaption), →I 555, 556
- SinglePage value (hyperref), →I 107
- singlespace env. (setspace), →I 140
- \singlespacing (setspace), →I 140
- singlespacing option (setspace), →I 140
- \sinh math operator $\sinh x$, →II 193, 321
- \sisetup (siunitx), →I 167, 169, 173ff., 176, 484, 487
- Slunits *obsolete* package, →II 976, *see instead* siunitx package
- siunitx package, →I 7, 167–177, 475, 481, 484–487, →II 816, 976
- Size key (fontspec), →I 715
- size key
 - (tcolorbox), →I 617, 621f., 627ff.
 - (todonotes), →I 240, 241, 249
- size of image, →I 582
- size11.clo file, →I 22, 258
- SizeFeatures key (fontspec), →I 715
- sizes option (enumitem), →I 279, 280
- sizing fonts, →I 665, 666
- sizing, mathematical typesetting, →II 195, 196f., 204
- sk value (upmendex), →II 369
- sk@collation=search value (upmendex), →II 369
- skin key (tcolorbox), →I 619, 620
- skins library (tcolorbox), →I 619, 620–625, 629
- \skip, →II 768
- skip key/options
 - (caption), →I 545, 556, 570
 - (parskip), →I 139
 - (subcaption), →I 555, 557
- \skip\footins length, →I 208f., 222
- (footmisc), →I 214f.
- \skip\footins{*suffix*} length (manyfoot|bigfoot), →I 222, 223
- \skip{*num*} length, →II 768
- \skipentry (biblatex), →II 554
- \skipeval, →II 660, 689
- \sl, *obsolete* — *do not use*, →I 670
- sl option
 - (changes), →I 248
 - (titlesec), →I 140
- sl syntax
 - (*font series*), →I 732
 - (*font shape*), →I 671, 734, 735
- sl value
 - (caption), →I 542
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 306
 - (subcaption), →I 557
 - (upmendex), →II 369
- slab serif fonts, →II 64–67
- slanted fonts, →I 654, 661
- SlantedFeatures key (fontspec), →I 727
- SlantedFont key (fontspec), →I 710
- slantedGreek option
 - (ccfonts), →II 239
 - (cmbright), →II 240
 - (mathpazo), →II 251
 - (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 250
- slash-delimiter key (unicode-math), →II 258
- slash-left-kern key (xfrac), →I 166
- slash-right-kern key (xfrac), →I 166
- slash-symbol-font key (xfrac), →I 166
- slash-symbol-format key (xfrac), →I 165, 166

- SlashedZero value (fontspec), →I 716, →II 24
- slc key/option (caption), →I 541
- slc syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- \sldefault, →I 671
- slec syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- slex syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- slides value (hyperref), →I 98
- slides document class, →I 110
- slope key (lettrine), →I 143, 144
- sloped key (tikz), →I 637
- sloped fonts, *see* slanted fonts
- \sloppy, →I 121, 427, 428
 - (nolbreaks), →I 126
 - sloppypar env., →I 427
- \sloth (tikzlings), →I 645
- slovak option (babel), →II 301
- slovene option (babel), →II 301
- slsc syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- \slshape, →I 661, 662, 663, 667, 671
 - forbidden in math, →I 677
 - (fontspec), →I 710
- slsx syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- sluc syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- slux syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- slx syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- \small, →I 258, 260, 665, 666, →II 144
- small option
 - (eulervm), →II 242
 - (titlesec), →I 40
- small syntax (enumitem), →I 280f.
- small value
 - (caption), →I 542, 544
 - (crop), →I 412
 - (subcaption), →I 556
 - (tcolorbox), →I 617
 - (todonotes), →I 241f., 249
- small capitals
 - description, →I 654f.
 - fonts, →I 662
 - monospaced fonts with, →I 684, 687, →II 90f., 93, 96
 - Unicode, →I 709, 710, 717, 718
 - French names written in, →II 319
 - in headings, →I 663
- SmallCaps value (fontspec), →I 710, 713, 717, 718
- smallcaps value (jurabib), →II 509f.
- SmallCapsFeatures key (fontspec), →I 710, 717, 718, 727
- SmallCapsFont key (fontspec), →I 710
- \smallcoprod math symbol \amalg (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 250
- \smaller (resize), →I 675
- smaller value
 - (caption), →I 542, 543
 - (subcaption), →I 554, 555
- smallerops option (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 249
- \Smallestside (adjustbox), →I 596
- \smallestside (adjustbox), →I 596
- \smallfint math symbol \mathfrak{f} (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 249
- \smallfrown math symbol \frown (amssymb), →II 221
- \smalliiint math symbol \iiint (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 249
- \smalliiiint math symbol \iiint (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 249
- \smalliint math symbol \iint (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 249
- \smallintsl (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245
- \smallint math symbol \int , →II 222
 - (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 249
- smallmatrix env. (amsmath), →II 155, 187
- smallmatrix* env. (mathtools), →II 155
- \smallloiiint math symbol \iiint (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 249
- \smallloint math symbol \int (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 249
- \smallloint math symbol \oint (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 249
- \smallointctrclockwise math symbol \oint (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 249
- \smallprod math symbol \prod (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 250
- \smallsetminus math symbol \setminus (amssymb), →II 215
- \smallskip, →II 654
- \smallskipamount length, →II 654
- \smallsmile math symbol \smile (amssymb), →II 221
- \smallsqint math symbol \int (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 249
- \smallsum math symbol Σ (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 250
- \smallsumint math symbol \int (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 249
- \smallvarointclockwise math symbol \oint (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 249
- \smartcite (biblatex), →II 544
- \smash, →I 435, →II 200, 261
 - (amsmath), →II 186, 200, 201, 203
 - (mathtools), →II 204
- smashing, mathematical typesetting, →II 203f.
- smcp OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 715, 716, 717
- \smile math symbol \smile , →II 221
- \Smiley text symbol © (marvosym), →II 117
- smooth key (tikz), →I 637
- snapshot package, →I 111ff.
- snotez package, →I 218, 235ff.
- \so (soul), →I 194, 196, 197
- socialscienceshuberlin biblatex style
 - (biblatex-socialscienceshuberlin), →II 454
- soft_{}_open_{}_fences key (interval), →II 173
- software B_WTeX entry type (biblatex), →II 387
- software biblatex style (biblatex-software), →II 464
- software information, *see* help resources
- software release control, →II 615
- \solar (tlc/siunitx), →I 175
- solid syntax (fontawesome5), →II 121, 124
- solution key (tikz), →I 633
- sort key (acro), →I 162, 163

- sort option
 - (cite), →II 481
 - (cleveref), →I 87
 - (natbib), →II 493, 504, 505
- sort order
 - bibliographies, →II 387ff., 554, 555, 559, 560
 - citations in bibliographies
 - author-number citation system, →II 504, 505
 - number-only citation system, →II 478f., 481, 485f., 504f.
 - short-title citation system, →II 533
 - indexes
 - by locale, →II 355, 366ff.
 - German words, →II 354
 - ICU attributes, →II 368ff.
 - Japanese words, →II 365
 - letter-by-letter, →II 354, 364
 - page numbers, →II 354, 362, 364
 - roman numerals, →II 363
 - spaces, →II 363
 - symbols, →II 363
 - Thai support, →II 355
 - troubleshooting, →II 362f.
- sort&compress option
 - (cleveref), →I 87
 - (natbib), →II 504, 505
- sortcites key/option (biblatex), →II 485, 486
- \SortIndex (doc), →II 596
- sorting key (biblatex), →II 555, 560
- sorting key/option (biblatex), →II 411, 412, 433, 554
- sortkey BibTeX field, →II 406
 - (biblatex), →II 388f.
 - (jurabib), →II 388, 533
- sortlocale key/option (biblatex), →II 559, 560
- sortname BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 388f.
- sortname syntax (biblatex), →II 568, 569
- \SortNoop (tlc), →II 399, 405, 406
- sortshorthand BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 389
- sorttitle BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 388f.
- sortyear BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 389
- soul option (lua-ul), →I 194
- soul package, →I 192, 194–198, →II 729
 - combined with color/xcolor, →I 194f., 198
 - combined with microtype, →I 195
 - error using, →II 727
 - nesting commands, →I 194
- \soulaccent (soul), →I 195
- \soulomit (soul), →I 197
- \soulregister (soul), →I 195, 196
- soulutf8 package, →I 195, 197
- source control, →II 615, 616f., 618f.
- source files, *see also* documents
 - specifying (docstrip), →II 601f.
 - splitting, →I 28, 29, 30
- source line, finding, →II 712–716
- source2e.tex file, →II 597ff.
- sourcecodepro package, →II 35
- \sourceflush (epigraph), →I 39
- sourcesanspro package, →II 35
- sourcserifpro package, →II 35
- \sout (ulem), →I 187, 190
- sout value (changes), →I 248
- south value
 - (tcolorbox), →I 618, 622
 - (tikz), →I 633, 640
- southeast value (tcolorbox), →I 618
- southwest value (tcolorbox), →I 618
- sp syntax (*unit*), →I 370, →II 652
- \space, →II 640
 - use in \DeclareFontShape, →I 742
- space key (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 312
- space option (cite), →II 481
- space value
 - (caption), →I 543
 - (microtype), →I 134f.
 - (siunitx), →I 175
 - (subcaption), →I 555
- space compression, indexes, →II 346, 351, 363f.
- space parameters
 - defining new, →II 651
 - description, →II 651
 - horizontal space commands, →II 653, 654
 - setting, →II 652f.
 - vertical space commands, →II 654, 655, 656f.
- spaceabove key (thmtools), →I 288
- spacebelow key (thmtools), →I 288
- spacecolor key (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 312
- \spacefactor TeX counter, →I 127, →II 780
 - error using, →II 727, 744
- spaceflexible value (listings), →I 327f.
- \spaceless (tlc), →II 644
- spaces
 - after macro names, →I 152, 153
 - around/within citations, →II 480f.
 - doc package, →II 585
 - in bibliography databases, →II 381
 - in indexes, →II 363
- spaces option (url), →I 200
- \spaceskip length, →I 123, 746
 - (ragged2e), →I 123
- spacing
 - after punctuation, multilingual documents, →II 320
 - columns, →I 443f.
 - document headings, *see* document headings, spacing
 - equations, →II 143, 144, 145
 - float captions, →I 545, 555, 557
 - floats, →I 511
 - footnotes from text, →I 208
 - horizontal, mathematical typesetting, →II 204, 205f.
 - in tables, →I 437f.
 - interword, →I 121, 134, 135
 - leading, →I 139, 140, 141, 668, 691
 - letterspacing, →I 127, 191f., 193, 194–198
 - ad hoc, →I 192
 - always, →I 194
 - font change, →I 196

- spacing (*cont.*)
- forcing or preventing, →I 197
 - ligatures, →I 193, 196
 - math symbols, →II 210, 211, 214
 - mathematical typesetting, →II 195, 196*f.*, 200*ff.*, 203, 204
 - multipage tables, →I 461
 - table columns, →I 474, 475, 476
 - table rows, →I 441, 473, 474*f.*, 476
 - tables of contents, →I 71
 - typed text, →I 309
- spacing env. (setspace), →I 140
- spacing key (tcolorbox), →I 630
- spacing key/option (microtype), →I 127, 133
- \spadesuit math symbol ♠, →II 213
- span key
- (keyvaltable), →I 502, 504
 - (tcolorbox), →I 630, 631
- spanish option (babel), →II 301, 312, 314, 333*f.*
- spanning
- table columns, →I 453, 454*f.*, 471, 473, 476*ff.*, 484*f.*, 502, 503*f.*
 - table rows, →I 476–479
- SPARQL value (listings), →I 323
- spartan key (tcolorbox), →I 620
- \spbreve math accent \sim (amsmath), →II 177
- \spcheck math accent \surd (amsmath), →II 177
- \spddot math accent \cdots (amsmath), →II 177
- \spdot math accent \cdot (amsmath), →II 177
- \special, →I 12, 575, 608, →II 680
- special characters, →I 669*f.*, *see also* math symbols; text symbols; *entries for specific characters*
- cross-reference restrictions, →I 75
 - in bibliography database, →II 398*f.*
 - in URLs, e-mail addresses, etc., →I 198, 201
 - index sort order, →II 363
 - indexes, →II 348*f.*, 350, 359*f.*
 - multilingual documents, →II 310
 - typed text, →I 297, 298, 299*f.*, 301
- \Special(*element*)Index (doc), →II 596
- \SpecialEscapechar (doc), →II 595
- \SpecialIndex (doc), →II 596
- \SpecialMain(*element*)Index (doc), →II 596
- \specialrule (booktabs), →I 473
- \SpecialShortIndex (doc), →II 596
- \sphenon math accent $\hat{\phi}$ (amsmath), →II 177
- \sphericalangle math symbol \sphericalangle (amssymb), →II 218
- spiral key/option (fancyhdr), →I 147
- spiralcolor key/option (fancyhdr), →I 147
- \spline (bxeepic), →I 611
- split env. (amsmath), →II 132, 135, 136, 140, 147
- error using, →II 718*f.*, 721*f.*
- split key (enotez), →I 232
- \SplitArgument, →II 642, 643
- error using, →II 740
- \splitdfrac (mathtools), →II 165, 166
- \splitfootnoterule (footmisc), →I 214
- \splitfrac (mathtools), →II 165, 166
- \SplitList, →II 643
- \SplitNote
- (bigfoot), not available, →I 225
 - (manyfoot), →I 225, 226
- splitrule option (footmisc), →I 214
- splitting material across pages, *see* floats
- splitting, document headings, →I 33
- sponsoring, of developers, →II 793
- spread key (breqn), →II 148
- spreadlines env. (mathtools), →II 145
- \sptext (babel), →II 334
- \sptilde math accent \sim (amsmath), →II 177
- \spverb (spverbatim), →I 299, 301
- spverbatim env. (spverbatim), →I 301
- spverbatim package, →I 299, 301
- sq value (upmindex), →II 369
- \sqcap math symbol \sqcap , →II 215
- \sqcup math symbol \sqcup , →II 215
- \sqiint math symbol $\int\!\!\!\int$ (esint), →II 169
- \sqint math symbol \int (esint), →II 169
- (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 244, 249
- \sqintsl math symbol \int (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245
- \sqintup math symbol \int (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 249
- SQL value (listings), →I 323
- \sqrt, →II 138–141, 164, 166, 191, 199, 200*ff.*, 204, 237, 261–296
- sqrt syntax (tikz), →I 634
- \sqrtsign, →II 190, 191
- (bm), →II 237
- \sqsubset math symbol \sqsubset (amssymb), →II 218
- \sqsubseteq math symbol \sqsubseteq , →II 218
- \sqsupset math symbol \sqsupset (amssymb), →II 218
- \sqsupseteq math symbol \sqsupseteq , →II 218
- \Square (typed-checklist), →I 296
- \square (siunitx), →I 173
- \square math symbol \square (amssymb), →I 292, →II 212, 213, 214
- square key/option (jurabib), →II 526
 - square option (natbib), →II 495, 503
 - square value (tlc/acro), →I 161
- \squarecap (pict2e), →I 607
- \squared (siunitx), →I 173
- \squeeze page (addlines), →I 417, 418
- sr value (upmindex), →II 369
- sr-Latn value (upmindex), →II 369
- sr-Latn@collation=search value (upmindex), →II 369
- \SS text symbol \mathbb{S} , →I 770
- \ss text symbol \mathbb{s} , →I 669, 694, 761, 762, 772
- shape in EC fonts, →I 685
- ss(*num*) OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 715, 722, 723*f.*, →II 24
- sscript-features key (unicode-math), →II 260
- sscript-font key (unicode-math), →II 260
- \ssearrow math symbol \searrow (stmaryrd), →II 219
- ssedition BibTeX field (jurabib), →II 527, 533
- \slash math symbol \backslash (stmaryrd), →II 215
- ssub size function (NFSS), →I 743

- `\sswarrow` math symbol \swarrow (stmaryrd), →II 219
- `\st` (soul), →I 194, 195, 198
 - stable option (footmisc), →I 215
- `\stackrel`, →II 159, 179
- stacks
 - list stack (vertical/horizontal lists), displaying, →II 780
 - macro stack, displaying, →II 714
 - parameter stack size errors, →II 748
- stamp key/option (draftwatermark), →I 409, 410
- stand-alone indexes, →II 357ff.
- standard input/output files, indexes, →II 354, 364
- standard-baselineskips option
 - (ccfonts), →II 239
 - (cmbright), →II 240
- standard.bbx file (biblatex), →II 563
- standard.bib file, →II 413
- `\StandardFootnotes` (babel), →II 322
- StandardLayout key (babel), →II 321
- StandardModuleDepth counter (doc), →II 597
- `\star` math symbol \star , →II 177, 215
- star value (tikz), →I 641
- `\starburst` (Starburst), →I 145
- `\START` (l3build), →II 609, 610f.
- start key
 - (enumitem), →I 272, 274, 275
 - (tasks), →I 292
- `start_angle` key (tikz), →I 637
- `\startcontents` (titletoc), →I 67, 68ff.
- started syntax (typed-checklist), →I 293ff.
- `\StartFinalBibs` (chapterbib), →II 573, 574
- starting page number, setting for index, →II 354, 359, 364
- `\startlist` (titletoc), →I 69, 70
- `\startnewitemline` (tasks), →I 289, 290
- `\State` (algpseudocode), →I 322
- statistics key (unicodfonttable), →I 730
- statistics-format key (unicodfonttable), →I 729
- stealing sheep, *see* letterspacing; *see also* [181]
- Stempel Garamond fonts, description/examples, →I 67, 711, →II 43
- `\step` (biblatex), →II 392, 408, 417
- step key (tikz), →I 638
- `\stepcounter`, →II 142, 572, 631, 637, 646, 647, 692
- stepnumber key
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 310, 311
 - (listings), →I 326, 327
- stepnumberfromfirst key (fvextra), →I 311
- stepnumberoffsetvalues key (fvextra), →I 311
- stepping through documents, →II 781, *see also* troubleshooting
- steps env. (tlc/enumitem), →I 263, 264, 267, 268, 269
- stepsi counter (tlc/enumitem), →I 267, 268
- stepsii counter (tlc/enumitem), →I 267, 268f.
- `\steradian` (siunitx), →I 170
- stfloats package, →I 514
- sticktootext package, →II 58, 280
- sticky-per key (siunitx), →I 175
- STIX 2 fonts, description/examples, →II 57, 282
 - in math and text, →II 280, 282
- stix2 option
 - (newtxmath), →II 280
 - (newtxtext), →II 248
- stix2 package, →II 58
- stixfancy value (mathalpha), →II 233
- stixplain value (mathalpha), →II 232
- stixtwo value (mathalpha), →II 233
- stixtwoplain value (mathalpha), →II 232
- stmaryrd package, →II 149, 190, 208–224
- `\stockdesign` (layouts), →I 374
- `\stockdiagram` (layouts), →I 374
- `\stop`, →II 717, 744, 751
 - warning using, →II 751
 - (nfssfont.tex), →I 705
- `\stopcontents` (titletoc), →I 68, 69
- `\StopEventually` (doc), →II 587
- `\stoplist` (titletoc), →I 69
- story env. (tlc), →I 392
- story syntax (tlc), →I 392
- storyend syntax (tlc), →I 392
- `\stout` (ulem), →I 195
- straight syntax (titlesec), →I 50, 51
- street BB_ATeX field (tlc), →II 562f.
- strength:primary value (upmendex), →II 370
- strength:tertiary value (upmendex), →II 370
- `\stretch`, →I 187, 419, →II 653, 654f.
- stretch key/option (microtype), →I 129, 132, 133, 137
- stretch option (newtxtext), →II 244
- stretch value (caption), →I 141
- stretching & shrinking fonts, *see* expansion, fonts
- strict key/option (csquotes), →I 184
- strict option (fcolumn), →I 488, 489
- strict value (jurabib), →II 519, 521, 522, 526
- strict-dates key (typed-checklist), →I 294, 295
- strictdoublepage value (jurabib), →II 520, 521
- `\string`, →I 298, 299, →II 605, 767
 - (docstrip), →II 604
 - (underscore), →I 152
- strings option (underscore), →I 152
- strings, bibliographies
 - creating/using, →II 401f.
 - journal defaults, →II 403
 - searching all entries for, →II 416
- stringstyle key (listings), →I 324
- stripping comments from source file, *see* comments, stripping
- `\strng` (biblatex), →II 542
- structured tables, →I 494, 495f., 497, 498–504
- structuredlog package, →II 712, 980
- `\strut`, →I 234, 271, 478, 555, →II 201, 202f.
- `\strtraceoff` (supertabular), →I 458
- `\strtraceon` (supertabular), →I 458
- .sty file extension, →I 9, 10f., 22, 25, →II 612, 615
- Style key (fontspec), →I 710, 713, 722, 723, 724, 725, 726, →II 260
- style key
 - (changes), →I 246, 247
 - (enumitem), →I 278, 279

style key (*cont.*)

(hvfloat), →I 561, 563f.

(keyvaltable), →I 496, 497, 499

(listings), →I 331, 332

(tasks), →I 290, 291f.

(thmtools), →I 284, 285–288

style key/option

(biblatex), →II 408, 411, 433f., 472, 477f., 484, 486f., 500ff., 507, 534–537, 539ff., 543, 546–549, 551, 553f., 556–561, 565f., 569

(caption), →I 546, 548, 549

(csquotes), →I 183

style files, *see also* configuration files

bibliographies (BIBTEX)

abbreviated style, →II 421

alpha style, →II 422, 423

author-date citation system, →II 499f.

citation scheme, selecting, →II 428f.

creating, →II 426–432

description, →II 418

extensions supported, determining, →II 430f.

formatting, specifying, →II 431f.

initializing the system, →II 427f.

list of, →II 419ff., 423f.

plain style, →II 419ff.

short-title citation system, →II 532ff.

unsorted style, →II 422

bibliographies (biblatex)

extensions, →II 461–464

generic, →II 435–439

journal styles, →II 455–461

style guides, →II 439–445

unclassified, →II 464–468

university styles, →II 445–455

indexes

MakeIndex|*upmendex*, →II 355–362, 364

specifying, →II 355, 364

upmendex specific, →II 366–370

StylisticSet key

(fontspec), →I 723, 724, →II 267

(unicode-math), →II 267

sub syntax (subcaption), →I 555, 557

sub size function (NFSS), →I 743

sub(*type*) counter (subcaption), →I 556, 559sub(*type*) env. (subcaption), →I 559sub(*type*) syntax (subcaption), →I 555

subappendix syntax (cleveref), →I 89

subarray env. (amsmath), →II 167, 168

subbibliography value (biblatex), →II 550

subcapFormat key (hvfloat), →I 561, 566

\subcaption (subcaption), →I 552, 553, 555, 557, 559

subcaption package, →I 551–559, 561, 566f.

\subcaptionbox (subcaption),

→I 551, 552, 554, 555, 556f., 559, 601

\subcaptionbox* (subcaption), →I 551, 554

subcaptions, →I 551, 552ff., 555, 556ff., 559, 565, 566

list of, →I 558

\subchapter (tlc/titlesec), →I 50

subcode counter (tlc/subcaption), →I 559

subdepth package, →II 206f.

subequations env. (amsmath), →II 152, 153

subfig package, →I 551

subfigure counter (subcaption), →I 556

subfigure env. (subcaption), →I 553, 554, 555

subfigures, →I 552ff., 557f., 573

list of, →I 558

subFloat key (hvfloat), →I 561, 565, 566

\subfloat (subfig), →I 551

subfloats, →I 551, 552–559, 565, 566, 573

alignment, →I 551, 552ff., 555

justification, →I 551, 552, 554

subformulas, mathematical typesetting, →II 197

\subitem, →II 371

subnum option (cases), →II 157

subnumbering float captions, →I 547, 548, 556

subnumcases env. (cases), →II 157

\subparagraph, →I 32f., 34f.

subparagraph counter, →I 34, →II 646

\subparagraph*, →I 33

subparens value (caption), →I 546

\subref (subcaption), →I 556, 557, 559

subreformat key/option (subcaption), →I 557

subs OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 715, 719

subscript value

(changes), →I 248

(siunitx), →I 175

subscriptcorrection option (newtxmath|newpxmath),

→II 246, 250, 265, 280

subscripts

below Ord, Bin or Rel symbols, →II 179

limiting positions, →II 166f.

\subsection, →I 32f., 34, 35f., 52, 55, 57, 397

(nameref), textual reference to, →I 93

(titlesec), →I 41

subsection counter, →I 34ff., →II 646, 649

subsection value (enotez), →I 231

\subsection*, →I 33

\subsectionauthor (tocdata), →I 57, 58

subsectionbib option (bibunits), →II 577

\subsectionmark, →I 403, 404

subsections, referencing, →I 35, 36

subseries biblatex style (biblatex-subseries), →II 464

\Subset math symbol \Subset

(amsmath), →II 261–296

(amssymb), →II 218

\subset math symbol \subset , →II 218\subseteq math symbol \subseteq , →II 174, 218\subseteqeq math symbol \subseteqeq (amssymb), →II 218\subseteqq math symbol \subseteqq (amssymb), →II 218\subsetneq math symbol \subsetneq (amssymb), →II 218\subsetneqq math symbol \subsetneqq (amssymb), →II 218\subsetplus math symbol \subsetplus (stmaryrd), →II 218\subsetpluseq math symbol \subsetpluseq (stmaryrd), →II 218

subsimple value (caption), →I 546

\substack, →II 167, 168

\subsubitem, →II 371

`\subsubsection`, –I 32f.
 (titlesec), –I 41
 subsubsection counter, –I 34, –II 646, 649
`\subsubsection*`, –I 33
`\subsubsection (tlc)`, –I 32
`\subsupersep rigid length (realscripts)`, –I 719
 subtable counter (subcaption), –I 556, 559
 subtable env. (subcaption), –I 553
 subtable syntax (subcaption), –I 556, 558
 subtables, –I 554, 556
 list of, –I 558
 subtle option (savetrees), –I 384
 subtype key (biblatex), –II 551
 Subversion (SVN), –II 615
`\succ math symbol \succ` , –II 217
`\succapprox math symbol \succsim (amssymb)`, –II 217
`\succcurlyeq math symbol \succcurlyeq (amssymb)`, –II 217
`\succeq math symbol \succeq` , –II 216, 217
`\succapprox math symbol \succsim (amssymb)`, –II 217
`\succneqq math symbol \succneqq (amssymb)`, –II 217
`\succsim math symbol \succsim (amssymb)`, –II 217
`\succsim math symbol \succsim (amssymb)`, –II 217
`\succsim math symbol \succsim (amssymb)`, –II 217
 suffix_2p keyword (*MakeIndex|upmendex*), –II 358
 suffix_3p keyword (*MakeIndex|upmendex*), –II 358
 suffix_mp keyword (*MakeIndex|upmendex*), –II 358
`\sufigures (various font packages)`, –II 9
`\sum math symbol Σ` , –II 141, 145, 166, 175, 179, 180, 197ff.,
 204, 211, 222, 235, 241, 245, 250, 262–296
 colored, –II 208
 sub/superscript placement on, –II 166f.
`\sumint math symbol \int (newtxmath|newpxmath)`,
 –II 244, 249
`\sumintsl math symbol \int (newtxmath|newpxmath)`,
 –II 245, 249
`\sumintup math symbol \int (newtxmath|newpxmath)`, –II 245
 sumlimits option (amsmath), –II 167
`\sumline (fcolumn)`, –I 488, 489f.
 summary value (changes), –I 246, 247
`\sup math operator $\sup x$` , –II 193
 super key/option (jurabib), –II 518, 519–522, 525f.
 super option
 (cite), –II 481, 483, 581
 problems using, –II 482
 (natbib), –II 504, 505
`\supercite (biblatex)`, –II 486, 487, 544
 Superior value (fontspec), –I 718, 719
 superscript option (cite), –II 481, 482, 483
 superscript value
 (biblatex), –II 486, 487
 (changes), –I 248
 superscript footnote marks, –I 209f.
 superscriptedition key/option (jurabib),
 –II 526, 527, 533
 superscripts
 above Ord, Bin or Rel symbols, –II 179
 limiting positions, –II 166f.
 number-only citation system, –II 481f., 483, 486f.
 short-title citation system, –II 526, 527, 533
 supertabular env. (supertabular),
 –I 456, 457, 458–461, 464
 supertabular package, –I 456–459, 461, 568
 combined with caption, –I 457, 462
 combined with fcolumn, –I 489
 supertabular* env. (supertabular), –I 456, 458, 459, 461
`\supminus math operator $\supminus x$ (tlc/amsmath)`,
 –II 193, 194
 suppbook BibTeX entry type (biblatex), –II 387
 suppcollection BibTeX entry type (biblatex), –II 387
 suppperiodical BibTeX entry type (biblatex), –II 387
 suppress value (biblatex), –II 540
`\suppressfloats`, –I 53, 99, 513, 516, 571
 suppressing numbers, document headings, –I 33, 34
 sups OpenType feature (fontspec), –I 715, 719
`\Supset math symbol \supset (amssymb)`, –II 218
`\supset math symbol \supset` , –II 218
`\supseteq math symbol \supseteq` , –II 218
`\supseteqeq math symbol \supseteqeq (amssymb)`, –II 218
`\supsetneq math symbol \supsetneq (amssymb)`, –II 218
`\supsetneqq math symbol \supsetneqq (amssymb)`, –II 218
`\supsetplus math symbol \supsetplus (stmaryrd)`, –II 218
`\supsetpluseq math symbol \supsetpluseq (stmaryrd)`, –II 218
`\surd math symbol \surd` , –II 213
 sv value (upmendex), –II 369
 svg2tikz program, –I 645
 SVN (Subversion), –II 615
 svn-multi package, –II 617ff.
`\svnauthor (svn-multi)`, –II 618
`\svncgrev (svn-multi)`, –II 618
`\svndate (svn-multi)`, –II 618, 619
`\svnday (svn-multi)`, –II 619
`\svnfileauthor (svn-multi)`, –II 619
`\svnfilerev (svn-multi)`, –II 618
`\svnfiletimezone (svn-multi)`, –II 619
`\svnFullAuthor (svn-multi)`, –II 619
`\svngroup (svn-multi)`, –II 618
`\svnid (svn-multi)`, –II 618
`\svnk (svn-multi)`, –II 617, 618
`\svnkwsave (svn-multi)`, –II 617, 618
`\svnRegisterAuthor (svn-multi)`, –II 619
`\svnrev (svn-multi)`, –II 618
`\svnsetmainfile (svn-multi)`, –II 618
`\svntime (svn-multi)`, –II 618
`\svntoday (svn-multi)`, –II 618
 SW value (diagbox), –I 480, 481
 sw syntax (*font shape*), –I 671, 712, 734, –II 43
`\swabfamily (yfonts)`, –II 104, 105
`\swapnumbers (amsthm)`, –I 284
`\swarrow math symbol \swarrow` , –II 219
 Swash value (fontspec), –I 710, 713, 725
 swash letter fonts, –I 654, 661, 712f., 725
 Unicode, –I 710
 SwashFeatures key (fontspec), –I 710, 713, 727
 SwashFont key (fontspec), –I 710, 713
`\swashQ (garamondx)`, –II 44
 swashQ option (garamondx), –II 44
`\swdefault`, –I 671

- swedish option (babel), →II 301, 316, 560
 - Swift value (listings), →I 323
 - switch option
 - (lineno), →I 339
 - (vertbars), →I 251
 - switch value (jurabib), →II 527, 533
 - switch* option
 - (lineno), →I 339
 - (vertbars), →I 251
 - \switchcolumn (paracol),
 - I 340, 341, 342, 343–347, 349f., 466
 - \switchcolumn* (paracol), →I 340, 341, 343, 347, 349
 - swsh OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 725
 - \swshape, →I 661, 667, 671
 - forbidden in math, →I 677
 - (fontspec), →I 713, 726
 - sx syntax (*font series*), →I 732
 - \symbb (unicode-math), →II 254, 256, 257, 259f.
 - \symbbit (unicode-math), →II 256f.
 - \symbf (unicode-math), →II 255, 256, 257, 258, 261, 265, 267, 270, 273f., 276f., 279, 281f., 285f., 289, 291
 - \symbfcal (unicode-math), →II 256, 257
 - \symbfrac (unicode-math), →II 256, 257
 - \symbfit (unicode-math), →II 256, 257, 258
 - \symbfscr (unicode-math), →II 256, 257
 - \symbfsf (unicode-math), →II 256, 258
 - \symbfsfit (unicode-math), →II 256, 257, 258
 - \symbfsfup (unicode-math), →II 256, 257, 258
 - \symbfup (unicode-math), →II 256, 257, 258
 - \symbol, →I 669, 670, →II 350
 - warning using, →II 755, 780
 - with X_YTeX/LuaTeX, →I 670
 - symbol keyword (upmendex), →II 367
 - symbol option
 - (footmisc), →I 210, 211, 212, →II 517
 - (parnotes), →I 227
 - symbol value (siunitx), →I 169ff., 175, 176f.
 - symbol classes, math, →II 209, 210f., 214
 - symbol fonts, →II 100, 113–126
 - symbol* option (footmisc), →I 211, 219
 - symbol_flag keyword (upmendex), →II 367, 370
 - symbols, *see* math symbols; text symbols; special characters
 - \symcal (unicode-math), →II 254, 256f.
 - \symfrac (unicode-math), →II 254, 256, 257, 260
 - symhead_negative keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex),
 - II 359, 367
 - symhead_positive keyword (*MakeIndex*|upmendex),
 - II 359, 367
 - \symit (unicode-math), →II 256, 257, 258
 - \symliteral (unicode-math), →II 259
 - symmetrical page layout, →I 380
 - \symnormal (unicode-math), →II 255, 257, 259
 - \symrm (unicode-math), →II 255, 256, 257
 - \symscr (unicode-math), →II 254, 256, 257, 260
 - \symssf (unicode-math), →II 255, 256, 257, 258
 - \symffit (unicode-math), →II 256f., 258
 - \symsfup (unicode-math), →II 256f., 258
 - \symtt (unicode-math), →II 255, 256, 257
 - \symup (unicode-math), →II 256f., 258
 - \syncallcounters (paracol), →I 348
 - \synccounter (paracol), →I 348, 349
 - syntax diagrams, creating, →II 598
 - syntax, error messages, →II 712, 714
 - Syriac, →II 332
 - sys option (getnonfreefonts), →II 3
 - sz syntax (yfonts), →II 104, 105
- ## T
- T syntax (adjustbox), →I 598, 599
 - \t text accent □, →I 696, 772
 - t key (keyfloat), →I 569, 570
 - t syntax, →I 507, 509, 516
 - (boxes), →II 663, 664, 665, 666
 - (cmd/env decl), →II 634, 639f., 644
 - (adjustbox), →I 598, 599
 - (delarray), →II 158
 - (float), →I 529, 532
 - (hhline), →I 470, 471
 - (multirow), →I 478
 - t value
 - (draftwatermark), →I 411
 - (keyvaltable), →I 497, 498, 500, 502
 - T1 font encoding, →I 200, 297, 301, 304, 305, 658, 669, 685f., 693, 694f., 698f., 701, 736, 737, 739, 742, 747, 756f., 761f., 763, 764, →II 5, 7, 12, 23, 225f., 238f., 240, 305, 311, 314, 322f., 339, 378, 727
 - comparison with OT1, →I 672
 - fonts encoded in, →I 684f., 687, →II 11–18, 20, 22, 25f., 28f., 31ff., 35–49, 51–54, 56–59, 61–66, 69–78, 80–83, 85–92, 95, 98–101, 103
 - hyphenation in, →I 741, 744, →II 727
 - in Unicode engines, →I 756
 - list of LICR objects, →I 767–776
 - problem with EC fonts, →I 686
 - shape of ™, →I 685
 - (lmodern), →I 688
 - shape of ™, →I 688
 - (nfssfont.tex), →I 705
 - (notomath), →II 252
 - T1 option
 - (fontenc), →I 693, 698f., 737, →II 88, 240, 727
 - (lucidabr), →II 278
 - \T1/cmr/m/n/10, →II 770
 - t1enc.def file, →I 761, 762, 764
 - T2A font encoding, →I 693, 736, 737, 739,
 - II 309, 324, 325, 327
 - fonts encoded in, →I 685, →II 13, 20, 26, 28f., 32, 36, 41, 43, 45, 51, 53, 59, 63, 78, 80f., 103
 - T2A option (fontenc), →I 693, →II 326
 - T2B font encoding, →I 737, →II 324
 - fonts encoded in, →I 685, →II 13, 20, 26, 28f., 32, 36, 41, 43, 45, 51, 59, 63, 78, 80f., 103
 - T2C font encoding, →I 737, →II 324
 - fonts encoded in, →I 685, →II 13, 20, 26, 28f., 32, 36, 41, 43, 45, 51, 59, 63, 78, 80f., 103

- T3 font encoding, [-I 737](#), [-II 125](#), 126
 - fonts encoded in, [-II 59](#)
- T5 font encoding, [-I 737](#)
 - fonts encoded in, [-I 687](#), [-II 45ff.](#), 49, 54, 56, 74, 77, 91, 101, 103
- `\tab (tabto)`, [-I 435](#)
 - tab key
 - (fvextra), [-I 312](#)
 - (listings), [-I 326](#)
 - tabbing env., [-I 265](#), [432](#), [433f.](#)
 - error using, [-II 717](#), 736, 738, 741
- `\tabbingsep` rigid length, [-I 433](#)
- `tabcolor` key (fvextra), [-I 312](#)
- `\tabcolsep` rigid length, [-I 436](#), [443f.](#), 447, 453, 480
 - (widetable), [-I 454](#)
- `tabhead` option (endfloat), [-I 526](#)
- `\table (nfssfont.tex)`, [-I 705](#)
- table counter, [-I 464](#), [-II 646](#)
 - (endfloat), [-I 527](#)
 - (longtable), [-I 459](#), 463
- table env., [-I 462](#), 498, [528](#), 538, 540
 - cross-reference to, [-I 76](#)
 - error using, [-II 723](#), 727, 734
 - floats to end of document, [-I 525](#)
 - labels in, [-I 76](#)
 - style parameters, [-I 510](#), 512, 516
 - warning using, [-II 756](#)
 - (endfloat), [-I 527](#)
 - (float), [-I 531](#), 532
 - (multicol), not supported, [-I 353](#)
 - (rotfloat), [-I 535](#)
- table value
 - (hvfloat), [-I 560](#)
 - (typed-checklist), [-I 293](#), 296
- table lists
 - in tables of contents, [-I 56](#)
 - options, [-I 526](#)
 - placing at end of document, [-I 525](#)–528
- `table* env.`, [-I 347](#)
 - (multicol), [-I 353](#)
- `table-alignment` key (siunitx), [-I 486](#)
- `table-alignment-mode` key (siunitx), [-I 485](#), [486](#)
- `table-auto-round` key (siunitx), [-I 487](#)
- `table-column-width` key (siunitx), [-I 486](#)
- `table-fixed-width` key (siunitx), [-I 486](#)
- `table-format` key (siunitx), [-I 485](#), [486f.](#)
- `table-number-alignment` key (siunitx), [-I 485](#), 486
- `table-text-alignment` key (siunitx), [-I 486](#)
- `\tablecaption` (supertabular), [-I 457](#), 459
- `\tablefirstthead` (supertabular), [-I 457](#), 459
- `\tablehead` (supertabular), [-I 457](#), 459
- `\tablelasttail` (supertabular), [-I 457](#), 459
- `\tablename` (babel), [-II 305](#), 333
 - tablenotes env. (threeparttable), [-I 492](#), [493](#)
- `\tablenum` (siunitx), [-I 484](#), 485
- `\tableofcontents`, [-I 28](#), 33, [55](#), 63, 74, 97, [136f.](#), 139, 319, 396
- `tablepkg` option (typed-checklist), [-I 296](#)
- `\tableplace` (endfloat), [-I 527](#), 528
- `tableposition` key/option (caption), [-I 545](#)
- tables
 - accents commands in tabbing, [-I 433f.](#)
 - across page boundaries, [-I 456](#), 457, 458, [459f.](#), 461ff., [464ff.](#), 497f.
 - alignment, horizontal, [-I 461](#)
 - alignment, vertical, [-I 442](#), [477ff.](#)
 - balancing white space, [-I 453ff.](#)
 - cells, joining, [-I 437](#)
 - coloring, [-I 466f.](#)
 - column specifiers, defining, [-I 445](#), 446, [448ff.](#), 468, [482ff.](#), 488, 490
- columns
 - fixed width, [-I 438](#), [440](#)–443, 446
 - global changes, [-I 442](#), 445, 446
 - hiding, [-I 495f.](#), [498ff.](#)
 - laying out, [-I 432](#), [433ff.](#), 436f.
 - modifying style, [-I 445](#), 446
 - narrow, [-I 442f.](#)
 - one-off, [-I 445](#), 446
 - spacing, [-I 443f.](#), 474, 475, 476
 - spanning cells, [-I 453](#), [454f.](#), 471, 473, [476ff.](#), [484f.](#), 502, 503f.
 - tab stops, [-I 433ff.](#)
 - width, calculating automatically, [-I 448](#)–452, [453ff.](#)
 - width, calculating explicitly, [-I 446](#), 447, 448
- complex headers, [-I 504](#)
- data
 - collecting, [-I 501](#)
 - in external files, [-I 499](#), [500f.](#)
- decimal data, aligning, [-I 476](#), [481](#), 482, 483, [484](#), [485ff.](#), [488ff.](#), 491
- financial data, [-I 487](#), [488ff.](#), 491
- fixed width columns, [-I 438](#), [440](#)–443, 446
- floats, [-I 528](#)–573
- fonts, specifying, [-I 441](#), 442
- footnotes in, [-I 463](#), [491](#), [492f.](#)
- hyphenation, [-I 442](#)
- inside tables, [-I 444](#)
- line breaks, [-I 443](#)
- multipage tables
 - and floats, [-I 462](#), [464f.](#)
 - captions, [-I 457](#), 462
 - creating with keyvaltable, [-I 497f.](#)
 - creating with longtable, [-I 459](#), 460, 461, 462, [463f.](#), 465
 - creating with paracol, [-I 466](#)
 - creating with supertabular, [-I 456](#), 457, 458, 459
 - creating with xltabular, [-I 464](#)
 - footnotes in, [-I 463](#)
 - headers and footers, [-I 457](#), 461
 - horizontal alignment, [-I 461](#)
 - page breaks, [-I 458](#)
 - problems with, [-I 464f.](#)
 - reducing run numbers, [-I 463](#)
 - row commands, [-I 461](#)
 - spacing around, [-I 461](#)

tables (*cont.*)

- width, →I 458f., 460, 461ff., 464f.
- named styles, defining, →I 499
- paragraph options, →I 439, 440ff.
- preamble specifiers, →I 436, 438–444, 451
- rows
 - formatting, →I 496
 - hiding, →I 496
 - laying out, →I 436f.
 - numbering, →I 501f.
 - spacing, →I 441, 473, 474f., 476
 - spanning, →I 476–479
- rules (graphic lines)
 - colored, →I 467, 468
 - combining horizontal and vertical, →I 470, 471
 - dashed, →I 469, 470
 - diagonal, →I 479, 480f.
 - double, →I 471
 - formal, →I 471, 472, 473
 - variable width, →I 468
 - vertical, →I 470f.
- scientific data, aligning, →I 484–487
- spacing, →I 437f.
- standard environments, →I 432–437
- structure, defining, →I 494, 495f., 497, 498–504
- style parameters, →I 436f.
- `\verb` support in tables, →I 452
- visual appearance, →I 436f.
- width
 - balancing white space, →I 453ff.
 - calculating automatically, →I 448–452, 453ff.
 - calculating explicitly, →I 446, 447, 448
 - multipage, →I 458f., 460, 461ff., 464f.
 - stretching, →I 442
- tables value (tcolorbox), →I 628
- tables of contents, *see also* titeloc package
 - adding bibliography or index to, →I 56, →II 372
 - adding data to, →I 56, 57ff.
 - adding lists of figures or tables to, →I 56
 - description, →I 54
 - design examples, →I 63, 64–67
 - entering information into, →I 55, 70f.
 - formatting, →I 62–67
 - generating, →I 55
 - hyperlinks in, →I 97f.
 - indentation, →I 60, 73
 - label width, →I 60
 - leaders, →I 62
 - multiple, →I 74
 - nesting levels, →I 73
 - number width, →I 73f.
 - numberless, →I 62
 - optional code execution, →I 60, 62
 - paragraph format, →I 65, 66f.
 - partial, →I 67, 68, 69f.
 - protrusion in, →I 136
 - spacing, →I 71
 - text alignment, →I 62, 63ff.

tables of contents (*cont.*)

- typesetting, →I 71, 72, 73f.
- unusual number formats, →I 74
- tablesfirst option (endfloat), →I 526
- tablesonly option (endfloat), →I 526
- `\tabletail` (supertabular), →I 457, 459
- tablist option (endfloat), →I 526
- tabls package
 - incompatible with array, →I 467
- `\TabPositions` (tabto), →I 435
- `\TabPrevPos` (tabto), →I 435
- tabs, displaying, →I 312
- tabsize key
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 312
 - (listings), →I 326
- `\tabto` (tabto), →I 434, 435
- tabto package, →I 434f.
- `\tabto*` (tabto), →I 434, 435
- tabu value (keyvaltable), →I 497
- tabu *obsolete* package, →I 497
- tabular env., →I 29, 121–124, 432, 433, 436, 437f., 439–446, 466–494, 590, →II 158, 636, 663, 763, 784
 - error using, →II 716, 722, 726, 730–733
 - footnotes in, →I 491
 - problem with `\input`, →I 499
 - style parameters, →I 436
 - (array), →I 438, 439, 440–444, 445, 446, 467f., 477, 481, 484, 488ff.
 - with color, →I 466
- (arydshln), →I 469
- (booktabs), →I 471, 473
- (dcolumn), →I 483f.
- (fcolumn), →I 489
- (hhline), →I 471
- (microtype), →I 136
- (multirow), →I 477ff.
- (threeparttable), →I 493
- tabular option (*various font packages*), →II 7
- tabular value
 - (jurabib), →II 530
 - (keyvaltable), →I 497, 498
- tabular* env., →I 436, 448, 452, 453f., 476, 492
 - (array), →I 442, 447, 453f.
- tabularc env. (tlc/array), →I 447
- `\tabularfigures` (*various font packages*), →II 8
- `\tabularnewline`, →I 123, 443, 446f., 448, 461
- `\tabularnums` (tlc/fontspec), →I 714
- tabularx env., →I 463
 - (ltablex), redefined by, →I 463
 - (tabularx), →I 98, 448f., 450, 452, 453, 464, 477, 491f.
 - (xltabular), →I 463
- tabularx value
 - (keyvaltable), →I 497, 498
 - (typed-checklist), →I 296
- tabularx package, →I 448ff., 454, 463, 475, 481, 497, →II 978
- `\tabularxcolum` (tabularx), →I 449
- tabulary env. (tabulary), →I 450, 451, 452, 453, 477
- tabulary package, →I 448, 450ff., 475

- `\tag` (amsmath), →II 134, 135, 139, **149**, **150**, 157, 175
 - error using, →II 733, 738
- `tag` key (acro), →I **162**, 163
- `\tag*` (amsmath), →II 150
- `\tagged` (tagging), →I **30**, 31
- `taggedblock` env. (tagging), →I 31
- tagging package, →I 30ff.
- tags (equation), →II 131f.
 - definition, →II 131
 - numbering equations, →II 149, 150
 - placement, →II 150, 151f.
- `\tala` (babel), →II 319
- `\talloblong` math symbol \ll (stmaryrd), →II 215
- `\tan` math operator $\tan x$, →II **193**, 321
- `\tan` syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- `tand` syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- `tangent`_{cs}: syntax (tikz), →I 633
- `\tanh` math operator $\tanh x$, →II **193**, 321
- `.tar.gz` file extension, →II 612
 - (bundledoc), →I 112
- Task syntax (typed-checklist), →I **293**, 294
- `\Task` (typed-checklist), →I **293**, 294
- `\task` (tasks), →I **289**, 290ff.
 - task counter (tasks), →I 290, 291
- `\task!` (tasks), →I **289**, 290
- `\task*` (tasks), →I **289**, 290
- `\tasklabel` (tasks), →I 291, 292
 - TaskList syntax (typed-checklist), →I 295
- tasks env. (tasks), →I **289**, 290ff.
- tasks package, →I **289–292**, →II 812
- tasks lists, →I 289–292
- `\tau` math symbol τ , →II 212
- `\tbinom` (amsmath), →II 164
- `tbtags` option (amsmath), →II 136
- `tc` key (keyfloat), →I 569
- `tcboxedraster` env. (tcolorbox), →I 629
- `\tcbfig` (tlc/tcolorbox), →I 628f.
- `\tcbifoddpag` (tcolorbox), →I **625**, 626
- `\tcbifoddpagoroneside` (tcolorbox), →I 626
- `\tcbline` (tcolorbox), →I 615
- `\tcblistof` (tcolorbox), →I **628**, 629
- `\tcblower` (tcolorbox), →I **614**, 615, 616, 617, 619ff.
- `\tcbox` (tcolorbox), →I **615**, 626, 628, 631
 - `tcbox`_{raise} key (tcolorbox), →I 627
 - `tcbox`_{raise}_{base} key (tcolorbox), →I 627
- `tcboxedraster` env. (tcolorbox), →I 629
- `tcboxposter` env. (tcolorbox), →I 630
- `tcbraster` env. (tcolorbox), →I 629
- `tcbrastercolumn` counter (tcolorbox), →I 630
- `tcbrasternum` counter (tcolorbox), →I 629, **630**
- `tcbrasterrow` counter (tcolorbox), →I 630
- `\tcbset` (tcolorbox), →I **615**, 617, 621, 625, 628f., 630
- `\tcbuselibrary` (tcolorbox), →I **619**, 621, 629
 - `tc1` value (listings), →I 323
- `\tclower` (tcolorbox), →I 616
- `tcolorbox` env. (tcolorbox),
 - I **614**, 615, 616, 617–625, 626, 628, 629, 631
- `tcolorbox` package, →I **614–631**, 632, →II 814, 979
- `\tdartistright` (tocdata), →I 59
- `teacher-gap-format` key/option (dashundergaps), →I 191
- `teachermode` key/option (dashundergaps), →I 191
- `\TeacherModeOn` (dashundergaps), →I 191
- `techreport` B^WTeX entry type, →II 386
- tempora package, →II **56**, 57
- Tempora fonts, description/examples, →II **56**, 108
- tensors, →II 178f.
- `\tera` (siunitx), →I 172
 - Termes fonts, description/examples, →I 714, →II **55**
 - in math and text, →II 280f.
 - terminal trace display, →II 779
- `\tertio` (babel), →II 319
- `\tesla` (siunitx), →I 170
- `\TEST` (l3build), →II **609**, 610
- `testpage.tex` file, →I 368
- TeX
 - font metric files, →I 10
 - history of, →I 1f., 8f., 652
 - original font encoding, →I 684
- TeX value
 - (fontspec), →I **720**, 728
 - (listings), →I **323**, **332**
 - (unicode-math), →II 258
- `.tex` file extension, →I 9, **10f.**, →II 384, 619, 677
- TeX capacity exceeded errors, →II 744–749
- TeX extensions
 - Aleph, →II 687
 - EncTeX, →II 299
 - eTeX, →I 388, 391, →II 751
 - history of, →I 8f., 652
 - LuaTeX, →I 652, *see also* Unicode engine specialities
 - mlTeX, →II 299
 - Omega, →I 652, →II 299, 687
 - pTeX, →II 687
 - testing for different engines, →II 685, 686, 687
 - upTeX,
 - II 299, 331, 687, *see also* Unicode engine specialities
 - X_YTeX, →I 652, *see also* Unicode engine specialities
- TeX FAQ, →II 787f.
- TeX files, obtaining
 - distributions, →II 790f.
 - from the Internet, →II 789f.
- TeX Gyre fonts, →II 46, 49, 54, 56, 69, 77, 91, 103
 - description, →I 688ff.
- tex4ht package, →II 984
- `texbook1.bib` file, →II 413
- `texbook2.bib` file, →II 413
- `texbook3.bib` file, →II 413
- texdoc program, →I 145, →II 616, 785, **786**, 787
- `texgraph.bib` file, →II 413
- `texjourn.bib` file, →II 413
- TeX Live, DVD images, →II 791
- `texlive-unix-arlatex.cfg` file (bundledoc), →I 113
- texlua program, →II 3
- `texmf.cnf` file, →II 379, 726, **745**
- TeXOff value (fontspec), →I 721

- `\texorpdfstring`
 - (`hyperref`|`bookmark`), →I 105
 - (`hyperref`), →II 762
- text, *see also* fonts
 - alignment, tables of contents, →I 62, 63ff.
 - case, changing, →I 178, 179
 - displayed, configuring, →I 266
 - dummy text (samples), →I 361, 362ff., 365
 - emphasizing, *see* italic; underlining
 - mathematical typesetting, →II 192, 193, 194
 - style, document headings, →I 40, 41f., 52f.
 - typed, *see* typed text
- `\text`
 - (`amsmath`), →I 173, 682, →II 134, 138–141, 149, 152, 156, 157, 163f., 183, 185f., 188f., 192, 214, 262
 - (`amstext`), →II 129
 - (`nfssfont.tex`), →I 705
- text key
 - (`draftwatermark`), →I 410, 411
 - (`tikz`), →I 640
- text value
 - (`footmisc`), →I 212
 - (`siunitx`), →I 177
- text area, →I 378
 - running long or short, →I 415f.
- text fragments, typesetting, →II 129
- text input levels errors, →II 749
- text length, *see* space parameters
- text markers, floats, →I 526f., 528
- text symbols, *see also* math symbols; special characters
 - Anonymous Pro, →II 115
 - encoding
 - Pi fonts, →II 113, 114–118, 119, 120, 121f., 123f.
 - TS1, →I 694, 695–703, 704
 - Font Awesome, →II 120, 121–125
 - Fourier Ornaments, →II 119
 - IPA, →II 125, 126
 - MarVoSym, →II 117f.
 - Ornaments ADF, →II 118
 - quotation marks, →I 179f., 181–188
 - underscore, →I 151f.
 - Waldi's font, →II 116
 - Web-O-Mints, →II 120
 - Zapf Dingbats, →II 113, 114, 115
- text-family-to-math key (`siunitx`), →I 177
- text-format key (`snotes`), →I 236, 237
- text-format+ key (`snotes`), →I 236
- text-mark-format key (`snotes`), →I 237
- text-series-to-math key (`siunitx`), →I 177, 485
- `\textacutedbl` text symbol ¨, →I 697, 772
- `\textascendercompwordmark`, →I 699
- `\textascendercompwordmark` text symbol , →I 772
- `\textasciiaacute` text symbol ´, →I 697, 772
- `\textasciibreve` text symbol ¨, →I 697, 772
- `\textasciicaron` text symbol ˇ, →I 697, 772
- `\textasciicircum` text symbol ^, →I 772
- `\textasciidieresis` text symbol ¨, →I 697, 772
- `\textasciigrave` text symbol ` , →I 302, 697, 772
- `\textasciimacron` text symbol ¯, →I 697, 772
- `\textasciitilde` text symbol ~, →I 772
- `\textasteriskcentered` text symbol *, →I 255, 695, 696, 697, 772
- `\textbackslash` text symbol \, →I 164, 666, 772, →II 350
- `\textbaht` text symbol ฿, →I 696, 772
- `\textbar` text symbol |, →I 772
- `\textbardbl` text symbol ||, →I 695, 696, 697, 772
- `\textbf`, →I 660f., 667, 669, 670f., 673
 - faked, →II 4, 66
 - no effect,
 - II 12, 25, 30, 33, 66, 91, 99, 102ff., 107–111, 113
 - used in math, →I 677, 682
 - (`fcolumn`), not allowed in F-column, →I 488
 - (`fontspec`), →I 707, 709f., 718
 - (`ulem`), replaced by `\uline`, →I 190
 - (`ulem`), replaced by `\uwave`, →I 190
- `\textbigcircle` text symbol ○, →I 697, 772
- `\textblank` text symbol b, →I 697, 772
- `\textbodon` (`gfsbodon`), →II 61
- `\textborn` text symbol *, →I 697, 700, 772, →II 239
- `\textbraceleft` text symbol {, →I 772
- `\textbraceright` text symbol }, →I 772
- `\textbrokenbar` text symbol ¦, →I 696, 772
- `\textbullet` text symbol •, →I 66, 255, 695, 696, 697f., 772
- `\textcapitalcompwordmark`, →I 699
- `\textcapitalcompwordmark` text symbol , →I 772
- textcase package, →I 178f.
- `\textcelsius` text symbol °C, →I 696, 772
- `\textcent` text symbol ¢, →I 696, 766, 772
- `\textcentoldstyle` text symbol ¢, →I 696, 701, 772
- `\textcinzel` (`cinzel`), →II 8f., 98
- `\textcinzelblack` (`cinzel`), →II 98
- `\textcircled`, →I 701
- `\textcircled` text accent ©, →I 696, 765, 772
- `\textcircledP` text symbol ©, →I 696, 772
- `\Textcite` (`biblatex`), →II 501, 544, 545f.
- `\textcite` (`biblatex`),
 - II 435–468, 484, 485, 487, 500, 501f., 506, 534f., 539ff., 543, 544, 545ff., 551f., 558, 561, 565f., 569
 - textcite syntax (`biblatex`), →II 566
- `\textcites` (`biblatex`), →II 502
- `\textcolonmonetary` text symbol €, →I 696, 772
- `\textcolor` (`color`|`xcolor`), →I 17, 274, 306, 440, 466, 714, →II 186, 435, 480f.
 - as used in this book, →I 17
 - avoid in math, →II 207, 208
 - color whole formula, →II 207f.
- textcolor key (`todonotes`), →I 239, 240, 249
- textcolor key/option (`fancy`), →I 147
- textcomp package, →I 694f., 701, 703, 766f., →II 757
- `\textcompsubstdefault`, →I 701
- `\textcompwordmark`, →I 698, 699
- `\textcompwordmark` text symbol , →I 772
- `\textcopyleft` text symbol ©, →I 696, 701, 772
- `\textcopyright` text symbol ©, →I 696, 773
- `\textcquote` (`csquotes`), →I 182, →II 535
- `\textcquote*` (`csquotes`), →I 182

`\textcurrency` text symbol ¢, →I 696, 702f., 773
`\textcurrencysf` (tlc), →I 703
`\textdagger` text symbol †,
 →I 226f., 230, 236, 695, 696, 697f., 703f., 724, 773
`\textdaggerdbl` text symbol ‡, →I 695, 696, 697, 724, 773
`\textdblhyphen` text symbol -, →I 697, 773
`\textdblhyphenchar` text symbol -, →I 697, 773
`\textdegree` text symbol °, →I 696, 773
`\textdel` (csquotes), →I 183, 187
`\textdied` text symbol †, →I 697, 773, →II 239
`\textdiscount` text symbol %, →I 696, 773
`\textdiv` text symbol ÷, →I 696, 773
`\textdivorced` text symbol ♂, →I 697, 773
`\textdollar` text symbol \$, →I 696, 699, 766, 773, →II 623
`\textdollaroldstyle` text symbol \$, →I 696, 699, 773,
 →II 239
`\textdong` text symbol ₭, →I 696, 773
`\textdownarrow` text symbol ↓, →I 696, 773
`\texteightoldstyle` text symbol 8, →I 696, 773
`\textellipsis` text symbol ..., →I 148, 187, 773
`\textelp` (csquotes), →I 182, 183, 186f., 188
`\textelp*` (csquotes), →I 182, 183
`\textemdash` text symbol —, →I 149, 773
`\textendash` text symbol –, →I 149, 255, 757, 773
`\textepsilon` text symbol ε (tipa), →II 126
`\textestimated` text symbol €, →I 696, 773
`\texteuro` text symbol €, →I 650, 694, 696, 765, 773, →II 239
 faked, →II 751
`\textexclamdown` text symbol ¡, →I 757, 773
`\textfigures` (*various font packages*), →I 700, →II 8
`\textfiveoldstyle` text symbol 5, →I 696, 773
`\textfloatsep` length, →I 511f., 516
`\textflorin` text symbol ₣, →I 696, 702f., 773
 textfont key/option
 (caption), →I 543, 545, 549
 (subcaption), →I 554
 textformat key/option (caption), →I 545, 547
`\textfouroldstyle` text symbol 4, →I 696, 773
`\textfraction`, →I 511, 521f.
`\textfractionsolidus` text symbol /, →I 164f., 697, 773
 (xfrac), →I 164
`\textfrak` (yfonts), →I 197, →II 104
`\textgoth` (yfonts), →II 104
`\textgravedbl` text symbol “, →I 697, 773
`\textgreater` text symbol >, →I 773
`\textguarani` text symbol ₣, →I 696, 773
`\texthead` (tlc/fontspec), →I 711
`\textheight` rigid length, →I 22, 366f., 369, 370, 371, 379,
 414f., 522, 565, 692, →II 660, 710, 764
 (fp expr), →II 660
 (geometry), →I 378
 (landscape), →I 384
 (supertabular), →I 456
 textheight key/option (geometry), →I 378, 381
`\textin`
 (*various font packages*), →II 6, 9
 (tlc/fontspec), →I 718
`\textinit` (yfonts), →II 106
`\textins` (csquotes), →I 183, 187
`\textins*` (csquotes), →I 183, 187
`\textinterrobang` text symbol †, →I 697, 773
`\textinterrobangdown` text symbol ‡, →I 697, 773
`\textipa` (tipa), →II 125, 126
`\textit`, →I 661, 662, 667, 671
 faked, →II 4, 12–15, 19, 21, 23, 30, 33f., 55, 69, 73f., 76f.,
 79f., 85f., 90–95, 97, 109–112
 no effect,
 →II 25, 30, 33, 35, 63, 66f., 93, 96, 98f., 104, 108, 112
 used in math, →I 677, 682
 (cinzel), producing decorations, →II 98
 (embrac), upright parentheses, →I 188f.
 (fontspec), →I 710, 713, 718
 (ulem), replaced by \uwave, →I 190
`\textit*` (embrac), →I 189
`\textlangle` text symbol ⟨, →I 696, 773
`\textlarger` (relsize), →I 675
`\textlbracket` text symbol [, →I 696, 773
`\textleaf` text symbol ♣, →I 697, 773
`\textleftarrow` text symbol ←, →I 696, 773
`\textlegacybullet` text symbol •, →I 697
`\textlegacydagger` text symbol †, →I 698
`\textlegacysection` text symbol §, →I 698
`\textless` text symbol <, →I 773
`\textlira` text symbol ₣, →I 696, 701, 773
`\textlnot` text symbol ¬, →I 696, 773
`\textlquill` text symbol {, →I 696, 773
`\textls` (microtype), →I 192, 193, 195ff., 423
`\textls*` (microtype), →I 192, 193, 196
`\textlsc` (tlc), →I 160
`\textmarried` text symbol ♂, →I 697, 773, →II 239
`\textmd`, →I 660f., 667, 671, 673
`\textmho` text symbol Ω, →I 696, 774
`\textmicrotypecontext` (microtype), →I 133
`\textminus` text symbol −, →I 696, 774
`\textmu` text symbol μ, →I 696, 774
`\textmusicalnote` text symbol ♯, →I 697, 774
`\textnaira` text symbol ₣, →I 696, 774
`\textneohellenic` (gfsneohellenic), →II 75
`\textnineoldstyle` text symbol 9, →I 696, 774
`\textnormal`, →I 165, 166, 177, 320, 661, 665, 667
`\textnumero` text symbol №, →I 697, 701, 774
`\textogonekcentered` text accent ˆ, →I 774
`\textohm` text symbol Ω, →I 696, 774
`\textonehalf` text symbol ½, →I 696, 774
`\textoneoldstyle` text symbol 1, →I 696, 774
`\textonequarter` text symbol ¼, →I 696, 766, 774
`\tonesuperior` text symbol ¹, →I 696, 774
`\textopenbullet` text symbol ○, →I 696, 774
`\textordfeminine` text symbol ª, →I 696, 774
`\textordmasculine` text symbol º, →I 696, 774
`\TextOrMath`, →I 212, →II 339
`\textormath` (babel), →II 339
`\textparagraph` text symbol ¶, →I 695, 696, 697, 774
`\textperiodcentered` text symbol ·, →I 255, 696, 774
`\textpertenthousand` text symbol ‰, →I 696, 774
 problems in T1, →I 737

`\textperthousand` text symbol ‰, →I 696, 774
 problems in T1, →I 737
`\textpeso` text symbol ₱, →I 696, 702, 774
`\textpilcrow` text symbol ¶, →I 696, 701, 774
`\textpm` text symbol ±, →I 696, 774
`\textprimstress` text symbol ' (tipa), →II 126
`\textquestiondown` text symbol ¿, →I 774
`\textquote` (csquotes), →I 179, 180, 181, 182
`\textquote*` (csquotes), →I 179, 181f.
`\textquotedbl` text symbol ", →I 774
`\textquotedblleft` text symbol “, →I 131f., 774
`\textquotedblright` text symbol ”, →I 131f., 774
`\textquotelleft` text symbol ‘, →I 774
`\textquoteright` text symbol ’, →I 774
`\textquotesingle` text symbol ', →I 302, 697, 774
`\textquotestraightbase` text symbol „, →I 697, 774
`\textquotestraightdblbase` text symbol „, →I 697, 774
`\texttrangle` text symbol ∟, →I 696, 774
`\texttrbrackdbl` text symbol ‖, →I 696, 774
`\textrecipe` text symbol R, →I 697, 774
`\textreferencemark` text symbol ※, →I 696, 774
`\textregistered` text symbol ®, →I 696, 765, 774
`\textrightarrow` text symbol →, →I 696, 774
`\textrm`, →I 660, 667, 671ff., 682, →II 9, 252
 used in math, →I 677, 682
 (amsmath), →II 192
 (fontspec), →I 706
`\textroundcap` (tipa), →II 126
`\texttrquill` text symbol ›, →I 696, 774
`\textsc`, →I 662f., 667, 668, 671, 675, 735, →II 5, 655
 faked, →II 4, 71, 73, 80, 90, 109
 no effect, →II 4, 12–16, 19, 21, 23–27, 30–36, 39, 41, 43f.,
 47, 51f., 54f., 57–63, 65ff., 69–77, 80ff., 84f., 87,
 90–97, 99f., 102ff., 107–113
 used in math, →I 677, 682
 (fontspec), →I 709f., 713, 717, 718, 723f.
 (microtype), →I 194
`\textscale` (relsize), →I 676
`\textschwa` text symbol ə (tipa), →II 125, 126
`\textsection` text symbol §, →I 695, 696, 697f., 774
`\textservicemark` text symbol ™, →I 696, 775
`\textsevenoldstyle` text symbol 7, →I 696, 775
`\textsf`, →I 660, 662, 667, 671, 673, 700, 740, →II 9, 632
 used in math, →I 677, 682
 (amsmath), →II 192
 (fontspec), →I 706, 712, 714
`textsf` value (crop), →I 412, 413
`\textsf1` (ClearSans), →II 72
`\textsf1` (ClearSans), →II 72
`\textsixoldstyle` text symbol 6, →I 696, 775
`\textsl`, →I 661, 667, 671
 faked, →II 4, 11, 13–16, 20, 24–29, 31f., 35–42, 44–49,
 51f., 54–59, 61, 63ff., 67–79, 81f., 84–87, 91f., 96f.,
 99f., 102
 no effect,
 →II 25, 30, 35, 42ff., 63, 67, 93, 96, 98f., 101–104
 used in math, →I 677, 682
 (embrac), upright parentheses, →I 189
`\textsl` (cont.)
 (fontspec), →I 710
`\textsl*` (embrac), →I 189
`\textsmaller` (relsize), →I 675
`\textsterling` text symbol £, →I 696, 766, 775
`\textstyle`, →I 749, →II 156, 165, 195, 196, 197
`\textsu`
 (various font packages), →II 6, 9
 (tlc/fontspec), →I 718
`\textsubscript`, →I 718, →II 9
 (realscripts), →I 719
`\textsubsuperscript` (realscripts), →I 719
`\textsuperscript`, →I 191, 209, 231, 232, 275, 290, 485,
 718, →II 9, 47, 77, 662, 690
 (realscripts), →I 719
`\textsurd` text symbol √, →I 696, 775
`\textsw`, →I 661, 667, 671
 used in math, →I 677
 (fontspec), →I 712, 713, 726
 (garamondlibre), →II 43
`\textswab` (yfonts), →II 104
`\TextSymbolUnavailable`, →I 766, →II 720
`\textthreeoldstyle` text symbol 3, →I 696, 775
`\textthreequarters` text symbol ¾, →I 696, 775
`\textthreequartersemdash` text symbol –, →I 697, 775
`\textthreesuperior` text symbol ³, →I 696, 775
`\texttildelow` text symbol ~, →I 697, 775
`\texttimes` text symbol ×, →I 696, 775
`\texttrademark` text symbol ™, →I 696, 775
`\texttt`, →I 660, 667, 671, 673, 700, →II 88
 used in math, →I 677, 682
 (fontspec), →I 706, 707, 714
 (ulem), replaced by \uuline, →I 190
 (zlm), →II 94
`\texttwelveudash` text symbol –, →I 697, 775
`\texttwooldstyle` text symbol 2, →I 696, 775
`\texttwosuperior` text symbol ², →I 696, 775
`\textulc`, →I 662, 667, 671
`\textunderscore` text symbol _, →I 151, 152, 775
`\textup`, →I 662, 667, 671
`\textuparrow` text symbol ↑, →I 696, 775
`\textupsilon` text symbol υ (tipa), →II 126
`\textvisiblespace` text symbol ␣, →I 297, 312, 775
`\textwidth` rigid length, →I 367, 368f., 371, 565, →II 688, 710
 (fancyhdr), →I 398, 400
 (longtable), →I 461
 (lscape), →I 384
`textwidth` key (thmtools), →I 286
`textwidth` key/option (geometry), →I 378, 381
`textwidth` option (todonotes), →I 240, 242
`\textwon` text symbol ₩, →I 696, 775
`\textyen` text symbol ¥, →I 696, 702, 775
`\textzerooldstyle` text symbol 0, →I 696, 775
`tf` key (keyfloat), →I 569
`tf` option (various font packages), →II 7
`.tfm` file extension, →I 9, 10f., 661, 668, 706, 731, 745f.,
 →II 1, 724
`\tfrac` (amsmath), →II 164, 165

`\tg` math operator tg (babel), →II 321
`tgadventor` package, →I 689, 690f., →II 69
`tgbonum` package, →I 689, 690f., →II 49
`tgchorus` package, →I 689, 691, →II 102
`tgcursor` package, →I 689, 690f., →II 91
`tgheros` package, →I 689, 690f., →II 76, 126
`tgpagella` package, →I 142f., 145, 665, 689, 690f., →II 46, 242
`tgschola` package, →I 689, 691, →II 54
`tgtermes` package, →I 689, 691, →II 55, 57, 126
`\TH` text symbol \mathbb{H} , →I 770
`\th` math operator th (babel), it overwrites command for \mathfrak{p} (thorn), →II 321
`\th` text symbol \mathfrak{p} , →I 775
`Thai`, →II 332
`index` sort order, →II 355
`thai_head` keyword (upmendex), →II 367
`\thanks`, →I 26
`(authblk)`, →I 27
`(titling)`, →I 27
`\the`, →I 257, →II 88, 647, 652f., 769
`error` using, →II 727
`\the<ctr>`, →II 648, 649
`\the<type>` (subcaption), →I 559
`\theabsfootnote` (perpage), →I 220
`\theabspage` (perpage), →I 220
`Theano` Didot fonts, description/examples, →II 62, 108
`TheanoDidot` package, →II 63
`thebibliography` env., →I 28, 33, 396,
→II 376, 377, 378, 409f., 475f., 489, 569
`listed` in tables of contents, →I 55
`warning` using, →II 751
`(bibunits)`, →II 576f.
`(chapterbib)`, →II 571f.
`(natbib)`, →II 496, 498
`\thebtauxfile` (bibtopic), →II 579
`\thechapter`, →I 35, 387, 390, →II 573, 649
`\thecode` (tlc/subcaption), →I 559
`\theCodelineNo` (doc), →II 597
`\thecontentslabel` (titletoc), →I 62, 63f., 67, 69
`\thecontentspage` (titletoc), →I 62, 64–67, 69
`\theContinuedFloat` (caption), →I 547, 548
`\theendnote` (enotez), →I 231
`\theendnotes` (endnotes), →II 519
`\theenumi`, →I 255, 256, →II 649
`\theenumii`, →I 255, 256, →II 649
`\theenumiii`, →I 256, →II 649
`\theenumiv`, →I 256, →II 649
`\theequation`, →I 81, 89, →II 649
`(amsmath)`, →II 150, 152, 153
`\theFancyVerbLine` (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 310
`\thefield` (biblatex), →II 553f., 564, 567
`\thefigure`, →I 71
`(caption)`, →I 547
`\thefootnote`, →I 205, 206, 211, 491, 492, →II 647
`(perpage)`, →I 220
`\thegapnumber` (dashundergaps), →I 191
`theglossary` env., →II 349
`\theH<ctr>` (hyperref), →I 98, 99
`\theHsection` (hyperref), →I 98, →II 758
`theindex` env., →I 28, 33, 396, →II 345, 352, 371, 372
`listed` in tables of contents, →I 56
`\thekvtRow` (keyvaltable), →I 501
`\thelistcount` (biblatex), →II 567f.
`\theliststop` (biblatex), →II 567f.
`\thelstlisting` (listings), →I 330
`\thelstnumber` (listings), →I 327
`\themnote` (tlc), →I 219
`\thempfootnote`, →I 205, 492
`theorem` *obsolete* package, →I 283
`theorem-like` structures, →I 91f., 281–288,
→II 129, *see also* headed lists
`theorems` library (tcolorbox), →I 619
`\theoremstyle` (amsthm), →I 283, 284
`\thepage`, →I 220, 385, 386, 387, 388, 394, 397, 402, 405f.,
411, →II 692
`redefinition` fails, →I 220
`(onepagem)`, →I 396
`\theparagraph`, →I 33
`\theparentequation` (amsmath), →II 153
`\thepart`, →II 649
`\theperpage` (perpage), →I 220
`\thepostfigure` (endfloat), →I 528
`\theposttable` (endfloat), →I 528
`\therefore` math symbol \therefore (amssymb), →II 221
`\therefsection` (biblatex), →II 556, 557
`\therefsegment` (biblatex), →II 556
`\thesection`, →I 35, 36, 98, 388, 390, →II 574, 648, 649
`\thesidenote` (snotez), →I 236, 237
`thesis` \LaTeX entry type (biblatex), →II 386, 387
`\thesub<type>` (subcaption), →I 556, 559
`\thesubcode` (tlc/subcaption), →I 559
`\thesubsection`, →I 34, 35, 36, →II 649
`\thesubsubsection`, →II 649
`\Theta` math symbol Θ , →II 181, 212
`\theta` math symbol θ , →II 137, 151, 212
`\thetable`, →I 559
`\thetcbcounter` (tcolorbox), →I 627
`\thetcbbrastercolumn` (tcolorbox), →I 629
`\thetcbbrasterrow` (tcolorbox), →I 629
`\thetitle` (titlesec), →I 36, 40
`\thevpagerefnum` (varioref), →I 84
`thick` key (tikz), →I 634, 638, 641
`\thickapprox` math symbol \approx (amssymb), →II 217
`\thicklines`, →I 604, 606, 609ff.

(pict2e), →I 604
`\thickmuskip` length, →II 205, 210, 211, 214
`thickness` key (thmtools), →I 286
`\thicksim` math symbol \sim (amssymb), →II 217
`\thickspace`, →II 204f.
`thin` option (*various font packages*), →II 8
`(Chivo)`, →II 70
`\thinlines`, →I 604, 609, 611

(pict2e), →I 604
`\thinmuskip` length, →II 205, 210, 211
`\thinspace`, →II 204f.

- `\thispagestyle`, →I 26, 40, 53, 99, **395f.**, 404, →II 371 (nextpage), →I 419
- `thm` env.
 - (tlc/amsthm), →I 92, 282, 284
 - (tlc/cleveref), problems with, →I 92
 - (tlc/thmtools), →I 285, 287
- `thmbox` key (thmtools), →I **286**, 287
- `thmbox` package, →I 286f.
- `thmtools` package, →I 92, **284–288**
- `threeparttable` env. (threeparttable), →I **492**, 493
- `threeparttable` package, →I 491, **492f.**
- `threetableex` package, →I 492
- `threshold` key/option (csquotes), →I **181f.**, 183, 186
- `thresholdtype` key/option (csquotes), →I 182
- `thuthesis-author-year` biblatex style (thuthesis), →II 454
- `thuthesis-bachelor` biblatex style (thuthesis), →II 454
- `thuthesis-inline` biblatex style (thuthesis), →II 454
- `thuthesis-numeric` biblatex style (thuthesis), →II 454
- `tickmarkheight` key (todonotes), →I 240
- `tics` key (overpic), →I 594
- `.tif` file extension, →I 11
- `tight` key (qrcode), →I 613
- `tight` value (tcolorbox), →I 617
- `tight-spacing` key (siunitx), →I 168
- `tighter` option (newtxtext), →II 244
- `\tikz` (tikz), →I **632**, 634–640, 643
- `tikz` option (multicolrule), →I 361
- `tikz` package, →I 239, 361, 576, 609, 619f., 622f., **631–646**, →II 161f., 307, 721, 799, 814, 979
 - path operations, →I 636ff., 640ff.
- `tikz-cd` package, →II 160, **161ff.**
- `tikzcd` env. (tikz-cd), →II **161**, 162f.
- `tikzducks` package, →I 645
- `tikzlings` package, →I 645
- `\tikzmark` (tikzmark), →I **643**, 644
- `tikzmark` library (tikz), →I **633**, 643, 644
- `tikzmark` package, →II 814
- `tikzpicture` env. (tikz), →I **632**, 634, 638, 641–645
- `\tikzset` (tikz), →I **632**, 633, 638, 644
- `\tikztonodes` (tikz), →I 638
- `\tikztotarget` (tikz), →I 638
- `\tilde` math accent \tilde , →II 176f., **214**
- `tilde` (~)
 - multilingual aspects, →II 312
 - nonbreaking space, →II 310
- `tile` key (tcolorbox), →I 620
- `\time`, →II **688**, 690
- `\times` math symbol \times , →II 141, 156, 162f., 178f., 181, **215**, 237
 - dots with, →II 181
- `times` option (quotchap), →I 38
- `times` *obsolete* package, →I 691, *see instead* `tgtermes` package
- Times Roman fonts, description/examples, →I 714, →II **55**
 - in math and text, →II 243–246, 280
- `\TIMO` (l3build), →II **609**, 611
- `tinot` package, →II 57
- Tinos fonts, description/examples, →II 57
- `\tiny`, →I 326–329, **665f.**
- `tiny` option (titlesec), →I **40**, 41
- `tiny` syntax (enumitem), →I 280
- `tiny` value
 - (crop), →I 414
 - (todonotes), →I 240
- `\tinypuri` (uri), →I 204
- `\tinyuri` (uri), →I 204
- `tipa` package, →I 737, →II **125f.**
- `tipaman` file (tipa), →II 126
- `tips` key (tikz), →I **639**, 640
- `titl` OpenType feature (fontspec), →I **725**, 726
- `\title`, →I 26
 - error mentioning, →II 734
 - (authblk), →I 27
 - (hyperref), →I 107
 - (titling), →I 27
- `title` BibTeX field, →II 382f., 386ff., **389**, 391, 398, 404, 406, 418, 523, 533
 - (biblatex), →II 534f.
 - (jurabib), →II 510, 514
- `title` key
 - (biblatex), →II **550**, 551ff., 555–558, 560
 - (changes), →I **246**, 247
 - (listings), →I 330
 - (tcolorbox), →I **615**, 617, 619–629
 - (thmtools), →I **284**, 285, **287**, 288
- `title` value (tcolorbox), →I **617**, 621
- `title` width, measuring in document headings, →I 46
- `title-format` key (unicodefonttable), →I 729
- `title-format-cont` key (unicodefonttable), →I 730
- `titleaddon` BibTeX field (jurabib), →II 533
- `titlecase` syntax (biblatex), →II 561
- `\titleclass` (titlesec), →I **50**, 51
- `\titlecontents` (titletoc), →I 60, **61**, 62, 63–67, 68, 69, 72
- `\titlecontents*` (titletoc), →I **65**, 66ff.
- `titlefont` key (tcolorbox), →I 622
- `\titleformat` (titlesec), →I 42, **43**, 45ff., 48, 49ff., 68, 524
 - with float barrier, →I 513, 524
- `titleformat` key/option (jurabib), →II 508, **511**, 512, 513, 524ff., 532
- `\titleformat*` (titlesec), →I **41**, 711
- `\titlelabel` (titlesec), →I 36, **40**, 41
- `\titleline` (titlesec), →I 47
- `\titleline*` (titlesec), →I 47
- `titlepage` env., →I 26, →II 655
- `\titlerule`
 - (titlesec), →I 47
 - (titletoc), →I 62, 64, 69
- `titlerule` key (tcolorbox), →I 616
- `\titlerule*` (titlesec), →I 47
- `titles` value (unicodefonttable), →I 730
- titles, bibliographies
 - format, →II 510, 511f.
 - information field, →II 533
 - mapping short to full, →II 513f.
- titles, bibliography database, →II 398
- `titlesec` package, →I **40–51**, 68, 72, 398, 513, 524, 711, *see also* document headings; `titletoc` package

- `\titlespacing` (titlesec), →I 42f., [44](#), 45, 46f., 48f., 50f.
- `\titlespacing*` (titlesec), →I 45, 68
- titletoc package, →I 42, 56f., [59–70](#), 72, 74, 558, →II 979, *see also* titlesec package
- `\titlewidth` rigid length (titlesec), →I [46](#), 47
- Titling value (fontspec), →I [725](#), 726
- titling package, →I 27
- tl key (keyfloat), →I 568, [569](#), 570
- tlc package, →II 818
- tlc-ex.bib file (tlc), →II [391](#), 392, 416
- tlc.bib file (tlc), →II [382f.](#), 414, 475
- .tlg file extension (l3build), →I [11](#), →II [610](#), 611
- tmargin key/option (geometry), →I 377, [379](#)
- `\tnote` (threeparttable), →I [492](#), 493
- tnum OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 715, [716](#)
- `\to` math symbol \rightarrow , →II [151](#), 166f., 194, [219](#) (old-arrows), →II 220
- to syntax (tikz), →I [638](#), 640
- to path (tikz path operation), →I 636, [638](#)
- to_path key (tikz-cd), →II 163
- TOC, *see* tables of contents
- .toc file extension, →I 9, [11](#), 33, 53, [54](#), 55, 70f., 74 (chapterbib), →II 574 (titletoc), →I 59, 63
- toc option (multitoc), →I 70
- tocbibind package, →I [56](#), →II 372
- `\tocdata` (tocdata), →I [57](#), 58
- tocdata package, →I 56–59
- `\tocdataartistprint` (tocdata), →I 58
- `\tocdataartisttextprint` (tocdata), →I 58
- `\tocdataformat` (tocdata), →I 57
- `\tocdatapartprint` (tocdata), →I 57
- tocdepth counter, →I 51, [54](#), 64–67, 68, 69, 71, 73, 104, →II [646](#)
- `\tocdesign` (layouts), →I 374
- `\tocdiagram` (layouts), →I 374
- `\toclevel@appendix` (hyperref), →I 99
- tocloft package, →I 56f.
- tocskip key/option (parskip), →I 139
- tocstyle package, →I 56
- toctitles option (titlesec), →I 42
- tocvsec2 package, →I 34, 55
- `\todata` (tocdata), →I 57
- `\today`, →I 178, →II 619 (babel), →II [309](#), 315f.
- `\todayRoman` (babel), →II 315
- `\todo` (todonotes), →I [237](#), 238, 239, 240f., 249, 528, →II 645
- todo value (changes), →I 248
- todonotes option (changes), →I 250
- todonotes package, →I [237–242](#), 243, 245, 250, →II 645, 980
- todonumber counter (tlc/todonotes), →I 242
- `\todotoc` (todonotes), →I 238
- `\toEng` (tlc/iftthen), →II 690
- `\tolerance` T_EX counter, →I [121](#), 126, 357, 427, 428, →II 777f. (multicol), →I 357
- `\tone` (tipa), →II 126
- tone option (tipa), →II 126
- `\tonne` (siunitx), →I 171
- `\top` math symbol T, →II 213
 - as Operator symbol, →II 209
- top key (tcolorbox), →I [616](#), 617, 620, 623
- top key/option (geometry), →I [379](#), 380
- top syntax, →I 393f. (titlesec), →I 46, 48, [50](#), 51
- top value
 - (caption), →I [545](#), 556
 - (hvfloating), →I 561
 - (subcaption), →I 554
 - (tcolorbox), →I 618
- top-level syntax, →II [672](#), 675, [685](#)
 - error using, →II 726
- `\topcaption` (supertabular), →I 457
- `\topfigrule`, →I 512
- `\topfraction`, →I [511](#), 515f., 522
- toplevel key (doc), →II 592
- topline value (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 307f.
- `\topmargin` rigid length, →I [367f.](#), 369, 370, →II 768f., 770
- `\TopMark`, →I [391](#), 395
 - error using, →II 730
- `\topmark`, *dangerous — do not use*, →I 388
- `\topmarks`, *dangerous — do not use*, →I 388
 - topnumber counter, →I [511](#), 522, →II [646](#)
- `\toprule` (booktabs), →I 471, [472](#), 473, 490, 493
- toprule key (tcolorbox), →I 616
- `\topsep` length, →I [259](#), 344, →II 768f.
- topsep key (enumitem), →I [264](#), 265f., 280
- `\topskip` length, →I 367, 369, [370](#), 371, →II 660, 770, 772 (geometry), →I 378
 - toptitle key (tcolorbox), →I 616
- total key/option (geometry), →I 382
- `\Totalheight` (adjustbox), →I [596](#), 597
- `\totalheight`, →II [661](#), 662, 666
 - (adjustbox), →I 596
 - (graphics|graphicx), →I 589
- totalheight key
 - (adjustbox), →I 596
 - (graphicx), →I [581](#), 584, 585, →II 721
- `\totalheightof` (calc), →II 688
- totalnumber counter, →I [510](#), 521, →II [646](#)
- totalpages B_ET_EX field (jurabib), →II 534
- totalpages counter, →I [387](#), →II [646](#)
- `\tothe` (siunitx), →I 173
- totoc key (enotez), →I 231
- town B_ET_EX field (tlc), →II 562f.
- tr key (keyfloat), →I 569
- tr value (upmendex), →II 369
- trace option (fewerfloatpages), →I 523
- trace package, →II 781f.
- `\tracefloats` (fltrace), →I [519](#), 523
- `\tracefloatsoff` (fltrace), →I 519
- `\tracefloatvals` (fltrace), →I 518
- tracefnt package, →I 704f.
- `\traceoff` (trace), →II 781
- `\traceon` (trace), →II [781](#), 782
- tracing
 - font selection, →I 704

- tracing (*cont.*)
 - paragraph break algorithm, →II 776ff.
 - problems, *see* troubleshooting
- `\tracingall`, →II 608, 776, 779f., **781**, 782
- `\tracingcommands` TeX counter, →II 780
- `\tracinggroups` TeX counter, →II 733, **747**
- `\tracingifs` TeX counter, →II 751
- `\tracinglostchars` TeX counter, →I 670, →II 263, 755f., **781**
- `\tracingmacros` TeX counter, →II 780
 - `tracingmulticol` counter (multicol), →I 357, **360**
- `\tracingnone`, →II 781
- `\tracingonline` TeX counter, →II 734, 747, 772, 776, **779**
- `\tracingoutput` TeX counter, →II 779
- `\tracingpages` TeX counter, →II 772
 - tracing output produced from, →II 772
- `\tracingparagraphs` TeX counter, →II 776
 - tracing output produced from, →II 776ff.
- `\tracingrestores` TeX counter, →II 780
- `\tracingstats` TeX counter, →II 745
 - tracing output produced from, →II 745
- `\tracingtabularx` (tabularx), →I 450
- tracking, *see* letterspacing
- tracking key/option (microtype), →I 127, 133, **194**
- `trad-abbrev` biblatex style (biblatex-trad), →II 438, **439**, 478
- `trad-alpha` biblatex style (biblatex-trad), →II 438, **439**
- `trad-plain` biblatex style (biblatex-trad), →II 438, **439**
- `trad-unstr` biblatex style (biblatex-trad), →II 438, **439**
- trailing blanks, indexes, →II **346**, 351, 363f.
- transcript files
 - extension, →I 12
 - index generation, →II 355, 364
 - writing to, →II 779
- transitional fonts, →II 46–59
- translated works, bibliographies, →II 533f.
- translating documents, *see* multilingual documents
- translations, language options, →II 309
- translator BibTeX field, →II 383
 - (jurabib), →II 534
- `\triangle` math symbol \triangle , →II 213
- `\triangledown` math symbol ∇ (amssymb), →II 213
- `\triangleleft` math symbol \triangleleft , →II 215
- `\trianglelefteq` math symbol \trianglelefteq (amssymb), →II 218
- `\trianglelefteqslant` math symbol \trianglelefteqslant (stmaryrd), →II 218
- `\triangleq` math symbol \triangleq (amssymb), →II 217
- `\triangleright` math symbol \triangleright , →I 292, →II **215**
- `\trianglerighteq` math symbol \trianglerighteq (amssymb), →II 218
- `\trianglerighteqslant` math symbol \trianglerighteqslant (stmaryrd), →II 218
- Trim key (adjustbox), →I **596**, 598
- trim key
 - (adjustbox), →I **595**, **596**, 597, 598
 - (diagbox), →I **480**, 481
 - (graphicx), →I **580**, 582, 583
- trimming marks, →I 411, 412ff.
- `\TrimSpaces`, →II **643**, 644
- trivlist env., →I **260**, 265f.
 - configuration, →I 266
- trivlist syntax (enumitem), →I 266
- troubleshooting
 - boxes, displaying contents, →II 779
 - buffer size errors, →II 746
 - color, →II 670f.
 - command definitions, displaying, →II 766ff.
 - with strange names, →II 767
 - command execution, tracing, →II 781f.
 - cross-reference errors, →II 717
 - description, →II 711f.
 - error messages
 - asterisk only, →II 717
 - containing `\???`, →II 714
 - list of, →II 355f., 365f., 716–744
 - source line, finding, →II 712–716
 - syntax, →II 712, 714
 - exception dictionary errors, →II 746
 - font glyphs, →I 705, 728ff.
 - font memory errors, →II 746
 - font selection, →I 704
 - footnotes, →II 780
 - fragile commands, →II 715f.
 - grouping levels errors, →II 747
 - hash size errors, →II 747
 - hyphenation, →II 774f., 776
 - index generation, →II 362f.
 - informational messages, →II 749–765
 - internal tables, overflowing, →II 746–749
 - list stack (vertical/horizontal lists), displaying, →II 780
 - lost characters, tracing, →II 780
 - macro stack, displaying, →II 714
 - `MakeIndex/upmendex` issues, →II 362f.
 - memory exceeded message, →II 744–749
 - number of strings errors, →II 747
 - online tracing, →II 779
 - page breaks, →II 769–773
 - page contents, symbolic display, →II 769–772
 - paragraph breaks, →II 773–778
 - parameter stack size errors, →II 748
 - pattern memory errors, →II 748
 - persistent errors, →II 715
 - pool size errors, →II 748
 - primitives (TeX engine commands)
 - displaying, →II 768
 - tracing, →II 780
 - register values, displaying, →II 768f.
 - restore values, displaying, →II 780
 - save size errors, →II 748
 - semantic nest size errors, →II 749
 - stepping through documents, →II 781
 - terminal display, →II 779
 - TeX capacity exceeded errors, →II 744–749
 - text input levels errors, →II 749
 - trace package, →II 781f.
 - transcript file, writing to, →II 779
 - vertical space, →II 769–773
 - warning messages, →II 749–765
- true value (geometry), →I 377
- truedimen key/option (geometry), →I 384

- trueslanted option (newtxtext), →II 244
- TrueType fonts, *see* Unicode, font selection
- trunc syntax (*fp expr*), →II 658
- \truncate (truncate), →I 405, 406
 - truncate option (changes), →I 250
 - truncate package, →I 250, **405f.**
- \TruncateMarker (truncate), →I 406
 - truncating text, page styles, →I 405, 406
- \try<param> (layouts), →I 372, 374
- \trycolumnsep (layouts), →I 373
- \trycolumnseprule (layouts), →I 373
- \tryevensidemargin (layouts), →I 373
- \tryfootskip (layouts), →I 373
- \tryheadheight (layouts), →I 373
- \tryheadsep (layouts), →I 372, 373
- \trypaperheight (layouts), →I 373
- \trypaperwidth (layouts), →I 373
- \trytextheight (layouts), →I 373
- \trytextwidth (layouts), →I 373
 - TS1 font encoding, →I 195, 212, 694f., 699f., 701, 702ff., 717, **737**, 738, 765f., 768, →II 12, 116, 238ff.
 - fonts encoded in, →I 684f., 687, →II 11, 13–18, 20, 22, 25f., 28f., 31ff., 35–49, 51–54, 56–59, 61–66, 69–72, 74, 76ff., 80–83, 85–92, 95, 98–101, 103
 - list of LICR objects, →I 767–776
 - TS3 font encoding, →I 737
 - fonts encoded in, →II 59
- \tt, *obsolete — do not use*, →I 670
 - tt option (*some font packages*), →II 9
 - (algolrevived), →I 703, →II **90**
 - tt option (titlesec), →I 40
 - tt syntax, →I 673
 - (url), →I 200
 - tt value
 - (caption), →I 542
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I **304**, 305
 - (unicode-math), →II 260
- \ttdefault, →I 302f., 660, **671**, 688, 700, 701, →II 8, 23, 88
- .ttf file extension, →I 9, **11**
- \ttfamily, →I **660**, 666, **667**, 671, 702f., →II 769
 - forbidden in math, →I 677
 - (fontspec), →I 711, 720, 728
 - (magaz), →I 146
- \ttsubstdefault, →I 701
- .ttt file extension (endfloat), →I 526
- TU font encoding, →I 297, **658**, 660, **671f.**, 694f., 699, 703, 704, 706, **737**, 756, 760, 767f., →II 7, 226
 - fonts encoded in, →I 687,
 - II 11, 13–18, 20, 22, 25f., 28f., 31ff., 35–52, 54, 56–59, 61–66, 69–78, 80–83, 85–92, 98–101, 103
 - (unicode-math), →I 681
- TU option (fontenc), →I 694
- TUG (T_EX Users Group) home page, →II 793
- tugboat.bib file, →II 413
- turkish option (babel), →II **301**, 314
- turkmen option (babel), →II 301
- turn env. (rotating), →I 534, **592**
- turnthepage package, →I 407
- \twice (tlc), →II 641
- two-sided printing
 - page styles, →I 397, 400
 - turning on, →I 371
- two_heads key (tikz-cd), →II **162**, 163
- \twocolumn, →I **351**, 395, →II 371
 - warning using, →II 757
- twocolumn key/option (geometry), →I 378
- twocolumn option, →I **22**, 228, 334, 350f., 361, 417, 573
- \twocolumnlayouttrue (layouts), →I **372**, 373
 - TwoColumnLeft value (hyperref), →I 107
 - TwoColumnRight value (hyperref), →I 107
- \twoheadleftarrow math symbol \leftarrow (amssymb), →II 219
- \twoheadrightarrow math symbol \rightarrow (amssymb), →II 219
- TwoPageLeft value (hyperref), →I 107
- TwoPageRight value (hyperref), →I 107
- twoside key/option (geometry), →I **378**, 379, 380, 383
- twoside option, →I 26, 79, 83, **371**, **380**, 417, 564, 567, 625,
 - II 415, 520, 699
 - (layout), →I 371
- txfonts *obsolete* package,
 - II 39, 243f., *see instead* newtxmath
 - touching letters with, →II 243
- txof value (mathalpha), →II 234
- .txt file extension (l3build), →II 608
- \txtfrac (tlc/fontspect), →I 719
- txupr value (mathalpha), →II 232
- \tyformat (tabulary), →I 452
- \tymax rigid length (tabulary), →I **451**, 452
- \tymax rigid length (tabulary), →I **451**, 452
- \TYPE (l3build), →II 609
- type BibT_EX field, →II 386f., **389**
- type key
 - (biblatex), →II **551**, 552f., 555, 562
 - (graphicx), →I 582
 - error using, →II 719
- type.bib file, →II 413
- \typearea (typearea), →I 377
- typearea package, →I 371, 374, **375ff.**, 378, 429
- typed text,
 - I 296–333, *see also* typewriter font; verbatim env.
- background fill, →I 307f., 312
- blanks, displaying, →I **297**, 298, 312
- boxing, →I 316
- brackets & parentheses, always upright, →I 188f.
- coloring
 - background, →I 307
 - frame rules, →I 307
 - text, →I 306
- computer code, typesetting, →I **322**, **323**, **324**, 326f., 332
 - as floats, →I 331
 - captions, →I 330
 - code fragments within normal text, →I 325, 326
 - formatting language keywords, →I 324, 325
 - formatting whole files, →I 325
 - frames around listings, →I 330
 - indentation, →I 326f., 328f.
 - input encoding, →I 331, 333

typed text (*cont.*)

- languages supported, →I 323
- line breaks, →I 329
- numbering lines, →I 326, 327, 332
- rules around listings, →I 330
- spacing, →I 327, 328
- computer program style quoting, →I 302*f.*, 305
- customized variants, →I 317, 318
 - external configurations, →I 322
- displaying a subset of data, →I 314, 315*f.*
- emphasizing, *see* italic; underlining
- escape characters, →I 313
- executing commands in, →I 313
- fonts, specifying, →I 304, 305*f.*
- framing, →I 307*ff.*, 314
- highlighting, →I 312
- indentation, removing, →I 306, 307
- inside arguments, →I 319–322
- inside footnotes, →I 320
- interaction with protrusion, →I 136, 137
- leading spaces, removing, →I 306, 307
- line breaking, →I 301, 313, 314
- monospaced typeface, →I 302*f.*, 304*ff.*, →II 88, 89–93, 94, 95*ff.*
- numbering lines, →I 309, 310*f.*
- reading data verbatim, →I 315
- spacing, vertical, →I 309
- special characters, →I 297, 298, 299*f.*, 301
- start/stop delimiters, →I 298*ff.*, 320, 321
- tabs, displaying, →I 312
- top/bottom delimiters, →I 308, 309
- trailing punctuation after quotes, →I 180, 181
- UTF-8 characters in the input, →I 304, 305
- writing data verbatim, →I 315

typed-checklist package, →I 292–296

typefaces, *see* fonts

`\typein`, →II 602

`\typeout`, →I 748, →II 602, 609, 716

`\typesetcmds` key (l3build), →II 614

`\typesetengine` key (l3build), →II 614

`\typesetfiles` key (l3build), →II 614

`\typesetnormalchapter` (tlc), →II 635

`\typesetruns` key (l3build), →II 613

`\typesetstarchapter` (tlc), →II 635

typesetting

- and culture, →II 300
- directory names, →I 198, 199, 200, 201*f.*
- display quotations, →I 180, 181, 182
- e-mail addresses, →I 198, 199, 200*f.*, 202, 204
- first line of paragraph, →I 146
- fractions, →I 164, 165*f.*
 - styling, →I 165, 166
- paths, →I 198, 199, 200*ff.*
- quotations with citations, →I 182
- quotations, in foreign language, →I 184
- tables of contents, →I 71, 72, 73*f.*
- URIs, →I 202, 203, 204
- URLs, →I 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204

typesetting examples, *see* design examples

typesetting parameters

- captions, →I 541–545
- code documentation, →II 597
- columns, →I 356*f.*
- floats, →I 510*ff.*
- footnotes, →I 209
- headings, →I 52
- lists, →I 255*f.*, 259
- pages, →I 367, 369
- ragged typesetting, →I 124
- rules (graphic lines), →II 668
- spacing
 - in math, →II 205, 210
 - in text, →II 653*f.*
- TOC entries, →I 73

typewriter fonts, →I 660, →II 88, 89–93, 94, 95*ff.*, *see also* `verbatim` env.; typed text

- with small capitals, →I 684, 687, →II 90*f.*, 93, 96
- with true italics, →I 684, →II 16, 22, 24, 31, 36, 92*f.*, 95*ff.*, 112

`\Typocapsfamily` (Typocaps), →I 145

typographic conventions, this book, →I 15–18

typographical fonts, *see* proportional fonts

U

U font encoding, →I 737, 752, 766, 767, →II 113, 115

- fonts encoded in, →II 90, 114–125, 241

U syntax (abraces), →II 185, 186*f.*, 188, 189

`\u` text accent ũ, →I 699, 775

u syntax

- (dashundergaps), →I 191
- (tikz-cd), →II 161, 163

ub syntax (*font series*), →I 673, 675, 732, 733, →II 10, 26

ubc syntax (*font series*), →I 732

ubec syntax (*font series*), →I 732

ubex syntax (*font series*), →I 732

ubsc syntax (*font series*), →I 732

ubsx syntax (*font series*), →I 732

ubuc syntax (*font series*), →I 732

ubux syntax (*font series*), →I 732

ubx syntax (*font series*), →I 732, 733

uc syntax (*font series*), →I 732

ufg-muenster-inline biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, 451

ufg-muenster-numeric biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, 451

ufg-muenster-verbose biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, 451

.uhy file extension (lua-check-hyphen), →II 775

ui syntax (*font shape*), →I 734

uk value (upmendex), →II 369

UKenglish option (babel), →II 301

ukrainian option (babel), →II 301

`\ul` (soul), →I 194, 195, 197*f.*

ul syntax (*font series*), →I 732

ulc syntax (*font series*), →I 732

- ulc syntax (*cont.*)
 - (*font shape*), →I 671, [734f.](#)
- \ulcdefault, →I 671
- \ulcorner math symbol \lrcorner (amssymb), →II 224
- \ulcshape, →I [662](#), 664, [667](#), 671
- \ULdepth rigid length (ulem), →I 190
 - ulec syntax (*font series*), →I 732
 - ulem option (changes), →I 250
 - ulem package, →I 187, [189f.](#), 194ff., 248, 250
 - ulex syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- \ULforem (ulem), →I 190
- \uline (ulem), →I 190
 - uline value (changes), →I 248
 - ulsc syntax (*font series*), →I 732
 - ulsx syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- \ULthickness (ulem), →I 190
 - ultrabold option (*various font packages*), →II 8
 - ultralight option (*various font packages*), →II 8
 - uluc syntax (*font series*), →I 732
 - ulux syntax (*font series*), →I 732
 - ulx syntax (*font series*), →I 732
- \Umathchardef, →II 686
- unbalance counter (multicol), →I 353, 357, [358](#), 359
- \unboldmath, →I [683](#), →II 237
 - (bm), →II 237
 - unboxed value (enumitem), →I 278
 - unbreakable key (tcolorbox), →I 621
 - uncertainties, scientific notation, →I [168](#), 176
 - uncertainty value (siunitx), →I 173
 - unclear syntax (typed-checklist), →I [293](#), 294, 295
 - uncounted key (keyvaltable), →I 501
- \UndeclareTextCommand, →I 699, 704, [766](#)
- Undefined control sequence, →II 712ff.
- \UndefinedShortVerb (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 321
- \underaccent (accents), →II 177
- \underbrace, →II [183](#), 184, 189
 - (abraces), →II 185
 - (mathtools), →II 184
- \underbracket (mathtools), →II 184
 - underfull box warning, →I [121](#), 125, 378, 745, →II [762f.](#)
- \undergroup (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II [245](#), 250
- \undergroupa (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II [245](#), 250
- \undergrouppra (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II [245](#), 250
- underlay_vignette key (tcolorbox), →I 627
- \underleftarrow (amsmath), →II 184
- \underleftrightharpoon (amsmath), →II 184
- \underline, →II [183](#), 594
 - (underoverlap), →II 190
 - underline value (dashundergaps), →I 191
 - underlined value (changes), →I 248
- \UnderlinedPar (fancypar), →I 147
- underlining text, →I [189f.](#), 197f., 664
 - customizing, →I 197
 - fill-in gaps in forms, →I 190, 191
 - limitations with soul package, →I 195
- underoverlap package, →II 186, [189f.](#)
- \underrightarrow (amsmath), →II 184
- underscore package, →I 151f.
- underscore, in text, →I 151f.
- \underset (amsmath), →II 179
- \undertilde (accents), →II 177
- uni-wtal-ger biblatex style (uni-wtal-ger), →II 455
- uni-wtal-lin biblatex style (uni-wtal-lin), →II 455
- unic OpenType feature (fontspec), →I [717](#), 718
- Unicase value (fontspec), →I [717](#), 718
- Unicode
 - font features (OTF), →I 713–727
 - coloring, →I 714
 - config file, →I 728
 - digit styles, →I 716, 717
 - glyph variants, →I 722f., 724ff.
 - Kerning, →I 721, 722
 - ligatures, →I 720, 721
 - listing available features, →I 715, 716
 - scaling, →I 714
 - small capitals, →I 717, 718
 - sub and superscript glyphs, →I 718ff.
 - font selection, →I 705–728
 - additional fonts, →I 711, 712
 - declaration files, →I 710
 - main document, →I 706, 707, 708, 709f.
 - slanted, →I 710
 - small capitals, →I 709, 710
 - swash fonts, →I 710
 - TU font encoding, →I 658
- Unicode engine specialties, →I [18](#), 78, 297, 331, 652, 657f., 660, 670ff., 674ff., 681, 687, 694f., 698f., 701, 703–706, 732, 749, 755–758, 760, 767f., →II 7, 10, 12f., 15f., 18, 20, 23, 27, 32, 38, 44ff., 48ff., 52f., 58, 60, 63, 66f., 73ff., 78f., 83, 92, 99, 101, 103, 121, 253f., 265, 267, 270, 273f., 276f., 279, 281f., 284ff., 289, 291, 299, 310, 324, 341, 729, 758, 761, 764, 775, 781
- math setup, →II [253–260](#), 265, 267, 270, 273f., 276f., 279, 281f., 285f., 289, 291
- unicode-math package, →I 7, 18, 679, →II 226, [253–260](#), 267, 271
- \UnicodeEncodingName, →I 767
- unicodefont.tex file (unicodefonttable), →I 670, [730](#), →II 229, 287
- unicodefonttable package, →I 670, [728ff.](#), →II 100
- unified biblatex style (biblatex-unified), →II 459, [460](#)
- Uniform Resource Locators (URLs), see URLs
- uninstall keyword (l3build), →II 607
- uniqueist key/option (biblatex), →II 472, 501, [549](#)
- uniquename key/option (biblatex), →II 408, 472, 501, [549](#)
- \unit (siunitx), →I [169](#), 170, 173, 175f.
- unit key (microtype), →I 134f.
- unitcntnoreset option (bibtopic), →II 579
- \unitlength rigid length, →I [602](#), 605, 609ff., →II 680 (overpic), →I 593f.
- units key (graphicx), →I [591](#), 592
- units, scientific notation, →I 169, 170ff., 173, 175f.
- universalis package, →II 87
- Universalis fonts, description/examples, →II 87
- univie-ling biblatex style (univie-ling), →II 455
- unjustified paragraphs, →I 121–125

- `\unkern`, →I 148
- `unlessunique` value (thmtools), →I 285
- `unlessunique` value (thmtools), →I 285
- `unpack.ins` file, →II 603f.
- `unpublished` BibTeX entry type, →II 386, 391
- `unrelated` syntax, →II 684, 742
- `\unskip`, →I 207, 260, 276f.
 - (varioref), →I 84
- `unsorted` citation style, →II 483
- `unsrt` BibTeX style, →II 411, 412, 421, 422, 423f.
 - (biblatex), →II 438
 - (bibtopic), →II 579
 - (notoccite), →II 483
- `unsrtnat` BibTeX style (natbib), →II 424, 498, 499
- `\untagged` (tagging), →I 31
- `untaggedblock` env. (tagging), →I 31
- `\UOLaught` (underoverlap), →II 190
- `\UOLoverbrace` (underoverlap), →II 189
- `\UOLoverline` (underoverlap), →II 189
- `\UOLunderbrace` (underoverlap), →II 189
- `\UOLunderline` (underoverlap), →II 189
- `up` option (titlesec), →I 40
- `up` syntax (*font shape*), →I 671, 734, 735
- `up` value
 - (caption), →I 542
 - (unicode-math), →II 260
- `\upalpha` math symbol α (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 250
- `\Uparrow` math symbol \Uparrow , →II 190, 219
- `\uparrow` math symbol \uparrow , →II 190, 219
- `\upbeta` math symbol β
 - (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 250
 - (unicode-math), →II 258
- `updated` BibTeX field (jurabib), →II 534
- `\updatename` (jurabib), →II 534
- `\updatesep` (jurabib), →II 534
- `\updefault`, →I 671
- `\upDelta` math symbol Δ
 - (ccfonts), →II 239
 - (cmbright), →II 240
 - (mathpazo), →II 251
 - (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 250
- `\Updownarrow` math symbol \Updownarrow , →II 190, 219
- `\updownarrow` math symbol \updownarrow , →II 190, 219
- `\upharpoonleft` math symbol \upharpoonleft (amssymb), →II 219
- `\upharpoonright` math symbol \upharpoonright (amssymb), →II 219
- `uphi11` value (tcolorbox), →I 618
- `upint` option
 - (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 244, 249, 274f., 280
 - (notomath), →II 252, 287, 295
- `upload` keyword (l3build), →II 612
- `uploadconfig` key (l3build), →II 612, 613
- `\uplus` math symbol \uplus , →II 215
- `upmendex` program, →I 12, →II 298, 327f., 344, 347f., 350f., 354f., 359f., 363, 364–370, 371, 593
 - Cyrillic alphabet, →II 327
 - multilingual documents, →II 327
- `\upOmega` math symbol Ω
 - (ccfonts), →II 239
 - (cmbright), →II 240
 - (mathpazo), →II 251
 - (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245, 250
- `Uppercase` value (fontspec), →I 716, 722, 725, 726
- `\uppercase`, problems with, →II 327
- `UppercasePetiteCaps` value (fontspec), →I 717
- `UppercaseSmallCaps` value (fontspec), →I 717, 718
- `uppersorbian` option (babel), →II 301
- `upquote` key (listings), →I 303, 326, 328
- `upquote` package, →I 302f., 305
- `upref` package, →II 129
- `upright` option, →II 283
 - (fourier), →II 283
- `upright` value (unicode-math), →II 256, 258
- `upright` font shape, →I 654, 661
- `UprightFeatures` key (fontspec), →I 727
- `UprightFont` key (fontspec), →I 709, 710
- `uprightGreek` option (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245
- `\uproot` (amsmath), →II 199, 200
- `\upshape`, →I 662f., 664f., 667, 671, 697, 735
- `\Upsilon` math symbol Υ , →II 212
- `\upsilon` math symbol υ , →II 212
- `upTeX`, →II 299, 331, *see also* Unicode engine specialities
- `\uparrows` math symbol \uparrows (amssymb), →II 219
- `\urcorner` math symbol \urcorner (amssymb), →II 224
- `uri` key (hyperref|bookmark), →I 104, 106
- `uri` package, →I 202ff.
- URIs (Uniform Resource Identifiers)
 - linking to, →I 203f.
 - typesetting, →I 202, 203, 204
- `\urisetup` (uri), →I 203
- `\url`
 - (custom-bib), →II 430
 - (hyperref), →I 100, 102, 198, 201, 202, 204, 624
 - (natbib), →II 500
 - (url), →I 198, 199–202, →II 405
 - error in moving argument, →I 199
 - problems using, →I 199
 - problems with UTF-8 characters, →I 201
- `url` BibTeX field, →II 390, 391
 - (biblatex), →II 387, 390
 - (custom-bib), →II 428, 430
 - (jurabib), →II 510, 534
 - (natbib), →II 500
- `url` package, →I 102, 198–202, 204, →II 430, 796
- `\UrlBigBreaks` (url), →I 201
- `urlborder` key/option (hyperref), →I 103
- `urlbordercolor` key/option (hyperref), →I 103
- `\UrlBreaks` (url), →I 201
- `urlbst` package, →II 390
- `urlcolor` key/option (hyperref), →I 102, 103, 202, 204
- `urldate` BibTeX field, →II 390, 400
 - (biblatex), →II 387, 390, 391, 392, 400
 - (jurabib), →II 534
- `\urldatecomment` (jurabib), →II 534
- `\urldef` (url), →I 199, 200

`urlencode` key (`hyperref`), –I 100
`\UrlLeft` (`url`), –I 200, 201
 spaces ignored in, –I 200
`\UrlNoBreaks` (`url`), –I 201
`\urlprefix` (`custom-bib`), –II 430
`\UrlRight` (`url`), –I 200, 201
 spaces ignored in, –I 200
 URLs (Uniform Resource Locators)
 bibliographies, –II 390f., 392, 500, 533f.
 line breaks in, –I 199
 linking to, –I 201f., 204
 typesetting, –I 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204
`\urlstyle` (`url`), –I 200, 201f., 204
 URW Classico fonts, description/examples, –II 71
 URW Garamond No. 8 fonts, description/examples,
 –I 67, 711, –II 43
`\usage` (`doc`), –II 594, 596
 Use of `\??? doesn't match its definition`, –II 714
 `useasboundingbox` key (`tikz`), –I 638, 643
 `usecounter` key (`tcolorbox`), –I 627
 `usecounterfrom` key (`tcolorbox`), –I 627
`\useasboundingbox` (`tikz`), –I 638
 `UseAttachments` value (`hyperref`), –I 107
`\usebibmacro` (`biblatex`), –II 477, 564
`\usebox`, –I 408, 540, –II 631, 669, 670
 error using, –II 732
`\usefont`, –I 738, –II 10, 227
`\UseHook`, –II 676, 682, 683
 `usej` attribute (`babel`), –II 307
`\UseLegacyTextSymbols`, –I 697
`\UseName`, –I 260, 528, –II 574, 644, 645, 724
 `USenglish` option (`babel`), –II 301
 `UseNone` value (`hyperref`), –I 107
 `UseOC` value (`hyperref`), –I 107
`\UseOneTimeHook`, –II 682, 683
 `UseOutlines` value (`hyperref`), –I 107
`\usepackage`, –I 19, 22, 23f., 25, 26, 110, 117,
 –II 695f., 698f., 703f., 749, 817
 error using, –II 723, 736, 742
 hooks for, –II 677
 release information, –II 696
 warning using, –II 760, 765
`\usepostamble` (`docstrip`), –II 602, 604
`\usepreamble` (`docstrip`), –II 604
 `useprefix` key/`option` (`biblatex`), –II 501, 545f.
 user commands, defining for index generation, –II 349f.
 user groups, –II 793, *see also* help resources
 user messages, generating, –II 602f.
`\UseRawInputEncoding`, –II 729
`\useshortands` (`babel`), –II 306, 335
`\usetag` (`tagging`), –I 30, 31
`\UseTextAccent`, –I 766
`\UseTextSymbol`, –I 703f., 766
 `UseThumbs` value (`hyperref`), –I 107
`\usetikzlibrary` (`tikz`), –I 632, 635, 639–642, 644,
 –II 162, 307
`\useunder` (`ulem`), –I 190
`\UseVerb` (`fancyvrb`|`fvextra`), –I 319f.

`\UseVerb*` (`fancyvrb`|`fvextra`), –I 319
`\UseVerbatim` (`fancyvrb`|`fvextra`), –I 320
 `usorbian` option (`babel`), –II 316
 UTF-8 support
 encoding, –I 650, 651f., 692, 755, 758f.
 problems in `\url` and `\path`, –I 201
 problems in `\verb` and `verbatim`, –I 296
 `utf8` option (`inputenc`), –I 651, 692
 `utf8enc.dfu` file, –I 759
 `utopia` option
 (`newtxmath`), –II 283
 (`newtxtext`), –II 248
 `utopia obsolete` package, –I 691, *see instead* `erewhon`
 Utopia fonts, description/examples, –II 58
 in math and text, –II 283
`\uuline` (`ulem`), –I 190
 `uuline` value (changes), –I 248
`\uwave` (`ulem`), –I 190
 `uwave` value (changes), –I 247, 248
`\Uwforbf` option (`ulem`), –I 190
`ux` syntax (*font series*), –I 732

V

`V` syntax (`boldline`), –I 468
`\v` text accent \checkmark , –I 775
`v` syntax (*cmd/env decl*), –II 633, 636
 error using, –II 728
 `valign` key
 (`adjustbox`), –I 598, 599
 (`keyvaltable`), –I 500
 (`tcolorbox`), –I 618, 629
 `valignlower` key (`tcolorbox`), –I 618
`\value`, –I 257, 370, 492, –II 648, 687f., 690, 692, 716, 769
 error using, –II 732
 `vanchor` key (`draftwatermark`), –I 411
 `vancouver` `biblatex` style (`biblatex-vancouver`), –II 445
`\var` (`tlc`), –I 152
 `varbb` option
 (`newpxmath`), –II 250
 (`newtxmath`), –II 247, 265
 (`notomath`), –II 252
`\varbigcirc` math symbol \bigcirc (`stmaryrd`), –II 216
`\varbigtriangledown` math symbol ∇ (`stmaryrd`), –II 215
`\varbigtriangleup` math symbol \triangle (`stmaryrd`), –II 215
`\varcopyright` math symbol \copyright (`stmaryrd`), –II 213
`\varcurlyvee` math symbol \vee (`stmaryrd`), –II 215
`\vardownarrow` math symbol \downarrow (old-arrows), –II 220
`\varepsilon` math symbol ε , –II 136, 147, 199, 212
 `varg` option
 (`newpxmath`), –II 250
 (`newtxmath`), –II 246, 247
`\vargets` math symbol \leftarrow (old-arrows), –II 220
`\varhat` math accent $\hat{}$ (`tlc`|`eulervm`), –II 242
`\varhookrightarrow` math symbol \hookrightarrow (old-arrows), –II 220
 `variable` key (`tikz`), –I 637
 `variablett` option (`lmodern`), –I 688
`\varinjlim` math operator \varinjlim (`amsmath`), –II 192, 193

- varioref package, →I 79–86, 89, 94, →II 302, 978, 981, *see also* cross-references; cleveref package
 \backslash varkappa math symbol \varkappa (amssymb), →II 212
 \backslash varliminf math operator $\liminf x$ (amsmath), →II 192, 193
 \backslash varlimsup math operator $\limsup x$ (amsmath), →II 193, 194
 \backslash varnothing math symbol \varnothing (amssymb), →II 213
 \backslash varoast math symbol \otimes (stmaryrd), →II 216
 \backslash varobar math symbol \oplus (stmaryrd), →II 216
 \backslash varobslash math symbol \odot (stmaryrd), →II 216
 \backslash varocircle math symbol \odot (stmaryrd), →II 216
 \backslash varodot math symbol \odot (stmaryrd), →II 216
 \backslash varogreaterthan math symbol \oslash (stmaryrd), →II 216
 \backslash varoiint math symbol \oint (esint), →II 169
 \backslash varointclockwise math symbol \oint (esint), →II 169
 (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 244, 249
 \backslash varointclockwisel math symbol \oint (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245
 \backslash varointclockwiseup math symbol \oint (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II 245
 \backslash varointctrlockwise math symbol \oint (esint), →II 169
 \backslash varolessthan math symbol \ominus (stmaryrd), →II 216
 \backslash varominus math symbol \ominus (stmaryrd), →II 216
 \backslash varoplus math symbol \oplus (stmaryrd), →II 216
 \backslash varoslash math symbol \oslash (stmaryrd), →II 216
 \backslash varotimes math symbol \otimes (stmaryrd), →II 216
 \backslash varovee math symbol \oslash (stmaryrd), →II 216
 \backslash varowedge math symbol \oslash (stmaryrd), →II 216
 \backslash varphi math symbol φ , →II 136, 147, 199, 212
 \backslash varpi math symbol ϖ , →II 212
 \backslash varprojlim math operator $\varprojlim x$ (amsmath), →II 192, 193
 \backslash varpropto math symbol \propto (amssymb), →II 221
 \backslash varrho math symbol ϱ , →II 212
 \backslash varsearrow math symbol \searrow (old-arrows), →II 220
 \backslash varsigma math symbol ς , →II 212
 \backslash varsubsetneq math symbol \subsetneq (amssymb), →II 218
 \backslash varsubsetneqq math symbol \subsetneqq (amssymb), →II 218
 \backslash varsupsetneq math symbol \supsetneq (amssymb), →II 218
 \backslash varsupsetneqq math symbol \supsetneqq (amssymb), →II 218
 \backslash vartheta math symbol ϑ , →II 212, 261–296
 varthm env. (tlc/thmtools), →I 288
 \backslash vartimes math symbol \times (stmaryrd), →II 215
 \backslash varto math symbol \rightarrow (old-arrows), →II 220
 \backslash vartriangle math symbol \triangle (amssymb), →II 218
 \backslash vartriangleleft math symbol \triangleleft (amssymb), →II 218
 \backslash vartriangleright math symbol \triangleright (amssymb), →II 218
 varumlaut option (yfonts), →II 104, 105f.
 varvw option (newtxmath), →II 246, 247
 varwidth syntax (biblatex), →II 487
 \backslash vbadness \TeX counter, →II 755, 761, 763
 \backslash vbeta (tlc/bm), →I 674
 \backslash vbox, →I 692, →II 671, 770
 in \TeX warning message, →II 755, 757, 761, 763
 VBScript value (listings), →I 323
 \backslash vcenter, →II 159
 \backslash Vdash math symbol \Vdash (amssymb), →II 221
 \backslash vDash math symbol \Vdash (amssymb), →II 221
 \backslash vdash math symbol \vdash , →II 221
 \backslash vdots math symbol \vdots , →II 181, 223
 (mathtools), →II 182
 \backslash vdotswithin (mathtools), →II 181, 182
 \backslash vec math accent $\vec{}$, →II 176, 214
 \backslash Vector (pict2e), →I 594, 607
 \backslash vector, →I 594
 error using, →II 718
 (pict2e), →I 604
 vectors (graphic), drawing, →I 604, 607
 \backslash vee math symbol \vee , →II 215
 \backslash veebar math symbol \veebar (amssymb), →II 215
 \backslash veqns (tlc/varioref), →I 82
 \backslash Verb
 (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 318
 (fvextra), →I 321
 \backslash verb, →I 297, 298, 299, 300f., 318, 319, 320, 321, 616,
 →II 627, 633, 655
 error using, →II 743
 in arguments, →I 301
 problems with UTF-8 input, →I 296
 rotating output, →I 592, 593
 (doc|shortvrb), →I 298, →II 587
 (ltxdoc), →II 598
 (tabularx), restricted usage, →I 452
 (tabulary), restricted usage, →I 452
 (upquote), →I 302
 (widetable), not supported, →I 454
 \backslash Verb*
 (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 318
 (fvextra), →I 322
 \backslash verb*, →I 297, 452
 (doc|shortvrb), →I 299
 Verbatim env.
 (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 304, 305–315, 316, 317, 321
 (fvextra), →I 303, 305, 307, 310ff., 314
 verbatim env., →I 136, 296, 298, 301, 304,
 →II 627, 717, *see also* typed text; typewriter font
 error using, →II 743
 problems with UTF-8 input, →I 296
 (doc), →II 587, 595
 (upquote), →I 302
 (verbatim), →I 301
 verbatim package, →I 301f., 303
 verbatim delimiters
 doc package, →II 585f.
 docstrip, →II 605
 verbatim text, *see* typed text
 Verbatim* env. (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 304, 312, 712
 verbatim* env., →I 297
 (doc), →II 595
 (verbatim), →I 301
 \backslash verbatimchar (doc), →II 596
 \backslash VerbatimEnvironment (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 315, 316
 \backslash VerbatimFootnotes (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 320
 \backslash VerbatimInput (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 315, 316
 VerbatimOut env. (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 315, 316
 \backslash verbbox (newverbs), →I 300
 \backslash Verbdef (newverbs), →I 300, 301

`\verbdef` (newverbs), →I 300, 301, →II 743
`\Verbdef*` (newverbs), →I 300
`\verbdef*` (newverbs), →I 300
 verbose biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, **437**, 462, 539
 verbose key/option
 (geometry), →I 383
 (microtype), →I **130**, 131, 132
 verbose option
 (cite), →II 481
 (placeins), →I 524
 (wrapfig), →I 537
 verbose citations, →II 437*f.*, 440, 442, 444*f.*, 448–451, 453, 460, 464*f.*, 467*f.*, 473, **537–541**
 biblatex package, →II 538, 539*ff.*
 definition, →II 473
 full citations in running text, →II 539
 verbose-archaeology biblatex style
 (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446
 verbose-ibid biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, **539**
 verbose-ibid-archaeology biblatex style
 (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446
 verbose-inote biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, 539, **540**
 verbose-note biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, 539, **540**
 verbose-trad1 biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, **539**, 540*f.*, 560
 verbose-trad2 biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435
 verbose-trad2note-archaeology biblatex style
 (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446
 verbose-trad3 biblatex style (biblatex), →II 435, **539**
`\verbvisiblespace`, →I 297
`\verbx` (tlc/fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 318
 Verilog value (listings), →I 323
 version key
 (qrcode), →I 613
 (unicode-math), →II 260
 version option (snapshot), →I 112
 version package, →I 30
 version control, →I 30*ff.*, →II **615**, 616*f.*, 618*f.*
 versions, selecting for printing, →I 30, 31, 32
`\Vert` math symbol $\|$, →II **190**, **213**
`\vert` math symbol $|$, →II **190**, **213**
 vertbar env. (vertbars), →I 251
 vertbars package, →I 237, **251**
 Vertical key (fontspec), →I 727
 vertical extensions, math symbols, →II 190*f.*
 vertical rules (graphic lines), →I 470*f.*
 VerticalKana value (fontspec), →I 725
 VerticalPosition key (fontspec), →I **718*f.***, 720
 .vf file extension, →II 1
`\vfill`, →I 353, 359, →II **654*f.***, 666
 VHDL value (listings), →I 323
 vi value (upmendex), →II 369
 vietnamese option (babel), →II 301
 Viewport key (adjustbox), →I 596
 viewport key
 (adjustbox), →I 596
 (graphicx), →I **580**, 581*f.*, 583
 vignette library (tcolorbox), →I 619, 626, 627
`\Virgo` text symbol \mathbb{V} (marvosym), →II 117
 visual formatting, →I 414–429
 visualFAQ-fr.pdf file, →II 788
 visualFAQ.pdf file, →II 787
 VisualTikZ package, →I 646
`\vitem` (tlc/fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 320
 vkna OpenType feature (fontspec), →I 725
`\vline`, →I **437**, 468, 470
 vmargin key/option (geometry), →I 381
 vmarginratio key/option (geometry), →I **379**, 380, 381
`\vmathbb` (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II **247**, 250
 Vmatrix env. (amsmath), →II **154**, 155
 vmatrix env. (amsmath), →II 154
 Vmatrix* env. (mathtools), →II 155
 vmatrix* env. (mathtools), →II 155
 vmode boolean, →II 691
`\voffset` rigid length, →I **368**, 381
 voffset key/option (geometry), →I 381
 voids syntax, →II **684**, 685, 742
 volkskunde biblatex style (biblatex-archaeology), →II 446, **452**
`\volt` (siunitx), →I 170
 volume BibTeX field, →II 382*f.*, 386, **389**, 406, 418
 (biblatex), →II 567
 volume title, bibliographies, →II 534
`\volumeformat` (jurabib), →II 528
 volumetitle BibTeX field (jurabib), →II 534
`\Vpageref` (cleveref), →I 89
`\vpageref`
 (cleveref), →I 79, 86, **89**
 (varioref), →I 77, 79, **80**, 81, 82, 83, 85, 565
`\vpagerefcompare` (varioref), →I **81**, 82
`\vpagerefnearby` (varioref), →I 82
`\Vpagerefrange` (cleveref), →I 89
`\vpagerefrange`
 (cleveref), →I 89
 (varioref), →I 79, **81**
`\vpagerefrange*` (varioref), →I 81
`\vphantom`, →II 179, **200**, 203
 vpos key (draftwatermark), →I 410
`\Vref`
 (cleveref), →I 86, **89**
 (varioref), →I 79
`\vref`
 (cleveref), →I 79, 86, **89**
 (varioref), →I **79*f.***, 83, 85, →II 745, 978
 producing error, →I 85
`\Vrefformat` (varioref), →I 84
`\vrefformat` (varioref), →I 84
`\vrefpagenum` (varioref), →I 82
`\vrefpagerange` (varioref), →I 81
`\Vrefrange` (cleveref), →I 89
`\vrefrange`
 (cleveref), →I 89
 (varioref), →I 79, **81**
`\vrefrangeformat` (varioref), →I 84
`\vrefshowerrors` (varioref), →I 85
`\vrefwarning` (varioref), →I 85

- VRL value (listings), →I 323
 - \vrule, →II 202, **668**
 - vscale key/option (geometry), →I **379**, 380, 382
 - Vsmallmatrix env. (mathtools), →II 155
 - vsmallmatrix env. (mathtools), →II 155
 - Vsmallmatrix* env. (mathtools), →II 155
 - vsmallmatrix* env. (mathtools), →II 155
 - \vspace, →I 598, →II **654**, 655f., 664–668, 738
 - error using, →II 727
 - in tabular cells, →I 440
 - problems using, →II 655f.
 - (subcaption), →I 555
 - vspace key
 - (adjustbox), →I 597, **598**
 - (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 309
 - \vspace*, →I 48, 208, →II **654**, 655, 665f.
 - vspace* key (adjustbox), →I 598
 - vtex option
 - (crop), →I 413
 - (geometry), →I 383
 - vvarbb option
 - (newpxmath), →II 250
 - (newtxmath), →II **247**, 273f., 280, 283
 - (notomath), →II 287, 295
 - \Vvdash math symbol \Vdash (amssymb), →II 221
 - \vwmathbb (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II **247**, 250
- ## W
- W syntax
 - (array), →I **438**, **439**, 446f., 477
 - (keyfloat), →I **568**, 571
 - w key (keyfloat), →I 568, **569**, 570–573
 - w syntax
 - (array), →I **438**, **439**, 446f., 477
 - (dashundergaps), →I 191
 - w value (hvfloat), →I **561**, 563, 564
 - Waldi's fonts, description/examples, →II 116
 - \WaDignorenext (widows-and-orphans), →I **426**, →II 982
 - \WaOparameters (widows-and-orphans), →I 426
 - \WaOsetup (widows-and-orphans), →I 426
 - \warn (tlc/todonotes), →I 241
 - warn option (textcomp), →I **701**, →II 757, 760
 - warning option (snapshot), →I 112
 - warning value (widows-and-orphans), →I 425
 - warning messages,
 - II 749–765, *see also* messages; troubleshooting
 - warningshow option (tracefnt), →I 704
 - warningthreshold option (resizgather), →II 206
 - wasysm package, →II **116**, **169f.**, 720
 - watermark_color key (tcolorbox), →I 624
 - watermark_graphics key (tcolorbox), →I 623
 - watermark_opacity key (tcolorbox), →I 623f.
 - watermark_overzoom key (tcolorbox), →I 624
 - watermark_stretch key (tcolorbox), →I 624
 - watermark_text key (tcolorbox), →I 624
 - watermark_zoom key (tcolorbox), →I 623
 - watermarks, →I **409**, 410f., 623f., →II **680**
 - \watt (siunitx), →I 170
 - \wc (uri), →I 203f.
 - \wd, →I 540
 - Web-O-Mints fonts, description/examples, →II 119
 - \weber (siunitx), →I 170
 - \webo (tlc), →II 120
 - \webofamily (tlc), →II 120
 - \webosym (tlc), →II 120
 - \wedge math symbol \wedge , →II 215
 - weight, fonts, →I 655f.
 - welsh option (babel), →II 301
 - west value (tcolorbox), →I 618
 - \whiledo (ifthen), →II 692
 - white space
 - around text, →I 371
 - in tables, →I 453ff.
 - italic correction, →I 661, 662ff.
 - whitelist key/option (lua-check-hyphen), →II 775
 - who key (typed-checklist), →I **294**, 295f.
 - wide key
 - (enumitem), →I 273
 - (hvfloat), →I **561**, 563
 - \widehat math accent $\widehat{}$, →II 176, 182, **183**, **214**
 - (bm), →II 237
 - widen key/option (dashundergaps), →I 191
 - \widering (newtxmath|newpxmath), →II **245**, 250
 - widespace value (tlc/caption), →I 550
 - widest key (enumitem), →I **272**, 273
 - widetable package, →I 448, **453f.**
 - widetabular env. (widetable), →I **454**, 455
 - \widetilde math accent $\widetilde{}$,
 - II 151, 176, 182, **183**, **203**, **214**, 261–296
 - widget key (tcolorbox), →I 621
 - \widowpenalty TeX counter, →I **421**, 424, 425, →II **770**, 773
 - widows key/option (widows-and-orphans), →I 426
 - widows and orphans, →I **420–424**, **425f.**
 - widows-and-orphans package, →I **424ff.**, →II 981
 - \Width (adjustbox), →I **596**, 599
 - width, *see* space parameters
 - \width, →II **661**, 662
 - (adjustbox), →I **596**, 598
 - (graphics|graphicx), →I 589
 - (wrapfig), →I **537**, 538
 - width key
 - (adjustbox), →I **596**, 597, 599, 601
 - (diagbox), →I **479**, **480**, 481
 - (graphicx), →I 565, 566f., 571, **581**, 583ff., 594, 628f.
 - (keyvaltable), →I 497
 - (multicolrule), →I 361
 - (overpic), →I 594
 - (tcolorbox), →I **615**, **616**, 617, 630
 - width key/option
 - (caption), →I 542
 - (crop), →I 412
 - (geometry), →I **379**, 380, 382
 - width syntax (*rules*), →I 401, →II **668**, 669
 - \widthof (calc), →I 453, 480, →II **688**, 689
 - wiley value (footmisc), →I 211
 - windycity biblatex style (windycity), →II 445

withafterword syntax (biblatex), →II 565
 withAsciilist option (typed-checklist), →I 295
 within key (thmtools), →I 285
 withprosodicmarks attribute (babel), →II 307, 313
 \withspace (tlc), →II 644
 wllw key (keyfloat), →I 569
 wn key (keyfloat), →I 569, 571
 wo key (keyfloat), →I 569, 571
 word option (continue), →I 407, 408f.
 words value (csquotes), →I 182
 \wordsep (titlesec), →I 45
 WordSpace key (fontspec), →I 715, 728
 WordSpace value (fontspec), →I 728
 wordspacearound option (extdash), →I 151
 workflow
 annotations, →I 237-244
 editorial commands, →I 245, 246ff., 249, 250f.
 \wp math symbol \wp , →II 213
 wp key (keyfloat), →I 569, 571
 \wr math symbol \wr , →II 215
 wrap syntax (titlesec), →I 43, 44, 46
 wrapfig package, →I 334, 528, 536ff., 567, 571
 combined with float, →I 538
 used by keyfloat, →I 571
 wrapfigure env. (wrapfig), →I 423, 536, 537f.
 wrapfloat env. (wrapfig), →I 536, 538
 \wrapoverhang rigid length (wrapfig), →I 538
 wrapping text around images, →I 535, 536, 537f., 571
 recommendations, →I 537
 wratable env. (wrapfig), →I 536, 537f.
 \write, →I 257, →II 679, 681
 no room for new \write, →II 734
 writing data verbatim, →I 315
 ww key (keyfloat), →I 569, 571
 www BibTeX entry type (jurabib), →II 533, 534

X

X syntax
 (diagbox), →I 481
 (tabularx), →I 448, 449f., 453, 477
 (xltabular), →I 463f.
 X value (keyvaltable), →I 495, 496, 497f.
 x key
 (graphicx), →I 591, 592
 (tikz), →I 633, 634, 645
 x syntax
 (font series), →I 732, 733
 (dashrule), →II 669
 (siunitx), →I 168, 169
 x-height, →I 654, 656, 660, 689, 691, 745,
 →II 25, 33, 35f., 47, 49, 57, 64f., 68, 88, 103
 X2 font encoding, →I 737, →II 323f.
 fonts encoded in, →I 685, →II 13
 x_Lradius key (tikz), →I 637f.
 XCharter package, →I 691, →II 50, 274, 315
 xcharter option (newtxtext), →II 247
 XCharter fonts, description/examples
 in math and text, →II 274f.

xcite package, →I 95
 xcolor option (changes), →I 250
 xcolor package, →I 17, 102, 167, 250, 410, 466, 497, 599,
 →II 207f., 800, 980
 error using, →II 733, 741
 xcomment package, →I 30
 xdata BibTeX entry type (biblatex), →I xxiv,
 →II 387, 402, 403f., 405
 xdata BibTeX field (biblatex), →II 387, 403, 404f.
 xdata= syntax (biblatex), →II 404f.
 X₂TeX, →I 652, *see also* Unicode engine specialities
 xetex option (geometry), →I 383
 xetex program, →II 730, 786
 xfrac package, →I 164ff., →II 802
 xgathered env. (tlc/mathtools), →II 142
 \xgets (tlc/amsmath), →II 641
 xgreek package, →II 341
 \xhookleftarrow (mathtools), →II 163
 \xhookrightarrow (mathtools), →II 163
 \Xi math symbol Ξ , →II 212
 \xi math symbol ξ , →II 151, 174, 212
 xindex program, →II 344, 370
 xindy program, →I xxiii, 12, →II 343f., 363, 370
 XITS fonts, description/examples
 in math and text, →II 280f.
 \xLeftarrow (mathtools), →II 163
 \xleftarrow (amsmath), →II 163, 641
 \xleftharpoonup (mathtools), →II 163
 \xleftharpoondown (mathtools), →II 163
 \xleftmargin key
 (fancyvrb|fvextra), →I 306
 (listings), →I 326f., 328
 \xLeftrightarrow
 (extarrows), →II 164
 (mathtools), →II 163
 \xleftrightharpoonup
 (extarrows), →II 164
 (mathtools), →II 163
 \xleftrightharpoons (mathtools), →II 163
 \xlongequal (extarrows), →II 164
 \xLongleftarrow (extarrows), →II 164
 \xlongleftarrow (extarrows), →II 164
 \xlongleftrightharpoonup (extarrows), →II 164
 \xLongrightarrow (extarrows), →II 164
 \xlongrightarrow (extarrows), →II 164
 xltabular env. (xltabular), →I 463, 464
 xltabular value
 (keyvaltable), →I 497
 (typed-checklist), →I 296
 xltabular package, →I 463f., 497
 used by typed-checklist, →I 296
 \xmapsto (mathtools), →II 163
 \xmathstrut (mathtools), →II 202
 XML env.
 (tlc/float), →I 530f.
 (tlc/rotating), →I 535
 (tlc/wrapfig), →I 538
 XML value (listings), →I 323

This page intentionally left blank

People

- Abbink, Mike, →II 30, 96
Abbott, Peter, →II 789
Achilles, Alf-Christian, →II 413
Adriaens, Hendri, →I 275
Aguilar-Sierra, Alejandro, →II 379
Alessi, Robert, →II 63, 341
Aluthge, Dilum, →II 458
André, Jacques, →I ii
Arseneau, Donald, →I 30, 125, 146,
152, 189, 198, 214, 405,
407, 434, 467, 492, 524,
536, 675,
→II 157, 173, 189, 207,
478, 483, 485, 571, 796
ASAKURA, Takuto, →II 786
Ashton, James, →II 372
Avdeev, Nikolai, →II 378, 456
- Ball, Alex, →II 444, 452
Barr, Michael, →II 160, 796
Barroca, Leonor, →I 534
Baskerville, John (1706–1775),
→II 47
Basso, Pierre, →II 578
Beccari, Claudio, →I 454,
→II 328, 796
Beebe, Nelson, →I xli, →II 226,
413ff., 417, 419, 796
Beeton, Barbara, →I ii, →II 226, 796
Beffara, Emmanuel, →I 286
Belaïche, Vincent, →I 154, →II 814
- Benguïat, Ed, →II 49, 69
Benton, Morris Fuller (1872–1948),
→II 35, 54, 61, 81
Berdnikov, Alexander, →II 324, 796
Berger, Jens, →II 507, 796
Berner, Conrad, →II 41
Berry, Karl, →II 785, 796, 813
Berthold, Hermann, →II 53
Beyene, Berhanu, →II 341
Bezos, Javier, →I xli, 26, 40, 59,
261, →II 177, 300, 796f.
Bigelow, Charles, →I 302,
→II 15, 21, 24, 53, 89, 92,
95, 278, 797
Bitouzé, Denis, →II 461
Bodoni, Giambattista (1740–1813),
→II 60f.
Bonislavsky, Brian J., →II 99
Bosma, Jelle, →II 49
Bossert, Lukas C.,
→II 446, 452ff., 457
Böttcher, Stephan, →I 334
Bovani, Michel, →II 59, 119, 283
Braams, Johannes, →I xli, 3, 251,
371, 374, 456, →II 300,
584, 600, 797, 810, 975
Brailsford, David, →I ii
Braun, Ingram, →II 446
Breger, Herbert, →II 813
Breitenlohner, Peter (1940–2015),
→II 797
- Bringhurst, Robert,
→I 188f., 216, →II 797
Brodowski, Dominik, →II 465
Brooks, Moses, →II 802
Budyta, Małgorzata, →II 77, 79
Bühmann, Andreas, →I 649, 669
Burykin, Alexei, →II 796
Butcher, Judith, →II 798
- Caignaert, Christophe, →II 17f., 267
Callegari, Sergio, →I 409
Camps, Jean-Baptiste, →II 453
Carlisle, David, →I 3f., 40, 94ff.,
153, 178, 275, 377, 384,
396, 437, 448, 450, 459,
466, 470, 481, 525, 532,
603, 676,
→II 157, 235, 600, 689,
784, 792, 798f., 809f.
Carnase, Tom, →II 69
Carroll, Lewis (1832–1898), →I 428
Carter, Matthew, →II 50
Caslon, William (1692–1766),
→II 51
Casteleyn, Jean Pierre, →I 646,
→II 799
Cereda, Paulo, →I 628f., 645,
→II 414, 651
Chang, Bettina, →II 799

- Charette, François,
→II 376, 379, 803
- Chase, Brian, →II 445
- Chen, Pehong, →II 799
- Chou, Yukai, →I 284
- Clawson, James, →II 443
- Cochran, Steven, →I 546, 551
- Coleman, Jack, →I 363
- Corff, Oliver, →II 341
- Cosell, Bernie, →I 675
- Covington, Michael, →I 302
- Cubitt, Toby, →I 86
- Cummings, Melbourne, →I xxxvii
- Dachian, Serguei, →II 341
- Dahlmann, Carsten Ace, →II 455
- Dair, Carl (1912-1967), →II 799
- Dalalyan, Arnak, →II 341
- Daly, Patrick, →I ii, 27,
→II 426, 490, 537, 806
- Daniel, Marco, →I 286, 614, →II 458
- del Peral, Juan Pablo, →II 11
- Descartes, René (1595-1650),
→II vii
- Di Cosmo, Roberto, →II 464
- Didot, Firmin (1764-1836),
→II 42, 60, 62, 107
- Dirac, Paul, →II 173
- Domanov, Oleg, →II 441
- Dorj, Dorjpalam, →II 341
- Dossena, Riccardo, →II 220
- Douros, George, →II 42
- Downes, Michael (1958-2003),
→I 3, 111, 281, →II 128,
133, 146, 180, 799
- Drucbert, Jean-Pierre (1947-2009),
→I 95
- Drummer, Olaf, →II 799
- du Carrois, Ralph, →II 14
- Duchier, Denys, →I 3,
→II 584, 600, 810
- Duffner, Georg, →II 41, 265
- Duggan, Angus, →I 302
- Dunn, Brian, →I 56, 567, →II 984
- Dziedzic, Łukasz, →II 80
- Eckermann, Matthias, →I 339
- Eggers Sørensen, Claus, →II 64
- Eijkhout, Victor, →I 30, →II 800
- El Morabity, Mohamed, →II 27, 80
- Els, Danie, →I 471, →II 178
- Esbati, Arash, →II 70, 86, 90
- Esser, Thomas, →II 786
- Evans, Richard, →II 374
- Fairbairns, Robin (1947-2022),
→I 138, 210, 387,
→II 787, 790, 796
- Farář, Pavel, →II 13, 32
- Fear, Simon, →I 471
- Fernández, José Alberto, →II 574
- Feuersänger, Christian, →I 637
- Fine, Michael, →I 251
- Fischer, Ulrike, →I xli, →II 651, 810
- Flipo, Daniel, →I 5, 141,
→II 17f., 267
- Flynn, Peter, →I ii
- Fournier, Pierre-Simon, →II 35, 50
- Franz, Melchior, →I 192, 411
- Frutiger, Adrian (1928-2015),
→II 87, 89, 91
- Fuenzalida, Rodrigo,
→II 47, 61, 81, 86
- FUJITA, Shinsaku, →I 612, →II 800
- FUKUI, Rei, →II 125, 800
- Fussner, David, →II 440
- Gama, Natanael, →II 98
- Garamond, Claude (1499-1561),
→II 38, 41f., 265
- Gardzielewski, Zygfryd, →II 100
- Gäßlein, Hubert, →I 603
- Gatti, Héctor, →II 70, 86
- Gaulle, Bernard (1946-2007),
→II 341
- Gaultney, Victor, →II 45
- Gelderman, Maarten, →II 800
- Gesang, Philipp, →I 706
- Gibbons, Jeremy, →II 209
- Gill, Eric (1882-1940), →II 70, 75
- Gladkikh, Ivan, →II 73
- Goel, Anil K., →I 463
- Goldberg, Jeffrey, →I 386, 525
- Goossens, Michel, →I xl,
→II 800f., 810
- Gordon, Peter, →I xxxviif., xli,
→II vi, 974
- Göttlinger, Merlin, →II 458
- Goudy, Frederic (1865-1947),
→I 191
- Graham, Ronald, →II 801
- Grahn, Alexander, →I 107
- Granjon, Robert (1513-1589),
→II 42
- Grätzer, George, →II 127, 801
- Gray, Norman, →II 390
- Greenwade, George (1956-2003),
→II 789, 801
- Gregorio, Enrico, →I 95, 362,
→II 414
- Grewe, Richard, →I 293, 494
- Grießhammer, Frank, →II 35
- Grundlingh, Werner, →II 185
- Gundlach, Patrick, →II 775
- Gurari, Eitan (1947-2009), →II 801
- Hagen, Karl, →I 361
- Hailperin, Max, →I 387
- Hakobian, Vardan, →II 341
- Hansen, Thorsten, →II 574, 580
- Hanslow, Paul, →II 57
- Happel, Patrick, →I 361
- Haralambous, Yannis, →I 652,
→II 104, 299, 802, 812
- Harcombe, Keiran, →I 688
- Harders, Harald, →II 240, 372, 390
- Hardy, Matthew, →I ii
- Harendal, Hirwen,
→II 39, 48, 75, 82, 87, 118
- Harrison, Keith, →I xliv, →II 374
- Harrison, Michael, →II 799
- Hart, Horace (1840-1916), →II 802
- Hefferon, Jim, →I 286, →II 790
- Heinz, Carsten, →I 323, →II 802
- Hellström, Lars, →II 2, 803
- Helminck, Aloysius, →II 251
- Helvensteijn, Michiel, →II 189
- Hendrickson, Anders, →I 612
- Henel, Yvon, →I 40
- Henestrosa, Cristobal, →II 15
- Henlich, Thomas, →II 117
- Heslin, Peter, →I 148
- Hoffmann, Jobst, →I 323, →II 802
- Hofstra, Silke, →II 35, 86
- Hoftich, Michal, →II 442, 984
- Høgholm, Morten, →I 164, →II 130,
146, 174, 799, 802

- Holmes, Kris, →I 302,
→II 15, 21, 95, 278
- Hosny, Khaled, →I 706, →II 19, 45,
94, 275, 280, 813
- Hudson, John, →II 57
- Hufflen, Jean-Michel, →II 802
- Hughes, Chelsea, →I 226
- Hunt, Paul D., →II 35
- Huỳnh, Kỳ-Anh, →II 164
- Impallari, Pablo, →II 33, 47, 51, 61,
70, 81, 86
- Ion, Patrick, →II 798
- Jabri, Youssef, →II 323, 341
- Jackowski, Bogusław,
→I 686, 688, 746, →II 271,
273, 275, 280, 284, 288
- Janishevsky, Andrew, →II 324, 796
- Jeffrey, Alan, →I 3, 5,
→II 1, 209, 227, 234, 803
- Jensen, Frank, →II 239, 241, 687
- Johnston, Edward, →II 70
- Jones, David, →II 128, 372, 499
- Jørgensen, Palle, →II 2, 803
- Jurriens, Theo, →I 456
- Just, Jérémy, →II 788
- Kant, Immanuel (1724–1804),
→I 363
- Kastrup, David,
→I 212, 218, 220, 459
- Katsoulidis, Takis, →II 39, 61f.
- Kehr, Roger, →II 370
- Kelkel, Thomas, →II 775
- Kemper, Thorsten, →II 452
- Kempson, Niel, →II 379, 571
- Kettler, Howard (1919–1999),
→II 91
- Khalighi, Vafa, →II 332, 686
- Khodulev, Andrey, →II 326
- Kielhorn, Axel, →II 116
- Kime, Philip, →II 376, 435, 439, 803
- Kimura, David, →II 15
- Kirsch, Daniel, →II 113
- Kleber, Josef, →I 250
- Kleinod, Ekkart, →I 245
- Klever, Jan, →I 38
- Knappen, Jörg, →I 685, 694,
→II 803
- Knuth, Donald, →I ii, xxxvii, 1f.,
120, 126, 202, 212, 332,
421, 650, 653, 680, 684,
705, 737, →II 24, 60, 65,
125, 128, 219f., 229, 243,
253, 287f., 298, 407, 584,
793, 801, 803ff., 816
- KOBAYASHI, Akira, →II 71
- Kohm, Markus, →I 56, 234, 375,
429, →II 805
- Kolodin, Mikhail, →II 324, 796
- Kopka, Helmut (1932–2009),
→I ii, →II 806
- Kopp, Oliver, →II 458
- Korolkova, Alexandra, →II 31, 96
- Kosch, Sebastian, →II 40, 263
- Kotucha, Reinhard, →II 3, 786
- Kryukov, Alexey, →II 56, 62f.
- Krüger, Marcel, →I 194, →II 120
- Kudlek, Manfred, →II 341
- Kummer, Olaf, →II 228, 341
- Küster, Frank, →II 786
- Kuznetsova, Lyubov, →II 53
- Kwok, Conrad, →I 608
- Lagally, Klaus, →II 341, 806
- Lamport, Leslie, →I ii, xxxvii, xxxix,
2, 211, 298, 368, 389,
456, →II vi, 372, 470,
689, 789, 806, 813, 973
- Lamy, Jean-François, →I 374
- Lapko, Olga, →II 326, 796
- L^AT_EX Project Team, →I xl, 3–8, 96,
103, 115, 645, →II 128,
131, 324, 583, 606,
608f., 632, 686, 784,
787, 789, 802, 806f.,
810, 812, 973, 975f.
- Lavagnino, John, →I 228, →II 813
- Lavva, Boris, →II 341
- Lawrence, Steve, →II 413
- Le Bailly, Jacques, →II 40
- Le Floch, Bruno, →II 734, 980
- Lehman, Philipp, →I 179,
→II 435, 541, 803, 807
- Leichter, Jerry, →I 474, 476
- Lemberg, Werner, →II 324, 341, 807
- Levien, Raph, →II 92
- Levy, Silvio, →II 328, 807
- Liang, Franklin, →II 807
- Lickert, Knut, →I 363
- Lingnau, Anselm, →I 529
- Liu, Leo, →I 479
- Longborough, Brent (1944–2021),
→I 30, →II 616
- Loreti, Maurizio, →II 119
- Lubalin, Herb, →II 69
- Lück, Uwe (1962–2020), →I 334
- Luecking, Dan, →II 182
- Lyles, Jim, →II 12
- Lyu, Jianrui, →I 504, →II 807
- Maag, Dalton, →II 82
- Madsen, Lars, →I 430, 492,
→II 130, 172, 174
- Manutius, Aldus (1449–1515),
→II 38
- Marini, Igino, →II 99
- Markey, Nicolas, →II 16, 808
- Matas, Sol, →II 65
- Matteson, Steve, →II 26, 49, 57, 68
- May, Wolfgang, →I 281
- McCauley, James Darrell, →I 525
- McDonnell, Rowland, →II 2, 803
- McInerney, Matt, →II 86
- McLean, Ruari, →II 808
- McPherson, Kent, →I 371
- Medina Arellano, Gonzalo, →I 147
- Menke, Henri, →I 632
- Merciadri, Luca, →I 190, 407
- Metzinger, Jochen, →II 341
- Midtiby, Henrik Skov, →I 237
- Miedinger, Max (1910–1980), →II 76
- Miklavac, Mojca, →II 338
- Milde, Günter, →II 328
- Miller, D. Benjamin, →II 42, 265
- Mills, Ross, →II 57
- Miner, Robert (1968–2011), →II 798
- Mittelbach, Frank,
→I 3, 79, 138, 190, 210,
228, 283, 351, 424, 437,
512, 648, 728, →II 128,
238, 584, 599, 799ff.,
808–811, 813, 973
- Mondal, Agnibho, →II 445
- Monday, Bold, →II 30

- Monty Python, →II 651
 Moore, Ross, →II 801
 Morison, Stanley (1889–1967),
 →II 55
 Motygin, Oleg V., →I 94
 Muhafara, Dario Manuel, →II 84
 Münch, Martin, →I 202, 216, 386f.
- Nahil, Julie, →I xlv
 NAKASHIMA, Hiroshi,
 →I 339, 469, →II 811
 Neugebauer, Gerd, →II 578
 Neukam, Frank, →I 375, 429
 Newlyn, Miles, →II 73
 Nguyen, Nhung, →II 81
 Nicholas, Robin, →II 49
 Niederberger, Clemens,
 →I 156, 188, 217, 228, 235,
 289, →II 467, 811f.
- Niepraschk, Rolf,
 →I 463, 593, 603, →II 460
 Nikoltchev, Botio, →II 80
 NOBUYA, Tanaka, →II 800
 Noirel, Josselin, →I 474
 Nordhoff, Sebastian, →II 461
 Nowacki, Janusz Marian
 (1951–2020),
 →I 686, 688, →II 47, 73, 77,
 79, 101, 284, 293, 295
- Oberdiek, Heiko, →I 30, 96, 104,
 114, 195, 384, 602,
 →II 206, 211, 217, 221,
 304, 686, 812
 Oleinik, Phelype, →I 361, →II 651
 Olthof, Edgar, →I 487
 Oostrum, Pieter van,
 →I 398, 476, →II 158
 Orlandini, Mauro, →I 614
- Pakin, Scott, →I 112, 301, 384, 614,
 →II 113, 209, 468, 668,
 787, 812
 Pandey, Anshuman, →II 341
 Panov, Andrey V., →II 58
 Pardo, Octavio, →II 41
 Pardoin, Octavio, →II 265
 Parsloe, Andrew, →II 170
 Partl, Hubert, →I 138
- Patashnik, Oren, →II 376, 378, 406,
 801, 812
 Peev, Stefan, →II 59
 Pégourié-Gonnard, Manuel, →II 786
 Peischl, Marei, →I 123
 Penninga, Marc, →II 2
 Perry, David J., →II 37
 Phemister, Alexander (1829–1894),
 →II 48
 Pianowski, Piotr, →II 271, 273, 275,
 280, 288
 Pilgrim, Mark, →I 362
 Plaice, John, →I 652, →II 299, 812
 Plancarte, Raul, →II 15
 Plass, Michael, →I 120, →II 805
 Podar, Sunil, →I 608, →II 812
 Poll, Philipp H., →II 19, 94, 275
 Póltawski, Adam, →II 46
 Poore, Geoffrey, →I 303
 Poppelier, Nico, →I 374, →II 798
 Puga, Diego, →II 251, 268
 Purtill, Mark, →I 4
 Purton, David, →II 445
- Raab, Susanne (samcarter),
 →I 645, →II 651
 Rahtz, Sebastian (1955–2016),
 →I vii, 93, 96, 534, 592,
 688, 694,
 →II iii, 113, 800ff., 812
 Ratighan, Daniel, →II 72
 Raymond, Eric, →II 788
 Rees, Clea F., →I 145, →II 118
 Reid, Brian, →I 2, →II 812
 Reutenauer, Arthur, →II 337
 Rhead, David, →I xxxix, xlii, →II 489
 Robertson, Christian, →II 34
 Robertson, Will, →I ii, 371, 417,
 419, 649, 706, 719,
 →II 146, 207, 226, 253, 600,
 686, 799, 810, 813, 976
 Rogers, Bruce (1870–1957), →II 37
 Roh, Štěpán, →II 13
 Rokicki, Tom, →I 577
 Romer, Linus, →II 103
 Roncaglia, Federico, →II 73
 Rose, Kristoffer (1965–2016),
 →II 160
- Rouquette, Maïeul, →I 212,
 →II 461–464, 813
 Rowley, Chris, →I ii, 3, 212,
 →II 799, 809ff., 813
 Rozhenko, Alexander,
 →I 150, 220f.
- Ryan, George, →II 119
 Ryu, Young, →II 243f., 248, 268
- Samarin, Alexander, →I xl, →II 801
*samcarter, synonym; find me
 elsewhere in this index*
 Sanfelippo, Ana, →II 100
 Saudrais, Eddie, →II 169
 Sauer, Jonathan, →I 339
 Scharrer, Martin, →I 299, 595,
 →II 617, 619, 686, 813
 Schedler, Andreas, →I 281
 Schlicht, Robert, →I 127, →II 814
 Schmidt, Walter (1960–2021),
 →I 686, 688,
 →II 12, 66, 95, 104,
 238–241, 243, 251, 290
 Schnier, Thorsten, →II 489
 Scholderer, Victor (1880–1971),
 →II 75, 290
 Schöpf, Rainer, →I 3, 5, 301, 368,
 648, →II 128, 790, 811
 Schrod, Joachim, →II 370, 415, 814
 Schröder, Martin, →I 70, 123
 Schubert, Elke, →I 614
 Schwan, Tobias, →II 466, 536
 Schwarz, Norbert, →I 685
 Schwarz, Ulrich, →I 284
 Sgouros, Tom, →I 233
 Sharpe, Michael, →II 2, 20, 29, 38,
 40, 44, 47f., 50, 56, 58f.,
 83f., 90, 92f., 227, 230,
 232, 234, 243f., 249,
 252, 263, 265, 268, 271,
 274f., 280, 283, 287, 295
- Shchukin, Anatolii, →II 53
 Shipunov, Alexey, →I 468
 Shub, Daniel E., →II 462
 Sievers, Martin, →II 460
 Simonson, Mark, →II 90
 Simske, Steven, →I ii
 Slimbach, Robert, →II 40, 58, 283
 Smith, Ralph, →II 229

- Sommerfeldt, Axel, →I 116, 525, 529, 535, 540, 551
 Sorkin, Eben, →II 25
 Spenceley, Kim, →I xli, xlv
 Spiekermann, Erik, →I 191, →II 14, 74, 92, 814
 Spitzmüller, Jürgen, →II 455, 467
 Spivak, Michael (1940-2020), →II 128
 Stacey, Andrew, →I 643, →II 814
 Stanley, Paul, →II 467
 Steffmann, Dieter, →I 145
 Stiff, Paul (1949-2011), →I 122, →II 814
 Stoffel, Augusto, →II 161
 Straub, Pablo, →I 30
 Strecker, Stefan, →II 460
 Strzelczyk, Piotr, →II 271, 273, 275, 280, 288
 Sturm, Thomas, →I 614, →II 814
 Sullivan, Wayne, →II 813
 Sutor, Robert, →II 801
 Swanson, Ellen, →II 128, 814
 Swift, Matt, →I 675
 Syropoulos, Apostolos, →I 688, →II 271, 328, 341, 796

 TAKUJI, Tanaka, →II 364
 Talbot, Nicola, →I 154, →II 315, 814
 Tantau, Till, →I 632, →II 814
 Tennent, Bob, →I 649, →II 2, 7, 11, 14ff., 20, 26f., 30, 34, 37, 39-42, 47, 51, 57, 59, 61, 63ff., 69-72, 75, 81f., 84, 87, 98ff., 252
 Thalmann, Christian, →II 41
 Thành, Hàn Thê, →I 126, 688, →II 801f., 814

 Thorup, Kresten, →II 687
 Tinnefeld, Karsten, →I 38
 Tkadlec, Josef, →I 603
 Tobin, Geoffrey, →I 140
 Tolušis, Sigitas, →I 514
 Tschichold, Jan (1902-1974), →II 40
 Tsolomititis, Antonis, →I 688, →II 60, 106, 287
 Tuominen, Teo, →II 35
 Twardoch, Adam, →I xlii, →II 2, 80

 Ulanovsky, Julieta, →II 83
 Ulrich, Stefan, →I 233, →II 578
 UMEKI, Hideo, →I 377, →II 815
 Ummels, Michael, →I 649, 669
 Umpeleva, Olga, →II 31

 Valbusa, Ivan, →II 466
 Valiente Feruglio, Gabriel, →II 815
 van Oostrum, Pieter, →II 812
 Van Zandt, Timothy, →I 30, 297, 303, 614
 Vane, Harriet, →I 612
 Varela, Gabriela, →II 15
 Varoquaux, Gaël, →II 44
 Velthuis, Frans, →II 341
 Verna, Didier, →I 242, →II 584, 815
 Veytsman, Boris, →I 30, →II 455
 Vieth, Ulrik, →II 226, 238, 288
 Vogel, Martin, →II 117
 Volovich, Vladimir, →I 685, →II 53, 324
 Voß, Herbert, →I 303, 463, 560, 708, →II 13, 20, 370, 453, 459f., 466, 536, 815

 Waldi, Roland, →II 116

 Waßenhoven, Dominik, →II 460, 464, 536
 Weh, Tobias, →II 453
 Wemheuer, Moritz, →II 437f., 803
 Wette, Karl, →I 334
 Whitmore, Ben, →II 37
 Williams, Graham, →II 815
 Williams, Peter, →II 489
 Williamson, Hugh, →II 816
 Wilson, Alexander (??-1784), →II 42, 107
 Wilson, Peter, →I 27f., 34, 39, 55f., 212, 251, 371, 407, 419, 430, →II 372, 813, 816
 Wimsey, Lord Peter, →I 612
 Wisse, Maarten, →II 796
 Wolczko, Mario, →I 374
 Woliński, Marcin, →II 584, 600, 810
 Wooding, Mark, →II 584, 600, 810
 Wright, Joseph, →I xli, 167, 179, →II 456-459, 784, 807, 816, 976
 Wujastyk, Dominik, →I 212, →II 813

 Xue, Ruini, →II 454

 YATO, Takayuki, →I 609, →II 686
 Yefimov, Vladimir, →II 31

 Zapf, Hermann (1918-2015), →I 127, →II 17, 46, 62, 65, 71, 102, 226f., 230, 232f., 240, 268, 288, 797, 805, 816
 Zeng, Xiangdong, →II 15, 74, 265, 290
 Zhao, Yuansheng, →II 265
 Zhenzhen, Hu, →II 441
 Ziegler, Justin, →II 816

This page intentionally left blank

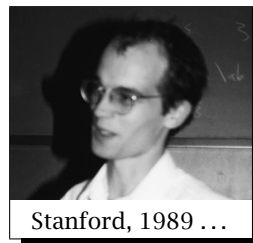
Biographies

Frank Mittelbach

Frank's interest in the automated formatting of complex documents in general, and in \LaTeX in particular, goes back to his university days and has always been a major interest, perhaps a vocation, and throughout his IT career certainly a “second job”. He studied mathematics and computer science at the Johannes Gutenberg University, Mainz, and afterwards joined EDS, Electronic Data Systems, initially working in a newly formed group for document processing using \TeX and other tools and later on in the system management division.

At the \TeX Users Group (TUG) conference at Stanford University in 1989, he gave a talk about the (many) problems with \LaTeX 2.09, which led to him and a small team (known as the \LaTeX Project Team) to take on the responsibility for the further development and maintenance of \LaTeX from its original author Leslie Lamport.¹ In the capacity of technical lead of this project, he has overseen the original major release of \LaTeX 2 ϵ in 1994 and the 36 (as of this writing) subsequent releases of this software. Right now he and the team are working on the important multi-year project to make \LaTeX automatically produce tagged PDF and conform to accessibility standards.

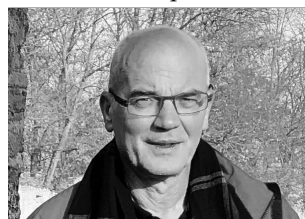
When EDS was bought by HP he joined the global Enterprise Service Management division and eventually worked there as the European lead architect. In 2015 Frank ended his IT-industry career to fully concentrate on research in automated typesetting and Open Source software development, in particular on the future development of the \LaTeX typesetting system.



Stanford, 1989 ...

¹The history is briefly discussed in Section 1.1 of this edition; for a listing of all \LaTeX Project team members through the years see <https://latex-project.org/about/team/>.

Frank is author or coauthor of many and varied \LaTeX extension packages, such as $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\text{-}\text{\LaTeX}$, doc, multicol, and NFSS: the New Font Selection Scheme. His publication of many technical papers on \LaTeX and on general research results in automated formatting brought him in contact with Peter Gordon from Addison-Wesley. Peter and Frank inaugurated the book series *Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting* (TTCT), with Frank as series editor. *The \LaTeX Companion* (1994) was the first book of this series, which now includes titles that cover \LaTeX in all its facets.



... and three decades later

He is on the board of the International Gutenberg Society, an international association for the study of the history and development of printing technology and font-oriented media, where he focuses on the more recent period. He is also involved in the print production of the society and in general enjoys designing and typesetting high-quality documents using computers but also using traditional letterpress. One of his plans after finishing TLC3 is to typeset a book on Japanese authored by Peter Gordon. When not involved with typographical questions or programming Frank enjoys reading (though the books better be of high quality in content *and* form), listening to or playing music (he is an amateur bass player), and winning or losing board games, these days often collaborative ones.

He and his wife Christel live in the Gutenberg city of Mainz; their three grown-up sons have left by now for new pastures.

Ulrike Fischer



Ulrike Fischer studied mathematics at the University of Bonn. She wrote her thesis in a rather arcane branch called model theory with an Atari text processor called Signum but did not like to have to place lots of sub and superscripts with a mouse. So when seeing an example \LaTeX document, she directly ordered the floppy discs and never looked back.

Quite early she got interested in the internal handling of fonts and in chess typesetting as she wanted to print the bulletins of chess competitions she organized in her club.

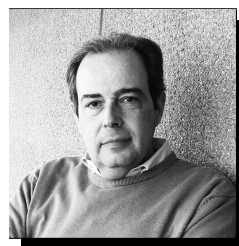
With the help of the first edition of the *\LaTeX Companion*, she wrote the chessfss package, which allows users to choose between various chess fonts, and other chess-related packages.

After university, she moved with her husband to Siegburg and later to Mönchengladbach and worked as an assistant for a deputy of the state parliament of North Rhine-Westphalia. She found her way into the \LaTeX groups on the Internet and enjoyed answering questions and debugging errors. She also helped her father who after his retirement as a professor for computer science wrote with \LaTeX a number of books about Salvador Dalí's illustrations of the *Divine Comedy*. So when her job ended after a lost election, she decided to try something new and to work as a \LaTeX consultant.

Her interest in fonts continued over the years and led her to accept the job of maintaining luaotfload. Talks about accessibility and tagged PDF at Dante and TUG meetings induced her to work on the tagpdf package and to present it to L^AT_EX team members at a workshop at the TUG meeting in Rio de Janeiro. Both together got her an invite to join the team in 2018. She had already had many online contacts with the team members in Usenet groups and chats as well as in person — she met Frank the first time at a Dante meeting in Heidelberg, where she talked about how to misuse biblatex as an address database, and he showed her how to eat some Japanese dish — and so accepted without hesitation. She now lives with her husband Gert in Bonn.

Javier Bezos

Javier Bezos is passionate about typography, science, language, and writing systems, as well as about computer programming. A curious person and self-taught by nature, his interests are broad, and he has worked in fields like book and journal publishing, design, radio, and classical music. He is an honorary member of the Unión de Correctores, the Spanish professional association of copyeditors.

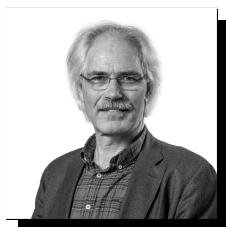


As a computer programmer, he has developed systems for both L^AT_EX and InDesign, including tools for technical documentation, automatic typesetting and copyediting, XML, and localization. It is this last facet that he develops most actively as a member of the L^AT_EX Project Team.

Javier has participated as an author on several style manuals and published the book *Tipografía y notaciones científicas*. He is currently working at FundéuRAE, a foundation linked to the Royal Spanish Academy.

Hiking, reading old science books, and watching classic movies are some of his hobbies.

Johannes Braams



Johannes Braams studied electronic engineering at the Technical University in Enschede, the Netherlands. His master's thesis was on video coding, based on a model of the human visual system. During his research at the *dr. Neher Laboratories* in 1984, he came into contact with L^AT_EX for the first time. He was a founding board member of the Dutch-speaking TeX User Group (NTG) in 1988 and participated in developing support for typesetting Dutch documents. He started work on developing the babel system for multilingual typesetting following the Karlsruhe EuroT_EX conference in 1989.

Since its inception at the EuroT_EX conference in Cork in 1990, he has been a member of the L^AT_EX Project Team. Johannes still maintains a couple of L^AT_EX extension

packages such as the `ntgclass` family of document classes and the `supertabular` and `changebar` packages.

After his studies, Johannes continued to work for the Dutch PTT, which later came to be known as KPN until 2014, mostly as an IT project manager. In 2015 he started a new career as a consultant on cybersecurity for industrial automation and control systems, first at the Software Improvement Group in Amsterdam; then in 2017 he joined Royal HaskoningDHV, a Dutch engineering firm that operates globally. He works on security by design in industrial installations. Johannes is now a board member of the Dutch chapter of (ISC)². He lives with his wife in Den Ham; their two sons both graduated from the University Twente in Enschede.

Joseph Wright

Joseph Wright is a synthetic chemist who studied for his degree at the University of Leicester before moving to the University of Cambridge for his PhD. He first heard of \LaTeX in about 2001 but did not start using it until writing a final report on his first research assistant position at the University of Southampton in 2004.

Joseph transitioned from being a user to a developer most obviously when he answered a “simple” question on the `comp.text.tex` newsgroup asking for a fix to the `Slunits` package in 2007. It soon turned out that this was the tip of a much larger task: writing a truly comprehensive units package: `siunitx`.

Joseph became involved with the \LaTeX Project Team’s work after Will Robertson asked him what he thought of the experimental ideas in `expl3`. Joseph liked them, so he used `expl3` to develop the second version of `siunitx` and raised *lots* of questions about how things worked. His questions and suggestions led to an invite to join the team.

As well as writing (\LaTeX) code, Joseph is one of the moderators on the $\text{\TeX}/\text{\LaTeX}$ StackExchange site. He’s one of two moderators who’ve been in place from the very start of the site, helping to ensure there’s always been a welcoming approach with the aim of helping end users solve their (\LaTeX) problems.



Production Notes

This book was typeset using the \LaTeX document processing system (which it describes) together with substantial help from some of the extension packages covered herein, and considerable extra ad hoc \LaTeX programming effort. We used the base \LaTeX release dated 2022-11-01, pdf \TeX as the main \TeX engine, and Lua \TeX for examples that involved OpenType fonts. All packages have been taken from the 2022 \TeX Live distribution to ensure that the examples show what you will get when you run them yourself.¹

The text body fonts used are Lucida Bright and Lucida Sans (Bigelow/Holmes) at 8.47pt/11.72pt. These font families can be used at rather small sizes, which can be seen by the fact that the monospaced font we matched them with is Latin Modern Typewriter (\TeX Gyre foundry) at 10.36pt. This particular combination was chosen to get a reasonable amount of material on each page and to optically balance the appearance of the `typewriter` font so that it is distinguishable but without too big a contrast.

Body fonts

The text in the examples mostly uses \TeX Gyre’s Times Roman (`tgtermes`) with its Helvetica (`tgheros`) for sans serif. For the mathematical material in the examples we stayed with the now classic Computer Modern math fonts, so the symbols will appear familiar to the majority of mathematics users. Of course, examples intended to demonstrate the use of other fonts are exceptions.

Example fonts

Package usage in the book

If you count the examples as part of the book, then every package described in this edition has also been used in it. This is a bit of a red herring, though, because the examples are typeset as separate documents and the results are then included in the book as PDF (Portable Document Format) images. However, many of the packages

*The \LaTeX packages
used to produce the
book ...*

¹Well, at least initially — sometimes, though seldom, packages change in incompatible ways.

have been deployed for real to produce this edition, and for the interested reader we now list the most important ones and why they have been used.

To help in producing the explanatory text we used `acro` for acronyms, resetting their use count on a per-chapter basis. Thus, for most acronyms you see the first use in a chapter being displayed in its full form, e.g., as “Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network (CTAN)”. For quotation marks, commands from the `csquotes` package have been used throughout.

Heavy use was made of `\vref` and friends from the `varioref` package. We often refer to examples or sections “on the facing page”, “previous”, “next” or “below”, etc., and in all such cases these are generated texts and not hardwired in the source. Otherwise, the layout process would have been a nightmare, requiring extensive amounts of textual adjustments whenever material moved from one page to the next and vice versa. Of course, using `varioref` in a book of this size is bound to produce an *impossible document* as explained on page –I 85. And indeed, it happened a handful of times that the generated text got split across two pages, rendering the wrong result in all cases. Initially, we changed the errors to warnings and ignored them, and then resolved the issues during the final pagination by adjusting the surrounding text (either rewriting parts or adding some strategic line or page breaks).

Since the second edition of *The L^AT_EX Companion* we used “hanging punctuation” to typeset the paragraphs. In the last edition, this typographical icing was basically produced manually, but this time we have been fortunate to simply¹ apply the `microtype` package. This package was also used to add some light expansion/suppression using the *hz*-algorithm, which, in my opinion noticeably improved the overall look and feel of the paragraphs. For comparison, look at this paragraph and compare it with the repeat below (where both features are turned off).

Since the second edition of *The L^AT_EX Companion* we used “hanging punctuation” to typeset the paragraphs. In the last edition, this typographical icing was basically produced manually, but this time we have been fortunate to simply¹ apply the `microtype` package. This package was also used to add some light expansion/suppression using the *hz*-algorithm, which, in my opinion noticeably improved the overall look and feel of the paragraphs. Compare this to the previous paragraph (which has both features turned on) — *which do you prefer?*

The core design for the book dates back to the first edition and therefore chapter headings, list environments, etc., have been defined using the basic mechanisms of L^AT_EX rather than using support packages because those were not available back then. For the running headers and the page numbers the `fancyhdr` package was used.

To produce the various tables in the book, `array` and `tabularx` (for the extended syntax) were put to good use and on nearly every table we applied commands from the `booktabs` package for the formal rules. The few multipage tables have been generated with `longtable` and in some places we used `multicol` to produce a table-like appearance.

¹We had to define our own configuration file, though, because the `microtype` package has no presets for the commercial Lucida Bright fonts and the default settings, while more or less adequate, were not totally satisfactory. Thus, we applied the advice given in Section 3.1.3.

²The paragraph now breaks differently and the margins are no longer optically aligned.

Graphics have been included with the help of `graphicx` and in a few places we used `overpic` to add some arrows or other data to the image. The captions have been styled with the `caption` package; other float-related packages were not necessary as the book requirements have been fairly light. Producing the examples, showing input and output side by side, was more elaborate and involved the use of the `fancyvrb` package and a fair amount of programming. The general approach we used is explained in Section 4.2.4 on page →I315.

... showing graphics and examples ...

The boxes showing information that is only relevant for Unicode engines or that detail differences between the `LaTeX` and `lualatex` approach have been designed using `tcolorbox`, which in turn uses `tikz`.

... displaying informational boxes ...

For the bibliography we used `LaTeX` with a number-only style that was designed with the help of `custom-bib`, and `natbib` was used for the citations. Because this edition was split in two parts, each part got its own bibliography; this was achieved with the `bibunits` package.

... producing the bibliography ...

The book uses several separate indexes (even though only two are shown in the final product). To generate the raw data for them we made use of the `index` package and the sorting was done with `MakeIndex`. However, due to the complexity of the index (the colored page numbers, etc.) it was necessary to use pre- and post-processing by scripts to produce the final form of the index files. These were then typeset using an enhanced version of the `multicol` package to add the continuation lines — something that perhaps one day can be turned into a proper package. The “Commands and Concepts” index is a mixture of commands, environments, and other `LaTeX` elements, but also includes concept entries. The latter were produced by typesetting a version of the book with line numbers and giving that to the indexer, who produced “conceptual index entries” that were then added to the source files for the book so that pagination changes would not invalidate the index entries. This was a major testament to the quality of the `lineno` package, as it worked “straight out of the box”.

... the different indexes ...

In anticipation of a PDF and ebook version of the third edition, we already used both the `bookmark` and the `hyperref` package. Even though this does not show in the printed form of the book it helped us tremendously during its preparation, because all internal references have been active links, allowing us to quickly jump from one place to another in the draft PDF document. Furthermore, all internal notes we made were enhanced to generate bookmarks so that the bookmark pane of the PDF reader gave us a quick overview of all the tasks still to do and text still to write.

... and interactive PDF features

Packages that should have been used for the book ...

You might be surprised that some heavily recommended packages, such as `enumitem` or `geometry`, are missing. The reason is simply that the fundamental design decisions, e.g., the page layout or the design of the headings, lists, etc., have been retained across all editions and when the first edition was typeset in 1994 those packages that can now make your life easier were not yet available, and thus the necessary code had to be handcrafted. Altering that setup was only done when improvements or changes were necessary; e.g., the `titletoc` package was added when we introduced the partial TOCs below the chapter headings. But in a new project such packages would have been used from the start.

... but have not

Packages supporting the production

*Running out of files
to write to*

This book loads more than 140 .sty files (not counting those loaded in the examples), which is way beyond what is needed in typical documents. Several of these packages open their own write streams, and this is a rather limited resource in T_EX (only 16 can be open at the same time). As a result the book died when processing the list of figures because that tried to open one stream too many. Fortunately, there is a remedy with Bruno Le Floch's `morewrites` package. It comes with a cost, though, because it needs additional processing time, but the important point is that it enables you to process a document of such complexity!

Color woes

The printing process for the book required two colors: black and some kind of blue as a spot color. For this, we used the packages `xcolor` and `colorspace`, but it is not a simple task to ensure that the final document does not contain color instructions in CMYK (or RGB) because some packages include hardwired color specifications using such models. As a result we had to do some patching or avoid using color in a few examples in order to not upset the final production process. This is clearly an area where L^AT_EX could be improved to make life easier.

Task management

To keep track of all the open tasks that needed resolving, we used the `todonotes` package and defined a few commands similar to those shown in Example A-1-17 on page 645, except that we also added a bookmark for each task using the `bookmark` package. At one point this showed several hundred entries, but now as I write this text it is thankfully down to a handful of remaining tasks.

*Where are my
errors?*

Loading the `structuredlog` package enabled us to quickly identify in which source file an error occurred — not that we ever had any.¹ The footnote in Appendix B.1 on page 712 explains how to make use of this package.

*Controlling the
source*

Using a source control approach is beneficial for nearly every project — for a complex one like this book, it is essential. It enables you and your co-authors to work without stepping on each other's toes; if something breaks, you have a history that helps you identify and resolve problems; and, last but not least, it simplifies project data synchronization across different devices and locations. For the second edition we used SVN; for this edition it was Git, and the package `gitinfo2` was deployed to write source branch and date information at the bottom of every page (outside the final printing area).

Tracking file usage

Another tool we used regularly was `mkjobtexmf`. With its help we collected all files used during compilation in a separate tree, which was also placed under source control. This way, any updates to standard packages, font files, etc., could be easily tracked, which again helped a lot if something went awry.

The production cycle

The production of this book required a custom class and, as outlined above, many additional package files. It also needed a complex “make” process using a collection of “shell scripts” controlled by a “Makefile”. One of the major tasks these accomplished

¹ Joke — of course, we did. All kinds of errors occurred, from simple typos to subtle package incompatibilities that resulted in talking to the developers after identifying the root cause of the problem.

was to ensure that the typeset output of each and every example really is produced by the accompanying example input. This “make” process worked as follows:

- When first processing a chapter, \LaTeX generated a source document file for each example. These are the one-and-a-half-thousand “example files” you will find on CTAN at <https://ctan.org/pkg/tlc3-examples>. *Generating examples*
- The make process then ran each of these “example files” through \LaTeX (also calling \BibTeX , \biber , or whatever else was needed) as often as was necessary to produce the final form of the typeset output.

The resulting PDF file was post-processed with `pdftocrop` to drop all white space on the outside (making the PDF pages only as big as the visible output) and, if necessary, to split it into separate pages using `pdfseparate`.

- The next time \LaTeX was run on that chapter, each of these PDF output files was automatically placed in its position in the book, next to (or near) the example input. The process was not complete even then because the horizontal positioning of some elements, in particular the examples, depends on whether they are on a verso or recto (the technique from Example A-5-7 on page 692 was used in this case). Thus, at least one or two additional runs were needed before all the cross-references were correctly resolved and \LaTeX finally found the right way to place the examples correctly into the margins.

Due to the example-generating complexity — together with the use of `varioref` altering the generated text based on distance to the referenced object — the book required not the usual two or three but in fact six complete runs before \LaTeX stopped asking for “Rerun to get cross-references right”. Even on a fast iMac from 2021 with an M1 chip, that meant a half-hour wait — and this is not counting the generation of the 1540 examples. Those required another two-and-a-half hours¹ so that it took a total of three hours of computer-processing time to produce the typeset book from scratch.

The layout effort

That was about as far as automation of the process could take us. Because of the many large examples that could neither be broken nor treated as floating material, getting good page breaks turned out to be a major challenge. For this and other reasons, getting to the final layout of the book was fairly labor intensive and even required minor rewriting (on maybe 10% of the pages) in order to avoid bad line breaks or page breaks (e.g., paragraphs ending with a single-word line or a distracting hyphenation at a page break). Spreads were allowed to run one line long or one line short if necessary, and in several cases the layout and contents of the examples were manually adjusted to allow decent page breaks.

A great help in this final layout process was the package `widows-and-orphans`, which told us the pages that contained widows, orphans, or hyphenations across page boundaries. We then applied one of the suggestions from Section 5.6.6 on page →I 422, often adding an explicit page break in some strategic place or sometimes rewriting a

Manual labor from page 1 to 2000

Giving widows and orphans a new home

¹The main factor here is the file I/O cost. Each example has to be run several times, and each time, \TeX has to start and load all packages and fonts, over and over again.


paragraph to make it longer or shorter (after all, we are the authors and can change the text for aesthetic reasons). In a few places, no fix seemed reasonable, in which case we accepted an orphan or widow and marked the place with `\WaOignorenext`. In total, 1.5% of the pages were treated like this.

Some pagination statistics

Here are a few approximate statistics from this page layout process: 24 long spreads, 41 short spreads, 51 compressed pages (using `\enlargethispage*`) combined with forced page breaks. This is noticeably less than in the previous edition and one of the reasons is that this time we made ample use of \TeX 's `\looseness` functionality: we ran 125 paragraphs one line shorter than normal and 17 paragraphs one line longer than is optimal in \TeX 's eyes.

We added 501 forced page breaks in total, which means 25% of all pages have a forced premature ending — usually to avoid half-empty pages later due to a larger example showing up in the wrong place. While I think the results are satisfactory, getting this right was rather time consuming and difficult — here it really hurts that \TeX has a global paragraph optimizer but generates its pagination with a simple greedy algorithm. While this gives reasonable results with most documents it totally breaks down in those that contain larger unbreakable parts such as this book.¹

Searching across the final sources, there are about 1200 adjustments to the vertical spacing² and 100 other manual adjustments (other than rewriting or altering the examples). For the latter I do not have any reliable data, but from my recollection I would guess that about a quarter (i.e., 400) of the examples have been adjusted to better blend into the page flow.

A final word of advice 

In several places in the book we have given the advice to leave any layout work until the very last minute, and on the whole we followed our advice to the letter with this book. For example, all pagination work was delayed until the copy editor had worked through all chapters and marked up all the mistakes we made (well, hopefully all) — it took me a while to convince her not to mark up ugly-looking page breaks, because they were deliberate. Given that changing a single letter in a paragraph may result in total reflow (and possibly a different number of lines) this saved me a lot of unnecessary work.

However, in one case I diverged from that principle. When I started to write this section, I realized that the chosen typewriter font seemed to be a tiny bit too large compared to the Lucida body fonts. I therefore decided to scale it down by one percent. Given that this is only used for individual words, I expected a few changes but not much. To my dismay I ended up with more than fifty pages where the pagination was totally broken, e.g., paragraphs getting shorter or longer, lines overflowing to the next page, etc. It took me a full day to repair the damage. So again, take this advice seriously and only work on pagination adjustments when you are 100% done with the text and all your other layout choices have been made — easier said than done, I know!

¹I had secretly hoped that the research results outlined in [134, 135, 138] could already be applied to the production of this book, which would have saved me perhaps a month worth of effort. Unfortunately, turning the prototype into a fully working production system proved to be more complicated than I had bargained for. Thus, in the end I buried the idea and produced the layout the old-fashioned way.

²These adjustments are partially due to deficiencies in parameter setup for the custom class. However, by the time I realized this, several chapters had already been paginated and changing the class setup would have invalidated those. Thus, it seemed simpler to live with the imperfection.

PDF and ePub production

As you know, we had to split the third edition — due to its size — into two physical books. However, both parts were produced with a single \LaTeX source to make it easier for \LaTeX (and us) to automatically resolve cross-references across the parts and to generate a consolidated index with entries for the whole edition. This index was included at the end of each physical part to make it easier for our readers to work with the two books.

*The PDF for printing
the edition*

The tables of contents lists were tailored for each part: they show the sections of the current part in detail, but only give a chapter-level overview of the other part. Similarly, the bibliographies at the end of each part only show entries that have a citation in that part. The few books and articles that are referenced in both parts therefore appear twice in the complete print edition. This way the resulting PDF only needed to be split in the middle and sent to the printer.

However, in that form the PDF is unsuitable as a digital product or as a basis for producing an ePub of the complete edition, because it contains a duplicated index, two separate bibliographies, and no consolidated front matter, e.g., no complete table of contents or list of figures.

Thus, for the digital version we augmented the \LaTeX sources so that by flipping a switch a slightly different PDF is produced. The differences between the print version and the digital version are as follows:

*The PDF for digital
consumption*

- In the digital version the front matter of Part I contains a consolidated table of contents for both parts and the partial table of contents in Part II was dropped. The same applies to the list of figures and the list of tables.
- The bibliographies from both parts were combined and placed at the end of Part II. Of course, this alters the citation labels within the edition, and that may result in a slightly different paragraph formatting in one or the other place (due to differently sized labels), but great care was taken to not affect the overall pagination. Thus, if you own both the print and the digital edition they show the same material on pages with the same page number.
- The bibliography change also required me to regenerate two examples: 3-4-17 on page →I 189 and 4-1-44 on page →I 288, because they both refer to entries in the bibliography. These examples therefore differ slightly between the print and the digital versions.
- The preface of Part II was shortened because it repeated the “How to work with the book” section, which is not needed twice in the digital version.
- For the same reason the index for the complete edition at the end of Part I was dropped and only the complete index in Part II was kept. This index of the digital version should be more or less identical to the one in the print version, e.g., you can use the digital index and then look up the page in the printed book. However, given that we dropped one section from the preface that contained index entries, the index in the printed book has a few more page references.
- This section about PDF and ebook production only appears in the digital version.

In all other respects the print and the digital versions have been kept identical, e.g., the page numbers are restarted in Part II, so that most page numbers appear twice. This way they are at most three digits wide and it remains possible to correctly cite pages from the edition, regardless of somebody owning the digital or the print version (with the exception of pages from the front or the back matter).

*Navigating
the PDF*

Most PDF viewers allow you to select pages by entering, for example, II–39. Thus, if somebody tells you to have a look at the nice Accanthis font on page 39 in Part II and you want to look this up in the PDF version, this is a simple way to reach that page. Of course, in the ePub version page numbers are of no real help, except that if used in the text they contain a link that you can click on to jump to the correct place in the edition. In the ePub you have to navigate using the book marks if you want to get to a specific section — a possibility that, of course, exists in the PDF as well.

*Producing the
ePub version*

This altered PDF is what you get as one of the digital products, and it is also the one that was used as a basis for producing the ePub version by a company specializing in such work. There are in fact tools in the \LaTeX world, such as `tex4ht` by Michal Hoftich or `lwarp` by Brian Dunn that assist you in a direct conversion of \LaTeX sources to HTML or ePub, but the *\LaTeX Companion* is so complicated that we did not attempted to use the direct route. Maybe that is going to change in a future edition, when \LaTeX is fully capable of automatically producing a tagged PDF.

*Using the
ePub version*

The ePub version offers another specialty: if you double-click on an example or on some code fragment then you are taken to a separate page showing you that part on its own without any margins, i.e., noticeably larger. A “Done” button on that page brings you back to the point where you started from even if your viewer does not offer a convenient way back as part of its controls. Thus, while some examples might appear to be somewhat small if viewed together with the surrounding text, they can be easily enlarged, if necessary.